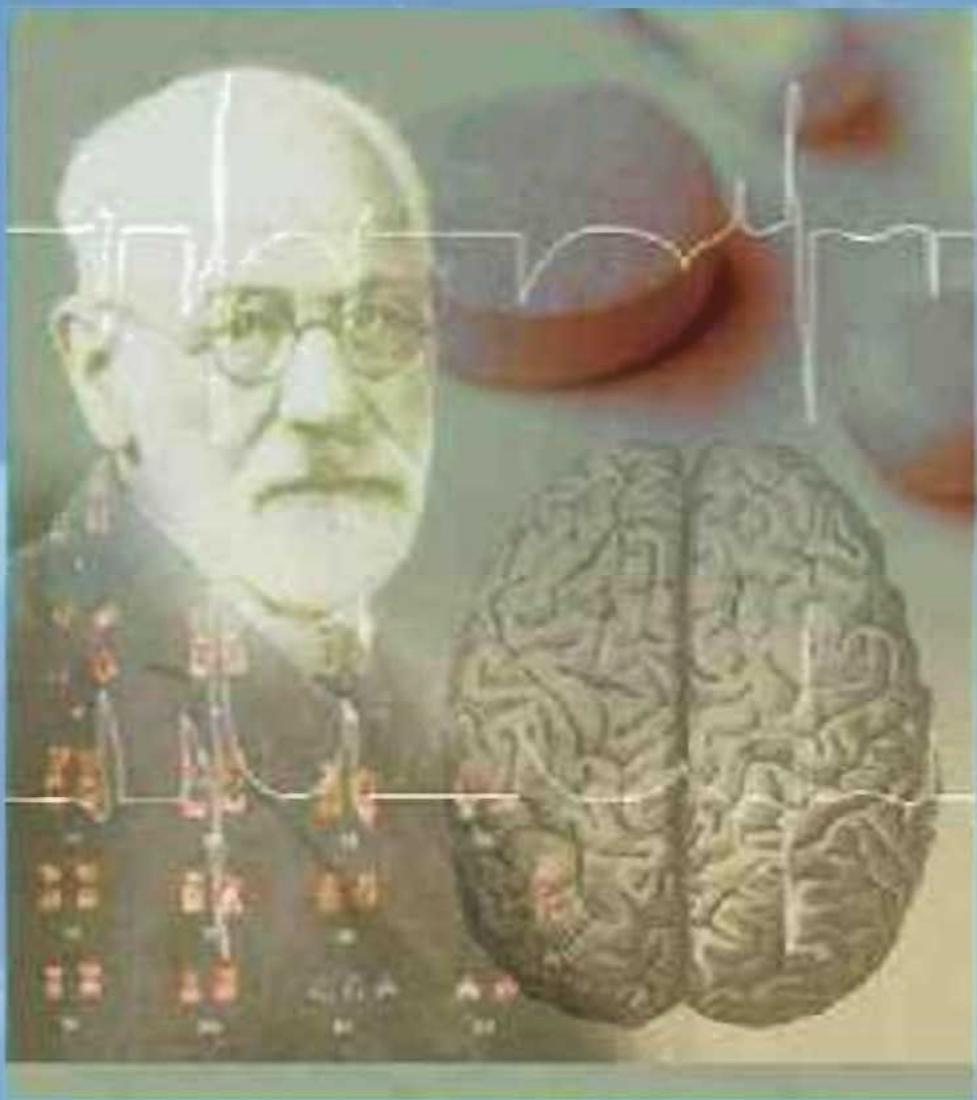


# The GALE ENCYCLOPEDIA of MENTAL HEALTH

SECOND EDITION



*The GALE*  
ENCYCLOPEDIA of  
MENTAL HEALTH

SECOND EDITION

# *The GALE* ENCYCLOPEDIA of MENTAL HEALTH

SECOND EDITION

VOLUME

1

A - L

VOLUME

2

M - Z

LAURIE J. FUNDUKIAN AND JEFFREY WILSON, EDITORS

THOMSON  
GALE



## Gale Encyclopedia of Mental Health, Second Edition

**Project Editors**

Laurie J. Fundukian, Jeffrey Wilson

**Editorial**

Jacqueline Longe, Brigham Narins

**Production Technology**

Luanne Brennan, Paul Lewon

**Editorial Systems Support**

Andrea Lopeman

**Rights and Acquisitions**

Margaret Abendroth, Emma Hull, Ron Montgomery, Robbie Robertson

**Imaging and Multimedia**

Lezlie Light, Robyn V. Young

**Product Design**

Pamela Galbreath

**Composition and Electronic Prepress**

Evi Seoud

**Manufacturing**

Wendy Blurton

**Indexing**

Factiva Inc.

© 2008 by The Gale Group

Thomson and Star Logo are trademarks and Gale is a registered trademark used herein under license.

**For more information, contact:**

The Gale Group  
27500 Drake Road  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3535  
Or visit our Internet site at  
<http://www.gale.com>

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED**

No part of this work covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, Web distribution, or information storage retrieval systems—

without the written permission of the publisher.

For permission to use material from this product, submit your request via the Web at <http://www.gale-edit.com/permissions>, or you may download our Permissions Request form and submit your request by fax or mail to:

**Permissions Department**

The Gale Group  
27500 Drake Road  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3535  
Permissions hotline:  
248-699-8006 or 800-877-4253, ext. 8006  
Fax: 248-699-8074 or 800-762-4058

While every effort has been made to ensure the reliability of the information presented in

this publication, The Gale Group does not guarantee the accuracy of the data contained herein. The Gale Group accepts no payment for listing, and inclusion in the publication of any organization, agency, institution, publication, service, or individual does not imply endorsement of the editors or publisher. Errors brought to the attention of the publisher and verified to the satisfaction of the publisher will be corrected in future editions.

**EDITORIAL DATA PRIVACY POLICY**

Does this product contain information about you as an individual? If so, for more information about how to access or correct that information, or about our data privacy policies, please see our Privacy Statement at [www.gale.com](http://www.gale.com)

**LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOGING-IN-PUBLICATION DATA**

The Gale encyclopedia of mental health, second edition / Laurie J. Fundukian and Jeffrey Wilson, editors.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.  
ISBN 978-1-4144-2987-8 (set hardcover: alk. paper)—  
ISBN 978-1-4144-2988-5 (vol. 1 hardcover: alk. paper)—  
ISBN 978-1-4144-2989-2 (vol. 2 hardcover: alk. paper)—

1. Psychiatry—Encyclopedias.  
2. Mental illness—Encyclopedias.  
Fundukian, Laurie J., 1970- Wilson, Jeffrey, 1971- Title: Encyclopedia of mental health.

RC437.G36 2008  
616.89003-dc22

2007026137

This title is also available as an e-book.  
ISBN-13: 978-1-4144-2990-8 (set); ISBN-10: 1-4144-2990-8 (set).  
Contact your Gale sales representative for ordering information.

Printed in China  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

## CONTENTS

Alphabetical List of Entries.....	vii
Introduction.....	xiii
Advisory Board.....	xv
Entries	
<b>Volume 1 (A–L)</b> .....	1
<b>Volume 2 (M–Z)</b> .....	671
Glossary .....	1239
General Index .....	1289

# ALPHABETICAL LIST OF ENTRIES

## A

Abnormal Involuntary Movement Scale  
Abuse  
Acupuncture  
Acute stress disorder  
Addiction  
Adjustment disorders  
Adrenaline  
Advance directives  
Affect  
Agoraphobia  
Alcohol and related disorders  
Alprazolam  
Alzheimer's disease  
Amantadine  
Amitriptyline  
Amnesia  
Amnestic disorders  
Amoxapine  
Amphetamines  
Amphetamines and related disorders  
Anorexia nervosa  
Anosognosia  
Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse  
Antidepressants  
Antisocial personality disorder  
Anxiety and anxiety disorders  
Anxiety reduction techniques  
Apathy  
Appetite suppressants  
Aprepitant  
Aripiprazole  
Aromatherapy  
Asperger's disorder  
Assertive community treatment  
Assertiveness training  
Assessment and diagnosis

Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder  
Autism  
Aversion therapy  
Avoidant personality disorder

## B

Barbiturates  
Beck Depression Inventory  
Behavior modification  
Bender Gestalt Test  
Benzodiazepines  
Benztropine  
Bereavement  
Beta blockers  
Bibliotherapy  
Binge drinking  
Binge eating  
Biofeedback  
Biperiden  
Bipolar disorder  
Body dysmorphic disorder  
Bodywork therapies  
Borderline personality disorder  
Brain  
Breathing-related sleep disorder  
Brief psychotic disorder  
Bulimia nervosa  
Bullying  
Bupropion  
Buspirone

Case management  
Catatonia  
Catatonic disorders  
CATIE  
Chamomile  
Child Depression Inventory  
Childhood disintegrative disorder  
Children's Apperception Test  
Chloral hydrate  
Chlordiazepoxide  
Chlorpromazine  
Chronic pain  
Circadian rhythm sleep disorder  
Citalopram  
Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly  
Clinical trials  
Clomipramine  
Clonazepam  
Clonidine  
Clorazepate  
Clozapine  
Cocaine and related disorders  
Cognistat  
Cognitive problem-solving skills training  
Cognitive remediation  
Cognitive retraining  
Cognitive-behavioral therapy  
Communication skills and disorders  
Community mental health  
Compliance  
Compulsion  
Computed tomography  
Conduct disorder  
Conners' Rating Scales-Revised  
Conversion disorder  
Co-occurring Disorders/Dual Diagnosis  
Couples therapy

## C

Caffeine-related disorders  
Cannabis and related disorders  
Capgras Syndrome  
Carbamazepine

Covert sensitization  
Creative therapies  
Crisis housing  
Crisis intervention  
Cyclothymic disorder

**D**

Deinstitutionalization  
Delirium  
Delusional disorder  
Delusions  
Dementia  
Denial  
Dependent personality disorder  
Depersonalization  
Depersonalization disorder  
Depression and depressive disorders  
Dermatotillomania  
Desipramine  
Detoxification  
Developmental coordination disorder  
Diagnosis  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*  
Diazepam  
Diets  
Diphenhydramine  
Disease concept of chemical dependency  
Disorder of written expression  
Dissociation and dissociative disorders  
Dissociative amnesia  
Dissociative fugue  
Dissociative identity disorder  
Disulfiram  
Divalproex sodium  
Donepezil  
Dopamine  
Doxepin  
Dual diagnosis  
Dyspareunia  
Dysthymic disorder

**E**

Ecstasy  
Electroconvulsive therapy  
Electroencephalography

Elimination disorders  
Encopresis  
Energy therapies  
Enuresis  
Erectile dysfunction  
Estazolam  
Evening primrose oil  
Executive function  
Exercise/Exercise-based treatment  
Exhibitionism  
Exposure treatment  
Expressive language disorder

**F**

Factitious disorder  
Family education  
Family psychoeducation  
Family therapy  
Fatigue  
Feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood  
Female orgasmic disorder  
Female sexual arousal disorder  
Fetal alcohol syndrome  
Fetishism  
Figure drawings  
Fluoxetine  
Fluphenazine  
Flurazepam  
Fluvoxamine  
Frotteurism

**G**

Gabapentin  
Galantamine  
Ganser's syndrome  
Gender identity disorder  
Gender issues in mental health  
Generalized anxiety disorder  
Genetic factors and mental disorders  
Geriatric Depression Scale  
Gestalt therapy  
Ginkgo biloba  
Ginseng  
Grief  
Grief counseling  
Group homes  
Group therapy  
Guided imagery therapy

**H**

Hallucinations  
Hallucinogens and related disorders  
Haloperidol  
Halstead-Reitan Battery  
Hamilton Anxiety Scale  
Hamilton Depression Scale  
Hare Psychopathy Checklist  
Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20  
Histrionic personality disorder  
Homelessness  
Hospitalization  
House-tree-person test  
Hypersomnia  
Hypnotherapy  
Hypoactive sexual desire disorder  
Hypochondriasis  
Hypomania

**I**

Imaging studies  
Imipramine  
Impulse-control disorders  
Informed consent  
Inhalants and related disorders  
Insomnia  
Intelligence tests  
Intermittent explosive disorder  
Internet addiction disorder  
Internet-based therapy  
Interpersonal therapy  
Intervention  
Involuntary hospitalization  
Isocarboxazid

**J**

Juvenile Bipolar Disorder  
Juvenile depression

**K**

Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test  
Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children

Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure  
Kava kava  
Kleine-Levin Syndrome  
Kleptomania

## L

Lamotrigine  
Late-life Depression  
Lavender  
Learning disorders  
Light therapy  
Lithium carbonate  
Lorazepam  
Loxapine  
Luria-Nebraska  
Neuropsychological Battery

## M

Magnetic resonance imaging  
Magnetic seizure therapy  
Major depressive disorder  
Male orgasmic disorder  
Malingering  
Managed care  
Manic episode  
Maprotiline  
Marital and family therapists  
Mathematics disorder  
Matrix model  
Medication-induced movement disorders  
Meditation  
Memantine  
Mental health courts  
Mental retardation  
Mesoridazine  
Methadone  
Methamphetamine  
Methylphenidate  
Mini-mental state examination  
Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory  
Mirtazapine  
Mixed episode  
Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder  
Modeling  
Molindone

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors  
MAOIs  
Movement disorders  
Multisystemic therapy

## N

Naltrexone  
Narcissistic personality disorder  
Narcolepsy  
Nefazodone  
Negative symptoms  
Neglect  
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome  
Neuropsychiatry/Behavioral Neurology  
Neuropsychological testing  
Neurosis  
Neurotransmitters  
Nicotine and related disorders  
Nightmare disorder  
Nortriptyline  
Nutrition and mental health  
Nutrition counseling

## O

Obesity  
Obsession  
Obsessive-compulsive disorder  
Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder  
Olanzapine  
Opioids and related disorders  
Oppositional defiant disorder  
Origin of mental illnesses  
Oxazepam

## P

Pain disorder  
Panic attack  
Panic disorder  
Paranoia  
Paranoid personality disorder  
Paraphilic  
Parent management training  
Paroxetine  
Passionflower  
Pathological gambling disorder  
Paxil and Paxil CR

Pedophilia  
Peer groups  
Pemoline  
Perphenazine  
Personality disorders  
Person-centered therapy  
Pervasive developmental disorders  
Phencyclidine and related disorders  
Phenelzine  
Phonological disorder  
Pica  
Pick's disease  
Pimozide  
Play therapy  
Polysomnography  
Polysubstance dependence  
Positive symptoms  
Positron emission tomography  
Postpartum depression  
Post-traumatic stress disorder  
Premature ejaculation  
Premenstrual Syndrome  
Process addiction  
Propranolol  
Protriptyline  
Pseudocyesis  
Psychiatrist  
Psychoanalysis  
Psychodynamic psychotherapy  
Psychologist  
Psychosis  
Psychosurgery  
Psychotherapy  
Psychotherapy integration  
Pyromania

## Q

Quazepam  
Quetiapine

## R

Rage (road rage)  
Rational emotive therapy  
Reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood  
Reading disorder  
Reinforcement  
Relapse and relapse prevention

Respite  
Rett's disorder  
Reward deficiency syndrome (RDS)  
Riluzole  
Risperidone  
Rivastigmine  
Rorschach technique  
Rosemary  
Rumination disorder

## S

SAME  
Schizoaffective disorder  
Schizoid personality disorder  
Schizophrenia  
Schizophreniform disorder  
Schizotypal personality disorder  
Seasonal affective disorder  
Sedatives and related disorders  
Seizures  
Selective mutism  
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)  
Self mutilation  
Self-control strategies  
Self-help groups  
Separation anxiety disorder  
Sertraline  
Sexual aversion disorder  
Sexual dysfunctions  
Sexual masochism  
Sexual sadism  
Sexual Violence Risk-20  
Shared psychotic disorder  
Single photon emission computed tomography  
Sleep disorders  
Sleep terror disorder  
Sleepwalking disorder  
Smoking Cessation  
Social phobia  
Social skills training  
Social workers  
Somatization and somatoform disorders

Somatization disorder  
Specific phobias  
Speech-language pathology  
St. John's wort  
Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale  
Star-D Study  
STEP-BD study  
Stereotypic movement disorder  
Steroids  
Stigma  
Stress  
Stroke  
Structured clinical interview for DSM-IV  
Stuttering  
Substance abuse and related disorders  
Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory  
Substance-induced anxiety disorder  
Substance-induced psychotic disorder  
Suicide  
Support groups  
Systematic desensitization

## T

Tacrine  
Talk therapy  
Tardive dyskinesia  
Tautomycin  
Temazepam  
Thematic Apperception Test  
Thioridazine  
Thiothixene  
Tic disorders  
Toilet Phobia  
Token economy system  
Transcranial magnetic stimulation  
Transvestic fetishism  
Tranylcypromine  
Trazodone  
Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study

Triazolam  
Trichotillomania  
Trifluoperazine  
Trihexyphenidyl  
Trimipramine

## U

Undifferentiated somatoform disorder  
Urine drug screening

## V

Vaginismus  
Vagus nerve stimulation (VNS)  
Valerian  
Valproic acid  
Vascular dementia  
Venlafaxine  
Vivitrol  
Vocational rehabilitation  
Voyeurism

## W

Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale  
Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children  
Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome  
Wide Range Achievement Test

## Y

Yoga

## Z

Zaleplon  
Ziprasidone  
Zolpidem

## **PLEASE READ—IMPORTANT INFORMATION**

The *Gale Encyclopedia of Mental Health* is a health reference product designed to inform and educate readers about mental health, mental disorders and psychiatry. The Gale Group believes the product to be comprehensive, but not necessarily definitive. It is intended to supplement, not replace, consultation with a physician or other healthcare practitioners. While The Gale Group has made substantial efforts to provide information that is accurate, comprehensive, and up-to-date, The Gale Group makes no representations or warranties of any kind,

including without limitation, warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose, nor does it guarantee the accuracy, comprehensiveness, or timeliness of the information contained in this product. Readers should be aware that the universe of medical knowledge is constantly growing and changing, and that differences of opinion exist among authorities. Readers are also advised to seek professional diagnosis and treatment for any medical condition, and to discuss information obtained from this book with their healthcare provider.

# INTRODUCTION

The *Gale Encyclopedia of Mental Health* is a valuable source of information for anyone who wants to learn more about mental health, disorders, drugs and treatments. This collection of approximately 450 entries provides in-depth coverage of specific disorders recognized by the American Psychiatric Association (as well as some disorders not formally recognized as distinct disorders), diagnostic procedures and techniques, therapies, psychiatric medications, and biographies of several key people who are recognized for their important work in the field of mental health. In addition, entries have been included to facilitate understanding of related topics, such as Advance directives, Crisis housing, and Neurotransmitters.

This encyclopedia minimizes medical jargon and uses language that laypersons can understand, while still providing thorough coverage that will benefit health science students as well.

Entries follow a standardized format that provides information at a glance. Rubrics include:

## Disorders

- Definition
- Description
- Causes and symptoms
- Demographics
- Diagnosis
- Treatments
- Prognosis
- Prevention
- Resources

## Medications

- Definition
- Purpose
- Description

- Recommended dosage
- Precautions
- Side effects
- Interactions
- Resources

## INCLUSION CRITERIA

A preliminary list of mental disorders and related topics was compiled from a wide variety of sources, including professional medical guides and textbooks, as well as consumer guides and encyclopedias. The advisory board, made up of professionals from a variety of health care fields including psychology, psychiatry, pharmacy, and social work, evaluated the topics and made suggestions for inclusion. Final selection of topics to include was made by the advisory board in conjunction with the Gale editors.

## ABOUT THE CONTRIBUTORS

The essays were compiled by experienced medical writers, including physicians, pharmacists, and psychologists. The advisors reviewed the completed essays to ensure that they are appropriate, up-to-date, and accurate.

## HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

The *Gale Encyclopedia of Mental Health* has been designed with ready reference in mind.

- Straight **alphabetical arrangement** of topics allows users to locate information quickly.
- **Bold-faced terms** within entries direct the reader to related articles.
- **Cross-references** placed throughout the encyclopedia direct readers from alternate names, drug brand names, and related topics to entries.

- A list of **key terms** is provided where appropriate to define unfamiliar terms or concepts. A **glossary** of key terms is also included at the back of Volume II.
- The **Resources** sections direct readers to additional sources of information on a topic.
- Valuable **contact information** for organizations and support groups is included with many of the disorder entries.
- A comprehensive **general index** guides readers to all topics mentioned in the text.

## **GRAPHICS**

The *Gale Encyclopedia of Mental Health* contains approximately 120 illustrations, photos, and tables.

## ADVISORY BOARD

Several experts in mental health have provided invaluable assistance in the formulation of this encyclopedia. The editors would like to thank for their time and their contributions.

**Thomas E. Backer**

*President*

Human Interaction Research  
Institute  
*Associate Clinical Professor of  
Medical Psychology*  
School of Medicine  
University of California, Los  
Angeles  
Los Angeles, California

**Debra Franko**

*Professor*

Department of Counseling and  
Applied Educational  
Psychology, School of Health  
Professions  
Northeastern University  
Boston, Massachusetts

**Irene S. Levine, PhD**

*Professor*

New York University School of  
Medicine  
New York, NY  
*Research Scientist*  
Nathan S. Kline Institute for  
Psychiatric Research  
Orangeburg, New York

**Susan Mockus, PhD**

*Medical writer and editor*

Pawtucket, Rhode Island

**Eric Zehr**

*Vice President*

Addiction & Behavioral Services  
Proctor Hospital  
Peoria, Illinois

# A

## Abnormal involuntary movement scale

### Definition

The Abnormal Involuntary Movement Scale (AIMS) is a rating scale that was designed in the 1970s to measure involuntary movements known as **tardive dyskinesia** (TD). TD is a disorder that sometimes develops as a side effect of long-term treatment with neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

### Purpose

Tardive dyskinesia is a syndrome characterized by abnormal involuntary movements of the patient's face, mouth, trunk, or limbs, which affects 20–30% of patients who have been treated for months or years with neuroleptic medications. Patients who are older, are heavy smokers, or have diabetes mellitus are at higher risk of developing TD. The movements of the patient's limbs and trunk are sometimes called choreathetoid, which means a dance-like movement that repeats itself and has no rhythm. The AIMS test is used not only to detect tardive dyskinesia but also to follow the severity of a patient's TD over time. It is a valuable tool for clinicians who are monitoring the effects of long-term treatment with neuroleptic medications and also for researchers studying the effects of these drugs. The AIMS test is given every three to six months to monitor the patient for the development of TD. For most patients, TD develops three months after the initiation of neuroleptic therapy; in elderly patients, however, TD can develop after as little as one month.

### Precautions

The AIMS test was originally developed for administration by trained clinicians. People who are not health care professionals, however, can also be taught to administer the test by completing a training seminar.

### Description

The entire test can be completed in about 10 minutes. The AIMS test has a total of twelve items rating involuntary movements of various areas of the patient's body. These items are rated on a five-point scale of severity from 0–4. The scale is rated from 0 (none), 1 (minimal), 2 (mild), 3 (moderate), 4 (severe). Two of the 12 items refer to dental care. The patient must be calm and sitting in a firm chair that does not have arms, and the patient cannot have anything in his or her mouth. The clinician asks the patient about the condition of his or her teeth and dentures, or if he or she is having any pain or discomfort from dentures.

The remaining 10 items refer to body movements themselves. In this section of the test, the clinician or rater asks the patient about body movements. The rater also looks at the patient in order to note any unusual movements first-hand. The patient is asked if he or she has noticed any unusual movements of the mouth, face, hands or feet. If the patient says yes, the clinician then asks if the movements annoy the patient or interfere with daily activities. Next, the patient is observed for any movements while sitting in the chair with feet flat on the floor, knees separated slightly with the hands on the knees. The patient is asked to open his or her mouth and stick out the tongue twice while the rater watches. The patient is then asked to tap his or her thumb with each finger very rapidly for 10–15 seconds, the right hand first and then the left hand. Again the rater observes the patient's face and legs for any abnormal movements.

After the face and hands have been tested, the patient is then asked to flex (bend) and extend one arm at a time. The patient is then asked to stand up so that the rater can observe the entire body for movements. Next, the patient is asked to extend both arms in front of the body with the palms facing downward. The trunk, legs and mouth are again observed for signs of TD. The patient then walks a few paces, while his or her gait and hands are observed by the rater twice.

## KEY TERMS

**Choreathetoid movements**—Repetitive dance-like movements that have no rhythm.

**Clozapine**—A newer antipsychotic medication that is often given to patients who are developing signs of tardive dyskinesia.

**Neuroleptic**—Another name for the older antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**Syndrome**—A group of symptoms that together characterize a disease or disorder.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

## Results

The total score on the AIMS test is not reported to the patient. A rating of 2 or higher on the AIMS scale, however, is evidence of TD. If the patient has mild TD in two areas or moderate movements in one area, then he or she should be given a **diagnosis** of TD. The AIMS test is considered extremely reliable when it is given by experienced raters.

If the patient's score on the AIMS test suggests the diagnosis of TD, the clinician must consider whether the patient still needs to be on an antipsychotic medication. This question should be discussed with the patient and his or her family. If the patient requires ongoing treatment with antipsychotic drugs, the dose can often be lowered. A lower dosage should result in a lower level of TD symptoms. Another option is to place the patient on a trial dosage of clozapine (Clozaril), a newer antipsychotic medication that has fewer side effects than the older neuroleptics.

*See also* Medication-induced movement disorders; Schizophrenia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Blacker, Deborah, M.D., Sc.D. "Psychiatric Rating Scales." In *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, edited by Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. and Virginia A. Sadock,

M.D. 7th edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

Mischoulon, David, and Maurizio Fava. "Diagnostic Rating Scales and Psychiatric Instruments." In *Psychiatry Update and Board Preparation*, edited by Thomas A. Stern, M.D. and John B. Herman, M.D. New York: McGraw Hill, 2000.

## PERIODICALS

Gervin, Maurice, M.R.C. Psych, and others. "Spontaneous Abnormal Involuntary Movements in First-Episode Schizophrenia and Schizophreniform Disorder: Baseline Rate in a Group of Patients From an Irish Catchment Area." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (September 1998): 1202-1206.

Jeste, Dilip V., M.D., and others. "Incidence of Tardive Dyskinesia in Early Stages of Low Dose Treatment With Typical Neuroleptics in Older Patients." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (February 1999): 309-311.

Ondo, William G., M.D., and others. "Tetrabenazine Treatment for Tardive Dyskinesia: Assessment by Randomized Videotape Protocol." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (August 1999): 1279-1281.

## ORGANIZATIONS

National Alliance for Research on Schizophrenia and Depression (NARSAD). 60 Cutter Mill Road, Suite 404, Great Neck, NY 11021. (516) 829-0091. <[www.mhssource.com](http://www.mhssource.com)>.

National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, Bethesda, MD, 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Susan Hobbs, M.D.

## Abuse

### Definition

Abuse is a complex psychosocial problem that affects large numbers of adults as well as children throughout the world. It is listed in the *Diagnostic and Statistic Manual of Mental Disorders*, the fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*) under the heading of "Other Conditions That May Be a Focus of Clinical Attention." Although abuse was initially defined with regard to children when it first received sustained attention in the 1950s, clinicians and researchers now recognize that adults can suffer abuse under a number of different circumstances. Abuse refers to harmful or injurious treatment of another human being that may include physical, sexual, verbal, psychological/emotional, intellectual, or spiritual maltreatment. Abuse may coexist with **neglect**, which is defined as failure to meet a dependent person's basic physical and

medical needs, emotional deprivation, and/or desperation. Neglect is sometimes described as passive abuse.

The costs of abuse to society run into billions of dollars annually in the United States alone. They include not only the direct costs of immediate medical and psychiatric treatment of abused people but also the indirect costs of learning difficulties, interrupted education, workplace absenteeism, and long-term health problems of abuse survivors.

## **Types of abuse**

### **Physical**

Physical abuse refers to striking or beating another person with the hands or an object, but may include assault with a knife, gun, or other weapon. Physical abuse also includes such behaviors as locking someone in a closet or other small space, depriving someone of sleep, and burning, gagging, or tying someone up. Physical abuse of infants or children may include shaking them, dropping them on the floor, or throwing them against the wall or other hard object.

### **Sexual**

Sexual abuse refers to inappropriate sexual contact between a child or adult and a person who has some kind of family or professional authority over that child or adult. Sexual abuse may include verbal remarks, fondling or kissing, or attempted or completed intercourse. Sexual contact between a child and a biological relative is known as incest, although some therapists extend the term to cover sexual contact between a child and any trusted caregiver, including relatives by marriage. Girls are more likely than boys to be abused sexually. According to a conservative estimate, 38% of girls and 16% of boys are sexually abused before their eighteenth birthday.

### **Verbal**

Verbal abuse refers to regular and consistent belittling, name-calling, labeling, or ridicule of a person. It may also include spoken threats. It is one of the most difficult forms of abuse to prove because it does not leave physical scars or other evidence, but it is nonetheless hurtful. Verbal abuse may occur in schools or workplaces as well as in families.

### **Emotional/psychological**

Emotional/psychological abuse covers a variety of behaviors that hurt or injure others even though no physical contact may be involved. In fact, emotional abuse is a stronger predictor than physical

abuse of the likelihood of **suicide** attempts in later life. One form of emotional abuse involves the destruction of someone's pet or valued possession in order to cause pain. Another abusive behavior is emotional blackmail, such as threatening to commit suicide unless the other person does what is wanted. Other behaviors in this category include the silent treatment, shaming or humiliating people in front of others, or punishing them for receiving an award or honor.

### **Intellectual/spiritual**

Intellectual/spiritual abuse refers to such behaviors as punishing people for having different intellectual interests or religious beliefs from others in the family, preventing them from attending worship services, ridiculing their opinions, and the like.

## **Child abuse**

Child abuse first attracted national attention in the United States in the 1950s, when a Denver pediatrician named C. Henry Kempe began publishing his findings regarding x-ray evidence of intentional injuries to small children. Kempe's research was followed by numerous investigations of other signs of child abuse and neglect, including **learning disorders**, malnutrition, failure to thrive, conduct disorders, emotional retardation, and sexually transmitted diseases in very young children.

Experts believe that child abuse in the United States is still significantly underreported. In 2004, there were an estimated 1,490 child deaths from abuse or neglect in the United States, indicating a rate of two children for every 100,000 in the population. In recent years, the rate of maltreatment and child abuse appears to have decreased and was reported in 2004 to be 11.9 children for every thousand in the United States. The forms of abuse included neglect, physical abuse, sexual abuse, and emotional or psychological abuse. Of the children who survive abuse, an estimated 20% have permanent physical injury. Children with birth defects, developmental delays, or chronic illnesses are at higher risk of being abused by parents or other caregivers.

## **Abused adults**

The women's movement of the 1970s led not only to greater recognition of domestic violence and other forms of abuse of adults, but also to research into the factors in the wider society that perpetuate abusive attitudes and behaviors. Women are more likely than men to be the targets of abuse in adult life, and one in four women will experience domestic violence in her lifetime.

### ***Domestic violence***

Domestic violence refers to the physical, emotional, and sexual abuse of a spouse or domestic partner. Early research into the problem of wife battering focused on middle-class couples, but it has since been recognized that spouse abuse occurs among couples of any socioeconomic status. In addition, domestic violence also occurs among gay and lesbian couples. It is estimated that four million women in the United States are involved in abusive marriages or relationships; moreover, a significant percentage of female murder victims are killed by their spouses or partners rather than by strangers.

Domestic violence illustrates the tendency of abusive people to attack anyone they perceive as vulnerable: most men who batter women also abuse their children; some battered women abuse their children; and abusive humans are frequently cruel to animals.

### ***Elder abuse***

Elder abuse has also become a subject of national concern in the last two decades. As older adults live longer, many become dependent for years on adult caregivers, who may be either their own adult children or nursing home personnel. Care of the elderly can be extremely stressful, especially if the older adult has **dementia**. Elder abuse may include physical hitting or slapping; withholding food or medications; tying them to a chair or bed; neglecting to bathe them or help them to the toilet; taking their personal possessions, including money or property; and restricting or cutting off their contacts with friends and relatives.

### ***Abusive professional relationships***

Adults can also be abused by sexually exploitative doctors, therapists, clergy, and other helping professionals. Although instances of this type of abuse were dismissed prior to the 1980s as consensual participation in sexual activity, most professionals now recognize that these cases actually reflect the practitioner's abuse of social and educational power. About 85% of sexual abuse cases in the professions involve male practitioners and female clients; another 12% involve male practitioners and male clients; and the remaining 3% involve female practitioners and either male or female clients. Ironically, many of these abusive relationships hurt women who sought professional help in order to deal with the effects of childhood abuse.

### ***Stalking***

Stalking, or the repeated pursuit or surveillance of another person by physical or electronic means, is now

defined as a crime in all 50 states. Many cases of stalking are extensions of domestic violence, in that the stalker (usually a male) attempts to track down a wife or girlfriend who left him. However, stalkers may also be casual acquaintances, workplace colleagues, or even total strangers. Stalking may include a number of abusive behaviors, including forced entry into a person's home, destruction of cars or other personal property, anonymous letters to a person's friends or employer, or repeated phone calls, letters, or e-mails. About 80% of stalking cases reported to police involve men stalking women.

### ***Workplace bullying***

Workplace **bullying** is, like stalking, increasingly recognized as interpersonal abuse. It should not be confused with sexual harassment or racial discrimination. Workplace bullying refers to verbal abuse of other workers, interfering with their work, withholding equipment or other resources they need to do their job, or invading their personal space, including touching them in a controlling manner. Half of all workplace bullies are women, and the majority (81%) are bosses or supervisors.

### **Causes of abuse**

The causes of interpersonal abuse are complex and overlapping. Some of the most important factors are:

- early learning experiences: This factor is sometimes described as the "life cycle" of abuse. Many abusive parents were themselves abused as children and have learned to see hurtful behavior as normal childrearing. At the other end of the life cycle, some adults who abuse their elderly parent are paying back the parent for abusing them in their early years.
- ignorance of developmental timetables: Some parents have unrealistic expectations of children in terms of the appropriate age for toilet training, feeding themselves, and similar milestones; they may attack their children for not meeting these expectations.
- economic stress: Many caregivers cannot afford part-time day care for children or dependent elderly parents, which would relieve some of their emotional strain. Even middle-class families can be financially stressed if they find themselves responsible for the costs of caring for elderly parents before their own children are financially independent.
- lack of social support or social resources: Caregivers who have the support of an extended family, religious group, or close friends and neighbors are less likely to lose their self-control under stress.

- substance abuse: Alcohol and mood-altering drugs do not cause abuse directly, but they weaken or remove a person's inhibitions against violence toward others. In addition, the cost of a drug habit often gives a person with a substance addiction another reason for resenting the needs of the dependent person. A majority of workplace bullies are substance addicts.
- mental disorders: Depression, personality disorders, dissociative disorders, and anxiety disorders can all affect parents' ability to care for their children appropriately. A small percentage of abusive parents or spouses are psychotic.
- belief systems: Many men still think that they have a "right" to a relationship with a woman; and many people regard parents' rights over children as absolute.
- the role of bystanders: Research in the social sciences has shown that one factor that encourages abusers to continue their hurtful behavior is discovering that people who know about or suspect the abuse are reluctant to get involved. In most cases, bystanders are afraid of possible physical, social, or legal consequences for reporting abuse. The result, however, is that many abusers come to see themselves as invulnerable.

## Aftereffects

Abuse affects all dimensions of human development and existence.

### *Physical and neurobiological*

In addition to such direct results of trauma as broken bones or ruptured internal organs, physically abused children often display retarded physical growth and poor coordination. Malnutrition may slow the development of the **brain** as well as produce such dietary deficiency diseases as rickets. In both children and adults, repeated trauma produces changes in the neurochemistry of the brain that affect memory formation. Instead of memories being formed in the normal way, which allows them to be modified by later experiences and integrated into a person's ongoing life, traumatic memories are stored as chaotic fragments of emotion and sensation that are sealed off from ordinary consciousness. These traumatic memories may then erupt from time to time in the form of flashbacks.

### *Cognitive and emotional*

Abused children develop distorted patterns of cognition (knowing) because they are stressed emotionally by abuse. As adults, they may experience cognitive distortions that make it hard for them to distinguish between normal occurrences and abnor-

mal ones, or between important matters and relatively trivial ones. They often misinterpret other people's behavior and refuse to trust them. Emotional distortions include such patterns as being unable to handle strong feelings, or being unusually tolerant of behavior from others that most people would protest.

### *Social and educational*

The cognitive and emotional aftereffects of abuse have a powerful impact on adult educational, social, and occupational functioning. Children who are abused are often in physical and emotional pain at school; they cannot concentrate on schoolwork, and consequently fall behind in their grades. They often find it hard to make or keep friends, and may be victimized by bullies or become bullies themselves. In adult life, abuse survivors are at risk of repeating childhood patterns through forming relationships with abusive spouses, employers, or professionals. Even though survivors may consciously want to avoid further abuse, they are often unconsciously attracted to people who remind them of their family of origin. Abused adults are also likely to fail to complete their educations, or they accept employment that is significantly below their actual level of ability.

### **Treatment**

Treatment of the aftereffects of abuse must be tailored to the needs of the specific individual, but usually involves a variety of long-term considerations that may include legal concerns, geographical relocation, and housing or employment as well as immediate medical or psychiatric care.

### *Medical and psychiatric*

In addition to requiring immediate treatment for physical injuries, abused children and adults often need long-term **psychotherapy** in order to recover from specific mental disorders and to learn new ways of dealing with distorted thoughts and feelings. This approach to therapy is known as cognitive restructuring. Specific mental disorders that have been linked to childhood abuse include major depression, **bulimia nervosa**, **social phobia**, Munchausen syndrome by proxy, **generalized anxiety disorder**, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, **borderline personality disorder**, **dissociative amnesia**, and **dissociative identity disorder**. Abused adults may develop post-traumatic stress disorder, major depression, or substance abuse disorders. At present, researchers are focusing on genetic factors as a partial explanation of the fact that some people appear to react more intensely than others to being abused.

## KEY TERMS

**Cognitive restructuring**—An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping patients examine distorted patterns of perceiving and thinking in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Flashback**—The reemergence of a traumatic memory as a vivid recollection of sounds, images, and sensations associated with the trauma. Those having the flashbacks typically feel as if they are reliving the event.

**Incest**—Unlawful sexual contact between people who are biologically related. Many therapists, however, use the term to refer to inappropriate sexual contact between any members of a family, including stepparents and stepsiblings.

**Stalking**—The intentional pursuit or surveillance of another person, usually with the intent of forcing that person into a dating or marriage relationship. Stalking is now punishable as a crime in all 50 states.

### Legal considerations

Medical professionals and, increasingly, religious professionals, are required by law to report child abuse to law enforcement officials, usually a child protection agency. Physicians are granted immunity from lawsuits for making such reports.

Adults in abusive situations may encounter a variety of responses from law enforcement or the criminal justice system. In general, cases of spouse abuse, stalking, and sexual abuse by professionals are taken more seriously than they were two or three decades ago. Many communities now require police officers to arrest aggressors in domestic violence situations, and a growing number of small towns as well as cities have shelters for family members fleeing violent households. All major medical, educational, and legal professional societies, as well as mainstream religious bodies, have adopted strict codes of ethics, and have procedures in place for reporting cases of abuse by their members.

## Prevention

Prevention of abuse requires long-term social changes in attitudes toward violence, gender roles, and the relationship of the family to other institutions. Research in the structure and function of the brain may help to develop more effective treatments for the aftereffects of abuse and possibly new approaches to help break the intergenerational cycle of abuse. At present, preventive measures include protective removal of children or elders from abusive households, legal penalties for abusive spouses and professionals, and education of the public about the nature and causes of abuse.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Baumeister, Roy F., PhD. *Evil: Inside Human Violence and Cruelty*. New York: W. H. Freeman and Company, 1999.
- Beers, Mark H., MD. "Chapter 41: Behavior Disorders in Dementia." *The Merck Manual of Geriatrics*, Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2000.
- "Child Abuse and Neglect." Section 19, Chapter 264 in *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Herman, Judith, MD. *Trauma and Recovery*. 2nd ed., revised. New York: Basic Books, 1997.
- Marcantonio, Edward, MD. "Dementia." Chapter 40 in *The Merck Manual of Geriatrics*, Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2000.
- Morris, Virginia. *How to Care for Aging Parents*. New York: Workman Publishing, 1996.
- Rutter, Peter, MD. *Sex in the Forbidden Zone: When Men in Power—Therapists, Doctors, Clergy, Teachers, and Others—Betray Women's Trust*. New York: Jeremy P. Tarcher, 1989.
- Stout, Martha, PhD. *The Myth of Sanity: Tales of Multiple Personality in Everyday Life*. New York: Penguin Books, 2001.
- Walker, Lenore E., PhD. *The Battered Woman*. New York: Harper & Row, 1979.
- Weitzman, Susan, PhD. *"Not to People Like Us": Hidden Abuse in Upscale Marriages*. New York: Basic Books, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Carter, Ann. "Abuse of Older Adults." *Clinical Reference Systems Annual* (2000): 12.
- Gibb, Brandon E., and others. "Childhood Maltreatment and College Students' Current Suicidal Ideation: A Test

- of the Hopelessness Theory." *Suicide and Life-Threatening Behavior* 31 (2001): 405–15.
- Lieb, Rosalind. "Parental Psychopathology, Parenting Styles, and the Risk of Social Phobia in Offspring: A Prospective-Longitudinal Community Study." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 284 (December 13, 2000): 2855.
- Plunkett, A., and others. "Suicide Risk Following Child Sexual Abuse." *Ambulatory Pediatrics* 1 (September–October 2001): 262–66.
- Redford, Jennifer. "Are Sexual Abuse and Bulimia Linked?" *Physician Assistant* 25 (March 2001): 21.
- Steiger, Howard, and others. "Association of Serotonin and Cortisol Indices with Childhood Abuse in Bulimia Nervosa." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 58 (September 2001): 837.
- Strayhorn, Joseph M., Jr. "Self-Control: Theory and Research." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 41 (January 2002): 7–16.
- Van der Kolk, Bessel. "The Body Keeps the Score: Memory and the Evolving Psychobiology of PTSD." *Harvard Review of Psychiatry* 1 (1994): 253–65.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.
- C. Henry Kempe National Center for the Prevention and Treatment of Child Abuse and Neglect. 1205 Oneida Street, Denver, CO 80220. Telephone: (303) 321-3963.
- National Coalition Against Domestic Violence. 1120 Lincoln Street, Suite 1603, Denver, CO, 80203, Telephone: (303) 839-1852, Fax: (303) 831-9251, TTY: (303) 839-1681. <<http://www.ncadv.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

## OTHER

- Campaign Against Workplace Bullying. P. O. Box 1886, Benicia, CA 94510. <[www.bullybusters.org](http://www.bullybusters.org)>.
- Child Welfare Information Gateway. "Child Abuse and Neglect Fatalities: Statistics and Interventions." 2006. <<http://www.childwelfare.gov/pubs/factsheets/fatality.pdf>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Domestic Violence." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/domesticviolence.html>>.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Administration on Children, Youth and Families. *Child Maltreatment 2004* (Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 2006). <<http://www.acf.hhs.gov/programs/cb/pubs/cm04/cm04.pdf>>.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Acne excoriate see **Dermatillomania**  
Acupressure see **Bodywork therapies**

## Acupuncture

### Definition

Acupuncture, one of the main forms of therapy in traditional Chinese medicine (TCM), has been practiced for at least 2,500 years. In acupuncture, certain points on the body associated with energy channels or meridians are stimulated by the insertion of fine needles. Unlike the hollow hypodermic needles used in mainstream medicine to give injections or draw blood, acupuncture needles are solid. The points can be needled between 15 and 90 degrees in range relative to the skin's surface, depending on treatment.

Acupuncture is thought to restore health by removing energy imbalances and blockages in the body. Practitioners of TCM believe that there is a vital force or energy called *qi* (pronounced "chee") that flows through the body, and between the skin surface and the internal organs, along channels or pathways called meridians. There are 12 major and eight minor meridians. Qi regulates the spiritual, emotional, mental, and physical harmony of the body by keeping the forces of yin and yang in balance. Yang is a principle of heat, activity, brightness, outwardness, while yin represents coldness, passivity, darkness, interiority, etc. TCM does not try to eliminate either yin or yang, but to keep them in harmonious balance. Acupuncture may be used to raise or lower the level of yin or yang in a specific part of the body in order to restore the energy balance.

Acupuncture was virtually unknown in the United States prior to President Nixon's trip to China in 1972. A reporter for the *New York Times* named James Reston wrote a story for the newspaper about the doctors in Beijing who used acupuncture to relieve his pain following abdominal surgery. By 1993, Americans were making 12 million visits per year to acupuncturists, and spending \$500 million annually on acupuncture treatments. By 1995, there were an estimated 10,000 certified acupuncturists practicing in the United States; as of 2000, there were 20,000. About a third of the credentialed acupuncturists in the United States are MDs.

Acupuncture's record of success has been sufficiently impressive to stimulate a number of research projects investigating its mechanisms as well as its efficacy. Research has been funded not only by the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM), but also by the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA), the National Institute of Dental Research, the National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS), and the

National Institute on Drug Abuse. In 1997 a consensus panel of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) presented a landmark report in which it described acupuncture as a sufficiently promising form of treatment to merit further study. In 2000, the British Medical Association (BMA) recommended that acupuncture should be made more readily available through the National Health Service (NHS), and that family doctors should be trained in some of its techniques.

## Purpose

The purpose of acupuncture in TCM is the rebalancing of opposing energy forces in different parts of the body. In Western terms, acupuncture is used most commonly as an adjunctive treatment for the relief of chronic or acute pain. In the United States, acupuncture is most widely used to treat pain associated with musculoskeletal disorders, but it has also been used in the treatment of **substance abuse**, and to relieve nausea and vomiting. A study done in 2001 showed that acupuncture was highly effective in stopping the intense vomiting associated with a condition in pregnant women known as hyperemesis gravidarum. In the past several years, acupuncture has been tried with a new patient population, namely children with **chronic pain** syndromes. One study of 30 young patients with disorders ranging from migraine headaches to endometriosis found that 70% felt that their symptoms had been relieved by acupuncture, and described themselves as “pleased” by the results of treatment. In addition to these disorders, acupuncture has been used in the United States to treat asthma, infertility, **depression**, **anxiety**, HIV infection, fibromyalgia, menstrual cramps, carpal tunnel syndrome, tennis elbow, pitcher’s shoulder, chronic **fatigue** syndrome, and postoperative pain. It has even been used in veterinary medicine to treat chronic pain and prevent epileptic convulsions in animals. As of 2002, NCCAM is sponsoring research regarding the effectiveness of acupuncture in the rehabilitation of stroke patients.

The exact Western medicine mechanism by which acupuncture works is not known. Western researchers have suggested three basic explanations of acupuncture’s efficacy in pain relief:

- Western studies have found evidence that the traditional acupuncture points conduct electromagnetic signals. Stimulating the acupuncture points causes these signals to be relayed to the brain at a higher than normal rate. These signals in turn cause the brain to release pain-relieving chemicals known as endorphins, and immune system cells to weak or injured parts of the body.

- Other studies have shown that acupuncture activates the release of opioids into the central nervous system. Opioids are also analgesic, or pain-relieving compounds.
- Acupuncture appears to alter the chemical balance of the brain itself by modifying the production and release of neurotransmitters and neurohormones. Acupuncture has been documented to affect certain involuntary body functions, including immune reactions, blood pressure, and body temperature.

In addition to its efficacy in relieving pain and other chronic conditions, acupuncture has gained in popularity because of several additional advantages:

- It lacks the side effects associated with many medications and surgical treatments in Western medicine.
- It is highly cost-effective; it may be used early in the course of a disease, potentially saving the patient the cost of hospitalizations, laboratory tests, and high-priced drugs.
- It can easily be combined with other forms of therapy, including psychotherapy.
- It is noninvasive.
- It carries relatively few risks.

## Precautions

Although the risk of infection in acupuncture is minimal, patients should make sure that the acupuncturist uses sterile disposable needles. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) mandates the use of sterilized needles made from non-toxic materials. The needles must be clearly labeled as having their use restricted to qualified practitioners.

Patients should also inquire about the practitioner’s credentials. Since acupuncture is now taught in over forty accredited medical schools and osteopathic colleges in the United States, patients who would prefer to be treated by an MD or an osteopath can obtain a list of licensed physicians who practice acupuncture in their area from the American Academy of Medical Acupuncture. With regard to non-physician acupuncturists, 31 states have established training standards that acupuncturists must meet in order to be licensed in those states. In Great Britain, practitioners must qualify by passing a course offered by the British Acupuncture Accreditation Board.

Patients seeking acupuncture treatment should provide the practitioner with the same information about their health conditions and other forms of treatment that they would give their primary care doctor. This information should include other alternative and complementary therapies, especially herbal remedies.

Acupuncture should not be used to treat severe traumatic injuries and other emergency conditions requiring immediate surgery. In addition, it does not appear to be useful in **smoking cessation** programs.

As is true with other forms of medical treatment, a minority of patients do not respond to acupuncture. The reasons for nonresponsiveness are not known at the present stage of research.

## Description

In traditional Chinese medicine, acupuncture treatment begins with a thorough physical examination in which the practitioner evaluates the patient's skin color, vocal tone, and tongue color and coating. The practitioner then takes the patient's pulse at six locations and three depth levels on each wrist. These 36 pulse measurements will tell the practitioner where the *qi* in the patient's body might be blocked or unbalanced. After collecting this information, the acupuncturist will then identify the patterns of energy disturbance and the acupuncture points that should be stimulated to unblock the *qi* or restore harmony. Up to 10 or 12 acupuncture needles will be inserted at strategic points along the relevant meridians. In traditional Chinese practice, the needles are twirled or rotated as they are inserted. Many patients feel nothing at all during this procedure, although others experience a prickling or mild aching sensation, and still others a feeling of warmth or heaviness.

The practitioner may combine acupuncture with moxibustion to increase the effectiveness of the treatment. Moxibustion is a technique in which the acupuncturist lights a small piece of wormwood, called a moxa, above the acupuncture point above the skin. When the patient begins to feel the warmth from the burning herb, it is removed. Cupping is another technique that is a method of stimulation of acupuncture points by applying suction through a metal, wood, or glass jar, and in which a partial vacuum has been created. Producing blood congestion at the site, the site is thus stimulated. The method is used for lower back pain, sprains, soft tissue injuries, as well as relieving fluid from the lungs in chronic bronchitis.

In addition to the traditional Chinese techniques of acupuncture, the following are also used in the United States:

- **Electroacupuncture.** In this form of acupuncture, the traditional acupuncture points are stimulated by an electronic device instead of a needle.
- **Japanese meridian acupuncture.** Japanese acupuncture uses thinner, smaller needles, and focuses on the meridians rather than on specific points along their course.

- **Korean hand acupuncture.** Traditional Korean medicine regards the hand as a "map" of the entire body, such that any part of the body can be treated by stimulating the corresponding point on the hand.
- **Western medical acupuncture.** Western physicians trained in this style of acupuncture insert needles into so-called trigger points in sore muscles, as well as into the traditional points used in Chinese medicine.
- **Ear acupuncture.** This technique regards the ear as having acupuncture points that correspond to other parts of the body. Ear acupuncture is often used to treat substance abuse and chronic pain syndromes.

A standard acupuncture treatment takes between 45 minutes to an hour and costs between \$40 and \$100, although initial appointments often cost more. Chronic conditions usually require 10 treatment sessions, but acute conditions or minor illnesses may require only one or two visits. Follow-up visits are often scheduled for patients with chronic pain. About 70–80% of health insurers in the United States reimbursed patients for acupuncture treatments.

## Preparation

Apart from a medical history and physical examination, no specific preparation is required for an acupuncture treatment. In addition to using sterile needles, licensed acupuncturists will wipe the skin over each acupuncture point with an antiseptic solution before inserting the needle.

## Aftercare

No particular aftercare is required, as the needles should not draw blood when properly inserted. Many patients experience a feeling of relaxation or even a pleasant drowsiness after the treatment. Some patients report feeling energized.

## Risks

Several American and British reports have concluded that the risks to the patient from an acupuncture treatment are minimal. Most complications from acupuncture fall into one of three categories: infections, most often from improperly sterilized needles; bruising or minor soft tissue injury; and injuries to muscle tissue. Serious side effects with sterilized needles are rare, although cases of pneumothorax and cardiac tamponade have been reported in the European literature. One American pediatrician estimates that the risk of serious injury from acupuncture performed by a licensed practitioner ranges between 1:10,000 and 1:100,000—or about the same degree of risk as a negative reaction to penicillin.

## KEY TERMS

**Cardiac tamponade**—A condition in which blood leaking into the membrane surrounding the heart puts pressure on the heart muscle, preventing complete filling of the heart's chambers and normal heartbeat.

**Electroacupuncture**—A variation of acupuncture in which the practitioner stimulates the traditional acupuncture points electronically.

**Endorphins**—A group of peptide compounds released by the body in response to stress or traumatic injury. Endorphins react with opiate receptors in the brain to reduce or relieve pain.

**Hyperemesis gravidarum**—Uncontrollable nausea and vomiting associated with pregnancy. Acupuncture appears to be an effective treatment for women with this condition.

**Meridians**—In traditional Chinese medicine, a network of pathways or channels that convey qi (also sometimes spelled “ki”), or vital energy, through the body.

**Moxibustion**—A technique in traditional Chinese medicine that involves burning a *Moxa*, or cone of dried wormwood leaves, close to the skin to relieve pain. When used with acupuncture, the cone is placed on top of the needle at an acupuncture point and burned.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Opioids**—Substances that reduce pain and may induce sleep. Some opioids are endogenous, which means that they are produced within the human body. Other opioids are produced by plants or formulated synthetically in the laboratory.

**Pneumothorax**—A condition in which air or gas is present in the chest cavity.

**Qi**—The Chinese term for energy, life force, or vital force.

**Yin and yang**—In traditional Chinese medicine and philosophy, a pair of opposing forces whose harmonious balance in the body is necessary to good health.

### Normal results

Normal results from acupuncture are relief of pain and/or improvement of the condition being treated.

### Abnormal results

Abnormal results from acupuncture include infection, a severe side effect, or worsening of the condition being treated.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. “Acupuncture: From the Yellow Emperor to Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI).” Chapter 5 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.

Reid, Daniel P. *Chinese Herbal Medicine*. Boston, MA: Shambhala, 1993.

Svoboda, Robert, and Arnie Lade. *Tao and Dharma: Chinese Medicine and Ayurveda*. Twin Lakes, WI: Lotus Press, 1995.

#### PERIODICALS

Cerrato, Paul L. “New Studies on Acupuncture and Emesis (Acupuncture for Relief of Nausea and Vomiting Caused by Chemotherapy).” *Contemporary OB/GYN* 46 (April 2001): 749.

Kemper, Kathi J., and others. “On Pins and Needles? Pediatric Pain: Patients’ Experience with Acupuncture.” *Pediatrics* 105 (April 2000): 620–633.

Kirchgatterer, Andreas. “Cardiac Tamponade Following Acupuncture.” *Chest* 117 (May 2000): 1510–1511.

Nwabudike, Lawrence C., and Constantin Ionescu-Tirgoviste. “Acupuncture in the Treatment of Diabetic Peripheral Neuropathy.” *Diabetes* 49 (May 2000): 628.

Silvert, Mark. “Acupuncture Wins BMA Approval (British Medical Association).” *British Medical Journal* 321 (July 1, 2000): 637–639.

Vickers, Andrew. “Acupuncture (ABC of Complementary Medicine).” *British Medical Journal* 319 (October 9, 1999): 704–708.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Medical Acupuncture/Medical Acupuncture Research Organization. 5820 Wilshire Boulevard, Suite 500, Los Angeles, CA 90036. Telephone: (800) 521-2262 or (323) 937-5514. Fax: (323) 937-0959. <[www.medicalacupuncture.org](http://www.medicalacupuncture.org)>.

American Association of Oriental Medicine. 433 Front Street, Catasauqua, PA 18032. Telephone: (610) 266-1433. Fax: (610) 264-2768. <[www.aaom.org](http://www.aaom.org)>.

National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) Clearinghouse. P.O. Box 7923, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. Telephone: (888) 644-6226. TTY: (866) 464-3615. Fax: (866) 464-3616. <[www.nccam.nih.gov](http://www.nccam.nih.gov)>.

**OTHER**

National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). Fact Sheets. *Acupuncture Information and Resources.* <[www.nccam.nih.gov/fcp/factsheets/acupuncture](http://www.nccam.nih.gov/fcp/factsheets/acupuncture)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Acute stress disorder

### Definition

Acute **stress** disorder (ASD) is an **anxiety** disorder characterized by a cluster of dissociative and anxiety symptoms that occur within a month of a traumatic stressor. It is a relatively new diagnostic category and was added to the fourth edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV)* in 1994 to distinguish time-limited reactions to trauma from the farther-reaching and longer-lasting **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD). Published by the American Psychiatric Association, the *DSM* contains diagnostic criteria, research findings, and treatment information for mental disorders. It is the primary reference for mental health professionals in the United States.

### Description

ASD, like PTSD, begins with exposure to an extremely traumatic, horrifying, or terrifying event. Unlike PTSD, however, ASD emerges sooner and abates more quickly; it is also marked by more dissociative symptoms. If left untreated, however, ASD is likely to progress to PTSD. Because the two share many symptoms, some researchers and clinicians question the validity of maintaining separate diagnostic categories. Others explain them as two phases of an extended reaction to traumatic stress.

### Causes and symptoms

#### *Causes*

The immediate cause of ASD is exposure to trauma—an extreme stressor involving a threat to life or the prospect of serious injury; witnessing an event that involves the death or serious injury of another person; or learning of the violent death or serious injury of a family member or close friend. The trauma's impact is determined by its cause, scope, and extent. Natural disasters (floods, earthquakes, hurricanes, etc.) or accidents (plane crashes, workplace explosions) are less traumatic than human

acts of intentional cruelty or terrorism. Terrorist-inflicted trauma appears to produce particularly high rates of ASD and PTSD in survivors and bystanders.

Although most people define trauma in terms of events such as war, terrorist attacks, and other events that result in vast loss of life, the leading cause of stress-related mental disorders in the United States is motor vehicle accidents. Most Americans will be involved in a traffic accident at some point in their lives, and 25% of the population will be involved in accidents resulting in serious injuries. The National Comorbidity Survey of 1995 found that 9% of survivors of serious motor vehicle accidents developed ASD or PTSD.

Several factors influence a person's risk of developing ASD after trauma:

- Age—Older adults are less likely to develop ASD, possibly because they have had more experience coping with painful or stressful events.
- Previous exposure—People who were abused or experienced trauma as children are more likely to develop ASD (or PTSD) as adults, because these may produce long-lasting biochemical changes in the central nervous system.
- Biological vulnerability—Twin studies indicate that certain abnormalities in brain hormone levels and brain structure are inherited, and that these increase a person's susceptibility to ASD following exposure to trauma.
- Support networks—People who have a network of close friends and relatives are less likely to develop ASD.
- Perception and interpretation—People who feel inappropriate responsibility for the trauma, regard the event as punishment for personal wrongdoing, or have generally negative or pessimistic worldviews are more likely to develop ASD than those who do not personalize the trauma or are able to maintain a balanced view of life.

#### *Symptoms*

Acute stress disorder may be diagnosed in patients who lived through or witnessed a traumatic event to which they responded with intense fear, horror, or helplessness, and are currently experiencing three or more of the following dissociative symptoms:

- psychic numbing
- being dazed or less aware of surroundings
- derealization
- depersonalization
- dissociative amnesia

Other symptoms that indicate ASD are:

- Reexperiencing the trauma in recurrent dreams, images, thoughts, illusions, or flashbacks; or intense distress when exposed to reminders of the trauma.
- A marked tendency to avoid people, places, objects, conversations, and other stimuli reminiscent of the trauma (many people who develop ASD after a traffic accident, for example, refuse to drive a car for a period of time).
- Hyperarousal or anxiety, including sleep problems, irritability, inability to concentrate, an unusually intense startle response, hypervigilance, and physical restlessness (pacing the floor, fidgeting, etc.).
- Significantly impaired social functions and/or the inability to do necessary tasks, including seeking help.
- Symptoms last for a minimum of two days and a maximum of four weeks, and occur within four weeks of the traumatic event.
- The symptoms are not caused by a substance (medication or drug of abuse) or by a general medical condition; do not meet the criteria of a brief psychotic disorder; and do not represent the worsening of a mental disorder that the person had before the traumatic event.

People with ASD may also show symptoms of **depression** including difficulty enjoying activities that they previously found pleasurable; difficulty in concentrating; and survivor's guilt at having survived an accident or escaping serious injury when others did not. The *DSM-IV-TR* (revised edition published in 2000) notes that people diagnosed with ASD "often perceive themselves to have greater responsibility for the consequences of the trauma than is warranted," and may feel that they will not live out their normal lifespans. Many symptoms of ASD are also found in patients with PTSD.

## Demographics

Acute responses to traumatic stressors are far more widespread in the general United States population than was first thought in 1980, when PTSD was introduced as a diagnostic category in the *DSM-III*. The National Comorbidity Survey, a major epidemiological study conducted between 1990 and 1992, estimated that the lifetime prevalence among adult Americans is 7.8%, with women (10.4%) twice as likely as men (5%) to be diagnosed with trauma-related stress disorders at some point in their lives. These figures represent only a small proportion of adults who have experienced at least one traumatic event—60.7% of men and 51.2% of women respectively. More than

10% of the men and 6% of the women reported experiencing four or more types of trauma in their lives.

The prevalence of ASD by itself in the general United States population is not known. A few studies of people exposed to traumatic events found rates of ASD between 14% and 33%. Some groups are at greater risk of developing ASD or PTSD, including people living in depressed urban areas or on Native American reservations (23%) and victims of violent crimes (58%).

## Diagnosis

ASD symptoms develop within a month after the traumatic event; it is still unknown, however, why some trauma survivors develop symptoms more rapidly than others. Delayed symptoms are often triggered by a situation that resembles the original trauma.

ASD is usually diagnosed by matching the patient's symptoms to the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria. The patient may also meet the criteria for a major depressive episode or **major depressive disorder**. A person who has been exposed to a traumatic stressor and has developed symptoms that do not meet the criteria for ASD may be diagnosed as having an adjustment disorder.

There are no diagnostic interviews or questionnaires in widespread use for diagnosing ASD, although screening instruments specific to the disorder are being developed. A group of Australian clinicians has developed a 19-item Acute Stress Disorder Scale, which appears to be effective in diagnosing ASD but frequently makes false-positive predictions of PTSD. The authors of the scale recommend that its use should be followed by a careful clinical evaluation.

## Treatments

Therapy for ASD requires the use of several treatment modalities because the disorder affects systems of belief and meaning, interpersonal relationships, and occupational functioning as well as physical well-being.

### Medications

Medications are usually limited to those necessary for treating individual symptoms. **Clonidine** is given for hyperarousal; **propranolol**, **clonazepam**, or **alprazolam** for anxiety and panic reactions; **fluoxetine** for avoidance symptoms; and **trazodone** or topiramate for **insomnia** and nightmares. **Antidepressants** may be prescribed if ASD progresses to PTSD. These medications may include **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), or tricyclic antidepressants.

### ***Psychotherapy***

Cognitive behavioral therapy, exposure therapy, therapeutic writing (journaling), and supportive therapy have been found effective in treating ASD. One variant of cognitive behavioral therapy called psycho-educational therapy appears to be three to four times as effective as supportive therapy in preventing ASD from progressing to PTSD. This treatment combines cognitive restructuring of the traumatic event with exposure to disturbing images and techniques for anxiety management. In addition, it can help patients identify and reinforce positive aspects of their experience. For example, some people find new strengths or talents within themselves in times of crisis, or discover new spiritual resources.

Group and family therapies also appear to help patients with ASD reinforce effective strategies for coping with the trauma, and may reduce the risk of social isolation as a reaction to the trauma. They give patients opportunities to describe what happened and how they responded; they also let patients receive warmth and caring from their listeners, and help put memories of the event into a coherent narrative, allowing them to integrate the trauma into their overall lives.

Critical incident stress management (CISM) is a comprehensive crisis-intervention system in which a team of specially trained practitioners comes to the site of a traumatic event and provides several different forms of assistance, including one-on-one crisis support; crisis management briefing, which is a 45–75-minute intervention for groups of people affected by the traumatic event; and critical incident stress debriefing, which is a structured group discussion of the event. CISM appears to be particularly helpful in preventing burnout and ASD in emergency service personnel, rescue personnel, police, and other caregivers who are involved in treating survivors of a traumatic event.

### ***Alternative and complementary treatments***

Many mainstream practitioners recommend holistic or naturopathic approaches to recovery from ASD, including good nutrition with appropriate dietary supplements and regular exercise. **Yoga** and some forms of body work or massage therapy are helpful in treating the muscular soreness and stiffness that is often a side effect of the anxiety and insomnia related to ASD. Hydrotherapy is often helpful for post-traumatic muscular aches and cramps. A skilled naturopath may also recommend peppermint or other herbal preparations to calm the patient's digestive tract. In addition, prayer, **meditation**, or counseling with a spiritual advisor have been found to be helpful

in treating patients with ASD whose belief systems have been affected by the traumatic event.

### ***Diagnosis and treatment of ASD in children***

Very little is known about the prevalence of ASD or PTSD in children, and even less is known how effectively medications and **psychotherapy** treat these disorders in this age group. There are as yet no standardized screens or diagnostic interviews in widespread use for assessing either ASD or PTSD in children, although a Child Post-traumatic Stress Reaction Index was published in 1992. One preliminary study recommends the cautious use of low doses of **imipramine** for treating children with ASD, but notes that research in this area has barely begun.

### **Prognosis**

Untreated ASD is highly likely to progress to PTSD in children as well as in adults. One team of Australian researchers found that 80% of persons diagnosed with ASD met criteria for PTSD six months later; 75% met criteria for PTSD two years after the traumatic event.

Clinicians in Norway have compiled a list of four “early response” variables that appear to be effective predictors of ASD’s progressing to PTSD:

- the degree of the patient’s sleep disturbance
- a strong startle reaction
- the degree of the patient’s social withdrawal
- fear or phobia related to the site of the traumatic event

In addition to developing PTSD, people diagnosed with ASD are at increased risk of developing a major depressive disorder, particularly if their emotional responses to the trauma were marked by intense despair and hopelessness. Other sequelae may include neglect of personal needs for health or safety; and impulsive or needlessly risky behavior.

### **Prevention**

Some forms of trauma, such as natural disasters and accidents, can never be completely eliminated from human life. Traumas caused by human intention would require major social changes to reduce their frequency and severity, but given the increasing prevalence of trauma-related stress disorders around the world, these long-term changes are worth the effort. In the short run, educating people—particularly those in the helping professions—about the signs of critical incident stress may prevent some cases of exposure to

## KEY TERMS

**Adjustment disorder**—A disorder defined by the development of significant emotional or behavioral symptoms in response to a stressful event or series of events. Symptoms may include depressed mood, anxiety, and impairment of social and occupational functioning.

**Depersonalization**—A dissociative symptom in which the patient feels that his or her body is unreal, changing, or dissolving.

**Derealization**—A dissociative symptom in which the external environment is perceived as unreal or dreamlike.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Dissociative amnesia**—A dissociative disorder characterized by loss of memory for a period or periods of time in the patient's life. May occur as a result of a traumatic event.

**Exposure therapy**—A form of cognitive-behavioral therapy in which patients suffering from phobias are exposed to their feared objects or situations while accompanied by the therapist. The length of exposure is gradually increased until the association between the feared situation and the patient's experienced panic symptoms is no longer present.

**Flashback**—The re-emergence of a traumatic memory as a vivid recollection of sounds, images, and sensations associated with the trauma. The person having the flashback typically feels as if he or she is reliving the event.

**Hyperarousal**—A symptom of traumatic stress characterized by abnormally intense reactions to stimuli.

A heightened startle response is one sign of hyperarousal.

**Hypervigilance**—A state of abnormally intense wariness or watchfulness that is found in survivors of trauma or long-term abuse. Hypervigilance is sometimes described as “being on red alert all the time.”

**Personalization**—The tendency to refer large-scale events or general patterns of events to the self in inappropriate ways. For example, a person who regards the loss of a friend or relative in an accident as punishment for having quarreled with them before the accident is said to be personalizing the event. Personalization increases a person's risk of developing ASD or PTSD after a traumatic event.

**Psychic numbing**—An inability to respond emotionally with normal intensity to people or situations; this affects positive emotions as well as fear or anger.

**Sequela (plural, sequelae)**—An abnormal condition resulting from a previous disease or disorder. An episode of depression is a common sequela of acute stress disorder.

**Supportive**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or educational approaches to treatment.

**Survivor's guilt**—A psychological reaction in trauma survivors that takes the form of guilt feelings for having survived or escaped a trauma without serious injury when others did not.

**Therapeutic writing**—A treatment technique in which patients are asked to set down in writing an account of the traumatic event and their emotional responses to it.

trauma from developing into ASD and progressing to full-blown PTSD.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

“Acute Stress Disorder.” Section 15, Chapter 187. In *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised.

Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Herman, Judith, MD. *Trauma and Recovery*. 2nd ed., revised. New York: Basic Books, 1997.

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon & Schuster, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

Bowles, Stephen V. “Acute and Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder After Spontaneous Abortion.” *American Family Physician* 61 (March 2000): 1689-1696.

Bryant, R. A. “The Acute Stress Disorder Scale: A Tool for Predicting Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder.”

- Australian Journal of Emergency Management* (Winter 1999): 13-15.
- Butler, Dennis J. "Post-Traumatic Stress Reactions Following Motor Vehicle Accidents." *American Family Physician* 60 (August 1999): 524-531.
- Harbert, Kenneth. "Acute Traumatic Stress: Helping Patients Regain Control." *Clinician Reviews* 12 (January 2002): 42-56.
- Marshall, R. D., R. Spitzer, and M. R. Liebowitz. "Review and Critique of the New DSM-IV Diagnosis of Acute Stress Disorder." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 156 (1999): 1677-1685.
- Robert, Rhonda. "Imipramine Treatment in Pediatric Burn Patients with Symptoms of Acute Stress Disorder: A Pilot Study." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 38 (July 1999): 1129-1136.
- van der Kolk, Bessel. "The Body Keeps the Score: Memory and the Evolving Psychobiology of PTSD." *Harvard Review of Psychiatry* 1 (1994): 253-265.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Experts in Traumatic Stress. 368 Veterans Memorial Highway, Commack, NY 11725. Telephone: (631) 543-2217. Fax: (631) 543-6977. <[www.aaets.org](http://www.aaets.org)>.
- Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Dr., Ste. 100, Rockville, MD 20852. Telephone: (301) 231-9350.
- International Society for Traumatic Stress Studies. 60 Revere Drive, Suite 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. Telephone: (847) 480-9028. Fax: (847) 480-9282. <[www.istss.org](http://www.istss.org)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.
- Society for Traumatic Stress Studies. 60 Revere Dr., Ste. 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. Telephone: (708) 480-9080.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

Adapin see **Doxepin**

## Addiction

### Definition

Most definitions refer to addiction as the compulsive need to use a habit-forming substance, or an irresistible urge to engage in a behavior. Two other important defining features of addiction are tolerance, the increasing need for more of the substance to obtain the same effect, and withdrawal, the unpleasant symptoms that arise when an addict is prevented from using the chosen substance or engaging in the behavior. **Relapse** and mood modification are also features.

### Description

The term addiction has come to refer to a wide and complex range of behaviors. While addiction most commonly refers to compulsive use of substances, including alcohol, prescription and illegal drugs, cigarettes, and food, it is also associated with compulsive behaviors involving activities such as work, exercise, shopping, sex, using the Internet, and gambling.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The most prevalent model of addiction today is the so-called disease model. This model, first introduced in the late 1940s by E. M. Jellinek, was adopted in 1956 by the American Medical Association. Since that time, the disease model of alcoholism and drug addiction has been well accepted throughout the world. Some experts argue that addiction is better understood as learned behavior and is modifiable through "unlearning" the negative behaviors and then learning new, positive behaviors.

Disease model adherents believe that the **compulsion** to use is genetically and physiologically based and that, while the disease can be arrested, it is progressive and chronic, and fatal if unchecked. Twin studies have shown that there is a strong heritable component to addiction, although, as with most diseases, environmental factors can also play a role.

#### Symptoms

The initial positive consequences of substance use or a potentially addictive behavior are what initially "hook" a person, who may then become addicted. People with substance use disorders or behavioral addiction describe feelings of euphoria or release of tension when using the substance or engaging in the activity of choice. Many experts believe that these substances and activities affect **neurotransmitters** in the **brain**. The primary pathway involved in the development and persistence of these disorders of addiction is the brain reward pathway, or mesolimbic pathway, which operates via a neurotransmitter called **dopamine**. The dopamine pathways may interact with other neurotransmitters, including opioid pathways. These neuronal pathways have been identified as underlying both substance use disorders and behavioral addictions.

As a person with an addiction continues to use a substance or engage in a behavior, his or her body adjusts to the substance and tolerance develops. Increasing amounts of the substance are needed to

produce the same effect. In some cases, levels of substances that a person with a substance use disorder routinely ingests might be lethal to someone who has not built up a tolerance.

Over time, physical symptoms of dependence strengthen. Failure to use a substance or engage in a behavior can lead to withdrawal symptoms, which can vary depending on the substance or behavior involved. For some drugs, these symptoms can include flu-like aches and pains, digestive upset, and, in severe cases, **seizures**, and hallucinatory sensations, such as the feeling of bugs crawling on the skin. Organ damage, including the brain and liver, can lead to serious and even fatal illness as well as mental symptoms such as **dementia**. Severe disruption of social and family relationships, and of the ability to maintain a steady job, are also symptoms of the addictive process.

## Demographics

According to a 2006 national survey of adolescents, 14.9% of the high-school students surveyed reported having used an illicit drug in the previous month. A 2003 report showed that adolescents and young adults were most likely to have engaged in illicit drug use in the previous month, with the peak occurring 18- to 20-year-old age range; however, drug use among adolescents declined by 17% from 2001 to 2004. In spite of the decline, 19.5 million Americans, about 8.2% of the population, were current users of an illicit drug in 2003. Drugs used included marijuana/hashish, **cocaine** (including crack), heroin, hallucinogens, inhalants, or prescription-type psychotherapeutics used nonmedically, and the opiates Vicodin and OxyContin have emerged as drugs of concern for their use among high-school students. The most commonly used illicit drug in the United States is marijuana.

Addiction is more common among men than women, and the ratio of men to women using drugs other than alcohol is even higher. **Substance abuse** is higher among the unemployed and the less educated. Most illicit drug users are white.

## Diagnosis

Substance **abuse** and dependence are among the psychological disorders categorized as major clinical syndromes (known as “Axis 1”) in the American Psychiatric Association’s *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM-IV-TR*). Alcohol, classified as a depressant, is the most frequently abused psychoactive substance. Alcohol abuse and dependence affect more than 20 million Americans—about 13% of the adult population. An alcoholic has

been defined as a person whose drinking impairs his or her life adjustment, affecting health, personal relationships, and/or work.

When blood alcohol level reaches 0.08%, a person is considered legally intoxicated in most states. Judgment and other rational processes are impaired, as are motor coordination, speech, and vision. Alcohol abuse, according to the *DSM-IV-TR*, progresses through a series of stages from social drinking to chronic alcoholism. Danger signs that indicate the probable onset of a drinking problem include frequent desire to drink, increasing alcohol consumption, memory lapses (blackouts), and morning drinking. Other symptoms include attempts to hide alcohol from family and colleagues, and attempts to drink in secret. Among the most acute reactions to alcohol are four conditions referred to as alcoholic psychoses: alcohol idiosyncratic intoxication (an acute reaction in persons with an abnormally low tolerance for alcohol); alcohol withdrawal **delirium** (delirium tremens); **hallucinations**; and Korsakoff’s **psychosis**, an irreversible brain disorder involving severe memory loss.

Other substance abuse disorders are diagnosed by looking for patterns of compulsive use, frequency of use, increasing tolerance, and withdrawal symptoms when the substance is unavailable or the individual tries to stop using.

## Treatments

### Pharmacologic

Addictions are notoriously difficult to treat. Physical addictions alter a person’s brain chemistry in ways that make it difficult to be exposed to the addictive substance again without relapsing. Some medications, such as Antabuse (**disulfiram**), have shown limited effectiveness in treating alcohol addiction. Substitute medications, such as **methadone**, a drug that blocks the euphoric effect of opiates, have also shown mixed results. When an addicted individual is using a substance to self-medicate for **depression**, **anxiety**, and other psychological symptoms, prescription medications can be an effective treatment.

### Psychological and psychosocial

It is a commonly held belief by many professionals that people with addictive disorders cannot be treated effectively by conventional outpatient **psychotherapy**. Substance abusers are often presumed to have severe personality problems and to be very resistant to treatment, to lack the motivation to change, or to be just too much trouble in an outpatient office setting. Unfortunately, these beliefs may create a self-fulfilling

prophecy. Many of the negative behaviors and personality problems associated with chronic substance use disappear when use of the substance stops. While some substance abusers do, in fact, have other mental disorders, they represent only a minority of the addicted population.

Most treatment for addictive behaviors is provided not by practicing clinicians (psychiatrists, psychologists, and **social workers**), but rather by specialized addiction treatment programs and clinics. These programs rely upon confrontational tactics and re-education as their primary approaches, often employing former or recovering addicts to treat newly admitted addicts.

Some addicts are helped by the combination of individual, group, and family treatment. In family treatment (or **family therapy**), “enabling behaviors” can be addressed and changed. Enabling behaviors are the actions of family members who assist the addict in maintaining active addiction, including providing money, food, and shelter. Residential settings may be effective in initially assisting the addicted individual to stay away from the many “cues,” including people, places, and things, that formed the setting for their substance use.

During the past several decades, alternatives to the complete abstinence model (the generally accepted model in the United States) have arisen. Controlled use programs allow addicted individuals to reduce their use without committing to complete abstinence. This alternative is highly controversial. The generally accepted position is that only by complete abstinence can an addicted individual recover. The effectiveness of addiction treatment based on behavioral and other psychotherapeutic methods, however, is well documented. Among these are motivation-enhancing strategies, relapse-prevention strategies using cognitive-behavioral approaches, solution-oriented and other brief therapy techniques, and harm-reduction approaches.

**Self-help groups** such as Alcoholics Anonymous and Narcotics Anonymous have also developed widespread popularity. The approach of one addict helping another to stay “clean,” without professional **intervention**, has had tremendous acceptance in the United States and other countries.

## Prognosis

Relapse and recidivism are, unfortunately, very common. Interestingly, a classic study shows that people addicted to different substances show very similar patterns of relapse. Whatever the addictive substances, data show that about two-thirds of all relapses occur within the first 90 days following treatment.

Many consider recovery to be an ongoing, lifelong process. Because the use of addictive substances alters brain chemistry, cravings can persist for many years. For this reason, the prevailing belief is that recovery is only possible by commitment to complete abstinence from all substance use.

## Prevention

Prevention approaches are most effectively targeted at young teenagers between the ages of 11 and 13. It is during these years that most young people are likely to experiment with drugs and alcohol. Hence, reducing experimentation during this critical period holds promise for reducing the number of adults with addictive disease. Effective prevention programs focus on addressing the concerns of young people with regard to the effects of drugs. Training older adolescents to help younger adolescents resist peer pressure has shown considerable effectiveness in preventing experimentation.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Amphetamines and related disorders; Antianxiety drugs and abuse-related disorders; Barbiturates; Caffeine and related disorders; Cannabis and related disorders; Denial; Disease concept of chemical dependency; Dual diagnosis; Hypnotics and related disorders; Internet addiction disorder; Nicotine and related disorders; Opioids and related disorders; Relapse and relapse prevention; Sedatives and related drugs; Self-help groups; Substance abuse and related disorders; Support groups; Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Hurley, Jennifer A., ed. *Addiction: Opposing Viewpoints*. San Diego, CA: Greenhaven Press, 2000.  
 Kaplan, Harold I., MD., and Benjamin J. Sadock, MD. *Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences/Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.  
 Marlatt, G. Alan, and Judith R. Gordon, eds. *Relapse Prevention*. New York: The Guilford Press, 1985.  
 Wekesser, Carol, ed. *Chemical Dependency: Opposing Viewpoints*. San Diego, CA: Greenhaven Press, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- Grant, Jon E., JD, MD, MPH, Judson A. Brewer, MD, Ph.D., and Marc N. Potenza, MD, Ph.D. “The Neurobiology of substance and behavioral addictions.” *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 924–30.  
 Franken, Ingmar H. A., Jan Booij, and Wim van den Brink. “The role of dopamine in human addiction: From

- reward to motivated attention.” *European Journal of Pharmacology* 526 (2005): 199–206.
- Kienast, T., and A. Heinz. “Dopamine and the diseased brain.” *CNS & Neurological Disorders-Drug Targets* 5 (2006): 109–31.
- Lobo, Daniela S.S., M.D., Ph.D., and James L. Kennedy, MD, F.R.C.P.C. “The genetics of gambling and behavioral addictions.” *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 931–9.
- Pallanti, Stefano, M.D., Ph.D. “From impulse-control disorders toward behavioral addictions.” *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 921–2.
- Washton, Arnold M. “Why psychologists should know how to treat substance use disorders.” *NYS Psychologist* January 2002: 9–13.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 5600 Fishers Ln., Rockville, MD 20857. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>.
- National Library of Medicine. “Drug Abuse.” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/drugabuse.html>>.

Barbara S. Sternberg, Ph.D.  
Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

## Adjustment disorders

### Definition

Adjustment disorders are a group of disorders in which a person’s psychological response to a stressor elicits symptoms that warrant clinical attention. This unifying feature of the adjustment disorders can manifest as emotional distress that exceeds what is an expected norm or by notable impairment of the person’s functioning in the world, socially, academically, and/or occupationally.

### Description

Often, a person experiences a stressful event as one that changes his or her world in some fundamental way. An adjustment disorder represents significant difficulty in adjusting to the new reality. Subsets of this disorder make up the most frequent psychiatric diagnoses among mentally ill populations, with features that include **depression** and **anxiety**. Many clinicians believe that it is difficult to discern a difference between a reaction to **stress** that falls within a population norm and when the line has been crossed into symptoms warranting a **diagnosis** of adjustment disorder. This difficulty, according to some experts, lies in the presentation of disorders in the *Diagnostic and*

*Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders-IV, Text Revision* (also known as the DSM-IV-TR) as a dichotomy between what happens in the mind and what occurs physically in the body. Research results increasingly support that the dichotomy may not be tenable.

The DSM-IV-TR lists six subtypes of adjustment disorder, generally based on what feature best characterizes the person’s symptoms. These six subtypes are adjustment disorder with depressed mood, with anxiety, with mixed anxiety and depressed mood, with disturbance of conduct, with disturbance of emotions and conduct, or adjustment disorder unspecified. This last subtype is applied when one of the other five simply does not fit the manifestations.

The criteria for these disorders also include time parameters. One of the criteria for diagnosing an adjustment disorder is that it is an acute response, lasting six or fewer months. However, in some special cases, the response can be chronic, lasting longer than six months, usually when the stressor has lasting consequences.

The stressful events that precipitate an adjustment disorder vary widely. They may include the loss of a job; the end of a romantic relationship; a life transition such as a career change or retirement; or a serious accident or sickness. Some are acute “one-time” stressors, such as relocating to a new area, while others are chronic, such as caring for a child with **mental retardation**.

In spite of the disagreement among professionals about the validity of the diagnosis of adjustment disorder, many researchers consider the category useful for two reasons: (1) an adjustment disorder may be an early sign of a major mental disorder and allow for early treatment and **intervention**; and (2) adjustment disorders are “situational” or “reactive” and do not imply that the patient has an underlying **brain** disease.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

In the initial edition of the DSM-IV, the identifiable stressor was described as being “psychosocial,” a category that excludes physical illnesses and natural disasters. In the *DSM-IV-TR*, the word “psychosocial” was deleted to make the point that any stressful event can lead to an adjustment disorder. It is important to recognize, however, that while adjustment disorders are triggered by external stressors, the symptoms result from the person’s interpretation of and adaptation to the stressful event or circumstances.

Beliefs, perceptions, fears, and expectations influence the development of an adjustment disorder.

People with chronic physical illnesses appear to have an increased risk of developing adjustment disorders, particularly one with depressed mood. This connection has been demonstrated among cancer patients. The relationship between **chronic pain** (as is commonly experienced by cancer patients) and depressive symptoms is still being studied.

### Symptoms

Unlike many other disorders categorized in the *DSM-IV-TR*, adjustment disorders do not have an accompanying clearly delineated symptom profile, which has led to its being perceived as a “transitional” diagnosis, awaiting the manifestation of symptoms more clearly related to some other, better-defined disorder. This ambiguity arises from the difficulty in establishing what defines a reaction within the norms of a population. The *DSM-IV-TR* states that the symptoms of an adjustment disorder must appear within three months of a stressor; and that they must meet at least one of the following criteria: (1) the distress is greater than what would be expected in response to that particular stressor; or (2) the patient experiences significant impairment in social relationships or in occupational or academic settings. Moreover, the symptoms cannot represent bereavement, as normally experienced after the death of a loved one and cannot be an exacerbation of another, preexisting disorder and does not meet the criteria for another disorder.

Each of the six subtypes of adjustment disorder is characterized by its own predominant symptoms:

- With depressed mood: The chief manifestations are feelings of sadness and depression, with a sense of accompanying hopelessness. The patient may be tearful and have uncontrollable bouts of crying.
- With anxiety: The patient is troubled by feelings of apprehension, nervousness, and worry. He or she may also feel jittery and unable to control his or her thoughts of doom. Children with this subtype may express fears of separation from parents or other significant people, and refuse to go to sleep alone or attend school.
- With mixed anxiety and depressed mood: The patient has a combination of symptoms from the previous two subtypes.
- With disturbance of conduct: This subtype involves such noticeable behavioral changes as shoplifting, truancy, reckless driving, aggressive outbursts, or sexual promiscuity. The patient disregards the rights

of others or previously followed rules of conduct with little concern, guilt or remorse.

- With mixed disturbance of emotions and conduct: The patient exhibits sudden changes in behavior combined with feelings of depression or anxiety. He or she may feel or express guilt about the behavior, but then repeat it shortly thereafter.
- Unspecified: This subtype covers patients who are adjusting poorly to stress but who do not fit into the other categories. These patients may complain of physical illness and pull away from social contact.

Adjustment disorders may lead to **suicide** or suicidal thinking. They may also complicate the treatment of other diseases when, for instance, a sufferer loses interest in taking medication as prescribed or adhering to **diets** or exercise regimens.

An adjustment disorder can occur at any stage of life.

### Demographics

Even though this disorder is so commonly diagnosed, there have been few large-scale epidemiological studies targeting adjustment disorders. Adjustment disorder appears to be fairly common in the American population; recent figures estimate that 5–20% of adults seeking outpatient psychological treatment have one of the subtypes of this disorder. As many as 70% of children in psychiatric inpatient settings may be diagnosed with an adjustment disorder. In a questionnaire sent to child psychiatrists in the early 1990s, 55% admitted to giving children the diagnosis of an adjustment disorder to avoid the **stigma** associated with other disorders.

Women are diagnosed with adjustment disorder twice as often as men, and diagnosis is also more frequent in females among adolescents.

There are no current studies of differences in the frequency of adjustment disorder in different racial or ethnic groups. There is, however, some potential for bias in diagnosis, particularly when the diagnostic criteria concern abnormal responses to stressors. The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that clinicians must take a patient’s cultural background into account when evaluating his or her responses to stressors.

### Diagnosis

Adjustment disorders are almost always diagnosed as the result of an interview with a **psychiatrist**. The psychiatrist will take a history, including identification of the stressor that has triggered the adjustment disorder, and evaluate the patient’s responses to

the stressor. The patient's primary physician may give him or her a thorough physical examination to rule out a previously undiagnosed medical illness.

The American Psychiatric Association considers adjustment disorder to be a residual category, meaning that the diagnosis is given only when an individual does not meet the criteria for a major mental disorder. For example, if a person fits the more stringent criteria for **major depressive disorder**, the diagnosis of adjustment disorder is not given. If the patient is diagnosed with an adjustment disorder but continues to have symptoms for more than six months after the stressor and its consequences have ceased, the diagnosis is changed to another mental disorder. The one exception to this time limit is situations in which the stressor itself is chronic or has enduring consequences. In that case, the adjustment disorder would be considered chronic and the diagnosis could stand beyond six months.

The lack of a diagnostic checklist distinguishes adjustment disorders from either **post-traumatic stress disorder** or **acute stress disorder**. All three require the presence of a stressor, but the latter two define the extreme stressor and specific patterns of symptoms. With adjustment disorder, the stressor may be any event that is significant to the patient, and the disorder may take very different forms in different patients.

Adjustment disorders must also be distinguished from **personality disorders**, which are caused by enduring personality traits that are inflexible and cause impairment. A personality disorder that has not yet surfaced may be made worse by a stressor and may mimic an adjustment disorder. A clinician must separate relatively stable traits in a patient's personality from passing disturbances. In some cases, however, the patient may be given both diagnoses. Again, it is important for psychiatrists to be sensitive to the role of cultural factors in the presentation of the patient's symptoms.

If the stressor is a physical illness, diagnosis is further complicated. It is important to recognize the difference between an adjustment disorder and the direct physiological effects of a general medical condition (e.g. the usual temporary functional impairment associated with chemotherapy). This distinction can be clarified through communication with the patient's physician or by education about the medical condition and its treatment. For some individuals, however, both may occur and reinforce each other.

## Treatments

There have been few research studies of significant scope to compare the efficacy of different treatments

for adjustment disorder. The relative lack of outcome studies is partially due to the lack of specificity in the diagnosis itself. Because there is such variability in the types of stressors involved in adjustment disorders, it has proven difficult to design effective studies. As a result, there is no consensus regarding the most effective treatments for adjustment disorder.

### *Psychological and social interventions*

There are, however, guidelines for effective treatment of people with adjustment disorders. Effective treatments include stress-reduction approaches; therapies that teach coping strategies for stressors that cannot be reduced or removed; and those that help patients build support networks of friends, family, and people in similar circumstances. **Psychodynamic psychotherapy** may be helpful in clarifying and interpreting the meaning of the stressor for a particular patient. For example, if the person has cancer, he or she may become more dependent on others, which may be threatening for people who place a high value on self-sufficiency. By exploring those feelings, the patient can then begin to recognize all that is not lost and regain a sense of self-worth.

Therapies that encourage the patient to express the fear, anxiety, rage, helplessness, and hopelessness of dealing with the stressful situation may be helpful. These approaches include journaling, certain types of art therapy, and movement or dance therapy. **Support groups** and **group therapy** allow patients to gain perspective on the adversity and establish relationships with others who share their problem. Psychoeducation and medical crisis counseling can assist individuals and families facing stress caused by a medical illness.

Such types of brief therapy as **family therapy**, **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, solution-focused therapy, and **interpersonal therapy** have all met with some success in treating adjustment disorder.

### *Medications*

Clinicians do not agree on the role of medications in treating adjustment disorder. Some argue that medication is not necessary for adjustment disorders because of their brief duration. In addition, they maintain that medications may be counterproductive by undercutting the patient's sense of responsibility and his or her motivation to find effective solutions. At the other end of the spectrum, other clinicians maintain that medication by itself is the best form of treatment, particularly for patients with medical conditions, those who are terminally ill, and those resistant to **psychotherapy**. Others advocate a middle

ground of treatment that combines medication and psychotherapy.

### *Alternative therapies*

Spiritual and religious counseling can be helpful, particularly for people coping with existential issues related to physical illness.

Some herbal remedies appear to be helpful to some patients with adjustment disorders. For adjustment disorder with anxiety, a randomized controlled trial found that the 91 patients receiving Euphytose (an herbal preparation containing a combination of plant extracts including Crataegus, Ballota, Passiflora, Valeriana, Cola, and Paullinia) showed significant improvement over the 91 patients taking a placebo. There have been no reported follow-up studies confirming these findings.

### **Prognosis**

Most adults who are diagnosed with adjustment disorder have a favorable prognosis. For most people, an adjustment disorder is temporary and will either resolve by itself or respond to treatment. For some, however, the stressor will remain chronic and the symptoms may worsen. Still other patients may develop a major depressive disorder even in the absence of an additional stressor.

Studies have been conducted to follow up on patients five years after their initial diagnosis. At that time, 71% of adults were completely well with no residual symptoms, while 21% had developed a major depressive disorder or alcoholism. For children aged 8–13, adjustment disorder did not predict future psychiatric disturbances. For adolescents, the prognosis is grimmer. After five years, 43% had developed a major psychiatric disorder, often of far greater severity. These disorders included **schizophrenia**, **schizoaffective disorder**, major depression, substance use disorders, or personality disorders. In contrast with adults, the adolescents' behavioral symptoms and the type of adjustment disorder predicted future mental disorders.

Researchers have noted that once an adjustment disorder is diagnosed, psychotherapy, medication, or both can prevent the development of a more serious mental disorder. Effective treatment is critical, as adjustment disorder is associated with an increased risk of suicide attempts, completed suicide, **substance abuse**, and various unexplained physical complaints. Patients with chronic stressors may require ongoing treatment for continued symptom management. While

## KEY TERMS

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**Group therapy**—Group interaction designed to provide support, correction through feedback, constructive criticism, and a forum for consultation and reference.

**Interpersonal therapy**—An approach that includes psychoeducation about the sick role, and emphasis on the present and improving interpersonal dynamics and relationships. Interpersonal therapy is effective in treating adjustment disorders related to physical illness.

**Psychosocial**—A term that refers to the emotional and social aspects of psychological disorders.

**Solution-focused therapy**—A type of therapy that involves concrete goals and an emphasis on future direction rather than past experiences.

**Stressor**—A stimulus or event that provokes a stress response in an organism. Stressors can be categorized as acute or chronic, and as external or internal to the organism.

**Support group**—A group whose primary purpose is the provision of empathy and emotional support for its members. Support groups are less formal and less goal-directed than group therapy.

patients may not become symptom-free, treatment can halt the progression toward a more serious mental disorder by enhancing the patient's ability to cope.

### **Prevention**

In many cases, there is little possibility of preventing the stressors that trigger adjustment disorders. One preventive strategy that is helpful to many patients, however, is learning to be proactive in managing ordinary life stress, and maximizing their problem-solving abilities when they are not in crisis. In addition, the general availability of counseling following a large-scale stressful event may ameliorate some stress responses.

*See also* Anxiety-reduction techniques; Bodywork therapies; Cognitive retraining techniques; Generalized anxiety disorder; Cognitive problem-solving skills training.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Araoz, Daniel L., and Marie Carrese. *Solution-Oriented Brief Therapy for Adjustment Disorders: A Guide for Providers Under Managed Care*. New York: Brunner/Mazel, 1996.
- Gabbard, Glen O., MD. "Adjustment Disorders." *Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders*, written by James J. Strain, MD, Anwarul Karim, MD, and Angela Cartagena Rochas, MA. 3rd ed, Vol. 2. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 2001.
- Nicholi, Armand, ed. *The New Harvard Guide to Psychiatry*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1988.

### PERIODICALS

- Angelino, Andrew F., and Glenn J. Treisman. "Major Depression and Demoralization in Cancer Patients: Diagnostic and Treatment Considerations." *Supportive Cancer Care* (November 2000): 344–49.
- Casey, P., and others. "Can Adjustment Disorder and Depressive Episode Be Distinguished?" *Journal of Affective Disorders* 92 (2006): 291–97.
- Grassi, Luigi, and others. "Psychosomatic Characterization of Adjustment Disorders in the Medical Setting: Some Suggestions for DSM-V." *Journal of Affective Disorders* (2006).
- Jones, Rick, and others. "Outcome for Adjustment Disorder with Depressed Mood: Comparison with Other Mood Disorders." *Journal of Affective Disorders* (1999): 55.
- Pelkonen, Mirjami, and others. "Adolescent Adjustment Disorder: Precipitant Stressors and Distress Symptoms of 89 Outpatients." *European Psychiatry* (2006).
- Strain, James J., and others. "Adjustment Disorder: A Multisite Study of its Utilization and Interventions in the Consultation-Liaison Psychiatry Setting." *General Hospital Psychiatry* (1998): 20.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Rm. 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://nimh.nih.gov>>.

### OTHER

- National Cancer Institute. National Institutes of Health. "The Adjustment Disorders." <<http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/pdq/supportivecare/adjustment/HealthProfessional/page4>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000932.htm>>.

Holly Scherstuhl, M.Ed.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Adrenaline

### Definition

Adrenaline (also known as epinephrine) is a hormone and neurotransmitter the sympathetic nervous system releases as part of the body's "fight-or-flight" response. Adrenaline increases blood and oxygen flow to the muscles, releases stored energy from the liver and fat cells, and prepares the body for quick action.

### Synthesis

Epinephrine is an amine hormone. It is produced and released by a region in the central part of the adrenal gland called the adrenal medulla. In a multi-step process, enzymes convert the amino acid tyrosine into the chemical L-dopa, which is converted to **dopamine** and then converted to norepinephrine. Epinephrine is synthesized from norepinephrine (noradrenaline) and released into the bloodstream.

Together, epinephrine and norepinephrine are known as the catecholamines. Epinephrine makes up about 80% of the catecholamines that are released as part of the body's **stress** response.

### Mechanisms of action

When the body is confronted with a dangerous or stressful situation (such as a test for which someone has not studied or an encounter with a dangerous-looking individual), the fight-or-flight response is initiated. In order to act quickly, the body diverts energy away from areas where it is not needed to those where it is most required, such as the heart and muscles.

When the body senses a threat, the hypothalamus in the **brain** releases nerve signals to the adrenal medulla to release epinephrine and norepinephrine.

When released, the epinephrine circulates around the body through the bloodstream until it reaches its target organs—the heart, blood vessels, liver, and fat cells. The hormone binds to two different types of receptors: alpha-adrenergic and beta-adrenergic receptors. Each of these receptors triggers a different action within cells. Alpha receptors initiate smooth muscle contraction and blood vessel constriction, whereas beta receptors stimulate the heart muscle.

The release of epinephrine causes the following reactions in the body:

- The heart beats faster, pumping additional blood throughout the body, and especially to the muscles, in preparation for action.
- Blood vessels constrict, raising the blood pressure.

- Small tubes in the lungs called bronchioles dilate to send more oxygen throughout the body.
- Glycogen (the stored form of glucose) is broken down into glucose in the liver and released.
- Fat stores are released from adipose tissue to be used for energy.
- Blood flow slows to the digestive tract, skin, and kidneys, where it is not needed as much.

## History

The first people to identify the effects of epinephrine were British physician George Oliver (1841–1915) and endocrinologist Edward Albert Sharpey-Schafer (1850–1935). In 1894, they discovered that injecting an extract from the adrenal gland into the bloodstream of an animal raised its blood pressure. Then in 1901, Japanese chemist Jokichi Takamine (1854–1922) isolated and purified epinephrine from the adrenal medulla and patented it. British pharmacologist Henry Dale (1875–1968) began using the name adrenaline for the hormone.

## Medication and adrenaline

Epinephrine can be isolated from the adrenal glands of animals and used for medical purposes. It can be injected into the heart to restart the heartbeats of people who are experiencing cardiac arrest. It can open the bronchioles of the lungs in people with asthma, or in those who have had severe allergic responses to food, medications, or other substances. Drugs called beta-blockers are often given to patients to reduce **anxiety**. These drugs block beta-adrenergic receptors, slowing the heart rate and lowering blood pressure.

## Adrenaline addiction

Some people may experience a drug-like high from participating in behaviors that trigger the body's fight-or-flight response. These people are sometimes referred to as "adrenaline junkies" or "adrenaline addicts". For example, people who seek thrills, such as skydivers, mountain climbers, and extreme skiers, experience a rush of adrenaline from the knowledge that their actions could result in severe injury or even death. Compulsive gamblers often cite the reason for their **addiction** as less the desire to win than the physical rush they get from playing. Some people who steal feel that same type of adrenaline rush from the idea that they might be apprehended. The heightened sense of awareness, increased heartbeat, and rapid breathing that occur when the adrenal medulla releases adrenaline is similar to the high people experience when taking drugs, and it can be similarly addictive.

## KEY TERMS

**Adrenaline (epinephrine)**—A hormone and neurotransmitter released by the adrenal gland as part of the body's fight-or-flight response.

**Adrenaline addiction**—A drug-like response some people experience from participating in activities (such as skydiving or gambling) that trigger adrenaline release.

**Beta-blockers**—Drugs that block beta-adrenergic receptors to reduce the actions of epinephrine, thereby lowering the heart rate and blood pressure.

**Bronchioles**—Tiny tubes in the lungs.

**Catecholamines**—A class of hormones that includes epinephrine and norepinephrine, which are involved in the fight-or-flight response.

**Enzymes**—Proteins that trigger chemical reactions in the body.

**Glycogen**—The form of the sugar, glucose, that is stored in the liver and muscles.

**Norepinephrine (noradrenaline)**—A hormone produced by the adrenal gland, along with epinephrine, as part of the fight-or-flight response.

**Tyrosine**—The amino acid from which epinephrine is synthesized.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Church, Matt. *Adrenaline Junkies and Serotonin Seekers: Balance Your Brain Chemistry to Maximize Energy, Stamina, Mental Sharpness, and Emotional Well-Being*. Berkeley, CA: Ulysses Press, 2004.

Goldstein, David S. *Adrenaline and the Inner World: An Introduction to Scientific Integrative Medicine*. Baltimore, MD: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 2006.

Meyer, Jerrold S., and Linda F. Quenzer. *Psychopharmacology: Drugs, the Brain and Behavior*. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates, 2004.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Adrenaline Addicts Anonymous. 350 South Center Street, Number 500, Reno, NV 89501. <<http://www.adrenalineaddicts.org/>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA 22209-3901. Telephone: (703) 907-7300. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness. 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (866) 615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Stephanie N. Watson

## Advance directives

### Definition

An advance directive is a written document in which people clearly specify how medical decisions affecting them are to be made if they are unable to make them or authorize a specific person to make such decisions for them. These documents are sometimes called "living wills." Psychiatric advance directives serve the same purpose as general medical advance directives, but are written by mental health consumers as a set of directions for others to follow prior to the onset of a period in which their decision making is impaired or an incapacitating crisis arises.

### Description

According to the National Mental Health Association (NMHA), it has become increasingly accepted over the past 30 years that consumers of mental health services know which treatments work best for them, and their opinions have become increasingly valued by those providing services. However, when mental health consumers become unable to make decisions or to give **informed consent** for treatments offered, others (including family, friends, judges, or care providers) make the decisions for them in crisis. In these kinds of crisis situations, advance directives may be beneficial for people receiving care, because the advance directive is a legal document that may protect them from unwanted treatment or **involuntary hospitalization**. Many states have passed laws related to advance directives and psychiatric advance directives. In some cases, the laws detail the content of these psychiatric advance directives, which may include instructions about antipsychotic medication, **electroconvulsive therapy**, or hospital admission, and the naming of people who can act as surrogate decision makers if necessary.

Psychiatric advance directives usually fall into two categories: instruction directives and agent-driven directives.

### Instruction directives

An instruction directive is a written document that specifies which treatments individuals do and do not want, in the case that they become unable to make decisions about their care. These documents may indicate the affected individual's preferences about many aspects of treatment, including:

- people who should be contacted at a time of psychiatric crisis
- activities that reduce (and heighten) anxiety for the individual
- effective alternatives to restraint or seclusion for the individual
- acceptable and unacceptable medications and dosages
- other interventions that might be considered during a time of crisis (such as electroconvulsive therapy)

### Agent-driven directives

An agent-driven directive may also be called a durable power of attorney. This directive is a signed, dated, and witnessed document that authorizes a designated person (usually a family member or close friend) to act as an agent or proxy. This empowers the proxy to make medical decisions for patients when they are deemed unable to make these decisions for themselves. Such a power of attorney frequently includes the person's stated preferences in regard to treatment. Several states do not allow any of the following people to act as a person's proxy:

- the person's physician, or other health care provider
- the staff of health care facilities that is providing the person's care
- guardians (often called conservators) of the person's financial affairs
- employees of federal agencies financially responsible for a person's care
- any person that serves as agent or proxy for 10 people or more. The person who is to act as the proxy should be familiar with the individual's expressed wishes about care, and should understand how to work within the mental health system.

These two distinct documents may, in some cases, be combined into one form.

### Special concerns

In the United States, each state has laws about general medical advance directives and how those laws apply to psychiatric advance directives; a few states exclude psychiatric advance directives from their

statutes. The specific form the advance directive should take, the language it should use, and the number of witnesses required to make the document legal and binding vary from state to state. In general, according to the National Mental Health Association, physicians and other health care professionals are expected to comply with the instructions of an advance directive, as long as those instructions are within the guidelines of accepted medical practice. It is recommended that people speak to their attorneys or physicians to ensure that their wishes are communicated in a form that is legally acceptable in their state.

Some other considerations associated with advance directives center on how they are implemented and whether or not a person who wants to complete one actually does so. Various solutions have been proposed to address these problems, including a proposal for video-based advance directives in which patients would produce videotapes documenting their directives. In addition, even though as many as two-thirds of people with mental illness report that they would complete a psychiatric advance directive, only 4–13% of outpatients receiving mental health treatment through public sector resources report having done so. One proposal put forward to address this disconnect is the implementation of facilitated psychiatric advance directives involving a guided discussion and review of choices for completing an advance directive. One study assessing the efficacy of this approach found that completion of psychiatric advance directives in the group that received the facilitated intervention was 61%, compared to the 3% of participants who did not receive facilitated intervention.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Clayman, Charles A., M.D. *American Medical Association Home Medical Encyclopedia*. New York: Random House, 1989.

Doukas, David J., and William Reichel. *Planning for Uncertainty, A Guide to Living Wills and Other Advance Directives for Health Care*. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1993.

National Mental Health Association. *Psychiatric Advance Directives Issue Summary*. Mental Health America, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

Moseley, Ray, Aram Dobalian, and Robert Hatch. "The Problem with Advance Directives: Maybe It Is the Medium, Not the Message." *Archives of Gerontology and Geriatrics* 41 (2005): 211–19.

Srebnik, Debra S., and others. "The Content and Clinical Utility of Psychiatric Advance Directives." *Psychiatric Services* 56 (2005): 592–98.

Swanson, Jeffrey W., and others. "Facilitated Psychiatric Advance Directives: A Randomized Trial of an Intervention to Foster Advance Treatment Planning among Persons with Severe Mental Illness." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163 (2006): 1943–51.

## ORGANIZATIONS

Advance Directive Training Project. Resource Center. Albany, NY. Telephone: (518) 463-9242. <[www.peer-resource.org](http://www.peer-resource.org)>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Judge David L. Bazelon Center for Mental Health Law. Washington, DC. Telephone: (202) 467-5730. <[www.bazelon.org/admdir.html](http://www.bazelon.org/admdir.html)>.

Mental Health America. (Produces a *Psychiatric Advance Directives Toolkit*). Telephone: (800) 969-6642.

National Association of Protection and Advocacy Systems. Washington DC. Telephone: (202) 408-9514. <[www.protectionandadvocacy.com](http://www.protectionandadvocacy.com)>.

## OTHER

Caring Connections. Part of the National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization. Toll-free helpline: (800) 658-8898 (also available in Spanish at Telephone: (877) 658-8896). <<http://www.caringinfo.org/i4a/pages/index.cfm?pageid=1>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Advance Directives." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/advancedirectives.html>>.

Joan Schonbeck, RN  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Affect

### Definition

Affect is a psychological term for an observable expression of emotion.

### Description

A person's affect is the expression of emotion or feelings displayed to others through facial expressions, hand gestures, voice tone, and other emotional signs such as laughter or tears. Individual affect fluctuates according to emotional state. What is considered a normal range of affect, called the *broad affect*, varies from culture to culture, and even within a culture. Certain individuals may gesture prolifically while talking, and display dramatic facial expressions in reaction to social situations or other stimuli. Others may show little outward response to social environments or

interactions, expressing a narrow range of emotions to the outside world.

People with psychological disorders may display variations in their affect. A *restricted* or *constricted affect* describes a mild restriction in the range or intensity of display of feelings. As the reduction in display of emotion becomes more severe, the term *blunted affect* may be applied. The absence of any exhibition of emotions is described as *flat affect* where the voice is monotone, the face expressionless, and the body immobile. *Labile affect* describes emotional instability or dramatic mood swings. When the outward display of emotion is out of context for the situation, such as laughter while describing pain or sadness, the affect is termed “inappropriate.”

*See also* Borderline personality disorder; Depression and depressive disorders; Major depressive disorder; Schizophrenia.



**Example of a crowd situation, which may cause anxiety, perhaps leading to agoraphobia.** (bildgentur-online/begsteiger/Alamy)

## Agoraphobia

### Definition

Agoraphobia is an **anxiety** disorder characterized by intense fear related to being in situations from which escape might be difficult or embarrassing (i.e., being on a bus or train), or in which help might not be available in the event of a **panic attack** or panic symptoms. Panic is defined as extreme and unreasonable fear and anxiety.

According to the handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*, patients with agoraphobia are typically afraid of such symptoms as feeling dizzy, having an attack of diarrhea, fainting, or “going crazy.”

The word “agoraphobia” comes from two Greek words that mean “fear” (*phobos*) and “marketplace” (*agora*). The anxiety associated with agoraphobia leads to avoidance of situations that involve being outside one’s home alone, being in crowds, being on a bridge, or traveling by car or public transportation. Agoraphobia may intensify to the point that it interferes with a person’s ability to take a job outside the home or to carry out such ordinary errands and activities as shopping for groceries or going out to a movie.

### Description

The close association in agoraphobia between fear of being outside one’s home and fear of having panic

symptoms is reflected in *DSM-IV-TR* classification of two separate disorders: **panic disorder** (PD) with agoraphobia, and agoraphobia without PD. PD is essentially characterized by sudden attacks of fear and panic. There may be no known reason for the occurrence of panic attacks; they are frequently triggered by fear-producing events or thoughts, such as driving or being in an elevator. PD is believed to be due to an abnormal activation of the body’s hormonal system, causing a sudden “fight-or-flight” response.

The chief distinction between PD with agoraphobia and agoraphobia without PD is that patients who are diagnosed with PD with agoraphobia meet all criteria for PD; in agoraphobia without PD, patients are afraid of panic-like symptoms in public places, rather than full-blown panic attacks.

People with agoraphobia appear to have two distinct types of anxiety—panic, and the anticipatory anxiety related to fear of future panic attacks. Patients with agoraphobia are sometimes able to endure being in the situations they fear by “gritting their teeth,” or by having a friend or relative accompany them.

In the United States’ diagnostic system, the symptoms of agoraphobia can be similar to those of specific phobia and **social phobia**. In agoraphobia and specific phobia, the focus is fear itself; with social phobia, the person’s focus is on how others are perceiving him/her. Patients diagnosed with agoraphobia tend to be more afraid of their own internal physical sensations and similar cues than of the reactions of others *per se*. In cases of specific phobia, the person fears very specific situations, whereas in agoraphobia, the person

generally fears a variety of situations (being outside of the home alone or traveling on public transportation, for example). An example of a patient diagnosed with a specific phobia rather than agoraphobia would be the person whose fear is triggered only by being in a bus, rather than a car or taxi. The fear of the bus is more specific than the fear of traveling on public transportation in general, which may be experienced by a person with agoraphobia. The *DSM-IV-TR* remarks that the differential **diagnosis** of agoraphobia “can be difficult because all of these conditions are characterized by avoidance of specific situations.”

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Currently, the causes of agoraphobia are complex and not completely understood. Research indicates several factors can contribute to the condition.

**GENETIC.** It has been known for some years that **anxiety disorders** tend to run in families. Recent research has confirmed earlier hypotheses that there is a genetic component to agoraphobia, and that it can be separated from susceptibility to PD. In 2001, a team of Yale geneticists reported the discovery of a genetic locus on human chromosome 3 that governs a person’s risk of developing agoraphobia. PD was found to be associated with two loci: one on human chromosome 1 and the other on chromosome 11q. The researchers concluded that agoraphobia and PD are common; they are both inheritable anxiety disorders that share some, but not all, of their genetic loci for susceptibility.

**INNATE TEMPERAMENT.** A number of researchers have pointed to inborn temperament as a broad vulnerability factor in the development of anxiety and mood disorders. In other words, a person’s natural disposition or temperament may become a factor in developing a number of mood or anxiety disorders. Some people seem more sensitive throughout their lives to events, but upbringing and life history are also important factors in determining who will develop these disorders. Children who manifest what is known as “behavioral inhibition” (a group of behaviors that are displayed when the child is confronted with a new situation or unfamiliar people) in early infancy are at increased risk for developing more than one anxiety disorder in adult life—particularly if the inhibition remains over time. These behaviors include moving around, crying, and general irritability, followed by withdrawing, seeking comfort from a familiar person, and stopping what one is doing when one notices the new person or situation. Children of

depressed or anxious parents are more likely to develop behavioral inhibition.

**PHYSIOLOGICAL REACTIONS TO ILLNESS.** Another factor in the development of PD and agoraphobia appears to be a history of respiratory disease. Some researchers have hypothesized that repeated episodes of respiratory disease would predispose a child to PD by making breathing difficult and lowering the threshold for feeling suffocated. It is also possible that respiratory diseases could generate fearful beliefs in the child’s mind that would lead him or her to exaggerate the significance of respiratory symptoms.

**LIFE EVENTS.** About 42% of patients diagnosed with agoraphobia report histories of real or feared separation from their parents or other caretakers in childhood. This statistic has been interpreted to mean that agoraphobia in adults is the aftermath of unresolved childhood separation anxiety. The fact that many patients diagnosed with agoraphobia report that their first episode occurred after the death of a loved one, and the observation that other people with agoraphobia feel safe in going out as long as someone is with them, have been taken as supportive evidence of the separation anxiety hypothesis.

**LEARNED BEHAVIOR.** There are also theories about human learning that explain agoraphobia. It is thought that a person’s initial experience of panic-like symptoms in a specific situation—for example, being alone in a subway station—may lead the person to associate physical symptoms of panic with all subway stations. Avoiding all subway stations would then reduce the level of the person’s discomfort. Unfortunately, the avoidance strengthens the phobia because the person is unlikely to have the opportunity to test whether subway stations actually cause uncomfortable physical sensations. One treatment modality—exposure therapy—is based on the premise that phobias can be “unlearned” by reversing the pattern of avoidance.

**SOCIAL FACTORS RELATED TO GENDER.** Gender role socialization has been suggested as an explanation for the fact that the majority of patients with agoraphobia are women. One form of this hypothesis maintains that some parents still teach girls to be fearful and timid about venturing out in public. Another version relates agoraphobia to the mother-daughter relationship, maintaining that mothers tend to give daughters mixed messages about becoming separate individuals. As a result, girls grow up with a more fragile sense of self, and may stay within the physical boundaries of their home because they lack a firm sense of their internal psychological boundaries.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of an episode of agoraphobia may include any or all of the following:

- trembling
- breaking out in sweat
- heart palpitations
- paresthesias (tingling or “pins and needles” sensations in the hands or feet)
- nausea
- fatigue
- rapid pulse or breathing rate
- a sense of impending doom

In most cases, the person with agoraphobia feels some relief from the symptoms after he or she has left the precipitating situation or returned home.

### Demographics

In general, phobias are the most common mental disorders in the general United States population, affecting about 7% of adults, or 6.4 million Americans. Agoraphobia is one of the most common phobias, affecting between 2.7% and 5.8% of American adults. The onset of symptoms is most likely to occur between age 15 and age 35. The lifetime prevalence of agoraphobia is estimated at 5%–12%. Like most phobias, agoraphobia is two to four times more common in women than in men.

The incidence of agoraphobia appears to be similar across races and ethnic groups in the United States.

### Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of agoraphobia is described differently in *DSM-IV-TR* and in *ICD-10*, the European diagnostic manual. The U.S. diagnostic manual specifies that agoraphobia must be defined in relation to PD, and that the diagnoses of **specific phobias** and social phobias are the next to consider. The *DSM-IV-TR* also specifies that the patient's symptoms must not be related to **substance abuse**; and if they are related to a general medical condition, they must have excessive symptoms usually associated with that condition. For example, a person with Crohn's disease has realistic concerns about an attack of diarrhea in a public place and should not be diagnosed with agoraphobia unless the fear of losing bowel control is clearly exaggerated. The *DSM-IV-TR* does not require a person to experience agoraphobia within a set number of circumstances in order to meet the diagnostic criteria.

In contrast, the European diagnostic manual primarily distinguishes between agoraphobia and delusional or obsessive disorders, and depressive episodes. In addition, *ICD-10* specifies that the patient's anxiety must be restricted to or occur primarily within two out of four specific situations: in crowds, in public places, while traveling alone, or while traveling away from home. The primary area of agreement between the American and European diagnostic manuals is that both specify avoidance of the feared situation as a diagnostic criterion.

Diagnosis of agoraphobia is usually made by a physician after careful exclusion of other mental disorders and physical conditions or diseases that might be related to the patient's fears. Head injury, pneumonia, and withdrawal from certain medications can produce some of the symptoms of a panic attack. In addition, the physician may ask about caffeine intake as a possible dietary factor. Currently, there are no laboratory tests or diagnostic **imaging studies** that can be used to diagnose agoraphobia.

Furthermore, there are no widely used diagnostic interviews or screening instruments specifically for agoraphobia. Dutch researchers have developed a self-report questionnaire that promises to be helpful to doctors treating people with agoraphobia. The test is called the Agoraphobic Self-Statements Questionnaire, or ASQ, and is intended to evaluate thinking processes in patients with agoraphobia, as distinct from their emotional responses.

### Treatments

Treatment of agoraphobia usually consists of medication plus **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT). The physician may also recommend an alternative form of treatment for the anxiety symptoms associated with agoraphobia. Some patients may be advised to cut down on or give up coffee or tea, as the caffeine in these beverages can contribute to their panic symptoms.

### Medications

Medications that have been used with patients diagnosed with agoraphobia include the benzodiazepine tranquilizers, the MAO inhibitors (MAOIs), tricyclic **antidepressants** (TCAs), and the selective serotonin uptake inhibitors, or **SSRIs**. In the past few years, the SSRIs have come to be regarded as the first-choice medication treatment because they have fewer side effects. The **benzodiazepines** have the disadvantage of increasing the symptoms of agoraphobia when they are withdrawn, as well as interfering with CBT.

## KEY TERMS

**Associationism**—A theory about human learning that explains complex psychological phenomena in terms of coincidental relationships. For example, a person with agoraphobia who is afraid of riding in a car may have had a panic attack in a car on one occasion and has learned to associate cars with the physical symptoms of a panic attack.

**Ayurvedic medicine**—The traditional medical system of India. Ayurvedic treatments include diet, exercises, herbal treatments, meditation, massage, breathing techniques, and exposure to sunlight.

**Behavioral inhibition**—A set of behaviors that appear in early infancy that are displayed when the child is confronted with a new situation or unfamiliar people. These behaviors include moving around, crying, and general irritability, followed by withdrawing, and seeking comfort from a familiar person. These behaviors are associated with an increased risk of social phobia and panic disorder in later life. Behavioral inhibition in children appears to be linked to anxiety and mood disorders in their parents.

**Cognitive restructuring**—An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping the patient examine distorted patterns of perceiving and thinking in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**Exposure therapy**—A form of cognitive-behavioral therapy in which patients with phobias are exposed to their feared objects or situations while accompanied by the therapist. The length of exposure is gradually increased until the association between the feared situation and the patient's experienced panic symptoms is no longer present.

**Paresthesia**—An abnormal sensation of tingling or “pins and needles.” Paresthesia is a common panic-like symptom associated with agoraphobia.

**Phobia**—Irrational fear of places, things, or situations that lead to avoidance.

**Simple phobia**—An older term for specific phobia.

**Specific phobia**—A type of phobia in which the object or situation that arouses fear is clearly identifiable and limited. An older term for specific phobia is simple phobia.

(Benzodiazepines can decrease mental sharpness, making it difficult for patients taking these medications to focus in therapy sessions.) The MAOIs require patients to follow certain dietary guidelines. For example, they must exclude aged cheeses, red wine, and certain types of beans. TCAs may produce such side effects as blurred vision, constipation, dry mouth, and drowsiness.

### *Psychotherapy*

CBT is regarded as the most effective psychotherapeutic treatment for agoraphobia. The specific CBT approach that seems to work best with agoraphobia is exposure therapy. Exposure therapy is based on undoing the association that the patient originally formed between the panic symptoms and the feared situation. By being repeatedly exposed to the feared location or situation, the patient gradually learns that he or she is not in danger, and the anxiety symptoms fade away. The therapist typically explains the procedure of exposure therapy to the patient and reassures him or her that the exposure can be stopped at any time that his or her limits of toleration have been reached. The patient is then exposed in the course of a number of treatment sessions to the feared situation,

usually for a slightly longer period each time. A typical course of exposure therapy takes about 12 weeks.

On the other hand, one group of German researchers reported good results in treating patients with agoraphobia with individual high-density exposure therapy. The patients were exposed to their respective feared situations for an entire day for two to three weeks. One year later, the patients had maintained their improvement.

**Exposure treatment** for agoraphobia may be combined with cognitive restructuring. This form of cognitive behavioral therapy teaches patients to observe the thoughts that they have in the feared situation, such as, “I'll die if I have to go into that railroad station,” and replace these thoughts with positive statements. In this example, the patient with agoraphobia might say to him- or herself, “I'll be just fine when I go in there to buy my ticket.”

Although insight-oriented therapies have generally been considered relatively ineffective in treating agoraphobia, a recent trial of brief **psychodynamic psychotherapy** in patients with PD with agoraphobia indicates that this form of treatment may also be beneficial. Of the 21 patients who participated in the

24-session course of treatment (twice weekly for 12 weeks), 16 experienced remission of their agoraphobia. There were no relapses at six-month follow-up.

### **Alternative and complementary treatments**

Patients diagnosed with agoraphobia have reported that alternative therapies, such as **hypnotherapy** and music therapy, were helpful in relieving symptoms of anxiety and panic. Ayurvedic medicine, **yoga**, religious practice, and guided imagery **meditation** have also been helpful.

### **Prognosis**

The prognosis for untreated agoraphobia is considered poor by most European as well as most American physicians. The *DSM-IV-TR* remarks that little is known about the course of agoraphobia without PD, but that anecdotal evidence indicates that it may persist for years with patients becoming increasingly impaired. The *ICD-10* refers to agoraphobia as “the most incapacitating of the phobic disorders,” to the point that some patients become completely housebound. With proper treatment, however, 90% of patients diagnosed with agoraphobia can recover and resume a normal life.

### **Prevention**

The genetic factors that appear to be implicated in the development of agoraphobia cannot be prevented. On the other hand, recent recognition of the link between anxiety and mood disorders in parents and vulnerability to phobic disorders in their children may help to identify children at risk and to develop appropriate preventive strategies for them.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Freeman, Arthur, James Pretzer, Barbara Fleming, and Karen M. Simon. *Clinical Applications of Cognitive Therapy* (2nd ed.). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 2004.
- Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. “CAM Therapies for Specific Conditions: Anxiety.” *The Best Alternative Medicine*, Part II. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.
- Starcevic, Vladan. *Anxiety Disorders in Adults: A Clinical Guide*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- World Health Organization (WHO). *The ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural Disorders*. Geneva: WHO, 1992.

### **PERIODICALS**

- Churchill, Rachel, Furukawa, Toshi A., and Watanabe, Norio. “Psychotherapy plus Antidepressant for Panic Disorder With or Without Agoraphobia: Systematic Review.” *British Journal of Psychiatry* 188.4 (April 2006): 305–312.
- Roy-Byrne, Peter P., Michelle G. Craske, and Murray B. Stein. “Panic Disorder.” *Lancet* 368.9540 (September 2006): 1023–1032.

### **ORGANIZATIONS**

- Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852-2624. Telephone: (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.
- Ayurvedic and Naturopathic Medical Clinic. 2115 112th Ave NE, Bellevue, WA 98004. Telephone: (425) 453-8022. <[www.ayurvedicscience.com](http://www.ayurvedicscience.com)>.
- Freedom From Fear. 308 Seaview Avenue, Staten Island, NY 10305. Telephone: (718) 351-1717. <[www.freedomfromfear.com](http://www.freedomfromfear.com)>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2971. Telephone: (800) 969-6642. <[www.nmha.org](http://www.nmha.org)>.

### **OTHER**

- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Anxiety Disorders*. NIH Publication No. 00-3879 (2000). <[www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/anxiety.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/anxiety.cfm)>.

Rebecca Frey, Ph.D.  
Ruth M. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

**AIMS** see **Abnormal involuntary movement scale**

**Akineton** see **Biperiden**

**Alcohol-induced persisting amnestic disorder** see **Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome**

## **Alcohol and related disorders**

### **Definition**

Alcoholism is defined as alcohol-seeking and -consumption behavior that is harmful. Long-term and uncontrollable harmful consumption can cause alcohol-related disorders that include **antisocial personality disorder**, mood disorders (bipolar and major depression) and **anxiety disorders**.

### **Description**

Alcoholism is the popular term for the disorder recognized by the American Psychiatric Association (APA) as alcohol dependence. The hallmarks of this disorder are **addiction** to alcohol, inability to stop



An Alcoholics Anonymous meeting. (Hank Morgan/Photo Researchers, Inc)

drinking, and repeated interpersonal, school, or work-related problems that can be directly attributed to the use of alcohol. Alcoholism can have serious consequences, affecting an individual's health and personal life, as well as affecting society at large.

Alcohol dependence is a complex disorder that includes the social and interpersonal issues mentioned above, and includes biological elements, as well. These elements are related to tolerance and withdrawal, cognitive (thinking) problems that include craving, and behavioral abnormalities including the impaired ability to stop drinking. Withdrawal is a term that refers to the symptoms that occur when a person dependent on a substance stops taking that substance for a period of time; withdrawal symptoms vary in type and severity depending on the substance, but alcohol withdrawal symptoms can include shaking, irritability, and nausea. Tolerance is a reduced response to the alcohol consumed and can be acute or chronic. Acute tolerance occurs during a single episode of drinking and is greater when blood alcohol concentration rises. Chronic tolerance occurs over the long term when there is greater resistance to the intoxicating effects

of alcohol, and, as a result, the affected person has to drink more to achieve the desired effect.

The APA also recognizes another alcohol-use disorder called alcohol **abuse**. Alcohol abuse is similar to dependence in that the use of alcohol is impairing the affected person's ability to achieve goals and fulfill responsibilities, and his or her interpersonal relationships are affected by the alcohol abuse. However, unlike a person with dependence, a person diagnosed with alcohol abuse does not experience tolerance or, when not drinking, withdrawal symptoms. People who abuse alcohol can become dependent on the substance over time.

Alcohol-related disorders are groups of disorders that can result in persons who are long-term users of alcohol. These disorders can affect the person's metabolism, gastrointestinal tract, nervous system, bone marrow (the matter in bones that forms essential blood cells) and can cause endocrine (hormone) problems. Additionally, alcoholism can result in nutritional deficiencies. Some common alcohol-related medical disorders include vitamin deficiencies, alterations in sugar and fat levels in blood, hepatitis, fatty liver, cirrhosis, esophagitis (inflammation of the

esophagus), gastritis (inflammation of the lining of the stomach), **dementia**, abnormal heart rates and rhythms, lowered platelets (cells important for forming a clot), leukopenia (decrease in the number of white blood cells that are important for body defenses and immunity), and testicular atrophy (shrinking of the testicles). Persons with **anxiety**, depression, or **bipolar disorder** may consume alcohol for temporary relief from their symptoms. Others, such as persons with antisocial personality disorder, may use alcohol in a way that may become part of a **dual diagnosis** of criminality and substance dependence.

## Demographics

The lifetime prevalence of alcohol abuse in the general population is thought to be between 13.7% and 23.5%. The disorder is more common in males than in females. Alcoholism and alcohol abuse affect 20% or more of adult hospitalized and ambulatory patients (those receiving care on an outpatient basis). Alcoholism can develop in people of all races and socioeconomic classes. Approximately two-thirds of Americans 18 years and older drink alcohol. The annual cost of alcohol abuse in the United States is \$185 billion. Alcoholism ranks third in the United States as a preventable disease, and alcohol is related to approximately 20,000 deaths each year.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The cause of alcoholism is related to behavioral, biological, and genetic factors.

Behaviorally, alcohol consumption is related to internal or external feedback. Internal feedback is the internal state a person experiences during and after alcohol consumption. External feedback is made up of the cues that other people send the person when he or she drinks. Internal states pertaining to alcohol can include shame or hangover. Alcohol-related external cues can include reprimands, criticism, or encouragement. People may drink to the point of dependence because of peer pressure, acceptance in a peer group, or because drinking is related to specific moods (easy-going, relaxed, calm, sociable) that are related to the formation of intimate relationships.

Biologically, repeated use of alcohol can impair the **brain** levels of a “pleasure” neurotransmitter called **dopamine**. **Neurotransmitters** are chemicals in the brain that pass impulses from one nerve cell to the next. When a person is dependent on alcohol, his or her brain areas that produce dopamine become depleted and the individual can no longer enjoy the

pleasures of everyday life—his or her brain chemistry is rearranged to depend on alcohol for transient euphoria (state of happiness).

Genetic studies have suggested that the GABA-A receptor alpha2 subunit gene (GABRA2) and alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) genes increase the risk for alcohol dependence. The GABRA genes are related to a receptor for gamma-amino butyric acid (GABA), a chemical in the central nervous system that is believed to mediate some of the physiological effects of alcohol. ADH is a chemical involved in the oxidation of alcohol in the body. These genes related to alcohol abuse can be passed from parents to their children.

Other genetic studies have demonstrated that close relatives of an alcoholic are four times more likely to become alcoholics themselves. Furthermore, this risk holds true even for children who were adopted away from their biological families at birth and raised in a non-alcoholic adoptive family, with no knowledge of their biological family’s difficulties with alcohol.

### Symptoms

**ALCOHOL DEPENDENCE.** Individuals who are alcohol-dependent compulsively drink ethanol (the chemical name for alcohol) to the level of intoxication. Intoxication occurs at blood alcohol levels of 50 to 150 mg/dl and is characterized by euphoria at first, and then if blood concentrations of alcohol continue to rise, a person can become explosively combative. Neurologically, acute intoxication causes impaired thinking, lack of coordination, slow or irregular eye movements, and impaired vision. As the person repeatedly drinks, the body develops a reduced response to ethanol called tolerance.

People with chronic tolerance may appear to be sober (not intoxicated) even after consumption of alcohol that could cause death in non-drinkers. People with alcohol dependence may also develop alcoholic blackouts after large amounts of ethanol consumption. These blackouts are typically characterized by **amnesia** (loss of memory) lasting several hours without impaired consciousness. In other words, people experiencing blackouts appear to be conscious, but will not remember their actions during the blackouts after the intoxication has worn off.

People with alcohol dependence also develop alcohol withdrawal (a state of non-drinking) syndrome. The nervous system adapts to chronic ethanol exposure by increasing the activity of nerve-cell mechanisms that counteract alcohol’s depressant effects. Therefore, when drinking is abruptly reduced, the

affected person develops disordered perceptions, **seizures**, and tremor (often accompanied by irritability, nausea, and vomiting). Tremor of the hands known as “morning shakes,” usually occurs in the morning due to overnight abstinence. The most serious manifestation of alcohol withdrawal syndrome is **delirium tremens**, which occurs in approximately 5% of people dependent on alcohol. Delirium tremens consists of agitation, disorientation, **insomnia**, **hallucinations**, **delusions**, intense sweating, fever, and increased heart rate (tachycardia). This state is a medical emergency because it can be fatal, and affected persons must be immediately hospitalized and treated with medications that control vital physiological functions.

The APA publishes a manual for mental health professionals called the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, also known as the **DSM**. This manual lists criteria that each disorder must meet for **diagnosis**. The criteria are symptoms that must be present so that the diagnosis can be made. Alcohol dependence can be diagnosed if three or more of the following symptoms are present within a 12-month period:

- tolerance
- withdrawal
- drinking alcohol in larger amounts and over a longer period of time than was planned
- Continued desire or attempts to stop alcohol use
- preoccupation with, and great deal of time spent seeking alcohol
- drinking is the focal point of person’s life (using takes up most of the person’s time)
- continued use despite health problems related to drinking (such as liver damage)

**ALCOHOL ABUSE.** In order for a person to be diagnosed with alcohol abuse, one of the following four criteria must be met within a 12-month period. Because of drinking, a person repeatedly:

- fails to live up to his or her most important responsibilities at home, school, or work
- physically endangers him- or herself, or others (for example, by drinking and driving)
- gets into trouble with the law
- experiences difficulties in relationships or jobs

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of alcoholism can either be based on medical and/or psychological conditions. With a long-term history of abusive drinking, medical conditions can result, and these could lead the physician to

suspect a patient’s alcoholism. These medical conditions may include organ complications such as: cirrhosis (liver), hepatitis (liver), pancreatitis (pancreas), peripheral neuropathy (nervous system), or cardiomyopathy (heart). Additionally, recurrent trauma, resulting in bone fractures, **fatigue**, depression, sexual dysfunction, fluctuating blood pressure, and **sleep disorders** may prompt the clinician to further assess for alcoholism.

Psychological diagnosis can be accomplished through a clinical interview and history (biopsychosocial assessment), and from a choice of many standardized alcohol use tests. The biopsychosocial assessment is an extensive interview conducted by the clinician. During the interview, the clinician will ask the patient about many areas of life, including childhood, education, and medical history. One very simple tool for beginning the diagnosis of alcoholism is called the CAGE questionnaire. It consists of four questions, with the first letters of each key word spelling out the word CAGE:

- Have you ever tried to *Cut* down on your drinking?
- Have you ever been *Annoyed* by anyone’s comments about your drinking?
- Have you ever felt *Guilty* about your drinking?
- Do you ever need an *Eye-opener* (a morning drink of alcohol) to start the day?

Other, longer lists of questions exist to help determine the severity and effects of a person’s alcohol use. Given the recent research pointing to a genetic basis for alcoholism, the doctor will also attempt to ascertain whether anyone else in the person’s family has ever suffered from alcoholism.

Diagnosis is sometimes facilitated when family members call the attention of a physician to a loved one’s difficulties with alcohol.

## Treatments

Comprehensive treatment for alcohol dependence has two components: **detoxification** and rehabilitation.

### *Detoxification*

The goal of detoxification is to rid the patient’s body of the toxic effects of alcohol. Because the person’s body has become accustomed to alcohol, the person will need to be supported as he or she goes through withdrawal. Withdrawal will be different for different patients, depending on the severity of the alcoholism, as measured by the quantity of alcohol ingested daily and the length of time the patient has been dependent on alcohol. Withdrawal symptoms

can range from mild to life-threatening. Mild withdrawal symptoms include nausea, achiness, diarrhea, difficulty sleeping, sweatiness, anxiety, and trembling. This phase begins between five and eight hours after the last drink, and is over in about three to five days. More severe effects of withdrawal can include hallucinations (in which a patient sees, hears, or feels something that is not actually real), seizures, a strong craving for alcohol, confusion, fever, fast heart rate, high blood pressure, and delirium (a fluctuating level of consciousness). Severe withdrawal can involve delirium tremens, which involve fever, delirium, intense sweating, and tremors. Patients at highest risk for delirium tremens are those with other medical problems, including malnutrition, liver disease, or Wernicke's encephalopathy. Delirium tremens usually begins about three to five days after the patient's last drink, progressing from the more mild symptoms to the more severe, and may last a number of days.

Patients going through mild withdrawal are simply monitored carefully to make sure that more severe symptoms do not develop. No medications are necessary, however. Treatment of a patient with more severe effects of withdrawal may require the use of sedative medications to relieve the discomfort of withdrawal and to avoid the potentially life-threatening complications of high blood pressure, fast heart rate, and seizures. Benzodiazepines are medications that ease tension by slowing down the central nervous system and may be helpful in those patients experiencing hallucinations. Because of the patient's nausea, fluids may need to be given through a vein (intravenously), along with some necessary sugars and salts. It is crucial that thiamine be included in the fluids, because thiamine is usually quite low in patients with alcohol dependence, and deficiency of thiamine is responsible for Wernick's encephalopathy.

### **Rehabilitation**

After cessation of drinking has been accomplished, the next steps involve helping the patient stay healthy and avoid relapsing. (**Relapse** occurs when a patient returns to old behaviors that he or she was trying to change.) This phase of treatment is referred to as rehabilitation. The best programs incorporate the family into the therapy, because the family has undoubtedly been severely affected by the patient's drinking. Some therapists believe that family members, in an effort to deal with their loved one's drinking problem, sometimes develop patterns of behavior that unintentionally support or "enable"

the patient's drinking. This situation is referred to as "co-dependence," and must be addressed in order to treat a person's alcoholism successfully.

**PSYCHOLOGICAL THERAPIES.** **Psychotherapy** helps affected persons to anticipate, understand, recognize, and prevent relapse. Behavioral therapy approaches typically include community-centered **support groups**, meetings such as Alcoholics Anonymous (AA), **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT), and Motivated Enhancement Therapy (MET). CBT focuses on teaching alcoholics recognition and coping skills for craving states and high-risk situations that precipitate or trigger relapsing behaviors. MET can motivate patients to use their personal resources to initiate changes in behavior. Many people recovering from substance dependence find peer-led support groups helpful in helping them avoid relapse.

**MEDICATIONS.** Two medications, **naltrexone** (ReVia) and acamprosate (Campral), can help decrease craving states in alcoholics. A version of naltrexone, called **vivitrol**, can be injected by a healthcare professional once a month to help reduce an individual's urge to drink. In combination with psychotherapy, these medications can help reduce relapse. Another medication called **disulfiram** (Antabuse) affects the metabolism of alcohol and causes unpleasant effects in patients who consume alcohol while taking the medication. Antabuse should only be taken by people who are committed to recovery and understand that they are to avoid all contact with alcohol or alcohol-containing products. People who have alcohol dependence along with other disorders, such as depression, can work with their physicians to determine if medication might be a feasible treatment option for them.

**ADDITIONAL TREATMENTS.** Alternative treatments can be a helpful adjunct for the alcoholic patient, once the medical danger of withdrawal has passed. Because many alcoholics have very stressful lives (whether because of or leading to the alcoholism is sometimes a matter of debate), many of the treatments for alcoholism involve managing and relieving **stress**. These include massage, **meditation**, and **hypnotherapy**. The malnutrition of long-term alcohol use is addressed by nutrition-oriented practitioners and dietitians with careful attention to a healthy diet and the use of nutritional supplements such as vitamins A, B complex, and C, as well as certain fatty acids, amino acids, zinc, magnesium, and selenium. **Acupuncture** is believed to decrease both withdrawal symptoms and to help improve a patient's chances for continued recovery from alcoholism.

## KEY TERMS

**Antisocial personality disorder**—Disorder characterized by behavior pattern of disregard for others' rights. People with this disorder often deceive and manipulate, or their behavior might include aggression to people or animals or property destruction, for example. This disorder has also been called sociopathy or psychopathy.

**Blackout**—A period of loss of consciousness or memory.

**Delirium tremens**—Serious alcohol withdrawal symptoms that must be treated in a hospital and that may include shaking, delirium, and hallucinations.

**Detoxification**—A process in which the body is allowed to free itself of a drug while the symptoms of withdrawal are treated. It is the primary step in any treatment program for drug or alcohol abuse.

**Euphoria**—A feeling or state of well-being or elation.

**Intoxication**—Condition of being drunk.

**Relapse**—A person experiences a relapse when he or she re-engages in a behavior that is harmful and that he or she was trying to change or eliminate. Relapse is a common occurrence after treatment for many disorders, including addictions and eating disorders.

**Thiamine**—A B-vitamin that is essential to normal metabolism and nerve function, and whose absorption is affected by alcoholism.

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**Wernicke's encephalopathy**—Group of symptoms that appears in people who are dependent on alcohol. The syndrome is due to a thiamine deficiency, and severely affects one's memory, preventing new learning from taking place.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

become dependent on alcohol. Although many alcoholics can maintain sobriety with psychotherapeutic interventions alone, research indicates that medications such as disulfiram, in combination with psychotherapy, can be very effective for achieving sobriety.

## Prevention

Good prevention includes education and a knowledge of family (genetic) propensity. If alcohol dependence is present in a close family member, then relatives should know and be discouraged to drink beverages that contain alcohol. Education of older children and young teenagers concerning the negative effects and consequences of drinking alcohol may help to decrease or recognize problems before start or worsen.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Brozner, Elaine. *New Research on Alcohol Abuse And Alcoholism*. New York: Nova Science Publishers, 2006.

Dodes, Lance M. *The Heart of Addiction: A New Approach to Understanding and Managing Alcoholism and Other Addictive Behaviors*. New York: Harper, 2002.

Johnson, Bankole A., Pedro Ruiz, and Marc Galanter, eds. *Handbook of Clinical Alcoholism Treatment*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins 2003.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Alcoholics Anonymous. P.O. Box 459, New York, NY 10163. Telephone: (212) 870-3400. <<http://www.alcoholics-anonymous.org/>>

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. National Institutes of Health. 5635 Fishers Lane Bethesda, MD 20892-9304. <<http://www.niaaa.nih.gov/>>

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). 1 Choke Cherry Road, Rockville, MD, 20857. Telephone: (800) 729-6686. <<http://ncadi.samhsa.gov/>>

Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
Michael Mooney, M.A.,CAC,CCS  
Tanya Bivins, B.S.N.,RN  
Bill Asenjo, MS,CRC  
Stephanie N. Watson

Alcoholics Anonymous see **Self-help groups**

## Prognosis

Most persons who use alcohol start to drink during adolescence or early adulthood. Approximately 50% of male drinkers have alcohol-related problems such as fighting, blackouts, or legal problems during their early drinking years, usually late teens or early twenties. People who cannot control their drinking behaviors will tend to accumulate drinking-related problems and

## Alprazolam

### Definition

Alprazolam is a tranquilizer. It belongs to a group of drugs called **benzodiazepines**. In the United States alprazolam is sold under brand name Xanax.

## Purpose

The United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved alprazolam to treat **anxiety**, **panic disorder**, and anxiety associated with **depression**. Occasionally alprazolam is used to treat alcohol withdrawal, but it is not FDA-approved for this use, and is not normally the first drug tried in treating alcohol withdrawal symptoms.

## Description

Alprazolam is classified as a benzodiazepine. Benzodiazepines are sedative-hypnotic drugs that help to relieve nervousness, tension, and other anxiety symptoms by slowing the central nervous system. To do this, they block the effects of a specific chemical involved in the transmission of nerve impulses in the **brain**, decreasing the excitement level of the nerve cells.

All benzodiazepines cause sedation, including drowsiness and reduced mental alertness. However, one benefit of alprazolam is that it causes somewhat less drowsiness than many other benzodiazepine drugs.

Alprazolam comes in 0.25-mg, 0.5-mg, 1-mg and 2-mg tablets, and 1-mg/ml solution.

## Recommended dosage

The recommended initial adult dose for anxiety is 0.25–0.5 mg taken three times daily. This dosage may be increased every three to four days to a maximum total of 4 mg daily. Dosage for alcohol withdrawal usually totals from 2–2.5 mg daily given in several small doses throughout the day.

The starting dose for treating panic disorder is 0.5 mg three times daily. This dosage may be increased every three to four days until the total daily dosage ranges from 2–10 mg. The total amount should be divided in at least three even daily doses. Average doses for anxiety associated with depression range from 2.5–3 mg daily divided into even doses.

## Precautions

Alprazolam should not be used by patients who are pregnant, have narrow angle glaucoma, take ketoconazole or itraconazole, or those who are allergic to this or any other benzodiazepine drug. The dose of alprazolam must be carefully regulated and individualized in the elderly (over age 60), people with liver or kidney disease, and those taking other medications used to treat mental disorders.

Because alprazolam is a nervous system and respiratory depressant, it should not be taken with other

similar depressants, such as alcohol, other **sedatives**, sleeping pills, or tranquilizers. People taking this drug, should not drive, operate dangerous machinery, or engage in hazardous activities that require mental alertness at least until they see how the drug affects them.

Alprazolam should be used under close physician supervision in patients with history of **substance abuse**. Like other benzodiazepines, alprazolam can be habit-forming. Risk and severity of dependence appears greater in patients taking doses larger than 4 mg daily. However, smaller doses may cause dependence if alprazolam is taken longer than 12 weeks.

Suddenly discontinuing alprazolam after several weeks may cause uncomfortable symptoms of withdrawal. Withdrawal symptoms in people who have taken alprazolam three months or longer may include **seizures**, anxiety, nervousness, and headache. Patients should discuss with their doctor how to gradually discontinue alprazolam use to avoid such symptoms.

## Side effects

The most common side effects of alprazolam include sedation, dizziness, drowsiness, **insomnia**, and nervousness. The intensity of these side effects usually declines gradually and subsides in about eight weeks. A drop in blood pressure and an increase in heart rate may also occur in people who are taking alprazolam.

Decreased sex drive, menstrual disorders, and both weight gain and weight loss has been associated with use of alprazolam. People who experience the side effects of stomach upset, nausea, vomiting, and dry mouth should eat frequent, small meals and/or chew sugarless gum. Alprazolam has been associated with both diarrhea and constipation, as well as tremor, muscle cramps, vision disturbances, and rash.

## Interactions

Alprazolam interacts with a long list of other medications. Anyone starting this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. The most severe interactions occur with antifungal medications, such as ketoconazole, itraconazole, and fluconazole. These are associated with alprazolam toxicity (excessive sedation, **fatigue**, slurred speech, slowed reactions and other types of psychomotor impairment).

Estrogens (female hormones), erythromycin (an antibiotic), **fluoxetine** (Prozac, Sarafem), cimetidine (Tagamet), isoniazid, and **disulfiram** (Antabuse) can increase the effects of alprazolam. Carbamazepine can make alprazolam less effective. When alprazolam is

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

combined with other sedative drugs (tranquilizers, sleeping pills) or alcohol, its depressants effects are more intense. These combinations should be avoided.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Kay, Jerald. *Psychiatry: Behavioral Science and Clinical Essentials*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 2000.  
 Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Hudson, OH: Lexi-Comp, Inc. 2002.  
 Pharmacia and Upjohn Company Staff. *Product Information: Xanax, alprazolam*. Kalamazoo, MI: Pharmacia and Upjohn Company, 1999.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.



A nurse works with a patient with Alzheimer's (AP Images)

Alzheimer's disease was first identified in 1906 by a German **psychiatrist** and neuroanatomist named Alois Alzheimer. He was studying slides prepared from the brain of a fifty-one-year-old woman, known as Frau D., who had died after several years of dementia with symptoms that did not fit the definition of any brain disorder known at the time. Alzheimer was the first to describe the plaques and neurofibrillary tangles that are now used to identify AD at autopsy. Plaques are clumps or clusters of dead or dying nerve cells and other cellular debris found in the brains of patients with Alzheimer's disease. Neurofibrillary tangles are the accumulations of twisted protein fragments found inside nerve cells in the brains of patients with AD. Because dementia had been associated with elderly people and Frau D. had been middle-aged, AD was first known as presenile dementia, and was thought to be a very rare disorder. It was not until the early 1950s that researchers at St. Elizabeth's Hospital in Washington, D.C., came to recognize that AD is the single most common cause of dementia in adults.

Alzheimer's disease is now considered a very serious public health problem because of the growing numbers of people who are affected by it, the increasing length of their lives, and the direct and indirect costs of their care. It is estimated that 4.5 million people in the United States had AD as of 2006. About 5% of people between the ages of 65 and 74, and almost 50% of people aged 85 and older, have AD. The number of cases of AD is expected to more than triple by 2050. The direct and indirect costs of caring for Americans with AD is estimated to be at least \$100 billion annually.

## Alzheimer's disease

### Definition

Alzheimer's disease, or AD, is a progressive, incurable disease of the **brain** caused by the degeneration and eventual death of neurons (nerve cells) in several areas of the brain.

### Description

Patients with AD first lose such mental functions as short-term memory and the ability to learn new things. In the later stages of AD they gradually lose control over their sense of orientation, their emotions, and other aspects of behavior. End-stage AD is characterized by loss of control of body functions, an increased likelihood of **seizures**, loss of the ability to eat or swallow, and eventual death from infection or malnutrition. Alzheimer's disease is the most common cause of **dementia** (loss of cognitive abilities) in people aged 65 and older; it is thought to be responsible for 50%–70% of cases of dementia in the United States.

### *Types of Alzheimer's disease*

There are two different types of Alzheimer's disease.

**FAMILIAL AD.** Familial AD is a rare form of Alzheimer's disease found in fewer than 10% of AD patients. It develops before the age of 65, and is caused by gene mutations on chromosomes 1, 14 or 21.

**SPORADIC OR LATE-ONSET AD.** Sporadic or late-onset AD is the most common form of the disease; its symptoms usually begin to appear after age 65. The cause of this type of AD is unknown. Having a particular form of the APOE gene, located on chromosome 19, increases the risk of this type of AD.

### *Stages*

Health care professionals use the term "insidious" to describe AD, which means that it is very gradual in onset. Many times people recognize the first symptoms of the disorder in a friend or family member only in hindsight. In addition, the present generation of people old enough to be at risk for AD is the first generation in history to know what the **diagnosis** means; there are therefore very powerful emotional reasons for attributing the early signs of AD to normal aging, job **stress**, adjusting to retirement, and other less troubling factors. The insidious onset of AD is a characteristic, however, that allows doctors to distinguish it from other causes of dementia, including **vascular dementia**.

**EARLY-STAGE ALZHEIMER'S.** Early-stage Alzheimer's disease may begin almost imperceptibly. The first symptoms usually include short-term memory loss, temporary episodes of spatial disorientation, groping for words while one is speaking, minor problems with arithmetic, and small errors of judgment. For example, the person may light a stove burner under a saucerman before noticing that he has forgotten to put the food or water in the pan first, or he may have difficulty balancing a checkbook as quickly as he used to. At this stage in the disease, however, the patient can usually keep up with most activities of daily life. Although some persons at this point can still operate a motor vehicle safely, it is advisable to consult a physician about possible impairment behind the wheel. Many patients with early-stage AD voluntarily give up their driver's licenses for their own safety and that of other drivers on the roads.

**MIDDLE-STAGE ALZHEIMER'S.** In the middle stage, which typically begins two to three years after onset, the person begins to lose awareness of his or her cognitive deficits. Memory lapses are more frequent and the person begins to have more severe problems with language. Unlike early-stage AD, the problems caused

by loss of cognitive functioning are impossible to ignore. The middle stage of AD is the point at which the behavioral and psychiatric symptoms that are so stressful to caregivers often begin—the agitation, wandering, temper outbursts, **depression**, and disorientation. The patient is at high risk for falls and similar accidents. In addition, the patient becomes increasingly unable to understand simple instructions or to follow a conversation, and begins to lose his or her basic sense of personal identity.

**END-STAGE ALZHEIMER'S.** End-stage Alzheimer's disease is marked by the loss of the ability to walk and eventually even to sit up. Patients may be able to use a wheelchair for awhile, but eventually become completely bedridden. They lose bladder and bowel control. When the disease begins to affect the patient's brain stem, the basic processes of digestion, respiration, and excretion shut down. Patients usually stop eating at this point and sleep most of the time. The hands and feet begin to feel cold, the breathing becomes shallow, and the patient is generally unresponsive to caregivers. Eventually the patient's breathing simply stops.

## **Causes and symptoms**

### *Causes*

Evidence has accumulated that Alzheimer's disease is multifactorial—that is, it is caused by a combination of several genetic and environmental factors.

**GENETIC.** Early-onset AD is caused by a defect in one of three genes known as APP, presenilin-1 (PS1), and presenilin-2 (PS2). The APP gene is found on chromosome 21. People with Down syndrome, who have three copies of chromosome 21, develop an Alzheimer's type dementia if they live longer than 40 years of age. A family history of Down syndrome is associated with a greater risk of developing early-onset AD. Mutations of the APP gene are associated with an onset of AD between the ages of 55 and 60.

The PS1 gene is found on chromosome 14, and the PS2 gene is found on chromosome 1. Mutations in these genes are associated with an onset of AD between 30 and 50 years.

The APP, PS1 and PS2 gene mutations are very rare, and only account for about 5% of all cases of AD.

Genetic research indicates that late-onset Alzheimer's disease is a polygenic disorder; that is, its development is influenced by more than one gene. It has been known since 1993 that a specific form of a gene for apolipoprotein E (APOE4) on human chromosome 19 is a genetic risk factor for late-onset AD. People who inherit the APOE4 gene from both parents

have a greater chance of developing AD than those who inherit the gene from only one parent. About 65% of people with AD have at least one copy of the APOE4 gene. One of the remaining puzzles about this particular gene, however, is that it is not a consistent marker for AD. In other words, some people who have the APOE4 gene do not develop AD, and some who do not have the gene do develop the disorder. Researchers are working on identifying other genes that may also influence people's susceptibility to AD.

Familial Alzheimer's disease appears to be related to abnormal genes on human chromosomes 21 and 14.

**NEUROBIOLOGICAL.** Investigators since Alois Alzheimer's time have studied the abnormalities found at autopsy in the brains of patients with AD. One abnormality is plaques, or clumps, of a sticky protein called beta amyloid. Beta amyloid is formed when a substance called amyloid precursor protein, or APP, fails to be metabolized properly in the body. After beta amyloid is formed, pieces of it then stick to one another and gradually build up into plaques. The other abnormal finding is neurofibrillary tangles, which are twisted threads of a protein called tau that form inside nerve cells. If the tau protein is damaged by the addition of molecules of phosphorus, a process called hyperphosphorylation, it forms filaments that twist around each other to form the neurofibrillary tangles. Research suggests that the abnormal tau protein may be caused by increases in amyloid. As the plaques and tangles accumulate in the brain, they cause the nerve cells to wither and eventually die. As the nerve cells die, the affected parts of the brain start to shrink in size. It is still not known, however, whether the plaques and tangles are causes of AD or results of it.

Another nervous system abnormality in AD is the lowered level of **neurotransmitters** produced by the cells in the brain. Neurotransmitters are chemicals that carry nerve impulses across the small gaps (synapses) between nerve cells. The neurotransmitters affected by Alzheimer's include serotonin, norepinephrine, and acetylcholine. Many of the behavioral and psychiatric problems associated with AD are thought to result from the inadequate supply of these neurotransmitters.

**ENVIRONMENTAL.** Researchers have been studying the possibility that certain chemicals or other toxins in the environment may have a role in causing or triggering AD. The environmental factors that have been considered include aluminum, zinc, toxins in contaminated food, viruses, and a history of head trauma.

**RISK FACTORS.** A number of factors have been identified that increase a person's risk of developing Alzheimer's:

- Age. The risk of developing AD rises after age 65, and rises sharply after age 75. While 1% of the population has AD at age 65, almost 50% of those over 85 have it.
- Sex. Women are more likely to develop AD than men. However, it is not known whether women are more susceptible to the disorder or more likely to develop it because they live longer than men, on average.
- Family history of AD.
- Having Down syndrome.
- History of head injury.
- Substances in the environment. Higher-than-average amounts of aluminum have been found in the brains of patients with AD. Some researchers in the late 1990s thought that exposure to aluminum might be a risk factor for the disorder. It now appears that the levels of aluminum in the brains of patients are a result rather than a cause of AD.
- Low occupational attainment and education level. Studies have found a clear correlation between employment in jobs that are not mentally challenging and an increased risk of AD. In addition, taking less rather than more challenging jobs as one grows older is associated with a higher risk of AD.
- High systolic blood pressure.
- High blood cholesterol levels. When both high systolic blood pressure and high cholesterol are present, the risk of developing AD increases by a factor of 3.5.
- Mild cognitive impairment (MCI). Mild cognitive impairment is a transitional decline in cognitive functioning that precedes the onset of AD. MCI is characterized primarily by memory loss while other cognitive functions remain intact. Persons with MCI are at higher risk for AD than people who do not develop the condition; 12% of people with mild cognitive impairment develop Alzheimer's disease each year, compared with 1–2% per year of people without MCI. After four years, 40% of people diagnosed with mild cognitive impairment have clear symptoms of Alzheimer's disease.
- Diet. Researchers suspect that a high-cholesterol, high-fat diet may be implicated in the onset of AD. High levels of an amino acid called homocysteine may also be a risk factor for late-onset AD.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of AD can be grouped into three categories: cognitive deficits, or losses of brain function related to memory and learning; behavioral and psychiatric symptoms of dementia, or BPSD; and problems with activities of daily life, or ADLs.

**COGNITIVE DEFICITS.** There are four major symptoms of loss of cognitive capacities in AD:

- Amnesia. Amnesia refers to memory impairment; however, loss of short-term memory also means that the patient loses his or her sense of time as well.
- Aphasia. Aphasia refers to loss of language function. The person may not remember the names of objects and may use words like “thing” or “it” instead; they may echo what other people say or repeat a word or phrase over and over. On occasion the person may lose the ability to speak except for curse words.
- Apraxia. Apraxia is the loss of the ability to perform voluntary movements in the absence of paralysis. For example, person with apraxia may have trouble putting on a hospital gown or brushing his or her teeth.
- Agnosia. Agnosia comes from a Greek word that means “to not know”, and refers to inability to recognize familiar places and people. Patients with agnosia may even fail to recognize their own face in a mirror.

**NEUROPSYCHIATRIC SYMPTOMS.** Symptoms associated with BPSD include:

- Depression. Depression associated with AD is thought to result from the lowered production of the neurotransmitter serotonin. Depression in AD can be treated with medication, usually with one of the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, or SSRIs.
- Delusions. A delusion is a false belief that a person maintains even when presented with contrary evidence. For example, patients with AD may say that a person is stealing their things when they cannot remember where they have put them. Suspicions of other people caused by delusions can sometimes be treated with medication.
- Wandering. This behavior may result from becoming disoriented and getting lost, but sometimes people with AD wander for no apparent reason. The Alzheimer’s Association in Chicago has a Safe Return Hotline that can be contacted for information about registering a patient with AD. If the registered patient should wander from home, the Safe Return Hotline can help identify the patient and return him or her to their family or nursing home.
- Hallucinations. Like delusions, hallucinations in AD patients are thought to be related to the deterioration of the patient’s brain tissue. In a hallucination, the patient has a sensory experience that is real to him or her but not to other people. Hallucinations can affect any of the senses, but most are either visual or auditory. For example, a patient with AD may say that he or she sees little Martians in the corner of the room,

or that he or she hears the voice of a long-dead parent calling to them. Hallucinations are sometimes caused by medications that the patient may be taking.

- Aggression. Aggression refers to hitting, shoving, pushing, or threatening behavior.
- Agitation. Agitation refers to emotionally excited behavior (screaming, shouting, cursing, pacing, fidgeting, etc.) that is disruptive or unsafe. Agitation may result from the changes in the patient’s brain tissue, or it may be a symptom of depression associated with Alzheimer’s disease.

For most of the twentieth century, studies of patients with AD focused on the cognitive symptoms of the disorder. It was not until the 1980s and 1990s that researchers began to look more closely at the behavioral and psychiatric symptoms of AD. Such methods of standardized assessment of these symptoms as the neuropsychiatric inventory are very recent developments.

**PROBLEMS WITH ACTIVITIES OF DAILY LIVING (ADLs).** Needing help with ADLs, or personal care activities that are part of everyday living, is among the earliest symptoms of AD. The functions that are often affected include:

- eating, including simple cooking and washing dishes
- bathing, showering, or shaving
- grooming and dressing in clothing appropriate to the weather and activity
- toileting
- other aspects of personal hygiene (brushing teeth or cleaning dentures, washing hair, etc.)
- shopping for groceries and other necessary items

Health care professionals usually assess the ADLs of a patient diagnosed with AD in order to determine what type of care is needed.

## Demographics

Some demographic statistics in the developed countries have already been cited in the context of risk factors for AD and public health concerns related to the disorder.

AD is thought to be less prevalent in non-Western developed countries such as Japan, and in less industrialized countries such as India and Nigeria. However, relatively little is known about the demographics of AD and other forms of dementia in the developing countries. Alzheimer’s Disease International, which is based in London, supports a group of researchers called the 10/66 Dementia Research Group. The 10/66 group is trying to correct the global imbalance of

AD research; as of 2001, fewer than 10% of all population-based research studies of AD and related forms of dementia have been directed toward the 66% of people with these disorders who live outside the developed countries.

## Diagnosis

Currently, the diagnosis of AD is essentially a process of exclusion. A skilled physician can diagnose probable AD with 90% accuracy, but the diagnosis can only be confirmed post mortem (after death), by performing an autopsy and examining the patient's brain tissue.

### *Diagnostic evaluation of AD*

At present, the diagnostic process includes the following components:

- Clinical interview. In the absence of laboratory tests or imaging studies that can provide definite diagnoses, the physician must rely on his or her clinical judgment. In evaluating the patient, the doctor will assess signs of cognitive impairment other than short-term memory loss. In most cases, the doctor will ask a family member or close friend of the patient about the suddenness of symptom onset and the length of time that the patient seems to have been impaired.
- Physical examination. The patient will be given a complete physical and have blood and urine samples taken to rule out vitamin deficiencies, head trauma, tertiary syphilis, thyroid disorders, and other possible causes of dementia. The doctor will also review all the medications that the patient is taking (including alternative remedies) in order to exclude reversible dementia caused by drug interactions.
- Neurological examination. In early AD, the neurological findings are usually normal. If the patient appears to have had a stroke, he or she will be referred for a more thorough assessment by a neurologist.
- Tests of cognitive function. The patient will be given the mini-mental status examination (MMSE) and such other tests of cognitive function as the clock test or verbal fluency tests. The MMSE is a screening test and should not be used by itself to make the diagnosis of AD. In addition, the MMSE is not very sensitive in detecting cognitive impairment in people who previously functioned at a high level and were well educated. It is possible for a well-educated person to score a perfect 30 on the MMSE and still have cognitive impairment. The clock test is a test in which patients are asked to draw a clock face. Sometimes, patients will also be asked to include a specific

time on the clock, such as 3:20. Patients with AD often draw the face of the clock with numbers out of order, or all of the hour markers in a portion of the clock face instead of evenly spaced around the face, and often have difficulty adding the clock hands.

- Neuropsychiatric evaluation. A neuropsychiatric examination may be given to determine the pattern of the patient's cognitive impairment and probe his or her level of functioning more deeply. The patient may be asked to write a sample check, to describe how they answer the phone, to interpret sample traffic signs, and to look at a shopping list and pick out the items on the list from a display.
- Diagnostic imaging. Imaging studies are useful in detecting such causes of dementia as a previously undiagnosed brain tumor or abnormal brain structure. Scans can show doctors that certain areas of the brain have lost tissue (as happens in AD), and can strengthen a physician's suspicion of a patient's AD diagnosis, but scans cannot diagnose AD on their own. Scans are used more to rule out other possible diagnoses and to confirm a suspected diagnosis. CT (computed tomography) scans are commonly performed, as well as MRI (magnetic resonance imaging) scans in patients who are having problems with gait or balance. PET (positron emission tomography) and SPECT (single photon emission computed tomography) scans can be used to evaluate patterns of glucose (sugar) metabolism in the brain and to differentiate the patterns that are characteristic of Alzheimer's from those associated with vascular dementia and Pick's disease. PET scans are more precise than SPECT scans, but their cost may be prohibitive.

### *Ethical considerations*

A blood test can determine whether a person has the APOE4 gene. However, since APOE4 is only a risk factor for AD rather than a cause, the test cannot determine whether a person will develop AD. The National Institute on Aging does not recommend using the test to screen people for AD. One reason is that the test results are not conclusive—some people who eventually develop AD do not carry this gene, and some people who carry the gene do not develop AD. Another important reason is that there are ethical implications of testing for a disease that presently has no cure, in terms of the psychological consequences for patients and their families and the possible loss of health insurance and job opportunities for people found to be carrying the gene. These considerations may change, however, if researchers discover better treatments for

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Agitation**—Excessive restlessness or emotional disturbance that is often associated with anxiety or psychosis. Agitation may be associated with middle-stage Alzheimer's disease.

**Agnosia**—Loss of the ability to recognize familiar people, places, and objects.

**Amygdala**—An almond-shaped brain structure in the limbic system that is activated in stressful situations to trigger the emotion of fear. It is thought that the emotional overreactions in Alzheimer's patients are related to the destruction of neurons in the amygdala.

**Amyloid**—A waxy translucent substance composed mostly of protein, that forms plaques (abnormal deposits) in the brain during the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

**Aphasia**—Loss of language abilities.

**Apolipoprotein E**—A protein that transports cholesterol through the body. One form of this protein, APOE4, is associated with a 60% risk of late-onset AD.

**Apraxia**—Inability to perform purposeful movements that is not caused by paralysis or loss of feeling.

**Beta amyloid protein**—A starchy substance that builds up in the brains of people with AD to form the plaques that are characteristic of the disease. Beta amyloid is formed when amyloid precursor protein, or APP, is not broken down properly by the body.

**Bleomycin hydrolase**—An enzyme involved in the body's processing of amyloid precursor protein. If the gene that governs production of BH mutates, the APP accumulates, producing the plaques in the brains of patients with AD.

**Brain stem**—The part of the brain that is continuous with the spinal cord and controls most basic life functions. It is the last part of the brain that is destroyed by Alzheimer's disease.

**Cholinesterase inhibitors**—A group of medications given to slow the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness. It can be distinguished from dementia by its relatively sudden onset and variation in the severity of the symptoms.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

primary dementia, more effective preventive methods, or more reliable genetic markers for AD.

### Treatments

At present the mainstay of Alzheimer's treatment is medication, both to slow symptom progression and to manage the behavioral and psychiatric symptoms of AD.

#### *Medications to slow symptom progression*

The medications most commonly given to delay the progression of symptoms in AD are a group of drugs called cholinesterase inhibitors. These drugs were approved by the FDA over a decade ago. They work by slowing down the body's destruction of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine.

The cholinesterase inhibitors include:

- Tacrine (Cognex). This drug is the oldest cholinesterase inhibitor in use. It is used less often than newer

agents because it must be taken four times a day and may cause liver damage.

- Donepezil (Aricept). This drug is the one used most commonly as of 2002 to treat AD. It has fewer side effects than tacrine and can be given in one daily dose.
- Rivastigmine (Exelon). This drug is taken twice daily.
- Galantamine (Reminyl). This is the newest cholinesterase inhibitor, approved in late 2001. It acts on an additional acetylcholine receptor.

None of these medications provides more than modest benefits to patients with AD: they slow the progression of symptoms for about six months to a year in one-third to one-half of patients with AD. In addition, the cholinesterase inhibitors have side effects, most commonly nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, muscle cramps, and sleep disturbances.

Another medication that has recently been approved for AD is **memantine** (Namenda). Meman-

**Down syndrome**—A genetic disorder characterized by an extra chromosome 21 (trisomy 21), mental retardation, and susceptibility to early-onset Alzheimer's disease.

**Ginkgo**—A shade tree native to China with fan-shaped leaves and fleshy seeds with edible kernels. Ginkgo extract is being studied as a possible complementary or adjunctive treatment for Alzheimer's disease.

**Hallucination**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may "hear" sounds or "see" people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Hippocampus**—A part of the brain that is involved in memory formation and learning. The hippocampus is shaped like a curved ridge and belongs to an organ system called the limbic system.

**Insidious**—Proceeding gradually and inconspicuously but with serious effect.

**Mild cognitive impairment (MCI)**—A transitional phase of memory loss in older people that precedes dementia or Alzheimer's disease.

**Neurofibrillary tangles**—Accumulations of twisted protein fragments found inside the nerve cells in the brains of patients with Alzheimer's disease.

**Neurotransmitters**—Chemicals that carry nerve impulses from one nerve cell to another. Alzheimer's

disease causes a drop in the production of several important neurotransmitters.

**Plaques**—Clumps or clusters of beta amyloid fragments, dead or dying nerve cells, and other cellular debris, found in the brains of patients with Alzheimer's disease.

**Polygenic**—A trait or disorder that is determined by a group of genes acting together. Most human characteristics, including height, weight, and general body build, are polygenic. Schizophrenia and late-onset Alzheimer's disease are considered polygenic disorders.

**Post mortem**—After death. The definitive diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease can be made only after the patient's death.

**Presenile dementia**—An older name for Alzheimer's disease.

**Pseudodementia**—A term for a depression with symptoms resembling those of dementia. The term "dementia of depression" is now preferred.

**Systolic**—Referring to the rhythmic contraction of the heart (systole), when the blood in the chambers of the heart is forced out. Systolic blood pressure is blood pressure measured during this phase.

**Tau protein**—A protein that is involved in maintaining the internal structure of nerve cells. The tau protein is damaged in Alzheimer's disease and ends up forming the neurofibrillary tangles.

tine is thought to regulate the activity of a neurotransmitter called glutamate. When used alone or together with donezepil, it appears to help AD patients to function better cognitively.

Because brain inflammation may contribute to AD, researchers are studying nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, such as celecoxib (Celebrex) and naproxen (Aleve), to see whether they can slow the onset of AD. Recent studies have shown that naproxen and another anti-inflammatory nonsteroid drug, rofecoxib (Vioxx) do not, however, slow the progression of AD in people who have already developed AD.

### Medications for BPSD

Medications are also prescribed to manage the behavioral and psychiatric symptoms of AD, which are often quite stressful for caregivers if the patient is

being cared for at home. These medications are usually prescribed for specific symptoms:

- Delusions: Antipsychotic drugs, usually haloperidol (Haldol) or risperidone (Risperdal).
- Agitation: Short-term anti-anxiety drugs, usually lorazepam (Ativan) or buspirone (BuSpar).
- Depression: One of the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), at half the dosage for a young adult.
- Pain: Acetaminophen or a very low dose of codeine.

In general, older patients require lower dosages than those given to younger adults. Patients with AD are also more susceptible to the side effects of medications. For these reasons, physicians often recommend making changes in the patient's environment to reduce the behavioral symptoms before trying medications.

### **Alternative and complementary treatments**

Some complementary therapies have been shown to benefit patients with Alzheimer's.

**NATUROPATHY.** A naturopathic approach to AD includes supplementing antioxidant vitamins (vitamins A, E, and C) in the patient's diet, along with adding carotenoids, small amounts of selenium and zinc, and thiamine. Research shows that vitamin E can slow the progression of some symptoms of AD by about seven months. Currently, research is being done to find out whether vitamin E can prevent or delay AD in patients who have MCI. Botanical supplements that have been said to improve cognitive function include an extract made from *Ginkgo biloba*, a tree that is native to China. GBE, or ginkgo biloba extract, is the most frequently used herbal medicine in Europe. It is available in Germany by prescription and in an over-the-counter form, and has been approved by the German Commission E for dementia-related memory loss. Gingko extract is thought to work in a manner similar to the cholinesterase inhibitors. At present, the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) is conducting studies of gingko extract as a treatment for Alzheimer's.

**MUSIC THERAPY.** Music therapy has been found to calm agitated patients with AD, to improve mood, and to enhance long-term memory. Old familiar songs are particularly effective in improving recall. In other studies, music therapy has been shown to reduce sensations of **chronic pain** in patients with AD.

### **Prognosis**

There is no cure for Alzheimer's disease. The prognosis is progressive loss of mental and bodily functions leading to death within seven to ten years. Some patients, however, die within three years of diagnosis and others may survive for as long as fifteen.

### **Prevention**

Researchers are considering several different strategies to prevent AD. A vaccine to prevent the formation of beta amyloid plaques was initially tested in animals, but **clinical trials** in humans were stopped because of dangerous side effects. Research on new treatment approaches continues.

*See also Dementia; Mini mental state examination (MMSE).*

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Butcher, James N., Susan Mineka, and Jill M. Hooley. *Abnormal Psychology*. Boston, MA: Pearson Education, Inc., 2007.

Keck, David. *Forgetting Whose We Are: Alzheimer's Disease and the Love of God*. Nashville, TN: Abingdon Press, 1996. Mace, Nancy L., and Peter V. Rabins. *The 36-Hour Day*. Revised and updated edition. New York: Warner Books, Inc., 2001; by arrangement with The Johns Hopkins University Press.

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. *The Best Alternative Medicine*. Part II. "CAM Therapies for Specific Conditions: Alzheimer's Disease." New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.

Shenk, David. *The Forgetting: Alzheimer's: Portrait of an Epidemic*. New York: Doubleday, 2001.

### **PERIODICALS**

Aisen, P. S., J. Schmeidler, and G. M. Pasinetti. "Randomized Pilot Study of Nimesulide Treatment in Alzheimer's Disease." *Neurology* 58 (April 9, 2002): 1050-1054.

Bone, Kerry. "Ginkgo and Alzheimer's Disease." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* (January 2001): 27.

Delargarza, V.W., MD. "Pharmacologic Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease: An Update." *American Family Physician* 68, no. 7 (October 1, 2003): 1365-1372.

Desai, P. P., H. C. Hendrie, R. M. Evans, and others.

"Genetic Variation in Apolipoprotein D Affects the Risk of Alzheimer's Disease in African Americans." *American Journal of Human Genetics* 69 (October 2001): 416.

Editorial Commentary. "Neuropsychiatric Phenomena in Alzheimer's Disease." *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry* 71 (December 2001): 715.

"Head Injury Linked to Increased Risk of Alzheimer's Disease." *FDA Consumer* 35 (January-February 2001): 8.

Holmes, C., H. Smith, R. Ganderton, and others. "Psychosis and Aggression in Alzheimer's Disease: The Effect of Dopamine Receptor Gene Variation." *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry* 71 (December 2001): 777-779.

in't Veld, Bas A., Annemieke Ruitenberg, Albert Hofman, and others. "Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Drugs and the Risk of Alzheimer's Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 345 (November 22, 2001): 1515-1521.

Khosh, Farhang. "Naturopathic Approach to Alzheimer's Disease." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* (July 2001): 22-24.

Kim, S. Y., J. H. Karlawish, E. D. Caine. "Current State of Research on Decision-Making Competence of Cognitively Impaired Elderly Persons." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 10 (March-April 2002): 151-165.

Kivipelto, M., and others. "Midlife Vascular Risk Factors and Alzheimer's Disease in Later Life: Longitudinal, Population-Based Study." *British Medical Journal* 322 (June 16, 2001): 1447-1451.

Langbart, C. "Diagnosing and Treating Alzheimer's Disease: A Practitioner's Overview." *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners* 14 (March 2002): 103-109.

- Lueddecking-Zimmer, E., S. T. DeKosky, M. I. Kamboh. "Candidate Genes for Late-Onset Alzheimer's Disease on Chromosome 12." *American Journal of Human Genetics* 69 (October 2001): 518.
- Olin, J. T., I. R. Katz, B. S. Meyers, and others. "Provisional Diagnostic Criteria for Depression of Alzheimer Disease: Rationale and Background." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 10 (March-April 2002): 129-141.
- Shigenobu, K., M. Ikeda, R. Fukuhara, and others. "Reducing the Burden of Caring for Alzheimer's Disease Through the Amelioration of 'Delusions of Theft' by Drug Therapy." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 17 (March 2002): 211-217.
- Silverman, Daniel H. S., Gary W. Small, Carol Y. Chang, and others. "Positron Emission Tomography in Evaluation of Dementia: Regional Brain Metabolism and Long-Term Outcome." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 286 (November 7, 2001): 2120.
- Sloane, P. D., S. Zimmerman, C. Suchindran, and others. "The Public Health Impact of Alzheimer's Disease, 2000-2050: Potential Implication of Treatment Advances." *Annual Review of Public Health* 23 (2002): 213-231.
- Walsh, D. M., I. Klyubin, J. V. Fadeeva, and others. "Naturally Secreted Oligomers of Amyloid Beta Protein Potently Inhibit Hippocampal Long-Term Potentiation in Vivo." *Nature* 416 (April 4, 2002): 535-539.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- Alzheimer's Association. 919 North Michigan Avenue, Suite 1100, Chicago, IL 60611-1676. Telephone: (800) 272-3900 or (312) 335-8700. Fax: (312) 335-1110. <[www.alz.org](http://www.alz.org)>.
- Alzheimer's Disease Education and Referral (ADEAR) Center. P. O. Box 8250, Silver Spring, MD 20907-8250. Telephone: (800) 438-4380. <[www.alzheimers.org](http://www.alzheimers.org)>.
- Alzheimer's Disease International. 45-46 Lower Marsh, London SE1 7RG, UK. Telephone: (+44) 20-7620-3011. Fax: (+44) 20-7401-7351. <[www.alz.co.uk](http://www.alz.co.uk)>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) Clearinghouse. P.O. Box 7923, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. Telephone: (888) 644-6226. TTY: (866) 464-3615. Fax: (866) 464-3616. <[www.nccam.nih.gov](http://www.nccam.nih.gov)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.
- National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS). Building 31, Room 8A06, 9000 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892. Telephone: (301) 496-5751. <[www.ninds.nih.gov](http://www.ninds.nih.gov)>.

## OTHER

- Alzheimer's Association. *Alzheimer's Disease Fact Sheet*. (June 2, 2004).
- Alzheimer's Disease Education and Referral (ADEAR) Center. *Alzheimer's Disease Genetics Fact Sheet* NIH Publication No. 03-3431. (August, 2004).
- Alzheimer's Disease Education and Referral (ADEAR) Center. *Alzheimer's Disease Fact Sheet* NIH Publication No. 06-3431. (July, 2006).

Safe Return Hotline. (888) 572-8566. This hotline provides information about registering a patient with AD with the Alzheimer's Association as a means of identification in the event that he or she wanders away from home.

Rebecca Frey, Ph.D.  
Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, PhD

## Amantadine

### Definition

Amantadine is a synthetic antiviral agent that also has strong antiparkinsonian properties. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Symmetrel, and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Amantadine is used to treat a group of side effects (called parkinsonian side effects) that include tremors, difficulty walking, and slack muscle tone. These side effects may occur in patients who are taking antipsychotic medications used to treat mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. An unrelated use of amantadine is in the treatment of viral infections of some strains of influenza A.

### Description

Some medicines, called antipsychotic drugs, that are used to treat schizophrenia and other mental disorders can cause side effects similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease. The patient does not have Parkinson's disease, but may experience shaking in muscles while at rest, difficulty with voluntary movements, and poor muscle tone.

One way to eliminate these undesirable side effects is to stop taking the antipsychotic medicine. Unfortunately, the symptoms of the original mental disorder usually come back, so in most cases simply stopping the antipsychotic medication is not a reasonable option. Some drugs that control the symptoms of Parkinson's disease such as amantadine also control the parkinsonian side effects of antipsychotic medicines.

Amantadine works by restoring the chemical balance between **dopamine** and acetylcholine, two neurotransmitter chemicals in the **brain**. Taking amantadine along with the antipsychotic medicine helps to control symptoms of the mental disorder, while reducing parkinsonian side effects. Amantadine is in the same family of drugs (commonly known as anticholinergic drugs) as **biperiden** and **trihexyphenidyl**.

## Recommended dosage

Amantadine is available in 100-mg tablets and capsules, as well as a syrup containing 50 mg of amantadine in each teaspoonful. For the treatment of drug-induced parkinsonian side effects, amantadine is usually given in a dose of 100 mg orally twice a day. Some patients may need a total daily dose as high as 300 mg. Patients who are taking other antiparkinsonian drugs at the same time may require lower daily doses of amantadine (e.g., 100 mg daily).

People with kidney disease or who are on hemodialysis must have their doses lowered. In these patients, doses may range from 100 mg daily to as little as 200 mg every seven days.

## Precautions

Amantadine increases the amount of the neurotransmitter dopamine (a central nervous system stimulant) in the brain. Because of this, patients with a history of epilepsy or other seizure disorders should be carefully monitored while taking this drug. This is especially true in the elderly and in patients with kidney disease. Amantadine may cause visual disturbances and affect mental alertness and coordination. People should not operate dangerous machinery or motor vehicles while taking this drug.

## Side effects

Five to ten percent of patients taking amantadine may experience the following nervous system side effects:

- dizziness or lightheadedness
- insomnia
- nervousness or anxiety
- impaired concentration

One to five percent of patients taking amantadine may experience the following nervous system side effects:

- irritability or agitation
- depression
- confusion
- lack of coordination
- sleepiness or nightmares
- fatigue
- headache

In addition, up to 1% of patients may experience **hallucinations**, euphoria (excitement), extreme forgetfulness, aggressive behavior, personality changes, or **seizures**. Seizures are the most serious of all the side effects associated with amantadine.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Parkinsonian**—Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

Gastrointestinal side effects may also occur in patients taking amantadine. Up to 10% of people taking this drug experience nausea and up to 5% have dry mouth, loss of appetite, constipation, and vomiting. In most situations, amantadine may be continued and these side effects treated symptomatically.

Between 1% and 5% of patients taking amantadine have also reported a bluish coloring of their skin (usually on the legs) that is associated with enlargement of the blood vessels (called livedo reticularis). This side effect usually appears within one month to one year of starting the drug and subsides within weeks to months after the drug is discontinued. People who think they may be experiencing this or other side effects from any medication should tell their physicians.

## Interactions

Taking amantadine along with other drugs used to treat parkinsonian side effects may cause increased confusion or even hallucinations. The combination

of amantadine and central nervous system stimulants (e.g., **amphetamines** or decongestants) may cause increased central nervous stimulation or increase the likelihood of seizures.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda, MD: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Graham, Karen A., and others. "Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Investigation of Amantadine for Weight Loss in Subjects Who Gained Weight with Olanzapine." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 162. 9 (September 2005): 1744–46.
- Martinez-Martin, Pablo, and others. "Impact of Fatigue in Parkinson's Disease: The Fatigue Impact Scale for Daily Use (D-FIS)." *Quality of Life Research: An International Journal of Quality of Life Aspects of Treatment, Care and Rehabilitation* 15. 4 (May 2006): 597–606.
- Silver, Henry, and others. "A Double-Blind, Cross-Over Comparison of the Effects of Amantadine or Placebo on Visuomotor and Cognitive Function Medicated Schizophrenia Patients." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 20. 6 (November 2005): 319–26.

### OTHER

Endo Pharmaceuticals, Inc. *SYMMETREL (Amantadine Hydrochloride, USP) Tablets and Syrup: Package Insert*. <[http://www.endo.com/PDF/symmetrel\\_pack\\_insert.pdf](http://www.endo.com/PDF/symmetrel_pack_insert.pdf)>.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

**Ambien** see **Zolpidem**

## Amitriptyline

### Definition

Amitriptyline is a medication used to treat various forms of **depression**, pain associated with the nerves (neuropathic pain), and to prevent migraine headaches. It is sold in the United States under the brand names Elavil and Endep.

### Purpose

Amitriptyline helps relieve depression and pain. This medication, usually given at bedtime, also helps patients sleep better.

### Description

This medication is one of several tricyclic **antidepressants**, so-called because of the three-ring chemical structure common to these drugs. Amitriptyline acts to block reabsorption of **neurotransmitters** (chemicals that transmit nerve messages in the **brain**). Amitriptyline and the other tricyclic antidepressants are primarily used to treat mental depression but are increasingly being replaced by a newer and more effective group of antidepressant drugs called **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**. Amitriptyline is sometimes prescribed to help treat pain associated with cancer. In addition, it is sometimes prescribed for various types of **chronic pain**. Tablets are available in 10, 25, 50, 70, and 150 mg.

### Recommended dosage

The usual adult dose for pain management ranges from 10 mg to 150 mg at bedtime. Patients are generally started on a low dose and the amount may be increased as needed. Side effects, such as a dry mouth and drowsiness, may make it difficult to increase the dose in older adults. Bedtime dosing helps the patient sleep. Doctors generally prescribe 75–150 mg for depression. It is given at bedtime or in divided doses during the day. It may take 30 days for the patient to feel less depressed. Pain relief is usually noticed sooner than the mood change. Teens and older adults usually receive a lower dose. If the nightly dose is missed, it should not be taken the next morning. Taking amitriptyline during waking hours could result in noticeable side effects. Patients should check with their doctors if the daily dose is missed. Those on more than one dose per day should take a missed dose as soon as it is remembered but should not take two doses at the same time. While amitriptyline is usually administered orally, injectable amitriptyline is available. It should not be used in this form long-term; patients should switch to tablets as soon as possible.

### Precautions

Patients should not stop taking this medication suddenly. The dose should gradually be decreased, then discontinued. If the drug is stopped abruptly, the patient may experience headache, nausea, or discomfort throughout the body, and a worsening of original symptoms. The effects of the medication last for three to seven days after it has been stopped, and older patients usually are more prone to some side effects such as drowsiness, dizziness, mental confusion, blurry vision, dry mouth, difficulty urinating, and constipation. Taking a lower dose may help

resolve these problems. Patients may need to stop this medication before surgery.

Amitriptyline should not be given to anyone with allergies to the drug or to patients recovering from a heart attack. Patients taking the monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), Parnate (**tranylcypromine**) and Nardil (phenelzine)—different types of antidepressants—should not use amitriptyline in combination. It should be administered with caution to patients with glaucoma, **seizures**, urinary retention, overactive thyroid, poor liver or kidney function, alcoholism, asthma, digestive disorders, enlarged prostate, seizures, or heart disease. This medication should not be given to children under 12 years of age. Pregnant women should discuss the risks and benefits of this medication with their doctors, as fetal deformities have been associated with taking this drug during pregnancy. Women should not breastfeed while using amitriptyline.

### Side effects

Common side effects include dry mouth, drowsiness, constipation, and dizziness or lightheadedness when standing. Patients can suck on ice cubes or sugarless hard candy to combat the dry mouth. Increased fiber in the diet and additional fluids may help relieve constipation. Dizziness is usually caused by a drop in blood pressure when suddenly changing position. Patients should slowly rise from a sitting or lying position if dizziness is noticed. Amitriptyline may increase the risk of falls in older adults. Patients should not drive or operate machinery or appliances while under the influence of this drug. Alcohol and other central nervous system depressants can increase drowsiness. Amitriptyline may also produce blurry vision, irregular or fast heartbeat, high or low blood pressure, palpitations, and an increase or decrease in a diabetic patient's blood sugar levels. Patients' skin may become more sensitive to the sun and thus direct sunlight should be avoided by wearing protective clothing and the application of sunscreen with a protective factor of 15 or higher.

Amitriptyline may increase appetite, cause weight gain, or produce an unpleasant taste in the mouth. It may also cause diarrhea, vomiting, or heartburn. Taking this medication with food may decrease digestive side effects. Other less likely side effects include muscle tremors, nervousness, impaired sexual function, sweating, rash, itching, hair loss, ringing in the ears, or changes in the makeup of the patient's blood. Patients with **schizophrenia** may develop an increase in psychiatric symptoms.

### KEY TERMS

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Methylphenidate**—A mild central nervous system stimulant that is used to treat hyperactivity.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decreases the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**Urinary retention**—Excessive storage of urine in the body.

### Interactions

Patients should always tell all doctors and dentists that they are taking this medication. It may decrease the effectiveness of some drugs used to treat high blood pressure and should not be taken with other antidepressants, epinephrine and other adrenaline-type drugs, or **methylphenidate**. Patients should not take over-the-counter medications without checking with their doctors. For instance, amitriptyline should not be taken with Tagamet (cimetidine) or Neosynephrine. Patients taking amitriptyline should avoid the dietary supplements St. John's wort, belladonna, henbane, and scopolia. Black tea may decrease the absorption of this drug. Patients should ingest the drug and tea at least two hours apart.

*See also* Depression and depressive disorders; Pharmacotherapy.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Consumer Reports Staff. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*. 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.

Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference, 2001–2002*. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

Berger, A., S. Mercadante, and G. Oster. "Use of Antiepileptics and Tricyclic Antidepressants in Cancer Patients with Neuropathic Pain." *European Journal of Cancer Care* 15.2 (May 2006): 138–45.

Frese, A., and S. Evers. "Pharmacologic Treatment of Central Post-Stroke Pain." *Clinical Journal of Pain* 22.3 (March 2006): 252–60.

Mayers, Andrew G., and David S. Baldwin. "Antidepressants and Their Effect on Sleep." *Human*

- Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 20.8 (December 2005): 533–59.
- Miyasaki, J. M., and others. “Practice Parameter: Evaluation and Treatment of Depression, Psychosis, and Dementia in Parkinson Disease (an Evidence-Based Review): Report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology.” *Neurology* 66.7 (April 2006): 996–1002.
- Sterr, Andrea, and others. “Electroencephalographic Abnormalities Associated with Antidepressant Treatment: A Comparison of Mirtazapine, Venlafaxine, Citalopram, Reboxetine, and Amitriptyline.” *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.2 (February 2006): 325–26.
- Veldhuijen, D. S., and others. “Acute and Subchronic Effects of Amitriptyline on Processing Capacity in Neuropathic Pain Patients Using Visual Event-Related Potentials: Preliminary Findings.” *Psychopharmacology* 183.4 (2006): 462–70.
- Weber-Hamann, B., and others. “Resistin and Adiponectin in Major Depression: The Association with Free Cortisol and Effects of Antidepressant Treatment.” *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (April–June 2007): 344–50.
- Yousefi, Pouran, and John Coffey. “For Fibromyalgia, Which Treatments Are the Most Effective?” *Journal of Family Practice* 54.12 (December 2005): 1094–95.
- OTHER**
- Elavil (amitriptyline HCl Tablets and Injection): Package Insert.* <[http://www.fda.gov/MedWatch/SAFETY/2003/03Jul\\_PI/Elavil\\_PI.pdf](http://www.fda.gov/MedWatch/SAFETY/2003/03Jul_PI/Elavil_PI.pdf)>.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Amnesia

### Definition

Amnesia is a partial or total loss of memory.

### Description

There are numerous causes of amnesia, including **stroke**, injury to the **brain**, surgery, alcoholism, encephalitis (inflammation of the brain), and **electroconvulsive therapy**. (Electroconvulsive therapy, or ECT, is a treatment for various mental disorders in which electricity is sent to the brain through electrodes.)

Contrary to the popular notion of amnesia—in which a person suffers a severe blow to the head, for example, and cannot recall his or her past life and experiences—the principal symptom of amnesia is the inability to retain new information, beginning at the point at which the amnesia began. The capacity to

recall past experiences may vary, depending on the severity of the amnesia.

There are two types of amnesia: retrograde and anterograde. Retrograde amnesia refers to the loss of memory of one's past and can vary from person to person. Some sufferers retain virtually full recall of things that happened prior to the onset of amnesia; others forget only their recent past, and still others lose all memory of their past lives. Anterograde amnesia refers to the inability to recall events or facts introduced since the amnesia began.

The diagnostic manual used by clinicians, called the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders** (DSM), lists three classifications of **amnestic disorders**, described below.

### **Amnestic disorder due to a general medical condition**

The memory loss of amnestic disorder due to a general medical condition can be transient or chronic. This disorder can manifest as retrograde or anterograde loss. For **diagnosis**, the person must experience impairment of social or occupational functioning that differs from their normal levels, and the memory loss cannot occur as part of **dementia** or **delirium**. The medical condition responsible must be confirmed by patient history or by physical exam or lab results.

### **Substance-induced persisting amnestic disorder**

Substance-induced persisting amnestic disorder can occur with use of alcohol, **sedatives**, hypnotics, or anxiolytics. Methotrexate, a chemotherapy drug, can induce it, as can some toxins, including lead, mercury, carbon monoxide, insecticides, or industrial solvents. There are subtypes, including alcohol-induced persisting amnestic disorder. In the alcohol-induced form, the symptoms of **Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome** may manifest as a result of the thiamine deficiency. Full recovery is not the norm with alcohol-induced amnestic disorder but is possible when caused by other drugs. The diagnostic criteria for the substance-induced form of amnestic disorder are similar to those for that induced by a general medical condition, except that the history should show exposure to the substance involved.

### **Amnestic disorder not otherwise specified**

If the characteristics of the amnesia do not fit either of the above categories, the disorder is then classified as amnestic disorder not otherwise specified, generally because the causative agent/event is not known.

### Dissociative amnesia

**Dissociative amnesia** is part of a different group of disorders, the **dissociative disorders**. It manifests as an inability to remember information that is personally important, but possibly traumatic or stressful. It was previously called Psychogenic amnesia. The memory impairment in this disorder is reversible, and memory loss can be of several types. It can be localized, in which the missing memory covers a defined period of time, or it can be selective, so that only bits and pieces of a situation are recalled. There are also three less common types: generalized (memories covering a lifetime are missing); continuous (memories are missing from a specific time period up to the present); and systematized (only memories from specific categories of information are missing, such as the names of family members). This disorder can arise in a person of any age.

Amnesia is not always obvious to the casual observer—motor skills such as tying shoelaces and bike riding are retained, as is the ability to read and comprehend the meaning of words. Because of this phenomenon, researchers have suggested that there is more than one area of the brain used to store memory. General knowledge and perceptual skills may be stored in a memory separate from the one used to store personal facts.

Childhood amnesia, a term coined by Anna Freud in the late 1940s, refers to the fact that most people cannot recall childhood experiences during the first three to five years of life. It has been suggested that this type of amnesia occurs because children and adults organize memories in different ways. The differences are based on the brain's physical development and communication among the different areas of the brain involved in developing memory. Others believe children begin remembering facts and events once they have accumulated enough experience to be able to relate experiences to each other.

*See also* Amnestic disorders; Dissociative amnesia; Dissociative fugue.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

#### OTHER

Martin, Peter R., Charles, K. Singleton, and Susanne Hiller-Sturmhoefel. National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. "The Role of Thiamine Deficiency in Alcoholic Brain Disease." <<http://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/arh27-2/134-142.htm>> (2006).

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. "Alcohol's Damaging Effects on the Brain." <<http://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/aa63/aa63.htm>>.

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke.

"Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome Information Page." <[http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/wernicke\\_korsakoff/wernicke-korsakoff.htm](http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/wernicke_korsakoff/wernicke-korsakoff.htm)>.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Amnestic disorders

### Definition

The amnestic disorders are a group of disorders that involve loss of memories previously established, loss of the ability to create new memories, or loss of the ability to learn new information. As defined by the mental health professional's handbook, the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, fourth edition, text revision (2000), also known as **DSM-IV-TR**, the amnestic disorders result from two basic causes: general medical conditions that produce memory disturbances; and exposure to a chemical (drug of **abuse**, medication, or environmental toxin). An amnestic disorder whose cause cannot be definitely established may be given the **diagnosis** of amnestic disorder not otherwise specified.

### Description

The amnestic disorders are characterized by problems with memory function. There is a range of symptoms associated with the amnestic disorders, as well as differences in the severity of symptoms. Some people experience difficulty recalling events that happened or facts that they learned before the onset of the amnestic disorder. This type of **amnesia** is called retrograde amnesia. Other people experience the inability to learn new facts or retain new memories, which is called anterograde amnesia. People with amnestic disorders do not usually forget all of their personal history and their identity, although memory loss of this degree of severity occurs in rare instances in patients with **dissociative disorders**.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

In general, amnestic disorders are caused by structural or chemical damage to parts of the **brain**. Problems remembering previously learned information vary widely according to the location and the severity of brain damage. The ability to learn and remember new information, however, is always affected in an amnestic disorder.

Amnestic disorder due to a general medical condition can be caused by head trauma, tumors, **stroke**, or cerebrovascular disease (disease affecting the blood vessels in the brain). Substance-induced amnestic disorder can be caused by alcoholism, long-term heavy drug use, or exposure to such toxins as lead, mercury, carbon monoxide, and certain insecticides. In cases of amnestic disorder caused by alcoholism, it is thought that the root of the disorder is a vitamin deficiency that is commonly associated with alcoholism, known as Korsakoff's syndrome. The causes of transient global amnesia, or TGA, are unclear.

### Symptoms

In addition to problems with information recall and the formation of new memories, people with amnestic disorders are often disoriented with respect to time and space, which means that they are unable to tell an examiner where they are or what day of the week it is. Most patients with amnestic disorders lack insight into their loss of memory, which means that they will deny that there is anything wrong with their memory in spite of evidence to the contrary. Others will admit that they have a memory problem but have no apparent emotional reaction to their condition. Some persons with amnestic disorders undergo a personality change; they may appear apathetic or bland, as if the distinctive features of their personality have been washed out of them.

Some people experiencing amnestic disorders confabulate, which means that they fill in memory gaps with false information that they believe to be true. Confabulation should not be confused with intentional lying. It is much more common in patients with temporary amnestic disorders than it is in people with long-term amnestic disorders.

Transient global amnesia (TGA) is characterized by episodes during which the patient is unable to create new memories or learn new information, and sometimes is unable to recall past memories. The episodes occur suddenly and are generally short. Patients with TGA often appear confused or bewildered.

### Demographics

The overall incidence of the amnestic disorders is difficult to estimate. Amnestic disorders related to head injuries may affect people in any age group. Alcohol-induced amnestic disorder is most common in people over the age of 40 with histories of prolonged heavy alcohol use. Amnestic disorders resulting from the abuse of drugs other than alcohol are most common in people between the ages of 20 and 40. Transient global amnesia usually appears in people over 50. Only 3% of people who experience transient global amnesia have symptoms that recur within a year.

### Diagnosis

Amnestic disorders may be self-reported, if the patient has retained insight into his or her memory problems. More often, however, the disorder is diagnosed because a friend, relative, employer, or acquaintance of the patient has become concerned about the memory loss or recognizes that the patient is confabulating, and takes the patient to a doctor for evaluation. Patients who are disoriented, or whose amnesia is associated with head trauma or **substance abuse**, may be taken to a hospital emergency room.

The doctor will first examine the patient for signs or symptoms of traumatic injury, substance abuse, or a general medical condition. He or she may order **imaging studies** to identify specific areas of brain injury, or laboratory tests of blood and urine samples to determine exposure to environmental toxins or recent consumption of alcohol or drugs of abuse. If general medical conditions and substance abuse are ruled out, the doctor may administer a brief test of the patient's cognitive status, such as the **mini-mental state examination** or MMSE. The MMSE is often used to evaluate a patient for **dementia**, which is characterized by several disturbances in cognitive functioning (speech problems, problems in recognizing a person's face, etc.) that are not present in amnestic disorders. The doctor may also test the patient's ability to repeat a string of numbers (the so-called digit span test) in order to rule out **delirium**. Patients with an amnestic disorder can usually pay attention well enough to repeat a sequence of numbers whereas patients with delirium have difficulty focusing or shifting their attention. In some cases the patient may also be examined by a neurologist (a doctor who specializes in disorders of the central nervous system).

If there is no evidence of a medical condition or substance use that would explain the patient's memory problems, the doctor may test the patient's memory several times in order to rule out **malingering** or a **factitious disorder**. Patients who are faking the symptoms of an amnestic disorder will usually give inconsistent answers to memory tests if they are tested more than once.

*DSM-IV-TR* specifies three general categories of amnestic disorders. These are: amnestic disorder due to a general medical condition, substance-induced persisting amnestic disorder, and amnestic disorder not otherwise specified. The basic criterion for diagnosing an amnestic disorder is the development of problems remembering information or events that the patient previously knew, or inability to learn new information or remember new events. In addition, the memory

## KEY TERMS

**Anterograde amnesia**—Amnesia for events that occurred after a physical injury or emotional trauma but before the present moment.

**Confabulation**—In psychiatry, the filling-in of gaps in memory with false information that the patient believes to be true. It is not deliberate telling of lies.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Factitious disorder**—A type of mental disturbance in which patients intentionally act physically or men-

tally ill without obvious benefits. It is distinguished from malingering by the absence of an obvious motive, and from conversion disorder by intentional production of symptoms.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Korsakoff's syndrome**—A disorder of the central nervous system resulting from long-term thiamin deficiency. It is characterized by amnesia, confusion, confabulation, and unsteady gait; and is most commonly seen in alcoholics.

**Malingering**—Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

**Orientation**—In psychiatry, the ability to locate oneself in one's environment with respect to time, place and people.

**Retrograde amnesia**—Amnesia for events that occurred before a traumatic injury.

**Thiamin**—A B-vitamin that is essential to normal metabolism and nerve function, and whose absorption is affected by alcoholism.

disturbance must be sufficiently severe to affect the patient's social and occupational functioning, and to represent a noticeable decline from the patient's previous level of functioning. *DSM-IV-TR* also specifies that the memory problems cannot occur only during delirium, dementia, substance use or withdrawal.

### Treatments

There are no treatments that have been proved effective in most cases of amnestic disorder. Many patients recover slowly over time, and sometimes recover memories that were formed before the onset of the amnestic disorder. Patients generally recover from transient global amnesia without treatment. In people judged to have the signs that often lead to alcohol-induced persisting amnestic disorder, treatment with thiamin may stop the disorder from developing.

### Prognosis

Amnestic disorders caused by alcoholism do not generally improve significantly over time, although in a small number of cases the patient's condition improves completely. In many cases the symptoms are severe, and in some cases warrant long-term care

for the patient to make sure his or her daily needs are met. Other substance-induced amnestic disorders have a variable rate of recovery, although in many cases full recovery does eventually occur. Transient global amnesia usually resolves fully.

### Prevention

Amnestic disorders resulting from trauma are not generally considered preventable. Avoiding exposure to environmental toxins, refraining from abuse of alcohol or other substances, and maintaining a balanced diet may help to prevent some forms of amnestic disorders.

*See also* Dissociative amnesia.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.

## PERIODICALS

- Corridan, Brian J., S. N. Mary Leung, I. Harri Jenkins. "A Case of Sleeping and Forgetting." *The Lancet* 357, no. 9255 (February 17, 2001): 524.
- Jernigan, Terry L., Arne L. Ostergaard. "When Alcoholism Affects Memory Functions." *Alcohol Health & Research World* 19 no. 2 (Spring 1995): 104-108.
- Kesler, Roman, Richard Zweifler. "Confusion and Memory Loss." *Patient Care* 34. 4 (February 29, 2000): 117.
- Weiner, Richard D. "Retrograde Amnesia With Electro-convulsive Therapy." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 57. 6 (June 2000): 591.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry.  
P. O. Box 96106, Washington, D.C. 20090. Telephone: (800) 333-7636. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

Amobarbitol see **Barbiturates**

## Amoxapine

### Definition

Amoxapine is an oral dibenzoxazepine-derivative tricyclic antidepressant. Formerly sold in the United States under the brand name Asendin, it is now manufactured and sold only under its generic name.

### Purpose

Amoxapine is used primarily to treat **depression** and to treat the combination of symptoms of **anxiety** and depression. Like most **antidepressants** of this chemical and pharmacological class, amoxapine has also been used in limited numbers of patients to treat **panic disorder**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder**, **enuresis** (bed-wetting), eating disorders such as **bulimia nervosa**, **cocaine** dependency, and the depressive phase of bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder. It has also been used to support **smoking cessation** programs.

### Description

Tricyclic antidepressants act to change the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses between cells. Amoxapine acts primarily by increasing the concentration of norepinephrine and serotonin (both chemicals that stimulate nerve cells) and, to a lesser extent, by blocking the action of another brain chemical, acetylcholine. Amoxapine shares most of

the properties of other tricyclic antidepressants, such as **amitriptyline**, **clomipramine**, **desipramine**, **imipramine**, **nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, and **trimipramine**. Studies comparing amoxapine with these other drugs have shown that amoxapine is no more or less effective than other antidepressants of its type. Its choice for treatment is as much a function of physician preference as any other factor.

The therapeutic effects of amoxapine, like other antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for at least two weeks after starting the drug. People taking amoxapine should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

### Recommended dosage

As with any antidepressant, amoxapine must be adjusted by the physician to produce the desired therapeutic effect. Amoxapine is available as 25-mg, 50-mg, 100-mg, and 150-mg oral tablets. Therapy is usually started at 100 to 150 mg per day and increased to 200 to 300 mg daily by the end of the first week. If no improvement is seen at this dose after two weeks, the physician may increase the dose up to 400 mg per day in outpatients and up to 600 mg per day in hospitalized patients. Doses up to 300 mg may be given in single or divided doses. Doses of more than 300 mg per day should be divided in two or three doses daily.

Because of changes in drug metabolism of older patients, starting at about age 60, the initial dose of amoxapine should be adjusted downward to 50 to 75 mg per day and increased to 100 to 150 mg daily by the end of the first week. Some older patients may require up to 300 mg daily, but doses should never be increased beyond that.

### Precautions

Like all tricyclic antidepressants, amoxapine should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in people, especially the elderly, who have benign prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, and glaucoma, especially angle-closure glaucoma (the most severe form). Before starting treatment, people with these conditions should discuss the relative risks and benefits of treatment with their doctors to help determine if amoxapine is the right antidepressant for them.

A common problem with tricyclic antidepressants is sedation (drowsiness, lack of physical and mental alertness). This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. In most patients, sedation decreases or disappears entirely with time, but until then patients taking amoxapine should not perform hazardous activities requiring mental alertness or coordination.

The sedative effect is increased when amoxapine is taken with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcoholic beverages, sleeping medications, other **sedatives**, or antihistamines. It may be dangerous to take amoxapine in combination with these substances. Amoxapine may increase the possibility of having **seizures**. Patients should tell their physician if they have a history of seizures, including seizures brought on by the **abuse** of drugs or alcohol. These people should use amoxapine only with caution and be closely monitored by their physician.

Amoxapine may increase heart rate and **stress** on the heart. It may be dangerous for people with cardiovascular disease, especially those who have recently had a heart attack, to take this drug or other antidepressants in the same pharmacological class. In rare cases where patients with cardiovascular disease must receive amoxapine, they should be monitored closely for cardiac rhythm disturbances and signs of cardiac stress or damage.

### Side effects

Amoxapine shares side effects common to all tricyclic antidepressants. The most frequent of these are dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention, increased heart rate, sedation, irritability, dizziness, and decreased coordination. As with most side effects associated with tricyclic antidepressants, the intensity is highest at the beginning of therapy and tends to decrease with continued use.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Patients may also chew sugarless gum or suck on sugarless candy in order to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement who take amoxapine may be especially likely to have problems with urinary retention. Symptoms include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty than usual passing urine. In most cases, urinary retention is managed with dose reduction or by switching to another type of antidepressant. In extreme cases, patients may require treatment with bethanechol, a drug that reverses this particular side effect. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

### Interactions

Dangerously high blood pressure has resulted from the combination of tricyclic antidepressants,

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Benign prostate hypertrophy**—Enlargement of the prostate gland.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

such as amoxapine, and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOI). Because of this, amoxapine should never be taken in combination with MAOIs. Patient taking any MAOIs, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAOI then wait at least 14 days before starting amoxapine or any other tricyclic antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing amoxapine and starting an MAOI.

Amoxapine may decrease the blood pressure-lowering effects of **clonidine**. Patients who take both drugs should be monitored for loss of blood-pressure control and the dose of clonidine increased as needed.

The sedative effects of amoxapine are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sedatives, sleeping medications, or medications used for other mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. The anticholinergic effects of amoxapine are additive

with other anticholinergic drugs such as **benztropine**, **biperiden**, **trihexyphenidyl**, and antihistamines.

*See also* Neurotransmitters.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.
- DeVane, C. Lindsay, Pharm.D. "Drug Therapy for Mood Disorders." In *Fundamentals of Monitoring Psychoactive Drug Therapy*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1990.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.



Amphetamine sulfate. (David Hoffman Photo Library/Alamy)

## Amphetamines

### Definition

Amphetamines are a group of drugs that stimulate the central nervous system. Some of the brand names of amphetamines sold in the United States are Dexedrine, Biphetamine, Dexampex, Ferndex, Oxydess II, Spancap No. 1, Desoxyn, and Methampex. Some generic names of amphetamines include amphetamine, dextroamphetamine, and **methamphetamine**.

### Purpose

Amphetamines stimulate the nervous system and are used in the treatment of **depression**, **obesity**, attention deficit disorders such as **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)**, and **narcolepsy**, a disorder that causes individuals to fall asleep at inappropriate times during the day. Amphetamines produce considerable side effects and are especially toxic in large quantities. Amphetamines are commonly abused as recreational drugs and are highly addictive.

### Description

Amphetamines are usually given orally and their effects can last for hours. Amphetamines produce their effects by altering chemicals that transmit nerve messages in the body.

### Recommended dosage

Stimulants approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treatment of ADHD are **methylphenidate** (which occurs under several trade names, including Ritalin), mixed amphetamine salts (trade name Adderall), and dextroamphetamine (trade

name Dexedrine). These comparatively short-acting stimulants necessitate several doses through the day to maintain appropriate levels. Some long-acting forms are available, such as Ritalin LA and Adderall XR, and there is also a transdermal patch (trade name Daytrana) for delivery of methylphenidate through the skin.

The typical dose for amphetamines in the treatment of narcolepsy in adults ranges from 5 mg to 60 mg per day. These daily doses are usually divided into at least two small doses taken during the day. Doses usually start on the low end of the range and are increased until the desired effects occur. Children over the age of 12 years with narcolepsy receive 10 mg per day initially. Children between the ages of six and 12 years start with 5 mg per day. The typical dose for adults with obesity ranges from 5 mg to 30 mg per day given in divided doses. The medication is usually given about one-half hour to one hour before meals.

### Precautions

Stimulant use in children with ADHD has been associated in some studies with sudden death in a small number of cases, leading to widespread concern; however, subsequent studies have found no difference in sudden death rates among children taking stimulants for ADHD and the general population using no medication. Use of these medications is not recommended for people who have known heart disease.

Another stimulant-related concern is the effects of these drugs on growth rate. Studies do indicate that while a child is taking stimulants, growth rate can slow. Some practitioners may recommend "drug holidays," in which the child stops taking the drug when circumstances require less focus or self-discipline, such as over a summer vacation. Studies indicate that the adverse effects on growth rate are eliminated by these drug holidays.

One of the drugs that has been used to treat ADHD, **pemoline** (trade name Cylert) is not recommended as a first-line approach to ADHD because of the potential for serious side effects related to the liver.

People who are taking amphetamines should not stop taking these drugs suddenly. The dose should be lowered gradually and then discontinued. Amphetamines should only be used while under the supervision of a physician. People should generally take the drug early in the day so that it does not interfere with sleep at night. Hazardous activities should be avoided until the person's condition has been stabilized with medication. The effects of amphetamine can last up to 20 hours after the medication has last been taken. Amphetamine therapy given to women for medical reasons does not present a significant risk of congenital disorders to the developing fetus. In such cases, a mild withdrawal in the newborn may occur. However, illicit use of amphetamines for nonmedical reasons presents a significant risk to the fetus and the newborn because of uncontrolled doses. Methamphetamine use during pregnancy, for example, has been associated with fetal growth retardation, premature birth, and heart and **brain** abnormalities.

Amphetamines are highly addictive and should be used only if alternative approaches have failed. They should be used with great caution in children under three years of age, in anyone with a history of slightly elevated blood pressure, people with neurological tics, and in individuals with Tourette's syndrome. Individuals with a history of an overactive thyroid should not take amphetamines, nor should those with moderate-to-severe high blood pressure, the eye disease called glaucoma, severe arteriosclerosis (hardening of the arteries), or psychotic symptoms (**hallucinations** and **delusions**). Individuals with a history of drug **abuse**, psychological agitation, or cardiovascular system disease should also not receive amphetamine therapy. In addition, patients who have taken a type of antidepressant called monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) within the last 14 days should not receive amphetamines. MAOIs include **phenelzine** (Nardil) and **tranylcypromine** (Parnate).

### Side effects

The most common side effects that are associated with amphetamines include the development of an irregular heartbeat, increased heart rate or blood pressure, dizziness, **insomnia**, restlessness, headache, shakiness, dry mouth, metallic taste, diarrhea, constipation, and weight loss. Other side effects can include

### KEY TERMS

**Anticonvulsant drugs**—Medications that relieve or prevent seizures.

**Arteriosclerosis**—A thickening, hardening, and loss of elasticity of the walls of the arteries.

**Attention deficit disorder**—A condition that mostly affects children and involves the inability to concentrate on various tasks.

**Congenital**—Present at birth.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decreases the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter in the brain that affects mood.

**Tic**—A sudden involuntary behavior that is difficult or impossible for the person to suppress. Tics may be either motor (related to movement) or vocal, and may become more pronounced under stress.

**Tourette's syndrome**—A neurological disorder characterized by multiple involuntary movements and uncontrollable vocalizations called tics that come and go over years, usually beginning in childhood and becoming chronic. Sometimes the tics include inappropriate language.

**Tricyclic antidepressants**—Antidepressant medications that have the common characteristic of a three-ring nucleus in their chemical structure. Imipramine and amitriptyline are examples of tricyclic antidepressants.

changes in sexual drive, nausea, vomiting, allergic reactions, chills, depression, irritability, and other problems involving the digestive system. High doses, whether for medical purposes or illicit ones, can cause **addiction**, dependence, increased aggression, and, in some cases, psychotic episodes.

### Interactions

Patients taking amphetamines should always tell their physicians and dentists that they are using this medication. Patients should consult their physicians before taking any over-the-counter medications while taking amphetamines. The interaction between over-the-counter cold medications with amphetamine, for instance, is particularly dangerous because this

combination can significantly increase blood pressure. Such cold medications should be avoided when using amphetamines unless a physician has carefully analyzed the combination.

The combination of amphetamines and antacids slows down the ability of the body to eliminate the amphetamine. Furazolidone (Furoxone) combined with amphetamine can significantly increase blood pressure. Sodium bicarbonate can reduce the amount of amphetamine eliminated from the body, thereby dangerously increasing amphetamine levels in the body. Certain medications taken to control high blood pressure, including guanadrel (Hylarel) and guanethidine (Ismelin), MAOIs, and selegiline (Eld-epryl) should not be used in conjunction with amphetamines. In addition, antihistamines, anticonvulsant drugs, and tricyclic **antidepressants** including **desipramine** (Norpramin) and **imipramine** (Tofranil) should not be combined with amphetamines.

*See also* Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder; Tic disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Consumer Reports staff. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*. 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.
- Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference, 2001–2002*. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.
- Hardman, Joel G., and Lee E. Limbird, eds. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.
- Mosby's GenRx staff. *Mosby's GenRx*. 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1999.
- Venes, Donald, and Clayton L. Thomas. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*. 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Lopez, Frank A. "ADHD: New Pharmacological Treatments on the Horizon." *Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics* 27 (2006): 410–16.
- Pliszka, Steven R. "Pharmacologic Treatment of Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder: Efficacy, Safety, and Mechanisms of Action." *Neuropsychological Reviews* (2007). doi: 10.1007/s11065-006-9017-3.
- Sulzer, David, and others. "Mechanisms of Neurotransmitter Release by Amphetamines: A Review." *Progress in Neurobiology* 75 (2005): 406–33.

### OTHER

- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Amphetamines." Updated links to news and information. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202031.html>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health.

Information about prescription amphetamines.

"Amphetamines, systemic." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202031.html>>.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Amphetamines and related disorders

### Definition

**Amphetamines** are a group of powerful and highly addictive substances that dramatically affect the central nervous system. They induce a feeling of well-being and improve alertness, attention, and performance on various cognitive and motor tasks. Closely related are the so-called substitute amphetamines, which include MDMA, also known as **ecstasy** and **methamphetamine**. Finally, some over-the-counter drugs used as **appetite suppressants** also have amphetamine-like action. Amphetamine-related disorders refer to the effects of **abuse**, dependence, and acute intoxication stemming from inappropriate amphetamine and amphetamine-related drug usage.

### Description

Several amphetamines are currently available in the United States, including dextroamphetamine (Dexedrine) and **methylphenidate** (Ritalin). These Schedule II stimulants (those the U.S. Drug Enforcement Agency considers to have medical usefulness and a high potential for abuse), known to be highly addictive, require a triplicate prescription that cannot be refilled. Amphetamines are also known as sympathomimetics, stimulants, and psychostimulants. Methamphetamine, the most common illegally produced amphetamine, goes by the street name of "speed," "meth," or "chalk." When it is smoked, it is called "ice," "crystal," "crank," or "glass." Methamphetamine is a white, odorless, bitter-tasting crystalline powder that dissolves in water or alcohol.

The leaves of the East African bush *Catha edulis* can be chewed for their stimulant effects. This drug, cathinone or Khat, has an effect on most of the central nervous system, in addition to providing the other properties of amphetamines. Also, manufacture of methamphetamine in illegal laboratories has increased dramatically in recent years, leading to stricter laws

governing the sale of products containing ephedrine or pseudoephedrine, the primary components of this drug.

Amphetamines intended for medical use were first used in nasal decongestants and bronchial inhalers. Early in the 1900s, they were also used to treat several medical and psychiatric conditions, including attention-deficit disorders, **obesity**, **depression**, and **narcolepsy** (a rare condition in which individuals fall asleep at dangerous and inappropriate moments and cannot maintain normal alertness). They are still used to treat these disorders today.

In the 1970s, governmental agencies initiated restrictions increasing the difficulty of obtaining amphetamines legally through prescription. During this same time period, a drug chemically related to the amphetamines began to be produced. This so-called designer drug, best known as “ecstasy,” but also as MDMA, XTC, and Adam, has behavioral effects that combine amphetamine-like and hallucinogen-like properties.

The structure of amphetamines differs significantly from that of **cocaine**, even though both are stimulants with similar behavioral and physiological effects. Like cocaine, amphetamine results in an accumulation of the neurotransmitter **dopamine** in the prefrontal cortex. It is this excessive dopamine concentration that appears to produce the stimulation and feelings of euphoria experienced by the user. Cocaine is much more quickly metabolized and removed from the body, whereas amphetamines have a much longer duration of action. A large percentage of the drug remains unchanged in the body, leading to prolonged stimulant effects.

The handbook that mental health professionals use to diagnose mental disorders is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, also known as the *DSM*. The 2000 edition of this manual (the fourth edition, text revision, also known as *DSM-IV-TR*) describes four separate amphetamine-related disorders. These are:

- amphetamine dependence: Refers to chronic or episodic binges (known as “speed runs”), with brief drug-free periods of time in between use.
- amphetamine abuse: Less severe than dependence. Individuals diagnosed with amphetamine abuse have milder but nevertheless still substantial problems due to their drug usage.
- amphetamine intoxication: Refers to serious maladaptive behavioral or psychological changes that develop during, or shortly after, use of an amphetamine or related substance.
- amphetamine withdrawal: Refers to symptoms that develop within a few hours to several days after

reducing or stopping heavy and prolonged amphetamine use. Withdrawal symptoms are, in general, opposite to those seen during intoxication, and include fatigue, vivid and unpleasant dreams, insomnia or hypersomnia (too much sleep), increased appetite, and agitation or slowing down.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

All amphetamines are rapidly absorbed when taken orally, and even more rapidly absorbed when smoked, snorted, or injected. Tolerance develops with both standard and designer amphetamines, leading to the need for increasing doses by the user.

Amphetamines, such as dextroamphetamine, methamphetamine, and methylphenidate, produce their primary effects by causing the release of catecholamines, especially the nerve-signaling molecule or neurotransmitter dopamine, in the **brain**. These effects are particularly strong in areas of the brain associated with pleasure, specifically, the cerebral cortex and the limbic system, known as the “reward pathway.” The effect on this pathway is probably responsible for the addictive quality of the amphetamines.

MDMA causes the release of the **neurotransmitters** dopamine and serotonin and the neurohormone norepinephrine. Serotonin is responsible for producing the hallucinogenic effects of the drug.

### Symptoms

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, symptoms of heavy, chronic, or episodic use of amphetamine, known as amphetamine dependence, can be very serious. Amphetamine dependence is characterized by compulsive drug-seeking and drug use, leading to functional and molecular changes in the brain. Aggressive or violent behavior may occur, especially when high doses are ingested. Individuals may develop **anxiety** or paranoid ideas, also with the possibility of experiencing terrifying psychotic episodes that resemble **schizophrenia**, with visual or auditory **hallucinations**, **delusions** such as the sensation of insects creeping on the skin (known as “formication”), hyperactivity, hypersexuality, confusion, and incoherence. Amphetamine-induced **psychosis** differs from true psychosis in that despite other symptoms, the disorganized thinking that is a hallmark of schizophrenia tends to be absent. Amphetamine dependence consistently affects relationships at home, school, and/or work.

Amphetamine abuse is less serious than dependence, but can cause milder versions of the symptoms

described above, as well as problems with family, school, and work. Legal problems may stem from aggressive behavior while using, or from obtaining drugs illegally. Individuals may continue to use despite the awareness that usage negatively impacts all areas of their lives.

Acute amphetamine intoxication begins with a “high” feeling that may be followed by feelings of euphoria. Users experience enhanced energy, becoming more outgoing and talkative, and more alert. Other symptoms include anxiety, tension, grandiosity, repetitive behavior, anger, fighting, and impaired judgment.

In both acute and chronic intoxication, individuals may experience dulled feelings, along with fatigue or sadness, and social withdrawal. These behavioral and psychological changes are accompanied by other signs and symptoms including increased or irregular heartbeat, dilation of the pupils, elevated or lowered blood pressure, heavy perspiring or chills, nausea and/or vomiting, motor agitation or retardation, muscle weakness, respiratory depression, chest pain, and eventually confusion, **seizures**, coma, or a variety of cardiovascular problems, including **stroke**. With amphetamine overdoses, death can result if treatment is not received immediately. Long-term abuse can lead to memory loss as well, and contributes to increased transmission of hepatitis and HIV/AIDS. Impaired social and work functioning is another hallmark of both acute and chronic intoxication.

Following amphetamine intoxication, a “crash” occurs with symptoms of anxiety, shakiness, depressed mood, lethargy, fatigue, nightmares, headache, perspiring, muscle cramps, stomach cramps, and increased appetite. Withdrawal symptoms usually peak in two to four days and are gone within one week. The most serious withdrawal symptom is depression, possibly very severe and leading to suicidal thoughts.

Use of so-called designer amphetamines, such as MDMA, leads to similar symptoms. Users also report a sense of feeling unusual closeness with other people and enhanced personal comfort. They describe seeing an increased luminescence of objects in the environment, although these hallucinogenic effects are less than those caused by other hallucinogens, such as LSD. Some psychotherapists have suggested further research into the possible use of designer amphetamines in conjunction with **psychotherapy**. This idea is highly controversial, however.

As with other amphetamines, use of MDMA produces cardiovascular effects of increased blood pressure, heart rate, and heart oxygen consumption. People with pre-existing heart disease are at increased risk of cardiovascular catastrophe resulting from MDMA use. MDMA is not processed and removed

from the body quickly and remains active for a long period of time. As a result, toxicity may rise dramatically when users take multiple doses over brief time periods, leading to harmful reactions such as dehydration, hyperthermia, and seizures.

MDMA tablets often contain other drugs, such as ephedrine, a stimulant, and dextromethorphan, a cough suppressant with PCP-like effects at high doses. These additives increase the harmful effects of MDMA. They also appear also to have toxic effects on the brain's serotonin system. In tests of learning and memory, people who use MDMA perform more poorly than people who do not use. Research with primates shows that MDMA can cause long-lasting brain damage. Exposure to MDMA during the period of pregnancy in which the fetal brain is developing is associated with learning deficits that last into adulthood.

## Demographics

Amphetamine dependence and abuse occur at all levels of society, most commonly among 18- to 30-year-olds. Intravenous use is more common among individuals from lower socioeconomic groups, and has a male-to-female ratio of three or four to one. Among people who do not use intravenously users, males and females are relatively equally divided.

Of greatest recent concern has been the rise in the use of methamphetamine, although in some areas, this increase has leveled off in recent years. The lifetime prevalence of methamphetamine abuse among U.S. students in grade 12 fell from 6.2% of respondents to 4.5% over two years in one recent government survey. However, in some metropolitan areas, including Atlanta, Denver, Honolulu, and Phoenix, use has increased, and there was a 15% increase in methamphetamine treatment admissions in St. Louis from 2004 to 2005. In some parts of Texas, this drug has replaced crack as a drug of choice. Another national survey found that 10.4 million Americans age 12 or older had tried methamphetamine at least once in their lives. The problem seems to be particularly concerning in Western states, although it is spreading quickly in the South and Midwest, being reported as the fastest-growing problem in metropolitan Atlanta in 2006.

## Diagnosis

### *Classic amphetamines*

Four classic amphetamine-related diagnostic categories are listed in the *DSM-IV-TR*. These are:

- amphetamine dependence
- amphetamine abuse

- amphetamine intoxication
- amphetamine withdrawal

Amphetamine dependence refers to chronic or episodic use of amphetamines, involving drug binges known as “speed runs.” These episodes are punctuated by brief, drug-free periods. Aggressive or violent behavior is associated with amphetamine dependence, particularly when high doses are ingested. Intense but temporary anxiety may occur, as well as paranoid ideas and psychotic behavior resembling schizophrenia. Increased tolerance and withdrawal symptoms are part of the diagnostic picture. Conversely, some individuals with amphetamine dependence become sensitized to the drug, experiencing increasingly greater stimulation, and other negative mental or neurological effects, even from small doses.

Amphetamine abuse, while not as serious as amphetamine dependence, can also cause multiple problems. Legal difficulties are common, in addition to increased arguments with family and friends. If tolerance or withdrawal occur, amphetamine dependence is diagnosed.

Amphetamine intoxication refers to serious behavioral or psychological changes that develop during, or shortly after, use of amphetamine. Intoxication begins with a “high” feeling, followed by euphoria, enhanced energy, talkativeness, hyperactivity, restlessness, hypervigilance indicated by an individual’s extreme sensitivity, and closely observant of everything in the environment. Other symptoms are anxiety, tension, repetitive behavior, anger, fighting, and impaired judgment. With chronic intoxication, there may be fatigue or sadness and withdrawal from others. Other signs and symptoms of intoxication are increased heart rate, dilation of the pupils, elevated or lowered blood pressure, perspiration or chills, nausea or vomiting, weight loss, cardiac irregularities, and, eventually, confusion, seizures, coma, or death.

During amphetamine withdrawal, intense symptoms of depression are typical. Additional diagnostic symptoms are fatigue, vivid and unpleasant dreams, insomnia or sleeping too much, increased appetite, and agitation.

## Treatments

According to the National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA), the most effective treatments for amphetamine **addiction** are cognitive-behavioral interventions. These are psychotherapeutic approaches that help individuals learn to identify and change their problematic patterns of thoughts and beliefs. As a result of changed thoughts and beliefs, feelings become

more manageable and less painful. Interventions also help individuals increase their skills for coping with life’s stressors. Amphetamine recovery groups, and Narcotics Anonymous also appear to help.

No specific medications are known to exist that are helpful for treating amphetamine dependence. On occasion, antidepressant medications can help combat the depressive symptoms frequently experienced by people who are newly abstinent from amphetamine use.

Overdoses of amphetamines are treated in established ways in emergency rooms. Because hyperthermia (elevated body temperature) and convulsions are common, emergency room treatment focuses on reducing body temperature and administering anti-convulsant medications.

Acute methamphetamine intoxication is often handled by observation in a safe, quiet environment. When extreme anxiety or panic is part of the reaction, treatment with antianxiety medications may be helpful. In cases of methamphetamine-induced psychoses, short-term use of antipsychotic medications is usually successful.

## Prognosis

### *Classic amphetamines*

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, some individuals who develop abuse or dependence on amphetamines initiate use in an attempt to control their weight. Others become introduced through the illegal market. Dependence can occur very quickly when the substance is used intravenously or is smoked. The few long-term data available show a tendency for people who have been dependent on amphetamines to decrease or stop using them after 8 to 10 years. This may result from the development of adverse mental and physical effects that emerge with long-term dependence. Few data are available on the long-term course of abuse.

### *Designer amphetamines*

The NIDA reports that studies provide direct evidence that chronic use of MDMA causes brain damage in humans. Using advanced brain imaging techniques, one study found that MDMA harms neurons that release serotonin. Serotonin plays an important role in regulating memory and other mental functions.

In a related study, researchers found that people who heavily use MDMA have memory problems that persist for at least two weeks after stopping use of the drug. Both studies strongly suggest that the extent of damage is directly related to the amount of MDMA used.

## KEY TERMS

**Amphetamine abuse**—An amphetamine problem in which the user experiences negative consequences from the use, but has not reached the point of dependence.

**Amphetamine dependence**—The most serious type of amphetamine problem.

**Amphetamine intoxication**—The effects on the body that develop during or shortly after amphetamine use.

**Amphetamine withdrawal**—Symptoms that develop shortly after reducing or stopping heavy amphetamine use.

**Amphetamines**—A group of powerful and highly addictive substances that stimulate the central nervous system. Amphetamines may be prescribed for various medical conditions, but are often purchased illicitly and abused.

**Catecholamine**—A group of neurotransmitters synthesized from the amino acid tyrosine and released by the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system in the brain in response to acute stress. The catecholamines include dopamine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and epinephrine.

**Catha edulis**—Leaves of an East African bush that can be chewed for their stimulant effect.

**Designer amphetamines**—Substances close in chemical structure to classic amphetamines that provide both stimulant and hallucinogenic effects.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions. Large amounts of dopamine are released following ingestion of amphetamines.

**Ecstasy**—Best known of the so-called designer amphetamines, also known as MDMA. It produces both stimulant and hallucinogenic effects.

**Ephedrine**—An amphetamine-like substance used as a nasal decongestant.

**Formication**—The sensation of bugs creeping on the skin.

**Hyperthermia**—Elevated body temperature resulting from ingestion of amphetamines.

**Methamphetamine**—The most common illegally produced amphetamine.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression. Large amounts of serotonin are released after ingestion of MDMA.

**“Speed run”**—The episodic bingeing on amphetamines.

### Prevention

In 1999, NIDA began a program known as the “Club Drug Initiative” in response to recent increases in abuse of MDMA and other drugs used in similar environments. This ongoing program seeks to increase awareness of the dangers of these drugs among teens, young adults, parents, and community members.

Research indicates a pervasive perception among users that MDMA is a “fun” drug with minimal risks. This myth might point to the main reason for the widespread increase in the drug’s abuse. The Club Drug Initiative seeks to make the dangers of MDMA use far better known. Evidence of the program’s initial success with this initiative might be seen in what is considered a growing perception by high school seniors that MDMA is a dangerous drug.

*See also* Addiction; Appetite suppressants; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Disease concept of chemical

dependency; Narcolepsy; Obesity; Relapse and relapse prevention; Self-help groups; Support groups.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Kaplan, Harold I., MD, and Benjamin J. Sadock, MD. *Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences/Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

#### PERIODICALS

Sulzer, David, and others. “Mechanisms of Neurotransmitter Release by Amphetamines: A Review.” *Progress in Neurobiology* 75 (2005): 406–33.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

Narcotics Anonymous (NA). P.O. Box 9999, Van Nuys, CA 91409. Telephone: (818) 780-3951.

National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Telephone: (301) 443-6245. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>.

NIDA. Club Drug Initiative. <<http://www.clubdrugs.org>>.

#### OTHER

National Institute on Drug Abuse. NIDA Infofacts: *Methamphetamine*. 2006. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov/Info-facts/methamphetamine.html>>.

National Institute on Drug Abuse. NIDA Research Report. *Methamphetamine Abuse and Addiction*: NIH Publication No. 06-4210, Sept. 2006. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov/ResearchReports/methamph/methamph.html>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Amphetamines." Updated links to news and information. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202031.html>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. Information about prescription amphetamines.

"Amphetamines, systemic." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202031.html>>.

National Survey on Drug Use and Health. "The NSDUH Report: Methamphetamine." 2007. <<http://oas.samhsa.gov/2k6/meth/meth.htm>>.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration. "Some Cold Medicines Move Behind Counter." *FDA Consumer Magazine* July–Aug. (2006). <[http://www.fda.gov/fdac/features/2006/406\\_meth.html](http://www.fda.gov/fdac/features/2006/406_meth.html)>.

Barbara S. Sternberg, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Anafranil see **Clomipramine**

## Anorexia nervosa

### Definition

Anorexia nervosa (AN) is an eating disorder characterized by an intense fear of gaining weight and becoming fat. Because of this fear, the affected individual starves herself or himself, and the person's weight falls to about 85% (or less) of the normal weight for age and height.

### Description

AN affects females more commonly than males—90% of those affected are female. Typically, the disorder begins when an adolescent or young woman of normal or slightly overweight stature decides to diet. As weight falls, the intensity and **obsession** with dieting increases. Affected persons may also increase physical exertion or exercise as weight decreases to

lose more pounds. An affected person develops peculiar rules concerning exercise and eating. Weight loss and avoidance of food is equated in these patients with a sense of accomplishment and success. Weight gain is viewed as a sign of weakness ("succumbing to eating") and as failure. Eventually, the affected person becomes increasingly focused on losing weight and devotes most efforts to dieting and exercise.

Anorexia nervosa is a complex eating disorder that has biological, psychological, and social consequences for those who suffer from it. When diagnosed early, the prognosis for AN is good.

### Demographics

AN is considered to be a rare illness. The prevalence even in high-risk groups and high-risk situations is approximately 0.5–1%. Partial disorders (diagnosed when symptoms are present, but do not meet the full criteria as established in the *DSM*) are more commonly seen in psychological practice. The incidence (number of new cases) of AN has increased during the last 50 years due to increased societal concerns regarding body shape, weight, and appearance. Some occupations such as ballet dancing and fashion modeling may predispose persons to develop AN, due to preoccupation with physical appearance. This disorder usually affects women more than men in a ratio of about one to 10.

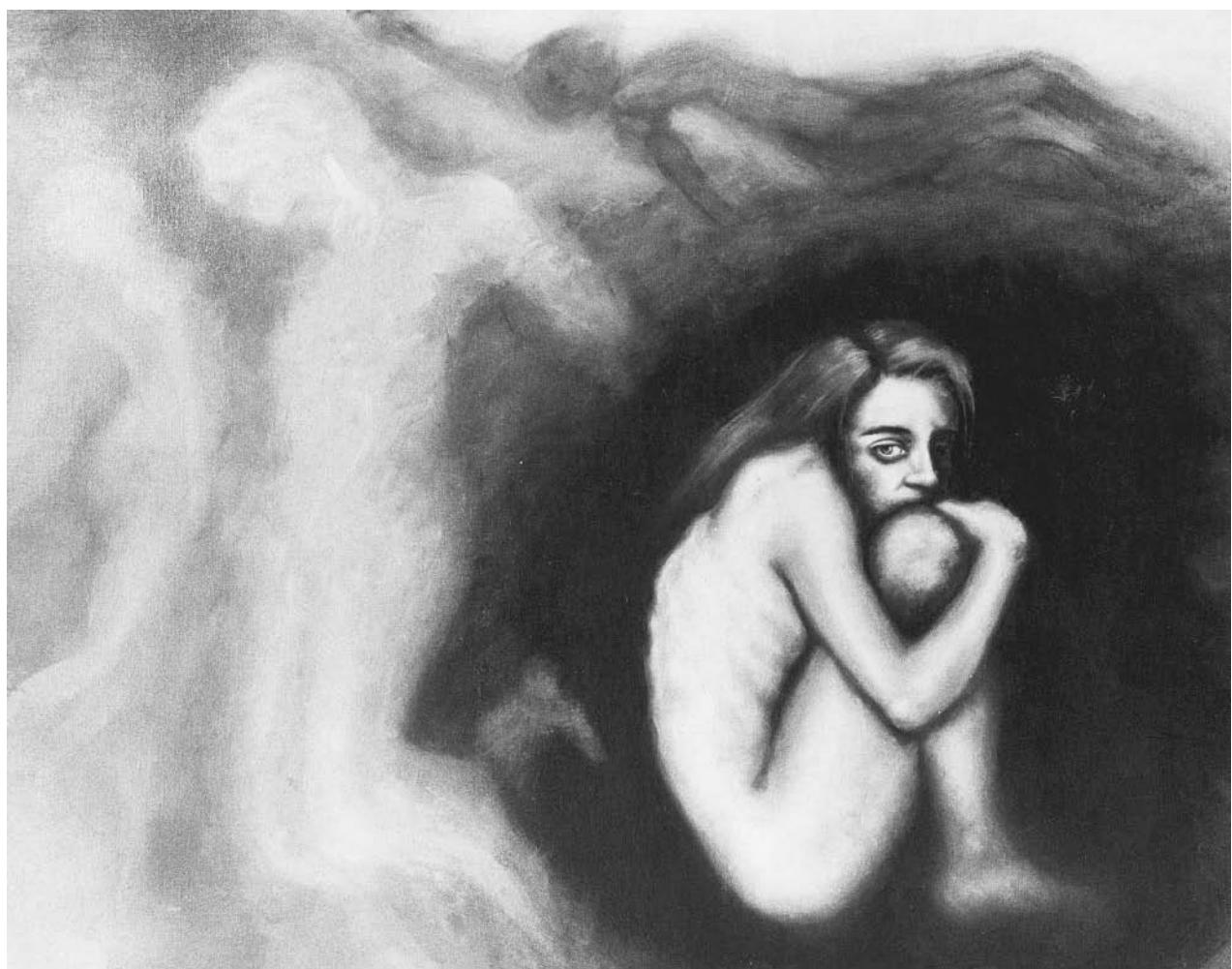
### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The exact causes of AN are not currently known, but the current thinking about AN is that it is caused by multiple factors. There are several models that can identify risk factors and psychological conditions that predispose persons to develop AN. The predisposing risk factors include:

- female gender
- perfectionism
- personality factors, including being eager to please other persons and high expectations for oneself
- family history of eating disorders
- living in an industrialized society
- difficulty communicating negative emotions such as anger or fear
- difficulty resolving problems or conflict
- low self-esteem

Research indicates that genetic factors play a role in more than half of anorexia cases. Genetic factors



**Self-portrait done by a girl while in treatment for anorexia nervosa.** (Photo Researchers, Inc.)

can also predispose an individual to behaviors that make her susceptible to AN, such as perfectionism, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, and **anxiety**.

Specialists in **family therapy** have demonstrated that dysfunctional family relationships and impaired family interaction can contribute to the development of AN. Mothers of persons with AN tend to be intrusive, perfectionistic, overprotective, and have a fear of separation. Fathers of AN-affected individuals are often described as passive, withdrawn, moody, emotionally constricted, obsessive, and ineffective. Socio-cultural factors include the messages given by society and the culture about women's roles and the thinness ideal for women's bodies. Developmental causes can include adolescent "acting out" or fear of adulthood transition. In addition, there appears to be a genetic correlation, because AN occurs more commonly in biological relatives of persons who have this disorder.

Precipitating factors are often related to the developmental transitions common in adolescence. The onset of menstruation may be threatening in that it represents maturation or growing up. During this time in development, females gain weight as part of the developmental process, and this gain may cause a decrease in self-esteem. Development of AN could be a way that the adolescent retreats back to childhood so as not to be burdened by maturity and physical concerns. Autonomy and independence struggles during adolescence may be acted out by developing AN. Some adolescents may develop AN because of their ambivalence about adulthood or because of loneliness, isolation, and abandonment they feel.

#### **Symptoms**

Most of the physical symptoms associated with AN are secondary to starvation. The **brain** is affected—there

is evidence to suggest alterations in brain size, neurotransmitter balance, and hormonal secretion signals originating from the brain. **Neurotransmitters** are the chemicals in the brain that transmit messages from nerve cell to nerve cell. Hormonal secretion signals modulate sex organ activity. Thus, when these signals are not functioning properly, the sex organs are affected. Significant weight loss (and loss in body fat, in particular) inhibits the production of estrogen, which is necessary for menstruation. AN patients experience a loss of menstrual periods, known as amenorrhea. Additionally, other physiologic systems are affected by the starvation. AN patients often have electrolyte (sodium and potassium ion) imbalance and blood cell abnormalities affecting both white and red blood cells. Heart function is also compromised and a person affected with AN may develop congestive heart failure (a chronic weakening of the heart due to work overload), slow heart rate (bradycardia), and abnormal rates and rhythms (arrhythmias). The gastrointestinal tract is also affected, and a person with AN usually exhibits diminished gastric motility (movement) and delayed gastric emptying. These abnormalities may cause symptoms of bloating and constipation. In addition, bone growth is affected by starvation, and over the long term, AN patients can develop osteoporosis, a bone loss disease.

Physically, persons with AN can exhibit cold hands and feet, dry skin, hair loss, headaches, fainting, dizziness, and lethargy (loss of energy). Individuals with AN may also develop lanugo (a fine downy hair normally seen in infants) on the face or back. Psychologically, these persons may have an inability to concentrate, due to the problems with cognitive functioning caused by starvation. Additionally, they may be irritable, depressed, and socially withdrawn, and they obsessively avoid food. Persons affected with AN may also have lowered body temperature (hypothermia), and lowered blood pressure, heart rate, glucose and white blood cells (cells that help fight against infection). They may also have a loss of muscle mass.

In order to diagnose AN, a patient's symptoms must meet the symptom criteria established in the professional's handbook, the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, also called the *DSM*. These symptoms include:

- refusal to maintain normal body weight, resulting in a weight that is less than 85% of the expected weight
- an intense fear of gaining weight, even if the affected person is underweight.
- distorted body image, obsession with body weight as key factor in self-evaluation, or denial of the seriousness of the low body weight
- amenorrhea

## Diagnosis

Initial assessment usually includes a careful interview and history (clinical evaluation). A weight history, menstrual history, and description of daily food intake are important during initial evaluation. Risk factors and family history are also vital in suspected cases. Laboratory results can reveal anemia (low red blood cell count in the blood), lowered white blood cells, pulse, blood pressure, and body temperature. The decreased temperature in extremities may cause a slight red-purple discoloration in limbs (acrocyanosis). There are two psychological questionnaires that can be administered to aid in **diagnosis**, called the Eating Attitudes Test (EAT) and Eating Disorders Inventory (EDI). The disadvantage of these tests is that they may produce false-positive results, which means that a test result may indicate that the test taker has anorexia, when, actually, she or he does not.

## Treatments

Persons affected with AN are often in denial, in that they do not see themselves as thin or in need of professional help. Education is important, as is engagement on the part of the patient—a connection from the patient to her treatment, so that she agrees to be actively involved. Engagement is a necessary but difficult task in the treatment of AN. If the affected person's medical condition has deteriorated, **hospitalization** may be required. Initially, treatment objectives are focused on reversing behavioral abnormalities and nutritional deficiencies. Emotional support and reassurance that eating and caloric restoration will not make the person overweight are essential components during initial treatment sessions. Psychosocial (both psychological and social) issues and family dysfunction are also addressed, which may reduce the risk of relapsing behaviors. (Relapsing behaviors occur when an individual goes back to the old patterns that he or she is trying to eliminate.) At present, there is no standardized psychotherapeutic treatment model to address the multifactorial problems associated with AN. **Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) may help to improve and modify irrational perceptions and overemphasis of weight gain. Current treatment usually begins with behavioral interventions and should include family therapy (if age appropriate). **Psychodynamic psychotherapy** (also called exploratory psychotherapy) is often helpful in the treatment of AN. There are no medications to treat AN. Treatment for this disorder is often long term.

## Prognosis

If this disorder is not successfully diagnosed or treated, the affected person may die of malnutrition

## KEY TERMS

**Amenorrhea**—Absence of menstrual periods.

**Anemia**—Condition that results when there is a deficiency of oxygen in the blood. Can cause fatigue and impair mental functions.

**False-positive**—A test result that is positive for a specific condition or disorder, but this result is inaccurate.

**Lanugo**—Downy hair, usually associated with infants, that sometimes develops on the face and back of people affected by anorexia nervosa.

and multi-organ complications. The mortality rate among anorexia patients is between 6% and 20%. However, early diagnosis and appropriate treatment interventions are correlated with a favorable outcome.

Research results concerning outcome of specific AN treatments are inconsistent. Some results, however, have been validated. The prognosis appears to be more positive for persons who are young at onset of the disorder, and/or who have experienced a low number of disorder-related hospitalizations. The prognosis is not as positive for persons with long duration illness, very low body weight, and persistent family dysfunction. Additionally, the clinical outcome can be complicated by comorbid, or co-occurring or concurrent, disorders (without any causal relationship to AN) such as **depression**, anxiety, and **substance abuse**.

### Prevention

A nurturing and healthy family environment during developing years is particularly important. Recognition of the clinical signs with immediate treatment can possibly prevent disorder progression, and, as stated, early diagnosis and treatment are correlated with a favorable outcome.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Lock, James, and others. *Treatment Manual for Anorexia Nervosa: A Family-Based Approach*. New ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2002.

Scagliusi, Fernanda Baeza, and others, contributors. *Anorexia Nervosa And Bulimia Nervosa: New Research*. Nova Science Publishers, 2006.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

National Alliance on Mental Illness, Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (703) 524-7600. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Association of Anorexia Nervosa and Associated Disorders, P.O. Box 7, Highland Park, IL 60035. Hotline: (847) 831-3438. <<http://www.anad.org>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
Catherine Seeley, CSW  
Nicole Mallory, MS,PA-C  
Stephanie N. Watson

## Anosognosia

### Definition

Anosognosia is a disorder in which a person who has suffered **brain** injury or damage is unaware of sensory, perceptual, motor, affective, or cognitive deficits.

### Description

The term anosognosia was first adopted by J. Babinski in 1914, to refer to a lack of knowledge, awareness, or recognition, of deficits, observed in patients with neurological impairments. The term is derived from the roots *a* (without), *noso* (illness), and *gnosia* (knowledge). The terms anosognosia, impaired awareness, unawareness of deficits, and lack of insight are sometimes used interchangeably in the scientific literature. Some researchers also use the term anosognosia interchangeably with the term **denial** of illness, which is a condition in which patients do not acknowledge that they have a deficit or disease. Others, however, distinguish anosognosia from denial of illness based on its primary etiology. Anosognosia is thought to be due primarily to a neurological lesion. Denial of illness, on the other hand, is thought to be due primarily to a psychological process in which a patient tries to manage the distressing emotions related to having the illness or disability.

Some researchers have suggested that denial of illness and anosognosia can co-occur in patients with brain injury. Efforts to distinguish between the two syndromes have revealed that brain injury patients with denial of illness and brain injury patients with anosognosia react differently when confronted with information about their deficits. Patients who deny their deficits show an implicit or partial awareness of these deficits, become angry or resistant when confronted with information about the deficits, and struggle actively when asked to perform tasks after being confronted with such information. Patients with anosognosia, on the other hand, do not have information about their deficits, are perplexed when given feedback

about their functional or behavioral deficits, and are cautiously willing or indifferent when asked to perform tasks with this new information about themselves.

Anosognosia can include unawareness of many different kinds of deficits, such as blindness, aphasia, **amnesia**, paralysis, and weakness of limbs. The first detailed description of anosognosia, provided by C. von Monakow in 1885, was of a man who was unaware of being blind after damage to the cortex of the brain. In 1889, G. Anton described a case of a man who, after damage to the right side of his brain, was unaware of that he was unable to move his left limbs, that he was blind in his left eye, and that he could not feel anything on his left side.

Patients with anosognosia often appear unaware of deficits even when these deficits are clearly evident. Anosognosic patients with hemiplegia (paralysis on one side of the body) might, for example, reply in the affirmative when asked if they can walk. When asked to raise their arms, they might raise only the unimpaired arm, but insist that both arms are raised. When confronted with the truth, they often admit to it, but then shortly afterwards, appear once again unaware of their deficits. Patients with anosognosia sometimes fabricate information to explain their deficits. For example, when a patient with paralysis of the left side is asked to move his left arm, he might explain his inability to do so by stating that because he is right-handed, his left side is weaker than his right. Confabulations can sometimes be illogical or bizarre. For example, a patient, when shown his paralyzed left arm, might insist that the arm belongs to someone else. Patients with anosognosia may not be motivated to engage in rehabilitation therapy because they do not recognize that they have deficits.

Anosognosia can be selective. A patient may admit to one kind of deficit, such as blindness in one visual field, but appear unaware of another deficit, such as paralysis of a limb. Anosognosia can also vary in degree. In its most extreme form, patients may completely deny a deficit, or fail to recognize it. In less extreme forms, patients may minimize the deficit or appear unconcerned about it, a condition referred to as anosodiaphoria.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Scientists still have a poor understanding of anosognosia and its causes. Many different kinds of theories have been proposed to account for anosognosia. For many years after anosognosia was first described, researchers thought of it as a psychological phenom-

## KEY TERMS

**Aphasia**—The loss of the ability to speak or understand language, due to brain injury or disease.

**Amnesia**—Memory loss.

**Confabulation**—The filling in of gaps in memory with false or imagined details.

**Hemiplegia**—Paralysis of one side of the body.

**Lesion**—An injured, diseased, or damaged area.

**Vestibular system**—The body system that helps to maintain balance and orient the body.

enon arising from, for example, an attempt to cope with the **stress** of having a disability. However, other researchers pointed out that a psychological account does not explain why most cases of anosognosia are seen in patients with damage to the right hemisphere, and why ansosognosic patients sometimes deny one kind of disability but admit to being aware of others. Another kind of theory suggests that anosognosia may be the result of damage to areas and processes in the brain that represent the position, movement and sensation of different parts of the body. According to this type of theory, if, for example, a part of the brain that represents the left arm is damaged, the person may no longer be aware of an inability to move the left arm. Attentional theories, posed by some researchers, propose that anosognosia is due, not to a problem with representing a particular body area, but an inability to direct attention to a particular part of the body. Other theories focus on the fact that damage to the right hemisphere of the brain affects the ability to perceive and express emotions, and suggest that such damage may in part explain why anosognosic patients appear unconcerned about their deficits. Yet others have suggested that anosognosia arises when normal connections between the two hemispheres of the brain are lost.

## Demographics

Although there are no reports of exact percentages, the majority of patients with acquired brain injuries are thought to show some unawareness of their deficits. Most research, however, has not attempted to distinguish between anosognosia and denial of illness in these patients. Lesions in the right hemisphere of the brain appear to be more likely to result in anosognosia than lesions in the left hemisphere.

## Treatments

Cases of anosognosia often resolve themselves over time. In long-term cases, cognitive therapy may help patients cope with their impaired function, but may not relieve the anosognosia. Researchers have found that caloric reflex testing—stimulating the vestibular system by squirting cold water into one ear—temporarily removes the anosognosia in some patients. The reasons for this temporary effect are unknown.

*See also* Anton's syndrome; Confabulation; Unilateral neglect.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Butcher, James N., Susan Mineka, and Jill. M. Hooley. *Abnormal Psychology*. Boston, MA: Pearson Education, 2007.

Hirstein, William. *Brain Fiction: Self-Deception and the Riddle of Confabulation*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

Kortee, Kathleen B., and Stephen T. Wegener. "Denial of Illness in Medical Rehabilitation Populations: Theory, Research and Definition." *Rehabilitation Psychology* 49. 3 (2004): 187–99.

Kortte, Kathleen Bechtold, Stephen T. Wegener, and Kathleen Chwalisz. "Anosognosia and Denial: Their Relationship to Coping and Depression in Acquired Brain Injury." *Rehabilitation Psychology* 48. 3 (2003): 131–36.

Vuilleumier, Patrik. "Anosognosia: The Neurology of Beliefs and Uncertainties." *Cortex* 40 (2004): 9–17.

Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, PhD

Antabuse see **Disulfiram**



**Rohypnol tablets.** (David Hoffman Photo Library/Alamy)

## Description

The drugs associated with this class of substance-related disorders are the **benzodiazepines** (e.g. **diazepam** [Valium], **chlorodiazepoxide** [Librium], **alprazolam** [Xanax], **triazolam** [Halcion], and **estazolam** [ProSom]), the **barbiturates** (e.g., Seconal and pentobarbital [Nembutal]), and barbiturate-like substances including Quaalude, Equanil, and Doriden. Any of these drugs is capable of producing either wakeful relief from tension, or sleep, depending upon dosage. Some nonpsychiatric uses of anti-anxiety medications include treatment and prevention of **seizures**, or as muscle relaxants, anesthetics, and drugs to make other anesthetics work more effectively (known as "adjuvants").

Although the types of central nervous system depressants work differently, they all produce a pleasant drowsy or calming effect. If used over a long period of time, tolerance develops, and larger doses are needed to achieve the initial effects. Continued use can lead both to physical dependence, and when use is reduced or stopped to withdrawal symptoms. When combined with each other or other CNS depressants, such as alcohol, the effects are additive.

In addition to the drugs available in the United States by prescription, there are three other drugs that are predominantly central nervous system depressants with significant potential for **abuse**. These are:

- gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB)
- flunitrazepam (Rohypnol)
- ketamine

GHB has been abused in the United States since about 1990, for its euphoric, sedative, and anabolic (bodybuilding) effects. It was widely available over the counter in health food stores until 1992. Bodybuilders

used it to aid in reducing percentage of body fat, and to build muscle. Street names for GHB include "Liquid ecstasy," "soap," "easy lay," and "Georgia home boy."

Rohypnol has been of particular concern during the last few years because of its abuse in date rape. When mixed with alcohol, Rohypnol can incapacitate its victims and prevent them from resisting sexual assault. It can also lead to anterograde **amnesia**, in which individuals cannot remember what they experienced while under the influence. Rohypnol can be lethal when mixed with alcohol and/or other depressants. Rohypnol is not available by prescription in the United States, and it is illegal to import it. Even so, illegal use of Rohypnol started appearing in the United States in the early 1990s, where it became known as "rophies," "roofies," "roach," and "rope."

Ketamine is an anesthetic used predominately by veterinarians to treat animals. It can be injected or snorted. Ketamine goes by the street names of "Special K," or "Vitamin K." At certain doses, ketamine can cause dreamlike states and **hallucinations**. It has become particularly common in club and rave (large, all-night dance marathon) settings, and has also been used as a date-rape drug. At high doses, it can cause **delirium**, amnesia, impaired motor functioning, high blood pressure, and **depression**. It can also cause potentially fatal respiratory problems.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Anti-anxiety drugs can be taken orally to bring about a general calming or drowsy effect, usually experienced as pleasant. Abuse of anti-anxiety medication can develop with prolonged use, as tolerance grows relatively quickly. Increasing amounts of the drug are then needed to produce the initial effect. It is possible to become addicted to anti-anxiety drugs even when they are medically prescribed.

A second cause of anti-anxiety drug abuse is the use of anti-anxiety drugs when combined with other drugs, such as **cocaine**. It is not uncommon for an addict to pair the use of a stimulant, such as cocaine or **methamphetamine**, with a CNS depressant. This allows the user to feel alert for an extended period of time, and then be able to "come down" from the high, and even fall asleep.

### Symptoms

Even when prescribed for medical reasons, an individual taking central nervous system depressants

usually feels sleepy and uncoordinated during the first few days of treatment. As the body adjusts to the effects of the drug, these feelings begin to disappear. If the drug is used long term, the body develops tolerance, and increasing doses are needed to obtain the desired effect of general calming or drowsiness.

The use of anti-anxiety drugs can pose extreme danger when taken along with other medications that cause CNS depression, such as prescription pain medicines, some over-the-counter cold and allergy medications, or alcohol. Use of additional depressants can slow breathing and respiration, and can even lead to death.

Withdrawal from anti-anxiety medications can be dangerous if not done under medical supervision. The safest method of withdrawal involves a gradual reduction of dosage. Abrupt withdrawal from these medications can lead to seizures due to sudden increase in brain activity.

## Demographics

According to the 2005 National Survey on Drug Use and Health, 20% of people 12 years of age and older have at some point in their life used prescription-type psychotherapeutic drugs (including anti-anxiety medications) for recreational purposes, although only 6.2% admitted to having done so in the month before the survey was taken. Of these, the highest rate of abuse occurred in people 18–25 (30.3%), followed by those in the 26 and older age bracket (19.3%). In general, males were more likely to abuse prescription-type drugs than females (21.9% versus 18.3%). By race, American Indians or Alaska natives were the most likely to engage in this form of drug abuse (29.0%), while African Americans were the least likely to do so (12.6%).

## Diagnosis

The manual used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental illnesses, the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, (the fourth edition, text revision or *DSM-IV-TR*) includes specific diagnostic criteria for four types of anti-anxiety medication abuse. These are:

- dependence
- abuse
- intoxication
- withdrawal

Substance dependence, the more severe form of **addiction**, is a group of cognitive, behavioral, and physiological symptoms associated with the continued

use of the substance, and includes both tolerance and withdrawal symptoms. Abuse is a less severe form of addiction that may also result in risky behavior, such as driving while under the influence. For example, an individual with an abuse disorder may miss work or school, or get into arguments with parents or spouse about substance use. Such problems can easily escalate into full-blown dependence.

Intoxication refers to the presence of clinically significant problem behaviors or psychological changes, such as inappropriate sexual or aggressive behavior, mood swings, impaired judgment, or impaired social or work functioning, that develop during or shortly after use of an anti-anxiety medication. As with other CNS depressants such as alcohol, these behaviors may be accompanied by slurred speech, unsteady gait, memory or attention problems, poor coordination, and eventually, stupor or coma. Memory impairment is relatively common, especially a kind known as anterograde amnesia that resembles alcoholic blackouts.

Withdrawal is a characteristic syndrome that develops when use of anti-anxiety medication is severely reduced or stopped abruptly. It is similar to abrupt cessation of heavy alcohol use. Symptoms may include increases in heart rate, respiratory rate, blood pressure or body temperature, sweating, hand tremor, **insomnia**, anxiety, nausea, and restlessness. Seizures may occur in perhaps as many as 20–30% of individuals undergoing untreated withdrawal. In the more severe forms of withdrawal, hallucinations and delirium can occur. Withdrawal symptoms are generally the opposite of the acute effects experienced by first-time users of the drugs. Length of withdrawal varies depending upon the drug, and may last as few as 10 hours, or as long as three to four weeks. The longer the substance has been taken, and the higher the dosages used, the more likely that withdrawal will be severe.

## Treatments

According to the National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA), successful treatment for anti-anxiety medication addiction needs to incorporate several components. Counseling, particularly cognitive-behavior counseling, focuses on helping addicted individuals identify and change behaviors, attitudes, and beliefs that contributed to their drug usage. Combined with prescribed medications to make withdrawal safer and easier, counseling can help the addicted individual eventually make a full recovery. Often, it takes multiple courses of treatment before full recovery can be achieved. Various levels of care, from outpatient to residential care for up to 18 months, are available, depending upon need. Narcotics Anonymous also offers ongoing recovery support.

## Prognosis

The most typical course, according to the *DSM-IV-TR* involves teens or young people in their early 20s who may escalate occasional use of anti-anxiety medications to the point at which they develop problems such as abuse or dependence. This is particularly likely for individuals who also abuse other substances. An initial pattern of use at parties can eventually lead to daily use and high degrees of tolerance.

A second course, observed somewhat less frequently, involves individuals who initially obtain medications by prescription, usually for treatment of anxiety or insomnia. Though the vast majority of people who use medications as prescribed do not go on to develop **substance abuse** problems, a small minority do. Again, tolerance develops and the need for higher dosages to reach the initial effects occurs. Individuals may justify their continued use on the basis of the original symptoms, but active substance seeking becomes increasingly part of the picture. Others at higher risk are those with alcohol dependence who might be given prescription anti-anxiety medications to reduce their anxiety or insomnia.

## Prevention

Health-care professionals play a very important role in preventing and detecting abuse of prescription drugs. Primary care physicians, nurse practitioners and pharmacists can all play a role.

It is estimated by NIDA that approximately 70% of all Americans visit a health-care provider at least once every two years. Thus, health-care providers are in a unique position not only to prescribe medications as appropriate, but also to identify prescription drug abuse when it exists and recommend appropriate treatment for recovery. Screening for substance abuse should be incorporated into routine history-taking, or if a patient presents with symptoms associated with problem drug use.

Over time, providers should be alert to any increases in the amount of medication being used, which may be a sign of tolerance. They should also be aware that individuals addicted to prescription medications may engage in “doctor shopping,” that is, going from provider to provider in an effort to obtain multiple prescriptions of their abused drug.

Pharmacists can play a role in preventing prescription drug abuse as well. They should provide information and advice about the correct way to take prescribed medications, and be alert to drug interactions. They can also play a role in detecting prescription fraud by noticing suspicious-looking prescription forms.

## KEY TERMS

**Abuse**—Substance abuse is a milder form of addiction than substance dependence. Generally, people who have been diagnosed with substance abuse do not experience the tolerance or withdrawal symptoms—the signs of physiological dependence—that people dependent on a substance experience.

**Anxiolytic**—A preparation or substance given to relieve anxiety; a tranquilizer.

**Barbiturates**—A class of medications (including Seconal and Nembutal) that causes sedation and drowsiness. They may be prescribed legally, but may also be used as drugs of abuse.

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Dependence**—The adaptation of neurons and other physical processes to the use of a drug, followed by withdrawal symptoms when the drug is removed; physiological and/or psychological addiction.

**GHB**—GHB, or gamma hydroxybutyrate, is a central nervous system depressant that has been abused in the United States for euphoric, sedative, bodybuilding, and date-rape purposes.

**Intoxication**—The presence of significant problem behaviors or psychological changes following ingestion of a substance.

**Ketamine**—An anesthetic used predominately by veterinarians to treat animals that can be used as a date-rape drug.

**Rohypnol**—Rohypnol, or flunitrazepam, is a central nervous system depressant that is not legal in the United States, but is used as a date-rape drug.

**Sedative**—A medication that induces relaxation and sleep.

**Tranquilizer**—A medication that induces a feeling of calm and relaxation.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

*See also* Addiction; Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Anxiety-reduction techniques; Barbiturates; Buspirone; Chlordiazepoxide; Clonazepam; Clorazapine; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Diazepam; Disease concept of chemical dependency; Estazolam;

Flurazepam; Fluvoxamine; Hypnotics and related disorders; Insomnia; Lorazepam; Sedatives and related drugs; Substance abuse and related disorders; Support groups; Triazolam; Zolpidem.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *American Psychiatric Association Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Carter, Lawrence P., and others. "Relative Abuse Liability of GHB in Humans: A Comparison of Psychomotor, Subjective, and Cognitive Effects of Supratherapeutic Doses of Triazolam, Pentobarbital, and GHB." *Neuropsychopharmacology* 31.11 (November 2006): 2537–51.

de Wit, Harriet, and others. "Evaluation of the Abuse Potential of Pagoclone, a Partial GABA-Sub(A) Agonist." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.3 (June 2006): 268–73.

Kurtz, Steven P., and others. "Prescription Drug Abuse Among Ecstasy Users in Miami." *Journal of Addictive Diseases* 24.4 (2005): 1–16.

Mintzer, Miriam Z., and R. R. Griffiths. "An Abuse Liability Comparison of Flunitrazepam and Triazolam in Sedative Drug Abusers." *Behavioural Pharmacology* 16.7 (November 2005): 579–84.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Council for Drug Education, 136 E. 64th St., New York, NY 10021.

Narcotics Anonymous, P.O. Box 9999, Van Nuys, CA 91409. Telephone: (818) 780-3951.

National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857 <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>.

### OTHER

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Office of Applied Statistics. *2005 National Survey on Drug Use and Health*. <<http://www.oas.samhsa.gov/nsduhLatest.htm>>.

Barbara S. Sternberg, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Antidepressants

### Definition

Antidepressants are medications that are used primarily to treat **depression**. Antidepressant drugs are also sometimes used to treat other psychological

disorders, such as **anxiety disorders** and eating disorders. Because they are thought to increase the effectiveness of some pain medications, they are sometimes used in the treatment of migraine-type headaches. They are also used as a component of **smoking cessation** programs, and in the treatment of fibromyalgia and some types of **sleep disorders**.

### Description

Antidepressant drugs can be used to treat depression and other disorders. A person with depression has symptoms that last for at least two weeks. These symptoms can include feelings of sadness, emptiness, guilt, or worthlessness, loss of interest in previously pleasurable activities, changes in eating and sleeping patterns, **fatigue**, lethargy or agitation, difficulty concentrating, and suicidal thoughts. Antidepressant drugs are not the only treatment for depression; **psychotherapy** and other treatments are also independently effective in alleviating depression. Antidepressant drugs, if prescribed, are often used in combination with these other treatments.

The type of antidepressant medication prescribed depends on the particular array of symptoms a patient displays or reports. There are several different types of antidepressant drugs. All of them work by altering the level or activity of **neurotransmitters** in the **brain**. Neurotransmitters are chemicals that are released by neurons, or nerve cells. They attach to other neurons and activate them in various ways. Although antidepressant drugs affect communication between neurons within hours after these drugs are ingested, symptoms of depression usually improve only after a few weeks of taking the medication. Some people notice improvement in symptoms after only two weeks, but many people notice a benefit only after six to eight weeks of using the medication. The reason for this delayed effect of antidepressants is not entirely clear. One theory is related to the finding that the changes in neurotransmitter activity caused by antidepressants increase the release of other chemicals, called neurotrophins, in the brain. In the normal brain, neurotrophins help neurons to grow and connect to other neurons. People with depression sometimes have shrinkage of neurons in parts of the brain. When more neurotrophins are present, neurons in these areas of the brain can grow.

The main classes of antidepressant drugs are tricyclics, monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, and atypical antidepressants. A patient who does not improve with one type of antidepressant drug may sometimes be helped by another type of antidepressant, because different drugs work in different ways.

### Tricyclic antidepressants

The first class of drugs used to treat depression, from the 1960s through the 1980s, was that of tricyclic antidepressants. Tricyclic antidepressants work by preventing neurons from reabsorbing the neurotransmitters serotonin, **dopamine**, and norepinephrine, after they are released. This means that the neurotransmitters are able to remain in the gaps between neurons for a longer period of time, thus continuing to activate the neurons that receive them. Tricyclic antidepressants can have side effects because they can prevent nerve cells from functioning normally, and because they can prevent additional neurotransmitters from working effectively. For example, they block the activity of histamine, a neurotransmitter that is involved in keeping people alert and awake. They also block the activity of acetylcholine, a neurotransmitter that is involved in many automatic bodily activities. Tricyclic antidepressants include **imipramine** (trade name Tofranil), **amitriptyline** (trade names Elavil, Endep), **clomipramine** (trade name Anafranil), **doxepin** (trade names Sinequan, Adapin), **desipramine** (trade name Norpramin), **nortriptyline** (trade name Pamelor), **protriptyline** (trade name Vivactil), and **trimipramine** (trade name Surmontil).

### MAOIs

The monoamine oxidase inhibitors are drugs that prevent neurotransmitters such as dopamine, serotonin and norepinephrine from being broken down into inactive chemicals. This means that, when MAOIs are used, more of these neurotransmitters are available to send messages in the brain. MAOIs can have potentially serious side effects because they also prevent the amino acid tyramine from being broken down. Tyramine is a chemical that the body needs, and it is found in foods like aged cheese, smoked and pickled meats and fish, and raisins. If tyramine that is ingested cannot be broken down, it can accumulate in the body, causing increased blood pressure and possibly strokes. The MAOIs include isocarboxazid (trade name Marplan), **phenelzine** (trade name Nardil), and **tranylcypromine** (trade name Parnate).

### SSRIs

The selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors are drugs that work by preventing neurons from reabsorbing serotonin after it is released, so that the effect of serotonin on adjoining neurons is prolonged. The SSRIs include **citalopram** (trade name Celexa), escitalopram (trade name Lexapro), **fluoxetine** (trade name

Prozac), **fluvoxamine** (trade name Luvox), **paroxetine** (trade name Paxil), and **sertraline** (trade name Zoloft).

### *Atypical antidepressants*

The atypical antidepressants are a miscellaneous collection of drugs. One of these drugs, **bupropion** (trade name Wellbutrin), prevents dopamine, and to some extent, norepinephrine, from being reabsorbed by neurons, so that these neurotransmitters are able to have a more prolonged effect. Another drug, **venlafaxine** (trade name Effexor), prevents serotonin, and to a smaller extent, norepinephrine and dopamine, from being reabsorbed. Other atypical antidepressants include **mirtazapine** (trade name Remeron), **trazodone** (trade name Desyrel) and duloxetine (trade name Cymbalta).

### **Recommended dosage**

The dosage of antidepressants depends on the particular drug being prescribed, and other factors such as the age of the patient, the patient's body chemistry, and the patient's body weight. Patients are usually started on a low dose to minimize side effects, and the dose is gradually increased over time to a level that is therapeutic. Newer antidepressants, however, may be started at the therapeutic dosage level.

### **Precautions**

In 2005, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration warned that SSRI drugs may increase suicidal thoughts in children and adolescents. It urged health-care practitioners and families of patients to carefully monitor people, of any age, who take these drugs. The National Institutes of Health is currently carrying out research to study the nature of the association between suicidal thoughts and antidepressant drugs. Canadian researchers at McGill University also found that adults over age 50 who take SSRIs are at double the risk of bone fractures.

Antidepressants can precipitate mania in people who are susceptible to **bipolar disorder**. Therefore, a health-care practitioner typically takes a detailed history of a patient before prescribing antidepressants. Various medical problems may affect the effectiveness or risks of antidepressants. These include, but are not limited to, angina, headaches, epilepsy, recent heart attacks or **stroke**, kidney disease, and diabetes. Some antidepressants may affect a fetus, therefore pregnant women should inform their doctors about their condition before antidepressants are prescribed. Patients taking tricyclic antidepressants should carefully

## **KEY TERMS**

**Anxiety disorder**—A type of psychological disorder characterized by unrealistic, irrational fear or intense anxiety.

**Eating disorder**—A type of psychological disorder characterized by disturbances in eating patterns, extreme concern about weight gain and unhealthy efforts to control weight.

**Sleeping disorders**—Disorders in which people experience disturbances of sleep.

**Fibromyalgia**—A condition in which a person experiences chronic pain in the muscles and soft tissues around joints.

**Mania**—A state in which a person experiences intense excitement and euphoria.

**Stroke**—A temporary loss of normal blood flow to an area of the brain, caused by blockage or rupture of a blood vessel.

adhere to the dietary restrictions provided by their doctor, in order to avoid potentially serious side effects. Patients who stop taking antidepressants may experience withdrawal symptoms if the drugs are abruptly discontinued.

### **Side effects**

People who take antidepressants may experience side effects. Different people experience different side effects. Such side effects may include dry mouth, constipation, nausea, bladder problems, sexual problems, blurred vision, dizziness, daytime drowsiness, **insomnia**, increased heart rate, headache, nervousness, and agitation. The newer antidepressants are thought to have fewer and less troublesome side effects than the tricyclic antidepressants and the MAOIs.

### **Interactions**

Antidepressants may result in dangerous side effects if taken in combination with other medications. There can also be dangerous side effects if different types of antidepressants are combined with each other. Patients should inform their doctor about all other medications and herbal supplements they are taking before antidepressant drugs are prescribed. Alcohol or other recreational drugs may decrease the effectiveness of antidepressants. Antidepressants may increase the intoxicating effect of alcohol.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edition, Text revision. Washington, D.C.:American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Diamond, Ronald, J. *Instant Psychopharmacology*. 2nd edition. New York: W.W. Norton and Company, 2002.
- Dunbar, Katherine Read, ed. *Antidepressants*. Farmington Hills, MI: Greenhaven Press, 2006.
- Kalat, James W. *Biological Psychology*. 9th edition. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth, 2007.

### OTHER

- “New NIMH Research Strives to Understand How Antidepressants May Be Associated with Suicidal Thoughts and Actions.” National Institutes of Health. 2006. <<http://www.nih.gov/news/pr/nov2006/nimh-13.htm>> (January 12, 2006).
- “Medications.” National Institutes of Mental Health. 2002. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/medicate.cfm>> (January 12, 2006).
- “Drug Information: Antidepressants, Monoamine Oxidase (MAO) Inhibitor (Systemic).” Medline Plus. 2005. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202054.html>> (January 2006).
- “Drug Information: Antidepressants, Tricyclic (Systemic).” Medline Plus. 2005. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202055.html>> (January 2006).
- “Daily Use of Antidepressants Associated with Increased Risk of Fracture in Older Adults” Newswise. <<http://www.newsweek.com/articles/view/526667/>> (January 2007).

Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, Ph.D.

## Antisocial personality disorder

### Definition

Also known as psychopathy, sociopathy, or dissocial personality disorder, antisocial personality disorder (APD) is a **diagnosis** applied to persons who routinely behave with little or no regard for the rights, safety, or feelings of others. This pattern of behavior is seen in children or young adolescents and can persist into adulthood.

The most recent edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, (the fourth edition, text revision or *DSM-IV-TR*) classifies APD as one of four “Cluster B Personality Disorders” along with borderline, histrionic, and narcissistic **personality disorders**.

## Description

Men or women diagnosed with this personality disorder demonstrate few emotions beyond contempt for other people. Their lack of empathy is often combined with an inflated sense of self-worth and a superficial charm that tends to mask an inner indifference to the needs or feelings of others. Some studies indicate that people with APD can only mimic the emotions associated with committed love relationships and friendships that most people feel naturally.

People reared by parents with antisocial personality disorder or **substance abuse** disorders are more likely to develop APD than members of the general population. People with the disorder may be homeless, living in poverty, suffering from a concurrent substance **abuse** disorder, or piling up extensive criminal records, as antisocial personality disorder is associated with low socioeconomic status and urban backgrounds. Highly intelligent individuals with APD, however, may not come to the attention of the criminal justice or mental health care systems and may be underrepresented in diagnostic statistics.

Some legal experts and mental health professionals do not think that APD should be classified as a mental disorder on the grounds that the classification appears to excuse unethical, illegal, or immoral behavior. Despite these concerns, juries in the United States have consistently demonstrated that they do not regard a diagnosis of APD as exempting a person from prosecution or punishment for crimes committed.

Furthermore, some experts disagree with the categorization by the American Psychiatric Association (APA) of antisocial personality disorder. The APA considers the term “psychopathy” as another, synonymous name for APD. However, some experts make a distinction between psychopathy and APD. Dr. Robert Hare, an authority on psychopathy and the originator of the **Hare Psychopathy Checklist**, claims that all psychopaths have APD but not all individuals diagnosed with APD are psychopaths. Recent reports have made this distinction even clearer, suggesting that there is emotional deficit component of psychopathy that is not necessarily present in people with APD. One expert review comments that only 25% of people diagnosed with APD or the putatively related “conduct disorder” will show psychopathic tendencies.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Studies of adopted children indicate that both genetic and environmental factors influence the

development of APD, with heritability estimates ranging from 44% to 72%. Both biological and adopted children of people diagnosed with the disorder have an increased risk of developing it. Children born to parents diagnosed with APD but adopted into other families resemble their biological more than their adoptive parents in this regard. The environment of the adoptive home, however, may lower the child's risk of developing APD.

Researchers have linked antisocial personality disorder to childhood physical or sexual abuse, neurological disorders (which are often undiagnosed), and low IQ. Some experts have recently questioned the link between psychopathy, which these experts distinguish from APD, and early environmental trauma. As with other personality disorders, no one has identified any specific cause or causes of antisocial personality disorder. Indeed, one group with the U.S. National Institute of Mental Health has stated that "there are many developmental routes to an elevated risk for antisocial behavior." Persons diagnosed with APD also have an increased incidence of **somatization disorder** and substance-related disorders.

The *DSM-IV-TR* adds that persons who show signs of **conduct disorder** with accompanying attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder before the age of 10 have a greater chance of being diagnosed with APD as adults than do other children. The manual notes that abuse or **neglect** combined with erratic parenting or inconsistent discipline appears to increase the risk that a child diagnosed with conduct disorder will develop APD as an adult.

**Brain imaging studies** have identified some specific characteristics in the brains of people diagnosed with APD that suggest dysfunction of structures in the frontal and temporal lobes of the brain.

### Symptoms

The central characteristic of antisocial personality disorder is an extreme disregard for the rights of other people. Individuals with APD lie and cheat to gain money or power. Their disregard for authority often leads to arrest and imprisonment. Because they have little regard for others and may act impulsively, they are frequently involved in fights. They show loyalty to few if any other people and are likely to seek power over others in order to satisfy sexual desires or economic needs.

People with APD often become effective "con artists." Those with well-developed verbal abilities can often charm and fool their victims, including unsuspecting or inexperienced therapists. People with

APD have no respect for what others regard as societal norms or legal constraints. They may quit jobs on short notice, move to another city, or end relationships without warning and without what others would consider good reason. Criminal activities typically include theft, selling illegal drugs, and check fraud. Because persons with antisocial personality disorder make "looking out for number one" their highest priority, they are quick to exploit others. They commonly rationalize these actions by dismissing their victims as weak, stupid, or unwary.

Some work has been done on the relationship between what are called "minor physical anomalies" and the presence of various disorders, including aggression disorders and psychopathy. The presence of these features—which include low-set ears and adherent ear lobes—is associated with developmental derailments in the fetus at the end of the third trimester of pregnancy, and they have been linked with the development of conduct disorder and violence in adulthood. Studies directly examining their association, if any, with psychopathy or APD are lacking. Birth complications are known risk factors for violent, antisocial behaviors.

### Demographics

APD is estimated to affect 3% of males and 1% of females in the general population of the United States. Mental health professionals may diagnose 3–30% of the population in clinical settings as having the disorder. The percentages may be even higher among prison inmates or persons in treatment for substance abuse. By some estimates, three-quarters of the prison population may meet the diagnostic criteria for APD.

### Diagnosis

The diagnosis of antisocial personality disorder is usually based on a combination of a careful medical as well as psychiatric history and an interview with the patient. The doctor will look for recurrent or repetitive patterns of antisocial behavior. He or she may use a diagnostic questionnaire for APD, such as the Hare Psychopathy Checklist-Revised or the self-reporting Psychopathic Personality Inventory, if the patient's history suggests the diagnosis. A person aged 18 years or older with a childhood history of disregard for the rights of others can be diagnosed as having APD if he or she gives evidence of three of the following seven behaviors associated with disregard for others:

- Fails to conform to social norms, as indicated by frequently performing illegal acts or pursuing illegal occupations.

- Deceives and manipulates others for selfish reasons, often in order to obtain money, sex, drugs, or power. This behavior may involve repeated lying, conning, or the use of false names.
- Fails to plan ahead or displays impulsive behavior, as indicated by a long succession of short-term jobs or frequent changes of address.
- Engages in repeated fights or assaults as a consequence of irritability and aggressiveness.
- Exhibits reckless disregard for safety of self or others.
- Shows a consistent pattern of irresponsible behavior, including failure to find and keep a job for a sustained length of time and refusal to pay bills or honor debts.
- Shows no evidence of sadness, regret or remorse for actions that have hurt others.

To meet *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for APD, a person must also have had some symptoms of conduct disorder before age 15. An adult 18 years or older who does not meet all the criteria for APD may be given a diagnosis of conduct disorder.

Antisocial behavior may appear in other mental disorders as well as in APD. These conditions must be distinguished from true APD. For instance, it is not uncommon for a person with a substance abuse disorder to lie to others in order to obtain money for drugs or alcohol. But unless indications of antisocial behavior were present during the person's childhood, he or she would not be diagnosed with antisocial personality disorder. People who meet the criteria for a substance abuse disorder as well as APD would be given a **dual diagnosis**.

### Treatments

Antisocial personality disorder is highly unresponsive to any form of treatment, in part because persons with APD rarely seek treatment voluntarily. If they do seek help, it is usually in an attempt to find relief from **depression** or other forms of emotional distress. Although there are medications that are effective in treating some of the symptoms of the disorder, noncompliance with medication regimens or abuse of the drugs prevents the widespread use of these medications. The most successful treatment programs for APD are long-term structured residential settings in which the patient systematically earns privileges as he or she modifies behavior. In other words, if a person diagnosed with APD is placed in an environment in which they cannot victimize others, their behavior may improve. It is unlikely, however, that they would maintain good behavior if they left the disciplined environment.

### KEY TERMS

**Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder**—A learning and behavioral disorder characterized by difficulty in sustaining attention, impulsive behavior, and excessive activity.

**Conduct disorder**—A behavioral and emotional disorder of childhood and adolescence in which children display physical aggression and infringe on or violate the rights of others. Youths diagnosed with conduct disorder may set fires, exhibit cruelty toward animals or other children, sexually assault others, or lie and steal for personal gain.

**Psychopathy**—A psychological syndrome that includes lack of a conscience or sense of guilt, lack of empathy, egocentricity, pathological lying, repeated violations of social norms, disregard of the law, shallow emotions, and a history of victimizing others.

**Somatization disorder**—A type of mental disorder in which the patient has physical complaints that serve as coping strategies for emotional distress.

**Substance abuse disorder**—Disorder that is characterized by: an individual's need for more of a drug or alcohol than intended, an inability to stop using by choice, and an ongoing difficulty in recovering from the effects of the substance.

If some form of individual **psychotherapy** is provided along with **behavior modification** techniques, the therapist's primary task is to establish a relationship with the patient, who has usually had very few healthy relationships in his or her life and is unable to trust others. The patient should be given the opportunity to establish positive relationships with as many people as possible and be encouraged to join **self-help groups** or prosocial organizations.

Unfortunately, these approaches are rarely if ever effective. Many persons with APD use therapy sessions to learn how to turn "the system" to their advantage. Their pervasive pattern of manipulation and deceit extends to all aspects of their life, including therapy. Generally, their behavior must be controlled in a setting where they know they have no chance of getting around the rules.

### Prognosis

APD can follow a chronic and unremitting course from childhood or early adolescence into adult life.

The impulsiveness that characterizes the disorder often leads to a jail sentence or an early death through accident, homicide, or **suicide**. There is some evidence that the worst behaviors that define APD diminish by midlife; the more overtly aggressive symptoms of the disorder occur less frequently in older patients. This improvement is especially true of criminal behavior but may apply to other antisocial acts as well.

### Prevention

Measures intended to prevent antisocial personality disorder must begin with interventions in early childhood, before youths are at risk for developing conduct disorder. Preventive strategies include education for parenthood and other programs intended to lower the incidence of child abuse; Big Brother/Big Sister and similar mentoring programs to provide children at risk with adult role models of responsible and prosocial behavior; and further research into the genetic factors involved in APD.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Black, Donald, W., with C. Lindon Larson. *Bad Boys, Bad Men: Confronting Antisocial Personality Disorder*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- Cleckley, Hervey. *The Mask of Sanity*, 5th ed. Augusta, GA: Emily S. Cleckley, 1988.
- Hare, Robert D. *Without Conscience: The Disturbing World of the Psychopaths Among Us*. New York: The Guilford Press, 1993.
- Lykken, David T. *The Antisocial Personalities*. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 1995.
- Simon, Robert I. *Bad Men Do What Good Men Dream: A Forensic Psychiatrist Illuminates the Darker Side of Human Behavior*. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 1996.

#### PERIODICALS

- Abbott, Alison. "Into the Mind of a Killer." *Nature* 410 (2001): 296–98.

#### OTHER

- Hare, Robert D. "Dr. Robert Hare's Page for the Study of Psychopaths." <<http://www.hare.org>> (January 29, 2002).
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Antisocial Personality Disorder." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000921.htm>>.

Dean A. Haycock, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Anxiety and anxiety disorders

### Definition

Anxiety is a mood characterized by apprehension and associated bodily symptoms of tension (e.g., tense muscles, fast breathing, rapid heart beat). When anxious, the individual anticipates threat, danger, or misfortune. Such fears may be real or imagined, come from either an internal or external source, and may be identifiable or vague. Anxiety is a prominent feature in a group of disorders collectively called anxiety disorders, including **panic disorder** (with or without **agoraphobia**), agoraphobia without panic disorder, **specific phobias**, **social phobia**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD), **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), **acute stress disorder**, **generalized anxiety disorder**, anxiety disorder due to a general medical condition, and **substance-induced anxiety disorder**.

### Description

Stimulated by real or imagined dangers, anxiety afflicts people of all ages and social backgrounds. When the anxiety results from irrational fears, it can disrupt or disable normal life. Some researchers believe anxiety is synonymous with fear, occurring in varying degrees and in situations in which people feel threatened by some danger. Others describe anxiety as an unpleasant emotion caused by unidentifiable dangers or dangers that, in reality, pose no threat. Unlike fear, which is caused by realistic, known dangers, anxiety can be more difficult to identify and to alleviate.

Rather than attempting to formulate a strict definition of anxiety, most psychologists simply make the distinction between normal anxiety and neurotic anxiety, or anxiety disorders. Normal (sometimes called objective) anxiety occurs when people react appropriately to the situation causing the anxiety. For example, many people experience stage fright—the fear of speaking in public in front of large groups of people. And most people feel anxious on the first day at a new job for any number of reasons. They are uncertain how they will be received by coworkers, they may be unfamiliar with their duties, or they may be unsure they made the correct decision in taking the job. There is little, if any, real danger posed by either situation, yet each can stimulate intense feelings of anxiety that can affect or derail a person's desires or obligations. However, despite these feelings and any accompanying physiological responses, most people carry on and eventually adapt. In contrast, anxiety that is characteristic of anxiety disorders is disproportionately

intense. Anxious feelings interfere with a person's ability to carry out normal or desired activities. Sigmund Freud described neurotic anxiety as a danger signal. In his id-ego-superego scheme of human behavior, anxiety occurs when unconscious sexual or aggressive tendencies conflict with physical or moral limitations.

According to the most recent edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, (the fourth edition, text revision or *DSM-IV-TR*), the following disorders are considered anxiety disorders:

- Panic disorder without agoraphobia—A person with this disorder has recurrent panic attacks and worries about experiencing more attacks, but agoraphobia is not present. Panic attacks are sudden attacks of intense fear or apprehension during which the person may experience shortness of breath, increased heart rate, choking, and/or a fear of losing control. Agoraphobia is anxiety about places or situations from which escape might be difficult, or in which help might not be available.
- Panic disorder with agoraphobia—A person with this disorder experiences recurrent panic attacks but also has agoraphobia. The anxiety about certain places or situations may lead to avoidance of those places or situations.
- Agoraphobia without history of panic disorder—The person with this disorder has agoraphobia and experiences paniclike symptoms but does not experience recurring panic attacks.
- Specific phobias—A person diagnosed with a specific phobia experiences extreme anxiety when he or she is exposed to a particular object or situation. The feared stimuli may include: particular animals (dogs, spiders, snakes, etc.), situations (crossing bridges, driving through tunnels), storms, heights, and many others.
- Social phobia—A person with social phobia fears social situations or situations in which he or she is expected to perform. These situations may include eating in public or speaking in public, for example.
- Obsessive-compulsive disorder—A person with this disorder feels anxiety in the presence of a certain stimulus or situation, and feels compelled to perform an act (a compulsion) to neutralize the anxiety. For example, upon touching a doorknob, a person may feel compelled to wash his or her hands four times, or more.
- Post-traumatic stress disorder—This disorder may be diagnosed after a person has experienced a traumatic event, and long after the event, the person still mentally reexperiences the event along with the same feelings of anxiety that the original event produced.

- Acute stress disorder—Disorder with similar symptoms to post-traumatic stress disorder, but is experienced immediately after the traumatic event. If this disorder persists longer than one month, the diagnosis may be changed to post-traumatic stress disorder.
- Generalized anxiety disorder—A person who has experienced six months or more of persistent and excessive worry and anxiety may receive this diagnosis.
- Anxiety due to a general medical condition—Anxiety that the clinician deems is caused by a medical condition.
- Substance-induced anxiety disorder—Symptoms of anxiety that are caused by a drug, a medication, or a toxin.
- Anxiety disorder not otherwise specified—This diagnosis may be given when a patient's symptoms do not meet the exact criteria for each of the above disorders as specified by *DSM-IV-TR*.

Currently, there is debate over the conceptualization and diagnostic criteria for several specific anxiety disorders. The diagnostic criteria of the *DSM-IV-TR* assume that the cluster of disorders characterized as “anxiety disorders” all have in common a pathological anxiety. However, not all clinicians and theorists agree that this is true. In addition, some believe that anxiety disorders can be further broken down into subtypes or that other the category should be widened to include other disorders (e.g., **hypochondriasis, avoidant personality disorder**).

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Amen, Daniel G. *Change Your Brain, Change Your Life: The Breakthrough Program for Conquering Anxiety, Depression, Obsessiveness, Anger, and Impulsiveness*. New York: Crown Publishing Group, 2000.
- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text revision. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Morris, Tracy L. and John S. March, eds. *Anxiety Disorders in Children and Adolescents*, 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.
- Starcevic, Vladan. *Anxiety Disorders in Adults: A Clinical Guide*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.
- Veeraraghavan, Vimala and Shalini Singh. *Anxiety Disorders: Psychological Assessment and Treatment*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2002.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Anxiety reduction techniques

### Definition

**Anxiety** reduction techniques are learned skills that can be used by an individual to help overcome anxiety and its associated mental and physical symptoms, including tension, worry, and nervousness. These techniques include relaxation, visualization and imagery, diaphragmatic breathing, **stress inoculation**, and **meditation**.

### *Relaxation or progressive relaxation*

This anxiety reduction technique is based on the premise that anxiety and stress are associated with muscle tension. When one achieves deep muscle relaxation, muscle tension is reduced, and this relaxed state is incompatible with anxiety.

### *Visualization and imagery*

This anxiety reduction technique aids the person in making a mental image of what he or she wants to accomplish. For example, an individual might wish to release worries or concerns, or create a relaxing image to escape momentarily from a stressful event.

### *Diaphragmatic breathing*

This technique involves teaching a person to breathe sufficient amounts of air to help his or her blood fill with oxygen and be purified properly. In this technique, the individual breathes deeply from the diaphragm, which is located low in the chest, near the abdomen.

### *Stress inoculation*

Self-talk, or the things that people tell themselves about stressful situations, can be habitual. For example, a person may take an ordinary event and automatically magnify its importance. Stress inoculation training is a type of therapy that teaches clients to cope with anxiety and stressful situations by learning more functional patterns of self-talk.

### *Meditation*

In this anxiety reduction technique, an individual is trained to focus his or her attention on one thing at a time.

### **Purpose**

The goal of learning and implementing anxiety reduction techniques is to help reduce the intensity of

anxiety that an individual feels. These techniques are also helpful in teaching people how to relax and manage stress. Many of the techniques are used in combination with each other. For example, a person may be taught diaphragmatic breathing while also engaging in relaxation techniques, a visualization and imagery exercise, and/or meditation.

### *Relaxation or progressive relaxation*

Relaxation has been used to help women during childbirth and people with **chronic pain**. Relaxation has also been used to treat muscle tension, muscle spasms, neck and back pain, and to decrease perspiration and respiratory rates. Furthermore, relaxation can help with **fatigue**, **depression**, **insomnia**, irritable bowel syndrome, high blood pressure, mild phobias, and **stuttering**.

### *Visualization and imagery*

Visualization and imagery techniques have been helpful in treating general or specific anxiety, headaches, and muscle tension and spasms. They are also useful in reducing or eliminating pain, and in the recovery from illnesses and injuries. Visualization and imagery techniques have also been used by athletes to help them achieve peak performance.

### *Diaphragmatic breathing*

Diaphragmatic breathing has been found to help people reduce anxiety, depression, irritability, muscle tension, circulation, and fatigue.

### *Stress inoculation*

Stress inoculation has been helpful in reducing interpersonal and general anxiety. For example, these techniques may be used when a person has an upcoming job interview, speech, or test. Stress inoculation has also been used to treat phobias, fear of heights, and chronic anger problems.

### *Meditation*

Meditation has been used to treat and prevent high blood pressure, heart disease, strokes, migraine headaches, immunization diseases, obsessive thinking, attention problems, anxiety, depression, and anger difficulties.

### **Description**

These various techniques are often practiced and demonstrated in therapy sessions with a trained professional. In addition, the person learning the techniques

would need to continue to practice them on a regular basis, outside of the therapy sessions.

### ***Relaxation or progressive relaxation***

In progressive relaxation, an individual is instructed to tighten and then relax various muscles. He or she either lies down or sits in a chair with his/her head supported. Each muscle group (such as face muscles, arm muscles, leg muscles, etc.) is tensed for five to seven seconds and then relaxed for 20 to 30 seconds. This helps the person recognize the feeling of tense and relaxed muscles. This entire procedure is repeated one to five times, and usually starts with the face muscles and moves downward to the foot muscles. When relaxation is used with chronic pain and childbirth, the techniques focus the person's attention on breathing and relaxing muscles as a distraction from the pain. For mastery, relaxation techniques are typically practiced every day for one to two weeks. A person may engage in these techniques anywhere from 15 minutes to an hour per session. Sometimes, the individual will record and replay instructions on tightening and relaxing various muscle groups until he or she becomes familiar with the muscle groups and establishes a comfortable routine.

### ***Visualization and imagery***

The basic premise behind visualization and imagery is that one's thoughts become reality. For example, if an individual thinks anxious thoughts, then he or she will become tense. The principle of visualization and imagery is that a person can use his or her imagination to be persuaded to feel a certain way or do anything that is physically possible to do. There are three basic types of visualization: programmed, receptive, and guided visualization.

In programmed visualization, the person creates a vivid image including sight, taste, sound, and smell. The individual then imagines a goal he or she wants to attain or some type of healing that is desired. In the visualization, the goal is achieved, or the healing occurs.

An idea underlying both receptive visualization and guided visualization is that the person is seeking an answer to a life question or resolution to an issue, and the answer or resolution is within the person, but is buried or inaccessible because of fear, doubt, or anxiety. These techniques are similar to dream interpretation and free association techniques used in **psychoanalysis** or psychodynamic therapy. For example, an individual may wonder whether he should remain in his current job. A proponent of these techniques would maintain that "deep down," below the level of

conscious thought, the man knows what he really wants to do, but he is not allowing himself to listen to his desires or to act—he is blocking the message his subconscious is sending him. The goal of these techniques is to enable the person to relax and focus enough to receive that message, so that he or she can do what needs to be done. In receptive visualization, the individual creates a peaceful scene in his or her mind. After the image is formed, the person asks a question and waits for the answer. To continue the example above, the man imagines a beach, and he asks himself the question, "Should I leave my job?" He continues to relax and remain in the scene, and he may "hear" an answer blowing in the breeze or "see" a boat sailing away, which may be symbolic of his wish to leave his job.

In guided visualization, the person creates a very vivid image, as in programmed visualization, but omits some important elements. The person then waits for the subconscious to supply the missing pieces. For example, a computer programmer may wonder if she should stay in her present job or return to school for an advanced degree. In engaging in guided visualization, she may visualize her cubicle at work, the pictures on her desk, the feel of her desk chair, the sounds of people outside her cubicle typing and talking, but she will omit an element from the scene. In this case, she may omit her computer. She will then wait to see what her subconscious uses to replace her computer. This woman may find in her visualization that her computer has been replaced by books, which may represent her desire to return to school.

Visualization and imagery exercises work best when a person is relaxed. Visualization and imagery exercises are typically practiced two to three times a day for 10 to 20 minutes at a time. How quickly an individual will see results can vary. Many times people report immediate symptom relief. However, the personal goals a person sets, the power of his or her imagination, and willingness to practice can all influence how rapidly benefits can be obtained. Some people find it helpful to tape record and replay detailed descriptions of what they want to visualize or imagine.

### ***Diaphragmatic breathing***

Diaphragmatic breathing can typically be learned in minutes; however, the benefits may not be recognized until after several months of persistent practice. When breathing from the diaphragm, clients are often told to lie down on a rug or blanket, with their legs slightly apart, arms to the sides not touching the body, with their eyes closed. Attention is brought to the breathing by placing one hand on the chest and the other hand on the abdomen area. The client is then

instructed to breathe in through the nose and exhale out the mouth. Each time the client breathes in, he or she should try to breathe deeper. This should be practiced for a minimum of five minutes once or twice a day. Over a few weeks of practice, the time period engaged in diaphragmatic breathing should be increased to 20 minutes and the activity can be performed while lying down, sitting, or standing.

### ***Stress inoculation***

As people go about their daily lives, they often have thoughts in which they are talking to themselves. Stress inoculation involves this self-talk in helping clients decrease their anxiety and stress. Stress inoculation therapy works on the basis of turning the client's own thought patterns into a "vaccine" against stress-induced anxiety. The first step is to develop a list of stressful situations and arrange them from least to most stressful. Once anxiety-producing situations are identified, the client is taught to curb the anxiety-provoking thoughts and replace them with more positive coping thoughts. Once these new thoughts are learned, they can be tried out in real situations. The time it takes to replace old habitual thoughts with new thoughts can vary depending on the amount of practice and commitment to make this change.

### ***Meditation***

There are various forms of meditation. Depending on the type used, the individual focuses his or her attention in slightly different ways. For example, Zen meditation focuses on breathing, whereas in transcendental meditation, the person makes a sound or says a mantra selected to keep all other images and problems from intruding on his or her thoughts. With practice, a person can reach a meditative state and obtain its benefits within a few minutes.

### ***Aftercare***

After a person has learned and practiced anxiety reduction techniques, he or she may need additional instruction from a trained professional. Having a trained professional review these techniques can help reinforce what the person has already learned and been practicing. Furthermore, the person may identify aspects of the techniques that he or she is doing incorrectly, areas that need more attention or focus, and alternative methods of engaging in the techniques.

### ***Risks***

There are minimal risks associated with these techniques, but some physical problems have occurred. For

example, precautions should be taken when doing progressive relaxation and tensing the neck and back. Excessive tightening can create muscle or spinal damage. Additionally, tightening various muscle groups, such as the toes or feet, could result in muscle cramps. If physical problems occur, such as difficulty taking deep breaths, unusual muscle pain, or an increased level of anxiety, then the individual should seek assistance from a physician.

### ***Normal results***

In general, after engaging in these anxiety reduction techniques, many people report an increased sense of well-being and relaxation. People have a greater sense of control, and confidence in their coping abilities. This results in a decreased need to fear or avoid stressful situations.

### ***Relaxation or progressive relaxation***

Progressive relaxation can be useful in reducing muscle tension. Engaging in relaxation may help to improve a person's energy level, depression, and anxiety, as well as the ability to retrieve information from memory.

### ***Visualization and imagery***

By engaging in the positive thinking often associated with visualization and imagery, a person can create a clearer image of what he or she wants to accomplish. By repeating the image again and again, the individual comes to expect what he or she wants will occur. As a result, the person will often begin to act in a way more consistent with accomplishing the goal.

### ***Diaphragmatic breathing***

Sufficient amounts of air reach the lungs, which purifies and oxygenates the blood. Waste products in the blood are removed, and organs and tissues become nourished.

### ***Stress inoculation***

A person will have more realistic views of stressful and anxiety-producing situations in his or her life. The individual will be able to relax away tension by effectively thinking useful coping thoughts rather than negative interpretations of situations.

### ***Meditation***

As people learn to meditate, they often discover that they have some control over the thoughts that come to their minds, as opposed to feeling as though thoughts "pop" into their heads. Many people begin

## ROLLO MAY (1909–1994)

Rollo May was the second of six children and the eldest son of Earl Tuttle, a Young Men's Christian Associations field secretary, and Matie Boughton May, a home-maker. May grew up in Michigan in a family that had "more than its share of troubles." He later described his parents as "austere disciplinarians and anti-intellectuals" and portrayed their relationship as "discordant" and the precursor for his interest in psychology and counseling. His oldest sister was frequently psychotic and spent time in mental hospitals.

His lectures on counseling and personality adjustment were published as his first book, *The Art of Counseling: How to Gain and Give Mental Health* (1939), which was well regarded. May studied psychology at Columbia University in New York City. While working on his dissertation in 1942 and still counseling, May was diagnosed with tuberculosis. His personal struggle against death solidified his views on existentialism. While recuperating in upstate New York for almost two years, May wrote *The Meaning of Anxiety* (1950), which he considered the "watershed" event of his career. He stressed that anxiety can be a positive, motivating force for social and personal devel-

opment, and that people can use their inner resources for life choices. In 1953 May published his second book, *Man's Search for Himself*. Written in laymen's terms, it was a popular and critical success and established May as a leader of American existentialism.

By the early 1960s May had become a leader in challenging behaviorism and psychoanalysis. He "defected" from biological determinism by stressing unique conscious elements in individual psychology. After moving to California in 1975, he resumed his private practice as a therapist. He also served in various capacities at the Saybrook Institute of the California School of Professional Psychology. More books and ideas followed: *Power and Innocence: A Search for the Sources of Violence* (1972), *The Courage to Create* (1975), *My Quest for Beauty* (1985), and *The Cry for Myth* (1991). May was a prolific writer and thinker who wrote more than fifteen books, many of which are directly related to his personal life and growth as a person. He was the recipient of the American Psychological Association's Gold Medal for his distinguished career in psychology, Phi Beta Kappa's Ralph Waldo Emerson Award, and the Whole Life Humanitarian Award.

to recognize dysfunctional patterns of thought and perceptions that have influenced their lives. Additionally, many people report a greater ability to manage their emotions and gain a greater sense of stability. When a person meditates, he or she often suppresses the activity of the sympathetic nervous system, the part of the nervous system that activates the body for emergencies and activities. Meditation also lowers a person's metabolism, heart, and breathing rates. Additionally, meditation decreases the chemical in the body often associated with stress.

### Abnormal results

Once a person begins to implement these anxiety reduction techniques effectively, he or she may discover old or hidden psychological pain. The individual may feel angry, frightened, or depressed, and it may be beneficial for him or her to talk to a friend, mental health professional, or meditation teacher.

Some people have difficulty with various aspects of the different techniques. For example, an individual may feel restless when first learning how to meditate, or may feel as though a thousand thoughts are running through his or her mind. However, with practice and assistance from a trained professional, these difficulties will subside. People who feel frustrated or discouraged

may simply need to find ways to make the practice of these techniques more comfortable. As is the case with many other skills, effectively reducing anxiety with these techniques requires patience and practice. If an individual does not consistently practice these techniques, the benefits will probably not be obtained.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Bourne, Edmund J. *The Anxiety and Phobia Workbook*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2005.
- Donaghy, Marie, Rosemary A. Payne and Keith Bellamy. *Relaxation Techniques: A Practical Handbook for the Health Care Professional*. Oxford: Churchill Livingstone, 2005.
- Smith, Jonathan C. *Stress Management: A Comprehensive Handbook of Techniques and Strategies*. New York: Springer Publishing Company, 2002.
- Veeraraghavan, Vimala and Shalini Singh. *Anxiety Disorders: Psychological Assessment and Treatment*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2002.
- Wolpe, Joseph. *Practices Without Principles*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

#### PERIODICALS

- Arch, Joanna J. and Michelle G. Craske. "Mechanisms of Mindfulness: Emotion Regulation Following a Focused Breathing Induction." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 44.12 (December 2006): 1849–58.

- Bornas, Xavier, and others. "Changes in Heart Rate Variability of Flight Phobics During a Paced Breathing Task and Exposure to Fearful Stimuli." *International Journal of Clinical and Health Psychology* 6.3 (September 2006): 549–63.
- Hunt, Melissa, and others. "The Role of Imagery in the Maintenance and Treatment of Snake Fear." *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry* 37.4 (December 2006): 283–298.
- Lundgren, Jesper, Sven G. Carlsson, and Ulf Berggren. "Relaxation Versus Cognitive Therapies for Dental Fear—A Psychophysiological Approach." *Health Psychology* 25.3 (May 2006): 267–73.
- Meuret, Alicia E., Thomas Ritz, Frank H. Wilhelm, and Walton T. Roth. "Voluntary Hyperventilation in the Treatment of Panic Disorder—Functions of Hyperventilation, Their Implications for Breathing Training, and Recommendations for Standardization." *Clinical Psychology Review* 25.3 (May 2005): 285–306.
- Rausch, Sarah M., Sandra E. Gramling, and Stephen M. Auerbach. "Effects of a Single Session of Large-Group Meditation and Progressive Muscle Relaxation Training on Stress Reduction, Reactivity, and Recovery." *International Journal of Stress Management* 13.3 (August 2006): 273–90.
- Roth, Walton T. "Physiological Markers for Anxiety: Panic Disorder and Phobias." *International Journal of Psychophysiology* 58.2–3 (November–December 2005): 190–98.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- American Psychological Association, 750 1st St. NE, Washington, DC 20002. Telephone: (202) 336-5500. <<http://www.apa.org>>.
- Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852. Telephone: (301) 231-9350. <<http://www.adaa.org>>.
- The National Institute of Mental Health, 5600 Fischers Lane, Room 15C05, Rockville, MD 20857. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.
- The National Mental Health Association. 1201 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2971.

Keith Beard, Psy.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Apathy

### Definition

Apathy can be defined as an absence or suppression of emotion, feeling, concern or passion. Further, apathy is an indifference to things generally found to be exciting or moving.

### Description

A strong connection exists between apathy and mental disorders. Apathy is one of the hallmark symptoms of **schizophrenia**. Many people with schizophrenia express little interest in the events surrounding them. Apathy can also occur in **depression and depressive disorders**. For example, people who are depressed and have **major depressive disorder** or **dysthymic disorder** often feel numb to events occurring around them, and do not derive pleasure from experiences that they once found enjoyable.

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines health as an optimal state of being that maximizes one's potential for physical, mental, emotional and spiritual growth. It does not confine health to physical parameters or measures. Passion, interest and action are needed for optimal mental and emotional health. Persons who are apathetic would seem to fall short of the WHO definition of health.

All people may experience periods of apathy. Disappointment and dejection are elements of life, and apathy is a normal way for humans to cope with such stresses—to be able to "shrug off" disappointments enables people to move forward and try other activities and achieve new goals. When the stresses pass, the apparent apathy also disappears. A period of apathy can also be viewed as a normal and transient phase through which many adolescents pass.

It is important to note, however, that long-term apathy and detachment are not normal.

### Treatment

Transient apathy can be overcome. Friends and professionals may be able to assist individuals to develop an interest in their surroundings. Attitude is important. Persons who desire to overcome apathy have much higher odds of succeeding than do persons lacking a positive attitude.

Other than support, no specific treatment is needed for apathy associated with adolescence, unless other, more troubling disorders are also present.

The treatment of more persistent apathy (in a depressive disorder, for example), or the apathy that is characteristic of schizophrenia, may respond to treatment for the primary disorder.

**DEPRESSION.** For **depressive disorders**, a number of **antidepressants** may be effective, including tricyclic antidepressants, monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) and **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**. The tricyclic antidepressants include **amitriptyline** (Elavil), **imipramine** (Tofranil), and **nortriptyline** (Aventyl),

Pamelor). MAOIs include **tranylcypromine** (Par-nate) and **phenelzine** (Nardil). The most commonly prescribed SSRIs are **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **sertraline** (Zoloft), **paroxetine** (Paxil), **fluvoxamine** (Luvox), and **citalopram** (Celexa).

**SCHIZOPHRENIA.** For schizophrenia, the primary goal is to treat the more prominent symptoms (**positive symptoms**) of the disorder, such as the thought disorder and **hallucinations** that patients experience. Atypical antipsychotics are newer medications introduced in the 1990s that have been found to be effective for the treatment of schizophrenia. These medications include **clozapine** (Clozaril), **risperidone** (Risperdal), **quetiapine** (Seroquel), **ziprasidone** (Geodon), and **olanzapine** (Zyprexa). These newer drugs are more effective in treating the **negative symptoms** of schizophrenia (such as empathy) and have fewer side effects than the older antipsychotics. Most atypical antipsychotics, however, do have weight gain as a side effect; and patients taking clozapine must have their blood monitored periodically for signs of agranulocytosis, or a drop in the number of white blood cells.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Gelder, Michael, Richard Mayou, and Philip Cowen. *Shorter Oxford Textbook of Psychiatry*. 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Wilson, Josephine F. *Biological Foundations of Human Behavior*. New York: Harcourt, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Adams, K. B. "Depressive symptoms, depletion, or developmental change? Withdrawal, apathy, and lack of vigor in the Geriatric Depression Scale." *Gerontologist* 41, no. 6 (2001): 768-777.
- Carota A., F. Staub, and J. Bogousslavsky. "Emotions, behaviours and mood changes in stroke." *Curent Opinions in Neurology* 15, no. 1 (2002): 57-69.
- Kalechstein, A. D., T. F. Newton, and A. H. Leavengood. "Apathy syndrome in cocaine dependence." *Psychiatry Resident* 109, no. 1 (2002): 97-100.
- Landes, A. M., S. D. Sperry, M. E. Strauss, and D. S. Geldmacher. "Apathy in Alzheimer's disease." *Journal of the American Geriatric Society* 49, no. 12 (2001): 1700-1707.
- Ramirez, S. M., H. Glover, C. Ohlde, R. Mercer, P. Goodnick, C. Hamlin, and M. I. Perez-Rivera. "Relationship of numbing to alexithymia, apathy, and depression." *Psychological Reports* 88, no. 1 (2001): 189-200.
- Starkstein, S. E., G. Petracca, E. Chemerinski, and J. Kremer. "Syndromic validity of apathy in Alzheimer's disease." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 158, no. 6 (2001): 872-877.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850.
- American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NW, Washington, DC, 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721 or (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

## Appetite suppressants

### Definition

Appetite-suppressant medications are drugs that promote weight loss by decreasing appetite or increasing the sensation of fullness.

### Description

**Obesity** is a disease that affects millions of American adults, adolescents, and children, posing serious health risks. Medical professionals generally consider obesity to be a chronic illness requiring life-long treatment and management. It is often grouped with other chronic conditions, such as high blood pressure and diabetes, as a condition that can be controlled but not cured. One is considered obese if 20% over ideal body weight, according to standard height-weight charts, or if one's Body Mass Index, or BMI, (a ratio of height to weight, indicating the amount of fat tissue in the body) exceeds 30%.

The most important strategies for managing obesity are not medications but rather, a healthy diet coupled with moderate exercise. As in other chronic conditions, the use of prescription medications may assist in managing the condition for some individuals but it is never the sole treatment for obesity, nor is it ever considered a cure.

The class of medications used most often for weight loss are commonly referred to as "appetite suppressants." These medications promote weight loss by helping to diminish appetite, and/or by increasing the subjective feeling of fullness. They work by increasing serotonin or catecholamines, two **neurotransmitters** (chemicals) in the **brain** that affect both mood and appetite.

Several prescription medications are currently approved for treatment of obesity. In general, the effects of these medications are modest, leading to an average initial weight loss of between 5 and 22 lbs (2.3–10 kg); though studies show that weight returns after cessation

of the drugs. There is considerable individual difference in response to these medications; some people experience greater weight loss than others. The goal of prescribing weight loss medication is to help the medically at-risk obese patient “jump-start” their weight loss effort and lose 10% or more of their starting body weight. When this can be accomplished, it usually leads to a reduction in risk for obesity-related illnesses, such as high blood pressure, heart disease and diabetes. Weight loss tends to be greatest during the first few weeks or months of treatment, leveling off after about six months. Research suggests that if a patient does not lose at least four pounds during the first four weeks on a particular medication, that medication is unlikely to be effective over the long run. Few studies have addressed safety or effectiveness of medications taken for more than a few months at a time. Little data exists on the long term effectiveness of the drugs.

All but two of the prescription appetite suppressants in the United States have been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), for short-term use only. Short-term use generally means a few weeks or months at the longest. One appetite suppressant medication was approved for longer-term use within the past decade, but that drug, dexfenfluramine (Redux) was withdrawn from the market because of unacceptable risks associated with its use.

Another medication was approved within the past few years for longer-term use, up to a year and possibly longer, in significantly obese patients. This drug, an appetite suppressant, is called sibutramine (Meridia). Individuals with a history of heart disease, irregular heartbeat, high blood pressure, or history of **stroke** should not take sibutramine. All patients taking this medication should have their blood pressure monitored regularly.

A relatively new drug, orlistat (Xenical), was approved in 1999 by the FDA for at least a year or longer, as well. Orlistat is not an appetite suppressant, but rather, a member of a new class of anti-obesity drugs known as “lipase inhibitors.” These medications work by preventing enzymes in the gastrointestinal tract from breaking down dietary fats into smaller molecules that can be absorbed by the body. The result is that fat absorbed from food is decreased by about 30%. This effectively reduces the calories absorbed by the body by 30%, aiding in weight loss.

While the FDA regulates how a medication can be advertised or promoted by the manufacturer, these regulations do not constrain physicians from prescribing them as they believe appropriate. This practice of prescribing medications for conditions other than those

for which they were approved, or at different dosages, or for different lengths of time, is known as “off-label” use. Many of the prescription medications available for weight management are used in an “off-label” manner.

Most of the side effects of prescription medications for weight loss are mild; but some very serious complications have been reported in recent years. They were so serious that two medications were voluntarily removed from the market by the manufacturers in 1997. These two medications, fenfluramine (Pondimin), and dexfenfluramine (Redux), were shown to be associated with a rare but very serious and potentially fatal disorder known as primary pulmonary hypertension (PPH), a disease of the lungs. Forty-five percent of patients with PPH die within four years of **diagnosis**.

## Medications for weight loss

### *Prescription medications*

Prescription medications currently prescribed for weight loss include:

- Generic name: Dexfenfluramine (Trade name: Redux) (withdrawn)
- Generic name: Diethylpropion (Trade names: Tenuate, Tenuate dospan)
- Generic name: Fenfluramine (Trade name: Pondimin) (withdrawn)
- Generic name: Mazindole (Trade name: Sanorex)
- Generic name: Orlistat (Trade name: Xenical)
- Generic name: Phendimetrazine (Trade names: Bontril, Plegine, Prelu-2, X-Troxine)
- Generic name: Phentermine (Trade name: Adipex-P, Fastin, Ionamin, Oby-trim)
- Generic name: Sibutramine (Trade name: Meridia)

Some antidepressant medications have been studied for use as possible appetite depressants, because they frequently depress appetite in the early weeks and months of use. Research indicates, however, that while individuals may lose weight initially during antidepressant treatment, a tendency to lose only modest amounts of weight arises after six months. Furthermore, most patients who lose weight early in antidepressant medication treatment tend to regain the weight while still using the medication.

**Amphetamines** and similar medications were frequently prescribed in the United States, during the 1960s and 70s, as appetite suppressants. However, because of their addictive potential, they are not prescribed today for weight control, except by a remainder of “diet doctors” who defy political correctness and continue to distribute them.

**SINGLE DRUG TREATMENT.** The medications listed are currently used, except where noted, to treat obesity. In general, these medications are modestly effective, especially when used in conjunction with a healthy diet and moderate exercise. Average weight losses between five to 22 lbs (2.3–10 kg) can be expected beyond those seen with non-drug obesity treatments, when only a low calorie and exercise regimen are followed. There is considerable individual variation in response to weight-loss medications; some people experience more weight loss than others.

**COMBINED DRUG TREATMENT.** Combined drug treatment using fenfluramine and phentermine (“fen/phen”) is no longer available due to the withdrawal of fenfluramine from the market. There is little information about the safety or effectiveness of other prescription drug combinations for weight loss. Until further research is conducted on safety or effectiveness, using combinations of medications for weight loss is not advised unless a patient is participating in a research study.

**POTENTIAL BENEFITS OF APPETITE SUPPRESSANT TREATMENT.** Short-term use of appetite suppressant medications has been shown to modestly reduce health risks for obese individuals. Studies have found that these medications can lower blood pressure, blood cholesterol, blood fats (triglycerides), and decrease insulin resistance (the body’s ability to utilize blood sugar). Long-term studies need to be conducted to determine if weight loss assisted by appetite suppressant medications can improve health long-term.

**POTENTIAL RISKS OF APPETITE SUPPRESSANT TREATMENT.** All prescription medications used to treat obesity, with the exception of orlistat, are controlled substances. This means that doctors need to follow rigid guidelines when prescribing them. Although abuse and dependence are uncommon with non-amphetamine appetite suppressant medications, doctors need to exercise caution when prescribing them, especially for patients with a history of alcohol or drug abuse.

**DEVELOPMENT OF TOLERANCE.** Studies of appetite suppressant medications indicate that an individual’s weight tends to level off after four to six months of treatment. While some patients and doctors may be concerned that this indicates growing tolerance to the medications, the leveling off may indicate that the medication has reached its limit of effectiveness. Current research is not clear regarding whether weight gained with continued medication is due to drug tolerance, or to reduced effectiveness of the medication over time.

**SIDE EFFECTS.** Because obesity is a condition affecting millions of Americans, many of whom are basically

healthy, the side effects of using powerful medications such as appetite suppressants are of great concern. Most side effects of these medications are mild and diminish as treatment continues. Rarely, serious and even fatal outcomes have been reported. The FDA approved appetite suppressant medications that affect serotonin (fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine) have been withdrawn from the market. Medications that affect catecholamine levels (such as phentermine, diethylpropion, and mazindol) may cause symptoms of sleeplessness, nervousness, and euphoria.

Primary pulmonary hypertension (PPH) is a rare but potentially fatal disease that affects the blood vessels in the lungs and causes death within four years in 45% of its victims. Patients who use the appetite suppressant medications that are prescribed for a use of three months are at increased risk of developing this condition if used longer. Estimates are that between one in 22,000 and one in 44,000 individuals will develop the disorder each year. While the risk of developing PPH is very small, doctors and patients should be aware of this potentially deadly complication when they consider the risks and benefits of using appetite suppressant medications for long-term treatment of obesity. Patients taking appetite suppressants should contact their doctors if they experience shortness of breath, chest pain, faintness, or swelling in the lower legs and ankles. The vast majority of cases of PPH related to appetite suppressant use have occurred in patients taking fenfluramine or dexfenfluramine, either alone or in combination with each other or other drugs, such as phentermine. There have been only a few cases of PPH reported among patients taking phentermine alone, although the possibility that phentermine alone may be associated with PPH cannot be ruled out at this time.

Animal research has suggested that appetite suppressant medications affecting the neurotransmitter serotonin, such as fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine, can damage the central nervous system. These findings have not been reported in humans. Some patients have reported depression or memory loss when using appetite suppressant medications alone or in combination, but it is not known if these problems are actually caused by the medications or by other factors.

#### *Over-the-counter appetite suppressants*

In addition to the numerous prescription medications for weight loss, a few over-the-counter agents are marketed for weight loss. The most common, phenylpropanolamine, is an appetite suppressant that is distantly related to the amphetamines. Like the amphetamines, this drug has the side effect of

## KEY TERMS

**"Fen/phen"**—The commonly used name for a combination of fenfluramine and phentermine that is no longer available due to the withdrawal of fenfluramine from the market.

**Appetite suppressants**—Medications that assist in weight loss by reducing appetite or increasing the sensation of fullness

**Dexfenfluramine (Redux)**—A prescription appetite suppressant for weight loss that was withdrawn from the market due to unacceptable health risks.

**Diethylpropion (Tenuate, Tenuate dospan)**—A prescription appetite suppressant currently on the market for weight loss.

**Fenfluramine (Pondimin)**—A prescription appetite suppressant for weight loss that was withdrawn from the market due to unacceptable health risks.

**Insulin resistance**—The body's inability to utilize blood sugar, at times leading to diabetes

**Mazindol (Sanorex, Mazanor)**—A prescription medication for weight loss currently on the market.

**Orlistat (Xenical)**—A prescription medication for weight loss currently on the market.

**Phendimetrazine (Bontril, Plegine, Prelu-2, X-Trozine)**—A prescription appetite suppressant for weight loss currently on the market.

**Phentermine (Adipex-P, Fastin, Ionamin, Oby-trim)**—A prescription appetite suppressant currently on the market for weight loss.

**Primary pulmonary hypertension (PPH)**—A rare but potentially fatal disorder that affects the blood vessels in the lungs

**Triglycerides**—Fats in the blood

increased blood pressure and heart rate, and thus should not be used by anyone with hypertension or heart disease. Other over-the-counter medications contain fiber or bulking agents, and presumably work by increasing the sensation of fullness. Some preparations contain the anesthetic benzocaine. This agent numbs the mouth and may make eating less appealing temporarily. No evidence exists that any of these medications is effective in producing significant weight loss.

*See also* Amphetamines and related disorders; Diets; Anorexia nervosa; Bulimia nervosa; Obesity; Self-help groups; Support groups.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Hales, Dianne, and Robert E Hales, MD. *Caring for the Mind: The Comprehensive Guide to Mental Health*. New York: Bantam Books, 1995.

Kaplan, Harold I., MD, and Benjamin J Sadock, MD. *Synopsis of Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

### PERIODICALS

National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). *Prescription Medications for the Treatment of Obesity*, MSI-WCIN019, Weight-control information network. 2001.

National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). *Questions About Appetite Suppressant Medication Treatment*, MSI-WCIN020, Weight-control information network. 2001.

U. S. Food and Drug Administration. *FDA Approves Orlistat for Obesity*, Food and Drug Administration FDA Talk Paper, April 26, 1999.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Weight-control Information Network. 1 Win Way, Bethesda, MD 20892-3665. Telephone: (202) 828-1025. <[www.niddk.nih.gov/health/nutrit/win.htm](http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health/nutrit/win.htm)>.

Overeaters Anonymous, 4025 Spencer Street, Suite 203, Torrance, CA 90503. Telephone: (310) 618-8835. <<http://www.overeatersanonymous.org/>>.

### OTHER

CBS News. "Diet Drug Meridia Under Fire." (May 29, 2002). <<http://www.cbsnews.com>>.

Barbara S. Sternberg, Ph.D.

## Aprepitant

### Purpose

Aprepitant (brand name Emend) is a drug used to prevent stomachaches and vomiting in persons receiving cancer-killing medicines (chemotherapy) or who have received medicines to prevent pain during surgery (anesthesia). The drug also affects substances in the part of the **brain** also associated with emotions, which has led scientists to question whether aprepitant could be used to treat certain mental disorders, particularly major **depression**.

### Description

Aprepitant is classified as a substance P neurokinin-1 (NK-1) receptor antagonist. This means it blocks

proteins called NK-1 receptors, which sit on cells in the brain region linked to gastrointestinal problems and the body's response to **stress, anxiety**, and depression. The receptors attach or bind to a naturally occurring chemical called substance P, which is found in higher amounts in persons with depression. Blocking the NK-1 receptors causes a decrease in the normal action of substance P that would be mediated by the NK-1 receptor.

Scientists have theorized that aprepitant could possibly become a unique antidepressant. In 1998, researchers reported that more than half of patients with depression who took aprepitant had an improvement in mood. The study involved 213 people who took the drug for six weeks. The scientists also discovered that the medicine worked as well as **paroxetine** (**Paxil**) in reducing anxiety.

In 2001, however, a larger trial involving 700 patients with mild to moderate depression failed to show that aprepitant worked any better than existing antidepressant medications. Additional studies also failed. In 2003, Merck & Company, the manufacturer of aprepitant, said it would no longer pursue the drug as a treatment for depression. The decision came just a few months after aprepitant received United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval as a preventive for chemotherapy-related stomach upset.

Some researchers still investigate aprepitant as a possible treatment for depression, but the results continue to be disappointing. In 2006, research concluded that aprepitant did not reduce depression symptoms any better than the placebo.

### **Recommended dosage**

Aprepitant is only approved to prevent nausea and vomiting in persons receiving chemotherapy or who have just had surgery. It comes in capsule form, and is taken by mouth with or without food.

#### ***Chemotherapy-related nausea and vomiting***

Those receiving chemotherapy take aprepitant for three days, in combination with other drugs. The general recommended dose is as follows:

- Day 1: 125 mg by mouth one hour before receiving chemotherapy
- Day 2: 80 mg by mouth in the morning
- Day 3: 80 mg by mouth in the morning

#### ***Post-operative nausea and vomiting***

Aprepitant is given alone to prevent upset stomach and vomiting that can occur after surgery. The recommended dosage is 40 mg, taken by mouth, within three hours before receiving anesthesia.

### **Precautions**

Aprepitant is well tolerated in those with mild to moderate liver disease. No aprepitant studies have been conducted in persons with severe liver disease. The drug has not been tested in people under age 18.

The FDA classifies a drug according to how it may affect a developing fetus. Aprepitant is in category B. Animal studies have shown that the drug does not harm a developing fetus, but the drug has not been studied in pregnant women. It is unclear whether the drug passes into breast milk. Women who are pregnant or breastfeeding should talk to their doctor before taking this drug.

### **Side effects**

Studies of more than 3,000 people show that aprepitant is generally well tolerated. The most common side effects in persons taking 80–125 mg aprepitant to prevent chemotherapy-related nausea and vomiting are:

- constipation
- diarrhea
- dizziness
- extreme tiredness
- hair loss
- headache
- hiccups
- loss of appetite
- stomachaches and pains
- weakness

The most common side effects in persons taking 40 mg aprepitant to prevent nausea and vomiting after an operation are:

- constipation
- headache
- itching
- fever
- low blood pressure
- stomachaches

The following symptoms are rare, but require immediate medical attention:

- breathing difficulty
- hives
- hoarseness (rough, scratchy voice)
- skin rash
- swelling of the face, throat, tongue, lips, hands, or lower legs and feet
- trouble swallowing

## KEY TERMS

**Anesthesia**—Medicines that block pain signals from traveling along the nerves to the brain. Anesthesia is often given before surgery so the patient does not feel any pain during the procedure.

**Chemotherapy**—The use of medicines to kill cancer cells.

**Receptor**—A molecule, such as a protein, on a cell's surface that attaches to a specific substance.

**Substance P**—A naturally occurring chemical found throughout the brain, spinal cord, and nervous system.

Aprepitant has been linked to tumor development in laboratory animals. It is unclear if the medicine increases the risk of tumors in humans.

### Interactions

Serious, life-threatening reactions can occur if aprepitant is taken with any of the following drugs:

- astemizole (Hismanal)
- cisapride (Propulsid)
- pimozide (Orap)
- terfenadine (Seldane)

Aprepitant can increase levels of certain chemotherapy drugs in the blood. Patients who take aprepitant with any of the following drugs should be very carefully monitored by a doctor:

- docetaxel (Taxotere)
- etoposide (Etopophos, Vepesid)
- ifosfamide (Mitoxana)
- imatinib (Gleevec)
- irinotecan (Campto)
- paclitaxel (Taxol)
- vinblastine (Velbe)
- vincristine (Oncovin)
- vinorelbine (Navelbine)

Aprepitant may make birth control pills less effective. An additional form of birth control should be used when taking aprepitant and for a month after the last dose.

Those who take aprepitant with the blood thinner warfarin should be closely monitored by a doctor. Taking the two drugs together can affect blood-clotting time. Blood tests are needed to determine whether the dosage of warfarin needs to be adjusted.

Aprepitant can cause increased levels of dexamethasone (Decadron) and methylprednisolone (Medrol) in the blood. Patients may need their dosages decreased if taken with aprepitant.

Aprepitant should be used with caution when taking the following drugs, which can increase the risk of side effects:

- alprazolam (Xanax)
- midazolam (Versed)
- triazolam (Halcion)

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Karch, Amy M. 2007 *Lippincott's Nursing Drug Guide*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

Mental Health America. 2000 N. Beauregard Street, 6th Floor. Alexandria, VA 22311. Telephone: (800) 969-6MHA (6642). <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness. 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (703) 524-7600. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Kelli Miller Stacy

Aricept see **Donepezil**

## Aripiprazole

### Purpose

Aripiprazole (brand name Abilify) is a newer generation antipsychotic medication. It was approved by the U.S. Food & Drug Administration (FDA) in 2002 to treat **schizophrenia** symptoms. The symptoms of schizophrenia include **hallucinations**, **delusions**, **paranoia**, and social withdrawal.

The drug is also FDA-approved as a therapy for people with bipolar disorder who have had episodes of acute mania or mixed episodes of mania and **depression**, but who have subsequently been stabilized for at least six weeks.

Aripiprazole can be used short-term to treat acute psychotic and manic states and agitation in **dementia**, as well as long-term to treat chronic psychotic disorders, such as schizophrenia. In the past, these conditions were typically treated with conventional antipsychotic

drugs, such as phenothiazine, thioxanthene, and butyrophenone neuroleptics.

Although aripiprazole is primarily indicated for the treatment of adults, some studies have indicated that it also may be effective for children and adolescents with **bipolar disorder**. In the few studies that have been conducted, the drug was well tolerated in this population; however, researchers say that a lower dose is appropriate in younger patients.

## Description

Aripiprazole is part of a class of drugs called atypical antipsychotics. This class, which also includes **clozapine**, **olanzapine**, **quetiapine**, **risperidone**, and **ziprasidone**, are called “atypical” because of their relatively lower risk of certain types of adverse side effects compared to traditional antipsychotic drugs.

The exact mechanism by which aripiprazole and other atypical antipsychotic drugs work is unknown. Scientists believe that schizophrenia is caused by an imbalance of **dopamine** in the **brain**. Dopamine is a neurotransmitter that affects movement and balance. The theory is that aripiprazole acts as a partial agonist and antagonist, meaning that it binds to dopamine receptors in the brain and partially activates these receptors, while preventing dopamine from binding to them and fully activating them. Conventional antipsychotic drugs, by comparison, act as full antagonists. These drugs completely block dopamine receptors and significantly interfere with dopamine transmission, which can cause severe movement side effects. Aripiprazole also affects another neurotransmitter, serotonin, which is involved in regulating mood, and which is also imbalanced in people with schizophrenia.

Although studies suggest that aripiprazole works well to treat psychotic conditions such as schizophrenia, very little research has been conducted comparing its effectiveness with that of conventional antipsychotic drugs.

## Recommended Dosage

Aripiprazole is only available by prescription. It is taken once a day by mouth as either a tablet or an oral solution. The oral solution is designed for older patients who have difficulty swallowing a tablet. Tablets range from 2 mg to 30 mg strengths. The oral solution is available in a 1-mg/mL solution. Aripiprazole can be taken with or without food. Some patients start out on a low dose, and then their doctor increases the dose after approximately two weeks.

## Precautions

Women who are pregnant, who intend to become pregnant, or who are nursing should ask their doctor before taking this drug. Aripiprazole may increase the risk for diabetes, and people who develop extreme thirst, frequent urination, or other diabetes symptoms while taking the drug should see a doctor for assessment.

Because of potential interactions, people who are taking aripiprazole should tell their doctor if they have or are taking medications for any of the following conditions:

- Alzheimer’s disease
- Anxiety
- Depression
- Diabetes
- Heart disease or heart failure
- High or low blood pressure
- Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
- Irritable bowel disease
- Mental illness
- Parkinson’s disease
- Seizures
- Stroke or mini-stroke
- Surgery
- Ulcers

Because this medication may cause drowsiness and can impair judgment and motor skills, people who take it should take precautions when operating a motor vehicle or machinery. Alcohol can increase the sedative effects, and is not advised for people who are taking aripiprazole. Also, people who take this drug should use caution when exercising, because aripiprazole can affect the body’s ability to regulate temperature, potentially leading to overheating and dehydration.

## Side Effects

Aripiprazole and other atypical antipsychotic drugs tend to cause fewer neurological side effects than the older antipsychotic drugs. In particular, they have a lower risk of extrapyramidal symptoms, a group of involuntary muscle **movement disorders**. However, the drug does have side effects.

The most common side effects with aripiprazole are:

- anxiety
- constipation

## KEY TERMS

**Atypical antipsychotic**—A class of newer-generation antipsychotic medications that are used to treat schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders.

**Bipolar disorder**—A brain disorder that causes extreme emotional shifts, or mood swings.

**Delusions**—A condition in which a person experiences beliefs that are untrue.

**Dementia**—A loss of mental ability, often occurring with age, that can interfere with a person's ability to think clearly and function independently.

**Dopamine**—A chemical messenger in the brain that regulates movement and balance.

**Extrapyramidal**—Related to the motor system in the brain. Extrapyramidal symptoms affect movement and coordination.

**Hallucinations**—Seeing, hearing, feeling, smelling, or tasting things that do not exist.

**Mania**—A mood disorder in which a person may become impulsive or irritable, and may exercise extremely poor judgment.

**Neuroleptic malignant syndrome**—A rare response to certain antipsychotic drugs, which can raise the body temperature to potentially life-threatening levels.

**Serotonin**—A chemical messenger in the brain that affects mood and emotion.

**Paranoia**—Condition in which a person has an irrational suspicion about another person or situation.

**Partial agonist**—A substance that partially activates a receptor in the brain, while blocking the neurotransmitter for that receptor from binding to it.

**Schizophrenia**—A mental disorder in which a person experiences hallucinations and delusions, and displays unusual behavior.

- vomiting
- weight gain

This drug can increase the risk for a rare condition called neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NML). This condition, which is sometimes caused by drugs that interfere with the dopamine pathway, can raise body temperatures to potentially life-threatening levels.

Aripiprazole is not approved for the treatment of **psychosis** in elderly patients with dementia. The FDA in 2005 released a public health advisory warning patients and doctors against using aripiprazole and other atypical antipsychotics off-label. In studies, these drugs significantly increased the risk of death in older patients with dementia compared to placebo. Most of the deaths were associated with heart failure or infections such as pneumonia. Atypical antipsychotics also have been associated with an increased risk for stroke in elderly patients with dementia-related psychosis.

## Interactions

Aripiprazole can have potentially dangerous interactions with the following drugs:

- famotidine
- valproate
- lithium
- dextromethorphan
- warfarin
- omeprazole
- lorazepam

## Resources

### BOOKS

Beers, Mark H. *The Merck Manual of Medical Information: 2nd Home Edition*. New York, NY: Pocket, 2004.

Mondimore, Francis Mark. *Bipolar Disorder: A Guide for Patients and Families*, 2nd edition. Baltimore, MD: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 2006.

Stahl, Stephen M. *Essential Psychopharmacology: The Prescriber's Guide: Antipsychotics and Mood Stabilizers*. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 2006.

Torrey, E. Fuller. *Surviving Schizophrenia: A Manual for Families, Patients, and Providers*. 5th edition. New York, NY: Harper Collins Publishers, 2006.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA 22209-3901. Telephone: (703) 907-7300. <<http://www.psych.org/>>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness. 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

- difficulty sleeping
- dizziness
- drowsiness
- headache
- nausea
- nervousness
- numbness
- tremor

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663 Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (866)615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/>>.

The Mental Health Research Association. 60 Cutter Mill Road, Suite 404, Great Neck, NY 11021. Telephone: (800) 829-8289. <[narsad.org](http://narsad.org)>.

Stephanie N. Watson

## Aromatherapy

### Definition

Aromatherapy is a holistic treatment based on the external use of essential aromatic plant oils to maintain and promote physical, physiological, and spiritual well-being. The essential oils may be used in massage, added to a warm bath, used to moisten a compress that is applied to the affected part of the body, added to a vaporizer for inhalation, or diffused throughout a room.

The term aromatherapy (*aromatherapie* in the original French) was coined in 1928 by a French chemist, René Maurice Gattefossé, to describe the therapeutic use of aromatic substances (essential oils) in wound healing. Gattefossé discovered the healing properties of essential plant oils accidentally; after burning his hand in a laboratory accident, he found that **lavender** oil healed his burns in a very short time. He then experimented with plant oils in treating soldiers wounded in World War I, and found that there were several essential oils that speeded physical healing. As the practice of aromatherapy expanded, it came to incorporate a holistic emphasis on healing or invigorating all levels of a person's being. In the United States and Great Britain, the contemporary practice of aromatherapy is often associated with naturopathy and Western herbal medicine. In Great Britain, aromatherapy is one of the most frequently used forms of alternative medicine; in the United States, many hospital-affiliated centers for the study of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) offer aromatherapy as well as other alternative approaches. Aromatherapy has also been added to holistic nursing board examinations in the United States within the last few years.

### Purpose

One of the basic concepts of mind/body medicine is that a positive frame of mind helps to keep people in

good health. Aromatherapists maintain that essential oils derived from plants help people to slow down, relax from **stress**, and enjoy the sensory experiences of massage, warm water, and pleasant smells. Aromatherapy is thought to improve a person's mental outlook and sense of well-being by affecting the limbic system via the olfactory nerve, or the sense of smell. The limbic system is the area of the **brain** that regulates emotions. Relaxing and pleasant smells stimulate emotional responses of pleasure and relaxation. From a holistic perspective, aromatherapy is a form of preventive health care. Most aromatherapists believe that aromatherapy should not be used as a substitute for mainstream medical or psychiatric care, but as an adjunct to it.

Aromatherapy is considered to be a useful complementary treatment for the relief of **depression**, **anxiety**, **insomnia**, **panic disorder**, stress-related physical disorders, menstrual cramps, and some gastrointestinal complaints. For example, peppermint oil calms gastrointestinal spasms when ingested, or taken by mouth. A recent Scottish study found that aromatherapy has a measurably calming effect on the symptoms of **dementia** in elderly people.

Aromatherapy can be used by itself, or combined with Swedish massage, shiatsu, acupressure, reflexology, or **light therapy** to reinforce the positive results of these treatments.

Although there are professional aromatherapists as well as practitioners of holistic medicine who offer aromatherapy among their other services, people can also use aromatherapy at home as part of self-care. There are many guides to the various techniques of aromatherapy and the proper use of essential plant oils available in inexpensive paperback editions.

### Precautions

People who are interested in using essential oils at home should be careful to purchase them from reliable sources. The U. S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) does not regulate the manufacture of essential plant oils. Consequently, instances of consumer fraud have been reported. In the case of essential oils, the most common form of fraud is substitution of synthetic compounds for natural essential oils, which are expensive to produce.

Another precaution is to avoid applying essential oils directly to the skin as a form of perfume. Some essential oils such as oil of orange or oil of peppermint are irritating to the skin if applied full-strength. When essential oils are used in massage, they are always diluted in a carrier oil.

A final precaution is to avoid taking essential oils internally without a consultation with a physician or naturopathist. Possible exceptions may be peppermint oil and aloe vera.

### Description

Essential plant oils are prepared for use in aromatherapy in several different ways. Most are prepared by steam distillation, a process in which the flowers, leaves, or other plant parts are heated by steam from boiling water. The vapors that result then pass through a condenser that separates the scented water from the essential oil, which is siphoned off into a separate container. Other methods of extracting essential oils include expression, or squeezing, which is limited to citrus oils; *enfleurage*, in which flower petals are placed on a bed of purified fat that soaks up the essential oils; and maceration, in which the plant parts are crushed and covered with warm vegetable oil that absorbs the essential oils.

There are several different techniques for the use of essential oils in aromatherapy:

- **Massage:** This is the technique that most people associate with aromatherapy. For use in massage, essential oils are mixed with a vegetable carrier oil, usually wheatgerm, avocado, olive, safflower, grape-seed, or soya bean oil. A ratio that is commonly recommended is 2.5–5% essential oil to 95–97.5% carrier oil.
- **Full-body baths:** In this technique, the essential oil is added to a tubful of warm (but not hot) water as the water is running. The dosage of essential oil is usually 5–10 drops per bath.
- **Hand or foot baths:** These are often recommended to treat arthritis or skin disorders of the hands or feet as well as sore muscles. The hands or feet are soaked for 10–15 minutes in a basin of warm water to which 5–7 drops of essential oil have been added.
- **Inhalations:** This technique is used to treat sinus problems or such nasal allergies as hay fever. Two cups of water are brought to a boil and then allowed to cool for 5–10 minutes. Two to five drops of essential oil are added to the steaming water, and the person leans over the container and inhales the fragrant vapors for 5–10 minutes.
- **Diffusion:** This technique requires the use of a special nebulizer to disperse microscopic droplets of essential oil into the air, or a clay diffuser that allows the oil to evaporate into the air when it is warmed by a small votive candle or electric bulb. Diffusion is recommended for treating emotional upsets.

• **Compresses:** These are made by soaking four or five layers of cotton cloth in a solution of warm water and essential oil, wringing out the cloth so that it is moist but not dripping, and applying it to the affected part of the body. The compress is then covered with a layer of plastic wrap, followed by a pre-warmed towel, and kept in place for one or two hours. Aromatherapy compresses are used to treat wounds, sprains, bruises, sore muscles, menstrual cramps, and respiratory congestion.

- **Aromatic salves:** Salves are made by melting together 1 1/4 cup of vegetable oil and 1 oz of beeswax in a double boiler over medium heat, and adding the desired combination of essential oils.
- **Internal use:** Some essential oils such as oil of peppermint and cinnamon can be used to make teas or mouthwashes, or mixed with a glass of honey and water. The dose depends on the oil, but a physician, naturopathist, or other practitioner should be consulted.

### Preparation

Aromatherapists recommend the use of fresh oils and oil mixtures in the techniques described above. Both essential oils and vegetable carrier oils deteriorate over time and should not be kept longer than one or two months; thus, it is best to mix only small quantities of massage oils or salves at any one time.

No special preparation for an aromatherapy treatment is required on the patient's part.

### Aftercare

Aromatherapy does not require any particular form of aftercare, although many patients like to rest quietly for a few minutes after a bath or massage with essential oils.

### Risks

There are no risks involved in external aromatherapy when essential oils are diluted as recommended. Not all essential oils, however, should be taken internally. Benzoin and other essential oils derived from tree resins should not be used internally.

A few cases have been reported of dissociative episodes triggered by fragrances associated with traumatic experiences. Patients in treatment for **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD) or any of the **dissociative disorders** should consult their therapist before they use aromatherapy.

## KEY TERMS

**Carrier**—A vegetable oil such as safflower, olive, grapeseed, or wheatgerm oil used to dilute essential oils for massage.

**Enfleurage**—A technique for extracting essential oils from flower petals by placing them on a layer of purified fat.

**Essential oil**—The product of special ducts or cells in the tissues of aromatic plants (or the sap of certain trees) that gives the plant its characteristic aroma and therapeutic properties. Essential oils are sometimes called volatile oils because they evaporate readily at room temperature.

**Limbic system**—A group of structures in the brain that includes the amygdala, hippocampus, olfactory bulbs, and hypothalamus. The limbic system is associated with homeostasis and the regulation and arousal of emotions.

**Maceration**—A technique for extracting essential oils from plant leaves and stems by crushing the plant parts and soaking them in warm vegetable oil.

**Olfactory nerve**—The cranial nerve that regulates the sense of smell.

### Normal results

Normal results from aromatherapy include a sense of relaxation, relief from tension, and improved well-being.

### Abnormal results

Abnormal results include skin irritations or other allergic reactions to essential oils, and the development of traumatic memories associated with specific smells.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Pelletier, Kenneth R., M.D. *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.  
Price, Shirley. *Practical Aromatherapy*. Second edition, revised. London, UK: Thorsons, 1994.

#### PERIODICALS

- Buckle, J. "The Role of Aromatherapy in Nursing Care." *Nursing Clinics of North America* 36 (March 2001): 57-72.  
Ilmberger, I., E. Heuberger, C. Mahrhofer, and others. "The Influence of Essential Oils on Human Attention: Alertness." *Chemistry and the Senses* 3 (March 2001): 239-245.

Simpson, N., and K. Roman. "Complementary Medicine Use in Children: Extent and Reasons." *British Journal of General Practice* 51 (November 2001): 914-916.

Smallwood, J., R. Brown, F. Coulter, and others. "Aromatherapy and Behaviour Disturbances in Dementia: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 16 (October 2001): 1010-1013.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association of Naturopathic Physicians. 601 Valley Street, Suite 105, Seattle, WA 98109. Telephone: (206) 298-0126. <[www.naturopathic.org](http://www.naturopathic.org)>.  
International Aromatherapy and Herb Association. 3541 West Acapulco Lane. Phoenix, AZ 85053-4625. Telephone: (602) 938-4439. <[www.aztec.asu.edu/iah](http://www.aztec.asu.edu/iah)>.  
National Association for Holistic Aromatherapy (NAHA). 4509 Interlake Avenue North, #233, Seattle, WA 98103-6773. Telephone: (888) ASK-NAHA or (206) 547-2164. <[www.naha.org](http://www.naha.org)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

Art therapy see **Creative therapies**

Artane see **Trihexyphenidyl**

Asendin see **Amoxapine**

## Asperger's disorder

### Definition

Asperger's disorder, which is also called Asperger's syndrome (AS) or autistic psychopathy, belongs to a group of childhood disorders known as **pervasive developmental disorders** (PDDs) or autistic spectrum disorders. The essential features of Asperger's disorder are severe social interaction impairment and restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior and activities. It is similar to **autism**, but children with AS do not have the same difficulties in acquiring language that children with autism have.

In the mental health professional's diagnostic handbook, the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders** fourth edition text revised, or *DSM-IV-TR*, Asperger's disorder is classified as a developmental disorder of childhood.

### Description

AS was first described by Hans Asperger, an Austrian **psychiatrist**, in 1944. Asperger's work was unavailable in English before the mid-1970s; as a result, AS was often unrecognized in English-speaking countries until the late 1980s. Before *DSM-IV*

(published in 1994) there was no officially agreed-upon definition of AS. In the words of ICD-10, the European equivalent of the *DSM-IV*, AS is “a disorder of uncertain nosological validity.” (Nosological refers to the classification of diseases.) There are three major reasons for this lack of clarity: differences between the diagnostic criteria used in Europe and those used in the United States; the fact that some of the diagnostic criteria depend on the observer’s interpretation rather than objective measurements; and the fact that the clinical picture of AS changes as the child grows older.

Asperger’s disorder is one of the milder pervasive developmental disorders. Children with AS learn to talk at the usual age and often have above-average verbal skills. They have normal or above-normal intelligence and the ability to feed or dress themselves and take care of their other daily needs. The distinguishing features of AS are problems with social interaction, particularly reciprocating and empathizing with the feelings of others; difficulties with nonverbal communication (such as facial expressions); peculiar speech habits that include repeated words or phrases and a flat, emotionless vocal tone; an apparent lack of “common sense”; a fascination with obscure or limited subjects (for example, the parts of a clock or small machine, railroad schedules, astronomical data, etc.) often to the exclusion of other interests; clumsy and awkward physical movements; and odd or eccentric behaviors (hand wringing or finger flapping; swaying or other repetitious whole-body movements; watching spinning objects for long periods of time).

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is some indication that AS runs in families, particularly in families with histories of **depression** and **bipolar disorder**. Asperger noted that his initial group of patients had fathers with AS symptoms. Knowledge of the genetic profile of the disorder, however, is quite limited as of 2002.

In addition, about 50% of AS patients have a history of oxygen deprivation during the birth process, which has led to the hypothesis that the disorder is caused by damage to **brain** tissue before or during childbirth. Another cause that has been suggested is an organic defect in the functioning of the brain.

As of 2002, there is no known connection between Asperger’s disorder and childhood trauma, abuse or **neglect**.

### Symptoms

In young children, the symptoms of AS typically include problems picking up social cues and understanding the basics of interacting with other children. The child may want friendships but find him- or herself unable to make friends.

Most children with AS are diagnosed during the elementary school years because the symptoms of the disorder become more apparent at this point. They include:

- Poor pragmatic language skills. This phrase means that the child does not use the right tone or volume of voice for a specific context, and does not understand that using humorous or slang expressions also depends on social context.
- Problems with hand-eye coordination and other visual skills.
- Problems making eye contact with others.
- Learning difficulties, which may range from mild to severe.
- Tendency to become absorbed in a particular topic and not know when others are bored with conversation about it. At this stage in their education, children with AS are likely to be labeled as “nerds.”
- Repetitive behaviors. These include such behaviors as counting a group of coins or marbles over and over; reciting the same song or poem several times; buttoning and unbuttoning a jacket repeatedly; etc.

Adolescence is one of the most painful periods of life for young people with AS, because social interactions are more complex in this age group and require more subtle social skills. Some boys with AS become frustrated trying to relate to their peers and may become aggressive. Both boys and girls with the disorder are often quite naive for their age and easily manipulated by “street-wise” classmates. They are also more vulnerable than most youngsters to peer pressure.

Little research has been done regarding adults with AS. Some have serious difficulties with social and occupational functioning, but others are able to finish their schooling, join the workforce, and marry and have families.

## Demographics

Although the incidence of AS has been variously estimated between 0.024% and 0.36% of the general population in North America and northern Europe, further research is required to determine its true rate of occurrence—especially because the diagnostic criteria have been defined so recently. In addition, no research

regarding the incidence of AS has been done on the populations of developing countries, and nothing is known about the incidence of the disorder in different racial or ethnic groups.

With regard to gender differences, AS appears to be much more common in boys. Dr. Asperger's first patients were all boys, but girls have been diagnosed with AS since the 1980s. One Swedish study found the male/female ratio to be 4:1; however, the World Health Organization's ICD-10 classification gives the male to female ratio as 8 to 1.

## Diagnosis

As of early 2002, there are no blood tests or brain scans that can be used to diagnose AS. Until *DSM-IV* (1994), there was no "official" list of symptoms for the disorder, which made its **diagnosis** both difficult and inexact. Although most children with AS are diagnosed between five and nine years of age, many are not diagnosed until adulthood. Misdiagnoses are common; AS has been confused with such other neurological disorders as Tourette's syndrome, or with attention-deficit disorder (ADD), **oppositional defiant disorder** (ODD), or **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD). Some researchers think that AS may overlap with some types of learning disability, such as the nonverbal learning disability (NLD) syndrome identified in 1989.

The inclusion of AS as a separate diagnostic category in *DSM-IV* was justified on the basis of a large international field trial of over a thousand children and adolescents. Nevertheless, the diagnosis of AS is also complicated by confusion with such other diagnostic categories as "high-functioning (IQ higher than 70) autism" or HFA, and "schizoid personality disorder of childhood." Unlike **schizoid personality disorder** of childhood, AS is not an unchanging set of personality traits—AS has a developmental dimension. AS is distinguished from HFA by the following characteristics:

- later onset of symptoms (usually around three years of age).
- early development of grammatical speech; the AS child's verbal IQ (scores on verbal sections of standardized intelligence tests) is usually higher than performance IQ (how well the child performs in school). The reverse is usually true for autistic children.
- less severe deficiencies in social and communication skills.
- presence of intense interest in one or two topics.
- physical clumsiness and lack of coordination

- family is more likely to have a history of the disorder.
- lower frequency of neurological disorders.
- more positive outcome in later life.

## *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for Asperger's disorder

The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies the following diagnostic criteria for AS:

- The child's social interactions are impaired in at least two of the following ways: markedly limited use of nonverbal communication (facial expressions, for example); lack of age-appropriate peer relationships; failure to share enjoyment, interests, or accomplishment with others; lack of reciprocity (turn-taking) in social interactions.
- The child's behavior, interests, and activities are characterized by repetitive or rigid patterns, such as an abnormal preoccupation with one or two topics, or with parts of objects; repetitive physical movements; or rigid insistence on certain routines and rituals.
- The patient's social, occupational, or educational functioning is significantly impaired.
- The child has normal age-appropriate language skills.
- The child has normal age-appropriate cognitive skills, self-help abilities, and curiosity about the environment.
- The child does not meet criteria for another specific PDD or schizophrenia.

To establish the diagnosis, the child psychiatrist or **psychologist** would observe the child, and would interview parents, possibly teachers, and the affected child (depending on the child's age), and would gather a comprehensive medical and social history.

## Other diagnostic scales and checklists

Other instruments that have been used to identify children with AS include Gillberg's criteria, a six-item list compiled by a Swedish researcher that specifies problems in social interaction, a preoccupying narrow interest, forcing routines and interests on the self or others, speech and language problems, nonverbal communication problems, and physical clumsiness; and the Australian Scale for Asperger's Syndrome, a detailed multi-item questionnaire developed in 1996.

## Brain imaging findings

As of 2002, only a few structural abnormalities of the brain have been linked to AS. Findings include abnormally large folds in the brain tissue in the left

frontal region, abnormally small folds in the operculum (a lid-like structure composed of portions of three adjoining brain lobes), and damage to the left temporal lobe (a part of the brain containing a sensory area associated with hearing). The first single photon emission tomography (SPECT) study of an AS patient found a lower-than-normal supply of blood to the left parietal area of the brain, an area associated with bodily sensations. Brain **imaging studies** on a larger sample of AS patients is the next stage of research.

### Treatments

There is no cure for AS and no prescribed treatment regimen for all AS patients. Specific treatments are based on the individual's symptom pattern.

#### Medications

Many children with AS do not require any medication. For those who do, the drugs that are recommended most often include psychostimulants (**methylphenidate**, **pemoline**), **clonidine**, or one of the tricyclic **antidepressants** (TCAs) for hyperactivity or inattention; **beta blockers**, neuroleptics (antipsychotic medications), or lithium (**lithium carbonate**) for anger or aggression; **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRIs) or TCAs for rituals (repetitive behaviors) and preoccupations; and SSRIs or TCAs for **anxiety** symptoms. One alternative herbal remedy that has been tried with AS patients is **St. John's wort**.

#### Psychotherapy

AS patients often benefit from individual **psychotherapy**, particularly during adolescence, in order to cope with depression and other painful feelings related to their social difficulties. Many children with AS are also helped by **group therapy**, which brings them together with others facing the same challenges. There are therapy groups for parents as well.

Therapists who are experienced in treating children with Asperger's disorder have found that the child should be allowed to proceed slowly in forming an emotional bond with the therapist. Too much emotional intensity at the beginning may be more than the child can handle. Behavioral approaches seem to work best with these children. **Play therapy** can be helpful in teaching the child to recognize social cues as well as lowering the level of emotional tension.

Adults with AS are most likely to benefit from individual therapy using a cognitive-behavioral approach, although many also attend group therapy. Some adults have been helped by working with speech

therapists on their pragmatic language skills. A relatively new approach called behavioral coaching has been used to help adults with AS learn to organize and set priorities for their daily activities.

#### Educational considerations

Most AS patients have normal or above-normal intelligence, and are able to complete their education up through the graduate or professional school level. Many are unusually skilled in music or good in subjects requiring rote memorization. On the other hand, the verbal skills of children with AS frequently cause difficulties with teachers, who may not understand why these "bright" children have social and communication problems. Some AS children are dyslexic; others have difficulty with writing or mathematics. In some cases, AS children have been mistakenly put in special programs either for children with much lower levels of functioning, or for children with conduct disorders. AS children do best in structured learning situations in which they learn problem-solving and social skills as well as academic subjects. They frequently need protection from the teasing and **bullying** of other children, and often become hypersensitive to criticism by their teenage years. One approach that has been found helpful at the high-school level is to pair the adolescent with AS with a slightly older teenager who can serve as a mentor. The mentor can "clue in" the younger adolescent about the slang, dress code, cliques, and other "facts of life" at the local high school.

#### Employment

Adults with AS are productively employed in a wide variety of fields, including the learned professions. They do best, however, in jobs with regular routines or occupations that allow them to work in isolation. In large companies, employers or supervisors and workplace colleagues may need some information about AS in order to understand the new employee's "eccentricities."

#### Prognosis

AS is a lifelong but stable condition. The prognosis for children with AS is generally good as far as intellectual development is concerned, although few school districts as of 2002 are equipped to meet the special social needs of this group of children. Adults with AS appear to be at greater risk of depression than the general population. In addition, some researchers believe that people with AS have an increased risk of a psychotic episode (a period of

## KEY TERMS

**Autistic psychopathy**—Hans Asperger's original name for the condition now known as Asperger's disorder. It is still used occasionally as a synonym for the disorder.

**DSM**—Abbreviation for the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, a handbook for mental health professionals that includes lists of symptoms that indicate specific diagnoses. The text is periodically revised, and the latest version was published in 2000 and is called *DSM-IV-TR*, for Fourth Edition, Text Revised.

**Gillberg's criteria**—A six-item checklist for AS developed by Christopher Gillberg, a Swedish researcher. It is widely used in Europe as a diagnostic tool.

**High-functioning autism (HFA)**—A subcategory of autistic disorder consisting of children diagnosed with IQs of 70 or higher. Children with AS are often misdiagnosed as having HFA.

**Nonverbal learning disability (NLD)**—A learning disability syndrome identified in 1989 that may overlap with some of the symptoms of AS.

**Pervasive developmental disorders (PDDs)**—A category of childhood disorders that includes Asperger's syndrome and Rett's disorder. The PDDs are sometimes referred to collectively as autistic spectrum disorders.

**Semantic-pragmatic disorder**—A term that refers to the difficulty that children with AS and some forms of autism have with pragmatic language skills. Pragmatic language skills include knowing the proper tone of voice for a given context, using humor appropriately, making eye contact with a conversation partner, maintaining the appropriate volume of one's voice, etc.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

“Psychiatric Conditions in Childhood and Adolescence.”

Section 19, Chapter 274. In *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, M.D., and Robert Berkow, M.D. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.

Thoene, Jess G., ed. *Physicians' Guide to Rare Diseases*.

Montvale, NJ: Dowden Publishing Company, 1995.

World Health Organization (WHO). *The ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural Disorders*. Geneva: WHO, 1992.

### PERIODICALS

Bishop, D. V. M. “Autism, Asperger's Syndrome & Semantic-Pragmatic Disorder: Where Are the Boundaries?” *British Journal of Disorders of Communication* 24 (1989): 107-121.

Gillberg, C. “The Neurobiology of Infantile Autism.” *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry* 29 (1988): 257-266.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Autism Research Institute. 4182 Adams Avenue, San Diego, CA 92116.

Families of Adults Afflicted with Asperger's Syndrome (FAAAS). P.O. Box 514, Centerville, MA 02632. <[www.faaas.org](http://www.faaas.org)>.

National Association of Rare Disorders (NORD). P.O. Box 8923, New Fairfield, CT 06812-8923. Telephone: (800) 999-NORD or (203) 746-6518.

Yale-LDA Social Learning Disabilities Project. Yale Child Study Center, New Haven, CT. The Project is looking for study subjects with PDDs between the ages of 8 and 24, including AS patients. Contact person: Sanno Zack at (203) 785-3488 or [Sanno.Zack@yale.edu](mailto:Sanno.Zack@yale.edu). <[www.info.med.Yale.edu/chldstdy/autism](http://www.info.med.Yale.edu/chldstdy/autism)>.

### OTHER

American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP). “Asperger's Disorder.” AACAP Facts For Families Pamphlet #69. Washington, DC: American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, 1999.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

time during which the affected person loses touch with reality) in adolescence or adult life.

## Prevention

Effective prevention of Asperger's disorder awaits further genetic mapping together with ongoing research in the structures and functioning of the brain. The only practical preventive strategy as of 2002 is better protection of the fetus against oxygen deprivation during childbirth.

## Assertive community treatment

### Definition

Assertive community treatment (ACT) combines multiple types of help—including medication, counseling, education, legal and financial support—provided

by community-based, mobile teams to people with severe mental illnesses.

### Purpose

ACT is aimed at older teenagers and adults with a severe mental illness that greatly impacts their ability to care for themselves and function at home and at work. The intensive program is designed to help those with serious, long-term mental illness including, but not limited to, **schizophrenia**. ACT combines medication, counseling, rehabilitation, education, legal and financial support, and family assistance.

### Description

Arnold Marx, MD, Leonard Stein, MD, and Mary Ann Test, Ph.D., pioneered the ACT program in the late 1960s in Madison, Wisconsin, as an alternative to admission to a psychiatric institution. While working at Mendota State Hospital, the trio noticed that patients who got better in the hospital often became sick again when reentering the community. They proposed that a round-the-clock program outside the hospital could provide the same ongoing support and therapy. In 1972, they put their theory to the test and formally launched ACT. Today, the program is offered in certain U.S. states and throughout Canada and England.

Because ACT provides care outside of the doctor's office, usually in the comfort of the patient's home, the community-based program is sometimes referred to as a hospital without walls. The cornerstone of each ACT program is a diverse team of nearly a dozen different health care specialists, including doctors, nurses, and counselors. The program provides support and care 24 hours a day, seven days a week, all year long.

Project leaders, called case managers, usually have fewer than 10 patients, which allows for highly individualized care. A patient is considered a client of the ACT team. ACT is different from other **community mental health** center (CMHC) services. The ACT team comes to the client, while CMHC patients must go to a clinic. Those who participate in ACT receive more personalized attention, and may be in contact with the ACT team daily, as opposed to weekly or monthly. The ACT team provides all necessary care, including **substance abuse** treatment and rehabilitation. CMHC services often refer clients to an outside specialist.

### Key features

ACT has three key features: treatment, rehabilitation, and support services.

- Treatment may involve antipsychotic and antidepressant medicines, substance abuse therapy, coun-

seling, and possible admission to a hospital for closer monitoring.

- The rehabilitation arm of the program helps the patient find volunteer work and paid employment and provides support for continuing education. Specialists teach patients new behaviors, such as how to structure schedules and perform daily activities.
- The support services advise patients on how to find legal and financial support, housing, transportation, and other services. Family members are taught how to cope with their loved one's illness and are provided with education materials. According to the Schizophrenia Patient Outcomes Research Team (PORT) study, funded by the National Institute of Mental Health and the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, fewer than one in 10 families of persons with schizophrenia receives such education and support.

ACT may also be referred to as the Program of Assertive Community Treatment or PACT. Many organizations use the terms interchangeably. Other names for ACT include community support programs (CSP) and mobile treatment teams (MTT).

### Goals

ACT may benefit those with schizophrenia, **schizoaffective disorder**, and **bipolar disorder**. PORT recommends ACT as an effective treatment for schizophrenia and persons with serious mental illness.

ACT is targeted to persons with very severe mental illness that has led to repeated hospital and emergency room visits, **homelessness**, or jail time. According to the National Jail Association, about 700,000 persons with mental illness are incarcerated every year. ACT programs have helped such criminal offenders meet their legal obligations while providing medical support and rehabilitation services.

The ACT program has several goals:

- relieve or cure symptoms of the disorder.
- reduce or prevent repeated, severe episodes associated with the disorder.
- enhance the quality of life.
- improve functioning at work and in social settings.
- encourage independence and teach necessary self-care skills.
- reduce the burden of care on a patient's family by providing education and support.

### Effectiveness

Studies have shown that ACT and similar programs greatly reduce the number of hospital stays among those with severe mental illness. One study

## KEY TERMS

- Antidepressant**—A drug used to treat depression.
- Antipsychotic**—A drug used to treat serious mental disorders that cause hallucinations or delusions.
- Bipolar disorder**—A mental illness marked by alternating periods of excitement and depression. Also called manic-depressive disorder.
- Delusion**—A false belief that persists.
- Hallucination**—Seeing or hearing something that does not really exist.
- Substance abuse**—Overuse of a drug or alcohol, which leads to addiction.

found that ACT not only reduced overall hospital admissions, it also decreased the length of the hospital stays. ACT has been shown to improve patient functioning and encourage patients to stick to their treatment routines. The benefits are reported to be particularly marked among those with a coexisting mental disorder and substance abuse problem, perhaps because such patients are at higher risk of **hospitalization** and complications.

Compared to those who are admitted to an institution, ACT clients have fewer symptoms, more positive social interactions, and spend less time unemployed. Experts say anywhere between 20–40% of people with the most severe and persistent mental illnesses would benefit from ACT.

### Availability

There are a limited number of ACT teams in the United States. As of January 2007, only Delaware, Idaho, Missouri, Rhode Island, Texas, and Wisconsin offered statewide programs. However, 19 other states offered test, or pilot, programs.

Because there are so many specialists on an ACT team, it can be costly. Some argue that the expense is justified, particularly when compared to the cost of an extended hospital stay. According to the National Alliance on Mental Illness, ACT costs each participant between \$9,000 and \$14,000 a year, while hospital costs for an extended stay can exceed \$100,000.

### Resources

#### ORGANIZATIONS

Assertive Community Treatment Association. Suite 102, 810 E. Grand River Avenue, Brighton, MI 48116. Telephone: (810) 227-1859. <<http://www.actassociation.org>>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness. 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (703) 524-7600. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Mental Health Information Center. P.O. Box 42557, Washington, DC 20015. Telephone: (800) 789-2647. <<http://mentalhealth.samhsa.gov>>.

Kelli Miller Stacy

## Assertiveness training

### Definition

Assertiveness training is a form of behavior therapy designed to help people stand up for themselves—to empower themselves, in more contemporary terms. Assertiveness is a response that seeks to maintain an appropriate balance between passivity and aggression. Assertive responses promote fairness and equality in human interactions, based on a positive sense of respect for self and others.

Assertiveness training has a decades-long history in mental health and personal growth groups, going back to the women's movement of the 1970s. The approach was introduced to encourage women to stand up for themselves appropriately in their interactions with others, particularly as they moved into graduate education and the workplace in greater numbers. The original association of assertiveness training with the women's movement in the United States grew out of the discovery of many women in the movement that they were hampered by their inability to be assertive. Today, assertiveness training is used as part of communication training in settings as diverse as schools, corporate boardrooms, and psychiatric hospitals, for programs as varied as **substance abuse** treatment, **social skills training**, vocational programs, and responding to harassment.

### Purpose

The purpose of assertiveness training is to teach persons appropriate strategies for identifying and acting on their desires, needs, and opinions while remaining respectful of others. This form of training is tailored to the needs of specific participants and the situations they find particularly challenging. Assertiveness training is a broad approach that can be applied to many different personal, academic, health care, and work situations.

Learning to communicate in a clear and honest fashion usually improves relationships within one's



Recruits at a police training school act out a scenario. Role play is one form of assertiveness training. (Homer Sykes/Alamy)

life. Women in particular have often been taught to hide their real feelings and preferences, and to try to get their way by manipulation or other indirect means. Specific areas of **intervention** and change in assertiveness training include conflict resolution, realistic goal-setting, and **stress** management. In addition to emotional and psychological benefits, taking a more active approach to self-determination has been shown to have positive outcomes in many personal choices related to health, including being assertive in risky sexual situations; abstaining from using drugs or alcohol; and assuming responsibility for self-care if one has a chronic illness like diabetes or cancer.

### Precautions

There are a few precautions with assertiveness training. One potential caution would be to remain within assertive responses, rather than become aggressive in standing up for oneself. Some participants in assertiveness training programs who are just learning the techniques of appropriate assertiveness may “overdo” their new behaviors and come across as aggressive rather than assertive. Such overcompensa-

tion would most likely disappear with continued practice of the techniques.

One additional precaution about assertiveness training is that it should not be regarded as the equivalent of martial arts training or similar physical self-defense techniques. It is important to distinguish between contexts or situations in which verbal assertiveness is appropriate and useful, and those in which it is irrelevant. In some situations, a person’s decision to leave the situation or seek help because they sense danger is preferable to an encounter with a criminal.

### Description

Assertiveness training is often included within other programs, but “stand-alone” programs in self-assertion are often given in women’s centers or college counseling centers. Corporate programs for new personnel sometimes offer assertiveness training as part of communication or teamwork groups, or as part of a program on sexual harassment.

Assertiveness training typically begins with an information-gathering exercise in which participants are asked to think about and list the areas in their life

in which they have difficulty asserting themselves. Very often they will notice specific situations or patterns of behavior that they want to focus on during the course. The next stage in assertive training is usually role-plays designed to help participants practice clearer and more direct forms of communicating with others. The role-plays allow for practice and repetition of the new techniques, helping each person learn assertive responses by acting on them. Feedback is provided to improve the response, and the role-play is repeated. Eventually, each person is asked to practice assertive techniques in everyday life, outside the training setting. Role-plays usually incorporate specific problems for individual participants, such as difficulty speaking up to an overbearing boss; setting limits to intrusive friends; or stating a clear preference about dinner to one's spouse. Role-plays often include examples of aggressive and passive responses, in addition to the assertive responses, to help participants distinguish between these extremes as they learn a new set of behaviors.

Assertiveness training promotes the use of "I" statements as a way to help individuals express their feelings and reactions to others. A commonly used model of an "I" statement is "when you \_\_\_\_\_, I feel \_\_\_\_\_", to help the participant describe what they see the other person as doing, and how they feel about that action. "I" statements are often contrasted with "you" statements, which are usually not received well by others. For example, "When you are two hours late getting home from work, I feel both anxious and angry," is a less accusing communication than "You are a selfish and inconsiderate jerk for not telling me you would be two hours late." Prompts are often used to help participants learn new communication styles. This approach helps participants learn new ways of expressing themselves as well as how it feels to be assertive.

Learning specific techniques and perspectives, such as self-observation skills, awareness of personal preferences and assuming personal responsibility are important components of the assertiveness training process. Role-play and practice help with self-observation, while making lists can be a helpful technique for exploring personal preferences for those who may not have a good sense of their own needs and desires. Participants may be asked to list anything from their ten favorite movies or pieces of music to their favorite foods, places they would like to visit, subjects that interest them, and so on.

## Preparation

Preparation for assertiveness training varies from person to person. For some participants, no prepara-

tion is needed before practicing the techniques; for others, however, individual counseling or therapy may help prepare the individual for assertiveness training. For participants who may be more shy and feel uncomfortable saying "no" or speaking up for themselves, a brief course of individual therapy will help to prepare them psychologically and emotionally to use assertive techniques.

## Aftercare

Aftercare can involve ongoing supportive therapy, again based on the individual's level of comfort in using the assertive techniques. For those who are comfortable using the techniques on their own, a supportive social network or occasional participation in a support group will be enough to help maintain the new behavioral patterns. The ultimate goal is for each participant to self-monitor effectively his or her use of assertive techniques on an ongoing basis.

## Risks

There are minimal risks associated with assertiveness training. Personal relationships may be affected if those around the participant have difficulty accepting the changes in their friend or family member. This risk, however, is no greater than that associated with any other life change.

Another potential risk is that of overcompensating in the early stages of training by being too aggressive. With appropriate feedback, participants can usually learn to modify and improve their responses.

People who are very shy or self-conscious, or who were harshly treated as children, may also experience **anxiety** during the training as they work toward speaking up and otherwise changing their behaviors. The anxiety may be uncomfortable, but should decrease as the person becomes more comfortable with the techniques and receives encouragement from others in the program.

## Normal results

An enhanced sense of well-being and more positive self-esteem are typical results from assertiveness training. Many participants report that they feel better about themselves and more capable of handling the stresses of daily life. In addition, people who have participated in assertiveness training have a better sense of boundaries, and are able to set appropriate and healthy limits with others. Being able to set appropriate limits (such as saying "no") helps people to avoid feeling victimized by others.

## KEY TERMS

**Assertive**—Confidently self-assured; able to express oneself constructively and directly.

**Overcompensation**—An attempt to overcome or correct a behavior by going too far in the opposite direction.

**Role-playing**—A technique used in assertiveness training and other forms of therapy in which participants act out roles relevant to real-life situations in order to change their attitudes and behaviors.

A healthy sense of self-determination and respect for others is the ultimate outcome of assertiveness training. Such a balance helps each person work better with others, and make appropriate decisions for themselves.

### Abnormal results

Unusual results may include becoming too aggressive in setting boundaries, as if the individual is overcompensating. With appropriate training, role-play, and feedback, this response can be re-learned. Alternatively, for very shy individuals, a heightened sense of anxiety may be experienced when using the techniques initially. The nervousness or anxiety is usually due to the individual's concern about others' reactions to their assertive responses. Over time, the anxiety will usually decrease.

*See also* Behavior modification; Gender issues in mental health.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Alberti, R., and M. Emmons. *Your Perfect Right: Assertiveness and Equality in Your Life and Relationships*. 8th edition. Atascadero, CA: Impact Publishers, Inc., 2001.  
 Butler, Pamela E., Ph.D. *Self-Assertion for Women*. Second edition, revised. New York: HarperCollins, 1992.  
 de Becker, Gavin. *The Gift of Fear: Survival Signals That Protect Us from Violence*. New York: Little, Brown, and Company, 1998.  
 Shaevitz, Marjorie Hansen. *The Confident Woman: Learn the Rules of the Game*. New York: Harmony Books, 1999.  
 Smith, M. *When I Say No, I Feel Guilty*. Bantam, 1975.

#### PERIODICALS

- Weinhardt, L. S., M. P. Carey, K. B. Carey, and R. N. Verdecias. "Increasing assertiveness skills to reduce HIV risk among women living with a severe and persistent mental illness." *Journal of Consulting & Clinical Psychology* Vol. 66, no. 4 (Aug. 1998): 680-684.

Deanna Pledge, Ph.D.

## Assessment and diagnosis

### Definition

Psychological assessment is the process of gathering and evaluating data about a patient's symptoms, mental state, behaviors, and background. Using these data, a **diagnosis** of the disease or disorder is made.

### Purpose

The purpose of psychological assessment is to reduce and organize the data concerning a patient so that a diagnosis and recommendation for a course of treatment can be made. The psychological assessment (also called the biopsychosocial or psychiatric assessment) gathers information to diagnose any mental disorder that the person may have; it is the first step in treating a diagnosed disorder. The process typically starts with a chief complaint or presenting problem—this is usually what prompts the person to seek help. A complete psychological assessment should include:

- biopsychosocial history
- neurological assessment
- psychological testing (if applicable)
- physical examination (if required by a psychiatrist)
- brain imaging (if necessary)

Once complete, the assessment will help establish either a tentative or definitive diagnosis. With this information, the clinician can inform the patient of the results, and treatment can begin.

### Precautions

Accurate information gathering and objective notes are essential for psychological assessment. However, these can be difficult to obtain if the person is not willing to disclose all necessary information, either out of embarrassment or through **denial** that symptoms of a mental problem even exist.

### Description

The American Psychological Association Code of Ethics states that a psychologist's assessments must be based on evidence "sufficient to substantiate their findings," usually including a direct examination of the patient. If an examination of the patient is not possible, the **psychologist** must note this explicitly in his or her conclusions or recommendations.

The psychological assessment, an extremely effective and accepted diagnostic tool, is a structured interview that has several parts:

- identifying information
- chief complaint (presenting problem)
- history of present illness
- past medical and psychological history
- personal history
- family history
- substance abuse history
- mental status examination (MSE)

Before beginning, the clinician should introduce himself or herself and attempt to make the person comfortable in a professional setting. A common fluency in language or competent translator is essential for information gathering and questioning.

### *Identifying information*

These are general and emotionally neutral questions that usually include name, age, occupation, and marital status.

### *Chief complaint (presenting problem)*

This consists of questions such as "Why are you seeking psychological help today?" that reveal past mental disorders and/or the symptoms that made the person seek **psychotherapy**. The patient's responses can also help the clinician ask pertinent questions during other parts of the interview, and can help clarify the presence of symptoms.

### *History of present illness*

The patient describes the onset of signs and symptoms that comprise the current mental problem.

### *Past medical and psychological history*

Because medical problems—including thyroid disease, Parkinson's disease, head trauma, and brain infections—can cause psychological symptoms, a thorough medical history must be taken. The interviewer also asks about previous psychological/psychiatric treatment, including **hospitalization**, outpatient or substance **abuse** treatment, and medication prescribed for mental disorders. The treatment's duration, effectiveness, and outcome is also noted.

### *Personal history*

This portion of the assessment provides information on the patient's entire life, beginning with prenatal development, including maternal abortions, nutrition, and drug use during pregnancy; birth trauma; and birth order. The patient's life is then discussed in distinct phases:

**EARLY CHILDHOOD (INFANCY–THREE YEARS).** Questions include information about temperament, walking, talking, toilet training, nutrition and feeding, family relationships, behavioral problems, hospitalization, and separation from early childhood caregivers.

**MIDDLE CHILDHOOD (THREE–11 YEARS).** Pertinent information will be gathered concerning learning, relationship with peers and family, behavioral problems, and general personality development.

**ADOLESCENCE (12–18 YEARS).** Information typically includes school history, behavioral problems, and sexual development.

**ADULTHOOD.** This section details the patient's education, sexual history, relationships and/or marriages, peer relationships, occupation, and current circumstances.

### *Family history*

Family history is crucially important since many mental disorders can be inherited genetically. Additionally, family interactions may affect the patient's symptoms and disorder.

### *Substance use history*

This portion of the psychological assessment details information on the patient's use of both illicit drugs (opiates, **cocaine**, alcohol, marijuana, hallucinogens, and depressants) and legally prescribed medications, as well as **nicotine** and caffeine. Questions usually focus on age of first use, age of last use, period of heaviest use, usage within the past 30 days, frequency, quantity, and route of usage. Tolerance and dependence, if present, are noted, as are the patient's treatment history, any medical complications (e.g., AIDS), and legal problems associated with usage (e.g., driving or operating a vehicle or machine while impaired).

### *Mental Status Examination (MSE)*

This assesses the patient's mental state, and begins by evaluating:

- Appearance: hygiene, general appearance, grooming, and attire.
- Behavior: abnormal movements, hyperactivity and eye contact with the interviewer.
- Speech: fluency, rate, clarity, and tone, all of which may indicate the patient's mental state. A fast-talking person, for example, may be anxious. Speech can also reveal intoxication or impairment as well as problems in the mouth (e.g., dentures, cleft palate) or speech impairment.

## KEY TERMS

**Affect**—The expression of emotion displayed to others through facial expressions, hand gestures, tone of voice, etc. Types of affect include flat (inanimate, no expression), blunted (minimally responsive), inappropriate (incongruous expressions of emotion relative to the content of a conversation), and labile (sudden and abrupt changes in type and intensity of emotion).

**Assessment**—In the context of psychological assessment (a structured interview), assessment is information-gathering to diagnose a mental disorder.

**Biopsychosocial history**—A history of significant past and current experiences that influence client behaviors, including medical, educational, employment, and interpersonal experiences. Alcohol or drug use and involvement with the legal system are also assessed in a biopsychosocial history.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact. A patient may be convinced, for example, that someone is trying to poison him or

her, or that he or she has a fatal illness despite evidence to the contrary.

**Dependence**—The adaptation of neurons and other physical processes to the use of a drug, followed by withdrawal symptoms when the drug is removed; physiological and/or psychological addiction.

**Hallucinations**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Phobia**—Irrational fear of places, things, or situations that lead to avoidance.

**Psychotropic drug**—Medication that has an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient’s moods and perceptions.

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

The examiner then goes on to assess other aspects of the patient’s mental state, such as mood, thought process, and cognition, beginning with a question such as that suggested in the *Merck Manual of Geriatrics*: “I would like to ask you some questions about your feelings, your thinking, and your memory as a routine part of the examination. Is that all right with you?”

### Mood and affect

These outward manifestations of the patient’s mental state are important indicators. The clinician can ask the patient to describe his or her current mood (“How do you feel? Are you happy? Sad? Angry?”). The patient’s affect, or emotional state, however, is observed and interpreted by the clinician throughout the interview, and described in standardized terms, such as excitable, flat, inappropriate, or labile (rapidly shifting).

### Thought process and content

Thought process (or form) indicates whether or not the interviewee is properly oriented to time and place. Thought content reveals how connected, coherent, and logical the patient’s thoughts are. The interviewer may ask the patient to identify themselves and loved ones, to name the current date, and/or to describe the route taken to the examiner’s location. The

patient’s responses to questions can indicate disturbances in thought, such as circumstantial thinking (circumlocution, persistent storytelling), tangential thinking (response not pertinent to the question) black/white (extreme) thinking, and impoverished (minimally responsive) thinking. Disturbed thought content can also indicate **delusions**, **hallucinations**, phobias, and obsessions. In addition, the examiner may question the patient about suicidal and/or homicidal thoughts.

### Cognition

Cognition refers to the patient’s attention, awareness, memory (long-, intermediate-, and short-term), general knowledge, abstract thinking ability, insight, and judgment. The interviewer may ask the patient to spell a word forward and backward, identify the current president, read and/or write something, compare two objects, and explain the meaning of common sayings.

### Preparation

An evaluation session appointment is made with a qualified mental health practitioner. A specialist (someone specializing in anxiety/depressive disorders, pain management, **hypnotherapy**, or chemical dependency, for example) may be sought or recommended. A private, quiet, nonthreatening, environment is recommended to ensure comfort and confidentiality.

## Aftercare

Aftercare depends on the results of the evaluation. Treatment may be initiated and/or further tests may be required to confirm the diagnosis.

## Risks

There are no known risks involved. A person seeking a mental health evaluation does so for a reason and may learn of an existing or potential mental problem.

## Normal results

The patient does not require psychological therapy or psychotropic drug (medications beneficial to treat certain mental disorders) treatment.

## Abnormal results

The person has a mental disorder that may require psychotherapy or a combination of psychotherapy and medications.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Andreasen, Nancy C., and Donald W. Black. *Introductory Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2001.  
 VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
 Bilal Nasser, MD  
 Robert Ramirez

**Ativan** see **Lorazepam**

**Attachment disorder** see **Reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood**

## Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder

### Definition

Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) is a developmental disorder characterized by distractibility, hyperactivity, impulsive behaviors, and the inability to remain focused on tasks or activities.



Ritalin pills. (Tracy Dominey/Photo Researchers, Inc)

## Description

ADHD was first described in 1845. The estimated prevalence of ADHD, also known as hyperkinetic disorder (HKD) outside of the United States, is 8% to 10% of children. Although difficult to assess in infancy and toddlerhood, signs of ADHD may begin to appear as early as age two or three, but the symptom picture changes as adolescence approaches. Many symptoms, particularly hyperactivity, diminish in early adulthood; however, up to 70% of individuals with ADHD experience persistent impulsivity and problems focusing attention throughout their adult lives. Inattention is the most frequent persistent symptom in adults with ADHD.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The causes of ADHD are thought to be an interaction of environment and genes. Heredity plays a major role in the development of ADHD. A number of genes considered to confer susceptibility to ADHD have been identified, and some researchers have suggested that ADHD may arise from several different combinations of these susceptibility genes and environmental factors. These genes primarily involve the signaling proteins active in the brain's **dopamine** (a nerve-signaling molecule) pathways, supporting the prevailing theory that the signaling of dopamine and other **neurotransmitters** is responsible for the symptoms of the disorder. **Brain** imaging results also support this idea. These studies have identified distinct differences in dopamine processing and uptake in the brains of people with ADHD compared to those of people without the disorder. Some researchers see a

link between ADHD and **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD) in heredity studies of families, and children with an ADHD parent or sibling are more likely to develop the disorder themselves. Studies of identical twins point to a heritability rate as high as 91%.

Some environmental factors have been strongly linked to ADHD. Studies have found that maternal smoking during pregnancy can increase a child's overall risk of ADHD by two-and-a-half times, and if the child is a girl, the risk can be as much as 4.6 times higher. Low birth weight also has been identified as a risk factor, and lead exposure has been linked to ADHD; lead levels above a predetermined cutoff in one study were linked to a fourfold increase in the risk of having ADHD. Traumatic brain injury or neurological disorders may also trigger ADHD symptoms.

### Symptoms

The **diagnosis** of ADHD requires the presence of at least six of the following symptoms of inattention, or six or more symptoms of hyperactivity and impulsivity combined:

#### Inattention:

- fails to pay close attention to detail or makes careless mistakes in schoolwork or other activities
- has difficulty sustaining attention in tasks or activities
- does not appear to listen when spoken to
- does not follow through on instructions and does not finish tasks
- has difficulty organizing tasks and activities
- avoids or dislikes tasks that require sustained mental effort (e.g., homework)
- is easily distracted
- is forgetful in daily activities

#### Hyperactivity:

- fidgets with hands or feet or squirms in seat
- does not remain seated when expected to
- runs or climbs excessively when inappropriate (in adolescents and adults, feelings of restlessness)
- has difficulty playing quietly
- is constantly on the move
- talks excessively

#### Impulsivity:

- blurts out answers before the question has been completed
- has difficulty waiting turns
- interrupts and/or intrudes on others

Further criteria to establish a diagnosis also require that some symptoms develop before age seven, and that they significantly impair functioning in two or more settings (e.g., home and school) for a period of at least six months.

Many individuals with ADHD have symptoms from all three of the above categories. Some children, however, have behavior patterns in which inattention dominates, or hyperactivity and impulsivity dominate. For this reason, ADHD can be further categorized, or subdivided, into three subtypes. Children who have at least six symptoms from both of the inattention and hyperactivity-impulsivity categories may be diagnosed with ADHD, combined type. Children who meet the symptom criteria for inattention, but not for hyperactivity-impulsivity, are diagnosed with attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, predominantly inattentive type, commonly called attention deficit disorder (ADD). Children with predominantly attentive type may go undiagnosed until negative academic consequences arise; children who daydream are much less noticeable than children who are in constant, impulsive motion. Children who experience more symptoms from the hyperactivity and impulsivity categories, but fewer than six symptoms of inattention may be diagnosed with ADHD, predominantly hyperactive-impulsive type.

### Diagnosis

The first step in determining if a child has ADHD is to consult with a pediatrician. The pediatrician can make an initial evaluation of the child's developmental maturity compared to other children in the same age group, using guidelines for the diagnosis and evaluation of ADHD provided by the American Academy of Pediatrics. The physician should also perform a comprehensive physical examination to rule out any organic causes of ADHD symptoms, such as an overactive thyroid or vision or hearing problems.

If no organic problem can be found, a **psychologist**, **psychiatrist**, neurologist/pediatric neurologist, neuropsychologist, developmental pediatrician, or learning specialist is typically consulted to perform a comprehensive ADHD assessment. A complete medical, family, social, psychiatric, and educational history is compiled from existing medical and school records and from interviews with parents and teachers. Interviews may also be conducted with the children, depending on their age. Along with these interviews, several clinical questionnaires may also be used, such as the Conners' Rating Scales (Teacher's Questionnaire and Parent's Questionnaire), Child Behavior Checklist (CBCL), and the Achenbach Child Behavior

Checklist. These inventories provide valuable information on the child's behavior in different settings and situations. In addition, the Wender Utah Rating Scale has been adapted for use in diagnosing ADHD in adults, as has the Conners' Adult ADHD rating scale.

It is important to note that mental disorders such as **depression** and **anxiety** disorder can cause symptoms similar to ADHD: Depression can cause attention problems, and anxiety can cause symptoms similar to hyperactivity. A complete and comprehensive psychological assessment is critical to differentiate ADHD from other possible mood and behavioral disorders. **Bipolar disorder**, for example, may be misdiagnosed as ADHD.

Federal law requires a public school to assess children when ADHD is suspected and there are observable effects on their schoolwork and interactions with peers. A pediatrician can also provide a referral to a psychologist or pediatric specialist for ADHD assessment. Parents should check with their insurance plans to see if these services are covered if they choose to pursue a private evaluation.

## Treatment

Therapy that addresses both psychological and social issues (called psychosocial therapy), usually combined with medications, is the treatment approach of choice to alleviate ADHD symptoms. This combination has proved to be the most effective treatment approach to ADHD.

### Medications

For 70 years, psychostimulant medication has been used to treat symptoms of ADHD, and stimulants are still considered the first-line medication for treatment of ADHD. It may seem paradoxical to treat a disorder of hyperactivity with a stimulant medication, but people with ADHD typically experience a calming effect from stimulants. Stimulants approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treatment of ADHD are **methylphenidate** (which occurs under several trade names, including Ritalin), mixed amphetamine salts (trade name Adderall), and dextroamphetamine (trade name Dexedrine). These stimulants are comparatively short acting, requiring several doses during a day to maintain appropriate levels. Some long-acting forms are available, such as Ritalin LA and Adderall XR, and a transdermal patch (trade name Daytrana) is also available for delivery of methylphenidate through the skin.

Stimulant use in children with ADHD has been associated in some studies with sudden death in a small number of cases, leading to widespread concern; however, subsequent studies have found no difference in sudden death rates among children taking stimulants for ADHD and the general population using no medication. Use of these medications is not recommended for people who have known heart disease.

Another stimulant-related side effect of concern is the effect these drugs have on growth rate. Studies do indicate that while a child is taking stimulants, growth rate can slow. Some practitioners may recommend "drug holidays," in which the child stops taking the drug when circumstances require less focus or self-discipline, such as over a summer vacation. Studies indicate that the adverse effects on growth rate are eliminated by these drug holidays.

One of the drugs that has been used to treat ADHD, **pemoline** (trade name Cylert) is not recommended as a first-line approach to ADHD because of the potential for serious side effects related to the liver.

More minor side effects associated with stimulant-based treatment include decreased appetite, **insomnia**, increased anxiety, and irritability.

Some newer drugs for treating ADHD have also come on the market. Among these is atomoxetine (trade name, Strattera), which inhibits reuptake of noradrenaline, a nerve-signaling molecule. This drug is the only nonstimulant drug treatment for ADHD that is approved by the FDA. It is suggested as an alternative for children who cannot tolerate standard psychostimulant therapy.

Another drug, modafinil, had stirred up a great deal of interest because it was effective in treating ADHD in a couple of double-blind, placebo-controlled trials, but the FDA recently declined approval of the drug for clinical use.

Other prescription drugs used in the treatment of ADHD are not FDA-approved for that purpose and therefore their use in treating this disorder is "off-label." These drugs include tricyclic **antidepressants** such as **imipramine**, the antidepressant bupropion, and guanfacine, a mimic of a specific form of neurotransmitter (nerve-signaling molecule). All of these drugs have shown some effectiveness in various studies but are not specifically approved for treatment of ADHD.

### Psychosocial therapies

Drug therapy may control the symptoms of ADHD, but most experts recommend that drug

therapy accompany concerted efforts involving behavioral therapy to address the underlying causes. **Behavior modification** therapy uses a reward system to reinforce good behavior and task completion and can be implemented both in the classroom and at home. A tangible reward such as a sticker may be given to children every time they complete a task or behave in an acceptable manner. A chart may be used to display the stickers and visually illustrate their progress. When a certain number of stickers are collected, the child may trade them in for a bigger reward such as a trip to the zoo or a day at the beach. The reward system stays in place until the good behavior becomes ingrained. Behavioral therapy is often the first-line approach to treatment in preschool-age children diagnosed with ADHD.

A variation of this technique, **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, may work for some children to decrease impulsive behavior by getting the child to recognize the connection between thoughts and behavior, and to change behavior by changing negative thinking patterns.

Individual **psychotherapy** can help children with ADHD build self-esteem, provide a place to discuss worries and anxieties, and help them to gain insight into behavior and feelings.

**Family therapy** may also be beneficial to help parents and family members develop coping skills and to work through feelings of guilt or anger they may be experiencing.

Children with ADHD perform better within a familiar, consistent, and structured routine with positive reinforcements for good behavior and real consequences for bad behavior. Family, friends, and caretakers should all be educated on the special needs and behaviors of children with ADHD so that they can act consistently. Communication between parents and teachers is especially critical to ensuring that children with ADHD have appropriate learning environments.

Other important therapies for children with ADHD can include **social skills training**, in which the children learn appropriate social interactions from behaviors that are modeled for them.

#### *Alternative treatment*

A number of alternative treatments exist for ADHD. Although there is a lack of controlled studies to prove their efficacy, proponents report that they are successful in controlling symptoms in some ADHD patients. Some of the more popular alternative treatments include:

## KEY TERMS

**Antisocial personality disorder**—A disorder characterized by the behavior pattern of disregard for others' rights. People with this disorder often deceive and manipulate, or their behavior might include aggression to people, animals, property, for example. This disorder has also been called sociopathy or psychopathy.

**Conduct disorder**—A behavioral and emotional disorder of childhood and adolescence in which children display physical aggression and infringe on or violate the rights of others. Youths diagnosed with conduct disorder may set fires, exhibit cruelty toward animals or other children, sexually assault others, or lie and steal for personal gain.

- EEG (electroencephalograph) biofeedback. By measuring brain wave activity and teaching patients with ADHD which type of brain wave is associated with attention, EEG biofeedback attempts to train patients to generate the desired brain wave activity.
- limited sugar intake. However, data indicate that this method does not actually reduce symptoms.
- relaxation training.

## Prognosis

If untreated, ADHD negatively affects the social and educational performance of children with ADHD and can seriously damage their sense of self-esteem. Children with ADHD have impaired relationships with their peers and may be looked upon as social outcasts. They may be perceived as slow learners or troublemakers in the classroom. Siblings and even parents may develop resentful feelings toward a child with ADHD.

Some children with ADHD also develop **conduct disorder** problems. For those adolescents who have both ADHD and a conduct disorder, up to 25% go on to develop **antisocial personality disorder** and criminal behavior, **substance abuse**, and a high rate of **suicide** attempts that can be symptomatic of that disorder. Children diagnosed with ADHD are also more likely to have a learning disorder, a mood disorder such as depression, or an anxiety disorder.

Approximately 70–80% of patients with ADHD treated with stimulant medication experience significant relief from symptoms, at least in the short term. Approximately half of children with ADHD seem to "outgrow" the disorder in adolescence or early

adulthood; the other half will retain some or all symptoms of ADHD as adults. With early identification and **intervention**, careful **compliance** with a treatment program, and a supportive and nurturing home and school environment, children with ADHD can and do flourish socially and academically.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text revised. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.
- Arnold, L. Eugene. *Contemporary Diagnosis and Management of Attention Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder*. New-town: Handbooks in Health Care Company, 2000.
- Boyles, Nancy S. *Parenting a Child with Attention Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder*. New York: Contemporary Books, 1999.
- Fowler, Rick, and Jerilyn Fowler. *Honey, Are You Listening? Attention Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder and Your Marriage*. Gainsville: Fair Havens Publications, 2002.
- Goldman, Lee, and J. Claude Bennett, eds. *Cecil Textbook of Medicine*. 21st ed. Saint Louis: Harcourt Health Sciences Group, 2000.
- Jones, Clare B. *Sourcebook for Children with Attention Deficit Disorder*. San Antonio: Communication Skill Builders/Therapy Skill Builders, 1998.
- Morrison, Jaydene. *Coping with ADD-ADHD: Attention-Deficit Disorder—Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder*. New York: Rosen Publishing Group, 2000.
- Munden, Alison. *ADHD Handbook: A Guide for Parents and Professionals*. Philadelphia: Taylor and Francis, 1999.
- Noble, John. *Textbook of Primary Care Medicine*. Saint Louis: Mosby, Incorporated, 2001.
- Osman, Betty B. *Learning Disabilities and ADHD: A Family Guide to Living and Learning Together*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.
- Tasman, Allan, Jerald Kay, MD, and Jeffrey A. Lieberman, MD, eds. *Psychiatry*. 1st ed. W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- Forssberg, Hans, and others. "Altered Pattern of Brain Dopamine Synthesis in Male Adolescents with Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder." *Behavioral and Brain Functions* (2006).
- Lopez, Frank A. "ADHD: New Pharmacological Treatments on the Horizon." *Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics* 27 (2006): 410–16.
- Miller, Bernhard W., and others. "Neuropsychological Assessment of Adult Patients with Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* (2007).
- Pliszka, Steven R. "Pharmacologic Treatment of Attention Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder: Efficacy, Safety, and Mechanisms of Action." *Neuropsychological Reviews* (2007).

Thapar, Anita, and others. "Gene–Environment Interaction in Attention-Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder and the Importance of a Developmental Perspective." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 190 (2007): 1–3.

Tillett, Tanya. "Adding Up to ADHD: Effects of Early Exposures." *Environmental Health Perspectives* 114 (2006): A715.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP). 3615 Wisconsin Ave. NW, Washington, DC 20016. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. <<http://www.aacap.org>>.
- Attention Deficit Disorder Association (ADDA). 1788 Second Street, Suite 200, Highland Park, IL 60035. Telephone: (847) 432-ADDA. <<http://www.add.org>>.
- Children and Adults with Attention Deficit Disorder (CHADD). 8181 Professional Place, Suite 201, Landover, MD 20785. CHADD National Call Center: (800) 233-4050. Web site: <<http://chadd.org>>.

## OTHER

- National Institute of Mental Health. National Institutes of Health. "Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/adhd.cfm>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/attentiondeficithyperactivitydisorder.html>>.

Paula Anne Ford-Martin, MA  
Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
Nicole Mallory, MS, PA-C  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Autism

### Definition

The term "autism" refers to a cluster of conditions appearing early in childhood. All involve severe impairments in social interaction, communication, and patterns of rigid, repetitive behaviors. To be considered a manifestation of an autistic disorder, some of these impairments must be exhibited before the age of three.

The reference book used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders is the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, also known as the ***DSM***. The 2000 edition of this reference book (the Fourth Edition Text Revision known as ***DSM-IV-TR***) places autism in a category called **pervasive developmental disorders**. All of these disorders are characterized by ongoing problems with mutual

social interaction and communication, or the presence of stereotyped, repetitive behaviors and unusual interests, and activities. People diagnosed with these disorders are affected in many ways for their entire lives.

## Description

Because autism is a spectrum disorder, each child diagnosed with an autistic disorder differs from every other in the suite of symptoms they display and the characteristics and intensity of those symptoms; thus, general descriptions of autistic behavior and characteristics do not apply equally to every child. Still, the common impairments in social interaction and communication, and patterns of rigid, repetitive behaviors can make it possible to recognize children with these disorders, who may differ markedly from neurotypical children in many ways.

Many parents of autistic children sense that something is not quite right even when their children are infants. The infants may have feeding problems, dislike being changed or bathed, or fuss over any change in routine. They may hold their bodies rigid, making it difficult for parents to cuddle them. Or, they may fail to anticipate being lifted, lying passively while the parent reaches for them, rather than holding their arms up in return. Most parents of autistic children become aware of the atypicality of these and other behaviors only gradually.

Impairments in social interaction are usually among the earliest symptoms to develop. The most common social impairment is a kind of indifference to other people, or aloofness, even towards parents and close caregivers. The baby may fail to respond to his or her name being called and may show very little facial expression unless extremely angry, upset, or happy. Babies with autism may resist being touched and appear to be lost in their own world. Between seven and 10 months of age, most infants often resist being separated from a parent or well-known caregiver, but these infants who are later diagnosed with autism may show no emotion when picked up by a stranger.

Other children with autism may be very passive, although less resistant to efforts by others to interact. However, they may not initiate social interaction themselves. Still others may attempt to engage with adults and peers but in ways that strike others as inappropriate or odd.

Because autistic children can be extremely sensitive to change, any change within the family situation can be potentially traumatic to the autistic child. A move, divorce, birth of a sibling, or other stressors that

occur in the lives of most families may evoke a more extreme reaction from an autistic child.

In adolescence and adulthood, some higher-functioning people with autistic disorders may appear overly formal and polite. They may appear to react with little spontaneity, as if social interaction does not come naturally or easily to them, as though they are trying to follow a pre-determined set of rules.

Some people with autism have normal intelligence, and some may exhibit special talents in areas such as music or memory. However, persons with autism can have mental or emotional problems that co-exist with their autism. Some of these other disorders include impulse control disorders, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, mood and **anxiety disorders**, and **mental retardation**.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

**PSYCHOLOGICAL AND FAMILY FACTORS.** Although Henry Maudsley, in the late 1800s, was the first **psychiatrist** to focus on very young children with mental disorders, it was the psychiatrist Leo Kanner who coined the phrase “early infantile autism” in 1943. Kanner believed that the parents of children with autistic behaviors were emotionally cold and intellectually distant. He coined the term “refrigerator parents” to describe them. His belief that parental personality and behavior played a powerful role in the development of autistic behaviors left a devastating legacy of guilt and self-blame among parents of autistic children that continues to this day. Recent studies are unequivocal, however, in demonstrating that parents of autistic children are no different from parents of healthy children in their personalities or parenting behaviors. In fact, many families with an autistic child also have one or more neurotypical children.

**NEUROLOGICAL AND BIOLOGICAL FACTORS.** While there is no single neurological abnormality found in children with autistic disorders, some research using non-invasive **brain** imaging techniques such as **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) has demonstrated notable differences between the brains of people with autism and neurotypical brains. Several of the brain areas being researched are known to control emotion and the expression of emotion. These areas include the temporal lobe (large lobe of each side of the brain that contains a sensory area associated with hearing), the limbic system, the cerebellum, the frontal lobe, the amygdala, and the brain stem,

which regulates homeostasis (body temperature and heart rate). Among other findings, the brains of some but not all children with autism are abnormally large, and abnormalities in head growth may be manifest even in infancy. Studies also have identified differences between people with and without autism and brain chemical concentrations, volume, and distribution of gray and white matter (nerve cell bodies and their axons), and hemispheric connectivity. There are still no imaging techniques that can be used as definitive diagnostic approaches. Recent research has focused particularly on the temporal lobe because of the finding that previously healthy people who sustain temporal lobe damage may develop autistic-like symptoms. In animal research, when the temporal lobe is damaged, social behavior declines, and restless, repetitive motor behaviors are common.

Although some research initially indicated an association between many events at birth and autism, subsequent studies have not supported many of these findings. There also has not been substantiation of a finding that meconium (the product of the fetal bowel) in amniotic fluid might have linked to autism. Some studies have found a link between maternal age over 35 years and autism and use of medication during pregnancy and autism. Factors related to intrauterine growth and fetal distress (Apgar score lower than 5) may be related to the development of autism. Many studies suggest that in utero (i.e., prenatal) events and genetics play a mixed role in the development of autism.

**ALLERGIES, INFECTIONS, AND IMMUNIZATIONS.** Some professionals believe that autistic symptoms may be caused by allergies to particular fungi, viral infections, and various foods. No controlled studies have supported these beliefs, but some parents and professionals report improvement when allergens and/or certain foods are eliminated from the diet.

Viral infections of the mother, such as rubella, or of the young child, such as encephalitis, mumps, and measles, occasionally appear to cause autistic disorders. The common childhood immunization series known as MMR (measles, mumps, rubella) has recently come under scrutiny as a possible cause of some autistic conditions; however, no further clinical, animal, or epidemiological studies have supported this finding.

Very rarely, autism is associated with hereditary disorders, such as tuberous sclerosis or fragile X syndrome, which is the leading cause of mental retardation.

### Symptoms

*DSM-IV-TR* specifies three diagnostic categories, each with four components, that are used to make a

**diagnosis** of autistic disorder. These diagnostic categories are impairments in social interaction, communication, and particular patterns of behavior. More information about the individual diagnostic categories and components follows.

**SOCIAL INTERACTION.** Qualitative impairment in social interaction, as demonstrated by at least two of the following:

- impairment in the use of nonverbal behaviors such as eye contact, facial expression, body posture, and gestures used for social interaction
- failure to develop age-appropriate peer relationships
- lack of attempts to share pleasure, activities, interests, or achievements with other people (e.g., by failing to bring items of interest to a parent, or pointing out animals or objects)
- inability to respond to social situations or other people's emotions with empathy or a concerned attitude

**COMMUNICATION.** Qualitative impairments in communicating in at least one of the following four areas:

- lack of, or delay in development of spoken language, without attempts to communicate through alternative means such as gestures or mime
- in individuals who do speak, severe impairment in the ability to initiate or sustain a conversation with others
- repetitive and stereotyped use of language, or use of words in unusual, idiosyncratic ways
- failure to show imaginative play, such as make-believe or social imitative play appropriate to developmental level

**BEHAVIOR.** Restricted, repetitive, and stereotyped patterns of behavior, interests, and activities, as demonstrated by at least one of the following:

- unusual and overly absorbing preoccupation with one or more interests or activities
- a need for rigid adherence to specific routines or rituals in daily life
- stereotyped and repetitive motor behaviors using parts of the body such as fingers, hands, or the whole body
- persistent preoccupation with parts of objects

### Demographics

Autistic disorders strike families of all ethnic and socioeconomic backgrounds. Men are affected more frequently than women by a ratio as high as 4:1. In recent years, autism rates appear to have spiked, according to some reports by as much as several

hundred percent. It is difficult for epidemiologists to determine whether or not this rise is attributable to better diagnosis and greater general awareness of symptoms or to a genuine increase in cases. Some recent studies have concluded that there is not a true increase in the incidence of autism and that broader criteria and increased awareness on the part of doctors explain the increase. Early studies suggested a prevalence rate of four to 10 cases per 10,000 children. The most recent studies have suggested a much higher prevalence, as high as 60 cases for every 10,000 children, or between three and six cases per 1,000. Rates reported in different studies can vary based on the population being assessed.

Autism recurs in siblings at a rate of 2–8%, higher than its prevalence in the general population but considerably less than would be expected if it were attributable to a single gene. Studies of monozygotic (identical) and dizygotic (fraternal) twins show a 60% concordance rate for identical twins and a rate of 0% for fraternal twins, indicating that autism has a strong heritable element.

## Diagnosis

Because young infants are so limited in their range of behavior, autistic disorders are generally discovered gradually, and rarely diagnosed before the age of two or three. Parents may not realize that their baby's behavior is different from that of other infants until he or she reaches an age where a wide range of behaviors are typically displayed. Most doctors may attempt to reassure concerned parents of infants under two years that their children are "normal," or will "grow out of" a disturbing behavior, because many children do. At the time that speech and language usually develop, parents are more likely to observe that their autistic child is not at the same level as other children the same age. Once the child is old enough to play with other children, it becomes more apparent that the autistic child either is not interested in doing so, or does so in unusual ways that differ from most children of the same age. Motor development may also appear unusual, with repetitive motions such as spinning, self-injurious behaviors such as headbanging, and rocking back and forth, giving the parents strong clues that their child behaves differently from others.

The child who continues to display unusual behaviors at about the age of two years would most likely receive a referral from the pediatrician to a child psychiatrist, developmental pediatrician, or early **intervention** program with a multi-disciplinary staff including psychiatrists, psychologists, and **social workers**. These professionals would be the ones to

diagnose autistic disorder, and, ideally, offer an early intervention program simultaneously. To reach a diagnosis, the professional(s) would observe the child both with and without parents present, interview the parents about the pregnancy, birth, siblings, family history, and early behaviors, and possibly administer an assessment like the Bayley scales of infant development.

## Differential diagnosis

Differential diagnosis is the process of distinguishing one disorder from other similar disorders. Because there are currently no medical tests (such as a blood test) to detect autism, the diagnosis is often established by ruling out other disorders and clarifying the distinguishing characteristics of autism disorder versus other pervasive developmental disorders, such as Asperger syndrome.

**MENTAL RETARDATION.** Mental retardation is present with autism in about 70% of cases. What distinguishes children with mental retardation who do not have autistic symptoms from those who do is evenness of development. Children with mental retardation tend to exhibit a more even level of functioning in all areas, whereas autistic children tend to exhibit extreme variability within areas and between areas. Children with autistic disorders show uneven development in areas such as motor, language, and social skills. A child with autism may have high-level cognitive functioning in one area, but low-level cognitive functioning in another area, for example. Or a child with autism may exhibit delayed cognitive development, but normal motor skills development. For this reason, autism is often referred to as a "spectrum disorder" because of the large spectrum or range of variability in symptoms and functioning. Also, many children with mental retardation relate well to people and enjoy social connection, which is rare for autistic children.

**LANGUAGE DISORDER.** Children with autistic disorders may appear similar in some ways to children with language disorders. Unlike autistic children, however, children with language disorders exhibit neurotypical responses to most people, situations, and objects. They make eye contact and show interest in peer and adult relationships.

**CHILDHOOD SCHIZOPHRENIA.** **Schizophrenia** is a disturbance of emotion and thought processes that rarely occurs in young children. When it does, it is characterized by **hallucinations** and delusions—seeing and hearing things that are not there, for example.

These are not symptoms that appear among autistic children.

**DEGENERATIVE ORGANIC BRAIN DISORDER.** This is an extremely rare condition that may at first appear similar to autistic disorders. In degenerative organic brain disorder, the child begins to develop normally, but over time, speech, language, motor skills and other age-appropriate behaviors disintegrate and do not return. The disintegration is progressive. In children with autistic disorders, some children may begin to develop words and language and then lose them at around eighteen months. However, with appropriate education, these skills can be relearned and surpassed by the autistic child.

### Treatments

Autistic disorders cannot be cured, but children who have these disorders can make considerable progress in all areas of life. Depending upon the level of intellectual function, it is possible for some children with autism to become functioning, semi-independent or independent adults capable of working and enjoying some social relationships. Parenting a child with autism can be extremely challenging, however, and many families find **support groups** to be helpful. Both medication and psychosocial therapies (therapies that address both psychological and social issues) can help ameliorate troubling symptoms. Education is key for helping these children learn socially acceptable behaviors, decreasing odd mannerisms and behaviors, and increasing appropriate verbal and non-verbal language skills.

### Education

Most educational programs for children with autistic disorders involve small, specialized classes with teachers specially trained to work with autistic children, although schools generally make efforts to “mainstream” children with special needs as much as possible, using classrooms aides and other resources. Research has shown that autistic children need regular, daily structure and routine, and they maintain their skills best when there are not frequent disruptions of their daily school program.

One method that has been used extensively both within the classroom and at home is a **behavior modification** method known as Applied Behavior Analysis, or ABA. Specially trained teachers break down large goals into small steps that are taught and repeated until the child masters each one. Slowly, step by step, more appropriate patterns of behavior and communication are formed or shaped in this way.

Positive **reinforcement** is used in many forms, such as praise (for those children who are motivated by it), time permitted to engage in a favorite activity, or a small favored food item. For ABA to be most effective, parents need to be trained to use these same skills to continue the work at home.

### Medications

Although no one drug is helpful to children with autistic disorders, several medications are currently used, along with education, to reduce severe temper tantrums and destructive aggression, self-injurious behaviors, hyperactivity, and unusual, repetitive behaviors. Medications may also help the autistic child become more receptive to learning and relating to others. Some of the medications commonly used include **risperidone** (Risperdal), and **haloperidol** (Haldol). Although there are side effects associated with these medications, careful dosing and use of other medications to counteract side effects often enable the autistic child to function more effectively.

### Non-conventional treatments

One non-conventional and experimental treatment for autism is the use of secretin, a hormone produced in the small intestine that stimulates the pancreas to release sodium bicarbonate and other digestive enzymes. Studies have found no improvement from secretin administration in autism in general, although it may effect some improvement in a specific population subset.

Another experimental treatment involves *Candida albicans*, the technical term for a common yeast that is found in the human body. Some scientists believe that an overgrowth of this yeast may cause or worsen autism. Some reports indicate that children treated with anti-yeast medications improve in eye contact, social abilities, language skills, concentration, and sleep, and that they show a reduction in aggressive and hyperactive behavior.

An additional non-conventional treatment being researched for autism is a nutritional supplement, vitamin B<sub>6</sub>. Some experts believe that vitamin B<sub>6</sub> holds promise for reducing autistic symptoms and helping autistic children progress in all areas. It may be combined with magnesium and the combination appears to have no known side effects. Improvements attributed to these supplements in some studies include enhanced language, eye-contact, and behaviors, as well as more normal brain activity and improved immune system functioning.

## KEY TERMS

**Impulse control disorders**—Group of disorders characterized by impulsive behavior, such as stealing.

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—Disorder in which the affected individual has an obsession (such as a fear of contamination, or thoughts he or she does not like to have and cannot control) and feels compelled to perform a certain act to neutralize the obsession (such as repeated handwashing).

**Temporal lobe**—Large lobe of each side of the brain that contains a sensory area associated with hearing.

These treatments remain outside mainstream medicine, however, and research is ongoing as to their efficacy. Parents interested in these therapies may wish to discuss them with their child's health care team.

### Prognosis

Autistic disorders follow a continuous course throughout life. Autistic individuals with higher levels of intelligence may become able to work and live independently or, more frequently, semi-independently. This is especially true for those with IQ scores of 70 or higher. One in six children with autism becomes a well-adjusted adult. Another one out of six achieves a fair degree of adjustment in adult life. Others may never be able to leave the structured environment of home or, later, special group home placement. During adolescence, sexual feelings emerge that a teen with autism may find difficult to handle appropriately. Supervision throughout life is needed for the majority of individuals diagnosed with these disorders.

### Prevention

At present, no specific means of preventing autistic disorders exist. Because of an elevated likelihood of giving birth to more than one autistic child exists, genetic counseling is recommended.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hamilton, Lynn. *Facing Autism*. Colorado Springs, CO: WaterBrook Press, 2000.
- Kaplan, Harold, MD, and Benjamin Sadock, MD. *Synopsis of Psychiatry*. 8th ed., rev. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

Powers, Michael, Psy.D., ed. *Children with Autism: A Parent's Guide*. 2nd ed. Bethesda, MD.: Woodbine House, 2000.

Wing, Lorna, MD. *The Autistic Spectrum*. Berkeley, CA: Ulysses Press, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Hultman, Christina M., Par Sparén, and Sven Cnattingius, "Perinatal risk factors for infantile autism." *Epidemiology* 13 (2002): 417–23.
- Lainhart, Janet E. "Advances in autism neuroimaging research for the clinician and the geneticist." *American Journal of Medical Genetics Part C* 142C (2006): 33–39.
- Larsson, Heidi J., and others. "Risk factors for autism: perinatal factors, parental psychiatric history, and socioeconomic status." *American Journal of Epidemiology* 161 (2005): 916–25.
- Maimburg, R.D., and M. Vaeth. "Perinatal risk factors and infantile autism." *Acta Psychiatry Scandinavia* 114 (2006): 257–64.
- Muhle, Rebecca, Stephanie V. Trentacoste, and Isabelle, MD Rapin. "The genetics of autism." *Pediatrics* 113 (2004): e472–e486.
- Taylor, B. "Vaccines and the changing epidemiology of autism." *Child: Care, Health, and Development* 32 (2006): 511–9.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005.
- Autism Network International, P.O. Box 448, Syracuse, NY 13210-0448. <<http://www.students.uiuc.edu/~bordner/ani/>>.
- The Autism Society of America. 7910 Woodmont Avenue, Suite 300, Bethesda, MD 20814-3015. <<http://www.autism-society.org>>.
- Families for Early Autism Treatment (F.E.A.T.). P.O. Box 255722, Sacramento, CA 95865-1536. <<http://www.feat.org>>.
- Families Working Together. 12400 Cypress Avenue, Space 20, Chino, CA 91710. <<http://www.ucdffam.com>>.

Barbara S. Sternberg, Ph.D.  
Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

Aventyl see **Nortriptyline**

## Aversion therapy

### Definition

Aversion therapy is a form of behavior therapy in which an aversive stimulus (causing a strong feeling of dislike or disgust) is paired with an undesirable behavior in order to reduce or eliminate that behavior.

## Purpose

As with other behavior therapies, aversion therapy is a treatment grounded in learning theory—one of its basic principles being that all behavior is learned and that undesirable behaviors can be unlearned under the right circumstances. Aversion therapy is an application of the branch of learning theory called classical conditioning. Within this model of learning, an undesirable behavior, such as a deviant sexual act, is matched with an unpleasant (aversive) stimulus. The unpleasant feelings or sensations become associated with that behavior, and the behavior will decrease in frequency or stop altogether. Aversion therapy differs from those types of behavior therapy based on principles of operant conditioning. In operant therapy, the aversive stimulus, usually called punishment, is presented after the behavior rather than together with it.

The goal of aversion therapy has been to decrease or eliminate undesirable behaviors. Treatment focuses on changing a specific behavior itself, unlike insight-oriented approaches that focus on uncovering unconscious motives in order to produce change. The behaviors for which aversion therapy has been tried as a treatment include such addictions as alcohol **abuse**, drug abuse, and smoking; pathological gambling; **paraphilic disorders**; and more benign habits—including writer's cramp. Most controversially, this approach has been attempted as a way to "cure" homosexuality. Both the type of behavior to be changed and the characteristics of the aversive stimulus influence the treatment—which may be administered in either outpatient or inpatient settings as a self-sufficient **intervention** or as part of a multimodal program. Under some circumstances, aversion therapy may be self-administered.

## Precautions

A variety of aversive stimuli have been used as part of this approach, including chemical and pharmacological stimulants, as well as electric shock. Foul odors, nasty tastes, and loud noises have been employed as aversive stimuli somewhat less frequently. The chemicals and medications generate very unpleasant and often physically painful responses. This type of aversive stimulation may be risky for people with heart or lung problems because of the possibility of making the medical conditions worse. Patients with these conditions should be cleared by their doctors first. Often, however, the more intrusive aversive stimuli are administered within inpatient settings under medical supervision. An uncomfortable but safe level of electric (sometimes called faradic) shock is often preferred to chemical and

pharmacological aversants because of the risks that these substances involve.

In addition to the health precautions mentioned above, there are ethical concerns surrounding the use of aversive stimuli. There are additional problems with patient acceptance and negative public perception of procedures using aversants. Aversion treatment that makes use of powerful substances customarily (and intentionally) causes extremely uncomfortable consequences, including nausea and vomiting. These effects may lead to poor **compliance** with treatment, high dropout rates, potentially hostile and aggressive patients, and public relations problems. Social critics and members of the general public alike often consider this type of treatment punitive and morally objectionable. Although the scenes were exaggerated in the disturbing parts of the Stanley Kubrick film *A Clockwork Orange*, they depicted the use of aversion therapy to reform the criminal protagonist and provide a powerful example of society's perception of this treatment.

Parents and other advocates for people with **mental retardation** and developmental disabilities have been particularly vocal in their condemnation of behavior therapy that uses aversive procedures in general. Aversive procedures are used within a variety of **behavior modification** strategies and the term is sometimes confused with the more specific technique of aversion therapy. Aversive procedures are usually based on an operant conditioning model that involves punishment. Advocates for special patient populations believe that all aversive procedures are punitive, coercive, and use unnecessary amounts of control and manipulation to modify behavior. They call for therapists to stop using aversive stimuli, noting that positive, nonaversive, behavioral-change strategies are available. These strategies are at least as, if not more, effective than aversive procedures.

In general, there are not very many studies in the scientific literature that produce strong evidence of the effectiveness of aversion therapy. Some studies indicate that aversion therapy for smokers may be somewhat effective, but a significant problem with the approach in smokers is compliance with the therapy, as is the case with most attempts at aversion therapy. Overall, in programs addressing substance use disorders, the results with aversion therapy do not compare favorably with therapies focusing on positive reward.

## Description

According to the American Psychiatric Association, aversion therapy should be practiced only in very specialized centers.

## KEY TERMS

**Aversion**—A strong feeling of dislike or disgust. Aversion therapy makes use of this feeling to reduce or eliminate an undesirable behavior. Chemicals or medications used to produce unpleasant effects are called aversants.

**Classical conditioning**—A process used in psychology in which a previously neutral stimulus eventually produces a specific response by being paired repeatedly with another stimulus that produces that response. The best-known example of classical conditioning is Pavlov's dogs, who were conditioned to salivate when they heard a bell ring (the previously neutral stimulus) because the sound had been paired repeatedly with their feeding time.

**Compliance**—In medicine or psychiatry, cooperation with a treatment plan or schedule of medications.

**Detoxification**—A process in which the body is allowed to free itself of a drug while the symptoms of withdrawal are treated. It is the primary step in any treatment program for drug or alcohol abuse.

**Emetic**—A medication intended to cause vomiting. Emetics are sometimes used in aversion therapy in place of electric shock. Their most common use in mainstream medicine is in treating accidental poisoning.

**Faradic**—A type of discontinuous alternating electric current sometimes used in aversion therapy. It is named for Michael Faraday, an eminent British physicist.

**Stimulus**—Something that incites or moves a person to thought, emotion, or action. In mainstream psychotherapy, a stimulus can be anything from a certain picture or image to smell, sound, word, or idea. In aversion therapy, the stimulus is typically a mild electric shock or a medication that produces unpleasant results.

## Risks

Patients with cardiac, pulmonary, or gastrointestinal problems may experience a worsening of their symptoms, depending upon the characteristics and strength of the aversive stimuli. Some therapists have reported that patients undergoing aversion therapy, especially treatment that uses powerful chemical or pharmacological aversive stimuli, have become negative and aggressive.

## Outcomes

Depending upon the objectives established at the beginning of treatment, patients successfully completing a course of aversion therapy may see a reduction or cessation of the undesirable behavior.

Some clinicians have reported that patients undergoing aversive treatment using electric shocks have experienced increased **anxiety** and anxiety-related symptoms that may interfere with the conditioning process, as well as lead to decreased acceptance of the treatment. As indicated above, a few clinicians have reported a worrisome increase in hostility among patients receiving aversion therapy, especially those undergoing treatment using chemical aversants. Although aversion therapy has some adherents, lack of rigorous outcome studies demonstrating its effectiveness, along with the ethical objections mentioned earlier, have generated numerous opponents among clinicians as well as the general public. These opponents point out that less intrusive alternative treatments, such as **covert sensitization**, are available.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Practice Guidelines for the Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Colman, Andrew. *A Dictionary of Psychology*. New York: Oxford University, 2001.  
 Committee on the Social and Economic Impact of Gambling. *Pathological Gambling: A Critical Review*. Washington, D.C.: Committee on the Social and Economic Impact of Gambling, 1999.  
 Kaplan, Harold, and Benjamin Sadock, eds. *Synopsis of Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1998.  
 Plaud, Joseph, and Georg Eifert, eds. *From Behavior Theory to Behavior Therapy*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.

### PERIODICALS

- Howard, M. "Pharmacological Aversion Treatment of Alcohol Abuse." *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse* 27. 3 (2001): 561–85.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Association for Advancement of Behavior Therapy. 305 Seventh Avenue, 16th Floor, New York, NY 10001-6008. <<http://www.aabt.org>>.

### OTHER

- Kleber, Herbert D., et al. *Practice Guideline for Treatment of Patients with Substance Use Disorders*, 2nd ed. (2006). Available online through the American Psychiatric Association: <[http://www.psych.org/psych\\_pract/treatg/pg/SUD2ePG\\_04-28-06.pdf](http://www.psych.org/psych_pract/treatg/pg/SUD2ePG_04-28-06.pdf)>.

John Garrison, PhD  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Avoidant personality disorder

### Definition

Avoidant personality disorder is characterized by hypersensitivity to rejection and criticism, desire for uncritical acceptance by others, social withdrawal despite a desire for affection and acceptance, and low self-esteem. The behavior patterns associated with avoidant personality disorder are persistent and severe, impairing the ability to work with others or maintain social relationships.

### Description

People who are diagnosed with avoidant personality disorder desire to be in relationships with others but lack the skills and confidence that are necessary in social interactions. In order to protect themselves from anticipated criticism or ridicule, they withdraw from other people. This avoidance of interaction tends to isolate them from meaningful relationships, and serves to reinforce their nervousness and awkwardness in social situations.

The behavior of people with avoidant personality disorder is characterized by social withdrawal, shyness, distrustfulness, and emotional distance. These people tend to be very cautious when they speak, and they convey a general impression of awkwardness in their manner. Most are highly self-conscious and self-critical about their problems relating to others.

Avoidant personalities can be categorized into four types:

- Shy/social phobic avoidants: Use withdrawal mechanisms to manage social anxiety. Shy avoidants have difficulty forming relationships with others and may be seriously isolated. Social phobic avoidants frequently are more symbolic in their withdrawal, and tend to express their avoidance particularly in situations where they are asked to perform in public. Shy/social phobic avoidants are usually perceived as self-conscious or introverted by others.
- “Mingles” avoidants: Appear to be “normal” and well-related in most situations. Although they can form new relationships, they find it difficult to sustain them over time for a variety of reasons including fear of success, desire to fail, and inability to settle down.
- “Seven year itch” avoidants: Although this type is able to form relationships, they are unable to maintain them over time. They may be able to commit fully at first, but become restless over time and leave the relationship.

- Dependent/codependent avoidants: This type of avoidant appears to want to start new relationships but are unable to sever ties to old relationships (e.g., living with one's parents) that are necessary to make that possible.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The cause of avoidant personality disorder is not clearly defined, and may be influenced by a combination of social, genetic, and biological factors. Avoidant personality traits typically appear in childhood, with signs of excessive shyness and fear when the child confronts new people and situations. These characteristics are also developmentally appropriate emotions for children, however, and do not necessarily mean that a pattern of avoidant personality disorder will continue into adulthood. When shyness, unfounded fear of rejection, hypersensitivity to criticism, and a pattern of social avoidance persist and intensify through adolescence and young adulthood, a **diagnosis** of avoidant personality disorder is often indicated.

Many persons diagnosed with avoidant personality disorder have had painful early experiences of chronic parental criticism and rejection. The need to bond with the rejecting parents makes the avoidant person hungry for relationships but their longing gradually develops into a defensive shell of self-protection against repeated parental criticisms. Ridicule or rejection by peers further reinforces the young person's pattern of social withdrawal and contributes to their fear of social contact.

#### Symptoms

The most recent edition of the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, (the fourth edition, text revision or *DSM-IV-TR*) specifies seven diagnostic criteria for avoidant personality disorder:

- The person avoids occupational activities that require significant interpersonal contact. Job interviews or promotions may be turned down because the person's own perceptions of his or her abilities do not match the job description.
- The person is reluctant to participate in social involvement without clear assurance that he or she will be accepted. People with this disorder assume other people are not safe to trust until proven otherwise. Others must offer repeated support and encouragement in order to persuade them to participate in a social event.

- The person fears being shamed or ridiculed in close relationships. As a result, people with this disorder become overly alert to behavioral cues that may indicate disapproval or rejection. They will flee a situation in which they believe that others might turn against them.
- The person is preoccupied with being criticized or rejected. Much mental and physical energy is spent brooding about and avoiding situations perceived as “dangerous.”
- The person is inhibited in unfamiliar social situations due to feelings of inadequacy. Low self-esteem undermines his or her confidence in meeting and conversing with new acquaintances.
- The person regards him- or herself as socially inept. This self-disparagement is especially apparent when the person must make social contacts with strangers. People with avoidant personality disorder perceive themselves as unappealing or inferior to others.
- The person is reluctant to take social risks, in order to avoid possible humiliation. Avoidant people seek interactions that promise the greatest amount of acceptance while minimizing the likelihood of embarrassment or rejection. They might go to a school dance, for example, but remain in one corner chatting with close friends rather than going out on the dance floor with someone they do not know well.

## Demographics

Avoidant personality disorder appears to be as frequent in males as in females. It affects between 0.5% and 1.0% of adults in the general North American population, but it has been diagnosed in approximately 10% of clinical outpatients.

## Diagnosis

Many individuals exhibit some avoidant behaviors at one point or another in their lives. Occasional feelings of self-doubt and fear in new and unfamiliar social or personal relationships are not unusual, nor are they unhealthy, as these situations may trigger feelings of inadequacy and the wish to hide from social contact in even the most self-confident individuals. An example would be the anxious hesitancy of a new immigrant in a country with a different language and strange customs. Avoidant characteristics are regarded as meeting the diagnostic criteria for a personality disorder only when: they begin to have a long-term negative impact on the affected person; they lead to functional impairment by significantly altering occupational choice or lifestyle, or otherwise impinging on quality of life; and cause significant emotional distress.

Avoidant personality disorder can occur in conjunction with other social phobias, mood and **anxiety disorders**, and **personality disorders**. The diagnosis may be complicated by the fact that avoidant personality disorder may be either the cause or result of other mood and anxiety disorders. For example, individuals who have **major depressive disorder** may begin to withdraw from social situations and experience feelings of worthlessness, symptoms that are also prominent features of avoidant personality disorder. On the other hand, the insecurity and isolation that are symptoms of avoidant personality disorder can trigger feelings of **depression**.

The characteristics of avoidant personality disorder may resemble those found in both schizoid and schizotypal personality disorders. Persons with these disorders are prone to social isolation. Those diagnosed with avoidant personality disorder, however, differ from those with schizoid or schizotypal disorder, because they want to have relationships with others but are prevented by their social inadequacies. Persons diagnosed with schizoid and schizotypal personality disorders, on the other hand, usually prefer social isolation.

Personality disorders are usually diagnosed following a complete medical history and an interview with the patient. Although there are no laboratory tests for personality disorders, the doctor may give the patient a physical examination to rule out the possibility that a general medical condition is affecting the patient's behavior. For example, people with disorders of the digestive tract may avoid social occasions for fear of a sudden attack of diarrhea or the need to vomit. If the interview with the patient suggests a diagnosis of avoidant personality disorder, the doctor may administer a diagnostic questionnaire or another type of assessment tool.

Assessment tools helpful in diagnosing avoidant personality disorder include:

- Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI)
- Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory (MCMI)
- Rorschach Psychodiagnostic Test
- Thematic Apperception Test (TAT)

In diagnosis, it is important to distinguish between the fear of relating that characterizes avoidant personality disorder from the inability to form relationships that characterizes schizoid patients. Similarly, it is important to distinguish between the fear of relationship characteristic of the avoidant personality and a healthy, natural desire to be alone.

## Treatments

The general goal of treatment in avoidant personality disorder is improvement of self-esteem and confidence. As the patient's self-confidence and social skills improve, he or she will become more resilient to potential or real criticism by others.

### *Psychodynamically oriented therapies*

These approaches are usually supportive; the therapist empathizes with the patient's strong sense of shame and inadequacy in order to create a relationship of trust. Therapy usually moves slowly at first because persons with avoidant personality disorder are mistrustful of others. Treatment that probes into their emotional state too quickly may result in more protective withdrawal by the patient. As trust is established and the patient feels safer discussing details of his or her situation, he or she may be able to draw important connections between their deeply felt sense of shame and their behavior in social situations.

### *Cognitive-behavioral therapy*

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) may be helpful in treating individuals with avoidant personality disorder. This approach assumes that faulty thinking patterns underlie the personality disorder, and therefore focuses on changing distorted cognitive patterns by examining the validity of the assumptions behind them. If a patient feels he is inferior to his peers, unlikable, and socially unacceptable, a cognitive therapist would test the reality of these assumptions by asking the patient to name friends and family who enjoy his company, or to describe past social encounters that were fulfilling to him. By showing the patient that others value his company and that social situations can be enjoyable, the irrationality of his social fears and insecurities are exposed. This process is known as "cognitive restructuring."

### *Group therapy*

**Group therapy** may provide patients with avoidant personality disorder with social experiences that expose them to feedback from others in a safe, controlled environment. They may, however, be reluctant to enter group therapy due to their fear of social rejection. An empathetic environment in the group setting can help each member overcome his or her social anxieties. **Social skills training** can also be incorporated into group therapy to enhance social awareness and feedback.

## KEY TERMS

**Cognitive restructuring**—An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping patients examine distorted patterns of perception and thought in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decreases the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood. MAOIs are also used in the treatment of avoidant personality disorder.

**Supportive**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or educational approaches to treatment.

### *Family and marital therapy*

Family or couple therapy can be helpful for a patient who wants to break out of a family pattern that reinforces the avoidant behavior. The focus of marital therapy would include attempting to break the cycle of rejection, criticism or ridicule that typically characterizes most avoidant marriages. Other strategies include helping the couple to develop constructive ways of relating to one another without shame.

### *Medications*

The use of monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) has proven useful in helping patients with avoidant personality disorder to control symptoms of social unease and experience initial success. The major drawback of these medications is limitations on the patient's diet. People taking MAOIs must avoid foods containing a substance known as tyramine, which is found in most cheeses, liver, red wines, sherry, vermouth, beans with broad pods, soy sauce, sauerkraut, and meat extracts.

### *Prognosis*

Higher-functioning persons with avoidant personality disorder can generally be expected to improve their social awareness and improve their social skills to some degree. But because of the significant social fear and deep-seated feelings of inferiority, these patterns usually do not change dramatically. Lower-functioning persons are likely to drop out of treatment if they become too anxious.

## Prevention

Since avoidant personality disorder usually originates in the patient's family of origin, the only known preventive measure is a nurturing, emotionally stimulating, and expressive family environment.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text revision. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Freeman, Arthur, James Pretzer, Barbara Fleming, and Karen M. Simon. *Clinical Applications of Cognitive Therapy*, 2nd ed. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 2004.
- Kantor, Martin. *Distancing: Avoidant Personality Disorder*, Revised and expanded. Westport, CT: Praeger, 2003.
- Newman, Cory F., and Randy Fingerhut. "Psychotherapy for Avoidant Personality Disorder." *Oxford Textbook of Psychotherapy*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005, 311–19.
- Rasmussen, Paul R. *The Personality-Guided Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2005.
- Silverstein, Marshall L. *Disorders of the Self: A Personality-Guided Approach*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Emmelkamp, Paul M., Ank Benner, Antoinette Kuipers, Guus A. Feiertag, Harrie C. Koster, and Franske J. van Apeldoorn. "Comparison of Brief Dynamic and Cognitive-Behavioural Therapies in Avoidant Personality Disorder." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 189. 1 (July 2006): 60–64.
- Gude, Tore, Sigmund Karterud, Geir Pedersen, and Erik Falkum. "The Quality of the Diagnostic and Statistical

Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition Dependent Personality Disorder Prototype." *Comprehensive Psychiatry* 47.6 (November–December 2006): 456–62.

Herbert, James D. "Social Skills Training Augments the Effectiveness of Cognitive Behavioral Group Therapy for Social Anxiety Disorder." *Behavior Therapy* 36.2 (Spring 2005): 125–38.

Hopwood, C. J., L. C. Morey, J. G. Gunderson A. E. Skodol, M. T. Shea, C. M. Grilo, and T. H. McGlashan. "Hierarchical Relationships Between Borderline, Schizotypal, Avoidant and Obsessive-Compulsive Personality Disorders." *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 113. 5 (May 2006): 430–39.

Hummelen, Benjamin, Theresa Wilberg, Geir Pedersen, and Sigmund Karterud. "An Investigation of the Validity of the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition Avoidant Personality Disorder Construct as a Prototype Category and the Psychometric Properties of the Diagnostic Criteria." *Comprehensive Psychiatry* 47.5 (September–October 2006): 376–83.

Huprich, Steven K. "Differentiating Avoidant and Depressive Personality Disorders." *Journal of Personality Disorders* 19.6 (December 2005): 659–73.

Huprich, Steven K., Mark Zimmerman, and Iwona Chelmianski. "Disentangling Depressive Personality Disorder from Avoidant, Borderline, and Obsessive-Compulsive Personality Disorders." *Comprehensive Psychiatry* 47.4 (July–August 2006): 298–306.

Ralevski, E., and others. "Avoidant Personality Disorder and Social Phobia: Distinct Enough to Be Separate Disorders?" *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 112.3 (September 2005): 208–14.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Gary Gilles, MA  
Paula Ford-Martin, MA  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

# B

## Barbiturates

### Definition

Barbiturates are a large class of drugs, consisting of many different brand-name products with generic equivalents, which are used primarily for mild sedation, general anesthesia, and as a treatment for some types of epilepsy. One barbiturate, butalbital, exists only as a component of headache preparations that also include acetaminophen and sometimes caffeine. The most common members of the barbiturate family are phenobarbital (Luminal), pentobarbital (Nembutal), amobarbital (Amytal), secobarbital (Seconal), thiopental (Pentothal, Sodium Pentothal, also colloquially known as “truth serum”), methohexitol (Brevital), and butalbital (a component of Fiorinal and Fioricet). They exist in numerous formulations and strengths.

### Purpose

Barbiturates are used to sedate patients prior to surgery as well as to produce general anesthesia, to treat some forms of epilepsy, and to treat simple and migraine headache. These drugs are highly addictive and are often abused as recreational drugs. Although still commercially available, barbiturates such as secobarbital, pentobarbital, and amobarbital are no longer routinely recommended for the treatment of **insomnia** because of their ability to cause dependence, tolerance, and withdrawal. In general, barbiturates lose their efficacy when they are used to treat insomnia on a daily basis for more than two weeks. These drugs also have significant side effects when taken in large doses and can cause respiratory failure and death. Newer and safer medicines are now available for the treatment of insomnia.

### Description

The therapeutic effects of barbiturates as a class of drugs are all related to their ability to depress the

central nervous system, producing sedation. At high enough doses and with certain preparations, they can induce sleep. All barbiturates also have anticonvulsant properties although phenobarbital is the preferred barbiturate to treat epilepsy because it can produce anticonvulsant effects at levels low enough not to cause extreme sedation or sleep.

### Recommended dosage

The typical dose of phenobarbital for use as an anticonvulsant in adults is 60–250 mg per day. When a series of serious **seizures** known as status epilepticus occurs, adults are usually first given 300–800 mg intravenously (directly into the vein) followed by 120–240 mg every 20 minutes up to a maximum of 1,000–2,000 mg. For sedation, adults are given 30–120 mg per day divided into two or three doses. For sedation before surgery, 100–200 mg are given in an intramuscular injection (a shot) about one hour before the surgery.

The typical dose for an anticonvulsant effect for children must be determined by the doctor, but the usual dose ranges from about 0.45 mg to 2.7 mg per pound (or 1 to 6 mg per kg) per day. For anesthesia before surgery in children, 0.45 mg to 1.35 mg per pound (1 mg to 3 mg per kg) of body weight is given about one hour before the surgery.

The typical dose of butalbital, as a component of headache preparations such as Fiorinal or Fioricet, is 50–100 mg administered every four to six hours as needed.

### Precautions

Children who are hyperactive should not receive phenobarbital or other barbiturates. Paradoxically, some children become stimulated and hyperactive after receiving barbiturates.

The use of barbiturates in the elderly (over age 65) should be watched closely. Elderly patients must be carefully monitored for confusion, agitation, **delirium**,

and excitement if they take barbiturates. Barbiturates should be avoided in elderly patients who are receiving drugs for other mental disorders such as **schizophrenia** or **depression**.

Women should be aware that barbiturate use can make hormonal birth control pills containing estrogen less effective. Women should not use barbiturates during pregnancy unless they are necessary to control seizures. In these cases, they should take the minimum amount required to control the seizures. Barbiturate use by pregnant women has been associated with increased risk of fetal damage, newborn bleeding problems, bleeding during childbirth, and, if occurring in the final three months of gestation, dependency in the newborn with attendant withdrawal effects after birth. One study has found a potential link between barbiturate use during pregnancy and **brain** tumors in the infant. Women who are breast-feeding should not take barbiturates because these drugs enter the breast milk and may cause serious side effects in the nursing baby.

Long-term barbiturate use should be avoided unless there is a strong medical need, as in the case of epilepsy, because of the potential for **addiction**, dependence, tolerance, and withdrawal. People should not drive, operate heavy equipment, or perform other hazardous activities requiring mental alertness while taking barbiturates.

### Side effects

The most common side effect of barbiturate use is drowsiness. Less common side effects include agitation, confusion, breathing difficulties, abnormally low blood pressure, nausea, vomiting, constipation, lowered body temperature, decreased heart rate, movement difficulty, nightmares, **anxiety**, nervousness, mental depression, and dizziness. Rare but reported side effects include fever, headache, anemia, allergic reactions, and liver damage.

### Interactions

Patients should always tell their doctor and dentist when they are taking barbiturates. Barbiturates should generally not be taken with other drugs used to treat mental disorders. In addition, patients should inform their healthcare providers about any health or medical problems, especially a history of alcohol or drug **abuse**, problems with anemia, asthma, diabetes, hyperthyroid, or kidney or liver disease, among others.

There are a number of drugs that barbiturates should not be combined with because the barbiturates may increase the rate of breakdown of these drugs, thus reducing their availability to the body. These

### KEY TERMS

**Addiction**—A compulsive need for, and use of, a habit-forming substance or behavior.

**Anticonvulsant**—A medication used to control the abnormal electrical activity in the brain that causes seizures.

**Corticosteroids**—Any one of a number of hormonal steroid compounds that are derived from the adrenal gland.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness.

**Dependence**—The adaptation of neurons and other physical processes to the use of a drug, followed by withdrawal symptoms when the drug is removed; physiological and/or psychological addiction.

**Hyperactivity**—Behavior disturbances, usually in children and adolescents, that involve impulsiveness, low levels of concentration, and distractibility.

**Intramuscular**—An injection that is given into a muscle.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decrease the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**Status epilepticus**—Series of grand mal epileptic seizures that may occur when the patient is asleep or awake and involves diminished consciousness.

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, occurring when the drug use is discontinued.

drugs include oral corticosteroids such as prednisolone, methylprednisolone, prednisone, or dexamethasone, estrogen and oral contraceptives, blood-thinning medications such as warfarin (Coumadin), the antibiotic doxycycline (Vibramycin), and anticonvulsants such as phenytoin (Dilantin).

Barbiturates should not be combined with alcohol because the combination produces additive depressant effects in the central nervous system.

Barbiturates may lower the amount of absorption of the vitamins D and K.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Consumer Reports Staff. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*, 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.
- Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference, 2001–2002*. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.
- Hardman, Joel G., and Lee E. Limbird, eds. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.
- Mosby's GenRx Staff. *Mosby's GenRx*, 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1999.
- Venes, Donald, and Clayton L. Thomas. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*, 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

### OTHER

- Cooper, Jeffrey S. "Toxicity, Sedative-Hypnotics." <<http://www.emedicine.com/emerg/topic525.htm>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Barbiturates, Systemic." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uprdi/202081.html>>.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

tory (BDI-II) was developed and published in 1996 to reflect revisions in the fourth edition, text revision of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*, a handbook that mental health professionals use to diagnose mental disorders.

The long form of the BDI is composed of 21 questions or items, each with four possible responses. Each response is assigned a score ranging from zero to three, indicating the severity of the symptom that the patient has experienced over the past two weeks. A version designed for use by primary care providers (BDI-PC) is composed of seven self-reported items.

Individual questions of the BDI assess mood, pessimism, sense of failure, self-dissatisfaction, guilt, punishment, self-dislike, self-accusation, suicidal ideas, crying, irritability, social withdrawal, body image, work difficulties, **insomnia**, **fatigue**, appetite, weight loss, bodily preoccupation, and loss of libido. The first 13 items assess symptoms that are psychological in nature, while items 14 to 21 assess more physical symptoms.

The BDI is also used to detect depressive symptoms in a primary care setting. The BDI usually takes between five and ten minutes to complete as part of a psychological or medical examination.

## Results

The sum of all BDI item scores indicates the severity of depression. The test is scored differently for the general population and for individuals who have been clinically diagnosed with depression. For the general population, a score of 21 or over represents depression. For people who have been clinically diagnosed, scores from 0 to 9 represent minimal depressive symptoms, scores of 10 to 16 indicate mild depression, scores of 17 to 29 indicate moderate depression, and scores of 30 to 63 indicate severe depression. The BDI can distinguish between different subtypes of **depressive disorders**, such as major depression and dysthymia (a less severe form of depression).

The BDI has been extensively tested for content validity, concurrent validity, and construct validity. The BDI has content validity (the extent to which items of a test are representative of that which is to be measured) because it was constructed from a consensus among clinicians about depressive symptoms displayed by psychiatric patients. Concurrent validity is a measure of the extent to which a test concurs with already existing standards; at least 35 studies have shown concurrent validity between the BDI and such measures of depression as the Hamilton Depression Rating Scale and the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory-D. Tests for construct validity (the degree to which a test

## Beck Depression Inventory

### Definition

The Beck **Depression** Inventory (BDI) is a series of 21 self-reported questions developed to measure the intensity, severity, and depth of depressive symptoms in patients aged 13–80. A shorter form is composed of seven questions and is designed for administration by primary care providers.

### Purpose

The BDI was first developed by Aaron T. Beck, a pioneer in cognitive therapy. Its purpose is to detect, assess, and monitor changes in depressive symptoms among people in a mental health care setting.

### Precautions

The BDI is designed for use by trained professionals. It should be administered by a knowledgeable mental health professional who is trained in its use and interpretation.

### Description

The BDI was developed in 1961, adapted in 1969, and copyrighted in 1979. A second version of the inven-

## KEY TERMS

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

measures an internal construct or variable) have shown the BDI to be related to medical symptoms, **anxiety**, **stress**, loneliness, sleep patterns, alcoholism, suicidal behaviors, and adjustment among youth.

Factor analysis, a statistical method used to determine underlying relationships between variables, has also supported the validity of the BDI. The BDI can be interpreted as one syndrome (depression) composed of three factors: negative attitudes toward self, performance impairment, and somatic (bodily) disturbance.

The BDI has also been extensively tested for reliability, following established standards for psychological tests published in 1985. Internal consistency has been successfully estimated by over 25 studies in many populations. The BDI has been shown to be valid and reliable, with results corresponding to clinician ratings of depression in more than 90% of all cases.

Higher BDI scores have been shown in a few studies to be inversely related to educational attainment; the BDI, however, does not consistently correlate with sex, race, or age.

*See also* Cognitive-behavioral therapy.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Clark, David A., Aaron T. Beck, and Brad A. Alford. *Scientific Foundations of Cognitive Theory and Therapy of Depression*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003.
- Nezu, Arthur, George F. Ronan, and Elizabeth A. Meadows, eds. *Practitioner's Guide to Empirically Based Measures of Depression*. New York: Springer Publishing Company, 2006.
- Tolman, Anton O. *Depression In Adults: The Latest Assessment And Treatment Strategies*. Kansas City, MO: Compact Clinicals, 2005.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

### PERIODICALS

- Carlbring, Per, and others. "Internet vs. Paper and Pencil Administration of Questionnaires Commonly Used in

Panic/Agoraphobia Research." *Computers in Human Behavior* 23.3 (May 2007): 1421–34.

Mehl, Matthias R. "The Lay Assessment of Subclinical Depression in Daily Life." *Psychological Assessment* 18.3 (September 2006): 340–45.

Poole, Helen, Ros Bramwell, and Peter Murphy. "Factor Structure of the Beck Depression Inventory-II Patients with Chronic Pain." *Clinical Journal of Pain* 22.9 (November–December 2006): 790–98.

Snijders, A. H., M. M. Robertson, and M. Orth. "Beck Depression Inventory Is a Useful Screening Tool for Major Depressive Disorder in Gilles de la Tourette Syndrome." *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery & Psychiatry* 77.6 (June 2006): 787–89.

Solomon, Ari, and others. "Taxometric Investigation of Unipolar Depression in a Large Community Sample." *Psychological Medicine* 36.7 (July 2006): 973–85.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

The Center for Mental Health Services Knowledge Exchange Network (KEN). U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Telephone: (800) 789-2647. <<http://www.mentalhealth.org>>.

National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place 3, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (703) 524-7600 or (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Depressive and Manic Depressive Association (NDMDA). 730 N. Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago IL 60601-3526. Telephone: (314) 642-0049 or (800) 826-3632. <<http://www.ndmda.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). Center for Mental Health Services (CMHS), Department of Health and Human Services. 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville MD 20857. <<http://www.samhsa.org>>.

Michael Polgar, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Bedwetting see **Enuresis**

## Behavior modification

### Definition

Behavior modification is a treatment approach, based on the principles of operant conditioning, that replaces undesirable behaviors with more desirable ones through positive or negative **reinforcement**.

## B.F. SKINNER (1894–1956)

B. F. Skinner was born in Susquehanna, Pennsylvania. Skinner became interested in behavioristic psychology after reading the works of John Watson and Ivan Pavlov. He entered Harvard University as a graduate student in psychology in 1928 and received his degree three years later. While at Harvard, he laid the foundation for a new system of behavioral analysis through his research in the field of animal learning, utilizing unique experimental equipment of his own design.

His most successful and well-known apparatus, known as the Skinner Box, was a cage in which a laboratory rat could, by pressing on a bar, activate a mechanism that would drop a food pellet into the cage. Another device recorded each press of the bar, producing a permanent record of experimental results without the presence of a tester. Skinner analyzed the rats' bar-pressing behavior by varying his patterns of reinforcement (feeding) to learn their responses to different schedules (including random ones). Using this box to study how rats "operated on" their environment led Skinner to formulate the principle of operant conditioning—applicable to a wide range of both human and animal behaviors—through which an experimenter can gradually shape the behavior of a subject by manipulating its responses through reinforcement or lack of it. In contrast to Pavlovian, or response, conditioning, which depends on an outside stimulus, Skinner's operant conditioning depends on the subject's responses themselves. Skinner introduced the concept of operant conditioning to the public in his first book, *The Behavior of*

*Organisms* (1938). His ideas eventually became so influential that the American Psychological Association created a separate division of studies related to them (Division 25: "The Experimental Analysis of Behavior"), and four journals of behaviorist research were established.

Skinner's work was also influential in the clinical treatment of mental and emotional disorders. In the late 1940s he began to develop the behavior modification method, in which subjects receive a series of small rewards for desired behavior. Considered a useful technique for psychologists and psychiatrists with deeply disturbed patients, behavior modification has also been widely used by the general population in overcoming obesity, shyness, speech defects, addiction to smoking, and other problems. Extending his ideas to the realm of philosophy, Skinner concluded that all behavior was the result of either positive or negative reinforcement, and thus the existence of free will was merely an illusion. To explore the social ramifications of his behaviorist principles, he wrote the novel *Walden Two* (1948), which depicted a utopian society in which all reinforcement was positive. While detractors of this controversial work regarded its vision of social control through strict positive reinforcement as totalitarian, the 1967 founding of the Twin Oaks Community in Virginia was inspired by Skinner's ideas. Skinner elaborated further on his ideas about positive social control in his book *Beyond Freedom and Dignity* (1971), which critiques the notion of human autonomy, arguing that many actions ascribed to free will are performed due to necessity.

### Purpose

Behavior modification is used to treat a variety of problems in both adults and children. It has been successfully used to treat **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD), **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD), phobias, **enuresis** (bed-wetting), **anxiety** disorder, and **separation anxiety disorder**, among others.

### Description

Behavior modification is based on the principles of operant conditioning, which were developed by American behaviorist B. F. Skinner (1904–1990). Skinner formulated the concept of operant conditioning, through which behavior could be shaped by reinforcement or lack of it. Skinner considered his concept applicable to a wide range of both human and animal behaviors and introduced operant conditioning to the general public in his 1938 book, *The Behavior of Organisms*. It is distinguished by a focus on behavior

and its consequences. Other related forms of therapy, such as **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, may take into account internal motivation and feelings as well.

One behavior modification technique that is widely used is positive reinforcement, which encourages certain behaviors through a system of rewards. In behavior therapy, it is common for the therapist to draw up a contract with the client establishing the terms of the reward system. The system can consist of goals, rewards, and consequences. In addition to being practiced either consciously or unconsciously by educators and parents in general, this system also has come into widespread use as a systematic approach for addressing behaviors in children with attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder.

Behavior modification can also discourage unwanted behavior, through either negative reinforcement or punishment. Negative reinforcement refers to a behavior that, when its elimination depends on a

response, the behavior will increase the rate of recurrence or likelihood of that response. Punishment is the application of an aversive or unpleasant stimulus in reaction to a particular behavior. For children, this could be the removal of television privileges when they disobey their parents or teachers. The removal of reinforcement altogether is called extinction. Extinction eliminates the incentive for unwanted behavior by withholding the expected response. A widespread parenting technique based on extinction is the time-out, in which a child is separated from the group when he or she misbehaves. This technique removes the expected reward of parental attention.

## Results

Normal results are that undesirable behaviors are replaced with more desirable ones.

*See also* Aversion therapy; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Token economy system.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Martin, Garry. *Behavior Modification: What It Is and How to Do It*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1988.

### OTHER

Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapies. 305 Seventh Avenue, Floor 16. New York, NY 10001. Telephone: (212) 647-1890. <<http://www.aabt.org/>>. "Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." Bethesda (MD): National Institute of Mental Health, National Institutes of Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; (2006). NIH publication No. 3572. Available online at <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/adhd.cfm>>.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Behavior therapy see **Cognitive-behavioral therapy**

Behavioral addiction see **Process addiction**

Behavioral self-control training see **Self-control strategies**

Benadryl see **Diphenhydramine**

## Bender Gestalt Test

### Definition

The Bender Gestalt Test, or the Bender Visual Motor Gestalt Test, is a psychological assessment instrument used to evaluate visual-motor functioning

and visual perception skills in both children and adults. Scores on the test are used to identify possible organic **brain** damage and the degree maturation of the nervous system. The Bender Gestalt was developed by **psychiatrist** Lauretta Bender in the late nineteenth century.

### Purpose

The Bender Gestalt Test is used to evaluate visual maturity, visual motor integration skills, style of responding, reaction to frustration, ability to correct mistakes, planning and organizational skills, and motivation. Copying figures requires fine motor skills, the ability to discriminate between visual stimuli, the capacity to integrate visual skills with motor skills, and the ability to shift attention from the original design to what is being drawn.

### Precautions

The Bender Gestalt Test should not be administered to an individual with severe visual impairment unless his or her vision has been adequately corrected with eyeglasses. Additionally, the test should not be given to an examinee with a severe motor impairment, as the impairment would affect his or her ability to draw the geometric figures correctly. The test scores might thereby be distorted.

The Bender Gestalt Test has been criticized for being used to assess problems with organic factors in the brain. This criticism stems from the lack of specific signs on the Bender Gestalt Test that are definitively associated with brain injury, **mental retardation**, and other physiological disorders. Therefore, when making a **diagnosis** of brain injury, the Bender Gestalt Test should never be used in isolation. When making a diagnosis, results from the Bender Gestalt Test should be used in conjunction with other medical, developmental, educational, psychological, and neuropsychological information.

Finally, psychometric testing requires administration and evaluation by a clinically trained examiner. If a scoring system is used, the examiner should carefully evaluate its reliability and validity, as well as the normative sample being used. A normative sample is a group within a population who takes a test and represents the larger population. This group's scores on a test are then used to create "norms" with which the scores of test takers are compared.

### Description

The Bender Gestalt Test is an individually administered pencil and paper test used to make a diagnosis of brain injury. There are nine geometric figures drawn

in black. These figures are presented to the examinee one at a time; then, the examinee is asked to copy the figure on a blank sheet of paper. Examinees are allowed to erase, but cannot use any mechanical aids (such as rulers). The popularity of this test among clinicians is most likely the short amount of time it takes to administer and score. The average amount of time to complete the test is five to ten minutes.

The Bender Gestalt Test lends itself to several variations in administration. One method requires that the examinee view each card for five seconds, after which the card is removed. The examinee draws the figure from memory. Another variation involves having the examinee draw the figures by following the standard procedure. The examinee is then given a clean sheet of paper and asked to draw as many figures as he or she can recall. Last, the test is given to a group, rather than to an individual (i.e., standard administration). It should be noted that these variations were not part of the original test.

## Results

A scoring system does not have to be used to interpret performance on the Bender Gestalt Test; however, there are several reliable and valid scoring systems available. Many of the available scoring systems focus on specific-type difficulties experienced by the test taker. These difficulties may indicate poor visual-motor abilities that include:

- angular difficulty: This includes increasing, decreasing, distorting, or omitting an angle in a figure.
- bizarre doodling: This involves adding peculiar components to the drawing that have no relationship to the original Bender Gestalt figure.
- closure difficulty: This occurs when the examinee has difficulty closing open spaces on a figure, or connecting various parts of the figure. This results in a gap in the copied figure.
- cohesion: This involves drawing a part of a figure larger or smaller than shown on the original figure and out of proportion with the rest of the figure. This error may also include drawing a figure or part of a figure significantly out of proportion with other figures that have been drawn.
- collision: This involves crowding the designs or allowing the end of one design to overlap or touch a part of another design.
- contamination: This occurs when a previous figure, or part of a figure, influences the examinee in adequate completion of the current figure. For example, an examinee may combine two different Bender Gestalt figures.
- fragmentation: This involves destroying part of the figure by not completing or breaking up the figures in ways that entirely lose the original design.
- impotence: This occurs when the examinee draws a figure inaccurately and seems to recognize the error, then, he or she makes several unsuccessful attempts to improve the drawing.
- irregular line quality or lack of motor coordination: This involves drawing rough lines, particularly when the examinee shows a tremor motion, during the drawing of the figure.
- line extension: This involves adding or extending a part of the copied figure that was not on the original figure.
- omission: This involves failing to adequately connect the parts of a figure or reproducing only parts of a figure.
- overlapping difficulty: This includes problems in drawing portions of the figures that overlap, simplifying the drawing at the point that it overlaps, sketching or redrawing the overlapping portions, or otherwise distorting the figure at the point at which it overlaps.
- perseveration: This includes increasing, prolonging, or continuing the number of units in a figure. For example, an examinee may draw significantly more dots or circles than shown on the original figure.
- retrogression: This involves substituting more primitive figures for the original design—for example, substituting solid lines or loops for circles, dashes for dots, dots for circles, circles for dots, or filling in circles. There must be evidence that the examinee is capable of drawing more mature figures.
- rotation: This involves rotating a figure or part of a figure by 45° or more. This error is also scored when the examinee rotates the stimulus card that is being copied.
- scribbling: This involves drawing primitive lines that have no relationship to the original Bender Gestalt figure.
- simplification: This involves replacing a part of the figure with a more simplified figure. This error is not due to maturation. Drawings that are primitive in terms of maturation would be categorized under “Retrogression.”
- superimposition of design: This involves drawing one or more of the figures on top of each other.
- workover: This involves reinforcing, increased pressure, or overworking a line or lines in a whole or part of a figure.

## KEY TERMS

**Psychometric testing**—Pertaining to testing and measurement of mental or psychological abilities. Psychometric tests convert an individual's psychological traits and attributes into a numerical estimation or evaluation.

Additionally, observing the examinee's behavior while drawing the figures can provide the examiner with an informal evaluation and data that can supplement the formal evaluation of the examinee's visual and perceptual functioning. For example, if an examinee takes a large amount of time to complete the geometric figures, it may suggest a slow, methodical approach to tasks, compulsive tendencies, or depressive symptoms. If an examinee rapidly completes the test, this could indicate an impulsive style.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Hutt, M. L. *The Hutt Adaptation of the Bender Gestalt Test*. New York: Grune and Stratton, 1985.
- Kaufman, Alan, S., and Elizabeth O. Lichtenberger. *Assessing Adolescent and Adult Intelligence*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2001.
- Koppitz, E. M. *The Bender Gestalt Test for Young Children*. Vol. 2. New York: Grune and Stratton, 1975.
- Pascal, G. R., and B. J. Sutell. *The Bender Gestalt Test: Quantification and Validation for Adults*. New York: Grune and Stratton, 1951.
- Sattler, Jerome M. "Assessment of visual-motor perception and motor proficiency." In *Assessment of Children: Behavioral and Clinical Applications*. 4th ed. San Diego: Jerome M. Sattler, Publisher, Inc., 2002.
- Watkins, E. O. *The Watkins Bender Gestalt Scoring System*. Novato, CA: Academic Therapy, 1976.

#### PERIODICALS

- Piotrowski, C. "A Review of the Clinical and Research Use of the Bender Gestalt Test." *Perceptual and Motor Skills* 81 (1995): 1272-1274.



**Generic benzodiazepam tablets.** (David Hoffman Photo Library/Alamy)

prescribed drugs for producing anti-anxiety effects. Benzodiazepines are also widely prescribed for muscle spasticity, convulsive disorders, pre-surgical sedation, involuntary **movement disorders**, and **detoxification** from alcohol and other substances. The action of benzodiazepines result is primarily from effects on the central nervous system. However, the benzodiazepines are not simply neuronal depressants, they have a complex pharmacological profile such that the clinical usefulness of individual drugs varies widely.

### Description

While the selectivity of unique benzodiazepine drugs allows them to have therapeutic potential for various conditions, this class of drugs has a common sedative profile. The sedative properties of benzodiazepines progress through a continuum from sedation to hypnosis to stupor. The sedation component is associated with memory impairment and retrograde **amnesia** for events that occur while under the effects of the drug. Benzodiazepines increase total sleep time. Benzodiazepine use is associated with refreshing sleep even though not all stages of sleep are affected equally. Other effects of benzodiazepines that can be produced at non-sedative doses are muscle relaxation, anti-seizure activity, and analgesia. The anti-anxiety effects of benzodiazepines relieve the excessive or exaggerated debilitating generalized worry about everyday life events.

## Benzodiazepines

### Definition

Benzodiazepines belong to a class of drugs with sedative and hypnotic properties. The principal use of this class of drugs is to produce drowsiness and enable sleep, although they are among the most commonly

### Mechanism of action

Benzodiazepines affect a key neurotransmitter in the **brain** called gamma-amino butyric acid (GABA). This neurotransmitter has an inhibitory effect on

neurons. Benzodiazepines enhance the affinity of the recognition site on the GABA receptor for GABA, resulting in an increase in GABA-mediated inhibition. Activation of the GABA receptor complex is thought to be responsible for producing the therapeutic anti-anxiety effects of benzodiazepines and for mediating many of the side effects of these drugs.

In addition to benzodiazepines, other drugs affect the GABA receptor complex, which serves as a primary site of action of benzodiazepines, **barbiturates**, and other sedative-hypnotics, such as alcohol. Benzodiazepines and barbiturates act on separate binding sites on the receptor to enhance the inhibitory action of GABA. They do so by altering the receptor so that it has a greater binding affinity for GABA. Ethanol modifies the receptor by altering its membrane environment so that it has increased affinity for GABA and the other sedative-hypnotic drugs. Benzodiazepines, barbiturates, and ethanol all have related actions on a common receptor type (GABA receptors), which explains their pharmacologic synergy and the therapeutic benefit of benzodiazepines in alcohol detoxification.

### Side effects

Benzodiazepines are central nervous system depressants, and the major side effects of these drugs are an extension of their actions. However, paradoxical effects such as increased **anxiety**, hostility, irritability, vivid dreams, psychoses, and confusion have been reported as side effects of this class of drugs. Other acute side effects include skin rash, nausea, headache, vertigo, and irregular menses. Long-term treatment can result in both tolerance (a decrease in efficacy to a repeated dose) and dependence (real or perceived reliance on the drug to function).

Tolerance to all of the actions of benzodiazepines can develop. Tolerance to the hypnotic effects develops rapidly, which is beneficial against daytime anxiety but makes management of **insomnia** difficult. Initial relief of insomnia is followed by a gradual loss of efficacy. Tolerance to the anxiolytic effect develops more slowly than tolerance to the hypnotic effects, but benzodiazepines often lose their efficacy after four to six months of regular use. Benzodiazepine therapy is often continued to suppress withdrawal symptoms. Dosage escalation maintains tolerance and dependence, and patients may have difficulty discontinuing drug therapy. Thus, after long-term use of benzodiazepines (or ethanol), there is a decrease in the efficacy of GABA receptors, presumably as a result of tolerance. When benzodiazepines or ethanol are abruptly discontinued, this decreased inhibitory neurotransmis-

## KEY TERMS

**Barbiturate**—General neuronal depressant.

**Central nervous system**—The brain and spinal cord.

**Gamma amino butyric acid (GABA)**—A chemical messenger in the brain that provides neuronal inhibition.

**Hypnotic**—A drug that produces drowsiness and facilitates the onset and maintenance of sleep.

**Neurotransmitters**—Chemical messengers that transmit signals between nerves.

**Sedative**—A drug that decreases activity and calms the recipient.

sion is unmasked, leading to withdrawal symptoms such as anxiety, insomnia, autonomic hyperactivity (for example, increased heart rate and dilated pupils), and, possibly, **seizures**. Withdrawal symptoms emerge with rapid dose reduction or abrupt discontinuation of the drug.

Long-term use of benzodiazepines may also result in psychologic dependence or “overreliance” on the drug, including a loss of self-confidence and drug-seeking behavior. Patients may be reluctant to discontinue the drug because of anticipatory anxiety.

### Interactions

Additive effects with other central nervous system depressants (for example, barbiturates, or ethanol) are the primary drug interactions observed with benzodiazepines.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Doble, Adam, Ian Martin, and David J. Nutt. *Calmng the Brain: Benzodiazepines and Related Drugs from Laboratory to Clinic*. London: Taylor and Francis, 2004.

Hardman, Joel Griffith, Lee E. Limbird, and Alfred G. Gilman. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

Andrew J. Bean, PhD

## Benztropine

### Definition

Benztropine is classified as an antiparkinsonian agent. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Cogentin and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Benztropine is used to treat a group of side effects (called parkinsonian side effects) that include tremors, difficulty walking, and slack muscle tone. These side effects may occur in patients who are taking antipsychotic medications used to treat mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**.

### Description

Some medicines, called antipsychotic drugs, that are used to treat schizophrenia and other mental disorders can cause side effects that are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease. Patients do not have Parkinson's disease, but they may experience shaking in muscles while at rest, difficulty with voluntary movements, and poor muscle tone. These symptoms are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease.

One way to eliminate these undesirable side effects is to stop taking the antipsychotic medicine. Unfortunately, the symptoms of the original mental disorder usually come back, so simply stopping the antipsychotic medication is not a reasonable option in most cases. Some drugs that control the symptoms of Parkinson's disease, such as benztropine, also control the parkinsonian side effects of antipsychotic medicines.

Benztropine works by restoring the chemical balance between **dopamine** and acetylcholine, two neurotransmitter chemicals in the **brain**. Taking bennztropine along with the antipsychotic medicine helps to control symptoms of the mental disorder, while reducing parkinsonian side effects. Benzotropine is in the same family of drugs (commonly known as anticholinergic drugs) as **biperiden** and **trihexyphenidyl**.

### Recommended dosage

Benztropine is available in 0.5-, 1.0-, and 2.0-mg tablets and in an injectable form containing 2 mg of drug in each 2 mL glass container. For the treatment of tremors, poor muscle tone, and similar side effects, benzotropine should be started at a dose of 1 to 2 mg orally. In cases of severe side effects, benzotropine can be given as an intramuscular injection two to three

times daily or as needed. Parkinson-like side effects caused by antipsychotic drugs may come and go, so benzotropine may not be needed on a regular basis. Benzotropine may also be prescribed to prevent these side effects before they actually occur. This is called a prophylactic (preventative) therapy.

### Precautions

Benztropine should never be used in children under age three. It should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in older children and in the elderly. Like all anticholinergic drugs, benzotropine decreases the body's ability to sweat and cool itself. People who are unaccustomed to being outside in hot weather should take care to stay as cool as possible and drink extra fluids. People who are chronically ill, have a central nervous system disease, or who work outside during hot weather may need to avoid taking benzotropine.

People who have the following medical problems may experience increased negative side effects when taking benzotropine. Those who have these problems should discuss their conditions with their physician before starting the drug:

- glaucoma, especially closed-angle glaucoma
- intestinal obstruction
- prostate enlargement
- urinary bladder obstruction

Although rare, some patients experience euphoria while taking benzotropine and may **abuse** it for this reason. Euphoria can occur at doses only two to four times the normal daily dose. Patients with a history of drug abuse should be observed carefully for benzotropine abuse.

### Side effects

Although benzotropine helps to control the side effects of antipsychotic drugs, it can produce side effects of its own. A person taking benzotropine may have some of the following reactions, which may vary in intensity:

- dry mouth
- dry skin
- blurred vision
- nausea or vomiting
- constipation
- disorientation
- drowsiness
- irritability
- increased heart rate
- urinary retention

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heart-beat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Catheterization**—Placing a tube in the bladder so that it can be emptied of urine.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Parkinsonian**—Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by reducing or temporarily discontinuing benzotropine. Chewing sugarless gum or sucking on sugarless candy may also help to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement may be especially prone to urinary retention. Symptoms of this problem include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty passing urine than usual. This side effect may be severe and require discontinuation of the drug. Urinary retention may require catheterization. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

Patients who take an overdose of benzotropine are treated with forced vomiting, removal of stomach contents and stomach washing, activated charcoal, and respiratory support if needed. They are also given

physostigmine, an antidote for anticholinergic drug poisoning.

## Interactions

When drugs such as benzotropine are taken with antidepressants such as **amitriptyline**, **imipramine**, **trimipramine**, **desipramine**, **nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, **amoxapine**, and **doxepin** or with many antihistamines that also have anticholinergic properties, the effects and side effects of benzotropine are usually intensified.

Drugs such as benzotropine decrease the speed with which food moves through the stomach and intestines. Because of this, the absorption of other drugs being taken may be enhanced by benzotropine. Patients receiving benzotropine should be alerted to unusual responses to other drugs they might be taking and report any changes to their physicians.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

de Leon, Jose. "Benzotropine Equivalents for Antimuscarinic Medication." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 162.3 (March, 2005): 627.

Penetar, David M., and others. "Benzotropine Pretreatment Does Not Affect Responses to Acute Cocaine Administration in Human Volunteers." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 21.8 (Dec. 2006): 549–59.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Bereavement

### Definition

Bereavement is the experience a person has when a loved one dies.

### Description

Bereavement usually refers to the experience of losing a loved one to death. **Grief** refers to the reaction people have to loss or bereavement. Most people can expect to be bereaved at some point in their lifetimes.

Many people are bereaved each year. In 2003, for example, nearly 2.5 million U.S. citizens died, leaving behind many millions of bereaved individuals.

Bereavement is thus a common and normal part of life, and is not a psychiatric disorder. People who have normal, uncomplicated reactions to bereavement usually adjust to their loss over time and do not need clinical **intervention**. However, research indicates that bereavement is one of the most stressful experiences faced by people. The fourth edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV)* lists bereavement as a condition that may be a focus of clinical attention, even though it is not considered a disorder. Bereavement is associated with a high risk of psychological distress, social isolation, physical illness, and death.

Many researchers agree that bereaved people go through different phases after the loss of a loved one. In the avoidance phase, people may have difficulty understanding and coming to grips with the reality of the situation. They may experience shock, numbness, disbelief, and **denial**. In the confrontation phase, people realize the reality of their loss, and they typically have intense negative feelings such as deep sadness, guilt, helplessness, panic, confusion, powerlessness, anger, rage, and despair. They may blame themselves or others for the loss, feel that life is unjust, and experience a sense of disillusionment and a loss of faith. In the accommodation phase, people gradually adjust to their loss. People do not necessarily go through these phases in an orderly fashion. Instead they may move back and forth between them over time.

Painful feelings typically continue for many months after bereavement, but they diminish in intensity over time, eventually becoming episodic. Such feelings may reemerge in more acute forms on memorable occasions such as anniversaries and holidays, and when especially poignant memories of the deceased are recalled. While negative feelings associated with bereavement typically do not completely disappear over time, they become less debilitating and overwhelming. Successful adjustment to the loss is marked by the ability to manage these feelings effectively as they wax and wane.

Not all feelings and experiences associated with bereavement are negative. Some bereaved people feel positive emotions such as relief that the deceased is no longer suffering, particularly after a lengthy illness. Over time, some people find that bereavement, though a difficult experience, is also a time of personal growth. They may develop a new appreciation for life and come to have an increased sense of self-esteem as

they master new tasks and adjust to the experience of carrying on independently from the loved one they lost.

Adapting to loss involves recognizing and accepting the life changes that follow the loss. Finding ways to focus on the positive aspects of life and trying to find meaning in the loss are helpful coping strategies. Bereaved people often continue to have some form of relationship with the deceased person. Attachment to physical reminders of the deceased is common, especially in the initial period after bereavement. People often maintain a continuing bond with the deceased person through their religious or spiritual faith. Spiritual connections with the deceased may take the form of praying to the deceased or sensing the presence of the deceased in one's life. Many cultures endorse preserving bonds with the dead through commemorative festivals and rituals. For example, the Day of the Dead celebration in Mexico allows the bereaved to celebrate the lives of the deceased.

In the initial months of bereavement, people often have symptoms that are characteristic of clinical **depression**, such as sadness, **insomnia**, loss of appetite, and weight loss. However, because these kinds of symptoms are normal and expected reactions to loss, a **diagnosis of major depressive disorder**, or clinical depression, is not generally given unless these symptoms are present to a significant degree two months after the loss of the loved one. Although grief may produce permanent changes in bereaved people, most people are able to accept their loss over time, see that there is still potential for having satisfying relationships with people, be productive, enjoy activities, have a sense of self-esteem, and find meaning and purpose in their lives. A small minority of bereaved people, however, experience pathological grief reactions that may need clinical intervention. Pathological reactions are more common among people who suffer traumatic losses, such as the violent death of a loved one, and among people who are excessively dependent on the deceased. Some may experience major depressive disorder or **post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)**. Major depressive disorder is generally diagnosed only after two months have passed since the loss, and only if the bereaved person experiences persistent feelings of guilt that are not limited to guilt about the death of the loved one, thoughts of death that are unrelated to the death of the loved one, feelings of unworthiness, feeling slowed down, and being unable to perform normal activities. Post-traumatic **stress** disorder may be diagnosed if the bereaved person experienced the violent or traumatic death of a loved one, has recollections of

the death that are recurrent and disturbing, avoids situations that are reminiscent of the death, and has marked irritability and difficulty sleeping and concentrating. In one study, researchers found that 9% of bereaved people met the criteria for major depressive disorder four months after their loss, and 5.7% met the criteria for post-traumatic stress disorder. Some scientists have proposed that the term “complicated grief disorder” be applied to describe additional cases in which people experience pathological reactions after bereavement. In one study, 10% of bereaved people studied met the criteria for complicated grief disorder. Complicated grief disorder is not listed in the *DSM-IV*, but scientists have proposed that it be included in the next edition. Complicated grief disorder has also been referred to as atypical grief, abnormal grief, pathologic grief, and pathologic mourning. Unlike people who experience normal bereavement, people who experience complicated grief disorder remain in a chronic state of mourning. They are unable to accept their loss and to make the adjustments needed to live effectively and productively without the loved one. They feel an intense yearning for the person they lost, experience persistent distressing thoughts about the deceased, and feel bitter and agitated about their loss. Although these kinds of reactions are common and normal in people in the initial months following the loss of a loved one, persistence of such symptoms beyond six months may be indicative of a pathological condition that may not resolve naturally. People who have difficulties with attachment to others, feel unprepared for the death of the loved one, and feel unsupported after the loss are at particularly high risk for complicated grief disorder. **Psychotherapy**, medications, and participation in **support groups** may be helpful in reducing the chronic, dysfunctional levels of grief that such people experience.

It is important to note that the reactions to bereavement can vary a great deal. Reactions are influenced by the personalities of the bereaved, their relationship to the deceased, the manner of death, and the cultural background of the bereaved. There are considerable differences between cultural groups in the ways that bereavement is expressed and in the duration of normal bereavement. Variations in bereavement reactions should be taken into account when trying to determine whether the particular response of a bereaved person is normal or pathological.

Many community organizations offer support to the bereaved. These include hospitals, social service agencies, funeral homes, hospices, YMCAs, and reli-

gious organizations such as churches, synagogues, and mosques.

*See also Grief.*

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hooyman, Nancy R., and Betty J. Kramer. *Living Through Loss: Interventions Across the Life Span*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2006.
- Lendrum, Susan and Gabrielle Syme. *Gift of Tears: A Practical Approach to Loss and Bereavement in Counselling and Psychotherapy*. 2d ed. New York: Brunner-Routledge, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

- Dutton, Yulia Chentsova, and Sidney Zisook. “Adaptation to Bereavement.” *Death Studies* 29 (2005): 877–903.
- “JAMA Patient Page: Grief.” *The Journal of the American Medical Association* 23.21 (June 2005). <<http://jama.ama-assn.org/cgi/content/full/293/21/2686>>.
- Zhang, Baohui, Areej El-Jawahri, and Holly G. Prigerson. “Update on Bereavement Research: Evidence-Based Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Complicated Bereavement.” *Journal of Palliative Medicine* 9.5 (2006): 1188–1203.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Hospice Foundation. 2120 L Street NW, Suite 200, Washington, D.C. 20037. Telephone: (202) 223-0204. <<http://www.americanhospice.org>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA 22209-3901. Telephone: (703) 907-7300. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- Dougy Center for Grieving Children. P.O. Box 86552, Portland, OR 97286. Telephone: (503) 775-5683. <<http://www.dougy.org>>.
- Mental Health America. 2000 N. Beauregard Street, 6th Floor Alexandria, VA 22311. Telephone: (703) 684-7722, (800) 969-6MHA (6642). <<http://www.nmha.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (866) 615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.
- TAPS (Tragedy Assistance Program for Survivors), Inc. 2001 S Street NW, Suite 300, Washington, D.C. 20009. Telephone: (800) 959-TAPS. <<http://www.taps.org>>.
- The Compassionate Friends, Inc. P. O. Box 3696, Oak Brook, IL 60522-3696. Telephone: (877) 969-0010, (630) 990-0010. <<http://www.compassionatefriends.org>>.

Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, PhD

## Beta blockers

### Definition

Beta blockers, also known as beta antagonists, are a class of drugs that were first developed for the treatment of certain heart conditions and hypertension. Later, beta blockers were also found to be useful in glaucoma, migraine, and some psychiatric disorders such as performance **anxiety**, tremors secondary to lithium, and **movement disorders** that are caused by some drugs used in the treatment of **psychosis**. There are a number of beta blockers approved for use in the United States, including acebutolol, bisoprolol, nadolol, propranolol, and metoprolol, which have various trade names. **Propranolol** is the most commonly used in psychiatric practice.

### Purpose

Beta blockers are proven effective in the treatment of performance anxiety, lithium-induced tremors, and neuroleptic-induced akathesia (a physical condition caused by certain antipsychotic drugs). Beta blockers have sometimes been used with **benzodiazepines** in treating alcohol withdrawal.

### Description

Beta blockers act on that part of the central nervous system that controls mental alertness, lung function, heart rate, and blood vessels. Although there is more than one mechanism by which beta blockers work in anxiety states, the most beneficial result probably arises from the fact that beta blockers slow the heart to a normal rate and rhythm. Therefore, persons with performance anxiety do not experience the usual chest tightness and rapid heart rate that is associated with such acts as public speaking or acting.

Certain antipsychotic medications known as neuroleptics can cause an unwanted effect called akathesia, which is the inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive. Patients are restless, and in severe cases, may pace constantly and forcefully and repeatedly stomp their feet. Beta blockers can sometimes treat this condition with a lower incidence of side effects than other drugs.

### Recommended dosage

Propranolol is available in several different forms. Tablets are available, as are an oral solution and an injectable form. Dosage varies considerably depending on the reason for taking the drug and the age of the



**Toprol-xl (metoprolol succinate), a beta blocker used to treat angina and hypertension.** (John Kaprielian/Photo Researchers, Inc)

person. A physician will determine the appropriate dosage, although some examples are given below.

For one-time usage to treat performance anxiety, a single dose ranging from 10–40 mg taken a half hour before the performance (e.g., public speaking) is typical.

For lithium-induced tremors that cannot be controlled by reducing caffeine intake or administering the dosage of lithium at bedtime, propranolol at a dose of 20–160 mg daily can be given in two or three evenly divided doses.

For akathesia caused by antipsychotic medications, propranolol can be administered at doses of 10–30 mg three times daily.

### Precautions

Because of their ability to narrow airways, beta blockers, especially propranolol, should not be taken by people with asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). If there is an urgent need to use beta blockers in persons with respiratory problems, atenolol or metoprolol are the beta blockers of choice because they are less likely to have this side effect, although even these drugs should also be used with caution. Patients with congestive heart failure, or certain cardiac conduction abnormalities such as a heart block, should also receive these drugs with caution.

Beta blockers should be used with close physician monitoring in people with diabetes, since the symptoms of low blood sugar (increased heart rate, light-headedness, and abnormal perspiration) may be not be recognized by patients.

## KEY TERMS

**Akathesia**—Agitated or restless movement, usually affecting the legs. Movement is accompanied by a sense of discomfort and an inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive for periods of time. Akathesia is a common side effect of some neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Tremor**—Involuntary shaking of the hands and arms.

### Side effects

Beta blockers can cause undesired decreases in blood pressure and are typically not given if blood pressure is 90/60 mm Hg or less.

Beta blockers can also cause an undesired drop in heart rate. People whose resting heart rate is less than 55 beats per minute should not take beta blockers.

Occasionally, beta blockers can cause rash, weakness, nausea, vomiting, and stomach discomfort.

### Interactions

Each medication in the class of beta blockers has the potential to interact with a multitude of other medications. Anyone starting beta-blocker therapy should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. Patients should always inform all their health-care providers, including dentists, that they are taking beta blockers.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Kaplan, Harold. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1995.  
 Kay, Jerald. *Psychiatry: Behavioral Science and Clinical Essentials*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 2000.

#### OTHER

- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. “Beta-adrenergic Blocking Agents (systemic).” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202087.html>>.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Bibliotherapy

### Definition

Bibliotherapy is a form of therapy in which structured readings are used as an adjunct to **psychotherapy**. Such readings can be used to reinforce learning or insights gained in the therapeutic session or to give individuals additional professional resources to help in personal growth and development.

### Purpose

The goal of bibliotherapy is to broaden and deepen the client's understanding of the particular problem that requires treatment. The written materials may educate the client about the disorder itself or be used to increase the client's acceptance of a proposed treatment. Many people find that the opportunity to read about their problem outside the therapist's office facilitates active participation in their treatment and promotes a stronger sense of personal responsibility for recovery. In addition, many are relieved to find that others have had the same disorder or problem and have coped successfully with or recovered from it. From the therapist's standpoint, providing clients with specific information or assignments to be completed outside regular in-office sessions speeds the progress of therapy.

The goals of bibliotherapy include the following:

- provide information or insight
- stimulate discussion about problems
- communicate new values or attitudes
- create awareness of the existence of the problem in the wider population
- provide potential solutions to problems

Bibliotherapy has been applied in a variety of settings to many kinds of people with psychological problems. Practitioners have reported successful use of bibliotherapy in treating people with eating disorders, **anxiety** and mood disorders, **agoraphobia**, alcohol and **substance abuse**, and stress-related physical disorders.

### Precautions

Bibliotherapy is an adjunct to psychotherapy. It is not intended as a replacement for psychotherapy or as a self-help treatment. In addition, bibliotherapy is not likely to be useful with clients who have thought disorders, psychoses, limited intellectual ability, dyslexia, or active resistance to treatment.

## KEY TERMS

- Adjunct**—A form of treatment that is not strictly necessary but is helpful to a therapy regimen.
- Cognitive-behavioral therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.
- Dyslexia**—A type of reading disorder.
- Regimen**—A regulated course of treatment for a medical or mental disorder.

## Description

In most settings, bibliotherapy is used as an adjunct to more traditional forms of psychotherapy. Practitioners of cognitive-behavioral therapies are among the most enthusiastic supporters of bibliotherapy, particularly in the development of individualized treatment protocols, including workbooks, for specific disorders. For example, clients with eating disorders, especially **bulimia nervosa**, often benefit from receiving educational information appropriate to their stage of recovery, such as books or articles about cultural biases regarding weight, attractiveness, and dieting. This information helps clients better understand the rationale for their treatment and to work on new skills or behavioral changes more effectively.

## Aftercare

Unlike many standard forms of psychotherapy, bibliotherapeutic approaches often include specific examples of ways to deal with relapses or setbacks. As long as the clients keep these materials, they have easy access to resources for getting back on track.

## Risks

People who use self-help manuals without professional guidance run the risk of misapplying techniques or misdiagnosing their problems.

## Normal results

As with any form of treatment, bibliotherapy is effective only if it actively engages the client's desire for and belief in recovery. For many people, additional information or workbooks can be used in private to reinforce their commitment to getting better. People who lack the time or finances to attend regular psychotherapy sessions at a practitioner's office often find that bibliotherapy can bridge the gap between infre-

quent appointments. Further, the nature of the disorder itself may sometimes preclude in-office treatment, such as for people suffering from agoraphobia. Current research indicates that a bibliotherapeutic approach can be highly effective in helping people with agoraphobia better understand and cope with their symptoms.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Hipsky, Shellie Jacobs. *The Drama Discovery Curriculum: Bibliotherapy and Theater Games for Students with Emotional and Behavioral Challenges*. Lancaster, PA: Proactive Publications, 2006.

VandenBos, Gary R. ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

White, John R. "Introduction." *Cognitive-Behavioral Group Therapy for Specific Problems and Populations*, John R. White and Arthur S. Freeman, eds. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

Carlbring, Per, and others. "An Open Study of Internet-Based Bibliotherapy with Minimal Therapist Contact via Email for Social Phobia." *Clinical Psychologist* 10.1 (March 2006): 30–38.

Febraro, Greg A. R. "An Investigation Into the Effectiveness of Bibliotherapy and Minimal Contact Interventions in the Treatment of Panic Attacks." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 61.6 (June 2005): 763–79.

Floyd, Mark, and others. "Two-Year Follow-Up of Bibliotherapy and Individual Cognitive Therapy for Depressed Older Adults." *Behavior Modification* 30.3 (May 2006): 281–94.

Foster, Tom. "Read All About It: Guided Bibliotherapy for Depression in Adults." *Irish Journal of Psychological Medicine* 23.3 (September 2006): 111–13.

Frieswijk, Nynke, and others. "The Effectiveness of a Bibliotherapy in Increasing the Self-Management Ability of Slightly to Moderately Frail Older People." *Patient Education and Counseling* 61.2 (May 2006): 219–27.

Heath, Melissa Allen, and others. "Bibliotherapy: A Resource to Facilitate Emotional Healing and Growth." *School Psychology International* 26.5 (December 2005): 563–80.

Lyncham, Heidi J., and Ronald M. Rapee. "Evaluation of Therapist-Supported Parent-Implemented CBT for Anxiety Disorders in Rural Children." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 44.9 (September 2006): 1287–1300.

Norcross, John C. "Integrating Self-Help Into Psychotherapy: 16 Practical Suggestions." *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice* 37.6 (December 2006): 683–93.

Pehrsson, Dale E., and P. A. McMillen. "Bibliotherapy Evaluation Tool: Grounding Counselors in the Therapeutic Use of Literature." *Arts in Psychotherapy* 32.1 (2005): 47–59.

- Rapee, Ronald M., Maree J. Abbott, and Heidi J. Lyneham. "Bibliotherapy for Children With Anxiety Disorders Using Written Materials for Parents: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 74.3 (June 2006): 436–44.
- Reeves, T., and J. M. Stace. "Improving Patient Access and Choice: Assisted Bibliotherapy for Mild to Moderate Stress/Anxiety in Primary Care." *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing* 12.3 (June 2005): 341–46.
- Scogin, Forrest, and others. "Evidence-Based Psychotherapies for Depression in Older Adults." *Clinical Psychology: Science and Practice* 12.3 (Fall 2005): 222–37.
- Vos, Theo, and others. "Assessing Cost-Effectiveness in Mental Health: Helping Policy-Makers Prioritize and Plan Health Services." *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry* 39.8 (August 2005): 701–12.

Jane A. Fitzgerald, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD



**College students, a demographic known to engage in binge drinking, at a bar.** (Alex Segre/Alamy)

of peer pressure. Others may drink as an escapist mechanism from **stress** or problems in life.

## Binge drinking

### Definition

Binge drinking refers to the practice of drinking alcoholic beverages to the point of intoxication. However, there is no universally accepted definition for the term with regard to amount of alcohol or rate of drinking. Some researchers prefer the phrase "episodic heavy drinking," in part because of the multiple and varied definitions for the word "binge" itself, which may refer to a bout of drinking lasting several days.

The National Institute on Alcohol **Abuse** and Alcoholism defines binge drinking as "a pattern of drinking alcohol that brings blood alcohol content to 0.08% or above." For men of average weight, this means five drinks in about two hours; for women, four drinks.

### Description

Binge drinking begins with exposure to drinking and feeling the high that results. Abuse of alcohol begins with the desire to reach that state of feeling high again and again.

Binge drinking can take many forms, but its essence is drinking to get drunk. The factors involved in binge drinking are similar to those of drinking alcohol in the first place and can be characterized as social and psychological in nature. Binge drinkers report they engage in the practice for social reasons of status, to fit in with a drinking culture, and because

### Risk factors and demographics

Both personality traits and genetics contribute to a susceptibility to abuse alcohol. Lonely, shy, or depressed people are at risk, as are those with hostile or self-destructive tendencies. Children of alcoholics are at higher risk of alcoholism themselves. This fact may result from both familial patterns and genetics alike.

The pattern of alcohol consumption known as binge drinking is most often associated with college students, with good reason. In a survey, 44% of U.S. college students reported the behavior in the last two weeks before the survey was taken, and half of these reports included three or more occasions in that time period. More than 50% of the men surveyed drank five or more drinks and 40% of the women drank at least four drinks in a row. Additional risk factors were residing in a sorority or fraternity and having engaged in binge drinking in high school.

### Health consequences

A single episode of binge drinking can result in loss of coordination and impaired cognitive function and, at higher doses, loss of consciousness. At very high doses, death can occur, usually associated with severely slowed breathing. Passing out from alcohol often functions as a fail-safe, making it impossible to drink more and risking death. Thus, binge drinking is especially dangerous, because very high blood levels of

alcohol can be achieved by drinking a lot in a short period of time.

Binge drinking may be a precursor to alcohol dependence. Frequent bouts of drinking can induce tolerance, which means more alcohol needs to be taken to achieve a particular level of intoxication. Physical dependence on alcohol occurs when the body doesn't function normally without alcohol, resulting in a withdrawal syndrome.

Drinking to intoxication also increases the likelihood of participating in other high-risk behaviors such as driving under the influence, engaging in unsafe sex, and other accidents that can accompany the poor muscular and physical control that occurs with drunkenness. Intoxication can also trigger aggression and violence. Thus, binge drinking increases the chance of physical injury, property damage, and run-ins with law enforcement officials. For pregnant women, binge drinking can directly harm the fetus.

Other unwanted effects are associated with the aftereffects of a bout of heavy drinking. Binge drinkers are more likely to miss school or work or be less productive in their workaday lives. They also may suffer the consequences of inappropriate interpersonal behavior, losing friends, and making enemies.

## Prevention

Education is the primary method by which to curb binge drinking. Based on the incidence of binge drinking in college students, targeting that population is an obvious place to start. Colleges and universities have engaged in drinking awareness and prevention programs that may begin as early as freshman orientation.

Other modes of education are more general, in schools, workplaces, and the mainstream media. Healthcare providers and social service workers can dispense advice in meetings with patients and clients. For young people, evidence shows that parental influence and family values and mores are very powerful determinants of drinking behavior.

Another point of prevention is at the point of sale. Approaches that focus on places of drinking, bars and restaurants, have proved to have some effect. Changing atmospheric characteristics such as lighting and music can affect patron behavior including how much and how fast drinks are consumed. Wait staff can diminish the effects of drinking by attending to serving drinks at a slower rate, offering food or non-alcoholic drink alternatives, and finally refusing service to intoxicated customers and making sure drinkers don't drive.

## KEY TERMS

**Alcohol**—An organic chemical and the active agent in beer, wine, and liquor; chemically known as ethanol.

**Alcoholism**—Chronic and compulsive use of alcohol that interferes with everyday life as with work and personal relationships.

**Anxiolytic drug**—A drug that decreases feelings of anxiety or panic.

**Intoxication**—The state that occurs with high doses of alcohol, characterized by loss of coordination and uninhibited behavior; drunkenness.

**Physical dependence**—An altered physiological state produced by repeated administration of a drug such that continued presence of the drug is required to prevent withdrawal.

**Tolerance**—The physical state produced when, with repeated dosing, a drug produces a smaller effect or a higher dose is required to achieve the same effect.

**Withdrawal**—A syndrome of ill effects that occurs when administration of a dependence-producing drug ceases.

## Diagnosis and treatment

If physical dependence on alcohol has occurred in a person who experiences binge drinking, medical treatment is warranted to manage the withdrawal syndrome. These include prescribing anxiolytic drugs (used to control symptoms of **anxiety**) and close supervision by a physician.

Short of physical dependence, counseling may be required to address the underlying reasons for abusing alcohol. The counseling may be directed by a physician or by one of many groups such as Alcoholics Anonymous that have a proven track record of helping those with drinking problems.

## Resources

### BOOKS

“Alcohol.” *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, Professional Edition. 18th ed. Ed. Mark H. Beers. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., 2005.

### OTHER

“Binge Drinking.” *ICAP Blue Book*. International Center for Alcohol Policies, 2005. <[http://www.icap.org/portals/0/download/all\\_pdfs/blue\\_book/Module\\_06\\_Binge\\_Drinking.pdf](http://www.icap.org/portals/0/download/all_pdfs/blue_book/Module_06_Binge_Drinking.pdf)>.

"Fact Sheet: Binge Drinking on College Campuses." *Alcohol Policies Project*. Center for Science in the Public Interest, 2000. <<http://www.cspinet.org/booze/collfact1.htm>>.

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. <<http://www.niaaa.nih.gov>>.

Jill U. Adams

## Binge eating

### Description

Binge eating is a form of overeating in which a person ingests a large amount of food during a discrete period of time (within one or two hours, for example) and experiences feelings of being out of control and unable to stop eating during the episode. In practice, the duration of a binge may vary greatly from one event to the next, making it difficult to define the number of binges occurring in a given day. Binge eating often occurs in the absence of hunger and is characterized by eating very rapidly; eating alone (due to embarrassment over the amount being eaten); and having strong negative feelings, such as guilt, shame and **depression**, following the binge. Typically, a binge episode ends only when all the desirable binge foods have been consumed or when the person feels too full to continue eating.

While binge eating is a symptom of **bulimia nervosa**, it differs from this disorder in that behaviors intended to get rid of the food (fasting, excessive exercise, or using laxatives or inducing vomiting to "purge" the food from the system) are present among those with bulimia, but are generally absent among binge eaters. Binge eating may also occur in **anorexia nervosa**.

The clinician's diagnostic handbook, the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*** (fourth edition, text revised, published in 2000) subsumes binge eating under the **diagnosis** of eating disorders not otherwise specified. Binge eating disorder is, however, under consideration as a separate diagnostic category, pending further study.

### Symptoms and treatments

Binge eating episodes may occur in response to strong negative emotions, such as depression or **anxiety**, or to less defined feelings of distress or tension. The act of bingeing seems to alleviate these uncomfortable feelings temporarily and binge eaters typically



A girl binge eating. (Bubbles Photolibrary/Alamy)

describe themselves as "numb" or "spaced out" while engaged in these behaviors. Some people report that binges are related to the ingestion of certain "trigger foods," usually carbohydrates, but regardless of the stimulus, the feeling of eating without being able to control one's intake is a frightening experience for most people. The aftermath of a binge often includes an overwhelming sense of self-disgust, depression and anxiety.

While people who binge eat are clearly at high risk for becoming overweight, there are important differences between simple **obesity** and binge eating. People who binge eat are far more likely to report significant mood problems, especially depression, and to report greater dissatisfaction with their weight and shape than are comparably obese persons. They are also more likely to describe themselves as experiencing personal problems and work difficulties and to be hypersensitive to the thoughts and opinions of others. Like people with bulimia nervosa, they also have an increased likelihood of being diagnosed with major depression, substance-related disorders, and **personality disorders**, yet the overall rates of recovery for binge eating disorders are actually more favorable than those obtained in bulimia.

Binge eating is not common among the general public, but it is prevalent among persons attending weight loss clinics, where as many as half of the participants may fit this description. Both males and females develop binge-eating problems, but the rate of occurrence is 1.5 times greater among women. Age of onset is usually adolescence through young adulthood and the course of the disorder is often marked by a long history of on-again, off-again dieting.

As is the case with other forms of eating disorders, identification of specific causes for binge eating has been difficult. Since many people report relief from painful or uncomfortable mental states while bingeing, the behavior offers short-term emotional relief, making it likely to be repeated. Some investigators have considered genetic influences and personality variables. Still others have suggested that the "culture of thinness" in western societies contributes to the tendency toward harsh self-evaluation characterizing binge-eaters who then turn to food for solace.

At present, the most effective treatment approach to reducing the incidence of binge eating appears to be **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT). The goal of this therapy is the development of skills for effectively coping with emotional distress rather than seeking to numb or disguise troubling feelings. This therapy focuses on helping the affected individual to decrease the binge eating behavior by recognizing the connection between thoughts and behavior, and to change behavior by changing negative thinking patterns. Follow-up research has been very encouraging, documenting both a decrease in depressive symptoms and a corresponding likelihood of healthy weight loss as the individual achieves better control of eating behaviors.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Bowers, Wayne A. "Eating Disorders." In *Cognitive-Behavioral Group Therapy*, edited by John R. White and Arthur S. Freeman. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2000.
- Striegel-Moore, Ruth H., and Linda Smolak, eds. *Eating Disorders: Innovative Directions in Research and Practice*. Washington DC: American Psychological Association, 2001.
- Thompson, J. Kevin, and others. *Exacting Beauty: Theory, Assessment, and Treatment*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 1999.

Tobin, David L. *Coping Strategies Therapy for Bulimia Nervosa*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2000.

Jane A. Fitzgerald, Ph.D.

## Biofeedback

### Definition

Biofeedback is a technique that uses monitoring instruments to measure and feed back information about muscle tension, heart rate, sweat responses, skin temperature, or **brain** activity.

Terms associated with biofeedback include applied psychophysiology or behavioral physiology. It is also viewed as a mind-body therapy method used in complementary and alternative medicine. Biofeedback is an important part of understanding the relationship between physical state and thoughts, feelings, and behaviors.

### Purpose

The purpose of biofeedback is to enhance an individual's awareness of physical reactions to physical, emotional, or psychological **stress**, and their ability to influence their own physiological responses. The overall purpose is to develop self-regulation skills that play a role in improving health and well-being.

Biofeedback has been used as a part of a comprehensive treatment approach with a number of conditions, including **chronic pain**, irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), temporomandibular joint disorder (TMJ), Raynaud's syndrome, epilepsy, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD), **anxiety**, migraine headaches, **depression**, traumatic brain injury, and **sleep disorders**. There is some support for using biofeedback in the treatment of diabetes when self-monitoring of blood glucose levels is maintained and within the context of regular physician consultation and supervision.

Biofeedback has been a useful tool in helping individuals with urinary incontinence regain bladder control by controlling the muscles used in urination. Sensors are placed in the vaginal or anal canal to help individuals learn when the muscles are properly contracted. A recent study found that this type of biofeedback treatment was safe, effective, and well liked by women patients 55 years and older.

Conditions related to stress are also treated using biofeedback, such as certain types of headaches, high



**Biofeedback training.** A woman monitors the patient, who is connected with wires on his head to the equipment. (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

blood pressure, bruxism or teeth grinding, **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), eating disorders, **substance abuse**, and some **anxiety disorders**. In treatment of stress-related conditions, biofeedback is often used in combination with relaxation training. Sometimes, biofeedback is used to help individuals learn how to experience deeper relaxation, such as in childbirth education programs or general stress management. This is referred to as biofeedback-assisted relaxation training. Even for individuals who can achieve relaxation through other strategies such as **meditation** or relaxation, biofeedback can be a valuable added technique. Biofeedback offers special advantages, such as allowing the clinician to track closely the places where an individual tenses up and helps the individual learn what thoughts and feelings are associated with the tension.

### Precautions

Biofeedback depends on the motivation and active participation of an individual. Thus, it may not be suitable for individuals with low motivation who are not willing to take a highly active role in treatment, such as those who have depression. Also, since biofeedback focuses on initiating behavioral changes, individuals inclined to examine their past to alleviate problems and symptoms may benefit more from other treatment types, such as **psychotherapy**. Individuals with cognitive impairment may be unable to remain engaged in the treatment, depending on their level of functioning. Also, individuals with a pacemaker or other implanted electrical devices should inform their health care professional before entering biofeedback training, as certain types of bio-

feedback sensors may interfere with the devices. Patients with specific pain symptoms in which the cause is unknown should have a thorough medical examination to rule out any serious underlying disease before starting biofeedback training. Biofeedback can be used in combination with conventional therapies; however, while it can be used in combination with conventional medical treatment for illnesses such as cancer and diabetes, it should not replace those treatments.

Research on the success of biofeedback in treating certain conditions is inconclusive or needs to be validated. Some research studies use a small number of participants, which makes it difficult to generalize the results to a larger population. Also, many conditions have different subtypes with a variety of psychological, social, and physical causes. This fact, combined with research design concerns, makes it difficult to compare research studies. For example, while most studies have reported positive outcomes in the treatment of alcohol **abuse** and dependence, problems with methods and statistical analyses have called study results into question. Also, its effectiveness in treating opiate abuse or dependence has not been consistently shown, as with its use in treating menopausal hot flashes, and there are limitations in studies relating to its use in cancer treatment. Continued research is needed to further evaluate and improve different biofeedback techniques for various conditions.

### Description

According to the Association for Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback, the technique was developed in the early 1970s by psychologists and physicians. These techniques continue to be used by psychologists, physicians, nurses, and other health care professionals such as physical therapists. Prior to beginning any biofeedback training, individuals may need a comprehensive psychological, educational, and/or medical assessment. Biofeedback can be used in conjunction with nonmedical treatments, such as psychotherapy, **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, and behavioral treatment strategies.

### How biofeedback works

Biofeedback utilizes electronic sensors, or electrodes, attached to various parts of the body to detect changes in physical responses. Signals then inform the individual of these changes by means of visual or auditory signals such as a light display or a series of beeps. While the individual views or listens to feedback, he or she begins to recognize thoughts, feelings, and mental images that influence his or her physical

reactions. By monitoring this mind-body connection, the individual can use the same thoughts, feelings, and mental images as cues or reminders to become more relaxed, or to change heartbeat, brain wave patterns, body temperature, and other body functions. The individual uses trial-and-error to change the signals change in the desired direction. For example, individuals trying to control their blood pressure levels may see a light flash whenever the pressure drops below a certain level. They may then try to remember what their thoughts and feelings were at the moment and deliberately maintain them to keep the blood pressure level low.

Through training, the individual learns to control the targeted physical response and, over time, is able to recognize what is required to reduce problematic symptoms. Eventually, the external biofeedback becomes unnecessary as the individual learns to perceive internal physical responses and make the desired changes. The individual then has a powerful, portable, and self-administered treatment tool to deal with problematic symptoms.

### *Three stages of biofeedback training*

- Awareness of the problematic physical response: Individuals may complete a psychophysiological stress profile (PSP) to identify how their bodies respond to a variety of stressors and determine their ability to overcome undesired physical reactions. This involves a period of rest, stress, and recovery. For example, various sensors are attached to various parts of the body, and a baseline measurement lasting from two to four minutes records physical responses. The individual then goes through a standard set of stressors (such as rapid math calculations or running in place) each lasting from two to four minutes. This is followed by another relaxation period to determine the length of the recovery period.
- Using signals from the biofeedback equipment to control physical responses: The individual is assisted in reaching certain goals related to managing a specific physical response.
- Transferring control from biofeedback equipment or the health care professional: Individuals learn to identify triggers that alert them to implement their new-found self-regulation skills.

### *Types of biofeedback equipment*

- Electromyograph (EMG): Sensors (or electrodes) placed on the skin on pertinent parts of the body monitor electrical activity in muscles, specifically tension. This is the most frequently used biofeedback

method in the treatment of various neurologic disorders such as stroke, cerebral palsy, traumatic brain injury, and multiple sclerosis. In children and adolescents, EMG may be used to treat tension headaches, enuresis, and encopresis. In treating TMJ or bruxism, EMG sensors are placed on jaw muscles. Chronic stress is treated by monitoring muscle tension in various places on the body.

- Galvanic skin response (GSR): Sensors on the fingers monitor perspiration or sweating. This is also referred to as obtaining a skin conductance level (SCL). GSR may be used in the treatment of anxiety, fears or phobias, stress, and sleep problems.
- Temperature or thermal sensors: Sensors monitor body temperature and changes in blood flow. Changes in hand temperature, for example, can indicate relaxation when there is increased blood flow to the skin. Temperature biofeedback may be useful for treating migraine headache, Raynaud's disorder, and anxiety disorders.
- Heart rate sensors: A pulse monitor placed on the fingertip monitors pulse rate. Increases in heart rate are associated with emotional arousal, such as being angry or fearful. Decreases in heart rate are associated with relaxation.
- Capnometry (CAP): Respiratory sensors monitor oxygen intake and carbon dioxide output. This differentiates correct breathing from problematic breathing practices. Breath control training may be used to treat panic attacks, asthma, and a variety of stress-related conditions.
- Electroencephalographs (EEG) or neurofeedback: Sensors attached to the scalp monitor brain wave activity in different parts of the brain. It may be used to treat conditions with proven or suspected impact on brain wave patterns such as seizure disorders or epilepsy, ADHD, learning disabilities, migraine headaches, traumatic brain injury, and sleep disorders.

Biofeedback is geared toward whatever a person finds most appealing and understandable and provided in several formats such as auditory, visual, or multimedia. Audio feedback, that may take the form of changes in tone and pitch, is useful because visual attention is not necessary. Visual feedback can be provided in various forms such as bar or line graphs on a computer screen. Initially, it was thought that—over time—computer signals could become boring or visually unappealing. In response to this, Barry Bittman developed Mindscope in 1992 that displays video scenes with realistic sounds on a high-definition television set connected to a computer. Physical responses detected by the biofeedback equipment control an

engaging audiovisual environment of beautiful and realistic scenes. Clarity, perspective, motion, and sounds improve as the individual deepens their relaxation. For children and adolescents, this may be described as a “video game for the body.” Visual displays for EMG biofeedback may include sports such as basketball, baseball, and golf, where the individual plays against the computer.

The setting in which biofeedback training takes place can vary. Sometimes the clinician, client, and equipment are in the same room. Sometimes the client may sit in comfortable seating in a semi-dark, quiet room while the clinician is in another room with the equipment. In this arrangement, the clinician and client may communicate using an intercom.

In some cases, children and adolescents may reach the desired level of control in three to five sessions. Depending on the condition, biofeedback training may require a series of sessions for several days or weeks. In general, it may take 10 or 15 sessions at the lower end to 40 or 50 sessions at the higher end.

### **Preparation**

Biofeedback is most successful when individuals are motivated to learn. It is useful for people who have difficulty relaxing, even when they make efforts to do so. A receptive and open attitude, or “passive volition,” is important for attaining desired responses rather than actively focusing attaining them. It is important that individuals are willing to practice regularly at home to apply the skill to everyday life. Establishing a foundation of trust and confidence in the health care professional is an important component of biofeedback training.

Before beginning biofeedback training, an initial consultation will be conducted to record medical history, treatment background, and biofeedback goals. The procedure will be explained to provide a clear understanding of how and why the training will be helpful. The individual may be shown the equipment and told where they will be placed and how they work.

Before electrodes are placed on the body, the skin surface must be adequately prepared by using alcohol preparation pads to remove oils, makeup, and dead skin cells that may interfere with the biofeedback signal. An electrode paste is then applied to the sensor, or a small adhesive pad is used to adhere the sensor to the skin. Heart rate, temperature, and GSR monitors may be placed on the fingertip with a Velcro or elastic band. With CAP, the tip of a small, flexible, plastic tube is positioned in the nostril using tape. An individual may be taught several forms of biofeedback

initially, then the training may be tailored to the individual’s preference.

The biofeedback trainer must have technical skill, an understanding of basic anatomy and physiology, knowledge of various conditions, and familiarity with computer hardware and software. The American Psychological Association views biofeedback as a proficiency area, master’s and doctoral level training programs are available through a variety of sources, and certification is available through the Biofeedback Certification Institute of America.

### **Aftercare**

One or two follow-up sessions may be arranged two to four months after the initial set of appointments. In this way, long-term progress can be assessed, support can be provided, and adjustments can be made, if needed.

### **Risks**

There are no known side effects with properly administered biofeedback. Problems may occur if biofeedback is used to treat certain conditions where the use of biofeedback is not advised.

### **Normal results**

A normal result may be indicated by achieving the desired changes in muscle tension, heart rate, sweat activity, respiration rate, temperate change, and brain-wave activity. Health care professionals may use various criteria or normal values that have been developed for some biofeedback equipment. These values indicate levels that can be expected from normal physiological functioning or relaxation. Importantly, an individual learns to control their physical reactions, which may lead to feelings of empowerment and confidence.

### **Abnormal results**

Unusual results may arise from a number of factors, including poor sensor or electrode contact with the skin and interference from other electrical signals or “noise.” Some equipment may react to room temperature conditions, especially when the room is very hot or very cold. Although inexpensive monitoring equipment is available, such as watches that monitor heartbeat and handheld GSR devices, their results may not be accurate.

*See also* Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Substance abuse and related disorders.

## KEY TERMS

**Bruxism**—Habitual, often unconscious, grinding of the teeth.

**Epilepsy**—A neurological disorder characterized by the onset of seizures. Seizures are caused by a disturbance in the electrical activity in the brain and can cause loss of consciousness, muscle spasms, rhythmic movements, abnormal sensory experiences, or altered mental states.

**Incontinence**—Inability to control the release of urine or feces.

**Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)**—A condition affecting the small and large intestine, usually associated with emotional stress. There may be complaints of diarrhea and pain the lower abdomen.

**Raynaud's syndrome**—A disorder of the circulatory or vascular system characterized by abnormally cold hands and feet because of constricted blood vessels in these areas.

**Temporomandibular joint disorder (TMJ)**—Inflammation, irritation, pain, limited range of motion, and clicking sounds in the jaw caused by improper opening and closing of the joint.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Culbert, Timothy P. "Biofeedback with Children and Adolescents." In *Innovative Psychotherapy Techniques in Child and Adolescent Therapy*, edited by C. Schaefer. 2nd ed. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1999.
- Di Franco, Joyce T. "Biofeedback." In *Childbirth Education: Practice, Research and Theory*, edited by F. H. Nichols and S. S. Humenick. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders, 2000.
- Schwartz, Mark S., and Associates. *Biofeedback: A Practitioner's Guide*. New York: Guilford, 1987.
- Spencer, John W., and J. J. Jacobs. *Complementary/Alternative Medicine: An Evidence-Based Approach*. Baltimore: Mosby, 1999.
- Stoyva, Johann M., and Thomas H. Budzynski. "Biofeedback Methods in the Treatment of Anxiety and Stress Disorders." In *Principles and Practice of Stress Management*, edited by P. M. Lehrer and R. L. Woolfolk. 2nd ed. New York: Guilford Press, 1993.

### PERIODICALS

- American Psychological Association. "HCFA will cover biofeedback for incontinence." *Monitor on Psychology* 31, no.11 (December 2000).
- Burgio, Kathryn L., Julie L. Locher, Patricia S. Goode, M. Hardin, B. Joan McDowell, and Dorothy C. Dom-

browski. "Behavioral vs. Drug Treatment for Urge Urinary Incontinence in Older Women: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *JAMA, The Journal of the American Medical Association* 280.23 (December 1998): 1995-2000.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- Association for Applied Psychotherapy and Biofeedback. 10200 W. 44th Avenue, Suite 304, Wheat Ridge, CO 80033-2840. Telephone: (303) 422-8436. <<http://www.aapb.org>>.
- Biofeedback Certification Institute of America. 1022 W. 44th Avenue, Suite 310, Wheat Ridge, CO 80033. Telephone: (303) 420-2902. <<http://www.bcia.org>>.

Joneis Thomas, Ph.D.

## Biperiden

### Definition

Biperiden is classified as an antiparkinsonian agent. It is sold in the United States under the brand name of Akineton.

### Purpose

Biperiden is used to treat a group of side effects (called parkinsonian side effects) that include tremors, difficulty walking, and slack muscle tone. These side effects may occur in patients who are taking antipsychotic medications used to treat mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**.

### Description

Some medicines, called antipsychotic drugs, that are used to treat schizophrenia and other mental disorders can cause side effects that are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease. The patient does not have Parkinson's disease, but he or she may experience shaking in muscles while at rest, difficulty with voluntary movements, and poor muscle tone. These symptoms are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease.

One way to eliminate these undesirable side effects is to stop taking the antipsychotic medicine. Unfortunately, the symptoms of the original mental disorder usually come back, so in most cases simply stopping the antipsychotic medication is not a reasonable option. Some drugs such as biperiden that control the symptoms of Parkinson's disease also control the parkinsonian side effects of antipsychotic medicines.

Biperiden works by restoring the chemical balance between **dopamine** and acetylcholine, two neurotransmitter chemicals in the **brain**. Taking biperiden along

with the antipsychotic medicine helps to control symptoms of the mental disorder, while reducing parkinsonian side effects. Biperiden is in the same family of drugs (commonly known as anticholinergic drugs) as **benztropine**, **amantadine**, and **trihexyphenidyl**.

### Recommended dosage

Biperiden is available in 2-mg tablets. For the treatment of tremor, poor muscle tone, and similar parkinsonian side effects, the dose of biperiden is 2 mg orally one to three times daily. Parkinson-like side effects caused by antipsychotic drugs may come and go, so biperiden may not be needed on a regular basis. Biperiden may also be prescribed to prevent these side effects before they actually occur. This is called as prophylactic (preventative) therapy.

### Precautions

Biperiden should never be used in children under age three. It should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in older children and in the elderly. Biperiden, like all anticholinergic drugs, decreases sweating and the body's ability to cool itself. People who are unaccustomed to being outside in hot weather should take care to stay as cool as possible and drink extra fluids. People who are chronically ill, have a central nervous system disease, or who work outside during hot weather may need to avoid taking biperiden.

People who have the following medical problems may experience increased negative side effects when taking biperiden. Anyone with these problems should discuss their condition with their physician before starting the drug:

- glaucoma, especially closed-angle glaucoma
- intestinal obstruction
- prostate enlargement
- urinary bladder obstruction

Although rare, some patients experience euphoria while taking biperiden and may **abuse** it for this reason. Euphoria can occur at doses only two to four times the normal daily dose. Patients with a history of drug abuse should be observed carefully for biperiden abuse.

### Side effects

Although biperiden helps control the side effects of antipsychotic drugs, it can produce side effects of its own. A person taking biperiden may have some of the following side effects, which may vary in intensity:

- dry mouth
- dry skin
- blurred vision
- nausea or vomiting
- constipation
- disorientation
- drowsiness
- irritability
- increased heart rate
- urinary retention

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty in speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Chewing sugarless gum or sucking on sugarless candy may also help to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement may be especially prone to urinary retention. Symptoms of this problem include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty passing urine than usual. This side effect may be severe and require discontinuation of the drug. Urinary retention may require catheterization. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

Patients who take an overdose of biperiden are treated with forced vomiting, removal of stomach contents and stomach washing, activated charcoal, and respiratory support if needed. They are also given physostigmine, an antidote for anticholinergic drug poisoning.

### Interactions

When drugs such as biperiden are taken with **antidepressants** such as **amitriptyline**, **imipramine**, **trimipramine**, **desipramine**, **nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, **amoxapine**, and **doxepin**, as well as with many antihistamines that also have anticholinergic properties, the effects of biperiden are usually intensified.

Drugs such as biperiden decrease the speed with which food moves through the stomach and intestines. Because of this, it is possible that the absorption of some drugs may be enhanced by biperiden. Patients receiving biperiden should be observed for unusual responses to other drugs they might be taking.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Catheterization**—Placing a tube in the bladder so that it can be emptied of urine.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Parkinsonian**—Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.  
 DeVane, C. Lindsay, Pharm.D. "Drug Therapy for Psychoses" In *Fundamentals of Monitoring Psychoactive Drug Therapy*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1990.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.

Biphetamine see **Amphetamines**

## Bipolar disorder

### Definition

Bipolar, or manic-depressive, disorder is a mood disorder that causes radical emotional changes and

mood swings, from manic highs to depressive lows. The majority of bipolar individuals experience alternating episodes of mania (an elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state) and **depression**.

### Description

In the United States alone, bipolar disorder afflicts an estimated 5% of the general population, or almost 15 million people. According to a 2006 study, bipolar disorder costs the U.S. workplace as much as \$14 billion a year, lost to the average 65.5 workdays each worker with bipolar disorder missed annually. The average age of onset of bipolar disorder is from adolescence through the early twenties. However, because of the complexity of the disorder, a correct **diagnosis** can be delayed for several years or more. There also has been a new recognition of new-onset bipolar disorder in later life, which occurs among the elderly at rates of about 1% and appears to be more prevalent among elderly men than elderly women.

*The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition text revised (*DSM-IV-TR*), the diagnostic standard for mental health professionals in the United States, defines four separate categories of bipolar disorder: bipolar I, bipolar II, cyclothymia, and bipolar not otherwise specified (NOS).

Bipolar I disorder is characterized by manic episodes, the "high" of the manic-depressive cycle. A bipolar patient experiencing mania often has feelings of self-importance, elation, talkativeness, increased sociability, and a desire to embark on goal-oriented activities, coupled with the characteristics of irritability, impatience, impulsiveness, hyperactivity, and a decreased need for sleep. Usually this manic period is followed by a period of depression, although a few bipolar I individuals may not experience a major depressive episode. Mixed states, in which both manic or hypomanic symptoms and depressive symptoms occur at the same time, also frequently occur with bipolar I patients (for example, depression with the racing thoughts of mania). In addition, dysphoric mania (mania characterized by anger and irritability) is common.

Bipolar II disorder is characterized by major depressive episodes alternating with episodes of **hypomania**, a milder form of mania. Bipolar depression may be difficult to distinguish from unipolar depression (depression without mania, as found in **major depressive disorder**). Patients with bipolar depression tend to have extremely low energy, retarded mental and physical processes, and more profound **fatigue**

(for example, hypersomnia—a sleep disorder marked by a need for excessive sleep or sleepiness when awake) than people with unipolar depression.

Cyclothymia refers to the cycling of hypomanic episodes with depression that does not reach major depressive proportions. One-third of patients with cyclothymia will develop bipolar I or II disorder later in life.

A phenomenon known as rapid cycling occurs in up to 20% of bipolar I and II patients. In rapid cycling, manic and depressive episodes must alternate frequently—at least four times in twelve months—to meet the diagnostic definition. In some cases of “ultra-rapid cycling,” the patient may bounce between manic and depressive states several times within a 24-hour period. This condition is very hard to distinguish from mixed states.

Bipolar NOS is a category for bipolar states that do not clearly fit into the bipolar I, II, or cyclothymia diagnoses.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The root causes of bipolar disorder have not been clearly defined, but studies suggest a strong heritable component. The most recent research has identified areas on four different chromosomes (6, 13, 18, and 22) that may carry genes whose protein products confer susceptibility to bipolar disorder. A study from 2006 suggests that inclusion of symptoms of common comorbidities of bipolar disorder and a measurement of social functioning might help researchers pinpoint more closely the genes involved in the development of these disorders.

Studies of the underlying genetics of bipolar disorders also have closely focused on genes related to the regulation of **dopamine**, a neurotransmitter (nerve-signaling molecule) that is involved generally in mood disorders. Recent studies examining the genes expressed in dopamine neurons (nerve cells) in different parts of the **brain** have shown that the parts of the brain known to be involved in mood disorders such as bipolar disorder exhibit different patterns of gene expression from other neurons. The area of the brain most closely associated with dopamine’s involvement in bipolar disorders is the ventral tegmental area, which plays a role in the brain’s dopamine-based reward system and in regulation of addictive or emotional behaviors.

### Symptoms

Symptoms of bipolar depressive episodes include low energy levels, feelings of despair, difficulty con-

centrating, extreme fatigue, and psychomotor retardation (slowed mental and physical capabilities). Manic episodes are characterized by feelings of euphoria, lack of inhibitions, racing thoughts, diminished need for sleep, talkativeness, risk taking, and irritability. In extreme cases, mania can induce **hallucinations** and other psychotic symptoms such as grandiose **delusions** (ideas that the person affected is extremely important or has some unrecognized talent or insight).

## Comorbidities

A large percentage of people diagnosed with bipolar disorder also experience comorbidities, with one study finding that 67% of patients with bipolar disorder had a comorbidity and 76% who had bipolar II disorder also had a comorbidity. Overall, 65% of all bipolar patients will have a comorbidity, including **anxiety disorders**, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder**, and substance and alcohol **abuse**. Suicidal ideation (thinking seriously about attempting **suicide**) and suicide are relatively common. The type of comorbidity can vary based on sex; women are more likely to have an eating disorder comorbidity or **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD) as a comorbidity.

## Demographics

The disorder is more common among women than men. Women have been observed at increased risk of developing subsequent episodes in the period immediately following childbirth, the postpartum period. The average age at onset in a recent large study was the same for men and women: 17.2 years. Men with bipolar disorder are more likely than women to have a history of violence and to have experienced legal problems, and women are more likely than men to have made a suicide attempt. In the survey of U.S. workers from 2006, twice as many women as men met the criteria for bipolar disorder, but there were no distinctions based on ethnicity.

## Diagnosis

Bipolar disorder is usually diagnosed and treated by a **psychiatrist** and/or a **psychologist** with medical assistance. In addition to an interview, several clinical inventories or scales may be used to assess the patient’s mental status and determine the presence of bipolar symptoms. These include the Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory III (MCMI-III), **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory** II (MMPI-2), the Internal State Scale (ISS), the Self-Report Manic Inventory (SRMI), and the Young Mania Rating Scale (YMRS). The tests are verbal and/or written and are administered in both hospital and outpatient settings.

Psychologists and psychiatrists typically use the criteria listed in the *DSM-IV-TR* as a guideline for diagnosis of bipolar disorder and other mental illnesses. The *DSM-IV-TR* describes a **manic episode** as an abnormally elevated or irritable mood lasting a period of at least one week that is distinguished by at least three of the mania symptoms: inflated self-esteem, decreased need for sleep, talkativeness, racing thoughts, distractibility, increase in goal-directed activity, or excessive involvement in pleasurable activities that have a high potential for painful consequences. If the mood of the patient is irritable and not elevated, four of the symptoms are required.

Although many clinicians find the criteria too rigid, a hypomanic diagnosis requires a duration of at least four days with at least three of the symptoms indicated for manic episodes (four if mood is irritable and not elevated). *DSM-IV-TR* notes that, unlike manic episodes, hypomanic episodes do not cause a marked impairment in social or occupational functioning, do not require **hospitalization**, and do not have psychotic features (no delusions or hallucinations). In addition, because hypomanic episodes are characterized by high energy and goal-directed activities and often result in a positive outcome, or are perceived in a positive manner by the patient, bipolar II disorder can go undiagnosed.

Bipolar symptoms often manifest differently in children and adolescents than they appear in adults. Manic episodes in these age groups are typically characterized by more psychotic features than in adults, which may lead to a misdiagnosis of **schizophrenia**. Children and adolescents also tend toward irritability and aggressiveness instead of elation. Further, symptoms tend to be chronic, or ongoing, rather than acute, or episodic. Bipolar children are easily distracted, impulsive, and hyperactive, which can lead to a misdiagnosis of ADHD. Furthermore, their aggression often leads to violence, which may be misdiagnosed as a **conduct disorder**.

**Substance abuse**, thyroid disease, and use of prescription or over-the-counter medication can mask or mimic the presence of bipolar disorder. In cases of substance abuse, the patient must ordinarily undergo a period of **detoxification** and abstinence before a mood disorder is diagnosed and treatment begins.

## Treatments

Bipolar disorder is usually treated with both medical and psychosocial interventions. Psychosocial therapies address both psychological and social issues.

### Medical interventions

A combination of mood-stabilizing agents with **antidepressants**, antipsychotics, and anticonvulsants is used to regulate manic and depressive episodes.

**MOOD-STABILIZING AGENTS.** Mood-stabilizing agents such as lithium, **carbamazepine**, and **valproic acid** (valproate) are prescribed to regulate the manic highs and lows of bipolar disorder:

- Lithium (lithium carbonate, Cibalith-S, Eskalith, Lithane, Lithobid, Lithonate, Lithotabs) is one of the oldest and most frequently prescribed drugs available for the treatment of bipolar mania and depression. Because the drug takes four to ten days to reach a therapeutic level in the bloodstream, it is sometimes prescribed in conjunction with neuroleptics (other psychiatric drugs) and/or benzodiazepines (medications that ease tension by slowing down the central nervous system) to provide more immediate relief of a manic episode. Lithium has also been shown to be effective in regulating bipolar depression, but it is not recommended for mixed mania. Lithium may not be an effective long-term treatment option for rapid cyclers, who typically develop a tolerance for it or may not respond to it. Possible side effects of the drug include weight gain, thirst, nausea, and hand tremors. Prolonged lithium use may also cause hyperthyroidism (a disease of the thyroid marked by heart palpitations, nervousness, the presence of goiter, sweating, and a wide array of other symptoms).
- Carbamazepine (Tegretol, Atretol) is an anticonvulsant drug (a drug to treat seizures) usually prescribed in conjunction with other mood-stabilizing agents. The drug is often used to treat bipolar patients who have not responded well to lithium therapy. Blurred vision and abnormal eye movement are two possible side effects of carbamazepine therapy. It may also result in a reduction in red blood cells (anemia), which if left untreated can be life threatening (as in aplastic anemia). Signs to watch for and report immediately to a doctor include easy bruising, tiny purple dots or spots on the skin, or mouth sores.
- Valproic acid (divalproex sodium, or Depakote; valproate, or Depakene) is one of the few drugs available that has been proven effective in treating rapid cycling bipolar and mixed-states patients. Valproate is prescribed alone or in combination with carbamazepine and/or lithium. Stomach cramps, indigestion, diarrhea, hair loss, appetite loss, nausea, and unusual weight loss or gain are some of the common side effects of valproate. This drug can cause severe damage to the liver and pancreas, with the greatest risk of

liver damage in children under age two years and in people taking two or more medications to prevent seizures or people with certain metabolic disorders. Warning signs that warrant an immediate call to the doctor include severe fatigue, nausea, vomiting, facial swelling, or loss of appetite.

**ANTIDEPRESSANTS.** Although mania receives more attention, the reality is that people with bipolar disorder spend more time in depressive episodes, making antidepressant treatment seem like a logical choice. However, research indicates that antidepressants, including **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** and tricyclic antidepressants, may stimulate manic episodes in some bipolar patients. Tricyclic antidepressants used to treat unipolar depression may trigger rapid cycling in bipolar patients and are, therefore, not a preferred treatment option for bipolar depression. Antidepressants that may be used to treat bipolar depression include:

- SSRIs, such as fluoxetine (Prozac), sertraline (Zoloft), and paroxetine (Paxil), regulate depression by regulating levels of serotonin, a neurotransmitter. Anxiety, diarrhea, drowsiness, headache, sweating, nausea, sexual problems, and insomnia are all possible side effects of SSRIs.
- Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (also called MAOIs), such as tranylcypromine (Parnate) and phenelzine (Nardil), block the action of monoamine oxidase (MAO), an enzyme in the central nervous system. Patients taking certain kinds of MAOIs must cut foods high in tyramine (found in aged cheeses and meats) out of their diets, although use of a newer, more selective form of MAOI, selegiline, delivered via a low-dose transdermal patch, does not generally require dietary adjustment.
- Bupropion (Wellbutrin) is a heterocyclic antidepressant. The exact neurochemical mechanism of the drug is not known, but it has been effective in regulating bipolar depression in some patients. Side effects of bupropion include agitation, anxiety, confusion, tremor, dry mouth, fast or irregular heartbeat, headache, and insomnia. It now comes with a warning about its use in teenagers and children because some research indicates an increased risk of suicidal ideation and suicide attempts in young people taking this type of antidepressant. Its use in people under age 18 is not recommended.
- Lamotrigine is an antiepileptic that has shown some promise in treating bipolar I depression. Its dosage will vary based on whether or not the person is also taking other drugs, such as valproic acid. This drug is associated with a rare incidence of the development of a serious rash, and the risk of the rash increases if

the person is also taking valproic acid. Children are more susceptible to this adverse, possibly life-threatening rash. Women who are pregnant should discuss carefully with their doctor whether or not to use lamotrigine. Studies have shown that fetal exposure in the first trimester of pregnancy increases the chances of cleft lip or cleft palate.

**ADJUNCT TREATMENTS.** These adjunct treatments are used in conjunction with a long-term pharmaceutical treatment plan:

- Long-acting benzodiazepines (medications that ease tension by slowing the central nervous system) such as clonazepam (Klonopin) and alprazolam (Xanax) are used for rapid treatment of manic symptoms to calm and sedate patients until mania or hypomania have waned and mood-stabilizing agents can take effect. Sedation is a common effect, and clumsiness, lightheadedness, and slurred speech are other possible side effects of benzodiazepines.
- Neuroleptics (antipsychotic medications) such as chlorpromazine (Thorazine) and haloperidol (Haldol) are also used to control mania while a mood stabilizer such as lithium or valproate takes effect. Because neuroleptic side effects can be severe (difficulty in speaking or swallowing, paralysis of the eyes, loss of balance control, muscle spasms, severe restlessness, stiffness of arms and legs, tremors in fingers and hands, twisting movements of body, and weakness of arms and legs), benzodiazepines are generally preferred over neuroleptics.
- Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) has a high success rate for treating both unipolar and bipolar depression, and mania. However, because of the convenience of drug treatment and the stigma sometimes attached to ECT therapy, ECT is usually employed after all pharmaceutical treatment options have been explored. ECT is given under anesthesia and patients are given a muscle relaxant medication to prevent convulsions. The treatment consists of a series of electrical pulses that move into the brain through electrodes on the patient's head. Although the exact mechanisms behind the success of ECT therapy are not known, it is believed that this electrical current alters the electrochemical processes of the brain, consequently relieving depression. Headaches, muscle soreness, nausea, and confusion are possible side effects immediately following an ECT procedure. Temporary memory loss has also been reported in ECT patients. In bipolar patients, ECT is often used in conjunction with drug therapy.
- Calcium channel blockers (nimodipine, or Nimotop), typically used to treat angina and hypotension (low blood pressure), have been found effective, in a

few small studies, for treating rapid cyclers. Calcium channel blockers stop the excess calcium buildup in cells that is thought to be a cause of bipolar disorder. They are usually used in conjunction with other drug therapies such as carbamazepine or lithium.

**Clozapine** (Clozaril) is an antipsychotic medication used to control manic episodes in patients who have not responded to typical mood-stabilizing agents. The drug has also been a useful prophylactic, or preventative treatment, in some bipolar patients. Common side effects of clozapine include tachycardia (rapid heart rate), hypotension, constipation, and weight gain. Agranulocytosis, a potentially serious but reversible condition in which the white blood cells that typically fight infection in the body are destroyed, is a possible side effect of clozapine. Patients treated with the drug should undergo weekly blood tests to monitor white blood cell counts.

**Risperidone** (Risperdal) is an antipsychotic medication that has been successful in controlling mania. The side effects of risperidone are mild compared to many other antipsychotics (constipation, coughing, diarrhea, dry mouth, headache, heartburn, increased length of sleep and dream activity, nausea, runny nose, sore throat, fatigue, and weight gain). However, because of a risk of death in older people with **dementia** who take antipsychotics, risperidone is not approved by the FDA for treatment of behavioral disorders in older adults with dementia.

Repeated **transcranial magnetic stimulation** (**rTMS**) is a newer treatment for the depressive phase of bipolar disorder. In rTMS, a large magnet is placed on the patient's head and magnetic fields of different frequency are generated to stimulate the left front cortex of the brain. Unlike ECT, rTMS requires no anesthesia and does not induce seizures.

#### *Psychosocial interventions*

Because bipolar disorder is thought to be biological in nature, psychological therapy is recommended as a companion to, but not a substitute for, pharmaceutical treatment of the disease. **Psychotherapy**, such as **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, can be a useful tool in helping patients and their families adjust to the disorder, in encouraging **compliance** to a medication regimen, and in reducing the risk of suicide. Also, educative counseling is recommended for the patient and family.

In educative counseling, patients (and their families) learn of the high rates of social dysfunction and marital discord associated with this disorder. Patients

also learn how their treatment will progress, which factors can affect treatment, and what kind of follow-up after treatment will be implemented. Genetic counseling should be a part of **family education** programs because this disorder is more prevalent among first-degree relatives of individuals with the disorder.

Social support for individuals with bipolar disorder is also important. Some people with the disorder, as well as their families, may find **support groups** helpful.

#### *Alternative treatment*

General recommendations include maintaining a calm environment, avoiding over-stimulation, getting plenty of rest, exercising regularly, and maintaining a proper diet. Some Chinese herbs may soften mood swings, but care must be taken (and good communication with the physician is essential) when combining herbal therapies with medications. **Biofeedback** is effective in helping some patients control symptoms such as irritability, poor self-control, racing thoughts, and sleep problems.

#### *Prognosis*

While most patients will show some positive response to treatment, response varies widely, from full recovery to complete unresponsiveness to all drugs and/or ECT therapy. Drug therapies frequently need adjustment to achieve the maximum benefit for the patient. Bipolar disorder is a chronic recurrent illness in over 90% of those afflicted, and one that requires lifelong observation and treatment after diagnosis. Patients with untreated or inadequately treated bipolar disorder have a suicide rate of 15–25% and a nine-year decrease in life expectancy. With proper treatment, the life expectancy of the bipolar patient increases by nearly seven years and work productivity increases by ten years.

#### *Prevention*

The ongoing medical management of bipolar disorder is critical to preventing **relapse** (recurrence) of manic episodes. Even in carefully controlled treatment programs, bipolar patients may experience recurring episodes of the disorder. Patient education in the form of psychotherapy or **self-help groups** is crucial for training bipolar patients to recognize signs of mania and depression and to take an active part in their treatment program.

## KEY TERMS

**Anticonvulsant medication**—A medication that prevents convulsions or seizures; often prescribed in the treatment of epilepsy. Several anticonvulsant medications have been found effective in the treatment of bipolar disorder.

**Antipsychotic medication**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders as well.

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**ECT**—Electroconvulsive therapy is sometimes used to treat depression or mania when pharmaceutical treatment fails.

**Hypomania**—A milder form of mania that is characteristic of bipolar II disorder.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Mixed mania/mixed state**—A mental state in which symptoms of both depression and mania occur simultaneously.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells. Changes in the levels of certain neurotransmitters, such as serotonin, norepinephrine, and dopamine, are thought to be related to bipolar disorder.

**Psychomotor retardation**—Slowed mental and physical processes characteristic of a bipolar depressive episode.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Maxmen, Jerrold S., and Nicholas G. Ward. "Mood Disorders." In *Essential Psychopathology and Its Treatment*. 2nd ed. New York: W. W. Norton, 1995.
- Tasman, Allan, Jerald Kay, MD, and Jeffrey A. Lieberman, MD, eds. *Psychiatry*, 1st ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders, 1997.
- Whybrow, Peter C. *A Mood Apart*. New York: Harper Collins, 1997.

## PERIODICALS

- Greene, James G. "Gene Expression Profiles of Brain Dopamine Neurons and Relevance to Neuropsychiatric Disease." *Journal of Physiology* 575 (2006): 411–16.
- Hoblyn, Jennifer. "Bipolar Disorder in Later Life." *Geriatrics* 59 (2004): 41–44.
- Keck, P., S. McElroy, and L. Arnold. "Advances in the Pathophysiology and Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders: Implications for Internal Medicine." *Medical clinics of North America* 85.3 (2001).
- Kilzieh, N., and H. Akiskal. "Rapid-cycling Bipolar Disorder: An Overview of Research and Clinical Experience." *Psychiatric Clinics of North America* 22.3 (1999).
- Nierenberg, Andrew A., and others "Systematic Treatment Enhancement Program for Bipolar Disorder (STEP-BD): A Clinical View." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.11 (2006).
- Schulze, Thomas G., and others. "What Is Familial about Familial Bipolar Disorder?" *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63 (2006): 1368–76.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- Child and Adolescent Bipolar Foundation. 1000 Skokie Boulevard, Suite 570, Wilmette, IL 60091. E-mail: [cabf@bpkids.org](mailto:cabf@bpkids.org). <<http://www.bpkids.org/site/PageServer>>.
- Depression and Bipolar Support Alliance. 730 N. Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610-7224. Telephone: (800) 826-3632. Fax: (312) 642-7243. <<http://www.dbsalliance.org/site/PageServer?pagename=home>>.
- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Depressive and Manic-Depressive Association (NDMDA). 730 N. Franklin St., Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (800) 826-3632. <<http://www.ndmda.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health, Mental Health Public Inquiries. 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 15C-05, Rockville, MD 20857. Telephone: (888) 826-9438. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

## OTHER

- "Bipolar Disorder." National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/bipolardisorder.html>>.
- "Bupropion." National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a695033.html>>.
- "Drug Information: Carbamazepine." National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/print/druginfo/medmaster/a682237.html>>.
- "Lamotrigine." National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a695007.html>>.

- “Patient Information Sheet: Lamotrigine (marketed as Lamictal).” U.S. Food and Drug Administration. <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/InfoSheets/patient/lamotriginePIS.htm>>.
- “Patient Information Sheet: Risperidone Tablets (marketed as Risperdal).” U.S. Food and Drug Administration. <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/InfoSheets/patient/risperidonePIS.htm>>.
- “Risperidone.” National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a694015.html>>.
- “Valproic Acid.” National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682412.html>>.

Paula Anne Ford-Martin, MA  
Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
Nicole Mallory, MS, PA-C  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD



**A teenage girl cries over a pimple. In body dysmorphic disorder, excessive preoccupation with minor or imagined faults can cause a marked decline in a patient's day to day life. (mediacolor's/Alamy)**

## Body dysmorphic disorder

### Definition

Body dysmorphic disorder (BDD) is defined by the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)* (a handbook for mental health professionals) as a condition marked by excessive preoccupation with an imaginary or minor defect in a facial feature or localized part of the body. The diagnostic criteria specify that the condition must be sufficiently severe to cause a decline in the patient's social, occupational, or educational functioning. The most common cause of this decline is the time lost to obsessing about the “defect.” The *DSM-IV-TR* assigns BDD to the larger category of somatoform disorders, which are disorders characterized by physical complaints that appear to be medical in origin but that cannot be explained in terms of a physical disease, the results of **substance abuse**, or by another mental disorder.

Although cases of BDD have been reported in the psychiatric literature from a number of different countries for over a century, the disorder was first defined as a formal diagnostic category by the *DSM-III-R* in 1987. The word “dysmorphic” comes from two Greek words, *dys*, which means “bad,” or “ugly;” and, *morphos*, that means “shape,” or “form.” BDD was previously known as dysmorphophobia.

### Description

BDD is characterized by an unusually exaggerated degree of worry or concern about a specific part

of the face or body, rather than the general size or shape of the body. It is distinguished from **anorexia nervosa** and **bulimia nervosa** because patients with these disorders are preoccupied with their overall weight and body shape. For example, an adolescent who obsesses that her breasts are too large and wants to have plastic surgery to reduce their size but is otherwise unconcerned about her weight and is eating normally might be diagnosed with BDD, but not with anorexia or bulimia. Studies have found that between 40% and 76% of people with BDD seek out nonpsychiatric treatments such as cosmetic surgery or dermatological treatments, and the rates of people with BDD among all cosmetic surgery patients range from 7% to 15%; rates are similar in dermatological practices.

Since the first publication of *DSM-IV* in 1994, some psychiatrists have suggested that a subtype of BDD exists, which they term muscle dysmorphia. Muscle dysmorphia is marked by excessive concern with one's muscularity and/or fitness. Persons with muscle dysmorphia spend unusual amounts of time working out in gyms or exercising rather than obsessing about a feature such as the skin or nose. Muscle dysmorphia is more prevalent among males. To accommodate muscle dysmorphia as a classification, the *DSM-IV-TR* has added references regarding body build and excessive weightlifting to *DSM-IV*'s description of BDD.

BDD and muscle dysmorphia can both be described as disorders resulting from the patient's distorted body image. Body image refers to the mental

picture individuals have of their outward appearance, including size, shape, and form. It has two major components: how the people perceive their physical appearance, and how they feel about their body. Significant distortions in self-perception can lead to intense dissatisfaction with one's body and dysfunctional behaviors aimed at improving one's appearance. Some patients with BDD are aware that their concerns are excessive; others do not have this degree of insight. About 50% of patients diagnosed with BDD also meet the criteria for a **delusional disorder**, which is characterized by beliefs that are not based in reality.

The usual age of onset of BDD is adolescence; the average age of patients diagnosed with the disorder is 17.

BDD has a high rate of comorbidity, which means that people diagnosed with the disorder are highly likely to have been diagnosed with another psychiatric disorder, most commonly major **depression**, **social phobia**, or **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD).

## Causes and symptoms

### *Causes*

The causes of BDD fall into two major categories, neurobiological and psychosocial.

**NEUROBIOLOGICAL CAUSES.** Research indicates that patients diagnosed with BDD have serotonin levels that are lower than normal. Serotonin is a neurotransmitter—a chemical produced by the **brain** that helps to transmit nerve impulses across the junctions between nerve cells. Low serotonin levels are associated with depression and other mood disorders.

**PSYCHOSOCIAL CAUSES.** A young person's family of origin has a powerful influence on his or her vulnerability to BDD. Children whose parents are themselves obsessed with appearance, dieting, and/or bodybuilding, or who are highly critical of their children's looks, are at greater risk of developing BDD.

An additional factor in some young people is a history of childhood trauma or abuse. Buried feelings about the abuse or traumatic incident emerge in the form of **obsession** about a part of the face or body. This "reassignment" of emotions from the unacknowledged true cause to another issue is called displacement. For example, an adolescent who frequently felt overwhelmed in childhood by physically abusive parents may develop a preoccupation at the high school level with muscular strength and power.

Another important factor in the development of BDD is the influence of the mass media in developed

countries, particularly the role of advertising in spreading images of physically "perfect" men and women. Impressionable children and adolescents absorb the message that anything short of physical perfection is unacceptable. They may then develop distorted perceptions of their own faces and bodies.

### *Symptoms*

The central symptom of BDD is excessive concern with a specific facial feature or body part. The parts of the body most frequently involved are the skin, hair, nose, teeth, breasts, eyes, and even eyebrows, but any feature can be a focus of the obsession.

Other symptoms of body dysmorphic disorder include:

- Ritualistic behavior. Ritualistic behavior refers to actions that the patient performs to manage anxiety and that take up excessive amounts of his or her time. Patients are typically upset if someone or something interferes with or interrupts their ritual. In the context of BDD, ritualistic behaviors may include exercise or makeup routines, assuming specific poses or postures in front of a mirror, or skinpicking.
- Camouflaging the "problem" feature or body part with makeup, hats, or clothing. Camouflaging appears to be the single most common symptom among patients with BDD, occurring in 94%.
- Abnormal behavior around mirrors, car bumpers, large windows, or similar reflecting surfaces. A majority of patients diagnosed with BDD frequently check their appearance in mirrors or spend long periods of time doing so. A minority, however, react in the opposite fashion and avoid mirrors whenever possible.
- Frequent requests for reassurance from others about their appearance.
- Frequently comparing one's appearance to others.
- Avoiding activities outside the home, including school and social events.

BDD patients have high rates of self-destructive behavior, including performing surgery on themselves at home (liposuction followed by skin stapling, sawing down teeth, and removing facial scars with sandpaper) and attempted or completed **suicide**. Many are unable to remain in school, form healthy relationships, or keep steady jobs. In one group of 100 patients diagnosed with BDD, 48% had been hospitalized for psychiatric reasons, and 30% had made at least one suicide attempt.

The loss of functioning resulting from BDD can have serious consequences for the patient's future.

Adolescents with BDD often cut school and may be reluctant to participate in sports, join church- or civic-sponsored youth groups, or hold part-time or summer jobs. One study found that 32% of participants had missed work for at least a week in the previous month because of their BDD, while 32% of those still in school had missed classes for a week. Adults with muscle dysmorphia have been known to turn down job promotions to have more time to work out in their gym or fitness center. The economic consequences of BDD also include overspending on cosmetics, clothing, or plastic surgery.

## Demographics

As mentioned earlier, BDD is primarily a disorder of young people. Its true incidence in the general population is unknown; however, among the nonclinical, general population, the rate is between 0.7% and 1.1%, and in the narrower student general population, rates range between 2% and 13%. Among psychiatric patients, rates are around 13%. The *DSM-IV-TR* gives a range of 5–40% for patients in clinical mental health settings diagnosed with anxiety or **depressive disorders** to be diagnosed with BDD. There have not been significant interactions between ethnicity and gender identified in the few studies examining these factors and BDD. At least one study has found that there appears to be a heritable aspect to BDD, with a higher rate among families of people who have the disorder than among the general population.

## Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** of BDD in children and adolescents is often made by physicians in family practice because they are more likely to have developed long-term relationships of trust with the young people. With adults, it is often specialists in dermatology, cosmetic dentistry, or plastic surgery who may suspect that the patient has BDD because of frequent requests for repeated or unnecessary procedures. The diagnosis is made on the basis of the patient's history together with the physician's observations of the patient's overall mood and conversation patterns. People with BDD often come across to others as generally anxious and worried. In addition, the patient's dress or clothing styles, attempting to hide the "problem" feature, may suggest a diagnosis of BDD.

Several questionnaires are used for assessing the presence of BDD. Researchers sometimes use a semi-structured interview called the BDD Data Form to collect information about the disorder from patients. This form includes demographic information, information about body areas of concern and the history

and course of the illness, and the patient's history of **hospitalization** or suicide attempts, if any. Another diagnostic questionnaire frequently used to identify BDD patients is the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-III-R Disorders, or SCID-II. Other questionnaires also used in assessments are the Yale-Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale Modified for Body Dysmorphic Disorder and the Body Dysmorphic Disorder Examination.

There are no brain **imaging studies** or laboratory tests as of 2007 that can be used to diagnose BDD. Some studies using brain imaging have identified some characteristics similar to those seen in obsessive-compulsive disorder, although studies are not in complete agreement on this.

## Treatments

The standard treatment regimen for body dysmorphic disorder is a combination of medications and **psychotherapy**. Surgical, dental, or dermatologic treatments have been found ineffective and in some cases may exacerbate symptoms. In one study, cosmetic surgeons reported that 40% of their patients with BDD had made legal or physical threats against them.

### Medications

The medications most frequently prescribed for patients with BDD are the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRIs), most commonly **fluoxetine** (Prozac) or **sertraline** (Zoloft). Other SSRIs that have been used with this group of patients include **fluvoxamine** (Luvox) and **paroxetine** (Paxil). As of 2006, the only one of these medications that is FDA-approved for use in children is fluoxetine.

The relatively high rate of positive responses to SSRIs among BDD patients led to the hypothesis that the disorder has a neurobiological component related to serotonin levels in the body. An associated finding is that patients with BDD require higher dosages of SSRI medications to be effective than patients who are being treated for depression with these drugs.

### Psychotherapy

The most effective approach to psychotherapy with BDD patients is **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, of which cognitive restructuring is one component. Because the disorder is related to **delusions** about one's appearance, cognitive-oriented therapy that challenges inaccurate self-perceptions is more effective than purely supportive approaches. Relaxation techniques also work well with BDD patients when they are combined with cognitive restructuring.

## KEY TERMS

**Body image**—A term that refers to a person's inner picture of his or her outward appearance. It has two components: perceptions of the appearance of one's body, and emotional responses to those perceptions.

**Comorbidity**—Association or presence of two or more mental disorders in the same patient. A disorder that is said to have a high degree of comorbidity is likely to occur in patients diagnosed with other disorders that may share or reinforce some of its symptoms.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact. Common delusions include delusions of persecution, delusions about one's importance (sometimes called delusions of grandeur), or delusions of being controlled by others. In BDD, the delusion is related to the patient's perception of his or her body.

**Displacement**—A psychological process in which feelings originating from one source are expressed outwardly in terms of concern or preoccupation with an issue or problem that the patient considers more acceptable. In some BDD patients, obsession about

the body includes displaced feelings, often related to a history of childhood abuse.

**Muscle dysmorphia**—A subtype of BDD, described as excessive preoccupation with muscularity and bodybuilding to the point of interference with social, educational, or occupational functioning.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical produced by the brain that helps to transmit nerve impulses across the junctions between nerve cells.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Somatoform disorders**—A group of psychiatric disorders in the *DSM-IV-TR* classification that are characterized by external physical symptoms or complaints. BDD is classified as a somatoform disorder.

## Prognosis

The *DSM-IV-TR* notes that the disorder "has a fairly continuous course, with few symptom-free intervals, although the intensity of symptoms may wax and wane over time."

## Prevention

Given the pervasive influence of the mass media in contemporary Western societies, the best preventive strategy involves challenging those afflicted with the disorder and who consequently have unrealistic images of attractive people. Parents, teachers, primary health care professionals, and other adults who work with young people can point out and discuss the pitfalls of trying to look "perfect." In addition, parents or other adults can educate themselves about BDD and its symptoms, and pay attention to any warning signs in their children's dress or behavior. They also can modulate their own behaviors of pointing out or highlighting physical "imperfections" in themselves or in their children because there is a link between parents with such concerns and children with BDD.

*See also* Aromatherapy; Yoga.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Beers, Mark H., MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. "Body Dysmorphic Disorder," Section 15, Chapter 186. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Johnston, Joni E., Psy D. *Appearance Obsession: Learning to Love the Way You Look*. Deerfield Beach, FL: Health Communications, 1994.
- Peiss, Kathy. *Hope in a Jar: The Making of America's Beauty Culture*. New York: Henry Holt and Company, 1998.
- Rodin, Judith, PhD. *Body Traps: Breaking the Binds That Keep You from Feeling Good About Your Body*. New York: William Morrow, 1992.

### PERIODICALS

- Albertini, Ralph S. "Thirty-Three Cases of Body Dysmorphic Disorder in Children and Adolescents." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 38 (1999): 528–44.
- "BDD Patients Resorting to Self-Surgery." *Cosmetic Surgery Times* 3 (2000): 29.

- Carey, Paul, and others. "SPECT imaging of body dysmorphic disorder." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry Clinical Neuroscience* 16 (2004): 357–59.
- Chung, Bryan. "Muscle Dysmorphia: A Critical Review of the Proposed Criteria." *Perspectives in Biology and Medicine* 44 (2001): 565–74.
- Crerand, Canice E., and others. "Nonpsychiatric Medical Treatment of Body Dysmorphic Disorder." *Psychosomatics* 46 (2005): 549–55.
- Jesitus, John. "Fixing the Cracks in the Mirror: Identifying Treating Disorder in Pediatric Patients May Take More Than Dermatologic Treatments Alone." *Dermatology Times* 22 (2001): 740–42.
- Kirchner, Jeffrey T. "Treatment of Patients with Body Dysmorphic Disorder." *American Family Physician* 61 (2000): 1837–43.
- Leone, James E., Edward J. Sedory, and Kimberly A. Gray. "Recognition and Treatment of Muscle Dysmorphia and Related Body Image Disorders." *Journal of Athletic Training* 40 (2005): 352–59.
- Mason, Staci. "Demystifying Muscle Dysmorphia." *IDEA Health & Fitness Source* 19 (2001): 71–77.
- Phillips, K. A., and S. L. McElroy. "Personality Disorders and Traits in Patients with Body Dysmorphic Disorder." *Comparative Psychiatry* 41 (2000): 229–36.
- Phillips, Katharine A., and others. "Demographic Characteristics, Phenomenology, Comorbidity, and Family History in 200 Individuals with Body Dysmorphic Disorder." *Psychosomatics* 46 (2005): 317–26.
- Pope, Courtney G., and others. "Clinical Features of Muscle Dysmorphia Among Males with Body Dysmorphic Disorder." *Body Image* 2 (2005): 395–400.
- Slaughter, James R. "In Pursuit of Perfection: A Primary Care Physician's Guide to Body Dysmorphic Disorder." *American Family Physician* 60 (1999): 569–80.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, D.C. 20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <<http://www.aacap.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD



**A woman experiencing feldenkreis treatment.** (Libby Welch/Alamy)

body's structure in order to improve its function as well as the client's mental outlook. These therapies typically combine a relatively passive phase, in which the client receives deep-tissue bodywork or postural correction from an experienced instructor or practitioner, and a more active period of movement education, in which the client practices sitting, standing, and moving about with better alignment of the body and greater ease of motion.

Bodywork should not be equated with massage simply speaking. Massage therapy is one form of bodywork, but in massage therapy, the practitioner uses oil or lotion to reduce the friction between his or her hands and the client's skin. In most forms of body work, little if any lubrication is used, as the goal of this type of hands-on treatment is to warm, relax and stretch the fascia (a band or sheath of connective tissue that covers, supports, or connects the muscles and the internal organs) and underlying layers of tissue.

#### Purpose

The purpose of bodywork therapy is the correction of problems in the client's overall posture, connective tissue, and/or musculature in order to bring

## Bodywork therapies

### Definition

Bodywork therapies is a general term that refers to a group of body-based approaches to treatment that emphasize manipulation and realignment of the

about greater ease of movement, less discomfort, and a higher level of energy in daily activity. Some forms of bodywork have as a secondary purpose the healing or prevention of repetitive **stress** injuries, particularly for people whose occupations require intensive use of specific parts of the body (such as dancers, musicians, professional athletes, opera singers, etc.) Bodywork may also heal or prevent specific musculoskeletal problems, such as lower back pain or neck pain.

Bodywork therapies are holistic in that they stress increased self-awareness and intelligent use of one's body as one of the goals of treatment. Some of these therapies use verbal discussion, visualization or guided imagery along with movement education to help clients break old patterns of moving and feeling. Although most bodywork therapists do not address mental disorders directly in their work with clients, they are often knowledgeable about the applications of bodywork to such specific emotions as depression, anger, or fear.

Although some bodywork therapies, such as Rolfing or Hellerwork, offer programs structured around a specific number or sequence of lessons, all therapies of this type emphasize individualized treatment and respect for the uniqueness of each individual's body. Bodywork instructors or practitioners typically work with clients on a one-to-one basis, as distinct from a group or classroom approach.

### Precautions

Persons who are seriously ill, acutely feverish, or who have a contagious infection should wait until they have recovered before beginning a course of bodywork. As a rule, types of bodywork that involve intensive manipulation or stretching of the deeper layers of body tissue are not suitable for persons who have undergone recent surgery or have recently experienced severe injury. In the case of Tragerwork, shiatsu, and trigger point therapy, clients should inform the therapist of any open wounds, bruises, or fractures so that the affected part of the body can be avoided during treatment. Craniosacral therapy, the Feldenkrais method, and the Alexander technique involve gentle touch and do not require any special precautions.

Persons who are recovering from abuse or receiving treatment for any post-traumatic syndrome or dissociative disorder should consult their therapist before undertaking bodywork. Although bodywork is frequently recommended as an adjunctive treatment for these disorders, it can also trigger flashbacks if the bodywork therapist touches a part of the patient's body associated with the abuse or trauma. Many

bodywork therapists, however, are well informed about post-traumatic symptoms and disorders, and able to adjust their treatments accordingly.

### Description

The following are brief descriptions of some of the more popular bodywork therapies.

#### *Alexander technique*

The Alexander technique was developed by an Australian actor named F. Matthias Alexander (1869-1955), who had voice problems that were not helped by any available medical treatments. Alexander decided to set up a number of mirrors so that he could watch himself during a performance from different angles. He found that he was holding his head and neck too far forward, and that these unconscious patterns were the source of the tension in his body that was harming his voice. He then developed a method for teaching others to observe the patterns of tension and stress in their posture and movement, and to correct these patterns with a combination of hands-on guidance and visualization exercises. The Alexander technique is included in the curricula of the Juilliard School of Music and many other drama and music schools around the world, because performing artists are particularly vulnerable to repetitive stress injuries if they hold or move their bodies incorrectly.

In an Alexander technique session, the client works one-on-one with an instructor who uses verbal explanations as well as guided movement. The sessions are usually referred to as "explorations" and last about 30 minutes. Although most clients see positive changes after only two or three sessions, teachers of the technique recommend a course of 20–30 sessions so that new movement skills can be learned and changes maintained.

#### *Rolfing*

Rolfing, which is also called Rolf therapy or structural integration, is a holistic system of bodywork that uses deep manipulation of the body's soft tissue to realign and balance the body's myofascial (muscular and connective tissue) structure. It was developed by Ida Rolf (1896-1979), a biochemist who became interested in the structure of the human body after an accident damaged her health. She studied with an osteopath as well as with practitioners of other forms of alternative medicine, and developed her own technique of body movement that she called structural integration. Rolfing is an approach that seeks to counteract the effects of gravity, which tends to pull the

body out of alignment over time and cause the connective tissues to stiffen and contract.

Rolfing treatment begins with the so-called “Basic Ten,” a series of ten sessions each lasting 60–90 minutes, spaced a week or longer apart. After a period of integration, the client may undertake advanced treatment sessions. “Tune-up” sessions are recommended every six months. In Rolfing sessions, the practitioner uses his or her fingers, hands, knuckles, or elbows to rework the connective tissue over the client’s entire body. The deep tissues are worked until they become pliable, which allows the muscles to lengthen and return to their proper alignment. Rolfing treatments are done on a massage table, with the client wearing only undergarments.

### ***Hellerwork***

Hellerwork is a bodywork therapy developed by Joseph Heller, a former NASA engineer who became a certified Rolfer in 1972 and started his own version of structural integration, called Hellerwork, in 1979. Heller describes his program as “a powerful system of somatic education and structural bodywork” based on a series of eleven sessions. Hellerwork is somewhat similar to Rolfing in that it begins with manipulation of the deep tissues of the body. Heller, however, decided that physical realignment of the body by itself is insufficient, so he extended his system to include movement education and “self-awareness facilitated through dialogue.”

The bodywork aspect of Hellerwork is intended to release the tension that exists in the fascia, which is the sheath or layer of connective tissue that covers, supports, or connects the muscles and internal organs of the body. Fascia is flexible and moist in its normal state, but the effects of gravity and ongoing physical stresses lead to misalignments that cause the fascia to become stiff and rigid. The first hour of a Hellerwork session is devoted to deep connective tissue bodywork in which the Hellerwork practitioner uses his or her hands to release tension in the client’s fascia. The bodywork is followed by movement education, which includes the use of video feedback to help clients learn movement patterns that will help to keep their bodies in proper alignment. The third component of Hellerwork is verbal dialogue, which is intended to help clients become more aware of the relationships between their emotions and attitudes and their body.

### ***Tragerwork***

Trager psychophysical integration, which is often called simply Tragerwork, was developed by Milton Trager (1908–1977), a man who was born with a spinal

deformity and earned a medical degree in his middle age after working out an approach to healing **chronic pain**. Tragerwork is based on the theory that many illnesses are caused by tension patterns that are held in the unconscious mind as much as in the tissues of the body; clients are advised to think of Tragerwork sessions as “learning experiences” rather than “treatments.” Tragerwork sessions are divided into bodywork, which is referred to as tablework, and an exercise period. Trager practitioners use their hands during tablework to perform a variety of gentle motions—rocking, shaking, vibrating, and gentle stretching—intended to help the client release their patterns of tension by experiencing how it feels to move freely and effortlessly on one’s own. Following the tablework, clients are taught how to perform simple dance-like exercises called Mentastics, for practice at home. Tragerwork sessions take between 60–90 minutes, while clients are advised to spend 10–15 minutes three times a day doing the Mentastics exercises.

### ***Feldenkrais method***

The Feldenkrais method, like Hellerwork, refers to its approach as “somatic education.” Developed by Moshe Feldenkrais (1904–1984), a scientist and engineer who was also a judo instructor, the Feldenkrais method consists of two major applications—Awareness Through Movement (ATM) lessons, a set of verbally directed exercise lessons intended to engage the client’s intelligence as well as physical perception; and Functional Integration (FI), in which a Feldenkrais practitioner works with the client one-on-one, guiding him or her through a series of movements that alter habitual patterns and convey new learning directly to the neuromuscular system. Functional Integration is done with the client fully clothed, lying or sitting on a low padded table.

Perhaps the most distinctive feature of the Feldenkrais method is its emphasis on new patterns of thinking, attention, cognition, and imagination as byproducts of new patterns of physical movement. It is the most intellectually oriented of the various bodywork therapies, and has been described by one observer as “an unusual melding of motor development, biomechanics, psychology, and martial arts.” The Feldenkrais method is the form of bodywork that has been most extensively studied by mainstream medical researchers.

### ***Trigger point therapy***

Trigger point therapy, which is sometimes called myotherapy, is a treatment for pain relief in the musculoskeletal system based on the application of

pressure to trigger points in the client's body. Trigger points are defined as hypersensitive spots or areas in the muscles that cause pain when subjected to stress, whether the stress is an occupational injury, a disease, or emotional stress. Trigger points are not necessarily in the same location where the client feels pain.

Myotherapy is a two-step process. In the first step, the therapist locates the client's trigger points and applies pressure to them. This step relieves pain and also relaxes the muscles associated with it. In the second part of the therapy session, the client learns a series of exercises that progressively stretch the muscles that have been relaxed by the therapist's pressure. Most clients need fewer than 10 sessions to benefit from myotherapy. One distinctive feature of trigger point therapy is that clients are asked to bring a relative or trusted friend to learn the pressure technique and the client's personal trigger points. This "buddy system" helps the client to maintain the benefits of the therapy in the event of a **relapse**.

### *Shiatsu*

Shiatsu is the oldest form of bodywork therapy, having been practiced for centuries in Japan as part of traditional medical practice. It is also the type of bodywork most commonly requested by clients in Western countries as well as in East Asia. The word *shiatsu* itself is a combination of two Japanese words that mean "pressure" and "finger." Shiatsu resembles acupuncture in its use of the basic concepts of *ki*, the vital energy that flows throughout the body, and the meridians, or 12 major pathways that channel *ki* to the various organs of the body. In Asian terms, shiatsu works by unblocking and rebalancing the distribution of *ki* in the body. In the categories of Western medicine, shiatsu may stimulate the release of endorphins, which are chemical compounds that block the receptors in the **brain** that perceive pain.

A shiatsu treatment begins with the practitioner's assessment of the client's basic state of health, including posture, vocal tone, complexion color, and condition of hair. This evaluation is used together with ongoing information about the client's energy level gained through the actual bodywork. The shiatsu practitioner works with the client lying fully clothed on a futon. The practitioner seeks out the meridians in the client's body through finger pressure, and stimulates points along the meridians known as *tsubos*. The *tsubos* are centers of high energy where the *ki* tends to collect. Pressure on the *tsubos* results in a release of energy that rebalances the energy level throughout the body.

### *Craniosacral therapy*

Craniosacral therapy, or CST, is a form of treatment that originated with William Sutherland, an American osteopath of the 1930s who theorized that the manipulative techniques that osteopaths were taught could be applied to the skull. Sutherland knew from his medical training that the skull is not a single piece of bone, but consists of several bones that meet at seams; and that the cerebrospinal fluid that bathes the brain and spinal cord has a natural rise-and-fall rhythm. Sutherland experimented with gentle manipulation of the skull in order to correct imbalances in the distribution of the cerebrospinal fluid. Contemporary craniosacral therapists practice manipulation not only of the skull, but of the meningeal membranes that cover the brain and the spinal cord, and sometimes of the facial bones. Many practitioners of CST are also osteopaths, or DOs.

In CST, the patient lies on a massage table while the therapist gently palpates, or presses, the skull and spine. If the practitioner is also an osteopath, he or she will take a complete medical history as well. The therapist also "listens" to the cranial rhythmic impulse, or rhythmic pulsation of the cerebrospinal fluid, with his or her hands. Interruptions of the normal flow by abnormalities caused by tension or by injuries are diagnostic clues to the practitioner. Once he or she has identified the cause of the abnormal rhythm, the skull and spinal column are gently manipulated to restore the natural rhythm of the cranial impulse. Craniosacral therapy appears to be particularly useful in treating physical disorders of the head, including migraine headaches, ringing in the ears, sinus problems, and injuries of the head, neck, and spine. In addition, patients rarely require extended periods of CST treatments.

### **Preparation**

Bodywork usually requires little preparation on the client's or patient's part, except for partial undressing for Rolfing, trigger point therapy, and Hellerwork.

### **Aftercare**

Aftercare for shiatsu, trigger point therapy, and craniosacral therapy involves a brief period of rest after the treatment.

Some bodywork approaches involve various types of long-term aftercare. Rolfing clients return for advanced treatments or tune-ups after a period of integrating the changes in their bodies resulting from the Basic Ten sessions. Tragerwork clients are taught Mentastics exercises to be done at home.

The Alexander technique and the Feldenkrais approach assume that clients will continue to practice their movement and postural changes for the rest of their lives. Trigger point therapy clients are asked to involve friends or relatives who can help them maintain the benefits of the therapy after the treatment sessions are over.

### Risks

The deep tissue massage and manipulation in Rolfing and Hellerwork are uncomfortable for many people, particularly the first few sessions. There are, however, no serious risks of physical injury from any form of bodywork that is administered by a trained practitioner of the specific treatment. As mentioned, however, bodywork therapies that involve intensive manipulation or stretching of the deeper layers of body tissue are not suitable for persons who have undergone recent surgery or have recently suffered severe injury.

### Normal results

Normal results from bodywork include deep relaxation, improved posture, greater ease and spontaneity of movement, greater range of motion for certain joints, greater understanding of the structures and functions of the body and their relationship to emotions, and release of negative emotions.

Many persons also report healing or improvement of specific conditions, including migraine headaches, repetitive stress injuries, osteoarthritis, **insomnia**, sprains and bruises, sports injuries, stress-related illnesses, sciatica, postpregnancy problems, menstrual cramps, temporomandibular joint disorders, lower back pain, whiplash injuries, disorders of the immune system, asthma, **depression**, digestive problems, chronic **fatigue**, and painful scar tissue. The Alexander technique has been reported to ease the process of childbirth by improving the mother's postural alignment prior to delivery.

Some studies of the Feldenkrais method have found that its positive effects on subjects' self-esteem, mood, and **anxiety** symptoms are more significant than its effects on body function.

### Abnormal results

Abnormal results from bodywork therapies would include serious physical injury or trauma-based psychological reactions.

*See also* Acupuncture; Energy therapies.

## KEY TERMS

**Bodywork**—Any technique involving hands-on massage or manipulation of the body.

**Endorphins**—A group of peptide compounds released by the body in response to stress or traumatic injury. Endorphins react with opiate receptors in the brain to reduce or relieve pain sensations. Shiatsu is thought to work by stimulating the release of endorphins.

**Fascia (plural, fasciae)**—A band or sheath of connective tissue that covers, supports, or connects the muscles and the internal organs.

**Ki**—The Japanese spelling of *qi*, the traditional Chinese term for vital energy or the life force.

**Meridians**—In traditional Chinese medicine, a network of pathways or channels that convey *qi* (also sometimes spelled "ki"), or vital energy, through the body.

**Movement education**—A term that refers to the active phase of bodywork, in which clients learn to move with greater freedom and to maintain the proper alignment of their bodies.

**Repetitive stress injury (RSI)**—A type of injury to the musculoskeletal and nervous systems associated with occupational strain or overuse of a specific part of the body. Bodywork therapies are often recommended to people suffering from RSIs.

**Somatic education**—A term used in both Hellerwork and the Feldenkrais method to describe the integration of bodywork with self-awareness, intelligence, and imagination.

**Structural integration**—The term used to describe the method and philosophy of life associated with Rolfing. Its fundamental concept is the vertical line.

**Tsubo**—In shiatsu, a center of high energy located along one of the body's meridians. Stimulation of the tsubos during a shiatsu treatment is thought to rebalance the flow of vital energy in the body.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

Dunn, P. A., and D. K. Rogers. "Feldenkrais Sensory Imagery and Forward Reach." *Perception and Motor Skills* 91 (December 2000): 755-757.

- Hornung, S. "An ABC of Alternative Medicine: Heller-work." *Health Visit* 59 (December 1986): 387-388.
- Huntley, A., and E. Ernst. "Complementary and Alternative Therapies for Treating Multiple Sclerosis Symptoms: A Systematic Review." *Complementary Therapies in Medicine* 8 (June 2000): 97-105.
- Johnson, S. K., and others. "A Controlled Investigation of Bodywork in Multiple Sclerosis." *Journal of Alternative and Complementary Medicine* 5 (June 1999): 237-243.
- Mackereth, P. "Tough Places to be Tender: Contracting for Happy or 'Good Enough' Endings in Therapeutic Massage/Bodywork?" *Complementary Therapies in Nursing and Midwifery* 6 (August 2000): 111-115.
- Perron, Wendy. "Guide to Bodywork Approaches." *Dance Magazine* 74 (November 2000): 12-15.
- Stallibrass, C., and M. Hampson. "The Alexander Technique: Its Application in Midwifery and the Results of Preliminary Research Into Parkinson's." *Complementary Therapies in Nursing and Midwifery* 7 (February 2001): 13-18.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Bonnie Prudden Pain Erasure Clinic and School for Physical Fitness and Myotherapy. P.O. Box 65240. Tucson, AZ 85728. Telephone: (520) 529-3979. Fax: (520) 529-6679. <[www.bonnieprudden.com](http://www.bonnieprudden.com)>.
- Cranial Academy. 3500 DePauw Boulevard, Indianapolis, IN 46268. Telephone: (317) 879-0713.
- Craniosacral Therapy Association of the United Kingdom. Monomark House, 27 Old Gloucester Street, London, WC1N 3XX. Telephone: 07000-784-735. <[www.craniosacral.co.uk](http://www.craniosacral.co.uk)>.
- Feldenkrais Guild of North America. 3611 S.W. Hood Avenue, Suite 100, Portland, OR 97201. Telephone: (800) 775-2118 or (503) 221-6612. Fax: (503) 221-6616. <[www.feldenkrais.com](http://www.feldenkrais.com)>.
- The Guild for Structural Integration. 209 Canyon Blvd. P.O. Box 1868. Boulder, CO 80306-1868. Telephone: (303) 449-5903. (800) 530-8875. <[www.rofguild.org](http://www.rofguild.org)>.
- Hellerwork. 406 Berry St. Mt. Shasta, CA 96067. Telephone: (530) 926-2500. <[www.hellerwork.com](http://www.hellerwork.com)>.
- International School of Shiatsu. 10 South Clinton Street, Doylestown, PA 18901. Telephone: (215) 340-9918. Fax: (215) 340-9181. <[www.shiatsubo.com](http://www.shiatsubo.com)>.
- The Society of Teachers of the Alexander Technique. <[www.stat.org.uk](http://www.stat.org.uk)>.
- The Trager Institute. 21 Locust Avenue, Mill Valley, CA 94941-2806. Telephone: (415) 388-2688. Fax: (415) 388-2710. <[www.trager.com](http://www.trager.com)>.

#### OTHER

- National Certification Board for Therapeutic Massage and Bodywork. 8201 Greensboro Drive, Suite 300. McLean, VA 22102. Telephone: (703) 610-9015.
- NIH National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) Clearinghouse. P. O. Box 8218, Silver Spring, MD 20907-8218. TTY/TDY: (888) 644-6226. Fax: (301) 495-4957. Web site: <<http://www.nccam.nih.gov>>.

## Borderline personality disorder

### Definition

Borderline personality disorder (BPD) is a mental disorder characterized by disturbed and unstable interpersonal relationships and self-image, along with impulsive behavior, unstable mood, and suicidal behavior.

### Description

Individuals with BPD have a history of unstable interpersonal relationships. They have difficulty interpreting reality and view significant people in their lives as either completely flawless or extremely unfair and uncaring (a phenomenon known as "splitting"). These alternating feelings of idealization and devaluation are one major feature of borderline personality disorder. Because borderline patients set up such excessive and unrealistic expectations for others, they are inevitably disappointed when their expectations are not realized.

The term "borderline" was originally used by **psychologist** Adolf Stern in the 1930s to describe patients whose condition bordered somewhere between **psychosis** and **neurosis**, although today, the term "borderline" used in this sense is considered a misnomer. The term is better applicable today in describing the borderline states of consciousness these patients sometimes feel when they experience dissociative symptoms (a feeling of disconnection from oneself). The syndrome itself is considered a complex disorder, rather than one lying on a border between psychosis and neurosis.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

In about 24% of cases, there is a history of childhood sex abuse, and in about one-third of cases, there is a history of severe abuse of some kind. Thus, abuse is considered a risk factor, but it is an environmental contributor thought to interact with a genetic basis. Twin studies have suggested that at least some features of this disorder are highly heritable. Mood instability and impulsivity are about 50% heritable, and studies of BPD specifically suggest a similar level of heritability. The root biological cause may be disruptions in signaling pathways involving serotonin, a nerve signaling molecule, but more studies are necessary to confirm the biological basis.

The feelings of inadequacy and self-loathing that arise from situations of abuse or **neglect** may contribute to the development of a borderline personality. It has also been theorized that these patients try to compensate for the care they were denied in childhood through the idealized demands they now make on themselves and on others as adults.

### Symptoms

The handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)*. The 2000 edition of this manual (fourth edition, text revised) is known as the *DSM-IV-TR*. Published by the American Psychiatric Association, the *DSM* contains diagnostic criteria, research findings, and treatment information for mental disorders. It is the primary reference for mental health professionals in the United States. BPD was first listed as a disorder in the third edition *DSM-III*, which was published in 1980, and has been revised in subsequent editions.

The *DSM-IV-TR* requires that at least five of the following criteria (or symptoms) be present in an individual for a **diagnosis** of BPD, although some researchers suggest that criteria from each of three dimensions (groupings) should actually be met:

#### DIMENSION: AFFECTIVE (MOOD-RELATED) SYMPTOMS.

- Unstable mood caused by brief but intense episodes of depression, irritability, or anxiety. These episodes are generally much briefer than the highs and lows of bipolar disorder. The strongest tendency is to outbursts of anger. The level of mood instability can be a strong predictor of whether or not suicide will be attempted.
- Chronic feelings of emptiness.
- Inappropriate and intense anger, or difficulty controlling anger displayed through temper outbursts, physical fights, and/or sarcasm.

#### DIMENSION: IMPULSIVE SYMPTOMS.

- Impulsive behavior in at least two areas (e.g., spending, sex, substance abuse, reckless driving, binge eating).
- Recurrent suicidal behavior, gestures, or threats, or recurring acts of self-mutilation (such as cutting or burning oneself). This behavior results from the combination of impulsivity and rapidly and intensely changeable mood.
- Pattern of unstable and intense interpersonal relationships, characterized by alternating between idealization and devaluation (“love-hate” relationships).

#### DIMENSION: INTERPERSONAL SYMPTOMS.

- Extreme, persistently unstable self-image and sense of self.
- Frantic efforts to avoid real or perceived abandonment.

In addition, there is a cognitive criterion for diagnosis that includes stress-related **paranoia** that passes fairly quickly and/or severe dissociative symptoms—feeling disconnected from oneself, as if one is an observer of one’s own actions; sometimes occurs with flashbacks. One study found that about 40% of patients with BPD reported having semipsychotic thoughts. The rate in another study was 27% of patients. A different study also found that the presence of psychotic symptoms can be a predictor of self-harm in patients who have **personality disorders**.

Some patients with BPD are mistakenly diagnosed with bipolar disorder or with **schizophrenia**. BPD can be distinguished from bipolar disorder based on the brevity of the extreme mood swings, which typically last only hours, rather than days or weeks. In spite of the fact that auditory **hallucinations** can occur in people with BPD, it is distinguished from schizophrenia because the patient with BPD knows the hallucinations are not real, whereas the patient with schizophrenia does not.

### Demographics

Borderline personality disorder accounts for 30–60% of all personality disorders and is present in approximately 1% of the general population, a frequency similar to that of schizophrenia. The disorder appears to affect women more frequently than men; as many as 80% of all patients receiving therapy are female, but this sex bias is not as obvious in samples from community populations. The characteristic of suicidality (thinking about or attempting suicide) is less prominent in traditional societies that experience little cultural change from one generation to the next, but is increasing in modern societies and in societies experiencing rapid change.

### Diagnosis

Borderline personality disorder typically first appears in early adulthood, with the usual age of onset around 18 years. Although the disorder may occur in adolescence, it may be difficult to diagnose, since borderline symptoms such as impulsive and experimental behaviors, insecurity, and mood swings are common—even developmentally appropriate—occurrences at this age.

Assessment is based first on determination of whether or not the person meets at least five of the nine *DSM-IV-TR* criteria. The next step typically involves completion of a personality assessment, which involves interviewing the patient, but also can involve querying family members or friends, with the patient's agreement. Last, the symptoms of BPD that suggest the diagnosis must have been present consistently over time.

Borderline symptoms may also be the result of chronic substance abuse and/or medical conditions (specifically, disorders of the central nervous system). These should be ruled out before making the diagnosis of borderline personality disorder.

BPD commonly occurs with mood disorders (i.e., depression and anxiety), **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), eating disorders, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD), and other personality disorders. Another accompanying comorbidity may be substance use disorder. It has also been suggested by some researchers that borderline personality disorder is not a true pathological condition in and of itself, but rather a number of overlapping personality disorders; it is, however, commonly recognized as a separate and distinct disorder by the American Psychiatric Association and by most mental health professionals. It is diagnosed by interviewing the patient and matching symptoms to the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria. Supplementary testing may also be necessary.

## Treatment

Individuals with borderline personality disorder seek psychiatric help and **hospitalization** at a much higher rate than people with other personality disorders, probably because of their fear of abandonment and their need to seek idealized interpersonal relationships. These patients represent the highest percentage of diagnosed personality disorders (up to 60%).

Providing effective therapy for the borderline personality patient is a necessary, but difficult, challenge. The therapist-patient relationship is subject to the same inappropriate and unrealistic demands that borderline personalities place on all their significant interpersonal relationships. They are chronic "treatment seekers" who become easily frustrated with their therapist if they feel they are not receiving adequate attention or empathy, and symptomatic anger, impulsivity, and self-destructive behavior can impede the therapist-patient relationship. However, their fear of abandonment and of ending the therapy relationship may actually cause them to discontinue treatment as soon as progress is made.

**Psychotherapy**, typically in the form of **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, is usually the treatment of choice for borderline personalities. Dialectical behavior therapy (DBT), a cognitive-behavioral technique, has emerged as an effective therapy for borderline personalities with suicidal tendencies. The treatment focuses on giving the borderline patient self-confidence and coping tools for life outside of treatment through a combination of **social skills training**, mood-awareness and meditative exercises, and education about the disorder. **Group therapy** is also an option for some borderline patients, although some may feel threatened by the idea of "sharing" a therapist with others.

Medication is not considered a first-line treatment choice but may be useful in treating some symptoms of the disorder and/or the mood disorders that have been diagnosed in conjunction with BPD. Some patients with BPD may find themselves taking several different medications, each designed to address one of the main manifestations of BPD, but there are no data from **clinical trials** supporting such a regimen.

## Prognosis

The disorder usually peaks in young adulthood and frequently stabilizes after age 30. In 75% of cases, normal function will have returned by age 35 to 40, and in 90% of cases, function will be normal by age 50. Unfortunately, the remaining 10% fall into the group of patients who die as a result of suicide. Approximately 75–80% of borderline patients attempt or threaten suicide, and between 8–10% are successful. Managing this highly prevalent suicidality is one of the greatest therapeutic challenges in BPD. The behavior peaks usually when the patient is in the mid-20s, but most of the completed suicides actually occur among patients older than 30 years, usually in patients who have experienced no recovery after many treatment attempts. If the borderline patient suffers from depressive disorder, the risk of suicide is much higher. For this reason, swift diagnosis and appropriate interventions are critical. Self-harming behaviors are generally not considered to be attempted suicide but instead to serve as a relief from an extreme emotional state.

## Prevention

Prevention recommendations are scarce. Given the genetic basis of the disorder, current technologies do not allow preventions targeting that aspect of its etiology. The only known prevention would be to ensure a safe and nurturing environment during childhood.

*See also* Dissociation/Dissociative disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Linehan, Marsha. *Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment of Borderline Personality Disorder*. New York: Guilford Press, 1993.
- Linehan, Marsha. *Skills Training Manual for Treating Borderline Personality Disorder*. New York: Guilford Press, 1993.
- Moskowitz, Richard A. *Lost in the Mirror: An Inside Look at Borderline Personality Disorder*. Dallas, TX: Taylor Publishing, 1996.
- Tasman, Allan, Jerald Kay, and Jeffrey A. Lieberman, eds. *Psychiatry*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- Gurvits, I., H. Koenigsberg, and L. Siever. "Neurotransmitter Dysfunction in Patients with Borderline Personality Disorder." *Psychiatric Clinics of North America* 23.1 (March 2000): 27–40.
- Paris, Joel. "Borderline Personality Disorder." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 172 (2005): 1579–83.
- Soloff, P. "Psychopharmacology of Borderline Personality Disorder." *Psychiatric Clinics of North America* 23.1 (March 2000): 169–92.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- BPD Central, National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. 200 N. Glebe Road, Suite 1015, Arlington, VA 22203-3754. Telephone: (800) 950-6264. Web site: <<http://www.bpdcentral.com>>.

### OTHER

- National Institute of Mental Health. National Institutes of Health. "Borderline Personality Disorder." NIH publication 01-4928. (2006) <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/bpd.cfm>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, MD

Linda Hesson, MA, Psy.S., L.L.P., C.A.C.

Micheal Mooney, MA., C.A.C, C.C.S.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Description

The brain, along with the spinal cord and network of nerves, controls information flow throughout the body, voluntary actions such as walking, reading, and talking, and involuntary reactions such as breathing and digestion.

The human brain is a soft, shiny, grayish-white, mushroom-shaped structure. The brain of an average adult weighs about 3 lb (1.4 kg). At birth, the average infant's brain weighs 13.7 oz (390 g); by age 15, it has nearly reached full adult size. The brain is protected by the skull and a three-layered membrane called the meninges. The brain's surface is covered with many bright red arteries and bluish veins that penetrate inward. Glucose, oxygen, and certain ions pass easily across the blood-brain barrier into the brain, although other substances, such as antibiotics, do not.

The four principal sections of the human brain are: the brain stem, the diencephalon, the cerebrum (divided into two large paired cerebral hemispheres), and the cerebellum.

### The brain stem

The brain stem connects the brain with the spinal cord. Every message transmitted between the brain and spinal cord passes through the medulla oblongata—a part of the brain stem—via nerve fibers. The fibers on the right side of the medulla cross to the left and those on the left cross to the right. As a result, each side of the brain controls the opposite side of the body. The medulla regulates the heartbeat, breathing rate, and blood-vessel diameters; it also helps coordinate swallowing, vomiting, hiccuping, coughing, and sneezing.

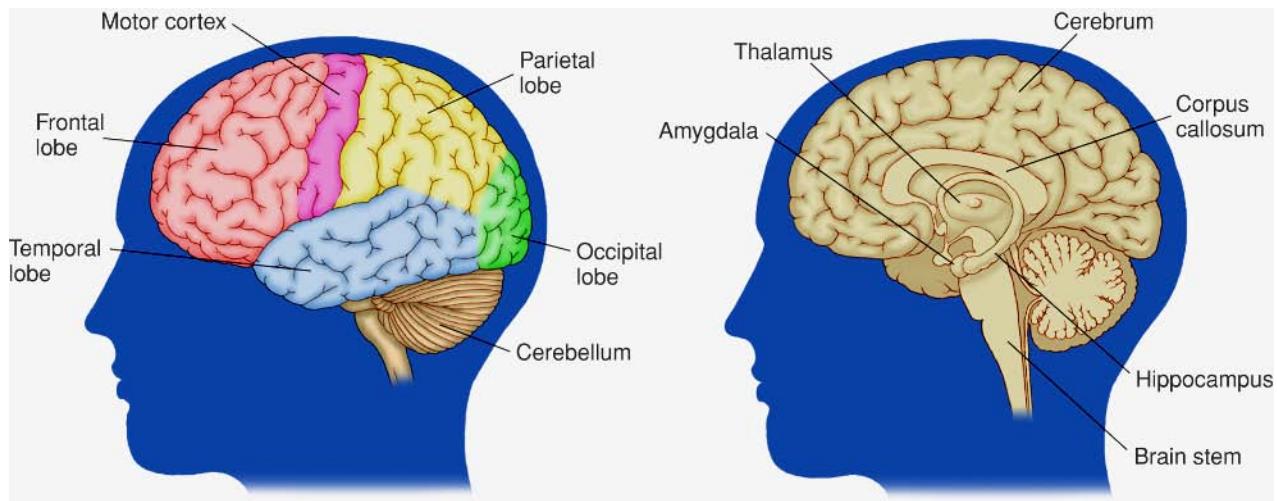
Another brain stem component, the pons (meaning "bridge"), conducts messages between the spinal cord and the rest of the brain, and between the different parts of the brain. The midbrain conveys impulses between the cerebral cortex, pons, and spinal cord and also contains visual and audio reflex centers involving the movement of the eyeballs and head.

Twelve pairs of cranial nerves originate in the underside of the brain, mostly from the brain stem. They leave the skull through openings and extend as peripheral nerves to their destinations. Among these cranial nerves are the olfactory nerves that bring messages about smell and the optic nerves that conduct visual information.

## Brain

### Definition

The brain is the part of the central nervous system located in the skull. It controls the mental processes and physical actions of a human being.



**Diagram showing the anatomy of the human brain: Exterior view showing the lobes (on left) and the interior sections (right).**  
(Frank Forney)

### The diencephalon

The diencephalon lies above the brain stem and embodies the thalamus and hypothalamus. The thalamus is an important relay station for sensory information, interpreting sound, smell, taste, pain, pressure, temperature, and touch; it also regulates some emotions and memory. The hypothalamus controls a number of body functions, such as heartbeat and digestion, and helps regulate the endocrine system (hormonal system) and body temperature. The hypothalamus signals hunger and thirst and also helps regulate sleep, anger, and aggression.

### The cerebrum

Constituting nearly 90% of the brain's weight, the cerebrum is divided into specific areas that interpret sensory impulses. For example, spoken and written languages are transmitted to a part of the cerebrum called Wernicke's area where meaning is constructed. Motor areas control muscle movements. Broca's area translates thoughts into speech, and coordinates the muscles needed for speaking. Impulses from other motor areas direct hand muscles for writing and eye muscles for physical movement necessary for reading. The cerebrum is divided into left and right hemispheres. A deep fissure separates the two, with the corpus callosum, a large bundle of fibers, connecting them.

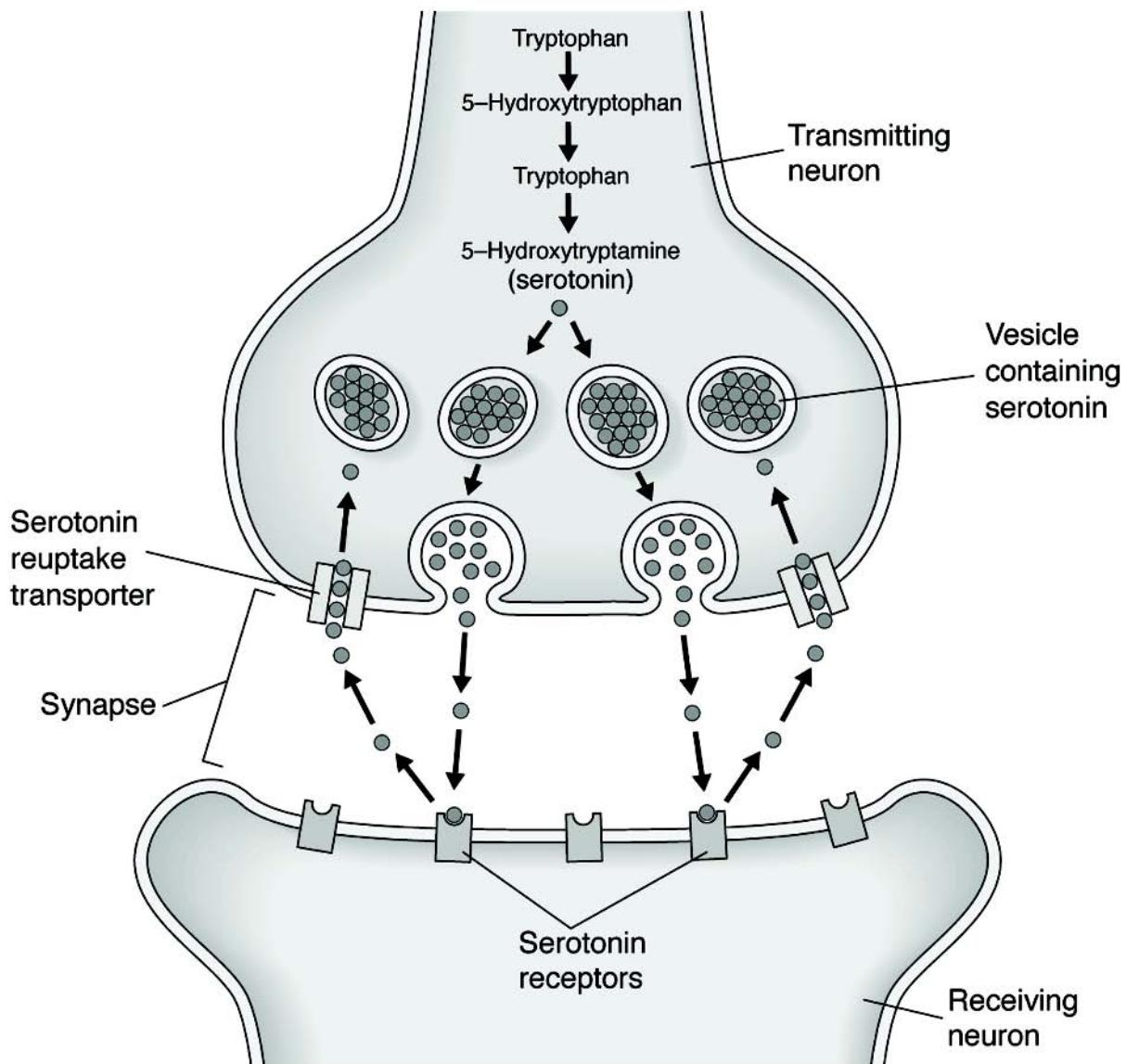
By studying patients whose corpora callosa had been destroyed, scientists realized that differences existed between the left and right sides of the cerebral cortex. The left side of the brain functions mainly in

speech, logic, writing, and arithmetic. The right side, on the other hand, is more concerned with imagination, art, symbols, and spatial relations. For most right-handed people (and many left-handed people as well), the left half of the brain is dominant.

The cerebrum's outer layer, the cerebral cortex, is composed of gray matter, which is made up of nerve cell bodies. About 0.08 in (2 mm) thick with a surface area about 5 sq. ft (0.5 sq m), it's nearly half the size of an office desk (if it were spread out flat). White matter, composed of nerve fibers covered with myelin sheaths, lies beneath the gray matter. During embryonic development, the gray matter grows faster than the white and folds in on itself, giving the brain its characteristic wrinkles, called convolutions, or gyri; the grooves between them are known as sulci.

### The cerebellum

The cerebellum is located below the cerebrum and behind the brain stem. It is butterfly shaped, with the "wings" known as the cerebellar hemispheres; the two halves are connected by the vermis. The cerebellum coordinates many neuromuscular functions, such as balance and coordination. Disorders related to damage of the cerebellum often result in ataxia (problems with coordination), dysarthria (unclear speech resulting from problems controlling the muscles used in speaking), and nystagmus (uncontrollable jerking of the eyeballs). A brain tumor that is relatively common in children known as medulloblastoma grows in the cerebellum.



**Diagram showing transmitting and receiving neurons and the role of serotonin in communication between neurons. (Frank Forney)**

### Studying the brain

Neurons carry information through the nervous system in the form of brief electrical impulses called action potentials. When an impulse reaches the end of an axon, **neurotransmitters** are released at junctions called synapses. The neurotransmitters are chemicals that bind to receptors on the receiving neurons, triggering the continuation of the impulse. Fifty different neurotransmitters have been discovered since the first was identified in 1920. By studying the chemical effects

of neurotransmitters in the brain, scientists have developed treatments for mental disorders and are learning more about how drugs affect the brain.

### Computerized brain imaging

Technology provides useful tools for researching the brain and helping patients with brain disorders. An electroencephalogram (EEG) records brain waves, which are produced by electrical activity in the brain. It is obtained by positioning electrodes on the head and amplifying the waves with an electroencephalograph.

EEGs are valuable in diagnosing brain diseases such as epilepsy and tumors.

Scientists use several other techniques to study and understand the brain and diagnose disorders.

**MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING (MRI).** Using a magnetic field to display the living brain at various depths, MRI can produce very clear and detailed pictures of brain structures. These images, which often appear as cross-sectional slices, are obtained by altering the main magnetic field of a specific brain area. MRI is particularly valuable in diagnosing damage to soft tissues, such as areas affected by head trauma or **stroke**. This is crucial when early **diagnosis** improves the chances of successful treatment. MRI also reveals tumors and other types of brain lesions.

**POSITRON EMISSION TOMOGRAPHY (PET).** During this test, a technician injects the patient with a small amount of a substance, such as glucose, that is marked with a radioactive tag. By tracking the radioactive substance as it travels to the brain, physicians can see almost immediately where glucose is consumed in the brain. This indicates brain activity, an important factor in diagnosing epilepsy, **Alzheimer's disease**, or Parkinson's disease. PET is also valuable in locating tumors and brain areas that have been affected by a stroke or blood clot.

**POSITRON EMISSION TOMOGRAPHY (PET) AND FDDNP.** Researchers have developed a molecule, abbreviated FDDNP, that binds to the plaques and protein tangles that characterize Alzheimer's disease in the brain. This molecule also is fluorescent, and after injection of a solution of FDDNP into a patient, clinicians can use PET to capture an image of the brain showing where it has bound and is fluorescing. In this way, they can distinguish a brain even with mild cognitive impairment compared to a brain with no cognitive impairment and also can distinguish mild impairment from Alzheimer's disease.

**MAGNETOENCEPHALOGRAPHY (MEG).** Magnetoencephalography measures the electromagnetic fields created between neurons as electrochemical information is passed along. Of all brain-scanning methods, MEG provides the most accurate indicator of nerve cell activity, which can be measured in milliseconds. By combining an MRI with MEG, clinicians can get a noninvasive look at the brain that is especially useful in diagnosing epilepsy or migraines, for example. MEG also helps identify specific brain areas involved with different tasks. Any movement by the patient—wiggling the toes, for example—appears on the computer screen immediately as concentric colored rings. This pinpoints brain signals even before the toes are

## KEY TERMS

**Corpus callosum**—(plural, corpora callosa) A thick bundle of nerve fibers lying deep in the brain that connects the two cerebral hemispheres and coordinates their functions.

**Meninges**—A membrane covering the brain and spinal cord that consists of three layers: the pia mater, the innermost layer; the arachnoid, in the middle; and the dura mater, the outermost layer.

**Myelin sheaths**—A fatty layer around nerve cells that aids the transmission of nerve impulses.

**Peripheral nerve**—A nerve in a distant location from the brain that receives information in the form of an impulse from the brain and spinal cord.

actually wiggled. Researchers foresee that these techniques could someday help paralysis victims move by supplying information on how to stimulate their muscles or indicating the signals needed to control an artificial limb.

**COMPUTED AXIAL TOMOGRAPHY (CAT OR CT) SCAN.** This type of scan uses X-rays to produce a picture of the targeted area of the body in cross sections. Clinicians may use a dye that creates a contrast between tissues to highlight a specific area of interest for the scan. In the brain, this type of scan can be used to identify an area of stroke or hemorrhage, causes of headache, and causes of lost sensory or motor function. This test may also be used in the diagnosis of other disorders involving the brain, including **delirium**, **dementia**, and **schizophrenia**.

*See also* Addiction; Nutrition and mental health.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Bear, Mark F., Barry W. Connors, and Michael A. Paradiso. *Neuroscience: Exploring the Brain*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1996.
- Burstein, John. *The Mind by Slim Goodbody*. Minneapolis, MN: Fairview Press, 1996.
- Carey, Joseph, ed. *Brain Facts*. Washington, D.C.: Society for Neuroscience, 1993.
- Greenfield, Susan A., ed. *The Human Mind Explained: An Owner's Guide to the Mysteries of the Mind*. New York: Henry Holt, 1996.
- Howard, Pierce J. *The Owner's Manual for the Brain: Everyday Applications from Mind-Brain Research*. Austin, TX: Leornian Press, 1994.
- Jackson, Carolyn, ed. *How Things Work: The Brain*. Alexandria, VA: Time-Life Books, 1990.

**PERIODICAL**

Small, Gary W., and others. "PET of brain amyloid and tau in mild cognitive impairment." *The New England Journal of Medicine* 355 (2006): 2652–2663.

**OTHER**

*The Mind*. Alexandria, VA: PBS Video, 1988. (Series of nine 1-hour videocassettes.)

National Library of Medicine. "Cranial CT Scan." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/003786.htm>>.

*The Nature of the Nerve Impulse*. Films for the Humanities and Sciences, 1994–95. (Videocassette.)

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.



## Breathing-related sleep disorder

### Definition

Breathing-related sleep disorder is marked by sleep disruption from abnormal breathing during sleep. The most common complaint of individuals with breathing-related sleep disorder is excessive daytime sleepiness, brought on by frequent interruptions of nocturnal, or nighttime, sleep. A less frequent complaint is **insomnia** or inability to sleep. About two-thirds with this disorder experience daytime sleepiness and one-third from an inability to sleep.

Mental health professionals use the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, also known as the *DSM* to diagnose mental disorders. In the 2000 edition of this manual (the fourth edition, text revision, also known as *DSM-IV-TR*), breathing-related sleep disorder is listed as one of several different primary **sleep disorders**. Within the category of primary sleep disorders, it is classified as one of the dyssomnias, which are characterized by irregularities in the quality, timing, and amount of sleep.

The *DSM-IV-TR* lists three types of breathing-related sleep disorder: obstructive sleep apnea syndrome (the most common type), central sleep apnea syndrome, and central alveolar hypoventilation syndrome.

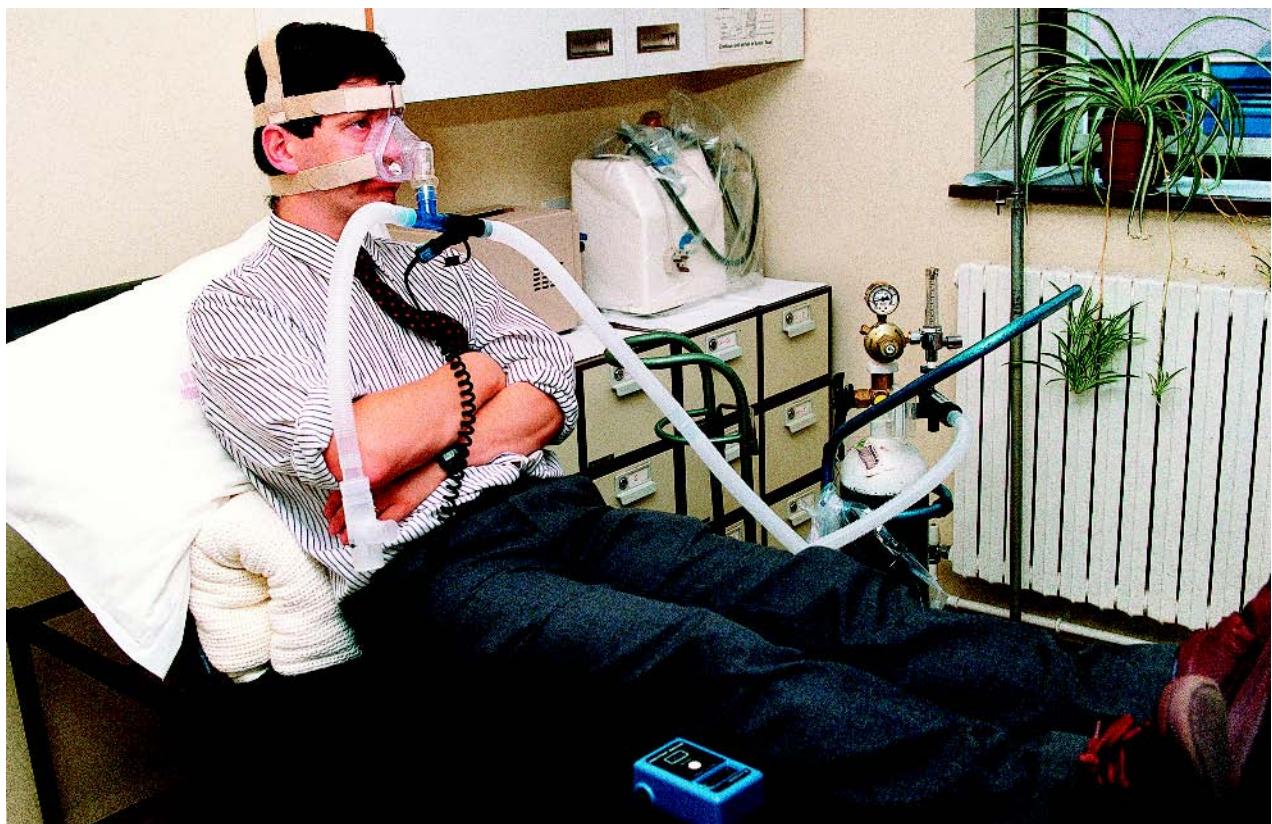
### Description

The most common feature of any breathing-related sleep disorder is interruption of the person's sleep, leading to excessive daytime sleepiness. When the regular nighttime sleep of individuals is frequently interrupted, sleepiness at other times of the day is the usual result. People with breathing-related sleep dis-

order often find that they feel sleepy during relaxing activities such as reading or watching a movie. With extreme cases, those with this condition may feel so sleepy that they fall asleep during activities that require alertness, such as talking, walking, or driving.

Other people with breathing-related sleep disorder report having insomnia, or the inability to sleep. Patients also find that their sleep does not refresh them; they may awaken frequently during sleep, or have difficulty breathing while sleeping or lying down.

The two sleep apnea syndromes that are listed as subtypes of breathing-related sleep disorder are characterized by episodes of airway blockage or breathing cessation during sleep. Sleep apnea is potentially deadly. Central alveolar hypoventilation syndrome is distinguished from the other two subtypes of breathing-related sleep disorder by the fact that shallow breathing causes the reduced oxygen content of the blood. The alveoli, which are the tiny air sacs in the lung tissue, cannot oxygenate the blood efficiently because those with this disorder are not breathing deeply enough. Shallow breathing often occurs when people are awake and is common in severely overweight individuals.



Patient wearing CPAP (continuous positive airway pressure) system, which can monitor such conditions as sleep apnea.  
(Medical-on-Line/Alamy)

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Many people with the obstructive sleep apnea syndrome subtype of breathing-related sleep disorder are overweight. The symptoms often grow worse as their weight increases. People who have obstructive sleep apnea and are not overweight often have breathing passages that are narrowed by swollen tonsils, abnormally large adenoids, or other abnormalities of the various structures of the mouth and throat. The fundamental underlying cause appears to be a narrow or collapsible airway with a loss of muscle tone in the airway during sleep.

Central sleep apnea syndrome is often associated with cardiac or neurological conditions affecting airflow regulation. It is a disorder that occurs most frequently in elderly patients.

Patients diagnosed with central alveolar hypventilation syndrome experience a breathing impairment related to abnormally low arterial oxygen levels.

### Symptoms

Obstructive sleep apnea syndrome, which is the most common type of breathing-related sleep disorder, is marked by frequent episodes of upper airway obstruction during sleep. Patients with this syndrome alternate between loud snores or gasps and silent periods that usually last for 20–30 seconds. The snoring is caused by the partial blockage of the airway. The silent periods are caused by complete obstruction of the airway, which makes the patient's breathing stop. These periods of breathing cessation can last between 10 seconds and one minute.

Obstructive sleep apnea syndrome is also common in children with enlarged tonsils. The symptoms of any breathing-related sleep disorder in children are often subtle and more difficult to diagnose. Children under five years are more likely to demonstrate nighttime symptoms such as apnea and breathing difficulties. Children over five years are more likely to demonstrate daytime symptoms such as sleepiness and attention difficulties.

People with central sleep apnea syndrome experience periods when the oxygenation of blood in the lungs temporarily stops during sleep, but they do not suffer airway obstruction. Although these patients may snore, their snoring is usually mild and not a major complaint.

Central alveolar hypoventilation syndrome is characterized by excessive sleepiness and insomnia.

## Demographics

As of 2007, it has been estimated that between 7 and 18 million Americans have some kind of breathing-related sleep disorder. Rates are higher among people who are overweight, obese, or elderly. The majority of patients with the obstructive sleep apnea type of breathing-related sleep disorder are overweight, middle-aged males. Four percent of middle-aged men and 2% of middle-aged women meet the criteria for obstructive sleep apnea. Among children the male-to-female ratio is 1:1. Prevalence of breathing-related sleep disorder among children peaks between two and eight years of age.

## Diagnosis

A **diagnosis** of breathing-related sleep disorder usually requires a thorough physical examination of the patient. The patient may be referred to an otorhinolaryngologist (a doctor who specializes in disorders of the ear, nose, and throat) for a detailed evaluation of the upper respiratory tract. The physical examination is followed by observation of the patient in a sleep clinic or laboratory. Breathing patterns, including episodes of snoring and apnea, are evaluated when the patient is connected to a device called a polysomnogram. The polysomnogram uses a set of electrodes to measure several different body functions associated with sleep, including heart rate, eye movements, **brain** waves, muscle activity, breathing, changes in blood oxygen concentration, and body position. Interviews are also conducted with the patients and their partners.

To meet criteria for the diagnosis of breathing-related sleep disorder, patients must experience interruptions of sleep leading to insomnia or excessive sleepiness that have been determined to result from one of the following sleep-related breathing conditions: obstructive sleep apnea syndrome, central sleep apnea syndrome, or central alveolar hypoventilation syndrome.

The disturbance in sleep must also not be attributed to another mental disorder or by a general medical condition not related to breathing.

The disturbance in sleep must not be due to the direct effects on the body of a prescription medication or drug of **abuse**.

## Treatments

Weight loss is a key to effective treatment of overweight people with breathing-related sleep disorder. It is often considered the first step in treating any disorder involving sleep apnea. Increased exercise and reduced-calorie **diets** are the most important components of an effective weight loss regimen.

Another approach to addressing sleep apnea is a postural change during sleep, called "positional therapy." The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved a pillow that is supposed to aid in preventing the sleeper from assuming a supine (on the back) position, a position that may worsen sleep apnea. In addition, postural alarms are also being marketed to warn the sleeper, but many people try home-based approaches to ensuring that they do not flip onto their backs during sleep. One study has found that sleeping on the back with the torso elevated may result in reduced apneas, but recommended that patients trying this option use foam pillows rather than soft pillows, which can push the chin onto the chest and worsen apnea.

Oral appliances may be effective for people who have mild apnea. The most common of these is the mandibular advancement device (also called MAD), which pushes the lower jaw forward, keeping the airway open.

Continuous positive airway pressure therapy, also known as CPAP therapy, is a popular form of treatment for the obstructive sleep apnea subtype of breathing-related sleep disorder. CPAP therapy, which has been in use since 1981, involves the use of a high-pressure blower that delivers continuous air flow to a mask worn by the patient during sleep. The airflow from the CPAP blower is often very effective in reducing or eliminating sleep apnea episodes. CPAP treatment is, however, inconvenient and somewhat noisy for anyone who must share a bedroom with the patient. Patients do not always comply with this form of treatment; a 2004 study indicated that about 25% of patients who are treated with CPAP therapy stop using it within a year. A couple of alternative forms of CPAP may improve **compliance** by improving comfort, including bi-level positive airway pressure, which has two sets of air pressures that it delivers, one for exhalation and one for inhalation, to make using the device more comfortable. Also, a more recent introduction is the C-Flex, which provides

flexible positive airway pressure, alternating pressures for inhalation and exhalation on a breath-by-breath basis. The company that produces the C-Flex received FDA permission to market its product in 2004. CPAPs, as medical devices, must be obtained through a doctor's prescription.

There are no medications that directly target sleep apnea.

Surgery to relieve airway obstruction may be performed in some cases. If the airway obstruction is related to anatomical structures that narrow the airway, surgical reshaping of the soft palate and uvula (a small, conical-shaped piece of tissue attached to the middle of the soft palate) may be performed. Another surgical procedure that is sometimes conducted on very obese patients with obstructive sleep apnea is a tracheostomy, or an artificial opening made in the windpipe. This operation has a number of unpleasant side effects, however, and so is usually reserved for patients whose breathing-related disorder is life-threatening.

Patients with sleep apnea are advised to abstain from alcohol and sedative medications, which are often given to patients who display any type of sleeping irregularities. Alcohol and **sedatives** often increase the likelihood of upper airway problems during sleep.

## Prognosis

Breathing-related sleep disorder often has a gradual long-term progression and a chronic course. For this reason, many people have the disorder for years before seeking treatment. For many, symptoms worsen during middle age, causing people to seek treatment at that point.

Successful treatment of other conditions, such as **obesity**, the common cardiovascular and cerebrovascular comorbidities, or enlarged tonsils in children, often aids in the treatment of breathing-related sleep disorder. Weight loss often leads to spontaneous resolution of the disorder. Because **depression** has been found at high rates among people with sleep apnea (as high as 64% in some studies), any assessments should evaluate for the presence of depression to aid in improving the prognosis.

## Prevention

Because overweight people are more likely to develop the more common obstructive sleep apnea type of breathing-related sleep disorder, a good preventive measure is effective weight management. Good general health and treatment of related physio-

## KEY TERMS

**Alveolar**—Pertaining to alveoli, which are tiny air sacs at the ends of the small air passages in the lungs.

**Apnea**—A brief suspension or interruption of breathing.

**Dyssomnia**—A type of sleep disorder characterized by a problem with the amount, quality, or timing of the patient's sleep.

**Hypoventilation**—An abnormally low level of blood oxygenation in the lungs.

**Polysomnogram**—A machine that is used to diagnose sleep disorders by measuring and recording a variety of body functions related to sleep, including heart rate, eye movements, brain waves, muscle activity, breathing, changes in blood oxygen concentration, and body position.

**Syndrome**—A group of symptoms that together characterize a disease or disorder.

**Tracheostomy**—A surgical procedure in which an artificial opening is made in the patient's windpipe to relieve airway obstruction.

logical conditions are also effective in preventing the disorder.

*See also* Circadian rhythm sleep disorder; Obesity.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Buyse, Daniel J., Charles M. Morin, and Charles F. Reynolds III. "Sleep Disorders." *Treatments of Psychiatric Disorders*, edited by Glen O. Gabbard. 2nd ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press.
- Hobson, J. Allan, and Rosalia Silvestri. "Sleep and Its Disorders." *The Harvard Guide to Psychiatry*, edited by Armand M. Nicholi, Jr., MD. Cambridge, MA: Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, 1999.
- Saskin, Paul. "Obstructive Sleep Apnea: Treatment Options, Efficacy, and Effects." *Understanding Sleep: The Evaluation and Treatment of Sleep Disorders*, edited by Mark R. Pressman, PhD, and William C. Orr, PhD. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 1997.
- Thorpy, Michael J., MD, and Jan Yager, PhD. *The Encyclopedia of Sleep and Sleep Disorders*. 2nd ed. New York: Facts on File, 2001.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Sleep Apnea Association. 1424 K Street NW, Suite 302, Washington DC 20005. <<http://www.sleepapnea.org>>.
- American Sleep Disorders Association. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901. <<http://www.asda.org>>.
- National Center on Sleep Disorders Research. <<http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/about/ncsdr/index.htm>>.
- National Sleep Foundation. 1522 K Street, NW, Suite 500, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (202) 347-3471. <<http://www.sleepfoundation.org>>.

## PERIODICALS

- Aloia, Mark S., and others. "Treatment Adherence and Outcomes in Flexible vs. Standard Continuous Positive Airway Pressure Therapy." *Chest* 127 (2005): 2085–93.
- Dauvilliers, Yves, and A. Buguet. "Hypersomnia." *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience* 7 (2005): 347–56.
- Haba-Rubio, José. "Psychiatric Aspects of Organic Sleep Disorders." *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience* 7 (2005): 335–46.
- Lloberes, Patricia, and others. "Predictive Factors of Quality-of-life Improvement and Continuous Positive Airway Pressure Use in Patients with Sleep Apnea-Hypopnea Syndrome: Study at 1 Year." *Chest* 126.4 (2004): 1241–47.

## OTHER

- National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. "Sleep Apnea." <[http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/dci/Diseases/SleepApnea/SleepApnea\\_WhatIs.html](http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/dci/Diseases/SleepApnea/SleepApnea_WhatIs.html)>.
- "Breathing-related Sleep Disorders." *Emedicine.com*. This Web site offers pictures of CPAP devices and detailed information about testing and surgical options. <<http://www.emedicine.com/med/topic3130.htm>>.

Ali Fahmy, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Brief psychotic disorder

### Definition

Brief psychotic disorder is a short-term psychiatric disorder lasting between one day and one month, with complete remission and return to full functioning following the episode. In brief psychotic disorder, the individual experiences at least one symptom of **psychosis**: incoherence, **delusions**, **hallucinations**, and/or grossly disorganized or catatonic behavior.

The cause of the symptoms helps to determine whether or not the person is described as having brief psychotic disorder. If the psychotic symptoms appear as a result of a physical disease, a reaction to medica-

tion, or intoxication with drugs or alcohol, then the unusual behaviors are not classified as brief psychotic disorder. If hallucinations, delusions, or other psychotic symptoms occur at the same time that an individual is experiencing major clinical **depression** or bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder, then the brief psychotic disorder **diagnosis** is not given. The decision rules that allow the clinician to identify this cluster of symptoms as brief psychotic disorder are outlined in the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*** Fourth Edition Text Revision, produced by the American Psychiatric Association. This manual is referred to by most mental health professionals as **DSM-IV-TR**.

### Description

#### Positive symptoms

The person experiencing brief psychotic disorder always has one or more "positive" psychotic symptoms. The psychotic symptoms are not positive in the everyday sense of something being good or useful. Positive in this context is used with the medical meaning: a factor is present that is not normally expected, or a normal type of behavior is experienced in its most extreme form. **Positive symptoms** of psychosis include hallucinations, delusions, strange bodily movements or lack of movements (catatonic behavior), peculiar speech, and bizarre or primitive behavior.

**HALLUCINATIONS.** Hallucinations involve experiencing sensations that have no corresponding objective reality. Hallucinations can occur in various forms that parallel the human senses. Visual hallucinations involve the sense of sight, or "seeing things." Auditory hallucinations generally involve hearing voices, and are the most common of the hallucinations. Sometimes, a hallucination can include both voices and some visual experience; mental health professionals describe this as an "auditory-visual hallucination." Smelling nonexistent smells or feeling things on or under one's skin that do not actually exist are forms of somatic hallucinations. Somatic comes from *soma*, the Greek word for body; thus, somatic hallucinations are bodily hallucinations.

**DELUSIONS.** Delusions are also a classic psychotic feature. Delusions are strongly held irrational and unrealistic beliefs that are extremely difficult to change, even when the person is exposed to evidence that contradicts the delusion. The layperson typically thinks of delusions as being paranoid, or persecutory, wherein the delusional person is excessively suspicious and continually feels at the mercy of conspirators who are "out to get" him or her. However, delusions can

also be unjustified beliefs that are grandiose, involve elaborate love fantasies (called erotomanic delusions), or extreme and irrational jealousy. Grandiose delusions are persistent irrational beliefs that somehow exaggerate the person's importance, such as believing oneself to be a famous person, or having an enviable position such as being the Prime Minister or President. Often grandiose delusions take on religious overtones; for instance, a person might become convinced that she is the Virgin Mary. Furthermore, delusions can also be somatic. Somatic delusions are erroneous but strongly held beliefs about the characteristics or functioning of one's body; an example is a mental health consumer who refuses to eat because of a conviction that the throat muscles are completely paralyzed and that only liquids can be swallowed, when there is no actual physical reason to be unable to swallow.

**OTHER PSYCHOTIC SYMPTOMS.** Other psychotic symptoms that may occur in brief psychotic disorder are strange bodily movements or lack of movements (catatonic behavior), peculiar speech, and bizarre or childlike behavior. Catatonic behavior or **catatonia** involves both possible extremes related to movement. Catalepsy is the motionless aspect of catatonia—a person with catalepsy may remain fixed in the same position for hours on end. Rapid or persistently repeated movements, frequent grimacing and strange facial expressions, and unusual gestures are the opposite end of the catatonia phenomenon. Peculiar speech is also seen in some cases of brief psychotic disorder. Speech distortions can involve words mixed together in no coherent order, responses that are irrelevant and strange in the context of the conversation in which they occur, or echolalia, the repetition of another person's exact spoken words, repeated either immediately after the speaker or after a delay of minutes or hours. Bizarre behavior can range from childlike behaviors such as skipping, singing, or hopping in inappropriate circumstances to unusual practices such as hoarding food or covering one's head and clothing with aluminum foil wrappings.

Of course, not all of these psychotic symptoms will be observed simultaneously in the person with brief psychotic disorder. Any constellation of these positive psychotic symptoms that occurs for one entire day up to one month is considered to be brief psychotic disorder, unless there is some other syndrome or biological cause that caused the symptoms to appear.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Brief psychotic disorder is not a simple or consistent disorder with a single cause. Because many phe-

nomena can prompt a short-term experience of psychotic symptoms, there are several ways of viewing the causes of the disorder.

**AN EARLY PHASE OF SCHIZOPHRENIA.** Because of the similarities between brief psychotic disorder, **schizophreniform disorder**, and **schizophrenia**, many clinicians have come to think of brief psychotic disorder as being the precursor to a lengthier psychotic disorder. Although this can only be identified retrospectively, brief psychotic disorder is often the diagnosis that was originally used when an individual (who later develops schizophrenia) experiences a first psychotic break from more typical functioning.

**A STRESS RESPONSE.** At times, under severe **stress**, temporary psychotic reactions may appear. The source of stress can be from typical events encountered by many people in the course of a lifetime, such as being widowed or divorced. The severe stress may be more unusual, such as being in combat, enduring a natural disaster, or being taken hostage. The person generally returns to a normal method of functioning when the stress decreases or more support is available, or better coping skills are learned.

**POSTPARTUM PSYCHOSIS.** In some susceptible women, dramatic hormonal changes in childbirth and shortly afterward can result in a form of brief psychotic disorder often referred to as postpartum psychosis. Unfortunately, postpartum conditions are often misidentified and improperly treated. In many cases of a mother killing her infant or committing **suicide**, postpartum psychosis is involved.

**DEFENSE MECHANISM IN PERSONALITY DISORDER.** Persons with **personality disorders** appear to be more susceptible to developing brief psychotic reactions in response to stress. Individuals with personality disorders have not developed effective adult mechanisms for coping with life. When life becomes more demanding and difficult than can be tolerated, the person may lapse into a brief psychotic state.

**CULTURALLY DEFINED DISORDER.** Culture is a very important factor in understanding mental health and psychological disturbance, and brief psychotic disorder is an excellent example. The types of behavior that occur during brief psychotic disorder are very much shaped by the expectations and traditions of the individual's culture. In many cultures, there are some forms of mental disorders that meet criteria for brief psychotic disorder and manifest with symptoms that are peculiar to that culture or community. Individuals within the group exhibit similar behavior, which may be attributed to a particular cause or stimulus, such as cabin fever, witchcraft, or spiritual possession, or may

be the result of a culturally specific phobia, such as the fear of sinning among religious communities or the fear of being cold in tropical climates. The *DSM-IV-TR* terms disorders unique to certain societies or groups to be culture-bound. An example of a culture-bound syndrome is *koro*, a syndrome observed in Japan and some other areas of Asia but not elsewhere. *Koro* is an **obsession** to the point of delusion with the possibility that the genitals will retract or shrink into the body and cause death.

Conversely, while culture shapes the form a psychotic reaction may take, culture also determines what is *not* to be considered psychotic. Behaviors that in one culture would be thought of as bizarre or psychotic may be acceptable in another. For example, some cultural groups and religions view “speaking in tongues” as a valuable expression of the gifts of God, whereas viewed out of context, the unrecognizable speech patterns might be viewed as psychotic. If the behaviors shown are culturally acceptable in the person’s society or religion, and happen in an approved setting such as a religious service, then brief psychotic disorder would not be diagnosed.

### Symptoms

The *DSM-IV-TR* provides three major criteria for brief psychotic disorder:

- At least one positive symptom of psychosis, from the following symptoms: delusions; hallucinations; disorganized speech which is strange, peculiar, difficult to comprehend; disorganized (bizarre or childlike) behavior; or catatonic behavior.
- Limited duration. The psychotic symptoms have occurred for at least one day but less than one month. There is an eventual return to normal level of functioning.
- The symptoms are not biologically influenced or attributable to another disorder. In other words, the symptoms cannot be occurring as part of a mood disorder, schizoaffective disorder, or schizophrenia, and they cannot be due to intoxication with drugs or alcohol. Further, the symptoms cannot be an adverse reaction to a medication, and they cannot be caused by a physical injury or medical illness.

### Demographics

The actual rate of brief psychotic disorder is unknown, although it appears to be fairly rare in the United States and other developed countries. While psychotic reactions that occur and subside in under a month are more common in developing nations, the mental disorders wherein psychotic symptoms last

longer than one month are more prevalent in developed countries. The disorder appears to be more common in adolescents and young adults than in those of middle age or older.

### Diagnosis

Using the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria makes identification of the disorder relatively clear-cut. However, an unusual aspect to this diagnosis is the emphasis on the length of time that symptoms have been evident. Most mental health disorder diagnoses do not include the duration of the symptoms as part of their definitions. However, the length of time the person has had psychotic symptoms is one of the major distinctions among three different psychotic disorders. Brief psychotic disorder involves the shortest duration of suffering psychotic symptoms: one day to one month. Schizophreniform disorder also involves the individual showing signs of psychosis, but for a longer period (one month or more, but less than six months). Schizophrenia is diagnosed in individuals who have evidenced psychotic symptoms that are not associated with physical disease, mood disorder, or intoxication, for six months or longer. Another complicating factor in making the diagnosis is the context in which the psychotic symptoms are experienced. If the psychotic-like behaviors evidenced are acceptable in the person’s culture or religion and these behaviors happen in a traditionally expected context such as a religious service or **meditation**, then brief psychotic disorder would not be diagnosed.

The disorder is usually diagnosed by obtaining information in interview from the client and possibly from immediate family. Also, the diagnostician would be likely to perform a semistructured interview called a mental status examination, which examines the person’s ability to concentrate, to remember, to realistically understand the situation, and to think logically.

### Treatments

Antipsychotic medications are very effective in ending a brief psychotic episode. A number of different antipsychotics are used for the purpose of terminating acute psychotic episodes. **Haloperidol** (Haldol) is most commonly used if the psychotic symptoms are accompanied by agitation. Agitation is a state of frantic activity that is often accompanied by anger or fearfulness; when in an agitated state, the client is more likely to cause harm to self or others. In agitated psychotic states, the haloperidol is often given as an injection, accompanied by other medications that decrease **anxiety** (**lorazepam**, also known as Ativan) and slow

behavior (**diphenhydramine**, also known as Benadryl). If the client is not agitated, usually a newer-generation antipsychotic is used, given daily as tablets, capsules or liquid, for a lengthier period of time. The antipsychotic that would be used is likely to be one of the following: **olanzapine** (Zyprexa), **quetiapine** (Seroquel), or **risperidone** (Risperdal). Hormones may also be prescribed for postpartum psychosis. Supportive therapy may also prove helpful in some situations, in decreasing the client's anxiety and educating the client about the psychiatric illness. In culture-bound syndromes, the most effective treatment is often the one that is societally expected; for example, bathing in a river viewed as sacred might be a usual method of curing the psychotic-like state, in a particular culture.

## Prognosis

The prognosis is fairly positive in brief psychotic disorder because by its own definition, a return to normal functioning is expected. If there is a major life event as a stress or an unusual traumatic experience that initiated the episode, chances are very good that there will be no recurrence. If there is not a particular triggering event or if the episode occurred in an individual with a personality disorder, the likelihood of recurrence is higher. If an episode is a recurrence without a specific triggering event, then the beginnings of the development of schizophrenia or **bipolar disorder** may be at hand, in which case the prognosis is poor. In the individual with personality disorder, the pattern may recur in response to stress, so that there are intermittent experiences of brief psychotic disorder over the course of a lifetime.

## Prevention

In women who have experienced brief postpartum psychosis, one prevention option is to forgo having additional children. If a postpartum psychosis has occurred in the past, in subsequent pregnancies the physician may be proactive in prescribing an antipsychotic medication regimen to be taken in the postpartum period in order to prevent psychotic symptoms from recurring. In many cases severe stressors can be a trigger for brief psychotic disorder. Therefore, in response to identifiable extreme stressors, such as natural disasters or terrorist attacks, strong social support and immediate postcrisis counseling could possibly prevent the development of brief psychotic disorder in susceptible persons.

*See also* Borderline personality disorder; Delirium; Dementia; Postpartum depression; Post-traumatic

## KEY TERMS

**Catatonia**—A state characterized by rigid muscles, sustained unresponsiveness with fixed body posture, strange bodily movements, extreme overactivity, or bizarre postures.

**Delusion**—An improbable or irrational belief or idea maintained in spite of evidence to the contrary. Delusions are often highly personal in nature.

**Hallucination**—A false sensory perception that appears real but which is not caused by an external stimulus. Although hallucinations may affect any of the senses, auditory hallucinations (hearing voices) and visual hallucinations (seeing things that are not there) are the most common.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

stress disorder; Schizotypal personality disorder; Substance abuse.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 First, Michael B., and Allan Tasman. *Clinical Guide to the Diagnosis and Treatment of Mental Disorders*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2006.  
 Marneros, Andreas, and Frank Pillmann. *Acute and Transient Psychoses*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2004.  
 VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

### PERIODICALS

- Amini, Homayoun, and others. "Diagnostic Stability in Patients with First-Episode Psychosis." *Australasian Psychiatry* 13.4 (December 2005): 388–92.  
 Correll, Christoph U., and others. "Prospective Study of Adolescents with Subsyndromal Psychosis: Characteristics and Outcome." *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychopharmacology* 15.3 (2005): 418–33.  
 Kalaitzi, C. K., and D. Sakkas. "Brief Psychotic Disorder Associated with Sturge-Weber Syndrome." *European Psychiatry* 20.4 (June 2005): 356–57.  
 Rufino, Armando, C. T. B. F., Ricardo R. Uchida, José A. A. Vilela, João M. A. Marques, Antonio W. Zuardi,

- and Cristina M. Del-Ben. "Stability of the Diagnosis of First-Episode Psychosis Made in an Emergency Setting." *General Hospital Psychiatry* 27.3 (May–June 2005): 189–93.
- Thangadurai, P., R. Gopalakrishnan, S. Kurian, and K. S. Jacob. "Diagnostic Stability and Status of Acute and Transient Psychotic Disorders." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 188.3 (March 2006): 293.

Deborah Rosch Eifert, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD



## Bulimia nervosa

### Definition

Bulimia nervosa is an eating disorder characterized by **binge eating** and engaging in inappropriate ways of counteracting the bingeing (using laxatives, for example) to prevent weight gain. The word "bulimia" is the Latin form of the Greek word *boulimia*, which means "extreme hunger." A binge is consuming a larger amount of food within a limited period of time than most people would eat in similar circumstances. Most people with bulimia report feelings of loss of control associated with bingeing, and some have mildly dissociative experiences in the course of a binge, which means that they feel disconnected from themselves and from reality when they binge.

The handbook for mental health professionals to aid in **diagnosis** is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*. It categorizes bulimia nervosa as an eating disorder, along with **anorexia nervosa**.

### Description

Bulimia nervosa is classified into two subtypes according to the methods used by the patient to prevent weight gain after a binge. The purging subtype of bulimia is characterized by the use of self-induced vomiting, laxatives, enemas, or diuretics (pills that induce urination); in the nonpurging subtype, fasting or overexercising is used to compensate for binge eating.

The onset of bulimia nervosa is most common in late adolescence or early adult life. Dieting efforts and body dissatisfaction, however, often occur in the teenage years. For these reasons, it is often described as a developmental disorder. Genetic researchers have identified specific genes linked to susceptibility to eating disorders, and the environmental primary factor in the development of bulimia nervosa is **stress** related to

**A bulimic young woman crouching over a toilet bowl in order to self-induce vomiting.** (Cristina Pedrazzini/Photo Researchers, Inc)

the onset of puberty. Girls who have strongly negative feelings about their bodies in response to puberty are at high risk for developing bulimia.

The binge eating associated with bulimia begins most often after a period of strict dieting. Most people with bulimia develop purging behaviors in response to the bingeing. Vomiting is used by 80–90% of patients diagnosed with bulimia. The personal accounts of recovered bulimics suggest that most "discover" vomiting independently as a way of ridding themselves of the food rather than learning about it from other adolescents. Vomiting is often done to relieve an uncomfortable sensation of fullness in the stomach following a binge as well as to prevent absorption of the calories in the food. Vomiting is frequently induced by touching the gag reflex at the back of the throat with the fingers or a toothbrush, but a minority of patients use syrup of ipecac to induce vomiting. About one-third of bulimics use laxatives after binge eating to empty the digestive tract, and a minority use diuretics or enemas. Purging behaviors lead to a series of digestive and metabolic disturbances that then reinforce the behaviors.

A small proportion of bulimics exercise excessively or fast after a binge instead of purging.

Patients with bulimia may come to the attention of a **psychiatrist** because they develop medical or dental complications of the eating disorder. In some cases,

the adolescent's dentist is the "case finder." In many cases, however, the person with bulimia seeks help.

## Causes and symptoms

### *Causes*

Bulimia nervosa is understood to be a complex disorder with multiple factors contributing to its development. Studies suggest an interaction among genetics, familial factors, and social pressures in the development of an eating disorder.

**GENETICS.** Several studies have obtained results pointing to a genetic understructure for eating disorders, including bulimia. Studies investigating the relationship between characteristics of bulimia in families and their correlation with patterns of gene expression have linked bulimia to genes on human chromosome 10.

**FAMILIAL FACTORS.** A number of recent studies point to the interpersonal relationships in the family of origin (the patient's family while growing up) as a factor in the later development of bulimia. People with bulimia are more likely than people with anorexia to have been sexually abused in childhood; studies have found that abnormalities in blood levels of serotonin (a neurotransmitter associated with mood disorders) and cortisol (the primary stress hormone in humans) in bulimic patients with a history of childhood sexual abuse resemble those in patients with **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD). Post-traumatic stress disorder is a mental disorder that can develop after someone has experienced a traumatic event (horrors of war, for example) and is unable to put that event behind him or her—the disorder is characterized by very realistic flashbacks of the traumatic event.

A history of eating conflicts and struggles over food in the family of origin is also a risk factor for the development of bulimia nervosa. Personal accounts by recovered bulimics frequently note that one or both parents were preoccupied with food or dieting. Fathers appear to be as influential as mothers in this regard. A recent study focusing on girls suggests that the influence of the father may be related to the father's own concerns and body preoccupations and that this influence may be stronger as a child gets older. Other risk factors identified in a 2007 study, which followed the children from birth, were a low activity level in early childhood and rapid eating in later childhood. In addition, and not surprisingly, peer and parental teasing about body weight or shape also increase risk.

An additional risk factor for early-onset bulimia is interest in or preparation for a sport or occupation

that requires strict weight control, such as gymnastics, figure skating, horse jockeying, wrestling, or modeling.

**SOCIOCULTURAL CAUSES.** Emphasis in the mass media on slenderness in women as the primary criterion of beauty and desirability is commonly noted in studies of bulimia. Historians of fashion have remarked that the standard of female attractiveness has changed over the past half century in the direction of greater slenderness; some have commented that Marilyn Monroe would be considered "fat" by contemporary standards. The ideal female figure is not only unattainable by the vast majority of women, but is lighter than the standards associated with good health by insurance companies. In 1965 the average model weighed 8% less than the average American woman; by 2001, she weighed 25% less. Recent news reports have focused on this **obsession** with thinness in the fashion industry because of the deaths of several models from eating disorders. One major fashion group in Spain went so far as to set a minimum body mass index for models on its catwalks in 2006 after a model died during a show in South America of causes apparently related to an eating disorder. In the United States, magazine covers feature razor-thin actresses with alarmed questions about their weight and health splashed across the covers, sending a mixed message.

Another factor mentioned by intellectual historians is the centuries-old split in Western philosophy between mind and body. Instead of regarding a human person as a unified whole consisting of body, soul, and mind, Western thought since Plato has tended to divide human nature in a dualistic fashion between the life of the mind and the needs of the body. Furthermore, this division was associated with gender symbolism in such a way that the life of the mind was associated with masculinity and the needs of the body with femininity. The physical dimension of human life was correlated with men's physical, legal, and economic domination of women. Although this dualistic pattern of symbolic thought is no longer a conscious part of the Western mindset, it appears to influence Western culture on a subconscious level.

A number of different theories have been put forward to explain the connections between familial and social factors and bulimia. Some of these theories include:

- Bulimia results from a conflict between mother and daughter about nurturing and dependency. Girls are typically weaned earlier than boys and fed less. The bulimic's bingeing and purging represent a conflict between wanting comfort and believing that she does not deserve it.

- Bulimia develops when an adolescent displaces larger conflicts about being a woman in a hypersexualized society onto food. Many writers have commented about the contradictory demands placed on women in contemporary society—for example, to be sexually appealing yet “untouchable” at the same time. Controlling body size and food intake becomes a simplified solution to a very complex problem of personal identity and moral standards.
- Bulimia is an obsession with food that the culture encourages to protect men from competition from intellectually liberated women. Women who are spending hours each day thinking about food, or bingeing and purging, do not have the emotional and intellectual energy to take their rightful places in the learned professions and the business world.
- Bulimia expresses a fear of fat rooted in childhood memories of mother’s size relative to one’s own.
- Bulimia results from intensified competition among women for professional achievement (getting a desirable job or a promotion, or being accepted into graduate or professional school) as well as personal success (getting a husband), because studies have indicated that businesses and graduate programs discriminate against overweight applicants.
- Bulimia results from attempts to control emotional chaos in one’s interpersonal relationships by imposing rigid controls on food intake.

Nutrition experts have pointed to the easy availability of foods high in processed carbohydrates in developed countries as a social factor that contributes to the incidence of bulimia. One study found that subjects who were given two slices of standard mass-produced white bread with some jelly had their levels of serotonin increased temporarily by 450%. This finding suggests that bulimics who binge on ice cream, bread, cookies, pizza, and fast food items that are high in processed carbohydrates are simply manipulating their neurochemistry in a highly efficient manner. The incidence of bulimia may be lower in developing countries because **diets** that are high in vegetables and whole-grain products but low in processed carbohydrates do not affect serotonin levels in the **brain** as rapidly or as effectively.

### Symptoms

The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that bingeing and the inappropriate attempts to compensate for it must occur twice a week for three months on average to meet the diagnostic criteria for bulimia nervosa.

A second criterion of bulimia nervosa is exaggerated concern with body shape and weight. Bulimia can

be distinguished from **body dysmorphic disorder** (BDD) by the fact that people with BDD usually focus on a specific physical feature—most commonly a facial feature—rather than overall shape and weight. Bulimics do, however, resemble patients with BDD in that they have distorted body images.

Bulimia is associated with a number of physical symptoms. Binge eating by itself rarely causes serious medical complications, but it is associated with nausea, abdominal distension and cramping, slowed digestion, and weight gain.

Self-induced vomiting, on the other hand, may have serious medical consequences, including:

- Erosion of tooth enamel, particularly on the molars and maxillary incisors. Loss of tooth enamel is irreversible.
- Enlargement of the salivary glands.
- Scars and calloused areas on the knuckles from contact with the teeth.
- Irritation of the throat and esophagus from contact with stomach acid.
- Tearing of mucous membranes in the upper gastrointestinal tract or perforation of the esophagus and stomach wall. Perforation of part of the digestive tract is a rare complication of bulimia but is potentially fatal.
- Electrolyte imbalances. The loss of fluids from repeated vomiting and laxative abuse can deplete the body’s stores of hydrogen chloride, potassium, sodium, and magnesium. Hypokalemia (abnormally low levels of potassium in the blood) is a potential medical emergency that can lead to muscle cramps, seizures, and heart arrhythmias.

Other physical symptoms associated with bulimia include irregular menstrual periods or amenorrhea; petechiae (pinhead-sized bruises from capillaries ruptured by increased pressure due to vomiting) in the skin around the eyes, and rectal prolapse (the lowering of the rectum from its usual position).

### Demographics

Bulimia nervosa affects between 1% and 3% of women in the developed countries; its prevalence is thought to have increased markedly since 1970. The rates are similar across cultures as otherwise different as the United States, Japan, the United Kingdom, Australia, South Africa, Canada, France, Germany, and Israel. About 80% to 90% of patients with bulimia are female.

The average age at onset of bulimia nervosa appears to be dropping in the developed countries.

A study of eating disorders in Rochester, Minnesota, over the 50 years between 1935 and 1985 indicated that the incidence rates for women over 20 remained fairly constant, but there was a significant rise for women between 15 and 20 years of age. The average age at onset among women with bulimia was 14 and among men, 18.

Homosexual men appear to be as vulnerable to developing bulimia as heterosexual women, while lesbians are less vulnerable.

Recent studies indicate that bulimia in the United States is no longer primarily a disorder of Caucasian women; the rates among African American and Hispanic women have risen faster than the rate of bulimia for the female population as a whole. One report indicates that the chief difference between African American and Caucasian bulimics in the United States is that the African American patients are less likely to eat restricted diets between episodes of binge eating.

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of bulimia nervosa is made on the basis of a physical examination, a psychiatric assessment, the patient's eating history, and the findings of laboratory studies. Patients who do not meet the full criteria for bulimia nervosa may be given the diagnosis of subsyndromal bulimia or of an eating disorder not otherwise specified (EDNOS).

### Physical examination

Patients suspected of having bulimia nervosa should be given a complete physical examination because the disorder has so many potential medical complications. In addition, most bulimics are close to normal weight or only slightly overweight, and so do not look outwardly different from most people of their sex in their age group. The examination should include not only vital signs and an assessment of the patient's height and weight relative to age, but also checking for such signs of bulimia as general hair loss, abdominal soreness, swelling of the parotid glands, telltale scars on the back of the hand, petechiae, edema, and teeth that look ragged or "moth-eaten."

### Psychiatric assessment

Psychiatric assessment of patients with bulimia usually includes four components:

- a thorough history of body weight, eating patterns, diets, typical daily food intake, methods of purging (if used), and concept of ideal weight.

- a history of the patient's significant relationships with parents, siblings, and peers, including present or past physical, emotional, or sexual abuse.
- a history of previous psychiatric treatment (if any) and assessment of comorbid (occurring at the same time as the bulimia) mood, anxiety, substance abuse, or personality disorders.
- administration of standardized instruments that measure attitudes toward eating, body size, and weight. Common tests for eating disorders include the Eating Disorder Examination; the Eating Disorder Inventory; the Eating Attitude Test, or EAT; and the Kids' Eating Disorder Survey (KEDS).

### Laboratory findings

Laboratory tests ordered for patients suspected of having bulimia usually include a complete blood cell count, blood serum chemistry, thyroid tests, and urinalysis. If necessary, the doctor may also order a chest x ray and an electrocardiogram (EKG). Typical findings in patients with bulimia include low levels of chloride and potassium in the blood, and higher than normal levels of amylase, a digestive enzyme found in saliva.

### Treatments

Treatment for bulimia nervosa typically involves several therapy approaches. It is, however, complicated by several factors.

First, patients diagnosed with bulimia nervosa frequently have coexisting psychiatric disorders that typically include major **depression**, **dysthymic disorder**, **anxiety disorders**, substance abuse disorders, or personality disorders. In the case of depression, the mood disorder may either precede or follow the onset of bulimia, and, with bulimia, the prevalence of depression is 40–70%. With regard to substance abuse, about 30% of patients diagnosed with bulimia nervosa abuse either alcohol or stimulants over the course of the eating disorder. The personality disorders most often diagnosed in bulimics are the so-called Cluster B disorders—borderline, narcissistic, histrionic, and antisocial. **Borderline personality disorder** is a disorder characterized by stormy interpersonal relationships, unstable self-image, and impulsive behavior. People with **narcissistic personality disorder** believe that they are extremely important and are unable to have empathy for others. Individuals with **histrionic personality disorder** seek attention almost constantly and are very emotional. **Antisocial personality disorder** is characterized by a behavior pattern of a disregard for others' rights—people with this disorder often deceive and

manipulate others. Although patients may have both bulimia nervosa and anorexia nervosa, a number of clinicians have noted that patients with predominate bulimia tend to develop impulsive and unstable personality disturbances whereas patients with predominate anorexia tend to be more obsessional and perfectionistic. Estimates of the prevalence of personality disorders among patients with bulimia range between 2% and 50%. The clinician must then decide whether to treat the eating disorder and the comorbid conditions concurrently or sequentially. It is generally agreed, however, that a substance abuse disorder, if present, must be treated before the bulimia can be effectively managed. It is also generally agreed that mood disorders and bulimia can be treated concurrently, often using antidepressant medication along with therapy.

Second, the limitations on treatment imposed by **managed care** complicate the treatment of bulimia nervosa. When the disorder first received attention in the 1970s, patients with bulimia were often hospitalized until the most significant physical symptoms of the disorder could be treated. Few patients with bulimia are hospitalized today, however, with the exception of medical emergencies related to electrolyte imbalances and gastrointestinal injuries associated with the eating disorder. Most treatment protocols for bulimia nervosa now reflect cost-containment measures.

### **Medications**

The most common medications given to patients are **antidepressants**, because bulimia is so closely associated with depression. Short-term medication trials have reported that tricyclic antidepressants—desipramine, **imipramine**, and amitriptyline—reduce episodes of binge eating by 47–91% and vomiting by 45–78%. The monoamine oxidase inhibitors are not recommended as initial medications for patients diagnosed with bulimia because of their side effects. The most promising results have been obtained with the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors**, or **SSRIs**. **Fluoxetine** (Prozac) was approved in 1998 by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of bulimia nervosa. Effective dosages of fluoxetine are higher for the treatment of bulimia than they are for the treatment of depression. Although a combination of medication and **cognitive-behavioral therapy** is more effective in treating most patients with bulimia than medication alone, one team of researchers reported success in treating some bulimics who had not responded to **psychotherapy** with fluoxetine by itself.

Ondansetron (Zofran), a drug that was originally developed to control nausea from chemotherapy and radiation therapy for cancer, blocks serotonin reuptake

and also works to inhibit vomiting. It has shown some benefit in ameliorating symptoms of bulimia nervosa.

In addition to antidepressant or antinausea medications, such acid-reducing medications as cimetidine and ranitidine, or antacids, may be given to patients with bulimia to relieve discomfort in the digestive tract associated with irritation caused by stomach acid.

### **Psychotherapy**

Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) is regarded as the most successful psychotherapeutic approach to bulimia nervosa. CBT is intended to interrupt the faulty thinking processes associated with bulimia, such as pre-occupations with food and weight, black-white thinking (“all or nothing” thinking, or thinking thoughts only at extreme ends of a spectrum), and low self-esteem, as well as such behaviors as the binge-purge cycle. Patients are first helped to regain control over their food intake by keeping food diaries and receiving feedback about their meal plans, symptom triggers, nutritional balance, and so on. They are then taught to challenge rigid thought patterns by receiving **assertiveness training** and practice in identifying and expressing their feelings in words rather than through distorted eating patterns. About 50% of bulimic patients treated with CBT are able to stop bingeing and purging. Of the remaining half, some show partial improvement and a small minority do not respond at all.

**Family therapy** is sometimes recommended as an additional mode of treatment for patients with bulimia who come from severely troubled or food-obsessed families that increase their risk of relapsing.

### **Other mainstream therapies**

Medical nutrition therapy, or MNT, is a recognized component of the treatment of eating disorders. Effective MNT for patients with bulimia involves an understanding of cognitive-behavioral therapy as well as the registered dietitian’s usual role of assisting the physician with monitoring the patient’s physical symptoms, laboratory values, and vital signs. In the treatment of bulimia, the dietitian’s specialized knowledge of nutrition may be quite helpful in dealing with the myths about food and fad diets that many bulimic patients believe. The dietitian’s most important task, however, is helping the patient to normalize her or his eating patterns to break the deprivation/bingeing cycle that is characteristic of bulimia nervosa. Calorie intake is usually based on retaining the patient’s weight to prevent hunger, because hunger increases susceptibility to bingeing.

## KEY TERMS

**Binge**—An excessive amount of food consumed in a short period of time. Usually, while a person binge eats, he or she feels disconnected from reality, and feels unable to stop. The bingeing may temporarily relieve depression or anxiety, but after the binge, the person usually feels guilty and depressed.

**Body image**—A term that refers to a person's inner picture of his or her outward appearance. It has two components: perceptions of the appearance of one's body, and emotional responses to those perceptions.

**Comorbidity**—Association or presence of two or more mental disorders in the same patient. A disorder that is said to have a high degree of comorbidity is likely to occur in patients diagnosed with other disorders that may share or reinforce some of its symptoms.

**Cortisol**—A steroid hormone released by the cortex (outer portion) of the adrenal gland when a person is under stress.

**Diuretic**—A medication or substance given to increase the amount of urine excreted.

**Dysthymic disorder**—A mood disorder that is less severe than depression but usually more chronic.

**Electrolytes**—Substances or elements that dissociate into electrically charged particles (ions) when dissolved in the blood. The electrolytes in human blood include potassium, magnesium, and chloride.

**Hypokalemia**—Abnormally low levels of potassium in the blood. Hypokalemia is a potential medical emergency, as it can lead to disturbances in of the heart rhythm. Muscle cramps and pain are a common symptom of hypokalemia in bulimic patients.

**Incisors**—The four teeth in the front of each jaw in humans. The incisors of patients with bulimia frequently show signs of erosion from stomach acid.

**Ipecac**—The dried root of *Caephalis ipecacuanha*, a South American plant. Given in syrup form, ipecac is most commonly used to induce vomiting in cases of accidental poisoning.

**Petechiae**—Pinpoint-sized hemorrhages in the skin or a mucous membrane. In bulimia, petechiae may appear in the skin around the eyes as a result of increased pressure in the capillaries caused by vomiting.

**Purgging**—Inappropriate actions taken to prevent weight gain, often after bingeing, including self-induced vomiting or the misuse of laxatives, diuretics, enemas, or other medications.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

One study from upstate New York found that bright **light therapy** (regular exposure to ultraviolet light), of the type frequently prescribed for **seasonal affective disorder** (SAD), appears to be effective in reducing binge eating in patients diagnosed with bulimia. It also significantly relieved depressive symptoms, as measured by the patients' scores on the **Beck Depression Inventory**. As of 2007, no further studies addressing the effect of bright light on binge eating have been published.

### *Alternative and complementary treatments*

Alternative therapies that have been shown to be helpful for some patients in relieving the anxiety and muscular soreness associated with bulimia nervosa

include **acupuncture**, massage therapy, hydrotherapy, and shiatsu.

Herbal remedies that have been used to calm digestive upsets in bulimic patients include teas made from **chamomile** or peppermint. Peppermint helps to soothe the intestines by slowing down the rate of smooth muscle contractions (peristalsis). Chamomile has been used to help expel gas from the digestive tract, a common complaint of bulimics. Both herbs have a wide margin of safety.

Some bulimic patients have responded well to **yoga** because its emphasis on focused breathing and **meditation** calls attention to and challenges the distorted thought patterns that characterize bulimia. In addition, the stretching and bending movements that

are part of a yoga practice help to displace negative thoughts focused on the body's outward appearance with positive appreciation of its strength and agility. Last, because yoga is noncompetitive, it allows bulimics to explore the uniqueness of their bodies rather than constantly comparing themselves to other people.

## Prognosis

The prognosis of bulimia depends on several factors, including age at onset, types of purging behaviors used (if any), and the presence of other psychiatric conditions or disorders. In many cases, the disorder becomes a chronic (long-term) condition; 20–50% of patients have symptoms for at least five years in spite of treatment. The usual pattern is an alternation between periods of remission and new episodes of bingeing. Patients whose periods of remission last for a year or longer have a better prognosis; patients diagnosed with major depression or a personality disorder have a less favorable prognosis. Overall, however, the prognosis for full recovery from bulimia nervosa is considered relatively poor compared to other eating disorders.

Bulimia nervosa appears to produce changes in the functioning of the serotonin system in the brain. A team of researchers at the University of Pittsburgh who compared brain images taken by **positron emission tomography** (PET) from bulimic women who had been in remission for a year or longer with brain images from healthy women found that the recovered bulimics did not have a normal age-related decline in serotonin binding. Because serotonin helps to regulate mood, appetite, and impulse control, the study may help to explain why some women may be more susceptible to developing bulimia than others.

## Prevention

Although a genetic link to bulimia has been identified, there are currently no gene-based preventive measures. With regard to family influences, the overwhelming majority of studies have found that the most important preventive measure that can be taken is the establishment of healthful eating patterns and attitudes toward food in the family of origin.

*See also* Nutrition counseling.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

- "Bulimia Nervosa." Section 15, Chapter 196. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.
- Chernin, Kim. *The Obsession: Reflections on the Tyranny of Slenderness*. Revised edition. New York: HarperPerennial Editions, 1994.
- Eichenbaum, Luise, and Susie Orbach. *Understanding Women: A Feminist Psychoanalytic Approach*. New York: Basic Books, Publishers, 1983.
- Hornbacher, Marya. *Wasted: A Memoir of Anorexia and Bulimia*. New York: HarperPerennial Editions, 1999.
- Newmark, Gretchen Rose. "Overcoming Eating Disorders." In *Living Yoga: A Comprehensive Guide for Daily Life*, edited by Georg Feuerstein and Stephan Bodia. New York: Jeremy P. Tarcher/Perigee, 1993.
- Rodin, Judith, PhD. *Body Traps: Breaking the Binds That Keep You from Feeling Good About Your Body*. New York: William Morrow, 1992.
- Roth, Geneen. *When Food is Love*. New York: Penguin Books, 1992.
- Wolf, Naomi. *The Beauty Myth: How Images of Beauty Are Used Against Women*. New York: Anchor Books, 1992.

### PERIODICALS

- Agras, Stewart W., and others. "Childhood Risk Factors for Thin Body Preoccupation and Social Pressure to be Thin." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 46 (2007): 171–78.
- Bulik, Cynthia M. "Exploring the Gene–Environment Nexus in Eating Disorders." *Journal of Psychiatry and Neuroscience* 30 (2005): 335–39.
- Bulik, C. M., and others. "Twin Studies of Eating Disorders: A Review." *International Journal of Eating Disorders* 27 (2000): 1–20.
- Eliot, A. W., and C. W. Baker. "Eating Disordered Adolescent Males." *Adolescence* 36 (Fall 2001): 535–43.
- Fairburn, Christopher C. "The Natural Course of Bulimia Nervosa and Binge Eating Disorder in Young Women." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 284 (October 18, 2000): 1906.
- Hay, Phillipa J., and Josué Bacaltchuk. "Bulimia Nervosa: Review of Treatments." *British Medical Journal* 303 (July 7, 2001): 33–37.
- Kaye, Walter H., Guido K. Frank, Carolyn C. Meltzer, and others. "Altered Serotonin 2A Receptor Activity in Women Who Have Recovered from Bulimia Nervosa." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 158 (July 2001): 1152–55.
- Kotler, Lisa A., Patricia Cohen, Mark Davies, and others. "Longitudinal Relationships Between Childhood, Adolescent, and Adult Eating Disorders." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 40 (December 2001): 1434–40.
- "Light Therapy for Bulimia." *Family Practice News* 10 (February 1, 2000): 32.
- Little, J. W. "Eating Disorders: Dental Implications." *Oral Surgery, Oral Medicine, Oral Pathology, Oral Radiology, and Endodontics* 93 (February 2002): 138–43.

- McGilley, Beth M., and Tamara L. Pryor. "Assessment and Treatment of Bulimia Nervosa." *American Family Physician* 57 (June 1998): 1339.
- Miller, Karl E. "Cognitive Behavior Treatment of Bulimia Nervosa." *American Family Physician* 63 (February 1, 2001): 536.
- "Position of the American Dietetic Association: Nutrition Intervention in the Treatment of Anorexia Nervosa, Bulimia Nervosa, and Eating Disorders Not Otherwise Specified." *Journal of the American Dietetic Association* 101 (July 2001): 810–28.
- Romano, Steven J., Katherine A. Halmi, Neena P. San-kar, and others. "A Placebo-Controlled Study of Fluoxetine in Continued Treatment of Bulimia Nervosa After Successful Acute Fluoxetine Treatment." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 159 (January 2002): 96–102.
- Steiger, Howard, Lise Gauvin, Mimi Israel, and others. "Association of Serotonin and Cortisol Indices with Childhood Abuse in Bulimia Nervosa." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 58 (September 2001): 837.
- Vink, T., A. Hinney, A. A. van Elburg, and others. "Association Between an Agouti-Related Protein Gene Polymorphism and Anorexia Nervosa." *Molecular Psychiatry* 6 (May 2001): 325–28.
- Walling, Anne D. "Anti-Nausea Drug Promising in Treatment of Bulimia Nervosa." *American Family Physician* 62 (September 1, 2000): 1156.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- Academy for Eating Disorders, Montefiore Medical School, Adolescent Medicine. 111 East 210th Street, Bronx, NY 10467. Telephone: (718) 920-6782.
- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue N.W., Washington, DC 20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <<http://www.aacap.org>>.
- American Anorexia/Bulimia Association. 165 W. 46th Street, Suite 1108, New York, NY 10036. Telephone: (212) 575-6200.
- American Dietetic Association. Telephone: (800) 877-1600. <<http://www.eatright.org>>.
- Anorexia Nervosa and Related Eating Disorders, Inc. (ANRED). P.O. Box 5102, Eugene, OR 97405. Telephone: (541) 344-1144. <<http://www.anred.com>>.
- Center for the Study of Anorexia and Bulimia. 1 W. 91st St., New York, NY 10024. Telephone: (212) 595-3449.

## OTHER

- "Bulima Nervosa." U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. <<http://www.womenshealth.gov/faq/Easy-read/bulnervosa-etr.htm>>.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Bullying

### Definition

Bullying is a persistent pattern of threatening, harassing, or aggressive behavior directed toward another person or persons who are perceived as smaller, weaker, or less powerful. Although often thought of as a childhood phenomenon, bullying can occur wherever people interact, most notably observable in the workplace and in the home. Bullying is also called harassment.

### Description

"Kids will be kids," the saying goes, so warning signs of bullying are often overlooked as a natural part of childhood. However, although playground bullies have been around since time immemorial, such behavior should neither be considered acceptable nor excusable. Bullying is a form of abuse and violence, and the tragic Columbine High School massacre in 1999 underscores the potential dangers of unchecked bullying.

There are many forms of bullying. Bullies may intimidate or harass their victims physically through hitting, pushing, or other physical violence; verbally through such actions as threats or name calling; or psychologically through spreading rumors, making sexual comments or gestures, or excluding the victim from desired activities. Such behavior does not need to occur in person: Cyberbullying is a persistent pattern of threatening, harassing, or aggressive behavior carried out online.

There are many reasons to stop bullying. Bullying interferes with school performance, and children who are afraid of being bullied are more likely to miss school or drop out. Bullied children frequently experience developmental harm and fail to reach their full physiological, social, and academic potentials. Children who are bullied grow increasingly insecure and anxious, and have persistently decreased self-esteem and greater **depression** than their peers, often even as adults. Children have even been known to commit **suicide** as a result of being bullied.

People who are bullies as children often become bullies as adults. Bullying behavior in the home is called child abuse or spousal abuse. Bullying also occurs in prisons and in churches.

Recently, attention has been turned to the topic of bullying in the workplace (sometimes called harassment), where bosses and organizational peers bully those whom they perceive as their inferiors or weaker



A young boy faces bullying from older and bigger kids. (Gideon Mendel/Alamy)

than they. Those bullied at work often become perceived as ineffective, thus abrogating their career success and influencing their earning potential. Victims of workplace bullying often change jobs in search of a less hostile environment because organizations are frequently not sensitive to the issue of workplace bullying or equipped to adequately or justly deal with it.

## Demographics

### *Bullying in children*

Bullying among children is a persistent and substantial problem. According to a study published in 2001 by the Kaiser Family Foundation and Nickelodeon Television, 55% of 8–11-year-olds and 68% of 12–15-year-olds said that bullying is a “big problem” for people their age. Seventy-four percent of the 8–11-year-olds and 86% of the 12–15-year-olds also reported that children were bullied or teased at their school. Children at greatest risk of being bullied are those who are perceived as social isolates or outcasts by their peers, have a history of changing schools, have poor social skills and a desire to fit in “at any cost,” are

defenseless, or are viewed by their peers as being different.

A study of more than 16,000 children in the sixth through tenth grades conducted for the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development found that bullying is a common problem in the United States and requires serious attention. Nearly 60% of the children responding to the survey reported that they had been victims of rumors. More than 50% of the children reported that they had been the victims of sexual harassment.

The National Center for Education Statistics (NCES) of the U.S. Department of Education found that white, non-Hispanic children were more likely to report being the victims of bullying than black or other non-Hispanic children. Younger children were more likely to report being bullied than older children, and children attending schools with gangs were more likely to report being bullied than children in schools without a major gang presence. No differences were found in these patterns between public and private schools. Fewer children reported bullying in schools that were supervised by police officers, security officers, or staff

hallway monitors. Victims of bullying were more likely to be criminally victimized at school than were other children. Victims of bullying were more afraid of being attacked both at school and elsewhere and more likely to avoid certain areas of school (for example, the cafeteria, hallways or stairs, or restrooms) or activities where bullying was more likely to take place. Significantly, victims of bullies were more likely to report that they carried weapons to school for protection.

Children who are identified as bullies by the time they are eight years of age are six times more likely than other children to have a criminal conviction by the time they are 24 years old. Bullying behavior may also be accompanied by other inappropriate behavior, including criminal, delinquent, or gang behavior.

### **Bullying in the workplace**

Although research has been conducted on bullying in Europe for some time, the topic has only recently become of interest in the United States. There are no "official" figures currently available for incidents of bullying in the workplace. However, the nonprofit Workplace Bullying Institute conducted an informal survey of 1,000 self-selected volunteer respondents. Although it cannot be assumed that the volunteers answering the survey are representative of individuals in the workplace in general, the results do give food for thought concerning the prevalence of workplace bullying.

In the survey, 80% of the women and 20% of the men reported having been bullied at work. Sixty-one percent of the victims of workplace bullying said that the behavior was ongoing. The survey also found that 70% of victims of workplace bullying lose their jobs: 37% of the victims were fired or involuntarily terminated and 16% of the victims transferred to another position within the same organization. On the other hand, the survey found that only 4% of bullies stopped their aggressive or harassing actions after punishment and that only 9% of workplace bullies were transferred, fired, or involuntarily terminated. Contrary to the cartoon portrait of male bullies, the survey showed that 50% of workplace bullying was done by women victimizing other women. Men bullying women accounted for only 30% of bullying, while men bullying men accounted for 12% of workplace bullying and women bullying men accounted for 8%. The figure with women bullying other women is particularly interesting because such same-sex harassment (with the exception of sexual harassment) is usually outside the scope of antidiscrimination laws and is typically not tracked.

## **Causes and symptoms**

As of this writing, there is no evidence to support the theory that there is a genetic component to bullying behavior. Particularly in children, it is most often theorized that bullying is a result of the bully copying the actions of role models who bully others. This frequently happens when bullies come from a home in which one parent bullies another or one or both parents bully the children. When such behavior is modeled for children with personality traits such as lack of impulse control or aggression, they are particularly prone to bullying behavior, which is often continued into adulthood.

### **Bullying in children**

According to the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, children with dominant personalities and who are more impulsive and active are more prone to becoming bullies than children without these traits. Bullies also often have a history of emotional or behavioral problems. Victims of bullying, on the other hand, tend to be more anxious, insecure, and socially isolated than their peers, and often lack age-appropriate social skills. The probability of victimization can be compounded when the victim has low self-esteem due to physical characteristics (for example, the victim believes her/himself to be unattractive or is outside the normal range for height or weight) or problems (for example, health problems or physical or mental disability).

Warning signs and factors that may indicate risk for being or becoming a bully include:

- lack of impulse control (frequent loss of temper, extreme impulsiveness, easily frustrated, extreme mood swings)
- family factors (abuse or violence within the family, substance or alcohol abuse within the family, overly permissive parenting, lack of clear limits, inadequate parental supervision, harsh/corporal punishment, child abuse, inconsistent parenting)
- behavioral symptoms (gang affiliation, name calling or abusive language, carrying a weapon, hurting animals, alcohol or drug abuse, making serious threats, vandalizing or damaging property, frequent physical fighting)

Symptoms that a child may be being bullied include:

- social withdrawal or isolation (few or no friends; feeling isolated, sad, and alone; feeling picked on or persecuted; feeling rejected or not liked; having poor social skills)

- somatic complaints (frequent complaints about illness; displaying victim body language, including hanging head, hunching shoulders, and avoiding eye contact)
- avoidant behavior (not wanting to go to school; skips classes or skips school)
- affective reactions (crying easily; having mood swings; talking about hopelessness, running away, or suicide)
- physical clues (bringing home damaged possessions or reports that belongings were “lost”)
- behavior changes (changes in eating or sleeping patterns)
- aggressive behavior (threatening violence to self or others, taking or attempting to take weapon to school)

Each child will react to bullying in a different manner, and some children will react with only a few of these symptoms. This, however, does not mean that bullying is not severe or that **intervention** is not needed.

### **Bullying in the workplace**

Bullying in the workplace is usually motivated by political rather than personal reasons. Workers compete over scarce resources such as promotions, raises, and the corner office or other honors. In an attempt to climb the ladder of success, some individuals do what they can to not only present themselves in a good light to their superiors, but to make one or more coworkers seem unworthy or inept. Bullying bosses demonstrate poor leadership styles and poor motivational skills, frequently attempting to further either their own or the company’s agenda through harassment, belittling, or other negative behaviors.

Common tactics used by bullies in the workplace include:

- discounting/belittling victim in public (making statements such as “that’s silly” in response to victim’s ideas, disregarding evidence of satisfactory or superlative work done by victim, taking credit for victim’s work)
- false accusations (rumors about victim, lies about victim’s performance)
- harassment (verbal putdowns based on gender, race, disability)
- isolating behaviors (encouraging others to turn against victim, socially or physically isolating the victim from others)
- nonverbal aggression (staring, glaring, silent treatment)
- sabotages victim’s work

- unequal treatment (retaliating against victim who files a complaint, making up arbitrary rules for victim to follow, assigning undesirable work as a punishment, making unreasonable/unreachable goals or deadlines for victim, performing a constructive discharge of duties)

### **Diagnosis**

Bullying in itself is not a mental disorder, although aggressive or harassing behavior may be symptomatic of a number of disorders, particularly **antisocial personality disorder** and schizoid behavior. There are, however, a number of criteria to help determine if someone is a bully. First, to qualify as bullying, the bully’s behavior must be intended to cause physical or psychological harm to the other person. Second, bullying behavior is not an isolated incident but results in a consistent pattern of such behavior over time. Third, bullying occurs where there is an imbalance of power whereby the bully has more physical or psychological power than the victim. Harassing behavior is not considered to be bullying if it occurs between individuals of equal strength and status or if it is a one-time event.

Bullying behavior in children can include any of the following behaviors:

- dominance (enjoying feeling powerful and in control, seeking to dominate or manipulate others, being a poor winner or loser)
- lack of empathy (deriving satisfaction from the fears, pain, or discomfort of others; enjoying conflict between others; displaying intolerance and prejudice toward others)
- negative emotions or violence (displaying uncontrolled anger or a pattern of impulsive and chronic hitting, intimidating, or aggressive behavior)
- lack of responsibility (blaming others for his/her problems)
- other behaviors (using drugs or alcohol, or being a gang member; hiding bullying behavior from adults; having a history of discipline problems)

Victims of bullying—whether children or adults—may need to be assessed and treated for an **anxiety** disorder if they need help responding to or recovering from bullying.

### **Treatments and prevention**

If bullying behavior is symptomatic of an underlying mental disorder such as antisocial personality disorder, treatment and prevention should be guided by and address the underlying disorder. For situations

in which bullying behavior is not part of a pattern associated with an underlying mental disorder, treatment and establishing organizational or familial processes for dealing with it are required.

### Bullying in children

To help keep a child from becoming a bully, it is important to be a role model for nonviolent behavior. Parents should also clearly communicate to the child that bullying behavior is not acceptable, and clear limits should be established for acceptable behavior and consequences for ignoring the limits should be defined. Teaching good social skills—including efficacious conflict resolution skills and anger management skills—can also help potential bullies learn alternative, socially acceptable behaviors. If the child persists in bullying behavior or if the parent(s) suspect that their child is a bully, help can be sought from mental health professionals and school counselors. Taking the child to a child **psychologist** and participating in **family therapy** as appropriate can help teach a bully better interpersonal skills. Contacting the school counselor or a child psychologist is also an appropriate step in helping the victims of bullies.

If parents suspect that their child may be being bullied, they should make sure that he or she understands that the problem is not his or her fault and that he or she does not have to face the situation alone. Parents can discuss ways to deal with bullies, including walking away, being assertive, and getting help. Parents should also encourage the child to report bullying behavior to a teacher, counselor, or other trusted adult. However, parents should not try to resolve the situation themselves but should contact the school to report the behavior and for recommendations for further assistance.

### Bullying in the workplace

Bullying in the workplace can be minimized if the organization develops and enforces anti-harassment policies and procedures. These should include a stated definition on what constitutes harassment, creating and implementing a disciplinary system to punish the bully rather than the victim, and instituting a formal grievance system to report workplace bullying. Other measures that can be taken include inclusiveness and harassment training, awareness training to educate employees on how to spot bullying behavior, and offering courses in conflict resolution, anger management, or **assertiveness training**.

Bullies are not the only ones needing help. The intention of a bully is to harm the other person; victims, therefore, may experience a number of negative

## KEY TERMS

**Antisocial personality disorder**—A personality disorder characterized by aggressive, impulsive, or even violent actions that violate the established rules or conventions of a society.

**Anxiety disorder**—A group of mood disorders characterized by apprehension and associated bodily symptoms of tension (such as tense muscles, fast breathing, rapid heart beat). When anxious, the individual anticipates threat, danger, or misfortune. Anxiety disorders include panic disorder (with or without agoraphobia), agoraphobia without panic disorder, specific phobias, social phobia, obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), acute stress disorder, generalized anxiety disorder, anxiety disorder due to a general medical condition, and substance-induced anxiety disorder.

**Representative sample**—A subset of the overall population of interest that is chosen so that it accurately displays the same essential characteristics of the larger population in the same proportion.

consequences from being the victim of a bully. If the behavior associated with being a victim persists after the bullying situation has been resolved or if the situation continues without just resolution, victims should be assessed for depression and/or an anxiety disorder if their symptoms warrant, and receive the appropriate treatment.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Einarsen, Ståle, Helge Hoel, Dieter Zapf, and Cary L. Cooper, eds. *Bullying and Emotional Abuse in the Workplace: International Perspectives in Research and Practice*. New York: Taylor and Francis, 2003.
- Espelage, Dorothy L., and Susan M. Swearer, eds. *Bullying in American Schools: A Social-Ecological Perspective on Prevention and Intervention*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2003.
- Geffner, Robert A, Marti Tamm Loring, and Corinna Young, eds. *Bullying Behavior: Current Issues, Research, and Interventions*. Binghamton, New York: Haworth Maltreatment and Trauma Press, 2002.
- Needham, Andrea. *Workplace Bullying: The Costly Business Secret*. New York: Penguin Global, 2004.
- O'Moore, Mona, and Stephen Minton. *Dealing with Bullying in Schools: A Training Manual for Teachers, Parents and Other Professionals*. London: Paul Chapman Publishing, 2004.

- Rigby, Ken. *New Perspectives on Bullying*. London: Jessica Kingsley Publishers, 2002.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.
- PERIODICALS**
- Ahmed, Eliza, and Valerie Braithwaite. "Forgiveness, Reconciliation, and Shame: Three Key Variables in Reducing School Bullying." *Journal of Social Issues* 62.2 (2006): 347–70.
- Bowling, Nathan A., and Terry A. Beehr. "Workplace Harassment from the Victim's Perspective: A Theoretical Model and Meta-Analysis." *Journal of Applied Psychology* 91.5 (2006): 998–1012.
- Chan, John H. F. "Systemic Patterns in Bullying and Victimization." *School Psychology International* 27.3 (2006): 352–369.
- Cossa, Mario. "How Rudel: Using Sociodrama in the Investigation of Bullying and Harassing Behavior and in Teaching Civility in Educational Communities." *Journal of Group Psychotherapy, Psychodrama and Sociometry* 58.4 (2006): 182–94.
- Heydenberk, Roberta A., Warren R. Heydenberk, and Vera Tzenova. "Conflict Resolution and Bully Prevention: Skills for School Success." *Conflict Resolution Quarterly* 24.1 (2006): 55–69.
- Kim, Young Shin, Bennett L. Leventhal, Yun-Joo Koh, Alan Hubbard, and W. Thomas Boyce. "School Bullying and Youth Violence: Causes or Consequences of Psychopathologic Behavior?" *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.9 (2006): 1035–41.
- Ledley, Deborah Roth, and others. "The Relationship Between Childhood Teasing and Later Interpersonal Functioning." *Journal of Psychopathology and Behavioral Assessment* 28.1 (2006): 33–40.
- Lee, Raymond T., and Céleste M. Brothridge. "When Prey Turns Predatory: Workplace Bullying as a Predictor of Counteraggression/Bullying, Coping, and Well-Being." *European Journal of Work and Organizational Psychology* 15.3 (2006): 352–77.
- Lewis, Sian E. "Recognition of Workplace Bullying: A Qualitative Study of Women Targets in the Public Sector." *Journal of Community and Applied Social Psychology* 16.2 (2006): 119–35.
- Lutgen-Sandvik, Pamela. "Take This Job and . . . : Quitting and Other Forms of Resistance to Workplace Bullying." *Communication Monographs* 73.4 (2006): 406–33.
- Moayed, Farman A., Nancy Daraiseh, Richard Shell, and Sam Salem. "Workplace Bullying: A Systematic Review of Risk Factors and Outcomes." *Theoretical Issues in Ergonomics Science* 7.3 (2006): 311–27.
- Nickel, Marius K., and others. "Influence of Family Therapy on Bullying Behaviour, Cortisol Secretion, Anger, and Quality of Life in Bullying Male Adolescents: A Randomized, Prospective, Controlled Study." *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry* 51.6 (2006): 355–62.
- Parkins, Irina Sumajin, and Harold D. Fishbein. "The Influence of Personality on Workplace Bullying and Discrimination." *Journal of Applied Social Psychology* 36.10 (2006): 2554–77.
- Patchin, Justin W., and Sameer Hinduja. "Bullies Move Beyond the Schoolyard: A Preliminary Look at Cyberbullying." *Youth Violence and Juvenile Justice* 4.2 (2006): 148–69.
- Peskin, Melissa Fleschler, Susan R. Tortolero, and Christine M. Markham. "Bullying and Victimization Among Black and Hispanic Adolescents." *Adolescence* 41.163 (2006): 467–84.
- Phillips, Debby A. "Punking and Bullying: Strategies in Middle School, High School, and Beyond." *Journal of Interpersonal Violence* 22.2 (2007): 158–78.
- Twemlow, Stuart W., Peter Fonagy, Frank C. Sacco, and John R. Brethour Jr. "Teachers Who Bully Students: A Hidden Trauma." *International Journal of Social Psychiatry* 52.3 (2006): 187–98.
- ORGANIZATIONS**
- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue N.W., Washington, DC 20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. <<http://www.aacap.org>>.
- Mental Health America. 2000 N. Beauregard Street, 6th Floor, Alexandria, VA 22311. Telephone: (800) 969-6642. TTY: (800) 433-5959. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.
- National Institute of Child Health and Human Development. P.O. Box 3006, Rockville, MD 20847. Telephone: (800) 370-2943. TTY: Telephone: (888) 320-6942. <<http://www.nichd.nih.gov>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), Public Information and Communications Branch. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (866) 615-6464. TTY: (866) 415-8051. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.
- National Mental Health Information Center. P.O. Box 42557, Washington, DC 20015. Telephone: (800) 789-2647. TDD: (866) 889-2647. <<http://mentalhealth.samhsa.gov>>.
- National Youth Violence Prevention Resource Center. P.O. Box 10809, Rockville, MD 20849-0809. Telephone: (866) 723-3968. TTY: (888) 503-3952. <<http://www.safeyouth.org>>.
- U.S. Human Resources and Service Administration, Stop Bullying Now! <<http://www.stopbullyingnow.hrsa.gov>>.
- Workplace Bullying Institute. Telephone: (360) 656-6630. <<http://www.bullyinginstitute.org>>.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Bupropion

### Definition

Bupropion is an antidepressant drug used to elevate mood and promote recovery of a normal range of emotions in patients with **depressive disorders**. In

addition, bupropion is used to as an aid in **smoking cessation** treatment. In the United States, bupropion is sold as an antidepressant under the brand name Wellbutrin. As a smoking cessation treatment, the drug is marketed under the brand name Zyban.

### Purpose

Bupropion is principally known as an antidepressant drug used to promote recovery of depressed patients. It also has therapeutic uses in smoking cessation treatment, **panic disorder**, and **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD).

### Description

Bupropion is a nontricyclic antidepressant drug. Tricyclic **antidepressants**, which have a three-ring chemical structure, may cause troublesome side effects including sedation, dizziness, fainting, and weight gain. Until the 1980s, such drugs were the mainstay of the pharmacological treatment of **depression**. Bupropion was one of the first antidepressants with a significantly different chemical structure to be developed by pharmaceutical researchers seeking drugs effective in treating depression but without the unwanted actions of the tricyclic antidepressants.

The exact way that bupropion works in the **brain** is not understood. Its mechanism of action appears to be different from that of most other antidepressant drugs, although bupropion does act on some of the same **neurotransmitters** and neurotransmission pathways. Neurotransmitters are naturally occurring chemicals that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses from one cell to another. Mental well-being is partially dependent on maintaining the proper balance among the various neurotransmitters in the brain. Bupropion may restore normal emotional feelings by counteracting abnormalities of neurotransmission that occur in depressive disorders.

In contrast to the drowsiness frequently caused by other antidepressants, bupropion is a mild stimulant. Bupropion is also less likely to cause weight gain and adverse effects on blood pressure and the heart. However, it is more likely to trigger epileptic **seizures**.

### Recommended dosage

The usual adult dose of bupropion (Wellbutrin) is 100 mg, taken three times per day, with at least six hours between doses. The extended release form of the drug (Wellbutrin SR) is taken as 150 mg twice a day with at least eight hours between doses. For smoking cessation, bupropion (Zyban) is taken as 150 mg extended release tablets twice a day, with at least eight

hours between doses. Bupropion treatment should be started at a lower dose, then gradually increased to a therapeutic dosage, as directed by the physician. Generally, the total dosage should not exceed 300 mg per day, except as directed by the physician.

The therapeutic effects of bupropion, like other antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for several weeks after starting the drug. People taking bupropion should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement in mood.

Since higher doses of bupropion increase the risk of seizures, no more than 150 mg should be given at any one time, and the total daily dosage should not be increased by more than 100 mg every three days. Increasing the dosage gradually also minimizes agitation, restlessness, and **insomnia** that may occur.

Healthy elderly patients do not appear to be more sensitive to side effects of bupropion than younger adults and do not require reduced doses. Certain medical conditions, especially liver and kidney disease, may necessitate dose reduction. Although bupropion has been taken by children and adolescents under age 18, it has not been systematically studied in these age groups.

### Precautions

Bupropion is more likely to trigger epileptic seizures than other antidepressants. The drug should not be given to patients who have a history of epilepsy, take other medication to help control seizures, or have some other condition associated with seizures, such as head trauma or alcoholism. Nevertheless, in fewer than 1% of healthy people taking bupropion at the recommended dose have seizures. The possibility of seizures is increased at higher doses and following a sudden increase in dose. Patients should minimize alcohol intake while taking bupropion, since alcohol consumption increases the chance of seizures.

Because of the possibility of overdose, potentially suicidal patients should be given only small quantities of the drug at one time. Increases in blood pressure have occurred in patients taking bupropion along with **nicotine** treatment for smoking cessation. Monitoring blood pressure is recommended in such cases. Excessive stimulation, agitation, insomnia, and **anxiety** have been troublesome side effects for some patients, especially when treatment is first begun or when the dose is increased. Such adverse effects may be less intense and less frequent when the dose is increased gradually.

It has not been determined whether bupropion is safe to take during pregnancy. Pregnant women

## KEY TERMS

**Antipsychotic drug**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders, as well.

**Epilepsy**—A neurological disorder characterized by the onset of seizures. Seizures are caused by a disturbance in the electrical activity in the brain and can cause loss of consciousness, muscle spasms, rhythmic movements, abnormal sensory experiences, or altered mental states.

**Neurotransmission**—The conduction of a nerve impulse along a chain of nerve cells, which occurs when a cell in the chain secretes a chemical substance, called a neurotransmitter, onto a subsequent cell.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Parkinson's disease**—A disease of the nervous system most common in people over age 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness.

should take bupropion only if necessary. The drug is secreted in breast milk. Women taking bupropion should consult their physicians about breast-feeding.

### Side effects

Bupropion is a mild stimulant and may cause insomnia, agitation, confusion, restlessness, and anxiety. These effects may be more pronounced at the beginning of therapy and after dose increases. Headache, dizziness, and tremor may occur. Despite stimulating effects, bupropion may also cause sedation.

Weight loss is more common with bupropion than weight gain, but both have been reported. Excessive sweating, dry mouth, sore throat, nausea, vomiting, decreased appetite, constipation, blurred vision, and rapid heart rate may occur.

### Interactions

Bupropion should not be administered along with other medications that lower the seizure threshold, such as **steroids** and the asthma medication theophylline. Many psychiatric medications also lower the seizure threshold. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors

(MAOIs), another type of antidepressant medication, should not be taken with bupropion. Adverse effects may increase in patients taking levodopa and other medications for Parkinson's disease along with bupropion. Patients should inform their doctors about all other medications they are taking before starting this drug.

Nicotine patch therapy may be administered concurrently with bupropion in smoking cessation treatment. If this is done, blood pressure must be monitored, since increased blood pressure has been reported with this combination of medications.

Certain drugs, especially those eliminated by the liver, may interfere with the elimination of bupropion from the body, causing higher blood levels and increased side effects. Conversely, bupropion may retard the elimination of other medicines, including many antidepressants, antipsychotic drugs, and heart medications, resulting in higher blood levels and potentially increased side effects.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

- Gonzales, David, and others. "Varenicline, an  $\alpha 4\beta 2$  Nicotinic Acetylcholine Receptor Partial Agonist, vs. Sustained-Release Bupropion and Placebo for Smoking Cessation: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 296.1 (July 2006): 47–55.
- Ingersoll, Karen S., and Jessye Cohen. "Combination Treatment for Nicotine Dependence: State of the Science." *Substance Use and Misuse* 40.13–14 (2005): 1923–43.
- Little, John T., and others. "Bupropion and Venlafaxine Responders Differ in Pretreatment Regional Cerebral Metabolism in Unipolar Depression." *Biological Psychiatry* 57.3 (February 2005): 220–28.
- Thase, Michael E., and others. "Remission Rates Following Antidepressant Therapy With Bupropion or Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors: A Meta-Analysis of Original Data From 7 Randomized Controlled Trials." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 66.8 (August 2005): 974–81.

Richard Kapit, M.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

BuSpar see **Buspirone**

## Buspirone

### Definition

Buspirone is an antianxiety (anxiolytic) drug sold in the United States under the brand name BuSpar. It is also available under its generic name. Buspirone is used for the treatment of generalized **anxiety disorders** and for short-term relief of symptoms of **anxiety**.

### Description

Buspirone's mechanism of action is unclear but probably involves actions on such central nervous system chemicals as **dopamine**, serotonin, acetylcholine, and norepinephrine. These chemicals are called **neurotransmitters** and are involved in the transmission of nervous impulses from cell to cell. Mental well-being is partially dependent on maintaining a balance among different neurotransmitters.

Buspirone's actions are different from the common class of **sedatives** called **benzodiazepines**. The primary actions of benzodiazepines are to reduce anxiety, relax skeletal muscles, and induce sleep. The earliest drugs in this class were **chlor diazepoxide** (Librium) and **diazepam** (Valium). The mechanism of buspirone's action is also different from **barbiturates** such as phenobarbital. Unlike benzodiazepines, buspirone has no anticonvulsant or muscle-relaxant properties, and unlike benzodiazepines or barbiturates it does not have strong sedative properties. If **insomnia** is a component of the patient's anxiety disorder, a sedative/hypnotic drug may be taken along with buspirone at bedtime. Buspirone also diminishes anger and hostility for most people. Unlike benzodiazepines, which may aggravate anger and hostility in some patients (especially older patients), buspirone may help patients with anxiety who also have a history of aggression.

The benefits of buspirone take a long time to become evident. Unlike benzodiazepines, where onset of action and time to maximum benefit are short, patients must take buspirone for three to four weeks before feeling the maximum benefit of the drug. In some cases, four to six weeks of treatment may be required. Patients should be aware of this and continue to take the drug as prescribed even if they think they are not seeing any improvement.

Buspirone is available in 5-, 10-, 15-, and 30-mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

The usual starting dose of buspirone is 10 to 15 mg per day. This total amount is divided into two or three doses. For example, a dose of 5 mg may be given two or three times per day to make a total dose of 10 to 15 mg per day. The dose may be increased in increments of 5 mg daily every two to four days. Most patients will respond to a dose of 15 to 30 mg daily. Patients should not take a total dose of more than 60 mg daily. When patients are receiving certain other drugs in addition to buspirone, starting doses of buspirone may need to be lowered (e.g., 2.5 mg twice daily), and any dosage increases should be done with caution and under close physician supervision. Dosages may need to be reduced in patients with kidney or liver problems.

### Precautions

Buspirone is less sedating (it causes less drowsiness and mental sluggishness) than other antianxiety drugs. However, some patients may still experience drowsiness and mental impairment. Because it is impossible to predict which patients may experience sedation with buspirone, those starting this drug should not drive or operate dangerous machinery until they know how the drug will affect them.

Patients who have been taking benzodiazepines for a long time should be gradually withdrawn from them while they are being switched over to buspirone. They should also be observed for symptoms of benzodiazepine withdrawal.

Patients with kidney damage should take buspirone with caution in close consultation with their physician. They may require a lower dosage of buspirone to prevent buildup of the drug in the body. Patients with severe kidney disease should not take buspirone. Patients with liver damage should likewise be monitored for a buildup of buspirone and have their doses lowered if necessary.

### Side effects

The most common side effects associated with buspirone involve the nervous system. Ten percent of patients may experience dizziness, drowsiness, and headache, and another 5% may experience **fatigue**, nervousness, insomnia, and light-headedness. Patients may also experience excitement, **depression**, anger, hostility, confusion, nightmares, or other **sleep disorders**, lack of coordination, tremor, and numbness of the extremities. Although buspirone is considered nonsedating, some patients will experience drowsiness and lack of mental alertness at higher doses and

especially early in therapy. In most patients, these side effects decrease with time.

The following side effects have also been associated with buspirone:

- nausea (up to 8% of patients)
- dry mouth, abdominal distress, gastric distress, diarrhea, and constipation (up to 5% of patients)
- rapid heart rate and palpitations (up to 2% of patients)
- blurred vision (up to 2% of patients)
- increased or decreased appetite
- flatulence
- nonspecific chest pain
- rash
- irregular menstrual periods and/or breakthrough bleeding

## Interactions

Dangerously high blood pressure has resulted from the combination of buspirone and members of another class of **antidepressants** known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). Because of this, buspirone should never be taken in combination with MAOIs. Patient taking any MAOIs, such as Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAOIs then wait at least 10 days before starting buspirone. The same holds true when discontinuing buspirone and starting an MAOIs.

Certain drugs may inhibit the enzyme system in the liver that breaks down buspirone. Examples of drugs that might inhibit this system are erythromycin, a broad-spectrum antibiotic; itraconazole, an oral antifungal agent; and **nefazodone**, an antidepressant. When these drugs are combined with buspirone, buspirone concentrations may increase to the point of toxicity (poisoning). These combinations should either be avoided or doses of buspirone decreased to compensate for this interaction.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.
- Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anxiolytic**—A preparation or substance given to relieve anxiety; a tranquilizer.

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that works in combination with norepinephrine and is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

## PERIODICALS

- Baldwin, David S., and Claire Polkinghorn. "Evidence-Based Pharmacotherapy of Generalized Anxiety Disorder." *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology* 8.2 (June 2005): 293–302.
- Buydens-Branchey, Laure, Marc Branchey, and Christine Reel-Brander. "Efficacy of Buspirone in the Treatment of Opioid Withdrawal." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 25.3 (June 2005): 230–36.
- Helvink, Badalin, and Suzanne Holroyd. "Buspirone for Stereotypic Movements in Elderly With Cognitive Impairment." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 18.2 (Spring 2006): 242–44.
- McRae, Aimee L., Kathleen T. Brady, and Rickey E. Carter. "Buspirone for Treatment of Marijuana Dependence: A Pilot Study." *The American Journal on Addictions* 15.5 (September–October 2006): 404.
- Quitkin, Frederick, and others. "Medication Augmentation After the Failure of SSRIs for Depression." *New England Journal of Medicine* 354.12 (March 2006): 1243–52.

Verster, Joris C., Dieuwke S. Veldhuijen, and Edmund R Volkerts. "Is It Safe to Drive a Car When Treated with Anxiolytics? Evidence from On-the-Road Driving Studies During Normal Traffic." *Current Psychiatry Reviews* 1.2 (June 2005): 215–25.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD



# C

## Caffeine-related disorders

### Definition

Caffeine is a white, bitter crystalline alkaloid derived from coffee or tea. It belongs to a class of compounds called xanthines, its chemical formula being 1,3,7-trimethylxanthine. Caffeine is classified together with **cocaine** and **amphetamines** as an analeptic, or central nervous system stimulant. Coffee is the most abundant source of caffeine, although caffeine is also found in tea, cocoa, and cola beverages as well as in over-the-counter and prescription medications for pain relief.

In the clinician's handbook for diagnosing mental disorders (the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, known as the *DSM-IV-TR*), caffeine-related disorders are classified under the rubric of substance-related disorders. *DSM-IV-TR* specifies four caffeine-related disorders: caffeine intoxication, caffeine-induced **anxiety** disorder, caffeine-induced sleep disorder, and caffeine-related disorder not otherwise specified. A fifth, caffeine withdrawal, is listed under the heading of "Criteria Sets and Axes Provided for Further Study."

Caffeine-related disorders are often unrecognized for a number of reasons:

- Caffeine has a "low profile" as a drug of abuse. Consumption of drinks containing caffeine is unregulated by law and is nearly universal in the United States; one well-known textbook of pharmacology refers to caffeine as "the most widely used psychoactive drug in the world." In many countries, coffee is a social lubricant as well as a stimulant; the "coffee break" is a common office ritual, and many people find it difficult to imagine eating a meal in a fine restaurant without having coffee at some point during the meal. It is estimated that 10–12 billion pounds of coffee are consumed worldwide each year.

- People often underestimate the amount of caffeine they consume on a daily basis because they think of caffeine only in connection with coffee as a beverage. Tea, cocoa, and some types of soft drink, including root beer and orange soda as well as cola beverages, also contain significant amounts of caffeine. In one British case study, a teenager who was hospitalized with muscle weakness, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and weight loss was found to have caffeine intoxication caused by drinking 8 liters (about 2 gallons) of cola on a daily basis for the previous two years. She had been consuming over a gram of caffeine per day. Chocolate bars and coffee-flavored yogurt or ice cream are additional sources of measurable amounts of caffeine.
- Caffeine has some legitimate medical uses in athletic training and in the relief of tension-type headaches. It is available in over-the-counter (OTC) preparations containing aspirin or acetaminophen for pain relief as well as in such OTC stimulants as NoDoz and Vivarin.
- Caffeine is less likely to produce the same degree of physical or psychological dependence as other drugs of abuse. Few coffee or tea drinkers report loss of control over caffeine intake, or significant difficulty in reducing or stopping consumption of beverages and food items containing caffeine.
- The symptoms of caffeine intoxication are easy to confuse with those of an anxiety disorder.

The *DSM-TR-IV* states that it is unclear as of 2000 whether the tolerance, withdrawal symptoms, and "some aspects of dependence on caffeine" seen in some people who drink large amounts of coffee "are associated with clinically significant impairment that meets the criteria for **Substance Abuse** or Substance Dependence." On the other hand, a research team at Johns Hopkins regards caffeine as a model drug for understanding substance abuse and dependence. The team maintains that 9%–30% of caffeine consumers in

the United States may be caffeine-dependent according to *DSM* criteria for substance dependency.

## Description

### *Pharmacological aspects of caffeine*

An outline of the effects of caffeine on the central nervous system (CNS) and other organ systems of the body may be helpful in understanding its potential for physical dependence. When a person drinks a beverage containing caffeine (or eats coffee-flavored ice cream), the caffeine is absorbed from the digestive tract without being broken down. It is rapidly distributed throughout the tissues of the body by means of the bloodstream. If a pregnant woman drinks a cup of coffee or tea, the caffeine in the drink will cross the placental barrier and enter the baby's bloodstream.

When the caffeine reaches the **brain**, it increases the secretion of norepinephrine, a neurotransmitter that is associated with the so-called fight or flight **stress** response. The rise in norepinephrine levels and the increased activity of the neurons, or nerve cells, in many other areas of the brain helps to explain why the symptoms of caffeine intoxication resemble the symptoms of a **panic attack**.

The effects of caffeine are thought to occur as a result of competitive antagonism at adenosine receptors. Adenosine is a water-soluble compound of adenine and ribose; it functions to modulate the activities of nerve cells and produces a mild sedative effect when it activates certain types of adenosine receptors. Caffeine competes with adenosine to bind at these receptors and counteracts the sedative effects of the adenosine. If the person stops drinking coffee, the adenosine has no competition for activating its usual receptors and may produce a sedative effect that is experienced as **fatigue** or drowsiness.

### *Caffeine content of food items and OTC preparations*

The caffeine content of various food items and medications is as follows:

- brewed coffee, 8-oz cup: 135–150 mg
- instant coffee, 8-oz cup: 95 mg.
- powdered cappuccino beverage, 8-oz cup: 45–60 mg
- tea brewed from leaves or bag, 8-oz cup: 50 mg
- iced tea from mix, 8-oz glass: 25–45 mg
- Snapple iced tea, 8-oz glass: 21 mg
- Mountain Dew, 8-oz glass: 38 mg
- Dr. Pepper, 8-oz. glass: 28 mg
- diet cola, 8-oz glass: 31 mg

- root beer, 8-oz glass: 16 mg
- coffee ice cream, 8-oz serving: 60–85 mg
- coffee yogurt, 8-oz serving: 45 mg.
- dark chocolate candy bar, 1.5 oz: 31 mg
- NoDoz, regular strength, 1 tablet: 100 mg
- NoDoz, maximum strength, 1 tablet: 200 mg
- Excedrin, 2 tablets: 130 mg

Caffeine can produce a range of physical symptoms following ingestion of as little as 100 mg, although amounts of 250 mg or higher are usually needed to produce symptoms that meet the criteria of caffeine intoxication.

### *Caffeine intoxication*

To meet *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for caffeine intoxication, a person must develop five or more of the twelve symptoms identified, the symptoms must cause significant distress or impair the person's social or occupational functioning; and the symptoms must not be caused by a medical disorder or better accounted for by an anxiety disorder or other mental disorder.

Because people develop tolerance to caffeine fairly quickly with habitual use, caffeine intoxication is most likely to occur in those who consume caffeine infrequently or who have recently increased their intake significantly.

### *Caffeine-induced anxiety and sleep disorders*

*DSM-IV-TR* criteria for caffeine-induced anxiety and **sleep disorders** specify that the symptoms of anxiety and **insomnia** respectively must be more severe than the symptoms associated with caffeine intoxication. In addition, the anxiety or insomnia must be severe enough to require separate clinical attention.

## Causes and symptoms

### *Causes*

The immediate cause of caffeine intoxication and other caffeine-related disorders is consumption of an amount of caffeine sufficient to produce the symptoms specified by *DSM-IV-TR* as criteria for the disorder. The precise amount of caffeine necessary to produce symptoms varies from person to person depending on body size and degree of tolerance to caffeine. Tolerance of the stimulating effects of caffeine builds up rapidly in humans; mild withdrawal symptoms have been reported in persons who were drinking as little as one to two cups of coffee per day.

Some people may find it easier than others to consume large doses of caffeine because they are insensitive

to its taste. Caffeine tastes bitter to most adults, which may serve to limit their consumption of coffee and other caffeinated beverages. Slightly more than 30% of the American population, however, has an inherited inability to taste caffeine.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of caffeine intoxication include:

- restlessness
- nervousness
- excitement
- insomnia
- flushed face
- diuresis (increased urinary output)
- gastrointestinal disturbance
- muscle twitching
- talking or thinking in a rambling manner
- tachycardia (speeded-up heartbeat) or disturbances of heart rhythm
- periods of inexhaustibility
- psychomotor agitation

People have reported ringing in the ears or seeing flashes of light at doses of caffeine above 250 mg. Profuse sweating and diarrhea have also been reported. Doses of caffeine higher than 10 g may produce respiratory failure, **seizures**, and eventually death.

### Side effects and complications

High short-term consumption of caffeine can produce or worsen gastrointestinal problems, occasionally leading to peptic ulcers or hematemesis (vomiting blood).

In addition to the symptoms produced by high short-term doses, long-term consumption of caffeine has been associated with fertility problems and with bone loss in women leading to osteoporosis in old age. Some studies have found that pregnant women who consume more than 150 mg per day of caffeine have an increased risk of miscarriage and low birth weight babies, but the findings are complicated by the fact that most women who drink large amounts of coffee during pregnancy are also heavy smokers. Some researchers believe that long-term consumption of caffeine is implicated in cardiovascular diseases, but acknowledge that further research is required.

On the other hand, moderate doses of caffeine improve athletic performance as well as alertness. Caffeine in small doses can relieve tension headaches, and one study found that a combination of ibuprofen and caffeine was more effective in relieving tension head-

aches than either ibuprofen alone or a placebo. Coffee consumption also appears to lower the risk of alcoholic and nonalcoholic cirrhosis of the liver.

### Drug interactions

Caffeine is often combined with aspirin or acetaminophen in over-the-counter and prescription analgesics (pain relievers). It can also be combined with ibuprofen. On the other hand, certain groups of drugs should not be combined with caffeine or taken with beverages containing caffeine. Oral contraceptives, cimetidine (Tagamet), mexiletine (Mexitil), and **disulfiram** (Antabuse) interfere with the breakdown of caffeine in the body. Caffeine interferes with the body's absorption of iron, and with drugs that regulate heart rhythm, including quinidine and **propranolol** (Inderal). Caffeine may produce serious side effects when taken together with monoamine oxidase inhibitors or with certain decongestant medications.

Combinations of ephedra and caffeine have been used in weight-loss programs because they produce greater weight loss than can be achieved by caloric restriction alone. Major studies are underway as of 2001 at Harvard and Vanderbilt to determine the safety of these regimens.

Practitioners of homeopathy have traditionally advised patients not to drink beverages containing caffeine in the belief that caffeine "antidotes" homeopathic remedies. Contemporary homeopaths disagree on the antidoting effects of caffeine, observing that homeopathy is used widely and effectively in Europe and that Europeans tend to drink strong espresso coffee more frequently than Americans.

### Demographics

The general population of the United States has a high level of caffeine consumption, with an average intake of 200 mg per day. About 85% of the population uses caffeine in any given year. Among adults in the United States, about 30% consume 500 mg or more each day. These figures are lower, however, than the figures for Sweden, the United Kingdom, and other parts of Europe, where the average daily consumption of caffeine is 400 mg or higher. In developing countries, the average consumption of caffeine is much lower—about 50 mg per day.

In the United States, levels of caffeine consumption among all races and ethnic groups are related to age, with usage beginning in the late teens and rising until the early 30s. Caffeine consumption tapers off in adults over 40 and decreases in adults over 65.

Caffeine intake is higher among males than among females in North America.

### Diagnosis

**Diagnosis** of a caffeine-related disorder is usually based on the patient's recent history, a physical examination, or laboratory analysis of body fluids. In addition to medical evidence, the examiner will rule out other mental disorders, particularly manic episodes, **generalized anxiety disorder**, **panic disorder**, amphetamine intoxication, or withdrawal from **sedatives**, tranquilizers, sleep medications, or **nicotine**. All of these disorders or syndromes may produce symptoms resembling those of caffeine intoxication. In most cases the temporal relationship of the symptoms to high levels of caffeine intake establishes the diagnosis.

In some cases, the examiner may consider the possibility of **depression** during the differential diagnosis, as many people with depression and eating disorders self-medicate with caffeine.

### Treatments

Treatment of caffeine-related disorders involves lowering consumption levels or abstaining from beverages containing caffeine. Some people experience mild withdrawal symptoms that include headaches, irritability, and occasionally nausea, but these usually resolve quickly.

Caffeine consumption has the advantage of having relatively weak (compared to alcohol or cigarettes) social **reinforcement**, in the sense that one can easily choose a noncaffeinated or decaffeinated beverage in a restaurant or at a party without attracting comment. Thus physical dependence on caffeine is less complicated by the social factors that reinforce nicotine and other drug habits.

### Prognosis

With the exception of acute episodes of caffeineism, people recover from caffeine intoxication without great difficulty.

### Prevention

Prevention of caffeine-related disorders requires awareness of the caffeine content of caffeinated beverages, OTC drugs, and other sources of caffeine; monitoring one's daily intake; and substituting decaffeinated coffee, tea, or soft drinks for the caffeinated versions of these beverages.

## KEY TERMS

**Adenosine**—A compound that serves to modulate the activities of nerve cells (neurons) and to produce a mild sedative effect when it activates certain types of adenosine receptors. Caffeine is thought to produce its stimulating effect by competing with adenosine for activation of these receptors.

**Analeptic**—A substance that acts as a stimulant of the central nervous system. Caffeine is classified as an analeptic.

**Caffeinism**—A disorder caused by ingesting very high doses of caffeine (10g or more per day) and characterized by seizures and respiratory failure.

**Dependence**—The adaptation of neurons and other physical processes to the use of a drug, followed by withdrawal symptoms when the drug is removed; physiological and/or psychological addiction.

**Hematemesis**—Vomiting blood. Hematemesis is a symptom that sometimes occurs with gastrointestinal ulcers made worse by high levels of caffeine consumption.

**Norepinephrine**—A catecholamine neurotransmitter that acts to constrict blood vessels, raise blood pressure, and dilate the bronchi of the respiratory system. Caffeine increases the secretion of norepinephrine.

**Reinforcement**—A term that refers to the ability of a drug or substance to produce effects that will make the user want to take it again.

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

**Xanthine**—A class of crystalline nitrogenous compounds that includes caffeine, which is 1,3,7-trimethylxanthine.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
“Anxiety Due to a Physical Disorder or a Substance.” Section 15, Chapter 187. In *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, MD, and

- Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Murray, Michael, ND, and Joseph Pizzorno, ND. *Encyclopedia of Natural Medicine*. Rocklin, CA: Prima Publishing, 1991.
- O'Brien, Charles P. "Drug Addiction and Drug Abuse." Chapter 24 in *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, edited by J. G. Hardman and L. E. Limbird. 9th edition. New York and St. Louis, MO: McGraw-Hill, 1996.
- Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Naturopathic Medicine." Chapter 7, in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon & Schuster, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

- Breslin, P. A. S., C. D. Tharp, and D. R. Reed. "Selective Taste Blindness to Caffeine and Sucrose Octa Acetate: Novel Bimodal Taste Distributions Unrelated to PROP and PTC." *American Journal of Human Genetics* 69 (October 2001): 507.
- "Caffeine Toxicity from Cola Consumption." *Internal Medicine Journal* 31 (2001): 317–318.
- Corrao, G. "Coffee, Caffeine, and the Risk of Liver Cirrhosis." *Annals of Epidemiology* 11 (October 2001): 458–465.
- De Valck, E., and R. Cluydts. "Slow-Release Caffeine as a Countermeasure to Driver Sleepiness Induced by Partial Sleep Deprivation." *Journal of Sleep Research* 10 (September 2001): 203–209.
- Diamond, S., T. K. Balm, and F. G. Freitag. "Ibuprofen Plus Caffeine in the Treatment of Tension-Type Headache." *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics* 68 (2000): 312–319.
- Griffiths, R. R., and A. L. Chausmer. "Caffeine as a Model Drug of Dependence: Recent Developments in Understanding Caffeine Withdrawal, the Caffeine Dependence Syndrome, and Caffeine Negative Reinforcement." *Nihon Shinkei Seishin Yakurigaku Zasshi* 20 (November 2000): 223–231.
- MacFadyen, L., D. Eadie, and T. McGowan. "Community Pharmacists' Experience of Over-the-Counter Medicine Misuse in Scotland." *Journal of Research in Social Health* 121 (September 2001): 185–192.
- Preboth, Monica. "Effect of Caffeine on Exercise Performance." *American Family Physician* 61 (May 2000): 628.
- Rapurl, P. B., J. C. Gallagher, H. K. Kinyaruru, and others. "Caffeine Intake Increases the Rate of Bone Loss in Elderly Women and Interacts with Vitamin D Receptor Genotypes." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 74 (2001): 694–700.
- Rumpler, William, James Seale, Beverly Clevidence, and others. "Oolong Tea Increases Metabolic Rate and Fat Oxidation in Men." *Journal of Nutrition* 131 (November 2001): 2848–2852.
- Sardao, V. A., P. J. Oliveira, and A. J. Moreno. "Caffeine Enhances the Calcium-Dependent Cardiac Mitochondrial Permeability Transition: Relevance for Caffeine Toxicity." *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology* 179 (February 2002): 50–56.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American College of Sports Medicine. P. O. Box 1440, Indianapolis, IN 46206-1440. Telephone: (317) 637-9200.
- American Dietetic Association. Telephone: (800) 877-1600. <[www.eatright.org](http://www.eatright.org)>.
- Center for Science in the Public Interest (CSPI). <[www.cspinet.org](http://www.cspinet.org)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Cannabis and related disorders

### Definition

Cannabis, more commonly called marijuana, refers to the several varieties of *Cannabis sativa*, or Indian hemp plant, that contains the psychoactive drug delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC). Cannabis-related disorders refer to problems associated with the use of substances derived from this plant.

### Description

Cannabis—in the form of marijuana, hashish (a dried resinous material that seeps from cannabis leaves and is more potent than marijuana), or other cannabinoids—is considered the most commonly used illegal substance in the world. Its effects have been known for thousands of years, and were described as early as the fifth century B.C., when the Greek historian Herodotus told of a tribe of nomads who, after inhaling the smoke of roasted hemp seeds, emerged from their tent excited and shouting for joy.

Cannabis is the abbreviation for the Latin name for the hemp plant—*Cannabis sativa*. All parts of the plant contain psychoactive substances, with THC making up the highest percentage. The most potent parts are the flowering tops and the dried, blackish-brown residue that comes from the leaves known as hashish, or "hash."

There are more than 200 slang terms for marijuana, including "pot," "herb," "weed," "Mary Jane," "grass," "tea," and "ganja." It is usually chopped and/or shredded and rolled into a cigarette, or "joint," or placed in a pipe (sometimes called a "bong") and smoked. An alternative method of using marijuana involves adding it to foods and eating it, such as baking it into brownies. It can also be brewed as a tea. Marijuana has appeared in the form of "blunts"—cigarettes emptied of their tobacco content and filled with a combination of marijuana and another drug such as crack cocaine.



**A teenage boy smoking a cannabis cigarette.** (ImageState/Alamy)

Between 1840 and 1900, European and American medical journals published numerous articles on the therapeutic uses of marijuana. It was recommended as an appetite stimulant, muscle relaxant, painkiller, sedative, and anticonvulsant. As late as 1913, Sir William Osler recommended it highly for treatment of migraine. Public opinion changed, however, in the early 1900s, as alternative medications such as aspirin, opiates, and **barbiturates** became available. In 1937, the United States passed the Marijuana Tax Act, which made the drug essentially impossible to obtain for medical purposes.

By the year 2000, the debate over the use of marijuana as a medicine continued. THC is known to successfully treat nausea caused by cancer treatment drugs, stimulate the appetites of persons diagnosed with acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), and possibly assist in the treatment of glaucoma. Its use as a medicinal agent is still, however, highly controversial. Although the states of Arizona and California passed laws in 1996 making it legal for physicians to prescribe marijuana in the form of cigarettes for treatment of the diseases listed above, governmental agencies continue to oppose strongly its use as a medicine, and doctors who do prescribe it may find their licenses at risk.

Cannabis-related disorders reflect the problematic use of cannabis products to varying degrees. These disorders include:

- Cannabis dependence: The compulsive need to use the drug, coupled with problems associated with chronic drug use.
- Cannabis abuse: Periodic use that may cause legal problems, problems at work, home, or school, or danger when driving.

- Cannabis intoxication: The direct effects of acute cannabis use and reactions that accompany it such as feeling “high,” euphoria, sleepiness, lethargy, impairment in short-term memory, stimulated appetite, impaired judgment, distorted sensory perceptions, impaired motor performance, and other symptoms.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Cannabis-related disorders share many of the same root causes with other addictive substances. The initial desire for a “high,” combined with the widely held perception that cannabis use is not dangerous, often leads to experimentation in the teen years.

Recent research challenges the notion that cannabis use is not physically addictive. According to the National Institute of Drug Abuse (NIDA), daily cannabis users experience withdrawal symptoms including irritability, stomach pain, aggression, and **anxiety**. Many frequent cannabis users are believed to continue using in order to avoid these unpleasant symptoms. Long-term use may lead to changes in the **brain** similar to those seen with long-term use of other addictive substances. It is believed that the greater availability, higher potency, and lower price for cannabis in recent years all contribute to the increase in cannabis-related disorders.

Beginning in the 1990s, researchers began to discover that cannabis-like compounds are naturally produced in various parts of the human body. These compounds, called “endocannabinoids,” appear to suppress inflammation and other responses of the immune system. One of these endocannabinoids—anandamide—appears to help regulate the early stages of pregnancy.

### Symptoms

**CANNABIS DEPENDENCE AND ABUSE.** The handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*. This manual states that the central features of cannabis dependence are compulsive use, tolerance of its effects, and withdrawal symptoms. Use may interfere with family, school, and work, and may cause legal problems.

Regular cannabis smokers may show many of the same respiratory symptoms as tobacco smokers. These include daily cough and phlegm, chronic bronchitis, and more frequent chest colds. Continued use can lead to abnormal functioning of the lung tissue, which may be injured or destroyed by the cannabis smoke.

Recent research indicates that smoking marijuana has the potential to cause severe increases in heart rate and blood pressure, particularly if combined with cocaine use. Even with marijuana use alone, however, the heart rate of subjects increased an average of 29 beats per minute when smoking marijuana.

A study of heavy marijuana users has shown that critical skills related to attention, memory, and learning can be impaired, even after use is discontinued for at least 24 hours. Heavy users, compared to light users, made more errors on tasks and had more difficulty sustaining attention and shifting attention when required. They also had more difficulty registering, processing, and using information. These findings suggest that the greater impairment in mental functioning among heavy users is most likely due to an alteration of brain activity directly produced by the marijuana use.

Recent studies have found that babies born to mothers who used marijuana during pregnancy were smaller than those born to nonusing mothers. Smaller babies are more likely to develop health problems. Additionally, nursing mothers who use marijuana pass some of the THC to the baby in their breast milk. Research shows that use of marijuana during the first month of breastfeeding can impair an infant's motor development.

Cannabis abuse is characterized by less frequent use and less severe problems. However, as with cannabis dependence, abuse can interfere with performance at school or work, cause legal problems, and interfere with motor activities such as driving or operating machinery.

**CANNABIS INTOXICATION.** Cannabis intoxication refers to the occurrence of problematic behaviors or psychological changes that develop during, or shortly after, cannabis use. Intoxication usually starts with a "high" feeling followed by euphoria, inappropriate laughter, and feelings of grandiosity. Other symptoms include sedation, lethargy, impaired short-term memory, difficulty with motor tasks, impaired judgment, distorted sensory perceptions, and the feeling that time is passing unusually slowly. Sometimes severe anxiety, feelings of **depression**, or social withdrawal may occur. Along with these symptoms, common signs of cannabis intoxication include reddening of the membranes around the eyes, increased appetite, dry mouth, and increased heart rate.

## Demographics

The NIDA conducts an annual nationwide study of twelfth-, tenth-, and eighth-grade students and young adults. This study is known as the *Monitoring the Future Study*, or *MTF*. Results show that after a decade

of decreased use in the 1980s, marijuana use among students began to rise in the early 1990s. Data show that, between 1998 and 1999, marijuana use continued to increase among twelfth and tenth graders. For twelfth graders, the lifetime rate (use of marijuana at least one or more times) is higher than for any year since 1987. However, these rates remain well below those seen in the late 1970s and early 1980s. Daily marijuana use among students in all three grades also showed a slight increase.

Another method by which the government measures marijuana use is the *Community Epidemiology Work Group*, or *CEWG*. This method examines rates of emergency room admissions related to marijuana use in 20 major metropolitan areas. In 1998, use of marijuana showed an upward trend in most of the areas monitored, with the largest increases occurring in Dallas, Boston, Denver, San Diego, and Atlanta. The highest percentage increase in emergency room visits related to marijuana was among 12- to 17-year-olds.

Treatment data for marijuana abuse increased in six of the metropolitan areas surveyed but remained stable elsewhere. Marijuana treatment admissions were highest in Denver, Miami, New Orleans, and Minneapolis/St. Paul. Half of the admissions in Minneapolis/St. Paul were under the age of 18 years.

Marijuana remains the most commonly used illicit drug in the United States. As with most other illicit drugs, cannabis use disorders appear more often in males and is most common among people between the ages of 18 and 30 years.

An estimated 2.1 million people started using marijuana in 1998. According to data from a study released in the late 1990s called the *National Household Survey on Drug Abuse*, or *NHSDA*, more than 72 million Americans ages 12 years and older (33%) tried marijuana at least once during their lifetime, while almost 18.7 million (8.6%) used marijuana in the previous year. This represents a considerable increase since 1985, when 56.5 million Americans (29.4%) had tried marijuana at least once in their life, and 26.1 million (13.6%) had used marijuana within the past year.

## Diagnosis

**Diagnosis** of cannabis-related disorders is made in a number of ways. Intoxication is easiest to diagnose because of clinically observable signs, including reddened eye membranes, increased appetite, dry mouth, and increased heart rate. It is also diagnosed by the presence of problematic behavioral or psychological changes such as impaired motor coordination, judgment, anxiety, euphoria, and social withdrawal. Occasionally, panic attacks may occur, and there may be impairment of

short-term memory. Lowered immune system resistance, lowered testosterone levels in males, and chromosomal damage may also occur. Psychologically, chronic use of marijuana has been associated with a loss of ambition known as the “amotivational syndrome.”

Cannabis use is often paired with the use of other addictive substances, especially **nicotine**, alcohol, and cocaine. Marijuana may be mixed and smoked with opiates, **phencyclidine** (PCP or angel dust), or hallucinogenic drugs. Individuals who regularly use cannabis often report physical and mental lethargy and an inability to experience pleasure when not intoxicated (known as anhedonia). If taken in sufficiently high dosages, cannabinoids have psychoactive effects similar to hallucinogens such as lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), and individuals using high doses may experience adverse effects that resemble hallucinogen-induced “bad trips.” Paranoid ideation is another possible effect of heavy use, and, occasionally, **hallucinations** and **delusions** occur. Highly intoxicated individuals may feel as if they are outside their body (depersonalization) or as if what they are experiencing isn’t real (derealization). Fatal traffic accidents are more common among individuals testing positive for cannabis use.

Urine tests can usually identify metabolites of cannabinoids. Because cannabinoids are fat soluble, they remain in the body for extended periods. Individuals who have used cannabis may show positive urine tests for as long as two to four weeks after using.

Examination of the nasopharynx and bronchial lining may also show clinical changes due to cannabis use. Marijuana smoke is known to contain even larger amounts of carcinogens than tobacco smoke. Sometimes cannabis use is associated with weight gain.

### Treatments

Treatment options for individuals with cannabis-related disorders are identical to those available for people with alcohol and other **substance abuse** disorders. The goal of treatment is abstinence. Treatment approaches range from in-patient **hospitalization**, drug and alcohol rehabilitation facilities, and various out-patient programs. Twelve-step programs such as Narcotics Anonymous are also treatment options. For heavy users experiencing withdrawal symptoms, treatment with anti-anxiety and/or antidepressant medication may assist in the treatment process.

### Prognosis

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, cannabis dependence and abuse tend to develop over a period of time.

It may, however, develop more rapidly among young people with other emotional problems. Most people who become dependent begin using regularly. Gradually, over time, both frequency and amount increase. With chronic use, there can sometimes be a decrease in or loss of the pleasurable effects of the substance, along with increased feelings of anxiety and/or depression. As with alcohol and nicotine, cannabis use tends to begin early in the course of substance abuse and many people later go on to develop dependence on other illicit substances. Because of this, cannabis has been referred to as a “gateway” drug, although this view remains highly controversial. There is much that remains unknown about the social, psychological, and neurochemical basis of drug use progression, and it is unclear whether marijuana use actually causes individuals to go on to use other illicit substances.

One long-term effects of chronic use has been termed the “amotivational syndrome.” This refers to the observations that many heavy, chronic users seem unambitious in relation to school and/or career.

### Prevention

Many drug education programs focus strongly on discouraging marijuana experimentation among young teenagers. Recent research reported by the NIDA indicates that high-sensation-seekers—that is, individuals who seek out new, emotionally intense experiences and are willing to take risks to obtain these experiences—are at greater risk for using marijuana and other drugs, and for using them at an earlier age. As a result, the NIDA developed a series of public service announcements (PSAs) for national television. These PSAs were dramatic and attention getting, and were aired during programs that would appeal to high sensation-seekers, such as action-oriented television shows. These PSAs were aired in a limited television area and the results monitored. Marijuana use declined substantially among teens during the PSA campaigns, and long-term effects were shown for several months afterwards. In one county, marijuana use decreased by 38%, and in another, by 26.7%.

Drug education programs such as the “D.A.R.E.” (Drug Awareness and Resistance Education) programs target fifth graders. These and other antidrug programs focus on peer pressure resistance and the use of older teens who oppose drug use as models of a drug-free lifestyle. These programs show mixed results.

## KEY TERMS

- Amotivational syndrome**—Loss of ambition associated with chronic cannabis (marijuana) use.
- Anandamide**—One type of endocannabinoid that appears to help regulate early pregnancy.
- Cannabis**—The collective name for several varieties of Indian hemp plant. Also known as marijuana.
- Cannabis abuse**—Periodic use of cannabis, less serious than dependence, but still capable of causing problems for the user.
- Cannabis dependence**—The compulsive need to use cannabis, leading to problems.
- Cannabis intoxication**—The direct effects of acute cannabis use and the reactions that accompany those effects.
- Delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC)**—The primary active ingredient in marijuana.
- Endocannabinoids**—Cannabis-like compounds produced naturally in the human body.
- Hashish**—The dark, blackish resinous material that exudes from the leaves of the Indian hemp plant.
- Marijuana**—The dried and shredded or chopped leaves of the Indian hemp plant.

*See also* Addiction; Disease concept of chemical dependency; Dual diagnosis; Nicotine and related disorders; Opioids and related disorders; Relapse and relapse prevention; Self-help groups; Substance abuse and related disorders; Support groups.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hurley, Jennifer A., ed. *Addiction: Opposing Viewpoints*. San Diego, CA: Greenhaven Press, 2000.
- Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. *Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences/Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.
- Wekesser, Carol, ed. *Chemical Dependency: Opposing Viewpoints*. San Diego, CA: Greenhaven Press, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- NIDA Notes* Volume 14, Number 4, November, 1999.
- NIDA Notes* Volume 15, Number 1, March 2000.
- NIDA Notes* Volume 16, Number 4, October 2001.
- NIDA Notes* volume 15, Number 3, August 2000.
- NIDA Infifax*, "Marijuana," 13551.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Council for Drug Education. 136 E. 64th St., NY, NY 10021.
- Narcotics Anonymous. PO box 9999, Van Nuys, CA 91409. Telephone: (818) 780-3951.
- National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). US Department of Health and Human Services, 5600 Fishers Ln., Rockville, MD 20857. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>
- National Organization for the Reform of Marijuana Laws (NORML). 2001 S St. NW, Suite 640, Washington, DC 20009. Telephone: (202) 483-5500.

Barbara S. Sternberg, Ph.D.

## Capgras syndrome

### Definition

Capgras syndrome (CS) is a relatively rare delusion of negative identification in which the patient believes that an individual or individuals well-known to him or her is an almost identical physiological double.

### Description

Named for the French **psychiatrist** Jean Capgras in 1923, CS is also known as the “illusion of doubles” and the “illusion of false recognition.” Although the object of the delusion is typically a person with whom the patient is either particularly familiar or has an emotional tie, cases have been reported of the delusion being extended to pets and even inanimate objects, such as letters or a teacup. The term “syndrome”—as applied to CS is misleading; CS is more accurately described as a symptom associated with multiple physiological and psychological disorders.

### Demographics

Reported cases of CS have focused on adults, although a few cases have been reported with younger adults. It was once thought that CS is a disorder occurring only in women. However, cases have also been reported in men.

CS is related to numerous underlying causes including central nervous system disorders, **dementia**, and **psychosis**. The demographics of CS vary with the underlying cause.

### Causes and Symptoms

The literature is divided as to whether CS is psychological or physiological in nature. Historically, CS

was thought to be a purely psychological condition. More recently, however, the focus has shifted, and CS is now considered by many clinicians to be a disorder of the central nervous system. It is estimated that between 21% and 40% of CS cases stem from physiological disorders including dementia, head trauma, epilepsy, and cerebrovascular disease. Neuroimaging data suggest a link between CS and abnormalities of the right hemisphere of the **brain**. In fact, the literature supports the conclusion that CS can be a symptom of virtually any central nervous system disorder.

CS has been observed in association with various systemic illnesses including vitamin B-12 deficiency, chicken encephalitis, and diseases of the thyroid, parathyroid, and liver. CS has also been found associated with the use of various drugs, including morphine and **diazepam** (Valium). CS has been observed following transient physiological disturbances such as pneumocystis pneumonia in an HIV-positive patient, migraine headache, overdose of a bronchial dilator containing **adrenaline** and adropinemethonitrate, and interictal psychosis of epilepsy.

## Diagnosis

Most clinicians regard CS as a symptom associated with numerous underlying causes rather than a syndrome in the classical sense of the term. **Diagnosis** should be based on psychological and personality testing as well as neuroradiological testing to determine the underlying cause rather than relying purely on behavioral descriptions.

CS can occur at any time during a psychosis and is not currently considered to be an essential element of any psychological disorder. It is impossible to predict the occurrence of CS based on the course of the overall psychopathology.

## Treatments

CS is typically treated with a combination of anti-psychotic medication and supportive psychological therapy in which stronger areas of mental and behavioral processes are used to overcome weaker areas of functioning. Patients presenting with CS stemming from psychosis have been found to improve on **pimozide** even when nonresponsive to **haloperidol**. CS stemming from physiological causes is best treated by treating the underlying disorder.

## Prognosis

The symptoms of CS have been found in most, but not all, cases to clear shortly after the remission of the psychosis. In the case of **depression**, however, the

## KEY TERMS

**Central nervous system**—The brain and spinal cord.

**Delusion**—A false idea held despite all evidence to the contrary.

**Dementia**—Deterioration of intellect, reasoning ability, memory, and will resulting from organic brain disease.

**Interictal**—Occurring between seizures.

**Psychosis**—A mental illness that markedly interferes with the patient's ability to deal with the demands of everyday life. Psychosis is characterized by loss of contact with reality, often accompanied by delusions and hallucinations.

symptoms of CS persist longer than those of other syndromes of doubles (syndrome of Frégo, syndrome of intermetamorphosis, syndrome of subjective doubles). The symptoms of CS invariably recur when there is a **relapse** of the basic psychotic condition with which they were associated.

## Prevention

CS is an uncommon occurrence associated with a range of disorders both psychological and physiological in nature. Prevention of CS is actually a question of preventing the underlying disorder resulting in CS. There are no investigations under way concerning the prevention of CS.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Fewtrell, David, and Kieron O'Connor. "Capgras syndrome and delusions of misidentification." in *Clinical Phenomenology and Cognitive Psychology*. New York: Routledge, 1995.

### PERIODICALS

Doran, John M. "The Capgras Syndrome: Neurological/ Neuropsychological Perspectives." *Neuropsychology* 4, no. 1 (January 1990): 29-42.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

## Carbamazepine

### Definition

Carbamazepine is an anticonvulsant that is structurally related to tricyclic **antidepressants** such as **amitriptyline** and **imipramine**. In the United States,

carbamazepine is sold under the trade names Tegretol and Carbatrol.

## Purpose

Carbamazepine is effective in the treatment of psychomotor and grand mal **seizures** and a type of facial pain called trigeminal neuralgia and, in combination with other drugs, for psychiatric disorders such as mania and extreme aggression. Carbamazepine is also occasionally used to control pain in persons with cancer.

## Description

Carbamazepine was first marketed as an antiseizure medication and as a first-line treatment for trigeminal neuralgia. Because it was later noted to be effective in patients with certain psychiatric disorders, psychiatrists began combining it with other drugs such as lithium and major tranquilizers in severe cases of bipolar disease and aggressive behavior that could not be managed with single-drug therapy.

Carbamazepine is available in 100-mg chewable tablets, 200-mg capsules, and a suspension at 100 mg per 5 ml of liquid.

## Recommended dosage

When used to treat seizure disorders or psychiatric disease, the recommended initial dosage of carbamazepine is 200 mg two times each day. If needed, the daily dosage may be increased by 200 mg once each week. Total daily dosages should not exceed 1,000 mg in children between the ages of 12 and 15 years. Total daily dosages for adults should not exceed 1,200 mg. Carbamazepine should be taken with meals.

## Precautions

Carbamazepine should be used with caution in persons who also experience other types of seizure disorders such as atypical absence seizures. Among such individuals, carbamazepine usage has been associated with an increased risk of initiating, rather than controlling, generalized convulsions.

Carbamazepine should never be discontinued abruptly unless another treatment for seizures is initiated at the same time. If this does not happen, acute withdrawal of carbamazepine may result in seizures.

Patients should be alert for signs and symptoms of bone marrow toxicity such as fever, sore throat, infection, mouth sores, easy bruising, or bleeding which occurs just under the skin.

Because carbamazepine may affect mental alertness, especially early in therapy, patients receiving this drug should be cautioned about operating dangerous machinery or driving a car until the drug's effects can be fully evaluated.

## Side effects

The most commonly reported adverse reactions to carbamazepine include dizziness, drowsiness, unsteadiness, nausea, and vomiting. These are more common when therapy is just beginning.

Carbamazepine has been reported to cause aplastic anemia. This is a form of anemia that generally does not respond to treatment. The bone marrow of persons with aplastic anemia does not produce adequate amounts of red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets. Blood counts should be monitored for individuals using this drug. Some people with previously diagnosed **depression** of the bone marrow should not take carbamazepine.

Carbamazepine may cause birth defects and should be avoided by women who are pregnant. An effective contraceptive method should be used while taking carbamazepine. It is important to note that this medication may decrease the effectiveness of oral contraceptives. The drug can cross into breast milk and should be avoided by women who are breast-feeding. Carbamazepine may also cause a skin rash or sensitivity to the sun.

## Interactions

Blood levels of carbamazepine may be reduced when it is used in combination with other drugs such as phenobarbitol, phenytoin or primidone. This means that inadequate amounts of carbamazepine are available to the body, limiting the ability of the drug to control seizure activity or treat psychiatric disease. Carbamazepine also causes reductions in the blood levels of the following drugs when they are used simultaneously: phenytoin, warfarin, doxycycline, **haloperidol**, **valproic acid**, and theophylline.

The simultaneous administration of carbamazepine with erythromycin, cimetidine, propoxyphene, isoniacid, **fluoxetine** and calcium channel blockers such as nifedipine and verapamil may increase the blood level of carbamazepine to a toxic range.

The simultaneous use of carbamazepine and oral contraceptives may increase the possibility that the oral contraceptive will not be effective in preventing pregnancy. Some physicians recommend that a different

## KEY TERMS

**Absence seizure**—An epileptic seizure characterized by a sudden, momentary loss of consciousness, occasionally accompanied by some minor, jerky movements in the neck or upper arms, a twitching of the face, or a loss of muscle tone.

**Aplastic anemia**—A form of anemia in which the bone marrow does not produce adequate amounts of peripheral blood components such as red cells, white cells, and platelets.

**Bipolar disorder**—A mental disorder characterized by dramatic and sometimes rapid mood swings, resulting in both manic and depressive episodes; formerly called manic-depressive disorder.

**Convulsion**—A violent, involuntary contraction or series of contractions of muscles.

**Grand mal seizure**—A seizure characterized by a sudden loss of consciousness that is immediately followed by generalized convulsions. Such a seizure is usually preceded by a sensory experience, called an aura, which provides a warning as to an impending convulsion.

**Psychomotor seizure**—A seizure characterized by electrical activity that is characterized by variable degrees of loss of consciousness and often accompanied by bizarre behavior.

method of contraception be used while carbamazepine is being taken.

People taking carbamazepine should not drink grapefruit juice. Grapefruit juice slows the breakdown of carbamazepine, increasing the concentration of carbamazepine in the bloodstream.

Due to the potential of many interactions with other drugs, individuals should consult with a physician or pharmacist prior to starting any new medications either bought over the counter or initiated by another physician.

## Resources

### BOOKS

El-Mallakh, Rif S. "Lithium and Antiepileptic Drugs in Bipolar Depression." *Bipolar Depression: A Comprehensive Guide*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2006: 147–66.

Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*, 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.

Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

Bowden, Charles L., and Nancy U. Karren. "Anticonvulsants in Bipolar Disorder." *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry* 40.5 (May 2006): 386–93.

Cepeda, M. Soledad, and John T. Farrar. "Economic Evaluation of Oral Treatments for Neuropathic Pain." *Journal of Pain* 7.2 (Feb. 2006): 119–28.

DeBattista, Charles, and Alan F. Schatzberg. "Psychotropic Dosing and Monitoring Guidelines." *Primary Psychiatry* 13.6 (June 2006): 61–81.

El-Mallakh, Rif, Richard H. Weisler, Mark H. Townsend, and Lawrence D. Ginsberg. "Bipolar II Disorder: Current and Future Treatment Options." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.4 (Oct.–Dec. 2006): 259–66.

Gamble, C., P. R. Williamson, D. W. Chadwick, and A. G. Marson. "A Meta-Analysis of Individual Patient Responses to Lamotrigine or Carbamazepine Monotherapy." *Neurology* 66.9 (May 2006): 1310–17.

Gayatri, N. A., and, J. H. Livingston. "Aggravation of Epilepsy by Anti-Epileptic Drugs." *Developmental Medicine and Child Neurology* 48.5 (May 2006): 394–98.

Ginsberg, Lawrence D. "Carbamazepine Extended-Release Capsules Use in Bipolar Disorder: Efficacy and Safety in Adult Patients." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18 (Supplement 1) (May 2006): 9–14.

Ginsberg, Lawrence D. "Outcomes and Length of Treatment with Carbamazepine Extended-Release Capsules in Bipolar Disorder." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18 (Supplement 1) (May 2006): 15–18.

Ginsberg, Lawrence D. "Predictors of Response to Carbamazepine Extended-Release Capsules Treatment in Bipolar Disorder." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18 (Supplement 1) (May 2006): 23–26.

Ginsberg, Lawrence D. "Safety of Carbamazepine Extended-Release Capsules in Bipolar Disorder Polypharmacy." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18 (Supplement 1) (May 2006): 19–22.

Nasrallah, Henry A., Terence A. Ketter, and Amir H. Kalali. "Carbamazepine and Valproate for The Treatment of Bipolar Disorder: A Review of the Literature." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 95.1–3 (Oct. 2006): 69–78.

Zhang, Zhang-Jin, and others. "Adjunctive Herbal Medicine with Carbamazepine for Bipolar Disorders: A Double-Blind, Randomized, Placebo-Controlled Study." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (2007): 360–69.

### OTHER

American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, P.O. Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Fax: (717) 558-7845. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.

American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981. Fax: (703) 836-5223.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. Web site: <<http://www.aspnet.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

CASE see **Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly**

## Case management

### Definition

Case management is a system for managing and delivering health care with the goal of improving the quality and continuity of care and decreasing health care costs. Case management includes coordinating all necessary medical and mental health care as well as any associated support services.

### Purpose

Case management tries to enhance access to care and improve the continuity and efficiency of services. Depending on the specific setting and locale, case managers are responsible for a variety of tasks, ranging from linking clients to services to actually providing intensive clinical or rehabilitative services themselves. Other core functions include outreach to engage clients in services, assessing individual needs, arranging requisite support services (such as housing, benefit programs, job training), monitoring medication and use of services, and advocating for client rights and entitlements.

Case management is not a time-limited service, but is intended to be ongoing, providing clients whatever they need whenever they need it, for as long as necessary.

### Historical background

Over the past 50 years, there have been fundamental changes in the system of mental health care in America. In the 1950s, mental health care for people with severe and persistent mental illnesses (like **schizophrenia**, **bipolar disorder**, severe **depression**, and **schizoaffective disorder**) was provided almost exclusively by large

public mental hospitals. Created as part of a reform movement, these state hospitals provided a wide range of basic life supports in addition to mental health treatment, including housing, meals, clothing, and laundry services, and varying degrees of social and **vocational rehabilitation**.

During the latter half of the same decade, the introduction of neuroleptic medication provided symptomatic management of seriously disabling psychoses. This breakthrough, and other subsequent reforms in mental health policy (including the introduction of Medicare and Medicaid in 1965 and the Supplemental Security Income [SSI] program in 1974), provided incentives for policy makers to discharge patients to the community and transfer state mental health expenditures to the federal government.

These advances—coupled with new procedural safeguards for involuntary patients, court decisions establishing the right to treatment in the least restrictive setting, and changed philosophies of care—led to widespread **deinstitutionalization**. In 1955, there were 559,000 people in state hospitals; by 1980, that number had dropped to 132,000. According to the most recent data from the U.S. Center for Mental Health Services, although the number of mental health organizations providing 24-hour services (hospital inpatient and residential treatment) more than doubled in the United States from 1970 to 1998, the number of psychiatric beds provided by these organizations decreased by half.

As a result of deinstitutionalization policies, the number of patients discharged from hospitals has risen, and the average length of stay for newly admitted patients has decreased. An increasing number of patients are never admitted at all, but are diverted to a more complex and decentralized system of community-based care. Case management was designed to remedy the confusion created by multiple care providers in different settings, and to assure accessibility, continuity of care, and accountability for individuals with long-term disabling mental illnesses.

### Models of case management

The two models of case management mentioned most often in the mental health literature are assertive community treatment (ACT) and intensive case management. A third model, clinical case management, refers to a program where the case manager assigned to a client also functions as their primary therapist.

#### *Assertive community treatment*

The ACT model originated in an inpatient research unit at Mendota State Hospital in Madison,

Wisconsin, in the late 1960s. The program's architects, Arnold Marx, MD, Leonard Stein, MD, and Mary Ann Test, PhD, sought to create a "hospital without walls." In this model, teams of 10–12 professionals—including case managers, a **psychiatrist**, nurses, **social workers**, and vocational specialists—are assigned ongoing responsibility 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year, for a caseload of approximately 10 clients with severe and persistent mental illnesses.

ACT uses multidisciplinary teams with low client-to-staff ratios, emphasizes assertive outreach, provides in-vivo services (in the client's own setting), emphasizes assisting clients in managing their illness, assists with activities of daily living (ADL) skills, and emphasizes relationship building, emotional support, **crisis intervention** (as necessary), and an orientation, whenever possible, toward providing clients with services rather than linking them to other providers.

Compared to other psychosocial interventions the program has a remarkably strong evidence base. Twenty-five randomized controlled **clinical trials** have demonstrated that these programs reduce **hospitalization**, **homelessness**, and inappropriate hospitalization; increase housing stability; control psychiatric symptoms; and improve quality of life, especially among individuals who are high users of mental health services. The ACT model has been implemented in 33 states.

### Intensive case management

Intensive case management practices are typically targeted to individuals with the greatest service needs, including individuals with a history of multiple hospitalizations, people dually diagnosed with **substance abuse** problems, individuals with mental illness who have been involved with the criminal justice system, and individuals who are both homeless and severely mentally ill.

In 2000, Richard Schaeidle and Irwin Epstein conducted a survey of 22 experts and found that although intensive case management shares many critical ingredients with ACT programs, its elements are not as clearly articulated. Another distinction between intensive case management and ACT appears to be that the latter relies more heavily on a team versus individual approach. In addition, intensive case managers are more likely to "broker" treatment and rehabilitation services rather than provide them directly. Finally, intensive case management programs are more likely to focus on client strengths, empowering clients to fully participate in all treatment decisions.

### Clinical case management

A meta-analytic study comparing ACT and clinical case management found that although the generic approach resulted in increased hospital admissions, it significantly decreased the length of stay. This suggests that the overall impact of clinical case management is positive. Consistent with prior research, the study concluded that both ACT and high-quality clinical case management should be essential features of any mental health service system. One of the greatest tragedies of deinstitutionalization has been that most families often become *de facto* case managers for their family members, without any training or support.

### Case management for children and adolescents

Case management is also used to coordinate care for children with serious emotional disturbances—diagnosed mental health problems that substantially disrupt a child's ability to function socially, academically, and emotionally. Although not a formal **diagnosis** in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)*, the handbook published by the American Psychiatric Association and used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders, the term "serious emotional disturbance" is commonly used by states and the federal government to identify children with the greatest service needs. Although the limited research on case management for children and youth with serious emotional disturbances has been primarily focused on service use rather than clinical outcomes, there is growing evidence that case management is an effective **intervention** for this population.

Case management models used for children vary considerably. One model, called "wraparound," helps families develop a plan to address the child's individual needs across multiple life domains (home and school, for example). Research on the effectiveness of this model is still in an early stage. Another model, known as the children and youth intensive case management or expanded broker model, had been evaluated in two controlled studies. Findings suggest that this broker/advocacy model results in behavioral improvements and fewer days in hospital settings.

### Conclusion

In recent years, many case management programs have expanded their teams to successfully utilize consumers as peer counselors and family members as outreach workers. The programs have also been adapted to serve older individuals with severe and persistent mental illnesses. While the ACT model offers the

## KEY TERMS

**Medicaid**—A program jointly funded by state and federal governments that reimburses hospitals and physicians for the care of individuals who cannot pay for their own medical expenses. These individuals may be in low-income households or may have chronic disabilities.

**Medicare**—A federally funded health insurance program for individuals aged 65 and older, and certain categories of younger people with disabilities.

**Meta-analysis**—The statistical analysis of a large collection of analyses from individual studies for the purpose of integrating the findings.

**Neuroleptic**—Another name for the older antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**Psychosis (plural: psychoses)**—A severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself.

**Supplemental Security Income**—A federal program that provides cash to meet basic needs for food, shelter, and clothing for aged, blind, and disabled individuals who have little or no income.

strongest evidential base for its effectiveness, research into the clinical and service system outcomes of this and other models of case management is ongoing.

The effectiveness of any case management program depends upon the availability of high-quality treatment and support services in a given community, the structure and coordination of the service system, and on the ability of an individual or family to pay for care either through private insurance or (more often) through public benefit and entitlement programs. With recent policy directives from the Centers for Medicaid and Medicare Services (formerly the Health Care Financing Administration or HCFA) promoting the use of Medicaid funds for ACT, more states are funding case management through Medicaid. Although some policy makers express concern about costs, the savings realized from keeping patients out of jails, hospitals, and emergency rooms usually offsets the expense of these programs. Compared to traditional outpatient programs, case management also offers a level of care that is far more comprehensive and humane for a disabled population.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Cesta, Toni G., Hussein A. Tahan, and Lois F. Fink. *The Case Manager's Survival Guide: Winning Strategies for Clinical Practice*. 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby Publishing, 2002.

Mullahy, Catherine. *The Case Manager's Handbook*. 3rd ed. Boston: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 2004.

Nathan, Peter E., and Jack M. Gorman, eds. *A Guide to Treatments that Work*. 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

Roessler, Richard T., and Stanford E. Rubin, eds. *Case Management and Rehabilitation Counseling: Procedures and Techniques*. 4th ed. Austin, TX: PRO-ED, 2006.

Summers, Nancy. *Fundamentals of Case Management Practice: Skills for the Human Services*. 2nd ed. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth Publishing, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

Angell, Beth, and Colleen Mahoney. "Reconceptualizing the Case Management Relationship in Intensive Treatment: A Study of Staff Perceptions and Experiences." *Administration and Policy in Mental Health and Mental Health Services Research* 34.2 (Mar. 2007): 172–88.

Buck, Page Walker, and Leslie B. Alexander. "Neglected Voices: Consumers with Serious Mental Illness Speak About Intensive Case Management." *Administration and Policy in Mental Health and Mental Health Services Research* 33.4 (July 2006): 470–81.

Coviello, Donna M., and others. "The Effectiveness of Outreach Case Management in Re-Enrolling Discharged Methadone Patients." *Drug and Alcohol Dependence* 85.1 (Oct. 2006): 56–65.

Hsieh, Chang-Ming. "Using Client Satisfaction to Improve Case Management Services for the Elderly." *Research on Social Work Practice* 16.6 (Nov. 2006): 605–12.

King, Robert. "Intensive Case Management: A Critical Re-Appraisal of the Scientific Evidence for Effectiveness." *Administration and Policy in Mental Health and Mental Health Services Research* 33.5 (Sept. 2006): 529–35.

Rosenthal, David A., and others. "A Survey of Current Disability Management Practice: Emerging Trends and Implications for Certification." *Rehabilitation Counseling Bulletin* 50.2 (Winter 2007): 76–86.

Sells, Dave, and others. "The Treatment Relationship in Peer-Based and Regular Case Management for Clients With Severe Mental Illness." *Psychiatric Services* 57.8 (Aug. 2006): 1179–84.

### OTHER

PACT Across America. National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. "Assertive Community Treatment (ACT)" (accessed April 7, 2002). <<http://www.nami.org/about/pact.htm>>.

Irene S. Levine, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

CAT see **Children's Apperception Test**

CAT scan see **Computed tomography**

Catapres see **Clonidine**

## Catatonia

### Definition

Catatonia is a disturbance of motor behavior that can have either a psychological or neurological cause. Its most well-known form involves a rigid, immobile position that is held by a person for a considerable length of time—often days, weeks, or longer. It can also refer to agitated, purposeless motor activity that is not stimulated by something in the environment. A less extreme form of catatonia involves very slowed motor activity. Often, the physical posture of a catatonic individual is unusual and/or inappropriate, and the individual may hold a posture if placed in it by someone else. According to the handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, the 4th edition, text revision, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*, some 5–9% of all psychiatric inpatients show some catatonic symptoms. Of these, 25–50% are associated with mood disorders, 10–15% are associated with **schizophrenia**, and the remainder are associated with other mental disorders.

### Description

Catatonia is described in the *DSM-IV-TR*, as having what may seem like contradictory symptoms. It can be characterized by immobility, a rigid positioning of the body held for a considerable length of time. Patients diagnosed with a catatonic disorder may maintain their body position for hours, days, weeks or even months at a time. However, it also can manifest as excessive movement, such as frantic running up and down a flight of stairs. A person in a semi-immobile catatonic state may allow a postural change and then “freeze” in the new posture, or may resist attempts at change. There may be a complete lack of verbalization, or echolalia (repeating or echoing heard phrases or sentences). This apparent paradoxical presentation of symptoms may have its root in the fact that catatonia has a variety of causes. In fact, some experts argue that catatonia, rather than being a discrete and describable classification, may instead be a collection of various illnesses without common specificities. It has been associated with a laundry list of disorders, including psychotic disorders, **depressive disorders**, dementias, and reactive disorders. It is, however, currently classified into a handful of types in the *DSM-IV-TR*.

### Types of catatonia

**CATATONIC SCHIZOPHRENIA.** As with all types of schizophrenia, the catatonic type involves a marked

### KEY TERMS

**Catatonia**—Disturbance of motor behavior with either extreme stupor or random, purposeless activity.

**Catatonic schizophrenia**—A subtype of a severe mental disorder that affects thinking, feeling and behavior, and that is also characterized by catatonic behaviors.

**Echolalia**—Meaningless repetition of words or phrases spoken by another.

**Echopraxia**—Imitation of another person’s physical movements in a repetitious or senseless manner.

**Waxy flexibility**—A condition in which a person can be molded into a strange position and hold that position for a long period of time.

disturbance in all spheres of life. The individual shows disturbances in thinking, feeling, and behavior. A patient may be unable to maintain intimate relationships or to train for and sustain employment.

The catatonic type of schizophrenia is characterized by severe psychomotor disturbance. Individuals with this disorder show extreme immobility. They may stay in the same position for hours, days, weeks, or longer. The position they assume may be unusual and appear uncomfortable to the observer. If another person moves part of the catatonic individual’s body, such as a limb, he or she may maintain the position into which they are placed, a condition known as “waxy flexibility.” Sometimes catatonia presents itself as excessive motor activity, but the activity seems purposeless, and does not appear to fit with what is happening in the environment. In its most severe forms, whether stupor or agitation, the individual may need close supervision to keep from injuring him- or herself, or others.

**DEPRESSION WITH CATATONIC FEATURES.** Individuals who are severely depressed may show disturbances of motor behavior that are similar to that of catatonic schizophrenics, as previously described. They may be essentially immobile, or exhibit excessive but random-seeming motor activity. Extreme negativism, elective mutism (choosing not to speak), peculiar movements, mimicking words or phrases (known as “echolalia”) or mimicking movements (known as “echopraxia”) may also be part of the picture. Again, in its most extreme forms, catatonic stupor (not moving for hours, days, weeks, or longer), and catatonic activity (random-seeming activity) may necessitate supervision so that the individual does not hurt him- or

herself, or others. Catatonic behaviors may also be seen in persons with other mood disorders, such as manic or mixed-mood states; these are also known as bipolar I and bipolar II disorders.

**CATATONIC DISORDER DUE TO GENERAL MEDICAL CONDITION.** Individuals with catatonia due to a medical condition may show symptoms similar to persons with catatonic schizophrenia and catatonic depression. However, the cause is believed to be physiological. Certain neurologic diseases, such as encephalitis, may cause catatonic symptoms that can be either temporary or lasting.

*See also* Affect; Bipolar disorders; Catatonic disorder; Hypomanic episode; Major depressive disorder; Manic episode; Mood disorders; Schizophrenia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Kaplan, Harold I., MD, and Benjamin J. Sadock, MD. *Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences/Clinical Psychiatry*, 8th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

### PERIODICALS

- Penland, Heath R., Natalie Weder, and Rajesh R. Tampi. "The Catatonic Dilemma Expanded." *Annals of General Psychiatry* 5 (2006): 14. An open-access publication available at: <<http://www.annals-general-psychiatry.com/content/5/1/14>>.

Barbara Sternberg, PhD  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Catatonic disorders

### Definition

Catatonic disorders are a group of symptoms characterized by disturbances in motor (muscular movement) behavior that may have either a psychological or a physiological basis. The condition itself is called **catatonia**.

Catatonic symptoms were first described by the **psychiatrist** Karl Ludwig Kahlbaum in 1874. Kahlbaum described catatonia as a disorder characterized by unusual motor symptoms. His description of individuals with catatonic behaviors remains accurate to this day. Kahlbaum carefully documented the symp-



**A patient with catatonic schizophrenia.** (Photo Researchers)

toms and the course of the illness, providing a natural history of this unusual disorder.

### Description

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*) describes catatonia as having what may seem like contradictory symptoms. It can be characterized by immobility, a rigid positioning of the body held for a considerable length of time. Patients diagnosed with a catatonic disorder may maintain their body position for hours, days, weeks, or even months at a time. However, catatonia also can manifest as excessive movement, such as frantic running up and down a flight of stairs. People in semi-immobile catatonic states may allow a postural change and then "freeze" in the new posture, or may resist attempts at change. They may display a complete lack of verbalization, or echolalia (repeating or echoing heard phrases or sentences). This apparent paradoxical presentation of symptoms may have its root in the fact that catatonia has a variety of causes. In fact, some experts argue that, rather than being a discrete and describable classification, catatonia may instead be a collection of various illnesses without common

specificities. It has been associated with a laundry list of disorders, including psychotic disorders, **depressive disorders**, dementias, and reactive disorders. It is, however, currently classified into a handful of types in the *DSM-IV-TR*.

## Demographics

Rates of catatonia are extremely variable and have generally been recorded based on the accompanying co-morbidity or underlying cause. For example, the range of prevalence of catatonic **schizophrenia** is 7% to 17%. Studies also seem to suggest that diagnoses of catatonic schizophrenia has decreased dramatically over time. No one is sure what underlies this apparent decrease, although some explanations include changes in the definition of catatonia, improvement in approaches to care, and simple underdiagnosis. In patients with affective disorders (disorders related to the emotion or mood displayed to others), symptoms of catatonia occur in 13% to 31%, with higher prevalence among people with **bipolar disorder**.

### DSM-IV types of catatonic disorder

**CATATONIC SCHIZOPHRENIA.** A characteristic of disorders now classified under the schizophrenia umbrella is severe disturbance in motor behavior. Individuals with catatonic schizophrenia often show extreme immobility. They may stay in the same position for hours, days, weeks, or longer. The position they assume may be unusual and appear uncomfortable to the observer; for example, the person with catatonic schizophrenia may stand on one leg like a stork, or hold one arm outstretched for a long time. If an observer moves a hand or limb of the catatonic person's body, he or she may maintain the new position. This condition is known as waxy flexibility. In other situations, a person with catatonic schizophrenia may be extremely active, but the activity appears bizarre, purposeless, and unconnected to the situation or surroundings. Catatonic stupor is characterized by slowed motor activity, often to the point of being motionless and appearing unaware of surroundings. Patients may exhibit negativism, which means that they resist all attempts to be moved, or all instructions or requests to move, without any apparent motivation.

**DEPRESSION WITH CATATONIC FEATURES.** People who are severely depressed may show disturbances of motor behavior resembling those of patients diagnosed with catatonic schizophrenia. These people with **depression** may remain virtually motionless, or move around in an extremely vigorous but apparently random fashion. Other parts of the symptomatic picture may include extreme negativism, elective mutism (choosing not to speak), peculiar movements, and echolalia or echopraxia

(imitating another person's movements). These behaviors may require caregivers to supervise patients to ensure they do not harm themselves or others.

**MOOD DISORDERS AND CATATONIA.** Catatonic behaviors may also occur in people with other mood disorders. People experiencing manic or mixed mood states (a simultaneous combination of manic and depressive symptoms) may at times exhibit either the immobility or agitated random activity seen in catatonia. A severely depressed person may experience intense emotional pain from simply moving a finger. Even getting up out of a chair can be a painful chore that may take hours for an individual with severe depression. As the depression begins to lift, the catatonic symptoms diminish.

**CATATONIC DISORDER DUE TO A GENERAL MEDICAL CONDITION.** People with catatonic disorder due to a medical condition show symptoms similar to those of catatonic schizophrenia and catatonic depression, except that the cause is believed to be related to an underlying medical condition. Neurological diseases such as encephalitis may cause catatonic symptoms that can be temporary or lasting. Overall, at least 35 distinct medical and neurological illnesses have been associated with catatonia; in addition to encephalitis as a common causative agent, others include structural damage to the central nervous system, metabolic disturbances, **seizures**, and exposure to some drugs.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Although the initiating factors of catatonia can vary greatly, research has identified common underlying mechanisms in some cases. For example, there may be imbalances or problems in regulating signaling among nerves in the central nervous system, involving **neurotransmitters** (nerve signaling molecules) like **dopamine** and serotonin. In addition, some brain **imaging studies** have found an enlarged cerebral cortex and reduced cerebellum in some people with catatonia, although this is not a consistent finding. People who have emerged from catatonic states report having had intense emotions, including uncontrollable **anxiety** and literally paralyzing fear. Others also report having experienced depression, euphoria, or aggression while in the catatonic state.

### Symptoms

**CATATONIC SCHIZOPHRENIA.** Catatonic schizophrenia manifests with prominent motor symptoms and abnormalities. These symptoms, as given in the *DSM-IV-TR*, include:

- catalepsy, or motionlessness maintained over a long period of time
- catatonic excitement, marked by agitation and seemingly pointless movement
- catatonic stupor, with markedly slowed motor activity, often to the point of immobility and seeming unawareness of the environment
- catatonic rigidity, in which a rigid position is assumed and held against all outside efforts to change it
- catatonic posturing, in which a bizarre or inappropriate posture is assumed and maintained over a long period of time
- waxy flexibility, in which a limb or other body part of a catatonic person can be moved into another position that is then maintained. The body part feels to an observer as if it were made of wax.
- akinesia, or absence of physical movement

**DEPRESSION WITH CATATONIC FEATURES.** Within the category of mood disorders, catatonic symptoms are most commonly associated with bipolar I disorder. Bipolar I disorder is a mood disorder involving periods of mania interspersed with depressive episodes. Symptoms of catatonic excitement, such as random activity unrelated to the environment or repetition of words, phrases, and movements may occur during manic phases. Catatonic immobility may appear during the most severe phase of the depressive cycle. The actual catatonic symptoms are indistinguishable from those seen in catatonic schizophrenia. It is also possible for catatonic symptoms to occur in conjunction with other mood disorders, including bipolar II disorder (involving a milder form of mania called **hypomania**), mixed disorders (involving simultaneous mania and depression), and major depressive disorders.

**CATATONIC DISORDER DUE TO GENERAL MEDICAL CONDITION.** Symptoms of catatonic disorder caused by medical conditions are indistinguishable from those that occur in schizophrenia and mood disorders. Unlike persons with schizophrenia, however, those with catatonic symptoms due to a medical condition demonstrate greater insight and awareness into their illness and symptoms. They have periods of clear thinking, and their **affect** (emotional response) is generally appropriate to the circumstances. Neither of these conditions is true of patients with schizophrenia or severe depression.

### Demographics

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, between 5% and 9% of all psychiatric inpatients show some catatonic symptoms. Of these, 25–50% are associated with mood disorders, 10–15% are associated with schizo-

phrenia, and the remainder are associated with other mental disorders. Catatonic symptoms can also occur in a wide variety of general medical conditions, including infectious, metabolic, and neurological disorders. They may also appear as side effects of various medications, including several drugs of **abuse**.

### Diagnosis

Important diagnostic distinctions must be made to determine the cause of catatonic symptoms. Catatonic schizophrenia is diagnosed when the patient's other symptoms include thought disorder, inappropriate affect, and a history of peculiar behavior and dysfunctional relationships. Catatonic symptoms associated with a mood disorder are diagnosed when patients have a prior history of mood disorder, or after careful psychiatric evaluation. Medical tests are necessary to determine the cause of catatonic symptoms caused by infectious diseases, metabolic abnormalities, or neurological conditions. Patients should be asked about recent use of both prescribed and illicit drugs to determine whether the symptoms are drug-related.

### Treatments

Treatment for catatonic symptoms can rely on drug-based approaches or on **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT). **Benzodiazepines** (for example, **lorazepam**) have often been the first-line treatment approach, although response to this therapy varies a great deal. One study has found that use of lorazepam was not effective in treating chronic catatonia, and there are other concerns about using benzodiazepines, including the fact that withdrawal from these drugs has itself been associated with inducing catatonia.

Other drugs that have been applied in cases of catatonia include antipsychotics. As with benzodiazepines, there are some concerns that the attempted cure could also be causative; these drugs have also been associated with precipitating catatonic episodes. On the flip side, the perceived reduction in rates of catatonic schizophrenia has accompanied the introduction and increasing use of these drugs. Other drugs, such as lithium or **amantadine**, have shown unpredictable success and elicited variable responses.

ECT, or electroconvulsive therapy, elicits negative reactions from many people, as it involves the administration of an electric shock to the brain to essentially cause a seizure. However, many psychiatrists maintain that it is a safe and effective approach and is the “ultimate treatment” for catatonia, especially if patients only partially respond to drug therapy.

## KEY TERMS

**Akinesia**—Absence of physical movement.

**Catalepsy**—An abnormal condition characterized by postural rigidity and mental stupor, associated with certain mental disorders.

**Catatonic disorder**—A severe disturbance of motor behavior characterized by either extreme immobility or stupor, or by random and purposeless activity.

**Catatonic schizophrenia**—A subtype of a severe mental disorder that affects thinking, feeling, and behavior, and that is also characterized by catatonic behaviors—either extreme stupor or random, purposeless activity.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Echolalia**—Meaningless repetition of words or phrases spoken by another.

**Echopraxia**—Imitation of another person's physical movements in a repetitious or senseless manner.

**Hypomania**—A milder form of mania which is characteristic of bipolar II disorder.

**Mutism**—Inability to speak due to conscious refusal or psychological inhibition.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Stupor**—A trance-like state that causes a person to appear numb to his or her environment.

**Waxy flexibility**—A condition in which a person's body part, usually a limb, can be moved by others into different positions, where it remains for long periods of time.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for a person with catatonia varies with the cause underlying the disorder. With disorders such as alcohol-use disorder or affective disorder, the prognosis for resolution is relatively good; however, when catatonia accompanies schizophrenia, there is an association with earlier and higher levels of mortality. In one review, the authors ranked the associated disorder with the relative prognosis from best to

worst, as follows: depression with catatonia, periodic catatonia, cycloid psychoses with catatonia, bipolar disorder with catatonia, catatonic schizophrenia, and non-catatonic schizophrenia. The choice of treatment also can influence prognosis.

## Prevention

There are no specific preventive measures for most causes of catatonia. Infectious disease can sometimes be prevented. Catatonic symptoms caused by medications or drugs of abuse can be reversed by suspending use of the drug.

*See also* Affect; Bipolar disorders; Hypomanic episode; Major depressive disorder; Mania; Manic episode; Mood disorders; Schizophrenia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Kaplan, Harold I., MD, and Benjamin J. Sadock, MD. *Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences/Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.  
 Sacks, Oliver. *Awakenings*. New York: HarperPerennial, 1990.

### PERIODICALS

- Carroll, B. T. "Kahlbaum's Catatonia Revisited." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* 55.5 (Oct. 2001): 431–36.  
 Penland, Heath R., Natalie Weder, and Rajesh R. Tampi. "The Catatonic Dilemma Expanded." *Annals of General Psychiatry* 5 (2006): 14. An open-access publication available at: <<http://www.annals-general-psychiatry.com/content/5/1/14>>.  
 Pfuhlmann, B., and G. Stober. "The Different Conceptions of Catatonia: Historical Overview and Critical Discussion." *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* 251, Supplement 1 (2001): 14–17.  
 Sarkstein, S. E., J. C. Golar, and A. Hodgkiss. "Karl Ludwig Kahlbaum's Concept of Catatonia." *History of Psychiatry* 6.22, part 2 (June 1995): 201–207.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20002. Telephone: (202) 336-5500.  
 Mental Illness Foundation. 420 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2104, New York, NY 10170. Telephone: (212) 682-4699.  
 National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). 2101 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 302, Arlington, VA 22201.  
 National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA, 22314. Telephone: (703) 684-7722.

Barbara Sternberg, PhD  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## CATIE

### Purpose

The Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study is a clinical trial funded by the National Institute of Mental Health and coordinated by the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. The purpose of the study is to evaluate the effectiveness and side effects of newer antipsychotic drugs (sometimes referred to as atypical antipsychotics) in comparison to conventional antipsychotic drugs in the treatment of **schizophrenia**. One of the purposes of the study was to help doctors maximize the benefits of antipsychotic drugs while minimizing their negative side effects.

### Description

Atypical antipsychotic medications frequently have fewer serious adverse side effects than conventional antipsychotics. The CATIE study was an attempt to scientifically investigate the effectiveness of the newer drugs in comparison with the conventional antipsychotic drug **perphenazine** (Trilafon). All drugs used in the CATIE study had been previously approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). The atypical antipsychotic drugs under investigation in the study were:

- clozapine (Clozaril)
- olanzapine (Zyprexa)
- quetiapine (Seroquel)
- risperidone (Risperdal)
- ziprasidone (Geodon)

**Aripiprazole** (Abilify), another atypical antipsychotic drug, was not approved by the FDA in time to be included in the study. No placebos were used in the study.

All of the drugs evaluated in the CATIE study had already undergone **clinical trials** by the representative pharmaceutical companies in order to get FDA approval to market each drug. Although these studies were appropriately rigorous to earn FDA approval, they typically had a limited number of participants, tested only two or three drugs per study, and lasted only four to eight weeks.

As opposed to the clinical trials previously conducted by the pharmaceutical companies, the CATIE study lasted for 18 months and used over 1,400 participants. This more in-depth study allowed researchers to study drug actions and side effects in more depth as well as examine more long-term effects of their use.

Although the pharmaceutical companies donated the medications for the study and advised the researchers concerned of optimal doses, they had no other input into the design, implementation, analysis, or interpretation of the study results.

The CATIE study was open to participants from 18 to 65 years of age who had been diagnosed with schizophrenia using the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fourth Edition, Text Revision (*DSM-IV-TR*), and who were able to use oral medications. Of the 1,460 patients who were enrolled in the CATIE study, 74% were male, 40% were non-white, and 12% were Hispanic. The mean (average) age of CATIE participants was 40.6 years. The average length of time participants had been schizophrenic was 14.4 years. Participants in the study came from 57 different clinical sites across the country and reflect the range of people in the United States suffering from schizophrenia.

Study participants were randomly assigned to the experimental treatments in a double-blind study. This means that the doctors administering the drugs were not able to choose which medication their patients received, and that neither the researchers, administering physicians, or patients knew which treatment the patients were receiving. This study design helped ensure that preconceived expectations about the effectiveness of any of the drugs did not affect the outcome of the study. Patients were randomly assigned to either one of the atypical antipsychotics or the control conventional antipsychotic. Patients continued on the assigned drug for 18 months or until the drug failed to continue to control their symptoms or produced intolerable side effects, or the patients decided to stop the medication or withdraw from the study.

Previous research has shown that patients taking antipsychotic medication are better off than those not taking such medication. Previous research has also found that staying on antipsychotic medication is critical to controlling the symptoms of schizophrenia and presenting a **relapse**. Therefore, one of the primary measures of success in the CATIE study was how long patients benefited from the medication to which they were assigned and how long before they decided it needed to be changed. When patients decided that the medication was not effective, researchers recorded the reasons the medication was stopped (e.g., the medication no longer controlled the symptoms, the side effects were intolerable). Other data collected included the effects of the medications on the symptoms of schizophrenia and level of the patient's functioning on the medication.

## Findings of the study

The study found that the conventional antipsychotic generally was equally effective and tolerated as well as the newer, more expensive, atypical antipsychotic medications. Of the atypical antipsychotics, olanzapine performed somewhat better than the other drugs in the study. Patients on this drug were less likely to be hospitalized for psychotic relapse and tended to stay on their medication longer than patients taking other antipsychotic drugs in the study. However, patients on olanzapine also tended to gain significant weight and experience other metabolic changes associated with diabetes than did patients taking the other drugs in the study.

Nearly 75% of the patients in the CATIE study switched to a different medication during the course of the study. Participants who stopped taking the medication for any reason were given the opportunity to continue in the study in one of two ways. In the “efficacy pathway,” patients who discontinued an atypical antipsychotic because it was not sufficiently effective were randomly assigned to receive another atypical antipsychotic to help determine what treatment should be chosen for such patients. In the “tolerability pathway,” patients who discontinued their medication because of side effects were allowed to receive another medication in order to help determine the next best choice for patients who experience adverse side effects with an atypical antipsychotic. The conventional antipsychotic (perphenazine) was not included in this second phase of the study because researchers had not expected the conventional medication to work as well as the newer drugs when they designed the study.

Most of the participants in the Phase II efficacy pathway study had not benefited from their first antipsychotic medication and had worse symptoms than at the beginning of the study. These participants also tended to have worse symptoms than those participants in the tolerability pathway study. Clozapine was very effective for this group and worked significantly better than the other atypical antipsychotics. Forty-four percent of participants in this part of the study were able to stay on their medication for the remainder of the study. Participants on the efficacy pathway stayed on their medication for an average of 10 months as opposed to three months for those taking the other atypical antipsychotics. In addition, most of these participants had greater symptom relief than participants taking the other medications.

As in Phase I of the study, in the tolerability pathway of the Phase II study, a high rate (74%) of patients stopped taking their medication. However, 35% of the Phase II participants in the tolerability study who took

olanzapine or risperidone continued taking their medication until the end of the study. Only 23% of participants taking ziprasidone and 16% of participants taking quetiapine in the Phase I study were able to continue throughout the entire 18 months.

The results of the Phase II study show that the choice of a different medication for patients who stop taking an antipsychotic medication depends on why they stopped taking the first medication. Participants who stopped taking their antipsychotic medication in Phase I because it was not adequately controlling their symptoms were more likely to stay on their medication if they were switched to olanzapine or risperidone rather than quetiapine or ziprasidone. There was no difference between the four medications tested in Phase II, however, for participants who had stopped taking their Phase I medication because they experienced adverse side effects.

The CATIE study has several major implications. First, the results of Phase I of the study show that it is worthwhile to start patients on less expensive conventional antipsychotic medications before trying the atypicals. Specifically, physicians and patients should consider perphenazine as an alternative to atypical antipsychotics both because of its similar effectiveness and its lower price.

The CATIE study results can also be used to help select a different antipsychotic medication for those patients who were not successfully treated on another antipsychotic. The results of the Phase II study show that the reason for stopping the first medication should be considered when choosing another medication.

The study results also show that clozapine is often a good choice of medication for patients who did not respond well to other antipsychotic medications. In Phase II of the study, clozapine was more effective in controlling symptoms than the other atypical antipsychotics under evaluation. For patients whose symptoms are not well controlled on clozapine, olanzapine and risperidone tend to be more effective than ziprasidone or quetiapine. However, the side effects of these drugs must be taken into account.

The CATIE study did not reveal a clear path of next treatment for those patients who had discontinued use of an antipsychotic due to adverse side effects. In such cases, it is important to balance the degree of symptom control from the drug with the nature of its side effects. For example, olanzapine tended to result in considerable weight gain and metabolic problems, whereas ziprasidone consistently resulted in weight loss and improvement of metabolic disorders. Of the drugs tested, risperidone had the least adverse side effects.

## KEY TERMS

**Atypical antipsychotic**—A newer antipsychotic drug that is less likely to cause significant adverse side effects than conventional antipsychotic medications. Atypical antipsychotics are also called novel antipsychotics or second-generation antipsychotics.

**Clinical trial**—A controlled scientific experiment designed to investigate the effectiveness of a drug or treatment in curing or lessening the symptoms of a disease or disorder.

**Double-blind study**—A research study in which neither the participants nor the professional administering the drug or treatment know whether they are receiving the experimental treatment or a placebo or control treatment.

**Placebo**—A preparation without pharmacological effect that is given in place of a drug in clinical trials to determine the effectiveness of the drug under study; a “sugar pill.”

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Davis, S. M., G. G. Koch, C. E. Davis, and L. M. LaVange. “Statistical Approaches to Effectiveness Measurement and Outcome-Driven Re-Randomizations in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Studies.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 29.1 (2003): 73–80.  
 Essock, S. M., and others. “Effectiveness of Switching Antipsychotic Medications.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.12 (Dec. 2006): 2090–95.  
 Keefe, R. S., and others. “Neurocognitive Assessment in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Project Schizophrenia Trial: Development, Methodology, and Rationale.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 29.1 (2003): 45–55.  
 Lieberman, J. A., and others. “Effectiveness of Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 353.12 (Sep. 22, 2005): 1209–23.  
 Lieberman, J. A., and T. S. Stroup. “Guest Editors’ Introduction: What Can Large Pragmatic Clinical Trials Do for Public Mental Health Care?” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 29.1 (2003): 1–6.

McEvoy, J. P., and others. “Effectiveness of Clozapine Versus Olanzapine, Quetiapine, and Risperidone in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia Who Did Not Respond to Prior Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 600–610.

Rosenheck, R., J. Doyle, D. Leslie, and A. Fontana. “Changing Environments and Alternative Perspectives in Evaluating the Cost-Effectiveness of New Antipsychotic Drugs.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 29.1 (2003): 81–93.

Rosenheck, R. A., and others. “Cost-Effectiveness of Second-Generation Antipsychotics and Perphenazine in a Randomized Trial of Treatment for Chronic Schizophrenia.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.12 (Dec. 2006): 2080–89.

Schneider, L. S., and others. “Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE): Alzheimer’s Disease Trial.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 29.1 (2003): 57–72.

Schneider, L. S., and others. “Effectiveness of Atypical Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Alzheimer’s Disease.” *New England Journal of Medicine* 355.125 (Oct. 2006): 1525–38.

Sernyak, M. J., D. Leslie, and R. Rosenheck. “Use of System-Wide Outcomes Monitoring Data to Compare the Effectiveness of Atypical Neuroleptic Medications.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 160.2 (Feb. 2003): 310–15.

Stroup, T. S., and P. S. Appelbaum. “Evaluation of ‘Subject Advocate’ Procedures in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 32.1 (Jan. 2006): 147–52.

Stroup, T. S., and others. “Effectiveness of Olanzapine, Quetiapine, Risperidone, and Ziprasidone in Patients With Chronic Schizophrenia Following Discontinuation of a Previous Atypical Antipsychotic.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 611–22.

Stroup, T. S., and others. “The National Institute of Mental Health Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Project: Schizophrenia Trial Design and Protocol Development.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 29.1 (2003): 15–31.

Swartz, M. S., and others. “Assessing Clinical and Functional Outcomes in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Trial.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 29.1 (2003): 33–43.

### OTHER

CATIE. *CATIE: Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness Schizophrenia Study*, 2003. <<http://www.catie.unc.edu/schizophrenia>>.

National Institutes of Health. *CATIE Schizophrenia Trial*, 2006. <<http://www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct/show/NCT00014001?order=1>>.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Causes of mental illness see **Origin of mental illnesses**

Celexa see **Citalopram**

## Chamomile

### Definition

Chamomile is a plant that has been used since ancient Egypt in a variety of healing applications. Chamomile is a native of the Old World; it is related to the daisy family, having strongly scented foliage and flowers with white petals and yellow centers. The name chamomile is derived from two Greek words that mean “ground” and “apple,” because chamomile leaves smell somewhat like apples, and because the plant grows close to the ground.

There are two varieties of chamomile commonly used in herbal preparations for internal use and for **aromatherapy**. One is called Roman chamomile (*Anthemis nobilis*), with contemporary sources in Belgium and southern England. Roman chamomile grows to a height of 9 in (23 cm) or less, and is frequently used as a ground cover along garden paths because of its pleasant apple scent. German chamomile (*Matricaria recutita*) is grown extensively in Germany, Hungary, and parts of the former Soviet Union. German chamomile grows to a height of about 3 ft (1 m) and is the variety most commonly cultivated in the United States, where it is used medicinally.

### Purpose

Chamomile has been used internally for a wide variety of complaints. The traditional German description of chamomile is *alles zutraut*, which means that the plant “is good for everything.”

Chamomile has been used internally for the following purposes:

- antispasmodic: A preparation given to relieve intestinal cramping and relax the smooth muscles of the internal organs. Chamomile is used as an antispasmodic to relieve digestive disorders, menstrual cramps, premenstrual syndrome (PMS), headache, and other stress-related disorders.
- anthelmintic: Chamomile has been used to expel parasitic worms from the digestive tract.
- carminative: Chamomile is given to help expel gas from the intestines.
- sedative: Perhaps the most frequent internal use of chamomile is in teas prepared to relieve anxiety and insomnia.
- anti-inflammatory: Roman chamomile has been used to soothe the discomfort of gingivitis (inflamed gums), earache, and arthritis. German chamomile is used in Europe to treat oral mucosities in cancer patients following chemotherapy treatment.



Dried chamomile flowers. (Geoffrey Kidd/Alamy)

- antiseptic: Chamomile has mild antibacterial properties, and is sometimes used as a mouthwash or eyewash. It can be applied to compresses to treat bruises or small cuts.
- other: Mexican Americans, especially the elderly, have been reported to use chamomile for the treatment of asthma and urinary incontinence. It is one of the two most popular herbs in use among this population.

The external uses of chamomile include blending its essential oil with **lavender** or rose for scenting perfumes, candles, creams, or other aromatherapy products intended to calm or relax the user. Chamomile is considered a middle note in perfumery, which means that its scent lasts somewhat longer than those of top notes but is less long lasting than scents extracted from resinous or gum-bearing plants. Chamomile is also a popular ingredient in shampoos, rinses, and similar products to add highlights to blonde or light brown hair.

Other external uses of chamomile include topical preparations for the treatment of bruises, scrapes, skin irritations, and joint pain. The antibacterial and anti-inflammatory properties of chamomile make it a widely used external treatment for acne, arthritis, burns, ulcerated areas of skin, and even diaper rash.

The German E Commission, regarded as an authority on herbal treatments, has recommended chamomile to "combat inflammation, stimulate the regeneration of cell tissue, and promote the healing of refractory wounds and skin ulcers."

## Description

The flowers are the part of the chamomile plant that are harvested for both internal and external use. Chamomile flowers can be dried and used directly for teas and homemade topical preparations, but they are also available commercially in prepackaged tea bags and in capsule form. The essential oil of chamomile is pressed from the leaves as well as the flowers of the plant; it costs about \$22–\$35 for 5 ml. Chamomile is also available as a liquid extract.

The chemically active components of chamomile include alpha bisabolol, chamozulene, polyines, tannin, coumarin, flavonoids, and apigenin. However, no single factor has been credited with all the major healing properties of whole chamomile; it is assumed that the various components work together to produce the plant's beneficial effects.

## Recommended dosage

Children may be given 1–2 ml of a glycerine preparation of German chamomile three times a day for colic; or 2–4 oz (57–100 g) of tea, one to three times a day, depending on the child's weight.

Adults may take a tea made from 0.7–1 oz (2–3 g) of dried chamomile steeped in hot water, three to four times daily for relief of heartburn, gas, or stomach cramps. Alternately, adults may take 5 ml of 1:5 dilution of chamomile tincture three times daily.

For use as a mouthwash, one may prepare a tea from 0.7–1 oz (2–3 g) of dried chamomile flowers, allow the tea to cool, and then gargle as often as desired. To soothe an irritated upper respiratory tract during cold season, adults may pour a few drops of essential oil of chamomile on top of steaming water and inhale the fragrant vapors.

For relief of eczema, insect bites, and other skin irritations, adults may add 4 oz (110 g) of dried chamomile flowers to a warm bath. Topical ointments containing 3–10% chamomile may be used for psoriasis, eczema, or dry, irritated skin.

## Precautions

Because chamomile is related botanically to the ragweed plant, persons who are highly allergic to ragweed should use chamomile with caution.

## KEY TERMS

**Anthelmintic**—A type of medication given to expel or eliminate intestinal worms.

**Antispasmodic**—A medication or preparation given to relieve muscle or digestive cramps.

**Carminative**—A substance or preparation that relieves digestive gas.

**Essential oil**—The product of special ducts or cells in the tissues of aromatic plants (or the sap of certain trees) that gives the plant its characteristic aroma and therapeutic properties. Essential oils are sometimes called volatile oils because they evaporate readily at room temperature.

**Flavonoids**—Plant pigments that have a variety of effects on human physiology. Some of these pigments have anti-inflammatory, anti-carcinogenic, and antioxidant effects, for example.

**Middle note**—A term used in perfumery and aromatherapy to designate essential oils whose odors emerge later than top notes but evaporate more rapidly than bottom notes. Chamomile is considered a middle note in aromatherapy.

**Tannin**—An astringent compound found in chamomile, oak bark, and certain other plants. Tannin in large quantities can interfere with iron absorption.

**Topical**—A type of medication or preparation intended for use on the skin or external surface of the body. Chamomile is commonly used in topical preparations for acne, open skin irritations, and similar conditions because of its antibacterial properties.

Chamomile is generally safe to drink when prepared using the recommended quantity of dried flowers. Highly concentrated tea made from Roman chamomile has been reported to cause nausea; this reaction is caused by a compound found in Roman chamomile called anthemic acid.

Women who are pregnant or lactating should not use chamomile.

Persons taking warfarin or similar blood-thinning medications should use chamomile only after consulting their physician, as it may intensify the effects of anticoagulant drugs.

## Side effects

Chamomile can cause allergic reactions in people who are sensitive to ragweed.

## Interactions

Chamomile can increase the effects of anticoagulant medications. In addition, its tannin content may interfere with iron absorption. Chamomile may also add to the effects of **benzodiazepines**, including valium, Ativan, and Versed. No other noteworthy medication interactions have been reported.

## Resources

### BOOKS

*PDR for Herbal Medicines*. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 1998.

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Western Herbal Medicine: Nature's Green Pharmacy." Chapter 6 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.

Price, Shirley. *Practical Aromatherapy*. Second edition, revised. London, UK: Thorsons, 1994.

### PERIODICALS

Bone, Kerry. "Safety Issues in Herbal Medicine: Adulteration, Adverse Reactions and Organ Toxicities." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* (October 2001): 142.

Loera, Jose A., Sandra A. Black, Kyriakos S. Markides, and others. "The Use of Herbal Medicines by Older Mexican Americans." *Journals of Gerontology*, Series A (November 2001): M714-M718.

Miller, Lucinda G. "Herbal Medicinals." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 158 (November 1998): 2200-2211.

### OTHER

American Botanical Council. PO Box 144345. Austin, TX 78714-4345. <[www.herbalgram.org](http://www.herbalgram.org)>.

National Association for Holistic Aromatherapy (NAHA). 4509 Interlake Avenue North, #233, Seattle, WA 98103-6773. (888) ASK-NAHA or (206) 547-2164. <[www.naha.org](http://www.naha.org)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

Child abuse see **Abuse**

## Child Depression Inventory

### Definition

The Child **Depression** Inventory (CDI) is a symptom-oriented instrument for assessing depression in children between the ages of seven and 17 years. The basic CDI consists of 27 items, but a 10-item short form is also available for use as a screener.

## Purpose

The CDI was first published by Maria Kovacs in 1992. It was developed because depression in young children is often difficult to diagnose, and also because depression was regarded as an adult disorder until the 1970s. It was thought that children's nervous systems were not sufficiently mature to manifest the neurochemical changes in **brain** function associated with depression.

In 2002 the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) estimated that as many as 2.5% of children and 8.3% of adolescents under the age of 18 in the United States have depression. A study sponsored by the NIMH of 9- to 17-year-olds found that 6% developed depression in a six-month period, with 4.9% diagnosed as having major depression. Research also indicates that children and adolescents experience the onset of depression at earlier ages than previous generations, are more likely to experience recurrences, and are more likely to experience severe depression as adults.

The CDI is intended to detect and evaluate the symptoms of a **major depressive disorder** or **dysthymic disorder** in children or adolescents, and to distinguish between children with those disorders and children with other psychiatric conditions. The CDI can be administered repeatedly in order to measure changes in the depression over time and to evaluate the results of treatment for **depressive disorders**. It is regarded as adequate for assessing the severity of the depressive symptoms.

The CDI has also been used in research studies of the epidemiology of depression in children as well as studies of dissociative symptoms and post-traumatic syndromes in children. It has been rated as having adequate to excellent psychometric properties by research psychologists.

## Precautions

The CDI shares certain drawbacks with other self-report measures used in children, namely that children do not have the same level of ability as adults to understand and report strong internal emotions. On the other hand, children have the same ability as adults to modify their answers on the CDI and similar tests to reflect what they think are the desired answers rather than what they actually feel. This phenomenon is variously known as "faking good" or "faking bad," depending on the bias of the modified answers. Some researchers have also observed that children who do not have age-appropriate reading skills may receive an inaccurate **diagnosis** on the basis of their CDI score.

## KEY TERMS

**Dysthymic disorder**—A mood disorder that is less severe than depression but usually more chronic. Dysthymic disorder is diagnosed in children and adolescents when a depressed mood persists for at least one year and is accompanied by at least two other symptoms of major depression.

**Epidemiology**—The study of the causes, incidence, transmission, and control of diseases.

**Frequency distribution**—In statistics, the correspondence between a set of frequencies and the set of categories used to classify the group being tested.

**Psychometric**—Pertaining to testing and measurement of mental or psychological abilities. Psychometric tests convert an individual's psychological traits and attributes into a numerical estimation or evaluation.

**Self-rated**—A term in psychological testing that means that the person taking the test is the one who decides whether a question applies to them and records the answer, as distinct from an examiner's evaluating and recording answers.

**Standard deviation**—A measure of variability in a set of scores. The standard deviations are based on a comparison to others in the same age group. Standardizing the scores in this way allows scores across age groups to be compared.

The results of the CDI should be evaluated only by a trained professional **psychologist** or **psychiatrist**, not by a parent, teacher, or school nurse.

Because depressive symptoms fluctuate somewhat in children as well as in adults, the author of the test recommends retesting children who score positive on the CDI, with a two- to four-week interval between the test and the retest. A child who screens positive on the CDI should receive a comprehensive diagnostic evaluation by a licensed mental health professional. The evaluation should include interviews with the child or adolescent; the parents or other caregivers; and, when possible, such other observers as teachers, social service personnel, or the child's primary care physician.

### Description

The CDI is self-rated, which means that the child or adolescent being evaluated records their answers to the questions on the test sheet, as distinct from giving verbal answers to questions that are then analyzed and

recorded by the examiner. Other self-rated instruments for assessing depression in children include the **Beck Depression Inventory** (BDI) and the Weinberg Screening Affective Scale (WSAS).

Each question on the CDI consists of three possible responses; the child or adolescent being evaluated selects the response that most closely describes him or her over the preceding two weeks. The CDI is designed to make quantitative measurements of the following symptoms of depression: mood disturbances; capacity for enjoyment; depressed self-evaluation; disturbances in behavior toward other people; and vegetative symptoms, which include **fatigue**, oversleeping, having difficulty with activities requiring effort, and other symptoms of passivity or inactivity.

### Results

The test administrator totals the responses and plots them onto a profile form. A score that falls below a cutoff point, or is 1.0 to 2.0 standard deviations above the mean, is considered to be positive for depression.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

"Psychiatric Conditions in Childhood and Adolescence."

Section 19, Chapter 274 in *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

Finch, A. J., and others. "Children's Depression Inventory: Reliability Over Repeated Administrations." *Journal of Clinical Child Psychology* 16 (1987): 339-341.

Liss, Heidi, Vicky Phares, and Laura Liljequist. "Symptom Endorsement Differences on the Children's Depression Inventory with Children and Adolescents on an Inpatient Unit." *Journal of Personality Assessment* 76: 394-411.

Michael, Kurt D. "Reliability of Children's Self-Reported Internalizing Symptoms Over Short- to Medium-Length Time Intervals." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 37 (February 1998): 205-212.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry.  
3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016.  
Telephone: (202) 966-7300. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002. Telephone: (202) 336-5500. <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.

National Depressive and Manic-Depressive Association.  
730 North Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610-3526. Telephone: (800) 826-3632. <[www.ndmda.org](http://www.ndmda.org)>.

**OTHER**

National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Depression in Children and Adolescents: A Fact Sheet for Physicians.* <[www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/depcchildres\\_fact.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/depcchildres_fact.cfm)>.  
Texas A & M University at Corpus Christi and the Corpus Christi Independent School District. *School Nurse Reference Sheet—Depression.* <[www.ecdc.tamucc.edu?HELP/depression](http://www.ecdc.tamucc.edu?HELP/depression)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

the children diagnosed with CDD have an abnormal electroencephalogram (EEG). EEGs measure the electrical activity in the brain generated by nerve transmission (brain waves). CDD is also sometimes associated with **seizures**, another indication that the neurobiology of the brain may be involved. CDD is occasionally associated with such diagnosed medical disorders of the brain as leukodystrophy and Schilder's disease; but no one disease, brain defect, disorder, or condition can account for all symptoms and all cases. Research is hampered by the rarity of this disorder.

**Symptoms**

Children with CDD have at least two years of normal development in all areas—language understanding, speech, skill in the use of large and small muscles, and social development. After this period of normal growth, the child begins to lose the skills he or she has acquired. This loss usually takes place between ages three and four, but it can happen any time up to age ten.

The loss of skills may be gradual, but more often occurs rapidly over a period of six to nine months. The transition may begin with unexplained changes in behavior, such as **anxiety**, unprovoked anger, or agitation. Behavioral changes are followed by loss of communication, social, and motor skills. Children may stop speaking or revert to single words. They often lose bowel or bladder control and withdraw into themselves, rejecting social interaction with adults or other children. They may perform repetitious activities and often have trouble moving from one activity to the next.

In this way CDD resembles autism. In autism, however, previously acquired skills are not usually lost. According to the *Handbook of Autism and Pervasive Developmental Disorders*, virtually all children with CDD lose speech and social skills. About 90% lose self-help skills (the ability to feed, wash, and toilet themselves); and about the same number develop non-specific overactivity. After a time, the regression stops, but the child does not usually regain the skills that were lost.

**Demographics**

CDD is a rare disease, much less common than autism. About one in 100,000 children are thought to have CDD. It is possible, however, that the disorder is underdiagnosed. For a long time, it was thought that CDD occurred equally among boys and girls. Newer research suggests that it is about four times more common in boys, and that many girls who were diagnosed with CDD actually had Rett's disorder, a disorder that shares many of the symptoms of CDD but occurs almost always in girls.

## Childhood disintegrative disorder

### Definition

Childhood disintegrative disorder (CDD) is a developmental disorder that resembles **autism**. It is characterized by at least two years of normal development, followed by loss of language, social skills, and motor skills before age ten. Other names for childhood disintegrative disorder are Heller's syndrome, **dementia infantilis**, and disintegrative **psychosis**.

### Description

Thomas Heller, an Austrian educator, first described childhood disintegrative disorder in 1908. It is a complex disorder that affects many different areas of the child's development. It is grouped with the **pervasive developmental disorders** (PDDs) and is related to the better known and more common disorder of autism.

Initially CDD was considered strictly a medical disorder and was believed to have identifiable medical causes. After researchers reviewed the reported cases of CDD, however, no specific medical or neurological cause was found to account for all occurrences of the disorder. For that reason, CDD was included in the fourth edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, or *DSM-IV*, in 1994. The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual* is the standard reference work consulted by mental health professionals in the United States and Canada.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The cause of childhood disintegrative disorder is unknown. Research findings suggest, however, that it may arise in the neurobiology of the **brain**. About half

## Diagnosis

CDD is most commonly diagnosed when the parents of the affected child consult the pediatrician about the child's loss of previously acquired skills. The doctor will first give the child a medical examination to rule out epilepsy or other medical conditions. The child's head may also be x-rayed to rule out head trauma or a brain tumor. Following the medical examinations and tests, the child will be referred to a **psychiatrist** who specializes in treating children and adolescents. The psychiatrist will then make the differential **diagnosis** of CDD.

To be diagnosed with CDD, a child must show loss or regression in at least two of the areas listed below. Usually regression occurs in more than two areas. These are:

- receptive language skills (language understanding)
- expressive language skills (spoken language)
- social or self-help skills
- play with peers
- motor skills
- bowel or bladder control, if previously established

Children with CDD are unable to start conversations with other people and often do not communicate with nonverbal signals (smiles, gestures, nodding the head, etc.) either. They also lose interest in playing games and in relationships with other people. They may engage in strange repetitive behavior, such as bobbing the head up and down, or other repeated movements. These changes must not be caused by a general medical condition or another diagnosed mental disorder.

CDD must be differentiated from autism and such other specific pervasive developmental disorders as Rett's disease. It also must be differentiated from **schizophrenia**. One of the differences between CDD and other PDDs is that to be diagnosed with CDD, a child must develop normally for at least two years before loss of skills occurs, and the loss must occur before age ten. Parents' reports of the child's development, records in baby books, medical records kept by the child's pediatrician, and home movies are often used to document normal development through the first two years of life.

## Treatments

Treatment for CDD is very similar to treatment for autism. The emphasis falls on early and intense educational interventions. Most treatment is behavior-based and highly structured. Educating the parents so that they can support the child's treatments at home is usually part of the overall treatment plan. Speech and

## KEY TERMS

**Autism**—A developmental disability that appears early in life, in which normal brain development is disrupted and social and communication skills are retarded, sometimes severely.

**Dementia infantilis**—Another term for childhood disintegrative disorder, used more frequently in the European medical literature. The Latin name literally means "early childhood dementia."

**Leukodystrophy**—A disturbance of the white matter of the brain.

**Schilder's disease**—A disturbance of the white matter of the brain that causes blindness, deafness, and mental deterioration.

**Sensory integration therapy**—A treatment that was originally designed for children with autism. Sensory integration therapy is often performed by occupational or physical therapists; its goal is to help the child with autism or CDD process information acquired through the senses (hearing, touch, taste, and smell as well as sight) more effectively.

language therapy, occupational therapy, social skills development, and sensory integration therapy may all be used according to the needs of the individual child

Families with a child who has CDD often find themselves highly stressed. Practical demands on caregivers are high, and CDD takes an emotional toll on family members. Finding appropriate providers with experience delivering services for a child with CDD is sometimes difficult, especially outside large cities. **Support groups** for families can help reduce their isolation and frustration. Because CDD is rare, autism support groups and organizations include families of children with CDD in their services.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for children with CDD is very poor; it is worse than the prognosis for children with autism. Once skills are lost, they are not usually regained. Only about 20% of children diagnosed with the disorder reacquire the ability to speak in sentences. Most adults with CDD remain dependent on full-time caregivers or are institutionalized.

## Prevention

Since the causes of CDD are unknown, there are no known ways to prevent this disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hales, Robert E., Stuart C. Yudofsky, and John A. Talbot. *The American Psychiatric Press Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.
- Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th edition. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Autism Society of America. 7910 Woodmont Avenue, Suite 300, Bethesda, MD 20814-3067. (301) 657-0881 or 800-3 AUTISM. <<http://www.autism-society.org>>.
- National Association of Rare Disorders (NORD). P.O. Box 8923, New Fairfield, CT 06812-8923. (800) 999-NORD or (203) 746-6518.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

and interpretation, and be familiar with the psychological theories underlying the pictures. Because of the subjective nature of interpreting and analyzing CAT results, caution should be used in drawing conclusions from the test results. Most clinical psychologists recommend using the CAT in conjunction with other psychological tests designed for children.

The CAT is frequently criticized for its lack of objective scoring, its reliance on the scorer's own scoring method and bias, and the lack of accepted evidence for its reliability (consistency of results) and validity (effectiveness in measuring what it was designed to measure). For example, no clear evidence exists that the test measures needs, conflicts, or other processes related to human motivations in a valid and reliable way.

Older children between 7 and 10 years old may feel that the animal pictures in the original version of the CAT are too childish for them. They may respond better to the pictures of human beings available in the Children's Apperception Test-Human Figures (CAT-H), a version of the CAT in which human beings replace animals in the pictures.

## Description

The CAT was developed in 1949 by Leopold Bellak and Sonya Sorel Bellak. It was an offshoot of the widely used **Thematic Apperception Test** (TAT), which was based on Henry Murray's need-based theory of personality. Bellak and Bellak developed the CAT because they saw a need for an apperception test specifically designed for children. The most recent revision of the CAT was published in 1993.

The original CAT featured ten pictures of animals in such human social contexts as playing games or sleeping in a bed. Today, this version is known as the CAT or the CAT-A (for animal). Animals were chosen for the pictures because it was believed that young children relate better to animals than humans. Each picture is presented by a test administrator in the form of a card. The test is always administered to an individual child; it should never be given in group form. The test is not timed but normally takes 20–30 minutes. It should be given in a quiet room in which the administrator and the child will not be disturbed by other people or activities.

The second version of the CAT, the CAT-H, was developed in 1965 by Bellak and Bellak. The CAT-H includes ten pictures of human beings in the same situations as the animals in the original CAT. The CAT-H was designed for the same age group as the

## Children's Apperception Test

### Definition

The Children's Apperception Test, often abbreviated as CAT, is an individually administered projective personality test appropriate for children aged 3–10 years.

### Purpose

The CAT is intended to measure the personality traits, attitudes, and psychodynamic processes evident in prepubertal children. By presenting a series of pictures and asking a child to describe the situations and make up stories about the people or animals in the pictures, an examiner can elicit this information about the child.

The CAT was originally developed to assess psychosexual conflicts related to certain stages of a child's development. Examples of these conflicts include relationship issues, sibling rivalry, and aggression. Today, the CAT is more often used as an assessment technique in clinical evaluation. Clinical diagnoses can be based in part on the CAT and other projective techniques.

### Precautions

A **psychologist** or other professional person who is administering the CAT must be trained in its usage

## KEY TERMS

**Apperception**—The process of understanding through linkage with previous experience. The term was coined by one of the authors of the TAT to underscore the fact that people don't "perceive" the story cards in a vacuum; rather, they construct their stories on the basis of past experiences as well as present personality traits.

**Defense**—An unconscious mental process that protects the conscious mind from unacceptable or painful thoughts, impulses, or desires. Examples of defenses include denial, rationalization, projection, and repression. Some defenses are considered to represent lower levels of maturation than others; thus identifying a child's defenses may be helpful in evaluating his or her level of psychological maturity.

**Ego**—In Freudian psychology, the conscious, rational part of the mind that experiences and reacts to the outside world.

**Projective test**—A psychological test in which the test taker responds to or provides ambiguous, abstract, or unstructured stimuli, often in the form of pictures or drawings.

**Psychodynamic**—Referring to the motivational forces, unconscious as well as conscious, that form human attitudes and behavior.

**Psychosexual conflicts**—In Freudian categories, internal conflicts related to problems at a particular stage of childhood development. Freud associated each developmental stage with a particular part of the human body, such as the mouth or the phallus.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Sibling rivalry**—Competition among brothers and sisters in a nuclear family. It is considered to be an important influence in shaping the personalities of children who grow up in middle-class Western societies but less relevant in traditional African and Asian cultures.

**Superego**—According to Freud, the part of the mind that represents traditional parental and societal values. The superego is the source of guilt feelings.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

CAT-A but appeals especially to children aged 7–10, who may prefer pictures of humans to pictures of animals.

The pictures on the CAT were chosen to draw out children's fantasies and encourage story telling. Descriptions of the ten pictures are as follows: baby chicks seated around a table with an adult chicken appearing in the background; a large bear and a baby bear playing tug-of-war; a lion sitting on a throne being watched by a mouse through a peephole; a mother kangaroo with a joey (baby kangaroo) in her pouch and an older joey beside her; two baby bears sleeping on a small bed in front of a larger bed containing two bulges; a cave in which two large bears are lying down next to a baby bear; a ferocious tiger leaping toward a monkey who is trying to climb a tree; two adult monkeys sitting on a sofa while another adult monkey talks to a baby monkey; a rabbit sitting on a child's bed viewed through a doorway; and a puppy being spanked by an adult dog in front of a bathroom. The cards in the human version substitute human adults and children for the animals but the situations are the same. Gender identity, however, is more ambiguous in the animal pictures

than in the human ones. The ambiguity of gender can allow for children to relate to all the child animals in the pictures rather than just the human beings of their own sex.

The pictures are meant to encourage the children to tell stories related to competition, illness, injuries, body image, family life, and school situations. The CAT test manual suggests that the administrator should consider the following variables when analyzing a child's story about a particular card: the protagonist (main character) of the story; the primary needs of the protagonist; and the relationship of the main character to his or her personal environment. The pictures also draw out a child's anxieties, fears, and psychological defenses.

One theoretical basis for the CAT and other apperception tests is Murray's theory of personality. Murray is credited with clarifying the concept of human needs. He believed that a person's needs affect the way in which he or she interacts with the environment. The pictures on the CAT often address the manner in which individuals interact with their environment in terms of need fulfillment. Murray developed the TAT, in order to assess the relative strength

of a person's needs. The needs that Murray particularly emphasized include the need for achievement and the need for recognition.

Because the primary content of the CAT consists of pictures, it is widely used in countries outside the United States.

## Results

Scoring of the CAT is not based on objective scales; it must be performed by a trained test administrator or scorer. The scorer's interpretation should take into account the following variables: the story's primary theme; the story's hero or heroine; the needs or drives of the hero or heroine; the environment in which the story takes place; the child's perception of the figures in the picture; the main conflicts in the story; the anxieties and defenses expressed in the story; the function of the child's superego; and the integration of the child's ego.

Consider, for example, the card in which a ferocious tiger leaps toward a monkey who is trying to climb a tree. A child may talk about his or her fears of aggression or punishment. The monkey may be described as a hero escaping punishment from the evil tiger. This story line may represent the child's perceived need to escape punishment from an angry parent or a bully. Conversely, a child may perceive the picture in a relatively harmless way, perhaps seeing the monkey and tiger playing an innocent game.

A projective test like the CAT allows for a wide variety of acceptable responses. There is no "incorrect" response to the pictures. The scorer is responsible for interpreting the child's responses in a coherent way in order to make the test useful as a clinical assessment technique. It is recommended practice for the administrator to obtain the child's personal and medical history before giving the CAT, in order to provide a context for what might otherwise appear to be abnormal responses. For example, it would be normal under the circumstances for a child whose pet has just died to tell stories that include themes of grief or loss even though most children would not respond to the cards in that way.

A person scoring the CAT has considerable flexibility in interpretation. He or she can use the analysis of a child's responses to support a psychological diagnosis, provide a basis for a clinical evaluation, or gain insight into the child's internal psychological structure.

*See also* Rorschach technique.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Groth-Marnat, Gary. *Handbook of Psychological Assessment*. 3rd edition. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.  
Kline, Paul. *The Handbook of Psychological Testing*. New York: Routledge, 1999.  
Maddox, Taddy. *Tests*. Austin, TX: Pro-ed, 1997.  
Suzuki, Lisa A., Joseph G. Ponterotto, and Paul J. Meller. *Handbook of Multicultural Assessment*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, 2001.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

## Chloral hydrate

### Definition

Chloral hydrate is a drug used to help sedate persons before and after surgery, to help relieve anxiety or tension, and to promote sleep in individuals with insomnia. It is sold in the United States under the brand names Aquachloral®, Aquachloral Supprenettes®, and Noctec®. It is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Because of its calming effect, chloral hydrate is primarily used to help sedate persons before and after surgery, especially children. It is also used to help people with sleep difficulties fall asleep. Chloral hydrate can be used to help calm tense or nervous persons as well.

### Description

Chloral hydrate is classified as a sedative-hypnotic drug. The mechanism by which this drug works is not completely understood. It is believed that a chemical produced by chloral hydrate, called trichloroethanol, causes a mild depressive effect on the brain.

### Recommended dosage

Chloral hydrate is available in oral and suppository forms. The oral form includes both capsules and syrup. Adults usually receive 500–1,000 mg taken 15–30 minutes before bedtime or one to two hours before surgery. These dosages are for hypnotic effects. For sedative effects, 250 mg is usually taken three times daily after meals. Total daily dosage should not be more than 2 g (2,000 mg). The hypnotic dose for children is usually 50 mg for every kilogram of body weight. The maximum amount per single dose is 1 g.

Daily dosage is usually divided into several smaller doses and taken throughout the day. The sedative dose is typically one-half of the hypnotic dose. The syrup form should be combined with a half glass of fruit juice or water. The capsules should be taken with a full glass of water or juice to help prevent stomach upset.

The typical dose using suppositories is 500 to 1,000 mg at bedtime for adults to address trouble sleeping, and 325 mg three times a day for daytime sedation in adults. For children in preparation for a medical procedure, the dose is calculated based on body weight, usually at 50 mg per kilogram. Children also may receive this as light sedation before an electroencephalograph test, in which case the dose is usually 25 mg per kilogram of body weight.

## Precautions

The treating doctor needs to check the progress of any patients taking this drug for more than a few days to ensure significant side effects are not developing. Patients should not stop taking chloral hydrate suddenly. Instead, the dosage should be gradually decreased over time. Chloral hydrate can produce increased effects when combined with other central nervous depressants such as alcohol, antihistamines, and tranquilizers, resulting in significant drowsiness. This drug can sometimes cause persons to become drowsy, light-headed, or dizzy, and should generally not be used in patients with a history of severe kidney disease, severe liver disease, or those with a history of significant heart disease.

Chloral hydrate should be used with great caution only where necessary in persons with a history of heart disease, people with gastrointestinal problems or porphyria, those with a history of drug **abuse**, and in the elderly. It should be used with caution in pregnant women and in women who are nursing. Chloral hydrate, like most drugs, can be taken in excess to the point of overdose. Signs of overdose include difficulty in swallowing, extreme weakness, confusion, **seizures**, extreme drowsiness, low body temperature, staggering, changes in heart rate, and breathing problems.

## Side effects

Uncommon but serious side effects of chloral hydrate use include skin rash or hives. Even more rare side effects include confusion, hallucination, and excessive excitement. The development of any of these side effects should be promptly reported to a doctor.

Less serious but more common side effects of chloral hydrate use include nausea, stomach pain,

## KEY TERMS

**Hydrated**—A substance combined chemically with water.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Porphyria**—A group of disorders that arise from changes in the metabolism of porphyrin, a naturally occurring compound in the body, and that are characterized by acute abdominal pain and neurological problems.

**Sedative**—A medication that induces relaxation and sleep.

and vomiting. Less common and not particularly serious side effects include diarrhea, light-headedness, drowsiness, and clumsiness.

## Interactions

Because of additive depressant effects on the central nervous system, this drug should not be combined with alcohol as the combination can lead to significant drowsiness. Likewise, chloral hydrate should not be combined with tricyclic **antidepressants** or with the blood-thinning drug called warfarin. The prescribing physician should be made aware of any drugs or medications you are taking.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Consumer Reports Staff. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*. 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.
- Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. 2001–2002 ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.
- Hardman, Joel G., Lee E. Limbird, eds. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.
- Mosby's GenRx Staff. *Mosby's GenRx*, 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1999.
- Venes, Donald, and others, eds. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*, 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

### OTHER

- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. “Chloral Hydrate.” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682201.html>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. “Chloral Hydrate (Systemic).” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682201.html>>.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Chlordiazepoxide

### Definition

Chlordiazepoxide is used for the treatment of **anxiety** and also to control agitation brought on by alcohol withdrawal. It is a member of the benzodiazepine family of compounds, which slow the central nervous system to ease tension or nervousness. In the United States, it is sold under the trade names of Librium® and Librax®, and as Limbitrol® when in combination with another drug, **amitriptyline**.

### Purpose

Chlordiazepoxide is used for the short-term relief of symptoms of anxiety and the management of **anxiety disorders**. It is also used for treating symptoms of withdrawal from acute alcoholism and alcoholic intoxication. One drug therapy combines this drug with amitriptyline to treat **depression** that accompanies anxiety or tension.

### Description

Chlordiazepoxide is useful when treating anxiety for short periods of time. It has sedative properties that are useful for these brief periods of use. In addition, it is occasionally used to stimulate appetites and is a weak analgesic. Its precise mechanism of action is unknown, and several hours are needed for peak levels of the drug to be achieved. Chlordiazepoxide is available in 5-, 10-, and 25-mg capsules.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended dosage varies with **diagnosis**. The lowest possible dosage that provides relief from symptoms should be used as the drug has a high potential to cause physiological and psychological dependence. When used in adults for the treatment of moderate anxiety, the usual oral dosage is 5–10 mg three or four times per day. When used for the treatment of more severe **anxiety and anxiety disorders**, the usual oral dosage is 20–25 mg three or four times per day. When used by older persons, or to relieve symptoms of preoperative apprehension or anxiety, the usual oral dosage is 5 mg two to four times per day. If used as a preoperative medication, the usual dosage is 50–100 mg via intramuscular (IM) injection. When used to treat symptoms of acute alcoholism, the usual initial oral dosage is 50–100 mg, repeated as needed until agitation is adequately controlled. The recommended maximum dosage is 300 mg

per day. The usual dosage for children is 5 mg two to four times per day.

### Precautions

Persons with suicidal tendencies should be closely monitored, as chlordiazepoxide may lower the threshold for action in attempting **suicide**. The drug has a high potential to cause physiological or psychological dependence.

In the last few years, there have been cases in which pills originating overseas but sold over the counter in the United States have contained chlordiazepoxide. A case from 2001 involved ingredients shipped from China for pill manufacture in California, and another case from 2006 involved pills from Brazil. Both resulted in warnings to consumers by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). In the more recent case, the products—marketed as dietary/weight loss supplements under the names Emagrece Sim and Herbathin—were available for sale over the Internet and imported and distributed by a Florida company. Because of the serious possibility of interactions with medication and vitamins and the lack of quality control, taking these pills can be dangerous. The FDA advises consumers who have these products to return them to the distributor.

### Side effects

Other than physiological and psychological dependence, few adverse effects have been reported. The most commonly reported include drowsiness, confusion, and movement difficulties. These are most common among older persons. Occasionally, transient loss of consciousness has been reported.

Other adverse effects include edema (abnormal accumulation of fluid in bodily tissues), minor menstrual irregularities, nausea, constipation and, infrequently, changes in libido (sex drive). Also, chlordiazepoxide may impair mental or physical skills needed to perform complex motor tasks. For this reason, persons using this drug are advised not to drive automobiles or operate machinery.

This drug is known to increase the risk birth defects in the fetus when taken during the first three months of pregnancy, and it also can cause dependency in the developing baby that can result in withdrawal symptoms following birth. Chlordiazepoxide passes into the breast milk and can cause breathing trouble and slow heartbeat in babies.

### Interactions

Chlordiazepoxide may increase the effect of alcohol or other substances that depress central nervous

## KEY TERMS

- Analgesic**—A substance that provides relief from pain.
- Edema**—Abnormal accumulation of fluid in the interstitial spaces of bodily tissue.
- Libido**—Psychic energy or instinctual drive associated with sexual desire, pleasure, or creativity.
- Porphyria**—A group of disorders that arise from changes in the metabolism of porphyrin, a naturally occurring compound in the body, and that are characterized by acute abdominal pain and neurological problems.
- Porphyrin**—Any iron- or magnesium-free pyrrole derivative occurring in many plant and animal tissues.

system functions. For this reason, they should not be used at the same time. A small number of reports of interaction with oral anticoagulants have been received, and it may exacerbate porphyria, which is a group of inherited disorders in which there is abnormally increased production of substances called porphyrins. Any medications, prescribed or over the counter, should be brought to the attention of a doctor or pharmacist.

*See also* Addiction; Alcohol and related disorders; Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse-related disorders; Pharmacotherapy.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael, and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.
- Albers, Lawrence J., MD, Rhoda K. Hahn, MD, and Christopher Reist, MD. *Handbook of Psychiatric Drugs. 2001–2002*. Laguna Hills, CA: Current Clinical Strategies Publishing, 2001.
- Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*, 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.
- Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.
- Von Boxtel, Chris J., Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Alexopoulou A., A. Michael, and S. P. Dourakis. "Acute Thrombocytopenic Purpura in a Patient Treated with Chlordiazepoxide and Clidinium." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 161.14 (2001): 1778–79.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, PO Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Fax: (717) 558-7845. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.
- American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org>>.
- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981. Fax: (703) 836-5223. Web site: <<http://www.ascopt.org>>.
- American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. Web site: <<http://www.aspet.org>>.

## OTHER

- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Chlordiazepoxide." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682078.html>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Chlordiazepoxide and Amitriptyline." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202129.html>>.
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration. "FDA News: FDA Warns Consumers About Brazilian Diet pills Found to Contain Active Drug Ingredients. Emagrece Sim and Herbathin Dietary Supplements May be Harmful." (2006). <<http://www.fda.gov/bbs/topics/news/2006/NEW01298.html>>.
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Label Information for Limbitrol®. <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/foi/label/2001/16949S33lbl.pdf>>.

L.Fleming Fallon, Jr.,MD,Dr.P.H.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Chlorpromazine

### Definition

Chlorpromazine is an antipsychotic drug. It is a member of the phenothiazine family of compounds and is used to alleviate the symptoms and signs of **psychosis**. Psychosis is a form of severe mental illness characterized by loss of contact with reality, **hallucinations**, **delusions**, agitation, and unusual behavior.

## HEINZ EDGAR LEHMANN (1911–1999)

Heinz Edgar Lehmann was a German born Canadian psychiatrist best known for his use of chlorpromazine for the treatment of schizophrenia in 1950s. Born in Berlin, Germany, he was educated at the University of Freiburg, the University of Marburg, the University of Vienna, and the University of Berlin. He emigrated to Canada in 1937. In 1947, he was appointed Clinical Director of Montreal's Douglas Hospital. From 1971 to 1975, he was the Chair of the McGill University Department of Psychiatry. In 1976, he was made an Officer of the Order of Canada. In 1970, he was made a Fellow of the Royal Society of Canada. He was inducted into the Canadian Medical Hall of Fame in 1998. In 1999, the Canadian College of Neuropsychopharmacology established the Heinz Lehmann Award in his honor, given in recognition of outstanding contributions to research in neuropsychopharmacology in Canada.

In the United States, chlorpromazine is also sold under the brand name Thorazine®.

### Purpose

Chlorpromazine is principally used to reduce the signs and symptoms of psychosis. For this purpose, the drug is used in **schizophrenia** and the manic phase of bipolar (formerly manic-depressive) disorder. The drug is also used in the management of severe behavioral disorders with aggression, combativeness, or excessive excitability. Chlorpromazine may sometimes be used as a sedative in nonpsychotic patients with excessive **anxiety** and agitation. In addition, the drug has been used to relieve nausea, vomiting, and persistent hiccups.

### Description

Chlorpromazine was the first antipsychotic drug. It is not an exaggeration to say that the development of this medication began a revolution in the treatment of severe mental illness, which continues to this day. Patients with schizophrenia and other psychoses, who once would have been considered hopelessly untreatable and relegated to the back wards of state institutions, are today often able, as a result of treatment with chlorpromazine or similar medications, to live in the community and lead fuller lives.

The discovery of chlorpromazine resulted from efforts of pharmaceutical researchers in the first half of the twentieth century to develop sedative medica-

tions. Several drugs of a chemical class known as phenothiazines were investigated and shown to be effective **sedatives**, but they had little effect on agitated patients with psychosis. A new phenothiazine drug, chlorpromazine, was synthesized in France in 1950 and was tested on such patients. In 1952, two French psychiatrists, Delay and Deniker, announced that the drug exerted a specific effect in diminishing the symptoms and signs of psychosis in patients with severe mental illnesses.

The mechanism of action of chlorpromazine occurs primarily through its interactions with proteins on the cell that take messages from **dopamine**, a nerve signaling molecule, and send them to other cells.

Chlorpromazine, when sold under the name Thorazine®, is available in many forms: tablets of 10, 25, 50, 100, and 200 mg; spansules (sustained release capsules) of 30, 75, and 150 mg; ampules for injection of 25 and 50 mg; a multidose vial of 10 mL of 25 mg/mL; syrup 10mg/5mL, 4 fl oz.; and suppositories of 25 and 100 mg. Generic chlorpromazine manufacturers may supply a somewhat different set of dosages and products.

### Recommended dosage

For acutely disturbed adult patients diagnosed with a psychosis, such as schizophrenia or mania, the usual daily dosage ranges from 100 mg to 1000 mg per day. Some patients may require a higher dosage. There is great variation in individual dosage requirements for chlorpromazine and for other antipsychotic medications. It is usually advisable to begin with a lower dosage, and increase the dosage until sufficient reduction of symptoms is achieved. Maximum reduction of symptoms may take many weeks of continued treatment. Because of the possibility of side effects, which may be severe, lower dosages should be used in outpatients, children, the elderly, and patients with serious health problems. For nonpsychotic patients with excessive anxiety or agitation, amounts used are generally less than 200 mg per day, divided among two or three doses.

For nausea and vomiting in adults, the usual dosage is 10–25 mg every four to six hours as needed, given by injection. Alternatively, doses of 50–100 mg may be given rectally. Persistent hiccups may be treated with 25–50 mg three or four times per day, orally or by injection.

### Precautions

Elderly patients (those over age 65), especially women, and patients receiving long-term antipsychotic

treatment are prone to develop **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may not disappear or may only partially improve after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles and may also appear after chlorpromazine use has stopped. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period. The need for long-term antipsychotic medication should be weighed against the risk of developing tardive dyskinesia, which increases with duration of treatment.

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS), a dangerous condition with high fever, muscular rigidity, rapid pulse, sweating, and altered mental state, may occur with antipsychotic medication. NMS requires immediate medical treatment.

Phenothiazine drugs, such as chlorpromazine, may cause sedation and may interfere with driving and other tasks requiring alertness. They may increase the effects of alcohol and sedatives. The adverse effects of chlorpromazine may be increased in people with diseases of the heart, liver, or kidney, or other debilitating illnesses. Phenothiazines may lower the seizure threshold, making it more likely that a seizure will occur in people who have a history of **seizures**. People with epilepsy may require adjustment of their antiseizure medications. Chlorpromazine may cause acute muscle spasms, particularly of the head and neck, and sudden decreases of blood pressure. Patients may need to be hospitalized during the initial phase of treatment, particularly when receiving high doses or treatment by injection.

Chlorpromazine reduces the body's ability to sweat, thus interfering with the regulation of body temperature. This may be a problem for some people in very hot weather. The problem most commonly occurs in elderly people in hot buildings without air conditioning. Body temperature may reach fatal levels. People taking chlorpromazine should be aware of the possibility of developing hyperthermia (high body temperature) in very hot weather. They should seek cool places in very hot weather.

Children may be especially susceptible to neurologic reactions to phenothiazines, such as muscle spasms. Elderly patients may be particularly sensitive to sedation, low blood pressure, and other side effects. These patients should start with lower doses and increase their dosage gradually under physician supervision. Chlorpromazine may decrease salivation in older patients, predisposing to tooth decay, gum dis-

ease, and mouth infections. Candy and other sugary foods should be limited, and oral hygiene should be maintained.

Chlorpromazine, like all phenothiazines, should not be taken by pregnant women because they harm the developing fetus. Breast-feeding is not recommended while taking the drug. Phenothiazines are secreted in breast milk and may cause harm to nursing infants.

### Side effects

Chlorpromazine and other phenothiazines may cause many side effects. The following more common side effects are grouped by the body system affected:

- cardiovascular: Decreases of blood pressure, especially on arising, which may cause dizziness or fainting; rapid heart rate and changes in heart rhythm and electrocardiogram.
- nervous system: Sedation, muscle spasms of the head and neck, muscle rigidity, restlessness, tremors, slowed movement, shuffling gait, increased seizure tendency.
- digestive system: Dry mouth, nausea, constipation, abnormal liver tests.
- autonomic: Blurred vision, nasal congestion, reduced sweating, difficulty urinating, problems with ejaculation, impotence.
- hormonal: Lactation, breast enlargement.
- skin: Rashes, sensitivity to sunlight.
- body as a whole: Weight gain.

### Interactions

Chlorpromazine interacts with a long list of other medications. Anyone starting this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. Chlorpromazine and other phenothiazines may intensify the effects of drugs causing sedation, including alcohol, **barbiturates**, narcotic pain medications, minor tranquilizers, and antihistamines. Similarly, chlorpromazine may cause excessive reductions of blood pressure in patients taking other medicines that lower blood pressure. Chlorpromazine may also intensify side effects of drugs that also cause blurred vision, dry mouth, diminished sweating in hot weather, and constipation. Many other antipsychotics and **antidepressants** cause such effects.

Chlorpromazine may enhance the effects of medications that lower the seizure threshold, such as steroid drugs, the asthma medication theophylline, and many other psychiatric drugs. Patients with epilepsy may require dosage adjustments of their antiseizure medications. The effectiveness of medications for Parkinson's

## KEY TERMS

**Antipsychotic drug**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders as well.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Epilepsy**—A neurological disorder characterized by the onset of seizures. Seizures are caused by a disturbance in the electrical activity in the brain and can cause loss of consciousness, muscle spasms, rhythmic movements, abnormal sensory experiences, or altered mental states.

**Neurotransmission**—The conduction of a nerve impulse along a chain of nerve cells, which occurs when one cell in the chain secretes a chemical substance, called a neurotransmitter, onto a subsequent cell.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Parkinson's disease**—A disease of the nervous system most common in people over 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness.

**Phenothiazine**—A class of drugs widely used in the treatment of psychosis.

disease may be reduced by chlorpromazine and other antipsychotics. The likelihood of changes in heart rhythm may be increased when the drug is taken with other medications that have the same effect, including other antipsychotic drugs, antidepressants, certain heart medicines, and erythromycin.

Certain drugs that are eliminated by the liver may interfere with the elimination of chlorpromazine from the body, causing higher blood levels and increased side effects. Chlorpromazine may retard the elimination of other medicines, including many antidepressants, antipsychotic drugs, and heart medications, resulting in higher levels of these other medications and possibly increased side effects.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, Inc.

*AHFS Drug Information*, Gerald K. McEvoy, Pharm.D., ed. Bethesda, MD: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2001.

Medical Economics Staff. *Physicians' Desk Reference*, 55th ed. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2001. Nissen, David, ed. *Mosby's GenRx*, 11th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.

### OTHER

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Chlorpromazine." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682040.html>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Chlorpromazine Overdose." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/002608.htm>>.

Rosenbloom, Michael. "Chlorpromazine and the Psychopharmacologic Revolution." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 287 (2002): 1860–1861. <<http://jama.ama-assn.org/cgi/content/full/287/14/1860>>.

Richard Kapit, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Chronic motor or vocal tic disorder see **Tic disorders**

## Chronic pain

### Definition

Chronic pain disorder has no clear physical cause, or occurs with illnesses that do not explain the pain. It is described in the mental-health handbook, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)*. The pain is severe enough to need treatment, lasts more than six months, and includes psychological factors. The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke states that chronic pain lasts longer than the average expected time for any given condition. Furthermore, acute pain alerts the nervous system to protect against injury, but chronic pain is useless because the injury is gone.

### Description

Chronic pain is different for each individual. It can be continuous or it can come and go. It is described as burning, tingling, shooting, electrical, or an ache, with numbness. Other patients report stiffness, discomfort, soreness, and tightness.

### Incidence/Prevalence

Up to 40% of the American population may experience chronic pain. There is inadequate data available about the rates of pain, because the definition has changed within the American Psychiatric Association (APA).

The Chronic Pain Network reports tens of millions of people with low-back pain and arthritis, many

with a five-year pain history and pain occurring six days a week. In 2003, 38 million Americans reported chronic back pain, 36 million had migraines, 19.3 million reported arthritis, 3.1 million had diabetic neuropathy, 1.4 million reported cancer pain, and 0.5 million reported HIV/AIDS-related pain.

American Pain Society (APS) president C. Richard Chapman, PhD, states that only 25% of the 23 million patients who have surgery every year get pain relief. There are 65 million injuries per year and millions more cases where disease causes pain. Over 40% of pain patients in the moderate-to-severe range cannot find relief and only 30% of cancer-pain patients are relieved.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Multiple causes of many types can cause pain. The most common noncancer pain types are back and neck, fibromyalgia, headache, arthritis, and neurologically based pain.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of chronic pain disorder, as described by the APA, include at least one of the following:

- depression and anxiety
- negative or distorted thinking
- problems with social relationships
- disability or reduced ability to participate in usual daily activities
- increased pain that requires treatment
- insomnia and fatigue

## Demographics

Women are twice as likely as men to have chronic pain and adults aged 40–50 are the most affected.

## Possible risk factors

The risk factors recognized for chronic pain disorder by the APA include:

- one's parents or siblings experiencing it
- depression or alcohol abuse occurring in one's family
- being pain-prone and having a usual behavior pattern of self-sacrifice, self-defeating behavior, and abusive interactions
- demonstrating underlying severe depression
- being a hard-working, rigid, obsessive, or perfectionistic individual

## Complications

Complications stemming from chronic pain disorder can include **suicide**, anger and depression, anxiety, and **substance abuse** and **addiction** and/or alcohol abuse. Substance and alcohol abuse can often be a self-medicating behavior used to mask the pain experience and to remove pain behaviors as well as feelings of anxiety, anger, and depression arising from the frustration of unrelieved pain. The patient may overuse prescription medications, use medications for off-label purposes, or seek illegal substances. This may be especially true if the patient lives among unsupportive or abusive others. Suicide may be an act of ending pain permanently or the accidental result of drug overdose or alcohol poisoning.

## Associated conditions

These include secondary gain, substance use, dependent or **histrionic personality disorder**, major depression in 25–50% of cases, and dysthymia (milder depression) in 60–100% of chronic-pain cases.

## Diagnosis

A **psychiatrist** first determines if the pain is medical. If so, then there is no pain disorder. If not, then the psychiatrist determines whether the pain is pretended. If this is the case, the **diagnosis** is either **malingerer** for rewards such as narcotics, or a **factitious disorder** that rewards the patient for acting sick.

A pain disorder includes pain that occurs in at least one place in the body and needs treatment, as well as psychological factors, significant distress, and pain that is not better explained by mood, anxiety, or **psychosis**.

## Psychological measures

The psychiatrist uses several methods to find the severity of pain and the role of psychological factors. These include standardized and informal interviews, pain-rating scales, and visual scales where the patient marks a place on a line to show the amount of pain, or chooses a picture of a facial expression to represent the degree of pain.

The simplest test for pain is to ask the patient how much pain they are feeling on a scale of 1 to 10. On this scale, 1 is the least amount of pain and 10 is the most or worst pain ever felt. Other tests used are the McGill Pain Questionnaire and the West Haven-Yale Multi-dimensional Pain Inventory.

## Treatments

The goal of treatment is controlling and managing pain in order for the patient to be able to function in daily life. In 2007, the American Chronic Pain Association (ACPA) concluded that: “An essential concept in pain management is that each person is different and will respond differently to situations, interventions, and medications. It is important for the person with pain, family members, and others to avoid quick judgments based on what they hear or read about medications. The best place to get advice about medications is from the health care provider.”

## Multidisciplinary approach

Patients should seek interested, well-qualified health care professionals and work with them to find solutions effective for their unique pain experiences. This may include physicians, medical specialists, nurse practitioners, alternative therapists, mental health professionals, physical therapists, chiropractors, massage therapists, a personal trainer; and a pastor, rabbi, or spiritual mentor.

Several methods of treatment can work together to manage chronic pain. This combined treatment can be different and require unique “doses,” according to individual needs. It is not one-size-fits-all, and medication alone is often not the total solution.

Patients should learn everything possible about their unique pain in order to understand it. Learning should be with the intent of accepting, targeting, and effectively treating the pain. Patients and families can investigate through public, university, and hospital libraries; Internet research databases; pain-related discussion boards; and online and in-person **support groups** of encouraging, like-minded people. In addition, it is vital to stay up-to-date concerning the progress of *Decade of Pain Control and Research*, which was declared January 1, 2001 by the U.S. Congress.

## Medications

Medication schedules can be tricky, but they are important. The ACPA promotes the use of a long-term daily pain reliever supplemented by a short-term fast-acting drug for flare-ups.

Depression often occurs with pain. In using **opioids** (narcotics), potential pain relief must be considered in the light of the side effects of nausea and constipation. Long-term narcotic use presents the risk of drug dependency. Pain-modifying drugs like **amitriptyline** affect the **brain** with doses lower than those given for depression. This resulting untreated depression can

then result in increased pain. Other **antidepressants** may also be prescribed. Further, anticonvulsant drugs can be used off-label in pain trigger point injections. This involves the injection of a cocktail of steroid and anesthetic combinations at the body’s affected pressure points to relieve painfully contracted tissues.

## Psychological and social interventions

Chronic pain treatment may require individual or group **psychotherapy**; family, behavioral, physical, or occupational therapy; or **biofeedback**. Treatment for insomnia may require relaxation training and education about good sleep habits.

## Cognitive-behavioral therapy

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) educates patients about the pain-and-tension cycle, teaching them how to manage pain and distress, and about the effects of their medications. It helps patients to change their thinking about pain. Patients are taught to identify and modify negative or distorted thought patterns, such as the helplessness and hopelessness of depression. Within CBT, progressive muscle relaxation, deep breathing, visual imagery, hypnosis, and biofeedback are all useful treatments. Pain diaries are useful for charting patterns of pain so patients can identify what affects it, and help determine how well medication are working.

## Behavior modification

**Behavior modification** is taught to the patients and families so that usual activity and non-pain behaviors are encouraged and the pain behaviors of passiveness, inactivity, and medication dependency are removed.

## Alternative therapies

Other treatments include **acupuncture**, electrical stimulation acupuncture, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, massage, nerve blocks, surgery, **meditation**, exercise, **yoga**, music, poetry, and art therapy.

## Other management

### Organization

The Asian concept of feng shui says that unhealthy layouts of homes and workspaces causes **stress**. If spaces are difficult to maneuver or are cluttered and dim, then pain may increase and last longer. Spaces are best arranged for openness and convenience. Pain patients can also eliminate unnecessary tasks, break big jobs into smaller steps, take breaks, use schedules, and enlist help to reduce stress and pain.

## KEY TERMS

**Ankylosing spondylitis**—A spinal arthritis that begins in the low back and can spread upwards to the skull.

**Feng shui**—The Chinese method of arranging of objects to increase positive energy flow.

**Secondary gain**—The advantage gained by having symptoms.

**Yoga**—A form of stretching and breathing mediation.

## Laughter

That laughter is good medicine was demonstrated by journalist and medical professor Norman Cousins as he used planned bouts of laughter to treat himself, with his doctor's collaboration, for the debilitating pain of ankylosing spondylitis.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for total relief of pain symptoms is not good in cases of chronic pain disorder. The usual pattern includes flare-ups between periods of moderate or less-severe pain. The prognosis is best if a patient can keep working. Unemployment leads to isolation, inactivity, and negative thinking, which results in more pain. If there is **reinforcement** of pain behavior by disability payments, gaining attention, or abuse of addictive drugs, relief of chronic pain is less likely. Recent studies show that cognitive-behavioral therapy along with antidepressants is the most effective treatment.

## Prevention

Pain disorder may be prevented by early **intervention** at the beginning of pain. When pain becomes chronic, it is important to find help with using strategies to manage the pain before inactivity, immobility, and depression appear. Most pain patients see their own doctor first, and the doctor may refer them to a psychiatrist or pain clinic. This does not mean that the doctor does not believe the pain is real. It means that he or she needs to work with other professionals in order to relieve the pain.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

Flor, H., and C. Hermann. "Neuropsychotherapy for Chronic Pain. Changing Pain Memories by Behavioral Interventions." *Verhaltenstherapie* 16.2 (2006): 86–94.

Gallagher, Rollin M., Maripat Welz-Bosna, and Arnold Gammaitoni. "Assessment of Dosing Frequency of Sustained-release Opioid Preparations in Patients with Chronic Nonmalignant Pain." *Pain Medicine* 8.1 (2007): 71–74.

"Hospitals Get Better at Pain Management, Often Led by Clinical Nurse Specialists." *Hospitals and Health Networks* 80.11 (2006): 94.

McWilliams, A. Lachlan, R. Goodwin, and B. Cox. "Depression and Anxiety Associated with Three Pain Conditions: Results from a Nationally Representative Sample." *The Journal of the International Association for the Study of Pain* 111 (2004): 77–83.

Monina, E., G. Falzetti, V. Firetto, L. Mariani, and C. A. Caputi. "Behavioural Evaluation in Patients Affected by Chronic Pain: A Preliminary Study." *The Journal of Headache and Pain* 7.6 (2006): 395–402.

Naughton, Felix, Polly Ashworth, and Suzanne M. Skevington. "Does Sleep Quality Predict Pain-related Disability in Chronic Pain Patients?" *PAIN. The Journal of the International Association for the Study of Pain* 127.3 (2007): 243–52.

Osborne, Travis L., and others. "Psychosocial Factors Associated with Pain intensity, Pain-related Interference, and Psychological Functioning in Persons with Multiple Sclerosis and Pain." *PAIN. The Journal of the International Association for the Study of Pain* 7.102 (2007): 52–62.

Phillips, Donald M. "JCAHO Pain Management Standards Are Unveiled." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 284.4 (2000): 428–9.

Smith, Blair H., Gary J. Macfarlane, and Nicola Torrance. "Epidemiology of Chronic Pain, from the Laboratory to the Bus Stop: Time to Add Understanding of Biological Mechanisms to the Study of Risk Factors in Population-based Research?" *PAIN. The Journal of the International Association for the Study of Pain* 127, 1–2 (2007): 5–10.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Chronic Pain Association. P.O. Box 850, Rocklin, CA 95677-0850. Telephone: (800) 533-3231.

American Pain Society. 4700 W. Lake Avenue, Glenview, IL 60025-1485. Telephone: (847) 375-4715. <<http://www.ampainsoc.org>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA. 22209-3901. Telephone: (703) 907-7300 <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Chronic Pain Network. <<http://www.chronicpainnetwork.com>>.

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. P.O. Box 5801, Bethesda, MD 20824. Telephone: (800) 352-9424. <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov>>.

UCLA History of Pain Project, The John C. Liebeskind History of Pain Collection. <<http://www.library.ucla.edu/libraries/biomed/his/pain.html>>.

**OTHER**

Masuda, A., M. Hattenmaru, and C. Tei. "Repeated Thermal Therapy Improves Outcomes in Patients with Chronic Pain." *International Congress Series. 18th World Congress.* Kobe, Japan. (2005).

National Institutes of Health. Statement by National Institutes of Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, on An Update of NIH Pain Research and Related Program Initiatives, before Statement for the Record, Subcommittee on Health, Committee on Energy and Commerce, U.S. House of Representatives. (Dec. 8, 2005).

Patty Inglish, MS

Cigarettes see **Nicotine and related disorders**



A patient in a sleeping lab participates in a circadian rhythm experiment. (Hank Morgan/Photo Researchers, Inc)

## Circadian rhythm sleep disorder

### Definition

Circadian rhythm sleep disorder is a persistent or recurring pattern of sleep disruption resulting either from an altered sleep-wake schedule or an inequality between a person's natural sleep-wake cycle and the sleep-related demands placed on him or her. The term circadian rhythm refers to a person's internal sleep and wake-related rhythms that occur throughout a 24-hour period. The sleep disruption leads to **insomnia** or excessive sleepiness during the day, resulting in impaired functioning.

The Fourth Edition Text Revision of the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)***, a handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders) defines circadian rhythm sleep disorder as one of several primary **sleep disorders**. Within the category of primary sleep disorders, it is classified as one of the dyssomnias, characterized by irregularities in an individual's quality, timing, and amount of sleep. In earlier versions of the *DSM*, the disorder is called sleep-wake schedule disorder.

### Description

Circadian rhythm sleep disorder involves an alteration of an individual's circadian system or a mismatch between a person's natural, or endogenous, circadian system and the external, or exogenous, demands placed on it. It can lead to insomnia at certain times of the day or excessive sleepiness throughout the day. The insomnia or excessive sleepiness

results in impaired functioning in social, occupational, or other environments.

The *DSM-IV-TR* lists four types of circadian rhythm sleep disorder: delayed sleep phase type, jet lag type, shift work type, and unspecified type.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The delayed sleep phase type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder is marked by a delay of the sleep-wake cycle as it relates to the demands of society. It is often due to a psychosocial stressor (an event in a person's environment that causes **stress** or discomfort), especially for adolescents. The delayed sleep-wake cycle leads to chronic sleep deprivation and habitually late sleeping hours. Individuals with this type often have difficulty changing their sleeping patterns to an earlier and more socially acceptable time. Their actual sleep, once it begins, is normal. It is the timing of their sleeping and waking that is persistently delayed.

The jet lag type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder is characterized by disruptions arising from a mismatch between a person's circadian cycle and the cycle required by a different time zone. The more

time zones that are traveled, the greater the disruption. Eastbound travel, in which sleep-wake hours are advanced, typically causes more problems than west-bound travel, in which sleep-wake hours are delayed. People who travel often and cross many time zones when they travel are most susceptible to this type.

The shift work type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder is distinguished by disruptions due to a conflict between a person's endogenous circadian cycle and the cycle required by shift work. Individuals who work the night shift often experience this problem, especially those people who switch to a normal sleep schedule on days off. Also, people who work rotating shifts experience this problem because of the changing sleep-wake schedules they experience. The disruptions caused by shift work result in inconsistent circadian schedules and an inability to consistently adjust to the changes.

The unspecified type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder is characterized by a pattern of sleep-wake disturbance and circadian mismatch that is not due to the causes of the other three types. Examples of other causes include irregular sleep-wake patterns and non-24-hour sleep-wake patterns. If an individual's sleep-wake pattern is based on a period of time of slightly more than 24 hours, their circadian rhythm can become progressively delayed.

### Symptoms

Individuals with the delayed sleep phase type of the disorder exhibit habitually late sleep hours and an inability to consistently change their sleeping schedule. They often show sleepiness during the desired wake period of their days. Their actual phase of sleep is normal. Once they fall asleep, they stay asleep for a normal period of time, albeit a period of time that starts and stops at an abnormally late time.

Individuals with the jet lag type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder demonstrate sleepiness during the desired wake portion of the day due to the change in time zone. They have difficulty sleeping during the desired sleep portion of the day. They also have difficulty altering their sleep-wake schedule to one appropriate to the new time zone.

Individuals with the shift work type of the disorder feel sleepy or fall asleep during the desired wake period, which includes the time spent at work. People with rotating shift schedules, especially schedules that gradually change, exhibit sleep disturbance and wake period sleepiness. Insufficient sleep time, family and social expectations, and alcohol use worsen this problem.

Individuals with the unspecified type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder also exhibit daytime and evening sleepiness or insomnia, especially those people who have a non-24-hour sleep pattern. People with irregular sleep patterns have difficulty knowing when they will fall asleep and wake up.

### Demographics

The delayed sleep phase type of the disorder usually begins during adolescence and can continue without treatment through adulthood. People with this type may have a family history of delayed sleep phase. The delayed sleep phase type of the disorder is thought to impact up to 4% of adults and up to 7% of adolescents.

The shift work and jet lag types of the disorder often result in more severe symptoms for late-middle-aged and elderly people. It is estimated that up to 60% of night shift workers have the shift work type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder.

### Diagnosis

In order to diagnose circadian rhythm sleep disorder, patients are often asked for records of their sleep and wake times in order to determine if a **diagnosis** is warranted. Interviews and direct observation in a sleep lab may also be utilized. A diagnosis requires a pattern of sleep disruption caused by a mismatch between a person's circadian sleep-wake pattern and the pattern required by that person's environment. The disruption can be persistent or recurrent and leads to impaired functioning, often in a social or occupational context.

To differentiate circadian rhythm sleep disorder from other diagnoses, the sleep disruption must not occur exclusively during the cause of another sleep disorder or other disorder. The disturbance in sleep must not be due to the direct physiological effects of a substance, whether used for medication or **abuse**, or to a general medical condition.

The delayed sleep phase type of the disorder requires a persistent pattern of delayed sleeping and awakening and an inability to change the pattern. The jet lag type requires sleepiness and wakefulness at inappropriate times relative to the local time zone; there must be repeated travel more than one time zone away. The shift work type requires excessive sleepiness during the desired wake period and an inability to sleep during the desired sleep period, both due to changing shift work or night shift work.

Diagnosis of any type of circadian rhythm sleep disorder must be distinguished from normal adjustments a person makes in reaction to a schedule change. The sleep disruptions must be persistent and recurring and lead to social or occupational problems. People who prefer unusually late or early sleep schedules or people adjusting to a new sleep schedule should not receive this diagnosis unless they meet the other criteria.

### Treatments

Treatment of the delayed sleep phase type depends on the severity of the case. Mild cases may be addressed by an individual simply adhering to strict sleep and wake times. Severe cases may require incremental changes in sleep time, where a person sleeps 15 to 30 minutes earlier each day until an appropriate pattern is reached. Other methods of altering delayed sleep patterns include prescribing a night of sleep deprivation or the use of chronotherapy, a method in which sleep is delayed for three hours each night until the sleep pattern is rotated around the clock.

Often, treatment is ignored for persons with the jet lag type because people eventually return to their regular time zone and normal sleep-wake cycle and no longer exhibit symptoms. For people who travel often, it is preferable to adjust to the new time zone by sleeping at times appropriate to that zone if they intend to be there for one week or longer. **Diets** that target jet lag are also effective for some people, and **light therapy**, which involves exposure to a lighted device to simulate daytime, may be helpful to some people to adjust to new time zones.

People with the shift work type of the disorder benefit most from a non-changing work schedule. If rotating or changing shifts are unavoidable, rotations that occur in a clockwise direction, where shifts get progressively later and later, are preferable to those in a counter-clockwise direction. Also, when attempting to sleep, it is a good idea to create a comfortable sleeping environment by eliminating daytime noise and light.

### Prognosis

Individuals with delayed sleep phase type often have great difficulty changing their sleep patterns and when they are able to change their circadian cycle, they have difficulty maintaining the changes.

People with jet lag type or shift work type can reduce symptoms often by simply decreasing the amount of travel or returning to a normal work schedule. When these changes are not possible, these individuals have trouble making the constant adjustments

required to sleep and wake. People with the shift work type often report a reversal of symptoms two weeks after returning to a normal work and sleep schedule.

### Prevention

Because circadian rhythm sleep disorder is usually related to environmental stressors, avoidance of these stressors (such as long-distance travel, shift work, and sleep-disrupting lifestyles) can prevent the disorder from beginning or continuing. People who are able to adhere strictly to a normal sleep-wake schedule can also offset circadian rhythm-related problems.

*See also* Breathing-related sleep disorder; Sleep disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Buyse, Daniel J., Charles M. Morin, and Charles F. Reynolds III. "Sleep Disorders." In *Treatments of Psychiatric Disorders*, edited by Glen O. Gabbard. 2nd edition. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 1995.
- Hobson, J. Allan, and Rosalia Silvestri. "Sleep and Its Disorders." In *The Harvard Guide to Psychiatry*, edited by Armand M. Nicholi, Jr., M.D. Cambridge, MA: Belknap Press of Harvard University Press, 1999.
- Thorpy, Michael J., M.D., and Jan Yager, Ph.D. *The Encyclopedia of Sleep and Sleep Disorders*. 2nd edition. New York: Facts on File, 2001.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Sleep Disorders Association. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901. <<http://www.asda.org>>.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

## Citalopram

### Definition

Citalopram is a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) antidepressant drug that is sold in the United States under brand name Celexa.

### Purpose

Citalopram is approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of **depression**. It appears to be very effective in the

treatment of **panic disorder** and is being evaluated for the treatment of **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, alcohol abuse, headache, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, and **premenstrual syndrome**.

## Description

Serotonin is a **brain** chemical that carries nerve impulses from one nerve cell to another. Researchers think that depression and certain other mental disorders may be caused, in part, because there is not enough serotonin being released and transmitted in the brain. Like the other SSRI **antidepressants**, **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **sertraline** (Zoloft), and **paroxetine** (Paxil), citalopram increases the level of brain serotonin (also known as 5-HT). Increased serotonin levels in the brain may be beneficial in patients with obsessive-compulsive disorder, alcoholism, certain types of headaches, post-traumatic **stress** disorder (PTSD), pre-menstrual tension and mood swings, and panic disorder.

Citalopram is available in 20-mg, 40-mg, and 60-mg tablets.

## Recommended dosage

The daily dosage of citalopram for depression ranges from 20–60 mg. The initial dosage is usually 20 mg per day. This dosage may then be increased to 40 mg per day at an interval of no less than one week. Most patients experience relief from depression at this dosage and do not require more than 40 mg per day. The dosage is taken once daily, either in the morning or in the evening.

Patients who are being treated for panic disorder receive doses ranging from 20–60 mg daily. A dosage of 20–30 mg daily appears to be optimal for the treatment of most panic disorders.

## Precautions

Patients who are allergic to citalopram, any other SSRI drug, or any component of the preparation should not take citalopram.

Patients with liver problems and elderly patients (over age 65) need to take smaller amounts of the drug. Dosage for these patients should start at 20 mg but can be increased to 40 mg daily if needed. Patients with kidney problems do not need dosage adjustments. Patients with history of mania, **suicide** attempts, or seizure disorders should start citalopram with caution and only under close physician supervision. There is no clinical data available on the use of citalopram in children and adolescents.

## Side effects

More than 15% of patients develop **insomnia** while taking citalopram. Nausea and dry mouth occur in about 20% patients being treated with citalopram. Patients also experience tremor, **anxiety**, agitation, yawning, headaches, dizziness, restlessness, and sedation with citalopram therapy. These side effects usually diminish or disappear with continued use of the drug, although it may take up to four weeks for this to occur.

A drop in blood pressure and increased heart rate have been associated with citalopram use. In general, patients do not experience weight gain or loss after starting citalopram.

Sexual dysfunction, which includes decreased sex drive in women and difficulty ejaculating in men, is also associated with the use of citalopram. In some patients, it may take up to 12 weeks for these side effects to disappear. In some patients these sexual side effects never resolve. If sexual side effects continue, the dose of citalopram may be reduced, patients can also have drug holidays where the weekend dose is either decreased or skipped, or they can discuss with their physician the risks and benefits of switching to another antidepressant.

## Interactions

Citlopram interacts with a long list of other medications. Anyone starting this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. Patients should always inform all their health care providers, including dentists, that they are taking citalopram.

Certain antifungal medications such as itraconazole, fluconazole, ketoconazole, as well as the antibiotic erythromycin, can increase the levels of citalopram in the body. This can cause increased side effects. Levomethadyl, a medication used to treat opioid dependence, may cause toxicity to the heart if used together with citalopram.

Serious side effects called serotonin syndrome have resulted from the combination of antidepressants such as citalopram and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). Serotonin syndrome usually consists of at least three of the following symptoms: diarrhea, fever, sweatiness, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking. Because of this, citalopram should never be taken in combination with MAOIs. MAOIs include isocarboxazid, nialamide, pargyline, selegiline, **phe-nelzine**, procarbazine, iproniazid, and clorgyline. Patient taking any MAOIs, should stop the MAOI

## KEY TERMS

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—Disorder in which the affected individual has an obsession (such as a fear of contamination, or thoughts he or she doesn't like to have and can't control) and feels compelled to perform a certain act to neutralize the obsession (such as repeated handwashing).

**Panic disorder**—An anxiety disorder in which an individual experiences sudden, debilitating attacks of intense fear.

**Post-traumatic stress disorder**—A disorder caused by an extremely stressful or traumatic event (such as rape, act of war, or natural disaster) in which the trauma victim is haunted by flashbacks. In the flashbacks, the event is re-experienced in the present. Other symptoms include nightmares and feelings of anxiety.

**Pre-menstrual syndrome**—A severe change in mood that occurs in women immediately prior to, and during, their menstrual period.

then wait at least 14 days before starting citalopram or any other antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing citalopram and starting an MAOI.

**Buspirone**, an anti-anxiety medication, should not be used together with citalopram. Ginkgo and **St. John's Wort**, herbal supplements that are common in the United States, should not be taken together with citalopram.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Forest Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Staff. *Product Information: Celexa, citalopram*. St. Louis, MO: Forest Pharmaceuticals, Inc., 2001.

Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Lexi-Comp, Inc. 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

Lepola, Ulla. "A Controlled, Prospective, One-Year Trial of Citalopram in the Treatment of Panic Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 59 (1998): 528-534.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.

Client-centered therapy see **Person-centered therapy**

Clinical antipsychotic trials of intervention effectiveness see **CATIE study**

## Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly

### Definition

The Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, often abbreviated as CASE, is a diagnostic tool used to determine the presence of mental disorders and other conditions in elderly adults.

### Purpose

The CASE is used to determine the presence of mental disorders in an elderly person as defined by the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (2000), which is also called *DSM-IV-TR*. The *DSM-IV-TR* is the basic reference work consulted by mental health professionals when making a **diagnosis**. The CASE, which is used with adults between the ages of 55 and 90, consists of a self-report form in which the person answers questions about himself or herself related to various scales. If the elderly adult is unable to complete the form because of cognitive or physical deficiencies, an other-rating form is provided for use by a knowledgeable caregiver, such as a spouse, child, or health-care worker.

The CASE is not always used specifically for diagnosing mental disorders. It may be administered simply as a general assessment tool to gain insight about an elderly person. It may serve as a neurological screening tool to rule out other problems. The test makers also claim that it can be used as an early screening tool for **dementia**, opening the door for elderly adults to receive medications to slow the progress of **Alzheimer's disease**.

### Description

The Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly were written by Cecil Reynolds and Erin Bigler. The most recent version of the test was published in 2001. The CASE consists of 10 clinical scales that measure the following: **Anxiety**; Cognitive Competence; **Depression**; Fear of Aging; Obsessive-Compulsive-ness; **Paranoia**; Psychoticism; Somatization; Mania; and **Substance Abuse**. The degree to which an elderly person exhibits symptoms in these areas can help a mental health professional with the process of differential diagnosis for a mental disorder.

The CASE also includes three validity scales. These are helpful in evaluating the consistency of a person's responses and whether the person is faking his or her answers.

## KEY TERMS

**Alzheimer's disease**—An incurable dementia marked by the loss of cognitive ability and memory over a period of 10–15 years. Usually affects elderly people.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing test norms.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

The person who is completing the CASE, whether using the self-rating or the other-rating form, responds to the test's written items. The test usually takes 20–40 minutes to finish, but it is not timed. People are generally given as much time as they need to complete it.

A shorter version of the test, called the Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly-Short Form (CASE-SF) is also available. The CASE-SF takes about 20 minutes to complete and includes all 10 of the clinical scales.

### Results

Scoring for the CASE is relatively simple. Scores are calculated for each scale and then compared to age-appropriate scores to determine the presence or severity of symptoms. For example, if a person scores high on the Depression scale, this information could be used as part of an overall diagnosis for a *DSM-IV-TR* depressive disorder. A person scoring high in Psychoticism may have a psychotic disorder. For any specific *DSM-IV-TR* diagnosis to be made, however, all of the required criteria for that disorder must be met. The results from the CASE may satisfy only some of the requirements.

The Fear of Aging scale assesses the person's degree of apprehension or concern about the aging process. It is not necessarily related to a particular

*DSM-IV-TR* disorder. Information about a person's fear of aging, however, may be helpful during the diagnostic process. It may also be useful information for a psychotherapist or other counselor, to understand the patient's concerns or to measure progress in therapy.

The CASE was standardized using a sample of 2,000 adults in the United States, 1,000 for each of the two test forms. The test has been shown to have good reliability and validity. For example, scores from the CASE Depression scale have been shown to correlate very well with scores on the widely used **Beck Depression Inventory**, or BDI.

*See also* Figure drawings; House-Tree-Person Test.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Reynolds, Cecil R., and Erin D. Bigler. *Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly*. San Antonio, TX: The Psychological Corporation, 2001.

Ali Fahmy, PhD  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

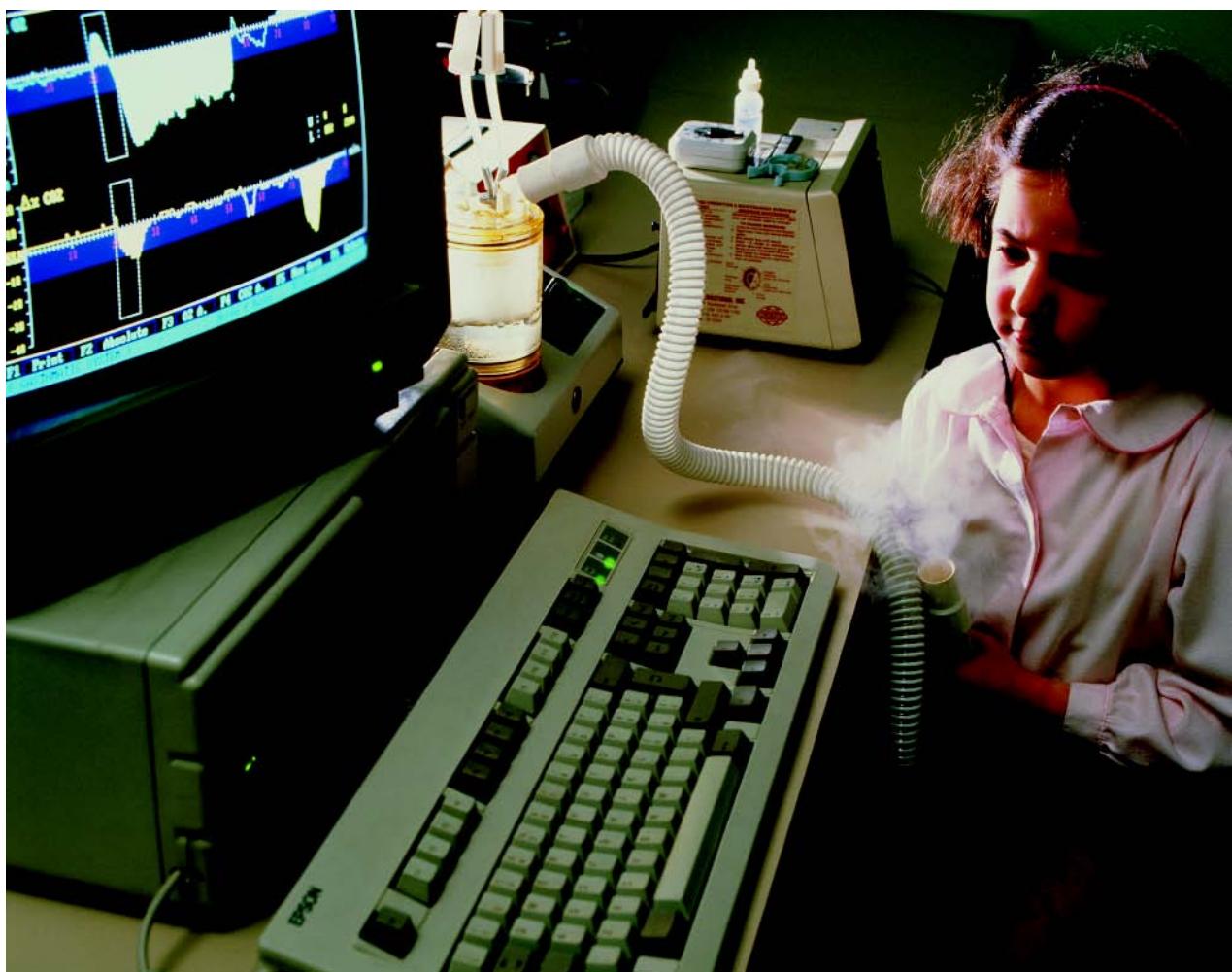
## Clinical trials

### Definition

A clinical trial is a controlled scientific experiment designed to determine the effectiveness of a treatment in curing or lessening the symptoms of a disease or disorder.

### Description

Clinical trials typically are used to assess the effectiveness of a new treatment in comparison with the current standard of care or an existing treatment for a disease or disorder. For example, before a new drug is approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for release and use in the United States, the drug must first undergo rigorous testing to determine (a) whether or not it is effective in treating the disorder, and (b) what side effects may result from the drug use that make it inadvisable or dangerous to some or all potential patients.



A child participates in a clinical research trial. (Geoff Tompkinson/Photo Researchers, Inc)

Clinical trials are research studies designed according to professional standards using scientific methods. In clinical trials, as many variables as possible are controlled to determine the effects of the drug or treatment option. For example, a simple experiment to test the effectiveness of a new drug for epilepsy might include the following steps. First, researchers typically randomly divide the research subjects into two groups: one group that receives the new drug and the other group that receives the conventional drug or treatment. The group receiving the new drug is called the experimental group and the group receiving no treatment or conventional treatment is called the control group. Researchers then collect baseline data on the symptoms of the subjects prior to treatment, such as number and frequency of **seizures**. This phase of the experiment is called the pretest. After the pretest data are collected, the researchers give the new drug (the independent variable) to the experimental

group while not changing the treatment of the control group. After an appropriate amount of time for the drug to take effect, the subjects are tested again using the same criteria as were used for the pretest to determine any difference between the two groups as a result of the drug (dependent variable). When all the data are collected, they are statistically analyzed to determine if there is a reasonable basis to say that the effects of the new drug are significantly different from the effects of the old treatment (or no treatment) and not due to chance variations. This basic research design can be made more complicated to simultaneously answer multiple research questions, such as what dose of the new medication is most effective, whether increasing dosage levels of the medication results in more side effects, whether the drug is effective for some demographic groups but not others (e.g., only works well on adult females but not on adult males), or to compare several treatments at once.

## KEY TERMS

**Control group**—A group in a research study that does not receive the experimental treatment. For example, in an experiment testing the effectiveness of a new drug, the control group might receive the current drug of choice while the experimental group receives the new drug under investigation.

**Dependent variable**—The outcome variable in an experiment. For example, in a test of the effects of a new drug for the treatment of a disease, the effects of the drug on the disease (i.e., the change in symptoms after taking the drug) would be the dependent variable.

**Double-blind study**—A research study in which neither the participants nor the professional administering the drug or treatment know whether they are receiving the experimental treatment or a placebo or control treatment.

**Experimental group**—The group of participants in a research study who receive the experimental treatment or drug under investigation.

**Independent variable**—The variable in an experiment that is manipulated by researchers in order to determine its effects. For example, in a test of the

effects of a new drug on the treatment of a disease, whether or not the subjects received the new drug would be the independent variable.

**Informed consent**—A legal document prepared as an agreement for treatment or nontreatment that requires physicians to disclose the benefits, risks, and alternatives of the treatment. Informed consent allows fully informed, rational patients to be involved in the choices about their health.

**Placebo**—A preparation without pharmacological effect that is given in place of a drug in clinical trials to determine the effectiveness of the drug under study; a “sugar pill.”

**Randomization**—The process of randomly assigning participants in an experiment to the various conditions (i.e., experimental and control groups) so that each individual has an equal chance of being assigned to any of the groups. Randomization helps ensure that each of the groups is roughly the same and that the results are due to the treatment, not to the makeup of the groups.

**Research subject**—A participant in a research experiment or clinical trial.

There are several general types of clinical trials:

- treatment trials that test the relative effectiveness of new drugs or treatments or combinations of drugs and/or treatments
- prevention trials that investigate ways to prevent a disease in individuals who have not previously had it or to prevent its return in individuals who have previously had the condition
- diagnostic trials that seek to find better ways for diagnosing a disorder or illness
- screening trials to determine the best way to detect a disease or disorder
- quality-of-life trials that investigate how to make life easier or more normal for those with a chronic illness

Clinical trials typically have four phases. In Phase I, the experimental drug or treatment is tested on a small group of people to investigate its safety, determine a recommended dosage or range, and identify potential side effects. In Phase II, the experimental drug or treatment is tested on a larger group of people to further determine its effectiveness and safety. Phase III clinical trials examine the drug or treatment from an even wider perspective. The experimental drug or

treatment is given to large groups of people to confirm the findings of the previous studies on a larger population. Phase III clinical trials are also often used to compare the relative effectiveness of treatments and gather safety information. Finally, Phase IV clinical trials are run after a drug has been marketed. At this time a drug may undergo further studies to examine its risks, benefits, and optimal use.

### Considerations before entering a clinical trial as a subject

Clinical trials are necessary to help ensure the safety and effectiveness of a drug or treatment before it is put into general use. In addition, joining a clinical trial as a research subject may be of potential benefit to patients who have exhausted available treatment options without success. Clinical trials give patients the opportunity to try a new drug or treatment that may help their condition when conventional methods have failed. However, certain things must be considered before joining a clinical trial as a subject.

First, there is no guarantee that subjects in clinical trials will receive the new drug or treatment. They may

be randomly placed in the control group where they receive a placebo or conventional treatment rather than the new drug or treatment. There is no way to tell whether or not one will be in the experimental group or the control group. Frequently, even researchers or people administrating the treatment do not know which group the subject is in (this is called a double-blind study) so that their expectations will not unintentionally bias the results. Therefore, all other available treatment options should typically be tried before joining a clinical trial as a subject.

In addition, there is always the possibility of encountering unknown negative side effects from the new drug or treatment. For this reason, subjects in clinical trials are required to read, understand, and sign **informed consent** documents. The decision to join a clinical trial as a subject should always be made in conjunction with one's health care provider in order to reduce the risk of negative side effects from the treatment.

## Resources

### BOOKS

VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### ORGANIZATIONS

National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.clinicaltrials.gov>>.  
Pharmaceutical Research and Manufacturers of America (PhRMA). <<http://www.phrma.org>>.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Clomipramine

### Definition

Clomipramine is an antidepressant drug used primarily to alleviate obsessions and compulsions in patients with **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. Clomipramine is also used in the treatment of **depressive disorders** and in a number of other psychiatric and medical conditions. In the United States, the drug has also been known by the brand name Anafranil.

### Purpose

Clomipramine is principally used in the treatment of the obsessions and compulsions of obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), when these symptoms greatly disrupt the patient's daily activities. Obsessions are repetitive

thoughts and impulses, and compulsions are repetitive behaviors. Patients with OCD find these experiences inappropriate, distressing, and time-consuming.

Clomipramine may also be used in the treatment of depressive disorders, especially when associated with obsessions and compulsions, and in **panic disorder**, pain management, sleep attacks (**narcolepsy** and cataplexy), and **anorexia nervosa**. The drug may help to reduce compulsive behaviors in a variety of disorders with such symptoms, including **trichotillomania** (hair pulling), onychophagia (nail biting), Tourette's disorder (tics and vocalizations), and childhood **autism**.

### Description

Clomipramine is one of the tricyclic **antidepressants**, so-called because of the three-ring chemical structure common to these drugs. In the 1940s and 1950s, pharmaceutical researchers synthesized a number of new compounds for possible medical use as antihistamines and **sedatives**. After testing in animal experiments, a few of these substances were selected for human study. One potential drug, a tricyclic compound called **imipramine**, was not useful in calming agitation, but it had a striking effect in improving the mood of certain patients with **depression**.

Since the discovery of imipramine, many other tricyclic antidepressants have been developed with somewhat different pharmacological activities and side effect profiles. Within this group of drugs, clomipramine is exceptionally potent in affecting levels of serotonin in the **brain**. In this action, it is similar to serotonin-selective antidepressant drugs, like **fluoxetine** (Prozac), which act specifically on serotonin levels and are effective in OCD. Serotonin is a messenger chemical (neurotransmitter) involved in transmitting signals between nerve cells. Clomipramine reduces the effects on serotonin transmission in depression and OCD symptoms.

### Recommended dosage

For adults, clomipramine is administered in dosages up to a maximum of 250 mg per day. Starting with a dose of 25 mg, the dosage is increased during the first two weeks to 100 mg per day. If needed, it is further increased gradually over the next several weeks. The initial dose is low to avoid side effects, and it is increased slowly to permit the patient to develop tolerance or adapt to side effects that may occur.

## KEY TERMS

**Autonomic**—The part of the nervous system that governs the heart, involuntary muscles, and glands.

**Cataplexy**—A symptom of narcolepsy marked by a sudden episode of muscle weakness triggered by strong emotions. The muscle weakness may cause the person's knees to buckle, or the head to drop. In severe cases, the patient may become paralyzed for a few seconds or minutes.

**Epilepsy**—A neurological disorder characterized by the onset of seizures. Seizures are caused by a disturbance in the electrical activity in the brain and can cause loss of consciousness, muscle spasms, rhythmic movements, abnormal sensory experiences, or altered mental states.

**Kilogram**—A metric unit of weight. It equals 2.2 lbs.

**Monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decreases the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

Older patients (over age 65), children, and adolescents are more sensitive to the side effects and toxicities of tricyclic antidepressants such as clomipramine. The maximum daily dose is usually lower for elderly patients than for younger adults. For children and adolescents, the maximum recommended daily dose is the lesser of 100 mg or 3 mg per kg of body weight.

### Precautions

**Seizures** are the most important risk associated with clomipramine. Among patients taking the drug for six months or more, more than 1% may experience seizures. The risk of seizure increases with larger doses, and seizures have been reported to occur following abrupt discontinuation of the medication. Caution and physician supervision is required if the

patient has a history of epilepsy or some other condition associated with seizures, such as brain damage or alcoholism.

Clomipramine and other tricyclic antidepressants often cause drowsiness. Activities requiring alertness, such as driving, should be avoided until patients understand how the drug affects them. Dizziness or lightheadedness may occur on arising from a seated position, due to sudden decreases in blood pressure. Fainting may also occur. Some patients, especially men with prostate enlargement, may experience difficulty urinating. Glaucoma may be worsened. Sensitivity to ultraviolet light may increase, and sunburns may occur more easily.

Tricyclic antidepressants, including clomipramine, should be used with caution and physician supervision in patients with heart disease, because of the possibility of adverse effects on heart rhythm. Adverse effects on the heart occur frequently when tricyclics are taken in overdose. Only small quantities of these drugs should be given to patients who may be suicidal.

Tricyclic antidepressants may cause dry mouth, due to decreased saliva, possibly contributing to the development of tooth decay, gum disease, and mouth infections. Patients should avoid sweets, sugary beverages, and chewing gum containing sugar.

It has not been determined whether clomipramine is safe to take during pregnancy, and the patient's need for this medicine should be balanced against the possibility of harm to the fetus. Tricyclic antidepressants may be secreted in breast milk, and may cause sedation and depress the breathing of a nursing infant.

### Side effects

Clomipramine may cause many side effects. Initially, the side effects of tricyclic drugs may be more pronounced, but sensitivity often decreases with continued treatment.

The following more common side effects are grouped by the body system affected:

- cardiovascular: Decreases of blood pressure upon arising, which may cause dizziness or fainting, increases of blood pressure, rapid heart rate, pounding heart, altered heart rhythm.
- nervous system: Sedation, dizziness, headache, confusion, nervousness, restlessness, sleep difficulties, numbness, tingling sensations, tremors, twitches, increased seizure tendency.

- digestive system: Dry mouth, nausea, loss of appetite, indigestion, and constipation.
- autonomic: Blurred vision, increased sweating.
- genital/urinary: Difficulty urinating, menstrual pain, ejaculatory difficulty, impotence, decreased sex drive.
- skin: Rashes, sensitivity to sunlight.
- body as a whole: Fatigue, weight gain, flushing.

Less commonly, tricyclic drugs may cause adverse effects on almost any organ or system of the body, particularly the blood, hormones, kidney, and liver. Patients should consult their physicians if symptoms develop or bodily changes appear.

## Interactions

Tricyclic antidepressants, such as clomipramine, may interact with many other drugs. Patients should inform their physicians about all other drugs they are taking before starting treatment.

Clomipramine may intensify the effects of other drugs that act on serotonin levels, possibly producing serotonin syndrome, a rare but dangerous condition with fever, sweating, tremors, and changes in mental state. Drugs that may interact this way include other antidepressants, especially selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) drugs and monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors. These drugs should not be taken within two weeks of taking clomipramine. Other drugs to avoid include lithium, **alprazolam** (Xanax), fenfluramine (Pondimin), amphetamine, dextromethorphan (used in cough suppressants), meperidine (Demerol), and tramadol (Ultram).

Tricyclic drugs may intensify the effects of other drugs causing sedation, including alcohol, **barbiturates**, narcotic pain medications, minor tranquilizers, and antihistamines. Tricyclics may cause excessive reductions of blood pressure in patients taking blood pressure medicine, especially upon standing from a sitting or reclined position. Conversely, these drugs may interfere with the pressure-reducing effects of certain other blood pressure medicines and may necessitate an adjustment in dosage. Tricyclics may interact with thyroid medications to produce abnormalities of heart rhythm. Concurrent use of tricyclic antidepressants with other psychiatric medicines may result in intensification of certain side effects.

Certain drugs may interfere with the elimination of tricyclic antidepressants from the body, causing higher blood levels and increased side effects. This effect may occur with cimetidine (Tagamet), other antidepressants, **methylphenidate** (Ritalin, Concerta), and some antipsychotic medications.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Maina, Giuseppe, Umberto Albert, and Filippo Bogetto. “Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder Resistant to Pharmacological Treatment.” *Obsessive Compulsive Disorder Research*. Hauppauge, NY: Nova Biomedical Books, 2005, 171–99.

Preston, John D., John H. O’Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

Simpson, H. Blair, and Michael R. Liebowitz. “Combining Pharmacotherapy and Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy in the Treatment of OCD.” *Concepts and Controversies in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder*. New York: Springer Science, (2005) 359–76.

### PERIODICALS

Anderson, Shawanda W., and Marvin B. Booker. “Cognitive Behavioral Therapy Versus Psychosurgery for Refractory Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder.” *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 18.1 (Winter 2006): 129.

Fineberg, Naomi A., and Tim M. Gale. “Evidence-Based Pharmacotherapy of Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder.” *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology* 8.1 (Mar. 2005): 107–29.

Foa, Edna B., and others. “Randomized, Placebo-Controlled Trial of Exposure and Ritual Prevention, Clomipramine, and Their Combination in the Treatment of Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 162.1 (Jan. 2005): 151–61.

Shavitt, Roseli G., and others. “Clinical Features Associated with Treatment Response in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder.” *Comprehensive Psychiatry* 47.4 (Jul.–Aug. 2006): 276–81.

Simpson, Helen Blair, and others. “Response Versus Remission in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder.” *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.2 (Feb. 2006): 269–76.

Richard Kapit, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Clonazepam

### Definition

Clonazepam belongs to a group of drugs called benzodiazepines. **Benzodiazepines** are medications that help relieve nervousness, tension, symptoms of **anxiety**, and some types of **seizures** by slowing the central nervous system. In the United States, clonazepam is sold under brand name Klonopin.



**A clonazepam tablet (klonopin).** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by Permission.)

### Purpose

Although clonazepam is approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of **panic disorder** and some types of epilepsy, it is also used to treat **social phobia**, mania, and **post-traumatic stress disorder**.

### Description

Clonazepam belongs to a group of drugs called benzodiazepines. Benzodiazepines are sedative-hypnotic drugs that help to relieve nervousness, tension, anxiety symptoms, and seizures by slowing the central nervous system. To do this, they block the effects of a specific chemical involved in the transmission of nerve impulses in the **brain**, decreasing the excitement level of the nerve cells.

When clonazepam is used to treat panic disorder, it is more sedating than **alprazolam**, another benzodiazepine drug used to treat panic disorder. However, unlike alprazolam, clonazepam may trigger depressive episodes in patients with a previous history of **depression**. In people who experience social phobia, treatment with clonazepam reduces the rate of depression. The use of clonazepam for social phobia is considered an off-label use—a use that is legal, but not specifically approved by the FDA.

Clonazepam comes in 0.5 mg-, 1.0 mg-, and 2.0 mg-tablets.

### Recommended dosage

For panic disorder, the initial recommended dose is 0.25 mg twice daily. This dose can be increased every three days in increments of 0.125–0.25 mg twice daily. The target dose for panic disorder is 1.0 mg per day, although some people benefit from doses up to a

maximum of 4.0 mg per day. When a person stops taking clonazepam, the drug should be gradually discontinued by decreasing the dose by 0.125 mg twice daily every three days.

Although clonazepam is not FDA-approved for the treatment of post-traumatic stress disorder, doses in the range of 0.25–3.0 mg daily appear to help treat symptoms of this disorder. Daily dosages for the treatment of social phobia range from 1.0–2.5 mg, while the dosage to control mania may be as high as 10.0 mg daily.

### Precautions

Women who are pregnant should not use clonazepam, because it may harm the developing fetus. Clonazepam should never be taken by people who have had an allergic reaction to it or another benzodiazepine drug such as **diazepam** (Valium). People with narrow-angle glaucoma or severe liver disease should not take clonazepam. People who have kidney disease may need to take a reduced dosage of the drug. Saliva production may increase while taking clonazepam. Because of this, people with respiratory disease or an impaired gag reflex should use clonazepam with close physician supervision.

Because clonazepam is a nervous system depressant, it should not be taken with other such depressants, such as alcohol, other **sedatives**, sleeping pills, or tranquilizers. People taking clonazepam may feel unusually drowsy and mentally sluggish when they first start taking the drug. They should not drive, operate dangerous machinery, or engage in hazardous activities that require mental alertness until they see how clonazepam affects them. This excessive sedation usually goes away after a short time on the drug.

People who have underlying depression should be closely monitored while taking clonazepam, especially if they are at risk for attempting **suicide**.

### Side effects

The main side effects of clonazepam are sedation, dizziness, impaired coordination, depression, and **fatigue**. Some people experience decreased sex drive while taking clonazepam.

A small number of people develop sinus problems and upper respiratory tract infections while taking clonazepam. One of the side effects of clonazepam may be increased salivation. This may cause some people to start coughing while taking clonazepam. Clonazepam may also cause anorexia and dry mouth. It may cause either constipation or diarrhea.

## KEY TERMS

**Anorexia**—Loss of appetite or unwillingness to eat. Can be caused by medications, depression, and/or many other factors.

**Benzodiazapines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye, significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

There are a few reports of clonazepam causing menstrual irregularities or blurred vision.

### Interactions

Clonazepam may increase the sedative effects of other drugs that depress the central nervous system such as certain strong pain medicines ( opiates such as codeine, oxycodone, hydromorphone) and antihistamines (found in many cold and allergy medications). The sedative effect is also increased if clonazepam is taken with alcohol.

**Disulfiram** (Antabuse), a medication used to treat alcohol dependence, increases the effect of clonazepam. Medications that make clonazepam ineffective include phenobarbital, phenytoin, **carbamazepine**, theophylline, rifampin, and rifabutin.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Hudson, OH: Lexi-Comp, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

Nardi, Antonio E., and Giampaolo Perna. "Clonazepam in the Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders: An Update." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 21.3 (May 2006): 131–42.

Paparrigopoulos, Thomas J. "REM Sleep Behaviour Disorder: Clinical Profiles and Pathophysiology." *International Review of Psychiatry* 17.4 (Aug. 2005): 293–300.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Clonidine

### Definition

Clonidine belongs to a class of drugs called central alpha-adrenergic agonists. In the United States, clonidine tablets are sold under the brand name Catapres and clonidine skin patches are sold under the brand name Catapres-TTS. The tablets are also available generically. There is also an injectable form that is administered directly into the spinal cord for the treatment of postoperative pain.

### Purpose

Clonidine tablets and patches are approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of high blood pressure. In addition, clonidine has been found to be useful in the treatment of alcohol, opiate, and **nicotine** withdrawal syndromes, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD), and Tourette's syndrome, which is one of the **tic disorders**.

### Description

Clonidine was synthesized in 1960s and was initially tested as a nasal decongestant. In the United States, clonidine was first used to treat hypertension although it has also been investigated for treatment of different neuropsychiatric disorders. Clonidine works on specific nerve cells in the **brain** that are responsible for lowering blood pressure, slowing heart rate, and decreasing the body's reaction to the withdrawal of chemicals like alcohol, opiates, **cocaine**, and nicotine. Because of this, clonidine is often used to treat the symptoms of drug, alcohol, and nicotine withdrawal.

Clonidine is beneficial in opiate withdrawal because it treats symptoms that are commonly associated with that condition (watery eyes and nose, diarrhea, irritability). For this condition, clonidine is often used alone. For the treatment of alcohol withdrawal, clonidine is usually combined with benzodiazepine tranquilizers such as Librium, Valium, Xanax, or Ativan.

Several studies of treatment for **smoking cessation** showed patients treated with clonidine had decreased nicotine craving. Clonidine skin patches appear to be more effective than tablets in this condition. Both dermal patches and tablets are effective in the treatment of Tourette's syndrome and ADHD.

Clonidine tablets are available in 0.1 mg, 0.2 mg, and 0.3 mg strengths. Clonidine skin patches are available in 0.1 mg, 0.2 mg, and 0.3 mg per day patches. Each patch lasts seven days.

## Recommended dosage

Dosages of 0.4–0.6 mg have been used for the treatment of alcohol withdrawal. Total daily dosage for the treatment of opiate withdrawal range between 0.5 and 1.4 mg, depending on the stage as well as the severity of withdrawal symptoms. If the clonidine patch is used to treat nicotine withdrawal symptoms, dosages that deliver 0.1–0.2 mg daily are used. For oral therapy (tablets), a total dosage of 0.2–0.4 mg daily is taken in divided doses.

Pediatric doses of clonidine are calculated based on the child's body weight. Clonidine dosage for ADHD in children is 5 micrograms per kilogram of body weight per day orally in four divided doses. Children who require a daily dosage of 0.2 mg usually can use the 0.3 mg dermal patch. If ADHD is associated with sleep disturbances, low to moderate doses of clonidine can be taken at bedtime. Oral doses in children with Tourette's syndrome range from 3–6 micrograms per kilogram of body weight per day divided into two to four even doses.

## Precautions

Clonidine should not be used by people who have a known allergy to this drug. If a person has underlying **depression**, clonidine should be used with caution and under close physician supervision.

Clonidine should not be abruptly withdrawn, but rather slowly decreased over several days to avoid withdrawal symptoms. Withdrawal symptoms include an increase in blood pressure, irritability, nervousness, **insomnia**, and headache. Because of the possibility of withdrawal, clonidine should not be used in patients who are unwilling or unable to follow the prescribing information.

Clonidine should be used only with caution and close physician supervision in patients with chronic renal failure, coronary artery disease, and in patients with preexisting eye problems. People with kidney disease may need to take a reduced dosage. Clonidine should not be used by pregnant women, except in the rare case where the benefits of taking clonidine outweigh the risks to the developing fetus.

## Side effects

The most common side effect associated with clonidine is dizziness accompanying sudden changes in position such as standing up rapidly. In order to avoid this, patients should stand up slowly. People using the dermal patch may develop rash, hair loss, a burning sensation on the skin, or other skin irritations where

## KEY TERMS

**Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)**—A learning and behavioral disorder characterized by difficulty in sustaining attention, impulsive behavior, and excessive activity.

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Tourette's syndrome**—Neurological disorder characterized by multiple involuntary movements and uncontrollable vocalizations called tics that come and go over the span of years, usually beginning in childhood and becoming chronic. Sometimes the tics include inappropriate language.

the patch is applied. Switching to tablets may not completely eliminate these skin problems.

Clonidine can cause dry mouth, constipation, nausea, daytime sleepiness, weakness, and lethargy. These side effects may take several weeks to disappear. In some cases, these side effects can be eliminated with dosage readjustment. In addition, clonidine may cause eye dryness, loss of sex drive, and decreased sexual activity.

If patients experience weight gain in the beginning of therapy, they can expect this side effect to decline over a period of several days to weeks.

## Interactions

Clonidine's blood pressure-lowering effects may be enhanced by other drugs that also lower blood pressure. Conversely, the blood pressure-lowering effects of clonidine may be negated by many **antidepressants**.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Hudson, OH: Lexi-Comp, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

Favrat, B., and others. "Opioid Antagonist Detoxification Under Anaesthesia Versus Traditional Clonidine Detoxification Combined with an Additional Week of Psychosocial Support: A Randomised Clinical Trial." *Drug and Alcohol Dependence* 81.2 (Feb. 2006): 109–16.

- Friemoth, Jerry. "What Is the Most Effective Treatment For ADHD in Children?" *Journal of Family Practice* 54.2 (Feb. 2005): 166–68.
- Marsch, Lisa A., and others. "Comparison of Pharmacological Treatments for Opioid-Dependent Adolescents: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 62.10 (Oct. 2005): 1157–64.
- Ponizovsky, Alexander M., and others. "Well-Being, Psychosocial Factors, and Side-Effects Among Heroin-Dependent Inpatients After Detoxification Using Buprenorphine Versus Clonidine." *Addictive Behaviors* 31.11 (Nov. 2006): 2002–2013.
- Schnoes, Connie J., and others. "Pediatric Prescribing Practices for Clonidine and Other Pharmacologic Agents for Children With Sleep Disturbance." *Clinical Pediatrics* 45.3 (Apr. 2006): 229–38.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Clorazepate

### Definition

Clorazepate is a medication that belongs to a family of drugs called benzodiazepines—a group of pharmacologically active compounds used to produce a calming effect by relieving **anxiety** and tension. In the United States, clorazepate is sold under brand names Tranxene and Gen-XENE.

### Purpose

Clorazepate is used for the treatment of anxiety and alcohol withdrawal. Moreover, clorazepate is an adjunct in the management of partial **seizures**.

### Description

Clorazepate binds to different sites in the **brain**, causing them to shift into a state that is less excitable. It is very effective in treating **anxiety and anxiety disorders**. Moreover, anxiety associated with undergoing surgical procedures is controlled with clorazepate. Clorazepate alone is not efficacious in treating seizures; however, if used along with other standard seizure medications, such as phenobarbital, primidone, phenytoin, **carbamazepine**, and **valproic acid**, better seizure control may be achieved. Convulsions and anxiety associated with alcohol withdrawal are controlled with clorazepate.

Clorazepate is available in two different formulations. Clorazepate tablets come in 3.75 mg, 7.5 mg,

and 15.0 mg doses, while slow-release tablets, administered once daily, are available in 11.25 mg and 22.5 mg strengths. Capsules are available in 3.75 mg, 7.5 mg, and 15.0 mg strengths.

### Recommended dosage

If used for anxiety, the dose of clorazepate usually ranges anywhere from 15 mg to 60 mg daily in divided dose intervals. Usually, however, the average dose is 30 mg daily given in two to four doses. If slow-release formulation is used, the dose of either 11.25 mg or 22.5 mg is usually administered at bedtime. Slow-release products should not be used to initiate therapy.

Doses of clorazepate for the management of seizures differ in adult and pediatric populations. Patients who are nine to 12 years of age should be started on 3.75–7.5 mg twice daily. This dose should be increased by no more than 3.75 mg weekly. The maximum dose per day is 60 mg administered in two to three divided doses. Children older than 12 and adults should receive 7.5 mg two to three times daily. This can be increased to a higher dose by adding 7.5 mg at weekly intervals. The total daily dose should not exceed 90 mg daily administered in two to three doses. In patients undergoing alcohol withdrawal, the first dose is 30 mg. Treatment is continued with 15 mg two to four times daily for the maximum dose of 90 mg in one day. Once maximum dose is achieved, the dose is gradually decreased over subsequent days.

### Precautions

Pregnant women should not take clorazepate. Patients who have narrow-angle glaucoma should not take clorazepate, as this may worsen their condition. Clorazepate should not be used in patients younger than nine years of age.

If **depression** coexists with anxiety, clorazepate should be used with caution as suicidal tendencies may be present. (One of the side effects with this medication is depression; if a patient has an underlying problem with depression, that problem can be exacerbated with clorazepate.) Patients should be cautioned against engaging in hazardous occupations requiring mental alertness, since clorazepate causes drowsiness and dizziness. Abrupt discontinuation of clorazepate has been associated with withdrawal symptoms and seizures. Hence, doses of clorazepate should be slowly decreased in patients who have been taking clorazepate continuously over several weeks. Other withdrawal symptoms may include nervousness, **insomnia**, irritability, diarrhea, and muscle aches. The doses for elderly

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

patients, as well as patients with liver or kidney problems, may need to be decreased.

### Side effects

The most common side effects include drowsiness, dizziness, and confusion. There are a few reports about behavioral changes associated with the use of clorazepate and they include rage, depression, irritability, and aggression.

Other side effects include vision disturbances—such as blurred and double vision—decreased libido, nausea, vomiting, either decreased or increased appetite, and diarrhea or constipation. In a few cases, clorazepate has been associated with liver toxicity where patients developed jaundice or fever. It is also known to cause a rash.

### Interactions

Simultaneous use of clorazepate and dong quai, a Chinese herb, has been associated with excessive muscle relaxation and central nervous system depression. Other herbs that should not be used with clorazepate include **ginkgo biloba** and **kava kava**.

Omeprazole, a medication used to treat heartburn, should not be used together with clorazepate. Medicines to treat disorders associated with increased acid secretions—such as ranitidine, sucralfate, and pantoprazole—are not contraindicated with clorazepate. **Valerian**, an herb used as a sleep aid, binds to the same receptors in the brain as clorazepate; thus, the desired effects of clorazepate may not be seen in patients taking it and valerian at the same time.

Clorazepate may increase the effects of other drugs that cause drowsiness. These drugs include antihistamines (such as Benadryl), **sedatives** (usually used to treat insomnia), pain relievers, anxiety and seizure medicines, and muscle relaxants. Alcohol combined with clorazepate also causes excessive drowsiness.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Antianxiety drugs and abuse-related disorders; Depression and depressive disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

Lelong-Boulouard, Véronique, and others. "Interactions of Buprenorphine and Dipotassium Clorazepate on Anxiety and Memory Functions in the Mouse." *Drug and Alcohol Dependence* 85.2 (Nov. 2006): 103–13.

Millan, Mark J., and others. "Anxiolytic Properties of Agomelatine, an Antidepressant with Melatonergic and Serotonergic Properties: Role of 5-HT-Sub (2C) Receptor Blockade." *Psychopharmacology* 177.4 (Feb. 2005): 1–12.

Quentin, Thomas, and others. "Clorazepate Affects Cell Surface Regulation of  $\delta$  and  $\kappa$  Opioid Receptors, Thereby Altering Buprenorphine-Induced Adaptation in the Rat Brain." *Brain Research* 1063.1 (Nov. 2005): 84–95.

Rowlett, James K., and others. "Anti-Conflict Effects of Benzodiazepines in Rhesus Monkeys: Relationship with Therapeutic Doses in Humans and Role of GABA-Sub(A) Receptors." *Psychopharmacology* 184.2 (Jan. 2006): 201–11.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Clozapine

### Definition

Clozapine is an antipsychotic drug used to alleviate the symptoms and signs of schizophrenia—a form of severe mental illness—that is characterized by loss of contact with reality, **hallucinations**, **delusions**, and unusual behavior. In the United States, the drug is also known by the brand name Clozaril.

### Purpose

Clozapine is principally used to reduce the signs and symptoms of severe schizophrenic illness. The drug is intended for use in patients with severe **schizophrenia** who have not responded to any other antipsychotic drug. Clozapine is also used in patients with



**Clozapine tablet.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

severe schizophrenia when other antipsychotic medications have caused intolerable side effects.

### Description

Clozapine is considered an atypical antipsychotic drug. Atypical antipsychotics differ from typical antipsychotics in their effectiveness in schizophrenia and their profile of side effects. Clozapine may reduce the signs and symptoms of schizophrenia in a large proportion of patients with treatment-resistant schizophrenia who do not respond to typical antipsychotics. Moreover, the drug is less likely than typical antipsychotics to cause **tardive dyskinesia** and other extrapyramidal side effects. Tardive dyskinesia is a syndrome of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may not disappear or may only partially improve after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face, or other groups of skeletal muscles. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and with increasing dosage. It may also appear after the use of the antipsychotic has stopped. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known effective treatment for this syndrome, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

Clozapine was the first atypical antipsychotic drug to be developed. In the late 1980s, clozapine was tested in severely ill patients with schizophrenia who had been treated with a typical antipsychotic drug but had not shown much improvement. A significant proportion of these patients improved as a result of treatment with clozapine.

The superiority of clozapine in patients resistant to treatment is considered an important advance, but the drug is not without problems. Clozapine is gener-

ally considered the most toxic of the antipsychotic drugs. It causes agranulocytosis, a life-threatening depletion of white blood cells, in 1–2% of patients. It also causes epileptic **seizures** and adverse effects on the heart and blood pressure more frequently than other antipsychotic medicines. Clozapine is usually reserved for the most severely ill patients with schizophrenia who have not responded to other treatments. Other atypical antipsychotic drugs have been developed in recent years, and they are considered safer to use than clozapine.

The mechanisms of action of antipsychotic drugs are not completely understood. The effect of clozapine is believed to be related to its actions in blocking neurotransmission due to the **neurotransmitters dopamine** and serotonin in a region of the **brain** called the limbic system, which is involved with emotions and motivation. The actions of clozapine may target the limbic system more specifically than those of typical antipsychotic drugs.

Recently, the effectiveness of clozapine was evaluated in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of **Intervention Effectiveness** (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study. This study evaluated the effectiveness and side effects of newer antipsychotic drugs (sometimes referred to as atypical antipsychotics)—including clozapine—in comparison to a conventional antipsychotic drug in the treatment of schizophrenia.

In Phase I of the study it was found that the newer antipsychotic medications—including clozapine—were not significantly more effective than the less expensive, conventional antipsychotic medications. In Phase II of the study, it was found that participants who had not benefited from their first antipsychotic medication tended to be effectively treated by clozapine. It was further found that for these patients, clozapine worked significantly better than other atypical antipsychotics. The conventional antipsychotic, however, was not included in this phase of the study.

The study results also showed that clozapine is often a good choice of medication for patients who did not respond well to other antipsychotic medications. It was more effective in controlling symptoms than the other atypical antipsychotics under evaluation. For patients whose symptoms are not well-controlled on clozapine, **olanzapine** and **risperidone** tended to be more effective than **ziprasidone** or **quetiapine**.

### Recommended dosage

Clozapine is available as 25 mg and 100 mg tablets. The usual dosage of clozapine is 300–600 mg per day; however, some patients may require daily dosages

of up to 900 mg. To minimize side effects, the initial dose of clozapine is 12.5 mg (one-half tablet) twice a day, and the dose is increased by 25–50 mg each day, until the dose reaches 300–450 mg per day. The daily dosage of the drug is then determined based on the individual patient's response, but increases should not exceed 100 mg once or twice a week.

### Precautions

Clozapine may cause agranulocytosis, a life-threatening depletion of white blood cells. The blood cells affected by clozapine defend the body against infections by bacteria and other microorganisms, and patients with agranulocytosis are subject to severe infections. Clozapine treatment is reserved for the most severely ill patients with schizophrenia who have not responded to other treatments. Clozapine is available only through a distribution system that assures close monitoring of white blood cells. Patients must have white blood cell counts determined before starting treatment, then once every week for the first six months, once every other week after that, and once a week for the first month after clozapine treatment is stopped.

Clozapine may cause epileptic seizures in about 5% of patients. The frequency of seizures goes up as the dose of the drug is increased. Patients who experience seizures on clozapine should usually discontinue the drug or reduce the dose. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS), a dangerous condition with high fever, muscular rigidity, rapid pulse, sweating, and altered mental state, may occur with all antipsychotic medications, including clozapine. NMS requires immediate medical treatment.

Clozapine frequently causes sedation and may interfere with driving and other tasks requiring alertness. The drug may increase the effects of alcohol and **sedatives**. Clozapine may cause low blood pressure and sudden drops in blood pressure on standing up, which may cause dizziness or fainting. Elevated heart rate may occur in 25% of patients; this effect may be a serious risk for patients with heart disease. Clozapine-induced fever, unrelated to any illness, may occur. The fever usually subsides within a few days, but it may require discontinuing the drug.

The safety and effectiveness of clozapine in children under 16 years old have not been established. Elderly patients may be particularly sensitive to sedation, low blood pressure, and other side effects. The drug should be used with caution in older patients. Clozapine should be used in pregnant women only when strictly necessary. The drug has not been

adequately studied in pregnancy. In animal studies, however, clozapine has not produced harmful effects on the fetus. Clozapine may be secreted in breast milk, and breast-feeding may not be advisable.

### Side effects

Clozapine may cause many side effects. The following side effects are grouped by the body system affected:

- cardiovascular: decreases of blood pressure, especially on arising from a seated or lying position, which may cause dizziness or fainting; rapid heart rate; changes in heart rhythm; and electrocardiogram
- nervous system: sedation, increased seizure tendency
- digestive system: increased appetite, excessive salivation, nausea, constipation, abnormal liver tests, elevated blood sugar
- autonomic: blurred vision, exacerbation of glaucoma, dry mouth, nasal congestion, decreased sweating, difficulty urinating, particularly in men with enlarged prostate
- skin: rashes
- body as a whole: weight gain, fever

### Interactions

Clozapine may interact with many other drugs. Patients should inform their physicians about all other drugs they are taking before starting treatment. Because of the risk of agranulocytosis, clozapine should not be given along with medications that suppress production of blood cells.

Clozapine may intensify the effects of drugs causing sedation, including alcohol, **barbiturates**, narcotic pain medications, minor tranquilizers, and antihistamines. Similarly, clozapine may cause excessive reductions of blood pressure in patients taking other medicines that lower blood pressure. Clozapine may also intensify side effects of drugs that cause blurred vision, dry mouth, diminished sweating in hot weather, and constipation. Many other antipsychotics and **antidepressants** cause such side effects.

Clozapine may increase the effects of other medications that also lower seizure threshold (make it more likely to have seizures), such as steroid drugs, the asthma medication theophylline, and many other psychiatric drugs. Patients with epilepsy may require adjustment in their dosage of antiseizure medications. Lithium may increase the risk of seizures and other nervous system adverse effects when given with clozapine.

## KEY TERMS

**Agranulocytosis**—A blood disorder characterized by a reduction in the number of circulating white blood cells (granulocytes). White blood cells defend the body against infections. Agranulocytosis is a potential side effect of some of the newer antipsychotic medications used to treat schizophrenia.

**Antipsychotic drug**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. These drugs may be used to treat symptoms in other disorders, as well.

**Autonomic**—The part of the nervous system that governs the heart, involuntary muscles, and glands.

**Epilepsy**—A neurological disorder characterized by the onset of seizures. Seizures are caused by a disturbance in the electrical activity in the brain and can cause loss of consciousness, muscle spasms, rhythmic movements, abnormal sensory experiences, or altered mental states.

**Extrapyramidal side effects**—A group of neurological side effects including muscle spasms, involuntary movements, and symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease (also called drug-induced parkinsonism).

**Parkinson's disease**—A disease of the nervous system most common in people over 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face, or other groups of skeletal muscles. The condition usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

Certain drugs that are eliminated by the liver may interfere with the elimination of clozapine from the body, causing higher blood levels and increased side effects. Conversely, clozapine may interfere with the elimination of other drugs that are eliminated by the liver. Antidepressants that affect brain serotonin levels may increase blood levels of clozapine, possibly causing increased side effects.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

Taylor, David, Robert Kerwin, and Carol Paton. *The Maudsley 2005–2006 Prescribing Guidelines*. New York: Taylor and Francis, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

Brunette, Mary F., and others. "Clozapine Use and Relapses of Substance Use Disorder Among Patients With Co-occurring Schizophrenia and Substance Use Disorders." *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 32.4 (Oct. 2006): 637–43.

Essock, S. M., and others. "Effectiveness of Switching Antipsychotic Medications." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.12 (Dec. 2006): 2090–95.

Lamberti, J. Steven, and others. "Prevalence of the Metabolic Syndrome Among Patients Receiving Clozapine." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.7 (July 2006): 1273–76.

Lieberman, J. A., and others. "Effectiveness of Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia." *New England Journal of Medicine* 353.12 (Sept. 22, 2005): 1209–23.

Luchins, Daniel J. "In the Aftermath of CATIE: How Should Administrators Value Atypical Antipsychotic Medications?" *Administration and Policy in Mental Health and Mental Health Services Research* 33.5 (Sept. 2006): 541–43.

McEvoy, J. P., and others. "Effectiveness of Clozapine Versus Olanzapine, Quetiapine, and Risperidone in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia Who Did Not Respond to Prior Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 600–610.

Miodownik, Chanoch, and others. "The Effect of Sudden Clozapine Discontinuation on Management of Schizophrenic Patients: A Retrospective Controlled Study." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.8 (Aug. 2006): 1204–1208.

Rocha, Fábio Lopes, and Cláudia Hara. "Benefits of Combining Aripiprazole to Clozapine: Three Case Reports." *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry* 30.6 (July 2006): 1167–69.

Shaw, Philip, and Judith L. Rapoport. "Decision Making About Children With Psychotic Symptoms: Using the Best Evidence in Choosing a Treatment." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.11 (Nov. 2006): 1381–86.

Shaw, Phillip, and others. "Childhood-Onset Schizophrenia: A Double-Blind, Randomized Clozapine-Olanzapine Comparison." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.7 (July 2006): 721–30.

### OTHER

CATIE. *CATIE: Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness Schizophrenia Study*. 2003. <<http://www.catie.unc.edu/schizophrenia>>.

National Institutes of Health. *CATIE Schizophrenia Trial*. 2006. <<http://www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct/show/NCT00014001?order=1>>.

Richard Kapit, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Clozaril see **Clozapine**

## Cocaine and related disorders

### Definition

Cocaine is extracted from the coca plant, which grows in Central and South America. The substance is processed into many forms for use as an illegal drug of abuse. Cocaine is dangerously addictive, and users of the drug experience a “high”—a feeling of euphoria or intense happiness, along with hypervigilance, increased sensitivity, irritability or anger, impaired judgment, and anxiety.

### Forms of the drug

In its most common form, cocaine is a whitish crystalline powder that produces feelings of euphoria when ingested. In powder form, cocaine is known by such street names as “coke,” “blow,” “C,” “flake,” “snow” and “toot.” It is most commonly inhaled or snorted. It may also be dissolved in water and injected.

Crack is a form of cocaine that can be smoked and that produces an immediate, more intense, and more short-lived high. It comes in off-white chunks or chips called “rocks.”

In addition to their stand-alone use, both cocaine and crack are often mixed with other substances. Cocaine may be mixed with methcathinone to create a “wildcat.” Cigars may be hollowed out and filled with a mixture of crack and marijuana. Either cocaine or crack used in conjunction with heroin is called a “speedball.” Cocaine used together with alcohol represents the most common fatal two-drug combination.

### Description

Cocaine-related disorders is a very broad topic. According to the mental health clinician’s handbook, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revised (also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*), the broad category of cocaine-related disorders can be subdivided into two categories: cocaine use disorders and cocaine-induced disorders. Cocaine use disorders include cocaine dependence and cocaine abuse. Cocaine-induced disorders include:

- cocaine intoxication
- cocaine withdrawal
- cocaine intoxication delirium
- cocaine-induced psychotic disorder, with delusions
- cocaine-induced psychotic disorder, with hallucinations
- cocaine-induced mood disorder
- cocaine-induced anxiety disorder
- cocaine-induced sexual dysfunction

- cocaine-induced sleep disorder
- cocaine-related disorder not otherwise specified

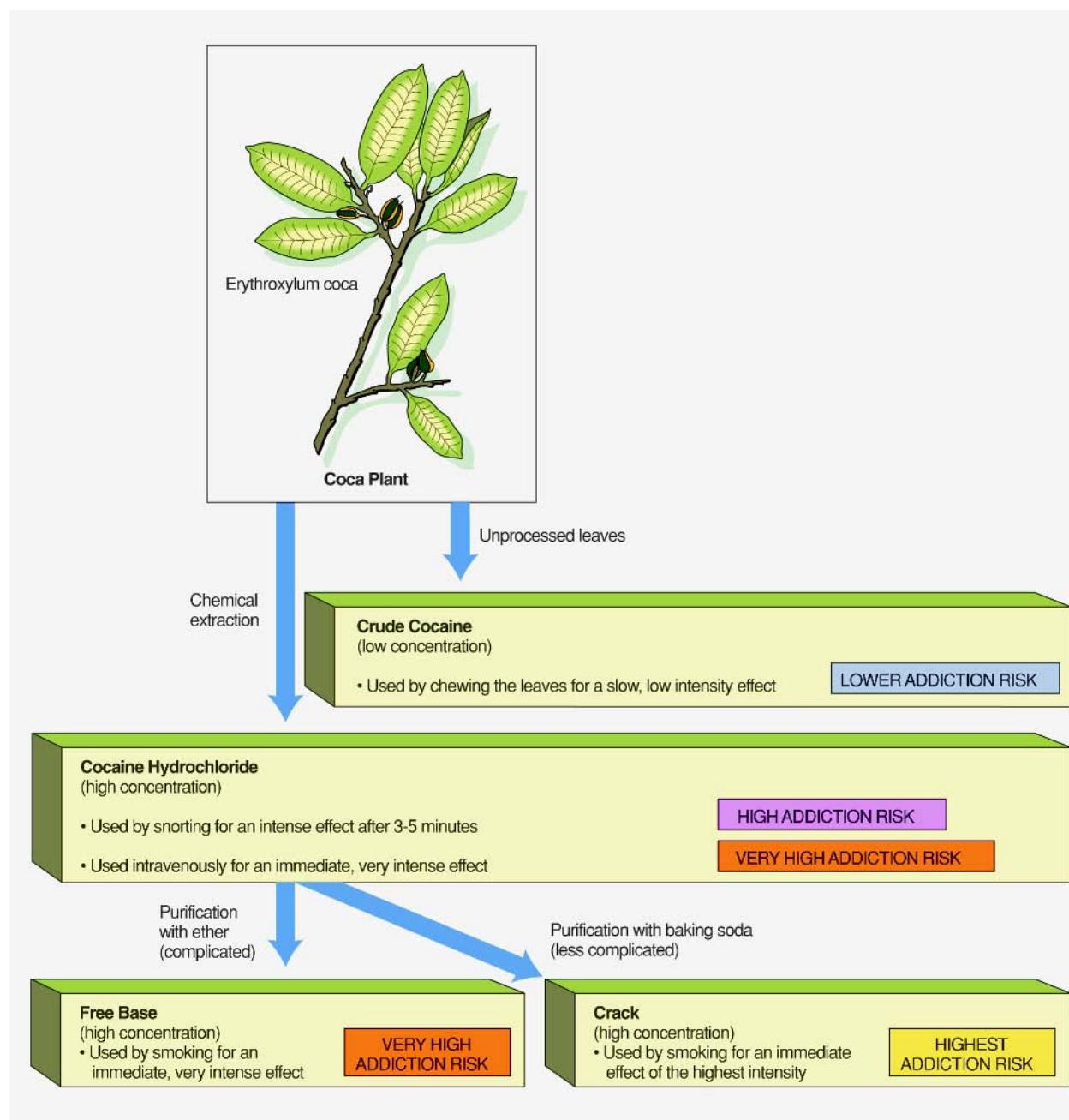
### Cocaine use disorders

**COCAINE ABUSE.** For the cocaine abuser, the use of the substance leads to maladaptive behavior over a 12-month period. The person may fail to meet responsibilities at school, work, or home. The cocaine abuse impairs the affected person’s judgment, and he or she puts him- or herself in physical danger to use the substance. For example, the individual may use cocaine in an unsafe environment. The person who abuses cocaine may be arrested or charged with possession of the substance, yet will continue to use cocaine despite all of the personal and legal problems that may result.

**COCAINE DEPENDENCE.** Cocaine dependence is even more serious than cocaine abuse. Dependence is a maladaptive behavior that, over a three-month period, has caused the affected individual to experience tolerance for and withdrawal symptoms from cocaine. Tolerance is the need to increase the amount of cocaine intake to achieve the same desired effect. In other words, someone who is dependent on cocaine needs more cocaine to produce the same “high” that a lesser amount produced in the past. The dependent person also experiences cocaine withdrawal. Withdrawal symptoms develop within hours or days after cocaine use that has been heavy and prolonged and then abruptly stopped. The symptoms include irritable mood and two or more of the following symptoms: **fatigue**, nightmares, difficulty sleeping or too much sleep, elevated appetite, agitation (restlessness), or slowed physical movements. The onset of withdrawal symptoms can cause a person to use more cocaine to avoid these painful and uncomfortable symptoms. The dependent person uses larger amounts of cocaine for longer periods of time than intended. He or she cannot cut back on the use of the substance, often has a difficult time resisting cocaine when it is available, and may abandon work or school to spend more time acquiring and planning to acquire more cocaine. The individual continues to use the cocaine despite the negative effects it has on family life, work and school.

### Cocaine-induced disorders

**COCAINE INTOXICATION.** Cocaine intoxication occurs after recent cocaine use. The person experiences a feeling of intense happiness, hypervigilance, increased sensitivity, irritability or anger, with impaired judgement, and anxiety. The intoxication impairs the person’s ability to function at work, school, or in social situations. Two or more of the following symptoms are present immediately after the use of the cocaine:



Various forms of cocaine (including the coca plant) and the addiction risks associated with them. (Chart by Hans & Cassidy)

- enlarged pupils
- elevated heart rate
- elevated or lowered blood pressure
- chills and increased sweating
- nausea or vomiting
- weight loss
- agitation or slowed movements
- weak muscles
- chest pain
- coma
- confusion
- irregular heartbeat
- depressed respiration
- seizures
- odd postures
- odd movements

**COCAINE WITHDRAWAL.** As mentioned, withdrawal symptoms develop within hours or days after cocaine use that has been heavy and prolonged and then abruptly stopped. The symptoms include irritable mood and two or more of the following symptoms: fatigue, nightmares, difficulty sleeping or too much sleep, elevated appetite, agitation (restlessness), or slowed physical movements.

**COCAINE-INDUCED DELIRIUM.** According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, several criteria must be met in order for a health care professional to establish the **diagnosis** of cocaine-induced delirium. Patients have a disturbance of their level of consciousness or awareness, evidenced by drowsiness or an inability to concentrate or pay attention. Patients also experience a change in their cognition (ability to think) evidenced by a deficit in their language or their memory. For example, these patients may forget where they have placed an item, or their speech is confusing. These symptoms have rapid onset within hours or days of using cocaine and the symptoms fluctuate throughout the course of the day. These findings cannot be explained by **dementia** (state of impaired thought processes and memory that can be caused by various diseases and conditions) and the doctor must not be able to recognize some other physical reason that can account for the symptoms other than cocaine intoxication.

**COCAINE-INDUCED PSYCHOTIC DISORDER, WITH DELUSIONS.** The person with this disorder has experienced intoxication or withdrawal from cocaine within a month from the time he or she begins to experience delusions (beliefs that the person continues to maintain, despite evidence to the contrary). In order for this state to be considered cocaine-induced psychotic disorder, these symptoms cannot be due to another condition or substance.

**COCAINE-INDUCED PSYCHOTIC DISORDER, WITH HALLUCINATIONS.** This condition is the same as cocaine-induced psychotic disorder with delusions, except that this affected individual experiences hallucinations instead of delusions. Hallucinations can be described as hearing and seeing things that are not real.

**COCAINE-INDUCED MOOD DISORDER.** The person with this disorder has experienced intoxication or withdrawal from cocaine within a month from the time he or she begins to experience depressed, elevated, or irritable mood with **apathy** (lack of empathy for others, and lack of showing a broad range of appropriate emotions).

**COCAINE-INDUCED ANXIETY DISORDER.** The person with this disorder has experienced intoxication or withdrawal from cocaine within a month from the time he or

she begins to experience anxiety, panic attacks, obsessions, or compulsions. Panic attacks are discrete episodes of intense anxiety. Persons affected with panic attacks may experience accelerated heart rate, shaking or trembling, sweating, shortness of breath, or fear of going crazy or losing control, as well as other symptoms. An **obsession** is an unwelcome, uncontrollable, persistent idea, thought, image, or emotion that a person cannot help thinking even though it creates significant distress or anxiety. A **compulsion** is a repetitive, excessive, meaningless activity or mental exercise which a person performs in an attempt to avoid distress or worry.

**COCAINE-INDUCED SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION.** The person with this disorder has experienced intoxication or withdrawal from cocaine within a month from the time he or she begins to experience sexual difficulties, and these difficulties are deemed by the clinician to be due directly to the cocaine use. Substance-induced sexual difficulties can range from impaired desire, impaired arousal, impaired orgasm, or sexual pain.

**COCAINE-INDUCED SLEEP DISORDER.** This disorder is characterized by difficulty sleeping (**insomnia**) during intoxication or increased sleep duration when patients are in withdrawal.

**COCAINE-RELATED DISORDER NOT OTHERWISE SPECIFIED.** This classification is reserved for clinicians to use when a cocaine disorder that the clinician sees does not fit into any of the above categories.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

**BIOCHEMICAL/PHYSIOLOGICAL CAUSES.** Twin studies have demonstrated that there is a higher rate of cocaine abuse in identical twins as compared to fraternal twins. This indicates that genetic factors contribute to the development of cocaine abuse. This finding also indicates, however, that unique environmental factors contribute to the development of cocaine abuse, as well. (If genes alone determined who would develop cocaine dependence, 100% of the identical twins with the predisposing genes would develop the disorder. However, because the results show only a relationship, or a correlation, between genetics and cocaine use among twins, these results indicate that other factors must be at work, as well.) Studies have also shown that disorders like **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)**, **conduct disorder**, and **antisocial personality disorder** all have genetic components, and since patients who abuse cocaine have a high incidence of these diagnoses, they may also be genetically predisposed to abusing cocaine.

**REINFORCEMENT.** Learning and conditioning also play a unique role in the perpetuation of cocaine abuse. Each inhalation and injection of cocaine causes pleasurable feelings that reinforce the drug-taking procedure. In addition, the patient's environment also plays a role in cueing and reinforcing the experience in the patient's mind. The association between cocaine and environment is so strong that many people recovering from cocaine addiction report that being in an area where they used drugs brings back memories of the experience and makes them crave drugs. Specific areas of the brain are thought to be involved in cocaine craving, including the amygdala (a part of the brain that controls aggression and emotional reactivity), and the prefrontal cortex (a part of the brain that regulates anger, aggression, and the brain's assessment of fear, threats, and danger).

### Symptoms

The following list is a summary of the acute (short-term) physical and psychological effects of cocaine on the body:

- blood vessels constrict
- elevated heart rate
- elevated blood pressure
- a feeling of intense happiness
- elevated energy level
- a state of increased alertness and sensory sensitivity
- elevated anxiety
- panic attacks
- elevated self-esteem
- diminished appetite
- spontaneous ejaculation and heightened sexual arousal
- psychosis (loss of contact with reality)

The following list is a summary of the chronic (long-term) physical and psychological effects of cocaine on the body:

- depressed mood
- irritability
- physical agitation
- decreased motivation
- difficulty sleeping
- hypervigilance
- elevated anxiety
- panic attacks
- hallucinations
- psychosis

### Demographics

The patterns of cocaine abuse in the United States have changed much over the past thirty years. The patterns have also been changing in other parts of the world as well, including South America and Western Europe. In the United States, several studies have attempted to track drug abuse in many different populations. The studies include: the Monitoring the Future Study (MTF); the National Household Survey on Drug Abuse (NHSDA); the Drug Abuse Warning Network (DAWN), which gets reports from Emergency Rooms and medical examiners' offices on drug-related cases and deaths; and Arrestee Drug Abuse Monitoring (ADAM), which gets information on urine samples obtained from people who have been arrested.

In the annual MTF study, cocaine use among high school seniors had declined from 13.1% in 1985 to 3.1% in 1992—the lowest it had been since 1975 when the survey was first implemented. The rate of cocaine use began to rise again and peaked at 5.5% in 1997. The NHSDA found that the levels of cocaine use declined over the same time period. The decline in the rates has been thought to be due in part to education about the risks of cocaine abuse.

The incidence of new crack cocaine users has also decreased. There was a minimal decline in the numbers of excessive cocaine users between the years 1985 and 1997. The Epidemiologic Catchment Area (ECA) studies done in the early 1980s combined cocaine dependence with cocaine abuse and found that one-month to six-month prevalence rates for cocaine abuse and dependence were low or could not be measured. The lifetime rate of cocaine abuse was 0.2%.

A 1997 study from The National Institute on Drug Abuse indicates that among outpatients who abuse substances, 55% abuse cocaine.

Cocaine abuse affects both genders and many different populations across the United States. Males are one-and-a-half to two times more likely to abuse cocaine than females. Cocaine began as a drug of the upper classes in the 1970s; now the socioeconomic status of cocaine users has shifted. Cocaine is more likely to be abused by the economically disadvantaged because it is easy for them to get, and it is inexpensive (\$10 for a small bag of crack cocaine). These factors have led to increased violence (because people who are cocaine dependent often will become involved in illegal activity, such as drug dealing, in order to acquire funds for their habit) and higher rates of acquired immune deficiency (AIDS) among disadvantaged populations.

## Diagnosis

If a mental health clinician suspects cocaine use, he or she may ask the patient specifically about swallowing, injecting, or smoking the substance. Urine and blood testing will also be conducted to determine the presence of the substance. Doctors may also talk to friends or relatives concerning the patient's drug use, especially for cases in which the physician suspects that the patient is not being entirely honest about substance use. The clinician may also investigate a patient's legal history for drug arrests that may give clues to periods of **substance abuse** to which the patient will not admit.

### Differential diagnosis

Differential diagnosis is the process of distinguishing one condition from other, similar conditions. The cocaine abuse disorder is easily confused with other substance abuse disorders and various forms of mental illness.

The symptoms of cocaine intoxication, such as increased talkativeness, poor sleep, and the intense feelings of happiness are similar to the symptoms for **bipolar disorder**, so the urine toxicification screening test may play a key role in the diagnosis. Patients with cocaine intoxication with hallucinations and delusions can be mistaken for schizophrenic patients instead, further emphasizing the importance of the urine and blood screens. As part of establishing the diagnosis, the physician must also rule out PCP (**phencyclidine**) intoxication and Cushing's disease (an endocrine disorder of excessive cortisol production). Withdrawal symptoms are similar to those of the patient with major **depression**. For this reason, the clinician may ask the patient about his or her mood during times of abstinence from drug use to discern if any true mood disorders are present. If cocaine use is causing depression, the depression should resolve within a couple of weeks of stopping drug use.

### Laboratory testing

The breakdown products of cocaine remain in the urine. The length of time that they remain depends on the dose of cocaine, but most doses would not remain in the urine longer than a few days. Cocaine can also be found in other bodily fluids such as blood, saliva, sweat, and hair, and these provide better estimates as to recent cocaine use. The hair can hold evidence that a patient has been using drugs for weeks to months. Positron emission tomography (PET) and single-photon emission **computed tomography** (SPECT) are different kinds of **imaging studies**. Both kinds of scans look at the amount of blood that is flowing to the brain.

When these images are taken of the brains of people who abuse cocaine, the resulting scans have revealed abnormalities in certain sections of the brain. The brains of people addicted to cocaine shrink, or atrophy.

### *Neuropsychological assessment*

**Neuropsychological testing** is also an important tool for examining the effects of toxic substances on brain functioning. Some physicians may use neuropsychological assessments to reveal patients' cognitive and physical impairment after cocaine use. Neuropsychological testing assesses brain functioning through structured and systematic behavioral observation. Neuropsychological tests are designed to examine a variety of cognitive abilities, including speed of information processing, attention, memory, and language. An example of a task that a physician might ask the patient to complete as part of a neuropsychological examination is to name as many words beginning with a particular letter as the patient can in one minute. Patients who abuse cocaine often have difficulty completing tasks, such as the one described, that require concentration and memory.

## Treatments

### *Psychological and social interventions*

**TREATMENT SETTINGS.** Not all patients who abuse cocaine need to resort to long-term treatment. Treatment length varies with the degree that a person is dependent on the substance. If the patient has other psychiatric conditions such as major depression or **schizophrenia** or has significant medical complications of cocaine abuse, then he or she is more likely to require higher-intensity treatment. Residential programs/therapeutic communities may be helpful, particularly in more severe cases. Patients typically spend six to 12 months in such programs, which may also include vocational training and other features. The availability of such treatment, as well as medical insurance's ability to cover treatment, are all issues that affect the patient's access to treatment.

**PSYCHOTHERAPY.** A wide range of behavioral interventions have been successfully used to treat cocaine addiction. The approach used must be tailored to the specific needs of each individual patient, however.

Contingency management rewards drug abstinence (confirmed by urine testing) with points or vouchers which patients can exchange for such things as an evening out or membership in a gym. **Cognitive-behavioral therapy** helps users learn to recognize and avoid situations most likely to lead to cocaine use and to develop healthier ways to cope with stressful situations.

Supportive therapy helps patients to modify their behavior by preventing **relapse** by taking actions such as staying away from drug-using friends and from neighborhoods or situations where cocaine is abundant.

**Self-help groups** like Narcotics Anonymous (NA) or Cocaine Anonymous (CA) are helpful for many recovering substance abusers. CA is a twelve-step program for cocaine abusers modeled after Alcoholics Anonymous (AA). **Support groups** and **group therapy** led by a therapist can be helpful because other addicts can share coping and relapse-prevention strategies. The group's support can help patients face devastating changes and life issues. Some experts recommend that patients be cocaine-free for at least two weeks before participating in a group, but other experts argue that a two-week waiting period is unnecessary and counterproductive. Group counseling sessions led by drug counselors who are in recovery themselves are also useful for some people overcoming their addictions. These group counseling sessions differ from group therapy in that the people in a counseling group are constantly changing.

The National Institute of Drug Abuse conducted a study comparing different forms of **psychotherapy**: patients who had both group drug counseling and individual drug counseling had improved outcomes. Patients who had cognitive-behavioral therapy stayed in treatment longer.

### Medications

Many medications—greater than twenty—have been tested but none have been found to reduce the intensity of withdrawal. **Dopamine** agonists like **amantadine** and bromocriptine and tricyclic **antidepressants** such as **desipramine** have failed in studies to help treat symptoms of cocaine withdrawal or intoxication.

### Alternative therapy

Alternative techniques, such as **acupuncture**, EEG **biofeedback**, and visualization, may be useful in treating addiction when combined with conventional treatment approaches.

### Prognosis

Not all cocaine abusers become dependent on the drug. However, even someone who only uses occasionally can experience the harmful effects (interpersonal relationship conflicts, work or school difficulties, etc.) of using cocaine, and even occasional use is enough to addict. In the course of a person's battle with cocaine abuse, he or she may vary the forms of the drug that he or she uses. A person may use the inhaled form at one time and the injected form at another, for example.

## KEY TERMS

**Amygdala**—An almond-shaped brain structure in the limbic system that is activated in acute stress situations to trigger the emotion of fear.

**Coca plant**—The plant that is the source of cocaine.

**Crack**—A slang term for a form of cocaine that is smokable.

**Craving**—An overwhelming need to seek out more drugs.

**Physical dependence**—A maladaptive behavior that over a three-month period has caused the individual to experience tolerance and withdrawal symptoms.

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

Many studies of short-term outpatient treatment over a six-month to two-year period indicate that people addicted to cocaine have a better chance of recovering than people who are addicted to heroin. A study of veterans who participated in an inpatient or day hospital treatment program that lasted 28 days, revealed that about 60% of people who were abstinent at four months were able to maintain their abstinence at seven months.

Having a good social support network greatly improves the prognosis for recovery from cocaine abuse and dependence.

### Prevention

Efforts to prevent cocaine abuse, as well as any substance abuse, begin with prevention programs that are based in schools, in the workplace, health care clinics, criminal justice systems, and public housing. Programs such as Students Taught Awareness (STAR) are cost effective and have reduced the rates of substance abuse in the schools. These school-based programs also foster parental involvement and education about substance abuse issues. The juvenile justice system also implements drug prevention programs. Even many workplaces provide drug screening and treatment and counseling for those who test positive. Employers may also provide workshops on substance abuse prevention. The United States Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) also sponsors drug prevention programs.

*See also* Addiction; Detoxification; Disease concept of chemical dependency.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Jaffe, Jerome H., M.D. "Cocaine-Related Disorders." In *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, edited by Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. and Virginia A. Sadock, M.D. 7th edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

Matthews, John. "Substance-Related Disorders: Cocaine and Narcotics." In *Psychiatry Update and Board Preparation*, edited by Thomas A. Stern, M.D. and John B. Herman, M.D. New York: McGraw Hill, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Adinoff, Byron, M.D. and others. "Limbic Response to Procaine in Cocaine Addicted Subjects." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (March 2001): 390-398.  
 Held, Gale A., M.P.A. "Linkages Between Substance Abuse Prevention and Other Human Services Literature Review." *National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA)* (June 1998).  
 Jacobsen, Leslie K., M.D. and others. "Quantitative Morphology of the Caudate and Putamen in Patients With Cocaine Dependence." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (March 2000): 486-489.  
 Kampman, Kyle M., M.D. and others. "Amantadine in the Treatment of Cocaine-Dependent Patients With Severe Withdrawal Symptoms." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (December 2000): 2052-2054.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 5213, Bethesda, MD, 20892-9561. (301) 443-1124. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>.  
 The American Academy of Addiction Psychiatry (AAAP). 7301 Mission Road, Suite 252, Prairie Village, KS, 66208. (913) 262-6161. <<http://www.aaap.org>>.  
 Cocaine Anonymous World Services (CAWS). 3740 Overland Ave. Ste. C, Los Angeles, CA, 90034. (310) 559-5833. <<http://www.ca.org>>.

### OTHER

- Leshner, Alan Ph.D. "Cocaine Abuse and Addiction." *National Institute on Drug Abuse Research Report Series* NIH Publication Number 99-4342, Washington, D.C. Supt.of doc. U.S. Government Printing Offices, 1999.

Susan Hobbs, M.D.  
 Peter Gregutt

Cogentin see **Benztropine**

Cognex see **Tacrine**

## Cognistat

### Definition

The Cognistat is a standardized neurobehavioral screening test. It is a test that examines neurological (**brain** and central nervous system) health in relation to a person's behavior.

### Purpose

As a screening test, the Cognistat may be administered to identify basic strengths and weaknesses so that further tests (if necessary) can be selected, and the data provided by the Cognistat can then be used as preliminary data against which scores from other tests given may be compared. Cognistat results have been used in a number of arenas, most notably in behavioral medicine. For example, Cognistat results may be useful to track cognitive decline (decreased thinking and reasoning abilities) in patients with organic brain disorders, to develop helpful strategies for cognitive problems associated with **schizophrenia**, and to help distinguish among terminally ill cancer patients those with **depression** and **anxiety** versus those with cognitive impairment.

### Precautions

The Cognistat is more sensitive than many similar tests, but considers a limited sample of behavior at a brief point in time. Thus, its results are not generalizable and should not be viewed as conclusive indicators of the areas being assessed. It is important that the examiner be properly trained in the use of the test. Test takers may be affected by test-related discomfort or performance anxiety. This may be particularly true when prior to testing, the examinee was not fully aware of his or her deficits, especially deficits that become more apparent as testing progresses. The test's reliability has not been fully documented. Further research and standardization data is needed.

### Description

The Cognistat usually takes less than 45 minutes to complete, and the test explores, quantifies, and describes performance in central areas of brain-behavior relations: level of consciousness, orientation, attention, language, constructional ability, memory, calculations and reasoning. The sub-areas of language are spontaneous speech, comprehension, repetition, and naming. The sub-areas of reasoning are similarities and judgment. Exploration occurs through interactive behavioral tasks that rely on perception, cognitive processing,

and motor skills. The test is more quickly administered to higher than lower functioning individuals by providing a difficult screening item at the beginning of each section. Only when a screening item is missed are the metric, or more remedial, items applied, usually from easiest to most difficult within that section.

The test begins with the examiner asking general questions of the test taker (name, address, age, etc.), and while these questions are being answered, the examiner is subjectively assessing the test taker's level of consciousness. Then, the examiner asks general questions to confirm the test taker's level of orientation, meaning that the test taker is correctly oriented to place and time—he or she knows what day it is and where he or she is. To test the examinee's attention and memory, the test taker will be asked to repeat a series of digits and the first part of a verbal memory task will be given. (This task will be asked about again later in the test.)

The language section begins with a sample of spontaneous speech derived by asking for a description of a detailed line drawing. The language comprehension section requires responses to simple commands that involve manipulation of common objects placed before the examinee. In the language repetition subtest, the test taker is asked to repeat short phrases and simple sentences. In naming, the last of the language subtests, the screening item differs in form from the metric (easier) items. In the screening item, the examiner holds up an object and asks the test taker to name its four major parts, as the examiner points to them one after another. If the test taker fails, he or she is asked to name eight separate objects, one after another represented by line drawings.

In the next section, constructional ability, the screening item is a visual memory task wherein a stimulus sheet is presented for ten seconds, and the examinee is asked to draw the stimuli from memory. The test taker is then asked to assemble plastic tiles into designs, one after another, as each is shown on a card. Faster completion yields greater points. After the constructional items, the test taker is asked to recall the verbal memory items presented earlier. For items he or she cannot recall, the examiner provides prompts, or clues.

The calculations section is composed of simple verbal mathematics, and is followed by the reasoning section, which includes two subtests. The first consists of associative thinking items known as similarities. In similarities items, the examinee is asked to explain how two concepts are alike. Greater points are awarded if

## KEY TERMS

**Screening test**—A test given as a preliminary tool, that helps to later target a more thorough analysis.

**Standardized test**—A test that follows a regimented structure, and each individual's scores may be compared with those of groups of people. In the case of the Cognistat, test taker's scores can be compared to groups of young adults, middle-aged adults, the geriatric, and people who have undergone neurosurgery.

their concept is abstract rather than concrete. The final subtest on the Cognistat is the judgment subtest of the reasoning section. In the judgment subtest, the examinee is asked to answer questions that demonstrate practical judgment in solving basic problem scenarios. Scores for this subtest are weighted based on their appropriateness. There is only one fully appropriate response to each item.

The test booklet provides space for listing medications, and for noting comments about any physical deficits and the examinee's impression of his or her own performance.

## Results

When test administration is complete, the examiner tallies the points earned in each section, and plots them on the cognitive status profile located on the front of the test booklet. On the profile, numerical scores are described to fall within the normal or impaired range. The impaired range is broken down into mild, moderate and severe. An individual's scores can also be compared to standardization group data, and their profile may be compared to five case study profiles presented in the test guide. The few items that do not allow for quantitative analysis—the sample of spontaneous speech, for example—are factored into the interpretation of results by the examiner. There is no mechanism for transforming raw scores into percentiles or standard scores, and the test is not designed to generate one main score.

## Resources

### BOOKS

The Northern California Neurobehavioral Group, Inc.  
*Manual for the Neurobehavioral Cognitive Status Examination*. Fairfax, CA.

## PERIODICALS

- Kiernan, R., J. Mueller, W. Langston, and C. Van Dyke. "The Neurobehavioral Cognitive Status Examination: A brief but differentiated approach to cognitive assessment." *Annals of Internal Medicine* 107 (1987): 481-485.
- Logue, P., L. Tupler, C. D'Amico, and F. Schmitt. "The Neurobehavioral Cognitive Status Examination: Psychometric properties in use with psychiatric inpatients." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 49 (Jan. 1993): 80-89.

Geoffrey G. Grimm, Ph.D., LPC

## Description

### *Origins of the two approaches*

**Psychologist** Aaron Beck developed cognitive therapy in the 1960s. The treatment is based on the principle that maladaptive behavior (ineffective, self-defeating behavior) is triggered by inappropriate or irrational thinking patterns, called automatic thoughts. Instead of reacting to the reality of a situation, an individual automatically reacts to his or her own distorted view of the situation. Cognitive therapy strives to change these thought patterns (also known as cognitive distortions), by examining the rationality and validity of the assumptions behind them. This process is termed cognitive restructuring.

Behavior therapy focuses on observable behavior and its modification in the present, in sharp contrast to the psychoanalytic method of Sigmund Freud (1856–1939), which focuses on unconscious mental processes and their roots in the past. Behavior therapy was developed during the 1950s by researchers and therapists who were critical of the prevailing psychodynamic treatment methods. The therapy drew on a variety of theories and research, including the classical conditioning principles of the Russian physiologist Ivan Pavlov (1849–1936), the work of American B. F. Skinner (1904–1990), and the work of **psychiatrist** Joseph Wolpe (1915–1997). Pavlov became famous for experiments in which dogs were trained to salivate at the sound of a bell, and Skinner pioneered the concept of operant conditioning, in which behavior is modified by changing the response it elicits. Wolpe is probably best known for his work in the areas of desensitization and **assertiveness training**. By the 1970s, behavior therapy enjoyed widespread popularity as a treatment approach. Since the 1980s, many therapists have begun to use CBT to change clients' unhealthy behavior by replacing negative or self-defeating thought patterns with more positive ones.

### *The combined approach*

In CBT, the therapist works with the patient to identify the thoughts that are causing distress, and employs behavioral therapy techniques to alter the resulting behavior. Patients may have certain fundamental core beliefs, known as schemas, that are flawed and are having a negative impact on the patient's behavior and functioning.

For example, a patient with depression may develop a **social phobia** because he is convinced that he is uninteresting and impossible to love. A cognitive-behavioral therapist would test this assumption by asking the

## Cognitive-behavioral therapy

### Definition

Cognitive therapy is a psychosocial (both psychological and social) therapy that assumes that faulty thought patterns (called cognitive patterns) cause maladaptive behavior and emotional responses. The treatment focuses on changing thoughts to solve psychological and personality problems. Behavior therapy is also a goal-oriented, therapeutic approach, and it treats emotional and behavioral disorders as maladaptive learned responses that can be replaced by healthier ones with appropriate training. Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) integrates features of **behavior modification** into the traditional cognitive restructuring approach.

### Purpose

CBT attempts to change clients' unhealthy behavior or thought processes through cognitive restructuring (examining assumptions behind the thought patterns) and through the use of behavior therapy techniques.

CBT is a treatment option for a number of mental disorders, including **depression**, **dissociative identity disorder**, eating disorders, **generalized anxiety disorder**, **hypochondriasis**, **insomnia**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, and **panic disorder** without **agoraphobia**.

### Precautions

CBT may not be appropriate for all patients. Patients with significant cognitive impairments (patients with traumatic **brain** injury or organic brain disease, for example) and individuals who are not willing to take an active role in the treatment process are not usually good candidates.

patient to name family and friends who care for him and enjoy his company. By showing the patient that others value him, the therapist exposes the irrationality of the patient's assumption and also provides a new model of thought for the patient to change his previous behavior pattern (i.e., I am an interesting and likeable person, therefore I should not have any problem making new social acquaintances). Additional behavioral techniques such as conditioning (the use of positive and/or negative reinforcements to encourage desired behavior) and **systematic desensitization** (gradual exposure to anxiety-producing situations to extinguish the fear response) may then be used to gradually reintroduce the patient to social situations.

CBT is usually administered in an outpatient setting (clinic or doctor's office) by a specially trained therapist. Therapy may be in either individual or group sessions. Therapists are psychologists (PhD, PsyD, EdD, or MA degree), clinical **social workers** (M.S.W., D.S.W., or L.S.W. degree), counselors (MA or MS degree), or psychiatrists (MD trained in psychiatry).

### *Techniques*

Therapists use several different techniques in the course of CBT to help patients examine and change thoughts and behaviors. These include:

- Validity testing. The therapist asks the patient to defend his or her thoughts and beliefs. If the patient cannot produce objective evidence supporting his or her assumptions, the invalidity, or faulty nature, is exposed.
- Cognitive rehearsal. The patient is asked to imagine a difficult situation he or she has encountered in the past, and then works with the therapist to practice how to cope successfully with the problem. When the patient is confronted with a similar situation again, the rehearsed behavior will be drawn on to manage it.
- Guided discovery. The therapist asks the patient a series of questions designed to guide the patient towards the discovery of his or her cognitive distortions.
- Writing in a journal. Patients keep a detailed written diary of situations that arise in everyday life, the thoughts and emotions surrounding them, and the behaviors that accompany them. The therapist and patient then review the journal together to discover maladaptive thought patterns and how these thoughts impact behavior.
- Homework. To encourage self-discovery and reinforce insights made in therapy, the therapist may ask the patient to do homework assignments. These

may include note-taking during the session, journaling, review of an audiotape of the patient session, or reading books or articles appropriate to the therapy. They may also be more behaviorally focused, applying a newly learned strategy or coping mechanism to a situation, and then recording the results for the next therapy session.

- Modeling. Role-playing exercises allow the therapist to act out appropriate reactions to different situations. The patient can then model this behavior.
- Systematic positive reinforcement. Human behavior is routinely motivated and rewarded by positive reinforcement, and a more specialized version of this phenomenon (systematic positive reinforcement) is used by behavior-oriented therapists. Rules are established that specify particular behaviors that are to be reinforced, and a reward system is set up. With children, this sometimes takes the form of tokens that may be accumulated and later exchanged for certain privileges. Just as providing reinforcement strengthens behaviors, withholding it weakens them. Eradicating undesirable behavior by deliberately withholding reinforcement is another popular treatment method called extinction. For example, a child who habitually shouts to attract attention may be ignored unless he or she speaks in a conversational tone.
- Aversive conditioning. This technique employs the principles of classical conditioning to lessen the appeal of a behavior that is difficult to change because it is either very habitual or temporarily rewarding. The client is exposed to an unpleasant stimulus while engaged in or thinking about the behavior in question. Eventually the behavior itself becomes associated with unpleasant rather than pleasant feelings. One treatment method used with alcoholics is the administration of a nausea-inducing drug together with an alcoholic beverage to produce an aversion to the taste and smell of alcohol by having it become associated with nausea. Studies investigating use of these aversive conditioning approaches have not identified a high level of therapeutic effectiveness. According to the American Psychiatric Association, aversion therapy should be practiced only in very specialized centers. In counterconditioning, a maladaptive response is weakened by the strengthening of a response that is incompatible with it. A well-known type of counterconditioning is systematic desensitization, which counteracts the anxiety connected with a particular behavior or situation by inducing a relaxed response to it instead. This method is often used in the treatment of people who are afraid of flying.

## Preparation

Because CBT is a collaborative effort between therapist and patient, a comfortable working relationship is critical to successful treatment. Individuals interested in CBT should schedule a consultation session with their prospective therapist before starting treatment. The consultation session is similar to an interview session, and it allows both patient and therapist to get to know one another. During the consultation, the therapist gathers information to make an initial assessment of the patient and to recommend both direction and goals for treatment. The patient has the opportunity to learn about the therapist's professional credentials, his/her approach to treatment, and other relevant issues.

In some managed-care settings, an intake interview is required before a patient can meet with a therapist. The intake interview is typically performed by a psychiatric nurse, counselor, or social worker, either face-to-face or over the phone. It is used to gather a brief background on treatment history and make a preliminary evaluation of the patient before assigning them to a therapist.

## Results

Because CBT is employed for such a broad spectrum of illnesses and is often used in conjunction with medications and other treatment interventions, it is difficult to measure overall success rates for the therapy. However, several studies have indicated that CBT:

- may reduce the rate of rehospitalization and improve social and occupational functioning for bipolar disorder patients, when combined with pharmacotherapy (treatment with medication)
- is an effective treatment for patients with bulimia nervosa
- can help generalized anxiety patients manage their worry, when combined with relaxation exercises
- is helpful in treating hypochondriasis
- may be effective for treating depression, especially when combined with pharmacotherapy, and may also prevent depression in at-risk children
- is one of the first-line treatments for obsessive-compulsive disorder
- that focuses on education and provides some exposure and coping skills is effective for treating panic disorder without agoraphobia
- is effective for helping to treat insomnia, and its effects may be sustained longer than the effects of medications alone

*See also* Aversion therapy; Behavior modification; Cognitive problem-solving skills training; Cognitive retraining techniques; Covert sensitization; Exposure treatment; Rational emotive therapy; Systematic desensitization.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Alford, B. A., and A. T. Beck. *The Integrative Power of Cognitive Therapy*. New York: Guilford, 1997.  
 Beck, A. T. *Prisoners of Hate: The Cognitive Basis of Anger, Hostility, and Violence*. New York: HarperCollins Publishers, 1999.  
 Craighead, Linda W. *Cognitive and Behavioral Interventions: An Empirical Approach to Mental Health Problems*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1994.  
 Nathan, Peter E., and Jack M. Gorman. *A Guide to Treatments that Work*, 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.  
 Weishaar, Marjorie. "Cognitive Therapy." *Encyclopedia of Mental Health*, Ed. Howard S. Friedman. San Diego: Academic Press, 1998.  
 Wolpe, Joseph. *The Practice of Behavior Therapy*. Tarrytown, NY: Pergamon Press, 1996.

### PERIODICALS

- Rupke, Stuart J., David Blecke, and Marjorie Renfrow. "Cognitive Therapy for Depression." *American Family Physician* 73 (2006): 83–85. Also available online at: <<http://www.aafp.org/afp/20060101/83.html>>.

### OTHER

- American Academy of Family Physicians. "Cognitive Therapy." Available online at: <<http://familydoctor.org/882.xml>>.  
 Kleber, Herbert D., and others. *Practice Guideline for Treatment of Patients with Substance Use Disorders*, 2nd ed. (2006). Available online through the American Psychiatric Association at: <[http://www.psych.org/psych\\_pract/treatg/pg/SUD2ePG\\_04-28-06.pdf](http://www.psych.org/psych_pract/treatg/pg/SUD2ePG_04-28-06.pdf)>.  
 National Alliance on Mental Illness. "Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy." Available online at: <[http://www.nami.org/Template.cfm?Section=About\\_Treatments\\_and\\_Supports&template=/ContentManagement/ContentDisplay.cfm&ContentID=7952](http://www.nami.org/Template.cfm?Section=About_Treatments_and_Supports&template=/ContentManagement/ContentDisplay.cfm&ContentID=7952)>.

Paula Ford-Martin, MS  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Cognitive problem-solving skills training

### Definition

Cognitive problem-solving skills training (CPSST) attempts to decrease a child's inappropriate or disruptive behaviors by teaching the child new skills for

approaching situations that previously provoked negative behavior. Using both cognitive and behavioral techniques and focusing on the child more than on the parents or the family unit, CPSST helps the child gain the ability to self-manage thoughts and feelings and interact appropriately with others by developing new perspectives and solutions. The basis of the treatment is the underlying principle that children lacking constructive ways to address the environment have problematic behaviors; teaching these children ways to positively problem-solve and challenge dysfunctional thoughts improves functioning.

### Purpose

The goal of CPSST is to reduce or terminate inappropriate, dysfunctional behaviors by expanding the “behavioral repertoire,” including ways of cognitive processing. The behavioral repertoire is the range of ways of behaving that an individual possesses. In children with **conduct disorder**, **intermittent explosive disorder**, oppositional-defiant disorder, antisocial behaviors, aggressive acting-out, or **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** with disruptive behavior, the number of ways of interpreting reality and responding to the world are limited and involve negative responses. Although CPSST originally focused on children with problem behaviors or poor relationships with others, it has generalized to a variety of different disorders in children and adults (most of the treatment research is supporting its use in children).

### Description

The therapist conducts individual CPSST sessions with the child, once a week for 45 minutes to an hour, typically for several months to a year. The cognitive portion of the treatment involves changing faulty or narrow views of daily situations, confronting irrational interpretations of others’ actions, challenging unhelpful assumptions that typically underlie the individual’s problem behaviors, and generating alternative solutions to problems. For example, meeting with a child who has received a school suspension for becoming physically enraged at a teacher, the therapist starts by exploring the situation with the child, asking what thoughts and feelings were experienced. The child might state, “My teacher hates me. I’m always getting sent to the principal and she yells at me all the time.” The therapist helps the child see some faulty ways of thinking by asking what the child has seen or experienced in the classroom previous to this incident, thus exploring the supporting evidence for the “my teacher hates me” notion. Questions would be ones that could confirm or disconfirm the assumptions, or

that identify the precipitants of the teacher disciplining the child. The therapist tries to help the child shift his or her perceptions so that, instead of seeing the student-teacher negative interactions as something external to the self, the child comes to see his or her part in the problem. This discussion also helps the child to discern opportunities to influence the outcome of the interactions. When the child makes a global, stable, and negative attribution about why the interactions with the teacher are negative—where the attitude of the teacher is the cause of the problems—the child loses the sense of having any efficacy and is liable to show poorer behavior. By changing the child’s perceptions and examining different options for the child’s responses in that situation, however, the child can identify ways that changing his or her own behavior could improve the outcome.

The behavioral aspect of CPSST involves **modeling** of more positive behaviors, role-playing challenging situations, and rewarding improvement in behavior, as well as providing corrective feedback on alternative (and more appropriate) ways of handling situations when undesirable behavior occurs. In each session, the child is coached on problem-solving techniques including brainstorming a number of possible solutions to difficulties, evaluating solutions, and planning the steps involving in gaining a desired goal (also called “means-end thinking”). For instance, if the child in the above example felt that the teacher’s accusations were unfair, the therapist would help to come up with some options for the child to use in the event of a similar situation (such as visualizing a calming scene, using a mediator to work out the conflict, or avoiding the behaviors that precipitate a trip to the principal’s office). The options generated would be discussed and evaluated as to how practical they are and how to implement them.

The child is given therapy homework of implementing these newer ways of thinking and behaving in specific types of problematic situations in school, with peers, or at home. The child might be asked to keep track of negative, externalizing thoughts by keeping a log of them for several days. The therapist would ask the child to conduct an experiment—try one of the new options and compare the results. Typically, the between-sessions work begins with the conditions that appear the easiest in which to successfully use the updated ways of thinking and behaving, gradually progressing to more complex or challenging circumstances. The child would get rewarded for trying the new techniques with praise, hugs, or earning points towards something desired.

Although the bulk of the sessions involve the individual child and the therapist, the parents are brought

## KEY TERMS

**Behavior modification**—An approach to therapy based on the principles of operant conditioning. Behavior modification seeks to replace undesirable behaviors with preferable behaviors through the use of positive or negative reinforcement.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**Response-contingent learning**—A principle that suggests that the consequences of a behavior determine whether it will increase or decrease in frequency. Behaviors that bring about desired responses tend to decrease, while those that either remove the chance to obtain a desirable outcome, or those that cause some unpleasant or painful consequence, tend to decrease.

**Social learning**—Learning by observing others' responses and acquiring those responses through imitation of the role model(s).

into the therapy for a portion of the work. The parents observe the therapist and the child as they practice the new skills and are educated on how to assist the child outside the sessions. Parents learn how to correctly remind the child to use the CPSST techniques for problem solving in daily living and assist the child with the steps involved in applying these skills. Parents are also coached on how to promote the positive behaviors by rewarding their occurrence with praise, extra attention, points toward obtaining a reward desired by the child, stickers or other small indicators of positive behavior, additional privileges, or hugs (and other affectionate gestures). The scientific term for the rewarding of desired behavior is "positive reinforcement" referring to consequences that cause the desired target behavior to increase.

In research studies of outcomes, CPSST has been found to be effective in changing children's behavior. Changes in behavior have been shown to persist long-term (to a year) after completion of treatment. Success in altering undesirable behaviors is enhanced when CPSST is combined with **parent management training**. Parent management training is the in-depth education of parents or other primary caretakers in applying behavioral techniques such as positive **reinforcement** or time away from reinforcement opportunities in their parenting.

## Risks

Inappropriate or inept application of cognitive-behavioral techniques such as those used in CPSST may intensify the problem. CPSST should be undertaken with a behavioral health professional (**psychologist**, **psychiatrist**, or clinical social worker) with experience in CPSST. Parents should seek therapists with good credentials, skills, and training.

## Results

While individual results vary, problematic behaviors are reduced or eliminated in many children.

*See also* Behavior modification; Token economy system.

## Resources

### BOOKS

D'Zurilla, T. J., and A. M. Nezu. *Problem Solving Therapy: A Social Competence Approach to Clinical Intervention*, 2nd ed. New York: Springer Publishing Company, 1999.

Hendren, R. L. *Disruptive Behavior Disorders in Children and Adolescents*. Review of Psychiatry Series, Vol. 18, No. 2. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.

Kazdin, A.E. "Treatment of Conduct Disorders." *Conduct Disorders in Childhood and Adolescence*. Ed. J. Hill and B. Maughan. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2001. 408–409.

### PERIODICALS

Gilbert, S. "Solution-Focused Treatment: A Model for Managed Care Success." *The Counselor* 15.5 (1997): 23–25.

Kazdin, Alan E., T. Siegel, and D. Bass. "Cognitive Problem-Solving Skills Training and Parent Management Training in the Treatment of Antisocial Behavior in Children." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 60 (1992): 733–47.

Matthews, W. J. "Brief Therapy: A Problem Solving Model of Change." *The Counselor* 17.4 (1999): 29–32.

Thomas, Christopher R. "Evidence-Based Practice for Conduct Disorder Symptoms." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45 (2006): 109–14.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Association for the Advancement of Behavior Therapy. 305 Seventh Avenue, 16th Floor, New York, NY 10001-60008. Telephone: (212) 647-1890.

The American Institute for Cognitive Therapy. 136 East 57th Street, Suite 1101, New York, NY 10022. Telephone: (212) 308-2440. Web site: <<http://www.cognitivetherapynyc.com/child.asp>>

Deborah RoschEifert, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Cognitive remediation

### Definition

Cognitive remediation is a teaching process that targets areas of neuropsychological functioning involved in learning and basic day-to-day functioning. This terminology can be confusing because some researchers use the phrase “cognitive remediation” to refer to environmental adjustments meant to ease cognitive requirements. In this article, the term refers to a treatment approach designed to address cognitive deficits through neural rehabilitation. This approach relies on the idea, demonstrated in many recent studies of humans and primates, that the **brain** can circumvent damage or loss through repetition of the same activity.

### Purpose

The goals of cognitive remediation are to bolster specific cognitive capacities that are weak. It is distinguished from a compensatory approach that seeks to get around a cognitive deficit by use of compensating strategies, such as using a notebook as a memory support in memory loss. Cognitive remediation has been applied in those who have had a traumatic brain injury (a **stroke**, tumor, or head injury), in those who have learning disabilities, and in people who have **schizophrenia**. For people with brain injury, remediation typically targets the following neuropsychological functions: attention and concentration, memory, planning, monitoring one's work or behavior, and making adjustments based on feedback. Remediation is also used to help children and adults cope with learning disabilities. Learning disabilities can interfere with progress in reading; in understanding and communicating through spoken language; in writing; in arithmetic; in understanding such nonverbal information as telling time or understanding visual information; and in comprehending social interactions and cues. Difficulties with concentration, problem solving, organization, identifying errors, and using feedback effectively are also areas that can be treated with cognitive remediation. People with schizophrenia sometimes exhibit cognitive impairment, and cognitive remediation therapy has shown promise in addressing these losses.

### Description

Individuals who have had a traumatic brain injury will work with a remediator using computer programs that target one area at a time, such as attention. The

individual is then helped to generalize what is learned from the program to real life. This **intervention** is usually done at a hospital, although it is not limited to clinical settings. Remediation for this group of people is considered helpful but not curative. It is typically practiced by a neuropsychologist.

Remediation for individuals with learning disabilities aims to bolster a particular area of learning or adaptation, such as in academics or socialization. Although the intervention varies according to the disability and the individual's profile of strengths and weaknesses, the remediator will make use of the person's stronger capacities to bolster the weaker ones. For example, the person might need help with written language because he frequently omits words from his sentences. Once it has been determined that the person's oral language (both receptive and expressive) is adequate and that the motor aspect of writing is intact, the remediator has an idea of the person's strengths and weaknesses in the area of writing. In this case, the remediator makes use of the person's stronger auditory (hearing-related) skills to build up the capacity to translate spoken language into written (visual) language. Specifically, the remediator might read aloud a sentence written by the student (with omissions) and ask the student to identify the mistakes that he hears. The person identifies an omission that he hears and then is shown on paper the place where the word is missing. In this way, he can learn to identify errors visually that he can already identify through the auditory modality of listening. This particular exercise fosters visual awareness of errors, which is a symptom or outcome of the deeper problem of translating language from oral to visual form.

This process can also be achieved with computer-assisted tasks. These methods focus on gradually increasing the difficulty level and complexity of the cognitive functions being applied.

The process then continues with diminishing degrees of assistance. Specifically, after the student becomes more skillful in matching visual omissions with the auditory ones read by the remediator, the person himself begins to read the sentences aloud and identify the words that are missing from the sentences on the page. In the next step, he would begin to read his work silently with the same kind of scrutiny as in the previous exercise. In this manner, remediation fosters both learning and internalizing a cognitive capacity.

Cognitive remediation sessions for learning disabilities usually take place twice a week. This type of

## KEY TERMS

- Auditory**—Pertaining to the sense of hearing.
- Cognitive**—Pertaining to the mental processes of memory, perception, judgment, and reasoning.
- Compensatory**—Counterbalancing or offsetting. A compensatory strategy is one that makes up for or balances a weakness in some area of functioning.
- Modality**—One of the primary forms of sensation, as vision, touch, or hearing.
- Socialization**—An ongoing process in which a person learns and internalizes the values and behavior patterns of his or her culture and social group.

intervention is practiced by psychologists, neuropsychologists, special educators, and learning specialists. The depth and breadth of the intervention will vary according to the remediator's professional training and his or her particular area of expertise. Some professionals specialize in working with certain types of learning disabilities; some, like psychologists, may incorporate their understanding of emotional difficulties within their work as a cognitive remediator.

Cognitive remediation can also take a strategy-oriented approach, in which the patient practices tasks that require strategizing.

### Preparation

Before remediation can begin, the person being treated must receive a neuropsychological or in-depth psychological evaluation in order to identify the underlying neuropsychological capacities (i.e., language, memory, attention, visual perception, visual spatial abilities, motor abilities) that are interfering with acquiring the skills that are needed. The evaluation is also intended to rule out emotional difficulties as the primary cause of learning problems. Children with learning disabilities frequently experience feelings of inadequacy and low self-esteem that need to be addressed. If psychological difficulties, however, are the main reason for a person's academic struggles, he or she should be treated with **psychotherapy** rather than cognitive remediation.

### Typical results

When remediation is targeting the problem area accurately, and the individual is actively engaging in the process, then progress should be evident in the skill area targeted, in the person's awareness of his or her

area of difficulty, and in his or her awareness of some techniques and strategies that are helpful.

*See also* Learning disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Gaddes, William H., and Dorothy Edgell. *Learning Disabilities and Brain Function: A Neuropsychological Approach*, 3rd ed. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1994.
- Johnson, Doris J., and Helmer Myklebust. *Learning Disabilities, Educational Principles and Practices*. New York: Grune and Stratton, 1967.
- Rothstein, Arden, PhD, Lawrence Benjamin, PhD, Melvin Crosby, PhD, and Katie Eisenstadt, PhD. *Learning Disorders, an Integration of Neuropsychological and Psychoanalytic Considerations*. Connecticut: International Universities Press, 1988.

#### PERIODICALS

- Wexler, Bruce E., and Morris D. Bell. "Cognitive Remediation and Vocational Rehabilitation for Schizophrenia." *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 31 (2005): 931–41.

#### OTHER

- LDOnLine. A Web site addressing learning disabilities and ADHD. <[www.ldonline.org](http://www.ldonline.org)>.

Susan Fine, Psy.D.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Cognitive retraining

### Definition

Cognitive retraining is a therapeutic strategy that seeks to improve or restore a person's cognitive skills. These skills include paying attention, remembering, organizing, reasoning and understanding, problem solving, decision making, and higher level cognitive abilities. These skills are all interrelated. Cognitive retraining is one aspect of cognitive rehabilitation, a comprehensive approach to restoring such skills after brain injury or other disability.

### Purpose

The purpose of cognitive retraining is the reduction of cognitive problems associated with brain injury, other disabilities or disorders, and/or aging. The overall purpose of the therapy is to decrease the everyday problems faced by individuals with cognitive difficulties, thereby improving the quality of their lives.

## Precautions

The extent to which a person with a brain injury can recover from or compensate for cognitive problems varies with the person and their injury. Therapy must be tailored to each individual's needs and abilities. Some cognitive retraining techniques require higher levels of skill, and therefore would be more suitable for persons who have made some progress in their recovery. In addition, a person's moods and emotions have an effect on their cognitive skills. Someone who is depressed, for example, may need **psychotherapy** and/or medication before he or she can engage in and benefit from cognitive retraining. Some persons with brain injuries may find it difficult to transfer a skill learned in one setting, such as a clinic, to another setting, such as their home. Although a specific individual may show some improvement on training tasks, his or her cognitive skills may not be considered improved or restored unless there is some evidence that the skills have been transferred to everyday settings and can be maintained over time.

## Description

The techniques of cognitive retraining are best known for their use with persons who have had a brain injury. However, cognitive retraining has also been used to treat **dementia**, **schizophrenia**, attention-deficit disorder, learning disabilities, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, and cognitive changes associated with aging. Professionals from a variety of fields, such as psychology, psychiatry, occupational therapy, and **speech-language pathology**, may be involved in cognitive retraining.

Cognitive retraining includes a considerable amount of repetitive practice that targets the skills of interest. In fact, repetition is essential for the newly retrained skills to become automatic. Regular feedback is another important element of cognitive retraining, as is the use of rewards, such as money. Retraining usually begins with simpler skills and proceeds to more complicated skills. The therapist may address cognitive skills while the person is practicing real-life tasks, in an effort to improve their performance of these tasks. In fact, practicing skills in the ways and settings they will be used in real life is critical to the success of retraining efforts. The length of time for cognitive training varies according to the type and extent of the injury and the type of retraining skills used. For example, retraining memory may take months or years. In contrast, it may take only a few days or weeks to retrain someone to organize his or her home or workplace.

The use of computerization for cognitive retraining has become an increasingly common practice. In particular, researchers have focused on developing a "mixed-reality" system, producing a virtual reality environment for the person undergoing rehabilitation. This system, called in one study a "Human Experience Modeler," places the patient in a context similar to reality—such as home or work—except that the stimuli can be controlled and the patient's experiences captured with automated feedback provided. These approaches have shown some promising success in pilot studies.

### *Types of cognitive retraining*

- Attention and concentration retraining. This type of cognitive retraining aims to improve several abilities, including focusing attention, dividing attention, maintaining attention while reducing the effects of boredom and fatigue, and resisting distraction. Attention has been considered the foundation of other more complicated cognitive skills, and therefore an important skill for cognitive retraining. This area of cognitive retraining has been widely researched, and has been shown to improve patients' abilities in various tasks related to attention.
- Memory retraining. Memory retraining involves teaching the patient several strategies that can be used to recall certain types of information. For example, rhymes may be used as a memory aid. A series of numbers, such as a phone number with an area code, may be broken down into smaller groups. A person may be taught to go through each letter of the alphabet until he or she remembers someone's name. Both memory and organization problems are common and often disabling after head injury.
- Organizational skills retraining. This approach is used when the person has difficulty keeping track of or finding items, doing tasks in a set order, and/or doing something in a timely manner. Strategies may include having one identified place for an item ("a place for everything and everything in its place"). In addition, the person can be taught to keep the items that are used most frequently closer to him or her (the front or the lower shelves of a cabinet, drawer, closet, or desk, for example). Items that are often used together (such as comb and brush, toothbrush and toothpaste) are placed beside each other. Items may be put into categories (allocating decorations to a specific holiday, such as the Fourth of July or Thanksgiving, for example). These strategies help individuals function better in their home or work environment.
- Reasoning. Reasoning refers to the ability to connect and organize information in a logical, rational way.

Reasoning retraining techniques include: listing the facts or reality of a situation; excluding irrelevant facts or details; putting the steps to solve a problem in a logical order; and avoiding irrational thinking, such as jumping to conclusions based on incomplete information, or focusing on the negative aspects of the situation and ignoring the positive. When the person can connect relevant information in a logical way, they are better able to understand or comprehend it.

- Problem solving. Problem-solving retraining aims to help people define a problem; come up with possible solutions to it; discuss the solution(s) with others and listen to their advice; review the various possible solutions from many perspectives; and evaluate whether the problem was solved after going through these steps. This sequence may be repeated several times until the problem is solved. This process is referred to as “SOLVE,” from the first letter of the name of each step: Specify; Options; Listen; Vary; and Evaluate. The “SOLVE” technique is more appropriate for use with individuals at a higher level of functioning.
- Decision making. Decision-making retraining is used when a person must choose among a number of options. The goal of this retraining is to help him or her consider the decision thoroughly before taking any action. The considerations may range from such practical matters as money, people, rules and policies, to personality issues.
- Executive skills. Executive skills retraining refers to teaching individuals how to monitor themselves, control their thinking and actions, think in advance, set goals, manage time, act in socially acceptable ways, and transfer skills to new situations. These are higher-level cognitive skills. Charts and videotapes may be used to monitor behavior, and a variety of questions, tasks, and games may be used in retraining these skills.

### Preparation

Cognitive retraining usually takes place in a quiet room without distractions. It is also important for the person to feel relaxed and calm while they are being retrained in cognitive skills. Engaging in cognitive retraining is not recommended when someone is emotional distressed, e.g., after the recent loss of a loved one. The therapist usually evaluates the person's level of cognitive skills and the extent of their cognitive problems before retraining begins. This evaluation provides a way to monitor improvement by comparing the patient's skill levels during and after retraining to his or her skill levels before retraining. Cognitive

### KEY TERMS

**Cognitive**—Pertaining to the mental processes of memory, perception, judgment, and reasoning.

**Executive skills**—Higher-level cognitive skills that are used when a person makes and carries out plans, organizes and performs complex tasks, etc.

retraining requires patience and persistence on the part of everyone involved.

### Aftercare

The therapist will try to promote the transfer of skills learned using cognitive retraining techniques to the settings of the patient's everyday life. Training may be continued until the patient's skills are improved, transferred to, and maintained in real world activities.

### Risks

It is important for the therapist, patient, and the patient's friends or family members not to assume that improvement on training exercises and tests automatically leads to transfer of the skills to real-life settings.

### Typical results

Cognitive retraining may be considered successful if performance on a behavior related to a particular cognitive skill has improved. It is ultimately successful if it helps the injured person improve his or her functioning and meet his or her needs in real-life situations and settings.

*See also* Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder; Dementia; Learning disabilities; Schizophrenia.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Mateer, Catherine A., and Sarah Raskin. “Cognitive Rehabilitation.” *Rehabilitation of the Adult and Child with Traumatic Brain Injury*, 3rd ed. M. Rosenthal, E. R. Griffith, J. S. Kreutzer, and B. Pentland, eds. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 1999.

Parente, Rick, and D. Herrmann. *Retraining Cognition: Techniques and Applications*. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen, 1996.

Ylvisaker, Mark, and Timothy J. Feeney. *Collaborative Brain Injury Intervention*. San Diego: Singular, 1998.

#### PERIODICALS

Buhlmann, Ulrike, and others. “Cognitive Retraining for Organizational Impairment in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder.” *Psychiatry Research* 144 (2006): 109–16.

Fidopiastis, C.M., and others. "Human Experience Modeler: Context-Driven Cognitive Retraining to Facilitate Transfer of Learning." *CyberPsychology and Behavior* 9 (2006): 183–87.

#### OTHER

American Brain Tumor Association. "Becoming Well Again through Cognitive Retraining." (2006) Available online at: <<http://www.abta.org/wellagain2.php>>.

Joneis Thomas, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Cognitive self-regulation see **Self-control strategies**

Cognitive therapy see **Cognitive-behavioral therapy**

Spoken language problems are referred to using a number of designations, including language delay, language disability, or a specific type of language disability. In general, experts distinguish between those people who seem to be slow in developing spoken language (language delay) and those who seem to have difficulty achieving a milestone of spoken language (language disorders). Language disorders include **stuttering**; articulation disorders, such as substituting one sound for another (tandy for candy), omitting a sound (canny for candy), or distorting a sound (shlip for sip); and voice disorders, such as inappropriate pitch, volume, or quality. Causes can be related to hearing, nerve/muscle disorders, head injury, viral diseases, **mental retardation**, drug **abuse**, or cleft lip or palate.

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*), published by the American Psychiatric Association, lists the following disorders as communication disorders:

- Expressive language disorder: Disorder characterized by impairment in expressive language development.
- Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder: Impairment in both receptive and expressive language development. The affected child has a more difficult time understanding and expressing language as compared to peers.
- Phonological disorder: Inability to use expected speech sounds appropriate for the child's age and dialect.
- Stuttering: Unexpected disturbances in the normal patterns and flow of speech.
- Communication disorder not otherwise specified: This may be diagnosed when a child has an irregularity in speech or a difficulty (in voice or pitch, etc.) but the child's symptoms do not exactly match any of the specific categories of impairment that the *DSM* recognizes.

*See also* Speech-language pathology.

#### Resources

##### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

##### PERIODICALS

Cowley, Geoffrey. "The Language Explosion." *Newsweek* 129 (Spring–Summer 1997): 16–22.

##### ORGANIZATIONS

American Speech-Language-Hearing Association. 10801 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852. Telephone: (800) 638-8255. <<http://www.asha.org>>.

The Childhood Apraxia of Speech Association of North America. <<http://www.apraxia-kids.org/>>. National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders, National Institutes of Health. Bethesda, MD, 20892. <<http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/>>. This agency also has a Web site, "What is voice, what is speech, what is language?" at: <[http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/health/voice/whatis\\_vsl.htm](http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/health/voice/whatis_vsl.htm)>.

The National Institutes of Health. <<http://health.nih.gov/result.asp/612>>.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Community mental health

### Definition

Community mental health is a decentralized pattern of mental health or other services for people with mental illnesses. Community-based care is designed to supplement and decrease the need for more costly inpatient mental health care delivered in hospitals. Community mental health care may be more accessible and responsive to local needs because it is based in a variety of community settings rather than aggregating and isolating patients and patient care in central hospitals. Community mental health assessment, which has grown into a science called psychiatric epidemiology, is a field of research measuring rates of mental disorder upon which mental health care systems can be developed and evaluated.

### Community mental health centers

In the United States, an increase in community mental health care delivery began in the 1960s when President John F. Kennedy signed the 1963 Community Mental Health Centers (CMHC) Act (Public Law #88-164). Growing community mental health capacities were intended to complement and mirror trends toward fewer hospital stays and shorter visits for mental illness. This restructuring of mental health service delivery has occurred in the context of evolving fiscal responsibilities, however. The goals and practices of community mental health have been complicated and revised by economic and political changes.

The National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) initially developed a CMHC program in the 1960s. CMHCs were designed to provide comprehensive services for people with mental illness, locate these services closer to home, and provide an umbrella of

integrated services for a catchment area of 125,000–250,000 people. CMHCs were designed to provide prevention, early treatment, and continuity of care in communities, promoting social integration of people with mental health needs.

### *Competing public interests*

At the outset, CMHCs were providing outpatient care to people with less severe, episodic, or acute mental health problems. In the 1980s, more people with serious mental illness began using CMHCs, due in part to **deinstitutionalization**, and following the redirection and capping of federal funds for local mental health care. With growing awareness of the homeless mentally ill, state-funded CMHCs faced new challenges, and their work became fragmented according to catchment areas of responsibility, leaving some urban centers overburdened, while others maintained locally funded operations, limiting responsibility for their area only.

The growth of local community mental health centers was an example of competing governmental interests and authorities. Growing numbers of CMHCs were mandated federally and to be funded by local communities, bypassing state control. This growth in outpatient capacity was later used to complement decreases in inpatient hospital care, or deinstitutionalization, which reduced the costs of diminishing and state-funded mental hospitals.

### *Policies to improve public mental health care*

Community mental health centers were the first of several programmatic attempts to improve mental health care in the latter part of the twentieth century. A second was when the federal government recommended Community Support Programs (CSPs) in 1977–1978 in response to problems associated with deinstitutionalization. CSPs focused on providing direct care and rehabilitation for the chronically mentally ill. However federal support for mental health care and CMHCs in particular was reduced in 1980–1981, with the repeal of the Mental Health Systems Act and the federal budgeting actions that cut funding and provided it instead through block grants to states.

A third initiative has been to expand the national capacity for children's mental health care under the Child and Adolescent Service System Program (CASSP), beginning in the 1980s. Principles for this system of care included a continuum of services, including mental health. The expansion of mental health classification systems and the **Diagnostic and Statistical**

## KEY TERMS

**Catchment**—In mental health, a term that refers to a particular geographical area served by a particular mental health agency.

**Psychiatric epidemiology**—A field of research for establishing the incidence, distribution or prevalence, and control of mental disorders in a population, including the sum of the factors controlling the presence of mental disorders.

**Manual of Mental Disorders**, or *DSM*, has helped identify and treat a growing number of children and youth. A fourth initiative was a joint effort by the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation and the department of Housing and Urban Development. Their Program on Chronic Mental Illness (PCMI) promoted the integration of regional mental health authorities in nine cities. Coordinated local mental health systems run by local mental health authorities remain an important goal of mental health policy. As this program ended, another program, Access to Community Care and Effective Services and Supports (ACCESS) began in 1993, ending in 1998. This nine-state demonstration project targeted homeless populations with mental illness.

Finally, many private and public health systems have moved towards managed mental health care, which has become also known as behavioral health care. This form of cost containment is a constellation of organizational reforms, financing systems, and regulatory techniques. **Managed care**, which began its expansion throughout health care in the 1990s, provided mental health care policy new challenges. While federal health policy and medical assistance provide reimbursement for mental health care and for people with mental illness, the regulation of these systems has grown increasingly complex.

The United States Department of Health and Human Services has developed the Comprehensive Community Mental Health Services Program for Children and Their Families with the goal of improving the delivery of mental health services to families with children and adolescents who have serious emotional disturbances. According to their information, as many as two-thirds of children and adolescents in the United States do not receive the mental health services they need. This fraction in absolute numbers translates to as many as 6.3 million children. The program is designed to bring together various children's mental health programs into a single plan or

system of care, led by the family. Grants from this program, which was first authorized in 1992, target improvements and expansions of such systems.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Aneshensel, Carol, and Jo Phelan, eds. *Handbook of the Sociology of Mental Health*. New York: Kluwer Academic, 1999.

Scheid, Teresa, and Allan Horwitz, eds. *Handbook for the Study of Mental Health*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

Grob, Gerald. "Government and Mental Health Policy: A Structural Analysis." *Milbank Quarterly* 72.3 (1994): 471–500.

Rothbard, Aileen B., So-Young Min, Eri Kino, and Yin-Ling Irene Wong. "Long-Term Effectiveness of the ACCESS Program Linking Community Mental Health Services to Homeless Persons with Serious Mental Illness." *The Journal of Behavioral Health and Services and Research* 31 (2004): 441–49.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

American Sociological Association. 1307 New York Ave., Washington, DC 20005-4701. <<http://www.asanet.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Rm. 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>. This agency also maintains a Web site with information about how to locate community mental health services locally. It is available at: <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/healthinformation/gettinghelp.cfm>>.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), Center for Mental Health Services (CMHS), Department of Health and Human Services. 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville MD 20857. <<http://www.samhsa.org>>.

Michael Polgar, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Compliance

### Definition

Compliance with appropriate, recommended, and prescribed mental health treatments simply means that a person is following a doctor's orders. Compliance is more likely when there is agreement and confidence regarding the medical **diagnosis** and prognosis. Compliance is complicated by uncertainty about the

nature of an illness and/or the effects of certain treatments, particularly medications. Some practitioners argue that the concept of "compliance" is paternalistic and does not include the patient enough in the decision-making process. Many recent studies have focused more on the concept of shared decision making with a strong relationship between the patient and practitioner. Either way, the nature of this relationship can be a strong determinant of how well a patient adheres to an agreed-upon course.

In everyday usage, the term compliance means deference and obedience, elevating the authority of medical expertise. Alternatively, adherence to medical advice refers to a somewhat more informed and equitable decision by a consumer to stick with appropriate medical treatment. In any case, a mental health treatment cannot be effective or even evaluated if a consumer does not follow a doctor's orders. A mental health treatment that is effective for one disorder may not be beneficial for other disorders, and diagnoses may evolve over time, complicating the issue of compliance.

### Health providers and consumers

From a health provider's viewpoint, for medical treatments to have their desired effects, complying or conforming to treatments is absolutely necessary. The concept of medication management reflects this idea that the provider is responsible and in control, while the consumer is a docile body who is incapacitated by disease or condition. From the perspective of health consumers, adherence to medical treatment is enhanced when there is a good health-care relationship and when consumers openly share their health beliefs and experience of illness with their provider.

### Problems with compliance

In mental health care, uncertainty about compliance is a challenging source of variation in the effectiveness of treatments. Noncompliance can represent a significant risk and cost to the medical system. For providers, partial compliance or discontinuation of medications represents the difficulty of maintaining treatment successes over time. Problems with compliance are often attributed to the consumer, but may also reflect the appropriateness of a medication or treatment.

### Compliance rates

Rates of compliance with mental health appointments are the greatest challenge (estimated in one hospital at 91%), while medication noncompliance is the second most challenging problem in the treatment of

persons with mental illness. Mental health medication compliance can be determined by questioning patients, counting pills or prescriptions, and through drug monitoring with urine, blood, or other test measures. Overall, recent research estimates compliance to be 58%. Patients who report lower rates are often considered unreliable indicators of compliance, while physicians report higher rates. Compliance with antidepressant medications is higher, on average (65%). Mental health medication compliance rates are only somewhat lower than medication compliance in other types of health care, which have been estimated at 76%.

### Explaining variation in compliance

Research in psychiatry, psychology, and sociology provides many explanations for variations in compliance. In psychiatry, clinical problems such as drug or alcohol **abuse** are sometimes used to explain non-compliance. Patients may also discontinue taking medications because of unwanted side effects. Health beliefs and patient-provider relationships are also recognized. In psychology and sociology, health beliefs and behaviors (in context of family, work, etc.) may enhance or limit compliance. If an individual's family member supports medication compliance, and the individual believes in the medicine's benefits, compliance may be enhanced (similar to a placebo effect). If an individual feels that a medicine makes him or her drowsy and affects work, compliance may be reduced. People who have limited access to or trust in doctors or medical science, and people whose faith precludes them from certain types of medical care, are less likely to comply with treatment recommendations.

To a large extent, patient compliance is a direct reflection of the quality of the doctor-patient relationship. When provider and consumer achieve a successful treatment alliance, as is advocated as part of the shared decision-making approach, and when the treatment is practical and beneficial for both the provider and the consumer, cooperation reduces concerns about treatment for both parties. When consumers are empowered and motivated to improve their health with the help of a doctor, compliance or adherence to treatment is higher. When there is distrust, disagreement, or misunderstanding involved, as when mental health status is uncertain or treatment side effects are unwelcome, compliance is lower. One British study found that patients with mental disorders were likely to prefer the form of treatment recommended by psychiatrists with whom they had good relationships, even if the treatment itself was painful. Some patients preferred **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT) to tranquilizers for **depression** because they had built up

trusting relationships with the doctors who used ECT, and perceived the doctors who recommended medications as **bullying** and condescending. Because non-compliant consumers are less likely to continue in care, they are also less likely to find helpful providers or successful treatments. Thus, noncompliance with treatment may become a self-fulfilling cycle.

Compliance is higher when treatments, including medications, help consumers feel better, when a family supports the treatment, and when taking medication prevents **relapse** of symptoms. However, as mentioned, people may be distressed by potential side effects of any medication, including those psychiatric medications that limit functioning. Limited functioning through drowsiness, also a problem of the older generation of antihistamines, is the best example. It is an effect of many medicines, particularly those for mental disorders. Other unwelcome side effects of various psychiatric medications include weight gain, involuntary movements such as muscle twitching, and impaired coordination. Consumers may feel embarrassed about taking medication, especially medications for illnesses that have a strong social **stigma** associated with them; may have difficulty getting a prescription for medication; and may have financial problems paying for treatment or medication. In some cases, when a patient is noncompliant or perceived to be at odds with treatment recommendations, they may risk losing autonomy over medical decisions. When at risk to self or others, people who are medication non-compliant may be pressured or forced to take medication at the risk of being involuntarily hospitalized.

#### *Multiple challenges in mental health care*

Compliance rates reflect the proportion of individuals in treatment who have the highest possibility of successful treatment. Noncompliance rates reflect those individuals who have either discontinued or avoided treatment, and thus have lower probabilities of treatment success. Sometimes patients do not want to get rid of their symptoms (mania, for example), or patients may not consider their experiences (symptoms) to be indicative of a disorder. In addition, successful mental health care is hampered by the fact that many people with mental health problems either do not use or lack access to mental health care.

The National Co-morbidity Survey found that only 40% of individuals with serious mental illness receive any treatment in a given year, and 39% of this group receives minimally adequate care. This means that merely 15% of all people in need receive minimally adequate care. Therefore, compliance with

treatment is part of a larger national challenge to provide quality mental health care and to use it well.

#### **Resources**

##### **BOOKS**

Horwitz, Allan. *Creating Mental Illness*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2002.

Pescosolido, Bernice, Carol Boyer, and Keri Lubell. "The Social Dynamics of Responding to Mental Health Problems." *Handbook for the Study of Mental Health*. T. Scheid, and A. Horwitz, eds. New York: Cambridge University Press. 1999.

Pescosolido, Bernice, and Carol Boyer. "How Do People Come to Use Mental Health Services?" *Handbook of the Sociology of Mental Health*. C. Aneshensel and J. Phelan, eds. New York: Kluwer Academic, 1999.

##### **PERIODICALS**

Adams, Jared R., and Robert E. Drake. "Shared Decision-Making and Evidence-Based Practice." *Community Mental Health Journal* 42 (2006): 87–105.

Bebbington, P. E. "The Contend and Context of Compliance." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 9 (Jan. 1995): 41–50.

Centorrino, Franca, Miguel Hernan, Giuseppa Drago-Ferrante, and others. "Factors Associated with Noncompliance with Psychiatric Outpatient Visits." *Psychiatric Services* 52 (March 2001): 378–80.

Cramer, Joyce, and Robert Rosenheck. "Compliance with Medication Regimens for Mental and Physical Disorders." *Psychiatric Services* 49 (Feb. 1998): 196–201.

Helbling, Josef, Vladeta Ajdacic-Gross, Christoph Lauber, Ruth Weyermann, Tom Burns, and Wulf Rossler. "Attitudes to Antipsychotic Drugs and their Side Effects: A Comparison Between General Practitioners and the General Population." *BioMed Central Psychiatry* 6 (2006): 42.

Wang, Philip, Olga Demler, and Ronald Kessler.

"Adequacy of Treatment for Serious Mental Illness in the United States." *American Journal of Public Health* 92.1 (2002): 92–98.

##### **ORGANIZATIONS**

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

American Sociological Association. 1307 New York Ave., Washington, DC 20005-4701. <<http://www.asanet.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Rm. 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), Center for Mental Health Services (CMHS), Department of Health and Human Services. 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville MD 20857. <<http://www.samhsa.org>>.

Michael Polgar, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Compulsion

### Definition

A compulsion is a behavior or mental act performed to help reduce **anxiety** or distress.

### Description

Compulsions are not voluntary activities and are not performed for pleasure. Instead, a person with a compulsion feels the need to engage in a particular behavior to relieve the **stress** and discomfort which would become overwhelming if the activity were not performed in a specific, repeated manner. Examples of compulsive motor activities are washing hands until raw, repeatedly checking the security of a locked door, and arranging and rearranging items in a set order. Some examples of compulsory mental acts are counting or silently repeating specific words. If a person troubled by compulsions is unable to perform such activities, stress and discomfort increase. The performance of the acts relieves distress, but only temporarily.

Often, compulsions are not acts that could logically be expected to relieve or prevent the fears that inspire them. For example, a person might feel compelled to count numbers in a certain order to “undo” the perceived damage or threat that follows a thought or behavior. Or a person might check to make sure a door is locked every few minutes. Compulsions, in some cases, are attempts to undo obsessions and are usually not successful.

*See also* Obsession; Obsessive-compulsive disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

VandenBos, Gary R. (ed). *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2007.

Dean A. Haycock, Ph.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

Compulsive gambling see **Pathological gambling disorder**

Compulsive skin picking see  
**Dermatotillomania**

## Computed tomography

### Definition

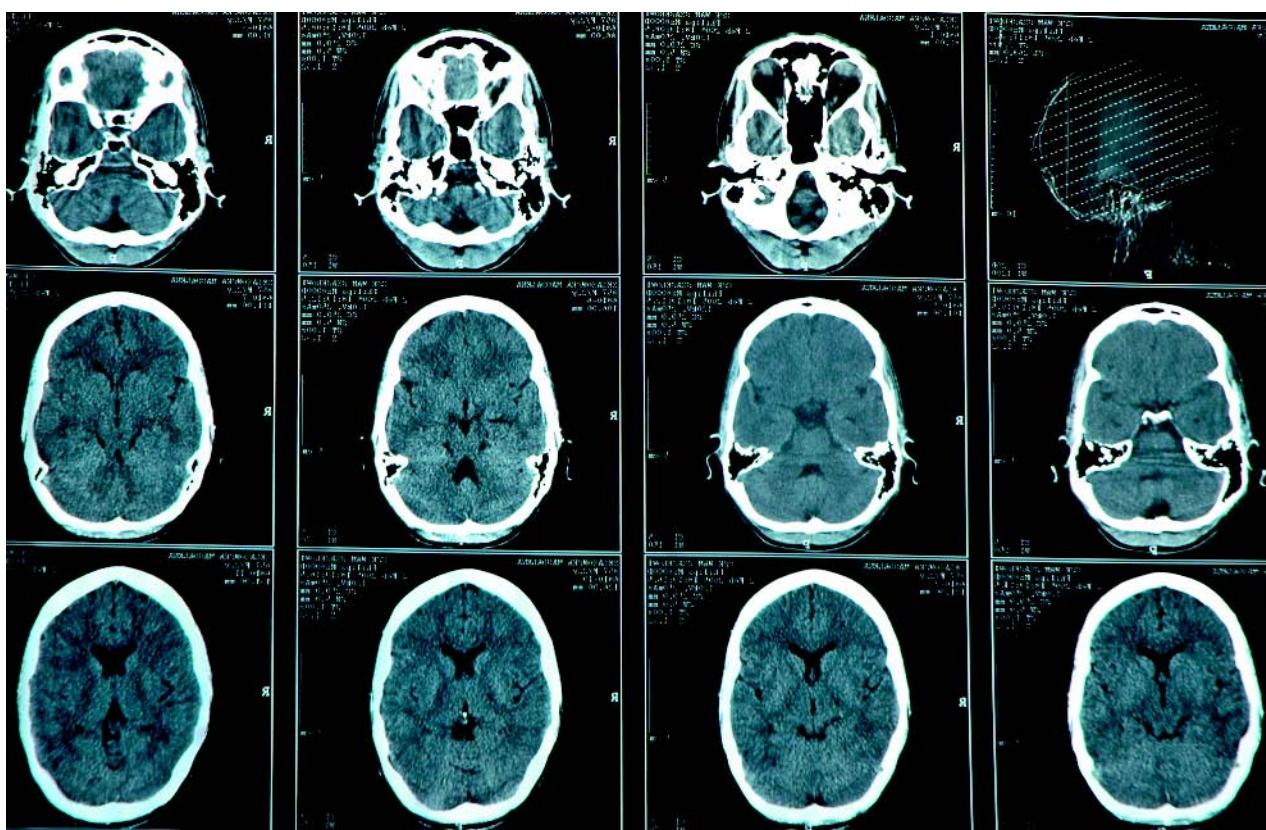
Computed tomography scanning, also called CT scan, CAT scan, or computerized axial tomography, is a diagnostic tool that provides views of internal body structures using x rays. In the field of mental health, a CT scan may be used when a patient seeks medical help for symptoms that could possibly be caused by a **brain tumor**. These symptoms may include headaches, emotional abnormalities, or intellectual or memory problems. In these cases, a CT scan may be performed to “rule out” a tumor, so that other tests can be performed in order to establish an accurate **diagnosis**.

### Purpose

CT scans are used to image bone, soft tissues, and air. Since the 1990s, CT equipment has become more affordable and available. CT scans have become the imaging exam of choice for the diagnoses of most solid tumors. Because the computerized image is sharp, focused, and three-dimensional, many structures can be better differentiated (visualized) when compared with standard x rays.

Common indications for CT scans include:

- Sinus studies. The CT scan can show details of sinusitis, bone fractures, and the presence of bony tumor involvement. Physicians may order a CT scan of the sinuses to provide an accurate map for surgery.
- Brain studies. Brain CT scans can detect hematomas (blood clotted mass), tumors, strokes, aneurysms (a blood vessel that ruptures), and degenerative or infected brain tissue. The introduction of CT scanning, especially spiral CT, has helped reduce the need for more invasive procedures such as cerebral angiography (inserting a wire through an artery to where it will reach brain vessels for visualization in real time).
- Body scans. CT scans of the chest, abdomen, spine, and extremities can detect the presence of tumors, enlarged lymph nodes, abnormal collection of fluid, and vertebral disc disease. These scans can also be helpful in evaluating the extent of bone breakdown in osteoporosis.
- Heart and aorta scans. CT scans can focus on the thoracic (chest) or abdominal aorta to locate aneurysms and other possible aortic diseases. A newer type of CT scan, called electron beam CT, can be used to detect calcium buildup in arteries. Because it is a new technology, it is not yet widely used and its indications are not yet well-defined.



CT scan of a human brain. (Konrad Zelazowski/Alamy)

- Chest scans. CT scans of the chest are useful in distinguishing tumors and in detailing accumulation of fluid in chest infections.

### Precautions

Pregnant women or those who could possibly be pregnant should not have a CT scan, particularly a full body or abdominal scan, unless the diagnostic benefits outweigh the risks. If the exam is necessary for obstetric purposes, technologists are instructed not to repeat films if there are errors. Pregnant patients receiving a CT scan or any x ray exam away from the abdominal area may be protected by a lead apron; most radiation, known as scatter, travels through the body, however, and is not totally blocked by the apron.

Contrast agents are often used in CT exams, though some types of tumors are better seen without it. Patients should discuss the use of contrast agents with their doctor, and should be asked to sign a consent form prior to the administration of contrast. One of the common contrast agents, iodine, can cause allergic reactions. Patients who are known to be allergic to iodine or shellfish should inform the physician prior to the CT scan; a combination of medications can be given to such

patients before the scan to prevent or minimize the reaction. Contrast agents may also put patients with diabetes at risk of kidney failure, particularly those taking the medication glucophage.

### Description

Computed tomography, is a combination of focused x-ray beams and the computerized production of an image. Introduced in the early 1970s, this radiologic procedure has advanced rapidly and is now widely used, sometimes in the place of standard x rays.

### CT equipment

A CT scan may be performed in a hospital or outpatient imaging center. Although the equipment looks large and intimidating, it is very sophisticated and fairly comfortable. The patient is asked to lie on a gantry, or narrow table, that slides into the center of the scanner. The scanner looks like a doughnut and is round in the middle, which allows the x-ray beam to rotate around the patient. The scanner section may also be tilted slightly to allow for certain cross-sectional angles.

### **CT procedure**

The gantry moves very slightly as the precise adjustments for each sectional image are made. A technologist watches the procedure from a window and views the images on a computer screen. Generally, patients are alone during the procedure, though exceptions are sometimes made for pediatric patients. Communication is possible via an intercom system.

It is essential that the patient lie very still during the procedure to prevent motion blurring. In some studies, such as chest CTs, the patient will be asked to hold his or her breath during image capture.

Following the procedure, films of the images are usually printed for the radiologist and referring physician to review. A radiologist can also interpret CT exams on the computer screen. The procedure time will vary in length depending on the area being imaged. Average study times are from 30 to 60 minutes. Some patients may be concerned about claustrophobia (a feeling of being "closed in") but the width of the "doughnut" portion of the scanner is such that many patients can be reassured of openness. Doctors may consider giving **sedatives** to patients who have severe claustrophobia or difficulty lying still (such as small children).

### **The CT image**

While traditional x-ray machines image organs in two dimensions, often resulting in organs in the front of the body being superimposed over those in the back, CT scans allow for a more three-dimensional effect. CT images can be likened to slices in a loaf of bread. Precise sections of the body can be located and imaged as cross-sectional views. The screen before the technologist shows a computer's analysis of each section detected by the x-ray beam. Thus, various densities of tissue can be easily distinguished.

### **Contrast agents**

Contrast agents are often used in CT exams and in other radiology procedures to illuminate certain details of anatomy more clearly. Some contrasts are natural, such as air or water. A water-based contrast agent is sometimes administered for specific diagnostic purposes. Barium sulfate is commonly used in gastroenterology procedures. The patient may drink this contrast or receive it in an enema. Oral or rectal contrast is usually given when examining the abdomen or cells, but not when scanning the brain or chest. Iodine is the most widely used intravenous contrast agent and is given through an intravenous needle.

If contrast agents are used in the CT exam, these will be administered several minutes before the study begins. Patients undergoing abdominal CT may be asked to drink a contrast medium. Some patients may experience a salty taste, flushing of the face, warmth or slight nausea, or hives from an intravenous contrast injection. Technologists and radiologists have the equipment and training to help patients through these minor reactions and to handle more severe reactions. Severe reactions to contrast are rare, but do occur.

### **Newer types of CT scans**

The spiral CT scan, also called a helical CT, is a newer version of CT. This type of scan is continuous in motion and allows for the continuous re-creation of images. For example, traditional CT allows the technologist to take slices at very small and precise intervals one after the other. Spiral CT allows for a continuous flow of images, without stopping the scanner to move to the next image slice. A major advantage of spiral CT is the ability to reconstruct images anywhere along the length of the study area. Because the procedure is faster, patients are required to lie still for shorter periods of time. The ability to image contrast more rapidly after it is injected, when it is at its highest level, is another advantage of spiral CT's high speed.

Electron beam CT scans are another newer type of CT technology that can be used to detect calcium buildup in arteries. These calcium deposits are potential risk factors for coronary artery disease. Electron beam CT scans take pictures much more quickly than conventional CTs, and are therefore better able to produce clear images of the heart as it pumps blood. Because it is a newer and expensive test, electron beam CT scanning is not widely used.

Some facilities will have spiral, electron, and conventional CT available. Although spiral is more advantageous for many applications, conventional CT is still a superior and precise method for imaging many tissues and structures. The physician will evaluate which type of CT works best for the specific exam purpose.

### **Preparation**

If a contrast medium is administered, the patient may be asked to fast for about four to six hours prior to the procedure. Patients will usually be given a gown (like a typical hospital gown) to be worn during the procedure. All metal and jewelry should be removed to avoid artifacts on the film. Depending on the type of study, patients may also be required to remove dentures.

## Aftercare

Generally, no aftercare is required following a CT scan. Immediately following the exam, the technologist will continue to watch the patient for possible adverse contrast reactions. Patients are instructed to advise the technologist of any symptoms, particularly respiratory difficulty. The site of contrast injection will be bandaged and may feel tender following the exam.

## Risks

Radiation exposure from a CT scan is similar to, though higher than, that of a conventional x ray. Although this is a risk to pregnant women, the risk for other adults is minimal and should produce no effects. Severe contrast reactions are rare, but they are a risk of many CT procedures.

## Normal results

Normal findings on a CT exam show bone, the most dense tissue, as white areas. Tissues and fat will show as various shades of gray, and fluids will be gray or black. Air will also look black. Intravenous, oral, and rectal contrast appear as white areas. The radiologist can determine if tissues and organs appear normal by the sensitivity of the gray shadows.

## Abnormal results

Abnormal results may show different characteristics of tissues within organs. Accumulations of blood or other fluids where they do not belong may be detected. Radiologists can differentiate among types of tumors throughout the body by viewing details of their makeup.

### *Sinus studies*

The increasing availability and lowered cost of CT scanning has lead to its increased use in sinus studies, either as a replacement for a sinus x ray or as a follow-up to an abnormal sinus radiograph. The sensitivity of CT allows for the location of areas of sinus infection, particularly chronic infection. Sinus tumors will show as shades of gray indicating the difference in their density from that of normal tissues in the area.

### *Brain studies*

The precise differences in density allowed by CT scan can clearly show tumors, strokes, or lesions in the brain area as altered densities. These lighter or darker areas on the image may indicate a tumor or hematoma within the brain and skull area. Different types of tumors can be identified by the presence of edema (fluid), by the tissue's density, or by studying blood

## KEY TERMS

**Aneurysm**—A symptomless bulging of a weak arterial wall that can rupture, leading to stroke.

**Cerebral angiography**—A procedure that allows a wire to be inserted in blood vessels in the brain which generates an image of diseases in these arteries.

**Contrast (agent, medium)**—A substance injected into the body that illuminates certain structures that would otherwise be hard to see on the radiograph (film).

**Gantry**—A name for the couch or table used in a CT scan. The patient lies on the gantry while it slides into the x-ray scanner.

**Hematoma**—An accumulation of blood, often clotted, in a body tissue or organ, usually caused by a break or tear in a blood vessel.

**Metastasis**—Secondary cancer, or cancer that has spread from one body organ or tissue to another.

**Osteoporosis**—A loss of bone minerals.

**Radiologist**—A medical doctor specially trained in radiology (x ray) interpretation and its use in the diagnosis of disease and injury.

**Spiral CT**—Also referred to as helical CT, this method allows for continuous 360-degree x-ray image capture.

**Thoracic**—Refers to the chest area. The thorax runs between the abdomen and neck and is encased in the ribs.

vessel location and activity. The speed and convenience of CT often allows for detection of hemorrhage (bleeding) before symptoms even occur.

### *Body scans*

The body CT scan can identify abnormal body structures and organs. A CT scan may indicate tumors or cysts, enlarged lymph nodes, abnormal collections of fluids, blood, fat, or cancer metastasis. Tumors resulting from metastasis (movement of the cancer from the primary site of cancer growth to a distant site) are different in makeup than primary (original) tumors.

### *Chest scans*

In addition to those findings that may indicate aortic aneurysms (rupture of the largest artery in the body), chest CT studies can show other problems in

the heart and lungs, and distinguish between an aortic aneurysm and a tumor adjacent to the aorta. CT will not only show differences between air, water, tissues and bone, but will also assign numerical values to the various densities. Coin-sized lesions in the lungs may be indicative of tuberculosis or tumors. CT will help distinguish among the two. Enlarged lymph nodes in the chest area may indicate Hodgkin's disease (a blood disorder).

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Abeloff, M. *Clinical Oncology*, 2nd Ed. Orlando, Florida: Churchill Livingstone, Inc., 2000.  
 Springhouse Corporation. *Illustrated Guide to Diagnostic Tests*. Springhouse, PA: Springhouse Corporation, 1998.

### PERIODICALS

- Holbert, J. M. "Role of Spiral Computed Tomography in the Diagnosis of Pulmonary Embolism in the Emergency Department." *Annals of Emergency Medicine* (May 1999): 520-28.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American College of Radiology. 1891 Preston White Drive, Reston, VA 22091. Telephone: (800) ACR-LINE. <<http://www.acr.org>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.  
 Teresa G. Norris, R.N.



**A bully threatens a smaller boy. Violent behavior is one symptom of conduct disorder.** (Don Hammond/Design Pics/Corbis)

## Conduct disorder

### Definition

Conduct disorder is a childhood behavior disorder characterized by aggressive and destructive activities that cause disruptions in the child's natural environments such as home, school, church, or the neighborhood. The overriding feature of conduct disorder is the repetitive and persistent pattern of behaviors that violate societal norms and the rights of other people. It is one of the most prevalent categories of mental health problems of children in this country, with rates estimated at 9% for males and 2% for females.

### Description

The specific behaviors used to produce a **diagnosis** of conduct disorder fall into four groups: aggressive conduct that causes or threatens physical harm to other people or animals, nonaggressive behavior that causes property loss or damage, deceitfulness or theft, and serious violations of rules. Two subtypes of con-

duct disorder can be delineated based on the age that symptoms first appear. Childhood-onset type is appropriate for children showing at least one of the behaviors in question before the age of 10. Adolescent onset type is defined by the absence of any conduct disorder criteria before the age of 10. Severity may be described as mild, moderate or severe, depending on the number of problems exhibited and their impact on other people.

A youngster who shows symptoms (most often aggression) before age 10 may also exhibit oppositional behavior and peer relationship problems. When they also show persistent conduct disorder and then develop adult **antisocial personality disorder**, they should be distinguished from an individual who had no symptoms of conduct disorder before age 10. The childhood type is more highly associated with heightened aggression, male gender, **oppositional defiant disorder**, and a family history of antisocial behavior.

The individual behaviors that can be observed when conduct disorder is diagnosed may be both common, problematic, and chronic. They tend to occur frequently and are distressingly consistent across time, settings, and families. Not surprisingly, these children

function poorly in a variety of places. In fact, the behaviors clustered within the term “conduct disorder” account for a majority of clinical referrals, classroom detentions or other sanctions, being asked to stop participating in numerous activities, and can be extremely difficult (even impossible) for parents to manage.

The negative consequences of conduct disorder, particularly childhood onset, may include illicit drug use, dropping out of school, violent behavior, severe family conflict, and frequent delinquent acts. Such behaviors often result in the child’s eventual placement out of the home, in special education and/or the juvenile justice system. There is evidence that the rates of disruptive behavior disorders may be as high as 50% in youth in public sectors of care such as juvenile justice, alcohol and drug services, schools for youths with serious emotional disturbances, child welfare, and mental health.

The financial costs of crime and correction for repeated juvenile offenses by youth with conduct disorder are extensive. The social costs include citizens’ fear of such behavior, loss of a sense of safety, and disruptions in classrooms that interfere with other children’s opportunity to learn. The costs to the child and his or her family are enormous in terms of the emotional and other resources needed to address the consequences of the constellation of symptoms that define conduct disorder.

## Causes

There is no known cause for conduct disorder. The frustrating behavior of youngsters with conduct disorder frequently leads to blaming, labeling and other unproductive activities. Children who are “acting out” do not inspire sympathy or the benefit of the doubt. They are often ostracized by other children. Parents of such children are often blamed as poor disciplinarians or bad parents. As a result, parents of children with conduct disorder may be reluctant to engage with schools or other authorities. At the same time, there is a strong correlation between children diagnosed with conduct disorder and a significant level of family dysfunction, poor parenting practices, an overemphasis on coercion and hostile communication patterns, verbal and physical aggression and a history of maltreatment.

There is a suggestion of an, as yet, unidentified genetic component to what has generally been viewed as a behavioral disorder. One study with adopted children in the mid-1990s looked at the relationship between birth parents with antisocial personality dis-

order, and adverse adoptive home environments. When these two adverse conditions occurred, there was significantly increased aggressiveness and conduct disorder in the adopted children. That was not the case if there was no indication of antisocial personality disorder in the birth parents. This finding has important implications for prevention and **intervention** of conduct disorders and its associated conditions of **substance abuse** and aggressiveness.

## Diagnosis

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*) indicates that for conduct disorder to be diagnosed, the patient has repeatedly violated rules, age-appropriate social norms and the rights of others for a period of at least twelve months. This is shown by three or more of the following behaviors, with at least one having taken place in the previous six months: aggression to people or animals, property destruction, lying or theft, and serious rule violations.

Aggression to people or animals includes:

- engaging in frequent bullying or threatening
- often starting fights
- using a weapon that could cause serious injury (gun, knife, club, broken glass)
- showing physical cruelty to people
- showing physical cruelty to animals
- engaging in theft with confrontation (armed robbery, extortion, mugging, purse snatching)
- forcing sex upon someone

Property destruction includes:

- deliberately setting fires to cause serious damage
- deliberately destroying the property of others by means other than fire setting

Lying or theft includes:

- breaking into building, car, or house belonging to someone else
- frequently lying or breaking promises for gain or to avoid obligations (called “conning”)
- stealing valuables without confrontation (burglary, forgery, shop lifting)

Serious rule violations include:

- beginning before age 13, frequently staying out at night against parents’ wishes
- running away from parents overnight twice or more or once if for an extended period
- engaging in frequent truancy beginning before the age of 13

Mild severity would mean there are few problems with conduct beyond those needed to make a diagnosis and all of the problems cause little harm to other people. Moderate severity means the number and effect of the conduct problems is between the extremes of mild and severe. Severe is indicated if there are many more conduct symptoms than are needed to make the diagnosis (more than three in the previous twelve months or more than one in the previous six months), or, the behaviors cause other people considerable harm.

It is generally diagnosed when somebody, often a child in school, comes to the attention of authorities (school, law enforcement, and others) most often because of behavior. The person might then be referred to a **psychiatrist** or **psychologist** for **assessment and diagnosis**. It is unlikely that any sort of specific test is given; rather, the individual would have to meet the criteria in the *DSM-IV-TR*. Usually there is a history of acting out in school, neighborhood, home, and other social settings. Court-ordered treatment would likely occur if the person comes to the attention of the police and if a crime is involved. A judge might order treatment as an alternative to jail, or before a sentence is served.

## Treatments

Earlier treatments of youth with conduct disorder relied on legal processes to either declare a child in need of supervision or treatment and thus able to be placed in residential settings established for this purpose. While residential placements may still be used, recent treatment models have relied less on such restrictive procedures. The increased visibility and sophistication of the consumer movement, comprised of families of children and youth with mental health disorders, is bringing pressure to bear on treatment providers to stop blaming families, stop removing children from their families for services, focus instead on strengths and assets in both the child and his or her family, and to use community-based interventions in several domains in which the child and family live.

Community-based interventions are sometimes called wrap-around services to describe the intention that they will be brought to the child's natural environment in a comprehensive and flexible way. The idea is to target a range of child, parent, family and social system factors associated with a child's behavioral problems. This approach has been successful in modifying antisocial behavior, rates of restrictive placement, and in reducing the cost of services.

Another treatment that has been used with some success is the *Child Cognitive Behavioral Treatment*

*and Skills Training* which trains children with conduct disorder in anger-coping, peer coping, and problem-solving skills.

**Parent Management Training** and **family therapy** are also used to treat conduct disorder. Parents learn to apply behavioral principles effectively, how to play with their children, and how to teach and coach the child to use new skills.

Medication is sometimes used and may be effective in controlling aggression. Generally, a variety of treatment modes are used to address such a complex disorder. Severe antisocial behavior on the part of the child and adverse parenting practices may suggest that the family will stop treatment before it can be effective, or before meaningful change can result.

## Prognosis

Early identification and appropriate and innovative treatment will improve the course of conduct disorder and possibly prevent a host of negative outcomes that are often a consequence of the behaviors associated with it. Unfortunately, the **stigma** of treatment and the undiagnosed problems of many parents are still significant enough that families whose children could benefit from treatment, never find their way to a treatment setting. Instead their children come into contact with the juvenile and criminal justice system.

## Prevention

Prognosis may best be improved by prevention of conduct disorder before it becomes so resistant to treatment. Research is being conducted on what early interventions hold the greatest promise. It incorporates several components such as child tutoring, classroom intervention, peer training, social-cognitive skills training, parent training, and family problem solving.

Other studies have included early parent or family interventions, school based interventions and community interventions. Again, these include a variety of elements as suggested before, including parent training that includes education about normal child development, child problem solving, and family **communication skills** training. Research is still needed to determine where and when to target specific preventive interventions.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association Publishing, Inc. 2000.

Kazdin, Alan E., ed. *Encyclopedia of Psychology*. Vol. 2. Washington, D.C.: Oxford University Press, 2000.  
 Morrison, James M.D. *DSM-IV Made Easy: The Clinician's Guide to Diagnosis*. New York, The Guilford Press, 1995.

#### PERIODICALS

- Bennett, Kathryn J. PhD, and David Offord, MD. "Screening for Conduct Problems: Does Predictive Accuracy of Conduct Disorder Symptoms Improve with Age?" *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 40, no. 12 (2001).
- Biederman, Joseph M.D., Eric Mick, ScD, Stephen V. Faraone, PhD, and Melissa Burback, B.A. "Patterns of Remission and Symptom Decline in Conduct Disorder: A four-Year Prospective Study of an ADHD Sample." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 40, no. 3 (2001).
- Cadore, Remi J., MD, William R. Yates, MD, Ed Troughton, George Woodworth, PhD, and Mark A. Stewart, MD. "Genetic-Environmental Interaction in the Genesis of Aggressivity and Conduct Disorders." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 52, no. 11 (1995).
- Garland, Ann F. PhD, Richard Hough, PhD, Kristen McCabe, PhD, May Yeh, PhD, Patricia Wood, MPH, MA, and Gregory Aarons, PhD. "Prevalence of Psychiatric Disorders in Youths Across Five Sectors of Care." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 40, no. 4 (2001).

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry.  
 3615 Wisconsin Ave. NW, Washington, DC 20016.  
[<http://www.aacap.org>](http://www.aacap.org).
- Federation of Families for Children's Mental Health.  
 1101 King St., Suite 420, Alexandria, VA 22314.  
[<http://www.ffcmh.org>](http://www.ffcmh.org).

Judy Leaver, M.A.

## Conners' Rating Scales-Revised

### Definition

Developed by C. Keith Conners, Ph.D., the Conners' Rating Scales-Revised (CRS-R) are paper and pencil screening questionnaires designed to be completed by parents and teachers to assist in evaluating children for **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)**.

### Purpose

The CSR-R is used as part of a comprehensive examination and are designed to be easily administered and scored. Both the long and short versions are tools to assist in determining whether children between the ages of three and 17 years might have ADHD.

### Precautions

Those who administer the CRS-R should have a good understanding of psychological testing and its limitations. Although the CRS-R can be readily administered and scored by a nonprofessional, the ultimate responsibility for interpretation lies with a seasoned professional. As with all psychological evaluation instruments, the CRS-R is not perfect. One runs the risk of obtaining false positives (incorrectly diagnosing the disorder) or false negatives (failing to identify the disorder). Therefore, the information obtained from completed forms should not be used in isolation. It should be one piece of a complex evaluation that includes a clinical interview with the child, other diagnostic measures such as a computerized continuous performance test, and patient self-report—for those old enough and with sufficient reading ability to do so.

Previous versions of the Conners' scales were criticized by those claiming disparity between results obtained in different ethnic groups. The most recent version should dispel this concern, since they were "normed" using data from more than 8,000 subjects crossing all cultural and ethnic boundaries. The technical manual for CRS-R even contains separate normative information for specific ethnic groups. However, when age and sex are taken into account there were either no differences or insignificant differences. Statistically, a difference of two or three T-score points would be insignificant.

### Description

The CRS-Rs are available in long and short versions for both parents and teachers. The long version for parents contains 80 items while the long version for teachers contains 59 items. The parents' short version contains 27 items and the teachers' short version has 28. The forms are multi-paged, and numbers circled on the front or back page are automatically transferred to a middle section for use by the clinician. The clinician transfers the circled scores into appropriate scales on the middle form and totals each scale at the bottom of the page. The parent version contains scales A through N. The teacher version is similar but lacks scale G (psychosomatic) contained on the parent version.

### Results

After transferring the raw scores to the various scales and totaling them, the total of each scale (A–N) is transferred to another form designed to graphically portray the results. The clinician must be careful to transpose the raw scores to the correct age group column within each major scale. For example, column 1 is used for ages three to five, column 2 for ages six to eight,

## KEY TERMS

**Normed**—Describes a process used in the developmental stages of a test instrument. The new test is first given to a cross-section of a population for which it is designed. The scores, placements, rankings, etc., of these persons then become the source for all future comparisons (norm group). When a new subject takes the test, his/her score, placement, ranking, etc., is determined based upon comparison with or deviation from the norm group.

**Psychosomatic**—Physical disorder originating in, or aggravated by, the psychic or emotional processes of the individual.

column 3 for ages nine to 11, etc. Each of these column scores can then be converted to a T-score. T-scores are standardized scores with a mean of 50 and a standard deviation of 10. These can be further converted to percentile scores as needed.

As a rule, T-scores above 60 are cause for concern and have interpretive value. Interpretive scores range from a low T-score of 61 (mildly atypical) to above 70 (markedly atypical). However, again, this information should not be used in isolation to make a **diagnosis**.

*See also* Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

*Conners' Rating Scales-Revised Technical Manual*. North Tonawanda, New York: Multi Health Systems, 2000.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Center for Mental Health Services. Office of Consumer, Family, and Public Information, 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 15-105 Rockville, MD 20857. (301) 443-2792.  
Children and Adults with Attention Deficit Disorders (CH.A.D.D.). 499 NW 70th Avenue, Suite 109, Plantation, FL 33317. (305) 587-3700. (800) 233-4050 <[www.chadd.org](http://www.chadd.org)>.

Jack H. Booth, Psy.D.

## Conversion disorder

### Definition

Conversion disorder is defined by the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, fourth edition, text revision, also known as the ***DSM-IV-TR***

as a mental disorder whose central feature is the appearance of symptoms affecting the patient's senses or voluntary movements that suggest a neurological or general medical disease or condition. Somatoform disorders are marked by persistent physical symptoms that cannot be fully explained by a medical condition, **substance abuse**, or other mental disorder, but rather seem to stem from psychological issues or conflicts. The ***DSM-IV-TR*** classifies conversion disorder as one of the somatoform disorders, first classified as a group of mental disorders by the ***DSM III*** in 1980. Other terms that have sometimes been used for conversion disorder include pseudoneurologic syndrome, hysterical **neurosis**, and psychogenic disorder.

Conversion disorder is a major reason for visits to primary care practitioners. One study of health care utilization estimated that 25–72% of office visits to primary care doctors involved psychological distress that takes the form of somatic (physical) symptoms. Another study estimated that at least 10% of all medical treatments and diagnostic services were ordered for patients with no evidence of organic disease. Conversion disorder carries a high economic price tag. Patients who convert their emotional problems into physical symptoms spend nine times as much for health care as people who do not somatosize; and 82% of adults with conversion disorder stop working because of their symptoms. The annual bill for conversion disorder in the United States comes to \$20 billion, not counting absenteeism from work and disability payments.

### Description

Conversion disorder has a complicated history that helps to explain the number of different names for it. Two eminent neurologists of the nineteenth century, Jean-Martin Charcot in Paris, France, and Josef Breuer in Vienna, Austria, were investigating what was then called hysteria, a disorder primarily affecting women (the term "hysteria" comes from the Greek word for uterus or womb). Women diagnosed with hysteria had frequent emotional outbursts and a variety of neurologic symptoms, including paralysis, fainting spells, convulsions, and temporary loss of sight or hearing. Pierre Janet (one of Charcot's students), and Breuer independently came to the same conclusion about the cause of hysteria—that it resulted from psychological trauma. Janet, in fact, coined the term "dissociation" to describe the altered state of consciousness experienced by many patients who were diagnosed with hysteria.

The next stage in the study of conversion disorder was research into the causes of "combat neurosis" in World

War I (1914–1918) and World War II (1939–1945). Many of the symptoms observed in “shell-shocked” soldiers were identical to those of “hysterical” women. Two of the techniques still used in the treatment of conversion disorder, hypnosis and narcotherapy, were introduced as therapies for combat veterans. The various terms used by successive editions of the *DSM* and the *ICD* (the European equivalent of *DSM*) for conversion disorder reflect its association with hysteria and **dissociation**. The first edition of the *DSM* (1952) used the term “conversion reaction.” The *DSM-II* (1968) called the disorder “hysterical neurosis (conversion type),” and the *DSM-III* (1980), *DSM-III-R* (1987), and *DSM-IV* (1994) have all used the term “conversion disorder.” *ICD-10* refers to it as “dissociative (conversion) disorder.”

*DSM-IV-TR* (2000) specifies six criteria for the **diagnosis** of conversion disorder. They are:

- The patient has one or more symptoms or deficits affecting the senses or voluntary movement that suggest a neurological or general medical disorder.
- The onset or worsening of the symptoms was preceded by conflicts or stressors in the patient’s life.
- The symptom is not faked or produced intentionally.
- The symptom cannot be fully explained as the result of a general medical disorder, substance intake, or a behavior related to the patient’s culture.
- The symptom is severe enough to interfere with the patient’s schooling, employment, or social relationships, or is serious enough to require a medical evaluation.
- The symptom is not limited to pain or sexual dysfunction, does not occur only in the context of somatization disorder, and is not better accounted for by another mental disorder.

The *DSM-IV-TR* lists four subtypes of conversion disorder: conversion disorder with motor symptom or deficit; with sensory symptom or deficit; with **seizures** or convulsions; and with mixed presentation.

Although conversion disorder is most commonly found in individuals, it sometimes occurs in groups. One such instance occurred in 1997 in a group of three young men and six adolescent women of the Embera, an indigenous tribe in Colombia. The young people believed that they had been put under a spell or curse and developed dissociative symptoms that were not helped by antipsychotic medications or traditional herbal remedies. They were cured when shamans from their ethnic group came to visit them. The episode was

attributed to psychological **stress** resulting from rapid cultural change.

Another example of group conversion disorder occurred in Iran in 1992. Ten girls out of a classroom of 26 became unable to walk or move normally following tetanus inoculations. Although the local physicians were able to treat the girls successfully, public health programs to immunize people against tetanus suffered an immediate negative impact. One explanation of group conversion disorder is that an individual who is susceptible to the disorder is typically more affected by suggestion and easier to hypnotize than the average person.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The immediate cause of conversion disorder is a stressful event or situation that leads the patient to develop bodily symptoms as symbolic expressions of a long-standing psychological conflict or problem. One **psychiatrist** has defined the symptoms as “a code that conceals the message from the sender as well as from the receiver.”

Two terms that are used in connection with the causes of conversion disorder are primary gain and secondary gain. Primary gain refers to the lessening of the **anxiety** and communication of the unconscious wish that the patient derives from the symptom(s). Secondary gain refers to the interference with daily tasks, removal from the uncomfortable situation, or increased attention from significant others that the patient obtains as a result of the symptom(s).

Physical, emotional, or sexual **abuse** can be a contributing cause of conversion disorder in both adults and children. In a study of 34 children who developed pseudoseizures, 32% had a history of **depression** or sexual abuse, and 44% had recently experienced a parental divorce, death, or violent quarrel. At least one study, however, has found no consistent association between dissociation and sexual or physical abuse. In the adult population, conversion disorder may be associated with mobbing, a term that originated among European psychiatrists and industrial psychologists to describe psychological abuse in the workplace. One American woman who quit her job because of mobbing was unable to walk for several months. Adult males sometimes develop conversion disorder during military basic training. Conversion disorder may also develop in adults as a long-delayed aftereffect of childhood abuse. A team of surgeons reported on the case of a patient who went into a psychogenic coma following a throat operation. The surgeons found that she had been

repeatedly raped as a child by her father, who stifled her cries by smothering her with a pillow.

### Symptoms

In general, symptoms of conversion disorder are not under the patient's conscious control, and are frequently mysterious and frightening to the patient. The symptoms usually have an acute onset, but sometimes worsen gradually.

The most frequent forms of conversion disorder in Western countries include:

- pseudoparalysis. In pseudoparalysis, the patient loses the use of half of his/her body or of a single limb. The weakness does not follow anatomical patterns and is often inconsistent upon repeat examination.
- pseudosensory syndromes. Patients with these syndromes often complain of numbness or lack of sensation in various parts of their bodies. The loss of sensation typically follows the patient's notion of their anatomy, rather than known characteristics of the human nervous system.
- pseudoseizures. These are the most difficult symptoms of conversion disorder to distinguish from their organic equivalents. Between 5% and 35% of patients with pseudoseizures also have epilepsy. Electroencephalograms (EEGs) and the measurement of serum prolactin levels are useful in distinguishing pseudoseizures from epileptic seizures.
- pseudocoma. Pseudocoma is also difficult to diagnose. Because true coma may indicate a life-threatening condition, patients must be given standard treatments for coma until the diagnosis can be established.
- psychogenic movement disorders. These can mimic myoclonus, parkinsonism, dystonia, dyskinesia, and tremor. Doctors sometimes give patients with suspected psychogenic movement disorders a placebo medication to determine whether the movements are psychogenic or the result of an organic disorder.
- pseudoblindness. Pseudoblindness is one of the most common forms of conversion disorder related to vision. Placing a mirror in front of the patient and tilting it from side to side can often be used to determine pseudoblindness, because humans tend to follow the reflection of their eyes.
- pseudodiplopia. Pseudodiplopia, or seeing double, can usually be diagnosed by examining the patient's eyes.
- pseudoptosis. Ptosis, or drooping of the upper eyelid, is a common symptom of myasthenia gravis and a few other disorders. Some people can cause their

eyelids to droop voluntarily with practice. The diagnosis can be made on the basis of the eyebrow; in true ptosis, the eyebrows are lifted, whereas in pseudoptosis they are lowered.

- hysterical aphonia. Aphonia refers to loss of the ability to produce sounds. In hysterical aphonia, the patient's cough and whisper are normal, and examination of the throat reveals normal movement of the vocal cords.

Psychiatrists working in various parts of the Middle East and Asia report that the symptoms of conversion disorder as listed by the *DSM-IV* and the *ICD-10* do not fit well with the symptoms of the disorder most frequently encountered in their patient populations.

### Demographics

The lifetime prevalence rates of conversion disorder in the general population are estimated to fall between 2.5 and 500 per 100,000 people. Differences among estimates reflect differences in the method of diagnosis as well as regional population differences. In terms of clinical populations, conversion disorder is diagnosed in 5–14% of general hospital patients; 1–3% of outpatient referrals to psychiatrists; and 5–25% of psychiatric outpatients. The frequency among clinical populations overall is reported between 20 and 120 per 100,000 patients.

Among adults, women diagnosed with conversion disorder outnumber men by a 2:1 to 10:1 ratio; among children, however, the gender ratio is closer to 1:1. Less-educated people and those of lower socioeconomic status are more likely to develop conversion disorder; race by itself does not appear to be a factor. There is, however, a major difference between the populations of developing and developed countries. In developing countries, the prevalence of conversion disorder may run as high as 31%.

### Diagnosis

Conversion disorder is one of the few mental disorders that appears to be overdiagnosed, particularly in emergency departments. There are numerous instances of serious neurologic illness that were initially misdiagnosed as conversion disorder. Newer techniques of diagnostic imaging have helped to lower the rate of medical errors. In addition, functional MRI has identified specific areas of the **brain** that show differential activation in cases of conversion disorder, and imaging findings may eventually be useful in distinguishing conversion disorder.

### Diagnostic issues

Diagnosis of conversion disorder is complicated by its coexistence with physical illness in as many as 60% of patients. Alternatively explained, a diagnosis of conversion disorder does not exclude the possibility of a concurrent organic disease. The examining doctor will usually order a mental health evaluation when conversion disorder is suspected, as well as x-rays, other **imaging studies** that may be useful, and appropriate laboratory tests. The doctor will also take a thorough patient history that will include the presence of recent stressors in the patient's life, as well as a history of abuse. Children and adolescents are usually asked about their school experiences, one question they are asked is whether a recent change of school or an experience related to school may have intensified academic pressure.

In addition, there are a number of bedside tests that doctors can use to distinguish between symptoms of conversion disorder and symptoms caused by physical diseases. These may include the drop test, in which a "paralyzed" arm is dropped over the patient's face. In conversion disorder, the arm will not strike the face. Other tests include applying a mildly painful stimulus to a "weak" or "numb" part of the body. The patient's pulse rate will typically rise in cases of conversion disorder, and he or she will usually pull back the limb that is being touched.

### Factors suggesting a diagnosis of conversion disorder

The doctor can also use a list of factors known to be associated with conversion disorder to assess the likelihood that a specific patient may have the disorder:

- age. Conversion disorder is rarely seen in children younger than six years or adults over 35 years.
- sex. The female:male ratio for the disorder ranges between 2:1 and 10:1. It is thought that higher rates of conversion disorder in women may reflect the greater vulnerability of females to abuse.
- residence. People who live in rural areas are more likely to develop conversion disorder than those who live in cities.
- level of education. Conversion disorder occurs less often among sophisticated or highly educated people.
- family history. Children sometimes develop conversion disorder from observing their parents' reactions to stressors. This process is known as social modeling.
- a recent stressful change or event in the patient's life.

An additional feature suggesting conversion disorder is the presence of *la belle indifférence*. The

French phrase refers to an attitude of relative unconcern on the patient's part about the symptoms or their implications. *La belle indifférence* is, however, much more common in adults with conversion disorder than in children or adolescents. Patients in these younger age groups are much more likely to react to their symptoms with fear or hopelessness. A recent review of the published reports of *la belle indifférence* found that this feature was not useful in discriminating conversion disorder from physically based disease because of muddy definitions and application of it in diagnosis.

### Medical conditions that mimic conversion symptoms

It is important for the doctor to rule out serious medical disorders in patients who appear to have conversion symptoms. At least one study has found an approximately 4% rate of misdiagnosis of an actual physical problem as a conversion disorder. The following disorders must be considered in the differential diagnosis:

- multiple sclerosis (blindness resulting from optic neuritis)
- myasthenia gravis (muscle weakness)
- periodic paralysis (muscle weakness)
- myopathies (muscle weakness)
- polymyositis (muscle weakness)
- Guillain-Barré syndrome (motor and sensory symptoms)

### Treatments

Patients diagnosed with conversion disorder frequently benefit from a team approach to treatment and from a combination of treatment modalities. A team approach is particularly beneficial if the patient has a history of abuse, or if he or she is being treated for a concurrent physical condition or illness.

### Medications

While there are no drugs for the direct treatment of conversion disorder, medications are sometimes given to patients to treat the anxiety or depression that may be associated with conversion disorder.

### Psychotherapy

**Psychodynamic psychotherapy** is sometimes used with children and adolescents to help them gain insight into their symptoms. Cognitive-behavioral approaches have also been tried, with good results. **Family therapy** is often recommended for younger

## KEY TERMS

**Aphonia**—Inability to speak caused by a functional disturbance of the voice box or vocal cords.

**(la) Belle indifférence**—A psychiatric symptom sometimes found in patients with conversion disorder, in which the patient shows a surprising lack of concern about the nature or implications of his/her physical symptom(s).

**Conversion**—In psychiatry, a process in which a repressed feeling, impulse, thought, or memory emerges in the form of a bodily symptom.

**Diplopia**—A disorder of vision in which a single object appears double. Diplopia is sometimes called double vision.

**Dyskinesia**—Difficulty in performing voluntary muscular movements.

**Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

**Electroencephalogram (EEG)**—A test that measures the electrical activity of the brain by means of electrodes placed on the scalp or in the brain itself.

**Factitious disorder**—A type of mental disturbance in which patients intentionally act physically or mentally ill without obvious benefits. It is distinguished from malingering by the absence of an obvious motive, and from conversion disorder by intentional production of symptoms.

**Hysteria**—In nineteenth-century psychiatric use, a neurotic disorder characterized by violent emotional outbursts and disturbances of the sensory and motor (movement-related) functions. The term “hysterical neurosis” is still used by some psychiatrists as a synonym for conversion disorder.

**Malingering**—Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

**Myoclonus**—An abrupt spasm or twitching in a muscle or group of muscles.

**Narcotherapy**—A form of psychotherapy that involves the administration of a drug that makes the patient drowsy.

**Primary gain**—In psychiatry, the principal psychological reason for the development of a patient’s symptoms. In conversion disorder, the primary gain from the symptom is the reduction of anxiety and the exclusion of an inner conflict from conscious awareness.

**Pseudoseizure**—A fit that resembles an epileptic seizure but is not associated with abnormal electrical discharges in the patient’s brain.

**Psychogenic**—Originating in the mind, or in a mental process or condition. The term “psychogenic” is sometimes used as a synonym for “conversion.”

**Ptosis**—Drooping of the upper eyelid.

**Secondary gain**—A term that refers to other benefits that a patient obtains from a conversion symptom. For example, a patient’s loss of function in an arm might require other family members to do the patient’s share of household chores; or they might give the patient more attention and sympathy than he or she usually receives.

**Shaman**—In certain indigenous tribes or groups, a person who acts as an intermediary between the natural and supernatural worlds. Shamans are regarded as having the power or ability to cure illnesses.

**Social modeling**—A process of learning behavioral and emotional-response patterns from observing one’s parents or other adults. Some researchers think that social modeling plays a part in the development of conversion disorder in children.

**Somatoform disorders**—A group of psychiatric disorders in the *DSM-IV-TR* classification that are characterized by external physical symptoms or complaints that are related to psychological problems rather than organic illness. Conversion disorder is classified as a somatoform disorder.

**Stressor**—A stimulus or event that provokes a stress response in an organism. Stressors can be categorized as acute or chronic, and as external or internal to the organism.

patients whose symptoms may be related to family dysfunction. **Group therapy** appears to be particularly useful in helping adolescents to learn social skills and coping strategies, and to decrease their dependency on their families.

### *Inpatient treatment*

**Hospitalization** is sometimes recommended for children with conversion disorders who are not helped by outpatient treatment. Inpatient treatment also allows

for a more complete assessment of possible coexisting organic disorders, and for the child to improve his or her level of functioning outside of an abusive or otherwise dysfunctional home environment.

### *Alternative and complementary therapies*

Alternative and complementary therapies that have been shown to be helpful in the treatment of conversion disorder include hypnosis, relaxation techniques, visualization, and **biofeedback**.

### **Prognosis**

The prognosis for recovery from conversion disorder is highly favorable. Patients who have clearly identifiable stressors in their lives, acute onset of symptoms, and a short interval between symptom onset and treatment have the best prognosis. Of patients hospitalized for the disorder, over half recover within two weeks. Between 20% and 25% will **relapse** within a year. The individual symptoms of conversion disorder are usually self-limited and do not lead to lasting disabilities; however, patients with hysterical aphonia, paralysis, or visual disturbances, have better prognoses for full recovery than those with tremor or pseudoseizures.

### **Prevention**

The incidence of conversion disorder in adults is likely to continue to decline with rising levels of formal education and the spread of basic information about human psychology. Prevention of conversion disorder in children and adolescents depends on better strategies for preventing abuse.

*See also Abuse.*

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- "Conversion Disorder." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, Mark H. Beers, MD and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Dorland's Pocket Medical Dictionary*, 25th ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1995.
- Davenport, Noa, PhD, Ruth D. Schwartz, and Gail P. Elliott. *Mobbing: Emotional Abuse in the American Workplace*. Ames, IA: Civil Society Publishing, 1999.
- Herman, Judith, MD. *Trauma and Recovery*, 2nd ed., revised. New York: Basic Books, 1997.
- Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Sound Mind, Sound Body: MindBody Medicine Comes of Age." Chapter 2 in *The*

*Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.

World Health Organization (WHO). *The ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural Disorders*. Geneva: WHO, 1992.

### **PERIODICALS**

- Al-Sharbati, M. M., N. Viernes, A. Al-Hussaini, and others. "A Case of Bilateral Ptosis with Unsteady Gait: Subgigistology and Culture in Conversion Disorder." *International Journal of Psychiatry in Medicine* 31 (2001): 225–32.
- Campo, John V. "Negative Reinforcement and Behavioral Management of Conversion Disorder." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 39 (June 2000): 787–90.
- Crimlisk, Helen L., and others. "Slater Revisited: 6-Year Follow-Up of Patients with Medically Unexplained Motor Symptoms." *British Medical Journal* 316 (Feb. 21, 1998): 582–86.
- Glick, T. H., T. P. Workman, and S. V. Gaufberg. "Suspected Conversion Disorder: Foreseeable Risks and Avoidable Errors." *Academy of Emergency Medicine* 7 (Nov. 2000): 1272–77.
- Haghghi, S. S., and S. Meyer. "Psychogenic Paraplegia in a Patient with Normal Electrophysiologic Findings." *Spinal Cord* 39 (Dec. 2001): 664–67.
- Isaac, Mohan, and Chand, Prabhat K. "Dissociative and Conversion Disorders: Defining Boundaries." *Current Opinions in Psychiatry* 19 (2006): 61–66.
- Meyers, Timothy J., Bruce W. Jafek, and Arlen D. Meyers. "Recurrent Psychogenic Coma Following Tracheal Stenosis Repair." *Archives of Otolaryngology—Head & Neck Surgery* 125 (Nov. 1999): 1267.
- Moene, F. C., E. H. Landberg, K. A. Hoogduin, and others. "Organic Syndromes Diagnosed as Conversion Disorder: Identification and Frequency in a Study of 85 Patients." *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* w49 (July 2000): 7–12.
- Mori, S., S. Fujieda, T. Yamamoto, and others. "Psychogenic Hearing Loss with Panic Anxiety Attack After the Onset of Acute Inner Ear Disorder." *ORL Journal of Otorhinolaryngology and Related Specialties* 64 (Jan.–Feb. 2002): 41–44.
- Pineros, Marion, Diego Rosselli, Claudia Calderon. "An Epidemic of Collective Conversion and Dissociation Disorder in an Indigenous Group of Colombia: Its Relation to Cultural Change." *Social Science & Medicine* 46 (June 1998): 1425–28.
- Shalbani, Aziz, and Marwan N. Sabbagh. "Pseudoneurologic Syndromes: Recognition and Diagnoses." *American Family Physician* 57 (May 15, 1998): 207–12.
- Stone, Jon, and others. "Systematic Review of Misdiagnosis of Conversion Symptom and 'Hysteria'" *British Medical Journal* (2005).
- Stone, Jon, Roger Smyth, Alan Carson, Charles Warlow, and Michael Sharpe. "La Belle Indifference in Conversion Symptoms and Hysteria." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 188 (2006): 204–209.

- Syed, E. U., and others. "Conversion Disorder: Difficulties in Diagnosis Using DSM-IV/ICD-10." *Journal of the Pakistani Medical Association* 51 (April 2001): 143–45.
- Wyllie, Elaine, John P. Glazer, Selim Benbadis, and others. "Psychiatric Features of Children and Adults with Pseudoseizures." *Archives of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine* 153 (March 1999): 244–48.
- Yasamy, M. T., A. Bahramnezhad, H. Ziaaddini. "Post-vaccination Mass Psychogenic Illness in an Iranian Rural School." *Eastern Mediterranean Health Journal* 5 (July 1999): 710–16.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry.  
3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis

### Definition

Co-occurring disorders are sets of mental illnesses that appear together in a single individual. They include a **substance abuse** disorder with at least one other Axis I or Axis II mental illness. The five Axes are standard diagnostic categories established by the American Psychiatric Association (APA). In co-occurring disorders, an Axis I substance **abuse** disorder is always present simultaneously with at least one other mental health disorder from Axis I or II. Another name for co-occurring disorders is **dual diagnosis**, although this may include several diagnoses and not only two (dual). Dual **diagnosis** in this case means "more than one." Yet another name given this condition is co-morbidity, with morbidity meaning "illness."

### Description

The term substance abuse includes substance-use disorders on a continuum from experimentation, to regular use, to drug dependence and **addiction**. Substances include prescription drugs, over-the-counter medications, marijuana, **cocaine**, heroin, mescaline (peyote), glues (sniffing), spray-can aerosols (huffing), and other categories. Substance abuse is the usual

co-occurring disorder among adults with severe mental disorders (SMDs) such as **bipolar disorder**, other psychoses, and **depression**.

Depression itself is the most common mental illness coexisting with physical disorders. Further, depression often occurs among patients with substance abuse, whereas substance abuse can coexist with **anxiety**, **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), **personality disorders**, and eating disorders. Co-occurring disorders result in serious problems such as higher rates of illness **relapse** than in cases of only one mental illness; increased numbers of hospitalizations; and higher risks for violence, incarceration, **homelessness**, **suicide**, and exposure to major infections such as HIV and hepatitis.

### Incidence/Prevalence

According to statistics compiled by the U.S. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), 10 million Americans or more will develop at least one mental illness together with a substance abuse disorder in any one-year period. The APA has learned that 7% of the American population, or 21 million people, have a full-blown **psychosis** at any given time. Co-occurring disorders affect a full 50% of all individuals that have severe mental disorders such as psychoses. Kessler, et al., recently found in a controlled study that 55% of the general population may experience one mental illness, 22% from two, and 23% from three co-occurring disorders. This translates to 69 million Americans having three co-occurring disorders.

SAMHSA has found that the prevalence of co-occurring disorders has increased during the last three decades. Named in the early 1980s, dual diagnoses considered most likely to occur among either youth and young adults with **schizophrenia** or people with bipolar disorder, all of whom showed a history of drug abuse and/or alcohol abuse. The medical opinion was that a person's entrance into the drug culture was the cause of another mental illness. Currently, it is thought that one or more mental disorders occur first, followed by drugs or alcohol used in self-medication behavior used to cover unwanted mental symptoms.

### Demographics

Children of alcoholics and of drug-addicted individuals are more likely to have co-occurring disorders than America's general population. In addition, patients with depression are more at risk for substance abuse and alcohol abuse disorders than people having no mental illness. In addition, the U.S. Department of Health and

Human Services has found that people who have received public assistance under welfare reform programs experienced an average of three or four SMDs in addition to substance abuse, without receiving adequate treatment. The affected homeless population suffers similar circumstances, while youth and the aged are also affected by co-occurring disorders.

Among youth, disruptive behavior disorders occur more frequently with than without substance abuse disorders. Older adults with depression or anxiety are at higher risk for substance and alcohol abuse than middle-aged adults. Seniors may be grieving losses of family, friends, and employment. They may drink or misuse drugs to rid themselves of pain and the complications of poverty. Co-occurring disorders complicate the management of any memory problems they may have, slowing metabolism, arthritis, hypertension, diabetes, Alzheimer's disease and other dementias, and various additional health problems. Further, because women generally outlive men, co-occurring disorders and related physical problems are more prevalently becoming the maladies of older women. However, they also affect veterans and people with eating disorders.

Substance or alcohol abuse may co-occur with eating disorders, because such patients self-medicate feelings of shame, anxiety, extreme hunger, and self-hate commonly experienced in eating disorders. This further complicates their recovery. Finally, many military veterans experience anxiety, depression, and/or post-traumatic **stress** disorder (PTSD) at the same time they have a history of substance abuse or alcoholism. Unfortunately, assessment, treatment, and prevention services for veterans have been inadequate.

## Diagnosis

Careful assessment by a licensed professional and therapeutic team is necessary to plan effective treatment strategies. This begins with a detailed medical history and clinical interviews of the patient and family members to establish related health and behavioral patterns and substance or alcohol abuse history. Because **denial** is an inherent aspect of the problem, a battery of psychiatric tests can uncover mental illnesses. These tests include the **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory** (MMPI), Rorschach and other inkblot tests, other personality and projective tests, the Wechsler intelligence scales, and others. A number of substance abuse checklists can help determine substance and alcohol-related disorders.

## Treatment

Despite evidence of the high prevalence of dual diagnoses, the U.S. mental health and substance abuse

systems have run separate programs, causing confusion. Failure to combine services for coordinated treatment means prolonged suffering and expense for patients, families, insurance companies, the U.S. health care system, and public assistance and disability programs. In light of welfare reform and health care improvements, the 1990s provided many programs for these patients, often more holistic and supported by federal funding for targeting ex-offenders and welfare-to-work populations.

The key factors in an integrated treatment program are (1) treatment must be approached in stages; (2) assertive outreach leads to higher client retention rates; (3) motivational interventions accompanied by education, counseling, and social support; (4) viewing recovery as a long-term, community-based process; (5) effecting a comprehensive strategy; and (6) a successful program must be culturally sensitive and culturally competent.

Investigators such as Roszak, Sacks, and Watkins have found recently that for many dual diagnosis patients, the criminal justice system is their last stop. Many jailed youth fail to be diagnosed. Their behavior mandated their incarceration and mental health assessment was not considered. The juvenile and adult justice systems have become the treatment provider, but treatment is not always an option. Two-thirds (67%) of incarcerated youth with substance abuse disorders have one or more additional mental illnesses. The coexistence of a **conduct disorder** and/or attention deficit-type disorders with substance abuse results in a serious disability. However, a dual diagnosis patient in the criminal justice system may never receive psychiatric evaluation or treatment.

A specific problem with treatments for dual diagnoses is that most mental health treatments are designed, tested, and validated through controlled studies of individuals who have only one mental diagnosis. These treatments may not be as effective when there are two or more mental disorders. However, individually prescribed treatment plans have been successful in using these specific components:

- planned therapeutic interventions: The client is engaged and persuaded to participate in rehabilitation. In planned group and individual therapies, the patients are given coping skills and support toward managing their illnesses.
- psychological counseling: This includes both cognitive (thinking) and behavioral skills to change negative thinking patterns and unwanted behaviors. It can include role-playing and homework.
- social counseling: This includes support groups, group therapy, and family therapy facilitated by professionals.

## KEY TERMS

**Axis**—One of five diagnostic categories of the American Psychiatric Association that are used for mental health diagnoses. Axis I describes the clinical syndrome or major diagnosis; Axis II lists developmental disorders or mental retardation and personality disorders; Axis III lists physical disorders; Axis IV includes the severity of psychosocial stressors for the individual; and Axis V describes an individual's highest level of functioning currently and in the past 12 months.

**Co-occurring disorders**—Sets of mental illnesses—usually substance abuse and at least one other Axis I or Axis II disorder—that appear together in a single individual. Also called dual diagnosis or co-morbidity disorders.

**Intervention**—A confrontation of a substance abuser by a group of interested people that propose immediate medical treatment. An intervention is also a method of treatment used in therapy.

**Substance abuse**—Illicit, inaccurate, or recreational use of either prescription or illegal drugs. Alcohol can also be abused as a substance but has its own category, alcohol abuse.

**Welfare-to-Work**—Several American public reforms of the late 1990s and early 2000s, designed to move individuals from public assistance to paying jobs.

It includes diversity and sensitivity training and cultural competency instruction.

- health-related education: This helps clients commit to managing their illnesses. It requires an acceptance of and commitment to a long-term supervised recovery process.
- aggressive follow-up: A treatment team provides intensive, frequent patient follow-up with meetings in the patient's workplace and home as well as in the case manager's office.
- comprehensive treatment: This holistic treatment targets education, health, employment, personal behavior patterns, stress management, peer networks, family, housing, financial skills, spiritual life, and other aspects.

### Additional considerations

Alcoholics Anonymous, Al-Anon, Narcotics Anonymous, and similar 12-step programs frequently supplement treatment for substance abuse and co-occurring disorders. However, their success cannot be quantitatively validated, because they are anonymous. Further, the direct confrontation of an engagement

**intervention** and that of ongoing 12-step programs can be too threatening for mental health patients. The primary care physician or therapist must decide the most appropriate strategies for each patient.

The use of psychiatric drugs to alter mood or behavior is understandably controversial in substance abuse recovery, so treatments such as support groups for co-occurring disorders can be more effective than drug therapies.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for co-occurring disorders depends on the prognosis of the separate disorders occurring in a specific patient, along with the combined effects of those disorders. Dual diagnoses usually present a worse overall health outlook than a single mental illness. Early preventative education, screening, assessment, diagnosis, and treatment are vital to the health of a person suffering from or at risk for co-occurring disorders. Appropriate health promotion education is useful and necessary in alerting the general populations to the risks and signs of co-occurring disorders and in helping themselves maintain good mental hygiene.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychological Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Sacks, Stanley, PhD, and Richard K. Ries, MD. *Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 42. Substance Abuse Treatment for Persons with Co-occurring Disorders*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Service. Public Health Service. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

- Kessler, Ronald C., PhD; Wai Tat Chiu, AM; Olga Demler, MA, MS; and Ellen E. Walters, MS. "Prevalence, Severity, and Comorbidity of 12-month DSM-IV Disorders in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication." *Archive of General Psychiatry* 62 (2005): 617–627.
- Roszak, Dennis J. "Mental Illness Starts Early in Life, but Treatment Often Begins Decades Later." *Hospitals & Health Networks* 79.7 (2005): 130.
- Saxena, Shekhar, and Jose Manoel Bertolote. "Co-occurring Depression & Physical Disorders: Need for an Adequate Response from the Health Care System." *Indian Journal of Medical Research*. 122.4 (2005): 273–276.
- Watkins, Katherine E., Sarah B. Hunter, and others. "Prevalence and Characteristics of Clients with Co-occurring Disorders in Outpatient Substance Abuse

Treatment." *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse* 30.4 (2004): 749–764.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA 22209-3901. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- Double Trouble In Recovery. c/o Mental Health Empowerment Project. 271 Central Avenue, Albany, NY 12209. Telephone: (518) 434-1393
- Dual Disorders Anonymous. P.O. Box 681264, Schaumburg, IL 60168. Telephone: (847) 781-1553.
- Dual Recovery Anonymous. P.O. Box 218232, Nashville, TN 37221. Telephone: (887) 883-2332.
- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- Mental Health America. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

Patty Inglish, MS



**A couple attending a therapy session.** (Photofusion Picture Library/Alamy)

Patients should be advised that being honest, providing all necessary information, cooperating, keeping appointments, arriving on time, and desiring change and improvement sincerely are all imperative to increase the chance of successful outcome. Additionally, a willingness to work with the process of treatment is essential.

## Couples therapy

### Definition

Couples therapy is a form of psychological therapy used to treat relationship distress for one or both individuals in the relationship, as well as the couple as a pair.

### Purpose

The purpose of couples therapy is to restore a better level of functioning in couples who experience relationship distress. The reasons for distress can include poor **communication skills**, incompatibility, or a broad spectrum of psychological disorders that include domestic violence, alcoholism, **depression**, **anxiety**, and **schizophrenia**. The focus of couples therapy is to identify the presence of dissatisfaction and distress in the relationship and to devise and implement a treatment plan with objectives designed to improve or alleviate the presenting symptoms and restore the relationship to a better and healthier level of functioning. Couples therapy can assist persons who are having complaints of intimacy, sexual, and communication difficulties.

### Precautions

Couples who seek treatment should consult for services from a mental health practitioner who specializes in this area.

### Description

Couples therapy sessions differ according to the chosen model or philosophy behind the therapy. There are several models for treating couples with relationship difficulties. These commonly used strategies include psychoanalytic couples therapy, object relations couple therapy, ego analytical couples therapy, behavioral couples therapy, integrative behavioral couples therapy, and cognitive-behavioral couples therapy. Some therapies focus on education and prevention.

#### *Psychoanalytical couples therapy*

Psychoanalytic therapy attempts to uncover unresolved childhood conflicts with parental figures and how these behaviors are part of the current relationship problems. The psychoanalytic approach tends to develop an understanding of present-day interpersonal interactions in connection with early development. The success in personal development of early stages dictates the future behavior of interpersonal relationships. The essential core of this model deals with the process of separation and individuation (becoming a separate, distinct self) from mother-child interactions during childhood. A critical part of this model is introjection. The process of introjection includes introjects (infant processing versions) of the love object (mother).

The developmental process of introjection forms the basis an unconscious representation of others (objects) and is vital for development of a separate and defined sense of self. The psychoanalytic approach analyzes marital relations and mate selection as originating from parent-child relationship during developmental stages of the child.

### ***Object relations couple therapy***

The object relations model creates an environment of neutrality and impartiality to understand the distortions and intrapsychic (internalized) conflicts that each partner contributes to the relationship in the form of dysfunctional behaviors. This model proposes that there is a complementary personality fit between couples that is unconscious and fulfills certain needs. This model supports the thought that a “mothering figure” is the central motivation for selection and attachment of a mate. Choosing a mothering figure induces further repression (nondevelopment) of portions of personality that were not well developed (called “lost parts”). This repression causes relationship difficulties.

### ***Ego analytic couples therapy***

Ego analytical approaches use methods to foster the ability to communicate important feelings in the couple’s relationship. This model proposes that dysfunction originates from the patients’ inability to recognize intolerance and invalidation of sensitivities and problems in a relationship. According to this model, there are two major categories of problems. The first category of problems relates to dysfunction brought into the relationship from early childhood trauma and experiences. The second involves the patient’s reaction to difficulties and a sense of unentitlement (a personal feeling that one does not deserve something). A patient’s shame and guilt are major factors precipitating the thoughts of unentitlement.

### ***Behavioral marital therapy***

Behavioral marital therapists tend to improve relationships between a couple by increasing positive exchanges and decreasing the frequency of negative and punishing interactions. This model focuses on the influence that environment has in creating and maintaining relationship behavior. Behavior exchange between partners is flowing continuously and prior histories can affect relationship interactions. Behavior therapy in general is based on the idea that when certain behaviors are rewarded, they are reinforced. The amount of rewards (positive reinforcers) received

in relation to the amount of aversive behavior is linked to an individual’s sense of relationship dissatisfaction.

### ***Integrative behavioral couples therapy***

Integrative behaviorists help couples by improving behavior exchange, communication, and the couples’ abilities for problem-solving skills. The integrative behavioral therapy approach examines functioning of the couple and is more flexible and individualized to specific problems in the relationship than behavior marital therapy. This approach examines problems and interactions that are repetitious (acts that are repeatedly done causing relationship problems).

### ***Cognitive behavior marital therapy***

The cognitive-approach therapist educates and increases awareness concerning perceptions, assumptions, attributions or standards of interaction between the couple. The central theme for understanding marital discourse using **cognitive-behavioral therapy** is based on the behavioral marital therapy model. A couple’s emotional and behavioral dysfunction are related to inappropriate information processing (possibly “jumping to conclusions,” for example) and negative cognitive appraisals. This model attempts to discover the negative types of thinking that drive negative behaviors that cause relationship distress.

### ***Emotionally focused therapy***

Emotionally focused therapy assists patients to acknowledge, assess, and express emotions that are related to distress. This model views emotion and cognition (thinking) as interdependent, and sees emotion as a primary “driver” of interpersonal expression. The primary theme of emotionally focused therapy is that couple distress stems from unexpressed and unacknowledged emotional needs. The dysfunction arises from negative interactions from emotions that have been withheld from disclosure from each partner.

### ***Structural strategic marital therapy***

Structural strategic therapists will challenge existing negative perceptions and present alternative possibilities and behaviors. These alternate behaviors encourage positive perceptions by role playing. This model views relationship progression in developmental stages. According to this model, the couple’s distress reflects difficulties in coping mechanisms related to life changes, which can be either environmental or personal. Despite relationship dissatisfaction, the couple will tend to resist change, maintaining status quo,

and attempting baseline functioning to keep the system going.

### **Educational and preventive couples therapy**

There are several programs designed for therapists to use with married and soon-to-be-married couples with the goal of establishing good communication early in the relationship. These programs, some of which have proven efficacy, focus on open communication, listening skills, and relationship training. Among these are the PREP program, which has been used since 1989 and is practiced by mental health professionals, laypersons, and clergy in 28 countries. It can have a secular or a religious basis. Other programs with strong research backing are the Couples Communication and the PAIRS programs. The Couples Communication Program involves an "awareness wheel" and a "listening wheel" that helps couples trace their issues and learn how to listen to one another. The Practical Application of Intimate Relationship Skills (PAIRS) program explores a couple's past emotional issues and the ways in which these have shaped their current interaction. Similarly to other programs, the focus is on listening and tackling problems.

### **Preparation**

Couples should be informed that cooperation is vital for the process and they should have a desire to modify and/or change dysfunctional behaviors. Honesty and emotional openness is a necessary component for treatment. Results cannot be guaranteed. The psychotherapist would typically provide an extensive assessment process during the initial appointment. This couples assessment process usually includes in-depth information gathering concerning the presenting problem. It also includes, in the form an interview, an assessment of occupations, schooling, employment, childhood development, parental history, **substance abuse**, and religion; and relational, medical, legal, and past psychological history. After collecting the background information the psychotherapist can then devise the best course of treatment. Further psychological tests and measurements may be indicated initially or as the need arises during the treatment process.

### **Aftercare**

Treatment usually takes several months or longer. Once the couple has developed adequate skills and has displayed an improved level of functioning that is satisfactory to both parties, then treatment can be terminated. The couple should be alert to the return to the behaviors that they are trying to change or

eliminate. These are called relapsing behaviors, and relapse-prevention behaviors can help keep them at bay. Patients are encouraged to return to treatment if **relapse** symptoms appear. Follow-up visits and long-term psychological therapy can be arranged between parties if this is mutually decided as necessary and beneficial.

### **Risks**

The major risk of couples therapy is lack of improvement or return to dysfunctional behaviors. These tend not to occur unless there is a breakdown in skills learned and developed during treatment, or one person is resistant to long-term change.

### **Normal results**

A normal progression of couples therapy is relief from symptomatic behaviors that cause marital discourse, distress, and difficulties. The couple is restored to healthier interactions and behaviors are adjusted to produce a happier balance of mutually appropriate interactions. Patients who are sincere and reasonable with a willingness to change tend to produce better outcomes. Patients usually develop skills and increased awareness that promotes healthier relationship interactions.

### **Abnormal results**

There are no known abnormal results from couples therapy. At worst, patients do not get better because they cannot break away from self-induced, self-defeating behaviors that precipitate marital dysfunction and distress. The problems are not worsened if treatment is provided by a trained mental health practitioner in this specialty.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

- Noble, John, and others. *Textbook of Primary Care Medicine*, 3rd ed. Mosby, 2001.  
Tasman, Allan, and others. *Psychiatry*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.

#### **PERIODICALS**

- Hampson, R. B., C. C. Prince, and W. R. Beavers. "Marital Therapy: Qualities of Couples who Fare Better or Worse in Treatment." *Journal of Marital and Family Therapy* 25.4 (Oct. 1999): 411-24.

#### **ORGANIZATIONS**

- The American Association for Marriage and Family Therapy. 1133 15th Street NW, Suite 30, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (202) 452-0109. Fax: (202) 223-2329. Web site: <<http://www.aamft.org>>.

**OTHER**

- American Psychology Association, Psychology Matters.  
“Marital Education Programs Keep Couples Together.” (2004) Available online at: <<http://www.psychologymatters.org/maritaled.html>>.
- Gordon, Lori. “The PAIRS Program.” Information available online at: <<http://www.PAIRS.com>>.
- Markman, H.J., and Scott Stanley. “The PREP Program.” Information available online at: <<http://www.PREPinc.com>>.
- Miller, Sherod. “Couples Communication Program.” Information available online at: <<http://www.couplecommunication.com>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.  
Kathleen Berrisford, MSCSW,CAC  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Covert sensitization

### Definition

Covert sensitization is a form of behavior therapy in which an undesirable behavior is paired with an unpleasant image in order to eliminate that behavior.

### Purpose

As with other **behavior modification** therapies, covert sensitization is a treatment grounded in learning theory—one of the basic tenets being that all behavior is learned and that undesirable behaviors can be unlearned under the right circumstances. Covert sensitization is one of a group of behavior therapy procedures classified as covert conditioning, in which an aversive stimulus in the form of a nausea-or anxiety-producing image is paired with an undesirable behavior to change that behavior. It is best understood as a mixture of both the classical and the operant conditioning categories of learning. Based on research begun in the 1960s, psychologists Joseph Cautela and Albert Kearney published the 1986 classic *The Covert Conditioning Handbook*, which remains a definitive treatise on the subject.

The goal of covert sensitization is to directly eliminate the undesirable behavior itself, unlike insight-oriented psychotherapies that focus on uncovering unconscious motives in order to produce change. The behaviors targeted for modification are often referred to as “maladaptive approach behaviors,” which includes behaviors such as alcohol **abuse**, drug abuse, and smoking; pathological gambling; overeating; sexual deviations, and sexually based nuisance

behaviors such as obscene phone calling. The type of behavior to be changed and the characteristics of the aversive imagery to be used influence the treatment, which is usually administered in an outpatient setting either by itself or as a component of a multimodal program. Self-administered homework assignments are almost always part of the treatment package. Some therapists incorporate covert sensitization with hypnosis in the belief that outcome is enhanced.

### Description

The patient being treated with covert sensitization can expect a fairly standard set of procedures. The therapist begins by assessing the problem behavior, and will most likely measure frequency, severity, and the environment in which it occurs. Depending upon the type of behavior to be changed, some therapists may also take treatment measures before, during, and after physiological arousal (such as heart rate) to better assess treatment impact. Although the therapeutic relationship is not the focus of treatment, the behavior therapist believes that good rapport will facilitate a more successful outcome and strives to establish positive but realistic expectations. Also, a positive relationship is necessary to establish patient confidence in the rationale for exposure to the discomfort of unpleasant images.

The therapist will explain the treatment rationale and protocol. Patient understanding and consent are important, since, by intention, he or she will be asked to experience images that arouse unpleasant and uncomfortable physical and psychological associations. The therapist and patient collaborate in creating a list of aversive images uniquely meaningful to the patient that will be applied in the treatment. Standard aversive images include vomiting, snakes, spiders, vermin, and embarrassing social consequences. An aversive image is then selected appropriate to the target problem behavior. Usually, the image with the most powerful aversive response is chosen. The patient is instructed on how to relax—an important precursor to generating intense imagery. The patient is then asked to relax and imagine approaching the situation where the undesirable behavior occurs (for example, purchasing donuts prior to overeating).

If the patient has a difficult time imagining the scene, the image may be presented verbally by the therapist. As the patient imagines getting closer to the situation (donut store), he or she is asked to clearly imagine an unpleasant consequence (such as vomiting) just before indulging in the undesirable behavior (purchasing donuts and overeating). The scene must be imagined with sufficient vividness that a sense of physiological discomfort or high

**anxiety** is actually experienced. Then the patient imagines leaving the situation and experiencing considerable relief. The patient learns to associate unpleasant sensations (nausea and vomiting) with the undesirable behavior, leading to decreased desire and avoidance of the situation in the future. An alternative behavior incompatible with the problem behavior may be recommended (eat fruit when hungry for a donut).

The patient is given the behavioral homework assignment to practice self-administering the treatment. The patient is told to alternate the aversive scenes with scenes of self-controlled restraint in which he or she rejects the undesirable behavior before indulging in it, thus avoiding the aversive stimulus. The procedure is practiced several times with the therapist in the office, and the patient practices the procedure ten to 20 times during each home session between office sessions. The patient is then asked to practice in the actual situation, imagining the aversive consequences and avoiding the situation. With much variation, and depending upon the nature of the behavior targeted for change, the patient may see the therapist anywhere from five to 20 sessions over a period of a few weeks to several months. The treatment goal is to eliminate the undesirable behavior altogether.

### Aftercare

Patients completing covert sensitization treatment are likely to be asked by the therapist to return periodically over the following six to twelve months or longer, for booster sessions to prevent **relapse**.

### Risks

Covert sensitization is comparatively risk-free. This is in contrast to the medical and ethical concerns raised by some other aversive procedures such as **aversive therapy**, in which potent chemical and pharmacological stimulants may be used as aversants.

### Normal results

Depending upon the objectives established at the beginning of treatment, patients successfully completing covert sensitization might expect to stop the undesirable behavior. And, if they practice **relapse prevention** techniques, they can expect to maintain the improvement. Although this treatment may appear to be relatively simple, it has been found to be quite effective for treating many circumscribed problem behaviors.

## KEY TERMS

**Covert**—Concealed, hidden, or disguised.

**Operant**—Conditioning in which the desired response is reinforced by an introduced stimulus.

**Sensitization**—To make sensitive or susceptible.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Cautela, Joseph, and Albert Kearney. *The Covert Conditioning Handbook*. New York: Springer, 1986.

Kaplan, Harold, and Benjamin Sadock, eds. *Synopsis of Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

Plaud, Joseph, and Georg Eifert, eds. *From Behavior Theory to Behavior Therapy*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Association for Advancement of Behavior Therapy. 305 Seventh Ave.—16th Floor, New York, NY 10001-6008.  
<http://www.aabt.org>.

John Garrison, Ph.D.

## Creative therapies

### Definition

Creative therapy refers to a group of techniques that are expressive and creative in nature. Creative therapies aim to help clients find a form of expression beyond words or traditional therapy, such as cognitive or **psychotherapy**. Therefore, the scope of creative therapy is as limitless as the imagination in finding appropriate modes of expression. The most commonly used and professionally supported approaches include art therapy, writing, sand play, clay **modeling**, movement therapy, psychodrama, role play, and music therapy.

### Purpose

Creative therapy includes techniques that can be used for self-expression and personal growth when clients are unable to participate in traditional “talk therapy,” or when that approach has become ineffective. Appropriate clients include children, individuals who are unable to speak due to **stroke** or **dementia**, or people who are dealing with clinical issues that are hidden within the subconscious, beyond the reach of language. The latter often occurs when the focus is on trauma or abuse that may have occurred before the client



A patient makes a silk scarf as part of their creative therapy at St. Michael's Hospice in the United Kingdom. (Jon Cole/Photo Researchers, Inc)

was able to speak, or in families where there is a strict code against talking about feelings or “negative” things. Creative therapy is also effective when used to explore fears around medical issues, such as cancer or HIV.

### Precautions

Caution is indicated when strong emotions become overwhelming, thus debilitating the client. Possible indications for caution include the presence of flashbacks, panic attacks, recently revealed trauma or abuse, and vivid and realistic nightmares. Other indications for caution include individual characteristics, such as a tendency toward overly emotional responses, difficulty managing change or surprises, and poor coping skills. Therapists should also take care with patients with **psychosis** or **borderline personality disorder**.

### Description

Visually expressive forms of creative therapy include drawing, painting, and modeling with clay. The goal is to provide a medium for expression that bypasses words, thus helping individuals connect with emotions about various personal experiences. The scope of the drawings

is limited only by the imagination of the individual and by the creativity of the therapists. This technique can often be continued by clients on their own after beginning the work in session.

Movement and music therapies are often used in conjunction with relaxation approaches. Movement therapy involves dance and the interpretation of feelings or thoughts into movement, and is often set to music. For teens in particular, music and movement are often healthy releases for **stress** and emotions. These therapies can also help people develop appropriate coping skills. Movement and music may be used in nursing homes, gym class, residential treatment centers, a therapist’s office, or a home.

The physical and emotional health benefits of journaling techniques have been studied extensively. The application of journaling is broad and can be used in various therapeutic approaches. Journaling can be used on a regular basis for stress relief by writing down whatever comes to mind, or it can be used for specific problem areas, such as focusing attention on goals or on unresolved feelings of **grief** or anger. In journaling, it seems to be more important to focus on emotional

aspects, rather than using it to simply record daily events.

Other techniques include sand play, pet therapy, **play therapy**, and horticulture therapy. Sand play is a specialized form of play therapy in which sand is used to form designs or set up stories using play figures. Play therapy is an approach used with children, and is quite extensive in background theory and application. It is a psychological therapy in which children play in a therapist's presence. The therapist then uses a child's fantasies and the symbolic meanings of the play as a medium for understanding and communicating with the child. Pet therapy and horticulture therapy are often used in hospitals and residential treatment centers. Although these therapies are not expressive in the same way as other approaches, they offer a different experience for the individuals participating in them—helping people feel a sense of joy, connection, or accomplishment that may be missing from their lives.

### Preparation

Little preparation is needed for the visually expressive forms. Drawing is often used in a first session with young children. When used with adults, drawing or painting is often helpful, especially at a time of impasse when "talk therapy" is not effective, or when focusing on more emotional aspects of the therapeutic work.

Role playing requires the review of specific family roles to determine goals for the work. If the family work is focused on communication, each member may be asked to adopt the role of another family member to clarify perceptions of current roles for themselves and the other family members. The purpose of adopting these roles is to gain insight and understanding about each person's perspective in terms of their thoughts, feelings, and actions. Taking on the role of another helps to build empathy and provide a mechanism for personal growth and change.

A genogram or diagram of family members is sometimes helpful as a guide in identifying specific roles and directing the drama.

### Aftercare

For most of the creative therapy techniques, aftercare will largely be maintained by the individual client, unless the individual is participating in a support group or ongoing therapy. One advantage of creative therapy is the ease of implementation. Little special equipment is needed, and many of the techniques easily lend themselves to use in the home. If an individual is participating in a support group or individual

## KEY TERMS

**Genogram**—A family tree diagram that represents the names, birth order, sex, and relationships of the members of a family. Therapists use genograms to detect recurrent patterns in the family history and to help the members understand their problem(s).

**Journaling**—Involves writing out thoughts and feelings in an unstructured format. A "stream of consciousness" approach (writing whatever comes to mind) is suggested for greatest effectiveness.

**Psychodrama**—A specific form of role play that focuses on acting out "scripts" of unresolved issues within the family, or helping family members adopt new approaches and understanding of one another.

**Role-playing**—Involves adopting the role of other family members, oneself, or significant people within the life of the individual and acting out various life situations in order to explore the relationships of those involved.

therapy following **hospitalization**, the techniques can be maintained as part of those activities.

### Risks

Risks occur when the client is exposed to intense emotional material or memories before the necessary preparatory work has been completed in therapy. Such negative reactions may include a psychotic break, or a need for hospitalization, although this is a rare occurrence.

A more likely risk is that of altering existing family relationships. Working through certain issues surrounding trauma or abuse may alter participants' feelings or thoughts about significant people in their lives. Conflicted feelings about these individuals may arise when clients recognize certain patterns or behaviors. The increased awareness and insight may make it impossible for the clients to continue some relationships. The resulting conflict may be uncomfortable for them.

### Normal results

Typical results include increased awareness, the release of suppressed emotions, a general lifting of depressive feelings, increased energy, and the resolution of internal conflict. Ongoing health benefits, such as lowered blood pressure, may result from decreased stress and improved coping skills. Clients often experience

a greater sense of self-acceptance and decreased agitation.

### Abnormal results

Unusual results include increasingly intense feelings of agitation and stress. For some individuals, the techniques may appear to have no benefits. It is recommended that these individuals seek clinical help.

*See also* Support groups; Abuse; Grief counseling.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Bannister, Anne. *Creative Therapies with Traumatized Children*. London: Jessica Kingsley Publishers, 2003.
- Carey, Lois, ed. *Expressive and Creative Arts Methods for Trauma Survivors*. London: Jessica Kingsley Publishers, 2006.
- Gallo-Lopez, Loretta, and Charles E. Schaefer, eds. *Play Therapy with Adolescents*. Lanham, MD: Jason Aronson, 2005.
- Ollier, Kate, and Angela Hobday. *Creative Therapy: Adolescents Overcoming Child Sexual Abuse*. Melbourne: ACER Press, 2004.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Art Therapy Association, Inc. 1202 Allanson Road, Mundelein, IL 60060. Telephone: (888) 290-0878. <[www.arttherapy.org](http://www.arttherapy.org)>.

#### OTHER

- Arts in Therapy Network. <[www.artsintherapy.com](http://www.artsintherapy.com)>.

Deanna Pledge, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Crisis housing

### Definition

Crisis housing (or crisis residential services) are supervised short-term residential alternatives to **hospitalization** for adults with serious mental illnesses or children with serious emotional or behavioral disturbances.

### Purpose

The course of most serious mental illness (such as **schizophrenia**, **bipolar disorder**, severe **depression**, and **borderline personality disorder**) is cyclical, typically characterized by periods of relative well-being, interrupted by periods of deterioration or **relapse**. When relapse occurs, the individual generally exhibits

florid symptoms that require immediate psychiatric attention and treatment. More often than not, relapse is caused by the individual's failure to comply with a prescribed medication regimen (not taking medication regularly, not taking the amount or dose prescribed, or not taking it all). Relapse can also be triggered during periods of great **stress** or can even occur spontaneously, without any marked changes in lifestyle or medication regimen. When these crises recur, the goal of treatment is to stabilize the individual as soon as possible, since research suggests that relapsing patients are also more likely to attempt **suicide**.

### Description

Over the past 35 years, crisis housing programs have evolved as short-term, less costly, and less restrictive residential alternatives to hospitalization. Intended to divert individuals from emergency rooms, jails, and hospitals into community-based treatment settings, they offer intensive crisis support to individuals and their families. Services include **diagnosis**, assessment, and treatment (including medication stabilization); rehabilitation; and links to community-based services. These programs are intended to stabilize the individual as rapidly as possible—usually between 8 and 60 days—so they can return to their home or residence in the community.

Some of the earliest crisis housing programs include Soteria House and La Posada, which began in northern California in the 1970s, and the START (short-term acute residential treatment) program that began in San Diego in 1980. While programs vary from location to location, most offer acute services 24 hours a day in a small noninstitutional residential setting. Adequate structure and supervision is provided by an interdisciplinary team of professionals and other trained workers.

Beginning the day they arrive, residents help develop their own plans for recovery and continued care in the community. Patients receive state-of-the art psychopharmacological treatment and other cognitive-behavioral interventions. Residents are encouraged to play an active role in the operation of the household, including meal preparation. The homelike environment is helpful in lessening the **stigma** and sense of failure that often occurs when someone needs to return to an inpatient psychiatric unit.

Similarly, in the case of seriously emotionally disturbed children and adolescents, the goal of crisis housing is to avert visits to the emergency room or hospitalization by stabilizing the individual in as normal a setting as possible. Compared to these services

for adults, there is typically greater emphasis placed on involving families and schools in planning for community-based care after discharge.

Evaluations of several of these programs suggest that they may provide high-quality treatment and care at a lower cost than hospitals. Crisis housing is not currently available in all communities, however, although it is becoming more widely available.

*See also* Bipolar disorder; Borderline personality disorder; Crisis intervention; Schizophrenia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Fields, Steven L. "Progress Foundation, San Francisco." Chapter 4 in *Alternatives to the Hospital for Acute Psychiatric Treatment*. R. Warner, ed. Clinical Practice Series No. 32. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 1995.
- Torrey, E. Fuller. *Surviving Schizophrenia: A Manual for Families, Consumers and Providers*, 4th ed. New York: HarperCollins, 2001.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. *Mental Health: A Report of the Surgeon General*. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 1999. Available at <<http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/mentalhealth/home.html>>.

### PERIODICALS

- Burns, Barbara J., Kimberly Hoagwood, and Patricia J. Mrazek. "Effective Treatment for Mental Disorders in Children and Adolescents." *Clinical Child and Family Psychology Review* 2.4 (1999): 223–24.
- "Gold Award: A Community-Based Program Providing a Successful Alternative to Acute Psychiatric Hospitalization." *Psychiatric Services* 52, no. 10 (October 2001): 1383–85.
- Goodwin, Renee, and John S. Lyons. "An Emergency Housing Program as an Alternative to Inpatient Treatment for Persons with Severe Mental Illness." *Psychiatric Services* 52.1 (Jan. 2001): 92–95.
- Hawthorne, W.B., and others. "A Randomized Trial of Short-Term Acute Residential Treatment for Veterans." *Psychiatric Services* 56 (2005): 1379–86.

Irene S. Levine, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

ical, and behavioral distress or problems. A crisis can be any situation in which an individual perceives a sudden loss of ability to use effective problem-solving and coping skills. Any number of events or circumstances can be considered crises, including life-threatening situations such as natural disasters (e.g., earthquakes, tornadoes, hurricanes), sexual assault or other criminal victimization, medical illness, mental illness, thoughts of **suicide** or homicide, or loss or drastic changes in relationships (e.g., death of a loved one or divorce).

## Purpose

Crisis intervention has several purposes. It aims to reduce the intensity of an individual's emotional, mental, physical, and behavioral reactions to a crisis. Another purpose is to help individuals return to their level of functioning before the crisis. Functioning may be improved above and beyond this by developing new coping skills and eliminating ineffective ways of coping, such as withdrawal, isolation, and **substance abuse**. In this way, individuals are better equipped to cope with future difficulties. Through talking about what happened, and the feelings about what happened, while developing ways to cope and solve problems, crisis intervention aims to assist individuals in recovering from the crises and to prevent serious long-term problems from developing. Research documents positive outcomes for crisis intervention, such as decreased distress and improved problem solving.

## Description

Individuals are more open to receiving help during crises. A person may have experienced the crisis within the last 24 hours or within a few weeks before seeking help. Crisis intervention is conducted in a supportive manner. The length of time for crisis intervention may range from one session to several weeks, with the average being four weeks. Crisis intervention is not sufficient for individuals with long-standing problems. Session length may range from 20 minutes to two or more hours. Crisis intervention is appropriate for children, adolescents, and younger and older adults. It can take place in a range of settings, such as hospital emergency rooms, crisis centers, counseling centers, mental health clinics, schools, correctional facilities, and other social service agencies. Local and national telephone hotlines are available to address crises related to suicide, domestic violence, sexual assault, and other concerns. They are usually available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

## Crisis intervention

### Definition

Crisis **intervention** refers to methods used to offer immediate, short-term help to individuals who experience an event that produces emotional, mental, phys-

## **Responses to crisis**

A typical crisis intervention progresses through several phases. It begins with an assessment of what happened during the crisis and the individual's responses to it. There are certain common patterns of response to most crises. An individual's reaction to a crisis can include emotional reactions (e.g., fear, anger, guilt, **grief**), mental reactions (e.g., difficulty concentrating, confusion, nightmares), physical reactions (e.g., headaches, dizziness, **fatigue**, stomach problems), and behavioral reactions (e.g., sleep and appetite problems, isolation, restlessness). Assessment of the individual's potential for suicide and/or homicide is also conducted. Also, information about the individual's strengths, coping skills, and social support networks is obtained.

## **Education**

There is an educational component to crisis intervention. It is critical for individuals to be informed about various responses to crises and informed that they are having normal reactions to an abnormal situation. Individuals will also be told that the responses are temporary. Although there is not a specific time that people can expect to recover from crises, individuals can help recovery by engaging in coping and problem-solving skills.

## **Coping and problem solving**

Other elements of crisis intervention include helping individuals understand the crisis and their response to it as well as becoming aware of and expressing feelings, such as anger and guilt. A major focus of crisis intervention is exploring coping strategies. Strategies that the individuals previously used but that have not been used to deal with the current crisis may be enhanced or bolstered. Also, new coping skills may be developed. Coping skills may include relaxation techniques and exercise to reduce body tension and **stress** as well as putting thoughts and feelings on paper through journal writing instead of keeping them inside. In addition, options for social support or spending time with people who provide a feeling of comfort and caring are addressed. Another central focus of crisis intervention is problem solving. This process involves thoroughly understanding the problem and the desired changes, considering alternatives for solving the problem, discussing the pros and cons of alternative solutions, selecting a solution and developing a plan to try it out, and evaluating the outcome. Cognitive therapy, which is based on the notion that thoughts can influence feelings and behavior, can be used in crisis intervention.

In the final phase of crisis intervention, the professional will review changes the individual made in order to point out that it is possible to cope with difficult life events. Continued use of the effective coping strategies that reduced distress will be encouraged. Also, assistance will be provided in making realistic plans for the future, particularly in terms of dealing with potential future crises. Signs that the individual's condition is getting worse or "red flags" will be discussed. Information will be provided about resources for additional help should the need arise. A telephone follow-up may be arranged at some agreed upon time in the future.

## **Suicide intervention**

### **Purpose**

Suicidal behavior is the most frequent mental health emergency. The goal of crisis intervention in this case is to keep the individual alive so that a stable state can be reached and alternatives to suicide can be explored. In other words, the goal is to help the individual reduce distress and survive the crisis.

### **Assessment**

Suicide intervention begins with an assessment of how likely it is that the individual will attempt suicide in the immediate future. This assessment has various components. The professional will evaluate whether or not the individual has a plan for how the act would be attempted, how deadly the method is (shooting, overdosing), if means are available (access to weapons), and if the plan is detailed and specific versus vague. The professional will also assess the individual's emotions, such as **depression**, hopelessness, hostility, and **anxiety**. Past suicide attempts as well as completed suicides among family and friends will be assessed. The nature of any current crisis event or circumstance will be evaluated, such as loss of physical abilities because of illness or accident, unemployment, and loss of an important relationship.

### **Treatment plan**

A written safekeeping contract may be obtained. This is statement signed by such individuals that they will not commit suicide, and that they agree to various actions, such as notifying their clinician, family, friends, or emergency personnel, should thoughts of committing suicide again arise. This contract may also include coping strategies that the individuals agree to engage in to reduce distress. If the individuals state that they are not able to do this, then it may be determined that medical assistance is required and voluntary or involuntary

psychiatric **hospitalization** may be implemented. Most individuals with thoughts of suicide do not require hospitalization and respond well to outpatient treatment. Educating family and friends and seeking their support are important aspects of suicide intervention. Individual therapy, **family therapy**, substance **abuse** treatment, and/or psychiatric medication may be recommended.

### Critical incident stress debriefing and management

#### Definition

Critical incident stress debriefing (CISD) uses a structured, small-group format to discuss a distressing crisis event. It is the best-known and most widely used debriefing model. Critical incident stress management (CISM) refers to a system of interventions that includes CISD as well as other interventions, such as one-on-one crisis intervention, **support groups** for family and significant others, stress management education programs, and follow-up programs. It was originally designed to be used with high-risk professional groups, such as emergency services, public safety, disaster response, and military personnel. It can be used with any population, including children. A trained personnel team conducts this intervention. The team usually includes professional support personnel, such as mental health professionals and clergy. In some settings, peer support personnel, such as emergency services workers, will be part of the debriefing team. It is recommended that a debriefing occur after the first 24 hours following a crisis event, but before 72 hours have passed since the incident.

#### Purpose

This process aims to prevent excessive emotional, mental, physical, and behavioral reactions and **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD) from developing in response to a crisis. Its goal is to help individuals recover as quickly as possible from the stress associated with a crisis.

#### Phases of CISD

There are seven phases to a formal CISD:

1. introductory remarks: The team sets the tone and rules for the discussion, and encourages participant cooperation.
2. fact phase: Participants describe what happened during the incident.
3. thought phase: Participants state the first or main thoughts while going through the incident.

## KEY TERMS

**Coping**—In psychology, a term that refers to a person's patterns of response to stress.

**Critical incident**—Also known as a crisis event. An event that is stressful enough to overwhelm the coping skills of a person or group.

**Stress**—A physical and psychological response that results from being exposed to a demand or pressure.

**Stressor**—A stimulus or event that provokes a stress response in an organism. Stressors can be categorized as acute or chronic, and as external or internal to the organism.

4. reaction phase: Participants discuss the elements of the situation that were worst.
5. symptom phase: Participants describe the symptoms of distress experienced during or after the incident.
6. teaching phase: The team provides information and suggestions that can be used to reduce the impact of stress.
7. reentry phase: The team answers participants' questions and makes summary comments.

#### Precautions

Some concern has been expressed in the research literature about the effectiveness of CISD. It has been thought that as long as the provider(s) of CISD have been properly trained, the process should be helpful to individuals in distress. If untrained personnel conduct CISD, then it may result in harm to the participants. CISD is not **psychotherapy** or a substitute for it. It is not designed to solve all problems presented during the meeting. In some cases, a referral for follow-up assessment and/or treatment is recommended to individuals after a debriefing.

### Medical crisis counseling

Medical crisis counseling is a brief intervention used to address psychological (anxiety, fear, and depression) and social (family conflicts) problems related to chronic illness in the health care setting. It uses coping techniques and builds social support to help patients manage the stress of being newly diagnosed with a chronic illness or suffering a worsening of a medical condition. It aims to help patients understand their reactions as normal responses to a stressful circumstance and to help them function better.

Preliminary studies of medical crisis counseling indicate that one to four sessions may be needed. Research is also promising in terms of its effectiveness at decreasing patients' levels of distress and improving their functioning.

*See also* Post-traumatic stress disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Echterling, Lennis G., Jack Presbury, and J. Edson McKee. *Crisis Intervention: Promoting Resilience and Resolution in Troubled Times*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2004.
- Hendricks, James E., Jerome B. McKean, and Cindy Gillespie Hendricks. *Crisis Intervention: Contemporary Issues for On-Site Interveners*. 3rd ed. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas Publisher, 2003.
- Roberts, Albert R. *Crisis Intervention Handbook: Assessment, Treatment, and Research*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- Thyer, Bruce A. "Tis a Consummation Devoutly to Be Wished." *Foundations of Evidence-Based Social Work Practice*, Albert R. Roberts, and Kenneth R. Yeager, eds. New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.
- Wiger, Donald E., and Kathy J. Harowski. *Essentials of Crisis Counseling and Intervention*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2003.

### PERIODICALS

- Allen, Andrea, and others. "An Empirically Informed Intervention for Children Following Exposure to Severe Hurricanes." *The Behavior Therapist* 29.6 (Sept. 2006): 118–24.
- Basoglu, Metin, Ebru Salcioglu, and Maria Livanou. "A Randomized Controlled Study of Single-Session Behavioural Treatment of Earthquake-Related Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder Using an Earthquake Simulator." *Psychological Medicine* 37.2 (Feb. 2007): 203–13.
- Bruffaerts, Ronny, Marc Sabbe, and Koen Demyttenaere. "Who Visits the Psychiatric Emergency Room for the First Time?" *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology* 41.7 (July 2006): 580–86.
- Everly, George S., Jr., and others. "Introduction to and Overview of Group Psychological First Aid." *Brief Treatment and Crisis Intervention* 6.2 (May 2006): 130–36.
- Gard, Betsy A., and Josef I. Ruzek. "Community Mental Health Response to Crisis." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 62.8 (Aug. 2006): 1029–41.
- Roberts, Albert R. "Applying Roberts' Triple ABCD Model in the Aftermath of Crisis-Inducing and Trauma-Inducing Community Disasters." *International Journal of Emergency Mental Health* 8.3 (Summer 2006): 175–82.
- Roberts, Albert R. "Juvenile Offender Suicide: Prevalence, Risk Factors, Assessment, and Crisis Intervention

Protocols." *International Journal of Emergency Mental Health* 8.4 (Fall 2006): 255–66.

Singer, Jonathan B. "Making Stone Soup: Evidence-Based Practice for a Suicidal Youth With Comorbid Attention Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder and Major Depressive Disorder." *Brief Treatment and Crisis Intervention* 6.3 (Aug. 2006): 234–47.

Stapleton, Amy B., and others. "Effects of Medical Crisis Intervention on Anxiety, Depression, and Posttraumatic Stress Symptoms: A Meta-Analysis." *Psychiatric Quarterly* 77.3 (Sept. 2006): 231–38.

Vingilis, Evelyn, and others. "Process and Outcome Evaluation of an Emergency Department Intervention for Persons with Mental Health Concerns Using a Population Health Approach." *Administration and Policy in Mental Health and Mental Health Services Research* 34.2 (Mar. 2007): 160–71.

### OTHER

National Strategy for Suicide Prevention. <[www.mentalhealth.org/suicideprevention](http://www.mentalhealth.org/suicideprevention)>.

Joneis Thomas, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## I Cyclothymic disorder

### Definition

Cyclothymic disorder, also known as cyclothymia, is a relatively mild form of bipolar II disorder characterized by mood swings that may appear to be almost within the normal range of emotions. These mood swings range from mild **depression** (dysthymia) to mania of low intensity (**hypomania**).

### Description

Cyclothymic disorder, a symptomatically mild form of bipolar II disorder, involves mood swings ranging from mild depression to mild mania. It is possible for cyclothymia to go undiagnosed, and for individuals with the disorder to be unaware that they have a treatable disease. Individuals with cyclothymia may experience episodes of low-level depression, known as dysthymia; or periods of intense energy, creativity, and/or irritability, known as hypomania; or they may alternate between both mood states. Like other bipolar disorders, cyclothymia is a chronic illness characterized by mood swings that can occur as often as every day and last for several days, weeks, or months. Individuals with this disorder are never free of symptoms of either hypomania or mild depression for more than two months at a time.

Persons with cyclothymic disorder differ in the relative proportion of depressive versus hypomanic episodes that they experience. Some individuals have more frequent depressive episodes, whereas others are more likely to feel hypomanic. Most individuals who seek help for the disorder alternate between feelings of mild depression and intense irritability. Those who feel energized and creative when they are hypomanic and find their emotionally low periods tolerable may never seek treatment.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Controversy exists over whether cyclothymic disorder is truly a mood disorder in either biological or psychological terms, or whether it belongs in the class of disorders known as **personality disorders**. Despite this controversy, most of the evidence from biological and genetic research supports the placement of cyclothymia within the mood disorder category.

Genetic data provide strong support that cyclothymia is indeed a mood disorder. About 30% of all patients with cyclothymia have family histories of bipolar I disorder, which involves full-blown manic episodes alternating with periods of relative emotional stability. Full-blown depressive episodes are frequently, but not always, part of the picture in bipolar I disorder. Reviews of the family histories of bipolar I patients show a tendency toward illnesses that alternate across generations: bipolar I in one generation, followed by cyclothymia in the next, followed again by bipolar I in the third generation. The general prevalence of cyclothymia in families with bipolar I diagnoses is much higher than in families with other mental disorders or in the general population. It has been reported that about one-third of patients with cyclothymic disorder subsequently develop a major mood disorder.

Most psychodynamic theorists believe that the psychosocial origins of cyclothymia lie in early traumas and unmet needs dating back to the earliest stages of childhood development. Hypomania has been described as a deficiency of self-criticism and an absence of inhibitions. The patient is believed to use **denial** to avoid external problems and internal feelings of depression. Hypomania is also believed to be frequently triggered by profound interpersonal loss. The false feeling of euphoria (giddy or intense happiness) that arises in such instances serves as a protection against painful feelings of sadness, and even possibly anger against the lost loved one.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of cyclothymic disorder are identical to those of bipolar I disorder except that they are usually less severe. It is possible, however, for the symptoms of cyclothymia to be as intense as those of bipolar I, but of shorter duration. About one-half of all patients with cyclothymic disorder have depression as their major symptom. These persons are most likely to seek help for their symptoms, especially during their depressed episodes. Other patients with cyclothymic disorder experience primarily hypomanic symptoms. They are less likely to seek help than those who suffer primarily from depression. Almost all patients with cyclothymic disorder have periods of mixed symptoms (both depression and hypomania together) during which time they are highly irritable.

Cyclothymic disorder usually causes disruption in all areas of the person's life. Most individuals with this disorder are unable to succeed in their professional or personal lives as a result of their symptoms. However, a few who primarily display hypomanic episodes are high achievers who work long hours and require little sleep. A person's ability to manage the symptoms of the disorder depends upon a number of personal, social, and cultural factors.

The lives of most people diagnosed with cyclothymic disorder are difficult. The cycles of the disorder tend to be much shorter than in bipolar I. In cyclothymic disorder, mood changes are irregular and abrupt, and can occur within hours. While there are occasional periods of normal mood, the unpredictability of the patient's feelings and behavior creates great **stress** not only for the patient but for those who must live or work with him/her. Patients often feel that their moods are out of control. During mixed periods, when they are highly irritable, they may become involved in unprovoked arguments with family, friends, and coworkers, causing stress to all around them.

It is common for cyclothymic disorder patients to **abuse** alcohol and/or other drugs as a means of self-medication. It is estimated that about 5–10% of all patients with cyclothymic disorder also have substance dependence.

## Demographics

Patients with cyclothymic disorder are estimated to constitute 3–10% of all psychiatric outpatients. They may be particularly well represented among those with complaints about marital and interpersonal difficulties. In the general population, the lifetime chance of developing cyclothymic disorder is about 1%. The actual percentage of the general population

with cyclothymia is probably somewhat higher, however, as many patients may not be aware that they have a treatable disease or seek treatment if they do.

Cyclothymic disorder frequently coexists with **borderline personality disorder**, which is a severe lifelong illness characterized by emotional instability and relationship problems. An estimated 10% of outpatients and 20% of inpatients with borderline personality disorder have a coexisting **diagnosis** of cyclothymic disorder. The female-to-male ratio in cyclothymic disorder is approximately 3:2. It is estimated that 50–75% of all patients develop the disorder between the ages of 15 and 25.

## Diagnosis

Since the symptoms tend to be mild, a diagnosis of cyclothymic disorder is usually not made until a person with the disorder is sufficiently disturbed by the symptoms or their consequences to seek help. While there currently are no laboratory tests or **imaging studies** that can detect the disorder, the patient will usually undergo a general physical examination to rule out general medical conditions that are often associated with depressed mood. The patient will also be given a psychological assessment to evaluate his/her symptoms, mental state, behaviors, and other relevant data. If the patient's history or other aspects of his or her behavior during the assessment suggest the diagnosis of cyclothymic disorder, friends or family members of the patient may be interviewed to gather additional data.

The manual used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental illnesses is called the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, fourth edition, text revision, also known as the ***DSM-IV-TR***. This manual specifies six criteria that must be met for a diagnosis of cyclothymic disorder. They are:

- Numerous episodes of hypomania and depression that are not severe enough to be considered major depression. These episodes must have occurred for at least two years.
- During the same two-year period (one year for children and adolescents), the individual has not been free from either hypomania or mild depression for more than two months at a time.
- No major depression, mania, or mixed (both depression and mania together) condition has been present during the first two years of the disorder.
- The individual does not have a thought disorder such as schizophrenia or other psychotic condition.

- The symptoms are not due to the direct effects of substance use (such as a drug of abuse or a prescribed medication) or to a medical condition.
- The symptoms cause significant impairment in the patient's social, occupational, family, or other important areas of life functioning.

## Treatments

### Biological therapy

Medication is an important component of treatment for cyclothymic disorder. A class of drugs known as antimanic medications is usually the first line of treatment for these patients. Drugs such as lithium, **carbamazepine** (Tegretol), and sodium valproate (Depakene), have all been reported to be effective. While antidepressant medications might be prescribed, they should be used with caution, because these patients are highly susceptible to hypomanic or full-blown manic episodes induced by **antidepressants**. It is estimated that 40–50% of all patients with cyclothymic disorder who are treated with antidepressants experience such episodes.

### Psychosocial therapy

**Psychotherapy** with individuals diagnosed with cyclothymic disorder is best directed toward increasing the patients' awareness of their condition and helping them develop effective coping strategies for mood swings. Often, considerable work is needed to improve the patient's relationships with family members and workplace colleagues because of damage done to these relationships during hypomanic episodes. Because cyclothymic disorder is a lifelong condition, psychotherapy is also a long-term commitment. Working with families of cyclothymic patients can help them adjust more effectively to the patients' mood swings as well.

## Prognosis

While some patients later diagnosed with cyclothymic disorder were considered sensitive, hyperactive, or moody as children, the onset of cyclothymic disorder usually occurs gradually during the patient's late teens or early twenties. Often school performance becomes a problem along with difficulty establishing peer relationships. Approximately one-third of all patients with cyclothymic disorder develop a major mood disorder during their lifetime, usually bipolar II disorder.

## Prevention

Cyclothymic disorder appears to have a strong genetic component. It is far more common among

## KEY TERMS

**Bipolar I disorder**—A major mood disorder characterized by full-blown manic episodes, often interspersed with episodes of major depression.

**Bipolar II disorder**—Disorder with major depressive episodes and mild manic episodes known as hypomania.

**Borderline personality disorder**—A severe and usually life-long mental disorder characterized by violent mood swings and severe difficulties in sustaining interpersonal relationships.

**Cyclothymia**—An alternate name for cyclothymic disorder.

**Denial**—A psychological defense mechanism that reduces anxiety by excluding recognition of an addiction or similar problem from the conscious mind.

**Dysthymia**—Depression of low intensity.

**Hypomania**—A milder form of mania which is characteristic of bipolar II disorder.

**Psychodynamic theorists**—Therapists who believe that the origins of mental problems lie in a person's internal conflicts and complexes.

**Psychosocial**—A term that refers to the emotional and social aspects of psychological disorders.

the first-degree biological relatives of persons with bipolar I disorder than among the general population. At this time, there are no known effective preventive

measures that can reduce the risk of developing cyclothymic disorder. Genetic counseling, which assists a couple in understanding their risk of producing a child with the disorder, may be of some help.

*See also Affect; Amitriptyline; Borderline personality disorder; Bupropion; Depression and depressive disorders overview; Fluoxetine; Mixed episode; Personality disorders.*

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000. Drevets, Wayne C., and Richard D. Todd. "Depression, Mania, and Related Disorders." *Adult Psychiatry* 2nd ed. Eugene H. Rubin and Charles F. Zorumski, eds. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing, 2005, 91–129.

### PERIODICALS

Andlin-Sobocki, Patrik, and Hans-Ulrich Wittchen. "Cost of Affective Disorders in Europe." *European Journal of Neurology* 12, s1 (June 2005): 34–38.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20002. Telephone: (202) 336-5500. Mental Illness Foundation. 420 Lexington Avenue, Suite 2104, New York, NY 10170. Telephone: (212) 682-4699.

Barbara S. Sternberg, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Cylert see **Pemoline**

# D

Dalmane see **Flurazepam**

Dance therapy see **Bodywork therapies**

## Deinstitutionalization

### Definition

Deinstitutionalization is a long-term trend wherein fewer people reside as patients in mental hospitals and fewer mental health treatments are delivered in public hospitals. This trend is directly due to the process of closing public hospitals and the ensuing transfers of patients to community-based mental health services in the late twentieth century. It represents the dissipation of patients over a wider variety of health care settings and geographic areas. Deinstitutionalization also illustrates evolution in the structure, practice, experiences, and purposes of mental health care in the United States.

### History

#### *Hospital care for mental health*

In the United States in the nineteenth century, hospitals were built to house and care for people with chronic illness, and mental health care was a local responsibility. As with most chronic illness, **hospitalization** did not always provide a cure. Individual states assumed primary responsibilities for mental hospitals beginning in 1890. In the first part of the twentieth century, while mental health treatments had very limited efficacy, many patients received custodial care in state hospitals. Custodial care refers to care in which the patient is watched and protected, but a cure is not sought.

After the founding of the National Institutes of Mental Health (NIMH), new psychiatric medications were developed and introduced into state mental

hospitals beginning in 1955. These new medicines brought new hope, and helped address some of the symptoms of mental disorders.

President John F. Kennedy's 1963 **Community Mental Health Centers Act** accelerated the trend toward deinstitutionalization with the establishment of a network of community mental health centers. In the 1960s, with the introduction of Medicare and Medicaid, the federal government assumed an increasing share of responsibility for the costs of mental health care. That trend continued into the 1970s with the implementation of the Supplemental Security Income program in 1974. State governments helped accelerate deinstitutionalization, especially of elderly people. In the 1960s and 1970s, state and national policies championed the need for comprehensive community mental health care, though this ideal was slowly and only partially realized.

Beginning in the 1980s, **managed care** systems began to review systematically the use of inpatient hospital care for mental health. Both public concerns and private health insurance policies generated financial incentives to admit fewer people to hospitals and discharge inpatients more rapidly, limit the length of patient stays, or to transfer responsibility to less costly forms of care.

#### *Indicators and trends*

Many statistical indicators show the amount of inpatient hospital care for persons with mental illness decreased during the latter half of the twentieth century, while the total volume of mental health care increased.

A patient care episode is a specific measure of the volume of care provided by an organization or system. It begins when a person visits a health care facility for treatment and ends when the person leaves the facility. In 1955, 77% of all patient care episodes in mental health organizations took place in 24-hour hospitals.

By 1994, although the numbers of patient care episodes increased by more than 500%, only 26% of mental health treatment episodes were in these hospitals. The timing of this trend varied across different states and regions, but it was consistent across a variety of indicators.

The number of inpatient beds available to each group of 100,000 civilians decreased from over 200 beds in 1970 to less than 50 in 1992. The average number of patients in psychiatric hospitals decreased from over 2,000 in 1958 to about 500 in 1978. While adjusted per-capita spending on mental health rose from \$16.53 in 1969 to \$19.33 in 1994, the portion of funds spent on state and county mental hospitals fell from \$9.11 to \$4.56.

### *Transinstitutionalization*

Trends toward deinstitutionalization also reflect shifting demographics and boundaries of care. For example, decreases in inpatient mental health care can be complemented by increases in outpatient mental health care. Decreases in inpatient mental health care can also be paired with increases in other forms of care, such as social welfare, criminal justice, or nursing home care. Thus deinstitutionalization is part of a process sometimes called transinstitutionalization, the transfer of institutional populations from hospitals to jails, nursing homes, and shelters.

### **Causes and consequences**

#### *Causes*

Deinstitutionalization, originally and idealistically portrayed by advocates and consumers as a liberating, humane policy alternative to restrictive care, may also be interpreted as a series of health policy reforms that are associated with the gradual demise of mental health care dependent on large, state-supported hospitals. Deinstitutionalization is often attributed to decreased need for hospital care and to the advent of new psychiatric medicines.

#### *Consequences*

Ideally, deinstitutionalization represents more humane and liberal treatment of mental illness in community-based settings. Pragmatically, it represents a change in the scope of mental health care from longer, custodial inpatient care to shorter outpatient care.

The process of deinstitutionalization, combined with the scarcity of community-based care, is also associated with the visible problems of **homelessness**. Between 30-50% of homeless people in the United States

### **KEY TERMS**

**Patient care episodes**—A specific measure of the volume of care provided by an organization or system. It begins with a treatment visit to a health care facility (a hospital or residential treatment center, for example) and ends when a person leaves the facility, so it may vary by patient and visit. Over time, the volume of patient care episodes indicates the degree to which a population uses certain health care capacities. Other measures that may be used to measure volume of care include number of beds or bed-days, total number of patients served, and also more specific measures like patient-contact hours.

are people with mental illness, and people with mental illness are disproportionate among the homeless.

#### **Experience and adjustment**

Deinstitutionalization also describes the adjustment process whereby people with illness are removed from the effects of life within institutions. Since people may become socialized to highly structured institutional environments, they often adapt their social behavior to institutional conditions. Therefore adjusting to life outside of an institution may be difficult.

Defined experientially, deinstitutionalization allows individuals to regain freedom and empower themselves through responsible choices and actions. With the assistance of **social workers** and through psychiatric rehabilitation, former inpatients can adjust to everyday life outside of institutional rules and expectations. This aspect of deinstitutionalization promotes hope and recovery, ongoing debates over the best structure and process of mental health service delivery notwithstanding.

#### **Resources**

##### **BOOKS**

- Dowdall, George. "Mental Hospitals and Deinstitutionalization." *Handbook of the Sociology of Mental Health*, edited by C. Aneshensel and J. Phelan. New York, Kluwer Academic. 1999.
- Scheid, Teresa, and Allan Horwitz. "Mental Health Systems and Policy." *Handbook for the Study of Mental Health*. New York, Cambridge University Press. 1999.
- Schlesinger, Mark, and Bradford Gray. "Institutional Change and Its Consequences for the Delivery of Mental Health Services." *Handbook of the Sociology of Mental Health*, edited by C. Aneshensel and J. Phelan. New York, Kluwer Academic. 1999.
- Scull, Andrew. *Social Order/Mental Disorder*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1989.

## PERIODICALS

- Grob, Gerald. "Government and Mental Health Policy: A Structural Analysis." *Milbank Quarterly* 72, no. 3 (1994): 471-500.
- Redick, Richard, Michael Witkin, Joanne Atay, and others. "Highlights of Organized Mental Health Services in 1992 and Major National and State Trends." Chapter 13 in *Mental Health, United States, 1996*, edited by Ronald Mandersheid and Mary Anne Sonnenschein. Washington D.C.: US-GPO, US-DHHS, 1996.
- Witkin, Michael, Joanne Atay, Ronald Manderscheid, and others. "Highlights of Organized Mental Health Services in 1994 and Major National and State Trends." Chapter 13 in *Mental Health, United States, 1998*, edited by Ronald Mandersheid and Marilyn Henderson. Washington D.C.: US-GPO, US-DHHS Pub. No. (SMA) 99-3285, 1998.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- American Sociological Association. 1307 New York Ave., Washington DC 20005-4701. <<http://www.asanet.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Rm. 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.
- Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). Center for Mental Health Services (CMHS), Department of Health and Human Services, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville MD 20857. <<http://www.samhsa.org>>.

Michael Polgar, Ph.D.

## Delirium

### Definition

Delirium is a medical condition characterized by a general disorientation accompanied by cognitive impairment, mood shift, self-awareness, and inability to attend (the inability to focus and maintain attention). The change occurs over a short period of time—hours to days—and the disturbance in consciousness fluctuates throughout the day.

### Description

The word delirium comes from the Latin *delirare*. In its Latin form, the word means to become crazy or to rave. A phrase often used to describe delirium is “clouding of consciousness,” meaning the person has a diminished awareness of their surroundings. In the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders IV, Text Revision*, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*, delirium is classified according to its assumed causes; for example, “Substance-Induced Delirium” is one

classification. These disorders involving delirium are listed in the same section as those involving **dementia**, but the two manifestations of illness differ in several characteristics. Dementia, for example, may exhibit a longer developmental process and is typically accompanied by multiple cognitive deficits.

While the delirium is active, the person tends to fade into and out of lucidity, meaning that he or she will sometimes appear to know what's going on, and at other times, may show disorientation to time, place, person, or situation. It appears that the longer the delirium goes untreated, the more progressive the disorientation becomes. It usually begins with disorientation to time, during which a patient will declare it to be morning, even though it may be late night. Later, the person may state that he or she is in a different place rather than at home or in a hospital bed. Still later, the patient may not recognize loved ones, close friends, or relatives, or may insist that a visitor is someone else altogether. Finally, the patient may not recognize the reason for his/her **hospitalization** and might accuse staff or others of some covert reason for his/her hospitalization. In fact, this waxing and waning of consciousness is often worse at the end of a day, a phenomenon known as “sundowning.”

A delirious patient will have a difficult time with most mental operations. Because the patient cannot attend consistently to the environment, disorientation can result. Nevertheless, disorientation and memory loss are not essential to the **diagnosis** of delirium; the inability to focus and maintain attention, however, is essential to rendering a correct diagnosis. Left un-checked, delirium tends to transition from inattention to increased levels of lethargy, leading to torpor, stupor, and coma. In its other form, delirious patients become agitated and almost hypervigilant, with their sleep-wake cycle dramatically altered, fluctuating between great guardedness and **hypersomnia** (excessive drowsiness) during the day and wakefulness during the night. Delirious patients can also experience **hallucinations** of the visual, auditory, or tactile type. In such cases, the patient will see things others cannot see, hear things others cannot hear, and/or feel things that others cannot, such as feeling as though his or her skin is crawling. In short, the extremes of delirium range from the appearance of simple confusion and **apathy** to the anxious, agitated, and hyperactive type, with some patients experiencing both ends of the spectrum during a single episode. It is imperative that a quick evaluation occur if delirium is suspected because the condition can lead to death.

### Demographics

Children, possibly because of their immature **brain** development and physiological differences from adults,

can be particularly susceptible to delirium. This susceptibility is most common in association with fevers or some kinds of medications (such as anticholinergics, medications used for motor control problems). A child in a state of delirium may exhibit behavior that can be mistaken for willful lack of cooperation.

The elderly are also particularly sensitive to delirium, also probably because of differences in physiology as we age. Being male and elderly enhances this risk.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

While the symptoms of delirium are numerous and varied, the causes of delirium fall into four basic categories: metabolic, toxic, structural, and infectious. Stated another way, the bases of delirium may be medical, chemical, surgical, or neurological. The *DSM-IV* lists four classifications of delirium: delirium due to a general medical condition; substance-induced delirium, which includes delirium resulting as a side effect of medication; delirium due to multiple etiologies, meaning it has many different causes; and delirium not otherwise specified, a category applied when the symptom does not fit into any of the other groups. Delirium is often associated with factors that result in a disturbance of the normal sleep-wake cycle.

**METABOLIC CAUSES.** Many metabolic disorders, such as hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, hypokalemia, and anoxia can cause delirium. For example, hypothyroidism (the thyroid gland emits reduced levels of thyroid hormones) brings about a change in emotional responsiveness, which can appear similar to depressive symptoms and cause a state of delirium. Other metabolic sources of delirium involve the dysfunction of the pituitary gland, pancreas, adrenal glands, and parathyroid glands. It should be noted that when a metabolic imbalance goes unattended, the brain may suffer irreparable damage.

**DELIRIUM AND MEDICATION.** One of the most frequent causes of delirium in the elderly is overmedication. The use of medications such as tricyclic **antidepressants** and antiparkinsonian medications can bring about an anticholinergic toxicity and subsequent delirium. In addition to the anticholinergic drugs, other drugs that can be the source of a delirium are:

- anticonvulsants, used to treat epilepsy
- antihypertensives, used to treat high blood pressure
- cardiac glycosides, such as Digoxin, used to treat heart failure

- cimetidine, used to reduce the production of stomach acid
- disulfiram, used in the treatment of alcoholism
- insulin, used to treat diabetes
- opiates, used to treat pain
- phencyclidine (PCP), used originally as an anesthetic, but later removed from the market, now only produced and used illicitly
- salicylates, basically found in aspirin
- steroids, sometimes used to prevent muscle wasting in bedridden or other immobile patients

Additionally, systemic poisoning by chemicals or compounds such as carbon monoxide, lead, mercury, or other industrial chemicals can be the source of delirium.

**DELIRIUM AND OTHER SUBSTANCES.** Just as the ingestion of certain drugs may cause delirium in some patients, the withdrawal of drugs can also cause it. Alcohol is the most widely used and most well known of these drugs whose withdrawal symptoms may include delirium. Delirium onset from the abstinence of alcohol in a chronic user can begin within three days of cessation of drinking. The term delirium tremens is used to describe this form of delirium. The resulting symptoms of this delirium are similar in nature to other delirious states but may be preceded by clear-headed auditory hallucinations. In other words, the delirium has not begun, but the patient may experience auditory hallucinations. Delirium tremens follow and can have ominous consequences with as many as 15% of those affected dying.

**OTHER CAUSES OF DELIRIUM.** Some of the structural causes of delirium include vascular blockage, subdural hematoma, and brain tumors. Any of these can damage the brain, through oxygen deprivation or direct insult, and cause delirium. Some patients become delirious following surgery. This can be due to any of several factors, such as effects of anesthesia, infections, or a metabolic imbalance.

Infectious diseases can also cause delirium. Commonly diagnosed diseases such as urinary tract infections, pneumonia, or fever from a viral infection can induce delirium. Additionally, diseases of the liver, kidney, lungs, and cardiovascular system can cause delirium. Finally, an infection, specific to the brain, can cause delirium. Even a deficiency of thiamine (vitamin B<sub>1</sub>) can be a trigger for delirium.

### Symptoms

Symptoms of delirium are often those associated with the disturbed sleep-wake cycle and include a

confused state of mind accompanied by poor attention, impaired recent memory, irritability, inappropriate behavior (e.g., use of vulgar language, despite lack of a history of such behavior), and **anxiety** and fearfulness. In some cases, the person can appear to be psychotic, fostering illusions, **delusions**, hallucinations, and/or **paranoia**. In other cases, the patient may simply appear to be withdrawn and apathetic. In still other cases, the patient may become agitated and restless, unable to remain in bed, and feel a strong need to pace the floor. This restlessness and hyperactivity can alternate with periods of apparent stupor.

A few examples of people affected by delirium follow:

- One man, who had already been in the hospital for three days, when asked if he knew where he was, stated the correct city and hospital. He immediately followed this by saying, “but I started out in Dallas, Texas, this morning.” The hospital location was some 1,800 miles from Dallas, Texas, and as previously indicated, he had been in the same hospital for three days.
- In another case, an elderly man was placed in a private room that had a wonderful large mural on one wall. The mural was that of a forest scene—no animals or people, only trees and sunlight. His chief complaint at various points during the day was that evil people were watching him from behind the trees in the forest scene.
- An elderly woman had to be subdued while attempting to flee from the hospital because she was convinced that she had been brought there so surgeons could harvest her organs. Despite the lack of surgical scars or incisions, she insisted that she had been taken to the basement of the hospital the previous night and that a surgeon had removed one of her kidneys.

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of delirium relies on a distinction of its occurrence from dementia. It should be determined not to arise from previously existing dementia. Other features include identifying it as a loss of clarity about the environment (inattention), sudden changes in cognition (e.g., disorientation), and a relatively sudden onset (compared to dementia).

Diagnosis of some cases of delirium may not occur at all; whether or not delirium is diagnosed in a patient depends on how it is manifested. If the person is an elderly, postoperative patient who appears quiet and apathetic, the condition may go undiagnosed. However, if the patient presents with the agitated,

uncooperative type of delirium, it will certainly be noticed. In any case, where there is sudden onset of a confused state accompanied by a behavioral change, delirium should be considered. This is not intended to imply that such a diagnosis will be made easily.

Frequent mental status examinations, at various times throughout the day, may be required to render a diagnosis of delirium. This assessment is generally done using the **Mini-Mental State Examination** (MMSE). This abbreviated form of mental status examination begins by first assessing the patient’s ability to attend. If the patient is inattentive or in a stuporous state, further examination of mental status cannot be done. However, assuming the patient can respond to questions asked, the examination can proceed. The Mini-Mental State Exam assesses the areas of orientation, registration, attention and concentration, recall, language, and spatial perception. Another tool for use in diagnosing delirium is the Delirium Rating Scale-Revised-98, although studies regarding its ability to differentiate different types of delirium have not been undertaken. Yet another diagnostic tool is the Memorial Delirium Assessment Scale, or MDAS. One tool that does not require patient participation is the Confusion Assessment Method, or CAM.

At times, the untrained observer may mistake psychotic features of delirium for another primary mental illness such as **schizophrenia** or a **manic episode** such as that associated with **bipolar disorder**. However, it should be noted that there are major differences between these diagnoses and delirium. In people who have schizophrenia, their odd behavior, stereotyped motor activity, or abnormal speech persists in the absence of disorientation like that seen with delirium. The schizophrenic appears alert and although his/her delusions and/or hallucinations persist, he/she could be formally tested. In contrast, the delirious patient appears hapless and disoriented between episodes of lucidity. The delirious patient may not be testable. A manic episode could be misconstrued for agitated delirium, but consistency of elevated mood would contrast sharply to the less consistent mood of the delirious patient. Once again, delirium should always be considered when there is a rapid onset and especially when there is waxing and waning of the ability to attend and the confusion state.

Because delirium can be superimposed into a pre-existing dementia, the most often posed question, when diagnosing delirium, is whether the person might have dementia instead. Both cause disturbances of memory, but a person with dementia does not reflect the disturbance of consciousness depicted by someone with delirium. Expert history taking is a must

in differentiating dementia from delirium. Dementia is insidious in nature and thus progresses slowly, while delirium begins with a sudden onset and acute symptoms. A person with dementia can appear clear-headed, but can harbor delusions not elicited during an interview. One does not see the typical fluctuation of consciousness in dementia that manifests itself in delirium. It has been stated that, as a general rule, delirium comes and goes, but dementia comes and stays. Delirium rarely lasts more than a month. As a final caution, the clinician must be prepared to rule out **factitious disorder** and **malingering** as possible causes for the delirium.

When a state of delirium is confirmed, the clinician is faced with the task of making the diagnosis in appropriate context to its cause. The delirium may be caused by a general medical condition. In such a case, the clinician must identify the source of the delirium within the diagnosis. For example, if the delirium is caused by liver dysfunction, in which the liver cannot rid the system of toxins and allows them to enter the system and thus the brain, the diagnosis would be delirium due to hepatic encephalopathy. The delirium might also be caused by a substance such as alcohol. To render a diagnosis of alcohol intoxication delirium, the cognitive symptoms should be more exaggerated than those found in intoxication syndrome. The delirium could also be caused by withdrawal from a substance. Continuing the alcohol theme, the diagnosis would be alcohol withdrawal delirium (delirium tremens could be a feature of this diagnosis).

There may be instances in which delirium has multiple causes, such as when a patient has a head trauma and liver failure, or viral encephalitis and alcohol withdrawal. When delirium comes from multiple sources, a diagnosis of delirium precedes each medical condition that contributes.

### Treatment

Treating delirium means treating the underlying illness that is its basis. This could include correcting any chemical disparities within the body, such as electrolyte imbalances, treating an infection, reducing a fever, or removing or discontinuing a medication or toxin. A review of anticholinergic effects of medications administered to the patient should take place. It is suggested that **sedatives** and hypnotic-type medications not be used; however, despite the fact that they can sometimes contribute to delirium, in cases of agitated delirium, the use of these may be necessary. Medications that are often used to treat agitated delirium include **haloperidol**, **thioridazine**, and **risperidone**. These can reduce the psychotic features and

### KEY TERMS

**Anoxia**—Lack of oxygen.

**Anticholinergic toxicity**—A poisonous effect brought about by ingestion of medications or other toxins that block acetylcholine receptors. When these receptors are blocked, the person taking the medication may find that he or she gets overheated, has dry mouth, has blurry vision, and his or her body may retain urine.

**Coma**—Unconsciousness.

**Hyperthyroidism**—Condition resulting from the thyroid glands secreting excessive thyroid hormone, causing increased basal metabolic rate, and causing an increased need for food to meet the demand of the metabolic activity; generally, however, weight loss results.

**Hypervigilant**—Extreme attention and focus to both internal and external stimuli.

**Hypokalemia**—Abnormally low levels of potassium in the blood. Hypokalemia is a potential medical emergency, as it can lead to disturbances in of the heart rhythm.

**Stupor**—A trance-like state that causes a person to appear numb to their environment.

**Subdural hematoma**—Active bleeding or a blood clot inside the dura (leathery covering of the brain). This bleeding or clot causes swelling of the brain, and, untreated, the condition can cause death.

**Torpor**—Sluggishness or inactivity.

**Tricyclic antidepressants**—Antidepressant medications that have the common characteristic of a three-ring nucleus in their chemical structure. Imipramine and amitriptyline are examples of tricyclic antidepressants.

**Vascular**—Pertaining to the bloodstream (arteries, veins, and blood vessels).

curb some of the volatility of the patient, but they are only treating symptoms of the delirium and not the source. **Benzodiazepines** (medications that slow the central nervous system to relax the patient) can also assist in controlling agitated patients, but since they can contribute to delirium, they should be used in the lowest therapeutic doses possible. The reduction and discontinuance of all psychotropic drugs should be the goal of treatment and occur as soon as possible to permit recovery and viable assessment of the patient.

## Prognosis

If a quick diagnosis and treatment of delirium occur, the condition is frequently reversible. However, if the condition goes unchecked or is treated too late, there is a high incidence of mortality or permanent brain damage associated with it. The underlying illness may respond quickly to a treatment regimen, but improvement in mental functioning may lag behind, especially in the elderly. Moreover, one study disclosed that one group of elderly survivors of delirium, at three years following hospital discharge, had a 33% higher rate of death than other patients. As a final note, delirium is a medical emergency, requiring prompt attention to avoid the potential for permanent brain damage or even death.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Kaplan, Harold and Benjamin Sadock. *Synopsis of Psychiatry*. 8th edition. New York: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 1997.
- The Merck Manual*. 17th edition. Whitehouse Station, N.J.: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

- Chan, Daniel. "Delirium: Making the Diagnosis, Improving the Prognosis." *Geriatrics* 54 (1999): 28–42.
- Curyto, Kim J., Jerry Johnson, Thomas TenHave, Jana Mossey, Kathryn Knott, and Ira R. Katz. "Survival of Hospitalized Elderly Patients With Delirium: A Prospective Study." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 9 (2001): 141–147.
- de Rooij, S.E., Schuurmans, M.J., van der Mast, R.C., and Levi, M. "Clinical subtypes of delirium and their relevance for daily clinical practice." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 20 (2005): 60–615.
- Katz, Ira R., Kim J. Curyto, Thomas TenHave, Jana Mossey, Laura Sands, and Michael Kallan. "Validating the Diagnosis of Delirium and Evaluating its Association With Deterioration Over a One-Year Period." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 9 (2001): 148–159.
- Trzepacz, Paula T. "The Delirium Rating Scale: Its Use in Consultation-Liaison Research." *Psychosomatics* 40 (1999): 193–204.
- Trzepacz, Paula T., Dinesh Mittal, Rafael Torres, Kim Kanary, John Norton, and Nita Jimerson. "Validation of The Delirium Rating Scale-Revised-98: Comparison with the delirium rating scale and the cognitive test for delirium." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* 13 (2001): 229–242.
- Webster, Robert and Suzanne Holroyd. "Prevalence of Psychotic Symptoms in Delirium." *Psychosomatics* 41 (2000): 519–522.

## OTHER

National Guideline Clearinghouse. "Management of alcohol-based delirium tremens." <[http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?ss=15&doc\\_id=6543&nbr=4109](http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?ss=15&doc_id=6543&nbr=4109)> (accessed January 20, 2007).

National Cancer Center. "Cognitive disorders and delirium." <<http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/pdq/supportivecare/delirium/healthprofessional/allpages>> (accessed January 20, 2007).

Jack H. Booth, Psy.D.

## Delusional disorder

### Definition

Delusional disorder is characterized by the presence of recurrent, persistent non-bizarre **delusions**.

Delusions are irrational beliefs, held with a high level of conviction, that are highly resistant to change even when the delusional person is exposed to forms of proof that contradict the belief. Non-bizarre delusions are considered to be plausible; that is, there is a possibility that what the person believes to be true could actually occur a small proportion of the time. Conversely, bizarre delusions focus on matters that would be impossible in reality. For example, a non-bizarre delusion might be the belief that one's activities are constantly under observation by federal law enforcement or intelligence agencies, which actually does occur for a small number of people. By contrast, a man who believes he is pregnant with German Shepherd puppies holds a belief that could never come to pass in reality. Also, for beliefs to be considered delusional, the content or themes of the beliefs must be uncommon in the person's culture or religion. Generally, in delusional disorder, these mistaken beliefs are organized into a consistent world-view that is logical other than being based on an improbable foundation.

In addition to giving evidence of a cluster of interrelated non-bizarre delusions, persons with delusional disorder experience **hallucinations** far less frequently than do individuals with **schizophrenia** or **schizoaffective disorder**.

### Description

Unlike most other psychotic disorders, the person with delusional disorder typically does not appear obviously odd, strange or peculiar during periods of active illness. Yet the person might make unusual choices in day-to-day life because of the delusional

beliefs. Expanding on the previous example, people who believe they are under government observation might seem typical in most ways but could refuse to have a telephone or use credit cards in order to make it harder for “those Federal agents” to monitor purchases and conversations. Most mental health professionals would concur that until the person with delusional disorder discusses the areas of life affected by the delusions, they would experience difficulty in distinguishing the patient from members of the general public who are not psychiatrically disturbed. Another distinction of delusional disorder compared with other psychotic disorders is that hallucinations are either absent or occur infrequently.

The person with delusional disorder may or may not come to the attention of mental health providers. Typically, while people with delusional disorder may be distressed about the delusional “reality,” they may not have the insight to see that anything is wrong with the way they are thinking or functioning. Regarding the earlier example, those experiencing delusion might state that the only thing wrong or upsetting in their lives is that the government is spying, and if the surveillance would cease, so would the problems. Similarly, people with the disorder attribute any obstacles or problems in functioning to the delusional reality, separating it from their internal control. Furthermore, whether unable to get a good job or maintain a romantic relationship, the difficulties would be blamed on “government interference” rather than on their own failures or omissions. Unless the form of the delusions causes illegal behavior, somehow affects an ability to work, or otherwise deal with daily activities, the person with delusional disorder may adapt well enough to navigate life without coming to clinical attention. When people with delusional disorder decide to seek mental health care, the motivation for getting treatment is usually to decrease the negative emotions of **depression**, fearfulness, rage, or constant worry caused by living under the cloud of delusional beliefs, not to change the unusual thoughts themselves.

#### *Forms of delusional disorder*

An important aspect of delusional disorder is the identification of which form of delusion characterizes the individual. The most common form of delusional disorder is the persecutory or paranoid subtype, in which the patients are certain that others are striving to harm them.

In the erotomanic form of delusional disorder, the primary delusional belief is that some important person is secretly in love with the individual. The erotomanic type is more common in women than men. Eerotomanic delusions may prompt stalking the love

object and even violence against the beloved or those viewed as potential romantic rivals.

The grandiose subtype of delusional disorder involves the conviction of one’s importance and uniqueness, and takes a variety of forms: believing that one has a distinguished role, has some remarkable connections with important persons, or enjoys some extraordinary powers or abilities.

In the somatic subtype, there is excessive concern and irrational ideas about bodily functioning, which may include worries regarding infestation with parasites or insects, imagined physical deformity, or a conviction that one is emitting a foul stench when there is no problematic odor.

The form of disorder most associated with violent behavior, usually between romantic partners, is the jealous subtype of delusional disorder. Patients are firmly convinced of the infidelity of a spouse or partner, despite contrary evidence and based on minimal data (like a messy bedspread or more cigarettes than usual in an ashtray, for instance). People with delusional jealousy may gather scraps of conjectured “evidence,” and may try to constrict their partners’ activities or confine them to home. Delusional disorder cases involving aggression and injury toward others have been most associated with this subtype.

#### *Delusion and other disorders*

Even though the main characteristic of delusional disorder is a noticeable system of delusional beliefs, delusions may occur in the course of a large number of other psychiatric disorders. Delusions are often observed in persons with other psychotic disorders such as schizophrenia and schizoaffective disorder. In addition to occurring in the psychotic disorders, delusions also may be evident as part of a response to physical, medical conditions (such as **brain** injury or brain tumors), or reactions to ingestion of a drug.

Delusions also occur in the dementias, which are syndromes wherein psychiatric symptoms and memory loss result from deterioration of brain tissue. Because delusions can be shown as part of many illnesses, the **diagnosis** of delusional disorder is partially conducted by process of elimination. If the delusions are not accompanied by persistent, recurring hallucinations, then schizophrenia and schizoaffective disorder are not appropriate diagnoses. If the delusions are not accompanied by memory loss, then **dementia** is ruled out. If there is no physical illness or injury or other active biological cause (such as drug ingestion or drug withdrawal), then the delusions cannot be attributed to a general medical problem or drug-related

causes. If delusions are the most obvious and pervasive symptom, without hallucinations, medical causation, drug influences or memory loss, then delusional disorder is the most appropriate categorization.

Because delusions occur in many different disorders, some clinician-researchers have argued that there is little usefulness in focusing on what diagnosis the person has been given. Those who ascribe to this view believe it is more important to focus on the symptom of delusional thinking, and find ways to have an effect on delusions, whether they occur in delusional disorder or schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder. The majority of **psychotherapy** techniques used in delusional disorder come from symptom-focused (as opposed to diagnosis-focused) researcher-practitioners.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Because clear identification of delusional disorder has traditionally been challenging, scientists have conducted far less research relating to the disorder than studies for schizophrenia or mood disorders. Still, some theories of causation have developed, which fall into several categories.

**GENETIC OR BIOLOGICAL.** Close relatives of persons with delusional disorder have increased rates of delusional disorder and paranoid personality traits. They do not have higher rates of schizophrenia, schizoaffective disorder or mood disorder compared to relatives of non-delusional persons. Increased incidence of these psychiatric disorders in individuals closely genetically related to persons with delusional disorder suggest that there is a genetic component to the disorder. Furthermore, a number of studies comparing activity of different regions of the brain in delusional and non-delusional research participants yielded data about differences in the functioning of the brains between members of the two groups. These differences in brain activity suggest that, persons neurologically with delusions tend to react as if threatening conditions are consistently present. Non-delusional persons only show such patterns under certain kinds of conditions where the interpretation of being threatened is more accurate. With both brain activity evidence and family heritability evidence, a strong chance exists that there is a biological aspect to delusional disorder.

**DYSFUNCTIONAL COGNITIVE PROCESSING.** An elaborate term for thinking is “cognitive processing.” Delusions may arise from distorted ways people have of explaining life to themselves. The most prominent cognitive problems involve the manner in which peo-

ple with delusion develop conclusions both about other people, and about causation of unusual perceptions or negative events. Studies examining how people with delusions develop theories about reality show that the subjects have ideas which they tend to reach an inference based on less information than most people use. This “jumping to conclusions” bias can lead to delusional interpretations of ordinary events. For example, developing flu-like symptoms coinciding with the week new neighbors move in might lead to the conclusion, “the new neighbors are poisoning me.” The conclusion is drawn without considering alternative explanations—catching an illness from a relative with the flu, that a virus seems to be going around at work, or that the tuna salad from lunch at the deli may have been spoiled. Additional research shows that persons prone to delusions “read” people differently than non-delusional individuals do. Whether they do so more accurately or particularly poorly is a matter of controversy. Delusional persons develop interpretations about how others view them that are distorted. They tend to view life as a continuing series of threatening events. When these two aspects of thought co-occur, a tendency to develop delusions about others wishing to do them harm is likely.

**MOTIVATED OR DEFENSIVE DELUSIONS.** Some predisposed persons might experience the onset of an ongoing delusional disorder when coping with life and maintaining high self-esteem becomes a significant challenge. In order to preserve a positive view of oneself, a person views others as the cause of personal difficulties that may occur. This can then become an ingrained pattern of thought.

### Symptoms

The criteria that define delusional disorder are furnished in the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, Fourth Edition Text Revision, or **DSM-IV-TR**, published by the American Psychiatric Association. The criteria for delusional disorder are as follows:

- non-bizarre delusions that have been present for at least one month
- absence of obviously odd or bizarre behavior
- absence of hallucinations, or hallucinations that only occur infrequently in comparison to other psychotic disorders
- no memory loss, medical illness or drug or alcohol-related effects are associated with the development of delusions

## Demographics

The base rate of delusional disorder in adults is unclear. The prevalence is estimated at 0.025-0.03%, lower than the rates for schizophrenia (1%). Delusional disorder may account for 1–2% of admissions to inpatient psychiatric hospitals. Age at onset ranges from 18–90 years, with a mean age of 40 years. More females than males (overall) develop delusional disorder, especially the late onset form that is observed in the elderly.

## Diagnosis

Client interviews focused on obtaining information about the individual's life situation and past history aid in identification of delusional disorder. With the client's permission, the clinician obtains details from earlier medical records, and engages in thorough discussion with the client's immediate family—helpful measures in determining whether delusions are present. The clinician may use a semi-structured interview called a mental status examination to assess the patient's concentration, memory, understanding the individual's situation and logical thinking. The mental status examination is intended to reveal peculiar thought processes in the patient. The Peters Delusion Inventory (PDI) is a psychological test that focuses on identifying and understanding delusional thinking; but its use is more common in research than in clinical practice.

Even using the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria, classification of delusional disorder is relatively subjective. The criteria “non-bizarre” and “resistant to change” and “not culturally accepted” are all subject to very individual interpretations. They create variability in how professionals diagnose the illness. The utility of diagnosing the syndrome rather than focusing on successful treatment of delusion in any form of illness is debated in the medical community. Some researchers further contend that delusional disorder, currently classified as a psychotic disorder, is actually a variation of depression and might respond better to **antidepressants** or therapy more similar to that utilized for depression. Also, the meaning and implications of “culturally accepted” can create problems. The cultural relativity of “delusions”—most evident where the beliefs shown are typical of the person's subculture or religion yet would be viewed as strange or delusional by the dominant culture—can force complex choices to be made in diagnosis and treatment. An example could be that of a Haitian immigrant to the United States who believed in voodoo. If that person became aggressive toward

neighbors issuing curses or hexes, believing that death is imminent at the hands of those neighbors, a question arises. The belief is typical of the individual's subculture, so the issue is whether it should be diagnosed or treated. If it were to be treated, whether the remedy should come through Western medicine, or be conducted through voodoo shamanistic treatment is the problem to be solved.

## Treatments

Delusional disorder treatment often involves atypical (also called novel or newer-generation) antipsychotic medications, which can be effective in some patients. **Risperidone** (Risperdal), **quetiapine** (Seroquel), and **olanzapine** (Zyprexa) are all examples of atypical or novel antipsychotic medications. If agitation occurs, a number of different antipsychotics can be used to conclude the outbreak of acute agitation. Agitation, a state of frantic activity experienced concurrently with anger or exaggerated fearfulness, increases the risk that the client will endanger self or others. To decrease **anxiety** and slow behavior in emergency situations where agitation is a factor, an injection of **haloperidol** (Haldol) is often given usually in combination with other medications (often **lorazepam**, also known as Ativan). Agitation in delusional disorder is a typical response to severe or harsh confrontation when dealing with the existence of the delusions. It can also be a result of blocking the individual from performing inappropriate actions the client views as urgent in light of the delusional reality. A novel antipsychotic is generally given orally on a daily basis for ongoing treatment meant for long term effect on the symptoms. Response to antipsychotics in delusional disorder seems to follow the “rule of thirds,” in which about one-third of patients respond somewhat positively, one-third show little change, and one-third worsen or are unable to comply.

Cognitive therapy has shown promise as an emerging treatment for delusions. The cognitive therapist tries to capitalize on any doubt the individual has about the delusions; then attempts to develop a joint effort with the patient to generate alternative explanations, assisting the client in checking the evidence. This examination proceeds in favor of the various explanations. Much of the work is done by use of empathy, asking hypothetical questions in a form of therapeutic Socratic dialogue—a process that follows a basic question and answer format, figuring out what is known and unknown before reaching a logical conclusion. Combining pharmacotherapy with cognitive therapy integrates both treating the possible underlying biological problems and decreasing the symptoms with psychotherapy.

## KEY TERMS

**Hallucinations**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Psychosis or psychotic symptoms**—Disruptions in perceiving reality, thinking logically, and speaking or behaving in normal fashion. Hallucinations, delusions, catatonic behavior and peculiar speech are all symptoms of psychosis. In *DSM-IV-TR*, psychosis is usually one feature of an over-arching disorder, not a disorder in itself (with the exception of the diagnosis psychosis not otherwise specified).

## Prognosis

Evidence collected to date indicates about 10% of cases will show some improvement of delusional symptoms though irrational beliefs may remain; 33–50% may show complete remission; and, in 30–40% of cases there will be persistent non-improving symptoms. The prognosis for clients with delusional disorder is largely related to the level of conviction regarding the delusions and the openness the person has for allowing information that contradicts the delusion.

## Prevention

Little work has been done thus far regarding prevention of the disorder. Effective means of prevention have not been identified.

*See also* Dementia; Depression (with psychotic features); Paranoia; Paranoid personality disorder; Schizoaffective disorder; Schizophrenia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Chadwick, Paul, Max Birchwood, and Peter Trower. *Cognitive Therapy for Delusions, Voices and Paranoia*. Chichester, United Kingdom: Wiley and Sons, 1996.

Fuller, Matthew, and M. Sajatovic. *Drug Information for Mental Health*. Hudson, Ohio: Lexi-comp, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Bentall, Richard P., Rhiannon Corcoran, Robert Howard, Nigel Blackwood, and Peter Kinderman. “Persecutory

delusions: A review and theoretical integration.” *Clinical Psychology Review* 21, no. 8 (2001): 1143–1193.

Garety, Philippa A. and Daniel Freeman. “Cognitive approaches to delusions: A critical review of theories and evidence.” *British Journal of Clinical Psychology* 38 (1999): 113–154.

Haddock, Gillian, Nicholas Tarrier, William Spaulding, Lawrence Yusupoff, Caroline Kinney and Eilis McCarthy. “Individual cognitive therapy in the treatment of hallucinations and delusions: A review.” *Clinical Psychology Review* 18, no. 7 (1998): 821–838.

## ORGANIZATIONS

National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. Telephone: (703) 524-7600. NAMI HelpLine: 1-800-950-NAMI (6264). <<http://www.nami.org>>.

Deborah Rosch Eifert, Ph.D.

## Delusions

### Description

A delusion is a belief that is clearly false and that indicates an abnormality in the affected person's content of thought. The false belief is not accounted for by the person's cultural or religious background or his or her level of intelligence. The key feature of a delusion is the degree to which the person is convinced that the belief is true. A person with a delusion will hold firmly to the belief regardless of evidence to the contrary. Delusions can be difficult to distinguish from overvalued ideas, which are unreasonable ideas that a person holds, but the affected person has at least some level of doubt as to its truthfulness. A person with a delusion is absolutely convinced that the delusion is real.

Delusions are a symptom of either a medical, neurological, or mental disorder. Delusions may be present in any of the following mental disorders:

- psychotic disorders, or disorders in which the affected person has a diminished or distorted sense of reality and cannot distinguish the real from the unreal, including **schizophrenia**, **schizoaffective disorder**, **delusional disorder**, schizopreniform disorder, shared psychotic disorder, brief psychotic disorder, and substance-induced psychotic disorder
- bipolar disorder
- major depressive disorder with psychotic features
- delirium
- **dementia**

Overvalued ideas may be present in **anorexia nervosa**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, **body dysmorphic disorder**, and **hypochondriasis**.

## Types

Delusions are categorized as either bizarre or non-bizarre and as either mood-congruent or mood-incongruent. A bizarre delusion is a delusion that is very strange and completely implausible for the person's culture; an example of a bizarre delusion would be that aliens have removed the affected person's **brain**. A non-bizarre delusion is one whose content is definitely mistaken, but is at least possible; an example may be that the affected person mistakenly believes that he or she is under constant police surveillance. A mood-congruent delusion is any delusion whose content is consistent with either a depressive or manic state; for example, a depressed person may believe that the world is ending, or a person in a manic state (a state in which the person feels compelled to take on new projects, has a lot of energy, and needs little sleep) believes that he or she has special talents or abilities, or is a famous person. A mood-incongruent delusion is any delusion whose content is not consistent with either a depressed or manic state or is mood-neutral. An example is a depressed person who believes that thoughts are being inserted into his or her mind from some outside force, person, or group of people, and these thoughts are not recognized as the person's own thoughts (called "thought insertion").

In addition to these categories, delusions are often categorized according to theme. Although delusions can have any theme, certain themes are more common. Some of the more common delusion themes are:

- **delusion of control.** This is a false belief that another person, group of people, or external force controls one's thoughts, feelings, impulses, or behavior. A person may describe, for instance, the experience that aliens actually make him or her move in certain ways and that the person affected has no control over the bodily movements. Thought broadcasting (the false belief that the affected person's thoughts are heard aloud), thought insertion, and thought withdrawal (the belief that an outside force, person, or group of people is removing or extracting a person's thoughts) are also examples of delusions of control.
- **nihilistic delusion.** A delusion whose theme centers on the nonexistence of self or parts of self, others, or the world. A person with this type of delusion may have the false belief that the world is ending.

- **delusional jealousy (or delusion of infidelity):** A person with this delusion falsely believes that his or her spouse or lover is having an affair. This delusion stems from pathological jealousy and the person often gathers "evidence" and confronts the spouse about the nonexistent affair.
- **delusion of guilt or sin (or delusion of self-accusation):** This is a false feeling of remorse or guilt of delusional intensity. A person may, for example, believe that he or she has committed some horrible crime and should be punished severely. Another example is a person who is convinced that he or she is responsible for some disaster (such as fire, flood, or earthquake) with which there can be no possible connection.
- **delusion of mind being read:** The false belief that other people can know one's thoughts. This is different from thought broadcasting in that the person does not believe that his or her thoughts are heard aloud.
- **delusion of reference:** The person falsely believes that insignificant remarks, events, or objects in one's environment have personal meaning or significance. For instance, a person may believe that he or she is receiving special messages from the news anchorperson on television. Usually the meaning assigned to these events is negative, but the "messages" can also have a grandiose quality.
- **erotomania:** A delusion in which one believes that another person, usually someone of higher status, is in love with him or her. It is common for individuals with this type of delusion to attempt to contact the other person (through phone calls, letters, gifts, and sometimes stalking).
- **grandiose delusion:** An individual exaggerates his or her sense of self-importance and is convinced that he or she has special powers, talents, or abilities. Sometimes, the individual may actually believe that he or she is a famous person (for example, a rock star or Christ). More commonly, a person with this delusion believes he or she has accomplished some great achievement for which he or she has not received sufficient recognition.
- **persecutory delusions:** These are the most common type of delusions and involve the theme of being followed, harassed, cheated, poisoned or drugged, conspired against, spied on, attacked, or obstructed in the pursuit of goals. Sometimes the delusion is isolated and fragmented (e.g., the false belief that co-workers are harassing), but sometimes are well-organized belief systems involving a complex set of delusions ("systematized delusions"). A person with a set of persecutory delusions may believe, for example, that he or she is being followed by government organizations because the "persecuted" person has been falsely identified as a spy. These systems of

## KEY TERMS

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact.

**Overvalued idea**—An unreasonable, sustained belief that is held with less than delusional intensity (i.e., the person can acknowledge, to some degree, that the belief may be false). The belief is not accounted for by the individual's cultural or religious background.

beliefs can be so broad and complex that they can explain everything that happens to the person.

- **religious delusion:** Any delusion with a religious or spiritual content. These may be combined with other delusions, such as grandiose delusions (the belief that the affected person was chosen by God, for example), delusions of control, or delusions of guilt. Beliefs that would be considered normal for an individual's religious or cultural background are not delusions.
- **somatic delusion:** A delusion whose content pertains to bodily functioning, bodily sensations, or physical appearance. Usually the false belief is that the body is somehow diseased, abnormal, or changed. An example of a somatic delusion would be a person who believes that his or her body is infested with parasites.

Delusions of control, nihilistic delusions, and thought broadcasting, thought insertion, and thought withdrawal are usually considered bizarre delusions. Most persecutory, somatic, grandiose, and religious delusions, as well as most delusions of jealousy, delusions of mind being read, and delusions of guilt would be considered non-bizarre.

*See also* Hallucinations.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Kaplan, Harold I., MD, and Benjamin J. Sadock, MD. *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Leeser, Jaimie, and William O'Donohue. "What is a Delusion? Epistemological Dimensions." *Journal of Abnormal Psychology* 108 (1999): 687–94.

Jennifer Hahn, Ph.D.  
Margaret Brantley

## Dementia

### Definition

Dementia is not a specific disorder or disease. It is a syndrome (group of symptoms) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with performing the tasks of daily life. Dementia can occur to anyone at any age from an injury or from oxygen deprivation, although it is most commonly associated with aging. It is the leading cause of institutionalization of older adults.

### Description

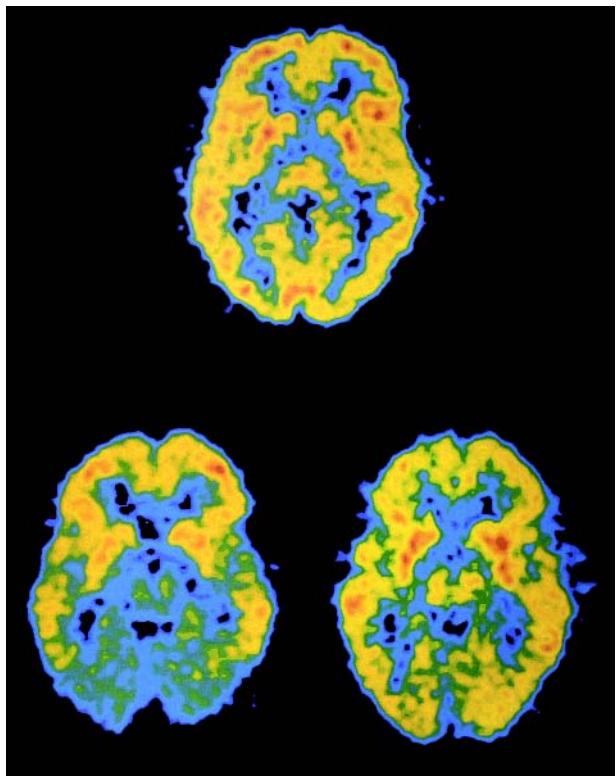
The definition of dementia has become more inclusive over the past several decades. Whereas earlier descriptions of dementia emphasized memory loss, the last three editions of the professional's diagnostic handbook, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (also known as the *DSM*) define dementia as an overall decline in intellectual function, including difficulties with language, simple calculations, planning and judgment, and motor (muscular movement) skills, as well as loss of memory. Although dementia is not caused by aging itself—most researchers regard it as resulting from injuries, infections, **brain** diseases, tumors, or other disorders—it is quite common in older people. The prevalence of dementia increases rapidly with age; it doubles every five years after age 60. Dementia affects only 1% of people aged 60–64 but 30%–50% of those older than 85. About four to five million persons in the United States are affected by dementia as of 2006. Surveys have indicated that dementia is the condition most feared by older adults in the United States.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Dementia can be caused by almost 40 different diseases and conditions, ranging from dietary deficiencies and metabolic disorders to head injuries and inherited diseases. The possible causes of dementia can be categorized as follows:

- **Primary dementia.** These dementias are characterized by damage to or wasting away of the brain tissue itself. They include Alzheimer's disease (AD), frontal lobe dementia (FLD), and Pick's disease. FLD is dementia caused by a disorder (usually genetic) that affects the front portion of the brain, and Pick's disease is a rare type of primary dementia that is characterized by a progressive loss of social skills,



**Three PET scans:** top scan is a normal brain; bottom left scan is of a patient with HIV-induced dementia; bottom right is the same patient following treatment with AZT (azidothymidine). (Medical-on-Line/Alamy)

language, and memory, leading to personality changes and sometimes loss of moral judgment.

- Multi-infarct dementia (MID). Sometimes called vascular dementia, this type is caused by blood clots in the small blood vessels of the brain. When the clots cut off the blood supply to the brain tissue, the brain cells are damaged and may die. (An infarct is an area of dead tissue caused by obstruction of the circulation.)
- Lewy body dementia. Lewy bodies are areas of injury found on damaged nerve cells in certain parts of the brain. They are associated with AD and Parkinson's disease, but researchers do not yet know whether dementia with Lewy bodies is a distinct type of dementia or a variation of AD or Parkinson's disease.
- Dementia related to alcoholism or exposure to heavy metals (arsenic, antimony, bismuth).
- Dementia related to infectious diseases. These infections may be caused by viruses (HIV, viral encephalitis); spirochetes (Lyme disease, syphilis); or prions (Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease). Spirochetes are certain

kinds of bacteria, and prions are protein particles that lack nucleic acid.

- Dementia related to abnormalities in the structure of the brain. These may include a buildup of spinal fluid in the brain (hydrocephalus); tumors; or blood collecting beneath the membrane that covers the brain (subdural hematoma).

Dementia may also be associated with **depression**, low levels of thyroid hormone, or niacin or vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency. Dementia related to these conditions is often reversible.

#### *Genetic factors in dementia*

Genetic factors play a role in several types of dementia, but the importance of these factors in the development of the dementia varies considerably. AD is known, for example, to have an autosomal (non-sex-related) dominant pattern in most early-onset cases as well as in some late-onset cases, and to show different degrees of penetrance (frequency of expression) in late-life cases. Recently, two forms of a gene responsible for recycling the proteins thought to be involved in forming the neuron-destroying amyloid plaques of AD were identified and associated with late-onset disease. Researchers have not yet discovered how the genes associated with dementia interact with other risk factors to produce or trigger the dementia. One non-genetic risk factor presently being investigated is toxic substances in the environment.

**EARLY-ONSET ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE.** In early-onset AD, which accounts for 2%–7% of cases of AD, the symptoms develop before age 60. It is usually caused by an inherited genetic mutation. Early-onset AD is also associated with Down syndrome (trisomy 21), in that persons with trisomy 21 (three forms of human chromosome 21 instead of a pair) often develop early-onset AD. Development of AD in persons with Down syndrome has been traced to the presence of BACE1, which increases under low oxygen conditions in mice. The researchers had investigated the effects of low oxygen because of the relationship between a history of **stroke**, which cuts off oxygen to the brain, and AD.

**LATE-ONSET ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE.** Recent research indicates that late-onset AD is a polygenic disorder; that is, its development is influenced by more than one gene. It has been known since 1993 that a specific form of a gene (the APOE gene) on human chromosome 19 is a genetic risk factor for late-onset AD. In 1998 researchers at the University of Pittsburgh reported on another gene that controls the production of bleomycin hydrolase (BH) as a second genetic risk factor

that acts independently of the APOE gene. In December 2000, three separate research studies reported that a gene on chromosome 10 that may affect the processing of a protein (called amyloid-beta protein) is also involved in the development of late-onset AD. When this protein is not properly broken down, a starchy substance builds up in the brains of people with AD to form the plaques that are characteristic of the disease. The most recent development is the confirmation of the involvement of variant forms of a gene called SORL1. The proteins controlled by this gene are related to the production of amyloid-beta protein. Low levels of the SORL1 protein cause amyloid-beta levels near cells to rise.

**MULTI-INFARCT DEMENTIA (MID).** While the chief risk factors for MID are high blood pressure, advanced age, and male sex, there is an inherited form of MID called CADASIL, which stands for cerebral autosomal dominant arteriopathy with subcortical infarcts and leukoencephalopathy. CADASIL can cause psychiatric disturbances and severe headaches as well as dementia.

**FRONTAL LOBE DEMENTIAS.** Researchers think that between 25% and 50% of cases of frontal lobe dementia involve genetic factors. Pick's dementia appears to have a much smaller genetic component than FLD. It is not yet known what other risk factors combine with inherited traits to influence the development of frontal lobe dementias.

**FAMILIAL BRITISH DEMENTIA (FBD).** FBD is a rare autosomal dominant disorder that was first reported in the 1940s in a large British family extending over nine generations. FBD resembles AD in that the patient develops a progressive dementia related to amyloid deposits in the brain. In 1999, a mutated gene that produces the amyloid responsible for FBD was discovered on human chromosome 13. Studies of this mutation may yield further clues to the development of AD as well as FBD itself.

**CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE.** Although Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease is caused by a prion (a proteinaceous infectious particle consisting only of protein, as opposed to a virus, which consists of protein and nucleic acid, or a virion, which consists of nucleic acid), researchers think that 5%–15% of cases may have a genetic component.

### Symptoms

*DSM-IV-TR* identifies certain symptoms as criteria that must be met for a patient to be diagnosed with dementia. One criterion is significant weakening of the patient's memory with regard to learning new information as well as recalling previously learned information. In addition, the patient must be found to have one or more of the following disturbances:

- aphasia. Aphasia refers to loss of language function. A person with dementia may use vague words like "it" or "thing" often because he or she cannot recall the exact name of an object; the affected person may echo what other people say, or repeat a word or phrase over and over. People in the later stages of dementia may stop speaking at all.
- apraxia. Apraxia refers to loss of the ability to perform intentional movements even though the person is not paralyzed, has not lost the sense of touch, and knows what he or she is trying to do. For example, a patient with apraxia may stop brushing his teeth, or have trouble tying his shoelaces.
- agnosia. Agnosia refers to loss of the ability to recognize objects even though the person's sight and sense of touch are normal. People with severe agnosia may fail to recognize family members or even their own face reflected in a mirror.
- problems with abstract thinking and complex behavior. This criterion refers to the loss of the ability to make plans, carry out the steps of a task in the proper order, make appropriate decisions, evaluate situations, show good judgment, etc. For example, a patient might light a stove burner under a saucepan before putting food or water in the pan, or be unable to record checks and balance a checkbook.

*DSM-IV-TR* also specifies that these disturbances must be severe enough to cause problems in the person's daily life, and that they must represent a decline from a previously higher level of functioning.

In addition to the changes in cognitive functioning, the symptoms of dementia may also include personality changes and emotional instability. Patients with dementia sometimes become mildly paranoid because their loss of short-term memory leads them to think that mislaid items have been stolen. About 25% of patients with dementia develop a significant degree of **paranoia**, that is, generalized suspiciousness or specific **delusions** of persecution. Mood swings, **anxiety**, and irritability or anger are also frequent occurrences, particularly when patients with dementia are in situations that force them to recognize the extent of their impairment.

The following signs and symptoms are used to differentiate among the various types of dementia during a diagnostic evaluation.

**ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE.** Dementia related to AD often progresses slowly; it may be accompanied by

irritability, wide mood swings, and personality changes in the early stage. Many patients, however, retain their normal degree of sociability in the early stages of AD. In second-stage AD, the patient typically gets lost easily, is completely disoriented with regard to time and space, and may become angry, uncooperative, or aggressive. Patients in second-stage AD are at high risk for falls and other accidents. In final-stage AD, the patient is completely bedridden, has lost control over bowel and bladder functions, and may be unable to swallow or eat. The risk of **seizures** increases as the patient progresses from early to end-stage AD. Death usually results from an infection or from malnutrition.

**MULTI-INFARCT DEMENTIA.** In MID, the symptoms are more likely to occur after age 70. In the early stages, the patient retains his or her personality more fully than a patient with AD. Another distinctive feature of this type of dementia is that it often progresses in a stepwise fashion; that is, the patient shows rapid changes in functioning, then remains at a plateau for a while rather than showing a continuous decline. The symptoms of MID may also have a “patchy” quality; that is, some of the patient’s mental functions may be severely affected while others are relatively undamaged. Other symptoms of MID include exaggerated reflexes, an abnormal gait (manner of walking), loss of bladder or bowel control, and inappropriate laughing or crying.

**DEMENTIA WITH LEWY BODIES.** This type of dementia may combine some features of AD, such as severe memory loss and confusion, with certain symptoms associated with Parkinson’s disease, including stiff muscles, a shuffling gait, and trembling or shaking of the hands. Visual **hallucinations** may be one of the first symptoms of dementia with Lewy bodies.

**FRONTAL LOBE DEMENTIAS.** The frontal lobe dementias are gradual in onset. Pick’s dementia is most likely to develop in persons between 40 and 60, while FLD typically begins before the age of 65. The first symptoms of the frontal lobe dementias often include socially inappropriate behavior (rude remarks, sexual acting-out, disregard of personal hygiene, etc.). Patients are also often obsessed with eating and may put non-food items in their mouths or make frequent sucking or smacking noises. In the later stages of frontal lobe dementia or Pick’s disease, the patient may develop muscle weakness, twitching, and delusions or hallucinations.

**CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE.** The dementia associated with Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease occurs most often in persons between 40 and 60. It is typically preceded by a period of several weeks in which the patient complains of unusual fatigue, anxiety, loss of

appetite, or difficulty concentrating. This type of dementia also usually progresses much more rapidly than other dementias, resulting in the death of the affected person within a few months to one year.

## Demographics

The demographic distribution of dementia varies somewhat according to its cause. Moreover, recent research indicates that dementia in many patients has overlapping causes, so that it is not always easy to assess the true rates of occurrence of the different types. For example, AD and MID are found together in about 15%–20% of cases.

### *Alzheimer’s disease*

AD is by far the most common cause of dementia in the elderly, accounting for 60%–80% of cases. It is estimated that four million adults in the United States have AD. The disease strikes women more often than men, but researchers do not know yet whether the sex ratio simply reflects the fact that women in developed countries tend to live longer than men, or whether female sex is itself a risk factor for AD. One well-known long-term study of Alzheimer’s in women is the Nun Study, begun in 1986 and presently conducted at the University of Kentucky. The researchers have identified numerous relationships between factors from early, mid-, and late life and the risk of AD.

### *Multi-infarct dementia*

MID is responsible for between 15% and 20% of cases of dementia (not counting cases in which it coexists with AD). Unlike AD, MID is more common in men than in women. Diabetes, high blood pressure, a history of smoking, and heart disease are all risk factors for MID. Researchers in Sweden have suggested that MID is underdiagnosed, and may coexist with other dementias more frequently than is presently recognized.

### *Dementia with Lewy bodies*

Dementia with Lewy bodies is now thought to be the second most common form of dementia after AD. But because researchers do not completely understand the relationship between Lewy bodies, AD, and Parkinson’s disease, the demographic distribution of this type of dementia is also unclear.

### *Other dementias*

FLD, Pick’s disease, Huntington’s disease, Parkinson’s disease, HIV infection, alcoholism, head trauma,

etc. account for about 10% of all cases of dementia. In FLD and Pick's dementia, women appear to be affected slightly more often than men.

## Diagnosis

In some cases, a patient's primary physician may be able to diagnose the dementia; in many instances, however, the patient will be referred to a neurologist or a gerontologist (specialist in medical care of the elderly). Distinguishing one disorder from other similar disorders is a process called differential **diagnosis**. The differential diagnosis of dementia is complicated because of the number of possible causes; because more than one cause may be present at the same time; and because dementia can coexist with such other conditions as depression and **delirium**. Delirium is a temporary disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, restlessness, inability to focus one's attention, hallucinations, or delusions. In elderly people, delirium is frequently a side effect of surgery, medications, infectious illnesses, or dehydration. Delirium can be distinguished from dementia by the fact that delirium usually comes on fairly suddenly (in a few hours or days) and may vary in severity—it is often worse at night. Dementia develops much more slowly, over a period of months or years, and the patient's symptoms are relatively stable. It is possible for a person to have delirium and dementia at the same time.

Another significant diagnostic distinction in elderly patients is the distinction between dementia and age-associated memory impairment (AAMI), which is sometimes called benign senescent forgetfulness. Older people with AAMI have a mild degree of memory loss; they do not learn new information as quickly as younger people, and they may take longer to recall a certain fact or to balance their checkbook. But they do not experience the degree of memory impairment that characterizes dementia, and they do not get progressively worse.

### Clinical interview

In making a diagnosis, the doctor will begin by taking a full history, including the patient's occupation and educational level as well as medical history. The occupational and educational history allows the examiner to make a more accurate assessment of the extent of the patient's memory loss and intellectual decline. In some cases, the occupational history may indicate exposure to heavy metals or other toxins. A complete medical history allows the doctor to assess such possibilities as delirium, depression, alcohol-related dementia, dementia related to head injury, or dementia caused by infection. It is particularly

important for the doctor to have a list of all the patient's medications, including over-the-counter and alternative herbal preparations, because of the possibility that the patient's symptoms are related to side effects of these substances.

Whenever possible, the examiner will consult the patient's family members or close friends as part of the history-taking process. In many cases, friends and relatives can provide more detailed information about the patient's memory problems and loss of function.

### Mental status examination

A mental status examination (MSE) evaluates the patient's ability to communicate, follow instructions, recall information, perform simple tasks involving movement and coordination. The MSE also gives information about the patient's emotional state and general sense of space and time. The MSE includes the doctor's informal evaluation of the patient's appearance, vocal tone, facial expressions, posture, and gait as well as formal questions or instructions. A common form that has been used since 1975 is the so-called Folstein Mini-Mental Status Examination, or MMSE. Questions that are relevant to diagnosing dementia include asking the patient: to count backward from 100 by 7s, to make change, to name the current President of the United States, to repeat a short phrase after the examiner (e.g., "no ifs, ands, or buts"); to draw a clock face or geometric figure, and to follow a set of instructions involving movement (e.g., "Show me how to throw a ball" or "Fold this piece of paper and place it under the lamp on the bookshelf.") The examiner may test the patient's abstract reasoning ability by asking him or her to explain a familiar proverb (e.g., "People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones") or test the patient's judgment by asking about a problem with a common-sense solution, such as what one does when a prescription runs out.

### Neurological examination

A neurological examination includes an evaluation of the patient's cranial nerves and reflexes. The cranial nerves govern the ability to speak as well as sight, hearing, taste, and smell. The patient will be asked to stick out her tongue, follow the examiner's finger with her eyes, raise her eyebrows, etc. The patient is also asked to perform certain actions (e.g., touching the nose with the eyes closed) that test coordination and spatial orientation. The doctor will usually touch or tap certain areas of the body, such as the knee or the sole of the foot, to test the patient's reflexes. Failure to respond to the touch or tap may indicate damage to certain parts of the brain.

## Laboratory tests

Blood and urine samples may be collected in order to rule out such conditions as thyroid deficiency, niacin or vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency, heavy metal poisoning, liver disease, HIV infection, syphilis, anemia, medication reactions, or kidney failure. A lumbar puncture (spinal tap) may be done to rule out neurosyphilis.

## Diagnostic imaging

The patient may be given a **computed tomography** (CT) scan or **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) to detect evidence of strokes, disintegration of the brain tissue in certain areas, blood clots or tumors, a buildup of spinal fluid, or bleeding into the brain tissue. Positron-emission tomography (PET) or single-emission computed tomography (SPECT) imaging is not used routinely to diagnose dementia, but may be used to rule out AD or frontal lobe degeneration if a patient's CT scan or MRI is unrevealing.

## Treatments

### Reversible and responsive dementias

Some types of dementia are reversible, and a few types respond to specific treatments related to their causes. Dementia related to dietary deficiencies or metabolic disorders is treated with the appropriate vitamins or thyroid medication. Dementia related to HIV infection often responds well to zidovudine (Retrovir), a drug given to prevent the AIDS virus from replicating. Multi-infarct dementia is usually treated by controlling the patient's blood pressure and/or diabetes; while treatments for these disorders cannot undo damage already caused to brain tissue, they can slow the progress of the dementia. Patients with alcohol-related dementia often improve over the long term if they are able to stop drinking. Dementias related to head injuries, hydrocephalus, and tumors are treated by surgery.

It is important to evaluate and treat elderly patients for depression, because the symptoms of depression in older people often mimic dementia. This condition is sometimes called pseudodementia. In addition, patients who have both depression and dementia often show some improvement in intellectual functioning when the depression is treated. The medications most often used for depression related to dementia are the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** **paroxetine** and **sertraline**. The mental status examination should be repeated after 6–12 weeks of antidepressant medication.

## Irreversible dementias

As of 2006, there were no medications or surgical techniques that can cure AD, the frontal lobe dementias, MID, or dementia with Lewy bodies. There are also no "magic bullets" that can slow or stop the progression of these dementias. There are, however, several medications that are used to slow cognitive deterioration in AD. Four of these medications are cholinesterase inhibitors, which increase levels of acetylcholine in the brain, and these medications are effective in some people who have mild or moderate AD. Acetylcholine is a neurotransmitter (nerve signaling molecule) that facilitates communication among neurons. Another type of drug is the NMDA receptor antagonist **memantine** (available in the U.S. under the trade name Namenda), which may help stabilize memory in people with moderate to severe AD.

In April 2005, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issued a public health advisory regarding unapproved, "off-label" use of certain antipsychotic drugs that were approved for treatment of **schizophrenia** and mania. Clinical studies showed that use of these atypical antipsychotic medications in elderly patients with dementia to treat behavioral disorders is associated with increased mortality.

Patients may be given medications to ease the depression, anxiety, sleep disturbances, and other behavioral symptoms that accompany dementia, but most physicians prescribe relatively mild dosages in order to minimize the troublesome side effects of these drugs. Dementia with Lewy bodies appears to respond better to treatment with the newer antipsychotic medications than to treatment with such older drugs as **haloperidol** (Haldol).

Patients in the early stages of dementia can often remain at home with some help from family members or other caregivers, especially if the house or apartment can be fitted with safety features (handrails, good lighting, locks for cabinets containing potentially dangerous products, nonslip treads on stairs, etc.). Patients in the later stages of dementia, however, usually require skilled care in a nursing home or hospital.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for reversible dementia related to nutritional or thyroid problems is usually good once the cause has been identified and treated. The prognoses for dementias related to alcoholism or HIV infection depend on the patient's age and the severity of the underlying disorder.

The prognosis for the irreversible dementias is gradual deterioration of the patient's functioning

## KEY TERMS

**Age-associated memory impairment (AAMI)**—A condition in which an older person has some memory loss and takes longer to learn new information. AAMI is distinguished from dementia in that it is not progressive and does not represent a serious decline from the person's previous level of functioning. Benign senescent forgetfulness is another term for AAMI.

**Agnosia**—Loss of the ability to recognize familiar people, places, and objects.

**Amyloid**—A waxy translucent substance composed mostly of protein, that forms plaques (abnormal deposits) in the brain during the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

**Aphasia**—Loss of previously acquired ability to understand or use written or spoken language, due to brain damage or deterioration.

**Apraxia**—Inability to perform purposeful movements that is not caused by paralysis or loss of feeling.

**Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease**—A degenerative disease of the central nervous system caused by a prion, or "slow virus."

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness. It can be distinguished from dementia by its relatively sudden onset and variation in the severity of the symptoms.

**Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**—A handbook for mental health professionals that includes lists of symptoms that indicate different mental disorders.

**Frontal lobe dementia**—Dementia caused by a disorder, usually genetic, that affects the front portion of the brain.

**Hematoma**—An accumulation of blood, often clotted, in a body tissue or organ, usually caused by a break or tear in a blood vessel.

**Huntington's disease**—A hereditary disorder that appears in middle age and is characterized by gradual brain deterioration, progressive dementia, and loss of voluntary movement. It is sometimes called Huntington's chorea.

**Hydrocephalus**—The accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the ventricles of the brain.

**Lewy bodies**—Areas of injury found on damaged nerve cells in certain parts of the brain associated with dementia.

**Multi-infarct dementia**—Dementia caused by damage to brain tissue resulting from a series of blood clots or clogs in the blood vessels. It is also called vascular dementia.

**Parkinson's disease**—A disease of the nervous system most common in people over 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness. It may be related in some way to Lewy body dementia.

**Pick's disease**—A rare type of primary dementia that affects the frontal lobes of the brain. It is characterized by a progressive loss of social skills, language, and memory, leading to personality changes and sometimes loss of moral judgment.

**Prion**—A protein particle that lacks nucleic acid.

**Pseudodementia**—A term for a depression with symptoms resembling those of dementia. The term "dementia of depression" is now preferred.

ending in death. The length of time varies somewhat. Patients with AD may live 2–20 years with the disease, with an average of seven years. Patients with frontal lobe dementia or Pick's disease live on average 5–10 years after diagnosis. The course of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease is much more rapid, with patients living 5–12 months after diagnosis.

### Prevention

The reversible dementias related to thyroid and nutritional disorders can be prevented in many cases by regular physical checkups and proper attention to diet. Dementias related to toxic substances in the

workplace may be prevented by careful monitoring of the work environment and by substituting less hazardous materials or substances in manufacturing processes. Dementias caused by infectious diseases are theoretically preventable by avoiding exposure to the prion, spirochete, or other disease agent. Multi-infarct dementia may be preventable in some patients by attention to diet and monitoring of blood pressure. Dementias caused by abnormalities in the structure of the brain are not preventable as of 2006.

With regard to genetic factors, tests are now available for the APOE gene implicated in late-onset AD, but these tests are used primarily in research instead of

clinical practice. One reason is that the test results are not conclusive; about 20% of people who eventually develop AD do not carry this gene. Another important reason is the ethical implications of testing for a disease that presently has no cure. These considerations may change, however, if researchers discover better treatments for primary dementia, more effective preventive methods, or more reliable genetic markers.

*See also* Respite care.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- “Dementia.” *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, M.D., and Robert Berkow, M.D. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Lyon, Jeff, and Peter Gorner. *Altered Fates: Gene Therapy and the Retooling of Human Life*. New York and London: W. W. Norton & Co., Inc., 1996.
- Marcantonio, Edward, M.D. “Dementia.” Chapter 40 in *The Merck Manual of Geriatrics*, edited by Mark H. Beers, M.D., and Robert Berkow, M.D. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2000.
- Morris, Virginia. *How to Care for Aging Parents*. New York: Workman Publishing, 1996.

### PERIODICALS

- “Alzheimer’s Disease: Recent Progress and Prospects.” *Harvard Mental Health Letter (Parts 1, 2, and 3)* 18 (October–December 2001).
- Rogaeva, Ekaterina, et al. “The neuronal sortilin-related receptor SORL1 is genetically associated with Alzheimer disease.” *Nature Genetics Advance online publication*; doi:10.1038/ng1943.
- Sun, Xiulian, Guiqiong He, Hong Qing, Zhou Wiehui, Frederick Dobie, Cai Fang, Matthias Staufenbiel, L. Eric Huang, and Weihong Song. “Hypoxia facilitates Alzheimer’s disease pathogenesis by up-regulating BACE1 gene expression.” *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* 103 (2006): 18727-18732.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Alzheimer’s Association. 919 North Michigan Avenue, Suite 1000, Chicago, IL 60611. Toll Free: (800) 272-3900.
- Alzheimer’s Disease International. 45/46 Lower Marsh, London SE1 7RG, United Kingdom. Telephone: (+44 20) 7620 3011. E-mail: adi@alz.co.uk. <[www.alz.co.uk](http://www.alz.co.uk)>.
- National Family Caregivers Association. 10400 Connecticut Avenue, Suite 500, Kensington, MD, 20895-3944. Toll Free: (800) 896-3650. Telephone: (301)942-6430. Fax: (301) 942-2302. Website: <<http://www.nfcacares.org/>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS). Building 31, Room 8A06, 9000 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892. Telephone: (301) 496-5751. <[www.ninds.nih.gov](http://www.ninds.nih.gov)>.

National Institute on Aging Information Center. P.O. Box 8057, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. Telephone: (800) 222-2225 or (301) 496-1752.

National Organization for Rare Disorders (NORD). P. O. Box 8923, New Fairfield, CT 06812. Telephone: (800) 447-6673 or (203) 746-6518.

### OTHER

Alzheimer’s Disease Education and Referral (ADEAR). <[www.alzheimers.org](http://www.alzheimers.org)>.

The Nun Study. <[www.coa.uky.edu/nunnet](http://www.coa.uky.edu/nunnet)>.

National Library of Medicine. “Dementia.” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/dementia.html>> (accessed January 16, 2007).

National Guideline Clearinghouse. <<http://www.guideline.gov>> (accessed January 16, 2007).

Rebecca Frey, Ph.D.

Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

Dementia of the Alzheimer’s type see  
**Alzheimer’s disease**

## Denial

### Definition

Denial is refusal to acknowledge the existence or severity of unpleasant external realities or internal thoughts and feelings.

### Theory of denial

In psychology, denial is a concept originating with the psycho dynamic theories of Sigmund Freud. According to Freud, three mental dynamics, or motivating forces, influence human behavior: the id, ego, and superego. The id consists of basic survival instincts and what Freud believed to be the two dominant human drives: sex and aggression. If the id were the only influence on behavior, humans would exclusively seek to increase pleasure, decrease pain, and achieve immediate gratification of desires. The ego consists of logical and rational thinking. It enables humans to analyze the realistic risks and benefits of a situation, to tolerate some pain for future profit, and to consider alternatives to the impulse-driven behavior of the id. The superego consists of moralistic standards and forms the basis of the conscience. Although the superego is essential to a sense of right and wrong,

it can also include extreme, unrealistic ideas about what one should and should not do.

These three forces all have different goals (id, pleasure; ego, reality; superego, morality) and continually strive for dominance, resulting in internal conflict. This conflict produces **anxiety**. The ego, which functions as a mediator between the two extremes of the id and the superego, attempts to reduce this anxiety by using defense mechanisms. Defense mechanisms are indirect ways of dealing or coping with anxiety, such as explaining problems away or blaming others for problems. Denial is one of many defense mechanisms. It entails ignoring or refusing to believe an unpleasant reality. Defense mechanisms protect one's psychological well-being in traumatic situations, or in any situation that produces anxiety or conflict. However, they do not resolve the anxiety-producing situation and, if overused, can lead to psychological disorders. Although Freud's model of the id, ego, and superego is not emphasized by most psychologists today, defense mechanisms are still regarded as potentially maladaptive behavioral patterns that may lead to psychological disorders.

### Examples of denial

Death is a common occasion for denial. When someone learns of the sudden, unexpected death of a loved one, at first he or she may not be able to accept the reality of this loss. The initial denial protects that person from the emotional shock and intense **grief** that often accompanies news of death. Chronic or terminal illnesses also encourage denial. People with such illnesses may think, "It's not so bad; I'll get over it," and refuse to make any lifestyle changes.

Denial can also apply to internal thoughts and feelings. For instance, some children are taught that anger is wrong in any situation. As adults, if these individuals experience feelings of anger, they are likely to deny their feelings to others. Cultural standards and expectations can encourage denial of subjective experience. Men who belong to cultures with extreme notions of masculinity may view fear as a sign of weakness and deny internal feelings of fear. The Chinese culture is thought to discourage the acknowledgment of mental illness, resulting in individuals denying their psychological symptoms and often developing physical symptoms instead.

Certain **personality disorders** tend to be characterized by denial more than others. For example, those with **narcissistic personality disorder** deny information that suggests they are not perfect. Antisocial

behavior is characterized by denial of the harm done to others (such as with sexual offenders or substance abusers).

Denial can also be exhibited on a large scale—among groups, cultures, or even nations. Lucy Bregman gives an example of national denial of imminent mortality in the 1950s: school children participated in drills where they hid under desks in preparation for atomic attacks. Another example of large-scale denial is the recent assertion by some that the World War II Holocaust never occurred.

### Treatment of denial

Denial is treated differently in different types of therapy. In psychoanalytic therapy, denial is regarded as an obstacle to progress that must eventually be confronted and interpreted. Timing is important, however. Psychoanalytic therapists wait until clients appear emotionally ready or have some degree of insight into their problems before confronting them. In the humanistic and existential therapies, denial is considered the framework by which clients understand their world. Not directly confronting denial, therapists assist clients in exploring their world view and considering alternative ways of being. In cognitive-behavioral therapies, denial is not regarded as an important phenomenon. Rather, denial would suggest that an individual has not learned the appropriate behaviors to cope with a stressful situation. Therapists assist individuals in examining their current thoughts and behaviors and devising strategic ways to make changes.

Traditional treatment programs for **substance abuse** and other addictions view denial as a central theme. Such programs teach that in order to overcome **addiction**, one must admit to being an alcoholic or addict. Those who are unable to accept such labels are informed they are in denial. Even when the labels are accepted, individuals are still considered to be in denial if they do not acknowledge the severity of their addictions. From this perspective, progress cannot be made until individuals recognize the extent of their denial and work toward acceptance. However, there is much controversy in the field of addictions regarding the role of denial and how it should be addressed. Traditional programs such as these stress direct confrontation. Other professionals do not insist on the acceptance of labels. They believe that denial should be worked through more subtly, empathically focusing on the personal reasons surrounding denial and seeking to strengthen

## KEY TERMS

**Antisocial behavior**—Behavior characterized by high levels of anger, aggression, manipulation, or violence.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapies**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**Defense mechanisms**—Indirect strategies used to reduce anxiety rather than directly facing the issues causing the anxiety.

**Dependent personality disorder**—Personality disorder characterized by a constant, unhealthy need to be liked and appreciated by others at all costs.

**Ego**—In Freudian psychology, the conscious, rational part of the mind that experiences and reacts to the outside world.

**Humanistic and existential therapies**—Therapies that focus on achieving one's full potential, guided by subjective experience.

**Id**—A construct in Freudian psycho dynamic theory that represents the irrational, self-centered aspects of human thought.

**Motivational enhancement therapy**—Therapy that focuses on increasing motivation for change by empathically comparing and contrasting the consequences and benefits of changing or not changing.

**Narcissistic personality disorder**—Personality characterized by continually exaggerating one's own positive qualities and refusing to recognize personal defects or flaws.

**Psychoanalytic therapy**—Therapy based on the psycho dynamic theory of Sigmund Freud.

**Psychodynamic**—Referring to the motivational forces, unconscious as well as conscious, that form human attitudes and behavior.

**Superego**—According to Freud, the part of the mind that represents traditional parental and societal values. The superego is the source of guilt feelings.

the desire to change. This subtle form of addressing denial is known as motivational enhancement therapy, and can be used with other types of disorders as well.

*See also* Grief; Psychoanalysis; Psychodynamic psychotherapy; Substance abuse and related disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Bregman, Lucy. *Beyond Silence and Denial: Death and Dying Reconsidered*. Louisville, Kentucky: Westminster John Knox Press, 1999.

Millon, Theodore, and Roger Davis. *Personality Disorders in Modern Life*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Cramer, Phebe, and Melissa A. Brilliant. "Defense Use and Defense Understanding in Children." *Journal of Personality* 69, no. 2 (2001): 297–322.

Parker, Gordon, Gemma Gladstone, and Kuan Tsee Chee. "Depression in the Planet's Largest Ethnic Group: The Chinese." *American Journal Of Psychiatry* 158, no. 6 (2001): 857–864.

Schneider, Sandra L., and Robert C. Wright. "The FoSOD: A Measurement Tool for Reconceptualizing the Role of Denial in Child Molesters." *Journal of Interpersonal Violence* 16, no. 6 (2001): 545–564.

### ORGANIZATIONS

The American Psychoanalytic Association. 309 East 49th Street, New York, New York 10017. Telephone: (212) 752-0450. <<http://www.aapsa.org>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

Depakene see **Valproic acid**

Depakote see **Divalproex sodium**

## Dependent personality disorder

### Definition

Dependent personality disorder is characterized by an excessive need to be taken care of or to depend upon others. Persons with this disorder are typically submissive and display clinging behavior toward those they from whom they fear separation.

Dependent personality disorder is one of several **personality disorders** listed in the newest edition of the standard reference guide: the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, the fourth edition, text revision, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*.

### Description

Persons with dependent personality disorder are docile, passive, and nonassertive. They exert a great deal of energy to please others, are self-sacrificing, and constantly attempt to elicit the approval of others. They are reluctant to express disagreement with others

and are often willing to go to abnormal lengths to win the approval of those on whom they rely. They are readily influenced and can be taken advantage of easily. This **compliance** and reliance upon others leads to a subtle message that someone should assume responsibility for significant areas of the patient's life. This is often displayed as helplessness, even for completion of seemingly simple tasks.

Patients with dependent personality disorder have a low level of confidence in their own intelligence and abilities. They often have difficulty making decisions and undertaking projects on their own. They are prone to be pessimistic and self-doubting, and to belittle their own accomplishments. They shy away from responsibility in occupational settings.

Affected individuals are uneasy being alone and are preoccupied with the fear of being abandoned or rejected by others. Their moods are characterized by frequent bouts of **anxiety** or fearfulness; generally, their demeanor is sad. Their style of thinking is naïve, uncritical, and lacks discretion.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

It is commonly thought that the development of dependency in these individuals is a result of overinvolvement and intrusive behavior by their primary caretakers. Caretakers may foster dependence in the child to meet their own dependency needs and may reward extreme loyalty but reject attempts the child makes towards independence. Families of those with dependent personality disorder often do not express their emotions and controlling; they demonstrate poorly defined relational roles within the family unit.

Individuals with dependent personality disorder often have been socially humiliated by others in their developmental years. They may carry significant doubts about their abilities to perform tasks, to take on new responsibilities, and generally to function independently of others. This reinforces their suspicions that they are incapable of living autonomously. In response to these feelings, they portray helplessness in order to elicit caregiving behavior from some people in their lives.

### Symptoms

The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies eight diagnostic criteria for dependent personality disorder. Individuals with this disorder:

- have difficulty making common decisions. These individuals typically need an excessive amount of advice and reassurance before they can make even

simple decisions, such as the clothing to wear on a given day.

- need others to assume responsibility for them. Because they view themselves as incapable of being autonomous, they withdraw from adult responsibilities by acting passive and helpless. They allow others to take the initiative for many areas of their life. Adults with this disorder typically depend on a parent or spouse to make major decisions for them, such as where to work or live, or with whom to be friends.
- have difficulty expressing disagreement with others. Disagreeing with others is often viewed as too risky. It might sever the support or approval of those they upon whom they depend. They are often overly agreeable because they fear alienating other people.
- have difficulty initiating or doing things on their own. They lack self-confidence and believe they need help to begin or sustain tasks. They often present themselves as inept and unable to understand or accomplish the task at hand.
- go to excessive lengths to obtain support or nurturing from others. They may even volunteer to do unpleasant tasks if they believe that doing so will evoke a positive response from others. They may subject themselves to great personal sacrifice or tolerate physical, verbal, or sexual abuse in their quest to get what they believe they need from others.
- feel helpless when alone. Because they feel incapable of caring for themselves, they experience significant anxiety when alone. To avoid being alone, they may be with people in whom they have little interest.
- quickly seek a new relationship when a previous one ends. When a marriage, dating, or other close relationship ends, there is typically an urgency to find a new relationship that will provide the support of the former relationship.
- are preoccupied with fears of being left to take care of themselves. Their greatest fear is to be left alone and to be responsible for themselves. Even as adults, their dependence upon others may appear childlike.

## Demographics

Dependent personality disorder should rarely, if ever, be diagnosed in children or adolescents because of their inherent dependence on others resulting from their age and developmental limitations.

## Diagnosis

Age and cultural factors should be considered in diagnosing dependent personality disorder. Certain cultural norms suggest a submissive, polite, or dependent posture in relating to the opposite sex or authority

figures. Dependent personality disorder should only be diagnosed when it meets the above criteria and is clearly outside one's cultural norms.

The **diagnosis** of dependent personality disorder is based on a clinical interview to assess symptomatic behavior. Other assessment tools helpful in confirming the diagnosis of dependent personality disorder include:

- The Dependent Personality Questionnaire
- Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI-2)
- Millon Clinical Multi-axial Inventory (MCMI-II)
- Rorschach Psychodiagnostic Test
- Thematic Appreception Test (TAT)

For a person to be diagnosed with dependent personality disorder, at least five of the eight symptoms described must be the present, and these symptoms must begin by early adulthood and be evident in a variety of contexts.

The diagnosis of dependent personality disorder must be distinguished from **borderline personality disorder**, since there are common characteristics. Borderline personality disorder is characterized by fear of abandonment, as well, but with feelings of emptiness and rage. In contrast, the dependent personality responds to this fear of abandonment with submissiveness and searches for a replacement relationship to maintain dependency.

Likewise, persons with histrionic personality disorder have a strong need for reassurance and approval and may appear childlike in their clinging behavior. Histrionics are characterized by a gregarious demeanor and make active demands for attention, while dependents respond with docile and self-deprecating behavior.

The **avoidant personality disorder** can also be confused with dependent personality disorder. Both are characterized by feelings of inadequacy, oversensitivity to criticism, and a frequent need for assurance. However, these patients typically have such an intense fear of rejection that they will instinctively withdraw until they are certain of acceptance. Dependents, in contrast, actually seek out contact with others because they need the approval of others.

## Treatments

The general goal of treatment of dependent personality disorder is to increase the individual's sense of autonomy and ability to function independently.

### *Psychodynamically oriented therapies*

A long-term approach to psychodynamic treatment can be successful, but may lead to heightened dependencies and difficult separation in the therapeutic relationship over time. The preferred approach is a time-limited treatment plan consisting of a predetermined number of sessions. This has been proved to facilitate the exploration process of dependency issues more effectively than long-term therapy in most patients.

### *Cognitive-behavioral therapy*

Cognitive-behavioral approaches attempt to increase the affected person's ability to act independently of others, improve their self-esteem, and enhance the quality of their interpersonal relationships. Often, patients will play an active role in setting goals. Methods often used in **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) include assertiveness and **social skills training** to help reduce reliance on others, including the therapist.

### *Interpersonal therapy*

Treatment using an interpersonal approach can be useful because the individual is usually receptive to treatment and seeks help with interpersonal relationships. The therapist would help the patient explore their long-standing patterns of interacting with others, and understand how these have contributed to dependency issues. The goal is to show the patient the high price they pay for this dependency, and to help them develop healthier alternatives. **Assertiveness training** and learning to identify feelings is often used to heighten improve interpersonal behavior.

### *Group therapy*

When a person is highly motivated to see growth, a more interactive therapeutic group can be successful in helping the him/her to explore passive-dependent behavior. If the individual is socially reluctant or impaired in his/her assertiveness, decision making, or negotiation, a supportive decision-making group would be more appropriate. Time-limited assertiveness-training groups with clearly defined goals have been proven to be effective.

### *Family and marital therapy*

Individuals with dependent personality disorder are usually brought to therapy by their parents. They are often young adults who are struggling with neurotic or psychotic symptoms. The goal of **family therapy** is often to untangle the enmeshed family relationships, which usually elicits considerable resistance by most family members unless all are in therapy.

## KEY TERMS

**Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory (MCMI-II)**—

A self-report instrument designed to help the clinician assess *DSM-IV*-related personality disorders and clinical syndromes. It provides insight into 14 personality disorders and 10 clinical syndromes.

**Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI-2)**—A comprehensive assessment tool widely used to diagnosed personality disorders.

**Rorschach Psychodiagnostic Test**—This series of 10 “ink blot” images allows the patient to project their interpretations which can be used to diagnosed particular disorders.

**Thematic Apperception Test (TAT)**—A projective test using stories and descriptions of pictures to reveal some of the dominant drives, emotions, sentiments, conflicts, and complexes of a personality.

Marital therapy can be productive in helping couples reduce the anxiety of both partners, who seek and meet dependency needs that arise in the relationship.

### Medications

Individuals with dependent personality disorder can experience anxiety and **depressive disorders** as well. In these cases, it may occasionally prove useful to use **antidepressants** or antianxiety agents. Unless the anxiety or **depression** is considered worthy of a primary diagnosis, medications are generally not recommended for treatment of the dependency issues or the anxiety or depressive responses. Persons with dependent personality disorder may become overly dependent on any medication used.

### Prognosis

The general prognosis for individuals with dependent personality disorder is good. Most dependents have had a supportive relationship with at least one parent. This enables them to engage in treatment to varying degrees and to explore the source of their dependent behavior. If persons who enter treatment can learn to become more autonomous, improved functioning can be expected.

### Prevention

Because dependent personality disorder originates in the patient’s family, the only known preventive

measure is a nurturing, emotionally stimulating, and expressive caregiving environment.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Beers, Mark H., MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. 17th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999. Also available updated (2005) online at: <<http://www.merck.com/mmpe/index.html>>

Millon, Theodore, PhD, D.Sc. *Disorders of Personality: DSM IV and Beyond*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1996.

Sperry, Len, MD, PhD. *Handbook of Diagnosis and Treatment of DSM-IV Personality Disorders*. New York: Brunner/Mazel, 1995.

### PERIODICALS

Tyrer, P., J. Morgan, and D. Cicchetti. “The Dependent Personality Questionnaire (DPQ): A Screening Instrument for Dependent Personality.” *International Journal of Social Psychiatry* 50 (2004): 10–17.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

International Society for the Study of Personality Disorders. *Journal of Personality Disorders* Guilford Publications, 72 Spring Street, New York, NY 10012. Telephone: (800) 365-7006. <<http://www.guilford.com>>.

### OTHER

National Library of Medicine, National Institutes of Health. “Dependent Personality Disorder.” (2005) Web site: <<http://medlineplus.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000941.htm>>.

Gary Gilles, MA  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Depersonalization

### Definition

Depersonalization is a mental state in which people feel detached or disconnected from their personal identities or selves. This may include the sense that one is “outside” oneself, or is observing one’s own actions, thoughts, or body.

## Description

People experiencing depersonalization may feel so detached that they feel more like robots than human beings. However, such people always are aware that this is just a feeling; there is no delusion that one is a lifeless robot or that one has no personal identity. The sense of detachment that characterizes the state may result in mood shifts, difficulty thinking, and loss of some sensations—a state that can be described as numbness or sensory anesthesia.

Depersonalization can also occur transiently in people in many different stress-inducing situations, including sleep deprivation, test taking, or being in a traffic accident. The feeling of detachment also can arise as a result of anesthesia or from using nitrous oxide. In addition, people experience depersonalization in different ways. People may feel like they are floating on the ceiling, watching themselves, or as though they are in a dream. Individuals with depersonalization may feel that events and the environment are unreal or strange, a state called derealization. Derealization, a **dissociation** symptom, differs from depersonalization in that it is the environment that seems unreal or dreamlike.

Episodes of depersonalization can last from a few seconds to years. The frequency may increase after traumatic events such as exposure to combat, accidents, or other forms of violence or **stress**. Treatment depends on the context of the depersonalization episode or episodes.

Depersonalization can be a symptom of other disorders, including **panic disorder**, **borderline personality disorder**, **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), **acute stress disorder**, or one of several **dissociative disorders**, including depersonalization disorders. A person will not be diagnosed with **depersonalization disorder** as the primary problem if the episodes of depersonalization occur only during panic attacks or following a traumatic stressor.

Depersonalization is a common experience in the general adult population, although twice as many women as men receive treatment for it. However, when a patient's symptoms are severe enough to cause significant emotional distress or to interfere with normal functioning, they may meet the criteria of the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, fourth edition, text revision (the *DSM-IV-TR*) for "depersonalization disorder."

*See also* Acute stress disorder; Dissociation and dissociative disorders; Post-traumatic stress disorder; Schizophrenia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

"Depersonalization Disorder." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, eds. Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Sec. 15, Chap. 188. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.

Medical Economics staff. *Physicians' Desk Reference*. 56th ed. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2002.

### ORGANIZATIONS

International Society for the Study of Dissociation (ISSD). 8201 Greensboro Drive, Suite 300. McLean, VA 22102. Telephone: (703) 610-9037. Web site: <[http://www.issd.org/index\\_actual.html](http://www.issd.org/index_actual.html)>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. Web site: <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

National Organization for Rare Disorders. P. O. Box 8923, New Fairfield, CT 06812-8923. Telephone: (203) 746-6518. Web site: <[www.rarediseases.org](http://www.rarediseases.org)>.

Society for Traumatic Stress Studies. 60 Revere Drive, Suite 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. Telephone: (708) 480-9080.

### OTHER

The Mayo Clinic. "Dissociative Disorders." <<http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/dissociative-disorders/DS00574/DSECTION=5>>.

Dean A. Haycock, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Depersonalization disorder

### Definition

**Depersonalization** is a state in which the individual ceases to perceive the reality of the self or the environment. The patient feels that his or her body is unreal, is changing, or is dissolving; or that he or she is outside of the body.

Depersonalization disorder is classified by the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, fourth edition, text revision, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR* as one of the **dissociative disorders**. These are mental disorders in which the normally well-integrated functions of memory, identity, perception, and consciousness are separated (dissociated). The dissociative disorders are usually connected to trauma in the recent or distant past, or with an intense internal conflict that forces the mind to separate incompatible

or unacceptable knowledge, information, or feelings. In depersonalization disorder, the patient's self-perception is disrupted. Patients feel as if they are external observers of their own lives, or that they are detached from their own bodies. Depersonalization disorder is sometimes called "depersonalization neurosis."

Depersonalization as a symptom may occur in **panic disorder**, **borderline personality disorder**, **post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)**, **acute stress disorder**, or another dissociative disorder. The patient is not given the **diagnosis** of depersonalization disorder if the episodes of depersonalization occur only during panic attacks or following a traumatic stressor.

The symptom of depersonalization can also occur in normal individuals under such circumstances as sleep deprivation, the use of certain anesthetics, experimental conditions in a laboratory (experiments involving weightlessness, for example), and emotionally stressful situations (such as taking an important academic examination or being in a traffic accident). One such example involves some of the rescue personnel from the September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on the World Trade Center and the Pentagon. These individuals experienced episodes of depersonalization after a day and a half without sleep. A more commonplace example is the use of nitrous oxide, or "laughing gas," as an anesthetic during oral surgery. Many dental patients report a sense of unreality or feeling of being outside their bodies during nitrous oxide administration.

To further complicate the matter, depersonalization may be experienced in different ways by different individuals. Common descriptions include a feeling of being outside one's body; "floating on the ceiling looking down at myself;" feeling as if one's body is dissolving or changing; feeling as if one is a machine or robot; an "unreal" feeling that one is in a dream or that one "is on automatic pilot." Most patients report a sense of emotional detachment or uninvolvement, or a sense of emotional numbing. Depersonalization is distinct from a dissociative symptom called derealization, in which people perceive the external world as unreal, dreamlike, or changing. The various ways that people experience depersonalization are related to their bodies or their sense of self.

Depersonalization is a common experience in the general adult population. However, when a patient's symptoms of depersonalization are severe enough to cause significant emotional distress, or interfere with normal functioning, the criteria of the *DSM-IV-TR* for depersonalization disorder are met.

## Description

A person with depersonalization disorder experiences subjective symptoms of unreality that make him or her uneasy and anxious. "Subjective" is a word that refers to the thoughts and perceptions inside an individual's mind, as distinct from the objects of those thoughts and perceptions outside the mind. Because depersonalization is a subjective experience, many people who have chronic or recurrent episodes of depersonalization are afraid others will not understand if they try to describe what they are feeling, or will think they are "crazy." As a result, depersonalization disorder may be underdiagnosed because the symptom of depersonalization is underreported.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Depersonalization disorder, like the dissociative disorders in general, has been regarded as the result of severe abuse in childhood. This can be of a physical, emotional, and/or sexual nature.

Trauma and emotional abuse in particular are strong predictors of depersonalization disorder in adult life, as well as of depersonalization as a symptom in other mental disorders. Analysis of one study of 49 patients diagnosed with depersonalization disorder indicated much higher scores than the control subjects for the total amount of emotional abuse endured and for the maximum severity of this type of abuse. The researchers concluded that emotional abuse has been relatively neglected by psychiatrists compared to other forms of childhood trauma.

It is thought that abuse in childhood or trauma in adult life may account for the distinctive cognitive (knowledge-related) profile of patients with depersonalization disorder. These patients have significant difficulties in focusing their attention, with spatial reasoning, and with short-term visual and verbal memory. However, they have intact reality testing. (Reality testing refers to a person's ability to distinguish between their internal experiences and the objective reality of persons and objects in the outside world.) Otherwise stated, a patient with depersonalization disorder may experience his/her body as unreal, but knows that "feelings aren't facts." The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies intact reality testing as a diagnostic criterion for depersonalization disorder.

The causes of depersonalization disorder are not completely understood. Recent advances in **brain** imaging and other forms of neurological testing, however, have confirmed that depersonalization disorder

is a distinct diagnostic entity and should not be considered a subtype of PTSD. A recent study using brain-imaging techniques found that patients with depersonalization disorder do not process emotional information in the same way as healthy controls, and their differences on brain imaging reflect their reported reduced or absent emotional response to verbal material that normally would elicit strong emotion, such as "There is a bomb inside the parcel."

**NEUROBIOLOGICAL.** In the past few years, several features of depersonalization disorder have been traced to differences in brain functioning. A group of British researchers found that the emotional detachment that characterizes depersonalization is associated with a lower level of nerve-cell responses in regions of the brain that are responsible for emotional feeling; an increased level of nerve-cell responses was found in regions of the brain related to emotional regulation.

A group of American researchers concluded that patients with depersonalization disorder had different patterns of response to tests of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis (HPA; the part of the brain involved in the "fight-or-flight" reaction to **stress**) than did patients with PTSD. Other tests by the same research team showed that patients with depersonalization disorder can be clearly distinguished from patients with major **depression** by tests of the functioning of the HPA axis.

Other neurobiological studies involving **positron emission tomography** (PET) measurements of glucose (sugar) metabolism in different areas of the brain found that patients with depersonalization disorder appear to have abnormal functioning of the sensory cortex. The sensory cortex is the part of the brain that governs the senses of sight, hearing, and perceptions of the location of one's body in space. These studies indicate that depersonalization is symptom that involves differences in sensory perception and subjective experiences. In the study of patients and their processing of emotional information, the authors found that in patients showed a similar response in the visual cortex to emotional and neutral verbal information. They did not appear to distinguish these two classes of material, which could either be because they have an overall reduced emotional response or because their response to neutral material is enhanced.

**HISTORICAL.** Depersonalization disorder may be a reflection of changes in people's sense of self or personal identity within Western cultures since the eighteenth century. Historians of psychiatry have noted

that whereas some mental disorders, such as depression, have been reported since the beginnings of Western medicine, no instances of the dissociative disorders were recorded before the 1780s. It seems that changes in social institutions and the structure of the family since the mid-eighteenth century may have produced a psychological structure in Westerners that makes individuals increasingly vulnerable to self disorders—as they are now called. Experiences of the unreality of one's body or one's self, such as those that characterize depersonalization disorder, presuppose a certain notion of how the self is presumed to feel. The emphasis on individualism and detachment from one's family is a mark of adult maturity in contemporary Western societies that appears to be a contributing factor to the frequency of dissociative symptoms and disorders.

### Symptoms

Although the *DSM-IV-TR* does not specify a list of primary symptoms of depersonalization, clinicians generally consider the triad of emotional numbing, changes in visual perception, and altered experience of one's body to be important core symptoms of depersonalization disorder.

The *DSM-IV-TR* notes that patients with depersonalization disorder frequently score high on measurements of hypnotizability.

### Demographics

The lifetime prevalence of depersonalization disorder in the general population is unknown, possibly because many people are made anxious by episodes of depersonalization and afraid to discuss them with a primary care physician. One survey done by the National Institutes of Mental Health (NIMH) indicates that about half of the adults in the United States have had one or two brief episodes of depersonalization in their lifetimes, usually resulting from severe stress. About a third of people exposed to life-threatening dangers develop brief periods of depersonalization, as do 40% of psychiatric inpatients. Estimates of the prevalence of depersonalization disorder in the general population range from 2.4% to 20%.

Depersonalization disorder is diagnosed about twice as often in women as in men. It is not known, however, whether this sex ratio indicates that women are at greater risk for the disorder or if they are more likely to seek help for its symptoms, or both. Little information is available about the incidence of the disorder in different racial or ethnic groups.

## KEY TERMS

**Abuse**—Physical, emotional, or sexual harm.

**Depersonalization**—A dissociative symptom in which the patient feels that his or her body is unreal, is changing, or is dissolving; or that he or she is outside the body.

**Depersonalization neurosis**—Another name for depersonalization disorder.

**Derealization**—A dissociative symptom in which the external environment is perceived as unreal or dreamlike.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Dissociative disorders**—A group of disorders marked by the separation (dissociation) of perception, memory, personal identity, and consciousness. Depersonalization disorder is one of five dissociative disorders defined by *DSM-IV-TR*.

**Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) system**—A part of the brain involved in the human stress response. The HPA system releases cortisol, the primary human stress hormone, and neurotransmitters that activate other brain structures associated with the fight-or-flight reaction. The HPA system appears to function in abnormal ways in patients diagnosed with depersonalization disorder. It is sometimes called the HPA axis.

**Reality testing**—A phrase that refers to a person's ability to distinguish between subjective feelings and

objective reality. A person who knows that their body is real even though they may be experiencing it as unreal, for example, is said to have intact reality testing. Intact reality testing is a *DSM-IV-TR* criterion for depersonalization disorder.

**Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors**—Commonly prescribed drugs for treating depression. SSRIs affect the chemicals that nerves in the brain use to send messages to one another.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and in the brain where it works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Stress**—A physical and psychological response that results from being exposed to a demand or pressure.

**Stressor**—A stimulus or event that provokes a stress response in an organism. Stressors can be categorized as acute or chronic, and as external or internal to the organism.

**Subjective**—Referring to a person's unique internal thoughts and feelings, as distinct from the objects of those thoughts and feelings in the external world.

**Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)**—Antidepressant medications that have the common characteristic of a three-ring nucleus in their chemical structure. Imipramine and amitriptyline are examples of tricyclic antidepressants.

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of depersonalization disorder is usually a diagnosis of exclusion. The doctor will take a detailed medical history, give the patient a physical examination, and order blood and urine tests in order to rule out depersonalization resulting from epilepsy, **substance abuse**, medication side effects, or recent periods of sleep deprivation.

There are several standard diagnostic questionnaires that may be given to evaluate the presence of a dissociative disorder. The Dissociative Experiences Scale (DES) is a frequently administered self-report screener for **dissociation**. The **Structured Clinical**

**Interview for DSM-IV** Dissociative Disorders, or SCID-D, can be used to make the diagnosis of depersonalization disorder distinct from the other dissociative disorders defined by *DSM-IV*. The SCID-D is a semistructured interview, which means that the examiner's questions are open-ended and allow the patient to describe experiences of depersonalization in some detail—distinct from simple yes-or-no answers.

In addition to these instruments, a six-item Depersonalization Severity Scale, or DSS, has been developed to discriminate between depersonalization disorder and other dissociative or post-traumatic disorders, and to measure the effects of treatment in patients.

## Treatments

Depersonalization disorder sometimes resolves on its own without treatment. Specialized treatment is recommended only if the symptoms are persistent, recurrent, or upsetting to the patient. Insight-oriented **psychodynamic psychotherapy**, cognitive-behavior therapy, and hypnosis have been demonstrated to be effective with some patients. There is, however, no single form of **psychotherapy** that is effective in treating all patients diagnosed with depersonalization disorder.

Medications that have been helpful to patients with depersonalization disorder include the benzodiazepine tranquilizers, such as **lorazepam** (Ativan), **clorazepate** (Tranxene), and **alprazolam** (Xanax), and the tricyclic **antidepressants**, such as **amitriptyline** (Elavil), **doxepin** (Sinequan), and **desipramine** (Norpramin). **Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, which include **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **sertraline** (Zoloft), and **paroxetine** (Paxil), may also be effective. **SSRIs** affect levels of the brain chemicals that nerve cells use to send messages to each other. These chemical messengers, called (**neurotransmitters**), are released by one nerve cell and taken up by others. If the receiving cell does not take up the chemical, the sending cell will take it up, a process called “reuptake.” **SSRIs** work by preventing the reuptake of serotonin, leaving more serotonin for nerve signaling. Serotonin signaling is associated with feelings of well-being.

Unfortunately, there have been very few well-designed studies comparing different medications for depersonalization disorder. Because depersonalization disorder is frequently associated with trauma, effective treatment must include other stress-related symptoms, as well.

Relaxation techniques have been reported to be a beneficial adjunctive treatment for persons diagnosed with depersonalization disorder, particularly for those who are worried about their sanity.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for recovery from depersonalization disorder is good. Most patients recover completely, particularly those who developed the disorder in connection with traumas that can be explored and resolved in treatment. A few patients develop a chronic form of the disorder; this is characterized by periodic episodes of depersonalization in connection with stressful events in their lives.

## Prevention

Some clinicians think that depersonalization disorder has an undetected onset in childhood, even though

most patients first appear for treatment as adolescents or young adults. Preventive strategies could include the development of screening techniques for identifying children at risk, as well as further research into the effects of emotional abuse on children.

Further neurobiological research may lead to the development of medications or other treatment modalities for preventing, as well as treating, depersonalization.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- “Depersonalization Disorder.” *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.
- Ellenberger, Henri. *The Discovery of the Unconscious*. New York: Basic Books, 1970.
- Herman, Judith, MD. *Trauma and Recovery*, 2nd ed., revised. New York: Basic Books, 1997.
- Medical Economics Staff. *Physicians’ Desk Reference*, 56th ed. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2002.
- Stout, Martha, PhD. *The Myth of Sanity: Tales of Multiple Personality in Everyday Life*. New York: Penguin Books, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Berrios, G. E., and M. Sierra. “Depersonalization: A Conceptual History.” *Historical Psychiatry* 8 (June 1997): 213–29.
- Guralnik, O., J. Schmeidler, and D. Simeon. “Feeling Unreal: Cognitive Processes in Depersonalization.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 157 (Jan. 2000): 103–109.
- Lambert, M. V., C. Senior, M. L. Phillips, and others. “Visual Imagery and Depersonalisation.” *Psychopathology* 34 (Sept.–Oct. 2001): 259–64.
- Medford, Nicholas, et al. “Emotional Memory in Depersonalization Disorder: A Functional MRI Study.” *Psychiatry Research* 148 (2006): 93–102.
- Phillips, M. L., N. Medford, C. Senior, and others. “Depersonalization Disorder: Thinking Without Feeling.” *Psychiatry Research* 108 (Dec. 30, 2001): 145–60.
- Sierra, M., and others. “Lamotrigine in the Treatment of Depersonalization Disorder.” *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 62 (Oct. 2001): 826–27.
- Sierra, M., and G. E. Berrios. “The Phenomenological Stability of Depersonalization: Comparing the Old with the New.” *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disorders* 189 (Sept. 2001): 629–36.
- Simeon, D., and others. “Personality Factors Associated with Dissociation: Temperament, Defenses, and Cognitive Schemata.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 159 (Mar. 2002): 489–91.
- Simeon, D., O. Guralnik, E. A. Hazlett, and others. “Feeling Unreal: A PET Study of Depersonalization Disorder.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 157 (Nov. 2000): 1782–88.

- Simeon, D., O. Guralnik, M. Knutelska, and others. "Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis Dysregulation in Depersonalization Disorder." *Neuropsychopharmacology* 25 (Nov. 2001): 793–95.
- Simeon, D., O. Guralnik, and J. Schmeidler. "Development of a Depersonalization Severity Scale." *Journal of Traumatic Stress* 14 (April 2001): 341–49.
- Simeon, D., O. Guralnik, J. Schmeidler, and others. "The Role of Childhood Interpersonal Trauma in Depersonalization Disorder." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 158 (July 2001): 1027–33.
- Simeon, D., D. J. Stein, and E. Hollander. "Treatment of Depersonalization Disorder with Clomipramine." *Biological Psychiatry* 44 (Aug. 15, 1998): 302–303.
- Spitzer, Carsten, Sven Barnow, Harald J. Freyberger, and Hans Joergen Grabe. "Recent Developments in the Theory of Dissociation." *World Psychiatry* 5 (2006): 82–86.
- Stanton, B. R., A. S. David, A. J. Cleare, and others. "Basal Activity of the Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis in Patients with Depersonalization Disorder." *Psychiatry Research* 104 (Oct. 2001): 85–89.
- Zanarini, M. C., and others. "The Dissociative Experiences of Borderline Patients." *Comparative Psychiatry* 41 (May–June 2000): 223–27.

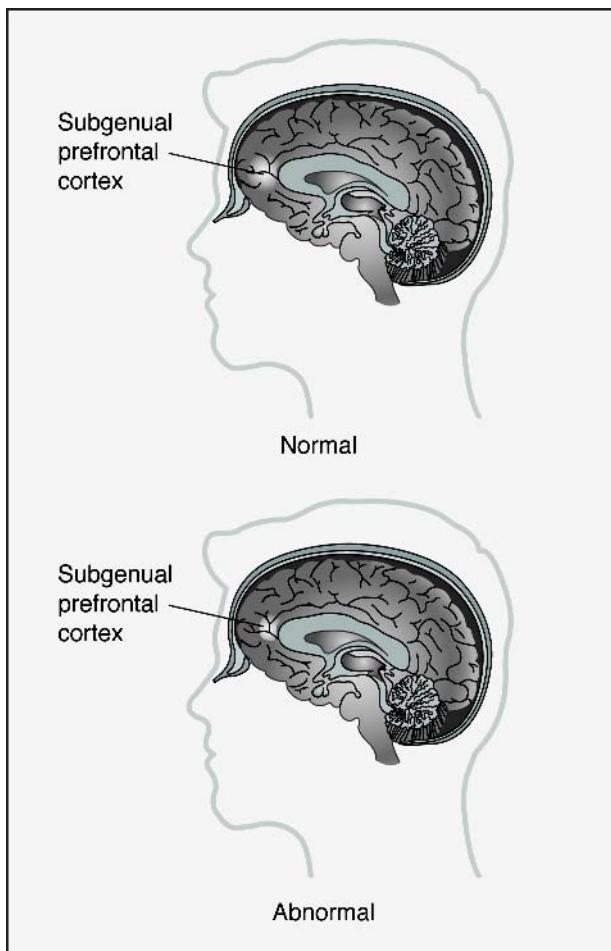
#### ORGANIZATIONS

- International Society for the Study of Dissociation (ISSD). 8201 Greensboro Drive, Suite 300. McLean, VA 22102. Telephone: (703) 610-9037. Fax: (703) 610-9005. <[http://www.issd.org/index\\_actual.html](http://www.issd.org/index_actual.html)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.
- National Organization for Rare Disorders. P. O. Box 8923, New Fairfield, CT 06812-8923. Telephone: (203) 746-6518. <[www.rarediseases.org](http://www.rarediseases.org)>.
- Society for Traumatic Stress Studies. 60 Revere Drive, Suite 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. Telephone: (708) 480-9080.

#### OTHER

- The Mayo Clinic. "Dissociative Disorders." <<http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/dissociative-disorders/DS00574/DSECTION=5>>.

Rebecca J. Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD



**A normal brain, and one with an abnormal subgenual prefrontal cortex.** (Electronic Illustrators Group)

and/or a loss of interest in things that were once pleasurable. Disturbance in sleep, appetite, and mental processes are a common accompaniment.

#### Description

Everyone experiences feelings of unhappiness and sadness occasionally. But when these depressed feelings start to dominate everyday life and cause physical and mental deterioration, they become what are known as depressive disorders. Each year in the United States, depressive disorders affect an estimated 18.8 million people, or about 9.5% of the adult population, at an approximate annual direct and indirect cost of more than \$51 billion. One in four women is likely to experience an episode of severe depression in her lifetime, with a 10–20% lifetime prevalence, compared to 5–10% for men. The average age a first depressive episode occurs is in the mid-20s, although the disorder strikes all age groups indiscriminately,

## Depression and depressive disorders

### Definition

Depression or depressive disorders (unipolar depression) are mental illnesses characterized by a profound and persistent feeling of sadness or despair

ANTIDEPRESSANT DRUGS	
Brand Name (Generic Name)	Possible Common Side Effects Include:
Desyrel (trazodone hydrochloride)	Allergic skin reactions, blurred vision, decreased appetite, fluid retention, headache
Effexor (venlafaxine hydrochloride)	Diarrhea, dizziness, gas, headache, insomnia, rash, vomiting
Elavil (amitriptyline hydrochloride)	Constipation, dizziness, high blood pressure, fever, nausea, rash, weight gain or loss
Nardil (phenelzine sulfate)	Dry mouth, fatigue, headache, muscle spasms, tremors
Norpramin (desipramine hydrochloride)	Blurred vision, cramps, hallucinations, hair loss, vomiting
Pamelor (nortriptyline hydrochloride)	Diarrhea, fatigue, headache, decreased coordination
Paxil (paroxetine hydrochloride)	Cold symptoms, drowsiness, nervousness, stomach pain
Prozac (fluoxetine hydrochloride)	Bronchitis, drowsiness, fatigue, nausea, tremors
Sinequan (doxepin hydrochloride)	Bruising, constipation, fluid retention, itching, increased heartbeat
Surmontil (trimipramine maleate)	Disorientation, flushing, headache, nausea, vomiting
Tofranil (imipramine hydrochloride)	Bleeding sores, fever, hives, decreased coordination
Travil	Asthma, diarrhea, dizziness, fatigue, seizures
Wellbutrin (bupropion hydrochloride)	Agitation, dry mouth, headache, nausea, rash
Zoloft (sertraline)	Diarrhea, fainting, gas, headache, nervousness

Several types of antidepressants and their possible side effects. (*Stanley Publishing*)

from children to the elderly. In fact, the rate of increase in depression among children is 23%.

There are two main categories of depressive disorders: **major depressive disorder** and **dysthymic disorder**. Major depressive disorder is a moderate to severe episode of depression lasting two or more weeks. Individuals experiencing this major depressive episode may have trouble sleeping, lose interest in activities they once took pleasure in, experience a change in weight, have difficulty concentrating, feel worthless and hopeless, or have a preoccupation with death or **suicide**. In children, the major depression may appear as irritability.

While major depressive episodes may be acute (intense but short-lived), dysthymic disorder is an ongoing, chronic depression that lasts two or more

years (one or more years in children) and has an average duration of 16 years. The mild to moderate depression of dysthymic disorder may rise and fall in intensity, and those afflicted with the disorder may experience some periods of normal, non-depressed mood of up to two months in length. Its onset is gradual, and dysthymic patients may not be able to pinpoint exactly when they started feeling depressed. Individuals with dysthymic disorder may experience a change in sleeping and eating patterns, low self-esteem, **fatigue**, trouble concentrating, and feelings of hopelessness.

Depression can also occur in **bipolar disorder**, a mood disorder that causes radical emotional changes and mood swings, from manic highs to depressive lows. The majority of bipolar individuals experience alternating episodes of mania and depression.

## Demographics

Major depressive disorder occurs twice as frequently in adolescent and adult females as in the corresponding male populations. Both genders of preadolescent children are affected equally.

## Causes and Symptoms

The causes behind depression are complex and not yet fully understood. While an imbalance of certain neurotransmitters—the chemicals in the **brain** that transmit messages between nerve cells—are thought to be key to depression, external factors such as upbringing (more so in dysthymia than major depression) may be as important. For example, it is speculated that, if an individual is abused and neglected throughout childhood and adolescence, a pattern of low self-esteem and negative thinking may emerge. From that, a lifelong pattern of depression may follow.

Depression is also associated with an imbalance of cortisol, the main hormone secreted by the adrenal glands. Other physiological factors sometimes associated with depression include viral infections, low thyroid hormone levels, and biological rhythms, including women's menstrual cycles—depression is a prominent symptom of **premenstrual syndrome** (PMS).

Heredity seems to play a role in the development of depressive disorders. Individuals with major depression in their immediate family are up to three times more likely to have the disorder themselves. It would seem that biological and genetic factors may make certain individuals predisposed or prone to depressive disorders, but environmental circumstances may often trigger the disorder.

External stressors and significant life changes, such as chronic medical problems, death of a loved one, divorce or estrangement, miscarriage, or loss of a job, can also result in a form of depression known as adjustment disorder. Although periods of adjustment disorder usually resolve themselves, occasionally they may evolve into a major depressive disorder.

In addition, chemical imbalance in the brain, certain medical conditions, diet, and alcohol or drug use may lead to depression.

The primary symptoms of major depressive disorder are depressed mood or anhedonia (the inability to enjoy experiences or activities normally considered to be pleasant) over a period of at least two weeks. Other symptoms that may be symptomatic of major depression include:

- change in appetite with marked weight gain or loss

## KEY TERMS

**Psychotropic drug**—A drug that acts on or influences the activity of the mind.

- decreased pleasure or interest in daily activities
- difficulty concentrating
- disturbed sleep patterns (e.g., insomnia or excessive sleep)
- fatigue or loss of energy
- feelings of abandonment
- feelings of guilt
- feelings of overwhelming sadness or fear
- intense feelings of helplessness, hopelessness, worthlessness, anxiety
- recurrent thoughts of death

## Treatments

Depression is typically treated with a combination of psychotropic drugs and **psychotherapy**. Antidepressant medications include monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), tricyclic **antidepressants**, **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (NRIs), norepinephrine-dopamine reuptake inhibitors, serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), and noradrenergic and specific serotonergic antidepressants (NASSAs). Severe cases of depression that are not responsive to these treatments have historically been treated with **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT). ECT is a controversial treatment in which controlled, low-dose electrical currents are used to cause a seizure. Although rarely used today, ECT is still sometimes used in the treatment of severe depression. The benefits of ECT in the treatment of depression are temporary. Currently, research is underway investigating the effectiveness of **transcranial magnetic stimulation** (TMS). TMS is a non-invasive experimental procedure that gently stimulates the brain using short bursts of electromagnetic energy received through focused powerful magnets placed on the patient's scalp.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- DePaulo, J. Raymond, Jr., and Leslie Alan Horvitz. *Understanding Depression: What We Know and What You Can Do About It*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2002.

Freeman, Arthur; James Pretzer; Barbara Fleming; and Karen M. Simon, *Clinical Applications of Cognitive Therapy*, 2nd ed. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 2004.

Kasper, Siegfried; Johan A. den Boer; and J. M. Sitsen, Ad, Eds. *Handbook of Depression and Anxiety*, 2nd ed. New York: Marcel Dekker, 2003.

VandenBos, Gary R., Ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

Jarema, Marek, III. "Atypical Antipsychotics in the Treatment of Mood Disorders." *Current Opinion in Psychiatry* 20(1) (Jan 2007): 23–29.

Nemeroff, Charles B. "The Burden of Severe Depression: A Review of Diagnostic Challenges and Treatment Alternatives." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41(3–4) (Apr–Jun 2007): 89–206.

Rihmer, Zoltán. "Suicide Risk in Mood Disorders." *Current Opinion in Psychiatry* 20(1) (Jan 2007): 17–22.

Paula Anne Ford-Martin, M.A.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

## Dermatillomania

### Definition

Dermatillomania, also called psychogenic excoriation (skin removal), neurotic excoriation, acne excoriée, and pathological or compulsive skin picking, is characterized by excessive picking, scratching, or squeezing of skin. This syndrome is not formally included in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fourth Edition, Text Revision (*DSM-IV-TR*), although dermatillomania is hypothesized to be an impulse control disorder related to **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD) and/or to **depression**. Dermatillomania can therefore be distinguished from other dermatological diseases that are influenced by psychological factors (e.g., psoriasis or alopecia) because it is a dermatological manifestation of a psychiatric syndrome.

### Description

Behaviors associated with dermatillomania include excessive excoriation of skin at multiple sites that are easily reachable. Excoriation may occur at sites of skin lesions (e.g., acne, scabs, insect bites) or in response to skin sensations such as dryness, tingling, or pain. The face is the most common site of excoriation that is usually performed with the fingers or fingernails but may involve the teeth or other instruments. Excor-

iation may occur in brief bouts or for extended periods and is usually worse in the evening.

Impulse control disorders are characterized by irresistible impulses to commit acts that may be harmful to one's self or others. Feelings of tension or **anxiety** may precede these acts that may then be followed by pleasure or gratification following the performance of the act. Guilt or regret may, or may not, be felt subsequent to the act. A person experiencing dermatillomania is likely to be under substantial distress and may feel embarrassed about the excoriating behavior. Social functioning may be decreased, especially those functions in which skin lesions will be exposed. Excoriation may result in varied medical complications including bleeding, ulcers, infections, and temporary or permanent disfigurement.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Co-occurring psychiatric conditions, especially mood and **anxiety disorders**, are common in patients with dermatillomania. Mood disorders such as major depression and obsessive-compulsive disorder, as well as anxiety disorders including **panic disorder**, social and simple phobias, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, and **generalized anxiety disorder** are frequently seen in individuals with dermatillomania. **Depressive disorders** are the most common co-occurring psychiatric diagnoses in people with dermatillomania, suggesting that the underlying pathophysiology in people with dermatillomania may be major depression.

#### Symptoms

The most prominent symptoms are excessive picking, scratching, or squeezing of skin. The duration of each episode and the total daily duration are variable. Episodes may be more frequent during the evening hours. Skin excoriation is performed throughout the duration of the disorder.

### Demographics

The mean age of onset for dermatillomania is between 15 and 40 years. The mean duration of symptoms is between five and 21 years. This syndrome is thought to have an incidence of 2% of patients seen in dermatological clinics, with women affected more often than men.

### Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** of dermatillomania is made by history and interview in the absence of formal inclusion in *DSM-IV-TR*. The behaviors associated

with dermatotillomania are heterogeneous. Co-occurring impulse control and/or depression symptoms coupled with the prominent dermatological features allow for diagnosis. Several related disorders have features of dermatotillomania, including **trichotillomania** (compulsive hair pulling) and **body dysmorphic disorder** (concerns about appearance, especially related to the skin or hair in which obsessions are related to any aspect of the skin, such as color, marks, veins, pores, wrinkles, stretch marks, or sagging). It is possible that an underlying dermatological condition produces the observed symptoms although the lack of obsessive or compulsive-impulsive behavior would rule out dermatotillomania in these cases.

## Treatments

### Medications

Case reports and small trials have examined the efficacy of various types of drugs for dermatotillomania: **antidepressants**, including **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, such as **fluvoxamine** and tricyclics (e.g., **doxepin** and **clomipramine**), opiate antagonists (**naltrexone**), typical antipsychotics (**pimozide**), and atypical antipsychotics (**olanzapine**, **ariprazole**). In some cases (for example, the SSRI **fluoxetine**), there appeared to be a separation in the efficacy of the drug on skin excoriation and a comorbid symptom (depression or anxiety), suggesting that the drug may have a primary effect on skin excoriation.

### Alternative therapies

Behavioral treatments, including **psychotherapy** and hypnosis, have been examined for effectiveness in dermatotillomania. Small-scale studies or case reports have suggested that habit-reversal therapy, in which a program of self-monitoring is paired with competing response practice, and psychotherapy, in which behavioral and emotional as well as topical therapies are practiced, can be effective.

## Prognosis

Large-scale outcome studies are lacking, although it has been suggested that presentation to a dermatologist prior to experiencing symptoms for one year results in a better prognosis. Complications from lesion infection are possible and chronic rebuilding of lesioned tissues has been suggested to be a potential causative factor for skin cancer.

## Prevention

Obsessive-compulsive disorders and depression are major psychiatric disorders whose underlying

pathophysiology involves alterations in neurotransmission. Since dermatotillomania is a dermatologic manifestation of one, or both, of these disorders, its elimination is dependent on curing the underlying illness.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Arnold, L. M., M. B. Auchenbach, and S. L. McElroy.

“Psychogenic Excoriation. Clinical Features, Proposed Diagnostic Criteria, Epidemiology and Approaches to Treatment.” *CNS Drugs* 15.5 (2001): 351–59.

Arnold, L. M., and others. “An Open Clinical Trial of Fluvoxamine Treatment of Psychogenic Excoriation.” *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 19.1 (February 1999): 15–18.

Blanch, J., F. Grimalt, G. Massana, and V. Navarro. “Efficacy of Olanzapine in the Treatment of Psychogenic Excoriation.” *British Journal of Dermatology* 151.3 (September 2004): 714–16.

Calikusu, C., B. Yucel, A. Polat, and C. Baykal. “The Relation of Psychogenic Excoriation with Psychiatric Disorders: A Comparative Study.” *Comprehensive Psychiatry* 44.3 (May–June 2003): 256–61.

Carter, W.G., III, and S. D. Shillcutt. “Aripiprazole Augmentation of Venlafaxine in the Treatment of Psychogenic Excoriation.” *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.8 (August 2006): 1311.

Osaba, O., and G. Mahr. “Psychogenic Excoriation and Cancer.” *Psychosomatics* 43.3 (May–June 2002): 251–52.

Andrew J. Bean, PhD

Desensitization see **Systematic desensitization**

## Desipramine

### Definition

Desipramine is an antidepressant drug used to elevate mood and promote recovery of a normal range of emotions in patients with **depressive disorders**. In addition, desipramine has uses in a number of other psychiatric and medical conditions. In the United States, the drug is also known by its brand name, Norpramin.



**A desipramine tablet.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by Permission.)

### Purpose

Desipramine is known principally as an antidepressant drug used to promote recovery of depressed patients. It also has therapeutic uses in **panic disorder**, pain management, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD), sleep attacks (**narcolepsy** and cataplexy), **binge eating** (bulimia), and for **cocaine** craving in the treatment of **addiction**.

### Description

Desipramine is one of the tricyclic **antidepressants**, so-called because of the three-ring chemical structure common to these drugs. Until the late 1980s, desipramine and other tricyclic antidepressants, such as **imipramine**, formed the mainstay of the pharmacological treatment of depressive disorders.

The therapeutic action of antidepressants is not completely understood. It is known that these drugs boost the levels of certain messenger chemicals, called **neurotransmitters**, which are involved in transmitting signals between nerve cells in the **brain**. This action may help to restore normal emotional feelings by counteracting abnormalities of nerve signal transmission that occur in depressive disorders.

Desipramine is one of a large number of tricyclic antidepressant compounds. Each was developed for somewhat differing pharmacological effects and side-effect profiles. The effects of desipramine are very similar to those of other tricyclics, although some individual patients may find one drug of this group more effective or more tolerable than another. It is available as Norpramin in 10-, 25-, 50-, 75-, 100-, and 150-mg tablets; although generic manufacturers may supply a somewhat different set of dosages.

### Recommended dosage

For adults, desipramine is usually administered in dosages of 100–200 mg per day. Doses ranging from 75 mg to 300 mg per day are sometimes prescribed. The initial daily dose is usually low to avoid side effects, and it is usually increased, as necessary, until a therapeutic effect is achieved. Desipramine may be administered in divided doses or a single daily dose.

Geriatric patients, children, and adolescents are more sensitive to the side effects and toxicities of tricyclic antidepressants than other people. For geriatric patients, the dose may range from 25 mg to 100 mg per day. For children six to 12 years old, the recommended dose ranges from 10 mg to 30 mg per day in divided doses. For adolescents, daily dosages range from 25 mg to 50 mg but may be increased up to 100 mg, if needed.

### Precautions

Desipramine and other tricyclic antidepressants may cause drowsiness. Activities requiring alertness, such as driving, may be impaired. Dizziness or lightheadedness may occur on arising due to sudden decreases in blood pressure. Fainting may also occur. Some patients may experience difficulty urinating, especially men with prostate enlargement. Glaucoma may be aggravated. Sensitivity to ultraviolet light may be increased, and sunburns may occur more easily. Sweating may be reduced, causing sensitivity to heat and hot weather. Among patients with epilepsy, **seizures** may become more frequent.

Tricyclic antidepressants, including desipramine, should be used with caution in patients with heart disease because of the possibility of adverse effects on heart rhythm. Adverse effects on the heart occur frequently when tricyclics are taken in overdose. Only small quantities of these drugs should be given to patients who may be suicidal.

Tricyclic antidepressants may cause dry mouth due to decreased saliva, possibly contributing to the development of tooth decay, gum disease, and mouth infections. Patients should avoid sweets, sugary beverages, and chewing gum containing sugar.

It has not been determined whether desipramine is safe to take during pregnancy, and the patient's need for this medicine should be balanced against the possibility of harm to the fetus. Tricyclic antidepressants may be secreted in breast milk and may cause sedation and depressed breathing in a nursing infant.

### Side effects

Desipramine may cause many side effects. Initially, the side effects of tricyclic drugs may be more

## KEY TERMS

**Autonomic**—The part of the nervous system that governs the heart, involuntary muscles, and glands.

**Cataplexy**—A symptom of narcolepsy marked by a sudden episode of muscle weakness triggered by strong emotions. The muscle weakness may cause the person's knees to buckle, or the head to drop. In severe cases, the patient may become paralyzed for a few seconds or minutes.

**Epilepsy**—A neurological disorder characterized by the onset of seizures. Seizures are caused by a disturbance in the electrical activity in the brain and can cause loss of consciousness, muscle spasms, rhythmic movements, abnormal sensory experiences, or altered mental states.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

pronounced, but sensitivity may decrease with continued treatment. The following more common side effects are grouped by the body system affected:

- cardiovascular: decreases of blood pressure on rising from a sitting or lying position, which may cause dizziness or fainting; increases of blood pressure, rapid heart rate, pounding heart, altered heart rhythm.
- nervous system: sedation, confusion, nervousness, restlessness, sleep difficulties, numbness, tingling sensations, tremors, increased seizure tendency.
- autonomic: blurred vision, dry mouth, decreased sweating, difficulty urinating, constipation.
- skin: rashes, sensitivity to sunlight.
- body as a whole: weight gain.

Less commonly, tricyclic drugs may cause adverse effects on almost any organ or system of the body, particularly the blood, hormones, kidney, and liver. Patients should consult their physicians if symptoms develop or bodily changes occur.

### Interactions

Tricyclic antidepressants such as desipramine may interact with many other drugs. Patients should inform their physicians about all other drugs they are taking. Tricyclic drugs may intensify the effects of drugs caus-

ing sedation, including alcohol, **barbiturates**, narcotic pain medications, minor tranquilizers, and antihistamines. Tricyclics may cause excessive drops in blood pressure in patients taking blood-pressure medicine, especially upon sitting up or standing. Conversely, these drugs may interfere with the pressure-reducing effects of certain other blood pressure medicines. Tricyclics may interact with thyroid medications to produce heart rhythm abnormalities. Also, they may increase seizure tendency in patients with epilepsy, requiring adjustment of anti-epileptic medication. Concurrent use of tricyclic antidepressants with other antidepressants or other psychiatric medicines may result in intensification of certain side effects.

Certain drugs may interfere with the elimination of tricyclic antidepressants from the body causing higher blood levels and increased side effects. This effect may occur with cimetidine (Tagamet), other antidepressants, **methylphenidate** (Ritalin, Concerta), and some antipsychotic medications.

*See also* Addiction; Cocaine and related disorders; Depression and depressive disorders; Panic attack; Psychosis.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

Amitai, Yona, and Henri Frischer. "Excess Fatality from Desipramine in Children and Adolescents." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.1 (Jan 2006): 54–60.

DeRubeis, Robert J., Steven D. Hollon, Jay D. Amsterdam, and others. "Cognitive Therapy vs Medications in the Treatment of Moderate to Severe Depression." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 62.4 (Apr. 2005): 409–16.

Mayers, Andrew G., and David S. Baldwin. "Antidepressants and Their Effect on Sleep." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 20.8 (December 2005): 533–59.

McDowell, David, Edward V. Nunes, Angela M. Seracini, and others. "Desipramine Treatment of Cocaine-Dependent Patients with Depression: A Placebo-Controlled Trial." *Drug and Alcohol Dependence* 80.2 (November 2005): 209–21.

Musselman, Dominique L., Wendy I. Somerset, Ying Guo, and others. "Double-Blind, Multicenter, Parallel-Group Study of Paroxetine, Desipramine, or Placebo in Breast Cancer Patients (stages I, II, III, and IV) with Major Depression." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.2 (February 2006): 288–96.

- Rains, Adrienne and Lawrence. "Nonstimulant Medications for the Treatment of ADHD." *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychiatric Nursing* 19.1 (February 2006): 44–47.
- Walsh, B. Timothy, Robyn Sysko, and Michael K. Parides. "Early Response to Desipramine Among Women with Bulimia Nervosa." *International Journal of Eating Disorders* 39.1 (Jan. 2006): 72–75.
- Wilens, Timothy E., Paul G. Hammerness, Joseph Biederman, and others. "Blood Pressure Changes Associated with Medication Treatment of Adults with Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 66.2 (February 2005): 253–59.

Richard Kapit, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Desoxyn see **Amphetamines**

Desyrel see **Trazodone**

Pregnant women cannot be detoxified from opiates (also called narcotics, including morphine, heroin, and similar drugs) because strict detoxification can increase the risk of spontaneous abortion or premature birth. These women can be treated with **methadone** as an alternative. Methadone acts as a replacement for the heroin in the woman's body, but the methadone does not provide the "high" that the heroin provides. In addition, methadone is safer for the fetus than heroin.

To be an effective first step of treatment, detoxification must be an individualized process because patients have varying needs.

## Description

The body, when allowed to be free from drugs, detoxifies itself through its normal metabolic processes. The withdrawal symptoms are treated during this process so that the patient will be comfortable while the body detoxifies itself.

### *The process of substance addiction*

Before discussing detoxification, it may be useful to understand how the body becomes addicted and why withdrawal symptoms are experienced. In physical **addiction** or dependence, as a person uses a substance or chemical over a long period of time, his or her body chemistry changes. Once a substance enters the body through drinking, smoking, injecting, or inhaling, it travels through the bloodstream to the **brain**. The brain has a complex reward system built in; when people engage in activities that are important for survival (such as eating), special nerve cells in the brain release chemicals (**neurotransmitters**, including **dopamine**) that induce feelings of pleasure. Because of this reward system in the brain, humans are programmed to want to repeat actions that elicit those pleasant sensations. In other words, feelings of pleasure reinforce certain activities or behaviors. Addictive substances interfere with this reward system. Some drugs mimic the effects of a natural chemical, some block the communication between nerve cells, and some substances trigger a larger-than-normal release of neurotransmitters like dopamine. The result of this interference is that dependent drug users physically need the drug to feel pleasure. As they become more dependent, their bodies becomes less responsive to the substance, and need more of it to get the desired response—a phenomenon called tolerance. Also as a result of the interference with the brain's system, when the dependent user does not have the drug in his or her system, feelings of **depression** or unpleasant

## Detoxification

### Definition

Detoxification is a process in which the body is allowed to free itself of a drug. During this period, the symptoms of withdrawal are also treated. Detoxification is the primary step in any drug treatment program and is used as the initial phase in treating alcohol, heroin, inhalant, sedative, and hypnotic addictions.

### Purpose

The goal of detoxification is to clear the toxins out of the body so that the body can adjust and heal itself after being dependent on a substance. For the recovering person to stay abstinent on a long-term basis, detoxification needs to lead into long-term community residential program treatment or outpatient drug treatment lasting three to six months.

### Precautions

When individuals are physically dependent on a substance, they experience withdrawal symptoms when they abstain from the drug. Withdrawal symptoms vary with each drug of **abuse**, but can be severe, and even dangerous. Patients who want to overcome their dependence need help managing the withdrawal symptoms. The patient's medical team strives to get the patient off a substance on which he or she is physically dependent, while treating the withdrawal symptoms.

withdrawal symptoms may be experienced. These consequences also reinforce the substance use. People dependent on substances resort to using more drugs to avoid the depression or the withdrawal symptoms.

### ***Withdrawal symptoms***

The symptoms and severity of these symptoms vary from one substance to another.

**ALCOHOL.** After a person who has used alcohol heavily for a long time stops drinking, he or she may experience increased heart rate, shaking, difficulty sleeping, nausea, restlessness, **anxiety**, and even **seizures**. The affected person may also experience **hallucinations** (seeing, hearing, or feeling something that isn't really present). In some cases, **delirium tremens** (DTs) may occur as part of the withdrawal. Delirium tremens is a violent delirium (fading in and out of consciousness) with tremors, increased motor activity, visual hallucinations, disorientation, confusion, and fever that happens 48–96 hours after the alcohol-dependent person has had his or her last drink. These symptoms can last anywhere from three to 10 days. This state is a medical emergency because it could be fatal.

**HEROIN AND OTHER OPIATES.** Heroin is part of a family of drugs called opiates or **opioids**, which are made up of drugs that come from the seeds of the Asian poppy (heroin, opium and morphine, for example) and also manufactured drugs that act like the natural drugs (meperidine or Demerol). Symptoms of opiate withdrawal include restlessness, **insomnia**, anxiety, irritability, loss of appetite, diarrhea, abdominal cramps, nausea, sweating, chills, and runny eyes and nose.

**SEDATIVES AND HYPNOTICS.** **Sedatives** and **hypnotics** are drug families that are often considered in one group called the sedative-hypnotics. These drugs depress or slow down the body's functions, and can be used to calm anxiety or to induce sleep. When taken in high doses or when abused, these drugs can cause unconsciousness or death. These drugs include **barbiturates** and **benzodiazepines**. Some barbiturates are amobarbital (Amytal), pentobarbital (Nembutal), and secobarbital (Seconal). Some benzodiazepines include **diazepam** (Valium), **chlordiazepoxide** (Librium), and **lorazepam** (Ativan). When a person dependent on these drugs stops taking them suddenly, he or she might experience restlessness, muscle cramps, anxiety, insomnia, irritability, paranoid behavior, and even seizures or death.

### ***Alcohol detoxification***

Patients being detoxified from alcohol can safely be treated with rest, nutrition, vitamins, and thiamin (a B vitamin whose absorption is affected by alcohol abuse). Detoxification can be completed in an inpatient setting, or patients may participate in intensive outpatient (day hospital) treatment. People with mild or moderate withdrawal symptoms undergo detoxification over a five-day period and receive a benzodiazepine or phenobarbital to help ease the withdrawal symptoms. Delirium tremens can be treated with very high-dose benzodiazepines (such as chlordiazepoxide or diazepam) or with antipsychotic medications such as Haldol (**haloperidol**). The patient usually receives medication at doses high enough to give 60 mg or more of the medication over a 24- to 36-hour period, and the doses of these medications are gradually decreased by 20% each day. Patients who have liver disease, **dementia**, or patients who are over the age of 65 or with significant medical problems may receive lorazepam for the withdrawal symptoms.

### ***Heroin detoxification***

Patients with heroin dependence may receive help with their detoxification in one of two forms. Opioid agonists are drugs that act like heroin in the patient's body but do not provide the same "high," and are given in gradually decreasing doses. Because these medications "act" like heroin, the person does not experience withdrawal symptoms. Some examples of this kind of medication are methadone and levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM); buprenorphine is a partial opioid agonist, which means that it acts like heroin or methadone, but it limits the effects of opioids so that higher doses produce no greater effects. It is available as a monotherapy (meaning it is the only drug taken) or in combination with another drug, naloxone, as therapy for heroin detoxification. Some studies have found that buprenorphine shows promise in treating pregnant women for opiate addiction; however, the current standard of care remains methadone replacement for pregnant women. The second form of help for patients undergoing heroin detoxification is the use of a drug, such as **clonidine** (Catapres), that blocks some of the withdrawal symptoms. There is also a controversial method of heroin detoxification called ultra-rapid opioid detoxification under anesthesia/sedation, and there is an experimental method using a medication called lofexidine.

**METHADONE SUBSTITUTION.** Methadone substitution can occur in outpatient or inpatient settings, and

is a method of detoxification that involves helping patients off substances such as heroin by substituting these substances with methadone to ease the withdrawal symptoms, and gradually decreasing the dose until no methadone is needed for the symptoms. Patients may begin with a dose of methadone that is between 20 mg and 40 mg per day. The initial dose may be adjusted so that the most beneficial dose can be discovered, based on the patient's withdrawal symptoms. The dose is then gradually decreased over the next several days. The decrease in methadone dosage is called tapering. If the detoxification is being completed in an inpatient setting, the methadone dose can be tapered more quickly, because medical staff can closely monitor patients for withdrawal, and detoxification can be achieved in about five to 10 days. However, in the case of outpatient detoxification, the taper has to be done much more slowly to assure that the patient does not have an adverse reaction or **relapse** (use the drug of abuse again) to treat their withdrawal symptoms. The dose may be decreased about 10% per week initially until a dose of 20 mg is reached. Then the dose can be decreased by 3% per week for the rest of the time that the patient needs to be detoxified. Patients are usually comfortable with the slow decrease of the medication until the dose gets below 20 mg/day. At that point, patients tend to become fearful of being off opioids and having symptoms of withdrawal.

Clonidine is used much more frequently than methadone in detoxification. Methadone is used frequently as long-term maintenance treatment for heroin addiction.

**BUPRENORPHINE.** Buprenorphine is another medication that is used during opioid detoxification. Because it also acts like heroin in the body, the patient does not experience the withdrawal symptoms as the heroin is being eliminated from the body. It is given as an intramuscular injection or intravenously. It begins to work within 15 minutes and its effects last six hours. It is given as part of three phases of detoxification: induction, stabilization, and maintenance. Induction is the initiation of buprenorphine therapy, which is administered once the patient has not used opiates for 12 to 24 hours. During stabilization, the dose may be adjusted as the patient stops having cravings or experiences fewer side effects. The length of the maintenance phase varies depending on the needs of the individual, and ends with medically supervised withdrawal. This drug has shown greater effectiveness than other replacement therapies in treating opiate withdrawal.

**CLONIDINE.** Clonidine is a medication that decreases many of the symptoms of opioid withdrawal. Patients may require nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDS, such as ibuprofen) for the treatment of muscle aches. Clonidine's major side effects include sedation and hypotension (low blood pressure) because it is used to treat high blood pressure. Patients undergoing detoxification using clonidine will have their blood pressure and pulse checked regularly. The starting dose of clonidine is 0.1–0.3 mg every four to six hours—the maximum amount that can be given in one day is 1 mg. During days two through four of the detoxification, the dose of clonidine is adjusted to control the withdrawal symptoms. Again, however, the dose cannot exceed the maximum dose. On the fifth day of detoxification, the dose may be slowly tapered.

The clonidine patch is a transdermal patch, allowing the drug to be delivered through the skin and exposing the patient to a constant amount of the drug over a seven-day period. It also allows the person to experience a more comfortable heroin detoxification. It comes in three doses: 0.1-mg, 0.2-mg, and 0.3-mg. Patients who will use the clonidine patch need to have both the patch on and take oral clonidine during the first two days of the detoxification, because it takes the patch two days to reach a steady state and be effective. The patient takes oral clonidine 0.2 mg three times a day, and the weight of the patient determines the dose of the patch. On day two, the amount of clonidine that the patient takes by mouth is reduced by half and then it is completely stopped after day three. After seven days, the patch is removed and replaced with a patch that is half the amount of the original dose. The patch is continued for as long as the patient continues to have symptoms of withdrawal. Blood pressure is monitored for the patient using the patch, as well. The detoxification process in general takes about seven days using clonidine.

**CLONIDINE-NALTREXONE ULTRA-RAPID DETOXIFICATION.** Clonidine-naltrexone ultra-rapid detoxification has been attempted as a faster means of detoxification than using clonidine alone, and a similar “ultra-fast” method in combination with anesthesia has also been tested. These approaches remain quite controversial, and published clinical data supporting their efficacy are lacking, as are controlled trials.

**LOFEXIDINE.** Lofexidine is used experimentally in the United Kingdom for opioid detoxification. It appears to cause less sedation and fewer cases of low blood pressure than clonidine. In the United States, the National Institute of Drug Abuse (NIDA) is conducting studies on treatments using this drug in combination with **naltrexone**.

### Mixed substance abuse

**Mixed substance abuse** (also called polysubstance abuse) occurs when individuals abuse more than one substance. Many doctors prefer to use phenobarbital to detoxify patients with polysubstance abuse problems. Patients receiving phenobarbital may receive a test dose, and then based on his or her tolerance and symptoms, the dose will be adjusted. Patients cannot receive more than 600 mg of phenobarbital a day. After two to three days, once the patient is doing well, the dose can be reduced by 30–60 mg. Whether detoxification for polysubstance abusers will be completed on an inpatient or outpatient status depends on the drugs the patient abuses.

### Benzodiazepines

These medications are often used to help patients during detoxification, but these substances themselves can be abused and addictive. Patients who have taken a prescribed benzodiazepine for two weeks, even in a therapeutic dose, need to be safely detoxified with a slow taper. The amount of drug the person takes is dropped by 10–25% every week if the patient has minimal withdrawal symptoms. If the patient has taken very high doses for long periods of time, he or she is at increased risk for addiction. If the person has been taking a benzodiazepine medication for years, it can take months before he or she can get off the drug. Anticonvulsant medications like **carbamazepine** (Tegretol) and **divalproex sodium** (Depakote) can be used to make the detoxification process faster and more comfortable for the patient.

### Preparation

The first step in any detoxification, regardless of the substance, is a physical exam and history taken by a physician. This information gathering and examination will help the treatment team assess the patient's overall health. In general, the healthier the patient is, the better the chances are that the patient will experience a detoxification without serious or life-threatening complications. Patients also need to give urine and blood samples to test for drugs and alcohol.

### Aftercare

After the patient has completed detoxification, he or she needs further treatment either at an outpatient, inpatient, residential, or day hospital program in order to remain drug-free for the long term. Patients are treated by trained health care professionals, and some patients are also counseled by people who are recovering from addiction themselves. Many patients

also benefit from 12-step programs or **self-help groups**, such as Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) or Narcotics Anonymous (NA).

Most opioid users are treated with ambulatory or outpatient detoxification or residential treatment followed by outpatient counseling. Some people who have abused opioids and have undergone detoxification and counseling are able to remain drug-free. Many, however, relapse, even after receiving **psychotherapy**. People recovering from opioid addiction can receive methadone or LAAM as maintenance therapy to prevent relapse. Similar to the aid these medications can give patients during detoxification, when taken daily as a therapy they continue to "act" as heroin, keeping the withdrawal symptoms from appearing. Methadone maintenance therapy can be provided through either residential or therapeutic communities and outpatient drug-free programs. Methadone maintenance treatment therapy is controversial, however, because it does not cure the person's addiction—it replaces it with another substance. Proponents of methadone maintenance therapy argue that people receiving methadone are able to function much better in society than people addicted to heroin. Because their drug-seeking behavior is reduced, these patients can become productive at work and their interpersonal relations improve.

People recovering from alcoholism can also benefit from counseling and support after detoxification, and a maintenance therapy is available to them, as well. **Disulfiram** (Antabuse) is a medication that interferes with the body's breakdown and processing of alcohol. When alcohol is consumed while a patient is taking disulfiram, the medication makes the effects of the alcohol much worse than the patient would normally experience; facial flushing, headache, nausea, and vomiting occurs, even if alcohol is consumed in a small amount. In order for disulfiram to be effective, the patient must want this kind of **reinforcement** to maintain abstinence and must be committed to it. Patients also must note that any form of alcohol can trigger the undesired effects, including cooking wine or mouthwash with alcohol. This drug, when used in combination with buprenorphine, also appears to be effective in treating **cocaine** addiction in people who also are addicted to heroin.

### Risks

When benzodiazepines are the drug of addiction, they must be discontinued and cannot be given on an outpatient basis because of their potential for abuse. For all patients undergoing detoxification, benzodiazepine use must be monitored carefully because of the

potential for new addiction. Elderly patients undergoing detoxification and receiving benzodiazepines must be monitored closely because they are more sensitive to the sedating effects of these drugs and are also more prone to falls while receiving these drugs. If benzodiazepines are not discontinued gradually, patients can have withdrawal symptoms such as irritability, poor sleep, agitation and seizures. Ultrarapid opioid detoxification under anesthesia/sedation is a serious procedure. Patients have died undergoing this procedure, and it remains controversial.

It should also be noted that many substances used in detoxification can themselves cause addiction. An example of this risk has already been given with benzodiazepines—these medications ease withdrawal symptoms during detoxification, but patients can become addicted to these medications, as well.

### Normal results

Normal results for a well-managed detoxification would include freedom from the drug of addiction and ability to enter long-term treatment.

Success rates vary among people recovering from substance abuse. As might be expected, patients who successfully complete a full treatment program after detoxification (that includes counseling, psychotherapy, **family therapy**, and/or **group therapy** or some combination of those therapy types) achieve higher rates of success at remaining drug-free. Patients who were addicted for shorter periods of time and patients who spend longer periods in treatment are generally more successful at remaining abstinent from drugs over the long term.

Studies indicate that people who abuse alcohol and who want to stop have a higher chance of success if they undergo inpatient detoxification versus outpatient detoxification.

### Abnormal results

One abnormal result that may occur is that patients who received nasogastric or tracheal tubes for opioid detoxification under anesthesia may experience adverse effects or complications. These patients are at risk for: trauma to their lips, vocal cords, larynx, and teeth; nosebleeds; high blood pressure; elevated heart rate; irregular heartbeat; and vomiting, which can lead to aspiration pneumonia.

An additional abnormal result would be a new addiction as a consequence of the detoxification.

## KEY TERMS

**Agonist**—A chemical that reproduces the mechanism of action of a neurotransmitter.

**Antagonist**—A substance whose actions counteract the effects of or work in the opposite way from another chemical or drug.

**Buprenorphine**—A medication that blocks some of the withdrawal effects during heroin detoxification.

**Detoxification**—A process in which the body is allowed to free itself of a drug while the symptoms of withdrawal are treated. It is the primary step in any treatment program for drug or alcohol abuse.

**Disulfiram**—A medication that helps reinforce abstinence in people who are recovering from alcohol abuse. If a person taking disulfiram drinks even a small amount of alcohol, he or she experiences facial flushing, headache, nausea, and vomiting.

**Lofexidine**—A medication approved for use in Great Britain to aid the opioid detoxification process.

**Methadone**—A drug often prescribed legally as a replacement for heroin. It induces a slight high but blocks heroin from producing a more powerful euphoric effect. It may be used in heroin detoxification to ease the process, or it may be used daily after detoxification as maintenance therapy. Methadone maintenance therapy is controversial.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

After the detoxification is completed, a patient may relapse. Support is critical for the patient to continue long-term therapy and successfully overcome addiction.

*See also* Addiction; Disease concept of chemical dependency.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Beers, Mark H., MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds.

“Alcoholism.” *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, 17th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.

Jaffe, Jerome H., MD, and others. “Substance-Related Disorders.” *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed. Benjamin J. Sadock, MD, and Virginia A. Sadock, MD, eds. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

Matthews, John. "Substance-Related Disorders: Cocaine and Narcotics." *Psychiatry Update and Board Preparation* Thomas A. Stern, MD, and John B. Herman, MD, eds. New York: McGraw Hill, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Fuller, Richard K., MD, and Susanne Hiller-Sturmhofel, PhD. "Alcoholism Treatment in the United States: An Overview." *Alcohol Research and Health* 23 (1999): 69-77.
- Khantzian, Edward J., MD. "Methadone Treatment for Opioid Dependence." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (Nov. 2000): 1895-96.
- Leshner, Alan, PhD. "Heroin Abuse and Addiction." *National Institute on Drug Abuse Research Report Series*. NIH Publication Number 00-4165, Washington, D.C. 2000.
- Shreeram, S. S., MD, and others. "Psychosis After Ultra-rapid Opiate Detoxification." *American Journal of Psychiatry* (June 2001): 970.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- The College on Problems of Drug Dependency (CPDD). CPDD Executive Offices, Department of Pharmacology, 3420 N. Broad Street, Philadelphia, PA19140. Telephone: (215) 707-3242. <<http://views.vcu.edu/cpdd>>.
- Institute for Comprehensive Detoxification and Rehabilitation. Telephone: (877) 704-ICDR (4237). <<http://www.views.vcu.edu/cpdd/>>.
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA). 6000 Executive Boulevard, Wilco Building, Bethesda, MD 20892-7003. <<http://www.niaaa.nih.gov>>.
- National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 5213, Bethesda, MD 20892-9561. Telephone: (301) 443-1124. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>.

#### OTHER

- Brady, Kathleen T., MD, PhD. "Issues of Substance Abuse in Women." American Psychiatric Association 2004 Annual Meeting. <<http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/480925>>
- Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. "Detoxification and Substance Abuse Treatment." Treatment Improvement Protocol (TIP) Series 45. DHHS Publication No. (SMA) 06-4131. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2006) <[http://download.ncadi.samhsa.gov/prevline/pdfs/DTXTIP45\(3-30-06\).PDF](http://download.ncadi.samhsa.gov/prevline/pdfs/DTXTIP45(3-30-06).PDF)>.
- Mathias, Robert. National Institute on Drug Abuse. "Alcohol-treatment Medication May Reduce Cocaine Abuse Among Heroin Treatment Patients." NIDA Notes (16) (2005) <[http://www.nida.nih.gov/NIDA\\_notes/NNVol16N1/Alcohol.html](http://www.nida.nih.gov/NIDA_notes/NNVol16N1/Alcohol.html)>.
- National Institute of Drug Abuse. "Effectiveness of Lofexidine to Prevent Stress-Related Opiate Relapse During Naltrexone Treatment." <<http://clinicaltrials.gov/ct/gui/show/NCT00142909;jsessionid=0B14CF2553B3CC2A2D16FE2652613D76?order=48>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Opiate Withdrawal." (2006) <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000949.htm>>.

- Trachtenberg, Alan I., and Michael F. Fleming. National Institute on Drug Abuse. "Diagnosis and Treatment of Drug Abuse in Family Practice." NIDA Research Monograph. (2005) <<http://www.nida.nih.gov/Diagnosis-Treatment/diagnosis.html>>.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Center for Substance Abuse Treatment. "Buprenorphine." <<http://buprenorphine.samhsa.gov/about.html>>.

Susan Hobbs, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Developmental coordination disorder

### Definition

Developmental coordination disorder is diagnosed when children do not develop normal motor coordination (coordination of movements involving the voluntary muscles).

### Description

Developmental coordination disorder has been known by many other names, some of which are still used today. It has been called clumsy child syndrome, clumsiness, developmental disorder of motor function, and congenital maladroitness. Developmental coordination disorder is usually first recognized when a child fails to reach such normal developmental milestones as walking or beginning to dress him- or herself.

Children with developmental coordination disorder often have difficulty performing tasks that involve both large and small muscles, including forming letters when they write, throwing or catching balls, and buttoning buttons. Children who have developmental coordination disorder generally have developed normally in all other ways. The disorder can, however, lead to social or academic problems for children. Because of their underdeveloped coordination, they may choose not to participate in activities on the playground. This avoidance can lead to conflicts with or rejection by their peers. Also, children who have problems forming letters when they write by hand, or drawing pictures, may become discouraged and give up academic or artistic pursuits even though they have normal intelligence.

## Causes and symptoms

The symptoms of developmental coordination disorder vary greatly from child to child. The general characteristic is that the child has abnormal development of one or more types of motor skills when the child's age and intelligence quotient (IQ) are taken into account. In some children these coordination deficiencies manifest as an inability to tie shoes or catch a ball, while in other children they appear as an inability to draw objects or properly form printed letters.

Some investigators believe that there are different subtypes of developmental coordination disorder. While there is disagreement over how to define these different subtypes, they can provide a useful framework for the categorization of symptoms. There are six general groups of symptoms. These include:

- general unsteadiness and slight shaking
- an at-rest muscle tone that is below normal
- muscle tone that is consistently above normal
- inability to move smoothly because of problems putting together the subunits of the whole movement
- inability to produce written symbols
- visual perception problems related to development of the eye muscles

Children can have one or more of these types of motor difficulties.

Developmental coordination disorder usually becomes apparent when children fail to meet normal developmental milestones. Some children with developmental coordination disorder do not learn large motor skills such as walking, running, and climbing until a much later point in time than their peers. Others have problems with such small muscle skills as learning to fasten buttons, close or open zippers, or tie shoes. Some children have problems learning how to handle silverware properly. In others the disorder does not appear until they are expected to learn how to write in school. Some children just look clumsy and often walk into objects or drop things.

There are no known causes of developmental coordination disorder. There are, however, various theories about its possible causes. Some theories attribute the disorder to biological causes. Some of the possible biological causes include such prenatal complications as fetal malnutrition. Low birth weight or prematurity are thought to be possible causes, but there is no hard evidence supporting these claims.

## Demographics

It is estimated that as many as 6% of children between the ages of five and 11 have developmental coordination disorder. Males and females are thought to be equally likely to have this disorder, although males may be more likely to be diagnosed. Developmental coordination disorder and speech-language disorders seem to be closely linked, although it is not clear why this is the case. Children with one disorder are more likely to have the other as well.

## Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** of developmental coordination disorder is most commonly made when a child's parents or teachers notice that he or she is lagging behind peers in learning motor skills, is having learning problems in school, or has frequent injuries from falls and other accidents resulting from clumsiness. In most cases, the child's pediatrician will perform a physical examination in order to rule out problems with eyesight or hearing that interfere with muscular coordination, and to rule out disorders of the nervous system. In addition to a medical examination, a learning specialist or child **psychiatrist** may be consulted to rule out other types of learning disabilities.

The types of motor impairment that lead to a diagnosis of developmental coordination disorder are somewhat vague, as the disorder has different symptoms in different children. There are many ways in which this kind of motor coordination problem can manifest itself, all of which may serve as criteria for a diagnosis of developmental coordination disorder. The core of the diagnosis rests on the child's being abnormally clumsy. To make this determination, the child's motor coordination must be compared to that of other children of a similar age and intelligence level.

The difference between a child who has developmental coordination disorder and one who is simply clumsy and awkward can be hard to determine. For a child to be diagnosed with developmental coordination disorder there must be significant negative consequences for the child's clumsiness. The negative effects may be seen in the child's performance in school, activities at play, or other activities that are necessary on a day-to-day basis. Also, for developmental coordination disorder to be diagnosed, the child's problems with motor coordination cannot result from such general medical conditions as muscular dystrophy, and cannot result directly from **mental retardation**. Some criteria require that the child have an IQ of at least 70 to be diagnosed with developmental coordination disorder.

## Treatments

No treatments are known to work for all cases of developmental coordination disorder. Experts recommend that a specialized course of treatment, possibly involving work with an occupational therapist, be drawn up to address the needs of each child. Many children can be effectively helped in special education settings to work more intensively on such academic problems as letter formation. For other children, physical education classes designed to improve general motor coordination, with emphasis on skills the child can use in playing with peers, can be very successful. Any kind of physical training that allows the child to safely practice motor skills and motor control may be helpful.

It is important for children who have developmental coordination disorder to receive individualized therapy, because for many children the secondary problems that result from extreme clumsiness can be very distressing. Children who have developmental coordination disorder often have problems playing with their peers because of an inability to perform the physical movements involved in many games and sports. Unpopularity with peers or exclusion from their activities can lead to low self-esteem and poor self-image. Children may go to great lengths to avoid physical education classes and similar situations in which their motor coordination deficiencies might be noticeable. Treatments that focus on skills that are useful on the playground or in the gymnasium can help to alleviate or prevent these problems.

Children with developmental coordination disorder also frequently have problems writing letters and doing sums, or performing other motor activities required in the classroom—including coloring pictures, tracing designs, or making figures from **modeling** clay. These children may become frustrated by their inability to master tasks that their classmates find easy, and therefore may stop trying or become disruptive. Individualized programs designed to help children master writing or skills related to arts and crafts may help them regain confidence and interest in classroom activities.

## Prognosis

For many people, developmental coordination disorder lasts into adulthood. Through specialized attention and teaching techniques it is possible over time for many children to develop the motor skills that they lack. Some children, however, never fully develop

## KEY TERMS

**Maladroitness**—Another word for awkwardness or clumsiness.

**Motor skills**—Skills pertaining to or involving muscular movement.

the skills they need. Although many children improve their motor skills significantly, in most cases their motor skills will never match those of their peers at any given age.

## Prevention

There is no known way to prevent developmental coordination disorder, although a healthy diet throughout pregnancy and regular prenatal care may help, as they help to prevent many childhood problems.

*See also* Disorder of written expression.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Kadesjo, Bjorn, and Christopher Gillberg. "Developmental Coordination Disorder in Swedish 7-Year-Old Children." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 38 (July 1999): 820–29.

Rasmussen, Peder, and Christopher Gillberg. "Natural Outcome of ADHD with Developmental Coordination Disorder at Age 22 Years: A Controlled, Longitudinal, Community-Based Study." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 39 (Nov. 2000): 1424.

Smyth, Mary M., Heather I. Anderson, and A. Church. "Visual Information and the Control of Reaching in Children: A Comparison Between Children With and Without Developmental Coordination Disorder." *Journal of Motor Behavior* 33 (Sept. 2001): 306.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. Telephone: (847) 434-4000. <[www.aap.org](http://www.aap.org)>.

**OTHER**

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health.  
 “Developmental Coordination Disorder.” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001533.htm>>

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Developmental disorders see **Pervasive developmental disorders**

Developmental reading disorder see **Reading disorder**

Deviance see **Paraphilias**

Dexedrine see **Amphetamines**

Dextroamphetamine see **Amphetamines**

## Diagnosis

### Definition

Diagnosis can be defined as the identification and labeling of a disease based on its signs and symptoms. Mental health clinicians (psychiatrists, psychologists, and psychiatric nurse practitioners) diagnose mental disorders using the criteria listed in the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, also known as the **DSM**, published by the American Psychiatric Association (APA).

### Description

According to the **DSM**, fourth edition, text revised (the **DSM-IV-TR**), the term *mental disorder* is unfortunate because it implies that a mental disorder is separate from a physical illness, when actually, according to the APA, researchers and scientists now know that that distinction is not a clear one to make. The APA argues that “there is much ‘physical’ in ‘mental disorders’ and much ‘mental’ in ‘physical disorders,’” and continues to use the term “mental disorders” because a better term has not yet been found. The APA defines a mental disorder as “a clinically significant behavioral or psychological syndrome or pattern that occurs in an individual and that is associated with present distress or disability or with a significantly increased risk of suffering death, pain, disability, or an important loss of freedom.” Many people fear that when a mental disorder is classified, *people* are actually classified, and the **DSM-IV-TR** strives to contradict this notion. The APA believes their manual to be strictly a manual classifying mental disorders themselves, and does not advocate the use of the diagnoses to discriminate.

The manual lists various criteria for each mental disorder included in the book. When an individual seeks the help of a mental health clinician, the clinician interviews the client (along with family members when appropriate), gathers a medical history, and may administer psychological evaluations (various checklists or tests that the patient may complete) in order to establish a diagnosis. Once the clinician has gathered the necessary information, a diagnosis based on the symptoms may be assigned from the **DSM**.

One of the main purposes of diagnosis is to guide treatment planning. If doctors know that a particular disorder has shown to be treated effectively with a drug or with a specific therapy, then the best practice can be applied to a new case of that disorder. The diagnosis also helps to establish a prognosis for the patient and his or her family, and it helps to enable communication among the professionals (including insurers) involved in a patient’s care. Additionally, a formal diagnosis as recognized by the **DSM** may be necessary in order for insurers to pay for medical services. The act of labeling a mental disorder may have unintended effects for the person with the disorder, however. Although the **DSM** states that its diagnoses do not label people, in reality, many people who have received diagnoses of mental disorders may feel affected by the label their disorder has been given. People diagnosed with mental disorders may feel stigmatized, and that others’ perceptions of them—as well as their self-perceptions—have changed as a result of their diagnosis.

*See also Assessment and diagnosis; Stigma.*

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Allen, John J. B. “**DSM-IV**.” In *Encyclopedia of Mental Health*, edited by Howard S. Friedman. San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 1998.

American Psychiatric Association. ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***. Fourth edition, text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

## ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***

### Nature and purposes

The ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*** is a reference work consulted by psychiatrists, psychologists, physicians in clinical practice, **social workers**, medical and nursing students, pastoral counselors, and other professionals in health care and

social service fields. The book's title is often shortened to *DSM*, or an abbreviation that also indicates edition, such as *DSM-IV-TR*, which indicates fourth edition, text revision of the manual, published in 2000. The *DSM-IV-TR* provides a classification of mental disorders, criteria sets to guide the process of differential diagnosis, and numerical codes for each disorder to facilitate medical record-keeping. The stated purpose of the *DSM* is threefold: to provide "a helpful guide to clinical practice"; "to facilitate research and improve communication among clinicians and researchers"; and to serve as "an educational tool for teaching psychopathology."

### **The multi-axial system**

The third edition of *DSM*, or *DSM-III*, which was published in 1980, introduced a system of five axes or dimensions for assessing all aspects of a patient's mental and emotional health. The multi-axial system is designed to provide a more comprehensive picture of complex or concurrent mental disorders. According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, the system is also intended to "promote the application of the biopsychosocial model in clinical, educational and research settings." The reference to the biopsychosocial model is significant, because it indicates that the *DSM-IV-TR* does not reflect the view of any specific "school" or tradition within psychiatry regarding the cause or origin (also known as "etiology") of mental disorders. In other words, the *DSM-IV-TR* is atheoretical in its approach to diagnosis and classification—the axes and categories do not represent any overarching theory about the sources or fundamental nature of mental disorders.

The biopsychosocial approach was originally proposed by a **psychiatrist** named George Engel in 1977 as a way around the disputes between psychoanalytically and biologically oriented psychiatrists that were splitting the field in the 1970s. The introduction to *DSM-IV-TR* is quite explicit about the manual's intention to be "applicable in a wide variety of contexts" and "used by clinicians and researchers of many different orientations (e.g., biological, psychodynamic, cognitive, behavioral, interpersonal, family/systems)."

The atheoretical stance of *DSM-IV-TR* is also significant in that it underlies the manual's approach to the legal implications of mental illness. *DSM* notes the existence of an "imperfect fit between questions of ultimate concern to the law and the information contained in a clinical diagnosis." What is meant here is that the *DSM-IV-TR* diagnostic categories do not meet forensic standards for defining a "mental defect," "mental disability," or similar terms. Because *DSM-*

*IV-TR* states that "inclusion of a disorder in the classification . . . does not require that there be knowledge about its etiology," it advises legal professionals against basing decisions about a person's criminal responsibility, competence, or degree of behavioral control on *DSM* diagnostic categories.

The five diagnostic axes specified by *DSM-IV-TR* are:

- Axis I: Clinical disorders, including anxiety disorders, mood disorders, schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders.
- Axis II: Personality disorders and mental retardation. This axis includes notations about problematic aspects of the patient's personality that fall short of the criteria for a personality disorder.
- Axis III: General medical conditions. These include diseases or disorders that may be related physiologically to the mental disorder; that are sufficiently severe to affect the patient's mood or functioning; or that influence the choice of medications for treating the mental disorder.
- Axis IV: Psychosocial and environmental problems. These include conditions or situations that influence the diagnosis, treatment, or prognosis of the patient's mental disorder. *DSM-IV-TR* lists the following categories of problems: family problems; social environment problems; educational problems; occupational problems; housing problems; economic problems; problems with access to health care; problems with the legal system; and other problems (war, disasters, etc.).
- Axis V: Global assessment of functioning. Rating the patient's general level of functioning is intended to help the doctor draw up a treatment plan and evaluate treatment progress. The primary scale for Axis V is the Global Assessment of Functioning (GAF) Scale, which measures level of functioning on a scale of 1–100. *DSM-IV-TR* includes three specialized global scales in its appendices: the Social and Occupational Functioning Assessment Scale (SOFAS); the Defensive Functioning Scale; and the Global Assessment of Relational Functioning (GARF) Scale. The GARF is a measurement of the maturity and stability of the relationships within a family or between a couple.

### **Diagnostic categories**

The Axis I clinical disorders are divided among 15 categories: disorders usually first diagnosed in infancy, childhood, or adolescence; **delirium**, **dementia**, amnestic, and other cognitive disorders; medical disorders due to a general medical condition; substance-related disorders; schizophrenia and other

psychotic disorders; mood disorders; **anxiety** disorders; somatoform disorders; factitious disorders; **dissociative disorders**; sexual and gender identity disorders; eating disorders; **sleep disorders**; impulse control disorders not elsewhere classified; and **adjustment disorders**.

The diagnostic categories of *DSM-IV-TR* are essentially symptom-based, or, as the manual puts it, based “on criteria sets with defining features.” Another term that is sometimes used to describe this method of classification is phenomenological. A phenomenological approach to classification is one that emphasizes externally observable phenomena rather than their underlying nature or origin.

Another important characteristic of *DSM-IV-TR*'s classification system is its dependence on the medical model of mental disorders. Such terms as “psychopathology,” “mental illness,” “differential diagnosis,” and “prognosis” are all borrowed from medical practice. One should note, however, that the medical model is not the only possible conceptual framework for understanding mental disorders. Historians of Western science have observed that the medical model for psychiatric problems was preceded by what they term the supernatural model (mental disorders understood as acts of God or the result of demon possession), which dominated the field until the late seventeenth century. The supernatural model was followed by the moral model, which was based on the values of the Enlightenment and regarded mental disorders as bad behaviors deliberately chosen by perverse or ignorant individuals.

The medical model as it came to dominate psychiatry can be traced back to the work of Emil Kraepelin, an eminent German psychiatrist whose *Handbuch der Psychiatrie* was the first basic textbook in the field and introduced the first nosology, or systematic classification, of mental disorders. By the early 1890s Kraepelin's handbook was used in medical schools across Europe. He updated and revised it periodically to accommodate new findings, including a disease that he named after one of his clinical assistants, Alois Alzheimer. The classification in the 1907 edition of Kraepelin's handbook includes 15 categories, most of which are still used nearly a century later. Kraepelin is also important in the history of diagnostic classification because he represented a biologically based view of mental disorders in opposition to the psychoanalytical approach of Sigmund Freud. Kraepelin thought that mental disorders could ultimately be traced to organic diseases of the **brain** rather than disordered emotions or psychological processes. This controversy between the two perspectives dominated

psychiatric research and practice until well after World War II.

## Background of *DSM*

The American *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* goes back to the 1840s, when the United States Bureau of the Census attempted for the first time to count the numbers of patients confined in mental hospitals. Isaac Ray, superintendent of the Butler Hospital in Rhode Island, presented a paper at the 1849 meeting of the Association of Medical Superintendents of American Institutions for the Insane (the forerunner of the present American Psychiatric Association) in which he called for a uniform system of naming, classifying and recording cases of mental illness. The same plea was made in 1913 by Dr. James May of New York to the same organization, which by then had renamed itself the American Medico-Psychological Association. In 1933, the New York Academy of Medicine and the Medico-Psychological Association compiled the first edition of the *Statistical Manual for Mental Diseases*, which was also adopted by the American Neurological Association. The *Statistical Manual* went through several editions between 1933 and 1952, when the first edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* appeared. The task of compiling mental hospital statistics was turned over to the newly formed National Institute of Mental Health in 1949.

## *DSM-I* and *DSM-II*

*DSM-I*, which appeared in 1952, maintained the coding system of earlier American manuals. Many of the disorders in this edition were termed “reactions,” a term borrowed from a German psychiatrist named Adolf Meyer. Meyer viewed mental disorders as reactions of an individual's personality to a combination of psychological, social, and biological factors. *DSM-I* also incorporated the nomenclature for disorders developed by the United States Army and modified by the Veterans Administration (VA) to treat the postwar mental health problems of service personnel and veterans. The VA classification system grouped mental problems into three large categories: psychophysiological, personality, and acute disorders.

*DSM-II*, which was published in 1968, represented the first attempt to coordinate the American *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* with the World Health Organization's (WHO) *International Classification of Diseases*, or *ICD*. *DSM-II* appeared before the ninth edition of the *ICD*, or *ICD-9*, which was published in 1975. *DSM-II* continued *DSM-I*'s psychoanalytical approach to the

etiology of the nonorganic mental disorders and personality disorders.

### ***DSM-III, DSM-III-R and DSM-IV***

*DSM-III*, which was published in 1980 after six years of preparatory work, represented a major break with the first two editions of *DSM*. *DSM-III* introduced the present descriptive symptom-based or phenomenological approach to mental disorders, added lists of explicit diagnostic criteria, removed references to the etiology of disorders, did away with the term “neurosis,” and established the present multi-axial system of symptom evaluation. This sweeping change originated in an effort begun in the early 1970s by a group of psychiatrists at the medical school of Washington University in St. Louis to improve the state of research in American psychiatry. The St. Louis group began by drawing up a list of “research diagnostic criteria” for schizophrenia, a disorder that can manifest itself in a variety of ways. The group was concerned primarily with the identification of markers for schizophrenia that would allow the disease to be studied at other research sites without errors introduced by using different types of patients in different centers. What happened with *DSM-III*, *DSM-III-R*, and *DSM-IV*, however, was that a tool for scholarly investigation of a few mental disorders was transformed into a diagnostic method applied to all mental disorders without further distinction. The leaders of this transformation were biological psychiatrists who wanted to empty the diagnostic manual of terms and theories associated with hypothetical or explanatory concepts. The transition from an explanatory approach to mental disorders to a descriptive or phenomenological one in the period between *DSM-II* and *DSM-III* is sometimes called the “neo-Kraepelinian revolution” in the secondary literature. Another term that has been applied to the orientation represented in *DSM-III* and its successors is *empirical*, which denotes reliance on experience or experiment alone, without recourse to theories or hypotheses. The word occurs repeatedly in the description of “The *DSM-IV* Revision Process” in the Introduction to *DSM-IV-TR*.

*DSM-IV* built upon the research generated by the empirical orientation of *DSM-III*. By the early 1990s, most psychiatric diagnoses had an accumulated body of published studies or data sets. Publications up through 1992 were reviewed for *DSM-IV*, which was published in 1994. Conflicting reports or lack of evidence were handled by data reanalyses and field trials. The National Institute of Mental Health sponsored 12 *DSM-IV* field trials together with the National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA) and the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA). The field trials compared the diagnostic criteria sets of *DSM-III*, *DSM-III-R*, *ICD-10* (which had been published in 1992), and the proposed criteria sets for *DSM-IV*. The field trials recruited subjects from a variety of ethnic and cultural backgrounds, in keeping with a new concern for cross-cultural applicability of diagnostic standards. In addition to its inclusion of culture-specific syndromes and disorders, *DSM-IV* represented much closer cooperation and coordination with the experts from WHO who had worked on *ICD-10*. A modification of *ICD-10* for clinical practitioners, the *ICD-10-CM*, was introduced in the United States in 2004.

tute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA). The field trials compared the diagnostic criteria sets of *DSM-III*, *DSM-III-R*, *ICD-10* (which had been published in 1992), and the proposed criteria sets for *DSM-IV*. The field trials recruited subjects from a variety of ethnic and cultural backgrounds, in keeping with a new concern for cross-cultural applicability of diagnostic standards. In addition to its inclusion of culture-specific syndromes and disorders, *DSM-IV* represented much closer cooperation and coordination with the experts from WHO who had worked on *ICD-10*. A modification of *ICD-10* for clinical practitioners, the *ICD-10-CM*, was introduced in the United States in 2004.

### ***Textual revisions in DSM-IV-TR***

*DSM-IV-TR* does not represent either a fundamental change in the basic classification structure of *DSM-IV* or the addition of new diagnostic entities. The textual revisions that were made to the 1994 edition of *DSM-IV* fall under the following categories:

- correction of factual errors in the text of *DSM-IV*
- review of currency of information in *DSM-IV*
- changes reflecting research published after 1992, which was the last year included in the literature review prior to the publication of *DSM-IV*
- improvements to enhance the educational value of *DSM-IV*
- updating of *ICD* diagnostic codes, some of which were changed in 1996

### ***Critiques of DSM-IV and DSM-IV-TR***

A number of criticisms of *DSM-IV* have arisen since its publication in 1994. They include the following observations and complaints:

- The medical model underlying the empirical orientation of *DSM-IV* reduces human beings to one-dimensional sources of data; it does not encourage practitioners to treat the whole person.
- The medical model perpetuates the social stigma attached to mental disorders.
- The symptom-based criteria sets of *DSM-IV* have led to an endless multiplication of mental conditions and disorders. The unwieldy size of *DSM-IV* is a common complaint of doctors in clinical practice—a volume that was only 119 pages long in its second (1968) edition has swelled to 886 pages in less than thirty years.
- The symptom-based approach has also made it easier to politicize the process of defining new disorders for inclusion in *DSM* or dropping older ones. The

inclusion of post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) and the deletion of homosexuality as a disorder are often cited as examples of this concern for political correctness.

- The criteria sets of *DSM-IV* incorporate implicit (implied but not expressly stated) notions of human psychological well-being that do not allow for ordinary diversity among people. Some of the diagnostic categories of *DSM-IV* come close to defining various temperamental and personality differences as mental disorders.
- The *DSM-IV* criteria do not distinguish adequately between poor adaptation to ordinary problems of living and true psychopathology. One by-product of this inadequacy is the suspiciously high rates of prevalence reported for some mental disorders. One observer remarked that “... it is doubtful that 28% or 29% of the population would be judged [by managed care plans] to need mental health treatment in a year.”
- The 16 major diagnostic classes defined by *DSM-IV* hinder efforts to recognize disorders that run across classes. For example, PTSD has more in common with respect to etiology and treatment with the dissociative disorders than it does with the anxiety disorders with which it is presently grouped. Another example is body dysmorphic disorder, which resembles the obsessive-compulsive disorders more than it does the somatoform disorders.
- The current classification is deficient in acknowledging disorders of uncontrolled anger, hostility, and aggression. Even though inappropriate expressions of anger and aggression lie at the roots of major social problems, only one *DSM-IV* disorder (intermittent explosive disorder) is explicitly concerned with them. In contrast, entire classes of disorders are devoted to depression and anxiety.
- The emphasis of *DSM-IV* on biological psychiatry has contributed to the widespread popular notion that most problems of human life can be solved by taking pills.

### Alternative nosologies

A number of different nosologies or schemes of classification have been proposed to replace the current descriptive model of mental disorders.

#### *The dimensional model*

Dimensional alternatives to *DSM-IV* would replace the categorical classification now in use with a recognition that mental disorders lie on a continuum with mildly disturbed and normal behavior, rather than being qualitatively distinct. For example, the

personality disorders of Axis II are increasingly regarded as extreme variants of common personality characteristics. In the dimensional model, a patient would be identified in terms of his or her position on a specific dimension of cognitive or affective capacity rather than placed in a categorical “box.”

#### *The holistic model*

The holistic approach to mental disorders places equal emphasis on social and spiritual as well as pharmacological treatments. A biochemist who was diagnosed with schizophrenia and eventually recovered compared the reductionism of the biological model of his disorder with the empowering qualities of holistic approaches. He stressed the healing potential in treating patients as whole persons rather than as isolated collections of nervous tissue with chemical imbalances: “The major task in recovering from mental illness is to regain social roles and identities. This entails focusing on the individual and building a sense of responsibility and self-determination.”

#### *The essential or perspectival model*

The third and most complex alternative model is associated with the medical school of Johns Hopkins University, where it is taught as part of the medical curriculum. This model identifies four broad “essences” or perspectives that can be used to identify the distinctive characteristics of mental disorders, which are often obscured by the present categorical classifications.

The four perspectives are:

- Disease. This perspective works with categories and accounts for physical diseases or damage to the brain that produces psychiatric symptoms. It accounts for such disorders as Alzheimer’s disease or schizophrenia.
- Dimensions. This perspective addresses disorders that arise from the combination of a cognitive or emotional weakness in the patient’s constitution and a life experience that challenges their vulnerability.
- Behaviors. This perspective is concerned with disorders associated with something that the patient is doing (alcoholism, drug addiction, eating disorders, etc.) that has become a dysfunctional way of life.
- Life story. This perspective focuses on disorders related to what the patient has encountered in life, such as events that have injured his or her hopes and aspirations.

In the Johns Hopkins model, each perspective has its own approach to treatment: the disease perspective seeks to cure or prevent disorders rooted in biological disease processes; the dimensional perspective attempts to strengthen constitutional weaknesses; the behavioral

## KEY TERMS

**Atheoretical**—Unrelated to any specific theoretical approach or conceptual framework. The classification system of *DSM-IV-TR* is atheoretical.

**Differential diagnosis**—The process of distinguishing one disorder from other, similar disorders.

**Empirical**—Verified by actual experience or by scientific experimentation.

**Etiology**—The cause or origin of a disease or disorder. The word is also used to refer to the study of the causes of disease.

**Forensic**—Pertaining to courtroom procedure or evidence used in courts of law.

**Holistic**—An approach to health care that emphasizes the totality of an individual's well-being, spiritual and psychological as well as physical; and that situates a disease or disorder within that totality.

**Implicit**—Implied or suggested without being clearly stated. Some critics of *DSM-IV-TR* maintain that its contributors based the criteria sets for certain disorders on an implicit notion of a mentally healthy human being.

**Medical model**—The basic conceptual framework in the West since the nineteenth century for understanding, researching, and classifying mental disorders.

**Nosology**—The branch of medicine that deals with the systematic classification of diseases and disorders.

perspective seeks to interrupt the problematic behaviors and assist patients in overcoming their appeal; and the life story perspective offers help in "rescripting" a person's life narrative, usually through cognitive behavioral treatment.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Freeman, Hugh, ed. *A Century of Psychiatry*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 1999.

Kihlstrom, John F. "To Honor Kraepelin . . . : From Symptoms to Pathology in the Diagnosis of Mental Illness." In *Alternatives to the DSM*, edited by L. E. Beutler and M. L. Malik. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2000.

World Health Organization (WHO). *The ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural Disorders*. Geneva: WHO, 1992.

### PERIODICALS

Collins, Geneva. "Radical Makeover Proposed for DSM." *Clinical Psychiatry News* 29 (August 2001): 1.

Diamond, Ellen A. "A Conceptual Structure for Diagnoses." *Psychiatric Times* 18 (November 2001): 4-5.

Fisher, Daniel B. "Recovering from Schizophrenia." *Clinical Psychiatry News* 29 (November 2001): 30.

Kutchins, H., and S. A. Kirk. "DSM-III-R: The Conflict Over New Psychiatric Diagnoses." *Health and Social Work* 14 (May 1989): 91-101.

McHugh, Paul R. "How Psychiatry Lost Its Way." *Commentary* 108 (December 1999): 67-72.

McHugh, Paul R. "A Structure for Psychiatry at the Century's Turn: The View from Johns Hopkins." *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine* 85 (1992): 483-487.

Ozarin, Lucy D., MD. "DSM: A Brief Historical Note." *Psychiatric News* (April 3, 1998).

"Psychiatrists Call for Overhaul of Unwieldy DSM." *Clinical Psychiatry News* 29 (October 2001): 20.

Widiger, T. A. "Adult Psychopathology: Issues and Controversies." *Annual Review of Psychology* (2000).

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street, NW, Washington, DC 20005. <[www.psych.org](http://www.psych.org)>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>

### OTHER

Young, Robert M. "Between Nosology and Narrative: Where Should We Be?" Lecture delivered to the Toronto Psychoanalytic Society, Toronto, Canada. January 8, 1999.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Diazepam

### Definition

Diazepam is a mild tranquilizer in the class of drugs known as **benzodiazepines**. It is most commonly sold in the United States under the brand name Valium®. The generic form of this drug is also available.

### Purpose

Diazepam is used on a short-term basis to treat patients with mild to moderate **anxiety**. It is also used to treat some types of **seizures** (epilepsy), muscle spasms, nervous tension, and symptoms relating to alcohol withdrawal.

## Description

Diazepam is one of many chemically related tranquilizers in the class of drugs called benzodiazepines. Benzodiazepines are sedative-hypnotic drugs that help to relieve nervousness, tension, and other anxiety symptoms by slowing the central nervous system. To do this, they block the effects of a specific chemical involved in the transmission of nerve impulses in the **brain**, decreasing the excitement level of the nerve cells. All benzodiazepines, including diazepam, cause sedation, drowsiness, and reduced mental and physical alertness.

## Recommended dosage

The typical dose of diazepam used to treat anxiety or seizures in healthy adults ranges from a total of 6 milligrams (mg) to 40 mg per day given in three or four doses. Elderly people (over age 60) are usually given lower doses in the range of 4–10 mg per day to treat anxiety or nervous tension. For acute treatment of seizures, a higher dose of diazepam is given intravenously (directly into the vein) only in a controlled medical setting such as a hospital or emergency room. For alcohol withdrawal, the typical dose is a total of 30–40 mg per day given in three or four doses.

The typical dose for a child over age six months with anxiety or seizures is a total of 3–10 mg per divided into several doses. In general, children receive lower doses of diazepam even when they have a body weight equivalent to a small adult. Diazepam is usually taken as a pill, but an injectable form is sometimes used when a serious seizure is in progress or when muscle spasms are severe. There is a liquid oral form of the drug available, and diazepam is also available as a rectal gel, marketed as Diastat AcuDial®.

## Precautions

The elderly, children, and those with significant health problems need to be carefully evaluated before receiving diazepam. Children under the age of six months should not take diazepam. In addition, people with a history of liver disease, kidney disease, or those with low levels of a protein in the blood called albumin need to be carefully assessed before starting this drug.

People taking diazepam should not drive, operate dangerous machinery, or engage in hazardous activities that require mental alertness, because diazepam can cause drowsiness. Alcohol and any drugs that treat mental illness should not be used when taking this medication. People who have previously had an allergic reaction to any dosage level of diazepam or

any other benzodiazepine drug should not take diazepam. People with acute narrow-angle glaucoma should not take diazepam.

The prescribing physician should be consulted regularly if diazepam is taken consistently for more than two weeks. Diazepam and other drugs in this class can be habit-forming. Diazepam can become a drug of **abuse** and should be used with caution in patients with history of **substance abuse**. People taking diazepam should not stop taking the drug abruptly. This can lead to withdrawal effects such as shaking, stomach cramps, nervousness, and irritability.

## Side effects

Anxiety, irregular heartbeat, forgetfulness, mental **depression**, and confusion are side effects that could require prompt medical attention. However, these side effects are not common when taking diazepam. Even more unusual but serious events are behavior changes, low blood pressure, muscle weakness, and the yellowing of the eyes or skin (jaundice). More common but less serious side effects include drowsiness, clumsiness, slurred speech, and dizziness. Rare among these less serious side effects are stomach cramps, headache, muscle spasm, nausea, vomiting, and dry mouth.

Once a person stops taking diazepam, the following side effects could occur from withdrawal: sleeping difficulties, nervousness, and irritability. Less common side effects from withdrawal include confusion, abdominal cramps, mental depression, sensitivity to light, nausea, shaking, and increased sweating. Rarely seen side effects include seizures, **hallucinations**, and feelings of distrust in the patient.

## Interactions

Diazepam interacts with a long list of other medications. Anyone starting this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. Patients should always inform all their health-care providers, including dentists, that they are taking diazepam. Diazepam can add to the depressive effects of other central nervous system depressant drugs (for example, alcohol, other tranquilizers, or sleeping pills) when taken together. In severe cases, this can result in death.

Several drugs reduce the ability of diazepam to be broken down and cleared from the body. This results in higher levels of the drug in the blood and increases the probability that side effects will occur. These drugs include several antibiotics, such as erythromycin, anti-stomach acid drugs, such as cimetidine (Tagamet®), and

## KEY TERMS

**Albumin**—A simple protein that is widely distributed in human blood.

**Anxiety**—A feeling of apprehension and fear characterized by physical symptoms (heart palpitations, sweating, and feelings of stress, for example).

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Tranquilizer**—A medication that induces a feeling of calm and relaxation.

antifungal drugs, such as fluconazole. Alcohol should not be used when taking diazepam and other benzodiazepine drugs. There may also be an interaction between this drug and grapefruit juice. Other drugs that are used to treat mental disorders should not be combined with diazepam unless the patient is under the careful supervision and monitoring of a doctor.

Those who rely on urine tests to monitor blood sugar should know that this drug can produce false results with tests using Clinistix and Diastix, and that they should instead use TesTape for urine testing of sugar.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Consumer Reports Staff. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*, 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.

Ellsworth, Allan J. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*, 2001–2002 ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.

Hardman, Joel G., Lee E. Limbird, eds. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

Mosby's GenRx Staff. *Mosby's GenRx*, 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1999.

Venes, Donald, and others. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*, 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

### OTHER

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Diazepam." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682047.html>>.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration. "Diazepam Rectal Gel, Patient Information." <[http://www.fda.gov/CDER/DRUG/InfoSheets/patient/diazepam\\_RGPIS.pdf](http://www.fda.gov/CDER/DRUG/InfoSheets/patient/diazepam_RGPIS.pdf)>.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration. "Diazepam Rectal Gel Drug Information Sheet." <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/foi/label/2005/020648s008lbl.pdf>>.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Diets

### Definition

Special diets are designed to help individuals make changes in their usual eating habits or food selection. Some special diets involve changes in the overall diet, such as diets for people needing to gain or lose weight or eat more healthfully. Other special diets are designed to help a person limit or avoid certain foods or dietary components that could interfere with the activity of a medication. Still other special diets are designed to counter nutritional effects of certain medications.

### Purpose

Special diets are used in the treatment of people with certain mental disorders to:

- identify and correct disordered eating patterns.
- prevent or correct nutritional deficiencies or excesses.
- prevent interactions between foods or nutrients and medications.

Special types of diets or changes in eating habits have been suggested for people with certain mental disorders. In some disorders, such as eating disorders or **substance abuse**, dietary changes are an integral part of therapy. In other disorders, such as **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder**, various proposed diets have questionable therapeutic value.

Many medications for mental disorders can affect a person's appetite or nutrition-related functions such as saliva production, ability to swallow, bowel function, and activity level. Changes in diet or food choices may be required to help prevent negative effects of medications.

Finally, interactions can occur between some medications used to treat people with mental disorders and certain foods or nutritional components of the diet. For example, grapefruit and apple juice can interact with some specific psychotropic drugs (medications taken for psychiatric conditions) and should be avoided by individuals taking those medicines.

Tyramine, a natural substance found in aged or fermented foods, can interfere with the functioning of monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) and must be restricted in individuals using these types of medications. A person's preexisting medical condition and nutritional needs should be taken into account when designing any special diet.

## Special diets for specific disorders

### *Eating disorders*

The two main types of eating disorders are **anorexia nervosa** and **bulimia nervosa**. Individuals with anorexia nervosa starve themselves, whereas individuals with bulimia nervosa usually have normal or slightly above normal body weight but engage in **binge eating** followed by purging with laxatives, vomiting, or exercise.

Special diets for individuals with eating disorders focus on restoration of normal body weight and control of bingeing and purging. These diets are usually carried out under the supervision of a multidisciplinary team, including a physician, **psychologist**, and dietitian.

The overall dietary goal for individuals with anorexia nervosa is to restore a healthy body weight. An initial goal might be to stop weight loss and improve food choices. Energy intake is then increased gradually until normal weight is restored. Because individuals with anorexia nervosa have an intense fear of gaining weight and becoming fat, quantities of foods eaten are increased very slowly so that the patient will continue treatments and therapy.

The overall dietary goal for individuals with bulimia nervosa is to gain control over eating behavior and to achieve a healthy body weight. An initial goal is to stabilize weight and eating patterns to help individuals gain control over the binge-purge cycle. Meals and snacks are eaten at regular intervals to lessen the possibility that hunger and fasting will trigger a binge. Once eating behaviors have been stabilized, energy intake can be gradually adjusted to allow individuals to reach normal body weights healthfully.

For individuals with either anorexia nervosa or bulimia, continued follow-up and support are required even after normal weight and eating behaviors are restored, particularly since the rate of **relapse** is quite high. In addition to dietary changes, **psychotherapy** is an essential part of the treatment of eating disorders and helps individuals deal with fears and misconceptions about body weight and eating behavior.

### *Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder*

Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) accounts for a substantial portion of referrals to child mental health services. Children with ADHD are inappropriately active, easily frustrated or distracted, impulsive, and have difficulty sustaining concentration. Usual treatment of ADHD involves medication, behavioral management, and education.

Many dietary factors have been proposed as causes of ADHD, including sugar, food additives, and food allergies. In the 1970s the Feingold diet became popular for treatment of ADHD. The Feingold diet excludes artificial colorings and flavorings, natural sources of chemicals called salicylates (found in fruits), and preservatives called BHT and BHA. Although scientific evidence does not support the effectiveness of the Feingold diet, a modified Feingold diet including fruits has been shown to be nutritionally balanced and should not be harmful as long as the child continues to receive conventional ADHD treatment also.

A high intake of sugar and sugary foods has also been implicated as a cause of ADHD. Although carefully controlled studies have shown no association between sugar and ADHD, diets high in sugar should be discouraged because they are often low in other nutrients and can contribute to dental problems.

Food allergies have also been implicated as a cause of ADHD, and some groups have suggested using elimination diets to treat ADHD. Elimination diets omit foods that most commonly cause allergies in children, such as eggs, milk, peanuts, or shellfish. Although research does not support the value of elimination diets for all children with ADHD, children with specific food allergies can become irritable and restless. Children with a suspected food allergy should be evaluated by an allergist.

Stimulant medications used to treat ADHD, such as **methylphenidate** (Ritalin), can cause appetite loss (anorexia) and retard growth, although recent research suggests that a child's ultimate height appears not to be affected by stimulant medications. As a precaution, children on such medicines should receive close monitoring of growth patterns, and parents should carefully observe their child's appetite and interest in meals and snacks. Providing regular meals and snacks, even when the child is not hungry, can help to assure adequate growth.

### *Mood disorders*

Mood disorders include both **depression** (unipolar disorder) and episodes of mania followed by depression

**(bipolar disorder).** Both types of disorders can affect appetite and eating behavior.

Although some individuals with depression eat more than usual and gain weight, depression more often causes loss of appetite and weight loss. As individuals with depression lose interest in eating and social relationships, they often skip meals and ignore feelings of hunger. Unintentional weight losses of up to 15% of body mass can occur.

Treatment with antidepressant medications often reverses weight loss and restores appetite and interest in eating. If individuals have lost a significant amount of weight, they may need to follow a high-calorie diet to restore weight to normal levels and replaced nutritional deficiencies. High-calorie diets usually include three balanced meals from all the food groups and several smaller snacks throughout the day. A protein/calorie supplement may also be necessary for some individuals.

Depression is sometimes treated with (MAOIs). Individuals on these medications will need to follow a tyramine-restricted diet.

Individuals with mania are often treated with lithium. Sodium and caffeine intake can affect lithium levels in the blood, and intake of these should not suddenly be increased or decreased. Weight gain can occur in response to some antidepressant medications and lithium.

### Schizophrenia

Individuals with **schizophrenia** can have **hallucinations**, delusional thinking, and bizarre behavior. These distorted behaviors and thought processes can also be extended to **delusions** and hallucinations about food and diet, making people with schizophrenia at risk for poor nutrition.

Individuals with schizophrenia may believe that certain foods are poisonous or have special properties. They may think they hear voices telling them not to eat. Some may eat huge quantities of food thinking that it gives them special powers. Individuals with untreated schizophrenia may lose a significant amount of weight. Delusional beliefs and thinking about food and eating usually improve once individuals are started on medication to treat schizophrenia.

### Substance abuse

Substance **abuse** can include abuse of alcohol, cigarettes, marijuana, **cocaine**, or other drugs. Individuals abusing any of these substances are at risk for nutritional problems. Many of these substances can

reduce appetite, decrease absorption of nutrients into the body, and cause individuals to make poor food choices.

Special diets used for withdrawal from substance abuse are designed to correct any nutritional deficiencies that have developed, aid in the withdrawal of the substance, and prevent the individual from making unhealthful food substitutions as the addictive substance is withdrawn. For example, some individuals may compulsively overeat when they stop smoking, leading to weight gain. Others may substitute caffeine-containing beverages such as soda or coffee for an addictive drug. Such harmful substitutions should be discouraged, emphasizing well-balanced eating combined with adequate rest, **stress** management, and regular exercise. Small, frequent meals and snacks that are rich in vitamins and minerals from healthful foods should be provided. Fluid intake should be generous, but caffeine-containing beverages should be limited.

Individuals withdrawing from alcohol may need extra thiamin supplementation, either intravenously or through a multivitamin supplement because alcohol metabolism in the body requires extra thiamin. Individuals taking drugs to help them avoid alcohol will need to avoid foods with even small amounts of alcohol.

Common withdrawal symptoms and dietary suggestions for coping with these symptoms include:

- **appetite loss:** Eat small, frequent meals and snacks; limit caffeine; and use nutritional supplements if necessary.
- **appetite increase:** Eat regular meals; eat a variety of foods; and limit sweets and caffeine.
- **diarrhea:** Eat moderate amounts of fresh fruits, vegetables, concentrated sugars, juices, and milk; and increase intake of cereal fiber.
- **constipation:** Drink plenty of fluids; increase fiber in the diet; and increase physical activity.
- **fatigue:** Eat regular meals; limit sweets and caffeine; and drink plenty of fluid.

## Dietary considerations and medications

### Medications that affect body weight

Many medications used to treat mental disorders promote weight gain, including:

- anticonvulsants (divalproex)
- certain types of antidepressants (amitriptyline)
- antipsychotic medications (clozapine, olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone)

Dietary treatments for individuals taking these medications should focus on a balanced, low-fat diet coupled with an increase in physical activity to counter the side effects of these medications. Nutrient-rich foods such as fruits, vegetables, and whole grain products should be emphasized in the diet, whereas sweets, fats, and other foods high in energy but low in nutrients should be limited. Regular physical activity can help limit weight gain caused by these medications.

Some medications can cause loss of appetite, restlessness, and weight loss. Individuals on such medications should eat three balanced meals and several smaller snacks of protein and calorie-rich foods throughout the day. Eating on a regular schedule rather than depending on appetite can help prevent weight loss associated with loss of appetite.

#### *Medications that affect gastrointestinal function*

Many psychiatric medications can affect gastrointestinal functioning. Some drugs can cause dry mouth, difficulty swallowing, constipation, altered taste, heartburn, diarrhea, or nausea. Consuming frequent smaller meals, drinking adequate fluids, modifying texture of foods if necessary, and increasing fiber content of foods can help counter gastrointestinal effects of medications.

#### *Monoamine oxidase inhibitors*

Individuals being treated with MAOIs such as **tranylcypromine**, **phenelzine**, and isocarboxazid, must carefully follow a tyramine-restricted diet. Tyramine, a nitrogen-containing substance normally present in certain foods, is usually broken down in the body by oxidase. However, in individuals taking MAOIs, tyramine is not adequately broken down and builds up in the blood, causing the blood vessels to constrict and increasing blood pressure.

Tyramine is normally found in many foods, especially protein-rich foods that have been aged or fermented, pickled, or bacterially contaminated. Cheese is especially high in tyramine. A tyramine intake of less than 5 mg daily is recommended. A diet that includes even just 6 mg of tyramine can increase blood pressure; a diet that provides 25 mg of tyramine can cause life-threatening increases in blood pressure.

**TYRAMINE-RESTRICTED DIET.** Tyramine is found in aged, fermented, and spoiled food products. The tyramine content of a specific food can vary greatly depending on storage conditions, ripeness, or contamination. Reaction to tyramine-containing foods in individuals taking MAOIs can also vary greatly

depending on what other foods are eaten with the tyramine-containing food, the length of time between MAOI dose and eating the food, and individual characteristics such as weight, age, etc.

Foods to avoid on a tyramine-controlled diet include:

- all aged and mature cheeses or cheese spreads, including foods made with these cheeses, such as salad dressings, casseroles, or certain breads
- any outdated or nonpasteurized dairy products
- dry fermented sausages such as summer sausage, pepperoni, salami, or pastrami
- smoked or pickled fish
- nonfresh meat or poultry
- leftover foods containing meat or poultry
- tofu and soy products
- overripe, spoiled, or fermented fruits or vegetables
- sauerkraut
- fava or broad beans
- soups containing meat extracts or cheese
- gravies containing meat extracts or nonfresh meats
- tap beer
- nonalcoholic beer
- yeast extracts
- soy sauce
- liquid powdered protein supplements

Perishable refrigerated items such as milk, meat, or fruit should be eaten within 48 hours of purchase. Any spoiled food and food stored in questionable conditions should not be eaten.

#### *Lithium*

Lithium is often used to treat individuals with mania. Lithium can cause nausea, vomiting, anorexia, diarrhea, and weight gain. Almost one-half of individuals taking lithium gain weight.

Individuals taking lithium should maintain a fairly constant intake of sodium (found in table salt and other food additives) and caffeine in their diet. If an individual restricts sodium intake, less lithium is excreted in the urine and blood lithium levels rise. If an individual increases caffeine intake, more lithium is excreted in the urine and blood levels of lithium fall.

#### *Anticonvulsant medications*

Sodium caseinate and calcium caseinate can interfere with the action and effectiveness of some anticonvulsants. Individuals taking these drugs should

read labels carefully to avoid foods containing these additives.

### ***Psychotropic medications***

Some psychotropic medications, such as amitriptyline, can decrease absorption of the vitamin riboflavin from food. Good food sources of riboflavin include milk and milk products, liver, red meat, poultry, fish, whole grain, and enriched breads and cereals. Riboflavin supplements may also be needed.

Other psychotropic drugs, such as **fluvoxamine**, **sertraline**, fesasodone, **alprazolam**, **triazolam**, midazolam, **carbamazepine**, and **clonazepam**, interact with grapefruit juice, so individuals taking these drugs must take care to avoid grapefruit juice. In some cases, apple juice must be avoided as well. Patients should discuss potential drug interactions with their doctors or pharmacists.

### **Caffeine-restricted diet**

Caffeine is a stimulant and can interfere with the actions of certain medications. As stated, people taking lithium and people recovering from addictions may be asked by their treatment team to monitor (and, in the case of addictions, restrict) their caffeine intake. Foods and beverages high in caffeine include:

- chocolate
- cocoa mix and powder
- chocolate ice cream, milk, and pudding
- coffee
- cola beverages
- tea

### **Alcohol-restricted diet**

Alcohol interacts with some medications used to treat mental disorders. In the case of alcoholism recovery, the negative interaction resulting from the combination of one medication (**disulfiram** or Antabuse) and alcohol consumption is actually part of treatment for some people. (The medication causes an extremely unpleasant reaction when any alcohol is consumed, reinforcing or rewarding the avoidance of alcohol.)

When individuals are taking medication that requires that they avoid alcohol, foods containing alcohol must be avoided as well as beverage alcohol. The following foods contain small amounts of alcohol:

- flavor extracts, such as vanilla, almond, or rum flavorings
- cooking wines
- candies or cakes prepared or filled with liqueur

## **KEY TERMS**

**Anorexia**—Loss of appetite or unwillingness to eat. Can be caused by medications, depression, or many other factors.

**Anorexia nervosa**—An eating disorder characterized by an intense fear of weight gain accompanied by a distorted perception of one's own underweight body.

**Binge**—An excessive amount of food consumed in a short period of time. Usually, while people binge eat, they feel disconnected from reality, and feel unable to stop. The binging may temporarily relieve depression or anxiety, but after the binge, they usually feel guilty and depressed.

**Bulimia nervosa**—An eating disorder characterized by binges in which large amounts of food are consumed, followed by forced vomiting.

**Psychotropic drug**—Medication that has an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**Purge**—When a person rids extra food consumed by inducing vomiting, laxative abuse, or excessive exercise.

**Relapse**—People experience relapses when they reengage in behaviors that are harmful and that they were trying to change or eliminate. Relapse is a common occurrence after treatment for many disorders, including addictions and eating disorders.

**Thiamin**—A B-vitamin that is essential to normal metabolism and nerve function, and whose absorption is affected by alcoholism.

**Tyramine**—An intermediate product between the chemicals tyrosine and epinephrine in the body and a substance normally found in many foods. It is found especially in protein-rich foods that have been aged or fermented, pickled, or bacterially contaminated, such as cheese, beer, yeast, wine, and chicken liver.

- apple cider
- cider and wine vinegar
- commercial eggnog
- bernaise or bordelaise sauces
- desserts such as crepes suzette or cherries jubilee
- teriyaki sauce
- fondues

*See also* Nutrition counseling; Nutrition and mental health.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Logue, Alexandra. *The Psychology of Eating and Drinking*. 3rd ed. New York: Routledge, 2004.  
 Bronner, Felix. *Nutritional Aspects and Clinical Management of Chronic Disorders and Diseases*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Daubenmier, Jennifer J., and others. "The Contribution of Changes in Diet, Exercise, and Stress Management to Changes in Coronary Risk in Women and Men in the Multisite Cardiac Lifestyle Intervention Program." *Annals of Behavioral Medicine* 33.1 (Feb. 2007): 57–68.  
 Groesz, Lisa M., and Eric Stice. "An Experimental Test of the Effects of Dieting on Bulimic Symptoms: The Impact of Eating Episode Frequency." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 45.1 (Jan. 2007): 49–62.  
 Hagler, Athena S., and others. "Psychosocial Correlates of Dietary Intake Among Overweight and Obese Men." *American Journal of Health Behavior* 31.1 (Jan.–Feb. 2007): 3–12.  
 Jabs, Jennifer, and Carol M. Devine. "Time Scarcity and Food Choices: An Overview." *Appetite* 47.2 (Sept. 2006): 196–204.  
 Leung, Newman, and Emma Price. "Core Beliefs in Dieters and Eating Disordered Women." *Eating Behaviors* 8.1 (Jan. 2007): 65–72.  
 Mobbs, Charles V., and others. "Low-Carbohydrate Diets Cause Obesity, Low-Carbohydrate Diets Reverse Obesity: A Metabolic Mechanism Resolving the Paradox." *Appetite* 48.2 (Mar. 2007): 135–38.  
 Payne, Martha E., and others. "Vascular Nutritional Correlates of Late-Life Depression." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.9 (Sept. 2006): 787–95.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Dietetic Association. 216 West Jackson Boulevard, Chicago, IL, 60606-6995. Web site: <<http://www.eatright.org>>.

Nancy Gustafson, MS, RD, F.A.D.A., E.L.S.  
 Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD



**Diphenhydramine capsule.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

sickness, **insomnia**, cough, and nausea. When diphenhydramine is used for allergy-related symptoms, it is sold in the United States as an over-the-counter medication Benadryl. For use in the treatment of the tremors caused by phenothiazines, diphenhydramine is prescribed in the generic form.

## Purpose

Some drugs called phenothiazines are used to treat psychotic disorder such as **schizophrenia**. As a side effect, these drugs may cause tremors and abnormal involuntary movements of the muscles, referred to as extrapyramidal neurologic **movement disorders**. Diphenhydramine is used to control these symptoms. Other uses of the drug include the treatment of nausea, vomiting, and itching. Diphenhydramine is used to help limit allergic reactions to transfused blood products. It can induce sleep. It is sometimes used to treat the stiffness and tremor of Parkinson's disease. In liquid form, it may relieve minor throat irritation.

## Description

Diphenhydramine is an antihistamine that is readily distributed throughout the body. It is easily absorbed when taken by mouth. Maximal action occurs approximately one hour after swallowing the drug. The effects continue for four to six hours. Diphenhydramine acts on cells in the **brain**. It seems to compete with the chemical histamine for specific receptor sites on cells in the brain and central nervous system. This means that it achieves its therapeutic effect by taking the place of the neurotransmitter histamine on these cells. Diphenhydramine is a useful medication for individuals with mild parkinsonism when it is used in combination with centrally acting anticholinergic drugs.

## Diphenhydramine

### Definition

Diphenhydramine is an antihistamine used in psychiatric medicine to treat phenothiazine drug-induced abnormal muscle movement. It is also used in general medicine to treat allergies, allergic reactions, motion

## Recommended dosage

The dosage of diphenhydramine must be adjusted according to the needs of individuals and their responses. Adults are generally given 25–50 mg orally, three to four times daily. Diphenhydramine may be administered through a vein or injected deep within a muscle. The usual dosage is 10–50 mg per injection, although some people may require 100 mg. The total daily dosage should not exceed 400 mg. People who forget to take a dose of this drug should skip the dose and take the next one at the regularly scheduled time. They should not double up subsequent doses if one is missed.

People should not take diphenhydramine if they are taking other preparations that contain antihistamines unless specifically directed to do so by a physician.

## Precautions

People with peptic ulcer disease, bowel obstructions, an enlarged prostate, angle closure glaucoma, or difficulty urinating due to a blockage in the bladder should not use diphenhydramine without close physician supervision and monitoring. People with asthma, heart disease, high blood pressure, or an overactive thyroid should use this drug with caution. Before taking diphenhydramine, people with these conditions should discuss the risks and benefits of this drug with their doctor. Individuals should not take diphenhydramine for several days before an allergy test, as it will interfere with the results.

Elderly people are more sensitive to the sedating effects of diphenhydramine. The drug may also lower blood pressure and cause dizziness. Older people should slowly change position from sitting or lying to standing while taking this medication to prevent dizziness and fainting.

## Side effects

Drowsiness commonly occurs after taking diphenhydramine. This effect may be more pronounced if alcohol or any other central nervous system depressant, such as a tranquilizer or a particular medication for pain, is also taken. People taking the drug should not drive, operate machinery, or perform hazardous tasks requiring mental alertness until the effects of the medication have worn off. In some people, diphenhydramine also may cause dizziness, difficulties with coordination, confusion, restlessness, nervousness, difficulty sleeping, blurry or double vision, ringing in the ears, headache, or convulsions.

## KEY TERMS

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Extrapyramidal movement disorders**—Involuntary movements that occur as a side effect of some psychiatric medications.

**Histamine**—Substance released during allergic reactions.

**Hypokinesia**—A condition of abnormally diminished motor activity.

**Parkinson's disease**—A disease of the nervous system most common in people over 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness.

**Parkinsonism**—A condition caused by the destruction of the brain cells that produce dopamine (a neurotransmitter); characterized by tremors of the fingers and hands, a shuffling gait, and muscular rigidity.

**Phenothiazine**—A class of drugs widely used in the treatment of psychosis.

Stomach distress is a relatively common side effect of diphenhydramine. Some people may develop poor appetites, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, or constipation. Individuals also may experience low blood pressure, palpitations, rapid or irregular heartbeats, frequent urination, or difficulty urinating. Urine may be retained in the bladder. Other side effects of diphenhydramine are associated with persons in age groups that are unlikely to use the drug.

Diphenhydramine may also cause hives, a rash, sensitivity to the sun, and a dry mouth and nose. Thickened lung secretions are common among older persons.

## Interactions

Alcohol, pain medications, sleeping pills, tranquilizers, and **antidepressants** may make the drowsiness associated with diphenhydramine more severe.

Diphenhydramine should not be used by persons taking hay-fever medicines, **sedatives**, narcotics, anesthetics, **barbiturates**, or muscle relaxants.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Foreman, John C. and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*, 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.

Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

Grillon, Christian, and others. "The Benzodiazepine Alprazolam Dissociates Contextual Fear from Cued Fear in Humans as Assessed by Fear-Potentiated Startle." *Biological Psychiatry* 60.7 (Oct. 2006): 760–66.

Khoromi, Suzan, and others. "Topiramate in Chronic Lumbar Radicular Pain." *Journal of Pain* 6.12 (Dec. 2005): 829–36.

Scaife, J. C., and others. "Sensitivity of Late-Latency Auditory and Somatosensory Evoked Potentials to Threat of Electric Shock and the Sedative Drugs Diazepam and Diphenhydramine in Human Volunteers." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 20.4 (July 2006): 485–95.

Turner, Claire, Alison D. F. Handford, and Anthony N. Nicholson. "Sedation and Memory: Studies with a Histamine H-1 Receptor Antagonist." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 20.4 (July 2006): 506–17.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org>>.

American College of Physicians. 190 N Independence Mall West, Philadelphia, PA 19106-1572. Telephone: (800) 523-1546, ext. 2600 or (215) 351-2600. Web site: <<http://www.acponline.org>>.

American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org>>.

American Parkinson Disease Association, Inc. 1250 Hylan Boulevard Suite 4B, Staten Island, NY 10305-1946. Telephone: (800) 223-2732 or (718) 981-8001. Fax: (718) 981-4399. Web site: <<http://www.apdaparkinson.com>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax (202) 682-6850.

American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981. Fax: 703-836-5223.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060.

Parkinson's Disease Foundation. 710 West 168th Street, New York, NY 10032-9982. Telephone: (800) 457-6676 or (212) 923-4700. Fax: (212) 923-4778. Web site: <<http://www.pdf.org>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr, MD, Dr.P.H.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Disease concept of chemical dependency

### Definition

Disease concept of chemical dependency is the concept that a disorder (such as chemical dependency) is like a disease and has a characteristic set of signs, symptoms, and natural history (clinical course, or outcome).

### Description

The disease concept has long been accepted by the medical community. The concept proposes that a disease is characterized by a specific set of signs and symptoms and that the disease, if left untreated, will progress to some endpoint or outcome (clinical course). However, controversy arises when the medical community is faced with new abnormal conditions, owing mostly to the new technologies in genetic engineering. This controversy becomes especially apparent when examining psychological disorders.

In the past, psychological disorders were thought in general to be due to both psychological and social abnormalities. Although these psychosocial problems are still of utmost importance, researchers have since discovered that many psychological disorders, such as alcoholism, also have genetic causes. Recent studies have identified a genetic area (locus) where a gene is located that can transmit alcoholism from affected father to son. Mental health professionals also know from clinical experience that alcoholics demonstrate a characteristic set of specific signs and symptoms. Additionally, it is well established that the ultimate clinical course for untreated alcoholism is death. Therefore alcoholism, once thought to be a disorder of those with a weak will, or "party people" can now be characterized as a disease.

Can it be inferred that other chemical dependencies may also have biological causes? There is compelling evidence that this theory may be correct. It is interesting to note that all psychoactive mood-altering

drugs (alcohol, **cocaine**, marijuana, heroin, etc.) act in specific sites in the **brain** and on a specific neurotransmitter (a chemical that delivers impulses from one nerve cell to another) called **dopamine**. These mood-altering substances cause dopamine depletion, inducing an abnormality in nerve cells that “hijacks” the cells into chemical dependence. In other words, the substance introduced in the body affects the dopamine in a way that makes the affected individual unable to experience everyday pleasures—the individual instead needs that substance to experience pleasure. Thus the individual’s driving force is any drug that can provide some kind of transient happiness (euphoria). In fact, the gene for alcoholism is located in the dopamine molecule. This can further suggest that chemical dependencies may have a medical (biological) cause.

The disease concept of chemical dependency is gaining worldwide acceptance, but does have some critics who argue instead that **addiction** must be understood as a general pattern of behavior, not as a medical problem. Advocates of the disease concept of chemical dependency model maintain that the identification of biological causes or correlations is crucially important for treatment. They argue that if clinicians can understand the intricate details concerning the mechanisms associated with drug effects, then measures to interrupt the effects can be devised. These interventions can be both medical (developing new drugs to chemical block effects of illicit drugs) and psychological.

According to the disease concept model, psychological **intervention** includes a vital educational component that teaches people with chemical dependency the concept of understanding addiction as disease. As a result of this understanding, affected people then view their dependency as a disease, similar to other diseases with a biological cause (heart disease, cancer, high blood pressure), and with a specific set of signs and symptoms and an outcome in the future (clinical course). Proponents of this approach believe that this understanding can help affected people to follow treatment recommendations, and can reduce shame and guilt commonly associated with chemical dependence. Alcoholics Anonymous is a prominent example of an organization that embodies the disease concept of chemical dependency.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

- Cadet, J., K. Bolla. “Chronic cocaine use as a neuropsychiatric syndrome: a model for debate.” *Synapse* 22 (1996).  
 Johnson, J., M. K. Leff. “Children of substance abusers: overview of research findings.” *Pediatrics* 103, no. 5 (May 1999).

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.

## Disorder of written expression

### Definition

Disorder of written expression, formerly called developmental expressive writing disorder, is a learning disability in which a person’s ability to communicate in writing is substantially below the level normally expected based on the individual’s age, intelligence, life experiences, educational background, or physical impairments. This disability affects both the physical reproduction of letters and words and the organization of thoughts and ideas in written compositions.

### Description

Disorder of written expression is one of the more poorly understood learning disabilities. Learning disabilities that manifest themselves only in written work were first described in the late 1960s. These early studies described three main types of written disorders:

- inability to form letters and numbers correctly, also called dysgraphia
- inability to write words spontaneously or from dictation
- inability to organize words into meaningful thoughts

There are several difficulties in studying disorder of written expression and in implementing a remedial program. Disorder of written expression usually appears in conjunction with other reading or language disabilities, making it hard to separate manifestations of the disability related only to written expression. Delays in attention, visual-motor integration, visual processing, and expressive language may also contribute to writing disorders. Also, there are no standard tests specifically designed to evaluate disorder of written expression.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The causes of disorder of written expression are unknown. Different manifestations of the disorder may have different causes. For example, people who cannot form letters correctly on the page (dysgraphia) may have delays in hand-eye coordination and difficulties concentrating. People who are unable to write words from memory or dictation appear to have deficits in their visual memory. They cannot remember what the words look like. People who produce legible script but cannot organize their thoughts on paper may have cognitive processing problems. Because disorder of written expression is a little-studied disorder, specific causes have not yet been determined.

### Symptoms

Symptoms that suggest disorder of written expression include:

- poor or illegible handwriting
- poorly formed letters or numbers
- excessive spelling errors
- excessive punctuation errors
- excessive grammar errors
- sentences that lack logical cohesion
- paragraphs and stories that are missing elements and that do not make sense or lack logical transitions
- deficient writing skills that significantly impact academic achievement or daily life

These symptoms must be evaluated in light of the person's age, intelligence, educational experience, and cultural or life experience. Written expression must be substantially below the level of samples produced by others of the same age, intelligence, and background. Normally, several of the symptoms are present simultaneously.

### Demographics

Several studies have estimated that between 3% and 5% of students have disorder of written expression. However, it is difficult to separate this disorder from other **learning disorders**. Deficits in written work may be attributed to reading, language, or attention disorders, limited educational background, or lack of fluency in the language of instruction. Disorder of written expression unassociated with any other learning disability is rare. It commonly occurs in conjunction with **reading disorder** or **mathematics disorder**.

### Diagnosis

There are no specific tests to diagnose disorder of written expression. This disorder is not normally diagnosed before age eight because of the variability with which children acquire writing skills. It is most commonly diagnosed in the fourth or fifth grade, although it can be noted and diagnosed as soon as the first grade. Requests for testing usually originate with a teacher or parent who notes multiple symptoms of the disorder in a child's writing.

Several standardized tests accurately reflect spelling abilities, but do not assess other writing skills with the same reliability. Tests that might be helpful in diagnosing disorder of written expression include the Diagnostic Evaluation of Writing Skills (DEWS), the Test of Early Written Language (TEWL), and the Test

of Adolescent Language. However, assessment using standardized tests is not enough to make a **diagnosis** of disorder of written expression. In addition, a qualified evaluator should compare multiple samples of the student's written work with the written work normally expected from students of comparable backgrounds. The person being evaluated may also be asked to perform tasks such as writing from dictation or copying written material as part of diagnostic testing.

### Treatments

Little is known about how to treat disorder of written expression. Intense writing remediation may help, but no specific method or approach to remediation has proved particularly successful. Since disorder of written expression usually occurs in conjunction with other learning disabilities, treatment is often directed at those better-understood learning problems.

### Prognosis

Little is known about the long-term outcome for people with disorder of written expression. However, it appears that those who have this disorder may develop low self-esteem and social problems related to their lack of academic achievement. Later in life they may be more likely to drop out of school and may find employment opportunities which require writing skills to be closed to them.

### Prevention

There are no known ways to prevent disorder of written expression.

*See also* Reading disorder; Mathematics disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed, Text revised. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. P. O. Box 96106, Washington, DC 20090. Telephone: (800) 333-7636. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>. Learning Disabilities Association of America. 4156 Library Road, Pittsburgh, PA 15234-1349. Telephone: (412) 341-1515. Web site: <[www.ldanatl.org](http://www.ldanatl.org)>. National Center for Learning Disabilities. 381 Park Avenue South Suite 1401, New York, NY 10016. Telephone: (888) 575-7373 (toll free) or (212) 545-7510. <[www.ncld.org](http://www.ncld.org)>.

**OTHER**

- International Dyslexia Association. "Just The Facts: Dysgraphia." Fact Sheet #982. <<http://www.knowledgenetwork.ca/literacy/resources/literature/dysgraphia.pdf>>.
- National Institute for Neurological Disorders and Stroke. Dysgraphia Information Page. <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/dysgraphia/dysgraphia.htm>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Disorders of Written Expression." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001543.htm>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Dissociation and dissociative disorders

### Definition

The dissociative disorders are a group of mental disorders that affect consciousness and are defined as causing significant interference with the patient's general functioning, including social relationships and employment.

### Description

Dissociation is a mechanism that allows the mind to separate or compartmentalize certain memories or thoughts from normal consciousness. These split-off mental contents are not erased. They may resurface spontaneously or be triggered by objects or events in the person's environment.

Until recently, dissociation was widely considered to be a process that occurs along a spectrum of severity. It was considered a spectrum because people experiencing dissociation do not necessarily always have a dissociative disorder or other mental illness. A mild degree of dissociation occurs with some physical stressors; people who have gone without sleep for a long period of time, have had "laughing gas" for dental surgery, or have been in a minor accident often have brief dissociative experiences. As well, in another commonplace example of dissociation, people completely involved in a book or movie may not notice their surroundings or the passage of time. Yet another example might be driving on the highway and passing several exits without noticing or remembering. Dissociation is related to hypnosis in that hypnotic trance also involves a temporarily altered state of consciousness. Most patients with dissociative disorders are highly hypnotizable.

People in other cultures sometimes have dissociative experiences in the course of religious or other group activities (in certain trance states). These occurrences should not be judged in terms of what is considered "normal" in the United States.

Rather than the pathological forms of the disorder being considered a continuum, they now have been dichotomized into the categories of detachment and compartmentalization. Specific characteristics distinguish each of these, although there can be overlap. For example, compartmentalization might be characteristic of a form of dissociative disorder called **dissociative amnesia**. Patients who have the compartmentalized type of dissociation do not engage in conscious integration of mental systems and do not or cannot consciously access certain areas of memory or information that normally would be available. This type of dissociation also can occur in **conversion disorder**.

A person exhibiting the detachment form of a dissociation disorder experiences the altered state of consciousness that is more commonly associated with the concept of dissociation. In such cases, derealization or **depersonalization** are not merely transient, brief manifestations caused by lack of sleep. Instead, people with dissociation disorder may exhibit a flat affect (outward presentation of mood or emotion) and have a sense of being out of their own bodies. These detachment forms of dissociation may be associated with trauma and **post-traumatic stress disorder**, although post-traumatic **stress disorder** may also elicit crossover symptoms of compartmentalization. Recent studies of trauma indicate that the human **brain** stores traumatic memories in a different way than normal memories. Traumatic memories are not processed or integrated into a person's ongoing life in the same fashion as normal memories. Instead they are dissociated, or "split off," and may erupt into consciousness from time to time without warning. Affected people cannot control or "edit" these memories. Over a period of time, these two sets of memories, the normal and the traumatic, may coexist as parallel sets without being combined or blended. It has been suggested that the detachment may interfere with this process of consolidation. In extreme cases, different sets of dissociated memories may cause people to develop separate personalities for these memories—a disorder known as **dissociative identity disorder** (formerly called multiple personality disorder).

### Demographics

Studies suggest a frequency of pathological dissociation in the general North American population of between 2% and 3.3%. In Europe, reported rates are

lower, at 0.3% in the nonclinical population and between 1.8% and 2.9% in student populations. Among psychiatric patients, frequency is much higher, between 5.4% and 12.7%, and it also is higher in groups with specific psychiatric diagnoses; for example, its frequency among women with eating disorders can be as high as 48.6%.

### Types of dissociative disorders

#### *Dissociative amnesia*

Dissociative **amnesia** is a disorder in which the distinctive feature is the patient's inability to remember important personal information to a degree that cannot be explained by normal forgetfulness. In many cases, it is a reaction to a traumatic accident or witnessing a violent crime. Patients with dissociative amnesia may develop depersonalization or trance states as part of the disorder, but they do not experience a change in identity.

#### *Dissociative fugue*

Dissociative **fugue** is a disorder in which those affected temporarily lose their sense of personal identity and travel to other locations where they may assume a new identity. Again, this condition usually follows a major stressor or trauma. Apart from inability to recall their past or personal information, patients with dissociative fugue do not behave strangely or appear disturbed to others. Cases of dissociative fugue are more common in wartime or in communities disrupted by a natural disaster.

#### *Depersonalization disorder*

**Depersonalization disorder** is a disturbance in which the patient's primary symptom is a sense of detachment from the self. Depersonalization as a symptom (not as a disorder) is quite common in college-age populations. It is often associated with sleep deprivation or "recreational" drug use. It may be accompanied by "derealization" (where objects in an environment appear altered). Patients sometimes describe depersonalization as feeling like a robot or watching themselves from the outside. Depersonalization disorder may also involve feelings of numbness or loss of emotional "aliveness."

#### *Dissociative identity disorder (DID)*

Dissociative identity disorder (DID) is considered the most severe dissociative disorder and involves all of the major dissociative symptoms. People with this disorder have more than one personality state, and the personality state controlling the person's behavior

## KEY TERMS

**Amnesia**—A general medical term for loss of memory that is not due to ordinary forgetfulness. Amnesia can be caused by head injuries, brain disease, or epilepsy, as well as by dissociation.

**Depersonalization**—A dissociative symptom in which patients feel that their bodies are unreal, are changing, or are dissolving.

**Derealization**—A dissociative symptom in which the external environment is perceived as unreal.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Fugue**—A dissociative experience during which those affected travel away from home, have amnesia regarding their past, and may be confused about their identity but otherwise appear normal.

**Hypnosis**—The means by which a state of extreme relaxation and suggestibility is induced. Hypnosis is used to treat amnesia and identity disturbances that occur in dissociative disorders.

**Multiple personality disorder (MPD)**—An older term for dissociative identity disorder (DID).

**Trauma**—A disastrous or life-threatening event that can cause severe emotional distress, including dissociative symptoms and disorders.

changes from time to time. Often, a stressor will cause the change in personality state. The various personality states have separate names, temperaments, gestures, and vocabularies. This disorder is often associated with severe physical or sexual abuse, especially abuse during childhood. Women are diagnosed with this disorder more often than men.

#### *Dissociative disorder not otherwise specified (DDNOS)*

DDNOS is a diagnostic category ascribed to patients with dissociative symptoms that do not meet the full criteria for a specific dissociative disorder.

## Treatments

Studies now suggest that treatment of a specific dissociation disorder should be based on whether or not the manifestations are considered as the compartmentalized type or the detachment type. Treatment

recommendations for the compartmentalized types of disorders include focusing on reactivating and integrating the isolated mental compartments, possibly through hypnosis. To address detachment-based dissociation, therapies may include identifying triggers for the detached state, and determining how to stop the triggers and/or stop the detached condition when it is triggered. Standard approaches for these tactics may include **cognitive-behavioral therapy**.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Spitzer, Carsten, and others. "Recent Developments in the Theory of Dissociation." *World Psychiatry* 5 (2006): 82-86.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850.

The International Society for the Study of Dissociation. 8201 Greensboro Drive, Suite 300, McLean, VA 22102. Telephone: (703) 610-9037, Fax: (703) 610-9005. <[http://www.issd.org/index\\_actual.html](http://www.issd.org/index_actual.html)>.

### OTHER

The Mayo Clinic. "Dissociative Disorders." <<http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/dissociative-disorders/DS00574/DSECTION=5>>.

New York Online Access to Health (NOAH). "Dissociative Disorders." 2006. <<http://www.noah-health.org/en/mental/disorders/dissociative.html>>.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. "Dissociation." <<http://www.womenshealth.gov/wwd/conditions/dissociative.cfm?style=module>>.

Rebecca J. Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Dissociative amnesia

### Definition

Dissociative **amnesia** is classified by the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, fourth edition, text revision (also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*), as one of the **dissociative disorders**, which are mental disorders in which the normally well-integrated functions of memory, identity, perception, or consciousness are separated (dissociated). The dissociative disorders are usually associated with trauma in the recent or

distant past, or with an intense internal conflict that forces the mind to separate incompatible or unacceptable knowledge, information, or feelings. In dissociative amnesia, the continuity of the patient's memory is disrupted. Patients with dissociative amnesia have recurrent episodes in which they forget important personal information or events, usually connected with trauma or severe **stress**. The information that is lost to the patient's memory is usually too extensive to be attributed to ordinary absentmindedness or forgetfulness related to aging. Dissociative amnesia was formerly called "psychogenic amnesia."

Amnesia is a symptom of other medical and mental disorders; however, the patterns of amnesia differ depending on the cause of the disorder. Amnesia associated with head trauma is typically both retrograde (the patient has no memory of events shortly before the head injury) and anterograde (the patient has no memory of events after the injury). The amnesia that is associated with seizure disorders is sudden onset. Amnesia in patients with **delirium** or **dementia** occurs in the context of extensive disturbances of the patient's cognition (knowing), speech, perceptions, emotions, and behaviors. Amnesia associated with **substance abuse**, which is sometimes called a "blackout," typically affects only short-term memory and is irreversible. In dissociative amnesia, in contrast to these other conditions, the patient's memory loss is almost always anterograde, which means that it is limited to the period following the traumatic event(s). In addition, patients with dissociative amnesia do not have problems learning new information.

Dissociative amnesia as a symptom occurs in patients diagnosed with **dissociative fugue** and **dissociative identity disorder**. If the patient's episodes of dissociative amnesia occur only in the context of these disorders, a separate **diagnosis** of dissociative amnesia is not made.

### Description

Patients with dissociative amnesia usually report a gap or series of gaps in their recollection of their life history. The gaps are usually related to episodes of **abuse** or equally severe trauma, although some persons with dissociative amnesia also lose recall of their own **suicide** attempts, episodes of self-mutilation, or violent behavior.

Five different patterns of memory loss have been reported in patients with dissociative amnesia:

- localized. The patient cannot recall events that took place within a limited period of time (usually several hours or one to two days) following a traumatic

event. For example, some survivors of the World Trade Center attacks do not remember how they got out of the damaged buildings or what streets they took to get away from the area.

- selective. The patient can remember some, but not all, of the events that took place during a limited period of time. For example, a veteran of D-Day (June 6, 1944) may recall some details, such as eating a meal on the run or taking prisoners, but not others (seeing a close friend hit or losing a commanding officer).
- generalized. The person cannot recall anything in his/her entire life. Persons with generalized amnesia are usually found by the police or taken by others to a hospital emergency room.
- continuous. The amnesia covers the entire period without interruption from a traumatic event in the past to the present.
- systematized. The amnesia covers only certain categories of information, such as all memories related to a certain location or to a particular person.

Most patients diagnosed with dissociative amnesia have either localized or selective amnesia. Generalized amnesia is extremely rare. Patients with generalized, continuous, or systematized amnesia are usually eventually diagnosed as having a more complex dissociative disorder, such as dissociative identity disorder.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The primary cause of dissociative amnesia is stress associated with traumatic experiences that the patient has either survived or witnessed. These may include such major life stressors as serious financial problems, the death of a parent or spouse, extreme internal conflict, and guilt related to serious crimes or turmoil caused by difficulties with another person.

Susceptibility to hypnosis appears to be a predisposing factor in dissociative amnesia. Thus far, no specific genes have been associated with vulnerability to dissociative amnesia.

Some personality types and character traits seem to be risk factors for dissociative disorders. A group of researchers in the United States has found that persons diagnosed with dissociative disorders have much higher scores for immature psychological defenses than normal subjects.

### Symptoms

The central symptom of dissociative amnesia is loss of memory for a period or periods of time in the

patient's life. The memory loss may take a variety of different patterns, as described earlier.

Other symptoms that have been reported in patients diagnosed with dissociative amnesia include the following:

- confusion.
- emotional distress related to the amnesia. However, not all patients with dissociative amnesia are distressed. The degree of emotional upset is usually in direct proportion to the importance of what has been forgotten, or the consequences of forgetting.
- mild depression.

Some patients diagnosed with dissociative amnesia have problems or behaviors that include disturbed interpersonal relationships, sexual dysfunction, employment problems, aggressive behaviors, self-mutilation, or suicide attempts.

## Demographics

Dissociative amnesia can appear in patients of any age past infancy. Its true prevalence is unknown. In recent years, there has been an intense controversy among therapists regarding the increase in case reports of dissociative amnesia and the accuracy of the memories recovered. Some maintain that the greater awareness of dissociative symptoms and disorders among psychiatrists has led to the identification of cases that were previously misdiagnosed. Other therapists maintain that dissociative disorders are overdiagnosed in people who are extremely vulnerable to suggestion.

It should be noted that psychiatrists in the United States and Canada have significantly different opinions of dissociative disorder diagnoses. On the whole, Canadian psychiatrists, both French- and English-speaking, have serious reservations about the scientific validity and diagnostic status of dissociative amnesia and dissociative identity disorder. Only 30% of Canadian psychiatrists think that these two dissociative disorders should be included in the *DSM-IV-TR* without reservation; and only 13% think that there is strong scientific support for the validity of these diagnoses.

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of dissociative amnesia is usually a diagnosis of exclusion. The doctor will take a detailed medical history, give the patient a physical examination, and order blood and urine tests, as well as an electroencephalogram (EEG) or head x ray to rule out memory loss resulting from seizure disorders, substance abuse (including abuse of inhalants), head

injuries, or medical conditions, such as **Alzheimer's disease** or delirium associated with fever.

Some conditions, such as age-related memory impairment (AAMI), may be ruled out on the basis of the patient's age. **Malingering** can usually be detected in patients who are faking amnesia because they typically exaggerate and dramatize their symptoms; they have obvious financial, legal, or personal reasons (for example, draft evasion) for pretending loss of memory. In addition, patients with genuine dissociative amnesia usually score high on tests of hypnotizability. The examiner may administer the Hypnotic Induction Profile (HIP) or a similar measure that evaluates whether the patient is easily hypnotized. This enables the examiner to rule out malingering or **factitious disorder**.

There are several standard diagnostic questionnaires that may be given to evaluate the presence of a dissociative disorder. The Dissociative Experiences Scale (DES) is a frequently administered self-report screener for all forms of **dissociation**. The Structured Clinical Interview for the *DSM-IV-TR* Dissociative Disorders (SCID-D) can be used to make the diagnosis of dissociative amnesia distinct from the other dissociative disorders defined by the *DSM-IV-TR*. The SCID-D is a semi-structured interview, which means that the examiner's questions are open-ended and allow the patient to describe experiences of amnesia in some detail, as distinct from simple "yes" or "no" answers.

Diagnosis of dissociative amnesia in children before the age of puberty is complicated by the fact that inability to recall the first four to five years of one's life is a normal feature of human development. As part of the differential diagnosis, a physician who is evaluating a child in this age group will rule out inattention, **learning disorders**, oppositional behavior, **psychosis**, and seizure disorders or head trauma. To make an accurate diagnosis, several different people (such as teachers, therapists, **social workers**, or the child's primary care physician) may be asked to observe or evaluate the child.

## Treatments

Treatment of dissociative amnesia usually requires two distinct periods or phases of **psychotherapy**.

### *Psychotherapy*

Psychotherapy for dissociative amnesia is supportive in its initial phase. It begins with creating an atmosphere of safety in the treatment room. Very often, patients gradually regain their memories when they

feel safe with and supported by the therapist. This rapport does not mean that they necessarily recover their memories during therapy sessions; one study of 90 patients with dissociative amnesia found that most of them had their memories return while they were at home alone or with family or close friends. The patients denied that their memories were derived from a therapist's suggestions, and a majority of them were able to find independent evidence or corroboration of their childhood abuse.

If the memories do not return spontaneously, hypnosis or sodium amyta (a drug that induces a semi-hypnotic state) may be used to help recover them.

After the patient has recalled enough of the missing past to acquire a stronger sense of self and continuity in their life history, the second phase of psychotherapy commences. During this phase, the patient deals more directly with the traumatic episode(s), and recovery from its aftereffects. Studies of the treatments for dissociative amnesia in combat veterans of World War I (1914–1918) found that recovery and cognitive integration of dissociated traumatic memories within the patient's overall personality were more effective than treatment methods that focused solely on releasing feelings.

### *Medications*

At present, there are no therapeutic agents that prevent amnestic episodes or that cure dissociative amnesia itself. Patients may, however, be given **antidepressants** or other appropriate medications for treatment of the depression, **anxiety**, **insomnia**, or other symptoms that may accompany dissociative amnesia.

### **Legal implications**

Dissociative amnesia poses a number of complex issues for the legal profession. The disorder has been cited by plaintiffs in cases of recovered memories of abuse leading to lawsuits against the perpetrators of the abuse. Dissociative amnesia has also been cited as a defense in cases of murder of adults as well as in cases of neonaticide (murder of an infant shortly after birth). Part of the problem is the adversarial nature of courtroom procedure in the United States, but it is generally agreed that judges and attorneys need better guidelines regarding dissociative amnesia in defendants and plaintiffs.

### **Prognosis**

The prognosis for recovery from dissociative amnesia is generally good. The majority of patients eventually recover the missing parts of their past,

## KEY TERMS

**Age-associated memory impairment (AAMI)**—A condition in which an older person suffers some memory loss and takes longer to learn new information. AAMI is distinguished from dementia because it is not progressive and does not represent a serious decline from the person's previous level of functioning. Benign senescent forgetfulness is another term for AAMI.

**Anterograde amnesia**—Amnesia for events that occurred after a physical injury or emotional trauma but before the present moment. The type of amnesia that typically occurs in dissociative amnesia is anterograde.

**Defense**—An unconscious mental process that protects the conscious mind from unacceptable or painful thoughts, impulses, or desires. Examples of defenses include denial, rationalization, projection, and repression.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness. It can be distinguished from dissociative amnesia by its relatively sudden onset and variation in the severity of the symptoms.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Depersonalization**—A dissociative symptom in which the patient feels that his or her body is unreal, is changing, or is dissolving.

**Derealization**—A dissociative symptom in which the external environment is perceived as unreal or dreamlike.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Dissociative amnesia**—A dissociative disorder characterized by loss of memory for a period or periods of time in the patient's life. May occur as a result of a traumatic event.

**Factitious disorder**—A type of mental disturbance in which patients intentionally act physically or mentally ill without obvious benefits. It is distinguished from malingering by the absence of an obvious motive, and from conversion disorder by intentional production of symptoms.

**Malingering**—Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

**Retrograde amnesia**—Amnesia for events that occurred before a traumatic injury. Retrograde amnesia is not usually found in patients with dissociative amnesia.

**Supportive**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or educational approaches to treatment.

either by spontaneous re-emergence of the memories or through hypnosis and similar techniques. A minority of patients, however, are never able to reconstruct their past; they develop a chronic form of dissociative amnesia. The prognosis for a specific patient depends on a combination of his or her present life circumstances; the presence of other mental disorders; and the severity of stresses or conflicts associated with the amnesia.

### Prevention

Strategies for the prevention of child abuse might lower the incidence of dissociative amnesia in the general population. There are no effective preventive

strategies for dissociative amnesia caused by traumatic experiences in adult life in patients without a history of childhood abuse.

*See also* Abuse.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Beers, Mark H., MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. "Dissociative Amnesia." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.

- Ellenberger, Henri. *The Discovery of the Unconscious*. New York: Basic Books, 1970.
- Herman, Judith, MD. *Trauma and Recovery*. 2nd ed., rev. New York: Basic Books, 1997.
- Stout, Martha, PhD. *The Myth of Sanity: Tales of Multiple Personality in Everyday Life*. New York: Penguin Books, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

- Bremner, J. Douglas, and others. "Neural Mechanisms in Dissociative Amnesia for Childhood Abuse: Relevance to the Current Controversy Surrounding the 'False Memory Syndrome.'" *American Journal of Psychiatry* 153 (1996): S71–82.
- Brown, P., O. Van der Hart, and M. Graafland. "Trauma-Induced Dissociative Amnesia in World War I Combat Soldiers. II. Treatment Dimensions." *Australia and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry* 33 (1999): 392–98.
- Carrión, V. G., and H. Steiner. "Trauma and Dissociation in Delinquent Adolescents." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 39 (2000): 353–59.
- Chu, J. A., and others. "Memories of Childhood Abuse: Dissociation, Amnesia, and Corroboration." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 156 (1999): 749–55.
- Durst, R., A. Teitelbaum, and R. Aronzon. "Amnestic State in a Holocaust Survivor Patient: Psychogenic Versus Neurological Basis." *Israeli Journal of Psychiatry and Related Sciences* 36 (1999): 47–54.
- Lalonde, J. K., and others. "Canadian and American Psychiatrists' Attitudes Toward Dissociative Disorders Diagnoses." *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry* 46 (2001): 407–12.
- Miller, P. W., and others. "An Unusual Presentation of Inhalant Abuse with Dissociative Amnesia." *Veterinary and Human Toxicology* 44 (2002): 17–19.
- Pope, Harrison G., Jr. "Recovered Memories of Childhood Abuse: The Royal College of Psychiatrists Issues Important Precautions." *British Medical Journal* 316 (February 14, 1998): 713.
- Porter, S., and others. "Memory for Murder. A Psychological Perspective on Dissociative Amnesia in Legal Contexts." *International Journal of Law and Psychiatry* 24 (2001): 23–42.
- Simeon, D., and others. "Personality Factors Associated with Dissociation: Temperament, Defenses, and Cognitive Schemata." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 159 (2002): 489–91.
- Spinelli, M. G. "A Systematic Investigation of 16 Cases of Neonaticide." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 158 (2001): 811–13.
- Zanarini, M. C., and others. "The Dissociative Experiences of Borderline Patients." *Comparative Psychiatry* 41 (2000): 223–27.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- International Society for the Study of Dissociation (ISSD). 8201 Greensboro Drive, Suite 300, McLean, VA 22102. Telephone: (703) 610-9037. <<http://www.issd.org>>.

- International Society for Traumatic Stress Studies (ISTSS). 60 Revere Dr., Suite 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. Telephone: (847) 480-9028. <<http://www.istss.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.
- National Organization for Rare Disorders (NORD). 55 Kenosia Avenue, P.O. Box 1968, Danbury, CT 06813-1968. Telephone: (203) 744-0100. <<http://www.rarediseases.org>>.

#### OTHER

- National Alliance on Mental Illness, "Dissociative Disorders." <[http://www.nami.org/Content/ContentGroups/Helpline1/Dissociative\\_Disorders.htm](http://www.nami.org/Content/ContentGroups/Helpline1/Dissociative_Disorders.htm)>.
- "Symposium: Science and Politics of Recovered Memories." Special issue of *Ethics and Behavior* 8 (1998). The issue is based on a program chaired by Gerald Koocher of Harvard Medical School at the 1998 convention of the American Psychiatric Association.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Dissociative fugue

### Definition

Dissociative fugue is a rare condition in which a person suddenly, without planning or warning, travels far from home or work and leaves behind a past life. Patients show signs of **amnesia** and have no conscious understanding or knowledge of the reason for the flight. The condition is usually associated with severe **stress** or trauma. Because people cannot remember all or part of their past, at some point they become confused about their identity and the situations in which they find themselves. In rare cases, they may take on new identities. The American Psychiatric Association (APA) classifies dissociative fugue as one of four **dissociative disorders**, along with **dissociative amnesia**, **dissociative identity disorder**, and **depersonalization disorder**.

### Description

The key feature of dissociative fugue is "sudden, unexpected travel away from home or one's customary place of daily activities, with inability to recall some or all of one's past," according to the APA. The travels associated with the condition can last for a few hours or as long as several months. Some individuals have traveled thousands of miles from home

while in a state of dissociative fugue. (The word *fugue* stems from the Latin word for flight—*fugere*.) At first, people experiencing the condition may appear completely normal. With time, however, confusion appears. This confusion may result from the realization that they cannot remember the past. Those affected may suddenly realize that they do not belong where they find themselves.

During an episode of dissociative fugue, those affected may take on new identities, complete with a new name. They may even establish new homes and ties to their communities. More often, however, those affected realize something is wrong not long after fleeing—in a matter of hours or days. In such cases, they may phone home for help, or come to the attention of police after becoming distressed at finding themselves unexplainably in unfamiliar surroundings.

Dissociative fugue is distinct from dissociative identity disorder (DID). In cases of DID, which previously was called multiple personality disorder, those affected lose memory of events that take place when one of several distinct identities takes control of them. If the person with dissociative fugue assumes a new identity, it does not coexist with other identities, as is typical of DID. Repeated instances of apparent dissociative fugue are more likely a symptom of DID, not true dissociative fugue.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Episodes of dissociative fugue are often associated with very stressful events. Traumatic experiences, such as war or natural disasters, seem to increase the incidence of the disorder. Other, more personal types of stress might also lead to the unplanned travel and amnesia characteristic of dissociative fugue. The shocking death of a loved one or seemingly unbearable pressures at work or home, for example, might cause some people to run away for brief periods and blank out their pasts.

### Symptoms

People in the midst of dissociative fugue episodes may appear to have no psychiatric symptoms at all or to be only slightly confused. Therefore, for a time, it may be very difficult to spot someone experiencing a fugue. After a while, however, patients show significant signs of confusion or distress because they cannot remember recent events, or they realize a complete sense of identity is missing. This amnesia is a characteristic symptom of the disorder.

## KEY TERMS

**Amnesia**—A general medical term for loss of memory that is not due to ordinary forgetfulness. Amnesia can be caused by head injuries, brain disease, or epilepsy, as well as by dissociation.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

## Demographics

Dissociative fugue is a rare disorder estimated to affect just 0.2% of the population, nearly all of them adults. More people may experience dissociative fugue, however, during or in the aftermath of serious accidents, wars, natural disasters, or other highly traumatic or stressful events.

## Diagnosis

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edition, text revision, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*, lists four criteria for diagnosing dissociative fugue:

- unexplained and unexpected travel from a person's usual place of living and working along with partial or complete amnesia
- uncertainty and confusion about one's identity, or in rare instances, the adoption of a new identity
- the flight and amnesia that characterize the fugue are not related exclusively to DID, nor is it the result of substance abuse or a physical illness
- an episode must result in distress or impairment severe enough to interfere with the ability of the patient to function in social, work, or home settings

Accurate **diagnosis** typically must wait until the fugue is over and the person has sought help or has been brought to the attention of mental health care providers. The diagnosis can then be made using the patient's history and reconstruction of events that occurred before, during, and after the patient's excursion.

## Treatments

**Psychotherapy**, sometimes involving hypnosis, is often effective in the treatment of dissociative fugue. With support from therapists, patients are encouraged to remember past events by learning to face and cope

with the stressful experiences that precipitated the fugue. Because the cause of the fugue is usually a traumatic event, it is often necessary to treat disturbing feelings and emotions that emerge when the patient finally faces the trauma. The troubling events that drove them to run and forget about their past may, when remembered, result in grief, depression, fear, anger, remorse, and other psychological states that require therapy.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for dissociative fugue is often good. Not many cases last longer than a few months and many people make quick recoveries. In more serious cases, patients may take longer to recover memories of the past.

*See also* Dissociative identity disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Allen, Thomas E., and others. *A Primer on Mental Disorders: A Guide for Educators, Families, and Students*. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2001.
- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Beers, Mark H., and Robert Berkow, eds. "Dissociative Fugue." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. 17th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850.
- International Society for the Study of Dissociation. 60 Revere Drive, Suite 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. <<http://www.issd.org/>>.
- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. <<http://www.nami.org/index.html>>.
- New York Online Access to Health (NOAH). "Dissociative Disorders." 2006. List of online resources at: <<http://www.noah-health.org/en/mental/disorders/dissociative.html>>.

Dean A. Haycock, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD



Chris Costner Sizemore, famous for her dissociative identity disorder, in a 1984 photo. The book *Three Faces of Eve* described her case. (Ap Images)

tity or personality state. At least two of these personalities repeatedly assert themselves to control the behavior of the affected people. Each personality state has a distinct name, past, identity, and self-image.

Psychiatrists and psychologists use a handbook called the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision, or *DSM-IV-TR*, to diagnose mental disorders. In this handbook, DID is classified as a dissociative disorder. Other mental disorders in this category include depersonalization disorder, dissociative fugue, and dissociative amnesia. It should be noted, however, that the nature of DID and even its existence is debated by psychiatrists and psychologists.

### Description

"Dissociation" describes a state in which the integrated functioning of a person's identity, including consciousness, memory, and awareness of surroundings, is disrupted or eliminated. **Dissociation** is a mechanism that allows the mind to separate or compartmentalize certain memories or thoughts from normal consciousness. These

## Dissociative identity disorder

### Definition

Previously known as multiple personality disorder, dissociative identity disorder (DID) is a condition in which those affected have more than one distinct iden-

memories are not erased, but are buried and may resurface at a later time. Dissociation is related to hypnosis in that hypnotic trance also involves a temporarily altered state of consciousness. In severe, impairing dissociation, individuals experience a lack of awareness of important aspects of their identities.

The phrase “dissociative identity disorder” replaced “multiple personality disorder” because the new name emphasizes the disruption of a person’s identity that characterizes the disorder. People with the illness are consciously aware of one aspect of their personality or self while being totally unaware of, or dissociated from, other aspects of it. This is a key feature of the disorder. It requires only two distinct identities or personality states to qualify as DID, but there have been cases in which 100 distinct alternate personalities, or alters, were reported. Fifty percent of patients with DID harbor fewer than 11 identities.

Because the alters alternate in controlling the consciousness and behavior of those affected, patients experience long gaps in memory—gaps that far exceed typical episodes of forgetting that occur in those unaffected by DID.

Despite the presence of distinct personalities, one primary identity exists in many cases. The primary identity uses the name the patient was born with and tends to be quiet, dependent, depressed, and guilt-ridden. The alters have their own names and unique traits. They are distinguished by different temperaments, likes, dislikes, manners of expression, and even physical characteristics such as posture and body language. It is not unusual for patients with DID to have alters of different genders, sexual orientations, ages, or nationalities. It typically takes just seconds for one personality to replace another but the shift can be gradual in rarer instances. In either case, the emergence of one personality, and the retreat of another, is often triggered by a stressful event.

People with DID tend to have other severe disorders as well, such as **depression**, **substance abuse**, **borderline personality disorder**, and eating disorders, among others. The degree of impairment ranges from mild to severe, and complications may include **suicide** attempts, self-mutilation, violence, or drug **abuse**.

Left untreated, DID can last a lifetime. Treatment for the disorder consists primarily of individual **psychotherapy**.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The severe dissociation that characterizes patients with DID is currently understood to result from a set of causes:

- an innate ability to dissociate easily
- repeated episodes of severe physical or sexual abuse in childhood
- lack of supportive or comforting people to counteract abusive relative(s)
- influence of other relatives with dissociative symptoms or disorders

The primary cause of DID appears to be severe and prolonged trauma experienced during childhood. This trauma can be associated with emotional, physical, or sexual abuse, or some combination. One theory is that young children, faced with a routine of torture, sexual abuse, or **neglect**, dissociate themselves from their trauma by creating separate identities or personality states. Manufactured alters may suffer while primary identities “escape” the unbearable experiences. Dissociation, which is easy for young children to achieve, thus becomes a useful defense. This strategy displaces the suffering onto another identity. Over time, children, who on average are around six years old at the time of the appearance of the first alter, may create many more.

As stated, there is considerable controversy about the nature, and even the existence, of dissociative identity disorder. The causes are disputed, with some experts identifying extensive trauma in childhood as causative, while others maintain that the cause of the disorder is iatrogenic, or introduced by the news media or therapist. In this latter form, mass media or therapists plant the seeds that patients suppressed memories and dissociation severe enough to have created separate personalities. One cause for the skepticism is the alarming increase in reports of the disorder since the 1980s; more cases of DID were reported between 1981 and 1986 than in the previous 200 years combined. In some cases, people reporting DID and recovered memory became involved in lawsuits related to the recovered memories, only to find that the memories were not, in fact, real. Another disorder, false memory syndrome, then becomes the explanation. Thus, an area of contention is the notion of suppressed memories, a crucial component in DID. Many experts in memory research say that it is almost impossible for anyone to remember things that happened before the age of three, the age when some patients with DID supposedly experience abuse, but the brain’s storage, retrieval, and interpretation of childhood memories are still not fully understood. The relationship of **dissociative disorders** to childhood abuse has led to intense controversy and lawsuits concerning the accuracy of childhood memories. Because childhood trauma is a factor in the development of DID, some doctors think it may be a variation of **post-traumatic**

**stress disorder** (PTSD). In both DID and PTSD, dissociation is a prominent mechanism.

### Symptoms

The major dissociative symptoms experienced by patients with DID are **amnesia**, **depersonalization**, derealization, and identity disturbances.

**AMNESIA.** Amnesia in patients with DID is marked by gaps in their memory for long periods of their past, and, in some cases, their entire childhood. Most patients with DID have amnesia, or “lose time,” for periods when another personality is “out.” They may report finding items in their house that they cannot remember having purchased, finding notes written in different handwriting, or other evidence of unexplained activity.

**DEPERSONALIZATION.** Depersonalization is a dissociative symptom in which patients feel that their bodies are unreal, are changing, or are dissolving. Some patients with DID experience depersonalization as feeling outside of their bodies, or as watching a movie of themselves.

**DEREALIZATION.** Derealization is a dissociative symptom in which patients perceive the external environment as unreal. Patients may see walls, buildings, or other objects as changing in shape, size, or color. Patients with DID may fail to recognize relatives or close friends.

**IDENTITY DISTURBANCES.** People with DID usually have a main personality that psychiatrists refer to as the “host.” This is generally not the person’s original personality but is rather one developed in response to childhood trauma. It is usually this personality that seeks psychiatric help. Patients with DID are often frightened by their dissociative experiences, which can include losing awareness of hours or even days, meeting people who claim to know them by another name, or feeling “out of body.”

Psychiatrists refer to the phase of transition between alters as the “switch.” After a switch, people with DID assume whole new physical postures, voices, and vocabularies. Specific circumstances or stressful situations may bring out particular identities. Some patients have histories of erratic performance in school or in their jobs caused by the emergence of alternate personalities during examinations or other stressful situations. Each alternate identity takes control one at a time, denying control to the others. Patients vary with regard to their alters’ awareness of one another. One alter may not acknowledge the existence of others or it may criticize other alters. At times during therapy, one alter may allow another to take control.

### Demographics

Studies in North America and Europe indicate that as many as 5% of patients in psychiatric wards have undiagnosed DID. Partially hospitalized patients and outpatients may have an even higher incidence. For every man diagnosed with DID, eight or nine women are diagnosed. Among children, boys and girls diagnosed with DID are pretty closely matched 1:1. No one is sure why this discrepancy between diagnosed adults and children exists.

### Diagnosis

The *DSM-IV-TR* lists four diagnostic criteria for identifying DID and differentiating it from similar disorders:

- Traumatic stressor: Patients have been exposed to catastrophic events involving actual or threatened death or injury, or a serious physical threat to themselves or others. During exposure to the trauma, their emotional response was marked by intense fear, feelings of helplessness, or horror. In general, stressors caused intentionally by human beings (genocide, rape, torture, abuse, etc.) are experienced as more traumatic than accidents, natural disasters, or “acts of God.”
- The demonstration of two or more distinct identities or personality states in an individual. Each separate identity must have its own way of thinking about, perceiving, relating to, and interacting with the environment and self.
- Two of the identities assume control of the patient’s behavior, one at a time and repeatedly.
- Extended periods of forgetfulness lasting too long to be considered ordinary forgetfulness.
- Determination that the above symptoms are not due to drugs, alcohol, or other substances and that they cannot be attributed to any other general medical condition. It is also necessary to rule out fantasy play or imaginary friends when considering a diagnosis of DID in children.

Proper diagnosis of DID is complicated because some of the symptoms of DID overlap with symptoms of other mental disorders. Misdiagnoses are common and include depression, **schizophrenia**, borderline personality disorder, **somatization disorder**, and **panic disorder**.

Because the extreme dissociative experiences related to this disorder can be frightening, people with the disorder may go to emergency rooms or clinics because they fear they are going insane.

When a doctor is evaluating a patient for DID, the first step is to rule out physical conditions that

## KEY TERMS

**Alter**—An alternate or secondary personality in a person with dissociative identity disorder. Each alter has a unique way of looking at and interacting with the world.

**Amnesia**—A general medical term for loss of memory that is not due to ordinary forgetfulness. Amnesia can be caused by head injuries, brain disease, or epilepsy, as well as by dissociation.

**Borderline personality disorder**—A severe and usually lifelong mental disorder characterized by violent mood swings and severe difficulties in sustaining interpersonal relationships.

**Depersonalization**—A dissociative symptom in which patients feel that their bodies are unreal, are changing, or are dissolving.

**Derealization**—A dissociative symptom in which the external environment is perceived as unreal.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect a patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Dissociative identity disorder (DID)**—Term that replaced multiple personality disorder. A condition in which two or more distinctive identities or personality states alternate in controlling a person's consciousness and behavior.

**Host**—The dominant or main alter in a person with DID.

**Hypnosis**—The means by which a state of extreme relaxation and suggestibility is induced. Hypnosis is used to treat amnesia and identity disturbances that occur in people with dissociative disorders.

**Malingering**—Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

**Multiple personality disorder (MPD)**—An older term for dissociative identity disorder (DID).

**Panic disorder**—An anxiety disorder in which an individual experiences sudden, debilitating attacks of intense fear.

**Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)**—A disorder caused by an extremely stressful or traumatic event (such as rape, act of war, or natural disaster), in which the trauma victim is haunted by flashbacks. In the flashbacks, the event is reexperienced in the present. Other symptoms include nightmares and feelings of anxiety.

**Primary personality**—The core personality of a patient with DID. In women, the primary personality is often timid and passive, and may be diagnosed as depressed.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Shift**—The transition of control from one alter to another in a person with DID. Usually shifts occur rapidly, within seconds, but in some cases a more gradual changeover is observed. Also referred to as a switch.

**Somatization disorder**—A type of mental disorder in which the patient has physical complaints that serve as coping strategies for emotional distress.

**Trauma**—A disastrous or life-threatening event that can cause severe emotional distress. DID is associated with trauma in a person's early life or adult experience.

sometimes produce amnesia, depersonalization, or derealization. These conditions include head injuries, **brain** disease (especially seizure disorders), side effects from medications, substance abuse or intoxication, AIDS **dementia** complex, or recent periods of extreme physical **stress** and sleeplessness. In some cases, the doctor may give the patient an electroencephalograph (EEG) to exclude epilepsy or other seizure disorders. The physician also must consider whether the patient is **malingering** and/or offering fictitious complaints.

If the patient appears to be physically healthy, the doctor will next rule out psychotic disturbances, including schizophrenia. Many patients with DID are misdiagnosed as having schizophrenia because they may "hear" their alters "talking" inside their heads. Doctors who suspect DID can use a screening test called the Dissociative Experiences Scale (DES). Patients with high scores on this test can be evaluated further with the Dissociative Disorders Interview Schedule (DDIS) or the Structured Clinical Interview for Dissociative Disorders (SCID-D).

## Treatments

Treatment of DID may last for five to seven years in adults and usually requires several different treatment methods.

### *Psychotherapy*

Ideally, patients with DID should be treated by a therapist with specialized training in dissociation. This specialized training is important because the patient's personality switches can be confusing or startling. In addition, many patients with DID have hostile or suicidal alter personalities. Most therapists who treat patients with DID have rules or contracts for treatment that include such issues as responsibility for the patient's safety. Psychotherapy for patients with DID typically has several stages: an initial phase for uncovering and "mapping" the patient's alters; a phase of treating the traumatic memories and "fusing" the alters; and a phase of consolidating the patient's newly integrated personality.

Most therapists who treat multiples, or patients with DID, recommend further treatment after personality integration, on the grounds that the patients have not learned the social skills that most people acquire in adolescence and early adult life. In addition, **family therapy** is often recommended to help families understand DID and the changes that occur during personality reintegration.

Many patients with DID are helped by **group therapy** as well as individual treatment, provided that the group is limited to people with dissociative disorders. Patients with DID sometimes have setbacks in mixed therapy groups because other patients are bothered or frightened by their personality switches.

### *Medications*

Some doctors will prescribe tranquilizers or **antidepressants** for patients with DID because their alter personalities may have **anxiety** or mood disorders. However, other therapists who treat patients with DID prefer to keep medications to a minimum because these patients can easily become psychologically dependent on drugs. In addition, many patients with DID have at least one alter who abuses drugs or alcohol, substances that are dangerous in combination with most tranquilizers.

### *Hypnosis*

Although not always necessary, hypnosis (or **hypnotherapy**) is a standard method of treatment for patients with DID. Hypnosis may help patients

recover repressed ideas and memories. Further, hypnosis can also be used to control problematic behaviors that many patients with DID exhibit, such as self-mutilation, or eating disorders like **bulimia nervosa**. In the later stages of treatment, the therapist may use hypnosis to "fuse" the alters as part of the patient's personality integration process.

## Prognosis

Unfortunately, no systematic studies of the long-term outcome of DID currently exist. Some therapists believe that the prognosis for recovery is excellent for children and good for most adults. Although treatment takes several years, it is often ultimately effective. As a general rule, the earlier the patient is diagnosed and properly treated, the better the prognosis. Patients may find they are bothered less by symptoms as they advance into middle age, with some relief beginning to appear in the late 40s. Stress or substance abuse, however, can cause a **relapse** of symptoms at any time.

## Prevention

Prevention of DID requires **intervention** in abusive families and treating children with dissociative symptoms as early as possible.

*See also* Dissociation and dissociative disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Acocella, Joan. *Creating Hysteria: Women and Multiple Personality Disorder*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass Publishers, 1999.

Alderman, Tracy, and Karen Marshall. *Amongst Ourselves, A Self-Help Guide to Living with Dissociative Identity Disorder*. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 1998.

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000. Saks, Elyn R., and Stephen H. Behnke. *Jekyll on Trial, Multipersonality Disorder and Criminal Law*. New York: New York University Press, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

Gleaves, D. H., M. C. May, and E. Cardena. "An Examination of the Diagnostic Validity of Dissociative Identity Disorder." *Clinical Psychology Review* 21.4 (June 2001): 577–608.

Lalonde, J. K., and others. "Canadian and American Psychiatrists' Attitudes Toward Dissociative Disorders Diagnoses." *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry* 46.5 (June 2001): 407–12.

Spitzer, Carsten, and others. "Recent Developments in the Theory of Dissociation." *World Psychiatry* 5 (2006): 82–86.

Stickley, T., and R. Nickeas. "Becoming One Person: Living with Dissociative Identity Disorder." *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing* 13 (2006): 180–87.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850.

International Society for the Study of Dissociation. 60 Revere Drive, Suite 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. <<http://www.issd.org/>>.

National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. <<http://www.nami.org/helpline/did.html>>.

#### OTHER

The Mayo Clinic. "Dissociative Disorders." <<http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/dissociative-disorders/DS00574/DSECTION=5>>.

Merck Manual for Healthcare Professionals. The Merck Manuals Online Medical Library. "Dissociative Identity Disorder." 2005.

Rebecca J. Frey, PhD  
Dean A. Haycock, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Disulfiram

### Definition

Disulfiram is an aldehyde dehydrogenase inhibitor. It prohibits the activity of aldehyde dehydrogenase, an enzyme found in the liver. In the United States, disulfiram is sold under brand name Antabuse.

### Purpose

Disulfiram is used as a conditioning treatment for alcohol dependence. When taken with alcohol, disulfiram causes many unwanted and unpleasant effects, and the fear of these is meant to condition the patient to avoid alcohol.

### Description

Two Danish physicians who were investigating disulfiram for its potential benefits to destroy parasitic worms took disulfiram and became sick at a cocktail party. After a series of pharmacological and clinical studies, it was determined that disulfiram interacts with alcohol.

Disulfiram by itself is not toxic. If taken with alcohol, however, it alters certain steps in the breakdown of alcohol. When alcohol is ingested, it is con-

verted first to a chemical called acetaldehyde. Acetaldehyde is further broken down into acetate. In order for acetaldehyde to be broken down into acetate, aldehyde dehydrogenase needs to be active. Disulfiram is an aldehyde dehydrogenase inhibitor. Since disulfiram blocks the activity of aldehyde dehydrogenase, acetaldehyde cannot be broken down and the levels of acetaldehyde become five to ten times higher than the normal levels. This causes uncomfortable effects that encourage the person to avoid alcohol.

Disulfiram comes in a 250- and 500-mg tablet.

### Recommended dosage

Disulfiram therapy should be started only after the patient has abstained from alcohol for at least 12 hours. The initial dose may be as high as 500 mg taken once daily. If the medication is sedating, the dose can be administered in the evening. Ideally, though, the daily dose should be taken in the morning—the time the resolve not to drink may be strongest. The initial dosing period can last for one to two weeks.

A maintenance dose can range anywhere from 125–500 mg daily with the average dose being 250 mg daily. Disulfiram therapy should continue until full recovery. This may take months to years, depending upon the patient's response and motivation to stop using alcohol. The duration of disulfiram's activity is 14 days after discontinuation, and patients need to avoid alcohol for this period of time.

### Precautions

Before beginning therapy, patients should be carefully evaluated for their intellectual capacity to understand the goal of therapy, which can be described as behavioral modification with negative **reinforcement**. Patients with history of **psychosis**, severe myocardial disease, and coronary occlusion should not take disulfiram. People with diabetes taking disulfiram are at an increased risk for complications. Severe liver failure has been associated with the use of disulfiram in patients with or without a prior history of liver problems. People with advanced or severe liver disease should not take disulfiram. Disulfiram should never be given to patients who are in a state of alcohol intoxication or without the patient's knowledge. Those patients with history of **seizures**, hypothyroidism, or nephritis need to use disulfiram with caution and close monitoring.

Besides avoiding alcohol, patients should also avoid any products containing alcohol. This includes many cold syrups, tonics, and mouthwashes. Patients

## KEY TERMS

**Coronary occlusion**—Blockage of the arteries supplying the blood to the heart.

**Hypothyroidism**—Thyroid gland that is abnormally low-functioning. A lowered metabolic rate results.

**Jaundice**—A yellowing of the skin caused by excess bilirubin in the blood; a liver disorder.

**MAO inhibitors**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decrease the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**Myocardial disease**—Disease of the muscular layer of the heart wall.

**Nephritis**—Inflammation of the kidney.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

should not even use topical preparations that contain alcohol such as perfume and aftershave lotion.

### Side effects

The most common side effect of disulfiram includes drowsiness and **fatigue**. Many patients experience metallic or garlic-like aftertaste, but most patients develop tolerance to this effect.

In addition, disulfiram is also associated with impotence. This is most common in doses of 500 mg daily. Disulfiram can also cause blurred vision, skin discoloration, inflammation of the skin, increased heart rate, and mental changes.

During the first three months of therapy, patients should have their liver function evaluated. Patients need to be monitored for the signs of jaundice, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, light stools, and dark urine as these may be the signs of liver damage due to disulfiram. The signs of alcohol ingestion include flushing, headache, nausea, vomiting and abdominal pain.

### Interactions

Disulfiram can make cisapride, **benzodiazepines**, astemizole, cyclosporine, erythromycin, and cholesterol-lowering drugs called statins more toxic. Disul-

firam in combination with isoniazid, monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) (such as phenelzide and **tranylcypromine**), metronidazole, omeprazole and tricyclic **antidepressants** may cause adverse central nervous system effects.

In addition, disulfiram may raise the concentrations of the medications theophylline and phenytoin in the body. Disulfiram may put patients on warfarin (a blood-thinning drug) at an increased risk of bleeding. Disulfiram should never be used with tranylcypromine and amprenavir oral solution.

Disulfiram may react even with small amounts of alcohol found in over-the-counter cough and cold preparations and any medication that comes in an elixir form.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Lacy, Charles. *Drug Information Handbook*. Hudson, OH: Lexi-Comp, 2002.

Taylor, David, Robert Kerwin, and Carol Paton. *The Maudsley 2005–2006 Prescribing Guidelines*. New York: Taylor and Francis, 2005.

#### PERIODICALS

Berglund, Mats. "A Better Widget? Three Lessons for Improving Addiction Treatment from a Meta-Analytical Study." *Addiction* 100.6 (June 2005): 742–50.

Boothby, Lisa A., and Paul L. Doering. "Acamprosate for the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence." *Clinical Therapeutics: The International Peer-Reviewed Journal of Drug Therapy* 27.6 (June 2005): 695–714.

Buonopane, Alessandra, and Ismene L. Petrakis. "Pharmacotherapy of Alcohol Use Disorders." *Substance Use and Misuse* 40.13–14 (2005): 2001–20.

Krampe, Henning, and others. "Follow-Up of 180 Alcoholic Patients for Up to 7 Years After Outpatient Treatment: Impact of Alcohol Deterrents on Outcome." *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research* 30 (1) (Jan. 2006): 86–95.

Kulig, Clark C., and Thomas P. Beresford. "Hepatitis C in Alcohol Dependence: Drinking Versus Disulfiram." *Journal of Addictive Diseases* 24.2 (2005): 77–89.

Nava, Felice, Stefania Premi, Ezio Manzato, and Alfio Lucchini. "Comparing Treatments of Alcoholism on Craving and Biochemical Measures of Alcohol Consumption." *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs* 38.3 (Sept. 2006): 211–17.

Petrakis, Ismene L., and others. "Naltrexone and Disulfiram in Patients with Alcohol Dependence and Comorbid Psychiatric Disorders." *Biological Psychiatry* 57.10 (May 2005): 1128–37.

Sofuoğlu, Mehmet, and Thomas R. Kosten. "Novel Approaches to the Treatment of Cocaine Addiction." *CNS Drugs* 19.1 (2005): 13–25.

Suh, Jesse J., Helen M. Pettinati, Kyle M. Kampman, and Charles P. O'Brien. "The Status of Disulfiram: A Half

of a Century Later." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.3 (June 2006): 290–302.

#### OTHER

Wyeth-Ayerst Laboratories Staff. "Product Information: Antabuse, Disulfiram Tablets." Philadelphia: Wyeth-Ayerst Laboratories, 2000.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Divalproex sodium

### Definition

Divalproex sodium is an anticonvulsant (anti-seizure) drug. It is also used to treat mania and to help prevent migraine headaches. It is sold under multiple brand names in the United States, including Depacon, Depakene, Depakote, and Depakote sprinkle.

### Purpose

Divalproex sodium is effective in the treatment of epilepsy, particularly for preventing simple, complex (petit mal), absence, mixed, and tonic-clonic (grand mal) **seizures**. Divalproex sodium is also used to treat the manic phase of **bipolar disorder** (also called manic-depressive disorder) in adults, and to prevent migraine headache in adults.

### Description

Divalproex sodium is chemically compounded from sodium valproate and **valproic acid** in a 1:1 ratio.

Divalproex sodium is thought to work by increasing the levels of a **brain** neurotransmitter called gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA). GABA is an inhibitory neurotransmitter, which means that its presence makes it harder for nerve cells (neurons) in the brain to become activated (fire). It is believed that increasing GABA's inhibitory action on brain neurons accounts for the ability of divalproex sodium to decrease seizures, curb manic behaviors, and decrease the frequency of migraine headaches.

Divalproex sodium was discovered to decrease the likelihood of seizure in 1963. In 1978, the United States Food and Drug Administration approved it for this use. Other uses for divalproex sodium were researched and approved subsequently, including use against mania (1995) and use to decrease migraine headache frequency. Divalproex sodium's 1995 approval as an anti-mania medication was considered

an exciting advance, since it represented the first new drug introduced for this use in 25 years.

### Recommended dosage

Divalproex sodium is available in tablets of 125 mg, 250 mg, and 500 mg. Divalproex sodium is also available in 125-mg capsules, and in a 500-mg extended release tablet. A syrup is also available, containing 250 mg active drug per 5 mL.

Divalproex sodium therapy is usually started at 10–15 mg per kg of body weight per day. Dosages are then increased until seizures seem to be well controlled. This is usually achieved at averages under 60 mg per kg per day.

To treat mania, divalproex sodium is usually started at a daily dose of about 750 mg.

For migraine prevention, divalproex sodium is started at 250 mg, twice per day. In some patients, this dose will have to be raised to a total of 1,000 mg per day.

### Precautions

A greater risk of liver damage exists in patients with kidney disease, known liver disease, Addison's disease, blood diseases, children under the age of two, patients with organic brain diseases (such as Alzheimer's, Parkinson's, slow virus infections, Huntington's chorea, multiple sclerosis, etc.), patients with metabolic disorders present at birth, patients with severe seizure disorders and accompanying **mental retardation**, and patients who are taking several other anticonvulsant drugs.

Because divalproex sodium can affect a patient's blood by dropping the platelet (a type of blood cell that affects clotting) count and interfering with coagulation (clotting) capability, both platelet count and coagulation parameters should be verified before starting the medication and at intervals throughout its use.

Divalproex sodium is known to cause an increased risk of birth defects when taken during pregnancy. An individual and her health care provider must weight the potential risks and benefits of using this medication during pregnancy. Women who take this medicine should not breast-feed, since a small amount will pass into the breast milk.

Divalproex sodium causes drowsiness and impairs alertness in some individuals. Patients just beginning to use the medication should avoid driving and using dangerous machinery until they determine how the drug affects them. The sedative effects are increased in the presence of alcohol, so patients should avoid drinking while taking medicines containing divalproex sodium.

## KEY TERMS

**Absence seizure**—An epileptic seizure characterized by a sudden, momentary loss of consciousness, occasionally accompanied by some minor, jerky movements in the neck or upper arms, a twitching of the face, or a loss of muscle tone.

**Addison's disease**—Disease caused by malfunctioning adrenal glands that can be treated with cortisol replacement therapy. Symptoms include anemia, low blood pressure, digestive complaints, and diarrhea.

**Alzheimer's disease**—An incurable dementia marked by the loss of cognitive ability and memory over a period of 10–15 years. Usually affects elderly people.

**Complex seizure**—In complex seizures, the person experiences impaired consciousness.

**Huntington's disease**—A hereditary disorder that appears in middle age and is characterized by gradual brain deterioration, progressive dementia, and loss of voluntary movement. It is sometimes called Huntington's chorea.

**Multiple sclerosis**—A disease characterized by patches of hardened tissue in the brain or spinal cord, paralysis, and/or muscle tremors.

**Neurons**—Nerve cells in the brain that produce nerve impulses.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Parkinson's disease**—A disease of the nervous system most common in people over 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness.

**Simple seizure**—Simple partial seizures occur in patients who are conscious.

**Tonic-clonic (grand mal) seizure**—This is the most common type of seizure and is categorized into several phases beginning with vague symptoms hours or days before an attack. During the seizure, there is abnormal muscle contraction and relaxation and the individual may lose consciousness.

### Side effects

Some of the more common side effects of divalproex sodium include mild stomach cramps, change in menstrual cycle, diarrhea, loss of hair, indigestion, decreased appetite, nausea and vomiting, trembling in the hands and arms, and weight loss or weight gain. These side effects usually go away as the patient's body becomes accustomed to the medication.

Less common side effects include severe stomach cramps or continued nausea and vomiting, changes in mood, behavior, or thinking, double vision or seeing spots, severe **fatigue**, easy bruising or unusual bleeding, yellow cast to the skin or the whites of the eyes (jaundice), odd eye movements, and increased seizures. Patients who notice these symptoms should check with their doctor to see if their dosage or medication needs to be adjusted.

Rare side effects that should be checked out by a doctor include clumsiness, difficulty with balance, constipation, dizziness, drowsiness, headache, skin rash, agitation, restlessness, or irritability.

### Interactions

Divalproex sodium is broken down (metabolized) in the liver. Other drugs that are metabolized in the

liver can have too low or too high concentrations in the body when taken with divalproex sodium. Levels of divalproex sodium may be increased when taken with felbamate, isoniazid, salicylates (aspirin-containing medications), clarithromycin, erythromycin, and troleandomycin. Divalproex sodium may increase levels of **carbamazepine**, phenytoin, **lamotrigine**, nimodipine, phenobarbital, and zidovudine. Use with **clonazepam** may cause absence seizures. Cholestyramine and colestipol may reduce the absorption and the blood levels of divalproex sodium.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

*Mosby's Drug Consult*. St. Louis: Mosby, Inc., 2002.  
*Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis: Mosby, Inc., 1999.

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, M.D.

Dolophine see **Methadone**

Domestic abuse see **Abuse**

Domestic violence see **Abuse**

# Donepezil

## Definition

Donepezil is a drug used to treat mild to moderate **dementia**. In the United States, donepezil is sold under the trade name Aricept.

## Purpose

Donepezil is used to help treat symptoms in individuals with mild to moderate **Alzheimer's disease**. The drug may cause small improvements in dementia for a short period of time, but donepezil does not stop the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

## Description

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved donepezil for treatment of the symptoms of Alzheimer's disease. In Alzheimer's disease, some cells in specific regions of the **brain** die. Because of this cell death, these brain cells lose their ability to transmit nerve impulses. Brain cells normally transmit nerve impulses by secreting various chemicals known as **neurotransmitters**.

Brain cells that make and secrete a neurotransmitter called acetylcholine are affected early in the course of Alzheimer's disease. Donepezil helps prevent the breakdown of acetylcholine in the brain, thus temporarily increasing its concentration. In doing so, donepezil may improve the thinking process by facilitating nerve impulse transmission within the brain.

Donepezil is available as tablets in two different strengths. It is broken down by the liver.

## Recommended dosage

The initial dosage of donepezil is 5 mg taken at bedtime. This dose should be continued for four to six weeks. The dosage may then be increased to 10 mg at bedtime, but there is no clear evidence that the higher dosage is more beneficial. However, the higher dosage is likely to cause more side effects.

## Precautions

Donepezil may slow heart rate, increase acid in the stomach, make urination difficult, cause breathing difficulties, and may make it more likely for people to have **seizures**. Therefore, people with certain heart conditions, those who are prone to stomach ulcers, people with bladder obstruction, individuals with asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and people with a history of seizure disorders should use donepezil carefully under close physician supervision.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

People taking donepezil should be reassessed periodically to determine whether the drug is providing any benefits. When caregivers feel the drug is no longer beneficial, it may be stopped.

## Side effects

More than 5% of people taking donepezil experience difficulty sleeping, dizziness, nausea, diarrhea, muscle cramps, headache, or other pains.

Diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting occur more often with the 10-mg dose than the 5-mg dosage. These adverse effects are usually mild, short-lived, and typically subside when the drug is stopped. Other less common side effects are abnormal dreams, **depression**, drowsiness, fainting, loss of appetite, weight loss, frequent urination, arthritis, and easy bruising.

## Interactions

Recent research has found that the effects of donepezil on Alzheimer's disease may be enhanced through combination therapy with **memantine** (Namenda). According to a study in the *Journal of the American Medical Association* in 2004, studies have shown that the use of memantine in combination therapy with donepezil is frequently more effective

than the use of donepezil alone in the treatment of moderate to severe Alzheimer's disease. Using memantine and donepezil in combination therapy does not affect the pharmacokinetics of either drug. **Clinical trials** have shown such combination therapy to be both safe and effective, although the safety precautions for both drugs must be considered before combination therapy is undertaken.

Many drugs may alter the effects of donepezil; likewise, donepezil may alter the action of other drugs. Drugs such as dicyclomine, phenytoin, **carbamazepine**, dexamethasone, rifampin, or phenobarbital may lessen the effects of donepezil. Other drugs such as bethanechol, ketoconazole, or quinidine may increase some of the side effects associated with donepezil. When donepezil and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen (Advil) or naproxen (Aleve) are used together, there may be an increased tendency to develop stomach ulcers. Donepezil may increase the side effects associated with use of **fluvoxamine**, an antidepressant. If succinylcholine, a drug commonly used during anesthesia, is used with donepezil, prolonged muscle paralysis may result.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Facts and Comparisons, 2002.  
 Mosby Staff. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 1999.  
 VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Asp, Elissa, and others. "Verbal Repetition in Patients with Alzheimer's Disease Who Receive Donepezil." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 21.5 (May 2006): 426–31.  
 Chen, Xiying, and others. "Donepezil Effects on Cerebral Blood Flow in Older Adults with Mild Cognitive Deficits." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry & Clinical Neurosciences* 18.2 (Sept. 2006): 178–85.  
 Cholongitas, Evangelos, Chrysoula Pipili, and Maria Daseiliki. "Recurrence of Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding After Donepezil Administration." *Alzheimer Disease and Associated Disorders* 20.4 (Oct.–Dec. 2006): 326.  
 Cummings, Jeffrey L., Thomas McRae, and Richard Zhang. "Effects of Donepezil on Neuropsychiatric Symptoms in Patients with Dementia and Severe Behavioral Disorders." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.7 (July 2006): 605–12.  
 Feldman, Howard H., Frederick A. Schmitt, and Jason T. Olin. "Activities of Daily Living in Moderate-to-Severe Alzheimer Disease: An Analysis of the Treatment Effects of Memantine in Patients Receiving Stable

- Donepezil Treatment." *Alzheimer Disease and Associated Disorders* 20.4 (Oct.–Dec. 2006): 263–68.  
 Hogan, David B. "Donepezil for Severe Alzheimer's Disease." *Lancet* 367.9516 (Apr. 2006): 1031–32.  
 Kitabayashi, Yurinosuke, and others. "Donepezil-Induced Nightmares in Mild Cognitive Impairment." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 60.1 (Feb. 2006): 123–24.  
 Maruyama, Masahiro, and others. "Benefits of Combining Donepezil Plus Traditional Japanese Herbal Medicine on Cognition and Brain Perfusion in Alzheimer's Disease: A 12-Week Observer-Blind, Donepezil Mono-therapy Controlled Trial." *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* 54.5 (May 2006): 867–71.  
 Mazeh, D., and others. "Donepezil for Negative Signs in Elderly Patients with Schizophrenia: An Add-On, Double-Blind, Crossover, Placebo-Controlled Study." *International Psychogeriatrics* 18.3 (Sept. 2006): 429–36.  
 Ringman, John M., and Jeffrey L. Cummings. "Current and Emerging Pharmacological Treatment Options For Dementia." *Behavioural Neurology* 17.1 (2006): 5–16.  
 Schredl, M., and others. "The Effect of Donepezil on Sleep in Elderly, Healthy Persons: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study." *Pharmacopsychiatry* 39.6 (Nov. 2006): 205–208.  
 Stiles, Melissa M., and Sandra Martin. "Does Treatment with Donepezil Improve Memory for Patients With Mild Cognitive Impairment?" *Journal of Family Practice* 55.5 (May 2006): 435–36.  
 Tariot, Pierre N., and others. "Memantine Treatment in Patients with Moderate to Severe Alzheimer Disease Already Receiving Donepezil: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 291 (2004): 317–24.  
 Winblad, Bengt, and others. "Donepezil in Patients with Severe Alzheimer's Disease: Double-Blind, Parallel-Group, Placebo-Controlled Study." *Lancet* 367.9516 (Apr. 2006): 1057–65.  
 Wong, Shelley. "The Safety of Donepezil in Treating Vascular Dementia." *CNS Spectrums* 11.9 (Sept. 2006): 658–61.

### OTHER

- Eisai Co., Ltd. *Aricept Prescribing Information*. <<http://www.aricept.com/content/pi.pdf>>.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph., PhD  
 Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Dopamine

### Definition

Dopamine, identified as a central nervous system agent in 1959, is a neurotransmitter (nerve-signaling molecule) the body makes from the amino acid

tyrosine. Dopamine in turn serves as the molecule the body uses to make **adrenaline** and noradrenaline. In addition to operating in nervous system signaling, it also acts as a hormone in an area of the **brain** called the hypothalamus, regulating release of the hormone prolactin, which is involved in parenting behavior and milk production. The body regulates dopamine's activity in the brain in part by using proteins called dopamine transporters, which can take up dopamine and dump it back into a cell, preventing the signaling molecule from exerting its activity. The body also has five types of proteins, called dopamine receptors, responsible for recognizing the dopamine molecule, binding to it, and transmitting its signal to the cell. Dopamine is at the center of the development of a number of psychiatric disorders, including **addiction** and **schizophrenia**, and it also plays a prominent role in the manifestations of Parkinson's disease.

### Description

The brain produces dopamine in three primary areas: the substantia nigra, the ventral tegmental area, and the arcuate nucleus. The first two are of particular interest in terms of psychiatric disorders; the arcuate nucleus is associated with dopamine's role as a neurohormone in prolactin regulation.

Disorders associated with dopamine signaling have a biological basis in the brain that appears to be site-specific. The brain has four major dopamine-signaling pathways.

- The mesocortical pathway connects the ventral tegmental area to the cortex, the part of the brain involved in cognition and that may play a role in motivation. This pathway features in hypotheses of dopamine's association with schizophrenia.
- The mesolimbic pathway also begins in the ventral tegmental area, which is linked to the nucleus accumbens, the largest component of the ventral striatum. Much research has associated the nucleus accumbens and the mesolimbic pathway with brain reward processes and addiction and also with different aspects of schizophrenia.
- The nigrostriatal pathway connects the dopamine-producing nigrostriatal area with the striatum and plays a high-profile role in the development of Parkinson's symptoms.
- The tuberoinfundibular pathway involves the hypothalamus and dopamine as a neurohormone.

In terms of neuropsychiatric disorders, dopamine is probably best known as the neurotransmitter underlying the development and persistence of addiction as part of the mesolimbic reward pathway. In

brief, experiences we find rewarding, such as food or sex, can become associated with increased dopamine, as can some pathological behaviors, such as compulsive gambling. Some drugs also directly elicit an increase in dopamine, setting off the reward pathway and leading more use of the drug. Ultimately, some people become addicted to substances or behaviors because of the dopamine release they trigger and the feelings of euphoria or tension relief that can follow the release.

Anatomically, these distinct dopamine-signaling pathways, variously involved in specific pathologies, may overlap with one another. For example, there is some comorbidity among schizophrenia, **depression**, and drug dependence and some anatomical overlap in the dopamine-signaling areas of the brain underlies this.

### Dopamine receptors

The dopamine receptors, the five proteins responsible for receiving the dopamine signal for a cell, are divided into two general classes: those that are D1-like, and those that are D2-like. Of the five, the D1A through D1D and D5 receptors are all D1-like, and the D2, D3, and D4 receptors fall into the D2-like category. The distribution of these receptors differs in different dopamine-related areas of the brain. For example, the ventral striatum and limbic cortex of the mesolimbic pathway have more D2-like receptors, and D2 and D4 receptors are more closely associated with people with **substance abuse** problems. The dorsal striatum, involved in dopamine-related disorders such as Parkinson's, has more also D2- than D1-like receptors. But in the prefrontal cortex, where dopamine-signaling dysfunction is associated with schizophrenia, the ratio of D1-like receptors to D2-like receptors is higher. The two general classes of receptors have opposite effects at the molecular level, but they act together in complex ways.

### Dopamine and schizophrenia

A much-discussed proposed explanation for the manifestations of schizophrenia is the "dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia." This hypothesis implicates dopamine-signaling dysfunction along different dopamine pathways in the symptoms associated with schizophrenia. The hypothesis finds its origins in the fact that antipsychotic medications (also called "neuroleptics") exert their effects by blocking or inhibiting D2 receptors. The mesolimbic pathway may be involved, a conclusion based on studies showing a link between dysfunction of this system and the **delusions** and **hallucinations** of schizophrenia, with an

increase in striatal dopamine in association with these occurrences. On the other hand, the mesocortical pathway is also probably involved because of its role in working memory, memorization, and manipulation of spatial information, all of which are affected in schizophrenia. A decrease in dopamine in the prefrontal area, which is linked to the ventral tegmental area in the mesocortical pathway, appears to lead to the cognitive deficits of schizophrenia. In addition, the nigrostriatal pathway may be involved: there is an increase in dopamine transmission from the substantia nigra to the striatum in people with schizophrenia.

### **Dopamine, the brain reward system, and addiction**

The nucleus accumbens (in the ventral striatum and part of the mesolimbic pathway) is the focal point of dopamine's involvement in the brain's reward pathway and addiction. There is an increase in dopamine release in the nucleus accumbens in addiction, and activity in this area is a target of models exploring the mechanisms of behavioral or substance addictions. Human **imaging studies**, which have become quite revelatory in terms of the biological underpinnings of psychiatric disorders, show that endogenous release of dopamine in the striatum is correlated with drug-induced feelings of pleasure. For example, a dose of amphetamine or of alcohol will promote dopamine release in the ventral striatum. Dopamine also is associated with the cravings of addiction and may play a role in the significance an addicted person may assign to cues that others perceive as neutral (known as salience). This system has also been implicated in process or behavioral addiction.

### **Dopamine and movement and repetitive disorders**

Dopamine's role in the extrapyramidal (movement and coordination) symptoms of Parkinson's is seated in a shortage of the neurotransmitter in the nigrostriatal pathway, specifically involving the putamen and caudate nucleus. Tourette's, a syndrome characterized by onset in childhood, involuntary tics, stereotypic behaviors, and repetitive thoughts and rituals, is also seated in the dorsal striatum. This syndrome can occur as a comorbidity with **obsessive-compulsive disorder** and/or **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD), which some studies also have associated with dopamine-signaling dysfunction.

### **Dopamine and mood disorders**

Changes in dopamine signaling may contribute to symptoms of depression, such as an inability to expe-

## KEY TERMS

**D1, D2, etc.**—Dopamine receptor proteins.

**Dopamine**—A neurotransmitter and neurohormone.

**Mesolimbic pathway**—The “reward pathway” of the brain.

**Nucleus accumbens**—A part of the brain involved in the mesolimbic reward pathway, which receives dopamine signaling from the ventral tegmental area.

**Ventral tegmental area**—Produces dopamine and signals to the nucleus accumbens the rest of the striatum.

rience pleasure or loss of motivation. Although low levels of dopamine binding to the D2 receptor are associated with social **anxiety**, an increase in dopamine can be associated with the hypersocial behavior of someone experiencing the manic aspects of **bipolar disorder**.

### **Drugs related to dopamine/dopamine receptor regulation**

Drugs may act at any point along a dopamine-signaling pathway. L-dopa, used in treating Parkinson's, is a dopamine precursor that is synthesized into dopamine in the brain and ameliorates the effects of low dopamine levels in the dorsal striatum. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) block the activity of the enzyme that breaks down dopamine; these may be used as **antidepressants** and can affect dopamine-related pathways. Antipsychotics are divided into two classes, the typical and atypical antipsychotics, and can target different types of dopamine receptors. Atypical antipsychotics, including **clozapine**, may target the D4 receptor more strongly than the D2. Bromocriptine targets D2 and is a partial inhibitor of D1. The recently approved aripiprazole is a partial dopamine agonist (mimic), and **amantadine** is also a dopamine agonist.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edition, Text revision. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Franken, Ingmar H.A., Jan Booij, and Wim van den Brink. “The Role of Dopamine in Human Addiction: From

- Reward to Motivated Attention." *European Journal of Pharmacology* 526 (2005): 199–206.
- Grant, Jon E., J.D., M.D., M.P.H., Judson A. Brewer, M.D., Ph.D., and Marc N. Potenza, M.D., Ph.D. "The Neurobiology of Substance and Behavioral Addictions." *CNS Spectrum* 11 (2006): 924–930.
- Greene, James G. "Gene Expression Profiles of Brain Dopamine Neurons and Relevance to Neuropsychiatric Disease." *Journal of Physiology* 575 (2006): 411–416.
- Kienast, T., and A. Heinz. "Dopamine and the Diseased Brain." *CNS and Neurological Disorders-Drug Targets* 5 (2006): 109–131.
- Totterdell, Susan. "The Anatomy of Comorbid Neuro-psychiatric Disorders Based on Cortico-limbic Synaptic Interactions." *Neurotoxicity Research* 10 (2006): 65–86.

#### OTHER

- "Schizophrenia." National Institutes of Mental Health. (January 15 2007) <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health-information/schizophreniamenu.cfm>>.
- "Schizophrenia." National Library of Medicine. (January 15 2007) <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/schizophrenia.html>>.

Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

Doral see **Quazepam**



A doxepin tablet. (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

pinephrine and serotonin (both chemicals that stimulate nerve cells) and, to a lesser extent, blocks the action of another brain chemical, acetylcholine. Although not technically a tricyclic antidepressant, doxepin shares most of the properties of these drugs, which include **amitriptyline**, **clomipramine**, **desipramine**, **imipramine**, **nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, and **trimipramine**. Studies comparing doxepin with these other drugs have shown that doxepin is no more or less effective than other antidepressants of its type. Its choice for treatment is as much a function of physician preference as any other factor.

The therapeutic effects of doxepin, like other antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for at least two weeks after starting the drug. People taking doxepin should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

#### Recommended dosage

As with any antidepressant, doxepin must be carefully adjusted by the physician to produce the desired therapeutic effect. Doxepin is available as 10-mg, 25-mg, 50-mg, 75-mg, 100-mg, and 150-mg oral capsules as well as an oral concentrate solution containing 10 mg of drug in each milliliter of solution.

Therapy is usually started at 30–150 mg per day and gradually increased to 300 mg daily if needed. There is little evidence that doses above 300 mg daily provide any additional benefits. Amounts up to 150 mg may be taken as a single dose at bedtime to decrease daytime sleepiness. Doses of more than 150 mg per day should be divided into two or three doses and taken throughout the day.

In patients over age 60, therapy should be maintained at the low end of the dosing range and increased

#### Purpose

Doxepin is an oral antidepressant. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Sinequan and is also available under its generic name.

#### Description

Doxepin acts to change the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses between cells. Its action primarily increases the concentration of nore-

cautiously and with physician supervision. Patients with organic brain syndrome (psychiatric symptoms of **dementia** often seen in elderly patients) generally require daily doses of only 25–50 mg.

If the oral concentrate of doxepin is used, each dose should be diluted in at least 4 oz (120 mL) of milk, orange, prune, tomato, pineapple, or grapefruit juice just before administration. Doxepin is not compatible with many carbonated beverages and should not be diluted in them.

### Precautions

As with tricyclic antidepressants, doxepin should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in people, especially the elderly, who have benign prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, and glaucoma, especially angle-closure glaucoma (the most severe form). Before starting treatment, people with these conditions should discuss the relative risks and benefits of treatment with their doctors to help determine if doxepin is the right antidepressant for them.

A common problem with antidepressants is sedation (drowsiness, lack of physical and mental alertness). This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. In most patients, sedation decreases or disappears entirely with time, but until then patients taking doxepin should not perform hazardous activities requiring mental alertness or coordination. The sedative effect is increased when doxepin is taken with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcoholic beverages, sleeping medications, other **sedatives**, or antihistamines. It may be dangerous to take doxepin in combination with these substances. Doxepin may increase the possibility of having **seizures**. Patients should tell their physician if they have a history of seizures, including seizures brought on by the **abuse** of drugs or alcohol. These people should use doxepin only with caution and be closely monitored by their physician.

Doxepin may increase heart rate and **stress** on the heart. It may be dangerous for people with cardiovascular disease, especially those who have recently had a heart attack, to take this drug or other antidepressants in the same pharmacological class. In rare cases where patients with cardiovascular disease must receive doxepin, they should be monitored closely for cardiac rhythm disturbances and signs of cardiac stress or damage.

Doxepin should not be taken by nursing mothers because it is secreted into breast milk and may cause side effects in the nursing infant.

### Side effects

Doxepin shares the side effects of tricyclic antidepressants. The most frequent of these are dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention, increased heart rate, sedation, irritability, dizziness, and decreased coordination. As with most side effects associated with tricyclic antidepressants, the intensity is highest at the beginning of therapy and tends to decrease with continued use.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Patients may also chew sugarless gum or suck on sugarless candy in order to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement who take doxepin may be especially likely to have problems with urinary retention. Symptoms include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty than usual passing urine. In most cases, urinary retention is managed with dose reduction or by switching to another type of antidepressant. In extreme cases, patients may require treatment with bethanechol, a drug that reverses this particular side effect. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

### Interactions

Dangerously high blood pressure has resulted from the combination of antidepressants such as doxepin and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). Because of this, doxepin should never be taken in combination with MAOIs. Patient's taking any MAOIs, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAOI then wait at least 14 days before starting doxepin or any tricyclic antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing doxepin and starting an MAOI.

Doxepin may decrease the blood pressure-lowering effects of **clonidine**. Patients who take both drugs should be monitored for loss of blood-pressure control and the dose of clonidine increased as needed.

The sedative effects of doxepin are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sedatives, sleeping medications, or medications used for other mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. The anticholinergic effects of doxepin are additive

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Benign prostate hypertrophy**—Enlargement of the prostate gland.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Organic brain syndrome**—A class of disorders characterized by progressive deterioration of mental processes caused by temporary brain dysfunction or permanent brain damage. Symptoms include delusions, dementia, amnesia, and delirium that are not caused by drugs, alcohol, or as a side effect of medication.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

with other anticholinergic drugs such as **benztropine**, **biperiden**, **trihexyphenidyl**, and antihistamines.

*See also* Neurotransmitters.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.
- DeVane, C. Lindsay, Pharm.D. "Drug Therapy for Mood Disorders." In *Fundamentals of Monitoring*

*Psychoactive Drug Therapy*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1990.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.

Draw-a-person test see **Figure drawings**

DSM see **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**

## Dual diagnosis

### Definition

Dual **diagnosis** is a term that refers to patients who have both a mental health disorder and substance use disorder. It may be used interchangeably with “co-occurring disorders” or “comorbidity.” According to the U.S. **Substance Abuse** and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), an estimated 10 million people in the United States will have a combination of at least one mental health and one substance **abuse** disorder in any twelve-month period. Substance abuse is the most common and significant co-occurring disorder among adults with such severe mental illnesses as **schizophrenia** or **bipolar disorder**. It may also be observed in individuals with mental health diagnoses that include **depression**, **anxiety**, post traumatic **stress** disorder, or eating disorders. The term “substance abuse” refers to substance use disorders that range along a continuum from abuse to dependence or **addiction**.

The term “dual diagnosis” is considered to be misleading by some professionals because most people with this diagnosis actually have many problems rather than just two discrete illnesses. Occasionally, the term is used to describe a person with developmental disabilities and/or a mental health disorder or substance abuse disorder. More commonly, dual diagnosis refers to those with severe mental illness and a drug or alcohol abuse disorder, and who receive therapy in the public treatment systems.

### Description

The prevalence of people with dual diagnoses became fully apparent to clinicians in the early 1980s. Initially, dual diagnoses were thought to be most likely in young adults with schizophrenia or bipolar disorder who also had extensive histories of drug or alcohol abuse. There was a widespread belief, often shared by family members of affected patients, that a young person’s initiation into illegal drug use actually caused a subsequent mental illness. It is now more commonly

thought that symptoms of the mental disorder generally appear first, and that the abuse of drugs or alcohol may represent the patient's attempt to self-medicate and alleviate the troublesome symptoms that accompany mental health disorders.

Today it is clear that the co-occurrence of mental illness and substance abuse is common: about 50% of individuals with severe mental illnesses are affected by substance abuse. A dual diagnosis is also associated with a host of negative outcomes that may include higher rates of **relapse**, **hospitalization**, incarceration, violence, **homelessness**, and exposure to such serious infections as HIV and hepatitis.

Despite almost 20 years of evidence regarding the prevalence and serious illnesses of people with dual diagnoses, the United States mental health and substance abuse systems continue to operate on parallel tracks, causing additional confusion to those with concurrent disorders. Refusal to combine services to provide better coordinated treatment has meant unnecessary suffering and expense for thousands of patients and their families.

For many people with dual diagnoses, the criminal justice system—juvenile as well as adult—becomes their *de facto* treatment system. Nearly two-thirds of incarcerated youth with substance abuse disorders have at least one other mental health disorder. The common association between **conduct disorder** or **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** and substance abuse is one example of a combination of serious and disabling disorders. A person in need of treatment for dual diagnoses who is in the current criminal justice system may not be evaluated or assessed, let alone provided with appropriate treatment.

## Demographics

Children of alcohol or other drug-addicted parents are at increased risk for developing substance abuse and mental health problems. Disruptive behavior disorders coexist with adolescent substance abuse problems more often than not. Other special groups that may be affected include older adults with mood or **anxiety disorders**, especially those who are grieving numerous losses. They may drink or misuse or abuse prescription drugs to cope with their lowered quality of life. These factors can often complicate treatment of hypertension, diabetes, arthritis, and other health-related problems that affect the elderly as well.

Abuse of alcohol or other drugs may occur in persons with eating disorders in an effort to deal with guilt, shame, anxiety, or feelings of self-loathing as a result of bingeing and purging food. Many military veterans

develop anxiety, depression or **post-traumatic stress disorder** and have histories of substance abuse. Services for veterans are woefully inadequate, adding to the chronic nature of dual diagnosis among them.

## Treatment

One of the difficulties in treating patients with dual diagnoses is that most treatments for mental illness are usually developed for and validated by studies of patients with single diagnoses; therefore, many cases of comorbidity may not be well treated by these approaches. Recent research on services provided to people with dual diagnoses, however, indicates that treatment can be successful, provided certain specific components are included in the treatment process. The critical elements identified as part of treatment programs with the most successful outcomes are:

- staged interventions that begin with engaging the client; persuading him or her to become involved in recovery-focused activities; acquiring skills and support to control the illnesses; and then helping the patient with relapse prevention.
- assertive outreach that may involve intensive case management and meetings in the person's home.
- motivational interventions to help the client become committed to self-management of their illnesses.
- counseling that includes cognitive and behavioral skills.
- social network support and/or family interventions.
- an understanding of the long-term nature of recovery.
- comprehensive scope to treatment that includes personal habits, stress management, friendship networks, housing, and many other aspects of a person's life.
- cultural sensitivity and competence.

The success of 12-step programs in the treatment of substance abuse is well established. Nevertheless, the level of confrontation sometimes found in a traditional 12-step group may feel overwhelming to people with mental illnesses. In addition, the use of psychotropic (mood- or behavior-altering) medications is controversial in some areas of the substance abuse recovery community. As a result, other models of consumer-led **support groups** specifically for people with concurrent disorders, such as Dual Recovery Anonymous and Double Trouble, are being developed.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Kranzler, H. R., and B. J. Rounsvaille, eds. *Dual Diagnosis and Treatment: Substance Abuse and Comorbid Medical and Psychiatric Disorders*. New York: Marcel Dekker, Inc., 1998.

Pepper, Bert, and E. L. Hendrickson. *Developing a Cross Training Project for Substance Abuse, Mental Health and Criminal Justice Professionals Working with Offenders with Co-Existing Disorders (Substance Abuse/Mental Illness)*. New York City: The Information Exchange, 1998.

#### PERIODICALS

- Drake, Robert E., M.D., PhD., Susan M. Essock, PhD., and others. "Implementing Dual Diagnosis Services for Clients with Severe Mental Illness." *Psychiatric Services* 52: (April 2001): 469-476.
- Rach Beisel, Jill, M.D., Jack Scott, Sc.D. and Lisa Dixon, M.D., M.P.H. "Co-occurring Severe Mental Illness and Substance Use Disorders: A Review of Recent Research." *Psychiatric Services* 50: (November 1999) 1427-1434.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince St., Alexandria, VA 22314 <<http://www.nmha.org>>.
- National Mental Health Consumers' Self-Help Clearinghouse. 1211 Chestnut St, Suite 1207, Philadelphia, PA 19107. <<http://www.mhselfhelp.org>>.

Judy Leaver, M.A.

Dyslexia see **Reading disorder**

## Dyspareunia

### Definition

Dyspareunia is painful sexual intercourse. The same term is used whether the pain results from a medical or a psychosocial problem. Dyspareunia may be diagnosed in men and women, although the **diagnosis** is rare in men; when it does occur in men, it is almost always caused by a physical problem.

Because of the prevalence of this problem among women in the context of psychosocial associations, only women's experiences are emphasized in this entry.

The professional's handbook, the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, fourth edition, text revised (known as the *DSM-IV-TR*), classifies this condition as a sexual dysfunction. There is considerably controversy about whether or not dyspareunia should continue to be classified as it has been in the *DSM-IV*, with some practitioners arguing for its reclassification in the *DSM-V* as a **pain disorder**.

### Description

Dyspareunia is any pain experienced any time before, during, or following sexual intercourse. The pain may be located in the genitals or within the pelvis. It is not unusual for women to occasionally have pain during intercourse. This is not true dyspareunia.

A woman who has dyspareunia often also has **vaginismus**. Vaginismus is an involuntary tightening of the vaginal muscles in response to penetration. It can make intercourse painful or impossible.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Psychosocial causes of dyspareunia include:

- prior sexual trauma. Many women who have been raped or sexually abused as children may have dyspareunia. Even when a woman wishes to have sex with someone later, the act of intercourse may trigger memories of the trauma and interfere with her enjoyment of the act. Vaginismus often occurs in such situations.
- guilt, anxiety, or tension about sex. Any of these can cause tense vaginal muscles and also prevent arousal from occurring. People who were raised with the idea that sex is bad may be more prone to have this problem. Fear of pregnancy may make arousal difficult.
- prior physical trauma to the vaginal area. Women who have had an accidental injury or surgery in the vaginal area may become sensitive to penetration. Vaginismus is common in these cases.
- depression or anxiety in general. Either of these can lead to loss of interest in sex. This can be experienced by either sex.
- problems in a relationship. Dyspareunia may occur when a woman feels her sexual partner is abusive or emotionally distant, she is no longer attracted to her partner, or she fears her partner is no longer attracted to her. Men, too, can lose interest in sex because of prior emotional trauma in a relationship; however, the result is usually impotence, rather than dyspareunia.
- vasocongestion, which can occur when either partner frequently becomes aroused but does not reach orgasm. Vasocongestion is a pooling of blood in dilated blood vessels. Normally, the pelvic area becomes congested with blood when a person becomes sexually aroused. This congestion goes away quickly after orgasm. If there is no orgasm, the congestion takes much longer to resolve.

Any of these factors may cause painful sex. The affected person may then associate pain with sex and find it even harder to relax and become aroused in the future.

### Symptoms

The *DSM-IV* diagnostic criteria for dyspareunia are as follows:

- recurrent or persistent genital pain associated with sexual intercourse in either a male or a female.
- the disturbance causes marked distress or interpersonal difficulty.
- the disturbance is not caused exclusively by vaginismus or lack of lubrication, is not better accounted for by another Axis I disorder (except another sexual dysfunction), and is not due exclusively to the direct physiological effects of a substance (such as a drug of abuse or a medication) or a general medical condition.

The most common symptom of dyspareunia from psychosocial causes is pain at the vaginal opening as the penis enters the vagina. Entry may be difficult, and the pain may be burning or sharp. The woman may have a sense of being “dry.” Pain may continue or ease as thrusting continues.

Vasocongestion can cause an aching pain in the pelvic area that persists for hours after intercourse. Pain with orgasm, or pain deep in the pelvis with thrusting, is more likely to be a sign of a medical problem but can result from lack of arousal and tension.

A person who experiences pain during sex may feel embarrassed or ashamed. Dyspareunia can cause problems in relationships or lead to the affected person’s avoiding relationships altogether.

### Demographics

About 15% of women may have pain with intercourse at some point in their lives. About 1–2% have true dyspareunia. The incidence is much higher in women who have been raped or otherwise sexually abused. As stated, dyspareunia in men is rare.

### Diagnosis

About 30% to 40% of all women who seek help from a sexual counselor for dyspareunia will have a clear physical cause identified as the reason for their pain. Examples of possible physical causes are infections, sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), estrogen deficiencies, and vulvar vestibulitis (severe pain during vaginal penetration).

A full family and sexual history can help pinpoint possible psychosocial causes. A psychological evaluation can determine the cause of the problem. Women who have been raped or abused may also have **post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)** or **generalized anxiety disorder**.

There are two types of dyspareunia. Lifelong or primary dyspareunia means that the condition has been present for the entire sexual life of the affected person. This type is usually associated with sexual abuse, being raised to believe that sex is bad, fear of sex, or a painful first sexual experience. Acquired or secondary dyspareunia begins after a period of normal sexual function. It often has a medical cause, but it may be a result of some sort of trauma, such as rape.

### Treatments

Some studies have found that treatments that approach dyspareunia that results from vulvar vestibulitis syndrome as a pain disorder, rather than as a sexual dysfunction, are quite effective in reducing the symptoms of pain.

Counseling is often helpful to identify and reframe negative feelings about sex. **Couples therapy** can help improve communication between partners and resolve problems that may be a factor in the sexual relationship. Women who have been abused or raped may benefit from counseling techniques designed to help overcome fears and issues caused by traumatic experiences.

Sex therapy may be offered to provide information about the physical aspects of arousal and orgasm. A sex therapist will also offer suggestions for how to improve sexual technique. For example, increasing time for foreplay and allowing the woman to control when and how penetration occurs can help her to relax and become aroused more easily.

Women who also have vaginismus may be given a set of devices they can use at home to dilate the opening of the vagina. Affected women start with a very small device and gradually work up to a penis-sized device, proceeding to a larger size only when they can use the smaller one without pain or fear. This retrains the vaginal muscles and helps the involuntary muscle tightening of vaginismus.

Use of a vaginal lubricant, at least temporarily, may be helpful in some women to reduce anxiety about possible pain.

There are no specific medications that treat dyspareunia. Medications that increase blood flow or relax muscles may be helpful in some cases.

## KEY TERMS

**Dyspareunia**—Painful sexual intercourse.

**Vaginismus**—An involuntary tightening of the vaginal muscles that makes sexual intercourse painful, difficult, or impossible.

**Vasocongestion**—A pooling of blood in dilated blood vessels.

**Vulvar vestibulitis syndrome (VVS)**—Vulvar vestibulitis syndrome is thought to be the most frequent cause of dyspareunia in premenopausal women. A chronic, persistent clinical syndrome, vulvar vestibulitis is characterized by severe pain on vestibular touch or attempted vaginal entry.

### Prognosis

With treatment, the chance of overcoming dyspareunia and having an enjoyable sexual life is good. Treatment can take several months, particularly in the case of survivors of a violent trauma such as rape.

*See also* Erectile dysfunction; Post-traumatic stress disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Hales Robert E., Stuart C. Yudofsky, and John A. Talbott, eds. *The American Psychiatric Press Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.

Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Kaplan & Sadock's Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

Binik, Yitzchak M., MD. "Should Dyspareunia be Retained as a Sexual Dysfunction in DSM-V. A Painful Classification Decision." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 34 (2005): 11–21.

Heim, Lori J. "Evaluation and Differential Diagnosis of Dyspareunia." *American Family Physician* 63 (2001): 1535–44. Available online at: <<http://www.aafp.org/afp/20010415/1535.html>>.

#### OTHER

American Academy of Family Physicians. "Dyspareunia: Painful Sex for Women." *Familydoctor.org*. Aug. 2004. <<http://familydoctor.org/669.xml>>.

Carson-DeWitt, Rosalind, MD. "Dyspareunia: Painful Sexual Intercourse." *Healthfinder.gov*. Nov. 2006. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. <<http://www.healthfinder.gov/hg/files/?id=11893>>.

National Library of Medicine. "Female Sexual Dysfunction." *Medline Plus*. Mar. 5, 2007. National Institutes of Health. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/femalesexualdysfunction.html>>.

Jody Bower, MSW

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Dysthymic disorder

### Definition

Dysthymic disorder is defined as a mood disorder with chronic (long-term) depressive symptoms that are present most of the day, more days than not, for a period of at least two years.

### Description

Everyone experiences feelings of unhappiness and sadness occasionally. When these depressed feelings start to dominate everyday life and cause physical and mental deterioration, the feelings become known as **depressive disorders**. Depressive disorders can be categorized as **major depressive disorder** or dysthymic disorder. Individuals who have dysthymic disorder have had their depressive symptoms for years—they often cannot pinpoint exactly when they started to feel depressed. People with dysthymic disorder may describe to their doctor feelings of hopelessness, lowered self-esteem, poor concentration, indecisiveness, decreased motivation, sleeping too much or too little, or eating too much or too little. Symptoms are present often and for the whole day and are typically present for at least two years.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The causes of **depression** are complex and not yet completely understood. Sleep abnormalities, hormones, **neurotransmitters** (chemicals that communicate impulses from one nerve cell to another), upbringing, heredity, and stressors (significant life changes or events that cause **stress**) all have been implicated as causes of depression.

Dysthymic disorder occurs in approximately 25% to 50% of persons who have sleep abnormalities that include reduced rapid eye movement (REM) sleep and impaired sleep continuity. Rapid eye movement sleep is an essential component of the sleep cycle and quality of sleep.

There is some evidence that suggests a correlation with hormonal imbalances of cortisol or thyroid hormones. In many adults, levels of cortisol (a stress hormone) are elevated during acute depressive periods and return to normal when the person is no longer depressed. In children and adolescents, experimental results have been quite inconsistent, although there is some evidence that hypersecretion of cortisol is associated with more severe depressive symptoms and with a higher likelihood of recurrence of depression. A lack of thyroid hormone mimics depression quite well, and thyroid hormone levels are routinely checked in patients with recent-onset depression.

In depression, there appears to be abnormal excess or inhibition of signals that control mood, thoughts, pain, and other sensations. Some studies suggest an imbalance of the neurotransmitter called serotonin. It is assumed that the reason **antidepressants** are effective is that they correct these chemical imbalances. For example, the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, one class of antidepressant medications that includes **fluoxetine** (Prozac), appears to establish a normal level of serotonin. As the name implies, the drug inhibits the reuptake of the serotonin neurotransmitter from the gaps between nerve cells, thus increasing neurotransmitter action, alleviating depressive symptoms.

A child's upbringing may also be key in the development of dysthymic disorder. For example, it is speculated that if a person is abused and neglected throughout childhood and adolescence, a pattern of low self-esteem and negative thinking may emerge, and, from that, a lifelong pattern of depression may follow.

Heredity seems to play a role in the development of depressive disorders. People with major depression in their immediate family are up to three times more likely to have the disorder themselves. It would seem that biological and genetic factors may make certain individuals more prone to depressive disorders, but that environmental circumstances, or stressors, may then trigger the disorder.

### Symptoms

The mental health professional's handbook to aid in patient **diagnosis** is the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, also called the **DSM**. The 2000 edition of this manual is known as the **DSM-IV-TR** (fourth edition, text revision). The **DSM-IV-TR** has established a list of criteria that can indicate a diagnosis. These criteria include:

- depressed mood for most of the day, more days than not.
- when depressed, two (or more) of the following are also present: decreased appetite or overeating, too much or too little sleep, low energy level, low self-esteem, decreased ability to concentrate, difficulty making decisions, and/or feelings of hopelessness.
- during the two years of the disorder, the patient has never been without symptoms listed for more than two months at a time.
- no major depressive episode (a more severe form of depression) has been present during the first two years of the disorder.
- there has never been a manic disorder, and criteria for a less severe depression called cyclothymic disorder has never been established.
- the disorder does not exclusively occur with psychosis, schizophrenia, or delusional illnesses.
- the symptoms of depression cause clinically significant impairment and distress in occupational, social, and general functioning. Dysthymic disorder can be described as "early onset" (onset before age 21 years), "late onset" (onset is age 21 years or older), and "with atypical features" (features that are not commonly observed).

### Demographics

The lifetime prevalence has been estimated to be 4.1% for women and 2.2% for men, with an overall rate of 1.5% of people over age 18 in the U.S. population affected in a given year. This percentage, in actual numbers, is about 3.3 million adults. In adults, dysthymic disorder is more common in women than in men and research suggests that the prevalence in the age group 25 to 64 years is 6% for women. In children, dysthymic disorder can occur equally among both genders. The median age of onset is 31 years.

### Diagnosis

To diagnose a patient with this disorder, the **DSM-IV-TR** criteria must be met, and evaluation of this is accomplished through an extensive psychological interview and evaluation. The affected person seeking the clinician's help usually exhibits symptoms of irritability, feelings of worthlessness and hopelessness, crying spells, decreased sex drive, agitation, and thoughts of death. The clinician must rule out any possible medical conditions that can cause depressed affect. (Affect can be defined as the expression of emotion displayed to others through facial expressions, hand gestures, tone of voice, etc.) The diagnosis cannot be made if depression occurs during an active

course of psychosis, **delusions**, schizophrenia, or **schizoaffective disorder**. If **substance abuse** is determined as the cause of depression, then a diagnosis of substance-induced mood disorder can be established.

Further psychological tests that can be administered to help in the diagnostic process include the **Beck Depression Inventory** and the **Hamilton Depression Scale**.

### Treatments

The goals of treatment include remission of symptoms and psychological and social recovery.

### Medications

Studies suggest some treatment success with medications such as tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs) or monoaminoxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). Medications can be effective in patients who have depression due to sleep abnormalities. Some tricyclic antidepressants include **amitriptyline** (Elavil), **imipramine** (Tofranil), and **nortriptyline** (Aventyl, Pamelor), and some MAOIs include **tranylcypromine** (Parnate) and **phenelzine** (Nardil), although these are not considered first-line use antidepressants. **Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** are recommended during initial treatment planning after a definitive diagnosis is well established. The most commonly prescribed SSRIs are fluoxetine (Prozac), **sertraline** (Zoloft), **paroxetine** (Paxil), **fluvoxamine** (Luvox), and **citalopram** (Celexa). Trials are currently ongoing to assess the effects of several other drugs on the symptoms of dysthymic disorder.

### Psychological therapies

Clinical reports suggest that **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, **interpersonal psychotherapy**, or **family therapy** can be effective with concurrent antidepressant medication to treat the symptoms of depression. In these therapies, the goal is to help the patient develop healthy problem-solving and coping skills.

### Prognosis

Dysthymic disorder often begins in late childhood or adolescence. The disorder follows a chronic (long-term) course. The development of a more major form of clinical depression called major depressive disorder among children with dysthymic disorder is significant. In other words, childhood onset of dysthymic disorder is considered an early indicator for recurrent mood disorder that may even have more severe clinical symptoms in the patient's future.

Patients with this disorder usually have impaired emotional, social, and physical functioning.

## KEY TERMS

**Affect**—The expression of emotion displayed to others through facial expressions, hand gestures, tone of voice, etc. Types of affect include: flat (inanimate, no expression), blunted (minimally responsive), inappropriate (incongruous expressions of emotion relative to the content of a conversation), and labile (sudden and abrupt changes in type and intensity of emotion).

**Cortisol**—A steroid hormone released by the cortex (outer portion) of the adrenal gland when a person is under stress.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Thyroid hormone**—A complex hormone that regulates metabolic rate of all cells.

In general, the clinical course of dysthymic disorder is not promising. Causes of a poorer outcome include not completing treatment, noncompliance with medication intake, and lack of willingness to change behaviors that promote a depressed state. However, patients can do very well with a short course of medications if they have a desire to follow psychotherapy treatment recommendations.

If left untreated, dysthymic disorder can result in significant financial and occupational losses. People with this disorder tend to isolate themselves by restricting daily activities and spending days in bed. Patients often complain of poor health and incur more disability days when compared to the general population. Higher rates of successful outcome occur in people who undergo psychotherapy and treatment with appropriate medications.

### Prevention

There is no known prevention for dysthymic disorder. Early **intervention** for children with depression may be effective in arresting the development of more severe problems.

See also Neurotransmitters; Origin of mental illness.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Goldman, Lee, and J. Claude Bennett, eds. *Cecil's Textbook of Medicine*, 21st ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 2000.  
Tasman, Allan, and others. *Psychiatry*, 1st ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- Brown, C. S. "Depression and Anxiety Disorders." *Obstetrics and Gynecology Clinics* 28.2 (June 2001): 241–68.  
Youdim, Moussa B. H., Dale Edmondson, and Keith F. Tipton. "The Therapeutic Potential of Monoamine

Oxidase Inhibitors." *Nature Reviews Neuroscience* 7 (2006): 295–309.

### OTHER

- National Institute of Mental Health. NIH Publication 01-4591. "The Invisible Disease: Depression." (updated 2006). <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/invisible.cfm>>.  
National Institute of Mental Health. NIH Publication 06-4584. "The Numbers Count: Mental Disorders in America." (updated 2006). <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/numbers.cfm>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
Linda Hesson, MA, LLP, CAC  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD



# E

Eating disorders see **Anorexia nervosa and Bulimia nervosa**

## Ecstasy

### Definition

Ecstasy is the popular name for the synthetic, psychoactive drug 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine, or MDMA. It is chemically similar to **methamphetamine** and the hallucinogen mescaline. MDMA acts both as a stimulant and psychedelic, producing an energizing effect, as well as distortions in time and perception and enhanced enjoyment from tactile experiences. MDMA exerts its primary effects in the **brain** on neurons that use the chemical serotonin to communicate with other neurons. The serotonin system plays an important role in regulating mood, aggression, sexual activity, sleep, and sensitivity to pain. Ecstasy has a large number of other street names. These include Adam, B-bombs, bean, Blue Nile, clarity, crystal, decadence, disco biscuit, E, essence, Eve, go, hug drug, Iboga, love drug, morning shot, pollutants, Rolls Royce, Snackies, speed for lovers, sweeties, wheels, X, and XTC.

### Description

MDMA was first synthesized in 1912 by the German pharmaceutical company Merck. Merck patented the drug in 1914. The U.S. military conducted some studies of MDMA in the 1950s, but the public knew virtually nothing about the drug until the 1970s. In the early 1970s, a few psychotherapists and psychiatrists began to explore the therapeutic uses of MDMA. They believed that they could help people benefit more from treatment if they combined doses of MDMA with **psychotherapy**. The number of clinicians who used

MDMA as an adjunct to psychotherapy grew in the next few years.

The name “ecstasy” was coined in the early 1980s, when distributors began to envision a larger market for the drug. Ecstasy became popular as a “club drug” and was often sold in nightclubs and bars. Because of reports of increases in the recreational use of ecstasy and scientific reports suggesting that the related drug MDA could cause brain damage, the U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) banned both ecstasy and 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDA) in the mid-1980s. Following the ban on ecstasy, a lawsuit was filed against the DEA by a group of physicians who believed that ecstasy had therapeutic value. Despite the lawsuit, the DEA’s ban on ecstasy became permanent. The DEA currently classifies ecstasy as a Schedule I drug. Schedule I drugs are considered to have high potential for **abuse** and no currently accepted medical value. They are not considered safe for use even under medical supervision. It is illegal to use, sell, or manufacture ecstasy in the United States. Ecstasy that is seized by the DEA is manufactured mainly in the Netherlands, Belgium, and Canada, although some is also illegally made in laboratories in the United States.

The recreational use of ecstasy continued to increase despite the DEA ban. Through the late 1980s and 1990s, ecstasy began to be used widely at raves, which are clandestine all-night dance parties often held in warehouses and attended by large numbers of young people.

Ecstasy is sometimes described as an “entactogen,” because it gives users feelings of peacefulness, acceptance, empathy, euphoria, and closeness to others. Ecstasy is typically synthesized from precursor chemicals such as piperonyl methylketone, piperonal, isosafrole, or safrole. Safrole is an essential oil that is found in the tree *Sassafras albidum*, which grows in the eastern United States, and in the tree *Ocotea pretiosa*, which grows in South America. Safrole is also found in



**Ecstasy tablets in their many forms.** (David Hoffman Photo Library/Alamy)

nutmeg, dill, parsley seed, crocus, saffron, vanilla beans, and calamus.

Some people use a product called herbal ecstasy. The main constituents of herbal ecstasy are a combination of legal herbs that are stimulants such as ephedra, guarana, and caffeine. Other herbs and vitamins may also be included. Herbal ecstasy is sold in tablet form as Cloud 9, Herbal Bliss, Ritual Spirit, Herbal X, GWM, Rave Energy, Ultimate Xphoria, and X. The quantities of ephedrine and caffeine in the tablets can vary widely. Although people who take herbal ecstasy believe it to be a legal, safe alternative to ecstasy, there are reports of numerous adverse effects, including severe reactions such as high blood pressure, **seizures**, heart attacks, strokes, and death.

### Method of administration

Most users take ecstasy orally. Users also sometimes inhale or inject it. Although ecstasy is available as a capsule or a powder, it is usually sold in tablet form. The tablets are available in different colors, shapes, and sizes, and are often imprinted with logos such as smiley faces, clover leaves, cartoon characters, or the logos of

popular commercial brands, such as those for clothing or automobiles. On average, an ecstasy tablet has about 100 mg of MDMA. However, the MDMA content in tablets can vary a great deal. Pure MDMA salt, which is a white, bitter-tasting substance, is usually not the only ingredient in ecstasy tablets. The MDMA in ecstasy tablets is often contaminated with other drugs such as caffeine, aspirin, dextromethorphan, ephedrine, methamphetamine, and MDA.

### Use statistics

The use of ecstasy occurs in dance clubs, at raves, on college and high school campuses, and in private homes. Use is more common in urban areas. Most users of ecstasy are teenagers and young adults, from middle- and upper-class households. The U.S. Office of National Drug Control Policy reports that, according to the National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH), an estimated 11.5 million Americans aged 12 or older reported in 2005 that they had used MDMA at least once in their lifetimes. This figure represented 4.7% of the U.S. population in that age group. In 2005, the number of people who used MDMA in the past year

was approximately 1.9 million, a figure that represented 0.8% of the population aged 12 or older. Although the use of ecstasy by teenagers and young adults rose between 1996 and 2002, use appears to have been decreasing over the past few years. *Monitoring the Future* is a study conducted every year by the University of Michigan and funded by the National Institute on Drug Abuse. In 2006, this study surveyed a total of 48,460 students in 410 secondary schools nationwide. It showed that 1.4% of eighth graders, 2.8% of tenth graders, and 4.1% of twelfth graders surveyed reported that they had used ecstasy in the past year. In 2006, 2.5% of eighth graders, 4.5% of tenth graders, and 6.5% of twelfth graders surveyed reported that they had used ecstasy in their lifetime. In contrast, in 2002, 4.3% of eighth graders, 6.6% of tenth graders, and 10.5% of twelfth graders surveyed reported using ecstasy in their lifetime.

### Effects of use

Ecstasy is absorbed quickly after it is taken orally, and it can be detected in the blood within about 30 minutes. It typically has its effect within 20 to 60 minutes after it is ingested. The average time for onset of effects is 30 minutes. It has its peak effects about 60 to 90 minutes after it is ingested. The main effects of ecstasy last about three to five hours. Women are more sensitive to ecstasy than men. Therefore, they are likely to experience an optimal effect of the drug at a lower dose, in proportion to body weight, than men.

Ecstasy mimics the effects of the neurotransmitter serotonin, activating cell receptors in the brain that normally respond to serotonin. Serotonin is involved in many processes in the body, including the regulation of mood, aggression, sexual activity, sleep, sensitivity to pain, and eating. MDMA also causes the release of serotonin, as well as the **neurotransmitters** norepinephrine and **dopamine**. The levels of hormones such as cortisol, prolactin, and testosterone increase when ecstasy is used. The level of vasopressin, a hormone that is involved in elevating blood pressure and retaining water in the body, also increases.

Ecstasy users report intensely pleasurable experiences after taking ecstasy. They feel euphoric and are more aware of sensory stimuli. Users often wear fluorescent jewelry or accessories and use mentholated ointments or sprays to enhance the sensory effects they experience. Users of ecstasy usually feel socially uninhibited and close to other people. They find that they have an increased sense of empathy. They also become emotionally open and have exceptionally clear insight into themselves. Time perception may become distorted. Because ecstasy has a stimulant effect, users

also often feel energetic and can remain awake for long periods of time. Ecstasy increases sensuality, but it does not directly increase sexual drive or appetite. However, because it decreases inhibitions and makes users more open to others, users sometime engage in sexual activity after taking ecstasy. Men sometimes experience delayed orgasms, although orgasms may be more intense than usual.

Ecstasy users also sometimes have undesirable experiences. In one research study, about 25% of users reported having gone through at least one occasion when ecstasy use resulted in unpleasant experiences and body sensations. Short-term adverse reactions that have been reported include dilated pupils, unusual sensitivity to bright light, headache, sweating, increased heart rate, bruxism, trismus, loss of appetite, nausea, muscle aches, **fatigue**, dizziness, vertigo, thirst, numbness, tingling skin, retention of urine, ataxia, unsteadiness, tics, tremors, restlessness, agitation, **paranoia**, and nystagmus. Research has shown that driving a car under the influence of ecstasy is unsafe.

The scientific literature on the effects of ecstasy is somewhat inconsistent. This is partly because well-controlled studies cannot be carried out on ecstasy use. However, most of the scientific community agrees that brain levels of serotonin increase when ecstasy is ingested, and that they decrease after an episode of ecstasy use. The depletion of serotonin is thought to cause midweek blues. This term refers to the lethargy, concentration and memory problems, and depressed mood that many ecstasy users experience for a few days after taking the drug. Other changes that occur for a few days after ecstasy use are increased feelings of aggressiveness, unsociability, irritability, decreased appetite, and poor sleep. Some researchers have reported that chronic, heavy ecstasy use is associated with **sleep disorders**, **depression**, high levels of **anxiety**, impulsiveness and hostility, and problems with memory and attention. Memory and attention deficits may continue for up to six months after drug use is stopped, but symptoms are reported to remit after six to twelve months. The extent of cognitive deficits may depend on the number of tablets taken per occasion of use.

Ecstasy causes body temperature to increase. Abnormal increases in body temperature are more likely when the user is in a hot environment, such as on a crowded dance floor. A number of ecstasy-related deaths have been reported that are attributable to drug-induced increases in body temperature. Several users who later died were admitted to hospitals with abnormally high temperatures, ranging from 104°F

(40°C) to 109°F (43°C). The immediate cause of death in these users was damage to organs such as the liver and heart. Other deaths have occurred because of water intoxication, which can develop when ecstasy users drink too much water to combat hyperthermia. The increase in vasopressin that accompanies the use of ecstasy makes excessive water intake particularly dangerous. Water intoxication results in decreased levels of sodium in the blood, which can be fatal.

Ecstasy users appear to develop tolerance to the drug with repeated use, needing more and more of it to achieve the effect they desire. Novice users tend to take one or two tablets per session, whereas highly experienced users may take more than three tablets per session. The use of increased doses may exacerbate the amphetamine-like effects of the drug. Heavy users sometimes binge-use, either by taking several tablets simultaneously, or by repeatedly taking tablets during a single session that may last up to 48 hours. In such binging sessions, users may go without sleep or food, and sometimes consume up to 20 tablets. In some cases, binge users snort powdered ecstasy or inject it. Binging on ecstasy can result in consequences such as loss of appetite, weight loss, days off from work, and depression.

There are scientific and political debates about whether ecstasy causes long-term damage to the human brain. Some researchers and drug enforcement agencies claim that ecstasy is a dangerous drug capable of causing irreversible brain damage, and other researchers suggest that claims of irreversible neurotoxicity in humans are exaggerated and unproven. Because of ethical considerations, ecstasy cannot be given to people who do not use it to study its effects on the brain. However, studies of brain function are sometimes carried out in people who already take ecstasy, using brain-imaging technology. These types of studies are methodologically complex and results are interpretable in various ways. Therefore, there is still controversy about the potential long-term effects of ecstasy on the human brain. Studies conducted on rats and monkeys have shown that high doses of ecstasy can have long-term negative effects on neurons that contain serotonin. Serotonin levels become depleted in these animals, and serotonin-containing nerves become damaged. The degeneration of neurons is exacerbated when the animals are placed in high-temperature environments. In these types of studies, animals are usually given very high doses of ecstasy, and the drug is usually injected. Some researchers have argued that the results of these animal studies cannot

be extrapolated to human users, who use much lower doses and typically ingest the drug orally.

### Methodological and ethical problems in ecstasy research

Scientific research on ecstasy use has some limitations. Because ecstasy is classified as a Schedule I drug, researchers cannot easily conduct controlled experimental studies by administering MDMA to people in laboratories. Additionally, people who use ecstasy often use other drugs, such as heroin, **cocaine**, and ketamine, either deliberately or as a result of using contaminated ecstasy. Therefore, it is difficult to determine whether effects observed in users are due to the current or previous use of these other drugs, the use of ecstasy, or the combination of ecstasy with other drugs. Scientists also cannot easily determine whether effects noted in ecstasy users are due to drug use or the personal characteristics of people who choose to use ecstasy recreationally.

### Therapeutic use of ecstasy

Some psychiatrists and psychotherapists still advocate for the therapeutic use of ecstasy. While most of these professionals believe that recreational use of ecstasy is likely to be unsafe, they argue that small doses of unadulterated MDMA can be used effectively as an adjunct to psychotherapy, when used once or twice in a controlled therapeutic setting. They believe that MDMA is beneficial because it can help patients put aside their anxiety and fear and explore psychological issues that would normally be too painful to confront. Although ecstasy-assisted psychotherapy may also be indicated in other situations, it is thought to be particularly helpful in the treatment of **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), and to help people with terminal illness deal with the fear of dying.

Although psychiatrists and psychotherapists used ecstasy in the 1970s as an adjunct to psychotherapy, no controlled **clinical trials** were conducted at the time that could provide evidence for its therapeutic efficacy. After ecstasy became classified as a Schedule I drug, it became difficult for researchers to study its psychotherapeutic uses, because institutional review boards typically do not approve research studies that have the potential for causing harm to humans who participate in them. After much controversy about the ethics of conducting such studies, in 2004 the DEA approved a clinical trial of ecstasy in the treatment of PTSD. The trial is sponsored by the Multidisciplinary Association for Psychedelic Studies, a nonprofit research and educational organization that seeks to develop MDMA as an FDA-approved prescription medicine. The study is ongoing.

## KEY TERMS

- Ataxia**—A loss of muscle coordination.
- Brain imaging**—Methods that provide a visual representation of the structure and function of the brain.
- Bruxism**—Grinding of teeth.
- Dextromethorphan**—A non-prescription cough suppressant.
- Ephedrine**—A stimulant that is sold as a diet drug.
- Hyperthermia**—An abnormal increase in body temperature.
- Institutional review board**—A committee made up of scientists and lay people, which evaluates proposals for research studies, to determine whether they are designed ethically. All institutions that conduct research are required by law to have such a committee.
- Ketamine**—An anesthetic drug that is often used by veterinarians for treating animals.
- Monitoring the Future**—An ongoing study of the behaviors, attitudes, and values of secondary school students, college students, and young adults in the United States. It is carried out by the University of Michigan and is funded by the National Institute of Drug Abuse, a component of the U.S. National Institutes of Health.

- National Survey on Drug Use and Health**—A study that is carried out annually to estimate alcohol, tobacco, illicit drug, and nonmedical prescription drug use in the United States. It is sponsored the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, a component of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- Neurotoxicity**—Damage to brain structure or function.
- Neurotransmitter**—A chemical that is involved in sending signals from one nerve cell to another.
- Nystagmus**—Repeated, involuntary movements of the eyes.
- Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)**—An anxiety disorder that can develop after a person experiences a traumatic event.
- Receptors**—Protein molecules in nerve cells, to which neurotransmitters bind.
- Tolerance**—A process in which a person develops resistance to the drug, so that increasingly larger doses are need to achieve the same effect.
- Trismus**—Soreness or tightening of the muscles in the jaw.
- Vertigo**—A sensation that the environment is spinning.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Espejo, Roman, ed. *Drug Abuse*. San Diego, CA: Greenhaven Press, 2002.
- Iversen, Leslie. *Speed, Ecstasy, Ritalin: The Science of Amphetamines*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2006.
- Wilson, Hugh T., ed. *Drugs, Society and Behavior, 03/04*. 18th ed. Guilford, CT: McGraw-Hill/Dushkin, 2003.

### PERIODICALS

- Dumont, G. J. H., and R. J. Verkes. "A Review of Acute Effects of 3,4-Methylenedioxymethamphetamine in Healthy Volunteers." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 20.2 (2006): 176.
- Gahlinger, Paul M. "Club Drugs: MDMA, Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), Rohypnol, and Ketamine." *American Family Physician* 69.11 (2004): 2619.
- McCook, Alison. "Renewed Faith in Ecstasy." *The Scientist* 19.4 (2005): 13–14.
- Nutt, David. "A Tale of Two Es (Ethanol and Ecstasy)." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 20.3 (2006): 315–17.

- Parrott, A. C. "Editorial: Ecstasy versus Alcohol: Tolstoy and the Variations of Unhappiness." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 21.1 (2007): 3–7.
- Parrott, Andy C., and Charles A. Marsden. "Editorial: MDMA (3,4-Methylenedioxymethamphetamine) or Ecstasy: the Contemporary Human and Animal Research Perspective." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 20.2 (2006): 143.
- Watkins, Katherine E., Phyllis L. Ellickson, Mary E. Vaiana, and Scott Hiromoto. "An Update on Adolescent Drug Use: What School Counselors Need to Know." *Professional School Counseling* 10.2 (2006): 131–39.
- Wish, Eric D., Dawn Bonanno Fitzelle, Kevin E. O'Grady, Margaret H. Hsu, and Amelia M. Arria. "Evidence for Significant Polydrug Use Among Ecstasy-Using College Students." *Journal of American College Health* 55.2 (2006): 99–104.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Heffter Research Institute. 369 Montezuma Avenue, #153, Santa Fe, NM 87501-2626. Web site: <<http://www.heffter.org>>.
- Monitoring the Future Survey Research Center. Institute for Social Research. University of Michigan. P.O. Box 1248

426 Thompson Street, Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1248.  
Telephone: (734) 764-8354. Web site: <<http://monitoringthefuture.org>>.

Multidisciplinary Association for Psychedelic Studies. 10424 Love Creek Road, Ben Lomond, CA 95005. Telephone: (831) 336-HEAL (4325). Web site: <<http://www.map.org>>.

National Drug Intelligence Center. 319 Washington Street, 5th Floor, Johnstown, PA 15901-1622. Telephone: (814) 532-4601. Web site: <<http://www.usdoj.gov/ndic>>.

#### OTHER

“Drug Facts: Club Drugs.” *Office of National Drug Control Policy*. January 2007. <<http://www.whitehousedrugpolicy.gov/drugfact/club/index.html>>.

“MDMA (Ecstasy).” *U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration*. August 2006. <<http://www.dea.gov/concern/mdma.html>>.

*Monitoring the Future, a Continuing Study of American Youth*. University of Michigan, Ann Arbor. 2006. <<http://monitoringthefuture.org>>.

*National Survey On Drug Use and Health (NSDUH)*.

SAMHSA. January 2007. <<https://nsduhweb.rti.org>>.

“NIDA InfoFacts: MDMA (Ecstasy).” *National Institute on Drug Abuse*. April 2006. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov/Infofacts/ecstasy.html>>.

Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, PhD

EEG see **Electroencephalography**

Effexor see **Venlafaxine**

Elavil see **Amitriptyline**

The American Psychiatric Association’s *Practice Guidelines for the Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders* discusses the use of ECT in the treatment of major depressive disorder, bipolar disorder, and **schizophrenia**. It is most closely associated with the treatment of severe **depression**. Historically, ECT was the treatment of choice for depression if a patient with severe depression or psychotic symptoms was at increased risk of committing **suicide** and had not responded to other treatments. In addition, patients with catatonia, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, and parkinsonism may also benefit from the procedure.

Although antidepressant medications are effective in many cases, they may take two to six weeks to begin to work. In addition, some patients with mania and schizophrenia may not be able to tolerate the side effects of the antipsychotic medications used to treat these disorders. For these individuals, ECT is an option. ECT is also indicated when patients need a treatment that brings about rapid improvement because they are refusing to eat or drink, or presenting some other danger to themselves.

ECT is also recommended for certain subgroups of patients diagnosed with depression. Many elderly patients, for example, respond better to ECT than to antidepressant medications. Pregnant women are another subgroup that may benefit from ECT. Because ECT does not harm a fetus as some medications might, pregnant women with severe depression can choose ECT for relief of their depressive symptoms.

Today, however, other treatments such as **transcranial magnetic stimulation** (TMS) are becoming available and replacing ECT in such cases. TMS has also been found to be more effective than ECT in many of the more difficult cases. The literature to date on TMS reports few side effects such as those resulting from ECT.

## Electroconvulsive therapy

### Definition

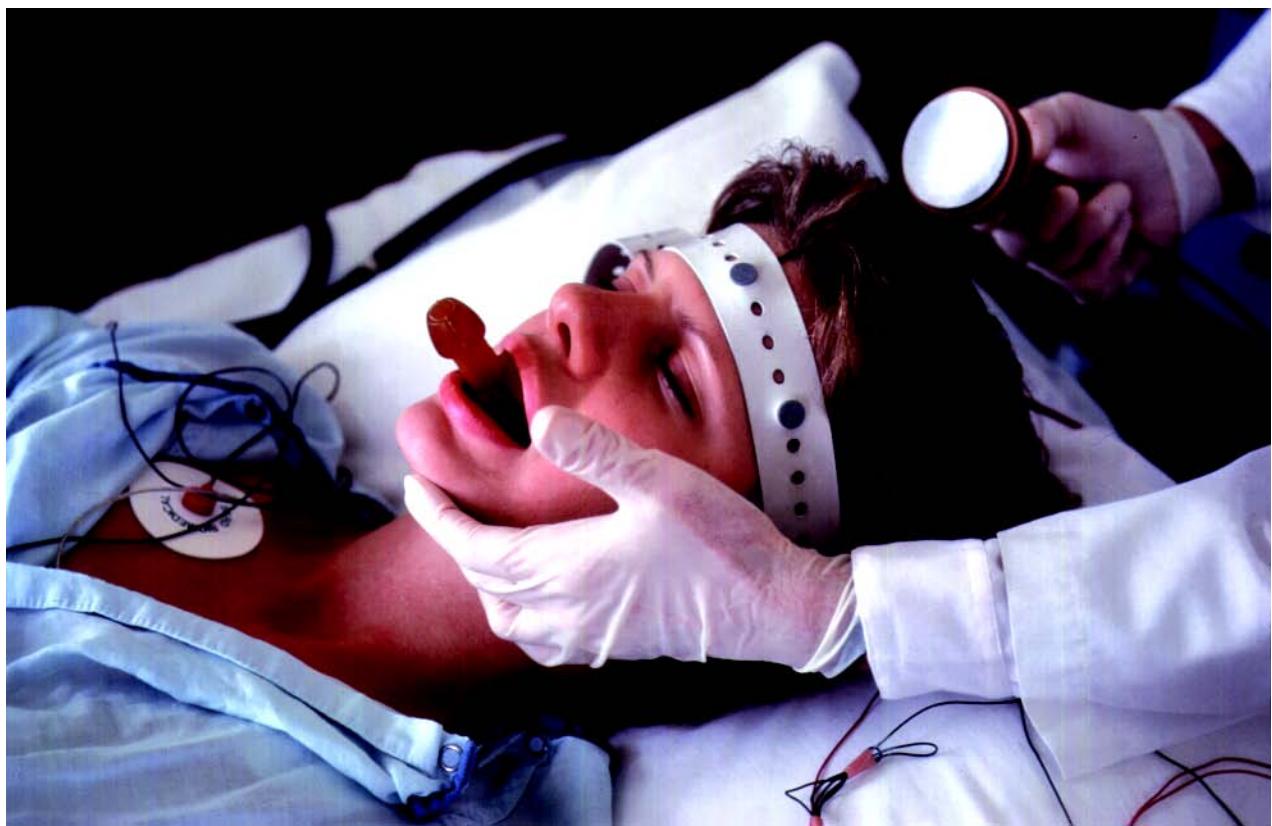
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) is a controversial procedure in which a patient is treated by using controlled, low-dose electric currents to induce a seizure. The electric current produces a convulsion that may relieve symptoms associated with such mental illnesses as **major depressive disorder**, **bipolar disorder**, acute **psychosis**, and **catatonia**. Symptom relief, however, is often temporary.

### Purpose

Also known as electroconvulsive shock therapy or electroshock therapy, ECT uses low-dose electric currents together with anesthesia, muscle relaxants, and oxygen to produce a mild generalized seizure or convulsion. With repeated administration, usually over a period of weeks, ECT may be effective in relieving symptoms of several mental illnesses.

### Precautions

Candidates for ECT must be carefully screened. Prior to receiving this treatment, patients receive a thorough evaluation to identify any medical conditions they may have that might complicate their responses to the procedure. This evaluation includes a complete medical history, a physical examination, and routine laboratory tests. In addition to standard blood tests, the patient should receive an electrocardiogram (EKG) to test for heart abnormalities. Evidence of a recent heart attack would disqualify a patient from receiving ECT. Spinal and chest x rays can identify other physical conditions that might complicate a patient’s response. Finally, a **computed tomography** (CT) scan



A patient who has been prepped to receive electroconvulsive therapy, a treatment for depression. The rubber mouthpiece will keep her from biting down on teeth or her tongue during the seizure. (Photo Researchers)

should be performed to rule out any structural abnormalities in the **brain** that might be made worse by the electrical stimulation and resulting convulsions associated with ECT. Signs of a recent **stroke** or a tumor in the brain, for instance, would disqualify a patient as a candidate for ECT therapy.

The doctors who are administering the procedure must receive the signed **informed consent** of the patient a day before the first treatment is given. In addition, at least two psychiatrists should confirm that ECT is the proper treatment for a specific patient. One of these physicians should serve as the source of a "second opinion" and not be actively involved in treating the patient on a daily basis. This second, or outside, medical consultant should independently determine that ECT is appropriate for a particular patient after conducting a physical examination. The second physician should also confirm that the patient is mentally sound enough to give informed consent to the procedure.

Patients in any age group are eligible for treatment with ECT. However, informed consent for patients under 18 must be given by a parent or legal guardian.

## Description

### *Early history of ECT*

Ugo Cerletti and Lucio Bini, who were two Italian physicians working in the 1930s, were the first to use ECT to treat patients with severe mental illnesses. Their first patient was a 39-year-old unidentifiable homeless man who had been found wandering through the railroad station in Rome, mumbling incoherently. The doctors were inspired to try the new method by a notion that intrigued psychiatrists in this period, who were desperate for useful therapies—namely, that epilepsy and schizophrenia never appeared in the same person at the same time. (It was later shown, however, that it is possible for the same individual to have both disorders at the same time.) Because epilepsy causes **seizures**, psychiatrists in the 1930s reasoned that artificially induced seizures might cure schizophrenia. Some in the medical community were receptive to this approach because physicians were already using a variety of chemicals to produce seizures in patients. Unfortunately, many of their patients died or suffered severe injuries because the

strength of the convulsions could not be well controlled.

As ECT became more widely used, many members of the general public and some in the psychiatric profession were opposed to its use. To them it seemed barbaric and crude. ECT joined psychosurgery as one of the most intensely distrusted psychiatric and neurological practices. Many people were frightened simply because ECT was called "shock treatment." Many assumed the procedure would be painful; others thought it was a form of electrocution; and still others believed it would cause brain damage. Unfavorable publicity in newspapers, magazines, and movies added to these fears. Indeed, from the 1930s up through the 1960s, doctors and nurses did not explain either ECT or other forms of psychiatric treatment to patients and their families very often. Moreover, many critics had good reasons for opposing the procedure before it was refined. Neither anesthesia nor muscle relaxants were used in the early days of ECT. As a result, patients had violent seizures, and even though they did not remember them, the thought of the procedure itself seemed frightening. Even more unfortunately, this crude, early version of ECT was applied sometimes to patients who could never have benefited from ECT under any conditions.

As the procedures used with ECT became more refined, psychiatrists found that ECT could be an effective treatment for schizophrenia, depression, and bipolar disorder. The use of ECT, however, was phased out when antipsychotic and antidepressant drugs were introduced during the 1950s and 1960s. The psychiatric community reintroduced ECT several years later when patients who did not respond to the new drugs stimulated a search by mental health professionals for effective, and if necessary, non-drug treatments. While the new psychotropic medications provided relief for untold thousands of patients who suffered greatly from their illnesses and would otherwise have been condemned to mental hospitals, the drugs unfortunately produced a number of side effects, some irreversible. Another drawback is that some medications do not have a noticeable effect on the patient's mood for two to six weeks. During this time, the patient may be at risk for suicide. In addition, there are patients who do not respond to any medications or who have severe allergic reactions to them.

#### *ECT in contemporary practice*

ECT is performed in both inpatient and outpatient facilities in specially equipped rooms with oxygen, suction, and cardiopulmonary resuscitation equipment readily available to deal with the rare emergency. A

team of health care professionals, including a **psychiatrist**, an anesthesiologist, a respiratory therapist, and other assistants, is present throughout the entire procedure.

As of 2000, the American Psychiatric Association has renewed its set of guidelines, first published in 1990, for determining the appropriate use of ECT in patients with depression. They state that patients qualify for ECT if they meet these conditions

- cannot tolerate, or receive no significant benefit from, antidepressant medications
- have responded well to ECT treatments during past depressive episodes
- face a greater risk from taking antidepressant drugs than from undergoing ECT
- need treatment without delay to avoid suicide or other self-destructive acts

#### *Administration of ECT*

ECT is performed while the patient is unconscious. Unconsciousness is induced by a short-acting barbiturate such as methohexitol (Brevital Sodium), or another appropriate anesthetic drug. The drug is given intravenously. To prevent the patient from harming themselves during the convulsions or seizures induced by ECT, he or she is given succinylcholine (Anectine) or a similar drug that temporarily paralyzes the muscles. Because the patient's muscles are relaxed, the seizures will not produce any violent contractions of the limbs and torso. Instead, the patient lies quietly on the operating table. One of the patient's hands or feet, however, is tied off with a tourniquet before the muscle relaxant is given. The tourniquet prevents the muscles in this limb from being paralyzed like the muscles in other parts of the patient's body. The hand or foot is used to monitor muscle movement induced by the electrical current applied to the brain.

A breathing tube is then inserted into the unconscious patient's airway and a rubber mouthpiece is inserted into the mouth to prevent him or her from biting down on teeth or tongue during the electrically induced convulsion. As the current is applied, brain activity is monitored using **electroencephalography**. These brain wave tracings tell the medical team exactly how long the seizure lasts. The contraction of muscles in the arm or leg not affected by the muscle relaxant also provides an indication of the seizure's duration.

The electrodes for ECT may be placed on both sides of the head (bilateral) or one side (unilateral). Physicians often use bilateral electrode placement during the first week or so of treatments. An electric

current is passed through the brain by means of a machine specifically designed for this purpose. The usual dose of electricity is 70–150 volts for 0.1–0.5 seconds. In the first stage of the seizure (tonic phase), the muscles in the body that have not been paralyzed by medication contract for a period of 5–15 seconds. This is followed by the second stage of the seizure (clonic phase) that is characterized by twitching movements, usually visible only in the toes or in a non-paralyzed arm or leg. These are caused by alternating contraction and relaxation of these same muscles. This stage lasts approximately 10–60 seconds. The physician in charge will try to induce a seizure that lasts between one half minute and two minutes. If the first application of electricity fails to produce a seizure lasting at least 25 seconds, another attempt is made 60 seconds later. The session is stopped if the patient has no seizures after three attempts. The entire procedure, from beginning to end, lasts about 30 minutes.

The absence of seizures is most commonly caused either by the patient's physical condition at the time of treatment or by the individual nature of human responses to drugs and other treatment procedures. Just as there are some patients who do not respond to one type of antidepressant medication but do respond to others, some patients do not respond to ECT.

The total number of ECT treatments that will be given depends on such factors as the patient's age, **diagnosis**, the history of illness, family support, and response to therapy. Treatments are normally given every other day at a rate of two to three per week. The ECT treatments are stopped when the patient's psychiatric symptoms show significant signs of improvement. Depending on the patient's condition, this improvement may happen in a few weeks or, rarely, over a six-month period. In most cases, patients with depression require between six and twelve ECT sessions.

Only rarely is ECT treatment extended beyond six months. In such infrequent cases, treatments are decreased from two to four per week after the first month to one treatment every month or so.

No one knows for certain why ECT is effective. Because the treatment involves passing an electric current through the brain, which is electrically excitable tissue, it is not surprising that ECT has been shown to affect many neurotransmitter systems. **Neurotransmitters** are chemical messengers in the nervous system that carry signals from nerve cell to nerve cell. The neurotransmitters affected by ECT include **dopamine**, norepinephrine, serotonin, and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA).

## Preparation

Patients and their relatives are typically prepared for ECT by viewing a videotape that explains both the procedure and the risks involved. The physician then answers any questions these individuals might have, and the patient is asked to sign an informed consent form. This form gives the doctor and the hospital legal permission to administer the treatment.

After the form has been signed, the doctor performs a complete physical examination and orders a number of tests that can help identify any potential problem. These tests may include a chest x ray, electrocardiogram (EKG), CT scan, urinalysis, spinal x ray, electroencephalogram (EEG), and complete blood count (CBC).

Some medications, such as lithium and a class of **antidepressants** known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), should be discontinued for some time before ECT administration. Patients are instructed not to eat or drink for at least eight hours prior to the procedure to reduce the possibility of vomiting and choking. During the procedure itself, the members of the health care team closely monitor the patient's vital signs, including blood pressure, heart rate, and oxygen content.

## Aftercare

The patient is moved to a recovery area after an ECT treatment. Vital signs are recorded every five minutes until the patient is fully awake, which may take 15–30 minutes. The patient may experience some initial confusion, but this feeling usually disappears in a matter of minutes. The patient may complain of headache, muscle pain, or back pain, which can be relieved by aspirin or another mild medication.

Following successful ECT treatments, patients with bipolar disorder may be given maintenance doses of lithium. Similarly, patients with depression may be given antidepressant drugs. These medications are intended to reduce the chance of **relapse** or the recurrence of symptoms. Some studies have estimated that approximately one-third to one-half of patients treated with ECT relapse within 12 months of treatment. After three years, this figure may increase to two-thirds. Follow-up care with medications for bipolar disorder or depression can reduce the relapse rate in the year following ECT treatment from 50% to 20%. Some patients might relapse because they do not respond well to the medications they take after their ECT sessions are completed. In some cases, patients who relapse may have severe forms of depression that are especially difficult to treat by any method.

## KEY TERMS

**Acute psychosis**—A severe mental disorder marked by delusions, hallucinations, and other symptoms that indicate that the patient is not in contact with reality.

**Catatonia**—Disturbance of motor behavior with either extreme stupor or random, purposeless activity.

**Electroencephalography**—The measurement and recording of the brain's electrical activity.

**Informed consent**—A person's agreement to undergo a medical or surgical procedure, or to participate in a clinical study, after being properly advised of the medical facts related to the procedure or study and the risks involved.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Neuroleptic**—Another name for the older antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)**—An unusual but potentially serious complication that develops in some patients who have been treated with antipsychotic medications. NMS is characterized by changes in blood pressure, altered states of consciousness, rigid muscles, and fever. Untreated NMS can result in coma and death.

**Parkinsonism**—A condition caused by the destruction of the brain cells that produce dopamine (a neurotransmitter), and characterized by tremors of the fingers and hands, a shuffling gait, and muscular rigidity.

**Psychomotor**—Referring to a response or reaction that involves both the brain and muscular movements.

**Psychotropic**—Having an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**Relapse**—A person experiences a relapse when he or she re-engages in a behavior that is harmful and that he or she was trying to change or eliminate. Relapse is a common occurrence after treatment for many disorders, including addictions and eating disorders.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tourniquet**—A rubber tube or length of cloth that is used to compress a blood vessel in order to stop bleeding or to shut off circulation in a part of the body. The tourniquet is wrapped around the arm (or other limb) and tightened by twisting.

### Risks

Recent advances in medical technology have substantially reduced the complications associated with ECT. These include memory loss and confusion. Persons at high risk of having complications following ECT include those with a recent heart attack, uncontrolled high blood pressure, brain tumors, and previous spinal injuries.

One of the most common side effects of electroconvulsive therapy is memory loss. Patients may be unable to recall events that occurred before and after treatment. Elderly patients, for example, may become increasingly confused and forgetful as the treatments continue. In a minority of individuals, memory loss may last for months. For the majority of patients, however, recent memories return in a few days or weeks.

Elderly patients receiving ECT may experience disturbances in heart rhythm, slow heartbeat (bradycardia) or rapid heartbeat (tachycardia), and an increased number of falls. As many as one-third of elderly patients may experience such complications following the procedure.

### Normal results

Post-treatment confusion and forgetfulness are common, though disturbing, symptoms associated with ECT. Doctors and nurses must be patient and supportive by providing patients and their families with factual information about the nature and time-frame of the patient's recovery.

A few patients are placed on maintenance ECT. This term means that they must return to the hospital every one to two months as needed for an additional

treatment. These persons are thus able to keep their illness under control and lead normal and productive lives.

### Abnormal results

If an ECT-induced seizure lasts too long (more than two minutes) during the procedure, physicians will control it with an intravenous infusion of an anti-convulsant drug, usually **diazepam** (Valium).

Overall, ECT is a very safe procedure. There is no convincing evidence of long-term harmful effects from ECT. Researchers are continuing to explore its potential in treating other disorders as well as other methods to replace ECT.

*See also* Catatonic disorder; Neurotransmitters.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Practice Guidelines for the Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Fink, Max. *Electroshock*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

- Loo, Colleen K., Isaac Schweitzer, and Chris Pratt. "Recent Advances in Optimizing Electroconvulsive Therapy." *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry* 40.8 (2006): 632–38.
- Munk-Olsen, T., and others. "Electroconvulsive Therapy: Predictors and Trends in Utilization from 1976 to 2000." *Journal of ECT* 22.2 (2006): 127–32.
- Stein, Daniel, Abraham Weizman, and Yuval Bloch. "Electroconvulsive Therapy and Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation: Can They Be Considered Valid Modalities in the Treatment of Pediatric Mood Disorders?" *Child and Adolescent Psychiatric Clinics of North America* 15.4 (2006): 1035–56.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. <<http://www.nami.org/index.html>>.

Dean A. Haycock, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Electroencephalography

### Definition

Electroencephalography (EEG) is a neurological diagnostic procedure that records the changes in electrical potentials (**brain** waves) in various parts of the brain.

### Purpose

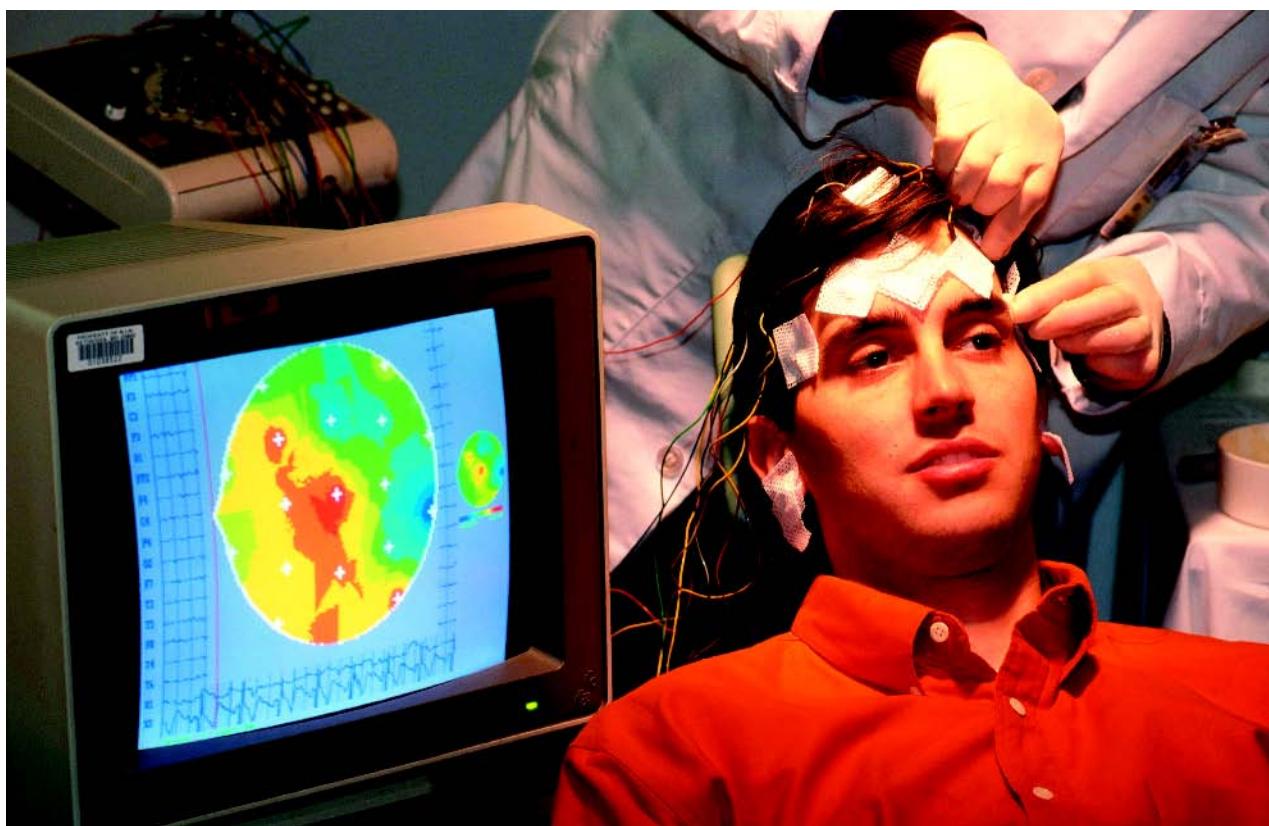
The EEG is an important aid in the **diagnosis** and management of epilepsy and other seizure disorders, as well as in the diagnosis of brain damage related to trauma and diseases, including strokes, tumors, encephalitis, and drug and alcohol intoxication. The EEG is also useful in monitoring brain wave activity and in the determination of brain death. Research is active in determining the role of EEG in the diagnosis and management of **mental retardation**, **sleep disorders**, degenerative diseases such as **Alzheimer's disease** and Parkinson's disease, and in certain mental disorders such as **autism** and **schizophrenia**.

### Precautions

The EEG should be administered, monitored, and interpreted only by a specially trained health professional. It is important to recognize that diagnosis should not be based on the EEG alone—the EEG represents an adjunct to the neurological history, examination, and other specialized studies. The EEG is an extremely sensitive instrument, and tracings can be greatly influenced by the actions and the physiologic status of the patient. It is important that the patient be properly prepared physically and psychologically in order to obtain an accurate and reliable record. Patients scheduled for an EEG should withhold from medications such as anticonvulsants, tranquilizers, stimulants—including coffee, tea, and cola drinks—and alcohol for at least 24–48 hours prior to the test. Since as hypoglycemia affects brain wave patterns, the patient should not withhold any meals prior to the EEG.

### Description

Brain function is associated with electrical activity, which is always accompanied by an electrical field. This field consists of two parts, the electrical field and the magnetic field, and is called an electromagnetic field. The electrical field is measured by surface electrodes and is recorded by the electroencephalogram. Prior to the recording session, approximately 16–20 electrodes are attached to the patient's scalp with a



An EEG lab measures the brain waves of a subject. (Richard T. Nowitz/Photo Researchers, Inc)

conductive washable paste, or collodion. Depending on the purpose of the EEG, implantable needle electrodes may be utilized, in which case the patient should be informed that there will be mild discomfort.

Patients lie on a bed, padded table, or comfortable reclining chair and are asked to remain quiet and relaxed during the approximate one hour that is usually required for the EEG. If the diagnosis is a seizure disorder, a sleep recording up to three hours in duration is usually obtained. Under certain conditions, various stimuli such as flashing lights or deep breathing may be utilized. In an ambulatory EEG recording, the patient is attached to a portable cassette recorder and goes about regular activities, usually for up to 24 hours.

### ***Magnetoencephalography***

Magnetoencephalography, a supplement to EEG, also uses an electroencephalogram to measure the patient's electrical field. Every electrical current generates a magnetic field. The magnetic field is detected by an instrument called a biomagnetometer and recorded as a magnetoencephalograph (MEG). The information provided by the MEG is entirely different

from that provided by **computed tomography** (CT), topographic encephalography, or **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI)—imaging instruments that provide still, structural, and anatomical information. The information recorded by the MEG provides important supplemental information to that recorded by the encephalogram and, used together and conjointly, they both provide a much more complete and comprehensive idea of cerebral events. Using MEG, the brain can be observed “in action,” rather than just being viewed as a still image.

Magnetoencephalography has been used to map the sensory and motor cortices of the brain, to determine the organization of the auditory center of the brain, and to study cognitive functions such as speech, memory, attention, and consciousness. This information is critical for neurosurgical planning such as the removal of brain lesions. Thus, preoperative MEG is valuable in planning the surgical treatment of tumors and malformations. MEG can provide surgeons with real-time computer-generated images of deep-seated lesions that are essential before surgery. The quantitative EEG is also known by the acronym BEAM (brain electrical activity mapping).

## Preparation

Prior to the EEG, the patient is given full instructions about how to prepare for the procedure, particularly by avoiding certain medications and food. In cases where a sleep EEG is anticipated, the patient may be requested to minimize sleep or stay awake the night before the procedure. **Sedatives** to induce sleep should be avoided, if possible.

## Aftercare

No specific aftercare is required following an EEG. Patients are advised to resume their usual activities, especially the resumption of medications that had been temporarily discontinued.

## Risks

The primary risk of EEG is the production of a seizure in a patient with epilepsy. This may result from the temporary discontinuation of anticonvulsant medication or from the provocation of a seizure by an epileptogenic stimulus such as flashing lights or deep breathing. Although the provocation of a seizure may serve to substantiate the diagnosis, all patients with the potential for **seizures** should be carefully monitored to avoid injury in case a seizure does result.

## Normal results

The rate, height, and length of brain waves vary depending on the part of the brain being studied, and every individual has a unique and characteristic brain-wave pattern. Age and state of consciousness also cause changes in wave patterns. Several wave patterns have been identified:

- alpha waves: Most of the recorded waves in a normal adult's EEG are the occipital alpha waves, which are best obtained from the back of the head when the subject is resting quietly, awake with eyes closed. These waves, occurring typically in a pattern of 8–13 cycles per second, are blocked by excitement or by opening the eyes.
- beta waves: These waves, obtained from the central and frontal parts of the brain, are closely related to the sensory-motor parts of the brain and are also blocked by opening the eyes. Their frequency is in the range of 8–30 hertz (cycles per second).
- delta waves: These are irregular, slow waves of 2–3 hertz and are normally found in deep sleep and in infants and young children. They indicate an abnormality in an awake adult.
- theta waves: These are characterized by rhythmic, slow waves of 4–7 hertz.

## KEY TERMS

**Encephalitis**—Inflammation of the brain.

**Occipital bone**—The occipital bone forms the back part of the skull.

## Abnormal results

EEG readings of patients with epilepsy or other seizure disorders display bursts, or spikes, of electrical activity. In focal epilepsy, spikes are restricted to one hemisphere of the brain. If spikes are generalized to both hemispheres, multifocal epilepsy may be indicated.

Diagnostic brain-wave patterns of other disorders vary widely. The appearance of excess theta waves (four to eight cycles per second) may indicate brain injury. Brain-wave patterns in patients with brain disease, mental retardation, and brain injury show overall slowing. A trained medical specialist should interpret EEG results in the context of the patient's medical history and other pertinent medical test results.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Sleep terror disorder; Sleepwalking disorder; Substance abuse and related disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Ebersole, John S., and Timothy A. Pedley. *Current Practice of Clinical Electroencephalography*. 3rd ed. Hagerstown, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2003.

Niedermeyer, Ernst, and Fernando Lopes da Silva. *Electroencephalography: Basic Principles, Clinical Applications, and Related Fields*. 5th ed. Hagerstown, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.

Rowan, A. James, and Eugene Tolunsky. *Primer of EEG: With a Mini-Atlas*. Burlington, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann, 2003.

### PERIODICALS

Coburn, Kerry L., and others. "The Value of Quantitative Electroencephalography in Clinical Psychiatry: A Report by the Committee on Research of the American Neuropsychiatric Association." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry & Clinical Neurosciences* 18.4 (Fall 2006): 460–500.

Frith, Chris D. "The Value of Brain Imaging in the Study of Development and Its Disorders." *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry* 47.10 (Nov. 2006): 979–82.

Hurley, Robin A., Ronald Fisher, and Katherine H. Taber. "Windows to the Brain." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry & Clinical Neurosciences* 18.4 (Fall 2006): 436–43.

Knowlton, Robert C., and others. "Magnetic Source Imaging Versus Intracranial Electroencephalogram in Epilepsy

- Surgery: A Prospective Study." *Annals of Neurology* 59.5 (May 2006): 835–42.
- O'Sullivan, S. S., and others. "The Role of the Standard EEG in Clinical Psychiatry." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 21.4 (June 2006): 265–71.

PaulaAnne Ford-Martin, MA  
Ralph Myerson, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Elimination disorders

### Definition

Elimination disorders are disorders that concern the elimination of feces or urine from the body. The causes of these disorders may be medical or psychiatric.

### Description

The American Psychiatric Association recognizes two elimination disorders, **encopresis** and **enuresis**. Encopresis is an elimination disorder that involves repeatedly having bowel movements in inappropriate places after the age when bowel control is normally expected. Encopresis is also called fecal incontinence. Enuresis, more commonly called bed-wetting, is an elimination disorder that involves release of urine into bedding, clothing, or other inappropriate places. Both of these disorders can occur during the day (diurnal) or at night (nocturnal). They may be voluntary or involuntary. Encopresis and enuresis may occur together, although most often they occur separately.

Elimination disorders may be caused by a physical condition, a side effect of a drug, or a psychiatric disorder. It is much more common for elimination disorders to be caused by medical conditions than psychiatric ones. In most cases in which the cause is medical, the soiling is unintentional. When the causes are psychiatric, the soiling may be intentional, but it is not always so.

### Encopresis

Medical causes of encopresis are usually related to chronic constipation. As hard feces build up in the large intestine, the bowel is stretched out of shape. This allows liquid feces behind the hard stool to involuntarily leak out and stain clothing. Other medical causes of encopresis include malformations of the bowel and side effects of medication. Laxatives (medications that relieve constipation), drugs that kill some of the good bacteria in the intestines, and drugs that

increase contractions in the intestines can all cause involuntary encopresis. Pediatricians or family physicians treat almost all cases of encopresis having medical causes. In cases of prolonged involuntary soiling, children may develop feelings of shame and embarrassment, leading to low self-esteem.

Psychiatric causes of encopresis are not as clear. A few children may experience encopresis because of fear of the toilet or because their toilet training was either overly pressured or irregular and incomplete. Older children may soil intentionally, sometimes smearing the feces on wall or clothing or hiding feces around the house. Children who show this pattern of soiling behavior often have clinical behavior problems such as **conduct disorder** or **oppositional defiant disorder**. About one-quarter of children who soil intentionally also have enuresis.

### Enuresis

Enuresis also has both medical and psychiatric causes. Primary enuresis occurs when a child has never established bladder control. Medical causes of primary enuresis are often related to malformations of the urinary system, developmental delays, and hormonal imbalances that affect the ability to concentrate urine. There appears to be a genetic component to primary enuresis, since the condition tends to run in families. Primary enuresis may also be caused by psychological stressors such as family instability or erratic toilet training.

Secondary enuresis occurs when a child has established good bladder control for a substantial period, then begins wetting again. Involuntary secondary enuresis is thought to be brought on by life stresses. For example, it is common for young children to begin wetting the bed after moving to a new house or having a new sibling enter the family. Voluntary enuresis is not common. Like voluntary encopresis, it is associated with psychiatric conditions such as conduct disorder and oppositional defiant disorder.

### Treatment and prognosis

Most children outgrow their elimination disorders successfully by the time they are teens, with the exception of those children whose elimination disorders are symptoms of other psychiatric disturbances.

Encopresis is treated with stool softeners or laxatives and by instituting regular bowel evacuation patterns. Enuresis is treated by **behavior modification**, including changing nighttime toileting habits. The least expensive and most effective method is by having the child sleep on a special pad that sets off an

## KEY TERMS

- Constipation**—Difficult bowel movements caused by the infrequent production of hard stools.
- Feces**—Waste products eliminated from the large intestine; excrement.
- Incontinence**—The inability to control the release of urine or feces.
- Laxative**—Substance or medication that encourages a bowel movement.
- Stools**—Feces, bowel movements.

alarm when the pad becomes wet. This wakes the child and allows him to finish relieving in the toilet. Eventually he awakes without assistance before wetting. Drugs can also help in the treatment of enuresis, although **relapse** is common after they are stopped. Secondary enuresis caused by **stress** is treated by resolving the stress. **Psychotherapy** is usually not needed, although it may be helpful to children who develop feelings of shame associated with their elimination disorders. Adults can help children avoid shame and embarrassment by treating elimination accidents in a kind, matter-of-fact way.

Children with voluntary elimination disorders are treated for the diagnosed psychiatric problem associated with the elimination disorder using behavior modification, drugs, and other psychiatric interventions.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hales, Robert E., Stuart C. Yudofsky, and John A. Talbot. *The American Psychiatric Press Textbook of Psychiatry*, 3rd ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Kuhn, Bret R., Bethany A. Marcus, and Sheryl L. Pitner. “Treatment Guidelines for Primary Nonretentive Encopresis and Stool toileting Refusal.” *American Family Physician* 58 (April 15, 1999): 8–18.
- Mikkelsen, Edwin J. “Enuresis and Encopresis: Ten Years of Progress.” *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 40 (October 2001): 1146–59.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. P. O. Box 96106, Washington, DC 20090. Telephone: (800) 333-7636. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.
- National Association for Continence. P.O. Box 1019, Charleston, SC 29402-1019. Telephone: (800) 252-3337. <<http://www.nafc.org>>.

### OTHER

- National Guideline Clearinghouse. “Practice Parameter for the Assessment and Treatment of Children and Adolescents with Enuresis.” (2005) <[http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?doc\\_id&equals;6510&nbr=004079&string=enuresis](http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?doc_id&equals;6510&nbr=004079&string=enuresis)>.

- National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. “Urinary Incontinence in Children.” (2006) <<http://kidney.niddk.nih.gov/kudiseases/pubs/uichildren/index.htm>>.

- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. “Enuresis.” (2005) <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001556.htm>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Enabling behaviors see **Addiction**

## Encopresis

### Definition

Encopresis is an elimination disorder that involves repeatedly having bowel movements in inappropriate places after the age when bowel control is normally expected. Encopresis is also called “soiling” or “fecal incontinence.”

### Description

By four years of age, most children are toilet trained for bowel movements. After that age, if inappropriate bowel movements occur regularly over a period of several months a child may be diagnosed with encopresis. Encopresis can be intentional or unintentional. Intentional soiling is associated with several psychiatric disorders. Involuntary or unintentional soiling is often the result of constipation.

### Causes and symptoms

The only symptom of encopresis is that a person has bowel movements in inappropriate places, such as in clothing or on the floor. This soiling is not caused by taking laxatives or other medications and is not due to a

disability or physical defect in the bowel. There are two main types of encopresis, and they have different causes.

### *Involuntary encopresis*

With involuntary encopresis, a person has no control over elimination of feces from the bowel. The feces is semi-soft to almost liquid, and it leaks into clothing without the person making any effort to expel it. Leakage usually occurs during the day when the person is active and ranges from infrequent to almost continuous.

Involuntary soiling usually results from constipation. A hard mass of feces develops in the large intestine and is not completely expelled during a regular bowel movement in the toilet. This mass then stretches the large intestine out of shape, allowing liquid feces behind it to leak out. Up to 95% of encopresis is involuntary.

Although involuntary encopresis, called by the American Psychiatric Association (APA) encopresis with constipation and overflow incontinence, is caused by constipation, the constipation may be the result of psychological factors. Experiencing a stressful life event, harsh toilet training, toilet fear, or emotionally disturbing events can cause a child to withhold bowel movements or become constipated. Historically, children separated from their parents during World War II are reported to have shown a high incidence of encopresis, indicating that psychological factors play a role in this disorder.

### *Voluntary encopresis*

A person with voluntary encopresis has control over when and where bowel movements occur and chooses to have them in inappropriate places. Constipation is not a factor, and the feces is usually a normal consistency. Often feces is smeared in an obvious place, although sometimes it is hidden around the house. The APA classifies voluntary encopresis as encopresis without constipation and overflow incontinence.

In young children, voluntary encopresis may represent a power struggle between the child and the caregiver doing the toilet training. In older children, voluntary encopresis is often associated with **oppositional defiant disorder (ODD)**, **conduct disorder**, sexual abuse, or high levels of psychological stressors.

### **Demographics**

Encopresis occurs in 1–3% of children from ages four to seven years and is seen more often in boys than in girls. The frequency of encopresis appears to be

independent of social class, and there is no evidence that it runs in families.

### **Diagnosis**

To receive an APA **diagnosis** of encopresis, a child must have a bowel movement, either intentional or accidental, in an inappropriate place at least once a month for a minimum of three months. In addition, the child must be chronologically or developmentally at least four years old, and the soiling cannot be caused by illness, medical conditions (e.g., chronic diarrhea, spina bifida, or anal stenosis), medications, or disabilities. However, it may be caused by constipation.

### **Treatments**

Involuntary encopresis is treated by addressing the cause of the constipation and establishing soft, pain-free stools. This can include:

- increasing the amount of liquids a child drinks
- adding high-fiber foods to the diet
- short-term use of laxatives or stool softeners
- emptying the large intestine by using an enema
- establishing regular bowel habits

Once the constipation is resolved, involuntary encopresis normally stops.

Treatment of voluntary encopresis depends on the cause. When voluntary encopresis results from a power struggle between child and adult, it is treated with **behavior modification**. In addition to taking the steps listed above to ensure a soft, pain-free stool, the adult should make toileting a pleasant, pressure-free activity. Some experts suggest transferring the initiative for toileting to the child instead of constantly asking him/her to use the toilet. Others recommend toileting at scheduled times, but without pressure to perform. In either case, success should be praised and failure treated in a matter-of-fact manner. If opposition to using the toilet continues, the family may be referred to a child **psychiatrist** or a pediatric **psychologist**.

With older children who smear or hide feces, voluntary encopresis is usually a symptom of another more serious disorder. When children are successfully treated for the underlying disorder with psychiatric interventions, behavior modification, and education, the encopresis is often resolved.

### **Prognosis**

Because 80–95% of encopresis is related to constipation, the success rate in resolving involuntary encopresis is high, although it may take time to

## KEY TERMS

**Feces**—Waste products eliminated from the large intestine; excrement.

**Incontinence**—The inability to control the release of urine or feces.

**Laxative**—Substance or medication that encourages a bowel movement.

**Stools**—Feces; bowel movements.

establish good bowel habits and eliminate a reoccurrence of constipation. The success rate is also good for younger children in a power struggle with adults over toileting, although the results may be slow. The prognosis for older children with associated behavioral disorders is less promising and depends more on the success of resolving those problems than on direct treatment of the symptoms of encopresis.

### Prevention

Power struggles during toilet training that lead to encopresis can be reduced by waiting until the child is developmentally ready and interested in using the toilet. Toilet training undertaken kindly, calmly, and with realistic expectations is most likely to lead to success. Successes should be rewarded and failures accepted. Once toilet training has been established, encopresis can be reduced by developing regular bowel habits and encouraging a healthy, high-fiber diet.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

Catto-Smith, Anthony G. "Constipation and Toileting Issues in Children." *Medical Journal of Australia* 182 (2005): 242–46.  
Kuhn, Bret R., Bethany A. Marcus, and Sheryl L. Pitner. "Treatment Guidelines for Primary Nonretentive Encopresis and Stool Toileting Refusal." *American Family Physician* 58 (April 15, 1999): 8–18.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. P. O. Box 96106, Washington, DC 20090. Telephone: (800) 333-7636. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

### OTHER

American Academy of Family Physicians. "Stool Soiling and Constipation in Children." (2007) <<http://familydoctor.org/166.xml>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Endep see **Amitriptyline**

## Energy therapies

### Definition

Energy therapies is a collective term used to refer to a variety of alternative and complementary treatments based on the use, modification, or manipulation of energy fields. Most energy therapies presuppose or accept the theory that matter and energy are not exclusive opposites, but that matter is simply a denser form of energy that is more easily perceived by the senses. Some energy therapies are associated with systems of traditional Indian or Chinese medicine that are thousands of years old; others draw upon contemporary scientific theories. Energy therapies can be divided for purposes of discussion into two groups—those that utilize energy fields located in, affecting, or emanating from the human body (biofield therapies); and those that use electromagnetic fields in unconventional ways. In addition, there are energy therapies that combine biofield therapy with some aspects of bodywork—Breema, polarity therapy, and qigong are examples of this combined approach.

Energy therapies vary widely in their understanding of qualifications to be a healer. Some have credentialing or training programs; others do not. Some practitioners of energy therapy believe that all or most people have the capacity to be healers; others regard the ability to use or direct healing energies as a gift or charisma that is given only to people who are "chosen" or unusually spiritual.

Although energy therapies are often associated with either Eastern or so-called "New Age" belief systems, most do not expect people in need of healing to give up mainstream Western religious practice or allopathic medical/psychiatric treatments.

### Purpose

The purpose of energy therapies can be broadly defined as the healing of mental or physical disorders by rebalancing the energy fields in the human body or

by drawing upon spiritual energies or forces for such healing. Some energy therapies include internal **detoxification** or release of trauma-related memories as additional purposes.

### Precautions

In general, persons who are interested in Breema, qigong, or any form of energy therapy that involves vigorous physical exercise or bodywork should seek the advice of a qualified medical practitioner before starting such a program. This precaution is particularly important for persons with chronic heart or lung disease, persons recovering from surgery or acute illness, or persons with arthritis or other disorders that affect the muscles and joints.

Some forms of energy therapy may produce unexpected or startling psychological reactions. For example, a type of psychospiritual energy referred to as Kundalini in Indian **yoga** sometimes produces experiences of spiritual crisis that may be interpreted by mainstream psychiatrists as symptoms of **schizophrenia** or another psychotic disorder. Practitioners of Reiki healing have reported instances of patients feeling tingling sensations, "spaciness," an "out of body" sensation, sudden warmth, or similar experiences. As a rule, people in treatment for any mental condition or disorder should consult their therapist before beginning any form of energy treatment. This precaution is particularly important for patients diagnosed with PTSD or a dissociative disorder, and for those who are easily hypnotized. It is also a good idea to find out as much as possible about the background and basic beliefs associated with a specific energy therapy, including the training or credentialing of its practitioners.

### Description

Brief descriptions of some of the better known energy therapies follow.

#### *Therapeutic touch*

Therapeutic touch, or TT, is a form of energy therapy that developed in the United States. It is a noninvasive method of healing derived from an ancient laying-on of hands technique. In TT, practitioners alter the patient's energy field through a transfer of energy from their hands to the patient. Therapeutic touch was developed in 1972 by Dora Kunz, a psychic healer, and Dolores Krieger, a professor of nursing at New York University. The principle behind TT is restoration of balance or harmony to the human energy field, or aura, that is thought to extend several inches to several feet from the body. When illness occurs, it creates a dis-

turbance or blockage in the vital energy field. The TT practitioner uses her/his hands to discern the blockage or disturbance. Although the technique is called "therapeutic touch," there is generally no touching of the client's physical body, only his or her energetic body or field. TT is usually performed on fully clothed patients who are either lying down on a flat surface or sitting up in a chair.

A therapeutic touch session consists of five steps or phases. The first step is a period of **meditation** on the practitioner's part, to become spiritually centered and energized for the task of healing. The second step is assessment or discernment of the energy imbalances in the patient's aura. In this step, the TT practitioner holds his or her hands about 2–3 inches above the patient's body and moves them in long, sweeping strokes from the patient's head downward to the feet. The practitioner may feel a sense of warmth, heaviness, tingling, or similar cues, as they are known in TT. The cues are thought to reveal the location of the energy disturbances or imbalances. In the third step, known as the unruffling process, the practitioner removes the energy disturbances with downward sweeping movements. In the fourth step, the practitioner serves as a channel for the transfer of universal energy to the patient. The fifth step consists of smoothing the patient's energy field and restoring a symmetrical pattern of energy flow. After the treatment, the patient rests for 10–15 minutes.

Although therapeutic touch has become a popular alternative or complementary approach in some schools of nursing in the United States and Canada, acceptance by the mainstream medical community varies. Many hospitals permit nurses and staff to perform TT on patients at no extra charge. On the other hand, however, therapeutic touch became national news in April 1998 when an elementary-school student carried out research for a science project that questioned its claims. Twenty-one TT practitioners with experience ranging from one to 27 years were blindfolded and asked to identify whether the investigator's hand was closer to their right hand or their left. Placement of the investigator's hand was determined by flipping a coin. The TT practitioners were able to identify the correct hand in only 123 (44%) of 280 trials, a figure that could result from random chance alone. Debate about the merits of TT filled the editorial pages of the *Journal of the American Medical Association* for nearly a year after the news reports, and continues to this day.

#### *Qigong*

Qigong is a form of Chinese energy therapy that is usually considered a martial art by most Westerners. It is better understood, however, as an ancient

Chinese system of postures, exercises, breathing techniques and meditations. Its techniques are designed to improve and enhance the body's *qi*. According to traditional Chinese philosophy and medicine, *qi* is the fundamental life energy responsible for human health and vitality. *Qi* travels through the body along channels called meridians. There are twelve main meridians in humans. Each major body organ has *qi* associated with it, and each organ interacts with particular emotions on the mental level. Qigong techniques are designed to improve the balance and flow of energy throughout the meridians, and to increase the overall quantity and volume of a person's *qi*.

In the context of energy therapy, qigong is sometimes divided into internal and external qigong. Internal qigong refers to a person's practice of qigong exercises to maintain his or her own health and vitality. Some qigong master teachers are renowned for their skills in external qigong, in which the energy from one person is passed on to another for healing. Chinese hospitals use medical qigong along with herbs, **acupuncture** and other techniques of traditional Chinese medicine. In these hospitals, qigong healers use external qigong and also design specific internal qigong exercises for the patients' health problems.

### **Reiki**

Reiki is a holistic alternative therapy based on Eastern concepts of energy flow and the seven chakras (energy centers) in the human body. Reiki was formulated by a Japanese teacher, Mikao Usui, around 1890, based on Vajrayana (Tibetan) Buddhism, but incorporates meditation techniques, beliefs, and symbols that are considerably older. It is distinctive among energy therapies in its emphasis on self-healing, its spiritual principles, and its accreditation of healers through a system of initiation. Reiki practitioners participate in the healing of emotional and spiritual as well as physical pain through the transmission of universal life energy, called "rei-ki" in Japanese. It is believed that ki flows throughout the universe, but that Reiki connects humans in a more direct way to the universal source. Reiki is used for the healing of animals as well as people. A research team at the University of Michigan is studying the effectiveness of Reiki in treating **chronic pain** in patients with diabetic neuropathy. Various other studies are also underway in the United States and Canada, some examining the efficacy of the therapy in coping with pain and **anxiety**.

Although Reiki involves human touch, it is not massage therapy. The patient lies on a table fully clothed except for shoes while the practitioner places her or his hands over the parts of the body and the

chakras in sequence. The hands are held palms downward with the fingers and thumbs extended. If the person is in pain or cannot turn over, the practitioner may touch only the affected part(s). Silence or music appropriate for meditation is considered essential to the treatment. Reiki healers practice daily self-healing, in which they place their hands in traditional positions on their own bodies. They may use touch, or distant/non-touch.

Reiki healers are initiated into three levels of practice through attunements, which are ceremonies in which teachers transmit the hand positions and "sacred" symbols. Reiki I healers learn the basic hand positions and can practice direct physical, emotional or mental healing on themselves and others. Reiki II healers are taught the symbols that empower them to do distance or absentee healing. In Reiki III the healer makes a commitment to become a master teacher and do spiritual healing.

### **Polarity therapy**

Polarity therapy, which is sometimes called polarity balancing, is a biofield therapy that resembles Reiki in its emphasis on energy flow, human touch, and the energy centers (chakras) in the human body. Polarity therapy was developed by Dr. Randolph Stone (1890–1981), an American chiropractor and naturopath. It integrates bodywork with diet, yoga-based exercise, and self-awareness techniques to release energy blockages in the patient's body, mind, or feelings. Polarity theory divides the body into three horizontal and four vertical zones (right, left, front, and back), each having a positive, negative, or neutral charge. Energy currents in the zones are correlated with five energy centers in the body corresponding to the five elements (ether, air, fire, water, and earth) of Ayurvedic medicine.

Polarity therapy can be done one-on-one or with a group of practitioners working on the patient. The therapist as well as the patient removes shoes. The patient lies fully dressed except for shoes on a massage table or bed, or on the floor. The practitioner takes the patient's history, checks reflexes and touches body parts to determine energy blocks. Polarity therapy uses three levels of touch: no touch (hands held above the body, touching only the energy fields); light touch; and a deep, massaging touch. The therapist balances energy currents in the patient's body by placing his or her "plus" hand on "negative" body parts and vice versa. Polarity therapy involves rocking the patient's body and holding the head as well as more usual massage techniques. It takes about four polarity sessions to treat most conditions, with each session lasting about an hour. After a course of treatment, the polarity

practitioner usually suggests drinking plenty of liquids for one to two weeks together with other dietary changes as part of a general internal cleansing or detoxification program. Polarity yoga (stretching exercises) is prescribed for the patient's regular workouts at home.

### Breema

Breema is a form of body movement energy therapy that combines elements of bodywork, yoga, chiropractic, and New Age philosophy. Breema began in California in 1980. Its founder is Dr. Jon Schreiber, a graduate of Palmer College of Chiropractic. The Breema Health and Wellness Center was opened in Oakland, California, in 1981. The principles of Breema are intended to free people from the conceptual body, defined as "the ideas and images of our body that we carry in our mind." The aim of Breema "is to increase vitality, not to fight sickness, and to create an atmosphere which allows the body to move toward a natural state of balance." A person receiving a Breema treatment works with an instructor or practitioner through a series of individualized exercises on a padded floor. The instructors and practitioners are certified by the Breema Center in Oakland.

Decrystallization is an important part of Breema therapy. According to Breema, decrystallization is a process in which the body is helped to release deeply held, or "crystallized," patterns of chronic discomfort, tension, or emotional pain. As the body releases its crystallizations, its "core energetic patterns" are balanced and realigned. A decrystallization program consists of one or more Breema treatments per week for a year. It includes a set of personalized self-Breema exercises.

### Electromagnetic therapies

Electromagnetic therapies cover a variety of treatments that use a source of physical energy outside the body—most often magnets or electromagnetic field stimulation—to treat a range of musculoskeletal disorders. Some forms of magnetic therapy, such as bracelets, gloves, shoe inserts, and similar items containing small magnets meant to be worn near the affected body part, can be self-administered. This form of magnetic therapy has become quite popular among professional athletes and "weekend warriors" to relieve soreness in joints and muscles from over exercise. At present there are two hypothetical explanations of the effectiveness of magnetic therapy. One theory maintains that the magnets stimulate nerve endings in the skin surface to release endorphins, which are pain-relieving chemicals produced by the body in response to **stress** or injury.

According to the second hypothesis, the magnets attract certain ions (electrically charged molecules) in the blood, which serves to increase the blood flow in that area of the body. The increased blood flow then relieves the tissue swelling and other side effects of over exercise that cause pain.

Other forms of electromagnetic therapy require special equipment and cannot be self-administered. These forms of treatment are most commonly used by naturopathic practitioners. One form, called **transcranial magnetic stimulation**, is used in the treatment of **depression**. Another form, called pulsed electromagnetic field stimulation, has been shown to be effective in the treatment of osteoarthritis.

### Preparation

Most forms of energy therapy require little preparation on the patient's part except for the wearing of loose and comfortable clothes. Patients are asked to remove jewelry before a polarity balancing treatment and to remove eyeglasses and shoes prior to Reiki treatment. Qigong should not be practiced on either a full or a completely empty stomach.

### Aftercare

Aftercare for therapeutic touch and Reiki usually involves a few moments of quiet rest to maximize the benefits of treatment. Aftercare for polarity therapy includes increased fluid intake for one to two weeks and other dietary adjustments that may be recommended by the practitioner.

### Risks

There are no known risks associated with therapeutic touch, or polarity balancing. Using Reiki, precautions should be taken clients diagnosed with schizophrenia, **psychosis**, dissociative disorder, manic/depressive (bipolar) or borderline personality. The risk of physical injury from the exercises involved in Breema or qigong are minimal for patients who have consulted their primary physician beforehand and are working with a qualified instructor.

Mild headache has been reported as a side effect of transcranial magnetic stimulation. No side effects have been associated with self-administered magnetic therapy.

### Normal results

Normal results for energy therapies include increased physical vitality, lowered blood pressure, a sense of calm or relaxation, improved sleep at night,

## KEY TERMS

**Aura**—An energy field that is thought to emanate from the human body and to be visible to people with special psychic or spiritual powers.

**Ayurvedic medicine**—The traditional medical system of India. Ayurvedic treatments include diet, exercises, herbal treatments, meditation, massage, breathing techniques, and exposure to sunlight.

**Biofield therapies**—A subgroup of energy therapies that make use of energy fields (biofields) thought to exist within or emanate from the human body. Biofield therapies include such approaches as Reiki, therapeutic touch, qigong, and polarity balancing.

**Bodywork**—Any technique involving hands-on massage or manipulation of the body.

**Breema**—An alternative therapy that originated in California in the 1980s. Breema combines biofield therapy with certain elements of chiropractic and bodywork.

**Chakra**—One of the seven major energy centers in the body, according to traditional Indian yoga.

**Endorphins**—A group of peptide compounds released by the body in response to stress or traumatic injury. Endorphins react with opiate receptors in the brain to reduce or relieve pain.

**Kundalini**—In Indian yoga, a vital force or energy at the base of the spine that is activated or released by certain yoga postures or breathing techniques. This release is called the “awakening” of the kundalini. Some Westerners have had kundalini experiences that were diagnosed as psychotic episodes or symptoms of schizophrenia.

**Meridians**—In traditional Chinese medicine, a network of pathways or channels that convey qi, or vital energy, through the body.

**Polarity therapy**—A form of energy therapy influenced by Ayurvedic medicine that integrates body-work with diet, home exercises, and self-awareness techniques. It is sometimes called polarity balancing.

**Prana**—The Sanskrit word for vital energy, roughly equivalent to qi in traditional Chinese medicine.

**Qi**—The traditional Chinese term for vital energy or the life force. The word is also spelled “ki” or “chi” in English translations of Japanese and Chinese medical books.

**Qigong**—A traditional form of Chinese energy therapy that includes physical exercises, breathing techniques, postures, and mental discipline. Internal qigong refers to exercises practiced to maintain one’s own health and vitality; external qigong refers to the transfer of energy from a qigong master to another person for healing purposes. External qigong is also known as medical qigong.

**Reiki**—A form of energy therapy that originated in Japan. Reiki practitioners hold their hands on or slightly above specific points on the patient’s body in order to convey universal life energy to that area for healing.

**Therapeutic touch (TT)**—An American form of energy therapy based on the ancient tradition of the laying-on of hands. TT is thought to work by removing energy blockages or disturbances from the patient’s aura.

and a strengthened immune system. Some persons report pain relief and speeded-up healing of wounds from magnetic therapy, Reiki, and qigong.

### Abnormal results

Abnormal results from energy therapies include physical injury, severe headache, dizziness, depressed mood, or increased anxiety.

*See also* Bodywork therapies; Light therapy.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Collinge, William, PhD. *Subtle Energy: Awakening to the Unseen Forces in Our Lives*. New York: Warner Books, Inc., 1998.

Krieger, Dolores, Ph.D., R.N. *Accepting Your Power to Heal: The Personal Practice of Therapeutic Touch*. New York: Bear and Company, 1993.

Mitchell, Karyn, PhD. *Reiki: A Torch in Daylight*. St. Charles, IL: Mind Rivers Publications, 1994.

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. “Spirituality and Healing: As Above . . . So Below.” Chapter 11 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.

Sovatsky, Stuart, PhD. “Kundalini Awakening: Breakdown or Breakthrough?” In *Living Yoga: A Comprehensive Guide for Daily Life*, edited by Georg Feuerstein and Stephan Bodian. New York: Jeremy P. Tarcher/Perigee Books, 1993.

Stein, Diane. *All Women Are Healers: A Comprehensive Guide to Natural Healing*. Freedom, CA: The Crossing Press, 1990.

- Stein, Diane. *Essential Reiki: A Complete Guide to an Ancient Healing Art*. Freedom, CA: The Crossing Press, Inc., 1995.
- Svoboda, Robert, and Arnie Lade. *Tao and Dharma: Chinese Medicine and Ayurveda*. Twin Lakes, WI: Lotus Press, 1995.

#### PERIODICALS

- Golden, Jane. "Qigong and Tai Chi as Energy Medicine." *Share Guide* (November-December 2001): 37.
- Gordon, A., J. H. Merenstein, and others. "The effects of therapeutic touch on clients with osteoarthritis of the knee." *Journal of Family Practice* 47 (1998): 271-277.
- Hudson, Tori. "Naturopathic Medicine, Integrative Medicine and Women's Health." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* (November 2001): 136.
- Johnson, Jerry Alan. "Medical Qigong for Breast Disease." *Share Guide* (November-December 2001): 109.
- Rosa, Linda, MSN, Emily Rosa, Larry Sarner, and Stephen Barrett, MD. "A Close Look at Therapeutic Touch." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 279 (April 1, 1998): 1005-11.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association of Naturopathic Physicians. 601 Valley Street, Suite 105, Seattle, WA 98109. Telephone: (206) 298-0126. <[www.naturopathic.org](http://www.naturopathic.org)>.
- American Polarity Therapy Association. 288 Bluff Street #149, Boulder, CO 80301. Telephone: (303) 545-2080. <[www.livelinks.com/sumeria/health/polarity.html](http://www.livelinks.com/sumeria/health/polarity.html)>.
- The Breema Center. 6076 Claremont Avenue. Oakland, CA 94618. Telephone: (510) 428-0937. Fax (510) 428-9235. <[www.breema.com](http://www.breema.com)>.
- International Society for the Study of Subtle Energies and Energy Medicine (ISSSEEM). 356 Goldco Circle, Golden, CO 80401. Telephone: (303) 278-2228. <[www.vitalenergy.com/ISSSEEM](http://www.vitalenergy.com/ISSSEEM)>.
- The Kundalini Clinic. 3040 Richmond Boulevard, Oakland, CA, 94611. Telephone: (510) 465-2986.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) Clearinghouse. P.O. Box 7923, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. Telephone: (888) 644-6226. TTY: (866) 464-3615. Fax: (866) 464-3616. <[www.nccam.nih.gov](http://www.nccam.nih.gov)>.
- The Nurse Healers Professional Associates International (NH-PAI), the Official Organization of Therapeutic Touch. 3760 S. Highland Drive, Salt Lake City, UT 84106. Telephone: (801) 273-3399. [nhpai@therapeutic-touch.org](mailto:nhpai@therapeutic-touch.org). <[www.therapeutic-touch.org](http://www.therapeutic-touch.org)>.
- Qigong Human Life Research Foundation. PO Box 5327. Cleveland, OH 44101. Telephone: (216) 475-4712.

#### OTHER

- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). Fact Sheets. *Major Domains of Complementary and Alternative Medicine*. <[www.nccam.nih.gov/fcp/classify/](http://www.nccam.nih.gov/fcp/classify/)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Enuresis

### Definition

Enuresis, more commonly called bed-wetting, is a disorder of elimination that involves the voluntary or involuntary release of urine into bedding, clothing, or other inappropriate places. In adults, loss of bladder control is often referred to as urinary incontinence rather than enuresis; it is frequently found in patients with late-stage **Alzheimer's disease** or other forms of **dementia**.

### Description

Enuresis is a condition that has been described since 1500 b.c. People with enuresis wet the bed or release urine at other inappropriate times. Release of urine at night (nocturnal enuresis) is much more common than daytime, or diurnal, wetting. Enuresis commonly affects young children and is involuntary. Many cases of enuresis clear up by themselves as the child matures, although some children need behavioral or physiological treatment in order to remain dry.

There are two main types of enuresis in children. Primary enuresis occurs when a child has never established bladder control. Secondary enuresis occurs when a person has established bladder control for a period of six months, then relapses and begins wetting. To be diagnosed with enuresis, a person must be at least five years old or have reached a developmental age of five years. Below this age, problems with bladder control are considered normal.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Symptoms

The symptoms of enuresis are straightforward—a person urinates in inappropriate places or at inappropriate times. The causes of enuresis are not so clear. A small number of children have abnormalities in the anatomical structure of their kidney or bladder that interfere with bladder control, but normally the cause is not the physical structure of the urinary system. A few children appear to have a lower-than-normal ability to concentrate urine, due to low levels of antidiuretic hormone (ADH). This hormone helps to regulate fluid balance in the body. Large amounts of dilute urine cause the bladder to overflow at night. For the majority of bedwetters, there is no single clear physical or psychological explanation for enuresis.

### **Causes in children**

The fourth edition of the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, text revision, or (*DSM-IV-TR*), does not distinguish between children who wet the bed involuntarily and those who voluntarily release urine. Increasingly, however, research findings suggest that voluntary and involuntary enuresis have different causes.

Involuntary enuresis is much more common than voluntary enuresis. Involuntary enuresis may be categorized as either primary or secondary. Primary enuresis occurs when young children lack bladder control from infancy. Most of these children have urine control problems only during sleep; they do not consciously, intentionally, or maliciously wet the bed. Research suggests that children who are nighttime-only bed-wetters may have a nervous system that is slow to process the feeling of a full bladder. Consequently, these children do not wake up in time to relieve themselves. In other cases, the child's enuresis may be related to a sleep disorder.

Children with diurnal enuresis wet only during the day. There appear to be two types of daytime wetters. One group seems to have difficulty controlling the urge to urinate. The other group consciously delays urinating until they lose control. Some children have both diurnal and nocturnal enuresis.

Secondary enuresis occurs when a child has stayed dry day and night for at least six months, then returns to wetting. Secondary enuresis usually occurs at night. Many studies have been done to determine if there is a psychological component to enuresis. Researchers have found that secondary enuresis is more likely to occur after a child has experienced a stressful life event such as the birth of a sibling, divorce or death of a parent, or moving to a new house.

Several studies have investigated the association of primary enuresis and psychiatric or behavior problems. The results suggest that primary nocturnal enuresis is not caused by psychological disorders. Bed-wetting runs in families, however, and there is strong evidence of a genetic component to involuntary enuresis.

Unlike involuntary enuresis, voluntary enuresis is not common. It is associated with such psychiatric disorders as **oppositional defiant disorder** and is substantially different from ordinary nighttime bed-wetting. Voluntary enuresis is always secondary.

### **Causes in adults**

Enuresis or urinary incontinence in elderly adults may be caused by loss of independent control of body

functions resulting from dementia, bladder infections, uncontrolled diabetes, side effects of medications, or weakened bladder muscles. Urinary incontinence in adults is managed by treatment of the underlying medical condition, if one is present; or by the use of adult briefs with disposable liners.

### **Demographics**

Enuresis is a problem of the young and is twice as common in boys as in girls. At age five, about 7% of boys and 3% of girls have enuresis. This number declines steadily in older children; by age 18, only about 1% of adolescents experience enuresis. Studies done in several countries suggest that there is no apparent cultural influence on the incidence of enuresis in children. On the other hand, the disorder does appear to run in families; children with one parent who wet the bed as a child are five to seven times more likely to have enuresis than children whose parents did not have the disorder in childhood.

### **Diagnosis**

Enuresis is most often diagnosed in children because the parents express concern to the child's doctor. The pediatrician or family physician will give the child a physical examination to rule out medical conditions that may be causing the problem, including structural abnormalities in the child's urinary tract. The doctor may also rule out a sleep disorder as a possible cause. In many cases the pediatrician can reassure the child's parents and give them helpful advice.

According to the American Psychiatric Association, making a **diagnosis** of enuresis requires that a child must have reached the chronological or developmental age of five. Inappropriate urination must occur at least twice a week for three months; or the frequency of inappropriate urination must cause significant distress and interfere with the child's school and/or social life. Finally, the behavior cannot be caused exclusively by a medical condition or as a side effect of medication.

### **Treatments**

Treatment for enuresis is not always necessary. About 15% of children who have enuresis outgrow it each year after age six. When treatment is desired, a physician will rule out obvious physical causes of enuresis through a physical examination and medical history. Several different treatment options are then available.

### **Behavior modification**

**Behavior modification** is often the treatment of choice for enuresis. It is inexpensive and has a success rate of about 75%. The child's bedding includes a special pad with a sensor that rings a bell when the pad becomes wet. The bell wakes the child, who then gets up and goes to the bathroom to finish emptying his bladder. Over time, the child becomes conditioned to waking up when the bladder feels full.

Once this response is learned, some children continue to wake themselves without help from the alarm, while others are able to sleep all night and remain dry. A less expensive behavioral technique involves setting an alarm clock to wake the child every night after a few hours of sleep, until the child learns to wake up spontaneously. In trials, this method was as effective as the pad-and-alarm system. A newer technique involves an ultrasound monitor worn on the child's pajamas. The monitor can sense bladder size, and sets off an alarm once the bladder reaches a predetermined level of fullness. This technique avoids having to change wet bed pads.

Other behavior modifications that can be used alone or with the pad-and-alarm system include:

- restricting liquids starting several hours before bedtime
- waking the child up in the night to use the bathroom
- teaching urinary retention techniques
- giving the child positive reinforcement for dry nights and being sympathetic and understanding about wet nights

### **Treatment with medications**

There are two main drugs for treating enuresis.

**Imipramine**, a tricyclic antidepressant, has been used since the early 1960s. It appears to work in up to 60% of cases, although **relapse** occurs in about 50% of successful treatments. Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP), which acts as an antidiuretic, has been widely used to treat enuresis since the 1990s. It is available as a nasal spray or tablet and can effective in up to 65% of cases. Relapse rates with DDAVP can be as high as 80%.

### **Alternative therapies**

Some success in treating bed-wetting has been reported using hypnosis. When hypnosis works, the results are seen within four to six sessions. **Acupuncture** and massage have also been used to treat enuresis, with inconclusive results.

## **KEY TERMS**

**Bladder**—A muscular sac in the lower abdomen that holds urine until it is discharged from the body.

**Elimination**—The medical term for expelling waste from the body.

**Enuresis**—The inability to control urination; bed-wetting.

**Primary enuresis**—Bed-wetting in a child who has not yet developed bladder control.

**Secondary enuresis**—Bed-wetting in a child who has established bladder control but has begun to wet the bed again, usually as the result of emotional stress.

**Urinary incontinence**—A term that is sometimes used for enuresis in adults. Urinary incontinence is often found in patients with late-stage Alzheimer's disease or other adult-onset dementias.

**Urinary system**—The kidney, urethra, bladder, and associated organs that process urine and eliminate it from the body.

### **Psychotherapy**

Primary enuresis does not require **psychotherapy**. Secondary enuresis, however, is often successfully treated with therapy. The goal of the treatment is to resolve the underlying stressful event that has caused a relapse into bed-wetting. Unlike children with involuntary enuresis, children who intentionally urinate in inappropriate places often have other serious psychiatric disorders. Enuresis is usually a symptom of another disorder. Therapy to treat the underlying disorder is essential to resolving the enuresis.

### **Prognosis**

Enuresis is a disorder that most children outgrow. The short-term success rate with drug treatments is even higher than with behavioral therapy. Drugs do not, however, eliminate the enuresis. Many children who take drugs to control their bed-wetting relapse when the drugs are stopped.

### **Prevention**

Although enuresis cannot be prevented, one side effect of the disorder is the shame and social embarrassment it causes. Children who wet may avoid sleepovers, camp, and other activities where their bed-wetting will become obvious. Loss of these opportunities can cause

a loss of self-esteem, social isolation, and adjustment problems. A kind, low-key approach to enuresis helps to prevent these problems.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Mace, Nancy L., and Peter V. Rabins. *The 36-Hour Day*. Revised and updated edition. New York: Warner Books, 2001; by arrangement with The Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Maizels, Max, Diane Rosenbaum, and Barbara Keating. *Getting Dry: How to Help Your Child Overcome Bed-wetting*. Boston: Harvard Common Press, 1999.
- Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Mikkelsen, Edwin J. "Enuresis and Encopresis: Ten Years of Progress." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 40 (October 2001): 1146-59.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. P. O. Box 96106, Washington, DC 20090. Telephone: (800) 333-7636. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.
- National Association for Continence. P.O. Box 1019, Charleston, SC 29402-1019. Telephone: (800) 252-3337. <<http://www.nafc.org>>.
- National Kidney Foundation. 30 East 33rd Street, Suite 1100, New York, NY 10016. <[www.kidney.org](http://www.kidney.org)>.

### OTHER

- "Bedwetting." American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP). AACAP Facts For Families Pamphlet, Number 18. Washington, DC: American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, 1999.
- "Bedwetting." National Kidney Foundation. 2001. <[www.kidney.org/general/atoz/content/bedwetting.html](http://www.kidney.org/general/atoz/content/bedwetting.html)>.
- "Enuresis." National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. (2005) <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001556.htm>>.
- National Guideline Clearinghouse. Practice Parameter for the Assessment and Treatment of Children and Adolescents with Enuresis. (2005) <[http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?doc\\_id=6510&nbr=004079&string=enuresis](http://www.guideline.gov/summary/summary.aspx?doc_id=6510&nbr=004079&string=enuresis)>.
- "Urinary Incontinence in Children." National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse.
- National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. (2006) <<http://kidney.niddk.nih.gov/kudiseases/pubs/uichildren/index.htm>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Epinephrine see **Adrenaline**

## Erectile dysfunction

### Definition

Erectile dysfunction (ED) may be defined as the consistent inability to achieve or maintain an erection sufficient to permit satisfactory sexual intercourse. The word "consistent" is included in the definition because most men experience transient episodes of ED that are temporary and usually associated with **fatigue**, anger, **depression**, or other stressful emotions. The use of the formerly used term "impotence" has been virtually abandoned because of its inherent **stigma** of weakness and lack of power.

Erectile dysfunction can occur as part of several mental disorders recognized by the mental health professional's manual, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, often shortened to the *DSM*. ED is the main symptom in the disorder the manual calls "male erectile disorder." ED can also be a symptom of other disorders, such as sexual dysfunction due to a general medical condition or substance-induced sexual dysfunction. In this entry, however, ED is examined and discussed as its own medical entity, and not within the strict guidelines of the *DSM*.

### Description

Penile erection occurs essentially when the penis becomes engorged with blood. The anatomical compartments (two corpora cavernosa and one corpus spongiosum) are capable of being distended with seven times their normal amount of blood. When this occurs in association with relaxation of the penile muscles, erection results.

The sequence of events resulting in penile erection is complex. It is usually initiated by sexual arousal stimuli arising in the **brain** as a result of visual, auditory, or olfactory sensations or erotic thoughts. Tactile (touch) sensations of the penis acting through the spinal cord play a similar role. Sexual arousal results in the release of a chemical (nitric oxide) from specialized cells. Nitric oxide causes the formation of a substance (cyclic glutamine monophosphate [cGMP]), which is responsible for dilating the blood vessels of the penis and relaxing its muscles, thus allowing for an increase in blood flow and resultant penile erection. Compression of the dilated blood vessels against the firm outer lining of the penis prevents the blood from escaping and perpetuates the erection. A specialized substance (phosphodiesterase 5 [PDE-5]), causes the breakdown of cGMP and, with the help of nerves from the

sympathetic nervous system, allows the penis to return to its flaccid relaxed state.

Any defect in this complex cascade of events can result in erectile dysfunction.

Different men experience varying patterns of ED. Men with ED may report the inability to experience any erection from the beginning of a sexual experience, while others experience an erection that is not maintained at penetration. Other men may lose the erection during sexual intercourse, and others can only experience erection upon awakening or during self-masturbation.

### ***Impact of ED***

It is well recognized that adults of all ages view sex as an important quality-of-life issue, and that the imposition of ED usually results in a reduced quality of life. In spite of this and for a number of reasons—most of them unfounded—the victims often suffer in silence. Included among the reasons for their silence are the following:

- ignorance of the availability of safe and effective therapy for ED
- inadequate information provided by the physician concerning timing of medication, need for preliminary sexual arousal, etc.
- undue concern about the irreversibility of marital discord and lack of partner support
- concerns about administration of invasive therapies, adverse effects of therapy, discomfort, inconvenience, and cost of therapy
- high rates of discontinuation of therapy due to inadequacy of therapeutic response and associated adverse effects

### **Demographics**

Studies indicate that in the United States, between 15 million and 30 million men have some degree of erectile dysfunction (ED). Of these, 10 to 20 million have a severe degree of ED resulting in the complete inability to attain or maintain a penile erection. The number of men with ED in the United States is projected to increase by nearly 10 million by the year 2025. With the advancement of men's median age in western industrial countries and the general population growth in developing nations, the worldwide incidence is projected to increase to greater than 320 million by 2025. ED accounts for more than 500,000 annual visits to health care professionals.

As with other chronic disorders and the conditions that are commonly associated with ED (diabetes,

hypertension, cardiovascular disease), the prevalence of ED increases with advancing age, with an estimated occurrence of 26% in men who are in their 50s, 40% in men who are in their 60s, and 77% in men 75 years and older. These figures may actually underestimate the true dimensions of the problem since ED is notoriously under-reported, undiagnosed and under-treated because of the perceived stigma associated with the **diagnosis** of ED. It is reported that 70% of ED remains undiagnosed and in a survey of general medical practice less than 12% of men with ED reported having received treatment for it.

### **Causes and symptoms**

#### ***Causes***

A precise determination of the cause of any individual case of ED is often difficult and may be impossible because ED is often due to multiple factors. This is a consequence of the complicated nature of the human sexual response and the complex physiology of penile erection and relaxation. Normal erectile function requires the coordination of vascular, neurologic, hormonal, and psychological factors and any condition that interferes with one or more of these processes may result in ED.

Attitudes concerning age and psychological factors, commonly associated with ED in the past, have changed in the last two decades. Although the prevalence of ED increases with advancing age, ED is no longer regarded as an inevitable consequence of aging. Whereas most cases of ED were once considered primarily psychological and/or psychiatric in origin, it is now well recognized that organic, non-psychological causes of ED play a much more significant role in the development of ED. Most researchers agree that pure psychological (emotional) mechanisms are causative in 10–20% of cases with medical causes responsible for at least 80% of ED cases. In a number of cases, the situation is mixed, with significant secondary psychological and social components such as guilt, depression, **anxiety**, tension, or marital discord being present in addition to one or more underlying organic components.

Causes of ED may be grouped into those factors that arise within the individual (endogenous) and those factors arising from sources outside the body (exogenous). Endogenous factors include endocrine imbalances, cardiovascular and other medical conditions, and emotional causes. Included among exogenous factors are medications, surgery, trauma and irradiation, smoking, and alcohol and **substance abuse**. These endogenous and exogenous factors may include:

- diabetes mellitus. This is the single most common cause of ED by virtue of its combined nerve and blood vessel damage. As many as 50% of male diabetics have ED.
- circulation abnormalities. Vascular (circulation-related) causes include diseases of the aorta or the arteries supplying the pelvis and penis. Hardening of the arteries (arteriosclerosis) is the most common vascular cause, but damage to the arteries may result from trauma, surgery, or irradiation. Surgery involving the prostate gland may involve both the arteries and nerves in that region.
- neurological causes, including diseases of the brain (such as Alzheimer's disease) and spinal cord (e.g., multiple sclerosis).
- hormonal or endocrine causes. These are uncommon causes for ED, however. ED may occur in males with deficient testicular function and low circulating levels of the male sex hormone, testosterone. These cases are referred to as hypogonadism and may be due to congenital abnormalities or testicular disease such as that accompanying mumps.
- penile diseases. Organic causes of ED may be related to diseases of the penis. Many factors influence penile circulation. For instance, Peyronie's disease, a condition characterized by fibrous tissue and a downward bowing of the penis, limits the expandability of the penile tissues, thus preventing venous compression and allowing blood to leave the penis. Similarly, arteriosclerotic plaque, injury to blood vessels' inner lining due to trauma, surgery, or irradiation, or even aortic occlusion (blockage in a main artery leading out of the heart) can be the cause of compromised penile blood flow and prevent penile erection.
- medications. A number of classes of medications can cause ED. Not all agents within each drug class produce the same effects. For example, some antidepressants are associated with ED, whereas an anti-depressant called trazodone hydrochloride (Desyrel) has been used in institutional studies for the treatment of ED because of its tendency to produce priapism (prolonged penile erection). Some medication classes that can cause ED include (but are not limited to) medications that reduce high blood pressure, medications taken for central nervous system diseases like Parkinson's disease (methyldopa), antidepressants, sedatives or tranquilizers like barbiturates, anti-anxiety medications like diazepam (Valium), non-prescribed drugs such as tobacco and alcohol, and illicit drugs including heroin.
- psychological factors. Psychological factors that can precipitate ED include stress, fatigue, depression, guilt, low self-esteem, and negative feelings for or by

a sexual partner. Depressive symptoms and/or difficulty coping with anger may be particularly influential. • lifestyle. Obesity, physical inactivity, cigarette smoking, and excessive intake of alcohol are risk factors for the development of ED. These suggest that changes in lifestyle may constitute an important aspect of both the therapy and prevention of ED.

The identification of risk factors for ED has an important impact not only on the treatment, but on the prevention of ED as well. For example, if a doctor is treating a patient for high blood pressure who is also at risk for ED, the doctor may make an informed decision to prescribe an effective medication that is not associated with ED instead of one that is.

**ED AS A MARKER FOR OTHER DISEASES.** The frequent association between ED and a number of important vascular conditions such as hypertension and coronary artery heart disease has raised the possibility that ED may serve as an important marker for the detection of these vascular disorders. Additionally, an increased incidence of depression has been noted in men with ED that is believed to be distinct from reactive depression that might occur because of ED. This has led to the recognition of a possible syndrome linking depression and ED. Thus, the presence of depression should be investigated in men presenting with ED.

### Symptoms

The main symptom is the inability to attain or maintain adequate erection to complete sexual activity.

As a result of this symptom, affected men may also experience depression and distress, and this symptom can cause interpersonal problems.

### Diagnosis

#### Interview

An essential first step in the diagnosis of ED is taking a thorough sexual, medical, and psychosocial (both psychological and social) history. The sexual history should include information such as the frequency of sexual intercourse, its duration, the quality and degree of penile erection, the presence or absence of nocturnal erections, and the success or failure of penetration. Any sexual dysfunction on the part of the partner, such as painful intercourse (**dyspareunia**) or vaginal dryness, should be ascertained. The use of one of several available self-directed patient questionnaires may be a useful adjunct to the sexual history. The sexual history helps in distinguishing ED from other abnormalities in sexual function such as ejaculatory and orgasmic disturbances and loss of sexual desire.

The general medical history may disclose one or more distinct causes of ED including the presence of associated conditions (such as high blood pressure, diabetes, or arteriosclerosis), the use of medications that can cause the disorder, and/or a history of substance abuse.

A psychosocial history, preferably with the participation of the patient's sexual partner, should include current sexual practices, the presence or absence of stress and performance anxiety, and any special circumstances under which ED occurs.

### ***Physical examination***

For a patient with ED, the physical examination should not differ substantially from that performed routinely by a primary care physician. The doctor looks for evidence of hypogonadism or congenital conditions in which there is defective testicular function. The examination of the genitourinary, circulatory and neurologic systems might be especially emphasized. The patient's genitalia are carefully examined for testicular size and consistency and penile deformities. A rectal examination is needed to evaluate the size and consistency of the prostate gland and for the performance of certain muscular reflexes. Vital signs such as blood pressure and pulse would be recorded. Because the presence of ED may serve as a marker for high blood cholesterol, hypertension, coronary artery heart disease, and depression, the physician may also request blood work and/or may perform other assessments to check for these conditions.

### ***Other diagnostic methods that may be performed***

Laboratory tests may be performed to evaluate levels of hormones including testosterone and prolactin.

Nocturnal studies present a true picture of erectile dysfunction due to organic causes. The most complete evaluation of nocturnal erectile function is obtained in a sleep laboratory, where patients are monitored for nocturnal erections during sleep.

Duplex Doppler ultrasonography has been used extensively in the evaluation of erectile function. It provides information about both arterial and venous blood flow.

Pharmacological testing involves intracavernosal injection of a small amount of an active agent (e.g., 10 micrograms of alprostadil [prostaglandin E1]) that would produce a normal or priapic erection in a patient with normal erectile function but a poor response in a patient with erectile dysfunction.

There are several self-administered questionnaires available to assist in the evaluation of sexual function in men with erectile dysfunction. The best known and most widely used is the International Index of Erectile Function (IIEF). The IIEF addresses the five relevant domains of male sexual function: erectile function, orgasmic function, sexual desire, intercourse satisfaction, and overall satisfaction.

### **Treatment**

The first step in the treatment of ED includes the elimination or alteration of modifiable risk factors or causes, such as lifestyle or psychosocial factors including smoking, obesity, substance and alcohol abuse, and the adjustment of prescription and over-the-counter medications if necessary.

Recommended treatment options for ED include the following medications:

- PDE5 inhibitors. This class of drugs, which includes sildenafil (Viagra), vardenafil hydrochloride (Levitra), and tadalafil (Cialis), work by relaxing the muscles in the penis to increase penile blood flow and produce an erection. These drugs should not be used by men who take nitroglycerin for heart problems, because they can cause a sudden drop in blood pressure. Also, PDE5 inhibitors have been associated with an increased risk of a rare condition called nonarteritic ischemic optic neuropathy, which can lead to sudden sight loss.
- Apomorphine. This morphine derivative targets dopamine receptors to facilitate erections.
- Alpha adrenergic blockers. These drugs target adrenergic receptors in smooth muscles, causing the blood vessels to dilate more easily.

If those therapies are unsuccessful, the following treatment options may be recommended:

- vacuum constriction device therapy. Vacuum constriction device therapy involves a mechanical device to increase penile blood flow and erection may also be recommended. Psychosexual therapy is also recommended so that any psychological causes for ED can be detected and therapy can be instituted. Individual psychotherapy or couples therapy may be helpful. These various treatment methods can be used alone or in combination.
- intracavernous therapy (ICIT). This therapy involves injection of the penile structures with the drugs alprostadil (Caverject), papaverine (Pavabid), or phentolamine, which promote blood flow and produce erection.

## KEY TERMS

**Diabetes mellitus**—A chronic disease affecting the metabolism of carbohydrates that is caused by insufficient production of insulin in the body.

**Hypertension**—High blood pressure, often brought on by smoking, obesity, or other causes; one of the major causes of strokes.

**Hypogonadism**—Abnormally decreased gonad function with retardation of sexual development.

**Priapism**—Persistent abnormal erection of the penis, usually without sexual desire, and accompanied by pain and tenderness.

**Prostate gland**—The gland at the base of a male's urethra that produces a component of semen.

- intraurethral therapy. The medication alprostadil is inserted into the urethra and acts to increase blood flow and muscle relaxation, allowing for erection.
- penile prostheses. These are various devices inserted surgically into the penis to produce the erect state.
- surgery. In rare cases, surgery may be used to correct a defect that interferes with penile erection.

Regardless of the therapy chosen, follow-up at regular intervals and good communication between the patient and the doctor is essential. Patients need to keep their doctors informed about adverse reactions, and patients need to be informed about drug interactions. The doctor may adjust the dosage of medication, or may substitute or add a therapeutic agent into the treatment, as necessary.

The patient and his sexual partner can work with their treatment team so that they are both well informed about various treatment options and can maximize treatment results.

### Prognosis

The combination of the increased understanding of ED, an improved approach to the problem and the development of newer and more effective therapies has resulted in a marked improvement in the prognosis of ED. It is estimated that at least 65% of all cases of ED currently have a satisfactory therapeutic outcome. However, several factors affect individual prognostic forecasts. Risk factors that cannot be changed and that have a negative effect on individual prognoses include increasing age, the presence of comorbid (co-occurring) conditions such as diabetes, and pelvic sur-

gery in which the nerves were not spared. In contrast, potentially modifiable risk factors such as physical inactivity, smoking, excessive alcoholic intake, certain medications, and obesity improve prognosis when treated effectively.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Carson, Culley. *Erectile Dysfunction, An Issue of Urologic Clinics*. New York: Saunders, 2005.

Dorey, Grace. *Pelvic Dysfunction in Men: Diagnosis and Treatment of Male Incontinence and Erectile Dysfunction*. 1st ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons, 2006.

Lue, Kirby, Roger S. *An Atlas of Erectile Dysfunction*. 2nd ed. New York: Taylor and Francis, 2003.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Urological Association. 1000 Corporate Boulevard, Linthicum, MD 21090. Telephone: (866) 746-4282. <<http://www.auanet.org/>>.

National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse. 3 Information Way, Bethesda, MD 20892-3580. Telephone: (800) 891-5390. <<http://kidney.niddk.nih.gov>>.

Ralph Myerson, MD  
Stephanie Watson

Eskalith see **Lithium carbonate**

## Estazolam

### Definition

Estazolam is a sedative-hypnotic drug belonging to the class of drugs known as **benzodiazepines**. It is sold in the United States under the names ProSom and Sedarest.

### Purpose

Estazolam is used as a short-term treatment for **insomnia**. Given at bedtime, estazolam can help patients who have trouble falling asleep, staying asleep, or who have unwanted early morning awakening.

### Description

Estazolam belongs to a group of drugs called benzodiazepines. Benzodiazepines are sedative-hypnotic drugs that help to relieve nervousness, tension, and other **anxiety** symptoms by slowing the central nervous system. To do this, they block the effects of a specific chemical involved in the transmission of nerve impulses

in the **brain**, decreasing the excitement level of the nerve cells.

Estazolam, like other benzodiazepines, can be habit-forming and can cause tolerance. Tolerance occurs when a given dosage has less and less effect when the drug is taken over a long time. Therefore, estazolam is recommended only for short-term use.

Estazolam is available in 1- and 2-mg tablets, for oral use.

### Recommended dosage

Adults are usually prescribed a single 1–2 mg dose of estazolam to be taken at bedtime. The elderly (over age 60) or people with serious health problems require much smaller doses, and are usually started at 0.5 mg at bedtime.

### Precautions

Care must be taken when prescribing this medication to anyone with decreased liver or kidney functioning; the elderly; those with a history of **substance abuse**, **depression**, respiratory depression (such as asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, chronic bronchitis, or other chronic respiratory diseases); narrow-angle glaucoma; or known sleep apnea. People with these health conditions should discuss the risks and benefits of using estazolam with their doctor before starting treatment.

Pregnant women should not use estazolam, because it causes damage to the developing fetus. Because estazolam shows up in breast milk, women who are breastfeeding should not take this drug.

Because estazolam is a nervous system and respiratory depressant, it should not be taken with other such depressants, such as alcohol or other **sedatives**, sleeping pills, or tranquilizers. Furthermore, patients should not drive, operate dangerous machinery, or engage in hazardous activities until the drug's effects have worn off.

Suddenly discontinuing estazolam after several weeks of use may cause uncomfortable symptoms of withdrawal. Patients should discuss with their doctor how to discontinue estazolam use gradually to avoid such symptoms.

### Side effects

The most common side effects of estazolam include sleepiness, slowness of movement, dizziness, and difficulty with coordination.

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazapines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact.

**Depressant**—Something that slows down functioning.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Hallucinations**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Sleep apnea**—Short periods where a person stops breathing during sleep. Breathing restarts spontaneously, however, this condition can lead a lack of oxygen in the body.

Less common side effects include anxiety, confusion, depression, memory loss for events occurring after the drug is taken, increased heart rate, and pounding or irregular heartbeat.

Rare side effects include confused thinking, disorientation, **delusions**, irritability, agitation, **hallucinations**, **seizures**, bizarre and/or aggressive behavior, a drop in blood pressure, weak muscles, skin rash or itching, sores in mouth or throat, fever and chills, difficulty sleeping, odd body and/or eye movements, unusual bruising or easy bleeding, severe **fatigue** or weakness, and yellow eyes or skin (jaundice).

### Interactions

Cimetidine (Tagamet), **disulfiram** (Antabuse), and erythromycin (an antibiotic) may increase estazolam's sedative effects.

Rifampin may decrease the effects of estazolam.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

*Mosby's Drug Consult*. St. Louis: Mosby, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

**PERIODICALS**

Rosenberg, Russell P. "Sleep Maintenance Insomnia: Strengths and Weaknesses of Current Pharmacologic Therapies." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.1 (Jan.–Mar.) 2006: 49–56.

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Etiology of mental illness see **Origin of mental illnesses**



## Evening primrose oil

### Definition

Evening primrose oil is a dietary supplement derived from the seeds of the evening primrose plant, *Oenothera biennis*. Its Latin name is derived from the Greek word for wine, reflecting the folk belief that the plant could relieve the symptoms of a hangover. Other names for the plant are tree primrose and sundrop. Native Americans used the leaves and bark of evening primrose as a sedative and astringent; it was given for stomach and liver complaints as well as disorders of the female reproductive system. More recently, the discovery of antioxidant and other properties of the seed oil has focused attention on its usefulness in treating a range of diseases and disorders, including as an anti-inflammatory, and for **premenstrual syndrome** (PMS), rheumatoid arthritis, diabetes, osteoporosis, ulcerative colitis, menopausal problems, and heart disease.

### Purpose

Evening primrose oil is given by contemporary naturopaths and other alternative practitioners to relieve the discomfort of symptoms associated with PMS, eczema, sunburn, fibrocystic breast disease, arthritis, and diabetes. It is also given to lower the risk of pre-eclampsia and eclampsia in pregnancy and osteoporosis in older women.

### Description

Evening primrose oil is obtained from the seeds of the plant by pressing. The oil can be taken directly as a liquid or in the form of capsules.

Evening primrose oil is considered a useful dietary supplement because it is a good source of essential fatty acids (EFAs), Omega 6 predominately. EFAs are called essential fatty acids because the human body

**Evening primrose capsule.** (Gusto/Photo Researchers, Inc)

cannot produce them; they must be obtained from the diet. EFAs maintain the function of cell membranes, regulate pain and inflammation, prevent blood clots, regulate blood pressure and cholesterol levels, and help to produce hormone-like substances known as prostaglandins. Prostaglandins function as inflammation mediators in the short-term regulation of glands and other body organs. It is thought that evening primrose oil relieves the symptoms of PMS by preferentially stimulating anti-inflammatory prostaglandins.

Under normal conditions, the body uses an EFA called linoleic acid to produce a compound called gamma linoleic acid, or GLA. Evening primrose oil contains both linoleic acid (74%) and GLA (9%), making it the most familiar and popular source of GLA. The other compounds contained in evening primrose oil are oleic acid (11%) and palmitic acid (6%).

### Recommended dosage

Evening primrose oil can be obtained in health food stores in either liquid or capsule form. Look for that which is organic and cold-pressed, not oxidized by heating. Store it in the refrigerator. Standard dosage varies according to the condition being treated.

## KEY TERMS

**Antioxidant**—Substance that protects the body from damaging reactive oxygen molecules in the body. These reactive oxygen molecules can come from inside the body or from environmental pollution and are thought to play a role in the aging process and the development of degenerative disease.

**Astringent**—A substance or compound that causes contraction or constriction of soft tissue.

**Eczema**—An inflammation of the skin characterized by itching and oozing of a clear fluid.

**Essential fatty acids (EFAs)**—a group of polyunsaturated fats that are essential to life and growth but cannot be produced by the body.

**Fibrocystic breast disease**—A benign disorder of breast tissue characterized by fibrous saclike growths (cysts) that cause pain and tenderness.

**Preeclampsia**—A complication of pregnancy characterized by high blood pressure, fluid retention, and protein in the urine. If the patient develops convulsions, the condition is called eclampsia.

**Prostaglandins**—A group of unsaturated fatty acids involved in the contraction of smooth muscle, control of inflammation, and many other body processes.

**Topical**—A type of medication or preparation intended for use on the skin or external surface of the body. Evening primrose oil is used in topical preparations to soothe sunburn and relieve the itching of eczema.

The dosage for breast pain from fibrocystic disease is 3 g per day. For sunburn, patients may take up to eight capsules daily until the symptoms subside. Dosages for eczema and rheumatoid arthritis depend on the concentration of GLA in the preparation of evening primrose oil, and should be decided in consultation with a physician, or naturopathic practitioner.

Evening primrose oil can also be used as a topical preparation to treat sunburn and eczema. One recipe for a homemade topical preparation calls for mixing one part of diced plant with four parts of heated petroleum jelly. The mixture is stored in a tightly closed container and refrigerated, as well.

All parts of the evening primrose plant are safe to eat. The roots can be boiled and eaten like parsnips. The seeds were roasted and used as a coffee substitute when food rationing was in effect during World War II.

## Precautions

Evening primrose oil should not be given to patients with epilepsy, and only after a consultation with a physician should it be given to children.

## Side effects

Evening primrose oil has not been reported as having toxic or severe side effects. Some patients, however, have reported nausea, headache, and softening of the stools.

Reports of side effects from using evening primrose oil in topical preparations for sunburn and other skin problems are the same as with any EFA supplement. Bruising due to damage of the blood platelet function is possible.

## Interactions

Experts in pharmacology advise against using evening primrose oil with phenytoin (Dilantin) and other anticonvulsant medications, as the oil may lower the threshold for **seizures**. No other significant drug interactions have been reported.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Murray, Michael, ND, and Joseph Pizzorno, ND. *Encyclopedia of Natural Medicine*. Rocklin, CA: Prima Publishing, 1991.

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Naturopathic Medicine." Chapter 7 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon & Schuster, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

Belch, Jill, and Alexander Hill. "Evening Primrose Oil and Borage Oil in Rheumatologic Conditions." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 71 (January 2000): 352S.

Birch, A. E., and others. "Antioxidant Properties of Evening Primrose Seed Extracts." *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 49 (September 2001): 4502–4507.

Donohue, Maureen. "Evening Primrose Oil May Ease PMS Symptoms." *OB/GYN News* (April 1, 2000).

Dove, D., and P. Johnson. "Oral Evening Primrose Oil: Its Effect on Length of Pregnancy and Selected Intrapartum Outcomes in Low-Risk Nulliparous Women." *Journal of Nurse-Midwifery* 44 (1999): 320–324.

Horowitz, S. "Combining Supplements and Prescription Drugs: What Your Patients Need to Know." *Alternative Complementary Therapy* 6 (April 2000): 177.

Hudson, Tori. "Evening Primrose Oil." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* (January 2001): 7.

Miller, Lucinda G. "Herbal Medicinals." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 158 (1998).

Yoon, S., J. Lee, and S. Lee. "The Therapeutic Effect of Evening Primrose Oil in Atopic Dermatitis Patients with Dry Scaly Skin Lesions is Associated with the

Normalization of Serum Gamma-Interferon Levels." *Skin Pharmacology and Applied Skin Physiology* 15 (January–February 2002).

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Executive function

### Definition

The term executive function describes a set of cognitive abilities that control and regulate other abilities and behaviors. Executive functions are necessary for goal-directed behavior. They include the ability to initiate and stop actions, to monitor and change behavior as needed, and to plan future behavior when faced with novel tasks and situations. Executive functions allow us to anticipate outcomes and adapt to changing situations. The ability to form concepts and think abstractly are often considered components of executive function.

### Description

As the name implies, executive functions are high-level abilities that influence more basic abilities like attention, memory and motor skills. For this reason, they can be difficult to assess directly. Many of the tests used to measure other abilities, particularly those that look at more complex aspects of these abilities, can be used to evaluate executive functions. For example, a person with executive function deficits may perform well on tests of basic attention, such as those that simply ask the individual to look at a computer screen and respond when a particular shape appears, but have trouble with tasks that require divided or alternating attention, such as giving a different response depending on the stimulus presented. Verbal fluency tests that ask people to say a number of words in a certain period of time can also reveal problems with executive function. One commonly used test asks individuals to name as many animals or as many words beginning with a particular letter as they can in one minute. A person with executive function deficits may find the animal naming task simple, but struggle to name words beginning with a particular letter, since this task requires people to organize concepts in a novel way. Executive functions also influence memory abilities by allowing people to employ strategies that can help them remember information. Other tests are designed to assess cognitive function more directly. Such tests may present a fairly simple task but without instructions on how to complete it. Executive functions allow

most people to figure out the task demand through trial and error and change strategies as needed.

Executive functions are important for successful adaptation and performance in real-life situations. They allow people to initiate and complete tasks and to persevere in the face of challenges. Because the environment can be unpredictable, executive functions are vital to human ability to recognize the significance of unexpected situations and to quickly make alternative plans when unusual events arise and interfere with normal routines. In this way, executive function contributes to success in work and school and allows people to deal effectively with the stresses of daily life. Executive functions also enable people to inhibit inappropriate behaviors. People with poor executive functions often have problems interacting with other people since they may say or do things that are bizarre or offensive to others. Most people experience impulses to do or say things that could get them in trouble, such as making a sexually explicit comment to a stranger, commenting negatively on someone's appearance, or insulting an authority figure like a boss or police officer; but most people have no trouble suppressing these urges. When executive functions are impaired, however, these urges may not be suppressed. Executive functions are thus an important component of our ability to fit in socially.

Executive function deficits are associated with a number of psychiatric and developmental disorders, including **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, Tourette's syndrome, **depression**, **schizophrenia**, **attention deficit hyperactivity disorder**, and **autism**. Executive function deficits also appear to play a role in antisocial behavior. Chronic heavy users of drugs and alcohol show impairments on tests of executive function. Some of these deficits appear to result from heavy substance use, but there is also evidence suggesting that problems with executive functions may contribute to the development of substance use disorders.

Because executive functions govern so many lower-level abilities, there is some controversy about their physiological basis. Nevertheless, most people who study these abilities agree that the frontal lobes of the brain play a major role in executive function. The frontal lobes are the large portions of the brain cortex that lie near the front of the brain. The cortex is the site in the brain where lower level processes like sensation and perception are processed and integrated into thoughts, memories and abilities, and actions are planned and initiated. People with frontal lobe injuries have difficulty with the higher level processing that underlies executive functions. Because of its complexity, the frontal cortex develops more slowly than other parts of the brain, and not surprisingly, many executive

## KEY TERMS

**Autism**—A developmental disability that appears early in life, in which normal brain development is disrupted and social and communication skills are retarded, sometimes severely.

**Cognitive**—Pertaining to the mental processes of memory, perception, judgment, and reasoning.

**Cortex**—Region in the brain where sensation and perception are processed and integrated into thoughts, memories, and abilities; also where actions are planned and initiated.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Executive**—Pertaining to supervision, planning and carrying out duties or actions.

**Frontal lobes**—A region of the brain that influences higher mental functions often associated with intelligence, such as the ability to foresee the consequences of actions, planning, comprehension, and mood.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tourette syndrome**—Neurological disorder characterized by multiple involuntary movements and uncontrollable vocalizations called tics that come and go over years, usually beginning in childhood and becoming chronic. Sometimes the tics include inappropriate language.

functions do not fully develop until adolescence. Some executive functions also appear to decline in old age, and some executive function deficits may be useful in early detection of mild dementia.

*See also* Autism; Dementia; Schizophrenia; Tourette syndrome.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Lezak, Muriel Deutsh. *Neuropsychological Assessment*. 3rd edition. New York: Oxford University Press, 1995.

Lichter, David G., and Jeffrey L. Cummings. *Frontal-subcortical Circuits in Psychiatric and Neurological Disorders*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

Anderson, Vicki A., Peter Enderson, Elisabeth Northam, Rani Jacobs, and Cathy Catroppa. "Development of executive functions through late childhood and adolescence in an Australian sample." *Developmental Neuropsychology* 20, no. 1 (2001): 385–406.

Bryan, Janet and Mary A. Luszcz. "Measurement of executive function: Considerations for detecting adult age differences." *Journal of Clinical and Experimental Neuropsychology* 22, no. 1 (2000): 40–55.

Morgan, Alex B., and Scott O. Lilienfeld. "A meta-analytic review of the relation between antisocial behavior and neuropsychological measures of executive function." *Clinical Psychology Review* 20, no. 1 (2000): 113–136.

Nathan, Joanna, David Wilkinson, Sue Stammers, and J. Lorraine Low. "The role of tests of frontal executive function in the detection of mild dementia." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 16 (2001): 18–26.

Ready, Rebecca E., Laura Stierman, and Jane S. Paulsen. "Ecological validity of neuropsychological and personality measures of executive functions." *The Clinical Neuropsychologist* 15, no. 3 (2001): 314–323.

Wecker, Nancy S., Joel H. Kramer, Amy Wisniewski, Dean C. Delis, and Edith Kaplan. "Age effects on executive ability." *Neuropsychology* 14, no. 3 (2000): 409–414.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychological Association. Division 40, 750 First Street, N.E., Washington, DC 20002-4242. <<http://www.div40.org/>>.

International Neuropsychological Society. 700 Ackerman Road, Suite 550, Columbus, OH 43202. <<http://www.acs-ohio-state.edu/ins/>>.

National Academy of Neuropsychology. 2121 South Oneida Street, Suite 550, Denver, CO 80224-2594. <<http://nanonline.org/>>.

Danielle Barry, M.S.

Exelon see **Rivastigmine**

## Exercise/exercise-based treatment

### Definition

Exercise is any physical movement that conditions a part or parts of the human body. This includes the central nervous system, especially the **brain** and with it, the mind. Successful exercise used as an adjunct treatment for mental disorders retrains the body and the mind by (1) creating a more positive body image

that increases self esteem, (2) increasing certain chemicals produced by the body that create a more positive mental perspective and body health, (3) increasing the metabolism to allow the reduction of prescribed medications and thus, the incidence of negative side effects, and (4) changing how a patient thinks to patterns that include healthier mental processes. Exercise as treatment is well planned, structured, and repetitive in nature for short-term and long-term mental health status. This type of exercise improves and maintains mental fitness and endurance, improves social skills and socialization that lead to better mental well-being, and facilitates mental rehabilitation from several mental illnesses.

## Applications

Exercise is a preventative and treatment measure in the management of mental illnesses. Of the disorders listed in the 2000 edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual (DSM-IV)* of the American Psychiatric Association, exercise is a successful adjunct treatment or preventive measure in the following disorders: alcohol abuse, **Alzheimer's disease**, anxiety, chronic pain disorder, cognitive dysfunction, co-occurring disorders, eating disorders, dementias, depression, and substance abuse.

### Anxiety, depression, substance/alcohol abuse

Exercise increases the overall metabolism and the production of endorphins in the human body. These endorphins are chemicals released in the brain that cause a feeling of well-being. When exercise is used as an adjunct treatment in cases of anxiety, depression, and substance and/or alcohol abuse, the increased levels of endorphins can replace the need or desire for some psychiatric medications, pain medications, and substances or alcohol. In addition, in physical and substance abuse rehabilitation programs from the early 1980s to the present, exercise has enhanced the positive results of most prescribed medications, allowing physicians to reduce or eliminate dosages.

Researchers have also found that because exercise, especially aerobic exercise, increases body metabolism and waste elimination, states of anxiety and depression can reduce in intensity and frequency. These disorders increase the levels of **stress** hormones secreted in the body, while exercise acts against these stress hormones. Exercise helps to eliminate these hormones by (1) reducing their production and (2) speeding their elimination, while raising endorphin levels in their place.

### Alzheimer's disease, dementia, cognitive disorders

Aerobic exercise is well known to increase the body's ability to use oxygen efficiently, increasing oxygenation to the central nervous system, most notably the brain. Increased levels of oxygen increase the positive function of the brain's cognitive operations. Increased oxygen use aids in problem solving, memory, logic, general reasoning, and abstract thinking. Increased oxygen levels also reduce the occurrence of dementias and may prohibit the formation of the physical anomalies of plaques and tangles in the brain that are commonly seen in Alzheimer's disease.

### Co-occurring disorders and other illnesses

Co-occurring disorders respond best to a holistic retinue of therapies that often include exercise as a treatment. Depression is the most common co-disorder occurring with substance/alcohol type disorders in these dual diagnoses. Exercise can help alleviate depressive symptoms, as well as anxieties that co-occur, as described above. Similarly, exercise may benefit patients with eating disorders by reducing the anxiety and depression that relate to these conditions, unless compulsive exercise is a component of the eating disorder. In that case, the patient can learn to use exercise in a healthier way to reduce anxiety and depression and to build self esteem. Exercise may also benefit other mental disorders by providing a method to increase self-esteem and metabolism and is prescribed on an individual basis.

### Supervision

Before beginning exercise treatment, an individual needs to have a complete health evaluation, including physical and mental dimensions. The client's physician and/or treatment team will examine the client to determine whether strenuous exercise will benefit or harm the individual. They will then establish what type of exercise will benefit the mental health issues present. It is important that the type, frequency, and duration of exercises chosen will work well within the overall client treatment plan and not work against other elements of it. Because exercise increases body metabolism, the use of any prescribed medications, over-the-counter remedies, and nutritional supplements must be well monitored during the course of treatment. Exercise treatment must be well planned and consistently supervised by the client's physicians and counselors. If physical or mental symptoms occur during exercise, the client should stop and call the physician to discuss such symptoms before resuming exercise. Symptoms that need to be

## KEY TERMS

**Adjunct treatment**—A treatment that enhances the primary treatment or treatments and is not used alone. It can include exercise, massage, biofeedback, drama therapy, art/music therapy, dance therapy, journaling, creative writing, and others.

**Aerobic exercise**—Exercise that uses oxygen and provides sufficient cardiovascular overload to increase cardiac output.

**Dementia**—A mental condition in which there occur hallucinations, delusions, and memory loss, along with disorientation as to person, place, and thing (who, where, and what).

**Isokinetics**—A form of strength training that uses exercise machines to control the speed of muscle contraction.

**Isometrics**—Exercises used in strength training that contract the muscles without moving the joints.

**Isotonics**—A form of strength training that uses weight lifting or rubberized exercise bands for resistance training.

**Muscle load**—The work that is produced by a muscle when it is strained with a movement (exercise).

**Range of motion exercise**—Exercises that increase movement of specific joints for flexibility and freedom.

**Stress hormones**—Chemicals secreted by the human body to produce energy for action when confronted by the fight-or-flight circumstances. They include corticotropin releasing factor, or CRF, and adrenaline, epinephrine, and cortisol.

reported include dizziness, nausea, blurred vision, disorientation, headache, unusual shortness of breath, panic attacks, **hallucinations**, unusual body pains, or any chest pain.

### Types

Strength training slightly strains a muscle further than average, increasing “muscle load” (workload) to stimulate muscle protein growth at the cellular level. This increases muscle mass and strength, bone strength, and metabolism. It helps to achieve good body image and self-esteem. Strength training can be accomplished via isometrics, isotonics, and isokinetics, along with range of motion.

Range of motion exercise increases movement of specific joints for flexibility and freedom. Isometric

exercises contract the muscles, but joints do not move during contraction. Isotonics uses weight lifting or rubberized exercise bands for resistance training, and isokinetics uses exercise machines, such as stationary bikes, to control the speed of muscle contraction.

### Risks

Neglected or improper warm-up procedures can lead to injuries that will increase anxiety that is counterproductive to therapy. Overworking the body without enough downtime between exercise sessions for physical and mental rest can also lead to injury, unnecessary pain, and/or avoidance of future exercise that will work against recovery. If exercise becomes boring or routine, exercise burnout can cause individuals to stop their exercise programs and lose the benefit of treatment, possibly resulting in depression and **relapse** of other symptoms. In the course of some mental disorders, exercise can become a compulsive set of behaviors. This reinforces the need for consistent professional monitoring of exercise treatment. Overall, the total client treatment plan must be monitored to ensure that exercise and other components are not working together to create unwanted or unexpected physical or mental issues.

### Resources

#### CONFERENCES

Hays, Kate, PhD. “Working It Out: Using Exercise in Psychotherapy.” From the Conference *Getting Healthy: Psychology’s Response to Life’s Stages*. Reported in the New York State Psychology Association’s *NYSPA Notebook*. July–Aug. 2003: 16–18.

#### PERIODICALS

Chow, Atlantis, CM, and Kirby Singh, MF. “An Effective Exercise-Based Intervention for Improving Mental Health and Quality of Life Measures: A Randomized Trial.” *Preventive Medicine* 39.2 (2004): 424–34.

George, Steven Z., Joel E. Bialosky, and Julie M. Fritz. “Physical Therapist Management of a Patient with Acute Low Back Pain and Elevated Fear-Avoidance Beliefs.” *Physical Therapy* 84.6 (2004): 538–49.

Keller, Joy. “U.S. to Introduce New Physical Activity Guidelines: IDEA Members Share Their Visions for What the Recommendations Should Include.” *IDEA Fitness Journal* 4.1 (2007): 16–17.

Kim, Doyeon, and Len Kravitz. “Childhood Obesity: Prevalence, Treatment and Prevention: Become an Advocate for Kids by Taking a Leadership Role in the War on Obesity.” *IDEA Fitness Journal* 4.1 (2007): 22–24.

Read, Jennifer, and Richard Brown. “The Role of Physical Exercise in Alcoholism Treatment and Recovery.”

- Professional Psychology: Research and Practice* 34.1 (2003): 49–56.
- Read, Jennifer, PhD, Richard Brown, PhD, Bess Marcus, PhD, Christopher Kahler, PhD, Susan Ramsey, PhD, Mary Ellen Dubreuil, PhD, Jon Jakicic, PhD, and Caren Francione, BA. “Exercise Attitudes and Behaviors among Persons in Treatment for Alcohol Use Disorders.” *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment* 21.4 (2001): 199–206.
- Sander, Ruth. “Exercise is Associated with a Delayed Onset of Dementia.” *Nursing Older People* 18.12 (2007): 39–40.
- Yu, Fang, Ann M. Kolanowski, Neville E. Strumpf, and Paul J. Eslinger. “Improving Cognition and Function Through Exercise Intervention in Alzheimer’s Disease.” *Journal of Nursing Scholarship* 38.4 (2006): 358–65.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN. <<http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/depression-and-exercise/MH00043>>.
- The President’s Council on Physical Fitness and Sports. Department W., 200 Independence Avenue SW, Room 738-H, Washington, DC 20201. Telephone: (202) 690-9000. <<http://www.fitness.gov>>.
- YMCA of the USA. 101 North Wacker Drive, Chicago, IL 60606. Telephone: (800) 872-9622. <<http://www.ymca.net>>.
- YWCA USA. 1015 18th Street NW, Suite 1100, Washington, DC 20036. Telephone: (202) 467-0801. <<http://www.ywca.org>>.

Patty Inglish, MS

## Exhibitionism

### Definition

Exhibitionism is a mental disorder characterized by a **compulsion** to display one’s genitals to an unsuspecting stranger. The **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*, classifies exhibitionism under the heading of the “paraphilic,” a subcategory of sexual and gender identity disorders. The **paraphilic**s are a group of mental disorders marked by **obsession** with unusual sexual practices or with sexual activity involving nonconsenting or inappropriate partners (e.g., children or animals). The term *paraphilia* is derived from two Greek words meaning “outside of” and “friendship-love.”

In the United States and Canada, the slang term “flasher” is often used for exhibitionists.

### Description

Exhibitionism is described in the *DSM-IV-TR* as the exposure of one’s genitals to a stranger, usually with no intention of further sexual activity with the other person. For this reason, the term exhibitionism is sometimes grouped together with “voyeurism,” (“peeping,” or watching an unsuspecting person or people, usually strangers, undressing or engaging in sexual activity) as a “hands-off” paraphilia. This contrasts with the “hands-on disorders” which involve physical contact with other persons.

In some cases, the exhibitionist masturbates while exposing himself (or while fantasizing that he is exposing himself) to the other person. Some exhibitionists are aware of a conscious desire to shock or upset their target; while others fantasize that the target will become sexually aroused by their display.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Several theories have been proposed regarding the origins of exhibitionism, although none are considered conclusive. They include:

- biological theories. These generally hold that testosterone, the hormone that influences the sexual drive in both men and women, increases the susceptibility of males to develop deviant sexual behaviors. Some medications used to treat exhibitionists are given to lower the patients’ testosterone levels.
- learning theories. Several studies have shown that emotional abuse in childhood and family dysfunction are both significant risk factors in the development of exhibitionism. A Swedish survey (Sweden is globally recognized for its excellent health data survey system) found that exhibitionism is associated with psychological problems, although whether the problems precipitate the behavior or vice versa was not identified. This same study found no association between exhibitionistic behavior and a history of sexual abuse.
- psychoanalytical theories. These are based on an unsubstantiated assumption that male gender identity requires the male child’s separation from his mother psychologically so that he does not identify with her as a member of the same sex, the way a girl does. It is thought that exhibitionists regard their mothers as rejecting them on the basis of their different genitals. Therefore, they grow up with the desire to force women to accept them by making women look at their genitals.

- head trauma. There are a small number of documented cases of men becoming exhibitionists following traumatic brain injury (TBI) without previous histories of alcohol abuse or sexual offenses.
- a childhood history of **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** (ADHD). The reason for the connection is not yet known, but researchers at Harvard have discovered that patients with multiple paraphilic behaviors have a much greater likelihood of having had ADHD as children than men with only one paraphilia.

Some psychiatrists disagree about whether exhibitionism should be considered a disorder of impulse control or whether it falls within the spectrum of obsessive-compulsive disorders (OCDs). Recent studies suggest that there is an obsessive-compulsive element to these behaviors, and some papers now describe these behaviors in a category of compulsive-impulsive sexual behaviors. Single case studies have suggested some effectiveness of drugs used to treat **bipolar disorder** in treating exhibitionistic behaviors, implying a potential link also to bipolar disorders. People who exhibit **pedophilia**, which is also characterized as a paraphilia, have abnormalities in brain **imaging studies** that are similar to those observed in imaging studies of people with **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. Disruption of **dopamine** and serotonin (both nerve signaling molecules) pathways is implicated in many of these disorders.

### Symptoms

One expert in the field of treating paraphilic behaviors has suggested classifying the symptoms of exhibitionism according to level of severity, based on criteria from the *DSM-III-R* (1987):

- Mild. The person has recurrent fantasies of exposing himself, but has rarely or never acted on them.
- Moderate. The person has occasionally exposed himself (three targets or fewer) and has difficulty controlling urges to do so.
- Severe. The person has exposed himself to more than three people and has serious problems with control.
- A fourth level of severity, catastrophic, would not be found in exhibitionists without other paraphilic behaviors. This level denotes the presence of sadistic fantasies which, if acted upon, would result in severe injury or death to the victim.

Because exhibitionism is a hands-off paraphilia, it rarely rises above the level of moderate severity in the absence of other paraphilic behaviors.

### Demographics

The incidence of exhibitionism in the general population is difficult to estimate because persons with this disorder do not usually seek counseling by their own free will. Exhibitionism is one of the three most common sexual offenses in police records (the other two are **voyeurism** and pedophilia). It is rarely diagnosed in general mental health clinics, but most professionals believe that it is probably underdiagnosed and underreported.

In terms of the technical definition of exhibitionism, almost all reported cases involve males. A number of mental health professionals, however, have noted that gender bias may be built into the standard definition. Some women engage in a form of exhibitionism by undressing in front of windows as if they are encouraging someone to watch them. In addition, wearing the low-cut gowns favored by some models and actresses have been described as socially sanctioned exhibitionism. One textbook description of exhibitionism says “women exhibit everything but the genitals; men, nothing but.”

Although the stereotype of an exhibitionist is a “dirty old man in a raincoat,” most males arrested for exhibitionism are in their late teens or early twenties. The disorder appears to have its onset before age 18. Like most paraphilic behaviors, exhibitionism is rarely found in men over 50 years of age.

In the United States most exhibitionists are Caucasian males. About half of exhibitionists are married.

### Diagnosis

**Diagnosis** of exhibitionism is complicated by several factors. For example, most persons with the disorder come to therapy because of court orders. Some are motivated by fear of discovery by employers or family members, and a minority of exhibitionists enter therapy because their wife or girlfriend is distressed by the disorder. Emotional attitudes toward the disorder vary; some men maintain that the only problem they have with exhibitionism is society’s disapproval of it; others, however, feel intensely guilty and anxious.

A second complication of diagnosing exhibitionism is the high rate of comorbidity among the paraphilic behaviors as a group and between the paraphilic behaviors as a group and other mental disorders. In other words, a patient in treatment for exhibitionism is highly likely to engage in other forms of deviant sexual behavior and to have **depression** (an **anxiety** or substance-abuse disorder). In addition, many patients with paraphilic behaviors do not cooperate with physicians, who may

have considerable difficulty making an accurate diagnosis of other disorders that may also exist.

A diagnosis of exhibitionism follows a somewhat different pattern from the standard procedures for diagnosing most mental disorders. A thorough workup in a clinic for specialized treatment of sexual disorders includes the following components:

- a psychiatric evaluation and mental status examination to diagnose concurrent psychiatric and medical conditions, and to rule out schizophrenia, post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), mental retardation, and depression.
- a neurologic examination to rule out head trauma, seizures, or other abnormalities of brain structure and function, followed by a computed tomography (CT) scan or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), if needed.
- blood and urine tests for substance abuse and sexually transmitted diseases, including an HIV screen.
- assessment of sexual behaviors. This includes creation of a sex hormone profile and responses to questionnaires. The questionnaires are intended to measure cognitive distortions regarding rape and other forms of coercion, pedophilia, aggression, and impulsivity.

## Treatments

Exhibitionism is usually treated with a combination of **psychotherapy**, medications, and adjunctive treatments.

### *Psychotherapy*

Several different types of psychotherapy have been found helpful in treating exhibitionism:

- cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT). This approach is generally regarded as the most effective form of psychotherapy for exhibitionism. Patients are encouraged to recognize the irrational justifications that they offer for their behavior, and to alter other distorted thinking patterns.
- orgasmic reconditioning. In this technique, the patient is conditioned to replace fantasies of exposing himself with fantasies of more acceptable sexual behavior while masturbating.
- group therapy. This form of therapy is used to get patients past the denial frequently associated with paraphilic disorders, and as a form of relapse prevention.
- twelve-step groups for sexual addicts. Exhibitionists who feel guilty and anxious about their behavior are often helped by the social support and emphasis on healthy spirituality found in these groups, as well as by the cognitive restructuring that is built into the twelve steps.

- couples therapy or family therapy. This approach is particularly helpful for patients who are married and whose marriages and family ties have been strained by their disorder.

### *Medications*

There are several different classes of drugs used to treat the patient with exhibitionism and the other paraphilic disorders. However, one difficulty in evaluating the comparative efficacy of different medications should be noted: ethical limitation. Double-blind placebo-controlled studies of medication treatment of sexually deviant men raises the ethical question of the possibility of relapse in the subjects who receive the placebo. Withholding a potentially effective drug in circumstances that might lead to physical or psychological injury to a third party is difficult to justify.

Medications are often the only form of treatment for patients with exhibitionism that can suppress deviant behaviors. The categories of drugs used to treat exhibitionism are as follows:

- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs). The SSRIs show promise in treating the paraphilic disorders, as well as depression and other mood disorders. It has been found that decreased levels of serotonin in the brain result in an increased sex drive. The SSRIs are appropriate for patients with mild- or moderate-level paraphilic disorders; these patients include the majority of exhibitionists.
- hormones, their mimics, and their antagonists. The three classes of medications most often used to treat paraphilic disorders are hormones, particularly the synthetic medroxyprogesterone acetate, or MPA; luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) agonists (mimics), which include such drugs as triptorelin (Trelstar), leuprorelin acetate, and goserelin acetate; and antiandrogens, which block the uptake and metabolism of testosterone as well as reducing blood levels of this hormone. In particular, these drugs with antiandrogenic effects (interfering with the action of the body's androgenic hormones) have shown some effectiveness.

### *Surgery*

Surgical castration, which involves removal of the testes, is effective in significantly reducing levels of testosterone in blood plasma. This form of treatment for paraphilic disorders, however, is generally reserved for more serious offenders than exhibitionists (violent rapists and pedophiles with a history of repeated offenses, for example).

## KEY TERMS

**Aversion therapy**—An approach to treatment in which an unpleasant or painful stimulus is linked to an undesirable behavior in order to condition the patient to dislike or avoid the behavior.

**Castration**—Desexing a person or animal by surgical removal of the testes (in males) or ovaries (in females). Castration is sometimes offered as a treatment option to violent rapists and pedophiles who are repeat offenders.

**Comorbidity**—Association or presence of two or more mental disorders in the same patient. A disorder that is said to have a high degree of comorbidity is likely to occur in patients diagnosed with other disorders that may share or reinforce some of its symptoms.

**Compliance**—In medicine or psychiatry, cooperation with a treatment plan or schedule of medications.

**Denial**—A psychological defense mechanism that reduces anxiety by excluding recognition of an addiction or similar problem from the conscious mind.

**Double-blind placebo-controlled study**—A study in which patients are divided into two groups—those who will receive a medication, and those who will receive a placebo (a pill that looks like the medica-

tion but has no active ingredients). Neither the patients nor their physicians know which pill any specific patient is receiving.

**Paraphilias**—A group of mental disorders that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving (1) nonhuman objects, (2) the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or (3) children or other nonconsenting persons.

**Placebo**—An inactive substance or preparation used as a control in experiments with human subjects to test the effectiveness of a medication.

**Recidivism**—A tendency to return to a previously treated activity, or repeated relapse into criminal or deviant behavior.

**Serotonin**—A chemical produced by the brain that functions as a neurotransmitter. Low serotonin levels are associated with the paraphilias as well as with mood disorders. Medications known as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) can be used to treat exhibitionism and other paraphilias.

**Voyeurism**—A paraphilia that involves watching unsuspecting people, usually strangers, undress or engage in sexual activity.

### ***Other treatment methods***

Another treatment method that is often offered to people with exhibition disorder is **social skills training**. It is thought that some men develop paraphilias partially because they do not know how to form healthy relationships, whether sexual or nonsexual, with other people. Although social skills training is not considered a substitute for medications or psychotherapy, it appears to be a useful adjunctive treatment for exhibitionism disorder.

### ***Legal considerations***

People with exhibitionism disorder are at risk for lifetime employment problems if they acquire a police record. An attorney who specializes in employment law has pointed out that the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), enacted by Congress in 1990 to protect workers against discrimination on grounds of mental impairment or physical disability, does not protect persons with paraphilias. People with exhibitionism disorder were specifically excluded by Congress from

the provisions of the ADA, along with voyeurs and persons with other sexual behavior disorders.

### ***Prognosis***

The prognosis for people with exhibition disorder depends on a number of factors, including the age of onset, the reasons for the patient's referral to psychiatric care, degree of his cooperation with the therapist, and comorbidity with other paraphilias or other mental disorders. For some patients, exhibitionism is a temporary disorder related to sexual experimentation during their adolescence. For others, however, it is a lifelong problem with potentially serious legal, interpersonal, financial, educational, and occupational consequences. People with exhibition disorder have the highest recidivism rate of all the paraphilias; between 20% and 50% of men arrested for exhibitionism are rearrested within two years.

### ***Prevention***

One important preventive strategy includes the funding of programs for the treatment of paraphilias

in adolescents. According to one expert in the field, males in this age group have not been studied and are undertreated, yet it is known that paraphilic behaviors are usually established before age 18. Recognition of paraphilic behaviors in adolescents and treatment for those at risk would lower the risk of recidivism. A second important preventive approach is early recognition and appropriate treatment of people who have committed child abuse.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Beers, Mark H., MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. "Exhibitionism," In *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Carnes, Patrick. *Out of the Shadows: Understanding Sexual Addiction*. Minneapolis, MN: CompCare Publications, 1983.
- Kasl, Charlotte D. *Women, Sex, and Addiction*. New York: Harper and Row, Publishers, 1990.

### PERIODICALS

- Aboquesh, A., and A. Clayton. "Compulsive Voyeurism and Exhibitionism: A Clinical Response to Paroxetine." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 28 (February 1999): 23–30.
- Bradford, John M. W. "The Treatment of Sexual Deviation Using a Pharmacological Approach." *Journal of Sex Research* 37 (August 2000): 485–92.
- Brannon, Guy E., MD. "Paraphilias." *eMedicine Journal* 3 (January 14, 2002).
- Carnes, P., and J. P. Schneider. "Recognition and Management of Addictive Sexual Disorders: Guide for the Primary Care Clinician." *Lippincott's Primary Care Practitioner* 4 (May–June 2000): 302–18.
- de Silva, W. P. "Sexual Variations." *British Medical Journal* 318 (March 6, 1999): 654.
- Greenberg, D. M. "Sexual Recidivism in Sex Offenders." *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry* 43 (June 1998): 459–65.
- Kafka, Martin P., and J. Hennen. "Psychostimulant Augmentation During Treatment with Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors in Men with Paraphilic and Paraphilia-Related Disorders: A Case Series." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 61 (2000): 664–70.
- Langstrom, Niklas, and Michael C. Seto. "Exhibitionistic and Voyeuristic Behavior in a Swedish National Population Survey." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 35 (2006): 427–35.
- Lee, J. K., and others. "Developmental Risk Factors for Sexual Offending." *Child Abuse and Neglect* 26 (January 2002): 73–92.
- Marazziti, Donatella, and Bernardo Dell'Osso. "Topiramate Plus Citalopram in the Treatment of Compulsive-Impulsive Sexual Behaviors." *Clinical Practice in Epidemiology in Mental Health* 2 (2006): 9.

- Schiffer, Boris, and others. "Structural Brain Abnormalities in the Frontostriatal System and Cerebellum in Pedophilia." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* (2006).
- Schober, Justine M., Peter M. Byrne, and Phyllis J. Kuhn. "Leuprolide Acetate is a Familiar Drug That May Modify Sex-Offender Behavior: the Urologist's Role." *BJU International* 97 (2006): 684–86.
- Simpson, G., A. Blaszczynski, and A. Hodgkinson. "Sex Offending as a Psychosocial Sequela of Traumatic Brain Injury." *Journal of Head Trauma and Rehabilitation* 14 (December 1999): 567–80.
- Sonnenberg, Stephen P., JD. "Mental Disabilities in the Workplace." *Workforce* 79 (June 2000): 632.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Augustine Fellowship, Sex and Love Addicts Anonymous. PO Box 119, New Town Branch, Boston, MA 02258. Telephone: (617) 332-1845.
- National Association on Sexual Addiction Problems (NASAP). 22937 Arlington Avenue, Suite 201, Torrance, CA 90501. Telephone: (213) 546-3103.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Exposure treatment

### Definition

Exposure treatment is a technique that is widely used in **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) to help patients systematically confront a feared stimulus in a live or virtual environment or in the imagination. Through repeated exposure to the stimulus, patients are helped to nullify fears and increase self-efficacy. Exposure treatment is also called exposure therapy.

### Purpose

Exposure treatment is used for a variety of **anxiety disorders**, and it has also recently been extended to the treatment of substance-related disorders. Generally speaking, exposure treatment involves presenting patients with anxiety-producing stimulus for a long enough time to decrease the intensity of their emotional reactions. As a result, the feared situation or object no longer makes the patients anxious. Exposure treatment can be carried out in real situations, which is called *in vivo* exposure, or it can be done through imagination, which is called *imaginal exposure*. More recently, exposure treatment has been extended to include the use of computer-based virtual environments.

The category of imaginal exposure includes **systematic desensitization**, in which patients imagine

certain aspects of the feared object or situation combined with relaxation. Graded or graduated exposure refers to exposing the patients to the feared situation in a gradual manner. Flooding refers to exposing patients to the anxiety-provoking or feared situation all at once and keeping them in it until the **anxiety** and fear subside. There are several variations in the delivery of exposure treatment: patient-directed exposure instructions or self-exposure; therapist-assisted exposure; group exposure; and exposure with response prevention.

The basic purpose of exposure treatment is to decrease a person's anxious and fearful reactions (emotions, thoughts, or physical sensations) through repeated exposures to anxiety-producing material. This reduction of the patient's anxiety response is known as habituation. A related purpose of exposure treatment is to eliminate the anxious or fearful response altogether so that patients can face the feared situation repeatedly without experiencing anxiety or fear. This elimination of the anxiety response is known as extinction.

### Precautions

Exposure treatment is generally a safe treatment method; however, some patients may find that the level of anxiety that occurs during treatment sessions is higher than they can handle. Some studies of exposure treatment have reported a high dropout rate, perhaps because the method itself produces anxiety. In addition, exposure treatment is not effective for all patients; after treatment, some continue to experience anxiety symptoms.

### Description

Exposure treatment usually begins with making lists or hierarchies of situations that make the patients anxious or fearful. The situations are ranked on a scale of zero (representing the situation producing the least anxiety) to ten (representing the situation of highest anxiety). In addition, patients are usually asked to rate their level of anxiety in each situation on a scale from zero (no anxiety or discomfort) to 100 (extreme anxiety and discomfort). This scale is called the subjective units of distress scale (SUDS). Patients may be asked to provide SUDS ratings at regular intervals (for example every five minutes) during exposure treatment.

#### Methods of delivering exposure treatment

**PATIENT-DIRECTED EXPOSURE.** Patient-directed exposure is the simplest variation of exposure treatment. After patients make their hierarchy lists with their

therapist, they are instructed to move through the situations on the hierarchy at their own rates. Patients start with the lowest anxiety situation on the list, and keep a journal of their experiences. They continue the patient-directed exposure on a daily basis until their fears and anxieties have decreased. For example, if patients are afraid of leaving the house, the first item on the hierarchy might be to stand outside the front door for a certain period of time. After they are able to perform this action without feeling anxious, they would move to the next item on the hierarchy, which might be walking to the end of the driveway. Treatment would proceed in this way until the patients have completed all the items on the hierarchy. During therapy sessions, the therapist reviews their journal, gives them positive feedback for any progress that they have made, and discusses any obstacles that they encountered during exposures to the feared situation.

**THERAPIST-ASSISTED EXPOSURE.** In this form of exposure treatment, therapists go with patients to the feared location or situation and provides on-the-spot coaching to help them manage their anxieties. Therapists may challenge their patients to experience the maximum amount of anxiety. In prolonged *in vivo* exposure, therapists and patients stay in the situation as long as it takes for the anxiety to decrease. For example, they might remain in a crowded shopping mall for four or more hours. The therapists also explore the thoughts of patients during this exposure to confront any irrational ways of thinking.

**GROUP EXPOSURE.** In group exposure, self-exposure and practice are combined with group education and discussion of experiences during exposure to feared situations. These sessions may last as long as three hours and include 30 minutes of education, time for individual exposure practice, and 45 minutes of discussion. Group sessions may be scheduled on a daily basis for 10–14 days.

#### *Exposure treatment for specific anxiety disorders*

**AGORAPHOBIA.** Many research studies have shown that graded exposure treatment is effective for **agoraphobia**. Long-term studies have shown that improvement can be maintained for as long as seven years. Exposure treatment for agoraphobia is best conducted *in vivo*, in the actual feared situation, such as entering a packed subway car. Exposure treatment for agoraphobia is likely to be more effective when the patient's spouse or friend is involved, perhaps because of the support a companion can offer the patient during practice sessions.

**PANIC DISORDER.** Exposure treatment is the central component of cognitive-behavioral treatment for **panic disorder**. Treatment for this disorder involves identifying patients' specific fears within their experiences of panic, such as fears of being sick, of losing control, and of embarrassment. Once these fears are identified, patients are instructed to expose themselves to situations in which the fearful thoughts arise (such as walking away from a safe person or place). The rationale behind this instruction is that enduring the anxiety associated with the situation will accustom patients to the situation itself, so that over time the anxiety will diminish or disappear. In this way, patients discover that the feared consequences do not happen in real life.

In some patients, physical symptoms of panic lead to fears about the experience of panic itself. Fears related to the physical symptoms associated with panic can be targeted for treatment by inducing the bodily sensations that mimic those experienced during panic attacks. This technique is called interoceptive exposure. Patients are asked to induce the feared sensations in a number of ways. For example, patients may spin in a revolving chair to induce dizziness or run up the stairs to induce increased heart rate and shortness of breath. They are then instructed to notice what the symptoms feel like, and allow them to remain without doing anything to control them. With repeated exposure, patients learn that the bodily sensations do not signal harm or danger, and therefore need not be feared. Patients are taught such strategies as muscle relaxation and slow breathing to control anxiety before, during, and after the exposure.

Interoceptive exposure treatment for panic usually begins with practice sessions in a therapist's office. Patients may be instructed to practice at home and then practice in a less "safe" environment, such as their work setting or a nearby park. The next step is the addition of the physical activities that naturally produce the feared symptoms. Situational or *in vivo* exposure would then be introduced for patients with agoraphobia combined with panic disorder. Patients would be instructed to go back into situations that they have been avoiding, such as elevators or busy railroad terminals. If patient develop symptoms of anxiety, they are instructed to use the techniques for controlling anxiety that were previously learned.

The effectiveness of exposure treatment for decreasing panic attacks and avoidance has been well demonstrated. In research studies, 50–90% of patients experience relief from symptoms.

**SPECIFIC PHOBIA AND SOCIAL PHOBIA.** Graded exposure is used most often to treat specific or simple phobias. In graded exposure, patients approach the feared object or situation by degrees. For example, those afraid of swimming in the ocean might begin by looking at photographs of the ocean, then watching movies of people swimming, then going to the beach and walking along the water's edge, and then working up to a full swim in the ocean. Graded exposure can be done through patient-directed instruction or therapist-assisted exposure. Research studies indicate that most patients respond quickly to graded exposure treatment, and that the benefits of treatment are well maintained.

Treatment for **social phobia** usually combines exposure treatment with cognitive restructuring. This combination seems to help prevent a recurrence of symptoms. In general, studies of exposure treatment for social phobia have shown that it leads to a reduction of symptoms. Since cognitive restructuring is usually combined with exposure, it is unclear which component is responsible for patients' improvement, but there is some indication that exposure alone may be sufficient.

Exposure treatment can be more difficult to arrange for treating social phobia, however, because patients have less control over social situations, which are unpredictable by their nature and can unexpectedly become more intense and anxiety-provoking. Furthermore, social exchanges usually last only a short time; therefore, they may not provide the length of exposure that patients need.

**OBSessive-COMPULSIVE DISORDER.** The most common nonmedication treatment for **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD) is exposure to the feared or anxiety-producing situation plus response prevention (preventing the patient from performing a compulsive behavior, such as hand washing after exposure to something thought to be contaminated). This form of treatment also uses a hierarchy, and begins with the easiest situation and gradually moves to more difficult situations. Research has shown that exposure to contamination situations leads to a decrease in fears of contamination, but does not lead to changes in the compulsive behavior. In a similar fashion, the response prevention component leads to a decrease in compulsive behavior, but does not affect the patient's fears of contamination. Since each form of treatment affects different OCD symptoms, a combination of exposure and response prevention is more effective than either modality by itself. Exposure combined with response prevention also appears to be effective for treating children and adolescents with OCD.

Prolonged continuous exposure is better than short, interrupted periods of exposure in treating people with OCD. On average, exposure treatment of people with OCD requires 90-minute sessions, although the frequency of sessions varies. Some studies have shown good results with 15 daily treatments spread over a period of three weeks. This intensive treatment format may be best suited for cases that are more severe and complex, as in patients with **depression** as well as OCD. Patients who are less severely affected and are highly motivated may benefit from sessions once or twice a week. Treatment may include both therapist-assisted exposure and self-exposure as homework between sessions. Imaginal exposure may be useful for addressing fears that are hard to incorporate into in vivo exposure, such as fears of a loved one's death. Patients usually prefer gradual exposure to the most distressing situations in their hierarchy; however, gradual exposure does not appear to be more effective than flooding or immediate exposure to the situation.

**POST-TRAUMATIC STRESS DISORDER.** Exposure treatment has been used successfully in the therapy of **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD) resulting from such traumatic experiences as combat, sexual assault, and motor vehicle accidents. Research studies have reported encouraging results for exposure treatment in reducing PTSD or PTSD symptoms in children, adolescents, and adults. Intrusive symptoms of PTSD, such as nightmares and flashbacks, may be reduced by having patients relive the emotional aspects of the trauma in a safe, therapeutic environment. It may take 10–15 exposure sessions to decrease the negative physical sensations associated with PTSD. These sessions may range from one to two hours in length and may occur once or twice a week. Relaxation techniques are usually included before and after exposure. The exposure may be therapist-assisted or patient-directed.

A recent study showed that imaginal exposure and cognitive treatment are equally effective in reducing symptoms associated with chronic or severe PTSD, but that neither brought about complete improvement. In addition, more patients treated with exposure worsened over the course of treatment than patients treated with cognitive approaches. This finding may have been related to the fact that the patients receiving exposure treatment had less frequent sessions with long periods of time between sessions. Some patients diagnosed with PTSD, however, do not seem to benefit from exposure therapy. They may have difficulty tolerating exposure, or have difficulty imagining, visualizing, or describing their traumatic experiences.

The use of cognitive therapy to help the patient focus on thoughts may be a useful adjunctive treatment, or serve as an alternative to exposure treatment.

Many people who have experienced sexual assault or rape meet the criteria for PTSD defined in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*). They may reexperience the traumatic event, avoid items or places associated with the trauma, and have increased levels of physical arousal. Exposure treatment in these cases involves using either imaginal or in vivo exposure to reduce anxiety and any tendencies to avoid aspects of the situation that produce anxiety (also known as avoidance behavior). Verbal description of the event (imaginal exposure) is critical for recovery, although it usually feels painful and threatening to patients. It is important that the patients' verbal descriptions of the traumatic events, along with their expressions of thoughts and feelings related to it, occur as early in the treatment process as possible, to minimize long-term suffering.

Prolonged exposure is the most effective nonmedical treatment for reducing traumatic memories related to PTSD. It combines flooding with systematic desensitization. The goal is to expose patients using both imaginal and in vivo exposure techniques in order to reduce avoidance behaviors and fears. Prolonged exposure may occur over nine to 12 90-minute sessions. During the imaginal exposure phase of treatment, patients are asked to describe the details of the traumatic experiences repeatedly, in the present tense. Patients use the SUDS scale to monitor levels of fear and anxiety. The in vivo component occurs outside a therapist's office; this component involves having clients expose themselves to cues in the environment that they have been avoiding—for example, the place where the motor vehicle accident or rape occurred. Patients are instructed to stay in the fear-producing situation for at least 45 minutes, or until their anxiety levels have gone down significantly on the SUDS rating scale. Often patients will use a coach or someone who will stay with them at the beginning of in vivo practice. The coach's role gradually decreases over time as the patients experience less anxiety.

#### *Recent innovations in exposure treatment*

**VIRTUAL REALITY EXPOSURE TREATMENT.** Virtual reality is a technique that allows people to participate actively in a computer-generated (or virtual) scenario or environment. The participants have a sense of being present in the virtual environment. Virtual reality uses a device mounted on the participant's head that shows computer graphics and visual displays in real time, and

tracks the person's body movements. Some forms of virtual reality also allow participants to hold a second device in their hands that enables them to interact more fully with the virtual environment, such as opening a car door.

Virtual reality has been proposed as a new way of conducting exposure therapy because it can provide a sense of being present in a feared situation. Virtual reality exposure may be useful for treating such phobias as fear of heights, flying, or driving, as well as for treating PTSD. This method appears to have several advantages over standard exposure therapy. First, virtual reality may offer patients a greater sense of control because they can instantly turn the device on and off or change its level of intensity. Second, virtual reality protects patients from harm or social embarrassment during their practice sessions. Third, it can be implemented regardless of the patient's ability to imagine or to remain with prolonged imaginal exposure. These proposed advantages of virtual reality over standard exposure therapy have yet to be tested, however.

Some studies have been conducted using virtual reality in the treatment of patients with fear of heights and fear of flying, and in a sample of Vietnam veterans diagnosed with PTSD. These studies of virtual reality exposure therapy have limitations in terms of study design and small sample size, but their positive results suggest that virtual reality exposure therapy deserves further investigation.

**CUE EXPOSURE TREATMENT FOR ALCOHOL DEPENDENCE.** Cue exposure is a relatively new approach to treating substance-related disorders. It is designed to re-create real-life situations in safe therapeutic environments that expose patients repeatedly to alcohol-related cues, such as the sight or smell of alcohol. It is thought that this repeated exposure to cues, plus prevention of the usual response (drinking alcohol) will reduce and possibly eliminate urges experienced in reaction to the cues.

People diagnosed with alcohol dependence face a number of alcohol-related cues in their environments, including moods associated with previous drinking patterns; people, places, times, and objects associated with the pleasurable effects of alcohol; and the sight or smell of alcoholic beverages. Exposure to these cues increases the patient's risk of **relapse**, because the cues can interfere with a person's use of coping skills to resist the urge to drink. The purpose of cue exposure is to teach patients coping skills for responding to these urges. It is thought that people who practice coping skills in the presence of cues will find the coping skills

strengthened, along with the conviction that they can respond effectively when confronted by similar cues in real-life situations.

There are various approaches to cue exposure. The choice of cues is usually based on treatment philosophy and goals, which may require abstinence from alcohol or permit moderate drinking. In abstinence-only programs, patients may be exposed to actual alcohol cues and/or imagined high-risk situations. This imaginal exposure is useful for dealing with cues and circumstances that cannot be reproduced in treatment settings, such as fights. Patients learn and practice urge-specific coping skills. While patients may learn to cope successfully with one cue (e.g., the smell of alcohol), the urge to drink may reappear in response to another cue, such as seeing a friend with whom they used to go to bars. Patients would then learn how to manage this particular cue. This program may take six to eight individual or group sessions and may occur on an inpatient or outpatient basis. Often patients remain in the treatment setting for several hours after the exposure to ensure that any lasting urges are safely managed with a therapist's help.

More specifically, cue exposure focuses on the aspect of alcohol consumption that produces the strongest urge. Patients would report each change in their level of urgency, using a scale of zero to 10 that resembles the SUDS scale. The urge to drink usually peaks after one to five minutes. When the desire for a drink arises, patients are instructed to focus on the cue to see what happens to their desire. In most cases the urge subsides within 15 minutes, which is often different from what the patients expected. In later sessions, the patients are instructed when the urge peaks to imagine using the coping skills that they recently learned. Patients may also be instructed to imagine being in high-risk situations and using the coping skills. Some examples of these coping skills include telling oneself that the urge will go away, picturing the negative consequences of drinking alcohol, and thinking of the positive consequences of staying sober.

Although there has been little research on cue exposure, available studies show positive outcomes in terms of decreasing the patients' consumption of alcohol. There have been, however, few outcome studies comparing cue exposure treatment to other treatment approaches. It may be hard to separate the benefits of exposure from the benefits of coping skills training. In any event, cue exposure treatment is a promising approach that deserves further study to determine if either component alone is sufficient or if a combination of the two is more effective.

## KEY TERMS

**Cognitive restructuring**—An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping patients examine distorted patterns of perceiving and thinking in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**Cue**—Any behavior or event in a person's environment that serves to stimulate a particular response. For example, the smell of liquor may be a cue for some people to pour themselves a drink.

**Desensitization**—The reduction or elimination of an overly intense reaction to a cue by controlled repeated exposures to the cue.

**Extinction**—The elimination or removal of a person's reaction to a cue as a result of exposure treatment.

**Flooding**—A type of exposure treatment in which patients are exposed to anxiety-provoking or feared situations all at once and kept in it until the anxiety and fear subside.

**Habituation**—The reduction of a person's emotional or behavioral reaction to a cue by repeated or prolonged exposure.

**Hierarchy**—In exposure therapy, a list of feared items or situations, ranked from least fearsome to most fearsome.

**In vivo**—A Latin phrase that means "in life." In modeling and exposure therapies, it refers to practicing new behaviors in a real setting, as distinct from using imagery or imagined settings.

**Interoceptive**—Referring to stimuli or sensations that arise inside the body. In interoceptive exposure treatment, patients are asked to exercise or perform other actions that produce feared internal physical sensations.

**Modality**—The medical term for a method of treatment.

**Subjective units of distress (SUDS) scale**—A scale used by patients during exposure treatment to rate their levels of fear and anxiety with numbers from zero to 100.

**Virtual reality**—A realistic simulation of an environment, produced by a computer system using interactive hardware and software.

### Normal results

Progress in exposure therapy is often slow in the beginning, and occasional setbacks are to be expected. As patients gain experience with various anxiety-producing situations, their rates of progress may increase. While flooding can produce positive results more quickly than graded exposure, it is rarely used because of the high level of discomfort associated with it.

*See also* Agoraphobia; Alcohol and related disorders; Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Anxiety-reduction techniques; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Obsessive-compulsive disorder; Panic disorder; Panic disorder with agoraphobia; Panic disorder without agoraphobia; Phobias; Systematic desensitization.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Practice Guidelines for the Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders: Compendium 2000*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Richard, David C. S., and Dean Lauterbach, eds. *Handbook of Exposure Therapies*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 2006.

Rosqvist, Johan. *Exposure Treatments for Anxiety Disorders: A Practitioner's Guide to Concepts, Methods, and Evidence-Based Practice*. New York: Routledge, 2005.

VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

#### PERIODICALS

Bornas, Xavier, Miquel Tortella-Feliu, and Jordi Llabrés. "Do All Treatments Work for Flight Phobia? Computer-Assisted Exposure Versus a Brief Multicomponent Non-exposure Treatment." *Psychotherapy Research* 16.1 (Jan. 2006): 41–50.

Conklin, Cynthia A. "Environments as Cues to Smoke: Implications for Human Extinction-Based Research and Treatment." *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology* 14.1 (Feb. 2006): 12–9.

Cottraux, Jean. "Recent Developments in Research and Treatment for Social Phobia (Social Anxiety Disorder)." *Current Opinion in Psychiatry* 18.1 (Jan. 2005): 51–54.

Massad, Phillip M., and Timothy L. Hulsey. "Exposure Therapy Renewed." *Journal of Psychotherapy Integration* 16.4 (Dec. 2006): 417–28.

Thewissen, Roy, and others. "Renewal of Cue-Elicited Urge to Smoke: Implications for Cue Exposure Treatment." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 44.10 (Oct. 2006): 1441–49.

Vansteenwegen, Debora, and others. "Verbal, Behavioural and Physiological Assessment of the Generalization of Exposure-Based Fear Reduction in a Spider-Anxious Population." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 45.2 Feb. 2007): 291–300.

Wilhelm, Frank H., and others. "Mechanisms of Virtual Reality Exposure Therapy: The Role of the Behavioral Activation and Behavioral Inhibition Systems." *Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback* 30.3 (Sept. 2005): 271–84.

Joneis Thomas, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Expressive language disorder

### Definition

Expressive language disorder occurs when an individual has problems expressing him- or herself using spoken language.

### Description

Expressive language disorder is generally a childhood disorder. There are two types of expressive language disorder: the developmental type and the acquired type. Developmental expressive language disorder does not have a known cause and generally appears at the time a child is learning to talk. Acquired expressive language disorder is caused by damage to the **brain**. It occurs suddenly after events such as **stroke** or traumatic head injury. The acquired type can occur at any age.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

There is no clearly identified cause of developmental expressive language disorder. Research is ongoing to determine which biological or environmental factors may be the cause. Acquired expressive language disorder is caused by damage to the brain. Damage can be sustained during a stroke, or as the result of traumatic head injury, **seizures**, or other medical conditions. The way in which acquired expressive language disorder manifests itself in a specific person depends on which parts of the brain are injured and how badly they are damaged.

#### Symptoms

Expressive language disorder is characterized by a child having difficulty with self-expression using speech. The signs and symptoms vary drastically from child to child. The child does not have problems with the pronunciation of words, as occurs in **phonological disorder**. The child does have problems putting sentences together coherently, using proper grammar, recalling the appropriate word to use, or other similar problems. A child with expressive language disorder cannot communicate thoughts, needs, or wants at the same level or with the same complexity as peers and often has a smaller vocabulary compared to peers.

Children with expressive language disorder have the same ability to understand speech as their peers and have the same level of intelligence. Therefore, a child with this disorder may understand words but be unable to use the same words in sentences. The child may understand complex spoken sentences and be able to carry out intricate instructions, although unable to form complex sentences.

There are many different ways in which expressive language disorder can manifest itself. Some children do not properly use pronouns, or leave out functional words such as "is" or "the." Other children cannot recall words that they want to use in the sentence and substitute general words such as "thing" or "stuff." Some children cannot organize their sentences so that the sentences are easy to understand. These children do comprehend the material they are trying to express—they just cannot create the appropriate sentences with which to express their thoughts.

### Demographics

Expressive language disorder is a relatively common childhood disorder. Language delays occur in 10–15% of children under age three, and in 3–7% of school-age children. Expressive language disorder is more common in boys than in girls: studies suggest that developmental expressive language disorder occurs two to five times more often in boys. The developmental form of the disorder is far more common than the acquired type.

### Diagnosis

To diagnose expressive language disorder, children must be performing below their peers at tasks that require communication in the form of speech. This can be hard to determine because it must be shown that an individual understands the material but cannot express that comprehension. Therefore, nonverbal tests must be used in addition to tests that

require spoken answers. Hearing should also be evaluated because children who do not hear well may have problems putting together sentences, in a way that is similar to children with expressive language disorder. In children who are mildly hearing-impaired, the problem can often be resolved by using hearing aids to enhance the child's hearing. Also, children who speak a language other than the dominant language of their society (e.g., English in the United States) in the home should be tested in that language if possible. The child's ability to communicate in English may be the problem, not the child's ability to communicate in general.

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (known as the *DSM-IV-TR*), states that there are four general criteria for diagnosing expressive language disorder. The first is that the child communicates using speech at a level that is less developed than expected for his or her intelligence and ability to understand spoken language. This problem with communication using speech must create difficulties for the child in everyday life or in achieving goals. The child must understand what is being said at a level that is age-appropriate, or at a developmental level consistent with the child's. Otherwise the diagnoses should be **mixed receptive-expressive language disorder**. If the child has **mental retardation**, poor hearing, or other problems, the difficulties with speech must be greater than is generally associated with the handicaps of the child.

## Treatment

There are two types of treatment used for expressive language disorder. The first involves the child working one-on-one with a speech therapist on a regular schedule and practicing speech and **communication skills**. The second type of treatment involves the child's parents and teachers working together to incorporate spoken language that the child needs into everyday activities and play. Both of these kinds of treatment can be effective and are often used together.

## Prognosis

The developmental form of expressive language disorder generally has a good prognosis. Most children develop normal or nearly normal language skills by high school. In some cases, minor problems with expressive language may never resolve. The acquired type of expressive language disorder has a prognosis that depends on the nature and location of the brain injury. Some people get their language skills back over days or

months. For others it takes years, and some people never fully recover expressive language function.

## Prevention

There is no known way to prevent developmental expressive language disorder. Because acquired language disorder is caused by damage to the brain, anything that would help to prevent brain damage may help to prevent that type of the disorder. This can include such things ranging from lowering cholesterol to preventing stroke to wearing a bicycle helmet to prevent traumatic brain injury.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Roberts, Joanne E., Richard M. Rosenfeld, and Susan A. Zeisel. "Otitis Media and Speech and Language: A Meta-Analysis of Prospective Studies." *Pediatrics* 113 (2004): 238–48.  
Stein, Martin T., Steven Parker, James Coplan, and Heidi Feldman. "Expressive Language Delay in a Toddler." *Journal of Developmental & Behavioral Pediatrics* 22.2 (April 2001): 99.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- The American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. Telephone: (847) 434-4000. <[www.aap.org](http://www.aap.org)>.  
American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721. <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.  
American Speech-Language-Hearing Association. 10801 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852. Telephone: (800) 638-8355. <<http://www.asha.org>>.

### OTHER

- "Expressive Language Disorder, Developmental." National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. (2006) <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001544.htm>>.  
Simms, Mark D., MD, M.PH. "The Late-Talking Child: What Should the Pediatrician Do?" (2006) <<http://www.chw.org/display/PPF/DocID/35351/router.asp>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

# F

## Factitious disorder

### Definition

Factitious disorder (FD) is an umbrella category that covers a group of mental disturbances in which patients intentionally act physically or mentally ill without obvious benefits. According to one estimate, the unnecessary tests and waste of other medical resources caused by FD cost the United States \$40 million per year. The name *factitious* comes from a Latin word that means “artificial” or “contrived.”

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*) distinguishes FD from **malingering**, which is defined as pretending illness when the individual has a clear motive—usually to benefit economically or to avoid legal trouble.

FD is sometimes referred to as hospital **addiction**, pathomimia, or polysurgical addiction. Variant names for individuals with FD include hospital vagrants, hospital hoboes, peregrinating patients, problem patients, and professional patients.

### Description

Cases of FD are referenced in the medical literature as early as the second century A.D. by Galen, a famous Roman physician. The term factitious is derived from a book by an English physician named Gavin, published in 1843, entitled *On Feigned and Factitious Diseases*. The modern study of FD, however, began with a 1951 article in *Lancet* by a British **psychiatrist**, Richard Asher, who also coined the term Munchausen's syndrome to describe a chronic subtype of FD. The name Munchausen comes from an eighteenth-century German baron whose stories of his military exploits were published with substantial embellishments. In 1977, Gellengerg first reported a case of FD with primarily

psychological symptoms. FD was recognized as a formal diagnostic category by *DSM-III* in 1980.

*DSM-IV-TR* defines FD as having three major subtypes: FD with predominantly psychological signs and symptoms; FD with predominantly physical signs and symptoms; and FD with combined psychological and physical signs and symptoms. A fourth syndrome, known as Ganser syndrome, has been classified in the past as a form of FD, although *DSM-IV-TR* groups it with the **dissociative disorders**.

*DSM-IV-TR* specifies three criteria for FD:

- the patient is intentionally producing or pretending to have physical or psychological symptoms or signs of illness
- the patient's motivation is to assume the role of a sick person
- there are no external motives (as in malingering) that explain the behavior

### Psychological FD

FD with predominantly psychological signs and symptoms is listed by *DSM-IV-TR* as the first subcategory of the disorder. It is characterized by the individual feigning psychological symptoms.

Some researchers have suggested adding the following criteria for this subtype of FD:

- the symptoms are inconsistent, changing markedly from day to day and from one hospitalization to the next
- the changes are influenced by the environment (as when the patient feels observed by others) rather than by the treatment
- the patient's symptoms are unusual or unbelievable.
- the patient has a large number of symptoms that belong to several different psychiatric disorders



**Jennifer Bush relaxes with mother Kathy in 1996 photo; Kathy Bush was jailed for a rare form of child abuse called Munchausen Syndrome by Proxy. The disease is also known as factitious disorder.** (AP Images)

### Physical FD

FD with predominantly physical signs and symptoms is the most familiar to medical personnel. Chronic FD of this type is often referred to as Munchausen's syndrome. The most common ways of pretending illness are: presenting a factitious history (claiming to have had a seizure that never happened); combining a factitious history with external agents that mimic the symptoms of disease (adding blood from a finger prick to a urine sample); or combining a factitious history with maneuvers that produce a genuine medical condition (taking a psychoactive drug to produce psychiatric symptoms). In most cases, these patients sign out of the hospital when they are confronted by staff with proof of their pretending, usually in the form of a laboratory report. Many individuals with Munchausen's syndrome move from hospital to hospital, seeking treatment, and thus are known commonly as "hospital hoboos."

### FD with mixed symptoms

FD in this category is characterized by a mix of psychological and physical signs and symptoms.

### FD not otherwise specified

FD not otherwise specified is a category that *DSM-IV-TR* included to cover a bizarre subtype in which one person fabricates misleading information about another's health or induces actual symptoms of illness in the other person. First described in 1977 by an American pediatrician, this syndrome is known as Munchausen syndrome by proxy (MSBP) and almost always involves a parent (usually the mother) and child. MSBP is now understood as a form of child abuse involving premeditation rather than impulsive acting out. Many pediatricians in the United States believe that MSBP is underdiagnosed.

### Ganser syndrome

Ganser syndrome is a rare disorder (with about a 100 documented cases worldwide) that has been variously categorized as a FD or a dissociative disorder. It is named for a German psychiatrist named Sigbert Ganser, who first described it in 1898 from an examination of male prisoners who were thought to be psychotic. Ganser syndrome is used to describe dissociative symptoms and the pretending of **psychosis** that occur in forensic settings.

There are four symptoms regarded as diagnostic of Ganser syndrome:

- **Vorbeireden:** A German word that means "talking beside the point," it refers to a type of approximate answer to an examiner's questions that may appear silly but usually indicates that the patient understands the question. If the examiner asks how many legs a dog has, the patient may answer, "five."
- **clouding of consciousness:** The patient is drowsy or inattentive.
- **conversion symptoms:** These are physical symptoms produced by unconscious psychological issues rather than diagnosable medical causes. A common conversion symptom is temporary paralysis of an arm or leg.
- **hallucinations.**

### Virtual FD

Although virtual FD does not appear as a heading in any present diagnostic manual, it is a phenomenon that has appeared with increasing frequency with the rise of Internet usage. The growing use of the personal computer has affected presentations of FD in two important ways. First, computers allow people with sufficient technical skills to access medical records from hospital databases and to cut and paste changes into their own records to falsify their medical histories.

Second, computers allow people to enter Internet chat rooms for people with serious illnesses and pretend to be patients with that illness to obtain attention and sympathy. “Munchausen by Internet” can have devastating effects on chat groups, destroying trust when the hoax is exposed.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The causes of FD, whether physical or psychiatric, are difficult to determine because these patients are often lost to follow-up when they sign out of the hospital. **Magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) has detected abnormalities in the **brain** structure of some patients with chronic FD, suggesting that there may be biological or genetic factors associated with the disorder. Positron-emission tomography (PET) scans of patients diagnosed with Ganser syndrome have also revealed brain abnormalities. The results of EEG (**electroencephalography**) studies of these patients are nonspecific.

Several different psychodynamic explanations have been proposed for FD. These include:

- patients with FD are trying to reenact unresolved childhood issues with parents.
- they have underlying problems with masochism.
- they need to be the center of attention and feel important.
- they need to receive care and nurturance.
- they are bothered by feelings of vulnerability.
- deceiving a physician allows them to feel superior to an authority figure.

There are several known risk factors for FD, including:

- the presence of other mental or physical disorders in childhood that resulted in considerable medical attention.
- a history of significant past relationships with doctors, or of grudges against them.
- present diagnosis of borderline, narcissistic, or anti-social personality disorder.

### Symptoms

#### **SYMPTOMS OF FACTITIOUS DISORDER IN ADULTS OR ADOLESCENTS.** Reasons for suspecting FD include:

- the individual’s history is vague and inconsistent, or the individual has a long medical record with many admissions at different hospitals in different cities.

- the patient has an unusual knowledge of medical terminology or describes the illness as if reciting a textbook description of it.
- the patient is employed in a medical or hospital-related occupation.
- *pseudologia fantastica*, a Latin phrase for “uncontrollable lying,” is a condition in which the individual provides fantastic descriptions of events that never took place.
- the patient visits emergency rooms at times such as holidays or late Friday afternoons when experienced staff are not usually present and obtaining old medical records is difficult.
- the patient has few visitors even though claiming to be an important person.
- the patient is unusually accepting of surgery or uncomfortable diagnostic procedures.
- the patient’s behavior is controlling, attention-seeking, hostile, or disruptive.
- symptoms are present only when the patient is being watched.
- the patient is abusing substances, particularly prescription painkillers or tranquilizers.
- the course of the “illness” fluctuates, or complications develop with unusual speed.
- the patient has multiple surgical scars, a so-called “gridiron abdomen,” or evidence of self-inflicted wounds or injuries.

#### **SYMPTOMS OF MUNCHAUSEN SYNDROME BY PROXY.** Factors that suggest a diagnosis of MSBP include:

- the patient is a young child; the average age of patients with MSBP is 40 months.
- there is a history of long hospitalizations and frequent emergency room visits.
- siblings have histories of MSBP, failure to thrive, or death in early childhood from an unexplained illness.
- the mother is employed in a health care profession.
- the mother has been diagnosed with depression or histrionic or borderline personality disorder.
- there is significant dysfunction in the family.

## Demographics

The demographics of FD vary considerably across the different subtypes. Most individuals with the predominantly psychological subtype of FD are males with a history of hospitalizations beginning in late adolescence; few of these people, however, are older than 45. For non-chronic FD with predominantly physical symptoms, women outnumber men by a 3:1 ratio. Most of these

women are between 20 and 40 years of age. Individuals with Munchausen syndrome are mostly middle-aged males who are unmarried and estranged from their families. Mothers involved in MSBP are usually married, educated, middle-class women in their early 20s.

Little is known about the rates of various subcategories of FD in different racial or ethnic groups.

The prevalence of FD worldwide is not known. In the United States, some experts think that FD is underdiagnosed because hospital personnel often fail to spot the deceptions that are symptomatic of the disorder. In addition, people with this disorder tend to migrate from one medical facility to another, making tracking difficult. It is also not clear which subtypes of FD are most common. Most observers in developed countries agree, however, that the prevalence of factitious physical symptoms is much higher than the prevalence of factitious psychological symptoms. A large teaching hospital in Toronto reported that 10 of 1,288 patients referred to a consultation service had FD (0.8%). The National Institute for Allergy and Infectious Disease reported that 9.3% of patients referred for fevers of unknown origin had FD. A clinic in Australia found that 1.5% of infants brought in for serious illness by parents were cases of Munchausen syndrome by proxy.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosis of FD is usually based on a combination of laboratory findings and the gradual exclusion of other possible diagnoses. In the case of MSBP, the abuse is often discovered through covert video surveillance.

The most important differential diagnoses, when FD is suspected, are malingering, **conversion disorder**, or another genuine psychiatric disorder.

## Treatments

### Medications

Medications have not proved helpful in treating FD by itself, although they may be prescribed for symptoms of **anxiety** or depression if the individual also meets criteria for an anxiety or mood disorder.

### Psychotherapy

Knowledge of the comparative effectiveness of different psychotherapeutic approaches is limited by the fact that few people diagnosed with FD remain in long-term treatment. In many cases, however, the factitious disorder improves or resolves if the individual receives appropriate therapy for a comorbid psychiat-

ric disorder. Ganser syndrome usually resolves completely with supportive **psychotherapy**.

One approach that has proven helpful in confronting patients with an examiner's suspicions is a supportive manner that focuses on the individual's emotional distress as the source of the illness rather than on the anger or righteous indignation of hospital staff. Although most individuals with FD refuse psychiatric treatment when it is offered, those who accept it appear to benefit most from supportive rather than insight-oriented therapy.

**Family therapy** is often beneficial in helping family members understand the individual's behavior and need for attention.

### Legal considerations

In dealing with cases of Munchausen syndrome by proxy, physicians and hospital staff should seek appropriate legal advice. Although covert video surveillance of parents suspected of MSBP is highly effective (between 56% and 92%) in exposing the fraud, it may also be considered grounds for a lawsuit by the parents on argument of entrapment. Hospitals can usually satisfy legal concerns by posting signs stating that they use hidden video monitoring.

All 50 states presently require hospital staff and physicians to notify law enforcement authorities when MSBP is suspected, and to take steps to protect the child. Protection usually includes removing the child from the home, but it should also include an evaluation of the child's sibling(s) and long-term monitoring of the family. Criminal prosecution of one or both parents may also be necessary.

### Prognosis

The prognosis of FD varies by subcategory. Males diagnosed with the psychological subtype of FD are generally considered to have the worst prognosis. Self-mutilation and **suicide** attempts are common in these individuals. The prognosis for Munchausen's syndrome is also poor; the statistics for recurrent episodes and successful suicides range between 30% and 70%. These individuals do not usually respond to psychotherapy. The prognosis for non-chronic FD in women is variable; some of these patients accept treatment and do quite well. This subcategory of FD, however, often resolves itself after the patient turns 40. MSBP involves considerable risks for the child; 9–10% of these cases end in the child's death.

Ganser syndrome is the one subtype of FD with a good prognosis. Almost all patients recover within days of the diagnosis, especially if the **stress** that precipitated the syndrome is resolved.

## KEY TERMS

**Conversion disorder**—A type of somatoform disorder in which unconscious psychological conflicts or other factors take the form of physical symptoms that are produced unintentionally. Conversion disorder is part of the differential diagnosis of factitious disorder.

**Forensic**—Pertaining to courtroom procedure or evidence used in courts of law.

**Ganser syndrome**—A rare subtype of factitious disorder accompanied by dissociative symptoms. It is most often seen in male patients under severe stress in prison or courtroom settings.

**Gridiron abdomen**—An abdomen with a network of parallel scars from repeated surgical operations.

**Malingering**—Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

**Masochism**—A mental disorder in which people obtain sexual satisfaction through pain or humiliation inflicted by themselves or by another person. The term is sometimes used more generally to refer to a tendency to find pleasure in submissiveness or self-denial.

## Prevention

FD is not sufficiently well understood to allow for effective preventive strategies—apart from protection of child patients and their siblings in cases of MSBP.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Eisendrath, Stuart J., MD. "Psychiatric Disorders." *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment 2000*, edited by Lawrence M. Tierney, Jr., MD, and others. Stamford, CT: Appleton and Lange, 2000.

"Psychiatry in Medicine," Section 15, Chapter 185. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Andersen, H. S., D. Sestoft, and T. Lillebaek. "Ganser Syndrome After Solitary Confinement in Prison: A Short Review and a Case Report." *Norwegian Journal of Psychiatry* 55 (2001): 199–201.

Daly, Robert C., MPH, and Can M. Savasman, MD. "Ganser Syndrome." *eMedicine Journal* 3.1 (January 14, 2002).

Elwyn, Todd S., MD, and Iqbal Ahmed, MD. "Factitious Disorder." *eMedicine Journal* 2.11 (November 5, 2001).

Feldman, Marc D., and Charles V. Ford. "Liejacking." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 271 (May 25, 1994): 574.

Gordon, Leo A. "Munchausen Patients Have Found the Computer." *Medical Economics* 74 (September 8, 1997): 118–22.

Libow, Judith A., MD. "Child and Adolescent Illness Falsification." *Pediatrics* 105 (February 2000): 58–64.

McEwen, Donna R., BSN. "Recognizing Munchausen's Syndrome." *AORN Journal* 67 (February 1998): 206–11.

Paulk, David. "Munchausen Syndrome by Proxy." *Clinician Reviews* 11 (August 2001): 783–91.

Snyder, S. L., M. S. Buchsbaum, and R. C. Krishna. "Unusual Visual Symptoms and Ganser-Like State Due to Cerebral Injury: A Case Study Using (18) F-Deoxyglucose Positron Emission Tomography." *Behavioral Neurology* 11 (1998): 51–54.

Stephenson, Joan. "Patient Pretenders Weave Tangled 'Web' of Deceit." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 280 (October 21, 1998): 1297.

Stern, Theodore A. "How to Spot the Patient Who's Faking It." *Medical Economics Journal* 76 (May 24, 1999): 54–56.

Szoke, Andrei, MD, and Didier Boillet, MD. "Factitious Disorder with Psychological Signs and Symptoms: Case Reports and Proposals for Improving Diagnosis." *Psychiatry On-Line*, 1999.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

Munchausen by Proxy Survivors Network. P.O. Box 806177, Saint Clair Shores, MI 48080. <[www.mbpsnetwork.com](http://www.mbpsnetwork.com)>.

## OTHER

The Cleveland Clinic. "An Overview of Factitious Disorders." 2007. <<http://www.clevelandclinic.org/health-health-info/docs/2800/2820.asp?index=9832>>.

Elwyn, Todd S., and Iqbal Ahmed. "Factitious Disorder." 2006. <<http://www.emedicine.com/med/topic3125.htm>>.

Feldman, Marc, MD. "Dr. Marc Feldman's Munchausen Syndrome, Malingering, Factitious Disorder, and Munchausen by Proxy Page." <<http://www.munchausen.com>>.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

False belief of pregnancy see **Pseudocyesis**

## Family education

### Definition

Family education or “psychoeducation” is the ongoing process of educating family members about a serious mental illness in order to improve their coping skills and their ability to help a relative affected by the illness.

### Purpose

When someone is diagnosed with a chronic illness, such as diabetes or heart disease, efforts are typically made by his or her doctor not only to educate the individual directly affected by the illness, but to educate and involve his/her family in treatment and care. Historically, this has not been the case with severe mental illnesses such as **schizophrenia**, major **depression**, **bipolar disorder**, or **schizoaffective disorder**.

Historically, most mental health professionals did not educate families about what to expect or how to care for their loved one. In fact, for much of the twentieth century it was believed that mental illness was caused by overly strict or overly permissive parenting styles, and families were unfairly blamed for causing these disorders. Mothers were labeled “schizophrenogenic” and even well-meaning clinicians tried to keep them and other family members at a distance. Bateson’s “double-bind” theory of the time suggested that contradictory messages and communications by parents were the root cause of the problem. Because of these ideas and the **stigma** associated with mental illness, families felt isolated and alone, with few resources to assist them. After **diagnosis**, the only recourse for most families was to go to public libraries to read and learn as much as they could on their own.

Over the last 20 years, however, advances in genetics, neuroscience, and imaging techniques have provided new evidence that severe mental illnesses are neurobiological in origin. With this scientific knowledge has come greater awareness and understanding that these are “no-fault” **brain** illnesses, and that neither families nor patients should be blamed. Rather, they both should receive the necessary information and support to help them better cope with these complex disorders.

### Description

In the United States and elsewhere, the large majority of individuals with severe mental illness live with their families and depend on them for housing, financial assistance, advocacy, and support. For this

reason families require knowledge and skills to actively help their relative benefit from treatment, avoid **relapse**, and achieve recovery. Specifically, family caregivers require information about the illness and its symptoms, how to better communicate with their family member and professionals, the pros and cons of different treatment options, medications and their therapeutic uses and their adverse side effects, signs of relapse, availability of community services and supports, how to access benefits and entitlements, and how to handle crises or bizarre and troubling behaviors. Because living with an individual with a serious mental disorder can be very stressful, family education must also focus on teaching families about the importance of taking care of themselves.

The National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI) is an umbrella organization of more than 1,100 local support and advocacy groups in 50 states. The organization comprises families and individuals affected by serious mental illness who come together for family education, mutual support, and advocacy. Through conferences, **support groups**, and newsletters, family members have opportunities to educate one another and exchange experiences. NAMI has also made great inroads in teaching mental health professionals about the importance of educating family members and involving them in plans for the patient’s treatment and rehabilitation. On a more formal level, NAMI has sponsored Family to Family, a 12-week education course that has been attended by 50,000 family members in more than 42 states. Taught by family volunteers, this is the first peer program in family education in the United States.

Family education is slowly becoming an integral part of treatment, as the practice guidelines for professionals have begun to recommend its use. Families are also utilizing a new generation of books about mental illness—some written by professionals, and others written by, and for, family members. Families are also increasingly using the Internet to learn more about mental disorders.

### Family education for parents of children and adolescents

Because major mental illnesses tend to occur in adolescence or early adulthood, most family interventions focus on parents of adult children. However, any parent of a younger child with an emotional or behavioral disturbance can testify to the extraordinary challenges involved in coordinating care. For this reason, more public and private agencies are beginning to provide training, information, education, and financial

assistance to family members of children and adolescents with emotional disturbances. The results of research about family education interventions for parents of children with serious emotional disturbances are just beginning to emerge. Some research suggests that family participation improves service delivery and patient outcomes for this group. In a randomized controlled trial of the training of 200 parents who did or did not receive training, while there were no significant effects on child mental health status, those family members who were trained showed significant knowledge enhancement and increased effectiveness.

## Results

Recent research has provided evidence that family education and support leads to improved patient outcomes. For example, **family psychoeducation** provided by mental health professionals has such a compelling research base that it is considered a practice based on the findings of real-life studies of family education and support.

Another type of therapy discussed in the scientific literature has been used in China and India. The “family consultation” model uses individualized, private consultations between the family and a trained consultant to assist the family on an as-needed basis.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Torrey, E. Fuller. *Surviving Schizophrenia: A Manual for Families, Consumers and Providers*, 4th ed. New York: HarperCollins, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Archie, Suzanne, Jane Hamilton Wilson, Kevin Woodward, Heather Hobbs, Shelley Osborne, and Jean McNiven. “Psychotic Disorders Clinic and First-Episode Psychosis: A Program Evaluation.” *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry* 50.1 (Jan. 2005): 46–51.
- Dunbar, Sandra B., Patricia C. Clark, Christi Deaton, Andrew L. Smith, Anindya K. De, and Marian C. O’Brien. “Family Education and Support Interventions in Heart Failure. A Pilot Study.” *Nursing Research* 54.3 (May–June 2005): 158–66.
- Edelman, Perry, Daniel Kuhn, Bradley R. Fulton, and Gregory A. Kyrouac. “Information and Service Needs of Persons With Alzheimer’s Disease and Their Family Caregivers Living in Rural Communities.” *American Journal of Alzheimer’s Disease and Other Dementias* 21.4 (Aug.–Sept. 2006): 226–33.
- Murray-Swank, Aaron B., Alicia Lucksted, Deborah R. Medoff, Ye Yang, Karen Wohlheiter, and Lisa B. Dixon. “Religiosity, Psychosocial Adjustment, and Subjective Burden of Persons Who Care for Those With

Mental Illness.” *Psychiatric Services* 57.3 (Mar. 2006): 361–65.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300 Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (800) 950-NAMI (6264) or (703) 524-7600. Web site: <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Family Caregivers Association. 10400 Connecticut Avenue, #500, Kensington, MD 20895-3944. Telephone: (800) 896-3650 Fax: (301) 942-2302. Web site: <<http://www.nfcacares.org>>.
- National Mental Health Association (NMHA). 1021 Prince Street Alexandria, VA 22314-2971. Telephone: (800) 969-6642 or (703) 684-7722. Web site: <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

## OTHER

- National Institute of Mental Health. “Schizophrenia.” <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/schizop.htm>>.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. *Mental Health: A Report of the Surgeon General*. Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 1999. Available at: <<http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/mentalhealth/home.html>>.

Irene S. Levine, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Family psychoeducation

### Definition

Family psychoeducation is a method for training families to work together with mental health professionals as part of a team to help family members with psychiatric disorders recover and maintain psychological health. Family psychoeducation has been shown to improve patient outcomes for people with **schizophrenia**, bipolar disorders, **depression**, and other major mental illnesses.

### Purpose

The goal of family psychoeducation is to prevent patients with severe mental illnesses from relapsing, and to promote their reentry into their home communities, with particular regard for their social and occupational functioning. To achieve this goal, family psychoeducation programs seek to provide families with the information they need about mental illness and give them the coping skills to deal with their family members’ psychiatric disorders.

An associated goal of family psychoeducation is to provide support for the patients’ families. Families

experience many burdens (financial, social, and psychological) in serving as long-term caregivers for their loved ones. Although the primary focus of family psychoeducation groups is improved patient outcomes, an essential intermediate goal is to promote the well-being of the family.

### Description

There are several different models of family psychoeducation. Although they include many common elements, these different models are: single- and multiple-family groups; mixed groups that include family members and consumers (patients); groups of varying duration ranging from nine months to more than five years; and groups that focus on patients and families at different phases in the illness. Family psychoeducation programs have been studied extensively and refined by a number of researchers, including Drs. Ian Falloon, Gerald Hogarty, William McFarlane, and Lisa Dixon.

The evidence suggests that multifamily groups, which bring together several patients and their families, lead to better outcomes than single-family psychoeducation groups. The origins of multiple-family **group therapy** go back as far as 1960, when these groups were first assembled to solve ward-management problems in a psychiatric hospital. Lasting a minimum of nine months, the programs provided their participants with information about mental illness, its symptoms and treatment; medication and its side effects; how to communicate with a person with mental illness; and techniques for **crisis intervention** and mutual problem solving.

Dr. Dixon recently outlined the characteristics of successful family psychoeducation programs. They include:

- the programs consider schizophrenia an illness like any other.
- they are led by mental health professionals.
- they are part of a total treatment plan that includes medication.
- families are treated as partners rather than patients.
- the programs focus primarily on patient outcomes, and secondarily on family outcomes.
- the programs differ from traditional family therapy in that they do not treat families as part of the problem; they see them as part of the solution.

It is also important that **family education** programs take into account the phase of the patient's illness, the life cycle of both the patient and the family, and the family's cultural context.

### KEY TERMS

**Burden**—First described by M. B. Treudley in 1946, this term generally refers to the consequences for the family of close contact with people who have severe mentally illnesses.

**Meta-analysis**—The statistical analysis of a large collection of analyses from individual studies for the purpose of integrating the findings.

### Results

A large body of evidence supports the use of family psychoeducation as a "best practice" for young adults with schizophrenia and their families. Because of this compelling evidence, researchers at the University of Maryland, as part of the Schizophrenia Patient Outcomes Research Team (PORT), identified family psychoeducation as an evidence-based practice that should be offered to all families. This and other research studies have shown reduced rates of **relapse** and lower rates of **hospitalization** among patients and families involved in these programs. Other outcomes included increased rates of patient participation in **vocational rehabilitation** programs and employment, decreased costs of care, and improved well-being of family members.

A meta-analysis of 16 individual studies found that family interventions of fewer than 10 sessions have no effect on the reduction of family burden. There are also several controlled studies that support the effectiveness of single- and multiple-family interventions for **bipolar disorder**, major depression, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, **anorexia nervosa**, and **borderline personality disorder**. Studies of family psychoeducation have been conducted with a Hispanic population in Los Angeles, California, and outside the United States in China, Norway, and the Netherlands.

Unfortunately, putting family psychoeducation into effect in clinical settings has not kept pace with research. The PORT study found that only 31% of patients studied reported that their families received information about their illness. One recent strategy to expand these programs includes integrating family psychoeducation into assertive community treatment (ACT) programs.

*See also* Case management.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Corcoran, Jacqueline. *Clinical Applications of Evidence-Based Family Interventions*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Lefley, Harriet P., and Dale L. Johnson, eds. *Family Interventions in Mental Illness: International Perspectives*. Westport, CT: Praeger Publishers, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

- Klaus, Nicole, and Mary A. Fristad. "Family Psychoeducation as a Valuable Adjunctive Intervention for Children With Bipolar Disorder." *Directions in Psychiatry* 25.3 (2005): 217–30.
- Lopez, Molly A., and others. "A Psychoeducational Program for Children with ADHD or Depression and their Families: Results from the CMAP Feasibility Study." *Community Mental Health Journal* 41.1 (Feb. 2005): 51–66.
- Mino, Yoshio, and others. "Medical Cost Analysis of Family Psychoeducation for Schizophrenia." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 61.1 (Feb. 2007): 20–24.
- Motlova, Lucie, and others. "Relapse Prevention in Schizophrenia: Does Group Family Psychoeducation Matter? One-Year Prospective Follow-Up Field Study." *International Journal of Psychiatry in Clinical Practice* 10.1 (Mar. 2006): 38–44.
- Sanford, Mark, and others. "A Pilot Study of Adjunctive Family Psychoeducation in Adolescent Major Depression: Feasibility and Treatment Effect." *Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.4 (Apr. 2006): 386–95.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (800) 950-NAMI (6264) or (703) 524-7600. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Mental Health Association (NMHA). 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2971. Telephone: (800) 969-6642 or (703) 684-7722. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

#### OTHER

- National Institute of Mental Health. "Schizophrenia". <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/schizop.htm>>.

Irene S. Levine, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Family therapy

### Definition

Family therapy is a form of **psychotherapy** that involves all the members of a nuclear or extended family. The purpose of family therapy is to improve relationships between family members and improve behavior patterns of the family as a whole or subgroups within the family. Family therapy may be conducted by a pair of therapists—often a man and a woman—to treat gender-related issues or serve as

role models for family members. Although some types of family therapy are based on behavioral or psychodynamic principles, the most widespread form is based on family systems theory, an approach that regards the entire family as the unit of treatment, and emphasizes such factors as relationships and communication patterns rather than traits or symptoms in individual members.

### History

Family therapy is a relatively recent development in psychotherapy. It began shortly after World War II, when doctors who were treating patients with **schizophrenia** noticed that the patients' families communicated in disturbed ways. The doctors also found that patients' symptoms rose or fell according to the level of tension between their parents. These observations led to considering a family as an organism (or system) with its own internal rules, patterns of functioning, and tendency to resist change. When the therapists began to treat the families as whole units instead of focusing solely on the hospitalized member, they found that in many cases the family member with schizophrenia improved. (This does not mean that schizophrenia is caused by family problems, although they may aggravate its symptoms.) This approach was then applied to families with problems other than schizophrenia. Family therapy is becoming an increasingly common form of treatment as changes in American society are reflected in family structures; it is also helpful when a child or other family member develops a serious physical illness.

### Purpose

Family therapy is often recommended when:

- a family member has schizophrenia or another severe psychosis; the goal in these cases is to help other family members understand the disorder and adjust to the psychological changes that may be occurring in the patient.
- problems cross generational boundaries, such as when parents share a home with grandparents, or children are being raised by grandparents.
- families deviate from social norms (unmarried parents, gay couples rearing children, etc.). These families may or may not have internal problems, but could be troubled by societal attitudes.
- members come from mixed racial, cultural, or religious backgrounds.
- one member is being scapegoated, or their treatment in individual therapy is being undermined.

## VIRGINIA SATIR (1916–1988)

For the techniques she created to treat troubled families, Virginia Satir was known worldwide as a pioneer in the development of family therapy. After earning a bachelor's degree from Wisconsin State University in 1936, Satir taught for six years at schools in Wisconsin, Michigan, and Louisiana. She became interested in the relationship between dysfunctional individuals and their families, and, deciding to specialize in family analysis, went back to school to earn a master's degree in 1948 at the University of Chicago. Satir subsequently worked as a therapist and social worker at mental hospitals and public welfare programs and conducted more than four hundred workshops for the government, hospitals, and universities throughout the United States. In addition, Satir helped found the Mental Research Institute in 1959 and, twenty years later, established the International Human Learning Resource Network. A leader in developing the concept of self-worth, Satir conveyed her psychological philosophies in such books as *Conjoint Family Therapy: A Guide to Theory and Technique, Peoplemaking, Self Esteem, Helping Families to Change, and Making Contact*.

- the identified patient's problems seem inextricably tied to problems with other family members.
- a blended (i.e. step-) family is having adjustment difficulties.

### Precautions

Families not considered suitable candidates for family therapy include those in which:

- one or both parents is psychotic or has been diagnosed with antisocial or paranoid personality disorder.
- cultural or religious values are opposed to, or suspicious of, psychotherapy.
- family members cannot participate in treatment sessions because of illness or other physical limitations.
- individuals have very rigid personality structures and might be at risk for an emotional or psychological crisis.
- members cannot or will not be able to meet regularly for treatment.
- the family is unstable or on the verge of breakup.

Intensive family therapy may be difficult for family members with psychoses.

### Description

Family therapy tends to be short-term, usually several months in length, and is aimed at resolving

specific problems such as eating disorders, difficulties with school, or adjustments to bereavement or geographical relocation. It is not normally used for long-term or intensive restructuring of families with severe dysfunctions.

In therapy sessions, all members of the family and both therapists (if there is more than one) are present. The therapists try to analyze communication and interaction between all members of the family; they do not side with specific members, although they may make occasional comments to help members become more conscious of patterns previously taken for granted. Therapists who work as a team also model new behaviors through their interactions with each other.

Family therapy is based on systems theory, which maintains that the family is a living organism that is more than the sum of its individual members and evaluates family members in terms of their position or role within the system. Problems are treated by changing the way the system works rather than trying to "fix" a specific member.

Family systems theory is based on several major concepts:

- the identified patient: The identified patient (IP) is the family member with the symptom that has brought the family into treatment. The concept of the IP is used to keep the family from scapegoating the IPs or using them as a way of avoiding problems in the rest of the system.
- homeostasis: This concept presumes that the family system tends to resist change and seeks to maintain its customary organization and functioning over time. The family therapist can use homeostasis to explain why a certain family symptom has surfaced at a given time, why a specific member has become the IP, and what is likely to happen when the family begins to change.
- the extended family field: The extended family field is the nuclear family plus the network of grandparents and other members of the extended family. This concept is used to explain the intergenerational transmission of attitudes, problems, behaviors, and other issues.
- differentiation: Differentiation refers to each family member's ability to maintain a sense of self while remaining emotionally connected to the family; this is the mark of a healthy family.
- triangular relationship: Family systems theory maintains that emotional difficulties in families are usually triangular—whenever any two people have problems with each other, they will "triangle in" a third member to stabilize their own relationship.

These triangles usually interlock in a way that maintains homeostasis. Common family triangles include a child and the parents; two children and one parent; a parent, a child, and a grandparent; three siblings; or, husband, wife, and an in-law.

## Preparation

Families are often referred to a specialist in family therapy by a pediatrician or other primary care provider. (Some estimates suggest that as many as 50% of pediatric office visits concern developmental problems in children that are affecting their families.) Physicians may use symptom checklists or psychological screeners to assess a family's need for therapy.

Family therapists can be psychiatrists, clinical psychologists, or other professionals certified by a specialty board in marriage and family therapy. They will usually evaluate a family for treatment by scheduling a series of interviews with members of the immediate family, including young children, as well as significant or symptomatic members of the extended family. This allows the therapists to learn how each family member sees the problem and provides a first impression of the family's functioning. Therapists typically evaluate the level and types of emotions expressed, patterns of dominance and submission, roles played by family members, communication styles, and the existence of emotional triangles. They also note whether these patterns are rigid or relatively flexible.

Preparation also usually includes creating a genogram, a diagram that depicts significant people and events in the family's history. Genograms include annotations about the medical history and major personality traits of each member and help uncover intergenerational patterns of behavior, marriage choices, family alliances and conflicts, the existence of family secrets, and other information that sheds light on the family's present situation.

## Risks

There are no major risks involved in receiving family therapy, especially if family members seek therapy with honesty, openness, and a willingness to change. Changes that result from the therapy may be seen as "risks"—the possible unsettling of rigid personality defenses in individuals, or the unsettling of couple relationships that had been fragile before the beginning of therapy, for example.

## Normal results

The goal of therapy is the identification and resolution of the problem that is causing the family's unhealthy interactions. Results vary, but in good cir-

## KEY TERMS

**Blended family**—A family formed by the remarriage of a divorced or widowed parent. It includes a new husband and wife, plus some or all of their children from previous marriages.

**Differentiation**—The ability to retain one's identity within a family system while maintaining emotional connections with the other members.

**Extended family field**—A person's family of origin plus grandparents, in-laws, and other relatives.

**Family systems theory**—An approach to treatment that emphasizes the interdependency of family members rather than focusing on individuals in isolation from the family. This theory underlies the most influential forms of contemporary family therapy.

**Genogram**—A family tree diagram that represents the names, birth order, sex, and relationships of the members of a family. Therapists use genograms to detect recurrent patterns in the family history and to help the members understand their problems.

**Homeostasis**—The tendency of a family system to maintain internal stability and resist change.

**Identified patient (IP)**—The family member whose symptom has emerged or is most obvious.

**Nuclear family**—The basic family unit, consisting of father, mother, and their biological children.

**Scapegoating**—The emergence of behavioral problems in one family member, usually the identified patient, who is often punished for problems within the entire family.

**Triangling**—A process in which two family members diminish the tension between them by drawing in a third member.

cumstances they include greater insight, increased differentiation of individual family members, improved communication within the family, and loosening of previously automatic behavior patterns.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Gladding, Samuel T. *Family Therapy: History, Theory, and Practice*. 4th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2006.

Goldenberg, Herbert, and Irene Goldenberg. *Family Therapy: An Overview*. Belmont, CA: Brooks/Cole, 2007.

McGoldrick, Monica, Joe Giordano, and Nydia Garcia-Pretto, eds. *Ethnicity and Family Therapy*. 3rd ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2005.

- Minuchin, Salvador, and H. Charles Fishman. *Family Therapy Techniques*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2004.
- Nichols, Michael P., and Richard C. Schwartz. *Family Therapy: Concepts and Methods*. 7th ed. Boston: Allyn & Bacon, 2005.
- Nichols, Michael P., and Richard C. Schwartz. *Essentials of Family Therapy*. 3rd ed. Boston: Allyn & Bacon, 2006.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.
- PERIODICALS**
- Betz, Gabrielle, and Jill M. Thorngren. "Ambiguous Loss and the Family Grieving Process." *Family Journal: Counseling and Therapy for Couples and Families* 14.4 (Oct. 2006): 359–65.
- Hogue, Aaron, and others. "Treatment Techniques and Outcomes in Multidimensional Family Therapy for Adolescent Behavior Problems." *Journal of Family Psychology* 20.4 (Dec. 2006): 535–43.
- Hunter, Sally V. "Understanding the Complexity of Child Sexual Abuse: A Review of the Literature with Implications for Family Counseling." *Family Journal: Counseling and Therapy for Couples and Families* 14.4 (Oct. 2006): 349–58.
- Lemmens, Gilbert, and others. "Family Discussion Group Therapy for Major Depression: A Brief Systemic Multi-Family Group Intervention for Hospitalized Patients and Their Family Members." *Journal of Family Therapy* 29.1 (Feb. 2007): 49–68.
- Lock, James, and others. "Is Family Therapy Useful for Treating Children With Anorexia Nervosa? Results of a Case Series." *Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.11 (Nov. 2006): 1323–28.
- Miklowitz, David J., and Dawn O. Taylor. "Family-Focused Treatment of the Suicidal Bipolar Patient." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.5 part 2 (Oct. 2006): 640–51.
- St. George, Sally, and Dan Wulff. "A Postmodern Approach to Teaching Family Therapy as Community Practice." *Journal of Systemic Therapies* 25.4 (Winter 2006): 73–83.
- Schweitzer, Jochen, and others. "Training Psychiatric Teams to Do Family Systems Acute Psychiatry." *Journal of Family Therapy* 29.1 (Feb. 2007): 3–20.
- Trepal, Heather C., and Kelly L. Wester. "Self-Injury and Postvention: Responding to the Family in Crisis." *Family Journal: Counseling and Therapy for Couples and Families* 14.4 (Oct. 2006): 342–48.

Rebecca J. Frey, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Fatigue

### Introduction

Fatigue may be defined as a subjective state in which one feels tired or exhausted, and in which the capacity for normal work or activity is reduced. There

is, however, no commonly accepted definition of fatigue when it is considered in the context of health and illness. This lack of definition results from the fact that a person's experience of fatigue depends on a variety of factors. These factors include culture, personality, the physical environment (light, noise, vibration), availability of social support through networks of family members and friends, the nature of a particular fatiguing disease or disorder, and the type and duration of work or exercise. For example, the experience of fatigue associated with disease will be different for someone who is clinically depressed, socially isolated, and out of shape compared to another person who is not depressed, has many friends, and is aerobically fit.

Fatigue is sometimes characterized as normal or abnormal. For example, the feeling of tiredness or even exhaustion after exercising is a normal response and is relieved by resting; many people report that the experience of ordinary tiredness after exercise is pleasant. Moreover, this type of fatigue is called "acute" because the onset is sudden and the desired activity level returns after resting. On the other hand, there is a kind of fatigue that is not perceived as ordinary and that may develop insidiously over time. This type of fatigue is unpleasant or seriously distressing and is not resolved by rest. Fatigue of this nature is abnormal and referred to as "chronic."

Some researchers regard fatigue as a defense mechanism that promotes the effective regulation of energy expenditures. According to this theory, when people feel tired, they take steps to avoid further **stress** (physical or emotional) by resting or by avoiding the stressor. They are then conserving energy. Because chronic fatigue is not normal, however, it is an important symptom of some mental disorders, a variety of physical diseases with known etiologies (causes), and some medical conditions that have no biological markers although they are recognizable syndromes (patterns of symptoms and signs).

Fatigue is sometimes described as being primary or secondary. Primary fatigue is a symptom of a disease or mental disorder and may be part of a cluster of such symptoms as pain, fever, or nausea. As the disease or disorder progresses, however, the fatigue may be intensified by the patient's worsening condition, other disease symptoms, or surgical or medical treatment. This subsequent fatigue is called secondary.

### Risk factors

Fatigue is a common experience. It is one of the top ten symptoms that people mention when they visit the doctor. Some people, however, are at higher risk for

developing fatigue. For example, the risk for women is about 1.5 times the risk for men, and the risk for people who do not exercise is twice that of active people. Some researchers question whether women really are at higher risk: they are more likely than men to go to the doctor with health problems, and men are less likely to admit feeling fatigued. Other risk factors include **obesity**, smoking, use of alcohol, high stress levels, **depression**, **anxiety**, and low blood pressure. Having low blood pressure is usually considered desirable in the United States but is regarded as a treatable condition in other countries. Low blood pressure or postural hypotension (sudden lowering of blood pressure caused by standing up) may cause fatigue, dizziness, or fainting.

## Major sources of chronic fatigue

### Disease

There are many diseases and disorders in which fatigue is a major symptom. These include cancer, cardiovascular disease, emphysema, multiple sclerosis, rheumatic arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, HIV/AIDS, infectious mononucleosis, chronic fatigue syndrome, and fibromyalgia. The reasons for the fatigue, however, vary according to the organ system or body function affected by the disease. Physical reasons for fatigue include:

- circulatory and respiratory impairment. When the patient's breathing and blood circulation are impaired or when the patient has anemia (low levels of red blood cells), body tissues do not receive as much oxygen and energy. Hence, the patient experiences a general sense of fatigue. Fatigue is also an important warning sign of heart trouble because it precedes 30–55% of myocardial infarctions (heart attacks) and sudden cardiac deaths.
- infection. Microorganisms that disturb body metabolism and produce toxic wastes cause disease and lead to fatigue. Fatigue is an early primary symptom of chronic, nonlocalized infections found in such diseases as AIDS, Lyme disease, and tuberculosis.
- nutritional disorders or imbalances. Malnutrition is a disorder that promotes disease. It is caused by insufficient intake of important nutrients, vitamins, and minerals; by problems with absorption of food through the digestive system; or by inadequate calorie consumption. Protein-energy malnutrition (PEM) occurs when people do not consume enough protein or calories; this condition leads to wasting of muscles and commonly occurs in developing countries. In particular, young children who are starving are at risk of PEM, as are people recovering from major illness. In general, malnutrition damages the body's
- immune function and encourages disease and fatigue. Taking in too many calories for the body's needs, on the other hand, results in obesity, which is a predictor of many diseases related to fatigue.
- dehydration. Dehydration results from water and sodium imbalances in body tissues. The loss of total body water and sodium may be caused by diarrhea, vomiting, bed rest, exposure to heat, or exercise. Dehydration contributes to muscle weakness and mental confusion; it is a common and overlooked source of fatigue. Once fatigued, people are less likely to consume enough fluids and nutrients, worsening the fatigue and confusion.
- deconditioning. This term refers to generalized organ system deterioration resulting from bed rest and lack of exercise. In the 1950s and 1970s, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) studied the effects of bed rest on healthy athletes. The researchers found that deconditioning set in quite rapidly (within 24 hours) and led to depression and weakness. Even mild exercise can counteract deconditioning and has become an important means of minimizing depression and fatigue resulting from disease and hospitalization.
- pain. When pain is severe enough, it may disrupt sleep and lead to the development of sleep disorders such as insomnia or hypersomnia. Insomnia is the term for having difficulty falling and/or staying asleep. Hypersomnia refers to excessive sleeping. In general, disrupted sleep is not restorative; people wake up feeling tired, and as a result their pain is worsened and they may become depressed. Furthermore, pain may interfere with movement or lead to too much bed rest, which results in deconditioning. Sometimes pain leads to social isolation because the person cannot cope with the physical effort involved in maintaining social relationships, or because family members are unsympathetic or resentful of the ill or injured person's reduced capacity for work or participation in family life. All of these factors worsen pain, contributing to further sleep disruption, fatigue, and depression.
- stress. When someone experiences ongoing pain and stress, organ systems and functional processes eventually break down. These include cardiovascular, digestive, and respiratory systems, as well as the efficient elimination of body wastes. According to the American Psychiatric Association, various chronic diseases are related to stress, including rheumatoid arthritis, cardiac angina, and secondary dysmenorrhea (painful menstruation).
- sleep disorders. There are a variety of sleep disorders that cause fatigue, including insomnia, hypersomnia, sleep apnea, and restless legs syndrome. For example, hypersomnia may be the result of brain abnormalities

caused by viral infections. Researchers studying the aftermath of infectious mononucleosis proposed that exposure to viral infections might change brain function with the effect of minimizing restorative sleep; hence, some people developed hypersomnia. Another common disorder is sleep apnea, in which the patient's breathing stops for at least ten seconds, usually more than 20 times per hour. Snoring is common. People may experience choking and then wake up gasping for air; they may develop daytime hypersomnia to compensate. Sleep apnea is associated with aging, weight gain, and depression. It is also a risk factor for stroke and myocardial infarctions. Restless legs syndrome is a condition in which very uncomfortable sensations in the patient's legs cause them to move and wake up from sleep, or keep them from falling asleep. All of these disorders reduce the quality of a person's sleep and are associated with fatigue.

#### *Fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome*

Fibromyalgia (also known as myofascial syndrome or fibrositis) is a syndrome characterized by pain and achiness in muscles, tendons, and ligaments. There are 18 locations on the body where patients typically feel sore. These locations include areas on the lower back and along the spine, neck, and thighs. A diagnostic criterion for fibromyalgia (FM) is that at least 11 of the 18 sites are painful. In addition to pain, people with FM may experience sleep disorders, fatigue, anxiety, and irritable bowel syndrome. Experts have suggested that FM and chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) are manifestations of the same pain and fatigue syndrome. The care that patients receive for FM or CFS depends in large measure on whether they were referred to a rheumatologist (a doctor who specializes in treating diseases of the joints and muscles), neurologist, or **psychiatrist**.

A few doctors may still not accept CFS (also known as myalgic encephalomyelitis in Great Britain) as a legitimate medical problem. This refusal is stigmatizing and distressing to the person who must cope with disabling pain and fatigue. It is not uncommon for people with CFS to see a number of different physicians before finding one who is willing to diagnose CFS. Nevertheless, major health agencies, such as the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States, have studied the syndrome. As a result, the CDC has developed a case definition for CFS that lists major and minor criteria for **diagnosis**. The major criteria of CFS include the presence of chronic and persistent fatigue for at least six months; fatigue that does not improve with rest; and fatigue that causes significant interference with the patient's daily activities. There are also eight other characteristic symp-

toms that include fever, sore throat, swollen lymph nodes, myalgia (muscle pain), difficulty with a level of physical exercise that the patient had performed easily before the illness, sleep disturbances, and headaches. Additionally, people often have difficulty concentrating and remembering information, and they experience extreme frustration and depression as a result of the limitations imposed by CFS. Full recovery from CFS is rare, occurring in only 5% to 10% of cases, although a 2005 report found that 8% to 63% of patients may experience improvement.

#### *Psychological disorders*

While fatigue may be caused by many organic diseases and medical conditions, it is a chief complaint for several mental disorders, including **generalized anxiety disorder** and clinical depression. Moreover, mental disorders may coexist with physical disease. When there is considerable symptom overlap, the differential diagnosis of fatigue is especially difficult.

**GENERALIZED ANXIETY DISORDER.** People are diagnosed as having generalized anxiety disorder (GAD) if they experience overwhelming worry or apprehension that persists, usually daily, for at least six months, and if they also experience some of the following symptoms: unusual tiredness, restlessness and irritability, problems with concentration, muscle tension, and disrupted sleep. Stressful life events such as divorce, unemployment, illness, or being the victim of a violent crime are associated with GAD, as is a history of psychiatric problems. Some evidence suggests that women who have been exposed to danger are at risk of developing GAD; women who suffer loss are at risk of developing depression; and women who experience danger and loss are at risk of developing a mix of both GAD and depression.

While the symptoms of CFS and GAD overlap, the disorders have different primary complaints. Patients with CFS complain primarily of tiredness, whereas people with GAD describe being excessively worried. In general, some researchers believe that anxiety contributes to fatigue by disrupting rest and restorative sleep.

**DEPRESSION.** In the fourth edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV)*, the presence of depressed mood or sadness, or loss of pleasure in life, is an important diagnostic criterion for depression. Daily fatigue, lack of energy, insomnia, and hypersomnia are indicators of a depressed mood. The symptoms of depression overlap with those of CFS; for example, some researchers report that 89% of people with depression are fatigued, as compared to 86–100%

of people with CFS. The experience of fatigue, however, seems to be more disabling with CFS than with depression. Another difference between CFS and depression concerns the onset of the disorder. Most patients with CFS experience a sudden or acute onset, whereas depression may develop over a period of weeks or months. Also, while both types of patients experience sleep disorders, CFS patients tend to have difficulty falling asleep, whereas depressed patients tend to wake early in the morning. It is possible for CFS and depression to be comorbidities.

Some researchers believe that there is a link between depression, fatigue, and exposure to too much REM sleep. There are five distinct phases in human sleep. The first two are characterized by light sleep; the second two by a deep restorative sleep called slow-wave sleep; and the last by rapid eye movement or REM sleep. Most dreams occur during REM sleep. Throughout the night, the intervals of REM sleep increase and usually peak around 8:30 A.M. A sleep deprivation treatment for depression involves reducing the patient's amount of REM sleep by waking him or her around 6:00 A.M. Researchers think that some fatigue associated with disease may be a form of mild depression and that reducing the amount of REM sleep will reduce fatigue by moderating depression.

### Managing fatigue

The management of fatigue depends in large measure on its causes and the person's experience of it. For example, if fatigue is acute and normal, the person will recover from feeling tired after exertion by resting. In cases of fatigue associated with influenza or other infectious illnesses, the person will feel energy return as they recover from the illness. When fatigue is chronic and abnormal, however, the doctor will tailor a treatment program to the patient's needs. There are a variety of approaches that include:

- aerobic exercise. Physical activity increases fitness and counteracts depression.
- hydration (adding water). Water improves muscle turgor or tension and helps to carry electrolytes.
- improving sleep patterns. The patient's sleep may be more restful when its timing and duration are controlled.
- pharmacotherapy (treatment with medications). The patient may be given various medications to treat physical diseases or mental disorders, to control pain, or to manage sleeping patterns.
- psychotherapy. There are several different treatment approaches that help patients manage stress, understand the motives that govern their behavior, or

### KEY TERMS

**Biological marker**—An indicator or characteristic trait of a disease that facilitates differential diagnosis (the process of distinguishing one disorder from other, similar disorders).

**Deconditioning**—Loss of physical strength or stamina resulting from bed rest or lack of exercise.

**Electrolytes**—Substances or elements that dissociate into electrically charged particles (ions) when dissolved in the blood. The electrolytes in human blood include potassium, magnesium, and chloride.

**Metabolism**—The group of biochemical processes within the body that release energy in support of life.

**Stress**—A physical and psychological response that results from being exposed to a demand or pressure.

**Syndrome**—A group of symptoms that together characterize a disease or disorder.

change maladaptive ideas and negative thinking patterns.

- physical therapy. This form of treatment helps patients improve or manage functional impairments or disabilities.

In addition to seeking professional help, people can understand and manage fatigue by joining appropriate **self-help groups**, reading informative books, seeking information from clearinghouses on the Internet, and visiting Web sites maintained by national organizations for various diseases.

*See also* Brain; Breathing-related sleep disorder; Caffeine and related sleep disorders; Circadian rhythm sleep disorder; Pain disorder; Self-help groups; Somatization and somatoform disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Beers, Mark H., and Robert Berkow, eds. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, 17th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Glaus, A. *Fatigue in Patients with Cancer: Analysis and Assessment*. Recent Results in Cancer Research, No. 145. Berlin, Germany: Springer-Verlag, 1998.
- Hubbard, John R., and Edward A. Workman, eds. *Handbook of Stress Medicine: An Organ System Approach*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1998.
- Natelson, Benjamin H. *Facing and Fighting Fatigue: A Practical Approach*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1998.

Winningham, Maryl L., and Margaret Barton-Burke, eds. *Fatigue in Cancer: A Multidimensional Approach*. Sudbury, MA: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

Natelson, Benjamin H. "Chronic Fatigue Syndrome." *JAMA: Journal of the American Medical Association* 285.20 (May 23–30 2001): 2557–59.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

MEDLINE plus Health Information, U.S. National Library of Medicine. 8600 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20894. Telephone: (888) 346-3656. <<http://www.medlineplus.gov>>. National Chronic Fatigue Syndrome and Fibromyalgia Association. P.O. Box 18426, Kansas City, MO 64133. Telephone: (816) 313-2000. <<http://www.4woman.gov/nwhic/references/mdreferrals/ncfsfa.htm>>.

#### WEB SITES

Centers for Disease Control. "Chronic Fatigue Syndrome." (2006) <<http://www.cdc.gov/cfs/cfsbasicfacts.htm>>. Davis, Caralyn. "What's In a Name: Fibro vs. CFS." Arthritis Foundation. <[http://www.arthritis.org/resources/news/news\\_fibro\\_cfs.asp](http://www.arthritis.org/resources/news/news_fibro_cfs.asp)>

Tanja Bekhuis, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood

### Definition

Feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood is characterized by the failure of an infant or child under six years of age to eat enough food to gain weight and grow normally over a period of one month or more. The disorder can also be characterized by the loss of a significant amount of weight over one month. Feeding disorder is similar to failure to thrive, except that no medical or physiological condition can explain the low food intake or lack of growth.

### Description

Infants and children with a feeding disorder fail to grow adequately, or even lose weight with no underlying medical explanation. They do not eat enough energy or nutrients to support growth and may be irritable or apathetic. Factors that contribute to development of a feeding disorder include lack of nurturing, failure to accurately read the child's hunger and satiety cues, poverty, or parental mental illness. Successful treatment involves dietary, behavioral, social, and

psychological intervention by a multidisciplinary team of health professionals.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood can occur with inappropriate parent-child interactions, such as failure to read the child's hunger cues or forcing food when the child is not hungry. Lack of nurturing and/or parental aggression, anger, or apathy can make eating a negative experience for the child, increasing the risk of feeding disorders.

Feeding disorders are more common in infants and children who are born prematurely, had a low birth weight, or who are developmentally delayed. Many medical (or physiological) causes can contribute to eating difficulties, eating aversions, or failure to thrive, including:

- diseases of the central nervous system
- metabolic diseases
- sensory defects
- anatomical abnormalities, such as cleft palate
- muscular disorders, such as cerebral palsy
- heart disease
- gastrointestinal diseases, such as Crohn's disease

To meet criteria for a true feeding disorder of infancy or childhood, these medical conditions must be ruled out.

#### Symptoms

Because the child or infant with a feeding disorder is not consuming enough energy, vitamins, or minerals to support normal growth, symptoms resemble those seen in malnourished or starving children. The infant or child may be irritable, difficult to console, apathetic, withdrawn, and unresponsive.

Delays in development, as well as growth, can occur. In general, the younger the child, the greater the risk of developmental delays associated with the feeding disorder.

Laboratory abnormalities may also be associated with the disorder. Blood tests may reveal a low level of protein or hemoglobin in the blood. Hemoglobin is an iron-containing substance in blood that carries oxygen to body cells.

### Demographics

Although minor feeding problems are common in infancy and childhood, true feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood is estimated to occur in

1% to 3% of infants and children. Children separated from their families or living in conditions of poverty or **stress** are at greater risk. Mental illness in a parent, or child abuse or **neglect**, may also increase the risk of the child developing a feeding disorder.

## Diagnosis

Between 25% and 35% of normal children experience minor feeding problems. In infants born prematurely, 40% to 70% experience some type of feeding problem. For a child to be diagnosed with feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, the disorder must be severe enough to affect growth for a significant period of time. Generally, growth failure is considered to be below the fifth percentile of weight and height.

Feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood is diagnosed if all four of the following criteria are present:

- failure to eat adequately over one month or more, with resultant weight loss or failure to gain weight.
- inadequate eating and lack of growth not explained by any general medical or physiological condition, such as gastrointestinal problems, nervous system abnormalities, or anatomical deformations.
- the feeding disorder cannot be better explained by lack of food or by another mental disorder, such as rumination disorder.
- the inadequate eating and weight loss or failure to gain weight occurs before the age of six years. If feeding behavior or weight gain improves when another person feeds and cares for the child, the existence of a true feeding disorder, rather than some underlying medical condition, is more likely.

## Treatments

Successful treatment of feeding disorders requires a multidisciplinary team approach to assess the child's needs and to provide recommendations and education to improve feeding skills, behavior, and nutrient intake. The multidisciplinary team for treatment of feeding disorders in childhood usually includes physicians specializing in problems of the gastrointestinal tract or of the ear, nose, and throat; a dietitian, a **psychologist**, a speech pathologist, and an occupational therapist. Support from **social workers** and physicians in related areas of medicine is also helpful.

An initial evaluation should focus on feeding history, including detailed information on type and timing of food intake, feeding position, meal duration, energy and nutrient intake, and behavioral and parental fac-

tors that influence the feeding experience. Actual observation of a feeding session can give valuable insight into the cause of the feeding disorder and appropriate treatments. A medical examination should also be conducted to rule out any potential medical problems or physical causes of the feeding disorder.

After a thorough history is taken and assessment completed, dietary and behavioral therapy is started. The goal of diet therapy is to gradually increase energy and nutrient intake as tolerated by the child to allow for catch up growth. Depending on the diet history, energy and nutrient content of the diet may be kept lower initially to avoid vomiting and diarrhea. As the infant or child is able to tolerate more food, energy and nutrient intake is gradually increased over a period of one to two weeks, or more. Eventually, the diet should provide about 50% more than normal nutritional needs of infants or children of similar age and size.

Behavioral therapy can help the parent and child overcome conditioned feeding problems and food aversions. Parents must be educated to accurately recognize their child's hunger and satiety cues and to promote a pleasant, positive feeding environment. Changing the texture of foods, the pace and timing of feedings, the position of the body, and even feeding utensils can help the child overcome aversions to eating. If poverty, abuse, or parental mental illness contribute to the feeding disorder, these issues must also be addressed.

## Prognosis

If left untreated, infants and children with feeding disorders can have permanent physical, mental, and behavioral damage. However, most children with feeding disorders show significant improvements after treatment, particularly if the child and parent receive intensive nutritional, psychological, and social intervention.

## Prevention

Providing balanced, age-appropriate foods at regular intervals—for example, three meals and two or three snacks daily for toddlers—can help to establish healthy eating patterns. If a child is allowed to fill up on soft drinks, juice, chips, or other snack prior to meals, appetite for other, more nutritious foods will decrease.

Positive infant and childhood feeding experiences require the child to effectively communicate hunger and satiety and the parent or caregiver to accurately interpret these signals. This set of events requires a nurturing environment and an attentive, caring adult. Efforts should be made to establish feeding as a positive,

pleasant experience. Further, forcing a child to eat or punishing a child for not eating should be avoided.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Queen, Patricia M., M.M.Sc., R.D. and Carol E. Lang, M.S., R.D. *Handbook of Pediatric Nutrition*. Gaithersburg, Maryland: Aspen Publishers, Inc., 1993.

### PERIODICALS

- Rudolph, Colin D., and Dana Thompson Link. "Feeding Disorders in Infants and Children." *Pediatric Clinics of North America* 49 (2002): 97-112.

Nancy Gustafson, M.S., R.D., F.A.D.A., E.L.S.

To understand FOD, it is first necessary to understand the physiological changes that normally take place in a woman's body during sexual arousal and orgasm.

Normally, when a woman is sexually excited, the blood vessels in the pelvic area expand, allowing more blood to flow to the genitals, as also occurs in men. This effusion is followed by the seepage of fluid out of blood vessels and into the vagina to provide lubrication before and during intercourse. These events are called the "lubrication-swelling response."

Body tension and blood flow to the pelvic area continue to build as a woman receives more sexual stimulation; this occurs either by direct pressure on the clitoris or as pressure on the walls of the vagina and cervix. This tension builds as blood flow increases. When tension is released, pleasurable rhythmic contractions of the uterus and vagina occur; this release is called an orgasm. The contractions carry blood away from the genital area and back into general circulation.

It is normal for orgasms to vary in intensity, length, and number of contractions from woman to woman, as well as in a single individual from experience to experience. Unlike men, women can have multiple orgasms in a short period of time. Mature women, who may be more sexually experienced than younger women, may find it easier to have orgasms than adolescents or the sexually inexperienced.

In a woman with FOD, sexual arousal and lubrication occur. Body tension builds, but the woman is unable or has extreme difficulty reaching climax and releasing the tension. This inability can lead to frustration and unfulfilling sexual experiences for both partners. FOD often occurs in conjunction with other sexual dysfunctions. Also, lack of orgasm can cause anger, frustration, and other problems in the relationship.

## Causes and symptoms

With FOD, a woman either does not have an orgasm or has extreme difficulty regularly reaching climax. It is normal for women to lack this response occasionally, or to have an orgasm only with specific types of stimulation. The occasional failure to reach orgasm or dependence on a particular type of stimulation is not the same as FOD.

The causes of FOD can be both physical and psychological. FOD is most often a primary or lifelong disorder, meaning that a woman has never achieved orgasm under any type of stimulation, including self-stimulation (masturbation), direct stimulation of the clitoris by a partner, or vaginal intercourse. Some women experience secondary or acquired FOD. These women have had orgasms, but lose the ability after

## Description

FOD is the persistent or recurrent inability of a woman to achieve orgasm. This lack of response affects the quality of the woman's sexual experiences.

illness, emotional trauma, or as a side effect of surgery or medication. Acquired FOD is often temporary.

FOD can be generalized or situation-specific. In generalized FOD, the failure to have an orgasm occurs with different partners and in many different settings. In situational FOD, inability to reach climax occurs only with specific partners or under particular circumstances. FOD may be due either to psychological factors or a combination of physiological and psychological factors, but not due to physiological factors alone.

Physiological causes of FOD include:

- damage to the blood vessels of the pelvic region
- spinal cord lesions or damage to the nerves in the pelvic area
- side effects of medications (i.e., antipsychotics, antidepressants, narcotics) or illicit substance abuse
- removal of the clitoris (also called female genital mutilation, a cultural practice in parts of Africa, the Middle East, and Asia)

Psychological causes of FOD include:

- past sexual abuse, rape, incest, or other traumatic sexual experiences
- emotional abuse
- fear of becoming pregnant
- fear of rejection by partner
- fear of loss of control during orgasm
- self-image problems
- relationship problems with partner
- life stresses, such as financial worries, job loss, or divorce
- guilt about sex or sexual pleasure
- religious or cultural beliefs about sex
- other mental health disorders such as major depression

Recent studies of twins suggest that genes play a large role in the development of orgasmic dysfunction in women. Researchers have found a level of genetic involvement in this disorder that is similar to that for age of onset of menses or menopause, or presence of depression or **anxiety**.

## Demographics

Inability to have an orgasm, discontent with the quality of orgasms, and the ability to have orgasms only with one type of stimulation are common sexual complaints among women. Some studies have found that about half of all women experience some orgasmic difficulties, but not all of these difficulties are considered FOD. About 50% of women experience orgasm through direct clitoral stimulation but not

during intercourse, thus not meeting the criteria for a diagnosis of FOD. About 10% of women never experience an orgasm, regardless of the situation or stimulation. These women are more likely to be unmarried, young, and sexually inexperienced.

## Diagnosis

FOD is diagnosed through a medical and psychological history, and history of the conditions under which orgasm fails to occur. It is especially helpful for the clinician or sex therapist to understand how long the problem has persisted, and whether it is general or situational. FOD is sometimes found in conjunction with **sexual aversion disorder** and **female sexual arousal disorder**, making the diagnosis complex. To be diagnosed with FOD, the lack of orgasmic response must occur regularly over an extended period of time; based on the clinician's judgment, it must be less than would be reasonable based on age, sexual experience, and the adequacy of sexual stimulation. The lack of orgasm must cause emotional distress or relationship difficulties for the woman and be caused either only by psychological factors alone or by a combination of psychological and physical factors. According to the American Psychiatric Association (APA), a diagnosis of FOD is not appropriate if failure to climax is due only to physiological factors. FOD is also not diagnosed if it is a symptom of another major psychological disorder, such as depression.

## Treatments

When failure to reach orgasm is caused by a physical problem, the root problem is treated. In other cases, a combination of education, counseling, **psychotherapy**, and sex therapy are used—often along with directed exercises to increase stimulation and decrease inhibitions.

Sex therapists have special training to help individuals and couples focus on overcoming specific sexual dysfunctions. In couples' therapy, therapists often assign "homework" that focuses on relaxation techniques, sexual exploration, improving sexual communication, decreasing inhibitions, and increasing direct clitoral stimulation. Individually, a woman might be encouraged to masturbate either through self-stimulation or with a vibrator. In addition, Kegel exercises, which improve the strength and tone of the muscles in the genital area, may be recommended.

Traditional psychotherapy, or **talk therapy**, alone or in conjunction with sex therapy, can be effective in resolving psychological causes of FOD, especially when those causes are rooted in past sexual or emotional exploitation or cultural taboos. Psychotherapy

## KEY TERMS

**Cervix**—The neck or narrow lower end of a woman's uterus.

**Clitoris**—The most sensitive area of the external genitals. Stimulation of the clitoris causes most women to reach orgasm.

**Uterus**—The hollow muscular sac in which a fetus develops; sometimes called the womb.

**Vagina**—The part of the female reproductive system that opens to the exterior of the body and into which the penis is inserted during sexual intercourse.

is also helpful in resolving relationship tensions that develop as a result of frustration from FOD.

Experts Jennifer and Laura Berman found that a patient who took a synthetic form of testosterone found some improvement with her condition. These same experts also recommend that women do Kegel exercises—contraction and release of the muscles of the pelvic floor, the same ones women use to stop a urine stream—to improve their orgasmic experiences.

### Prognosis

Many women with FOD can be helped to achieve orgasm through a combination of psychotherapy and guided sexual exercises. However, this does not mean that they will be able to achieve orgasm all the time or in every situation, or that they will always be satisfied with the strength and quality of their climax. Couples often need to work through relationship issues that have either caused or resulted from FOD before they see improvement. This process takes time and requires a joint commitment to problem solving.

### Prevention

There are no sure ways to prevent FOD. However, reducing life factors that cause **stress** can be effective. Seeking counseling or psychotherapy for past trauma, or when problems begin to appear in a relationship, can help minimize sexual dysfunction problems.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Berman, Jennifer, MD, and Laura Berman, PhD. *For Women Only: A Revolutionary Guide to Overcoming*

*Sexual Dysfunction and Reclaiming Your Sex Life*. New York: Henry Holt, 2001.

Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Dunn, Kate M., Lynn F. Cherkas, and Tim D. Spector. "Genetic Influences on Variation in Female Orgasmic Function: A Twin Study." *Biology Letters* 1 (2005): 260–63.  
Everaerd, Walter, and Ellen Laan. "Drug Treatments for Women's Sexual Disorders." *Journal of Sex Research* 37 (Aug. 2000): 195–213.  
Phillips, Nancy. "Female Sexual Dysfunction: Evaluation and Treatment." *American Family Physician* (July 1, 2000).

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Association of Sex Educators, Counselors, and Therapists (AASECT). P.O. Box 238, Mount Vernon, IA 53214-0238. Telephone: (319) 895-8407. <[www.aasect.org](http://www.aasect.org)>.

Sexual Information and Education Council of the United States (SIECUS). West 42nd Street, Suite 350, New York, NY 10036-7802. <[www.siecus.org](http://www.siecus.org)>.

#### WEB SITE

Berney, Karen. "Female Orgasmic Disorder: 'I'm not able to climax'." Discovery Health. <<http://health.discovery.com/centers/sex/articles/orgasmic.html>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Female sexual arousal disorder

### Definition

Female sexual arousal disorder (FSAD) refers to the persistent or recurrent inability of a woman to achieve or maintain an adequate lubrication-swelling response during sexual activity. This lack of physical response may be either lifelong or acquired, and either generalized or situation-specific. FSAD has both physiological and psychological causes. The results of FSAD are often sexual avoidance, painful intercourse, and sexual tension in relationships.

### Description

FSAD results from the body's inability to undergo specific physiological changes, called the lubrication-swelling response, in response to sexual desire and stimulation. This lack of response then affects the woman's desire for and satisfaction obtained from intercourse. To understand FSAD, it is helpful to have an outline of

the physiological changes that normally take place in a woman's body during sexual arousal.

William Masters and Virginia Johnson were the first researchers to examine extensively the physical components of human sexual arousal. They recorded four stages of sexual response: excitement, plateau, climax (or orgasm), and resolution. Since then, other models have been suggested that include the emotional aspects of arousal. One model suggests three stages: desire, arousal, and orgasm. FSAD affects the excitement or arousal stage of sexual activity.

Normally, when a woman is aroused or sexually excited, the first physiological change that she experiences is expansion of the blood vessels in the pelvic region, allowing more blood to flow to her lower abdomen and genitals. Some women notice this as a feeling of fullness in the pelvis and either consciously or involuntarily contract the muscles in the genital area.

The increased blood flow also causes a phenomenon called transudation, which refers to the seepage of fluid through the walls of the blood vessels. In this case, the fluid seeps into the vagina to provide lubrication before and during intercourse. Often this moisture is noticeable to the woman and her partner. Lubrication of the vagina can happen very rapidly, within a minute.

The increase in blood flow produces other changes in the tissues of the female genitals. The upper part of the vagina, the uterus, the cervix, and the clitoris all expand. At the same time, the lower third of the vagina and the outer labia swell, so that the opening to the vagina becomes smaller. The inner labia also swell, and push apart the opening to the vagina. These changes taken together make up the lubrication-swelling response and are designed to facilitate the entry of the penis into the vagina.

A woman with FSAD either does not have these physical responses or does not maintain them through completion of sexual activity. The lack of arousal and lubrication may result in painful intercourse (**dyspareunia**), emotional distress, or relationship problems.

### Causes and symptoms

The symptoms of FSAD include lack of or insufficient transudation. A woman diagnosed with FSAD does not produce enough fluid to lubricate the vagina. As a result, intercourse is often painful and unsatisfactory. The woman may then avoid sexual activity and intimacy, creating relationship difficulties.

The causes of FSAD are quite complex. For some women, FSAD is a lifelong disorder; they have never experienced a normal lubrication-swelling response. For

other women, FSAD develops after illness or emotional trauma, through physiological changes, or as a side effect of surgery, radiation therapy for cancer, or medication. FSAD can be generalized, occurring with different partners and in many different settings, or it can be situation-specific, occurring only with certain partners or under particular circumstances. In addition, FSAD may be due either to psychological factors or to a combination of physiological and psychological factors.

Physiological causes of FSAD include:

- damage to the blood vessels of the pelvic region resulting in reduced blood flow
- damage to the nerves in the pelvic area resulting in diminished arousal
- general medical conditions that damage blood vessels (coronary artery disease, high blood pressure, diabetes mellitus)
- nursing a baby (lactation)
- general medical conditions that cause changes in hormone levels (thyroid disorders, adrenal gland disorders, removal of the ovaries)
- lower levels of sex hormones due to aging (menopause)
- side effects of medications (i.e., antidepressants, antipsychotic drugs, drugs to lower blood pressure, sedatives, birth control pills, or other hormone-containing pills)

Psychological causes of FSAD include:

- chronic mild depression (dysthymia)
- emotional stress
- past sexual abuse
- emotional abuse
- bereavement
- self-image problems
- relationship problems with partner
- other mental health disorders (major depression, post-traumatic stress disorder, or obsessive-compulsive disorder)

The physical and psychological factors leading to FSAD often appear together. For example, a woman who does not experience arousal because of illness or the side effects of medication may then develop self-image and relationship problems that reinforce her difficulty in reaching arousal.

### Demographics

It is difficult to determine the incidence of FSAD, because many women are reluctant to seek help for this problem. FSAD may also be present concurrently with other female **sexual dysfunctions** and be difficult to distinguish from them. In addition, there is some

## ALFRED KINSEY (1894–1956)

Alfred Kinsey became a household name in the 1950s for his research on the sexual mores of American women and men. His two major texts, *Sexual Behavior in the Human Male* (1948) and *Sexual Behavior in the Human Female* (1953), broke new ground in the field of sex research and led to more open and honest investigations of sexual practices.

During the 1940s, Kinsey embarked on a large-scale study of the sexual habits of men and women. Initially, his resources were limited, and he used his own money to hire staff and pay expenses. In 1943, he received a \$23,000 grant from the Rockefeller Foundation, which enabled him to hire more staff and expand his efforts. Chief among his staff were colleagues W. B. Pomeroy, who also conducted thousands of sex interviews, Paul Gebhard, and Clyde Martin. The funding briefly legitimized his undertaking, which became known as the Institute for Sex Research of Indiana University, where Kinsey taught.

By 1948 Kinsey and his colleagues were ready to release their initial findings. He chose a well-established medical publications firm, W. B. Saunders of Philadelphia, to publish the book, attempting to stress the scientific nature of the text rather than its potentially more lurid aspects. To avoid possible financial retribution against Indiana University, the book was published while the Indiana legislature was in recess in December 1948. The 804 page book, *Sexual Behavior in the Human Male*, sold

185,000 copies in its first year in print and made the New York Times bestseller list. The book employed frank descriptions of biological functions and was nonjudgmental of its subject's activities.

Early polls indicated that most Americans agreed with Kinsey's findings. The most vehement criticism came later from the expected sources: conservative and religious organizations. Most of these attacks were emotionally rather than scientifically based, but few of Kinsey's colleagues came to his defense. Kinsey's second sex book, as he expected, caused an even greater uproar than the first. Some of *Sexual Behavior in the Human Female*'s more controversial findings concerned the low rate of frigidity, high rates of premarital and extramarital sex, the rapidness of erotic response, and a detailed discussion of clitoral versus vaginal orgasm. The book soared up the best-seller charts, eventually reaching sales of 250,000 in the U.S. alone. Criticism was harsh, and Kinsey's methods and motives were once again questioned. Evangelist Billy Graham was quoted as stating: "It is impossible to estimate the damage this book will do to the already deteriorating morals of America."

The notoriety of the books caused Kinsey's funding to be revoked, which caused Kinsey to struggle for the remainder of his life to gain adequate support for his work. On August 25, 1956, at the age of 62, Kinsey died of pneumonia and heart complications.

disagreement in the medical community on the exact descriptions of different female sexual dysfunctions. One published review of the medical literature, however, found that 22–43% of women experience some form of sexual dysfunction. A study that looked specifically at lubrication found that about 20% of women reported problems in this area. Both of these estimates include women whose dysfunction arises from physiological and psychological causes.

### Diagnosis

FSAD is usually diagnosed when a woman reports her concerns to her doctor, usually a gynecologist (a doctor who specializes in women's health issues), or a family doctor or psychotherapist. The doctor will take a complete medical and psychological history, including a list of the medications that the patient is currently taking. The doctor will then give the patient a physical examination to evaluate medical aspects of the disorder; if necessary, blood and urine samples may be taken for laboratory testing to rule out previously undiagnosed diabetes or other medical conditions. In order

to be diagnosed with FSAD, the lack of lubrication-swelling response must happen persistently or intermittently over an extended period. It is normal for women to have occasional problems with arousal, and these occasional difficulties are not the same as FSAD. The lack of sexual response must cause emotional distress or relationship difficulties for the woman and be caused either only by psychological factors or by a combination of psychological and physical factors to meet the criteria for a **diagnosis** of FSAD.

According to the mental health professional's handbook, the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, fourth edition, text revision, which is also called ***DSM-IV-TR***, a diagnosis of FSAD is not appropriate if problems with arousal are caused only by physiological factors. These factors may include injuries to the genital area, illness, or menopause. When the causes are only physiological, a diagnosis of sexual dysfunction due to a general medical condition is appropriate. If lack of arousal is caused by the side effects of medication or **substance abuse**, a diagnosis of substance-induced sexual dysfunction would

be made. FSAD is also not diagnosed if it is a symptom of another major psychological disorder. If a woman receives inadequate sexual stimulation from a partner, that also is not considered a cause of FSAD.

### Treatments

Treatment varies depending on the cause of FSAD. When there are physical causes, the root problem or disease is treated. Many women who have difficulties with lubrication due to naturally decreasing hormone levels associated with aging are helped by some forms of hormone replacement therapy (HRT), such as estrogen or testosterone. Some new drug targets are the mechanisms that result in increased blood flow to the genitals, which in turn causes increased lubrication. Among these are drugs aimed at increasing nitric oxide levels, as the drug sildenafil (Viagra®) does for men. There are also nonprescription preparations available in pharmacies for supplementing the woman's natural lubricant. Many women find these preparations quite satisfactory, particularly if they have only occasional problems with arousal.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved one medical device for treating FSAD. The Eros-Clinical Therapy Device (Eros-CTD) is a small vacuum pump that fits over the clitoral area. The pump produces a gentle sucking action that stimulates blood flow in the area. In **clinical trials** the device proved safe and effective in increasing blood flow, sensation, and vaginal lubrication.

**Psychotherapy**, or **talk therapy**, is most commonly used to treat the psychosocial aspects of FSAD. Sex therapy focuses primarily on the sexual dysfunction. Sex therapists have special training to help individuals and couples overcome their sexual difficulties. Traditional psychotherapy focuses on problems in relationships, seeking to clarify problems, identify emotions, improve communication, and promote problem-solving strategies. Therapy can involve either the woman alone or the woman and her partner (**couples therapy**). Many couples experiencing sexual dysfunction develop relationship problems related to sexual expectations, and benefit from traditional psychotherapy even when difficulties with sexual arousal are resolved.

### Prognosis

Because FSAD has multiple causes, individual response to treatment varies widely. Difficulties with lubrication related to menopause generally have a good prognosis. Stress-related difficulties with arousal typically resolve when the stressor is no longer present. Couples often need to work through relationship issues that have either caused or resulted from sexual dysfunction before

### KEY TERMS

**Adrenal gland**—A small organ located above each kidney that produces hormones related to the sex drive.

**Cervix**—The neck or narrow lower end of a woman's uterus.

**Clitoris**—The most sensitive area of the external genitals. Stimulation of the clitoris causes most women to reach orgasm.

**Labia**—The outside folds of tissue that surround the clitoris and the opening of the urethra in women.

**Menopause**—A period of decreasing hormonal activity in women, when ovulation stops and conception is no longer possible.

**Pelvis**—The basin-like cavity in the human body below the abdomen, enclosed by a framework of four bones.

**Penis**—The external male sex organ.

**Thyroid**—A gland in the neck that produces the hormone thyroxine, which is responsible for regulating metabolic activity in the body. Supplemental synthetic thyroid hormone is available as pills taken daily when the thyroid fails to produce enough hormone.

**Uterus**—The hollow muscular sac in which a fetus develops; sometimes called the womb.

**Vagina**—The part of the female reproductive system that opens to the exterior of the body and into which the penis is inserted during sexual intercourse.

they see an improvement in sexual arousal. This process takes time and a joint commitment to problem solving.

### Prevention

There are no sure ways to prevent FSAD. Eating a healthy, well-balanced diet, getting enough rest, having regular gynecological checkups, and seeking counseling or psychotherapy when problems begin to appear in a relationship can help minimize sexual arousal problems.

*See also* Female orgasmic disorder; Sexual aversion disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

- Berman, Jennifer, MD, and Laura Berman, PhD. *For Women Only: A Revolutionary Guide to Overcoming Sexual Dysfunction and Reclaiming Your Sex Life*. New York: Henry Holt, 2001.
- Greenwood, Sadja, MD. *Menopause Naturally: Preparing for the Second Half of Life*. 3rd ed. Volcano, CA: Volcano Press, 1992.
- Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Everaerd, Walter, and Ellen Laan. "Drug Treatments for Women's Sexual Disorders." *Journal of Sex Research* 37 (Aug. 2000): 195–213.
- Goldstein, I. "Female Sexual Arousal Disorder: New Insights." *International Journal of Impotence Research* 4 (Oct. 12, 2000): S152–57.
- Mayor, Susan. "Pfizer Will Not Apply for a License for Sildenafil for Women." *British Medical Journal* 328 (2004): 542.
- Uckert, Stefan, and others. "Potential Future Options in the Pharmacotherapy of Female Sexual Dysfunction." *World Journal of Urology* 24 (2006): 630–38.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association of Sex Educators, Counselors, and Therapists (AASECT). P.O. Box 238, Mount Vernon, IA 53214-0238. Telephone: (319) 895-8407.  
<[www.aasect.org](http://www.aasect.org)>.
- Sexual Information and Education Council of the United States (SIECUS). West 42nd Street, Suite 350, New York, NY 10036-7802. <[www.siecus.org](http://www.siecus.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Fetal alcohol syndrome

### Definition

Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) is a birth defect caused by prenatal exposure to alcohol and is one of the leading known preventable causes of **mental retardation** and birth defects. Rather than a single defect, the word "syndrome" refers to a constellation of abnormalities in children whose mothers drank alcohol while pregnant. FAS is a lifelong condition that causes physical and mental disabilities, and it is characterized by abnormal facial features, growth deficiencies, central nervous system (CNS) problems, and behavioral difficulties. It affects every aspect of an individual's life and the lives of his or her family. Some cases are mild, with only subtle dysfunction and deformity, and other cases are severe, leaving the

afflicted seriously disabled and unable to lead independent lives.

A related disorder known as fetal alcohol spectrum disorder (FASD) may include any of the physical and mental symptoms of fetal alcohol syndrome but typically falls short in one diagnostic area. Abnormalities present may still be quite severe; FASD does not imply mildness of disease. For example, a child with FASD may have severe mental retardation but lack the facial abnormalities that are characteristic of fetal alcohol syndrome.

### Description

FAS is caused by exposure to alcohol during fetal development in the mother's uterus. When a mother drinks, alcohol crosses the placenta rapidly and enters the fetus. Once there, alcohol acts on virtually every organ system of the developing baby, affecting cellular processes such as growth, differentiation, maturation, and nutrient metabolism. In short, alcohol is a teratogen, which means it causes birth defects.

Alcohol use during pregnancy puts the fetus at risk for delayed and stunted growth and physical deformities, and it puts the child at risk for developing learning disabilities, deficits in attention and impulse control, and other mental health problems. In addition, there are risks to the pregnancy itself, including spontaneous abortion, premature birth, and stillbirth.

### Demographics

The primary risk for developing FAS is the consumption of alcohol by women who are pregnant. There is no known amount of alcohol use that is safe during pregnancy, nor is there a particular stage of pregnancy during which alcohol use is safe.

In the United States, the incidence of FAS has been estimated to be 1–3 cases per 1,000 live births, with reported rates of FAS varying widely. The frequency of FASD is much harder to study because the syndrome is less narrowly defined. Nonetheless, estimates have been approximated to occur three times as frequently as FAS. Some studies have tried to estimate the rate of FAS occurrence in women who are heavy drinkers. Whereas such studies are confounded by the unreliability of self-report for such behavior, varying definitions of heavy drinking, and inconsistent **diagnosis**, incidence rates in this group are reported to range from 4% to 44%.

FAS occurs without regard to race or ethnicity; the primary cause is drinking alcohol. Rates of FAS are higher in low socioeconomic women, although the reason



A nurse checks the eyes of a child with Fetal Alcohol Syndrome. (AP Images)

for this is unknown. Some have hypothesized that factors such as poor health and nutrition may be related to the increased risk. There also is higher risk associated with alcoholism and with bearing previous children with FAS.

### Causes

The primary and only necessary cause of FAS is maternal alcohol consumption. In the fetus, alcohol primarily affects **brain** development and because major developmental events take place in the brain throughout pregnancy, drinking during any one of the three trimesters poses a risk.

The quantity and pattern of maternal drinking are important factors in conferring risk. But while heavy drinking during pregnancy has been strongly linked to FAS in children, lighter consumption of alcohol has not been studied well enough to suggest that any level of intake is safe. Because of this, the U.S. Surgeon General advises all women to abstain from drinking alcohol while pregnant.

Studies on women who report heavy drinking show a dose-effect response, so that the more a woman drinks, the greater the risk she has for bearing a child with FAS.

Moreover, **binge drinking** during pregnancy appears to be the riskiest pattern of consumption. Women who regularly use alcohol are also more likely to drink in the early weeks of an unrecognized pregnancy.

Maternal age greater than 30 years, a history of alcohol **abuse**, poor nutritional status, and previous pregnancies resulting in children with FAS are all factors that increase the risk of FAS. One factor that may reduce the risk of FAS is a genetic trait of rapid alcohol metabolism, which may be protective to the developing fetus.

### Symptoms

FAS is not a single birth defect but rather a cluster of related problems. Symptoms of fetal alcohol syndrome are recognized in three general areas: physical characteristics, particularly facial anomalies; retarded growth in the fetus and/or infant; and evidence of neurobehavioral abnormalities. The severity of these symptoms can greatly vary among those afflicted.

Specific facial characteristics include a thin upper lip, smoothness between the upper lip and the nose (where a vertical indentation is the norm), a flatness across the bridge of the nose, an unnatural smallness of

the eyes, and a slightly concave look to the face, because the center of the face as a whole is underdeveloped. Those afflicted often are nearsighted but also may have a wandering eye, a chronic squint, and/or drooping eyelids. Elsewhere in the body, small head size and skeletal defects in the extremities, such as the arm bones being abnormally fused and fingers permanently flexed, are sometimes present. Spinal defects include fusion of the neck vertebrae, abnormally shaped vertebrae, and curvature of the spine. Other major defects can occur in the kidneys, the heart, and specific endocrine glands.

Growth deficiencies are manifested as low birth weight, infants small for their gestational age, and postnatal growth deficits.

Neurodevelopmental problems seen in FAS include mild-to-moderate mental retardation, cognitive impairment, developmental delays, learning disabilities, irritability, hyperactivity, poor impulse control, and seizure disorders. Specific CNS abnormalities include delayed or deficient myelination of the nerves and incomplete development of the corpus callosum, the structure that connects the two sides of the brain.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosis is difficult because a cluster of symptoms must be recognized in connection with knowledge of the prenatal exposure of a child to alcohol. Further, many of the signs and symptoms of FAS are similar to other birth defects, learning disabilities, and mental health disorders. Individual features of the disease can be subtle enough so that individuals can pass through life undiagnosed.

Clearly, diagnosis is aided when valid maternal reports of alcohol use are available. However, FAS can be diagnosed in the absence of such information. Evidence must be clear in each of three broad areas: characteristic facial anomalies, prenatal or postnatal growth retardation, and CNS neurodevelopmental abnormalities.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for individuals with FAS or FASD is wide ranging. Some data suggest that having a confirmed diagnosis improves patient outcomes, presumably because of early **intervention** or improved access to healthcare services. Such patients may have a long list of mental health problems and associated social dilemmas: alcohol and drug problems, inappropriate sexual behavior, problems with employment, trouble with the law, inability to live independently, and, far too often, confinement in prison, drug or alcohol treatment centers, or psychiatric institutions.

## KEY TERMS

**Alcohol**—An organic chemical and the active agent in beer, wine, and liquor; chemically known as ethanol.

**Alcoholism**—Chronic and compulsive use of alcohol that interferes with everyday life.

**Binge drinking**—The practice of drinking alcoholic beverages to the point of intoxication.

**Fetus**—The stage of development between embryo and newborn.

**Mental retardation**—Characterized by persistently slow learning and below normal intelligence.

**Prenatal exposure**—Coming in contact with a fetus during pregnancy.

**Teratogen**—An agent or chemical that causes a birth defect.

## Treatment

No cure exists for FAS. The physical and mental symptoms of the disease persist throughout life. A supportive environment with responsive caregivers can be protective in terms of poor outcomes related to learning disabilities and behavioral problems. Treatments for many of the symptoms of FAS do, however, exist, including surgery for heart defects, special education services for learning disabilities, and psychiatric care and medicines for behavioral disorders.

For parents and caregivers of children with FAS, providing structure to a child's daily activities are key elements in maximizing functionality. Such things as implementing regular daily routines, creating simple rules and limits, rewarding desirable behavior, and helping the child find solutions to everyday problems are beneficial.

## Prevention

The U.S. Institute of Medicine has outlined a public health model of prevention, starting by educating women about the risks of alcohol for the developing fetus and about the importance of avoiding alcohol consumption during pregnancy. In the highest risk women, those who are drinking large amounts of alcohol and who are likely to become pregnant, and particularly women who have previously delivered an affected child and who continue to drink, intervention might be treating such women for alcohol dependence and with **case management**.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Beers, Mark H., ed. "Prenatal Drug Exposure." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy, Professional Edition*. 18th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., 2005.
- Streissguth, Ann. *Fetal Alcohol Syndrome: A Guide for Families and Communities*. Baltimore: Paul H. Brooks, 1997.

### OTHER

- "Fetal Alcohol Syndrome." *Mayoclinic.com* May 25, 2005. <<http://mayoclinic.com/health/fetal-alcohol-syndrome/DS00184>>.

Jill U. Adams

## Fetishism

### Definition

Fetishism is a form of paraphilia, a disorder characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving nonhuman objects, the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or children or other nonconsenting persons. The essential feature of fetishism is recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies involving specific objects. While any object may become a fetish in the psychological sense, the distinguishing feature is its connection with sex or sexual gratification. A **diagnosis** of fetishism is made only if an individual has acted on these urges, is markedly distressed by them, or if the fetish object is required for gratification.

For some people with a paraphilia such as fetishism, paraphilic fantasies or stimuli may be necessary for erotic arousal and are always included in sexual activity, or the presence of the fetish object may occur only episodically. For example, the fetish object may only be necessary for arousal during periods of **stress**, and at other times the person can function sexually without the fetish or stimuli related to the fetish.

### Description

As stated, a fetish is a form of paraphilia, and in fetishism, the affected person has created a strong association between an object and sexual pleasure or gratification. A fetish is not simply a pleasant memory—it is a dominant component of most sexual situations. Most fetishes are objects or body parts. Common fetishes involve items of clothing, stuffed

animals, or other nonsexual objects. Body fetishes may involve breasts, legs, buttocks, or genitals.

A person with a fetish often spends significant amounts of time thinking about the object of the fetish. Further, the object is intimately related to sexual pleasure or gratification. In the extreme, the presence of the fetish object is required for sexual release and gratification.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The cause of the association between an object and sexual arousal may be adolescent curiosity or a random association between the object and feelings of sexual pleasure. A random association may be innocent or unappreciated for its sexual content when it initially occurs. For example, a male may enjoy the texture or tactile sensation of female undergarments or stockings. At first, the pleasurable sensation occurs randomly, and then, in time and with experience, the behavior of using female undergarments or stockings as part of sexual activity is reinforced, and the association between the garments and the sexual arousal is made. A person with a fetish may not be able to pinpoint exactly when his or her fetish began. A fetish may be related to activities associated with sexual abuse.

#### Symptoms

Early symptoms for a fetish involve touching the object of desire. The amount of time spent thinking about the fetish object may increase. Over time, the importance of the fetish object expands. In the extreme, it becomes a requirement for achieving sexual pleasure and gratification.

### Demographics

How many people have a fetish and the extent to which the fetish influences their lives and sexual activities are not accurately known. In some rare instances, people with fetishes may enter the legal system as a result of their fetishes, and those cases may be counted or tracked.

**Paraphilias** such as fetishism are uncommon among females, but some cases have been reported. Females may attach erotic thoughts to specific objects such as items of clothing or pets, but these are uncommon elements in sexual activity. Virtually no information is available on family patterns.



A pair of stilettos with seven-inch heels. Shoe fetishism is just one of many documented fetishes. (AP Images)

## Diagnosis

A diagnosis of a paraphilia involving a fetish is most commonly made by taking a detailed history or by direct observation. According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (the fourth edition, text revision, or *DSM-IV-TR*), the person must have experienced the fantasies or urges centered on a nonliving object or objects for at least six months. In addition, these fantasies, urges, or behaviors must meet the criterion of causing significant distress or impairment in the person's ability to function socially or at work, or in other important environments. Last, the fetish cannot be solely focused on female clothing used in cross-dressing (which falls into the classification of Tranvestic Fetishism) or on sex-aid devices that promote tactile genital stimulation, such as vibrators.

## Treatments

In the earliest stages of behavior therapy, fetishes were narrowly viewed as attractions to inappropriate objects. Aversive stimuli such as shocks were administered to persons undergoing therapy. This approach was not successful. People with fetishes have also been behaviorally treated by orgasmic reorientation, which attempts to help them develop sexual responses to culturally appropriate stimuli that have been otherwise neutral. This therapy has had only limited success.

Most persons who have a fetish never seek treatment from professionals. Many can achieve sexual gratification in culturally appropriate situations. In recent years, American society has developed more tolerance for persons with fetishes than in the past,

## KEY TERMS

**Paraphilia**—A disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving (1) nonhuman objects, (2) the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or (3) children or other nonconsenting persons.

thus further reducing the already minimal demand for professional treatment.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for eliminating a fetish is poor because fetishism is generally chronic. Most cases in which treatment has been demanded as a condition of continuing a marriage have not been successful. Most fetishes are relatively harmless in that they usually do not involve other persons or endanger the person with the fetish. Persons with a fetish rarely involve nonconsenting partners.

The personal prognosis for a person with a fetish is good if the fetish and related activities do not impact others or place the person with the fetish in physical danger.

### Prevention

Most experts agree that providing gender-appropriate guidance in a culturally appropriate situation will prevent the formation of a fetish. The origin of some fetishes may be random associations between a particular object or situation and sexual gratification. There is no way to predict such an association.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Gelder, Michael, Richard Mayou, and Philip Cowen. *Shorter Oxford Textbook of Psychiatry*, 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.  
 Wilson, Josephine F. *Biological Foundations of Human Behavior*. New York: Harcourt, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

- Chalkley, A. J., and G. E. Powell. "The Clinical Description of Forty-Eight Cases of Sexual Fetishism." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 142 (1983): 292–95.  
 Fitzgerald, W. A. "Explaining the Variety of Human Sexuality." *Medical Hypotheses* 55.5 (2000): 435–39.

Nersessian E. "A Cat as Fetish: a Contribution to the Theory of Fetishism." *International Journal of Psychoanalysis* 79.4 (1998): 713–25.

Reed, G. S. "The Analyst's Interpretation as Fetish." *Journal of the American Psychoanalytical Association* 45.4 (1998): 1153–81.

Weiss, J. "Bondage Fantasies and Beating Fantasies." *Psychoanalytic Quarterly* 67.4 (1998): 626–44.

Wise, T. N. and R. C. Kalyanam. "Amputee Fetishism and Genital Mutilation: Case Report and Literature Review." *Journal of Sexual and Marital Therapy* 26.4 (2000): 339–44.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org>>.

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Figure drawings

### Definition

Figure drawings are projective diagnostic techniques in which an individual is instructed to draw a person, an object, or a situation so that cognitive, interpersonal, or psychological functioning can be assessed.

### Purpose

A projective test is one in which a test taker responds to or provides ambiguous, abstract, or unstructured stimuli, often in the form of pictures or drawings. While other projective tests, such as the **Rorschach Technique** and **Thematic Apperception Test**, ask the test taker to interpret existing pictures, figure drawing tests require the test taker to create the pictures themselves. In most cases, figure drawing tests are given to children. This is because it is a simple, manageable task that children can relate to and enjoy.

Some figure drawing tests are primarily measures of cognitive abilities or cognitive development. In these tests, there is a consideration of how well a child draws and the content of a child's drawing. In some tests, the child's self-image is considered through the use of the drawings. In other figure drawing tests, interpersonal relationships are assessed by having the child draw a family or some other situation in which more than one person is present. Some tests are used for the evaluation of child abuse. Other tests involve

personality interpretation through drawings of objects, such as a tree or a house, as well as people. Finally, some figure drawing tests are used as part of the diagnostic procedure for specific types of psychological or neuropsychological impairment, such as central nervous system dysfunction or **mental retardation**.

### Precautions

Despite the flexibility in administration and interpretation of figure drawings, these tests require skilled and trained administrators familiar with both the theory behind the tests and the structure of the tests themselves. Interpretations should be made with caution and the limitations of projective tests should be considered. It is generally a good idea to use projective tests as part of an overall test battery. There is little professional support for the use of figure drawing, so the examples that follow should be interpreted with caution.

### Description

The Draw-A-Man Test, developed by Goodenough in 1926 was the first formal figure drawing test. It was used to estimate a child's cognitive and intellectual abilities reflected in the drawing's quality. The test was later revised by Harris in 1963 as the Goodenough Harris Drawing Test (GHDT), which included a detailed scoring system and allowed for drawings of men, women, and the self. The scoring system primarily reflected the way in which the child is maturing cognitively. The GHDT is appropriate for children between the ages of three and 17, although it has been found to be most useful for children between three and 10.

The Draw-A-Person test (DAP) was developed by Machover in 1948 and used figure drawings in a more projective way, focusing on how the drawings reflected the anxieties, impulses, self-esteem, and personality of the test taker. In this test, children are first asked to draw a picture of a person. Then, they are asked to draw a picture of a person of the sex opposite of the first drawing. Sometimes, children are also asked to draw a picture of the self and/or family members. Then, they are asked a series of questions about themselves and the drawings. These questions can be about the mood, the ambitions, and the good and bad qualities of the people in the drawings. The pictures and the questions on the DAP are meant to elicit information about the child's anxieties, impulses, and overall personality. The DAP is the most frequently used figure drawing test today. A scoring system appropriate for

adults was developed in 1993 by Mitchel, Trent, and McArthur.

In 1992, Naglieri and his colleagues created a more specific scoring system for figure drawing tests called the Draw-A-Person: Screening Procedure of Emotional Disturbance (DAP:SPED), based on a large standardization sample. This scoring method includes 55 items rated by the test administrator and based on the child's drawings and responses to questions. The DAP:SPED is appropriate for children aged six to 17. It is often used as a screening method for children who may be having difficulties with regard to social adjustment and require further evaluation.

The House-Tree-Person (HTP) test, created by Buck in 1948, provides a measure of a self-perception and attitudes by requiring the test taker to draw a house, a tree, and a person. The picture of the house is supposed to conjure the child's feelings toward his or her family. The picture of the tree is supposed to elicit feelings of strength or weakness. The picture of the person, as with other figure drawing tests, elicits information regarding the child's self-concept. The HTP, though mostly given to children and adolescents, is appropriate for anyone over the age of three.

The Kinetic Family Drawing technique (KFD), developed in 1970 by Burns and Kaufman, requires the test taker to draw a picture of his or her entire family. Children are asked to draw a picture of their family, including themselves, "doing something." This picture is meant to elicit the child's attitudes toward his or her family and the overall family dynamics. The KFD is sometimes interpreted as part of an evaluation of child abuse.

The Kinetic School Drawing technique (KSD), developed in 1974 by Prout and Phillips, requires the child to draw a picture of himself or herself, a teacher, and one or more classmates. This picture is meant to elicit the child's attitudes toward people at school and his or her functioning in the school environment.

### Results

As with all projective measures, scoring on figure drawing tests is more subjective. Specific scoring systems, such as the DAP:SPED can be used to provide more objective information. Most figure drawing tests have some sort of objective scoring system; however, the instructions given to the child, the questions asked by the test administrator, and the interpretations the administrator makes of the drawings are flexible and this makes it difficult to compare

results between children, even on the same measure. Also, many clinicians choose not to rely on the scoring systems and rely entirely on their own intuitive judgments regarding their interpretation of picture content.

Figure drawings are often interpreted with regard to appropriate cognitive development. Naglieri's DAP:SPED scoring system includes a consideration of what features in a drawing are appropriate for children of various ages. For example, five-year old children are expected to make fairly basic drawings of people, consisting of a head, eyes, nose, mouth, body, arms, and legs. An 11-year-old, on the other hand is expected to have more details in the picture, such as a more defined neck, clothes, and arms in a particular direction.

Sometimes, figure drawings are assessed with regard to self image. Children often project themselves in the drawings. For example, females with body image concerns may reflect these concerns in their drawings. Victims of sexual abuse may stress sexual characteristics in their drawings.

Psychological, neuropsychological, or emotional dysfunction can also be considered in figure drawing interpretation. This type of interpretation is often done with figure drawings made by adults. For example, a person who omits or distorts body parts may have emotional impairment. Excessive detail with regard to the sexual nature of the drawing may indicate sexual maladjustment.

Family dynamics are also interpreted through figure drawings. For example, in the Kinetic Family Drawing test, a picture where family members are in separate rooms may indicate isolation or a lack of interaction between family members.

Figure drawings are also interpreted with regard to child abuse. In 1994, Von Hutton developed a scoring system for both the HTP and DAP focusing on indicators of child abuse that may be present in drawings. The drawing of the family in the KFD test may also provide indicators of abuse.

There has been much debate over the overall reliability and validity of figure drawing tests (and projective tests in general). For example, when structured scoring systems are used, the DAP has been found to be a reliable measure, especially for cognitive development in children. However, with regard to specific personality characteristics, self-image issues, or personality dysfunctions, there has been relatively little support for the use of figure drawings.

## KEY TERMS

**Projective test**—A psychological test in which the test taker responds to or provides ambiguous, abstract, or unstructured stimuli, often in the form of pictures or drawings.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing scoring norms. The DAP:SPED structured scoring system was standardized using a sample of over 2,300 children and adolescents.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Groth-Marnat, Gary. *Handbook of Psychological Assessment* 3rd edition. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.

Kline, Paul. *The Handbook of Psychological Testing*. New York: Routledge, 1999.

Reynolds, Cecil R. *Comprehensive Clinical Psychology, Volume 4: Assessment*. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1998.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

Flooding see **Exposure treatment**

## Fluoxetine

### Definition

Fluoxetine is an antidepressant of the type known as **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRI). It is sold in the United States under the brand names Prozac and Sarafem.

### Purpose

Fluoxetine is used to treat **depression**, **premenstrual syndrome**, bulimia, and **obsessive-compulsive disorder**.

### Description

Serotonin is a neurotransmitter—a **brain** chemical that carries nerve impulses from one nerve cell to another. Researchers think that depression and certain other



**Prozac (fluoxetine hydrochloride) capsule** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

mental disorders may be caused, in part, because there is not enough serotonin being released and transmitted in the brain. Like the other SSRI **antidepressants**, **fluoxetamine** (Luvox), **sertraline** (Zoloft), and **paroxetine** (Paxil), fluoxetine increases the level of brain serotonin (also known as 5-HT). Increased serotonin levels in the brain may be beneficial in patients with obsessive-compulsive disorder, alcoholism, certain types of headaches, **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), premenstrual tension and mood swings, and **panic disorder**.

Fluoxetine was the first of the class of antidepressants called **SSRIs** to be approved for use in the United States. In 2000, fluoxetine was approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in treating premenstrual dysphoric disorder.

The benefits of fluoxetine develop slowly over a period of several weeks. Patients should be aware of this and continue to take the drug as directed, even if they feel no immediate improvement.

Fluoxetine (marketed as Prozac) is available in 10-, 20-, and 40-mg capsules, 10-mg tablets, and in a liquid solution with 20 mg of active drug per 5 ml. Prozac Weekly capsules are a time-release formula containing 90 mg of active drug. Sarafem is available in 10- and 20-mg capsules.

### Recommended dosage

Fluoxetine therapy in adults is started as a single 20-mg dose, initially taken in the morning. Depending on the patient's response after four to six weeks of therapy, this dose can be increased up to a total of 80 mg per day. Doses over 20 mg per day can be given as equally divided morning and afternoon doses.

### Precautions

Patients taking fluoxetine should be monitored closely for **insomnia**, **anxiety**, mania, significant weight loss, **seizures**, and thoughts of **suicide**.

Caution should also be exercised when prescribing fluoxetine to patients with impaired liver or kidney function, the elderly (over age 60) children, individuals with known manic-depressive disorder or a history of seizures, people with diabetes, and individuals expressing ideas of committing suicide.

Individuals should not take monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) during fluoxetine therapy, for two weeks prior to beginning fluoxetine therapy, and for five weeks after stopping fluoxetine therapy.

Care should be taken to weigh the risks and benefits of this drug in women who are, or wish to become, pregnant, as well as in breast-feeding mothers.

People with diabetes should monitor their blood or urine sugar more carefully, since fluoxetine can affect blood sugar.

Until an individual understands the effects that fluoxetine may have, he or she should avoid driving, operating dangerous machinery, or participating in hazardous activities. Alcohol should not be used while taking fluoxetine.

### Side effects

More common side effects include decreased sexual drive, restlessness, difficulty sitting still, skin rash, hives, and itching.

Less common side effects include fever and/or chills, and pain in joints or muscles.

Rare side effects include pain or enlargement of breasts and/or abnormal milk production in women, seizures, fast heart rate, irregular heartbeats, red or purple spots on the skin, low blood sugar and its symptoms (anxiety, chills, cold sweats, confusion, difficulty concentrating, drowsiness, excess hunger, rapid heart rate, headache, shakiness or unsteadiness, severe **fatigue**), low blood sodium and its symptoms (including confusion, seizures, drowsiness, dry mouth, severe thirst, decreased energy), serotonin syndrome (usually at least three of the following: diarrhea, fever, sweatiness, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking), excitability, agitation, irritability, pressured talking, difficulty breathing, and odd body or facial movements.

## KEY TERMS

**Bulimia**—An eating disorder characterized by binges in which large amounts of food are consumed, followed by forced vomiting.

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—Disorder in which the affected individual has an obsession (such as a fear of contamination, or thoughts he or she does not like to have and cannot control) and feels compelled to perform a certain act to neutralize the obsession (such as repeated hand washing).

**Premenstrual syndrome**—A severe change in mood that occurs in women immediately prior to, and during, their menstrual period.

## Interactions

Fluoxetine interacts with a long list of other medications. People starting this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. Patients should always inform all of their health-care providers, including dentists, that they are taking fluoxetine.

When taken with fluoxetine, blood levels of the following drugs may increase: **benzodiazepines**, **beta blockers**, **carbamazepine**, dextromethorphan, **haloperidol**, atorvastatin, lovastatin, simvastatin, phenytoin, and tricyclic antidepressants.

The following drugs may increase the risk of serotonin syndrome: dexfenfluramine, fenfluramine, and tryptophan.

When **buspirone** is taken with fluoxetine, the therapeutic effect of buspirone may be impaired.

Low blood sodium may occur when fluoxetine is taken along with diuretics.

Increased risk of mania and high blood pressure occurs when selegiline is taken along with fluoxetine.

Severe, fatal reactions have occurred when fluoxetine is given along with MAOIs.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

Anderson, Shawanda W., and Marvin B. Booker. "Cognitive Behavioral Therapy Versus Psychosurgery for

Refractory Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 18.1 (Winter 2006): 129.

Denninger, John W., and others. "Somatic Symptoms in Outpatients With Major Depressive Disorder Treated With Fluoxetine." *Psychosomatics: Journal of Consultation Liaison Psychiatry* 47.4 (Jul.–Aug.) 2006: 348–52.

Fava, Maurizio, and others. "Eszopiclone Co-Administered with Fluoxetine in Patients with Insomnia Coexisting with Major Depressive Disorder." *Biological Psychiatry* 59.11 (June 2006): 1052–60.

Hammad, Tarek A., Thomas Laughren, and Judith Racoonsin. "Suicidality in Pediatric Patients Treated with Antidepressant Drugs." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.3 (Mar. 2006): 332–39.

Kratochvil, Christopher J., and others. "Selecting an Antidepressant for the Treatment of Pediatric Depression." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.3 (Mar. 2006): 371–73.

Lam, Raymond W., and others. "The Can-SAD Study: A Randomized Controlled Trial of the Effectiveness of Light Therapy and Fluoxetine in Patients With Winter Seasonal Affective Disorder." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.5 (May 2006): 805–12.

Martenyi, Ferenc, and Victoria Soldatenkova. "Fluoxetine in the Acute Treatment and Relapse Prevention of Combat-Related Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder: Analysis of the Veteran Group of a Placebo-Controlled, Randomized Clinical Trial." *European Neuropsychopharmacology* 16.5 (July 2006): 340–49.

McGrath, Patrick J., and others. "Predictors of Relapse in a Prospective Study of Fluoxetine Treatment of Major Depression." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.9 (Sept. 2006): 1542–48.

Moreno, Carmen, Ansley M. Roche, and Laurence L. Greenhill. "Pharmacotherapy of Child and Adolescent Depression." *Child and Adolescent Psychiatric Clinics of North America* 15.4 (Oct. 2006): 977–98.

Mowla, Arash, Ahmad Ghanizadeh, and Azadeh Pani. "A Comparison of the Effects of Fluoxetine and Nortriptyline on the Symptoms of Major Depressive Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.2 (Apr. 2006): 209–11.

Mulder, Roger T., and others. "Six Months of Treatment for Depression: Outcome and Predictors of the Course of Illness." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.1 (Jan. 2006): 95–100.

Nemeroff, Charles B., and Michael E. Thase. "A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Comparison of Venlafaxine and Fluoxetine Treatment in Depressed Outpatients." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (Apr.–June 2007): 351–59.

Pinto-Meza, Alejandra, and others. "Gender Differences in Response to Antidepressant Treatment Prescribed in Primary Care. Does Menopause Make a Difference?" *Journal of Affective Disorders* 93.1–3 (July 2006): 53–60.

Pollack, Mark H., and others. "Olanzapine Augmentation of Fluoxetine for Refractory Generalized Anxiety

- Disorder: A Placebo Controlled Study.” *Biological Psychiatry* 59.3 (Feb. 2006): 211–15.
- Schreiber, Shaul, and Chaim G. Pick. “From Selective to Highly Selective SSRIs: A Comparison of the Antinociceptive Properties of Fluoxetine, Fluvoxamine, Citalopram and Escitalopram.” *European Neuropsychopharmacology* 16.6 (Aug. 2006): 464–68.
- Serrano-Blanco, A., and others. “Effectiveness and Cost-Effectiveness of Antidepressant Treatment in Primary Health Care: A Six-Month Randomised Study Comparing Fluoxetine to Imipramine.” *Journal of Affective Disorders* 91.2–3 (Apr. 2006): 153–63.
- Taravosh-Lahn, Kereshmeh Christel Bastida, and Yvon Delville. “Differential Responsiveness to Fluoxetine During Puberty.” *Behavioral Neuroscience* 120.5 (Oct. 2006): 1084–92.
- Taylor, Bonnie P., and others. “Psychomotor Slowing as a Predictor of Fluoxetine Nonresponse in Depressed Outpatients.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.1 (Jan. 2006): 73–78.
- Tiihonen, Jari, and others. “Antidepressants and the Risk of Suicide, Attempted Suicide, and Overall Mortality in a Nationwide Cohort.” *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.12 (Dec. 2006): 1358–67.
- Vasa, Roma A., Anthony R. Carlino, and Daniel S. Pine. “Pharmacotherapy of Depressed Children and Adolescents: Current Issues and Potential Directions.” *Biological Psychiatry* 59.11 (June 2006): 1021–28.

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Fluphenazine

### Definition

Fluphenazine is a phenothiazine antipsychotic sold under the brand names Permitil and Prolixin in the United States. It is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Fluphenazine is a drug used to treat psychotic disorders, agitation, and **dementia**.

### Description

Fluphenazine is one of many drugs in the group called the phenothiazines. Phenothiazines work by inhibiting the actions of the **brain** chemicals, **dopamine** and norepinephrine, which are overproduced in individuals with **psychosis**.

Fluphenazine is available in 1-mg, 2.5-mg, 5-mg, and 10-mg tablets, a liquid concentrate containing 5 mg/mL, a rapid-onset injectable form containing 2.5 mg/mL, and a long-acting injectable form containing 25 mg/mL.

### Recommended dosage

In children over age 16 and in adults, fluphenazine is usually given in oral dosages ranging from 0.5–10 mg daily. The total dosage is usually divided and taken two to four times throughout the day. The dosage is typically reduced at a gradual pace over time to a range between 1 mg and 5 mg. Older adults usually receive lower doses that begin in the range of 1.0–2.5 mg per day. In children under age 16, the usual range is 0.25–3.5 mg per day divided into several doses. Maximum dosage is normally 10 mg per day for this age group.

This drug is also available by injection. In adults, injections into the muscle range from 1.25–10 mg per day divided into several doses. A long-acting injectable form can also be administered to patients who have been stabilized on the drug. The dose for the long-acting preparation ranges from 12.5–25 mg given every one to four weeks in adults. The dosage for children is lower in all cases.

### Precautions

People with a history of **depression**, lung problems, heart disease, glaucoma, **seizures**, and kidney disease should take fluphenazine only after careful evaluation by their physician. In addition, those undergoing alcohol withdrawal and those who have received **electroconvulsive therapy** should take this drug with great caution and close physician supervision after discussing the risks and benefits with their doctor. Those over age 60 and children under age 12 should take fluphenazine only after a thorough assessment from their physician. Pregnant women should use fluphenazine with great caution.

Fluphenazine may cause drowsiness. People who take this drug should not drive, operate heavy machinery, or perform other hazardous tasks requiring mental alertness until they see how the drug affects them. People taking fluphenazine should avoid significant exposure to sunlight, as the drug may cause people to sunburn more easily. This drug can sometimes change the color of urine to a pinkish or reddish-brown color. Fluphenazine use can make people more susceptible to heat and increase the risk of heatstroke. People taking fluphenazine should get up slowly after being in a reclining position because of potential dizziness.

## Side effects

Relatively common side effects that accompany fluphenazine include drowsiness, dizziness, rash, dry mouth, **insomnia**, **fatigue**, muscular weakness, anorexia, blurred vision, some loss of muscular control, and amenorrhea (lack of menstruation) in women.

Dystonia (difficulty walking or moving) may occur with fluphenazine use. This condition may subside in 24 to 48 hours even when the person continues taking the drug and usually disappears when fluphenazine is discontinued.

Fluphenazine use may lead to the development of symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease. These symptoms may include a tight or mask-like expression on the face, drooling, tremors, "pill-rolling" motions in the fingers, cogwheel rigidity (abnormal rigidity in muscles characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched), and a shuffling gait. Taking anti-Parkinson drugs **benztropine mesylate** or **trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride** along with the fluphenazine usually controls these symptoms.

Fluphenazine has the potential to produce a serious side effect called **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may appear late in therapy and may not disappear even after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and with increasing dosage of fluphenazine. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

An occasionally reported side effect of fluphenazine is neuroleptic malignant syndrome. This is a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity; high fever; alterations in mental status; and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia (fast heartbeat), and arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat). People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physician immediately.

## Interactions

**Barbiturates** and the blood pressure drugs known as **beta blockers** can decrease the level of fluphenazine in the blood. Bromocriptine, a drug used for Parkinson's disease, also lowers the level of fluphenazine in

## KEY TERMS

**Agitation**—Excessive restlessness or emotional disturbance that is often associated with anxiety or psychosis.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (a syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses).

the blood. Conversely, antimalarial drugs can increase the level of fluphenazine in the blood.

The combination of fluphenazine with the drugs known as cyclic **antidepressants** lowers the concentrations of both drugs in the blood. Fluphenazine inhibits the blood pressure-lowering effects of the drug called guanadrel. Levodopa, a drug given to patients with Parkinson's disease, is less effective when combined with fluphenazine. The combination of fluphenazine with meperidine can cause very low blood pressure and significant depression of the central nervous system. The use of the muscle relaxant, orphenadrine, can lower the effective levels of fluphenazine in the blood.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Ananth, Jambur. "Mode of Action of Antipsychotic Agents." *Trends in Schizophrenia Research*. Hauppauge, NY: Nova Biomedical Books, 2005.
- Consumer Reports Staff. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*, 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.
- Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*, 2001–2002 ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.

- Hardman, Joel G., Lee E. Limbird, eds. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.
- Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

- Bhagar, Harpriya A., and Alan D. Schmetzer. "The Conventional Long-Acting Antipsychotics." *Annals of the American Psychotherapy Association* 9.1 (Spring 2006): 26–27.
- Conley, Robert R., and others. "Risperidone, Quetiapine, and Fluphenazine in the Treatment of Patients with Therapy-Refractory Schizophrenia." *Clinical Neuropharmacology* 28.4 (July–Aug. 2005): 163–68.
- Kelly, Deanna L., and Robert R. Conley. "Thyroid Function in Treatment-Resistant Schizophrenia Patients Treated With Quetiapine, Risperidone, or Fluphenazine." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 66.1 (Jan. 2005): 80–84.
- Kelly, Deanna L., and Robert R. Conley. "A Randomized Double-Blind 12-Week Study of Quetiapine, Risperidone or Fluphenazine on Sexual Functioning in People with Schizophrenia." *Psychoneuroendocrinology* 31.3 (Apr. 2006): 340–46.
- Stöllberger, Claudia, Johannes O. Huber, and Josef Finslerer. "Antipsychotic Drugs and QT Prolongation." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 20.5 (Sept. 2005): 243–51.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Flurazepam

### Definition

Flurazepam is a benzodiazepine hypnotic (sleeping medication) that is given by mouth. It is sold in the United States under the brand name of Dalmane, but is also manufactured and sold by several companies under its generic name.

### Purpose

Flurazepam is used for the short-term treatment of **insomnia**, which is a sleep disorder characterized by difficulty in falling or staying asleep.

### Description

Flurazepam is a benzodiazepine, which means that it belongs to a class of drugs whose primary actions are

to reduce the patient's **anxiety**, relax the skeletal muscles, and bring on sleep. Flurazepam is chemically and pharmacologically related to such other benzodiazepine hypnotics as **temazepam** (Restoril), **triazolam** (Halcion), **quazepam** (Doral), and **estazolam**. All the **benzodiazepines** work by enhancing the effects of a naturally occurring chemical in the body called gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA). GABA is a neurotransmitter, or chemical that helps to conduct nerve impulses across the tiny gaps between nerve cells. GABA acts to lower the level of activity in the central nervous system; it is involved in muscle relaxation, sedation, and sleep, and plays a role in preventing seizure activity.

Flurazepam decreases the time it takes the patient to fall asleep, thus reducing the number of nighttime awakenings and increasing the length of total sleep time. The difference between a benzodiazepine like flurazepam that is used to help patients fall asleep and those that are used as tranquilizers is the way that each type acts in the **brain**. The sleep-inducing benzodiazepines are faster in getting to the part of the brain that controls sleep. They also reach higher levels of concentration there than the benzodiazepines that are used as tranquilizers.

Flurazepam is available in 15- and 30-mg capsules.

### Recommended dosage

The usual dose of flurazepam is 15–30 mg taken by mouth at bedtime. Older or physically weakened patients are usually given the lower dose. Children younger than 15 and women who are pregnant or nursing a baby should not be given flurazepam. In addition, the drug should not be used for longer than four weeks.

### Precautions

Some of the flurazepam is metabolized (broken down) in the body to form another compound called desalkylflurazepam, which can also cause drowsiness the next day because it remains in the body for hours. This "hangover" effect is most common in people who are taking flurazepam on a daily basis. People who are taking flurazepam may not be able to safely operate machinery or drive a car the next day.

Patients who take flurazepam for several days or weeks may experience a reaction called rebound insomnia when they stop taking it. When a person takes a medication for sleep on a regular basis, the body adjusts to the presence of the drug. It tries to counteract the effects of the medication. As a result, when the person stops taking the sleeping medication, the body will take a few nights to return to its normal condition.

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Central nervous system depressant**—Any drug that lowers the level of stimulation or excitement in the central nervous system.

**Central nervous system stimulant**—Any drug that raises the level of activity in the central nervous system.

**Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)**—A neurotransmitter that helps to lower or reduce the level of excitement in the nerves, leading to muscle relaxation, calmness, sleep, and the prevention of seizures.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Metabolism**—The group of biochemical processes within the body that release energy in support of life.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Rebound effect**—A physical reaction to stopping a medication characterized by the reappearance of the symptom that the medication was given to suppress. For example, people who stop taking flurazepam may experience rebound insomnia.

During this period of readjustment, the person may experience a few sleepless hours each night.

The sleepiness that flurazepam brings about may be intensified if the patient drinks alcoholic beverages or takes other medications that contain central nervous system depressants. Common types of medications that may cause problems when combined with flurazepam include tranquilizers and antihistamines (allergy medications).

Elderly patients who are taking flurazepam should be monitored for signs of dizziness or loss of coordination. They are at increased risk of falling if they wake up and get out of bed during the night to get a drink of water or use the bathroom.

### Side effects

Some people experience dizziness, daytime drowsiness, and loss of coordination while they are taking flurazepam. Elderly patients may lose their balance and fall. Less common side effects include blurred vision, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea or constipation, nightmares, and a feeling of **depression**.

## Interactions

The effects of flurazepam are increased by other central nervous system depressants. These types of chemicals include alcohol, **sedatives**, and antihistamines. In addition, flurazepam may interact with antiseizure medications.

*See also* Sedatives and related drugs; Sleep disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda, MD: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

Blin, Olivier, and others. "A Double-Blind, Placebo- and Flurazepam-Controlled Investigation of the Residual Psychomotor and Cognitive Effects of Modified Release Zolpidem in Young Healthy Volunteers." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.3 (June 2006): 284–89.

Rosenberg, Russell P. "Sleep Maintenance Insomnia: Strengths and Weaknesses of Current Pharmacologic Therapies." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.1 (Jan.–Mar. 2006): 49–56.

Rowlett, James K., and others. "Anti-Conflict Effects of Benzodiazepines in Rhesus Monkeys: Relationship with Therapeutic Doses in Humans and Role of GABA-Sub(A) Receptors." *Psychopharmacology* 184.2 (Jan. 2006): 201–11.

Tamblyn, Robyn, and others. "A 5-Year Prospective Assessment of the Risk Associated with Individual Benzodiazepines and Doses in New Elderly Users." *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* 53.2 (Feb. 2005): 233–41.

Thomas, Sandra P. "From the Editor—Caution Urged in Prescribing Psychotropic Drugs for Older Patients." *Issues in Mental Health Nursing* 26.4 (May 2005): 357–58.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Fluvoxamine

### Definition

Fluvoxamine is an antidepressant of the type known as **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRI). It is marketed in the United States under the brand name Luvox.

## Purpose

Fluvoxamine is used to treat **depression**. It is also the first SSRI to be approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in **obsessive-compulsive disorder** in children, adolescents, and adults.

## Description

Serotonin is a **brain** chemical that carries nerve impulses from one nerve cell to another. Researchers think that depression and certain other mental disorders may be caused, in part, because there is not enough serotonin being released and transmitted in the brain. Like the other SSRI **antidepressants**, **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **sertraline** (Zoloft), and **paroxetine** (Paxil), fluvoxamine increases the level of brain serotonin (also known as 5-HT). Increased serotonin levels in the brain may be beneficial in patients with obsessive-compulsive disorder, alcoholism, certain types of headaches, **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), premenstrual tension and mood swings, and **panic disorder**.

Fluvoxamine was approved for use in adults in 1993. In 1997, the FDA approved this medication for the treatment of obsessive-compulsive disorder in children and adolescents.

Fluvoxamine is available in 25-, 50- and 100-mg tablets.

## Recommended dosage

Fluvoxamine therapy in adults is started as a single 50-mg dose taken at bedtime. Based on the patient's response to the medication, the dosage can be increased by 50 mg every four to seven days, until maximum benefit is achieved. Maximum dosage is 300 mg per day. Dosage over 100 mg per day should be given as equally divided morning and afternoon doses.

Fluvoxamine therapy in children is started as a single 25-mg dose, initially taken at bedtime. Based on the patient's response to the medication, the dosage can be increased by 25 mg every four to seven days, until maximum benefit is achieved. Maximum dosage in children is 200 mg per day. Dosage over 100 mg per day should be given as equally divided morning and afternoon doses.

## Precautions

Patients taking fluvoxamine should be monitored closely for the onset of mania, **seizures**, thoughts of **suicide**, and skin problems (including itching, hives, and rashes).

People with impaired liver function, **bipolar disorder** (manic depression), a history of seizures, or individuals contemplating suicide should take fluvoxamine only under close physician supervision.

A group of serious side effects, called serotonin syndrome, has resulted from the combination of SSRI drugs such as fluvoxamine and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). Serotonin syndrome usually consists of at least three of the following symptoms: diarrhea, fever, extreme perspiration, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking. Because of this, fluvoxamine should never be taken in combination with MAOIs. People taking any MAOIs, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAOI inhibitor and wait at least 14 days before starting fluvoxamine or any other antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing fluvoxamine and starting an MAOI.

Physicians and their patients should weigh the risks and benefits of this drug for women who are or wish to become pregnant, as well as in breast-feeding mothers.

Until an individual understands the effects that fluvoxamine may have on them, he or she should avoid driving, operating dangerous machinery, or participating in hazardous activities.

People should not use alcohol while taking fluvoxamine.

## Side effects

Common side effects of fluvoxamine therapy include decreased sex drive and diminished sexual performance.

Less common side effects of fluvoxamine therapy include changes in mood, behavior, or thinking; difficulty breathing; difficulty urinating; and twitches or uncontrollable movements of the face or body.

Rare side effects include difficulty moving, blurred vision, clumsiness, or problems with balance; seizures; difficulty moving the eyes; increased uncontrollable movements of the body or face; changes in the menstrual period; redness or irritation of the eyes or skin; peeling, itching, or burning sensation of the skin; sore throat, fever, and/or chills; easy bruising; nosebleeds; and, in women, abnormal milk production. People may also experience symptoms of serotonin syndrome, which usually consists of at least three of the following: restlessness, overexcitement, irritability, confusion, diarrhea, fever,

## KEY TERMS

**Serotonin syndrome**—A condition characterized by at least three of the following symptoms: diarrhea, fever, extreme perspiration, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking. It is a result of too much serotonin in the body.

overactive reflexes, difficulty with coordination, uncontrollable shivering or shaking, and trembling or twitching.

### Interactions

Fluvoxamine interacts with a long list of other medications. Anyone starting this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. Patients should always inform all their health-care providers, including dentists, that they are taking fluvoxamine.

When taken together with fluvoxamine, the effect of the following drugs may be enhanced: **benzodiazepines**, **beta blockers**, **clozapine**, anti-seizure drugs phenytoin and **carbamazepine**, tricyclic antidepressants, **pimozide**, and cholesterol-lowering drugs such as atorvastatin, lovastatin, and simvastatin.

The diet pills dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine may increase the incidence of serotonin syndrome when taken with fluvoxamine.

When **buspirone** is given with fluvoxamine, the therapeutic effect of buspirone may be decreased and the risk of seizures increased.

Increased risk of mania and high blood pressure occurs with selegiline.

Severe, fatal reactions mentioned above have occurred when fluvoxamine is given along with MAOIs.

Fluvoxamine given with warfarin (a blood thinner) may increase the possibility of bleeding.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Preston, John D., John H. O’Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

- Albers, Lawrence J., and others. “Low-Dose Fluvoxamine as an Adjunct to Reduce Olanzapine Therapeutic Dose Requirements: A Prospective Dose-Adjusted Drug Interaction Strategy.” *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 25.2 (Apr. 2005): 170–74.
- Erzegovesi, Stefano, and others. “Low-Dose Risperidone Augmentation of Fluvoxamine Treatment in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder: A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Study.” *European Neuropsychopharmacology* 15.1 (Jan. 2005): 69–74.
- Ginsburg, Golda S., Mark A. Riddle, and Mark Davies. “Somatic Symptoms in Children and Adolescents With Anxiety Disorders.” *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.10 (Oct. 2006): 1179–87.
- Husted, David S., and others. “Effect of Comorbid Tics on a Clinically Meaningful Response to 8-Week Open-Label Trial of Fluoxetine in Obsessive Compulsive Disorder.” *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (Apr.–June 2007): 332–37.
- Irons, Jane. “Fluvoxamine in the Treatment of Anxiety Disorders.” *Neuropsychiatric Disease And Treatment* 1.4 (2005): 289–99.
- Mandelli, Laura, and others. “Improvement of Cognitive Functioning in Mood Disorder Patients with Depressive Symptomatic Recovery During Treatment: An Exploratory Analysis.” *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 60.5 (Oct. 2006): 598–604.
- Morishita, Shigeru, and Seizaburo Arita. “Clinical Characteristics as Predictors of Response to Fluvoxamine, Paroxetine and Milnacipran in Patients with Depression.” *Current Psychiatry Reviews* 1.3 (Nov. 2005): 319–24.
- Morishita, Shigeru, and Seizaburo Arita. “Treatment of Bipolar II Depression with Milnacipran, Fluvoxamine, Paroxetine, or Maprotiline.” *International Medical Journal* 12.4 (Dec. 2005): 283–85.
- O’Connor, K. P., and others. “Cognitive Behaviour Therapy and Medication in the Treatment of Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder.” *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 113.5 (May 2006): 408–19.
- Preskorn, Sheldon H., and others. “The Potential for Clinically Significant Drug-Drug Interactions Involving the CYP 2D6 System: Effects with Fluoxetine and Paroxetine Versus Sertraline.” *Journal of Psychiatric Practice* 13.1 (Jan. 2007): 5–12.
- Schreiber, Shaul, and Chaim G. Pick. “From Selective to Highly Selective SSRIs: A Comparison of the Antinociceptive Properties of Fluoxetine, Fluvoxamine, Citalopram and Escitalopram.” *European Neuropsychopharmacology* 16.6 (Aug. 2006): 464–68.
- van Oppen, Patricia, and others. “Cognitive Therapy and Exposure in Vivo Alone and in Combination With Fluvoxamine in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder: A 5-Year Follow-Up.” *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 66.11 (Nov 2005): 1415–22.
- Yoshimura, Reiji, and others. “Successful Treatment for Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder with Addition of

Low-Dose Risperidone to Fluvoxamine: Implications for Plasma Levels of Catecholamine Metabolites and Serum Brain-Derived Neurotrophic Factor Levels." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 60.3 (June 2006): 389–93.

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Folie à deux see **Shared psychotic disorder**

## Frotteurism

### Definition

Frotteurism is a disorder in which a person derives sexual pleasure or gratification from rubbing, especially the genitals, against another person, usually in a crowd. The person being rubbed is a victim. Frotteurism is a paraphilia, a disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving objects, the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or children or other nonconsenting people.

### Description

The primary focus of frotteurism is touching or rubbing one's genitals against the clothing or body of a nonconsenting person. This behavior most often occurs in situations that allow rapid escape. The frotteage (the act of rubbing against the other person) is most commonly practiced in crowded places such as malls, elevators, on busy sidewalks, and on public transportation vehicles.

The most commonly practiced form of frotteurism is rubbing one's genitals against the victim's thighs or buttocks. A common alternative is to rub one's hands over the victim's genitals or breasts.

Most people who engage in frotteurism (sometimes called frotteurs) usually fantasize that they have an exclusive and caring relationship with their victims during the moment of contact. However, once contact is made and broken, the person committing the act realizes that escape is important to avoid prosecution.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

There is no scientific consensus concerning the cause of frotteurism. Most experts attribute the behav-

ior to an initially random or accidental touching of another's genitals that the person finds sexually exciting. Successive repetitions of the act tend to reinforce and perpetuate the behavior.

#### Symptoms

For the disorder to be clinically diagnosed, the symptoms must meet the diagnostic criteria as listed in the professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. These symptoms include:

- experiencing recurrent, intense, or sexually arousing fantasies, sexual urges, or behaviors that involve touching and rubbing against a nonconsenting person
- acting on these sexual urges, or the fantasies or urges cause significant distress to the individual or are disruptive to his everyday functioning

### Demographics

Males are much more likely to engage in frotteurism than females. Females are the most common victims of frotteurism. Most acts of frotteurism are performed by people between 15 to 25 years of age. After the age of 25, the acts decline.

### Diagnosis

Most people with frotteurism never seek professional help, but people with the disorder may come into the mental health system as a result of a court order. The **diagnosis** is established in an interview between the person accused of frotteurism and the mental health professional (a **psychiatrist** or a **psychologist**, for example). In the interview, the individual acknowledges that touching others is a preferred or exclusive means of sexual gratification. Because this acknowledgment can bring criminal charges, the disorder is underdiagnosed and its prevalence is largely unknown. In some cases, other people besides the accused may be interviewed, including observers or the victim.

### Treatments

For treatment to be successful, the patient must want to modify existing patterns of behavior. This initial step is difficult for most people with this disorder to take.

Behavior therapy is commonly used to try to treat frotteurism. The patient must learn to control the impulse to touch nonconsenting victims. One pharmacological therapy that has been tried with some success

## KEY TERMS

**Frottage**—The act of touching or rubbing against the body or genitals of a nonconsenting individual.

**Paraphilia**—A disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving (1) nonhuman objects, (2) the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or (3) children or other nonconsenting people.

in people who engage in frotteurism and other **paraphilic** disorders is leuprolide. The action of this drug ultimately results in suppression of testosterone production, with the effect of reducing sexual urges.

Frotteurism is a criminal act in many jurisdictions. It is usually classified as a misdemeanor. As a result, legal penalties are often minor. It is also not easy to prosecute people who are charged with frotteurism because intent to touch is difficult to prove. In their defense statements, the accused often claim that the contact was accidental.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for eliminating frotteurism is poor as most people who engage in the behavior have no desire to change it. Because frotteurism involves nonconsenting partners and is against the law in many jurisdictions, the possibility of embarrassment may deter some individuals.

### Prevention

Most experts agree that providing guidance as to behavior that is culturally acceptable will prevent the development of a paraphilia such as frotteurism. The origin of some instances of frotteurism may be a truly accidental contact that becomes associated with sexual gratification. There is no way to predict when such an association will occur.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Gelder, Michael, Richard Mayou, and Philip Cowen. *Shorter Oxford Textbook of Psychiatry*. 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.  
 Kohut, John J., and Roland Sweet. *Real Sex: Titillating but True Tales of Bizarre Fetishes, Strange Compulsions, and Just Plain Weird Stuff*. New York: Plume, 2000.  
 Wilson, Josephine F. *Biological Foundations of Human Behavior*. New York: Harcourt, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Eiguer, A. "Cynicism: Its Function in the Perversions." *International Journal of Psychoanalysis* 80.4 (1999): 671–84.  
 Rosler, A., and E. Witztum. "Pharmacotherapy of Paraphilic Disorders in the Next Millennium." *Behavioral Science Law* 18.1 (2000): 43–56.  
 Schober, Justine M., Peter M. Byrne, and Phyllis J. Kuhn. "Leuprolide Acetate is a Familiar Drug that May Modify Sex-Offender Behavior: The Urologist's Role." *BJU International* 97 (2006):684–86.  
 Seelig, B. J., and L. S. Rosof. "Normal and Pathological Altruism." *Journal of the American Psychoanalytic Association* 49.3 (2001): 933–59.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.  
 American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.  
 American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NW, Washington, DC, 20002-4242, Telephone: (800) 374-2721 or (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org/>>.

L.Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Fugue see **Dissociative fugue**



# G

## Gabapentin

### Definition

Gabapentin is an antiseizure medication. It is sold in the United States under the trade name Neurontin.

### Purpose

Gabapentin is used in combination with other antiseizure (anticonvulsant) drugs to manage partial **seizures** with or without generalization in individuals over the age of 12. Gabapentin can also be used to treat partial seizures in children between the ages of three and 12. Off-label uses (legal uses not specifically approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration [FDA]) include treatment of severe, **chronic pain** caused by nerve damage, such as occurs in shingles, diabetic neuropathy, multiple sclerosis, or post-herpetic neuralgia. Studies are also looking at using gabapentin to treat **bipolar disorder** (also known as manic-depressive disorder), with the most recent work focusing on using the drug as a prophylaxis. It has not shown good effectiveness as an acute treatment for bipolar disorder.

### Description

**Brain** cells normally transmit nerve impulses from one cell to another by secreting chemicals known as **neurotransmitters**. Gabapentin is chemically related to a naturally occurring neurotransmitter called GABA (gamma-amino butyric acid). The actual mechanism of action by which gabapentin acts in the brain to control seizures and treat pain is not known, although it appears to alter the action of nerve cells.

Gabapentin was approved for use in the United States in 1993. A liquid formulation was approved for use in 2000. Use in children ages three to 12 was also approved by the FDA in 2000.

Gabapentin is available in 100-, 300-, and 400-mg capsules; in 600- and 800- mg tablets; and in a liquid solution containing 250 mg per 5 ml.

### Recommended dosage

#### For epilepsy

People over the age of 12 can begin with an initial does of 300 mg three times a day, which can be gradually increased as necessary, usually to no more than 1,800 mg daily. For children ages three to 12, the dose is based on body weight, initially 10–15 mg per kilogram per day in three separate doses. The physician may choose to increase this dose as necessary. For a child under the age of three, the decision about use and dosage will be made by the doctor. For older adults, the maximum daily dose does not usually exceed 600 mg three times a day.

#### For pain

This dosing involves a gradual increase, with an initial does of 300 mg on the first day, followed by 300 mg twice on the second day, and 300 mg three times on day three. A physician may increase this dose to a maximum daily dose of 1,800 mg.

### Precautions

Women who are breast-feeding and people who have decreased kidney functioning should discuss the risks and benefits of this drug with their physician. Women who are or wish to become pregnant will also require a careful assessment of the risks and benefits of gabapentin.

Patients should not suddenly discontinue gabapentin, which can result in an increased risk of seizures. If the medication needs to be discontinued, the dosage should be reduced gradually over a week.

Until an individual understands the effects that gabapentin may have, he or she should avoid driving,

## KEY TERMS

**Diabetic neuropathy**—A condition in which the nerve endings, particularly in the legs and feet, become less sensitive. Minor injuries, such as blisters or callouses, are not felt and can thus become infected and become more serious problems.

**Multiple sclerosis**—A disease characterized by patches of hardened tissue in the brain or spinal cord, paralysis, and/or muscle tremors.

**Neuralgia**—Pain that extends along the course of a nerve.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

operating dangerous machinery, or participating in hazardous activities. Alcohol should be avoided while taking gabapentin.

### Side effects

Patients who experience the following side effects of gabapentin should check with their doctor immediately. More common side effects are unsteadiness, clumsiness, and uncontrollable back-and-forth eye movements or eye rolling. Less common side effects include **depression**, irritability, other mood changes or changes in thinking, and decreased memory. Rare side effects include pain in the lower back or side, difficulty urinating, fever and/or chills, cough, or hoarseness.

Children under age 12 who have the following more common side effects should see a doctor immediately: aggressive behavior, irritability, **anxiety**, difficulty concentrating and paying attention, crying, depression, mood swings, increased emotionality, hyperactivity, and suspiciousness or distrust.

Multiple side effects often occur when a patient starts taking gabapentin. While these side effects usually go away on their own, if they last or are particularly troublesome, the patient should consult a doctor. More common side effects that occur when first starting to take gabapentin include blurred or double vision; muscle weakness or pain; swollen hands, feet, or legs; trembling or shaking; and increased **fatigue** or weakness. Less common side effects that occur when initiating gabapentin treatment include back pain, constipation, decreased sexual drive, diarrhea, dry mouth and eyes, frequent urination, headache, indigestion, low blood pressure, nausea, ringing in the ears, runny nose, slurred speech,

difficulty thinking and sleeping, weight gain, twitching, nausea and/or vomiting, weakness.

### Interactions

Antacids can decrease gabapentin levels in the blood. They should be taken at least two hours before taking gabapentin.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Ellsworth, Allan J. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis: Mosby, Incorporated, 1999.

*Mosby's Drug Consult*. St. Louis: Mosby, Incorporated, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

Vieta, Eduard, et al. "A Double-Blind, Randomized Placebo-Controlled, Prophylaxis Study of Adjunctive Gabapentin for Bipolar Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67 (2006): 473–77.

#### OTHER

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Gabapentin." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202732.html>>.

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Galantamine

### Definition

Galantamine belongs to a class of drugs called acetylcholinesterase inhibitors. In the United States, galantamine is sold under the brand name Razadyne (formerly Reminyl).

### Purpose

Galantamine is used to treat the symptoms of **Alzheimer's disease**. Galantamine is also being evaluated for the treatment of respiratory **depression**, mania, **vascular dementia** due to **stroke** or cardiac arrest that causes **brain** lesions, and reversal of side effects (e.g., blurred vision and mental changes) caused by medications such as scopolamine, as well as for other mental disorders.

### Description

Alzheimer's disease develops when brain cells, called neurons, undergo an early and selective death. It is believed that the premature death of these neurons

may be prevented if stimulated by a brain chemical called acetylcholine. Acetylcholine is recycled by an enzyme called acetylcholinesterase. Galantamine works by inhibiting this enzyme. The inhibition of acetylcholinesterase increases the concentration of available acetylcholine.

Galantamine has only been studied, and is only used, in patients with mild-to-moderate Alzheimer's disease according to the Alzheimer's Disease Assessment Scale.

Galantamine is available in 4-mg, 8-mg, and 12-mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended initial dose of galantamine in adults is 4 mg twice daily. After a minimum of four weeks of treatment with galantamine, the dosage may be increased to 8 mg twice daily. Further increases to 12 mg twice daily should be initiated only after a minimum of four weeks at the previous dose.

Increased side effects associated with higher doses may prevent the increase in dose in some patients. Patients with moderate liver or kidney problems should not exceed 16 mg of galantamine daily.

### Precautions

Galantamine should not be used in patients with severe liver or kidney problems. Since there are no well-controlled studies for the use of galantamine in pregnancy, galantamine should only be used if the potential benefits justify the potential risks to the fetus.

Patients who are undergoing anesthesia or bladder or gastrointestinal surgery should take galantamine only after a discussion with their physician. Patients with gastrointestinal problems should be closely monitored if it is decided that they should take galantamine. Galantamine should be used under close physician supervision in patients who have Parkinson's disease, severe asthma, or obstructive pulmonary disease. Because galantamine may slow down the heart, patients with any heart conditions, and especially patients taking other medications that slow down the heart, should be evaluated before starting galantamine.

### Side effects

The most common side effects reported with the use of galantamine are nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, anorexia, and abdominal pain. These occur most often at dosage-escalation periods. The average duration of nausea is five to seven days. These side effects tend to be less frequent if the patient is taking a total

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, acetylcholine has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Acetylcholinesterase**—The chemical responsible for the breakdown of acetylcholine.

**Parkinson's disease**—A disease of the nervous system most common in people over age 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness.

daily dosage of 16 mg. Eleven percent of patients receiving 24 mg daily lose weight, while 6% of patients receiving 16 mg daily experience weight loss.

Other common side effects include dizziness, headache, tremors, **fatigue**, depression, agitation, irritation, and **insomnia**. These side effects have a higher incidence and severity if higher doses are used. If side effects become severe, the dosage should be adjusted downward under physician supervision.

### Interactions

There is currently little data regarding potential drug interactions with galantamine. Medications that are known to increase levels of galantamine in the body include cimetidine, erythromycin, ketoconazole, and **paroxetine**.

### Resources

#### PERIODICALS

Ancoli-Israel, Sonia, and others. "Effects of Galantamine Versus Donepezil on Sleep in Patients with Mild to Moderate Alzheimer Disease and Their Caregivers: A Double-Blind, Head-To-Head, Randomized Pilot Study." *Alzheimer Disease & Associated Disorders* 19.4 (October–December 2005): 240–45.

Biederman, Joseph, and others. "A Double-Blind Comparison of Galantamine Hydrogen Bromide and Placebo in Adults with Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder: A Pilot Study." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.2 (April 2006): 163–66.

Brodaty, Henry, and others. "Galantamine Prolonged-Release Formulation in the Treatment of Mild to Moderate Alzheimer's Disease." *Dementia and Geriatric Cognitive Disorders* 20.2–3 (August 2005): 120–32.

- Harry, Robin D. J., and Konstantine K. Zakzanis. "A Comparison of Donepezil and Galantamine in the treatment of Cognitive Symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease: A Meta-Analysis." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 20.3 (April 2005): 183–87.
- Koontz, Jennifer, and Andrius Baskys. "Effects of Galantamine on Working Memory and Global Functioning in Patients with Mild Cognitive Impairment: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study." *American Journal of Alzheimer's Disease and Other Dementias* 20.5 (September–October 2005): 295–302.
- López-Pousa, S., and others. "Differential Efficacy of Treatment with Acetylcholinesterase Inhibitors in Patients with Mild and Moderate Alzheimer's Disease Over a 6-Month Period." *Dementia and Geriatric Cognitive Disorders* 19.4 (March 2005): 189–95.
- Ochoa, Enrique L. M. "Galantamine May Improve Attention and Speech in Schizophrenia." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 21.2 (March 2006): 127–28.
- Robinson, Dean M., and Greg L. Plosker. "Galantamine Extended Release in Alzheimer's Disease: Profile Report." *Drugs and Aging* 23.10 (2006): 839–42.
- Rockwood, Kenneth, and others. "Attainment of Treatment Goals by People with Alzheimer's Disease Receiving Galantamine: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 174.8 (April 2006): 1099–1105.
- Schubert, Max H., Keith A. Young, and Paul B. Hicks. "Galantamine Improves Cognition in Schizophrenic Patients Stabilized on Risperidone." *Biological Psychiatry* 60.6 (September 2006): 530–33.
- Takeda, A., and others. "A Systematic Review of the Clinical Effectiveness of Donepezil, Rivastigmine and Galantamine on Cognition, Quality of Life and Adverse Events in Alzheimer's Disease." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 21.1 (January 2006): 17–28.

#### OTHER

Ortho-McNeil Neurologics, Inc. "Full U.S. Prescribing Information for Razadyne." Available online at <[http://www.razadyneer.com/active/janus/en\\_US/assets/common/company/pi/razadyne.pdf](http://www.razadyneer.com/active/janus/en_US/assets/common/company/pi/razadyne.pdf)>. Revised May 2006.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Gambling see **Pathological gambling disorder**

## Ganser's syndrome

### Definition

Ganser's syndrome is a rare disorder in which the individual simulates a psychotic illness or dissociated

state. The individual's actions are presumed to be the result of unconscious efforts to escape from an intolerable situation, most typically in psychiatric institutions or prisons. The most common feature of Ganser's syndrome is the giving of approximate answers to questions (e.g.,  $5 + 3 = 7$ ).

### Description

Although this disorder was previously classified as a **factitious disorder**, the American Psychiatric Association has redefined Ganser's syndrome and placed it in the category called "Dissociative Disorder Not Otherwise Specified." Sometimes called "the syndrome of approximate answers," Ganser's syndrome is most often seen in male prisoners. In the past, this was so much the case that early clinicians called the syndrome prison **psychosis**, despite the fact that it is not a true psychosis. (Psychosis is characterized by a radical change in personality and a distorted sense of reality.) The disorder has also been referred to as hysterical pseudodementia, due to the resemblance of responses to those of demented patients. However, data on the prevalence of the syndrome and on links within families have not been gathered and analyzed.

Ganser's syndrome is usually sudden in onset and, like **malingering**, seems to arise in response to an opportunity for personal gain or the avoidance of some responsibility. The patient will offer nearly correct replies when asked questions about facts of common knowledge, such as the number of days in a year, the number of months in a year, subtracting 7 from 100, the product of 4 times 5, etc. To such questions, the patient may respond by stating that there are 360 days in a year, 11 months in a year, 94 for the result of subtracting 7 from 100, and that 21 is the product of 4 times 5. These persons appear to have no difficulty in understanding questions asked, but appear to provide incorrect answers deliberately.

This syndrome is seen in conjunction with a pre-existing severe personality disorder. However, unless the patient is willing to admit to the manufactured nature of the symptoms, or unless there is conclusive objective evidence contradicting the syndrome, determining whether the patient has a true disorder may be impossible. As with its sudden onset, disappearance of the symptoms can be just as fast. However, symptoms can also appear to worsen if the patient believes someone is watching. When reviewing a case of Ganser's syndrome, the clinician must consider factitious disorder and malingering as alternative diagnoses.

## KEY TERMS

**Factitious disorder**—A type of mental disturbance in which patients intentionally act physically or mentally ill without obvious benefits. It is distinguished from malingering by the absence of an obvious motive, and from conversion disorder by intentional production of symptoms.

**Malingering**—Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Enoch, M. David, and Hadrian N. Ball. *Uncommon Psychiatric Syndromes*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

### PERIODICALS

- Levenson, James L. "Somatoform Disorders: A Medicolegal Guide." *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* 59.5 (November 2005): 349.
- Merckelbach, Harald, Maarten Peters, Marko Jelicic, Ineke Brands, and Tom Smeets. "Detecting Malingering of Ganser-Like Symptoms with Tests: A Case Study." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 60.5 (October 2006): 636–38.

Jack H. Booth, PsyD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Gender dysphoria see **Gender identity disorder**

## Gender identity disorder

### Description

Gender identity disorder is a condition characterized by a persistent feeling of discomfort or inappropriateness concerning one's anatomic sex. The disorder typically begins in childhood with gender identity disconnects and is manifested in adolescence or adulthood by a person dressing in clothing associated with the

desired gender, as opposed to one's birth gender and exhibiting other behaviors associated with the self-perceived sex identity. In extreme cases, persons with gender identity disorder may seek gender reassignment surgery, also known as a sex-change operation.

### Description

Gender identity disorder is distressing to those who have it. It is especially difficult to cope with because it remains unresolved until gender reassignment surgery has been performed. Most people with this disorder grow up feeling rejected and out of place. **Suicide** attempts and **substance abuse** are common. Most adolescents and adults with the disorder eventually attempt to pass or live as members of the opposite sex.

Gender identity disorder may be as old as humanity. Cultural anthropologists and other scientists have observed a number of cross-gender behaviors in classical and Hindu mythology, Western and Asian classical history, and in many late nineteenth- and early twentieth-century pre-literate cultures. This consistent record across cultures and time lends support to the notion that the disorder may be, at least in part, biological in origin. Not all behavioral scientists share this conclusion, however.

Behavioral experimentation, particularly when a child is young, is considered normal. As they grow, children will often experiment with a variety of gender role behaviors as they learn to make the fine distinctions between masculine and feminine role expectations of the society in which they live. Some young boys occasionally exhibit behaviors that Western culture has traditionally labeled "feminine." Examples of these behaviors include wearing a dress, using cosmetics, or playing with dolls.

In a similar manner, some young girls will occasionally assume masculine roles during play. An example of this behavior includes pretending to be the father when playing house. Some girls temporarily adopt a cluster of masculine behaviors. These youngsters are often designated as tomboys. Most experts agree that such temporary or episodic adopting of behaviors opposite to one's gender is normal and usually constitute learning experiences in the acquisition of normal sex role socialization.

In cases that are considered pathological, however, children deviate from the typical model of exploring masculine and feminine behaviors. Such children develop inflexible, compulsive, persistent, and rigidly stereotyped patterns. On one extreme are boys who become excessively masculine. The opposite

extreme is seen in effeminate boys who reject their masculinity and rigidly insist that they are really girls or that they want to become mothers and bear children.

Boys with these traits frequently avoid playing with other boys, dress in girls' clothing, play predominantly with girls, try out cosmetics and wigs, and display stereotypically feminine gait, arm movements, and body gestures. Although much less common, some girls may similarly reject traditionally feminine roles and mannerisms in favor of masculine characteristics, including a refusal to urinate sitting down. Professional **intervention** is required for both extremes of gender behavior.

This disorder is different from transvestitism or **transvestic fetishism**, in which cross-dressing occurs for sexual pleasure. Furthermore, the transvestite does not identify with the other sex.

Adults with gender identity disorder sometimes live their lives as members of the opposite sex. They often cross-dress and prefer to be seen in public as a member of the other sex. Some people with the disorder seek sex reassignment surgery.

Persons with gender identity disorder frequently state that they were born the wrong sex. They may describe their sexual organs as being ugly and may refrain from touching their genitalia. People with gender identity disorder may also try to hide their secondary sex characteristics. For instance, males may try to shave off or pluck their body hair. Many men elect to take estrogens in an effort to enlarge their breasts. Females may try to hide their breasts by binding them. There is a growing movement among people who consider themselves transgendered to demand that the condition not be viewed or classified as a disorder but as part of a spectrum of sexual development.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is no clearly understood or universally agreed-upon cause for gender identity disorder. However, most experts agree that there may be a strong biological basis for the disorder.

The sex of a human baby is determined by chromosomes. Males have a Y chromosome and one X chromosome, while females have two X chromosomes. The Y chromosome carries a gene known as the testis-determining factor. This gene sets off a developmental pathway that is typically "male," resulting in testes development and development of secondary sexual structures that are male, including a penis and scrotum

and differentiation in the fetal **brain**. Embryos lacking testis-determining factor usually develop as females. The newly formed testes are responsible for releasing the hormones that continue the fetus on a male developmental pathway.

These prenatal events provide the biological basis for gender identity disorder. Hormone levels must be appropriate for male development during the appropriate developmental windows for typical male development to occur. In addition, the cellular pathways that recognize the signals the hormones send must also be in place. Changes in hormone levels from the norm or exposure to environmental compounds that behave like hormones in the fetus can alter male development, resulting in a feminized fetus if this alteration ends in inhibition of typical male development.

Disruptions of hormone signaling may arise from a variety of sources, including a disorder in the mother's endocrine system, maternal **stress**, maternal medications, and some environmental, endocrine-active substances.

Post-mortem studies conducted on male-to-female transsexuals, non-transsexual men, and non-transsexual women show a significant difference in sex-specific brain structures. Studies have shown that in male-to-female transsexuals, for example, brain structures look like those of nontransgendered women. These studies indicate that one's sense of gender resides in the brain and that it may be biochemically determined. A hypothesis underlying the link between gonadal sex and the sex of the brain is the organization-activation hypothesis. According to this hypothesis, the hormones that organize the body as masculine, e.g., result in the formation of a penis rather than a clitoris, also organize the brain as masculine. At puberty, hormones activate the brain for gender-specific sex behavior. In some cases, there may be a disconnect between gonadal development and brain sexual development.

In addition to biological factors, environmental conditions, such as socialization, are thought by some to contribute to gender identity disorder. Social learning theory, for example, proposes that a combination of observational learning and different levels and forms of **reinforcement** by parents, family, and friends determine a child's sense of gender, which, in turn, leads to what society considers sex-appropriate or inappropriate behavior. Recent research, however, suggests that even when people who are transgendered or born with ambiguous genitalia are reared based on their "assigned" sex, they still retain their perceived sexual identity.

### Symptoms

The onset of puberty increases the difficulties for people with gender identity disorder. The subsequent development of unwanted secondary sex characteristics, especially in males, increases a person's **anxiety** and frustrations. In an effort to cope with their feelings, some men with gender identity disorder may engage in stereotypical, or even super-masculine, activities. For example, a man struggling with the disorder may engage in such "macho" sports as wrestling and football in order to feel more "male." Unfortunately, the result is usually an increase in anxiety.

This anxious state is characterized by feelings of confusion, shame, guilt, and fear. These individuals are confused over their inability to handle their problem. They feel shame over their inability to control what society considers "perverse" activities. Even though cross-dressing and cross-gender fantasies provide relief, the respite is temporary. These activities often leave individuals with a profound shame over their thoughts and activities.

Closely associated with shame is guilt, particularly about being dishonest with family and friends. Sometimes people with gender identity disorder marry and have children without telling their spouse about their disorder. Typically, their self-identity is kept secret because they have the mistaken conviction that participation in marriage and parenting will eliminate their problems or "cure" them. The fear of being discovered further raises their anxiety. With some justification, people with gender identity disorder fear being labeled "sick" and being rejected and abandoned by people they love.

If an individual's gender identity disorder is profound, a lifestyle adaptation such as occasional cross-dressing may be insufficient. In such a case, gender expression may move from a lifestyle problem to a life-threatening imperative. The result can be extreme **depression** that requires medical treatment. If sufficiently severe, the imperative may result in gender reassignment surgery. If an individual lacks the psychological commitment to undertake surgery, the result may be suicide.

### Demographics

Gender identity disorder is more prevalent in males than in females. Reliable estimates of prevalence for either males or females are not available.

### Diagnosis

A mental health professional makes a **diagnosis** of gender identity disorder by taking a careful personal

history. He or she obtains the age of the patient and determines whether the patient's sexual attraction is to males, females, both, or neither. Laboratory tests are neither available nor required to make a diagnosis of gender identity disorder. However, it is very important not to overlook a physical illness such as a tumor that might mimic or contribute to a psychological disorder. If there is any question that a physical problem might be the underlying cause of an apparent gender identity disorder, a mental health professional should recommend a complete physical examination by a medical doctor. Laboratory tests might be necessary as components of the physical evaluation.

According to the clinician's handbook for diagnosing mental disorders, the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, fourth edition, text revised (*DSM-IV-TR*), the following criteria must be met to establish a diagnosis of gender identity disorder.

- a strong and persistent cross-gender identification
- persistent discomfort with his or her sex or having a sense of inappropriateness in the gender role of one's birth sex
- the disturbance is not concurrent with a physical intersex condition, in which a person is born, for example, with the genitalia that exhibit male and female characteristics
- the disturbance causes clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning

#### *A strong and persistent cross-gender identification*

In children, the disturbance is manifested by four (or more) of the following:

- repeatedly stating a desire to be, or insistence that he or she is, a member of the other sex
- strong preference for wearing clothes of the opposite gender. In boys, displaying a preference for cross-dressing or simulating female attire; in girls, insistence on wearing only stereotypical masculine clothing
- displaying strong and persistent preferences for cross-sex roles in make-believe play or experiencing persistent fantasies of being a member of the other sex
- having an intense desire to participate in the games and pastimes that are stereotypical of the other sex
- exhibiting a strong preference for playmates of the other sex

Among adolescents and adults, the disturbance is manifested by symptoms such as a stated desire to become a member of the other sex, frequent passing

as a person of the other sex, a desire to live or be treated as the other sex, or the conviction that he or she has the typical feelings and reactions of the other sex. These characteristics cannot be merely from a desire for any perceived cultural advantages of being the other sex.

***Persistent discomfort with his or her sex or having a sense of inappropriateness in the gender role of one's birth sex***

Among children, the disturbance is manifested by any of the following:

- among boys, asserting that his penis or testes are disgusting or will disappear, asserting that it would be better not to have a penis, or having an aversion toward rough-and-tumble play and rejecting male stereotypical toys, games, and activities
- among girls, rejecting the gender-typical practice of urinating in a sitting position, asserting that she has or will grow a penis, or stating that she does not want to grow breasts or menstruate, or having a marked aversion toward normative feminine clothing

Among adolescents and adults, the disturbance is manifested by symptoms such as preoccupation with getting rid of primary and secondary sex characteristics (e.g., request for hormones, surgery, or other procedures to alter sexual characteristics to simulate the other sex) or a belief that he or she was born the wrong sex.

### Treatments

One common form of treatment for gender identity disorder is **psychotherapy**. The initial aim of treatment is to help individuals function in their biologic sex roles to the greatest degree possible. The World Professional Association for Transgender Health, which has formulated and published its own *Standards of Care* manual for working with transgendered people, does not support psychotherapy designed to “convert” a transgendered person from their own personal perception of their sex.

Adults who have had severe gender identity disorder for many years sometimes request reassignment of their sex, or sex-change surgery. Before undertaking such surgery, they usually undergo hormone therapy to suppress same-sex characteristics and to accentuate other-sex characteristics. For instance, the female hormone estrogen is given to males to make breasts grow, reduce facial hair, and widen hips. The male hormone testosterone is administered to females to suppress menstruation, deepen the voice, and increase body hair. Following the hormone treatments, pre-operative

### KEY TERMS

**Cross-dressing**—Wearing clothing and other attire typically associated with the opposite sex.

**Paraphilia**—A disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving non-human objects, the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or children or other non-consenting persons.

**Transsexual**—A person whose gender identity is opposite his or her biologic sex.

**Transvestite**—A person who derives sexual pleasure or gratification from dressing in clothing of the opposite sex.

candidates are usually required to live in the cross-gender role for at least a year before surgery is performed.

### Prognosis

If gender identity disorder persists into adolescence, it tends to be chronic in nature. There may be periods of remission. However, adoption of characteristics and activities typical for one's birth sex is unlikely to occur.

Most individuals with gender identity disorder require and appreciate support from several sources. Families, as well as the person with the disorder, need and appreciate both information and support. Local and national **support groups** and informational services exist, and health care providers and mental health professionals can provide referrals.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Gelder, Michael, Richard Mayou, and Philip Cowen. *Shorter Oxford Textbook of Psychiatry*. 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.

Wilson, Josephine F. *Biological Foundations of Human Behavior*. New York: Harcourt, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

Green, R. “Family concurrence of ‘gender dysphoria’: Ten sibling or parent-child pairs.” *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 29.5 (2000): 499–507.

- Marks, I., R. Green, and D. Mataix-Cols. "Adult Gender Identity Disorder can Remit." *Comprehensive Psychiatry* 41.4 (2000): 273–5.
- Reiner, William G. "Gender Identity and Sex-of-rearing in Children With Disorders of Sexual Differentiation." *Journal of Pediatric Endocrinology and Metabolism* 18 (2005): 549–53.
- Wylie, Kevan. "ABC of Sexual Health: Gender Related Disorders." *British Medical Journal* 329 (2004): 615–19.
- Zucker, K. J., N. Beaulieu, S. J. Bradley, G. M. Grimshaw, and A. Wilcox. "Handedness in boys with gender identity disorder." *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry* 42.6 (2001): 767–76.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org>>.
- American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. Telephone: (847) 434-4000. FAX: (847) 434-8000. Web site: <<http://www.aap.org/default.htm>>.
- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850.
- American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NW, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Phone: (800) 374-2721 or (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org>>.
- World Professional Association for Transgender Health. 1300 South Second Street, Suite 180 Minneapolis, MN 55454. Telephone: (612) 624-9397. Fax: (612) 624-9541. <<http://www.wpath.org/IJT.htm>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.PH  
Emily Jane Willingham

## Gender issues in mental health

### Defining gender

In the social sciences, the concept of gender means much more than biological sex. It refers to socially constructed expectations regarding the ways in which people should think and behave, depending on their sexual classification. These stereotypical expectations are commonly referred to as gender roles. Attitudes toward gender roles are thought to result from complex interactions among societal, cultural, familial, religious, ethnic, and political influences.

Gender affects many aspects of life, including access to resources, methods of coping with **stress**, styles of

interacting with others, self-evaluation, spirituality, and expectations of others. These are all factors that can influence mental health either positively or negatively. Psychological gender studies seek to better understand the relationship between gender and mental health in order to reduce risk factors and improve treatment methods.

Traditional gender roles in many Western societies identify masculinity as having power and being in control in emotional situations, in the workplace, and in sexual relationships. Acceptable male behaviors in this traditional construct include competitiveness, independence, assertiveness, ambition, confidence, toughness, anger, and even violence (to varying degrees). Men are expected to avoid characteristics considered feminine, such as emotional expressiveness, vulnerability (weakness, helplessness, insecurity, worry), and intimacy (especially showing affection to other males).

Traditional femininity is defined as being nurturing, supportive, and assigning high priority to one's relationships. Women are expected to be emotionally expressive, dependent, passive, cooperative, warm, and accepting of subordinate status in marriage and employment. Competitiveness, assertiveness, anger, and violence are viewed as unfeminine and are not generally tolerated as acceptable female behavior.

### Gender theories

Differences in gender roles have existed throughout history. Evolutionary theorists attribute these differences to the physiological characteristics of men and women that prescribed their best function for survival of the species. In primitive societies, men adopted the roles of hunting and protecting their families because of their physical strength. Women's ability to bear and nurse children led them to adopt the roles of nurturing young, as well as the less physically dependent roles of gathering and preparing food. These gender-dependent labor roles continued into the period of written human history, when people began to live in cities and form the earliest civilized societies.

In the 1800s, the industrial movement marked a prominent division of labor into public and private domains. Men began leaving home to work, whereas women worked within the home. Previously, both men and women frequently engaged in comparably respected, productive activities on their homestead. When men began working in the public domain, they acquired money, which was transferable for goods or services. Women's work, on the other hand, was not transferable. Men's relative economic independence

contributed to their power and influence, while women were reduced to an image of frailty and emotionality deemed appropriate only for domestic tasks and child rearing.

Sigmund Freud's psychoanalytic theory of human development, which emerged from Freud's late nineteenth-century European setting and medical training, reflected an attitude of male superiority. Freud asserted that as children, boys recognize they are superior to girls when they discover the difference in their genitals, and that girls, on the other hand, equate their lack of a penis with inferiority. According to Freud, this feeling of inferiority causes girls to idolize and desire their fathers, resulting in passivity, masochistic tendencies, jealousy, and vanity—all seen by Freud as feminine characteristics.

Other developmental theorists rejected Freud's notions. Eric Erikson (in 1950) and Lawrence Kohlberg (in 1969) theorized that all humans begin as dependent on caregivers and gradually mature into independent and autonomous beings. Such theories, however, still favored men because independence has historically been considered a masculine trait. By such a standard, men would consistently achieve greater levels of maturity than females.

Nancy Chodorow's object relations theory (in 1978) favored neither sex. She proposed that children develop according to interactions with their primary caregivers, who tend to be mothers. Mothers, according to her theory, identify with girls to a greater extent, fostering an ability to form rich interpersonal relationships, as well as dependency traits. Mothers push boys toward independence, helping them to adjust to the male-dominated work environment, but rendering them unaccustomed to emotional connection. Chodorow's theory suggests both strengths and weaknesses inherent in male and female development, with neither deemed superior. Around that same time (1974), Sandra Bem advocated for androgyny, or high levels of both masculinity and femininity, as the key to mental health.

In the 1980s, such psychologists as Carol Gilligan sought to build respect for stereotypically feminine traits. They introduced the notion that women function according to an ethic of care and relatedness that is not inferior to men—just different. In 1985, Daniel Stern's developmental theory favored traditional femininity, suggesting that humans start out as unconnected to others and gradually form more complex interpersonal connections as they mature.

The process of learning gender roles is known as socialization. Children learn which behaviors are

acceptable or not acceptable for their sex by observing other people. They may also be shamed by caregivers or peers when they violate gender role expectations. As a result, gender roles usually become an internal guide for behavior early in childhood. Current studies focus on the ways in which extreme notions of masculinity or femininity affect mental health, and the social processes that shape one's concept of maleness or femaleness.

### Gender role conflict

According to some researchers, the concepts of masculinity and femininity may simply be sets of personality traits that can be exhibited by either sex, and there may be no true gender differences, although this conclusion generates controversy. Individuals vary in degree of adherence to gender roles, resulting in large amounts of behavioral variation within the sexes and potentially less variation between them. However, some scholars maintain that there are specific gender-related traits, including gender bias in mental illness.

Although attitudes toward gender roles are now much more flexible, different cultures retain varying degrees of expectations regarding male and female behavior. Individuals may personally disregard gender expectations, but society may disapprove of their behavior and impose external social consequences. On the other hand, individuals may feel internal shame if they experience emotions or desires characteristic of the opposite sex. In some cultures in which a person's social role is emphasized over individualism, the failure to fulfill that role in ways considered traditionally appropriate can lead to feelings of shame, as well. Gender role conflict, or gender role stress, results when people feel a discrepancy between how they believe they should act—based on gender role expectations learned in childhood—and how they actually think, feel, or behave. If these discrepancies are unresolved, gender role conflict contributes to poor mental health.

### Women's issues

#### Typical stressors

Women are often expected to occupy a number of roles at the same time: wife, mother, homemaker, employee, or caregiver to an elderly parent. Meeting the demands of so many roles simultaneously leads to stressful situations in which choices must be prioritized. Women often must choose whether to pursue or further a career versus whether to devote more time to home and family.

Many women prefer to work outside the home because it gives them a greater sense of life satisfaction. For other women, such as those who run single-parent households, employment is not an option—it is a necessity. Compared with men, women frequently have jobs with less autonomy or creativity, which decreases their level of job satisfaction. Women may also have more difficulty being accepted in the workplace because of hierarchical structures preferring men. Documentation repeatedly shows that women's salaries are lower than those of men in comparable positions; women tend to be paid less even when performing the same jobs as men.

When women do choose or are required to work outside the home, they continue to perform the bulk of household duties as well. Sarah Rosenfield reported that, compared to men, women perform 66% more of the domestic work, sleep a half hour less per night, and perform an extra month of work each year. Needless to say, increased workloads and decreased attention to rest and relaxation are stressful and pose obstacles to women's mental health.

Divorce results in more severe consequences for women who choose or are able to stay home in deference to child rearing. Such women depend on marriage for financial security. Such domestic skills as child care and housecleaning are not highly valued by society, and thus are poorly compensated in terms of money. Women who have never been employed and then experience divorce often have few options for securing adequate income.

Although women's ability to form meaningful relationships is a buffer against stress, it can also be a source of stress. Caring about another person can be stressful when that person is not doing well physically or emotionally. Many families take for granted that the female members care for elderly parents who are no longer self-sufficient. As a result, many women in their forties or fifties are caught between the needs of their college-age offspring and the needs of dependent parents or parents-in-law. Interpersonal conflicts resulting from these heavy burdens may cause stress or lower self-esteem. Women may also view unsuccessful relationships as representing failure on their part to fulfill traditional feminine qualities such as nurturance, warmth, and empathy.

Additional sources of stress common to women include victimization, assertiveness, and physical unattractiveness. Victimization is a constant concern due to the power differential between men and women. Assertiveness may be stressful for women who have had little experience in competitive situations. Physical

unattractiveness may cause some women who adhere to unrealistic standards of feminine beauty to experience shame, or place them at risk for developing eating disorders. Women considered unattractive may also experience discrimination in the workplace or in admission to higher education. In addition, the double standard of aging in contemporary society means that all women will eventually have to cope with the **stigma** of the putative unattractiveness associated with aging.

### ***Typical coping strategies***

Studies suggest that women typically react to stress by seeking social support, expressing feelings, or using distraction. These strategies might include praying, worrying, venting, getting advice, or engaging in behaviors that are not related to the problem at all (including such antisocial behaviors as drinking alcohol). Seeking social support and distraction are considered avoidant coping strategies because they do not focus on solving or overcoming a problem, only on alleviating the stress associated with the problem. Research is inconclusive regarding whether men or women are more likely to use problem solving, which is considered an active coping strategy.

### ***Typical patterns of psychopathology***

Women are more likely than men to experience internalizing disorders. Primary symptoms of internalizing disorders involve negative inner emotions as opposed to outward negative behavior. **Depression** (both mild and severe) and **anxiety** (generalized or "free-floating" anxiety, phobias, and panic attacks) are internalizing disorders common to women. Symptoms include sadness; a sense of loss, helplessness, or hopelessness; doubt about one's ability to handle problems; high levels of worry or nervousness; poor self-esteem; guilt, self-reproach, and self-blame; decreased energy, motivation, interest in life, or concentration; and problems with sleep or appetite. Women also are more likely than men to have eating disorders, and although incidence of **bipolar disorder** is similar between men and women, women manifest rapid cycling more often and have longer depressive episodes.

## **Men's issues**

### ***Typical stressors***

Situations that typically produce stress for men are those that challenge their self-identity and cause them to feel inadequate. If their identity closely matches a traditional male role, they will experience stress in situations requiring subordination to women

or emotional expressiveness. They will also experience stress if they feel they are not meeting expectations for superior physical strength, intellect, or sexual performance. Research indicates that men who strictly adhere to extreme gender roles are at higher risk for mental disorders.

Certain cultures are thought to adhere more strictly to traditional male gender roles. In a study by Jose Abreu and colleagues, Latin American men were identified as adopting the most exaggerated form of masculinity, followed by European Americans, and then African Americans. The Latino image of masculinity is often referred to as *machismo* and includes such qualities as concern for personal honor, virility, physical strength, heavy drinking, toughness, aggression, risk taking, authoritarianism, and self-centeredness. African American males are also thought to have a unique image of masculinity; however, Abreu's study showed that African Americans are more egalitarian in terms of gender roles than European Americans.

### **Typical coping strategies**

Men may respond to stress by putting on a tough image, keeping their feelings inside, releasing stress through such activities as sports, actively attempting to solve the problem, denying the problem, abusing drugs or alcohol, or otherwise attempting to control the problem. As stated previously, research is inconclusive regarding whether males or females use problem solving strategies more often. This type of coping strategy, however, has more frequently been attributed to males. Problem solving is seen as an active coping strategy, which is more effective than such avoidant strategies as **denial, abuse** of drugs or alcohol, or refusal to talk about problems.

### **Typical patterns of psychopathology**

Men are more likely than women to experience externalizing disorders. Externalizing disorders are characterized by symptoms involving negative outward behavior as opposed to internal negative emotions. Such externalizing disorders as **substance abuse** (both drugs and alcohol) and antisocial behavior (such as anger, hostility, aggression, violence, or stealing) are common to men. Substance abuse results in such negative physical and social consequences as **hallucinations**, blackouts, physical dependency, job loss, divorce, arrests, organ and **brain** damage, and financial debt. Antisocial behavior impairs interpersonal relationships and can also result in negative consequences in other areas of life, such as run-ins with the criminal justice system.

Men are not exempt from such internalizing disorders as anxiety and depression. In fact, one study found that high levels of masculinity appear to be related to depression in males. Some researchers feel that men's abuse of substances could be considered the male version of depression. Because male gender roles discourage admitting vulnerability, men may resort to substance abuse as a way of covering their feelings.

Men who adhere to rigid gender roles are also at a disadvantage in interpersonal relationships, especially intimate relationships. They may avoid emotional expressiveness, or may behave in domineering and hostile ways. These behaviors increase their risk of social isolation, disconnection from nurturance, and participation in unhealthy relationships.

### **Mental health**

Research indicates that, overall, neither men nor women are at greater risk for developing mental disorders as such. Being male or female may indicate susceptibility to certain types of disorders, however. Neither masculinity nor femininity is uniformly positive; both gender identifications have strengths and weaknesses. For example, femininity appears to be protective against antisocial behaviors and substance abuse but is associated with high levels of avoidant coping strategies and low levels of achievement. Masculinity appears to be protective against depression but is high in antisocial behavior and substance abuse.

Information about gender roles has implications for treatment. Women may not seek treatment because of lack of such resources as money, transportation, or time away from child care duties. A treatment center sensitive to women's issues should seek to provide these resources in order to facilitate access to treatment. Men, on the other hand, may not seek treatment because it is incongruent with their image of masculinity. Therapists may need to offer men less threatening forms of treatment, such as those that focus on cognitive problem solving rather than on emotions.

The focus of therapy may differ according to one's gender issues. Therapists should recognize the potential for shame and defensiveness when exploring gender norms. Externalizing behaviors may point to underlying hidden shame. For women, the importance placed on various roles in their lives and how closely those roles are tied to their self-identity is relevant. Men may be encouraged to connect to the spiritual aspects of their being and to consider less stringent views of masculinity. Therapists should also consider the associated influences of generation, culture, class,

## KEY TERMS

**Active coping strategies**—Ways of handling stress that affect the problem or situation in some way.

**Androgyny**—A way of behaving that includes high levels of both masculinity and femininity.

**Antisocial behavior**—Behavior characterized by high levels of anger, aggression, manipulation, or violence.

**Avoidant coping strategies**—Ways of coping with stress that do not alter the problem in any way, but instead provide temporary relief or distraction.

**Externalizing disorders**—Mental disorders with primary symptoms that involve outward behavior as opposed to inner emotions.

**Femininity**—Prescribed behavior for women, characterized by interpersonal warmth, passivity, and lack of aggression.

**Gender role conflict or stress**—A negative psychological state resulting from a discrepancy between gender role expectations and how people actually think, feel, or behave.

**Gender roles**—Stereotypical expectations regarding how one should think, behave, and feel depending on whether one is male or female.

**Internalizing disorders**—Mental disorders with primary symptoms that involve inner emotions as opposed to outward behavior.

**Machismo**—The Latin American image of extreme masculinity that includes such qualities as concern for personal honor, virility, physical strength, heavy drinking, toughness, aggression, risk taking, authoritarianism, and self-centeredness.

**Masculinity**—Prescribed behavior for men, characterized by independence, strength, control, and avoidance of emotional expressiveness.

**Masochistic tendencies**—Tendencies to direct harm or hatred toward oneself.

**Object relations theory**—An approach to psychological development that includes Nancy Chodorow's statement that children develop according to interactions with their primary caregivers.

**Psychoanalytic theory**—A psychological theory proposed by Sigmund Freud involving unconscious conflicts and specific stages of development; central themes include sexuality and male superiority.

**Socialization**—The process whereby social influences and demands shape one's values, beliefs, or behavior.

occupation, and educational level when exploring gender role issues. Men often are entering therapy under duress, as the result of a court order or a spousal ultimatum, and may begin the therapeutic process from a perspective of defensiveness.

Taking either masculine or feminine qualities to an extreme and to the exclusion of the other appears to be detrimental. A nontraditional gender role orientation would combine the best of both genders: a social focus (reciprocally supportive relationships and a balance between interests of self and others) and active coping strategies.

Flexibility in using coping strategies is also important. Active, problem-focused coping strategies help to change the situation that is causing the problem. Avoidant or emotion-focused coping strategies manage or reduce emotional distress. Avoidant and emotion-focused strategies may be helpful for the immediate crisis, but should be used in combination with more active strategies for complete problem resolution.

*See also Stress.*

## Resources

### BOOKS

Gilligan, Carol. *In a Different Voice: Psychological Theory and Women's Development*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1982.

O'Neil, James M. "Assessing Men's Gender Role Conflict." *Problem Solving Strategies and Interventions for Men in Conflict*. Dwight Moore and Fred Leafgreen, eds. Alexandria, VA: American Counseling Association, 1990.

Rosenfield, Sarah. "Gender and Mental Health: Do Women Have More Psychopathology, Men More, or Both the Same (and Why)?" *A Handbook for the Study of Mental Health*. Allan V. Horwitz and Teresa L. Scheid, eds. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

Abreu, Jose M., and others. "Ethnic Belonging and Traditional Masculinity Ideology Among African Americans, European Americans, and Latinos." *Psychology of Men and Masculinity* 1.2 (2000): 75–86.

Addis, Michael E., and Geoffrey H. Cohane. "Social Scientific Paradigms of Masculinity and Their Implications

- for Research and Practice in Men's Mental Health." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 61 (2005): 633–47.
- Barefoot, John C., and others. "A Longitudinal Study of Gender Differences in Depressive Symptoms From Age 50 to 80." *Psychology and Aging* 16.2 (2001): 342–45.
- Bem, Sandra L. "The Measurement of Psychological Androgyny." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 42 (1974): 155–62.
- Bruch, Monroe A. "Shyness and Toughness: Unique and Moderated Relations With Men's Emotional Inexpression." *Journal of Counseling Psychology* 49.1 (2002): 28–34.
- Efthim, Paul W., Maureen E. Kenny, and James R. Mahalik. "Gender Role Stress in Relation to Shame, Guilt, and Externalization." *Journal of Counseling and Development* 79.4 (2001): 430–38.
- Good, Glenn E., Douglas, A. Thomson, and Allyson D. Brathwaite. "Men and Therapy: Critical Concepts, Theoretical Frameworks, and Research Recommendations." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 61 (2005): 699–711.
- Hyde, Jane Shibley. "The Gender Similarities Hypothesis." *American Psychologist* 60 (2005): 581–92.
- Kastrup, Marianne C. "Mental Health Consequences of War." *World Psychiatry* 5 (2006): 1.
- Lengua, Liliana J., and Elizabeth Stormshak. "Gender, Gender Roles, and Personality: Gender Differences in the Prediction of Coping and Psychological Symptoms." *Sex Roles* 43.11–12 (2000): 787–820.
- Lippa, Richard A. "The Gender Reality Hypothesis." *American Psychologist* (Sept. 2006): 639–40.
- Mahalik, James R., and Robert J. Cournoyer. "Identifying Gender Role Conflict Messages That Distinguish Mildly Depressed From Nondepressed Men." *Psychology of Men and Masculinity* 1.2 (2000): 109–15.
- Mahalik, James R., and Hugh D. Lagan. "Examining Masculine Gender Role Conflict and Stress in Relation to Religious Orientation and Spiritual Well-Being." *Psychology of Men and Masculinity* 2.1 (2001): 24–33.
- Mahalik, James R., and others. "Using the Conformity to Masculine Norms Inventory to Work with Men in a Clinical Setting." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 61 (2005): 661–74.
- Marecek, Jeanne. "After the Facts: Psychology and the Study of Gender." *Canadian Psychology* 42.4 (2001): 254–67.
- Martire, Lynn M., Mary Ann Parris Stephens, and Aloen L. Townsend. "Centrality of Women's Multiple Roles: Beneficial and Detrimental Consequences for Psychological Well-Being." *Psychology and Aging* 15.1 (2000): 148–56.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- Society for the Psychological Study of Men and Masculinity. Division 51 Administrative Office. American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (202) 336-6013. <<http://www.apa.org/about/division/div51.html>>.
- Society for the Psychology of Women. Division 35 Administrative Office. American Psychological Association.

750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (202) 336-6013. <<http://www.apa.org/about/division/div35.html>>.

Wellesley Centers for Women (Stone Center for Developmental Services and Studies; Center for Research on Women). Wellesley College, 106 Central Street, Wellesley, MA 02481. Telephone: (781) 283-2500. <<http://www.wewonline.org>>.

## OTHER

Healthy People 2010, Volume II. "Depression: What Every Woman Should Know." *Healthy People 2010: Objectives for Improving Health, Part B*. 2005. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/depwomenknows.cfm#ptdep4>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, MA  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Generalized anxiety disorder

### Definition

Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD) is a disorder characterized by excessive worry and anxiety concerning a number of events and activities. This anxiety is accompanied by such symptoms as restlessness, **fatigue**, inability to concentrate, muscle tension, or disturbed sleep. Individuals with this disorder experience symptoms on most days for a period of at least six months, and find the symptoms difficult to control.

### Description

Generalized anxiety disorder is characterized by persistent worry that is excessive and that patients find hard to control. Common worries associated with generalized anxiety disorder include work responsibilities, money, health, safety, car repairs, and household chores. Unlike people with phobias or post-traumatic disorders, people with GAD do not have their worries provoked by specific triggers; they may worry about almost anything having to do with ordinary life. It is not unusual for patients diagnosed with GAD to shift the focus of their anxiety from one issue to another as their daily circumstances change. For example, people with GAD may start worrying about finances when several bills arrive in the mail, and then fret about the state of their health when they notice that one of the bills is for health insurance. Later in the day they may read a newspaper article that moves the focus of the worry to a third concern.

Patients usually recognize that their worry is out of proportion in its duration or intensity to the actual

likelihood or impact of the feared situation or event. For example, a husband or wife may worry about an accident happening to a spouse who commutes to work by train, even though the worried partner knows objectively that rail travel is much safer than automobile travel on major highways. The anxiety levels of patients with GAD may rise and fall somewhat over a period of weeks or months but tend to become chronic problems. The disorder typically becomes worse during stressful periods in the patient's life.

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*) specifies interference with work, family life, social activities, or other areas of functioning as a criterion for generalized anxiety disorder. This may be accompanied by such physical symptoms as **insomnia**, sore muscles, headaches, and digestive upsets. According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, adult patients must experience three symptoms out of a list of six (restlessness, being easily fatigued, having difficulty concentrating, being irritable, high levels of muscle tension, and sleep disturbances) in order to be diagnosed with the disorder.

Patients diagnosed with GAD have a high rate of concurrent mental disorders, particularly major **depression** disorder, other **anxiety disorders**, or a **substance abuse** disorder. They also frequently have or develop such stress-related physical illnesses and conditions as tension headaches, irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), temporomandibular joint dysfunction (TMJ), bruxism (grinding of the teeth during sleep), and hypertension. In addition, GAD often intensifies the discomfort or complications associated with arthritis, diabetes, and other chronic disorders. Patients with GAD are more likely to seek help from a primary care physician than a **psychiatrist**; they are also more likely than patients with other disorders to make frequent medical appointments, to undergo extensive or repeated diagnostic testing, to describe their health as poor, and to smoke tobacco or **abuse** other substances. In addition, patients with anxiety disorders have higher rates of mortality from all causes than people who are less anxious.

In many cases, it is difficult for the patient's doctor to determine whether the anxiety preceded the physical condition or followed it; sometimes people develop generalized anxiety disorder after being diagnosed with a chronic organic health problem. In other instances, the wear and tear on the body caused by persistent and recurrent worrying leads to physical diseases and disorders. There is an overall "vicious circle" quality to the relationship between GAD and other disorders, whether mental or organic.

Children diagnosed with GAD have much the same anxiety symptoms as adults. The mother of a six-year-old boy with the disorder told his pediatrician that her son "acted like a little man" rather than a typical first-grader. He would worry about such matters as arriving on time for school field trips, whether the family had enough money for immediate needs, whether his friends would get hurt climbing on the playground jungle gym, whether there was enough gas in the tank of the family car, and similar concerns. The little boy had these worries in spite of the fact that his family was stable and happy and had no serious financial or other problems.

GAD often has an insidious onset that begins relatively early in life, although it can be precipitated by a sudden crisis at any age above six or seven years. The idea that GAD often begins in the childhood years even though the symptoms may not become clearly noticeable until late adolescence or the early adult years is gaining acceptance. About half of all patients diagnosed with the disorder report that their worrying began in childhood or their teenage years. Many will say that they cannot remember a time in their lives when they were not worried about something. This type of persistent anxiety can be regarded as part of a person's temperament, or inborn disposition; it is sometimes called trait anxiety. It is not unusual, however, for people to develop the disorder in their early adult years or even later in reaction to chronic **stress** or anxiety-producing situations. For example, there are instances of people developing GAD after several years of taking care of a relative with **dementia**, living with domestic violence, or living in close contact with a friend or relative with **borderline personality disorder**.

The specific worries of people with GAD may be influenced by their ethnic background or culture. The *DSM-IV-TR* cited an observation that being punctual is a common concern of patients with GAD that reflects the value that Western countries place on using time as efficiently as possible. One study of worry in college students from different ethnic backgrounds found that Caucasian and African American students tended to worry a variable amount about a wider range of concerns, whereas Asian Americans tended to worry more intensely about a smaller number of issues. Another study found that a community sample of older Puerto Ricans with GAD overlapped with a culture-specific syndrome called *ataque de nervios*, which resembles **panic disorder** but has features of other anxiety disorders as well as dissociative symptoms. (People experience dissociative symptoms when their perception of reality is temporarily altered—they

may feel as if they were in a trance, or that they were observing activity around them instead of participating.) Further research is needed regarding the relationship between people's ethnic backgrounds and their outward expression of anxiety symptoms.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The causes of generalized anxiety disorder appear to be a mixture of genetic and environmental factors. It has been known for some years that the disorder runs in families. Twin studies as well as the ongoing mapping of the human genome point to a genetic factor in the development of GAD. The role of the family environment (social **modeling**) in an individual's susceptibility to GAD is uncertain. Social modeling, the process of learning behavioral and emotional response patterns from observing one's parents or other adults, appears to be a more important factor for women than for men.

Another factor in the development of GAD is social expectations related to gender roles. Research findings indicate that women have higher levels of emotional distress and lower quality of life than men. The higher incidence of GAD in women has been linked to the diffuse yet comprehensive expectations of women as caregivers. Many women assume responsibility for the well-being and safety of other family members in addition to holding jobs or completing graduate or professional school. The global character of these responsibilities as well as their unrelenting nature has been described as a mirror image of the persistent but nonspecific anxiety associated with GAD.

Socioeconomic status may also contribute to generalized anxiety. One British study found that GAD is more closely associated with an accumulation of minor stressors than with any demographic factors. People of lower socioeconomic status, however, have fewer resources for dealing with minor stressors and so appear to be at greater risk for generalized anxiety.

An additional factor may be the patient's level of muscle tension. Several studies have found that patients diagnosed with GAD tend to respond to physiological stress in a rigid, stereotyped manner. Their autonomic reactions (reactions in the part of the nervous system that governs involuntary bodily functions) are similar to those of people without GAD, but their muscular tension shows a significant increase. It is not yet known, however, whether this level of muscle tension is a cause or an effect of GAD.

### Symptoms

The symptomatology of GAD has changed somewhat over time with redefinitions of the disorder in successive editions of the *DSM*. The first edition of the *DSM* and the *DSM-II* did not make a sharp distinction between generalized anxiety disorder and panic disorder. After specific treatments were developed for panic disorder, GAD was introduced in the *DSM-III* as an anxiety disorder without panic attacks or symptoms of major depression. This definition proved to be unreliable. As a result, the *DSM-IV* constructed its definition of GAD around the psychological symptoms of the disorder (excessive worrying) rather than the physical (muscle tension) or autonomic symptoms of anxiety. The *DSM-IV-TR* continued that emphasis.

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, the symptoms of GAD are:

- excessive anxiety and worry about a number of events or activities occurring more days than not for at least six months.
- worry that cannot be controlled.
- worry that is associated with several symptoms such as restlessness, fatigue, irritability, or muscle tension.
- worry that causes distress or impairment in relationships, at work, or at school.

In addition, to meet the diagnostic criteria for GAD, the content or focus of the worry cannot change the **diagnosis** from GAD to another anxiety disorder such as panic disorder, **social phobia**, or **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, and the anxiety cannot be caused by a substance (a drug or a medication).

One categorization of GAD symptoms that some psychiatrists use in addition to the *DSM* framework consists of three symptom clusters:

- symptoms related to high levels of physiological arousal: muscle tension, irritability, fatigue, restlessness, insomnia.
- symptoms related to distorted thinking processes: poor concentration, unrealistic assessment of problems, recurrent worrying.
- symptoms associated with poor coping strategies: procrastination, avoidance, inadequate problem-solving skills.

### Demographics

The National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) estimates that approximately 6.8 million Americans have GAD. Further it is estimated that twice as many women as men develop GAD. One study that used the *DSM-III-R* criteria concluded that 5% of the

United States population, or one person in every 20, will develop GAD at some point.

Some psychiatrists think that generalized anxiety disorder is overdiagnosed in both adults and children. One reason for this possibility is that diagnostic screening tests used by primary care physicians for mental disorders produce a large number of false positives for GAD. One study of the PRIME-MD, a screening instrument for mental disorders frequently used in primary care practices, found that 7 of 10 patients met the criteria for GAD. In-depth follow-up interviews with the patients, however, revealed that only a third of the GAD diagnoses could be confirmed.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosis of GAD, particularly in primary care settings, is complicated by several factors. One is the high level of comorbidity (co-occurrence) between GAD and other mental or physical disorders. Another is the considerable overlap between anxiety disorders in general and depression. Some practitioners believe that depression and GAD may not be separate disorders after all, because studies have repeatedly confirmed the existence and common occurrence of a “mixed” anxiety/depression syndrome.

Evaluating patients for generalized anxiety disorder includes the following steps:

- patient interview. The doctor will ask the patients to describe the anxiety, and will note whether it is acute (lasting hours to weeks) or persistent (lasting from months to years). If the patients describe a recent stressful event, the doctor will evaluate them for “double anxiety,” which refers to acute anxiety added to underlying persistent anxiety. The doctor may also give the patients a diagnostic questionnaire to evaluate the presence of anxiety disorders. The Hamilton Anxiety Scale is a commonly used instrument to assess anxiety disorders in general. The Generalized Anxiety Disorder Questionnaire for DSM-IV (GAD-Q-IV) is a more recent diagnostic tool, and is specific to GAD.
- medical evaluation. Nonpsychiatric disorders that are known to cause anxiety (hyperthyroidism, Cushing’s disease, mitral valve prolapse, carcinoid syndrome, and pheochromocytoma) must be ruled out, as well as certain medications (steroids, digoxin, thyroxine, theophylline, and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors) that may also cause anxiety as a side effect. Patients should be asked about their use of herbal preparations as well.
- substance abuse evaluation. Because anxiety is a common symptom of substance abuse and with-

drawal syndrome, doctors will ask about patients’ use of caffeine, nicotine, alcohol, and other common substances (including prescription medications) that may be abused.

- evaluation for other psychiatric disorders. This step is necessary because of the frequent overlap between GAD and depression or between GAD and other anxiety disorders.

In some instances the doctor will consult the patient’s family for additional information about the onset of the patient’s anxiety symptoms, dietary habits, etc.

## Treatments

There are several treatment types that have been found effective in treating people with GAD. Most patients with the disorder are treated with a combination of medications and **psychotherapy**.

### Medications

Pharmacologic therapy is usually prescribed for patients whose anxiety is severe enough to interfere with daily functioning. Several different groups of medications have been used to treat generalized anxiety disorder.

These medications include the following:

- benzodiazepines. This group of tranquilizers does not decrease worry, but lowers anxiety by decreasing muscle tension and hypervigilance. They are often prescribed for patients with double anxiety because they act very quickly. The benzodiazepines, however, have several disadvantages: they are unsuitable for long-term therapy because they can cause dependence, and GAD is a long-term disorder; they cannot be given to patients who abuse alcohol; and they cause short-term memory loss and difficulty in concentration. One British study found that benzodiazepines significantly increased a patient’s risk of involvement in a traffic accident.
- Buspirone (BuSpar). Buspirone appears to be as effective as benzodiazepines and antidepressants in controlling anxiety symptoms. It is slower to take effect (about two–three weeks), but has fewer side effects. In addition, it treats the worry associated with GAD rather than the muscle tension.
- tricyclic antidepressants. Imipramine (Tofranil), nortriptyline (Pamelor), and desipramine (Norpramin) have been given to patients with GAD. They have, however, some problematic side effects: imipramine has been associated with disturbances in heart rhythm, and the other tricyclics often cause drowsiness, dry

## KEY TERMS

**Anxiolytic**—A preparation or substance given to relieve anxiety; a tranquilizer.

**Ataque de nervios**—A culture-specific anxiety syndrome found among some Latin American groups in the United States and in Latin America. It resembles panic disorder in some respects but also includes dissociative symptoms, and frequently occurs in response to stressful events.

**Autonomic nervous system**—The part of the nervous system that governs the heart, involuntary muscles, and glands.

**Double anxiety**—Acute anxiety from a recent stressful event combined with underlying persistent anxiety associated with generalized anxiety disorder.

**Free-floating**—A term used in psychiatry to describe anxiety that is unfocused or lacking an apparent cause or object.

**Insidious**—Proceeding gradually and inconspicuously but with serious effect.

**Social modeling**—A process of learning behavioral and emotional response patterns from observing one's parents or other adults. Some researchers think that social modeling plays a part in the development of generalized anxiety disorder in women.

**Temperament**—A person's natural disposition or inborn combination of mental and emotional traits.

**Temporomandibular joint dysfunction**—A condition resulting in pain in the head, face, and jaw. Muscle tension or abnormalities of the bones in the area of the hinged joint (the temporomandibular joint) between the lower jaw and the temporal bone are usually the cause.

**Trait anxiety**—A type of persistent anxiety found in some patients with generalized anxiety disorder. Trait anxiety is regarded as a feature (trait) of a person's temperament.

**Twin study**—Research studies that use pairs of twins to study the effects of heredity and environment on behavior or other characteristic.

mouth, constipation, and confusion. They increase the patient's risk of falls and other accidents.

- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs). Paroxetine (Paxil), one of the SSRIs, was approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2001 as a treatment for GAD. Venlafaxine (Effexor) appears to be particularly beneficial to patients with a mixed anxiety/depression syndrome; it is the first drug to be labeled by the FDA as an antidepressant as well as an anxiolytic. Venlafaxine is also effective in treating patients with GAD whose symptoms are primarily somatic (manifesting as physical symptoms or bodily complaints).

### *Psychotherapy*

Some studies have found cognitive therapy to be superior to medications and **psychodynamic psychotherapy** in treating GAD, but other researchers disagree with these findings. As a rule, patients with GAD who have **personality disorders**, who are living with chronic social stress (e.g., caring for a parent with **Alzheimer's disease**), or who do not trust psychotherapeutic approaches require treatment with medications. The greatest benefit of cognitive therapy is its effectiveness in helping patients with the disorder to learn more realistic ways to appraise their problems and to use better problem-solving techniques.

**Family therapy** is recommended insofar as family members can be helpful in offering patients a different perspective on their problems. They can also help patients practice new approaches to problem solving.

### *Alternative and complementary therapies*

Several alternative and complementary therapies have been found helpful in treating patients with generalized anxiety disorder. These include **hypnotherapy**, music therapy, Ayurvedic medicine, **yoga**, religious practice, and guided imagery **meditation**.

**Biofeedback** and relaxation techniques are also recommended for patients with GAD in order to lower physiologic arousal. In addition, massage therapy, hydrotherapy, shiatsu, and **acupuncture** have been reported to relieve muscle spasms or soreness associated with GAD.

One herbal remedy that has been used in **clinical trials** for treating GAD is **passionflower** (*Passiflora incarnata*). One team of researchers found that passionflower extract was as effective as **oxazepam** (Serax) in relieving anxiety symptoms in a group of 36 outpatients diagnosed with GAD according to *DSM-IV* criteria. In addition, the passionflower extract did not impair the subjects' job performance as frequently or as severely as the oxazepam.

## Prognosis

Generalized anxiety disorder is generally regarded as a long-term condition that may become a lifelong problem. Patients frequently find their symptoms resurfacing or getting worse during stressful periods in their lives. It is rare for patients with GAD to recover spontaneously.

## Prevention

The best preventive strategy, given the early onset of GAD, is the modeling of realistic assessment of stressful events by parents, and the teaching of effective coping strategies to their children.

*See also* Bodywork therapies; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Cognitive problem-solving skills training; Stress.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Dugas, Michel J., and Melisa Robichaud. *Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment for Generalized Anxiety Disorder: From Science to Practice*. New York: Brunner-Routledge, 2006.
- Heimberg, Richard G., Cynthia L. Turk, and Douglas S. Mennin, eds. *Generalized Anxiety Disorder: Advances in Research and Practice*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.
- Nutt, David J., Karl Rickels, and Dan J. Stein. *Generalized Anxiety Disorder: Symptomatology, Pathogenesis and Management*. Oxford: Informa Healthcare, 2002.
- Pelletier, Kenneth R., M.D. *The Best Alternative Medicine*. Part II, "CAM Therapies for Specific Conditions: Anxiety." New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.
- Rygh, Jayne L., and William C. Sanderson. *Treating Generalized Anxiety Disorder: Evidence-Based Strategies, Tools, and Techniques*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

### PERIODICALS

- Allgulander, Christer. "Generalized Anxiety Disorder: What Are We Missing?" *European Neuropsychopharmacology* 16, Suppl. 2 (July 2006): S101–S108.
- Allgulander, Christer, Ioana Florea, and Anna K. Trap Huusom. "Prevention of Relapse in Generalized Anxiety Disorder by Escitalopram Treatment." *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology* 9.5 (Oct. 2006): 495–505.
- Angst, Jules, and others. "Varying Temporal Criteria for Generalized Anxiety Disorder: Prevalence and Clinical

Characteristics in a Young Age Cohort." *Psychological Medicine* 36.9 (Sept. 2006): 1283–92.

- Baldwin, David S., Anna Karina Trap Huusom, and Eli Maehlum. "Escitalopram and Paroxetine in the Treatment of Generalised Anxiety Disorder: Randomised, Placebo-Controlled, Double-Blind Study." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 189.3 (Sept. 2006): 264–72.
- Connor, Kathryn M., Victoria Payne, and Jonathan R. T. Davidson. "Kava in Generalized Anxiety Disorder: Three Placebo-Controlled Trials." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 21.5 (Sept. 2006): 249–53.
- Goldston, David B., and others. "Reading Problems, Psychiatric Disorders, and Functional Impairment from Mid- to Late Adolescence." *Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry* 46.1 (Jan. 2007): 25–32.
- Gosselin, Patrick, and others. "Benzodiazepine Discontinuation Among Adults With GAD: A Randomized Trial of Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 74.5 (Oct. 2006): 908–19.
- Hoge, Elizabeth A., and others. "Cross-Cultural Differences in Somatic Presentation in Patients with Generalized Anxiety Disorder." *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease* 194.12 (Dec. 2006): 962–66.
- Kim, Tae-Suk, and others. "Comparison of Venlafaxine Extended Release Versus Paroxetine for Treatment of Patients with Generalized Anxiety Disorder." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 60.3 (June 2006): 347–51.
- Kopecek, Miloslav, Pavel Mohr, and Tomas Novak. "Sedative Effects of Low-Dose Risperidone in GAD Patients and Risk of Drug Interactions." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.8 (Aug. 2006): 1307–1308.
- Labrecque, Joane, and others. "Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy for Comorbid Generalized Anxiety Disorder and Panic Disorder With Agoraphobia." *Behavior Modification* 30.4 (July 2006): 383–410.
- Lyddon, William J. "Review of Generalized Anxiety Disorder: Advances in Research and Practice." *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy* 20.4 (Winter 2006): 463–64.
- Mennin, Douglas S. "Emotion Regulation Therapy: An Integrative Approach to Treatment-Resistant Anxiety Disorders." *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy* 36.2 (June 2006): 95–105.
- Montgomery, Stuart A., and others. "Efficacy and Safety of Pregabalin in the Treatment of Generalized Anxiety Disorder: A 6-Week, Multicenter, Randomized, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Comparison of Pregabalin and Venlafaxine." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.5 (May 2006): 771–82.
- Nutt, David, and others. "Generalized Anxiety Disorder: A Comorbid Disease." *European Neuropsychopharmacology* 16, Suppl. 2 (July 2006): S109–S118.
- Skopp, Nancy A., and others. "Investigation of Cognitive Behavior Therapy." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.3 (Mar. 2006): 292.
- Weems, Carl F., and others. "Predisaster Trait Anxiety and Negative Affect Predict Posttraumatic Stress in Youths After Hurricane Katrina." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 75.1 (Feb. 2007): 154–59.

## ORGANIZATIONS

Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852-2624. Telephone: (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.

Anxiety Disorders Education Program, National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

Freedom From Fear. 308 Seaview Avenue, Staten Island, NY 10305. Telephone: (718) 351-1717. <[www.freedomfromfear.com](http://www.freedomfromfear.com)>.

National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2971. Telephone: (800) 969-6642. <[www\\_nmha.org](http://www_nmha.org)>.

## OTHER

National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Anxiety Disorders*. NIH Publication No. 00-3879 (2000). <[www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/anxiety.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/anxiety.cfm)>.

National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Facts About Generalized Anxiety Disorder*. NIH publication OM-99-4153 (2000). <[www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/gadfacts.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/gadfacts.cfm)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Genetic factors and mental disorders

### Introduction and overview

In recent years, mental health professionals have become increasingly aware of the importance of genetic factors in the etiology (causes) of mental disorders. Since the Human Genome Project began its mapping of the entire sequence of human DNA in 1990, the implications of its findings for psychiatric diagnosis and treatment have accumulated rapidly. A new subspecialty known as biological psychiatry (also called physiological psychology or psychiatric genetics) has emerged from the discoveries of the last two decades. Biological psychiatry got its start in the late 1980s, when several research groups identified genes associated with manic depression and schizophrenia respectively. These studies ran into difficulties fairly quickly, however, because of the complexity of the relationship between genetic factors and mental illness.

One technological development that has contributed to the major advances in biological psychiatry in the last twenty years is high-speed computing. Faster computers have enabled researchers to go beyond

rough estimates of the heritability of various disorders to accurate quantification of genetic effects. In some cases the data have led to significant reappraisals of the causes of specific disorders. As recently as the 1960s and 1970s, for example, schizophrenia was generally attributed to "refrigerator mothers" and a chilly emotional climate in the patients' extended families. However, the application of computer models to schizophrenia indicates that the heritability of the disorder may be as high as 80%. Similarly, autism was once blamed on faulty parenting. However, it is now known to be over 90% heritable.

The ongoing search for genes related to psychiatric symptoms and disorders is complicated by several factors:

- psychiatric diagnosis relies on a doctor's human judgment and evaluation of a patient's behavior or appearance to a greater degree than diagnosis in other fields of medicine. For example, there is no blood or urine test for schizophrenia or a personality disorder. Diagnostic questionnaires for mental disorders are helpful in trimming the list of possible diagnoses but do not have the same degree of precision or objectivity as laboratory findings.
- mental disorders almost always involve more than one gene. Studies have shown that one mental disorder can be caused by different genes on different chromosomes in different populations. For example, one study in the late 1980s found two genes on two different chromosomes among two populations that caused manic depression. Studies of schizophrenia done in the late 1980s and early 1990s revealed the same finding—different genes on different chromosomes produced schizophrenia in different populations. It now appears that specific mental disorders are related to different sets of genes that vary across family and ethnic groups.
- genes associated with mental disorders do not always show the same degree of penetrance, which is defined as the frequency with which a gene produces its effects in a specific group of people. Penetrance is expressed as a percentage. For example, a gene for manic depression may have 20% penetrance, which means that 20% of the members of the family being studied are at risk of developing the disorder.
- genetic factors in mental disorders interact with a person's family and cultural environment. For example, a person who has a gene associated with susceptibility to alcohol abuse may not develop the disorder if he or she grows up in a family that teaches effective ways to cope with stress and responsible attitudes toward drinking.

## Genetic causality in mental disorders

Genes appear to influence the development of mental disorders in three major ways: They may govern the organic causes of such disorders as **Alzheimer's disease** (AD) and schizophrenia; they may be responsible for abnormalities in a person's development before or after birth; and they may influence a person's susceptibility to **anxiety**, depression, **personality disorders**, and **substance abuse** disorders.

### *Mental disorders with organic causes*

The two most important examples of mental disorders caused by organic changes or abnormalities in the **brain** are late-onset AD and schizophrenia. Both disorders are polygenic, which means that their expression is determined by more than one gene. Another disorder that is much less common, Huntington's disease, is significant because it is one of the few mental disorders that is monogenic, or determined by a single gene.

**SCHIZOPHRENIA.** Researchers have known for many years that first-degree biological relatives of patients with schizophrenia have a greater risk of developing the disorder than the general population. The identical twin of a person with schizophrenia has a 40–50% risk.

Late-onset AD is another polygenic disorder. It has been known since 1993 that a specific form of a gene for apolipoprotein E (apoE4) on human chromosome 19 is a genetic risk factor for late-onset AD. People who have the apoE4 gene from one parent have a 50% chance of developing AD; they have a 90% chance if they inherited the gene from both parents. They are also likely to develop AD earlier in life. One of the remaining puzzles about this particular gene, however, is that it is not a consistent marker for AD. In other words, some people who have the apoE4 gene do not develop AD, and some who do not have the gene do develop the disorder.

There are two other forms of AD, early-onset AD and familial AD (FAD), which have different patterns of genetic transmission. Early-onset AD is caused by a defect in one of three genes known as APP, presenilin-1, and presenilin-2, found on human chromosomes 21, 14, and 1, respectively. Early-onset AD is also associated with Down syndrome, in that persons with trisomy 21 (three forms of human chromosome 21 instead of a pair) often develop this form of AD. The brains of people with Down syndrome age prematurely, so that those who develop early-onset AD are often only in their late 40s or early 50s when the symptoms of the disease

first appear. FAD appears to be related to abnormal genes on human chromosomes 21 and 14.

**HUNTINGTON'S DISEASE.** Huntington's disease, or Huntington's chorea, is a neurological disorder that kills the cells in the caudate nucleus, the part of the brain that coordinates movement. It also destroys the brain cells that control cognitive functions. In 1983, the gene that causes Huntington's disease was discovered on the short arm of human chromosome 4. Ten years later, the gene was identified as an instance of a triplet or trinucleotide repeat. Nucleotides are the molecular "building blocks" of DNA and RNA. Three consecutive nucleotides form a codon, or triplet, in messenger RNA that codes for a specific amino acid. In 1991, researchers discovered not only that nucleotide triplets repeat themselves, but that these repetitions sometimes expand in number during the process of genetic transmission. This newly discovered type of mutation is known as a dynamic or expansion mutation. Since 1991, more than a dozen diseases have been traced to expansion mutations. Eight of them are caused by repeats of the triplet cytosine-adenine-guanine (CAG), which codes for an amino acid called glutamine. In 1993, Huntington's disease was identified as a CAG expansion mutation disorder. Where the genetic material from a normal chromosome 4 has about 20 repeats of the CAG triplet, the Huntington's gene has a minimum of 45 repeats, sometimes as many as 86. The higher the number of CAG triplet repeats in a Huntington's gene, the earlier the age at which the symptoms will appear. The expansion mutation in Huntington's disease results in the production of a toxic protein that destroys the cells in the patient's brain that control movement and cognition.

### *Childhood developmental disorders*

Developmental disorders of childhood are another large category of mental disorders caused by mutations, deletions, translocations (rearrangements of the arms of chromosomes), and other alterations in genes or chromosomes.

**TRIPLET REPEAT DISORDERS.** Since 1991, expansion mutations have been identified as the cause of several diseases. Some, such as Huntington's disease, are characterized by long expansion mutations of the trinucleotide sequence CAG, which in effect adds so much glutamine to the protein being synthesized that it becomes toxic to the nervous system. A second category of triplet repeat disorders contains extra triplets that add an amino acid called alanine to the protein. The sequence of nucleotides is cytosine-guanine-N, where N stands for any of the four basic nucleotides. Although the proteins produced by this type of expansion mutation are not toxic, their normal function in the body is

disrupted. The developmental disorders related to these CGN triplets are characterized by abnormalities of the skeleton. One of these disorders is synpolydactyly, in which the patient has more than the normal number of fingers or toes. Another is cleidocranial dysplasia, a disorder marked by abnormal development of the skull.

Other developmental disorders are caused by expansion mutations outside the regions of the gene that code for proteins. The segments of DNA that specify the sequence of a portion of a protein are known as exons, while the stretches of DNA that lie between the exons and do not code for proteins are called introns. The CAG and CGN groups of triplet disorders are expansion mutations that occur within exons. A third group of triplet disorders results from expansion mutations in introns. Expansions in this third group are usually much longer than those in the first two categories; some repeat several hundred or even several thousand times. The best-known expansion mutation in this group causes the disorder known as fragile X syndrome. Fragile X syndrome is the most common inherited form of **mental retardation** and should be considered in the differential diagnosis of any child with developmental delays, mental retardation, or learning difficulties. The syndrome is caused by a large expansion of a cytosine-guanine-guanine (CGG) repeat, which interferes with normal protein transcription from a gene called the FMR1 gene on the X chromosome. Males with the mutation lack a second normal copy of the gene and are more severely affected than females who have a normal FMR1 gene on their second X chromosome. In both sexes there is a correlation between the length of the expansion mutation and the severity of the syndrome.

The discovery of expansion mutations was the solution to a long-standing genetic riddle. Clinicians had noticed as early as 1910 that some disorders produce a more severe phenotype or occur at earlier and earlier ages in each successive generation of an affected family. This phenomenon is known as anticipation, but its biological basis was not understood until recently. It is now known that triplet repeats that are long enough to cause disorders are unstable and tend to grow longer from generation to generation. For example, an expansion mutation of the cytosine-thymine-guanine (CTG) triplet causes a potentially life-threatening developmental disorder known as myotonic dystrophy. Repeats of the CTG triplet that are just above the threshold for myotonic dystrophy itself may produce a relatively mild disorder, namely eye cataracts in later life. Within two to three generations, however, the CTG repeats become longer, producing a fatal congenital illness. In addition to developmental disorders of childhood,

expansion mutations may also be involved in other psychiatric disorders. Anticipation has been found in some families affected by **bipolar disorder** and schizophrenia, and some researchers think that it may also be present in some forms of autism.

**GENOMIC IMPRINTING.** Another recent discovery in the field of biological psychiatry is the phenomenon of genomic imprinting, which distinguishes between chromosomes derived from a person's father and those derived from the mother. Genomic imprinting was discovered in the late 1980s as an exception to Gregor Mendel's laws of biological inheritance. A small subset of human genes are expressed differently depending on the parent who contributes them to a child's genetic makeup. This phenomenon has helped researchers understand the causation of two well-known genetic disorders—Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes.

In the 1980s, researchers studying Prader-Willi syndrome and Angelman syndrome noticed that both disorders were caused by a deletion on the long arm of chromosome 15 in the very same region, extending from 15q11 to 15q13. This finding was surprising, because the two syndromes have markedly different phenotypes. Children with Prader-Willi syndrome have severe mental retardation, poor muscle tone, small hands and feet, and a voracious appetite (hyperphagia) that begins in childhood. As a result, they are often obese by adolescence. Children with Angelman syndrome, on the other hand, do not speak, are often hyperactive, and have **seizures** and sleep disturbances. In the late 1980s, advances in molecular genetics revealed that the different expressions of the same deletion on the same chromosome were determined by the sex of the parent who contributed that chromosome. Children with Prader-Willi syndrome had inherited their father's copy of chromosome 15, while the children with Angelman syndrome had inherited their mother's. Highly specific diagnostic tests for these two disorders have been developed within the past decade.

**BEHAVIORAL PHENOTYPES.** Although medical professionals are familiar with the physical phenotypes associated with genetic disorders, the notion of behavioral phenotypes is still controversial. A behavioral phenotype is the characteristic set of behaviors found in patients with a genetic disorder. Behavioral phenotypes include patterns of language usage, cognitive development, and social adjustment as well as behavioral problems in the narrow sense. It is important for psychiatrists who treat children and adolescents to understand behavioral phenotypes, because they are better able to identify problem behaviors as part of a

genetic syndrome and refer children to a geneticist for an accurate genetic diagnosis.

Examples of behavioral phenotypes are those associated with Down, Prader-Willi, and Williams syndromes. Children with Down syndrome have an increased risk of developing early-onset Alzheimer's disease. They are usually quiet and good-tempered, but may also be hyperactive and impulsive. Their behavioral phenotype includes delayed language development and moderate to severe mental retardation.

Children with Prader-Willi syndrome are often quiet in childhood but develop stubborn, aggressive, or impulsive patterns of behavior as they grow older. The onset of their hyperphagia is often associated with temper tantrums and other behavioral problems. They are typically obsessed with food, frequently hoarding it, stealing it, or stealing money to buy food. About 50% of children diagnosed with Prader-Willi syndrome meet the criteria for **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD).

Williams syndrome is a genetic disorder that results from a deletion of locus 23 on chromosome 7q11. Children with this syndrome often have an "elf-like" face with short upturned noses and small chins. Their behavioral phenotype includes talkativeness, friendliness, and a willingness to follow strangers. They are also hyperactive and easily distracted from tasks. The personality profile of children with Williams syndrome is so distinctive that many are diagnosed on the basis of the behavioral rather than the physical phenotype.

#### *Psychological/behavioral vulnerability in adults*

Although psychiatrists at one time regarded emotional wounds in early childhood as the root cause of anxiety and **depressive disorders** in later life, inherited vulnerability to these disturbances is the subject of intensive study at the present time. In the past two decades, genetic factors have been shown to influence the likelihood of a person's developing mood disorders or post-traumatic syndromes in adult life. A study done in 1990 showed that first-degree relatives of a person diagnosed with major depression were two to four times as likely to develop depression themselves as people in the general population. However, the genetic patterns involved in depression appear to be quite complex; there is some evidence that both genomic imprinting and the phenomenon of anticipation may be present in some families with multigenerational histories of depression. In addition, the evidence indicates that susceptibility to major depression is

governed by several different genes on several different chromosomes.

**POST-TRAUMATIC SYNDROMES.** Researchers have found that some persons are more vulnerable than others to developing dissociative and anxiety-related symptoms following a traumatic experience. Vulnerability to trauma is affected by such inherited factors as temperament as well as by family or cultural influences; shy or introverted persons are at greater risk for developing **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD) than their extroverted or outgoing peers. In addition, twin studies indicate that certain abnormalities in brain hormone levels and brain structure are inherited, and that these increase a person's susceptibility to developing **acute stress disorder** (ASD) or PTSD following exposure to trauma.

**ANXIETY DISORDERS.** It has been known for some time that **anxiety disorders** run in families. Recent twin studies as well as the ongoing mapping of the human genome point to a genetic factor in the development of **generalized anxiety disorder** (GAD).

Research has also confirmed earlier hypotheses that there is a genetic component to **agoraphobia**, and that it can be separated from susceptibility to **panic disorder** (PD). Panic disorder was found to be associated with two loci, one on human chromosome 1 and the other on chromosome 11q. Researchers have concluded that agoraphobia and PD are common, heritable anxiety disorders that share some but not all of their genetic loci for susceptibility.

**BEHAVIORAL TRAITS.** There has been considerable controversy in the past decade concerning the mapping of genetic loci associated with specific human behaviors, as distinct from behavioral phenotypes related to developmental disorders. Research into the genetic component of human behavior is currently conducted with one eye, so to speak, on the social and political implications of its potential results. Given contemporary concerns about the misuse of findings related to biological race or sex, investigators are usually careful to acknowledge the importance of environmental as well as genetic factors.

#### **Genetic epidemiology**

Genetic epidemiology is the branch of medicine that investigates the incidence and prevalence of genetic disorders in specific populations. Researchers in this field make use of specific types of studies to assess the relative importance of genetic and environmental factors in families with a history of inherited disorders.

## KEY TERMS

**Anticipation**—In medicine, a phenomenon in which certain diseases manifest at earlier ages or in more severe phenotypes in each successive generation of an affected family.

**Apolipoprotein E**—A protein that transports cholesterol through the body. One form of this protein, apoE4, is associated with a 60% risk of late-onset Alzheimer's disease (AD).

**Behavioral phenotype**—The greater likelihood that people with a specific genetic syndrome will have certain behavioral or developmental characteristics compared to people who do not have the syndrome. The concept of a behavioral phenotype is used most often with reference to patterns of behavior found in certain developmental disorders of childhood, such as Down syndrome or Prader-Willi syndrome. However, this does not mean that every person diagnosed with a given genetic syndrome will invariably develop these characteristics.

**Codon**—A three-member nucleotide sequence in messenger RNA that codes for a specific amino acid in synthesizing protein molecules.

**Cytogenetics**—The branch of biology that combines the study of genetic inheritance with the study of cell structure.

**Dizygotic**—Developed from two fertilized ova. Dizygotic twins are sometimes called fraternal twins.

**Down syndrome**—A genetic disorder characterized by an extra chromosome 21 (trisomy 21), mental retardation, and susceptibility to early-onset Alzheimer's disease.

**Epidemiology**—The study of the causes, incidence, transmission, and control of diseases.

**Etiology**—The cause or origin of a disease or disorder. The word is also used to refer to the study of the causes of disease.

**Exon**—A segment of DNA that is transcribed to RNA and encodes information about the protein sequence.

**Expansion mutation**—A genetic mutation caused by additional repetitions of a triplet, or trinucleotide sequence, during the process of genetic transmission. In Huntington's disease, the expansion mutation produces more of a toxic gene product.

**Genome**—The total genetic makeup of a cell or organism. The human genome is the complete genetic constitution of a human being.

**Genomic imprinting**—The process in which specific genes or DNA segments are modified during the development of sperm or egg cells in a parent-specific fashion. The modification is reversible and appears to include the addition or removal of methyl groups to specific areas within the DNA sequence.

### Twin studies

Twin studies are based on the assumption that twins reared in the same family share a common environment. Monozygotic (identical) twins have all their genes in common, whereas dizygotic (fraternal) twins share only half their genes. If a certain disorder appears more frequently in monozygotic twins of affected persons than in dizygotic twins, one may assume that the difference is due to genetic factors rather than the family environment. Some phenotypes show clear differences between identical and fraternal twins, including schizophrenia, childhood autism, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder**, unipolar depression, manic depressive disorder, and cognitive abilities as measured by IQ tests.

Twin studies have proved to be particularly important in genetic research into autism. Until the early 1970s, autism was assumed to be caused primarily by parental coldness toward the child. In part, the lack of interest in genetic aspects of the disorder was due to the fact that cytogenetic research (research that studies the

links between genetic inheritance and cell structure) was not sufficiently advanced in the late 1960s to have demonstrated any chromosomal abnormalities in people diagnosed with autism. The first small-scale twin study of children with autism was done in 1977; its findings showed, first, that there is a significant difference between monozygotic and dizygotic twin pairs with regard to the appearance of the disorder in siblings. More importantly, the study showed that the similarities within monozygotic pairs of twins included a range of social and cognitive disabilities, not just autism itself. This finding implies that the phenotype of autism is broader than the older diagnostic categories assumed. In the 1970s and 1980s, advances in cytogenetic techniques led to the discovery that autism is associated with several different chromosomal abnormalities, including the defect that produces fragile X syndrome. A much larger British twin study done in 1995 confirmed earlier findings in the United States: A monozygotic twin of a child diagnosed with autism was 12 times more likely to have the disorder than a

**Genotype**—The genetic makeup of an organism or a set of organisms. A person's genotype is the sum total of the genetic material transmitted from his or her parents.

**Huntington's disease**—A hereditary disorder that appears in middle age and is characterized by gradual brain deterioration, progressive dementia, and loss of voluntary movement. It is sometimes called Huntington's chorea.

**Hyperphagia**—An abnormally large appetite for food. Hyperphagia is one of the symptoms of Prader-Willi syndrome.

**Intron**—A segment of DNA that interrupts an exon and that does not encode any information about the protein sequence.

**Monogenic**—Determined or controlled by a single gene. Huntington's disease is one of the few psychiatric disorders that is monogenic.

**Monozygotic**—Developed from a single fertilized ovum. Monozygotic twins are sometimes called identical twins.

**Nosology**—The branch of medicine that deals with the systematic classification of diseases and disorders.

**Nucleotide**—One of the molecules that form the building blocks of DNA or RNA. The nucleotides

of DNA include a phosphate group, four chemical bases (adenine, cytosine, guanine, and thymine), and a sugar containing five carbon atoms. In RNA the thymine base is replaced by uracil.

**Penetrance**—In genetics, the frequency with which a specific gene produces its effects in a group of people or other organisms. Penetrance is expressed as a percentage.

**Phenotype**—The observable signs, symptoms, and other aspects of the makeup of an organism. A person's phenotype is the observable signs, symptoms, and other aspects of his or her appearance. The term is also used sometimes to refer to the appearance of an organism resulting from the interaction between its genotype and its environment.

**Polygenic**—A trait or disorder that is determined by a group of genes acting together. Most human characteristics, including height, weight, and general body build, are polygenic. Schizophrenia and late-onset Alzheimer's disease are considered polygenic disorders.

**Prader-Willi syndrome**—A developmental disorder of childhood characterized by mental retardation; poor muscle tone; delayed growth and sexual maturation; and childhood onset of an abnormally large appetite for food.

dizygotic twin (60% versus 5%). Secondly, the British study confirmed the hypothesis that the genetic risk of autism extends to a broader phenotype; over 90% of the monozygotic twin pairs in the British study shared social and intellectual disabilities similar to those found in patients with autism, but less severe.

### Family studies

Family studies are important tools for evaluating environmental effects on children with genetic disorders—and also for evaluating the impact of the disorder on the family environment. Family studies have indicated that families may develop problems in response to a child's illness that may also affect the child's prognosis for recovery.

Family factors fall into three categories: shared genetic material; shared environment; and nonshared environment. These three categories are complicated, however, by the fact that genetic as well as environmental factors affect interactions between parents and

children. For example, a parent's behavior toward a child diagnosed with depression is partly shaped by the parent's genetic vulnerability to depression.

In general, much of the impact of a family's environment on a child with a mental disorder is due to nonshared rather than shared interactions. A clinical research measurement called expressed emotion (EE), originally developed to study young adults with schizophrenia, is now used to study families with younger children with mental disorders. EE measures three primary aspects of family members' attitudes toward the child with the illness: criticism, hostility, and emotional overinvolvement. A growing number of research studies indicate that EE is a good predictor of the outcome of the child's illness; high EE is a marker of a more difficult course of the disorder and a poorer prognosis.

### Clinical applications of biological psychiatry

Recent advances in genetics have affected the practice of psychiatry in several ways:

- genetic counseling. Genetic counseling is recommended when a couple has already produced a child with mental retardation, dysmorphic (malformed) features, or developmental delays; when either parent is suspected or known to have a genetic disorder; when the mother is over 35; when there is a family history of a genetic disorder, especially if several members are affected; or if the mother has been exposed during pregnancy to drugs or environmental toxins known to cause birth defects. Genetic counselors do not try to control the couple's decision about a present or future pregnancy; rather, they offer information about the disorder, including treatment options as well as the risk of recurrence. They discuss possible reproductive choices available to the couple and help them adjust to caring for a child who is already affected.
- medication selection and dosage. Preliminary studies of patients with schizophrenia indicate that DNA testing of the gene for a specific serotonin receptor can predict the patient's response to antipsychotic drugs. A similar form of gene testing can predict which children with asthma will respond to an inhaled medication known as albuterol and which will not. In the near future, researchers hope to devise genetic tests that will measure patients' responsiveness to specific antidepressant and antianxiety medications. Such tests would greatly simplify the present process of trial-and-error prescribing of drugs for psychiatric disorders.
- psychiatric nosology. Nosology is the branch of psychiatry that deals with the classification of mental disorders. Some current diagnostic labels, including autism and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, may represent groups of related syndromes rather than a single diagnostic entity. In other instances, genetic studies may lead to eventual reclassification of certain disorders. Some studies, for example, suggest that body dysmorphic disorder is more closely related to obsessive-compulsive disorder than to the somatoform disorders with which it is presently grouped.
- diagnosis of disorders with major psychological consequences. It is possible for people to find out whether they have the gene for Huntington's disease or the BRCA1 or BRCA2 genes for breast cancer. Although some people may choose not to know, others may prefer the possibility of bad news to years of chronic uncertainty and anxiety.

### Ethical concerns

As the number of tests available for determining genetic markers for mental disorders continues to increase, ethical issues are being debated. These concerns include:

- regulation of genetic testing. Some companies have started to market tests for the apoE4 Alzheimer's gene even though the present benefits of such testing are not clear. The Department of Health and Human Services has established an advisory committee to study the question of government regulation of genetic testing.
- confidentiality. The fear of losing health insurance is a major barrier to acceptance of genetic testing in the general population. Many people do not trust hospitals or research laboratories to keep test results confidential.
- discrimination. Some people are concerned that genetic findings could be used to deny college or graduate school admission to persons at risk for certain disorders, or to restrict their access to employment opportunities.
- reproductive issues. As more and more human traits are found to have a genetic component, questions inevitably arise regarding the possibility of government control over reproduction. But while few people would want to preserve the gene for Huntington's disease, for example, they are likely to disagree about the desirability of other human traits, such as a tendency toward short stature.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Faraone, Stephen V., Ming T. Tsuang, and Debby W. Tsuang. *Genetics of Mental Disorders: What Practitioners and Students Need to Know*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2001.
- Gershon, Elliot S., and C. Robert Cloninger, eds. *Genetic Approaches to Mental Disorders*. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 1994.

#### PERIODICALS

- Boomsma, Dorret I., and others. "Longitudinal Stability of the CBCL-Juvenile Bipolar Disorder Phenotype: A Study in Dutch Twins." *Biological Psychiatry* 60.9 (2006): 912–20.
- Douthit, Kathryn Z. "The Convergence of Counseling and Psychiatric Genetics: An Essential Role for Counselors." *Journal of Counseling & Development* 84.1 (2006): 16–28.
- Durston, Sarah, and others. "Activation in Ventral Prefrontal Cortex Is Sensitive to Genetic Vulnerability for Attention-Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder." *Biological Psychiatry* 60.10 (2006): 1062–70.
- Farmer, Anne, Amanda Elkin, and Peter McGuffin. "The Genetics of Bipolar Affective Disorder." *Current Opinion in Psychiatry* 20.1 (2007): 8–12.
- Giménez-Llorente, L., and others. "Modeling Behavioral and Neuronal Symptoms of Alzheimer's Disease in Mice: A

- Role for Intraneuronal Amyloid.” *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews* 1.1 (2007): 125–47.
- Harris, Julie Aitken, Philip A. Vernon, and Kerry L. Jang. “Rated Personality and Measured Intelligence in Young Twin Children.” *Personality and Individual Differences* 42.1 (2007): 75–86.
- Hurd, Yasmin L. “Perspectives on Current Directions in the Neurobiology of Addiction Disorders Relevant to Genetic Risk Factors.” *CNS Spectrums* 11.11 (2006): 855–62.
- Nierenberg, Andrew A., and others. “Family History of Mood Disorder and Characteristics of Major Depressive Disorder: A STAR\*D (Sequenced Treatment Alternatives to Relieve Depression) Study.” *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (2007): 214–21.
- O’Tuathaigh, Colm M. P., and others. “Susceptibility Genes for Schizophrenia: Characterisation of Mutant Mouse Models at the Level of Phenotypic Behaviour.” *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews* 31.1 (2007): 60–78.
- Potter, Alexandra S., Paul A. Newhouse, and David J. Bucci. “Central Nicotinic Cholinergic Systems: A Role in the Cognitive Dysfunction in Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder?” *Behavioural Brain Research* 175.2 (2006): 201–11.
- Taylor, Warren D., David C. Steffens, and K. Ranga Krishnan. “Psychiatric Disease in the Twenty-First Century: The Case for Subcortical Ischemic Depression.” *Biological Psychiatry* 60.12 (2006): 1299–1303.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Ruth Wineclaw, PhD

Geodon see **Ziprasidone**

## Geriatric Depression Scale

### Definition

The Geriatric **Depression** Scale (GDS) is a 30-item self-report assessment designed specifically to identify depression in the elderly. The items may be answered yes or no, which is thought to be simpler than scales that use a five-category response set. It is generally recommended as a routine part of a comprehensive geriatric assessment. One point is assigned to each answer and corresponds to a scoring grid. A score of 10 or 11 or lower is the usual threshold to separate depressed from nondepressed patients. However, a **diagnosis** of clinical depression should not be made on the GDS results alone. Although the test has well-established reliability and validity, responses should be considered in conjunction with other results from a comprehensive diagnostic work-up. A short version of the GDS containing 15 questions has been developed. The GDS is also available in a number of languages other than English.

### Purpose

Depression is widespread among elderly persons, affecting one in six patients treated in general medical practice and an even higher percentage of those in hospitals and nursing homes. Older people have the highest **suicide** rate of any group, and many medical problems common to older people may be related to, or intensified by, a depressive disorder. Recognition of the prevalence of depression among older people prompted the development of the geriatric depression scale in 1982–83. Yes/no responses are thought to be more easily used than the graduated responses found on other standard assessment scales such as the **Beck Depression Inventory**, the Hamilton rating scale for depression, or the Zung self-rating depression scale.

While it is not found in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM-IV-TR) produced by the American Psychiatric Association, the GDS is widely recommended for clinical use and is included as a routine part of a comprehensive geriatric assessment. It is also increasingly being used in research on depression in the elderly.

### Precautions

Depression scales are either interviewer-administered or by self-report means. The GDS is a self-report assessment developed in 1982 by J. A. Yesavitch and colleagues. A self-report assessment is easier and quicker to administer, though an interviewer-administered test is generally more sensitive and specific—another reason for using more than one tool to obtain an accurate diagnosis.

There is some controversy over whether the GDS is reliable for depression screening in individuals with mild or moderate **dementia**. Several studies have shown good agreement with observer ratings of depression, whether or not the patient had dementia. However, persons with dementia may deny symptoms of depression. It also appears that less educated people are more likely to score in the depressed range on the GDS 15-item short form. These caveats notwithstanding, the GDS can be usefully applied in general medical settings in combination with other clinical assessments, observation, and interviews with elder patient and their families.

Both symptom pattern and symptom severity must be considered when trying to identify depression. These dimensions are taken into account in the development of symptom scales and, while clinical judgment takes priority, a scale such as the GDS can help in identifying persons with depression, whether they

are making satisfactory progress with treatment, or when they may need further assessment or referral.

## Description

Yesavitch and his coworkers chose 100 statements that they determined were related to seven common characteristics of depression in later life. These included:

- somatic concern
- lowered affect (affect is the outward expression of emotion)
- cognitive impairment
- feelings of discrimination
- impaired motivation
- lack of future orientation
- lack of self-esteem

The best 30 items were selected after administration of the 100 items to 46 depressed and normal elders. Those items were then administered to 20 elders without depression and 51 who were in treatment for depression. The test was 84% sensitive and 95% specific for a depression diagnosis. Repeated studies have demonstrated the value of GDS.

Examples of the questions in the GDS include:

- Are you basically satisfied with your life?
- Have you dropped many of your activities and interests?
- Are you hopeful about the future?
- Do you often get restless and fidgety?
- Do you frequently get upset over little things?
- Do you enjoy getting up in the morning?

A time frame should be specified for administration of the test, for example, "Answer these questions by thinking of how you've felt the past two weeks."

## Results

A scoring grid accompanies the GDS. One point is given for each respondent's answer that matches those on the grid. For example, the grid response to "Are you basically satisfied with your life?" is "no." If the elderly person responds in the negative one point is scored; if the response is "yes," then no point is scored. For the 30-item assessment, a score of 0–9 is considered normal; 10–19 indicates mild depression, and a score over 20 is suggestive of severe depression. The maximum number of points that can be scored is 30.

*See also* Depression and depressive disorders.

## KEY TERMS

**Low affect**—Severe lack of interest and emotions; emotional numbness.

**Somatic concern**—Excessive concern about the body, particularly in relation to illness.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Gallo, Joseph J., M.D., M.P.H., William Reichel, M.D., and Lillian M. Andersen, R.N., Ed.D. *Handbook of Geriatric Assessment*. 2nd edition. Gaithersburg, MD: Aspen Publishers, Inc., 1995.  
 Sadavoy, Joel, M.D., F.R.C.P.C., Lawrence W. Lazarus, M.D., Lissy F. Jarvik, M.D., Ph.D., and George T. Grossberg, M.D. eds. *Comprehensive Review of Geriatric Psychiatry-II*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, Inc., 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- Reynolds, Charles F. III, M.D., and David J. Kupfer, M.D. "Depression and Aging: A Look to the Future." *Psychiatric Services* 50 (September 1999): 1167-1172.  
 Yesavage J. A., T. L. Brink, T. L. Rose, O. Lum, V. Huang, M. Adey, and V. O. Leirer. "Development and Validation of a Geriatric Depression Screening Scale: A Preliminary Report." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 17.1 (1982-83): 37-49.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association for Geriatric Psychiatry. 7910 Woodmont Ave., Suite 1050, Bethesda, MD, 20814. Telephone: (301) 654-7850. <<http://www.aagponline.org>>.

Judy Leaver, MA

## Gestalt therapy

### Definition

Gestalt therapy is a form of **psychotherapy** that helps the client focus on the here and now rather than on the past. Gestalt therapy stresses the development of client self-awareness and personal responsibility.

### Purpose

The goal of Gestalt therapy is to raise clients' awareness regarding how they function in their environment; with family, at work or school, and with friends. The focus of therapy is more on what is happening (the moment-to-moment process) than

what is being discussed (the content). Awareness is being alert to the most important events in one's life and environment with full sensorimotor, emotional, cognitive, and energy support. Support is defined as anything that makes contact with or withdrawal from the environment possible, including energy, body support, breathing, information, concern for others, and language, for example.

In therapy, clients become aware of what they are doing, how they are doing it, and how they can change themselves, and at the same time, they learn to accept and value themselves. According to this approach, individuals define, develop, and learn about themselves in relationship to others, and they are constantly changing.

Gestalt therapy is "unpredictable" in that the therapist and client follow moment-to-moment experience and neither knows exactly where this will take them. Gestalt therapy is complex and intuitive, but it is based on the following principles:

- Holism. Gestalt therapy takes into account the whole person including thoughts, feelings, behavior, body sensations, and dreams. The focus is on integration, that is, how the many parts of the person fit together, and how the client makes contact (interacts) with the environment.
- Field theory. According to this theory, everything is related, in flux, interrelated, and in process. The therapist focuses on how the client makes contact with the environment (family, work, school, friends, authority figures).
- The figure-formation process describes how individuals organize or manipulate their environment from moment to moment.
- Organismic self-regulation is the creative adjustment the organism (person) makes in relation to the environment. The person's equilibrium with his or her environment is "disturbed" by the emergence of a client need, sensation, or interest and is related to the figure-formation process in that the need of the person organizes the field. For example, if an individual wants coffee, this coffee need is what comes out of the diffuse background and becomes "figural" (comes to the forefront of the client's environment or field) and when the individual enters a room, the figural will be related to the coffee need. The therapist is interested in what is figural for a person because it may provide insight into the person's need(s).
- The Now. The concept of the here and now is what is being done, thought, and felt at the moment, and not in the past or the future.
- Unfinished business is defined as the unexpressed feelings that are associated with distinct memories

and fantasies. These feelings may be resentment, rage, hatred, pain, anxiety, grief, guilt, and/or abandonment that are not fully experienced in awareness and linger on in the background. The feelings are carried into the present life and cause preoccupations, compulsive behaviors, wariness, and other self-defeating behaviors. Unfinished business will persist until the person faces and deals with these denied or alienated feelings.

The current practice of Gestalt therapy includes treatment of a wide range of problems and has been successfully used to address a wide range of "psychosomatic" disorders including migraine, ulcerative colitis, and spastic neck and back. Therapists work with couples and families, and with individuals who have difficulties coping with authority figures. In addition, Gestalt therapy has been used for brief **crisis intervention**, to help persons with post-traumatic **stress** disorders, alcohol and drug **abuse, depression, or anxiety disorders**; with adults in a poverty program; with seriously mentally ill individuals with psychotic disorders; and those with borderline **personality disorders**.

### Description

The relationship between the therapist and the client is the most important aspect of psychotherapy in Gestalt therapy. In Gestalt therapy, the interaction between therapist and client is an ever-changing dialogue marked by straightforward caring, warmth, acceptance, and self-responsibility. There are four characteristics of dialogue:

- inclusion, in which the therapist puts him- or herself, as much as is possible, into the experience of the client. The therapist does not judge, analyze, or interpret what he or she observes.
- presence refers to the therapist expressing his or her observations, preferences, feelings, personal experience, and thoughts to the client.
- commitment to dialogue allows a feeling of connection, or contact, between the therapist and the client.
- dialogue is active and can be nonverbal as well as verbal. It can be dancing, song, words, or any modality that expresses and moves the energy between the therapist and the client.

Gestalt therapy holds the view that people are endlessly remaking or discovering themselves; therefore, individuals are always in constant transformation. The therapist's approach is to help clients: increase or deepen their awareness of themselves and their relationships with others, by attending and engaging with the client; to explore the client's experience; and to describe what is perceived. All techniques

used within the therapeutic relationship help clients to work through and move beyond painful emotional blocks. This allows the client to explore new behavior, first in the context of the therapeutic relationship and then, as appropriate, in the outside world.

The therapeutic process begins at the first contact between client and therapist. Assessment and screening are usually done as part of the ongoing relationship with the client and not as a separate period of diagnostic testing and history taking. Assessment information is obtained by beginning the therapeutic work and includes the client's willingness and support for work in the Gestalt therapy framework, the match between the client and the therapist, diagnostic and personality information, the decision regarding the frequency of sessions, the need for adjunctive treatment (such as day treatment or **biofeedback** training), and the need for medication and medical consultation.

Gestalt therapists now make use of the traditional diagnostic categories to obtain necessary information to help patients with serious mental illnesses (such as psychotic disorders and borderline disorders) and because of administrative and insurance reimbursement procedures. Despite these changes, it is believed that Gestalt therapy assessment techniques will continue to be varied since Gestalt therapists draw on other therapeutic systems.

In therapy, the Gestalt therapist is active and sessions are lively and characterized by warmth, acceptance, caring, and self-responsibility and promote direct experiencing of a situation or event rather than passively talking about the event. Events recalled from the past are explored and felt in the here and now of the therapy session. Clients receive input from the therapists in many ways: they can see and hear the therapists react; the therapists can tell them how they are seen and what is seen; therapists may share their own feelings and reveal personal information about themselves; and therapists can discuss how client awareness is limited by how the client and therapist interact with or engage each other—that is, make contact.

The Gestalt therapist has a wide range of active interventions (cognitive and behavioral) at his or her disposal and may use any techniques or methods as long as they are (a) aimed toward increasing awareness, (b) arise out of the dialogue and the therapist's perception of what is going on with the client (sensing, feeling, thinking) in the immediate therapy session, and (c) within the parameters of ethical practice.

### ***Exercises and experiments***

Many therapeutic interventions called exercises and experiments have been developed to enhance awareness

and bring about client change. Exercises are defined as ready-made techniques that are sometimes used to evoke certain emotions (such as the expression of anger) in clients. Experiments, on the other hand, grow out of the immediate interaction (dialogue) between client and therapist. They are spontaneous, one-of-a-kind, and relevant to a particular moment and the particular development of an emerging issue such as the client's reports of a need, dream, fantasy, and body awareness. Experiments are done with full participation and collaboration with clients and are designed to expand clients' awareness and to help them to try out new ways of behaving rather than to achieve a particular result. These experiments may take many forms. According to Gerald Corey, some are: "imagining a threatening future event; setting up a dialogue between a client and some significant person in his and her life; dramatizing the memory of a painful event; reliving a particularly profound early experience in the present; assuming the identity of one's mother or father through role-playing; focusing on gestures, posture, and other nonverbal signs of inner expression; carrying on a dialogue between two conflicting aspects within the person."

While participating in experiments, clients actually experience the feelings associated with their conflicts or issues. Experiments are tailored to each individual client and used in a timely manner; they are to be carried out in a context that offers safety and support while encouraging the client to risk trying out new behavior. The Gestalt therapy focus is on the entire person and all parts—verbal and nonverbal behaviors, emotional feelings—all are attended to.

Gestalt therapists are said to rely on spontaneity, inventiveness, "present-centeredness," and a range of possible therapeutic encounters, interactions that lead to exercises, and experiments are potentially infinite but can be categorized as follows.

**USING STATEMENTS AND QUESTIONS TO FOCUS AWARENESS.** Many interventions have to do with simply asking what the client is aware of experiencing or asking simple and direct questions as, "What are you feeling?" and "What are you thinking?" The client may be instructed to start a sentence with "Now, I am aware . . ." or asked to repeat a behavior, as in, "Please wring your hands together again." A frequent technique is to follow the client's awareness report with the instruction, "Stay with it!" or "Feel it out!"

**CLIENT'S VERBAL BEHAVIOR OR LANGUAGE.** Awareness can be enhanced and emphasized through the client's verbal behavior or language since client speech patterns are considered to be an expression of their feelings, thoughts, and attitudes. Some aspects of language

that might indicate the clients' avoidance of strong emotions or of self-responsibility are the general pronouns such as "it" and "you." Clients are instructed to substitute, when appropriate, the personal pronoun "I" for these pronouns to assume a sense of responsibility for his or her feelings or thoughts (ownership). Sometimes clients may be asked to change their questions into direct statements in order to assume responsibility for what they say. Other examples of helping clients to be more in control using language are to have them omit qualifiers and disclaimers such as "maybe," "perhaps," or "I guess" from their language patterns. This changes ambivalent and weak statements into more clear and direct statements; to substitute "I won't" for "I can't" because often "can't" gives the feeling of being unable to do something. It may be more accurate to say "I won't" meaning "I choose not to do this for any of various reasons," or use the word, "want" instead of "need" which is considered an indication of urgency and anxiety, and is less accurate. Other changes might be to change "should" and "ought" to "I choose to" or "I want to" increasing the clients' power and control of their lives.

**NONVERBAL BEHAVIOR.** Awareness can also be enhanced by focusing on nonverbal behavior and may include any technique that makes the clients more aware of their body functioning or helps them to see how they can use their bodies to support excitement, awareness, and contact. The parts of the body that therapists may attend to include the mouth, jaw, eyes, nose, neck, shoulders, arms, hands, torso, legs, and feet, or the entire body. The therapist, for example, may point out to and explore with the client how he or she is smiling while at the same time expressing anger.

**SELF-DIALOGUE.** Self-dialogue by clients is an **intervention** used by Gestalt therapists that allows clients to get in touch with feelings that they may be unaware of and, therefore, increase the integration of different parts of clients that do not match or conflicts in clients. Examples of some common conflicts include: "the parent inside versus the child inside," "the responsible one versus the impulsive one," "the puritanical side versus the sexual side," "the good side versus the bad side," "the aggressive self versus the passive self," "the autonomous side versus the resentful side," and "the hard worker versus the goof-off." The client is assisted in accepting and learning to live with his or her polarities and not necessarily getting rid of any one part or trait.

The client is engaged in the self-dialogue by using what is called the empty-chair technique. Using two chairs, the client is asked to take one role (the parent

inside, for example) in one chair and then play the other role (the child inside) in the second chair. As the client changes roles and the dialogue continues between both sides of the client he or she moves back and forth between the two chairs. Other examples of situations in which dialogues can be used, according to Corey, include "one part of the body versus the other (one hand versus the other), between a client and another person, or between the self and object such as a building or an accomplishment."

**ENACTMENT AND DRAMATIZATION.** Enactment increases awareness through the dramatizing of some part of the client's existence by asking him or her to put his or her feelings or thoughts into action, such as instructing the client to "Say it to the person" (when in **group therapy**), or to role-play using the empty chair technique. Exaggeration is a form of enactment in which clients are instructed to exaggerate a feeling, thought, or movement in order to provide more intensity of feelings. Enactment can be therapeutic and give rise to creativity.

**GUIDED FANTASY.** Guided fantasy (visualization) is a technique some clients are able to use more effectively than using enactment to bring an experience into the here and now. Clients are asked to close their eyes and, with the guidance of the therapist, slowly imagine a scene of the past or future event. More and more details are used to describe the event with all senses and thoughts.

**DREAM WORK.** Dream work is most important in Gestalt therapy. Working with clients' dreams requires developing a list of all the details of the dream, remembering each person, event, and mood in it and then becoming each of these parts through role-playing and inventing dialogue. Each part of the dream is thought to represent the clients' own contradictory and inconsistent sides. Dialogue between these opposing sides leads clients toward gradual insight into the range of their feelings and important themes in their lives.

**AWARENESS OF SELF AND OTHERS.** An example of how this technique is used by the Gestalt therapist would be asking the client to "become" another person such as asking the client to be his mother and say what his mother would say if the client came in at 2:00 A.M. This provides more insight for the client rather just asking what the client thinks his mother would say if he came home at 2:00 A.M.

**AVOIDANCE BEHAVIORS.** Awareness of and the reintegration the client's avoidance behaviors are assisted by the interventions used to increase and enhance awareness of feelings, thoughts, and behaviors.

**HOMEWORK.** Homework assignments between therapy sessions may include asking clients to write dialogues between parts of themselves or between parts of their bodies, gather information, or do other tasks that are related to and fit with what is going on in the therapy process. Homework may become more difficult as the awareness develops.

Therapy sessions are generally scheduled once a week and individual therapy is often combined with group therapy, marital or **family therapy**, movement therapy, **meditation**, or biofeedback training. Sessions can be scheduled anywhere from once every other week to five times a week and depends on how long the client can go between sessions without loss of continuity or relapsing. Meetings less frequent than once a week are thought to diminish the intensity of the therapy unless the client attends a weekly group with the same therapist. More than twice a week is not usually indicated except with clients who have psychotic disorders, and is contraindicated with those who have a **borderline personality disorder**.

Weekly group therapy may vary from one and one-half hours to three hours in length, with the average length being two hours. A typical group is composed of ten members and usually balanced between males and females. Any age is thought to be appropriate for Gestalt therapy. There are groups for children as well.

Gestalt therapy is considered to have a greater range of styles and modalities than any other therapeutic system, and is practiced in individual therapy, groups, workshops, couples, families, with children, and in agencies such as clinics, family service agencies, hospitals, private practice, growth centers. According to Corey, “The therapeutic style of therapists in each modality vary drastically on many dimensions including degree and type of structure; quantity and quality of techniques used; frequency of sessions, abrasiveness and ease of relating, focus on body, cognitions, feelings; interpersonal contact; knowledge of work within psychodynamic themes; and degree of personal encountering.”

## Risks

Gestalt therapy is considered to have pioneered the development of many useful and creative innovations in psychotherapy theory and practice. However, there is some concern regarding the abuse of power by the therapist, as well as the high-intensity interaction involved. Therapists who use other techniques can become enchanted with using the techniques of Gestalt therapy without having the appropriate train-

ing in Gestalt therapy theory. Gestalt therapists are very active and directive within the therapy session and, therefore, care must be taken that they have characteristics that include sensitivity, timing, inventiveness, empathy, and respect for the client. These characteristics, are dependent on the skill, training, experience, ethics, and judgment of the therapist. In addition, the intensity of the therapy might not be suitable for all patients, and even disruptive for some, despite the competence of the therapist.

## Normal results

Gestalt therapists expect that as a result of their involvement in the Gestalt process clients will: have increased awareness of themselves; assume ownership of their experience rather than making others responsible for what they are thinking, feeling, or doing; develop skills and acquire values that will allow them to satisfy their needs without violating the rights of others; become aware of all their senses (smelling, tasting, touching, hearing, and seeing); accept responsibility for their actions and the resulting consequences; move from expectations for external support toward internal self-support; to be able to ask for and get help from others and be able to give to others.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Blom, Rinda. *The Handbook of Gestalt Play Therapy: Practical Guidelines for Child Therapists*. London: Jessica Kingsley Publishers, 2006.
- Corey, Gerald. “Gestalt Therapy.” *Theory and Practice of Counseling and Psychotherapy*. 7th.ed. Belmont, CA: Thomson/Brooks/Cole, 2005.
- O’Leary, Eleanor. “Breathing and Awareness: The Integrating Mechanisms of Cognitive-Behavioural Gestalt Therapy in Working with Cardiac Patients.” In *New Approaches to Integration in Psychotherapy*. Ed. Eleanor O’Leary, and Mike Murphy. New York: Routledge/Taylor and Francis Group, 2006.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.
- Woldt, Ansel L., and Sarah M. Toman. *Gestalt Therapy: History, Theory, and Practice*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

- Bowman, Deborah, and Tricia A. Leakey. “The Power of Gestalt Therapy in Accessing the Transpersonal: Working with Physical Difference and Disability.” *Gestalt Review* 10.1 (2006): 42–59.
- Kitzler, Richard. “The Ontology of Action: A Place on Which to Stand for Modern Gestalt Therapy Theory.” *International Gestalt Journal* 29.1 (Spring 2006): 43–100.

- Miller, Michael Vincent. "Presenting the Present." *International Gestalt Journal* 29.1 (Spring 2006): 135–43.
- Wheeler, Gordon. "New Directions in Gestalt Theory and Practice: Psychology and Psychotherapy in the Age of Complexity." *International Gestalt Journal* 29.1 (Spring 2006): 9–41.
- Williams, Lynn. "Spirituality and Gestalt: A Gestalt-Transpersonal Perspective." *Gestalt Review* 101 (2006): 6–21.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, N.E., Washington, DC 20002. Telephone: (202) 336-5800. Web site: <<http://helping.apa.org>>.
- The Association for the Advancement of Gestalt Therapy. 7861 Spring Avenue, Elkins Park, PA 19027. Telephone: (215) 782-1484. Web site: <<http://www.aagt.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, RM 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. Web site: <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2971. Telephone: (703) 684-7722. Web site: <[http://www\\_nmha.org](http://www_nmha.org)>.

Janice Van Buren, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD



**Ginkgo biloba tree with leaves and blossoms.** (Adam Jones/Photo Researchers, Inc)

components that aid in clotting) clump together. Ginkgo seems to decrease platelet stickiness, thus preventing clumping.

The active ingredients of Ginkgo biloba appear to include flavone glycosides and terpene lactones. Flavone glycosides have antioxidant properties. They prevent damage to the cells in the brain by chemicals called free radicals. Terpene lactones improve memory by improving the uptake of the neurotransmitter component choline in the nerve synapses. Terpene lactones also help guard against blood clots within the brain, and may provide some protection against metabolic injury. Improved bloodflow throughout the brain seems to help preserve/improve memory.

Ginkgo biloba is available in a variety of forms, including extracts, capsules, and tinctures.

## Ginkgo biloba

### Definition

Ginkgo biloba is an herbal remedy that has been utilized for thousands of years in China and elsewhere. It is obtained from the leaves and seeds of a plant that is commonly known as the maiden hair tree, believed to be the oldest living species of tree.

### Purpose

Ginkgo preparations have been used to treat such conditions as asthma, inflammation, dizziness, memory problems, and circulatory problems throughout the **brain** and body. As of 2002, research has been concentrating on the possibility that Ginkgo biloba may be a helpful adjunct therapy for memory deficits occurring in Alzheimer's disease. Ginkgo is also being explored as a possible treatment for impotence and other circulatory disorders.

### Description

Recent research into how Ginkgo biloba affects memory suggests that Ginkgo improves blood flow to the brain by preventing blockages in small blood vessels. These blockages can occur when platelets (blood

### Recommended dosage

As with other herbal supplements, standardization issues sometimes make it difficult to verify the actual dose being administered. In general, efficacious preparations appear to contain at least 24% ginkgo flavone glycosides and 6% terpene lactones. This is the standardized extract that is commonly used in research about this remedy.

Adults may take between 120 mg and 240 mg of Ginkgo biloba daily, divided into two or three doses.

### Precautions

Because of Ginkgo's effects on platelets, there has been some concern regarding interactions between Ginkgo biloba and anticoagulant medicines, such as

## KEY TERMS

**Alzheimer's disease**—An incurable dementia marked by the loss of cognitive ability and memory over a period of 10–15 years. Usually affects elderly people.

**Anticoagulant**—A medication (such as warfarin, Coumadin, or Heparin) that decreases the blood's clotting ability preventing the formation of new clots. Although anticoagulants will not dissolve existing clots, they can stop them from getting larger. These drugs are commonly called blood thinners.

**Thiazide diuretic**—Also called water pill, helps the body get rid of excess fluids. Examples include diuril, hydrodiuril, and microzide.

warfarin (Coumadin) and aspirin. Studies so far have indicated that Ginkgo does decrease platelet function occasionally. For patients taking Ginkgo, their physician can monitor their platelet function. Rare case reports exist of patients experiencing hemorrhage (including cerebral) while taking Ginkgo.

### Side effects

Most reports on Ginkgo biloba suggest that side effects are relatively rare. However, some people may experience stomach upset, including nausea and/or diarrhea. Others who have taken Ginkgo biloba report headache, dizziness, and weakness.

### Interactions

To avoid the possibility of increased bleeding, Ginkgo biloba preparations should not be used by patients who are also taking blood thinners (anticoagulants), such as aspirin, warfarin (Coumadin), clopidogrel, dipyridamole, heparin, or ticlopidine.

Ginkgo preparations may interfere with the efficacy of anticonvulsants, such as **carbamazepine** and **valproic acid**.

Caution should be used when taking Ginkgo with thiazide diuretics or with the antidepressant, **trazodone**.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Blumenthal, Mark, and others, eds. *The Complete German Commission E Monographs: Therapeutic Guide to Herbal Medicines*. Austin: American Botanical Council, 1998.

### PERIODICALS

Zink, Therese, and Jody Chaffin. "Herbal 'Health' Products: What Family Physicians Need to Know." *American Family Physician* (October 1, 1998).

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, MD

## Ginseng

### Definition

Ginseng is an herbal preparation derived from the aromatic root of a plant of the genus *Panax*, which is native to East Asia. Ginseng belongs to the Araliaceae family of plants. Siberian ginseng belongs to a different genus, *Eleutherococcus senticosus*. The English name of the plant is a modification of its Chinese name, *ren shen*, which means "man" and "herb." The Chinese name comes from the ginseng root's resemblance to the shape of the human body, hence the plant's traditional use as a tonic for male sexual vigor and potency. The Latin name for the species, *Panax*, is derived from the Greek word *panacea*, which means "cure-all," or, "all-healer."

There are three species of ginseng in common use in the United States: American ginseng, Korean ginseng, and Siberian ginseng. All are regarded as adaptogens, that normalize immune functions, and are preparations that help the body adapt to change, thus lowering the risk of stress-related illness. American ginseng, whose botanical name is *Panax quinquefolius*, has recently been evaluated as a treatment for high blood sugar in patients with type 2 (adult-onset) diabetes. It is considered to be less stimulating than the Korean or Siberian varieties. Korean ginseng, or *Panax ginseng*, is the species most often studied in Western as well as Asian trials of botanical preparations. Siberian ginseng, or *Eleutherococcus senticosus*, has been used in Russian sports medicine to boost athletic performance and strengthen the immune system.

Ginseng is one of the most expensive herbs in the world, costing as much as \$20 per ounce, or more for red ginseng with the root, which is over 10,000 years old. It is one of the top three herbal products sold in the United States.

### Purpose

In traditional Chinese medicine (TCM), ginseng is regarded as having a "sweet" and "neutral" nature. It is thought to have a particular affinity for the spleen and lungs. It is used as an aphrodisiac; a tonic for the spleen, kidney and adrenal functions, and lungs; and a



**Ginseng root, a part of the Araliaceae family of plants.**  
(foodfolio/Alamy)

general restorative for the *qi* or vital energy in the body. TCM also recommends ginseng for asthma, weak pulse, indigestion, lack of appetite, rectal prolapse, hypertension, diabetes, **insomnia**, angina, congestive heart failure, and heart palpitations. It is important to note that ginseng is an exception to the rule that Chinese herbal medicine rarely uses a single herb in the manner of Western herbalism. Ginseng is often listed as one ingredient among several in Chinese medicines; it is, however, one of the few herbs in TCM that is sometimes prescribed by itself.

In the West, ginseng is frequently advertised as an energy booster, a memory aid, a sexual stimulant, a treatment for impotence and gastrointestinal disorders, and a promoter of longevity. Many Western researchers consider these claims inflated; some studies have found no difference between ginseng and a placebo in terms of the energy levels or general well-being reported by test subjects. Most studies nevertheless have shown improved energy, memory function and performance especially when fatigued, though most of the studies have been short-term. Ginseng's association with the male reproductive system is sufficiently strong that Western feminist herbalists frequently advise women against taking ginseng for any reason.

## Description

The part of the ginseng plant that is used medicinally is the root. Ginseng roots are not harvested until the plant is four to six years old. The active ingredients in ginseng root are saponin triterpenoid glycosides, or chemicals commonly called ginsenosides. Other compounds found in Asian ginseng include glycans (pan-

axans); polysaccharide fraction DPG-3-2; peptides; maltol; and volatile oil. The active compounds in Siberian ginseng are called eleutherosides. Eleutherosides are somewhat different from the ginsenosides found in the *Panax* varieties of ginseng. There has been some debate among herbalists whether Siberian ginseng should be considered a true ginseng at all, due to this difference in active ingredients. Ginseng root from any of the three varieties is dried and can then be made into powder, capsules, or a liquid tincture. American ginseng is also available in the United States as whole roots.

## Recommended dosages

Dosages of Korean ginseng used in traditional Chinese medicine are given as 2–8 g as a tonic and 15–20 g for acute conditions.

Researchers who studied the potential effectiveness of ginseng as a treatment for diabetes found that 1–3 g of American ginseng taken 40 minutes before a meal was effective in reducing blood sugar levels. Because dried ginseng root is hard and brittle, it must be simmered for about 45 minutes to extract the ginsenosides. Two to three teaspoonsful of dried root are used per cup. Powder made from American ginseng can be made into tea or taken with water or juice. One-half to one teaspoon is recommended per serving. American ginseng is usually taken two to three times per day between meals.

For Siberian ginseng, the recommended dosage for the powdered form is 1–2 g daily, taken in capsules or mixed with water or juice. The dose should be divided and taken two or three times per day between meals. The recommended dosage for liquid extract of Siberian ginseng is 1–2 mL twice daily.

## Precautions

Because ginseng is considered a dietary supplement rather than a drug, it is not regulated by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Studies done between 1999 and 2001 found that many ginseng products for sale in the United States contain little or no ginseng. There have been no recent reports of contaminated products.

It is important for patients with Type 2 diabetes who are taking oral prescription medications to lower blood sugar levels to tell their physician if they are using any products containing ginseng. One Chinese-American physician reported several incidents of patients developing hypoglycemia (low blood sugar) from taking ginseng preparations alongside their regular prescription drugs.

People who use ginseng should discontinue it prior to abdominal or dermatologic surgery, or dental extraction. It has been associated with bleeding problems following surgery.

The American Herbal Products Association (AHPA) states that ginseng should not be taken by people with hypertension (high blood pressure). Data suggests variable effects on blood pressure. Some patients experience hypertension and some experience hypotension.

Ginseng should not be given to children. In addition, pregnant or lactating women should not use ginseng, as it may lower estrogen production.

Ginseng should not be used uninterruptedly for long periods of time. In Asian medicine, it is customary to take ginseng for two months and then stop for a full month before taking it again, but the basis for this is uncertain.

### Side effects

Ginseng can have serious side effects. The AHPA classifies ginseng as a Class 2d herb, which means that its use is subject to restrictions.

Contemporary Chinese practitioners recognize a condition known as ginseng **abuse** syndrome, caused by taking ginseng incorrectly or excessively. In China, ginseng is almost always used for longevity by people over the age of 60; it is not given to younger people unless they are severely debilitated. Chinese medicine also recommends ginseng for use in winter only; it is not taken year round. The symptoms of ginseng abuse syndrome include include heart palpitations, heaviness in the chest, high blood pressure, dizziness, insomnia, agitation, restlessness, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain and/or bloating, diarrhea, possible upper digestive tract bleeding, edema, and a red skin rash that is most noticeable on the face. Western herbalists recommend that anyone taking ginseng who develops these symptoms should stop taking the herb at once and contact a licensed practitioner of TCM to determine whether ginseng abuse is the cause of the problem.

A number of case studies involving severe side effects from habitual use of ginseng have been reported in American medical journals. These studies include a case of Stevens-Johnson syndrome (a disorder of the skin and mucosa usually caused by reactions to corticosteroids and a few other systemic drugs) in a Chinese student; a case of cerebral arthritis in a 28-year-old woman following a large dose of ginseng extract; a case of metrorrhagia (uterine hemorrhage)

## KEY TERMS

**Adaptogen**—A remedy that helps the body adapt to change, and thus lowers the risk of stress-related illnesses.

**Aphrodisiac**—A medication or preparation given to stimulate sexual desire.

**Douche**—A jet or current of water, often with a medication or cleansing agent dissolved in it, applied to a body cavity for medicinal or hygienic purposes.

**Ginseng abuse syndrome**—A group of symptoms recognized by Chinese physicians as the result of excessive use of ginseng. The symptoms include dizziness, high blood pressure, restlessness, nausea, possible bleeding from the digestive tract, and skin rashes.

**Panacea**—A medicine or other substance regarded as a cure for all ills. Ginseng should not be considered a panacea.

**Qi**—The Chinese term for energy, life force, or vital force.

following two months of steady use of ginseng; and a case of hemorrhagic bleeding from the vagina following habitual use of ginseng douches.

### Interactions

Ginseng has been reported to interact with caffeine to cause overstimulation and insomnia in some people. It has also been reported to increase the effects of digoxin, a medication used to treat congestive heart failure; and to interact with **phenelzine**, an antidepressant. Its interactions with phenelzine cause symptoms ranging from manic episodes to headaches. It also may alter the effects of the drug Coumadin, and any anti-coagulant therapies.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Medical Economics staff. *PDR for Herbal Medicines*. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 1998.
- Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Western Herbal Medicine: Nature's Green Pharmacy." Chapter 6 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon & Schuster, 2002.
- Reid, Daniel P. *Chinese Herbal Medicine*. Boston, MA: Shambhala, 1993.
- Sander, Pela. "Natural Healing Therapies." In *Women of the 14th Moon: Writings on Menopause*, edited by Dena

Taylor and Amber Coverdale Sumrall. Freedom, CA: The Crossing Press, 1991.

#### PERIODICALS

- Ang-Lee, Michael K., Jonathan Moss, and Chun-Su Yuan. "Herbal Medicines and Perioperative Care." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 286 (July 11, 2001): 208.
- Bone, Kerry. "Safety Issues in Herbal Medicine: Adulteration, Adverse Reactions and Organ Toxicities." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* (October 2001): 142.
- Cardinal, Bradley J., and Hermann-Johann Engels. "Ginseng Does Not Enhance Psychological Well-Being in Healthy, Young Adults: Results of a Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled, Randomized Clinical Trial." *Journal of the American Dietetic Association* 101 (June 2001): 655-660.
- Cheng, Tsung O. "Panax (Ginseng) is Not a Panacea." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 160 (November 27, 2000): 3329.
- Flaws, Bob. "Using Ginseng Wisely." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* (October 2001): 28.
- Harkey, Martha R., Gary L. Henderson, M. Eric Gershwin, and others. "Variability in Commercial Ginseng Products: An Analysis of 25 Preparations." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 73 (June 2001): 1101.
- Hoffman, R. J., and others. "Life-Threatening Vaginal Hemorrhage Caused by Therapeutic Chinese Ginseng Douche." *Journal of Toxicology: Clinical Toxicology* 39 (April 2001): 313.
- Miller, Lucinda G., PharmD. "Herbal Medicinals." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 158 (1998): 2200-2211.
- Tyler, Varro E. "Drug-Free Hope for Type 2 Diabetes." *Prevention* 53 (October 2001): 107.
- Vuksan, Vladimir, John L. Sievenpiper, Julia Wong, and others. "American Ginseng (*Panax quinquefolius* L.) Attenuates Postprandial Glycemia in a Time-Dependent But Not Dose-Dependent Manner in Healthy Individuals." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 73 (April 2001): 753.
- "Watch for Use of Three Herbal Gs in Surgical Patients." *Skin & Allergy News* 32 (October 2001): 9.

#### OTHER

- American Association of Oriental Medicine. 433 Front Street, Catasauqua, PA 18032. Telephone: (610) 266-1433. Fax: (610) 264-2768. <[www.aaom.org](http://www.aaom.org)>.
- American Botanical Council. PO Box 144345. Austin, TX 78714-4345. <[www.herbalgram.org](http://www.herbalgram.org)>.
- Herb Research Foundation. 1007 Pearl Street. Suite 200. Boulder, CO 80302. <[www.herbs.org](http://www.herbs.org)>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) Clearinghouse. P.O. Box 7923, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. Telephone: (888) 644-6226. TTY: (866) 464-3615. Fax: (866) 464-3616. <[www.nccam.nih.gov](http://www.nccam.nih.gov)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D

## Grief

### Definition

Grief, which is also known as bereavement, is a term used to describe the intense and painful emotions experienced when someone or something a person cares about either dies or is lost. The emotional pain from losing a loved one, whether it is a spouse, child, parent, sibling, friend, or pet, can be the most severe suffering a person must endure. At its most intense, grief can dominate every facet of a person's life, making the carrying out of ordinary responsibilities impossible. Loss and subsequent grief, however, are an inevitable part of life and loving other people or companion animals. Painful as it is, grief is a normal response to loss and generally resolves with the passage of time.

### Description

Grief is usually characterized by numbness, tearfulness, physical feelings of emptiness in the pit of the stomach, weak knees, shortness of breath, a tendency to sigh deeply, a sense of unreality, and overall emotional distress. **Anxiety** and longing may alternate with **depression** and despair. **Insomnia** and loss of appetite are common. Initially, people often feel numb and unable to accept their loss. Numbness is followed by shock as reality begins to penetrate.

There is generally a disorganization of normal behavior patterns that may make it impossible for a bereaved person to return to work immediately or take social initiatives. Such acute symptoms usually begin to subside after several months, with emotional balance being regained within a year. Studies using instruments developed to measure symptoms of grief and bereavement demonstrate wide individual variations in specific symptoms and their intensity. Long after the immediate period of mourning, bereaved persons may continue to feel upset, empty, or tearful. In addition, further losses, additional stressors, or dates of such important anniversaries as a wedding, birthday, or the date of death can reactivate the acute symptoms of grief.

### Dimensions of grief

Grief and mourning are important life experiences in that they permit a bereaved person to accept the reality of loss and begin to find ways of filling the resultant emptiness. Loss is a significant part of the aging process and can contribute to emotional problems in older people. The impact of loss and

## ELISABETH KÜBLER-ROSS (1926–2004)

Swiss-born American psychiatrist Elisabeth Kübler-Ross dedicated her career to a topic that had previously been avoided by many physicians and mental-health care professionals—the psychological state of the dying. In her counseling of and research on dying patients, Kübler-Ross determined that individuals go through five distinct mental stages when confronted with death, a discovery that has helped other counselors to provide more appropriate advice and treatment to their clients. Her ideas have been presented to the public in a number of popular texts, including her groundbreaking 1969 work, *On Death and Dying*. She also offered instruction and treatment at the seminars and healing centers she ran for the terminally ill and their caretakers.

resulting grief and mourning is not limited to the death of a loved one. It is also present to a lesser extent in the loss of physical acuity and agility and the loss of social or status as a result of retirement and/or growing older.

Unfortunately, people in the United States do not generally receive cultural support for the losses they experience and the need to mourn those losses. Unlike other cultures with specific rituals for grief and mourning, there is often subtle but insistent pressure on Americans—particularly males—to stop crying and move forward with resumption of regular activities. Onlookers may try to divert the mourner's attention to other topics or discourage crying or talking about the loved one. These responses suggest that grief is not healthy or that it should be minimized or avoided. If the grief is associated with the loss of a pet, the person may be shamed for grieving because “it was just an animal.” Women who have had a pregnancy ended by miscarriage also encounter responses that minimize or trivialize the loss of their expected child. Social insensitivity may drive the mourner to grieve in secret or feel guilty because of continued intense feelings of loss.

### *Stages of grief*

Elizabeth Kübler-Ross, the noted researcher on death and dying, identified five stages of acceptance in the process of dying. While her work initially referred to the person who is dying, the five stages are also applied to people who are grieving a loss. The stages

are sometimes collapsed into three, but the general grieving process includes these components:

- Shock/denial. This stage comprises the initial period after receiving news of the loss. The affected person may say, “There must be a mistake,” “This can’t be true,” or similar expressions of disbelief. People often describe feeling numb or cold in this stage.
- Bargaining. This stage represents an attempt to persuade God or a higher power to change the reality of loss in exchange for improved behavior or some sacrifice on the part of the bereaved person. The mourner may offer, for example, to take better care of their relationship with the loved one if God will only bring them back.
- Anger. This emotion may be directed toward the medical establishment, family members, God, or even the person who has died.
- Depression. In this stage, the person’s body begins to absorb the reality of the loss. The bereaved person may be unable to eat, sleep, or talk normally with people. They may have episodes of spontaneous crying and such physical symptoms as nausea, headaches, chills or trembling.
- Acceptance. This is the phase in which the mourner comes to terms with the loss and begins to look ahead once more. Energy returns and the bereaved person is able to reconnect with others, engage in enjoyable activities, and make plans for the future.

There is, however, no “normal” pattern for grief; it is a highly variable experience. People pass through the stages outlined by Kübler-Ross at their own rate, depending on the significance of the loss, number of previous losses, individual resiliency, presence of a support system, and permission to grieve from those around them. Grieving is not a linear process. There is movement back and forth between the stages until acceptance is reached. Occasionally, a person may remain “stuck” in one stage, particularly anger or depression, and may benefit from professional help in order to move on. Remaining in one of the stages indefinitely can create emotional and occupational difficulties.

### *Bereavement and marriage*

Studies show that some widowed people have **hallucinations** or **delusions** of contact with the lost spouse that may last for years. These hallucinations are more likely to occur in people who were happily married. The most common hallucination reported is a sense of the dead spouse’s presence. Others report seeing, hearing, or being touched by or spoken to by the spouse.

The interplay of grief and marital quality has led to research findings that contradict earlier widespread beliefs. A study by Deborah Carr and her colleagues in 2000 found that anxiety was greater in those who had been highly dependent on their spouses than in those who were less dependent. People who had been in conflicted relationships reported lower levels of yearning for the spouse than those who had enjoyed high levels of marital closeness. Women who had relied on their husbands to do the driving and perform other similar tasks had much higher levels of yearning than men who depended on their wives. This finding contradicts the common belief that grief is more severe if the marriage was conflicted, suggesting a more complex relationship between bereavement and characteristics of the marriage.

Another suggestion of the complex relationship between bereavement and marriage is reflected in studies of sudden and anticipated loss among older widowed people. The sudden death of a spouse was associated with slightly higher levels of yearning among women, but significantly lower yearning among men. Forewarning of the death (extended illness, advancing age) did not affect depression, anger, shock or overall grief six or 18 months after the loss. Prolonged forewarning was associated with increased anxiety at six and 18-month follow-up interviews after the death.

Grief and mourning may also occur when the loss of a partner occurs through divorce or the end of a dating relationship. Some researchers think that moving to the stage of acceptance is more difficult in such cases because the partner can still be contacted, especially if there are children involved. Seeing a former partner involved in a new relationship can cause the partner mourning the loss to re-experience acute symptoms of grief. Some research evidence suggests that grief related to the breakup of an intimate relationship is more intense for the individual who was left behind than for the person who ended the relationship.

Grieving may be particularly prolonged and intense when certain unexpected losses occur that are outside the ordinary progression of life events. The loss of a parent before a child reaches adulthood or a parent's loss of a child inflict deep emotional wounds for an extended period of time. Similarly, the loss of a loved one to murder, terrorism, or other acts of intentional violence is harder to bear than death resulting from natural causes or accidents. Death from **suicide** complicates grief by adding shame to the other painful emotions associated with bereavement. The opportunity to fully grieve such significant losses, however, enables survivors to move forward despite the magnitude of their loss.

*See also Adjustment disorder; Bereavement; Suicide.*

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Butler, Robert N., Myrna I. Lewis, and Trey Sunderland. *Aging and Mental Health*. 5th edition. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.
- Harris, Maxine, Ph.D. *The Loss That Is Forever: The Life-long Impact of the Early Death of a Mother or Father*. New York: Dutton, 1995.
- Kubler-Ross, Elizabeth, and David Kessler. *Life Lessons*. New York: Simon and Schuster and the Elizabeth Kubler-Ross Family Partnership, Ltd. 2000.
- Vaughan, Diane, Ph.D. *Uncoupling: Turning Points in Intimate Relationships*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1986.

### PERIODICALS

- Carr, Deborah, James S. House, Ronald C. Kessler, Randolph M. Nesse, John Sonnega, and Camille Wortman. "Marital Quality and Psychological Adjustment to Widowhood Among Older Adults." *Journals of Gerontology Series B: Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences* 55 (2000): S197-S207.
- Carr, Deborah, James S. House, Camille Wortman, Randolph Nesse, and Ronald C. Kessler. "Psychological Adjustment to Sudden and Anticipated Spousal Loss Among Older Widowed Persons." *Journals of Gerontology Series B: Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences* 56 (2001): S237-S248.
- Zisook, S., R. A. Devaul, and M. A. Click Jr. "Measuring Symptoms of Grief and Bereavement." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 139 (1982): 1590-1593.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- The Compassionate Friends, Inc. P.O. Box 3696, Oak Brook, IL 60522. <<http://wwwcompassionatelfriends.org>>.
- GROWW (Grief Recovery Online [founded by] Widows & Widowers). 931 N. State Road 434, Suite 1201-358, Altamonte Springs, FL 32714. <<http://www.groww.org>>.

Judy Leaver, MA

## Grief counseling

### Definition

**Grief** counseling refers to a specific form of therapy, or a focus in general counseling with the goal of helping the individual grieve and address personal loss in a healthy manner. Grief counseling is offered individually by psychologists, clergy, counselors or **social workers**, in groups led by professionals, as well as informal **support groups** offered by churches, community groups, or organizations devoted to helping individuals grieve specific losses.

Specific tasks of grief counseling include emotional expression about the loss (which can include a wide range of feelings), accepting the loss, adjusting to life after the loss, and coping with the changes within oneself and the world after the loss. Typical feelings experienced by individuals, and addressed in grief counseling, include sadness, **anxiety**, anger, loneliness, guilt, relief, isolation, confusion, or numbness. Behavioral changes may also be noticed, such as being disorganized, feeling tired, having trouble concentrating, sleep problems, appetite changes, vivid dreams, or daydreaming about the deceased.

### Purpose

The purpose of grief counseling is to help individuals work through the feelings, thoughts, and memories associated with the loss of a loved one. Although grieving can occur for other types of loss as well (such as loss of goals, ideals, and relationships), grief counseling is generally directed toward positive adjustment following loss after the death of a loved one.

Grief counseling helps the individual recognize normal aspects of the grieving or mourning process, cope with the pain associated with the loss, feel supported through the anxiety surrounding life changes that may follow the loss, and develop strategies for seeking support and self-care.

### Precautions

Grieving is a normal life process—an adjustment reaction to a loss. Grief counseling is meant to facilitate that normal process. No specific precautions are warranted. However, there are certain circumstances in which complications to the normal grieving process may occur. These circumstances may involve the loss of a child, or the loss of a loved one due to an accident or homicide, for example.

In these cases of complicated grieving, more extreme responses to the loss may be observed, depending on the individual's capacity for coping, personal resiliency, and support system. For example, if the individual feels isolated, he may be at greater risk for severe depressive symptoms or a **suicide** attempt. Alternatively, if the survivors feel rage or anger over the loss, there may be a risk of harm to others.

### Description

Grief counseling helps the individual work through the feelings associated with the loss of another, accept that loss, determine how life can go on without that person, and consolidate memories in order to be able to move forward. Grief counseling also provides informa-

tion about the normal grieving process, to help individuals understand that many of the symptoms and changes they are experiencing are a normal, temporary reaction to loss. For some individuals, the primary focus of grief counseling is to help identify ways to express feelings about the loss that the person has been unable to express on his or her own. Individuals who seek grief counseling may be experiencing an emotional numbness, or a residual shock in reaction to the loss, and need assistance to return to a normal life. In those cases, grief counseling will focus on helping the individual get in touch with those feelings and become more active in the daily routine. This often requires accepting the loss as a reality.

For some people, grieving may initially be so extreme that physical and psychological symptoms may be experienced, while other people appear to experience no symptoms whatsoever, similar to the numbness described above. Activities of daily living may feel overwhelming to an individual who has experienced a loss. In these cases, grief counseling may focus on specific coping skills to help the individual resume some normalcy in his or her daily routine. For example, if sleep patterns are disrupted, grief counseling may include consultation with the individual's physician to assist with temporary strategies to increase sleep. If the individual is having trouble getting to work on time, behavioral strategies may be used as an interim measure to help the person return to aspects of normal daily life.

Additional work in grief counseling may involve identifying ways to let go or say good-bye if the individual has not been able to do so successfully. Therapeutic letters may be a helpful mechanism to express thoughts that were not conveyed prior to the death. Dreams are frequently experienced by survivors, and these can be a focus in grief counseling as well. The dreams can often be a way of consolidating the memories about the deceased.

### Preparation

No specific preparation is required by the participant; however, a need for grief counseling is indicated by prolonged symptoms (such as crying spells, preoccupation with the deceased, lack of motivation, or suicidal thoughts), and the severity of personal distress over the loss. A patient seeking grief counseling would most likely undergo a clinical evaluation by a therapist, before the grief counseling began, so that the therapist could understand the patient's personal history and goals for treatment.

## Aftercare

Aftercare is usually provided through informal support systems, which may include family and friends, as well as support groups.

## Risks

A slight risk exists regarding treatment of complicated grief. Such circumstances include chronic, prolonged grieving or unexpected loss (particularly due to a violent accident, suicide, homicide, or the death of a child). These factors complicate the grieving process due to the unexpected, sometimes violent nature of the loss, that feels inconsistent with expectations and desires for loved ones. In these cases, an initial adverse effect may be seen from participation in treatment, due to the increased focus on the loss. This reaction improves over time, as adjustment is facilitated. Two other factors impacting individual adjustment include the type of relationship the individual had with the deceased, and the resiliency of the individual.

## Normal results

Normal results from grief counseling include being able to move on with one's life, recognizing and accepting the physical loss of the individual, and being able to bridge that loss with positive memories of the deceased. Successful coping will be characterized by a return to normal routines, although some symptoms may be experienced periodically throughout the year or so following the loss.

## Abnormal results

Abnormal results would include an unsuccessful outcome of prolonged grief, exhibited by continued preoccupation with the loss of the individual, crying spells, and depressive symptoms being the most likely complications. Some disruption of the daily routine would persist, and there may be extreme emotional responses, that could include no apparent reaction to difficulty containing feelings. Other complications include "unfinished business," or feelings of unresolved issues with the deceased. Sometimes the feelings of unresolved issues can be as simple as wishing they had communicated their love and affection for the person the last time they saw them, or may be as complicated as unresolved feelings about a history of abuse by the deceased.

*See also* Creative therapies; Support groups.

## KEY TERMS

**Therapeutic letter**—A letter written to the deceased in order to help the survivors express feelings and thoughts they may not have been able to before the loss.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Coor, C. A., and D. E. Balk, eds. *Handbook of Adolescent Death and Bereavement*. New York, NY: Springer Publishing Co., Inc., 1996.  
Volkan, V.D., and E. Zintl. *Life After Loss: The Lessons of Grief*. Charles Scribner's Sons: New York, NY, 1993.

### PERIODICALS

- Beem, E. E., H. Hooijkaas, M. Cleiren, H. Schut, B. Garssen, M. Croon, L. Jabaaij, K. Goodkin, H. Wind, and M. de Vries. "The immunological and psychological effects of bereavement: Does grief counseling really make a difference?" *Psychiatry Research* 85.1 (Jan. 1999): 81-93.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- The Compassionate Friends. P. O. Box 3696, Oak Brook, IL 60522. Telephone: (630) 990-0010. <<http://www.compassionatefriends.org>>.  
SHARE Pregnancy and Infant Loss Support. St. Joseph Health Center, 300 First Capital Drive, St. Charles, MO 63301. Telephone: (800) 821-6819.  
SIDS Alliance. 1314 Bedford Ave., Suite 230, Baltimore, MD 21208. Telephone: (800) 221-SIDS. <<http://www.sidsalliance.org>>.  
Widowed Persons Service, AARP. 601 E. Street, NW, Washington, DC 20049. Telephone: (202) 434-2260.

Deanna Pledge, PhD

## Group homes

### Definition

Group homes are small, residential facilities located within a community and designed to serve children or adults with chronic disabilities. These homes usually have six or fewer occupants and are staffed 24 hours a day by trained caregivers.

### Description

Most group homes are standard, single-family houses, purchased by group home administrators and adapted to meet the needs of the residents. Except

for any adaptive features such as wheelchair ramps, group homes are virtually indistinguishable from other homes in the surrounding neighborhood. Group homes may be located in neighborhoods of any socioeconomic status.

Residents of group homes usually have some type of chronic mental disorder that impairs their ability to live independently. Many residents also have physical disabilities such as impairments of vision communication, or ambulation. These individuals require continual assistance to complete daily living and self-care tasks. Some also require supervision due to behavior that may be dangerous to self or others, such as aggression or a tendency to run away.

Although most group homes provide long-term care, some residents eventually acquire the necessary skills to move to more independent living situations. Group homes for children are usually temporary placements, providing care until a foster family can be secured. Others may return to their natural families. Occasionally, halfway homes for people recently released from prison or discharged from a **substance abuse** program may also be referred to as group homes. These types of group homes are also transitory in nature.

### History and mission

The development of group homes occurred in response to the **deinstitutionalization** movement of the 1960s and 1970s. As psychiatric hospitals closed, discharged individuals needed places to live. Group homes were designed to provide care in the least restrictive environment and to integrate individuals with disabilities into the community, reducing **stigma** and improving quality of life. The environment of a group home was intended to simulate typical family life as much as possible.

Since the passage of the **Community Mental Health** Centers Act in 1963, grants have been available to group homes. State and federal funds such as the Medicaid Home and Community-Based Waiver continue to support the majority of group homes. However, some homes operate on donations from private citizens or civic and religious organizations. Most group homes are owned by private rather than governmental organizations, and can be either non-profit or for-profit organizations. Group homes are considered more cost effective compared to institutional care. Unfortunately, the number of available group homes has not always matched need, resulting in **homelessness** or re-hospitalization for some individuals.

One of the goals of group home living is to increase the independence of residents. Group home

staff members teach residents daily living and self-care skills, providing as little assistance as possible. Daily living skills include meal preparation, laundry, house-cleaning, home maintenance, money management, and appropriate social interactions. Self-care skills include bathing or showering, dressing, toileting, eating, and taking prescribed medications.

Staff also assure that residents receive necessary services from community service providers, including medical care, physical therapy, occupational therapy, vocational training, education, and mental health services. Most group home residents are assigned a case manager from a community mental health center or other government agency who oversees their care. Case managers review group home documentation regarding skills learned and services received, and make recommendations for adjustments in care.

### The NIMBY phenomenon

Unfortunately, group homes have received much opposition from communities. NIMBY (acronym for Not In My Backyard) describes the common reaction of community residents when they discover that a group home is targeted for their neighborhood. Current research suggests that protests frequently involve concerns over personal security, declining property values, or a generalized threat to the neighborhood's quality. Some researchers believe that prejudiced attitudes such as ignorance, fear, and distrust are the true reasons for protest.

Usually, neighborhood opposition is unsuccessful due to provisions of the Fair Housing Act of 1968. However, such opposition can be detrimental to the goal of integrating residents into the community. The NIMBY phenomenon is also a concern because as deinstitutionalization continues, the need for additional group homes increases. Statistics show that between 1987 and 1999, the use of group homes serving individuals with developmental disabilities and containing six residents or less increased by 240%.

Social service workers are constantly looking for ways to address the NIMBY phenomenon. Some research has suggested that community concerns decrease with time as community members become familiar with group home residents. A recent study proposed that opposition can be decreased by providing advanced notice of plans for a group home, as well as adequate information and discussion about expectations.

### Factors affecting group home success

Initially, many people were skeptical about the adequacy of group home care compared to psychiatric hospitals or other institutions. Over the past 25 years,

## KEY TERMS

**Ambulation**—Ability to walk.

**Case manager**—A professional who designs and monitors implementation of comprehensive care plans (i.e., services addressing medical, financial, housing, psychiatric, vocational, social needs) for individuals seeking mental health or social services.

**Community mental health centers**—Organizations that manage and deliver a comprehensive range of mental health services, education, and outreach to residents of a given community.

**Community Mental Health Centers Act of 1963**—Federal legislation providing grants for the operation of community mental health centers and related services.

**Deinstitutionalization**—The process of moving people out of mental hospitals into treatment programs or halfway houses in local communities. With this movement, the responsibility for care shifted from large (often governmental) agencies to families and community organizations.

**Fair Housing Act of 1968**—Federal legislation regarding access to housing that prohibits discrimination based on race, color, national origin, sex, religion, disability, or familial status.

**Least restrictive environment**—Refers to care options that involve the least amount of restraint and the greatest degree of independence possible, while still meeting the individual's needs and maintaining safety.

**Medicaid Home and Community Based-Waiver**—Legislation regarding the use of Medicaid funds for care services; allows certain federal requirements to be bypassed so that states can use the funds more flexibly for accessing home- and community-based services rather than using hospitals or intermediate-care facilities.

**NIMBY phenomenon**—Acronym for Not In My Backyard, describing the common opposition displayed by citizens toward the placement of group homes or other social service facilities in their neighborhoods.

**Non-ambulatory**—Unable to walk.

many studies have examined the impact of group home care on residents. These studies have consistently shown increases in adaptive behavior, productivity, community integration, and level of independence.

Risks involved in successfully transitioning an individual to a group home include psychological deterioration such as severe cognitive or physical impairments, physical deterioration that includes being non-ambulatory, or mortality issues such as being age 70 or older.

Before considering group home placement—especially for those in the high risk category—extensive planning should be conducted. A complete assessment plan of the individual's needs should specify which agency will be responsible for meeting medical needs, particularly in the event of a crisis. The individual's strengths should be incorporated into the plan whenever possible. For example, if a supportive family is an identified strength, the preferred group home should be close in proximity to facilitate family visits.

Other factors that contribute to group home success are a small staff-to-resident ratio, well-trained staff, and a home-like atmosphere. As with any type of organization, some group homes are better run than

others. A careful investigation into a home's procedures is recommended. Research suggests that individuals with severe cognitive impairments often experience a period of disorientation, and may need additional support or supervision for the first few months while adjusting to their new surroundings. Pre-placement visits and discussion can reduce **anxiety** for the future resident.

*See also* Case management.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Robinson, Julia W., and Travis Thompson. "Stigma and Architecture." In *Enabling Environments: Measuring the Impact of Environment on Disability and Rehabilitation*, edited by Edward Steinfeld and G. Scott Danford. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 1999.

Udell, Leslie. "Supports in Small Group Home Settings." In *Dementia, Aging, and Intellectual Disabilities: A Handbook*, edited by Matthew P. Janicki and Arthur J. Dalton. Philadelphia: Brunner/Mazel, Inc., 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

Anderson, George M. "Of Many Things." *America* 185, no. 8 (2001): 2.

- Anderson, Lynda, Robert Prouty, and K. Charlie Lakin. "Parallels in Size of Residential Settings and Use of Medicaid-Financed Programs." *Mental Retardation* 38.5 (2000): 468-471.
- Ducharme, Joseph M., Larry Williams, Anne Cummings, Pina Murray, and Terry Spencer. "General Case Quasi-Pyramidal Staff Training to Promote Generalization of Teaching Skills in Supervisory and Direct-Care Staff." *Behavior Modification* 25.2 (2001): 233-254.
- Kim, Dong Soo. "Another Look at the NIMBY Phenomenon." *Health & Social Work* 25.2 (2000): 146-148.
- Piat, Myra. "The NIMBY Phenomenon: Community Residents' Concerns About Housing for Deinstitutionalized People." *Health & Social Work* 25.2 (2000): 127-138.
- Rauktis, Mary Elizabeth. "The Impact of Deinstitutionalization on the Seriously and Persistently Mentally Ill Elderly: A One-Year Follow-Up." *Journal of Mental Health and Aging* 7.3 (2001): 335-348.
- Spreat, Scott, and James W. Conroy. "Community Placement for Persons with Significant Cognitive Challenges: An Outcome Analysis." *The Journal of the Association for Persons with Severe Handicaps* 26.2 (2001): 106-113.
- Whittaker, James K. "The Future of Residential Group Care." *Child Welfare* 79.1 (2000): 59-74.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Child Welfare League of America-Headquarters. 440 First Street, NW, Third Floor, Washington, DC 20001-2085. Telephone: (202) 638-2952. <<http://cwla.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 600 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, Maryland 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.
- Office of Fair Housing and Equal Opportunity. Room 5116, Department of Housing and Urban Development, 451 Seventh Street, SW, Washington, DC 20410-2000. Telephone: (202) 708-2878. <<http://www.hsh.com>>.
- The ARC National Headquarters. 1010 Wayne Avenue, Suite 650, Silver Spring, Maryland 20910. Telephone: (301) 565-3842. <<http://www.thearc.org>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, MA

## Group therapy

### Definition

Group therapy is a form of **psychotherapy** in which a small, carefully selected group of individuals meets regularly with a therapist.

### Purpose

The purpose of group therapy is to assist each individual in emotional growth and personal problem solving.

### Description

Group therapy encompasses many different kinds of groups with varying theoretical orientations that exist for varying purposes. All therapy groups exist to help individuals grow emotionally and solve personal problems. All use the power of the group, as well as the therapist who leads it, in this process.

Unlike the simple two-person relationship between patient and therapist in individual therapy, group therapy offers multiple relationships to assist the individual in growth and problem solving. The noted **psychiatrist** Dr. Irvin D. Yalom in his book *The Theory and Practice of Group Therapy* identified 11 "curative factors" that are the "primary agents of change" in group therapy.

### Instillation of hope

All patients come into therapy hoping to decrease their suffering and improve their lives. Because each member in a therapy group is inevitably at a different point on the coping continuum and grows at a different rate, watching others cope with and overcome similar problems successfully instills hope and inspiration. New members or those in despair may be particularly encouraged by others' positive outcomes.

### Universality

A common feeling among group therapy members, especially when a group is just starting, is that of being isolated, unique, and apart from others. Many who enter group therapy have great difficulty sustaining interpersonal relationships and feel unlikable and unlovable. Group therapy provides a powerful antidote to these feelings. For many, it may be the first time they feel understood and similar to others. Enormous relief often accompanies the recognition that they are not alone, a special benefit of group therapy.

### Information giving

An essential component of many therapy groups is increasing members' knowledge and understanding of a common problem. Explicit instruction about the nature of their shared illness, such as bipolar disorders, **depression**, panic disorders, or bulimia, is often a key part of the therapy. Most patients leave the group far more knowledgeable about their specific condition than when they entered, making them increasingly able to help others with the same or similar problems.

## ABRAHAM H. MASLOW (1908–1970)

Abraham H. Maslow, founder of humanistic psychology, was born in Brooklyn, N.Y. Maslow received his M.A. from the University of Wisconsin in 1931, and his Ph.D. in 1934. In his most important work, *Motivation and Personality* (1954), Maslow did not repudiate classical psychology; rather, he attempted to enlarge upon its conception of personality by stressing man's higher nature. In contrast to "the analytic-dissecting-atomistic-Newtonian approach" of behaviorism and Freudian psychoanalysis, it emphasized the holistic character of human nature. It defined and explained "the need hierarchy," "self-actualization," and "peak experiences," phrases that have become part of the vocabulary of psychologists.

In 1967, Maslow was named humanist of the year by the American Humanist Association. That same year he was elected president of the American Psychological Association. He also played a major role in organizing both the Journal of Humanistic Psychology and the Journal of Transpersonal Psychology. At the time of his death he was a resident fellow at the Laughlin Foundation in California.

Like the early humanists, he emphasized the inherent goodness in people. Maslow viewed humans as exercising a high degree of conscious control over their lives and as having a high resistance to pressures from the environment. He viewed personality development as the process of breaking the chains binding an individual to the animal world and building a more human world.

Maslow's theories have had a major impact upon practicing psychologists because of his ideas' direct, personal, and subjective plausibility. Synanon, the drug-addiction rehabilitation center, and the Esalen Institute, one of the best-known centers for practicing group-encounter psychotherapy, make use of Maslow's ideas, but the need hierarchy and other popular conceptions have had little influence on psychological research. Maslow was a global theorist who tested his ideas imprecisely and nonquantitatively. He believed that his theories could never be tested in an animal laboratory or test tube but that they required "a life situation of the total human being in his social environment."

### *Altruism*

Group therapy offers its members a unique opportunity: the chance to help others. Often patients with psychiatric problems believe they have very little to offer others because they have needed so much help themselves, and thus feel inadequate. The process of helping others is a powerful therapeutic tool that greatly enhances self-esteem and feelings of self-worth.

### *Corrective recapitulation of the primary family*

Many people who enter group therapy had troubled family lives during their formative years. The group becomes a substitute family that resembles—and improves upon—the family of origin in significant ways. Like a family, a therapy group consists of a leader (or coleaders), an authority figure who evokes feelings similar to those felt toward parents. Other group members substitute for siblings, vying for attention and affection from the leader/parent, and forming subgroups and coalitions with other members. This recasting of the family of origin gives members a chance to correct dysfunctional interpersonal relationships in a way that can have a powerful therapeutic impact.

### *Improved social skills*

According to Yalom, social learning, or the development of basic social skills, is a therapeutic factor

that occurs in all therapy groups. Some groups place considerable emphasis on improving social skills, for example, with adolescents preparing to leave a psychiatric hospital, or among bereaved or divorced members seeking to date again. Group members offer feedback to one another about the appropriateness of the others' behavior. Although this may be painful, the directness and honesty with which it is offered can provide much-needed behavioral correction and thus improve relationships both within and outside the group.

### *Imitative behavior*

Research shows that therapists exert a powerful influence on the communication patterns of group members by **modeling** certain behaviors. For example, therapists model active listening, giving nonjudgmental feedback, and offering support. Over time, members pick up these behaviors and incorporate them. This earns them increasingly positive feedback from others, enhancing their self-esteem and emotional growth.

### *Interpersonal learning*

Humans are social animals, born ready to connect. Our lives are characterized by intense and persistent relationships, and much of our self-esteem is developed via feedback and reflection from important

others. Yet we all develop distortions in the way we see others, and these distortions can damage even our most important relationships. Therapy groups provide an opportunity for members to improve their ability to relate to others and live far more satisfying lives because of it.

### ***Group cohesiveness***

Belonging, acceptance, and approval are among the most important and universal of human needs. Fitting in with our peers as children and adolescents, pledging a sorority or fraternity as young adults, and joining a church or other social group as adults all fulfill these basic human needs. Many people with emotional problems, however, have not experienced success as group members. For them, group therapy may make them feel truly accepted and valued for the first time. This can be a powerful healing factor as individuals replace their feelings of isolation and separateness with a sense of belonging.

### ***Catharsis***

Catharsis is a powerful emotional experience—the release of conscious or unconscious feelings—followed by a feeling of great relief. Catharsis is a factor in most therapies, including group therapy. It is a type of emotional learning, as opposed to intellectual understanding, that can lead to immediate and long-lasting change. Although catharsis cannot be forced, a group environment provides ample opportunity for members to have these powerful experiences.

### ***Existential factors***

Existential factors are certain realities of life including death, isolation, freedom, and meaninglessness. Becoming aware of these realities can lead to **anxiety**. The trust and openness that develop among members of a therapy group, however, permits exploration of these fundamental issues and can help members develop an acceptance of difficult realities.

### ***History of group therapy***

Group therapy in the United States can be traced back to the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, when millions of immigrants moved to American shores. Most of these immigrants settled in large cities, and organizations such as Hull House in Chicago were founded to assist them adjust to life in the United States. Known as settlement houses, these agencies helped immigrant groups lobby for better housing, working conditions, and recreational facilities. These

early social work groups valued group participation, the democratic process, and personal growth.

In 1905 a Boston physician named Joseph Pratt formed groups of impoverished patients suffering from a common illness—tuberculosis. Pratt believed that these patients could provide mutual support and assistance. Like settlement houses, his early groups were another forerunner of group therapy.

Some early psychoanalysts, especially Alfred Adler, a student of Sigmund Freud, believed that many individual problems were social in origin. In the 1930s Adler encouraged his patients to meet in groups to provide mutual support. At around the same time social work groups began forming in mental hospitals, child guidance clinics, prisons, and public assistance agencies. A contemporary descendent of these groups is today's support group, in which people with a common problem come together, without a leader or therapist, to help each other solve common problems. Groups such as Alcoholics Anonymous, Narcotics Anonymous, and Survivors of Incest all have their roots in this early social work movement.

### ***Types of therapy groups***

**PSYCHODYNAMIC THERAPIES.** Psychodynamic theory was conceived by Sigmund Freud, the father of **psychoanalysis**. Freud believed that unconscious psychological forces determine thoughts, feelings, and behaviors. By analyzing the interactions among group members, psychodynamic therapies focus on helping individuals become aware of their unconscious needs and motivations as well as the concerns common to all group members. Issues of authority (the relationship to the therapist) and affection (the relationships among group members) provide rich sources of material that the therapist can use to help group members understand their relationships and themselves.

**PHENOMENOLOGICAL THERAPIES.** Until the 1940s virtually all psychotherapy was based on psychoanalytic principles. Several group therapy approaches were developed by psychoanalytically trained therapists looking to expand their focus beyond the unconscious to the interpretations individuals place on their experiences. Underlying this focus is the belief that human beings are capable of consciously controlling their behavior and taking responsibility for their decisions. Some phenomenological therapies include:

- psychodrama—developed by Jacob Moreno, an Austrian psychiatrist. This technique encourages members to play the parts of significant individuals in their lives to help them solve interpersonal conflicts.

Psychodrama brings the conflict into the present, emphasizing dramatic action as a way of helping group members solve their problems. Catharsis, the therapeutic release of emotions followed by relief, plays a prominent role. This approach is particularly useful for people who find it difficult to express their feelings in words.

- person-centered therapy—a therapeutic approach developed by the psychologist Carl Rogers. Rather than viewing the therapist as expert, Rogers believed that the client's own drive toward growth and development is the most important healing factor. The therapist empathizes with clients' feelings and perceptions, helping them gain insight and plan constructive action. Rogers's person-centered therapy became the basis for the intensive group experience known as the encounter group, in which the leader helps members discuss their feelings about one another and, through the group process, grow as individuals. Rogers emphasized honest feedback and the awareness, expression, and acceptance of feelings. He believed that a trusting and cohesive atmosphere is fundamental to the therapeutic effect of the group.
- *Gestalt therapy*—In the 1940s Fritz Perls challenged psychoanalytic theory and practice with this approach. Members take turns being in the "hot seat," an empty chair used to represent people with whom the person is experiencing conflicts. The therapist encourages the client to become aware of feelings and impulses previously denied.

**BEHAVIOR THERAPIES.** Behavior therapies comprise a number of techniques based upon a common theoretical belief: Maladaptive behaviors develop according to the same principles that govern all learning. As a result, they can be unlearned, and new, more adaptive behaviors learned in their place. The emergence of behavior therapies in the 1950s represented a radical departure from psychoanalysis.

Behavior therapies focus on how a problem behavior originated, and on the environmental factors that maintain it. Individuals are encouraged to become self-analytical, looking at events occurring before, during, and after the problem behavior takes place. Strategies are then developed and employed to replace the problem behavior with new, more adaptive behaviors.

An important offshoot of behavior therapy is **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, developed in the 1960s and 1970s, which is the predominant behavioral approach used today. It emphasizes the examination of thoughts with the goal of changing them to more rational and less inflammatory ones. Albert Ellis, a

psychologist who believed that we cause our own unhappiness by our interpretations of events, rather than by the events themselves, is a major figure in cognitive-behavior therapy. By changing what we tell ourselves, Ellis believes we can reduce the strength of our emotional reactions, as well.

### ***Who belongs in a therapy group?***

Individuals who share a common problem or concern are often placed in therapy groups where they can share their mutual struggles and feelings. Groups for bulimic individuals, victims of sexual abuse, adult children of alcoholics, and recovering drug addicts are some types of common therapy groups.

People who are suicidal, homicidal, psychotic, or in the midst of a major life crisis are not typically placed in group therapy until their behavior and emotional states have stabilized. People with organic **brain** injury and other cognitive impairments may also be poor candidates for group therapy, as are patients with sociopathic traits, who show little ability to empathize with others.

### ***How are therapy groups constructed?***

Therapy groups may be homogeneous or heterogeneous. Homogeneous groups, described above, have members with similar diagnostic backgrounds (for example, they may all have depression). Heterogeneous groups contain a mix of individuals with different emotional problems. The number of group members typically ranges from five to 12.

### ***How do therapy groups work?***

The number of sessions in group therapy depends upon the group's makeup, goals, and setting. Some are time-limited, with a predetermined number of sessions known to all members at the beginning. Others are indeterminate, and the group and/or therapist determine when the group is ready to disband. Membership may be closed or open to new members. The therapeutic approach used depends on both the focus of the group and the therapist's orientation.

In group therapy sessions, members are encouraged to discuss the issues that brought them into therapy openly and honestly. The therapist works to create an atmosphere of trust and acceptance that encourages members to support one another. Ground rules may be set at the beginning, such as maintaining confidentiality of group discussions, and restricting social contact among members outside the group.

The therapist facilitates the group process, that is, the effective functioning of the group, and guides

## KEY TERMS

**Altruism**—An unselfish willingness to help others.

**Behavior therapies**—Numerous techniques all having their roots in principles of learning.

**Catharsis**—A powerful emotional release followed by a feeling of great relief.

**Cognitive-behavior therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**Existential factors**—Realities of life including death, isolation, freedom, and meaninglessness that must be faced by all individuals.

**Gestalt therapy**—A therapeutic approach that focuses on increasing awareness of feelings and impulses in the present.

**Group cohesiveness**—The degree to which a group functions well in its assigned task; the importance the group develops to each of its members.

**Group psychotherapy**—A form of therapy in which a small, carefully selected group of individuals meets regularly with a therapist to assist each individual in emotional growth and personal problem solving.

**Imitative behavior**—Behaviors of a therapist or group member that are imitated, consciously or unconsciously, by other group members.

**Individual psychotherapy**—A relationship between therapist and patient designed to foster the patient's emotional growth and personal problem-solving skills.

**Information giving**—Imparting of information about a disease or condition as part of the therapeutic process.

**Interpersonal learning**—Learning that takes place via feedback from others.

**Person-centered therapy**—A therapeutic approach that believes the client's own drive toward growth and development is the most important factor in healing.

**Phenomenological therapy**—A therapeutic approach that focuses on the interpretations individuals place on their experiences.

**Psychodrama**—A form of group therapy that has group members act out parts of important people in the lives of individual group members.

**Psychodynamic groups**—Psychotherapy groups that utilize the principles of unconscious needs and motivations developed by Sigmund Freud.

**Self-help groups**—Groups that fall outside the realm of psychotherapy groups, but that offer help to individuals around a particular problem or concern. These groups typically are not professionally led.

**Termination**—The process of ending a therapy group; an important part of a group therapy.

**Universality**—The feeling of being isolated, unique, and separate from others, often experienced by therapy group members.

individuals in self-discovery. Depending upon the group's goals and the therapist's orientation, sessions may be either highly structured or fluid and relatively undirected. Typically, the leader steers a middle course, providing direction when the group gets off track, yet letting members set their own agenda. The therapist may guide the group by reinforcing the positive behaviors they engage in. For example, if one member shows empathy and supportive listening to another, the therapist might compliment that member and explain the value of that behavior to the group. In almost all group therapy situations, the therapist will emphasize the commonalities among members to instill a sense of group identity.

Self-help or **support groups** like Alcoholics Anonymous and Weight Watchers fall outside of the psy-

chotherapy realm. These groups offer many of the same benefits, including social support, the opportunity to identify with others, and the sense of belonging that makes group therapy effective for many. **Self-help groups** also meet to share their common concern and help one another cope. These groups, however, are typically leaderless or run by a member who takes on the leader role for one or more meetings. Sometimes self-help groups can be an adjunct to psychotherapy groups.

### *How are patients referred for group therapy?*

Individuals are typically referred for group therapy by a psychologist or psychiatrist. Some may participate in both individual and group therapy. Before people begin in a therapy group, the

leader interviews the individuals to ensure a good fit between their needs and the group's. The individuals may be given some preliminary information before sessions begin, such as guidelines and ground rules, and information about the problem on which the group is focused.

### **How do therapy groups end?**

Therapy groups end in a variety of ways. Some, such as those in drug rehabilitation programs and psychiatric hospitals, may be ongoing, with patients coming and going as they leave the facility. Others may have an end date set from the outset. Still others may continue until the group and/or the therapist believe the group goals have been met.

The termination of a long-term therapy group may cause feelings of **grief**, loss, abandonment, anger, or rejection in some members. The therapist attempts to deal with these feelings and foster a sense of closure by encouraging exploration of feelings and use of newly acquired coping techniques for handling them. Working through this termination phase is an important part of the treatment process.

### **Who drops out of group therapy?**

Individuals that are emotionally fragile or unable to tolerate aggressive or hostile comments from other members are at risk of dropping out, as are those who have trouble communicating in a group setting. If the therapist does not support them and help reduce their sense of isolation and aloneness, they may drop out and feel like failures. The group can be injured by the premature departure of any of its members, and it is up to the therapist to minimize the likelihood of this occurrence by careful selection and management of the group process.

## **Results**

Studies have shown that both group and individual psychotherapy benefit about 85% of the patients who participate in them. Ideally, patients leave with a better understanding and acceptance of themselves, and stronger interpersonal and coping skills. Some individuals continue in therapy after the group disbands, either individually or in another group setting.

*See also* Abuse; Addiction; Alcohol and related disorders; Amphetamines and related disorders; Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Bulimia nervosa; Cannabis and related disorders; Cocaine and related disorders; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Grief counseling and

therapy; Modeling; Nicotine and related disorders; Obesity; Opioids and related disorders; Peer groups; Psychodynamic therapy; Rational emotive therapy; Reinforcement; Self-help groups; Social skills training; Substance abuse and related disorders; Support groups.

## **Resources**

### **BOOKS**

Hales, Dianne, and Robert E. Hales. *Caring for the Mind: A Comprehensive Guide to Mental Health*. New York: Bantam Books, 1995.

Kaplan, Harold I., and Benjamin J. Sadock. *Synopsis of Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

Panman, Richard, and Sandra Panman. "Group Counseling and Therapy." *The Counseling Sourcebook: A Practical Reference on Contemporary Issues*, eds. Judah L. Ronch, William Van Ornum, and Nicholas C Stilwell. New York: Crossroad, 2001.

Yalom, Irvin D. *The Theory and Practice of Group Psychotherapy*. 4th ed. New York: Basic Books, 1995.

### **ORGANIZATIONS**

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org>>

American Psychological Association (APA). 750 First Street NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (202) 336-5700. Web site: <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>

American Society of Group Psychotherapy and Psychodrama. 301 N. Harrison Street, Suite 508, Princeton, NJ 08540. Telephone: (609) 452-1339. Website: <[http://www.asgpp.org/html/about\\_us.html](http://www.asgpp.org/html/about_us.html)>

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. Web site: <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>

### **OTHER**

American Academy of Family Physicians. "Cognitive Therapy." Available online at: <<http://familydoctor.org/882.xml>>.

Kleber, Herbert D., and others. *Practice Guideline for Treatment of Patients with Substance Use Disorders*. 2nd ed. 2006. Available online through the American Psychiatric Association at: <[http://www.psych.org/psych\\_pract/treatg/pg/SUD2ePG\\_04-28-06.pdf](http://www.psych.org/psych_pract/treatg/pg/SUD2ePG_04-28-06.pdf)>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness. "Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy." Available online at: <[http://www.nami.org/Template.cfm?Section=About\\_Treatments\\_and\\_Supports&template=/ContentManagement/ContentDisplay.cfm&ContentID=7952](http://www.nami.org/Template.cfm?Section=About_Treatments_and_Supports&template=/ContentManagement/ContentDisplay.cfm&ContentID=7952)>.

Barbara S. Sternberg, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Guided imagery therapy

### Definition

Guided imagery therapy is a cognitive-behavioral technique in which a client is guided in imagining a relaxing scene or series of experiences.

### Purpose

Numerous clinical observations suggest that an individual visualizing an imagined scene reacts as though it were actually occurring; therefore, “induced” images can have a profound effect on behavior. The usefulness of guided imagery techniques have been shown to be effective in helping individuals learn or modify behaviors such as:

- learning to relax
- changing or controlling their negative emotions in response to a particular situation, event (loss of a job), or belief
- preparing themselves for changes they are likely to have to deal with in the future (children leaving home, parent moving)
- eliminating or reducing undesirable behaviors (smoking, obesity)
- increasing effective pain management
- coping with difficult situations (a difficult boss)
- learning new and desirable behaviors (assertiveness)
- becoming more motivated (doing homework between therapy sessions) in dealing with their problems
- dealing with how they behaved in an earlier situation (had a temper tantrum) in order to feel less shame or guilt
- experimenting with ways to deal with stressful or anxiety-producing situations (giving a presentation in public) by mentally rehearsing the needed behavior(s)

Guided imagery techniques have been applied to—and found to be effective or show promise with—a variety of populations, including individuals with:

- phobias (including agoraphobia, social phobia, and specific phobias)
- mild to moderate depression
- generalized anxiety disorders
- post-traumatic stress disorder
- obsessive-compulsive disorder
- sexual difficulties
- habit disorders

- chronic fatigue syndrome
- children’s behavioral disorders
- stuttering
- acute and chronic pain (and other physical disorders)

Guided imagery has also contributed to the achievement of skills and overcoming anxiety in normal life situations that include learning or improving motor skills, test-taking, and public speaking. In addition, visualization and imagery, along with other behavioral techniques, have been applied to the fields of business, industry, child rearing, education, behavioral medicine, and sports.

### Description

Imagery techniques have been combined with a wide range of behavioral and cognitive procedures and treatment methods of some psychotherapeutic approaches, including **behavior modification**, cognitive processing therapy, rational-emotive therapy, multimodal therapy, and **hypnotherapy**. Combinations of treatment methods among these approaches leads to the following general uses of imagery:

- antifuture shock imagery (preparing for a feared future event)
- positive imagery (using pleasant scenes for relaxation training)
- aversive imagery (using an unpleasant image to help eliminate or reduce undesirable behavior)
- associated imagery (using imagery to track unpleasant feelings)
- coping imagery (using images to rehearse to reach a behavioral goal or manage a situation)
- “step-up” technique (exaggerating a feared situation and using imagery to cope with it)

An assessment of the individual’s presenting problems is an essential part of treatment, both at the beginning of therapy and throughout the entire process. This is to ensure that the therapist has sufficient understanding of the client’s situation and **diagnosis** of the problem(s). The assessment generally covers a variety of areas, such as developmental history (including family, education, employment, and social relationships), past traumatic experiences, medical and psychiatric treatments, and client goals. Often, clients have several problems, and both the therapist and the client work together on prioritizing specific treatment goals.

Following the assessment, the therapist will present a general rationale for the use of imagery.

The therapist might explain that the client will learn techniques in which he or she imagines they or another person are performing a particular behavior. To enhance visualization, it is important to involve all senses in the image. For example, if the client is to be walking down a busy street, he or she is encouraged to imagine hearing sounds from traffic and other people, smell exhaust fumes from buses and aromas from a nearby bakery, and observe body movements and wind in the face. It is stressed to the client that the most critical aspect of imagining is the feeling of actually experiencing the scene—of being in it rather than just seeing oneself in it.

Both the therapist and the client construct a relaxing scene by discussing exactly what the client finds pleasant. It is better if the client chooses all images (positive or negative) and the therapist trains the client to visualize the selected images as vividly as possible.

Once a pleasant scene is decided upon, the client is asked to assume a relaxed position and with closed eyes, if this is comfortable, before being guided in visualization. A common beginning instruction may be: "Imagine you are lying on a warm sandy beach." The therapist continues to guide the relaxation by saying such phrases as: "Notice the texture of the sand and the color of the sky. Focus on the sounds you hear, and the smells . . ." The client is asked to practice the image at home between sessions. A tape of the guided imagery in the familiar voice of the therapist can be helpful to some clients in practicing at home.

During visualization, clients are given permission to take control if they need to by changing the image or stopping the activity completely. To help clients maintain control of the image, the therapist may also say to the client: "Take as long as you need to relax," and "Do whatever you need to do in order to feel safe." This empowers clients in using such techniques.

### ***Length of treatment***

Treatments using behavioral techniques tend to be relatively brief. However, many factors determine the length of therapy. Generally, treatment takes longer if target behaviors are more numerous and more difficult to specify. Some types of treatments require more sessions than others. For example, techniques using imagery require more sessions than treatments in which the client is exposed to the actual feared situations in real life.

Other factors that determine the length of treatment are the types of presenting disorders, the client's willingness to do homework, how long the client has had the problem, client financial resources, and

whether there are supportive family members and friends. The therapist's style and experience may also affect the length of therapy. Clients may be seen several times (two to five times) a week at the start of therapy and then once weekly for several months, and every other month for follow-up for a few more months.

### **Normal results**

Guided imagery techniques have been taken from behavior therapy and are used by different psychological theories and systems of counseling and **psychotherapy**, including **cognitive-behavioral therapy**. Research has shown these techniques to be effective when applied to specific problems.

Depending on the combination of visualization and imagery techniques used, the therapeutic approach, and client problem(s), it is expected that clients will have positive changes in specifically defined target behaviors; a reduction in biases or distortions in thinking, resulting in more effective functioning that, in turn, leads to more positive feelings, behavior, and thinking; and experience less emotional disturbances, increased effective coping skills, decreased self-defeating behaviors, and less tension.

### **Abnormal results**

Guided imagery is not used in isolation but as a part of a therapeutic formulation and is appropriate for a range of problems and disorders. It is, however, thought that some techniques—such as imagery used in rational-emotive therapy—can trigger high levels of anxiety in some clients. Therefore, caution should be taken when using these techniques if clients have the following conditions:

- asthma attacks triggered by stress or anxiety
- seizures triggered by stress or anxiety
- cardiac condition or related conditions
- depression with suicidal ideation
- hysteria
- pregnancy
- severe psychiatric disorders

In these instances, other strategies and techniques that do not trigger high levels of anxiety, such as relaxation exercises or coping imagery, should be considered. When working with clients with these conditions, the therapist should be in consultation with their medical provider.

*See also* Aversion therapy; Covert sensitization.

## KEY TERMS

**Rational emotive therapy**—A form of psychotherapy developed by Albert Ellis and other psychotherapists based on the theory that emotional response is based on the subjective interpretation of events, not on the events themselves.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Corey, Gerald. *Theory and Practice of Counseling and Psychotherapy*. 6th ed. California: Wadsworth and Thomson Learning, 2001.
- Dryden, Windy. "Rational Emotive Behaviour Therapy." In *Handbook of Counselling and Psychotherapy*, edited by

Colin Feltham and Ian Horton. London: Sage Publications, 2000.

Lovell, Karina. "Behaviour Psychotherapy." In *Handbook of Counseling and Psychotherapy*, edited by Colin Feltman and Ian Horton. London: Sage Publications, 2000.

Mullin, Rian E., PhD. *The New Handbook of Cognitive Therapy Techniques*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2000.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda MD 20892-9663. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/>>.
- Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Dr., Suite 100, Rockville MD. 20852-2624. <<http://www.adaa.org/>>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexander, VA 22314-2071. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

Janice Van Buren, PhD

# H

Halcion see **Triazolam**

Haldol see **Haloperidol**

## Hallucinations

### Description

A hallucination is a false perception occurring without any identifiable external stimulus and indicates an abnormality in perception. The false perceptions can occur in any of the five sensory modalities. Therefore, a hallucination essentially is seeing, hearing, tasting, feeling, or smelling something that is not there. The false perceptions are not accounted for by the person's religious or cultural background, and the person experiencing hallucinations may or may not have insight into them. Therefore, some people experiencing hallucinations may be aware that the perceptions are false, whereas others may truly believe that what they are seeing, hearing, tasting, feeling, or smelling is real. In cases when the person truly believes the hallucination is real, the individual may also have a delusional interpretation of the hallucination.

Hallucinations must be distinguished from illusions, which are misperceptions of actual external stimuli. In other words, an illusion is essentially seeing, hearing, tasting, feeling, or smelling something that is there, but perceiving it or interpreting it incorrectly. An example of an illusion might be hearing one's name called when the radio is playing. There is an external auditory stimulus, but it is misperceived. True hallucinations do not include false perceptions that occur while dreaming, while falling asleep, or while waking up. Unusual perceptual experiences one may have while falling asleep are referred to as hypnagogic experiences. Unusual perceptual experiences one may have while waking up are referred to as hypnopompic experiences. Hallucinations also do not include very

vivid experiences one may have while fully awake (e.g., especially vivid daydreaming or imaginative play).

Hallucinations are a symptom of either a medical (e.g., epilepsy), neurological, or mental disorder. Hallucinations may be present in any of the following mental disorders: psychotic disorders (including **schizophrenia**, **schizoaffective disorder**, **schizophreniform disorder**, **shared psychotic disorder**, **brief psychotic disorder**, **substance-induced psychotic disorder**), **bipolar disorder**, major **depression** with psychotic features, **delirium**, or **dementia**. Auditory hallucinations, in particular, are common in psychotic disorders such as schizophrenia.

Use of certain recreational drugs may induce hallucinations. These drugs include **amphetamines** and **cocaine**, hallucinogens (e.g., lysergic acid diethylamide or LSD), **phencyclidine** (PCP), and **cannabis** or marijuana. Visual hallucinations are commonly associated with substance use. Individuals may report false perceptions of little people or animals (sometimes referred to as Lilliputian hallucinations). In addition, withdrawal from some recreational drugs—including alcohol, **sedatives**, hypnotics, or anxiolytics—can produce hallucinations. Withdrawal from alcohol, for instance, commonly causes visual hallucinations, especially at nighttime.

### Types

Hallucinations are categorized according to which sensory modality is involved and are categorized as either mood-congruent or mood-incongruent. The types of hallucinations are:

- **auditory:** The false perception of sound, music, noises, or voices. Hearing voices when there is no auditory stimulus is the most common type of auditory hallucination in mental disorders. The voice may be heard either inside or outside one's head and is generally considered more severe when coming from outside one's head. The voices may be male or female, recognized as the voice of someone familiar or not recognized as familiar, and may be critical or positive. In

mental disorders such as schizophrenia, however, the content of what the voices say is usually unpleasant and negative. In schizophrenia, a common symptom is to hear voices conversing and/or commenting. When someone hears voices conversing, they hear two or more voices speaking to each other (usually about the person who is hallucinating). In voices commenting, the person hears a voice making comments about his or her behavior or thoughts, typically in the third person (e.g., “isn’t he silly”). Sometimes the voices consist of hearing a “running commentary” on the person’s behavior as it occurs (“she is showering”). Other times, the voices may tell the person to do something (commonly referred to as “command hallucinations”).

- **gustatory:** A false perception of taste. Usually, the experience is unpleasant. For instance, an individual may complain of a persistent taste of metal. This type of hallucination is more commonly seen in some medical disorders (e.g., epilepsy) than in mental disorders.
- **mood-congruent hallucination:** Any hallucination whose content is consistent with either the depressive or manic state the person may be in at the time. Depressive themes include guilt, death, disease, personal inadequacy, and deserved punishment. Manic themes include inflated sense of self-worth, power, knowledge, skills, and identity and may include belief in a special relationship with a famous person or deity. For example, a depressed person may hear voices saying that he or she is a horrible person, whereas a manic person may hear voices saying that he or she is an incredibly important person.
- **mood-incongruent hallucination:** Any hallucination whose content is not consistent with either the depressed or manic state the person is in at the time, or is mood-neutral. For example, a depressed person may experience hallucinations without any themes of guilt, death, disease, personal inadequacy, or deserved punishment. Similarly, a manic person may experience hallucinations without any themes of inflated self-worth, power, knowledge, skills, or identity or a special relationship to a famous person or deity.
- **olfactory hallucination:** A false perception of odor or smell. Typically, the experience is very unpleasant. For example, the person may smell decaying fish, dead bodies, or burning rubber. Sometimes, those experiencing olfactory hallucinations believe the odor emanates from them. Olfactory hallucinations are more typical of medical disorders than mental disorders.
- **somatic/tactile hallucination:** A false perception or sensation of touch or something happening in or on the body. A common tactile hallucination is feeling like something is crawling under or on the skin (also

## KEY TERMS

**Illusion**—A misperception or misinterpretation in the presence of a real external stimulus.

known as formication). Other examples include feeling electricity through one’s body and feeling like someone is touching one’s body while no one is there. Actual physical sensations stemming from medical disorders (perhaps not yet diagnosed) and hypochondriacal pre-occupations with normal physical sensations are not thought of as somatic hallucinations.

- **visual hallucination:** A false perception of sight. The content of the hallucination may be anything (e.g., shapes, colors, and flashes of light) but are typically people or human-like figures. For example, one may perceive a person standing before them when no one is there. Sometimes an individual may experience the false perception of religious figure (e.g., the devil, or Christ). Perceptions that would be considered normal for an individual’s religion or culture are not considered hallucinations.

## Treatment

The treatment approach to hallucinations depends on the accompanying mental disorder. For example, in the case of schizophrenia, antipsychotics may be used to address aural hallucinations, although cognitive behavioral therapy also shows some efficacy in reducing aural hallucinations in people with schizophrenia.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Major depressive disorder; Substance abuse and related disorders; Substance-induced psychotic disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. *Kaplan and Sadock’s Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins.

### PERIODICAL

Arehart-Treichel, Joan. “Hallucinations respond to innovative use of CBT.” *Psychiatric News* (2004): 46.

### WEBSITES

National Library of Medicine. “Hallucinations.” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/003258.htm>>.

Jennifer Hahn, PhD

## Hallucinogens and related disorders

### Definition

Hallucinogens are a chemically diverse group of drugs that cause changes in a person's thought processes, perceptions of the physical world, and sense of time passing. Hallucinogens can be found naturally in some plants and can be synthesized in the laboratory. Most hallucinogens are abused as recreational drugs. Hallucinogens are also called psychedelic drugs.

### Description

Use of hallucinogens is at least as old as civilization. Many cultures have recorded eating certain plants specifically to induce visions or alter the perception of reality. Often these **hallucinations** were part of a religious or prophetic experience. Shamans in Siberia were known to eat the hallucinogenic mushroom *Amanita muscaria*. The ancient Greeks and the Vikings also used naturally occurring plant hallucinogens. Peyote, a spineless cactus native to the southwestern United States and Mexico, was used by native peoples, including the Aztecs, to produce visions.

Although several hundred plants are known to contain compounds that cause hallucinations, most hallucinogens are synthesized in illegal laboratories for delivery as street drugs. The best known hallucinogens are lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), mescaline, psilocybin, and MDMA (**ecstasy**). **Phencyclidine** (PCP, angel dust) can produce hallucinations, as can **amphetamines** and marijuana, but these drugs are considered dissociative drugs, rather than hallucinogens, and act by a different pathway from classic hallucinogens. Dextromorphan, the main ingredient in many cough medicines, has become popular among some populations because of the PCP-like hallucinations it produces. In addition, new designer drugs that are chemical variants of classic hallucinogens are apt to appear on the street at any time. A drug that only recently was added to Schedule I of the 1970 Controlled Substances Act (the classification for many other "hard" drugs with no known therapeutic value) is 5-methoxy-N, N-diisopropyltryptamine (5-MeO-DIPT), a drug derived from the chemical tryptamine that is more commonly known as Foxy or Foxy Methoxy. A related hallucinogen, dimethyltryptamine, occurs naturally in plants in the Amazon but is now synthesized in labs. This drug, more commonly known as DMT, can be a powerful hallucinogen.

Although the various hallucinogens produce similar physical and psychological effects, they are a

diverse group of compounds. However, all hallucinogens appear to affect the **brain** in similar ways. While the mechanism of action of hallucinogens is not completely understood, researchers have shown that these drugs bind with one type of serotonin receptor (5-HT<sub>2</sub>) in the brain.

Serotonin is a neurotransmitter that facilitates transmission of nerve impulses in the brain and is associated with feelings of well-being, as well as many physiological responses. When a hallucinogenic compound binds with serotonin receptors, serotonin is blocked from those receptor sites, and nerve transmission is altered. There is an increase in free (unbound) serotonin in the brain. The result is a distortion of the senses of sight, sound, and touch, disorientation in time and space, and alterations of mood. In the case of hallucinogen intoxication, however, a person is not normally delirious, unconscious, or dissociated. He or she is aware that these changes in perception are caused by the hallucinogen.

### LSD

LSD was first synthesized by Alfred Hoffman for a pharmaceutical company in Germany in 1938 while he was searching for a headache remedy. Hoffman discovered the hallucinogenic properties of LSD accidentally in 1943. The drug became popular with counter-culture "hippies" in the mid-1960s when its sense-altering properties were reputed to offer a window into enhanced creativity and self-awareness. LSD also occurs naturally in morning glory seeds.

Pure LSD is a white, odorless, crystalline powder that dissolves easily in water, although contaminants can cause it to range in color from yellow to dark brown. LSD was listed as a Schedule I drug under the Controlled Substance Act of 1970, meaning that it has no medical or legal uses and has a high potential for **abuse**. LSD is not easy to manufacture in a home laboratory, and some of its ingredients are controlled substances that are difficult to obtain. However, LSD is very potent, and a small amount can produce a large number of doses.

On the street, LSD is sold in several forms. Micro-dots are tiny pills smaller than a pinhead. Windowpane is liquid LSD applied to thin squares of gelatin. Liquid LSD can also be sprayed on sugar cubes. The most common street form of the drug is liquid LSD sprayed onto blotter paper and dried. The paper, often printed with colorful or psychedelic pictures, is divided into tiny squares, each square being one dose. Liquid LSD can also be sprayed on the back of a

postage stamp and licked off. Street names for the drug include acid, yellow sunshine, windowpane, cid, doses, trips, and boomers.

### Mescaline

Mescaline is a naturally occurring plant hallucinogen. Its primary source is the cactus *Lophophora williamsii*. This cactus is native to the southwestern United States and Mexico. The light blue-green plant is spineless and has a crown called a peyote button. This button contains mescaline and can be eaten or made into a bitter tea. Mescaline is also the active ingredient of at least ten other cacti of the genus *Trichocereus* that are native to parts of South America.

Mescaline was first isolated in 1897 by the German chemist Arthur Hefftner and first synthesized in the laboratory in 1919. Some experiments were done with the drug to determine if it was medically useful, but no medical uses were found. However, peyote is culturally significant. It has been used for centuries as part of religious celebrations and vision quests of Native Americans. The Native American Church, which fuses elements of Christianity with indigenous practices, has long used peyote as part of its religious practices.

In 1970 mescaline was listed as a Schedule I drug under the Controlled Substances Act. However, that same year the state of Texas legalized peyote for use in Native American religious ceremonies. In 1995, a federal law was passed making peyote legal only for this use in all 50 states.

### Psilocybin

Psilocybin is the active ingredient in what are known on the street as magic mushrooms, shrooms, mushies, or Mexican mushrooms. There are several species of mushrooms that contain psilocybin, including *Psilocybe mexicana*, *P. muscorumi*, and *Stropharia cubensis*. These mushrooms grow in most moderate, moist climates.

Psilocybin-containing mushrooms are usually cooked and eaten (they have a bitter taste), or dried and boiled to make a tea. Although psilocybin can be made synthetically in the laboratory, there is no street market for synthetic psilocybin, and virtually all the drug comes from cultivated mushrooms. In the United States, it is legal to possess psilocybin-containing mushrooms, but it is illegal to traffic in them, and psilocybin and psilocyn (another psychoactive drug found in small quantities in these mushrooms) are both Schedule I drugs.

### MDMA

MDMA, short for 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine, and better known as ecstasy, XTC, E, X, or Adam, has become an increasingly popular club drug since the 1980s. The hallucinogenically active portion of the drug is chemically similar to mescaline, while its stimulant portion is similar to **methamphetamine**. MDMA was first synthesized in 1912 by a German pharmaceutical company looking for a new compound that would stop bleeding. The company patented the drug, but never did anything with it. A closely related drug, methylenedioxymphetamine or MDA, was tested by a pharmaceutical company as an appetite suppressant in the 1950s, but its use was discontinued when it was discovered to have hallucinogenic properties. In the 1960s, MDA was a popular drug of abuse in some large cities such as San Francisco.

During the early 1980s therapists experimented with MDMA, which was legal at the time, as a way to help patients open up and become more empathetic. Recreational use soon followed, and it was declared an illegal Schedule I drug in 1985. For about a year between 1987 and 1988, the drug was again legal as the result of court challenges, but it permanently joined other Schedule I hallucinogens in March 1988.

MDMA is a popular club drug often associated with all-night raves or dance parties. The drug, sold in tablets, is attractive because it combines stimulant effects that allow ravers to dance for hours with a feeling of empathy, reduced **anxiety**, and reduced inhibitions, and euphoria. Some authorities consider MDA and MDMA stimulant-hallucinogens and do not group them with classic hallucinogens such as LSD, but research indicates that MDA and MDMA affect the brain in the same way as classic hallucinogens. The American Psychiatric Association considers MDMA as a drug that can cause hallucinogen-related disorders.

### Causes and symptoms

A cause of hallucinogen use is that hallucinogens are attractive to recreational drug users for a number of reasons, including:

- they are minimally addictive and there are no physical withdrawal symptoms upon stopping use.
- they produce few serious or debilitating physical side effects.
- they do not usually produce a delusional state, excessive stupor, or excessive stimulation.
- they do not cause memory loss with occasional use.
- they are easily and cheaply available.

- they produce a high that gives the illusion of increasing creativity, empathy, or self-awareness.
- deaths from overdoses are rare.

Despite their perceived harmlessness, strong hallucinogens such as LSD can cause frightening and anxiety-evoking emotional experiences, known as bad trips. Flashbacks, where the sensations experienced while under the influence of a drug recur uncontrollably without drug use, can occur for months after a single drug use. During hallucinogen intoxication, reality may be so altered that a person may endanger himself by believing he is capable of feats such as flying off buildings. Hallucinogens also may induce or cause a worsening of latent psychiatric disorders such as anxiety, **depression**, and **psychosis**. Hallucinogens can also cause **paranoia**, long-term memory loss, personality changes (especially if there is a latent psychiatric disorder), and psychological drug dependence.

### *Psychological symptoms*

Hallucinogens work primarily on the perception of reality. They usually do not create true hallucinations, which are imagined visions or sounds (voices heard in the head, for example) in the absence of any corresponding reality. Instead, classic hallucinogens alter the perception of something that is physically present. A face may appear to “melt” or colors may become brighter, move, and change shape. Sounds may be “seen,” rather than heard.

More than with other drugs, the mental state of the hallucinogen user and the environment in which the drug is taken influence the user’s experience. LSD, especially, is known for symptoms that range from mellowess and psychedelic visions (good trips) to anxiety and panic attacks (bad trips). Previous good experiences with a drug do not guarantee continued good experiences. People with a history of psychiatric disorders are more likely to experience harmful reactions, as are those who are given the drug without their knowledge.

Normally, mescaline and psilocybin produce uniformly milder symptoms than LSD. During a single drug experience, the user can experience a range of symptoms. Mood can shift from happy to sad or pleasant to frightening and back again several times. Some symptoms occur primarily with MDMA, as indicated. Psychological symptoms of hallucinogen intoxication include:

- distortion of sight, sound, and touch
- confusion of the senses—sounds are “seen” or vision is “heard”
- disorientation in time and space

- delusions of physical invulnerability (especially with LSD)
- paranoia
- unreliable judgment and increased risk taking
- anxiety attacks
- flashbacks after the drug has been cleared from the body
- blissful calm or mellowess
- reduced inhibitions
- increased empathy (MDMA)
- elation or euphoria
- impaired concentration and motivation
- long-term memory loss
- personality changes, especially if there is a latent psychiatric disorder
- psychological drug dependence

### *Physical symptoms*

Although the primary effects of hallucinogens are on perceptions, some physical effects do occur. Physical symptoms include:

- increased blood pressure
- increased heart rate
- nausea and vomiting (especially with psilocybin and mescaline)
- blurred vision which can last after the drug has worn off
- poor coordination
- enlarged pupils
- sweating
- diarrhea (plant hallucinogens)
- restlessness
- muscle cramping (especially clenched jaws with MDMA)
- dehydration (MDMA)
- serious increase in body temperature leading to seizures (MDMA)

### *Demographics*

Hallucinogen use, excluding MDMA, peaked in the United States late 1960s as part of the counter-culture movement. Hallucinogen use then gradually declined until the early 1990s, when it again picked up. A recent government survey found that about 33.7 million Americans (13.9%) age 12 or older report having tried a hallucinogen at least once in their lives. About 22.4 million Americans (9.2% of the population) age 12 or older report having used LSD at least once, with 104,000 reporting use within the last

month. Among teenagers, use of these drugs has remained fairly stable with some declines in recent years.

A recent U.S. government survey found that about 11.5 million Americans age 12 or older report having tried MDMA at least once. About 0.2% of the population reported having used the drug in the last month. Among adolescents, use of the drug appears to have increased in recent years. A total of 6.5% of twelfth graders reported having tried MDMA in the past month according to a recent survey.

## Diagnosis

Although not all experts agree, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (the fourth edition, text revision or *DSM-IV-TR*), which presents guidelines used by the American Psychiatric Association for **diagnosis** of mental disorders, recognizes two hallucinogen-related disorders: hallucinogen dependence and hallucinogen abuse. Hallucinogen dependence is the continued use of hallucinogens even when the substances cause the affected individual significant problems, or when the individual knows of adverse effects (memory impairment while intoxicated, anxiety attacks, flashbacks), but continues to use the substances anyway. "Craving" hallucinogens after not using them for a period of time has been reported. Hallucinogen abuse is repeated use of hallucinogens even after they have caused the user impairment that undermines his or her ability to fulfill obligations at work, school, or home, but the use is usually not as frequent as it is among dependent users. In addition to these two disorders, the American Psychiatric Association recognizes eight hallucinogen-induced disorders. These are:

- hallucinogen intoxication
- hallucinogen persistent perception disorder (flashbacks)
- hallucinogen intoxication delirium
- hallucinogen-induced psychotic disorder with delusions
- hallucinogen-induced psychotic disorder with hallucinations
- hallucinogen-induced mood disorder
- hallucinogen-induced anxiety disorder
- hallucinogen-related disorder not otherwise specified

Hallucinogen dependence and abuse are normally diagnosed from reports by the patient or person accompanying the patient of use of a hallucinogenic drug. Active hallucinations and accompanying physical symptoms can confirm the diagnosis, but do not have to be present. Routine drug screening does not detect LSD in the blood or urine, although specialized

laboratory methods can detect the drug. Hallucinogen dependence differs from other drug dependence in that there are no withdrawal symptoms when the drug is stopped, and the extent of tolerance, (needing a higher and higher dose to achieve the same effect) appears minimal.

Hallucinogen intoxication is diagnosed based on psychological changes, perceptual changes, and physical symptoms that are typical of hallucinogen use. These changes must not be caused by a general medical condition, other **substance abuse**, or another mental disorder.

Hallucinogen persisting perception disorder, better known as flashbacks, occur after hallucinogen use followed by a period of lucidity. Flashbacks may occur weeks or months after the drug was used, and may occur after a single use or many uses.

To be diagnosed as a psychiatric disorder, flashbacks must cause significant distress or interfere with daily life activities. They can come on suddenly with no warning, or be triggered by specific environments. Flashbacks may include emotional symptoms, seeing colors, geometric forms, or, most commonly, persistence of trails of light across the visual field. They may last for months. Flashbacks are most strongly associated with LSD.

Hallucinogen intoxication delirium is rare unless the hallucinogen is contaminated by another drug or chemical such as strychnine. In hallucinogen intoxication, the patient is still grounded in reality and recognizes that the experiences of altered perception are due to using a hallucinogen. In hallucinogen intoxication delirium, the patient is no longer grounded in reality. Hallucinogen-induced psychotic disorders are similar in that the patient loses touch with reality. Psychotic states can occur immediately after using the drug, or days or months later.

Hallucinogen-induced mood disorder and hallucinogen-induced anxiety disorder are somewhat controversial, as hallucinogen use may uncover latent or preexisting anxiety or mood disorders rather than being the cause of them. However, it does appear that MDMA use can cause major depression.

## Treatments

Acute treatment is aimed at preventing the patient from harming himself or anyone else. Since most people experiencing hallucinogen intoxication remain in touch with reality, "talking down" or offering reassurance and support that emphasizes that the disturbing sensations, anxiety, **panic attack**, or paranoia will pass as the drug wears off is often helpful. Patients are kept

## KEY TERMS

**Dissociated**—Feelings of experiencing an altered state of reality, similar to a trance state. During the period of dissociation, the affected person may feel as if he or she is an observer instead of a participant in events, and may feel as if surroundings are unreal or distorted.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

in a calm, pleasant, but lighted environment, and are encouraged to move around while being helped to remain oriented to reality. Occasionally, drugs such as **lorazepam** are given for anxiety. Complications in treatment occur when the hallucinogen has been contaminated with other street drugs or chemicals. The greatest life-threatening risk is associated with MDMA, in which users may develop dangerously high body temperatures. Reducing the patient's temperature is an essential acute treatment.

Treatment for long-term effects of hallucinogen use involve long-term **psychotherapy** after drug use has stopped. Many people find 12-step programs or group support helpful. In addition, underlying psychiatric disorders must be addressed.

### Prognosis

Because hallucinogens are not physically addictive, many people are able to stop using these drugs successfully. However, users may be haunted by chronic problems such as flashbacks or mood and **anxiety disorders** either brought about or worsened by use of hallucinogens. It is difficult to predict who will have long-term complications and who will not.

### Prevention

Hallucinogen use is difficult to prevent, because these drugs have a reputation for being nonaddictive and "harmless." Drug education and social outlets that provide people with a sense of self-worth are the best ways to prevent hallucinogen and other substance abuse.

*See also* Amphetamines and related disorders; Cannabis and related disorders; Phencyclidine and related disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Galanter, Marc, and Herbert D. Kleber, eds. *Textbook of Substance Abuse Treatment*, 2nd ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, Inc., 1999.

Giannini, James. *Drug Abuse: A Family Guide to Detection, Treatment and Education*. Los Angeles: Health Information Press, 1999.

Holland, Julie, ed. *Ecstasy: The Complete Guide*. Rochester, Vermont: Park Street Press, 2001.

Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed., Vol. 1. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### ORGANIZATIONS

National Clearinghouse for Alcohol and Drug Information. P. O. Box 2345, Rockville, MD 20852. Telephone: (800) 729-6686. Web site: <<http://www.health.org>>.

National Institute on Drug Abuse. 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 10 A-39, Rockville, MD 20857. Telephone: (888) 644-6432. Web site: <<http://niad.nih.gov>>.

Partnership for a Drug-Free America. 405 Lexington Avenue, New York, NY 10174. Telephone: (212) 922-1560. Web site: <<http://www.drugfreeamerica.org>>.

### OTHER

Office of National Drug Control Policy. "Drug Facts: Hallucinogens." (2007) Available online at: <<http://www.whitehousedrugpolicy.gov/drugfact/hallucinogens/index.html>>.

Office of National Drug Control Policy. "Drug Facts: Club Drugs." (2007). Available online at: <<http://www.whitehousedrugpolicy.gov/drugfact/club/index.html>>.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2006). *Results from the 2005 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: National Findings* (Office of Applied Studies, NSDUH Series H-30, DHHS Publication No. SMA 06-4194). Rockville, MD. Available online at: <<http://www.oas.samhsa.gov/NSDUH/2k5NSDUH/2k5results.htm>>.

Tish Davidson, AM  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Haloperidol

### Definition

Haloperidol is a major tranquilizer. It is used to treat psychoses, senile **dementia**, Tourette's syndrome, and certain serious behavioral disorders in children. In the United States it is sold under the brand name Haldol.

## Purpose

Haloperidol is used in the management of symptoms in people requiring long-term antipsychotic therapy. It is also used for controlling tics and inappropriate vocalizations associated with Tourette's syndrome in both children and adults.

In children, haloperidol is occasionally used to treat severe behavior problems such as combativeness and extreme outbursts that occur without immediate provocation. Occasionally it is used for short-term treatment of children who display excessive motor activity with accompanying difficulty in attention, aggression, impulse control, mood changes, and coping with frustration. Haloperidol is used only after **psychotherapy** and other medications have been tried and are found to be unsuccessful.

## Description

Haloperidol is a major tranquilizer. It is used to control symptoms of psychotic disorders. It can be administered as a pill or by intramuscular injection (a shot).

The precise way in which haloperidol helps control symptoms associated with psychoses or dementia has not yet been clearly established.

## Recommended dosage

For adults, the recommended initial dosage of haloperidol is 0.5–5.0 mg taken two or three times each day. The initial dosage depends on the severity of the symptoms in the person being treated. All people taking haloperidol must be carefully monitored to establish an individualized dosage. Physicians have found a great variability in the amount of haloperidol required to control symptoms.

Children require smaller dosages of haloperidol than do adults. The recommended initial dosage of haloperidol for controlling psychotic symptoms in children is 0.5–2.0 mg taken two or three times each day. The recommended dosage for controlling symptoms of Tourette's syndrome and other nonpsychotic disorders is between 0.075 mg and 0.05 mg per kilogram (2.2 pounds) of body weight per day. The total dosage is usually divided into two or three administrations per day. The goal of therapy is to use the smallest amount of haloperidol that will control symptoms. Children under age three should not be given this drug.

## Precautions

Haloperidol may cause low blood pressure (hypotension). For this reason people with heart and blood

pressure problems should be carefully monitored while taking the drug. Haloperidol also increases the possibility of having **seizures**. People with a history of seizures or who are taking anticonvulsants (medication to control seizures) should take lower dosages of haloperidol and be closely monitored by a physician until a safe dosage is established. Haloperidol also interferes with the action of the anticoagulant (blood thinning) drug phenindione.

Haloperidol may increase the action of central nervous system depressants such as anesthetics, alcohol, and opiates (some pain killers and sleeping pills). It may also decrease the time required to change from mania to **depression** among people with bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder.

## Side effects

Haloperidol has the potential to produce a serious side effect called **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may not disappear or may only partially improve after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, face, or other groups of skeletal muscles. These side effects may appear after people have stopped taking haloperidol. The chance of developing tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and dosage of haloperidol. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

Haloperidol use may lead to the development of symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease, but that are not caused by Parkinson's. These symptoms may include a taut or mask-like expression on the face, drooling, tremors, pill-rolling motions in the hands, cogwheel rigidity (abnormal rigidity in muscles characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched), and a shuffling gait. Taking the anti-Parkinson's drugs **benztropine** mesylate or **tri-hexyphenidyl** hydrochloride along with haloperidol help to control these symptoms. Medication to control parkinsonian symptoms may have to be continued after haloperidol is stopped. This is due to different rates of elimination of these drugs from the body.

Other side effects of haloperidol include **anxiety**, restlessness, agitation, **insomnia**, headache, euphoria, drowsiness, depression, confusion, dizziness, and seizures. Unwanted or unexpected effects associated with the use of haloperidol have been reported for virtually

## KEY TERMS

**Anticoagulant**—A medication (such as warfarin, Coumadin, or Heparin) that decreases the blood's clotting ability, preventing the formation of new clots. Although anticoagulants will not dissolve existing clots, they can stop them from getting larger. These drugs are commonly called blood thinners.

**Anticonvulsant**—A medication used to control abnormal electrical activity in the brain that causes seizures.

**Tic**—A sudden involuntary behavior that is difficult or impossible for the person to suppress. Tics may be either motor (related to movement) or vocal, and may become more pronounced under stress.

**Tourette's syndrome**—Neurological disorder characterized by multiple involuntary movements and uncontrollable vocalizations called tics that come and go over years, usually beginning in childhood and becoming chronic. Sometimes the tics include inappropriate language.

**Tranquilizer**—A medication that induces a feeling of calm and relaxation.

all organ systems in the body. Although numerous, such side effects are relatively uncommon.

### Interactions

The simultaneous use of haloperidol and lithium, a common treatment for bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder, has been associated with an encephalopathic syndrome. People with this syndrome have symptoms of weakness, lethargy, fever, confusion, and high levels of white blood cells.

Haloperidol may increase the effect of central nervous system depressants such as anesthetics, opiates, and alcohol.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.
- Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.
- Von Boxtel, Chris J., and others. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

- Akhondzadeh, Shahin, and others. "Allopurinol as an Adjunct to Lithium and Haloperidol for Treatment of Patients With Acute Mania: A Double-Blind, Randomized, Placebo-Controlled Trial." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.5, part 1 (Oct. 2006): 485–89.
- Aziz, Mohamed, and others. "Remission of Positive and Negative Symptoms in Refractory Schizophrenia with a Combination of Haloperidol and Quetiapine: Two Case Studies." *Journal of Psychiatric Practice* 12.5 (Sept. 2006): 332–36.
- Dunn, Michael J., and Simon Killcross. "Clozapine but Not Haloperidol Treatment Reverses Sub-Chronic Phencyclidine-Induced Disruption of Conditional Discrimination Performance." *Behavioural Brain Research* 175.2 (Dec. 2006): 271–77.
- Emsley, Robin, Jonathan Rabinowitz, and Rossella Medori. "Remission in Early Psychosis: Rates, Predictors, and Clinical and Functional Outcome Correlates." *Schizophrenia Research* 89.1–3 (Jan. 2007): 129–39.
- Green, A. I., and others. "Olanzapine and Haloperidol in First Episode Psychosis: Two-Year Data." *Schizophrenia Research* 86.1–3 (Sept. 2006): 234–43.
- Morrens, Manuel, and others. "Psychomotor and Memory Effects of Haloperidol, Olanzapine, and Paroxetine in Healthy Subjects After Short-Term Administration." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 27.1 (Feb. 2007): 15–21.
- Nasrallah, Henry A., Martin Brecher, and Björn Paulsson. "Placebo-Level Incidence of Extrapyramidal Symptoms (EPS) with Quetiapine in Controlled Studies of Patients with Bipolar Mania." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.5, part 1 (Oct. 2006): 467–74.
- Woodward, Neil D., and others. "A Meta-Analysis of Cognitive Change with Haloperidol in Clinical Trials of Atypical Antipsychotics: Dose Effects and Comparison to Practice Effects." *Schizophrenia Research* 89.1–3 (Jan. 2007): 211–24.
- Zhang, Xiang Yang, and others. "The Effects of Ginkgo Biloba Extract Added to Haloperidol on Peripheral T Cell Subsets in Drug-Free Schizophrenia: A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Trial." *Psychopharmacology* 188.1 (Sep. 2006): 12–17.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, P.O. Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.
- American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.
- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.

American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Web site: <<http://www.aspet.org/>>.

L.Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, DrPH  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Halstead-Reitan Battery

### Definition

The Halstead-Reitan Neuropsychological Test Battery is a fixed set of eight tests used to evaluate **brain** and nervous system functioning in individuals aged 15 years and older. Children's versions are the Halstead Neuropsychological Test Battery for Older Children (ages nine to 14) and the Reitan Indiana Neuropsychological Test Battery (ages five to eight).

### Purpose

Neuropsychological functioning refers to the ability of the nervous system and brain to process and interpret information received through the senses. The Halstead-Reitan evaluates a wide range of nervous system and brain functions, including visual, auditory, and tactile input; verbal communication; spatial and sequential perception; the ability to analyze information, form mental concepts, and make judgments; motor output; and attention, concentration, and memory.

The Halstead-Reitan is typically used to evaluate individuals with suspected brain damage. The battery also provides useful information regarding the cause of damage (for example, closed head injury, alcohol **abuse**, **Alzheimer's disease**, **stroke**), which part of the brain is damaged, whether the damage occurred during childhood development, and whether the damage is getting worse, staying the same, or getting better. Information regarding the severity of impairment and areas of personal strengths can be used to develop plans for rehabilitation or care.

### Precautions

Because of its complexity, the Halstead-Reitan requires administration by a professional examiner and interpretation by a trained **psychologist**. Test results are affected by the examinee's age, education

level, intellectual ability, and—to some extent—gender or ethnicity, which should always be taken into account. Because the Halstead-Reitan is a fixed battery of tests, some unnecessary information may be gathered or some important information may be missed. Overall, the battery requires five to six hours to complete, involving considerable patience, stamina, and cost. The battery has also been criticized for not including specific tests of memory; rather, memory is evaluated within the context of other tests.

### Description

Ward Halstead and Ralph Reitan are the developers of the Halstead-Reitan Battery. Based on studies of patients with neurologic impairments at the University of Chicago, Halstead recognized the need for an evaluation of brain functioning that was more extensive than intelligence testing. He began experimenting with psychological tests that might help identify types and severity of brain damage through observation of a person's behavior in various tasks involving neuropsychological abilities. Initially he chose a set of ten tests; all but three are in the current Halstead-Reitan Battery.

Ralph Reitan, one of Halstead's students, contributed to the battery by researching the tests' ability to identify neurological problems. In a remarkable study, Reitan diagnosed 8,000 patients using only their test results—without meeting the patients or knowing anything about their background. This provided strong support for the battery's effectiveness. Reitan adapted the original battery by including additional tests.

The Halstead-Reitan has been researched more than any other neuropsychological test battery. Research continues to support its ability to accurately detect impairment in a large range of neuropsychological functions.

### Category Test

A series of 208 pictures consisting of geometric figures are presented, sorted in groups according to some underlying principle, which the test subject is asked to determine. For each picture, individuals are asked to decide which of four principles they believe is represented and to press a key that corresponds to the number of choice. If they chose correctly, a chime sounds. If they chose incorrectly, a buzzer sounds. The pictures are presented in seven subtests.

The key to this test is that one principle, or common characteristic, underlies each subtest. The numbers 1, 2,

3, and 4 represent the possible principles. If individuals are able to recognize the correct principle in one picture, they will respond correctly for the remaining pictures in that subtest. The next subtest may have the same or a different underlying principle, and individuals must again try to determine that principle using the feedback of the chime and buzzer. The last subtest contains two underlying principles. The test takes approximately one hour to complete, but individuals with severe brain damage may take as long as two hours.

The Category Test is considered the battery's most effective test for detecting brain damage, but does not help determine where the problem is occurring in the brain. The test evaluates abstraction ability, or the ability to draw specific conclusions from general information. Related abilities are solving complex and unique problems, and learning from experience. Children's versions consist of 80 items and five subtests for young children, and 168 items and six subtests for older children.

Scoring involves recording the number of errors. Based on traditional scoring using cutoff values (cutoff scores are scores that indicate the borderline between normal and impaired functioning), scores above 41 are considered indicative of brain impairment for ages 15 to 45. For ages 46 and older, scores above 46 indicate impairment. Reitan has suggested a cutoff of 50 or 51 errors. Recommended cutoffs also vary depending on age and education level.

#### ***Tactual Performance Test***

A form board containing 10 cutout shapes, and 10 wooden blocks matching those shapes are placed in front of a blindfolded individual. Individuals are then instructed to use only their dominant hand to place the blocks in their appropriate space on the form board. The same procedure is repeated using only the non-dominant hand, and then using both hands. Finally, the form board and blocks are removed, followed by the blindfold. From memory, individuals are asked to draw the form board and the shapes in their proper locations. The test usually takes anywhere from 15 to 50 minutes to complete. There is a time limit of 15 minutes for each trial, or each performance segment.

Other names for this test are the Form Board Test and the Seguin-Goddard Formboard. It evaluates sensory ability, memory for shapes and spatial location, motor functions, and the brain's ability to transfer information between its two hemispheres. In addition to simple detection of brain damage, this test also helps determine the side of the brain where damage

may have occurred. For children under the age of 15, only six shapes are used.

Scoring involves recording the time to complete each of the three blindfolded trials and the total time for all trials combined (time score), the number of shapes recalled (memory score), and the number of shapes drawn in their correct locations (localization score). Generally, the trial for the non-dominant hand should be 20–30% faster than the trial for the dominant hand, due to the benefit of practice. If the non-dominant hand is slower than the dominant hand—it should be slower, but is a question of how much slower—or more than 30% faster than the dominant hand, brain damage is possible. However, some people without brain damage do not exhibit this typical improvement rate. Injuries of the arms, shoulders, or hands can also affect performance. Scores should be adjusted depending on education level and may vary depending on age.

#### ***Trail Making Test***

This test consists of two parts. Part A is a page with 25 numbered circles randomly arranged. Individuals are instructed to draw lines between the circles in increasing sequential order until they reach the circle labeled "End." Part B is a page with circles containing the letters A through L and 13 numbered circles intermixed and randomly arranged. Individuals are instructed to connect the circles by drawing lines alternating between numbers and letters in sequential order, until they reach the circle labeled "End." If individuals make mistakes, the mistakes are quickly brought to their attention, and they continue from the last correct circle. The test takes approximately five to 10 minutes to complete.

This test was originally known as Partington's Pathways, or the Divided Attention Test, which was part of the Army Individual Test Battery. The test evaluates information-processing speed, visual-scanning ability, integration of visual and motor functions, letter and number recognition and sequencing, and the ability to maintain two different trains of thought. The test can be administered orally if an individual is incapable of writing. The Color Trails Test, designed for children and individuals of different cultures, uses colors instead of numbers and letters.

Scoring is simply the time to complete each part. Errors naturally increase the total time. Some have argued that the time taken to alert individuals of errors may vary depending on the person giving the test. For adults, scores above 40 seconds for Part A and 91 seconds for Part B have traditionally indicated brain

impairment. Current research discourages the use of such traditional cutoffs, preferring ranges depending on age, education, and gender. For example, one study reported that for ages 15 to 19, the average time to complete Part A was 25.7 seconds and the time to complete Part B was 49.8 seconds. For ages 80 to 85, however, the average time to complete Part A was 60.7 seconds and the time to complete Part B was 152.2 seconds. This demonstrates the importance of considering other variables when scoring.

### **Finger Tapping Test**

Individuals place their dominant hand palm down, fingers extended, with the index finger resting on a lever that is attached to a counting device. Individuals are instructed to tap their index finger as quickly as possible for ten seconds, keeping the hand and arm stationary. This trial is repeated five to 10 times, until the examiner has collected counts for five consecutive trials that are within five taps of each other. Before starting the test, individuals are given a practice session. They are also given brief rests between each 10-second trial, and one- to two-minute rests after every third trial. This entire procedure is repeated with the nondominant hand. The test takes approximately 10 minutes to complete.

This test is also called the Finger Oscillation Test. The children's version uses an electronic tapper instead of a manual one, which was difficult for children to operate. The test measures motor speed and helps determine particular areas of the brain that may be damaged. Scoring involves using the five accepted trials to calculate an average number of taps per trial for each hand. In general, the dominant hand should perform 10% better than the nondominant hand. Yet this is not always the case, especially with left-handed individuals. Men and younger people tend to perform better than women and older people. Interpretation should also consider education level, intelligence, **fatigue**, general weakness or lack of coordination, **depression**, and injuries to the shoulders, arms, or hands. This test should only be interpreted in combination with other tests in the battery.

### **Rhythm Test**

Thirty pairs of tape-recorded, nonverbal sounds are presented. For each pair, individuals decide if the two sounds are the same or different, marking "S" or "D" respectively on their answer sheets. The pairs are grouped into three subtests. This test is also called the Seashore Rhythm Test, and is based on the Seashore Tests of Musical Ability. It evaluates auditory attention and concentration, and the ability to discriminate

between nonverbal sounds. The test helps detect brain damage, but not the location of damage. Adequate hearing and visual abilities are needed to take this test. Scoring is based on the number of correct items, with higher scores indicating less damage or good recovery. Scores should be interpreted along with information from other tests. Some researchers consider this test unreliable and simplistic. The children's version does not include this test.

### **Speech Sounds Perception Test**

Sixty tape-recorded nonsense syllables containing the sound "ee" (for example, "meer" and "weem") are presented. After each syllable, individuals underline, from a set of four written syllables, the spelling that represents the syllable they heard. This test evaluates auditory attention and concentration and the ability to discriminate between verbal sounds. It provides some information regarding specific areas of brain damage, and may also indicate attention deficits or hearing loss. Scoring and interpretation are similar to that used for the Rhythm Test. The children's version contains fewer syllable choices.

### **Reitan-Indiana Aphasia Screening Test**

Aphasia is the loss of ability to understand or use written or spoken language, due to brain damage or deterioration. In this test, individuals are presented with a variety of questions and tasks that would be easy for someone without impairment. Examples of test items include verbally naming pictures, writing the name of a picture without saying the name aloud, reading printed material of increasing length, repeating words stated by the examiner, simple arithmetic problems, drawing shapes without lifting the pencil, and placing one hand to an area on the opposite side of the body.

This test is a modification of the Halstead-Wepman Aphasia Screening Test. It evaluates language-related difficulties, right/left confusion, and nonverbal tasks. A typical scoring procedure is not used because this is a screening test; its purpose is to detect possible signs of aphasia that may require further evaluation. Subtle language deficits may not be detected.

### **Reitan-Klove Sensory-Perceptual Examination**

This test detects whether individuals are unable to perceive stimulation on one side of the body when both sides are stimulated simultaneously. It has tactile, auditory, and visual components involving the ability to (a) specify whether touch, sound, or visible movement is occurring on the right, left, or both sides of the

body; (b) recall numbers assigned to particular fingers (the examiner assigns numbers by touching each finger and stating the number with the individual's eyes closed); (c) identify numbers "written" on fingertips while eyes are closed; and (d) identify the shape of a wooden block placed in one hand by pointing to its shape on a form board with the opposite hand.

#### Ancillary tests

In addition to the core tests, examiners may choose to administer other tests based on the difficulties that individuals experience. Tests commonly used in combination with the Halstead-Reitan Battery include the Grip Strength Test, the Grooved Pegboard Test, the Reitan-Klove Lateral Dominance Examination, the Wechsler Memory Scale, the California Verbal Learning Test, the Buschke Selective Reminding Test, the Rey Auditory Verbal Memory Test, the Rey Complex Figure Test, the Test of Memory and Learning, the **Wide Range Achievement Test**, the **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory**, and the **Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale** or Wechsler Intelligence Scales for Children. Some of these tests expand on these measures of functioning in the latest revision of the battery.

#### Results

Interpretation of the Halstead-Reitan involves analysis of various factors:

- overall performance on the battery. The Halstead Impairment Index (HII) and the General Neuropsychological Deficit Scale (GNDS) are commonly used to obtain an overall score, although the latest revision now facilitates calculation of a global deficit score that reflects the number and severity of deficits or impairments and incorporates more test measures than were used in previous versions. This summary score weighs deficits more heavily than strengths, which reduces the chance that better performance on a few components of the test will hide impairments. The HII is calculated by counting the total number of tests in the impaired range, and dividing that number by the total tests administered, resulting in a decimal between zero and one (0.0–0.2: normal functioning; 0.3–0.4: mild impairment; 0.5–0.7: moderate impairment; and 0.8–1.0: severe impairment). The GNDS is calculated by assigning a value between zero and four to 42 variables contained in the tests, then summing those values (0–25: normal functioning; 26–40: mild impairment; 41–67: moderate impairment; and 68 and higher: severe impairment).
- performance on individual tests. Each test must be interpreted in relation to other tests in the battery. Significantly poor performance on one test may be

#### KEY TERMS

**Abstraction**—Ability to think about concepts or ideas separate from specific examples.

**Aphasia**—Loss of previously acquired ability to understand or use written or spoken language, due to brain damage or deterioration.

**Cutoff scores**—In psychological testing, scores that indicate the borderline between normal and impaired functioning.

**Dominant hand**—The hand that one prefers to use when performing various tasks such as writing or throwing an object.

**Lateralization**—The control of specific neurological functions by one side of the brain or the other; for example, in most right-handed people, language functions are controlled by the left side of the brain and spatial and visual functions are controlled by the right side of the brain.

**Localization**—The control of specific neurological functions by specific areas in the brain.

**Motor**—Involving muscle movement.

**Neurologic**—Pertaining to the nervous system (brain and nerve cells).

**Neuropsychological functioning**—The ability of the nervous system and brain to process and interpret information received through the senses.

**Nondominant hand**—The hand that one does not typically use when performing various tasks such as writing or throwing an object.

**Tactile/tactual**—A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

due to various factors. However, if a pattern of poor performance occurs on three or more tests, or if significant discrepancies occur on two or more tests, impairment is likely.

- indications of lateralization and localization. This refers to the particular region of the brain that is damaged. Performance on sensory and motor tasks provides the necessary clues.

With the above information, a psychologist can diagnose the type of condition present, predict the course of the impairment (staying the same, getting better, or getting worse), and make recommendations regarding treatment, care, or rehabilitation.

In 2004, a revision in the norms used to make determinations about results on the battery was published.

This revision includes corrections based on ethnicity in addition to age, gender, and education. The results can be adjusted to demographic components, including African American or Caucasian ethnicity. Also updated is the global deficit score, which reflects the severity and number of deficits on more test measures than previously assessed. The sample used to determine the norms for this 2004 revision also was larger, including more than 1,000 adults, ages 20 to 85, for most test endpoints. The revision also has expanded measures of psychological functioning, including Wechsler scores.

*See also* Assessment and diagnosis; Brain; Dementia; Executive function; Luria-Nebraska Inventory; Mini-Mental State Exam; Neuropsychological Status Exam; Neuropsychological testing.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Broshek, Donna K., and Jeffrey T. Barth. "The Halstead-Reitan Neuropsychological Test Battery." In *Neuropsychological Assessment in Clinical Practice: A Guide to Test Interpretation and Integration*. Gary Groth-Marnat, ed. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2000.
- Evans, Jovier D., and others. "Cross-cultural Applications of the Halstead-Reitan Batteries." In *Handbook of Cross-cultural Neuropsychology: Critical Issues in Neuropsychology*. Elaine Fletcher-Janzen, Tony L. Starkland, and others, eds. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 2000.
- Horton, Arthur MacNeill, ed. "The Halstead-Reitan Neuropsychological Test Battery: Problems and Prospects." In *The Neuropsychology Handbook*. New York: Springer Publishing Company, 1997.
- Otrfied, Spreen, and Esther Strauss. *A Compendium of Neuropsychological Tests: Administration, Norms, and Commentary*. 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.
- Vanderploeg, Rodney D., ed. *Clinician's Guide to Neuropsychological Assessment*. Mahwah, New Jersey: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Burger, Denney C., and R. L. Lee. "The Kaufman Neuropsychological Assessment Procedure and the Halstead-Reitan Neuropsychological Battery: A Comparison Using Participants Referred by Vocational Rehabilitation." *Archives of Clinical Neuropsychology* 15.8 (2000): 696.
- Morgan, Joel E., and Elise Caccappolo-van Vliet. "Advanced Years and Low Education: The Case Against the Comprehensive Norms." *Journal of Forensic Neuropsychology* 2.1 (2001): 53–69.
- Reitan, Ralph M., and Deborah Wolfson. "The Neuropsychological Similarities of Mild and More Severe Head Injury." *Archives of Clinical Neuropsychology* 15.5 (2000): 433–42.

## ORGANIZATIONS

Division of Clinical Neuropsychology. Division 40, American Psychological Association, 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (202) 336-6013. Web site: <<http://www.div40.org>>.

International Neuropsychology Society. 700 Ackerman Road, Suite 550, Columbus, OH 43202. Telephone: (614) 263-4200. Web site: <<http://www.osu.edu/ins>>.

## OTHER

Heaton, R. K., and others. "Revised Comprehensive Norms for an Expanded Halstead-Reitan Battery: Demographically Adjusted Neuropsychological Norms for African American and Caucasian Adults." Lutz, FL: Psychological Assessment Resources, 2004. Available online at: <<http://www3.parinc.com/products/product.aspx?Productid=RCNAAC>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, MA  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Hamilton Anxiety Scale

### Definition

The Hamilton **Anxiety** Scale (HAS or HAMA) is a 14-item test measuring the severity of anxiety symptoms. It is also sometimes called the Hamilton Anxiety Rating Scale (HARS).

### Purpose

The HAS is used to assess the severity of anxiety symptoms present in children and adults. It is also used as an outcome measure when assessing the impact of antianxiety medications, therapies, and treatments and is a standard measure of anxiety used in evaluations of psychotropic drugs. The HAS can be administered prior to medication being started and then again during follow-up visits, so that medication dosage can be changed in part based on the patient's test score.

The HAS was developed by Max Hamilton in 1959. It provides measures of overall anxiety, psychic anxiety (mental agitation and psychological distress), and somatic anxiety (physical complaints related to anxiety). Hamilton developed the HAS to be appropriate for adults and children; although it is most often used for younger adults, there has been support for the test's use with older adults as well. Hamilton also developed the widely used **Hamilton Depression Scale** (HDS) to measure symptoms of **depression**.

Hamilton developed the scale by using the statistical technique of factor analysis. With this method, he

generated a set of symptoms related to anxiety and further determined which symptoms related to psychic anxiety and which related to somatic anxiety.

### Precautions

The test has been criticized on the grounds that it does not always discriminate between people with anxiety symptoms and those with depressive symptoms (people with depression also score fairly high on the HAS).

Because the HAS is administered and rated by the interviewer, there is some subjectivity when it comes to interpretation and scoring. Interviewer bias can affect the results. For this reason, some people prefer self-report measures where scores are completely based on the interviewee's responses.

### Description

The HAS is administered by an interviewer who asks a semistructured series of questions related to symptoms of anxiety. The interviewer then rates the individuals on a five-point scale for each of the 14 items. Seven of the items specifically address psychic anxiety, and the remaining seven items address somatic anxiety. For example, the third item specifically addresses fears related to anxiety, the fifth item addresses **insomnia** and sleeping difficulties related to anxiety, and the tenth item addresses respiratory symptoms related to anxiety.

According to Hamilton, examples of psychic symptoms elicited by the HAS interview include a generally anxious mood, heightened fears, feelings of tension, and difficulty concentrating. Examples of somatic symptoms include muscular pain, feelings of weakness, cardiovascular problems, and restlessness.

### Results

For the 14 items, the values on the scale range from zero to four: zero means that there is no anxiety, one indicates mild anxiety, two indicates moderate anxiety, three indicates severe anxiety, and four indicates very severe or grossly disabling anxiety. The total anxiety score ranges from zero to 56. The seven psychic anxiety items elicit a psychic anxiety score that ranges from zero to 28. The remaining seven items yield a somatic anxiety score that also ranges from zero to 28.

One reason that the HAS is widely used is that reliability studies have shown that it measures anxiety symptoms in a fairly consistent way. The measure's validity has also been supported by research.

### KEY TERMS

**Factor analysis**—A statistical method for summarizing relationships between variables. For the HAS, factor analysis was utilized to determine the specific sets of symptoms relating to overall anxiety, somatic anxiety, and psychic anxiety.

**Psychotropic medication**—Medication that has an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

Studies have shown that individuals with **anxiety disorders** score fairly high on the HAS. For example, persons with **generalized anxiety disorder** and **panic disorder** tend to have a total anxiety score above 20 on the HAS. On the other hand, people with no disorder or **diagnosis** score very low on the HAS.

While there is a tendency for depressed people to also score high on the HAS, some researchers have suggested that anxiety and depression are so closely linked that people can easily score high on measures of both types of symptoms.

The paper and pencil version of this test is in the public domain, meaning that it can easily be found on the Internet for people who are interested in reviewing it. There is also a computer-administered version for use in a computerized, telephone-based interview. This version uses voice recognition to take answers to the respondent's questions. The computerized "interviewer" can even interact in a programmed way with the respondent. A study has indicated that some respondents feel more comfortable answering the questions when they are administered in the telephone format compared to the in-person format.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Edelstein, Barry. *Comprehensive Clinical Psychology, Vol. 7: Clinical Geropsychology*. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1998.
- Maruish, Mark R. *The Use of Psychological Testing for Treatment Planning and Outcomes Assessment*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 1999.
- Ollendick, Thomas. *Comprehensive Clinical Psychology, Vol. 5: Children and Adolescents: Clinical Formulation and Treatment*. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1998.

Schutte, Nicola S., and John M. Malouff. *Sourcebook of Adult Assessment Strategies*. New York: Plenum Press, 1995.

#### OTHER

“Healthcare Technology Systems.” Producers of the IVR version of the Hamilton Anxiety Scale. Available online at: <<http://www.healthtechsys.com/ivr/assess/ivrhama.html>>.

Kobak, K.A., J.H. Greist, J.W. Jefferson, J.C. Mundt, and D.J. Katzenbach. “Computerized Assessment of Depression and Anxiety over the Telephone Using Interactive Voice Response.” *MD Computing* 16 (1999): 64–68.

Ali Fahmy, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Hamilton Depression Scale

### Definition

The Hamilton **Depression** Scale (HDS or HAMD) is a test measuring the severity of depressive symptoms in individuals, often those who have already been diagnosed as having a depressive disorder. It is sometimes known as the Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression (HRSD) or the Hamilton Depression Rating Scale (HDRS).

### Purpose

The HDS is used to assess the severity of depressive symptoms present in both children and adults. It is often used as an outcome measure of depression in evaluations of antidepressant psychotropic medications and is a standard measure of depression used in research of the effectiveness of depression therapies and treatments. It can be administered prior to medication being started and then again during follow-up visits, so that medication dosage can be changed in part based on the patient’s test score. The HDS is often used as the standard against which other measures of depression are validated. There is a computerized version available intended for administration by telephone using a voice-recognition system and a computerized “interviewer.”

The HDS was developed by Max Hamilton in 1960 as a measure of depressive symptoms that could be used in conjunction with clinical interviews with depressed patients. It was later revised in 1967. Hamilton also designed the Hamilton Depression Inventory (HDI), a self-report measure for adults consistent with his theoretical formulation of depression in the

HDS, and the **Hamilton Anxiety Scale** (HAS), an interviewer-rated test measuring the severity of **anxiety** symptoms.

### Precautions

Some symptoms related to depression, such as self-esteem and self-deprecation, are not explicitly included in the HDS items. Also, because anxiety is specifically asked about on the HDS, it is not always possible to separate symptoms related to anxiety from symptoms related to depression.

Because the HDS is administered and rated by the interviewer, there is some subjectivity when it comes to interpretation and scoring. Interviewer bias can affect the results. For this reason, some people prefer self-report measures where scores are completely based on the interviewee’s responses.

### Description

Depending on the version used, an interviewer can provide ratings for a test with 17 or 24 items. In addition to the items on the 17-item scale, the 24-item scale also addresses daytime-only symptoms, helplessness, hopelessness, worthlessness, obsessional symptoms, and paranoid feelings. A 21-item version has also been used for evaluations. Along with the patient interview answers, other information can be used in formulating ratings, such as information gathered from family, friends, and patient records. Hamilton stressed that the interview process be easygoing and informal and that there are no specific questions that must be asked.

Examples of items for which interviewers must give ratings include overall depression, guilt, **suicide**, **insomnia**, problems related to work, psychomotor retardation, agitation, anxiety, gastrointestinal and other physical symptoms, loss of libido, **hypochondriasis**, loss of insight, and loss of weight. For the overall rating of depression, for example, Hamilton believed one should look for feelings of hopelessness and gloominess, pessimism regarding the future, and a tendency to cry. For the rating of suicide, an interviewer should look for suicidal ideas and thoughts, as well as information regarding suicide attempts.

### Results

In the 17-item version, which is most commonly used, nine of the items are scored on a five-point scale, ranging from zero to four. A score of zero represents an absence of the depressive symptom being measured, a score of one indicates doubt concerning the presence of the symptom, a score of two indicates mild

## KEY TERMS

**Hypochondriasis**—A mental condition in which the affected person perceives illness or symptoms of illness when none exist.

**Psychomotor retardation**—Slowdown in motor activity directly proceeding from mental activity.

**Psychotropic medication**—Medication that has an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

to moderate symptoms, a score of three indicates moderate to severe symptoms, and a score of four represents the presence of extreme symptoms. The remaining eight items are scored on a three-point scale, from zero to two, with zero representing absence of symptom, one indicating that the symptom is present to a mild or moderate degree, and two representing clear presence of symptoms.

For the 17-item version, scores can range from zero to 54. One formulation suggests that scores between zero and six indicate a person who is typical and lacks morbidity with regard to depression; scores between seven and 17 indicate mild depression; scores between 18 and 24 indicate moderate depression; and scores over 24 indicate severe depression.

There has been evidence to support the reliability and validity of the HDS. The scale correlates highly with other clinician-rated and self-report measures of depression.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Edelstein, Barry. *Comprehensive Clinical Psychology, Vol. 7: Clinical Geropsychology*. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1998.
- Maruish, Mark R. *The Use of Psychological Testing for Treatment Planning and Outcomes Assessment*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 1999.
- Ollendick, Thomas. *Comprehensive Clinical Psychology, Vol. 5: Children and Adolescents: Clinical Formulation and Treatment*. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1998.
- Schutte, Nicola S., and John M. Malouff. *Sourcebook of Adult Assessment Strategies*. New York: Plenum Press, 1995.

## OTHER

Because the scale is in the public domain, it is available on numerous Web sites. One example is at <<http://healthnet.umassmed.edu/mhealth/HAMD.pdf>>. Note that this scale is intended to be administered and interpreted by a trained professional.

U.S. Food and Drug Administration. Description of the Hamilton Depression Rating Scale (HAMD) and the Montgomery-Asberg Depression Rating Scale (MADRS). (2007) Available online at: <[http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/AC/07/briefing/2007-4273b1\\_04-DescriptionofMADRSHAMDDepressionR\(1\).pdf](http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/AC/07/briefing/2007-4273b1_04-DescriptionofMADRSHAMDDepressionR(1).pdf)>.

Ali Fahmy, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## I Hare Psychopathy Checklist

### Definition

The Hare Psychopathy Checklist-Revised (PCL-R) is a diagnostic tool used to rate a person's psychopathic or antisocial tendencies. Psychopaths are people who prey ruthlessly on others using charm, deceit, violence or other methods that allow them to get what they want. The symptoms of psychopathy include lack of a conscience or sense of guilt; lack of empathy; egocentricity; pathological lying; repeated violations of social norms; disregard for the law; shallow emotions; and a history of victimizing others.

Originally designed to assess people accused or convicted of crimes, the PCL-R consists of a 20-item symptom rating scale that allows qualified examiners to compare a subject's degree of psychopathy with that of a prototypical psychopath. It is accepted by many in the field as the best method for determining the presence and extent of psychopathy in a person.

The Hare checklist is still used to diagnose members of the original population for which it was developed—adult males in prisons, criminal psychiatric hospitals, and awaiting psychiatric evaluations or trial in other correctional and detention facilities. Recent experience suggests that the PCL-R may also be used effectively to diagnose sex offenders as well as female and adolescent offenders.

### Purpose

The PCL-R is used for diagnosing psychopathy in individuals for clinical, legal or research purposes. Developed in the early 1990s, the test was originally

designed to identify the degree of a person's psychopathic tendencies. Because psychopaths, however, are often repeat offenders who commit sexual assaults or other violent crimes again and again, the PCL-R is now finding use in the courtroom and in institutions as an indicator of the potential risk posed by subjects or prisoners. The results of the examination have been used in forensic settings as a factor in deciding the length and type of prison sentences and the treatment subjects should or should not receive.

### Precautions

Diagnosing someone as a psychopath is a very serious step. It has important implications for a person and for his or her associates in family, clinical and forensic settings. Therefore, the test must be administered by professionals who have been specifically trained in its use and who have a wide-ranging and up-to-date familiarity with studies of psychopathy.

Professionals who administer the diagnostic examination should have advanced degrees (MD, PhD, or D.Ed) in a medical, behavioral or social science field; and registered with a reputable organization that oversees psychiatric or psychological testing and diagnostic procedures. Other recommendations include experience working with convicted or accused criminals or several years of some other related on-the-job training. Because the results are used so often in legal cases, those who administer it should be qualified to serve as expert witnesses in the courtroom. It is also a good idea, if possible, for two experts to independently test a subject with the PCL-R. The final rating would then be determined by averaging their scores.

Many studies conducted in North America and Europe attest to the value of the PCL-R for evaluating a person's degree of psychopathic traits and, in many cases, for predicting the likelihood of future violent behavior. Some critics, however, are more skeptical about its value.

### Description

The Hare PCL-R contains two parts, a semi-structured interview and a review of the subject's file records and history. During the evaluation, the clinician scores 20 items that measure central elements of the psychopathic character. The items cover the nature of the subject's interpersonal relationships; his or her affective or emotional involvement; responses to other people and to situations; evidence of social deviance; and lifestyle. The material thus covers two key aspects that help define the psychopath: selfish and unfeeling victimization of other people, and an unstable and antisocial lifestyle.

## KEY TERMS

**Affect**—The expression of emotion displayed to others through facial expressions, hand gestures, tone of voice, etc. Types of affect include: flat (inanimate, no expression), blunted (minimally responsive), inappropriate (incongruous expressions of emotion relative to the content of a conversation), and labile (sudden and abrupt changes in type and intensity of emotion).

**Egocentricity**—Self-centeredness.

**Forensic**—Pertaining to courtroom procedure or evidence used in courts of law.

**Grandiose**—Having an exaggerated belief in one's importance or status. In some people, grandiosity may be so extreme as to be delusional.

**Psychopath**—A person who ruthlessly preys on others, using charm, deceit, violence or other methods that allows him or her to get what they want. Another word that is sometimes used for psychopath is sociopath.

**Psychopathy**—A psychological syndrome that includes lack of a conscience or sense of guilt, lack of empathy, egocentricity, pathological lying, repeated violations of social norms, disregard of the law, shallow emotions and a history of victimizing others.

The twenty traits assessed by the PCL-R score are:

- glib and superficial charm
- grandiose (exaggeratedly high) estimation of self
- need for stimulation
- pathological lying
- cunning and manipulativeness
- lack of remorse or guilt
- shallow affect (superficial emotional responsiveness)
- callousness and lack of empathy
- parasitic lifestyle
- poor behavioral controls
- sexual promiscuity
- early behavior problems
- lack of realistic long-term goals
- impulsivity
- irresponsibility
- failure to accept responsibility for own actions
- many short-term marital relationships
- juvenile delinquency
- revocation of conditional release
- criminal versatility

The interview portion of the evaluation covers the subject's background, including such items as work and educational history; marital and family status; and criminal background. Because psychopaths lie frequently and easily, the information they provide must be confirmed by a review of the documents in the subject's case history.

## Results

When properly completed by a qualified professional, the PCL-R provides a total score that indicates how closely the test subject matches the "perfect" score that a classic or prototypical psychopath would rate. Each of the twenty items is given a score of 0, 1, or 2 based on how well it applies to the subject being tested. A prototypical psychopath would receive a maximum score of 40, while someone with absolutely no psychopathic traits or tendencies would receive a score of zero. A score of 30 or above qualifies a person for a **diagnosis** of psychopathy. People with no criminal backgrounds normally score around 5. Many non-psychopathic criminal offenders score around 22.

*See also* Antisocial personality disorder; Sexual sadism.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Black, Donald W., and C. Lindon Larson. *Bad Boys, Bad Men, Confronting Antisocial Personality Disorder*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press, 1999.  
 Hare, Robert D. *Without Conscience: The Disturbing World of the Psychopaths Among Us*. New York, NY: The Guilford Press, 1993.

### PERIODICALS

- Freedman, M. David. "False prediction of future dangerousness: Error rates and Psychopathy Checklist-Revised." *Journal of the American Academy of Psychiatry and Law* 29, no. 1 (March, 2001): 89-95.  
 Grann, M., N. Langström, A. Tengström, and G. Kullgren. "Psychopathy (PCL-R) predicts violent recidivism among criminal offenders with personality disorders in Sweden." *Law and Human Behavior* 23, no. 2 (April, 1999): 205-217.

### OTHER

- Hare, Robert D. Dr. Robert Hare's Page for the Study of Psychopaths. January 29, 2002 (cited April 5, 2002.) <<http://www.hare.org/>>.

Dean Haycock, PhD

**HCR-20** see **Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20**

Health maintenance organization see  
**Managed care**

## Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20

### Definition

The Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20 (HCR-20) is an assessment tool that helps mental health professionals estimate a person's probability of violence.

### Purpose

The HCR-20's results help mental health professionals determine best treatment and management strategies for potentially violent, mentally disordered individuals, including parolees, forensic mental health patients, and others. For example, if an individual is standing trial for a violent offense, a judge might order that assessments (such as the HCR-20, as well as others) be performed. The results of the evaluation could be used to determine the person's future potential for violence, how the court should proceed, and which kind of facility the person might require.

### Precautions

A professional trained in conducting individual assessments and in the study of violence should administer the HCR-20. The test administrator should have a background in using assessment tests or should consult a mental health professional. The HCR-20 is not intended to be a stand-alone measure, and it does not cover all risk factors. When possible, the test administrator should use supplemental test measures and investigate any unique patterns of violence and its triggers in the person's history. The HCR-20 is not meant to be administered just once; the nature of risk assessment requires ongoing re-assessment as circumstances change. Final interpretation of HCR-20 results should be in the context of several factors, including the reason for the person's test referral, base rates of violence in populations with similar characteristics, and assessment of future risks in the person's environment.

### Description

The HCR-20 is an assessment tool. It consists of a list of 20 probing questions about the person being evaluated for violence. The clinician gathers qualitative information about the person being assessed, guided by the HCR-20, and the results are used to make treatment decisions.

The HCR-20 provides significantly improved valid predictions over previous testing methods. Earlier testing methods tended to be more subjective, less

well-focused, and based on the loosely supported judgment of test administrators, or on comparing characteristics of the person being tested with base rates of violent behavior in populations with similar characteristics. The HCR-20 extends the methods of earlier tests and supplements them with a review of dynamic variables, such as **stress** and lack of personal support—both factors important to the person's future adjustment. This review adds to the accuracy of the HCR-20, and increases its practicality.

The HCR-20 consists of three main areas: historical, clinical, and risk management. The HCR-20 domains are coded with a rating of 0 (not present), 1 (possible/less serious), or 3 (definite/serious).

### **Historical area**

To rate historical areas, the test administrator must do an exhaustive review of background documents, interview people who know the person being assessed, and complete the **Hare Psychopathy Checklist**, a useful instrument in its own right. The historical area is considered by many to anchor the instrument. It includes 10 domains:

- previous violence
- young age at first violent incident
- relationship instability
- employment problems
- substance use problems
- major mental illness, such as schizophrenia or bipolar disorder
- psychopathy, which can be defined as personality traits that deviate from social norms, such as manipulating and exploiting others for personal gain
- early maladjustment, or exposure to family and social disruptions during childhood that lead to coping problems (could be abuse or divorce, for example)
- personality disorder, such as paranoia
- failure to respond to clinical supervision or treatment in the past—may be related to noncompliance to treatment, such as refusing to take medications or attend therapy sessions

### **Clinical area**

The rating of the clinical area requires a clinical interview between the person being assessed and the mental health professional. The professional will also use his or her judgment, as well. The clinical area consists of five domains:

- lack of insight, or difficulty understanding cause and effect. For example, people with poor insight might

## **KEY TERMS**

**Decision-makers**—Person(s), such as prison or court officials, treatment facility administrators, or family members, responsible for making decisions for another individual.

**Risk assessment**—The process of gathering and interpreting data useful in estimating the probability that an individual will demonstrate violence.

**Risk management plan**—Using the results of a risk assessment to tailor intervention strategies intended to reduce the probability that an individual will demonstrate violence.

not understand why they do what they do and why their actions matter.

- negative attitudes.
- active symptoms of major mental illness.
- impulsivity.
- unresponsiveness to treatment.

### **Risk management**

The third area, risk management, includes five domains:

- the person's plans lack feasibility
- exposure to destabilizers, which means that family or social supports are missing, or that alcohol and drugs are available
- lack of personal support
- refusal to attend counseling sessions or take medications
- stress

## **Results**

The HCR-20 does not allow for a definite prediction of violence. Predictions based on the HCR-20 are estimates of the likelihood of violence, and should be presented in terms of low, moderate, or high probability of violence. Probability levels should be considered conditional, given short- and long-term time frames, and should be considered in relation to relevant factors the individual may encounter. These factors include situations and states of being that may dispose a person to violence or help insulate them against it. Consideration of such factors can aid in reporting the type and extent of risk presented by a person and in selecting **intervention** strategies intended to reduce the probability that an individual will demonstrate violence. These strategies when taken as a whole are called a risk management plan.

Ultimately, HCR-20 results are intended to provide information for decision-makers, so that criminal and mental health-related decisions can be based on the best available estimates of risk of violence.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Webster, C., and others. *HCR-20: Assessing Risk for Violence, Version 2*. Burnaby, British Columbia, Canada: Mental Health, Law, and Policy Institute, Simon Fraser University, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- Belfrage, H., R. Fransson, and S. Strand. "Prediction of violence using the HCR-20: A prospective study in two maximum security correctional institutions." *Journal of Forensic Psychiatry* 11, no. 1 (2000): 167-175.
- Dawes, R., D. Faust, and P. Meehl. "Clinical versus actuarial judgement." *Science* 243 (1989): 1668-1674.
- Douglas, K., J. Ogloff, T. Nicholls, and I. Grant. "Assessing risk for violence among psychiatric patients: The HCR-20 violence risk assessment scheme and the Psychopathy Checklist: Screening Version." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 67, no. 6 (1999): 917-930.
- Monahan, J. "Violence prediction: The last 20 and the next 20 years." *Criminal Justice and Behavior* 23 (1996): 107-120.
- Quinsey, V. "The prediction and explanation of criminal violence." *International Journal of Law and Psychiatry* 18 (1995): 117-127.
- Serin, R. "Psychopathy and violence in criminals." *Journal of Interpersonal Violence* 6 (1991): 423-431.

Geoffrey G. Grimm, PhD, LPC

## Histrionic personality disorder

### Definition

Histrionic personality disorder, often abbreviated as HPD, is a type of personality disorder in which affected individuals display enduring patterns of attention-seeking and excessively dramatic behaviors beginning in early adulthood and present across a broad range of situations. Individuals with HPD are highly emotional, charming, energetic, manipulative, seductive, impulsive, erratic, and demanding.

Mental health professionals use the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (the *DSM*) to diagnose mental disorders. The 2000 edition of this manual (the fourth edition, text revision, also called the *DSM-IV-TR*) classifies HPD as a personality disorder. More specifically, HPD is classified as a Cluster B

(dramatic, emotional, or erratic) personality disorder. Cluster B includes the histrionic, antisocial, borderline, and narcissistic **personality disorders**.

## Description

HPD has a unique position among the personality disorders because it is the only one explicitly connected to a patient's physical appearance. Researchers have found that HPD appears primarily in men and women with above-average physical appearances. Some research has suggested that the connection between HPD and physical appearance holds for women rather than for men. Both women and men with HPD express a strong need to be the center of attention. Individuals with HPD exaggerate, throw temper tantrums, and cry if they are not the center of attention. Patients with HPD are naive and gullible and have a low frustration threshold and strong dependency needs.

Cognitive style can be defined as a way in which individuals work with and solve cognitive tasks such as reasoning, learning, thinking, understanding, making decisions, and using memory. The cognitive style of individuals with HPD is superficial and lacks detail. In their interpersonal relationships, individuals with HPD use dramatization with the goal of impressing others. The enduring pattern of their insincere and stormy relationships leads to impairment in social and occupational areas.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is a lack of research on the causes of HPD. Even though the causes for the disorder are not definitively known, it is thought that HPD may be caused by biological, developmental, cognitive, and social factors.

**NEUROCHEMICAL/PHYSIOLOGICAL CAUSES.** Studies show that patients with HPD have highly responsive noradrenergic systems, the mechanisms surrounding the release of a neurotransmitter called norepinephrine. **Neurotransmitters** are chemicals that communicate impulses from one nerve cell to another in the **brain**, and these impulses dictate behavior. The tendency toward an excessively emotional reaction to rejection, common among patients with HPD, may be attributed to a malfunction in a group of neurotransmitters called catecholamines. Norepinephrine belongs to this group of neurotransmitters.

**DEVELOPMENTAL CAUSES.** Most psychoanalysts agree that a traumatic childhood can contribute to the development of HPD.

Defense mechanisms are sets of systematic, unconscious methods that people develop to cope with conflict and to reduce **anxiety**. According to Freud, all people use defense mechanisms, but different people use different types of defense mechanisms. Individuals with HPD differ in the severity of the maladaptive defense mechanisms they use. Patients with more severe cases of HPD may use the following defense mechanisms:

- repression. Repression is the most basic defense mechanism. When patients' thoughts produce anxiety or are unacceptable to them, they use repression to bar the unacceptable thoughts or impulses from consciousness.
- denial. Patients who use denial may say that a prior problem no longer exists, suggesting that their competence has increased; however, others may note that there is no change in the patients' behaviors.
- dissociation. When patients with HPD use the defense mechanism of dissociation, they may display two or more personalities. These two or more personalities exist in one individual without integration.

Patients with less severe cases of HPD tend to employ the following defenses:

- displacement. Displacement occurs when patients shift an affect from one idea to another. For example, a man with HPD may feel angry at work because the boss did not consider him to be the center of attention. The patient may displace his anger onto his wife rather than becoming angry with his boss.
- rationalization. Rationalization occurs when individuals explain their behaviors so that they appear to be acceptable to others.

**BIOSOCIAL LEARNING CAUSES.** A biosocial model in psychology asserts that social and biological factors contribute to the development of personality. Biosocial learning models of HPD suggest that individuals may acquire HPD from inconsistent interpersonal **reinforcement** offered by parents. Proponents of biosocial learning models indicate that individuals with HPD have learned to get what they want from others by drawing attention to themselves.

**PERSONAL VARIABLES.** Researchers have found some connections between the age of individuals with HPD and the behavior displayed by these individuals. The symptoms of HPD are long-lasting; however, histrionic character traits that are exhibited may change with age. For example, research suggests that young adults employ seductiveness more often than older ones. To impress others, older adults with HPD may shift their strategy from sexual seductiveness to a paternal or maternal seductiveness. Some histrionic

symptoms such as attention-seeking, however, may become more apparent as individuals with HPD age.

### Symptoms

The *DSM-IV-TR* lists eight symptoms that form the diagnostic criteria for HPD:

- center of attention: Patients with HPD experience discomfort when they are not the center of attention.
- sexually seductive: Patients with HPD display inappropriate sexually seductive or provocative behaviors toward others.
- shifting emotions: The expression of emotions of patients with HPD tends to be shallow and to shift rapidly.
- physical appearance: Individuals with HPD consistently employ physical appearance to gain attention for themselves.
- speech style: The speech style of patients with HPD lacks detail. Individuals with HPD tend to generalize, and when these individuals speak, they aim to please and impress.
- dramatic behaviors: Patients with HPD display self-dramatization and exaggerate their emotions.
- suggestibility: Other individuals or circumstances can easily influence patients with HPD.
- overestimation of intimacy: Patients with HPD overestimate the level of intimacy in a relationship.

### Demographics

#### General United States population

The prevalence of HPD in the general population is estimated to be approximately 2%-3%.

#### High-risk populations

Individuals who have experienced pervasive trauma during childhood have been shown to be at a greater risk for developing HPD as well as for developing other personality disorders.

#### Cross-cultural issues

HPD may be diagnosed more frequently in Hispanic and Latin American cultures and less frequently in Asian cultures. Further research is needed on the effects of culture on the symptoms of HPD.

#### Gender issues

Clinicians tend to diagnose HPD more frequently in females; however, when structured assessments are used to diagnose HPD, clinicians report approximately

equal prevalence rates for men and women. In considering the prevalence of HPD, it is important to recognize that gender role stereotypes may influence the behavioral display of HPD and that women and men may display HPD symptoms differently.

## Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** of HPD is complicated because it may seem like many other disorders, and also because it commonly occurs simultaneously with other personality disorders. The 1994 version of the *DSM* introduced the criterion of suggestibility and the criterion of overestimation of intimacy in relationships to further refine the diagnostic criteria set of HPD, so that it could be more easily recognizable. Prior to assigning a diagnosis of HPD, clinicians need to evaluate whether the traits evident of HPD cause significant distress. (The *DSM-IV-TR* requires that the symptoms cause significant distress in order to be considered a disorder.) The diagnosis of HPD is frequently made on the basis of an individual's history and results from unstructured and semistructured interviews.

### *Time of onset/symptom duration*

Some psychoanalysts propose that the determinants of HPD date back to early childhood. The pattern of craving attention and displaying dramatic behavior for individuals with HPD begins by early adulthood. Symptoms can last a lifetime, but may decrease or change their form with age.

### *Individual variations in HPD*

Some classification systems distinguish between different types of individuals with HPD: patients with appeasing HPD and patients with disingenuous HPD. Individuals with appeasing HPD have personalities with histrionic, dependent, and obsessive-compulsive components. Individuals with disingenuous HPD possess personality traits that are classified as histrionic and antisocial. Studies have shown that relationships exist between somatic behaviors and women with HPD and between antisocial behaviors and men with HPD.

### *Dual diagnoses*

HPD has been associated with alcoholism and with higher rates of **somatization disorder**, **conversion disorder**, and **major depressive disorder**. Personality disorders such as borderline, narcissistic, antisocial, and dependent can occur with HPD.

### *Differential diagnosis*

Differential diagnosis is the process of distinguishing one mental disorder from other similar disorders. For example, at times, it is difficult to distinguish between HPD and **borderline personality disorder**. **Suicide** attempts, identity diffusion, and numerous chaotic relationships occur less frequently, however, with people diagnosed with HPD. Another example of overlap can occur between people with HPD and **dependent personality disorder**. Patients with HPD and dependent personality disorder share high dependency needs, but only dependent personality disorder is linked to high levels of self-attributed dependency needs. Whereas patients with HPD tend to be active and seductive, individuals with dependent personality disorder tend to be subservient in their demeanor.

### *Psychological measures*

Self-report inventories and projective tests can also be used to help clinicians diagnose HPD. The Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory-2 (MMPI-2) and the Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory-III (MCMI-III) are self-report inventories with extensive empirical support. Results of intelligence examinations for individuals with HPD may indicate a lack of perseverance on arithmetic or on tasks that require concentration.

### *Treatments*

#### *Psychodynamic therapy*

HPD, like other personality disorders, may require several years of therapy and may affect individuals throughout their lives. Some professionals believe that psychoanalytic therapy is a treatment of choice for people with HPD because it helps patients become aware of their own feelings. Long-term psychodynamic therapy needs to target the underlying conflicts of individuals with HPD and to assist patients in decreasing their emotional reactivity. Therapists work with thematic material related to intimacy and recall. Individuals with HPD may have difficulty recalling because of their tendency to repress material.

#### *Cognitive-behavioral therapy*

Cognitive therapy is a treatment directed at reducing the dysfunctional thoughts of individuals with HPD. Such thoughts include themes about not being able to take care of oneself. Cognitive therapy for people with HPD focuses on a shift from global, suggestible thinking to a more methodical, systematic, and structured focus on problems. Cognitive-behavioral training in relaxation for individuals with HPD emphasizes challenging

## KEY TERMS

**Behavioral contracts**—A behavioral contract is a written agreement that defines the behaviors to be performed and the consequences of the specified behaviors.

**Biosocial**—A biosocial model in psychology asserts that social and biological factors contribute toward the development of personality.

**Catecholamine**—A group of neurotransmitters synthesized from the amino acid tyrosine and released by the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system in the brain, in response to acute stress. The catecholamines include dopamine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and epinephrine.

**Cognitive style**—A way in which individuals work with and perform cognitive tasks such as reasoning, learning, thinking, understanding, making decisions, and using memory.

**Differential diagnosis**—The process of distinguishing one disorder from other similar disorders.

**Disingenuous**—Insincere, deceitful, dishonest.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Etiology**—The cause or origin of a disease or disorder. The word is also used to refer to the study of the causes of disease.

**Histrionic**—Theatrical.

**Identity diffusion**—A character formation that is scattered or spread around rather than an identity that becomes solidified or consolidated.

**Noradrenergic**—Acts similarly to norepinephrine or noradrenaline.

**Oral phase**—The first of Freud's psychosexual stages of development in which satisfaction is focused on the mouth and lips. During this stage sucking and eating are the primary means of gratification.

**Personality disorder**—A personality disorder is a maladaptive pattern of behavior, affect, and/or cognitive style displayed in a broad range of settings. The pattern deviates from the accepted norms of the individual's culture and can occur over a lifetime.

**Response cost**—A behavioral technique that involves removing a stimulus from an individual's environment so that the response that directly precedes the removal is weakened. In a token economy system, response cost is a form of punishment involving loss of tokens due to inappropriate behavior, which consequently results in decreased ability to purchase backup reinforcers.

**Somatic**—Relating to the body or to the physical.

automatic thoughts about inferiority and not being able to handle one's life. **Cognitive-behavioral therapy** teaches individuals with HPD to identify automatic thoughts, to work on impulsive behavior, and to develop better problem-solving skills. Behavioral therapists employ **assertiveness training** to assist individuals with HPD to learn to cope using their own resources. Behavioral therapists use response cost to decrease the excessively dramatic behaviors of these individuals. Response cost is a behavioral technique that involves removing a stimulus from an individual's environment so that the response that directly precedes the removal is weakened. Behavioral therapy for HPD includes techniques such as **modeling** and behavioral rehearsal to teach patients about the effect of their theatrical behavior on others in a work setting.

### Group therapy

**Group therapy** is suggested to assist individuals with HPD to work on interpersonal relationships.

Psychodrama techniques or group role-playing can assist individuals with HPD to practice problems at work and to learn to decrease the display of excessively dramatic behaviors. Using role-playing, individuals with HPD can explore interpersonal relationships and outcomes to understand better the process associated with different scenarios. Group therapists need to monitor the group because individuals with HPD tend to take over and dominate others.

### Family therapy

To teach assertion rather than avoidance of conflict, family therapists need to direct individuals with HPD to speak directly to other family members. **Family therapy** can support family members to meet their own needs without supporting the histrionic behavior of the individual with HPD who uses dramatic crises to keep the family closely connected. Family therapists employ behavioral contracts to support assertive behaviors rather than temper tantrums.

## Medications

Pharmacotherapy is not a treatment of choice for individuals with HPD unless HPD occurs with another disorder. For example, if HPD occurs with **depression, antidepressants** may be prescribed. Medication needs to be monitored for **abuse**.

## Alternative therapies

**Meditation** has been used to assist extroverted patients with HPD to relax and to focus on their own inner feelings. Some therapists employ hypnosis to assist individuals with HPD to relax when they experience a fast heart rate or palpitations during an expression of excessively dramatic, emotional, and excitable behavior.

## Prognosis

The personality characteristics of individuals with HPD are long-lasting. Individuals with HPD use medical services frequently, but they usually do not stay in psychotherapeutic treatment long enough to make changes. They tend to set vague goals and to move toward something more exciting. Treatment for HPD can take a minimum of one to three years and tends to take longer than treatment for disorders that are not personality disorders, such as anxiety or mood disorders. Suicidal tendencies are common in people with HPD and should always be taken seriously.

As individuals with HPD age, they display fewer symptoms. Some research suggests that the difference between older and younger individuals may be attributed to the fact that older individuals have less energy.

Research indicates that a relationship exists between poor treatment outcomes and premature termination from treatment for individuals with Cluster B personality disorders. Some researchers suggest that studies that link HPD to continuation in treatment need to consider the connection between overestimates of intimacy and premature termination from therapy.

## Prevention

Early diagnosis can assist patients and family members to recognize the pervasive pattern of reactive emotion among individuals with HPD. Educating people, particularly mental health professionals, about the enduring character traits of individuals with HPD may prevent some cases of mild histrionic behavior from developing into full-blown cases of maladaptive HPD. Further research in prevention needs to investigate the relationship between variables

such as age, gender, culture, and ethnicity in people with HPD.

*See also Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory.*

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Bockian, Neil, PhD, and Arthur E. Jongsma, Jr., PhD. *The Personality Disorders Treatment Planner*. New York: Wiley, 2001.  
 Bornstein, Robert F. "Dependent and Histrionic Personality Disorders." *Oxford Textbook of Psychopathology*. Theodore Millon, PhD, Paul H. Blaney, and Roger D. Davis, eds. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999.  
 Widiger, Thomas A., PhD, and Robert F. Bornstein, PhD. "Histrionic, Narcissistic, and Dependent Personality Disorders." *Comprehensive Handbook of Psychopathology*. Patricia B. Sutker and Henry E. Adams, eds. 3rd ed. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Bornstein, Robert F. "Histrionic Personality Disorder, Physical Attractiveness, and Social Adjustment." *Journal of Psychopathology and Behavioral Assessment* 21.1 (1999): 79–94.  
 Bornstein, Robert F. "Implicit and Self-Attributed Dependency Needs in Dependent and Histrionic Personality Disorders." *Journal of Personality Assessment* 71.1 (1998): 14.  
 Hilsenroth, Mark J., and others. "The Effects of DSM-IV Cluster B Personality Disorder Symptoms on the Termination and Continuation of Psychotherapy." *Psychotherapy* 35.2 (Summer 1998): 163–76.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.  
 American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org>>.

Judy Koenigsberg, PhD  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

HMO see **Managed care**

## Homelessness

### Definition

In the United States, definitions of homelessness help determine who is able to receive shelter and assistance from certain health and social service providers.

The Stewart McKinney Homeless Assistance Act of 1987 defines a homeless person as any individual who lacks housing, including an individual whose primary residence during the night is a supervised public or private facility that provides temporary living accommodations or an individual who is a resident in transitional housing. More specifically, this means an individual who lacks fixed, regular, and adequate nighttime residence, and an individual who has a primary nighttime residence that is either (i) a supervised temporary living shelter (including transitional housing for the mentally ill), (ii) an institution that provides temporary residence for individuals intended to be institutionalized, or (iii) a place not designed for or ordinarily used as a regular sleeping accommodation for human beings.

### Description

Homelessness is an acute version of residential instability, which can be compared or contrasted with definitions of poverty. Thus the term "homeless" may also be extended to include people who have nowhere to go and are at imminent risk of losing housing through eviction or institutional discharge. Some definitions of homelessness further specify the duration of time without regular and adequate residence, or the types of temporary living shelter or institutions that are not fixed residences. People who live without alternatives in overcrowded or unhealthy housing conditions may be at risk of homelessness. Worldwide, national and cultural groups may have variable and often different definitions of homelessness, different terms for the condition of being without housing, and different definitions of adequate housing. For all of these reasons related both to methods of counting and varying definitions, estimating the size of the homeless population is extremely difficult.

The history of homelessness is intertwined with the history of poverty in the United States. Poverty has always been problematic for humanitarian reasons and because it conflicts with the ideal of prosperity for all. Social welfare, based on individualistic ideas of deserving and undeserving poor, has improved society but not eliminated persistent poverty or homelessness. The 1960s war on poverty was a widely shared value, but in the 1980s concern about homelessness was confounded by moral evaluations of individual behaviors. While many in the United States have been poor or come from poor families, fewer have experienced homelessness. Therefore, the collective understanding of homelessness in the United States is limited in ways that the understanding of poverty is not.

Homeless adults are poor and have high rates of unmet need for health care. This is in part because poverty is associated with higher risk and rates of illness, particularly mental illnesses including **substance abuse**. Homeless people experience disproportionate rates and symptoms of mental health disorders, including substance abuse disorders and dual diagnoses. For these reasons, large portions of federally funded homeless services are medical services, and homeless people are often viewed according to their present or past medical classifications.

Studies researching the incidence, distribution, and control of a disease in a population (known as epidemiological studies) find that between one-third and one-half of homeless people have mental health disorders and approximately two-thirds have either a mental health or substance use disorder. People with severe mental illness are likewise more likely to become homeless, particularly when the disorder is co-morbid (co-occurs) with substance abuse. For this reason, changes in rates of homelessness are often associated with changes in mental health care and **hospitalization** policies.

Mental illnesses compound the vulnerability and needs of homeless adults, as reported by the Surgeon General. Psychiatric disorders exacerbate many types of problems, including housing instability, morbidity (disease), and mortality (death). Psychiatric disorders and lack of stable living conditions complicate general health care for homeless adults.

### Demographics

Methods for estimating the size of the homeless population are evolving and sometimes contested, and are complicated by varying definitions of homelessness. The U.S. Census, while attempting to identify the number of people who are homeless and who use particular types of homeless services, has complex and service-based definitions of homelessness. It also has recognized its limited abilities to define and enumerate the homeless (it is after all a national household survey). In 2000, the Census Bureau defined the Emergency and Transitional Shelter (E&TS) population by surveying people who use a sample of homeless services. They counted homeless people in emergency shelters for adults, runaway youth shelters, shelters for abused women and their children, soup kitchens, and certain outdoor locations. Technically, however, homeless people may reside in "E&TS," in foster care, in jails and prisons, in **group homes**, in worker dorms, non-sheltered in the outdoors, doubled up with families or friends, or temporarily in Census-recognized households. According to the National Coalition for the Homeless, while counting the number of people who

use services such as shelters and soup kitchens can yield important information about services, applying these numbers toward estimating numbers of homeless people can result in underestimates of homelessness.

Further complicating the issue of counting homeless people is the fact that, in many cases, homelessness is a temporary condition. Because of this fact, some researchers advocate a method of counting all the people who are homeless in a given week or, alternatively, over a given period of time. However, the numbers of people who find housing and the number of people who newly find themselves homeless fluctuates over time periods. In contrast, people with mental illness or substance abuse problems tend to be chronically without homes—it is difficult for many of these people to find permanent housing. Thus, while these two time-oriented methods of counting homeless can be useful, they too have statistical problems—they can overestimate the numbers of homeless people.

Census estimates of the size and composition of the homeless population are difficult to create, for reasons described above. The Emergency and Transitional Shelter (ET&S) Population count in the United States in 2000 was 170,706. However, this figure does not include homeless adults not using ET&S services, sampling error, or some groups of homeless people not enumerated in the ET&S count. The ET&S population in 2000 was 61% male and 74% adult. Among the 26% who were youth, 51% were male. For adults, the population was 65% male, 41% were white, 40% were African American, 20% were Latino of any race, 2% were Asian, 2% were Native American, and 9% were one other race alone.

Another estimate of homelessness is a 2007 report by the National Alliance to End Homelessness, which estimated that 744,313 people were homeless in 2005. Forty-four percent of those people were unsheltered, and 56% were sheltered. Forty-one percent of the homeless were families.

The large variation between these estimates illustrates that, as the National Coalition for the Homeless states, “By its very nature, homelessness is impossible to measure with 100% accuracy.”

## Causes and consequences

### Causes

People with mental illness are at higher risk for becoming homeless due to challenges associated with **deinstitutionalization** and transition planning, and both poverty and disability associated with mental illness.

Social research has studied the causes and consequences of homelessness, surveying homeless people, examining entrances into homelessness, exits from homelessness, and effects of homelessness on health and well-being. Promising explanations for increasing rates of homelessness in the 1980s have included mental disability and illness, lack of social support through jobs and marriage, increased use of drugs and alcohol, and the erosion of low-income housing in urban areas. These explanations mirror the processes of deinstitutionalization in mental health policy, unemployment, **addiction** and abuse, and urban decay. In other words, a direct correlation can be demonstrated between policies and trends and the rates of homelessness. As deinstitutionalization occurred, for example, the number of mentally ill people without homes increased.

### Consequences

Consequences of homelessness include the exacerbation of problems that may have caused homelessness. Homeless people have reduced access to housing, jobs, health care, and basic needs like food and clothing. Isolation and lack of social support are well-documented aspects of homelessness, particularly for homeless people living with mental health or substance abuse disorders. Homeless women and men have been found to have significantly less family support than never-homeless women and men. Disaffiliation from family often limits opportunities for recovery and prevention.

## Homeless service agencies

Services for homeless people can be divided into those providing medical care, those providing housing, and those providing other basic needs. Publicly funded agencies provide the majority of medical care, especially primary and mental health care. Public and private organizations share the responsibilities of providing shelter and housing services, through both large federal programs and smaller need and faith-based programs. Private agencies deliver most other daily needs to homeless people, through food pantries, soup kitchens, and other charities. Limited data exists on vocational services for homeless adults.

Title VI of the McKinney Homeless Assistance Act of 1987 created the Health Care for the Homeless (HCH) program, authorizing federal funds for primary and mental health care to homeless people. Title VI authorizes several programs to provide a HCH program, a **Community Mental Health** Services block grant program, and two demonstration programs providing mental health and alcohol and drug abuse treatment services to homeless people. HCH

funds support providers who offer mental health, **case management**, and health education services, as well as substance abuse treatment. In 1987, 109 grants were made for homeless health services with \$46 million. In 1992, the Act was amended to include homeless and at-risk children, creating a medical home and source of health insurance for young people. In 2005, Congress appropriated \$145 million for health care for the homeless grants. The HCH program is the largest single effort to address the medical needs of the homeless. Each year, the HCH Program serves almost 600,000 clients in the United States. To be a HCH service agency requires cultural and linguistic competencies, compassionate community outreach, and providers who reflect the community they serve.

The federal Center for Mental Health Services oversees Projects for Assistance in Transition from Homelessness (PATH) grant program. PATH provides state funds in support services to individuals who are homeless or at risk of becoming homeless and have serious mental illnesses. These funds amounted to more than \$52 million allocated to 463 providers in 2005. States contract with local agencies and nonprofit organizations to provide an array of services, including outreach, support services, a limited set of housing services, and mental health treatment.

There are several obstacles or barriers in providing health care to homeless people. First, homeless or persistently poor people may be concerned about their work and sustenance, devaluing their own medical needs. Alienation and **depression** among the homeless can also be an obstacle to providing care. There can be mutual communication problems between providers and patients. Providers may lack cultural understanding that eases work with homeless clients. Finally, lack of preventive maintenance of medical care by the homeless may result in expensive and extensive needs for care, including hospital care, which may stress the capacities of certain service providers.

### Homelessness in context

Homelessness is both a form of poverty and an acute condition of residential instability. Homelessness is compounded by behavioral problems, mental health policy changes, disparities in health and health care, racial inequalities, fluctuations in affordable housing, and lack of social support. Overly individualistic views and explanations of homelessness do not reflect its multiple causes and effects. Like all groups, homeless people are diverse, experiencing and exiting homelessness for a myriad of reasons. Services for homeless adults likewise reflect a variety of needs and experiences. Nonetheless, homelessness remains

### KEY TERMS

**Deinstitutionalization**—The process of moving people out of mental hospitals into treatment programs or halfway houses in local communities. With this movement, the responsibility for care shifted from large (often governmental) agencies to families and community organizations.

a national and international concern, particularly in urban areas, for the twenty-first century.

### How to help the homeless mentally ill

There are many ways that Americans can support community and federal efforts to help homeless people living with mental illness. Some strategies include:

- support collective public and private efforts to build homes and provide health care for people with unmet medical needs.
- become educated about the challenges faced by homeless and mentally ill people in American society.
- stop the practice of equating people in poverty and with illness with their medical conditions, instead of recognizing them as human beings. Succeeding in this step could open doors for recovery of health and housing without demeaning the humanity of people in need.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Burt, M., L. Aron, and others. *Homelessness: Programs and the People They Serve*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1999.

Daly, Gerald. *Homeless*. New York: Routledge, 2005.  
Hombs, Mary E. *American Homelessness*. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO, 2001.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place 3, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington VA, 22201-3042. Telephone: (703) 524-7600 or (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Coalition for the Homeless. 2201 P Street, NW, Washington, DC 20037. Telephone: (202) 462-4822. <<http://www.nationalhomeless.org>>.

National Coalition for Homeless Veterans. 333 1/2 Pennsylvania Ave., SE, Washington, DC 20003-1148. Telephone: (800) 838-4357. <<http://www.nchv.org>>.

National Health Care for the Homeless Council. P.O.Box 60427, Nashville, TN 37206-0427. Telephone: (615) 226-2292. <<http://www.nhchc.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Rm. 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). 1 Choke Cherry Road, Rockville MD 20857. <<http://www.samhsa.gov>>.

U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development. 451 7th Street S.W., Washington, DC 20410. Telephone: (202) 708-1112. <<http://www.hud.gov>>.

Michael Polgar, PhD  
Stephanie N. Watson

## Hospitalization

### Definition

Hospitalization or inpatient care is the most restrictive form of treatment for a psychiatric disorder, addictive disorder, or for someone with more than one **diagnosis**. Whether treatment is voluntary or involuntary, the patient relinquishes the freedom to move about and, once admitted, becomes subject to the rules and schedule of a treatment environment. Hospitalization is necessary in cases where individuals are in imminent danger of harming themselves or others or have made a **suicide** attempt. Crisis stabilization, **behavior modification**, supervised **substance abuse-detoxification**, and medication management are compelling reasons to consider hospitalization. Ideally, hospitalization is at one end of a comprehensive continuum of services for people needing treatment for behavioral problems. It is generally viewed as a last resort after other less restrictive forms of treatment have failed.

### Purpose

For a person to be admitted to a hospital, a medical doctor (in the case of mental health, most often a **psychiatrist**) must “admit” the patient or approve the patient’s request to be admitted. Although hospitalization may be considered a drastic treatment **intervention**, it can be essential in keeping people safe, helping monitor and adjust medications, treating medication side effects, supervising alcohol and/or drug detoxification, and stabilizing a patient after an acute psychiatric episode.

Before an individual is hospitalized, an evaluation and a diagnosis must be made by a medical professional. This is required in order for the patient to receive

maximum insurance coverage and to receive the most appropriate treatment.

### Precautions

In the public mental health system, less restrictive forms of treatment other than hospitalization are strongly recommended first. In the late 1960s, the patients’ rights movement led to reforms governing **involuntary hospitalization**. Today the criteria for admission, particularly in the case of involuntary hospitalization, are extremely narrow, reflecting a strong reluctance in the United States to infringe on any person’s liberty. The unintended consequences of this public policy are often observed in the numbers of people with mental illnesses who are homeless. So long as they are not posing a danger to themselves or others, they are likely to remain outside the traditional treatment system.

Hospitalization has long been negatively characterized in the media, contributing to the **stigma** of seeking inpatient treatment, even when it is voluntary. Scenes from the 1975 movie *One Flew Over the Cuckoo’s Nest* have defined the worst in psychiatric hospital treatment. Such conditions cannot exist long in today’s more sophisticated mental health, consumer-focused environment. A reputable facility will be accredited by the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organizations, or by a similar governing body, which usually assures a minimum level of service. Most hospitals now have a Patient Advocate, usually an attorney who is on-site daily, or accessible by phone, and whose job is to investigate complaints and protect patients’ rights. In addition, a federal law mandates that every state have a Protection and Advocacy Agency to handle complaints of abuse in hospitals. Although the effectiveness of these agencies varies from state to state, they can be helpful in explaining the rights of hospitalized patients. Some states have also implemented ombudsman programs to address patient complaints and to help people negotiate the mental health system.

Treatment facilities may be locked or unlocked. A locked unit will have tighter security to protect patient privacy and to keep patients from running away. In most cases when patients are voluntarily admitted, they may leave treatment at any time, invoking the right to do so against medical advice.

In the past, patients were often not part of their own treatment planning process. The rise of the patients’ rights movement has led to more active patient involvement in all phases of treatment. They have the right to refuse certain forms of treatment.

Most hospitals now have a clearly posted Patient's Bill of Rights and may also have a patient's council or other body to represent their interests and recommend changes to the inpatient environment.

Confidentiality is paramount in a hospital setting, so much so that hospital staff seldom acknowledge that a specific patient has been admitted. **Group therapy** rules generally stress the importance of keeping members and the content of group sessions confidential.

## Description

Most hospital rooms are similar to basic hotel rooms and are generally large enough for two people. In the case of public hospitals, the rooms may be larger and contain more beds. Men and women are in separate wings or on separate floors. If a treatment program is housed in a medical hospital, it may cover one or more floors.

Although there is wide variation in the quality of the physical surroundings and the resources available, most inpatient facilities are highly regimented. Patients get up, go to bed, eat, and take medication (if indicated) on a regular schedule. Days are filled with scheduled activities such as individual, family, or group therapy, expressive and occupational therapies, psychoeducation, recreation, and, in the case of children or adolescents, several hours of school.

Most hospital inpatient programs are based on a therapeutic milieu, which means that all the people involved in the patient's care and all the activities are designed to have a therapeutic function for the patient. For example, direct care workers are not simply aides; they are supportive of the patient and provide valuable feedback to the physician, **psychologist**, and social worker about the patient's conduct and progress.

## Hospitalization statistics

For patients who enter the hospital because of substance abuse in the United States, a recent survey found that 9% of facilities offered inpatient care, and of these, almost half offered only detoxification facilities, without rehabilitation. About 74% offered programs for patients who had comorbidities. The majority of people who enter inpatient treatment do so in state and county hospitals. About 65 of every 100,000 people in the United States received treatment in an inpatient facility between 1969 and 2000.

## Preparation

Even voluntary hospitalization can be overwhelming and anxiety-provoking. As a result, hospital

staff will closely observe patients when they are first admitted. If the patients were admitted because of a suicide attempt or a violent episode, a "suicide watch" may be set up with more intensive staffing or in a room that can be monitored easily by nursing staff.

As patients adjust to the hospital routine, more privileges and freedom will be made available. For example, patients may earn privileges or rewards like outings with staff, a weekend pass to go home for a visit, or some other positive consequence if they follow hospital rules and engage in therapeutic activities.

An interdisciplinary treatment team made up of a psychiatrist, psychologist, social worker, nurse, direct care worker (sometimes called a psychiatric technician), and an expressive therapist usually oversees the care of patients while they are in the hospital. Treatment goals are developed by the team with patient input, and with discharge as a major objective.

## Aftercare

Optimally, inpatient treatment prepares patients to deal with the realities of life outside the hospital. Emphasis is placed on how patients will behave differently in order to remain healthy and avoid future hospitalizations. During the discharge phase, patients may be scheduled for outpatient therapy and informed about various medications. Often times, patients experience **anxiety** at the thought of leaving the hospital, and this apprehension is addressed in therapy sessions as discharge nears.

## Normal results

In the past, a patient might be admitted to a hospital for a minimum of 30 days. Today's rising health care costs and the prevalence of **managed care** have led to dramatically reduced hospital stays. An optimal outcome under these conditions is medication adjustment, monitoring, and the beginning of stabilization. Studies are under way to determine if shortened stays ultimately lead to more frequent hospitalizations later on.

## Resources

### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. Web site: <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Association of Protection and Advocacy Systems. 900 2nd Street NE, Washington, DC 20001. Web site: <<http://www.napas.org>>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Web site: <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

- National Mental Health Consumers' Self-Help Clearinghouse. 1211 Chestnut Street, Suite 1207, Philadelphia, PA 19107. Web site <<http://www.mhselfhelp.org>>.
- OTHER**
- Centers for Disease Control. "NCHS Data Definitions: Mental Health Organizations." Available online at: <<http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/datawh/nchsdefs/mho.htm>>.
- Department of Health and Human Services. Drug and Alcohol Services and Information. "The DASIS Report: Facilities Offering Hospital Inpatient Care." Available online at: <<http://www.oas.samhsa.gov/2k3/hospitalTX/hospitalTX.htm>>.
- O'Dea, Richard. "Moving from Coercion to Collaboration in Mental Health Services: State Hospital Perspective." U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.
- National Mental Health Information Center. Available online at: <<http://mentalhealth.samhsa.gov/publications/allpubs/sma04-3869/StateH.asp>>.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. "National Mental Health Statistics: 24-hour hospital and residential treatment residents." National Mental Health Information Center. Available online at: <<http://mentalhealth.samhsa.gov/publications/allpubs/SMA04-3938/chp18table5.asp>>.

Judy Leaver, MA  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## House-tree-person test

### Definition

The house-tree-person test (HTP) is a projective personality test, a type of exam in which the test taker responds to or provides ambiguous, abstract, or unstructured stimuli (often in the form of pictures or drawings). In the HTP, the test taker is asked to draw houses, trees, and persons, and these drawings provide a measure of self-perceptions and attitudes. As with other projective tests, it has flexible and subjective administration and interpretation.

### Purpose

The primary purpose of the HTP is to measure aspects of a person's personality through interpretation of drawings and responses to questions. It is also sometimes used as part of an assessment of **brain** damage or overall neurological functioning.

The HTP was developed in 1948 by Buck, and later updated in 1969 by Buck and Hammer. Tests

requiring human **figure drawings** were already being utilized as projective personality tests. Buck believed that drawings of houses and trees could also provide relevant information about the functioning of an individual's personality.

### Precautions

Because it is mostly subjective, scoring and interpreting the HTP is difficult. Anyone administering the HTP must be properly trained. The test publishers provide a very detailed 350-page administration and scoring manual.

### Description

The HTP can be given to anyone over the age of three. Because it requires test takers to draw pictures, it is often used with children and adolescents. It is also often used with individuals suspected of having brain damage or other neurological impairment. The test takes an average of 150 minutes to complete; it may take less time with normally functioning adults and much more time with neurologically impaired individuals.

During the first phase of the test, test takers are asked to use a crayon to draw pictures, respectively, of a house, a tree, and a person. Each drawing is done on a separate piece of paper and the test taker is asked to draw as accurately as possible. Upon completion of the drawings, they are asked questions about the drawings. There are a total of 60 questions created by Buck that examiners can ask. Examiners can also create their own questions or ask unscripted follow-up questions. For example, with reference to the house, Buck wrote questions such as, "Is it a happy house?" and "What is the house made of?" Regarding the tree, questions include, "About how old is that tree?" and "Is the tree alive?" Concerning the person, questions include, "Is that person happy?" and "How does that person feel?"

During the second phase of the test, test takers are asked to draw the same pictures with a pencil. The questions that follow this phase are similar to the ones in the first phase. Some examiners give only one of the two phases, choosing either a crayon, a pencil, or some other writing instrument.

One variation of test administration involves asking the individual to draw two separate persons, one of each sex. Another variation is to have test takers put all the drawings on one page.

### Results

The HTP is scored in both an objective quantitative manner and a subjective qualitative manner. The

## KEY TERMS

**Projective test**—A psychological test in which the test taker responds to or provides ambiguous, abstract, or unstructured stimuli, often in the form of pictures or drawings.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

quantitative scoring scheme involves analyzing the details of drawings to arrive at a general assessment of intelligence, using a scoring method devised by the test creators. Research has shown this assessment of intelligence correlates highly with other **intelligence tests** such as the **Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale** (WAIS).

The primary use of the HTP, however, is related to the qualitative scoring scheme in which the test administrator subjectively analyzes the drawings and the responses to questions in a way that assesses the test taker's personality. For example, a very small house might indicate rejection of one's home life. A tree that has a slender trunk but has large expansive branches might indicate a need for satisfaction. A drawing of a person that has a lot of detail in the face might indicate a need to present oneself in an acceptable social light.

Other methods of interpretation focus on the function of various parts in each of the drawings. In the house drawing, the roof might represent one's intellectual side, the walls might represent the test taker's degree of ego strength, and the doors and windows might represent the individual's relation to the outside world. In the tree drawing, the branches might indicate the test taker's relation to the outside world and the trunk might indicate inner strength.

As with other subjectively scored personality tests, there is little support for its reliability and validity. However, there is some evidence that the HTP can differentiate people with specific types of brain damage. More specifically, it has been shown to be effective when looking at the brain damage present in schizophrenic patients.

*See also* Figure drawings; Rorschach technique.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Groth-Marnat, Gary. *Handbook of Psychological Assessment*. 3rd edition. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.

Kline, Paul. *The Handbook of Psychological Testing*. New York: Routledge, 1999.  
Reynolds, Cecil R. *Comprehensive Clinical Psychology Volume 4: Assessment*. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1998.

Ali Fahmy, PhD

Hypericum see **St. John's wort**

## Hypersomnia

### Definition

Hypersomnia refers to a set of related disorders that involve excessive daytime sleepiness.

### Description

There are two main categories of hypersomnia: primary hypersomnia (sometimes called idiopathic hypersomnia) and recurrent hypersomnia (sometimes called recurrent primary hypersomnia). Both are characterized by the same signs and symptoms and differ only in the frequency and regularity with which the symptoms occur.

Primary hypersomnia is characterized by excessive daytime sleepiness over a long period of time. The symptoms are present all, or nearly all, of the time. Recurring hypersomnia involves periods of excessive daytime sleepiness that can last from one to many days and recur over the course of a year or more. The main difference between this and primary hypersomnia is that persons experiencing recurring hypersomnia will have prolonged periods where they do not exhibit any signs of hypersomnia, whereas persons experiencing primary hypersomnia are affected by it nearly all the time. One of the best documented forms of recurrent hypersomnia is **Kleine-Levin syndrome**, although there are other forms as well.

There are many different causes for daytime sleepiness that are not considered hypersomnia, and there are many diseases and disorders in which excessive daytime sleepiness is a primary or secondary symptom. Feelings of daytime sleepiness are often associated with the use of common substances such as caffeine, alcohol, and many medications. Other common factors that can lead to excessive daytime sleepiness that is not considered hypersomnia include shift work and **insomnia**. Shift work can disrupt the body's natural sleep rhythms. Insomnia can cause excessive daytime sleepiness because of lack of nighttime sleep and is a separate disorder.

## Causes and symptoms

People experiencing hypersomnia do not get abnormal amounts of nighttime sleep. However, they often have problems waking up in the morning and staying awake during the day. People with hypersomnia nap frequently and do not feel refreshed upon waking from the naps. Hypersomnia is sometimes misdiagnosed as **narcolepsy**. In many ways the two are similar. One significant difference is that people with narcolepsy experience a sudden onset of sleepiness, while people with hypersomnia experience increasing sleepiness over time. Also, people with narcolepsy find daytime sleep refreshing, while people with hypersomnia do not.

People with Kleine-Levin syndrome have symptoms that differ from the symptoms of other forms of hypersomnia. These people may sleep up to 20 or more hours a day in episodes that last for several weeks. In addition, they are often irritable, sometimes to the point of violence. They can be sexually uninhibited (hypersexual) and make indiscriminate sexual advances. There may be some confusion and memory deficits, as well. People with Kleine-Levin syndrome often eat uncontrollably and rapidly gain weight, unlike people with other forms of hypersomnia. This form of recurrent hypersomnia is very rare, with only 27 cases described in the scientific literature between 1962 and 2004. The disorder, which most often starts in adolescence, generally lessens and resolves as a person ages.

The causes of hypersomnia remain unclear. There is some speculation that in many cases it can be attributed to problems involving the hypothalamus, but evidence supporting this idea is sparse. In the case of Kleine-Levin, there is some suggestion that onset of the disorder may in some cases be linked to certain viral illnesses.

## Demographics

Hypersomnia is an uncommon disorder. In general, no more than 5% of adults complain of excessive sleepiness during the daytime. That does not mean all those who complain of excessive sleepiness have hypersomnia. There are many other possible causes of daytime sleepiness. Of all the people who visit sleep clinics because they feel they are too sleepy during the day, only about 5–10% are diagnosed with primary hypersomnia. Kleine-Levin syndrome is present in about four times more males than females, but it is a very rare syndrome.

Hypersomnia generally appears when the patient is between 15 and 30 years old. It does not begin

## KEY TERMS

**Hypothalamus**—A part of the forebrain that controls heartbeat, body temperature, thirst, hunger, blood pressure, blood-sugar levels, and other functions.

**Narcolepsy**—A disorder characterized by frequent and uncontrollable attacks of deep sleep.

suddenly but becomes apparent slowly, sometimes over years.

## Diagnosis

Hypersomnia is characterized by excessive daytime sleepiness, and daytime naps that do not result in a more refreshed or alert feeling. Hypersomnia does not include lack of nighttime sleep. People experiencing problems with nighttime sleep may have insomnia, a separate sleep disorder. In people with insomnia, excessive daytime sleepiness may be a side effect.

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM-IV-TR*), which presents the guidelines used by the American Psychiatric Association for **diagnosis** of disorders, states that hypersomnia symptoms must be present for at least a month, and must interfere with a person's normal activities. Also, the symptoms cannot be attributed to failure to get enough sleep at night or to another sleep disorder. The symptoms cannot be caused by another significant psychological disorder, nor can they be a side effect of a medicinal or illicit drug or a side effect of a general medical condition. For a diagnosis of recurrent hypersomnia, the symptoms must occur for at least three days at a time, and the symptoms have to be present for at least two years.

## Treatments

There have been some attempts to use drugs for treating hypersomnia. No substantial body of evidence supports the effectiveness of these treatments. Stimulants are not generally recommended to treat hypersomnia because they treat the symptoms but do not address the cause. Some research suggests that treatments targeting the hypothalamus may be effective therapy for hypersomnia.

## Prognosis

Kleine-Levin syndrome has been reported to occasionally resolve by itself around middle age. Except for

that syndrome, hypersomnia is considered both a life-long disorder and one that can be significantly disabling. There is no body of evidence that concludes there is a way to successfully treat the majority of hypersomnia cases.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Aldrich, Michael S. *Sleep Medicines*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Chokroverty, Susan, ed. *Sleep Disorders Medicine: Basic Science, Technical Considerations, and Clinical Aspects*, 2nd ed. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1999.
- Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, 7th ed., Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.
- Thorpy, Michael J., ed. *Handbook of Sleep Disorders*. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1990.

### PERIODICALS

- Arnulf, I., J.M. Zeitzer, J. File, N. Farber, and E. Mignot. "Kleine-Levin Syndrome: A Systematic Review of 186 Cases in the Literature." *Brain* 128 (2006): 2763–76.
- Boris, Neil W., Owen R. Hagina, and Gregory P. Steiner. "Case Study: Hypersomnolence and Precocious Puberty in a Child with Pica and Chronic Lead Intoxication." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 35.8 (Aug. 1996): 1050–55.
- Mahowald, Mark W., and Carlos H. Schenck. "Insights from Studying Human Sleep Disorders." *Nature* 43 (2005): 1279–85.
- National Center on Sleep Disorders Research Working Group, Bethesda, Maryland. "Recognizing Problem Sleepiness in Your People." *American Family Physician* (Feb. 15, 1999): 937–38.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Sleep Medicine. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901. Telephone: (507) 287-6006. Web site: <[www.asda.org](http://www.asda.org)>.
- National Organization for Rare Disorders (NORD). P.O. Box 1968/55 Kenosia Ave., Danbury, CT, 06813-1968. Telephone: (203) 744-0100. Web site: <<http://www.rarediseases.org>>

### OTHER

- NINDS Hypersomnia Information Page. (2007) Available online at: <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/hypersomnia/hypersomnia.htm>>.
- NINDS Kleine-Levin Syndrome Information Page. Available online at: <[http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/kleine\\_levin/kleine\\_levin.htm](http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/kleine_levin/kleine_levin.htm)>.

Tish Davidson, AM  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Hypnotherapy

### Definition

Hypnotherapy is the use of hypnosis as part of psychological or psychiatric treatment. Hypnotherapy may be used in short-term **psychotherapy** to help alleviate symptoms or as part of a long-term plan of psychotherapeutic **intervention** for personality change. Hypnotherapy may use any one or a combination of techniques administered by a trained professional who induces a hypnotic state in the patient and then presents therapeutic suggestions.

### Purpose

Hypnosis, when used in conjunction with proven therapeutic procedures, can be a highly effective form of treatment for many mental, psychosomatic, and physical disorders. For example, through the use of regressive techniques, an adult patient may mentally travel back to a point in youth that was particularly troublesome, allowing the healing of old emotional wounds. Another patient can be led to understand that emotional pain has been converted to physical pain, and that the pain can be eliminated once the source has been addressed. Hypnotherapy can also be used to help persons with **chronic pain** to control the pain without use of medications. There are a number of techniques for correcting dysfunctional behaviors such as self-destructive habits, **anxiety disorders**, and even managing side effects of various medical treatments and procedures.

Hypnotherapy has been used to stop self-destructive and addictive habits like smoking. It has also been used to curb overeaters' urge to eat, to stem the disruptive actions of tics, cure **insomnia**, stop bed-wetting, and minimize **anxiety**. Excessive **stress** can be generated from any number of sources and can be the spring-board for anxiety. Some of the more prominent sources of anxiety and stress for which people seek hypnotherapy are: public speaking, test taking, and job stress. Hypnotherapy also works well for other anxiety disorders such as phobias and has proven to be an effective treatment for mild to moderate **depression**. In one study, hypnotherapy was used in conjunction with traditional cognitive therapy to assist persons who had severe aversion to needles. The treatment was necessary, because it was essential that each participant receive periodic medical injections. However, the participants would have become noncompliant without the adjunct intervention of hypnotherapy. In another case, involving care for terminally ill cancer patients, it was concluded that hypnotherapy was more effective at enhancing

## MILTON ERICKSON (1901–1980)

Erickson rose to prominence during the 1940's and 1950's as a pioneer in the medical, dental, and psychotherapeutic uses of hypnosis. He was considered the world's leading authority on the subject of hypnotherapy and was instrumental in establishing worldwide recognition and acceptance of hypnosis as a valid and effective therapeutic technique. He was frequently consulted by doctors and scientists, including anthropologist Margaret Mead, and during the 1950's he collaborated with author Aldous Huxley on research on hypnosis and other states of consciousness.

Erickson practiced psychiatry in Massachusetts and Michigan before moving to Arizona in the late 1940's. He was confined to a wheelchair following a bout with polio but continued to conduct teaching seminars from his Phoenix home. Erickson's teaching style was similar to his psychotherapeutic method—distraction by verbal communication and other forms of indirection disrupted the conscious set, providing access to the subject's unconscious mind. His orientation was eclectic, drawing on the widest range of schools of personality theory for the most useful elements of each. Erickson's books on the subject of hypnotherapy are geared toward health professionals and are, according to a *Psychology Today* reviewer, "written in a style...as original and personal as [Erickson's] technique."

quality of life and relieving anxiety and depressive symptoms, when compared to others who received traditional care.

### Precautions

Confusion can occur when one seeks a hypnotherapist as a result of the various titles, certifications, and licenses in the field. Many states do not regulate the title "hypnotist" or "hypnotherapist," so care must be exercised when selecting someone to see. As a rule, it is best to consult a professional in the field of mental health or medicine, although alternative sources for hypnosis are available. Care must also be taken by the therapist to ensure adequate training and sufficient experience for rendering this specialized service. The therapist must be well-grounded in a psychotherapeutic approach before undertaking the use of hypnotherapy. Professionals should not attempt hypnotherapy with any disorder for which they would not use traditional therapeutic approaches. The patient seeking hypnotherapy is reminded that unskilled or amateur hypnotists can cause harm and should not be consulted for the purpose of implementing positive

change in an individual's life. The detrimental effects of being subjected to amateur or inadequately trained persons can be severe and long lasting.

### Description

In order to understand hypnotherapy, it is necessary to understand the underlying concepts of hypnosis. A brief review of the history of hypnosis, description of hypnosis, and modern techniques follows.

### *History of hypnosis*

It appears that hypnosis, under other names, has been used since the beginning of time. In fact, it has been insinuated that the earliest description of hypnosis may be portrayed in the Old Testament and in the Talmud. There is also evidence of hypnosis in ancient Egypt, some 3,000 years ago. However, the man credited with the development of what has become modern hypnosis is Friedrich Anton Mesmer. An Austrian physician, Friedrich Anton Mesmer one day watched a magician on a street in Paris demonstrate that he could have spectators do his bidding by touching them with magnets. Fascinated by the demonstration, Mesmer believed the magnets had power of their own and from this belief developed his theory of "animal magnetism." He also believed that good health depended on having correct magnetic flow and that the direction of one's magnetic flow could easily be reversed. He further believed that he could direct this magnetic flow into inanimate objects, which could then be used for the good health of others. The term "mesmerism" came to be applied to his mystical workings. He experienced much success in helping the people of Paris as well as visitors who came from other countries, upon hearing of his powers. Later he was completely discredited by a special commission of the French Academy appointed by the king, resulting in Mesmer's departure from France. Two of the more famous members of the French Academy at the time were chairman of the commission Benjamin Franklin, American ambassador to France, and Dr. Guillotine, the inventor of the execution device.

Later, around 1840, a patient in the office of Scottish physician James Braid accidentally entered a state of trance while waiting for an eye examination. Braid, aware of the disfavor of mesmerism and animal magnetism coined the term "hypnosis," and thus began the serious study of this altered state of awareness.

### *What is hypnosis?*

It is far easier to describe what hypnosis is not than to describe what it is. For example, it is not one

person controlling the mind of another. The patient is not unconscious and does not lose control of his or her faculties. People will not do things under hypnosis that they would be unwilling to do otherwise. The person being hypnotized is always in control. The hypnotized person decides how deep the trance will be, what suggestions will be accepted, and when to awaken. Therefore, a hypnotized person cannot be forever "lost" if the therapist should fall dead during an induction or while the patient is deep in trance.

Hypnosis is first and foremost a self-accepted journey away from the reality of the moment. Although the trance state is often referred to as if the patient is asleep, nothing could be further from the truth. The patient is fully awake at all times. The hypnotic subject is simply in a heightened, more receptive state of mind. This fact is proven with inductions called open-eye techniques, where the patient keeps his/her eyes open during the hypnotherapy. Full and deep trance is still achievable.

Trance is commonplace. People fall into traces many times without even being aware that it has happened. Examples of this include reaching the destination of a morning commute, but not recalling the passing of familiar landmarks; daydreaming while sitting in a college classroom; or that anxiety-free state achieved just before going to sleep. The difference between these altered states and clinically used hypnotherapy is that a professionally trained person is involved in helping the patient achieve the trance, which can be done in many ways.

A typical hypnotherapy session has the patient seated comfortably with their feet on the floor and palms on their lap. Of course, the patient could choose to lie down if that option is available and if that will meet the patient's expectation of hypnosis. The therapist can even set the stage for a favorable outcome by asking questions like, "Would you prefer to undergo hypnosis in this chair or on the sofa?" Once patients makes the choice, they are in effect agreeing to undergo hypnosis. Depending on the approach used by the therapist, the next events can vary, but generally will involve some form of relaxing the patient. Suggestions will lead the patient to an increasingly relaxed state. The therapist may wish to confirm the depth of trance by performing tests with the patient. For example, the therapist may suggest that when the eyes close that they will become locked and cannot be opened. The therapist then checks for this by having patients try to open their eyes. Following a successful trial showing the patient's inability to open the eyes, the therapist might then further relax them by using deepening techniques. Deepening techniques will vary for

each patient and depend largely on whether the patient represents information through auditory, visual, or kinesthetic means. If the patient is more affected by auditory suggestions, the therapist would use comments such as "You hear the gentle patter of rain on the roof;" or, "The sound of the ocean waves allow you to relax more and more." For the visual person, the therapist might use statements such as, "You see the beautiful placid lake, with trees bending slightly with the breeze." Finally, with the kinesthetic person phrases like, "You feel the warm sun and gentle breeze on your skin," could be used. It is important for the therapist to know if the patient has difficulty with the idea of floating or descending because these sensations are sometimes used to enhance the experience for the patient. However, if the patient has a fear of heights or develops a feeling of oppression with the thought of traveling downward and going deeper and deeper, suggestions implying the unwanted or feared phenomenon will not be taken and can thwart the attempt.

### ***Modern techniques***

In order for a hypnotherapist to convey positive suggestions for change, the patient must be in a receptive state. The state is called trance and the method of achieving a trance is through induction. Induction techniques are many and varied and involve the therapist offering suggestions that the patient follows. The formerly common "your eyes are getting heavy" suggestion may still exist, but other more reliable and acceptable (to the patient) forms of induction have come to the forefront. The artful hypnotherapist is always aware of the present condition of the patient and uses this information to lead him/her down the path of induction. In its lighter stages, trance can be noted by the relaxation of muscles. At this point, hands can levitate when given the suggestion, and paresthesia, a feeling of numbness, can be induced. In a medium trance, a patient can be led to experience partial or complete **amnesia**, or failure to recall events of the induction after the fact. A deep trance opens the patient to powerful auditory, visual, or kinesthetic experiences. The phenomenon of time distortion is experienced most profoundly at this level. Patients may believe they have been away briefly, and may react with disbelief when told they were away much longer. Although some work can be done in lighter states of trance, the best circumstance for implementing change is when the patient reaches a deep trance state. At this level, the patient is focused inwardly and is more receptive to positive suggestions for change. This is also the point at which the therapist can invoke posthypnotic suggestions, or instructions given to the

patient so he/she will perform some act or experience some particular sensation following awakening from the trance. These suggestions, if accepted by the patient, can be formed to make foods or cigarettes taste bad, or to delay impulses, curb hunger, or eliminate pain, for example. However, it should be noted that posthypnotic suggestions given to a person which run counter to the person's value system, or are not something they are likely to do under ordinary circumstances, will not be accepted and therefore not implemented.

Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) is the name given to a series of models and techniques used to enhance the therapist's ability to do hypnotherapy. NLP consists of a number of models, with a series of techniques based on those models. Sensory acuity and physiology is one model whose premise is that a person's thought processes change their physiological state. People recognize such a physiological change when startled. The body receives a great dose of **adrenaline**, the heart beats faster, the scare may be verbalized by shouting, and the startled person may sweat. Sensory acuity (i.e., being attuned to changes occurring in another person) will strengthen communication to a person in ways over and above simple verbal cues, therefore making the therapist more effective. A second model of NLP deals with representational systems. The idea behind this model is that different people represent knowledge in different sensory styles. In other words, an individual's language reveals that person's mode of representation. There are three basic modes of representation: auditory, visual, and kinesthetic. The same information will be expressed differently by each type. For example, the auditory person might say, "That sounds good to me," the visual person might offer, "I see it the same way," and the kinesthetic person would say, "I'm comfortable with it too."

## Preparation

Before people subject themselves to hypnotherapy they are advised to learn as much about the process and about the chosen therapist as is necessary to feel comfortable. Rapport and trust are two key factors. Therapists should be open and willing to answer all questions regarding qualifications, expertise, and methods used. A well-qualified professional will not undertake the use of hypnosis without interviewing the patient to ascertain their level of understanding of the process. This is very important for two reasons. First, it allows the patient the opportunity to have questions answered and to develop some rapport with the therapist. Second, it is important for the therapist to know the patient's expectations since

meeting these expectations will enhance the likelihood of success.

## Aftercare

Depending on the purpose of the hypnotherapy (i.e., **smoking cessation**, weight loss, improvement in public speaking, or addressing some deep emotional turmoil), follow-up may be advisable. When trying to eradicate unwanted habits, it is good practice to revisit the therapist, based upon a date prearranged between the therapist and the patient, to report progress and, if necessary, to obtain secondary hypnotherapy to reinforce progress made.

## Risks

One obvious risk to patients is the insufficiently trained therapist. The inadequately trained therapist can cause harm and distort the normally pleasant experience of hypnotherapy. A second risk for patients is the unscrupulous practitioner who may be both inadequately trained and may have some hidden agenda. These rare individuals are capable of causing great harm to the patient and to the profession. As mentioned above, the patient should carefully scrutinize their chosen therapist before submitting themselves to this dynamic form of therapy.

## Normal results

The result of hypnotherapy is overwhelmingly positive and effective. Countless success stories exist attesting to the benefits of this technique. Many people have stopped smoking, lost weight, managed pain, remembered forgotten information, stopped other addictions, or improved their health and well-being through its use.

## Abnormal results

Abnormal results can occur in instances where amateurs, who know the fundamentals of hypnosis, entice friends to become their experimental subjects. Their lack of full understanding can lead to immediate consequences, which can linger for some time after the event. If, for example, the amateur plants the suggestion that the subject is being bitten by mosquitoes, the subject would naturally scratch where the bites were perceived. When awakened from the trance, if the amateur forgets to remove the suggestion, the subject will continue the behavior. Left unchecked, the behavior could land the subject in a physician's office in an attempt to stop the itching and scratching cycle. If the physician is astute enough to question the genesis of the behavior and hypnosis is used to remove the suggestion,

the subjects may experience long-term negative emotional distress and anger once they understand exactly what happened. The lack of full understanding, complete training, and supervised experience on the part of the amateur places the subject at risk.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Barabasz, Arreed, and John G. Watkins. *Hypnotherapeutic Techniques*, 2nd ed. New York: Brunner-Routledge, 2004.
- Flemons, Douglas. *Of One Mind: The Logic of Hypnosis, the Practice of Therapy*. New York: W. W. Norton, 2002.
- Hawkins, Peter J. *Hypnosis and Stress: A Guide for Clinicians*. New York: Wiley, 2006.
- Lynn, Steven Jay, and Irving Kirsch. *Essentials of Clinical Hypnosis: An Evidence-Based Approach*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.
- Spiegel, Herbert, and David Spiegel. *Trance and Treatment: Clinical Uses of Hypnosis*, 2nd ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2004.
- Yapko, M.D., ed. *Hypnosis and Treating Depression*. New York: Routledge, 2006.
- Zarren, Jordan I., and Bruce N. Eimer. *Brief Cognitive Hypnosis: Facilitating the Change of Dysfunctional Behavior*. New York: Springer Publishing, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Bamford, Candy. "A Multifaceted Approach to the Treatment of Phantom Limb Pain Using Hypnosis." *Contemporary Hypnosis* 23.3 (Sept. 2006): 115–26.
- Bryant, Richard A., Michelle L. Moulds, Reginald D. V. Nixon, Julie Mastromenico, Kim Felmingham, and Sally Hopwood. "Hypnotherapy and Cognitive Behaviour Therapy of Acute Stress Disorder: A 3-Year Follow-Up." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 44.9 (Sept. 2006): 1331–35.
- Gay, Marie-Claire. "Effectiveness of Hypnosis in Reducing Mild Essential Hypertension: A One-Year Follow-Up." *International Journal of Clinical and Experimental Hypnosis* 55.1 (Jan. 2007): 67–83.
- Kihsslinger, Daun, and Marty Sapp. "Hypnosis and Diabetes: Applications for Children, Adolescents, and Adults." *Australian Journal of Clinical Hypnotherapy and Hypnosis* 27.1 (Fall 2006): 19–27.
- Kraft, Tom, and David Kraft. "The Place of Hypnosis in Psychiatry: Its Applications in Treating Anxiety Disorders and Sleep Disturbances." *Australian Journal of Clinical and Experimental Hypnosis* 34.2 (Nov. 2006): 187–203.
- Mende, Matthias. "The Special Effects of Hypnosis and Hypnotherapy: A Contribution to an Ecological Model of Therapeutic Change." *International Journal of Clinical and Experimental Hypnosis* 54.2 (Apr. 2006): 167–85.
- Uccheddu, Ornella Manca, and Antonello Viola. "Descriptive Survey of Therapeutic Alliance in Hypnotherapy." *European Journal of Clinical Hypnosis* 7.1 (2006): 10–25.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Society of Clinical Hypnosis. 2250 East Devon Avenue, Suite 336, Des Plaines, IL 60018.  
Society for Clinical and Experimental Hypnosis. 129-A Kings Park Drive, Liverpool, NY 13088.

Jack H. Booth, PsyD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Hypoactive sexual desire disorder

### Definition

Hypoactive sexual desire disorder (HSDD) is defined as the persistent or recurrent extreme aversion to, absence of, and avoidance of all, or almost all, genital sexual contact with a sexual partner. Synonyms for HSDD include sexual aversion, inhibited sexual desire, sexual **apathy**, and sexual anorexia. HSDD is not rare, occurring in both sexes. It is the most common of all female sexual disorders, occurring in at least 20% of women in the United States.

### Description

The affected person has a low level of sexual interest and desire that is manifested by a failure to initiate or be responsive to a partner's initiation of sexual activity. HSD becomes a diagnosable disorder when it causes marked distress or interpersonal instability, according to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*), the handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders. HSDD may be either situational (solely oriented against one partner), or it may be general, in which case there is a lack of sexual interest in anyone. In the extreme form of HSDD, the patient not only lacks sexual desire, but may also find sex to be repulsive, revolting and distasteful. Phobic or panic responses may be present in extreme cases of HSD. HSDD may be the result of either physical or emotional factors.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

**PRIMARY HSD.** HSDD may be a primary condition in which the patient has never felt much sexual desire or interest, or it may have occurred secondarily when the patient formerly had sexual desire, but no longer has interest. If lifelong or primary, HSDD may be the

consequence of sexual trauma such as incest, sexual abuse, or rape. In the absence of sexual trauma, there is often a repressive family attitude concerning sex that is sometimes enhanced by rigid religious training. A third possibility is that initial attempts at sexual intercourse resulted in pain or sexual failure. Rarely, HSDD in both males and females may result from insufficient levels of the male sex hormone, testosterone.

**ACQUIRED HSD.** Acquired, situational HSDD in the adult is commonly associated with boredom in the relationship with the sexual partner. **Depression**, the use of psychoactive or antihypertensive medications, and hormonal deficiencies may contribute to the problem. HSDD may also result from impairment of sexual function, particularly **erectile dysfunction** on the part of the male, or **vaginismus** on the part of the female. Vaginismus is defined as a conditioned voluntary contraction or spasm of the lower vaginal muscles resulting from an unconscious desire to prevent vaginal penetration. An incompatibility in sexual interest between the sexual partners may result in relative HSDD in the less sexually active member. This usually occurs in the presence of a sexually demanding partner.

**PAINFUL INTERCOURSE.** Painful intercourse (**dyspareunia**) is more common in women than in men, but may be a deterrent to genital sexual activity in both sexes. The causes are usually physical in nature and related to an infection of the prostate gland, urethra, or testes. Occasionally, an allergic reaction to a spermicidal preparation or condom may interfere with sexual intercourse. Painful erections may be a consequence of Peyronie's disease, which is characterized by fibrotic changes in the shaft of the penis that prevent attainment of a normal erection. In the female, dyspareunia may be caused by vaginismus or local urogenital trauma or inflammatory conditions such as hymenal tears, labial lacerations, urethral bruising, or inflammatory conditions of the labial or vaginal glands.

**PRIAPIST.** Priapism is the occurrence of any persistent erection of more than four hours duration occurring in the absence of sexual stimulation. It is not associated with sexual excitement and the erection does not subside after ejaculation. Priapism can occur at any age, but clusters of occurrence are common between the ages of five and 10 years and between the ages of 20 and 50. In children, priapism is commonly associated with leukemia and sickle cell disease, or occurs secondary to trauma. The most common cause in adults is the intra-penile injection of agents to correct erectile dysfunction. Priapism may also occur secondary to the use of psychotropic drugs, such as **chlorpromazine** and prazosin. The pain accompanying priapism may be a cause of HSDD.

**PROLACTINOMA.** A rare but important cause of HSDD is a functioning prolactin-secreting tumor of the pituitary gland, a prolactinoma. Men with this condition typically state that they can achieve an erection, but that they have no interest in sexual relations. In the female, prolactinomas are associated with galactorrhea (lactation in the absence of pregnancy), amenorrhea, symptoms of estrogen deficiency and dyspareunia. Although prolactinomas are benign tumors, they can cause visual disturbances by enlarging and causing pressure on the optic nerves within the confines of the *sella turcica*, the location of the pituitary gland at the base of the **brain**. Headaches and enlargement of the male breasts are fairly common in this condition. The **diagnosis** is confirmed by the finding of high levels of circulating prolactin in the blood. Enlargement of the pituitary gland area may be detected by the use of **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) or computerized axial tomography (CAT) scanning, also called **computed tomography**.

**DELAYED SEXUAL MATURATION.** Delayed sexual maturation is a potential cause of HSDD. It is present in boys if there is no testicular enlargement by age 13-and-a-half or if there are more than five years between the initial and complete growth of the genitalia. In girls, delayed sexual maturation is characterized by a lack of breast enlargement by age 13, or by a period greater than five years between the beginning of breast growth and the onset of menstruation. Delayed puberty may be the result of familial constitutional disorders, genetic defects such as Turner's syndrome in females and Klinefelter's syndrome in males, central nervous system disorders such as pituitary conditions that interfere with the secretion of gonadotropin hormones, and chronic illnesses such as diabetes mellitus, chronic renal failure, and cystic fibrosis.

**SEXUAL ANHEDONIA.** Sexual anhedonia is a rare variant of HSDD seen in the male, in which the patient experiences erection and ejaculation, but no pleasure from orgasm. The cause is attributed to penile anesthesia, due to psychogenic factors occurring in an hysterical or obsessive person. Psychiatric referral is indicated unless there is evidence of spinal cord injury or peripheral neuropathy. Loss of tactile sensation of the penis is unlikely to be organic in cause unless there is associated anesthetic areas in the vicinity of the anus or scrotum.

### Symptoms

The HSDD patient complains of a lack of interest in sex even under circumstances that are ordinarily erotic in nature, such as pornography. Sexual activity is infrequent and eventually is absent, often resulting

in serious marital discord. HSDD may be selective and focused against a specific sexual partner. When boredom with the usual sexual partner is the cause and frequency of sex with the usual partner decreases, real or fantasized sexual desire toward others may be normal or even increased.

If the cause of HSD falls into a detectable category such as abnormalities of the genitalia, or is due to a related condition such as a prolactinoma, chronic renal disease, diabetes mellitus, genetic disorder, or is familial in nature, the patient will manifest the signs and symptoms of the comorbid (co-occurring) condition. It is important to identify such causes, as their presence will usually dictate appropriate therapy.

### Treatments

Currently, there is no approved drug or pharmaceutical treatment for HSDD and **psychotherapy** has proved to be only minimally effective. A primary goal of therapy is aimed at removal of the underlying cause of HSDD. The choice of medical therapy or behavioral or dynamic psychotherapy depends on the cause. If the cause is related to a medical condition, therapy is directed toward the cure or amelioration of that condition. Examples include cure or amelioration of underlying comorbid conditions such as genitourinary infections, improvement in diabetic control, avoidance of **substance abuse** and of medications that may be potentially responsible.

Therapy should also be directed towards other accompanying sexual disorders such as erectile dysfunction, which may be contributory. In cases where insufficient testosterone is suspected as a possible cause, serum androgen levels should be tested. A testosterone level less than 300 ng/dl in males and less than 10 ng/dl in females indicates a need for supplemental replacement therapy. If the cause is deemed to be of an interpersonal nature, **couples therapy** may be beneficial, in which case the support and understanding of the sexual partner is essential. Tricyclic **antidepressants** (TCAs) or monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) may help in the treatment of accompanying depression or panic symptoms.

A recent study has reported that almost a third of nondepressed women with HSDD responded favorably to therapy with sustained release tablets of **bupropion** hydrochloride. The responders noted significant increases in the number of sexual arousals, sexual fantasies, and in the desire to engage in sexual activities. Bupropion hydrochloride (Wellbutrin) is currently approved by the FDA for the treatment of depression. Its favorable action on HSDD may be attributable to its enhancement of certain **neurotrans-**

### KEY TERMS

**Comorbid**—Having another disorder or condition simultaneously.

**Dyspareunia**—Painful sexual intercourse.

**Galactorrhea**—Lactation occurring in the absence of pregnancy

**Hypogonadism**—Abnormally decreased gonad function with retardation of sexual development.

**Priapism**—Painful involuntary penile erection persisting in excess of four hours.

**Prolactin**—A hormone that stimulates milk production and breast development.

**Vaginismus**—An involuntary tightening of the vaginal muscles that makes sexual intercourse painful, difficult, or impossible.

**mitters** that affect sexual desire, principally norepinephrine and **dopamine**.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for HSDD depends primarily on the underlying cause or causes. In certain medical conditions, the prognosis for development, or recovery of sexual interest, is good. Examples include therapy of hypogonadism with testosterone, or the appropriate treatment of a prolactin-secreting pituitary tumor. On the other hand, in certain genetic defects such as Turner's syndrome and Klinefelter's syndrome, attainment of sexual function is impossible. By far, however, the vast majority of HSDD cases are situational in nature, usually relating to dissatisfaction or loss of interest in the sexual partner. In cases of marital discord, significant assistance may be obtained by counseling given by a health professional trained in the field. Cases of dissatisfaction by both partners often do not respond to such therapy, and frequently culminate in separation, finding a new sexual partner, and divorce.

### Prevention

Unfortunately, it is difficult or impossible to predict the occurrence of HSDD in situational cases that comprise the majority of patients. The patience, understanding and support of the sexual partner is essential in those cases of HSDD in which the cause is temporary or transient. Some therapists recommend a period of abstinence from genital sex and have emphasized the value of a period of concentration on non-genital sex in the treatment of HSD.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Borkow F., and A. J. Fletcher, eds. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. 16th edition. Rahway, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1992.

Carnes, Patrick, Ph.D. *Sexual Anorexia*. Center City, MN: Hazelden Press, 1997.

Hawton, Keith. *Sex Therapy: A Practical Guide*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1985.

Lue, Tom F., F. Goldstein. "Impotence and Infertility." In *Atlas of Clinical Urology*. Volume 1. New York: Current Medicine, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

Segraves R.T., Croft H., Kavoussi R., and others. "Bupropion sustained release (SR) for the treatment of Hypoactive Sexual Desire Disorder (HSDD) in nondepressed women." *Journal of Sex and Marital Therapy* 27 (May-June 2001): 303-16.

Ralph Myerson, MD

## Hypochondriasis

### Definition

Hypochondriasis is a mental disorder in which the individual is preoccupied with the thought of having a serious physical disease based on the incorrect or exaggerated interpretation of physical symptoms. This preoccupation continues for at least six months and interferes with the individual's social and occupational functioning even in the face of medical evidence to the contrary. Hypochondriasis is considered a somatoform disorder.

### Description

The primary feature of hypochondriasis is excessive fear of having a serious disease. This fear is not relieved when a medical examination finds no evidence of disease. People with hypochondriasis are often able to acknowledge that their fears are unrealistic, but this intellectual realization is not enough to reduce their **anxiety**. In order to qualify for a **diagnosis** of hypochondriasis, preoccupation with fear of disease must cause a great deal of distress or interfere with a person's ability to perform important activities, such as work, school activities, or family and social responsibilities. Hypochondriasis is included in the category of somatoform disorders in the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)***, which is the reference handbook that clinicians use to guide

the diagnosis of mental disorders. Some experts, however, have argued that hypochondriasis shares many features with **obsessive-compulsive disorder** or **panic disorder** and would be more appropriately classified with the **anxiety disorders**.

The fears of a person with hypochondriasis may be focused on the possibility of a single illness, but more often they include a number of possible conditions. The focus of the fears may shift over time as a person notices a new symptom or learns about an unfamiliar disease. The fears appear to develop in response to minor physical abnormalities, like **fatigue**, aching muscles, a mild cough, or a small sore. People with hypochondriasis may also interpret normal sensations as signs of disease. For instance, an occasional change in heart rate or a feeling of dizziness upon standing up will lead a person with hypochondriasis to fears of heart disease or **stroke**. Sometimes hypochondriacal fears develop after the death of a friend or family member, or in response to reading an article or seeing a television program about a disease. Fear of illness can also increase in response to **stress**. Individuals with hypochondriasis visit physicians frequently; and when told there is nothing physically wrong, they are likely to seek a second opinion since their fears are not soothed. Their apparent distrust of their physicians' opinions can cause tensions in doctor-patient relationships, leading to the patient's further dissatisfaction with health-care providers. Physicians who regularly see a patient with hypochondriasis may become skeptical about any reported symptom, increasing the danger that a real illness may be overlooked. People with hypochondriasis also run the risk of undergoing unnecessary medical tests or receiving unneeded medications. Although they are usually not physically disabled, they may take frequent sick days from work, or annoy friends and family with constant conversation or complaints about illness, reducing their ability to function effectively in some aspects of life.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

**AMPLIFICATION OF SENSORY EXPERIENCE.** One theory suggests that people with hypochondriasis are highly sensitive to physical sensations. They are more likely than most people to pay close attention to sensations within their bodies (heart rate, minor noises in the digestive tract, the amount or taste of saliva in the mouth, etc.), which magnifies their experience of these feelings. While many people fail to notice minor discomfort as they go about their regular activities, the individual

with hypochondriasis pays constant attention to inner sensations and becomes alarmed when these sensations vary in any way. This heightened scrutiny may actually increase the intensity of the sensations, and the intensity of the experience fuels fears that the sensations signal an underlying illness. Once the fears are aroused, preoccupation with the symptom increases, further enhancing the intensity of sensations. The tendency to amplify may be either temporary or chronic; it may also be influenced by situational factors, which helps to explain why hypochondriacal fears are made worse by stress or by events that appear to justify concerns about illness. Some researchers have observed that heightened sensitivity to internal sensations is also a feature of panic disorder, and have suggested that there may be an overlap between the two disorders.

**DISTORTED INTERPRETATION OF SYMPTOMS.** Another theory points to the centrality of dysfunctional thinking in hypochondriasis. According to this theory, the internal physical sensations of the person with hypochondriasis are not necessarily more intense than those of most people. Instead, people with hypochondriasis are prone to make catastrophic misinterpretations of their physical symptoms. They are pessimistic about the state of their physical health and overestimate their chances of falling ill. Hypochondriasis thus represents a cognitive bias; whereas most people assume they are healthy unless there is clear evidence of disease, the person with hypochondriasis assumes he or she is sick unless given a clean bill of health. Interestingly, research suggests that people with hypochondriasis make more realistic estimations of their risk of disease than most people, and in fact underestimate their risk of illness. Most people simply underestimate their risk even more. Some studies indicate that people with hypochondriasis are more likely to have had frequent or serious illnesses as children, which may explain the development of a negative cognitive bias in interpreting physical sensations or symptoms.

### Symptoms

The primary symptom of hypochondriasis is preoccupation with fears of serious physical illness or injury. The fears of persons with hypochondriasis have an obsessive quality; they find thoughts about illness intrusive and difficult to dismiss, even when they recognize that their fears are unrealistic. In order to relieve the anxiety that arises from their thoughts, people with hypochondriasis may act on their fears by talking about their symptoms, by seeking information about feared diseases in books or on the Internet, or by “doctor-shopping,” going from one specialist to another for consultations. Others may deal with their fears through

avoidance, staying away from anything that might remind them of illness or death. Persons with hypochondriasis vary in their insight into their disorder. Some recognize themselves as “hypochondriacs,” but have anxiety in spite of their recognition. Others are unable to see that their concerns are unreasonable or exaggerated.

### Demographics

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, hypochondriasis affects 1–5% of the general population in the United States. The rates of the disorder are higher among clinical outpatients, between 2% and 7%. One recent study suggests that full-blown hypochondriasis is fairly rare, although lesser degrees of worry about illness are more common, affecting as many as 6% of people in a community sample.

Hypochondriasis can appear at any age, although it frequently begins in early adulthood. Men and women appear to equally develop the disorder. The *DSM-IV-TR* notes that people from some cultures may appear to have fears of illness that resemble hypochondriasis, but are in fact influenced by beliefs that are traditional in their culture.

### Diagnosis

Hypochondriasis is most likely to be diagnosed when one of the doctors consulted by the patient considers the patient’s preoccupation with physical symptoms and concerns excessive or problematic. After giving the patient a thorough physical examination to rule out a general medical condition, the doctor will usually give him or her a psychological test that screens for anxiety or **depression** as well as hypochondriasis. If the results suggest a diagnosis of hypochondriasis, the patient should be referred for **psychotherapy**. It is important to note, however, that patients with hypochondriasis usually resist the notion that their core problem is psychological. A successful referral to psychotherapy is much more likely if the patient’s medical practitioner has been able to relate well to the patient and work gradually toward the notion that psychological problems might be related to fears of physical illness.

Specific approaches that have been found useful by primary care doctors in bringing psychological issues to the patient’s attention in nonthreatening ways include the following:

- drawing connections between the patient’s current physical symptoms and recent setbacks or upsetting incidents in the patient’s life. For example, the patient may come in with health worries within a

few days of having a problem in other areas of life, such as their car needing repairs, a quarrel with a family member, an overdue bill, etc.

- asking the patient to keep a careful diary of his or her symptoms and other occurrences. This diary may be useful in guiding the patient to see patterns in his or her worries about health.
- scheduling the patient for regular but short appointments. It is also better to see the patient briefly than to prescribe medications in place of an appointment, because many patients with hypochondriasis abuse medications.
- conduct routine screening tests during a yearly physical for patients with hypochondriasis, while discouraging them from scheduling extra appointments each time they notice a minor physical problem.
- maintain a realistic but optimistic tone in his or her conversation with the patient. He or she may wish to talk to the patient about health-related fears and clarify the differences between normal internal body sensations and serious symptoms.

In order to receive a *DSM-IV-TR* diagnosis of hypochondriasis, a person must meet all six of the following criteria:

- the person must be preoccupied with the notion or fear of having a serious disease. This preoccupation is based on misinterpretation of physical symptoms or sensations.
- appropriate medical evaluation and reassurance that there is no illness present do not eliminate the preoccupation.
- the belief or fear of illness must not be of delusional intensity. Delusional health fears are more likely to be bizarre in nature—for instance, the belief that one's skin emits a foul odor or that food is rotting in one's intestines. The preoccupations must not be limited to a concern about appearance; excessive concerns that focus solely on defects in appearance would receive a diagnosis of body dysmorphic disorder.
- the preoccupation must have lasted for at least six months.
- the person's preoccupation with illness must not simply be part of the presentation of another disorder, including generalized anxiety disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, panic disorder, separation anxiety, major depressive episode, or another somatoform disorder.

The *DSM-IV-TR* also differentiates between hypochondriasis with and without poor insight. Poor insight

is specified when the patient does not recognize that his or her concerns are excessive or unreasonable.

## Treatments

Traditionally hypochondriasis has been considered difficult to treat. In the last few years, however, cognitive and behavioral treatments have demonstrated effectiveness in reducing the symptoms of the disorder.

### Cognitive therapy

The goal of cognitive therapy for hypochondriasis is to guide patients to the recognition that their chief problem is fear of illness, rather than vulnerability to illness. Patients are asked to monitor worries and to evaluate how realistic and reasonable they are. Therapists encourage patients to consider alternative explanations for the physical signs they normally interpret as disease symptoms. Behavioral experiments are also employed in an effort to change the patient's habitual thoughts. For instance, a patient may be told to focus intently on a specific physical sensation and monitor increases in anxiety. Another behavioral assignment might ask the patient to suppress urges to talk about health-related worries with family members, then observe their anxiety level. Most people with hypochondriasis believe that their anxiety will escalate until they release it by seeking reassurance from others. In fact, anxiety usually crests and subsides in a matter of minutes. Cognitive therapy effectively reduces many symptoms of the disorder, and many improvements persist up to a year after treatment ends.

**BEHAVIORAL STRESS MANAGEMENT.** One study compared cognitive therapy to behavioral stress management. This second form of therapy focuses on the notion that stress contributes to excessive worry about health. Patients were asked to identify stressors in their lives and taught stress management techniques to help them cope with these stressors. The researchers taught the patients relaxation techniques and problem-solving skills, and the patients practiced these techniques in and out of sessions. Although this treatment did not focus directly on hypochondriacal worries, it was helpful in reducing symptoms. At the end of the study, behavioral stress management appeared to be less effective than cognitive therapy in treating hypochondriasis, but a follow-up a year later found that the results of two therapies were comparable.

## KEY TERMS

**Comorbid psychopathology**—The presence of other mental disorders in a patient together with the disorder that is the immediate focus of therapy.

**Somatoform disorders**—A group of psychiatric disorders in the *DSM-IV-TR* classification that are characterized by the patient's concern with external physical symptoms or complaints. Hypochondriasis is classified as a somatoform disorder.

**EXPOSURE AND RESPONSE PREVENTION.** This therapy begins by asking patients to make a list of their hypochondriacal behaviors, such as checking body sensations, seeking reassurance from physicians or friends, and avoiding reminders of illness. Behavioral assignments are then developed. Patients who frequently monitor their physical sensations or seek reassurance are asked not to do so, and to allow themselves to experience the anxiety that accompanies suppression of these behaviors. Patients practice exposing themselves to anxiety until it becomes manageable, gradually reducing hypochondriacal behaviors in the process. In a study comparing exposure and response prevention to cognitive therapy, both therapies produced clinically significant results. Although cognitive therapy focuses more on thoughts and exposure therapy more on behaviors, both appear to be effective in reducing both dysfunctional thoughts and behaviors.

### Prognosis

Untreated hypochondriasis tends to be a chronic disorder, although the intensity of the patient's symptoms may vary over time. The *DSM-IV-TR* notes that the following factors are associated with a better prognosis: the symptoms develop quickly; are relatively mild; are associated with an actual medical condition; and are not associated with comorbid psychopathology or benefits derived from being ill.

### Prevention

Hypochondriasis may be difficult to prevent in a health-conscious society, in which people are constantly exposed to messages reminding them to seek regular medical screenings for a variety of illnesses, and telling them in detail about the illnesses of celebrities and high-ranking political figures. Trendy new diagnostic techniques like full-body MRIs may encourage people with hypochondriasis to seek unnecessary and expensive medical consultations. Referring patients

with suspected hypochondriasis to psychotherapy may also help to reduce their overuse of medical services.

*See also* Exposure treatment.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Asmundson, Gordon J. G., Steven Taylor, and Brian J. Cox, eds. *Health Anxiety: Hypochondriasis and Related Disorders*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2002.

Maj, Mario, Hagop S. Akiskal, Juan E. Mezzich, and Ahmed Okasha, eds. *Somatoform Disorders*, WPA Series. Evidence and Experience in Psychiatry, Volume 9. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2005.

Walker, John R., and Patricia Furer. "Treatment of Hypochondriasis and Psychogenic Movement Disorders: Focus on Cognitive-Behavior Therapy." *Psychogenic Movement Disorders: Neurology and Neuropsychiatry*. Mark Hallett, Stanley Fahn, Joseph Jankovic, Anthony E. Lang, and C. Robert Cloninger, eds. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins Publishers, 2006: 163–79.

VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

#### PERIODICALS

Abramowitz, Jonathan S. "Hypochondriasis: Conceptualization, Treatment, and Relationship to Obsessive Compulsive Disorder." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 17.4 (Oct.–Dec. 2005): 211–17.

Abramowitz, Jonathan S., and Autumn E. Braddock. "Hypochondriasis: Conceptualization, Treatment, and Relationship to Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder." *Psychiatric Clinics of North America* 29.2 (June 2006): 503–19.

Asmundson, Gordon J. G., and Michael J. Coons. "Current Directions in the Treatment of Hypochondriasis." *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy* 19.3 (Fall 2005): 285–304.

Avia, M. D., and M. A. Ruiz. "Recommendations for the Treatment of Hypochondriac Patients." *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy* 35.3 (Fall 2005): 301–13.

Bleichhardt, Gaby, Barbara Timmer, and Winfried Rief. "Hypochondriasis Among Patients with Multiple Somatoform Symptoms—Psychopathology and Outcome of a Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy." *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy* 35.3 (Fall 2005): 239–49.

Furer, Patricia, and John R. Walker. "Treatment of Hypochondriasis with Exposure." *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy* 35.3 (Fall 2005): 251–67.

Martínez, M. Pilar, and Cristina Botella. "An Exploratory Study of the Efficacy of a Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment for Hypochondriasis Using Different Measures of Change." *Psychotherapy Research* 15.4 (Oct. 2005): 392–408.

- Monopoli, John. "Managing Hypochondriasis in Elderly Clients." *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy* 35.3 (Fall 2005): 285–300.
- Noyes, Russell, Jr., Scott Stuart, David B. Watson, and Douglas R. Langbehn. "Distinguishing Between Hypochondriasis and Somatization Disorder: A Review of the Existing Literature." *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics* 75.5 (Aug. 2006): 270–81.
- Starcevic, Vladan. "Fear of Death in Hypochondriasis: Bodily Threat and Its Treatment Implications." *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy* 35.3 (Fall 2005): 227–37.
- Stuart, Scott, and Russell Noyes, Jr. "Treating Hypochondriasis with Interpersonal Psychotherapy." *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy* 35.3 (Fall 2005): 269–83.

Danielle Barry, MS  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Hypomania

### Definition

A hypomanic episode is a distinct period of time that lasts at least four days during which the individual's mood is consistently elevated, expansive, or irritable and is distinct from his or her usual nondepressed mood. Hypomanic episodes are characteristic of bipolar II disorder as well as features of **cyclothymic disorder**. They may also occur as a transitional phase from euthymia (feeling of well-being often associated with individuals with **bipolar disorder** when they are not having a manic or a depressive episode) to mania in cases of bipolar I disorder.

### Description

Hypomanic episodes usually begin suddenly with the symptoms rapidly increasing over the course of a day or two. A hypomanic episode may last anywhere from four days to several months, although some clinicians are beginning to argue that hypomanic episodes may be as short as two days in duration. However, because such research is based on the self-reports of patients (who tend not to be aware of their symptoms at first), there is not widespread agreement about this change in diagnostic criteria.

### Demographics

Hypomanic episodes associated with bipolar II disorder have the same demographics as that disorder. Hypomanic episodes can affect both adults and younger patients. In younger patients and adolescents, hypomania may be associated with such behaviors as

school truancy, antisocial behavior, failure in school, or **substance abuse**.

Cultural differences can affect the experience and communication of the symptoms of hypomanic disorder, with different cultures interpreting such symptoms as irritability or inflated self-esteem in various ways. Some cultures and subcultures, for example, value such aspects of hypomania as decreased need for sleep, racing thoughts, or increased goal orientation as positive qualities of a productive individual, and do not regard them negatively.

### Causes and symptoms

Hypomania is not a disorder in and of itself. The causes of hypomania vary depending on whether it is a characteristic of bipolar I disorder, bipolar II disorder, or cyclothymic disorder.

During a hypomanic episode, the individual's mood is consistently elevated, expansive, or irritable and distinct from his or her usual nondepressed mood. During this period, the individual must also display at least three of the following symptoms (or four if he or she is only irritable) to be diagnosed as hypomanic:

- inflated sense of self-esteem
- decreased need for sleep
- increased talkativeness or need to talk
- racing thoughts or flight of ideas
- easily distracted
- increased goal-oriented activity
- excessive involvement in pleasurable but high-risk activities (for example, buying sprees, sexual indiscretions, foolish investments)

In hypomania, these symptoms are associated with a clear change from the individual's normal behavior and are readily observable by others. Hypomanic symptoms, however, are not severe enough to noticeably affect the individual's functioning at work or in social situations, nor does their presence require **hospitalization**. To be classified as hypomanic, the individual's symptoms cannot contain psychotic features or be due to the direct physiological effects of a substance (such as drug **abuse** or medication) or a general medical condition (for example, hyperthyroidism).

### Diagnosis

It is important to distinguish hypomania from euthymia in patients who are not used to a nondepressed mood state. In addition, although the two have the same list of diagnostic symptoms, hypomanic episodes are different from manic episodes. Hypomanic

symptoms are less severe than manic symptoms and do not cause marked impairment of social or occupational functioning. However, approximately 5% to 15% of individuals experiencing hypomanic episodes will eventually develop a **manic episode**.

Many of the warning signs of a hypomanic episode such as increased goal-oriented behavior can also be normal and appropriate given the situation. Sometimes a patient's good mood is just that. Some of the signs of a normal good mood that could distinguish it from hypomania include:

- ability to enjoy reading for a significant period of time without becoming bored
- ability to listen more than talk in a social setting
- no need to do something risky just to shake things up
- ability to complete tasks without repeatedly being distracted
- experience of appropriate anxiety about demands of life such as responsibilities, deadlines, and financial obligations
- ability to enjoy times of peace and quiet
- ability to sleep well at night for an appropriate period of time
- ability to accept well-meaning, constructive criticism without undue irritation

## Treatments

### Cognitive-behavioral therapy

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) is regularly used to help patients test how realistic their thought processes and resultant behaviors are. The goal of such reality testing is to help patients weigh the facts more carefully than they would otherwise do and to seek the insights of others before acting on their beliefs. This approach can help patients be more independent in controlling their lives.

One of the tools used in CBT to assist patients in controlling their impulses during hypomanic episodes is keeping a daily journal of their thoughts. Such daily thought records are a structured method to help patients do a reality check on their thinking and actions. For example, patients can look for situations in which they overestimate their capabilities, rely on luck, underestimate risks, minimize problems, or overvalue immediate gratification.

Patients with hypomanic episodes can also be taught to test the validity of their thoughts and beliefs by consulting trusted others. By talking things through with a trusted and objective person, a patient

in a hypomanic episode can be helped to test the reality of his or her thoughts and beliefs.

Another method that can help hypomanic patients test reality is to have them rate the relative risks of the options that they are considering by listing the productive potential and destructive risks of their alternatives. If patients are unable to think of examples of destructive risks for their plans, the therapist or other objective outsider can help by giving them examples and helping them to develop their own list of potential risks. Similarly, lists can be made of the benefit to others versus the cost to oneself or the benefit to oneself versus the cost to others.

Patients can also be helped to more realistically evaluate their thoughts and plans through role playing or playing "devil's advocate." Such techniques can be used to do a hypothetical trial run to see what possible consequences might be incurred if an unreasonable risk is taken.

To help reduce impulsivity and recklessness in hypomanic patients, psychotherapists use various different techniques. One technique is to institute a "wait 48 hours before acting" rule to help the patient avoid spur-of-the-moment reckless actions. It is also sometimes helpful for the patient to try to foresee the possible negative consequences of their proposed actions through imagery by describing the bad things that could happen if they took their proposed course of action. Because hypomanic patients are often overly active, it is sometimes also helpful to have them schedule their activities to help them focus their attention on what is important so that they do not become overextended. Hypomanic patients can also be taught listening skills that can help them focus and break the vicious circle of constant activity and to listen to others. Similarly, patients can be taught anticipatory problem-solving skills that help them recognize the symptoms of a building hypomanic episode and to reduce the stressors that put them at risk. It is also helpful for hypomanic patients to minimize or completely avoid situations that are apt to trigger a hypomanic episode such as daredevil hobbies, exaggerated acts of generosity or intimacy with relative strangers, unsupervised expenditures of large amounts of money, or situations that require the use of a lethal weapon. Hypomanic patients can also be taught to help control or adjust their moods through relaxation techniques and breathing control exercises.

### Biological treatments

In addition to CBT approaches in controlling hypomanic episodes, several biologic management strategies may help patients. These include:

- optimizing the dose of mood stabilizer or antimanic medication
- encouraging good sleep practices
- discontinuing antidepressants
- including lorazepam or clonazepam (1–6 mg/day) as clinically indicated
- including mood stabilizers such as lithium, divalproex, or caramazepine in the treatment regimen as appropriate

In most cases, such biologic treatments can be used on an outpatient basis.

## Prevention

There are a number of warning signs of hypomania. If patients can be taught to recognize such early warning signs, they have a better chance of using various techniques to help lessen the possibility of acting out and the negative consequences of inappropriate actions that may be associated with hypomania. Attending to such warning signs also can give patients and their doctors more time to adjust medications or arrange for greater supervision to reduce the potential harm from inappropriate behavior.

Some of the typical early warning signs of an impending hypomanic episode include:

- disruption in sleep patterns (for example, decreased subjective need for sleep)
- decrease in anxiety without cause (such as ignoring a deadline or less concern about owing money)
- high levels of optimism without appropriate sound planning and problem-solving (for example, belief that everything will turn out all right even though nothing has been done to make that a reality)
- increased desire to be with others along with relatively poor listening skills (for example, talking at length to someone who is obviously anxious to leave)
- decreased mental concentration (such as difficulty following through or becoming more disorganized than usual)
- increased libido to the point where it affects other areas of life (for example, dressing more provocatively than usual, or inappropriate talk of or joking about sex)
- increased goal-directed behavior to the point where the individual appears driven

According to CBT, if the patient can be taught to recognize the signs of an impending hypomanic episode early enough, he or she will have the time necessary to put into practice the various techniques already

## KEY TERMS

**Bipolar II disorder**—One of a group of mood disorders in which the individual has one or more major depressive episodes and at least one hypomanic episode.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT)**—A form of psychotherapy used to help patients modify their behavior by testing their thought processes.

**Cyclothymic disorder**—A mood disorder in which hypomanic episodes and depressive episodes both occur over the course of at least two years during which time symptom-free periods last no more than two months.

**Euthymia**—A feeling of well-being often associated with individuals with bipolar disorder when they are not having a manic or a depressive episode,

**Mania**—Excitement, overactivity, and inappropriate physical and mental restlessness, often accompanied by impaired judgment.

**Psychotic**—Behavior characteristic of any of a number of severe mental disorders in which the accuracy of perceptions and thoughts is incorrectly evaluated despite of evidence to the contrary, affecting the individual's interaction with external reality.

**Role playing**—A technique used in psychotherapy in which the patient acts out a situation to test attitudes, relationships, actions, and their potential consequences.

discussed to help avoid the negative consequences of potential risky actions.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Bowden, Charles L., Vivek Kusumakar, Frank P. MacMaster, and Lakshmi N. Yatham. "Diagnosis and Treatment of Hypomania and Mania." *Bipolar Disorder: A Clinician's Guide to Biological Treatments*. Eds. Lakshmi N. Yatham, Vivek Kusumakar, and Stanley P. Kutcher. New York: Brunner-Routledge, 2002.
- Newman, Cory F., Robert L. Leahy, Aaron T. Beck, Noreen A. Reilly-Harrington, and Laszlo Gyulai. *Bipolar Disorder: A Cognitive Therapy Approach*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2002.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

**PERIODICALS**

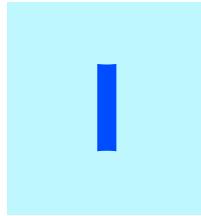
- Akiskal, Hagop S., and Franco Benazzi. "The DSM-IV and ICD-10 Categories of Recurrent [Major] Depressive and Bipolar II Disorders: Evidence that They Lie on a Dimensional Spectrum." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 92.1 (2006): 45–54.
- Bauer, Michael, and others. "Self-Reported Data from Patients with Bipolar Disorder: Impact on Minimum Episode Length for Hypomania." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 96.1–2 (2006): 101–105.
- Benazzi, Franco, and Hagop Akiskal. "The Duration of Hypomania in Bipolar-II Disorder in Private Practice: Methodology and Validation." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 96.3 (2006): 189–96.
- Mansell, Warren. "The Hypomanic Attitudes and Positive Predictions Inventory (HAPPI): A Pilot Study to Select

Cognitions that Are Elevated in Individuals with Bipolar Disorder Compared to Non-Clinical Controls." *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy* 34.4 (2006): 467–76.

Utsumi, Takeshi, Tsukasa Sasaki, Iwao Shimada, Mayuko Mabuchi, Takuro Motonaga, Toshiyuki Ohtani, Mamoru Tochigi, Nobumasa Kato, and Shinichiro Nanko. "Clinical Features of Soft Bipolarity in Major Depressive Inpatients." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 60.5 (2006): 611–15.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Hypomanic episode see **Manic episode**



Illusion of doubles see **Capgras Syndrome**

Illusion of false recognition see **Capgras syndrome**

Imaginal desensitization see **Exposure treatment**

Imaginal exposure see **Exposure treatment**

## Imaging studies

### Definition

Imaging studies are tests performed with a variety of techniques that produce pictures of the inside of a patient's body.

### Description

Imaging tests are performed using sound waves, radioactive particles, magnetic fields, or x rays that are detected and converted into images after passing through body tissues. Dyes are sometimes used as contrasting agents with x-ray tests so that organs or tissues not seen with conventional x rays can be enhanced. The operating principle of the various techniques is based on the fact that rays and particles interact differently with various types of tissues, especially when abnormalities are present. In this way, the interior of the body can be visualized and pictures are provided of normal structure and function as well as of abnormalities. In the fields pertaining to mental health including psychology and psychiatry, imaging is often used to help rule out other health problems that could be causing symptoms (such as **brain** tumors), and imaging studies are often used in research. Once a person's **diagnosis** has been established, various imaging techniques may help to confirm the diagnosis, and also serve as a way to study the disorder. The imaging

techniques may shed new light on the way the disorder affects the brain, so that new treatment methods can be discovered.

### Major imaging techniques in mental health

#### *Computed tomography scan (CT scan)*

**Computed tomography**, or computed axial tomography (CAT), scans show a cross-section of a part of the body, such as the brain. In this technique, a thin beam is used to produce a series of exposures detected at different angles. The exposures are fed into a computer which overlaps them, yielding a single image analogous to a slice of the organ or body part being scanned. A dye is often injected into the patient so as to improve contrast and obtain images that are clearer than images obtained with x rays.

#### *Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)*

**Magnetic resonance imaging** also produces cross-sectional images of the body using powerful magnetic fields instead of radiation. MRI uses a cylinder housing a magnet which will induce the required magnetic field. The patient lies on a platform inside the scanner. The magnetic field aligns the hydrogen atoms present in the tissue being scanned in a given direction. Following a burst of radio-frequency radiation, the atoms flip back to their original orientation while emitting signals which are fed into a computer for conversion into a two- or three-dimensional image. Dyes can also be injected into patients to produce clearer images.

#### *Positron emission tomography (PET)*

**Positron emission tomography** uses a form of sugar that contains a radioactive atom which emits particles called positrons. The positrons are absorbed to a different extent by cells varying in their metabolic rate. PET scans are especially useful for brain imaging studies and are used to illustrate the differences between brains of people without mental disorders

## KEY TERMS

**CT scan**—An imaging technique that uses a computer to combine multiple x-ray images into a two-dimensional cross-sectional image.

**MRI**—Magnetic resonance imaging. A special imaging technique used to image internal parts of the body, especially soft tissues.

**PET**—Abbreviation for positron emission tomography, a highly specialized imaging technique using radioactive substances to identify active tumors, as well as neurological disease progression.

**SPECT**—Abbreviation for single photon emission computerized tomography, a highly specialized imaging technique using radioactive substances used in research, and to identify neurological disorder/disease progression.

and brains of people with mental disorders. For example, because PET scans can detect brain activity, PET scans of the brains of depressed and non-depressed persons can show researchers where brain activity is decreased in depressed patients. Similar scans have been taken of brains affected by **schizophrenia** or Alzheimer's disease. Such research can help scientists discover new ways to treat these disorders.

### *Single photon emission computerized tomography(SPECT)*

Single photon emission computerized tomography is used in research, and in diagnosing brain disorders such as Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. As of 2002, research for Parkinson's disease at Harvard, for example, in the Division of Neurochemistry was focused on the diagnosis of the disease before motor control is compromised signalling the advancing degeneration. It uses a radio-labeled compound that targets key proteins responsible for regulating brain **dopamine** levels to determine neural changes before problems with motor symptoms begin to occur. This research is also being used to improve PET imaging in the diagnosis and consequent treatment of these neurological disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Seeram, E. *Computed Tomography: Physical Principles, Clinical Applications and Quality Control*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders and Co., 2001.

von Schulthess, G. K., ed. *Clinical Positron Emission Tomography*. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 1999.

Westbrook, C. *Handbook of MRI Techniques*. Malden, MA: Blackwell Science, 1999.

### OTHER

Alzheimer Society of British Columbia. "What is Alzheimer Disease?" (cited June 2002) <<http://www.alzheimerbc.org/>>.

Harvard Medical School, Harvard University, Parkinson's Disease. (cited June 2002) <<http://www.hms.harvard.edu/nerprc/parkinson/>>.

Monique Laberge, Ph.D.

Imaging techniques see **Imaging studies**

## Imipramine

### Definition

Imipramine is a tricyclic antidepressant. It is sold under the brand name Tofranil in the United States.

### Purpose

Imipramine is used to relieve symptoms of **depression**. It is also used in the treatment of **enuresis** (bed-wetting) in people between the ages of six and 25.

### Description

Imipramine hydrochloride was the first tricyclic antidepressant to be discovered. Tricyclic **antidepressants** act to change the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses between cells. Mental well-being is partially dependent on maintaining a correct balance of these brain chemicals. Imipramine is thought to act primarily by increasing the concentration of norepinephrine and serotonin (both chemicals that stimulate nerve cells) and, to a lesser extent, by blocking the action of another brain chemical, acetylcholine. Imipramine shares most of the properties of other tricyclic antidepressants, such as **amitriptyline**, **amoxapine**, **clomipramine**, **desipramine**, **nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, and **trimipramine**.

The therapeutic effects of imipramine, like other antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for two to three weeks after starting the drug. People taking imipramine should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

## Recommended dosage

Imipramine is usually started with a total dosage of up to 100 mg per day divided into several smaller doses. This is generally increased to a total of 200 mg per day divided into several doses. Total dosages for patients who are not hospitalized should be no more than 200 mg per day. The recommended maximum dosage for the drug for all patients is 250 to 300 mg per day. Before dosages greater than 200 mg per day are taken, an electrocardiogram (ECG) should be done. This should be repeated at regular intervals until a steady-state dosage is reached. Lower dosages are recommended for adolescents (see also the warning detailed below) and older people (over age 60). The lowest dosage that controls symptoms of depression should be used.

Imipramine should be withdrawn gradually, rather than abruptly discontinued. This will help reduce the possibility of a **relapse** into depression.

## Precautions

There is a warning that accompanies patient information about antidepressants such as imipramine. It states that some studies have shown that children and teenagers who take antidepressants such as imipramine may have an increased likelihood of thinking about self-harm or killing themselves, or of attempting **suicide**. If a child is prescribed the drug, parents or caregivers should closely monitor the child because serious symptoms can develop suddenly. Any signs that a child is considering self-harm or suicide warrants an immediate call to the doctor. These signs might include worsening depression, panic attacks, difficulty falling asleep, irritability, planning to engage in self-harm or to attempt suicide, or abnormal excitement.

Like all tricyclic antidepressants, imipramine should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in people, especially the elderly, who have benign prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, and glaucoma, especially angle-closure glaucoma (the most severe form). Before starting treatment, people with these conditions should discuss the relative risks and benefits of treatment with their doctors to help determine if imipramine is the right antidepressant for them.

A common problem with tricyclic antidepressants is sedation (drowsiness, lack of physical and mental alertness). This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. In most patients, sedation decreases or disappears entirely with time, but until then patients taking imipramine should not perform hazardous

activities requiring mental alertness or coordination. The sedative effect is increased when imipramine is taken with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcoholic beverages, sleeping medications, other **sedatives**, or antihistamines. It may be dangerous to take imipramine in combination with these substances.

Imipramine may increase heart rate and **stress** on the heart. It may be dangerous for people with cardiovascular disease, especially those who have recently had a heart attack, to take this drug or other antidepressants in the same pharmacological class. Older people and people with a history of heart disease may develop heart arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat), heart conduction abnormalities, congestive heart failure, heart attack, abnormally rapid heart rates, and strokes.

Until a therapeutic dosage has been determined, people starting imipramine should be closely watched for signs of suicide. The risk of suicide is increased when imipramine is taken in overdose or combined with alcohol.

Manic episodes and the emergence of symptoms of preexisting psychotic states have been reported when imipramine therapy is started.

## Side effects

Imipramine shares side effects common to all tricyclic antidepressants. The most frequent of these are dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention, increased heart rate, sedation, irritability, dizziness, and decreased coordination. As with most side effects associated with tricyclic antidepressants, the intensity is highest at the beginning of therapy and tends to decrease with continued use.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Patients may also chew sugarless gum or suck on sugarless candy in order to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Imipramine usage has been linked to both increases and decreases in blood pressure and heart rate. Heart attacks, congestive heart failure, and strokes have been reported.

Confusion, disorientation, **delusions**, **insomnia**, and **anxiety** have also been reported as side effects in a small percentage of people taking imipramine. Problems associated with the skin (loss of sensation, numbness and tingling, rashes, spots, itching, and puffiness),

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Anticonvulsant**—A medication used to control abnormal electrical activity in the brain that causes seizures.

**Electrocardiogram (EKG)**—A test that measures the electrical activity of the heart as it beats. An abnormal EKG can indicate possible cardiac disease.

**Enuresis**—The inability to control urination; bed-wetting.

**Hypertension**—High blood pressure, often brought on by smoking, obesity, or other causes; one of the major causes of strokes.

**Manic**—Referring to mania, a state characterized by excessive activity, unwarranted euphoria, excitement, or emotion.

**Methylphenidate**—A mild central nervous system stimulant that is used to treat hyperactivity.

**Tachycardia**—A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

**seizures**, and ringing in the ears have also been reported. Nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, diarrhea, and abdominal cramping are all side effects associated with imipramine usage in a small number of people.

### Interactions

**Methylphenidate** may increase the effects of imipramine. This is usually avoided by reducing the dosage of imipramine.

Imipramine may increase the depressant action of alcohol. For this reason, people taking imipramine should not drink alcoholic beverages.

Dangerously high blood pressure has resulted from the combination of tricyclic antidepressants, such as imipramine, and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors. Because of this, imipramine should never be taken in combination with MAO inhibitors. Patients taking any MAO inhibitors, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parnate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAO inhibitor, then wait at least 14 days before starting imipramine or any other tricyclic antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing imipramine and starting an MAO inhibitor.

The sedative effects of imipramine are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sedatives, sleeping medications, or medications used for other mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. The anticholinergic (drying out) effects of imipramine are additive with other anticholinergic drugs such as **benztropine**, **biperiden**, **trihexyphenidyl**, and antihistamines.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael, and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.  
 Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.  
 Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.  
 Von Boxtel, Chris J., Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

- Juarez-Olguin, Hugo, and others. "Clinical Evidence of an Interaction Between Imipramine and Acetylsalicylic Acid on Protein Binding in Depressed Patients." *Clinical Neuropharmacology* 25.1 (2002): 32–36.  
 Jain A. K., N. S. Thomas, and R. Panchagnula. "Transdermal Drug Delivery of Imipramine Hydrochloride. I. Effect of Terpenes." *Journal of Controlled Release* 19.79 (2002): 93–101.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, P.O. Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.  
 American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.  
 American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.
- American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981.
- American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Web site: <<http://www.aspnet.org/>>.

#### OTHER

- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. Imipramine. Available online at: <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682389.html>>.
- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. Daily Med Current Medication Information: Imipramine hydrochloride, injected. Available online at: <<http://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo.cfm?id=2039>>.
- United States Food and Drug Administration. "Class Suicidality Labeling Language for Antidepressants." <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/foi/label/2005/16792s024lbl.pdf>>

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr. P.H.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

diagnose mental disorders, also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*) describes several impulse-control disorders:

- Pyromania. This disorder is diagnosed when a person has deliberately started fires out of an attraction to and curiosity about fire. To meet the criteria for this diagnosis, the firestarter cannot seek monetary gain or be trying to destroy evidence of criminal activity, or be trying to make a political statement or improve one's standard of living.
- Trichotillomania. This disorder is characterized by compulsive hair pulling.
- Intermittent explosive disorder. This diagnosis is indicated when a person cannot resist aggressive impulses that lead to serious acts of assault or property destruction.
- Kleptomania. The recurrent failure to resist the urge to steal, even though the items stolen are not needed for personal use or for their monetary value, is required for diagnosis of this disorder.
- Pathological gambling. This form of persistent gambling disrupts the affected individual's relationships or career.
- Impulse-control disorders not otherwise specified. This category is reserved for clinicians' use when the clinician has established that a patient's disorder is caused by lack of impulse control, but does not meet the criteria for the disorders listed above or the criteria for any other disorder listed in the *DSM-IV-TR*.

Process or behavioral **addiction** may also ultimately be classified as an impulse-control disorder, or even provide the umbrella classification for impulse-control disorders. Behavioral addiction has been suggested as the unifying theme of a number of other impulse disorders, including those in which the act or behavior is preceded by a feeling of tension or even eager anticipation. Individuals with these addictions cannot resist the behavior, even if they are aware it will cause harm to themselves or others. Once they have engaged in the behavior, there may be a feeling of pleasure or relief. For any impulsive behavior that **process addiction** may underlie, there is a consistent pattern of urge, anticipation or tension building, engaging in the behavior, release, and recurrence.

The behaviors now classified as impulse-control disorders may also fall into this category of behavioral addictions. These classifications include pathological gambling, kleptomania, pyromania, trichotillomania, compulsive buying, and compulsive sexual behavior. Another disorder that has arisen with the growing availability of the Internet is compulsive Internet/computer use, which studies are increasingly treating

## Impulse-control disorders

### Definition

Impulse-control disorders are characterized by the repeated inability to refrain from performing a particular action that is harmful either to oneself or to others.

### Description

Impulse-control disorders are thought to have both neurological and environmental causes and are known to be exacerbated by **stress**. Some mental health professionals regard several of these disorders, such as compulsive gambling or shopping, as addictions. In impulse-control disorder, the impulse action is typically preceded by feelings of tension and excitement and followed by a sense of relief and gratification, often—but not always—accompanied by guilt or remorse.

The Fourth Edition Text Revision of the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*** (a handbook that mental health professionals use to

as a real and growing problem. It has been proposed that these disorders be grouped in the *DSM-V* into a new category of Substance and Behavioral Addictions. Compulsive buying and impulsive-compulsive sex behavior would fall into the category of Impulsive-Compulsive Behaviors Not Otherwise Specified under this construct.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Koziol, Leonard F., Chris E. Stout, and Douglas H. Ruben, eds. *Handbook of Childhood Impulse Disorders and ADHD: Theory and Practice*. Springfield, IL: C.C. Thomas, 1993.
- Stein, D.J., ed. *Impulsivity and Aggression*. Chichester, NY: Wiley, 1995.

### PERIODICALS

- Grant, Jon E., JD, MD, M.P.H., Judson A. Brewer, MD, PhD, and Marc N. Potenza, MD, PhD. "The Neurobiology of Substance and Behavioral Addictions." *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 924–30.
- Lobo, Daniela S.S., MD, PhD, and Kennedy, James L., MD, F.R.C.P.C. "The Genetics of Gambling and Behavioral Addictions." *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 931–39.
- Mick, Thomas M., MD, and Eric Hollander, MD. "Impulsive-Compulsive Sexual Behavior." *CNS Spectrum* 11 (2006): 944–55.
- Pallanti, Stefano, MD, PhD. "From Impulse-Control Disorders Toward Behavioral Addictions." *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 921–22.
- Pallanti, Stefano, MD, PhD, Silvia Bernardi, MD, and Leonardo Quercioli MD. "The Shorter PROMIS Questionnaire and the Internet Addiction Scale in the Assessment of Multiple Addictions in a High-School Population: Prevalence and Related Disability." *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 966–74.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- Gamblers Anonymous, International Service Office, P.O. Box 17173, Los Angeles, CA 90017. Telephone: (213) 386-8789. Web site: <<http://www.gamblersanonymous.org/>>.
- Sex Addicts Anonymous, ISO of SAA, PO Box 70949, Houston, TX 77270. Web site: <<http://saa-recovery.org/>>

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Inderal see **Propranolol**

## Informed consent

### Definition

Informed consent is a legal document in all 50 states, prepared as an agreement for treatment, non-treatment, or for an invasive procedure that requires physicians to disclose the benefits, risks, and alternatives to the treatment, non-treatment, or procedure. It is the method by which a fully informed, rational patient may be involved in the choices about his or her health. Informed consent applies to mental health practitioners (psychiatrists, psychologists, etc.) in their treatment with their clients in generally the same way as physicians with their patients.

### Description

Informed consent stems from the legal and ethical right the patient has to decide what is done to his or her body, and from the mental health provider's ethical duty to ensure that the patient is involved in decisions about his or her own health care. The process of ensuring informed consent for treatment involves five elements, all of which involve information exchange between doctor and patient and are a part of patient education. First, in words the patient can understand, the therapist must convey three things: (1) the details of a treatment or procedure, (2) its potential benefits and serious risks, and (3) any feasible alternatives. The patient should be presented with information on the most likely outcomes of treatment. Next, the practitioner must evaluate whether or not the person has understood what has been said, must ascertain that the risks have been accepted, and that the patient is giving consent to proceed with the treatment with full knowledge and forethought. Finally, the patient must sign the consent form, which documents in generic format the major points of consideration. The only exception to this is securing informed consent during extreme emergencies. It is critical that the patient receive enough information on which to base informed consent, and that the consent is wholly voluntary and has not been forced in any way.

Consent is generally not assumed or considered to be "implied" except in emergency cases where a patient's life is in danger, no prior wishes have been expressed, and a family member or guardian is not present to give consent. Furthermore, a person must possess the mental faculties to understand and give consent; people who are mentally retarded, intoxicated, or otherwise impaired due to lack of sleep may not be legally able to consent to treatment.

According to the Ethical Principles of Psychologists and Code of Conduct designed by the American Psychological Association, informed consent also applies when conducting research involving human subjects prior to their participation. Participants in the study should be informed in understandable language to three main points. First, the participant should be informed about the nature of the research. Secondly, participants should be informed that their participation is completely voluntary and that they are free to withdraw from or not participate in the study at any time. Consent must be made without pressure being put on the participant to engage in the study. Finally, the potential consequences of participating or withdrawing should be presented to the participant. This includes risks, discomfort, and limitations of confidentiality.

With regard to either therapy treatment or research participation, another member of the health care/research team may obtain the signed informed consent with the assurance that the provider has satisfied the requirements of informed consent.

The actual informed consent form is to document the process and protect the provider and the hospital. Legally, it is proof that things have been covered and the patient agrees to the procedure, risks, benefits, options, etc. The informed consent process is in place for the protection of the patient. The process is in place to ensure that everything is discussed with the patient: all of the options, all of the common risks, the worst case scenario, and other similar situations.

### Viewpoints

There is a theory that the practice of acquiring informed consent is rooted in the post–World War II Nuremberg Trials. Following the war crimes tribunal in 1949, as a result of the Kaarl Brandt case, 10 standards were put forth regarding physician's requirements for experimentation on human subjects. This established a new standard of ethical medical behavior for the post–World War II human rights age, and the concept of voluntary informed consent was established. A number of rules accompanied voluntary informed consent within the realms of research. It could only be requested for experimentation for the gain of society, for the potential acquisition of knowledge of the pathology, and for studies performed that avoided physical and mental suffering to the fullest extent possible.

A crucial component of informed consent is that the person signing it is competent or able to make a rational decision and meaningfully give consent. This

situation gets more complicated when working with people who are unable to understand what has been explained or are unable to make a reasonable decision about their health care. According to the Code of Conduct for Psychologists designed by the American Psychological Association, if this is the case, informed permission from a “legally authorized person” should then be sought, if that is a legal alternative. The ethical guidelines are more stringent than legal guidelines in many states, where the informed consent of the parent or guardian is all that is required, whether or not the professional has attempted to explain the procedure to the client.

Although it is necessary to present the procedure or treatment formally to the patient, there is concern that this process could hurt the therapeutic relationship between the client and therapist. For example, if an informed consent is too detailed, it could frighten a new client who may be hesitant about therapy to begin with. In addition, informing patients about the risks of treatment might scare them into refusing it when the risks of non-treatment are even greater. There are however, advantages to the informed consent process. First, it can be empowering to the patient to understand that he/she plays an important role in their own treatment. They are encouraged to be active participants in the treatment process and know their options well enough to make the best treatment decisions for themselves. This also shifts the responsibility to patients to work with the therapist towards their mental health goals possibly increasing self-confidence and autonomy, and decreasing dependence on the therapist.

### Professional implications

There are undoubtedly many issues regarding informed consent. As modern society continues to be litigious, the courts and/or government may take on a more active role in deciding the extent to which patients must be informed of treatments, procedures, and **clinical trials** in which they voluntarily become enrolled. Therefore, health care providers must become more educated as to what needs to be conveyed to patients, and to what extent.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Berg, Jessica W., and others. *Informed Consent: Legal Theory and Clinical Practice*. 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.

**PERIODICALS**

- Caplan, Arthur L. "Ethical Issues Surrounding Forced, Mandated, or Coerced Treatment." *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment* 31.2, Sep. 2006: 117–20.
- Dunn, Laura B., and others. "Assessing Decisional Capacity for Clinical Research or Treatment: A Review of Instruments." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.8, Aug. 2006: 1323–34.
- Fallon, April. "Informed Consent in the Practice of Group Psychotherapy." *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy* 56.4, 2006: 431–53.
- Jackson, Grace E. "Mental Health Screening in Schools: Essentials of Informed Consent." *Ethical Human Psychology and Psychiatry* 8.3, Fall–Winter 2006: 217–24.

**OTHER**

- "Health Information for surgical procedures, family health, patient education." <<http://www.docs4patients.com/informed-consent.asp>>.
- "Informed Consent." <<http://www.nocirc.org/consent>>.
- "Informed Consent." The University of Washington. <<http://eduserv.hsce.washington.edu/bioethics/topics/constncl.html>>.
- "Informed Consent." *Risk Management Handbook*. Yale–New Haven Hospital & Yale University School of Medicine. <[http://info.med.yale.edu/cim/risk/handbook/rmh\\_informed Consent.html](http://info.med.yale.edu/cim/risk/handbook/rmh_informed Consent.html)>.
- "Risk Management Issues: Improved Informed Consent." <<http://www.rmf.harvard.edu/rmLibrary/rmissues/infconsent/body.html>>.

Jenifer P. Marom, Ph.D.



**A teenager huffing an inhalant from a plastic bag. (James Marshall/Corbis)**

## Inhalants and related disorders

### Definition

The inhalants are a class of drugs that include a broad range of chemicals found in hundreds of different products, many of which are readily available to the general population. These chemicals include volatile solvents (liquids that vaporize at room temperature) and aerosols (sprays that contain solvents and propellants). Examples include glue, gasoline, paint thinner, hair spray, lighter fluid, spray paint, nail polish remover, correction fluid, rubber cement, felt-tip marker fluids, vegetable sprays, and certain cleaners. The inhalants share a common route of administration—that is, they are all drawn into the body by breathing. They are usually taken either by breathing in the vapors directly from a container (known as “sniffing”); by inhaling fumes from substances placed in a bag (known as “bagging”); or by inhaling the substance from a cloth soaked in it (known as “huffing”).

Inhalants take effect very quickly because they get into the bloodstream rapidly via the lungs. The “high” from inhalants is usually brief, so that users often take inhalants repeatedly over several hours. This pattern of use can be dangerous, leading to unconsciousness or even death.

The latest revision of the manual that is used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* published in 2000 (also known as *DSM-IV-TR*). It lists inhalant dependence and inhalant abuse as substance use disorders. In addition, the inhalant-induced disorder of inhalant intoxication is listed in the substance-related disorders section as well. Inhalant withdrawal is not listed in the *DSM-IV-TR* because it is not clear that there is a “clinically significant” withdrawal syndrome. In addition, withdrawal is not included as a symptom of inhalant dependence, whereas withdrawal is a symptom of dependence for all other substances.

Anesthetic gases (such as nitrous oxide, chloroform, or ether) and nitrites (including amyl or butyl nitrite) are not included under inhalant-related disorders in the

*DSM-IV-TR* because they have slightly different intoxication syndromes. Problems with the use of these substances are to be diagnosed under "Other Substance-Related Disorders." There is, however, a significant degree of overlap between the symptoms of disorders related to inhalants and these "other" substances.

### **Inhalant dependence**

Inhalant dependence, or **addiction**, is essentially a syndrome in which a person continues to use inhalants in spite of significant problems caused by or made worse by the use of these substances. People who use inhalants heavily may develop tolerance to the drug, which indicates that they are physically dependent on it.

### **Inhalant abuse**

Inhalant abuse is a less serious condition than inhalant dependence; in most cases, it does not involve physical dependence on the drug. Inhalant abuse refers essentially to significant negative consequences from the recurrent use of inhalants.

### **Inhalant intoxication**

When a person uses enough of an inhalant, they will get "high" from it. The symptoms of intoxication differ slightly depending on the type of inhalant, the amount used, and other factors. There is, however, a predictable set of symptoms of inhalant intoxication. When too much of the substance is taken, an individual can overdose.

## **Description**

### **Inhalant dependence**

Dependence on inhalants involves problems related to the use of inhalants. It is often difficult for a person to stop using the inhalants despite these problems. Individuals dependent on inhalants may use these chemicals several times per week or every day. They may have problems with unemployment, with family relationships, and/or such physical problems as kidney or liver damage caused by the use of inhalants.

### **Inhalant abuse**

People who abuse inhalants typically use them less frequently than those who are dependent on them. Despite less frequent use, however, a person with inhalant abuse suffers negative consequences. For example, the use of inhalants may contribute to poor grades or school truancy.

### **Inhalant intoxication**

Intoxication from inhalants occurs rapidly (usually within five minutes) and lasts for a short period of time (from 5–30 minutes). Inhalants typically have a depressant effect on the central nervous system, similar to the effects of alcohol; and produce feelings of euphoria (feeling good), excitement, dizziness, and slurred speech. In addition, persons intoxicated by inhalants may feel as if they are floating, or feel a sense of increased power. Severe intoxication from inhalants can cause coma or even death.

## **Causes and symptoms**

### **Causes**

Because inhalants are readily available and inexpensive, they are often used by children (ages 6–16) and the poor. Factors that are associated with inhalant use include poverty; a history of childhood abuse; poor grades; and dropping out of school. The latter two factors may simply be a result of inhalant use, however, rather than its cause.

The use of inhalants is highly likely to be influenced by peers. Inhalants are often used in group settings. The solitary consumption of inhalants is associated with heavy, prolonged use; it may indicate that the person has a more serious problem with these substances.

### **Symptoms**

**INHALANT DEPENDENCE.** The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that three or more of the following symptoms must occur at any time during a 12-month period (and cause significant impairment or distress) in order to meet diagnostic criteria for inhalant dependence:

- **Tolerance.** The individual either has to use increasingly higher amounts of the drug over time in order to achieve the same effect, or finds that the same amount of the drug has much less of an effect over time than before. After using inhalants regularly for a while, people may find that they need to use at least 50% more than the amount they started with in order to get the same effect.
- **Loss of control.** The person either repeatedly uses a larger quantity of inhalant than planned, or uses the inhalant over a longer period of time than planned. For instance, someone may begin using inhalants on school days, after initially limiting their use to weekends.
- **Inability to stop using.** The person has either unsuccessfully attempted to cut down or stop using the

inhalants, or has a persistent desire to stop using. Users may find that despite efforts to stop using inhalants on school days, they cannot stop.

- Time. The affected person spends large amounts of time obtaining inhalants, using them, being under the influence of inhalants, and recovering from their effects. Obtaining the inhalants might not take up much time because they are readily available for little money, but the person may use them repeatedly for hours each day.
- Interference with activities. The affected person either gives up or reduces the amount of time involved in recreational activities, social activities, and/or occupational activities because of the use of inhalants. The person may use inhalants instead of playing sports, spending time with friends, or going to work.
- Harm to self. The person continues to use inhalants in spite of developing either a physical (liver damage or heart problems, for example) or psychological problem (such as depression or memory problems) that is caused by or made worse by the use of inhalants.

**INHALANT ABUSE.** The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that one or more of the following symptoms must occur at any time during a 12-month period (and cause significant impairment or distress) in order to meet diagnostic criteria for inhalant abuse:

- Interference with role fulfillment. The person's use of inhalants frequently interferes with his or her ability to fulfill obligations at work, home, or school. People may find they are unable to do chores or pay attention in school because they are under the influence of inhalants.
- Danger to self. The person repeatedly uses inhalants in situations in which their influence may be physically hazardous (while driving a car, for example).
- Legal problems. The person has recurrent legal problems related to using inhalants (such as arrests for assaults while under the influence of inhalants).
- Social problems. The person continues to use inhalants despite repeated interpersonal or relationship problems caused by or made worse by the use of inhalants. For example, the affected person may get into arguments related to inhalant use.

**INHALANT INTOXICATION.** The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that the following symptoms must be present in order to meet diagnostic criteria for inhalant intoxication:

- Use. The person recently intentionally used an inhalant.
- Personality changes. The person experiences significant behavioral or psychological changes during or

shortly after use of an inhalant. These changes may include spoiling for a fight; assaultiveness; poor judgment; apathy ("don't care" attitude); or impaired functioning socially or at work or school.

- Inhalant-specific intoxication syndrome. Two or more of the following symptoms occur during or shortly after inhalant use or exposure: dizziness; involuntary side-to-side eye movements (nystagmus); loss of coordination; slurred speech; unsteady gait (difficulty walking); lethargy (fatigue); slowed reflexes; psychomotor retardation (moving slowly); tremor (shaking); generalized muscle weakness; blurred vision or double vision; stupor or coma; and euphoria (a giddy sensation of happiness or well-being).

## Demographics

Inhalants are one of the few substances more commonly used by younger children rather than older ones. It has been estimated that 10%–20% of youths aged 12–17 have tried inhalants. About 6% of the United States population admits to having tried inhalants prior to fourth grade. The peak time for inhalant use appears to be between the seventh and ninth grades. Inhalants are sometimes referred to as "gateway" drugs, which means that they are one of the first drugs that people try before moving on to such other substances as alcohol, marijuana, and **cocaine**. Only a small proportion of those who have used inhalants would meet diagnostic criteria for dependence or abuse.

Males generally use inhalants more frequently than females. However, a National Household Survey on Drug Abuse has shown no gender differences in rates of inhalant use in youths between the ages of 12 and 17. Children younger than 12 and adults who use inhalants, however, are more likely to be male.

## Diagnosis

People rarely seek treatment on their own for inhalant dependence or abuse. In some cases, the child or adolescent is brought to a doctor by a parent or other relative who is concerned about personality changes, a chemical odor on the child's breath, or other signs of inhalant abuse. The parent may also have discovered empty containers of the inhaled substance in the child's room or elsewhere in the house. In other cases, the child or adolescent's use of inhalants is diagnosed during a medical interview, when he or she is brought to a hospital emergency room after overdosing on the inhalant or being injured in an accident related to inhalant use. Although inhalants can be

detected in blood or urine samples, laboratory tests may not always confirm the **diagnosis** because the inhalants do not remain in the system very long.

### **Inhalant dependence**

Other substance use disorders are commonly seen among people diagnosed with inhalant dependence. The use of inhalants is usually secondary to the use of other substances, however; only occasionally are inhalants a person's primary drug of choice.

### **Inhalant abuse**

The use of other substances is not uncommon among people who abuse inhalants.

### **Inhalant intoxication**

Intoxication from the use of such other substances as alcohol, **sedatives**, hypnotics (medications to induce sleep), and anxiolytics (tranquilizers) can resemble intoxication caused by inhalants. Furthermore, people under the influence of inhalants may experience **hallucinations** (typically auditory, visual, or tactile); other perceptual disturbances (such as illusions); or **delusions** (believing they can fly, for example).

## **Treatments**

### **Inhalant dependence and abuse**

Chronic inhalant users are difficult to treat because they often have many serious personal and social problems. They also have difficulty staying away from inhalants; **relapse** rates are high. Treatment usually takes a long time and involves enlisting the support of the person's family; changing the friendship network if the individual uses with others; teaching coping skills; and increasing self-esteem.

### **Inhalant intoxication**

Inhalant intoxication is often treated in a hospital emergency room when the affected person begins to suffer serious psychological (such as hallucinations or delusions) or medical consequences (difficulty breathing, headache, nausea, vomiting) from inhalant use. The most serious medical risk from inhalant use is "sudden sniffing death." A person using inhalants, especially if they are using the substance repeatedly in a single, prolonged session, may start to have a rapid and irregular heartbeat or severe difficulty breathing, followed by heart failure and death. Sudden sniffing death can occur within minutes. In addition, inhalant use can cause permanent damage to the **brain**, lung,

kidney, muscle, and heart. The vapors themselves cause damage, but there are also dangerously high levels of copper, zinc, and heavy metals in many inhalants.

People who use inhalants may also be treated for injuries sustained while under the influence of inhalants or while using inhalants. For example, individuals intoxicated by inhalants may fall and injure themselves, or they may drive while intoxicated and have an accident. People who use inhalants may also die from or require treatment for burns because many inhalants are highly flammable. They may also need emergency treatment for suffocation from inhaling with a plastic bag over the head, or for choking on inhaled vomit.

## **Prognosis**

### **Inhalant dependence and abuse**

The course of inhalant abuse and dependence differs somewhat depending on the affected person's age. Younger children who are dependent on or abuse inhalants use them regularly, especially on weekends and after school. As children get older, they often stop using inhalants. They may stop substance use altogether or they may move on to other substances. Adults who abuse or are dependent on inhalants may use inhalants regularly for years. They may also frequently "binge" on inhalants (i.e., using them much more frequently for shorter periods of time). This pattern of use can go on for years.

The use of inhalants and subsequent dependence on the substance occurs among people who do not have access to other drugs or are otherwise isolated (such as prison inmates). Also, as with other substance use disorders, people who have greater access to inhalants are more likely to develop dependence on them. This group of people may include workers in industrial settings with ready access to inhalants.

## **Prevention**

Comprehensive prevention programs that involve families, schools, communities, and the media (such as television) can be effective in reducing **substance abuse**. The recurring theme in these programs is to stay away from drugs in the first place, which is the primary method of ensuring that one does not develop a substance use disorder.

Parents can help prevent the misuse of inhalants by educating their children about the negative effects of inhalant use. Both teachers and parents can help prevent inhalant abuse and dependence by recognizing the signs of inhalant use, which include chemical odors

## KEY TERMS

**Aerosol**—A liquid substance sealed in a metal container under pressure with an inert gas that propels the liquid as a spray or foam through a nozzle.

**Euphoria**—A feeling or state of well-being or elation.

**Gateway drug**—A mood-altering drug or substance, typically used by younger or new drug users, that may lead to the use of more dangerous drugs.

**Nystagmus**—A persistent involuntary movement of the eyes from side to side. It is one of the symptoms of inhalant intoxication syndrome.

**Sudden sniffing death**—Death resulting from heart failure caused by heavy use of inhalants in a single lengthy session.

**Syndrome**—A group of symptoms that together characterize a disease or disorder.

**Volatile solvent**—A solvent (substance that will dissolve another substance) that evaporates at room temperature.

on the child's breath or clothes; slurred speech; a drunken or disoriented appearance; nausea or lack of appetite; and inattentiveness and lack of coordination.

*See also* Polysubstance abuse.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street, Washington, DC 20005. (202) 682-6000. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. (800) 374-2721. <<http://www.apa.org>>.

National Clearinghouse for Alcohol and Drug Information. (800) 729-6686. <<http://www.health.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 10-05, Rockville, MD 20857. Nationwide Helpline: (800) 662-HELP. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>. National Library of Medicine. 8600 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20894. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/drugabuse.html>>.

Jennifer Hahn, Ph.D.

Inkblot test see **Rorschach technique**

## Insomnia

### Definition

Insomnia is a condition that occurs when a person is unable to get long enough or refreshing enough sleep at night. An inability to fall asleep, an inability to stay asleep, or waking too early before having gotten enough sleep are all forms of insomnia.

### Description

Insomnia is a disorder in which people are unable to get enough, or enough restorative, sleep because of one or more factors. People with insomnia often have daytime symptoms related to a lack of sleep, such as daytime sleepiness, **fatigue**, and decreased mental clarity.

There are two main types of insomnia. One is acute insomnia (sometimes called transient insomnia). This type occurs when insomnia symptoms exist over a reasonably short period of time. The other type is chronic insomnia, which is diagnosed when the symptoms manifest themselves over a longer period (generally more than one month). Insomnia can also be classified as either primary or secondary. Primary insomnia is a disorder that cannot be attributed to another condition or disorder. Secondary insomnia can be traced back to a source, which may be a medical condition; the use of medications, alcohol, or other substances; or a mental disorder such as severe **depression**.

Not all disruptions in the normal pattern of sleeping and waking are considered insomnia. Such factors as jet lag, unusually high levels of **stress**, changing work shifts, or other drastic changes in the person's routine can all lead to sleep problems. Unless the problems are ongoing and severe enough that they are causing distress for the person in important areas of life, he or she is not considered to have insomnia.

### Causes and symptoms

The symptoms of insomnia can vary greatly from person to person. Some people find that they have

trouble falling asleep at night and can lie in bed for hours without being able to drift off. Others find that they fall asleep easily, but wake many times during the night. Other people awaken too early in the morning and are then unable to get back to sleep. Some people even get enough hours of sleep but find that they do not feel rested, often because their sleep is too light.

Not all people experiencing insomnia have symptoms that occur during the daytime, but many do. Some people experience such symptoms as reduced ability to concentrate or pay attention, decreased alertness, and mental sluggishness. Some people have trouble staying awake. More people think that they have these symptoms than actually do. Upon clinical examination, many people who think that they are excessively sleepy during the day actually are not.

Many different things are thought to cause or contribute to insomnia. Stressors, such as starting a new job, or changes in routine, such as beginning to work a different shift, can lead to temporary sleep problems. Sleep problems can become aggravated and persist after the worry or change causing the sleep problem has been resolved. This persistence is thought to be related to the **anxiety** created by attempting to go to sleep and not expecting to fall asleep. Anxiety about sleep loss can lead to a vicious circle in which the person has more and more concern about being able to fall asleep, making it increasingly difficult to do so. Some people even report that they are better able to fall asleep when they are not in their beds. This relative success is thought to occur because the new environment is not associated with the fear and anxiety of not being able to sleep, therefore making it easier to fall asleep.

Many other factors are thought to lead to or perpetuate insomnia. These include drinking tea or coffee, eating a large meal, taking certain medications or drugs of **abuse (cocaine, amphetamines)** that have a stimulating effect, or exercising heavily in the hours before attempting to sleep. Also, attempting to sleep in a room with too much light or noise can make it harder for some people to sleep. Doing activities in bed that are not associated with sleep, such as reading or watching television, can make it more difficult for some people to fall asleep when they finally want to. Sleep may be even more difficult if the television show or book was frightening or upsetting.

## Demographics

There are many different opinions about how much of the general American population experiences insomnia. Estimates suggest that around 5–20% of the adult population suffers from some form of insomnia

or long-term sleeping problem. Nearly half report at least occasional sleeping problems. Accurate data is difficult to gather, as many people misperceive how much sleep they actually get and how many times they normally wake up during the night. It is generally agreed, however, that women are more likely than men to suffer from insomnia. As people get older, they are also more likely to experience insomnia. People who are nervous or tense are more likely to have insomnia than those who are not. Lastly, people who live near airports or other sources of nighttime as well as daytime noise have higher rates of insomnia than the general population.

## Diagnosis

According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders-IV-TR(DSM-IV-TR)*, which presents the guidelines used by the American Psychiatric Association for **diagnosis** of disorders, in order to be diagnosed with primary insomnia, a person must experience the symptoms for at least a month, and the symptoms must cause them distress or reduce their ability to function successfully. The symptoms cannot be caused by a different sleep disorder, a medical condition, or be a side effect of medications or **substance abuse**.

Insomnia may also be comorbid with (occur together with) other psychiatric disorders, including mania, depression, and the **anxiety disorders**.

Insomnia is a disorder that is usually self-reported; that is, patients usually bring up the subject of sleep problems with their doctors rather than the doctor suggesting the diagnosis. There are no laboratory tests for insomnia, but the doctor may suggest keeping a sleep diary, in which the patient notes the time they went to bed, the time(s) at which they got up during the night, their activities before bed, etc. Sleep diaries can be helpful in uncovering specific factors related to the insomnia.

## Treatments

Many treatments have been explored for treating insomnia in a number of different settings. The patient may wish to consider consulting a sleep clinic or a doctor who specializes in the treatment of **sleep disorders** as well as their family doctor.

Behavioral and educational therapies are usually tried first, because they do not have side effects and cannot create a chemical dependence the way some sleep medications can. Many different approaches have been designed to help patients whose insomnia is linked to particular factors.

### Behavioral treatments

One common behavioral therapy involves changing any pre-bedtime activities or behaviors that might interfere with sleep. Avoiding large meals, alcohol or caffeinated beverages, or intensive exercise in the hours before bedtime may help the patient to fall asleep.

Another non-medicinal treatment for insomnia involves controlling the patient's mental associations with the bedroom. The patient is trained to associate the bed only with sleep, not with the frustration of trying to fall asleep or with such waking activities as reading or watching television. As part of this training, if the patient cannot sleep after a certain amount of time, he or she is instructed to get out of bed and spend time somewhere else in the house doing an activity that they find relaxing. The patient lies down again only when sleepy. This technique helps to prevent frustration from trying to sleep.

Another common technique that does not involve medication is sleep restriction therapy. During this therapy, the amount of time that patients are allowed to spend in bed is limited to only slightly more time than they believe that they already sleep at night. Gradually the amount of time patients are allowed to spend in bed is increased until they are getting a full night's sleep. Unfortunately, many people find this treatment difficult to stick with, because they often become mildly sleep-deprived. The resultant fatigue can be useful, however, as it may help them fall asleep more easily and to stay asleep longer at night.

Teaching relaxation techniques that help patients concentrate on relaxing thoughts or images can also help patients experiencing insomnia. Most of these therapies also include setting times for waking and having the patient stick to them even if he or she has not gotten a full night of sleep. The elimination of all daytime napping can help to facilitate sleep at night. These treatments are effective by themselves, but may also be combined with other approaches. The course of treatment depends on the patient's specific symptoms.

### Treatment with medications

Many different medicines, which are called hypnotics, are used to treat insomnia. These are usually not recommended for use for longer than a week because they may cause dependence. In addition, there is always the risk of side effects. There are many different types of hypnotics, and choosing one for a patient depends on the patient's symptoms, other drugs that he or she may be taking, any medical or psychological conditions, and other health factors. Medication treatment is best used in coordination with a behavioral therapy program.

## KEY TERMS

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

Recently, two drugs have been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration for long-term use. A drug called ramelteon (brand name Rozerem) has shown no evidence of potential for abuse, dependence or withdrawal in clinical studies. Eszopiclone (brand name Lunesta) is also approved for long-term use. Rozerem and Lunesta are currently available by prescription only.

### Alternative remedies

Alternative remedies for insomnia, particularly herbal preparations, should be mentioned because they are among the most popular nonprescription treatments for sleep problems. According to *Prevention* magazine, insomnia is the sixth most common condition treated with herbal formulas in the United States; it accounts for 18% of all use of herbal preparations. Some herbs used for insomnia are safer than others. Persons who are using alternative remedies, whether to treat insomnia or other conditions, should always tell their doctor what they are taking, how much, and how often. This warning is important because some herbal preparations that are safe in themselves can interact with prescription medications.

### Prognosis

Untreated insomnia has potentially serious consequences, including an increased risk of motor vehicle accidents, impaired school or job performance, and a high rate of absenteeism from work. Fortunately, insomnia can be treated very effectively in most patients. Treatment using a combination of approaches is usually most effective. Patients who have had insomnia once are at an increased risk for recurrent insomnia.

*See also* Caffeine-related disorders; Chamomile; Passionflower; Valerian.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Currie, Shawn R. "Sleep Dysfunction." *Clinicians's Handbook of Adult Behavioral Assessment*, Ed. Michel Hersen. San Diego, CA: Elsevier Academic Press, 2006: 401–430.

- Lee-Chiong, Teofilo L. Ed. *Sleep: A Comprehensive Handbook*. New York: Wiley-Liss, 2006.
- Neubauer, David N. *Understanding Sleeplessness: Perspectives on Insomnia*. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 2003.
- Pelletier, Kenneth R. *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.
- Spinella, Marcello. *Concise Handbook of Psychoactive Herbs: Medicinal Herbs for Treating Psychological and Neurological Problems*. New York: The Haworth Herbal Press, 2005.
- Szuba, Martin P., Kloss, Jacqueline D., and Dinges, David F., eds. *Insomnia: Principles and Management*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2003.

#### PERIODICALS

- Irwin, Michael R. and Cole, Jason C. "Comparative Meta-Analysis of Behavioral Interventions for Insomnia and Their Efficacy in Middle-Aged Adults and in Older Adults 55+ Years of Age." *Health Psychology*, 25(1), Jan 2006: 3–14.
- Jansson, Markus and Linton, Steven J. "The Role of Anxiety and Depression in the Development of Insomnia: Cross-Sectional and Prospective Analyses." *Psychology and Health*, 21(3), Jun 2006: 383–397.
- Jansson, Markus and Linton, Steven J. "Psychosocial Work Stressors in the Development and Maintenance of Insomnia: A Prospective Study." *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology*, 11(3), Jul 2006: 241–248.
- Manber, Rachel and Harvey, Allison. "Historical Perspective and Future Directions in Cognitive Behavioral Therapy for Insomnia and Behavioral Sleep Medicine." *Clinical Psychology Review*, 25(5), Jul 2005: 535–538.
- Smith, Michael T. and Perlis, Michael L. "Who Is a Candidate for Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy for Insomnia?" *Health Psychology*, 25(1), Jan 2006: 15–19.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Sleep Medicine. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901. (507) 287-6006. <[www.asda.org](http://www.asda.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

Intake evaluation see **Assessment and diagnosis**

## Intelligence tests

#### Definition

Intelligence tests are psychological tests that are designed to measure a variety mental functions, such as reasoning, comprehension, and judgment.

#### Purpose

The goal of intelligence tests is to obtain an idea of the person's intellectual potential. The tests center around a set of stimuli designed to yield a score based on the test maker's model of what makes up intelligence. Intelligence tests are often given as a part of a battery of tests.

#### Precautions

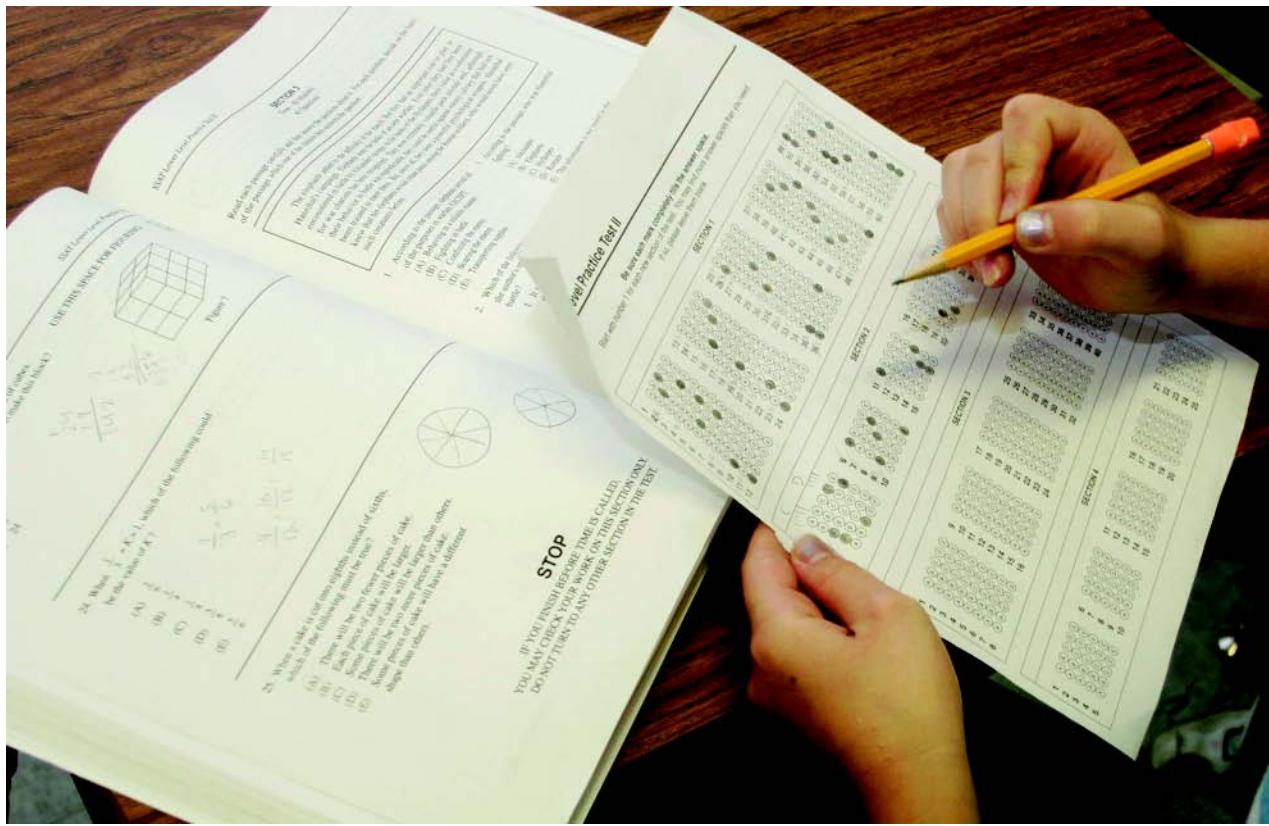
There are many different types of intelligence tests and they all do not measure the same abilities. Although the tests often have aspects that are related with each other, we should not expect that scores one intelligence test, that measures a single factor, will be similar to scores on another intelligence test, that measures a variety of factors. Also, when determining whether or not to use an intelligence test, a person should make sure that the test has been adequately developed and has solid research to show its reliability and validity. Additionally, psychometric testing requires a clinically trained examiner. Therefore, the test should only be administered and interpreted by a trained professional.

A central criticism of intelligence tests is that psychologists and educators use these tests to distribute the limited resources of our society. These test results are used to provide rewards such as special classes for gifted students, admission to college, and employment. Those who do not qualify for these resources based on intelligence test scores may feel angry and as if the tests are denying them opportunities for success. Unfortunately, intelligence test scores have not only become associated with a person's ability to perform certain tasks, but with self-worth.

Many people are under the false assumption that intelligence tests measure a person's inborn or biological intelligence. Intelligence tests are based on an individual's interaction with the environment and never exclusively measure inborn intelligence. Intelligence tests have been associated with categorizing and stereotyping people. Additionally, knowledge of one's performance on an intelligence test may affect a person's aspirations and motivation to obtain goals. Intelligence tests can be culturally biased against certain minority groups.

#### Description

When taking an intelligence test, a person can expect to do a variety of tasks. These tasks may include having to answer questions that are asked verbally, doing mathematical problems, and doing a variety of tasks that require eye hand coordination.



**A student checks their work during an SSAT camp.** (Jen Hulshizer/Star Ledger/Corbis)

Some tasks may be timed and require the person to work as quickly as possible. Typically, most questions and tasks start out easy and progressively get more difficult. It is unusual for anyone to know the answer to all of the questions or be able to complete all of the tasks. If a person is unsure of an answer, guessing is usually allowed.

The four most commonly used intelligence tests are:

- Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scales
- Wechsler-Adult Intelligence Scale
- Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children
- Wechsler Primary & Preschool Scale of Intelligence

### **Advantages**

In general, intelligence tests measure a wide variety of human behaviors better than any other measure that has been developed. They allow professionals to have a uniform way of comparing a person's performance with that of other people who are similar in age. These tests also provide information on cultural and biological differences among people.

Intelligence tests are excellent predictors of academic achievement and provide an outline of a person's mental strengths and weaknesses. Many times the scores have revealed talents in many people, which have lead to an improvement in their educational opportunities. Teacher, parents, and psychologists are able to devise individual curriculum that matches a person's level of development and expectations.

### **Disadvantages**

Some researchers argue that intelligence tests have serious shortcomings. For example, many intelligence tests produce a single intelligence score. This single score is often inadequate in explaining the multidimensional aspects of intelligence. Another problem with a single score is the fact that individuals with similar intelligence test scores can vary greatly in their expression of these talents. It is important to know the person's performance on the various subtests that make up the overall intelligence test score. Knowing the performance on these various scales can influence the understanding of a person's abilities and how these abilities are expressed. For example, two people have identical scores on intelligence tests.

Although both people have the same test score, one person may have obtained the score because of strong verbal skills while the other may have obtained the score because of strong skills in perceiving and organizing various tasks.

Furthermore, intelligence tests only measure a sample of behaviors or situations in which intelligent behavior is revealed. For instance, some intelligence tests do not measure a person's everyday functioning, social knowledge, mechanical skills, and/or creativity. Along with this, the formats of many intelligence tests do not capture the complexity and immediacy of real-life situations. Therefore, intelligence tests have been criticized for their limited ability to predict non-test or nonacademic intellectual abilities. Since intelligence test scores can be influenced by a variety of different experiences and behaviors, they should not be considered a perfect indicator of a person's intellectual potential.

## Results

The person's raw scores on an intelligence test are typically converted to standard scores. The standard scores allow the examiner to compare the individual's score to other people who have taken the test. Additionally, by converting raw scores to standard scores the examiner has uniform scores and can more easily compare an individual's performance on one test with the individual's performance on another test. Depending on the intelligence test that is used, a variety of scores can be obtained. Most intelligence tests generate an overall intelligence quotient or IQ. As previously noted, it is valuable to know how a person performs on the various tasks that make up the test. This can influence the interpretation of the test and what the IQ means. The average of score for most intelligence tests is 100.

*See also* Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scales; Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale; Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Kaufman, Alan, S., and Elizabeth O. Lichtenberger.

*Assessing Adolescent and Adult Intelligence*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2001.

Matarazzo, J. D. *Wechsler's Measurement and Appraisal of Adult Intelligence*. 5th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 1972.

Sattler, Jerome M. "Issues Related to the Measurement and Change of Intelligence." In *Assessment of Children: Cognitive Applications*. 4th ed. San Diego: Jerome M. Sattler, Publisher, Inc., 2001.

Sattler, Jerome M. and Lisa Weyandt. "Specific Learning Disabilities." In *Assessment of Children: Behavioral and Clinical Applications*. 4th ed. Written by Jerome M. Sattler. San Diego: Jerome M. Sattler, Publisher, Inc., 2002.

Keith Beard, Psy.D.

## Intermittent explosive disorder

### Definition

Intermittent explosive disorder (IED) is a disorder characterized by impulsive acts of aggression, as contrasted with planned violent or aggressive acts. The aggressive episodes may take the form of "spells" or "attacks," with symptoms beginning minutes to hours before the actual acting-out. The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (2000), also known as *DSM-IV-TR*, which is the basic reference work consulted by mental health professionals in determining the **diagnosis** of a mental disorder, classifies IED under the general heading of "Impulse-Control Disorders Not Elsewhere Classified." Other names for IED include rage attacks, anger attacks, and episodic dyscontrol.

### Description

Intermittent explosive disorder was originally described by the eminent French **psychiatrist** Esquirol as a "partial insanity" related to senseless impulsive acts. Esquirol termed this disorder *monomanies instinctives*, or *instinctual monomanias*. These apparently unmotivated acts were thought to result from instinctual or involuntary impulses, or from impulses related to ideological obsessions.

People with intermittent explosive disorder have a problem with controlling their temper. In addition, their violent behavior is out of proportion to the incident or event that triggered the outburst. Impulsive acts of aggression, however, are not unique to intermittent explosive disorder. Impulsive aggression can be present in many psychological and nonpsychological disorders. The diagnosis of intermittent explosive disorder (IED) is essentially a diagnosis of exclusion, which means that it is given only after other disorders have been ruled out as causes of impulsive aggression.

Patients diagnosed with IED usually feel a sense of arousal or tension before an outburst, and relief of tension after the aggressive act. Patients with IED

believe that their aggressive behaviors are justified; however, they feel genuinely upset, regretful, remorseful, bewildered or embarrassed by their impulsive and aggressive behavior.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Recent findings suggest that IED may result from abnormalities in the areas of the **brain** that regulate behavioral arousal and inhibition. Research indicates that impulsive aggression is related to abnormal brain mechanisms in a system that inhibits motor (muscular movement) activity, called the serotonergic system. This system is directed by a neurotransmitter called serotonin, which regulates behavioral inhibition (control of behavior). Some studies have correlated IED with abnormalities on both sides of the front portion of the brain. These localized areas in the front of the brain appear to be involved in information processing and controlling movement, both of which are unbalanced in persons diagnosed with IED. Studies using **positron emission tomography** (PET) scanning have found lower levels of brain glucose (sugar) metabolism in patients who act in impulsively aggressive ways.

Another study based on data from electroencephalograms (EEGs) of 326 children and adolescents treated in a psychiatric clinic found that 46% of the youths who manifested explosive behavior had unusual high-amplitude brain wave forms. The researchers concluded that a significant subgroup of people with IED may be predisposed to explosive behavior by an inborn characteristic of their central nervous system. In sum, there is a substantial amount of convincing evidence that IED has biological causes, at least in some people diagnosed with the disorder.

Other clinicians attribute IED to cognitive distortions. According to cognitive therapists, persons with IED have a set of strongly negative beliefs about other people, often resulting from harsh punishments inflicted by the parents. The child grows up believing that others "have it in for him" and that violence is the best way to restore damaged self-esteem. He or she may also have observed one or both parents, older siblings, or other relatives acting out in explosively violent ways. In short, people who develop IED have learned, usually in their family of origin, to believe that certain acts or attitudes on the part of other people "justify" aggressive attacks on them.

Although gender roles are not a "cause" of IED to the same extent as biological and familial factors, they are regarded by some researchers as helping to explain why most people diagnosed with IED are males.

According to this theory, men have greater permission from society to act violently and impulsively than women do. They therefore have less reason to control their aggressive impulses. Women who act explosively, on the other hand, would be considered unfeminine as well as unfriendly or dangerous.

### Symptoms

IED is characterized by violent behaviors that are impulsive as well as assaultive. One example involved a man who felt insulted by another customer in a neighborhood bar during a conversation that had lasted for several minutes. Instead of finding out whether the other customer intended his remark to be insulting, or answering the "insult" verbally, the man impulsively punched the other customer in the mouth. Within a few minutes, however, he felt ashamed of his violent act. As this example indicates, the urge to commit the impulsive aggressive act may occur from minutes to hours before the "acting out" and is characterized by the buildup of tension. After the outburst, the IED patient experiences a sense of relief from the tension. While many patients with IED blame someone else for causing their violent outbursts, they also express remorse and guilt for their actions.

## Demographics

IED is apparently a rare disorder. Most studies, however, indicate that it occurs more frequently in males. The most common age of onset is the period from late childhood through the early 20s. The onset of the disorder is frequently abrupt, with no warning period. Patients with IED are often diagnosed with at least one other disorder—particularly **personality disorders, substance abuse** (especially alcohol abuse) disorders, and neurological disorders.

## Diagnosis

As mentioned, IED is essentially a diagnosis of exclusion. Patients who are eventually diagnosed with IED may come to the attention of a psychiatrist or other mental health professional by several different routes. Some patients with IED, often adult males who have assaulted their wives and are trying to save their marriages, are aware that their outbursts are not normal and seek treatment to control them. Younger males with IED are more likely to be referred for diagnosis and treatment by school authorities or the juvenile justice system, or brought to the doctor by concerned parents.

A psychiatrist who is evaluating a patient for IED would first take a complete medical and psychiatric history. Depending on the contents of the patient's

history, the doctor would give the patient a physical examination to rule out head trauma, epilepsy, and other general medical conditions that may cause violent behavior. If the patient appears to be intoxicated by a drug of abuse or suffering symptoms of withdrawal, the doctor may order a toxicology screen of the patient's blood or urine. Specific substances that are known to be associated with violent outbursts include **phencyclidine** (PCP or "angel dust"), alcohol, and **cocaine**. The doctor will also give the patient a mental status examination and a test to screen for neurological damage. If necessary, a neurologist may be consulted and **imaging studies** performed of the patient's brain.

If the physical findings and laboratory test results are normal, the doctor may evaluate the patient for personality disorders, usually by administering diagnostic questionnaires. The patient may be given a diagnosis of antisocial or **borderline personality disorder** in addition to a diagnosis of IED.

In some cases the doctor may need to rule out **malingering**, particularly if the patient has been referred for evaluation by a court order and is trying to evade legal responsibility for his behavior.

### Treatments

Some adult patients with IED appear to benefit from cognitive therapy. A team of researchers at the University of Pennsylvania found that cognitive approaches that challenged the patients' negative views of the world and of other people was effective in reducing the intensity as well as the frequency of violent episodes. With regard to gender roles, many of the men reported that they were helped by rethinking "manliness" in terms of self-control rather than as something to be "proved" by hitting someone else or damaging property.

Several medications have been used for treating IED. These include **carbamazepine** (Tegretol), an anti-seizure medication; **propranolol** (Inderal), a heart medication that controls blood pressure and irregular heart rhythms; and lithium, a drug used to treat bipolar type II manic-depression disorder. The success of treatment with lithium and other mood-stabilizing medications is consistent with findings that patients with IED have a high lifetime rate of **bipolar disorder**.

### Prognosis

Little research has been done on patients who meet *DSM-IV* criteria for IED, although one study did find that such patients have a high lifetime rate of comorbid (co-occurring) bipolar disorder. In some

## KEY TERMS

**Assaultive**—An act with intent of causing harm.

**Electroencephalograph**—(EEG) An instrument that measures the normal and abnormal electrical activity in the brain.

**Episodic dyscontrol**—Another term for intermittent explosive disorder.

**Malingering**—Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

**Monomania**—A nineteenth-century term for a pathological obsession with one idea or one social cause. Nineteenth-century psychiatrists often associated explosive behavior with monomania. The word is no longer used as a technical term.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Toxicology screen**—A blood or urine test that detects the presence of toxic chemicals, alcohol, or drugs in body fluids.

persons IED decreases in severity or resolves completely as the person grows older. In others the disorder appears to be chronic.

### Prevention

As of 2002, preventive strategies include educating young people in parenting skills, and teaching children skills related to self-control. Recent studies summarized by an article in a professional journal of psychiatry indicate that self-control can be practiced like many other skills, and that people can improve their present level of self-control with appropriate coaching and practice.

*See also* Gender issues in mental health.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Baumeister, Roy F., PhD. Chapter 8, "Crossing the Line: How Evil Starts." In *Evil: Inside Human Violence and Cruelty*. New York: W. H. Freeman and Company, 1999.

Beck, Aaron T., M.D. *Prisoners of Hate: The Cognitive Basis of Anger, Hostility, and Violence*. New York: Harper-Collins, 1999.

Tasman, Allan, and others, eds. *Psychiatry*. 1st edition. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company. 1997: 1249-1258.

#### PERIODICALS

- Bars, Donald R., and others. "Use of Visual Evoked-Potential Studies and EEG Data to Classify Aggressive, Explosive Behavior of Youths." *Psychiatric Services* 52 (January 2001): 81-86.
- McElroy, Susan L. "Recognition and Treatment of DSM-IV Intermittent Explosive Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 60 (1999) [suppl. 15]: 12-16.
- Strayhorn, Joseph M., Jr. "Self-Control: Theory and Research." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 41 (January 2002): 7-16.

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.  
Bilal Nasser, M.D.

## Internet addiction disorder

### Definition

Internet **addiction** disorder refers to the problematic use of the Internet, including the various aspects of its technology, such as electronic mail (e-mail) and the World Wide Web. The reader should note that Internet addiction disorder is not listed in the mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (2000), which is also called the *DSM*. Internet addiction has, however, been formally recognized as a disorder by the American Psychological Association.

### Description

In some respects, addictive use of the Internet resembles other so-called "process" addictions, in which a person is addicted to an activity or behavior (including gambling, shopping, or certain sexual behaviors) rather than a substance (mood-altering drugs, tobacco, food, etc.). People who develop problems with their Internet use may start off using the Internet on a casual basis and then progress to using the technology in dysfunctional ways. Many people believe that spending large amounts of time on the Internet is a core feature of the disorder. The amount of time by itself, however, is not as important a factor as the ways in which the person's Internet use is interfering with their daily functioning. Use of the Internet may interfere with the person's social life, school work, or job-related

tasks at work. In addition, cases have been reported of persons entering Internet chat rooms for people with serious illnesses or disorders, and pretending to be a patient with that disorder in order to get attention or sympathy. Treatment options often mirror those for other addictions. Although only a limited amount of research has been done on this disorder, the treatments that have been used appear to be effective.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

No one knows what causes a person to be addicted to the Internet, but there are several factors that have been proposed as contributing to Internet addiction. One theory concerns the mood-altering potential of behaviors related to process addictions. Just as a person addicted to shopping may feel a "rush" or pleasurable change in mood from the series of actions related to a spending spree—checking one's credit cards, driving to the mall, going into one's favorite store, etc.—the person with an Internet addiction may feel a similar "rush" from booting up their computer and going to their favorite web sites. In other words, some researchers think that there are chemical changes that occur in the body when someone is engaging in an addictive behavior. Furthermore, from a biological standpoint, there may be a combination of genes that make a person more susceptible to addictive behaviors, just as researchers have located genes that affect a person's susceptibility to alcohol.

In addition to having features of a **process addiction**, Internet use might be reinforced by pleasurable thoughts and feelings that occur while the person is using the Internet. Although researchers in the field of addiction studies question the concept of an "addictive personality" as such, it is possible that someone who has one addiction may be prone to become addicted to other substances or activities, including Internet use. People with such other mental disorders or symptoms as **depression**, feelings of isolation, **stress**, or **anxiety**, may "self-medicate" by using the Internet in the same way that some people use alcohol or drugs of **abuse** to self-medicate the symptoms of their mental disorder.

From a social or interpersonal standpoint, there may be familial factors prompting use of the Internet. For example, a person might "surf the Web" to escape family conflict. Another possibility is that social or peer dynamics might prompt excessive Internet use. Some affected persons may lack the social skills that would enable them to meet people in person rather than online. Peer behavior might also encourage Internet use if all one's friends are using it. **Modeling** may play a role—users can witness and experience how



Computer users in an Internet café, South Korea. (AP Images)

others engage in Internet use and then replicate that behavior. The interactive aspects of the Internet, such as chat rooms, e-mail, and interactive games like Multi-User Dungeons and Dragons (MUDS), seem to be more likely to lead to Internet addiction than purely solitary web surfing.

One question that has not yet been answered concerning Internet addiction is whether it is a distinctive type of addiction or simply an instance of a new technology being used to support other addictions. For example, there are gambling casinos on the Internet that could reinforce a person's pre-existing gambling addiction. Similarly, someone addicted to shopping could transfer their addiction from the local mall to online stores. Persons addicted to certain forms of sexual behavior can visit pornography sites on the Internet or use chat rooms as a way to meet others who might be willing to participate in those forms of behavior. Researchers may need to determine whether there is such a disorder as "pure" Internet addiction.

### Symptoms

One symptom of Internet addiction is excessive time devoted to Internet use. A person might have

difficulty cutting down on his or her online time even when they are threatened with poor grades or loss of a job. There have been cases reported of college students failing courses because they would not take time off from Internet use to attend classes. Other symptoms of addiction may include lack of sleep; **fatigue**; declining grades or poor job performance; **apathy**; and racing thoughts. There may also be a decreased investment in social relationships and activities. A person may lie about how much time was spent online or deny that they have a problem. They may be irritable when off-line, or angry toward anyone who questions their time on the Internet.

### Demographics

In the past, people reported to have an Internet addiction disorder were stereotyped as young, introverted, socially awkward, computer-oriented males. While this stereotype may have been true in the past, the availability of computers and the increased ease of access to the Internet are quickly challenging this notion. As a result, problematic Internet use can be found in any age group, social class, racial or ethnic group, level of education and income, and gender.

## Diagnosis

As previously noted, Internet addiction disorder has not yet been added as an official **diagnosis** to the *DSM*. The following, however, is a set of criteria for Internet addiction that has been proposed by addiction researchers. The criteria are based on the diagnostic standards for pathological gambling.

The patient must meet all of the following criteria:

- He or she is preoccupied with the Internet (thinks about previous online activity or is anticipating the next online session).
- He or she needs to spend longer and longer periods of time online in order to feel satisfied.
- He or she has made unsuccessful efforts to control, cut back, or stop Internet use.
- He or she is restless, moody, depressed, or irritable when attempting to cut down or stop Internet use.
- He or she repeatedly stays online longer than he or she originally intended.

The person must meet at least one of the following criteria:

- He or she has jeopardized or risked the loss of a significant relationship, job, educational or career opportunity because of Internet use.
- He or she has lied to family members, a therapist, or others to conceal the extent of involvement with the Internet.
- He or she uses the Internet as a way of escaping from problems or of relieving an unpleasant mood (such as feelings of helplessness, guilt, anxiety, or depression).

## Treatments

Since Internet addiction disorder is a relatively new phenomenon, there is little research on the effectiveness of treatment procedures. It may be unrealistic to have a person completely end all Internet use. As our society becomes more and more dependent on computers for business transactions, educational programs, entertainment, and access to information as well as interpersonal communication, it will be difficult for a computer-literate person to avoid using the Internet. Learning how to use the Internet in moderation is often the main objective in therapy, in a way analogous to the way that people with eating disorders need to come to terms with food. Many of the procedures that have been used to treat Internet addiction have been modeled after other addiction treatment programs and support groups.

If a person's Internet addiction disorder has a biological dimension, then such medication as an antide-

## KEY TERMS

**Carpal tunnel syndrome**—A disorder of the hand and wrist characterized by pain, weakness, or numbness in the thumb and other fingers. It is caused by pressure on a nerve in the wrist. Carpal tunnel syndrome is frequently associated with heavy use of a computer, typewriter, or musical keyboard.

**Denial**—A psychological defense mechanism that reduces anxiety by excluding recognition of an addiction or similar problem from the conscious mind.

**Process addiction**—An addiction to a mood-altering behavior or series of behaviors rather than a substance.

**Reinforcement**—A term that refers to the ability of a drug, substance, or behavior to produce effects that will make the user want to take the substance or perform the behavior again.

**Rush**—The initial intensely pleasurable sensation experienced from injecting a narcotic or stimulant drug. The term has also been applied to the feeling of excitement experienced from the behaviors involved in process addictions.

pressant or anti-anxiety drug may help them with these aspects of the addiction. Psychological interventions may include such approaches as changing the environment to alter associations that have been made with Internet use, or decrease the **reinforcement** received from excessive Internet use. Psychological interventions may also help the person identify thoughts and feelings that trigger their use of the Internet. Interpersonal interventions may include such approaches as **social skills training** or coaching in **communication skills**. Family and couple therapy may be indicated if the user is turning to the Internet to escape from problems in these areas of life.

Relapsing into an addictive behavior is common for anyone dealing with addiction disorders. Recognizing and preparing for **relapse** is often a part of the treatment process. Identifying situations that would trigger excessive Internet use and generating ways to deal with these situations can greatly reduce the possibility of total relapse.

## Prognosis

Although extensive studies have not yet been done, treatment appears to be effective in maintaining

and changing the behavior of people drawn to excessive use of the Internet. If the disorder is left untreated, the person may experience an increased amount of conflict in his or her relationships. Excessive Internet use may jeopardize a person's employment or academic standing. In addition, such physical problems may develop as fatigue, carpal tunnel syndrome, back pain, and eyestrain.

### Prevention

If a person knows that he or she has difficulty with other forms of addictive behavior, they should be cautious in exploring the types of applications that are used on the Internet. In addition, it is important for people to engage in social activities outside the Internet. Finally, mental health workers should investigate ways in which to participate in the implementation of new technology rather than waiting for its after effects.

*See also* Factitious disorder; Pathological gambling disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Young, K. S. *Caught in the Net*. New York, NY: John Wiley and Sons, Inc., 1998.

#### PERIODICALS

Beard, K., and E. Wolf. "Modification in the Proposed Diagnostic Criteria for Internet Addiction." *Cyberpsychology & Behavior* 4 (2001): 377-383.

Beard, K. "Internet Addiction: Current Status and Implication for Employees." *Journal of Employment Counseling* 39 (2002): 2-11.

Griffiths, M. "Psychology of Computer Use: XLIII. Some Comments on 'Addictive Use of the Internet' by Young." *Psychological Reports* 80 (1997): 81-81.

Kraut, R., M. Patterson, V. Lundmark, S. Kiesler, T. Mukopadhyay, and W. Scherlis. "Internet Paradox: A Social Technology That Reduces Social Involvement and Psychological Well-Being?" *American Psychologist* 53 (1998): 1017-1031.

Keith Beard, Psy.D.

instant messaging, chat rooms, or e-mail messages. Internet-based therapy is also called on-line therapy or e-therapy.

### Description

As the Information Age progresses, more and more services are available over the Internet. We can buy not only books on-line but also electronics, clothes, and even groceries. In the business world, the requirement and expense of traveling to in-person meetings is often negated by the ability to teleconference. College degrees no longer need to be earned in the classroom but can be acquired in the comfort of one's own home at one's own pace. The wait for a technician on a manufacturer's help line is often replaced by the ability to search the company's database on one's own or to engage in on-line chat with the same technician to whom one once spoke. Even for medical problems, one can often chat with a physician or nurse practitioner by e-mail rather than going into the office.

There is little wonder, therefore, that there is a demand for psychological services over the Internet. Chatting with one's therapist on-line is more private than going to an office and waiting in a public waiting room. For those in rural areas where access to a therapist is exceedingly difficult, the Internet can provide a convenient alternative for getting the help that one needs.

There are pros and cons to both sides of the on-line versus face-to-face therapy issue. First, communicating through e-mail, on-line chat, or instant messages has the same drawbacks of any written-only communication: The non-verbal cues such as tone of voice, facial expression, and body language are missing, making interpretation of the message more problematic than in a face-to-face situation. On the other hand, the relative anonymity of on-line interactions make such therapeutic relationships more attractive to those who would hesitate to go into a therapist's office for fear of being found out by others, fear of embarrassment, or unwillingness or inability to get to the office. In addition, on-line therapy tends to be less expensive than in-office therapy, a consideration for many clients.

There are, of course, some things that cannot be done over the Internet. For example, psychologists and psychiatrists use a variety of tools and techniques to diagnose mental disorders so that they can prescribe the appropriate course of treatment. Some of the tools used in **diagnosis** include psychometric instruments such as the **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory** (MMPI), projective instruments such as the Rorschach test or the **Thematic Apperception Test** (TAT), and diagnostic interviews. The various tests and instruments

## Internet-based therapy

### Definition

Internet-based therapy is a form of **psychotherapy** conducted over the Internet rather than in face-to-face sessions. Therapeutic sessions may be conducted using

used in diagnosis should ethically only be given by a credentialed professional in a controlled situation and cannot be given across the Internet where there is no control over who will see the test, how long the client takes to answer the questions, or even whether it was the client or someone else who took the test. In addition, it would be extremely difficult to diagnose a patient's problem without a face-to-face meeting for a diagnostic interview.

Research into the effectiveness of on-line therapy is only beginning. However, a number of disorders have been successfully treated electronically. For example, Internet-based therapy has been successful in the treatment of **panic disorder**, **social phobia**, child adjustment after traumatic **brain** injury, and complicated **grief**, among others.

### Precautions

As with any service provided over the Internet, one must be an informed consumer not only before choosing an e-therapist, but even before deciding to use Internet-based therapy itself. Because Internet-based therapy is an emerging field, there are still many issues to be resolved. Obviously, one must check the professional credentials of a therapist to make sure that he or she is licensed, whether one is choosing a therapist for on-line or in-office therapy. In addition, it is unclear at this time whether it is legal for a therapist licensed in one state to treat a patient in another state. Choosing a therapist in one's own state makes this issue irrelevant, but requires research.

Client/therapist confidentiality is important in any therapeutic relationship. When choosing an on-line provider of psychological services, one must be certain not only that the therapist subscribes to a professional code of ethics, but also that any information—including personal data about the client—is kept confidential and not sold to or shared with third parties. Similarly, it is important to check that the Web site used in on-line therapy is secure and that conversations, instant messages, and e-mail transmissions between client and therapist are not recorded on the site's secured host computer.

Internet-based therapy shows promise for helping people who could not or would not otherwise engage in a therapeutic relationship. This potential is beginning to be tested in research. However, much of this research also recommends that Internet-based therapy be used in conjunction with face-to-face sessions. There are still many technical, logistical, and ethical questions to be answered regarding how the Internet best can be used for therapy.

## KEY TERMS

**Chat room**—A space on a Web site or network server that allows multiple people to communicate by entering text messages at their individual computers. The messages are viewable by all in the virtual "room," and messages appear almost instantaneously once they are sent.

**E-mail**—Short for "electronic mail," a system for sending and receiving messages electronically through personal computers or other computer network. Usually, it takes only a few minutes or even seconds for an e-mail to be sent between computers.

**Instant messaging (IM)**—A method of electronic communication that allows two or more people to communicate nearly instantaneously without using a chat room. Instant messaging is much like a telephone conversation with text messages. The sender types a message at his or her computer, which is then sent to and received at the other person's computer. Instant messaging can be used in much the same way as a private chat room.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Goss, Stephen, and Kate Anthony, eds. *Technology in Counselling and Psychotherapy: A Practitioner's Guide*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 2003.
- Hsiung, Robert C., ed. *E-Therapy: Case Studies, Guiding Principles, and the Clinical Potential of the Internet*. New York: W. W. Norton & Company, 2002.
- Kraus, Ron, Jason Zack, and George Stricker. *Online Counseling: A Handbook for Mental Health Professionals*. New York: Academic Press, 2003.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Andersson, Gerhard, Per Carlbring, Annelie Holmström, Elisabeth Sparthan, Tomas Furmark, and Monica Buhrman. "Internet-Based Self-Help with Therapist Feedback and In Vivo Group Exposure for Social Phobia: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 74.4 (2006): 677–86.
- Carlbring, Per, and Gerhard Andersson. "Internet and Psychological Treatment. How Well Can They Be Combined?" *Computers in Human Behavior* 22.3 (2006): 545–53.
- Chester, Andrea, and Carolyn A. Glass. "Online Counseling: A Descriptive Analysis of Therapy Services on the Internet." *British Journal of Guidance & Counselling* 34.2 (2006): 145–60.

- Gollings, Emma K., and Susan J. Paxton. "Comparison of Internet and Face-to-Face Delivery of a Group Body Image and Disordered Eating Intervention for Women: A Pilot Study." *Eating Disorders: The Journal of Treatment and Prevention* 14.1 (2006): 1–15.
- Klein, Britt, Jeffrey C. Richards, and David W. Austin. "Efficacy of Internet Therapy for Panic Disorder." *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry* 37.3 (2006): 213–38.
- Lam, Raymond W. "Challenges in the Treatment of Anxiety Disorders: Beyond Guidelines." *International Journal of Psychiatry in Clinical Practice* 10.3 (2006): 18–24.
- O'Kearney, Richard, Mal Gibson, Helen Christensen, and Kathy M. Griffiths. "Effects of a Cognitive-Behavioral Internet Program on Depression, Vulnerability to Depression and Stigma in Adolescent Males: A School-Based Controlled Trial." *Cognitive Behaviour Therapy* 35.1 (2006): 43–54.
- Patten, Christi A., Ivana T. Croghan, Tracy M. Meis, Paul A. Decker, Suzanne Pingree, Robert C. Colligan, Ellen A. Dornelas, Kenneth P. Offord, Eric W. Boberg, Rhonda K. Baumberger, Richard D. Hurt, and David H. Gustafson. "Randomized Clinical Trial of an Internet-Based Versus Brief Office Intervention for Adolescent Smoking Cessation." *Patient Education and Counseling* 64.1–3 (2006): 249–58.
- Przeworski, Amy, and Michelle G. Newman. "Efficacy and Utility Of Computer-Assisted Cognitive Behavioural Therapy for Anxiety Disorders." *Clinical Psychologist* 10.2 (2006): 43–53.
- Pull, Charles B. "Self-Help Internet Interventions for Mental Disorders." *Current Opinion in Psychiatry* 19.1 (2006): 50–53.
- Schultze, Nils-Günter. "Success Factors in Internet-Based Psychological Counseling." *CyberPsychology & Behavior* 9.5 (2006): 623–26.
- Spence, Susan H., Jane M. Holmes, Sonja March, and Ottmar V. Lipp. "The Feasibility and Outcome of Clinic Plus Internet Delivery of Cognitive-Behavior Therapy for Childhood Anxiety." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 74.3 (2006): 614–21.
- Wade, Shari L., JoAnne Carey, and Christopher R. Wolfe. "The Efficacy of an Online Cognitive-Behavioral Family Intervention in Improving Child Behavior and Social Competence Following Pediatric Brain Injury." *Rehabilitation Psychology* 51.3 (2006): 179–89.
- Wagner, Birgit, and Christine Knaevelsrud. "Internet-Based Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy for Complicated Grief: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Death Studies* 30.5 (2006): 429–53.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychological Association, 750 First Street NE, Washington, DC 20002-42427. Telephone: (800) 374-2721. <<http://www.apa.org>>

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Interpersonal psychotherapy see **Interpersonal therapy**

## Interpersonal therapy

### Definition

Interpersonal therapy (IPT) is a short-term supportive **psychotherapy** that focuses on the connection between interactions between people and the development of a person's psychiatric symptoms.

### Purpose

Interpersonal therapy was initially developed to treat adult **depression**. It has since been applied to the treatment of depression in adolescents, the elderly, and people with Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) infection. There is an IPT conjoint (couple) therapy for people whose marital disputes contribute to depressive episodes. IPT has also been modified for the treatment of a number of disorders, including **substance abuse**; bulimia and **anorexia nervosa**; **bipolar disorder**; and dysthymia. Research is underway to determine the efficacy of IPT in the treatment of patients with **panic disorder** or **borderline personality disorder**; depressed caregivers of patients with traumatic **brain** injuries; depressed pregnant women; and people suffering from protracted bereavement.

Interpersonal therapy is a descendant of psychodynamic therapy, itself derived from **psychoanalysis**, with its emphasis on the unconscious and childhood experiences. Symptoms and personal difficulties are regarded as arising from deep, unresolved personality or character problems. **Psychodynamic psychotherapy** is a long-term method of treatment, with in-depth exploration of past family relationships as they were perceived during the client's infancy, childhood, and adolescence.

There are seven types of interventions that are commonly used in IPT, many of which reflect the influence of psychodynamic psychotherapy: a focus on clients' emotions; an exploration of clients' resistance to treatment; discussion of patterns in clients' relationships and experiences; taking a detailed past history; an emphasis on clients' current interpersonal experiences; exploration of the therapist/client relationship; and the identification of clients' wishes and fantasies. IPT is, however, distinctive for its brevity and its treatment focus. IPT emphasizes the ways in which a person's current relationships and social context cause or maintain symptoms rather than exploring the deep-seated sources of the symptoms. Its goals are rapid symptom reduction and improved social adjustment. A frequent byproduct of IPT treatment is more satisfying relationships in the present.

IPT has the following goals in the treatment of depression: to diagnose depression explicitly; to educate the client about depression, its causes, and the various treatments available for it; to identify the interpersonal context of depression as it relates to symptom development; and to develop strategies for the client to follow in coping with the depression. Because interpersonal therapy is a short-term approach, the therapist addresses only one or two problem areas in the client's current functioning. In the early sessions, the therapist and client determine which areas would be most helpful in reducing the client's symptoms. The remaining sessions are then organized toward resolving these agreed-upon problem areas. This time-limited framework distinguishes IPT from therapies that are open-ended in their exploration. The targeted approach of IPT has demonstrated rapid improvement for patients with problems ranging from mild situational depression to severe depression with a recent history of **suicide** attempts.

Interpersonal therapy has been outlined in a manual by Klerman and Weissman, which ensures some standardization in the training of interpersonal therapists and their practice. Because of this standardized training format, IPT is not usually combined with other talk therapies. Treatment with IPT, however, is often combined with drug therapy, particularly when the client suffers from such mood disorders as depression, dysthymia, or bipolar disorder.

### Precautions

Training programs in interpersonal therapy are still not widely available, so that many practicing therapists base their work on the manual alone without additional supervision. It is unclear whether reading the manual alone is sufficient to provide an acceptable standard of care.

While interpersonal therapy has been adapted for use with substance abusers, it has not demonstrated its effectiveness with this group of patients. Researchers studying patients addicted to opiates or **cocaine** found little benefit to incorporating IPT into the standard recovery programs. These findings suggest that another treatment method that offers greater structure and direction would be more successful with these patients.

### Description

Since the interpersonal therapy model was developed for the treatment of depression and then modified for use with other populations and mental disorders, an understanding of IPT's approach to depression is

crucial. Interpersonal therapists focus on the functional role of depression rather than on its etiology or cause; and they look at the ways in which problematic interactions develop when a person becomes depressed. The IPT framework considers clinical depression as having three components: the development of symptoms, which arise from biological, genetic and/or psychodynamic processes; social interactions with other people, which are learned over the course of one's life; and personality, made up of the more enduring traits and behaviors that may predispose a person to depressive symptoms. IPT intervenes at the levels of symptom formation and social functioning, and does not attempt to alter aspects of the client's personality.

#### *Subtypes of IPT*

Interpersonal therapy offers two possible treatment plans for persons with **depressive disorders**. The first plan treats the acute episode of depression by eliminating the current depressive symptoms. This approach requires intervening while the person is in the midst of a depression. The acute phase of treatment typically lasts 2–4 months with weekly sessions. Many clients terminate treatment at that point, after their symptoms have subsided. Maintenance treatment (IPT-M) is the second treatment plan and is much less commonly utilized than acute treatment. IPT-M is a longer-term therapy based on the principles of interpersonal therapy but with the aim of preventing or reducing the frequency of further depressive episodes. Some clients choose IPT-M after the acute treatment phase. IPT-M can extend over a period of 2–3 years, with therapy sessions once a month.

#### *Psychoeducation in IPT*

Treatment with IPT is based on the premise that depression occurs in a social and interpersonal context that must be understood for improvement to occur. In the first session, the psychiatric history includes a review of the client's current social functioning and current close relationships, their patterns and their mutual expectations. Changes in relationships prior to the onset of symptoms are clarified, such as the death of a loved one, a child leaving home, or worsening marital conflict.

IPT is psychoeducational in nature to some degree. It involves teaching the client about the nature of depression and the ways that it manifests in his or her life and relationships. In the initial sessions, depressive symptoms are reviewed in detail, and the accurate naming of the problem is essential. The therapist then explains depression and its treatment and

may explain to the client that he or she has adopted the “sick role.” The concept of the “sick role” is derived from the work of a sociologist named Talcott Parsons, and is based on the notion that illness is not merely a condition but a social role that affects the attitudes and behaviors of the client and those around him or her. Over time, the client comes to see that the sick role has increasingly come to govern his or her social interactions.

### ***Identification of problem areas***

The techniques of IPT were developed to manage four basic interpersonal problem areas: unresolved grief; role transitions; interpersonal role disputes (often marital disputes); and interpersonal deficits (deficiencies). In the early sessions, the interpersonal therapist and the client attempt to determine which of these four problems is most closely associated with the onset of the current depressive episode. Therapy is then organized to help the client deal with the interpersonal difficulties in the primary problem area. The coping strategies that the client is encouraged to discover and employ in daily life are tailored to his or her individual situation.

**UNRESOLVED GRIEF.** In normal bereavement, a person experiences symptoms such as sadness, disturbed sleep, and difficulty functioning but these usually resolve in 2–4 months. Unresolved grief in depressed people is usually either delayed grief, which has been postponed and then experienced long after the loss; or distorted grief, in which there is no felt emotion of sadness but there may be nonemotional symptoms, often physical. If unresolved grief is identified as the primary issue, the goals of treatment are to facilitate the mourning process. Successful therapy will help the client re-establish interests and relationships that can begin to fill the void of what has been lost.

**ROLE DISPUTES.** Interpersonal role disputes occur when the client and at least one other significant person have differing expectations of their relationship. The IPT therapist focuses on these disputes if they seem stalled or repetitious, or offer little hope of improvement. The treatment goals include helping the client identify the nature of the dispute; decide on a plan of action; and begin to modify unsatisfying patterns, reassess expectations of the relationship, or both. The therapist does not direct the client to one particular resolution of difficulties and should not attempt to preserve unworkable relationships.

**ROLE TRANSITIONS.** Depression associated with role transitions occurs when a person has difficulty

coping with life changes that require new roles. These may be such transitions as retirement, a career change, moving, or leaving home. People who are clinically depressed are most likely to experience role changes as losses rather than opportunities. The loss may be obvious, as when a marriage ends, or more subtle, as the loss of freedom people experience after the birth of a child. Therapy is terminated when a client has given up the old role; expressed the accompanying feelings of guilt, anger, and loss; acquired new skills; and developed a new social network around the new role.

**INTERPERSONAL DEFICITS.** Interpersonal deficits are the focus of treatment when the client has a history of inadequate or unsupportive interpersonal relationships. The client may never have established lasting or intimate relationships as an adult, and may experience a sense of inadequacy, lack of self-assertion, and guilt about expressing anger. Generally, clients with a history of extreme social isolation come to therapy with more severe emotional disturbances. The goal of treatment is to reduce the client’s social isolation. Instead of focusing on current relationships, IPT therapy in this area focuses on the client’s past relationships; the present relationship with the therapist; and ways to form new relationships.

### ***IPT in special populations***

**ELDERLY CLIENTS.** In translating the IPT model of depression to work with different populations, the core principles and problem areas remain essentially the same, with some modifications. In working with the elderly, IPT sessions may be shorter to allow for decreased energy levels, and dependency issues may be more prominent. In addition, the therapist may work with an elderly client toward tolerating rather than eliminating long-standing role disputes.

**CLIENTS WITH HIV INFECTION.** In IPT with HIV-positive clients, particular attention is paid to the clients’ unique set of psychosocial stressors: the **stigma** of the disease; the effects of being gay (if applicable); dealing with family members who may isolate themselves; and coping with the medical consequences of the disease.

**ADOLESCENTS.** In IPT with adolescents, the therapist addresses such common developmental issues as separation from parents; the client’s authority in relationship to parents; the development of new interpersonal relationships; first experiences of the death of a relative or friend; peer pressure; and single-parent families. Adolescents are seen weekly for 12 weeks with once-weekly additional phone contact between therapist and client for the first four weeks of treatment.

The parents are interviewed in the initial session to get a comprehensive history of the adolescent's symptoms, and to educate the parents as well as the young person about depression and possible treatments, including a discussion of the need for medication. The therapist refrains from giving advice when working with adolescents, and will primarily use supportive listening, while assessing the client for evidence of suicidal thoughts or problems with school attendance. So far, research does not support the efficacy of antidepressant medication in treating adolescents, though most clinicians will give some younger clients a trial of medication if it appears to offer relief.

**CLIENTS WITH SUBSTANCE ABUSE DISORDERS.** While IPT has not yet demonstrated its efficacy in the field of substance **abuse** recovery, a version of IPT has been developed for use with substance abusers. The two goals are to help the client stop or cut down on drug use; and to help the client develop better strategies for dealing with the social and interpersonal consequences of drug use. To meet these goals, the client must accept the need to stop; take steps to manage impulsiveness; and recognize the social contexts of drug purchase and use. **Relapse** is viewed as the rule rather than the exception in treating substance abuse disorders, and the therapist avoids treating the client in a punitive or disapproving manner when it occurs. Instead, the therapist reminds the client of the fact that staying away from drugs is the client's decision.

**CLIENTS WITH EATING DISORDERS.** IPT has been extended to the treatment of eating disorders. The IPT therapist does not focus directly on the symptoms of the disorder, but rather, allows for identification of problem areas that have contributed to the emergence of the disorder over time. IPT appears to be useful in treating clients with bulimia whose symptoms are maintained by interpersonal issues, including social **anxiety**; sensitivity to conflict and rejection; and difficulty managing negative emotions. IPT is helpful in bringing the problems underlying the bingeing and purging to the surface, such as conflict avoidance; difficulties with role expectations; confusion regarding needs for closeness and distance; and deficiencies in solving social problems. IPT also helps people with bulimia to regulate the emotional states that maintain the bulimic behavior.

Anorexia nervosa also appears to be responsive to treatment with IPT. Research indicates that there is a connection between interpersonal and family dysfunction and the development of anorexia nervosa. Therapists disagree as to whether interpersonal dysfunction causes or is caused by anorexia. IPT has been helpful

because it is not concerned with the origin but rather seeks to improve the client's interpersonal functioning and thereby decreasing symptoms. IPT's four categories of grief, interpersonal disputes, interpersonal deficits, and role transitions correspond to the core issues of clients with anorexia. **Social phobia** is another disorder that responds well to IPT therapy.

### Aftercare

Interpersonal therapy as a maintenance approach (IPT-M) could be viewed as aftercare for clients suffering from depression. It is designed as a preventive measure by focusing on the period after the acute depression has passed. Typically, once the client is in remission and is symptom-free, he or she takes on more responsibilities and has increased social contact. These changes can lead to increased **stress** and greater vulnerability to another episode of depression. IPT-M enables clients to reduce the stresses associated with remission and thereby lower the risk of recurrence. The goal of maintenance therapy is to keep the client at his or her current level of functioning. Research has shown that for clients with a history of recurrent depression, total prevention is unlikely, but that maintenance therapy may delay a recurrence.

In general, long-term maintenance psychotherapy by itself is not recommended unless there are such reasons as pregnancy or severe side effects that prevent the client from being treated with medication. IPT-M does, however, seem to be particularly helpful with certain groups of patients, either alone or in combination with medication. Women appear to benefit, due to the importance of social environment and social relations in female gender roles; the effects of the menstrual cycle on symptoms; and complications related to victimization by rape, incest, or battering. IPT is also useful for elderly clients who can't take **antidepressants** due to intolerable side effects or such medical conditions as autoimmune disorders, cardiovascular disorders, diabetes, or other general medical conditions.

### Normal results

The expected outcomes of interpersonal therapy are a reduction or the elimination of symptoms and improved interpersonal functioning. There will also be a greater understanding of the presenting symptoms and ways to prevent their recurrence. For example, in the case of depression, a person will have been educated about the nature of depression; what it looks like for him or her; and the interpersonal triggers of a

## KEY TERMS

**Bereavement**—The emotional experience of loss after the death of a friend or relative.

**Bingeing**—An excessive amount of food consumed in a short period of time. Usually, while a person binge eats, he or she feels disconnected from reality, and feels unable to stop. The bingeing may temporarily relieve depression or anxiety, but after the binge, the person usually feels guilty and depressed.

**Dysthymia**—Depression of low intensity.

**Dysthymic disorder**—A mood disorder that is less severe than depression but usually more chronic.

**Etiology**—The cause or origin of a disease or disorder. The word is also used to refer to the study of the causes of disease.

**Psychosocial**—A term that refers to the emotional and social aspects of psychological disorders.

**Purging**—Inappropriate actions taken to prevent weight gain, often after bingeing, including self-

induced vomiting or the misuse of laxatives, diuretics, enemas, or other medications.

**Remission**—In the course of an illness or disorder, a period of time when symptoms are absent.

**Role**—The set of customary or expected behavior patterns associated with a particular position or function in society. For example, a person's role as mother is associated with one set of expected behaviors, and her role as a worker with a very different set.

**Role transition**—Life changes that require an alteration in one's social or occupational status or self-image.

**Stigma**—A mark or characteristic trait of a disease or defect; by extension, a cause for reproach or a stain on one's reputation. Such sexually transmitted diseases as HIV infection carry a severe social stigma.

**Supportive**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or exploratory approaches to treatment.

depressive episode. A person will also leave therapy with strategies for minimizing triggers and for resolving future depressive episodes more effectively. While interpersonal therapy focuses on the present, it can also improve the client's future through increased awareness of preventive measures and strengthened coping skills.

### Abnormal results

Research has shown that IPT requires clients' commitment to therapy prior to starting the treatment. If clients are resistant to an educational approach, the results of IPT are generally poor. It has been found that when people do not accept IPT's methods and approach at the outset; they are unlikely to be convinced over the course of therapy and they receive little benefit from treatment. IPT clients appear to do better in therapy if they have confidence in their therapist; therefore, if the initial fit between therapist and client is not good, therapy will often be unsuccessful. A client should listen to his or her instincts early in treatment, and either seek out another interpersonal therapist or find a therapist who uses a different approach—such as **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, which was also developed specifically for the treatment of depression.

*See also* Bulimia nervosa; Gender issues in mental health; Grief; Major depressive disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Klerman, Gerald L., and others. *Interpersonal Psychotherapy of Depression*. New York: Basic Books, Inc., 1984.
- Mufson, Laura, Ph.D. *Interpersonal Psychotherapy for Depressed Adolescents*. New York: Guilford Press, 1993.
- Klerman, Gerald L., M.D., and Myrna M. Weissman, Ph.D., eds. *New Applications of Interpersonal Psychotherapy*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, Inc., 1993.

#### PERIODICALS

- Apple, Robin F. "Interpersonal Therapy for Bulimia Nervosa." *JCLP/In Session: Psychotherapy in Practice* 55, no. 6 (1999): 715-725.
- Barkham, Michael, and Gillian E. Hardy. "Counselling and interpersonal therapies for depression: towards securing an evidence-base." *British Medical Bulletin* 57 (2001): 115-132.

- Frank, Ellen, Ph.D., and Michael E. Thase, M.D. "Natural History and Preventative Treatment of Recurrent Mood Disorders." *Annual Reviews Medicine* 50 (1999): 453-468.
- House, Allan, D. M. "Brief psychodynamic interpersonal therapy after deliberate self-poisoning reduced suicidal ideation and deliberate self-harm." *ACP Journal Club* 136 (January/February 2002): 27.
- McIntosh, Virginia V. "Interpersonal Psychotherapy for Anorexia Nervosa." *International Journal of Eating Disorders* 27 (March 2000): 125-139.
- Mufson, Laura, Ph.D., and others. "Efficacy of Interpersonal Psychotherapy for Depressed Adolescents." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 56, no. 6 (June 1999): 573-579.
- Weissman, Myrna M., Ph.D., and John C. Markowitz, M.D. "Interpersonal Psychotherapy: Current Status." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 51, no. 8 (August 1994): 599-606.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

International Society for Interpersonal Psychotherapy. c/o Myrna M. Weissman, Columbia University, 1051 Riverside Drive, Unit 24, New York, NY 10032. <<http://interpersonalpsychotherapy.org>>.

Holly Scherstuhl, M.Ed.

## Intervention

### Definition

A standard dictionary defines intervention as an influencing force or act that occurs in order to modify a given state of affairs. In the context of behavioral health, an intervention may be any outside process that has the effect of modifying an individual's behavior, cognition, or emotional state. For example, a person experiencing **stress** symptoms may find a variety of interventions effective in bringing relief. Deep breathing, vigorous exercise, talking with a therapist or counselor, taking an anti-anxiety medication, or a combination of these activities are all interventions designed to modify the symptoms and potentially the causes of stress-related discomfort.

The term is also used to describe a specific process designed to break through **denial** on the part of persons with serious addictive disorders. Interventions in this sense of the word involve carefully orchestrated confrontations in which friends, family members, and (in many cases) employers confront the person with the negative impact and consequences of his or her **addiction**. The goal of an intervention is to bring the addicted person to acknowledge that he or she suffers from a disorder and agree to treatment. This goal, however, is not always realized.

### Description

According to the *Report of the Surgeon General on Mental Health* published in 1999, one in five Americans in a given year will experience behavioral health difficulties of sufficient magnitude and discomfort as to benefit from some form of therapeutic intervention. Unfortunately, only a small number of these persons seek help. The report goes on to state that the efficacy of mental health treatments is now well documented and a range of treatment interventions exists for even the most serious mental disorders.

There is no one-size-fits-all-intervention for behavioral health disorders. Recent research advances and greater understanding of behavioral health problems have provided an expanded range of treatments that promise better outcomes than those available in the past. For people who overcome the barriers of **stigma**, discrimination, and limited access, there is a broad variety of helpful interventions from which to choose. Both personal preference and the severity of discomfort may influence the choice of "talk therapy," the use of medications, participation in self-help or **support groups**, or even inpatient treatment. In most cases, a combination of different interventions has proven to be most effective. As a result, many therapists tend to be eclectic in their practice and use a combination of approaches to in order to be as effective as possible with a wide variety of people.

**Psychotherapy** or "talk therapy" involves face-to-face meetings with a therapist who may specialize in a certain approach to treatment.

- Psychoanalysis is the oldest form of "talk therapy." It is a long-term form of treatment intended to uncover a person's unconscious motivations and early patterns in order to resolve present issues.
- Behavioral therapy is designed to change thinking patterns and behavior. Exposure therapy is a subtype of behavioral therapy that is useful in treating obsessive-compulsive disorder and post-traumatic stress disorder. The client is deliberately exposed to stimuli that trigger the painful thoughts or feelings under carefully controlled conditions that include support from the therapist. The individual is then taught techniques to avoid performing the compulsive behaviors or to work through the traumatic event.
- Cognitive therapy seeks to identify and correct dysfunctional thinking patterns that lead to troublesome feelings or behavior.
- Family therapy includes discussion and problem-solving sessions that include all members of the family.

- Group therapy takes place in a small group with the guidance of a therapist. The focus is on individual issues; group members assist each other in problem solving.
- Movement, art, and music therapists use these forms of creative expression to help people deal with strong emotions that are less easily handled in a “talk therapy” format.

Drug therapy involves the use of prescribed medications to treat the symptoms of certain mental or emotional disorders. It is important for patients to be aware of possible side effects of the medications; to inform the doctor of all other medications and alternative remedies that they are taking; and to have their blood, blood pressure, or other vital signs monitored regularly by the prescribing physician.

**Electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT) is used to treat **depression** and a few other specific conditions that have not responded to other interventions. It involves a controlled series of electric shocks to certain areas of the **brain**. It has been proven effective for some people despite the fact that it continues to be controversial. Patients should be fully aware of the side effects of ECT and assure themselves that the professional has been properly trained to administer ECT.

Psychosocial treatments may include **talk therapy** and medication in combination with social and vocational training to assist people recovering from severe mental illnesses. Psychosocial interventions may also include education about the illness itself, techniques for managing its symptoms, and ways in which friends and family members can help.

Psychoeducation is a word used to describe the process of teaching people about their illness, its treatment, and early warning signs of **relapse**, so that they can seek treatment before the illness worsens. Psychoeducation may also include learning about coping strategies, problem solving, and preparation of a crisis plan in the event of a relapse or future episode.

Self-help and support groups are another form of intervention that has become increasingly common in recent years. They exist for almost all disorders and are often based on the basic principles and values of the Alcoholics Anonymous movement founded in the 1930s. Although they are not led by professionals, these groups may be therapeutic because members give one another ongoing support and assistance. Group members share frustrations and successes, recommendations about specialists and community resources, and helpful tips about recovery. They also share friendship and hope for themselves, their loved ones, and others in the group. Unqualified acceptance by

other people can be a powerful intervention for people recovering from a mental illness or addictive disorder.

## Preparation

A common question about interventions concerns sources of help or further information. Many communities have a local hotline number that provides referrals and resources, or a mental health association that can direct callers to appropriate clinics, agencies, or groups. Helping resources may include the following:

- A community mental health center, usually a part of the state’s department of mental health.
- Local mental health organizations with which the reader may be familiar.
- Family physicians.
- Clergy or spiritual counselors.
- Family service agencies, including charities and family or social services sponsored by various churches, synagogues, or other religious groups.
- High school or college guidance counselors.
- Marriage and family counselors.
- Child guidance counselors.
- Accredited psychiatric hospitals.
- Hotlines, crisis centers, and emergency rooms.

There are several categories of mental health professionals who have been specially trained to provide a range of interventions to relieve suffering, treat specific symptoms, or improve overall mental health. Competent professionals are licensed or certified by a particular specialty board or state licensing body. Their credentials imply a certain level of education, training, experience, and subscription to a code of ethics. Mental health professionals include:

- Psychiatrists. Psychiatrists are medical doctors with specialized training in the diagnosis and treatment of behavioral and emotional illnesses. They are qualified to prescribe medications. They may also specialize in certain fields within psychiatry, such as child/adolescent or geriatric psychiatry.
- Psychologists. These professionals are counselors with a doctoral degree (Ph.D. or Psy.D.) and two or more years of supervised work experience. They are trained to make diagnoses, administer and interpret psychological tests, and provide individual, family and group therapy.
- Clinical social workers. Clinical social workers have completed a master’s degree in social work from an accredited graduate program. They are trained to make diagnoses and provide individual, family and group therapy.

- Licensed professional counselors and mental health counselors also hold a master's degree with supervised work experience and are trained to make diagnoses and provide individual, family and group therapy.
- Certified alcohol and drug abuse counselors. These professionals have specialized training in the treatment of alcohol and drug abuse. They are able to diagnose and provide counseling to individuals, families and groups.
- Nurse psychotherapists. Nurse psychotherapists are registered nurses (RNs) with specialized training in psychiatric and mental health nursing. They can diagnose disorders and provide counseling to individuals, families and groups.
- Marital and family therapists. These counselors have completed a master's or doctor's degree with specialized training in marital and family therapy. They are also trained to diagnose and provide individual, family and group counseling.
- Pastoral counselors. These counselors are ordained clergy with advanced training and certification in Level II clinical pastoral education as well as the master's degree in theology (M. Div.) required by most American denominations for ordination. In addition to offering psychological counseling to individuals, families and groups, pastoral counselors have been trained to offer spiritual and sacramental ministry to those who request it.

## Resources

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002. (800) 374-2721. <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.
- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince St., Alexandria, VA 22314. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.
- National Mental Health Consumers' Self-Help Clearinghouse. 1211 Chestnut St, Suite 1207, Philadelphia, PA 19107. <[www.mhselfhelp.org](http://www.mhselfhelp.org)>.

Judy Leaver, M.A.

will. The legal justifications vary somewhat from state to state, but are generally based on a determination that a person is imminently dangerous to self or others; is gravely disabled; or clearly needs immediate care and treatment. Involuntary hospitalization is synonymous with involuntary commitment or involuntary treatment, and is an extremely controversial course of action. It is generally a last resort used in dealing with a person who is so ill that he/she is unable to use proper judgment or insight in deciding to refuse treatment.

## Purpose

Civil commitment laws in the United States have been justified on the historical foundation of two fundamental powers and responsibilities of government. First, governments are responsible for protecting each citizen from injury by another. This power of protection is commonly called police powers. The second power, known as *parens patriae* (Latin for "parent of the nation") is based on the government's responsibility to care for a disabled citizen as a loyal parent would care for a child. A person with a significant mental illness may be civilly committed, or involuntarily hospitalized, under either of these powers. It is understood that the purpose of civil commitment is protecting the safety of the public or of the ill person.

Thirty-four states currently permit some type of involuntary commitment procedure. Most require proof of dangerousness, which can be interpreted in ambiguous ways but generally means the danger is imminent or provable. The legal process usually requires a court hearing within 24–72 hours after the emergency commitment procedure to assure due process.

Beyond safety issues, mental health professionals have thought that proper psychiatric treatment, even when administered against a person's wishes, is preferable to the continued worsening of a serious mental illness. There is some question currently about the effectiveness of forced treatment in the legal and mental health communities. Indeed "involuntary treatment" is considered by many patients' rights advocates and mental health consumers to be an oxymoron (a figure of speech that uses seeming contradictions). It may, in fact, protect public safety at the expense of the liberty, dignity and health of the person with a mental illness.

## Precautions

The use of involuntary hospitalization or any other form of forced treatment is perhaps the most controversial issue in the wider mental health community,

## Involuntary hospitalization

### Definition

Involuntary **hospitalization** is a legal procedure used to compel an individual to receive inpatient treatment for a mental health disorder against his or her

pitting family members, citizen advocacy groups, professionals and consumers against one another on the subject. In addition, legal advocates and the courts take very seriously the **denial** of a person's liberty. Involuntary hospitalization is one of the most extreme examples of denial of liberty in a democratic society.

Most people involved in the debate would agree that forced treatment is indicative of a failed treatment system. There is some evidence that forced treatment is generally harmful and counterproductive. Yet, many people with an intensely personal stake in such a decision may see the necessity of forced treatment to prevent harm to the person with an illness or to others. Outspoken advocates may believe that in the case of involuntary **intervention**, only custodial care should be provided. There is great concern, often based on experience, that a person who has been civilly committed to a treatment facility, will also receive such forced treatment as strong antipsychotic medications or **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT). The issue of a person's ability to exercise **informed consent** about his/her treatment is clouded when the legal process of civil commitment has been initiated. In addition, there is concern that inpatient treatment will add to the **stigma** of being diagnosed with a mental illness. One research study found that persons who had been hospitalized (voluntarily or involuntarily) for treatment of a mental illness were even more likely to suffer discrimination in the job market than those who had received only outpatient treatment.

On the other hand, there are many mental health consumers who claim that an incident of involuntary hospitalization in their own treatment history may not only have saved their lives, but enabled them to receive treatment at a time when they were not capable of making a decision to do so. Family members sometimes consider involuntary hospitalization their only recourse to prevent the downward spiral of a loved one into a severe and debilitating mental illness, contact with the criminal justice system, or the devastation and dangers of **homelessness**.

## Description

As of 2002, involuntary hospitalization is a complex process because of the legal requirements that have been put in place to protect citizens from being hospitalized because of a family quarrel or similar interpersonal issue. In the nineteenth century, for example, it was commonplace for husbands who wanted to end a marriage to have wives hospitalized against their will, or for parents to commit "obedient" children. At present, however, most states

require the person who thinks someone else should be hospitalized to call 911 or their local police department. A general summary of the events that may follow the call to 911 follows, but it should be noted that procedures vary from state to state and that the following is a general synopsis. In many cases, the department will send a patrol team rather than only one officer. If the person who has made the call is in the same house (or other location) as the person needing treatment, one officer will usually talk to the caller in one room while the other talks to the affected person in a different room (if circumstances permit). The officers may also interview other family members, neighbors, bystanders, or others who may know the affected person or have witnessed their behavior. Then the two police officers will compare their evaluations of the situation. In most jurisdictions the police officers can make one of three decisions: they can decide that the person who made the call has misjudged the situation (for example, the other person may simply be intoxicated); they can decide that the affected person is mentally ill but not necessarily dangerous; or they can take the affected person to the nearest hospital emergency room. They may ask the person who called them to accompany them to the hospital. In some states, however, the officers themselves must witness the affected person attempting to harm him- or herself or someone else before they can take him or her to the emergency room.

In the emergency room, the **psychiatrist** on duty will evaluate the affected person for dangerousness as well as the presence of mental illness. He or she will interview the police officers and anyone who accompanied them as well as the affected person. If the affected person has been receiving treatment for a mental disorder, the psychiatrist will usually contact the therapist. In some cases the affected person will need a medical evaluation, including assessment for **substance abuse** or withdrawal, before the doctor can proceed with a psychiatric assessment. The psychiatric assessment will be thorough, and documented as completely as possible; laboratory tests will be ordered if necessary. When the assessment is complete, the doctor is legally required to decide in favor of the least restrictive environment to which the patient can be safely discharged for continued care.

If the doctor decides that the person is dangerous but not mentally ill, he or she will turn the person over to law enforcement. If the person has threatened to kill themselves, but the psychiatrist does not consider the threat to be lethal, he or she may allow the patient to leave the emergency room after assessment. A decision to hospitalize the person involuntarily is based on

three considerations: loss of emotional control; clear evidence of a psychotic disorder; evidence of impulsivity with serious thoughts, threats, or plans to kill self or others. In most cases the affected person will be reassessed the next day. Most states stipulate that the affected person is entitled to a hearing before a judge who specializes in mental health law within 72 hours of hospitalization. The judge can order the person released if he or she thinks the person is not dangerous.

Readers who are concerned about the mental health of a family member, roommate, or friend are advised to gather information about the legal requirements for involuntary hospitalization in their state ahead of time, because it is not easy to think clearly when someone is acting in a bizarre or frightening manner. It is also a good idea to write down the name and telephone number of the affected person's therapist (if they have one), and the names of any medications that the person is taking.

### Risks

A number of factors in the early 1980s led to a trend toward declining use of involuntary hospitalization for people with significant mental illnesses. The development and effectiveness of a range of new medications meant that treatment in general was more successful. The continued move toward **deinstitutionalization**, or moving people out of hospitals and into their communities, contributed as well. Treating people in hospitals is inherently expensive and was being viewed as less effective, compared to more innovative and less costly forms of treatment in smaller community-based programs. Finally, a continuing concern about civil liberties led to closer court scrutiny, the right to a hearing and legal counsel, and laws establishing a person's rights to the least restrictive form of treatment.

Recently, however, after a number of tragic and highly publicized violent incidents involving people with severe untreated mental illness, there appears to be a trend toward modification of the criteria required for involuntary hospitalization, court-ordered treatment, and outpatient commitment. Those who advocate liberalizing the process would like a person's previous mental health history to be included in the court's consideration and the standard of dangerousness to be broadened.

Most persons involved in the mental health community believe that an adequately funded, community-based continuum of care and treatment would drastically reduce the number of cases in which involuntary treatment of any kind is necessary. The use of psychi-

### KEY TERMS

**Deinstitutionalization**—The process of moving people out of mental hospitals into treatment programs or halfway houses in local communities. With this movement, the responsibility for care shifted from large (often governmental) agencies to families and community organizations.

**Due process**—A term referring to the regular administration of a system of laws that conform to fundamental legal principles and are applied without favor or prejudice to all citizens. In the context of involuntary commitment, due process means that people diagnosed with a mental illness cannot be deprived of equal protection under the laws of the United States on the basis of their diagnosis.

**Oxymoron**—A figure of speech that involves a seeming contradiction, as in the phrase "making haste slowly."

atic **advance directives** may have an effect on the use of involuntary treatment as well. A psychiatric advance directive is a clearly written statement of an individual's psychiatric treatment preferences or instructions, somewhat like a living will for medical conditions. Psychiatric advance directives have not yet been tested in the court system but are widely endorsed throughout the mental health community as an alternative to involuntary treatment.

*See also* Advance directives; Schizophrenia; Suicide.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Butler, Robert N., Myrna I. Lewis and Trey Sunderland. *Aging and Mental Health*. 5th ed. Needham Heights, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.

"Psychiatric Emergencies Requiring Hospitalization or Other Institutional Support." Section 15, Chapter 194 in *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.

Wahl, Otto F. *Telling Is Risky Business: Mental Health Consumers Confront Stigma*. New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

Stavis, Paul F. "Involuntary Hospitalization in the Modern Era: Is Dangerousness Ambiguous or Obsolete?" *Quality of Care Newsletter* Issue 41, August-September 1989.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- Judge David L. Bazelon Center for Mental Health Law.  
1101 15th St. NW, Suite 1212, Washington, DC 20005.  
<<http://www.bazelon.org>>.
- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince St. Alexandria, VA 22314. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.
- National Mental Health Consumers' Self-Help Clearinghouse. 1211 Chestnut Street, Suite 1207, Philadelphia, PA 19107. <<http://www.mhselfhelp.org>>.

Judy Leaver, M.A.

## Isocarboxazid

### Purpose

Isocarboxazid (brand name Marplan) is an older-generation antidepressant drug. It is used to treat symptoms associated with **major depressive disorder**. Major depressive disorder refers to a long-lasting bout of depressed mood that is severe enough to interfere with basic life activities like work, relationships, sleeping, and eating. Feelings of self-worth, interest, motivation, and pleasure are typically absent while worthlessness, emptiness, being overwhelmed, and sadness are often reported.

Isocarboxazid is used for long-term maintenance of major **depression** and may be most useful for patients whose depression has atypical features. Unless effectiveness has already been established for a particular patient, isocarboxazid would not be the first drug of choice. Its use is limited to those patients who do not respond to first-line **antidepressants** and who are amenable to close supervision. Isocarboxazid's status as a drug of last resort (as is the case with other drugs in its class) is due to its potentially dangerous side effects and the dietary restrictions taking it requires.

The safety of isocarboxazid in children has not been established.

### Description

Isocarboxazid belongs to the class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). The MAOIs inhibit the function of an enzyme in the body called monoamine oxidase; that enzyme breaks down monoamine neurotransmitters—namely serotonin, **dopamine**, and norepinephrine. Under nor-

mal conditions, monoamine oxidase halts the action of these **neurotransmitters**. With MAOIs, the neurotransmitters last longer and accumulate, and their action is enhanced. It is this enhancement of neurotransmitter action that is thought to contribute to isocarboxazid's therapeutic efficacy.

There are two types of monoamine oxidases; they are denoted MAO-A and MAO-B. Isocarboxazid acts on both types, as do other nonselective monoamine oxidase inhibitors such as **phenelzine** and tranylcypromine.

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors do not elevate mood in non-depressed people. In depressed patients, they are used when other, first-line antidepressants are ineffective.

### Recommended dosage

Isocarboxazid is taken orally. As is the case with most antidepressant drugs, patients are started at one dose and medication is gradually increased to a so-called maintenance dose to achieve the best outcome. For isocarboxazid, the starting dose is 10 mg, twice a day. Whereas dosage can vary widely in individual patients, a typical progression would be to increase the dose gradually to 15–30 mg twice a day as a maintenance dose. Because of the delayed therapeutic response, at least one to two weeks should pass before increasing the dose.

### Precautions

Patients taking isocarboxazid must be warned about food interactions. Foods like aged cheese, beer, and red wine contain tyramine and in concert with MAOIs can result in hypertensive crisis. Other foods high in tyramine (or dopamine itself) are bananas, fava beans, figs, raisins, yogurt, sour cream, soy sauce, pickled herring, caviar, liver, and tenderized meats; these foods should not be consumed when taking isocarboxazid.

Hypertensive crisis can also occur with certain drug interactions (detailed below). Monoamine oxidase inhibitors should not be taken with asthma drugs, cold and allergy medications, or diet drugs. Patients taking isocarboxazid should inform their doctors and dentists of that fact to avoid being administered a contraindicated medication.

Isocarboxazid use may negatively interact with certain health conditions. It should not be used in patients with cardiovascular disease, cerebrovascular disease, or liver disease, and great caution should be used if there is poor kidney function or a history of **seizures**.

## KEY TERMS

**Antidepressant**—A medication taken to alleviate clinical depression.

**Major depressive disorder**—A clinical psychiatric diagnosis of chronic depressed mood that interferes with normal life activities.

**Dopamine**—A chemical messenger in the brain that regulates reward and movement.

**Hypertensive crisis**—A precipitous rise in high blood pressure that can lead to brain hemorrhage or heart failure.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)**—A class of antidepressant drugs that work by enhancing the neurotransmitters dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin in the brain.

**Neurotransmitters**—Chemical messengers that transmit signals between nerves.

**Norepinephrine**—A chemical messenger in the brain that regulates arousal and attention.

**Serotonin**—A chemical messenger in the brain that regulates arousal and mood.

Worsening of depression and risk of **suicide** are relevant to isocarboxazid, as they are to all antidepressant drugs. The risk is especially high during the lag time until therapeutic efficacy can be achieved. Close monitoring of patients for the first four weeks of treatment is advised.

### Side effects

Isocarboxazid, like the other MAOIs, can cause a variety of side effects apart from the food interactions described above. Common side effects include dizziness and fainting associated with low blood pressure when standing up (orthostatic hypotension), sexual

dysfunction, **anxiety**, headache, nausea, sleep disturbances, edema, constipation, and weight gain. Serious but less common side effects include hepatic damage.

### Interactions

A patient should not take isocarboxazid at the same time as other antidepressants. Two to five weeks of wash-out time must pass before switching from a non-MAOI antidepressant drug to isocarboxazid.

The following drugs should not be taken with MAOIs: Stimulants like amphetamine, **methylphenidate**, and epinephrine; dopaminergic drugs like levodopan, L-tryptophan, and phenylalanine; over-the-counter cold and allergy medications like pseudoephedrine and dextromethorphan; diet drugs like ephedrine and phenylpropanolamine; and analgesics like meperidine.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Charney, Dennis S., MD, and Charles B. Nemeroff, MD, PhD. *The Peace of Mind Prescription: An Authoritative Guide to Finding the Most Effective Treatment for Anxiety and Depression*. New York: Houghton Mifflin, 2004.

Morrison, Andrew L., MD, *The Antidepressant Sourcebook: A User's Guide for Patients and Families*. New York: Doubleday, 1999.

Beers, Mark H., ed. "Depressive Disorders." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy, Professional Edition*. 18th ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck, 2005.

McEvoy, Gerald K., ed. "Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors." *AHFS Drug Information*. Pharm.D. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2006.

First, Michael B., MD, and Laura J. Fochtmann, MD, eds. "Treating Major Depressive Disorder: A Quick Reference Guide." *The American Psychiatric Association's Quick Reference Guides*. 2nd ed. Arlington: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.

Jill U. Adams

Jin Shin Jyutsu see **Bodywork therapies**

Journal therapy see **Creative therapies**

## Juvenile bipolar disorder

### Definition

Juvenile **bipolar disorder** (also called manic-depressive illness) is a chronic condition characterized by repeated swings in mood between mania (a state of elation and high energy) and **depression**. Early-onset bipolar disorder is manic depression that appears very early in life. Historically it was thought that children could not suffer the mood swings of mania or depression, but recent research has revealed that bipolar disorder (or early temperamental features of it) can occur in very young children, and that it is much more common than previously thought.

Although children with bipolar disorder have not been well studied, the condition is believed to occur as frequently as it does in adults, and it can affect children more severely. Adults typically experience abnormally intense moods for weeks or months at a time, but children can have rapid shifts of mood that commonly cycle many times within the day. This cycling pattern is called ultra-ultra rapid or ultradian cycling, and it is most often associated with low arousal states in the mornings followed by afternoons and evenings of increased energy. Bipolar disorder is often hard to diagnose in children, because its symptoms are difficult to distinguish from those of other mental disorders. If left untreated, bipolar disorder can significantly affect a child's relationships, overall functioning, and school performance. It also can lead to violence, drug and alcohol use, and **suicide** attempts.

### Description

Juvenile bipolar disorder is a mental condition characterized by repeated episodes of depression, mania, or both symptoms. The child may experience extreme shifts in mood and behavior. For a child to be diagnosed with bipolar disorder, the condition must be severe enough to disrupt his or her normal functioning.

The fourth edition (revised text) of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV)* identifies three types of bipolar mood episodes (these episodes were defined for adults, not children):

- Manic episodes: an elevated or irritable mood that lasts for a period of at least one week
- Hypomanic episodes: a distinct period of persistently elevated, expansive, or irritable mood that lasts for at least four days
- Mixed episodes: increased energy and agitation, coupled with feelings of sadness and worthlessness

Three major subtypes of bipolar disorder exist—bipolar I disorder (BP-I), bipolar II disorder (BP-II), and bipolar disorder not otherwise specified (BP-NOS). The *DSM-IV-TR* defines these bipolar disorder subtypes as follows:

- BP-I: the occurrence of a manic or mixed episode that lasts for at least one week
- BP-II: alternating depressive and hypomanic episodes
- BP-NOS: cases that do not meet the full criteria for the other two bipolar disorder subtypes but that involve an elevated or irritable mood, plus two or three bipolar symptoms (difficulty concentrating, sleep changes, and so on) that are severe enough to interfere with functioning

Evidence exists that juvenile bipolar disorder is a different and more severe form than adult-onset bipolar disorder. The child may cycle more rapidly from emotional highs (elation) to lows (anger and irritability). Bipolar disorder often can coexist with other emotional

and behavioral problems, such as attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), **conduct disorder** (CD), **schizophrenia**, and **anxiety disorders**.

## Demographics

The lifetime prevalence of bipolar disorder is between 1% and 3%. However, considering borderline cases, the rate may be as high as 6%. Some research suggests that as many as 1% of children may have bipolar disorder. Although the condition affects males and females equally, in children under 13 the cases are predominantly male.

## Causes and symptoms

Bipolar disorder has a strong genetic component. Studies suggest that the children or siblings of bipolar individuals have a four-to-six-fold increased risk of developing the disorder. Environmental factors, such as child maltreatment, also may play a role in the development of the condition.

Symptoms of bipolar disorder can be broken down into two categories—manic symptoms and depressive symptoms. Children with bipolar disorder may swing through cycles of these two different types of emotions. Manic symptoms include:

- Extreme shifts in mood, from anger to euphoria
- Bursts of rage
- Irritability
- Increased energy
- Over-inflated sense of self-esteem, grandiose behavior
- Decreased need for sleep, without any apparent drowsiness during the day
- Lack of attention, moving quickly from one topic or task to the next
- Increased sexuality inappropriate to age
- Agitation
- Willingness to engage in risky behaviors

Depressive symptoms are at the opposite end of the mood spectrum. They include:

- Persistent sadness (this can include unexplained crying episodes, reclusiveness, and increased sensitivity)
- Decreased energy
- Low self-esteem
- Sleepiness and increased desire to sleep
- Difficulty concentrating
- Lack of interest in school and other activities
- Persistent thoughts of death or suicide
- Unexplained aches and pains
- Alcohol or drug use

Children and adolescents with bipolar disorder may have difficulty regulating between these two types of moods. They may have explosive outbursts of anger lasting anywhere from a few minutes to a few hours, followed by periods of extreme happiness. Whereas adults can take months to cycle between mania and depression, children can cycle within weeks or even days, so they are more often symptomatic.

It is sometimes difficult to distinguish manic symptoms with those of ADHD, because hyperactivity and irritability can be hallmarks of both conditions, and both often occur simultaneously. Research suggests that more than half of children and adolescents with bipolar disorder also have ADHD. To distinguish bipolar disorder from ADHD, doctors look for symptoms that are unique to bipolar disorder, such as elated mood, decreased sleep, and grandiose behavior.

## Diagnosis

Children with symptoms of bipolar disorder should see a **psychologist** or **psychiatrist** for evaluation, especially if a first-degree family member has a history of the condition. Evaluation is also important in children who are taking stimulant medications for ADHD and who are experiencing manic symptoms as a result. Children with bipolar disorder should be carefully monitored for associated problems, such as **substance abuse**, developmental delays, and suicide.

**Diagnosis** of children with bipolar disorder is often challenging, because the condition can present with other mental disorders, such as depression, and because symptoms (such as boasting and elation) can be difficult to distinguish from other childhood disorders and normal childhood emotions. Doctors often use *DSM-IV* guidelines to diagnose children with bipolar disorder, but these were developed for adults, and the symptoms can differ.

Assessment should include personal and family histories of depression and mood disorders, and identification of mood changes. Diagnostic interviews and questionnaires, such as the Diagnostic Interview for Children and Adolescents-revised (DICA-R), the Diagnostic Interview Schedule for Children (DISC), and the Kiddie Schedule for Affective Disorders and Schizophrenia for School-Age Children (K-SADS) can be useful for diagnosis. Clinical rating scales, such as the Mania Rating Scale, can help doctors initially identify illness severity and later assess the effects of treatment on the child's symptoms.

When diagnosing mania episodes, 2005 treatment guidelines from the Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP) suggest that doctors use Frequency, Intensity, Number, and Duration (FIND) as a guide:

- Frequency: Symptoms occur most days of the week
- Intensity: Symptoms are severe enough to cause extreme disturbance in one area of a child's life, or moderate disturbance in two areas
- Number: Symptoms occur three to four times per day
- Duration: Symptoms last for four hours a day (not necessarily contiguous)

### Treatments

Most treatment recommendations for children with bipolar disorder are made based on adult research data, because little research has been done on the safety and efficacy of mood stabilizing medications in children. Doctors typically use two types of drugs to treat children with bipolar disorder: mood stabilizers (lithium, divalproex, **carbamazepine**, valproate) and atypical antipsychotics (**olanzapine**, **quetiapine**, **risperidone**). These drugs have only been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for bipolar disorder in adults, with the exception of lithium, which has been approved for children age 12 and older.

The AACAP panel recommends that doctors treat their patients with medication for a minimum of four to six weeks and reassess if there is a lack of response. Doctors should carefully monitor their patients who are taking these medications, because of the risks of side effects. According to the AACAP practice parameters, doctors should consider effectiveness, phase of illness, tolerability, and patient history of medication response, among other factors, when prescribing these medications. Atypical antipsychotics can cause marked weight gain in some children, which can lead to heart problems and diabetes later in life. They have also been linked to a rare but serious condition called **tardive dyskinesia**, which is characterized by abnormal movements (such as of the tongue).

Drugs used to treat other mental health conditions, such as **antidepressants** for depression and stimulant medications used to treat ADHD, may lead to manic symptoms. If a child becomes manic while taking antidepressants or stimulants, he or she may require treatment for bipolar disorder.

Some children with bipolar disorder may benefit from a combination of medication and **psychotherapy**, including **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, which

### KEY TERMS

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)**—A behavioral disorder occurring during childhood that is characterized by poor concentration and hyperactivity.

**Atypical antipsychotics**—A class of newer generation antipsychotic medications that are used to treat schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and other mental disorders.

**Conduct disorder**—A pattern of disruptive behaviors that violate rules or the rights of others. These behaviors can include bullying, lying, destroying property, and stealing.

**Hypomania**—A milder form of mania that involves increased mood and a decreased need for sleep.

**Mania**—A condition involving excessive elation or irritability, difficulty focusing, restlessness, and a decreased need for sleep.

**Mixed episodes**—Periods in which mania and depression coexist.

**Rapid cycling**—A condition that occurs with bipolar disorder, in which the person cycles rapidly between manic and depressive symptoms.

**Schizophrenia**—A mental disorder in which a person experiences hallucinations, delusions, and displays unusual behavior.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—Abnormal involuntary movements that can occur with the long-term use of certain antipsychotic medications.

**Ultra-ultra rapid or ultradian cycling**—Most often associated with low arousal states in the mornings followed by afternoons and evenings of increased energy.

teaches children how to recognize and cope with the emotions that are leading to their condition.

### Prognosis

Children with bipolar disorder will typically require ongoing treatment with medication to prevent a **relapse**, and some will require a lifetime of treatment. Even with medication, bipolar disorder can be chronic, with symptoms persisting for many months or even years. In adolescents, bipolar disorder tends to be more chronic and treatment-resistant than it is in adults. The rate of relapse in young people can be greater than 50%.

## Prevention

Although the initial onset of bipolar disorder is not preventable, there are strategies to help avoid a relapse. The family of the bipolar child can learn ways to identify relapse symptoms and how to avoid factors that may trigger relapse (such as substance **abuse**, **stress**, medication noncompliance, or sleep deprivation). Families also may be taught **communication skills** to improve their interpersonal relationships.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Faedda, Gianni L., and Nancy B. Austin. *Parenting a Bipolar Child: What to Do and Why*. Oakland: New Harbinger Publications, 2006.
- Lombardo, Gregory T. *Understanding the Mind of Your Bipolar Child: The Complete Guide to the Development, Treatment, and Parenting of Children with Bipolar Disorder*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 2006.
- Mash, Eric J., and Russell A. Barkley, eds. *Treatment of Childhood Disorders*. 3rd ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2006.
- Suppes, Trisha, MD, PhD, and Ellen B. Dennehy, PhD. *Bipolar Disorder: The Latest Assessment and Treatment Strategies*. Kansas City: Compact Clinicals, 2005.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Child & Adolescent Bipolar Foundation, 1000 Skokie Boulevard, Suite 570, Wilmette, IL 60091. (847) 256-8525. <<http://www.bpkids.org>>.
- Depression and Bipolar Support Alliance, 730 N. Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610-7224. (800) 826-3632. <<http://www.dbsalliance.org>>.
- Mental Health America, 2000 N. Beauregard Street, 6th Floor, Alexandria, VA 22311. (800) 969-6642. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.
- National Alliance on Mental Illness, Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (866)615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Stephanie N. Watson

## Juvenile depression

### Definition

**Depression** is not confined to adulthood—it also can arise in childhood and adolescence. Depression in

children can be triggered by a traumatic life experience, such as the death of a loved one, parents' divorce, difficulty in school, or illness. A **diagnosis** of depression is made when the feelings of sadness are severe enough to disrupt the child's daily life. Significant depression also can interfere with a child's development and can potentially lead to alcohol or drug use, or **suicide**. Children who experience depression are more likely to be depressed as adults.

## Description

Research has indicated that rates of depression have risen in children and adolescents during the last few decades, although the reason for this rise is unclear. Just as in adults, depression in children can range in severity.

**Major depressive disorder** is the most severe form of depression. The **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, fourth edition, text revised (*DSM-IV TR*), defines a major depressive episode as five or more symptoms (which can include depressed mood or irritability most of the day, markedly diminished interest in activities, significant weight loss without dieting, **insomnia** or **hypersomnia** nearly every day, agitation, **fatigue**, feelings of worthlessness or guilt, diminished ability to think or concentrate, and recurrent thoughts of death or suicide) within a two-week period.

**Dysthymic disorder** is a milder but chronic form of depression that persists for at least one year in children (episodes last between two and three years). It is characterized by symptoms of depression or irritability, as well as appetite changes, difficulty sleeping, low self-esteem, fatigue, poor concentration, or feelings of hopelessness. Dysthymia can interfere with a child's relationships, schoolwork, and self-esteem.

## Demographics

Approximately 1% to 2% of children and 5% of adolescents experience symptoms of depression, and 3% to 5% of young people have major depressive disorder. The incidence of depression is lower in young children and rises after puberty. In childhood, the rates of depression are about equal in boys and girls, but, in adolescence, girls are more than twice as likely to be depressed as boys, possibly due to hormonal changes that occur during puberty. Additionally, girls tend to have an internal locus of control, which is related to self-blame versus the external locus of control experienced by many adolescent males.

About two-thirds of children with depression have a concurrent mental disorder, and so are at higher risk for

developing depression again after receiving treatment. Children with depression have a two- to fourfold increased risk of being depressed as adults. Nearly three-quarters of children and adolescents with **depressive disorders** do not receive appropriate treatment.

### Causes and symptoms

Although in some cases depression stems from a life event, in other situations it arises without apparent cause.

#### Causes

Doctors are unsure about the underlying causes of depression, but the problem may arise from neurotransmitter abnormalities in the **brain** as well as hormone perturbations. Changes in the prefrontal cortex have been noted in childhood depression. Hormones seem to play a role in depression, too.

Depression has both genetic and social components. The condition runs in families, and there is evidence that a child is more likely to develop depression if his or her parent is depressed. Studies have indicated that identical twins, who share the same genes, are about three times more likely to both have major depressive disorder than are fraternal twins, who share fewer of the same genes. It also may be possible that growing up with a parent who is depressed may make a child more prone to duplicating the behavior. Negative parenting tactics (such as rejection and lack of nurturing) also can influence the development of depression.

Stressful experiences, such as the death of a loved one, moving to a new city, living in poverty, or suffering sexual or physical **abuse**, can trigger depression, especially in children who are already vulnerable due to inherited factors. Depression can be distinguished from normal sadness during these experiences because its duration is disproportionate to the event.

In some cases, a medical condition, such as cancer, infectious mononucleosis, anemia, thyroid disease, or vitamin deficiency, can trigger depression. Some medications, such as isotretinoin (Accutane), may also lead to depressive symptoms. Depression stemming from illness or medication is referred to as secondary depressive mood disorder.

#### Symptoms

A child who is experiencing depression may have uncontrollable feelings of sadness. He or she may lose interest in friends, school, and activities. Other symptoms of depression include:

- Feelings of worthlessness or hopelessness
- Crying for no apparent reason
- Change in appetite
- Weight loss or gain
- Disrupted or prolonged sleep
- Lack of energy
- Difficulty concentrating
- Irritable, aggressive, or hostile behaviors
- Aches and pains that have no known medical cause (this is particularly common in children under age seven, who are less able to articulate their emotions)
- Alcohol or drug use
- Suicidal thoughts or actions

Depression often occurs together with other mental disorders, including **anxiety disorders**, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, **substance abuse disorder**, and **oppositional defiant disorder**.

### Diagnosis

Diagnosing depression may begin with the child's primary care doctor, who can make a referral to a child **psychiatrist** or **psychologist** if necessary. The doctor will typically start a depression evaluation by interviewing the child and his or her parents. The assessment may include a physical history and examination to rule out any conditions that can cause depression, such as thyroid disorders.

To diagnose depression, doctors sometimes used questionnaires or scales. The Children's Depression Inventory (CDI) is commonly used to diagnose children ages 7 to 17 years old. The results of this inventory are represented as a t-score. A t-score of greater than 20 on the long form or greater than 7 on the short form indicates a diagnosis of clinical depression.

Because patients with depression are at greater risk for attempting suicide (major depression increases the suicide risk 12-fold), doctors should assess the child's suicide risk during the initial visit.

### Treatments

Treatment methods for children with depression include therapy and medication. Therapy may be conducted individually, in groups, or with the child's family. **Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) is the most thoroughly studied treatment for childhood depression, and research indicates that it is effective for treating mild to moderate depression. CBT involves changing the negative or distorted thoughts that are leading to the depression, and improving the child's coping skills. The therapist can help the child deal with

**grief** and more appropriately handle his or her emotions, as well as educate the parents about developing healthier communication strategies and familial relationships. **Interpersonal therapy (IPT)**, which is based on the belief that depression is triggered by interpersonal disputes, has also been shown to positively influence depressive symptoms in children and adolescents.

In moderate to severe cases of depression, doctors may prescribe antidepressant medications called **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, such as **fluoxetine** (Sarafem) and **paroxetine (Paxil)**. Presently, fluoxetine is the only SSRI approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for treating depression in children 8 to 17 years of age. SSRIs work by restoring the correct balance of serotonin in the brain. However, because **antidepressants** have been linked to an increased risk of suicidal thoughts and behaviors in children and adolescents (the packaging of SSRIs carries a black-box warning regarding this risk), doctors should carefully monitor their young patients for any signs of suicidal tendencies during treatment. Due to their high risk of side effects and lack of effectiveness in a younger population, tricyclic antidepressants such as **imipramine** (Tofranil) are not recommended for children and adolescents.

The recommended treatment duration for children experiencing their first episode of depression is at least six months. Medication should be tapered off over a period of one to two months to prevent symptoms of withdrawal. Subsequent depressive episodes require at least one year of treatment, and children who have had more than three episodes should be treated indefinitely. More severe cases of depression may require a combination of medication and **psychotherapy**. Patients with treatment-resistant depression may require additional medication, such as lithium, as well as extended CBT.

Children or adolescents who are exhibiting suicidal behaviors may be hospitalized until it has been determined that they are no longer a danger to themselves.

## Prognosis

Research indicates that starting treatment early can improve the outcomes for children and adolescents with depression. Children usually recover faster from major depressive episodes than adults. In most cases, children will recover from an initial depressive episode within one to two years, even if they have not been treated in some cases. However, children who have had at least one depressive episode face an increased risk of recurrence during adolescence and adulthood.

## KEY TERMS

**Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT)**—A treatment that helps patients control the negative thoughts that are leading to their depressive symptoms.

**Dysthymic disorder (dysthymia)**—A mood disorder characterized by feelings of sadness, as well as excessive fatigue, low energy, disturbed sleep, poor concentration, feelings of hopelessness and/or low self-esteem. Symptoms persist for more than two years but are not severe enough to qualify for a diagnosis of major depressive disorder.

**Hypersomnia**—Excessive sleepiness and the inability to stay awake during the day.

**Interpersonal therapy (IPT)**—A form of treatment for depression that focuses on improving the patient's relationships with friends and family members.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical that carries messages between nerve cells in the brain.

**Oppositional defiant disorder**—A type of behavior disorder characterized by defiant or disobedient behavior toward authority figures.

**Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**—A class of antidepressant medications that help improve mood by increasing the amount of the neurotransmitter serotonin in the brain.

**Tricyclic antidepressants**—A class of medications that is used to treat depression.

## Prevention

Although little research exists on the prevention of depression in children, there is some evidence that CBT can prevent the onset of major depression in children with depressive symptoms and/or **anxiety** disorders. Family dynamics also can have an impact on the development of depression. A stable, loving, and communicative family can decrease a child's vulnerability to the condition. Parents can help prevent potential problems by identifying depression earlier, when the treatment success odds are greatest. Early identification of depression involves looking for the warning signs, which may be more subtle in children than they are in adults. For example, a depressed child may appear bored, overly tired, withdrawn, or irritable. Children with depression also may experience aches and pains that are not associated with any obvious medical condition.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Gillberg, Christopher, Richard Harrington, and Hans-Christoph Steinhausen, eds. *A Clinician's Handbook of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006.
- Jongsma, Arthur E., Jr., L. Mark Peterson, and William P. McInnis. *The Child Psychotherapy Treatment Planner*. 4th ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2006.
- Wilmsurst, Linda. *Essentials of Child Psychopathology*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2005.
- Zalsman, Gil, and David Brent. *Depression, An Issue of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry Clinics*. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2006.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- The American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry, 3615 Wisconsin Avenue N.W., Washington, D.C. 20016-3007. (202) 966-7300. <<http://www.aacap.org>>.
- Families for Depression Awareness, 395 Totten Pond Road, Suite 404, Waltham, MA 02451. (781) 890-0220. <<http://www.familyaware.org>>.
- National Alliance on Mental Illness, Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- U.S. Department of Health & Human Services Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), 1 Choke Cherry Road, Rockville, MD 20857. (240) 276-1310. <<http://www.samhsa.gov>>.

Stephanie N. Watson

Juvenile manic-depressive illness see **Juvenile bi-polar disorder**



# K

K-ABC see **Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children**

K-SNAP see **Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure**

KAIT see **Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test**

## Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test

### Definition

The Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test (KAIT) is an individually administered general intelligence test appropriate for adolescents and adults, aged 11 to over 85 years.

### Purpose

The KAIT is intended to measure both fluid and crystallized intelligence. Fluid intelligence refers to abilities such as problem solving and reasoning, and generally thought not to be influenced by one's cultural experience or education. Crystallized intelligence refers to acquired knowledge and is thought to be influenced by one's cultural experience and education.

The KAIT was developed by Alan S. Kaufman and Nadeen L. Kaufman as a method of measuring intelligence assuming broader definitions of fluid and crystallized abilities than assumed by other measures. Also, they wanted a test based on theories that accounted for developmental changes in intelligence. Although the Kaufmans had earlier designed a test for younger children, the **Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children** (K-ABC), they did not consider the KAIT to be an extension of this test. They believed that the developmental and neuropsychological changes specific to adults and

adolescents warranted a different testing approach than did the changes relevant to younger children. Thus, a different approach was used when developing the KAIT, although the K-ABC was also based somewhat on the split between fluid and crystallized intelligence.

Theoretically, the KAIT is most influenced by Horn and Cattell's formulation of the distinction between fluid and crystallized intelligence, sometimes referred to as Gf-Gc theory. Gf refers to general fluid abilities and Gc refers to general crystallized abilities. The KAIT is also influenced by Piaget's theory of cognitive development, specifically the formal operations stage experienced in adolescence. During this stage, adolescents begin to perform more complex mental operations and are better able to transform and manipulate information. Another theoretical influence of the KAIT is Luria's theory of planning ability. This theory attempted to explain developmental changes occurring in early adolescence that influence decision making and problem solving.

### Precautions

There are very specific rules governing administration of the test that must be adhered to for scoring to be accurate. Thus, administrators must be properly trained to administer the KAIT. Specifically, for all subtests there is a discontinue rule, instructing administrators when to stop administering test items.

The KAIT is not appropriate for children younger than 11. A test more appropriate for younger children, such as the K-ABC, should be given instead. The K-ABC is appropriate for children up to the age of 12 years and six months, so there is some overlap between the two tests, specifically for children between 11 and 12 years and six months old.

### Description

The KAIT includes two components, a core battery and an expanded battery. The core battery consists

of a fluid scale, a crystallized scale, and six subtests, and takes about 65 minutes to complete. The expanded battery includes the core battery elements, as well as four additional subtests, and takes about 90 minutes to complete.

The following core battery subtests are related to fluid intelligence: logical steps, a test of sequential reasoning; mystery codes, a test measuring induction; and Rebus learning, a test of long-term memory. The following core battery subtests are related to crystallized intelligence: definitions, a test of word knowledge and language development; double meanings, a measure of language comprehension; and auditory comprehension, a test of listening ability.

The expanded battery also includes memory for block designs, a measure of visual processing related to fluid intelligence; famous faces, a test of cultural knowledge related to crystallized intelligence; auditory delayed recall; and Rebus delayed recall. The two delayed recall subtests provide a general measure of delayed memory.

There is also an optional supplemental mental status exam included in the KAIT battery. This subtest is only given to examinees with suspected mental impairment.

One strength of the KAIT is that most of the subtests are presented in both visual and auditory formats. This gives test takers more variety and allows for measurement of intelligence in different contexts. Also, the test was designed in a way to keep test takers active and engaged.

In contrast to other adult-specific or adolescent-specific **intelligence tests**, the KAIT is appropriate for a wider age range. This allows for more accurate tracking of intelligence changes between adolescence and adulthood.

## Results

The KAIT yields several different kinds of scores, including raw scores, scaled scores, and intelligent quotient (IQ) scores. Raw scores and scaled scores are calculated for each subtest (six for the core battery; 10 for the expanded battery). Raw scores are calculated first, and simply refer to the number of points achieved by the examinee on a particular subtest. Raw scores are converted to scaled scores to ease comparison between subtests and between examinees. The subtest scaled scores are standardized to have a mean of 10 and a standard deviation of three.

Three IQ scores are obtained: composite intelligence, fluid intelligence, and crystallized intelligence.

## KEY TERMS

**Factor analysis**—A statistical method for summarizing relationships between variables.

**Mean**—The mathematical average of all scores in a set of scores. The means are based on a comparison to others in the same age group. Standardizing the means within age groups allow for comparisons across age groups.

**Standard deviation**—A measure of variability in a set of scores. The standard deviations are based on a comparison to others in the same age group. Standardizing in this way then allows scores to be comparable across age groups.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing scoring norms.

The IQ scores have a mean of 100 and a standard deviation of 15. The fluid intelligence IQ score is based on the sum of the three fluid intelligence subtests (logical steps, mystery codes, and Rebus learning). The crystallized intelligence IQ score is based on the sum of the three crystallized intelligence subtests (definitions, double meanings, and auditory comprehension). The composite intelligence IQ score is based on all six core subtests. The expanded battery subtests are not utilized when computing the three IQ scores.

Overall, the KAIT has high reliability and validity. Studies have indicated that in relation to other general intelligence tests, the crystallized, fluid, and composite IQ scores are accurately and consistently measured. Data looking at trends related to age show that average subtest and IQ scores are fairly consistent across the age range in which the KAIT is administered.

The KAIT yields IQ scores in a relatively wide range, from much lower than average intelligence to much higher than average intelligence. Because of this, the KAIT is often used as an assessment of individuals with exceptional abilities, such as gifted children.

There have been factor analysis studies comparing the KAIT to the widely used Wechsler scales of intelligence, (the **Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children** and the **Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale**). The KAIT crystallized IQ has been shown to measure abilities similar to those measured by the Wechsler scales' verbal intelligence factor. However, the KAIT Fluid IQ has been shown to measure abilities considerably different from those measured by the Wechsler

performance factor, which is thought to be a measure of fluid intelligence.

*See also* Stanford-Binet intelligence scales.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Groth-Marnat, Gary. *Handbook of Psychological Assessment*. 3rd edition. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1997.
- Kline, Paul. *The Handbook of Psychological Testing*. New York: Routledge, 1999.
- Lichtenberger, Elizabeth O., Debra Y. Broadbooks, and Alan S. Kaufman. *Essentials of Cognitive Assessment with KAIT and Other Kaufman Measures*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2000.
- McGrew, Kevin S., and Dawn P. Flanagan. *The Intelligence Test Desk Reference*. Needham Heights, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.
- Sternberg, Robert J. *Encyclopedia of Human Intelligence*. New York: Macmillan, 1994.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

## Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children

### Definition

The Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children (K-ABC) is a standardized test that assesses intelligence and achievement in children aged two years, six months to 12 years, 6 months. The edition published in 1983 by Kaufman and Kaufman was revised in 2002 to expand its age range (to cover children ages three to eighteen) and enhance its usefulness. In addition, new subtests were added and existing subtests updated.

### Purpose

The K-ABC was developed to evaluate preschoolers, minority groups, and children with learning disabilities. It is used to provide educational planning and placement, neurological assessment, and research. The assessment is to be administered in a school or clinical setting and is intended for use with English speaking, bilingual, or nonverbal children. There is also a Spanish edition that is to be used with children whose primary language is Spanish.

### Precautions

The K-ABC is especially useful in providing information about nonverbal intellectual abilities. How-

ever, it has been criticized for not focusing on measures of verbal intelligence in the Mental Processing Composite score, which measures intelligence. Additionally, the separation of intelligence and achievement scores has been questioned by researchers who claim the two terms are misleading. For example, many subtests in the achievement composite are in fact measures of intelligence rather than achievement (knowledge acquired through school and/or home environment). The K-ABC should be used with caution as the primary instrument for identifying the intellectual abilities of children.

Administration and interpretation of results (as with all psychometric testing) requires a competent examiner who is trained in psychology and individual intellectual assessment—preferably a **psychologist**.

### Description

Administration of the K-ABC takes between 35 and 85 minutes. The older the child, the longer the test generally takes to administer. It is comprised of four global test scores that include:

- sequential processing scales
- simultaneous processing scales
- achievement scales
- mental processing composite

There is an additional nonverbal scale that allows applicable subtests to be administered through gestures to hearing impaired, speech/language impaired, or children who do not speak English.

The test consists of 16 subtests—10 mental processing subtests and six achievement subtests. Not all subtests are administered to each age group, and only three subtests are administered to all age groups. Children ages two years, 6 months are given seven subtests, and the number of subtests given increase with the child's age. For any one child, a maximum of 13 subtests are administered. Children from age seven years to 12 years, 6 months are given 13 subtests.

The sequential processing scale primarily measures short-term memory and consists of subtests that measure problem-solving skills where the emphasis is on following a sequence or order. The child solves tasks by arranging items in serial or sequential order including reproducing hand taps on a table, recalling numbers that were presented. It also contains a subtest that measures a child's ability to recall objects in correct order as presented by the examiner.

The simultaneous processing scale examines problem-solving skills that involve several processes at once. The seven subtests comprising this scale are facial

recognition, identification of objects or scenes in a partially completed picture, reproduction of a presented design by using rubber triangles, selecting a picture that completes or is similar to another picture, memory for location of pictures presented on a page, and arrangement of pictures in meaningful order.

The achievement scales measures achievement and focuses on applied skills and facts that were learned through the school or home environment. The subtests are expressive vocabulary; ability to name fictional characters, famous persons, and well known places; mathematical skills; ability to solve riddle; reading and decoding skills; and reading and comprehension skills.

The sequential and simultaneous processing scales are combined to comprise the mental processing composite. This composite measures intelligence on the K-ABC and concentrates on the child's ability to solve unfamiliar problems simultaneously and sequentially. The simultaneous processing scales have a greater impact on the mental processing composite score than do the sequential processing scales. The mental processing composite score is considered the global estimate of a child's level of intellectual functioning.

## Results

The K-ABC is a standardized test, which means that a large sample of children in the two years, six months to 12 years, six months age range was administered the exam as a means of developing test norms. Children in the sample were representative of the population of the United States based on age, gender, race or ethnic group, geographic region, community size, parental education, educational placement (normal versus special classes), etc. From this sample, norms were established.

Based on these norms, the global scales on the K-ABC each have a mean or average score of 100 and a standard deviation of 15. For this test, as with most measures of intelligence, a score of 100 is in the normal or average range. The standard deviation indicates how far above or below the norm a child's score is. For example, a score of 85 is one standard deviation below the norm score of 100.

Test scores provide an estimate of the level at which a child is functioning based on a combination of many different subtests or measures of skills. A trained psychologist is needed to evaluate and interpret the results, determine strengths and weaknesses, and make overall recommendations based on the findings and behavioral observations.

*See also* Intelligence tests; Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery.

## KEY TERMS

**Psychometric testing**—Pertaining to testing and measurement of mental or psychological abilities. Psychometric tests convert an individual's psychological traits and attributes into a numerical estimation or evaluation.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Sattler, Jerome. *Assessment of Children*. 3rd Edition. San Diego, CA: Jerome Sattler, Publisher Inc. 1992.

### PERIODICALS

Cahan, S. and A. Noyman. "The Kaufman Ability Battery for Children Mental Processing Scale: A Valid Measure of 'Pure' Intelligence?" *Educational and Psychological Measurement* 61, no. 5 (2001): 827-840.

### ORGANIZATIONS

The American Psychological Association. 750 First St., NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. (202) 336-5500. <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.

The National Association of School Psychologists. 4340 East West Highway, Suite 402, Bethesda, MD 20814. (301) 657-0270. <[www.nasponline.com](http://www.nasponline.com)>.

Jenifer P. Marom, Ph.D.

## Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure

### Definition

The Kaufman Short Neurological Procedure, often abbreviated as K-SNAP, is a brief test of mental functioning appropriate for adolescents and adults between the ages of 11 and 85 years. It is administered on an individual basis, and measures mental functioning at varying levels of cognitive complexity as well as addressing possible neurological damage.

### Purpose

The K-SNAP is intended as a short measure of mental functioning and is sometimes preferable to other longer mental status and intelligence exams. Compared to the **Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test** (KAIT), which is given to people in the same age range and takes over an hour to complete, the K-SNAP takes only 20–30 minutes. The K-SNAP

provides a measure of general mental status, as well as addressing specific mental abilities. It also allows for assessment of damage to the nervous system.

The K-SNAP was developed by Alan S. Kaufman and Nadeen L. Kaufman. Other Kaufman tests include the KAIT and the **Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children** (K-ABC). The Kaufmans based their tests on Horn and Cattell's formulation of the distinction between fluid and crystallized intelligence, sometimes referred to as the Gf-Gc Theory. Gf refers to such general fluid abilities as problem solving and reasoning. Fluid intelligence is thought not to be influenced by a person's cultural experience and education. Gc refers to such general crystallized abilities as acquired knowledge. Crystallized intelligence, unlike fluid intelligence, is thought to be shaped by a person's cultural experience and education.

Because the K-SNAP provides a measure of possible neurological impairment, it is often preferable to other measures of mental status and intelligence. If the doctor suspects that a patient may have a disorder of the nervous system, the doctor can use the K-SNAP as a short initial assessment. Depending on the results of the K-SNAP, the doctor can give more specific tests.

### Precautions

One should be careful when using the results of the K-SNAP to assess neurological impairment. It should be used as a supplement to other more extensive and more specific measures of neuropsychological functioning.

The K-SNAP is primarily a test of mental and neuropsychological functioning. Although it measures cognitive skills, it should not be used to measure someone's overall intelligence.

### Description

The K-SNAP consists of four subtests administered in the following order of complexity: Mental Status; Gestalt Closure; Number Recall; and Four-Letter Words. Each subtest contains between 10 and 25 items.

The Mental Status subtest assesses the test taker's alertness, attentiveness, and orientation to the environment. In this subtest, the examiner asks the examinee to answer verbal questions. It is the easiest and shortest of the four subtests, containing only 10 items.

The Gestalt Closure subtest provides an assessment of visual closure and simultaneous processing. In this subtest, the examinee is shown partially completed inkblot pictures and is asked to name the objects in the pictures.

The Number Recall subtest assesses sequential processing and short-term auditory memory. In this subtest, the examiner recites series of numbers and the examinee repeats the numbers.

The Four-Letter Words subtest measures the test taker's ability to solve problems and make plans. In this subtest, the examinee is asked to guess a secret word by analyzing a series of four-letter words that provide clues to the answer. It is the most complex of the subtests.

The K-SNAP is a relatively easy test to administer. Except for the Mental Status subtest, the test items are presented on an easel, which is visually appealing to many test takers. Also, because the test is brief and includes a variety of tasks, the test takers often find the test engaging and interesting.

The K-SNAP is considered to be useful in evaluating elderly people, especially with regard to decline in fluid intelligence. The Mental Status subtest can also detect possible age-related impairment in mental functioning.

Compared to other neurological and cognitive assessments, there are smaller than usual differences in K-SNAP performance between African-American and Caucasian individuals, especially with regard to fluid intelligence. This cultural neutrality makes the K-SNAP a preferred method for testing African-Americans.

### Results

The K-SNAP yields several scores, including raw scores, scaled scores, a composite score, and an impairment index. Raw scores and scaled scores are calculated for each of the four subtests. Raw scores are calculated first; they refer simply to the number of points that the examinee scored on a particular subtest. The raw scores are converted to scaled scores to simplify comparisons between the subtests and between examinees. The subtest scaled scores are standardized to have a mean of 10 and a standard deviation of three.

One composite score is obtained on the K-SNAP. The composite score has a mean of 100 and a standard deviation of 15 and is based on the scores of the four subtests.

The results of the Mental Status subtest are primarily of interest when working with middle-aged or elderly people, as well as people with neurological or cognitive impairments. Most people find the mental Status subtest very easy, and they get most, if not all, of the items correct.

## KEY TERMS

**Gestalt**—A German word that means “form” or “structure.” The Gestalt Closure subtest on the K-SNAP measures a person’s ability to identify a whole object from a partially completed drawing of its form.

**Mean**—The mathematical average of all scores in a set of scores. The K-SNAP Composite Score has been standardized to have a mean of 100. The K-SNAP subtests have been standardized to have a mean of 10. The means are based on a comparison to others in the same age group. Standardizing in this way then allows the scores to be comparable across age groups.

**Orientation**—In psychiatry, the ability to locate oneself in one’s environment with respect to time, place and people.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Standard deviation**—A measure of variability in a set of scores. The K-SNAP Composite Score has been standardized to have a standard deviation of 15. The subtests have been standardized to have a standard deviation of three. The standard deviations are based on a comparison to others in the same age group. Standardizing in this way then allows the scores to be comparable across age groups.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing scoring norms. Prior to the publication of the K-SNAP, it was standardized in 1988 using a sample of 2,000 adults and adolescents.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

Some of the interpretation of the K-SNAP involves comparisons of performance on tasks of varying complexity. For example, Gestalt Closure is considered a less complex task than Number Recall. Someone who performs better on the more difficult Number Recall subtest may exhibit some kind of **brain** dysfunction. On the other hand, that person may simply prefer sequential processing tasks.

An impairment index is also calculated and provides an objective measure of cognitive and neurological impairment. The impairment index is based on the following four factors: the K-SNAP composite score; the test taker’s performance on the Mental Status subtest; the difference between the scaled scores on the Number Recall and Gestalt Closure subtests; and the difference between the actual composite score and

the predicted composite score based on the test taker’s level of education. These four factors determine whether a more comprehensive assessment of impairment is necessary. For example, if an examinee has a composite score below 70, a low score on the Mental Status subtest, a large difference in performance in the Number Recall and Gestalt Closure subtests, and a difference of at least 24 points between the predicted and actual composite scores, there may be indications of impairment. One example of such impairment is damage to one hemisphere of the brain.

Overall, the K-SNAP has above-average to good reliability. As a mental status examination, it has been shown to have good validity as well. There have been no studies, however, demonstrating the K-SNAP’s validity as a measure of neuropsychological impairment. Because the K-SNAP is based on similar theories and on the same standardization sample as other Kaufman tests, such as the KAIT, interpretation across the range of Kaufman tests is easier than comparing results from the K-SNAP to results from tests designed by other persons.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Groth-Marnat, Gary. *Handbook of Psychological Assessment*. 3rd edition. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.
- Kline, Paul. *The Handbook of Psychological Testing*. New York: Routledge, 1999.
- Lichtenberger, Elizabeth O., Debra Y. Broadbooks, and Alan S. Kaufman. *Essentials of Cognitive Assessment with KAIT and Other Kaufman Measures*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2000.
- McGrew, Kevin S., and Dawn P. Flanagan. *The Intelligence Test Desk Reference*. Needham Heights, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.
- Sternberg, Robert J. *Encyclopedia of Human Intelligence*. New York: Macmillan, 1994.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

## Kava kava

### Definition

Kava kava is a dioecious (having male and female reproductive parts of the plant on different individuals) shrub native to the Pacific islands. Its botanical name is *Piper methysticum*; it is a member of the Piperaceae, or pepper, family. It is also known as asava pepper or intoxicating pepper. The narcotic drink made from the roots of this shrub is also called



**Kava Kava leaf.** (bildagentur-online.com/th-foto/Alamy)

kava kava. Kava kava has been widely recommended in recent years as a mild tranquilizer due to its pain-killing properties. As of 2002, however, kava kava has been the subject of official safety warnings from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and its counterparts in Canada, France, Germany, Switzerland, and Spain.

Captain James Cook is credited with introducing kava kava to Europeans when he visited the South Pacific in 1773. Previously, the inhabitants of the Pacific islands used kava kava as a ceremonial beverage. It was consumed at weddings, funerals, and birth rituals, and it was offered to honored guests. Kava kava was also drunk as part of healing rituals. The first commercial products containing kava kava were offered to European consumers around 1860.

As of 2001, kava kava ranked ninth in sales of all herbal dietary preparations sold in the United States through mainstream retailers, with total sales of \$15 million. Health food stores, health professionals, and mail order firms accounted for another \$15 million in sales of kava kava.

### Purpose

The German Commission E, a panel of physicians and pharmacists that reviews the safety and efficacy of herbal preparations, at one time approved the use of kava kava as a nonprescription dietary supplement for the relief of nervous **anxiety**, **stress**, and restlessness. That approval was withdrawn in the fall of 2001.

In addition to relief of stress and anxiety, kava kava has also been recommended by health care providers for **insomnia**, sore or stiff muscles, toothache or

sore gums, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, menstrual cramps, uncontrolled epilepsy, and jet lag.

### Description

The beverage form of kava kava was traditionally prepared in the Pacific islands by chewing the roots of the kava plant and spitting them into a bowl. The active compounds, known as kavalactones and kavapyrones, are found primarily in the root of the plant and are activated by human saliva. Contemporary Pacific islanders prepare kava kava by pounding or grinding the roots and mixing them with coconut milk or water. Modern Western manufacturers use alcohol or acetate in making liquid kava preparations. Kava kava is also available in capsules, tablets, powdered, or crushed forms. Experts in herbal medicine recommended the use of kava preparations standardized to contain 70% kavalactones.

Kavalactones are chemicals that affect the **brain** in the same way as **benzodiazepines** such as valium, which is prescribed for **depression** or anxiety. Kavalactones cause the tongue or gums to feel numb. Kavapyrones are chemicals that have anticonvulsant and muscle relaxant properties.

### Recommended dosage

Kava kava should never be given to children, particularly in view of recent health warnings concerning adults.

The usual dose of kava kava that has been recommended to relieve stress or insomnia in adults is 2–4 g of the plant boiled in water, up to three times daily. Alternately, 60–600 mg of kavalactones in a standardized formula could be taken per day.

### Precautions

Before 2002, the usual precautions regarding kava kava stated that it should not be used at all by pregnant or lactating women, or by any individual when driving or operating heavy machinery. The American Herbal Products Association (AHPA) advised consumers in 1997 not to take kava kava for more than three months at a time, and not to exceed the recommended dosages. In light of more recent findings, however, it may be prudent to completely avoid preparations of or products containing kava kava.

### Side effects

Prior to 2002, most reports of side effects from kava kava concerned relatively minor problems, such as numbness in the mouth, headaches, mild dizziness,

or skin rashes. In the nineteenth-century, missionaries to the Pacific islands noted that people who drank large quantities of kava kava developed yellowish scaly skin. A recent study found the same side effect in test subjects who took 100 times the recommended dose of the plant.

As of 2002, kava kava has also been associated with causing damage to the liver, including hepatitis, cirrhosis, and liver failure. Most of the research on kava kava has been done in Europe, where the herb is even more popular than it is in the United States. By the late fall of 2001, there had been at least 25 reports from different European countries of liver damage caused by kava kava; French health agencies reported one death and four patients requiring liver transplants in connection with kava kava consumption. On December 19, 2001, the Medwatch advisory of the FDA posted health warnings about the side effects of kava kava; on January 16, 2002, Health Canada advised Canadians to avoid all products containing the herb. France banned the sale of preparations containing kava kava in February 2002. The U. S. National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) has put two research studies of kava kava on hold while awaiting further action by the FDA. NCCAM advised consumers in the United States on January 7, 2002, to avoid products containing kava.

In addition to causing liver damage, kava kava appears to produce psychological side effects in some patients. A team of Spanish physicians has reported that beverages containing kava kava may cause anxiety, depression, and insomnia. In addition, kava kava may cause tremors severe enough to be mistaken for symptoms of Parkinson's disease.

## Interactions

Kava kava has been shown to interact adversely with alcoholic beverages and with several categories of prescription medications. It increases the effect of **barbiturates** and other psychoactive medications; in one case study, a patient who took kava kava together with **alprazolam** (a benzodiazepine used to treat anxiety) went into a coma. It may produce dizziness and other unpleasant side effects if taken together with phenothiazines (used to treat **schizophrenia**). Kava kava has also been reported to reduce the effectiveness of levodopa, a drug used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. To avoid potential reactions with prescription medications, people should inform their physician if they are taking kava kava.

## KEY TERMS

**Dioecious**—A category of plants that reproduce sexually but have male and female reproductive organs on different individuals. Kava kava is a dioecious plant.

**Kavalactones**—Medically active compounds in kava root that act as local anesthetics in the mouth and as minor tranquilizers

**Kavapyrones**—Compounds in kava root that act as muscle relaxants and anticonvulsants.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Cass, Hyla, and Terrence McNally. *Kava: Nature's Answer to Stress, Anxiety, and Insomnia*. Prima Communications, Inc., 1998.

Schulz, V., R. Hänsel, and V. Tyler. *Rational Phytotherapy: A Physician's Guide to Herbal Medicine*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag; 1998.

### PERIODICALS

Almeida, J. C., and E. W. Grimsley. "Coma from the Health Food Store: Interaction Between Kava and Alprazolam." *Annals of Internal Medicine* 125 (1996): 940-941.

Ballesteros, S., S. Adan, and others. "Severe Adverse Effect Associated with Kava-Kava." *Journal of Toxicology: Clinical Toxicology* 39 (April 2001): 312.

Beltman, W., A. J. H. P van Riel, and others. "An Overview of Contemporary Herbal Drugs Used in the Netherlands." *Journal of Toxicology: Clinical Toxicology* 38 (March 2000): 174.

"France is Latest to Pull Kava Kava Products." *Nutraceuticals International* (February 2002).

Humbertson, C. L., J. Akhtar, and E. P. Krenzelok. "Acute Hepatitis Induced by Kava Kava, an Herbal Product Derived from *Piper methysticum*." *Journal of Toxicology: Clinical Toxicology* 39 (August 2001): 549.

Kubertin, Sally Koch. "FDA Investigating Kava Kava." *OBGYN News* 37 (February 1, 2002): 29.

### ORGANIZATIONS

NIH Office of Dietary Supplements. Building 31, Room 1B25. 31 Center Drive, MSC 2086. Bethesda, MD 20892-2086. (301) 435-2920. Fax: (301) 480-1845. <[www.odp.od.nih.gov/ods](http://www.odp.od.nih.gov/ods)>

### OTHER

American Botanical Council (ABC). P.O. Box 144345, Austin, TX 78714-4345. (512) 926-4900. Fax: (512) 926-2345. <[www.herbalgram.org](http://www.herbalgram.org)>.

FDA Center for Food Safety and Applied Nutrition. <[www.fda.gov/medwatch/safety/2001/kava.htm](http://www.fda.gov/medwatch/safety/2001/kava.htm)>.

NIH National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) Clearinghouse. P. O. Box 8218, Silver Spring, MD 20907-8218. TTY/TDY: (888) 644-6226. Fax: (301) 495-4957. <www.nccam.nih.gov>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Kleine-Levin syndrome

### Definition

Kleine-Levin syndrome (also known as KLS) is a rare disorder. The most prevalent characteristic of the syndrome is recurring periods of excessive drowsiness and sleep (up to 20 hours per day) that can last weeks.

### Description

KLS was first described in 1862 and is considered extremely rare, with only 27 cases reported from 1962 to 2004 in the United States. In addition to excessive drowsiness, an episode of KLS can also involve hypersexuality and compulsive behaviors, including compulsive eating. It usually first manifests in adolescence and appears to lessen and resolve on its own with age. Although cognitive and behavioral disturbances, including transient confusion and memory deficits, can accompany the disorder, there appear to be no lasting, permanent effects. In addition to other manifestations, KLS can be accompanied by mood disorders and an extreme irritability that translates into violent behaviors in atypical cases.

The average number of episodes of KLS among cases is seven, each lasting a median 10 days about every 3.5 months. The median length of time a person experiences the syndrome is eight years, although this time is longer in women and in people who experience less frequent episodes in their first year following onset.

### Causes and symptoms

Most studies suggest that KLS is related to the hypothalamus, the organ in the **brain** that governs appetite, sleep, and hormone cycles, among other things. Researchers have failed to identify specific causes of KLS, although there are some apparent associations between events preceding the first episode of the disorder and its manifestation. The majority of cases are isolated, meaning that they do not appear to have a heritable basis.

Because many people with KLS experienced a viral illness just prior to their first episode, some experts propose that the causative agent is a type of viral or post-autoimmune encephalitis that affects the hypothalamus. Reported infections included tonsillitis, nonspecific flu-like fever, upper respiratory tract infection, and gastroenteritis. One study revealed that three of four autopsied patients with KLS had signs of inflammatory encephalitis in the hypothalamus.

Despite the suggested involvement of the hypothalamus, no association has been found clinically between a KLS episode and changes in hypothalamic hormones, cerebrospinal fluid, or other neurological signs. Similarly, in spite of symptoms such as hypersexuality, there have been no identified related changes in sex steroid hormones. One clinical association with KLS that has been found in 70% of patients is a nonspecific slowing of background brain activity on electroencephalogram testing. All **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) and cat scan (CT) imaging of the brain in KLS cases has been normal.

Symptoms can last weeks or even months. In addition to **hypersomnia** (excessive sleepiness), symptoms can include excessive eating without regard to content or quantity, extreme irritability, disorientation and confusion, low energy or no energy, hypersensitivity to noise, disconnection from reality, and blurred vision. A person experiencing a KLS episode may also report **hallucinations**. The abnormally uninhibited sex drive associated with some KLS episodes occurs more frequently in males and manifests in ways that can be alarming: those affected may expose themselves and make unwanted sexual advances. The disorder is episodic, and affected people behave normally between episodes. Intervals between episodes can sometimes last years.

Although an episode can come on without much warning, there are sometimes prodromal (pre-occurrence) signs that a KLS event is impending, especially a feeling of sudden, overwhelming tiredness. The excessive drowsiness of a KLS episode precludes normal participation in activities. In spite of the hypersomnia, a person experiencing a KLS episode is still able to wake to eat or void.

There may be some **depression** or **amnesia** after an attack. Depression can accompany KLS and an episode of KLS can occur with a recurring episode of depression. About half of patients report a depressive mood in conjunction with a KLS event.

KLS can occur as the primary disease, with onset in the teen years, or it can occur secondary to another disease or health problem, such as multiple sclerosis or brain trauma. Although fewer cases of secondary KLS occur compared to primary KLS, patients with secondary

## KEY TERMS

**Hypersexuality**—A clinically significant level of desire to engage in sexual behaviors.

**Hypersomnia**—Excessive sleepiness.

**Hypothalamus**—The hypothalamus is part of the brain that links the nervous and endocrine systems and also governs emotion, sexual activity, body temperature, hunger, thirst, and sleep cycles.

KLS may experience much longer and more frequent episodes.

### Demographics

There are no published population-based studies reporting KLS incidence. Age at onset is usually in the late teens, and the syndrome is four times more common in males. The average age at onset is about 16.9 years, with a range from 4 to 82 years. About 81% of cases start in the preteen and teen years. Although it occurs more often in males, symptoms may be worse or the disease longer lasting in females.

### Diagnosis

According to one source, diagnosing KLS is a difficult process and can result in an average delay of four years before a patient receives the correct diagnosis.

### Treatments

No definitive treatment for KLS exists, and response to current treatments can be limited. A clinician can try to address the excessive sleepiness using orally administered stimulants (**amphetamines**, **methyphenidate**, modafinil). Because there are crossover characteristics between KLS and other mood disorders, lithium or **carbamazepine** are sometimes prescribed, and lithium appears to have some beneficial effect on **relapse** rates in a little less than half of the cases.

### Prognosis

Excluding quality-of-life issues, KLS is a benign disorder that usually improves or resolves with age without permanent effects on intellect or physical function.

### Prevention

Because the causes of KLS are undefined, prevention measures have not been identified.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

Arnulf, I., J.M. Zeitzer, J. File, N. Farber, and E. Mignot, “Kleine-Levin syndrome: a systematic review of 186 cases in the literature.” *Brain* 128(2006): 2763–2776.

### ORGANIZATION

NINDS Kleine-Levin Syndrome Information Page. Available online at <[http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/kleine\\_levin/kleine\\_levin.htm](http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/kleine_levin/kleine_levin.htm)> (accessed 01/07/07).

Kleine-Levin Syndrome Foundation, P.O. Box 5382, San Jose, CA, 95150-5382. (408) 265-1099. <<http://www.klsfoundation.org/site/cls/>>.

National Organization for Rare Disorders (NORD), P.O. Box 1968, 55 Kenosia Avenue, Danbury, CT, 06813-1968. (203) 744-0100. <<http://www.rarediseases.org>>.

National Sleep Foundation, 1522 K Street NW, Suite 500, Washington, D.C. 20005. (202) 347-3471. <<http://www.sleepfoundation.org>>.

Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

## Kleptomania

### Definition

Kleptomania is an impulse control disorder characterized by a recurrent failure to resist stealing.

### Description

Kleptomania is a complex disorder characterized by repeated, failed attempts to stop stealing. It is often seen in patients who are chemically dependent or who have a coexisting mood, **anxiety**, or eating disorder. Other coexisting mental disorders may include major **depression**, panic attacks, **social phobia**, **anorexia nervosa**, **bulimia nervosa**, **substance abuse**, and **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. People with this disorder have an overwhelming urge to steal and get a thrill from doing so. The recurrent act of stealing may be restricted to specific objects and settings, but the affected person may or may not describe these special preferences. People with this disorder usually exhibit guilt after the theft.

Detection of kleptomania, even by significant others, is difficult and the disorder often proceeds undetected. There may be preferred objects and environments where theft occurs. One theory proposes that the thrill of stealing helps to alleviate symptoms in persons who are clinically depressed.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The cause of kleptomania is unknown, although it may have a genetic component and may be transmitted among first-degree relatives. There also seems to be a strong propensity for kleptomania to coexist with obsessive-compulsive disorder, bulimia nervosa, and clinical depression.

### Symptoms

The handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. Published by the American Psychiatric Association, the *DSM* contains diagnostic criteria and research findings for mental disorders. It is the primary reference for mental health professionals in the United States. The 2000 edition of this manual (fourth edition, text revision), known as the *DSM-IV-TR*, lists five diagnostic criteria for kleptomania:

- Repeated theft of objects that are unnecessary for either personal use or monetary value.
- Increasing tension immediately before the theft.
- Pleasure or relief upon committing the theft.
- The theft is not motivated by anger or vengeance, and is not caused by a delusion or hallucination.
- The behavior is not better accounted for by a conduct disorder, manic episode, or antisocial personality disorder.

## Demographics

Studies suggest that 0.6% of the general population may have this disorder and that it is more common in females. In patients who have histories of obsessive-compulsive disorder, some studies suggest a 7% correlation with kleptomania. Other studies have reported a particularly high (65%) correlation of kleptomania in patients with bulimia.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosing kleptomania is usually difficult since patients do not seek medical help for this complaint, and initial psychological assessments may not detect it. The disorder is often diagnosed when patients seek help for another reason, such as depression, bulimia, or for feeling emotionally unstable (labile) or unhappy in general (dysphoric). Initial psychological evaluations may detect a history of poor parenting, relationship conflicts, or acute stressors—abrupt occurrences that cause **stress**, such as moving from one home to

## KEY TERMS

**Anorexia nervosa**—An eating disorder characterized by an intense fear of weight gain accompanied by a distorted perception of one's own underweight body.

**Bulimia nervosa**—An eating disorder characterized by binges in which large amounts of food are consumed, followed by forced vomiting.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—Disorder in which the affected individual has an obsession (such as a fear of contamination, or thoughts he or she doesn't like to have and can't control) and feels compelled to perform a certain act to neutralize the obsession (such as repeated handwashing).

**Panic disorder**—An anxiety disorder in which an individual experiences sudden, debilitating attacks of intense fear.

**Phobia**—Irrational fear of places, things, or situations that lead to avoidance.

**Rational emotive therapy**—A form of psychotherapy developed by Albert Ellis and other psychotherapists based on the theory that emotional response is based on the subjective interpretation of events, not on the events themselves.

another. The recurrent act of stealing may be restricted to specific objects and settings, but the patient may or may not describe these special preferences.

## Treatments

Once the disorder is suspected and verified by an extensive psychological interview, therapy is normally directed towards impulse control, as well as any accompanying mental disorder(s). **Relapse prevention** strategies, with a clear understanding of specific triggers, should be stressed. Treatment may include psychotherapies such as **cognitive-behavioral therapy** and **rational emotive therapy**. Recent studies have indicated that **fluoxetine** (Prozac) and **naltrexone** (Revia) may also be helpful.

## Prognosis

Not much solid information is known about this disorder. Since it is not usually the presenting problem

or chief complaint, it is frequently not even diagnosed. There are some case reports that document treatment success with antidepressant medications, although as with almost all psychological disorders, the outcomes vary.

### Prevention

There is little evidence concerning prevention. A healthy upbringing, positive intimate relationships, and management of acutely stressful situations may lower the incidence of kleptomania and coexisting disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Tasman, Allan, Jerald Kay, and Jeffrey A. Lieberman, eds. *Psychiatry*. 1st ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.

Klonopin see **Clonazepam**

# L

Laboratory tests see **Urine drug screening**

Lamictal see **Lamotrigine**

## Lamotrigine

### Definition

Lamotrigine is an anticonvulsant drug commonly used to prevent **seizures**. It is also used as a mood stabilizer in some people with bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder. In the United States, lamotrigine is available under the trade name of Lamictal.

### Purpose

Lamotrigine is used to prevent seizures in individuals with seizure disorders. It is also used as a mood stabilizer in people with **bipolar disorder**.

### Description

The United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved Lamotrigine in 1994. This drug appears to suppress the activity of neurons (nerve cells) in the **brain**. By stabilizing neurons, lamotrigine prevents seizure activity and may also stabilize abnormal mood swings.

Lamotrigine is available as both oral and chewable tablets. It is broken down in the liver.

### Recommended dosage

The dosage of lamotrigine varies depending upon the age and weight of the patient, other medications that the patient is taking, and whether the patient has heart, liver, or kidney disease. It is common for patients to start with a low dosage of lamotrigine. The dosage is then increased slowly over several weeks to help pre-

vent side effects. The dosage may be adjusted frequently by the prescribing physician.

A common dose for an adult who takes no other medications and has no other diseases is 150–250 mg taken twice daily.

### Precautions

A serious and permanently disfiguring rash may occur as a result of lamotrigine. The rash, which is symptom of a systemic reaction to the drug, may be life-threatening. If a rash occurs, a doctor should be contacted immediately, and the drug stopped. People who have experienced any kind of rash while taking lamotrigine should never take the drug again.

Lamotrigine should be used with physician supervision after assessing the risks and benefits in people with heart, kidney, or liver disease. The dosage is usually reduced in these individuals.

### Side effects

Side effects that occur in more than 10% of people taking lamotrigine are: headache, dizziness, unsteadiness while walking, blurred vision, double vision, nausea, cold-like symptoms involving runny noses or sore throats, and infections.

Although relatively rare, any rash that develops while taking lamotrigine should be evaluated by a health care professional, since life-threatening rashes may occur.

Other side effects include confusion, impaired memory, **sleep disorders**, nonspecific pain all over the body, and disruption of menstrual cycles.

### Interactions

Some drugs can decrease the levels of lamotrigine in the body. This may make the drug less effective. Examples include **carbamazepine**, phenobarbital, primidone, phenytoin, and **valproic acid**. Interestingly, valproic acid

## KEY TERMS

**Bipolar disorder**—A mental disorder characterized by dramatic, and sometimes rapid mood swings, resulting in both manic and depressive episodes; formerly called manic-depressive disorder.

**Folic acid**—An essential B-vitamin that humans obtain through diet.

**Manic**—Referring to mania, a state characterized by excessive activity, excitement or emotion.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals approximately 0.035 ounces.

and its close relative, **divalproex sodium**, have also been reported to increase lamotrigine levels in some people, which could increase the side effects of the drug. When lamotrigine and valproic acid are used together, there is a greater chance that a serious rash may develop. Very specific dosage guidelines must be followed when these two drugs are used at the same time.

Lamotrigine may increase the levels of carbamazepine in the body, increasing adverse effects associated with carbamazepine.

An increased risk of certain side effects may occur if lamotrigine is used with drugs such as methotrexate, that inhibit folic acid synthesis.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Ellsworth, Allan J., and others, eds. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, Inc, 1999.  
 Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th Edition. Saint Louis: Facts and Comparisons;  
 Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2002.  
 Medical Economics Co. Staff. *Physician's Desk Reference*. 56th edition. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2002.

Kelly Karpa, RPh, Ph.D.

## Late-life depression

### Definition

Late-life depression is depression occurring in older individuals. Although often associated with the **stress** and physical problems attendant with advancing age, depression is not a normal part of the aging process.

### Description

Depression in the aging and the aged is a major public health problem. Many who suffer from late-life depression go undiagnosed. The insidious nature of depression in the elderly is that its symptoms are often obfuscated in the context of the multiple physical problems of many elderly people. As the body ages, it becomes less able to respond to stress and is at increased risk for disease. The hair grays, the skin wrinkles, and reaction times slow. In addition, disabilities resulting from external factors such as stress, trauma, chronic diseases, lifestyle limitations, financial factors, and isolation may accelerate the process, resulting in the symptoms we think of as defining old age. It would seem little wonder, then, that many seniors are depressed. Depression, however, is not a normal part of aging, nor is it inevitable.

The symptoms of late-life depression can be the same as they are for **depressive disorders** in younger people, whether they be **major depressive disorder**, a **bipolar disorder**, or subsyndromal depression. The individual may experience a profound and persistent feeling of sadness or despair or lose interest in things that were once pleasurable (anhedonia). Late-life depression can also exhibit itself in less obvious ways, including sleep disturbance, change in appetite, or disturbed mental functioning. In extreme cases, late-life depression can lead to **suicide**. Depression in late life, however, is treatable, not a condition to be suffered in silence.

### Demographics

The percentage of Americans 65 years old and older who have clinical depression is significantly greater than for the general population. Whereas approximately 1% of Americans are clinically depressed, nearly 16% of those 65 years of age and older meet the criteria for clinical depression. Similarly, suicide rates for older adults are disproportionately high, particularly for white males.

A **diagnosis** of major depressive disorder is more likely in elderly patients who are also medically ill, older than 70 years of age, and are hospitalized or institutionalized. Depression in the elderly is more common when there is a history of depression earlier in life, chronic physical illness, **brain** disease, alcohol **abuse**, or stressful life events. Elderly women are more likely to become depressed than are elderly men, and single seniors are more likely to become depressed than are those who are married. It has been estimated that as many as 15% of widowed adults will have a serious depression for a year or more after the death of their spouse.

Subsyndromal depression (depression that is clinically significant but does not meet the criteria for major depressive disorder) is more common than major depressive disorder in elderly adults. It is estimated that 15% to 50% of older adults with subsyndromal depression will develop major depressive disorder within two years. Approximately 30% of nursing home residents have subsyndromal depression. As with major depressive disorder, elders with subsyndromal depression tend to be female.

### Causes and symptoms

As opposed to younger individuals, older adults are more likely to have a medical condition in addition to depression. A number of medical conditions have commonly been associated with depression in the elderly. These include:

- Coronary artery disease (high blood pressure, history of heart attack, coronary artery bypass surgery, congestive heart failure)
- Neurologic disorders (stroke, Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, Lou Gehrig's disease, multiple sclerosis, Binswanger's disease, senile dementia)
- Metabolic disturbances (diabetes, hypoglycemia, hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, Addison's disease)
- Cancer (particularly of the pancreas)
- Other medical conditions (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, rheumatoid arthritis, chronic pain, sexual dysfunction, renal dialysis, chronic constipation, viral pneumonia, hepatitis, influenza)

In addition, a number of medications routinely taken by elderly patients may cause depression. These include:

- Cardiovascular drugs (clonidine, digitalis, guanethidine, hydralazine, methyldopa, procainamide, propranolol, reserpine, thiazide diuretics)
- Chemotherapeutics (6-azauridine, asparaginase, azathioprine, bleomycin, cisplatin, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, mithramycin)
- Antiparkinsonian drugs (amantadine, bromocriptine, levodopa)
- Antipsychotic drugs (fluphenazine, haloperidol)
- Sedatives and antianxiety drugs (barbiturates, benzodiazepines, chloral hydrate, ethanol)
- Anticonvulsants (carbamazepine, ethosuximide, phenobarbital, phenytoin, primidone)
- Anti-inflammatory/anti-infective agents (ampicillin, cycloserine, dapsone, ethambutol, griseofulvin, isoniazid, metoclopramide, metronidazole, nalidixic acid, nitrofurantoin, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory

drugs [NSAIDs], penicillin G procaine, streptomycin, sulfonamides, tetracycline)

- Stimulants (amphetamines, caffeine, cocaine, methylphenidate)
- Hormones (adrenocorticotropin, anabolic steroids, glucocorticoids, oral contraceptives)
- Other medications (choline, cimetidine, disulfiram, lecithin, methysergide, phenylephrine, physostigmine, ranitidine, vinblastine, vincristine)

Because of concurrent medical problems and lowered expectations for functionality, elderly patients with depression are often undiagnosed. In addition, elderly patients often are reluctant to speak about psychological symptoms and consider depression to be a normal response to the aging process. Depressed older people may not report being depressed because they have no hope that anyone will intervene. These factors can make diagnosis difficult.

Depression in older adults does not necessarily present with the same symptoms as in the general population. Common symptoms in older people that can signify a problem with depression include:

- Unexplained physical complaints: Older adults are often reluctant to discuss psychological symptoms. As a result, symptoms of depression may be expressed in terms of a physical rather than a psychological complaint. For example, depression in older adults is often characterized by physical complaints for which no medical cause can be found or by physical symptoms that are out of proportion to the underlying medical illness.
- Hopelessness or helplessness: In older adults, it is hopelessness rather than sadness that tends to be associated with thoughts of suicide. Statements such as "I wish I were dead already," "I wish I would fall asleep and not wake up," or "what's the use in trying" are cause for immediate concern and should be responded to with psychological assessment rather than platitudes or meaningless assurances that everything is all right. Talk of suicide—even in jest—should always be taken seriously.
- Anxiety and worries: Older adults often experience general feelings of worry and tension not associated with specific anxiety or panic disorders. Statements of anxiety and worry in older adults often are signs of depression in addition to or instead of an anxiety disorder. Treatment for an anxiety disorder, however, will not treat any underlying depression.
- Memory complaints: Depressed older adults may complain about memory loss with or without objective signs of cognitive impairment. Particularly when no demonstrable memory problems can be discerned

- by simple tests, it is important that the patient also be assessed for depression and treated accordingly.
- Loss of feeling of pleasure (anhedonia): A common symptom of depression in older adults is the inability to experience pleasure from life and daily events. Expressions of anhedonia might include no longer deriving enjoyment from being with grandchildren; not wanting to read, listen to music, or participate in hobbies once found enjoyable; or feeling estranged from God or no longer being comforted by religion. Although it might seem that being less active and involved in life is a response to illness or decreased abilities associated with aging, research suggests that depression might in fact contribute to heart disease, diabetes, and arthritis.
  - Slowed movement: “Slowing down” is often associated with old age. However, things such as stooped posture, slowed movements, or slowed speech may also be signs of depression. In particular, depression associated with vascular disease is often expressed in such symptoms.
  - Irritability: Depression in older adults may also be expressed by excessive or easily provoked anger, annoyance, or impatience. Symptoms of irritability include fussiness, whining, or fretfulness even in the face of comforting. When such a pattern is persistent, assessment for depression should be considered.
  - Lack of interest in personal care: Depressed older adults may believe that they are “not worth the trouble” and fail to follow instructions for taking medications or dietary guidelines as a result. Similarly, depressed older adults may display such symptoms as lack of care about personal appearance—including not getting dressed, bathing, or performing other hygiene activities. Individuals displaying such symptoms should be assessed for depression.
  - Other symptoms: Sleep disturbance, decreased appetite, weight loss, difficulty concentrating, and fatigue are all common symptoms of late-life depression.

## Diagnosis

According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)* of the American Psychiatric Association, there are nine criteria for major depressive disorder:

- Depressed mood
- Sleep disturbance
- Lack of interest or pleasure in activities
- Guilt and feelings of worthlessness
- Lack of energy
- Loss of concentration and difficult making decisions

- Anorexia or weight loss
- Psychomotor agitation or retardation
- Suicidal ideation (thoughts of suicide)

A diagnosis of depression requires at least five of these criteria to be present nearly every day during a two-week period, or a score of 10 or more on the **Beck Depression Inventory (BDI)** or on the **Geriatric Depression Scale**.

However, significant depression in older adults does not always meet the criteria for a *DSM-IV-TR* diagnosis of depression. As a result, although depression occurs more frequently in older adults than in the general population, it often goes undiagnosed in seniors. In addition to or instead of the classic diagnostic symptoms, older adults may exhibit such symptoms as discussed in the previous section, “Causes and symptoms.” Such symptoms should also be considered when diagnosing depression in older adults.

Screening of an elderly patient for depression should include an electrocardiogram (ECG), urinalysis, general blood chemistry screen, complete blood count, and determination of the levels of thyroid-stimulating hormone, vitamin B12, folate, and medication in the blood.

## Treatments

Treatment for depression in elderly patients may be done with medication and/or **psychotherapy** (including **talk therapy** and behavior therapy). Further, research has shown that a combination of the two treatment options is more effective than the use of medication or therapy alone. Although improvement may be seen as early as two weeks, the full effect of therapy may not be observable for several months. If the patient is having a major depressive episode, recovery may take from 6 to 12 months. This means that therapy for older adults is typically needed for longer periods of time than for the general population.

Medication for depression is generally well tolerated in older adults. Drugs used in treating depression in older adults include **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** (**sertraline**, **fluoxetine**, **paroxetine**, **fluvoxamine**, **citalopram**, **escitalopram**), secondary tricyclic antidepressants (**nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, **desipramine**, **amoxapine**), tertiary tricyclic antidepressants (**amitriptyline**, **imipramine**, **doxepin**, **trimipramine**, **clomipramine**), monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) (**phenelzine**, **tranylcypromine**), and other antidepressants (**maprotiline**, **bupropion**, **trazodone**, **venlafaxine**, **nefazodone**, **mirtazapine**). As with any medication, the patient should be monitored closely to determine how

## KEY TERMS

**Bipolar disorders**—A group of mood disorders characterized by both depressive and manic or hypomanic episodes.

**Major depressive disorder**—Mental illness characterized by a profound and persistent feeling of sadness or despair and/or a loss of interest in things that were once pleasurable.

**Seasonal affective disorder**—A mood disorder in which major depressive episodes and/or manic episodes occur at predictable times of the year, with depressive episodes typically occurring during the fall and winter months. Seasonal affective disorder may be associated with a bipolar disorder, major depressive disorder, or subsyndromal depression.

**Subsyndromal depression**—Depressive episodes that do not meet the severity levels necessary for classification as major depressive episodes.

well he or she is reacting to the medication. If adverse reactions occur, another medication can be tried.

### Prognosis

The general prognosis for recovery from depression in older adults is good, although recovery may take longer for older adults than for the general population.

### Prevention

Increasingly, the literature is recognizing that although it is imperative to diagnose and treat depression in late life, it is equally important to prevent late-life depression in the first place. Researchers are currently investigating several models of prevention. These focus on individuals at high risk for depression in late life, including those with diseases that often occur with depression.

There are a number of steps that can be taken to help prevent depression. Eating a balanced diet and keeping regular meal times is important, particularly if one has problems with insulin or blood sugar levels. Getting regular exercise also helps stave off depression. If one's depression has a seasonal component, taking walks in the morning sunshine or using a light box can also help. Maintaining a regular sleep pattern is also helpful, as is avoiding drugs and alcohol. Those seniors living alone should also make an effort to

widen their social support network. Research has found that making friends at a senior center is an excellent way to do this. Additional steps that can be taken by those who have been diagnosed and are being treated for depression are to continue to take any antidepressant medications as prescribed until directed to stop by one's physician and to continue with therapy even after the medications have been stopped.

Researchers are continuing to investigate depression prevention for older adults in the hope that this too common and undiagnosed disorder can be not only successfully treated, but also prevented from occurring in the first place.

*See also* Seasonal affective disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Baldwin, Robert C.; Edmond Chiu, Cornelius Katona, and Nori Graham. *Guidelines on Depression in Older People: Practising the Evidence*. Oxford: Taylor and Francis, 2002.
- Baldwin, Robert C., and Jane Garner. "Anxiety and Depression in Women in Old Age." *Mood and Anxiety Disorders in Women*. Eds. David J. Castle, Jayashri Kulkarni, and Kathryn M. Abel. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2006. 242–66.
- Ellison, James E., and Sumer K. Verma, eds. *Depression in Later Life: A Multidisciplinary Psychiatric Approach*. London: Informa Healthcare, 2003.
- Hinrichsen, Gregory A., and Kathleen F. Clougherty. *Interpersonal Psychotherapy for Depressed Older Adults*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.
- Karel, Michele J., Suzann Oglend-Hand, and Margaret Gatz. *Assessing and Treating Late-Life Depression*. New York: Basic Books, 2002.
- Roose, Steven P., and Harold A. Sackeim. *Late-Life Depression*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2004.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

- Aday, Ronald H., Gayle C. Kehoe, and Lori A. Farney. "Impact of Senior Center Friendships on Aging Women Who Live Alone." *Journal of Women and Aging* 18.1 (2006): 57–73.
- Antai-Otong, Deborah. "The Art of Prescribing: Antidepressants in Late-Life Depression: Prescribing Principles." *Perspectives in Psychiatric Care* 42.2 (2006): 149–53.
- Baldwin, Robert C., Andrew Gallagley, Mhairi Gourlay, Alan Jackson, and Alistair Burns. "Prognosis of Late Life Depression: A Three-Year Cohort Study of

- Outcome and Potential Predictors." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 21.1 (2006): 57–63.
- Bremmer, Marijke A., and others. "Depression in Older Age Is a Risk Factor for First Ischemic Cardiac Events." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.6 (2006): 523–30.
- Brenes, G. A., and others. "Treatment of Minor Depression in Older Adults: A Pilot Study Comparing Sertraline and Exercise." *Aging & Mental Health* 11.1 (2007): 61–68.
- Burroughs, Heather, and others. "'Justifiable Depression': How Primary Care Professionals and Patients View Late-Life Depression? A Qualitative Study." *Family Practice* 23.3 (2006): 369–77.
- Elderkin-Thompson, and others. "Executive Dysfunction and Memory in Older Patients with Major and Minor Depression." *Archives of Clinical Neuropsychology* 21.7 (2006): 669–76.
- Hinton, Ladson, Mark Zweifach, Sabine Oishi, Lingqi Tang, and Jürgen Unützer. "Gender Disparities in the Treatment of Late-Life Depression: Qualitative and Quantitative Findings from the IMPACT Trial." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.10 (2006): 884–92.
- Holley, Caitlin, Stanley A. Murrell, and Benjamin T. Mast. "Psychosocial and Vascular Risk Factors for Depression in the Elderly." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.1 (2006): 84–90.
- Hybels, Celia F., David C. Steffens, Douglas R. McQuoid, and K. Ranga Rama Krishnan. "Residual Symptoms in Older Patients Treated for Major Depression." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 20.12 (2005): 1196–1202.
- Karp, Jordan F., Eric Lenze, Lalith Solai, Jules Rosen, and Charles F. Reynolds III. "Preventing Depression in Older Adults." *Clinical Neuropsychiatry: Journal of Treatment Evaluation* 3.1 (2006): 69–80.
- Newberg, Andrew R., Dimitry S. Davydow, and Hochang B. Lee. "Cerebrovascular Disease Basis of Depression: Post-Stroke Depression and Vascular Depression." *International Review of Psychiatry* 18.5 (2006): 433–41.
- Payne, Martha E., Celia F. Hybels, Connie W. Bales, and David C. Steffens. "Vascular Nutritional Correlates of Late-Life Depression." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.9 (2006): 787–95.
- Rainer, Michael K., and others. "Data From the VITA Study Do Not Support the Concept of Vascular Depression." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.6 (2006): 531–37.
- Schoevers, Robert A., and others. "Prevention of Late-Life Depression in Primary Care: Do We Know Where to Begin?" *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.9 (2006): 1611–21.
- Smit, Filip, Agnieszka Ederveen, Pim Cuijpers, Dorly Deeg, Aartjan Beekman. "Opportunities for Cost-effective Prevention of Late-Life Depression: An Epidemiological Approach." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.3 (2006): 290–96.
- Szanto, Katalin, Benoit H. Mulsant, Patricia R. Houck, Mary Amanda Dew, Alexandre Dombrovski, Bruce G. Pollock, and Charles F. Reynolds III. "Emergence, Persistence, and Resolution of Suicidal Ideation During Treatment of Depression in Old Age." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 98.1–2 (2007): 153–61.
- Vaishnavi, Sandeep, and Warren D. Taylor. "Neuroimaging in Late-Life Depression." *International Review of Psychiatry* 18.5 (2006): 443–51.
- von Gunten, Armin, Panteleimon Giannakopoulos, and René Duc. "Cognitive and Demographic Determinants of Dementia in Depressed Patients with Subjective Memory Complaints." *European Neurology* 54.3 (2005): 154–58.
- Whyte, Ellen M., and Barry Rovner. "Depression in Late Life: Shifting the Paradigm from Treatment to Prevention." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 21.8 (2006): 746–51.
- Yang, Yang. "How Does Functional Disability Affect Depressive Symptoms in Late Life? The Role of Perceived Social Support and Psychological Resources." *Journal of Health and Social Behavior* 47.4 (2006): 355–72.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association for Geriatric Psychiatry (AAGP), 7910 Woodmont Avenue, Suite 1050, Bethesda, MD 20814-3004. (301) 654-7850. <<http://www.AAGPonline.org>>.
- American Psychiatric Association, 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA 22209-3901. (703) 907-7300. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- American Psychological Association, 750 First Street NE, Washington, D.C. 20002-4242. (800) 374-2721. TDD/TTY: (202) 336-6123. <<http://www.apa.org>>.
- Depression and Bipolar Support Alliance (DBSA), 730 North Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610-7224. (800) 826-3632. <<http://www.dbsalliance.org>>.
- Fuqua Center for Late-Life Depression, Wesley Woods Health Center, 4th Floor, 1841 Clifton Road NE, Atlanta, GA 30329. (404) 728-6302. <<http://www.emoryhealthcare.org/departments/fuqua>>.
- Geriatric Mental Health Foundation, 7910 Woodmont Avenue, Suite 1050, Bethesda, MD 20814. (301) 654-7850. <<http://www.gmhfonline.org/gmhf/consumer/depression.html>>.
- National Alliance on Mental Illness, Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (703) 524-7600, (800) 950-6264. TDD: (703) 516-7227 <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- Older Adult Consumer Mental Health Alliance (OACMHA), Bazelon Center for Mental Health Law, 1101 15th Street, NW, Suite 1202, Washington, DC 20005. (202) 467-5730 Ext. 140. <<http://www.oacmha.com>>.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Lavender

### Definition

Lavender is the shrub-like aromatic plant, *Lavandula officinalis*, sometimes called *Lavandula vera* or true lavender.

### Purpose

Lavender is a mild sedative and antispasmodic. The essential oil derived from lavender is used in **aromatherapy** to treat **anxiety**, difficulty sleeping, nervousness, and restlessness. Other preparations of the plant are taken internally to treat sleep disturbances, stomach complaints, loss of appetite, and as a general tonic.

### Description

Lavender is a shrubby evergreen bush that grows to about 3 feet (1 m) tall and 4 feet (1.4 m) in diameter. The plant produces aromatic spiky flowers from June to September. An essential oil used for healing and in perfume is extracted from the flowers just before they open.

Lavender is native to the Mediterranean region and is cultivated in temperate regions across the world. There are many species and subspecies. The preferred lavender for medicinal use is *L. officinalis* or true lavender. In Europe lavender has been used as a healing herb for centuries. It was a prominent component of smelling salts popular with women in the late 1800s.

Lavender is used both externally and internally in healing. Externally the essential oil is used in aromatherapy as a relaxant and to improve mood. Aromatherapy can be facilitated through massage, used in the bath, in potpourri jars, and burned in specially-designed oil burners. Lavender is also used to treat **fatigue**, restlessness, nervousness, and difficulty sleeping. Pillows stuffed with lavender have been used as a sleep aid in Europe for many years. Lavender oil applied to the forehead and temples is said to ease headache.

Researchers have isolated the active compounds in lavender. The most important of these is an aromatic volatile oil. Lavender also contains small amounts of coumarins, compounds that dilate (open up) the blood vessels and help control spasms. Some modern scientific research supports the claim that lavender is effective as a mild sedative and a calming agent. In one Japanese study, people exposed to the odor of lavender were found to show less mental **stress** and more alertness than those not exposed to the



French lavender flowers. (Jim Allan/Alamy)

fragrance when evaluated by psychological tests. In a peer-reviewed British study, when the sleeping room was perfumed with lavender, elderly nursing home residents with **insomnia** slept as well as they did when they took sleeping pills and better than they did when they were given neither sleeping pills nor exposed to lavender fragrance.

Other external uses of the essential oil of lavender are as an antiseptic to disinfect wounds. When used on wounds, lavender oil often is combined with other essential oil extracts to enhance its antiseptic and dehydrating properties. Lavender oil added to bathwater is believed to stimulate the circulation.

Taken internally as a tea made from lavender flowers or as a few drops of lavender oil on a sugar cube, this herb is used as a mild sedative and antispasmodic. The German Federal Health Agency's Commission E established to independently review and evaluate scientific literature and case studies pertaining to medicinal plants has approved the use of lavender tea or lavender oil on a sugar cube to treat restlessness and insomnia. Despite conflicting scientific claims, this organization has also endorsed the internal use of lavender for stomach upsets, loss of appetite, and excess gas. Animal research confirms that lavender oil has an

antispasmodic effect on smooth muscle of the intestine and uterus. These results have not been confirmed in humans.

### Recommended dosage

Lavender tea is made by steeping 1 to 2 teaspoons of flowers per cup of boiling water. One cup of tea can be drunk three times a day. Alternatively, 1 to 4 drops of lavender oil can be placed on a sugar cube and eaten once a day. Externally, a few drops of oil can be added to bath water or rubbed on the temples to treat headache. Like any herbal product, the strength of the active ingredients can vary from batch to batch, making it difficult to determine exact dosages.

### Precautions

The use of lavender, either alone or in combination with other herbs, is not regulated by the United States Food and Drug Administration. Unlike pharmaceuticals, herbal and dietary supplements are not subjected to rigorous scientific testing to prove their claims of safety and effectiveness. The strength of active ingredients varies from manufacturer to manufacturer, and the label may not accurately reflect the contents.

Particular problems with lavender oil revolve around substitution of oil from species of lavender other than *Lavandula officinalis*, the preferred medicinal lavender. Most often true lavender oil is adulterated with less expensive lavandin oil. Lavandin oil comes from other species of lavender. It has a pleasant lavender odor, but its chemical compositions, and thus its healing actions, are different from true lavender oil. People purchasing lavender oil or tonics containing lavender should be alert to substitutions.

### Side effects

When used in the recommended dosage, lavender is not considered harmful. Some people have reported developing contact dermatitis (a rash) when lavender oil is used directly on the skin.

### Interactions

There are no studies on interactions of lavender with conventional pharmaceuticals. Traditionally lavender has been used in combination with other herbs such as tea oil and lemon balm without adverse interactions.

## KEY TERMS

**Antispasmodic**—A medication or preparation given to relieve muscle or digestive cramps.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Medical Economics Staff. *PDR for Herbal Medicines*. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 1999.  
Peirce, Andrea. *The American Pharmaceutical Association Practical Guide to Natural Medicines*. New York: William Morrow and Company, 1999.  
Weiner, Michael and Janet Weiner. *Herbs that Heal*. Mill Valley, CA: Quantum Books, 1999.

#### OTHER

“Lavender” Plants for the Future. 2000 (cited 12 March 2002) <<http://www.comp.leeds.ac.uk/pfaf/database/commonL.html>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

Learning disabilities see **Learning disorders**

## Learning disorders

### Definition

Learning disorders, or learning disabilities, are disorders that cause problems in speaking, listening, reading, writing, or mathematical ability.

### Description

A learning disability, or specific developmental disorder, is a disorder that inhibits or interferes with the skills of learning, the ability to store, process, or produce information. Under federal law, public schools consider a child to be learning disabled if his or her level of academic achievement is two or more years below the standard for age and IQ level. The fourth edition, text revision, of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM-IV-TR*, a handbook that mental health professionals use to diagnose mental disorders) uses the term *learning disorder* and defines this as cognitive difficulties arising from **brain** dysfunction.

It is estimated that 15% of the U.S. population, or one in seven Americans, has some kind of learning disability. About six percent of school-age children,



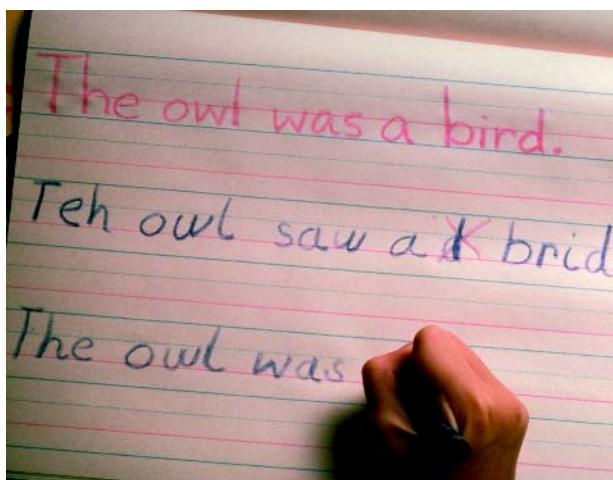
A teacher works with a young female student. (AP Images)

or almost three million children, receive some kind of special education services in school as a result of learning disabilities, and this number does not include children in private or home schools. Often, learning disabilities appear together with other disorders, such as attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). Irregularities in the functioning of certain parts of the brain that can result in information processing problems are thought to cause learning disorders. Evidence suggests that these irregularities are often inherited (i.e., a person is more likely to develop a learning disability if other family members have them). Learning disabilities are also associated with certain conditions occurring during fetal development, birth, or infancy, including maternal use of alcohol, drugs, and tobacco; exposure to infection; injury during birth; low birth weight; and sensory deprivation, in addition to some socioeconomic factors.

The socioeconomic link to the development of learning disabilities manifests as a greater rate in certain ethnic groups. In 2001, 2.5 times as many non-Hispanic black children were receiving special education services related to a learning disability. This skewed incidence is attributable to increased risk of developmental exposure

to substances known to cause neurological harm among people living in low-income communities.

The signs of the presence of a learning disorder can vary based on the type of disorder and a person's age. The factor of age can be important because what is normal in a preschool child can be a sign of a problem in a child of elementary school age. In addition to underachievement, signs can include overall lack of organization, forgetfulness, and taking unusually long amounts of time to complete assignments. In the classroom, the child's teacher may observe one or more of the following characteristics: difficulty paying attention, unusual sloppiness and disorganization, social withdrawal, difficulty working independently, and trouble switching from one activity to another. In addition to the preceding signs, which relate directly to school and schoolwork, certain general behavioral and emotional features often accompany learning disabilities. These include impulsiveness, restlessness, distractibility, poor physical coordination, low tolerance for frustration, low self-esteem, daydreaming, inattentiveness, and anger, or sadness. These signs also can be symptomatic of other disorders that are not learning



**A learning disorder makes writing a challenge..** (Will & Deni McIntyre/Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc.)

disorders, and only a professional evaluation can distinguish them.

#### *Types of learning disabilities*

Learning disabilities are associated with brain dysfunctions that affect a number of basic skills. Perhaps the most fundamental is sensory-perceptual ability—the capacity to take in and process information through the senses. Difficulties involving vision, hearing, and touch will have an adverse effect on learning. Although learning is usually considered a mental rather than a physical pursuit, it involves motor skills, and it can also be impaired by problems with motor development. Other basic skills fundamental to learning include memory, attention, and language abilities.

The three most common academic skill areas affected by learning disabilities are reading, writing, and arithmetic. Some sources estimate that between 60% and 80% of children diagnosed with learning disabilities have reading as their only or main problem area. Learning disabilities involving reading have traditionally been known as dyslexia; currently, the preferred term is “reading disorder.” A wide array of problems is associated with **reading disorder**, including difficulty identifying groups of letters, problems relating letters to sounds, reversals and other errors involving letter position, chaotic spelling, trouble with syllabication (breaking words into syllables), failure to recognize words, hesitant oral reading, and word-by-word rather than contextual reading.

Writing disabilities, known as dysgraphia or **disorder of written expression**, include problems with letter formation and writing layout on the page, repe-

#### KEY TERMS

**CAPD**—Central auditory processing disorder, the inability to differentiate, recognize, or understand sounds; hearing and intelligence are normal.

**IQ**—Intelligence quotient, or a measure of the intelligence of an individual based on the results of a written test.

titions and omissions, punctuation and capitalization errors, “mirror writing” (writing right to left), and a variety of spelling problems. Children with dysgraphia typically labor at written work much longer than their classmates, only to produce large, uneven writing that would be appropriate for a much younger child.

Learning abilities involving math skills, generally referred to as dyscalcula (or dyscalculia) or **mathematics disorder**, usually become apparent later than reading and writing problems—often at about the age of eight. Children with dyscalcula may have trouble counting, reading and writing numbers, understanding basic math concepts, mastering calculations, and measuring. This type of disability may also involve problems with nonverbal learning, including spatial organization.

In order to meet the criteria established by the American Psychiatric Association (APA) for these various diagnoses, the child’s skills in these areas must be significantly below that of their peers on standardized tests (taking age, schooling, and level of intelligence into account), and the disorders must significantly interfere with academic achievement and/or daily living.

Treatment for a learning disorder can depend on the specific disorder, the age of the person at **diagnosis**, the disorder severity, and the assumed underlying cause. For example, people with central auditory processing disorder (CAPD), a common underlying cause of some learning disorders that is centered on a person’s inability to process heard language correctly, may undergo therapy with a speech-language pathologist and other experts may use different kinds of auditory therapies to improve the person’s ability to process heard language.

#### Resources

##### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Bowman-Kruhm, Mary, and Claudine G. Wirths. *Everything You Need to Know about Learning Disabilities*. New York: Rosen Publishing Group, 1999.

Tuttle, Cheryl Gerson, and Gerald A. Tuttle, eds. *Challenging Voices: Writings By, For, and About People with Learning Disabilities*. Los Angeles: Lowell House, 1995.

Wong, Bernice, ed. *Learning About Learning Disabilities*. San Francisco: Morgan Kauffman Publishers, 1998.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

Learning Disabilities Association of America (formerly ACLD, the Association for Children and Adults with Learning Disabilities). 4156 Library Road, Pittsburgh, PA 15234-1349. Telephone: (412) 341-1515. Web site: <<http://www.ldanatl.org>>.

National Center for Learning Disabilities. 381 Park Avenue South Suite 1401, New York, NY 10016. Telephone: (212) 545-7510, or (888) 575-7373. Web site: <<http://www.ncld.org>>.

National Institute of Child Health and Human Development (NICHD), National Institutes of Health, DHHS, 31 Center Drive, Rm. 2A32 MSC 2425, Bethesda, MD 20892-2425 Telephone: (301) 496-5133, Fax: (301) 496-7101. Web site: <<http://www.nichd.nih.gov>>

#### WEB SITES

American Speech-Language-Hearing Association. <<http://www.asha.org/public/speech/disorders/Language-Based-Learning-Disabilities.htm>>

“Developmental reading disorder.” National Library of Medicine. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001406.htm>>

National Library of Medicine. Resources for learning disorder. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/learningdisorders.html>>

National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders. <<http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/health/voice/auditory.asp>>

Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

**Librium** see **Chlordiazepoxide**

**Lidone** see **Molindone**

## Light therapy

### Definition

Light therapy refers to two different categories of treatment, one used in mainstream medical practice and the other in alternative/complementary medicine. Mainstream light therapy (also called phototherapy) includes the use of ultraviolet light to treat psoriasis and other skin disorders, and the use of full-spectrum or bright light to treat **seasonal affective disorder** (SAD). Light therapy for SAD was first introduced in the 1980s and is now a widely approved form of treatment for the disorder.

Light therapy in alternative or complementary approaches includes such techniques as the use of colored light or colored gemstones directed at or applied to various parts of the body. In some alternative forms of light therapy, the person visualizes being surrounded by and breathing in light of a particular color.

### Purpose

#### Mainstream light therapy

The purpose of light therapy in mainstream psychiatric treatment is the relief of seasonal affective disorder, a form of **depression** most often associated with shortened daylight hours in northern latitudes from the late fall to the early spring. It is occasionally employed to treat such sleep-related disorders as **insomnia** and jet lag. Recently, light therapy has also been found effective in the treatment of such nonseasonal forms of depression as **bipolar disorder**. Light therapy for SAD and nonseasonal forms of depression is thought to work by triggering the brain’s production of serotonin, a neurotransmitter related to mood disorders. Other researchers think that light therapy may relieve depression or jet lag by resetting the body’s circadian rhythm, or inner biological clock.

In dermatology, ultraviolet (UV) light therapy is used to treat rashes, psoriasis, other skin disorders, and jaundice. Outpatient treatment for psoriasis usually requires three treatment sessions per week until the skin clears, which takes about seven weeks.

#### Alternative light therapies

Alternative light therapies are generally used to treat energy imbalances in the seven major chakras. Chakras are defined in Eastern systems of traditional medicine as energy centers in the human body located at different points along the spinal column. Each chakra is thought to absorb a certain vibration of light in the form of one of the seven colors of the rainbow, and to distribute this color energy through the body. When a specific chakra is blocked, light in the color associated with that chakra can be used to unblock the energy center and balance the flow of energy in the body.

The seven major chakras in the body and their associated colors are:

- red: the root chakra, located at the base of the spine
- orange: the sacral chakra, located in the small of the back
- yellow: the solar plexus chakra
- green: the heart chakra

- blue: the throat or thyroid chakra
- indigo: the so-called “third eye,” located in the head at the level of the pineal gland
- violet or white: the crown chakra, located at the level of the pituitary gland

Alternative forms of light therapy also use colored light to heal different parts of the body associated with the various chakras. For example, yellow light would be used to heal digestive disorders, green to treat the circulatory system, and so on. Concentrating colored light into a narrow beam or applying a colored gemstone is thought to stimulate the **acupuncture** or acu-pressure points that govern the various organ systems of the body. This application of light therapy is sometimes called chromatherapy.

### Precautions

Patients with eye disorders should consult an ophthalmologist before being treated with any form of phototherapy. Patients who are taking medications that make their skin sensitive to UV rays or bright light should also consult their health care provider. Although there are no reports of permanent eye damage from either light box therapy or UV treatment for skin disorders, patients sometimes experience headaches, dry eyes, mild sunburn, or **fatigue**. These problems can usually be relieved by adjusting the length of time for light treatments and by using a sunscreen and nose or eye drops. Lastly, patients who should have UV treatment for skin disorders should receive it from a board-certified dermatologist or other licensed health care professional; they should not attempt to treat themselves with sunlamps or similar tanning appliances.

There are no precautions needed for alternative light therapies.

### Description

#### Mainstream light therapy

Mainstream phototherapy for skin disorders involves the exposure of the affected areas of skin to ultraviolet light. It is most often administered in an outpatient clinic or doctor's office. Light therapy for seasonal affective disorder and other forms of depression can be self-administered at home or in a private room in the workplace. The patient sits in front of a light box mounted on or near a desk or table for a period of time each day ranging from 15 minutes to several hours, depending on the severity of the SAD symptoms. Some SAD patients may have two or three sessions of light therapy each day. Treatment typically

begins in the fall, when the days grow noticeably shorter, and ends in the spring.

The light box itself may be equipped with full-spectrum bulbs, which do emit UV rays as well as visible light; or it may use bulbs that filter out the UV rays and emit bright light only. Most light boxes emit light ranging from 2500–10,000 lux, a lux being a unit of light measurement equivalent to 1 lumen per square meter. For purposes of comparison, average indoor lighting is 300–500 lux, and the sunlight outdoors on a sunny day in summer is about 100,000 lux. Patients are instructed to sit facing the light box but to avoid staring directly at it. They can read or work at their desk while sitting in front of the light box. Light boxes cost between \$200 and \$500, but can often be rented from medical supply companies.

Newer forms of light therapy for SAD include the light visor, which resembles a baseball cap with a light source attached underneath the front of the device, above the wearer's eyes. The light visor allows the patient to walk or move about while receiving light treatment. Another new treatment is dawn simulation, which appears to be especially helpful for SAD patients who have difficulty getting up in the morning. In dawn simulation, the lighting fixture is programmed to turn gradually from dim to brighter light to simulate the sunrise. Dawn simulation is started around 4:30 or 5 o'clock on the morning, while the patient is still asleep.

#### Alternative light therapies

Chromatherapy may be administered in several different ways. The first step is determining the source or location of the patient's energy imbalance. Some color therapists or chromopathists are sensitive to the colors in the aura, or energy field surrounding a person's physical body that is invisible to most people. Dark or muddy colors in the aura are thought to indicate the locations of energy imbalance. Another technique involves suspending a quartz crystal on a pendulum over each chakra while the patient lies on a table or on the floor. The crystal swings freely if the chakra is open and energy is moving normally, but stops or moves irregularly if the chakra is blocked.

In the second stage of treatment, colored light is directed at specific areas of the body. The chromopath may use either colored light bulbs or may filter white light through a colored plastic filter. The red, orange, and yellow rays are thought to enter the body more effectively through the soles of the feet; patients receiving these colors of light may be asked to sit on the floor with their bare feet 12–14 in from the light source. The green ray is thought to enter through the solar plexus

and the blue, indigo, and violet rays through the crown of the head. Blue light can be used to irradiate the whole body for the relief of physical pain, and violet light can be similarly used to relieve nervous strain and mental disorders.

Another form of colored light therapy involves the use of gemstones in the colors appropriate to each chakra. The crystal structures of gemstones are thought to reflect and transmit energy vibrations, including color vibrations. In gemstone treatment, the chromopath first cleanses the patient's aura with a clear quartz crystal and then places colored gemstones (usually semiprecious rather than expensive precious stones) on the parts of the body corresponding to the location of the chakras while the patient is lying on his or her back or stomach. The colored stones are thought to both cleanse the aura and recharge the energy centers.

A third form of colored light therapy is called color breathing or color visualization. It can be self-administered at home or any other private space. The patient sits in a chair with both feet on the floor, or sits on the floor in the lotus position. He or she then breathes slowly and rhythmically while visualizing being surrounded by light of the appropriate color and breathing in that color. The patient may also repeat a verbal affirmation related to the color, such as "The orange ray is filling me with vitality and joy," or "The violet ray is healing every part of my being."

## Preparation

Patients should consult their health care provider before mainstream phototherapy, in order to determine possible sensitivity to bright light and adjust medication dosages if necessary.

Holistic and alternative practitioners usually ask patients to bathe or shower before chromatherapy, and to wear loosely fitting white or neutral-colored clothing. Washing is considered necessary to remove any negative energies that the patient has picked up from other people or from the environment. Wearing light-colored loose clothing is thought to minimize interference with the vibrations from the colored light or gemstones. The final step in preparation is a brief period of **meditation** or creative visualization for the practitioner as well as the patient. This step helps to create an atmosphere of calm and relaxation for the treatment.

## Aftercare

No aftercare is necessary for mainstream light treatments.

## KEY TERMS

**Aura**—An energy field that is thought to emanate from the human body and to be visible to people with special psychic or spiritual powers.

**Chakra**—One of seven major energy centers in the body, according to traditional systems of Eastern medicine. The chakras are associated with the seven colors of light in the rainbow.

**Chromatherapy**—An alternative form of light therapy in which colored light is directed toward a specific chakra or part of the body in order to heal or to correct energy imbalances. Practitioners of chromatherapy are sometimes called chromapaths.

**Dawn simulation**—A form of light therapy in which the patient is exposed while asleep to gradually brightening white light over a period of an hour and a half.

**Lux**—The International System unit for measuring illumination, equal to one lumen per square meter.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Phototherapy**—Another name for light therapy in mainstream medical practice.

**Seasonal affective disorder (SAD)**—A mood disorder characterized by depression, weight gain, and sleepiness during the winter months. An estimated 4–6% of the population of Canada and the northern United States suffers from SAD.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

Practitioners of alternative light therapies recommend that patients sit or rest quietly for a few minutes after the treatment rather than returning abruptly to their daily routines. This brief rest is thought to maximize the benefits of the treatment.

## Risks

As was previously mentioned, mainstream light therapies may produce minor side effects (headache, insomnia, mild sunburn or skin irritation, dry eyes) in some patients. In addition, some patients receiving phototherapy for SAD may experience **hypomania**,

which is a feeling of euphoria or an exaggeratedly “upbeat” mood. As with the physical side effects, hypomania can usually be managed by adjusting the frequency or length of light therapy sessions.

There are no known risks associated with alternative light therapies.

### Normal results

Normal results for mainstream light treatments are clearing of the skin disorder or a lifting of depressed mood or jet lag.

Normal results for alternative light therapies include a sense of heightened energy and relief from negative thoughts or preoccupations. Some chromatherapists also consider relief of physical pain or symptoms to be normal results for chromotherapy.

*See also* Circadian rhythm sleep disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, Inc., 2000.
- Chiazzari, Suzy. “Part Six: Healing with Color.” *The Complete Book of Color: Using Color for Lifestyle, Health, and Well-Being*. Boston, MA: Element Books Ltd., 1998.
- Lam, Raymond, ed. *Seasonal Affective Disorder and Beyond: Light Treatment for SAD and Non-SAD Conditions*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 1998.
- Partonen, Timo, and Andres Magnusson, eds. *Seasonal Affective Disorder: Practice and Research*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Rosenthal, Norman. *Winter Blues: Seasonal Affective Disorder—What It Is and How to Overcome It*. New York: Guilford Press, 1998.
- Stein, Diane. *All Women Are Healers: A Comprehensive Guide to Natural Healing*. Freedom, CA: The Crossing Press Inc., 1996. Includes a chapter on healing with colored crystals and gemstones.

#### PERIODICALS

- Eagles, John M. “SAD—Help arrives with the dawn?” *Lancet* 358 (December 22, 2001): 2100.
- Jepson, Tracy, and others. “Current Perspectives on the Management of Seasonal Affective Disorder.” *Journal of the American Pharmaceutical Association*. 39 no. 6 (1999): 822–829.
- Sherman, Carl. “Underrated Light Therapy Effective for Depression.” *Clinical Psychiatry News* 29 (October 2001): 32.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Holistic Medicine Association. Suite 201, 4101 Lake Boone Trail, Raleigh, NC 27607.
- Colour Therapy Association. P. O. Box 16756, London SW20 8ZW, United Kingdom.

International Society for the Study of Subtle Energies and Energy Medicine (ISSSEEM). 356 Goldco Circle. Golden, CO 80401. (303) 278-2228. <[www.vitalenergy.com/ISSSEEM](http://www.vitalenergy.com/ISSSEEM)>.

National Depressive and Manic Depressive Association. 730 Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610. (800) 826-3632. <[www.ndmda.org](http://www.ndmda.org)>.

National Institute of Mental Health. Mental Health Public Inquiries, 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 15C-05, Rockville, MD 20857. (301) 443-4513. (888) 826-9438. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

Society for Light Treatment and Biological Rhythms. 824 Howard Ave., New Haven, CT 06519. Fax (203) 764-4324. <[www.sltbr.org](http://www.sltbr.org)> E-mail: [sltbr@yale.edu](mailto:sltbr@yale.edu).

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

Limbic system see **Brain**

## Lithium carbonate

### Definition

Lithium is a naturally occurring element that is classified as an anti-manic drug. It is available in the United States under the brand names Eskalith, Lithonate, Lithane, Lithotabs, and Lithobid. It is also sold under its generic name.

### Purpose

Lithium is commonly used to treat mania and bipolar **depression** (manic depression). Less commonly, lithium is used to treat certain mood disorders, such as **schizoaffective disorder** and aggressive behavior and emotional instability in adults and children. Rarely is lithium taken to treat depression in the absence of mania. When this is the case, it is usually taken in addition to other antidepressant medications.

### Description

Lithium salts have been used in medical practice for about 150 years. Lithium salts were first used to treat gout. It was noted in the 1880s that lithium was somewhat effective in the treatment of depression, and in the 1950s lithium was seen to improve the symptoms of bipolar disease (manic depression). The way lithium works in the body is unclear, but its therapeutic benefits are probably related to its effects on other electrolytes such as sodium, potassium, magnesium, and calcium. Lithium is taken either as lithium carbonate tablets or capsules or as lithium citrate syrup.

The therapeutic effects of lithium may appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for at least two weeks after starting the drug. People taking lithium should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate changes in mood.

Lithium is available in 300-mg tablets and capsules, 300-mg and 450-mg sustained-release tablets, and a syrup containing approximately 300 mg per teaspoonful.

### Recommended dosage

Depending on the patient's medical needs, age, weight, and kidney function, doses of lithium can range from 600 to 2,400 mg per day, although most patients will be stabilized on 600 to 1,200 mg per day. Patients who require large amounts of lithium often benefit from the addition of another anti-manic drug, which may allow the dose of lithium to be lowered.

Generally, lithium is taken two or three times daily. However, the entire dose may be taken at once if the physician believes that a single daily-dose program will increase patient **compliance**. The single-dose schedule is especially helpful for people who are forgetful and may skip doses on a multiple-dose schedule. Additionally, evidence indicates that once-daily doses are associated with fewer side effects.

More than with any other drugs used in the treatment of mental disorders, it is essential to maintain lithium blood levels within a certain narrow range to derive the maximum therapeutic benefit while minimizing serious negative side effects. It is important that patients have their blood levels of lithium measured at regular intervals.

### Precautions

Because lithium intoxication may be serious and even life-threatening, blood concentrations of lithium should be measured weekly during the first four weeks of therapy and less often after that.

Patients taking lithium should have their thyroid function monitored and maintain an adequate sodium (salt) and water balance. Lithium should not be used or used only with very close physician supervision in patients with kidney impairment, heart disease, and other conditions that affect sodium balance. Dosage reduction or complete discontinuation may be necessary during infection, diarrhea, vomiting, or prolonged fast. Patients who are pregnant, breast-feeding, those over age 60, and people taking diuretics ("water" pills) should discuss the risks and benefits of lithium treatment with their doctors before beginning therapy. Lith-

ium should be discontinued 24 hours before a major surgery, but may be continued normally for minor surgical procedures.

### Side effects

Tremor is the most common neurological side effect. Lithium tremor is an irregular, nonrhythmic twitching of the arms and legs that is variable in both intensity and frequency. Lithium-induced tremors occur in approximately half of people taking this medication. The chance of tremors decreases if the dose is reduced. Acute lithium toxicity (poisoning) can result in neurological side effects, ranging from confusion and coordination impairment, to coma, **seizures**, and death. Other neurological side effects associated with lithium therapy include lethargy, memory impairment, difficulty finding words, and loss of creativity.

About 30 to 35% of patients experience excessive thirst and urination, usually due to the inability of the kidneys to retain water and sodium. However, lithium is not known to cause kidney damage.

Lithium inhibits the synthesis of thyroid hormone. About 10 to 20% of patients treated with lithium develop some degree of thyroid insufficiency, but they usually do not require supplementation with thyroid hormone tablets.

Gastrointestinal side effects include loss of appetite, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and stomach pain. Weight gain is another common side effect for patients receiving long-term treatment. Changes in saliva flow and enlargement of the salivary glands may occur. An increase in tooth cavities and the need for dental care among patients taking lithium has been reported.

Skin reactions to lithium are common but can usually be managed without discontinuing lithium therapy. Lithium may worsen folliculitis (inflammation of hair follicles), psoriasis, and acne. Thinning of the hair may occur, and, less commonly, hair loss may be experienced. Swollen feet are an uncommon side effect that responds to dose reduction.

Electrocardiographic abnormalities may occur with lithium therapy, but significant cardiovascular effects are uncommon except as the result of deliberate or accidental overdose.

A mild-to-moderate increase in the number of white blood cells is a frequent side effect of lithium use. Conversely, lithium may slow the formation of red blood cells and cause anemia.

Increased risk of fetal cardiovascular disease may be associated with the use of lithium during pregnancy, especially during the first trimester (first three

## KEY TERMS

**Bipolar disease**—A mental disorder characterized by periods of mania alternating with periods of depression.

**Compliance**—In medicine or psychiatry, cooperation with a treatment plan or schedule of medications.

**Electrocardiograph (EKG)**—A test that measures the electrical activity of the heart as it beats. An abnormal EKG can indicate possible cardiac disease.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Schizoaffective disorder**—A mental disorder that shows a combination of symptoms of mania and schizophrenia.

**Thyroid**—A gland in the neck that produces the hormone thyroxine, which is responsible for regulating metabolic activity in the body. Supplemental synthetic thyroid hormone is available as pills taken daily when the thyroid fails to produce enough hormone.

months). For this reason, pregnant women should discontinue lithium use until the second or third trimester and should receive alternative treatments for their mania.

### Interactions

Patients taking lithium should always be concerned that other medications they are taking may adversely interact with it; patients should consult their physician or pharmacists about these interactions. The following list represents just some of the medications that lithium may interact with to either (a) increase or decrease the effectiveness of the lithium or (b) increase or decrease the effectiveness of the other drug:

- angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors such as captopril, lisinopril, or enalapril
- nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen or naprosyn
- diuretics (water pills) such as hydrochlorothiazide, furosemide, or ethacrynic acid
- asthma drugs such as theophylline and aminophylline
- anticonvulsants such as phenytoin and carbamazepine

- calcium channel blockers such as verapamil or diltiazem
- muscle relaxants such as methocarbamol, carisoprodol, and cyclobenzaprine
- metronidazole, a commonly prescribed antibiotic used to treat infections
- antidiabetic therapy
- amiodarone, an antiarrhythmic drug
- antacids containing sodium bicarbonate
- antidepressants

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.  
 Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

- Baldessarini, Ross J., Maurizio Pompili, and Leonardo Tondo. "Suicide in Bipolar Disorder: Risks and Management." *CNS Spectrums* 11.6 (June 2006): 465–71.  
 Baldessarini, Ross J., and others. "Decreased Risk of Suicides and Attempts During Long-Term Lithium Treatment: A Meta-Analytic Review." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.5, part 2 (Oct. 2006): 625–39.  
 De Fruyt, Jürgen, and Koen Demeytenaere. "Bipolar (Spectrum) Disorder and Mood Stabilization: Standing at the Crossroads?" *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics* 76.2 (Jan. 2007): 77–88.  
 El-Mallakh, Rif, and others. "Bipolar II Disorder: Current and Future Treatment Options." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.4 (Oct.–Dec. 2006): 259–66.  
 Eyer, Florian, and others. "Lithium Poisoning: Pharmacokinetics and Clearance During Different Therapeutic Measures." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.3 (June 2006): 325–30.  
 Gonzalez-Pinto, Ana, and others. "Suicidal Risk in Bipolar I Disorder Patients and Adherence to Long-Term Lithium Treatment." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.5, part 2 (Oct. 2006): 618–24.  
 Kellner, Charles H., and others. "Continuation Electroconvulsive Therapy vs Pharmacotherapy for Relapse Prevention in Major Depression." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.12 (Dec. 2006): 1337–44.  
 Livingstone, Callum, and Hagen Rampes. "Lithium: A Review of Its Metabolic Adverse Effects." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 20.3 (May 2006): 347–55.  
 McElroy, Susan L., and others. "Antidepressants and Suicidal Behavior in Bipolar Disorder." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.5, part 2 (Oct. 2006): 596–617.  
 Ozcan, Mehmet Erkan, Geetha Shivakumar, and Trisha Suppes. "Treating Rapid Cycling Bipolar Disorder with Novel Medications." *Current Psychiatry Reviews* 2.3 (Aug. 2006): 361–69.

- Patel, Nick C., and others. "Lithium Treatment Effects on Myo-Inositol in Adolescents with Bipolar Depression." *Biological Psychiatry* 60.9 (Nov. 2006): 998–1004.
- Singh, Jaskaran B., and Carlos A. Zarate, Jr. "Pharmacological Treatment of Psychiatric Comorbidity in Bipolar Disorder: A Review of Controlled Trials." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.6 (Dec. 2006): 696–709.

Jack H. Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

- Lithobid see **Lithium carbonate**  
 Lithonate see **Lithium carbonate**  
 Lithotabs see **Lithium carbonate**  
 Lobotomy see **Psychosurgery**

## Lorazepam

### Definition

Lorazepam, a mild tranquilizer in the class of drugs known as **benzodiazepines**, is sold in the United States under the brand names Alzapam, Ativan, or Loraz. It is also available generically.

### Purpose

Lorazepam is used for management of **anxiety**, nausea and vomiting, **insomnia**, and **seizures** (the injectable form). Lorazepam is also used prior to surgery to produce sedation, sleepiness, drowsiness, relief of anxiety, and a decreased ability to recall the events surrounding the surgery.

### Description

Lorazepam is a member of the benzodiazepine family. Benzodiazepines primarily work by enhancing the function of a certain naturally occurring **brain** chemical, gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), which is responsible for inhibiting the transmission of nervous impulses in the brain and spinal cord. At the same time, the enhancement of GABA in the brain decreases symptoms associated with anxiety. Lorazepam differs from drugs such as **diazepam** (Valium) and **chlor diazepoxide** (Librium) in that it is shorter-acting and does not accumulate in the body after repeated doses.

Lorazepam is available in 0.5-mg, 1-mg, and 2-mg tablets and in an injectable form.

### Recommended dosage

Lorazepam is taken several times daily by mouth or injected to treat anxiety. Dosage ranges from 1–2 mg taken either every 12 or every eight hours. The maximum daily total dosage for anxiety is 10 mg given in two to three divided doses. For sleep, patients may take from 2 to 4 mg at bedtime. Doses taken before surgery range from 2.5 to 5 mg.

Between 0.5 mg and 1 mg of lorazepam may be taken every six to eight hours to help control treatment-related nausea and vomiting (nausea and vomiting that occur as a side effect of a drug or medical treatment). Two mg of lorazepam is often given half an hour before chemotherapy to help prevent stomach upset. An additional 2 mg may be taken every four hours as needed.

The usual dose to treat seizures is 4 mg given intravenously (through a vein). This dose may be increased to 8 mg in patients who do not respond to the 4-mg dose.

### Precautions

Lorazepam, like other drugs of this type, can cause physical and psychological dependence. Patients should not increase the dose or frequency of this drug on their own, nor should they suddenly stop taking this medication. Instead, when stopping the drug, the dosage should gradually be decreased, and then discontinued. If the drug is stopped abruptly, patients may experience agitation, irritability, difficulty sleeping, convulsions, and other withdrawal symptoms.

Patients allergic to benzodiazepines should not take lorazepam. Those with narrow-angle glaucoma, preexisting **depression** of the central nervous system, severe uncontrolled pain, or severe low blood pressure should not take lorazepam. This drug should be used with caution in patients with a history of drug **abuse**. Children under age 12 should not take lorazepam. Children between the ages of 12 and 18 may take the drug by mouth, but not intravenously. Pregnant women and those trying to become pregnant should not take lorazepam. This drug has been associated with damage to the developing fetus when taken during the first three months of pregnancy. Patients taking this drug should not breast-feed.

### Side effects

Drowsiness and sleepiness are common and expected effects of lorazepam. Patients should not drive, operate machinery, or perform hazardous activities that require mental alertness until they have a sense of how lorazepam will affect their alertness.

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazepine**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

Patients over age 50 may experience deeper and longer sedation after taking lorazepam. These effects may subside with continued use or dosage reduction.

The effects of an injection may impair performance and driving ability for 24–48 hours. The impairment may last longer in older patients and those taking other central nervous system depressants, such as some pain medication.

Lorazepam may also make patients feel dizzy, weak, unsteady, or clumsy. Less frequently, they may feel depressed, disoriented, nauseous, or agitated while taking this drug. Other side effects include headache, difficulty sleeping, rash, yellowing eyes, vision changes, and **hallucinations**. Redness and pain may occur at the injection site.

Patients may experience high or low blood pressure and difficulty in breathing after an injection of lorazepam. Nausea, vomiting, dry mouth, and constipation may also occur. The patient's sex drive may decrease, but this side effect is reversible once the drug is stopped. Patients should alert their physician to confusion, depression, excitation, nightmares, impaired coordination, changes in personality, changes in urinary pattern, chest pain, heart palpitations, or any other side effects.

### Interactions

Alcohol and other central nervous system depressants can increase the drowsiness associated with this drug. Some over-the-counter medications depress the central nervous system. The herbal remedies **kava kava** and **valerian** may increase the effects of lorazepam. Patients should check with their doctors before starting any new medications while taking lorazepam. People should not drink alcoholic beverages when taking lorazepam and for 24–48 hours before receiving an injection prior to surgery.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Lexi-Comp, 2002.  
 Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

- Giersch, Anne, and others. "Impairment of Contrast Sensitivity in Long-Term Lorazepam Users." *Psychopharmacology* 186.4 (July 2006): 594–600.  
 Hung, Yi-Yung, and Tiao-Lai Huang. "Lorazepam and Diazepam Rapidly Relieve Catatonic Features in Major Depression." *Clinical Neuropharmacology* 29.3 (May–June 2006): 144–47.  
 Izaute, M., and E. Bacon. "Effects of the Amnesic Drug Lorazepam on Complete and Partial Information Retrieval and Monitoring Accuracy." *Psychopharmacology* 188.4 (Nov. 2006): 472–81.  
 Kamboj, Sunjeev K., and H. Valerie Curran. "Neutral and Emotional Episodic Memory: Global Impairment After Lorazepam or Scopolamine." *Psychopharmacology* 188.4 (Nov. 2006): 482–88.  
 Pomara, Nunzio, and others. "Dose-Dependent Retrograde Facilitation of Verbal Memory in Healthy Elderly After Acute Oral Lorazepam Administration." *Psychopharmacology* 185.4 (May 2006): 487–94.  
 Verster, Joris C., Dieuwke S. Veldhuijen, and Edmund R. Volkerts. "Is It Safe to Drive a Car When Treated with Anxiolytics? Evidence from On-the-Road Driving Studies During Normal Traffic." *Current Psychiatry Reviews* 1.2 (June 2005): 215–25.  
 Yacoub, Adee, and Andrew Francis. "Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome Induced by Atypical Neuroleptics and Responsive to Lorazepam." *Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment* 2.2 (2006): 235–40.

Debra Wood, RN  
 Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
 Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Loss see **Grief**

## Loxapine

### Definition

Loxapine is a prescription-only drug used to treat serious mental, nervous, and emotional disorders. Loxapine is sold under the brand name Loxitane in the United States. Loxapine is also available in generic form.

### Purpose

Loxapine is used to treat a variety of mental disorders including **anxiety**, mania, **depression**, and psychotic disorders.

## Description

Loxapine is in the class of drugs known as anti-psychotic agents. The exact mode of action of loxapine has not been precisely determined, but this drug has a tranquilizing effect on patients with anxiety, mania, and other psychotic disorders. It is known that loxapine reduces the amount of **dopamine** transmitted within the **brain**. Loxapine is available in 5-, 10-, 25-, and 50-mg tablets.

## Recommended dosage

Loxapine is available in oral solution, capsules, tablets, and injectable form. The typical starting dose for adults and children over the age of 16 years is 10 mg given two to four times daily. The maximum range after the initial period is between 60 mg and 100 mg given two to four times per day. After a period of time, the dose is usually lowered to 20–60 mg per day given in divided doses. Injections are usually given only during the initial phase and are delivered into muscle (IM) in doses ranging from 12.5 mg to 50 mg every four to six hours until a desired level of response is reached. Then, the patient is usually put on the oral (PO) form for maintenance therapy. Guidelines for use in people under the age of 16 years have not been established.

## Precautions

People taking loxapine should not stop taking this medication suddenly. The dosage should be gradually decreased over time. Loxapine should not be combined with other agents that depress the central nervous system, such as antihistamines, alcohol, tranquilizers, sleeping medications, and seizure medications. Loxapine can cause the skin to become more sensitive to the sun. People taking this drug should use sunscreen with a skin protection factor (SPF) greater than 15.

Loxapine is typically not administered to people who are in severe drug-induced states or in a coma. People with a history of **seizures**, heart disease, prostate enlargement, glaucoma, or chronic obstructive pulmonary disorder should receive loxapine only after careful evaluation. Guidelines for use in children under the age of 16 years have not been established. Loxapine has not been thoroughly studied in pregnant and nursing women, but such women should exercise great caution when using loxapine.

## Side effects

Rare side effects, but ones that need to be reported immediately to a doctor, include seizures, breathing

## KEY TERMS

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease**—A disorder characterized by the decreasing ability of the lungs to adequately ventilate.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Psychotic**—Having a mental disorder characterized by disturbances of personality and a loss of normal association with reality.

**Respiratory depression**—A significant impairment of the respiratory system.

difficulties, irregular heartbeat, significant changes in blood pressure, increased sweating, severe stiffness, extreme weakness, and unusually pale skin. Patients who experience these symptoms should stop using the medication immediately, as these symptoms are considered an emergency. More common but less serious side effects include uncontrolled movement of the arms or legs, lip smacking, unusual movements of the tongue, puffing of the cheeks, and uncontrolled chewing movements. These symptoms should also be reported immediately to a doctor.

More common and even less serious side effects include difficulty in speaking or swallowing, restlessness, stiffness of arms and legs, trembling, and loss of balance. These symptoms also need to be reported to a doctor. Less common and not especially significant side effects include urination problems, muscle spasms,

skin rash, and severe constipation. Rare and not particularly serious side effects include uncontrolled twisting and movement of the neck, fever, sore throat, unusual bleeding, yellowing of the eyes or skin, and changes in facial expression.

Overdose symptoms include significant drowsiness, severe dizziness, significant breathing difficulties, severe weakness, trembling muscles, and severe uncontrolled movements.

### Interactions

Loxapine should not be combined with anticholinergic drugs because of the potential of decreased antipsychotic effects. Loxapine should not be combined with bromocriptine because the combination can decrease the effectiveness of bromocriptine in patients with pituitary tumors. The combination of loxapine with lithium increases the toxicity of both drugs significantly. Likewise, loxapine and **lorazepam** should not be combined because the combination of the two has produced very low blood pressure, severe drowsiness, and respiratory depression in rare cases.

*See also* Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Depression and depressive disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference.* 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.
- Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference.* 2001–2002. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.
- Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists.* 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

- Bourin, Michel, Olivier Lambert, and Bernard Guitton. "Treatment of Acute Mania—From Clinical Trials to Recommendations for Clinical Practice." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 20.1 (Jan. 2005): 15–26.
- Janowsky, David S., and others. "Minimally Effective Doses of Conventional Antipsychotic Medications Used to Treat Aggression, Self-Injurious and Destructive Behaviors in Mentally Retarded Adults." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 25.1 (Feb. 2005): 19–25.
- Reinblatt, Shauna P., and others. "Advanced Pediatric Psychopharmacology: Loxapine Treatment in an Autistic Child with Aggressive Behavior: Therapeutic Challenges." *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychopharmacology* 16.5 (Oct. 2006): 639–43.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Loxitane see **Loxapine**

LSD see **Hallucinogens and related disorders**

Ludiomil see **Maprotiline**

## Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery

### Definition

The Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery, also known as LNNB or Luria-Nebraska Battery, is a standardized test battery used in the screening and evaluation of neuropsychologically impaired individuals.

### Purpose

The LNNB was developed in an attempt to combine the qualitative techniques of some neuropsychological tests with the quantitative techniques of others. However, the scoring system that most clinicians use is primarily quantitative. The battery measures specific neuropsychological functioning in several areas including motor skills, language abilities, intellectual abilities, nonverbal auditory skills, and visual-spatial skills.

The battery is used by clinicians as a screening tool to determine whether a significant **brain** injury is present or to learn more about known brain injuries. It is also used to determine what the patient is or is not able to do with regard to neuropsychological functioning. For example, the LNNB may be used to determine which intellectual or cognitive tasks a patient may or may not be able to complete. The battery can also be used to arrive at underlying causes of a patient's behavior. More specifically, information regarding the location and nature of the brain injury or dysfunction causing a patient's problems is collected.

The LNNB is also used to help distinguish between brain damage and functional mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. Also, within the category of schizophrenia, the battery can be used to help distinguish between patients with normal neuropsychological functioning and those with clear deficits. Besides its specifically clinical use, the battery is sometimes used for legal purposes—the presence or severity of a brain injury may be measured as part of an evaluation used in the court system.

## Precautions

Because of the length of the test and complexity in interpretation, the examiner must be competent and properly trained. Also, the fact that many patients are, indeed, brain damaged can make test administration difficult or frustrating.

## Description

The LNNB is based on the work of A. R. Luria, a Russian neuropsychologist who performed pioneering theoretical and clinical work with regard to brain function. Luria believed in a primarily qualitative approach to assessment and was opposed to standardization. He did not believe that neuropsychological functioning could be measured quantitatively. Thus, although his name is part of the test itself, his contribution to the LNNB is entirely theoretical. Also, the LNNB is based, in part, on Luria's Neuropsychological Investigation, a measure developed by Christensen in 1975. This test included items asked by Luria in his clinical interviews, some of which are used in the LNNB.

The battery, written in 1981 by Charles Golden, is appropriate for people aged 13 and older and takes between 90 and 150 minutes to complete. It consists of 269 items in the following 11 clinical scales:

- reading
- writing
- arithmetic
- visual
- memory
- expressive language
- receptive language
- motor function
- rhythm
- tactile
- intellectual

Scores for three summary scales can also be calculated: pathognomonic, right hemisphere, and left hemisphere. A children's version of the battery, called the Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery for Children (LNNB-C), appropriate for children aged eight to 12, is also available.

## Results

The probability of brain damage is assessed by comparing an individual's score on each of the battery's 11 clinical scales to a critical level appropriate

## KEY TERMS

**Pathognomonic**—Describing symptoms characteristic of a particular disease.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing test norms. The Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery was standardized using a sample of neurologically impaired individuals.

**Validity**—The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

for that person's age and education level. For example, if a person has five to seven scores above the critical level, they most likely have some sign of neurological impairment. Eight or more scores above the critical level indicate a clear history of neurological disorder.

The battery has been criticized by researchers on the grounds that it overestimates the degree of neuropsychological impairment. In other cases, it has been found to fail to detect neuropsychological problems. Also, the intellectual processes scale has not been found to correspond well to other measures of intelligence, such as the **Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale** (WAIS).

Other research, however, has found it to be a useful measure. It has been found as effective as the **Halstead-Reitan Battery** in distinguishing between brain-damaged individuals and nonbrain-damaged individuals with psychiatric problems. Part of the inconsistencies in opinion regarding the LNNB may be due to the specific nature of the population being tested by the battery and the difficulties in administration and scoring that some clinicians experience.

*See also* Intelligence tests; Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children; Kaufman Short Neuropsychological Assessment; Neuropsychological testing.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Golden, Charles J., and Shawna M. Freshwater. "Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery" In *Understanding Psychological Assessment: Perspectives on Individual Differences*, edited by William I. Dorfman and Michael Hersen. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 2001.

Golden, Charles J., Shawna M. Freshwater, and Jyothi Vayalakkara. "The Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery." In *Neuropsychological Assessment in Clinical Practice: A Guide to Test Interpretation and Integration*, edited by Gary Groth-Marnat. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2000.

Lezak, Muriel D. *Neuropsychological Assessment*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1995.

Moses, James A., Jr., Ph.D., Charles J. Golden, Ph.D., Rona Ariel, Ph.D., and John L. Gustavson, Ph.D.

*Interpretation of the Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological Battery*. Volume 1. New York: Grune and Stratton, 1983.

Strub, Richard L., M.D., and F. William Black, Ph.D. *The Mental Status Exam in Neurology*. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2000.

Luvox see **Fluvoxamine**

# M

## Magnetic resonance imaging

### Definition

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is one of the newest diagnostic medical imaging technologies that uses strong magnets and pulses of radio waves to manipulate the natural magnetic properties in the body to generate a visible image. In the field of mental health, an MRI scan may be used when a patient seeks medical help for symptoms that could possibly be caused by a **brain** tumor. These symptoms may include headaches, emotional abnormalities, or intellectual or memory problems. In these cases, an MRI scan may be performed to “rule out” a tumor, so that other tests can be performed in order to establish an accurate **diagnosis**.

### Purpose

MRI was developed in the 1980s. Its technology has been developed for use in magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS), and, more recently, magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP). MRA was developed to study blood flow, whereas MRS can identify the chemical composition of diseased tissue and produce color images of brain function. MRCP is evolving into a non-invasive potential alternative for the diagnostic procedure endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP).

### Advantages

**DETAIL.** MRI creates precise images of the body based on the varying proportions of magnetic elements in different tissues. Very minor fluctuations in chemical composition can be determined. MRI images have greater natural contrast than standard x rays, **computed tomography** scan (CT scan), or ultrasound, all of which depend on the differing physical properties of tissues. This sensitivity allows MRI to distinguish fine variations in tissues deep within the body. It is also particularly useful for spotting and distinguishing

diseased tissues (tumors and other lesions) early in their development. Often, doctors prescribe an MRI scan to investigate more fully earlier findings of other imaging techniques.

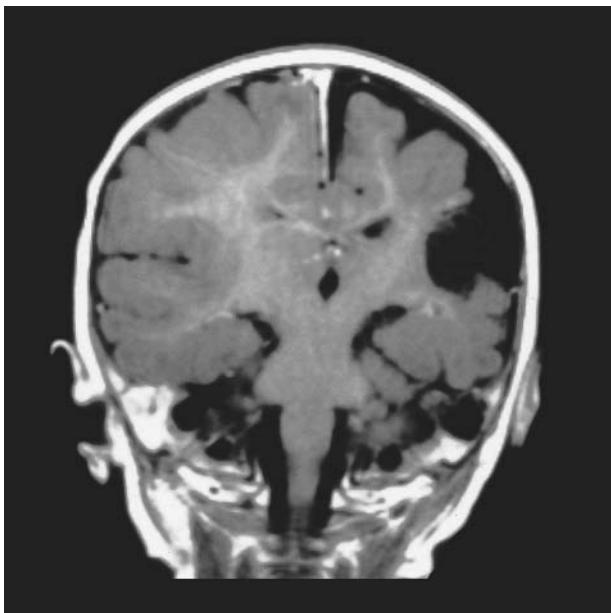
**SCOPE.** The entire body can be scanned, from head to toe and from the skin to the deepest recesses of the brain. Moreover, MRI scans are not obstructed by bone, gas, or body waste, which can hinder other imaging techniques. (Although the scans can be degraded by motion such as breathing, heartbeat, and bowel activity.) The MRI process produces cross-sectional images of the body that are as sharp in the middle as on the edges, even of the brain through the skull. A close series of these two-dimensional images can provide a three-dimensional view of the targeted area. Along with images from the cross-sectional plane, the MRI can also provide images sagittally (from one side of the body to the other, from left to right for example), allowing for a better three-dimensional interpretation, which is sometimes very important for planning a surgical approach.

**SAFETY.** MRI does not depend on potentially harmful ionizing radiation, as do standard x ray and computed tomography scans. There are no known risks specific to the procedure, other than for people who might have metal objects in their bodies.

Despite its many advantages, MRI is not routinely used because it is a somewhat complex and costly procedure. MRI requires large, expensive, and complicated equipment; a highly trained operator; and a doctor specializing in radiology. Generally, MRI is prescribed only when serious symptoms or negative results from other tests indicate a need. Many times another test is appropriate for the type of diagnosis needed.

### Uses

Doctors may prescribe an MRI scan of different areas of the body.



A frontal MRI image of infant with previous brain injury (right side of image). (Neil Borden/Photo Researchers, Inc)

**BRAIN AND HEAD.** MRI technology was developed because of the need for brain imaging. It is one of the few imaging tools that can see through bone (the skull) and deliver high-quality pictures of the brain's delicate soft tissue structures. MRI may be needed for patients with symptoms of a brain tumor, **stroke**, or infection (like meningitis). MRI may also be needed when cognitive or psychological symptoms suggest brain disease (like Alzheimer's or Huntington's diseases, or multiple sclerosis), or when developmental retardation suggests a birth defect. MRI can also provide pictures of the sinuses and other areas of the head beneath the face. In adult and pediatric patients, MRI may be better able to detect abnormalities than compared to computed tomography scanning.

**SPINE.** Spinal problems can create a host of seemingly unrelated symptoms. MRI is particularly useful for identifying and evaluating degenerated or herniated spinal discs. It can also be used to determine the condition of nerve tissue within the spinal cord.

**JOINT.** MRI scanning is most commonly used to diagnose and assess joint problems. MRI can provide clear images of the bone, cartilage, ligament, and tendon that comprise a joint. MRI can be used to diagnose joint injuries due to sports, advancing age, or arthritis. MRI can also be used to diagnose shoulder problems, such as a torn rotator cuff. MRI can also detect the presence of an otherwise hidden tumor or infection in a joint, and can be used to diagnose the

nature of developmental joint abnormalities in children.

**SKELETON.** The properties of MRI that allow it to see through the skull also allow it to view the inside of bones. Accordingly, it can be used to detect bone cancer, inspect the marrow for leukemia and other diseases, assess bone loss (osteoporosis), and examine complex fractures.

**HEART AND CIRCULATION.** MRI technology can be used to evaluate the circulatory system. The heart and blood flow provides a good natural contrast medium that allows structures of the heart to be clearly distinguished.

**THE REST OF THE BODY.** Whereas computed tomography and ultrasound scans satisfy most chest, abdominal, and general body imaging needs, MRI may be needed in certain circumstances to provide better pictures or when repeated scanning is required. The progress of some therapies, like liver cancer therapy, needs to be monitored, and the effect of repeated x-ray exposure is a concern.

## Precautions

### *MRI scans and metal*

MRI scanning should not be used when there is the potential for an interaction between the strong MRI magnet and metal objects that might be imbedded in a patient's body. The force of magnetic attraction on certain types of metal objects (including surgical steel) could move them within the body and cause serious injury. Metal may be imbedded in a person's body for several reasons.

**MEDICAL.** People with implanted cardiac pacemakers, metal aneurysm clips, or who have broken bones repaired with metal pins, screws, rods, or plates must tell their radiologist prior to having an MRI scan. In some cases (like a metal rod in a reconstructed leg), the difficulty may be overcome.

**INJURY.** Patients must tell their doctor if they have bullet fragments or other metal pieces in their body from old wounds. The suspected presence of metal, whether from an old or recent wound, should be confirmed before scanning.

**OCCUPATIONAL.** People with significant work exposure to metal particles (working with a metal grinder, for example) should discuss this with their doctor and radiologist. The patient may need prescan testing—usually a single, regular x ray of the eyes to see if any metal is present.

### **Chemical agents**

Chemical agents designed to improve the picture or allow for the imaging of blood or other fluid flow during MRA may be injected. In rare cases, patients may be allergic to, or intolerant of, these agents, and these patients should not receive them. If these chemical agents are to be used, patients should discuss any concerns they have with their doctor and radiologist.

### **General**

The potential side effects of magnetic and electric fields on human health remain a source of debate. In particular, the possible effects on an unborn baby are not well known. Any woman who is, or may be, pregnant, should carefully discuss this issue with her doctor and radiologist before undergoing a scan.

As with all medical imaging techniques, **obesity** greatly interferes with the quality of MRI.

### **Description**

In essence, MRI produces a map of hydrogen distribution in the body. Hydrogen is the simplest element known, the most abundant in biological tissue, and one that can be magnetized. It will align itself within a strong magnetic field, like the needle of a compass. The earth's magnetic field is not strong enough to keep a person's hydrogen atoms pointing in the same direction, but the superconducting magnet of an MRI machine can. This comprises the magnetic part of MRI.

Once a patient's hydrogen atoms have been aligned in the magnet, pulses of very specific radio wave frequencies are used to knock them back out of alignment. The hydrogen atoms alternately absorb and emit radio wave energy, vibrating back and forth between their resting (magnetized) state and their agitated (radio pulse) state. This comprises the resonance part of MRI.

The MRI equipment records the duration, strength, and source location of the signals emitted by the atoms as they relax and translates the data into an image on a television monitor. The state of hydrogen in diseased tissue differs from healthy tissue of the same type, making MRI particularly good at identifying tumors and other lesions. In some cases, chemical agents such as gadolinium can be injected to improve the contrast between healthy and diseased tissue.

A single MRI exposure produces a two-dimensional image of a slice through the entire target area. A series of these image slices closely spaced (usually less than half an inch) makes a virtual three-dimensional view of the area.

Regardless of the exact type of MRI planned, or area of the body targeted, the procedure involved is basically the same. In a special MRI suite, the patient lies down on a narrow table and is made as comfortable as possible. Transmitters are positioned on the body and the table moves into a long tube that houses the magnet. The tube is as long as an average adult lying down, and is open at both ends. Once the area to be examined has been properly positioned, a radio pulse is applied. Then a two-dimensional image corresponding to one slice through the area is made. The table then moves a fraction of an inch and the next image is made. Each image exposure takes several seconds and the entire exam will last anywhere from 30 to 90 minutes. During this time, the patient must remain still as movement can distort the pictures produced.

Depending on the area to be imaged, the radio-wave transmitters will be positioned in different locations.

- For the head and neck, a helmet-like covering is worn on the head.
- For the spine, chest, and abdomen, the patient will be lying on the transmitters.
- For the knee, shoulder, or other joint, the transmitters will be applied directly to the joint.

Additional probes will monitor vital signs (like pulse, respiration, etc.) throughout the test.

The procedure is somewhat noisy and can feel confining to many patients. As the patient moves through the tube, the patient hears a thumping sound. Sometimes, music is supplied via earphones to drown out the noise. Some patients may become anxious or feel claustrophobic while in the small, enclosed tube. Patients may be reassured to know that throughout the study, they can communicate with medical personnel through an intercom-like system.

Recently, open MRIs have become available. Instead of a tube open only at the ends, an open MRI also has opening at the sides. Open MRIs are preferable for patients who have a fear of closed spaces and become anxious in traditional MRI machines. Open MRIs can also better accommodate obese patients, and allow parents to accompany their children during testing.

If the chest or abdomen is to be imaged, the patient will be asked to hold his or her breath as each exposure is made. Other instructions may be given to the patient as needed. In many cases, the entire examination will be performed by an MRI operator who is not a doctor. However, the supervising radiologist should be available

to consult as necessary during the exam, and will view and interpret the results sometime later.

Magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) is different from MRI because MRS uses a continuous band of radio wave frequencies to excite hydrogen atoms in a variety of chemical compounds other than water. These compounds absorb and emit radio energy at characteristic frequencies, or spectra, which can be used to identify them. Generally, a color image is created by assigning a color to each distinctive spectral emission. This comprises the spectroscopy part of MRS. MRS is still experimental and is available only in a few research centers.

Doctors primarily use MRS to study the brain and disorders like epilepsy, Alzheimer's disease, brain tumors, and the effects of drugs on brain growth and metabolism. The technique is also useful in evaluating metabolic disorders of the muscles and nervous system.

Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) is another variation on standard MRI. MRA, like other types of angiography, looks specifically at fluid flow within the blood (vascular) system, but does so without the injection of dyes or radioactive tracers. Standard MRI cannot make a good picture of flowing blood, but MRA uses specific radio pulse sequences to capture usable signals. The technique is generally used in combination with MRI to obtain images that show both vascular structure and flow within the brain and head in cases of stroke, or when a blood clot or aneurysm is suspected.

MRI technology is also being applied in the evaluation of the pancreatic and biliary ducts in a new study called magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP). MRCP produces images similar to that of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), but in a non-invasive manner. Because MRCP is new and still very expensive, it is not readily available in most hospitals and imaging centers.

### Preparation

In some cases (such as for MRI brain scanning or MRA), a chemical designed to increase image contrast may be given immediately before the exam. If a patient suffers from **anxiety** or claustrophobia, drugs may be given to help the patient relax.

The patient must remove all metal objects (watches, jewelry, eye glasses, hair clips, etc.). Any magnetized objects (like credit and bank machine cards, audio tapes, etc.) should be kept far away from the MRI equipment because they can be erased. The patient cannot bring any personal items such as a wallet or keys into the MRI machine. The patient may be asked to wear clothing without metal snaps, buckles, or zippers, unless a medical gown is worn

### KEY TERMS

**Angiography**—A procedure in which a contrast medium is injected into the bloodstream (through an artery in the neck) and its progress through the brain is tracked. This illustrates where a blockage or hemorrhage has occurred.

**Gadolinium**—A very rare metallic element useful for its sensitivity to electromagnetic resonance, among other things. Traces of it can be injected into the body to enhance the MRI pictures.

**Hydrogen**—The simplest, most common element known in the universe. It is composed of a single electron (negatively charged particle). It is the nuclear proton of hydrogen that makes MRI possible by reacting resonantly to radio waves while aligned in a magnetic field.

**Ionizing radiation**—Electromagnetic radiation that can damage living tissue by disrupting and destroying individual cells. All types of nuclear decay radiation (including x rays) are potentially ionizing. Radio waves do not damage organic tissues they pass through.

**Magnetic field**—The three-dimensional area surrounding a magnet, in which its force is active. During MRI, the patient's body is permeated by the force field of a superconducting magnet.

**Radio waves**—Electromagnetic energy of the frequency range corresponding to that used in radio communications, usually 10,000 cycles per second to 300 billion cycles per second. Radio waves are the same as visible light, x rays, and all other types of electromagnetic radiation, but are of a higher frequency.

during the procedure. The patient may be asked not to use hair spray, hair gel, or cosmetics that could interfere with the scan.

### Aftercare

No aftercare is necessary, unless the patient received medication or had a reaction to a contrast agent. Normally, patients can immediately return to their daily activities. If the exam reveals a serious condition that requires more testing or treatment, appropriate information and counseling will be needed.

### Risks

MRI poses no known health risks to the patient and produces no physical side effects. Again, the

potential effects of MRI on an unborn baby are not well known. Any woman who is, or may be, pregnant, should carefully discuss this issue with her doctor and radiologist before undergoing a scan.

### Normal results

A normal MRI, MRA, MRS, or MRCP result is one that shows the patient's physical condition to fall within normal ranges for the target area scanned.

### Abnormal results

Generally, MRI is prescribed only when serious symptoms or negative results from other tests indicate a need. There often exists strong evidence of a condition that the scan is designed to detect and assess. Thus, the results will often be abnormal, confirming the earlier diagnosis. At that point, further testing and appropriate medical treatment is needed. For example, if the MRI indicates the presence of a brain tumor, an MRS may be prescribed to determine the type of tumor so that aggressive treatment can begin immediately without the need for a surgical biopsy.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Faulkner, William H. *Tech's Guide to MRI: Basic Physics, Instrumentation and Quality Control*. Malden: Blackwell Science, 2001.
- Fischbach, F. T. *A Manual of Laboratory and Diagnostic Tests*. 6th Edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1999.
- Goldman, L., and Claude Bennett, eds. *Cecil Textbook of Medicine*. 21st Edition. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders, 2000: pp 977–970.
- Kevles, Bettyann Holtzmann. *Naked to the Bone: Medical Imaging in the Twentieth Century*. New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 1997.
- Roth, Carolyn K. *Tech's Guide to MRI: Imaging Procedures, Patient Care and Safety*. Malden: Blackwell Science, 2001.
- Zaret, Barry L., and others, eds. *The Patient's Guide to Medical Tests*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

- Carr-Locke, D., and others, "Technology Status Evaluation: Magnetic Resonance Cholangiopancreatography." *Gastrointestinal Endoscopy* (June 1999): 858–61.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American College of Radiology. 1891 Preston White Drive, Reston, VA 22091. (800) ACR-LINE. <<http://www.acr.org>>.
- American Society of Radiologic Technologists. 15000 Central Avenue SE, Albuquerque, NM 87123–3917. (505) 298–4500. <<http://www.asrt.org>>.

Kurt Richard Sternlof  
Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.

## Magnetic seizure therapy

### Definition

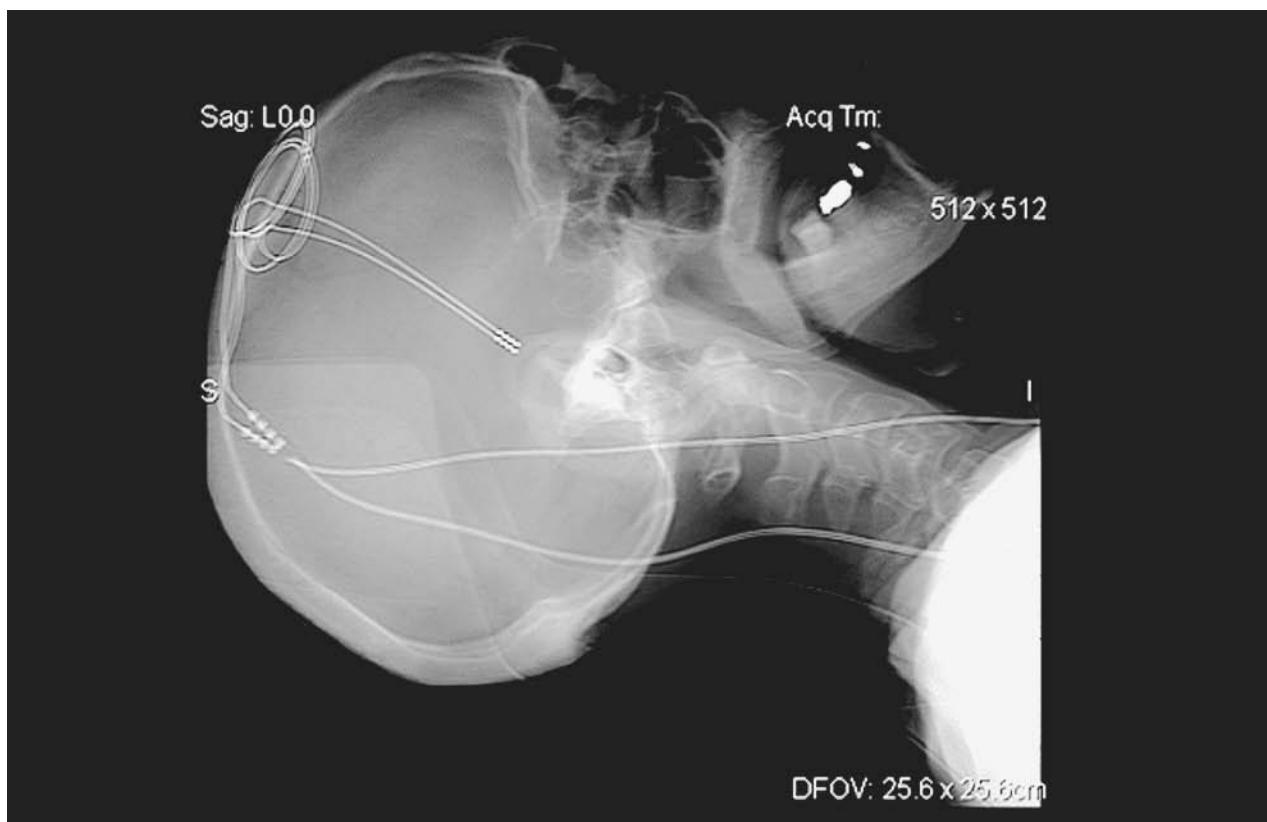
Magnetic seizure therapy (MST) is a newer form of convulsive therapy under development since the late 1990s. Convulsive therapies generally induce a seizure, or convulsion, in a patient to provide improvement in mental illnesses, the chief among them being major depression. In addition to MST, convulsive therapies include electroconvulsive therapy (ECT), transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS), deep brain stimulation, and vagus nerve stimulation.

### Description

During MST, a generator produces multiple short bursts of electricity at a frequency of 50 to 100 Hz. This creates powerful magnetic fields within a wire coil shaped like a figure eight and attached to a paddle. A technician places the coil/paddle directly onto a patient's forehead, near the forehead, or directly onto the scalp. Because the magnetic fields are not absorbed or scattered by the skull, lower frequency current than in ECT is sufficient; thus MST is safer than ECT because it uses less electricity. The magnetic fields reach down about an inch (2.5 cm) into the skull to produce electrical current affecting brain cells directly under the coil. These currents do not reach into areas beneath the cortex. However, current researchers are working to increase the distance reached to affect deeper-lying brain regions for greater positive results. The risks associated with MST are smaller than those associated with ECT, but include the standard risks associated with anesthetics. Additionally, memory loss and disruption of concentration and thinking are shorter and less severe.

The oldest convulsive therapy, ECT, has been the standard treatment for medication-resistant major depression for 70 years. However, ECT sends electricity to the brain and requires general anesthesia and muscle relaxants, subjecting patients to their associated risks. ECT causes memory loss for events close to the event of therapy and prior to therapy, and this memory does not return to all patients. To avoid the larger risks of anesthesia, muscle relaxants, and memory loss, researchers developed alternative convulsive therapies. A novel alternative, MST shows the most promise and was developed from TMS, which does not induce seizures at its generated electrical frequencies of 0.3 to 20 Hz.

TMS generates lower frequencies than required by ECT, so seizures do not occur. TMS is also focused



A lateral x-ray showing electrodes for deep brain stimulation in the brain of a patient. (Neil Borden/Photo Researchers, Inc)

and more localized to avoid the larger brain areas accessed by ECT. As a result, TMS avoids memory loss. TMS does not require general anesthesia, so those associated risks do not exist. Magnetic seizure therapy comprises TMS administered at higher frequencies to induce seizures, at 50 to 100 Hz, but MST uses magnetic fields instead of electricity and these fields act directly on the brain. The skull does not absorb or scatter the magnetic fields, thus MST is more efficient than ECT. MST promises greater safety and diminished cognitive side effects over ECT.

### Controversy

MST has been a point of debate since its inception. Its supporters report numerous well-documented successes, while its detractors insist that long-term patient improvement is possible only through seizures induced by ECT. However, researchers have found that MST seizures do not produce the large and intense side effects of ECT. MST produces fewer and shorter disruptions of memory, concentration, and orientation. Overall, MST may be safer and more efficient than

ECT, produce fewer side effects, and perhaps reduce treatment costs.

Sarah Lisanby, MD, found that patients were able to remember their own names, current setting, current date, and current location much more quickly after receiving MST than after undergoing ECT. In fact, MST produced only 2 minutes of memory loss, while ECT caused memory loss for 13 minutes (over 6 times as long). MST also caused fewer problems with concentration. In task completion, patients finished a simple task in 4 minutes after receiving ECT, but in only 2 minutes after MST, and these differences were significant. Dr. Lisanby believes that most depressive patients can improve with TMS and without induced seizures, but that some depressed patients may need to undergo a seizure to improve and can benefit more from MST, because it offers fewer and smaller side effects than does ECT. Ongoing research may confirm these findings.

The controversy at present more often concerns MST versus TMS rather than MST versus ECT. According to the February 23, 2007, issue of the Harvard Mental Health Letter, 40% of medication-

## KEY TERMS

**Bipolar disorder**—This disorder includes a cluster of four types, including bipolar I, bipolar II, cyclothymia, and bipolar disorder not otherwise specified (BD-NOS). All include periods of highs (mania) and lows (depressions) to varying degrees, durations, and frequencies.

**Cortex**—Cerebral cortex; outer gray matter layer of the cerebrum of the brain controlling sensation, voluntary movements, reasoning, thinking, and memory. The prefrontal cortex is at the front of the brain, just under the area behind the human forehead.

**Deep brain stimulation**—Electrodes are implanted into the brain to deliver constant low frequency electrical stimulation to a small part of the brain. Used in the treatment of Parkinson's.

**Deficit syndrome of schizophrenia**—A condition of schizophrenia in which the patient exhibits affective flattening, attention impairment, lack of speech, lack of socializing, and lack of motivation.

**ECT**—Electroconvulsive therapy; the application of electrical current to the brain to induce a seizure in the treatment of major depression (most notably) and other mental illnesses. ECT requires general anesthetic and muscle relaxants. Side effects include memory loss, slowness to acquire new information, disruption of concentration, and, on occasion, brain edema (swelling).

**Focal electrical stimulation**—The application of electrical current during electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) or transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) to a localized area of the brain, rather than to a larger area.

**Major depression**—This disorder includes at least five or more of nine standard depressive symptoms for a period of longer than two weeks. Symptoms include sleeping problems or oversleep, marked appetite or weight change, fatigue, feelings of unworthiness, concentration problems, agitation, withdrawal from activities, feelings of hopelessness and helplessness, and suicidal ideation. Additional symptoms can include anger and features of psychosis.

**Meta-analysis**—A statistical method that combines the results from a number of different completed studies to provide a larger sample size and a stronger evidence base for conclusion than available in any of the single studies.

**TMS**—Transcranial magnetic stimulation; a method of electroshock therapy using magnetic fields and requiring no general anesthetic or seizure induction.

**Vagus nerve stimulation**—Implantation of a pace-maker-like unit that generates electrical pulses into the vagus nerve (the 10th cranial nerve). Used as an additional technique in the treatment of epilepsy.

resistant depression cases improve with TMS, which induces no seizures. TMS may also reduce the time needed for psychiatric drugs to work. Findings are inconclusive regarding **schizophrenia** and **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), but TMS provides some improvement for **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD). Further, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) will decide in 2007 whether repetitive TMS (rTMS) will become an official standard alternative to ECT and MST treatments.

### Applications

#### *Depression, bipolar disorder, and schizophrenia*

MST provides positive outcomes in treatment for a number of mental disorders. While the primary illness treated with MST is the same as for ECT, major depression, MST is also successful in cases of schizophrenia, bipolar depression, and bipolar mania. In

2005, Mitchell and Loo studied the safety and effectiveness of repetitive MST. They examined meta-analyses and individual patient reports and found that repetitive MST may be most effective in younger patients with no psychotic features and in depression that is not of the longest duration. Further, they found that some depression occurring in **bipolar disorder** responds better to repetitive MST than do unipolar depressions (those not part of a bipolar syndrome). The majority of depressed patients receiving repetitive MST suffer no side effects, or only slight discomfort in the stimulated scalp nerves and muscles or an occasional light headache. Sachdev, Loo, Mitchell, and Mahli also found in 2005 that repetitive MST produces significant positive outcomes in patients having the deficit syndrome of schizophrenia, which includes lack of talking, emotion, and motivation. This pilot investigation confirmed the previous existing research

regarding MST as a successful treatment for schizophrenia.

### **Other applications**

Harvard Medical School and Stanford et al. report that 30 ongoing controlled studies examining MST in the United States since October 2005 show positive outcomes. These studies look at MST as a treatment for mental illnesses and medical conditions having a mental health component. Thus far, these include major depression, schizophrenia, **schizoaffective disorder**, bipolar disorder, post-traumatic **stress** disorder (PTSD), obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD), Tourette's syndrome, Parkinson's disease, **stroke**, and cerebral palsy. Additional applications may be found in future research.

### **Recent advances**

In a 2006 meta-analysis, Loo, Schweitzer, and Pratt found that recent advances and alternative technical approaches have developed in ECT. They examined recent **clinical trials**, case reports, and research updates in ECT's best practices and completed/ongoing research. Loo, Schweitzer, and Pratt found an increasing use of a number of alternative electrode placements useful in ECT, several variations in stimulus configurations, and two altogether new approaches that are successful. These new approaches are MST and focal electrical stimulation. The researchers found that MST may promise success and safety in treating a variety of mental illnesses but needs further research. This confirms the findings of the meta-analysis of Stanford et al. in 2005 that includes 69 separate sources and is currently approved for continuing education credit learning among physicians and researchers.

In addition to the above findings, Dr. Lisanby is currently researching two distinct forms of MST. One of these uses a wire coil to focus seizures in the pre-frontal cortex of the brain. The other form uses a coil to stimulate a broader brain area. This research is part of a wider study of MST effects compared with ECT effects in ongoing research at New York State Psychiatric Institute. Dr. Lisanby believes that MST can provide fewer side effects and better results than ECT for individuals with depression and a range of other mental illnesses.

### **Resources**

#### **PERIODICALS**

Avery, David H., and others. "A Controlled Study of Repetitive Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation in

- Medication-Resistant Major Depression." *Biological Psychiatry* 59.2 (2006): 187–94.
- Harvard Medical School. "Electroconvulsive Therapy." *Harvard Mental Health Letter* 23.8 (2007): 1–3.
- Loo, Colleen K., Isaac Schweitzer, and Chris Pratt. "Recent Advances in Optimizing Electroconvulsive Therapy." *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry* 40.8 (2006): 632–38.
- Loo, Colleen K., and Philip B. Mitchell. "A Review of the Efficacy of Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation (TMS) Treatment for Depression, and Current and Future Strategies to Optimize Efficacy." *Journal of Affective Disorders*. 88.3 (2005): 255–67.
- Mitchell, Philip B., and Colleen K. Loo. "Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation for Depression." *The Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry*. 40.5 (2006): 406–13.
- Sachdev, Perminder, Colleen Loo, Philip Mitchell, and Gin Malhi. "Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation for the Deficit Syndrome of Schizophrenia: a Pilot Investigation." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences*. 59.3 (2005): 354–57.
- Stanford, Arielle D., and others. "Magnetic Seizure Therapy and Other Convulsive Therapies." *Primary Psychiatry*. 12.10 (2005): 44–50.

### **ORGANIZATIONS**

- The Association for Convulsive Therapy (ACT), 5454 Wisconsin Avenue, Chevy Chase, MD 20815. Telephone: (301) 951-7220. Web site: <<http://www.act-ect.org/act/index.php>>.
- Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, Harkness Pavilion, 180 Ft. Washington Avenue, New York, NY 10032. Telephone: (212) 305-6001. Web site: <<http://www.cumc.columbia.edu/dept/pi/index.html>>.
- New York State Psychiatric Institute, Columbia University Medical Center, 1051 Riverside Drive, New York, NY 10032. Telephone: (212) 543-6000. Web site: <<http://www.nyspi.org>>.

Patty Inglish, MS

Magnetocephalogram see  
**Electroencephalography**

## **Major depressive disorder**

### **Definition**

Major depressive disorder (MDD) is a condition characterized by a long-lasting depressed mood or marked loss of interest or pleasure (anhedonia) in all or nearly all activities. Children and adolescents with MDD may be irritable instead of sad. These symptoms,

along with others described below, must be sufficiently severe to interfere significantly with the patient's daily functioning.

## Description

Major depressive disorder is a serious mental disorder that profoundly affects an individual's quality of life. Unlike normal bereavement or an occasional episode of "the blues," MDD causes a lengthy period of gloom and hopelessness, and may rob the sufferer of the ability to take pleasure in activities or relationships that were previously enjoyable. In some cases, depressive episodes seem to be triggered by an obviously painful event, but MDD may also develop without a specific stressor. Research indicates that an initial episode of **depression** is likely to be a response to a specific stimulus, but later episodes are progressively more likely to start without a triggering event. A person suffering major depression finds job-related responsibilities and such other tasks as parenting burdensome and carried out only with great effort. Mental efficiency and memory are affected, causing even simple tasks to be tiring and irritating. Sexual interest dwindles; many people with MDD become withdrawn and avoid any type of social activity. Even the ability to enjoy a good meal or a sound night's sleep is frequently lost; many depressed people report a chronic sense of malaise (general discomfort or unease). For some, the pain and suffering accompanying MDD becomes so unendurable that **suicide** is viewed as the only option; MDD has the highest mortality rate of any mental disorder.

Major depressive disorder may be limited to a single episode of depression; more commonly, it may become a chronic condition with many episodes of depressed mood. Other symptoms that may develop include psychotic symptoms (bizarre thoughts, including delusional beliefs and **hallucinations**); **catatonia**; postpartum onset (sometimes accompanied by psychotic symptoms); and **seasonal affective disorder**, or SAD.

Such conditions as **postpartum depression** and seasonal affective disorder accompany MDD only under certain circumstances. Postpartum depression begins within four weeks of giving birth. Women with this disorder experience labile mood (frequent drastic mood changes). They may feel helpless and unable to care adequately for their infant, or they may be completely uninterested in the child. The symptoms of postpartum depression are much more severe than those of the relatively common "new baby blues," which affect up to 70% of new mothers. The presence of psychotic symptoms in the mother; too many rumi-

nations (obsessive thoughts); or **delusions** about the infant are associated with a heightened risk of serious harm to the child. The symptoms of postpartum depression are usually attributed to fluctuations in the woman's hormone levels and the emotional impact of bearing a child. The condition is especially likely to occur in women who were highly anxious during pregnancy or had a previous history of mood disorder. Seasonal affective disorder (SAD) is also more common in women than in men; in this case, symptoms of MDD typically begin in fall and winter, especially in northern latitudes in the United States and Canada. Exposure to natural light is limited during the winter in these areas, but the symptoms of SAD typically improve during the spring and summer.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Because MDD is a relatively common mental disorder, researchers have performed a range of different studies to identify possible underlying causes. Three types of causes are commonly identified: intrapsychic, environmental, and biological.

**INTRAPSYCHIC.** Since Sigmund Freud attributed the development of mental disorders to intrapsychic (occurring inside the mind) conflicts occurring during early childhood, a sizeable number of theorists have suggested that MDD results from a tendency to internalize negative events. Cognitive behavioral treatment models assume that a person's interpretation of situations is responsible for the development of depression rather than the events themselves. Some people blame themselves for negative experiences while attributing positive outcomes to external sources; they may tend to feel guilty, undeserving, and eventually depressed. For example, they may think of their present job as something they obtained by a chance **stroke** of good luck; at the same time, they may regard being laid off as something they brought on themselves. When these patterns of thought become habitual, they lead to a style of coping characterized by a view of oneself as worthless, ineffectual, and inferior. In some cases, people pick up these patterns of thinking from their parents or other family members.

Another theory regarding intrapsychic causes attributes depression to so-called "learned helplessness." This theory grew out of research studies on animal learning, comparing dogs that were able to escape from mild electric shocks to dogs that could not escape. The researchers discovered that the dogs who could not escape the mild shocks became passive; later, when they were put in a situation in which they

could escape the shocks, they made no attempt to do so but simply lay on their stomachs and whimpered. The animals had, in short, learned to be helpless; they had learned during the first part of the experiment that nothing they had done had any effect on the shocks. Applied to human beings, this theory holds that people tend to become depressed when they have had long-term experiences of helplessness—as would be the case for abused children. Later, when the children have become adults, they do not see themselves as grownups with some control over their lives; they continue to react to setbacks or losses with the same feelings of helplessness that they had as children, and they become depressed.

**ENVIRONMENTAL.** Environmental theories of the etiology (causation) of MDD emphasize the role of external events in triggering depression. According to this perspective, people become depressed primarily due to unfortunate circumstances that are difficult to change. In some cases, these misfortunes may include environmental disasters or personal losses; but such other factors as low socioeconomic status, oppression associated with one's sex or race, or unpleasant or frustrating relationships are also thought to contribute to depression.

**BIOLOGICAL.** Ancient medicine alleged that one's state of mind was related to the presence of specific "humors," or fluids, in the body, and various theories have emerged since the eighteenth century regarding possible constitutional factors in humans that affect mood. In recent years, researchers have found numerous abnormalities in the neuroendocrine systems, **neurotransmitters**, and neuroanatomy of the brains of both children and adults with MDD, as well as strong evidence for genetic factors in MDD.

Levels of cortisol, a hormone associated with the human "fight-or-flight" response, have long been studied as possible biological markers for depression. In many adults, cortisol levels rise when the person is acutely depressed and return to normal when the depression passes. Research findings have been inconsistent regarding cortisol levels in children and adolescents, although there is some evidence that higher levels of cortisol secretion are associated with more severe depressive symptoms and with a higher likelihood of recurrence. As of 2002, however, cortisol levels were not considered to be reliable enough to be useful in diagnosing MDD.

Another biological factor that has been studied in humans are changes in the levels of neurotransmitters, which are chemicals that conduct nerve impulses across the tiny gaps between nerve cells. Variations

in the levels of certain neurotransmitters have been researched for many years due to their importance in the brain's limbic system, which is the center of emotions and has many important pathways to other parts of the brain. In depression, the system that regulates a neurotransmitter called serotonin does not function properly. A group of medications known as serotonin specific reuptake inhibitors, or **SSRIs**, are assumed to be effective in relieving depression because they prevent serotonin from being taken back up too quickly by receptors in the brain.

Differences in the anatomical structure of the brains of children and adults with MDD have suggested several possible explanations for its development. In particular, the prefrontal cortex has been thought to play a role, on the basis of findings in stroke patients with damage to the prefrontal area of the brain, and in children and adults with MDD. Researchers found that stroke patients experienced more severe depression if their stroke occurred closer to the frontal lobe of the brain; similarly, people with MDD have been found to have decreased frontal lobe volume. Studies of depressed children and adults included subjects who were currently depressed as well as those with a history of depression who were in remission, which suggests that abnormalities in the frontal lobe may be a structural marker of depression. Other neurological studies have reported lower levels of electrical activity in the left frontal cortex among depressed subjects (including the infants of depressed mothers) compared to persons who are not depressed.

Researchers have also been interested in the relationship of genetic factors to depression. It has been known for many years that depression tends to run in families. Convincing evidence of the heritability of depression has been obtained by comparing identical twins (who have identical genetic inheritances) with fraternal twins; these studies have consistently found a higher likelihood of depression between identical than between fraternal twins. Other data indicate that people with a higher genetic risk of depression are more likely to become depressed following a stressful event than people with fewer genetic risk factors.

### Symptoms

The core symptom of major depression is a sad mood that does not go away. While most people have occasional days when they feel out of sorts, persons with MDD experience low feelings that build gradually over a period of days or weeks. They are usually not able to "snap out of it" even when something positive happens. In some cases, the symptoms are preceded by an obvious loss or painful event, such as

divorce or a death in the family, but the disorder may also appear to begin “out of the blue.” People with MDD often appear sad, irritable, and easily moved to tears. They may sleep poorly and complain of vague physical aches and pains; experience sexual difficulties or loss of interest in sex; drop out of social activities; and come across to others as unhappy or lacking in energy. Some people with MDD may deny that they feel depressed, but they lose their enthusiasm for hobbies or work they once found enjoyable and rewarding. Children and adolescents present with many of these same characteristics, but they may often appear easily frustrated and cranky instead of sad. The symptoms of MDD can be summarized as follows:

- Disturbed mood (sad, hopeless, discouraged, “down in the dumps”) during most of the day.
- Loss of interest or pleasure in activities.
- Change in appetite nearly every day, leading either to weight gain or to loss of 5% of body weight. In children, this symptom may appear as a failure to make normal weight gains related to growth.
- Insomnia (waking in the middle of the night and having difficulty returning to sleep, or waking too early in the morning) or hypersomnia (sleeping much more than normal).
- Psychomotor retardation (slowed thinking, speech, body movements) or agitation (inability to sit still, hand-wringing, pulling at clothing, skin, or other objects) that is apparent to others.
- Sense of worthlessness or unreasonable guilt over minor failings.
- Problems with clear thinking, concentration, and decision-making.
- Recurrent thoughts of death or suicide, or making a suicide attempt.

## Demographics

Recent research indicates that 4.9% of the population of the United States meets the diagnostic criteria for MDD at any given time, but 17.1% will experience at least one episode of the disorder at some point during their lives. While the disorder may affect people at any age, it is most commonly diagnosed in young adults in their twenties. For reasons that are not well understood, women are twice as likely to develop MDD as are men; prior to puberty, however, MDD is about equally common in girls and boys. Adolescence is a high-risk period for MDD; while suicide may result from impulsive behavior under **stress** rather than from MDD, it is noteworthy that about 14% of all teenage deaths are due to suicide. The figures for gay and lesbian youth indicate that as

many as 20%–35% make suicide attempts. Other risk factors include Hispanic ethnicity; younger age at onset; lower levels of education or income; and being separated or divorced.

Depression appears to have become a more common disorder over the past century. Epidemiologists studying the incidence of depression across time compared groups of people born between 1917 and 1936, between 1937 and 1952, and between 1953 and 1966; their results indicated that the rate of depression increased progressively from one generation to the next. While no single explanation for the rise in **depressive disorders** emerged, some researchers have suggested that the breakdown of social support networks caused by higher rates of family disruption and greater social mobility may be important contributing factors.

## Diagnosis

Major depressive disorder may be diagnosed when a person visits their family doctor with concerns about their mood, changes in appetite or sleeping patterns, and similar symptoms. Doctors in family practice, in fact, are more likely to be consulted by patients with depression than doctors in any other medical specialty. In addition, a large proportion of people discuss depressed feelings with their clergy person, who has typically been trained (in the mainstream Christian and Jewish bodies) to recognize the signs of depression and to encourage the person to see their doctor. In some cases the patient may be brought to see the doctor by a concerned spouse or other family member.

The **diagnosis** of MDD involves a constellation of symptoms in addition to depressed mood. After taking a careful history, including asking the patient about his or her sleeping patterns, appetite, sex drive, and mood, the doctor will give the patient a physical examination to rule out other possible causes of the symptoms. Certain other disorders may resemble MDD, including cognitive dysfunction caused by the direct effects of a substance (drug of **abuse**, medication, or toxic chemical); various medical conditions (i.e., an underactive thyroid gland; strokes; or early stages of **dementia**), or other mental disorders. Such stressful life events as normal bereavement may also produce behaviors similar to those associated with MDD; while a bereaved person may appear to have many of the characteristics of MDD, the disorder would not be diagnosed unless the symptoms continued for more than two months or were extreme in some way. As part of the diagnostic interview, the doctor may give the patient a brief screening

questionnaire, such as the **Beck Depression Inventory**, in order to obtain a clearer picture of the symptoms. In addition to interviewing the patient, the doctor may talk to family members or others who can provide information that the patient may forget, deny, or consider unimportant.

The diagnosis of MDD is complicated by the fact that people with MDD frequently suffer from other mental illnesses at the same time, including **anxiety disorders**, **substance abuse** problems, and **personality disorders**. Given that the patient's symptoms may vary according to age, sex, and stage of the illness, some clinicians have suggested that MDD may actually be a collection or group of disorders with a small number of underlying core symptoms rather than a single entity.

The diagnosis of a person with MDD may also include certain specifiers, including the severity and chronicity of the disorder; the presence of psychotic features (delusions or hallucinations) or catatonia (remaining motionless for long periods of time, and other peculiarities of posture, movement, or speech); melancholia (depressed mood that is worse in the morning; early morning wakening; psychomotor retardation or agitation; significant weight loss; or inappropriate guilt); and information regarding postpartum status. If the depression is currently in remission, this fact is also commonly listed as a diagnostic specifier.

### Treatments

Because MDD can have a devastating impact on a person's life, the importance of effective treatment cannot be overestimated. Treatment strategies have evolved over the years according to researchers' varying opinions of the underlying causes of depression, but the outpouring of interest in MDD allows treatment providers to select from a variety of tested approaches.

#### *Psychotherapy*

Cognitive psychotherapies for depression are based on the belief that depressed people perceive themselves and the world in unrealistically negative ways. Considerable research has been done regarding the cognitive dimension of depression; for example, studies find that depressed people pay more attention to negative events than to positive ones, and that dwelling on unpleasant experiences prolongs and worsens depressive episodes. Cognitive therapists help patients identify the automatic thoughts that lead them to anticipate poor outcomes or to interpret neu-

tral events in negative ways. The patient is also encouraged to challenge negative thoughts by comparing his or her expectations of events with actual outcomes.

Evidence that poor interpersonal relationships may heighten vulnerability to depression, along with findings that depressed adults and depressed children tend to provoke negative reactions from other people, has prompted the use of **social skills training** as a form of treatment. In this type of therapy, patients are trained to recognize actions and attitudes that annoy or distance other people, and to replace these behaviors with more appropriate ones. Social skills training may be particularly helpful to depressed persons who tend to isolate themselves and have lost confidence in their ability to develop healthy relationships. This treatment model promotes the idea that depression is likely to lift when the patient becomes adept at making new friends and establishing rewarding social supports.

**Psychodynamic psychotherapy** is often effective in treating patients with MDD whose depression is related to unresolved issues from the past, particularly abuse or other painful childhood experiences. The growth of insight into one's emotional patterns, as well as the supportive aspects of this form of therapy, offers considerable relief from emotional pain to many patients.

### *Medications*

The use of medications in the treatment of depression began in the late 1950s with the successful introduction of tricyclic **antidepressants** and MAO inhibitors. Treatment of depression with medications has greatly increased since the advent of **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRIs) such as **fluoxetine** (Prozac) or **sertraline** (Zoloft). While these medications are no more effective than their predecessors, they have fewer side effects and are much safer for patients who may be likely to overdose. Selecting the optimal antidepressant medication is not always a straightforward process, however, and the patient may have to try out various drugs for a period of weeks or months before finding one that is effective for him or her. In addition, while the SSRIs have comparatively few side effects, such complaints as loss of sexual interest or functioning, nervousness, headaches, gastrointestinal complaints, drowsiness, and insomnia can be significant obstacles to the patient's taking the medication as directed.

#### *Other mainstream approaches*

The use of **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT), initially introduced in the 1930s, was virtually abandoned

as a treatment for MDD for many years, largely as a result of the effectiveness and convenience of psychotropic (mind-altering) medications. Since the 1980s, however, interest in the procedure has renewed; in 1990 the American Psychiatric Association published new guidelines for the use of ECT. Despite media portrayals of ECT as an outdated and cruel form of treatment that causes considerable pain, in actuality the patient is given a sedative and the electrical stimulation is calibrated precisely to produce the maximum therapeutic effects. ECT may be the first line of treatment when a patient cannot tolerate the customary medications or is at high risk of harming themselves; but it is more commonly used with patients who fail to respond to drug treatment. In terms of effectiveness, however, ECT actually outperforms medications even among patients who are helped by antidepressants, as well as those who are resistant to drug treatment.

The use of phototherapy (**light therapy**) has proven to be the treatment of choice for patients diagnosed with seasonal affective disorder. Although the reasons for the effectiveness of phototherapy are not yet clear, treatment involves exposing the eyes to bright (2500 lux) light for several minutes a day. Currently, however, there is little evidence to suggest that phototherapy is useful in the treatment of other types of MDD.

#### *Alternative and complementary treatments*

The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) is conducting an ongoing series of clinical tests of alternative and complementary treatments for depression. Those that have been shown to reduce symptoms of depression and compare favorably with conventional treatments include **acupuncture**; Ayurvedic medicine; **meditation**; and a therapeutic diet designed to be free of caffeine and refined sugar.

Herbal preparations are common alternative treatments for depression; in fact an NCCAM study found that depression is the single most common reason for people in the United States to purchase herbal remedies. Some, such as St. John's wort, have been used in Europe for decades. The German Commission E, which regulates government approval of herbal preparations in German-speaking Europe, recently approved the use of Gingko biloba extract as a treatment for depression. The most important caution is that persons who are using herbal remedies, whether to treat depression or other conditions, should always tell their doctor what they are taking, how much, and how often. This warning is crucial because some herbal

preparations that are safe in themselves can interact with prescription medications. In particular, St. John's Wort has been reported to cause interactions with fluoxetine (Prozac).

Some complementary approaches appear to be helpful to persons with depression because they offer pleasurable experiences for the senses or lift the person's spirit. These include **aromatherapy**; music therapy; pet therapy; humor; therapeutic massage; and **yoga**.

#### **Prognosis**

Major depression is increasingly viewed as a chronic condition for many people. Left untreated, a depressive episode may last four months or longer, regardless of the age of onset. While most people recover fully from a given depressive episode, eventual recurrence is common. Long-term studies of people with MDD indicate that about 60% of patients who have one episode of depression will have a second episode; with each succeeding episode, the chances of a subsequent episode increase, i.e., persons having a third episode stand a 90% chance of having a fourth. Between depressive episodes, the patient's mood may return to a nondepressed state (in about two-thirds of the cases) or continue to show some degree of impairment (one-third of cases). Patients who recover only partially between episodes appear to be at especially high risk of recurrence.

Community studies indicate that about 60% of the people diagnosed with MDD are greatly improved or fully recovered by one year after diagnosis. A very severe initial episode of depression; the presence of a coexisting **dysthymic disorder**; or the existence of a serious medical condition are associated with a poorer prognosis.

#### **Prevention**

While programs specifically aimed at preventing MDD are not widespread, early interventions with children to address some of the issues related to depression have met with success. In particular, social skills training has been found to reduce symptoms of depression, perhaps by enabling children to develop the kinds of social supports and friendships that promote good mental health. Cognitive behavioral techniques that teach people to challenge dysfunctional thought patterns, such as the tendency to deny responsibility for good outcomes and to feel overly responsible for negative events, has been found to successfully reduce the rates of depressive symptoms in children and college students. In addition, psycho-educational work with parents having mood disorders

## KEY TERMS

**Agitation**—Excessive restlessness or emotional disturbance that is often associated with anxiety or psychosis. May be a symptom of major depressive disorder.

**Anhedonia**—Loss of the capacity to experience pleasure. Anhedonia is one of the so-called negative symptoms of schizophrenia, and is also a symptom of major depression.

**Catatonia**—Disturbance of motor behavior with either extreme stupor or random, purposeless activity.

**Cortisol**—A steroid hormone released by the cortex (outer portion) of the adrenal gland when a person is under stress.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact. Women suffering from postpartum depression sometimes have delusions about their new baby.

**Dysthymia**—Depression of low intensity.

**Dysthymic disorder**—A mood disorder that is less severe than depression but usually more chronic.

**Etiology**—The cause or origin of a disease or disorder. The word is also used to refer to the study of the causes of disease.

**Ginkgo**—A shade tree native to China with fan-shaped leaves and fleshy seeds with edible kernels. Ginkgo extract has been approved in Europe as a

complementary or adjunctive treatment for major depressive episodes.

**Intrapsychic**—Occurring inside a person's mind or psyche.

**Labile**—Subject to frequent change, particularly in reference to mood.

**Limbic system**—A group of structures in the brain that includes the amygdala, hippocampus, olfactory bulbs, and hypothalamus. The limbic system is associated with homeostasis and the regulation and arousal of emotions.

**Malaise**—The medical term for a general condition of unease, discomfort, or weakness.

**Melancholia**—A form of severe depression characterized by weight loss, insomnia, and an inability to experience pleasure.

**Rumination**—A tendency to dwell on certain thoughts, particularly negative ones, repeatedly or obsessively.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

has been effective in improving the adjustment of their children. Long-term follow-up of such approaches is incomplete, but these studies support the possibility that improved individual and family functioning may help to lower rates of depression in the future.

As the factors that increase an individual's vulnerability to depression become better understood, effective strategies for early **intervention** and possible prevention become possible. Brief therapies that target such symptoms as maladaptive thought patterns or interpersonal problems may lower the risk of serious mood disturbances. Knowledge of the mental health implications of natural or humanly caused disasters has already resulted in much improved mental health services to communities in need. It is realistic to expect that appropriate treatment will become more available and accessible to people experiencing less dramatic setbacks to their ability to function in the future.

*See also* Adjustment disorder; Catatonic disorder; Children's Depression Inventory (CDI); Genetic factors and mental disorders; Grief.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Beck, Aaron T., M.D., and others. *Cognitive Therapy of Depression*. New York: Guilford Press, 1979.

Ingram, Rick E. and Joseph M. Price, eds. *Vulnerability to Psychopathology; Risk Across the Lifespan*. New York: Guilford Press, 2001.

McCullough, James P., Ph.D. *Treatment for Chronic Depression*. New York: Guilford Press, 2000.

Martell, Christopher, and others. *Depression in Context: Strategies for Guided Action*. New York: W. W. Norton, 2001.

- Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "CAM Therapies for Specific Conditions: Depression." *The Best Alternative Medicine*. Part II. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.
- Rush, John A., ed. *Mood and Anxiety Disorders*. Philadelphia: Williams and Wilkins, 1998.
- Seligman, Martin E. P., Ph.D. *Helplessness: On Depression, Development, and Death*. San Francisco: Freeman, 1975.
- Simonds, Susan L. *Depression and Women: An Integrative Treatment Approach*. New York: Springer Publishing Company, 2001.
- Steiner, Meir, M.D. and others, eds. *Mood Disorders in Women*. London: Martin Dunitz Limited, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Brodaty, H. and others. "A 25-year Longitudinal Comparison Study of the Outcome of Depression." *Psychological Medicine* 31 (2001): 1347-1358.
- Nolan, Carla L., and others. "Prefrontal Cortical Volume in Childhood-Onset Major Depression." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 59 (2002): 173-175.
- Nuland, Sherwin B., M.D. "The Uncertain Art: Lightning On My Mind." *The American Scholar* 71 (Spring 2002): 127-131.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry.  
3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016.  
(202) 966-7300. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.
- National Depressive and Manic-Depressive Association.  
730 North Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago, IL  
60610-3526. (800) 826-3632. <[www.ndmda.org](http://www.ndmda.org)>.

#### OTHER

- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) Clearinghouse. P.O. Box 7923, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. (888) 644-6226. TTY: (866) 464-3615. Fax: (866) 464-3616. <[www.nccam.nih.gov](http://www.nccam.nih.gov)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Depression in Children and Adolescents: A Fact Sheet for Physicians*. <[www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/depchilresfact.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/depchilresfact.cfm)>.

Jane A. Fitzgerald, Ph.D.

Male erectile disorder see **Erectile dysfunction**

## Male orgasmic disorder

### Definition

Male orgasmic disorder may be defined as a persistent or recurrent inability to achieve orgasm despite lengthy sexual contact or while participating in sexual intercourse.

The mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*, includes this disorder among the **sexual dysfunctions**, along with **premature ejaculation**, **dyspareunia**, and others.

### Description

The individual affected by male orgasmic disorder is unable to experience an orgasm following a normal sexual excitement phase. The affected man may regularly experience delays in orgasm, or may be unable to experience orgasm altogether.

#### Normal orgasm

It is important to this discussion to understand the characteristics of a "normal" orgasm. The sensation of orgasm in the male includes emission followed by ejaculation. The term emission refers to a sensation of impending ejaculation produced by contractions of the prostate gland, seminal vesicles, and urethra accompanied by generalized muscular tension, perineal contractions, and involuntary pelvic thrusting. Orgasm is followed by a period of resolution characterized by feelings of well-being and generalized muscular relaxation. During this phase, men may be unable to respond to further sexual stimulation, erection, and orgasm for a variable period of time.

It is also important to distinguish orgasm from ejaculation, although in most instances they occur almost simultaneously. Orgasm is a peak emotional and physical experience, whereas ejaculation is simply a reflex action occurring at the lower portion of the spinal cord and resulting in ejection of semen. Some men have been able to recognize the separation of the two processes, enabling them to experience multiple orgasms without the occurrence of ejaculation. Once ejaculation takes place, a period of recovery time is required prior to a subsequent orgasm.

The sensation of orgasm differs between individuals, and individual orgasms may differ in the same individual. All orgasms share certain characteristics in common including rhythmic body and pelvic contractions, elevation of the heart rate, systemic hypertension, hyperventilation, and muscle tension, followed by the sudden release of tension.

#### *The physiological mechanism of normal orgasm*

The cycle of sexual response is under the control of a balanced interplay between the two major nervous systems, the sympathetic and the parasympathetic. In general, the sympathetic nervous system prompts action whereas the parasympathetic system's main

action is recovery and calming. In order for a penis to become erect, its smooth muscles are relaxed and it becomes congested with blood vessels. This process is mediated by a complex cascade of humoral, neurological and circulatory events in which the parasympathetic nervous system plays a key role. Orgasm and ejaculation and subsequent relaxation of the penis are predominantly functions of the sympathetic nervous system.

Thus, whereas emission is a balanced interplay between the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous systems, orgasm and ejaculation are predominantly under the control of the sympathetic nervous system. The mechanisms of this system may be blocked by impaired function of the **brain** or of the hormonal, circulatory, and neurological systems. Additionally, certain medications may block these actions.

### *Abnormalities affecting the process of orgasm*

Abnormalities in these processes may be “primary” or “secondary.” Primary abnormalities are of lifelong duration with effective sexual performance never having been experienced. Secondary abnormalities are acquired after a period of normal function. If an orgasmic problem only occurs under a particular set of circumstances, or only with certain sexual partners, the condition is considered to be “situational” rather than “generalized” (occurring regardless of the circumstances or partner). The defect in sexual function may be total or partial.

The evidence strongly suggests that orgasm has more to do with the brain than with the body. Electrode stimulation of certain parts of the brain will produce sexual pleasure similar to that produced by physical stimulation. The fact that orgasm occurs during sleep is supportive of this concept.

## Causes and symptoms

### *Causes*

The cause of male orgasmic disorders may be organic (related to a condition in the body), but, in most cases, is of psychological origin. It is important for the physician to make every effort to find an underlying cause because the therapy and prognosis depend upon it. A detailed history (including an interview with the sexual partner, if feasible), a general physical examination, the performance of certain laboratory and, in some cases, special tests, are important in the investigation of the underlying cause of the male orgasmic disorder.

Organic causes of male orgasmic disorder include the following:

- Hypogonadism, in which the testes do not produce enough testosterone.
- Thyroid disorders (both hyperthyroidism—too much thyroid hormone—and hypothyroidism, or abnormally low levels of thyroid hormone).
- Pituitary conditions (Cushing’s syndrome, excessive production of the hormone that induces lactation called prolactin).
- Diseases that affect the nervous system, such as strokes, multiple sclerosis, diabetic neuropathy, spinal cord injuries.
- Surgery affecting the prostate and other pelvic organs.
- Diseases of the penis.
- Substance abuse, including alcohol.
- Certain medications. Some of these medications include: the phenothiazines [antipsychotics such as chlorpromazine (Thorazine) or trifluoperazine (Stelazine)]; certain medications used to treat high blood pressure, including the thiazides [such as triamterene (Dyazide) or spironolactone (Aldactone)] and beta blockers [such as propranolol (Inderal)]; and the tricyclic antidepressants such as doxepin (Sinequan) and protriptyline (Vivactil).

The most common causes of the male orgasmic syndrome are psychological in nature. The responsible psychological mechanisms may be “intrinsic” (due to basic internal factors), or “extrinsic” (due to external or environmental factors).

Intrinsic psychological factors that may cause male orgasmic disorder include:

- depression
- feelings of guilt, anger, fear, low self-esteem, and anxiety
- fear of getting the partner pregnant or of contracting a sexually-transmitted disease or HIV

Extrinsic psychological factors that may cause male orgasmic disorder include:

- living under conditions that cause undue stress
- unsatisfactory relationship with sexual partner
- past history of traumatic sexual encounters such as sexual abuse, rape or incest
- having been raised in an atmosphere of strict sexual taboos

Environmental factors may interfere with sexual functioning. There may be no safe, private place in which the patient can exercise sexual activity or he

may be too fatigued from other activities to participate sexually. The difficulties in striving for "safe sex" and the psychological effects that may result from homosexuality may also interfere with sexual function.

### Symptoms

In order to be diagnosed with male orgasmic disorder, the following symptoms must be present according to the *DSM-IV-TR*:

- Persistent or recurrent delay in, or absence of, orgasm following a normal sexual excitement phase during sexual activity that the clinician judges to be adequate. The affected man's age is considered, as well.
- As with all of the sexual dysfunctions, the manual states that the dysfunction must cause the affected man "distress or interpersonal difficulty." According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, the orgasmic dysfunction cannot be better accounted for by another disorder (except another sexual disorder), and cannot be due exclusively to the direct effects of substance abuse, a medication, or a general medical condition. This entry, however, discusses the full scope of male orgasmic difficulties, and so discusses general medical conditions and medications as well as psychological factors.

In addition to specific symptoms involving sexual function (inability or delay in reaching orgasm after sufficient stimulation), most patients complain of anxiety, guilt, shame and frustration, and many develop bodily complaints on a psychological basis. Although sexual dysfunction usually occurs during sexual activity with a partner, the clinician should inquire about sexual function during masturbation. If problems occur during masturbation, the problem probably has nothing to do with the sexual partner.

The physician should differentiate male orgasmic disorder from other sexual disorders such as retarded or delayed ejaculation and retrograde ejaculation. In both of these conditions, orgasm occurs but is delayed or, in the case of retrograde ejaculation, occurs in a retrograde direction (into the bladder).

### Demographics

Male orgasmic disorder is found in all races and ethnic groups. In the case of the lifelong type of the disorder, manifestations will occur around the age of puberty. In certain genetic hypogonadism disorders, such as Klinefelter's syndrome, certain bodily signs and symptoms may alert the physician. Similarly, in associated thyroid, testicular and pituitary abnormalities, there may be other manifestations of the under-

lying disorder. In the acquired type of male orgasmic disorder, the patient will have had the previous experience of normal sexual function. In these cases, it is usually a situational factor that precipitates the disorder.

### Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** is usually readily made on the basis of the patient's history and the presence of the *DSM-IV-TR* diagnostic criteria. Male orgasmic disorder may be part of a complex of sexual malfunctioning that may include **erectile dysfunction**, abnormalities in ejaculation (such as premature ejaculation or retrograde ejaculation), and **hypoactive sexual desire disorder**.

In order to differentiate between the various potential disorders, the physician may request laboratory tests and/or may perform further diagnostic evaluations. Blood plasma levels of testosterone are of help in diagnosing hypogonadism. A number of tests of thyroid, pituitary and adrenal function are available to diagnose hormonal abnormalities of those glands. A test for nocturnal penile erections may be performed to diagnose erectile dysfunction.

### Treatments

If an extrinsic mechanism is discovered as the cause of the orgasmic disorder, steps should be taken to eliminate or ameliorate the problem. An example would be substance or alcohol abuse or the use of certain provocative medications. In the case of anti-hypertensives, for example, a number of equally effective agents are available if the one in current use is suspect. Therapy should be directed toward improvement of concurrent conditions such as diabetes that may be having an adverse effect on sexual function. Environmental factors that interfere with sexual activity should be corrected.

In the majority of cases, **psychotherapy** will be suggested even in those cases where psychological factors are secondary rather than the primary mechanism for the disorder. Such treatment should be rendered by therapists with special training in the disorders of sexual function and who can tactfully evaluate the sexual compatibility of the patient and his partner. Treatment usually requires the support of the sexual partner in improving both the psychological as well as the physical aspects of the problem. A step-wise program of partner stimulation of the patient to initially ejaculate outside the vagina, then at the vaginal labia, and finally inside the vagina may be helpful.

## KEY TERMS

**Antihypertensive**—An agent used in the treatment of hypertension (high blood pressure).

**Diabetes mellitus**—A chronic disease affecting the metabolism of carbohydrates that is caused by insufficient production of insulin in the body.

**Diabetic neuropathy**—Condition existing in people with diabetes in which the nerves at the extremities, especially the feet, are less sensitive to touch and injury.

**Humoral**—A term describing a hormonal substance secreted by an endocrine gland (such as the thyroid).

**Perineal**—An anatomical area located between the external genitals and the anus.

**Phenothiazine**—A class of drugs widely used in the treatment of psychosis.

**Prostate gland**—The gland at the base of a male's urethra that produces a component of semen.

**Retroperitoneal**—The anatomical area between the peritoneum (lining of the abdominal cavity) and the muscular and connective tissues of the abdominal wall.

**Seminal fluid**—Fluid composed of semen from the testes and prostatic secretions.

**Seminal vesicles**—Sac-like structures bordering the male urethra and serving as storage depots for the seminal fluid.

**Urethra**—The tubular passage conducting urine from the bladder to the exterior. In the male, the urethra traverses the penis.

## Prognosis

The prognosis of the patient with male orgasmic syndrome is dependent on whether the condition is lifelong or acquired and the condition's causes. Prognosis is best when it can be demonstrated that the condition is related to some extrinsic or environmental factor that can be corrected or ameliorated. The prognosis is also favorable in those cases that are due to a remedial organic condition such as a thyroid disorder or hypogonadism. The prognosis is guarded when the disorder is found to be secondary to a deep-seated and chronic psychological or actual psychiatric problem that, in itself, carries an unfavorable prognosis.

## Prevention

There are no definitive steps that can be taken to prevent the onset of the male orgasmic disorder. Prompt recognition of the syndrome is important so that appropriate therapy can be attempted as early as possible. As with many chronic conditions, the longer the condition exists, the more difficult therapy becomes.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Lue, Tom F., F. Goldstein. "Impotence and Infertility." In *Atlas of Clinical Urology*. Volume 1. New York: Current Medicine, 1999.

Masters, William and Virginia Johnson. *Masters and Johnson on Sex and Human Loving*. New York: Little, Brown, 1986.

Steidle, Christopher P., MD. *The Impotence Source Book*. Los Angeles: Howell House, 1998.

Ralph Myerson, M.D.

## Malingering

### Definition

The central theme to all definitions of malingering is that the term applies to persons who deliberately pretend to have an illness or disability in order to receive financial or other gain, or to avoid punishment or responsibility.

### Description

Personal gain is always the motivation for malingering. Some external reward is sought and is the rationale for feigning an illness. For example, the criminal who does not want to pay for his/her crime, the soldier who does not want to fight, or the person who wishes to be paid for a nonexistent disability all may be tempted to feign an illness.

Malingering can take many forms. However, as specifically related to mental illness, the tendency is to fake more common disorders such as **major depressive disorder**, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, and **panic disorder** with **agoraphobia**. With very little coaching or research, even a beginner can simulate symptoms of these disorders. Generalized symptoms such as headaches, dizziness, low back pain, stomach pain, etc., are easily manufactured, and x rays,

**magnetic resonance imaging** (MRIs), or CAT scans (computed axial tomography) are unable to determine a physical cause.

Malingeringers tend to avoid symptoms such as those associated with more serious psychiatric disorders, because the pretense is very difficult to maintain and objective measures could detect the difference. For example, hearing voices and seeing demons, or living with the idea that others can hear unspoken thoughts, would become a difficult act to maintain over time. On the other hand, to feign a sad mood, loss of interest in formerly enjoyed activities, or a low energy level may not be so difficult to demonstrate. Likewise, responding positively to a series of questions about having heart palpitations, sweating, dizziness, or fear of impending death, could be done readily.

The concept that fakers use less severe symptoms to escape detection was validated in 2001 in a research study. Individuals were asked to fake mental illnesses in such a way as to avoid detection by sophisticated psychological tests. All or portions of the following tests were employed in the research: the Structured Inventory of Malingered Symptomatology, the Psychopathic Personality Inventory, the M-Test, and the Trauma Symptom Inventory. Slightly over 11% of the 540 research participants successfully avoided detection and were diagnosed with real disorders instead of with malingering. Questionnaires completed by those who successfully faked symptoms showed that they avoided detection by endorsing fewer actual symptoms, staying away from unduly strange or bizarre symptoms, and responding based upon personal experience.

Although ordinarily an intended fraud, malingering may serve an adaptive purpose under circumstances of duress, such as while being held captive. Faking an illness at such a time may allow a person to avoid cooperating with their captors or to avoid punishment.

### Causes and symptoms

Lying for personal benefit has existed since the beginning of time. As previously stated, personal gain is the goal of the malingerer.

The symptoms may vary a great deal from person to person.

### Demographics

Due to the difficulty of determining and exposing malingering, the incidence is unknown.

### Diagnosis

When attempting to diagnose malingering, mental health professionals have three possibilities to consider. First, there is the possibility that the illness feigned by the malingerer is real. However, once it is determined that the disorder has no basis in fact, the professional is left with two viable diagnoses: **factitious disorder** and malingering. Factitious disorder is a legitimate malady, but malingering is not. Both have to do with feigned illnesses.

Unlike malingering, the individual with factitious disorder produces fake symptoms to fulfill the need to maintain the “sick role”—a sort of emotional gain. Being “sick” gives the person with factitious disorder attention from physicians and sympathy from friends and loved ones. Thus, this individual’s goal is not the same as the malingerer’s.

With malingering, motivation is always external and is designed to accomplish one of three things: (1) evade hard or dangerous situations, punishment, or responsibility; (2) gain rewards such as free income, source for drugs, sanctuary from police, or free hospital care; or (3) avenge a monetary loss, legal ruling, or job termination.

Mental health practitioners become alert to the possibility of malingering when circumstances exist that might help promote such a facade. Malingering is suspected when any combination of events such as the following occur:

- A person is referred by his/her attorney for an evaluation.
- There is a noticeable and distinct difference between the level of distress or disability claimed by the person when compared to information obtained by objective means. (Objective means could take the form of personal observation, task performance ability by the person, or a psychological test like those mentioned above.)
- There is a lack of cooperation from the individual.
- A diagnosis of antisocial personality disorder exists.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D., “Malingering.” In *Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

**PERIODICALS**

Edens, John F., Laura S. Guy, Randy K. Otto, Jacqueline K. Buffington, Tara L. Tomicic, and Norman G. Poythress. "Factors differentiating successful versus unsuccessful malingeringers." *Journal of Personality Assessment*. 77, no. 2 (2001): 333-338.

**ORGANIZATIONS**

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Jack H. Booth, Psy.D.

## Managed care

### Definition

Managed care is a generic term for various health-care payment systems that attempt to contain costs by controlling the type and level of services provided. Health maintenance organization (HMO) is a term that is often used synonymously with managed care, but HMOs are actually a particular type of managed care organization.

### Purpose

Health-care reform has been an increasingly urgent concern in the United States over the past 40 years. Until recently, the primary source of health-care coverage was indemnity insurance, which pays or reimburses the cost of medical services in the event of a person's illness or injury. Indemnity insurance gives health-care providers few reasons to use less expensive forms of treatment—the insurance companies generally pay for any treatment deemed necessary by a physician. Presumably, this type of system encourages providers to overuse expensive, unnecessary treatments and diagnostic procedures. Patient co-pays and deductibles attempt to limit excessive use of medical services. Yet costs continue to rise, resulting in insurance companies' frequently raising premium prices.

The primary intent of managed care is to reduce health-care costs. Emphasis is placed on preventive care and early **intervention**, rather than care provided after an illness or injury has occurred. The responsibility of limiting services is placed on the service provider rather than the consumer. This limitation is achieved by (a) "gatekeeper" policies that require individuals to get referrals for specialized treatment from their primary physicians; (b) financial incentives (either bonuses or withholding money) for providers to restrict services and contain costs; (c) guidelines requiring adherence

by providers at the cost of being dropped from the plan for noncompliance; and (d) review of services by the managed care organization and denial of payment if services are considered unnecessary.

### Description

Health maintenance organizations have been in existence in the United States since the late 1800s. It was not until the 1950s, however, that the government began to encourage the development of HMOs. In 1973, the Health Maintenance Organization Act was passed; and in 1978, a Congressional amendment increased federal aid for HMO development. From 1980 to 1989, enrollment in HMOs increased from 9 million to 36 million Americans. By 1990, 95% of private insurance companies used some form of managed care. In the 1990s, managed care was incorporated into Medicare and Medicaid plans as well.

Managed care organizations frequently contract with a group or panel of health-care providers. HMOs and PPOs (preferred provider organizations) are examples of these types of contracts. Individuals insured under an HMO or PPO may receive care only from providers on the panel. These providers are expected to deliver services according to specific stipulations. Payment is often subject to utilization review, in which delivery of medical services is scrutinized to determine whether the services are necessary. The review may occur with each episode of treatment, or may be ongoing through the use of a case manager. If the managed care organization thinks that the services were unnecessary, payment is denied.

Payment arrangements between managed care organizations and care providers are often made in advance. Capitated payment systems are typically used with large health-care facilities that serve many people. The health-care provider receives a set amount of money each month based on the number of individuals covered by the plan. The provider may or may not serve that many people in one month. Capitation systems provide a steady, reliable cash flow, but involve some economic risk because the services provided may exceed the dollar amount allotted. Another type of payment system uses case rates. The provider receives a predetermined amount of money per individual on a case-by-case basis. The amount of money reflects the estimated service costs to treat the individual patient's condition. Again, the provider takes the risk that unanticipated services will be required.

In the past, mental health services (including **substance abuse** treatment) were routinely excluded from managed care plans. In the 1970s, some mental health

## KEY TERMS

**Capitated payment system**—A contract between managed care organizations and health-care providers involving a prepaid amount for blocks of services.

**Carve-out plans**—Managed care plans that make provision for mental health services by creating sub-contracts involving different terms of payment and utilization review from those used for general health care.

**Case manager**—A professional who designs and monitors implementation of comprehensive care plans (i.e., services addressing medical, financial, housing, psychiatric, vocational, or social needs) for individuals seeking mental health or social services.

**Case rate**—A type of contract between managed care organizations and health-care providers involving a prepaid amount for services on a case-by-case basis.

**Deductible**—The amount of money that must be paid out of pocket by health-care consumers before the insurance provider will make payments.

**Health maintenance organization (HMO)**—A type of managed care system that involves payment contracts with a group or panel of health-care providers.

**Health Maintenance Organization Act of 1973**—Federal legislation that provided aid to develop HMOs.

**Indemnity insurance**—Insurance plans that pay on a fee-for-service basis in the event of illness or injury.

**Medicaid**—A program jointly funded by state and federal governments that reimburses hospitals and physicians for the care of individuals who cannot pay for their own medical expenses. These individuals may be in low-income households or may have chronic disabilities.

**Medicare**—A federally funded health insurance program for individuals age 65 and older, and certain categories of younger persons with disabilities.

**Preferred provider organization (PPO)**—A type of managed care system involving payment contracts with a group or panel of health-care providers.

**Premium**—The cost of enrollment in a health insurance plan. Premiums are usually paid on a monthly basis.

**Utilization review**—A process used by managed care organizations involving scrutiny of service delivery to determine whether services are necessary.

care coverage was required in order to meet federal qualifications. Carve-out plans were developed in the 1990s. These plans essentially create a separate managed care plan for mental health services. Mental health services tend to be covered at a lower rate than general health services and have also been cut back more severely. From 1988 to 1997, mental health-care spending decreased by 54%, which reflects cutbacks 670% higher than those for general health care benefits. Mental health care providers are also subjected to higher levels of utilization review than medical care providers.

### Ethical concerns

Managed care has been successful in fulfilling its primary purpose of lowering health-care costs in the United States. Statistics show drastic decreases in the use of inpatient care and accompanying overall reduction in costs. Many observers, however, would argue that the quality of care has suffered as a result. Individuals have fewer choices regarding the locations

where they can receive treatment. If a managed care organization closes, individuals under that plan must switch to other care providers under a new plan, which disrupts ongoing treatment. Care providers often feel that their clients are denied essential care in favor of saving money. Employers have become disillusioned because of increasing disability claims due to employees having received inadequate treatment for illnesses or injuries. In addition to disability claims, inadequate treatment results in hidden costs to employers in terms of lost productivity.

Another factor in decreased quality of care involves conflicting loyalties for health-care providers. On the one hand, providers want to ensure quality care for their clients. On the other hand, they are encouraged to provide the least amount of care possible in order to receive financial benefits. Just as dishonest practice was suspected in conjunction with indemnity insurance, managed care creates a powerful potential for inappropriately addressing patients' needs.

## Future directions

Due to growing popular discontent with managed care organizations, many critics believe that the system will not continue in its current state. No one, however, expects managed care to completely disappear and indemnity plans to rise to their former prominence. Changes are expected to occur as managed care programs begin competing among themselves. Cost and efficiency will no longer be the main selling point; quality of services will take precedence. One researcher has suggested that along with new systems of managed care and continuing systems of indemnity plans, health-care providers may even organize and offer services directly to employers, thus eliminating the middlemen. This development would be beneficial to all involved: employers would pay less, providers would be better compensated, and clients would receive better care.

*See also* Case management.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Codd, R. Trent, III. *Destructive Trends in Mental Health: The Well-Intentioned Path to Harm*. New York: Routledge, 2005.
- Foster, Joan, and Antonia Murphy. *Psychological Therapies in Primary Care: Setting Up a Managed Care Service*. London: Karnac, 2005.
- Scheid, Teresa L. *Tie a Knot and Hang On: Providing Mental Health Care in a Turbulent Environment*. Hawthorne, NY: Aldine de Gruyter, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

- Addis, Michael E., Christina Hatgis, Esteban Cardemil, Karen Jacob, Aaron D. Krasnow, and Abigail Mansfield. "Effectiveness of Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment for Panic Disorder Versus Treatment as Usual in a Managed Care Setting: 2-Year Follow-Up." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 74.2 (Apr. 2006): 377–85.
- Beattie, Martha, Patricia McDaniel and Jason Bond. "Public Sector Managed Care: A Comparative Evaluation of Substance Abuse Treatment in Three Counties." *Addiction* 101.6 (June 2006): 857–72.
- Bobbitt, Bruce L. "The Importance of Professional Psychology: A View From Managed Care." *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice* 37.6 (Dec. 2006): 590–97.
- Busch, Alisa B., Richard G. Frank, Anthony F. Lehman, and Shelly F. Greenfield. "Schizophrenia, Co-Occurring Substance use Disorders and Quality of Care: The Differential Effect of a Managed Behavioral Health Care Carve-Out." *Administration and Policy in Mental Health and Mental Health Services Research* 33.3 (May 2006): 388–97.

- Cohen, Julie, Jeanne Marecek, and Jane Gillham. "Is Three a Crowd? Clients, Clinicians, and Managed Care." *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry* 76.2 (Apr. 2006): 251–59.
- Kilbourne, Amy M., Harold Alan Pincus, Kathleen Schutte, JoAnn E. Kirchner, Gretchen L. Haas, and Elizabeth M. Yano. "Management of Mental Disorders in VA Primary Care Practices." *Administration and Policy in Mental Health and Mental Health Services Research* 33.2 (Mar. 2006): 208–14.
- Liang, Su-Ying, Kathryn A. Phillips, and Jennifer S. Haas. "Measuring Managed Care and Its Environment Using National Surveys: A Review and Assessment." *Medical Care Research and Review* 63.6 (Dec. 2006): 9S–36S.
- McLaughlin, Trent P., Rezaul K. Khandker, Denise T. Kruzikas, and Raj Tummala. "Overlap of Anxiety and Depression in a Managed Care Population: Prevalence and Association With Resource Utilization." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.8 (Aug. 2006): 1187–93.
- Raghavan, Ramesh, Arleen A. Leibowitz, Ronald M. Andersen, Bonnie T. Zima, Mark A. Schuster, and John Landsverk. "Effects of Medicaid Managed Care Policies on Mental Health Service Use Among a National Probability Sample of Children in the Child Welfare System." *Children and Youth Services Review* 28.12 (Dec. 2006): 1482–96.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association of Health Plans. 1129 20th Street NW, Suite 600, Washington, DC 20036-3421. Web site: <<http://www.aahp.org>>.
- Department of Managed Health Care, California HMO Help Center, 980 Ninth Street, Suite 500, Sacramento, CA 95814-2725. Web site: <<http://www.hmohelp.ca.gov>>.
- Medicare. Telephone: 1-800-MEDICARE. Web site: <[www.medicare.gov](http://www.medicare.gov)>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, MA  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Mania see **Manic episode**

## Manic episode

### Definition

A manic episode is a discrete period lasting at least a week during which a person experiences abnormally elevated, expansive, or irritable mood.

### Description

A person experiencing a manic episode shows persistent and often inappropriate enthusiasm which may involve taking on new projects for which he or she

## KAY REDFIELD JAMISON (1946–)

Kay Redfield Jamison is a psychologist and educator who is considered an authority on manic-depressive illness. Her volume *Manic-Depressive Illness*, compiled with Frederick K. Goodwin, is regarded as a key contribution to the study of manic-depressive illness, a biochemical disorder which results in periods of mania alternating with bouts of depression. The book encompasses a range of issues and subjects, including diagnosis, clinical studies, psychological ramifications, and pathophysiological elements. Larry S. Goldman, reviewing the work in the New England Journal of Medicine, acknowledged Jamison and Goodwin as “two highly regarded senior clinicians and researchers” and proclaimed their book “thorough and most readable.” Goldman concluded, “It is hard to imagine a clinician working with patients with the illness . . . or a researcher in any part of the field of mood disorders who should not have this tour de force available.”

Jamison followed *Manic-Depressive Illness* with *Touched with Fire: Manic-Depressive Illness and the Creative Temperament*, a detailed account of the ties between artistic sensibilities and manic-depressive illness. While conceding that not all artists are manic-depressive, Jamison argues that a significant association exists between the

artistic and manic-depressive temperaments. There is, for example, a high rate of suicide among both types. In her analysis, Jamison incorporates scientific and medical data, including diagnostic methods and genetic information, and she applies this data to a host of creative individuals, including the composer Robert Schumann, the painter Vincent Van Gogh, and such American writers as Ernest Hemingway, John Berryman, and Hart Crane. Jamison notes that many of the creative individuals considered in *Touched with Fire* had little recourse to any suitable psycho-medical care.

In 1995 Jamison published *An Unquiet Mind*, a memoir of her own experiences with manic depression. In this volume Jamison recounts her extreme moodiness as a child and relates her first, exhilarating experience of mania when she was in her mid-teens. She notes that mania and depression sometimes exist simultaneously. It is during these periods, when the depths of despair are coupled with the impulsiveness characteristic of mania, that sufferers, according to Jamison, are more likely to consider suicide. Jamison discloses in *An Unquiet Mind* that she attempted to take her own life, and she credits psychotherapy with helping her realize greater acceptance and stability.

is ill suited. It might also involve engaging strangers in detailed conversations, acting without concern for consequences of one's actions, or increased sexual activities. Less commonly, a person may be abnormally irritable during a manic episode. On average, the episodes begin before age 25. This means that some individuals experience their first episode while in their teens and others during middle age.

Psychiatrists use five criteria to identify someone in the midst of a manic episode. First, the period of abnormal behavior must persist for at least one week unless the person is admitted to a hospital. Typically, the episodes last from a few weeks to a few months. Second, the **diagnosis** requires three additional symptoms if the mood change results in expansive behavior, or four if it results in unnatural irritability. These symptoms include an unwarranted sense of self-importance, a tendency to be easily distracted, a decreased need for sleep, a rapid flow of ideas with one replacing another before the first is acted upon, an inability to sit still or increased activity directed at achieving some goal, an irrepressible need to talk, and finally, a devotion to some activity the patient finds pleasurable but could be harmful (e.g., buying

sprees, reckless driving). The third criterion is that the symptoms do not qualify the patient for a diagnosis of **mixed episode**, which involves elements of **depression**. Fourth, the patient can not function normally at home or at work, or shows signs of **psychosis**. The fifth and last criterion is that the cause of the episode can not be attributed to side effects from any drug **abuse**, medication, medical treatment, or medical condition.

Many of these symptoms are also present in a hypomanic episode. A hypomanic episode is similar to a manic episode, but the symptoms may be experienced to a lesser extent. The main differences between a manic and hypomanic episode are the following:

- A hypomanic episode may only last four days, whereas a manic episode, by definition, lasts one week.
- In a manic episode, psychotic features (hallucinations and delusions) may be present, but in a hypomanic episode, they cannot be.
- A manic episode significantly impairs the affected person's functions, but a hypomanic episode does not.

Both of these kinds of episodes may be seen in patients with **bipolar disorder**.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Goodwin, Frederick K., and Kay Redfield Jamison. *Manic-Depressive Illness*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2007.

VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Frey, Benício Noronha, and others. "Increased Oxidative Stress After Repeated Amphetamine Exposure: Possible Relevance as a Model of Mania. Bipolar Disorders," *Bipolar Disorders* 8.3, Jun. 2006: 275–80.
- Keck, Paul E., Jr., and others. "A Randomized, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled 26-Week Trial of Aripiprazole in Recently Manic Patients With Bipolar I Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.4, Apr. 2006: 626–37.
- Lin, Daniel, Hiram Mok, and Lakshmi N. Yatham. "Polytherapy in Bipolar Disorder." *CNS Drugs* 20.1, 2006: 29–42.
- Michalopoulou, Panayiota G., and Lefteris Lykouras. "Manic/Hypomanic Symptoms Induced by Atypical Antipsychotics: A Review of the Reported Cases." *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry* 30.4, May 2006: 549–64.

Dean A. Haycock, Ph.D.

## Maprotiline

### Definition

Maprotiline is an antidepressant. It is a member of the tetracyclic antidepressant family of compounds and is administered orally. In the United States, it is sold under the trade name Ludiomil.

### Purpose

Maprotiline is an antidepressant intended for use by people with depressive **neurosis** and bipolar syndrome. It is also occasionally used for the relief of **anxiety** associated with **depression**.

### Description

Maprotiline elevates mood. The precise pharmacological mode of action is not fully understood but it is thought to inhibit the reuptake of the neurotransmitter norepinephrine at nerve endings in the **brain**. It is prescribed in 25-, 50-, and 75-mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended initial dosage of maprotiline is typically 75 mg, given by mouth in three 25-mg administrations, although some patients may start with an initial dose of 25 mg. The initial dosage should be maintained for at least two weeks. Therapeutic results may be observed in three to seven days. Typically, initial administration may have to be continued for two to three weeks before results are observed.

The recommended total dosage is 150 mg per day. Dosage should be increased 25 mg at a time. The maximum daily dosage for people with severe depression is 225 mg.

### Precautions

Maprotiline should be discontinued or reduced in dosage prior to surgery. This is due to the potential for interactions with anesthetic agents.

Maprotiline may promote seizure activity. Of all the cyclic **antidepressants** it probably causes the highest incidence of **seizures** and has thus fallen out of favor with most psychiatrists. Also for this reason, it should not be combined with other neuroleptics (antipsychotics) that can also cause seizures. The drug increases the effect of alcohol and should not be taken with products containing alcohol or **barbiturates**. People taking monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), such as Parnate (**tranylcypromine**) and Nardil (**phenelzine**), should not take maprotiline.

The possibility of **suicide** is a component of depression. A minimal number of doses should be dispensed at any one time to minimize the potential for use as a suicide agent. Because the drug may lower the threshold for a **manic episode** among people with bipolar disorders, it should be used only with caution and under close supervision.

### Side effects

The most commonly reported side effect of maprotiline is dry mouth. Slightly more than one person in five (22%) experiences this effect. Approximately 16% of users experience drowsiness, 8% report dizziness, and 6% report nervousness and constipation. Other less common reported side effects include anxiety, agitation, **insomnia**, blurred vision, tremor, weakness, **fatigue**, nausea, and headache with blurred vision. Other rare side effects are similar to those experienced by people who use tricyclic antidepressants. These include abnormally high or low blood pressure, tachycardia, and syncope. **Hallucinations**, disorientation,

## KEY TERMS

**Barbiturates**—A class of medications (including Seconal and Nembutal) that causes sedation and drowsiness. They may be prescribed legally, but may also be used as drugs of abuse.

**Bipolar syndrome**—An abnormal mental condition characterized by periods of intense elation, energy, and activity followed by periods of inactivity and depression.

**Guanethidine**—An antihypertensive drug used to treat high blood pressure.

**Hallucination**—A false sensory perception. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Manic**—Referring to mania, a state characterized by excessive activity, excitement, or emotion.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decrease the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Physostigmine**—A short-acting drug that enhances levels of a substance (acetylcholine) between neurons in the brain.

**Syncope**—A brief lapse of consciousness caused by a temporarily insufficient flow of blood to the brain.

**Tachycardia**—A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

and mania have been reported, as have vomiting, diarrhea, and gastric distress.

### Interactions

Cimetidine and **fluoxetine** reduce the elimination of maprotiline, thus increasing its plasma concentration. Barbiturates and phenytoin increase the elimination of maprotiline, thus decreasing its plasma concentration. Cardiovascular toxicity has been reported when maprotiline is used simultaneously with thyroid-replacement medications such as levothyroxine, and maprotiline blocks the pharmacological effect of guanethidine.

An increased risk of seizures has been reported with the simultaneous use of physostigmine and map-

rotiline. A similar effect is observed when maprotiline is taken simultaneously with phenothiazine compounds.

*See also* Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Bipolar disorder; Depression and depressive disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.

Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O’Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

Arenas, M. Carmen, and others. “Are the Effects of the Antidepressants Amitriptyline, Maprotiline, and Fluoxetine on Inhibitory Avoidance State-Dependent?” *Behavioural Brain Research* 166.1 (Jan. 2006): 150–58.

Mayers, Andrew G., and David S. Baldwin. “Antidepressants and Their Effect on Sleep.” *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 20.8 (Dec. 2005): 533–59.

Rambelomanana, S., and others. “Antidepressants: General Practitioners’ Opinions and Clinical Practice.” *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 113.6 (June 2006): 460–67.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, P.O. Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.

American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.

American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.

American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Web site: <<http://www.aspnet.org/>>.

L.Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Marijuana see **Cannabis and related disorders**

## Marital and family therapists

### Definition

A marriage and family therapist is a person who has received advanced, specialized training and has practiced therapy for an extended period, typically a minimum of 3,000 hours, under the close supervision of a competent, licensed professional. A marital and family counselor must be licensed by passing both written and oral examinations as well as completing continuing education requirements. Licenses to practice are issued by individual states.

### Description

A marital and family counselor concentrates on these two aspects of human behavior. While individuals may seek and receive individual counseling, complete families or marital pairs are more commonly seen together during counseling sessions.

Different theoretical models exist for marital and **family therapy**. However, these share a common thread of concentrating on interactions between and among members of a dysfunctional unit.

The goal of marital and family therapists is to improve relationships between marital partners or family members, or to help with the dissolution of a difficult relationship with minimum harm to all. Various techniques are employed. These include active listening, role-playing, **behavior modification**, and changing expectations concerning the behaviors of others. Persons receiving therapy are helped to understand the motivations and actions of others. They are taught techniques to modify their own behaviors, or how to more readily accept the behaviors of others.

Success in marital and family counseling requires patience, time, and a commitment to succeed. As dysfunctional behaviors are acquired over long periods of time, long periods are required to first unlearn troublesome habits and then replace them with more appropriate patterns of behavior. Patience and understanding facilitate this process. A commitment to succeed is mandatory for success. Therapists must be able to identify persons who enter therapy without a commitment to succeed.

Individual states regulate the activities in which marriage and family therapists may legally engage. This is done to protect consumers from incompetence and negligence of service providers who may potentially exploit them. Most state regulations closely delineate the minimum training and education requirements for marital and family therapists. Thus,

the possession of a license to practice marital and family therapy certifies minimum competency and ensures that consumers receive safe and fair treatment. As of 2002, there were 42 states that license practitioners of marital and family therapy.

Marital and family therapists receive training in the following three areas to qualify for a license to practice the profession.

- Academic program. A person must earn a master's degree with an emphasis in marital and family therapy from an accredited academic institution. Most programs of study are 48 semester credit hours in length. The curriculum must include theoretical as well as practical training. Specific areas of competency such as human sexuality, assessing victims of child abuse and substance abuse must be embedded in the curriculum. Students must receive 30 hours of directly supervised counseling and an additional 150 hours of directed counseling practice.
- Supervised clinical experience. Prior to becoming eligible to sit for a licensure exam, candidates must complete a total of approximately 3,000 hours of supervised counseling experiences. The 3,000 hours may include activities related to personal psychotherapy, supervision, direct counseling experience, professional enrichment experiences, and maintaining records. Some (approximately one-quarter) of these hours may be included in the graduate degree training curriculum. All of the clinical experiences are closely supervised.
- Licensure examination. The examination has written and oral components. A license to practice is granted with the successful passage of both parts of the exam. A minimum of 36 hours of continuing education training must be completed every two years as a requirement for re-licensure.

*See also* Psychotherapy; Behavior modification; Play therapy.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Bobes, Toby, and Barbara Rothman. *Doing Couple Therapy: Integrating Theory with Practice*. New York: W. W. Norton, 2002.  
Carlson, Jon and Diane Kjos. *Theories and Strategies of Family Therapy*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2001.  
Walsh, William M., and James A. McGraw. *Essentials of Family Therapy: A Structured Summary of Nine Approaches*. 2nd ed. Denver: Love Publishing Co., 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

- Helmeke, K. B., and A. M. Prouty. "Do We Really Understand? An Experiential Exercise for Training Family

- Therapists." *Journal of Marital and Family Therapy* 27, no. 4 (2001): 535–544.
- Lebow, J. "What Does the Research Tell Us about Couple and Family Therapies?" *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 56, no. 8 (2000): 1083–1094.
- Protinsky, H., and L. Coward. "Developmental Lessons of Seasoned Marital and Family Therapists: A Qualitative Investigation." *Journal of Marital and Family Therapy* 27, no. 3 (2001): 375–384.

#### OTHER

- American Association for Marriage and Family Therapy. 1133 15th Street, NW Suite 300, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (202) 452-0109. Fax: (202) 223-2329. Web site: <[http://www.aamft.org/index\\_nm.asp](http://www.aamft.org/index_nm.asp)>.
- American Family Therapy Academy. 2020 Pennsylvania Avenue, NW, #273, Washington, DC 20006. Telephone: (202) 333-3690. Fax: (202) 333-3692. Web site: <[www.afta.org](http://www.afta.org)>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NW, Washington, DC, 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721 or (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org>>.
- National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2971. Telephone: (800) 969-6942 or (703) 684-7722. Fax: (703) 684-5968. Web site: <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

Marital therapy see **Couples therapy**

Masochism see **Sexual masochism**

Massage see **Bodywork therapies**

## Mathematics disorder

### Definition

Mathematics disorder, formerly called developmental arithmetic disorder, developmental acalculia, or dyscalculia, is a learning disorder in which a person's mathematical ability is substantially below the level normally expected based on his or her individual's age, intelligence, life experiences, educational background, and physical impairments. This disability affects the ability to do calculations as well as the ability to understand word problems and mathematical concepts.

### Description

Mathematics disorder was first described as a developmental disorder in 1937. Since then, it has come to encompass a number of distinct types of mathematical deficiencies. These include:

- difficulty reading and writing numbers
- difficulty aligning numbers in order to do calculations
- inability to perform calculations
- inability to comprehend word problems

The range and number of mathematical difficulties that have been documented suggests that there are several different causes for mathematics disorder. In addition, several known physical conditions cause mathematics disorder. Turner syndrome and fragile X syndrome, both genetic disorders that affect girls, are associated with difficulty in mathematics. Injury to certain parts of the **brain** can also cause inability to perform calculations. These conditions appear to be independent of other causes of mathematics disorder. Mathematics disorder is often associated with other **learning disorders** involving reading and language, although it may also exist independently in children whose reading and language skills are average or above average.

### Causes and symptoms

The causes of mathematics disorder are not understood. Different manifestations of the disorder may have different causes. Symptoms of the disorder, however, can be grouped into four categories: language symptoms; recognition or perceptual symptoms; mathematical symptoms; and attention symptoms.

People with language symptoms have trouble naming mathematical terms; understanding word problems; or understanding such mathematical concepts as "greater than" or "less than." People with recognition symptoms have difficulty reading numbers and such operational signs as the plus or minus signs, or aligning numbers properly in order to perform accurate calculations. Mathematical symptoms include deficiencies in the ability to count; to memorize such basic arithmetical data as the multiplication tables; or to follow a sequence of steps in problem solving. Attention symptoms are related to failures in copying numbers and ignoring operational signs. Sometimes these failures are the result of a person's carelessness. At other times, however, they appear to result from a lack of understanding of the factors or operations involved in solving the problem.

In practical terms, parents and teachers may see the following signs of mathematics disorder in a child's schoolwork:

- problems counting
- difficulty memorizing multiplication tables
- inability to grasp the difference between such operations as addition and subtraction
- poor computational skills; many errors in simple arithmetic
- slowness in performing calculations
- difficulty arranging numbers in order (from smallest to largest, for example)
- inability to grasp information on graphs
- difficulty copying numbers or problems
- inability to grasp the concept of place value
- inability align two or three digit numbers to do calculations
- difficulty understanding word problems
- inability to understand mathematical symbols

These symptoms must be evaluated in light of the person's age, intelligence, educational experience, exposure to mathematics learning activities, and general cultural and life experience. The person's mathematical ability must fall substantially below the level of others with similar characteristics. In most cases several of these symptoms are present simultaneously.

## Demographics

The number of children with mathematics disorder is not entirely clear. The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders-IV (DSM-IV)*, which is the basic manual consulted by mental health professionals in assessing the presence of mental disorders, indicates that about 1% of school age children have mathematics disorder. Other studies, however, have found higher rates of arithmetical dysfunction in children. Likewise some studies find no gender difference in the prevalence of mathematics disorder, while others find that girls are more likely to be affected. Mathematics disorder, like other learning disabilities, however, does appear to run in families, suggesting the existence of a genetic component to the disorder.

## Diagnosis

Mathematics disorder is not usually diagnosed before a child is in the second or third grade because of the variability with which children acquire mathematical fluency. Many bright children manage to get through to fourth- or fifth-grade level in mathematics by using memorization and calculation tricks (such as counting on fingers or performing repeated addition as a substitute for multiplication) before their disability becomes apparent. Requests for testing usually

originate with a teacher or parent who has observed several symptoms of the disorder.

To receive a **diagnosis** of mathematics disorder according to the criteria established by the American Psychiatric Association, a child must show substantially lower than expected ability in mathematics based on his or her age, intelligence, and background. In addition, the child's deficiencies must cause significant interference with academic progress or daily living skills.

In addition to an interview with a child **psychiatrist** or other mental health professional, the child's mathematical ability may be evaluated with such individually administered diagnostic tests as the Enright Diagnostic Test of Mathematics, or with curriculum-based assessments. If the results of testing suggest mathematics disorder, such other causes of difficulty as poor vision or hearing, **mental retardation**, or lack of fluency in the language of instruction, are ruled out. The child's educational history and exposure to opportunities for learning mathematics are also taken into account. On the basis of this information, a qualified examiner can make the diagnosis of mathematics disorder.

## Treatments

Children who receive a diagnosis of mathematics disorder are eligible for an individual education plan (IEP) that details specific accommodations to learning. Because of the wide variety of problems found under the diagnosis of mathematics disorder, plans vary considerably. Generally, instruction emphasizes basic mathematical concepts, while teaching children problem solving skills and ways to eliminate distractions and extraneous information. Concrete, hands-on instruction is more successful than abstract or theoretical instruction. IEPs also address other language or reading disabilities that affect a child's ability to learn mathematics.

## Prognosis

Progress in overcoming mathematics disorder depends on the specific type of difficulties that the child has with mathematics; the learning resources available; and the child's determination to work on overcoming the disorder. Some children work through their disability, while others continue to have trouble with mathematics throughout life. Children who continue to suffer from mathematics disorder may develop low self-esteem and social problems related to their lack of academic achievement. Later in life they may be more likely to drop out of school and find

## KEY TERMS

**Individual education plan (IEP)**—A plan of instruction drawn up for an individual student who is having specific difficulties with mathematics, reading, or other skills necessary to progress beyond elementary school.

themselves shut out of jobs or occupations that require the ability to perform basic mathematical calculations.

### Prevention

There is no known way to prevent mathematics disorder.

*See also* Reading disorder; Disorder of written expression.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Jordan, Nancy, and Laurie B. Hanich. "Mathematical Thinking in Second-Grade Children with Different forms of LD." *Journal of Learning Disabilities* 33 (November 2000): 567-585.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Learning Disabilities Association of America. 4156 Library Road Pittsburgh, PA 15234-1349. (412) 341-1515. <[www.ldanatl.org](http://www.ldanatl.org)>.
- National Center for Learning Disabilities. 381 Park Avenue South, Suite 1401, New York, NY 10016. (888) 575-7373 (toll-free) or (212) 545-7510. <[www.ncld.org](http://www.ncld.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Matrix model

### Definition

The Matrix model of **substance abuse** treatment is a multifaceted treatment program designed to help substance abusers stop drug and alcohol use and maintain their sobriety through education and monitoring.

### Purpose

The Matrix model, while originally designed as a therapeutic approach to treating **abuse** of such stimulants as **cocaine** and methamphetamines, has subsequently been applied to the treatment of opiate and alcohol abuse.

The Matrix model treatment system was created in the 1980s when cocaine abuse became rampant among members of the middle and upper-middle classes. The Matrix Institute on Addictions is a non-profit organization based in California. Founded in 1984 to develop the program that became the Matrix model of substance abuse treatment, the Institute itself has several southern California locations. Other private treatment programs are also using the Matrix model, which has the distinct advantage over some treatment programs of having complete and established written treatment protocols as well as a growing body of research supporting its efficacy.

Prior to the early 1980s, cocaine and **methamphetamine** (MA) treatment programs generally followed one of two courses: community-based outpatient drug treatment programs for low-income users; or high-cost, private inpatient institutional treatment programs for those who could afford them. When middle-income drug abuse became epidemic, there was a need for an effective outpatient program that could address the needs of thousands of drug abusers who were neither wealthy nor living on the street.

The 28-day hospital-based treatment programs typically formulated for private health-care treatment of alcoholism were not seen as useful for cocaine users, who rarely needed inpatient programs. Similarly, **psychotherapy** alone has not been universally effective in helping people stop cocaine use or in preventing **relapse**. The Matrix model was designed to treat drug abuse using multiple modalities in as cost-efficient a manner as possible. Its underlying concept was to serve as an outpatient based on a reputable, evaluable protocol. Beginning with cocaine abuse, the Matrix model was extended to cover methamphetamines and other stimulant abuse treatment. Development and subsequent research on the Matrix model has been funded by grants from the National Institute on Drug Abuse, the Center for Substance Abuse Treatment, the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, and the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

### Description

The developers of the Matrix model, rather than engaging in the defense of a single theory, used

strategies based on several practical approaches that had been shown to work in drug treatment. By using a matrix design rather than a single methodology, the program designers targeted the multiple factors affecting an individual's chances for recovery. Social influences, education for patient and family members, cognitive-behavioral techniques, **support groups**, individual sessions, and urine and breath testing were all included in the treatment model. The goal of this model was to help stimulant abusers 1) stop their drug use, 2) stay in treatment, 3) learn about issues critical to **addiction** and relapse, 4) receive direction and support from a trained therapist, 5) educate family members affected by the patient's addiction, 6) introduce self-help programs to the addicted persons for continued support and 7) continue monitoring with urine testing. The program lasts 16 weeks, and the program administrators conducted several studies to measure the efficacy of the Matrix model for different users, under different conditions and compared to other treatment methods.

The Matrix model recognizes several factors needed for an effective and lasting treatment. The therapeutic relationship, although not as intensive as traditional psychological therapy (only three 45-minute sessions are scheduled over 16 weeks) is used for engaging the patient in a way that will encourage continued participation and engagement in the program. Although the original program consisted of a greater number of individual sessions, they were soon abandoned in favor of additional group sessions, making the program more cost-effective without reducing its efficacy.

Dissemination of information, by way of patient group meetings, helps individuals understand the physiological and psychological effects of drug use. Family-systems theory has shown that, even in cases where change is in the best interest of the family and the patient, family members consciously and unconsciously resist the efforts of any one member who attempts to change. Education of family members in a group setting helps to educate everyone involved, reducing the risk of family dynamics sabotaging the recovery of the patient.

Planning is considered a vital part of **relapse prevention**: patients are taught to schedule their days to stay busy as well as to think about the ways their daily schedule might contribute to sobriety or relapse. Used as a part of the outpatient treatment program, planning promotes positive activity and helps prevent relapse; it is also needed after a patient has completed the program and needs to rebuild a life in which daily activities are not based on drug-addictive behaviors.

Timing is recognized as an important factor in the process of recovery: education sessions are scheduled so as not to interfere with the early stages of treatment, when patients are detoxifying and cannot comprehend much information beyond their own discomfort and shame. As their recovery continues, the program provides more complex information in a set of standardized lectures. Educating patients is part of a cognitive-behavioral approach that teaches them to notice, challenge, and change irrational or unhelpful thought processes, replacing old habits of thought with more productive and positive ones.

Co-occurring dependency is so common in addiction that no comprehensive treatment program should address a single addiction. The Matrix program recognizes that stimulant users often also use alcohol and marijuana. Program research shows significantly greater relapse rates for people who continue using other drugs. Patients are expected to quit all drugs and alcohol. As part of the Matrix model, breath testing and urinalysis address the possibility that some patients may continue drug or alcohol use, and reveal that this contingency needs to be addressed. Urinalysis and breath testing were made part of the Matrix treatment primarily as a way to validate patients in their recovery as well as providing an early warning of difficulty. Testing works with scheduling and other program components to let patients take responsibility for their recovery. There is room in the approach for response to relapse during treatment, and physiological tests will reveal temporary defeat, whereas patients sometimes cannot.

Although one could argue that the Matrix model is focused primarily on relapse prevention, particular coping skills and behaviors are taught to patients to help them identify situations that may test their sobriety. Called "relapse prevention," these established techniques are part of the program and provide social support. In leading relapse-prevention groups, staff members may also be alerted to patients whose behavior in the group may signal a potential relapse.

## Aftercare

A vital component of the Matrix model is the recognition that 12-step programs are widely useful for people in aftercare. Substance abuse treatment is notably more effective when patients have resources for maintaining a drug-free lifestyle after leaving treatment. 12-step meetings are held at the Matrix treatment centers, attended by patients who are advancing in their treatment. The Matrix developers realized that some patients would opt out of 12-step meetings because of their format and emphasis on embracing a higher power and spiritual

## KEY TERMS

**Matrix**—In statistics, variables that may influence a particular outcome are placed into a grid, either in columns or in rows. Statistical calculations can be performed that assign different weights to each variable, and the differential weighting of variables can be seen to affect the outcome. In the Matrix model of drug abuse, the variables that affect a positive outcome (such as behavioral techniques, family education or urinalysis testing) are all considered as important parts of a unified treatment plan.

**Drug abuse**—When an individual's repeated use of controlled substances, prescription or over-the-counter drugs, or alcohol causes damage to their health, thought processes, relationships, or functioning at work or school, they can be said to be practicing drug abuse. Using a substance for purposes other than which it is intended (such as inhaling gasoline fumes recreationally) can also be considered drug abuse.

authority: the Matrix program addresses potential resistance by helping patients find ways to reconcile their personal beliefs with the structure of Alcoholics Anonymous, Narcotics Anonymous, or other self-help programs. This serves several purposes. Patients who might otherwise avoid such meetings after leaving the program may choose instead to attend, increasing their chances of maintaining a drug-free lifestyle; patients learn the format and 12-step "rules" while still in a more fully supportive milieu; and patients have a structured system to enter after leaving the program.

### Normal results

The overall expectation of this therapeutic **intervention** is that patients will leave the program drug free and with enough internal and external resources to maintain a life free of drugs and alcohol. Research comparing the Matrix model to other treatment approaches has found that patients who complete the Matrix treatment programs have statistically higher abstinence rates and lower positive results on drug tests than patients who participate in traditional 28-day in-hospital programs.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Sorensen, James L., Richard A. Rawson, and Joseph R. Guydish, eds. *Drug Abuse Treatment Through Collaboration: Practice and Research Partnerships That Work*.

Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2003.

#### PERIODICALS

- Obert, Jeanne L., and others. "The Matrix Model of Outpatient Stimulant Abuse Treatment." *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs* 32.2 (April–June 2000): 157–64.  
"Program Helps Patients Reduce, Discontinue Methamphetamine Use." *The Brown University Digest of Addiction Theory and Application* 21.4 (April 2002): 1–3.

#### WEB SITES

- Matrix Institute on Addictions. <<http://www.matrixinstitute.org>>  
National Institute on Drug Abuse. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>

Lorena S. Covington, MA

## Medication-induced movement disorders

### Definition

Medication-induced movement disorder occurs due to treatment with antipsychotic medications. Most medication-induced **movement disorders** are caused by medications that block the action of **dopamine**, a neurotransmitter that allows communication between two neurons to take place and that is necessary for coordination of movements of different parts of the body. When the receptor where dopamine is supposed to bind is blocked, certain movement-related side effects occur. All of the medications that block dopamine receptors are called neuroleptics.

Neuroleptics include both conventional or typical antipsychotic agents, such as **chlorpromazine** (Thorazine), **haloperidol** (Haldol), and **fluphenazine** (Prolixin), as well as the newer, or atypical, antipsychotic agents such as **clozapine** (Clozaril), **risperidone** (Risperdal), **olanzapine** (Zyprexa), and **quetiapine** (Seroquel). In general, the newer, atypical antipsychotics appear to have a lower likelihood to cause movement disorders than the older, typical medications. Other neuroleptics include certain drugs used in the treatment of physical symptoms such as nausea, and include prochlorperazine, promethazine, and metoclopramide, as well as **amoxapine** (Asendin), which is marketed as an antidepressant.

There are other medications, however, that do not block dopamine action but still cause movement disorders. They are not referred to as neuroleptics, and they include **lithium carbonate**, **valproic acid** and a



A lithium carbonate capsule. (Phill Degginner/Alamy)

class of drugs called **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**. The disorder caused by these medications is called medication-induced postural tremor.

All of the disorders caused by neuroleptics, which include antipsychotics and other medications that block dopamine, as well as disorders caused by non-neuroleptic medications, are collectively referred to as medication-induced movement disorders.

## Description

### *Neuroleptics*

Medication-induced movement disorders caused by neuroleptics are divided into three time periods. The early-onset type, which usually occurs within the first seven days of treatment with neuroleptics, is known as neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia. Neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia is characterized by abnormal contractions of various muscle groups resulting in spasm and/or twisting of the head, neck, jaw, lips, tongue, and eye muscles as well as abnormal movements and postures of the limbs and the trunk.

The intermediate-onset types of movement disorders associated with the use of neuroleptics usually develop within the first three months of treatment. They are known as neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism and neuroleptic-induced akathisia. Neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism is associated with difficulty initiating movements. Once movements are initiated, they are very slow. Other characteristics of neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism are tremor and rigidity in muscles. Neuroleptic-induced akathisia is associated with uncontrollable restlessness that may involve compulsive foot tapping, pacing, and a sense of inner tension.

The late-onset type of neuroleptic-related movement disorder is known as neuroleptic-induced **tardive**

**dyskinesia** and the onset is usually seen many months to years after starting the neuroleptic treatment. Neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia involves grotesque, repetitive, and involuntary movements. They are usually seen in the mouth and face.

A movement disorder that can occur at any time during the course of neuroleptic treatment is known as neuroleptic malignant syndrome. It is a serious condition and is characterized by changes in consciousness, ranging from agitation to coma. The patient may experience high fever, and increases in blood pressure and heart rate, as well as severe muscular rigidity.

## Non-neuroleptics

All of the movement disorders mentioned above are related to the use of neuroleptic medications. However, other drugs, such as lithium, valproic acid, isoproterenol, amphetamine, theophylline, as well as a class of drugs known as tricyclic **antidepressants**, may also cause a movement disorder that is mainly characterized by postural tremor, a rhythmic alteration in movement. Lithium-induced tremor may take the form of twitching in the arms and legs.

## Causes and symptoms

### *Causes*

Neuroleptic-induced movement disorders are caused because the actions of dopamine are blocked. Dopamine is a neurotransmitter necessary for coordination of movements of different parts of the body.

Other medications, which are not classified as neuroleptics, block the action of other **neurotransmitters** as well as dopamine. However, because they essentially block the action of dopamine, they cause similar unwanted effects associated with movements.

### *Symptoms*

Neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia is associated with primarily abnormal postures and muscular spasms. They are usually characterized by abnormal positioning of the head and neck in relation to the body, spasms of the jaw muscles, impaired swallowing, speaking or breathing, thickened or slurred speech due to a slow movement of the tongue, tongue protraction or tongue dysfunction, eyes deviated up, down, or sideways, and abnormal positioning of the limbs or trunk. Patients experience pain and cramps in the affected muscles. In addition, many patients experiencing dystonia due to the neuroleptic treatment also experience fear and **anxiety**. This is especially present in patients who are not aware of the possibility of

developing dystonia and who mistakenly associate these side effects as part of their mental illness.

Neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism includes rigidity, tremor, and bradykinesia (slow movements). The tremor is a rhythmic, three- to six-cycle-per-second motion that is present at rest. The tremor can affect the limbs, head, mouth, or lips. Rigidity signifies the degree of tension present in the muscle. It can be either continuous or intermittent in the affected limbs or joints. Bradykinesia includes decreased arm movements related to walking, as well as difficulty initiating movement. Drooling may occur due to a decrease in pharyngeal motor activity. People experiencing neuroleptic-induced akathisia usually feel anxious, agitated, and unable to relax. They also may pace, rock while sitting and standing, and often rapidly alternate between sitting and standing.

Neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia manifests itself in involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, trunk, or extremities. It occurs most commonly in patients who have taken older antipsychotic medications for many years, although the condition may appear earlier than that (after one year of treatment with neuroleptics, or even earlier than that, especially in elderly people). The movements can be rapid and jerky, slow and continual, or rhythmic in nature. Over three-fourths of the individuals with neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia have abnormal movements of the face and the mouth. This may include licking, sucking or smacking of the lips, chewing movements, jaw deviations, grimacing, grunting and other peculiar sounds, or brow furrowing. About one-half of patients with tardive dyskinesia have abnormal limb movements, while about one-quarter have disposition of the trunk.

The basic features of neuroleptic malignant syndrome is the development of high fever and severe muscle rigidity. These can be accompanied by tremor, changes in level of consciousness ranging from confusion to coma, increased heart rate and blood pressure. The fever can be mildly elevated (99–100°F) or severe (106°F). Neuroleptic malignant syndrome can be fatal in some cases, while it is relatively benign in others. There are no known predictors of neuroleptic malignant syndrome. However, it usually develops four weeks after starting neuroleptics, and about two-thirds of cases develop within the first week of treatment. A very small number of patients develop neuroleptic malignant syndrome many months after taking the neuroleptic.

Medication-induced postural tremor is characterized by a regular, rhythmic oscillation of hands and

fingers, head, mouth, or tongue. The frequency of the tremor ranges from eight to 12 cycles per second. These are most easily observed when the affected part is in a sustained position (for example if hands are outstretched or the mouth is held open).

## Demographics

Neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia occurs most commonly in young males. It is far less likely to occur with the newer medications known as atypical neuroleptic medications, such as clozapine, risperidone, olanzapine, and quetiapine. The possibility of neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia occurring with these atypical medications is less than 5%. The possibility of this side effect occurring with the conventional or typical neuroleptics is about 15–20%. The incidence is inversely correlated with age, meaning that younger persons are more likely to experience dystonia.

Neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism is directly correlated with age. This means that older patients are more likely to experience this effect. It occurs in about 30% of patients. Neuroleptic-induced acute akathisia is not related to age and occurs in about 20% of patients being treated with neuroleptics.

The incidence of neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia is related to total lifetime of treatment with antipsychotics. The cumulative incidence is about 5% per year of therapy. This essentially means that there is a 50% chance of developing tardive dyskinesia with 10 years of treatment with neuroleptics.

The incidence of neuroleptic malignant syndrome is about 0.5%. This condition is fatal in about 20 to 30% of cases.

Most available information on medication-induced postural tremor is about lithium-induced tremor. The prevalence of this condition is about 40%.

## Diagnosis

People taking antipsychotic medications and other medications that block dopamine action must be regularly evaluated by a physician to monitor for medication-induced movement disorders. In order for these conditions to be officially diagnosed, certain criteria must be met.

Neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia must have one or more of the following developed in association with the use of neuroleptic: abnormal positioning of the head and neck in relation to the body, spasms of the jaw muscles, impaired swallowing, thickened or slurred speech, tongue protrusion or dysfunction, eyes deviated up, down, or sideways, or abnormal

positioning of limbs or trunk. These symptoms need to have developed within seven days of starting the neuroleptic medication. Moreover, the symptoms cannot be associated with an underlying mental disorder, and they can't be due to a medication other than a neuroleptic. Dystonia due to neuroleptics needs to be distinguished from dystonia due to neuroleptic malignant syndrome.

Neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism needs to have the triad of symptoms described above which include tremor, rigidity, and bradykinesia (slow movements). These symptoms cannot be related to a non-neuroleptic medication, or a psychiatric condition, such as Parkinson's disease, Wilson's disease, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, or substance withdrawal. Neuroleptic-induced akathisia is due to the use of a neuroleptic and not to anxiety, substance withdrawal or psychotic agitation. At least one of the symptoms of fidgety movements or swinging the legs, rocking from foot to foot while standing, pacing to relieve restlessness, or inability to sit and stand needs to be present. These symptoms must have developed within four weeks of initiating the therapy with neuroleptics.

Neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia needs to include involuntary movements over a period of at least four weeks that manifest themselves as rapid and jerky, slow and continual, or rhythmic movements. The exposure to neuroleptics needs to be for at least three months, and the symptoms cannot be due to a neurologic condition, such as Huntington's disease, Wilson's disease, Sydenham's (rheumatic) chorea, systemic lupus, or hyperthyroidism.

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome must include severe muscle rigidity and elevated temperature as well as at least two of the following symptoms: sweating, difficulty swallowing, tremor, incontinence, changes in level of consciousness, mutism, increased heart rate, elevated blood pressure, or laboratory evidence of muscle injury. These symptoms cannot be due to another substance or a medical condition, such as viral encephalitis, or mood disorder with catatonic features.

The criteria for diagnosing medication-induced postural tremor includes a development of tremor associated with the use of a medication other than a neuroleptic. The tremor cannot be due to a non-medication condition that was present prior to starting the medication and cannot continue to be present following discontinuation of the medication. These criteria are helpful in distinguishing the tremor due to medication use from the tremor due to anxiety, alcohol withdrawal, **stress**, or **fatigue**. The tremor must have a frequency between eight and 12 cycles per second,

and the tremor must not be caused by neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism.

## Treatments

In an attempt to prevent acute dystonia from developing, physicians may prescribe a preventative medication along with the antipsychotic (see "Prevention," below). Once neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia has appeared, however, there are several treatment options. A medication called **benztropine** in doses ranging from 1 mg to 8 mg is effective in reducing symptoms associated with dystonia. Most patients take 2 mg twice daily for seven days for prevention of dystonia at the time they are starting neuroleptic treatment. When benztropine therapy is initiated, the dose is slowly increased. Moreover, when discontinuing the treatment with benztropine, the dose should be slowly decreased to prevent the nausea and vomiting associated with abrupt withdrawal. Another medication that may be useful in treating neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia is called **trihexyphenidyl**. The doses can vary from 10 mg to 45 mg daily. Younger patients may respond better to the treatment with trihexyphenidyl because they can tolerate higher doses. The third pharmacological option is **diphenhydramine** (Benadryl). This medication can be taken for the period dystonic symptoms last. Another option may include switching the patient to one of the newer antipsychotics, such as clozapine, risperidone, or olanzapine, since each of these has a low incidence of causing dystonia.

There are a couple of ways to treat intermediate-onset movement disorders due to neuroleptics. **Amanitadine** is a medication that is approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of Parkinsonian symptoms. Another helpful medication called **propranolol** comes from a class of drugs called **beta blockers**. Propranolol has been reported effective in the treatment of akathisia. The doses that are effective range from 20 mg to 100 mg daily. The response to propranolol is usually seen within the 24 hours of administration. Switching the patient to a newer or atypical antipsychotic, such as clozapine, or decreasing the dose of the current antipsychotic sometimes helps the condition.

There are no effective treatments for tardive dyskinesia once it develops. Tardive dyskinesia is associated and strongly correlated with the cumulative dose of the antipsychotic during years of treatment. Hence, the key to tardive dyskinesia is prevention. If possible, a newer medication, such as clozapine or risperidone, which have only a few case reports of tardive dyskinesia, should be used whenever possible.

## KEY TERMS

**Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

**Hyperthyroidism**—Condition resulting from the thyroid glands secreting excessive thyroid hormone, causing increased basal metabolic rate, and causing an increased need for food to meet the demand of the metabolic activity; generally, however, weight loss results.

**Neuroleptic**—Another name for antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**Neuroleptic malignant syndrome**—An unusual but potentially serious complication that develops in some patients who have been treated with antipsychotic medications. NMS is characterized by changes in blood pressure, altered states of consciousness, rigid muscles, and fever. Untreated NMS can result in coma and death.

**Neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia**—A severe form of the neurological movement disorder caused by the use of neuroleptic drugs.

**Neuroleptic-induced akathisia**—Refers to the disorder characterized by a physical restlessness (the inability to sit still, for example), and manifested by excessive voluntary movements, as a result of the use of neuroleptic drugs; research indicates it is likely the

most common of neuroleptic-induced movement disorders.

**Neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism**—Symptoms similar to Parkinson's disease that may appear in people taking neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications. These symptoms include tremors in muscles and a shuffling gait.

**Neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia**—A potentially irreversible neurological disorder caused by the use of antipsychotic/neuroleptic medications, with symptoms involving uncontrollable movement of various body parts.

**Postural tremor**—A continuous quiver that affects body posture and movement.

**SLE (Systemic Lupus Erythematosus)**—An autoimmune disease that leads to inflammation and damage to various body tissues and parts, including joints, skin, kidneys, heart, lungs, blood vessels, and brain.

**Sydenham's chorea**—A serious manifestation of acute rheumatic fever that commonly occurs in children ages seven through 14, peaking at age eight. This disease of the central nervous system is characterized by emotional instability, purposeless movements, and muscular weakness. At its peak in the 1950s it occurred in nearly 50% of the acute rheumatic fever cases, but by 2002 had subsided to a degree of less than 10% of the acute cases.

In many cases, if tardive dyskinesia is noticed early in a regular check-up with the physician, and if the medication causing the condition is stopped, the symptoms of tardive dyskinesia will subside. If the symptoms continue after the antipsychotic has been discontinued, the situation becomes difficult. Treatment will most likely involve movement disorder specialists and may or may not be successful. The medications reserpine and levodopa may be helpful for some patients.

The most common medications used to treat neuroleptic malignant syndrome are dantrolene, (a muscle relaxant that helps with the fever), bromocriptine, and amantadine.

In order to reduce medication-induced postural tremor, the lowest possible dose of the psychiatric drug should be used. Moreover, a medication from the beta blockers, such as propranolol, can be used to help with the symptoms.

## Prognosis

The prognoses for the early- and intermediate-onset of movement disorders are very good, especially with the option of switching the patient to a newer antipsychotic such as clozapine.

The prognosis for the late-onset disorder called tardive dyskinesia is very poor. Once the condition occurs, it is essentially irreversible and is very difficult to treat.

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome is a serious condition. It is deadly in about 20 to 30% of patients. Those who survive have a good chance of recovering.

Medication-induced postural tremor is very well-controlled with propranolol, and hence the prognosis is good while the patient is being treated with the medication causing the movement disorder.

## Prevention

To prevent acute dystonia, some physicians prescribe benzotropine, diphenhydramine, or other

medications that treat dystonia, at the outset of treatment with an older antipsychotic.

The most important component of neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia is prevention. If conventional antipsychotics are used, the drug use, drug dose, and the duration of use therefore should be minimized.

In order to avoid medication-induced postural tremor, patients should limit the amount of caffeine consumption. Also, in order to minimize the amount of daytime tremor they should take the psychiatric drug at bedtime.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Lexi-Comp, Inc. 2002.  
 Kaplan, Harold. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. Williams and Wilkins, 1995.  
 Gilman, Alfred G. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. McGraw-Hill, 1996.

### PERIODICALS

- Littrell, Kimberly. "Marked Reduction of Tardive Dyskinesia With Olanzapine." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 55 (1998): 398–403.  
 Heaton, Robert. "Stability and Course of Neuropsychological Deficits in Schizophrenia." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 58 (2001): 24–32.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.  
 American Thyroid Association. 6066 Leesburg Pike, Suite 650, Falls Church, VA 22041. <<http://www.thyroid.org>>.  
 Canadian Movement Disorder Group, affiliate of Canadian Congress of Neurological Sciences. 709 7015 Macleod Trail SW, Calgary, AB T2H 2K6 Canada. <<http://www.cmdg.org>>.  
 We Move, worldwide education and awareness of movement disorders. 204 West 84th St., New York, NY 10024. <<http://www.wemove.org>>.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.

## Meditation

### Definition

Meditation or contemplation involves focusing the mind upon a sound, phrase, prayer, object, visualized image, the breath, ritualized movements, or con-

sciousness in order to increase awareness of the present moment, promote relaxation, reduce stress, and enhance personal or spiritual growth.

### Purpose

Meditation can benefit people who are ill or overwhelmed by stress. It also promotes well-being in healthy people. In general, people who meditate regularly experience less anxiety and depression. They also report more enjoyment and appreciation of life, as well as better social relationships. Meditation produces a state of deep relaxation and a sense of balance, or equanimity. According to Michael J. Baime in *Essentials of Complementary and Alternative Medicine*, meditation allows one to fully experience intense emotions without losing composure. The consequence of emotional balance is greater insight regarding one's thoughts, feelings, and actions. Insight, in turn, promotes confidence and awareness. Meditation also facilitates a greater sense of calmness, empathy, and acceptance of self and others.

Meditation is sometimes suggested as a complement to medical treatments of disease; in particular, it is an important complementary therapy for both the treatment and prevention of many stress-related conditions. Regular meditation may reduce the number of symptoms experienced by patients with a wide range of illnesses and disorders. Based upon clinical evidence, as well as theory, meditation is seen as an appropriate therapy for panic disorder, generalized anxiety disorder, substance dependence and abuse, ulcers, colitis, chronic pain, psoriasis, and dysthymic disorder—a disorder that involves a steady, depressed mood for at least two years. Moreover, meditation is a valuable adjunct therapy for moderate hypertension (high blood pressure), prevention of cardiac arrest (heart attack), prevention of atherosclerosis (hardening of the arteries), arthritis (including fibromyalgia), cancer, insomnia, migraine, and stroke. It is a complementary therapy for moderating allergies and asthma because it reduces stress, which is prevalent in these conditions. Additionally, meditation may improve function or reduce symptoms of patients with neurologic disorders such as Parkinson's disease, multiple sclerosis, and epilepsy.

In 1995, the authors of a report to the National Institutes of Health on complementary or alternative medicine reviewed 30 years of research and reports of individuals and health care providers. They concluded that meditation and related methods for the enhancement of relaxation are cost-effective ways to improve health and quality of life (QOL).



**The single whip postion in Tai Chi.** (Electronic Illustrators Group)

### Precautions

Meditation appears to be safe for most people. There are, however, case reports and studies noting some adverse effects. For example, 33% to 50% of people who participated in long, silent meditation retreats (two weeks to three months) reported increased tension, anxiety, confusion, and depression. On the other hand, they also reported that meditation was associated with very positive effects. It has been noted, however, that these studies failed to differentiate between serious psychiatric disturbances and normal mood swings. Nevertheless, the evidence suggests that meditation may not be appropriate for people with psychotic disorders, major depression, or severe **personality disorders**. Some researchers point out that the relaxed, trance-like state that characterizes deep meditation is similar to a hypnotic trance. Hence, meditation, as well as hypnosis, may be contraindicated for people who have difficulty giving up control, such as people who are obsessive and compulsive.

### Description

#### Background

Meditation has been practiced for millennia. Historically, meditation or contemplation was intended to develop spiritual understanding, awareness, or gratitude. It also was meant to help the person commune with God, or ultimate reality. The many different

religious traditions in the world have given rise to a rich variety of meditative practices. These include the contemplative prayers and chants of Christian religious orders, the Buddhist practice of sitting meditation, and the whirling movements of the Sufi dervishes. Although meditation is an important spiritual practice in many traditions, it can be practiced by anyone to relieve stress and pain regardless of religious or cultural background.

In recent decades, a holistic approach to medicine has become increasingly popular. This approach developed in response to the ideas that health care providers treat whole persons, and that wellness and illness are better understood in terms of the body, mind, and soul. Some refer to this type of medicine as integrative, (that is, the Western biologic model of disease) and notions of appropriate treatment are modified by knowledge garnered from other cultures—especially those of China and India. When foreign ideas are tested in the U.S. both clinically and scientifically, if found to be valid they are integrated into Western medicine.

With the increasing acceptance of holistic medicine, there has been more interest in the use of alternative or complementary therapies, such as meditation, hypnosis, and progressive relaxation. As a result, training in meditation and meditation sessions are offered in medical clinics and hospitals. Meditation has been used as primary therapy for treating certain diseases and as complementary therapy in a comprehensive treatment plan. Moreover, it has been employed as a means of improving the QOL of people with debilitating, chronic, or terminal diseases.

When people are dying, they often cope with enduring pain, anxiety and fear, and end-of-life spiritual concerns. Meditation can be a way for the patient with terminal illness to self-manage pain and anxiety. This can partially reduce the amount of drugs required for effective pain control. People who are dying sometimes reject narcotics in an effort to preserve their consciousness and their communication with people who are important to them. Meditation is a means of preserving consciousness and life as the dying patient knows it. Also, meditation can be tailored to the religious or spiritual needs of the patient, and may be a means to spiritual solace.

In general, there are two main types of meditation: concentration, and mindful meditation. Concentration meditation involves focusing one's attention on the breath, an imagined or real image, ritualized movements (as in Tai chi, yoga, or qigong), or on a sound, word, or phrase that is repeated silently or aloud

(mantra). In the Christian tradition, chanting and saying the rosary are forms of meditation. (A rosary is a string of beads used to keep track of the prayers recited.) One purpose of concentration meditation is to fully experience the present moment with serenity. The benefit of being fully present is that worries and anxieties fade, and a feeling of peace ensues. It is the feeling of peace that has physiological benefits, and has been referred to as the relaxation response. When thoughts or emotions arise, the person gently directs his or her mind back to the original focus of concentration.

In comparison, mindfulness meditation involves becoming aware of the entire field of attention. There is an awareness of all thoughts, feelings, perceptions or sensations as they arise from moment to moment. Mindfulness meditation is enhanced by the person's ability to quiet the mind and to accept all that is perceived with composure. Many approaches to meditation are a blend of concentration and mindfulness.

Meditation may involve a quiet, relatively motionless seated posture or it may involve ritualized movement. Sitting meditation is generally done in an upright position, either in a chair or cross-legged on a cushion or mat on the floor. The spine is straight, yet relaxed. The eyes may be closed or open and gazing softly into the distance or at an object. Depending on the tradition, the person may be concentrating on the sensation of the movement of the breath; counting breaths; silently repeating a mantra; chanting a prayer; visualizing a peaceful and meaningful place; focusing awareness on the center of the body; or increasing awareness of all sensory experiences.

Movement meditation may be spontaneous and free form or it may involve highly structured, choreographed, repetitive patterns, as in the practice of Tai chi or qigong. (Tai chi and qigong are ancient Chinese forms of meditation with movement; both are believed to promote health by preserving or restoring the life force, or *qi*.) Movement meditation is particularly helpful for those people who find it difficult to remain still.

#### *Meditation in health care settings*

The use of meditation in health care settings often involves one of the following: transcendental meditation (TM); methods developed by Dr. Herbert Benson to elicit the relaxation response; or adaptations of the program of mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR) developed by Jon Kabat-Zinn.

Transcendental meditation (TM) has its origins in the Vedic tradition of India and was introduced to the

West by Maharishi Mahesh Yogi. TM has been taught to several million people and is one of the most widely practiced forms of meditation in the West. Much of what is known about the physiology of meditation is based on studies of TM. In transcendental meditation, the person sits with closed eyes and concentrates on a single syllable or word (mantra) for 20 minutes, twice a day. When thoughts or feelings arise, the attention is brought back to the mantra. According to Charles Alexander, a TM researcher, the experience of TM involves a calming of thoughts and ordinary wakefulness, which is transcended and replaced by fully aware consciousness.

Eliciting the relaxation response involves a similar form of mental focusing. Dr. Herbert Benson, one of the first Western doctors to conduct research on the effects of meditation, developed his approach after observing the profound health benefits of a state of bodily calm (the relaxation response). In order to elicit this response, he teaches patients to repeat a word, sound, prayer, phrase, or activity (including swimming, jogging, yoga, or even knitting) for 10 to 20 minutes, twice a day. Patients also are taught not to pay attention to distracting thoughts and to return their focus to the original repetition. What is repeated is up to the individual. For example, instead of Sanskrit terms, the person may choose something personally meaningful, such as a phrase from a Christian or Jewish prayer.

Mindfulness meditation stems from traditional Buddhist meditation practices. **Psychologist** Jon Kabat-Zinn has been instrumental in bringing this form of meditation into medical settings. In formal mindfulness practice, the person sits with eyes closed, focusing the attention on the sensations and movement of the breath for approximately 45 to 60 minutes, at least once a day. Informal mindfulness practice involves bringing awareness to every activity in daily life. Wandering thoughts or distracting feelings are simply noticed, without resistance or reaction. The essence of mindfulness meditation is not that on which the individual is focusing, but rather the quality of dispassionate awareness the person brings to each moment. According to Kabat-Zinn, the purpose of mindfulness meditation is to become aware of one's body and mind in the present moment. Discerning observation differentiates mindfulness from other types of meditation. The MBSR program consists of a series of classes involving meditation, movement, and group participation. There are more than 240 MBSR programs offered in health care settings around the world.

## KEY TERMS

**Anxiety**—A feeling of apprehension and fear characterized by physical symptoms (heart palpitations, sweating, and feelings of stress, for example).

**Anxiety and anxiety disorders**—Chronic conditions that can be characterized by an excessive and regular sense of apprehension, with physical symptoms such as sweating, palpitations, and feelings of stress. Anxiety disorders can be caused by biological and environmental events.

**Anxiety-reduction techniques**—Skills taught by a therapist to help an individual overcome anxiety, stress, and tension, and can include relaxation, visualization and imagery, diaphragmatic breathing, stress inoculation, and meditation.

**Biofeedback**—Biofeedback is a technique that uses monitoring instruments to measure and feed back information about muscle tension, heart rate, sweat responses, skin temperature, or brain activity.

**Bodywork**—Any technique involving hands-on massage or manipulation of the body.

**Dervish**—A person who belongs to one of the various mystical and ascetic Muslim orders, such as the Sufis. A whirling dervish meditates by whirling or spinning an ecstatic dance.

**Hypnotherapy**—The use of an induced trance state, or hypnosis, as a therapy.

**Mantra**—Originally, a sacred word or phrase repeated over and over to help focus the mind during meditation; in the Western world, this may refer to any repeated syllable, word, or phrase used to meditate.

**Pain disorder**—One of several somatoform disorders described in the revised, fourth edition of the mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. The term "somatoform" means that symptoms are physical but are not entirely understood as a consequence of a general medical condition or as a direct effect of a substance, such as a drug.

**Progressive relaxation**—A technique for managing stress in which the person relaxes major muscle groups in a fixed sequence, often beginning with the feet and moving towards the head.

**Transcendental meditation (TM)**—A meditation technique based on Hindu practices that involves the repetition of a mantra.

**Yoga**—A system of exercises for achieving bodily or mental control and well-being.

Meditation is not considered a medical procedure or **intervention** by most insurers; therefore, if there is a cost associated with training, patients pay for it themselves. Frequently, religious groups or meditation centers offer meditation instruction free of charge or for a nominal donation. Hospitals may offer MBSR classes to their patients for a reduced fee, and to the general public for a somewhat higher fee.

### Normal results

The scientific study of the physiological effects of meditation began in the early 1960s. These studies demonstrated that meditation affects metabolism, the endocrine system, the central nervous system, and the autonomic nervous system. In particular, there is a slowing of cardiac and respiratory rates, a decrease in blood pressure, and an increase in alpha **brain** waves. These effects are typical of reduced anxiety.

There is a growing body of evidence supporting the medical benefits of meditation. For example, med-

itation is particularly effective as a treatment for chronic pain. Researchers have found that meditation reduces symptoms of pain and reliance on drugs used to control pain. For example, in one four-year follow-up study, the majority of patients in an MBSR program reported improvement in the experience of pain as a result of participation in the program.

For many years, meditation has been recommended as a treatment for high blood pressure; however, there is a debate over the effectiveness of meditation compared with medical treatment. Although most studies show a reduction in blood pressure as a result of meditation, medication is relatively more effective.

Meditation may be an effective treatment for coronary artery disease (CAD). For example, a study of 21 patients practicing TM for eight months increased their tolerance of exercise and their capacity for work. Also, meditation is an important part of Dr. Dean Ornish's program for the prevention or reversal of CAD. His program involves a low-fat vegetarian

diet, moderate exercise (for example, walking 30 minutes per day), and techniques for reducing stress, including meditation.

Researchers have found that meditation is effective in the treatment of chemical dependency. Gelderloos and others reviewed 24 studies and concluded that TM is helpful in programs that target smoking behavior and drug and alcohol abuse.

The scientific evidence also suggests that meditation is particularly helpful in treating anxiety-related disorders and in reducing symptoms of anxiety triggered by stress. For example, researchers conducted a study in 1998 of 37 patients with psoriasis—a chronic, stress-related skin condition. They found that patients who practiced mindfulness meditation and who received standard ultraviolet light treatment experienced a more rapid clearing of their skin condition than the control subjects. Another study found that meditation moderated the symptoms of fibromyalgia (a chronic condition where people suffer diffuse muscular pain at several sites on the body); over half of the patients reported significant improvement. Meditation was one of several stress management techniques used in a small study of HIV-positive men. The study showed improvements in immune function and psychological well-being.

In sum, holistic practitioners speak about the body's capacity for healing itself; since meditation leads to a peaceful, relaxed state with measurable physiological benefits. Healing is facilitated presumably by moderating the state of arousal generated by chronic stress. There is a variety of stress-reducing techniques available, such as hypnosis, progressive relaxation, biofeedback, guided imagery, and aerobic exercise. Health consumers are encouraged to investigate the various techniques and seek referrals to good physicians, therapists, or stress counselors who are willing to design a flexible program that meets their needs.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Astin, John A., and others. "Meditation." In *Clinician's Complete Reference to Complementary and Alternative Medicine*, edited by Donald Novey. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2000.
- Baime, Michael J. "Meditation and Mindfulness." In *Essentials of Complementary and Alternative Medicine*, edited by Wayne B. Jonas and Jeffrey S. Levin. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1999.
- Benson, Herbert, M.D. with Miram Z. Klipper. *The Relaxation Response*. New York: Avon Books, 1975.
- Kaplan, Harold I., and Benjamin J. Sadock. "Alternative Medicine and Psychiatry." In *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences / Clinical*

*Psychiatry*. 8th ed. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

Turpin, Graham C. H., and Michael Heap. "Arousal Reduction Methods: Relaxation, Biofeedback, Meditation, and Hypnosis." In *Comprehensive Clinical Psychology*, edited by Alan S. Bellack and Michel Hersen. Volume 6 edited by Paul Salkovskis. Oxford, UK: Elsevier Science, 1998.

## PERIODICALS

- Li, Ming, Kevin Chen, and Zhixian Mo. "Use of Qigong Therapy in the Detoxification of Heroin Addicts." *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine* 8, no. 1 (January/February 2002): 50-59.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- Insight Meditation Society. 1230 Pleasant, St. Barre, MA 01005. (978) 355-4378. <<http://www.dharma.org>>.
- Mind/Body Medical Institute. 110 Francis Street, Boston, MA 02215. (617) 632-9530. <<http://www.m bmi.org>>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine. NCCAM Clearinghouse, P.O. Box 7923, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. (888) 644-6226. <<http://www.nccam.nih.gov>>.

Linda Chrisman  
Tanja Bekhuis, Ph.D.

Mellaril see **Thioridazine**

## Memantine

### Purpose

Memantine HCl (trade name Namenda) is an N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonist used to treat moderate to severe **Alzheimer's disease** (AD).

### Description

A recent theory concerning the mechanism underlying AD is that abnormal glutamate activity in the **brain** causes overexcitation of NMDA receptors, which may play a role in the development and progression of AD. Memantine is a NMDA-receptor antagonist, which hypothetically allows the continued physiological activation of NMDA receptors for continued learning and memory. However, memantine does not appear to prevent or slow the degeneration of brain cells in patients with AD.

Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled **clinical trials** of memantine have demonstrated significant improvement of day-to-day functioning in moderate to severe AD.

## Recommended dosage

Memantine is available in tablet form, or as an oral solution for patients who have difficulty swallowing tablets. Typically, patients are gradually put on memantine by taking 5 mg once a day for the first week, 5 mg twice a day for the second week (10 mg total per day), and 10 mg in the morning and 5 mg in the evening for the third week (15 mg total per day). After that, the maintenance dosage of memantine is 10 mg twice a day (20 mg total per day). Memantine can be taken with or without food.

## Precautions

Clinical trials of memantine found it to be safe and well tolerated. However, anyone with a known hypersensitivity to memantine HCl or any of the inert substances used as a vehicle for the drug should not take memantine. The dosage of memantine should be reduced for patients with severe kidney impairment.

## Side effects

No significant difference has been found between patients taking memantine and patients taking a placebo in vital signs, electrocardiogram values, or laboratory values (serum chemistry, hematology, and urinalysis). The most common adverse reactions to memantine are:

- dizziness
- confusion
- headache
- constipation
- agitation
- falling
- accidental injury

Compared with placebo, memantine showed a lower level of gastrointestinal side effects (such as constipation, diarrhea, vomiting, or nausea).

## Interactions

Studies have revealed that the use of memantine in combination therapy with **donepezil**, a cholinesterase inhibitor, is frequently more effective than the use of donepezil alone in the treatment of moderate to severe AD. Using memantine and donepezil in combination therapy does not affect the actions of either drug. Memantine has been shown to be both safe and effective in such combination therapy.

Studies on memantine have shown low potential for negative interaction with other drugs.

## KEY TERMS

**Alzheimer's disease**—Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a progressive neurologic disease in which dementia results from the degeneration of brain cells through the formation of senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles. AD is the most common cause of dementia.

**Clinical trial**—A controlled scientific experiment designed to investigate the effectiveness of a drug or treatment in curing or lessening the symptoms of a disease or disorder.

**Control group**—A group in a research study that does not receive the experimental treatment. For example, in an experiment testing the effectiveness of a new drug, the control group might receive the current drug of choice while the experimental group receives the new drug under investigation.

**Double-blind study**—A research study in which neither the participants nor the professional giving them the drug or treatment know whether they are receiving the experimental treatment or a placebo or control treatment.

**Placebo**—A preparation without pharmacological effect that is given in place of a drug in clinical trials to determine the effectiveness of the drug under study; a “sugar pill.”

**Randomization**—The process of randomly assigning participants in an experiment to the various conditions (that is, experimental and control groups) so that each individual has an equal chance of being assigned to any of the groups. Randomization helps ensure that each of the groups is roughly the same and that the results are due to the treatment, not to the makeup of the groups.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Burns, Alistair, and Bengt Winblad, eds. *Severe Dementia*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2006.

VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

### PERIODICALS

Alexopoulos, G. S., D. V. Jeste, H. Chung, D. Carpenter, R. Ross, and J. P. Docherty. “Treatment of Dementia and Its Behavioral Disturbances. Introduction: Methods, Commentary, and Summary.” *Postgraduate Medicine* Jan. 2005: 6–22.

Cummings, Jeffrey L., Eugene Schneider, Pierre N. Tariot, and Stephen M. Graham. “Behavioral Effects of

- Memantine in Alzheimer Disease Patients Receiving Donepezil Treatment." *Neurology* 67.1 (2006): 57–63.
- Danysz, W., C. G. Parsons, J. H. Möbius, A. Stoffler, and G. Quack. "Neuroprotective and Symptomatic Action of Memantine Relevant for Alzheimer's Disease: A Unified Glutamatergic Hypothesis on the Mechanism of Action." *Neurotoxicity Research* 2 (2000): 85–97.
- Doody, R. S. "Refining Treatment Guidelines in Alzheimer's Disease." *Geriatrics* June 2005: 14–20.
- Doraiswamy, P. M. "Non-Cholinergic Strategies for Treating and Preventing Alzheimer's Disease." *CNS Drugs* 16 (2002): 811–24.
- Fox, Chris, Ian D. Maidment, Malaz Boustani, and Cornelius Katona. "Memantine Combined with an Acetyl Cholinesterase Inhibitor—Hope for the Future?" *Neuropsychiatric Disease And Treatment* 2.2 (2006): 121–25.
- Hartmann, S., and H. J. Möbius. "Tolerability of Memantine in Combination with Cholinesterase Inhibitors in Dementia Therapy." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 18 (2003): 81–85.
- Maidment, Ian, Chris Fox, Gill Livingston, and Cornelius Katona. "Drug Treatment for Alzheimer's Disease: The Way Forward." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 21.1 (2006): 6–8.
- Orgogozo, J. M., A. S. Rigaud, A. Stoffler, H. J. Möbius, and F. Forette. "Efficacy and Safety of Memantine in Patients with Mild to Moderate Vascular Dementia." *Stroke* 33 (2002): 1834–39.
- Reisberg, B., R. Doody, A. Stöffler, F. Schmitt, S. Ferris, and H. J. Möbius. "Memantine in Moderate-to-Severe Alzheimer's Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine*, 348 (2003): 1333–41.
- Tariot, Pierre N., Martin R. Farlow, George T. Grossberg, Stephen M. Graham, Scott McDonald, and Ivan Gerigel. "Memantine Treatment in Patients with Moderate to Severe Alzheimer Disease Already Receiving Donepezil: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 291 (2004): 317–24.
- Xiong, G., and P. M. Doraiswamy. "Combination Drug Therapy for Alzheimer's Disease: What Is Evidence-Based, and What Is Not?" *Geriatrics* 60.6 (2005): 22–26.

#### WEB SITES

Forest Laboratories, Inc. "Namenda (Memantine HCl) Prescribing Information." *Namenda*. <[http://www.namenda.com/pdf/namenda\\_pi.pdf](http://www.namenda.com/pdf/namenda_pi.pdf)>.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Mental health courts

### Definition

The Mental Health Courts Program was established by an act of Congress in 2000 to address the

particular needs of mentally ill or mentally retarded defendants.

### Description

The general court system is designed to process individuals who have been charged with crimes. It does not account for special considerations, such as mental illness. Mental health courts were created to address the special needs of defendants who are mentally ill or mentally retarded. They operate as part of the federal Mental Health Courts Program, which was established in 2000. These courts provide mentally ill defendants with supervised treatment in order to reduce the number of incarcerated people with mental illness and to prevent those who are mentally ill from continually cycling through the court system. Those who successfully complete the program are eligible for a shortened sentence or a dismissal.

Qualifying mental illness for the Mental Health Program is defined by law as, "a diagnosable mental, behavioral, or emotional disorder—(A) of sufficient duration to meet diagnostic criteria within the most recent edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, published by the American Psychiatric Association; and (B) that has resulted in functional impairment that substantially interferes with or limits 1 or more major life activities."

### History

According to the American Jail Association, between 600,000 and 700,000 mentally ill people end up in jail each year, where they do not receive treatment for their condition. The National Alliance for the Mentally Ill estimates that as many as 40% of mentally ill individuals will come into contact with the criminal justice system at some point in their lives. Research finds that mentally ill inmates are at greater risk for assault and **suicide** than are other inmates. Judges, attorneys, and jail officials, realizing that there were a large percentage of mentally ill people being processed through the criminal justice system, began in the 1980s to call for more specific court-related treatment programs for these individuals.

The first mental health court opened in Broward County, Florida, in 1997. Mental health courts were modeled after drug courts, which since 1989 have been providing drug treatment to addicts who are convicted of crimes. Individuals who complete drug court-mandated programs are eligible to have their criminal charges reduced or dismissed.

In 2000, Congress passed the America's Law Enforcement and Mental Health Project Act to relieve

the burden on the criminal justice system and on corrective institutions, and to provide individuals with the tools they need to stay out of the criminal justice system. The Bureau of Justice Assistance (BJA) administers the mental health courts, and provided funds in 2002 and 2003 for thirty-seven state and local mental health courts throughout the country. As of 2007, there were nearly 100 mental health courts operating in the United States.

## Process

Mental health courts generally take between 15 and 375 cases each year. They try individuals with mental illness separately from other cases. Mental health courts may vary by the kinds of mental health diagnoses and criminal charges they will accept, how the court monitors a defendant's treatment, and the kinds of pleas an individual can make. In the past, mental health courts would only accept people who were charged with nonviolent offenses, such as trespassing, vandalism, or drug possession. Today, some mental health courts will accept those who have committed more violent crimes, including assault and robbery, but these individuals often require additional supervision.

Although the process can vary from court to court, generally, a defense attorney will refer a defendant to the mental health court. Those individuals who are too violent or disturbed to appear in court may first be referred to a crisis center for stabilization.

In most courts, the defendant will have to plead "guilty" or "no contest" to qualify for treatment. The individual will be evaluated by psychiatrists. If the defendant is deemed stable enough and eligible to stand trial in the mental health court, the judge, assisted by mental health professionals, will determine the correct course of treatment. The treatment will be implemented by mental health professionals under the oversight of the court. The individual may receive inpatient or outpatient counseling, as well as housing placement, education, vocational training, job placement, and health care, as needed. Some participants will simultaneously receive treatment for drug **abuse**.

An individual will stay in the treatment program and be supervised by the mental health court for up to the maximum sentence for his or her crime. During that time period, the person must return to the court periodically for assessments. When a defendant successfully completes the treatment program, his or her case is resolved. Sometimes the charges will be reduced, and sometimes the case will be dismissed. In cases involving more serious crimes, the defendant may receive credit

for the treatment time toward a longer jail sentence. Defendants who do not successfully complete the program are returned to a regular court for another trial, and may have to face jail time if convicted.

## Pros and cons

For the individuals and communities they serve, as well as for the criminal justice system in general, mental health courts offer several advantages over traditional courts:

- They improve the outcomes for people with mental illness, by helping them get treatment.
- They lower recidivism rates for people with mental illness who enter the criminal justice system.
- They free up jail cells for more serious offenders.
- They are considered a more cost-effective method than correctional institutions to treat defendants with mental illness.

The program has had its critics, however. Some of the arguments against mental health courts are as follows:

- They further stigmatize mental illness.
- They violate the right of mentally ill individuals to trial by jury.
- They provide incentives to mentally ill individuals to commit crimes, so that they can receive treatment.
- They force mentally ill individuals into treatment in order to avoid incarceration.
- They could lead police to arrest people with mental illness, just to get them treatment.
- They often require a guilty plea, about which some individuals with mental illness may not have the ability to make an informed decision.

## Research

Although there is little research available to confirm the effectiveness of mental health courts in general, there have been studies conducted on individual mental health courts that suggest positive outcomes. Research overall indicates that participants in mental health courts are less likely to go back to jail and generally spend fewer days in jail than those who are processed through the regular court system.

A study conducted in the Broward County, Florida, mental health court and published in the July 2005 *Psychiatric Services* found that mentally ill defendants had greater access to treatment than they would have had otherwise, and they spent an average of 75% fewer days in jail compared to those who went through the traditional court system. A 1999 study presented at

## KEY TERMS

**Drug court**—A court that provides defendants with drug treatment programs, in exchange for a reduced or dismissed sentence.

**Mental health court**—A court that offers treatment to mentally ill defendants, in exchange for a reduced or dismissed sentence.

**Recidivism**—The likelihood of committing another crime.

the symposium “Mental Health Courts: Promises and Limitations” followed mentally ill offenders who had spent an average of 18 days in mental hospitals and 85 days in jail in one year. The following year, while on Alaska’s mental health court program, they spent only 3 days in mental hospitals and 16 days in jail. The August 2006 *Harvard Mental Health Letter* mentions a study conducted in California that found that offenders processed in a mental health court who did get rearrested were generally caught on technical violations of parole, rather than for new crimes.

However, not all the research has been positive. A study published in the July 2005 *Psychiatric Services* found a disproportionate balance of gender and ethnic groups represented in the mental health courts. Women and Caucasians in the study were more likely to be referred to mental health courts than were men and ethnic groups, even though the majority of prison inmates are male (90–94%) and minorities (63%). That study also found that participants in one mental health court had no significant improvement in clinical symptoms compared to those who went through the general court system.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Fagan, Thomas J. and Robert K. Ax, eds. *Correctional Mental Health Handbook*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2002.
- Rogers, Richard and Daniel W. Shuman. *Fundamentals of Forensic Practice: Mental Health and Criminal Law*. New York, NY: Springer, 2005.
- Slovenko, Ralph, ed. *Law in Psychiatry*. Vol. 2. East Sussex, United Kingdom: Brunner-Routledge, 2002.
- Tony, Michael, ed. *The Future of Imprisonment*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2004.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Bureau of Justice Assistance, 810 Seventh Street NW, Washington, DC 20531. (202) 305-1909. <<http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov/BJA/index.html>>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org/>>.

National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (866) 615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/>>

Stephanie N. Watson

## Mental retardation

### Definition

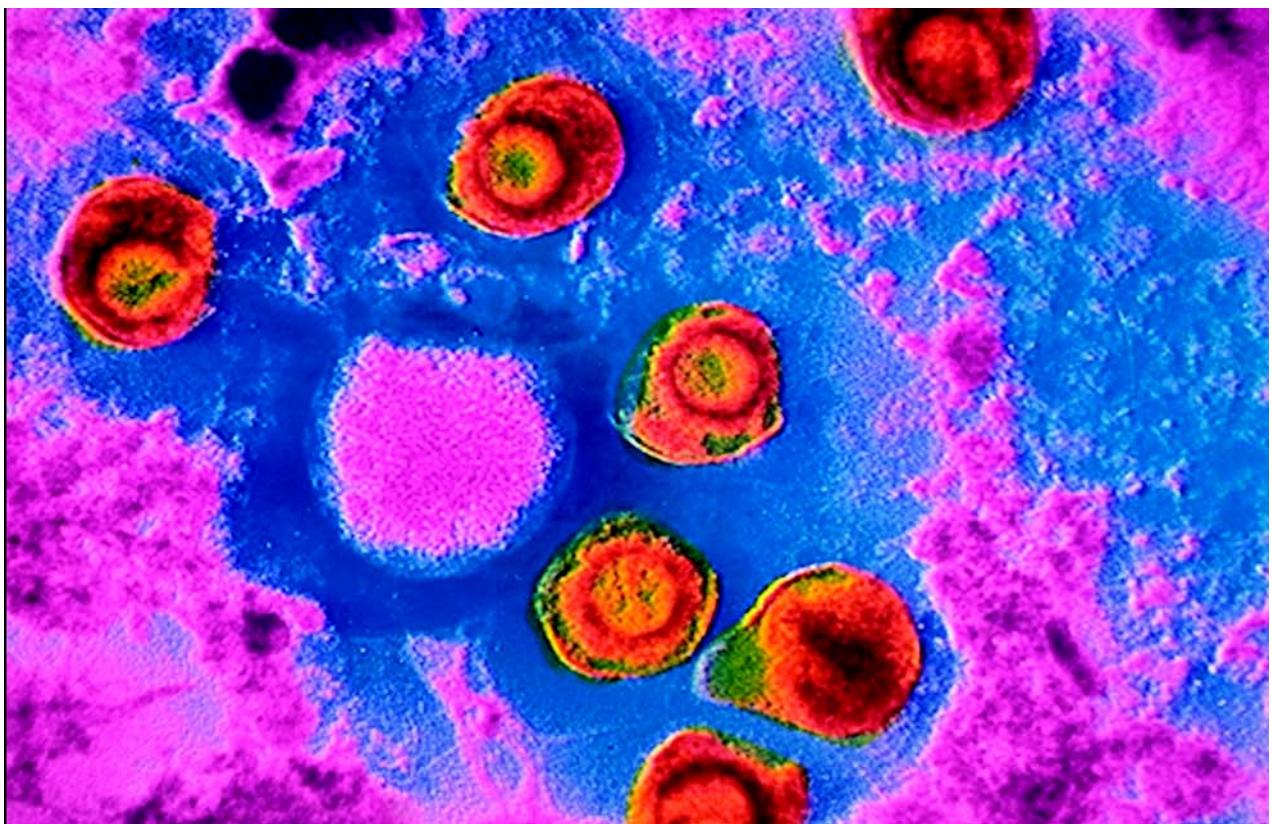
Mental retardation (MR) is a developmental disability that first appears in children under the age of 18. It is defined as a level of intellectual functioning (as measured by standard **intelligence tests**) that is well below average and results in significant limitations in daily living skills (adaptive functioning).

### Description

Mental retardation begins in childhood or adolescence before the age of 18. In most cases, it persists throughout adult life. A **diagnosis** of mental retardation is made if an individual has an intellectual functioning level well below average, as well as significant limitations in two or more adaptive skill areas. Intellectual functioning level is defined by standardized tests that measure the



A karyotype showing Down's syndrome trisomy 21. (PHOTOTAKE Inc/Alamy)



**Electron micrograph of cytomegalovirus red magnified 24,000 times; the virus causes severe illness in newborns and is the primary viral cause of mental retardation.** (PHOTOTAKE/Alamy)

ability to reason in terms of mental age (intelligence quotient or IQ). Mental retardation is generally defined as an IQ score below 70–75. “Adaptive skills” is a term that refers to skills needed for daily life. Such skills include the ability to produce and understand language (communication); home-living skills; use of community resources; health, safety, leisure, self-care, and social skills; self-direction; functional academic skills (reading, writing, and arithmetic); and job-related skills.

In general, children with intellectual and developmental impairments reach such developmental milestones as walking and talking much later than children in the general population. Symptoms of mental retardation may appear at birth or later in childhood. The child’s age at onset depends on the suspected cause of the disability. Some people with mild mental retardation may not be diagnosed before entering preschool or kindergarten. These children typically have difficulties with social, communication, and functional academic skills. Children who have a neurological disorder or illness such as encephalitis or meningitis may suddenly show signs of cognitive impairment and adaptive difficulties.

The level of impairment varies in severity. *The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*), which is the diagnostic standard for mental health care professionals in the United States, classifies four different degrees of mental retardation: *mild*; *moderate*; *severe*; and *profound*. These categories are based on the person’s level of functioning.

#### **Mild mental retardation**

Approximately 85% of people who fall into these categories of mental retardation are in the mildly retarded category. Their IQ scores range from 50 to 70, and they can often learn academic skills up to about the sixth-grade level. They can become fairly self-sufficient and in some cases live independently, with community and social support.

#### **Moderate mental retardation**

About 10% of people with mental retardation are considered moderately retarded. People in this

category have IQ scores ranging from 35 to 55. They can carry out work and self-care tasks with moderate supervision. They typically acquire **communication skills** in childhood and are able to live and function successfully within the community in such supervised environments as **group homes**.

### ***Severe mental retardation***

About 3–4% of people with mental retardation are classified as severely retarded. People in this category have IQ scores of 20–40. They may master very basic self-care skills and some communication skills. Many people with this level of impairment can live in a group home.

### ***Profound mental retardation***

Only 1–2% of people with mental retardation are classified as profoundly retarded, meaning that they have IQ scores under 20–25. They may be able to develop basic self-care and communication skills with appropriate support and training. Their retardation is often caused by an accompanying neurological disorder. People who are profoundly retarded need high levels of structure and supervision.

The American Association on Intellectual and Developmental Disabilities (AAIDD) (formerly the American Association on Mental Retardation, or AAMR) has developed another widely accepted diagnostic classification system for mental retardation. In this system, mental retardation is defined in terms of environment and context in which the person functions. The AAIDD gives five assumptions that are necessary for defining the presence of mental retardation. A practitioner must consider the limitations of functioning in a community environmental context, including the person's age group and culture. In addition, cultural and linguistic differences and differences in behavioral, sensory, and other factors should be considered. Strengths should be given consideration along with weaknesses, and the purpose of identifying limitations is to determine what supports the person needs. The final assumption is that when the appropriate supports are available, the quality of life and functional ability of a person with mental retardation will improve. This organization is also systematically pursuing a change in the term "mental retardation," proposing instead that the more accurate appellation would be "people with intellectual disability." Members of AAIDD argue for this change based on the **stigma** associated with the term "mental retardation" or "mentally retarded."

## **Demographics**

The prevalence of mental retardation in North America is a subject of heated debate. It is thought to be between 1% and 3% depending upon the population, methods of assessment, and criteria of assessment that are used. Many people believe that the actual prevalence is probably closer to 1%, and that the 3% figure is based on misleading mortality rates; cases that are diagnosed in early infancy; and the instability of the diagnosis across the age span. If the 1% figure is accepted, however, it means that about 3 million people with mental retardation live in the United States. The three most common causes of mental retardation, accounting for about 30% of cases, are Down syndrome, fragile X syndrome, and **fetal alcohol syndrome**. Males are more likely than females to have mental retardation in a 1.5:1 ratio, primarily because of the association with fragile X.

## **Causes and symptoms**

Low IQ scores and limitations in adaptive skills are the hallmarks of mental retardation. Aggression, self-injury, and mood disorders are sometimes associated with the disability. The severity of the symptoms and the age at which they first appear depend on the cause. Children with mental retardation reach developmental milestones significantly later than expected, if at all. If retardation is caused by chromosomal or other genetic disorders, it is often apparent from infancy. If retardation is caused by childhood illnesses or injuries, learning and adaptive skills that were once easy may suddenly become difficult or impossible to master.

In about 40% of cases, the cause of mental retardation cannot be found. The following biological and environmental factors that can cause mental retardation.

### ***Genetic factors***

In about 30% of cases of mental retardation, hereditary factors are the cause. Mental retardation may be caused by an inherited genetic abnormality, such as fragile X syndrome. Fragile X—a defect in the X chromosome in which a repeated group of letters in the DNA sequence reaches a certain threshold number that results in impairment—is the most common inherited cause of mental retardation. Single-gene disorders such as phenylketonuria (PKU) and other inborn errors of metabolism may also cause mental retardation if they are not discovered and treated early, although testing of infants for PKU is required at birth and problems associated with this disorder can

be avoided through dietary measures. Abnormalities in chromosome number can also be the cause of mental retardation. The presence of an extra chromosome 18 (trisomy 18) or chromosome 21 (trisomy 21 or Down syndrome) will result in some level of mental retardation. In addition, there may be only a partial extra chromosome as a result of accidents at the cellular level, which can result sometimes in milder forms of mental retardation compared to complete trisomies.

### Prenatal illnesses and issues

Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) affects one in 3,000 children in Western countries. It is caused when mothers drink heavily during the first twelve weeks (trimester) of pregnancy. Some studies have shown that even moderate alcohol use during pregnancy may cause learning disabilities in children. Drug **abuse** and cigarette smoking during pregnancy have also been linked to mental retardation.

Maternal infections and such illnesses as glandular disorders, rubella, toxoplasmosis, and cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection can result in mental retardation in the child, among many other problems, if the developing fetus is exposed. When the mother has high blood pressure (hypertension) or develops toxemia (also called pregnancy-induced hypertension or preeclampsia) during pregnancy, the flow of oxygen to the fetus may in some cases be reduced, potentially resulting in **brain** damage and mental retardation.

Birth defects that cause physical deformities of the head, brain, and central nervous system frequently cause mental retardation. A neural tube defect, for example, is a birth defect in which the neural tube that forms the spinal cord does not close completely. This defect, which occurs with varying levels of severity, may cause children to develop an accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid inside the skull (hydrocephalus). The pressure on the brain resulting from hydrocephalus can lead to changes that cause learning impairment.

### Childhood illnesses and injuries

Hyperthyroidism, whooping cough, chicken pox, measles, and Hib disease (a bacterial infection caused by *Haemophilus influenzae* type B) may cause mental retardation if they are not treated adequately. An infection of the membrane covering the brain (meningitis) or an inflammation of the brain itself (encephalitis) can cause swelling that in turn may cause brain damage and mental retardation. Traumatic brain

injury caused by a blow to the head or by violent shaking of the upper body may also cause brain damage and mental retardation in children.

### Environmental factors

Neglected infants who are not provided with the mental and physical stimulation required for normal development may suffer irreversible learning impairment. Children who live in poverty and/or suffer from malnutrition, unhealthy living conditions, abuse, and improper or inadequate medical care are at a higher risk. Exposure to lead or mercury can also cause mental retardation. Many children have developed lead poisoning from eating the flaking lead-based paint often found in older buildings.

### Diagnosis

If mental retardation is suspected, a comprehensive physical examination and medical history should be done immediately to discover any organic cause of symptoms. Conditions such as hyperthyroidism and PKU are treatable if discovered early enough when the progression of retardation can be stopped and, in some cases, partially reversed. If a neurological cause such as brain injury is suspected, the child may be referred to a neurologist or neuropsychologist for testing.

A complete medical, family, social, and educational history is compiled from existing medical and school records (if applicable) and from interviews with parents. Children are given intelligence tests to measure their learning abilities and intellectual functioning. Such tests include the **Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale**, the Wechsler Intelligence Scales, the Wechsler Preschool and Primary Scale of Intelligence, and the **Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children**. For infants, the Bayley Scales of Infant Development may be used to assess motor, language, and problem-solving skills. Interviews with parents or other caregivers are used to assess the child's daily living, muscle control, communication, and social skills. The Woodcock-Johnson Scales of Independent Behavior and the Vineland Adaptive Behavior Scales (VABS) are frequently used to evaluate these skills.

### Treatment

Federal legislation entitles children with intellectual impairments and developmental disabilities to free testing and appropriate, individualized education and skills training within the school system from ages three to 21. For children under the age of three, many states have established early **intervention** programs

## KEY TERMS

**Amniocentesis**—A test usually done between 16 and 20 weeks of pregnancy to detect any abnormalities in the development of the fetus. A small amount of the fluid surrounding the fetus (amniotic fluid) is drawn out through a needle inserted into the mother's womb. Laboratory analysis of this fluid can detect various genetic defects, such as Down syndrome, or neural tube defects.

**Developmental delay**—The failure to meet certain developmental milestones, such as sitting, walking, and talking, at the average age. Developmental delay may indicate a problem in development of the central nervous system.

**Down syndrome**—A genetic disorder characterized by an extra chromosome 21 (trisomy 21), mental retardation, and susceptibility to early-onset Alzheimer's disease.

**Extensive support**—Ongoing daily support required to assist individuals in a specific adaptive area, such as daily help with preparing meals.

**Hib disease**—An infection caused by *Haemophilus influenza*, type B (Hib). This disease mainly affects children under the age of five. In that age group, it is the leading cause of bacterial meningitis, pneumonia, joint and bone infections, and throat inflammations.

**Inborn error of metabolism**—A rare enzyme deficiency. Children with inborn errors of metabolism do not have certain enzymes that the body requires to maintain organ functions. Inborn errors of metabolism can cause brain damage and mental retardation if left untreated. Phenylketonuria is an inborn error of metabolism.

**Limited support**—A predetermined period of assistance required to deal with a specific event, such as training for a new job.

**Phenylketonuria (PKU)**—An inherited disease in which the body cannot metabolize the amino acid phenylalanine properly. If untreated, phenylketonuria can cause mental retardation.

**Trisomy**—An abnormality in chromosomal development. Chromosomes are the structures within a cell that carry its genetic information. They are organized in pairs. Humans have 23 pairs of chromosomes. In a trisomy syndrome, an extra chromosome is present so that the individual has three of a particular chromosome instead of the normal pair. An extra chromosome 18 (trisomy 18) causes mental retardation.

**Ultrasonography**—A process that uses the reflection of high-frequency sound waves to make an image of structures deep within the body. Ultrasonography is routinely used to detect fetal abnormalities.

that assess children, make recommendations, and begin treatment programs. Many day schools are available to help train children with developmental and intellectual impairments in skills such as bathing and feeding themselves. Extracurricular activities and social programs are also important in helping children and adolescents who have developmental and intellectual impairments gain self-esteem.

Training in independent living and job skills is often begun in early adulthood. The level of training depends on the degree of impairment. People with mild levels of functional and intellectual impairment can often learn the skills needed to live independently and hold outside jobs. People with a great level of impairment may require supervised community living in group homes or other residential settings.

**Family therapy** can help relatives of people with mental retardation develop coping skills. It can also

help parents deal with feelings of guilt or anger. A supportive, warm home environment is essential to help people with mental retardation reach their full potential.

### Prognosis

People with mild to moderate mental retardation are frequently able to achieve some self-sufficiency and to lead happy and fulfilling lives. To reach these goals, they need appropriate and consistent educational, community, social, family, and vocational supports. The outlook is less promising for those with severe to profound retardation. Studies have shown that these people have a shortened life expectancy. The diseases that are usually associated with severe retardation may cause a shorter life span. People with Down syndrome will develop the brain changes that

characterize **Alzheimer's disease** in later life and may develop the clinical symptoms of this disease as well.

## Prevention

Immunization against diseases such as measles and Hib prevents many of the illnesses that can cause mental retardation. In addition, all children should undergo routine developmental screening as part of their pediatric care. Screening is particularly critical for those children who may be neglected or undernourished or may live in disease-producing conditions. Newborn screening and immediate treatment for PKU and hyperthyroidism can usually catch these disorders early enough to prevent adverse intellectual and developmental effects.

Good prenatal care can also be preventive. Pregnant women should be educated about the risks of alcohol consumption and the need to maintain good nutrition during pregnancy. Tests such as amniocentesis and ultrasonography can determine whether a fetus is developing normally.

*See also* Childhood disintegrative disorder; Pica.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. "Mental Retardation." *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.
- Jaffe, Jerome H., MD. "Mental Retardation." *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*, Benjamin J. Sadock, MD, and Virginia A. Sadock, MD, eds. 7th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.
- Julian, John N. "Mental Retardation." *Psychiatry Update and Board Preparation*, Thomas A. Stern, MD, and John B. Herman, MD, eds. New York: McGraw Hill, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Bozikas, Vasilis, MD, and others. "Gabapentin for Behavioral Dyscontrol with Mental Retardation." *American Journal Psychiatry* (June 2001): 965–66.
- Margolese, Howard C., MD, and others. "Olanzapine-Induced Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome with Mental Retardation." *American Journal Psychiatry* (July 1999): 1115A–1116.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association on Intellectual and Developmental Disabilities (AAIDD) (formerly the American Association on Mental Retardation, or AAMR). 444 North Capitol Street, NW, Washington, DC 20001. Telephone: (800) 424-3688. Web site: <<http://www.aamr.org>>.
- The Arc of the United States (formerly Association of Retarded Citizens of the United States). 1010 Wayne

Avenue, Silver Spring, MD 20910. Telephone: (301) 565-3842. Web site: <<http://thearc.org>>.

National Information Center for Children and Youth and Disabilities. P.O. Box 1492, Washington, DC 20013. Telephone: (800) 695-0285. Web site: <<http://www.nichcy.org>>.

Paula Anne Ford-Martin, MS  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Mesoridazine

### Definition

Mesoridazine is a member of the phenothiazine family of drugs (drugs that reduce the action of the neurotransmitter, **dopamine**, in the **brain**) and sold under the brand name Serentil in the United States.

### Purpose

Mesoridazine is effective in the treatment of **schizophrenia**, alcoholism, psychoneuroses (disorders of the brain), and organic brain disorders (disorders caused by temporary brain dysfunction or permanent brain damage).

### Description

When used for the treatment of schizophrenia, mesoridazine reduces symptoms of emotional withdrawal, **anxiety**, tension, **hallucinations**, reduced **affect**, and **paranoia** (suspiciousness). It is often useful in persons for whom other tranquilizers are ineffective. In treating organic brain syndrome, mesoridazine effectively manages hyperactivity and difficult behaviors associated with mental deficiency. Mesoridazine relieves anxiety, nausea, vomiting, tension, and **depression** when used to treat alcoholism. It does not have side effects that affect liver function. It relieves similar symptoms when used to treat persons with psychoneurotic disorders.

Mesoridazine can be taken by mouth or given by intramuscular injection. It is supplied as 25 mg/mL in injection form, and tablets are supplied in 10-, 25-, 50-, and 100-mg strengths.

### Recommended dosage

The usual dosage used for treating schizophrenia is 50–400 mg per day and is usually administered three times per day. It is begun at a low level and slowly increased until an adequate therapeutic effect is

achieved. For persons with organic brain syndrome, an optimum dosage is 75–300 mg per day, administered in three equal amounts. The optimum dosage for persons being treated for alcoholism is 50–300 mg per day, administered in three doses. The usual dosage range for persons with psychoneuroses is 30–150 mg per day, administered in three equal amounts.

### Precautions

Mesoridazine has the potential to produce a serious syndrome called **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements (especially of the tongue, jaw, mouth, or face). It usually develops either late in the course of treatment or after medication has been discontinued and is potentially irreversible. Symptoms similar to those experienced by people with Parkinson's disease have been linked with the administration of mesoridazine. Mesoridazine is inappropriate for use with central nervous system depression, nor should it be administered to persons in a coma.

### Side effects

A serious and relatively common side effect of mesoridazine is tardive dyskinesia, a potentially irreversible syndrome for which there is no known effective treatment. An important feature of tardive dyskinesia is that it develops either late into treatment or after treatment has ceased. Tardive dyskinesia consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, or face that also may be accompanied by involuntary movements of the arms, legs, and trunk. The chances of developing tardive dyskinesia increase with both increasing dosage and increasing patient age.

The most common side effects of mesoridazine are drowsiness and low blood pressure and are most frequently reported in persons given relatively high dosages. Side effects also tend to appear relatively early in treatment. Mesoridazine tends to have a remarkably low incidence of side effects compared to other phenothiazine compounds. However, as mentioned, Parkinson-like symptoms have been linked with the administration of mesoridazine. These include restlessness and agitation (akathisia) and difficulty walking or moving (dystonia). These are generally controlled with **benztropine** mesylate or **trihexyphenidyl** hydrochloride.

Other known side effects include anxiety, restlessness, agitation, **insomnia**, headache, euphoria, drowsiness, depression, confusion, and dizziness. Unwanted or unexpected effects associated with the use of meso-

### KEY TERMS

**Akathisia**—Agitated or restless movement, usually affecting the legs. Movement is accompanied by a sense of discomfort and an inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive for periods of time. Akathisia is a common side effect of some neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Organic brain syndrome**—A class of disorders characterized by progressive deterioration of mental processes caused by temporary brain dysfunction or permanent brain damage. Symptoms include delusions, dementia, amnesia, and delirium that are not caused by drugs, alcohol, or as a side effect of medication.

**Psychoneurotic**—Pertaining to a neurosis or disorder of the brain. Informally, this is an emotionally unstable person.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tachycardia**—A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

ridazine have been reported for virtually all organ systems in the body. Although numerous, such side effects are relatively uncommon. An occasionally reported side effect is neuroleptic malignant syndrome, a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity, high fever, alterations in mental

status, and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia and arrhythmias.

## Interactions

Mesoridazine increases the effect of drugs and substances that depress the central nervous system. This class of drugs includes anesthetics, opiates, **barbiturates**, atropine, and alcohol.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.  
 Foreman, John C. and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.  
 Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.  
 Von Boxtel, Chris J., Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Dallaire S. "Thioridazine (Mellaril) and mesoridazine (Serpentil): prolongation of the QTc interval." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 164, no 1 (2001): 91-95.  
 Nelson, J. C. "Diagnosing and treating depression in the elderly." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 62, Supplement 24 (2001): 18-22.  
 Ray, W. A., S. Meredith, P. B. Thapa, K. G. Meador, K. Hall, and K. T. Murray. "Antipsychotics and the risk of sudden cardiac death." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 58, no. 12 (2001): 1161-1167.  
 Varvel A., E. Vann, E. Wise, D. Philibin, and H. Porter. "Effects of antipsychotic drugs on operant responding after acute and repeated administration." *Psychopharmacology (Berlin)* 160, no. 2 (2002): 182-191.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, PO Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Fax: (717) 558-7845. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.  
 American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.  
 American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.  
 American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.  
 American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981 Fax: (703) 836-5223.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. Web site: <<http://www.aspet.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

## Methadone

### Definition

Methadone is classified as an opioid (an analgesic that is used for severe pain). In the United States, methadone is also known as dolophine, methenex and methadose.

### Purpose

Methadone is used in the long-term maintenance treatment of narcotic **addiction**. Both heroin and methadone are **opioids**; as such, methadone and heroin bind to the same places in the **brain**. Methadone, however, is the opioid of choice for the treatment of narcotic addiction since it is longer lasting and patients don't experience the "high" associated with the drug of **abuse**. In opioid maintenance therapy, a person addicted to heroin receives methadone instead of heroin. Essentially, the person is switched from an opioid that gives a "high" to an opioid that does not. The dose of methadone may then be decreased over time so that the person can overcome his or her opioid addiction without experiencing withdrawal symptoms, or, after a person has received methadone for a period of time, he or she may choose to go through **detoxification** with **clonidine**. In the United States, methadone treatment is associated with a significant reduction in predatory crime, improvement in socially acceptable behavior and psychological well-being.

Methadone may also be prescribed for pain relief, but in these cases, the physician must note this use on the prescription.

### Description

Methadone has been used successfully to treat narcotic addiction for over twenty years in the United States. Methadone is the only FDA-approved agent in its class for the maintenance treatment of narcotic addiction.

Methadone for maintenance treatment is dispensed in methadone clinics. The program needs to be registered with the Drug Enforcement Agency. For admission to methadone treatment in clinical programs, federal standards mandate a minimum of one



**Methadone in a bottle.** (Ian Miles-Flashpoint Pictures/Alamy)

year of opiate addiction as well as current evidence of addiction. Pregnant, opiate-addicted females can be admitted with less than a one-year history and AIDS patients are routinely accepted. New patients must report daily, take medication under observation, and participate in recommended psychosocial treatments.

Some studies have shown that more than 50% of patients in methadone clinics do not abuse drugs in the first month of treatment. After ten months, however, the success rate drops to approximately 20%. Moreover, major **depression** is a powerful predictor of **relapse** in methadone treatment. If the patient has dual addictions (alcoholism along with the heroin addiction, for example), management of the other addiction increases the success rate of the methadone therapy. Proper psychiatric and psychological treatment can considerably improve methadone treatment outcome.

In the cases of pregnant women who are addicted to heroin, detoxification (discontinuing the opioid altogether) is associated with a high rate of spontaneous abortions in the first trimester and premature delivery in the third trimester. Therefore, pregnant women can be in methadone maintenance programs

if they are at risk of returning to drug dependence. These women should receive the lowest effective dose, receive appropriate prenatal care, and be warned about risks of returning to drug abuse, as well as the dangers associated with withdrawal effects of methadone. Methadone is associated with lower birth weights and smaller head circumference, but it has never been shown that this has any impact on the infants' further development.

Methadone is available in 5-, 10-, and 40-mg tablets and a solution.

### Recommended dosage

The initial dose of methadone is 20 mg daily with additional 10 mg given four to eight hours later. After achieving initial dosing of about 40 mg daily, the dose should be increased since there is evidence that the relapse rate is significantly lower in patients on 80–100 mg daily rather than 40–50 mg daily. The stabilization to maintenance dosing requires one to three months.

The minimum effective dose is 60 mg daily. Patients on lower maintenance doses have recently been studied and have shown shorter treatment retention and have continued heroin use. If patients are stable on methadone for six months or longer, their methadone dose should not be increased by 33% or over, as this sudden increase in dose is associated with an increase in craving for the drugs that were previously abused. Some heroin patients need to be on doses up to 180 mg daily to provide adequate maintenance and to prevent relapse.

### Precautions

Methadone should not be used in patients who have had hypersensitivity to methadone. Patients who experience an allergic reaction to other opioids, which may include a generalized rash or shortness of breath, such as morphine, hydromorphone, oxymorphone, or codeine may try methadone. They are less likely to develop the same reaction since methadone has a different chemical structure. Methadone should be administered carefully in patients with pre-existing respiratory problems, history of bowel obstruction, glaucoma, renal problems, and hyperthyroidism.

As stated, pregnant women can be in methadone maintenance programs if they are at risk of returning to drug dependence. Methadone is associated with smaller birth weights and smaller head circumference.

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Maintenance treatment**—The period of treatment beginning after the initial introduction of the treatment medication. During this period, the dose of medication can be either increased or decreased, depending on the program and needs of the patient.

**MAO inhibitors**—A group of antidepressant drugs that decrease the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**Naloxone**—A drug that combines competitively with opiate receptors on the nerve cells and blocks or reverses the action of narcotic analgesics.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), such as Parnate (**tranylcypromine**) and Nardil (**phenelzine**), should be avoided by people taking methadone. Medications such as **naltrexone** and naloxone should never be used concurrently with methadone. People must stop taking methadone for seven to 10 days before starting naltrexone or naloxone.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Decrease concept of chemical dependency; Opioids and related disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Albers, Lawrence J., M.D., Rhoda K. Hahn, M.D., and Christopher Reist, M.D. *Handbook of Psychiatric Drugs*. 2001–2002. Laguna Hills, CA: Current Clinical Strategies Publishing, 2001.

Kay, Jerald. *Psychiatry: Behavioral Science and Clinical Essentials*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Curran, Valarie H. “Additional Methadone Increases Craving for Heroin: A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Study of Chronic Opiate Users Receiving Methadone Substitution Treatment.” *Addiction* 94 (1999): 665–74.

Strain, Eric. “Moderate-vs High-Dose Methadone in the Treatment of Opioid Dependence.” *Journal of the American Medical Association* 281 (1999): 1000–5.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.

## Side effects

Most adverse effects of methadone are mild and seen only in the beginning of therapy. Initially patients may develop sedation and analgesia. It takes about four to six weeks for tolerance to these effects to develop. Tolerance to constipation and sweating may take longer to develop.

A few patients who are on larger doses of methadone may experience respiratory problems. These patients also may experience unwanted cardiac effects.

A small number of patients report a decrease in libido, impotence, and premature, delayed, or failed ejaculation. There are a few reports of occasional menstrual irregularities in female patients on methadone.

## Interactions

Life-threatening interactions with other drugs have not been identified. One of the initial side effects of methadone could include dizziness and sedation, and these effects are worsened if the patient is also taking other narcotics, **benzodiazepines**, or is consuming alcohol.

## Methamphetamine

### Definition

Methamphetamine is a central nervous system (CNS) stimulant with recognized medical value. The U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) lists methamphetamine as a Schedule II drug, which means it has high **abuse** potential and must be prescribed by a prescription that cannot be refilled.

Methamphetamine is produced illegally in many countries, including the United States, and can be synthesized with readily available materials. The drug’s misuse is deemed to be a major societal problem. Methamphetamine is highly addictive and goes by the street names of ice, crystal, crystal meth, speed, crank, and glass.

### Description and doses

Methamphetamine is similar to other CNS stimulants, such as amphetamine (its parent drug),



**Crystal methamphetamine in rock form.** (Mikael Karlsson/Alamy)

**methylphenidate**, and **cocaine**, in that it stimulates **dopamine** reward pathways in the **brain**. Consistent with its stimulant profile, methamphetamine causes increased activity and talkativeness, decreased appetite and **fatigue**, and a general sense of well-being. Compared to amphetamine, methamphetamine is more potent and longer lasting, and it has more harmful effects on the brain. In animals, a single high dose of methamphetamine has been shown to damage nerve terminals in the dopamine-containing regions of the brain.

Approved medical indications for the drug are the sleep disorder **narcolepsy**, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, and extreme **obesity**, but in each case methamphetamine is a second-line drug at best.

The prescription drug (brand name Desoxyn) comes in the form of a small white tablet, which is orally ingested. Dosing begins at 5 mg once or twice a day and is increased weekly until the lowest effective dose is attained. Desoxyn should not be taken with other stimulants (including caffeine and decongestants) or antidepressant drugs (especially monoamine oxidase inhibitors, but also tricyclic **antidepressants**). Desoxyn should not be taken by patients with glaucoma, cardiovascular disease (including hypertension and arteriosclerosis), or hyperthyroidism.

Methamphetamine is a white, odorless, bitter-tasting crystalline powder that easily dissolves in water or alcohol. Misuse occurs in many forms, as methamphetamine can be smoked, snorted, injected, or taken orally. When smoked or injected, methamphetamine enters the brain very rapidly and immediately produces an intense but short-lived rush that

many abusers find extremely pleasurable. Snorting or oral ingestion produces euphoria—a feeling of being high—within minutes. As with other abused stimulants, methamphetamine is most often used in a binge-and-crash pattern. A “run” of repeated doses may be continued over the course of days (binge) before stopping (crash). Exhaustion occurs with repeated use of methamphetamine, involving intense fatigue and need for sleep after the stimulation phase.

## Demographics

National surveys have found that more than 10 million people have tried methamphetamine at least once and more than a million reported use in the last year. Teenagers are a target group for prevention strategies as adolescence and young adulthood are associated with exposure to and an inclination to experiment with drugs. Indeed, 4.5% of high school seniors said that they had tried methamphetamine.

Evidence suggests that methamphetamine abuse is a growing problem in the United States. Emergency room visits related to the drug increased 50% between 1995 and 2002, and treatment program admissions for methamphetamine **addiction** increased from 1% of all drug abuse admissions in 1992 to 8% in 2004.

## Health consequences

Short-term effects of methamphetamine relate to its stimulation of the brain and the cardiovascular system. Euphoria and rush, alertness, increased physical activity, and decreased sleep and appetite occur, and any or all of these effects can lead to compulsive use of the drug that characterizes addiction. In addition, methamphetamine causes rapid heart beat, increased respiration, and increased blood pressure, and with very high doses, hyperthermia and convulsions can occur.

Chronic use of methamphetamine can result in two hallmark features of addiction: tolerance and dependence. Tolerance to the euphoric effects in particular can prompt abusers to take higher or more frequent doses of the drug. Withdrawal symptoms in chronic users include **depression**, **anxiety**, fatigue, and an intense craving for the drug. Users who inject methamphetamine risk contracting life-threatening viruses such as HIV and hepatitis through the use of dirty needles.

With repeated use, methamphetamine can cause anxiety, **insomnia**, mood disturbances, confusion, and violent behavior. Psychotic features sometimes emerge, such as **paranoia**, **hallucinations**, and **delusions**, and can last well after methamphetamine use

## KEY TERMS

**Addiction**—A chronic condition characterized by compulsive drug-seeking and drug-using behavior.

**Amphe<sup>t</sup>amine**—A central nervous system stimulant.

**Antidepressant**—A medication taken to alleviate clinical depression.

**Antipsychotic**—A medication taken to alleviate psychotic symptoms, including delusions and hallucinations.

**Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder**—A mental disorder in which patients have trouble paying attention, sitting still, and controlling impulses; usually emerges in childhood.

**Central nervous system (CNS)**—The brain and spinal cord.

**Cocaine**—A central nervous system stimulant that is highly addictive and widely abused.

**Craving**—A powerful and sometime uncontrollable urge to take drugs.

**Dependence**—An altered psychological or physiological state produced by repeated administration of a drug such that continued presence of the drug is required to prevent withdrawal.

**Dopamine**—A chemical messenger in the brain that regulates reward and movement.

**Methylphenidate**—A central nervous system stimulant that alleviates the symptoms of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder.

**Tolerance**—The physical state produced when, with repeated dosing, a drug produces a smaller effect or a higher dose is required to achieve the same effect.

**Withdrawal**—A syndrome of ill effects that occurs when administration of a dependence producing drug ceases.

has stopped. Changes in brain and mental function have been demonstrated with chronic use. While some effects are reversible, others are very long-lasting, perhaps representing permanent neurotoxicity. **Stroke** and weight loss are other long-term effects.

### Treatment

For acute intoxication accompanied by **psychosis**, patients may be calmed by reassurance and a quiet setting, but sometimes antipsychotic drugs are warranted.

The most effective treatment for methamphetamine addiction is cognitive-behavioral **intervention** such as counseling but may also include **family education**, drug testing, and group support in a twelve-step program. The goal of these modalities is to modify the patient's thinking, expectancies, and behaviors to increase coping skills in the face of life's stressors. Contingent management is a promising behavioral intervention, where incentives are provided in exchange for staying clean and for participating in treatment.

Antidepressant drugs such as bupropion can be a useful treatment aid, but at this time there are no FDA-approved medications to treat stimulant addiction.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

"Amphetamines." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy, Professional Edition*. 18th ed. Mark H. Beers, ed. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., 2005.

"Methamphetamine." *AHFS Drug Information*. Gerald K. McEvoy, Pharm.D, ed. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2006.

#### PERIODICALS

"Methamphetamine: Abuse and Addiction." The National Institute on Drug Abuse Research Report Series. NIH Publication Number 06-4210, Sept. 2006.

#### WEB SITES

"Amphetamines." *MayoClinic.com*. <<http://mayoclinic.com/health/drug-information/DR602079>>.

"Drug Scheduling." *U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration*. <<http://www.usdoj.gov/dea/pubs/scheduling.pdf>>

Jill U. Adams

## Methylphenidate

### Definition

Methylphenidate is a mild, central nervous system stimulant. In the United States, the drug is sold under the brand name Ritalin.

### Purpose

Methylphenidate is used primarily in the treatment of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) in children and adults. It also may be used to treat the sleep disorder, **narcolepsy**. In rare cases, it is used to decrease sedation and lethargy from opioid pain



**A methylphenidate (concerta) tablet.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by Permission.)

medications and to help improve the mood of a terminally ill person suffering from **depression**.

### Description

The mode of action for methylphenidate is not fully understood. It presumably activates the **brain** stem arousal system and cortex to produce a stimulant effect. The brain stem arousal system increases levels of electrical activity in the brain. The effect of methylphenidate is to produce increased alertness and, although children with ADHD are overactive and have decreased attention spans, in these children, methylphenidate actually decreases motor restlessness and increases attention span. Tablets are available in 5-, 10-, and 20-mg strengths, as well as in an extended release, 20-mg tablet.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended dosage of methylphenidate is determined by trial and error based on individual responses. Methylphenidate is usually administered in two or three separate doses each day, preferably 45 minutes before a meal. For children suffering from ADHD, the initial recommended dosage is 5 mg twice daily before breakfast and lunch, increased by 5–10 mg per week to a maximum of 60 mg per day. The average total dosage is 20–30 mg per day, although 10–60 mg is not uncommon. For narcolepsy in adults, the recommended dose is 5–20 mg two to three times a day, 30–45 minutes before meals.

The drug should be taken exactly as directed. Methylphenidate can become habit forming if taken in greater amounts or for longer periods than necessary. Individuals should take the last dose of the day before 6 P.M. to decrease sleep difficulties. The tablet

should not be broken or crushed, as this changes the time for absorption. If the normal time of administration is missed, persons should take the drug as soon as possible. However, two tablets should not be taken at the same time.

### Precautions

Methylphenidate has a great potential to produce physical and mental dependence. Administration should not be stopped abruptly. Such action can cause withdrawal symptoms including depression, paranoid feelings, thoughts of **suicide**, **anxiety**, agitation, and sleep disturbances. Methylphenidate should not be given to persons with extreme anxiety, tension, agitation, severe depression, mental or emotional instability, or a history of alcohol or drug **abuse**. It is not indicated for use by those with Tourette's syndrome, people with **tic disorders**, glaucoma, or certain mental-health conditions. The drug should be used cautiously in persons with high blood pressure, those with a history of **seizures**, and women who are breastfeeding. Methylphenidate is not typically ordered for women during their childbearing years, unless the physician determines that the benefits outweigh the risks.

Methylphenidate should not be ordered for children younger than six years of age as its safety has not been determined in this age group. People should not drive or operate machinery or appliances until they understand how this drug affects them. They should not drive if they become lightheaded or dizzy. Methylphenidate may cause irregularities in the composition of the blood and produce changes in liver function. People taking methylphenidate should receive regular blood tests.

### Side effects

The most common side effects are nervousness, difficulties with sleep, tachycardia, and increased blood pressure. Reducing the dose or changing the time the drug is taken may reduce some side effects. Affected persons should discuss any adverse reactions with their health care professional. Individuals taking methylphenidate should receive regular blood pressure and pulse checks. Methylphenidate also may cause dizziness, irritability, vision changes, drowsiness, and a poor appetite. Less common side effects include chest pain, palpitations, joint pain, skin rash, and uncontrolled movements or speech. Side effects may also include a rapid or irregular heartbeat, stomach upset, nausea, headache, blood in the urine



**A ritalin methylphenidate tablet.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

or stools, muscle cramps, red dots on the skin, or bruises. At higher dosages or with long-term use, people may experience weight loss or mental changes such as confusion, false beliefs, mood changes, **hallucinations**, or feelings that they or their environment are not real.

## Interactions

Several drugs may interact adversely with methylphenidate, including anticoagulants and drugs to prevent seizures, combat depression, and treat high blood pressure. The dosages of these drugs may be reduced when taken simultaneously with methylphenidate.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.
- Breggin, Peter R. and Dick Scruggs. *Talking Back to Ritalin: What Doctors Aren't Telling You About Stimulants and ADHD*. Boulder, CO: Perseus Book Group, 2001.
- Foreman, John C. and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd Ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.
- Markowitz, John S., and C. Lindsay DeVane. *The Ritalin Handbook*. Kearney, NJ: Morris Publishing, 2000.
- Page, Clive P. and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.
- Von Boxtel, Chris, Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Miller, A. R., C. E. Lalonde, K. M. McGrail, and R. W. Armstrong. "Prescription of methylphenidate to chil-

## KEY TERMS

**Anticoagulant**—A medication (such as Warfarin, Coumadin, or Heparin) that decreases the blood's clotting ability preventing the formation of new clots. Although anticoagulants will not dissolve existing clots, they can stop them from getting larger. These drugs are commonly called blood thinners.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Opiate**—A drug derived from opium.

**Tachycardia**—A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

**Tourette's syndrome**—Neurological disorder characterized by multiple involuntary movements and uncontrollable vocalizations called tics that come and go over years, usually beginning in childhood and becoming chronic. Sometimes the tics include inappropriate language.

dren and youth, 1990-1996." *Canadian Medical Journal* (2001) 165, no. 11: 1489-1494.

Perring C. "Medicating children: the case of Ritalin." *Bioethics* (1997) 11, no. 3-4: 228-240.

Sund, A. M., and P. Zeiner. "Does extended medication with amphetamine or methylphenidate reduce growth in hyperactive children?" *Norwegian Journal of Psychiatry* (2002) 56, no. 1: 53-57.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org>>.

American College of Physicians. 190 N Independence Mall West, Philadelphia, PA 19106-1572. Telephone: (800) 523-1546, x2600 or (215) 351-2600. Web site: <<http://www.acponline.org>>.

American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax (202) 682-6850.

American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics; 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314; Phone: (703) 836-6981. Fax: (703) 836-5223.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060.

National Institute on Drug Abuse: <<http://www.nida.nih.gov/Infofax/ritalin.html>>. Nurse's PDR Resource Center. <<http://www.nursespdr.com/members/database/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

## Mini-mental state examination

### Definition

The mini-mental state examination, which is also known as the MMSE, standardized MMSE, SMMSE, or the Folstein, is a brief examination consisting of eleven questions intended to evaluate an adult patient's level of cognitive functioning. It was introduced in 1975 and designed for use with elderly patients who are unable to cooperate at an optimum level with an examiner for only a brief period of time—no more than a few minutes.

### Purpose

The MMSE concentrates on the cognitive aspects of mental functioning, excluding questions about the patient's mood or such abnormal experiences as **dissociation**. It is used most often to evaluate older adults for **delirium** or **dementia**. The MMSE can be used to detect a decline in cognitive function; to follow the course of the patient's illness, and to monitor responses to treatment. Recently, it has been professionally approved as a measurement of a patient's ability to complete an advance directive, or so-called living will.

The test has also been used in research as a screener in epidemiological studies for disorders that affect cognition, and to monitor changes in subjects' cognition during **clinical trials**. In 2001 the MMSE was recommended by a special panel of experts for use as a screener in evaluating cognitive function in depressed patients. It has also been used recently to measure the effects of **acupuncture** in improving mood and some cognitive skills in patients with Alzheimer's.

The MMSE evaluates six areas of cognitive function: orientation; attention; immediate recall; short-term recall; language; and the ability to follow simple verbal and written commands. In addition, it provides a total score allowing the examiner to place the patient on a scale of cognitive function. It correlates well with a standard measure of cognition in adults, the **Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale** (WAIS). In contrast to the Wechsler, which takes about an hour or more to

administer, the MMSE can be completed in ten minutes or less.

### Precautions

The MMSE should not be used as the sole criterion for assessment during differential **diagnosis** of psychiatric disorders, as there are many disorders and conditions that affect cognitive functioning. The results of the MMSE should be interpreted in the context of the patient's history, a full mental status examination, a physical examination, and laboratory findings, if any.

A patient's score on the MMSE must be interpreted according to his or her age and educational level. Whereas the median score is 29 for persons 18–24 years of age, it is 25 for those who are 80 or older. The median score is 22 for persons with a fourth-grade education or less; 26 for those who completed the eighth grade; and 29 for those who completed high school or college. There is a complete table available for interpreting MMSE scores according to the patient's reference groups for age and education level.

The MMSE should be administered and scored only by a qualified health care professional, such as a **psychologist**, physician, or nurse.

### Description

The mini-mental state examination is divided into two sections. The first part requires vocal responses to the examiner's questions. The patient is asked to repeat a short phrase after the examiner; to count backward from 100 by 7s; to name the current President of the United States (in Great Britain, the names of the Queen and her four children); and similar brief items. It tests the patient's orientation, memory, and attention. The maximum score on this section is 21.

In the second part of the examination, the patient is asked to follow verbal and written instructions, write a sentence spontaneously, and copy a complex geometric figure similar to a Bender-Gestalt figure—a series of nine designs each on separate cards given the test taker who is asked to reproduce them on blank paper. The sentence item usually asks the patient to explain the meaning of a simple proverb such as "People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones." The maximum score for the second section is 9. Patients with vision problems can be assisted with large writing. The MMSE is not timed.

There is little information available on allowances made in scoring the MMSE for patients whose first

## KEY TERMS

**Cognition**—The act or process of knowing or perceiving.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness. It can be distinguished from dementia by its relatively sudden onset and variation in the severity of the symptoms.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Orientation**—In psychiatry, the ability to locate oneself in one's environment with respect to time, place and people.

language is not English or who have difficulty with standard spoken English.

## Results

The maximum total score on the MMSE is 30. As a rule, scores of 20 or lower indicate delirium, dementia, **schizophrenia**, or a mood disorder. Normal subjects and those with a primary diagnosis of personality disorder score close to the median for their age and education level.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Eisendrath, Stuart J., MD, and Jonathan E. Lichtmacher, MD. "Psychiatric Disorders: Psychiatric Assessment." In *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment 2001*. 40th edition. Edited by L. M. Tierney, Jr., MD, and others. New York: Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

Crum, R. M., and others. "Population-Based Norms for the Mini-Mental State Examination by Age and Educational Level." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 269 (1993): 2386–2391.

Folstein, Marshal F., Susan E. Folstein, and Paul R.

McHugh. "Mini-mental state: A practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 12 (1975): 189–198.

Lombardo, Emerson, L. Vehvilainen, W. L. Ooi, and others. "Acupuncture to Treat Anxiety and Depression in Alzheimer's." *The Gerontologist* (October 15, 2001): 391.

Mor, Vincent. "SMMSE Measures Capacity for Advance Directives." *Brown University Long-Term Care Quality Letter* 8 (July 1996): 6.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street, NW. Washington, DC 20005. (202) 682-6220.  
[<www.psych.org>](http://www.psych.org).

Department of Psychiatry, Tufts University School of Medicine/Tufts-New England Medical Center.  
[<www.nemc.org>](http://www.nemc.org).

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS). Building 31, Room 8A06, 9000 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892. (301) 496-5751.  
[<www.ninds.nih.gov>](http://www.ninds.nih.gov).

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory

### Definition

The Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory, known as the MMPI, and its revised second edition (MMPI-2) are psychological assessment instruments completed by the person being evaluated, and scored and interpreted by the examiner. The clinician evaluates the test taker's personal characteristics by comparing the test taker's answers to those given by various psychiatric and nonpsychiatric comparison groups. By analyzing the test taker's patterns of response to the test items, the examiner is able to draw some tentative conclusions about the client's level of adaptation, behavioral characteristics, and personality traits. The MMPI-2 is preferred to the older MMPI because of its larger and more representative community comparison group (also referred to as the "normative" group). The original version of the MMPI is no longer available from the publisher, although some institutions continue to use old copies of it.

### Purpose

The results of the MMPI-2 allow the test administrator to make inferences about the client's typical behaviors and way of thinking. The test outcomes help

the examiner to determine the test taker's severity of impairment, outlook on life, approaches to problem solving, typical mood states, likely diagnoses, and potential problems in treatment. The MMPI-2 is used in a wide range of settings for a variety of procedures. The inventory is often used as part of inpatient psychiatric assessments; differential **diagnosis**; and outpatient evaluations. In addition, the instrument is often used by expert witnesses in forensic settings as part of an evaluation of a defendant's mental health, particularly in criminal cases. The MMPI has also been used to evaluate candidates for employment in some fields, and in educational counseling.

### Precautions

Although the MMPI-2 may be administered by trained clerical staff or by computer, for best results the examiner should meet the test taker before giving the test in order to establish the context and reassure the client. Most importantly, the test responses should be interpreted only by a qualified mental health professional with postgraduate education in psychological assessment and specialized training in the use of the MMPI-2. While computer-generated narrative reports are available and can be a useful tool, they should be evaluated (and edited if needed) by the on-site professional to individualize the reported results. Computer scoring and hypothesis generation is complex, and only reputable software programs should be used.

Although the MMPI-2 may yield extensive information about the client, it is not a replacement for a clinical interview. The clinical interview helps the test administrator to develop conclusions that best apply to the client from the many hypotheses generated from test results. Furthermore, important aspects of the client's behaviors may emerge in an interview that were not reflected in the test results. For similar reasons, the test results should not be interpreted until the clinician has obtained a biopsychosocial history from the client.

The MMPI-2 should be administered as part of a battery, or group, of tests rather than as an isolated assessment measure. A comprehensive assessment of a person will typically include the Rorschach; the **Thematic Apperception Test** (TAT) or the Sentence Completion Test; and the **Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale**, Revised (WAIS-R) or similar test of cognitive functioning as well as the MMPI-2.

### Description

The MMPI-2 is composed of 567 true/false items. It can be administered using a printed test booklet and

an answer sheet filled in by hand, or by responding to the items on a computer. For the person with limited reading skills or the visually impaired respondent, the MMPI-2 items are available on audiotape. Although the MMPI-2 is frequently referred to as a test, it is not an academic test with "right" and "wrong" answers. Personality inventories like the MMPI-2 are intended to discover what the respondent is like as a person. A number of areas are "tapped into" by the MMPI-2 to answer such questions as: "Who is this person and how would he or she typically feel, think and behave? What psychological problems and issues are relevant to this person?" Associations between patterns of answers to test items and particular traits or behaviors have been discovered through personality research conducted with the MMPI-2. The inventory items are not arranged into topics or areas on the test. The areas of personality that are measured are interspersed in a somewhat random fashion throughout the MMPI-2 booklet. Some examples of true-or-false statements similar to those on the MMPI-2 are: "I wake up with a headache almost every day"; "I certainly feel worthless sometimes"; "I have had peculiar and disturbing experiences that most other people have not had"; "I would like to do the work of a choir director."

The MMPI-2 is intended for use with adults over age 18; a similar test, the MMPI-A, is designed for use with adolescents. The publisher produces the MMPI-2 in English and Spanish versions. The test has also been translated into Dutch-Flemish, two French dialects (France and Canada), German, Hebrew, Hmong, Italian, and three Spanish dialects (for Spain, Mexico or United States).

From the 1940s to the 1980s, the original MMPI was the most widely used and most intensely researched psychological assessment instrument in the United States and worldwide. The test was originally developed in 1943 using a process called empirical keying, which was an innovation. Most assessment tools prior to the MMPI used questions or tasks that were merely assumed by the test designer to realistically assess the behaviors under question. The empirical keying process was radically different. To develop empirical keying, the creators of the original MMPI wrote a wide range of true-or-false statements, many of which did not directly target typical psychiatric topics. Research was then conducted with groups of psychiatric inpatients, hospital visitors, college students and medical inpatients, who took the MMPI in order to determine which test items reliably differentiated the psychiatric patients from the others. The test developers also evaluated the items that reliably

distinguished groups of patients with a particular diagnosis from the remaining pool of psychiatric patient respondents; these items were grouped into subsets referred to as clinical scales.

An additional innovation in the original MMPI was the presence of validity scales embedded in the test questions. These sets of items, scattered randomly throughout the MMPI-2, allow the examiner to assess whether the respondent answered questions in an open and honest manner, or tried to exaggerate or conceal information. One means of checking for distortions in responding to the instrument is asking whether the test taker refused to admit to some less-than-ideal actions that most people probably engage in and will admit to doing. An example of this type of question would be (true or false) "If I could sneak into the county fair or an amusement park without paying, I would." Another type of validity check that assesses honesty in responses is whether the client admits to participating in far more unusual behaviors and actions than were admitted to by both the psychiatric comparison group and the general community sample. The validity scales also identify whether the test taker responded inconsistently or randomly.

The MMPI-2, which has demonstrated continuity and comparability with its predecessor, was published in 1989. The revised version was based on a much larger and more racially and culturally diverse normative community comparison group than the original version. Also, more in-depth and stringent research on the qualities and behaviors associated with different patterns of scores allows improved accuracy in predicting test-respondents' traits and behaviors from their test results.

## Results

The true/false items are organized after scoring into validity, clinical, and content scales. The inventory may be scored manually or by computer. After scoring, the configuration of the test taker's scale scores is marked on a profile form that contrasts each client's responses to results obtained by the representative community comparison group. The clinician is able to compare a respondent's choices to those of a large normative comparison group as well as to the results derived from earlier MMPI and MMPI-2 studies. The clinician forms inferences about the client by analyzing his or her response patterns on the validity, clinical and content scales, using published guidebooks to the MMPI-2. These texts are based on results obtained from over 10,000 MMPI/MMPI-2 research studies.

## KEY TERMS

**Battery**—A number of separate items (such as tests) used together. In psychology, a group or series of tests given with a common purpose, such as personality assessment or measurement of intelligence.

**Biopsychosocial history**—A history of significant past and current experiences that influence client behaviors, including medical, educational, employment, and interpersonal experiences. Alcohol or drug use and involvement with the legal system are also assessed in a biopsychosocial history.

**Empirical**—Verified by actual experience or by scientific experimentation.

**Forensic**—Pertaining to courtroom procedure or evidence used in courts of law.

**Hypothesis**—An assumption, proposition, or educated guess that can be tested empirically.

**Personality inventory**—A type of psychological test that is designed to assess a client's major personality traits, behavioral patterns, coping styles, and similar characteristics. The MMPI-2 is an example of a personality inventory.

**Psychological assessment**—A process of gathering and synthesizing information about a person's psychological makeup and history for a specific purpose, which may be educational, diagnostic, or forensic.

**Scale**—A subset of test items from a multi-item test.

In addition to the standard validity, clinical, and content scales, numerous additional scales for the MMPI have been created for special purposes over the years by researchers. These special supplementary scale scores are often incorporated into the examiner's interpretation of the test results. Commonly used supplementary scales include the MacAndrews Revised Alcoholism Scale, the **Addiction** Potential Scale, and the **Anxiety** Scale. The clinician may also choose to obtain computerized reporting, which yields behavioral hypotheses about the respondent, using scoring and interpretation algorithms applied to a commercial database.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Butcher, J. N., W. G. Dahlstrom, J. R. Graham, A. Tellegen, and B. Kaemmer. *MMPI-2: Manual for Administration, Scoring and Interpretation*. Revised. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1989.

- Butcher, J. N. and C. L. Williams. *Essentials of MMPI-2 and MMPI-A Interpretation*. Revised. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1999.
- Graham, John R. *MMPI-2: Assessing Personality and Psychopathology*. 3rd edition, revised. New York: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Graham, John R., Yossef S. Ben-Porath, and John L. McNulty. *MMPI-2: Correlates for Outpatient Community Mental Health Settings*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

- McNulty, J. L., J. R. Graham, and Y. Ben-Porath. "An empirical examination of the correlates of well-defined and not defined MMPI-2 codetypes." *Journal of Personality Assessment* 71 (1998): 393-410.

Deborah Rosch Eifert, Ph.D.

## Mirtazapine

### Definition

Mirtazapine is most commonly used to treat **depression**. Mirtazapine is available in the United States under the trade names of Remeron and Remeron SolTab.

Mirtazapine, sold under the trade name Remeron, is taken by mouth and swallowed whole. Remeron SolTabs should be allowed to dissolve in the mouth. No water is needed when taking the SolTabs, since these tablets disintegrate in saliva and are not swallowed whole.

### Purpose

Mirtazapine is best known for treating depression. However, it may also be used for treating **anxiety** or to make people drowsy just before surgery.

### Description

Mirtazapine is usually thought of as an antidepressant, or a drug that alleviates symptoms of depression. Approved by the Federal Drug Administration (FDA) in 1996, it is believed to alter the activities of some chemicals in the **brain** and, in this way, reduce chemical imbalances responsible for causing depression and anxiety. As with all **antidepressants**, it may take several weeks of treatment before full beneficial effects are seen. Mirtazapine is broken down by the liver and eliminated from the body mostly by the kidneys. It is supplied in 15-, 30-, and 45-mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended initial dose of mirtazapine is 15 mg taken at bedtime. The dose may be increased in 15-mg increments every one or two weeks as needed until symptoms of depression or anxiety resolve. Typical doses range between 15 and 45 mg. Dosages above 45 mg per day are not recommended. Elderly people or those with liver or kidney disease should use mirtazapine carefully, since they may be more sensitive to some of the drug's side effects.

### Precautions

Mirtazapine may cause weight gain and may increase cholesterol levels and should be used carefully in overweight individuals and those with high cholesterol levels. If symptoms of fever, sore throat, or irritation in the mouth occur, a health care provider should be notified. Rarely, mirtazapine may lower blood counts, causing people to be at an increased risk of serious complications, including infections. In theory, mirtazapine may increase the tendency for **seizures**. As a result, it should be used carefully in people with epilepsy or other seizure disorders. Mirtazapine may alter moods or cause mania. It should be used carefully in people with a history of mania. Mirtazapine may alter liver function and should be used cautiously by those with a history of liver disease. If abdominal pain, yellowing of the skin or eyes, darkening of urine, or itching occurs, a health care provider should be notified immediately.

More than 50% of individuals using mirtazapine report feeling sleepier than normal and 7% feel dizzy. As a result, people taking mirtazapine should not participate in activities that require mental alertness—like driving—until they know how the drug will affect them. Because there is an increased likelihood of **suicide** in depressed individuals, close supervision of those at high risk for suicide attempts using this drug is recommended. Mirtazapine is not recommended in pregnant or breast-feeding women.

### Side effects

The most common side effects that cause people to stop taking mirtazapine are sleepiness and nausea. Other common side effects are dizziness, increased appetite and weight gain. Less common adverse effects include weakness and muscle aches, flu-like symptoms, low blood-cell counts, high cholesterol, back pain, chest pain, rapid heartbeats, dry mouth, constipation, water retention, difficulty sleeping, nightmares, abnormal thoughts, vision disturbances, ringing in the ears,

## KEY TERMS

**Anti-anxiety agent**—A medication that is used to treat symptoms of generalized fear that dominates a person's life.

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders, as well.

**Depression**—A mental state characterized by excessive sadness. Other symptoms include altered sleep patterns, thoughts of suicide, difficulty concentrating, agitation, lack of energy, and loss of enjoyment in activities that are usually pleasurable.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

abnormal taste in the mouth, tremor, confusion, upset stomach, and increased urination.

### Interactions

Use of mirtazapine with antidepressants referred to as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) such as Parnate (**tranylcypromine**) and Nardil (**phenelzine**), is strongly prohibited due to the potential for high fever, muscle stiffness, sudden muscle spasms, rapid changes in heart rate and blood pressure, and the possibility of death. In fact, there should be a lapse of at least 14 days between taking an MAOI and mirtazapine.

Because mirtazapine may cause drowsiness, it should be used carefully with other medications that also make people prone to sleepiness, such as antidepressants, antipsychotics, antihistamines, anti-anxiety agents, and alcohol. Increased sleepiness has been reported when mirtazapine was used with both alcohol and the anti-anxiety drug **diazepam**.

*See also* Depression and depressive disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th Edition. St. Louis, MO: Facts and Comparisons; Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2002.

Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, Inc, 1999.

Organon Staff. *Remeron Package Insert*. West Orange, NJ: Organon Inc, 2001.

Kelly Karpa, RPh, Ph.D.

## Mixed episode

### Definition

A mixed episode is a discrete period during which a person experiences nearly daily fluctuations in mood that qualify for diagnoses of **manic episode** and major depressive episode. Over the course of at least one week, the mood of a person experiencing a mixed episode will rapidly change between abnormal happiness or euphoria and sadness or irritability.

### Description

To qualify for a **diagnosis** of mixed episode, symptoms must be severe enough to interfere with an individual's ability to carry out daily routines at work or home, or to require **hospitalization**. Males may be more susceptible to this condition than females. Young people and those more than 60 years of age with **bipolar disorder** may be more prone to mixed episodes than others. A manic episode or a major depressive episode is more likely to turn into a mixed episode than vice versa. Manic episodes can also appear in an individual who does not suffer from these or other disturbances. If the episode can be attributed to side effects related to any medical treatment, medical condition, medication, or drugs of **abuse**, it is not classified as a mixed episode.

*See also* Bipolar disorder; Depression and depressive disorders; Major depressive disorder.

Dean A. Haycock, Ph.D.

## Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder

### Definition

Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder is diagnosed when a child has problems expressing him- or herself using spoken language, and also has problems understanding what people say to him or her.

## Description

Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder is generally a disorder of childhood. There are two types of mixed receptive-expressive language disorder: developmental and acquired. Developmental mixed receptive-expressive language disorder does not have a known cause and normally appears at the time that a child is learning to talk. Acquired mixed receptive-expressive language disorder is caused by direct damage to the **brain**. It occurs suddenly after such events as a **stroke** or traumatic head injury. The acquired type can occur at any age.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is no known cause of developmental mixed receptive-expressive language disorder. Researchers are conducting ongoing studies to determine whether biological or environmental factors may be involved. The acquired form of the disorder results from direct damage to the brain. Damage can be sustained during a stroke, or as the result of traumatic head injury, **seizures**, or other medical conditions. The specific symptoms of the acquired form of the disorder generally depend on the parts of the patient's brain that have been injured and the severity of the damage.

### Symptoms

The signs and symptoms of mixed receptive-expressive language disorder are for the most part the same as the symptoms of **expressive language disorder**. The disorder has signs and symptoms that vary considerably from child to child. In general, mixed receptive-expressive language disorder is characterized by a child's difficulty with spoken communication. The child does not have problems with the pronunciation of words, which is found in **phonological disorder**. The child does, however, have problems constructing coherent sentences, using proper grammar, recalling words, or similar communication problems. A child with mixed receptive-expressive language disorder is not able to communicate thoughts, needs, or wants at the same level or with the same complexity as his or her peers. In addition, the child often has a smaller vocabulary than his or her peers.

Children with mixed receptive-expressive language disorder also have significant problems understanding what other people are saying to them. This lack of comprehension may result in inappropriate responses or failure to follow directions. Some people think these children are being deliberately stubborn or

obnoxious, but this is not the case. They simply do not understand what is being said. Some children with this disorder have problems understanding such specific types of terms as abstract nouns, complex sentences, or spatial terms.

## Diagnosis

The **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, fourth edition, text revised (*DSM-IV-TR*), which is the standard reference work consulted by mental health professionals, specifies four general criteria for diagnosing mixed receptive-expressive language disorder. The first criterion states that the child communicates using speech and appears to understand spoken language at a level that is lower than expected for the child's general level of intelligence. Second, the child's problems with self-expression and comprehension must create difficulties for him or her in everyday life or in achieving his or her academic goals. If the child understands what is being said at a level that is normal for his or her age or stage of development, then the **diagnosis** would be expressive language disorder. If the child is mentally retarded, hard of hearing, or has other physical problems, the difficulties with speech must be greater than generally occurs with the other handicaps the child may have in order for the child to be diagnosed with this disorder.

The disorder is usually diagnosed in children because a parent or teacher expresses concern about the child's problems with spoken communication. The child's pediatrician may give the child a physical examination to rule out such medical problems as hearing loss. Specific testing for mixed expressive-receptive language disorder requires the examiner to demonstrate that the child not only communicates less well than expected, but also understands speech less well. It can be hard, however, to determine what a child understands. As a result, most examiners will use non-verbal tests in addition to tests that require spoken questions and answers in order to assess the child's condition as accurately as possible. In children who are mildly hearing-impaired, the problem can often be corrected by using hearing aids. Children who speak a language other than English (or the dominant language of their society) at home should be tested in that language if possible. In some cases, the child's ability to understand and communicate in English is the problem, not his or her competence with spoken language in general.

## Demographics

Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder is diagnosed in about 5% of preschool-age children, and 3% of children in school. It is less common than expressive language disorder. Children who have mixed receptive-expressive language disorder are more likely to have other disorders as well. Between 40%–60% of preschoolers who have this disorder may also have phonological disorder (difficulty forming sounds). **Reading disorder** is linked to as many as half the children with mixed receptive-expressive language disorder who are of school age. Children with mixed receptive-expressive language disorder are also more likely to have psychiatric disorders, especially attention-deficit disorder (ADD); it is estimated that 30–60 percent of children with mixed receptive-expressive language disorder also have ADD. Children from families with a history of language disorders are more likely to have this or other language disorders.

## Treatment

Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder should be treated as soon as it is identified. Early **intervention** is the key to a successful outcome. Treatment involves teachers, siblings, parents, and anyone else who interacts regularly with the child. Regularly scheduled one-on-one treatment that focuses on specific language skills can also be effective, especially when combined with a more general approach involving family members and caregivers. Teaching children with this disorder specific **communication skills** so that they can interact with their peers is important, as problems in this area may lead to later social isolation, **depression**, or behavioral problems. Children who are diagnosed early and taught reading skills may benefit especially, because problems with reading are often associated with mixed receptive-expressive language disorder and can cause serious long-term academic problems. There is little information comparing different treatment methods; often several are tried in combination.

## Prognosis

The developmental form of mixed receptive-expressive language disorder is less likely to resolve well than the developmental form of expressive language disorder. Most children with the disorder continue to have problems with language skills. They develop them at a much slower rate than their peers, which puts them at a growing disadvantage throughout their educational career. Some persons diagnosed

## KEY TERMS

**Phonological disorder**—A developmental disorder of childhood in which the child fails to use speech sounds that are appropriate for his or her age level and native language or dialect.

with the disorder as children have significant problems with expressing themselves and understanding others in adult life.

The prognosis of the acquired type of mixed receptive-expressive language disorder depends on the nature and location of the brain injury. Some people get their language skills back over days or months. For others it takes years, and some people never fully recover expressive language function or the ability to understand speech.

## Prevention

Because the causes of developmental mixed receptive-expressive language disorder are unclear, there are no specific ways to prevent it. A healthy diet during pregnancy and regular prenatal care are always recommended. Because the acquired form of the disorder is caused by damage to the brain, anything that helps to prevent brain damage may offer protection against that form of the disorder. Preventive measures include such precautions as lowering blood cholesterol levels, which may help to prevent stroke; or wearing bicycle helmets or automobile seat belts to prevent traumatic head injury.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Stein, Martin T., Steven Parker, James Coplan, Heidi Feldman. "Expressive Language Delay in a Toddler." *Journal of Developmental & Behavioral Pediatrics* 22 no. 2 (April 2001): 99.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. (847) 434-4000. <[www.aap.org](http://www.aap.org)>.

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721. <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.

American Speech-Language-Hearing Association. 10801 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852. (800) 638-8355. <<http://www.asha.org>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## MMPI see Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory

Moban see Molindone



**One method of learning is modeling, in which imitation of another instills a given skill, as illustrated by the dancers above. (ImageState/Alamy)**

## Modeling

### Definition

Modeling, which is also called observational learning or imitation, is a behaviorally based procedure that involves the use of live or symbolic models to demonstrate a particular behavior, thought, or attitude that a client may want to acquire or change. Modeling is sometimes called vicarious learning, because the client need not actually perform the behavior in order to learn it.

### Purpose

Modeling therapy is based on social learning theory. This theory emphasizes the importance of learning that is derived from observing and imitating role models, and learning about rewards and punishments that follow behavior. The technique has been used to eliminate unwanted behaviors, reduce excessive fears, facilitate learning of social behaviors, and many more. Modeling may be used either to strengthen or to weaken previously learned behaviors.

Modeling has been used effectively to treat individuals with **anxiety disorders**; **post-traumatic stress disorder**; **specific phobias**; **obsessive-compulsive disorder**; eating disorders; attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder; and **conduct disorder**. It has also been used successfully in helping individuals acquire such social skills as public speaking or assertiveness. The effectiveness of modeling has led to its use in behavioral treatment of persons with **substance abuse** disorders, who frequently lack important behavioral skills. These persons may lack assertiveness, including the ability to say "no"; in addition, they may have thought patterns that make them more susceptible to substance **abuse**.

Modeling when used alone has been shown to be effective for short-term learning. It is, however, insuffi-

cient for long-lasting behavior change if the target behavior does not produce rewards that sustain it. Modeling works well when it is combined with role-play and **reinforcement**. These three components are used in a sequence of modeling, role-play, and reinforcement. Role-play is defined as practice or behavioral rehearsal of a skill to be used later in real-life situations. Reinforcement is defined as rewarding the model's performance or the client's performance of the newly acquired skill in practice or in real-life situations.

Several factors increase the effectiveness of modeling therapy in changing behaviors. Modeling effects have been shown to be more powerful when:

- The model is highly skilled in enacting the behavior; is likable or admirable; is friendly; is the same sex and age; and is rewarded immediately for the performance of the particular behavior.
- The target behavior is clearly demonstrated with very few unnecessary details; is presented from the least to the most difficult level of behavior; and several different models are used to perform the same behavior(s).

### Description

#### *Types of modeling*

Therapy begins with an assessment of the client's presenting problem(s). The assessment usually covers several areas of life, including developmental history (the client's family background, education, employment, social relationships); past traumatic experiences; medical and psychiatric history; and an outline of the client's goals. The client works with the therapist to list specific

treatment goals; to determine the target behavior(s) to be learned or changed; and to develop a clear picture of what the behavior(s) will look like. The therapist then explains the rationale and concepts of the treatment. He or she also considers any negative consequences that may arise as the client makes changes in his or her behavior.

The client then observes the model enacting the desired behavior. Some models may demonstrate poor or inadequate behaviors as well as those that are effective. This contrast helps the client to identify ineffective behaviors as well as desired ones. Modeling can be done in several different ways, including live modeling, symbolic modeling, participant modeling, or covert modeling.

Live modeling refers to watching a real person, usually the therapist, perform the desired behavior the client has chosen to learn. For example, the therapist might model good telephone manners for a client who wants a job in a field that requires frequent telephone contact with customers.

Symbolic modeling includes filmed or videotaped models demonstrating the desired behavior. Other examples of symbolic models include photographs, picture books, and plays. A common example of symbolic modeling is a book for children about going to the hospital, intended to reduce a child's **anxiety** about hospitals and operations. With child clients, cartoon figures or puppets can be used as the models. Self-modeling is another form of symbolic modeling in which clients are videotaped performing the target behavior. The video is then replayed and clients can observe their behaviors and how they appear to others. For example, public speaking is one of the most common feared situations in the general adult population. A law student who is afraid of having to present arguments in a courtroom might be videotaped speaking to classmates who are role-playing the judge and members of the jury. The student can then review the videotape and work on his or her speech problems or other aspects of the performance that he or she would like to change.

In participant modeling, the therapist models anxiety-evoking behaviors for the client, and then prompts the client to engage in the behavior. The client first watches as the therapist approaches the feared object, and then approaches the object in steps or stages with the therapist's encouragement and support. This type of modeling is often used in the treatment of specific phobias. For example, a person who is afraid of dogs might be asked to watch the therapist touch or pet a dog, or perhaps accompany the therapist on a brief walk with a dog. Then, with the therapist's encouragement, the client might begin by touching or holding a stuffed dog, then watching a

live dog from a distance, then perhaps walking a small dog on a leash, and eventually by degrees touching and petting a live dog.

In covert modeling, clients are asked to use their imagination, visualizing a particular behavior as the therapist describes the imaginary situation in detail. For example, a child may be asked to imagine one of his or her favorite cartoon characters interacting appropriately with other characters. An adult client is asked to imagine an admired person in his or her life performing a behavior that the client wishes to learn. For example, a person may greatly admire their mother for the way she handled the challenges of coming to the United States from another country. If the client is worried about the challenge of a new situation in their own life (changing careers, having their first child, etc.), the therapist may ask them to imagine how their mother would approach the new situation, and then imagine themselves acting with their mother's courage and wisdom.

Models in any of these forms may be presented as either a coping or a mastery model. The coping model is shown as initially fearful or incompetent and then is shown as gradually becoming comfortable and competent performing the feared behavior. A coping model might show a small child who is afraid of swimming in the ocean, for example. The little boy or girl watches smaller children having fun playing in the waves along the edge of the shore. Gradually the child moves closer and closer to the water and finally follows a child his or her age into the surf. The mastery model shows no fear and is competent from the beginning of the demonstration. Coping models are considered more appropriate for reducing fear because they look more like the client, who will probably make mistakes and have some setbacks when trying the new behavior.

Having the model speak his or her thoughts aloud is more effective than having a model who does not verbalize. As the models speak, they show the client how to think through a particular problem or situation. A common example of this type of modeling is sports or cooking instruction. A golf or tennis pro who is trying to teach a beginner how to hold and swing the club or racquet will often talk as they demonstrate the correct stance and body movements. Similarly, a master chef will often talk to students in a cooking class while he or she is cutting up the ingredients for a dish, preparing a sauce, kneading dough, or doing other necessary tasks. The model's talking while performing an action also engages the client's sense of hearing, taste, or smell as well as sight. Multisensory involvement enhances the client's learning.

### ***Role-playing***

Role-playing is a technique that allows the client opportunities to imitate the modeled behaviors, which strengthens what has been learned. Role-play can be defined as practice or behavior rehearsal; it allows the client to receive feedback about the practice as well as encouraging the use of the newly learned skill in real-life situations. For example, a group of people who are trying to learn social skills might practice the skills needed for a job interview or for dealing with a minor problem (returning a defective item to a store, asking someone for directions, etc.). Role-play can also be used for modeling, in that the therapist may role-play certain situations with clients. During practice, the therapist frequently coaches, prompts, and shapes the client's enactment of the behavior so that the rehearsals can come increasingly close to the desired behavior.

Feedback and social reinforcement of the client's performance in the practice phase is an important motivator for behavior change. Feedback may take the form of praise, approval, or encouragement; or it may be corrective, with concrete suggestions for improving the performance. Suggestions are followed by additional practice. Such tangible reinforcements as money, food, candy, or tokens have been used with young children and chronic psychiatric patients. The therapist may teach the client how to use self-reinforcement; that is, using self-praise after performing the desired behavior. The purpose of reinforcement is to shift the client's performance concerns from external evaluation by others to internal evaluation of their own efforts.

### ***Modeling in group settings***

Modeling has been shown to be effective in such group programs as **social skills training** and **assertiveness training** as well as in individual therapy. The general approach to both social skills training and assertiveness training is the incorporation of the modeling, role-play, and reinforcement sequence. After assessment of each group member's presenting problem, each member is asked to keep a diary of what happened when the situation occurred during the week. Group members develop goals for dealing with their individual situations, and each person determines how he or she can meet these goals. Modeling is done with either the therapist or other group members role-playing how to deal effectively with a particular problem situation.

### ***Length of treatment***

While modeling therapy is a relatively short-term approach to behavioral change, some therapeutic

techniques take longer than others. Imagery, for example, requires more sessions than in vivo (real-life) treatments. In vivo work that takes place outside the therapist's office would require longer time periods for each session. Other considerations include the nature of the client's problem; the client's willingness to do homework; the client's financial resources; and the presence and extent of the client's support network. The therapist's length of experience and personal style also affect the length of therapy.

There are, however, guidelines of treatment length for some disorders. Treatment of obsessive-compulsive disorder may require five weekly sessions for approximately three weeks, with weekly follow-up sessions for several months. **Depressive disorders** may require 3–6 months, with the client experiencing short-term relief after 3–4 weeks of treatment. General anxiety disorder may also take several months of weekly sessions. The length of treatment depends on the ability to define and assess the target behaviors. Clients may meet with the therapist several times a week at the beginning of treatment; then weekly for several months; then monthly for follow-up sessions that may become fewer in number or spaced more widely until therapy is terminated.

### **Normal results**

Modeling or observational learning is effective as a method of learning such behaviors as self-assertion, self-disclosure, helping others, empathic behaviors, moral judgment, and many other interpersonal skills. Modeling is also effective in eliminating or reducing such undesirable behaviors as uncontrolled aggression, smoking, weight problems, and single phobias.

The expected outcome is that clients will be able to use their new behaviors outside the treatment setting in real-life situations. This result is called transfer of training, generalization, or maintenance. Homework is the most frequently used technique for transfer of training. Homework may represent a contractual agreement between the therapist and the client in which the client gives a report on his or her progress at each meeting.

To ensure that generalization occurs and that clients will use their new skills, several "transfer enhancers" are used to increase the likelihood of successful transfer of training. Transfer enhancers include:

- Giving clients appropriate rationales and concepts, rules, or strategies for using skills properly.
- Giving clients ample opportunity to practice new skills correctly and successfully.
- Making the treatment setting as much like the real-life situation as possible.

## KEY TERMS

**Generalization**—A person's ongoing use of new behaviors that were previously modeled for him or her. Generalization is also called transfer of training or maintenance.

**In vivo**—A Latin phrase that means "in life." In modeling and exposure therapies, it refers to practicing new behaviors in a real setting, as distinct from using imagery or imagined settings.

**Reinforcement**—In behavioral therapy, the ability of a behavior to produce effects that will make the user want to perform the behavior again. In modeling, reinforcement refers to rewarding the model's demonstration of a skill or the client's performance of the newly acquired skill in practice or in real-life situations.

**Role-playing**—A technique used in therapy in which participants act out roles relevant to real-life situations in order to change their attitudes and behaviors.

**Vicarious**—Acquired through imagined participation in the experience of others. Modeling is a form of vicarious learning.

- Giving clients opportunities to practice their new skills in a variety of physical and interpersonal settings.
- Giving clients adequate external social reinforcement and encouraging internal self-reinforcement as they use their skills successfully in real life.

*See also* Behavior modification.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Braswell, Lauren and Philip C. Kendall. "Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy with Youth." In *Handbook of Cognitive Behavioral Therapies*, edited by Keith S. Dobson. 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press. 2001.
- Jinks, Gordon. "Specific Strategies and Techniques." In *Handbook of Counselling and Psychotherapy*, edited by Colin Feltham and Ian Horton. London: Sage Publications, 2000.
- Sharf, Richard S. "Behavior Therapy." In *Theories of Psychotherapy and Counseling: Concepts and Cases*. 2nd ed. Stamford: Thomson Learning, 2000.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychological Association. 750 First St. N.E., Washington, D.C. 20002. (202) 336-5800. <<http://helping.apa.org>>.

Association for Advancement of Behavior Therapy. 305 Seventh Ave., 16th Floor, New York, NY 10001. (212) 647-1890. <<http://www.aabt.org>>.

National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexander, VA 22314-2971. (703) 684-7722. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, RM8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Janice Van Buren, Ph.D.

## Molindone

### Definition

Molindone is an antipsychotic. It is sold in the United States under the trade name of Moban.

### Purpose

Molindone is used to treat psychotic symptoms that may appear in **depression**, mania, or **schizophrenia**.

### Description

Molindone is taken orally, and is rapidly absorbed and metabolized. Peak levels are reached within 90 minutes of taking the medication, and its effect lasts 24 to 36 hours. Molindone is available in 5-, 10-, 25-, and 100-mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

The dosage of molindone should be adjusted to the lowest level needed to control symptoms. The usual initial dosage is 50 to 75 mg per day. This may be increased to 100 mg per day three to four days after beginning treatment. A maximal dosage of up to 225 mg per day may be required.

### Precautions

Prolonged or chronic administration of molindone increases the probability of developing **tardive dyskinesia**, a cluster of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that is potentially irreversible. These movements involve the head, neck, trunk, feet, and hands. Some of the movements involving the face and head include wormlike movement of the tongue, grimacing, chewing, and lip smacking. Tardive dyskinesia usually disappears once the affected person stops taking the medication, but it may not.

People who are comatose or are experiencing central nervous system depression from alcohol, **barbiturates** or narcotics are not prescribed this medication.

Drowsiness is often reported by people using molindone. For that reason, persons using molindone should not operate machinery or drive automobiles.

Molindone administration causes the level of prolactin (a hormone that initiates lactation) in the blood to rise. This is a potential problem for persons with a personal or family history of breast cancer. The drug may lead to the initiation of breast cancer. For this reason, the benefits of the drug must be carefully evaluated before it is administered.

### Side effects

As stated, molindone has the potential to produce tardive dyskinesia. This is a syndrome consisting of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that is potentially irreversible. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and with increasing dosage of molindone. Tardive dyskinesia is more likely to occur after a long period of taking antipsychotic drugs, like molindone, but it may also appear after molindone use has been discontinued. Females are at greater risk than males for developing tardive dyskinesia. Involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face characterize tardive dyskinesia. These may be accompanied by involuntary movements of the arms, legs and trunk. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia.

Parkinson-like symptoms have been linked with the administration of molindone. These include restlessness and agitation (akathisia) and difficulty walking or moving (dystonia). These are generally controlled with **benztropine mesylate** or **trihexyphenidyl** hydrochloride.

An occasionally reported side effect of molindone is neuroleptic malignant syndrome. This is a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity, high fever, alterations in mental status, and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia and arrhythmias. This condition is considered a medical emergency.

### Interactions

Molindone increases the effect of drugs and substances that depress the central nervous system. This class of drugs includes anesthetics, opiates, barbiturates, atropine and alcohol.

Molindone interferes with the absorption of phenytoin and tetracyclines.

*See also* Schizophrenia.

## KEY TERMS

**Akathisia**—Agitated or restless movement, usually affecting the legs. Movement is accompanied by a sense of discomfort and an inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive for periods of time. Akathisia is a common side effect of some neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

**Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

**Orthostatic hypotension**—A sudden decrease in blood pressure due to a change in body position, as when moving from a sitting to standing position.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

**Tranquilizer**—A medication that induces a feeling of calm and relaxation.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Adams, Michael and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.

Foreman, John C. and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd Ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.

Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.

Von Boxtel, Chris J., Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

Bagnall A., M. Fenton, R. Lewis, M. L. Leitner, and J. Kleijnen. "Molindone for schizophrenia and severe mental illness." *Cochrane Database Systematic Review* no. 2 (2000), CD002083.

Dhaware, B. S., J. J. Balsara, N. V. Nandal and A. G. Chandorkar. "Effects of amantadine on modification

- of dopamine-dependent behaviours by molindone." *Indian Journal of Medical Science* 54, no. 8 (2000): 321-324.
- W. M. Glazer. "Expected incidence of tardive dyskinesia associated with atypical antipsychotics." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*. 61, Supplement 4 (2000): 21-26.
- OTHER**
- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, PO Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. FAX: (717) 558-7845. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.
- American Medical Association, 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.
- American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.
- American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981. Fax: (703) 836-5223.
- American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. Web site: <<http://www.aspet.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.



**Zoloft (sertraline) tablet** (Leonard Lessin, FBPA/Photo Researchers, Inc)

**dopamine**, serotonin, and norepinephrine and epinephrine (also known as noradrenaline and **adrenaline**). By inhibiting the enzyme that breaks down these chemicals, MAOIs allow these neurotransmitters to persist and exert their mood-enhancing effects longer. One class of MAOIs also has recently been developed as a therapy for Parkinson's symptoms.

MAOIs were in widespread use from the 1960s through the 1980s, but fell out of favor as newer drugs with fewer potentially severe side effects and interactions (see below) came on the market. However, the interest in them has been renewed, especially as therapy for **major depressive disorder** with atypical features and for treatment-resistant depression.

## Description

MAOIs can be divided into two main groups. The first group encompasses the nonselective, systemic, irreversible MAOIs, and includes **phenelzine** (Nardil), isocarboxazid (Marplan), and **tranylcypromine** (Parnate), which are approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for treatment of depression. They are considered nonselective because they target both types of MAOs: MAO-A and MAO-B. Their action is called "irreversible" because they bind the enzyme so strongly that even after a person stops taking them, two or three weeks must pass before the drugs degrade and normal enzymatic activity resumes.

The second group consists of the selective inhibitors, which inhibit either MAO-A or MAO-B, as the name implies. Those that inhibit MAO-A, which include moclobemide (Aurorix, Manerix) and brofaromine (Consonar) are also known as RIMAS (reversible inhibitors of MAO-A). As discussed below, the use of a selective inhibitor can help prevent some of the

## Monoamine oxidase inhibitors MAOIs

### Definition

Monamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) are a class of **antidepressants** most often used to treat **atypical depression**. MAOIs carry the risk of dangerous dietary side effects, so they are prescribed only after other antidepressants prove ineffective.

### Purpose

The mood-altering effects of MAOIs were initially discovered in the 1940s during efforts to use the first MAOI as a tuberculosis therapy. The drug was ineffectual against tuberculosis, but the patients taking it reported enhanced mood. Based on these results, MAOIs were used in the 1950s in **clinical trials** for patients with depression. It was discovered that the drugs' common property was inhibition of monoamine oxidase (also called MAO), an enzyme that breaks down mood-regulating **neurotransmitters**, including

food-drug interactions associated with the nonselective inhibitors. RIMAS are not approved for use in the United States.

Also in the second group are inhibitors of MAO-B. These drugs, which include selegiline (Eldepryl) and rasagiline (Azilect), are not used orally for treatment of depression but instead are used in very low doses for treatment of Parkinson's symptoms. Because low dopamine levels are associated with Parkinson's symptoms, and these drugs block the MAO that breaks down dopamine, their effect of increasing dopamine levels has proved beneficial. At higher dosages, however, these MAO-B-inhibiting drugs become nonselective inhibitors, targeting both MAO-A and MAO-B and exerting antidepressant effects. In addition to their potential use in Parkinson's treatment, these MAO-B inhibitors hold promise as therapies for **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder**, stimulant **abuse**, and **smoking cessation**.

A low-dose, transdermal selegiline patch (Emsam) has recently been approved by the FDA for treatment of depression.

### Recommended dosage

Dosages of MAOIs vary depending on the specific drug. Most are taken orally, but selegiline has been tested in the form of a transdermal patch that lessens exposure in the gastrointestinal tract, preventing some of the food-drug interactions associated with MAOIs (see "Interactions" for more information).

#### *Nonselective MAOIs*

Isocarboxazid as antidepressant: oral tablets. Adults will initially take 10 mg/2x/day. The health care provider may gradually increase the dose, but the recommended maximum is no more than 60 mg/day. Dosage for children under the age of 16 will be determined by their doctors.

Phenelzine as antidepressant: oral tablets. The adult dose is based on body weight; initially, it is 0.45 mg/lb (1 mg/kg) per day to a maximum dose of no more than 90 mg/day. The dosage for children under age 16 years is to be determined by their doctors. For older adults, the initial dose is 15 mg in the morning. This dosage can be increased but to no more than 60 mg/day.

Tranylcypromine as antidepressant: oral tablets. The adult dose is 30 mg/day to start. It can be increased, but to no more than 60 mg/day. The doctor should determine dosages for children under the age of 16. In older adults, the regimen is 2.5–5 mg/day to start. This dosage can be increased as needed, but usually to no more than 45 mg/day.

#### *Selective MAOIs*

Transdermal selegiline patch as antidepressant: The patch is available in three sizes that deliver 6, 9, or 12 mg/day through the skin. It should be applied to dry, intact skin on the upper torso (below the neck and above the waist), upper thigh, or outer surface of the arm every 24 hours.

Oral selegiline: This low-dose MAOI is intended for management of Parkinson's symptoms. The drug is not to be used at daily doses exceeding 10 mg/day, and this dose should be split into two doses of 5 mg each, taken at breakfast and lunch. Exceeding the 10-mg limit can shift the drug's activity into nonselective inhibition, precipitating food interactions (see "Interactions" below). Oral selegiline is usually taken in conjunction with dopamine-boosting drugs, such as levodopa (also called L-dopa), although it also appears to be effective when used alone.

Oral rasagiline: This MAOI is intended for management in Parkinson's disease. The recommended dose is 1 mg once daily if taken alone. If taken in conjunction with levodopa, the recommended starting dose is 0.5 mg once a day, which can be increased to 1 mg a day if necessary.

### Precautions

#### *Dietary*

For systemic, nonselective MAOIs (isocarboxazid, phenelzine, tranylcypromine) used as antidepressants, certain foods should be avoided. These include foods high in tyramine (see "Interactions" below), a chemical found in foods that have been fermented or aged, including cheeses, fava beans, yeast- or meat-based extracts, meat that has been smoked or pickled, some kinds of sausages (for example, pepperoni or salami), sauerkraut, and overripe fruit. The health care provider should supply anyone prescribed these MAOIs with a list of foods to avoid. Also avoid alcohol and large amounts of caffeine.

For people using the selegiline patch with the lowest level of delivery (6 mg/day) or taking oral selegiline at low doses for Parkinson's disease, dietary adjustment is not indicated; however, people using the 9 or 12 mg/day patches should observe dietary restrictions to avoid foods containing tyramine, like those required for the nonselective MAOIs.

#### *Other medications*

People taking MAOIs must be sure to let their health care provider know if they are taking any other medications or drugs, especially the following:

- other antidepressant medications, such as fluoxetine (Prozac) or sertraline (Zoloft)
- some anticonvulsants, such as carbamazepine (Equateo and oxcarbazepine (Trileptal)
- opioids, such as meperidine (Demerol)
- dextromethorphan, a component of many cough suppressant medications
- decongestants or appetite suppressants containing ephedrine, pseudoephedrine, phenylephrine, or phenylpropanolamine
- antihypertensive medications
- ciprofloxacin (Cipro)
- stimulants, especially amphetamines
- asthma medication
- insulin or antidiabetic medication
- cocaine
- tryptophan as a supplement or as a sleep aid (see “Interactions,” below)
- St. John’s wort

### ***Medical problems***

People taking MAOIs must tell their health care provider of other medical problems, especially:

- alcohol abuse
- chest pain
- headaches
- asthma
- diabetes
- kidney disease
- epilepsy
- heart or blood vessel disease, recent heart attack or stroke, high blood pressure
- mental illness or a history of mental illness
- Parkinson’s
- hyperthyroidism

### ***Pregnancy***

There is an increased risk of birth defects when the nonselective, classic MAOIs are taken during the first three months of pregnancy. Selegiline is classified as a pregnancy category C drug (this category indicates that animal reproduction studies showed an adverse effect on the fetus and that adequate and well-controlled studies in humans are lacking; however, potential benefits may outweigh potential risks for pregnant women in some cases).

### ***Breastfeeding***

Tranylcypromine passes into the breast milk; the status of the other two nonselective MAOIs is unknown. Selegiline passes into the milk of rodents, but it is unknown whether or not it passes into human breast milk. No studies on rasagiline in human breast milk have been done.

### ***Children***

In clinical trials, these antidepressants increased the risk of suicidal thinking and behavior in children and adolescents with psychiatric disorders, including major depressive disorder. The average risk in pediatric trials for patients taking these drugs was twice that of patients taking placebo (4% vs. 2%, respectively).

### ***Note***

It is important to remember that even after a patient has stopped taking an MAOI, he must continue to exercise precautions for at least two weeks because of the irreversible nature of these inhibitors.

### ***Side effects***

A person taking MAOIs must watch for symptoms of very high blood pressure. These include chest pain, enlarged pupils, fast or slow heartbeat, sensitivity to light, increased sweating, nausea or vomiting, and stiff or sore neck.

Other potential side effects include nervous system effects, such as dizziness or lightheadedness (can be common), headache, drowsiness, sleep disturbances, **fatigue**, weakness, and tremors. Gastrointestinal side effects can include either constipation or diarrhea, and dry mouth. A person taking an MAOI may experience weight gain, or, in the case of selegiline, weight loss. A sudden drop in blood pressure with a change in posture is possible, as is swelling in the feet or lower legs. Some people have reported sexual disturbances, including impotence or an inability to experience orgasm. Urinary changes may include decreased fluid volume or more frequent urination.

Specific to the selegiline patch, the only commonly reported side effect was an occasional skin reaction at the application site. A less commonly seen side effect of the patch was lightheadedness related to low blood pressure.

### ***Interactions***

#### ***Food-drug***

One important role of MAO is breaking down tyramine, the compound in foods that have undergone

## KEY TERMS

**Cheese reaction**—Common term for the high blood pressure crisis that can occur when nonselective monoamine oxidase inhibitors are combined with dietary tyramine, a chemical often associated with aged cheeses.

**Dopamine**—A neurotransmitter involved in maintaining mood; low levels play a role in the manifestation of symptoms of Parkinson's disease.

**MAO**—Monoamine oxidase, an enzyme that degrades signaling molecules involved in mood maintenance.

**MAOI**—Monoamine oxidase inhibitor, a class of drugs that inhibits the enzyme monoamine oxidase.

**Tyramine**—A chemical found in aged and fermented foods that is normally broken down by monoamine oxidase; when the enzyme's activity is blocked, tyramine passes into the body system and can cause a critical high blood pressure event.

aging or fermentation. Normally, because MAO is active, consuming these foods does not result in much tyramine entering the system. However, when an MAOI interferes with the activity of MAO, tyramine from these foods does enter the system and can elicit what has been called the "cheese reaction" (related to the association of tyramine with aged cheeses). This response can be life-threatening because of tyramine's effects on heart rate and blood pressure; the cheese reaction can produce a severe spike in blood pressure, leading to a hypertensive crisis. For this reason, people taking classic, nonselective MAOIs must avoid foods that contain tyramine and continue this avoidance for at least two weeks after they stop taking the drug. As mentioned above, people on the lowest dose (6 mg) of the selegiline patch do not need to exercise any tyramine-related dietary modifications.

Users of MAOIs also will be advised about limiting tryptophan consumption, especially in the form of supplements.

### Drug-drug interaction

The drugs listed in the precautions section, especially other antidepressants, anticonvulsants, opioids, dextromethorphan, decongestants, and amphetamines, should be avoided. Patients using MAOIs should be sure to mention any drugs they are taking to their doctor.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

Amsterdam, Jay D., M.D., and J. Alexander Bodkin.

"Selegiline transdermal system in the prevention of relapse of major depressive disorder. A 52-week, double-blind, placebo-substitution, parallel-group clinical trial." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 26 (2006): 579–586.

Howland, Robert H. "MAOI antidepressant drugs." *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing* 44 (2006):9–12.

Youdim, Moussa B. H., Dale Edmondson, and Keith F. Tipton. "The therapeutic potential of monoamine oxidase inhibitors." *Nature Reviews Neuroscience* 7 (2006):295–309.

### PRODUCT LABELING

Eldepryl® capsule product labeling. Somerset Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (1998).

Emsam® product labeling. Somerset Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (2006).

Nardyl® product labeling. Pfizer/Parke-Davis. (2006).

### WEB SITES

"Antidepressants, Monoamine Oxidase (MAO) Inhibitor (Systemic)." Mayo Clinic. Available online at <<http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/drug-information/DR202054>> (accessed January 06, 2007).

"FDA approves Emsam (selegiline) as first drug patch for depression." US Food and Drug Administration new release. Available online at <<http://www.fda.gov/bbs/topics/NEWS/2006/NEW01326.html>> (accessed January 06, 2007).

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

American Parkinson's Disease Association, 135 Parkinson Avenue, Staten Island, NY, 10305. <<http://www.apdaparkinson.org>>.

Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

Mood disorders see **Depression and depressive disorders and Bipolar disorders**

## Movement disorders

### Definition

Movement disorders describe a variety of abnormal movements of the body that have a neurological basis. These abnormal movements are characterized by changes in the coordination and speed of voluntary

movement. They may also involve the presence of additional movements that are not voluntary.

## Description

Movement disorders are sometimes referred to by medical professionals as extrapyramidal diseases because this class of disorders is distinct from the disorders caused by disorders of the pyramidal region of the **brain**. Researchers have determined that movement disorders are caused by diseases in various parts of the brain, including the substantia nigra, the subthalamic nucleus, the globus pallidus, the striatum, and the basal ganglia.

Movement disorders are usually broken down into two types of movement: hyperkinetic movement and hypokinetic movement. Hyperkinetic movement disorders are characterized by a significant and excessive amount of motor activity. This type also includes cases where there is a significant amount of abnormal involuntary movement. Hypokinetic movement disorders are those in which there is an abnormally reduced amount of intentional motor activity.

Hyperkinetic movement disorders are characterized by two types of behavior: rhythmical and irregular. Tremor is a rhythmic movement that is further divided into three forms: rest, postural, and intention. Rest tremor is most prominent when an individual is at rest and decreases with voluntary activity. Postural tremor occurs when an individual attempts to support a position against gravity (such as holding an arm outstretched). Intention tremor occurs during voluntary movement toward a specific target.

Irregular involuntary movements are classified by their speed and site of occurrence. Tics are rapid irregular movements that are controlled with voluntary effort. The types of rapid irregular movements that cannot be controlled voluntarily are called chorea, hemiballismus, and myoclonus. Chorea is a rapid, jerking movement that most often affects the face or limbs. Hemiballismus is the sudden and extreme swinging of a limb. Myoclonus is a rapid, irregular movement that usually occurs for a short period of time. It usually occurs when the person is at rest, and it often affects more than one area of the body at a time.

One of the most well-known hyperkinetic movement disorders is called Huntington's disease, characterized by chorea-type movements. This disease is inherited and usually develops between 30 and 50 years of age. Persons with this condition have progressive **dementia**, and the condition eventually causes death. Children of persons with Huntington's disease have a 50% chance of developing the condition. Ster-

## KEY TERMS

**Basal ganglia**—A group of masses of gray matter located in the cerebral hemispheres of the brain that control movement as well as some aspects of emotion and cognition.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Extrapyramidal**—Brain structures located outside the pyramidal tracts of the central nervous system.

**Substantia nigra**—Dark-colored matter located in a section of the crus cerebri area of the brain.

**Ectopic movement disorder** is characterized by repetitive behaviors that meet no functional need such as hand waving; rocking; head banging; mouthing of objects; or biting, picking, or hitting oneself. These behaviors interfere with normal activities and are not caused by **substance abuse** or a general medical condition.

The symptoms of hypokinetic movement disorders include a rigid, stone-like face; decreased limb motion during walking; and stiff turning movements. These features are classified as bradykinesia, while akinesia is the absence of purposeful movement. The most common type of hypokinetic movement disorder is Parkinson's disease, caused by the loss of neurons containing dopamine in the area of the brain called the substantia nigra pars compacta. The loss of these neurons is a part of the alteration of vital motor circuits in the brain that leads to a slowing of intentional movements.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Braunwald, Eugene, Anthony S. Fauci, Dennis L. Kasper, and others. *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

Weisiger, Richard A. *Cecil Textbook of Medicine*. Philadelphia, PA: W. B. Saunders, 2000.

## ORGANIZATIONS

NIH Neurological Institute. P.O. Box 5801. Bethesda, MD 20824. (800) 352-9424. <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov>>.

Mark Mitchell, M.D.

Movement therapies see **Bodywork therapies**

MRI see **Magnetic resonance imaging**

Multiple personality disorder see **Dissociative identity disorder**

## Multisystemic therapy

### Definition

Multisystemic therapy (MST) is an intensive family- and community-based treatment program designed to make positive changes in the various social systems (home, school, community, peer) that contribute to the serious antisocial behaviors of children and adolescents who are at risk for out-of-home placement. These out-of-home placements might include foster care, **group homes**, residential care, correctional facilities, or **hospitalization**.

### Purpose

MST operates with the fundamental assumption that parents, guardians, or those who have primary caregiving responsibilities to children, have the most important influence in changing problem behaviors in children and adolescents. The primary goals of MST are to:

- develop in parents or caregivers the capacity to manage future difficulties
- reduce juvenile criminal activity
- reduce other types of antisocial behaviors, such as drug abuse
- achieve these outcomes at a cost savings by decreasing rates of incarceration and other out-of-home placements

MST was created approximately 30 years ago as an intensive family- and community-based treatment program to focus on juvenile offenders presenting with serious antisocial behaviors and who were at risk for out-of-home placement. The program has been shown to be effective with targeted populations that include inner-city delinquents, violent and chronic juvenile offenders, juvenile offenders who abuse or are dependent on substances and also have psychiatric disorders, adolescent sex offenders, and abusive and neglectful parents. A more recent focus of MST has been to treat youths who present with psychiatric emergencies such as suicidal ideation, homicidal ideation, **psychosis**, or threat of harm to self or others due to mental illness. The results are promising and indicate that MST is an effective alternative to psychiatric hospitalization. Some treatment conditions and interventions were modified to take care of this new population, including developing a crisis plan during the initial family assessment and adding child and adolescent psychiatrists, psychiatric residents, and crisis caseworkers to the MST treatment team. Supervision by the treatment team was increased from weekly to daily meetings. Caseloads of MST therapists were reduced from five to three families, increasing the intensity of the **intervention**. When some adolescents were hospitalized for safety, the MST staff maintained clinical responsibility for the adolescent who was insulated from the usual activities due to inpatient care.

MST is licensed by MST Services, Inc., through the Medical University of South Carolina.

### Description

MST programs are usually housed in community-based mental health organizations considered to have a culture more rehabilitative than punitive. The program staff creates strong working relationships with referral sources such as juvenile justice and the family court. They work closely with deputy juvenile officers, social welfare workers, teachers, and guidance counselors, for example, to obtain the perspectives of multiple systems or “stakeholders” who have the common goal of improving children, adolescent and family treatment. Each youth referred to the program is assigned to an MST therapist who designs individualized interventions in accordance with the nine MST treatment principles, thereby addressing individual needs of the youth and his or her specific environment.

MST is a time-limited (four to six months) intensive therapeutic program that provides services in the family’s home, at other locations (school, neighborhoods), or wherever the family feels most comfortable. After the initial sessions, the family members who attend sessions with the therapist will vary depending on the nature of the particular problem being discussed. For example, children are not included in sessions addressing intimate marital issues between parents or dealing with poor parental discipline, so as not to undermine parental authority.

Characteristics of the MST model—such as availability of the MST staff (24 hours a day, seven days a week), flexible scheduling, and delivery of services in the home—all provide safety for the family, prevent violence, foster a joint working relationship between therapist and family, provide the family with easier access to needed services, increase the likelihood that the family will stay in treatment, and help the family maintain changes in behaviors. The MST staff are full-time practitioners, and they wear pagers, carry cellular telephones, and work in teams of three. They can provide intensive services because of small caseloads and have multiple contacts with the family during the week, sometimes even daily. They stay as long as required and at times most convenient to the family, including weekends, evenings, and holidays. Services provided by staff at unusual times (10 P.M. to 8 A.M.) are discouraged, except in emergencies. The development of an informal support system in which the family can call on a friend or relative at crucial times is part of the treatment goals. Families have less contact with the therapist as they get closer to being discharged from treatment.

MST is designed to be a flexible intervention to provide highly individualized treatment to families. Specific treatment techniques or therapies are used as a part of MST interventions. These include parent-behavior training, structural **family therapy**, and strategic family and **cognitive-behavioral therapy**. In addition, some biological influences such as **depression and depressive disorders** may be identified, and psychotropic medications are integrated into treatment. This model does not support one method for obtaining successful changes in behaviors; however, there are nine guiding principles of treatment:

- The primary purpose of assessment is to understand the fit between the identified problems and their broader systemic context. At the initial visit with the family, the staff begins to assess the family's strengths; capabilities; needs; problems; environmental support systems; and transactions with social systems such as peers, extended family, friends, teachers, parental workplace, referral resources, and neighbors. The therapist and family work together to identify and prioritize problems to be targeted for change, determine interventions, and develop a treatment plan. The assessment is conducted in a manner that empowers family members by encouraging them to define their problems, needs, strengths, and—except in matters of imminent safety—set their priorities. The assessment is gradually updated until the family has reached its goals and is functioning independently.

• Therapeutic contacts emphasize the positive and should use systemic strengths as levers for change. MST is a strength-based treatment program and adherence to this principle decreases negativity among family members, builds positive expectations and hope, identifies strengths, and decreases therapist and family frustrations by emphasizing problem solving. It also builds the caregiver's confidence. The therapist develops and maintains the focus on the strength of the family and positive thinking through the use of positive language, teaching, and the technique of reframing negative thoughts and beliefs; the liberal use of positive rewards for appropriate behaviors; using a problem-solving stance rather than one of failure and seeing barriers as challenges; and identifying and using what the family does well.

• Interventions are designed to promote responsible behavior and decrease irresponsible behavior among family members. The therapist assists parents and youths in behaving in a responsible manner across a variety of domains. Parental duties include providing support, guidance, and discipline; expressing love and nurturance; protection; advocacy; and meeting basic physical needs. The primary responsibilities of the child and adolescent include complying with family and societal rules, attending school and putting forth reasonable effort, helping around the house, and not harming self or others. Therapists will spend a great deal of time throughout the treatment process enhancing, developing, and maintaining the responsible behaviors of parents through praise and support. Other family members who become engaged in the treatment process are also encouraged by the therapist to reinforce responsible parental behaviors that will help maintain these behaviors when treatment ends. It has been noted that when parents increase their responsibilities, there is almost always improvement in the child's behavior. Parental abdication of responsibilities may be caused by factors such as mental illness or the lack of necessary parenting skills. Interventions are designed to address these influences. For children and adolescents, positive reinforcement and discipline are used to increase responsible behaviors and decrease irresponsible behaviors. Parents are encouraged to clearly outline their expectations for compliance and punishments for noncompliance before putting them into action. For example, the child should know ahead of time that missing curfew will result in being grounded for a week. Parents are also taught to praise often for compliant behaviors.

• Interventions are focused on the present and action oriented, targeting specific and well-defined problems. Due to time limitations of the MST model,

family members are required to work intensely to solve often long-standing problems. Once information has been gathered and assessed, therapist and family jointly formalize problem and goals into a treatment plan. The plan specifies which changes in what behavior or skill will be achieved by whom, by what method or action, and in what period of time within the limits of the program. The treatment plan contains the family's ultimate aims that are to be accomplished by the end of the treatment period, and intermediate goals or incremental steps needed to reach the overarching goals. These intermediate goals are measurable and time-limited and the interventions chosen are those that have been determined to have the most immediate and powerful impact on the problem behavior. The therapist assists families in meeting their specific goals by helping them focus their time, energy, and resources on their assignments. Also, the expected outcome of each intervention is described in observable and measurable terms before the treatment plan is put into action. This aids the MST staff and the family to determine whether the interventions are effective or if alternatives are needed.

- Interventions should target sequences of behavior within and between multiple systems that maintain the identified problem. For example: an ineffective parenting style (permissive, authoritarian, neglectful) may be identified as a factor in influencing the problem behavior and is, therefore, targeted for an intervention. However, the parents are having marital difficulties that lead to disagreements in child-rearing practices; these difficulties are sustaining the poor parenting style and will be the focus of an intervention as well. In addition, the family may have some practical or concrete needs (housing, heat, transportation) that are, in turn, having an impact on parental discipline and require interventions across the family-community support system.
- Interventions are developmentally appropriate and fit the needs of the youth. The nature of the intervention should take into account the age and maturity of the child or adolescent and the caregiver. It is noted that, for children and young adolescents, interventions aimed at increasing parental control are the most appropriate. Such interventions might include introducing systematic monitoring, reward, and discipline systems. For an older adolescent, interventions would most likely focus on preparing the youth for entry into the adult world, such as increasing his or her social maturity. Other interventions may be needed to overcome obstacles to independent living, such as having the teenager participate in GED classes or enter a vocational training school. The

developmental stage of the caregiver is also important to consider. For example, grandparents may not have the physical or emotional health to become primary caregivers but may be able to assist parents in other ways, such as helping with homework or sitting with the youth after school for a few hours.

- Interventions are designed to require daily or weekly effort by family members. This leads to a more rapid decrease in the problem behavior, and current and continuous evaluation of whether the intervention is working and producing the expected results. For example, if a parent sits near the child while he is doing homework, he or she can gauge the child's progress toward the anticipated goal of better school performance. This design also allows family members to experience immediate success and obtain positive feedback.
- Intervention effectiveness is evaluated continuously from multiple perspectives with providers assuming accountability for overcoming barriers to successful outcomes. Before intervention is implemented the therapist is required to document anticipated outcomes for each intervention by describing the observable and measurable goals of treatment. This information is used to assess the successes achieved or barriers encountered and to assess the impact of the intervention. The MST staff may also be in daily contact with teachers and administrators, deputy juvenile officers, and welfare professionals who provide feedback regarding whether the interventions across systems are successful in changing behaviors.
- Interventions are designed to promote treatment generalization and long-term maintenance of therapeutic change by empowering caregivers to address family members' needs across multiple systemic contexts. The MST therapist, the MST team, and the provider agency are responsible for engaging the family in treatment, making services for the family easier to obtain, and achieving positive outcomes for the child or adolescent and the family in every case. The program's achievement of successful goals and maintenance of behavior change is due to staff adherence to the treatment model. Research has demonstrated that strong adherence correlates to strong case outcomes. The key to the success of the model is intensive and ongoing staff training. Clinical staff training includes five days of orientation training, weekly supervision with an MST expert, and quarterly booster training. On-site supervisors are also intensively trained to ensure that the MST staff adhere to the MST model.

### Normal results

At the end of MST treatment, parents are provided with the resources needed to parent effectively

## KEY TERMS

**Psychotropic medication**—Medication that has an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**Punitive**—Concerned with, or directed toward, punishment.

**Rehabilitative**—To restore; to put back into good condition.

and maintain better family structure and cohesion. Specifically, parents:

- are able to systematically monitor the behavior of their child or adolescent
- have learned to use appropriate reward and discipline measures to maintain new behavioral changes
- can communicate more effectively with each other and their children
- can advocate for their children and themselves across social systems (e.g., school, social services)
- can problem-solve daily conflicts
- can maintain positive relations with natural social supports such as extended family, friends, and church members
- are able to maintain a positive working relationship with school personnel
- have learned strategies to monitor and promote the child's or adolescent's school performance and/or vocational functioning

Other outcomes to be expected have to do with the youth's relationships with peers and his or her performance in school. Specifically, it is expected that the child or adolescent has decreased his or her association with delinquent and/or drug-using peers; has increased his or her relationships with positive peers and engages in positive activities through after-school activities, organized athletics, or volunteer or paid activities; has better school performance; and has had no days, or fewer days, requiring out-of-home placement.

*See also* Antisocial personality disorder; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Community mental health; Family education; Family psychoeducation; Family therapy.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Henggeler, Scott W., Sonja K. Schoenwald, Melisa D.

Rowland, and Phillippe B. Cunningham. *Serious Emotional Disturbance in Children and Adolescents: Multisystemic Therapy*. New York: Guilford Publications, 2002.

Schoenwald, Sonja K., and Scott W. Henggeler. "Multisystemic Therapy for Adolescents with Serious Externalizing Problems." *Handbook of Clinical Family Therapy*. Jay L. Lebow, ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley and Sons, 2005. 103–27.

Swenson, Cynthia Cupit, Scott W. Henggeler, Ida S. Taylor, and Oliver Addison. *Multisystemic Therapy and Neighborhood Partnerships: Reducing Adolescent Violence and Substance Abuse*. New York: Guilford Press, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

Cox, Kathleen F. "Examining the Role of Social Network Intervention as an Integral Component of Community-Based, Family-Focused Practice." *Journal of Child and Family Studies* 14.3 (Sept. 2005): 443–54.

Ellis, Deborah A., Thomas Templin, Sylvie Naar-King, Maureen A. Frey, Phillippe B. Cunningham, Cheryl-Lynn Podolski, and Nedim Cakan. "Multisystemic Therapy for Adolescents With Poorly Controlled Type I Diabetes: Stability of Treatment Effects in a Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 75.1 (Feb. 2007): 168–74.

Littell, Julia H. "Lessons from a Systematic Review of Effects of Multisystemic Therapy." *Children and Youth Services Review* 27.4 (Apr. 2005): 445–63.

Schaeffer, Cindy M., and, Charles M. Borduin. "Long-Term Follow-Up to a Randomized Clinical Trial of Multisystemic Therapy With Serious and Violent Juvenile Offenders." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 73.3 (June 2005): 445–53.

Schoenwald, Sonja K., Elizabeth J. Letourneau, and Colleen Halliday-Boykins. "Predicting Therapist Adherence to a Transported Family-Based Treatment for Youth." *Journal of Clinical Child and Adolescent Psychology* 34.4 (Dec. 2005): 658–70.

Timmons-Mitchell, Jane, Monica B. Bender, Maureen A. Kishna, and, Clare C. Mitchell. "An Independent Effectiveness Trial of Multisystemic Therapy With Juvenile Justice Youth." *Journal of Clinical Child and Adolescent Psychology* 35.2 (June 2006): 227–36.

### ORGANIZATIONS

National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, RM.8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. Web site: <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Office of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention,  
810 Seventh Street NW, Washington, DC 20531.  
Telephone: (202) 307-5911. Web site: <<http://www.ojjdp.ncjrs.org>>.

Janice VanBuren, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Munchausen syndrome see **Factitious disorder**

Music therapy see **Creative therapies**

Mutual support see **Support groups**

# N

## Naltrexone

### Definition

Naltrexone is classified as a pure opiate antagonist. It is sold in the United States under the brand names ReVia and Depade, but is also manufactured and sold under its generic name.

### Purpose

Naltrexone is used as part of medically supervised **behavior modification** programs to help patients who have stopped taking narcotics or alcohol to continue to abstain from opiates or alcohol.

### Description

Opiates are a group of drugs that are either derived from opium (i.e., morphine, hydromorphone, oxymorphone, heroin, codeine, hydrocodone, oxycodone) or chemically resemble these opium derivatives (such as meperidine). They are commonly referred to as narcotics. Some opiates have medically valid uses, while others are recreational drugs of **abuse**. All are physically addictive.

The drug naltrexone is an opiate antagonist. This means that it blocks and reverses the physical effects of drugs such as morphine, hydromorphone, oxymorphone, heroin, meperidine, codeine, hydrocodone, oxycodone and other drugs classified as narcotics. When given to patients who have been successfully treated for opiate **addiction**, it not only decreases cravings for these types of drugs, it also helps patients who use opiates while taking naltrexone to avoid experiencing the euphoria associated with their use. In these two ways, naltrexone helps prevent re-addiction to opiates.

Chemically naltrexone is not an alcohol antagonist. However, when it is used in combination with behavior modification in a person recovering from alcoholism, naltrexone decreases the craving for alco-

hol. This helps patients to prevent a return to alcohol use or decreases the severity of **relapse** by reducing the amount of alcohol consumed during the relapse or decreasing the length of the relapse.

Naltrexone is available in 50-mg oral tablets.

### Recommended dosage

After successful **detoxification** from opiates, people who used them will receive a test dose of 25 mg of naltrexone, then be observed for one hour for symptoms of opiate withdrawal. If no problems occur after this test dose, another 25-mg test dose is administered.

Getting such people to comply with treatment for opiate addiction is the single most important aspect in maintaining an opiate-free state. Different schedules for taking naltrexone have been developed to help meet the needs of individuals complying with taking the drug. Following successful initiation of therapy, naltrexone may be administered in one of the following ways:

- 50 mg daily, Monday through Friday, and 100 mg on Saturday
- 100 mg every other day
- 150 mg every third day
- 100 mg on Monday and Wednesday and 150 mg on Friday
- 150 mg on Monday and 200 mg on Thursday

The duration of treatment with naltrexone for people with opiate dependence varies with patient need, although most patients will require at least six months of treatment.

The usual dose of naltrexone for alcohol dependence is 50 mg daily, although a few patients may require only 25 mg daily. The proper duration of therapy is not known, as studies of the use of naltrexone in people with alcohol dependence did not go beyond 12 weeks.

## KEY TERMS

**Antagonist**—A substance whose actions counteract the effects of or work in the opposite way from another chemical or drug.

**Opiates**—A class of drugs that is either derived from opium (i.e., morphine, hydromorphone, oxymorphone, heroin, codeine, hydrocodone, oxycodone) or resembles these opium derivatives (such as meperidine) and is commonly referred to as narcotics.

### Precautions

In a very small number of patients, naltrexone may be toxic and cause damage to the liver. Before starting naltrexone and throughout treatment, patients should receive monthly liver function tests to assess the drug's effect on the liver.

Patients should be free of all opiates for seven to 10 days before starting naltrexone. Naltrexone may cause opiate withdrawal symptoms in people whose bodies are not free from opiates. Patients should be observed for opiate withdrawal immediately following the first dose of the drug.

Patients may have a false sense of security that the presence of naltrexone in their system makes them immune from the effects of opiates. In fact, the opiate antagonism caused by naltrexone is not absolute and patients can still experience both analgesia (suppression of pain) and euphoria by administration of larger-than-normal amounts of opiates. Consequently, patients receiving naltrexone who continue to use or receive opiates may take larger doses and should be monitored for signs and symptoms of opiate overdose.

### Side effects

The following represents the most common side effects associated with naltrexone:

- nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, cramps
- headache, insomnia, anxiety, irritability, depression, dizziness
- joint and muscle pain
- rash

### Interactions

Because naltrexone is an opiate antagonist, opiate derivatives that are used medicinally in treating coughs, diarrhea, and pain may no longer be effective.

The combination of naltrexone and **disulfiram**, a drug that is also used for alcohol abuse, may cause increased liver toxicity and liver damage. This combination should be avoided unless, in consultation with a physician, it is decided that the potential benefits of this combination outweigh the risks.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.  
Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

- Anton, Raymond F., and others. "Combined Pharmacotherapies and Behavioral Interventions for Alcohol Dependence: The COMBINE Study: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 295.17 (May 2006): 2003–17.  
Armelie, Stephen, and others. "The Effects of Naltrexone on Alcohol Consumption and Affect Reactivity to Daily Interpersonal Events Among Heavy Drinkers." *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology* 14.2 (May 2006): 199–208.  
Comer, Sandra D., and others. "Injectable, Sustained-Release Naltrexone for the Treatment of Opioid Dependence: A Randomized, Placebo-Controlled Trial." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.2 (Feb. 2006): 210–18.  
Johansson, Björn Axel, Mats Berglund, and Anna Lindgren. "Efficacy of Maintenance Treatment with Naltrexone for Opioid Dependence: A Meta-Analytical Review." *Addiction* 101.4 (Apr. 2006): 491–503.  
Morley, Kirsten C., and others. "Naltrexone Versus Acamprosate in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: A Multi-Centre, Randomized, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Trial." *Addiction* 101.10 (Oct. 2006): 1451–62.  
Nunes, Edward V., and others. "Behavioral Therapy to Augment Oral Naltrexone for Opioid Dependence: A Ceiling on Effectiveness?" *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse* 32.4 (2006): 503–17.  
O'Brien, Charles, and James W. Cornish. "Naltrexone for Probationers and Parolees." *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment* 31.2 (Sept. 2006): 107–11.  
Petrakis, Ismene L., and others. "Naltrexone and Disulfiram in Patients with Alcohol Dependence and Comorbid Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder." *Biological Psychiatry* 60.7 (Oct. 2006): 777–83.  
Pettinati, Helen M., and others. "The Status of Naltrexone in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: Specific Effects on Heavy Drinking." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.6 (Dec. 2006): 610–25.  
Rohsenow, Damaris J., and others. "High-Dose Transdermal Nicotine and Naltrexone: Effects on Nicotine Withdrawal, Urges, Smoking, and Effects of Smoking." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.6 (Dec. 2006): 610–25.

- Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology* 15.1 (Feb. 2007): 81–92.
- Roozen, Hendrik G and others. “A Systematic Review of the Effectiveness of Naltrexone in the Maintenance Treatment of Opioid and Alcohol Dependence.” *European Neuropsychopharmacology* 16.5 (July 2006): 311–23.
- Sullivan, Maria A., and others. “Predictors of Retention in Naltrexone Maintenance for Opioid Dependence: Analysis of a Stage I Trial.” *The American Journal on Addictions* 15.2 (Mar.–Apr. 2006): 150–59.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Narcissistic personality disorder

### Definition

Narcissistic personality disorder (NPD) is defined by the Fourth Edition Text Revision of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM-IV-TR*), a handbook that mental health professionals use to diagnose mental disorders (as one of ten **personality disorders**). As a group, these disorders are described by *DSM-IV-TR* as “enduring pattern[s] of inner experience and behavior” that are sufficiently rigid and deep-seated to bring a person into repeated conflicts with his or her social and occupational environment. *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that these dysfunctional patterns must be regarded as nonconforming or deviant by the person’s culture, and cause significant emotional pain and/or difficulties in relationships and occupational performance.

To meet the **diagnosis** of a personality disorder, the patient’s problematic behaviors must appear in two or more of the following areas:

- perception and interpretation of the self and other people
- intensity and duration of feelings and their appropriateness to situations
- relationships with others
- ability to control impulses

It is important to note that all the personality disorders are considered to have their onset in late adolescence or early adulthood. Doctors rarely give a diagnosis of personality disorder to children on the grounds that children’s personalities are still in process of formation and may change considerably by the time they are in their late teens.

NPD is defined more specifically as a pattern of grandiosity (exaggerated claims to talents, importance, or specialness) in the patient’s private fantasies or outward behavior; a need for constant admiration from others; and a lack of empathy for others. The term *narcissistic* is derived from an ancient Greek legend, the story of Echo and Narcissus. According to the legend, Echo was a woodland nymph who fell in love with Narcissus, who was an uncommonly handsome but also uncommonly vain young man. He contemptuously rejected her expressions of love. She pined away and died. The god Apollo was angered by Narcissus’ pride and self-satisfaction, and condemned him to die without ever knowing human love. One day, Narcissus was feeling thirsty, saw a pool of clear water nearby, and knelt beside it in order to dip his hands in the water and drink. He saw his face reflected on the surface of the water and fell in love with the reflection. Unable to win a response from the image in the water, Narcissus eventually died beside the pool.

Havelock Ellis, a British **psychologist**, first used the story of Echo and Narcissus in 1898 as a capsule summary of pathological self-absorption. The words *narcissist* and *narcissistic* have been part of the vocabulary of psychology and psychiatry ever since. They have, however, been the subjects of several controversies. In order to understand NPD, the reader may find it helpful to have an outline of the different theories about narcissism in human beings, its relation to other psychiatric disorders, and its connections to the wider culture. NPD is unique among the *DSM-IV-TR* personality disorders in that it has been made into a symbol of the problems and discontents of contemporary Western culture as a whole.

### Description

A good place to begin a discussion of the different theories about narcissism is with the observation that NPD exists as a diagnostic category only in *DSM-IV-TR*, which is an American diagnostic manual. The *International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems, Tenth Revision (ICD-10)*, the European equivalent of *DSM* lists only eight personality disorders. What *DSM-IV-TR* defines as narcissistic personality disorder, *ICD-10* lumps together with “eccentric, impulsive-type, immature, passive-aggressive, and psychoneurotic personality disorders.”

*DSM-IV-TR* specifies nine diagnostic criteria for NPD. For the clinician to make the diagnosis, an individual must fit five or more of the following descriptions:

- He or she has a grandiose sense of self-importance (exaggerates accomplishments and demands to be

- considered superior without real evidence of achievement).
- He or she lives in a dream world of exceptional success, power, beauty, genius, or “perfect” love.
  - He or she thinks of him-or herself as “special” or privileged, and that he or she can only be understood by other special or high-status people.
  - He or she demands excessive amounts of praise or admiration from others.
  - He or she feels entitled to automatic deference, compliance, or favorable treatment from others.
  - He or she is exploitative towards others and takes advantage of them.
  - He or she lacks empathy and does not recognize or identify with others’ feelings.
  - He or she is frequently envious of others or thinks that they are envious of him or her.
  - He or she “has an attitude” or frequently acts in haughty or arrogant ways.

In addition to these criteria, *DSM-IV-TR* groups NPD together with three other personality disorders in its so-called Cluster B. These four disorders are grouped together on the basis of symptom similarities, insofar as patients with these disorders appear to others as overly emotional, unstable, or self-dramatizing. The other three disorders in Cluster B are antisocial, borderline, and histrionic personality disorders.

The *DSM-IV-TR* clustering system does not mean that all patients can be fitted neatly into one of the three clusters. It is possible for patients to have symptoms of more than one personality disorder or to have symptoms from different clusters. In addition, patients diagnosed with any personality disorder may also meet the criteria for mood, **substance abuse**, or other disorders.

#### *Subtypes of NPD*

**AGE GROUP SUBTYPES.** Ever since the 1950s, when psychiatrists began to notice an increase in the number of their patients that had narcissistic disorders, they have made attempts to define these disorders more precisely. NPD was introduced as a new diagnostic category in *DSM-III*, which was published in 1980. Prior to *DSM-III*, narcissism was a recognized phenomenon but not an official diagnosis. At that time, NPD was considered virtually untreatable because people who suffer from it rarely enter or remain in treatment; typically, they regard themselves as superior to their therapist, and they see their problems as caused by other people’s “stupidity” or “lack of appreciation.” More recently, however, some psychiatrists

have proposed dividing narcissistic patients into two subcategories based roughly on age: those who suffer from the stable form of NPD described by *DSM-IV-TR*, and younger adults whose narcissism is often corrected by life experiences.

This age group distinction represents an ongoing controversy about the nature of NPD—whether it is fundamentally a character disorder, or whether it is a matter of learned behavior that can be unlearned. Therapists who incline toward the first viewpoint are usually pessimistic about the results of treatment for patients with NPD.

**PERSONALITY SUBTYPES.** Other psychiatrists have noted that patients who meet the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for NPD reflect different clusters of traits within the *DSM-IV-TR* list. One expert in the field of NPD has suggested the following subcategories of narcissistic personalities:

- Craving narcissists. These are people who feel emotionally needy and undernourished, and may well appear clingy or demanding to those around them.
- Paranoid narcissists. This type of narcissist feels intense contempt for him- or herself, but projects it outward onto others. Paranoid narcissists frequently drive other people away from them by hypercritical and jealous comments and behaviors.
- Manipulative narcissists. These people enjoy “putting something over” on others, obtaining their feelings of superiority by lying to and manipulating them.
- Phallic narcissists. Almost all narcissists in this subgroup are male. They tend to be aggressive, athletic, and exhibitionistic; they enjoy showing off their bodies, clothes, and overall “manliness.”

#### **Causes and symptoms**

##### *Causes*

At present there are two major theories about the origin and nature of NPD. One theory regards NPD as a form of arrested psychological development while the other regards it as a young child’s defense against psychological pain. The two perspectives have been identified with two major figures in psychoanalytic thought, Heinz Kohut and Otto Kernberg respectively.

Both theories about NPD go back to Sigmund Freud’s pioneering work *On Narcissism*, published in 1914. In this essay, Freud introduced a distinction which has been retained by almost all later writers—namely, the distinction between primary and secondary narcissism. Freud thought that all human infants pass through a phase of primary narcissism, in which they assume they are the center of their universe. This

phase ends when the baby is forced by the realities of life to recognize that it does not control its parents (or other caregivers) but is in fact entirely dependent on them. In normal circumstances, the baby gives up its fantasy of being all-powerful and becomes emotionally attached to its parents rather than itself. What Freud defined as secondary narcissism is a pathological condition in which the infant does not invest its emotions in its parents but rather redirects them back to itself. He thought that secondary narcissism developed in what he termed the pre-Oedipal phase of childhood; that is, before the age of three. From a Freudian perspective, then, narcissistic disorders originate in very early childhood development, and this early origin is thought to explain why they are so difficult to treat in later life.

**CAUSES IN THE FAMILY OF ORIGIN.** Kohut and Kernberg agree with Freud in tracing the roots of NPD to disturbances in the patient's family of origin—specifically, to problems in the parent-child relationship before the child turned three. Where they disagree is in their accounts of the nature of these problems. According to Kohut, the child grows out of primary narcissism through opportunities to be mirrored by (i.e., gain approval from) his or her parents and to idealize them, acquiring a more realistic sense of self and a set of personal ideals and values through these two processes. On the other hand, if the parents fail to provide appropriate opportunities for idealization and mirroring, the child remains "stuck" at a developmental stage in which his or her sense of self remains grandiose and unrealistic while at the same time he or she remains dependent on approval from others for self-esteem.

In contrast, Kernberg views NPD as rooted in the child's defense against a cold and unempathetic parent, usually the mother. Emotionally hungry and angry at the depriving parents, the child withdraws into a part of the self that the parents value, whether looks, intellectual ability, or some other skill or talent. This part of the self becomes hyperinflated and grandiose. Any perceived weaknesses are "split off" into a hidden part of the self. Splitting gives rise to a lifelong tendency to swing between extremes of grandiosity and feelings of emptiness and worthlessness.

In both accounts, the child emerges into adult life with a history of unsatisfactory relationships with others. The adult narcissist possesses a grandiose view of the self but has a conflict-ridden psychological dependence on others. At present, however, psychiatrists do not agree in their description of the central defect in NPD; some think that the problem is primarily emotional while others regard it as the result of distorted cognition, or knowing. Some maintain that

the person with NPD has an "empty" or hungry sense of self while others argue that the narcissist has a "disorganized" self. Still others regard the core problem as the narcissist's inability to test reality and construct an accurate view of him- or herself.

**MACROSOCIAL CAUSES.** One dimension of NPD that must be taken into account is its social and historical context. Psychiatrists became interested in narcissism shortly after World War II (1939–45), when the older practitioners in the field noticed that their patient population had changed. Instead of seeing patients who suffered from obsessions and compulsions related to a harsh and punishing superego (the part of the psyche that internalizes the standards and moral demands of one's parents and culture), the psychiatrists were treating more patients with character disorders related to a weak sense of self. Instead of having a judgmental and overactive conscience, these patients had a weak or nonexistent code of morals. They were very different from the patients that Freud had treated, described, and analyzed. The younger generation of psychiatrists then began to interpret their patients' character disorders in terms of narcissism.

In the 1960s historians and social critics drew the attention of the general public to narcissism as a metaphorical description of Western culture in general. These writers saw several parallels between trends in the larger society and the personality traits of people diagnosed with narcissistic disorders. In short, they argued that the advanced industrial societies of Europe and the United States were contributing to the development of narcissistic disorders in individuals in a number of respects. Some of the trends they noted include the following:

- The mass media's preoccupation with "lifestyles of the rich and famous" rather than with ordinary or average people.
- Social approval of open displays of money, status, or accomplishments ("if you've got it, flaunt it") rather than modesty and self-restraint.
- Preference for a leadership style that emphasizes the leader's outward appearance and personality rather than his or her inner beliefs and values.
- The growth of large corporations and government bureaucracies that favor a managerial style based on "impression management" rather than objective measurements of performance.
- Social trends that encourage parents to be self-centered and to resent their children's legitimate needs.
- The weakening of churches, synagogues, and other religious or social institutions that traditionally helped

children to see themselves as members of a community rather than as isolated individuals.

Although discussion continues about the location and forms of narcissism in the larger society, no one now denies that personality disorders both reflect and influence the culture in which they arise. Family therapists are now reporting on the treatment of families in which the children are replicating the narcissistic disorders of their parents.

### Symptoms

Most observers regard grandiosity as the most important single trait of a narcissistic personality. It is important to note that grandiosity implies more than boasting or prideful display as such—it signifies self-aggrandizement that is not borne out by reality. For example, a person who claims that he or she was the most valuable player on a college athletic team may be telling the truth about their undergraduate sports record. Their claim may be bad manners but is not grandiosity. On the other hand, someone who makes the same claim but had an undistinguished record or never even made the team is being grandiose. Grandiosity in NPD is related to some of the diagnostic criteria listed by *DSM-IV-TR*, such as demanding special favors from others or choosing friends and associates on the basis of prestige and high status rather than personal qualities. In addition, grandiosity complicates diagnostic assessment of narcissists because it frequently leads to lying and misrepresentation of one's past history and present accomplishments.

Other symptoms of NPD include:

- a history of intense but short-term relationships with others; inability to make or sustain genuinely intimate relationships
- a tendency to be attracted to leadership or high-profile positions or occupations
- a pattern of alternating between unrealistic idealization of others and equally unrealistic devaluation of them
- assessment of others in terms of usefulness
- a need to be the center of attention or admiration in a working group or social situation
- hypersensitivity to criticism, however mild, or rejection from others
- an unstable view of the self that fluctuates between extremes of self-praise and self-contempt
- preoccupation with outward appearance, "image," or public opinion rather than inner reality

- painful emotions based on shame (dislike of who one is) rather than guilt (regret for what one has done)

People diagnosed with NPD represent a range of levels of functioning. Otto Kernberg has described three levels of narcissistic impairment. At the top are those who are talented or gifted enough to attract all the admiration and attention that they want; these people may never enter therapy because they don't feel the need. On the second level are those who function satisfactorily in their jobs but seek professional help because they cannot form healthy relationships or because they feel generally bored and aimless. Narcissists on the lowest level have frequently been diagnosed with another mental disorder and/or have gotten into trouble with the law. They often have severe difficulties with **anxiety** and with controlling their impulses.

### Demographics

*DSM-IV-TR* states that 2% to 16% of the clinical population and slightly less than 1% of the general population of the United States suffers from NPD. Between 50% and 75% of those diagnosed with NPD are males. Little is known about the prevalence of NPD across racial and ethnic groups.

### Gender issues

The high preponderance of male patients in studies of narcissism has prompted researchers to explore the effects of gender roles on this particular personality disorder. Some have speculated that the gender imbalance in NPD results from society's disapproval of self-centered and exploitative behavior in women, who are typically socialized to nurture, please, and generally focus their attention on others. Others have remarked that the imbalance is more apparent than real, and that it reflects a basically sexist definition of narcissism. These researchers suggest that definitions of the disorder should be rewritten in future editions of *DSM* to account for ways in which narcissistic personality traits manifest differently in men and in women.

### Professional and leadership positions

One important aspect of NPD that should be noted is that it does not prevent people from occupying, as well as aspiring to, positions of power, wealth, and prestige. Many people with NPD, as Kernberg's classification makes clear, are sufficiently talented to secure the credentials of success. In addition, narcissists' preoccupation with a well-packaged exterior means that they often develop an attractive and persuasive social manner. Many high-functioning narcissists are well

liked by casual acquaintances and business associates who never get close enough to notice the emptiness or anger underneath the polished surface.

Unfortunately, narcissists in positions of high visibility or power—particularly in the so-called helping professions (medicine, education, and the ministry)—often do great harm to others. In recent years a number of books and articles have been published within the religious, medical, and business communities regarding the problems caused by professionals with NPD. One **psychiatrist** noted in a lecture on substance **abuse** among physicians that NPD is one of the three most common psychiatric diagnoses among physicians in court-mandated substance abuse programs. A psychologist who serves as a consultant in the evaluation of seminary students and ordained clergy has remarked that the proportion of narcissists in the clergy has risen dramatically since the 1960s. Researchers in the field of business organization and management styles have compiled data on the human and economic costs of executives with undiagnosed NPD.

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of NPD is complicated by a number of factors.

### Complications of diagnosis

NPD is difficult to diagnose for several reasons. First, some people with NPD function sufficiently well that they do not come to the attention of therapists. Second, narcissists are prone to lie about themselves; thus it may take a long time for a therapist to notice discrepancies between a patient's version of his or her life and information gained from others or from public records. Third, many traits and behaviors associated with NPD may be attributed to other mental disorders. Low-functioning narcissists are often diagnosed as having **borderline personality disorder** (BPD), particularly if they are female; if they are male, they may be diagnosed as having **antisocial personality disorder** (ASPD). If the person with NPD has a substance abuse disorder, some of their narcissistic behaviors may be written off to the mood-altering substance. More recently, some psychiatrists have pointed to a tendency to confuse narcissistic behaviors in people with NPD who have had a traumatic experience with full-blown **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD). Given the lack of clarity in the differential diagnosis of NPD, some therapists are calling for a fundamental revision of *DSM-IV-TR* definitions of the personality disorders.

An additional complication is posed by economic considerations. The coming of **managed care** has meant that third-party payers (insurance companies) prefer short-term **psychotherapy** that concentrates on a patient's acute problems rather than on underlying chronic issues. Since narcissists are reluctant to trust others or form genuine interpersonal bonds, there is a strong possibility that many therapists do not recognize NPD in patients that they are treating for only a few weeks or months.

### Diagnostic interviews

Diagnosis of NPD is usually made on the basis of several sources of information: the patient's history and self-description, information from family members and others, and the results of diagnostic questionnaires. One questionnaire that is often used in the process of differential diagnosis is the Structured Clinical Interview for *DSM-III-R* Disorders, known as the SCID-II.

The most common diagnostic instrument used for narcissistic NPD is the Narcissistic Personality Inventory (NPI). First published by Robert R. Raskin and Calvin S. Hall in 1979, the NPI consists of 223 items consisting of paired statements, one reflecting narcissistic traits and the other nonnarcissistic. Subjects are required to choose one of the two items. The NPI is widely used in research as well as diagnostic assessment.

## Treatments

Treatments for NPD include a variety of pharmacologic, individual, and group approaches; none, however, have been shown to be particularly effective as of 2002.

### Medication

As of 2002, there are no medications that have been developed specifically for the treatment of NPD. Patients with NPD who are also depressed or anxious may be given drugs for relief of those symptoms. There are anecdotal reports in the medical literature that the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors**, or **SSRIs**, which are frequently prescribed for **depression**, reinforce narcissistic grandiosity and lack of empathy with others.

### Psychotherapy

Several different approaches to individual therapy have been tried with NPD patients, ranging from classical **psychoanalysis** and Adlerian therapy to rational-emotive approaches and **Gestalt therapy**.

## KEY TERMS

**Grandiosity**—Exaggerated and unrealistic self-importance; inflated self-assessment. Grandiosity is considered one of the core characteristics of persons diagnosed with NPD.

**Macrosocial**—Pertaining to the wider society, as distinct from such smaller social groupings as families, neighborhoods, etc.

**Narcissistic Personality Inventory (NPI)**—The most widely used English-language diagnostic instrument for narcissistic personality disorder. Based on the *DSM-III* criteria for NPD, the NPI is frequently used in research studies as well as patient assessment.

**Primary narcissism**—Sigmund Freud's term for a normal phase in early childhood development in which the infant has not yet learned to distinguish between itself and its world, and sees other people and things in its environment as extensions of itself.

**Projection**—A psychological process in which a person unconsciously attributes unacceptable feelings to someone else. Narcissists often project their envy onto other people, claiming that the person in question is envious of them.

**Splitting**—A psychological process that occurs during the childhood of a person with NPD, in which the child separates aspects of him- or herself that the parents value from those that they disregard.

**Superego**—According to Freud, the part of the mind that represents traditional parental and societal values. The superego is the source of guilt feelings.

The consensus that has emerged is that therapists should set modest goals for treatment with NPD patients. Most of them cannot form a sufficiently deep bond with a therapist to allow healing of early-childhood injuries. In addition, the tendency of these patients to criticize and devalue their therapists (as well as other authority figures) makes it difficult for therapists to work with them.

An additional factor that complicates psychotherapy with NPD patients is the lack of agreement among psychiatrists about the causes and course of the disorder. One researcher has commented that much more research is necessary to validate *DSM-IV-TR*'s description of NPD before outcome studies can be done comparing different techniques of treatment.

## Hospitalization

Low-functioning patients with NPD may require inpatient treatment, particularly those with severe self-harming behaviors or lack of impulse control. Hospital treatment, however, appears to be most helpful when it is focused on the immediate crisis and its symptoms rather than the patient's underlying long-term difficulties.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for younger persons with narcissistic disorders is hopeful to the extent that the disturbances reflect a simple lack of life experience. The outlook for long-standing NPD, however, is largely negative. Some narcissists are able, particularly as they approach their midlife years, to accept their own limitations and those of others, to resolve their problems with envy, and to accept their own mortality. Most patients with NPD, on the other hand, become increasingly depressed as they grow older within a youth-oriented culture and lose their looks and overall vitality. The retirement years are especially painful for patients with NPD because they must yield their positions in the working world to the next generation. In addition, they do not have the network of intimate family ties and friendships that sustain most older people.

## Prevention

The best hope for prevention of NPD lies with parents and other caregivers who are close to children during the early preschool years. Parents must be able to demonstrate empathy in their interactions with the child and with each other. They must also be able to show that they love their children for who they are, not for their appearance or their achievements. And they must focus their parenting efforts on meeting the child's changing needs as he or she matures, rather than demanding that the child meet their needs for status, comfort, or convenience.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Capps, Donald. *The Depleted Self: Sin in a Narcissistic Age*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1993.

Donaldson-Pressman, Stephanie, and Robert M. Pressman. *The Narcissistic Family: Diagnosis and Treatment*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass Publishers, 1994.

- Lowen, Alexander. *Narcissism: Denial of the True Self*. New York and London: Collier Macmillan, 1983.
- Weiser, Conrad W. *Healers—Harmed & Harmful*. Minneapolis: Fortress Press, 1994.
- World Health Organization (WHO). *The ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural Disorders*. Geneva: WHO, 1992.

#### PERIODICALS

- Billingham, Robert E. "Narcissistic Injury and Sexual Victimization Among Women College Students." *College Student Journal* 33: 62-70.
- Coid, J. W. "Aetiological Risk Factors for Personality Disorders." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 174 (June 1999): 530-538.
- Gunderson, J. G., and E. Ronningstam. "Differentiating Narcissistic and Antisocial Personality Disorders." *Journal of Personality Disorders* 15 (April 2001): 103-109.
- Imperio, Winnie Anne. "Don't Ignore Colleagues' Psychiatric Disorders." *OB/GYN News* (March 1, 2001): 36.
- Raskin, R., and C. S. Hall. "A Narcissistic Personality Inventory." *Psychological Reports* 45 (1979): 590.
- Simon, R. I. "Distinguishing Trauma-Associated Narcissistic Symptoms from Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder: A Diagnostic Challenge." *Harvard Review of Psychiatry* 10 (February 2002): 28-36.
- Tschanz, Brian T. "Gender Differences in the Study of Narcissism: A Multi-Sample Analysis of the Narcissistic Personality Inventory." *Sex Roles: A Journal of Research* 38 (May, 1998): 209-216.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street, NW, Washington, DC 20005. (202) 682-6220.  
<[www.psych.org](http://www.psych.org)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

#### OTHER

- Rhodewalt, Frederick. "Interpersonal Self-Construction: Lessons from the Study of Narcissism.". Lecture given at the Second Annual Sydney Symposium on Social Psychology, March 1999.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Narcolepsy

### Definition

Narcolepsy is a disorder marked by excessive daytime sleepiness, uncontrollable sleep attacks, and cataplexy (a sudden loss of muscle tone, usually lasting up to half an hour).

### Description

Narcolepsy is the second-leading cause of excessive daytime sleepiness (after obstructive sleep apnea). Persistent sleepiness and sleep attacks are the hallmarks of this condition. The sleepiness has been compared to the feeling of trying to stay awake after not sleeping for two or three days.

People with narcolepsy fall asleep suddenly—anywhere, at any time, even in the middle of a conversation. These sleep attacks can last from a few seconds to more than an hour. Depending on where the sleep attacks occur, they may be mildly inconvenient or even dangerous to the person, particularly if they occur while driving. Some people continue to function outwardly during the sleep episodes, such as continuing a conversation or putting things away. But when they wake up, they have no memory of the event.

Sleep researchers have identified several different types of sleep in humans. One type of sleep is called rapid eye movement (REM) sleep, because the person's eyes move rapidly back and forth underneath the closed eyelids. REM sleep is associated with dreaming. Normally, when people fall asleep, they experience 90 minutes of non-REM sleep, which is then followed by a phase of REM sleep. People with narcolepsy, however, enter REM sleep immediately. In addition, REM sleep occurs inappropriately in patients with narcolepsy throughout the day.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

One of the causes of narcolepsy is a genetic mutation. In 1999 researchers identified a gene associated with the disorder. The gene in its normal form codes for a protein, hypocretin, that allows cells in the hypothalamus (the part of the **brain** that regulates sleep behavior) to receive messages from other cells. As a result of the mutation, the cells cannot communicate properly, and abnormal sleeping patterns develop.

Other researchers have demonstrated an association between narcolepsy and an autoimmune response. In cases of autoimmunity, a person's immune system attacks the body's own cells, and in the case of narcolepsy induced by the immune response, this attack is against the specific area of the brain that controls alertness and sleep. Studies have found that cells in these areas are debilitated or destroyed in people with narcolepsy.

The disorder sometimes runs in families, but most people with narcolepsy have no relatives with the disorder. Researchers believe that the inheritance of

narcolepsy is similar to that of heart disease. In heart disease, several genes play a role in being susceptible to the disorder, but it does not usually develop without an environmental trigger of some sort.

### Symptoms

Although the symptoms of narcolepsy usually appear during a person's late teens or early 20s, the disease may not be diagnosed for many years. Most often, the first symptom is an overwhelming feeling of **fatigue**. After several months or years, cataplexy and other symptoms of the disorder appear.

Cataplexy is the most dramatic symptom of narcolepsy, affecting 75% of people with the disorder. During attacks, the knees buckle and the neck muscles go slack. In extreme cases, the person may become paralyzed and fall to the floor. This loss of muscle tone is temporary, lasting from a few seconds to half an hour, but it is frightening. The attacks can occur at any time but are often triggered by such strong emotions as anger, joy, or surprise.

Other symptoms of narcolepsy include:

- sleep attacks: short, uncontrollable sleep episodes throughout the day
- sleep paralysis: a frightening inability to move shortly after awakening or dozing off
- auditory or visual hallucinations: intense, sometimes terrifying experiences at the beginning or end of a sleep period
- disturbed nighttime sleep: tossing and turning, nightmares, and frequent awakenings during the night

### Demographics

There has been debate over the incidence of narcolepsy. It is thought to affect between one in every 1,000–2,000 Americans. The known prevalence in other countries varies, from one in 600 in Japan to one in 500,000 in Israel. The reasons for these demographic differences are not clear. In about 8–12% of cases, people diagnosed with narcolepsy know of other family members with similar symptoms.

### Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** of narcolepsy can be made by a general practitioner familiar with the disorder as well as by a **psychiatrist**. If a person comes to the doctor with reports of both excessive daytime sleepiness and cataplexy, a diagnosis may be made on the patient's history alone. Laboratory tests, however, can confirm a diagnosis of narcolepsy. These tests may include an overnight polysomnogram—a test in which sleep is monitored with a

variety of electrodes that record information about heart rate, eye movements, brain waves, muscle activity, breathing, changes in blood oxygen concentration, and body position. A Multiple Sleep Latency Test, which measures sleep latency (onset) and how quickly REM sleep occurs, may also be used. People who have narcolepsy usually fall asleep in less than five minutes.

If the diagnosis is still open to question, a genetic blood test can reveal the existence of certain substances in people who have a tendency to develop narcolepsy. Positive test results suggest, but do not prove, that the patient has narcolepsy.

Narcolepsy is a complex disorder, and it is often misdiagnosed. Many people with the disorder struggle with symptoms for an average of 14 years before being correctly diagnosed.

### Treatment

There is no cure for narcolepsy. It is not progressive, and it is not fatal, but it is a chronic disorder. The symptoms can be managed with lifestyle adjustments and/or medication.

People with narcolepsy must plan their days carefully. Scheduling regular naps (either several short, 15-minute naps or one long nap in the afternoon) can help boost alertness and wakefulness. A full eight hours of nighttime sleep should also be a goal. Exercise can often help people with narcolepsy feel more alert and energetic, although they should avoid exercising within a few hours of bedtime. Substances that contain alcohol, **nicotine**, and caffeine should be avoided because they can interfere with refreshing sleep and with day-time alertness.

Medications for narcolepsy may include the use of **antidepressants** (tricyclic antidepressants or **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors**) to treat such symptoms of the disorder as cataplexy, hypnagogic hallucinations, and/or sleep paralysis.

Stimulants (**amphetamines**) may also be used to help individuals with narcolepsy stay awake and alert. Modafinil (brand name Provigil) belongs to new class of stimulants known as eugergics, which have been used to treat narcolepsy in the United States since the late 1990s. Eugergic stimulants enhance alertness without many of the physical side effects or potential for **abuse** commonly associated with amphetamines.

With the recent discovery of the gene that causes narcolepsy, researchers are hopeful that other treatments can be designed to relieve the symptoms of the disorder.

## KEY TERMS

**Cataplexy**—A symptom of narcolepsy marked by a sudden episode of muscle weakness triggered by strong emotions. The muscle weakness may cause the person's knees to buckle, or the head to drop. In severe cases, the patient may become paralyzed for a few seconds to minutes.

**Hypnagogic hallucinations**—Dreamlike auditory or visual hallucinations that occur while a person is falling asleep.

**Hypothalamus**—A part of the forebrain that controls heartbeat, body temperature, thirst, hunger, blood pressure, blood sugar levels, and other functions.

**Polysomnogram**—A machine that is used to diagnose sleep disorders by measuring and recording a variety of body functions related to sleep, including heart rate, eye movements, brain waves, muscle activity, breathing, changes in blood oxygen concentration, and body position.

**Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep**—A type of sleep during which the eyes move back and forth rapidly underneath closed eyelids. REM sleep is associated with dreaming.

**Sleep paralysis**—An abnormal episode of sleep in which patients cannot move for a few minutes, usually occurring while falling asleep or waking up. Sleep paralysis is often found in patients with narcolepsy.

## Prognosis

Narcolepsy is not a degenerative disease, and patients do not develop other neurologic symptoms. Narcolepsy can, however, interfere with a person's ability to work, play, drive, socialize, and perform other daily activities. In severe cases, the disorder prevents people from living a normal life, leading to **depression** and a loss of independence.

## Prevention

Narcolepsy is not a preventable disorder.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

Mignot, E. "Genetics of Narcolepsy and Other Sleep Disorders." *American Journal of Human Genetics* 60 (1997): 1289–1302.

Siegel, Jeremy M. "Narcolepsy." *Scientific American* Jan. 2000. Available online at: <<http://www.sciam.com/2000/0100issue/0100siegel.html>>.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Sleep Medicine. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101 Rochester, MN 55901. Telephone: (507) 287-6008. Web site: <[www.aasmnet.org](http://www.aasmnet.org)>.

American Sleep Disorders Association. 1610 14th Street NW, Suite 300, Rochester, MN 55901. Telephone: (507) 287-6006.

Narcolepsy Network. P.O. Box 42460, Cincinnati, OH 45242. Telephone: (973) 276-0115.

National Center on Sleep Disorders Research. Two Rockledge Centre, 6701 Rockledge Drive, Bethesda, MD 20892. Telephone: (301) 435-0199.

National Sleep Foundation. 1522 K Street, NW, Suite 500, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (202) 785-2300. Web site: <[www.sleepfoundation.org](http://www.sleepfoundation.org)>.

Stanford Center for Narcolepsy. 1201 Welch Road, Room P-112, Stanford, CA 94305. Telephone: (415) 725-6517.

University of Illinois Center for Narcolepsy Research. 845 S. Damen Avenue, Chicago, IL 60612. Telephone: (312) 996-5176.

## OTHER

Stanford University Medical Center. "Stanford Researchers Nab Narcolepsy Gene For Sleep Disorders." 1999. Web site: <<http://www.stanford.edu/%7Edement/ngene.html>>.

Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man. National Center for Biotechnology Information and Johns Hopkins University. "Narcolepsy 1: NRCLP1." 2007. Available online at: <<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/dispmim.cgi?id=161400>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. National Institutes of Health. "Narcolepsy." 2006. Available online at: <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000802.htm>>.

NINDS Hypersomnia Information Page. 2007. Available online at: <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/hypersomnia/hypersomnia.htm>>.

NINDS Narcolepsy Information Page. 2007. Available online at: <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/narcolepsy/narcolepsy.htm>>.

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Nardil see **Phenelzine**

Navane see **Thiothixene**

# Nefazodone

## Definition

Nefazodone is a prescription drug commonly used to treat **depression**. Nefazodone was available in the United States under the trade name of Serzone, but its maker is no longer marketing it under that name. It is still available in the United States as generic brands.

## Purpose

Nefazodone is considered an antidepressant and is best known for treating depression. It may be used to treat **major depressive disorder**, **dysthymic disorder**, and the depressed phase of **bipolar disorder**. As with all **antidepressants**, it may take several weeks before full beneficial effects are seen.

## Description

Nefazodone was approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 1994. It is believed to increase the amounts of some chemicals in the **brain**. By altering the activities of specific brain chemicals, nefazodone may reduce the chemical imbalances responsible for causing depression.

The drug is available as tablets in several different strengths, including 50-, 100-, 150-, 200-, and 250-mg tablets.

Nefazodone is broken down by the liver.

## Recommended dosage

For most people, the recommended initial dose of nefazodone is 100 mg taken by mouth twice daily. The dose may be increased in 100- or 200-mg increments once a week. Most commonly, final dosages range between 300–600 mg taken by mouth each day.

It is recommended that the initial dose of nefazodone be lowered to 50 mg twice daily for individuals over age 65 or with debilitations, because these individuals may be more sensitive to some of the drug's side effects.

## Precautions

Nefazodone has been associated with liver failure, which has led the FDA to add a warning to its label advising of this possibility. People who exhibit symptoms that include yellowing skin or eyes, dark urine, or stomach pain should contact a doctor immediately.

In addition, antidepressants have been associated with an increased risk of harming or killing themselves

or trying to do so. The FDA has advised that this drug should not be administered to children under the age of 18. If it is prescribed for a child or adolescent, caregivers should watch the patient carefully for signs of intention to commit self-harm or attempt **suicide**. These symptoms can develop suddenly, and include new or worsening depression, talk about self-harm or suicide, agitation to panic attacks, aggression, and changes in sleep patterns.

People who have a history of epilepsy or other seizure disorders, heart attack, **stroke**, high blood pressure, or mania may require close physician supervision while taking nefazodone. Nefazodone may increase the tendency to have **seizures**, and should be used carefully by people with epilepsy or other seizure disorders. Nefazodone may lower blood pressure. This effect may be most noticeable when rising suddenly from a lying or sitting position. People with a history of heart attack or stroke, those taking medications for high blood pressure, or people who are dehydrated may be most sensitive to this effect and may feel dizzy or faint when standing up suddenly. Nefazodone may alter moods or cause mania, so patients with a history of mania should use nefazodone with caution.

In rare situations, men taking nefazodone may experience long, painful erections. If this occurs, a health care provider should be notified immediately.

Because there is an increased likelihood of suicide in individuals with depression, close supervision of those at high risk for suicide attempts is recommended. Nefazodone is not recommended for women who are pregnant or breast-feeding.

## Side effects

The most common side effects that cause people to stop taking nefazodone are dizziness, difficulty sleeping, weakness, or agitation. Other common adverse effects are sleepiness, dry mouth, nausea, constipation, blurred vision, and confusion.

Other, less common adverse effects associated with nefazodone are headache, flu-like symptoms, low blood pressure, itching, rash, upset stomach, fluid retention, muscle aches, thirst, memory impairment, nerve pain, nightmares, difficulty walking, ringing in the ears, urinary difficulties, breast pain, or vaginal irritation.

It has recently been discovered that in rare situations, nefazodone causes liver failure. If nausea, stomach pains, yellowing of the skin or eyes, itching, or darkening of urine occurs while taking nefazodone, a health care professional should be consulted immediately.

## KEY TERMS

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders as well.

**Depression**—A mental state characterized by excessive sadness. Other symptoms include altered sleep patterns, thoughts of suicide, difficulty concentrating, agitation, lack of energy, and loss of enjoyment in activities that are usually pleasurable.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

## Interactions

Use of nefazodone with antidepressants referred to as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) is strongly discouraged due to the potential for high fever, muscle stiffness, sudden muscle spasms, rapid changes in heart rate and blood pressure, and the possibility of death. In fact, there should be a lapse of at least 14 days between taking a monoamine oxidase inhibitor and nefazodone or at least seven days should pass if switching from nefazodone to an MAOI. Some examples of MAOIs include **phenelzine** (Nardil) and **tranylcypromine** (Parnate).

Some other drugs such as **trazodone** (Desyrel) and sibutramine may also interact with nefazodone and cause a syndrome characterized by irritability, muscle stiffness, shivering, muscle spasms, and altered consciousness. If nefazodone is used with **buspirone** (BuSpar), the dosage of buspirone should be lowered to prevent adverse effects. Additionally, when nefazodone is used in combination with digoxin (Lanoxin), frequent monitoring of blood levels of digoxin is recommended to prevent toxicity.

Nefazodone should not be used with the drugs **triazolam** (Halcion) and **alprazolam** (Xanax) because the side effects of these drugs are likely to increase. Use

of nefazodone should also be avoided with **carbamazepine** (Tegretol), because nefazodone is likely to lose its effectiveness.

It is best to avoid using nefazodone with **pimozide** (Orap) due to an increased tendency for severe and potentially life-threatening irregular heartbeats.

When used with gemfibrozil or other drugs that lower cholesterol levels, the risk of muscle pain and weakness may be increased.

Because nefazodone may cause drowsiness, it should be used carefully with other medications that also make people prone to sleepiness such as antidepressants, antipsychotics, antihistamines, and alcohol.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Bristol-Meyers Squibb staff. *Serzone Package Insert*.

Princeton, NJ: Bristol-Meyers Squibb Company, 2001.

Facts and Comparisons staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*.

6th ed. St. Louis, MO: A Wolter Kluwer Company, 2002.

Mosby staff. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

Ahmad, Syed Rizwanuddin. "Adverse Drug Event Monitoring at the Food and Drug Administration: Your Report Can Make a Difference." *Journal of General Internal Medicine* 18, (2003). Available online at: <<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/1494803/>>.

### OTHER

Federal Register. October 26, 2004. 69(206): 62447. Doc ID: fr260c04-48. "Determination That SERZONE (Nefazodone Hydrochloride) Was Not Withdrawn from Sale for Reasons of Safety or Effectiveness." Available online at: <<http://a257.g.akamaitech.net/7/257/2422/06jun20041800/edocket.access.gpo.gov/2004/04-23857.htm>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Nefazodone." 2005. Available online at: <<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/1494803/>>.

United States Food and Drug Administration. Nefazodone hydrochloride (marketed as Serzone) Information, FDA Alert: Suicidal Thoughts or Actions in Children and Adults. 2005. Available online at: <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/infopage/nefazodone/default.htm>>.

Kelly Karpa, RPh, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Negative symptoms

### Definition

Negative symptoms are thoughts, feelings, or behaviors normally present which are absent or diminished in a person with a mental disorder.

### Description

Examples of negative symptoms are social withdrawal, **apathy** (decreased motivation), poverty of speech (brief replies), inability to experience pleasure (anhedonia), limited emotional expression, or defects in attention control. The term “negative symptoms” is specifically used for describing **schizophrenia**, but sometimes used more generally in reference to disorders such as **depression** or **dementia**. These symptoms may be associated with altered brainwave activity or **brain damage**. They can be more difficult to diagnose than **positive symptoms** (**hallucinations**, **delusions**, bizarre behavior, or formal thought disorder) because they represent a lesser degree of normal, desirable activity rather than the presence of undesirable or bizarre behavior. Side effects of certain medications, demoralization (loss of positive emotions like hope or confidence usually as the result of situations where one feels powerless), or a lack of stimulation in one’s environment can also cause negative symptoms, so these possibilities must be ruled out before attributing the symptoms to a disorder.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

## Neglect

### Definition

Neglect occurs when a parent or other primary caretaker chooses not to fulfill their obligations to care for, provide for, or adequately supervise and monitor the activities of their child. Parental and caregiving obligations include the physical, emotional, and educational well-being of the child. Thus, neglect can also occur when the parent or caretaker does not seek adequate medical or dental care for the child. Another definition of neglect is when the parental figure does not provide sufficient food, clothing, or shelter.

Parents are also expected to provide for the emotional needs of the child. Thus, neglect can occur when parents abandon the child, or simply have no time to spend with the child, in essence leaving the child to

raise himself. If the child is actually left without supervision, this certainly constitutes neglect as well.

The final feature of neglect includes educational neglect, which often occurs when one child is responsible for other children in the family. Shifting the responsibility of caring for younger children to another child in the family prevents the caregiving child from participating in age-appropriate activities for themselves, such as attending school. This is a relatively common situation that makes it difficult for the oldest—and perhaps all of the children—to attend school. Parental responsibility includes providing adequate guidance and supervision for the children to regularly attend school. Truancy is not only a problem for children, but may be part of the picture of neglect as well.

### Effects of neglect

Consequences of neglect are generally cumulative, and often negatively affect the child’s development. For example, poor nutrition has negative consequences on the child’s physical and psychological development. If proper nutrients are not available at critical growth periods, the child’s development will not follow the normal and usual pattern. Common physical and psychological reactions to neglect include stunted growth, chronic medical problems, inadequate bone and muscle growth, and lack of neurological development that negatively affects normal **brain** functioning and information processing. Processing problems may often make it difficult for children to understand directions, may negatively impact the child’s ability to understand social relationships, or may make completion of some academic tasks impossible without assistance or **intervention** from others. Lack of adequate medical care may result in long-term health problems or impairments such as hearing loss from untreated ear infections.

Long-term mental health effects of neglect are inconsistent. Effects of neglect can range from chronic **depression** to difficulty with relationships; however, not all adults neglected as children will suffer from these results. Some individuals are more resilient than others and are able to move beyond the emotional neglect they may have experienced. Characteristics of resilient individuals include an optimistic or hopeful outlook on life, and feeling challenged rather than defeated by problems.

### Factors associated with neglect

Although each family’s situation is unique with regard to stressors and characteristics that might precipitate neglect, there are some general factors that have been associated with neglect of a child. These factors include characteristics of the parental figure, and socioeconomic status.

Parental figures who neglect may have been neglected or abused themselves. There is a tendency for parental figures that neglect their children to have low self-esteem, poor impulse control, and to experience **anxiety** or depression. Other factors associated with neglect often include inadequate information about child development, including age-appropriate expectations of what children may be able to do. The parents may also feel overwhelmed by parenting responsibilities, and feel negatively about the child's demands on them. Such parents may never have fully adopted the role of parent or the caregiving the parental role requires. Internal pressures often push the caregivers to take care of their own needs (perhaps inappropriately), while ignoring the needs of the child. **Substance abuse** is often associated with neglect, particularly for those parents who are more self-absorbed and focused on their needs rather than their child's. This characteristic is also consistent with the findings of other studies indicating that some neglectful parents have an inability to be empathic, or to understand the feelings and needs of others.

Although abuse may occur across all levels of income and education, neglect is more often associated with severe levels of poverty and lower educational level. The external stressors may feel more extreme in single parent families as well, leading to neglectful behavior. Even in families where the parent is attempting to provide for the children, absence due to multiple work demands may lead to a neglectful situation. Families that are disorganized and socially isolated are more likely to neglect the children in their care.

Unlike victims of abuse, there are few consistent characteristics associated with victims of neglect. Retrospective studies of adults neglected as children indicate that females are slightly less resilient to neglect than men.

### **Prevalence**

The number of children nationwide who are harmed or endangered by neglect is greater than any type of abuse. Neglect is consistently reported in more than half of the substantiated reports of mistreatment handled by the authorities.

### **Prevention and treatment**

Interventions are usually aimed at two levels: community prevention efforts and individual parenting skills. A community-based program that actually combines the two facets of intervention is the "Parents as Teachers" program, which is available through many local school districts throughout the nation and is free of charge.

Benefits of the program include its accessibility—parents simply need to call for the free service—and the in-home interventions provided by the program. Although the program is not part of the social service network of agencies, the fact that workers go into the home replicates that aspect of caseworker interventions. The simple act of having a paraprofessional in one's home can reduce the likelihood of neglect. Specific interventions that further reduce the likelihood of neglect include focusing on the parent-child relationship, reviewing appropriate expectations for the child's behavior (based on child development principles), and teaching basic parenting skills.

Other treatment options are generally more formal, and may be initiated by a call from a mandated reporter with concerns about neglect. Mandated reporters include physicians, teachers, and counselors. Any of these professionals may make the initial call if neglect is suspected. Concerned individuals may also call social services to report suspected neglect. In these cases of forced treatment, parents may be less willing participants in treatment efforts aimed at behavioral change for themselves and their families. In other instances, the parent or child may already be in treatment, and the focus on reducing neglectful behaviors may be incorporated into the existing treatment relationship. Factors to focus on in formal treatment aimed at reducing the likelihood of neglect may include specific parenting skills, home visits to allow monitoring of the relationship, as well as other individual needs such as substance abuse treatment, or empathy skill training.

Treatment efforts for the child should include family counseling aimed at **communication skills** and appropriate expression of affection and emotion within the family. Assertiveness skills training may be helpful for older adolescents in asking for their perceived needs.

*See also* Assertiveness skills training; Family therapy; Abuse.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

McKenry, P. C., and S. J. Price, eds. *Families & Change*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications, 2000.

#### **PERIODICALS**

English, D. J. "The extent and consequences of child maltreatment." *The Future of Children* 8, no. 1 (Spring 1998): 39-53.

Horwitz, A. V., C. S. Widom, J. McLaughlin, H. R. White. "The impact of childhood abuse and neglect on adult mental health: A prospective study." *Journal of Health & Social Behavior* 42, no. 2 (Jun 2001): 184-201.

Deanna Pledge, Ph.D.

## Neuroleptic malignant syndrome

### Definition

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS) is a rare but potentially fatal condition that can occur in people who take neuroleptic medication to treat **schizophrenia**, mania, **delusional disorder**, and other types of mental illnesses. There is evidence that sympathetic nervous system activation or dysfunction may be significantly associated with the underlying pathogenesis of NMS. NMS, which is characterized by motor dysfunction, extremely high fever, and changes in consciousness, is most commonly associated with older generation typical neuroleptics such as **haloperidol** (Haldol) and **chlorpromazine** (Largactil). However, the newer, atypical antipsychotic agents, such as **clozapine** (Clozaril), risperidone (Risperdal), and **olanzapine** (Zyprexa), also have been associated with NMS symptoms. NMS additionally has been reported in patients with Parkinson's disease who have had their medications (such as levodopa) rapidly withdrawn.

Non-neuroleptic agents associated with NMS block central **dopamine** pathways and include metoclopramide (Reglan), lithium, and **amoxapine** (Ascendin). The syndrome also shares features with malignant hyperthermia and the serotonin syndrome.

### Description

NMS is believed to be related to the dopaminergic system. Dopamine is a neurotransmitter that transmits messages between nerve cells in the **brain**. It regulates mood, emotion, motivation, and movement. Neuroleptic antipsychotic drugs act as antagonists at dopamine receptors, meaning that they block the receptors, thereby preventing dopamine from attaching to the receptors and causing its response from the decreased availability of dopamine itself. Sometimes, blocking these receptors can result in **movement disorders** and difficulty regulating body heat, both of which are symptoms associated with NMS. NMS typically begins within the first two to four weeks after a patient starts taking antipsychotic medications or is put on a higher dose of the medication.

### Demographics

Neuroleptic malignant syndrome occurs in between 0.02% and 2.44% of people who are treated with neuroleptic medications, although there is no universal agreement on this statistic. The mortality rate with NMS is between 5% and 11.6%, also with

no complete consensus on this figure. Mortality from the condition has declined over the years but remains significant. Death generally results after respiratory failure, diffuse intravascular coagulation (DIC), cardiovascular collapse, myoglobinuric renal failure, and arrhythmias. There is a predilection toward males but none associated with age. There is a 2:1 male-to-female ratio, which is thought to occur because men are treated with neuroleptic agents more frequently than women.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Although researchers have identified several risk factors for NMS, the precise cause is unknown. Genetic factors may play a role, however, and NMS has been reported to run in families. Researchers have identified alterations or deletions to the CYP2D6 genes in people with NMS. Changes to these genes may affect the way neuroleptics are metabolized by the liver, resulting in higher blood concentrations.

#### Symptoms

The **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders** (or *DSM-IV*) lists muscle rigidity and a high temperature as the primary symptoms of NMS. Other clinical signs are profuse diaphoresis, changes in mental status, and autonomic instability. The **diagnosis** is confirmed, but not excluded, when the following are observed:

- Recent treatment with neuroleptics within the past one to four weeks
- Hypothermia (above 38°C)
- Muscular rigidity
- Exclusion of other drug-induced, systemic, or neuropsychiatric illness
- At least five of the following: Change in mental status; Tachycardia (abnormally rapid heartbeat); Hypertension or hypotension; Diaphoresis or sialorrhea; Leukocytosis; Tremor; Incontinence; Increased creatine phosphokinase (CPK) or urinary myoglobin; and Metabolic acidosis

### Diagnosis

Early diagnosis of NMS is essential to prevent fatality. Physicians begin by ruling out conditions with similar symptoms. Laboratory studies include a complete blood count; urine myoglobin; CPK; arterial blood gas; liver function tests; blood cultures; serum and urine toxic screening for **cocaine**, **amphetamines**, and other gents; blood urea nitrogen; and calcium and

## KEY TERMS

**Atypical antipsychotic**—A class of newer generation antipsychotic medications that are used to treat schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders.

**Dopamine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that helps regulate emotion and movement.

**Dopamine agonist**—A drug that binds to dopamine receptors and produces effects that are similar to dopamine.

**Dopamine antagonist**—A substance that binds to dopamine receptors, preventing dopamine from binding and triggering its response.

**Electroencephalogram**—A diagnostic technique that measures electrical activity in the brain.

**Neuroleptic drugs**—The class of drugs used to treat schizophrenia, mania, and other types of mental disorders.

**Parkinson's disease**—A degenerative condition of the central nervous system that results in reduced dopamine production, leading to symptoms such as tremors, muscle rigidity, and difficulty with balance and coordination.

phosphate levels. Blood tests of patients with NMS reveal high levels of creatine kinase, a muscle enzyme, as well as abnormally high levels of leukocytes (white blood cells). An electroencephalogram (EEG), which measures electrical activity in the brain, will show a slowing of brain function. Chest radiography is performed to rule out aspiration pneumonia. A lumbar puncture, sometimes with a preceding CT scan, is performed to diagnose meningitis in patients who have high fever and altered mental status.

### Treatments

Because little research has been done on NMS, treatment guidelines are limited. The first line of treatment is to discontinue the medication that is believed to be causing the condition, exclude other medical conditions, begin aggressive supportive care, and administrate pharmacotherapies, such as **benzodiazepines (diazepam)**, muscle relaxants, and dopamine agonists (bromocriptine), which can be used to control symptoms. After the medication is stopped, most patients will improve within two weeks, although symptoms may persist for as long as several months. Doctors typically recommend waiting for at least two

weeks after the patient's symptoms have improved before restarting antipsychotic medications, to prevent a **relapse** of NMS. After that period, atypical antipsychotic medications are preferred over the older generation antipsychotic drugs, because they are associated with a lower risk of NMS.

Patients should be carefully monitored while recovering from NMS. Doctors will check the patient's creatine kinase levels, as well as his or her overall health, and will ensure that the patient receives adequate nutrition and hydration and does not progress to kidney failure.

### Prognosis

With early diagnosis and treatment, mortality from NMS can be prevented. However, because the condition can recur at any time, patients must be monitored over the long term.

### Prevention

The only way to entirely prevent NMS is to avoid the use of neuroleptic drugs. But because NMS is rare, and because many patients rely on these drugs for the treatment of mental disorders, avoiding these drugs is neither practical nor feasible in many cases. However, using the newer atypical antipsychotics and/or lowering the dose may reduce the risk of NMS.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Bruton, Laurence, John Lazo, and Keith Parker. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. New York: The McGraw-Hill Companies, 2006.  
 Caroff, Stanley N., MD, Paul E. Keck, Jr., MD, and Arthur Lazarus. *Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome and Related Conditions*. 2d ed. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2003.  
 Kring, Ann M., Gerald C. Davison, John M. Neale, and Sheri L. Johnson. *Abnormal Psychology*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2006.  
 Meyer, Jerrold S., and Linda F. Quenzer. *Psychopharmacology: Drugs, the Brain and Behavior*. Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates, Inc., 2005.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Mental Health America, 2000 N. Beauregard Street, Sixth Floor, Alexandria, VA 22311. Telephone: (800) 433-5959. <<http://www.nmha.org>>.  
 National Institute of Mental Health, Public Information and Communications Branch, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (866) 615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.  
 National Parkinson Foundation, 1501 N.W. 9th Avenue/ Bob Hope Road, Miami, FL 33136-1494. Telephone: (800) 327-4545. <<http://www.parkinson.org>>.

Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome Information Service, Box 1069, Sherburne, NY 13460-1069. Telephone: (888) 667-8367. <<http://www.nmsis.org>>.

Stephanie N. Watson

Neurolinguistic programming see  
**Hypnotherapy**

Neurontin see **Gabapentin**

## Neuropsychiatry/Behavioral neurology

### Definition

Neuropsychiatry is an integrative, collaborative discipline that deals with the psychiatric aspects of neurological disease. The terms "neuropsychiatry" and "behavioral neurology" are frequently used interchangeably.

### Description

Neuropsychiatry lies in the interface between the disciplines of neurology and psychiatry. For many centuries, neurology and psychiatry formed a single unified field. Even in the late nineteenth century, many medical practitioners and researchers, like Sigmund Freud, Jean-Martin Charcot, and Eugen Bleuler, did not distinguish between the study of the mind and the **brain**. In the twentieth century, however, neurology and psychiatry became separate, distinct disciplines. Neurology focused on disorders, such as **stroke**, multiple sclerosis, and Parkinson's disease, which were clearly characterized by disease of, or damage to, the brain, and resulted in behavioral and cognitive problems, and also somatic symptoms related to movement and sensation. Psychiatry, on the other hand, concerned itself with behavioral, cognitive, personality and emotional disorders, such as **depression**, **schizophrenia**, and **anxiety disorders**. Initially, these conditions were not typically seen as problems related to sensory or motor dysfunction, and consequently revealed few or no pathologic symptoms during standard neurologic examinations.

The impetus for a change in this divide between neurology and psychiatry has come from the advances made in neuroscience during the second half of the twentieth century. With the advanced understanding of the underlying biology of psychiatric disorders advances, it has become difficult to draw a clear line between the mind and the brain, the psychological and physical manifestations of disease. Because of these advances, scientists and clinicians are now able to assess

the structure and functioning of the brain in new ways. Many new techniques developed in the latter half of the twentieth century and the beginning of the twenty-first century have shown that behavioral, emotional and cognitive disorders are often accompanied by changes in the brain. For example, **magnetic resonance imaging** studies have revealed structural abnormalities in the brains of patients who suffer from schizophrenia, and functional magnetic resonance imaging and **positron emission tomography** techniques have demonstrated that brain function is abnormal in such patients. Researchers and clinicians are also now more cognizant of the fact that disorders that were traditionally in the domain of neurology, such as Parkinson's disease, are often accompanied by emotional and cognitive symptoms like depression and even **dementia**.

In addition, treatments that target the brain, such as pharmacotherapy, **transcranial magnetic stimulation**, **vagus nerve stimulation** and deep-brain stimulation are being used or are being investigated for their potential to alleviate disorders that have traditionally been considered psychiatric, such as depression and **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. Disorders that are currently recognized as being within the purview of neuropsychiatry include, but are not limited to, neurocognitive disorders, drug-induced **movement disorders**, Tourette's syndrome, stroke and head injury, chronic **fatigue** syndrome, Parkinson's disease, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, and dementia.

Territorial struggles between psychiatry and neurology continue. Modern neuropsychiatry, which has emerged only in the last two decades, is still a discipline with ill-defined boundaries, frequently psychiatry and neurology. Training programs in neuropsychiatry are still being developed.

*See also* Biological psychiatry; Liaison psychiatry.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Butcher, James N., Susan Mineka, and Jill M. Hooley. *Abnormal Psychology*. Boston, MA: Pearson Education, 2007.  
Kalat, James W. *Biological Psychology*. 9th ed. Belmont, CA: Thomson Wadsworth. 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

- Agrawal, Niruj. "Neuropsychiatry." *BMJ Career Focus* 328 (2004).  
Baker, Mary G., Rajendra Kale, and Matthew Menken. "Editorial: The Wall Between Neurology and Psychiatry." *BMJ* 324 (22 June 2002): 1468–69.  
Mitchell, Alex J. and Niruj Agrawal. "Editorial: Training in Neuropsychiatry: Is it Time to Reintegrate into Mainstream Psychiatry?" *Psychiatric Bulletin* 29 (2005): 361–64.  
Sachdev, Perminder S. "Whither Neuropsychiatry?" *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 17 (May 2005): 140–41.

## KEY TERMS

**Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder**—A condition characterized by difficulties relating to impulsiveness, excessive activity and distractibility.

**Chronic fatigue syndrome**—A debilitating condition characterized by severe chronic fatigue and other symptoms such as memory problems, pain, or tender lymph nodes.

**Deep-brain stimulation**—A surgical procedure used to treat disabling neurological symptoms such as those of Parkinson's disease. It involves implanting a device that electrically stimulates specific areas of the brain.

**Dementia**—A condition characterized by deficits in memory, cognition, personality, behavior, learning, and motor control. These manifestations impair an individual's ability to function and interact socially.

**Functional magnetic resonance imaging**—A scanning technique that involves measuring variations in magnetic fields, and that is used to determine which areas of the living brain are most active.

**Magnetic resonance imaging**—A scanning technique that involves measuring variations in magnetic fields, and is used to examine the structure of internal organs like the brain.

**Multiple sclerosis**—An inflammatory demyelinating disease of the central nervous system resulting in injury to the myelin sheath, oligodendrocytes and, to some extent, the axons and nerves. Multiple sclerosis is characterized by symptoms such as problems with movement, sensation, and speech.

**Neurocognitive disorders**—Neurological disorders characterized by cognitive problems.

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—An anxiety disorder characterized by intrusive thoughts or images of an unpleasant or frightening nature, and often by compulsive, ritualistic behaviors designed to ward off anxiety.

**Parkinson's disease**—A progressive condition characterized by neurological symptoms such as tremors, rigidity of the limbs and trunk, slowness of movement, and problems with balance and coordination.

**Pharmacotherapy**—Treatment with drugs.

**Positron emission tomography**—A technique that involves recording radioactive emissions from injected chemicals, and that is used to examine the activity of the living brain.

**Stroke**—A temporary loss of normal blood flow to an area of the brain.

**Tourette's syndrome**—A neurological disorder characterized by repetitive, stereotyped, involuntary movements and vocalizations.

**Transcranial magnetic stimulation**—A technique that involves application of an intense magnetic field to a part of the scalp in order to stimulate neurons in a particular part of the brain.

**Vagus nerve stimulation**—A technique that involves electrically stimulating the vagus nerve by means of a surgically implanted device.

Silver, Jonathan M. "Behavioral Neurology and Neuropsychiatry Is a Subspecialty." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 18 (May 2006): 146–48.

Yudofsky, Stuart C. and Robert E. Hales. "Editorial: Neuropsychiatry and the Future of Psychiatry and Neurology." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 159.8 (Aug. 2002): 1261–64.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Neuropsychiatric Association, 700 Ackerman Road, Suite 625, Columbus, OH 43202. (614) 447-2077. E-mail: [anpa@osu.edu](mailto:anpa@osu.edu)

International Neuropsychiatric Association, INA Secretariat Office, Neuropsychiatric Institute, Euroa Centre, The Prince of Wales Hospital, Randwick NSW 2031, Australia. 61-2-93823763. E-mail: [angie.russell@unsw.edu.au](mailto:angie.russell@unsw.edu.au)

Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, PhD

## Neuropsychological testing

### Definition

Clinical neuropsychology is a field with historical origins in both psychology and neurology. The primary activity of neuropsychologists is assessment of **brain** functioning through structured and systematic behavioral observation. Neuropsychological tests are designed to examine a variety of cognitive abilities, including speed of information processing, attention, memory, language, and executive functions, which are necessary for goal-directed behavior. By testing a range of cognitive abilities and examining patterns of performance in different cognitive areas, neuropsychologists can make inferences about underlying brain function. Neuropsychological testing is an important component of the assessment

and treatment of traumatic brain injury, **dementia**, neurological conditions, and psychiatric disorders. Neuropsychological testing is also an important tool for examining the effects of toxic substances and medical conditions on brain functioning.

## Description

As early as the seventeenth century, scientists theorized about associations between regions of the brain and specific functions. The French philosopher, Descartes, believed the human soul could be localized to a specific brain structure, the pineal gland. In the eighteenth century, Franz Gall advocated the theory that specific mental qualities such as spirituality or aggression were governed by discrete parts of the brain. In contrast, Pierre Flourens contended that the brain was an integrated system that governed cognitive functioning in a holistic manner. Later discoveries indicated that brain function is both localized and integrated. Paul Broca and Karl Wernicke furthered understanding of localization and integration of function when they reported the loss of language abilities in patients with lesions to two regions in the left hemisphere of the brain.

The modern field of neuropsychology emerged in the twentieth century, combining theories based on anatomical observations of neurology with the techniques of psychology, including objective observation of behavior and the use of statistical analysis to differentiate functional abilities and define impairment. The famous Soviet neuropsychologist Alexander Luria played a major role in defining neuropsychology as it is practiced today. Luria formulated two principle goals of neuropsychology: to localize brain lesions and analyze psychological activities arising from brain function through behavioral observation. American neuropsychologist Ralph Reitan emphasized the importance of using standardized psychometric tests to guide systematic observations of brain-behavior relationships.

Before the introduction of neuroimaging techniques like the **computed tomography** (CAT scan) and **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI), the primary focus of neuropsychology was **diagnosis**. Since clinicians lacked non-surgical methods for directly observing brain lesions or structural abnormalities in living patients, neuropsychological testing was the only way to determine which part of the brain was affected in a given patient. Neuropsychological tests can identify syndromes associated with problems in a particular area of the brain. For instance, a patient who performs well on tests of attention, memory, and language, but poorly on tests that require visual spatial skills such as copying a complex geometric figure or making designs

with colored blocks, may have dysfunction in the right parietal lobe, the region of the brain involved in complex processing of visual information. When a patient complains of problems with verbal communication after a **stroke**, separate tests that examine production and comprehension of language help neuropsychologists identify the location of the stroke in the left hemisphere. Neuropsychological tests can also be used as screening tests to see if more extensive diagnostic evaluation is appropriate. Neuropsychological screening of elderly people complaining of memory problems can help identify those at risk for dementia versus those experiencing normal age-related memory loss.

As neuropsychological testing came to play a less vital role in localization of brain dysfunction, clinical neuropsychologists found new uses for their skills and knowledge. By clarifying which cognitive abilities are impaired or preserved in patients with brain injury or illness, neuropsychologists can predict how well individuals will respond to different forms of treatment or rehabilitation. Although patterns of test scores illustrate profiles of cognitive strength and weakness, neuropsychologists can also learn a great deal about patients by observing how they approach a particular test. For example, two patients can complete a test in very different ways yet obtain similar scores. One patient may work slowly and methodically, making no errors, while another rushes through the test, making several errors but quickly correcting them. Some individuals persevere despite repeated failure on a series of test items, while others refuse to continue after a few failures. These differences might not be apparent in test scores, but can help clinicians choose among rehabilitation and treatment approaches.

Performance on neuropsychological tests is usually evaluated through comparison to the average performance of large samples of normal individuals. Most tests include tables of these normal scores, often divided into groups based on demographic variables like age and education that appear to affect cognitive functioning. This allows individuals to be compared to appropriate peers.

The typical neuropsychological examination evaluates sensation and perception, gross and fine motor skills, basic and complex attention, visual spatial skills, receptive and productive language abilities, recall and recognition memory, and executive functions such as cognitive flexibility and abstraction. Motivation and personality are often assessed as well, particularly when clients are seeking financial compensation for injuries, or cognitive complaints are not typical of the associated injury or illness.

## KEY TERMS

**Abstraction**—Ability to think about concepts or ideas separate from specific examples.

**Battery**—A number of separate items (such as tests) used together. In psychology, a group or series of tests given with a common purpose, such as personality assessment or measurement of intelligence.

**Executive functions**—A set of cognitive abilities that control and regulate other abilities and behaviors. Necessary for goal-directed behavior, they include the ability to initiate and stop actions, to monitor and change behavior as needed, and to plan future behavior when faced with novel tasks and situations.

**Hemisphere**—One side of the brain, right or left.

**Psychometric**—Pertaining to testing and measurement of mental or psychological abilities. Psychometric tests convert an individual's psychological traits and attributes into a numerical estimation or evaluation.

**Syndrome**—A group of symptoms that together characterize a disease or disorder.

Some neuropsychologists prefer to use fixed test batteries like the **Halstead-Reitan Battery** or the Luria-Nebraska Battery for all patients. These batteries include tests of a wide range of cognitive functions, and those who advocate their use believe that all functions must be assessed in each patient in order to avoid diagnostic bias or failure to detect subtle problems. The more common approach today, however, is to use a flexible battery based on hypotheses generated through a clinical interview, observation of the patient, and review of medical records. While this approach is more prone to bias, it has the advantage of preventing unnecessary testing. Since patients often find neuropsychological testing stressful and fatiguing, and these factors can negatively influence performance, advocates of the flexible battery approach argue that tailoring test batteries to particular patients can provide more accurate information.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Lezak, Muriel Deutsh. *Neuropsychological Assessment*. 3rd edition. New York: Oxford University Press, 1995.

Mitrushina, Maura N., Kyle B. Boone, and Louis F. D'Elia. *Handbook of Normative Data for Neuropsychological Assessment*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.

Spreen, Otfried and Esther Strauss. *A Compendium of Neuropsychological Tests: Administration, Norms, and Commentary*. 2nd Edition. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Walsh, Kevin and David Darby. *Neuropsychology: A Clinical Approach*. 4th edition. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 1999.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychological Association. Division 40, 750 First Street, N.E., Washington, DC 20002-4242. <<http://www.div40.org/>>.

International Neuropsychological Society. 700 Ackerman Road, Suite 550, Columbus, OH 43202. <<http://www.acs.ohio-state.edu/ins/>>.

National Academy of Neuropsychology. 2121 South Oneida Street, Suite 550, Denver, CO 80224-2594. <<http://nanonline.org/>>.

Danielle Barry, M.S.

## Neurosis

### Definition

Neurosis is a term generally used to describe a nonpsychotic mental illness which triggers feelings of distress and **anxiety** and impairs functioning.

### Description

#### Origins

The word *neurosis* means “nerve disorder,” and was first coined in the late eighteenth century by William Cullen, a Scottish physician. Cullen’s concept of neurosis encompassed those nervous disorders and symptoms that do not have a clear organic cause. Sigmund Freud later used the term *anxiety neurosis* to describe mental illness or distress with extreme anxiety as a defining feature.

There is a difference of opinion over the clinical use of the term neurosis today. It is not generally used as a diagnostic category by American psychologists and psychiatrists any longer, and was removed from the American Psychiatric Association’s **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders** in 1980 with the publication of the third edition (it last appeared as a diagnostic category in *DSM-II*). Some professionals use the term to describe anxious symptoms and associated behavior, or to describe the range of mental illnesses outside of the psychotic disorders (such as **schizophrenia**, **delusional disorder**). Others, particularly psychoanalysts (psychiatrists and psychologists

## KAREN HORNEY (1885–1952)

The German-born American psychoanalyst Karen Danielsen Horney was a pioneer of neo-Freudianism. She believed that every human being has an innate drive toward self-realization and that neurosis is essentially a process obstructing this healthy development.

Horney focused on the central position of conflict and solutions to conflict in neurosis in *Our Inner Conflicts* (1945). She saw the neurotic child feeling helpless and isolated in a potentially hostile world, seeking a feeling of safety in compulsive moves toward, against, and away from others. Each of these moves came to constitute comprehensive philosophies of life and patterns of interpersonal relating. The conflict between these opposed moves she called the basic conflict and recognized that it required the individual to resort to means for restoring a sense of inner unity. These means she called the neurotic solutions.

*Neurosis and Human Growth* (1950) was Horney's definitive work, in which she placed her concept of healthy development in the foreground. She viewed the real self as the core of the individual, the source of inherent, constructive, evolutionary forces which under favorable circumstances grow and unfold in a dynamic process of self-realization. She presented "a morality of evolution," in which she viewed as moral all that enhances self-realization and as immoral all that hinders it. The most serious obstacle to healthy growth was the neurotic solution, which she called self-idealization, the attempt to see and to mold oneself into a glorified, idealized, illusory image with strivings for superiority, power, perfection, and vindictive triumph over others. This search for glory inevitably leads the individual to move away from himself (alienation) and against himself (self-hate). "At war with himself," his suffering increases, his relationships with others are further impaired, and the self-perpetuating neurotic cycle continues.

who follow a psychoanalytical model of treatment, as popularized by Freud and Carl Jung), use the term neurosis to describe the internal process itself (called an unconscious conflict) that triggers the anxiety characteristic.

### Categories

The neurotic disorders are distinct from psychotic disorders in that the individual with neurotic symptoms has a firm grip on reality, and the psychotic patient does not. Before their reclassification, there were several major traditional categories of psychological neuroses, including: anxiety neurosis, depressive neurosis, obsessive-compulsive neurosis, somatization, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, and compensation neurosis—not a true neurosis, but a form of **malingering**, or feigning psychological symptoms for monetary or other personal gain.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, Inc., 2000.
- Fenichel, Otto M. *The Psychoanalytic Theory of Neurosis: 50th Anniversary Edition*. New York: W.W. Norton and Son. 1995.

Neurotic excoriation see **Dermatotillomania**

## Neurotransmitters

### Definition

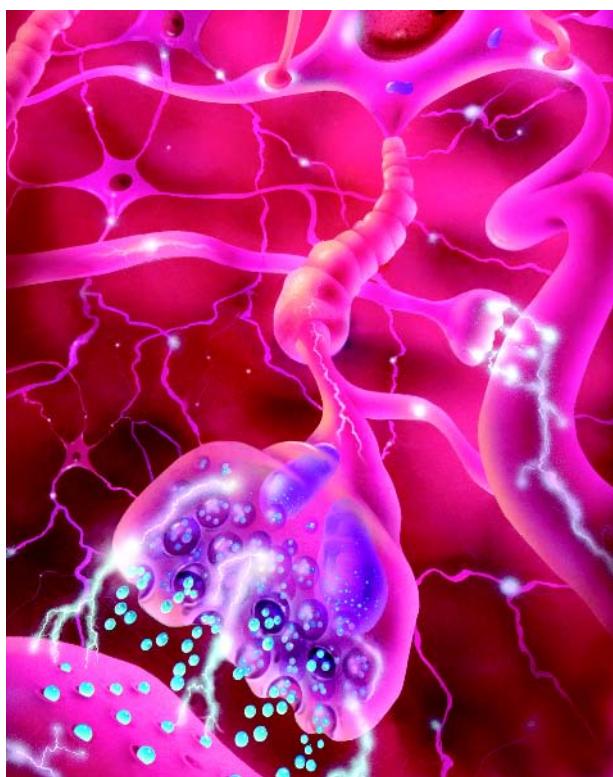
Neurotransmitters are chemicals located and released in the **brain** to allow an impulse from one nerve cell to pass to another nerve cell.

### Description

There are approximately 50 neurotransmitters identified. There are billions of nerve cells located in the brain, which do not directly touch each other. Nerve cells communicate messages by secreting neurotransmitters. Neurotransmitters can excite or inhibit neurons (nerve cells). Some common neurotransmitters are acetylcholine, norepinephrine, **dopamine**, serotonin and gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA). Acetylcholine and norepinephrine are excitatory neurotransmitters while dopamine, serotonin, and GABA are inhibitory.

### Mechanism of impulse transmission

Each neurotransmitter can directly or indirectly influence neurons in a specific portion of the brain, thereby affecting behavior. A nerve impulse travels through a nerve in a long, slender cellular structure called an axon, and it eventually reaches a structure called the presynaptic membrane, which contains neurotransmitters to be released in a free space called the synaptic cleft. Freely flowing neurotransmitter molecules are picked up by receptors (structures that appear on cellular surfaces that pick up molecules



An illustration of a neuron sending a nerve impulse. (Medical-On-Line/Alamy)

that fit into them like a “lock and key”) located in a structure called the postsynaptic membrane of another nearby neuron. Once the neurotransmitter is picked up by receptors in the postsynaptic membrane, the molecule is internalized in the neuron and the impulse continues. This process of nerve cell communication is extremely rapid.

Once the neurotransmitter is released from the neurotransmitter vesicles of the presynaptic membrane, the normal movement of molecules should be directed to receptor sites located on the postsynaptic membrane. However, in certain disease states, the flow of the neurotransmitter is defective. For example, in **depression**, the flow of the inhibitory neurotransmitter serotonin is defective, and molecules flow back to their originating site (the presynaptic membrane) instead of to receptors on the postsynaptic membrane that will transmit the impulse to a nearby neuron.

The mechanism of action and localization of neurotransmitters in the brain has provided valuable information concerning the cause of many mental disorders, including clinical depression and chemical dependency, and in researching medications that allow normal flow and movement of neurotransmitter molecules.

## Neurotransmitters, mental disorders, and medications

### Schizophrenia

Impairment of dopamine-containing neurons in the brain is implicated in **schizophrenia**, a mental disease marked by disturbances in thinking and emotional reactions. Medications that block dopamine receptors in the brain, such as **chlorpromazine** and **clozapine**, have been used to alleviate the symptoms and help patients return to a normal social setting.

### Depression

In depression, which afflicts about 3.5% of the population, there appears to be abnormal excess or inhibition of signals that control mood, thoughts, pain, and other sensations. Depression is treated with **antidepressants** that affect norepinephrine and serotonin in the brain. The antidepressants help correct the abnormal neurotransmitter activity. A newer drug, **fluoxetine** (Prozac), is a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) that appears to establish the level of serotonin required to function at a normal level. As the name implies, the drug inhibits the re-uptake of serotonin neurotransmitter from synaptic gaps, thus increasing neurotransmitter action. In the brain, then, the increased serotonin activity alleviates depressive symptoms.

### Alzheimer's disease

Alzheimer's disease, which affects an estimated four million Americans, is characterized by memory loss and the eventual inability for self-care. The disease seems to be caused by a loss of cells that secrete acetylcholine in the basal forebrain (region of brain that is the control center for sensory and associative information processing and motor activities). Some medications to alleviate the symptoms have been developed, but presently there is no known treatment for the disease.

### Generalized anxiety disorder

People with **generalized anxiety disorder** (GAD) experience excessive worry that causes problems at work and in the maintenance of daily responsibilities. Evidence suggests that GAD involves several neurotransmitter systems in the brain, including norepinephrine and serotonin.

### Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder

People affected by attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) experience difficulties in the areas of attention, overactivity, impulse control, and

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Catecholamine**—A group of neurotransmitters synthesized from the amino acid tyrosine and released by the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system in the brain in response to acute stress. The catecholamines include dopamine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and epinephrine.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**GABA**—Gamma-aminobutyric acid, an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Synaptic cleft**—An area between nerve cells which can contain neurotransmitters.

distractibility. Research shows that dopamine and norepinephrine imbalances are strongly implicated in causing ADHD.

### Others

Substantial research evidence also suggests a correlation of neurotransmitter imbalance with disorders such as borderline **personality disorders**, **schizotypal personality disorder**, **avoidant personality disorder**, **social phobia**, **histrionic personality disorder**, and **somatization disorder**.

### Drug addictions

**Cocaine** and crack cocaine are psychostimulants that affect neurons containing dopamine in the areas

of the brain known as the limbic and frontal cortex. When cocaine is used, it generates a feeling of confidence and power. However, when large amounts are taken, people “crash” and suffer from physical and emotional exhaustion as well as depression.

Opiates, such as heroin and morphine, appear to mimic naturally occurring peptide substances in the brain that act as neurotransmitters with opiate activity called endorphins. Natural endorphins of the brain act to kill pain, cause sensations of pleasure, and cause sleepiness. Endorphins released with extensive aerobic exercise, for example, are responsible for the “rush” that long-distance runners experience. It is believed that morphine and heroin combine with the endorphin receptors in the brain, resulting in reduced natural endorphin production. As a result, the drugs are needed to replace the naturally produced endorphins and **addiction** occurs. Attempts to counteract the effects of the drugs involve using medications that mimic them, such as nalorphine, naloxone, and **naltrexone**.

One of the depressant drugs in widest use, alcohol, is believed to cause its effects by interacting with the GABA receptor. Initially **anxiety** is controlled, but greater amounts reduce muscle control and delay reaction time due to impaired thinking.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Tasman, Allan, Kay Jerald, MD, Jeffrey A. Lieberman, MD, eds. *Psychiatry*. 1st ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.

Mary Finley

## Nicotine and related disorders

### Definition

Nicotine disorders are caused by the main psychoactive ingredient in tobacco. Nicotine is a physically and psychologically addictive drug. It is the most influential dependence-producing drug in the United States and worldwide, and its use is associated with many serious health risks.

### Description

Nicotine is the most addictive and psychoactive chemical in tobacco, a plant native to the North America. Early European explorers learned to smoke its leaves

from indigenous peoples who had been using tobacco for hundreds of years. They took tobacco back to Europe, where it became immensely popular. Tobacco became a major source of income for the American colonies and later for the United States. Advances in cigarette-making technology caused a boom in cigarette smoking in the early 1900s. Before the early twentieth century, most people who used tobacco used pipes, cigars, or chewing tobacco.

In the 1950s, researchers began to link cigarette smoking to certain respiratory diseases and cancers. In 1964 the Surgeon General of the United States issued the first health report on smoking. Cigarette smoking peaked in the United States in the 1960s, then began to decline as health concerns about tobacco increased. In 1971 cigarette advertising was banned from television, although tobacco products are still advertised in other media today. There are about 91.5 million current and former smokers in the United States, and in a 2004 survey, almost 4 million adolescents had tried smoking in the previous month. Most active smokers are addicted to nicotine.

Pure nicotine is a colorless liquid that turns brown and smells like tobacco when exposed to air. Nicotine can be absorbed through the skin, the lining of the mouth and nose, and the moist tissues lining the lungs. Cigarettes are the most efficient nicotine delivery system. Once tobacco smoke is inhaled, nicotine reaches the **brain** in less than 15 seconds. Because people who smoke pipes and cigars do not inhale, they absorb nicotine more slowly. Nicotine in chewing tobacco and snuff is absorbed through the mucous membranes lining the mouth and nasal passages. There are also several "hard snuff" and other new tobacco products being produced and marketed as alternative to traditional tobacco products. At least one study of the nicotine content of these products has found that some have lower levels of nicotine than regular tobacco products, but others contain comparable levels.

## Causes and symptoms

### How nicotine works

Nicotine is the main addictive drug among the 4,000 compounds found in tobacco smoke. Such other substances in smoke as tar and carbon monoxide present documented health hazards, but they are not addictive and do not cause cravings or withdrawal symptoms to the extent that nicotine does. Neuroimaging technology has shown that levels of monoamine oxidase, the enzyme responsible for boosting mood-enhancing molecule levels in the brain, increase in response to smoking, even though nicotine does not affect levels of this enzyme. Thus, some other com-

pound in cigarette smoke must be acting to exert this effect. In addition, a compound in cigarette smoke called acetylaldehyde may contribute to tobacco **addiction** and may have a stronger effect in adolescents.

Nicotine is both a stimulant and a sedative. It is a psychoactive drug, meaning that it works in the brain, alters brain chemistry, and changes mood. Once tobacco smoke is inhaled, nicotine passes rapidly through the linings of the lungs and into the blood. It quickly circulates to the brain where it stimulates release of **dopamine**, a neurotransmitter (nerve signaling molecule) in the brain that affects mood. Drugs that elicit an increase in dopamine influence the brain's "reward" pathway, causing the user to turn again to the drug for another pleasurable, rewarding dopamine response. This release accounts for the pleasurable sensation that most smokers feel almost as soon as they light a cigarette. Nicotine also decreases anger and increases the efficiency of a person's performance on long, dull tasks.

At the same time nicotine affects the brain, it also stimulates the adrenal glands. The adrenal glands are small, pea-sized organs located above each kidney that really act as two different endocrine organs. The adrenal gland produces several hormones in the medulla, or inner layer, including epinephrine, also called **adrenaline**. Under normal circumstances, adrenaline is released in response to **stress** or a perceived threat. It is sometimes called the "fight or flight" hormone, because it prepares the body for action. When adrenaline is released, blood pressure, heart rate, blood flow, and oxygen use increase. Glucose, a simple form of sugar used by the body, floods the body to provide extra energy to muscles. The overall effect of the release of the stress hormones is strain on the cardiovascular (heart and blood vessels) system. This response to stress produces inflammation in the blood vessels that ultimately results in buildup of plaque, which can block the vessels and cause **stroke** or heart attack.

Most people begin smoking between the ages of 12 and 20. Few people start smoking as adults over 21. Adolescents who smoke tend to begin as casual smokers, out of rebelliousness or a need for social acceptance. Dependence on nicotine develops rapidly, however; one study suggests that 85–90% of adolescents who smoke four or more cigarettes become regular smokers. Nicotine is addictive, so being tobacco-free soon feels uncomfortable for users. In addition, smokers quickly develop tolerance to nicotine. Tolerance is a condition that occurs when the body needs a larger and larger dose of a substance to produce the same effect. For smokers, tolerance to nicotine means more frequent and more rapid smoking. Soon most smokers develop physical withdrawal symptoms when they try

to stop smoking. Users of other forms of tobacco experience the same effects; however, the delivery of nicotine is slower and the effects may not be as pronounced.

### **Nicotine dependence**

In addition to the physical dependence caused by the actions of nicotine on the brain, there is a strong psychological component to the dependency of most users of tobacco products, especially cigarette smokers. Most people who start smoking or using smokeless tobacco products do so because of social factors. These include:

- the desire to fit in with peers
- acceptance by family members who use tobacco
- rebelliousness
- the association of tobacco products with maturity and sophistication
- positive response to tobacco advertising

Such personal factors as mental illness (**depression, anxiety, schizophrenia**, or alcoholism); the need to reduce stress and anxiety; or a desire to avoid weight gain also influence people to start smoking. Once smoking has become a habit, whether physical addiction occurs or not, psychological factors play a significant role in continuing to smoke. People who want to stop smoking may be discouraged from doing so because:

- they live or work with people who smoke and who are not supportive of their quitting
- they believe they are incapable of quitting
- they perceive no health benefits to quitting
- they have tried to quit before and failed
- they associate cigarettes with specific pleasurable activities or social situations that they are not willing to give up
- they fear gaining weight

Successful **smoking cessation** programs must treat both the physical and psychological aspects of nicotine addiction.

### **Nicotine withdrawal**

The American Psychiatric Association first recognized nicotine dependence and nicotine withdrawal as serious psychological problems in 1980. Today nicotine is considered an addictive drug, although a common and legalized one.

As is widely recognized, quitting can be difficult. Among people who try, between 75% and 80% will **relapse** within six months. Because of this rate, research has found that smoking cessation programs

that last longer than six months can greatly enhance quit rates, achieving rates as high as 50% at one year. Combining a nicotine-withdrawal product (described below) with a behavioral-modification or support program has produced the greatest success rates.

The combination of physiological and psychological factors make withdrawal from nicotine very difficult. Symptoms of nicotine withdrawal include:

- irritability
- restlessness
- increased anger or frustration
- sleep disturbances
- inability to concentrate
- increased appetite or desire for sweets
- depression
- anxiety
- constant thoughts about smoking
- cravings for cigarettes
- decreased heart rate
- coughing

Withdrawal symptoms are usually more pronounced in smokers than in those who use smokeless tobacco products, and heavy smokers tend to have more symptoms than light smokers when they try to stop smoking. People with depression, schizophrenia, alcoholism, or mood disorders find it especially difficult to quit, as nicotine offers temporary relief for some of the symptoms of these disorders.

Symptoms of nicotine withdrawal begin rapidly and peak within one to three days. Withdrawal symptoms generally last three to four weeks, but a significant number of smokers have withdrawal symptoms lasting longer than one month. Some people have strong cravings for tobacco that last for months, even though the physical addiction to nicotine is gone. These cravings often occur in settings in which the person formerly smoked, such as at a party or while driving, or after a meal. Researchers believe that much of this extended craving is psychological.

### **Demographics**

Although the prevalence of smoking has gradually decreased in the United States and many other industrialized countries since the 1970s, the use of tobacco products is rapidly increasing in developing nations, where approximately 80% of current smokers live. Younger populations may be particularly vulnerable. For example, a CDC survey from 2003 found that almost 42% of teenaged boys in one city in Mali were cigarette smokers. The World Health Organization

currently attributes 4.9 million deaths per year globally to tobacco use among the estimated 1.2 billion smokers worldwide, a death total expected to double in two to three decades. Use of tobacco products in developing countries is of particular concern because these countries often lack adequate health care resources to treat smoking-related diseases, let alone support smoking cessation programs.

In the United States, the percentage of men who smoke outnumbers that of women 23% to 18.7%. In developing countries, male smokers outnumber women smokers, but among adolescent populations, girls and boys are becoming more equal in their rates of smoking. In the United States, people who smoke tend to have lower levels of formal education than those who do not. About half of patients diagnosed with psychiatric problems are smokers, while more than three-quarters of those who **abuse** other substances also smoke.

From 1997 to 2005, smoking among high-school students had declined after increasing dramatically in the 1990s; however, in 2005, there appears to have been a slight uptick in percentage of smokers in this group. Smoking among women with less than a high school education has shown a steady decline since a bump upward in 1995, but there was a slight increase from 2002 to 2004 among women with a high-school education. Smoking rates among white and African American males overall were almost identical in 2004, but African American males in the between the ages of 45 and 65 had the highest rates of any group, at 29% in 2004. Among pregnant women, the highest rates of smoking in 2003 occurred among American Indian or Alaska Native women, at 18%. In an age breakdown, women in the 18- to 19-year age group had the highest rates of smoking during pregnancy, at 17%, while education plays a strong role in whether or not a pregnant woman smokes: rates among women without a high-school diploma were 25.5%, while rates among women with at least a four-year degree were 1.6%.

Recent research suggests that there may be a genetic component to nicotine dependence, just as there is for alcohol dependence. Studies show that girls (but not boys) whose mothers smoked during pregnancy are four times more likely to smoke than those whose mothers were tobacco-free during pregnancy. Other research suggests that the absence of a certain enzyme in the body protects the body against nicotine dependence. In addition, there appears to be a sex-based difference among smokers: women may have a harder time quitting smoking.

## Diagnosis

Smokers usually self-diagnose their nicotine dependence and nicotine withdrawal. Such questionnaires as the Fagerstrom Test for Nicotine Dependence (FTND), a short six-item assessment of cigarette use, help to determine the level of tobacco dependence. Physicians and mental health professionals are less concerned with **diagnosis**, which is usually straightforward, than with determining the physical and psychological factors in each patient that must be addressed for successful smoking cessation.

## Treatments

Most people do not decide to stop smoking all of the sudden. Instead, they go through several preparatory stages before taking action. First is the precontemplation stage, in which the smoker does not even consider quitting. Precontemplation is followed by the contemplation stage, in which the smoker thinks about quitting, but takes no action. Contemplation eventually turns to preparation, often when counselors or family members encourage or urge the smoker to quit. Now the smoker starts making plans to quit soon. Finally the smoker arrives at the point of taking action.

Having decided to stop smoking, a person has many choices of programs and approaches. When mental health professionals are involved in smoking cessation efforts, one of their first jobs is to identify the physical and psychological factors that keep the person smoking. This identification helps to direct the smoker to the most appropriate type of program. Assessment examines the frequency of the person's smoking, his or her social and emotional attachment to cigarettes, commitment to change, available support system, and barriers to change. These conditions vary from person to person, which is why some smoking cessation programs work for one person and not another.

## Medications

Before 1984, there were no medications to help smokers quit. In that year, a nicotine chewing gum (Nicorette) was approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as a prescription drug for smoking cessation. In 1996 it became available without prescription. Nicorette was the first of several medications used for nicotine replacement therapy, intended to gradually reduce nicotine dependence to prevent or reduce withdrawal symptoms. This approach, called tapering, is used in withdrawal of other addictive drugs. Studies indicate that

people using these replacement therapies do not become addicted to them.

Nicotine gum comes in two strengths, 2 mg and 4 mg. As the gum is chewed, nicotine is released and absorbed through the lining of the mouth. Over a 6- to 12-week period, the amount and strength of gum chewed can be decreased, until the smoker is weaned away from his or her dependence on nicotine. People trying to quit smoking are instructed to use the gum when they feel a craving. Products with caffeine may limit nicotine absorption and should be avoided in a window of time around the gum "dose." Some people may not like the taste of the gum, and other common side effects include burning mouth and sore jaw. Any one with heart problems, diabetes, ulcers, or who is pregnant or breastfeeding should consult with a doctor before beginning any nicotine-replacement product.

The nicotine transdermal patches have been available without prescription since 1996. They are marketed under several brand names, including Habitrol, Nicoderm, NicoDerm CQ, Prostep and Nicotrol. All but Nicotrol are 24-hour patches. Nicotrol is a 16-hour patch designed to be removed at night. The patches are worn on the skin between the neck and the waist and provide a steady delivery of nicotine through the skin. Patches like Nicoderm come in varying strengths, and after several weeks, users can move down to a patch that delivers a lower dose. With the Nicotrol patch, a user simply ceases use after six weeks. Some people using the 24-hour patches experience sleep disturbances, and a few develop mild skin irritations, but generally side effects are few. Although fears that using a patch and smoking simultaneously have not been borne out, doctors still recommend not using the patch while smoking.

Two other nicotine delivery devices are available by prescription only. One is a nicotine nasal spray. It has the advantage of delivering nicotine rapidly, just as a cigarette does, although it delivers a much lower dose than a cigarette. Treatment with nasal spray usually lasts four to six weeks. Side effects include cold-like symptoms (runny nose, sneezing, etc.). A nicotine inhaler is also available that delivers nicotine through the tissues of the mouth. A major advantage of the inhaler is that it provides an alternative to having a cigarette in one's hands while still delivering nicotine. It delivers less nicotine in cold weather (under 50°F). Recommendations for both the spray and the inhaler are that they be used at least hourly at first.

There are two prescription drugs that are not nicotine replacement therapy that have been approved for treatment of nicotine dependence. The first-approved

drug was bupropion (Zyban®), an antidepressant that acts to cut down withdrawal symptoms. This drug may be used in combination with a nicotine-replacement therapy and behavioral therapy.

The newer drug is varenicline (Chantix), which was developed to help people stop smoking. This drug acts directly on the proteins in the brain that recognize and bind nicotine. Interfering with their action not only stops the brain from sending the pleasurable message of nicotine but also reduces the feelings of nicotine withdrawal. Some studies indicate that this drug can double a person's chances of quitting smoking. Side effects of this drug can include headache, nausea, vomiting, sleep problems, gas, and changes in taste sensation.

There is also a combination therapy of atropine and scopolamine that some nicotine cessation programs use. These are two anticholinergic (they block the effects of a class of protein receptors, the acetylcholine receptors) drugs that affect dopamine levels in the brain and are administered in the form of shots, followed by self-administration with pills or patches. Side effects of these drugs include dry mouth, constipation, dizziness, or blurry vision, and people with conditions such as heart problems, high blood pressure, or glaucoma, cannot use these programs. In addition, use of this combination for smoking cessation is "off-label" (not approved by the FDA for this purpose), and there are no published studies on success rates with this approach.

### ***Behavioral treatments***

Behavioral treatments are used to help smokers learn to recognize and avoid specific situations that trigger desire for a cigarette. They also help the smoker learn to substitute other activities for smoking. Behavioral treatments are almost always combined with smoker education, and usually involve forming a support network of other smokers who are trying to quit.

Behavioral treatments often take place in **support groups** either in person or online. They are most effective when combined with nicotine reduction therapy. Other supportive techniques include the use of rewards for achieving certain goals and contracts to clarify and reinforce the goals. Aversive techniques include asking the smoker to inhale the tobacco smoke deeply and repeatedly to the point of nausea, so that smoking is no longer associated with pleasurable sensations. Overall, quit rates are highest when **behavior modification** is combined with nicotine replacement therapy and tapering. Behavior modification once was conducted in person, but with the

advent of a telephonic and virtual world on the Internet, behavioral approaches have been adapted to mail, telephone, and the Web for greater access and flexibility. In 2004, the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services created a toll-free number for people who want to quit: 800-QUIT-NOW (800-784-8669). This number serves as the point of contact for smokers who want information and help.

### **Alternative treatments**

Many alternative therapies have been tried to help smokers withdraw from nicotine. Hypnosis has proved helpful in some cases, but has not been tested in controlled **clinical trials**. **Acupuncture**, relaxation techniques, restricted environmental stimulation therapy (REST, a combination of relaxation and hypnosis techniques), special **diets**, and herbal supplements have all been used to help people stop smoking. Of these alternative techniques, clinical studies of REST showed substantial promise in helping people stop smoking permanently.

### **Prognosis**

Smoking is a major health risk associated with nicotine dependence. About half of all smokers die of a smoking-related illness, often cancer. Most lung cancers are linked to smoking, and smoking is linked to about one-third of all cancer deaths. It kills an estimated 440,000 U.S. citizens each year—more than alcohol, **cocaine**, heroin, homicide, **suicide**, car accidents, fire, and AIDS combined. Smoking also causes such other lung problems as chronic bronchitis and emphysema, as well as worsening the symptoms of asthma. Other cancers associated with smoking include cancers of the mouth, esophagus, stomach, kidney, colon, and bladder. Smoking accounts for 20% of cardiovascular deaths. It significantly increases the risk of heart disease, heart attack, stroke, and aneurysm. Women who smoke during pregnancy have more miscarriages, premature babies, and low-birth-weight babies than non-smokers. In addition, there is a two-fold increased risk that a child born to a mother who smokes will die of Sudden Infant Death Syndrome, thus making smoking an avoidable factor in this tragic occurrence. Secondhand smoke also endangers the health of nonsmokers in the smoker's family or workplace. Although most of these effects are not caused directly by nicotine, it is dependence on nicotine that keeps people smoking.

Even though it is difficult for smokers to break their chemical and psychological dependence on nicotine, they should remember that most of the negative health effects of smoking are reduced or reversed after

## **KEY TERMS**

**Adrenaline**—Another name for epinephrine, the hormone released by the adrenal glands in response to stress. It is the principal blood-pressure raising hormone and a bronchial and intestinal smooth muscles relaxant.

**Cold turkey**—A slang term for stopping the use of nicotine (or any other addictive drug) suddenly and completely.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Epinephrine**—A hormone secreted by the adrenal glands in response to stress.

**Plaque**—A sticky cholesterol-containing substance that builds up on the walls of blood vessels, reducing or blocking blood flow.

**Supportive**—An approach to smoking cessation that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or exploratory approaches to treatment.

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

quitting. Therefore, it is worth trying to quit smoking at any age, regardless of the length of time a person has had the habit.

### **Prevention**

The best way to avoid nicotine dependence and withdrawal is to avoid the use of tobacco products.

*See also* Stress; Substance abuse and related disorders.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Brigham, Janet. *Dying to Quit: Why We Smoke and How We Stop*. Washington D.C.: John Henry Press, 1998.
- Galanter, Marc and Herbert D. Kleber, eds. *Textbook of Substance Abuse Treatment*. 2nd ed. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.
- O'Brien, Charles P. "Drug Addiction and Drug Abuse." *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of*

- Therapeutics*, edited by J. G. Hardman and L. E. Limbird. 9th ed. New York and St. Louis, MO: McGraw-Hill, 1996.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 1. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
- PERIODICALS**
- Black, Paul H., and Garbutt, Lisa D. "Stress, Inflammation, and Cardiovascular disease." *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* 52 (2002): 1–23.
- Mathias, Robert. "Daughters of Mothers Who Smoked During Pregnancy Are More Likely to Smoke, Study Says." *NIDA Notes* 10.5 (Sept.–Oct. 1995).
- National Institute on Drug Abuse. "Nicotine Addiction." *National Institute on Drug Abuse Research Report Series* 21 (Feb. 2001).
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. "2001 Monitoring the Future Survey Released" *HHS News* 10 (Dec. 2001).
- ORGANIZATIONS**
- American Cancer Society. National Headquarters, 1599 Clifton Road NE, Atlanta, GA 30329. Telephone: (800) (ACS)-2345. <<http://www.cancer.org>>.
- American Lung Association. 1740 Broadway, New York, NY 10019. Telephone: (212) 315-8700. <<http://www.lungusa.org>>.
- Cancer Information Service*. National Cancer Institute, Building 31, Room 10A19, 9000 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892. Telephone: (800) 4-CANCER. <<http://www.nci.nih.gov/cancerinfo/index.html>>.
- Nicotine Anonymous. Telephone: (415)750-0328. <<http://www.nicotine-anonymous.org>>
- Smokefree.gov. (Online materials, including information about state-level, telephone-based programs). Telephone: 800-QUIT-NOW (800-784-8669). <<http://www.smokefree.gov>>
- OTHER**
- American Cancer Society. "Guide for Quitting Smoking." <[http://www.cancer.org/docroot/PED/content/PED\\_10\\_13X\\_Guide\\_for\\_Qutting\\_Smoking.asp](http://www.cancer.org/docroot/PED/content/PED_10_13X_Guide_for_Qutting_Smoking.asp)>.
- American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>
- Campaign for Tobacco-Free Kids. "Public Health Groups File Petition Urging FDA to Regulate New 'Reduced Risk' Products Being Marketed to Smokers as Healthier Alternatives." <<http://tobaccofreekids.org/Script/DisplayPressRelease.php3?Display=429>>.
- Centers for Disease Control, National Center for Health Statistics. "Smoking:” <<http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/faststats/smoking.htm>>.
- Centers for Disease Control, Smoking and Health Resource Library. "New citations: links to the latest scientific publications on tobacco and smoking." <<http://apps.nccd.cdc.gov/shrl/NewCitationsSearch.aspx>>.
- "Common myths about quitting smoking." <[http://www.psych.org/psych\\_pract/treatg/patientfam\\_guide/Nicotine.pdf](http://www.psych.org/psych_pract/treatg/patientfam_guide/Nicotine.pdf)>.
- Department of Health and Human Services. "Tobacco: Global Effects of Tobacco Use." <<http://www.globalhealth.gov/tobacco.shtml>>
- "The Fagerstrom Test for Nicotine Dependence." Available online: <[http://ww2.heartandstroke.ca/DownloadDocs/PDF/Fagerstrom\\_Test.pdf](http://ww2.heartandstroke.ca/DownloadDocs/PDF/Fagerstrom_Test.pdf)>.
- National Library of Medicine. "Smoking cessation." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/smokingcessation.html>>.
- Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD
- 
- ## Nightmare disorder
- ### Definition
- Nightmare disorder, which is also called dream **anxiety** disorder, is characterized by the occurrence of repeated dreams during which the sleeper feels threatened and frightened. The sense of fear causes the person to awake.
- ### Description
- Nightmares are dreams that cause intense fear. These dreams are often complex and fairly long. During the dream the sleeper usually encounters or experiences a threat to their life or safety. Nightmares are also reported that do not involve physical danger.
- As the dream progresses, the threat to the person usually increases, as does their sense of fear. Waking usually occurs just as the threat or danger reaches its climax. It is often difficult for a person to return to sleep after waking from a nightmare. Nightmares usually occur during the second half of the night's sleep.
- ### Causes and symptoms
- During the course of a nightmare the sleeper may moan, talk, or move slightly, although these signs do not always appear. The person wakes from the nightmare with a profound sense of fear. Waking is complete, and usually accompanied by increased heart rate, sweating, and other symptoms of anxiety or fear. Once fully awake, the person usually has a good recall of the dream and what was so frightening about it. Because of the physical symptoms of anxiety and because clarity is achieved immediately upon waking, returning to sleep after a nightmare is often difficult. The vividness of the recall and the prominence of the

dream images in the person's mind can also make it difficult to calm down and return to sleep.

Sometimes people may avoid going to sleep after a particularly intense nightmare because of the fear of having another bad dream. In addition, people may have problems falling asleep if they are experiencing anxiety caused by the fear of having nightmares. As a result, these people may have the signs and symptoms associated with mild sleep deprivation, such as decreased mental clarity, problems paying attention, excessive daytime sleepiness, irritability, or mild **depression**.

The causes of nightmares are not known for certain. Adults who have nightmares on a regular basis are a small minority of the American population. About half of these people are thought to suffer from psychiatric disorders that cause the nightmares. Nightmares may also be triggered by major psychological traumas, such as those experienced by patients with **post-traumatic stress disorder**. For most patients who do not have an underlying mental disorder, the nightmares are attributed to **stress**. Nightmares that occur on an irregular and occasional basis are usually attributed to life stressors and associated anxiety.

Some researchers think that artistic or creative people are at greater risk for nightmares, as are people who are generally sensitive. These people are considered to have well developed imaginations and are very sensitive to environmental and social factors.

Nightmares can be a side effect of some medications or drugs of **abuse**, including drugs given for high blood pressure; levodopa and other drugs given to treat Parkinson's disease; **amphetamines**, **cocaine**, and other stimulants; and some **antidepressants**. Withdrawal from alcohol and other medications can also sometimes cause nightmares.

## Demographics

The actual percentage of people that suffer from nightmare disorder is not known, as many people do not seek treatment for it. There are, however, estimates of the proportion of the population that experience occasional nightmares. Many children suffer from nightmares that concern their parents. Estimates on the number of children who have recurrent nightmares range from 10–50%. In children, however, nightmares are not usually associated with psychiatric illness.

The number of children experiencing nightmares decreases as they get older. More than 3% of young adults have frequent nightmares, but only about 1% of mature adults experience nightmares once or twice a week. Half of the adults in the United States who

experience regular nightmares have diagnosable psychiatric illnesses. Women are estimated to have nightmares two to four times more frequently than men. There is some uncertainty as to whether this figure reflects an actual difference between the sexes in the frequency of nightmares, or whether women are simply more likely than men to report nightmares. Nightmares typically decrease in frequency as people grow older.

## Diagnosis

A **diagnosis** of nightmare disorder is usually made because the person reports the problem to their family physician or a **psychiatrist**. There are no laboratory tests for nightmare disorder, although the doctor may give the patient a physical examination to rule out any medical conditions that may be causing anxiety or stress.

Nightmares are characterized by awakening with a sense of fear; a clear recollection of the dream; and physical symptoms of anxiety. Nightmares can occur during nighttime sleep or daytime naps. A patient experiencing nightmares must meet the criteria listed in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders-IV-TR(DSM-IV-TR)* to be diagnosed with nightmare disorder. The manual, which provides guidelines used by the American Psychiatric Association for diagnosing psychiatric disturbances, gives four distinct criteria:

- The patient must experience repeated awakenings from frightening dreams.
- When the patient awakes, he or she must wake fully and be aware of his or her surroundings.
- The nightmares must cause the patient distress in important areas of his or her life.
- The nightmares cannot be directly attributed to another disorder, or be the direct effects of medications, substance abuse, or a medical condition.

Nightmare disorder can be confused with **sleep terror disorder**. Both disorders are characterized by an arousal during sleep when the patient shows symptoms of anxiety or fear. Sleep terror, however, is characterized by a partial arousal from sleep during which the patient is generally nonresponsive. After a nightmare, the patient becomes fully awake and is aware of his or her surroundings. During an episode of sleep terror a patient often gets out of bed and is active, and often screams or cries. During a nightmare the patient may move slightly or moan but does not display such dramatic or active symptoms. Patients do not remember either the sleep terror episode or what caused the fear, but patients who have nightmares remember

## KEY TERMS

**Dream anxiety disorder**—Another name for nightmare disorder.

**Sleep terror disorder**—A sleep disorder that is distinguished from nightmare disorder by the intensity of associated anxiety symptoms, the absence of complete wakefulness, and the person's difficulty recalling the episode.

them with great clarity and often in considerable detail. Such symptoms of fear or anxiety as increased heart rate, dilated pupils, and sweating are not as dramatic in patients with nightmare disorder as they are in patients experiencing sleep terrors.

### Treatments

Nightmares that are associated with a psychiatric disorder are managed by treating the underlying disorder. For patients without psychiatric disorders, psychological counseling to deal with any recurring themes in the nightmares may be helpful. Children may not require treatment for nightmares unless the dreams are causing significant distress, as nightmares generally resolve as children mature.

Because stress is thought to be the most common cause of nightmares, stress reduction techniques may prove to be effective complementary treatments. Typical relaxation techniques such as **yoga**, **meditation**, or exercise may be helpful. **Psychotherapy** can be an effective way to identify major stressors in the person's life, and to explore ways in which they may be reduced or eliminated.

### Prognosis

Nightmare disorder can be a lifelong disorder. A general improvement in symptoms often takes place, however, as the patient gets older. Treatment for any underlying psychological disorders can be very successful.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Aldrich, Michael S. *Sleep Medicine*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Chokroverty, Susan, ed. *Sleep Disorders Medicine: Basic Science, Technical Considerations, and Clinical Aspects*. 2nd ed. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1999.

Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Krakow, Barry, and others. "Imagery Rehearsal Therapy for Chronic Nightmares in Sexual Assault Survivors with Posttraumatic Stress Disorder." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 286, no. 5 (August 1 2001).

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Sleep Medicine. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901. (507) 287-6006. <[www.asda.org](http://www.asda.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

NLP see **Hypnotherapy**

Norepinephrine see **Adrenaline**

Norpramin see **Desipramine**

## Nortriptyline

### Definition

Nortriptyline is a tricyclic antidepressant. It is sold in the United States under the brand names Aventyl and Pamelor, and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Nortriptyline is used to relieve symptoms of **depression**. The drug is more effective for endogenous depression than for other forms of depression. Endogenous depression is depression arising from metabolic changes within a person, such as chemical or hormonal imbalances. Nortriptyline is also used to treat premenstrual depression, panic disorders, **chronic pain**, and some skin conditions. In addition, Nortriptyline is being investigated for the treatment of **nicotine** dependence.

### Description

Tricyclic **antidepressants** act to change the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses between cells. The precise way in which nortriptyline elevates mood is not fully understood. The drug inhibits the activity of **neurotransmitters** such as acetylcholine, histamine, and 5-hydroxytryptamine. Studies have indicated that



**A nortriptyline hydrochloride tablet.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by Permission.)

nortriptyline interferes with the release, transport, and storage of catecholamines, another group of chemicals involved in nerve impulse transmission.

### Recommended dosage

As with any antidepressant, the dose of nortriptyline must be carefully adjusted by the physician to produce the desired therapeutic effect. Nortriptyline is available in 10-, 25-, 50-, and 75-mg capsules as well as in a 10-mg/5mL solution. The usual dosage for nortriptyline is 25 mg given three or four times each day. The optimum total dose of the drug is 50–150 mg daily. Total dosage in excess of 150 mg is not recommended. The recommended dose for older adults (over age 60) and adolescents is 30–50 mg per day. Nortriptyline is not recommended for use by children.

The therapeutic effects of nortriptyline, like other tricyclic antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for two to three weeks after starting the drug. People taking nortriptyline should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

Once symptoms of depression have been controlled, the lowest dosage that maintains the effect should be taken. People who take 100 mg or more of nortriptyline per day should have their blood tested periodically for nortriptyline concentrations. The results of these tests will show whether the dose is appropriate, too high, or too low.

### Precautions

Like all tricyclic antidepressants, nortriptyline should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in people, especially the elderly, who have benign prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, and glaucoma, especially angle-closure glaucoma (the

most severe form). Before starting treatment, people with these conditions should discuss the relative risks and benefits of treatment with their doctors to help determine if nortriptyline is the right antidepressant for them.

A common problem with tricyclic antidepressants such as nortriptyline is sedation (drowsiness and lack of physical or mental alertness). This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. In most patients, sedation decreases or disappears entirely with time, but until then patients taking nortriptyline should not perform hazardous activities requiring mental alertness or coordination. The sedative effect is increased when nortriptyline is taken with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcoholic beverages, sleeping medications, other **sedatives**, or antihistamines. It may be dangerous to take nortriptyline in combination with these substances.

Nortriptyline may increase the possibility of having **seizures**. Patients should tell their physicians if they have a history of seizures, including seizures brought on by the **abuse** of drugs or alcohol. These people should use nortriptyline only with caution and be closely monitored by their physicians. Nortriptyline can also cause ringing in the ears, tingling in the extremities, and numbness in the extremities, although none of these side effects are common when the drug is used as directed.

When used by people with **schizophrenia**, nortriptyline may worsen **psychosis**, increase hostility in some patients, or activate other symptoms that had not previously been expressed. When used by people with **bipolar disorder** (manic-depressive illness), symptoms of mania may be magnified. Patients with a history of **suicide** attempts, thoughts of suicide, or drug overdose should be monitored carefully when using nortriptyline. Nortriptyline can either increase or decrease blood sugar levels, depending on the patients and their medical conditions. Nortriptyline should be used with great caution when patients are receiving **electroconvulsive therapy**.

Nortriptyline may increase heart rate and cause irregular heartbeat. It may also raise or lower blood pressure. It may be dangerous for people with cardiovascular disease, especially those who have recently had a heart attack, to take this drug or other antidepressants in the same pharmacological class. In rare cases in which patients with cardiovascular disease must receive nortriptyline, they should be monitored closely for cardiac rhythm disturbances and signs of cardiac **stress** or damage.

## Side effects

Nortriptyline shares side effects common to all tricyclic antidepressants. The most frequent of these are dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention, increased heart rate, sedation, irritability, dizziness, and decreased coordination. As with most side effects associated with tricyclic antidepressants, the intensity is highest at the beginning of therapy and tends to decrease with continued use.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Patients may also chew sugarless gum or suck on sugarless candy in order to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement who take nortriptyline may be especially likely to have problems with urinary retention. Symptoms include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty than usual passing urine. In most cases, urinary retention is managed with dose reduction or by switching to another type of antidepressant.

Problems associated with the skin (loss of sensation, numbness and tingling, rashes, spots, itching, and puffiness), seizures, and ringing in the ears have also been reported. Nausea, vomiting, loss of appetite, diarrhea, and abdominal cramping are associated with nortriptyline usage. Skin rash, sensitivity to sunlight, and itching have been linked to nortriptyline use. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should talk to their physicians.

## Interactions

Dangerously high blood pressure has resulted from the combination of tricyclic antidepressants, such as nortriptyline, and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). Because of this, nortriptyline should never be taken in combination with MAOIs. Patients taking any MAOIs, for example Nardil (**phe-nelzine** sulfate) or Parnate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAOI, then wait at least 14 days before starting nortriptyline or any other tricyclic antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing nortriptyline and starting an MAOI.

Cimetidine (Tagamet) may slow the elimination of nortriptyline, thus effectively increasing the dosage of nortriptyline. Quinidine also raises the circulating

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Benign prostate hypertrophy**—Enlargement of the prostate gland.

**Bipolar syndrome**—An abnormal mental condition characterized by periods of intense elation, energy, and activity followed by periods of inactivity and depression.

**Catecholamine**—A group of neurotransmitters synthesized from the amino acid tyrosine and released by the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system in the brain in response to acute stress. The catecholamines include dopamine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and epinephrine.

**Endogenous depression**—Depression arising from causes within a person, such as chemical or hormonal imbalances.

**Manic**—Referring to mania, a state characterized by excessive activity, excitement, or emotion.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

levels of the drug, requiring a decrease in the dosage of nortriptyline.

The sedative effects of nortriptyline are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sedatives, sleeping medications, or medications used for other mental disorders such as schizophrenia. The symptoms of increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating are additive with other drugs such as **benztropine**, **biperiden**, **tri-hexyphenidyl**, and antihistamines.

*See also* Neurotransmitters.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.

Hall, Sharon M. "Tricyclic Antidepressants in the Treatment of Nicotine Dependence." *Medication Treatments*

- for Nicotine Dependence.* ed. Tony P. George. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2007.
- Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.
- Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.
- PERIODICALS**
- Foulds, Jonathan, and others. "Developments in Pharmacotherapy for Tobacco Dependence: Past, Present and Future." *Drug and Alcohol Review* 25.1 (Jan. 2006): 59–71.
- Hensley, Paula L. "A Review of Bereavement-Related Depression and Complicated Grief." *Psychiatric Annals* 36.9 (Sept. 2006): 619–26.
- Hughes, John R., Lindsay F. Stead, and Tim Lancaster. "Nortriptyline for Smoking Cessation: A Review." *Nicotine & Tobacco Research* 7.4 (Aug. 2005): 491–99.
- Mulder, Roger T., and others. "Six Months of Treatment for Depression: Outcome and Predictors of the Course of Illness." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.1 (Jan. 2006): 95–100.
- Shelton, Richard C., and others. "Olanzapine/Fluoxetine Combination for Treatment-Resistant Depression: A Controlled Study of SSRI and Nortriptyline Resistance." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 66.10 (Oct. 2005): 1289–97.
- Szanto, Katalin, and others. "Emergence, Persistence, and Resolution of Suicidal Ideation During Treatment of Depression in Old Age." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 98.1–2 (Feb. 2007): 153–61.
- Wagena, E. J., P. Knipschild, and M. P. A. Zeegers. "Should Nortriptyline Be Used as a First-Line Aid to Help Smokers Quit? Results from a Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis." *Addiction* 100.3 (Mar. 2005): 317–26.
- Wisner, Katherine L., and others. "Postpartum Depression: A Randomized Trial of Sertraline Versus Nortriptyline." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.4 (Aug. 2006): 353–60.

**ORGANIZATIONS**

- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.
- American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981.
- American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Web site: <<http://www.aspet.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Nutrition and mental health

### Nutrition and the brain

A person's food intake affects mood, behavior, and **brain** function. A hungry person may feel irritable and restless, whereas a person who has just eaten a meal may feel calm and satisfied. A sleepy person may feel more productive after a cup of coffee and a light snack. A person who has consistently eaten less food or energy than needed over a long period of time may be apathetic and moody.

The human brain has high energy and nutrient needs. Changes in energy or nutrient intake can alter both brain chemistry and the functioning of nerves in the brain. Intake of energy and several different nutrients affect levels of chemicals in the brain called **neurotransmitters**. Neurotransmitters transmit nerve impulses from one nerve cell to another, and they influence mood, sleep patterns, and thinking. Deficiencies or excesses of certain vitamins or minerals can damage nerves in the brain, causing changes in memory, limiting problem-solving ability, and impairing brain function.

Mental health can be influenced by several nutritional factors, including: overall energy intake, intake of the energy-containing nutrients (proteins, carbohydrates, and fats), alcohol intake, and intake of vitamins and minerals. Often deficiencies of multiple nutrients rather than a single nutrient are responsible for changes in brain functioning.

In the United States and other developed countries, alcoholism is often responsible for nutritional deficiencies that affect mental functioning. Diseases can also cause nutritional deficiencies by affecting absorption of nutrients into the body or increasing nutritional requirements. Poverty, ignorance, and fad diets also contribute to nutritional deficiencies.

### Energy intake and mental health

Energy, often referred to as the calorie content of a food, is derived from the carbohydrate, protein, fat, and alcohol found in foods and beverages. Although vitamins and minerals are essential to the body, they provide no energy. The human brain is metabolically very active and uses about 20 to 30 percent of a person's energy intake at rest. Individuals who do not eat adequate calories from food to meet their energy requirements will experience changes in mental functioning. Simply skipping breakfast is associated with lower fluency and problem-solving ability, especially in individuals who are already slightly malnourished.

ESSENTIAL VITAMINS	
Vitamin	What It Does For The Body
Vitamin A (Beta Carotene)	Promotes growth and repair of body tissues; reduces susceptibility to infections; aids in bone and teeth formation; maintains smooth skin
Vitamin B-1 (Thiamin)	Promotes growth and muscle tone; aids in the proper functioning of the muscles, heart, and nervous system; assists in digestion of carbohydrates
Vitamin B-2 (Riboflavin)	Maintains good vision and healthy skin, hair, and nails; assists in formation of antibodies and red blood cells; aids in carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism
Vitamin B-3 (Niacinamide)	Reduces cholesterol levels in the blood; maintains healthy skin, tongue, and digestive system; improves blood circulation; increases energy
Vitamin B-5	Fortifies white blood cells; helps the body's resistance to stress; builds cells
Vitamin B-6 (Pyridoxine)	Aids in the synthesis and breakdown of amino acids and the metabolism of fats and carbohydrates; supports the central nervous system; maintains healthy skin
Vitamin B-12 (Cobalamin)	Promotes growth in children; prevents anemia by regenerating red blood cells; aids in the metabolism of carbohydrates, fats, and proteins; maintains healthy nervous system
Biotin	Aids in the metabolism of proteins and fats; promotes healthy skin
Choline	Helps the liver eliminate toxins
Folic Acid (Folate, Folacin)	Promotes the growth and reproduction of body cells; aids in the formation of red blood cells and bone marrow
Vitamin C (Ascorbic Acid)	One of the major antioxidants; essential for healthy teeth, gums, and bones; helps to heal wounds, fractures, and scar tissue; builds resistance to infections; assists in the prevention and treatment of the common cold; prevents scurvy
Vitamin D	Improves the absorption of calcium and phosphorous (essential in the formation of healthy bones and teeth) maintains nervous system
Vitamin E	A major antioxidant; supplies oxygen to blood; provides nourishment to cells; prevents blood clots; slows cellular aging
Vitamin K (Menadione)	Prevents internal bleeding; reduces heavy menstrual flow

**Vitamins and their functions and effects.** (*Stanley Publishing*)

A hungry person may also experience lack of energy or motivation.

Chronic hunger and energy deprivation profoundly affects mood and responsiveness. The body responds to energy deprivation by shutting or slowing down nonessential functions, altering activity levels, hormonal levels, oxygen and nutrient transport, the body's ability to fight infection, and many other bodily functions that directly or indirectly affect brain

function. People with a consistently low energy intake often feel apathetic, sad, or hopeless.

Developing fetuses and young infants are particularly susceptible to brain damage from malnutrition. The extent of the damage depends on the timing of the energy deprivation in relation to stage of development. Malnutrition early in life has been associated with below-normal intelligence, and functional and cognitive defects.



**A nutrition counselor speaks to her client.** (Janine Wiedel/  
Alamy)

### Carbohydrates and mental health

Carbohydrates include starches, naturally occurring and refined sugars, and dietary fiber. Foods rich in starches and dietary fiber include grain products like breads, rice, pasta and cereals, especially whole-grain products; fruits; and vegetables, especially starchy vegetables like potatoes. Foods rich in refined sugars include cakes, cookies, desserts, candy, and soft drinks.

Carbohydrates significantly affect mood and behavior. Eating a meal high in carbohydrates triggers release of a hormone called insulin in the body. Insulin helps let blood sugar into cells where it can be used for energy, but insulin also has other effects in the body. As insulin levels rise, more tryptophan enters the brain. Tryptophan is an amino acid, or a building block of protein, that affects levels of neurotransmitters in the brain. As more tryptophan enters the brain, more of the neurotransmitter serotonin is produced. Higher serotonin levels in the brain enhance mood and have a sedating effect, promoting sleepiness. This effect is partly responsible for the drowsiness some people experience after a large meal.

Some researchers and many parents claim that a high sugar intake causes hyperactivity in children. Although carefully controlled studies do not support this conclusion, high sugar intake is associated with dental problems. Further, foods high in refined sugars are often low in other nutrients, making it prudent to limit their use.

### Proteins and mental health

Proteins are made up of amino acids linked together in various sequences and amounts. The human body can

manufacture some of the amino acids, but there are eight essential amino acids that must be supplied in the diet. A complete or high-quality protein contains all eight of the essential amino acids in the amounts needed by the body. Foods rich in high-quality protein include meats, milk and other dairy products, and eggs. Dried beans and peas, grains, and nuts and seeds also contain protein, although the protein in these plant foods may be low in one or more essential amino acid. Generally, combining any two types of plant protein foods together will yield a complete, high-quality protein. For example, a peanut butter and jelly sandwich combines grain protein from the bread with nut protein from the peanut butter to yield a complete protein. A bean and corn dish, such as refried beans in a corn tortilla, combines bean and grain protein for another complete protein combination.

Protein intake and intake of individual amino acids can affect brain functioning and mental health. Many of the neurotransmitters in the brain are made from amino acids. The neurotransmitter **dopamine** is made from the amino acid tyrosine. The neurotransmitter serotonin is made from the amino acid tryptophan. If the needed amino acid is not available, levels of that particular neurotransmitter in the brain will fall, and brain functioning and mood will be affected. For example, if there is a lack of tryptophan in the body, not enough serotonin will be produced, and low brain levels of serotonin are associated with low mood and even aggression in some individuals. Likewise, some diseases can cause a buildup of certain amino acids in the blood, leading to brain damage and mental defects. For example, a buildup of the amino acid phenylalanine in individuals with a disease called phenylketonuria, also called PKU, can cause brain damage and **mental retardation**. States require testing of newborns for the presence of this metabolic disorder.

### Fats and mental health

Dietary intake of fats may also play a role in regulating mood and brain function. Dietary fats are found in both animal and plant foods. Meats, regular-fat dairy products, butter, margarine, and plant oils are high in fats. In terms of health, some of these fats are considered “good fats” and some are considered “bad fats.” The “good fats” are unsaturated (the fat’s carbon chain is not completely filled in every spot with a hydrogen) and polyunsaturated fats. Some “good” fats, such as olive oil, have been shown to offer some protection against heart disease and some cancers. The “bad fats” include saturated fats (all hydrogen spots are full) and trans fats (also called “partially hydrogenated” fats or oils), which have achieved recent notoriety for their apparent role in reducing

levels of HDL cholesterol (the “good” cholesterol). The “bad” fats are considered to increase a person’s risk of heart disease and other diseases.

Although numerous studies clearly document the benefits of a cholesterol-lowering diet for the reduction of heart disease risk, some studies suggest that reducing fat and cholesterol in the diet may deplete brain serotonin levels, causing mood changes, anger, and aggressive behavior. Recently, some low-carbohydrate diets, such as the “South Beach Diet,” have achieved popularity in part because of their link with beneficial changes in cholesterol levels.

Other studies have looked at the effects of a particular kind of fat, the omega-3 fatty acids found in fish oils, and brain functioning. Although a few studies suggest omega-3 fatty acids are helpful with bipolar affective disorder and **stress**, results are inconclusive.

High levels of saturated fat in the diet contribute to atherosclerosis, or clogging of the arteries. Atherosclerosis can decrease blood flow to the brain, impairing brain functioning. If blood flow to the brain is blocked, a **stroke** occurs.

### Alcohol and mental health

A high alcohol intake can interfere with normal sleep patterns, and thus can affect mood. Alcoholism is one of the most common causes of nutritional deficiencies in developed countries. Alcoholic beverages provide energy but virtually no vitamins or minerals. A person who consumes large amounts of alcohol will meet their energy needs but not their vitamin and mineral needs. In addition, extra amounts of certain vitamins are needed to break down alcohol in the body, further contributing to nutrient deficiencies.

### Vitamins and mental health

#### *Thiamin*

Thiamin is a B vitamin found in enriched grain products, pork, legumes, nuts, seeds, and organ meats. Thiamin is intricately involved with metabolizing glucose, or blood sugar, in the body. Glucose is the brain’s primary energy source. Thiamin is also needed to make several neurotransmitters.

Alcoholism is often associated with thiamine deficiency. Alcohol interferes with thiamin metabolism in the body, and diets high in alcohol are often deficient in vitamins and minerals. Individuals with a thiamin deficiency can develop **Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome**, which is characterized by confusion, mental changes, abnormal eye movements, and unsteadiness that can progress to severe memory loss.

#### *Vitamin B-12*

Vitamin B-12 is found only in foods of animal origin like milk, meat, or eggs. Strict vegans who consume no animal-based foods need to supplement their diet with vitamin B-12 to meet the body’s need for this nutrient.

Vitamin B-12 is needed to maintain the outer coating, called the myelin sheath, on nerve cells. Inadequate myelin results in nerve damage and impaired brain function. Vitamin B-12 deficiency can go undetected in individuals for years, but it eventually causes low blood iron, irreversible nerve damage, **dementia**, and brain atrophy.

#### *Folic acid*

Folic acid is another B vitamin found in foods such as liver, yeast, asparagus, fried beans and peas, wheat, broccoli, and some nuts. Many grain products are also fortified with folic acid. In the United States, alcoholism is a common cause of folic acid deficiency.

Folic acid is involved in protein metabolism in the body and in the metabolism of some amino acids, particularly the amino acid methionine. When folic acid levels in the body are low, methionine cannot be metabolized properly and levels of another chemical, homocysteine, build up in the blood. High blood homocysteine levels increase risk of heart disease and stroke.

Even modest folic acid deficiency in women causes an increased risk of neural tube defects, such as spina bifida, in developing fetuses. Folic acid deficiency also increases risk of stroke. Some studies suggest that folic acid deficiency leads to a range of mental disorders, including **depression**, but this concept remains controversial. Folic acid deficiency can lower levels of serotonin in the brain.

#### *Niacin*

The B vitamin niacin is found in enriched grains, meat, fish, wheat bran, asparagus, and peanuts. The body can also make niacin from the essential amino acid tryptophan, which is found in high-quality animal protein foods like meat and milk. Niacin deficiency used to be common in the southern United States, but is now common only in developing countries such as India and China.

Niacin is involved in releasing energy in the body from carbohydrates, proteins, and fats. A deficiency of niacin produces many mental symptoms such as irritability, headaches, loss of memory, inability to sleep, and emotional instability. Severe niacin deficiency

progresses to a condition called pellagra, which is characterized by the four D's: dermatitis (a rash resembling a sunburn), diarrhea, dementia, and ultimately, death. The mental symptoms in pellagra can progress to **psychosis**, **delirium**, coma, and death.

### Vitamin B-6

Vitamin B-6, also known as pyridoxine, is found in many plant and animal foods, including chicken, fish, pork, whole wheat products, brown rice, and some fruits and vegetables. In healthy individuals, deficiency of vitamin B-6 is rare, but certain drugs, including some antidepressant drugs, can induce vitamin B-6 deficiency.

Vitamin B-6 is needed by the body to produce most of the brain's neurotransmitters. It is also involved in hormone production. Although rare, vitamin B-6 deficiency is characterized by mental changes such as **fatigue**, nervousness, irritability, depression, **insomnia**, dizziness, and nerve changes. These mental changes are related to the body's decreased ability to manufacture neurotransmitters with vitamin B-6 deficiency.

Just as vitamin B-6 deficiency causes mental changes, so does excess of vitamin B-6. Vitamin B-6 supplements are used by many individuals for a variety of conditions, including carpal tunnel syndrome, **pre-menstrual syndrome**, and fibrocystic breast disease. Doses of 500 mg per day or more can cause nerve damage, dizziness, sensory loss, and numbness.

### Vitamin E

Vitamin E is a fat-soluble vitamin that is found in plant oils, green leafy vegetables, and fortified breakfast cereals. Vitamin E deficiency is very rare, except in disorders that impair absorption of fat-soluble vitamins into the body, such as cystic fibrosis, and liver diseases.

Vitamin E deficiency causes changes in red blood cells and nerve tissues. It progresses to dizziness, vision changes, muscle weakness, and sensory changes. If left untreated, the nerve damage from vitamin E deficiency can be irreversible. Because it is an antioxidant, vitamin E has also been studied for treatment of neurological conditions such as Parkinson's and **Alzheimer's disease**. Vitamin E and other antioxidants, such as vitamin C, had shown some promise in treating Alzheimer's, but larger analyses have found no beneficial effect of vitamin E supplements and have in fact identified a greater association between vitamin E supplementation and death from any cause in Alzheimer's patients. Vitamin E has thus far shown no effects in slowing the progression of Parkinson's dis-

ease, and the only antioxidant that exhibits even minor effectiveness is coenzyme Q10.

### Vitamin A

Vitamin A is a fat-soluble vitamin found in meats, fish and eggs. A form of vitamin A, beta-carotene, is found in orange and green leafy vegetables such as carrots, yellow squash, and spinach. Headache and increased pressure in the head is associated with both deficient and excess vitamin A intake. Among other effects, excess vitamin A intake can cause fatigue, irritability, and loss of appetite. Generally, doses must exceed 25,000 international units of vitamin A over several months to develop such symptoms.

## Minerals and mental health

### Iron

Iron is a trace mineral that is essential for formation of hemoglobin, the substance that carries oxygen to cells throughout the body. Iron is found in meat, poultry, and fish. Another form of iron that is not as well absorbed as the form in animal foods is found in whole or enriched grains, green leafy vegetables, dried beans and peas, and dried fruits. Consuming a food rich in vitamin C, such as orange juice, at the same time as an iron-containing plant food will enhance iron absorption from the food.

Iron deficiency eventually leads to anemia, with insufficient oxygen reaching the brain. The anemia can cause fatigue and impair mental functioning. Iron deficiency during the first two years of life can lead to permanent brain damage.

### Magnesium

The mineral magnesium is found in green leafy vegetables, whole grains, nuts, seeds, and bananas. In areas with hard water, the water may provide a significant amount of magnesium. In addition to its involvement in bone structure, magnesium aids in the transmission of nerve impulses.

Magnesium deficiency can cause restlessness, nervousness, muscular twitching, and unsteadiness. Acute magnesium deficiency can progress to **apathy**, delirium, convulsions, coma, and death.

### Manganese

Manganese is a trace mineral found in whole grains and nuts, and to a lesser extent, fruits and vegetables. Manganese is involved in carbohydrate metabolism and brain functioning. Although very rare, manganese deficiency can cause abnormalities in brain function. Miners of manganese in South America have developed

## KEY TERMS

**Amino acid**—A building block of protein.

**Anemia**—Condition that results when there is a deficiency of oxygen in the blood. Can cause fatigue and impair mental functions.

**Antioxidant**—Substance that protects the body from damaging reactive oxygen molecules in the body. These reactive oxygen molecules can come from inside the body or from environmental pollution and are thought to play a role in the aging process and the development of degenerative disease.

**Atherosclerosis**—Clogging of the arteries, creating a risk factor for stroke.

**Homocysteine**—A chemical that builds up in the blood when methionine is not properly processed. High blood levels of homocysteine increase risk of heart disease and stroke.

**Methionine**—An amino acid that, when not metabolized properly, allows homocysteine to build up in the blood. Folic acid aids methionine metabolism.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Phenylketonuria**—(PKU) An inherited disease in which the body cannot metabolize the amino acid phenylalanine properly. If untreated, phenylketonuria can cause mental retardation.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Trace mineral**—An element essential to nutrition or bodily processes that is found in minute quantities.

**Tryptophan**—An essential amino acid released from proteins during the process of digestion. Tryptophan is an important ingredient in the body's production of serotonin.

manganese toxicity called manganese madness, with neurological symptoms similar to Parkinson's disease.

### Copper

The richest sources of the trace mineral copper in the diet are organ meats, seafood, nuts, seeds, whole grain breads and cereals, and chocolate. In addition to other functions, copper is involved in iron metabolism in the body and in brain function. Deficiency of copper causes anemia, with inadequate oxygen delivery to the brain and other organs. Copper deficiency also impairs brain functioning and immune system response, including changes in certain chemical receptors in the brain and lowered levels of neurotransmitters.

### Zinc

The trace mineral zinc is found in red meats, liver, eggs, dairy products, vegetables, and some seafoods. Among other functions, zinc is involved in maintaining cell membranes and protecting cells from damage. Zinc deficiency can cause neurological impairment, influencing appetite, taste, smell, and vision. It has also been associated with apathy, irritability, jitteriness, and fatigue.

### Selenium

Good sources of the trace mineral selenium include seafood, liver, and eggs. Grains and seeds

can also be good sources of selenium depending on the selenium content of the soil they are grown in. Selenium is needed for the synthesis of some hormones and helps protect cell membranes from damage.

Although selenium deficiency is very rare, selenium toxicity has occurred in regions of the world with high selenium soil content, such as China. Selenium toxicity causes nervous system changes, fatigue, and irritability.

*See also* Diets; Nutrition counseling.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Jeffery, Douglas R., M.D., Ph.D. "Nutrition and Diseases of the Nervous System." In *Modern Nutrition in Health and Disease*. 9th edition. Edited by Maurice E. Shils, M.D., Sc.D., James A. Olson, Ph.D., Moshe Shike, M.D., and A. Catharine Ross, Ph.D. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1999.

Katz, David L., M.D., M.P.H. *Nutrition in Clinical Practice*. New York: Lippincott, Williams, and Wilkins, 2001.

Shiveley, LeeAnn R., M.P.H., R.D. and Patrick J. Connolly, M.D. "Medical Nutrition Therapy for Neurologic Disorders." *Krause's Food, Nutrition, & Diet Therapy*. 10th edition. Edited by L. Kathleen Mahan, M.S., R.D., C.D.E., and Sylvia Escott-Stump, M.A., R.D., L.D.N. New York: W. B. Saunders Company, 2000.

Westerman T., M.D., D.Sc. and E. Antila, M.D., Ph.D. "Diet in Relation to the Nervous System." *Human Nutrition and Dietetics*. 10th edition. Edited by J. S. Garrow, M.D., Ph.D., W. P. T. James, M.D., S.Sc., and A. Ralph, Ph.D. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Boothby, Lisa A., and Doering, Paul L. "Vitamin C and vitamin E for Alzheimer's disease." *The Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 39(2005): 2073–2080.
- Golomb, Beatrice A., Criqui, Michael H., White, Halbert., Dimsdale Joel E. "Conceptual foundations of the UCSF statin study." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 164 (2004):153–162.
- Lichtenstein, Alice H. "Dietary fat, carbohydrate, and protein: effects on plasma lipoprotein patterns." *Journal of Lipid Research* 47(2006): 1661–1667.
- Parker, Gordon, Gibson, Neville A., Brotchie, Heather, Heruc, Gabriella, Rees, Anne-Marie, and Hadzi-Pavlovic, Dusan. "Omega-3 fatty acids and mood disorders." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163 (2006): 969–978.
- Weber, Cynthia A., and Ernst, Michael E. "Antioxidants, supplements, and Parkinson's disease." *The Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 40(2006): 935–938.
- Young, Simon N. "Clinical Nutrition: 3. The Fuzzy Boundary Between Nutrition and Psychopharmacology." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 166 (2002): 205–209.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Dietetic Association. 216 West Jackson Boulevard, Chicago, IL, 60606-6995.<<http://www.eatright.org>>.

#### WEBSITES

National Cholesterol Education Program. "High blood cholesterol. What you need to know." <<http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/chol/wyntk.htm>> Updated 2005. (accessed 01/21/07).

Nancy Gustafson, M.S., R.D., F.A.D.A., E.L.S.

## Nutrition counseling

### Definition

Nutrition counseling is an ongoing process in which a health professional, usually a registered dietitian, works with an individual to assess his or her usual dietary intake and identify areas where change is needed. The nutrition counselor provides information, educational materials, support, and follow-up to help the individual make and maintain the needed dietary changes.

### Purpose

The goal of nutrition counseling is to help a person make and maintain dietary changes. For a person with a mental disorder, dietary change may be needed to promote healthier eating, to adopt a therapeutic diet, or to avoid nutrient-drug interactions. Nutrition counseling is an integral part of treatment for persons with eating disorders or chemical dependencies. Persons taking certain drugs, such as monoamine oxidase inhibitors, used to treat depression and anxiety disorders, need to follow a tyramine-controlled diet to avoid dietary interference with their medication. Many drugs used to treat mental disorders can cause weight gain or loss, so persons taking these drugs may also benefit from nutrition counseling.

The nutrition counselor and individual work together to assess current eating patterns and identify areas where change is needed. Registered dietitians have met certain education and experience standards and are well qualified to provide nutrition counseling, but nurses, physicians, and health educators also provide nutrition counseling.

### Description

#### Assessing dietary habits

Nutrition counseling usually begins with an interview in which the counselor asks questions about a person's typical food intake. Nutrition counselors use different methods to assess typical food intake.

The 24-hour recall method is a listing of all the foods and beverages a person consumed within the previous 24-hour period. The nutrition counselor may ask a person to recall the first thing he or she ate or drank the previous morning. The counselor then records the estimated amounts of all the foods and beverages the person consumed the rest of the day. The 24-hour food recall can be used to provide an estimate of energy and nutrient intake. However, people tend to over- or underestimate intake of certain foods, and food intake on one day may not accurately represent typical food intake.

A food frequency questionnaire can sometimes provide a more accurate picture of a person's typical eating patterns. The nutrition counselor may ask the client how often he or she consumes certain food groups. For example, the counselor may ask a person how many servings of dairy products, fruits, vegetables, grains and cereals, meats, or fats he or she consumes in a typical day, week, or month.

Daily food records are also useful in assessing food intake. An individual keeps a written record of

the amounts of all foods and beverages consumed over a given period of time. The nutrition counselor can then use the food records to analyze actual energy and nutrient intake. Three-day food records kept over two weekdays and one weekend day are often used.

### ***Assessing body weight***

Nutrition counselors may assess an individual's body weight by comparing his or her weight to various weight-for-height tables. A rough rule of thumb for determining a woman's ideal body weight is to allow 100 lb (45 kg) for the first 5 ft (1.5 m) of height plus 5 lb (2.3 kg) for every additional inch. A man is allowed 106 lb (48 kg) for the first 5 ft (1.5 m) of height plus 6 lb (2.7 kg) for every additional inch. However, this guide does not take into account a person's frame size.

Body mass index, or BMI, is another indicator used to assess body weight. BMI is calculated as weight in kilograms divided by height in meters squared. A BMI of 20 to 25 is considered normal weight, a BMI of less than 20 is considered underweight, and a BMI of greater than 25 is considered overweight.

### ***Identifying changes needed***

The initial dietary assessment and interview provide the basis for identifying behaviors that need to be changed. Sometimes a person already has a good idea of what dietary changes are needed, but may require help making the changes. Other times the nutrition counselor can help educate a person on the health effects of different dietary choices. The nutrition counselor and client work together to identify areas where change is needed, prioritize changes, and problem-solve as to how to make the changes.

Making dietary change is a gradual process. An individual may start with one or two easier dietary changes the first few weeks and gradually make additional or more difficult changes over several weeks or months. For example, an easy change for a person might be switching from 2% to skim milk, or taking time for a quick yogurt or granola bar in the morning instead of skipping breakfast. More difficult changes might be learning to replace high-fat meat choices with leaner ones, or including more servings of vegetables daily.

In making dietary changes, each individual's situation and background must be carefully considered. Factors that affect food decisions include an individual's ethnic background, religion, group affiliation, socioeconomic status, and world view.

### ***Identifying barriers to change***

Once the needed changes have been identified, the client and nutrition counselor think through potential problems that may arise. For example, changing eating behaviors may mean involving others, purchasing different foods, planning ahead for social events, or bringing special foods to work. Some common barriers to changing eating habits include:

- inconvenience
- social gatherings
- food preferences
- lack of knowledge or time
- cost

### ***Setting goals***

The nutrition counselor and client set behavior-oriented goals together. Goals should focus on the behaviors needed to achieve the desired dietary change, not on an absolute value, such as achieving a certain body weight. For a person working to prevent weight gain associated with certain medications, for example, his or her goals might be to increase the amount of fruits, vegetables, and whole grains consumed each day. Such changes would help prevent weight gain while placing the emphasis on needed behaviors rather than on actual weight.

### ***Finding support***

Family members are encouraged to attend nutrition counseling sessions with the client, especially if they share responsibility for food selection and preparation. Although the individual must make food choices and take responsibility for dietary changes, having the support and understanding of family and friends makes success more likely.

### ***Maintaining changes***

The challenge for the nutrition client lies not in making the initial dietary changes, but in maintaining them over the long term. Self-monitoring, realistic expectations, and continued follow-up can help a person maintain dietary changes.

Self-monitoring involves regularly checking eating habits against desired goals and keeping track of eating behaviors. Keeping a food diary on a daily or periodic basis helps the individual be more aware of his or her eating behaviors and provides a ready tool to analyze eating habits. Sometimes a simplified checklist to assure adequate intake of different food groups may be used.

## KEY TERMS

**Body mass index, or BMI**—A measure of body fat, calculated as weight in kilograms over the square of height in meters.

**Food frequency questionnaire**—A listing of how often a person consumes foods from certain food groups in a given period of time.

**Registered dietitian**—A person who has met certain education and experience standards and is well-qualified to provide nutrition counseling.

**Twenty-four-hour recall**—A listing of the type and amount of all foods and beverages consumed by a person in a 24-hour period.

Individuals and nutrition counselors should not expect perfect dietary compliance—slips inevitably occur. The goal is to keep small slips, such as eating a few extra cookies, from becoming big slips, like total abandonment of dietary change. The counselor can help the client identify situations that may lead to **relapse** and plan ways to handle the situations ahead of time.

Nutrition counseling is an ongoing process that can take months or years. In follow-up nutrition counseling sessions, the individual and counselor analyze food records together and problem-solve behaviors

that are especially difficult to change. Follow-up counseling also allows the opportunity to reevaluate goals and strategies for achieving those goals.

*See also* Diets; Nutrition and mental health.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Dietetic Association and Dietitians of Canada.

*Manual of Clinical Dietetics*. 6th edition. Chicago, Illinois: American Dietetic Association, 2000.

Hammond, Kathleen A., M.S., R.D. "Dietary and Clinical Assessment." In *Krause's Food Nutrition, and Diet Therapy*, written by L. Kathleen Mahan, M.S., R.D. and Sylvia Escott-Stump, M.A., R.D. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Company, 2000.

Scarlet, Sue. "Dietary Counseling." In *Essentials of Human Nutrition*. Written by Jim Mann, Ph.D. and A. Stewart Truswell, Ph.D. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1998.

Mitchell, Mary Kay, Ph.D. *Nutrition Across the Life Span*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.

### PERIODICALS

Harris-Davis, E., and B. Haughton. "Model for Multicultural Nutrition Counseling Competencies." *Journal of the American Dietetic Association* 100 (2000):1178-85.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Dietetic Association. 216 West Jackson Boulevard, Chicago, IL 60606-6995. <<http://www.eatright.org>>.

Nancy Gustafson, M.S., R.D., F.A.D.A., E.L.S.



# O

## Obesity

### Definition

Obesity is the condition of having an excessive accumulation of fat in the body, resulting in a body weight more than 20% above the average for height, age, sex, and body type, and in elevated risk of disability, illness, and death.

### Description

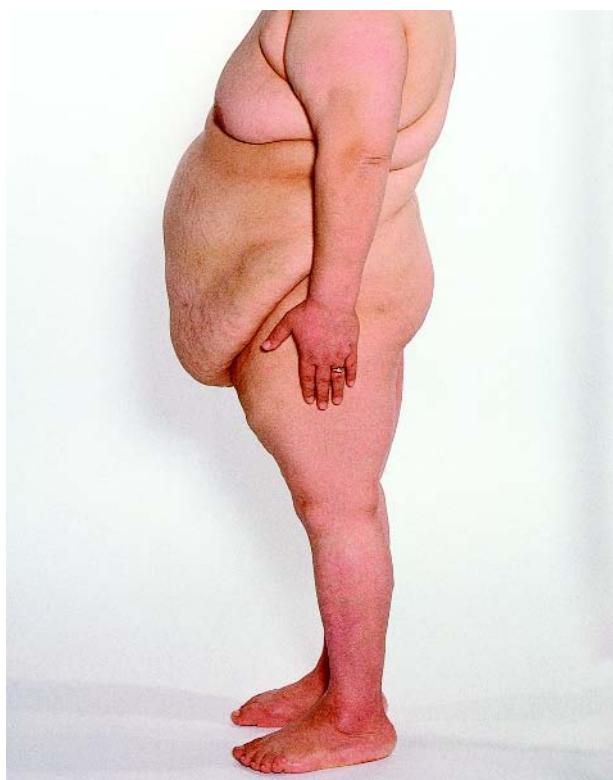
The human body is composed of bone, muscle, specialized organ tissues, and fat. Together, all of these tissues comprise the total body mass, which is measured in pounds. Fat, or adipose tissue, is a combination of essential fat (an energy source for the normal physiologic function of cells and organs) and storage fat (a reserve supply of energy for future needs). When the amount of energy consumed as food exceeds the amount of energy expended in the normal maintenance of life processes and in physical activity, storage fat accumulates in excessive amounts. Essential fat is tucked in and around internal organs, and is an important building block of all cells in the body. Storage fat accumulates in the chest and abdomen, and, in much greater volume, under the skin.

### Causes and symptoms

The human body is adapted for life forty thousand years ago, when the ability to store energy in times of plenty meant the difference between life and death during famine. This protective mechanism is a source of trouble when food, in unlimited quantities, is readily available. This is evident in the increasing prevalence of obesity in modern times, particularly in Western cultures. While obesity is just an exaggeration of a normal body, the storage of energy for future is properly classified as a health problem. This is because excessive amounts of storage fat may interfere with the normal physiology of the body. Obesity is directly

related to the increasing prevalence of Type II diabetes in American society and for the appearance of Type II diabetes in children, previously a rarity. Because obesity promotes degenerative disease of joints and heart and blood vessels, it increases the need for some surgical procedures. At the same time, surgical complication rates are higher in obese patients. Obesity contributes to **fatigue**, high blood pressure, menstrual disorders, infertility, digestive complaints, low levels of physical fitness, and the development of some cancers. The social costs of obesity, including decreased productivity, discrimination, **depression**, and low self-esteem, are less easily described and measured. Worldwide, obesity has reached epidemic proportions in the last thirty years, affecting both sexes and all ethnic, age, and socioeconomic groups. More than 64.5% of adults in the United States currently fall into overweight or obese classifications, and 14% of preschool children are classified as overweight or obese. The increasing prevalence of obesity and diabetes in children and young adults heralds spiraling health care costs in the near future.

Because obesity reflects an imbalance between the amount of energy taken into the body in the form of food and the amount of energy expended in metabolism and physical activity, and because eating is an activity that involves choice and volition, obesity is classified by the Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA) as a "behavior" rather than as a disease. In recent years, following a pattern established in other behavioral problems such as alcoholism, researchers have attempted to establish a biologic basis for the development of obesity. They have succeeded in identifying many markers of the biochemical mechanisms that appear to be involved in feedback loops that control energy balance. However, much of the information is extrapolated from experimental work in rodents. Leptin, a hormone produced in fat cells is an example of such a marker. Leptin excited a great deal of hope as a potential treatment of obesity, but, as with many



**Person suffering from obesity.** (Medical-on-Line/Alamy)

other laboratory discoveries, the hormone has proved far more complex and less easily understood in humans. Research to date indicates that obesity is the end product of numerous contributing factors, including genetics, hormonal influences, behavioral tendencies, medication effects, and the surrounding society. But the rapid and widespread increase in obesity in the last thirty years reflects changes in activity patterns and in eating habits, not a change in the human genetic pool or in physiology.

### Diagnosis

There are two methods of diagnosing obesity. The first method is inspection—whereby an excessive amount of storage fat is usually noticeable upon visual inspection. The second method is inference of body fat content, obtained from body measurements such as weight or skinfold thickness, and comparison with charts of similar measurements in broad populations. The determination of obesity is based on the amount of variance from “normal,” a value that comes from statistics on death rates in people with similar measurements. Calculations such as the body mass index (BMI) use a height-weight relationship to calculate an individual's ideal weight and personal risk of developing obesity-related health problems. An individual with a BMI

of 25.9–29, for example, is considered overweight; a person with a BMI over 30 is classified as obese.

The problem with using weight as a measure of obesity is the fact that weight does not accurately represent body composition. A heavily-muscled football player may weigh far more than a sedentary man of similar height, but have significantly less body fat. Chronic dieters, who have lost significant muscle mass during periods of caloric deprivation, may look slim and weigh little, but have elevated body fat percentages. The most accurate means of estimating body fat content involves weighing a person two ways: First, the person is weighed under water. The difference between dry and underwater weight is calculated to obtain the volume of water displaced by the mass of the body. While this method is impractical, it has the advantage of determining body composition most accurately, and is the truest reflection of the actual percentage of body mass that is fat. Women whose body fat exceeds 30% of total body mass and men whose body fat exceeds 25% are generally considered obese.

The pattern of fat distribution on the body may indicate whether an individual has a predisposition to develop certain diseases or conditions that may accompany obesity. “Apple-shaped” individuals who store most of their weight around the waist and abdomen are at greater risk for cancer, heart disease, **stroke**, and diabetes than “pear-shaped” people, whose extra pounds settle primarily on their hips and thighs.

### Treatment

Since obesity develops when intake of the food required to produce energy exceeds the amount of energy used in metabolism and in physical activity, the treatment of obesity must alter one or both aspects of the energy stream. The options are to decrease energy intake or to increase energy output, or both. However, the problem does not yield rapidly to either method. Storage fat is meant to protect its bearer from starvation when food is unavailable, and before fat is tapped for energy. In the face of decreased intake of food, the body breaks down muscle to construct the sugar it needs to feed the **brain**. Much of the early weight loss on a very low calorie diet represents loss of muscle tissue rather than loss of fat. Similarly, fat is not easy to access as fuel for exercise. A person of normal weight has enough body fat to fuel the muscles for days of continuous running, but will collapse long before burning any significant amount fat stored by the body.

When obesity develops in childhood, the total number of fat cells increases (hyperplastic obesity),

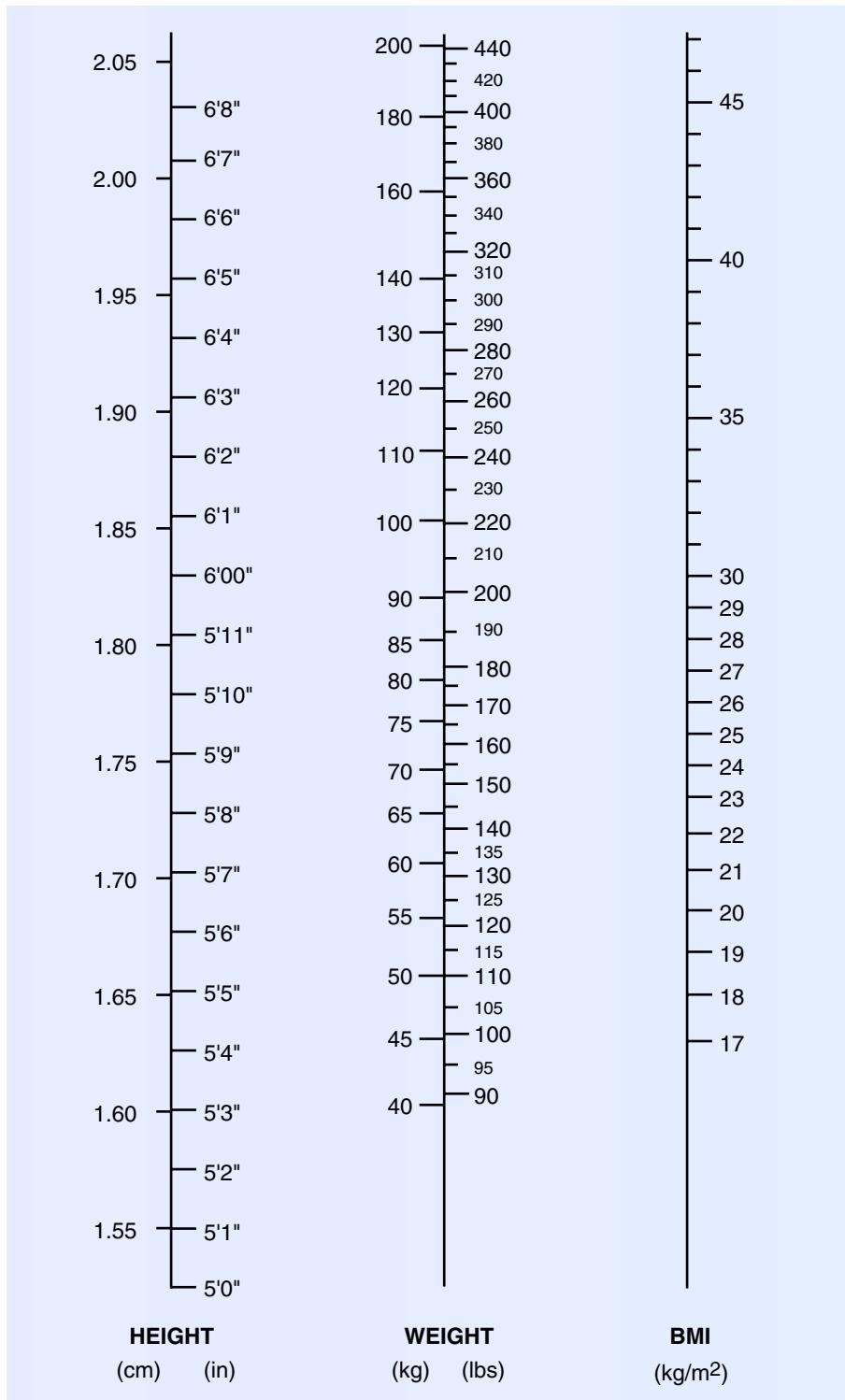


Chart outlining Obesity BMI (body mass index). (The Gale Group)

whereas in adulthood, it is the total amount of fat in each cell that increases (hypertrophic obesity). Decreasing the amount of energy (food) consumed or increasing

the amount of energy expended cannot change the number of fat cells already present. These actions can only reduce the amount of fat in each cell, and only if

the process is slow and steady—as it was in reverse, when the excess fat accumulated. Prevention, as in so many problems, is far superior to any available treatment of obesity.

The strategy for weight loss in obese patients is first to change behavior; then, it is to decrease the expectation of rapid change. Behavioral treatment is goal-directed, process-oriented, and relies heavily on self-monitoring. Emphasis is on:

- Food intake: The potential energy provided by food is measured in calories, and the capacity of a certain type and amount of food to provide energy is called its caloric content. Keeping a food diary and developing a better understanding of the nutritional value and fat content of foods, changing grocery-shopping habits, paying attention to timing and appearance of meals, and slowing the speed of eating all help to modify food intake.
- Response to food: The body is capable of matching energy intake and output perfectly, but, in obese individuals, food intake is often unrelated from physiologic cues. Eating occurs for many reasons other than hunger. What psychological issues underlie the eating habits? Does stress cause binge eating? Is food seen as a reward? Recognition of psychological triggers is necessary for the development of alternate coping mechanisms that do not focus on food.
- Time usage: The body is suited for an ancient world in which physical activity was a necessity. In the modern world, physical activity must be a conscious choice. Making activity and exercise an integrated part of everyday life is a key to achieving and maintaining weight loss. Sedentary and overweight individuals have to reclaim slowly the endurance that is natural by managing their time to allow for gradual increases in both programmed and conscious lifestyle activity.

### ***Behavior modification***

For most individuals who are mildly obese, behavior modifications entail life-style changes they can make independently if they have access to accurate information and have reached the point of readiness to make a serious commitment to losing weight. A family physician's evaluation is helpful, particularly in regard to exercise capacity and nutritional requirements. Commercial weight-loss programs may be helpful for some mildly obese individuals, but they are of varying quality. A good program emphasizes realistic goals, gradual progress, sensible and balanced eating, and increased physical activity; it is often recommended by physicians. Programs that promise instant weight loss or feature severe restrictions in types and

amounts of food are not effective, and, in some cases, can be dangerous.

For individuals who are moderately obese, medically supervised **behavior modification** and weight loss are more likely to be effective than an independent program. A realistic goal is loss of 10% of current weight over a six-month period. While doctors put most moderately obese patients on balanced, low-calorie **diets** (1,200–1,500 calories a day), occasionally they recommend a very low calorie liquid protein diet (400–700 calories), with supplementation of vitamins and minerals, for as long as three months. Professional help with behavior modification is of paramount importance in such cases; without changing eating habits and exercise patterns, weight lost will be regained quickly.

### ***Surgery***

For individuals who are morbidly obese, surgery to bypass portions of the stomach and small intestine may at times be the only effective means of producing sustained and significant weight loss. Such obesity surgery, however, can be risky, and it is performed only on patients for whom other strategies have failed and whose obesity seriously threatens health. Liposuction is a purely cosmetic procedure in which a suction device is used to remove fat from beneath the skin, and has no place in the treatment of obesity.

### ***Medications***

Most of the current research on obesity is aimed at identifying biochemical pathways that will be amenable to **intervention** with drug treatments. These medications would be specifically tailored to interfere with the energy cycles to facilitate weight loss. As of 2002, there are two major classes of drugs that are approved for the treatment of obesity by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). History of the field is littered with drugs that have failed or that have caused serious side effects. Appetite suppressant drugs such as Dexatrim and Meridia (sibutramine) change the amounts of some **neurotransmitters** in the brain. These chemical changes result in decreased appetite, but only in the presence of the drug. Digestive inhibitors such as Orlistat (Xenical) are drugs that interfere with the breakdown and absorption of dietary fat in the intestines; they are, however, poorly tolerated because the effects of fat malabsorption are unpleasant.

These drugs also interfere with the absorption of some necessary vitamins. Fat substitutes such as Olestra, while technically not drugs, attempt to recreate the pleasant taste that fat adds to food, but create the same negative side effects as digestive inhibitors. Unless an

obese individual has also made necessary behavioral changes, excess weight returns quickly when **appetite suppressants** or malabsorptive agents are stopped.

The use of any drug is associated with unwanted side effects, so that the decision to take a drug must come after the potential side effects are weighed against the potential benefits. No drug, current or past, has had such dramatic effects on obesity that it warrants its casual use. While most of the immediate side effects that may occur are reversible, the long-term effects, in many cases, are unknown. Even after a new drug successfully negotiates the stringent FDA approval process, its widespread use over a longer time frame may lead to the side effects that were not initially observable in the test population. Two popular obesity drugs of the early 1990s have already been withdrawn from the market because of unanticipated and severe cardiac problems. Meridia, released in 1997, is under scrutiny by a consumer group for its relationship to several deaths and was the subject of a Senate hearing in 2005, but was not withdrawn from the market. Nevertheless, studies show that when obesity drugs are combined with behavioral changes—and especially with a portion controlled diet—weight loss is significantly greater than in a control group treated with behavior modification alone, at least after six months. It remains to be proved whether drug-assisted weight loss is long lasting.

#### *Alternative treatment*

The Chinese herb, ephedra (*Ephedra sinica*), combined with caffeine, exercise, and a low-fat diet, can cause a temporary increase in weight loss, at best. However, ephedra and caffeine are both central nervous system (CNS) stimulants, and the large doses of ephedra required to achieve the weight loss can also cause **anxiety**, irritability, and **insomnia**. Further, ephedra has been implicated in more serious conditions, such as seizure and stroke. Ephedra should not be used by anyone with a history of diabetes, heart disease, or thyroid problems. In 2004, the FDA banned the sale of uncontrolled dietary supplements containing the substance.

Diuretic herbs, which increase urine production, can cause short-term weight loss, but cannot help patients achieve lasting weight control. The body responds to heightened urine output by increasing thirst to replace lost fluids, and patients who use diuretics for an extended period of time retain water even in the presence of the diuretic. In moderate doses, psyllium, a mucilaginous herb available in bulk-forming laxatives like Metamucil, absorbs fluid and makes patients feel as if they have eaten enough. Red peppers, mustard, and dandelion are said to generate weight loss by accelerating the metabolic rate.

Dandelion also counteracts the desire for sweet foods. Walnuts contain serotonin, the brain chemical that signals satiety.

Acupressure and **acupuncture** can also suppress food cravings. Visualization and **meditation** can create and reinforce a positive self-image that enhances determination to lose weight. By improving physical strength, mental concentration and emotional serenity, **yoga** can provide the same benefits.

The correct balance of dietary carbohydrates, fiber, proteins, and fat is also important, and believed by some experts to enhance the metabolic rate.

#### **Prognosis**

As many as 85% of dieters who do not exercise on a regular basis regain their lost weight within two years. In five years, the figure rises to 90%. Repeatedly losing and regaining weight (yo-yo dieting) encourages the body to store fat and may increase a patient's risk of developing heart disease. The primary factor in achieving and maintaining weight loss is a lifelong commitment to regular exercise and sensible eating habits.

#### **Prevention**

Obesity experts suggest that a key to preventing excess weight gain is monitoring fat consumption rather than counting calories; in fact, the National Cholesterol Education Program maintains that only 30% of calories should be derived from fat. Only one-third of those calories should come from saturated fats (the kind of fat found in high concentrations in meat, poultry, and dairy products). However, total caloric intake cannot be ignored, since it usually the slow accumulation of excess caloric intake, regardless of its source, that results in obesity. Erring on the side of 25 excess calories a day, a single cookie will result in a five-pound weight gain by the end of a year. Without recognition of the problem, weight balloons up another 45 pounds by the end of 10 years, and the return to normal weight is an arduous process. Because most people eat more than they think they do, keeping a detailed and honest food diary is a useful way to recognize eating habits. Eating three balanced, moderate-portion meals a day—with the main meal at mid-day—is a more effective way to prevent obesity than fasting or crash diets, which convince the body that there is an ongoing famine. After 12 hours without food, the body has depleted its stores of readily available energy, and hunkers down to begin protecting itself for the long term. Metabolic rate starts to slow, and breakdown of muscle tissue for the raw materials needed for energy maintenance begins. Until more food

## KEY TERMS

- Behavior**—A stereotyped motor response to an internal or external stimulus.
- Biochemical**—Chemical reactions occurring in living systems.
- Body mass**—The quantity of matter in the body (measured by dividing weight by acceleration due to gravity).
- Calorie**—The quantity of heat necessary to raise the temperature of 1kg of water 1°C.
- Energy**—The capability of producing force, performing work, or generating heat.
- Feedback loops**—Chains of biochemical reactions in which the products of reactions limit or enhance the subsequent reactions, and in which the chain ends up back at the first reaction, either limiting or enhancing it.
- Genetic pool**—The genetic material of an entire population.
- Ideal weight**—A range of body weights recommended for generally healthy adults.
- Prevalence**—Occurrence in a population.
- Type II diabetes**—Resistance to the effects of insulin in the presence of normal or elevated insulin levels, resulting in failure of glucose to enter cells and in a cascade of other abnormal physiologic reactions.

appears, famine mode persists and deepens; when the fast is lifted, the body is in a state of slowed metabolism, has a bit less muscle, and requires less food than before the fast. Exercise increases the metabolic rate by creating muscle, which burns more calories than fat. When regular exercise is combined with consistent, healthful meals, calories continue to burn at an accelerated rate for several hours.

Finally, encouraging healthful habits in children is a key to preventing childhood obesity and the health problems that follow in adulthood.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Adolfsson, Birgitta, and Marilynn S. Arnold. *Behavioral Approaches to Treating Obesity*. Alexandria, VA: American Diabetes Association, 2006.
- Cooper, Zafra, Christopher G. Fairburn, and Deborah M. Hawker. *Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment of Obesity: A Clinician's Guide*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.

- Fairburn, Christopher G., and Kelly D. Brownell. *Eating Disorders and Obesity: A Comprehensive Handbook* (2nd ed.). New York: The Guilford Press, 2005.
- Thompson, J. Kevin, and Linda Smolak. *Body Image, Eating Disorders, and Obesity in Youth: Assessment, Prevention, & Treatment*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2001.
- Wadden, Thomas A., and Albert J. Stunkard, eds. *Handbook of Obesity Treatment*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

- American Heart Association. "Heart Diseases and Stroke Statistics—2007 Update." *Circulation* December 28, 2006. <<http://circ.ahajournals.org/cgi/reprint/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.179918v1>>.
- Birch, Leann L. "Child Feeding Practices and the Etiology of Obesity." *Obesity* 14(3), Mar 2006: 343–4.
- Fabricatore, Anthony N., and Thomas A. Wadden. "Obesity." *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology* 2, 2006: 357–77.
- Johannsen, Darcy L., Neil M. Johannsen, and Bonny L. Specker. "Influence of Parents' Eating Behaviors and Child Feeding Practices on Children's Weight Status." *Obesity* 14(3), Mar 2006: 431–9.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Dietetic Association. 216 West Jackson Blvd., Chicago, IL 60606-6995. <<http://www.eatright.org>>.
- American Obesity Association. 1250 24th St. NW, Washington DC 20037. <<http://www.obesity.org>>.
- Shape Up America. 6707 Democracy Blvd., Suite 306, Bethesda, MD 20817. <<http://www.shapeup.org/general/index.html>>.
- Weight-Control Information Network. 1 Win Way, Bethesda, MD 20892-3665. <<http://www.niddk.nih.gov/health/nutrit/win.html>>.

Elizabeth Reid Holter, MD

## Obsession

### Definition

An obsession is an unwelcome, uncontrollable, and persistent idea, thought, image, or emotion that a person can not help thinking even though it creates significant distress or **anxiety**.

### Description

Obsessive ideas seem unnatural or alien to those who have them, but are nevertheless recognized as originating from the person's own thoughts—they are not seen as **delusions** sent or controlled by an outside party.

Typical obsessions include fear of contamination as from doorknobs or handshakes, worry about leaving things in their proper order, persistent doubts about one's responsible behavior, scary images involving violent acts, and images of sexual acts. People with obsessions may find themselves acting in compulsive ways in largely futile attempts to relieve the anxiety associated with their persistent, unpleasant thoughts. Others suffering from obsessions may try very hard to control or ignore them. It is important to note that legitimate worries about daily concerns—paying bills, studying for exams, keeping a job, interpersonal relationships—are not obsessions. Although they can occasionally be carried to obsessive lengths, these concerns can change with circumstances and, in most cases be controlled, with planning, effort, and action. Obsessions relate to problems that most people would consider far removed from normal, daily events and concerns.

*See also* Compulsion; Obsessive-compulsive disorder.

Dean A. Haycock, Ph.D.

## **Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder**

### **Definition**

Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder (OCPD) is a type of personality disorder marked by rigidity, control, perfectionism, and an overconcern with work at the expense of close interpersonal relationships. Persons with this disorder often have trouble relaxing because they are preoccupied with details, rules, and productivity. They are often perceived by others as stubborn, stingy, self-righteous, and uncooperative.

The mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (2000), which is also called *DSM-IV-TR*, groups obsessive-compulsive personality disorder together with the avoidant and dependent **personality disorders** in Cluster C. The disorders in this cluster are considered to have **anxiety** and fearfulness as common characteristics. The ICD-10, which is the European counterpart of *DSM-IV-TR*, refers to OCPD as "anankastic personality disorder."

It is important to distinguish between OCPD and **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD), which is an anxiety disorder characterized by the presence of intru-

sive or disturbing thoughts, impulses, images or ideas (obsessions), accompanied by repeated attempts to suppress these thoughts through the performance of irrational and ritualistic behaviors or mental acts (compulsions). It is unusual but possible, however, for a patient to suffer from both disorders, especially in extreme cases of hoarding behavior. In some reported cases of animal hoarding, the people involved appear to have symptoms of both OCD and OCPD.

### **Description**

People suffering from OCPD have careful rules and procedures for conducting many aspects of their everyday lives. While their goal is to accomplish things in a careful, orderly manner, their desire for perfection and insistence on going "by the book" often overrides their ability to complete a task. For example, one patient with OCPD was so preoccupied with finding a mislaid shopping list that he took much more time searching for it than it would have taken him to rewrite the list from memory. This type of inflexibility typically extends to interpersonal relationships. People with OCPD are known for being highly controlling and bossy toward other people, especially subordinates. They will often insist that there is one and only one right way (their way) to fold laundry, cut grass, drive a car, or write a report. In addition, they are so insistent on following rules that they cannot allow for what most people would consider legitimate exceptions. Their attitudes toward their own superiors or supervisors depend on whether they respect these authorities. People with OCPD are often unusually courteous to superiors that they respect, but resistant to or contemptuous of those they do not respect.

While work environments may reward their conscientiousness and attention to detail, people with OCPD do not show much spontaneity or imagination. They may feel paralyzed when immediate action is necessary; they feel overwhelmed by trying to make decisions without concrete guidelines. They expect colleagues to stick to detailed rules and procedures, and often perform poorly in jobs that require flexibility and the ability to compromise. Even when people with OCPD are behind schedule, they are uncomfortable delegating work to others because the others may not do the job "properly." People with OCPD often get so lost in the finer points of a task that they cannot see the larger picture; they are frequently described as "unable to see the forest for the trees." They are often highly anxious in situations without clearly defined rules because such situations arouse their fears of making a mistake and being punished for it. An additional feature of this personality disorder is stinginess or miserliness, frequently combined with an inability to throw

out worn-out or useless items. This characteristic has sometimes been described as “pack rat” behavior.

People diagnosed with OCPD come across to others as difficult and demanding killjoys. Their rigid expectations of others are also applied to themselves, however; they tend to be intolerant of their own shortcomings. Such persons feel bound to present a consistent facade of propriety and control. They feel uncomfortable with expressions of tender feelings and tend to avoid relatives or colleagues who are more emotionally expressive. This strict and ungenerous approach to life limits their ability to relax; they are seldom if ever able to release their needs for control. Even recreational activities frequently become another form of work. A person with OCPD, for example, may turn a tennis game into an opportunity to perfect his or her backhand rather than simply enjoying the exercise, the weather, or the companionship of the other players. Many OCPD sufferers bring office work along on vacations in order to avoid “wasting time,” and feel a sense of relief upon returning to the structure of their work environment. Not surprisingly, this combination of traits strains their interpersonal relationships and can lead to a lonely existence.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

No single specific cause of OCPD has been identified. Since the early days of Freudian **psychoanalysis**, however, faulty parenting has been viewed as a major factor in the development of personality disorders. Current studies have tended to support the importance of early life experiences, finding that healthy emotional development largely depends on two important variables: parental warmth and appropriate responsiveness to the child’s needs. When these qualities are present, the child feels secure and appropriately valued. By contrast, many people with personality disorders did not have parents who were emotionally warm toward them. Patients with OCPD often recall their parents as being emotionally withholding and either overprotective or overcontrolling. One researcher has noted that people with OCPD appear to have been punished by their parents for every transgression of a rule, no matter how minor, and rewarded for almost nothing. As a result, the child is unable to safely develop or express a sense of joy, spontaneity, or independent thought; and begins to develop the symptoms of OCPD as a strategy for avoiding punishment. Children with this type of upbringing are also likely to choke down the anger they feel toward their parents; they may be outwardly obedient and polite to authority figures, but at the

same time treat younger children or those they regard as their inferiors harshly.

Genetic contributions to OCPD have not been well documented. Cultural influences may, however, play a part in the development of OCPD. That is, cultures that are highly authoritarian and rule-bound may encourage child-rearing practices that contribute to the development of OCPD. On the other hand, simply because a culture is comparatively strict or has a strong work ethic does not mean it is necessarily unhealthful. In Japanese societies, for example, excessive devotion to work, restricted emotional expression, and moral scrupulosity are highly valued characteristics that are rewarded within that culture. Similarly, certain religions and professions require exactness and careful attention to rules in their members; the military is one example. OCPD is not diagnosed in persons who are simply behaving in accordance with such outside expectations as military regulations or the rule of a religious order. Appropriate evaluation of persons from other cultures requires close examination in order to differentiate people who are merely following culturally prescribed patterns from people whose behaviors are excessive even by the standards of their own culture.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of OCPD include a pervasive overconcern with mental, emotional, and behavioral control of the self and others. Excessive conscientiousness means that people with this disorder are generally poor problem-solvers and have trouble making decisions; as a result, they are frequently highly inefficient. Their need for control is easily upset by schedule changes or minor unexpected events. While many people have some of the following characteristics, a person who meets the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for OCPD must display at least four of them:

- Preoccupation with details, rules, lists, order, organization, or schedules to the point at which the major goal of the activity is lost.
- Excessive concern for perfection in small details that interferes with the completion of projects.
- Dedication to work and productivity that shuts out friendships and leisure-time activities, when the long hours of work cannot be explained by financial necessity.
- Excessive moral rigidity and inflexibility in matters of ethics and values that cannot be accounted for by the standards of the person’s religion or culture.
- Hoarding things, or saving worn-out or useless objects even when they have no sentimental or likely monetary value.

- Insistence that tasks be completed according to one's personal preferences.
- Stinginess with the self and others.
- Excessive rigidity and obstinacy.

## Demographics

Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder is estimated to occur in about 1% of the population, although rates of 3–10% are reported among psychiatric outpatients. The disorder is usually diagnosed in late adolescence or young adulthood. In the United States, OCPD occurs almost twice as often in men as in women. Some researchers attribute this disproportion to gender stereotyping, in that men have greater permission from general Western culture to act in stubborn, withholding, and controlling ways.

## Diagnosis

It is relatively unusual for OCPD to be diagnosed as the patient's primary reason for making an appointment with their doctor. In many cases the person with OCPD is unaware of the discomfort that his or her stubbornness and rigidity cause other people, precisely because these traits usually enable them to get their way with others. They are more likely to enter therapy because of such other issues as **anxiety disorders**, serious relationship difficulties, or stress-related medical problems. **Diagnosis** of OCPD depends on careful observation and appropriate assessment of the individual's behavior; the person must not only give evidence of the attitudes and behaviors associated with OCPD, but these must be severe enough to interfere with their occupational and interpersonal functioning.

The differential diagnosis will include distinguishing between obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) and OCPD. A person who has obsessions and compulsions that they experience as alien and irrational is more likely to be suffering from OCD, whereas the person who feels perfectly comfortable with self-imposed systems of extensive rules and procedures for mopping the kitchen floor probably has OCPD. In addition, the thoughts and behaviors that are found in OCD are seldom relevant to real-life problems; by contrast, people with OCPD are preoccupied primarily with managing (however inefficiently) the various tasks they encounter in their daily lives.

Some features of OCPD may occur in other personality disorders. For example, a person with a **narcissistic personality disorder** may be preoccupied with perfection and be critical and stingy toward others; narcissists are usually generous with themselves, however, while people with OCPD are self-critical and

reluctant to spend money even on themselves. Likewise, a person with **schizoid personality disorder**, who lacks a fundamental capacity for intimacy, may resemble someone with OCPD in being formal and detached in dealing with others. The difference here is that a person with OCPD, while awkward in emotional situations, is able to experience caring and may long for close relationships. Certain medical conditions may also mimic OCPD, but are distinct in that the onset of the symptoms is directly related to the illness. Certain behaviors related to **substance abuse** may also be mistaken for symptoms of OCPD, especially if the substance problem is unrecognized.

As described earlier, diagnosis may also be complicated by the fact that behaviors similar to OCPD may be normal variants within a given culture, occupation, or religion; however, in order to fulfill criteria for the personality disorder, the behaviors must be sufficiently severe as to impair the patient's functioning.

## Treatments

### *Psychotherapy*

Psychotherapeutic approaches to the treatment of OCPD have found insight-oriented psychodynamic techniques and cognitive behavioral therapy to be helpful for many patients. This choice of effective approaches stands in contrast to the limitations of traditional forms of **psychotherapy** with most patients diagnosed with OCD. Learning to find satisfaction in life through close relationships and recreational outlets, instead of only through work-related activities, can greatly enrich the OCPD patient's quality of life. Specific training in relaxation techniques may help patients diagnosed with OCPD who have the so-called "Type A" characteristics of competitiveness and time urgency as well as preoccupation with work.

It is difficult, however, for a psychotherapist to develop a therapeutic alliance with a person with OCPD. The patient comes into therapy with a powerful need to control the situation and the therapist; a reluctance to trust others; and a tendency to doubt or question almost everything about the therapy situation. The therapist must be alert to the patient's defenses against genuine change and work to gain a level of commitment to the therapeutic process. Without this commitment, the therapist may be fooled into thinking that therapy has been successful when, in fact, the patient is simply being superficially compliant.

### *Medications*

For many years, medications for OCPD and other personality disorders were thought to be ineffective

## KEY TERMS

**Anankastic personality disorder**—The European term for obsessive-compulsive personality disorder.

**Compulsion**—A strong impulse to perform an act, particularly one that is irrational or contrary to one's will.

**Obsession**—A persistent image, idea, or desire that dominates a person's thoughts or feelings.

**Therapeutic alliance**—The technical term for the cooperative relationship between therapist and patient that is considered essential for successful psychotherapy.

since they did not affect the underlying causes of the disorder. More recent studies, however, indicate that treatment with specific drugs may be a useful adjunct (help) to psychotherapy. In particular, the medications known as **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** appear to help the OCPD patient with his or her rigidity and compulsiveness, even when the patient did not show signs of pre-existing **depression**. Medication can also help the patient to think more clearly and make decisions better and faster without being so distracted by minor details. While symptom control may not "cure" the underlying personality disorder, medication does enable some OCPD patients to function with less distress.

## Prognosis

Individuals with OCPD often experience a moderate level of professional success, but relationships with a spouse or children may be strained due to their combination of emotional detachment and controlling behaviors. In addition, people with OCPD often do not attain the level of professional achievement that might be predicted for their talents and abilities because their rigidity and stubbornness make them poor "team players" or supervisors. Although there are few large-scale outcome studies of treatments for OCPD, existing reports suggest that these patients do benefit from psychotherapy to help them understand the emotional issues underlying their controlling behaviors and to teach them how to relax. Since OCPD sufferers, unlike people with OCD, usually view their compulsive behaviors as voluntary, they are better able to consider change, especially as they come to fully recognize the personal and interpersonal costs of their disorder.

## Prevention

Most theories attribute the development of OCPD to early life experiences, including a lack of parental warmth; parental overcontrol and rigidity, and few rewards for spontaneous emotional expression. Little work has been done, however, in identifying preventive strategies.

*See also* Gender issues in mental health.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Alarcon, Renato D., Edward F. Foulks, and Mark Vakkur. *Personality Disorders and Culture*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1998.

Baer, Lee. "Personality Disorders in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder." In *Obsessive-Compulsive Disorders: Practical Management*. 3rd edition. Edited by Michael Jenike and others. St. Louis: Mosby, 1998.

Jenike, Michael. "Psychotherapy of Obsessive-Compulsive Personality." In *Obsessive-Compulsive Personality Disorders: Practical Management*. 3rd edition. Edited by Michael Jenike and others. St. Louis: Mosby, 1998.

Kay, Jerald, Allen Tasman, and Jeffery Liberman. "Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder." In *Psychiatry: Behavioral Science and Clinical Essentials*, edited by Michael Jenike, Lee Baer, and William Minichiello. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders, 2000.

Millon, Theodore. *Personality-Guided Therapy*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1999.

World Health Organization (WHO). *The ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural Disorders*. Geneva: WHO, 1992.

### PERIODICALS

Barber, Jacques P., Connolly, Mary B., Crits-Christoph, Lynn G., and Siqueland, Lynne. "Alliance Predicts Patients' Outcome Beyond In-Treatment change in Symptoms." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 68 (2000): 1027-1032.

Nordahl, Hans M. and Tore C. Stiles. "Perceptions of Parental Bonding in Patients with Various Personality Disorders, Lifetime Depressive Disorders, and Healthy Controls." *Journal of Personality Disorders* 11 (1997): 457-462.

Samuels, Jack, and others. "Personality Disorders and Normal Personality Dimensions in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 177 (2000) 457-462.

Zaider, Talia, Jeffrey G. Johnson, Sarah J. Cockell. "Psychiatric Comorbidity Associated with Eating Disorder Symptomatology Among Adolescents in the Community." *International Journal of Eating Disorders* 28 (2000): 58-67.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Anxiety Disorders Association of America (ADAA). 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852-2624. (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.

Freedom From Fear, 308 Seaview Avenue, Staten Island, NY 10305. (718) 351-1717. <[www.freedomfromfear.com](http://www.freedomfromfear.com)>.

Jane A. Fitzgerald, Ph.D.

## **Obsessive-compulsive disorder**

### **Definition**

Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) is classified as an **anxiety** disorder marked by the recurrence of intrusive or disturbing thoughts, impulses, images, or ideas (obsessions) accompanied by repeated attempts to suppress these thoughts through the performance of certain irrational and ritualistic behaviors or mental acts (compulsions). The obsessions and compulsions take up large amounts of the patient's time (an hour or longer every day) and usually cause significant emotional distress for the patient and difficulties in his or her relationships with others.

Some researchers have questioned whether OCD really belongs with the other **anxiety disorders**. They think that it should be grouped with the spectrum of such obsessive-compulsive disorders as Tourette's syndrome, which are known to have biological causes.

OCD should not be confused with **obsessive-compulsive personality disorder** even though the two disorders have similar names. Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder is not characterized by the presence of obsessions and compulsions; rather, it is a lifelong pattern of insistence on control, orderliness, and perfection that begins no later than the early adult years. It is possible, however, for a person to have both disorders.

### **Description**

Obsessive-compulsive disorder is a mental disorder with two components: obsessions, which consist of thoughts, impulses, or mental images; and compulsions, which are repetitive behaviors that the person feels driven to perform in response to the obsessions. In some cases, the **compulsion** may represent a strict rule that the patient must apply rigidly in every situation (e.g., tying one's shoes a certain number of times) in order to feel "right." The exact content of obsessions varies from person to person, although certain themes are common. People with OCD experience their disturbing thoughts and images as intrusive and troublesome, but they recognize that their thoughts are products of their own minds. Obsessive thoughts



**Hand washing, a common obsessive-compulsive behavior.**  
(Peter Griffin/Alamy)

are different from worries about such real-life problems as losing one's job or bad grades in school. In addition, obsessive thoughts are not usually related to any real-life problems.

The most common types of obsessions in persons with OCD in Western countries are:

- fear of contamination (impurity, pollution, badness)
- doubts (worrying about whether one has omitted to do something)
- an intense need to have or put things in a particular order
- aggressive or frightening impulses
- recurrent sexual thoughts or images

It is important to understand that patients diagnosed with OCD do not perform their compulsions for pleasure or satisfaction. A compulsive behavior becomes linked to an obsessional thought because the behavior lowers the level of anxiety produced by the obsession(s).

The most common compulsions in Western countries are:

- washing/cleaning
- counting
- hoarding
- checking
- putting objects in a certain order
- repeated "confessing" or asking others for assurance
- repeated actions
- making lists

Although descriptions of patients with OCD have been reported since the fifteenth century in religious and psychiatric literature, the condition was widely

assumed to be rare until very recently. Epidemiological research since 1980 has now identified OCD as the fourth most common psychiatric illness, after phobias, substance use disorders, and major **depressive disorders**. OCD is presently classified as a form of anxiety disorder, but current studies indicate that it results from a combination of psychological, neurobiological, genetic, and environmental causes.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

**PSYCHOSOCIAL.** In the early part of the century, Sigmund Freud theorized that OCD symptoms were caused by punitive, rigid toilet-training practices that led to internalized conflicts. Other theorists thought that OCD was influenced by such wider cultural attitudes as insistence on cleanliness and neatness, as well as by the attitudes and parenting style of the patient's parents. Cross-cultural studies of OCD indicate that, while the incidence of OCD seems to be about the same in most countries around the world, the symptoms are often shaped by the patient's culture of origin. For example, a patient from a Western country may have a contamination **obsession** that is focused on germs, whereas a patient from India may fear contamination by touching a person from a lower social caste.

Studies of families with OCD members indicate that the particular expression of OCD symptoms may be affected by the responses of other people. Families with a high tolerance for the symptoms are more likely to have members with more extreme or elaborate symptoms. Problems often occur when the OCD member's obsessions and rituals begin to control the entire family.

**BIOLOGICAL.** There is considerable evidence that OCD has a biological component. Some researchers have noted that OCD is more common in patients who have suffered head trauma or have been diagnosed with Tourette's syndrome. Recent studies using **positron emission tomography** (PET) scanning indicate that OCD patients have patterns of **brain** activity that differ from those of people without mental illness or with some other mental illness. Other studies using **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) found that patients diagnosed with OCD had significantly less white matter in their brains than did normal control subjects. This finding suggests that there is a widely distributed brain abnormality in OCD. Some researchers have reported abnormalities in the metabolism of serotonin, an important neurotransmitter, in patients diagnosed with OCD. Serotonin affects the efficiency of

communication between the front part of the brain (the cortex) and structures that lie deeper in the brain known as the basal ganglia. Dysfunction in the serotonergic system occurs in certain other mental illnesses, including major **depression**. OCD appears to have a number of features in common with the so-called obsessive-compulsive spectrum disorders, which include Tourette's syndrome, Sydenham's chorea, eating disorders, **trichotillomania**, and delusional disorders.

There appear to be genetic factors involved in OCD. The families of persons who are diagnosed with the disorder have a greater risk of OCD and **tic disorders** than does the general population. Childhood-onset OCD appears to run in families more than adult-onset OCD, and is more likely to be associated with tic disorders. Twin studies indicate that monozygotic, or identical twins, are more likely to share the disorder than dizygotic, or fraternal twins. The concordance (match) rate between identical twins is not 100%, however, which suggests that the occurrence of OCD is affected by environmental as well as genetic factors. In addition, it is the general nature of OCD that seems to run in families rather than the specific symptoms; thus, one family member who is affected by the disorder may have a compulsion about washing and cleaning while another is a compulsive counter.

Large epidemiological studies have found a connection between streptococcal infections in childhood and the abrupt onset or worsening of OCD symptoms. The observation that there are two age-related peaks in the onset of the disorder increases the possibility that there is a common causal factor. Patients with childhood-onset OCD often have had one of two diseases caused by a group of bacteria called Group A beta-hemolytic streptococci ("strep" throat and Sydenham's chorea) prior to the onset of the OCD symptoms. The disorders are sometimes referred to as pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with streptococcal infections, or PANDAS. It is thought that antibodies in the child's blood cross-react with structures in the basal ganglia, producing or worsening the symptoms of OCD or tic disorders.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of OCD should not be confused with the ability to focus on detail or to check one's work that is sometimes labeled "compulsive" in everyday life. This type of attentiveness is an important factor in academic achievement and in doing well in fields that require close attention to detail, such as accounting or engineering. By contrast, the symptoms of OCD are serious enough to interfere with the person's day-to-day functioning. Historical examples of

OCD include a medieval Englishman named William of Oseney, who spent twelve hours per day reading religious books in order to be at peace with God; and Freud's Rat Man, a patient who had repeated dreams of cursing Freud and covering him with dung. While the Rat Man was ashamed of these impulses and had no explanation for them, he could not control them.

More recent accounts of OCD symptoms include those of a young man who compulsively touched every electrical outlet as he passed, washed his hands several times an hour, and returned home repeatedly to check that the doors and windows were locked. Another account describes a firefighter who was worried that he had throat cancer. He spent three hours a day examining his throat in the mirror, feeling his lymph nodes, and asking his wife if his throat appeared normal.

Brief descriptions of the more common obsessions and compulsions follow.

**CONTAMINATION.** People with contamination obsessions are usually preoccupied with a fear of dirt or germs. They may avoid leaving home or allowing visitors to come inside in order to prevent contact with dirt or germs. Some people with contamination obsessions may wear gloves, coats, or even masks if they are forced to leave their house for some reason. Obsessions with contamination may also include abnormal fears of such environmental toxins as lead, asbestos, or radon.

Washing compulsions are commonly associated with contamination obsessions. For example, a person concerned about contamination from the outside may shower and launder all clothing immediately upon coming home. The compulsion may be triggered by direct contact with the feared object, but in many cases, even being in its general vicinity may stir up intense anxiety and a strong need to engage in a washing compulsion. One man who was afraid of contamination could not even take a short walk down the street without experiencing a compulsion to disinfect the soles of his shoes, launder all his clothing, and wash his hands until they were raw after he returned to his apartment.

Washing compulsions may not always be caused by a fear of germs. That is, a need for perfection or for symmetry may also lead to unnecessary washing. In such cases, the individual may be concerned about being "perfectly" clean, or feel that he cannot leave the shower until his left foot has been washed exactly as many times as his right foot. Other people with washing compulsions may be unable to tolerate feeling sweaty or otherwise not clean.

**OBSSESSIONAL DOUBTING.** Obsessional doubting refers to the fear of having failed to perform some task adequately, and that dire consequences will follow as a result. Although the person may try to suppress the worrisome thoughts or images, he or she usually experiences a rising anxiety which then leads to a compulsion to check the task. For example, someone may worry about forgetting to lock the door or turn off the gas burner on the stove and spend hours checking these things before leaving home. In one instance, a man was unable to throw away old grocery bags because he feared he might have left something valuable inside one of them. Immediately after looking into an empty bag, he would again have the thought, "What if I missed something in there?" In many cases, no amount of checking is sufficient to dispel the maddening sense of doubt.

**NEED FOR SYMMETRY.** Persons suffering from an obsession about symmetry often report feeling acutely uncomfortable unless they perform certain tasks in a symmetrical or balanced manner. Thus, crossing one's legs to the right must be followed by crossing legs to the left; scratching one side of the head must be followed by scratching the other; tapping the wall with a knuckle on the right hand must be followed by tapping with one on the left, etc. Sometimes the person may have a thought or idea associated with the compulsion, such as a fear that a loved one will be harmed if the action is not balanced, but often there is no clearly defined fear, only a strong sense of uneasiness.

**AGGRESSIVE AND SEXUAL OBSESSIONS.** Aggressive and sexual obsessions are often particularly horrifying to those who experience them. For some people, obsessive fears of committing a terrible act in the future compete with fears that they may already have done something awful in the past. Compulsions to constantly check and confess cause such individuals to admit to evildoing in which they had no part, a phenomenon familiar to law enforcement following highly publicized crimes. These obsessions often involve violent or graphic imagery that is upsetting and disgusting to the person, such as rape, physical assault, or even murder. One case study concerned a young woman who constantly checked the news to reassure herself that she had not murdered anyone that day; she felt deeply upset by unsolved murder cases. A middle-aged man repeatedly confessed to having molested a woman at work, despite no evidence of such an action ever occurring in his workplace.

**SYMPTOMS IN CHILDREN.** Obsessions and compulsions in children are often focused on germs and fears of contamination. Other common obsessions include fears

of harm coming to self or others; fears of causing harm to another person; obsessions about symmetry; and excessive moralization or religiosity. Childhood compulsions frequently include washing, repeating, checking, touching, counting, ordering, and arranging. Younger children are less likely to have full-blown anxiety-producing obsessions, but they often report a sense of relief or strong satisfaction (a “just right” feeling) from completing certain ritualized behaviors. Since children are particularly skillful in disguising their OCD symptoms from adults, they may effectively hide their disorder from parents and teachers for years.

Unusual behaviors in children that may be signs of OCD include:

- Avoidance of scissors or other sharp objects. A child may be obsessed with fears of hurting herself or others.
- Chronic lateness or dawdling. The child may be performing checking rituals (e.g., repeatedly making sure all her school supplies are in her bookbag).
- Daydreaming or preoccupation. The child may be counting or performing balancing rituals mentally.
- Spending long periods of time in the bathroom. The child may have a handwashing compulsion.
- Schoolwork handed in late or papers with holes erased in them. The child may be repeatedly checking and correcting her work.

For both children and adults, the symptoms of OCD wax and wane in severity; and the specific content of obsessions and compulsions may change over time. The disorder, however, very seldom goes away by itself without treatment. People with OCD in all age groups typically find that their symptoms worsen during major life changes or following highly stressful events.

## Demographics

As noted above, OCD is a relatively common mental disorder, with about 2.3% of the population of the United States being diagnosed with the condition at some point in their lives. As of 2000, the annual social and economic costs of OCD in the United States are estimated at \$9 billion. Although the disorder may begin at any age, the typical age of onset is late adolescence to young adulthood, with slightly more women than men being diagnosed with OCD. Interestingly, childhood OCD is more common in males, and the sex ratio does not favor females until adulthood. People with OCD appear to be less likely to marry than persons diagnosed with other types of mental disorders.

## Diagnosis

OCD is a disorder that may not be diagnosed for years. People who suffer from its symptoms are often deeply ashamed, and go to great lengths to hide their ritualistic behaviors. The disorder may be diagnosed when family members get tired of the impact of the patient’s behaviors on their lives, and force the patient to consult a doctor. In other cases, the disorder may be self-reported. The patient may have come to resent the amount of time wasted by the compulsions; or he or she may have taken a screening questionnaire such as the brief screener available on the NIMH website (listed in the resources section below).

The **diagnosis** of OCD may be complicated because of the number of other conditions that resemble it. For example, major depression may be associated with self-perceptions of being guilty, bad, or worthless that are excessive and unreasonable. Similarly, eating disorders often include bizarre thoughts about size and weight, ritualized eating habits, or the hoarding of food. Delusional disorders may entail unusual beliefs or behaviors, as do such other mental disorders as trichotillomania, **hypochondriasis**, the **paraphilic**s, and substance use disorders. Thus, accurate diagnosis of OCD depends on the careful analysis of many variables to determine whether the apparent obsessions and compulsions might be better accounted for by some other disorder, or to the direct effects of a substance or a medical condition.

In addition, OCD may coexist with other mental disorders, most commonly depression. It has been estimated that about 34% of patients diagnosed with OCD are depressed at the time of diagnosis, and that 65% will develop depression at some point in their lives.

## Treatments

As of 2007, a combination of behavioral therapy and medications appears to be the most effective treatment for OCD. The goal of treatment is to reduce the frequency and severity of the obsessions and compulsions so that the patient can work more efficiently and have more time for social activities. Few OCD patients become completely symptom-free, but most benefit considerably from treatment.

### Psychotherapy

Behavioral treatments using the technique of exposure and response prevention are particularly effective in treating OCD. In this form of therapy, the patient and therapist draw up a list, or hierarchy, of the patient’s obsessive and compulsive symptoms. The symptoms are arranged in order from least to

## KEY TERMS

**Basal ganglia**—A group of masses of gray matter located in the cerebral hemispheres of the brain that control movement as well as some aspects of emotion and cognition.

**Behavioral therapy**—An approach to treatment that focuses on extinguishing undesirable behavior and replacing it with desired behavior.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**Compulsion**—A strong impulse to perform an act, particularly one that is irrational or contrary to one's will.

**Epidemiology**—The study of the causes, incidence, transmission, and control of diseases.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Obsession**—A persistent image, idea, or desire that dominates a person's thoughts or feelings.

**Onset**—The point in time at which the symptoms of a disorder first became apparent.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive

tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Streptococcus (plural, streptococci)**—A type of bacterium that is spherical in shape and occurs in chains or pairs. Some diseases that are caused by streptococci appear to be related to OCD.

**Sydenham's chorea**—A serious manifestation of acute rheumatic fever that commonly occurs in children ages seven through 14, peaking at age eight. This disease of the central nervous system is characterized by emotional instability, purposeless movements, and muscular weakness. At its peak in the 1950s it occurred in nearly 50% of the acute rheumatic fever cases, but by 2002 had subsided to a degree of less than 10% of the acute cases.

**Tic**—A sudden involuntary behavior that is difficult or impossible for the person to suppress. Tics may be either motor (related to movement) or vocal, and may become more pronounced under stress.

**Trichotillomania**—A disorder marked by repeated pulling and tugging of one's hair, usually resulting in noticeable hair loss on the scalp or elsewhere on the body.

most upsetting. The patient is then systematically exposed to the anxiety-producing thoughts or behaviors, beginning with the least upsetting. The patient is asked to endure the feared event or image without engaging in the compulsion normally used to lower anxiety. For example, a person with a contamination obsession might be asked to touch a series of increasingly dirty objects without washing their hands. In this way, the patient learns to tolerate the feared object, reducing both worrisome obsessions and anxiety-reducing compulsions. About 75–80% of patients respond well to exposure and response prevention, with very significant reductions in symptoms.

Other types of **psychotherapy** have met with mixed results. **Psychodynamic psychotherapy** is helpful to some patients who are concerned about the relationships between their upbringing and the specific features of their OCD symptoms. Cognitive-behavioral psychotherapy may be valuable in helping the patient to become more comfortable with the prospect of exposure

and prevention treatments, as well as helping to identify the role that the patient's particular symptoms may play in his or her own life and what effects family members may have on the maintenance and continuation of OCD symptoms. Cognitive-behavioral psychotherapy is not intended to replace exposure and response prevention, but may be a helpful addition to it.

### Medications

The most useful medications for the treatment of OCD are the specific serotonin reuptake inhibitors (**SSRIs**), which affect the body's reabsorption of serotonin, a chemical in the brain that helps to transmit nerve impulses across the very small gaps between nerve cells. These drugs, specifically **clomipramine** (Anafranil), **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **fluvoxamine** (Luvox), **sertraline** (Zoloft), and **paroxetine** (Paxil) have been found to relieve OCD symptoms in over half of the patients studied. It is not always possible for the doctor to predict which of the SSRIs will work best for a specific patient.

Lack of response to one SSRI does not mean that other drugs within the same family will not work. Treatment of OCD often proceeds slowly, with various medications being tried before the most effective one is found. While studies report that about half of those treated with SSRIs show definite improvement, **relapse** rates may be as high as 90% when medications are discontinued.

### *Other mainstream approaches*

Some treatments that have been used for OCD include **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT) and, as a technique of last resort, psychosurgery for truly intractable OCD. Some patients have benefited from ECT; however, the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) recommends reserving ECT for OCD patients who have not responded to psychotherapy or medication.

### **Prognosis**

While most patients with OCD benefit from a combination of medications and psychotherapy, the disorder is usually a lifelong condition. In addition, the presence of **personality disorders** or additional mental disorders is associated with less favorable results from treatment. The total elimination of OCD symptoms is very rare, even with extended treatment.

The onset of OCD in childhood is the single strongest predictor of a poor prognosis. Treatment in children is also complicated by the fact that children may find the response and exposure techniques very stressful. It is also hard for children to understand the potential value of such treatments; however, creative therapists have learned to use anxiety reduction strategies, education, and behavioral rewards to help their young patients with the treatment tasks. Concern about the long-term use of medications in children with OCD has further encouraged the use of cognitive-behavioral techniques whenever possible.

*See also* Exposure treatment; Tic disorders.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

- Abramowitz, Jonathan S., and Arthur C. Houts, eds. *Concepts and Controversies in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder*. New York: Springer, 2005.
- Antony, Martin M., Christine Purdon, and Laura J. Summerfeldt, eds. *Psychological Treatment of Obsessive Compulsive Disorders: Fundamentals and Beyond*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.
- Clark, David A. *Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy for OCD*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.
- O'Connor, Kieron, Frederick Aardema, and Marie-Claude Pélissier. *Beyond Reasonable Doubt: Reasoning Proc-*

*esses in Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder and Related Disorders*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2005.

- VandenBos, Gary R. ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.
- Wiederhold, Brenda K. Mark D. Wiederhold. *Virtual Reality Therapy for Anxiety Disorders: Advances in Evaluation and Treatment*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2005.

### **PERIODICALS**

- Anderson, Rebecca A. and Clare S. Rees. "Group versus Individual Cognitive-Behavioural Treatment for Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder: A Controlled Trial." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 45.1 Jan 2007: 123-37.
- Fineberg, Naomi A., and others. "Adjunctive Quetiapine for Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitor-Resistant Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder: A Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Treatment Trials." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 21.6 Nov 2006: 337-43.

### **ORGANIZATIONS**

- Anxiety Disorders Association of America (ADAA). 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852-2624. (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.
- Freedom From Fear. 308 Seaview Avenue, Staten Island, NY 10305 (718) 351-1717. <[www.freedomfromfear.com](http://www.freedomfromfear.com)>.
- Obsessive-Compulsive Foundation, Inc. 337 Notch Hill Road, North Branford, CT 06471. (203) 315-2196. <[www.ocfoundation.org](http://www.ocfoundation.org)>.

### **OTHER**

- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder*. 3rd rev. ed. 1999. NIH Publication No. 99-3755. <[www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/ocd.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/ocd.cfm)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *A Screening Test for Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder*. <[www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/ocdrt1.htm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/ocdrt1.htm)>.

Jane A. Fitzgerald, Ph.D.

## **Olanzapine**

### **Definition**

Olanzapine is classified as an atypical antipsychotic drug. It is available in the United States under the brand names Zyprexa and Zyprexa Zydis.

### **Purpose**

Olanzapine is used to treat **schizophrenia**, to control manic episodes of **bipolar disorder** (manic-depressive disorder), or to treat **dementia** related to **Alzheimer's disease**.

## Description

Olanzapine is thought to modify the actions of several chemicals in the **brain**. Olanzapine is chemically related to another atypical antipsychotic agent, **clozapine**, but differs both chemically and pharmacologically from the earlier phenothiazine antipsychotics.

Olanzapine is available as 2.5-mg, 5-mg, 7.5-mg, 10-mg, 15-mg, and 20-mg tablets that can be swallowed (Zyprexa) and 5-mg, 10-mg, 15-mg, and 20-mg tablets that disintegrate when placed under the tongue (Zyprexa Zydis). Olanzapine is broken down by the liver.

## Recommended dosage

Recently, the effectiveness of olanzapine was evaluated in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of **Intervention** Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study. This study evaluated the effectiveness and side effects of newer antipsychotic drugs (sometimes referred to as atypical antipsychotics)—including olanzapine—in comparison to a conventional antipsychotic drug in the treatment of schizophrenia.

The study found that the conventional antipsychotic generally was equally effective and tolerated as well as the newer, more expensive, atypical antipsychotic medications. Of the atypical antipsychotics, olanzapine performed somewhat better than the other drugs being investigated, and patients taking this drug were less likely to be hospitalized for psychotic **relapse** and tended to stay on their medication longer than patients taking other antipsychotic drugs in the study. However, patients on olanzapine also tended to gain significant weight and experience other metabolic changes associated with diabetes than did patients taking the other drugs in the study.

The study also showed that olanzapine and **risperidone** tend to be better tolerated than the other atypical antipsychotics investigated, although only 35% of participants on olanzapine were able to continue taking it throughout the entire 18 months of the study. Participants who stopped taking their antipsychotic medication in Phase 1 because it was not adequately controlling their symptoms were more likely to stay on their medication if they were switched to olanzapine or risperidone than to **quetiapine** or **ziprasidone**. There was no difference between the four medications tested in Phase 2, however, for participants who had stopped taking their Phase 1 medication because they experienced adverse side effects.

The study results also show that clozapine is often a good choice of medication for patients who did not respond well to other antipsychotic medications. In

Phase 2 of the study, clozapine was more effective in controlling symptoms than the other atypical antipsychotics under evaluation. For patients whose symptoms are not well-controlled on clozapine, olanzapine and risperidone tend to be more effective than ziprasidone or quetiapine.

The dosage of olanzapine varies depending upon the reason for its use. When used to treat schizophrenia, 5–10 mg is the typical starting dosage. If dosage adjustments are needed, increases are made in 5-mg increments once a week. When treating schizophrenia, a total daily dosage of 10–15 mg is usually effective. When olanzapine is used to treat acute manic episodes, initial doses of olanzapine are often 10–15 mg. And 20 mg per day may be needed for maximum effect. The safety of doses greater than 20 mg per day has not been determined.

Olanzapine is eliminated from the body more quickly in young people than in older (over age 60) individuals, in men than in women, and in smokers faster than in nonsmokers. Dosage adjustments may be needed based upon individual patient characteristics.

## Precautions

Caution should be used in patients with heart disease because the drug may cause blood pressure to fall too low resulting in dizziness, rapid heartbeats, or fainting. Olanzapine should be used carefully in people with known seizure disorders since olanzapine may alter properties of the brain, making **seizures** occur more easily. People with liver disease should have their liver function monitored regularly while taking olanzapine. Women who are pregnant or breast-feeding should not take olanzapine. People with phenylketonuria, a disorder in which the body is unable to metabolize a protein called phenylalanine, should avoid olanzapine disintegrating tablets, because this form of the drug contains phenylalanine.

## Side effects

Side effects that occur in more than 5% of patients taking olanzapine include involuntary movements, weakness, dizziness, extreme drowsiness, non-violent objectionable behavior, constipation, weight gain, dry mouth, low blood pressure, stomach upset, increased appetite, cold-like symptoms, or fever.

Other side effects that are possible include rash, body aches and pains, elevated liver enzymes, vision abnormalities, chest pain, or rapid heartbeats.

Olanzapine has the potential to produce a serious side effect called **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome

## KEY TERMS

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders, as well.

**Atypical antipsychotic**—A newer antipsychotic drug that is less likely to cause significant adverse side effects than conventional antipsychotic medications. Atypical antipsychotics are also called novel antipsychotics or second-generation antipsychotics.

**Bipolar disorder (formerly manic-depressive disorder)**—A mental disorder characterized by dramatic and sometimes rapid mood swings, resulting in both manic and depressive episodes.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)**—An unusual but potentially serious complication that develops in some patients who have been treated with antipsychotic medications. NMS is character-

ized by changes in blood pressure, altered states of consciousness, rigid muscles, and fever. Untreated NMS can result in coma and death.

**Psychosis (plural: psychoses)**—A severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, face, or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may appear late in therapy and that may not disappear even after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, face, or other groups of skeletal muscles. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and with increasing dosage of olanzapine. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

An occasionally reported side effect of olanzapine is neuroleptic malignant syndrome. This is a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity, high fever, alterations in mental status, and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia (fast heartbeat), and arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat).

### Interactions

Any drug that causes drowsiness may lead to decreased mental alertness and impaired motor skills when taken with olanzapine. Some examples include alcohol, **antidepressants** such as **imipramine** (Tofra-

nil) or **paroxetine** (Paxil), antipsychotics such as **thioridazine** (Mellaril), and some antihistamines. Because olanzapine may lower blood pressure, it may reduce blood pressure to dangerously low levels if taken with drugs that are used to treat high blood pressure. **Carbamazepine** (Tegretol), a drug commonly used to treat seizures, may decrease the effectiveness of olanzapine.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Facts and Comparisons staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: A Wolter Kluwer Company, 2002.

Medical Economics Co. staff. *Physician's Desk Reference*. 56th ed. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

Casey, Daniel E. "Implications of the CATIE Trial on Treatment: Extrapyramidal Symptoms." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 25–31.

- Gentile, Salvatore. "Extrapyramidal Adverse Events Associated with Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment of Bipolar Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 27.1 (Feb. 2007): 35–45.
- Glick, Ira D. "Understanding the Results of CATIE in the Context of the Field." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 40–47.
- Haro, Josep Maria, and others. "Remission and Relapse in the Outpatient Care of Schizophrenia: Three-Year Results from the Schizophrenia Outpatient Health Outcomes Study." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.6 (Dec. 2006): 571–78.
- Harvey, Philip D., Christopher R. Bowie, and Antony Loebel. "Neuropsychological Normalization with Long-Term Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment: Results of a Six-Month Randomized, Double-Blind Comparison of Ziprasidone vs. Olanzapine." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry & Clinical Neurosciences* 18.1 (Winter 2006): 54–63.
- Jarema, Marek. "Atypical Antipsychotics in the Treatment of Mood Disorders." *Current Opinion in Psychiatry* 20.1 (Jan. 2007): 23–29.
- Kinon, Bruce J., and others. "Randomized, Double-Blind 6-Month Comparison of Olanzapine and Quetiapine in Patients with Schizophrenia or Schizoaffective Disorder with Prominent Negative Symptoms and Poor Functioning." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.5 (Oct. 2006): 453–61.
- Lieberman, Jeffrey A., and others. "Effectiveness of Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia." *New England Journal of Medicine* 353.12 (Sept. 2005): 1209–23.
- Lipkovich, I., and others. "Predictors of Risk for Relapse in Patients with Schizophrenia or Schizoaffective Disorder During Olanzapine Drug Therapy." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (Apr.–June 2007): 305–10.
- McCue, Robert E., and others. "Comparative Effectiveness of Second-Generation Antipsychotics and Haloperidol in Acute Schizophrenia." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 189 (Nov. 2006): 433–40.
- McEvoy, Joseph P., and others. "Effectiveness of Clozapine Versus Olanzapine, Quetiapine, and Risperidone in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia Who Did Not Respond to Prior Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 600–10.
- Meltzer, Herbert Y., and William V. Bobo. "Interpreting the Efficacy Findings in the CATIE Study: What Clinicians Should Know." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 14–24.
- Morrens, Manuel, and others. "Psychomotor and Memory Effects of Haloperidol, Olanzapine, and Paroxetine in Healthy Subjects After Short-Term Administration." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 27.1 (Feb. 2007): 15–21.
- Nasrallah, Henry A. "Metabolic Findings From the CATIE Trial and Their Relation to Tolerability." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 32–39.
- Schneider, Lon S., and others. "Effectiveness of Atypical Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Alzheimer's

- Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 355.15 (Oct. 2006): 1525–38.
- Stroup, T. Scott, and others. "Effectiveness of Olanzapine, Quetiapine, Risperidone, and Ziprasidone in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia Following Discontinuation of a Previous Atypical Antipsychotic." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 611–22.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph., PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Opioids and related disorders

### Definition

Opioids are a class of drugs that include both natural and synthetic substances. The natural opioids (referred to as opiates) include opium and morphine. Heroin, the most abused opioid, is synthesized from opium. Other synthetics (only made in laboratories) and commonly prescribed for pain, such as cough suppressants, or as anti-diarrhea agents, include codeine, oxycodone (OxyContin), meperidine (Demerol), fentanyl (Sublimaze), hydromorphone (Dilaudid), **methadone**, and propoxyphene (Darvon). Heroin is usually injected, either intravenously (into a vein) or subcutaneously (under the skin), but can be smoked or used intranasally (i.e., "snorted"). Other opioids are either injected or taken orally.

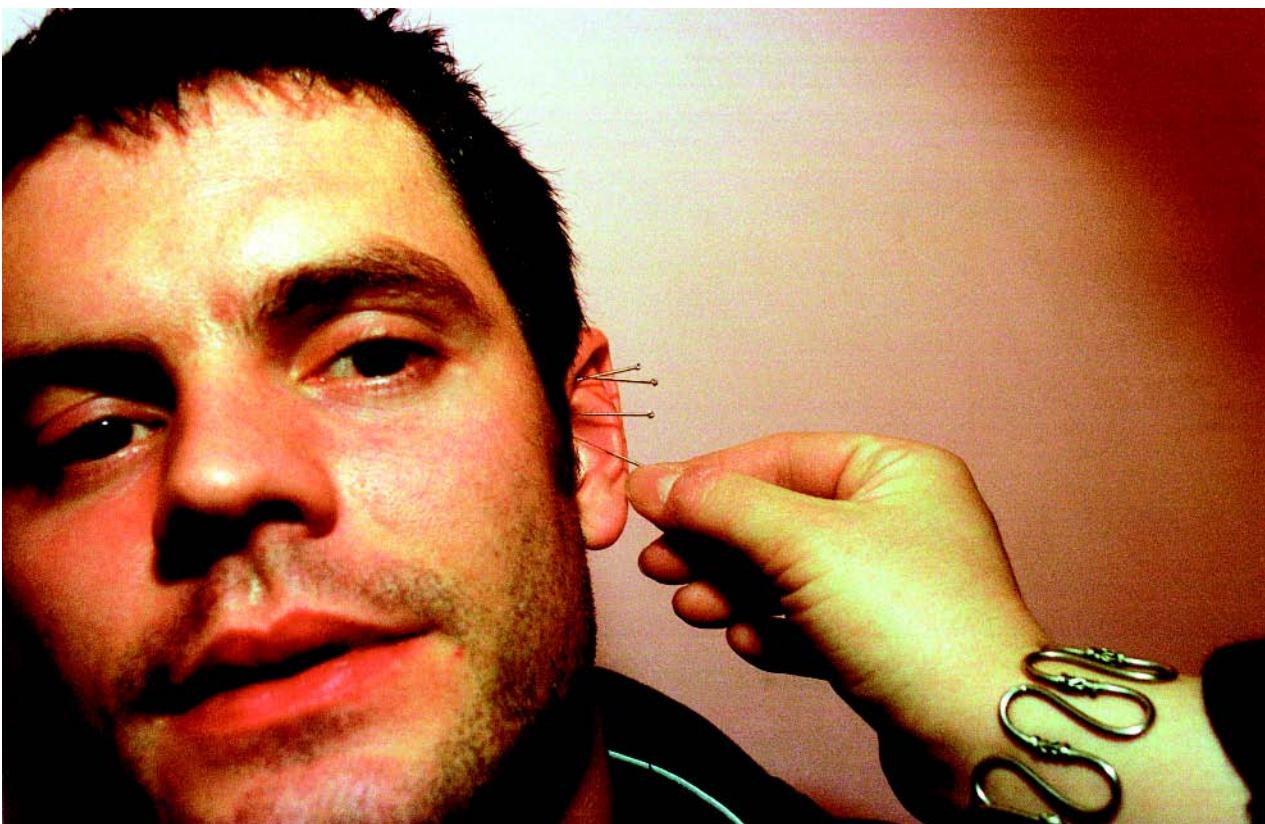
The manual that is used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders is the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***. The latest edition of this manual was published in 2000, and is also known as the ***DSM-IV-TR***. *DSM-IV-TR* lists opioid dependence and opioid **abuse** as substance use disorders. In addition, the opioid-induced disorders of opioid intoxication and opioid withdrawal are listed in the substance-related disorders section as well.

### Opioid dependence

Opioid dependence, or **addiction**, is essentially a syndrome in which a person continues to use opioids in spite of significant problems caused by or made worse by the use of opioids. Typically individuals with opioid dependence are physically dependent on the drug as evidenced by tolerance and/or withdrawal.

### Opioid abuse

Opioid abuse is less severe than opioid dependence and typically does not involve physical dependence on



A heroin addict receives acupuncture treatment. (David Hoffman Photo Library/Alamy)

the drug. Opioid abuse is essentially repeated significant negative consequences of using opioids recurrently.

#### *Opioid intoxication*

When an individual uses a sufficient amount of an opioid, they will get “high” from the drug. Some people, however, have negative experiences when they use an opioid. When too much of an opioid is taken, an individual can overdose.

#### *Opioid withdrawal*

Individuals who use opioids on a regular basis, even if only for a few days, may develop a tolerance to the drug and experience physiological and psychological symptoms when they stop using the drug. The “abstinence syndrome” related to opioids is very similar to a bad case of influenza (or the “flu”).

#### **Description**

##### *Opioid dependence*

Dependence on opioids involves significant physiological and psychological changes, which make it

extremely difficult for an individual to stop using the opioids. Recurrent use of opioids causes actual changes in how the **brain** functions. An individual who is addicted to opioids cannot simply just stop using, despite significant negative consequences related to their use. Marital difficulties, including divorce, unemployment, and drug-related legal problems are often associated with opioid dependence. People dependent on opioids often plan their day around obtaining and using opioids.

#### *Opioid abuse*

People who abuse opioids typically use them less frequently than those who are dependent on opioids. However, despite less frequent use, an individual with opioid abuse suffers negative consequences. For example, while intoxicated on opioids, an individual may get arrested for their behavior.

#### *Opioid intoxication*

An individual who uses opioids typically experiences drowsiness (“nodding off”), mood changes, a feeling of heaviness, dry mouth, itching, and slurred speech. Individuals who use heroin intravenously describe an

intense euphoria (or “rush”), a floating feeling, and total indifference to pain. Symptoms of intoxication usually last several hours. Severe intoxication from an overdose of opioids is life-threatening because breathing may stop.

### Opioid withdrawal

Tolerance to opioids occurs quickly. Regular users of opioids take doses that would kill someone who has never used before. After regular use, the human body adapts to the regular presence of the drug and the person only feels “normal” when they have opioids in their system. Therefore, when an opioid-dependent individual stops using opioids abruptly, he or she will experience withdrawal symptoms. Withdrawal symptoms from heroin usually begin six to eight hours after last use and peak after two days. Acute withdrawal typically lasts no more than seven to ten days, but some symptoms of withdrawal (such as craving, **insomnia**, **anxiety**, lack of interest) can last six months or longer. Although withdrawal is very uncomfortable, it is not life-threatening unless there is an underlying medical condition, such as heart disease. In addition to physical withdrawal, “psychological withdrawal” often occurs. The individual who is dependent on opioids has difficulty imagining living without the drug, since they were dependent on it to function. This is similar to how someone addicted to **nicotine** may feel after giving up cigarettes.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There are no clear-cut causes of drug use other than the initial choice to use the drug. This decision to use may be highly influenced by peer group. Typically, the age of first use of heroin is about 16 years old, but this age has been dropping in recent years.

Certain social and behavioral characteristics, however, are more commonly seen among individuals who become dependent on opioids than those who do not. For instance, many heroin users come from families in which one or more family members use alcohol or drugs excessively or have mental disorders (such as **antisocial personality disorder**). Often heroin users have had health problems early in life, behavioral problems beginning in childhood, low self-confidence, and anti-authoritarian views.

Among opioid-dependent adolescents, a “heroin behavior syndrome” has sometimes been described. This syndrome consists of **depression** (often with anxiety symptoms), impulsiveness, fear of failure, low self-esteem, low frustration tolerance, limited coping skills, and relationships based primarily on mutual drug use.

### Symptoms

**OPIOID DEPENDENCE.** The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that three or more of the following symptoms must occur at any time during a 12-month period (and cause significant impairment or distress) in order to meet diagnostic criteria for opioid dependence:

- Tolerance: The individual either has to use increasingly higher amounts of the drug over time in order to achieve the same drug effect or finds that the same amount of the drug has much less of an effect over time than before.
- Withdrawal: The individual either experiences the characteristic abstinence syndrome (i.e., opioid-specific withdrawal) or the individual uses opioids or similar-acting drugs in order to avoid or relieve withdrawal symptoms.
- Loss of control: The individual either repeatedly uses more opioids than planned or uses the opioids over longer periods of time than planned.
- Inability to stop using: The individual has either unsuccessfully attempted to cut down or stop using the opioids or has a persistent desire to stop using.
- Time: The individual spends a lot of time obtaining opioids, getting money to buy opioids, using opioids, being under the influence of opioids, and recovering from the effects of opioids.
- Interference with activities: The individual either gives up or reduces the amount of time involved in recreational activities, social activities, and/or occupational activities.
- Harm to self: The individual continues to use opioids despite having either a physical or psychological problem (depression, for example) that is caused or made worse by the opioid use.

**OPIOID ABUSE.** The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that one or more of the following symptoms must occur at any time during a 12-month period (and cause significant impairment or distress) in order to meet diagnostic criteria for opioid abuse:

- Interference with role fulfillment: The individual’s use of opioids repeatedly interferes with the ability to fulfill obligations at work, home, or school.
- Danger to self: The individual repeatedly uses opioids in situations in which it may be physically hazardous (while driving a car, for example).
- Legal problems: The individual has recurrent opioid-related legal problems (such as arrests for possession of narcotics).
- Social problems: The individual continues to use opioids despite repeated interpersonal or relationship problems caused by or made worse by the use of opioids.

**OPIOID INTOXICATION.** The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that the following symptoms must be present in order to meet diagnostic criteria for opioid intoxication:

- Use: The individual recently used an opioid.
- Changes: The individual experiences significant behavioral or psychological changes during, or shortly after, use of an opioid. These changes may include euphoria initially, followed by slowed movements or agitation, impaired judgment, apathy (“don’t care attitude”), dysphoric mood (depression, for example), or impaired functioning socially or at work.
- Opioid-specific intoxication syndrome: The pupils in the eyes get smaller. In addition, drowsiness or coma, slurred speech, and/or impaired memory or attention during, or shortly after, opioid use occur.

**OPIOID WITHDRAWAL.** The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that the following symptoms must be present in order to meet diagnostic criteria for opioid withdrawal:

- Abstinence: Either the individual has stopped using (or has reduced the amount of) opioids, or an opioid antagonist (i.e., a drug, such as naloxone, that blocks the action of opioids) has been administered.
- Opioid-specific withdrawal syndrome: Three or more symptoms develop after abstinence. These symptoms include dysphoric (negative) mood, nausea or vomiting, muscle aches, runny nose or watery eyes, dilated pupils, goosebumps, or sweating, diarrhea, yawning, fever, and insomnia.
- Impairment or distress: The withdrawal symptoms must cause significant distress to the individual or impairment in functioning (socially, at work, or any other important area).
- Not due to other disorder: The withdrawal symptoms cannot be due to a medical condition or other mental disorder.

## Demographics

There are at least 600,000 individuals with opioid dependence living in the United States. It has been estimated that almost 1% of the population has met criteria for opioid dependence or abuse at some time in their lives.

In the late 1800s and early 1900s, individuals who were dependent on opioids were primarily white and from middle socioeconomic groups. However, since the 1920s, minorities and those from lower socioeconomic groups have been overrepresented among those with opioid dependence. It appears that availability of opioids and subcultural factors are key in opioid use. Therefore, medical professionals (who have access to

opioids) are at higher risk for developing opioid-related disorders.

Males are more commonly affected by opioid disorders than females—males are three to four times more likely to be dependent on opioids than females. Age also is a factor in opioid dependence. There is a tendency for rates of dependence to decrease beginning at 40 years of age. Problems associated with opioid use are usually first seen in the teens and 20s.

## Diagnosis

**Diagnosis** of opioid-related disorders are based on patient interview and observations of symptoms, including signs of withdrawal such as dilated pupils, watery eyes, frequent yawning, and anxiety, among others.

### Opioid dependence

Other mental disorders are common among individuals with opioid dependence. It has been estimated that 90% of those with opioid dependence have one or more other mental disorders. Depression (usually either major depression or substance-induced mood disorder) is the most common disorder. Opioid-dependent individuals frequently report suicidal ideation (thoughts) and insomnia. Other substance use disorders (such as alcoholism), **anxiety disorders**, antisocial personality disorder, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, and a history of **conduct disorder** are also fairly common.

### Opioid intoxication

Intoxication on other substances, such as alcohol, **sedatives**, hypnotics, and anxiolytics, can resemble intoxication on opioids. Furthermore, dilated pupils can be seen in hallucinogen intoxication, amphetamine intoxication, and **cocaine** intoxication.

### Opioid withdrawal

The restlessness and anxiety seen in opioid withdrawal is also seen in withdrawal from sedatives, hypnotics, and anxiolytics.

## Treatments

### Opioid dependence

Because opioid-related disorders are complex, multiple treatment approaches are often necessary. Generally, the more treatment (a combination of medication, individual therapy, and **self-help groups**, for example) and longer the treatment (i.e., at least three months), the better the outcomes. There are a wide

variety of treatment options, both inpatient or residential and outpatient:

- Methadone maintenance treatment. Methadone is a long-acting opioid that is generally administered in an outpatient setting (a methadone maintenance clinic). The methadone prevents the individual from experiencing opioid withdrawal, reduces opioid craving, and enables the individual to have access to other services (such as individual counseling, medical services, and HIV-prevention education). A proper dose of methadone also prevents the individual from getting “high” from heroin. Methadone maintenance therapy can decrease criminal activity, decrease HIV-risk behaviors, and increase stability of employment. Low-dose methadone maintenance treatment is preferable for pregnant individuals who would otherwise use illicit opioids. A longer-acting alternative to methadone is LAAM (levo-alphaacetylmethadol). Individuals receiving the proper doses of LAAM only need to take it three times per week, instead of every day as with methadone.
- Opioid antagonist treatment. An opioid antagonist is a medication that blocks the effects of opioids. Treatment with an antagonist, usually naltrexone (Trexan), typically takes place on an outpatient basis following an inpatient medical detoxification from opioids. The effects of taking any opioids are blocked by the naltrexone and prevent the individual from getting “high,” thereby discouraging individuals from seeking opioids. By itself, this treatment is suitable for individuals highly motivated to discontinue opioid use. However, antagonists can be used in addition to other treatment modalities or with individuals who have been abstinent for some time but fear a relapse.
- Opioid agonist-antagonist treatment. An opioid agonist is a drug that has a similar action to morphine. Buprenorphine (Buprenex) is an example of an opioid agonist-antagonist, which means it acts as both an agonist (having some morphine-like action) and antagonist (it blocks the effects of additional opioids). Buprenorphine has been shown to effectively reduce opioid use. It is also being studied for opioid detoxification.
- Outpatient drug-free treatment. These are outpatient treatment approaches that do not include medications. There are a number of different types of programs ranging from simple drug education to intensive outpatient programs that offer most of the services of an inpatient setting. Some programs may specialize in treating specific groups of people who are opioid-dependent (those with co-occurring mental disorders, for example).

- Residential or inpatient treatment. These include inpatient rehabilitation programs (usually seven to 30 days in length) and long-term residential programs (such as therapeutic communities). Rehabilitation programs provide an inpatient atmosphere following detoxification and usually offer individual and group counseling as well as medical services. Therapeutic communities are designed to be more than six months long and are highly structured. The primary focus is on resocializing the individual to a drug-free and crime-free lifestyle.
- Individualized drug counseling. Individual counseling is often a part of a methadone maintenance program or inpatient rehabilitation program. The primary focus is on helping the individual learn strategies to reduce or stop their opioid use and learn coping mechanisms to maintain abstinence. Twelve-step participation is encouraged and referrals for medical, psychiatric, employment, or other services are made as necessary.
- Supportive-expressive psychotherapy. This type of individual psychotherapy may be a part of a methadone maintenance program or offered alone. The focus of this type of therapy is to help individuals feel comfortable talking about themselves, work on relationship issues, and solve problems without resorting to opioids or other drugs.
- Self-help groups. Narcotics Anonymous (NA) is a twelve-step group based on the same model as Alcoholics Anonymous. This self-help group can provide social support to an individual in the process of reducing or stopping opioid use. Participation in NA is often encouraged or is a required component of other types of treatment for opioid dependence. Nar-Anon is a group for family members and friends of opioid-dependent individuals.
- Alternative therapies. Hypnosis, guided imagery, biofeedback, massage, and acupuncture have all been studied as adjunctive treatments for opioid dependence, but none have been proven to be effective.

### *Opioid abuse*

Most of the treatments for opioid dependence would be appropriate for opioid abuse except methadone maintenance and opioid antagonist treatment.

### *Opioid intoxication*

An opioid antagonist, naloxone (Narcan), can be administered to reverse the effects of acute intoxication or overdose on most opioids.

### Opioid withdrawal

Opioid withdrawal can be treated either on an inpatient basis (detoxification) or on an outpatient basis (methadone detoxification):

- Inpatient detoxification program. Typically, this would be from three to seven days. The withdrawal can be medically managed. Clonidine may be administered to help reduce some symptoms of withdrawal.
- Outpatient methadone detoxification. Methadone would be substituted for the illicit opioid and the dose would be gradually reduced. Detoxification from methadone is easier (i.e., the symptoms are less severe) than from heroin. However, the withdrawal or abstinence syndrome also lasts longer. Clonidine may also be administered during the methadone detoxification to help reduce withdrawal symptoms.

### Prognosis

#### Opioid dependence

Recovering from opioid dependence is a long, difficult process. Typically, multiple treatment attempts are required. Relapsing, or returning to opioids, is not uncommon even after many years of abstinence. Brief periods of abstinence are common.

Inpatient detoxification from opioids alone, without additional treatment, does not appear to have any effect on opioid use. However, other treatments have been shown to reduce opioid use, decrease illegal activity, decrease rates of HIV-infection, reduce rates of death, and increase rates of employment. Benefits are greatest for those who remain in treatment longer and participate in many different types of treatment (individual and group counseling in addition to methadone maintenance, for example).

#### Opioid abuse

Very little is known about the course of opioid abuse.

### Prevention

The best single thing an individual can do to prevent opioid-related disorders is to never use illicit opioids such as heroin. Opioids are powerfully addicting, especially if used intravenously. The risk of becoming dependent on appropriately prescribed opioids, however, is generally low except for individuals who already have a substance use disorder.

On a larger scale, comprehensive prevention programs that utilize family, schools, communities, and the media can be effective in reducing **substance**

## KEY TERMS

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**abuse.** The recurring theme in these programs is not to use drugs in the first place.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Jenkins, Susan C., Joyce A. Tinsley, and Jon A. van Loon. *A pocket reference for psychiatrists*. 3rd edition. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 2001.  
 Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street, Washington, DC 20005. (202) 682-6000. <<http://www.psych.org>>.  
 American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. (800) 374-2721. <<http://www.apa.org>>.  
 National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.  
 National Institute on Drug Abuse. 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 10-05, Rockville, MD 20857. Nationwide Help-line: (800) 662-HELP. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>.  
 National Library of Medicine. 8600 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20894. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/drugabuse.html>>.

Jennifer Hahn, Ph.D.

## Oppositional defiant disorder

### Definition

Oppositional defiant disorder (ODD) is a disorder found primarily in children and adolescents. It is characterized by negative, disobedient, or defiant behavior that is worse than the normal “testing” behavior most children display from time to time. Most children go through periods of being difficult, particularly during the period from 18 months to three years, and later during adolescence. These difficult periods are part of the normal developmental process of gaining a

stronger sense of individuality and separating from parents. ODD, however, is defiant behavior that lasts longer and is more severe than normal individuation behavior, but is not so extreme that it involves violation of social rules or the rights of others.

The mental health professional's handbook, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*), classifies ODD as a disruptive behavior disorder.

## Description

Children who have ODD are often disobedient. They are easily angered and may seem to be angry much of the time. Very young children with the disorder will throw temper tantrums that last for 30 minutes or longer, over seemingly trivial matters.

In addition, the child with ODD often starts arguments and will not give up. Winning the argument seems to be very important to a child with this disorder. Even if the youth knows that he or she will lose a privilege or otherwise be punished for continuing the tantrum or argument, he or she is unable to stop. Attempting to reason with such a child often backfires because the child perceives rational discussion as a continuation of the argument.

Most children with ODD, however, do not perceive themselves as being argumentative or difficult. It is usual for such children to blame all their problems on others. Such children can also be perfectionists and have a strong sense of justice regarding violations of what they consider correct behavior. They are impatient and intolerant of others. They are more likely to argue verbally with other children than to get into physical fights.

Older children or adolescents with ODD may try to provoke others by being deliberately annoying or critical. For example, a teenager may criticize an adult's way of speaking or dressing. This oppositional behavior is usually directed at an authority figure such as a parent, coach, or teacher. Youths diagnosed with ODD, however, can also be bullies who use their language skills to taunt and **abuse** other children.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

ODD has been called a problem of families, not of individuals. It occurs in families in which some or all of the following factors are present:

- Limits set by parents are too harsh or too lax, or an inconsistent mix of both.

- Family life lacks clear structure; rules, limits, and discipline are uncertain or inconsistently applied.
- At least one parent models oppositional behavior in his or her own interactions with others. For example, mother or father may get into frequent disputes with neighbors, store clerks, other family members, etc., in front of the child.
- At least one parent is emotionally or physically unavailable to the child due to emotional problems of the parent (such as depression); separation or divorce; or work hours.

The defiant behavior may be an attempt by the child to feel safe or gain control. It may also represent an attempt to get attention from an unresponsive parent.

There may be a genetic factor involved in ODD; the disorder often seems to run in families. This pattern may, however, reflect behavior learned from previous generations rather than the effects of a gene or genes for the disorder.

### Symptoms

According to *DSM-IV-TR*, a **diagnosis** of ODD may be given to children who meet the following criteria, provided that the behavior occurs more frequently than usual compared to children of the same age and developmental level.

A pattern of negativistic, hostile, and defiant behavior lasting at least six months, during which four (or more) of the following are present. The child:

- often loses his or her temper
- frequently argues with adults
- often disregards adults' requests or rules
- deliberately tries to provoke people
- frequently blames others for his or her mistakes or misbehavior
- is often easily irritated by others
- is often angry and resentful
- is often spiteful

In order to make the diagnosis of oppositional defiant disorder, the behavioral disturbances must cause significant impairment in the child's social, academic or occupational functioning, and the behaviors must not occur exclusively during the course of a psychotic or mood disorder. In addition, the child must not meet criteria for **conduct disorder**, which is a more serious behavioral disorder. If the youth is 18 years or older, he or she must not meet criteria for **antisocial personality disorder**.

## Demographics

Oppositional defiant disorder is thought to occur in about 6% of all children in the United States. It is more common in families of lower socioeconomic status. In one study, 8% of children from low-income families were diagnosed with ODD. The disorder is often apparent by the time a child is about six years old. Boys tend to be diagnosed with this disorder more often than girls in the preteen years, but it is equally common in males and females by adolescence.

It is estimated that about one-third of children who have attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) also have ODD. Children who have ODD are also often diagnosed with **anxiety** or depression.

## Diagnosis

Oppositional defiant disorder is diagnosed when the child's difficult behavior lasts longer than six months. There is no standard test for diagnosing ODD. A full medical checkup may be done to make sure that there is no medical problem causing the child's behavior. The medical examination is followed by a psychological evaluation of the child, which involves an interview with a mental health professional. The mental health professional may also interview the child's parents and teachers. Psychological tests are sometimes given to the child to rule out other disorders.

Evaluation for ODD includes ruling out a more disruptive behavioral disorder known as conduct disorder (CD). CD is similar to ODD but also includes physical aggression toward others, such as fighting or deliberately trying to hurt another person. Children with CD also frequently break laws or violate the rights of others, for example by stealing. They tend to be more covert than children with ODD, lying and keeping some of their unacceptable behavior secret.

The diagnosis of ODD may specify its degree of severity as mild, moderate, or severe.

## Treatments

Treatment of ODD focuses on both the child and on the parents. The goals of treatment include helping the child to feel protected and safe and to teach him or her appropriate behavior. Parents may need to learn how to set appropriate limits with a child and how to deal with a child who acts out. They may also need to learn how to teach and reinforce desired behavior.

Parents may also need help with problems that may be distancing them from the child. Such problems can include alcoholism or drug dependency, depression, or financial difficulties. In some cases, legal or

economic assistance may be necessary. For example, a single mother may need legal help to obtain child support from the child's father so that she won't need to work two jobs, and can stay at home in the evenings with the child.

Behavioral therapy is usually effective in treating ODD. Behavioral therapy focuses on changing specific behaviors, not on analyzing the history of the behaviors or the very early years of the child's life. The theory behind behavioral therapy is that a person can learn a different set of behaviors to replace those that are causing problems. As the person obtains better results from the new behavior, he or she will want to continue that behavior instead of reverting to the old one. To give an example, the child's parents may be asked to identify behaviors that usually start an argument. They are then shown ways to stop or change those behaviors in order to prevent arguments.

Contingency management techniques may be included in behavioral therapy. The child and the parents may be helped to draw up contracts that identify unwanted behaviors and spell out consequences. For example, the child may lose a privilege or part of his or her allowance every time he or she throws a temper tantrum. These contracts can include steps or stages—for example, lowering the punishment if the child begins an argument but manages to stop arguing within a set period of time. The same contract may also specify rewards for desired behavior. For example, if the child has gone for a full week without acting out, he or she may get to choose which movie the family sees that weekend. These contracts may be shared with the child's teachers.

The parents are encouraged to acknowledge good or nonproblematic behavior as much as possible. Attention or praise from the parent when the child is behaving well can reinforce his or her sense that the parent is aware of the child even when he or she is not acting out.

Cognitive therapy may be helpful for older children, adolescents, and parents. In cognitive therapy, the person is guided to greater awareness of problematic thoughts and feelings in certain situations. The therapist can then suggest a way of thinking about the problem that would lead to behaviors that are more likely to bring the person what they want or need. For example, a girl may be helped to see that much of her anger derives from feeling that no one cares about her, but that her angry behavior is the source of her problem because it pushes people away.

Although **psychotherapy** is the cornerstone of treatment for ODD, medicine may also be helpful in

## KEY TERMS

**Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder**—A learning and behavioral disorder characterized by difficulty in sustaining attention, impulsive behavior, and excessive activity.

**Behavioral therapy**—An approach to treatment that focuses on extinguishing undesirable behavior and replacing it with desired behavior.

**Cognitive therapy**—Psychological treatment aimed at changing a person's way of thinking in order to change his or her behavior and emotional state.

**Conduct disorder**—A behavioral and emotional disorder of childhood and adolescence in which children display physical aggression and infringe on or violate the rights of others. Youths diagnosed with conduct disorder may set fires, exhibit cruelty toward animals or other children, sexually assault others, or lie and steal for personal gain.

**Oppositional defiant disorder**—An emotional and behavioral problem of children and adolescents characterized by defiant, hostile, or disobedient behavior that has lasted for longer than six months.

**Passive-aggressive behaviors**—Behaviors that represent covert expressions of hostile or negative feelings that the person is unable or unwilling to express directly.

some cases. Children who have concurrent ADHD may need medical treatment to control their impulsivity and extend their attention span. Children who are anxious or depressed may also be helped by appropriate medications.

### Prognosis

Treatment for ODD is usually a long-term commitment. It may take a year or more of treatment to see noticeable improvement. It is important for families to continue with treatment even if immediate results are not apparent.

If ODD is not treated or if treatment is abandoned, the child has a higher likelihood of developing conduct disorder. The risk of developing conduct disorder is lower in children who are only mildly defiant. It is higher in children who are more defiant and in children who also have ADHD. In adults, conduct disorder is called antisocial personality disorder, or ASD.

Children who have untreated ODD are also at risk for developing passive-aggressive behaviors as adults. Per-

sons with passive-aggressive characteristics tend to see themselves as victims and blame others for their problems.

### Prevention

Prevention of ODD begins with good parenting. If at all possible, families and the caregivers they encounter should be on the lookout for any problem that may prevent parents from giving children the structure and attention they need.

Early identification of ODD and ADHD is necessary to obtain help for the child and family as soon as possible. The earlier ODD is identified and treated, the more likely it is that the child will be able to develop healthy patterns of relating to others.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Hales, R. E., S. C. Yudofsky, J. A. Talbott, eds. *Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.

Sadock, B. J., and V. A. Sadock. *Kaplan & Sadock's Comprehensive Textbook of Psychology*, 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

Loeber, Rolf. "Oppositional defiant and conduct disorder: a review of the past 10 years, part I." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* Dec. 2000.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

Jody Bower, M.S.W.

Orap see **Pimozide**

## Origin of mental illnesses

### History of theories about mental illness

#### Mental illness in the ancient world

Over the history of the healing arts, there has been an evolution of theories regarding the root causes of mental illness. Early writings from such ancient civilizations as those of Greece, Rome, India, and Egypt focused on demonic possession as the cause. This concept eventually disappeared only to resurface again in the Middle Ages in Europe, along with inadequate treatment of the mentally ill. Demons or "foul spirits" were believed to attach themselves to



**Sigmund Freud (left) with Carl Jung (right).** (Mary Evans Picture Library/Alamy)

individuals and make them depressed (“poor-spirited”) or “mad.” The word *mad* became an early synonym for **psychosis**. Unfortunately, the “possessed” included people with seizure disorders as well as others suffering from what are now known to be medical disorders. Few genuinely helpful treatments were available to relieve the suffering of the mentally ill.

#### **The Hippocratic tradition**

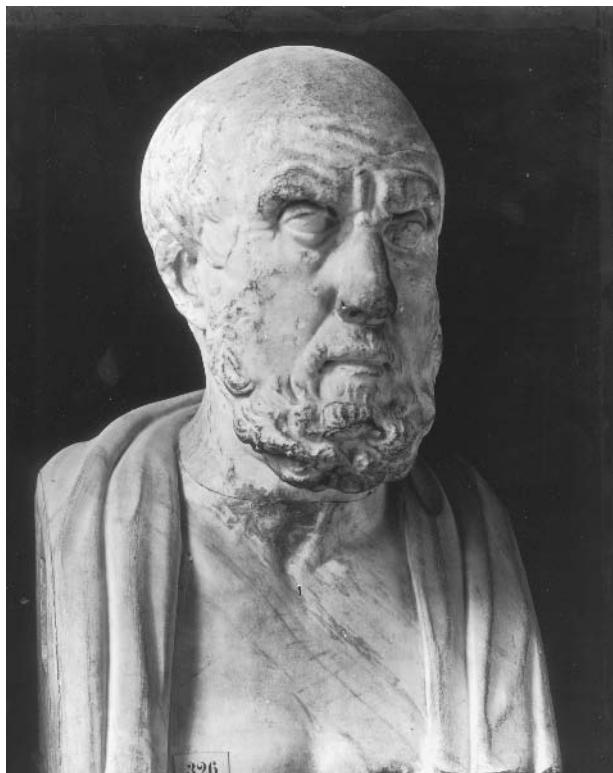
Hippocrates, a Greek physician who lived around 400 b.c. and is regarded as the source of the Hippocratic Oath taken by modern physicians, first introduced the concept of disturbed physiology (organic processes or functions) as the basis for all illnesses, mental or otherwise. Hippocrates did not describe disturbances of the nervous system as we do today, in terms of a chemical imbalance or a low level of **neurotransmitters** (neurotransmitters are the chemical messengers sent between **brain** cells). Instead, he used the notion of an imbalance of “humors.” Humors were defined as bodily fluids, and were believed to be influenced by the environment, the weather, foods, and so on, producing various imbalances in a person’s state of health. Hippocrates’ theory was an

early version of the idea that physiological disturbances or body chemistry might play a role in the development of mental illness. Most importantly, perhaps, Hippocrates’ concept placed mental illness on the same footing as other medical disorders by highlighting the belief that the mentally ill are genuinely suffering, and therefore to be treated like other sick persons rather than as moral degenerates. Sadly, modern society has not fully overcome the tendency to stigmatize persons with mental disorders. Hippocrates’ more “enlightened” perspective, however, meant that someone with **depression** or **schizophrenia** could be viewed as being in a state of “dis-ease,” just like a diabetic or someone with high blood pressure.

#### **The nineteenth century**

Toward the end of the nineteenth century, several European neurologists began actively investigating the causes of mental illness. Chief among them, and destined to change forever the understanding of mental illness, was Sigmund Freud. Although psychology and psychiatry have advanced considerably since Freud (as have other fields of medicine), his explorations were revolutionary. Freud introduced the concepts of the unconscious and the ego to modern thought, and reintroduced the ancient art of dream interpretation, but from a psychological standpoint. Freud also regarded human psychological states as an energy system in which blockages in the flow of thought (repression or suppression, for example) would result in disease or illness, expressed as mental or emotional loss of balance. He introduced the notion of a “talking cure”; through the use of **talk therapy** alone, many patients would improve. This method of treatment is still used today, although the technique of talk therapy itself has undergone further development. Freud’s early advances in understanding the mind, however, awaited further anatomical and biochemical discoveries of the structures and functions of the human brain. As a result, early psychiatry (from two Greek words, *psyche*, meaning “soul” or “mind,” and *iatros*, meaning “physician”) split into two competing traditions, one that followed Freud in emphasizing thoughts, emotions and dreams as keys to the healing of mental disorders, and another that looked for clues to these disorders in the tissues of the brain.

In the first half of the twentieth century, psychiatry was advanced by the discovery of medications that helped to alleviate depression, mania, and psychosis. As often occurs in the history of medicine, physicians stumbled upon solutions before they understood the mechanisms that made the treatment work. Later studies began to reveal that certain patients responded to medications that increased certain neurotransmitters.



**A bust of Hippocrates.** (Visual Arts Library/Alamy)

Drugs that increased the levels of the neurotransmitters norepinephrine and serotonin seemed to help depressed patients. Similarly, medications that blocked the transmission of **dopamine**, another neurotransmitter, provided relief for patients suffering from **hallucinations** and **paranoia**. These insights have led to the present emphasis on the biochemistry of the human brain. If, however, the biochemical model becomes the only view of mental health, modern psychiatry risks becoming “mindless.” Clearly, a unified theory is needed to understand all the factors that contribute to mental disorders, and to do justice to the complexity of each human being. Understanding all the factors that lead to a disease state has much to do with an adequate treatment response.

#### *Nature and nurture*

One attempt to unify the varied theories regarding the origin of mental illness is called simply the “nature versus nurture” theory. It is really the “nature *and* nurture” theory, however, as it establishes the importance of two forces in the development of mental illness. For example, “nature” refers to biological factors that produce a tendency or predisposition to develop certain diseases. For instance, parents who have high blood pressure have offspring who have a higher prob-

## CARL JUNG (1875–1961)

Carl Gustav Jung was born in Kesswil, Switzerland, on July 26, 1875, to a Protestant clergyman who moved his family to Basel when Jung was four. While growing up, Jung exhibited an interest in many diverse areas of study but finally decided to pursue medicine at the University of Basel and the University of Zurich, earning his degree in 1902. He also studied psychology in Paris. In 1903, Jung married Emma Rauschenbach, his companion and collaborator. The couple had five children.

Jung's professional career began in 1900 at the University of Zurich where he worked as an assistant to Eugene Blueler in the psychiatric clinic. During his internship, he and some co-workers used an experiment that revealed groups of ideas in the unconscious psyche which he named complexes. Jung sent his publication *Studies in Word Association* (1904) to Sigmund Freud after finding his own beliefs confirmed by Freud's work. Jung and Freud became friends and collaborators until 1913 when Jung's ideas began to conflict with Freud's. During the time following this split, Jung published *Two Essays on Analytical Psychology* (1916, 1917) and *Psychological Types* (1921). Jung's later work developed from the concepts in his *Two Essays* publication and he became known as a founder of modern depth psychology.

In 1944, Jung gave up his psychological practice and his explorations after he suffered a severe heart attack. Jung received honorary doctorates from numerous universities and in 1948 he founded the C. G. Jung Institute in Zurich. Jung died on June 6, 1961.

ability of developing the same condition. If, on the other hand, these offspring learn to eat properly, exercise, and live in a relatively peaceful home, for instance, they may be able to avoid the expression of high blood pressure that runs in their family. This example illustrates the impact that a person's environment may have on the development of physical disease. Researchers believe the same holds true for mental illnesses. For example, researchers know that patients with schizophrenia who return to a family environment in which there is a high level of expressed emotion, such as critical and angry remarks, have more frequent psychotic episodes that require **hospitalization**. Thus, it appears that the interaction between the biological and psychological dimensions of a person and his or her environment determines the likelihood of expressing a mental illness, or perhaps any illness whatsoever. There is, however, no accurate prediction or test that will determine whether or not a specific person will

develop a certain mental illness, even if many members of his or her are positive for that disease.

Conversely, a child with minimal genetic predisposition to mental illness may develop mental illness if he or she is traumatized in any number of ways, such as being raised in a non-nurturing or a physically, mentally, or emotionally abusive household. As of now, scientists do not know why some people become mentally ill while others do not. Much research remains to be done; although theories abound, the precise etiology or origin of all mental illnesses remains uncertain.

## Current theories about the origin of mental disorders

### *Biological theories*

**GENETICS.** Genetics is at this time an important area of research for psychiatric disorders. For example, a specific gene has been associated with **bipolar disorder** (also known as manic-depressive disorder), but unfortunately, the switch that controls the expression of the disorder is still unknown. It is presently thought that many genes go into the expression or nonexpression of any human characteristic, such as a facial feature or a certain aspect of mental health. Research done on identical twins has provided strong support for a genetic component in the development of schizophrenia. For instance, the average person in the United States has a 1% chance of developing schizophrenia, while the identical twin of a person diagnosed with schizophrenia has a 50% chance, even if he or she has been reared by adoptive parents. Other researchers who are studying schizophrenia have found that during embryonic development, there are nerve cells that do not migrate to their proper position in the brain. On the other hand, none of the genetic or embryological findings can account for the rare but occasional recoveries from schizophrenia, indicating that biology alone does not determine the occurrence of mental disorders.

Dementias are also noted to run in families, but most of these disorders cannot be predicted with any certainty for the following generation. Only one disorder, Huntington's chorea, which is really a movement disorder with a psychiatric component, appears to be determined by a single gene. **Dementia** of the Alzheimer's type does seem to have familial pattern, but again, the expression of the disease in any specific individual is not predictable at this time. Scientists believe that similar statements can be made for many mental disorders that run in families, such as **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD), depression, **anxiety**, and **panic disorder**. The roles of the environment and learn-

ing behavior in the ultimate expression of genetically predisposed individuals are, however, undisputed.

**NEUROTRANSMITTER-RELATED CHEMICAL IMBALANCES.** This theory regarding the origin of mental disorders has become the foundation of most psychiatric treatment today. It has legitimated psychiatry by returning it to the world of biological medicine. Diabetes may offer a helpful analogy. In diabetes, a chemical necessary to health (insulin) is missing and can be replaced, essentially restoring the patient's health. In mental illness, the neurotransmitters in the brain may be present in insufficient amounts. These chemicals or transmitters allow communication between nerve cells; as a result, they coordinate information processing throughout the brain. As a person reads, for example, chemical levels rise and fall in response to the letters; the meaning they have; the reader's eye movements, thoughts, reflections and associations; and to the feelings the reader may have while reading. Thus, a person's brain chemistry is changed by everything that influences him or her, whether internally or externally. While the discovery of certain neurotransmitters and their roles in mental disorders has led in turn to the discovery of effective medications to treat these disorders, it has also resulted in the unfortunate notion that medication is the only method of treatment that is helpful.

Major neurotransmitters identified thus far include acetylcholine, dopamine, epinephrine, norepinephrine, histamine, and serotonin. Serotonin and norepinephrine are most highly implicated in depression, panic disorder and anxiety, as well as OCD. Most of the medications found effective for these disorders are drugs that increase the availability of serotonin and norepinephrine (such as selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors, or **SSRIs**). In particular, depression, panic disorder, **anxiety disorders**, and OCD have responded strongly to medications that increase serotonin levels. On the other hand, medications that block the effects of dopamine in certain parts of the brain are effective in controlling auditory and visual hallucinations as well as paranoia in patients with psychotic disorders.

**STRESS-RELATED FACTORS.** **Stress** is something everyone in modern society seems to understand. There are two basic kinds of stress: inner stress from previous traumas or wounds that affect one's present life; and outer stress, or the environmental issues that complicate life on a daily basis, such as work or family problems. The interplay of these two forms of stress affects brain chemistry just as it can affect physical health. Numerous studies have shown that when people are chronically stressed in life, they are vulnerable to depression, anxiety, and other disorders. Interestingly, 70% of the adults in one

recent European war situation were found to have depression, which is a normal human response to relentless stress. Researchers presently think that the mechanism that triggers this depression is the depletion of certain neurotransmitters, particularly serotonin and norepinephrine, which may lead to other biochemical imbalances. For instance, most people diagnosed with schizophrenia have their first psychotic episode during such stressful situations as leaving home for college or military service.

Genetic factors may add to a person's susceptibility to mental illness by lowering the body's production of neurotransmitters during difficult life transitions. The same combination of circumstances might affect the development of high blood pressure, diabetes, or ulcers in some families.

**MEDICAL CONDITIONS.** It is important to note that bacterial and viral infections, metabolic illnesses, medications and street drugs can all affect a person's mental status. Insults (injuries) to the brain can cause a person to be disoriented, speak incoherently, have difficulty concentrating, hallucinate, or even act out violently. When clinicians see disorientation and an abrupt change in a person's level of alertness, they refer to the altered mental state as **delirium**. Delirium is considered a medical emergency because the underlying cause must be identified and treated as quickly as possible. The exact way in which infectious disease and chemical agents change human mental function is unclear, and thus may not be visible on **imaging studies**.

The elderly are particularly vulnerable to changes in mental status resulting from apparently minor changes in body chemistry. Fever, dehydration, electrolyte imbalances, and even aspirin or antibiotics can all have an abrupt effect on the mental status of the elderly. Older people are susceptible simply because older brain tissue is more sensitive to the slightest change in metabolism or the presence of toxins.

Certain diseases have severe effects on the brain. An example is HIV/AIDS, in which approximately 70% of patients suffering from full-blown AIDS develop dementia, depression, or delirium. Similarly, at least 50% of patients with multiple sclerosis develop depression from the effects of the disease on brain tissues—not simply as a reaction to knowing that they have MS. Any infectious disease that causes inflammation inside the skull, such as meningitis or encephalitis, will usually result in some change in mental status; fortunately, these changes are usually completely reversible.

Recently, there has been an exciting development involving infectious disease and OCD as exemplified by "PANDAS," the acronym for Pediatric Autoimmune

Neuropsychiatric Disorder Associated with Group A Streptococcus. Group A Streptococcus is an autoimmune disorder thought to cause OCD symptoms (neuropsychiatric symptoms) in children with streptococcal infection of the tonsils and pharynx (more commonly known as strep throat). The OCD symptoms resolve when the infection is treated with antibiotics. The neuropsychiatric symptoms are believed to result from an autoimmune reaction, meaning that antibodies made to fight the bacteria mistakenly attack part of the brain, resulting in symptoms of OCD. The discovery of this connection between a streptococcal infection and an autoimmune reaction may have great importance for treating certain mental illnesses in the future, since links between the onset of psychiatric disorders and physical infections have been observed from time to time.

Disorders of metabolism can certainly mimic depression, anxiety and sometimes, even psychosis. Overproduction of thyroid hormone (thyrotoxicosis) can cause agitation, anxiety, mania and even psychosis; while a lack of thyroid hormone produces symptoms of depression and is routinely checked in patients with depression of recent onset. Imbalances in glucose (sugar) management can result in mood swings and should always be evaluated. Less commonly, malfunctions of the adrenal glands can profoundly affect a person's energy level and mental activity. The role of estrogen in postmenopausal depression has been intensively studied in recent years, but the findings remain inconclusive.

**NEUROPATHOLOGY.** Neuropathology refers to damage to the brain tissue itself that results in mental illness. Dementias are placed in this category, since the brains of persons diagnosed with dementia exhibit microscopic changes in tissue structure when viewed under a microscope. These changes may ultimately appear on tests such as a CAT scan of the brain. Larger changes are seen with strokes, which result when the blood supply is cut off to a specific area of the brain and causes localized damage. In these instances, a person may have altered speech patterns but retain the ability to think clearly, or vice versa. The losses are somewhat predictable and specific, based on the area of the brain that was affected and the extent of oxygen starvation of the tissue in that region.

Brain tumors and accidental injuries are random in their effects, and the deficits are usually less predictable. Each case must be examined individually. As with strokes, however, the location of the injury or tumor will determine the resulting mental status changes or deficits.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness.

**Delirium tremens**—Serious alcohol withdrawal symptoms that must be treated in a hospital and that may include shaking, delirium, and hallucinations.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to

deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Electrolytes**—Substances or elements that dissociate into electrically charged particles (ions) when dissolved in the blood. The electrolytes in human blood include potassium, magnesium, and chloride.

**Etiology**—The cause or origin of a disease or disorder. The word is also used to refer to the study of the causes of disease.

**Flashback**—The re-emergence of a traumatic memory as a vivid recollection of sounds, images, and sensations associated with the trauma. The person having the flashback typically feels as if he or she is reliving the event.

Pancreatic and certain colon cancers are particularly interesting for psychiatrists. For reasons that are unknown as of 2002, these tumors are frequently accompanied by depression even though they are located in organs that are far removed from the brain. More research is needed on the relationship between mood disorders and certain illnesses; it is possible that the tumor releases compounds into the bloodstream that have depressive effects.

**NUTRITIONAL FACTORS.** There is no doubt that poor nutrition leads to mental imbalances. While few people in the United States are truly starving or completely depleted nutritionally, instances of mental disorders related to malnutrition still occur in this country. The B vitamins are essential for mental clarity and stability. Insufficient amounts of the B vitamins, which include thiamin, nicotinamide, pyridoxine, and B<sub>6</sub>, can result in confusion, irritability, **insomnia**, depression, and in extreme cases, psychosis. The body does not store these vitamins, so one should monitor one's daily intake to ensure a sufficient supply. Tryptophan is an amino acid and supplement that is a building block for serotonin, the neurotransmitter that has been found to be essential in treating depression, anxiety, panic, and OCD, among others. Tryptophan is so important nutri-

tionally that studies have shown that its absence in the diet will result in depression even when the person is taking a prescription antidepressant to increase the availability of serotonin.

### *Psychological/interpersonal theories*

**PSYCHODYNAMIC THEORIES.** Freud certainly opened the doors for humans to understand themselves in terms of psychology, or the notion that how one thinks and feels affects one's view of the world. Freud also found that simple conversation could help some very sick people out of depressions and other mental disorders. His work essentially demonstrated that extreme inner conflicts can become a source of mental illness. These extreme internal conflicts can occur, for instance, when one loves another deeply but also feels that that person is hurting them or limiting their development in some way. If the person who is causing pain or hindering growth is a parent or other powerful figure, these intense feelings can be hidden away or repressed. Also, a lack of honesty about reality can lead to any number of illnesses. For instance, feelings of anger and powerlessness, if unrecognized, may place the person at risk for developing aggressive behaviors or depression if insights and appropriate

**Fugue state**—A form of amnesia in which the person appears to be conscious and to make rational decisions, but upon recovery, the period is not remembered. Fugue states represent one type of reaction to traumatic experiences.

**Hallucination**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Humor**—In ancient medicine, one of four body fluids (blood, phlegm, yellow bile, and black bile) that were thought to determine a person’s basic constitution and personality.

**Insult**—In medicine, an injury or trauma to the brain or other part of the body.

**Metabolism**—The group of biochemical processes within the body that release energy in support of life.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

coping skills are not gained. These psychological disharmonies, if ignored, can lead to dis-ease if they are sufficiently intense or associated with central relationships in the person’s life.

Freud’s view of psychological conflicts as rooted in sexual repression was questioned by Jung, a **psychiatrist** and protégé of Freud, who felt that people’s lives were affected by deep spiritual forces. Jung’s work centered on psychological imbalances stemming from spiritual distress. There were other theorists after Freud, such as Adler, who regarded power as the central motivating force of human personality, or Melanie Klein, who emphasized the significance of envy.

Since the Second World War, behavioral and cognitive theories have emphasized the role of learning in the development of mental disorders. Children growing up in an abusive home, for example, may be “rewarded” by not getting beaten if they learn to be quiet and internalize everything. This internalized state may be a precursor of full-blown depression in later years. Unconscious assumptions based on early experiences may spill over into other situations later in life. As another example, children may learn to be “good” for their parents or society by taking on careers they don’t

**Physiology**—The branch of medicine concerned with biological processes or functions in the human body or any of its parts.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Thyrotoxicosis**—A disease characterized by an enlarged thyroid gland and speeded-up body metabolism caused by excessive thyroid secretion. It is also known as Graves’ disease.

**Tryptophan**—An essential amino acid released from proteins during the process of digestion. Tryptophan is an important ingredient in the body’s production of serotonin.

like or belief systems that don’t fit them, all for approval by the perceived higher authority.

Cognitive approaches to therapy maintain that people construct their view of the world from beliefs and feelings based on deeper assumptions about their own competencies. Depression, for instance, would be seen as a spiral downward into negative “self-talk” and feelings of inadequacy. Re-examining these negative assumptions then breaks the cycle based on erroneous thinking (cognition) which is causing the depression, anxiety, or aberrant behavior. Studies have shown that three months of cognitive therapy is as effective as medication in the treatment of depression. This finding shows clearly that talk therapy does change the chemistry of the brain.

**TRAUMA-RELATED FACTORS.** Psychological traumas refer to events that are outside the experience of everyday life, although the exact definition of a traumatic experience may vary from person to person, country to country, and century to century. Traumas in early life, such as sexual or physical **abuse**, can lead to mood disorders and contribute to the development of **personality disorders**. Horrendous early traumas involving torture of a child, other people, or animals, may result

in **dissociative identity disorder**, formerly called multiple personality disorder. **Dissociation** is a self-protective mechanism for separating conscious awareness from repeated traumas. It has sometimes been described as self-hypnosis, but most clinicians believe that it is not under the patient's control, at least initially.

In later life, such severe traumas as war, rape, natural disasters, or any similar event, can lead to psychiatric difficulties. **Post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD) is a well-known disorder that affects war veterans. Extreme trauma causes the brain to record impressions in a way that is different from ordinary formation of memories. These disjointed impressions may re-emerge as flashbacks months or years after the traumatic experience. Chronic and repetitive trauma, exemplified by intermittent abuse or hostage situations, can lead to a chronic form of PTSD as well.

A subcategory of psychiatric disorders that occur in response to traumatic shock are termed fugue states. Fugue states are poorly understood, but can be described as conditions of total memory loss after witnessing an overwhelmingly horrible accident or atrocity. These states of memory loss can last from minutes to years.

**SOCIOCULTURAL FACTORS.** Some mental disorders are influenced by social values and social interactions shaped by those values. **Anorexia nervosa**, bulimia, and **body dysmorphic disorder** are the most commonly used examples of mental illnesses in this category. With the increased visibility of unnaturally slender women in modern society (as seen everywhere in advertising, television shows, movies, and celebrity fan magazines) doctors have seen a tremendous rise in the occurrence of eating disorders. "You can never be too thin or too rich," a saying attributed to the Duchess of Windsor, is a phrase that has many women, and some men, monitoring their every ounce of food intake. The core of the illness is a lack of self-esteem combined with feelings that one's world is out of control. Some clinicians add fear of sexual maturation to this list of psychological causes of eating disorders. The common denominator is that these patients apparently believe they can control their world by controlling their food intake. Although neurotransmitter deficits have been found in patients with bulimia, whose vomiting may actually change their body chemistry, the desire to be thin is the conscious motivating force.

Modern society also values activity over rest, doing over being, thinking over feeling, resulting in many people becoming slaves to work and productivity, and having little respect for their inner life. Many cases of mild stress-related disorders run the risk of

developing into full-blown generalized anxiety, panic, and **depressive disorders**. Mental health requires a reasonable balance between work and activity on the one hand and periods of rest and relaxation on the other.

**ALCOHOL AND SUBSTANCE ABUSE.** Alcohol is a central nervous system depressant. It plays a prominent role in the development of at least depression and is often involved in other mental disorders. In addition, persons who abuse alcohol are at increased risk of mental disorders related to nutritional deficiencies. A lack of thiamin, a B-vitamin, can result in permanent brain damage in the form of severe dementia even at an early age. Persons in withdrawal from alcohol are also at risk for delirium tremens, a serious condition that can result in cardiovascular shock and death.

Street drugs are well known for their effects on young people's mood and behavior. Permanent brain damage may result from the use of some "designer" drugs. One example is "Ecstasy," which can cause permanent memory loss and severe depression that responds only slowly to treatment. Street drugs must always be considered as a possible factor in the sudden onset of a mental illness in a young person. Moreover, drugs may precipitate a first psychotic episode in a person with a genetic predisposition to schizophrenia. In this case, the drug is the stressor that reveals the person's dormant susceptibility to the disorder.

## Current theory and future directions

### *The biopsychosocial model of mental illness*

All of the above factors are most succinctly summarized in terms of the biopsychosocial model of mental illness. Biological contributions, thoughts and perceptions, social pressures, and environmental stressors, the presence or absence of nurturing and consistency of love, core values, and self-worth are just a few of the things which contribute to making up the psychological uniqueness of every human being on the planet. In addition to the above, researchers are actively examining the role of spirituality in mental health and recovery. No one factor can be said to be the sole cause of mental illness; rather, disorders result from a complex set of forces that act upon each person as an individual. Finding the various elements that contributed to the onset of an illness requires considerable patience from the patient, his or her family, and health workers. Identifying all factors, if possible, provides the best road map for the healing process.

### New directions

In the future, scientists will certainly modify and expand our thought-models about the mind and brain. For example, a new treatment called **transcranial magnetic stimulation** (TMS) is being evaluated as an alternative to electric shock therapy. TMS uses powerful magnets instead of electricity, and is delivered to specific areas of the brain. Hence, in the future scientists must integrate some of the electromagnetic aspects of nature into the mind-brain puzzle. In addition, the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) is researching alternative healing modalities. Prominent among them is **acupuncture**, which has been used to treat depression, anxiety and panic disorder. Other alternative treatments being studied include the effects of prayer, **meditation**, creative writing, and **yoga**.

Deeper exploration of the human condition is both inevitable and desirable. Perhaps researchers will find better answers by asking the question, "What makes people healthy?" instead of simply looking at what makes us sick. In the end, researchers may find proof of some of the ancient truths taught by spiritual teachers from all traditions; and that the physical changes seen with human eyes or under a microscope are really just the symptoms of and not the causes of imbalances.

*See also* Genetic factors and mental disorders; Psychoanalysis.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Kaplan, Harold I., and Benjamin J. Sadock. *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences-Clinical Psychiatry*. Eighth edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

Beth A. Bollinger, M.D.

## Oxazepam

### Definition

Oxazepam is a member of a family of tranquilizers known as **benzodiazepines**. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Serax and in Canada under the brand name Ox-Pam. Generic forms of oxazepam are also available.

### Purpose

Oxazepam is prescribed to treat feelings of tension and **anxiety**. It is also used to calm patients who are suffering from the symptoms of alcohol withdrawal.

### Description

Oxazepam is one of several drugs in the class called benzodiazepines. Oxazepam slows down certain **brain** functions by blocking specific chemicals that transmit messages among the nerve cells in the brain.

### Recommended dosage

The typical starting dose for adults ranges from 5–15 mg per day. The dosage is sometimes increased by the doctor, but 80 mg is usually the maximum amount prescribed per day. The amount used each day is typically divided into at least two doses. Oxazepam is taken by mouth, and is available in tablets and capsules. It can be taken with food if the patient is having side effects in the digestive tract.

Oxazepam is not FDA-approved for use in children under six years. However, often in clinical practice, the medication is used with close physician supervision. The typical starting dose for children aged 2–16 years is 5 mg. The doctor may increase this dose if necessary. Typically, the dose does not exceed 40 mg per day, and is given in divided doses. Children under two years of age should receive a dose based on body weight. The doctor must determine whether the child needs the drug as well as the dosage.

### Precautions

The doctor should monitor the patient at regular intervals to ensure that the medicine is not causing troublesome side effects. Monitoring the patient is particularly important if the drug is being taken over a long period of time. Patients should not stop taking oxazepam suddenly, especially if they are taking large doses. The dose should be tapered (gradually decreased), and then stopped. Suddenly discontinuing oxazepam may cause a rebound effect. In a few cases patients have reported serious withdrawal symptoms when they stopped taking oxazepam, including nausea, vomiting, muscle cramps, and unusual irritability.

Oxazepam should be given with great care to elderly patients; to people who are significantly disabled; and to people with a history of liver or kidney disease, drug **abuse**, or breathing problems. Pregnant women should not take oxazepam because of the risk of birth defects in the baby. Likewise, nursing mothers should not use oxazepam while they breast-feed. Oxazepam and other

## KEY TERMS

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Hallucination**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Myasthenia gravis**—A disease characterized by weakness of the muscles caused by an autoimmune reaction.

**Paranoid**—A mental attitude characterized by unjustified or excessive distrust of other people, usually combined with anger.

**Rebound effect**—A physical reaction to stopping a medication characterized by the reappearance of the symptom(s) that the medication was given to suppress. For example, people who stop taking oxazepam may experience rebound excitability and sleeping problems.

**Sleep apnea**—Temporary stoppage of breathing during sleep that occurs often enough to significantly disrupt the patient’s sleeping pattern.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

benzodiazepines should never be combined with alcohol or other drugs that depress (lower the activity of) the central nervous system. Oxazepam and other benzodiazepines should be prescribed and used very carefully if they are given for long-term treatment because they are habit-forming. Patients who have been diagnosed with glaucoma or serious psychological disorders should not receive oxazepam. Patients who have a history of alcohol abuse, drug abuse, brain disease, mental **depression**, mental illness, sleep apnea, or myasthenia gravis should tell their doctor about their condition. Similarly, a woman who becomes pregnant while she is taking the drug should tell her doctor at once.

### Side effects

Rare but serious side effects associated with the use of oxazepam include: anxiety, mental depression,

reduced memory, and confusion. Even more rare are disorientation, **delusions**, **seizures**, unusually low blood pressure, sleeping difficulties, muscle weakness, and changes in behavior.

Less serious but more common side effects include: difficulty talking, dizziness, clumsiness, and drowsiness. Less common but not particularly serious side effects include dry mouth, general weakness, headache, mild abdominal pain, constipation, diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting.

When the patient stops taking oxazepam, nervousness, irritability, and sleeping problems are common withdrawal side effects. Less common withdrawal side effects can include confusion, hearing problems, stomach cramps, increased sweating, mental depression, nausea, and vomiting. Rare withdrawal side effects can include seizures, **hallucinations**, and paranoid ideas.

### Interactions

Patients should always inform every health professional that they deal with—doctors, pharmacists, nurses, dentists, and others—about every medication they take. Oxazepam, alcohol, and other medications that cause drowsiness can intensify one another’s effects. Some medications that are used to treat viral infections, fungal infections, high blood pressure, and some heart rhythm problems can increase the effects of oxazepam.

Heavy smoking decreases the effectiveness of oxazepam.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Consumer Reports Staff, eds. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*. 2002 ed. Denver, CO: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.

Ellsworth, Allan J. and others. *Mosby’s Medical Drug Reference*. 2001-2002. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2001.

Hardman, Joel G., Lee E. Limbird, ed. *Goodman & Gilman’s The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

Mosby’s GenRx Staff. *Mosby’s GenRx*. 9th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 1999.

Venes, Donald, and others, eds. *Taber’s Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*. 19th ed. Philadelphia, PA: F. A. Davis, 2001.

Mark Mitchell, M.D.

# P

## Pain disorder

### Definition

Pain disorder is one of several somatoform disorders described in the revised, fourth edition of the mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (known as *DSM-IV-TR*). The term "somatoform" means that symptoms are physical but are not entirely understood as a consequence of a general medical condition or as a direct effects of a substance, such as a drug. Pain in one or more anatomical sites is the predominant complaint and is severe enough to require medical or therapeutic intervention. Pain disorder is classified as a mental disorder because psychological factors play an important role in the onset, severity, worsening, or maintenance of pain.

Earlier names for this disorder include psychogenic pain disorder and somatoform pain disorder. There is some overlap in the meaning of these terms, but views regarding the nature of pain have been changing and they are, therefore, not equivalent diagnostic categories. Sometimes pain disorder is referred to as somatization, but this is an imprecise term and is easily confused with **somatization disorder**. There is a current discussion about recategorizing somatoform or somatization-spectrum disorders, including pain disorder, in the in-development *DSM-V*. This movement centers on the complexity of the diagnostic criteria for some of the disorders and the tendency for patients to perceive some of the terms as socially stigmatizing.

### Description

In 1994, the International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) defined pain as an unpleasant sensory or emotional experience arising from real or probable tissue damage. In other words, the perception of pain is, in part, a psychological response to noxious

stimuli. This definition addresses the complex nature of pain and moves away from the earlier dualistic idea that pain is either psychogenic (of mental origin) or somatogenic (of physical origin). The contemporary view characterizes pain as multidimensional; the central nervous system, emotions, cognitions (thoughts), and beliefs are simultaneously involved.

When a patient's primary complaint is the experience of pain and when impairment at home, work, or school causes significant distress, a diagnosis of pain disorder may be warranted. The diagnosis is further differentiated by subtype; subtype is assigned depending on whether or not pain primarily is accounted for by psychological factors or in combination with a general medical condition, and whether the pain is acute (less than six months) or chronic (six months or more). The classification of pain states is important since the effectiveness of treatment depends on the aptness of the diagnosis of pain disorder and its type.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Common sites of pain include the back (especially lower back), the head, abdomen, and chest. Causes of pain vary depending on the site; however, in pain disorder, the severity or duration of pain or the degree of associated disability is unexplained by observed medical or psychological problems.

The prevailing biopsychosocial model of mental disorders suggests that multiple causes of varying kinds may explain pain disorder, especially when the pain is chronic. There are four domains of interest:

- The underlying organic problem or medical condition, if there is one. For example, fibromyalgia (a pain syndrome involving fibromuscular tissue), skeletal damage, pathology of an internal organ, migraine headache, and peptic ulcer all have characteristic patterns of pain and a particular set of causes.

- The experience of pain. The severity, duration, and pattern of pain are important determinants of distress. Uncontrolled or inadequately managed pain is a significant stressor.
- Functional impairment and disability. Pain is exacerbated by loss of meaningful activities or social relationships. Disruption or loss may lead to isolation and resentment or anger, which further increases pain.
- Emotional distress. Depression and anxiety are the most common correlates of pain, especially when the person suffering feels that the pain is unmanageable, or that the future only holds more severe pain and more losses.

There are multiple causes of pain disorder. A therapist or team of health professionals will weigh the relative causal contributions, assign priorities for therapeutic intervention, and address the several domains in a multimodal fashion. For example, the design of a treatment plan in a pain clinic may involve a physician, psychotherapist, occupational therapist, physical therapist, anesthesiologist, **psychologist**, and nutritionist.

### Symptoms

Symptoms vary depending on the site of pain and are treated medically. However, there are common symptoms associated with pain disorder regardless of the site:

- negative or distorted cognition, such as feeling helpless or hopeless with respect to pain and its management
- inactivity, passivity, and/or disability
- increased pain requiring clinical intervention
- insomnia and fatigue
- disrupted social relationships at home, work, or school
- depression and/or anxiety

### Demographics

There is very little information regarding rates of pain disorder. A major difficulty is that the diagnostic categories for psychogenic pain disorder in *DSM-III*, somatoform pain disorder in *DSM-III-R*, and pain disorder in *DSM-IV* and *DSM-IV-TR* are not equivalent. Furthermore, many criticize the somatoform disorder group (which includes pain disorder) as being an aggregate of disorders that are not truly distinct from one another. This lack of distinctiveness suggests to some researchers that a more appropriate system of classification should be dimensional rather than categorical. In other words, if shared dimensions or characteristics of the several somatoform disorders exist, differences among disorders should be a matter

of degree along the possible dimensions. The critics of the *DSM* categorical approach would prefer a dimensional or multiaxial system because when classification systems are improved, the reliability and validity of measures assessing disorder improve, and better estimates of rates are possible.

Nevertheless, some researchers find the *DSM-IV* category for pain disorder useful. For example, in one study of psychiatric pain clinic outpatients, 79% met the criteria for pain disorder of the subtype where psychological factors and a general medical condition co-exist; 9% of the outpatients met the criteria for pain disorder with psychological factors and no medical condition. In another study of patients at a psychiatric clinic, 38% of the patients at admission and 18% of the outpatients reported significant pain. In comparison, 51% in a study of general medical and surgical inpatients met the criteria for pain disorder.

Currently, there are no reliable estimates for rates of pain disorder in the general population.

### Diagnosis

A **psychiatrist** or mental health professional arrives at the diagnosis of pain disorder after considering several questions. An important preliminary question is whether the pain is entirely accounted for by a general medical condition. If so, the diagnosis of pain disorder is ruled out; and if not, the psychiatrist considers whether the pain is feigned. If the psychiatrist believes the patient is pretending to be in pain, the patient is diagnosed as **malingering** for external rewards, such as seeking mood-altering drugs, or as having a **factitious disorder** that reflects the patient's need to adopt a sick role. Neither malingering nor factitious disorder is in the somatoform group.

The psychiatrist may employ a variety of methods to assess the severity of pain and the contribution of psychological factors to the experience of pain. These include structured interviews (where the questions asked are standardized), open or unstructured interviews, numerical rating scales, visual analog scales (where the patient makes a mark along a line to indicate severity of pain, or if the patient is a child, or is illiterate, selects a face to represent the degree of pain), and instruments such as the McGill Pain Questionnaire or the West Haven–Yale Multidimensional Pain Inventory.

There are several conditions that rule out a diagnosis of pain disorder:

- Dyspareunia. The patient's primary complaint relates to the experience of painful sexual intercourse.

- Somatization disorder. The patient has a long history of pain that began prior to age 30 and involves the gastrointestinal, reproductive, and nervous systems.
- Conversion disorder. In addition to pain, there are other symptoms associated with motor or sensory dysfunction.
- Mood, anxiety, or psychotic disorder. Any one of these more fully accounts for the pain. This last exclusion rests upon a very subjective opinion. Subjectivity reduces inter-rater reliability and is one of the points raised by critics of the *DSM* category for pain disorder.

A final consideration is whether the pain is acute or chronic.

## Treatments

Depending on whether the pain is acute or chronic, management may involve one or more of the following: pharmacological treatment (medication); **psychotherapy** (individual or group); family, behavioral, physical, hypnosis, and/or occupational therapy. If the pain is acute, the primary goal is to relieve the pain. Customary agents are acetaminophen or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs); if opioid analgesics are prescribed, they often are combined with NSAIDs so that the dosage of **opioids** may be reduced. Psychotherapy is less important for the treatment of acute pain as compared to **chronic pain** disorder. In comparison, treatment of chronic pain disorder usually requires some sort of psychotherapy in combination with medication.

### Antidepressants

Tricyclic **antidepressants** (TCAs) reduce pain, improve sleep, and strengthen the effects of opioids (such as codeine and oxycodone), as well as moderate depression. Relief of pain may occur in a few days while lessening of depression may take several weeks. Usually, TCAs for pain are prescribed at doses 33% to 50% lower than when prescribed for depression. TCAs are particularly effective for neuropathic pain, headache, facial pain, fibromyalgia, and arthritis.

### Treatment of sleep dysfunction

Pain and depression diminish the restorative quality of sleep. When the cycle of pain, depression, insomnia, and fatigue is established, it tends to be self-perpetuating. Treatment may include antidepressants, relaxation training, and education regarding good sleep hygiene.

## Cognitive-behavioral therapy

Many people who suffer chronic pain experience isolation, distress, frustration, and a loss of confidence regarding their ability to cope; subsequently, they may adopt a passive, helpless style of problem solving. The goal of **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) is to restore a sense of self-efficacy by educating patients about the pain-and-tension cycle, by teaching them how to actively manage pain and distress, and by informing them about the therapeutic effects of their medications. CBT is time-limited, structured, and goal-oriented.

Some tension-reducing techniques include progressive muscle relaxation, visual imagery, hypnosis, and **biofeedback**. Pain diaries are useful for describing daily patterns of pain and for helping the patient identify activities, emotions, and thoughts that alleviate or worsen pain. Diaries also are useful in evaluating the effectiveness of medication. Patients may be taught pacing techniques or scheduling strategies to restore and maintain meaningful activities.

The cognitive aspect of CBT is based on cognitive-social learning theory. The focus is on helping the patient to restructure his or her ideas about the nature of pain and the possibility of effective self-management. In particular, the patient is taught to identify and then modify negative or distorted thought patterns of helplessness and hopelessness.

## Operant conditioning

The principles of operant conditioning are taught to the patient and family members so that activity and non-pain behaviors are reinforced or encouraged. The goal is to eliminate pain behaviors, such as passivity, inactivity, and over-reliance on medication.

## Other Treatments

Other treatments effective in the management of pain include **acupuncture**, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), trigger point injections, massage, nerve blocks, surgical ablation (removal of a part or pathway), **meditation**, exercise, **yoga**, music and art therapy.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for total remission of symptoms is good for acute pain disorder and not as promising for chronic pain disorder. The typical pattern for chronic pain entails occasional flare-ups alternating with periods of low to moderate pain. The prognosis for remission of symptoms is better when patients are able to

## KEY TERMS

**Biopsychosocial model**—A hypothetical explanation for why something occurs that includes biological, psychological, and social causes or correlates.

**Inter-rater reliability**—The degree to which judgments about a person are consistent among raters or diagnosticians.

**Multiaxial**—Refers to a type of classification system that involves numeric measurement along more than one dimension and is not based on assignment to mutually exclusive categories.

**Multimodal**—Involving several types of therapeutic interventions such as heat or ice packs, electrical stimulation, ultrasound; sometimes refers to a mix of physical and psychological therapies.

**Neuropathic**—Relating to neural damage.

**Painstates**—Refers to the four-way classification of pain disorder as being (1) acute with psychological factors, (2) acute with psychological factors and a general medical condition, (3) chronic with psychological factors, and (4) chronic with psychological factors and a general medical condition.

**Somatization**—When mental or emotional distress is expressed physically in a way that disrupts body function.

continue working; conversely, unemployment and the attendant isolation, resentment, and inactivity are correlates of a continuing pain disorder. Additionally, if **reinforcement** of pain behavior is in place (for example, financial compensation for continuing disability, an overly solicitous spouse, **abuse** of addictive drugs), remission is less likely.

The results of outcome studies comparing pain disorder treatments point to cognitive-behavioral therapy in conjunction with antidepressants as the most continually effective regimen. However, people in chronic pain may respond better to other treatments and it is in keeping with the goal of active self-management for the patient and health professional(s) to find an individualized mix of effective coping strategies.

### Prevention

Pain disorder may be prevented by early intervention, i.e., at the onset of pain or in the early stages of recurring pain. When pain becomes chronic, it is especially important to find help or learn about and imple-

ment strategies to manage the distress before inactivity and hopelessness develop. Most patients in pain first contact their primary care physician who may make a referral to a mental health professional or pain clinic. Many physicians will reassure the patient that a referral for psychological help is not stigmatizing, does not in any way minimize the experience of pain or the medical condition, and does not imply that the physician believes the pain is imaginary. On the contrary, the accepted IASP definition of pain fully recognizes that all pain is, in part, an emotional response to actual damage or to the threat of damage.

*See also* Abuse; Assessment and diagnosis; Creative therapies; Personality disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Martin, Ronald L., and Sean H. Yutzy. "Somatoform Disorders." *Psychiatry*. Eds. Allan Tasman, Jerald Kay, and Jeffrey A. Lieberman. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.
- Masheb, Robin M., and Robert D. Kerns. "Pain Disorder." *Effective Brief Therapies: A Clinician's Guide*. Eds. Michael Hersen and Maryka Biaggio. San Diego: Academic Press, 2000.
- Simon, Gregory E. "Management of Somatoform and Factitious Disorders." *A Guide to Treatments that Work*. Eds. Peter E. Nathan and Jack M. Gorman. New York: Oxford University Press, 1998.

#### PERIODICALS

- King, Steven. "The Classification and Assessment of Pain." *International Review of Psychiatry* 12.2 (2000): 86–90.
- Kroenke, Kurt. "Physical symptom disorder: a simpler diagnostic category for somatization-spectrum conditions." *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* 60(2006): 335–9.
- Merskey, Harold. "Pain, Psychogenesis, and Psychiatric Diagnosis." *International Review of Psychiatry* 12.2 (2000): 99–102.
- Sunil, Verma, and Rollin M. Gallagher. "Evaluating and Treating Co-morbid Pain and Depression." *International Review of Psychiatry* 12.2 (2000): 103–14.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Pain Medicine. 4700 W. Lake, Glenview, IL 60025. (847) 375-4731. <<http://www.painmed.org>>.
- The American Chronic Pain Association. P.O. Box 850, Rocklin, CA 95677. (916) 632-3208. <<http://www.theacpa.org>>.
- American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>

**WEB SITES**

“Somatoform pain disorder.” National Library of Medicine.  
<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000922.htm>.

Tanja Bekhuis, Ph.D.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

Pamelor see **Nortriptyline**

## Panic attack

### Definition

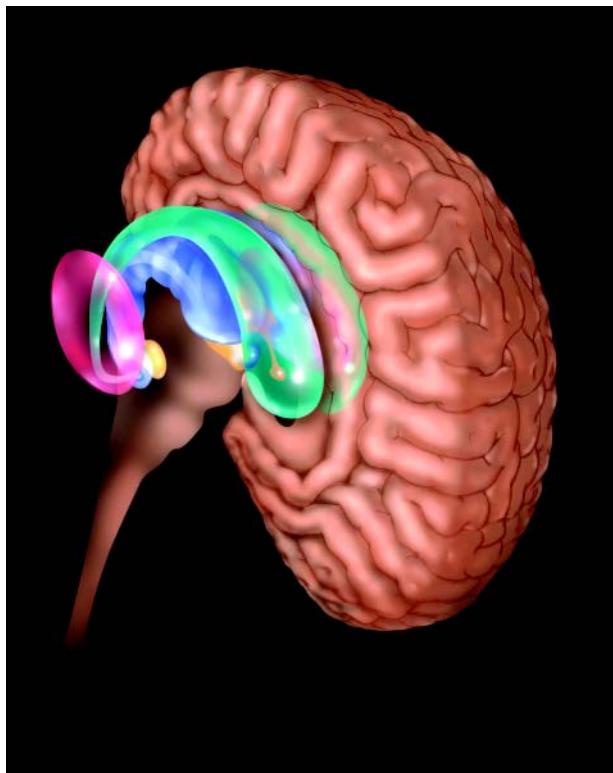
Panic attacks, the hallmark of **panic disorder**, are discrete episodes of intense **anxiety**. Panic attacks can also be experienced by people with **anxiety disorders**, mood disorders, substance-related disorders (e.g., **cocaine addiction**), or general medical conditions (e.g., hyperthyroidism).

### Description

Panic attacks are intense anxiety experiences that occur suddenly over discrete periods of time, and are characterized by intense apprehension or fearfulness in situations where there is no actual danger. Physical symptoms of a panic attack may include palpitations, difficulty breathing, chest pain or discomfort, choking or smothering sensations, excessive perspiration, or dizziness. Panic attacks often include the fear of going crazy, losing control, or dying. Panic attacks triggered by a specific experience are called situational panic attacks, since a certain situation (e.g., public speaking, driving, shopping in a crowded store) initiates the intense anxiety.

Persons affected with panic attacks usually exhibit a broad range of clinical signs and symptoms that include:

- heart palpitations (accelerated heart rate)
- shaking or trembling
- sweating
- shortness of breath or sensation of feeling smothered or choked
- feeling of tingling
- chest discomfort or pain
- nausea or abdominal distress
- feeling dizzy, light headed, unsteady or faint



The amygdala (yellow) plays an important role in panic attacks. (Medical-on\_line/Alamy)

- perceptions of being detached from oneself (depersonalization), or a feeling out of touch with reality (derealization)
- chills or hot flashes
- fear of dying
- fear of going crazy or losing control

A person meets the criteria for a panic attack if the symptoms start abruptly, reach a quick peak (usually within 10 minutes), and if the affected individual has at least four symptoms as listed above. In persons who have less than four symptoms during an attack, the disorder is called a limited symptom attack.

It is typical that affected persons who seek treatment usually have one to two attacks a week and in worse periods may have one daily attacks or several within a week.

As stated, panic attacks can be experienced as a result of stimulant chemical usage, such as cocaine usage. There is evidence to suggest that persons with panic attacks are sensitive to certain chemicals such as caffeine, carbon dioxide, antihistamines, and, in women, progesterone replacement. Exposure to these substances may precipitate an attack.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Rakel, Robert E. *Conn's Current Therapy*. 54th ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 2002.
- Schmidt, Leonard J., and Brooke Warner, (eds). *Panic: Origins, Insight, and Treatment*. Berkeley, CA: North Atlantic Books, 2002.
- Starcevic, Vladan. *Anxiety Disorders in Adults: A Clinical Guide*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- VandenBos, Gary R. (ed). *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Anxiety Disorders Association of America (ADAA). 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852-2624. (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.

Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
Jean Suvan, BS, RDH

## Panic disorder

### Definition

Panic disorder is a condition in which the person with the disorder suffers recurrent panic attacks. Panic attacks are sudden attacks that are not caused by a substance (like caffeine), medication, or by a medical condition (like high blood pressure), and during the attack, the sufferer may experience sensations such as accelerated or irregular heartbeats, shortness of breath, dizziness, or a fear of losing control or "going crazy." The sudden attack builds quickly (usually within 10 minutes) and is almost paralyzing in its severity. When a **diagnosis** of panic disorder is given, the disorder can be considered one of two different types—panic disorder with or without **agoraphobia**.

The handbook for mental health professionals (called the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, or the ***DSM-IV-TR***) classifies both types of panic disorder as **anxiety disorders**.

### Panic disorder without agoraphobia

Panic disorder without agoraphobia is defined by the ***DSM-IV-TR*** as a disorder in which patients are plagued by panic attacks that occur repeatedly and without warning. After these attacks, the affected individual worries for one month or more about having more embarrassing attacks, and may change his or her behavior with regard to these attacks. For example, a patient may fear that he or she has a cardiac condition,

and may quit a job or quit exercising because of the fear. Patients may also worry that they are going to lose control or appear insane to other people. Panic disorder without agoraphobia has a less severe set of symptoms than panic disorder with agoraphobia. Patients without agoraphobia do not become house-bound—they suffer panic attacks but do not have significant interference in their level of function and are still able to accomplish their daily activities.

### Panic disorder with agoraphobia

People who suffer from this kind of panic disorder may experience their agoraphobia in one of two ways. They may experience sudden, unexpected panic attacks that cause them to fear being in a place where help might not be available; or, they may experience sudden panic attacks in specific, known situations, and fear those situations or places that may trigger attacks. In either case, the fear of further panic attacks restricts the affected person's activities. For example, people whose attacks are triggered by being in crowds may avoid shopping malls for fear that they will be in a crowd and have a **panic attack**. Or, a person may experience sudden, debilitating panic attacks without a particular trigger, and, as a result, he or she is afraid to go to a supermarket (or similar place) for fear that a panic attack could occur while there and no one could help.

### Description

Panic disorder can be very difficult to distinguish from other mental illnesses such as major **depression**, other **anxiety** disorders, or medical conditions such as heart attacks. Panic attacks differ from general anxiety in that they are episodes that last for discrete periods of time and the symptoms that people suffer are more intense. Panic attacks have three types: unexpected, situationally bound, and situationally predisposed. The unexpected attacks occur without warning and without a trigger. The situationally bound attacks happen repeatedly when the person is performing some activity, about to do that activity, or even when the person thinks about doing that activity. For example, a person whose panic attacks are triggered by being in crowds can have an attack just by thinking about going to a shopping mall. Situationally predisposed attacks are similar to the situationally bound attacks, except that they do not always occur when the trigger stimulus is encountered. For example, someone who experiences panic attacks while in crowds may sometimes be in crowds and not experience attacks, or may experience attacks in other, non-crowded situations, as well.

Patients who suffer from panic disorder without treatment usually have a diminished quality of life and end up spending excessive money on health care because of frequent visits to emergency rooms and to other medical doctors. However, very effective treatments for panic disorder exist.

Agoraphobia is a fear of being in a place or situation from which escape might be difficult or embarrassing, or in which help may not be available in the case of a panic attack. It is not clear why some people develop agoraphobia and other people do not. Many people may develop their agoraphobia symptoms right after their first attack, but others do not develop agoraphobia until sometimes years after their attacks began.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

**BIOCHEMICAL/PHYSIOLOGICAL CAUSES.** It is extremely difficult to study the **brain** and the underlying causes of psychiatric illness; and understanding the chemistry of the brain is the key to unlocking the mystery of panic disorder. The amygdala is the part of the brain that causes fear and the response to **stress**. It has been implicated as a vital part of anxiety disorders. Sodium lactate, a chemical that the body produces when muscles are fatigued, and carbon dioxide are known to induce panic attacks. These substances are thought to inhibit the release of **neurotransmitters** in the brain, which leads to the panic attacks. One hypothesis is that sodium lactate stimulates the amygdala and causes panic attacks. Another hypothesis is that patients with panic disorder have a hypersensitive internal suffocation alarm. This means that the patient's brain sends the body false signals that not enough oxygen is being received, causing the affected person to increase his or her breathing rate. Panic disorder patients have attacks when their overly sensitive alarm goes off unpredictably. Yohimbine, a drug used to treat male sexual dysfunction, stimulates a part of the brain called the locus ceruleus and induces panic symptoms thus pointing to this area of the brain's involvement in panic disorder. Brain neurotransmitters serotonin and GABA are suspected to be involved in causing the disorder, as well.

**GENETICS.** Genetics also plays a pivotal role in the development of panic disorder. Twin studies have demonstrated that there is a higher concordance in identical versus fraternal twins thus supporting the idea that panic disorders are inherited. Family studies have also demonstrated that panic attacks run in families. Relatives of patients with panic disorder are four to 10 times more likely to develop panic disorder. People who

develop early onset of panic attacks in their mid-20s are more likely to have relatives who have panic disorder. When relatives of patients with panic disorder are exposed to high levels of carbon dioxide, they have panic attacks. Another hypothesis is that patients with panic disorder who develop agoraphobia have a more severe form of the disease. Current efforts to identify a gene for panic disorder have not been successful.

**PERSONAL VARIABLES.** There are several themes in the psychology of panic disorder. Research has shown that patients who develop panic disorder have difficulty with anger. They also have difficulty when their job responsibilities are increased (as in the case of a promotion), and are sensitive to loss and separation. People with this disorder often have difficulty getting along with their parents, whom they see as controlling, critical, and demanding, causing the patients to feel inadequate. Early maternal separation is thought to be an underlying cause of panic disorder.

Panic disorder patients also have a pattern of dependency in their interpersonal relationships. As children, people with panic disorder relied on parents to protect them from fear. As a result, they develop an angry dependence on their parents and fear detaching from them. They constantly feel as though they are trapped.

There is also an association between sexual **abuse** and patients who have panic attacks. Sixty percent of female patients with panic disorder were sexually abused as children. This explains their difficulty with developing trusting relationships.

### Symptoms

**PANIC ATTACK SYMPTOMS.** The *DSM-IV-TR* lists thirteen symptoms to meet the criteria for a diagnosis of panic attack. The affected person must have four or more of these symptoms within ten minutes of the beginning of an attack in order to meet the panic attack criteria:

- bounding or pounding heartbeat or fast heart rate
- sweating
- shaking
- shortness of breath
- feeling of choking
- pains in the chest; many people feel as though they are having a heart attack
- nausea or stomach ache
- feeling dizzy or lightheaded as if he or she is going to pass out
- feeling of being outside of one's body or being detached from reality

- fear that he or she is out of control or crazy
- fear that he or she is going to die
- feeling of tingling or numbness
- chills or hot flashes

#### *Symptoms of panic disorder without agoraphobia*

The *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for panic disorder without agoraphobia include:

- recurrent panic attacks (see above) that occur without warning for one month
- persistent worry that panic attacks will recur
- possible change in behavior because of that fear
- no agoraphobia
- not due to a medical condition or substance abuse
- not due other mental illness like specific phobia, social phobia, obsessive-compulsive disorder, separation anxiety disorder, or post-traumatic stress disorder

#### *Symptoms of panic disorder with agoraphobia*

The *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for panic disorder with agoraphobia are the same as above, but agoraphobia is present. The symptoms of agoraphobia include fear of being in situations that can trigger panic attacks, and avoiding places where attacks have occurred because of the affected person's fear that he or she will not be able to leave, or will not be able to get help. People with this condition may need to have another person accompany them when going to a place that may trigger anxiety attacks. Sometimes this fear can be so severe that the person becomes housebound. This fact is important to consider because 15% of the general population can have one spontaneous panic attack without the recurrence of symptoms.

### Demographics

Factors such as race, gender and socioeconomic status are important factors in the development of panic disorder. An individual has a chance of between one and two percent of developing panic disorder with or without agoraphobia. The symptoms usually begin when the person is in his or her early to mid-twenties. Women are twice as likely as men to develop panic attacks regardless of age. The National Institute of Mental Health Epidemiologic Catchment Area Study (ECA) shows no real significant differences between the races or ethnic groups, although it appears that African-American and Hispanic men between the ages of 40 and 50 have lower rates of panic disorder than white men. Panic disorder patients are at increased risk for major depression and the development of agoraphobia.

According to ECA studies, an individual with panic disorder has a 33% chance of developing agoraphobia. People without panic disorder only have a 5.5% chance of developing agoraphobia. Again, women were more likely to develop agoraphobia than men. Over the course of their lifetime, African Americans were more likely to develop agoraphobia than whites or Hispanics. Agoraphobia is more prevalent among people with less education and lower economic class.

### Diagnosis

#### *Differential diagnosis*

Differential diagnosis is the process of distinguishing one diagnosis from other, similar diagnoses. Panic disorder can be difficult to distinguish from other anxiety disorders such as specific phobia and social phobia. However, in general, specific phobia is cued by a specific trigger or stimulus and social phobia by specific social situations, while the panic attacks of panic disorder are completely uncued and unexpected. In certain cases, it may be difficult to distinguish between certain, situational phobias and panic disorder with agoraphobia, and the mental health professional must use the *DSM* and professional judgment in these cases. Panic attacks that occur during sleep and wake the person up are more characteristic of panic disorder, than are the other disorders that include panic attacks. It can be distinguished from post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), and **generalized anxiety disorder** (GAD) again by what cues the attacks. In PTSD, thinking about the traumatic event can trigger attacks. In obsessive-compulsive disorder, worries about getting dirty can fuel an attack of anxiety. In generalized anxiety disorder, general worries or concerns can lead to the symptoms of panic. However, in panic disorder, a main component is that the affected individual fears recurrent panic attacks.

Panic attacks can often be difficult to distinguish from other physical problems such as hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, seizure disorder, and cardiac disease. If patients are middle aged or older and have other complaints, including dizziness and headaches, their attacks are more likely to be another medical problem and not panic attacks. Panic attacks can also be difficult to distinguish from drug abuse since any drug that stimulates the brain can cause the symptoms. For example, **cocaine**, caffeine, and **amphetamines** can all cause panic attacks. Therefore, a person must be free of all drugs before a diagnosis of panic disorder can be made. Many patients may attempt to self-medicate with alcohol to try to calm down. Withdrawal from alcohol

can lead to worse panic symptoms. The patient may believe that he or she is reducing symptoms while actually exacerbating their panic attacks.

### **Dual diagnosis**

Individuals with panic disorders have a high rate of coexisting depression. Patients who have panic disorder have about a 40–80% chance of developing major depression. In most situations, the panic disorder happens first and the depression comes later. Patients are also at risk for substance abuse difficulties as a result of attempts to stop attacks. These attempts may involve the use of alcohol, illicit or unprescribed **sedatives**, or **benzodiazepines** (medications that slow down the central nervous system, having a calming effect). Patients with panic disorder are not at high risk for **suicide** attempts. A recent Harvard-Brown study showed that people with panic disorder with or without agoraphobia are not at risk for suicide unless they have other conditions such as depression or substance abuse.

### **Psychological measures and diagnostic testing**

Currently there is no diagnostic test for panic disorder. Any patient who has panic attacks should receive a thorough medical examination to rule out any medical condition. Patients should have baseline blood counts and glucose should be measured. Patients with cardiac symptoms need a cardiac workup and should see their primary medical doctor. Patients who have complaints of dizziness should receive a thorough neurological evaluation. There are several psychological inventories that can help the clinician diagnose panic disorder including the **Beck Depression Inventory** (BDI), Beck Anxiety Inventory (BAI), Specific Fear Inventory, Clinical Anxiety Scale (CAS), and the Clinical Global Inventory (CGI).

## **Treatments**

### **Psychological and social interventions**

A psychotherapeutic technique that is critical to the treatment of panic disorder is **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT). Patients are panic-free within six months in about 80–90% of cases. Some people even experience long-term effects after the treatments have been stopped. About half of the patients say that they have rare attacks even two years after treatment has ended.

New studies reveal that the approach to treating panic disorder should have three aspects: the cognitive, the physiological, and the behavioral. The cognitive techniques try to focus on changing the patient's

negative thoughts—for example, “I will die if I don't get help.” Patient education about symptoms is also critical to the treatment of panic attacks. In one physiological approach, patients are taught breathing techniques in an effort to try to help them lower their heart rate and decrease their anxiety. Repeated exposure to physical symptoms associated with the panic disorder is also a part of treatment. The patients cause themselves to hyperventilate in effort to reproduce the panic symptoms. In behavioral approaches, the individual who experiences panic attacks also needs to be exposed to situations that he or she may have previously feared. A patient can also be taken to places associated with agoraphobia with the therapist.

Some patients may benefit from **psychodynamic psychotherapy** and **group therapy**. Psychodynamic **psychotherapy** explores thoughts and ideas of the person's subconscious. It takes a longer time to achieve efficacy than cognitive-behavioral therapy, but it can be just as effective for patients with panic disorder. Group therapy is also just as helpful to some patients as CBT. **Support groups** can also be helpful to some patients. It can be very therapeutic and healing to the individual to discuss their problems with someone who has actually experienced the same symptoms. Patients can learn from each other's coping styles.

### **Medical treatments**

Panic disorder patients have a 50–80% chance of responding to treatment, which attempts to block the symptoms of panic attacks. Treating the agoraphobia symptoms is more challenging. Developing some anti-panic regimens that address all symptoms is important. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to treat panic disorder approves only five classes of drugs. They are:

- benzodiazepines
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), which cause a buildup of serotonin. This buildup is thought to cause the antidepressant effect.
- Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs).
- Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) and reversible MAOIs, which inhibit the breakdown of neurotransmitters in the brain, including dopamine and serotonin.
- Atypical antidepressants, including bupropion (Wellbutrin), mirtazapine (Remeron), Trazodone (Desyrel), and others.

Patients should first be started on a low-dose SSRI and then the dose should be increased slowly. Patients with panic disorder are extremely sensitive to the side effects that many patients experience in the

first weeks of antidepressant therapy. Patients should also have a benzodiazepine, such as **clonazepam** (Klonopin) or **alprazolam** (Xanax), in the first weeks of treatment until the antidepressant becomes therapeutic. Most people need the same dose of antidepressant as patients with major depression. About 60% of patients will have improvement in their symptoms while taking an antidepressant and a benzodiazepine. Patients with mitral valve prolapse may benefit from a beta blocker. Patients who have tried an SSRI, and after six weeks, show no improvement can be switched to another SSRI, benzodiazepine, TCA, MAOI, or **venlafaxine** (Effexor). An SSRI should be stopped if the patient has intolerable side effects such as loss of sexual libido, weight gain or mild form of manic depression. When SSRIs are stopped, it is important that the dosage is gradually tapered because patients can suffer symptoms when it is abruptly withdrawn. These symptoms may include confusion, anxiety and poor sleep.

### *Alternative therapies*

Some alternative therapies for panic disorder are hypnosis, **meditation**, **yoga**, proper nutrition, exercise, and abdominal breathing techniques that foster relaxation and visualization. Visualization is imagining oneself in the stressful situation while relaxed so that coping strategies can be discovered. The herb kava has been studied in trials to treat anxiety attacks and has been found to be effective in some **clinical trials**; but has not been studied intensely enough to determine its benefits and side effects, and has been associated liver toxicity. The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine was going to conduct two research studies of **kava kava** but as of 2002 it has suspended the trials until the FDA has determined whether or not the herbal supplement is safe.

### **Prognosis**

Patients with panic disorder have a poor prognosis particularly if untreated. Patients often **relapse** when they attempt to discontinue treatment. However, if patients are compliant and willing to stay in treatment, then the long-term prognosis is good. According to one study, eight years after treatment has been done, 30–40% of patient are doing better. Only 10–20% of patients do poorly. The patient with panic attacks has a relapsing and remitting course that can be worsened by significant stressors such as the death of the spouse or divorce. Cognitive-behavioral therapy has an 80–90% chance that the patient will benefit six months after treatment. Medications have a

## KEY TERMS

**Agoraphobia**—People with this condition worry that they will not be able to get help or flee a place if they have a panic attack; or refusal to go to places that might trigger a panic attack.

**Amygdala**—An almond-shaped brain structure in the limbic system that is activated in acute stress situations to trigger the emotion of fear.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT)**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**GABA**—Gamma-aminobutyric acid, an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain.

**Hypersensitive internal suffocation alarm**—A sensitive alarm goes off and the affected person's brain sends the body false signals that not enough oxygen is being received, causing an increase in their breathing rate.

**Locus ceruleus**—A part of the brain where the neurotransmitter causes excitation.

**Panic attack**—Specific periods of time when a person has a feeling that s/he is dying or having a heart attack with chest pain, a feeling as though s/he could pass out, and fear that s/he is going insane.

**Panic disorder with agoraphobia**—Repeated panic attacks in which the patient is worried about the attacks enough that the worry restricts their activity.

**Panic disorder without agoraphobia**—Repeated panic attacks without symptoms of agoraphobia.

50–80% efficacy. If patients are committed to staying in treatment, their prognosis is very favorable.

### **Prevention**

Although panic disorder is not totally preventable, individuals with a strong family history of them who are susceptible to panic attacks are encouraged to be aware of the symptoms and get treatment early. **Compliance** with treatment is important to the recovery from panic disorder.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Cox, Brian J. and Stephen Taylor. "Anxiety Disorders Panic and Phobias." In *Oxford Textbook of Psychopathology*, edited by Theodore Millon, Paul H. Blaney, and Roger D. Davis. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.

Sadock, Benjamin J., M.D., and Virginia A. Sadock, M.D., eds. "Anxiety Disorders." In *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. Volume I, 7th edition. Written by Jack Gorman M.D., Laszlo A. Papp, M.D., Glen O. Gabbard, M.D., and others. Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

Swede, Shirley and Seymour Sheppard Jaffe, M.D. *The Panic Attack Recovery Book: Revised and Updated*. 2nd edition, revised. New York: Penquin Putnam Inc, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

Frank, Ellen, Ph.D. and others. "Influence of Panic Agoraphobic Spectrum Symptoms on Treatment Response in Patients With Recurrent Major Depression." *American Journal of Psychiatry* July 2000: 1101–1107.

Kessler, Ronald C. Ph.D. and others. "The Use of Complementary and Alternatives Therapies to Treat Anxiety and Depression in the United States." *American Journal of Psychiatry* February 2001: 289–294.

Milrod, Barbara, M.D., and others. "Open Trial of Psychodynamic Psychotherapy for Panic Disorder: A Pilot Study." *The American Journal of Psychiatry* November 2000: 1878–1880.

Sheikh, Javaid I., M.D., M.B.A., Gregory A. Leskin, Ph.D. and Donald F. Klein, M.D. "Gender Differences in Panic Disorder: Findings From the National Comorbidity Survey." *American Journal of Psychiatry* January 2002: 55–58.

Warsaw, Meredith G., M.S.S. and others. "Suicidal Behavior in Patients With Current or Past Panic Disorder: Five Years of Prospective Data From the Harvard /Brown Anxiety Research Program." *American Journal of Psychiatry* November 2000, 1876–1878.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20005. <[http://www.psych.org/public\\_info/panic.html](http://www.psych.org/public_info/panic.html)>.

Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852. (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.

National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine. P.O. Box 7923, Gaithersburg, MD 20898. (888) 644-6226. <<http://nccam.nih.gov>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Rm.8184, MSC9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/panicmenu.cfm>>.

Open Mind, <<http://open-mind.org/SP>>.

Susan Hobbs, M.D.

## Paranoia

### Definition

Paranoia is a symptom in which an individual feels as if the world is "out to get" him or her. When people are paranoid, they feel as if others are always talking about them behind their backs. Paranoia causes intense feelings of distrust, and can sometimes lead to overt or covert hostility.

### Description

An individual suffering from paranoia feels suspicious, and has a sense that other people want to do him or her harm. As a result, the paranoid individual changes his or her actions in response to a world that is perceived as personally threatening. Objective observers may be quite clear on the fact that no one's words or actions are actually threatening the paranoid individual. The hallmark of paranoia is a feeling of intense distrust and suspiciousness that is not in response to input from anybody or anything in the paranoid individual's environment.

Other symptoms of paranoia may include

- Self-referential thinking: The sense that other people in the world (even complete strangers on the street) are always talking about the paranoid individual.
- Thought broadcasting: The sense that other people can read the paranoid individual's mind.
- Magical thinking: The sense that the paranoid individual can use his or her thoughts to influence other people's thoughts and actions.
- Thought withdrawal: The sense that people are stealing the paranoid individual's thoughts.
- Thought insertion: The sense that people are putting thoughts into the paranoid individual's mind.
- Ideas of reference: The sense that the television and/or radio are specifically addressing the paranoid individual.

### Demographics

Paranoia is a very human feeling. Nearly everyone has experienced it at some or another time, to varying degrees. Paranoia exists on a continuum, ranging from a feeling of distrust due to an occasional misinterpretation of cues that can be appropriately dealt with and reinterpreted, to an overarching pattern of actual paranoia that affects every interpersonal interaction.

Some research studies have suggested that 6% of all women and 13% of all men have some chronic level of mistrust towards the motivations of others towards

them. Only about 0.5% to 0.25% of men and women can actually be diagnosed with **paranoid personality disorder**, however. It remains interesting to researchers that men are more prone to paranoid traits and mental disorders with paranoid features than are women.

### Causes of paranoia

Researchers do not understand fully what chemical or physical changes in the **brain** cause paranoia. Paranoia is a prominent symptom that occurs in a variety of different mental disorders, as well as a symptom of certain physical diseases. Furthermore, use of certain drugs or chemicals may cause symptoms of paranoia in an otherwise normal individual.

Paranoia is often manifested as part of the symptom complex of **schizophrenia**. In fact, one of the subtypes of schizophrenia is termed “paranoid schizophrenia,” which actually refers to a type of schizophrenia in which the individual is particularly preoccupied with **delusions** in which the world seems to be pitted against him or her. As with other forms of schizophrenia, sufferers often lack contact with reality, and display **hallucinations**, flat or emotionless **affect**, and disorganized thinking and behavior.

Paranoid personality disorder is diagnosed when an individual does not have other symptoms of schizophrenia, but a personality that is driven by chronic manifestations of paranoia. These individuals are mistrustful, suspicious, and convinced that the world is out to get them.

In order for an individual to be diagnosed with paranoid personality disorder, he or she must display at least four of the following traits:

- chronically suspicious that people are lying or cheating him or her in some way
- frequently preoccupied with whether people are loyal or trustworthy
- cannot confide in others for fear of being betrayed
- misinterprets benign comments or events as being personally threatening
- harbors long-term grudges against others who are perceived as having been threatening or insulting in some way
- sees others’ actions and/or words attacking him or her in some way, and therefore goes on the counterattack
- repeatedly assumes that partner or spouse is unfaithful

Paranoia can also occur as a symptom of other neurological diseases. Individuals suffering from the aftereffects of strokes, brain injuries, various types of

**dementia** (including Alzheimer’s disease), Huntington’s disease, and Parkinson’s disease may manifest paranoia as part of their symptom complex. The paranoia may decrease in intensity when the underlying disease is effectively treated, although since many of these diseases are progressive, the paranoia may worsen over time along with the progression of the disease’s other symptoms.

A number of different medications and drugs can cause paranoia. These include corticosteroid medications, H-2 blockers (cimetidine, ranitidine, famotidine), some muscle relaxants (Baclofen), antiviral/anti-Parkinson drugs (**amantadine**), some **amphetamines** (including Ritalin), anti-HIV medications, **antidepressants** (Nardil). Abused drugs that can prompt paranoia include alcohol, **cocaine**, marijuana, **ecstasy** (MDMA), amphetamines (including Ritalin), LSD, and PCP (angel dust). Withdrawal from addictive drugs may also cause symptoms of paranoia.

### Treatments

It can be quite challenging to get an individual who is suffering from paranoia to accept treatment. Their paranoid condition makes them distrustful of people’s motivations towards them, so that even a medical doctor appears to be a suspicious party. Medications that may be offered are usually looked at with great distrust, and efforts at **psychotherapy** are considered “mind control” by a profoundly paranoid individual.

The first step to be taken when someone is suffering from paranoia is that of determining whether an easily reversible situation (such as an adverse reaction to a medication) might be causing the paranoia. If so, discontinuing the drug (either immediately or by gradually weaning the dose) might end the symptoms of paranoia.

Patients who have other diseases, such as Alzheimer’s disease or other forms of dementia, Huntington’s disease, or Parkinson’s disease may notice that their paranoid symptoms improve when their general medical condition is treated. The circumstance that can occur as their underlying disease progresses, is that the paranoia may return or worsen over time.

People who are suffering from diagnosable mental conditions such as schizophrenia or paranoid personality disorder may benefit from the use of typical anti-psychotic medications, such as **chlorpromazine** or Haldol, or from the newer, atypical antipsychotic medications, such as **clozapine**, **olanzapine**, or **risperidone**.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) or other forms of psychotherapy may be helpful for certain people who have paranoia. CBT attempts to make a

person more aware of his or her actions and motivations, and tries to help the individual learn to more accurately interpret cues around him or her, in an effort to help the individual change dysfunctional behaviors. Difficulty can enter into a therapeutic relationship with a paranoid individual, due to the level of mistrust and suspicion that is likely to interfere with their ability to participate in this form of treatment.

**Support groups** can be helpful for some paranoid individuals—particularly helpful in assisting family members and friends who must learn to live with, and care for paranoid individuals.

### Prognosis

It is difficult to predict the prognosis of an individual who has paranoia. If there is an underlying mental illness, such as schizophrenia or paranoid personality disorder, then the paranoia is likely to be a lifelong condition. It may improve with some treatments (remission), only to become exacerbated under other more stressful conditions, or with changes in medication.

Individuals who have symptoms of paranoia as part of another medical condition may also have a waxing-and-waning-course.

When paranoia is caused by the use of a particular drug or medication, it is possible that discontinuing that substance may completely reverse the symptoms of paranoia.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Tasman, Allan, and others. *Psychiatry*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders, 1997.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. (703) 524-7600. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Institute for Mental Health. 6001 Executive Blvd., Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892. (301)443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, M.D.

These beliefs are steadfastly maintained in the absence of any real supporting evidence. The disorder, whose name comes from the Greek word for “madness,” is one of ten **personality disorders** described in the 2000 edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, (the fourth edition, text revision or *DSM-IV-TR*), the standard guidebook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders.

Despite the pervasive suspicions they have of others, patients with PPD are not delusional (except in rare, brief instances brought on by **stress**). Most of the time, they are in touch with reality, except for their misinterpretation of others' motives and intentions. PPD patients are not psychotic but their conviction that others are trying to “get them” or humiliate them in some way often leads to hostility and social isolation.

### Description

People with PPD do not trust other people. In fact, the central characteristic of people with PPD is a high degree of mistrustfulness and suspicion when interacting with others. Even friendly gestures are often interpreted as being manipulative or malevolent. Whether the patterns of distrust and suspicion begin in childhood or in early adulthood, they quickly come to dominate the lives of those suffering from PPD. Such people are unable or afraid to form close relationships with others.

They suspect strangers, and even people they know, of planning to harm or exploit them when there is no good evidence to support this belief. As a result of their constant concern about the lack of trustworthiness of others, patients with this disorder often have few intimate friends or close human contacts. They do not fit in and they do not make good “team players.” Interactions with others are characterized by wariness and not infrequently by hostility. If they marry or become otherwise attached to someone, the relationship is often characterized by pathological jealousy and attempts to control their partner. They often assume their sexual partner is “cheating” on them.

People suffering from PPD are very difficult to deal with. They never seem to let down their defenses. They are always looking for and finding evidence that others are against them. Their fear, and the threats they perceive in the innocent statements and actions of others, often contributes to frequent complaining or unfriendly withdrawal or aloofness. They can be confrontational, aggressive and disputatious. It is not unusual for them to sue people they feel have wronged them. In addition, patients with this disorder are known for their tendency to become violent.

## Paranoid personality disorder

### Definition

People with paranoid personality disorder (PPD) have long-term, widespread and unwarranted suspicions that other people are hostile, threatening or demeaning.

Despite all the unpleasant aspects of a paranoid lifestyle, however, it is still not sufficient to drive many people with PPD to seek therapy. They do not usually walk into a therapist's office on their own. They distrust mental health care providers just as they distrust nearly everyone else. If a life crisis, a family member or the judicial system succeeds in getting a patient with PPD to seek help, therapy is often a challenge. Individual counseling seems to work best but it requires a great deal of patience and skill on the part of the therapist. It is not unusual for patients to leave therapy when they perceive some malicious intent on the therapist's part. If the patient can be persuaded to cooperate—something that is not easy to achieve—low-dose medications are recommended for treating such specific problems as **anxiety**, but only for limited periods of time.

If a mental health care provider is able to gain the trust of a patient with PPD, it may be possible to help the patient deal with the threats that they perceive. The disorder, however, usually lasts a lifetime.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

No one knows what causes paranoid personality disorder, although there are hints that familial factors may influence the development of the disorder in some cases. There seem to be more cases of PPD in families that have one or more members who suffer from such psychotic disorders as **schizophrenia** or **delusional disorder**.

Other possible interpersonal causes have been proposed. For example, some therapists believe that the behavior that characterizes PPD might be learned. They suggest that such behavior might be traced back to childhood experiences. According to this view, children who are exposed to adult anger and rage with no way to predict the outbursts and no way to escape or control them develop paranoid ways of thinking in an effort to cope with the stress. PPD would emerge when this type of thinking becomes part of the individual's personality as adulthood approaches.

Studies of identical (or monozygotic) and fraternal (or dizygotic) twins suggest that genetic factors may also play an important role in causing the disorder. Twin studies indicate that genes contribute to the development of childhood personality disorders, including PPD. Furthermore, estimates of the degree of genetic contribution to the development of childhood personality disorders are similar to estimates of the genetic contribution to adult versions of the disorders.

### Symptoms

A core symptom of PPD is a generalized distrust of other people. Comments and actions that healthy people would not notice come across as full of insults and threats to someone with the disorder. Yet, generally, patients with PPD remain in touch with reality; they don't have any of the **hallucinations** or **delusions** seen in patients with psychoses. Nevertheless, their suspicions that others are intent on harming or exploiting them are so pervasive and intense that people with PPD often become very isolated. They thus avoid normal social interactions. And because they feel so insecure in what is a very threatening world for them, patients with PPD are capable of becoming violent. Innocuous comments, harmless jokes and other day-to-day communications are often perceived as insults.

Paranoid suspicions carry over into all realms of life. Those burdened with PPD are frequently convinced that their sexual partners are unfaithful. They may misinterpret compliments offered by employers or coworkers as hidden criticisms or attempts to get them to work harder. Complimenting a person with PPD on their clothing or car, for example, could easily be taken as an attack on their materialism or selfishness.

Because they persistently question the motivations and trustworthiness of others, patients with PPD are not inclined to share intimacies. They fear such information might be used against them. As a result, they become hostile and unfriendly, argumentative or aloof. Their unpleasantness often draws negative responses from those around them. These rebuffs become "proof" in the patient's mind that others are, indeed, hostile to them. They have little insight into the effects of their attitude and behavior on their generally unsuccessful interactions with others. Asked if they might be responsible for negative interactions that fill their lives, people with PPD are likely to place all the blame on others.

A brief summary of the typical symptoms of PPD includes:

- suspiciousness and distrust of others
- questioning hidden motives in others
- feelings of certainty, without justification or proof, that others are intent on harming or exploiting them
- social isolation
- aggressiveness and hostility
- little or no sense of humor

## Demographics

As of 2002, it has not been possible to determine the number of people with PPD with any accuracy. This lack of data might be expected for a disorder that is characterized by extreme suspiciousness. Such patients in many cases avoid voluntary contact with such people as mental health workers who have a certain amount of power over them. There are, nonetheless, some estimates of the prevalence of PPD. According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, between 0.5% and 2.5% of the general population of the United States may have PPD, while 2%–10% of outpatients receiving psychiatric care may be affected. A significant percentage of institutionalized psychiatric patients, between 10% and 30%, might have symptoms that qualify for a **diagnosis** of PPD. Finally, the disorder appears to be more common in men than in women.

There are indications in the scientific literature that relatives of patients with chronic schizophrenia may have a greater chance of developing PPD than people in the general population. Also, the incidence of the disorder may be higher among relatives of patients suffering from another psychotic disorder known as delusional disorder of the persecutory type.

## Diagnosis

There are no laboratory tests or **imaging studies** as of 2002 that can be used to confirm a diagnosis of PPD. The diagnosis is usually made on the basis of the doctor's interview with the patient, although the doctor may also give the patient a diagnostic questionnaire.

### Diagnostic criteria

Mental health care providers look for at least five distinguishing symptoms in patients who they think might suffer from PPD. The first is a pattern of suspiciousness about, and distrust of, other people when there is no good reason for either. This pattern should be present from at least the time of the patient's early adulthood.

In addition to this symptom that is required in order to make the PPD diagnosis, the patient should have at least four of the following seven symptoms as listed in the *DSM-IV-TR*:

- The unfounded suspicion that people want to deceive, exploit or harm the patient.
- The pervasive belief that others are not worthy of trust or that they are not inclined to or capable of offering loyalty.
- A fear that others will use information against the patient with the intention of harming him or her.

This fear is demonstrated by a reluctance to share even harmless personal information with others.

- The interpretation of others' innocent remarks as insulting or demeaning; or the interpretation of neutral events as presenting or conveying a threat.
- A strong tendency not to forgive real or imagined slights and insults. People with PPD nurture grudges for a long time.
- An angry and aggressive response in reply to imagined attacks by others. The counterattack for a perceived insult is often rapid.
- Suspicions, in the absence of any real evidence, that a spouse or sexual partner is not sexually faithful, resulting in such repeated questions as "Where have you been?" "Whom did you see?" etc., and other types of jealous behavior.

### Differential diagnosis

Psychiatrists and clinical psychologists should be careful not to confuse PPD with other mental disorders or behaviors that have some symptoms in common with the paranoid personality. For example, it is important to make sure that the patient is not a long-term user of amphetamine or **cocaine**. Chronic **abuse** of these stimulants can produce paranoid behavior. Also, some prescription medications might produce **paranoia** as a side effect; so it is important to find out what drugs, if any, the patient is taking.

There are other conditions that, if present, would mean a patient with paranoid traits does not have PPD. For example, if the patient has symptoms of schizophrenia, hallucinations or a formal thought disorder, a diagnosis of PPD can't be made. The same is true of fixed delusions, which are not a feature of PPD.

Also, the suspiciousness and other characteristic features of PPD must have been present in the patient for a long time, at least since early adulthood. If the symptoms appeared more recently than that, a person can't be given a diagnosis of this disorder.

There are at least a dozen disorders or other mental health conditions listed in the *DSM-IV-TR* that could be confused with PPD after a superficial interview because they share similar or identical symptoms with PPD. It is important, therefore, to eliminate the following entities before settling on a diagnosis of PPD: paranoid schizophrenia; **schizotypal personality disorder**; **schizoid personality disorder**; persecutory delusional disorder; mood disorder with psychotic features; symptoms and/or personality changes produced by disease, medical conditions, medication or drugs of abuse; paranoia linked to the development of physical handicaps; and borderline,

histrionic, avoidant, antisocial or narcissistic personality disorders.

In some individuals, symptoms of PPD may precede the development of schizophrenia. Should a patient who has been correctly diagnosed with PPD later develop schizophrenia, the *DSM-IV-TR* suggests that the diagnosis on the patient's medical record be changed from "Paranoid Personality Disorder" to "Paranoid Personality Disorder (Premorbid)."

### Treatments

Because they are suspicious and untrusting, patients with PPD are not likely to seek therapy on their own. A particularly disturbing development or life crisis may prompt them to get help. More often, however, the legal system or the patient's relatives order or encourage him or her to seek professional treatment. But even after a patient finally agrees or is forced to seek treatment, the nature of the disorder poses very serious challenges to therapists.

#### *Psychotherapy*

The primary approach to treatment for such personality disorders as PPD is **psychotherapy**. The problem is that patients with PPD do not readily offer therapists the trust that is needed for successful treatment. As a result, it has been difficult to gather data that would indicate what kind of psychotherapy would work best. Therapists face the challenge of developing rapport with someone who is, by the nature of his personality disorder, distrustful and suspicious; someone who often sees malicious intent in the innocuous actions and statements of others. The patient may actively resist or refuse to cooperate with others who are trying to help.

Mental health workers treating patients with PPD must guard against any show of hostility on their part in response to hostility from the patient, which is a common occurrence in people with this disorder. Instead, clinicians are advised to develop trust by persistently demonstrating a nonjudgmental attitude and a professional desire to assist the patient.

It is usually up to the therapist alone to overcome a patient's resistance. **Group therapy** that includes family members or other psychiatric patients, not surprisingly, isn't useful in the treatment of PPD due to the mistrust people with PPD feel towards others. This characteristic also explains why there are no significant **self-help groups** dedicated to recovery from this disorder. It has been suggested, however, that some people with PPD might join cults or extremist groups whose members might share their suspicions.

To gain the trust of PPD patients, therapists must be careful to hide as little as possible from their patients. This transparency should include note taking; details of administrative tasks concerning the patient; correspondence; and medications. Any indication of what the patient would consider "deception" or covert operation can, and often does, lead the patient to drop out of treatment. Patients with paranoid tendencies often don't have a well-developed sense of humor; those who must interact with people with PPD probably should not make jokes in their presence. Attempts at humor may seem like ridicule to people who feel so easily threatened.

With some patients, the most attainable goal may be to help them to learn to analyze their problems in dealing with other people. This approach amounts to supportive therapy and is preferable to psychotherapeutic approaches that attempt to analyze the patient's motivations and possible sources of paranoid traits. Asking about a patient's past can undermine the treatment of PPD patients. Concentrating on the specific issues that are troubling the patient with PPD is usually the wisest course.

With time and a skilled therapist, the patient with PPD who remains in therapy may develop a measure of trust. But as the patient reveals more of his paranoid thoughts, the clinician will continue to face the difficult task of balancing the need for objectivity about the paranoid ideas and the maintenance of a good rapport with the patient. The therapist thus walks a tightrope with this type of patient. If the therapist is not straightforward enough, the patient may feel deceived. If the therapist challenges paranoid thoughts too directly, the patient will be threatened and probably drop out of treatment.

#### *Medications*

While individual supportive psychotherapy is the treatment of choice for PPD, medications are sometimes used on a limited basis to treat related symptoms. If, for example, the patient is very anxious, **anti-anxiety drugs** may be prescribed. In addition, during periods of extreme agitation and high stress that produce delusional states, the patient may be given low doses of antipsychotic medications.

Some clinicians have suggested that low doses of neuroleptics should be used in this group of patients; however, medications are not normally part of long-term treatment for PPD. One reason is that no medication has been proven to relieve effectively the long-term symptoms of the disorder, although the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** such as **fluoxetine** (Prozac)

## KEY TERMS

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact.

**Delusional disorder of the persecutory type**—A psychotic disorder characterized by a patient's belief that others are conspiring against him or her.

**Hallucination**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may "hear" sounds or "see" people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Neuroleptic**—Another name for the older antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**Paranoia**—A mental disorder characterized by baseless suspicions or distrust of others, often delusional in intensity.

**Paranoid personality**—A personality disorder characterized by unwarranted suspicion, jealousy, hypersensitivity, social isolation and a tendency to detect malicious intent in the words and actions of others.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an over-arching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

**Rapport**—A relation of empathy and trust between a therapist and patient.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Supportive**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or exploratory approaches to treatment.

have been reported to make patients less angry, irritable and suspicious. **Antidepressants** may even make symptoms worse. A second reason is that people with PPD are suspicious of medications. They fear that others might try to control them through the use of drugs. It can therefore be very difficult to persuade them to take medications unless the potential for relief

from another threat, such as extreme anxiety, makes the medications seem relatively appealing. The best use of medication may be for specific complaints, when the patient trusts the therapist enough to ask for relief from particular symptoms.

## Prognosis

Paranoid personality disorder is often a chronic, lifelong condition; the long-term prognosis is usually not encouraging. Feelings of paranoia, however, can be controlled to a degree with successful therapy. Unfortunately, many patients suffer the major symptoms of the disorder throughout their lives.

## Prevention

With little or no understanding of the cause of PPD, it is not possible to prevent the disorder.

*See also* Paranoia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Allen, Thomas E., Mayer C. Liebman, Lee Crandall Park, and William C. Wimmer. *A Primer on Mental Disorders: A Guide for Educators, Families, and Students*. Lantham, MD: Scarecrow Press, 2001.

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Beers, Mark H., and Robert Berkow, eds. "Personality disorders." In *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. 17th edition. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.

Frances, Allen. *Your Mental Health: A Layman's Guide to the Psychiatrist's Bible*. New York, NY: Scribner, 1999.

Kernberg, Paulina F., Alan S. Weiner and Karen K. Bardestein. *Personality Disorders in Children and Adolescents*. 1st edition. New York, NY: Basic Books, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Coolidge, F. L., L. L. Thede and K. L. Jang. "Heritability of personality disorders in childhood: A preliminary investigation." *Journal of Personality Disorders* 15, no. 1 (Feb. 2001): 33-40.

Webb, C. T. and D. F. Levinson. "Schizotypal and paranoid personality disorder in the relatives of patients with schizophrenia and affective disorders: A review." *Schizophrenia Research* 11, no. 1 (Dec. 1993): 81-92.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

International Society for the Study of Personality Disorders. 115 Mill Street, Belmont, MA 02478. <<http://www.isspd.com>>.

National Mental Health Association. 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, Virginia 22314-2971. <<http://www.nmha.org/>>.

#### OTHER

- Beers, Mark H., and Robert Berkow, eds. The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy. 1995-2002. (cited March 12, 2002). <<http://www.merck.com/pubs/mmanual/section15/chapter191/191a.htm>>.
- Ekleberry, Sharon, C., Dual Diagnosis and the Paranoid Personality Disorder. The Dual Diagnosis Pages. 25 March 2000. (cited 19 March 2002). <<http://www.toad.net/~arcturus/dd/paranoid.htm>>.
- Grohol, John M. "Paranoid Personality Disorder." Psych Central. 1 March 2002. (cited 16 March 2002). <<http://psychcentral.com/disorders/sx37t.htm>>.

Dean A. Haycock, Ph.D.

## Paraphilias

### Definition

Paraphilias are sexual feelings or behaviors that may involve sexual partners that are not human, not consenting, or that involve suffering by one or both partners.

### Description

According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (known as the *DSM*) fourth edition text revised (*DSM-IV-TR*), the manual used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders, it is not uncommon for an individual to have more than one paraphilia. The *DSM-IV-TR* lists the following paraphilias: **exhibitionism**, **fetishism**, **frotteurism**, **pedophilia**, **sexual masochism**, **sexual sadism**, **transvestic fetishism**, and **voyeurism**. The *DSM-IV-TR* also includes a category for paraphilia not otherwise specified, which is the category for the less common paraphilias, including necrophilia, zoophilia, and others.

### Exhibitionism

Exhibitionism is the exposure of genitals to a non-consenting stranger. In some cases, the individual may also engage in autoeroticism while exposing himself. Generally, no additional contact with the observer is sought; the individual is stimulated sexually by gaining the attention of and startling the observer.

### Fetishism

People with this disorder achieve sexual gratification with the use of objects, most commonly women's undergarments, shoes, stockings, or other clothing item.

### Frotteurism

Individuals with this disorder are gratified by touching or rubbing a non-consenting person. This behavior often occurs in busy, crowded places, such as on busy streets or on crowded buses or subways.

### Pedophilia

Pedophilia involves sexual activity with a child, generally under age 13. The *DSM-IV-TR* describes a criterion that the individual with pedophilia be over 16 years of age and be at least five years older than the child. Individuals with this disorder may be attracted to either males or females or both, although incidents of pedophilic activity are almost twice as likely to be repeated by those individuals attracted to males. Individuals with this disorder develop procedures and strategies for gaining access to and trust of children.

### Sexual masochism

Masochism is a term applied to a specific sexual disorder but which also has a broader usage. The sexual disorder involves pleasure and excitement produced by pain, either inflicted by others or by oneself. It usually begins in childhood or adolescence and is chronic. An individual with this disorder achieves gratification by experiencing pain. Masochism is the only paraphilia in which any noticeable number of women participate—about 5% of masochists are female. The term comes from the name of a nineteenth-century Austrian writer, Leopold von Sacher-Masoch, whose novels often included characters who were obsessed with the combination of sex and pain.

In the broader sense, masochism refers to any experience of receiving pleasure or satisfaction from suffering pain. The psychoanalytic view is that masochism is aggression turned inward, onto the self, when a person feels too guilty or is afraid to express it outwardly.

### Sexual sadism

A sadistic individual achieves sexual gratification by inflicting pain on another person.

In psychoanalytic theory, sadism is related to the fear of castration, while the behaviorist explanation of sadomasochism (the deviant sexual practice combining sadism and masochism) is that its constituent feelings are physiologically similar to sexual arousal. Separate but parallel descriptions are given for sexual sadism and sexual masochism in the *DSM-IV-TR*. The clinical diagnostic criteria for both are recurrence of the behavior over a period of at least six months, and significant distress or impairment of the ability to

function as a result of the behavior or associated urges or fantasies. Either type of behavior may be limited to fantasies (sometimes while one is engaged in outwardly nondeviant sex) or acted out with a consenting partner, a non-consenting partner, or in the case of masochism, alone. Sadomasochism occurs in both males and females, and in both heterosexual and homosexual relationships.

### **Transvestic fetishism**

This disorder is characterized by heterosexual males who dress in women's clothing to achieve a sexual response. The activity may begin in adolescence, and in secret; later, as an adult, the man may dress as a woman completely and in public. Not all men who cross-dress are unhappy with their gender, but some are. In a small minority of men with transvestic fetishism, gender dysphoria (unhappiness with original gender) may emerge, and those men may eventually seek hormonal treatments or surgical sex reassignment to enable them to live permanently as women.

### **Voyeurism**

Voyeurism is a paraphilia in which a person finds sexual excitement in watching unsuspecting people who are nude, undressing, or having sex. Voyeurs are almost always male, and the victims are usually strangers. A voyeur may fantasize about having sex with the victim but almost never actually pursues this. The voyeur may return to watch the same stranger repeatedly, but there is rarely any physical contact.

Voyeurs are popularly known as "peeping Toms," based on the eleventh-century legend of Lady Godiva. According to the story, Tom was a tailor who "peeped" at Lady Godiva as she rode naked through the streets of Coventry, England, in a sacrificial act to get her husband to lower taxes. Tom was struck with blindness for not looking away like everyone else.

### **Uncommon paraphilias**

**BESTIALITY.** Bestiality is a term that describes sexual feelings or behaviors involving animals. Termed zoophilia by *DSM-IV* this is an uncommon disorder. The disorder does not specify an animal or category of animals; the person with zoophilia may focus sexual feelings on domesticated animals, such as dogs, or farm animals, such as sheep or goats.

**NECROPHILIA.** Necrophilia is a term that describes sexual feelings or behaviors involving corpses.

## **Resources**

### **BOOKS**

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. Fourth edition, text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Baumeister, Roy F. *Escaping the Self: Alcoholism, Spirituality, Masochism, and Other Flights from the Burden of Selfhood*. New York: Basic Books, 1993.
- Caplan, Paula J. *The Myth of Women's Masochism*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1993.
- Carnes, Patrick. *Out of the Shadows: Understanding Sexual Addiction*. 3rd ed. Center City, MN: Hazelden Educational Materials, 2001.

## **Parent management training**

### **Definition**

Parent management training (PMT) is an adjunct to treatment that involves educating and coaching parents to change their child's problem behaviors using principles of learning theory and **behavior modification**.

### **Purpose**

The aim of PMT is to decrease or eliminate a child's disruptive or inappropriate behaviors at home or school and to replace problematic ways of acting with positive interactions with peers, parents and such authority figures as teachers. In order to accomplish this goal, PMT focuses on enhancing parenting skills. The PMT therapist coaches parents in applying such strategies as rewarding positive behavior, and responding to negative behavior by removing rewards or enforcing undesirable consequences (punishments). Although PMT focuses on specific targeted behaviors rather than on the child's **diagnosis** as such, it has come to be associated with the treatment of certain disorders. PMT is used in treating **oppositional defiant disorder**, **conduct disorder**, **intermittent explosive disorder** (age-inappropriate tantrums), and attention deficit disorder with hyperactivity (attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder). Such antisocial behaviors as firesetting and truancy can also be addressed through PMT.

### **Description**

In PMT, the therapist conducts initial teaching sessions with the parent(s), giving a short summary of foundational concepts in behavior modification; demonstrating interventions for the parents; and coaching parents in carrying out the techniques of PMT. Early

meetings with the therapist focus on training in the principles of behavior modification, response-contingent learning, and ways to apply the techniques. Parents are instructed to define the behavior(s) to be changed concretely and specifically. In addition, they learn how to observe and identify relevant behavior and situational factors, and how to chart or otherwise record the child's behavior. Defining, observing and recording behavior are essential to the success of this method, because when such behaviors as fighting or tantrums are highlighted in concrete, specific ways, techniques of **reinforcement** and punishment can be put to use. Progress or its absence is easier to identify when the description of the behavior is defined with enough clarity to be measurable, and when responses to the PMT interventions are tracked on a chart. After the child's parents grasp the basic interventions as well as when and how to apply them, the techniques that the parents practiced with the therapist can be carried out at home.

Learning theory, which is the conceptual foundation of PMT, deals with the ways in which organisms learn to respond to their environment, and the factors that affect the frequency of a specific behavior. The core of learning theory is the notion that actions increase or decrease in frequency in response to the consequences that occur immediately after the action. Research in parent-child interactions in families with disruptive, difficult or defiant children shows that parental responses are unintentionally reinforcing the unwanted behavior. PMT trains parents to become more careful in their reactions to a child's behavior. The parents learn to be more discerning: to provide attention, praise and increased affection in reaction to the child's behaving in desired ways; and to withdraw attention, to suspend displays of affection, or to withdraw privileges in instances of less desirable behavior.

The most critical element of PMT is offering positive reinforcement for socially appropriate (or at least non-deviant) behaviors. An additional component involves responding to any undesired behaviors by removing rewards or applying punishment. These two types of response to the child must be carried out with great consistency. Consistent responding is important because erratic responses to unwanted behavior can actually cause the behavior to increase in frequency. For instance, if a child consistently throws tantrums in stores, hoping to be given something to end the tantrum, inconsistent parent responses can worsen the situation. If a parent is occasionally determined not to give in, but provides a candy bar or a toy to end the tantrum on other occasions, the child learns either to have more tantrums, or to have more dramatic tantrums. The rise in the number or

intensity of tantrums occurs because the child is trying to increase the number of opportunities to obtain that infrequent parental reward for the behavior. Planning responses ahead of time to predefined target behaviors by rewarding desired actions and by withdrawing rewards or applying punishment for undesirable behavior is a fundamental principle of PMT. Consistent consequences, which are contingent on (in response to) the child's behavior, result in behavior change. Parents practice therapeutic ways of responding to their child's behavior in the PMT sessions with the therapist.

Through PMT, parents learn that positive rewards for appropriate behaviors can be offered in a variety of ways. Giving praise, providing extra attention, earning points toward obtaining a reward desired by the child, earning stickers or other small indicators of positive behavior, earning additional privileges, hugging (and other affectionate gestures) are all forms of reward. The technical term for the rewarding of desired behavior is *positive reinforcement*. Positive reinforcement refers to consequences that cause the desired target behavior to increase.

PMT instructs parents to cancel rewards or give punishments when the child behaves in undesirable ways. The removal of rewards usually entails time away from the circumstances and situations in which the child can do desired activities or receive attention. The concept of a "time out" is based on this notion of removal of rewards. Time out from rewards customarily means that the child is removed from people and stimulation for a certain period of time; it can also include deprivation of privileges.

Punishment in PMT is not necessarily what parents typically refer to as punishment; it most emphatically is *not* the use of physical punishment. A punishment in PMT involves a response to the child's negative behavior by exposing the child to something he or she regards as unpleasant. Examples of punishments might include having to redo the correct behavior so many times that it becomes annoying; verbal reproaches; or the military standby—"drop and give me fifty"—having to do push-ups or situps or laps around a playing field to the point of discomfort.

The least challenging problems, which have the greatest likelihood of successful change, are tackled first, in hope of giving the family a "success experience." The success experience is a positive reinforcement for the family, increasing the likelihood that they will continue using PMT in efforts to bring about change. In addition, lower-level behavioral problems provide opportunities for parents to become skilled in intervening and to learn consistency in their responses.

After the parents have practiced using the skills learned in PMT on the less important problems, more severe issues can be tackled.

In addition to face-to-face sessions with the parents, some PMT therapists make frequent telephone calls to the parents between sessions. The purposes of the calls are to remind parents to continue to be consistent in applying the techniques; to answer questions about the work at home; and to praise the parents' attempts to correct the child's behavior. In addition, ongoing support in sessions and on the telephone helps parents feel less isolated and thus more likely to continue trying to use learning principles in managing their child. Troubleshooting any problems that arise regarding the application of the behavioral techniques is handled over the telephone and in the office sessions.

An additional aspect of learning theory is that rewarding subunits of the ultimately desired behavior can lead to developing more complex new actions. The subunits are finally linked together by changing the ways in which the rewards are given. This process is called "chaining." Sometimes, if the child shows no elements of the desired response, then the desired behavior is demonstrated for the child and subsequent "near hits" or approximations are rewarded. To refine "close but not quite" into the targeted response, rewards are given in a slightly "pickier" manner. Rewarding successive approximations of the desired behavior is also called "shaping."

## Risks

The best way to learn to alter parental responses to child behaviors is with the support and assistance of a behavioral health professional (**psychologist**, **psychiatrist**, clinical social worker). As noted earlier, parents often inadvertently reinforce the problem behaviors, and it is difficult for a parent to see objectively the ways in which he or she is unintentionally supporting the defiant or difficult behavior. Furthermore, inappropriate application of such behavioral techniques as those used in PMT can actually make the problem situation worse. Families should seek therapists with valid credentials, skills, training and experience in PMT.

## Normal results

Typically, the parents should notice a decrease in the unwanted behaviors after they implement the techniques learned in PMT at home. Of the various therapies used to treat childhood disorders, PMT is among those most frequently researched. PMT has shown

## KEY TERMS

**Behavior modification**—An approach to therapy based on the principles of operant conditioning. Behavior modification seeks to replace undesirable behaviors with preferable behaviors through the use of positive or negative reinforcement.

**Positive reinforcement**—A procedure or response that rewards a desired behavior.

**Response-contingent**—An approach to treatment in which rewards or punishments are given in response to a particular behavior to be encouraged or corrected.

**Social learning theory**—A subset of learning theories based on the concept that human behavior originates in and is affected by the interplay among the person's learned experiences, previous behaviors, and environmental influences.

effectiveness in changing children's behavior in very well-designed and rigorous studies. PMT has a greater effect on behavior than many other treatments, including **family therapy** or **play therapy**. Furthermore, the results—improved child behavior and reduction or elimination of undesirable behavior—are sustained over the long term. When a group of children whose families had used PMT were examined one to fourteen years later, they had maintained higher rates of positive behavior and lower levels of problem behavior.

*See also* Family therapy; Pyromania.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Hendren, R. L. *Disruptive behavior disorders in children and adolescents*. Review of Psychiatry Series, vol. 18, no. 2. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.
- Webster-Stratton, C., and M. Herbert. *Troubled families—problem children: Working with parents, a collaborative process*. Chichester, England: Wiley, 1995.

### PERIODICALS

- Feldman, Julie and Alan E. Kazdin. "Parent management training for oppositional and conduct problem children." *The Clinical Psychologist* 48, no. 4 (1995): 3-5.
- Golding, Kim. "Parent management training as an intervention to promote adequate parenting." *Clinical Child Psychology and Psychiatry* 5, no. 3 (2000): 357-372.
- Kazdin, A. E. "Parent management training: Evidence, outcome and issues." *Journal of American Academic Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 36, no. 10 (October, 1997): 1349-1356.

**ORGANIZATIONS**

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry.  
3615 Wisconsin Ave., NW, Washington, D.C.  
20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. Web site:  
<[www.aacap.org/](http://www.aacap.org/)>.

Association for the Advancement of Behavior Therapy. 305  
Seventh Avenue, 16th Floor, New York, NY 10001-  
60008. Telephone: (212) 647-1890. Web site:  
<[www.aabt.org](http://www.aabt.org)>.

North American Family Institute. 10 Harbor Street, Dan-  
vers, MA 01923. Telephone: (978) 774-0774. Web site:  
<[www.nafi.com](http://www.nafi.com)>.

**OTHER**

Parents & Teachers of Explosive Kids. <[www.explosivekids.org](http://www.explosivekids.org)>.  
The Explosive Child <[www.explosivechild.com](http://www.explosivechild.com)>.

Deborah Rosch Eifert, Ph.D

Parnate see **Tranylcypromine**

## Paroxetine

### Definition

Paroxetine is an antidepressant of the type known as **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRI). It is sold in the United States under the brand name **Paxil**.

### Purpose

Paroxetine is approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treatment of **depression** and for the following **anxiety disorders**: obsessive compulsive disorder, **panic disorder**, **generalized anxiety disorder**, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, and social **anxiety disorder**.

### Description

Paroxetine increases the amount of serotonin (also called 5-HT) available in the **brain**. Serotonin is a neurotransmitter, or chemical in the brain that carries nerve impulses from a sending neuron (nerve cell) to a receiving neuron. The sending neuron releases serotonin into a little gap between neurons, called the synapse. The receiving neuron picks up the serotonin from the synapse, allowing the nerve impulse to continue on its way.

Researchers think that depression and certain other disorders may be caused, in part, because there is not enough available serotonin in the brain. Normally, once a nerve impulse has crossed the synapse, serotonin is reabsorbed by the sending neuron that

released it. Once reabsorbed, this serotonin is no longer available and cannot interact with a receiving neuron. Paroxetine blocks the reabsorption, or re-uptake, of serotonin, leaving it available to stimulate receiving neurons. Therefore, paroxetine facilitates the transmission of nerve impulses by increasing available serotonin in the brain and thus increasing its effectiveness.

Paroxetine is an antidepressant that is virtually completely absorbed via oral administration. Food does not reduce its absorption.

The benefits of paroxetine develop slowly over a period of up to four weeks. Patients should be aware of this and continue to take the drug as directed, even if they feel no immediate improvement.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended dosage of paroxetine is 20–50 mg per day. The drug should be taken only once per day. An appropriate initial dosage is 20 mg. Dosage changes should not be made more frequently than once per week.

The recommended dosage for older persons or individuals with liver or kidney disease is 10 mg per day. The total dosage for such persons should not exceed 40 mg per day.

### Precautions

Paroxetine should never be taken with monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOs)(see interactions below).

Paroxetine may lower the threshold for a **manic episode** among people with bipolar (manic-depressive) disorders. For this reason, the drug should be used only with caution and under close supervision in these patients. It may also increase the chance of having a seizure in people with a history of seizure disorders.

The possibility of **suicide** is a component of depression. The minimum number of doses of paroxetine should be dispensed at any one time to minimize the potential for use as a suicide agent.

Hyponatremia (abnormally low concentration of sodium in the blood) has been associated with the use of paroxetine. In all cases, this condition resolved when the drug was discontinued. Most of these instances occurred among older individuals who were also taking diuretics (water pills).

### Side effects

Common side effects associated with paroxetine include headache, weakness, chills, malaise, nausea, and sleepiness. Other complaints included dry mouth,

## KEY TERMS

**Bioavailability**—Medication that is available in the body. If the bioavailability of a drug is increased, more is available to the body for use, and if it is decreased, less is available for use.

**Bipolar syndrome**—An abnormal mental condition characterized by periods of intense elation, energy and activity followed by periods of inactivity and depression; formerly called manic-depression.

**Hyponatremia**—A condition characterized by an abnormally low concentration of sodium in the blood.

**Manic**—Referring to mania, a state characterized by excessive activity, excitement or emotion.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Tryptophan**—An essential amino acid released from proteins during the process of digestion. Tryptophan is an important ingredient in the body's production of serotonin.

dizziness, tremors, constipation, diarrhea, and problems with ejaculation. Adverse reactions to paroxetine have been reported for all organ systems of the body, but all of these side effects are uncommon.

In general, the incidence of side effects increases as the dosage of paroxetine increases.

### Interactions

There is the potential for a fatal interaction with another class of antidepressant drugs called monoamine-oxidase (MAO) inhibitors. There have been reports of dangerously elevated body temperature, muscle rigidity, and rapid changes in vital signs such as heart rate and blood pressure. Mental changes ranging from extreme agitation to **delirium** and coma have also been reported. Because of this, paroxetine should never be taken in combination with MAO inhibitors. Patient taking any MAO inhibitors, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAO inhibitor then wait at least 14 days before starting paroxetine or any other antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing paroxetine and starting an MAO inhibitor.

The combination of paroxetine with the antipsychotic drug **thioridazine** has the potential to cause

fatal cardiac arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat). The use of paroxetine in combination with tryptophan may result in unwanted reactions including agitation, restlessness, and gastrointestinal distress. Paroxetine may also increase the chance of having a seizure in people with a history of seizure disorders. People taking anticonvulsants to control **seizures** should be closely monitored and a physician may need to adjust the dosage of their seizure medication.

People with **bipolar disorder** are commonly treated with lithium. No interactions between paroxetine and lithium have been reported, nor have there been any reported interactions with the common anti-anxiety drug **diazepam** (Valium).

Phenobarbital at dosages greater than 100 mg per day decreases the bioavailability of paroxetine in some persons. Paroxetine has been reported to increase the systemic bioavailability of procyclidine.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.  
 Foreman, John C. and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.  
 Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.  
 Von Boxtel, Chris J., Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

- Cherek, D. R., S. D. Lane, C. J. Pietras, and J. L. Steinberg. "Effects of chronic paroxetine administration on measures of aggressive and impulsive responses of adult males with a history of conduct disorder." *Psychopharmacology (Berlin)* 159, no. 3 (2002): 266-274.  
 Mulsant, B. H. and others. "A twelve-week, double-blind, randomized comparison of nortriptyline and paroxetine in older depressed inpatients and outpatients." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 9, no. 4 (2001): 406-414.  
 Pisani, F., G. Oteri, C. Costa, G. Di Raimondo, and R. Di Perri. "Effects of psychotropic drugs on seizure threshold." *Drug Safety* 25, no. 2 (2002): 91-110.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, PO Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Fax: (717) 558-7845. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.  
 American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.

American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.

American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981 Fax: (703) 836-5223.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. Web site: <<http://www.aspnet.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

Paruresis see **Toilet phobia**



## Passionflower

### Definition

Passionflower (*Passiflora incarnata*) is a vine whose leaves and flowers are widely used in Europe to make a herbal remedy for **anxiety** and **insomnia**. The plant, which is native to the tropical regions of North America, was first used by the Aztecs of Mexico as a folk remedy for these conditions. Passionflower is also known as maypop, apricot vine, passion vine, and granadilla. It grows as much as 30 ft (10 m) tall, with a thick, woody stem.

Passionflower received its name from the sixteenth-century conquistadors who claimed Mexico for the Spanish Empire. The priests and soldiers who accompanied Hernando Cortez thought that the whitish-purple flowers of the vine symbolized certain features of the passion of Christ. The corona in the center of the flower reminded them of Christ's crown of thorns, the five stamens of the number of Christ's wounds, and the tendrils of the whips that were used to scourge Christ.

### Purpose

Passionflower is still used as a sedative and anxiety-lowering, although far more frequently in Great Britain and Europe than in the United States. In Britain, passionflower is the single most common ingredient in herbal **sedatives**, and the German Commission E approved it for use as a tranquilizer. It is also used in homeopathic remedies. In addition to its long-standing uses as a remedy for anxiety and insomnia, passionflower has also been recommended for the treatment of gastrointestinal disorders related to anxiety; asthma; tachycardia (an abnormally rapid heartbeat); menstrual cramps; **seizures**; attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder; and hysteria. A topical preparation made from passionflower has been used to treat hemorrhoids.

**The flower of the passionflower or passion fruit vine. (Ray Coleman/Photo Researchers, Inc)**

cardia (an abnormally rapid heartbeat); menstrual cramps; **seizures**; attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder; and hysteria. A topical preparation made from passionflower has been used to treat hemorrhoids.

The parts of the plant that grow above the ground are gathered to make passionflower preparations. They may be used either fresh or dried. The most common sources of the passionflower that is used today are India, the West Indies, and the southern United States, even though the vine can also be grown in Mexico and Latin America.

### Description

Passionflower preparations may be made from the flowers, leaves, or shoots of the plant. After the first fruits of the plant have matured, younger shoots growing 12.7–17.8 cm. above the ground are harvested and air-dried. The plant material is then used to prepare infusions, teas, liquid extracts, and tinctures of passionflower. In Europe, passionflower is often combined with lemon balm or **valerian** to make a sedative tea. The standardized formula approved by the German Commission E contains 30% passionflower, 40% valerian root, and 30% lemon balm. Passionflower is

also used to make a special sedative tea for children, which typically includes 30% passionflower, 30% lemon balm, 30% **lavender** flower, and 10% **St. John's wort**. Passionflower is sometimes combined with hawthorn to make a remedy for stomach cramps associated with gastritis.

Although passionflower has been shown in animal studies to have sedative and antispasmodic effects, researchers are not yet certain which compounds in the plant have these properties. Passionflower is known to contain flavonoids and a group of alkaloid compounds that include harman, harmine, harmaline, and harmalol. Some researchers have hypothesized that the medicinal effects of passionflower derive from a combination of these substances rather than from any of them in isolation. A recent Swiss study, however, appears to indicate that a flavonoid called chrysanthemum may be the source of passionflower's anxiolytic properties.

### Recommended dosage

As the German recipe indicates, passionflower is considered safe for children. Dosages for children should be calculated on the basis of the child's weight. Since most adult dosages of herbal remedies assume an average adult weight of 150 lb (70 kg), a child weighing 50 lb (23 kg) can be given 1/3 of the adult dose.

Recommended adult doses of passionflower are as follows:

- Infusion: 2–5 g of dried herb, up to three times daily
- Fluid extract (1:1 ratio in a solution of 25% alcohol): 0.5–1.0 mL up to three times daily
- Tincture (1:5 ratio in a solution of 45% alcohol): 0.5–2.0 mL up to three times daily.

### Precautions

Passionflower should not be used in doses higher than the recommended levels. Because it has a sedative effect, it should not be combined with alcoholic beverages or prescription sedatives. Passionflower should not be used by pregnant or lactating women, or for children under six months old.

### Side effects

As of 2002, passionflower has not been reported to cause any significant side effects when taken at recommended dosage levels.

### Interactions

The alkaloids found in passionflower, especially harman and harmaline, may increase the effects of a

## KEY TERMS

**Antispasmodic**—A medication or preparation given to relieve muscle or digestive cramps.

**Anxiolytic**—A preparation or substance given to relieve anxiety; a tranquilizer.

**Chrysanthemum**—A flavonoid found in passionflower that may be the source of its anxiolytic properties.

**Flavonoids**—Plant pigments that have a variety of effects on human physiology. Some of these pigments have anti-inflammatory, anti-carcinogenic, and antioxidant effects, for example.

**Gastritis**—Inflammation of the lining of the stomach.

**Infusion**—The most potent form of extraction of a herb into water. Infusions are steeped for a longer period of time than teas.

**Tincture**—An alcohol-based herbal extract prepared by soaking parts of the plant in a mixture of alcohol and water. Established ratios and dilutions are followed.

**Topical**—A type of medication or preparation intended for use on the skin or external surface of the body.

class of prescription **antidepressants** called monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). These drugs are most often prescribed for **depression**, panic attacks, and eating disorders. Passionflower may also increase the effects of OTC sedatives as well as prescription sedatives.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Western Herbal Medicine: Nature's Green Pharmacy." Chapter 6 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2000.

Tyler, Varro E. *Herbs of Choice*. New York: Pharmaceutical Products Press, 1994.

#### PERIODICALS

Capasso, A., and A. Pinto. "Experimental Investigations of the Synergistic-Sedative Effect of Passiflora and Kava." *Acta Therapeutica* 21 (1995): 127–140.

Soulimani, R., C. Younos, S. Jarmouni, and others.

"Behavioural Effects of *Passiflora incarnata L.* and its Indole Alkaloid and Flavonoid Derivatives and Maltol in the Mouse." *Journal of Ethnopharmacology* 57 (1997): 11–20.

Zanolli, P., R. Avallone, and M. Baraldi. "Behavioral Characterisation of the Flavonoids Apigenin and Chrysanthemum." *Fitoterapia* 71 (2000): S117–S123.

**OTHER**

American Botanical Council. PO Box 144345. Austin, TX 78714-4345. <[www.herbalgram.org](http://www.herbalgram.org)>.  
Herb Research Foundation. 1007 Pearl Street. Suite 200. Boulder, CO 80302. <[www.herbs.org](http://www.herbs.org)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Pathological gambling disorder

### Definition

Pathological gambling disorder occurs when a person gambles compulsively to such an extent that the wagering has a severe negative effect on his or her job, relationships, mental health, or other important aspects of life. The person may continue to gamble even after they have developed social, economic, interpersonal, or legal problems as a result of the gambling.

### Description

Pathological gambling disorder is characterized by uncontrollable gambling well beyond the point of a social or recreational activity, such that the gambling has a major disruptive effect on the gambler's life. People who are pathological gamblers may lose their life savings and may even commit crimes (stealing, embezzling, or forging checks) to get money for their "habit." Relationships and jobs may also be lost as a result of the disorder.

Pathological gambling disorder is an example of a process, or behavioral, **addiction**, as distinct from an addiction to such substances as food, drugs, tobacco, or alcohol. In process addictions, the characteristic "rush" or "high" comes from the series of steps or actions that are involved in the addictive behavior. With gambling, the "high" may be stimulated by the social atmosphere or group setting of the casino, race track, or bingo hall as well as by the excitement of risk-taking. Some gamblers have a "lucky" outfit, item of clothing, or accessory that they wear or take along when gambling; sometimes putting on the outfit or item in question is enough to start the "rush."

People with pathological gambling disorder may engage in many different types of gambling activities. These may include games of chance that are found in casinos, such as slot machines, card games, and roulette. Many of these games are now available on the Internet, the chief difference being that the bettor uses a credit card instead of cash or chips. Other gambling

activities may include the state lottery, horse or dog racing, or bingo. The person may place bets on the outcome of an election, baseball or football games, or even the weather on a particular day. Pathological gambling usually develops slowly over time; people tend to begin with acceptable levels of social or recreational gambling and slowly progress to pathological gambling. In most cases the disorder develops slowly over a period of years; however, there are cases of patients who gambled socially for decades and then began to gamble compulsively under the impact of a major life stressor, such as divorce or being laid off from work.

### Causes and symptoms

#### *Causes*

Pathological gambling is considered a **brain** disease similar to other disorders of addiction, like alcohol or drug addiction. The primary mechanism underlying the development and persistence of pathological gambling is the brain's dopamine-based reward system, which is thought to underlie many disorders of addiction or impulse control. The central pathway involved is the mesolimbic pathway of **dopamine** signaling. This pathway exhibits alterations in dopamine levels or signaling in response to some substances, and a similar dopamine response is thought to underlie process addictions, including pathological gambling. The key feature in the brain involved in this process is the nucleus accumbens.

There also are, however, significant psychological factors that may contribute to excessive gambling, often associated with the common co-morbidities of pathological gambling, including **depression** and substance use disorder. People who are pathological gamblers may use gambling as an emotional escape from depression; this pattern appears more often in females with the disorder than in males. Some people who are pathologic gamblers seek the mood alteration associated with gambling—specifically the excitement and energy that they find in the activity—more than the money involved. In other words, the person with the disorder is reinforced by an emotional "high" rather than by the money itself. Some researchers have found that males diagnosed with pathological gambling disorder were more likely to have been diagnosed with attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder as children than males in the general population. Other researchers have described compulsive gamblers in general as highly competitive people who are restless and easily bored. People with this disorder exhibit many features in common with those who have substance use disorder, including the urge to engage in the behavior, mounting tension before engaging in the behavior,



A man plays a slot machine in a casino. (Mika/zefa/Corbis)

relief or euphoria during the behavior, a return of the urge, and the presence of external cues that may trigger the behavior.

Other theories about the causes of pathological gambling emphasize cognitive distortions rather than mood problems. Pathological gambling has been associated with dysfunctional thinking patterns; many people with this disorder are highly superstitious or believe that they can control the outcome of events when they are gambling. Many people diagnosed with the disorder also have distorted beliefs about money, tending to see it at the same time as the source of all their problems and the answer to all their problems. Patients diagnosed with pathological gambling disorder have an increased risk of either having or developing histrionic, narcissistic, or **borderline personality disorder**.

One social change that has been linked with the rise in the number of adults diagnosed with pathological gambling disorder in the United States is the increased availability of legalized gambling. Studies show that proximity to a casino is associated with increased rates of pathological gambling in a population.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of pathological gambling include preoccupation with gambling activity, often to the extent of interfering with the person's occupational or social functioning. The person often cannot control the gambling behavior, continuing to place bets or go to casinos in spite of attempts to cut back or stop. A common behavior in persons with pathological gambling disorder is "chasing," which refers to betting larger sums of money or taking greater risks in order to undo or make up for previous losses. The person may also lie about his or her gambling or engage in such antisocial behaviors as stealing, credit card fraud, check forgery, embezzling from an employer, or similar dishonest behaviors in order to obtain more money for gambling.

### Demographics

About twice as many males than females in the United States are diagnosed with pathological gambling disorder. Relatively few women, however, are in treatment programs for the disorder, probably because of the greater social **stigma** attached to women who

gamble. As a rule, men diagnosed with pathological gambling disorder began gambling as teenagers, whereas women tend to start compulsive gambling at a later age and develop a gambling problem faster than men. Pathological gambling disorder tends to be more common in minority groups and in people with lower socioeconomic status. About 25% of people diagnosed as pathological gamblers had a parent with the disorder. People who smoke tobacco or abuse alcohol are more likely to have pathological gambling disorder than people who do not use these substances.

As much as 4% of the general population in the United States may meet criteria for pathological gambling disorder at some point in their lives. In some countries, such as Australia, the number is thought to be as high as 7%.

## Diagnosis

Pathological gambling disorder is more likely to be diagnosed when the affected person's spouse or family becomes concerned than to be self-reported. **Denial** is common among persons with the disorder. The professional handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*) specifies that the patient must have at least five of the following symptoms to meet criteria for the disorder:

- thinks about gambling all the time
- uses larger and larger amounts of money when gambling
- has tried to stop gambling but failed
- is moody or cranky when trying to stop gambling
- uses gambling as a way to escape problems
- keeps gambling to try to make back money that had previously been lost ("chasing")
- lies about the extent of gambling
- has tried to make money for gambling by engaging in illegal or immoral behavior
- has problems at work or home caused by the gambling
- relies on other people to get him or her out of financial problems caused by the gambling

Pathological gambling disorder is distinguished from social gambling, in which the person is typically socializing with friends, gambling for a limited period of time, and gambling with a limited sum of money that they can afford to lose. Pathological gambling disorder is also distinguished from professional gambling, in which participants limit their risks and discipline their behavior. Lastly, pathological gambling disorder must be distinguished from a **manic episode**;

in most cases, the distinguishing feature of the disorder is that the manic-like behavior disappears after the person leaves the gambling setting.

## Treatments

There are a number of different treatments for pathological gambling disorder. **Psychodynamic psychotherapy** attempts to uncover any underlying psychological factors that trigger the gambling. For people who are gambling to escape, such as those who are depressed, this approach may be very successful. Treating any **substance abuse** problems that may coexist with the pathological gambling can also be helpful. Other types of treatments involve behavioral techniques used to teach relaxation and avoidance of stimuli associated with gambling. **Aversion therapy** appears to be successful in treating pathological gambling disorder in highly motivated patients with some insight into the problem, but is not helpful for patients who are less educated or resistant to behavioral methods of treatment.

Gamblers Anonymous(GA) is a twelve-step program modeled after Alcoholics Anonymous (AA). The gambler's admission that she or he does have a gambling problem and a willingness to go to meetings are considered the first steps in treating pathological gambling disorder. Looking realistically at what gambling has done to a person's life and a willingness to work hard to stop gambling are also important parts of GA. People involved in this program are expected to attend meetings regularly, try to make amends for wrongs that their gambling has caused, and find a sponsor (usually of the same sex) to help them through the program. GA also expects people who stop gambling to understand that they probably will never be able to gamble again socially, just as recovering alcoholics cannot drink socially.

Pharmacological treatments for pathological gambling and other process addictions are still being developed and explored. In studies reported thus far, the most effective pharmaceutical treatment has been opioid antagonists, such as **naltrexone** or nalmefene, possibly because of their effects on opioid pathways that interact with dopamine signaling pathways in the brain reward system. Treatment may also target comorbidities of pathological gambling, such as using **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (also known as **SSRIs**) if mood disorder or **obsessive-compulsive disorder** is present.

## Prognosis

There are very few statistics on the number of people successfully treated for pathological gambling

## KEY TERMS

**Aversion therapy**—An approach to treatment in which an unpleasant or painful stimulus is linked to an undesirable behavior in order to condition the patient to dislike or avoid the behavior.

**Chasing**—Betting larger and larger sums of money, or taking greater risks, in order to make up for money previously lost in gambling.

**Denial**—A psychological defense mechanism that reduces anxiety by excluding recognition of an addiction or similar problem from the conscious mind.

**Dopamine**—a neurotransmitter involved in the reward pathways in the brain

**Process addiction**—An addiction to a mood-altering behavior or series of behaviors rather than a substance.

**Reinforcement**—A term that refers to the ability of a drug, substance, or behavior to produce effects that will make the user want to take the substance or perform the behavior again.

**Rush**—The initial intensely pleasurable sensation experienced from injecting a narcotic or stimulant drug. The term has also been applied to the feeling of excitement experienced from the behaviors involved in process addictions.

**SSRI**—selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor

disorder. Treatment for any underlying psychological disorders or substance abuses can be very helpful. Sometimes **family therapy** is recommended. Some types of relaxation or behavioral therapy can also be helpful. Gamblers Anonymous can help in many cases, although the program has a high dropout and recurrence rate, and there are no studies fully analyzing the benefits or efficacy of the program. For many people, a combination of more than one of these approaches may be most effective. Even when a person has successfully stopped compulsive gambling, it is unlikely that he or she will ever be able to gamble socially again, or even spend time in places where he or she once gambled.

### Prevention

Prevention of pathological gambling disorder is very difficult because it is impossible to predict when

someone will react to gambling in a way that leads to compulsive gambling. If a person begins to feel, however, that he or she may have a problem, immediate treatment can prevent the development of a disorder that affects all areas of life and may have legal as well as economic consequences. Given the role of proximity to available gambling in the development of the disorder, this factor may be a target in prevention.

*See also* Internet addiction disorder; Self-help groups.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Forward, Susan, Ph.D., and Craig Buck. "Compulsive Gambling." Chapter 5. *Money Demons*. New York: Bantam Books, 1994.  
 Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed., Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Emerson, Jim. "Gamblers." *Direct* 12.8 (June 2000): 83.  
 Manisses Communications Group Inc. "Study Finds Other Psychiatric Ills Accompany Pathological Gambling." *The Brown University Digest of Addiction Theory and Application* 18.7 (July 1999): 4.  
 Grant, Jon E., JD, MD, M.P.H., Judson A. Brewer, MD, Ph.D., and Marc N. Potenza, MD, Ph.D. "The Neurobiology of substance and behavioral addictions." *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 924–30.  
 Lobo, Daniela S.S., MD, Ph.D., and James L. Kennedy, MD, F.R.C.P.C. "The genetics of gambling and behavioral addictions." *CNS Spectrums* 11 (2006): 931–9.  
 Nicol, John. "Gambling It All Away: The Spread of Casinos in Canada is Posing a Threat to the Country's Growing Population of Seniors." *Maclean's* February 7, 2000: 16.

#### WEB SITES

- "Pathological gambling." National Library of Medicine. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001520.htm>>.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Gamblers Anonymous. P.O. Box 17173, Los Angeles, CA 90017. (219) 386-8789. <[www.gamblersanonymous.org](http://www.gamblersanonymous.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

## Paxil and Paxil CR

### Definition

Paxil is an antidepressant drug belonging to the class of **antidepressants** known as **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRIs). It is used to treat **depression**, **generalized anxiety disorder**, social **anxiety disorder**, **panic disorder**, obsessive compulsive disorder, and posttraumatic **stress** disorder in adults. Paxil CR is a controlled-release formulation of Paxil, meaning it is formulated to deliver its dose slowly throughout the day.

### Purpose

Paxil and Paxil CR are antidepressants used to relieve a variety of mood disorders. These medicine may be used to treat serious, ongoing depression and other conditions such as social and generalized **anxiety disorders**, panic disorders, **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD), posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), and premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD), a serious form of **premenstrual syndrome**.

Sometimes a health care provider will prescribe Paxil or Paxil CR for conditions other than the approved ones listed on the drug's label. This is called off-label use. Off-label uses for Paxil and Paxil CR include the treatment of certain headaches, hot flashes due to menopause, **premature ejaculation**, and nerve problems due to diabetes (diabetic neuropathy).

Specifically, Paxil and Paxil CR belong to a class of medicines called selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (**SSRIs**). SSRIs are drugs that help increase the activity of a natural chemical in the **brain** called serotonin. Serotonin helps send messages between nerves in the brain. It is believed that these messages play a role in determining a person's mood.

### Description

The active ingredient in Paxil and Paxil CR is a compound called **paroxetine** hydrochloride. Paxil and Paxil CR are brand names. Paroxetine hydrochloride is the drug's generic name.

The compound is an odorless, off-white powder that the manufacturer forms into a regular tablet, controlled-release (CR) tablet, or liquid, also called an oral suspension. The liquid has an orange taste and color. Tablet color depends on how much medicine it contains. For example, a 10-mg tablet is yellow, a 20-mg tablet is pink, 30-mg tablet is blue, and 40-mg tablet is green.



**Paxil pills.** (Anthony Eva/Alamy)

The 10-mg and 20-mg tablets are scored with a line across the middle that makes it easy to cut the pill in half. Paxil CR contains the same type of medicine as original Paxil, but it is created in a way that controls how fast the body absorbs the drug. One pill slowly releases medicine into the body throughout the entire day.

### Recommended dosage

The tablets are usually taken in the morning. Taking them with food may help reduce certain side effects. Paxil CR tablets must be swallowed whole. The medicine should not be crushed or chewed. The Paxil CR tablets are coated with a hard film that slowly dissolves, controlling the amount of drug that is released into the body over time.

The exact dosage a person needs depends on the condition being treated, as well as coexisting health conditions and medication history. Certain conditions may require many months of therapy, whereas others do not. The general dosage range for specific conditions is outlined as follows:

#### *Generalized anxiety disorder*

- Paxil: 20–50 mg/day

#### *Major depression*

- Paxil: 20–50 mg/day
- Paxil CR: 25–62.5 mg/day

#### *Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD)*

- Paxil: 20 mg/day at first; may be slowly increased by 10 mg/day; maximum dosage is 60 mg/day

### **Panic disorder**

- Paxil: 10–60 mg/day
- Paxil CR: 12.5–75 mg/day

### **Premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD)**

- Paxil: 20–60 mg/day or only during certain times a month

### **Posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD)**

- Paxil: 20–50 mg/day

### **Social anxiety disorder**

- Paxil: 20–60 mg/day
- Paxil CR: 12.5–37.5 mg/day

## **Precautions**

### **Pregnant women**

Pregnant women should use caution if taking Paxil or Paxil CR. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has warned that taking the drug during the first three months of pregnancy may increase the risk for birth defects. The FDA classifies a drug according to how it may affect a baby during pregnancy and breastfeeding. Paxil or Paxil CR now fall into pregnancy category D, the government's second highest category for risk of birth defects. This means that studies have shown that the drug causes harm to an unborn human baby, but the drug's benefits to the mother may outweigh the risks. The manufacturer of Paxil and Paxil CR reports that taking paroxetine during the last three months of pregnancy has been shown to cause health problems in babies after birth. Such problems include breathing difficulties, **seizures**, poor feeding, changes in body temperature, vomiting, low blood sugar, floppiness, stiffness, tremor, shakiness, irritability, and constant crying. Paxil moves through breast milk, so breastfeeding mothers could pass the drug to their babies. Women who take Paxil and are pregnant, breastfeeding, or planning to become pregnant should talk to their health care providers. An alternate antidepressant may be recommended.

### **Children and young adults**

In October 2004, the FDA required that manufacturers of Paxil, Paxil CR, and all other antidepressants include a warning on the medicine's label telling users that the drugs have been linked to an increase in suicidal thought and actions in children and young

adults. This is called a "black box warning." As of January 2007, Paxil is not approved for persons under age 18.

### **Older adults**

Older adults tend to metabolize (break down) drugs more slowly than younger people. Therefore, older and elderly adults may need lower doses of Paxil or Paxil CR than younger patients.

### **Medical conditions**

Before taking Paxil or Paxil CR, patients should make sure their health care provider also knows if they have or have had any of the following conditions:

- electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)
- heart disease
- kidney disease
- liver disease
- seizures
- suicidal thoughts or suicide attempt

### **Side effects**

Nausea is one of the most common side effects of Paxil or Paxil CR. Taking the medicine with food may help relieve stomach discomfort. Other reported side effects involving the gastrointestinal tract include dry mouth, constipation, diarrhea, decreased appetite, an eating disorder called anorexia, gas (flatulence), and vomiting.

Although the drug is used to treat certain anxiety disorders, in some cases it may also cause anxiety and related symptoms, such as heart palpitations and nervousness. This side effect may be reduced by starting with the lowest dosage and increasing it gradually, if needed.

Other side effects of Paxil or Paxil CR include abnormal vision, dizziness, injury due to dizziness, infection, frequent urination, headache, sweating, tremor, trouble falling or staying asleep (**insomnia**), sleepiness, weakness, and yawning. Sexual side effects have been reported. Men taking Paxil or Paxil CR may have delayed ejaculation.

### **Interactions**

People who take or have recently taken antidepressant medicines called monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) should use caution when taking Paxil or Paxil CR. MAOIs cause the body to absorb too much paroxetine, which could be dangerous. Patients must wait 14 days before taking Paxil after discontinued use

## KEY TERMS

**Ejaculation**—The release of sperm-containing fluid from the penis.

**Hot flashes**—Body-wide feelings of warmth and flushing.

**Menopause**—The time of life after a woman's menstrual cycle permanently stops.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)**—The oldest class of antidepressants. Types of MAOIs include phenelzine (Nardil), tranylcypromine (Parnate), isocarboxazid (Marplan), and selegiline (Emsam).

**Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI)**—An antidepressant drug that controls the balance of serotonin in the body.

**Serotonin**—A chemical found in the brain and other parts of the body that helps regulate mood.

of an MAOI. The same amount of time should lapse when stopping Paxil and starting an MAOI. Kidney and liver disease can also cause increased blood levels of paroxetine. Because of this, dosages may need to be reduced in patients with severe liver or kidney disease.

If Paxil or Paxil CR is taken with another SSRI, a life-threatening drug reaction called "serotonin syndrome" may develop. Symptoms occur within minutes to hours and may include high blood pressure, mental status changes, and increased body temperature (hyperthermia).

Paxil or Paxil CR may slow down or speed up the absorption of many other drugs. The following drugs are known to interact with Paxil (Paxil CR):

- atomoxetine (Strattera)
- cimetidine (Tagamet)
- desipramine (Norpramin)
- digoxin (Lanoxin, Digitek)
- phenytoin (Dilantin)
- procyclidine (Kemadrin)
- risperidone (Risperdal)
- St. John's wort
- warfarin (Coumadin)

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Ferri, Fred F. *Practical Guide to the Care of the Medical Patient*. 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2004.

Karch, Amy M. 2007 *Lippincott's Nursing Drug Guide*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.

Reus, Victor I. "Practical Guide to the Care of the Medical Patient." *Principles of Internal Medicine*. 16th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 2005.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Mental Health America, 2000 N. Beauregard Street, 6th Floor. Alexandria, VA 22311. (800) 969-6MHA (6642). <<http://www.nmha.org>>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (703) 524-7600. <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Kelli Miller Stacy

Paxipam see **Galantamine**

PCP see **Phencyclidine and related disorders**

## Pedophilia

### Definition

Pedophilia is a paraphilia that involves an abnormal interest in children. A paraphilia is a disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally focused on non-human objects; the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated); or animals, children, or other nonconsenting persons. Pedophilia is also a psychosexual disorder in which the fantasy or actual act of engaging in sexual activity with prepubertal children is the preferred or exclusive means of achieving sexual excitement and gratification. It may be directed toward children of the same sex or children of the other sex. Some pedophiles are attracted to both boys and girls. Some are attracted only to children, while others are attracted to adults as well as to children.

Pedophilia is defined by mental health professionals as a mental disorder, but the American legal system defines acting on a pedophilic urge as a criminal act.

### Description

The focus of pedophilia is sexual activity with a child. Many courts interpret this reference to age to mean children under the age of 18. Most mental health professionals, however, confine the definition of pedophilia to sexual activity with prepubescent children, who are generally age 13 or younger. The term *ephebophilia*, derived from the Greek word for "youth," is

sometimes used to describe sexual interest in young people in the first stages of puberty.

The sexual behaviors involved in pedophilia cover a range of activities and may or may not involve the use of force. Some pedophiles limit their behaviors to exposing themselves or masturbating in front of the child, or fondling or undressing the child, but without genital contact. Others, however, compel the child to participate in oral sex or full genital intercourse.

The most common overt aspect of pedophilia is an intense interest in children. There is no typical pedophile. Pedophiles may be young or old, male or female, although the great majority are males. Unfortunately, some pedophiles are professionals who are entrusted with educating or maintaining the health and well-being of young persons, while others are entrusted with children to whom they are related by blood or marriage.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

A variety of different theories exist as to the causes of pedophilia. A few researchers attribute pedophilia along with the other **paraphilias** to biology. They hold that testosterone, one of the male sex hormones, predisposes men to develop deviant sexual behaviors. As far as genetic factors are concerned, as of 2002, no researchers have claimed to have discovered or mapped a gene for pedophilia.

Pedophilia, as a disorder based in **compulsion** and impulse control, may be related to other disorders associated with obsessive-compulsive and impulsive behaviors. Research, including an imaging study, suggests that abnormalities in an area of the **brain** called the frontal cortex are associated with pedophilia. Other studies have identified similar abnormalities in obsessive-compulsive spectrum disorders. In addition, recent research indicates that pedophilic behavior may be rooted in early disturbances in neurological development, although a clear biological basis for the disorder has not yet been established. Neurotransmitter (nerve signaling molecules) pathways in the brain related to mood regulation have been implicated; these include pathways involving serotonin and **dopamine**.

Some experts believe that there is an association between pedophilia and having been sexually abused as a child. Still others think that it derives from the person's interactions with parents during their early years of life. Some researchers attribute pedophilia to arrested emotional development; that is, the pedophile is attracted to children because he or she has never

matured psychologically. Some regard pedophilia as the result of a distorted need to dominate a sexual partner. Because children are smaller and usually weaker than adults, they may be regarded as non-threatening potential partners. This drive for domination is sometimes thought to explain why most pedophiles are males.

### Symptoms

A pedophile is often seen as particularly trustworthy to the children who are potential victims. Potential pedophiles may volunteer their services to athletic teams, Scout troops, or religious or civic organizations that serve youth. In some cases, pedophiles who are attracted to children within their extended family may offer to baby-sit for their relatives. They often have good interpersonal skills with children and can easily gain the children's trust.

Some pedophiles offer rationalizations or excuses that enable them to avoid assuming responsibility for their actions. They may blame the children for being too attractive or sexually provocative. They may also maintain that they are "teaching" the child about "the facts of life" or "love"; this rationalization is frequently offered by pedophiles who have molested children related to them. All these rationalizations may be found in pornography with pedophilic themes.

## Demographics

Pedophilia is one of the more common paraphilias; the large worldwide market for child pornography suggests that it is more frequent in the general population than prison statistics would indicate. Together with **voyeurism** and **exhibitionism**, pedophilia is one of the three paraphilias most commonly leading to arrest by the police.

The onset of pedophilia usually occurs during adolescence. Occasional pedophiles begin their activities during middle age but this late onset is uncommon.

The frequency of behavior associated with pedophilia varies with psychosocial **stress**. As the pedophile's stress levels increase, the frequency of his or her acting out generally rises also. This manifestation echoes those of a behavioral **addiction**.

Pedophilia is more common among males than among females. In addition, the rate of recidivism for persons with a pedophilic preference for males is approximately twice that of pedophiles who prefer females.

Marital status, socioeconomic level, educational background, and religious observance does not seem

to predict pedophilia. Little is known about the incidence of pedophilia in different racial or ethnic groups.

## Diagnosis

According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition text revised, the following criteria must be met to establish a **diagnosis** of pedophilia.

- Over a period of at least six months, the affected person must experience recurrent, intense and sexually arousing fantasies, sexual urges or actual behaviors involving sexual activity with a prepubescent child or children aged 13 or younger.
- The fantasies, sexual urges or behaviors must cause clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational or other important areas of daily functioning.
- The affected person must be at least age sixteen and be at least five years older than the child or children who are the objects or targets of attention or sexual activity.

A diagnosis of pedophilia cannot be assigned to an individual in late adolescence (age 17 to 19) who is involved in an ongoing sexual relationship with a 12- or 13-year-old person.

In establishing a diagnosis of pedophilia, it is important for a mental health professional to determine if the patient is attracted to males, females or both. It is also important to determine whether incest is a factor in the relationship. Finally, the doctor must determine whether the pedophilia is exclusive or non-exclusive; that is, whether the patient is attracted only to children (exclusive pedophilia) or to adults as well as to children (non-exclusive pedophilia).

One difficulty with the diagnosis of the disorder is that persons with pedophilia rarely seek help voluntarily from mental health professionals. Instead, counseling and treatment is often the result of a court order. An interview that establishes the criteria for diagnosis listed above may be enough to diagnose the condition, or surveillance or Internet records obtained through the criminal investigation may also be used.

An additional complication in diagnosis is that the paraphilic disorders as a group have a high rate of comorbidity with one another and an equally high rate of comorbidity with major **depression**, **anxiety disorders**, and **substance abuse** disorders. A person diagnosed with pedophilia may also meet the criteria for exhibitionism or for a substance **abuse** or mood disorder.

## Treatments

In the earliest stages of **behavior modification** therapy, pedophiles may be narrowly viewed as being attracted to inappropriate persons. Such aversive stimuli as electric shocks have been administered to persons undergoing therapy for pedophilia. This approach has not been very successful.

In 2002, the most common form of treatment for pedophilia is **psychotherapy**, often of many years' duration. It does not have a high rate of success in inducing pedophiles to change their behavior.

Pedophilia may also be treated with medications. The three classes of medications most often used to treat pedophilia (and other paraphilic disorders) are these: hormones, particularly the synthetic medroxyprogesterone acetate, or MPA; luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) agonists (mimics), which include such drugs as triptorelin (Trelstar), leuprorelin acetate, and goserelin acetate; and antiandrogens, which block the uptake and metabolism of testosterone as well as reducing blood levels of this hormone. In particular, these drugs with antiandrogenic effects (interfering with the action of the body's androgenic hormones) have shown some efficacy in reducing the rate of recidivism. Most clinical studies of these drugs have been done in Germany, where the legal system has allowed their use in treating repeat sexual offenders since the 1970s. Researchers have reported some benefit with leuprorelin acetate, for example, finding during a two-year study that none of the pedophiles being administered the drug re-offended.

Surgical castration is sometimes offered as a treatment to pedophiles who are repeat offenders or who have pleaded guilty to violent rape.

Increasingly, pedophiles are being prosecuted under criminal statutes and being sentenced to prison terms. Imprisonment removes them from society for a period of time but does not usually remove their pedophilic tendencies. In 2002, many states have begun to publish the names of persons being released from prison after serving time for pedophilia. Legal challenges to this practice are pending in various jurisdictions.

## Prognosis

The prognosis of successfully ending pedophilic habits among persons who practice pedophilia is not favorable. Pedophiles have a high rate of recidivism; that is, they tend to repeat their acts often over time.

The rate of prosecution for pedophiles through the criminal justice system has increased in recent years. Pedophiles are at high risk of being beaten or

## KEY TERMS

**Aversion therapy**—An approach to treatment in which an unpleasant or painful stimulus is linked to an undesirable behavior in order to condition the patient to dislike or avoid the behavior.

**Castration**—Desexing a person or animal by surgical removal of the testes (in males) or ovaries (in females). Castration is sometimes offered as a treatment option to pedophiles who are violent rapists and/or repeat offenders.

**Comorbidity**—Association or presence of two or more mental disorders in the same patient. A disorder that is said to have a high degree of comorbidity is likely to occur in patients diagnosed with other disorders that may share or reinforce some of its symptoms.

**Ephelophilia**—Sexual desire on the part of an adult for youths in the early stages of puberty, as distinct from prepubertal children.

**Incest**—Unlawful sexual contact between persons who are biologically related. Many therapists, however, use the term to refer to inappropriate sexual contact between any members of a family, including stepparents and stepsiblings.

**Paraphilia**—A disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving non-human objects, the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or children or other non-consenting persons.

**Recidivism**—A tendency to return to a previously treated activity, or repeated relapse into criminal or deviant behavior.

**Voyeurism**—A paraphilia that involves watching unsuspecting people, usually strangers, undress or engage in sexual activity.

killed by other prison inmates. For this reason, they must often be kept isolated from other members of a prison population. Knowledge of the likelihood of abuse by prison personnel and inmates is not, however, an effective deterrent for most pedophiles.

### Prevention

The main method for preventing pedophilia is avoiding situations that may promote pedophilic acts. Children should never be allowed to be in one-on-one situations with any adult other than their

parents or trustworthy family members. Having another youth or adult as an observer provides some security for all concerned. Conferences and other activities can be conducted so as to provide privacy while still within sight of others.

Children should be taught to yell or run if they are faced with an uncomfortable situation. They should also be taught that it is acceptable to scream or call for help in such situations.

Another basis of preventing pedophilia is education. Children must be taught to avoid situations that make them vulnerable to pedophiles. Adults who work with youth must be taught to avoid situations that may be construed as promoting pedophilia.

Many states have adopted legislation that requires periodic background investigations of any adult who works with children. These persons may be paid, such as teachers, or they may be volunteers in a youth-serving organization.

The Boy Scouts of America has tried to address the problem of pedophilia by creating a training program that is required for all adults in the organization. All applications for volunteers are reviewed and approved by several persons. Adults and youth are required to use separate facilities on all activities. Secret meetings and one-on-one interactions between adults and youth are prohibited. This program has received several national awards.

*See also* Abuse; Aversion therapy.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Gelder, Michael, Richard Mayou, and Philip Cowen. *Shorter Oxford Textbook of Psychiatry*. 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.  
 Wilson, Josephine F. *Biological Foundations of Human Behavior*. New York: Harcourt, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

- Berlin, F. S. "Treatments to change sexual orientation." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 157.5 (2000): 8–9.  
 Cohen, L. J., and others. "Impulsive personality traits in male pedophiles versus healthy controls: Is pedophilia an impulsive-aggressive disorder?" *Comprehensive Psychiatry* 43.2 (2002): 127–34.  
 Hill, S. A. "The man who claimed to be a paedophile." *Journal of Medical Ethics* 26:2 (2000): 137–8.  
 O'Donohue, W., L. G. Regev, and A. Hagstrom. "Problems with the DSM-IV diagnosis of pedophilia." *Sexual Abuse* 12.2 (2000): 95–105.

Schiffer, Boris, and others, "Structural brain abnormalities in the frontostriatal system and cerebellum in pedophilia." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* (2006)

DOI:10.1016/j.jpsychires.2006.06.003.

Schober, Justine M., Peter M. Byrne, and Phyllis J. Kuhn. "Leuprolide acetate is a familiar drug that may modify sex-offender behavior: the urologist's role." *BJU International* 97 (2006):684-6.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Phone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org>>.

American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. Telephone: (847) 434-4000. Fax: (847) 434-8000. Web site: <<http://www.aap.org/default.htm>>.

American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850.

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NW, Washington, DC, 20002-4242. Phone: (800) 374-2721 or (202) 336-5500. <<http://www.apa.org>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

## Peer groups

### Definition

Peer groups are an important influence throughout one's life, but they are more critical during the developmental years of childhood and adolescence. There is often controversy about the influence of a peer group versus parental influence, particularly during adolescence. Recent studies show that parents continue to have significant influence, even during adolescence, a reassuring finding for many parents. It appears that the power of the peer group becomes more important when the family relationships are not close or supportive. For example, if the parents work extra jobs and are largely unavailable, their children may turn to their peer group for emotional support. This also occurs when the conflict between parents and children during adolescence, or at any time during a child's development, becomes so great that the child feels pushed away and seeks closeness elsewhere. Most children and adolescents in this situation are not discriminating about the kind of group they join. They will often turn to a group simply because that group

accepts them, even if the group is involved in illegal or negative activities. Gang involvement, for example, is a common form of organized—often antisocial—peer interaction. Gangs may be based on ethnicity, sex, and/or common activity. Most youths who join gangs come from families where drug and alcohol use, financial burdens, and broken relationships are common. The need for affiliation or closeness is often greater than the need to "do the right thing" for some adolescents who feel isolated and abandoned by members of their own family. Being part of a gang provides such individuals with acceptance and security not available at home or in other peer groups.

### Membership in peer groups

Despite significant gains in diversity training, current studies continue to show that children are less likely to accept those who are different from themselves. The differences can be as obvious as physical impairments, or as subtle as differences in academic motivation. These rigid standards may create an atmosphere of exclusion for some children and adolescents that pushes them toward peer acceptance of any type.

Peer groups offer children and adults alike the opportunity to develop various social skills, such as leadership, sharing or teamwork, and empathy. Peer groups also offer the opportunity to experiment with new roles and interactions, similar to treatment groups, although they are less structured. It is for this reason that many children and adolescents drift from one group to another as they "find themselves," or work toward formation of their relatively permanent identity.

### Aggression in peer groups

Although **bullying** and teasing have long been part of peer group interactions, these negative behaviors have increased over the last decade, resulting in school violence in many instances. As children and adolescents feel marginalized from their peers, anger builds to a point of rage at times. It is at those times that violence erupts within the school or community setting.

Negative peer interactions also occur more frequently following friendships or romantic relationships that have gone sour. The level of harassment that many of these children—often young women—experience is great enough for parents to become involved. In some cases, it may be necessary to move the child to another school district. A potential remediation for these negative interactions includes more



Peer group interaction has an immense influence on adolescents. (Frances Roberts/Alamy)

active teacher involvement when negative social interactions are observed.

### Influence of peer groups

Peer groups can also have a positive influence—a fact many parents have known for years. Studies support parent's perceptions that the influence of friends can have a positive effect on academic motivation and performance. Conversely, experimentation with drugs, drinking, vandalism, and stealing may also be increased by interaction with the peer group.

### Interventions

Since schools are often the site of negative peer interactions, school personnel have a unique opportunity for effective **intervention**. Many schools have peer-mediation programs, in which students are encouraged to resolve conflicts on their own without the use of violence or aggression. School counselors also organize groups within the school to handle various problems, including providing **social skills training** and empathy training.

### Risks

Peer groups often provide an example for negative and harmful behaviors. Cluster **suicide** is one such example. When a teen realizes that someone he or she knew has attempted or has committed suicide, the teen may see suicide as a viable option for him- or herself as well. For this reason schools and local media should exercise caution when reporting such tragedies. Care must be taken not to portray the suicide glamorously or mythically.

When parents try to protect their children by telling them to stay away from certain friends, they should realize that sometimes this only encourage them to seek out negative role models. Parents should be supportive of their child and redirect their child's activities to more positive and prosocial peers and events. A trusted adult friend, such as a scout leader or a respected coach, may be an important part of the redirection effort.

As noted, children and adolescents without strong family connections, or at least a positive connection with other adults in their life, face a higher risk of negative influence from peer groups. If the child or adolescent has not been able to form bonds with positive peer groups, it

## KEY TERMS

**Cluster suicide**—Refers to the phenomenon of additional suicides being attempted or completed after one suicide has occurred within a small community, such as a group of high school students.

is more likely they will be perceived as distant and different from their peers, making them feel more like outsiders. Lower standards of acceptance often exist in less positive peer groups, making it easier for people to join. Unfortunately, many such groups often engage in self-destructive and anti-social activities.

*See also* Family therapy.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Juvonen, J. and S. Graham, eds. *Peer harassment in school: The plight of the vulnerable and victimized*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

Pearl, R., T. W. Farmer, R. Van Acker, P. C. Rodkin, K. K. Bost, M. Coe, and W. Henley. "The social integration of students with mild disabilities in general education classrooms: Peer group membership and peer-assessed social behavior." *Elementary School Journal* 99, no. 2 (Nov 1998): 167-185.

Ryan, A. M. "The peer group as a context for the development of young adolescent motivation and achievement." *Child Development* 72, no. 4 (Jul-Aug 2001): 1135-1150.

Schwartz, D. "Subtypes of victims and aggressors in children's peer groups." *Journal of Abnormal Child Psychology* 28, no. 2 (Apr 2000): 181-192.

Deanna Pledge, Ph.D.

## Pemoline

### Definition

Pemoline is classified as a central nervous system (CNS) stimulant. It is sold in the United States under the brand names Cylert and PemADD and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Pemoline is used in combination with psychological, educational, and social support for the treatment of people with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD).

### Description

Pemoline is a central nervous system stimulant that derives at least some of its effects by increasing levels of **dopamine** in the **brain**. Dopamine is one of several **neurotransmitters** in the brain. Neurotransmitters are naturally occurring chemicals that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses from one cell to another. Mental and physical well-being are partially dependent on maintaining the proper balance among the various neurotransmitters in the brain.

Pemoline is similar in its effects to dextroamphetamine and **methylphenidate**, two other drugs used to treat ADHD, although it is not chemically related to these drugs. The mechanism of action of CNS stimulants in the treatment of ADHD is not totally clear, but probably includes increased mental alertness, decreased mental **fatigue**, and an increased sense of well-being.

Pemoline should not be used as a substitute for psychological, educational, and social support in treating people with ADHD. Because pemoline may be associated with liver toxicity (poisoning causing liver damage), it should be used only after trying other drugs to treat ADHD. Patients should try dextroamphetamine or methylphenidate first.

Pemoline is available in 18.75-mg, 37.5-mg, and 75-mg oral tablets and in 37.5-mg chewable tablets.

### Recommended dosage

The dose of pemoline should be carefully adjusted to the patient needs. The initial dose of pemoline in children six years of age or older is 37.5 mg each morning. The dose may be increased by 18.75 mg each week to as much as 75 mg daily. Most people respond to doses ranging from 56.25 mg to 75 mg daily, although some people may require as much as 112.5 mg daily.

There is no need to continue pemoline indefinitely. Rather, patients should be evaluated both during therapy and during periods in which the medication is voluntarily stopped. In many situations, the drug may be safely discontinued altogether when the child reaches adolescence.

### Precautions

Pemoline is associated with liver toxicity. Symptoms range from mild reversible changes in liver function tests to acute liver failure. The risk of liver damage should be weighed against any therapeutic benefit derived from treatment with pemoline. Therefore, if no therapeutic benefit is observed within three to four weeks of starting the drug, pemoline should be

## KEY TERMS

**Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)**—A learning and behavioral disorder characterized by difficulty in sustaining attention, impulsive behavior, and excessive activity.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

discontinued. In order to detect the early signs of liver damage, liver function tests should be performed before starting the drug and every two weeks while taking pemoline.

Because pemoline is a central nervous stimulant, physical or psychological **addiction** is possible in people who are emotionally unstable.

### Side effects

Loss of appetite accompanied by weight loss generally occurs during the first few weeks after starting pemoline. With continued treatment, appetite and body weight usually stabilize.

Because it is a central nervous system stimulant, **insomnia** is a common side effect of pemoline.

The most serious side effect is liver toxicity. Liver toxicity is usually characterized by changes in liver function tests without obvious liver damage, but in rare cases, liver failure resulting in death or requiring a liver transplant has occurred.

### Interactions

There are no scientific data concerning drugs that negatively interact with pemoline. However, because pemoline is considered a stimulant, other drugs with stimulant properties (caffeine, over-the-counter decongestants, **amphetamines**, **antidepressants**) may theoretically and inappropriately increase CNS stimulation.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

**PERIODICALS**

Bonnet, Udo, and Eugen Davids. "A Rare Case of Dependence on Pemoline." *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry* 30.7 (Sept. 2006): 1340–41.

Krauseneck, Till, and Michael Soyka. "Delusional Parasitosis Associated with Pemoline." *Psychopathology* 38.2 (Mar.–Apr. 2005): 103–104.

Pliszka, Steven R., and others. "The Texas Children's Medication Algorithm Project: Revision of the Algorithm for Pharmacotherapy of Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." *Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.6 (June 2006): 642–57.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Pentobarbital see **Barbiturates**

Permitil see **Fluphenazine**

## Perphenazine

### Definition

Perphenazine is a phenothiazine antipsychotic used to treat serious mental disorders. It has also been used to treat severe nausea and vomiting. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Trilafon and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Perphenazine is used to treat psychotic disorders and severe nausea and vomiting.

### Description

Perphenazine is one of many drugs in the class called phenothiazine derivatives. Phenothiazines work by inhibiting the actions of the **brain** chemicals, **dopamine** and norepinephrine, which are overproduced in individuals with **psychosis**. It is a member of the group of "first-generation" antipsychotics, which had fallen out of favor with the advent of the "second-generation" drugs, thought to be more effective and confer fewer side effects. However, a recent study found that perphenazine is as effective as some of the newer drugs and is more cost effective.

## Recommended dosage

For the treatment of psychosis, adults usually receive a total of 4 mg to 16 mg taken as tablets in three or four doses daily, up to a maximum of 64 mg each day. There is also a liquid form available to be taken orally. Injections of perphenazine are also available and are typically given in 5 mg doses every 6 hours, up to 15 mg per day. Hospitalized patients can receive up to 30 mg per day in the injectable form of perphenazine.

Adult patients with serious nausea and vomiting receive 8 mg to 16 mg per day as tablets, divided into several doses, up to a maximum of 24 mg per day. Injections are typically given in 5 mg to 10 mg doses every 6 hours, up to 15 mg per day in patients who are not confined to bed. Hospitalized patients can receive up to a maximum of 30 mg per day. Intravenous perphenazine can be given to nausea and vomiting patients up to 1 mg every 1 to 2 minutes to a maximum of 5 mg.

The correct dosage of perphenazine must be carefully determined for each patient. Physicians try to find a dose that controls symptoms of the disease without causing intolerable side effects. Dosage guidelines for the treatment of psychosis have not been established for children under the age of 12 years. In children over age 12, the lowest adult dosage is generally used to treat psychosis. Children with severe nausea and vomiting are usually given 5 mg injections every six hours.

## Precautions

Persons who take perphenazine should not stop taking the drug abruptly. Instead, the dose should be decreased gradually, then stopped. People who take perphenazine often develop sunburn easily; sunscreen should be used by persons, especially fair-skinned individuals, taking perphenazine.

Persons who are known to have severe central nervous system **depression** should not take perphenazine or any other drug in its class. In addition, those with a prior history of brain damage, coma, or bone marrow depression should not receive perphenazine without a thorough evaluation by a doctor.

Children under the age of 12 years, the elderly (over age 65), those with a history of epilepsy, glaucoma, prostate problems, severe asthma, and other severe breathing problems should receive perphenazine only with great caution and under close supervision of a physician. In addition, persons with a history of heart or blood vessel disease and those with a history of liver or kidney disease should take perphenazine only after a

thorough evaluation. Perphenazine should also be used cautiously when taken over a long period. Rarely should perphenazine be taken by pregnant or nursing women; it passes into the breastmilk and can cause drowsiness and adverse side effects in the infant.

## Side effects

Serious or life-threatening side effects due to perphenazine are rare. However, if any of these occur, patients should contact their doctors or get immediate medical attention: **seizures**, irregular heartbeat, significant changes in blood pressure, muscle stiffness, weakness, pale skin color, and increased sweating. The treating doctor should be contacted immediately if any of these common side effects develop: rapid movements of the tongue, uncontrolled chewing movement, unusual amounts of lip smacking, and frequent movement of the arms or legs. The treating doctor should be contacted relatively soon if any of the following common side effects develop: reduced balance control, muscle spasms, restlessness, trembling, weakness in the limbs, blurred vision, and decreased night vision.

Less common side effects that need to be reported to the doctor include severe sunburn, skin rashes, and urination problems. Rare side effects that should be reported to the doctor include abdominal pain, muscle aches, joint aches, fever, chills, muscle weakness, and vomiting. Common but not serious side effects include constipation, drowsiness, decreased sweating, mouth dryness, and nasal congestion. Uncommon and not typically serious side effects include decreased sexual desire, increased susceptibility to sunburn, menstrual cycle changes, swelling or pain in the breasts, and weight gain.

## Interactions

Combining perphenazine with drugs such as the antimalarials amodiaquine, chloroquine, and sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine (Fansidar) can increase the concentrations within the body of these antimalarials..

Perphenazine combined with **barbiturates** tends to lower the concentrations of perphenazine in the body. Combining perphenazine with **clonidine** (Catapress), guanadrel (Hyloret), and guanethidine (Ismelin) can produce dangerously low blood pressure.

Perphenazine should not be combined with alcohol, because alcohol increases the drug's depressive effect on the central nervous system. Perphenazine inhibits the effects of levodopa in Parkinson's patients when the two are combined. Lithium combined with perphenazine lowers the levels of both drugs.

## KEY TERMS

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

Perphenazine should not be combined with analgesics (pain killers) containing narcotics because of the combination increases depressive effects on the central nervous system. Orphenadrine (Norflex) combined with perphenazine can reduce the beneficial effects of perphenazine.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Consumer Reports Staff, eds. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*, 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.
- Ellsworth, Allan J. and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. 2001–2002. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.
- Hardman, Joel G., Lee E. Limbird, eds. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.
- Mosby's GenRx Staff. *Mosby's GenRx*, 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1999.
- Venes, Donald, and others, eds. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*, 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Rosenheck, R.A., D.L. Leslie, J. Sindelar, E.A. Miller, H. Lin, et al. "Cost-Effectiveness of Second Generation Antipsychotics and Perphenazine in a Randomized Trial of Treatment for Chronic Schizophrenia." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163 (2006): 2080–89.

### WEB SITES

- National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Perphenazine." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682165.html>>.
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration. "Trilafon." Drug information. <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/foi/label/2001/11213s22lbl.pdf>>.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Person-centered therapy

### Definition

Person-centered therapy, which is also known as client-centered, non-directive, or Rogerian therapy, is an approach to counseling and **psychotherapy** that places much of the responsibility for the treatment process on the client, with the therapist taking a non-directive role.

### Purpose

Two primary goals of person-centered therapy are increased self-esteem and greater openness to experience. Some of the related changes that this form of therapy seeks to foster in clients include closer agreement between the client's idealized and actual selves; better self-understanding; lower levels of defensiveness, guilt, and insecurity; more positive and comfortable relationships with others; and an increased capacity to experience and express feelings at the moment they occur.

### Description

#### Background

Developed in the 1930s by the American **psychologist** Carl Rogers, client-centered therapy departed from the typically formal, detached role of the therapist emphasized in **psychoanalysis** and other forms of treatment. Rogers believed that therapy should take place in a supportive environment created by a close personal relationship between client and therapist. Rogers's introduction of the term "client" rather than "patient" expresses his rejection of the traditionally hierarchical relationship between therapist and client and his view of them as equals. In person-centered therapy, the client determines the general direction of therapy, while the therapist seeks to increase the client's insight and self-understanding through informal clarifying questions.

Beginning in the 1960s, person-centered therapy became associated with the human potential movement. This movement, dating back to the beginning of the 1900s, reflected an altered perspective of human nature. Previous psychological theories viewed human beings as inherently selfish and corrupt. For example, Freud's theory focused on sexual and aggressive tendencies as the primary forces driving human behavior. The human potential movement, by contrast, defined human nature as inherently good. From its perspective, human behavior is motivated by a drive to achieve one's fullest potential.

## CARL ROGERS (1902–1987)

Carl Rogers was an American psychotherapist who originated person-centered, non-directive counseling. In 1928 Rogers moved to Rochester, New York, where he began work as a psychologist for the Society for Prevention of Cruelty to Children. In contrast to Teachers College, many colleagues in Rochester emphasized a psychoanalytic approach to behavior. Through the practical and personal experiences in this clinic, however, he began to recognize that the results of both measurement psychologists and psychoanalysts were “never more than superficially effective.”

Several incidents in the Rochester clinic helped him “to perceive . . . that it is the client who knows what hurts, what direction to go, what problems are crucial, what experiences have been deeply buried. It began to occur to me that unless I had a need to demonstrate my own cleverness and learning, I would do better to rely upon the client for direction of movement in the therapeutic process.” For effective counseling, the psychotherapist, Rogers believed, is “to be genuine and without a facade . . . and to be empathetic in understanding. As a result the client begins to feel positive and accepting toward him-

self . . . his own defenses and facade diminishes . . . he becomes more open . . . and he finds that he is free to grow and change in desired directions.”

Over his lifetime he published approximately 260 articles and 15 books, which have had a significant influence on the development of psychology in the 20th century. He was prominent in the human potential movement, and his book on encounter groups had an impressive impact. After the mid-1970s Rogers was especially interested in facilitating groups involving antagonistic factions, whether the hostilities arose out of cultural, racial, religious, or national issues. He facilitated a group from Belfast containing militant Protestants and Catholics from Ireland and the English. He was involved in intercultural groups whose participants came from many nations, including participants from the Eastern European bloc countries. He facilitated Black-White groups in South Africa. He was deeply interested in applying the principles of the person-centered approach to international affairs in the interest of world peace. He died in 1987.

Self-actualization, a term derived from the human potential movement, is an important concept underlying person-centered therapy. It refers to the tendency of all human beings to move forward, grow, and reach their fullest potential. When humans move toward self-actualization, they are also pro-social; that is, they tend to be concerned for others and behave in honest, dependable, and constructive ways. The concept of self-actualization focuses on human strengths rather than human deficiencies. According to Rogers, self-actualization can be blocked by an unhealthy self-concept (negative or unrealistic attitudes about oneself).

Rogers adopted terms such as “person-centered approach” and “way of being” and began to focus on personal growth and self-actualization. He also pioneered the use of encounter groups, adapting the sensitivity training (T-group) methods developed by Kurt Lewin (1890–1947) and other researchers at the National Training Laboratories in the 1950s. More recently, two major variations of person-centered therapy have developed: experiential therapy, developed by Eugene Gendlin in 1979; and process-experiential therapy, developed by Leslie Greenberg and colleagues in 1993.

While person-centered therapy is considered one of the major therapeutic approaches, along with psychoanalytic and **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, Rogers’s

influence is felt in schools of therapy other than his own. The concepts and methods he developed are used in an eclectic fashion by many different types of counselors and therapists.

### Process

Rogers believed that the most important factor in successful therapy was not the therapist’s skill or training, but rather his or her attitude. Three interrelated attitudes on the part of the therapist are central to the success of person-centered therapy: congruence; unconditional positive regard; and empathy. Congruence refers to the therapist’s openness and genuineness—the willingness to relate to clients without hiding behind a professional facade. Therapists who function in this way have all their feelings available to them in therapy sessions and may share significant emotional reactions with their clients. Congruence does *not* mean, however, that therapists disclose their own personal problems to clients in therapy sessions or shift the focus of therapy to themselves in any other way.

Unconditional positive regard means that the therapist accepts the client totally for who he or she is without evaluating or censoring, and without disapproving of particular feelings, actions, or characteristics. The therapist communicates this attitude to the client by a willingness to listen without interrupting, judging, or giving advice. This attitude of positive

regard creates a nonthreatening context in which the client feels free to explore and share painful, hostile, defensive, or abnormal feelings without worrying about personal rejection by the therapist.

The third necessary component of a therapist's attitude is empathy ("accurate empathetic understanding"). The therapist tries to appreciate the client's situation from the client's point of view, showing an emotional understanding of and sensitivity to the client's feelings throughout the therapy session. In other systems of therapy, empathy with the client would be considered a preliminary step to enabling the therapeutic work to proceed; but in person-centered therapy, it actually constitutes a major portion of the therapeutic work itself. A primary way of conveying this empathy is by active listening that shows careful and perceptive attention to what the client is saying. In addition to standard techniques, such as eye contact, that are common to any good listener, person-centered therapists employ a special method called reflection, which consists of paraphrasing and/or summarizing what a client has just said. This technique shows that the therapist is listening carefully and accurately, and gives clients an added opportunity to examine their own thoughts and feelings as they hear them repeated by another person. Generally, clients respond by elaborating further on the thoughts they have just expressed.

According to Rogers, when these three attitudes (congruence, unconditional positive regard, and empathy) are conveyed by a therapist, clients can freely express themselves without having to worry about what the therapist thinks of them. The therapist does not attempt to change the client's thinking in any way. Even negative expressions are validated as legitimate experiences. Because of this nondirective approach, clients can explore the issues that are most important to them—not those considered important by the therapist. Based on the principle of self-actualization, this undirected, uncensored self-exploration allows clients to eventually recognize alternative ways of thinking that will promote personal growth. The therapist merely facilitates self-actualization by providing a climate in which clients can freely engage in focused, in-depth self-exploration.

### **Applications**

Rogers originally developed person-centered therapy in a children's clinic while he was working there; however, person-centered therapy was not intended for a specific age group or subpopulation but has been used to treat a broad range of people. Rogers worked extensively with people with **schizophrenia**

later in his career. His therapy has also been applied to persons suffering from **depression**, **anxiety**, alcohol disorders, cognitive dysfunction, and **personality disorders**. Some therapists argue that person-centered therapy is not effective with non-verbal or poorly educated individuals; others maintain that it can be successfully adapted to any type of person. The person-centered approach can be used in individual, group, or **family therapy**. With young children, it is frequently employed as **play therapy**.

There are no strict guidelines regarding the length or frequency of person-centered therapy. Generally, therapists adhere to a one-hour session once per week. True to the spirit of person-centered therapy, however, scheduling may be adjusted according to the client's expressed needs. The client also decides when to terminate therapy. Termination usually occurs when he or she feels able to better cope with life's difficulties.

### **Normal results**

The expected results of person-centered therapy include improved self-esteem; trust in one's inner feelings and experiences as valuable sources of information for making decisions; increased ability to learn from (rather than repeating) mistakes; decreased defensiveness, guilt, and insecurity; more positive and comfortable relationships with others; an increased capacity to experience and express feelings at the moment they occur; and openness to new experiences and new ways of thinking about life.

Outcome studies of humanistic therapies in general and person-centered therapy in particular indicate that people who have been treated with these approaches maintain stable changes over extended periods of time; that they change substantially compared to untreated persons; and that the changes are roughly comparable to the changes in clients who have been treated by other types of therapy. Humanistic therapies appear to be particularly effective in clients with depression or relationship issues. Person-centered therapy, however, appears to be slightly less effective than other forms of humanistic therapy in which therapists offer more advice to clients and suggest topics to explore.

### **Abnormal results**

If therapy has been unsuccessful, the client will not move in the direction of self-growth and self-acceptance. Instead, he or she may continue to display behaviors that reflect self-defeating attitudes or rigid patterns of thinking.

## KEY TERMS

**Congruence**—A quality of the client-centered therapist, consisting of openness to the client.

**Empathy**—A quality of the client-centered therapist, characterized by the therapist's conveying appreciation and understanding of the client's point of view.

**Encounter groups**—A term coined by Carl Rogers for therapist-run groups that focus on personal exploration, experiencing in the here-and-now (that is, feelings and interpersonal exchanges occurring in the group setting), and genuine concern and honesty among the members.

**Experiential therapy**—An approach to therapy that focuses on experiencing inner feelings, rather than talking about problems in a disconnected, intellectual way. Although it is based on person-centered therapy, experiential therapy is more directive because it uses techniques from a variety of therapeutic approaches to draw out a person's inner experiences.

**Human potential movement**—A movement dating back to the beginning of the 1900s that reflected an altered perspective of human nature from inherently corrupt to inherently good.

**Nondirective therapy**—An approach to therapy in which the therapist actively attempts to avoid giving advice, making interpretations, or otherwise influ-

encing the focus of the individual's thoughts or statements.

**Play therapy**—A type of psychotherapy for young children involving the use of toys and games to build a therapeutic relationship and encourage the child's self-expression.

**Process-experiential therapies**—A group of therapies based on a person-centered approach that incorporate elements of cognitive and Gestalt therapies.

**Self-actualization**—The belief that all human beings have an inborn tendency toward growth and self-improvement.

**Self-concept**—Attitudes about oneself.

**Sensitivity training**—Training conducted in T-groups to reduce tensions and racial prejudice among the public.

**T-groups**—Short for "basic skills training groups" that were focused on education and discussion regarding social issues, personal problems experienced outside the group setting, and problems from one's past.

**Unconditional positive regard**—A quality of the client-centered therapist, characterized by the therapist's acceptance of the client without judgment.

Several factors may affect the success of person-centered therapy. If an individual is not interested in therapy (for example, if he or she was forced to attend therapy), that person may not work well together with the therapist. The skill of the therapist may be another factor. In general, clients tend to overlook occasional therapist failures if a satisfactory relationship has been established. A therapist who continually fails to demonstrate unconditional positive regard, congruence, or empathy cannot effectively use this type of therapy. A third factor is the client's comfort level with nondirective therapy. Some studies have suggested that certain clients may get bored, frustrated, or annoyed with a Rogerian style of therapeutic interaction.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Cain, David J., ed. *Humanistic Psychotherapies: Handbook of Research and Practice*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2001.

Greenberg, Leslie S., Jeanne C. Watson, and Germain Liebau, eds. *Handbook of Experiential Psychotherapy*. New York: Guilford Press, 1998.

Rogers, Carl. *Client-Centered Therapy*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1951.

———. *On Becoming a Person*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1961.

———. *A Way of Being*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1980.

Sachse, Rainer, and Robert Elliott. "Process-Outcome Research on Humanistic Therapy Variables." In *Humanistic Psychotherapies: Handbook of Research and Practice*, edited by David J. Cain. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2001.

Thorne, Brian, and Elke Lambers, eds. *Person-Centred Therapy: A European Perspective*. London, UK: Sage Publications, 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

Kahn, Edwin. "A Critique of Nondirectivity in the Person-Centered Approach." *Journal of Humanistic Psychology* 39, no. 4 (1999): 94-110.

Kensit, Denise A. "Rogerian Theory: A Critique of the Effectiveness of Pure Client-Centred Therapy." *Counselling Psychology Quarterly* 13, no. 4 (2000): 345-351.

Myers, Sharon. "Empathic Listening: Reports on the Experience of Being Heard." *Journal of Humanistic Psychology* 40, no. 2 (2000): 148-173.

- Walker, Michael T. "Practical Applications of the Rogerian Perspective in Postmodern Psychotherapy." *Journal of Systemic Therapies* 20, no. 2 (2001): 41-57.
- Ward, Elaine, Michael King, Margaret Lloyd, Peter Bower, Bonnie Sibbald, Sharon Farrelly, Mark Gabbay, Nicholas Tarrier, and Julia Addington-Hall. "Randomised Controlled Trial of Non-Directive Counselling, Cognitive-Behaviour Therapy, and Usual General Practitioner Care for Patients with Depression. I: Clinical Effectiveness." *British Medical Journal* 321, no. 7273 (2000): 1383-1388.

## ORGANIZATIONS

Association for the Development of the Person-Centered Approach. <<http://www.adpca.org>>.

Center for Studies of the Person. 1150 Silverado, Suite 112, La Jolla, California 92037. (858) 459-3861. <<http://www.centerfortheperson.org>>.

World Association for Person-Centered and Experiential Psychotherapy and Counseling (WAPCEPC). c/o SGGT Office, Josefstrasse 79, CH-8005 Zürich, Switzerland. +41 1 2717170. <<http://pce-world.org>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

Although the *DSM-IV-TR* lists specific descriptions of 10 personality disorders, these conditions are often difficult to diagnose. Sometimes characteristics of the various disorders are associated with more than one condition. In other cases, the complexity of human behavior makes it difficult to pinpoint a clear dividing line between pathology and typicality in the assessment of personality. In still other cases persons may have more than one personality disorder, complicating the **diagnosis**. In addition, there has been relatively little research published on some of the personality disorders listed in the *DSM-IV-TR*.

The 10 personality disorders listed in *DSM-IV-TR* are:

- Paranoid personality disorder. The individual affected with this disorder believes in general that people will exploit, harm, or deceive him or her, even if there is no evidence to support this belief.
- Schizoid personality disorder. The individual with this disorder seems to lack the desire to experience intimacy or to belong in a social group, and often chooses being alone to being with others. This individual also tends not to show a full range of emotions.
- Schizotypal personality disorder. With this disorder, the affected person is uncomfortable with (and may be unable to sustain) close relationships, and also has odd behaviors and thoughts that would typically be viewed by others as eccentric, erratic, and bizarre.
- Antisocial personality disorder. Individuals with this disorder have no regard for the rights of others. Other, more recent names associated with this personality type are psychopath and sociopath. Unable to base their actions on anything except their own immediate desires, persons with this disorder demonstrate a pattern of impulsive, irresponsible, thoughtless, and sometimes criminal behavior. They are often intelligent, articulate individuals with an ability to charm and manipulate others; at their most dangerous, they can become violent criminals who are particularly harmful to society because their ability to gain the trust of others is combined with a lack of conscience or remorse.
- Borderline personality disorder. People with this disorder are unstable in their relationships, decisions, moods, and self-perceptions. These individuals are often impulsive and insecure.
- Histrionic personality disorder. The behavior of individuals of this personality type is characterized by persistent attention-seeking, exaggerated emotional displays (such as tantrums), and overreaction to trivial problems and events.
- Narcissistic personality disorder. This disorder consists primarily of an inflated sense of self-importance coupled with a lack of empathy for others. Individuals

## Personality disorders

### Definition

Personality disorders are long-standing, deeply ingrained patterns of social behavior that are detrimental to those who display them or to others.

### Description

Personality disorders constitute a separate diagnostic category (Axis II) in the American Psychiatric Association's *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM). Unlike the major mental disorders (Axis I), which are characterized by periods of illness and remission, personality disorders are generally ongoing. Often, personality disorders first appear in childhood or adolescence and persist throughout a person's lifetime. Aside from their persistence, the other major characteristic of personality disorders is inflexibility. Persons affected by these disorders have rigid personality traits and coping styles, are unable to adapt to changing situations, and experience impaired social and/or occupational functioning. A further difference between personality disorders and the major clinical syndromes listed in Axis I of the *DSM-IV-TR* (DSM, fourth edition, text revised) is that people with personality disorders may not perceive that there is anything wrong with their behavior and are not motivated to change it.

- with this disorder display an exaggerated sense of their own importance and abilities and tend to fantasize about them. Such persons also have a sense of entitlement, expecting (and taking for granted) special treatment and concessions from others. Paradoxically, individuals with narcissistic personality disorder are generally very insecure and suffer from low self-esteem.
- Avoidant personality disorder. This disorder has characteristics that resemble those of social phobia, including hypersensitivity to possible rejection and the resulting social withdrawal in spite of a strong need for love and acceptance. Individuals with this disorder are inhibited and feel inadequate in social situations.
  - Dependent personality disorder. Persons with dependent personality disorder are extremely passive and tend to subordinate their own needs to those of others. Due to their lack of self-confidence, they avoid asserting themselves and allow others to take responsibility for their lives.
  - Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder. This disorder is characterized by a preoccupation with orderliness, perfectionism, and control.

An additional category for personality disorders exists—personality disorder not otherwise specified. This category is reserved for clinicians' use when they encounter a patient with symptoms similar to one of the above disorders but do not meet the exact criteria for a specific disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Davidson, Kate. *Cognitive Therapy for Personality Disorders*. New York: Butterworth-Heinemann, 2000.
- Millon, T. *Disorders of Personality: DSM-IV and Beyond*. New York: Wiley-Interscience, 1995.
- Millon, T. *Personality Disorders in Modern Life: Character Disorders*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1999.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. (888) 357-7924. <<http://www.psych.org>>.
- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI), Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Ste. 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>.
- National Depressive and Manic-Depressive Association (NDMDA), 730 N. Franklin St., Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610. (800) 826-3632. <<http://www.ndmda.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health, Mental Health Public Inquiries, 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 15C-05, Rockville, MD 20857. (888) 826-9438. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

### WEB SITES

- National Library of Medicine. "Personality Disorders" <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/personalitydisorders.html>>.
- Merck Manual Online. "Personality Disorders" <<http://www.merck.com/mmhe/sec07/ch105/ch105a.html>>.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Pervasive developmental disorders

### Definition

Pervasive developmental disorders are a group of conditions originating in childhood that involve serious impairment in several areas, including physical, behavioral, cognitive, social, and language development.

### Description

Pervasive developmental disorders (PDDs) are thought to be genetically based, with no evidence linking them to environmental factors; their incidence in the general population is estimated at 1%. The most serious PDD is **autism**, a condition characterized by severely impaired social interaction, communication, and abstract thought, and often manifested by stereotyped and repetitive behavior patterns. Many children who are diagnosed with PDDs today would have been labeled psychotic or schizophrenic in the past.

The handbook used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders such as PDDs is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. The 2000 edition of this manual (fourth edition, text revised) is known as the *DSM-IV-TR*. Published by the American Psychiatric Association, the *DSM* contains diagnostic criteria, research findings, and treatment information for mental disorders. It is the primary reference for mental health professionals in the United States.

The *DSM* lists several other conditions as PDDs:

### Rett's disorder

Characterized by physical, mental, and social impairment, this syndrome appears between the ages of five months and four years in children whose development has been normal up to that point. Occurring only in girls, it involves impairment of coordination, repetitive movements, a slowing of head growth, and severe or profound **mental retardation**, as well as impaired social and **communication skills**.

### **Childhood disintegrative disorder**

This disorder is marked by the deterioration of previously acquired physical, social, and communication skills after at least two years of normal development. More common in males than females, it first appears between the ages of two and 10 (usually at three or four years of age), and many of its symptoms resemble those of autism. Other names for this disorder are Heller's syndrome, **dementia infantilis**, and **disintegrative psychosis**. It sometimes appears in conjunction with a medical condition such as Schilder's disease, but usually no organic cause can be found.

### **Asperger's disorder**

Children with this disorder have many of the same social and behavioral impairments as autism, except for difficulties with language. They lack normal tools of social interaction, such as the ability to meet someone else's gaze, use appropriate body language and gestures, or react to another person's thoughts and feelings. Behavioral impairments include the repetitive, stereotyped motions and rigid adherence to routines that are characteristic of autism. Like **childhood disintegrative disorder**, **Asperger's disorder** is more common in males than females.

### **Prognosis**

In general, the prognosis in each of these conditions is tied to the severity of the illness.

The prognosis for Asperger's syndrome is more hopeful than the others in this cluster. These children are likely to become functional, independent adults, but will always have problems with social relationships. They are also at greater risk for developing serious mental illness than the general population.

The prognosis for autistic disorder is not as good, although great strides have been made in recent years in its treatment. The higher the patient's intelligence quotient (IQ) and ability to communicate, the better the prognosis. However, many patients will always need some level of custodial care. In the past, most of these individuals were confined to institutions, but many are now able to live in **group homes** or supervised apartments. The prognosis for childhood disintegrative disorder is the least favorable. These children will require intensive and long-term care.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. Fourth edition, text

revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Volkmar, Fred R., ed. *Autism and Pervasive Developmental Disorders*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1998.

Waltz, Mitzi, and Linda Lamb. *Pervasive Developmental Disorders: Finding a Diagnosis & Getting Help*. Cambridge: O'Reilly & Associates, Incorporated, 1999.

### **ORGANIZATIONS**

Autism National Committee (AUTCOM). P.O. Box 6175, North Plymouth, MA 02362-6175. Web site: <<http://www.autcom.org/>>.

Autism Research Institute. 4182 Adams Avenue, San Diego, CA 92116. Telephone: (619) 281-7165. Web site: <<http://www.autism.com/ari>>.

New Jersey Center for Outreach and Services for the Autism Community (COSAC). 1450 Parkside Avenue Suite 22, Ewing, NJ 08638. Telephone: (609) 883-8100 or (800) 4-AUTISM (428-8476). Web site: <<http://www.njcosac.org>>.

**PET** see **Positron emission tomography**

## **Phencyclidine and related disorders**

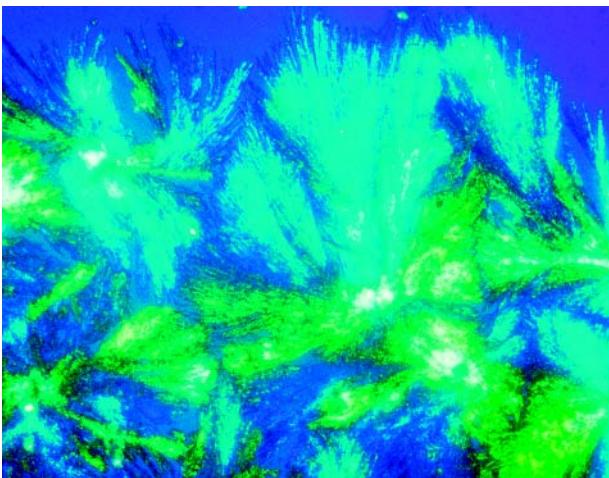
### **Definition**

Phencyclidine (PCP) is a street drug known as "angel dust" that causes physiological changes to the nervous and circulatory system, disturbances in thinking and behavior, and can cause **hallucinations**, psychotic disorder, mood disorder, and **anxiety** disorder.

### **Description**

PCP is the best known of several related drugs including ketamine, cyclohexamine, and dizocilpine. PCP was first synthesized by a pharmaceutical company in the 1950s and sold under the brand names Sernyl and Sernylan until 1967. It was hoped that PCP could be used as a dissociative anesthetic, because it produced a catatonic state where patients were dissociated from their environment and from pain, but not unconscious. Problems with side effects as the drug wore off, including agitated behavior and hallucinations, made PCP unsuitable for medical use. Ketamine (Ketalar, Ketaject) is less potent, has fewer side effects, and is approved for use as a human anesthetic.

PCP became an illicit street drug in the mid-1960s. It was most commonly found in large cities such as New York and San Francisco, and even today, most users tend to live in urban areas. Into the 1970s, PCP



**Angel dust crystals.** (Martin M. Rotker/Photo Researchers, Inc)

appeared mainly as a contaminant of other illicit drugs, especially marijuana and **cocaine**. This complicated **diagnosis** of PCP use, as many people did not know that they had ingested the drug.

PCP is easy to manufacture and is inexpensive. By the late 1970s, in some urban areas its use equaled that of crack cocaine. Use of PCP peaked between 1973 and 1979. Since 1980, PCP use has declined, although as with most illicit drugs, its popularity increases and decreases in cycles. In 2005, 2.4% of high school seniors reported having used PCP at least once, and 1.3% of high school seniors had used it once in the past year.

People who use PCP exhibit both behavioral and physiological signs. The effects of PCP are erratic, and serious complications can occur at relatively low doses. It is often difficult to distinguish PCP use from the use of other illicit drugs, and many people who use PCP also **abuse** other substances. According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*), which presents guidelines used by the American Psychiatric Association for diagnosis of mental disorders, phencyclidine can induce mood disorder, psychotic disorder, and anxiety disorder—but these classifications are somewhat controversial and not all are recognized by international psychiatric organizations. Animal studies suggest that both conditions occur, just as they do with many other abused drugs.

PCP is a Schedule II drug under the Controlled Substances Act, which means it has a high potential for abuse and dependence and has severe restrictions for medical use. In its pure form, it is a white powder that dissolves easily in water. Once dissolved, the solution can be sprayed on tobacco or marijuana cigarettes. Less pure forms range from yellowish-tan to

brown and can be a sticky mass. On the street PCP has many names including angel dust, devil dust, tranq, hog, crazy Eddie, rocket fuel, embalming fluid, wack, and ozone. Ketamine, which is legal and not regulated as a Schedule III controlled substance (which is has a lower potential for abuse than Schedule I or II drugs), also used illicitly, is known on the street as K, special K, and cat valium. Crack cocaine combined with PCP is sometimes called tragic magic. Marijuana laced with PCP is called love boat, killer weed, or crystal supergrass.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

PCP is easy to manufacture and is inexpensively available on the street in most cities, especially East Coast cities. It can be eaten, smoked, injected, or snorted, and is readily soluble and will cross the skin barrier if liquid PCP is spilled on skin or clothing. The most common methods of ingestion are eating and smoking marijuana or tobacco on which liquid PCP has been sprayed. PCP is long-acting. It accumulates in body fat, and flashbacks can occur as it is released from fat during exercise.

PCP binds to receptors in the **brain** and interferes with the chemical reactions that mediate the transmission of nerve impulses. It is deactivated slowly by the liver and excreted in urine. Although there are no controlled human studies on PCP intoxication, monkeys allowed free use of PCP will dose themselves repeatedly and maintain an almost continuous state of intoxication. They exhibit withdrawal symptoms if their supply of the drug is restricted. PCP is considered to be psychologically and possibly physically addictive in humans.

### Symptoms

PCP produces both physiological and psychological symptoms. Effects of the drug are erratic and not always dose-dependent. Physical symptoms include:

- involuntary rapid movements of the eyes vertically or horizontally
- high blood pressure
- racing heartbeat
- dizziness and shakiness
- drooling
- increased body temperature
- reduced response to pain
- slurred speech
- excessive sensitivity to sound

- lack of muscle coordination
- muscle rigidity or frozen posture
- seizures
- breakdown of muscle and excretion of muscle proteins in urine
- coma
- death

Psychiatric and social symptoms include:

- disordered thinking and confusion
- impaired judgment
- belligerence
- aggressiveness
- agitation
- impulsiveness and unpredictability
- schizophrenic-like psychoses
- hallucinations of sight, sound, or touch
- memory impairment
- difficulty in social-emotional relationships
- chaotic lifestyle including difficulty functioning at work or school, legal and financial problems

PCP is known for its variability of symptoms, which change both from person to person and from exposure to exposure. In addition, symptoms come and go throughout a period of intoxication that can last from one to two hours for low-dose exposure to one to four days for high-dose exposure. Severity of symptoms is not always related to the size of the dose as measured by blood levels of the drug.

Three rough phases of intoxication have been established: behavioral toxicity, stuporous stage, and comatose stage. Many patients fluctuate between phases, and some present symptoms that do not fit neatly into any phase. In the behavioral toxicity stage, people tend to gaze blankly while their eyes dart horizontally or vertically. Muscle control is poor, and the person may make repetitive movements, grind the teeth, or grimace. Body temperature, heart rate, and respiration are mildly elevated. Vomiting and drooling may occur.

In the stuporous phase the eyes are wide open, and the person appears wide awake, but in a stupor. Seizures may occur if the person is stimulated. The eyes may dart in any direction while the gaze remains fixed. Body temperature is increased substantially. Heart and respiration rate are increased by about 25%. Muscles are rigid with twitching.

In the comatose stage, which may last from one to four days, the person is in a deep coma. The pupils are dilated and the eyes drift. Body temperature is elevated to the point of being life-threatening. The heart

rate is dangerously high, increasing to about twice the normal level and blood pressure is dangerously low. Breathing may stop for brief periods (apnea). There is no response to pain, and the person sweats heavily. Death is possible, although most deaths with PCP occur in earlier stages through accidents or **suicide**.

## Demographics

In a recent analysis of PCP admissions, researchers found that 49% of people admitted for a substance-use problem with PCP as the primary substance were African American; another 26% were Hispanic, and 19% were Caucasian. Admissions for PCP as the primary drug were less than 1% of overall admissions for substance-use problems. In addition, admissions for PCP use in the United States were more frequent in the West and Northeast than in the South or Midwest. The average age at admission was 28 years, and most PCP users were male. In terms of education, people admitted for PCP substance-use problems were more likely than people admitted for other drugs to have dropped out of high school and less likely to have full-time employment. However, they were less likely than people admitted for other substances to have an accompanying psychiatric problem.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosis of PCP abuse or dependence is often complicated by the fact that symptoms are variable. Most people who use PCP also use other drugs (74% of users in one survey used at least one other substance); and PCP can be a contaminant in other street drugs or can itself be contaminated with other chemicals. PCP use is also found among people with psychiatric disorders. In many ways, PCP mimics the symptoms of **schizophrenia**.

The American Psychiatric Association describes two classes of PCP disorders: PCP dependence and PCP abuse. In addition, it recognizes seven other PCP-induced psychiatric disorders.

PCP dependence can be difficult to pinpoint because, unlike many other drugs of abuse, PCP does not necessarily cause craving in everyone who uses it, although some people report it. In addition, although studies of specific populations have identified signs of tolerance or withdrawal, these symptoms have not been clearly categorized for PCP use. Generally, a person with PCP dependence will engage in PCP use several times a day and persist in using it, even when psychological problems (such as anxiety or rage) and/or medical problems (such as high blood pressure or seizures) arise. Aggression has been identified as a key problem

for people dependent on PCP. People with psychiatric disorders are more likely to have bad side effects from PCP than those without psychiatric problems. Because PCP is readily stored in fat and released as fat stores are used, adverse effects of PCP dependence can continue for weeks after the drug is discontinued.

People who exhibit signs of PCP abuse may use the drug less often than those with dependence, but they also may experience interference with their ability to fulfill their responsibilities at school, work, or home. In addition, with the impaired judgment associated with PCP use, the person may engage in dangerous behaviors, such as driving a car, while under the drug's influence. The person's use of the drug may have triggered trouble in their personal relationships or with the law.

Phencyclidine-induced disorders include:

- PCP intoxication with or without perceptual disturbances
- PCP intoxication delirium
- PCP-induced psychotic disorder
- PCP-induced mood disorder
- PCP-induced anxiety disorder
- PCP-induced disorders not otherwise specified

PCP intoxication and delirium are diagnosed by a history of recent PCP use, behavioral changes and physical changes that are not accounted for by any other substance use, medical condition, or psychiatric condition. PCP is present in the blood and urine. With PCP intoxication, a patient may have hallucinations but be aware that these are caused by PCP use.

PCP delirium is diagnosed when a patient exhibits muddled thinking, hostility, bouts of hyperactivity and aggressiveness, and schizophrenic-like symptoms, as well as the more severe physical symptoms listed above. PCP delirium can last for hours or days.

It may be difficult initially to separate PCP intoxication or delirium from other mental disorders, as symptoms may mimic **depression**, schizophrenia, mood disorders, **conduct disorder**, and **antisocial personality disorder**. People with PCP intoxication also have physical and psychological symptoms similar to those that occur with the use of other illicit drugs, complicating diagnosis. A complete physical and psychological history helps rule out these other conditions.

## Treatments

People experiencing PCP intoxication or delirium often hurt themselves or others. They are generally kept in an environment where there is as little stimu-

lation as possible. They are restrained only as much as is necessary to keep them from hurting themselves or others until the level of PCP in their bodies can be reduced. Antipsychotic medications may be used to calm patients in cases of PCP delirium.

There are no quick ways to rid the body of PCP. If the PCP has been eaten, stomach pumping or feeding activated charcoal may help keep the drug from being absorbed into the bloodstream. Physical symptoms such as high body temperature are treated as needed.

Most people recover from PCP intoxication or delirium without major medical complications. Many are habitual users who return to use almost immediately. There are no specific behavioral therapies to treat PCP use. **Antidepressants** are sometimes prescribed. Long-term residential treatment or intensive outpatient treatment along with urine monitoring offers some chance of success. Narcotics Anonymous, a self-help group, may be helpful for some patients.

## Prognosis

**Relapse** and return to PCP use is common, even among people who have experienced severe medical and psychiatric complications from the drug. Because many users also abuse other drugs, their success in renouncing PCP is tied to their successful treatment for other addictions. Successful treatment takes persistence, patience, and a functional support system, all of which many users lack.

## Prevention

PCP intoxication and related disorders can be prevented by not using the drug.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Galanter, Marc, and Herbert D. Kleber, eds. *Textbook of Substance Abuse Treatment*. 2nd ed. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, Inc., 1999.
- Giannini, James. *Drug Abuse: A Family Guide to Detection, Treatment and Education*. Los Angeles: Health Information Press, 1999.
- Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol.1. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Clearinghouse for Alcohol and Drug Information.  
P. O. Box 2345, Rockville, MD 20852. Telephone: (800) 729-6686. Web site: <<http://www.health.org>>.

National Institute on Drug Abuse. 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 10 A-39, Rockville, MD 20857. Telephone: (888) 644-6432. Web site: <<http://niad.nih.gov>>.

#### OTHER

Drug and Alcohol Services Information System. "The DASIS Report: Characteristics of Primary Phencyclidine (PCP) Admissions: 2001." Available online at: <<http://oas.samhsa.gov/2k4/PCPt/Pt.htm>>.

National Institute on Drug Abuse. "NIDA InfoFacts: PCP (Phencyclidine)." Available online at: <<http://www.nida.nih.gov/Infofacts/PCP.html>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Phenelzine

### Definition

Phenelzine is classified as a monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitor. It is used to treat several types of serious **depression**. In the United States, phenelzine is sold under the brand name Nardil.

### Purpose

Phenelzine is used to treat certain types forms of serious depression and severe depression complicated by severe **anxiety** that do not respond to other anti-depressant drugs.

### Description

Phenelzine is a member of a class of drugs called monoamine oxidase inhibitors. Monoamine oxidase, or MAO, is an enzyme found throughout the body. In the **brain**, MAO breaks down norepinephrine and serotonin, two naturally occurring chemicals that are important in maintaining mental well-being and preventing depression. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors, such as phenelzine, reduce the activity of MAO. Less norepinephrine and serotonin are broken down, so their levels rise. This helps to lift depression.

Phenelzine is effective for treating depression, especially complicated types of depression that have not responded to more traditional **antidepressants**. However, phenelzine also affects the MAO enzyme in many other areas of the body. This accounts for the large number of serious side effects and drug interactions it causes.

### Recommended dosage

Adults are usually started on 15 mg of phenelzine three times per day. This dosage can be increased to a maximum of 90 mg per day if lower doses are not effective, and the patient can tolerate the higher dose without excessive side effects. After the maximum benefits are achieved, the dosage is usually lowered over several weeks to the lowest level that is effective. This could be as little as 15 mg daily or every other day.

In general, phenelzine is not recommended for people over the age of 60. When it is used by the elderly, the starting dosage is usually 15 mg taken in the morning. This dose may be gradually increased over time to a maximum of 60 mg. Phenelzine is not frequently given to children under the age of 16, and recommended dosage in such cases has not been established.

Phenelzine can be taken with food or on an empty stomach. It should not be taken close to bedtime, because it can interfere with sleep. The benefits of this drug may not become apparent for as long as four to eight weeks. Patients should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see an immediate improvement.

### Precautions

People with a history of congestive heart failure, high blood pressure, cardiovascular disease, headache, kidney disease, or liver disease should not take phenelzine or, if they do take it, they should be under careful medical supervision and monitoring. Children under the age of 16 and people with a history of low blood pressure, bipolar mental disorders, angina, hyperactivity, diabetes mellitus, **seizures**, suicidal thoughts, and overactive thyroid should discuss the risks and benefits of this drug with their physician, and a decision to treat should be made on an individual basis. If these patients receive phenelzine, it should be taken only under the careful supervision of a doctor. Evidence suggests that phenelzine should not be used during pregnancy or while nursing.

People taking phenelzine should get up slowly from a reclining position to prevent dizziness. Those who use phenelzine should use caution when operating heavy machinery or performing hazardous activities that require alertness.

It is very important for the doctor to determine the lowest dosage of phenelzine that produces benefits. When this dosage is exceeded, side effects and interactions increase substantially. Over-the-counter medications that contain decongestants or dextromethorphan (for example, some cough syrups and cold remedies) should

not be taken while using phenelzine (see “Interactions,” below). In addition, foods and beverages that contain tyramine should not be eaten while using this medication. These foods include yeast or meat extracts, fermented sausage, overripe fruit, sauerkraut, cheese, and fava beans. Phenelzine should not be used within two weeks of undergoing surgery that requires anesthesia.

### Side effects

The enzyme monoamine oxidase regulates functions throughout the body. Phenelzine decreases the activity of monoamine oxidase in all the areas of the body where it exists, not just in the brain. This is why phenelzine is capable of causing a wide variety of side effects in many different organ systems.

The most common and unavoidable side effects associated with phenelzine use are swelling of the feet and ankles, low blood pressure upon arising from a reclining position, and **insomnia** if taken near bedtime. Mild side effects and ones that are not frequent include skin rash, headache, dizziness, confusion, memory impairment, drowsiness, weakness, shakiness, muscle twitching, constipation, indigestion, appetite changes, and dry mouth. Although these side effects are considered mild, they should be reported to the treating doctor.

More serious side effects include hepatitis coupled with jaundice, high blood pressure crisis, excessive nervousness, and changes in heart rate. The high blood pressure crisis involves significantly increased blood pressure, severe headache, heart palpitations, nausea, vomiting, and sweating. These symptoms need immediate medical attention. Sexual function can be affected in both men and women.

### Interactions

Phenelzine interacts with a long list of drugs. Some of these interactions can cause death. This section is not a complete list of interactions, but it includes the most serious ones. Patients must make sure that every health care professional who takes care of them (for example, doctors, dentists, podiatrists, optometrists, pharmacists, nurses) knows that they take phenelzine, as well as all of the other prescription, nonprescription, and herbal drugs they take.

All foods and beverages containing tyramine need to be avoided while taking this medication. Coffee, tea, and cola beverages should be restricted to one serving per day. Alcohol should not be used while taking phenelzine, because it can significantly increase blood pressure.

## KEY TERMS

**Amphetamines**—A group of powerful and highly addictive substances that stimulate the central nervous system. May be prescribed for various medical conditions, but are often purchased illicitly and abused.

**Angina**—Severe pain and a feeling of constriction around the heart.

**Bipolar affective disorder**—A disorder in which a person alternates manic and depressive episodes.

**Hepatitis**—An inflammation of the liver that can be caused by a variety of factors.

**Jaundice**—A yellowing of the skin caused by excess bilirubin in the blood; a liver disorder.

**Nonendogenous**—A factor that arises or is produced outside of the organism.

**Tyramine**—Intermediate product between the chemicals tyrosine and epinephrine in the body and a substance normally found in many foods. Found especially in protein-rich foods that have been aged or fermented, pickled, or bacterially contaminated, such as cheese, beer, yeast, wine, and chicken liver.

Any type of amphetamine and other stimulant should not be used, because this combination can increase blood pressure to dangerously high levels. Phenelzine should not be combined with other antidepressants, because of increased risk of dangerously high blood pressure and manic episodes. Patients taking phenelzine should stop the drug, then wait at least 14 days before starting any other antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing another antidepressant and starting phenelzine. Phenelzine combined with **barbiturates** can prolong the effects of barbiturates.

Phenelzine combined with **clomipramine** (Anafranil) can cause death. Diet drugs and decongestants containing compounds such as dextromethorphan should not be combined with phenelzine because of an increased risk of seizures and agitation. Phenelzine can decrease the effectiveness of high blood pressure drugs, such as guanadrel (Hylorel) and guanethidine (Ismelin). Phenelzine combined with the Parkinson disease drug levodopa (Dopar, Larodopa) can produce severely high blood pressure. Lithium should not be used with phenelzine because of the risk of developing extremely high fever. Phenelzine can prolong the effects of muscle relaxants when the two are combined.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Consumer Reports Staff. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*. 2002 ed. Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.
- Ellsworth, Allan J. and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. 2001-2002. St. Louis: Mosby, Inc., 2001.
- Hardman, Joel G., Lee E. Limbird, ed. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.
- Mosby's GenRx Staff. *Mosby's GenRx*. 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1999.
- Venes, Donald, and others. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*. 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

Mark Mitchell, M.D.

**Phobias see *Agoraphobia, Social phobias, and Specific phobias***

## Phonological disorder

### Definition

Phonological disorder occurs when a child does not develop the ability to produce some or all sounds necessary for speech that are normally used at his or her age.

### Description

Phonological disorder is sometimes referred to as articulation disorder, developmental articulation disorder, or speech sound production disorder. If there is no known cause, it is sometimes called "developmental phonological disorder". If the cause is known to be of neurological origin, the names "dysarthria" or "dyspraxia" are often used. Phonological disorder is characterized by a child's inability to create speech at a level expected of his or her age group because of an inability to form the necessary sounds.

There are many different levels of severity of phonological disorder. These range from speech that is completely incomprehensible, even to a child's immediate family members, to speech that can be understood by everyone but in which some sounds are slightly mispronounced. Treatment for phonological disorder is important not only for the child's development to be able to form speech sounds, but for other reasons, as well. Children who have problems creating speech sounds may have academic problems in subject areas such as spelling or reading. Also, children who sound different than their peers may find themselves

frustrated and ridiculed, and may become less willing to participate in play or classroom activities.

### Causes

Phonological disorder is often divided into three categories, based on the cause of the disorder. One cause is structural problems, or abnormalities in the areas necessary for speech sound production, such as the tongue or the roof of the mouth. These abnormalities make it difficult for children to produce certain sounds, and in some cases make it impossible for a child to produce the sounds at all. The structural problem causing the phonological disorder generally needs to be treated before the child goes into language therapy. This therapy is especially useful, because in many of these cases correction of the structural problem results in correction of the speech sound problem.

The second category of phonological disorder is problems caused by neurological problems or abnormalities. This category includes problems with the muscles of the mouth that do not allow the child sufficient fine motor control over the muscles to produce all speech sounds. The third category of phonological disorder is phonological disorder of an unknown cause. This is sometimes called "developmental phonological disorder." Although the cause is not known, here is much speculation. Possible causes include slight brain abnormalities, causes rooted in the child's environment, and immature development of the neurological system. As of this writing in 2002, there is research pointing to all of these factors, but no definitive cause has been found.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of phonological disorder differ significantly depending on the age of the child. It is often difficult to detect this disorder, as the child with phonological disorder develops speech sounds more slowly than his or her peers; generally, however, he or she develops them in the same sequence. Therefore, speech that may be normal for a four-year-old child may be a sign of phonological disorder in a six-year-old.

Nearly all children develop speech sounds in the same sequence. The consonant sounds are grouped into three main groups of eight sounds each: the early eight, the middle eight, and the late eight. The early eight include consonant sounds such as "m," "b," and "p." The middle eight include sounds such as "t," "g," and "chi," and the late eight include more complicated sounds such as "sh," "th," "z," and "zh." Many children do not normally finish mastering the late eight until they are seven or eight years old. As children

normally develop speech sound skills, there are some very common mistakes that are made. These include the omission of sounds,(i.e., frequently at the end of words), the distortion of sounds, or the substitution of one sound for another. Often the substitution is of a sound that the child can more easily produce for one that he or she cannot.

### Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** for phonologic disorder depends greatly on the age of the child in question. Children who are four years old may have speech production difficulties that show normal development for their age, while children who are eight years old and making the same mistakes may have phonological disorder. In children with phonological disorder, the pattern and order of speech sound acquisition is usually similar to that of normally developing children. However, the speech sound skills develop more slowly, so age is an important factor in determining a diagnosis of phonological disorder. Children with phonological disorder may make the same speech sound mistakes as younger, normally developing children. In some cases, however, children with phonological disorder have demonstrated more instances of omissions, substitutions, and distortions in their speech.

When exploring a diagnosis of phonological disorder, it is generally recommended that a physician check for other possible causes of the signs and symptoms. A child's hearing should be checked, because speech sounds that are not heard well by a child cannot be imitated and learned well. In school-age children, reading comprehension should be checked to discover any other language disorders, which are sometimes present in addition to phonological disorder. Any general developmental delays should also be checked by the physician. It is important to remember that for some children whose mother tongue is one other than English, the problems with speech sounds may result from poor crossover of sounds between the child's languages. Therefore, when diagnosing a child who a different mother tongue,, it is recommended that tests involve the child's first language, as well as English. Also, it must be remembered that in some parts of the country, normal pronunciation of some words is different from pronunciation in other parts of the country. Therefore a child's background and history can be very important in making a diagnosis.

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders- IV-TR*(DSM-IV-TR) states that for a diagnosis of phonological disorder to be made, three general criteria must be met. The first criterion is that the child is not developing speech sounds skills considered

to be appropriate for his or her age group. Also, this lack of speech sound acquisition must be causing problems for the child at home, at school, or in other important aspects of the child's life. If the child is mentally retarded, has problems with his or her speech muscles or hearing, or if there is environmental deprivation, a diagnosis of phonological disorder may still be appropriate. The diagnosis can only be made, however, if the lack of speech sounds skill is considered greater than can the child's other problems.

### Demographics

Phonological disorder of unknown cause is considered significantly more common than phonological disorder that is caused by neurological or structural abnormalities. It has been estimated that 7–8% children who are five years old have phonological disorder with any cause (developmental phonological disorder). About 7.5% of children between the ages of three and eleven are thought to have development phonological disorder. Phonological disorder is more common in boys than it is in girls. Estimates suggest that two to four times as many boys as girls have the disorder. Children who have phonological disorder are more likely to have other language problems and disorders. Children with one or more family members who have this or similar language disorders are also considered to be more likely to have phonological disorders.

### Treatment

Treatment by a speech-language pathologist is generally recommended for children with phonological disorders. The therapy will differ depending on an individual child's needs, but generally takes the form of practicing sounds. Sometimes the child is shown the physical ways that the sound is made, such as where to place the tongue and how to form the lips. Repetition of the difficult sounds with the therapist is an integral part of treatment. There is debate, however, over the way that children with more severe forms of the disorder should be treated. Some therapists believe that the sounds that are learned later in development should be addressed first, even if the child has not developed the more simple sound skills. Other therapists believe that simple sounds should be treated first, as it is easier for children with phonological disorder to master them. One other school of thought is that when the child develops a sense of accomplishment when these sounds are mastered, and he or she will more willingly continue with treatment. There is ongoing research on this debate, and the results as of 2002 are still mixed.

## KEY TERMS

**Dysarthria**—A group of speech disorders caused by disturbances in the strength or coordination of the muscles of the speech mechanism as a result of damage to the brain or nerves. Difficulty talking and speaking.

**Dyspraxia**—Developmental dyspraxia is an impairment or immaturity of the organization of movement. It is a defect in the way the brain processes information, resulting in messages not being correctly or fully transmitted. The term dyspraxia comes from the word “praxis”, meaning “doing” or “acting”. Dyspraxia is associated with problems of perception, language, and thought.

Children who have phonological disorder because of neurological or structural problems that do not allow them to produce some sounds are often helped to find approximate alternatives for the sounds within the range of sounds that they are able to produce.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for children with phonological disorder is generally good. For many children, the problem resolves spontaneously. It is reported that in 75% of children with mild-or-moderate forms of the disorder, and whose problems do not stem from a medical condition, the symptoms resolve before age six. In many other cases, children who receive treatment eventually develop normal or close to normal speech. In some cases, there may be mild effects that last until adulthood, but speech is completely understandable. For children with phonological disorder due to a neurological or structural cause, the outcome generally rests on how well the cause of the problem is treated.

### Prevention

There is no known way to prevent phonological disorder. A healthy diet during pregnancy and regular prenatal care may help to prevent some of the neurological or structural problems that can result in the disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Rvachew, Susan, and Michele Nowak. “The Effect of Target-Selection Strategy on Phonological Learning.” *Journal of Speech, Language, and Hearing Research* 44, no. 3 (June 2001): 610.
- Weismer, Susan Ellis, and others. “Nonword Repetition Performance in School-age Children with and without Language Impairment.” *Journal of Speech, Language, and Hearing Research* 43, no. 4 (August 2000).

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Ave. NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. (202) 966-7300. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.
- The American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. (847) 434-4000 <[www.aap.org](http://www.aap.org)>.
- American Speech-Language-Hearing Association. 10801 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20852. (800) 638-8355. <<http://www.asha.org>>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Pica

### Definition

Pica is a term that refers to cravings for substances that are not foods. Materials consumed by patients with pica include dirt, ice, clay, glue, sand, chalk, beeswax, chewing gum, laundry starch, and hair.

### Description

Pica is the craving or ingestion of nonfood items. The cravings found in patients diagnosed with pica may be associated with a nutritional deficiency state, such as iron-deficiency anemia; with pregnancy; or with **mental retardation** or mental illness. The word *pica* is derived from the Latin word for magpie, a species of bird that feeds on whatever it encounters.

The mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (2000), which is abbreviated as *DSM-IV-TR*, classifies pica under the heading of “Feeding and Eating Disorders of Infancy or Early Childhood.” A **diagnosis** of pica requires that the patient must persist in eating nonfood substances for at least one month. This behavior must be inappropriate for the child's stage of development. Further, it must not be approved or encouraged by the child's culture.



**Diabetic gastric motility disorder, showing bezoar formation mass of partially digested and undigested gastric residues (center circular object).** (PHOTOTAKE Inc./Alamy)

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The cause of pica is not known. Many hypotheses have been developed to explain the behavior. These have included a variety of such factors as cultural influences; low socioeconomic status; deficiency diseases; and psychological disorders.

Malnutrition is often diagnosed at the same time as pica. A causal link has not been established. Eating clay has been associated with iron deficiency; however, whether decreased iron absorption is caused by eating clay or whether iron deficiency prompts people to eat clay is not known. Some cultural groups are said to teach youngsters to eat clay. Persons with iron deficiency anemia have also been reported to chew on ice cubes. Again, the mechanism or causal link is not known.

Eating paint is most common among children from families of low socioeconomic status. It is often associated with lack of parental supervision. Hunger also may result in pica.

Among persons with mental retardation, pica has been explained as the result of an inability to tell the difference between food and nonfood items. This explanation, however, is not supported by examples of nonfood items that were deliberately selected and eaten by persons with limited mental faculties.

Pica, iron deficiency, and a number of other physiological disturbances in humans have been associated with decreased activity of the **dopamine** system in the

**brain.** Dopamine is a neurotransmitter, or chemical that helps to relay the transmission of nerve impulses from one nerve cell to another. This association has led some researchers to think that there may be a connection between abnormally low levels of dopamine in the brain and the development of pica. No specific underlying biochemical disorders have been identified, however.

Risk factors for pica include the following:

- parental/child psychopathology
- family disorganization
- environmental deprivation
- pregnancy
- epilepsy
- brain damage
- mental retardation
- pervasive developmental disorders

### Symptoms

Infants and children diagnosed with pica commonly eat paint, plaster, string, hair, and cloth. Older children may eat animal droppings, sand, insects, leaves, pebbles and cigarette butts. Adolescents and adults most often ingest clay or soil.

The symptoms of pica vary with the item ingested.

- Sand or soil is associated with gastric pain and occasional bleeding.
- Chewing ice may cause abnormal wear on teeth.
- Eating clay may cause constipation.
- Swallowing metal objects may lead to bowel perforation.
- Eating fecal material often leads to such infectious diseases as toxocariasis, toxoplasmosis, and trichuriasis.
- Consuming lead can lead to kidney damage and mental retardation.

### Demographics

Pica tends to taper off as children grow older. The disorder occasionally continues into adolescence but is rarely observed in adults who are not disabled.

Pica is observed more commonly during the second and third years of life and is considered to be developmentally inappropriate in children older than 18–24 months. Research findings indicate that the disorder occurs in 25%–33% of young children and 20% of children in mental health clinics. Among individuals with mental retardation, pica occurs most often in those between the ages of 10–20 years. Among young pregnant women, the onset of pica is frequently

associated with a first pregnancy in late adolescence or early adulthood. Although pica usually stops at the end of the pregnancy, it may continue intermittently for years.

Pica usually occurs with equal frequency among males and females. It is relatively uncommon, however, among adolescent and adult males of average intelligence who live in developed countries.

## Diagnosis

Pica is often diagnosed in a hospital emergency room, when the child or adolescent develops symptoms of lead poisoning, bowel perforation, or other medical complications caused by the nonfood items that have been swallowed. Laboratory studies may be used to assess these complications. The choice of imaging or laboratory studies depends on the characteristics of the ingested materials and the resultant medical problems.

The examining doctor may order a variety of **imaging studies** in order to identify the ingested materials and treat the gastrointestinal complications of pica. These imaging studies may include the following:

- abdominal x rays
- barium examinations of the upper and lower gastrointestinal (GI) tracts
- upper GI endoscopy to diagnose the formation of bezoars (solid masses formed in the stomach) or to identify associated injuries to the digestive tract

Films and studies may be repeated at regular intervals to track changes in the location of ingested materials.

## Treatments

As of 2002, there is no standard treatment for pica. Currently, the most effective strategies are based on **behavior modification**, but even these treatments have achieved limited success. Pica associated with a nutritional deficiency often clears up when the missing nutrient is added to the patient's diet.

Few studies have examined the efficacy of drug treatments for pica. Ongoing research, however, is exploring the relationship between pica and abnormally low levels of the neurotransmitter dopamine. This line of research may help to identify new medications for the treatment of pica. There is some evidence that medications used to manage severe behavioral problems in children may be useful in treating coexisting pica.

## KEY TERMS

**Behavior modification**—An approach to therapy based on the principles of operant conditioning. Behavior modification seeks to replace undesirable behaviors with preferable behaviors through the use of positive or negative reinforcement.

**Bezoar**—A hard ball of hair or vegetable fiber that may develop in the stomach of humans as the result of ingesting nonfood items.

**Chelation**—A method of treating lead or mercury poisoning by giving medications that remove heavy metals from the bloodstream. The medications that are used are called chelating agents.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Toxocariasis**—Infection with roundworm larvae, commonly transmitted by the feces of dogs and cats.

**Toxoplasmosis**—A parasitic infection caused by the intracellular protozoan *Toxoplasmosis gondii*. Humans are most commonly infected by swallowing the oocyte form of the parasite in soil (or kitty litter) contaminated by feces from an infected cat; or by swallowing the cyst form of the parasite in raw or undercooked meat.

**Trichuriasis**—Infection with the larvae of roundworms. These parasites may live for 10–20 years in humans.

Lead poisoning resulting from pica may be treated by chelating medications, which are drugs that remove lead or other heavy metals from the bloodstream. The two medications most often given for lead poisoning are dimercaprol, which is also known as BAL or British Anti-Lewisite; and edetate calcium disodium (EDTA). A medical toxicologist (a doctor who specializes in treating poisoning cases) may be consulted regarding children's dosages of these drugs.

In some cases, surgery may be required to remove metal objects from the patient's digestive tract or to repair tissue injuries. It is particularly important to remove any objects made of lead (fishing weights, lead shot, pieces of printer's type, etc.) as quickly as possible because of the danger of lead poisoning.

## Prognosis

Pica frequently ends spontaneously in young children and pregnant women. Untreated pica, however, may persist for years, especially in persons with mental retardation and developmental disabilities.

## Prevention

There is no known way to prevent pica at the present time. Educating people, particularly young couples with children, about healthy nutritional practices is the best preventive strategy.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. "Pica." In *Diagnostic and Statistical of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Herrin, Marcia, and Nancy Matsumoto. *The Parent's Guide to Childhood Eating Disorders*. New York: Henry Holt and Company, 2002.
- Palmer, Robert L. *Helping People With Eating Disorders: A Clinical Guide to Assessment and Treatment*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2002.
- Woolsey, Monika M. *Eating Disorders: A Clinical Guide to Counseling and Treatment*. Chicago: American Dietetic Association, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Grewal P. and B. Fitzgerald. "Pica with learning disability." *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine* 95, no. 1 (2002): 39-40.
- Hamilton S., S. J. Rothenberg, F. A. Khan, M. Manalo, and K. C. Norris. "Neonatal lead poisoning from maternal pica behavior during pregnancy." *Journal of the National Medical Association* 93, no. 9 (2001): 317-319.
- Roberts-Harewood M. and S. C. Davies. "Pica in sickle cell disease: 'She ate the headboard.'" *Archives of Diseases of Children* 85, no. 6 (2001): 510.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org>>.
- American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. Telephone: (847) 434-4000. Fax: (847) 434-8000. Web site: <<http://www.aap.org/default.htm>>.
- American College of Physicians, 190 N Independence Mall West, Philadelphia, PA 19106-1572, Phone: (800) 523-1546, x2600 or (215) 351-2600, Web site: <<http://www.acponline.org>>.
- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org>>.

## OTHER

Anorexia Nervosa and Related Eating Disorders, Inc.: <<http://www.anred.com/pica.html>>.  
Support, Concern and Resources For Eating Disorders: <<http://www.eating-disorder.org/pica.html>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

## Pick's disease

### Definition

Frontotemporal **dementia** (FTD), originally known as Pick's disease, is a rare form of dementia that is associated with shrinking of the frontal and temporal anterior lobes of the **brain**. The name and classification of FTD has been a topic of discussion for over a century. The current designation of the syndrome groups together Pick's disease, primary progressive aphasia, and semantic dementia as FTD. As it is defined today, the symptoms of FTD fall into two clinical patterns that involve either (1) changes in behavior, or (2) problems with language. The first type features behavior that can be either impulsive (disinhibited) or bored and listless (apathetic) and includes inappropriate social behavior; lack of social tact; lack of empathy; distractability; loss of insight into the behaviors of oneself and others; an increased interest in sex; changes in food preferences; agitation or, conversely, blunted emotions; neglect of personal hygiene; repetitive or compulsive behavior; and decreased energy and motivation. The second type primarily features symptoms of language disturbance, including difficulty making or understanding speech, often in conjunction with the behavioral type's symptoms. Spatial skills and memory remain intact. Although the exact etiology of Pick's diseases is not known, there is a strong genetic component to the disease; FTD often runs in families.

### Description

Pick's disease was first described by Arnold Pick, a Czechoslovakian physician who was trained in clinical neurology, psychiatry, and neuropathology. In 1892, Pick reported on a 71-year-old man with progressive loss of language and mental deterioration. After the man died, autopsy revealed asymmetrical atrophy of the frontal cortex of the brain. In 1911, Alois Alzheimer confirmed the pattern of atrophy found in brains of patients with Pick's disease. The term Pick's disease was coined by A. Gans in 1922.

The cortical atrophy seen in Pick's disease is different from **Alzheimer's disease**, although there are

major overlaps with Alzheimer's presenile dementia. In Pick's disease, shrinkage is greatest in the frontal and temporal lobes. One of the characteristics of Pick's disease is microtubule-associated tau proteins, which are the main cytoskeletal components modified during the neurodegenerative changes associated with this disease. In Alzheimer's disease, on the other hand, any area of the brain may be affected. Abnormalities called Pick bodies and Pick cells, abnormally swollen nerve cells, are also found in the brains of individuals with Pick's disease. Pick bodies are found inside nerve cells and contain the abnormal form of tau protein that is associated with Pick's disease.

Researchers continue to debate how to classify Pick's disease. Today, few researchers use the term Pick's disease, although it is still used by patients, caregivers, and some health practitioners. Currently, Pick's disease is considered to be part of a syndrome that includes not only Pick's disease but also primary progressive aphasia and semantic dementia, which are two related disorders. The syndrome is known as FTD. Some researchers have suggested that some cases of frontotemporal dementia in which Pick bodies or Pick cells are absent may also represent a form of Pick's disease.

## Demographics

Pick's disease is rare, affecting less than 1% of the U.S. population. It accounts for about 2–5% of all cases of dementia. Although it sometimes appears in younger or older people, it typically begins in middle age, between the ages of 50 and 60 years. The average age of onset is 54 years and it tends to occur more often in women than in men.

## Causes and symptoms

The symptoms of Pick's disease vary among individuals, but changes in behavior, emotions, and language are frequently associated with neurological problems related to movement and memory. Behavioral changes include disinhibition, inappropriate behavior, compulsions such as a tendency to overeat or eat a particular kind of food, repetitive behavior, social withdrawal, inability to keep a job, difficulty initiating tasks and following through, difficulty maintaining personal hygiene, and a short attention span. Emotional changes include mood swings, inappropriate mood, lack of concern for the feelings of others, **apathy**, and indifference to behavioral changes. Language changes include decreased ability to read, write, speak, and understand language. Speech difficulties may range from difficulty finding words and diminished vocabulary to a complete inability to speak.

Patients also sometimes display echolalia, or a tendency to repeat the words of others. Patients may also experience difficulty with movement and coordination, muscle weakness or rigidity, and progressively worsening memory loss. Urinary incontinence may also occur.

In the early stages of Pick's disease, patients frequently demonstrate personality changes that are manifested as inappropriate behavior. This is in contrast to Alzheimer's disease, which, in its early stages, is characterized mainly by memory loss. As Pick's disease progresses, patients become aphonic and apathetic. They eventually lapse into a vegetative state and become completely disabled. Death occurs because of malnutrition, infections, or general failure of body systems.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosing Pick's disease is difficult, because symptoms overlap with those of other disorders, such as Alzheimer's disease and other dementias that affect the frontal lobes of the brain. According to the National Institutes of Health, at the present time, a definitive **diagnosis** can only be made with a brain biopsy, which is an invasive procedure in which a small sample of brain tissue is surgically removed for examination. Other diagnostic methods are more commonly used, which allow a diagnosis to be made by ruling out other causes of dementia.

Diagnostic procedures include a detailed clinical evaluation to assess personal and family health history, other medical conditions, overall health status, use of prescription or non-prescription drugs, current symptoms, and changes in daily functioning. Blood tests may be done to detect problems in organ function, hormone levels, and vitamin deficiencies. Neurologic exams may be performed to determine which areas of the brain are affected, which can include **electroencephalography** (EEG), computerized tomography (CT) scans, and **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) scans. A psychiatric evaluation may be carried out to determine whether the patient suffers from disorders such as **depression**, which can mimic or worsen the symptoms of Pick's disease.

## Treatments

There is no cure for Pick's disease, and currently, there are no known medications that slow the progression of the disease. Medications that are used to treat Alzheimer's disease should not be used to treat Pick's disease, because they may increase aggression in patients.

## KEY TERMS

**Analgesics**—Drugs that reduce pain.

**Anticholinergics**—Drugs that block the action of acetylcholine, a naturally occurring chemical that is involved in communication between nerve cells.

**Atrophy**—Shrinkage or deterioration.

**Cimetidine**—A drug that decreases the amount of acid in the stomach, and that is used to treat conditions such as ulcers, gastroesophageal reflux disease, and heartburn.

**Computerized tomography (CT) scan**—An imaging technique in which x rays are taken of the brain from several different angles and combined through a computer to provide an image of the brain.

**Electroencephalography (EEG)**—A recording of the electric potentials of the brain from electrodes attached to the scalp.

**Frontal lobe**—A part of the brain that is involved in processes such as muscle movement, speech production, working memory, planning, reasoning, and judgment.

**Hypoxia**—Oxygen deficiency.

**Lidocaine**—A local anesthetic.

**Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan**—An imaging technique in which magnetic fields, radio waves, and computer enhancement are used to create an image of brain structure.

**Primary progressive aphasia**—A disorder in which there is progressive loss of language skills.

**Semantic dementia**—A disorder in which there is progressive loss of knowledge about words and word meanings.

**Temporal lobe**—A part of the brain that is involved in processing auditory and visual information, emotion and motivation, and understanding language.

Treatments for Pick's disease are designed to manage its symptoms. **Behavior modification** strategies, which involve rewarding appropriate behavior, may help to decrease unacceptable or dangerous behaviors. Speech therapy may be helpful for increasing language use. Occupational therapy may be used to help patients improve performance of daily living tasks. Encouraging new hobbies may help to relieve boredom in patients and decrease behavior problems.

Disorders that exacerbate confusion, such as heart failure, hypoxia, thyroid disorders, anemia, nutritional

deficiencies, infections, and depression, should be treated. Medications that increase confusion, such as anticholinergics, analgesics, cimetidine, central nervous system depressants, and lidocaine, should be stopped if they are not clearly needed. In some cases, medications may be prescribed to treat aggression, agitation, or dangerous behavior.

In the early stages of Pick's disease, legal advice may help families make ethical decisions about caring for a patient.

As the disease progresses, patients may require constant monitoring and care, either at home or in an institutionalized setting. Help from visiting nurses and aides, volunteer workers, and adult protective services may be needed. Families may benefit from counseling, to help them deal with the difficulties of caring for patients. **Support groups** can also be a helpful resource for families.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for Pick's disease is poor. It is a rapidly progressing disease. Death commonly occurs between 2 to 10 years after the onset of the disease.

## Prevention

There are currently no known ways of preventing Pick's disease.

*See also* Elder care.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Brookshire, Robert H. *Introduction to Neurogenic Communication Disorders*. 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2003.

### PERIODICALS

- Amano, Nanji. "Editorial: Neuropsychiatric Symptoms and Depression in Neurodegenerative Diseases." *Psychogeriatrics* 4 (2004): 1–3.  
Hardin, Sonya, and Brenda Schooley. "A Story of Pick's Disease: A Rare Form of Dementia." *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing* 34.3 (2002): 117–23.  
Odawara, T., and others. "Short Report: Alterations of Muscarinic Acetylcholine Receptors in Atypical Pick's Disease without Pick Bodies." *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry* 74.7 (2003): 965–68.  
Pearce, J. M. S. "Historical Note: Pick's Disease." *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry* 74.2 (2003): 169.

**WEB SITES**

- “Cimetidine.” *Medline Plus*. 2003. <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a682256.html>>.
- “Medical Encyclopedia: Pick’s Disease.” *Medline Plus*. 2005 <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/print/ency/article/000744.htm>>.
- “NINDS Frontotemporal Dementia Information Page.” *National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke*. 2006 <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/picks/picks.htm>>.

**ORGANIZATIONS**

- Association for Frontotemporal Dementias (AFTD), 100 North 17th Street, Suite 600, Philadelphia, PA 19103. Telephone: (267) 514-7221, (866) 507-7222. <<http://www.FTD-Picks.org>>.
- National Aphasia Association, Seven Dey Street, Suite 600, New York, NY 10007. Telephone: (800) 922-4622. <<http://aphasia.org>>.
- NIH Neurological Institute, P.O. Box 5801, Bethesda, MD 20824. Telephone: (800) 352-9424, (301) 496-5751. TTY (for people using adaptive equipment): (301) 468-5981
- Pick’s Disease Support Group, E-mail: [info@pdsg.org.uk](mailto:info@pdsg.org.uk). <<http://www.pdsg.org.uk/index.php>>.

Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, PhD

## Pimozide

### Definition

Pimozide is an atypical antipsychotic drug used to treat serious motor and verbal tics associated with Tourette’s syndrome. It is sold under the brand name Orap.

### Purpose

Pimozide is classified as an atypical antipsychotic drug. It is structurally similar to another drug, **haloperidol**, which was the first drug to be used in Tourette’s syndrome. Pimozide is most often used to treat symptoms of Tourette’s syndrome, although it has also been used for treating **schizophrenia** mania, and other behavioral disorders.

### Description

Excess **dopamine** activity in the **brain** is associated with the verbal and physical tics observed in Tourette’s syndrome. Like haloperidol, pimozide is believed to inhibit the actions of the brain chemical, dopamine in the brain.

Pimozide is broken down by the liver and eliminated from the body by the kidneys. Because pimozide is associated with health risks, it should not be used for tics that are simply annoying or cosmetic. Pimozide should be used only in patients with severe symptoms after other drug therapy has been tried and failed.

Pimozide is available in 1 mg and 2 mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

The common starting dose of pimozide in adults is 1-2 mg per day. The dose may be increased every other day until 0.2 mg per kg (or 0.9 mg per pound) of body weight per day or 10 mg per day is reached, whichever is less. Doses should that exceed 0.2 mg per kg per day or 10 mg daily are not recommended.

In children, the usual initial dose is 0.05 mg per kg daily, and increased every 3 days to a maximum dose of 0.2 mg per kg (or 10 mg) per day.

Periodically the dosage of pimozide should be reduced to determine if tics are still present. Patients should be maintained on the lowest dose that is effective in treating this disorder.

### Precautions

Pimozide may alter the rhythm of the heart. As a result, it should be used with caution in people with heart disease, and these patients should be observed carefully while receiving the drug.

Pimozide should not be taken with grapefruit juice.

Pimozide should be used with close physician supervision by people who have a history of seizure disorders, because it may increase the tendency to have **seizures**.

Pimozide may cause extreme drowsiness and should be used carefully by people who need to be mentally alert.

Patients should not take pimozide while pregnant or breast feeding.

Pimozide should not be used by people with mild tics, by individuals taking stimulants such as **methylphenidate** (Ritalin), **pemoline** (Cylert), or dextroamphetamine (Dexedrine)since these drugs may cause tics.

### Side effects

The most common side effects associated with pimozide are sleepiness, headache, stomach upset, muscle tightness, muscle weakness, difficulty moving, tremor, abnormal behavior, visual disturbances, and impotence.

Other side effects that might also occur with pimozide involve rapid heart rates or irregular heart rhythms, low blood pressure, constipation, dry mouth and eyes, rash, breast pain, breast milk production, loss of bladder control, or low blood cell counts.

Pimozide use may lead to the development of symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease. These symptoms may include a tight or mask-like expression on the face, drooling, tremors, pill-rolling motions in the hands, cogwheel rigidity (abnormal rigidity in muscles characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched), and a shuffling gait. Taking anti-Parkinson drugs **benztropine** mesylate or **trihexyphenidyl** hydrochloride along with the pimozide usually controls these symptoms.

Pimozide has the potential to produce a serious side effect called **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may appear late in therapy and not disappear even after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and with increasing dosage of pimozide. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

An occasionally reported side effect of pimozide is neuroleptic malignant syndrome. This is a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity, high fever, alterations in mental status, and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia (fast heartbeat), and arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat). People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should talk to their physician promptly.

### Interactions

If pimozide is used with bethanechol (Urecholine), **clonidine** (Catapress), **fluoxetine** (Prozac), indomethacin (Indocin), meperidine (Demerol), **paroxetine** (Paxil), quinidine, or **trazodone** (Desyrel), the side effects associated with pimozide may be increased.

There is an increased risk of irregular heart rhythms if pimozide is used with other antipsychotics, certain **antidepressants**, some heart drugs, and antibiotics like erythromycin.

The beneficial effects of pimozide may be reduced if used with bromocriptine (Parlodel), **carbamazepine**

### KEY TERMS

**Parkinsonian**—Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tic**—A sudden involuntary behavior that is difficult or impossible for the person to suppress. Tics may be either motor (related to movement) or vocal, and may become more pronounced under stress.

**Tourette's syndrome**—Neurological disorder characterized by multiple involuntary movements and uncontrollable vocalizations called tics that come and go over years, usually beginning in childhood and becoming chronic. Sometimes the tics include inappropriate language.

(Tegretol), levodopa (Larodopa, Sinemet), lithium, or phenobarbital.

Some antibiotics, antifungals, antidepressants, and drugs used for AIDS may prevent the break down of pimozide by the liver and thus, increases the amount of pimozide in the body. The combination of pimozide and the above classes of drugs should be used cautiously if at all.

Pimozide may have the sedative effects of other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sleeping pills, antihistamines, and antidepressants.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, Inc, 1999.

Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th Edition. St. Louis, MO: A Wolter Kluwer Company, 2002.

Medical Economics Co. Staff. *Physician's Desk Reference*. 56th edition Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2002.

Kelly Karpa, RPh, Ph.D.

## Play therapy

### Definition

Play therapy refers to a method of **psychotherapy** with children in which a therapist uses a child's fantasies and the symbolic meanings of his or her play as a medium for understanding and communication with the child.

### Purpose

The aim of play therapy is to decrease those behavioral and emotional difficulties that interfere significantly with a child's normal functioning. Inherent in this aim is improved communication and understanding between the child and his parents. Less obvious goals include improved verbal expression, ability for self-observation, improved impulse control, more adaptive ways of coping with **anxiety** and frustration, and improved capacity to trust and to relate to others. In this type of treatment, the therapist uses an understanding of cognitive development and of the different stages of emotional development as well as the conflicts common to these stages when treating the child.

The use of play therapy relies on the fact that children will process the world in a way that is different from the adult approach. Some researchers describe two stages of function for children at the elementary school level: the "preoperational stage" (ages 2 to 7 years) and the "concrete operations stage" (ages 8 to 11 years). In the preoperational stage, children are still learning how to use language, which employs symbols (words) to mentally represent the things in their world. They tend to have rigid thinking processes, limited only to what is before them, without digging more deeply. Because this results in a lack of true understanding of the world around them, they will provide their own explanations, employing "magical thinking." The child's play, as a result, will increasingly employ imagination and fantasy as he or she ages. Adults who can understand how the play and fantasy translate from a child to an adult world can interpret the child's language.

Play therapy thus relies on the fact that the language of children, especially very young children, is play. Play also serves several other roles for children that can be used in the process of play therapy, including providing a sense of control and a way to develop coping skills. A skilled play therapist will be able to make the most of these factors in using play therapy as a way to translate the child's communications.



**A boy playing in a play area designed for the assessment of children with special needs. (James King-Holmes/Photo Researchers, Inc)**

Play therapy is used to treat problems that are interfering with the child's normal development. Such difficulties would be extreme in degree and have been occurring for many months without resolution. Reasons for treatment include, but are not limited to, temper tantrums, aggressive behavior, nonmedical problems with bowel or bladder control, difficulties with sleeping or having nightmares, and experiencing worries or fears. This type of treatment is also used with children who have experienced sexual or physical abuse, **neglect**, the loss of a family member, medical illness, physical injury, or any experience that is traumatic.

At times, children in play therapy will also receive other types of treatment. For instance, youngsters who are unable to control their attention, impulses, tendency to react with violence, or who experience severe anxiety may take medication for these symptoms while participating in play therapy. The play therapy would address the child's psychological symptoms. Other situations of dual treatment include children with **learning disorders**. These youngsters may receive play therapy to alleviate feelings of low self-esteem, excessive worry, helplessness, and incompetence that are

## MELANIE KLEIN (1882–1960)

The Austrian psychotherapist and child psychologist Melanie Klein developed methods of play technique and play therapy in analyzing and treating child patients. Raised in a Jewish middle-class family, she lacked both the academic background and the medical training usually found in those who choose psychoanalysis for a profession. She was a married woman with children when she began undergoing analysis about 1912. During her analysis she began to observe the behavior of a disturbed child relative and to interpret this behavior in the light of her own psychoanalytic experience. Her analyst, recognizing his patient's aptitude, encouraged her in her efforts at child therapy, a hitherto neglected area.

Originally trained as a Freudian psychoanalyst, Klein made observations and conclusions regarding child behavior that led her to views differing from those held by orthodox Freudian psychoanalysts. She was one of the first to engage in child analysis, beginning in 1920. She evolved a system of play therapy to supplement the usual psychoanalytic procedure, perhaps because the age of her clients

indicated more appropriate methods than the exclusively verbal free-association technique then used with adult patients. Gradually she evolved a technique more suitable for probing the deep-layered recesses of the child's mind. By providing the child with small toys representing father, mother, or siblings, she was able to elicit the child's subconscious feelings. Her technique also used the child's free play and his spontaneous communications.

Her first paper, "The Development of a Child," was presented to the Budapest Congress of Psychoanalysis in 1919, the year in which she became a member of the Hungarian Psychoanalytic Society. In 1921 she went to the Berlin Psychoanalytic Institute as the first child therapist. In what has been called her second period, beginning in 1934, Klein theorized her previous observations on child behavior, arriving at conceptual conclusions based on them. She wrote now of her earlier findings, on the "depressive position" and the "schizoid-paranoid position," indicating possible ways in which these infancy states relate to psychotic processes in adults.

related to their learning problems and academic struggles. In addition, they should receive a special type of tutoring called **cognitive remediation**, which addresses the specific learning issues.

### Precautions

Play therapy addresses psychological issues and would not be used to alleviate medical or biological problems. Children who are experiencing physical problems should see a physician for a medical evaluation to clarify the nature of the problem and, if necessary, receive the appropriate medical treatment. Likewise, children who experience academic difficulties need to receive a neuropsychological or in-depth psychological evaluation in order to clarify the presence of a biologically based learning disability. In both of these cases, psychological problems may be present in addition to medical ailments and learning disabilities, but they may not be the primary problem and it would not be sufficient to treat only the psychological issues. Alternatively, evaluations may show that medical or biological causes are not evident, and this would be important information for the parents and therapist to know.

### Description

In play therapy, the clinician may meet with the child alone for sessions or with a parent present, and

may arrange times to meet with parents separately, depending on the situation. In some forms of play therapy, the therapist may observe the child at play with the parent. The structure of the sessions is maintained in a consistent manner to provide a feeling of safety and stability for the child and parents. Sessions are scheduled for the same day and time each week and occur for the same duration. The frequency of sessions is typically one or two times per week, and meetings with parents occur about two times per month, with some variation. The session length will vary depending on the environment. For example, in private settings, sessions usually last 45 to 50 minutes while in hospitals and mental health clinics the duration is typically 30 minutes. The number of sessions and duration of treatment varies according to the treatment objectives.

During the initial meeting with parents, the therapist will want to learn as much as possible about the nature of the child's problems. Parents will be asked for information about the child's developmental, medical, social, and school history, whether or not previous evaluations and interventions were attempted, and the nature of the results. Background information about the parents is also important since it provides the therapist with a larger context from which to understand the child. This process of gathering information may take one to three sessions, depending on the style of the therapist. Some clinicians gather the important aspects of the child's history during the first

meeting with parents and will continue to ask relevant questions during subsequent meetings. The clinician also learns important information during the initial sessions with the child.

Sessions with parents are important opportunities to keep the therapist informed about the child's current functioning at home and at school and for the therapist to offer some insight and guidance to parents. At times, the clinician will provide suggestions about parenting techniques and about alternative ways to communicate with their child, and will also serve as a resource for information about child development. Details of child sessions are not routinely discussed with parents. If the child's privacy is maintained, it promotes free expression in the therapist's office and engenders a sense of trust in the therapist. Therapists will, instead, communicate to the parents their understanding of the child's psychological needs or conflicts.

For the purposes of explanation, treatment can be described as occurring in a series of initial, middle, and final stages. The initial phase includes evaluation of the problem and teaching both child and parents about the process of therapy. The middle phase is the period in which the child has become familiar with the treatment process and comfortable with the therapist. The therapist is continuing to evaluate and learn about the child, but has a clearer sense of the youngster's issues and has developed, with the child, a means for the two to communicate. The final phase includes the process of ending treatment and saying goodbye to the therapist.

During the early sessions, the therapist may talk with the child about the reason the youngster was brought in for treatment and explain that the therapist helps make children's problems go away. Youngsters often deny experiencing any problems. It is not necessary for them to acknowledge having any since they may be unable to do so due to normal cognitive and emotional factors or because they are simply not experiencing any problems. The child may be informed about the nature of the sessions, specifically that he or she can say or play or do anything desired while in the office as long as no one gets hurt; what is said and done in the office will be kept private unless the child is in danger of harming himself.

Children communicate their thoughts and feelings through play more naturally than they do through verbal communication. As the child plays, the therapist begins to recognize themes and patterns or ways of using the materials that are important to the child. Over time, the clinician helps the child begin to make meaning out of the play. This is important because the

play reflects issues which are important to the child and typically relevant to their difficulties.

When the child's symptoms have subsided for a stable period of time and when functioning is adequate with peers and adults at home, in school, and in extracurricular activities, the focus of treatment will shift away from problems and onto the process of saying goodbye. This last stage is known as the termination phase of treatment and it is reflective of the ongoing change and loss that human beings experience throughout their lives. Since this type of therapy relies heavily on the therapist's relationship with the child and also with parents, ending therapy will signify a change and a loss for all involved, but for the child in particular. In keeping with the therapeutic process of communicating thoughts and feelings, this stage is an opportunity for the child to work through how he or she feels about ending therapy and about leaving the therapist. In addition to allowing for a sense of closure, it also makes it less likely that the youngster will misconstrue the ending of treatment as a rejection by the therapist, which would taint the larger experience of therapy for the child. Parents also need a sense of closure and are usually encouraged to process the treatment experience with the therapist. The therapist also appreciates the opportunity to say goodbye to the parents and child after having become involved in their lives in this important way, and it is often beneficial for parents and children to hear the clinician's thoughts and feelings with regards to ending treatment.

## Preparation

It is recommended that parents explain to the child that they will be going to see a therapist; that they discuss, if possible, the particular problem that is interfering with the child's growth and that a therapist is going to teach both parents and child how to make things better. As described earlier, the child may deny even obvious problems, but mainly just needs to agree to meet the therapist and to see what therapy is like.

## Aftercare

Children sometimes return to therapy for additional sessions when they experience a setback that cannot be easily resolved.

## Normal results

Normal results include the significant reduction or disappearance of the main problems for which the child was initially seen. The child should also be functioning adequately at home, in school, and with peers,

and should be able to participate in and enjoy extra-curricular activities.

### Abnormal results

Sometimes play therapy does not alleviate the child's symptoms. This situation can occur if the child is extremely resistant and refuses to participate in treatment or if the child's ways of coping are so rigidly held that it is not possible for them to learn more adaptive ones.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Chethik, Morton. *Techniques of Child Therapy*. 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2000.  
 Lovinger, Sophie L. *Child Psychotherapy: From Initial Therapeutic Contact to Termination*. New Jersey: Jason Aronson, 1998.  
 Webb, Nancy Boyd, ed. *Play Therapy with Children in Crisis*. 2nd edition. New York: The Guilford Press, 1999.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychological Association, 750 First Street, NE, Washington DC 20002. <<http://www.apa.org>>.  
 Association for Play Therapy, 2060 N. Winery Avenue No. 102, Fresno, CA 93703 <<http://www.a4pt.org>>.

#### PERIODICALS

- Ray, Dee C., and others. "Play Therapy Practices Among Elementary School Counselors." *Professional School Counseling* 8 (2005): 360–65.  
 Naylor, Angie. "When A Child Plays." *Counselling and Psychotherapy Journal* 16 (2005): 29–31.

Susan Fine, Psy.D.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Polysomnography

### Definition

Polysomnography is a series of tests performed on patients while they sleep. Polysomnography is a comprehensive overnight procedure that evaluates **sleep disorders**. It generally includes monitoring of the patient's airflow through the nose and mouth, blood pressure, heartbeat as measured by an electrocardiograph, blood oxygen level, **brain** wave patterns, eye movements, and the movements of respiratory muscles and limbs. The word *polysomnography* is derived from the Greek root *poly* meaning "many," the Latin noun *somnus* meaning "sleep," and the Greek verb *graphein* meaning "to write."

### Purpose

Polysomnography is used to help diagnose and evaluate a number of sleep disorders. For instance, it can help diagnose sleep apnea, a common disorder in middle-aged and elderly obese men, in which the muscles of the soft palate in the back of the throat relax and close off the airway during sleep. Sleep apnea may cause the person to snore loudly and gasp for air at night. It may also cause the person to be excessively drowsy and likely to fall asleep during the day. Another syndrome often uncovered by polysomnography is **narcolepsy**. Persons with narcolepsy have sudden attacks of sleep and/or cataplexy (temporary loss of muscle tone caused by moments of emotion, such as fear, anger, or surprise, which causes people to slump or fall over), sleep paralysis or **hallucinations** while they are falling asleep.

Polysomnography is often used to evaluate such parasomnias (abnormal behaviors or movements during sleep) as sleepwalking; talking in one's sleep; nightmares; and bed-wetting. It can also be used to detect or evaluate **seizures** that occur in the middle of the night, when the patient and his or her family are unlikely to be aware of them.

Other problems uncovered by polysomnography include sleep-related psychiatric **depression**, asthma, and **panic disorder**. Polysomnography is generally not used if the sleep disorder has been clearly identified by the treating physician. It is also not used in cases of **insomnia** that have simple and obvious causes.

### Precautions

Polysomnography is extremely safe, and no special precautions need to be taken.

### Description

Polysomnography requires an overnight stay in a sleep laboratory. While the patient sleeps, he or she is monitored in a number of ways that can provide useful information.

One form of monitoring is **electroencephalography** (EEG), which involves the attachment of electrodes to the patient's scalp to record his or her brain wave activity. The electroencephalograph records brain wave activity from different parts of the brain and charts them on a graph. The EEG not only helps doctors establish what stage of sleep the patient is in, but may also detect seizures.

Another form of monitoring is continuous electro-oculography (EOG), which records eye movements. EOG is used to determine the time periods

during which the patient is going through a stage of sleep called rapid-eye-movement (REM) sleep. Both EEG and EOG can be helpful in determining sleep latency (the time period between getting into bed and the onset of sleep); total sleep time; the time spent in each sleep stage; and the number of arousals from sleep.

The airflow through the patient's nose and mouth are measured by heat-sensitive devices called thermistors. The thermistors can help detect episodes of apnea (stopped breathing), or hypopnea (inadequate or too-shallow breathing). Another test called pulse oximetry measures the amount of oxygen in the patient's blood. Pulse oximetry can be used to assess the degree of oxygen starvation during episodes of hypopnea or apnea.

The electrical activity of the patient's heart is also measured on an electrocardiogram, or ECG. Electrodes are attached to the patient's chest. The electrodes pick up electrical activity from various areas of the heart. They help to detect cardiac arrhythmias (abnormal heart rhythms), which may occur during periods of sleep apnea. The patient's blood pressure is also measured, because some episodes of sleep apnea can raise blood pressure to dangerously high levels.

In some cases, sleep laboratories monitor the movement of the patient's arms and legs during sleep. This measurement can be helpful in detecting such sleep disorders as periodic limb movements. Some sleep laboratories perform an additional test called multiple sleep latency testing (MSLT), which records several naps throughout the day. In addition, many sleep researchers prefer to evaluate the patient over a period of a few days rather than just one night. This approach is based on the recognition that the patient may need more than one night to adjust to the unfamiliar surroundings of the sleep laboratory.

## Preparation

The patient may be asked to discontinue taking any medications, and avoid alcohol and strenuous exercise the day before the sleep analysis is performed. Before the patient goes to sleep, the technician hooks him or her up to all of the monitors being used.

## Aftercare

After the test is completed, the monitors are detached from the patient. No special measures need to be taken after polysomnography. On occasion, skin irritation from the adhesive can develop in the areas where the electrodes have been attached to the patient.

## KEY TERMS

**Apnea**—A brief suspension or interruption of breathing.

**Arrhythmia**—Any disturbance in the normal rhythm of the heartbeat.

**Bruxism**—Habitual, often unconscious, grinding of the teeth.

**Hypopnea**—Breathing that is too shallow to maintain adequate levels of oxygen in the blood.

**Narcolepsy**—A disorder characterized by frequent and uncontrollable attacks of deep sleep.

**Oximetry**—The measurement of blood oxygen levels.

**Parameter**—A characteristic or factor that is measured during a test of a complex process or activity like sleep.

**Parasomnia**—A type of sleep disorder characterized by abnormal changes in behavior or body functions during sleep, specific stages of sleep, or the transition between sleeping and waking.

**Thermistor**—An electrical device whose resistance decreases with rises in temperature.

## Normal results

A normal result in polysomnography shows normal results for all parameters (EEG, ECG, blood pressure, eye movement, air flow, pulse oximetry, etc.) that were monitored throughout all stages of sleep.

## Abnormal results

Polysomnography may yield a number of abnormal results, indicating one or more potential sleep disorders. For instance, abnormal transitions into and out of various stages of sleep, as documented by the EEG and the EOG, may be signs of narcolepsy. Reduced air flow through the nose and mouth, along with a fall in blood oxygen levels, may indicate apnea or hypopnea. If apnea is accompanied by abnormal patterns on the ECG or elevations in blood pressure, then the sleep apnea may be producing harmful effects. Frequent movements of the patient's arms and legs may suggest a sleep disorder called periodic limb movement. A related condition that affects sleep as well as daytime movement is called restless legs syndrome. Polysomnography can also be used to diagnose bruxism, which is the chronic grinding of the teeth during sleep.

*See also* Breathing-related sleep disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Czeisler, C. A. and others, eds. *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine*. 15th Ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

"Practice parameters for the indications for polysomnography and related procedures." *Sleep* 1997 (Reviewed 2000); 20: 406-22.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Sleep Disorders Association. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901. <<http://www.asda.org>>. National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute. P.O. Box 30105, Bethesda, MD 20824-0105. (301) 251-1222. <<http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov>>.

Robert Scott Dinsmoor

## Symptoms

The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies that three or more of the following symptoms must occur at any time during a 12-month period (and cause significant impairment or distress) in order to meet diagnostic criteria for substance dependence:

- Tolerance: The individual either has to use increasingly higher amounts of the drugs over time in order to achieve the same drug effect or finds that the same amount of the drug has much less of an effect over time than before. After using several different drugs regularly for a while, an individual may find they need to use at least 50% more of the amount they began using in order to get the same effect.
- Withdrawal: The individual either experiences the withdrawal symptoms when he or she stops using the drugs or the individual uses drugs in order to avoid or relieve withdrawal symptoms.
- Loss of control: The individual either repeatedly uses more drugs than planned or uses the drugs over longer periods of time than planned. For instance, an individual may begin using drugs (any combination of three or more types of drugs) on weekdays in addition to weekends.
- Inability to stop using: The individual has either unsuccessfully attempted to cut down or stop using the drugs or has a persistent desire to stop using. An individual may find that, despite efforts to stop using drugs on weekdays, he or she is unable to do so.
- Time: The individual spends a lot of time obtaining drugs, using drugs, being under the influence of drugs, and recovering from the effects of drugs.
- Interference with activities: The individual either gives up or reduces the amount of time involved in recreational activities, social activities, and/or occupational activities because of the use of drugs. An individual may use drugs instead of engaging in hobbies, spending time with friends, or going to work.
- Harm to self: The individual continues to use drugs despite having either a physical or psychological problem that is caused by or made worse by the use of drugs.

## Demographics

Young adults (i.e., between the ages of 18 and 24) have the highest rates of use for all substances. Generally, males tend to be diagnosed with more substance use disorders.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is very little documented regarding the causes of polysubstance dependence.

## Diagnosis

Individuals who **abuse** alcohol and other drugs usually meet criteria for **substance abuse** and/or dependence for each individual substance used. Multiple diagnoses are given in this situation (cocaine dependence, hallucinogen dependence, and sedative dependence, for example). Polysubstance dependence is reserved only for those situations when an individual uses multiple substances indiscriminately and meets criteria for dependence on these substances, taken as a whole.

## Treatments

There is very little documented regarding the treatment of polysubstance dependence. However, several treatments have been tried. Psychological evaluation and tests may be used to assess the affected individual. The person may be admitted into a hospital or treatment center as an inpatient, and/or he or she may receive **cognitive-behavioral therapy**.

## Prognosis

The course of substance dependence varies from short-lived episodes to chronic episodes lasting years. The individual with substance dependence may alternate between periods of heavy use with severe problems, periods of no use at all, and periods of use with few problems.

## Prevention

The best single thing an individual can do to prevent polysubstance dependence is to avoid using drugs including alcohol altogether. On a larger scale, comprehensive prevention programs that utilize family, schools, communities, and the media (such as television) can be effective in reducing substance abuse.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins.

Jennifer Hahn, Ph.D.

## Positive symptoms

### Definition

Positive symptoms are thoughts, behaviors, or sensory perceptions present in a person with a mental disorder, but not present in people in the normal population.

### Description

Examples of positive symptoms are **hallucinations** (seeing, hearing, or smelling things not really there), **delusions** (belief in ideas not based on reality), disorganized speech (loose association between ideas, derailment of sentences, incoherence, illogical statements, excessive detail, and rhyming of words), or bizarre behavior. In other disorders, positive symptoms are primarily associated with **schizophrenia** or **psychosis**.

*See also* Negative symptoms.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

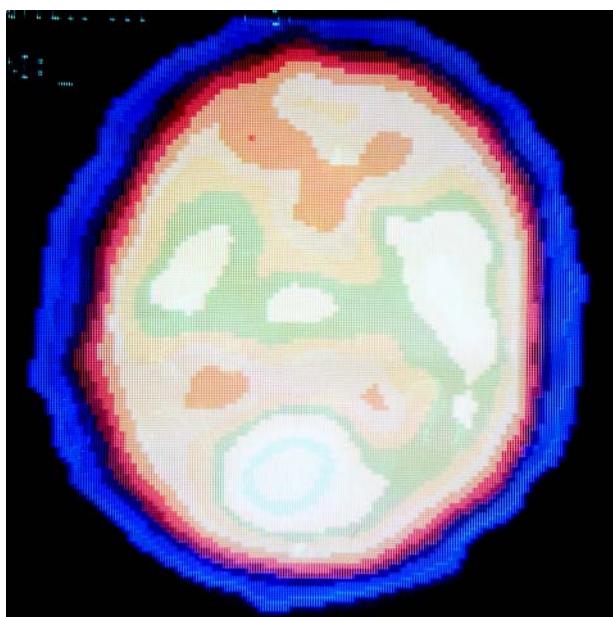
## Positron emission tomography

### Definition

Positron emission tomography (PET) is a highly specialized imaging technique using short-lived radio-labeled substances to produce extremely high resolution images of the body's biological function.

### Purpose

Besides being used to investigate the metabolism of normal organs, PET has also become the technique of choice to investigate various neurological diseases, including **stroke**, epilepsy, Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and Huntington's disease. Various psychiatric disorders, such as **schizophrenia**, **depression**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, and Tourette syndrome, are also imaged by PET, because these disorders have changes in specific areas of the **brain**. Additionally, PET scanning is a powerful research tool to detect changes or abnormalities in areas that may be difficult to visualize using other radiological procedures. In the field of mental health, a PET scan may be used when a patient seeks medical help for symptoms that could possibly be caused by a brain tumor. These symptoms may include headaches, emotional abnormalities, or intellectual or memory problems. In these cases, a PET scan may be



**Positron emission tomography scan of the brain of a schizophrenic.** (Phototake Inc/Alamy)

performed to “rule out” a tumor, so that other tests can be performed in order to establish an accurate **diagnosis**.

PET is especially utilized in persons affected by cancer because it can detect metastatic tumors that may not be visualized by other imaging techniques. It is also being increasingly used not only as a cancer diagnostic tool, but also to help researchers design the most beneficial therapies. For example, it may be used to assess response to chemotherapy. PET imaging is very accurate in differentiating malignant from benign cell growths, and in assessing the spread of malignant tumors. PET is also used to detect recurrent brain tumors and cancers of the lung, colon, breast, lymph nodes, skin, and other organs.

### Precautions

In some cases, patients may be allergic to the radioactive agents used for PET. A patient with known allergies should discuss this with their specialist before undergoing the PET scan.

### Description

PET is used in conjunction with compounds that closely resemble a natural substance used by the body, such as a simple sugar (glucose, for example), labeled with a radioactive atom and injected into the patient. These compounds (radionuclides or radiopharmaceuticals) emit particles called positrons. As positrons emitted from the radionuclides encounter electrons in the

body, they produce high-energy photons (gamma rays) that can be recorded as a signal by detectors surrounding the body. The radionuclides move through the body and accumulate in the organs targeted for examination. A computer collects the distribution of radioactivity and reassembles them into actual images.

By further defining a lesion seen on other imaging modalities, PET may enhance assessment of tumors exceedingly well. This is because of its operating principle. The radiolabeled sugars injected into the patient will be used by all body cells, but more sugar will be used by cells that have an increased metabolism. Cancer cells are highly metabolic, meaning that they use more sugar than healthy nearby cells, and they are easily seen on the PET scan. PET images thus show the chemical functioning of an organ or tissue, unlike x ray, **computed tomography**, or **magnetic resonance imaging**, which show only body structure.

### Preparation

The radiopharmaceutical is given by intravenous injection or inhaled as a gas a few minutes before the PET procedure. How it is administered depends on the radiopharmaceutical used and which one is selected depends on what organ or body part is being scanned. During the scan, the patient lies comfortably; the only discomfort involved may be the pinprick of a needle used to inject the radiopharmaceutical.

### Aftercare

No special aftercare measures are indicated for PET.

### Risks

Some of radioactive compounds used for PET scanning can persist for a long time in the body. Even though only a small amount is injected each time, the long half-lives of these compounds can limit the number of times a patient can be scanned. However, PET is a relatively safe procedure. PET scans using radioactive fluorine result in patients receiving exposures comparable to (or less than) those from other medical procedures, such as the taking of x rays. Other scanning radiopharmaceuticals—for instance, 6-F-dopa or radioactive water—normally cause even less exposure.

### Normal results

The PET scan of a healthy organ or body part will yield images without contrasting regions, because the radiolabeled sugar will have been metabolized at the same rate.

## KEY TERMS

**Benign growth**—A noncancerous cell growth that does not metastasize and does not recur after treatment or removal.

**Cancer screening**—A procedure designed to detect cancer even though a person has no symptoms, usually performed using an imaging technique.

**CT scan**—An imaging technique that uses a computer to combine multiple x-ray images into a two-dimensional cross-sectional image.

**Electron**—One of the small particles that make up an atom. An electron has the same mass and amount of charge as a positron, but the electron has a negative charge.

**Gamma ray**—A high-energy photon, emitted by radioactive substances.

**Half-life**—The time required for half of the atoms in a radioactive substance to disintegrate.

**Malignant growth**—A cell growth or tumor that becomes progressively worse and that can metastasize elsewhere in the body.

**Metabolism**—The group of biochemical processes within the body that release energy in support of life.

**MRI**—Magnetic resonance imaging. A special imaging technique used to image internal parts of the body, especially soft tissues.

**Photon**—A light particle.

**Positron**—One of the small particles that make up an atom. A positron has the same mass and amount of charge as an electron, but the positron has a positive charge.

## Abnormal results

The PET scan of a diseased organ or body part, however, will yield images showing contrasting regions, because the radiolabeled sugar will not have been metabolized (breaking down a large molecule to a smaller molecule that can be used by the body) at the same rate by the healthy and diseased cells.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Balazs, G., ed. *Positron Emission Tomography: A Critical Assessment of Recent Trends*. Norwell, MA: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1998.

von Schulthess, G. K., ed. *Clinical Positron Emission Tomography*. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

Anderson, H., and P. Price. "What Does Positron Emission Tomography Offer Oncology?" *European Journal of Cancer* 36 (October 2000):2028-35.

Arulampalam, T. H., D. C. Costa, M. Loizidou, D. Visvikis, P. J. Ell, and I. Taylor. "Positron Emission Tomography and Colorectal Cancer." *British Journal of Surgery* 88 (February 2001): 176-89.

Roelcke, U., and K. L. Leenders. "PET in Neuro-oncology." *Journal of Cancer Research and Clinical Oncology* 127 (January 2001): 2-8.

Lisa Christenson  
Monique LaBerge, Ph.D.

## Post-traumatic stress disorder

### Definition

Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is a complex **anxiety** disorder that may occur when a person experiences or witnesses an event perceived as a threat and in which he or she experiences fear, terror, or helplessness. PTSD is sometimes summarized as "a normal reaction to abnormal events."

### Description

PTSD depends on a factor outside the individual, namely, a traumatic stressor. A patient cannot be given a **diagnosis** of PTSD unless he or she has been exposed to an event that is considered traumatic. These events include such obvious traumas as rape, military combat, torture, genocide, natural disasters, and transportation or workplace disasters. In addition, it is now recognized that repeated traumas or traumas of long duration as child **abuse**, domestic violence, stalking, cult membership, and hostage situations may also produce the symptoms of PTSD in survivors.

A person suffering from PTSD experiences flashbacks, nightmares, or daydreams in which the traumatic event is experienced again. The person may also experience abnormally intense startle responses, **insomnia**, and may have difficulty concentrating. Trauma survivors with PTSD have been effectively treated with **group therapy** or individual psychological therapy, and other therapies have helped individuals, as well. Some affected individuals have found **support groups** or peer counseling groups helpful. Treatment may require several years, and in some cases, PTSD may affect a person for the rest of his or her life.

## Demographics

### General United States population

PTSD is much more widespread in the general population than was thought when it was first introduced as a diagnostic category. The National Comorbidity Survey, a major epidemiological study conducted between 1990 and 1992, estimates that the lifetime prevalence among adult Americans is 7.8%, with women (10.4%) twice as likely as men (5%) to be diagnosed with PTSD at some point in their lives. These figures represent only a small proportion of adults who have experienced at least one traumatic event—60.7% of men and 51.2% of women respectively. More than 10% of the men and 6% of the women reported experiencing four or more types of trauma in their lives. The most frequently mentioned traumas are:

- witnessing someone being badly hurt or killed
- involvement in a fire, flood, earthquake, severe hurricane, or other natural disaster
- involvement in a life-threatening accident (workplace explosion or transportation accident)
- military combat

The traumatic events most frequently mentioned by men diagnosed with PTSD are rape, combat exposure, childhood **neglect**, and childhood physical abuse. For women diagnosed with PTSD, the most common traumas are rape, sexual molestation, physical attack, being threatened with a weapon, and childhood physical abuse.

### High-risk populations

Some subpopulations in the United States are at greater risk of developing PTSD. The lifetime prevalence of PTSD among persons living in depressed urban areas or on Native American reservations is estimated at 23%. For victims of violent crimes, the estimated rate is 58%.

### Military veterans

Information about PTSD in veterans of the Vietnam era is derived from the National Vietnam Veterans Readjustment Survey (NVVRS), conducted between 1986 and 1988. The estimated lifetime prevalence of PTSD among American veterans of this war is 30.9% for men and 26.9% for women. An additional 22.5% of the men and 21.2% of the women have been diagnosed with partial PTSD at some point in their lives. The lifetime prevalence of PTSD among veterans of World War II and the Korean War is estimated at 20%.

## Cross-cultural issues

Further research needs to be done on the effects of ethnicity and culture on post-traumatic symptoms. As of 2001, most PTSD research has been done by Western clinicians working with patients from a similar background. Researchers do not yet know whether persons from non-Western societies have the same psychological reactions to specific traumas or whether they develop the same symptom patterns.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

When PTSD was first suggested as a diagnostic category for *DSM-III* in 1980, it was controversial precisely because of the central role of outside stressors as causes of the disorder. Psychiatry has generally emphasized the internal abnormalities of individuals as the source of mental disorders; prior to the 1970s, war veterans, rape victims, and other trauma survivors were often blamed for their symptoms and regarded as cowards, moral weaklings, or masochists. The high rate of psychiatric casualties among Vietnam veterans, however, led to studies conducted by the Veterans Administration. These studies helped to establish PTSD as a legitimate diagnostic entity with a complex set of causes.

**BIOCHEMICAL/PHYSIOLOGICAL CAUSES.** Present neurobiological research indicates that traumatic events cause lasting changes in the human nervous system, including abnormal secretions of stress hormones. In addition, in PTSD patients, researchers have found changes in the amygdala and the hippocampus—the parts of the **brain** that form links between fear and memory. Experiments with ketamine, a drug that inactivates one of the neurotransmitter chemicals in the central nervous system, suggest that trauma works in a similar way to damage associative pathways in the brain. **Positron emission tomography** (PET) scans of PTSD patients suggest that trauma affects the parts of the brain that govern speech and language.

**SOCIOCULTURAL CAUSES.** Studies of specific populations of PTSD patients (combat veterans, survivors of rape or genocide, former political hostages or prisoners, etc.) have shed light on the social and cultural causes of PTSD. In general, societies that are highly authoritarian, glorify violence, or sexualize violence have high rates of PTSD even among civilians.

**OCCUPATIONAL FACTORS.** Persons whose work exposes them to traumatic events or who treat trauma survivors may develop secondary PTSD (also known as compassion **fatigue** or burnout). These occupations

include specialists in emergency medicine, police officers, firefighters, search-and-rescue personnel, psychotherapists, disaster investigators, etc. The degree of risk for PTSD is related to three factors: the amount and intensity of exposure to the suffering of trauma victims, the worker's degree of empathy and sensitivity, and unresolved issues from the worker's personal history.

**PERSONAL VARIABLES.** Although the most important causal factor in PTSD is the traumatic event itself, individuals differ in the intensity of their cognitive and emotional responses to trauma; some persons appear to be more vulnerable than others. In some cases, this greater vulnerability is related to temperament or natural disposition, with shy or introverted people being at greater risk. In other cases, the person's vulnerability results from chronic illness, a physical disability, or previous traumatization—particularly abuse in childhood. As of 2007, researchers have not found any correlation between race and biological vulnerability to PTSD.

### Symptoms

*DSM-IV-TR* specifies six diagnostic criteria for PTSD:

- Traumatic stressor: The patient has been exposed to a catastrophic event involving actual or threatened death or injury, or a threat to the physical integrity of the self or others. During exposure to the trauma, the person's emotional response was marked by intense fear, feelings of helplessness, or horror. In general, stressors caused intentionally by human beings (genocide, rape, torture, abuse, etc.) are experienced as more traumatic than accidents, natural disasters, or "acts of God."
- Intrusive symptoms: The patient experiences flashbacks, traumatic daydreams, or nightmares, in which he or she relives the trauma as if it were recurring in the present. Intrusive symptoms result from an abnormal process of memory formation. Traumatic memories have two distinctive characteristics: 1) they can be triggered by stimuli that remind the patient of the traumatic event; 2) they have a "frozen" or wordless quality, consisting of images and sensations rather than verbal descriptions.
- Avoidant symptoms: The patient attempts to reduce the possibility of exposure to anything that might trigger memories of the trauma, and to minimize his or her reactions to such memories. This cluster of symptoms includes feeling disconnected from other people, psychic numbing, and avoidance of places, persons, or things associated with the trauma.

Patients with PTSD are at increased risk of substance abuse as a form of self-medication to numb painful memories.

- Hyperarousal: Hyperarousal is a condition in which the patient's nervous system is always on "red alert" for the return of danger. This symptom cluster includes hypervigilance, insomnia, difficulty concentrating, general irritability, and an extreme startle response. Some clinicians think that this abnormally intense startle response may be the most characteristic symptom of PTSD.
- Duration of symptoms: The symptoms must persist for at least one month.
- Significance: The patient suffers from significant social, interpersonal, or work-related problems as a result of the PTSD symptoms. A common social symptom of PTSD is a feeling of disconnection from other people (including loved ones), from the larger society, and from spiritual or other significant sources of meaning.

### Diagnosis

The diagnosis of PTSD is complicated by several factors.

#### *Time of onset/symptom duration*

In the case of a known trauma of recent occurrence—most often a civilian disaster or war—the diagnosis of PTSD is relatively straightforward, based on the criteria listed above.

*DSM-IV* introduced a new diagnostic category, **acute stress disorder**, to differentiate between time-limited and longer-term stress reactions. In acute stress disorder, the hyperarousal and intrusive symptoms last between two days and four weeks. If the symptoms last beyond four weeks, and all of the above criteria are met, the diagnosis is changed to PTSD.

The diagnosis of PTSD is more difficult in cases of delayed reaction to trauma. Some individuals do not develop symptoms of PTSD until months or even years after the traumatic event. *DSM-IV-TR* specifies an interval of at least six months between the event and the development of symptoms for a diagnosis of PTSD With Delayed Onset. Delayed symptoms are often triggered by a situation that resembles the original trauma, as when a person raped in childhood experiences workplace sexual harassment.

#### *Individual variations in response to stressors*

*DSM-III* and its successors included the category of adjustment disorder to differentiate abnormal reactions

to such painful but relatively common life events (“ordinary stressors”) as divorce, job loss, or bereavement from symptoms resulting from overwhelming trauma. The differential diagnosis (the process of determining that the diagnosis is one disorder although it may resemble another) is complicated, however, by the fact that “ordinary stressors” sometimes reawaken unresolved childhood trauma, producing the delayed-reaction variant of PTSD.

### *Dual diagnoses*

Most patients with PTSD (as many as 80%) have been diagnosed with one of the anxiety (30–60%), dissociative, mood (26–85%), or somatoform disorders as well as with PTSD. Between 40% and 60% of persons with delayed-reaction PTSD are diagnosed with a personality disorder, most often **borderline personality disorder**. Another common **dual diagnosis** is PTSD/substance abuse disorder. Between 60% and 80% of patients who develop PTSD turn to alcohol or narcotics in order to avoid or numb painful memories. According to the NVVRS, the estimated lifetime prevalence of alcohol abuse among male Vietnam veterans is 39.2%, and the estimated lifetime prevalence of drug abuse is 5.7%. Dual diagnoses complicate treatment because the therapist must decide whether to treat the disorders in sequence or concurrently. PTSD patients diagnosed with **personality disorders** are regarded as the most difficult to treat.

### *Psychological measures*

As of 2007, there are no physical tests to establish a diagnosis of PTSD. The diagnosis is usually made on the basis of the patient’s history and results from one or more short-answer interviews or symptom inventories. The instruments most often used to evaluate patients for PTSD include the **Anxiety Disorders Interview Scale** (ADIS), the **Beck Depression Inventory**, the Clinician-Administered PTSD Scale (CAPS), the Disorders of Extreme Stress Inventory (DESI), the Dissociative Experiences Scale (DES), the **Hamilton Anxiety Scale**, and the Impact of Event Scale (IES).

## **Treatments**

### *Psychological and social interventions*

In general, there have been few well-controlled **clinical trials** of treatment options for PTSD, particularly for severely affected patients.

Critical incident stress debriefing (CISD) is a treatment offered to patients within 48 hours following a civilian disaster or war zone trauma. It is intended to weaken the acute symptoms of the trauma

and to forestall the development of full-blown PTSD. CISD usually consists of four phases:

- description of the traumatic event
- sharing of survivors’ emotional reactions to the event
- open discussion of symptoms caused by the event
- reassurance that the symptoms are normal responses to trauma, followed by discussion of coping strategies

Critical incident stress management is a system of interventions designed to help emergency/disaster response workers, public safety personnel, and therapists deal with stress reactions before they develop secondary PTSD.

Other mainstream treatment methods used with patients who have already developed PTSD include:

- Cognitive-behavioral therapy. There are two treatment approaches to PTSD included under this heading: exposure therapy, which seeks to desensitize the patient to reminders of the trauma; and anxiety management training, which teaches the patient strategies for reducing anxiety. These strategies may include relaxation training, biofeedback, social skills training, distraction techniques, or cognitive restructuring.
- Psychodynamic psychotherapy. This method helps the patient recover a sense of self and learn new coping strategies and ways to deal with intense emotions related to the trauma. Typically, it consists of three phases: 1) establishing a sense of safety for the patient; 2) exploring the trauma itself in depth; 3) helping the patient re-establish connections with family, friends, the wider society, and other sources of meaning.
- Discussion groups or peer-counseling groups. These groups are usually formed for survivors of specific traumas, such as combat, rape/incest, and natural disasters. They help patients to recognize that other survivors of the shared experience have had the same emotions and reacted to the trauma in similar ways. They appear to be especially beneficial for patients with guilt issues about their behavior during the trauma (e.g., submitting to rape to save one’s life, or surviving the event when others did not).
- Family therapy. This form of treatment is recommended for PTSD patients whose family life has been affected by the PTSD symptoms.

### *Medications*

In general, medications are used most often in patients with severe PTSD to treat the intrusive symptoms of the disorder as well as feelings of anxiety and **depression**. These drugs are usually given as one part of a treatment plan that includes psychotherapy or group

therapy. As of 2007, there is no single medication that appears to be a “magic bullet” for PTSD. The **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** appear to help the core symptoms when given in higher doses for five to eight weeks, while the tricyclic **antidepressants (TCAs)** or the monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) are most useful in treating anxiety and depression.

### *Alternative therapies*

Some alternative therapies for PTSD include:

- Spiritual/religious counseling. Because traumatic experiences often affect patients’ spiritual views and beliefs, counseling with a trusted religious or spiritual advisor may be part of a treatment plan. A growing number of pastoral counselors in the major Christian and Jewish bodies have advanced credentials in trauma therapy.
- Yoga and various forms of bodywork are often recommended as ways of releasing physical tension or muscle soreness caused by anxiety or hypervigilance.
- Martial arts training can be helpful in restoring the patient’s sense of personal effectiveness and safety. Some martial arts programs, such as Model Mugging, are designed especially for survivors of rape and other violent crimes.
- Art therapy, journaling, dance therapy, and creative writing groups offer safe outlets for the strong emotions that follow traumatic experiences.

### *Recent controversial therapies*

Since the mid-1980s, several controversial methods of treatment for PTSD have been introduced. Some have been developed by mainstream medical researchers while others are derived from various forms of alternative medicine. They include:

- Eye Movement Desensitization and Reprocessing. This is a technique in which the patient reimagines the trauma while focusing visually on movements of the therapist’s finger. It is claimed that the movements of the patient’s eyes reprogram the brain and allow emotional healing.
- Tapas Acupressure Technique (TAT). TAT was derived from traditional Chinese medicine (TCM), and its practitioners maintain that a large number of acupuncture meridians enter the brain at certain points on the face, especially around the eyes. Pressure on these points is thought to release traumatic stress.
- Thought Field Therapy. This therapy combines the acupuncture meridians of TCM with analysis of the patient’s voice over the telephone. The therapist then provides an individualized treatment for the patient.

- Traumatic Incident Reduction. This is a technique in which the patient treats the trauma like a videotape and “runs through” it repeatedly with the therapist until all negative emotions have been discharged.
- Emotional Freedom Techniques (EFT). EFT is similar to TAT in that it uses the body’s acupuncture meridians, but it emphasizes the body’s entire “energy field” rather than just the face.
- Counting Technique. Developed by a physician, this treatment consists of a preparation phase, a counting phase in which the therapist counts from 1 to 100 while the patient reimagines the trauma, and a review phase. Like Traumatic Incident Reduction, it is intended to reduce the patient’s hyperarousal.

### **Prognosis**

Trauma survivors who receive critical incident stress debriefing as soon as possible after the event have the best prognosis for full recovery. For patients who develop full-blown PTSD, a combination of peer-group meetings and individual psychotherapy are often effective. Treatment may require several years, however, and the patient is likely to experience relapses.

There are no studies of untreated PTSD, but long-term studies of patients with delayed-reaction PTSD or delayed diagnosis of the disorder indicate that treatment of patients in these groups is much more difficult and complicated.

In some patients, PTSD becomes a chronic mental disorder that can persist for decades, or the remainder of the patient’s life. Patients with chronic PTSD often have a cyclical history of symptom remissions and relapses. This group has the poorest prognosis for recovery; some patients do not respond to any of the currently available treatments for PTSD.

### **Prevention**

Some forms of trauma, such as natural disasters and accidents, can never be completely eliminated from human life. Traumas caused by human intention would require major social changes to reduce their frequency and severity, but given the increasing prevalence of PTSD around the world, these long-term changes are worth the effort. In the short term, educating people—particularly those in the helping professions—about the signs of critical incident stress may prevent some cases of exposure to trauma from developing into full-blown PTSD.

*See also* Anxiety reduction techniques; Bodywork therapies; Creative therapies; Exposure; Somatization and somatoform disorders.

## KEY TERMS

**Acute stress disorder**—Symptoms occurring in an individual following a traumatic event to oneself or surrounding environment. Symptoms include a continued response of intense fear, helplessness, or terror within four weeks of the event, extreme nervousness, sleep disorders, increased anxiety, poor concentration, absence of emotional response to surroundings, and sometimes a dissociative amnesia—not recalling the significance of the trauma. Symptoms last a minimum of two days and maximum of four weeks. Can become post-traumatic stress disorder.

**Adjustment disorder**—A disorder defined by the development of significant emotional or behavioral symptoms in response to a stressful event or series of events. Symptoms may include depressed mood, anxiety, and impairment of social and occupational functioning.

**Borderline personality disorder**—A severe and usually life-long mental disorder characterized by violent mood swings and severe difficulties in sustaining interpersonal relationships.

**Somatoform**—Referring to physical symptoms with a psychological origin.

**Substance abuse disorder**—Disorder that is characterized by: an individual's need for more of a drug or alcohol than intended, an inability to stop using by choice, and an ongoing difficulty in recovering from the effects of the substance.

## PERIODICALS

Declercq, Frédéric, and Jochem Willemsen. "Distress and Post-Traumatic Stress Disorders in High Risk Professionals: Adult Attachment Style and the Dimensions of Anxiety and Avoidance." *Clinical Psychology & Psychotherapy* 13(4), Jul–Aug 2006: 256–63.

van Liempt, Saskia, and others. "Pharmacotherapy for Disordered Sleep in Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder: A Systematic Review." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 21(4), July 2006: 193–202.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Anxiety Disorders Association of America, Inc. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852. (301) 231-9350. <<http://www.adaa.org>>.

International Critical Incident Stress Foundation, Inc. 10176 Baltimore National Pike, Unit 201, Ellicott City, MD 21042. (410) 750-9600. Emergency: (410) 313-2473. <<http://www.icisf.org>>.

International Society for Traumatic Stress Studies. 60 Revere Drive, Suite 500, Northbrook, IL 60062. (847) 480-9028. <<http://www.istss.org>>.

National Center for PTSD. 1116D V.A. Medical Center, 215 N. Main Street, White River Junction, VT 05009-0001. (802) 296-5132. <<http://www.ncptsd.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Rm. 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Rebecca Frey, Ph.D.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Foa, Edna B., Terence M. Keane, & Matthew J. Friedman, eds. *Effective Treatments for PTSD: Practice Guidelines from the International Society for Traumatic Stress Studies*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.
- Freeman, Arthur, and others. *Clinical Applications of Cognitive Therapy*. 2nd ed. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, 2004.
- Friedman, Matthew J. *Post-traumatic and Acute Stress Disorders: The Latest Assessment and Treatment Strategies*. Kansas City, MO: Compact Clinicals, 2005.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

## Postpartum depression

### Definition

Postpartum **depression** is a depression occurring after pregnancy. Symptoms begin within the first four weeks after childbirth and may last up to a year.

### Description

Postpartum depression is an affective disorder (any mental disorder characterized by a consistent change in mood that affects thoughts and behaviors) that can occur after pregnancies of all duration, from spontaneous (not induced) abortions, also called miscarriages, to full-term deliveries. The depression can take a mild clinical course or it can range to suicidal ideations (thoughts). Differentiating postpartum depression from "baby blues" or the **stress** from the pregnancy and delivery can be difficult. Postpartum depression can be differentiated from other types of depression if



**Women may suffer from postpartum depression shortly after giving birth, as caring for an infant can be overwhelming and giving birth may change the hormonal balance in the body.**  
*(thislife pictures/Alamy)*

the mother exhibits signs of ambivalence to the infant and **neglect** of other family members.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The cause of postpartum depression has been extensively studied. Alterations of hormone levels of prolactin, progesterone, estrogen, and cortisol are not significantly different from those of patients who do not suffer from postpartum depression. However, some research indicates a change in a **brain** chemical that controls the release of cortisol.

Research seems to indicate that postpartum depression is unlikely to occur in a patient with an otherwise psychologically uncomplicated pregnancy and past history. There is no association of postpartum depression with marital status, social class, or the number of live children born to the mother. However, there seems to be an increased chance to develop this disorder after pregnancy loss.

Certain characteristics have been associated with increased risk of developing postpartum depression. These risk factors include:

- medical indigence—being in need of health care and not being able to receive it, possibly due to lack of medical insurance
- being younger than 20 years old at time of delivery
- being unmarried
- having been separated from one or both parents in childhood or adolescence
- receiving poor parental support and attention in childhood
- having had limited parental support in adulthood
- poor relationship with husband or boyfriend
- economic problem with housing or income
- dissatisfaction with amount of education
- low self-esteem
- past or current emotional problem(s)
- family history of depression

### Symptoms

The symptoms can range from mild depression to a severe depression with thoughts of ending one's life (**suicide**). The disorder should be suspected during its peak (four to six weeks after delivery) in a patient who demonstrates signs and symptoms of clinical depression (feelings of worthlessness and hopelessness, changes in eating and sleeping patterns, irritability, difficulty with motivation, and difficulty getting out of bed in the morning). Additionally, patients may be emotionally detached from the infant and unable to display loving affection towards family members. Physical and emotional stress during delivery in conjunction with great demands for infant care may cause the patient to neglect other family members, increasing the woman's feelings of self-worthlessness, isolation, and being trapped. Patients may also feel as if they are inadequate mothers, causing them guilt and embarrassment.

## Demographics

There is a 20% to 30% risk of postpartum depression for women who had a previous depressive episode that was not associated with pregnancy. Additionally, there is an increased risk of recurrence in subsequent pregnancies since more than half of patients will have more than one episode.

## Diagnosis

Patients should undergo careful clinical assessment from a **psychologist** or **psychiatrist**, who can determine the risk factors and diagnose the condition. A careful, comprehensive psychological assessment interview could reveal a previous depressive cycle or a family history of depression—important risk factors. The most widely used standard for **diagnosis** is the Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale (EPDS). This is a simple and short 10-question scale. A score of 12 or greater on the EPDS is considered high risk for postpartum depression.

## Treatments

Treatment should begin as soon as the diagnosis is established. A typical treatment plan includes **psychotherapy** and medications. Recent studies have found that a group of medications known as the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** are effective in treating postpartum depression. These **antidepressants** have fewer side effects than other antidepressants and can be taken by breast-feeding mothers. SSRIs are secreted into breast milk, however, in varying amounts. Some studies indicate that **paroxetine** secretes the least amount of medication into breast milk. Breast-feeding women considering taking an antidepressant should discuss medication choices with their doctor. SSRIs can be given two to three weeks before delivery to patients who had a previous episode to avoid recurrence. Some SSRIs include: **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **paroxetine** (**Paxil**), **sertraline** (Zoloft), and **citalopram** (Celexa).

When medications are combined with psychological therapy, the rates for successful treatment are increased. **Interpersonal therapy** and **cognitive-behavioral therapy** have been found to be effective.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for postpartum depression varies because this disorder is usually implicated with difficult social factors, a personal history of emotional problems, and adverse pregnancy outcomes, such as miscarriage. The prognosis is better if depression is detected early during its clinical course and a combination of SSRIs and psychotherapy is available and initiated.

## Prevention

The best method to prevent the disorder is through education. Mothers should be advised prior to hospital discharge that if the “maternity blues” last longer than two weeks or pose tough difficulties with

family interactions, they should call the hospital where their baby was delivered and pursue a referral for a psychological evaluation. Education concerning risk factors and reduction of these is important. Prophylactic (preventive) use of SSRIs is indicated two to three weeks before delivery to prevent the disorder in a patient with a past history of depression, since recurrence rates are high if the mother had a previous depressive episode.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Beck, Cheryl Tatano, and Jeanne Watson Driscoll. *Postpartum Mood and Anxiety Disorders: A Clinician's Guide*. Sudbury, MA: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 2006.

Kornstein, Susan G., and Anita H. Clayton, eds. *Women's Mental Health: A Comprehensive Textbook*. New York: Guilford Press, 2002.

Subcommittee on Health, U.S. House of Representatives. *Improving Women's Health: Understanding Depression after Pregnancy. (Hearing before the Subcommittee on Health of the Committee on Energy and Commerce, House of Representatives, One Hundred Eighth Congress, Second Session, September 29, 2004.)* Washington, D.C.: US Government Printing Office, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

Barnes, Diana Lynn. “Postpartum Depression: Its Impact on Couples and Marital Satisfaction.” *Journal of Systemic Therapies* 25(3), Fall 2006: 25–42.

Haslam, Divna M., Kenneth I. Pakenham, and Amanda Smith. “Social Support and Postpartum Depressive Symptomatology: The Mediating Role of Maternal Self-Efficacy.” *Infant Mental Health Journal* 27(3), May–Jun 2006: 276–91.

Klier, Claudia M., and others. “The Role of Estrogen and Progesterone in Depression after Birth.” *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41(3–4), Apr–Jun 2007: 273–9.

Moehler, E., and others. “Maternal Depressive Symptoms in the Postnatal Period Are Associated With Long-Term Impairment of Mother-Child Bonding.” *Archives of Women's Mental Health* 9(5), Sep 2006: 273–8.

Nylen, Kimberly J., and others. “Maternal Depression: A Review of Relevant Treatment Approaches for Mothers and Infants.” *Infant Mental Health Journal* 27(4), Jul–Aug 2006: 327–43.

Sharma, Verinder. “A Cautionary Note on the Use of Antidepressants in Postpartum Depression.” *Bipolar Disorders*, 8(4), Aug 2006: 411–14.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Online PPD Support Group. <<http://www.ppdsupportpage.com>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
Nicole Mallory, M.S., PA-C

## Premature ejaculation

### Definition

Premature ejaculation (PE) refers to the persistent or recurrent discharge of semen with minimal sexual stimulation before, on, or shortly after penetration; before the person wishes it; and earlier than he expects it. In making the **diagnosis** of PE, the clinician must take into account factors that affect the length of time that the man feels sexually excited. These factors include the age of the patient and his partner; the newness of the sexual partner; and the location and recent frequency of sexual activity.

### Causes

Premature ejaculation (PE) is a common complaint. The available evidence supports the notion that control and modulation of sexual excitement is learned behavior. If someone has learned it incorrectly or inadequately, they can relearn it. PE is only rarely caused by a physical or structural problem; in these cases it is usually associated with other physical symptoms, usually pain. In rare cases, PE may be associated with a neurological condition; infection of the prostate gland; or urethritis (inflammation of the duct that carries urine and semen to the outside of the body). With the rising prevalence of **substance abuse**, an increasing number of cases of PE are being diagnosed in patients withdrawing from drugs, especially **opioids**.

PE may be of lifelong duration or develop in later life, especially if a difficult interpersonal relationship is one of its causes. Although PE is commonly associated with psychological symptoms, especially performance **anxiety** and guilt, these symptoms are its consequences rather than its causes. Once PE is firmly established, however, the accompanying psychological factors, especially in combination with sexual overstimulation, may form a self-perpetuating cycle that makes the disorder worse.

Premature ejaculation is common in adolescents where it may be made worse by feelings of sinfulness concerning sexual activity; fear of discovery; fear of making the partner pregnant; or fear of contracting a sexually transmitted disease (STD). All of these may be made worse by performance anxiety. Adults may have similar concerns as well as interpersonal factors related to the sexual partner.

### Symptoms

In PE, ejaculation occurs earlier than the patient and/or the couple would like, thus preventing full

satisfaction from intercourse, especially on the part of the sexual partner, who frequently fails to attain orgasm. PE is almost invariably accompanied by marked emotional upset and interpersonal difficulties that may add frustration to an already tense situation, which makes the loss of sexual fulfillment even worse. It is also important to differentiate male orgasm from ejaculation. Some men are able to distinguish between the two events and enjoy the pleasurable sensations associated with orgasm apart from the emission of semen, which usually ends the moment of orgasm. In these cases, the partner is capable of achieving her own orgasm and sexual satisfaction.

### Diagnosis

The physical examination of a patient who is having problems with PE usually results in normal findings. Abnormal findings are unusual. The best source of information for diagnosing the nature of the problem is the patient's sexual history. On taking the patient's history, the clinician should concentrate on the sexual history, making sure that both partners have adequate and accurate sexual information. Ideally, the sexual partner should participate in the history and is often able to contribute valuable information that the patient himself may be unaware of or unwilling to relate. The female partner should also be examined by a gynecologist in order to ascertain her sexual capabilities and to eliminate the possibility that the size or structure of her genitals is part of the reason for the male's premature ejaculation.

### Treatment

Preferably, therapy for PE should be conducted under the supervision of a health professional trained in sexual dysfunction. Both partners must participate responsibly in the therapeutic program. Treatment of PE requires patience, dedication and commitment by both partners, and the therapist must convey this message to both. The first part of therapy requires both partners to avoid intercourse for a period of several weeks. This period of abstinence is helpful in relieving any troublesome performance anxiety on the part of the man that may interfere with therapy.

Behavioral techniques, taught either individually, conjointly, or in groups, are effective in the therapy of PE. A preliminary stage of all treatment is termed "sensate focus" and involves the man's concentration on the process of sexual arousal and orgasm. He should learn each step in the process, most particularly the moment prior to the "point of no return." The sexual partner participates in the process, maintaining

an awareness of her partner's sensations and how close he is to ejaculating. At this point, two techniques are commonly used:

- The “stop and start” technique. This approach involves sexual stimulation until the man recognizes that he is about to ejaculate. At this time, the stimulation is discontinued for about thirty seconds and then resumed. This sequence of events is repeated until ejaculation is desired by both partners, with stimulation continuing until ejaculation occurs.
- The “squeeze” technique. This approach involves sexual stimulation, usually by the sexual partner, until the man recognizes that he is about to ejaculate. At this time stimulation ceases. The patient or his partner gently squeezes the end of the penis at the junction of the glans penis (tip of the penis) with the shaft. The squeezing is continued for several seconds. Sexual stimulation is withheld for about 30 seconds and then resumed. This sequence of events is repeated by the patient alone or with the assistance of his partner until ejaculation is desired. At this point stimulation is continued until the man ejaculates.

The patient and his partner should be advised against trying any of the many unproven remedies that are available either over the counter or popularized on the Internet. Certain prescription medications, especially **antidepressants** that produce delayed ejaculation as a side effect, may be useful as therapeutic adjuncts. Recently, the use of a class of drugs known as selective serotonin receptor inhibitors (**SSRIs**) has shown promise in the treatment of premature ejaculation. The SSRIs prolong the time it takes the man to ejaculate by as much as 30 minutes. The SSRIs most commonly used to treat PE are **sertraline** (Zoloft) and **fluoxetine** (Prozac), which are currently approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in treating **depression** and panic attacks. It is important to emphasize that the use of these drugs to treat premature ejaculation is still considered experimental, as the FDA has not approved them for this specific use as of 2002.

### Potential complications

Premature ejaculation that takes place before the man's penis enters the woman's vagina will interfere with conception, if the couple is planning a pregnancy. Continued lack of ejaculatory control may lead to sexual dissatisfaction for either or both members of the couple. It may become a source of marital tension, disturbed interpersonal relationships, and eventual separation or divorce.

### KEY TERMS

**Abstinence**—Refraining from sexual intercourse for a period of time.

**Ejaculation**—The discharge of semen by the male reproductive organs.

**Glans**—The tip of the penis.

**Orgasm**—Another word for sexual climax. In the male, orgasm is usually accompanied by ejaculation but may be experienced as distinct from ejaculation.

**Prostate**—A muscular gland surrounding the urethra in males at the base of the urinary bladder. The prostate gland secretes the fluid that combines with the male sperm cells to form semen.

**Semen**—A thick whitish fluid containing sperm, produced by the male reproductive organs.

**Urethritis**—Inflammation of the urethra, which is the duct that carries urine and (in males) semen to the outside of the body.

Failure to respond to treatment for PE and the complications that may result from it should encourage the patient to seek further help from a health provider trained and experienced in treating the problem.

### Prognosis

In most cases (some observers claim a 95% success rate), the patient is able to control ejaculation through education and practice of the techniques outlined. In chronic cases that do not respond to treatment, the PE may be related to a serious psychological or psychiatric condition, including depression or anxiety. Patients in this category may benefit from **psychotherapy**.

*See also* Male orgasmic disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Lue, Tom F., F. Goldstein. “Impotence and Infertility.” In *Atlas of Clinical Urology*. Volume 1. New York: Current Medicine, 1999.
- Masters, William, and Virginia Johnson. *Masters and Johnson on Sex and Human Loving*. New York: Little, Brown, 1986.
- Steidle, Christopher P., M.D. *The Impotence Source Book*. Los Angeles: Howell House, 1998.

Ralph Myerson, M.D.

## Premenstrual syndrome

### Definition

Premenstrual syndrome, or PMS, is a constellation of physical, behavioral, and mood symptoms that some women experience during the luteal phase of their menstrual cycle, which spans roughly the 7 to 10 days before the start of menses.

### Description

In their reproductive years, women normally have fluctuations of various hormones over the course of the menstrual cycle. An average menstrual cycle lasts about 28 days, although a normal cycle can range from 21 to 35 days. Many hormones are released into the blood during the menstrual cycle, including estrogen and progesterone. Fluctuations in hormone levels cause changes in the ovaries and the uterus. On around day 14 of a 28-day cycle, an egg is released from the ovaries, in a process called ovulation. After ovulation, the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle begins. The luteal phase lasts about 14 days in a normal 28-day menstrual cycle. If the egg is not fertilized by a sperm, the lining of the uterus is shed in the process called menstruation. The onset of menstruation, or menses, marks the end of the luteal phase. The characteristic features of PMS are physical and emotional symptoms that start in the luteal phase and disappear soon after the onset of menses.

The cluster of symptoms associated with premenstrual syndrome was first described in the scientific literature in 1931, by R.T. Frank, the chief of obstetrics and gynecology at New York's Mt. Sinai Hospital. The term "premenstrual syndrome" was coined in 1953, in an article written by the English physician Katharina Dalton, who believed that PMS was due to a deficiency of the hormone progesterone.

PMS occurs in the middle of a symptom continuum that ranges from premenstrual molimina, or the normal signs heralding the onset of menses, to severe distress and dysfunction. The large majority of women between the ages of menarche and menopause experience physical, emotional, and/or behavioral changes during the time period before the start of menses, but many of them do not find these changes troubling. Women who experience severe symptoms are considered to have premenstrual dysphoric disorder, or PMDD, which was formerly called late luteal phase dysphoric disorder. The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition (*DSM-IV*), describes PMDD as a condition that warrants further study before being granted the status of a specific disorder,

but PMDD is used as a diagnostic category. For a woman to be diagnosed as having PMDD, she must have at least 5 of 11 symptoms, which include sadness, tension, mood swings, irritability, reduced interest in usual activities, difficulty concentrating, **fatigue**, appetite and sleep changes, a sense of being overwhelmed, and physical symptoms such as bloating or pain. At least one of the symptoms must be a mood symptom, and symptoms have to be present for most days during the luteal period for most months in the past year. Symptoms must remit shortly after the onset of menses.

Women who experience symptoms that are troubling enough to affect relationships, work, or family life but whose symptoms do not meet the criteria for PMDD are considered to have PMS. PMS is not listed as a psychiatric disorder in the *DSM-IV*. According to the tenth edition of the *International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems*, *ICD-10*, a **diagnosis** of PMS can be made even if only one distressing symptom is present. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists guidelines for diagnosing PMS require at least one symptom to be present in the five days preceding the menses for three consecutive menstrual cycles.

Some people criticize the characterization of PMS as a disorder. They point out that PMS is not well defined and that many women experience PMS symptoms. They fear that making PMS into a disorder stigmatizes women in general and makes women subject to negative portrayals in popular culture. Women are described as PMSing, aggressive, hostile, and crazy, and are the frequent targets of jokes about the effects of the menstrual cycle. The idea that women are strongly influenced by their menstrual cycles can have an impact on their professional lives, even though there is little evidence that PMS impairs task performance. Some people even suggest that the promotion of PMS as a disorder is attributable to a profit motive. They claim that the concept of PMS exists partly because it is financially beneficial for hospitals and clinics to provide treatments for PMS, even though many of these treatments are ineffective or unproven.

Others advocate defining PMS as a disorder. They argue that PMS is a significant burden for many women, and that women with PMS are relieved to have the condition recognized as a real problem, rather than have it be dismissed as the product of an overactive imagination.

### Demographics

As many as 80% of women report that they experience some change in mood, behavior, and physical

sensations or functioning in the time period before the onset of menses, although most women do not find these changes troubling. PMDD affects about 5% to 8% of women between puberty and menopause. About 10% to 40% of all menstruating women have PMS, which means that they experience symptoms that are marked enough to impair relationships, work, or family life but do not have symptoms that are severe enough to warrant a diagnosis of PMDD. Although many researchers list these and similar estimates of the prevalence of PMS, others point out that such estimates may be inaccurate because PMS is not a well-defined condition, and because prevalence estimates are usually derived from women's retrospective reports. Retrospective reports are often flawed because of memory distortions. For example, it is possible that some women who experience symptoms throughout the menstrual cycle misremember them as occurring only in the period prior to menstruation.

PMS can begin at any age after menarche or at the time of the first menstrual period. PMS occurs most often in women who ovulate, but women who do not ovulate may also experience it. For example, it may occur in women around the time of menopause, when women sometimes have menstrual periods, even when they do not ovulate. According to the National Women's Health Information Center, PMS is most common in women who are between their late 20s and early 40s, have at least one child, have a family history of **depression**, and have suffered from depression in the past. Some scientists have suggested that PMS is more likely to occur in women who eat large amounts of chocolate, or women who drink heavily. Women with PMS typically seek medical help for the condition in their 30s.

## Symptoms

Symptom type can vary from menstrual cycle to cycle, as can symptom severity. The PMS symptoms most commonly reported by women are bloating, irritability, and difficulty sleeping. Other symptoms include breast discomfort, headaches, swelling of hands or feet, back pain, joint or muscle aches, fatigue, lapses in memory, decreased interest in sex, angry outbursts, restlessness, difficulty concentrating, confusion, depression, **anxiety**, social withdrawal, and cravings for sweet or salty foods and caffeine.

## Causes

The causes of PMS are unclear. Scientists have put forward many theories to explain the etiology of PMS, including low levels of the hormone progesterone,

changes in the ratio of the hormone estrogen to progesterone, increases in the activity of the adrenal gland, too much of the hormone prolactin, decreased endorphins, and too little prostaglandin, among others. Research does not provide consistent support for any of these theories.

However, most scientists do agree that abnormal levels of the neurotransmitter serotonin, or abnormal bodily responses to serotonin, may be involved in PMS. The fluctuations of hormones during the menstrual cycle may have an effect on serotonin function, but the details of the mechanisms involved are still unclear. Evidence for the involvement of serotonin in PMS comes from the fact that PMS and PMDD have many symptoms in common with disorders such as depression, which involve abnormalities related to serotonin levels. Also, many women with PMDD and PMS find that symptoms are alleviated when they take **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, which are antidepressant drugs that increase the levels of serotonin available to nerve cells.

Because there are many different kinds of PMS symptoms and many different etiological theories with partial support, some researchers speculate that there may be more than one form and multiple causes of PMS

## Diagnosis

There are no laboratory tests for diagnosing PMS, because the cause of the condition is unknown. A diagnosis of PMS is typically made only after a woman has kept a record of daily symptoms over the course of the menstrual cycle for at least three months. This allows women to determine whether their symptoms occur only during the luteal phase of the cycle or at other times as well.

A diagnosis of PMDD is given only after ruling out the possibility of a premenstrual increase in the symptoms of another disorder. Some women with general medical conditions such as seizure disorders, endocrine dysfunctions, cancer, systemic lupus erythematosus, anemia, endometriosis, and some kinds of infections may experience higher levels of negative mood and fatigue during the premenstrual period. Some women with psychological disorders, such as depression, **anxiety disorders**, **bulimia nervosa**, substance use problems, and **personality disorders**, may also experience exacerbations of their symptoms during the premenstrual period. These women, however, experience symptoms throughout the menstrual cycle, unlike women with PMS, who only experience symptoms during the luteal phase.

## Treatment and prevention

Treatments for PMS include lifestyle changes, drug therapy, nutritional supplements, and herbal remedies.

### Lifestyle changes

Changes in lifestyle, rather than drug therapy, are recommended for women who experience mild PMS. For many women, regular exercise alleviates PMS symptoms. One theory suggests that a decrease in endorphin levels in the late luteal phase may result in premenstrual symptoms. Exercise causes endorphins to be released, which may help to alleviate the depressive symptoms that some women with PMS experience. Twenty to thirty minutes of aerobic exercise at least three days a week are recommended.

Because **stress** can exacerbate PMS, taking steps to reduce work and family stress, especially in the premenstrual period, can be helpful. Women who experience PMS may find it helpful to avoid scheduling stressful activities on days when they expect to have symptoms. Dealing with issues at work and within relationships that produce conflict may also be helpful, because achieving a sense of control can reduce stress.

Although some researchers point out that there is no evidence that dietary changes can alleviate PMS, others recommend keeping dietary salt levels low to prevent fluid retention and bloating, and reducing caffeine intake to alleviate breast discomfort and reduce jitteriness.

### Drug therapy

The main pharmacological agents used to treat PMS are SSRIs, anti-anxiety medications, drugs that induce chemical menopause, hormones, and oral contraceptives.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved the use of the SSRIs **fluoxetine** and **sertraline** for the treatment of PMDD. Although the FDA has not approved these drugs for PMS, reports indicate that they are helpful for treating PMS. The dose that is prescribed for PMDD and PMS is typically smaller than that used to treat depression. SSRIs typically take two to four weeks before they begin to have an effect on the symptoms of depression, but they alleviate the symptoms of PMS and PMDD in a much shorter time, usually in one or two days. For depression, intermittent dosing with SSRIs is not usually effective, but for PMS and PMDD SSRIs are effective

when taken daily only during the luteal phase of the menstrual cycle.

Studies show that SSRIs are not effective for about 40% of women with PMDD. These results may indicate that hormones and **neurotransmitters** other than serotonin are also implicated in PMDD.

Some practitioners report that **alprazolam** is effective for alleviating the anxiety that some women with PMS experience. Alprazolam is a benzodiazepine drug that is sold under the brand name Xanax. Other reports indicate that alprazolam is not an effective treatment for negative premenstrual mood symptoms and that it can also impair task performance. In addition, the use of alprazolam can lead to **addiction**.

Chemically inducing menopause is an effective way of eliminating PMS and PMDD, but because this treatment has many side effects, it is only used as a last resort. Drugs such as leuprolide, which is sold under the brand name Lupron, are used to induce chemical menopause. Leuprolide is similar to a gonadotropin-releasing hormone, a hormone naturally released by the **brain**. Leuprolide reduces estrogen production by the ovaries. Because low estrogen can lead to problems such as thinning of bones, estrogen is sometimes administered to women who take drugs like Lupron, to reduce side effects such as osteoporosis and hot flashes. However, estrogen add-back therapy is very expensive and may result in the return of PMS symptoms.

In the 1950s, the English physician Katharina Dalton treated many women with PMS by giving them supplements of the hormone progesterone. She reported that progesterone was effective in alleviating symptoms in these women. More recent research in the United States has not confirmed Dalton's results. Despite this, gynecologists still sometimes prescribe progesterone for PMS, because some women report benefits. Natural progesterone, or synthetic progesterone in the form of drugs such as Provera, may be used. Progesterone injections can be given in the form of Depo-Provera, which is a contraceptive. A dose of injected Depo-Provera lasts for three months. It prevents women from getting periods. The drug has a sedative effect on some women and so alleviates premenstrual anxiety. The drug can, however, have negative side effects, including bleeding or spotting, depression, and weight gain.

Some women with PMS find that symptoms are alleviated when they take a low-dose birth control pill, although, for unknown reasons, other women actually have worsening of symptoms when they use oral contraceptives. In October 2006, the FDA approved the

use of the birth control pill YAZ for treating PMDD. YAZ contains a synthetic form of progesterone called drospirenone and estrogen in the form of ethinyl estradiol. Reports indicate that YAZ alleviates both physical and emotional symptoms of PMS.

#### **Nutritional supplements and herbal remedies**

Some health practitioners suggest using nutritional and herbal supplements, selected to treat the primary symptoms experienced, although their effectiveness in alleviating PMS is controversial. Some nutritional supplements and herbs can be toxic or may interact with medications. There are varying dosage recommendations for many of these supplements in the scientific literature. For these reasons, women should consult with their physicians before using such substances.

For fluid retention problems, diuretic therapy with 25 mg of spironolactone twice a day is sometimes recommended. Spironolactone is sold under the trade name Aldactone. Other reports indicate that a spironolactone supplement of 100 mg per day improves both the physical and mood symptoms of PMS. Using a calcium supplement of 1,200–1,500 mg daily also appears to reduce PMS symptoms in some women. Some practitioners recommend using vitamin B6 supplements of 50–100 mg daily, but others recommend a higher dose. Vitamin B6 is a natural diuretic and may help to reduce bloating. Furthermore, vitamin B6 appears to suppress the action of prolactin, which is a hormone that may be involved in PMS. Vitamin B6 may also play a role in the metabolism of serotonin, which appears to be involved in PMS. A Vitamin E supplement of about 400–600 units a day is sometimes suggested for helping to alleviate breast discomfort. Daily supplements of magnesium appear to reduce symptoms related to fluid retention such as weight gain, breast tenderness, swelling of hands and feet, and abdominal bloating. Dose recommendations vary from 200–600 mg daily.

Although the effectiveness of herbal remedies is even more controversial than that of nutritional supplements, women sometimes use them. Some practitioners report that women who use **evening primrose oil** find that it occasionally alleviates PMS symptoms, although others report that studies have not demonstrated its effectiveness. Evening primrose is a plant that has a fatty acid essential to the body, called gamma-linoleic acid. Some researchers have speculated that gamma-linoleic acid may help PMS symptoms by raising the levels of prostaglandin in the body. Other oils that contain gamma-linoleic acid are borage oil, black currant oil, and rapeseed oil. Many other types of herbal supplements are described as having

## **KEY TERMS**

**Adrenal gland**—A gland that produces many different hormones, including estrogen, progesterone, and stress hormones.

**Anemia**—A condition in which red blood cells do not supply enough oxygen to body tissues.

**Benzodiazepine**—A class of anti-anxiety drugs.

**Bulimia nervosa**—An eating disorder in which binge-eating is followed by inappropriate and often dangerous efforts to control body weight.

**Contraceptive**—A method that prevents conception and pregnancy.

**Endocrine dysfunction**—A problem relating to inadequate or excessive production of hormones.

**Endometriosis**—A condition in which the tissue that is normally present in the lining of the uterus grows elsewhere in the body.

**Endorphin**—A neurotransmitter that acts like a natural opiate, relieving pain and producing euphoria.

**Gonadotropin-releasing hormone**—A hormone produced by the brain that stimulates the pituitary gland to release hormones that trigger ovulation.

**Luteal phase**—The period of time between ovulation and menstruation.

**Menarche**—The first menstrual period.

**Menopause**—The cessation of menstrual periods.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical that sends signals from one nerve cell to another.

**Osteoporosis**—The thinning of bone and loss of bone density.

**Personality disorder**—A chronic pattern of behaving and relating to others that causes significant distress and impairs functioning.

**Premenstrual molimina**—The normal signs that indicate that menses will soon occur.

**Prostaglandin**—A chemical produced in the body, which is involved in many functions, including blood pressure regulation and inflammation.

**Systemic lupus erythematosis**—A chronic, inflammatory autoimmune disorder.

the potential to relieve PMS symptoms, although there is conflicting information in the scientific literature about their efficacy. These herbal supplements include chaste tree berry, **ginkgo biloba**, and St. John's wort.

## Prognosis

Women who have PMS typically experience symptoms throughout their reproductive years, except during pregnancy. In some women, PMS can become more severe around the time of menopause, in the perimenopausal time period. PMS generally remits after menopause.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Minkin, Mary Jane, and Carol V. Wright. *The Yale Guide to Women's Reproductive Health From Menarche to Menopause*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2003.
- Ratcliff, Kathryn Strother. *Women and Health: Power, Technology, Inequality and Conflict in a Gendered World*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2002.
- Speroff, Leon, and Marc A. Fritz,. *Clinical Gynecologic Endocrinology and Infertility*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

- Clayton, A. H., A. E. Keller, C. Leslie, and W. Evans. "Exploratory Study of Premenstrual Symptoms and Serotonin Variability." *Archives of Women's Mental Health* 9.1 (Jan. 2006): 51–57.
- Dell, Diana L. "What's new in PMS? (premenstrual syndrome)" *Patient Care for the Nurse Practitioner* Apr. 2005.
- Hudson, Tori. "Premenstrual Syndrome: A Review of Herbal and Nutritional Supplements." *Townsend Letter for Doctors and Patients* 270 (2006): 126–31.
- Mishell, Daniel R. "Premenstrual Disorders: Epidemiology and Disease Burden." *American Journal of Managed Care* 11 (2005): S473–79.
- Rapkin, Andrea J. "New Treatment Approaches for Premenstrual Disorders." *American Journal of Managed Care* 11 (2005): S480–91.
- Strine, Tara W., Daniel P. Chapman, and Indu B. Ahluwalia. "Menstrual-Related Problems and Psychological Distress among Women in the United States." *Journal of Women's Health* 14.4 (2005): 316–23.
- Yonkers, Kimberly A. "Management Strategies for PMS/PMDD." *Journal of Family Practice* 53.9 (2004): SS15–20.

### WEB SITES

- "FDA Approves New Indication for YAZ to Treat Emotional and Physical Symptoms of Premenstrual Dysphoric Disorder (PMDD)." *Berlex*. Oct. 5, 2006. <<http://www.berlex.com/html/press/articles/10052006.html>>.
- "Gynecologic Problems: Premenstrual Syndrome." *The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists*. <[http://www.acog.org/publications/patient\\_education/bp057.cfm](http://www.acog.org/publications/patient_education/bp057.cfm)>.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG), 409 Twelfth Street SW, P.O. Box 96920, Washington, DC 20090-6920. Telephone: (800) 762-2264 <<http://www.acog.org>>.
- The Hormone Foundation, 8401 Connecticut Avenue, Suite 900, Chevy Chase, MD 20815-5817. Telephone: (800) 467-6663 <<http://www.hormone.org>>.
- National Women's Health Information Center, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Office on Women's Health, 8270 Willow Oaks Corporate Drive, Fairfax, VA 22031. Telephone: (800) 994-9662 <<http://www.4woman.gov>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (866) 615-NIMH (6464) <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Ruvanee Pietersz Vilhauer, PhD

Primary hypersomnia see **Hypersomnia**

Primary insomnia see **Insomnia**

## Process addiction

### Definition

A process **addiction**, also known as behavioral addiction, is the repetitive occurrence of impulsive behaviors regardless of the negative consequences the behaviors may trigger.

### Description

Process or behavioral addiction became a focus of study in the 1980s and 1990s. Researchers hypothesized that changes wrought in the brain's reward system by certain substances (e.g., **cocaine**) and leading to substance use problems or addiction may also underlie the exercise of dysfunctional, directed behaviors that have negative consequences. In other words, the addictions may differ in nature (a process like gambling versus taking a substance like cocaine), but the end result in the brain/body is the same. To paraphrase one researcher, the **brain** does not care whether or not the reward comes from a chemical stimulus or from an experience.

Many of the behaviors listed in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fourth Edition, Text Revision (also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*) as "Impulsive-Compulsive, Not Elsewhere Classified," may fall under the umbrella of process addiction. An essential feature of an impulse disorder is the inability

to resist engaging in an act that can harm the individual or others. For most, if not all, of these disorders, the act or behavior is preceded by a feeling of tension or anticipation. The behavior itself brings on a feeling of pleasure, gratification, or relief, and following the behavior, the person may or not feel regret or self-reproach.

In addition to the impulsive nature of the behaviors, there is also a pattern of behavioral addiction. The features of this group of disorders include the urge to engage in a behavioral sequence that has negative consequences or is counterproductive; a feeling of increasing tension as the execution of the behavior approaches; a resurgence of the urge after a lapse of hours, days, or weeks; and the presence of external cues for the behavior that vary and are specific to a particular behavioral addiction. These patterns are similar to those manifested in substance addiction (see below), and these behaviors can be classified as addictions because they have the same components as substance/chemical addictions, including mood modification, tolerance, withdrawal, and **relapse**.

Among this group of impulsive-compulsive behaviors that may also be classified as behavioral addictions are pathological gambling, **kleptomania**, **pyromania**, **trichotillomania** (recurrent pulling out of one's own hair), compulsive buying, and compulsive sexual behavior. The suite of disorders may also include compulsive Internet/computer use. Of these disorders, pathological gambling has received the most attention and study. These disorders may ultimately be included in a new category in the *DSM-V*, called "Substance and Behavioral Addictions." This category could include pathological gambling, kleptomania, pyromania, and disorders currently listed under "Impulsive-Compulsive Behaviors Not Otherwise Specified," such as compulsive buying and impulsive-compulsive sex behavior.

## Demographics

Adolescence is a period of critical vulnerability in the development of addiction, for both cultural and neurobiological reasons. Age at onset for kleptomania is not known, but it is usually before adulthood, and two-thirds of people with kleptomania are female. Pyromania is both extremely rare and understudied, and no one has established the range of age at onset. The best-studied process addiction is pathological gambling, and its demographics can vary based on environmental factors, including proximity to a gambling location and exposure to gambling. It is more prevalent among males, and rates can be as high as 8% among adolescents and college-age students. The little

research done thus far on Internet addiction suggests that it can affect any age or socioeconomic group.

## Causes and risk factors

### *Environmental and developmental*

Being the child of a person who has an impulsive disorder such as pathological gambling may be a risk factor. Early onset of alcohol or drug use can exacerbate the severity of process addiction, and this pattern also holds true at least for pathological gambling. As mentioned above, adolescence is a critically vulnerable time, primarily because the brain areas affected as addiction develops are immature and susceptible. The immaturity may lead to a greater level of impulsive behaviors.

### *Genetics*

There have been some genetic links indicated in studies of pathological gambling and compulsive buying, but given the lack of information.

The mechanism underlying addiction involves disruptions in serotonin and **dopamine** signaling and monamine oxidase (MAO) activity. The MAO gene lies on the X chromosome, which can result in the observed sex differences in some behavioral addiction disorders. Males, who have only one X chromosome, express only the gene their single X chromosome carries; females have two X chromosomes, and having one normal version of MAO on one X chromosome can compensate for having a mutant version on the other chromosome.

## Symptoms/effects

Dopamine is a neurotransmitter involved in reward pathways in the brain and in the development or **reinforcement** of behaviors. This molecule and its associated proteins have been strongly implicated in **substance abuse** and behavioral addiction. People with process addiction may share many symptoms with people who have substance use disorders, including **depression**, loneliness, social impairment, and distraction.

Some symptoms are specific to a given behavior. For example, in impulsive-compulsive sex behavior, the person may have frequent, intrusive thoughts about sex and engage repeatedly in sex behaviors that may spiral out of their control.

Some criteria have been proposed for considering a behavior an addiction. These include the level of significance certain cues have for the person, the manifestation of withdrawal symptoms, tolerance (i.e., the need to engage in the behavior more or longer for the

same effect), relapse, and mood modification. According to the World Health Organization and the American Psychological Association, another criterion is loss of control.

## Diagnosis

These behaviors, although listed as different disorders in the *DSM-IV-TR*, share a suite of similar diagnostic features. These features include failure to resist the associated impulse (e.g., gambling or stealing), feelings of tension before engaging in the behavior, and a feeling of pleasure or relief when the behavior is being performed.

## Comorbidities

The specific behavioral or process addiction of pathological gambling has been associated with high rates of psychiatric comorbidity and mortality, one of many similarities between substance and process addictions. There is a frequent co-occurrence of some behavioral addictions with depression, **suicide** attempts, and **anxiety**.

## Association with substance abuse

There are substantial similarities between a disorder like pathological gambling and substance use disorder, from the comorbidities to personality features, behavioral measures, and neurobiological observations; substance use disorder and behavioral or process addiction often occur together. For example, low serotonin levels have been identified in people with **pathological gambling disorder** and in people with alcohol dependency. There is the phenomenon of “cross priming,” in which the development of an addiction to a substance primes an individual’s neural circuitry for susceptibility to a process addiction; for example, amphetamine use might prime a person biochemically for developing a gambling problem. Studies in pathological gamblers bear out this link: among this group, as many as 70% people addicted to gambling are addicted to **nicotine**, 50–70% have alcohol problems, and up to 40% have problems with **abuse** of other drugs!.

The converse is that people who have substance use disorders can be up to 10 times more likely also to have a pathological gambling problem, and there are similar relationships between substance use disorder and kleptomania or compulsive buying. Compulsive sexual behavior and substance use disorder occur together in 25% and 71% of cases, respectively.

## Treatment

As with substance abuse, **denial** can be a key characteristic of the behavior in process addiction, and any treatment begins with recognition and acknowledgement of the problem.

### Pharmacologic approaches

The medical establishment is still in the early stages of developing and applying pharmacological treatment for process addiction. **Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** have proven beneficial in some studies, but not in others. More effective, at least for pathological gambling and kleptomania, are opioid antagonists like **naltrexone** and nalmefene. The efficacy of these drugs may result from the interaction of the opioid system with dopamine signaling pathways.

Pharmacological treatments can be based on comorbidities. For example, if **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, depression, or anxiety are present, **SSRIs** may be effective. Mood stabilizers might be efficacious if **bipolar disorder** is present, and if **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)** is a comorbidity, stimulants or inhibitors of dopamine or noradrenaline reuptake (MAO-B inhibitors) may be beneficial.

**Benzodiazepines** can actually reduce inhibitions even more and are not recommended except in emergency situations to ameliorate acute agitation.

### Therapeutic approaches

The 12-step programs (e.g., Gamblers Anonymous) are enormously popular and well recognized, but their dropout rates are high and few studies have established their level of effectiveness. Other therapeutic approaches can involve cognitive behavioral therapy, motivational interviewing, or **relapse prevention**, all based on approaches used for substance use disorders. The therapeutic approach may also need to be disorder specific; for example, for impulsive-compulsive sexual behavior, **couples therapy** may be warranted.

## Prognosis

These disorders are considered to be chronic, and relapses in those that have been reasonably well studied, such as pathological gambling, are common. However, at least in the case of pathological gambling, appropriate treatment can help in management of the disorder.

## KEY TERMS

**Dopamine**—A neurotransmitter involved in the reward pathways in the brain.

**MAO-B inhibitors**—Inhibitors of dopamine or noradrenaline reuptake by monoamine oxidase.

**Process addiction, also known as behavioral addiction**—The repetitive occurrence of impulsive behaviors regardless of the negative consequences the behaviors may trigger.

**SSRI**—Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor

**Trichotillomania**—Recurrent pulling out of one's own hair.

National Library of Medicine. "Pathological gambling." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001520.htm>> (accessed January 15, 2007).

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>

Gamblers Anonymous, International Service Office, P.O. Box 17173, Los Angeles, CA 90017. (213) 386-8789, Fax (213) 386-0030, <<http://www.gamblersanonymous.org>>

Sex Addicts Anonymous, ISO of SAA, PO Box 70949, Houston, TX 77270. <<http://saa-recovery.org>>

Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

Prolixin see **Fluphenazine**

## Prevention

Prevention is based on decreased exposure to targets of process addiction; for example, little or no exposure to gambling can be helpful to people at risk. Early **intervention** may also be preventative.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edition, text revision. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Grant, Jon E., J. D., M.D., M.P.H., Judson A. Brewer, M.D., Ph.D., and Marc N. Potenza, M.D., Ph.D. "The neurobiology of substance and behavioral addictions." *CNS Spectrum* 11 (2006):924–930.

Lobo, Daniela S.S., M.D., Ph.D., and James L. Kennedy, M.D. F.R.C.P.C. "The genetics of gambling and behavioral addictions." *CNS Spectrum* 11 (2006):931–939.

Mick, Thomas M., M.D., and Eric Hollander, M.D. "Impulsive-compulsive sexual behavior." *CNS Spectrum* 11 (2006):944–955.

Pallanti, Stefano, M.D., Ph.D. "From impulse-control disorders toward behavioral addictions." *CNS Spectrum* 11 (2006):921–922.

Pallanti, Stefano, M.D., Ph.D., Silvia Bernardi, M.D., and Leonardo Quercioli, M.D. "The shorter PROMIS questionnaire and the Internet addiction scale in the assessment of multiple addictions in a high-school population: Prevalence and related disability." *CNS Spectrum* 11(2006):966–974.

### WEB SITES

American Psychological Association. "Addictions." <<http://www.apa.org/topics/topicaddict.html>>

## Propranolol

### Definition

Propranolol is classified as a beta blocker. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Inderal. When combined with the diuretic, hydrochlorothiazide, it is sold under the brand name Inderide. Propranolol also is produced as a generic product by a number of generic manufacturers.

### Purpose

Propranolol is approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of hypertension (high blood pressure), angina, certain types of cardiac arrhythmias, certain types of cardiac output diseases, a sympathetic nervous system disorder known as pheochromocytoma, hyperthyroid conditions, migraine, heart attack, and tremors of a variety of origins. It is also used on occasion for the treatment of **medication-induced movement disorders** caused by antipsychotic drugs and certain **anxiety** states in people suffering from a specific form of **social phobia**. **Beta blockers**, such as propranolol, are not useful for people with general social phobia who are anxious in most social situations; instead, propranolol may be useful for people who are anxious about specific performance situations, such as presenting a speech before an audience.

### Description

Propranolol falls into the broad pharmacologic category known as beta blockers. Beta blockers block specific sites in the central nervous system

known as beta-adrenergic receptor sites. When these sites are blocked, heart rate and blood pressure are reduced and patients become less anxious. Because of this, propranolol is useful in treating chest pain, high blood pressure, and excessive nervousness. Unfortunately, propranolol often makes breathing disorders, such as asthma, worse because it tends to constrict breathing passages and sometimes causes fluid to build up in the lungs if it excessively depresses the heart.

In the treatment of anxiety, propranolol is usually not administered on a chronic basis but, rather, prior to stressful events such as public speaking or acting. In the treatment of certain types of tremors, especially tremors secondary to a drug, and **movement disorders** secondary to antipsychotic therapy, propranolol is administered throughout the day in divided doses. Propranolol is available in 10-, 20-, 40-, 60-, and 80-mg tablets; in 60-, 80-, 120-, 160-mg long-acting capsules; and an injectable form containing 1 mg per mL. It is also combined with the diuretic hydrochlorothiazide in tablets and extended-release capsules.

### Recommended dosage

For the treatment of performance anxiety or stage fright, a single dose of 10–40 mg may be administered 20–30 minutes before the event. For the treatment of tremors, especially tremors secondary to lithium, doses range from 20 to 160 mg per day administered in two or three divided doses. For the treatment of movement disorders secondary to antipsychotic drug therapy, doses range from 10 to 30 mg three times daily.

### Precautions

Precautions should be taken when administering propranolol in the following situations:

- liver or renal (kidney) failure
- prior to screening tests for glaucoma
- a history of immediate allergic reaction (known as anaphylaxis) to a beta blocker of any kind

In addition, a person taking propranolol should never suddenly stop taking the drug because of the risk of chest pain or heart attack in some people who do so.

### Side effects

The following side effects have been observed with propranolol. Most have been mild and transient and rarely require the withdrawal of therapy:

## KEY TERMS

**Beta blocker**—Drugs that block beta-adrenergic receptors on neurons in the central nervous system. When these sites are blocked, heart rate, blood pressure, and anxiety levels decrease.

**Brachycardia**—Slow heartbeat, defined as a rate of less than 60 beats per minute.

**Diuretic**—An agent that increases the amount of urine; often used to decrease fluid retention in bodily tissues.

**Epinephrine (adrenaline)**—The principal blood-pressure-raising hormone and a relaxant of the bronchial and intestinal smooth muscles; prescribed to (among other things) stimulate the heart and as a muscle relaxant in bronchial asthma.

**Glaucoma**—A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**Hypotension**—Low blood pressure.

**Ischemia**—Localized anemia of tissues due to obstructed inflow of blood.

**Laryngospasm**—Spasms that close the vocal apparatus of the larynx (the organ of voice production).

**Norepinephrine (noradrenaline)**—A hormone with similar stimulatory effects to epinephrine but, in contrast to epinephrine, has little effect on cardiac (heart) output and in relaxing smooth muscles.

**Raynaud's syndrome**—A disorder of the circulatory or vascular system characterized by abnormally cold hands and feet because of constricted blood vessels in these areas.

**Thrombocytopenia**—A condition involving abnormally low numbers of platelets (blood-clotting agents) in the blood; usually associated with hemorrhaging (bleeding).

- Cardiovascular: bradycardia, congestive heart failure, hypotension, Raynaud's syndrome.
- Central nervous system: light-headedness, mental depression, insomnia, vivid dreams, disorientation, memory loss.
- Gastrointestinal: nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, cramping, diarrhea, constipation, bowel ischemia.
- Allergic: fever, rash, laryngospasm, thrombocytopenia.
- Respiratory: bronchospasm.

- Hematologic: bone marrow suppression, bleeding under the skin.

## Interactions

- Interactions with drugs that deplete the body of epinephrine and norepinephrine have been reported with concomitant propranolol. This group includes reserpine and guanethidine. Fainting, hypotension, dizziness, and slow heart rate have occurred under these circumstances.
- Drugs known as calcium channel blockers may decrease the pumping ability of the heart and lead to the development of cardiac arrhythmias.
- Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents (i.e., ibuprofen and naproxen) may blunt the blood pressure-lowering effects of propranolol.
- Aluminum hydroxide antacids greatly reduce the rate of intestinal absorption of propranolol.
- Alcohol slows the rate of propranolol absorption.
- Interactions have also been reported with phenytoin, rifampin, phenobarbital, chlorpromazine, lidocaine, thyroxin, cimetidine, and theophylline.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Anxiety and related disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Medical Economics Staff. *Physicians' Desk Reference*, 56th ed. Montvale, N.J., 2002.

Springhouse Publishers Staff. *Nursing 2002 Drug Handbook*. Springhouse, PA: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 2001.

Thomas, Clayton, MD, ed.. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*, 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis Publishers, 2001.

### WEB SITES

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Beta-Adrenergic Blocking Agents (Systemic)." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202087.html>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "DailyMed: Inderal Drug Information." <<http://dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/fdaDrugXsl.cfm?id=2548&type=display>>.

Ralph Myerson, MD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Prosom see **Estazolam**

## Protriptyline

### Definition

Protriptyline is an oral tricyclic antidepressant. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Vivactil and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Protriptyline is used primarily to treat **depression** and to treat the combination of symptoms of **anxiety** and depression. Like most **antidepressants** of this chemical and pharmacological class, protriptyline has also been used in limited numbers of patients to treat **panic disorder**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, **enuresis** (bed-wetting), eating disorders such as **bulimia nervosa**, **cocaine** dependency, and the depressive phase of bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder. It has also been used to support **smoking cessation** programs.

### Description

Tricyclic antidepressants act to change the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses between cells. Protriptyline acts primarily to increase the concentration of norepinephrine and serotonin (both chemicals that stimulate nerve cells) and, to a lesser extent, to block the action of another brain chemical, acetylcholine. Protriptyline shares most of the properties of other tricyclic antidepressants, such as **amitriptyline**, **clomipramine**, **desipramine**, **imipramine**, **nortriptyline**, and **trimipramine**. Studies comparing protriptyline with these other drugs have shown that protriptyline is no more or less effective than other antidepressants of its type. Its choice for treatment is as much a function of physician preference as any other factor.

The therapeutic effects of protriptyline, like those of other antidepressants, appear gradually. Maximum benefit is often not evident for at least two weeks after starting the drug. People taking protriptyline should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

### Recommended dosage

As with any antidepressant, protriptyline must be carefully adjusted by the physician to produce the desired therapeutic effect. Protriptyline is available as 5-mg and 10-mg tablets. Doses range from 15 to 40 mg per day and can be taken in one daily dose or divided into up to four doses daily. Some patients with severe depression may require up to 60 mg per day.

In people over age 60, therapy should be initiated at a dose of 5 mg three times a day and increased under supervision of a physician as needed. Patients over age 60 who are taking a daily doses of 20 mg or more should be closely monitored for side effects such as rapid heart rate and urinary retention.

## Precautions

In addition, antidepressants have been associated with an increased risk of harming or killing themselves or trying to do so. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration has advised that such drugs should not be administered to children under the age of 18. If it is prescribed for a child or adolescent, caregivers should monitor him or her carefully for signs of intention to commit self-harm or attempt **suicide**. These symptoms can develop suddenly, and include new or worsening depression, talk about self-harm or suicide, agitation to panic attacks, aggression, and changes in sleep patterns.

Like all tricyclic antidepressants, protriptyline should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in people, especially the elderly, who have benign prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, and glaucoma, especially angle-closure glaucoma (the most severe form). Before starting treatment, people with these conditions should discuss the relative risks and benefits of treatment with their doctors to help determine if protriptyline is the right antidepressant for them.

A common problem with tricyclic antidepressants is sedation (drowsiness, lack of physical and mental alertness). This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. In most patients, sedation decreases or disappears entirely with time, but until then patients taking protriptyline should not perform hazardous activities requiring mental alertness or coordination. The sedative effect is increased when protriptyline is taken with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcoholic beverages, sleeping medications, other **sedatives**, or antihistamines. It may be dangerous to take protriptyline in combination with these substances. Protriptyline may increase the possibility of having **seizures**. Patients should tell their physician if they have a history of seizures, including seizures brought on by the **abuse** of drugs or alcohol. These people should use protriptyline only with caution and be closely monitored by their physician.

Protriptyline may increase heart rate and **stress** on the heart. It may be dangerous for people with cardiovascular disease, especially those who have recently had a heart attack, to take this drug or other antide-

pressants in the same pharmacological class. In rare cases where patients with cardiovascular disease must take protriptyline, they should be monitored closely for cardiac rhythm disturbances and signs of cardiac stress or damage.

## Side effects

Protriptyline shares side effects common to all tricyclic antidepressants. The most frequent of these are dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention, increased heart rate, sedation, irritability, dizziness, and decreased coordination. As with most side effects associated with tricyclic antidepressants, the intensity is highest at the beginning of therapy and tends to decrease with continued use.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Patients may also chew sugarless gum or suck on sugarless candy in order to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement who take protriptyline may be especially likely to have problems with urinary retention. Symptoms include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty than usual passing urine. In most cases, urinary retention is managed with dose reduction or by switching to another type of antidepressant. In extreme cases, patients may require treatment with bethanechol, a drug that reverses this particular side effect. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

## Interactions

Dangerously high blood pressure has resulted from the combination of tricyclic antidepressants, such as protriptyline, and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors. Because of this, protriptyline should never be taken in combination with MAO inhibitors. Patient taking any MAO inhibitors, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAO inhibitor then wait at least 14 days before starting protriptyline or any other tricyclic antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing protriptyline and starting an MAO inhibitor.

Protriptyline may decrease the blood pressure-lowering effects of **clonidine**. Patients who take both drugs should be monitored for loss of blood-pressure control and the dose of clonidine increased as needed.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that generally produces effects that are the opposite of those produced by dopamine and norepinephrine. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Benign prostate hypertrophy**—Enlargement of the prostate gland.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

The sedative effects of protriptyline are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sedatives, sleeping medications, or medications used for other mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. The anticholinergic effects of protriptyline are additive with other anticholinergic drugs such as **benztropine, biperiden, trihexyphenidyl**, and antihistamines.

*See also* Neuotransmitters.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

DeVane, C. Lindsay, Pharm.D. "Drug Therapy for Mood Disorders." In *Fundamentals of Monitoring Psychoactive Drug Therapy*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1990.

### WEB SITES

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Protriptyline." (2005) Available online at: <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a604025.html>>.

[www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a604025.html](http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/medmaster/a604025.html).

US Food and Drug Administration. Online information about children and antidepressants. (2005) <[www.fda.gov/cder/drug/antidepressants/MG\\_template.pdf](http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/antidepressants/MG_template.pdf)>.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Prozac see **Fluoxetine**

## Pseudocyesis

### Definition

Pseudocyesis is the medical term for a false pregnancy. Pseudocyesis can cause many of the signs and symptoms of pregnancy, and often resembles the condition in every way except for the presence of a fetus.

### Description

Pseudocyesis has been observed and written about since antiquity. Hippocrates set down the first written account around 300 B.C., and recorded 12 different cases of women with the disorder. One of the most famous historical examples is Mary Tudor (1516–1558), Queen of England, who believed twice that she was pregnant when she was not. Some even attribute the violence that gave her the nickname "Bloody Mary" as a reaction to the disappointment of finding out that she was not carrying a child. Other historians believe that the queen's physicians mistook fibroid tumors in her uterus for a pregnancy, as fibroids can enlarge a nonpregnant uterus. She retired to her chambers for 14 months for the first false pregnancy, only to emerge humiliated, without a child. On the second occasion, the cause of her symptoms may have been advanced ovarian cancer, which some medical historians believe eventually killed her.

Pseudocyesis has become increasingly rare in many parts of the world in which accurate pregnancy tests have become widely available. Cultures that place high value on pregnancy, or that make close associations between fertility and a person's worth, still have high rates of the disorder.

### Signs and symptoms

The symptoms of pseudocyesis are similar to the symptoms of true pregnancy and are often hard to distinguish from the natural signs of pregnancy such as morning sickness, tender breasts, and weight gain.

Many health care professionals can be deceived by the symptoms associated with pseudocyesis. Eighteen percent of women with pseudocyesis were at one time diagnosed as pregnant by a medical professional. In some cases the only difference between pregnancy and pseudocyesis is the presence of a fetus.

The sign of pseudocyesis that is common to all cases is that the affected patient is convinced that she is pregnant. Abdominal distension is the most common physical symptom of pseudocyesis, and 63–97% of women with pseudocyesis experience it. The abdomen expands in the same manner as it does during pregnancy, so that the affected woman looks pregnant. This phenomenon is thought to be caused by buildup of gas, fat, feces, or urine. These symptoms often resolve under general anesthesia, and the woman's abdomen returns to its normal size.

The second most common physical sign of pseudocyesis is menstrual irregularity (56–98% of women with the disorder experience this). Between 48% and 75% of women are also reported to experience the sensation of fetal movements known as quickening, even though there is no fetus present. Some of the other common signs and symptoms include gastrointestinal symptoms, breast changes or secretions, labor pains, uterine enlargement, and softening of the cervix. One percent of women eventually experience false labor. In addition, some women actually test positive on pregnancy tests.

## Causes

No single theory about the causes of pseudocyesis is universally accepted by mental health professionals. The first theory attributes the false pregnancy to emotional conflict. It is thought that an intense desire to become pregnant, or an intense fear of becoming pregnant, can create internal conflicts and changes in the endocrine system, which may explain some of the symptoms of pseudocyesis. The second theory concerns wish fulfillment. It holds that if a woman desires pregnancy badly enough she may interpret minor changes in her body as signs of pregnancy. The third leading theory is the **depression** theory, which maintains that chemical changes in the nervous system associated with some **depressive disorders** could trigger the symptoms of pseudocyesis.

## Demographics

The rate of pseudocyesis in the United States has declined significantly in the past century. In the 1940s there was one occurrence for approximately every 250 pregnancies. This rate has since dropped to between

## KEY TERMS

**Cervix**—The neck or narrow lower end of the uterus. Softening of the cervix is one of the signs of pregnancy.

**Distension**—The condition of being stretched or expanded, as the abdomen of a pregnant woman.

**Quickening**—A term that refers to the movements or other signs of life of a fetus in the womb.

one and six occurrences for every 22,000 births. The average age of the affected woman is 33, though cases have been reported for women as young as six-and-a-half and as old as 79. More than two-thirds of women who experience pseudocyesis are married, and about one-third have been pregnant at least once. Women who have been victims of incest may be at greater risk for developing pseudocyesis. Although pseudocyesis is overwhelmingly a disorder of females, there have been at least three reported cases of males with it. Pseudocyesis is found in some mammals other than humans, most often cats, dogs, and rabbits. In these animals, researchers have found that prolactin, the hormone that produces mammalian milk, plays a role in the development of the false pregnancy.

## Treatment

Because pseudocyesis is not known to have a direct underlying physical cause, there are no general recommendations regarding treatment with medications. In some cases, however, the patient may be given medications for such symptoms as the cessation of menstruation. Because most patients with pseudocyesis have underlying psychological problems, they should be referred to a psychotherapist for the treatment of these problems. At the same time, however, it is important for the treating professional not to minimize the reality of the patient's physical symptoms.

The use of ultrasound or other imaging techniques has had the most success in demonstrating to the patient that she is not really pregnant.

## Alternative therapies

There have been reports of patients being cured of pseudocyesis by hypnosis, purgatives, massage, **opioids**, or by experiencing "hysterical childbirth" after nine months of symptoms, but few data are available on the effectiveness of these or similar procedures.

## Prognosis

Symptoms of pseudocyesis generally last from a few months to a few years. In most cases, symptoms last for a full nine months. Treatments involving **psychotherapy** have high success rates, as they treat the underlying psychological causes of the disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Knobil, Ernst, and Jimmy D. Neill, eds. *Encyclopedia of Reproduction*. New York: Academic Press, 1998.  
 Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Hendricks-Matthews, Marybeth K., and Douglas M. Hoy. "Pseudocyesis in an Adolescent Incest Survivor." *Journal of Family Practice* 36.1, (Jan. 1993): 97–104.  
 Paulman, Paul M., and Abdul Sadat. "Pseudocyesis." *Journal of Family Practice* 30.5, (May 1990): 575–82.

### OTHER

- Aldrich, Knight, MD. "Sixteenth-Century Psychosomatics." *Psychiatric News*. April 16, 1999. <[www.psych.org/pnews/99-04-16/history.html](http://www.psych.org/pnews/99-04-16/history.html)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

**Psychiatric assessment** see **Assessment and diagnosis**

## Psychiatrist

### Definition

A psychiatrist is a physician who specializes in the **diagnosis** and treatment of mental disorders.

### Description

Psychiatrists treat patients privately and in hospital settings through a combination of **psychotherapy** and medication. Their training consists of four years of medical school, followed by three or four years of psychiatric residency. Subspecialties usually involve completion of a fellowship that lasts two or more years following the residency. Psychiatrists may receive certification from the American Board of Psychiatry and Neurology (ABPN), which requires two years of clinical experience beyond residency and the successful completion of a written and an oral test. Unlike a

medical license, board certification is not legally required to practice psychiatry.

Psychiatrists may practice general psychiatry or choose a specialty, such as child psychiatry, geriatric psychiatry, treatment of **substance abuse**, forensic (legal) psychiatry, emergency psychiatry, **mental retardation**, community psychiatry, or public health. Some focus their research and clinical work primarily on psychoactive medication, in which case they are referred to as psychopharmacologists. Psychiatrists may be called upon to address numerous social issues, including juvenile delinquency, family and marital dysfunction, legal competency in criminal and financial matters, and treatment of mental and emotional problems among prison inmates and in the military.

Psychiatrists treat the biological, psychological, and social components of mental illness simultaneously. They can investigate whether symptoms of mental disorders have physical causes, such as a hormone imbalance or an adverse reaction to medication, or whether psychological symptoms are contributing to physical conditions, such as cardiovascular problems and high blood pressure. Because they are licensed physicians, psychiatrists—unlike psychologists and psychiatric social workers—can prescribe medication; they are also able to admit patients to the hospital. Other mental health professionals who cannot prescribe medication themselves often establish a professional relationship with a psychiatrist.

Psychiatrists may work in private offices, private psychiatric hospitals, community hospitals, state and federal hospitals, or community mental centers. Often, they combine work in several settings. In addition to their clinical work, psychiatrists often engage in related professional activities, including teaching, research, and administration. The American Psychiatric Association, the oldest medical specialty organization in the United States, supports the profession by offering continuing education and research opportunities, keeping members informed about new research and public policy issues, helping to educate the public about mental health issues, and serving as an advocate for people affected by mental illness.

### Resources

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- The American Board of Psychiatry and Neurology. 500 Lake Cook Road, Suite 335, Deerfield, IL 60015. Telephone: (847) 945-7900; Web site: <<http://www.abpn.com>>  
 American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Psychoanalysis

### Definition

Psychoanalysis, as a form of therapy, is based on the understanding that human beings are largely unaware of the mental processes that determine their thoughts, feelings, and behavior, and that psychological suffering can be alleviated by making those processes known to the individual.

Sigmund Freud originally developed the theory and technique of psychoanalysis in the 1890s. Freud's ideas are still used in contemporary practice; however, many have been further developed or refined, and some even abandoned. The theory and technique of psychoanalysis continues to integrate new insights about human development and behavior based on psychoanalytic research and discoveries from related fields. Different schools of psychoanalytic theory have evolved out of the original Freudian one, reflecting a variety of ideas and perspectives. Psychoanalysis is practiced by a trained psychoanalyst, also referred to as an analyst.

### Purpose

Primary goals of psychoanalysis include symptom relief, increased self-awareness, and a more objective capacity for self-observation. Other aims might include improved relationships with others and the capacity to live a more deeply satisfying life. Typically, an individual seeks treatment in order to alleviate some difficulty, such as unhappiness in work or love, disturbances in mood or self-esteem, or troubling personality traits. With the exception of those that are physically based, psychoanalysis views such symptoms as related to unconscious mental processes, and because these mental forces are not within the individual's awareness, symptoms cannot be relieved with perseverance or with the help of friends or family. Through a slowly unfolding process, psychoanalysis demonstrates to the individual how unconscious mental processes affect current modes of thinking, feeling and interacting with others. It also demonstrates that these processes can be traced back to early experiences and relationships with caregivers and family members. This kind of insight enables individuals to identify the sources of their sometimes troubling thoughts, feelings and behavior and, as a result, gives new meaning to current modes of functioning. This kind of transformation of character takes several years to accomplish due to the intense nature of the process. It requires a sacrifice of time, money, and mental energy. The resulting transformation offers the means for adap-

tive, enduring changes in personality. These are changes that enable the individual to live a more productive, satisfying, and pleasurable life.

### Precautions

The term "psychoanalyst" can be used by anyone, so it is important to know the credentials of an analyst prior to beginning treatment.

**CREDENTIALS.** In addition to having received advanced degrees in mental health (psychiatry, psychology, social work), trained psychoanalysts have also graduated from psychoanalytic training institutes. Institute training consists of three parts: course work on psychoanalytic theory and technique; supervised analyses (meaning that the candidate conducts analyses while being supervised by a seasoned psychoanalyst); and, third, candidates undergo a personal psychoanalysis. A personal analysis is considered a vital part of the training, as it enables candidates to learn about their own psychological processes. In turn, the knowledge enhances their capacity to treat others. This type of training program takes a minimum of four years to complete. Psychoanalysts also practice psychoanalytic **psychotherapy**, a less intensive form of treatment. It relies on the same theory of human development and a similar technique.

### Description

In psychoanalysis, an individual in treatment is seen four to five times per week for 45- to 50-minute sessions. The individual lies comfortably on a couch while the analyst sits in a chair behind the person, out of view. The person is then asked to say whatever comes into his or her mind. Although this structure varies depending on the theory and style of the analyst, this is the most typical and traditional manner in which sessions are conducted. These conditions are maintained consistently, making it possible for thoughts and feelings to emerge that had once been outside of the person's awareness. The process of free associating, or saying whatever comes to mind, is challenging because people are taught at a young age to keep many ideas and feelings to themselves. When the analyst is out of view, it removes the possibility for eye contact, making it easier to speak spontaneously. Free association is also made easier by the analyst's nonjudgmental attitude—in listening to the individual, in the attention and interest given to seemingly unimportant details, and in the objective and caring attitude with which the analyst understands the individual.

As the person speaks, unconscious sources of present-day difficulties gradually emerge. Specifically,

## ERICH FROMM (1900–1980)

Erich Fromm was born in Frankfurt-am-Main, Germany, the son of Naphtali Fromm, a wine merchant, and Rosa Krause. Throughout his career Fromm strove toward an understanding of human existence based upon the breaking down of barriers—between individuals as well as between schools of thought. In a Los Angeles Times obituary article of the famous psychologist, a reviewer summarizes: “Fromm’s lifelong concern was how people could come to terms with their isolation, insignificance and doubts about life’s meaning.” As his theories developed over the decades into what would later be collectively labeled “social humanism,” he incorporated knowledge and information culled from such diverse fields as Marxist socialism and Freudian psychology. The psychologist used these schools of thought as building blocks for developing original theories which, like his idiosyncratic life, often ran against popular beliefs. As a psychologist, he diverged from the Freudian school, in which the unconscious was the main factor in understanding human actions, by pointing out the importance of the influence of social and economic factors.

Most of Fromm’s work was an application of psychoanalysis, sociology philosophy, and religion to the peculiar problems of man in modern industrialized society. In *Escape from Freedom* he postulated that “modern man, freed from the bonds of pre-individualistic society, which simultaneously gave him security and limited him, has not gained

freedom in the positive sense of the realization of his individual self; that is, the expression of his intellectual, emotional and sensuous potentialities. Freedom, though it has brought him independence and rationality, has made him isolated and, thereby, anxious and powerless.” This problem, the individual’s tenuous relationship to institutions and society, became the core of such later works as *Man for Himself: An Enquiry into the Psychology of Ethics* and *The Sane Society*.

Fromm’s penultimate book, *To Have or To Be?*, presents “the viewpoint and challenge of radical humanistic psychoanalysis,” explains Paul Roazen in *Nation*. The volume has been seen as the culmination of Fromm’s work at that time and maintains, according to a publisher’s note, “that two modes of existence are struggling for the spirit of humankind; the having mode, which concentrates on material possession, acquisitiveness, power, and aggression and is the basis of such universal evils as greed, envy, and violence; and the being mode, which is based in love, in the pleasure of sharing, and in meaningful and productive rather than wasteful activity. Dr. Fromm sees the having mode bringing the world to the brink of psychological and ecological disaster, and he outlines a program for socio-economic change [to] turn the world away from its catastrophic course.”

the analyst begins to notice repetitive aspects of behavior. Some of them may include particular subjects about which the person finds it hard to speak, as well as habitual ways in which the person relates to the psychoanalyst. The analyst begins to reveal these to the person in a gradual and thoughtful manner. Sometimes these revelations are accepted as correct and helpful. At other times they are rejected, corrected, or refined.

During the years of an analysis, the individual will grapple with new insights repeatedly, each time comprehending them in new ways. There will be an enhanced emotional and intellectual understanding, in addition to seeing matters from the perspective of different periods of life. As in all worthwhile learning processes, this one includes times of deep satisfaction and great frustration, periods of growth and regression. Overall, the analyst and individual work together to modify debilitating life patterns, to ameliorate troubling symptoms, and to release emotional and intellectual resources bound up in unconscious psychological processes. A transformation will occur eventually, and be one in which the person’s understanding of them-

selves and of others, along with their productivity in work and capacity to love, changes in profound and enduring ways.

### *Who can benefit from psychoanalysis?*

Anyone interested should seek a consultation with a psychoanalyst in order to determine if this treatment is appropriate. People often begin psychoanalysis also after having participated in psychoanalytic psychotherapy, which is a less intense form of treatment.

Individuals who are the most suited for psychoanalysis are those who have experienced satisfactions in work, with friends, in marriage, but who nonetheless experience a general dissatisfaction with their life—suffering from long-standing **depression**, **anxiety**, sexual difficulties, physical symptoms without physical basis, or typically feel isolated or alone. Some people need analysis because their habitual ways of living interfere with experiencing greater pleasure or productivity in life. Individuals need to be psychologically minded with an interest in becoming more self-aware, and a determination to forgo quick symptom relief in favor of a more gradual therapeutic process.

## KEY TERMS

**Psychoanalysis**—A form of therapy based on the understanding that human beings are largely unaware of the mental processes that determine their thoughts, feelings, and behavior, and that psychological suffering can be alleviated by making those processes known to the individual.

**Psychotherapy**—A form of therapy that involves discussion of mental problems in order to treat them.

Psychoanalysis is also practiced with children and adolescents, with some variation in technique. Specifically, fantasy play and drawings are used with children in addition to verbal communication. During the treatment of children and young adolescents, parents are consulted on a regular basis so that the analyst can develop a more holistic understanding of the youngster's world. The goal of child and adolescent psychoanalysis is to alleviate symptoms and to remove any obstacles that interfere with normal development.

### Use with other treatments

Psychoanalysis is used at times with other forms of treatment. Medication may be warranted in selected situations—if an individual suffers from a severe mood disturbance which interferes with his or her capacity to participate in treatment, for example. In general, medication is used as a tool that allows the individual to benefit from the psychoanalytic process; it is an adjunct therapy, while psychoanalysis is the primary curative one. There are also occasions in which psychoanalysis is provided concurrently with **couples therapy** or **family therapy** or with **group therapy**. Treatment recommendations, whether for psychoanalysis alone or in combination with couples, family, or group therapy, are based both on the individual's particular needs and the practice of the treating psychoanalyst.

Finally, psychoanalysis is not only a type of therapy. It is also a theory of human development from infancy to old age, a method for understanding thought processes. It offers a way of thinking about aspects of society and culture such as religion, prejudice, and war.

### Normal results

Normal results include symptom relief and an enduring, adaptive change in personality.

## Abnormal results

Some individuals do not benefit from this in-depth form of treatment. They instead experience increased distress, or do not progress after a sufficient amount of treatment sessions. In these cases, people are typically transitioned to a less intensive form of treatment such as psychoanalytic psychotherapy.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Freud, Sigmund. *The Origin and Development of Psychoanalysis*. Whitefish, MT: Kessinger Publishing, 2004.

Galatzer-Levy, Robert, MD. *Does Psychoanalysis Work?* New Haven: Yale University Press, 2000.

Kandel, Eric. *Psychiatry, Psychoanalysis, and the New Biology of Mind*. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2005.

Person, Ethel S., Arnold M. Cooper and Glen O. Gabbard, eds. *The American Psychiatric Publishing Textbook of Psychoanalysis*. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2005.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychoanalytic Association. 309 East 49th Street, New York, NY 10017-1601. (212) 752-0450. <<http://www.apsa.org>>.

International Psychoanalytical Association. Broomhill, Woodside Lane, London N12 8UD. <<http://www.ipa.org.uk>>.

Susan Fine, Psy.D  
Stephanie N. Watson

## Psychodynamic psychotherapy

### Definition

Psychodynamic **psychotherapy** is a method of verbal communication used to help a person find relief from emotional pain. It is based on the theories and techniques of **psychoanalysis**. Psychodynamic psychotherapy is similar to psychoanalysis in that it attributes emotional problems to the patient's unconscious motives and conflicts. It differs from classical psychoanalysis, however, in that psychodynamic psychotherapists do not necessarily accept Freud's view that these unconscious motives and conflicts are ultimately sexual in nature.

## Purpose

The goals of psychodynamic psychotherapy vary depending on the method of treatment, which can be broadly described as either expressive or supportive. Expressive therapy seeks to relieve symptoms through the development of insight, or the slowly developing awareness of feelings and thoughts that were once outside of the person's awareness. Expressive therapy is based on the rationale that difficulties experienced in adult life originate in childhood; that children do not possess the maturity for making effective choices nor the independence to do so; and that methods of adapting that were developed in childhood may no longer be effective for adapting to the world as an adult. Through guidance from a therapist, the adult becomes aware of present ways of coping that are ineffective and how they served a purpose in childhood that is no longer relevant. The person learns that he or she now has a range of new options for solving problems, and for living in general that are now based on his or her maturity and independence.

In contrast to expressive therapy which is exploratory, supportive therapy remains closer to the surface of the patient's issues. Supportive therapy is an approach that is used to relieve immediate distress; to return the person to his or her previous level of functioning; and to strengthen adaptive ways of coping that the individual already possesses in order to prevent further discomfort. Expressive and supportive methods of treatment are not completely separate categories because elements of supportive therapy are used in expressive treatment and vice versa, depending on the therapeutic need. For instance, if a person in exploratory treatment is experiencing distress, a supportive approach may be used for a period of time in order to help the person feel more stable.

While many patients benefit from individual psychotherapy alone, some instances call for such additional therapies as family, couples, or **group therapy** in combination with individual treatment. A second treatment modality might be recommended when the patient's progress in individual treatment is highly dependent on relationships with significant others or with interpersonal relationships in general. Psychotropic (mood- or behavior-altering) medication may also be prescribed as an adjunct (help) to treatment in order to manage disturbances in **anxiety** level, mood or thinking. Whether additional treatments are recommended is based on the needs of the individual.

People seek psychodynamic psychotherapy for a variety of reasons that include but are not limited to the following: prolonged sadness; anxiety; sexual difficul-

ties; physical symptoms without physical basis; persistent feelings of isolation and loneliness; and the desire to be more successful in work or love. People seek therapy because they have not been able to develop a stable resolution for their difficulties on their own or with the help of friends and family members.

## Description

Sessions of psychodynamic psychotherapy may be scheduled from one to three days per week, with greater frequency allowing for more in-depth treatment. The duration of individual sessions varies, but typically lasts for 45–50 minutes. It is not usually possible at the outset of treatment to estimate the number of sessions that will be necessary in order to achieve the person's goals. It is possible, however, for the person to make arrangements for a specific number of sessions.

Psychodynamic psychotherapy begins with a period of evaluation during which the client discusses with the therapist the reasons for seeking treatment. This process gives the therapist the opportunity to learn about the person, to develop an understanding of his or her troubles, and to formulate ideas about how treatment should proceed. This phase of interviewing and learning may take place in one session or over a series of sessions; or it may be done in a less structured manner, depending on the therapist's style. During the initial sessions, such factors as the frequency and length of sessions and the policy for payment will also be discussed. At some point within the first few sessions, the therapist and the individual will come to a mutual understanding of the goals for treatment. After this point, the sessions will become less like an interview; the person is asked to say whatever is on his or her mind. It is the therapist's job to listen and to help identify patterns of thinking, feeling and interacting that may be contributing to the patient's current struggles. Consequently, the person becomes more aware of his or her thoughts and feelings; learns how some present ways of coping are no longer adaptive even though they may have been necessary in childhood; and discovers that he or she as an adult has a greatly expanded repertoire of resources and can use far more effective ways of dealing with problems. Deeper awareness and new insights stimulate psychological growth and change.

Psychodynamic psychotherapy places great importance on the therapeutic dyad, which is a medical term for the relationship between the therapist and the patient. It is within the context of the therapeutic dyad that positive changes in the patient's outlook and behaviors are able to unfold. This relationship is unique because the therapist maintains a uniform, neutral and

## KEY TERMS

**Adjunct**—A form of treatment that is not strictly necessary to a therapy regimen but is helpful.

**Expressive therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to relieve the patient's symptoms through exploration of previously unconscious material, leading to greater insight and more adaptive behaviors.

**Modality**—A term used in medicine for a method of treatment. For example, multimodal treatment plans make use of more than one therapeutic modality.

**Psychotropic**—Having an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**Supportive therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, and to return the patient to previous levels of functioning, as distinct from insight-oriented or educational approaches to treatment.

**Therapeutic dyad**—A term that refers to the two people involved in a psychotherapeutic relationship, namely the therapist and the person seeking treatment.

accepting stance. Unlike other well-intentioned people in the person's life, the therapist has been trained to listen objectively and without criticism. This therapeutic attitude makes it easier for the person seeking treatment to speak freely and to therefore provide as much information for the therapist to work with as is possible.

Treatment continues until the troubling symptoms have been reduced or alleviated and the person is consistently making use of more adaptive methods of coping with greater insight. For some people, this positive experience inspires them to proceed with further treatment in order to bring about additional adaptive changes. For others, meeting the initial goals will be sufficient. If so, the focus of sessions turns to issues related to the end of treatment. This final phase of treatment is as important as the beginning and middle stages because it allows the individual to develop insight about his or her therapeutic experience. People need time to clarify how they feel about leaving the therapeutic relationship, and this termination involves identifying and understanding feelings about separation, maturation, loss and change. The length of time allotted to the termination phase varies with the type of treatment and with the needs of the individual.

## Normal results

After a course of psychodynamic psychotherapy has ended, the person should, overall, continue to handle difficulties in a more adaptive manner; experience improved interpersonal relationships and productivity at work; and continue to develop new insights into his or her thoughts, feelings and behavior. In supportive treatment, insight and personality change are not the primary goals of treatment; therapist and patient work toward a continuation of general stability in the person's life.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Balsam, Rosemary Marshall, M.D., and Alan Balsam, M.D. *Becoming a Psychotherapist*. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1984.

Dewald, Paul, M.D. "The Psychoanalytic Psychotherapies." In *Textbook of Psychoanalysis*, edited by Edward Neressian, M.D. and Richard G. Kopff, M.D. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 1996.

Prochaska, James O., and John C. Norcross. *Systems of Psychotherapy: A Transtheoretical Analysis*. 4th edition. Pacific Grove: Brooks/Cole Publishing Company, 1999.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychoanalytic Association. 309 East 49th Street, New York, NY 10017. (212) 752-0450. <<http://www.apsa.org>>.

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington D.C. 20002. (800) 374-2721. <<http://www.apa.org>>.

Susan Fine, Psy.D.

Psychogenic excoriation see  
**Dermatillomania**

## Psychologist

### Definition

A psychologist is a social scientist who studies behavior and mental processes, generally in a research or clinical setting.

### Description

As psychology has grown and changed throughout history, it has been defined in numerous ways. As early as 400 B.C., the ancient Greeks philosophized about the relationship of personality characteristics to physiological traits. Since then, philosophers have

## SIGMUND FREUD (1856–1939)

The work of Sigmund Freud, the Austrian founder of psychoanalysis, marked the beginning of a modern, dynamic psychology by providing the first systematic explanation of the inner mental forces determining human behavior.

Early in his career Sigmund Freud distinguished himself as a histologist, neuropathologist, and clinical neurologist, and in his later life he was acclaimed as a talented writer and essayist. However, his fame is based on his work in expanding man's knowledge of himself through clinical researches and corresponding development of theories to explain the new data. He laid the foundations for modern understanding of unconscious mental processes (processes excluded from awareness), neurosis (a type of mental disorder), the sexual life of infants, and the interpretation of dreams. Under his guidance, psychoanalysis became the dominant modern theory of human psychology and a major tool of research, as well as an important method of psychiatric treatment which currently has thousands of

practitioners all over the world. The application of psychoanalytic thinking to the studies of history, anthropology, religion, art, sociology, and education has greatly changed these fields.

Sigmund Freud was born on May 6, 1856, in Freiberg, Moravia (now Czechoslovakia). Sigmund was the first child of his twice-widowed father's third marriage. His mother, Amalia Nathanson, was 19 years old when she married Jacob Freud, aged 39. Sigmund's two stepbrothers from his father's first marriage were approximately the same age as his mother, and his older stepbrother's son, Sigmund's nephew, was his earliest playmate. Thus the boy grew up in an unusual family structure, his mother halfway in age between himself and his father. Though seven younger children were born, Sigmund always remained his mother's favorite. When he was 4, the family moved to Vienna, the capital of the Austro-Hungarian monarchy and one of the great cultural, scientific, and medical centers of Europe. Freud lived in Vienna until a year before his death.

proposed theories to explain human behavior. In the late nineteenth century the emergence of scientific method gave the study of psychology a new focus. In 1879, the first psychological laboratory was opened in Leipzig, Germany, by Wilhelm Wundt, and soon afterward the first experimental studies of memory were published. Wundt was instrumental in establishing psychology as the study of conscious experience, which he viewed as made up of elemental sensations. In addition to the type of psychology practiced by Wundt—which became known as structuralism—other early schools of psychology were functionalism, which led to the development of behaviorism, and Gestalt psychology. The American Psychological Association was founded in 1892 with the goals of encouraging research, enhancing professional competence, and disseminating knowledge about the field.

With the ascendancy of the Viennese neurologist Sigmund Freud and his method of **psychoanalysis** early in the twentieth century, emphasis shifted from conscious experience to unconscious processes investigated by means of free association and other techniques. According to Freud, behavior and mental processes were the result of mostly unconscious struggles between the drive to satisfy basic instincts, such as sex or aggression, and the limits imposed by society. At the same time that Freud's views were gaining popularity in Europe, an American psychology professor, John B. Watson, was pioneering the behavioral approach, which focuses

on observing and measuring external behaviors rather than the internal workings of the mind. B. F. Skinner, who spent decades studying the effects of reward and punishment on behavior, helped maintain the predominance of behaviorism in the United States through the 1950s and 1960s. Since the 1970s, many psychologists have been influenced by the cognitive approach, which is concerned with the relationship of mental processes to behavior. Cognitive psychology focuses on how people take in, perceive, and store information, and how they process and act on that information.

Additional psychological perspectives include the neurobiological approach, focusing on relating behavior to internal processes within the **brain** and nervous system, and the phenomenological approach, which is most concerned with the individual's subjective experience of the world rather than the application of psychological theory to behavior. Although all these approaches differ in their explanations of individual behavior, each contributes an important perspective to the overall psychological understanding of the total human being. Most psychologists apply the principles of various approaches in studying and understanding human nature.

Along with several approaches to psychology there are also numerous, overlapping subfields in which these approaches may be applied. Most subfields can be categorized under one of two major areas of psychology referred to as basic and applied psychology. Basic

psychology encompasses the subfields concerned with the advancement of psychological theory and research. Experimental psychology employs laboratory experiments to study basic behavioral processes, including sensation, perception, learning, memory, communication, and motivation, that different species share. Physiological psychology is concerned with the ways in which biology shapes behavior and mental processes, and developmental psychology is concerned with behavioral development over the entire life span. Other subfields include social psychology, quantitative psychology, and the psychology of personality.

Applied psychology is the area of psychology concerned with applying psychological research and theory to problems posed by everyday life. It includes clinical psychology, the largest single field in psychology. Clinical psychologists—who represent 40% of all psychologists—are involved in **psychotherapy** and psychological testing. Clinical psychologists are trained in research and often work in university or research settings, studying various aspects of psychology. Like clinical psychologists, counseling psychologists apply psychological principles to diagnose and treat individual emotional and behavioral problems. Other subfields of applied psychology include school psychology, which involves the evaluation and placement of students; educational psychology, which investigates the psychological aspects of the learning process; and industrial and organizational psychology, which study the relationship between people and their jobs. Community psychologists investigate environmental factors that contribute to mental and emotional disorders; health psychologists deal with the psychological aspects of physical illness, investigating the connections between the mind and a person's physical condition; and consumer psychologists study the preferences and buying habits of consumers as well as their reactions to certain advertising.

In response to society's changing needs, new fields of psychology are constantly emerging. One type of specialization, called environmental psychology, focuses on the relationship between people and their physical surroundings. Its areas of inquiry include such issues as the effects of overcrowding and noise on urban dwellers and the effects of building design. Another specialty is forensic psychology, involving the application of psychology to law enforcement and the judicial system. Forensic psychologists may help create personality profiles of criminals, formulate principles for jury selection, or study the problems involved in eyewitness testimony. Yet another emerging area is program evaluation, whose practitioners evaluate the effectiveness and cost efficiency of the programs.

Depending on the nature of their work, psychologists may practice in a variety of settings, including colleges and universities, hospitals and **community mental health** centers, schools, and businesses. A growing number of psychologists work in private practice and may also specialize in multiple subfields. Most psychologists earn a PhD degree in the field, which requires completion of a four- to six-year post-bachelors' degree program offered by a university psychology department. The course of study includes a broad overview of the field, as well as specialization in a particular subfield, and completion of a dissertation and an internship (usually needed only for applied psychology, such as clinical, counseling, and school psychology). Students who intend to practice only applied psychology rather than conduct research have the option of obtaining a Psy.D. degree, which differs in the limited emphasis that is put on research and a dissertation that does not have to be based on an empirical research study.

## Resources

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721; (202) 336-5500. TDD/TTY: (202) 336-6123. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org>>.

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Psychosis

### Definition

Psychosis is a symptom of mental illness characterized by a radical change in personality and a distorted or diminished sense of objective reality.

### Description

Psychosis appears as a symptom of a number of mental disorders, including mood and **personality disorders**, **schizophrenia**, **delusional disorder**, and **substance abuse**. It is also the defining feature of the psychotic disorders (i.e., **brief psychotic disorder**, **shared psychotic disorder**, psychotic disorder due to a general medical condition, and **substance-induced psychotic disorder**).

Patients suffering from psychosis cannot distinguish the real from the unreal. They experience **hallucinations** and/or **delusions** that they believe are real, and they typically behave in an inappropriate and confused manner.

A mental illness can be exhibited through various forms of psychosis, such as:

- Delusions. An unshakable and irrational belief in something untrue. Delusions defy normal reasoning, and remain firm even when overwhelming proof is presented to disprove them.
- Hallucinations. Psychosis causes false or distorted sensory experience that appear to be real. Psychotic patients often see, hear, smell, taste, or feel things that are not there.
- Disorganized speech. Psychotic patients often speak incoherently, using noises instead of words and “talking” in unintelligible speech patterns.
- Disorganized or catatonic behavior. Behavior that is completely inappropriate to the situation or environment. Catatonic patients have either a complete lack of or inappropriate excess of motor activity. They can be completely rigid and unable to move (vegetative), or in constant motion. Disorganized behavior is unpredictable and inappropriate for a situation (e.g., screaming obscenities in the middle of class).

### Treatment

Treatment can vary depending on the cause of the psychosis and associated disorders, and may include pharmaceutical approaches with antipsychotic drugs and therapeutic approaches.

### Resources

#### BOOK

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

#### WEB SITES

National Library of Medicine. “Psychosis” <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001553.htm>>

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>

National Alliance on Mental Illness, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042, Telephone 703-524-7600, Fax 703-524-9094, Helpline 800-950-NAMI (6264), Web site <<http://www.nami.org/Hometemplate.cfm>>

Paula Ford-Martin, M.A.  
Emily Jane Willingham

## Psychosurgery

### Definition

Psychosurgery is the treatment of a psychiatric disorder using surgical techniques to destroy **brain** tissue and is now rarely used.

### Purpose

It is a last-resort treatment for extreme, debilitating, psychiatric disorders.

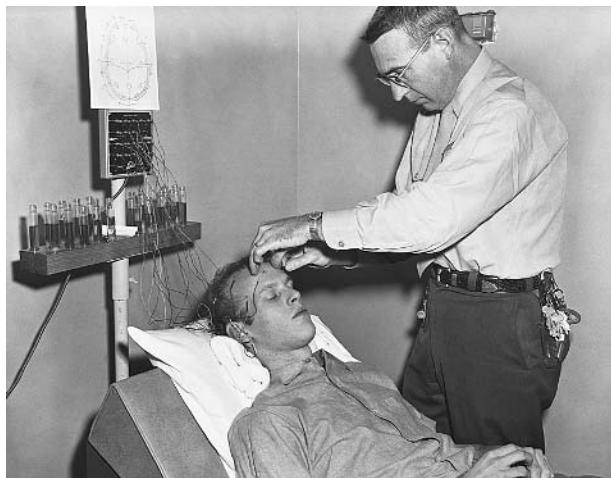
### Description

#### *Early psychosurgery—historical perspective*

Ironically, brain surgery, a medical practice requiring extraordinary levels of skill and care, may be one of the oldest of all medical procedures. This surprising observation is supported by physical evidence dating back 40,000 years ago to Neolithic times. Archeologists have found numerous human skulls showing signs of a procedure called trepanation or trepanning—an operation in which a hole is cut through the bone that covers the brain (skull) in order to access the brain. A key feature of the wounds found in these ancient skulls is the smoothness and shininess around the edges of the holes. This is a clear sign of new bone growth and evidence that the person whose skull was opened not only survived the operation but lived months or even years afterwards while the bone regrew.

Having one's skull opened in a modern surgical setting is not taken lightly, even with the most modern surgical techniques. The prospect of undergoing the operation in the late Stone Age may appear to us to imply certain death. However, the survival rate of the operation was quite high. Close examination of archeological findings suggests that 75% of those who underwent the procedure lived long enough for new bone to grow around the opening. That number is actually higher than the survival rate for brain surgery during the nineteenth century, when Stone Age trepanned skulls were first identified. Brain surgery during the mid-1860s frequently resulted in infections that killed up to 75% of patients.

Trepanned skulls have been found all over the world, including sites in Peru, China, India, and France, and parts of the Middle East and Africa. While trepanning is an effective surgical technique for relieving pressure on the brain caused by bleeding, most archeologists suspect the operation was carried out in the Stone Age to achieve a different goal. Trepanning, they suspect, was performed to release evil spirits or demons, which



**Prisoner at Vacaville Penitentiary in California, 1961, being prepared for a lobotomy.** At that time, many psychiatrists believed that criminal behavior was lodged in certain parts of the brain, and lobotomies were frequently practiced on prisoners. (Corbis)

the shamans or witch doctors of the time believed produced symptoms of what we know as mental disorders and, perhaps, diseases of the brain. The instruments used in trepanning were likely to have been made of obsidian, a very hard, glasslike, volcanic rock that can hold a very sharp cutting edge. There is also evidence that the end of a wooden stick, hardened by fire and turned back-and-forth rapidly while pressed against the skull may have served as a primitive, but effective, surgical drill.

Neuroscientist and author Elliot Valenstein believes that trepanning did not amount to intentional brain surgery. He quotes from the Latin text by the twelfth-century surgeon Roger of Salerno, who wrote: “For mania and melancholy, the skin of the top of the head should be incised in a cruciate fashion and the skull perforated to allow matter to escape.”

A curious example of what might be called pseudopsychosurgery occurred during the Middle Ages. Some unscrupulous individuals wandered across Europe convincing gullible people that mental disorders were caused by a “stone of madness.” To fool others, these quacks faked operating on the brains of mentally ill individuals and, using sleight-of-hand, appeared to produce a real stone from the victim’s head, thus “proving” their claim and effecting a “cure.” No doubt, these frauds quickly moved on to other towns before their patients showed signs of continuing psychiatric symptoms.

### *The impetus for developing a radical treatment*

Unfortunately, effective treatments for mental illnesses remained unavailable until the second half of the twentieth century. Before then, psychiatric “care” consisted mostly of imprisonment, neglect, restraint, and/or punishment. During the eighteenth century, more humane conditions of confinement were introduced, but effective treatments remained unavailable. Physicians were desperate for treatments that might make it easier to control violent and deranged patients.

By the end of the nineteenth century, researchers became aware of the role played by the frontal cortex—a part of the brain located behind the forehead—in behavior control. They discovered from the results of animal experiments and observing humans who suffered damage to this part of the brain that the frontal lobes affect emotions and behavior. This bit of knowledge, combined with the development of effective anesthesia, led to the first modern instances of psychosurgery during the 1890s. A Swiss surgeon named Gottlieb Burkhardt deliberately damaged the frontal lobes of six psychiatric patients in hopes of relieving psychiatric symptoms; at least one of his subjects died and the experimental surgery was discontinued amid criticism from other physicians.

### *Psychosurgery in the twentieth century*

**PREFRONTAL LEUCOTOMY.** In 1900, an Estonian surgeon, Lodivicus Puusepp, picked up where Burkhardt left off. He cut nerve tracks leading from the frontal lobes to other parts of the brain in psychiatric patients, with unimpressive results. A decade later, he injected tissue-destroying chemicals into the frontal lobes of mentally ill patients through holes drilled over the frontal lobes. Although the procedure accomplished little or nothing in the way of therapy, Pussepp remained optimistic about the ability of this procedure to improve the condition of psychiatric patients. Interest in the frontal lobes as a target for treating mental disorders continued on a small scale until the heyday of psychosurgery began in the 1930s.

In 1935, researchers in the United States reported that damaging the frontal lobes and a nearby region of the brain called the prefrontal cortex could pacify a previously aggressive chimpanzee. A Portuguese psychiatrist, Antonio Egas Moniz, learned of these results and recruited neurosurgeon Almeida Lima to operate on some humans suffering from severe psychoses. Moniz’s aim was to disconnect nerve pathways running from the frontal lobes to a part of the brain called the thalamus, which is located closer to the center of

the brain. By cutting these connections, Moniz hypothesized that he could disconnect a neural circuit that ran from the frontal cortex to the thalamus and then to other parts of the brain's surface. He hoped that interrupting this pathway would disrupt the repetitive thoughts that Moniz believed were responsible for psychotic symptoms.

But as Elliot Valenstein writes in his book *Great and Desperate Cures, The Rise and Decline of Psychosurgery and Other Radical Treatments for Mental Illness*, "Although Moniz' rationale for prefrontal leucotomy was so vague as to constitute no theory at all, his explanation was repeated so often that it—like the emperor's new clothes in Hans Christian Andersen's famous story—acquired a veneer of truth and was accepted (or at least repeated) by many other people." The truth is that psychiatrists were so desperate for a treatment for severe cases of mental illness that they allowed themselves to support the use of a procedure that was unproven and increasingly subject to abuse.

Moniz and Lima called their procedure leucotomy. It involved trepanning the skull, one hole on each side of the head, inserting a wire knife and cutting the targeted nerve fibers. Results were mixed enough for Moniz to recommend that the procedure be reserved only for the most seriously mentally ill patients for whom no other course of care or treatment worked. Nevertheless, after 1936, use of the technique spread rapidly, with equally unimpressive results overall. With little evidence of effectiveness and facing opposition from many psychiatrists, particularly psychotherapists, the technique would probably have been abandoned were it not for a pair of American physicians who revived the questionable procedure.

**THE PREFRONTAL LOBOTOMY.** American neurologist Walter Freeman and neurosurgeon James Watts began operating on patients in 1936 and soon began aggressively promoting its effectiveness. Eventually, they overcame doubts expressed by their colleagues who somewhat reluctantly accepted the procedure now referred to as prefrontal lobotomy. In 1946, Freeman simplified Moniz's leucotomy procedure, reducing it to a less complicated, less messy, and less time-consuming operation known as the "ice-pick lobotomy." This allowed Freeman to literally line up patients and, under local anesthesia, tap an ice pick through the thin bone on the roof of their eye sockets. With the ice pick in the brain, Freeman would sweep it back and forth to cut the frontal lobe's connections to the rest of the brain. This in-and-out procedure required no hospitalization but many physicians viewed it with alarm. Watts himself refused to cooperate with Freeman after this technique was developed.

Still, in the 1940s, U.S. physicians performed an estimated 18,000 lobotomies. It was equally popular in other countries where more than 50,000 operations were conducted during the same period. Sadly, Moniz's warning was forgotten. The procedure was not reserved for the most hopeless cases but instead applied to "difficult" patients and became a way to control behavior rather than to relieve symptoms of mental disorder. The abuse often bordered on the criminal. And yet Moniz received the 1949 Nobel Prize for Medicine and Physiology for pioneering the procedure.

Fortunately, but still too late, critics of the operation began to convince others that there was no scientific proof that lobotomies helped mentally ill patients. It could certainly calm violent patients but it did so at a terrible cost. As one nurse who recently treated an aged patient who had been lobotomized years before said, "You look in her eyes and you see there is no one there." Victims of the procedure lack emotions, ambition, social skills, and the ability to plan. The operation was used to control the mentally ill and others, such as uncontrollable children and political dissidents, whose behavior did not conform to society's standards. Arguments against the procedure were powerful: it permanently and severely damaged the brain and often produced unreactive, lifeless individuals whose personalities were forever destroyed. With the introduction of psychotherapeutic drugs—especially chlorpromazine (Thorazine)—in the mid-1950s, lobotomies fell out of fashion.

#### *Psychosurgery today*

No one advocates the use of classical lobotomies today as a treatment for mental disorders. However, a small minority of neurologists advocates the use of very precise surgical techniques to produce small lesions in defined areas of the brain to treat rare cases of severe mental illness such as life-threatening depression or incapacitating anxiety or obsessions. However, there is little need for such procedures today. Antipsychotic and antidepressant medications are the treatments of choice for treating mental disorders. Mainstream medicine now classifies psychosurgery as an experimental procedure, and many rules exist to protect patients who might be subjected to it. The majority of mental health professionals believe that psychosurgery is either never justified or should only be considered as a last resort, to be reserved for the most extreme cases of untreatable mental disease when all other therapies have failed.

## KEY TERMS

**Frontal lobes**—A region of the brain that influences higher mental functions often associated with intelligence, such as the ability to foresee the consequences of actions, planning, comprehension, and mood.

**Leucotomy or leukotomy**—White matter cutting—severing the white matter of the frontal lobe of the brain.

**Lobotomy**—A surgical procedure involving the cutting of nerve fiber bundles in the brain.

**Trepanation or trepanning**—Surgical removal of a piece of the skull to expose the brain.



A therapist (on the right) in a counselling session with a patient. (Photofusion Picture Library/Alamy)

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Pressman, Jack D. *Last Resort: Psychosurgery and the Limits of Medicine*. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 1998.
- Valenstein, Elliot S., ed. *The Psychosurgery Debate*. San Francisco: W.H. Freeman, 1980.
- Valenstein, Elliot S. *Great and Desperate Cures, The Rise and Decline of Psychosurgery and Other Radical Treatments for Mental Illness*. New York: Basic Books, 1986.
- Woods, Michael and Mary B. Woods. *Ancient Medicine, From Sorcery to Surgery*. Minneapolis: MN: Runestone Press, 2000.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Dean A. Haycock, Ph.D.

## Psychotherapy

### Definition

Psychotherapy is the treatment of mental or emotional disorders and adjustment problems through the use of psychological techniques rather than through physical or biological means.

### Description

**Psychoanalysis**, the first modern form of psychotherapy, was called the “talking cure,” and the many varieties of therapy practiced today are still characterized by their common dependence on a verbal exchange between the counselor or therapist and the person

seeking help. The therapeutic interaction is characterized by mutual trust, with the goal of helping individuals change destructive or unhealthy behaviors, thoughts, and emotions. It is common for experienced therapists to combine several different approaches or techniques. Therapy is terminated when the treatment goals have been met or if the client and/or therapist conclude that it is not working. It can be effective to phase out treatment by gradually reducing the frequency of therapy sessions. Even after regular therapy has ended, the client may return for periodic follow-up and reassessment sessions.

### Psychodynamic approach

Freudian psychoanalysis places emphasis on uncovering unconscious motivations and breaking down defenses. Therapy sessions may be scheduled once or even twice a week for a year or more. This type of therapy is appropriate when internal conflicts contribute significantly to a person’s problems.

### Behavioral techniques

In contrast to the psychodynamic approach, behavior-oriented therapy is geared toward helping people see their problems as learned behaviors that can be modified, without looking for unconscious motivations or hidden meanings. According to the theory behind this approach, once behavior is changed, feelings will change as well. Probably the best-known type of behavioral therapy is **behavior modification**, which focuses on eliminating undesirable habits by providing positive **reinforcement** for the more desirable behaviors.

## ALFRED ADLER (18970–1937)

The Austrian psychiatrist Alfred Adler founded the school of individual psychology, a comprehensive “science of living.” His system emphasizes the uniqueness of the individual and his relationships with society. In 1902 Sigmund Freud invited Adler to join a small discussion group, which became the illustrious Vienna Psychoanalytic Society. Adler was an active member but did not consider himself a pupil or disciple of Freud. He could not agree with Freud’s basic assumption that sex was the main determinant of personality, and all that this implied: the dominance of biological factors over the psychological; the push of drives, making for identical, predictable patterns; the part commanding the whole; pleasure-seeking as man’s prime motivation. Whereas Freud tried to explain man in terms of his similarity to machines and animals, Adler sought to understand and influence man precisely in terms of what makes him different from machines and animals (concepts and values). This humanistic view characterized all the principles of his theory. Adler’s views diverged ever more from those of Freud, and in 1911 he resigned from Freud’s circle to formulate and found his own school.

Adler’s psychology has been judged the first in a social-science direction. “In addition to regarding an individual’s life as a unity, we must also take it together with its context of social relations . . . [it] is not capable of doing just as it

likes but is constantly confronted with tasks . . . inseparably tied up with the logic of man’s communal life.” Adler specified three main tasks of life: occupation, association with others, and love and marriage. He also referred to them as social ties, for they all require cooperation for their solution. Man’s very uniqueness is influenced by his relations to others: “The style of the child’s life cannot be understood without reference to the persons who look after him.”

The therapist’s function, according to Adler, is not to treat “mental disease” but to divine the error in the patient’s way of life and lead him to greater maturity. To this end Adler introduced a number of diagnostic approaches. Among these, his theory of dreams, the meaning of early childhood recollections, and the role of birth order in the family have become widely known and adopted. The understanding of the patient achieved in this way is not one of depth but of context in the larger whole of his total transactions. This is the basis for changing the patient’s picture of himself and the world. In addition to this reorganization, Adler wished the patient to appreciate his own power of self-determination and have the courage to exercise it. To encourage the patient, the therapist must express a disinterested concern that evokes and fosters feelings of trust and fellowship—fulfilling a function at which the mother had failed.

Another behavioral technique is **systematic desensitization**, in which people are deliberately and gradually exposed to a feared object or experience to help them overcome their fears. A person who is afraid of dogs may first be told to visualize a dog, then is given a stuffed toy dog, then exposed to a real dog seen at a distance, and eventually forced to interact with a dog at close range. Relaxation training is another popular form of behavior therapy. Through such techniques as deep breathing, visualization, and progressive muscle relaxation, clients learn to control fear and **anxiety**.

### *Cognitive methods*

Some behavior-oriented therapy methods are used to alter not only overt behavior, but also the thought patterns that drive it. This type of treatment is known as **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (or just cognitive therapy). Its goal is to help people break out of distorted, harmful patterns of thinking and replace them with healthier ones. Common examples of negative thought patterns include: magnifying or minimizing the extent of a problem; “all or nothing” thinking (i.e., a person regards himself as either perfect

or worthless); overgeneralization (arriving at broad conclusions based on one incident, for example); and personalization (continually seeing oneself as the cause or focus of events).

In cognitive-behavioral therapy, a therapist may talk to the client, pointing out illogical thought patterns, or use a variety of techniques, such as thought substitution, in which a frightening or otherwise negative thought is driven out by substituting a pleasant thought in its place. Clients may also be taught to use positive self-talk, a repetition of positive affirmations. Cognitive therapy usually takes a longer amount of time as it treats more serious problems.

### *Couples therapy*

**Couples therapy** focuses on the relationship between two people, typically who have a romantic or sexual connection. The aim of the therapy is to concentrate on the problems of the relationship and make each partner feel that they have an equal role. The therapy can be administered by either a male or female therapist, but many couples feel that having both a male and female therapist in the session is beneficial.

## Family and group therapy

**Family therapy** has proven effective in treating a number of emotional and adjustment problems. While the client's immediate complaint is the initial focus of attention, the ultimate goal of family therapy is to improve the interaction between all family members and enhance communication and coping skills on a long-term basis (although therapy itself need not cover an extended time period). **Group therapy**, which is often combined with individual therapy, offers the support and companionship of other people experiencing the same or similar problems and issues.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Corey, Gerald. *Theory and Practice of Counseling and Psychotherapy*, 7th ed. Belmont, CA: Thomson/Brooks Cole, 2005.
- Corsini, Raymond J., and Danny Wedding. *Current Psychotherapies*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2007.
- Seligman, Linda. *Theories of Counseling and Psychotherapy: Systems, Strategies, and Skills*, 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2005.
- Sharf, Richard S. *Theories of Psychotherapy & Counseling: Concepts and Cases*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Anderson, Rebecca A., and Clare S. Rees. "Group Versus Individual Cognitive-Behavioural Treatment for Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder: A Controlled Trial." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 45.1 (Jan. 2007): 123–37.
- Pepper, Robert. "Too Close for Comfort: The Impact of Dual Relationships on Group Therapy and Group Therapy Training." *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy* 57.1 (Jan. 2007): 13–23.
- Powles, William E. "Reflections on 'What is a Group?'" *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy* 57.1 (Jan. 2007): 105–113.
- Roback, Howard B., and Randall F. Moore. "On the Ethical Group Psychotherapist." *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy* 57.1 (Jan. 2007): 49–59.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Psychotherapy integration

### Definition

**Psychotherapy** integration is defined as an approach to psychotherapy that includes a variety of attempts to look beyond the confines of single-school approaches in order to see what can be learned from other perspectives. It is characterized by openness to

various ways of integrating diverse theories and techniques. Psychotherapy integration can be differentiated from an eclectic approach in that an eclectic approach is one in which a therapist chooses interventions because they work (the therapist relies solely on supposed efficacy) without looking for a theoretical basis for using the technique. In contrast, psychotherapy integration attends to the relationship between theory and technique.

### Description

The term psychotherapy integration has been used in several different ways. The term has been applied to approaches including: common factors, assimilative integration, technical eclecticism, and theoretical integration.

### Common factors

Common factors refers to aspects of psychotherapy that are present in most, if not all, approaches to therapy. These techniques cut across all theoretical lines and are present in all psychotherapeutic activities. Because the techniques are common to all approaches to psychotherapy, the name common factors has been given to this variety of psychotherapy integration. There is no standard list of common factors, but if a list were to be constructed, it surely would include:

- a therapeutic alliance established between the patient and the therapist
- exposure of the patient to prior difficulties, either in imagination or in reality
- a new corrective emotional experience that allows the patient to experience past problems in new and more benign ways
- expectations by both the therapist and the patient that positive change will result from the treatment
- therapist qualities, such as attention, empathy, and positive regard, that are facilitative of change in treatment
- the provision by the therapist to the patient of a reason for the problems that are being experienced

No matter what kind of therapy is practiced, each of these common factors is present. It is difficult to imagine a treatment that does not begin with the establishment of a constructive and positive therapeutic alliance. The therapist and the patient agree to work together and they both feel committed to a process of change occurring in the patient. Within every approach to treatment, the second of the common factors, the exposure of the patient to prior difficulties, is present. In some instances the exposure is *in vivo*

(occurs in real life), and the patient will be asked directly to confront the source of the difficulties. In many cases, the exposure is verbal and in imagination. However, in every case, the patient must express those difficulties in some manner and, by doing so, reexperiences those difficulties through this exposure. In successful treatment, the exposure usually is followed by a new corrective emotional experience. The corrective emotional experience refers to a situation in which an old difficulty is reexperienced in a new and more positive way. As the patient reexperiences the problem in a new way, that problem can be mastered and the patient can move on to a more successful adjustment.

Having established a therapeutic alliance, and being exposed to the problem in a new and more positive context, both the therapist and the patient always expect positive change to occur. This faith and hope is a common factor that is an integral part of successful therapy. Without this hope and expectation of change, it is unlikely that the therapist can do anything that will be useful, and if the patient does not expect to change, it is unlikely that he or she will experience any positive benefit from the treatment. The therapist must possess some essential qualities, such as paying attention to the patient, being empathic with the patient, and making his positive regard for the patient clear in the relationship. Finally, the patient must be provided with a credible reason for the problems that he or she is undergoing. This reason is based in the therapist's theory of personality and change. The same patient going to different therapists may be given different reasons for the same problem. It is interesting to speculate as to whether the reason must be an accurate one or whether it is sufficient that it be credible to the patient and not remarkably at variance with reality. As long as the reason is credible and the patient has a way of understanding what previously had been incomprehensible, that may be sufficient for change to occur.

### *Assimilative integration*

The second major approach to psychotherapy integration is assimilative integration. Assimilative integration is an approach in which the therapist has a commitment to one theoretical approach but is also willing to use techniques from other therapeutic approaches.

For example, a therapist may try to understand patients in terms of psychodynamic theory, because he or she finds this most helpful in understanding what is going on in the course of the treatment. However, the therapist may also recognize that there are techniques outside psychodynamic theory that work very well, and these may then be used in the treatment plan.

The psychodynamic therapist can occasionally use cognitive-behavioral techniques such as homework, and may occasionally use humanistic approaches, such as a two-chair technique, but always retains a consistent psychodynamic understanding. The treatment can take place in a way that is beneficial to the patient and is not bound by the restrictions of the therapist's favorite way of intervening. The patient may not be aware that integration is taking place, but he or she does feel that a consistent approach is being maintained. Most patients are not familiar with theory and therefore do not realize that different techniques are generated by different theoretical understandings, and only are concerned with whether or not the treatment is helpful.

Inherent in psychotherapy integration is the conviction that there is no one approach to therapy that is suitable to every patient. Both in single-school approaches and in psychotherapy integration, the treatment must be suitable for the individual patient. In making the treatment suitable for the individual patient, the therapist must understand the patient, and that establishes a place for theory. Assimilative integration is particularly useful in that theory helps in the understanding of the needs of the patient, but then several different approaches to technique can help to design a treatment that fits that particular understanding. The treatment plan then must undergo continuous revision as the understanding of the patient gets fuller and deeper over the course of the treatment.

### *Technical eclecticism*

Technical eclecticism is a variation of assimilative integration and is most common among those practitioners who refer to themselves as eclectic. In technical eclecticism, the same diversity of techniques is displayed as in assimilative integration, but there is no unifying theoretical understanding that underlies the approach. Rather, the therapist relies on previous experience and on knowledge of the theoretical and research literature to choose interventions that are appropriate for the patient.

The obvious similarity between assimilative integration and technical eclecticism is that both rely on a wide variety of therapeutic techniques, focusing on the welfare of the patient rather than on allegiance to any particular school of psychotherapy. The major difference between the two is that assimilative integration is bound by a unifying theoretical understanding whereas technical eclecticism is free of theory and relies on the experience of the therapist to determine the appropriate interventions.

### Theoretical integration

The fourth approach to psychotherapy integration is called theoretical integration. This is the most difficult level at which to achieve integration because it requires integrating theoretical concepts from different approaches, and these approaches may differ in their fundamental philosophy about human behavior. Whereas assimilative integration begins with a single theory and brings together techniques from different approaches, theoretical integration tries to bring together those theoretical approaches themselves and then to develop what in physics is referred to as a “grand unified theory.” Neither psychotherapists nor physicists have been successful to date in producing a grand unified theory. It is difficult to imagine a theory that really can combine an approach that has one philosophical understanding with another that has a different philosophical understanding. For example, a psychodynamic approach believes that an early difficulty leads to a pattern of behavior that is repetitive, destructive, and nearly impossible to resolve. In contrast, behavior therapy sees problems as much more amenable to change. This difference may represent a basic incompatibility between the two theories. Therefore, theoretical integration would be faced with the task of integrating a theory about the stability of behavior with a theory about the ready changeability of behavior, and unless this obstacle can be overcome, theoretical integration will not be achieved.

### Conclusions

In any case, the general point in three of these approaches, common factors, assimilative integration, and theoretical integration, is that there is a clear value to the role of theory in psychotherapy integration, whether the theory deals with the way integration works (theoretical integration), the framework that governs the choice of interventions (assimilative integration), or the organizing principle for understanding the common factors that are present in all psychotherapy. The fourth approach, technical eclecticism, is not concerned with theory, but does view the benefit of the patient to be of more significance than the adherence to any single theory.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Gold, Jerold R. *Key Concepts in Psychotherapy Integration*. New York: Springer, 2006.  
 Norcross, John C., and Marvin R. Goldfried, eds. *Handbook of Psychotherapy Integration*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.

Scaturo, Douglas. *Clinical Dilemmas In Psychotherapy: A Transtheoretical Approach To Psychotherapy Integration*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2005.

Stricker, George, and Jerold R. Gold, eds. *Comprehensive Handbook of Psychotherapy Integration*. New York: Spring, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

- Allen, David M. “Use of Between-Session Homework in Systems-Oriented Individual Psychotherapy.” *Journal of Psychotherapy Integration* 16.2 (Jun. 2006): 238–53.  
 Beitman, Bernard D., and Angela M. Soth. “Activation of Self-Observation: A Core Process Among the Psychotherapies.” *Journal of Psychotherapy Integration* 16.4 (Dec. 2006): 383–97.  
 Brodley, Barbara T. “Client-Initiated Homework in Client-Centered Therapy.” *Journal of Psychotherapy Integration* 16.2 (Jun. 2006): 140–61.  
 Melito, Richard. “Integrating Individual and Family Therapies: A Structural-Developmental Approach.” *Journal of Psychotherapy Integration* 16.3 (Sept. 2006): 346–81.  
 Watson, Jeanne C. “Reconciling Different Voices—Developing as an Integrative Scientist Practitioner.” *Journal of Psychotherapy Integration* 16.1 (Mar. 2006): 20–35.

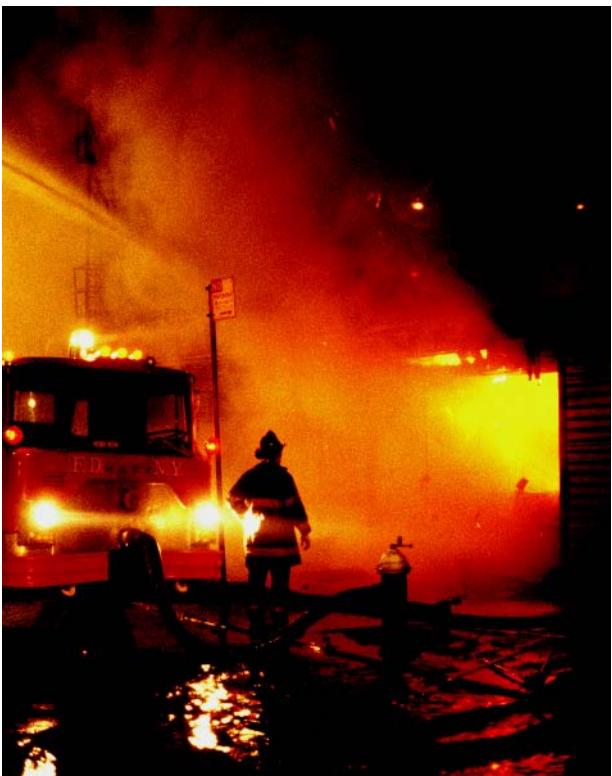
George Stricker, PhD  
 Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Pyromania

### Definition

Pyromania is defined as a pattern of deliberate setting of fires for pleasure or satisfaction derived from the relief of tension experienced before the fire-setting. The name of the disorder comes from two Greek words that mean “fire” and “loss of reason” or “madness.” The clinician’s handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, also known as the *DSM*, classifies pyromania as a disorder of impulse control, meaning that a person diagnosed with pyromania fails to resist the impulsive desire to set fires—as opposed to the organized planning of an arsonist or terrorist.

The position of the **impulse-control disorders** as a group within the *DSM-IV-TR* (*DSM*, fourth edition, text revised) diagnostic framework, however, has been questioned by some psychiatrists. The differential **diagnosis** of pyromania and the other five disorders listed under the heading of impulse-control problems (**intermittent explosive disorder**, **kleptomania**, pathological gambling, **trichotillomania**, and impulse-control disorder not otherwise specified) includes **antisocial**



**A fireman stands in front of a burning building.** (Andrew Holbrooke/Corbis)

**personality disorder** (ASPD), mood disorders, conduct disorders (among younger patients), and temporal lobe epilepsy. It is not clear whether the impulse-control disorders derive from the same set of causes as ASPD and mood disorders, or whether "impulse-control disorder" is simply an all-inclusive category for disorders that are otherwise difficult to classify. Some American researchers would prefer to categorize pyromania and the other disorders of impulsivity as a subset of the obsessive-compulsive spectrum.

In addition, the relationship between pyromania in adults and firesetting among children and adolescents is not well defined as of 2002. Although pyromania is considered to be a rare disorder in adults, repeated firesetting at the adolescent level is a growing social and economic problem that poses major risks to the health and safety of other people and the protection of their property. In the United States, fires set by children and adolescents are more likely to result in someone's death than any other type of household disaster. The National Fire Protection Association stated that for 1998, fires set by juveniles caused 6,215 deaths, 30,800 injuries, and \$11 billion in property damage. It is significant that some European

psychiatrists question the *DSM-IV-TR* definition of pyromania as a disorder of impulse control precisely because of the connection they find between adolescent firesetting and similar behavior in adults. One team of German researchers remarked, "Repeated firesetting, resulting from being fascinated by fire, etc., may be less a disturbance of impulse control but rather the manifestation of a psychoinfantilism, which, supported by alcohol abuse, extends into older age." Pyromania is considered a relatively rare impulse-control disorder in the adult population in North America.

## Description

### *Firesetting in children and adolescents*

Although most cases of firesetting in the United States involve children or adolescents rather than adults, the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for pyromania are difficult to apply to this population. Most younger firesetters are diagnosed as having conduct disorders rather than pyromania as *DSM-IV-TR* defines it; significantly, most of the psychiatric literature dealing with this age group speaks of "firesetting" rather than using the term "pyromania" itself.

Some observers have attempted to classify children and adolescents who set fires as either pathological or nonpathological. Youngsters in the former group are motivated primarily by curiosity and the desire to experiment with fire; some are teenagers playing "scientist." Most are between five and 10 years of age, and do not understand the dangers of playing with fire. Few of them have major psychological problems.

Those who are considered to be pathological firesetters have been further subdivided into five categories, which are not mutually exclusive:

- Firesetting as a cry for help. Youngsters in this category set fires as a way of calling attention to an intrapsychic problem such as depression, or an interpersonal problem, including parental separation and divorce or physical and sexual abuse.
- Delinquent firesetters. Firesetters in this category are most likely to be between the ages of 11 and 15. Their firesetting is part of a larger pattern of aggression, and may include vandalism and hate crimes. They are, however, more likely to damage property with their firesetting than to injure people.
- Severely disturbed firesetters. These youths are often diagnosed as either psychotic or paranoid, and appear to be reinforced by the sensory aspects of fire setting. Some set fires as part of suicide attempts.

- Cognitively impaired firesetters. This group includes youngsters whose impulse control is damaged by a neurological or medical condition such as fetal alcohol syndrome.
- Sociocultural firesetters. Youngsters in this group are influenced by antisocial adults in their community, and set fires in order to win their approval.

### **Pyromania in adults**

Pyromania in adults resembles the other disorders of impulse control in having a high rate of comorbidity with other disorders, including **substance abuse** disorders, **obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD)**, **anxiety disorders**, and mood disorders. As of 2002, however, few rigorously controlled studies using strict diagnostic criteria have been done on adult patients diagnosed with pyromania or other impulse-control disorders.

### **Causes and symptoms**

#### **Causes**

Most studies of causation regarding pyromania have focused on children and adolescents who set fires. Early studies in the field used the categories of Freudian **psychoanalysis** to explain this behavior. Freud had hypothesized that firesetting represented a regression to a primitive desire to demonstrate power over nature. In addition, some researchers have tried to explain the fact that pyromania is predominantly a male disorder with reference to Freud's notion that fire has a special symbolic relationship to the male sexual urge. A study done in 1940 attributed firesetting to fears of castration in young males, and speculated that adolescents who set fires do so to gain power over adults. The 1940 study is important also because it introduced the notion of an "ego triad" of firesetting, **enuresis** (bed-wetting), and cruelty to animals as a predictor of violent behavior in adult life. Subsequent studies have found that a combination of firesetting and cruelty to animals is a significant predictor of violent behavior in adult life, but that the third member of the triad (bed-wetting) is not.

**INDIVIDUAL.** The causes of firesetting among children and teenagers are complex and not well understood as of 2002. They can, however, be described in outline as either individual or environmental. Individual factors that contribute to firesetting include:

- Antisocial behaviors and attitudes. Adolescent firesetters have often committed other crimes, including forcible rape (11%), nonviolent sexual offenses (18%), and vandalism of property (19%).

- Sensation seeking. Some youths are attracted to firesetting out of boredom and a lack of other forms of recreation.
- Attention seeking. Firesetting becomes a way of provoking reactions from parents and other authorities.
- Lack of social skills. Many youths arrested for firesetting are described by others as "loners" and rarely have significant friendships.
- Lack of fire-safety skills and ignorance of the dangers associated with firesetting.

There are discrepancies between adult researchers' understanding of individual factors in firesetting and reports from adolescents themselves. One study of 17 teenaged firesetters, 14 males and three females, found six different self-reported reasons for firesetting: revenge, crime concealment, peer group pressure, accidental firesetting, **denial** of intention, and fascination with fire. The motivations of revenge and crime concealment would exclude these teenagers from being diagnosed with pyromania according to *DSM-IV-TR* criteria.

**ENVIRONMENTAL.** Environmental factors in adolescent firesetting include:

- Poor supervision on the part of parents and other significant adults.
- Early learning experiences of watching adults use fire carelessly or inappropriately.
- Parental neglect or emotional uninvolvedness.
- Parental psychopathology. Firesetters are significantly more likely to have been physically or sexually abused than children of similar economic or geographic backgrounds. They are also more likely to have witnessed their parents abusing drugs or acting violently.
- Peer pressure. Having peers who smoke or play with fire is a risk factor for a child's setting fires himself.
- Stressful life events. Some children and adolescents resort to firesetting as a way of coping with crises in their lives and/or limited family support for dealing with crises.

#### **Symptoms**

Firesetting among children and adolescents and pyromania in adults may be either chronic or episodic; some persons may set fires frequently as a way of relieving tension, others apparently do so only during periods of unusual **stress** in their lives.

In addition to the outward behavior of firesetting, pyromania in adults has been associated with symptoms that include depressed mood, thoughts of suicide,

repeated conflicts in interpersonal relationships, and poor ability to cope with stress.

## Demographics

The true incidence of pyromania in the general American population remains unknown. Of the six impulse-control disorders listed in *DSM-IV-TR*, only trichotillomania and pathological gambling appear to be common in the general population (4% and 3% respectively). Pyromania, like intermittent explosive disorder and pathological gambling, is diagnosed more frequently in men than in women.

Repeated firesetting appears to be more common in children and adolescents than in adult males. In addition, the incidence appears to be rising in these younger age groups: in 1992, males 18 and younger accounted for 40% of arrests for firesetting; in 2001, they accounted for 55%. As of 1999, 89% of juvenile arrests for firesetting involved males; 79% involved Caucasian juveniles. Within the group of male juveniles, 67% were younger than age 15, and 35% younger than age 12.

Less is known about the incidence of pyromania among adults. Some researchers have theorized that children and adolescents attracted to firesetting when they are younger “graduate” in adult life to more serious crimes with a “macho” image, including serial rape and murder. A number of serial killers, including David Berkowitz, the “Son of Sam” killer, and David Carpenter, the so-called Trailside Killer of the San Francisco Bay area, turned out to have been firesetters in their adolescence. David Berkowitz admitted having started more than two thousand fires in Brooklyn-Queens in the early 1970s.

Another hypothesis regarding pyromania in adults is that it is more likely to emerge in the form of workplace violence. The recent rapid increase in the number of workplace killings and other violent incidents—a 55% rise between 1992 and 1996—is a source of great concern to employers. One of the complications in the situation is that the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), passed by Congress in 1990, forbids employers to discriminate against workers with mental or physical disabilities as long as they are qualified to perform their job. Since 1996, the Equal Employment Opportunities Commission (EEOC) reports that the third-largest category of civil rights claims alleging employer discrimination concerns psychiatric disabilities. In 1997, the EEOC issued a set of guidelines on the ADA and psychiatric disabilities. Significantly, the EEOC excluded pyromania (along with kleptomania, compulsive gambling, disorders of sexual behavior, and the use of illegal

drugs) from the list of psychiatric conditions for which employers are expected to make “reasonable accommodation.” The EEOC’s exclusion of pyromania indicates that workers with this disorder are considered a sufficiently “direct threat” to other people and property that employers are allowed to screen them out during the hiring process.

## Diagnosis

*DSM-IV-TR* specifies six criteria that must be met for a patient to be diagnosed with pyromania:

- The patient must have set fires deliberately and purposefully on more than one occasion.
- The patient must have experienced feelings of tension or emotional arousal before setting the fires.
- The patient must indicate that he or she is fascinated with, attracted to, or curious about fire and situations surrounding fire (for example, the equipment associated with fire, the uses of fire, or the aftermath of firesetting).
- The patient must experience relief, pleasure, or satisfaction from setting the fire or from witnessing or participating in the aftermath.
- The patient does not have other motives for setting fires, such as financial motives; ideological convictions (such as terrorist or anarchist political beliefs); anger or revenge; a desire to cover up another crime; delusions or hallucinations; or impaired judgment resulting from substance abuse, dementia, mental retardation, or traumatic brain damage.
- The fire setting cannot be better accounted for by antisocial personality disorder, a conduct disorder, or a manic episode.

Diagnosis of pyromania is complicated by a number of factors; one important factor is the adequacy of the diagnostic category itself. As was mentioned earlier, some psychiatrists are not convinced that the impulse-control disorders should be identified as a separate group, in that problems with self-control are part of the picture in many psychiatric disorders. **Bulimia nervosa**, **borderline personality disorder**, and antisocial personality disorder are all defined in part by low levels of self-control.

Another complication in diagnosis is the lack of experience on the part of mental health professionals in dealing with firesetting. In many cases they are either unaware that the patient is repeatedly setting fires, or they regard the pattern as part of a cluster of antisocial or dysfunctional behaviors.

## Treatments

### Children and adolescents

Treatment of children and adolescents involved with repeated firesetting appears to be more effective when it follows a case-management approach rather than a medical model, because many young firesetters come from chaotic households. Treatment should begin with a structured interview with the parents as well as the child, in order to evaluate stresses on the family, patterns of supervision and discipline, and similar factors. The next stage in treatment should be tailored to the individual child and his or her home situation. A variety of treatment approaches, including problem-solving skills, anger management, **communication skills**, aggression replacement training, and cognitive restructuring may be necessary to address all the emotional and cognitive issues involved in each case.

### Adults

Pyromania in adults is considered difficult to treat because of the lack of insight and cooperation on the part of most patients diagnosed with the disorder. Treatment usually consists of a combination of medication—usually one of the selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors—and long-term insight-oriented **psychotherapy**.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for recovery from firesetting among children and adolescents depends on the mix of individual and environmental factors involved. Current understanding indicates that children and adolescents who set fires as a cry for help, or who fall into the cognitively impaired or sociocultural categories, benefit the most from therapy and have fairly positive prognoses. The severely disturbed and delinquent types of firesetters have a more guarded outlook.

The prognosis for adults diagnosed with pyromania is generally poor. There are some cases of spontaneous remission among adults, but the rate of spontaneous recovery is not known.

### Prevention

Prevention of pyromania requires a broad-based and flexible approach to treatment of children and adolescents who set fires. In addition to better assessments of young people and their families, fire-safety education is an important preventive strategy that is often overlooked.

## KEY TERMS

**Arson**—The deliberate setting of fires for criminal purposes, usually to collect insurance money or to cover up evidence of another crime. It is distinguished from pyromania by its connection with planning and forethought rather than failure of impulse control.

**Comorbidity**—Association or presence of two or more mental disorders in the same patient. A disorder that is said to have a high degree of comorbidity is likely to occur in patients diagnosed with other disorders that may share or reinforce some of its symptoms.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact. Common delusions include delusions of persecution, delusions about one's importance (sometimes called delusions of grandeur), or delusions of being controlled by others. Pyromania is excluded as a diagnosis if the patient is setting fires on the basis of a delusion.

**Kleptomania**—A disorder of impulse control characterized by repeated stealing or shoplifting of items that the person does not need.

**Spontaneous remission**—Recovery from a disease or disorder that cannot be attributed to medical or psychiatric treatments.

**Trichotillomania**—A disorder marked by repeated pulling and tugging of one's hair, usually resulting in noticeable hair loss on the scalp or elsewhere on the body.

In addition to preventive measures directed specifically at firesetting, recent research into self-control as a general character trait offers hope that it can be taught and practiced like many other human skills. If programs could be developed to improve people's capacity for self-control, they could potentially prevent a wide range of psychiatric disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Baumeister, Roy F., PhD. "Crossing the Line: How Evil Starts." In *Evil: Inside Human Violence and Cruelty*. New York: W. H. Freeman and Company, 1999.

- Douglas, John, and Mark Olshaker. *Mindhunter: Inside the FBI's Elite Serial Crime Unit*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1995.
- Lion, J. R., and A. W. Schienberg. "Disorders of Impulse Control." *Treatments of Psychiatric Disorders*. 2nd edition, edited by Glen O. Gabbard. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 1995.

#### PERIODICALS

- Everall, Ian Paul, and Ann Leconteur. "Firesetting in an Adolescent Boy with Asperger's Syndrome." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 157 (August 1990): 284–288.
- Hollander, E., and J. Rosen. "Impulsivity." *Journal of Psychopharmacology* 14 (2000): S39–S44.
- Laubichler W., A. Kuhberger, P. Sedlmeier. "Pyromania and Arson. A Psychiatric and Criminologic Data Analysis." [in German] *Nervenarzt* 67 (September 1996): 774–780.
- Slavkin, Michael L. "Enuresis, Firesetting, and Cruelty to Animals: Does the Ego Triad Show Predictive Ability?" *Adolescence* 36 (Fall 2001): 535–540.
- Slavkin, Michael L., and Kenneth Fineman. "What Every Professional Who Works with Adolescents Needs to

Know About Firesetters." *Adolescence* 35 (Winter 2000): 759–764.

- Strayhorn, Joseph M., Jr. "Self-Control: Theory and Research." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 41 (January 2002): 7–16.
- Swaffer, Tracey, and Clive R. Hollin. "Adolescent Firesetting: Why Do They Say They Do It?" *Journal of Adolescence* 18 (October 1995): 619–624.

Zugelder, Michael T. "Dangerous Directives? Liability and the Unstable Worker." *Business Horizons* 42 (January–February 1999): 40–48.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

#### OTHER

Federal Emergency Management Agency. *Socioeconomic Factors and the Incidence of Fire*. Washington, DC: United States Fire Administration and National Fire Data Center, 1995.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

# Q

## Quazepam

### Definition

Quazepam belongs to a class of drugs called **benzodiazepines**. These drugs ease **anxiety** and slow the central nervous system. In the United States quazepam is sold under the brand name Doral.

### Purpose

Quazepam is approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of **insomnia**.

### Description

Quazepam is unique in its drug properties in two ways. Several medications from the same class of drugs have an effect called rebound insomnia. This means that the insomnia becomes worse than the original insomnia when the drug is used for extended periods. Quazepam has a minimal tendency to cause rebound insomnia. Secondly, quazepam is eliminated from the body slowly. This gives quazepam an advantage over certain other medications in the benzodiazepine class, such as **alprazolam** or halazepam, in that patients do not experience early-morning insomnia, since there is still enough medication to induce sleep in the very early morning hours.

Quazepam's sedating effect that reduces insomnia lasts only for about four weeks of continuous use. The medication is most effective for an intermediate-term treatment of insomnia (two weeks), rather than a long duration of treatment of over four weeks. Hence, long-term treatment for insomnia with quazepam should be avoided.

Quazepam comes in 7.5-mg and 15-mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

Effective doses of quazepam for the treatment of insomnia range from 7.5 mg to 30 mg at bedtime. Most patients start by taking 15 mg at bedtime. Adjustments

from this dosage can be made as determined by the individual. In some patients a dosage as low as 7.5 mg is sufficient to reduce insomnia.

Elderly patients (over age 65) should receive a reduced dosage of 7.5 mg, because it takes longer to eliminate the drug from their bodies. Because quazepam is eliminated by the liver, dosage reduction may be necessary in patients with liver problems.

### Precautions

Patients who have a condition known as sleep apnea should not use quazepam. This condition involves episodes of breathing difficulty and oxygen deficiency that occur throughout the night. Patients who are pregnant or who had allergic reactions to quazepam should not take quazepam.

People who need to remain mentally alert such as those who are driving or operating dangerous machinery, need to take quazepam with caution as it may cause drowsiness. This effect is intensified when quazepam is taken with alcohol. It is best not to drink alcoholic beverages while taking quazepam. Patients with compromised respiratory function (breathing problems), as well as patients with a history of drug or alcohol **abuse**, should be closely monitored during the short-term treatment with quazepam.

### Side effects

The effects of quazepam taken at bedtime may last, or hang over, into the next day. This is the most common side effect of quazepam. The symptoms of this condition include drowsiness, daytime sleepiness, slurred speech, and mental sluggishness. This effect is dose-related, and seems to occur most frequently in patients taking 30-mg doses. These effects are experienced less commonly with the 15-mg dose, but this dose may not be effective in eliminating insomnia in some patients. Some people experience headaches and dizziness when taking quazepam.

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

A small number of patients experience dry mouth, weight loss, abnormal taste perception, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and either diarrhea or constipation due to quazepam. These effects occur in about 1% to 10% of people taking the drug.

Side effects that occur in less than 1% of patients include skin problems, such as rash or skin inflammation, muscle cramps, rigidity, and blurred vision.

### Interactions

Cimetidine (Tagamet) and ketoconazole increase the levels of quazepam in the body, potentially causing toxicity or increased side effects.

Theophylline decreases the effectiveness of quazepam. **Valerian**, **kava kava**, and alcohol cause increased central nervous system **depression**, which may increase sedation, drowsiness, and slowed reflexes if used while taking quazepam.

*See also* Valerian.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Lexi-Comp, Inc. 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O’Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

Rosenberg, Russell P. “Sleep Maintenance Insomnia: Strengths and Weaknesses of Current Pharmacologic Therapies.” *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.1 (Jan.–Mar. 2006): 49–56.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Quetiapine

### Definition

Quetiapine is an atypical antipsychotic drug used to treat symptoms of **schizophrenia**. It is available with a prescription under the trade name Seroquel.

### Purpose

Quetiapine is classified as an atypical antipsychotic. It is used to treat schizophrenia and bipolar disorders.

### Description

Quetiapine is thought to modify the actions of several chemicals in the **brain**. It is chemically related to another atypical antipsychotic agent, **clozapine**, but differs both chemically and pharmacologically from the earlier phenothiazine antipsychotics.

Recently, the effectiveness of quetiapine was evaluated in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study. This study evaluated the effectiveness and side effects of newer antipsychotic drugs (sometimes referred to as atypical antipsychotics)—including quetiapine—in comparison to a conventional antipsychotic drug in the treatment of schizophrenia. Contrary to expectations, the study found that the conventional antipsychotic generally was equally effective and tolerated as well as the newer, more expensive, atypical antipsychotic medications.

Only 16% of participants taking quetiapine in the Phase 1 study were able to continue throughout the entire 18 months. The study results indicate that the choice of a different medication for patients who stop taking an antipsychotic medication depends on why they stopped taking the first medication. Participants who stopped taking their antipsychotic medication in Phase 1 because it was not adequately controlling their symptoms were more likely to stay on their medication if they were switched to **olanzapine** or **risperidone** rather than quetiapine or **ziprasidone**. There was no difference between the four medications tested in Phase 2, however, for participants who had stopped taking their Phase 1 medication because they experienced adverse side effects.

The study results also showed that clozapine is often a good choice of medication for patients who did not respond well to other antipsychotic medications. In Phase 2 of the study, clozapine was more effective in controlling symptoms than the other atypical antipsychotics under evaluation. For patients whose symptoms were not well controlled on clozapine, olanzapine and risperidone tended to be more effective than ziprasidone or quetiapine.

Quetiapine is available in 25-mg, 100-mg, and 200-mg tablets.

### Recommended dosage

Initially, a dosage of 25 mg should be taken twice a day. Each dose should be increased by 25–50 mg

increments every three to four days until achieving a target dose of 300–400 mg per day, administered in two or three divided doses. It is not known whether doses higher than 800 mg per day are safe.

### Precautions

Caution should be used in patients with heart disease because the drug may cause blood pressure to fall too low resulting in dizziness, rapid heartbeat, or fainting.

Quetiapine may cause liver damage. As a result, patients should notify their health care providers if they experience flu-like symptoms, notice yellowing of their skin or eyes, or experience abdominal pain. Liver function should be assessed periodically. The drug should be used cautiously in people with a history of liver disease or alcoholic cirrhosis.

Quetiapine may alter the function of the thyroid gland. Those taking supplements for low thyroid function may require dosage adjustments in their thyroid medication.

Quetiapine may increase cholesterol levels and contribute to the formation of cataracts. Because of this possibility, cholesterol levels should be checked periodically and yearly eye exams should be performed.

Quetiapine should be used carefully in those with a history of seizure disorders because it may increase the tendency to have **seizures**.

Quetiapine may cause extreme drowsiness and should be used carefully by people who need to be mentally alert.

Do not take quetiapine while pregnant or breastfeeding.

### Side effects

Relatively common side effects that accompany quetiapine usage include drowsiness, dizziness, rash, dry mouth, **insomnia**, **fatigue**, muscular weakness, anorexia, blurred vision, some loss of muscular control, and amenorrhea (lack of menstruation) in women.

Dystonia (difficulty walking or moving) may occur with quetiapine use. This condition may subside in 24 to 48 hours even when the person continues taking the drug and usually disappears when quetiapine is discontinued.

Quetiapine use may lead to the development of symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease. These symptoms may include a tight or mask-like expression on the face, drooling, tremors, pill-rolling motions in the hands, cogwheel rigidity (abnormal rigidity in

muscles characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched), and a shuffling gait. Taking the anti-Parkinson's drugs **benztropine mesylate** or **trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride** along with the quetiapine usually controls these symptoms.

Quetiapine has the potential to produce a serious side effect called **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may appear late in therapy and not disappear even after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, face, or other groups of skeletal muscles. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and with increasing dosage of quetiapine. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

An occasionally reported side effect of quetiapine use is neuroleptic malignant syndrome. This is a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity, high fever, alterations in mental status, and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia (fast heartbeat), and arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat). People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should talk to their physicians promptly.

### Interactions

Quetiapine may be less effective when it is taken with drugs like **carbamazepine** (Tegretol), phenytoin (Dilantin), rifampin (Rifadin), **barbiturates**, **thioridazine** (Mellaril), or corticosteroids such as prednisolone, methylprednisolone, prednisone, and dexamethasone because these drugs increase the breakdown of quetiapine in the liver causing lower than normal levels of the drug.

Antifungal drugs such as fluconazole (Diflucan) or ketoconazole (Nizoral), antibiotics such as erythromycin or clarithromycin (Biaxin), and cimetidine (Tagamet) may decrease the breakdown of quetiapine in the liver causing higher than normal levels of the drug.

Any drug that causes drowsiness may lead to decreased mental alertness and impaired motor skills when taken with quetiapine. Some examples include alcohol, **antidepressants** such as **imipramine** (Tofranil) or **paroxetine** (Paxil), antipsychotics such as thioridazine (Mellaril), and some antihistamines.

## KEY TERMS

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders as well.

**Atypical antipsychotic**—A newer antipsychotic drug that is less likely to cause significant adverse side effects than conventional antipsychotic medications. Atypical antipsychotics are also called novel antipsychotics or second-generation antipsychotics.

**Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)**—An unusual but potentially serious complication that develops in some patients who have been treated with antipsychotic medications. NMS is characterized by changes in blood pressure, altered states of consciousness, rigid muscles, and fever. Untreated NMS can result in coma and death.

**Parkinsonian**—Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, face, or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

## Resources

### BOOKS

AstraZeneca. *Seroquel Package Insert*. Wilmington, DE: AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP, 2001.

Facts and Comparisons staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Facts and Comparisons, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

Casey, Daniel E. "Implications of the CATIE Trial on Treatment: Extrapyramidal Symptoms." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 25–31.

El-Mallakh, Rif, et al. "Bipolar II Disorder: Current and Future Treatment Options." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.4 (Oct.–Dec. 2006): 259–66.

Gentile, Salvatore. "Extrapyramidal Adverse Events Associated with Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment of Bipolar Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 27.1 (Feb. 2007): 35–45.

Glick, Ira D. "Understanding the Results of CATIE in the Context of the Field." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 40–47.

Haro, Josep Maria, et al. "Remission and Relapse in the Outpatient Care of Schizophrenia: Three-Year Results from the Schizophrenia Outpatient Health Outcomes Study." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.6 (Dec. 2006): 571–78.

Jarema, Marek. "Atypical Antipsychotics in the Treatment of Mood Disorders." *Current Opinion in Psychiatry* 20.1 (Jan. 2007): 23–29.

Lieberman, Jeffrey A., et al. "Effectiveness of Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia." *New England Journal of Medicine* 353.12 (Sept. 2005): 1209–23.

McEvoy, Joseph P., et al. "Effectiveness of Clozapine Versus Olanzapine, Quetiapine, and Risperidone in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia Who Did Not Respond to Prior Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 600–10.

Meisenzahl, E. M., et al. "Effects of Treatment with the Atypical Neuroleptic Quetiapine on Working Memory Function: A Functional MRI Follow-Up Investigation." *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* 256.8 (Dec. 2006): 522–31.

Meltzer, Herbert Y., and William V. Bobo. "Interpreting the Efficacy Findings in the CATIE Study: What Clinicians Should Know." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 14–24.

Nasrallah, Henry A. "Metabolic Findings from the CATIE Trial and Their Relation to Tolerability." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 32–39.

Nasrallah, Henry A., Martin Brecher, and Björn Paulsson. "Placebo-Level Incidence of Extrapyramidal Symptoms (EPS) with Quetiapine in Controlled Studies of Patients with Bipolar Mania." *Bipolar Disorders* 8.5, part 1 (Oct. 2006): 467–74.

Pae, Chi-Un, et al. "Adjunctive Risperidone, Olanzapine and Quetiapine for the Treatment of Hospitalized Patients with Bipolar I Disorder: A Retrospective Study." *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry* 30.7 (Sept. 2006): 1322–25.

Savaskan, Egemen, et al. "Treatment of Behavioural, Cognitive and Circadian Rest-Activity Cycle Disturbances in Alzheimer's Disease: Haloperidol vs. Quetiapine." *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology* 9.5 (Oct. 2006): 507–16.

Schneider, Lon S., et al. "Effectiveness of Atypical Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Alzheimer's Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 355.15 (Oct. 2006): 1525–38.

Stroup, T. Scott, et al. "Effectiveness of Olanzapine, Quetiapine, Risperidone, and Ziprasidone in Patients with

- Chronic Schizophrenia Following Discontinuation of a Previous Atypical Antipsychotic.” *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 611–22.
- Tariot, Pierre N., et al. “Quetiapine Treatment of Psychosis Associated With Dementia: A Double-Blind, Randomized, Placebo-Controlled Clinical Trial.” *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.9 (Sept. 2006): 767–76.
- Thase, Michael E., et al. “Efficacy of Quetiapine Monotherapy in Bipolar I and II Depression: A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Study (The BOLDER II Study).” *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.6 (Dec. 2006): 600–09.
- Weiden, Peter J. “EPS Profiles: The Atypical Antipsychotics Are Not All the Same.” *Journal of Psychiatric Practice* 13.1 (Jan. 2007): 13–24.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph.,PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD



# R

Rational behavior therapy see **Rational emotive therapy**

## Rational emotive therapy

### Definition

Rational emotive therapy (RET) is a psychotherapeutic approach which proposes that unrealistic and irrational beliefs cause many emotional problems.

### Purpose

RET is a form of **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT). The primary focus of this treatment approach is to suggest changes in thinking that will lead to changes in behavior, thereby alleviating or improving symptoms. The therapy emphasizes changing irrational thinking patterns that cause emotional distress into thoughts that are more reasonable and rational. RET can be used to treat persons affected from disorders such as **anxiety**, **depression** and stress.

### Precautions

There are no major precautions, except that persons entering treatment must be willing to change behaviors that promote symptoms.

### Description

Rational emotive therapy was developed by Albert Ellis in the mid-1950s. Ellis proposed that people become unhappy and develop self-defeating habits because of unrealistic or faulty beliefs. In research reports from Ellis in 1979 and 1987 he introduced the model that most irrational beliefs originate from three core ideas, each one of which is unrealistic. These three core and unrealistic views include: 1) I must perform well to be approved of by others who are perceived

significant; 2) you must treat me fairly—if not, then it is horrible and I cannot bear it; 3) conditions must be my way and if not I cannot stand to live in such a terrible and awful world. These irrational thoughts can lead to **grief** and needless suffering.

As a therapy, RET is active. The RET therapist strives to change irrational beliefs, challenge thinking, and promote rational self-talk, and various strategies are used to achieve these goals. These strategies may include: disputing irrational beliefs (the therapist points out how irrational it would be for a client to believe he or she had to be good at everything to be considered a worthwhile person), reframing (situations are viewed from a more positive angle), problem solving, role-playing, **modeling**, and the use of humor. The client may also be requested to complete certain exercises at home, and **bibliotherapy** (reading about the disorder) may also be used as components of RET.

### Preparation

Before a client begins RET, he or she may undergo an assessment with the therapist. This assessment is called a biopsychosocial assessment, consisting of a structured interview. The questions and information-gathering during this assessment typically cover areas such as past medical and psychological history, family and social history, sex and drug history, employment and education history and criminal history. The interview provides information for a **diagnosis** or a tentative diagnosis that requires further testing or consultation.

### Aftercare

Aftercare may or may not be indicated. This is usually decided on between the patient and mental health practitioner. Aftercare follow-up may be recommended if the affected person is at risk of **relapse** behaviors (returning to old behaviors that the client had sought to change).

## Risks

There are no real risks associated with RET. There is a possibility that treatment may not benefit the affected person. This possibility becomes more likely for patients who have multiple psychological disorders.

## Normal results

The person undergoing RET will begin to understand the repetitive patterns of irrational thoughts and disruption caused by symptoms. The individual in therapy will develop skills to improve his or her specific problems, and usual results include improved self-esteem and the development of a sense that life events change and that outcomes may not always be favorable.

## Abnormal results

There are no abnormal results per se, but persons who are unwilling to change and adhere to treatment recommendations may not gain any new beneficial behaviors.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Coon, D. *Essentials of Psychology*. 7th ed. Pacific Grove: Brooks/Cole Publishing Company, 1997.

### ORGANIZATIONS

The Albert Ellis Institute. 45 East 65th Street, New York, NY 10021. Telephone: (800) 323-4738.

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.  
Nicole Mallory, M.S., PA-C

## Reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood

### Definition

In reactive attachment disorder, the normal bond between infant and parent is not established or is broken. Infants normally “bond” or form an emotional attachment, to a parent or other caregiver by the eighth month of life. From about the second through the eighth month, most infants will respond to attention from a variety of caregivers, if the caregivers are familiar. By the eighth month, however, normal infants have established a strong emotional preference for one or two primary caregivers. They are distressed if separated from these caregivers for

even a few hours, even if another familiar person is present. If this bonding process is interfered with, it can have severe emotional and physical consequences for the child.

Reactive attachment disorder is sometimes called a post-traumatic disorder.

## Description

In reactive attachment disorder, an infant or young child has not formed an emotional bond with a parent or other caregiver. This affects the child’s ability to interact normally with others. The child may have severe emotional and social problems that extend into adulthood. There may be learning problems and physical problems such as slow growth and failure to develop as expected.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

An infant does not know how to form an emotional attachment to another person, any more than it knows how to feed or clean itself. Bonding is a necessary developmental step in a baby’s growth. It occurs as the infant is cared for, talked to, played with, and comforted consistently. This helps the infant feel like it knows what will happen every time it sees a certain person. When this process is interfered with, the infant may never learn how to trust or love.

Many things can interfere with the bonding process:

- Loss of parents. The most common cause of reactive attachment disorder is being orphaned or put in foster care at a very early age. The infant may receive care from many people or be moved from place to place often. A bond to a single consistent caregiver cannot be formed.
- Neglect or impaired caregiving. If the infant is not cared for consistently, it will not learn to trust. This includes emotional neglect, where the caregivers may keep the baby clean and fed, but do not allow time for play and bonding. Very often this occurs when the parent or caregiver has a problem that prevents him or her from giving adequate consistent attention to the infant. Such problems include major depression, psychosis, drug or alcohol abuse, mental retardation, physical illness, and poverty. The parent may also have been a neglected child or may be very young themselves and simply not know how to parent adequately.
- Abuse or pain. Even if an infant is getting love and attention some of the time, it may not learn to attach if it comes to expect pain on occasion from the

caregiver. Illness or pain that the caregiver cannot ease can have the same effect.

In disrupted families with more than one child, one child may have reactive attachment disorder while others do not. It is not clear what role personality plays in this problem.

### Symptoms

Infants with this problem often resist being held or touched. They may seem sleepy or "slow." They may not seem aware of what's going on around them. They may be slow to gain weight. On the other hand, some appear to be overly aware and nervous.

Young children may seem withdrawn and passive. They may ignore others or respond to others in odd ways. Some may seem overly familiar with strangers and touch or cling to people they've just met. However, they lack empathy for others. Their behavior comes across to others as needy and strange, unlike the normal friendliness of children.

Other symptoms of reactive attachment disorder in children can include the following:

- inability to learn from mistakes (poor cause-and-effect thinking)
- learning problems or delays in learning
- impulsive behavior
- abnormal speech patterns
- destructive or cruel behavior

### Demographics

The prevalence of reactive attachment disorder has been estimated at 1% of all children under the age of five. Children orphaned at a young age have a much higher likelihood of this problem.

### Diagnosis

The standard manual for mental health professionals in the United States is the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. This manual lists criteria for diagnosing various mental disorders. The most recent edition, the fourth edition text revised is also known as the *DSM-IV-TR*. According to the *DSM-IV-TR* reactive attachment disorder is diagnosed when the following criteria are met:

- Presence of strange and developmentally inappropriate social interactions, beginning before age five years. The child does not respond to or initiate social interactions in a way that would be developmentally appropriate; instead, the child is either inhibited or is disinhibited in his or her interactions.

Inhibited reactions may be excessively vigilant, restrained or ambivalent. (The child may respond to caregivers with a mixtures of approach, avoidance, and resistance to comforting, as an example from the manual.) Disinhibited reactions occur in a variety of social interactions and the child does not discriminate among people he or she chooses as attachment figures. This child will treat near strangers with inappropriate familiarity.

- The child's inappropriate social skills are not due exclusively to developmental delay (as in mental retardation) and the child's symptoms do not meet criteria for a pervasive developmental disorder.
- The child has received care in which his or her basic needs—either emotional or physical—are often unmet, or in which stable attachments have not been able to form (such as when primary caregivers change often).

An infant is diagnosed as having reactive attachment disorder when he or she fails to show signs of bonding to a parent or caregiver by the age of eight months. Infants normally start to follow the parent or caregiver with their eyes and smile in response to attention by about two months. By about five months, the child should reach out to be picked up and obviously enjoy simple interactive games like "peekaboo."

### Treatments

First, the child's safety and physical health must be attended to. A child that is being abused or has been physically neglected may need to be hospitalized for a while. This is done to separate the child from the harmful situation and take care of any medical problems resulting from neglect or abuse.

The next step is to either make the child's home environment stable, or place the child in a more stable home. Child protective services may be brought in at this point. The home situation must be evaluated, and the parents or caregivers assessed for emotional fitness to care for the child. The parents or caregivers may be given training in proper childcare and emotional nurturing. **Family therapy** may be needed in some cases to help the parents or caregivers and other children in the family.

With a young infant, the parents or caregivers will be encouraged to have a regular schedule for the infant and to spend time each day simply holding and playing with the infant.

Treatment of children who are past infancy is difficult. It is important to find a therapist experienced in the treatment of children with reactive attachment disorder. Most therapists use a mix of techniques. The therapist may seek to help the child relive and work through **grief** and anger from a prior trauma or loss.

## KEY TERMS

**Behavioral therapy**—An approach to treatment that focuses on extinguishing undesirable behavior and replacing it with desired behavior.

**Cognitive therapy**—Psychological treatment aimed at changing a person's way of thinking in order to change his or her behavior and emotional state.

**Holding therapy**—A controversial treatment for autism, reactive attachment disorder, and other problems of children in which an adult holds a child despite any resistance from the child until the child submits and experiences an emotional release.

Cognitive therapy may be used to help an older child understand and reframe negative thoughts about himself or herself, or about parents or caregivers. If the child is too young to verbalize or think rationally, techniques such as **play therapy** or art therapy may be used to help bring out and work through feelings. Behavioral therapy may be used to help guide development of wanted behaviors.

### Prognosis

There has not been much research to date on the course of this problem. It appears that children who are identified and treated early have a better chance of learning how to form appropriate bonds with other people.

Children who are not treated or who are treated later in life have a greater chance of having permanent problems relating to other people.

### Prevention

Prevention of reactive attachment disorder begins with good parenting. As far as possible, health care providers and families should be on the lookout for any problem that may prevent parents from giving children the structure and attention they need. If a child loses its primary caregivers, a stable environment with consistent attention from one or two caregivers should be provided as soon as possible.

Early identification of reactive attachment disorder is necessary to get help to the child and family as soon as possible. The earlier this problem is identified and treated, the more likely it is that the child will be able to develop healthy patterns of relating to others.

*See also* Creative therapies; Post-traumatic stress disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Hales Robert E., Stuart C.Yudofsky, and John A. Talbott, eds. *Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.

Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Kaplan & Sadock's Comprehensive Textbook of Psychology*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins; 1999.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Association for Treatment and Training in the Attachment of Children (ATTACH). <<http://www.attach.org>>.

Jody Bower, M.S.W.

## Reading disorder

### Definition

Reading disorder is a learning disorder that involves significant impairment of reading accuracy, speed, or comprehension to the extent that the impairment interferes with academic achievement or activities of daily life. People with reading disorder perform reading tasks well below the level one would expect on the basis of their general intelligence, educational opportunities, and physical health. Reading disorder is most commonly called dyslexia. Dyslexia, however, usually includes deficits in spelling and writing as well as reading.

### Description

Reading disorder is a learning disorder characterized by a significant disparity between an individual's general intelligence and his or her reading skills. **Learning disorders**, formerly called academic skills disorders, are disorders that account for difficulty learning and poor academic performance when low performance cannot be attributed to **mental retardation**, low intelligence, lack of learning opportunities, or such specific physical problems as vision or hearing deficits. Common learning disabilities include reading disorder, often called dyslexia; **mathematics disorder**; **disorder of written expression**; and some language processing disorders.

Reading disorder can cause severe problems in reading, and consequently in academic work, even in people with normal intelligence, educational opportunities, motivation to learn to read, and emotional self-control. Reading disorder is different from slowness in learning or mental retardation. In reading disorder, there is a significant gap between the expected level of

performance and actual achievement. Difficulties in reading can occur on many levels, and reading disorder may have several causes that manifest in different ways. Common problems in people with reading disorder include:

- slow reading speed
- poor comprehension when reading material either aloud or silently
- omission of words while reading
- reversal of words or letters while reading
- difficulty decoding syllables or single words and associating them with specific sounds (phonics)
- limited sight word vocabulary

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Reading disorder was first recognized in the late nineteenth century, when it was called pure word blindness, then developmental alexia. Starting in the 1960s, educators commonly referred to reading disorder as dyslexia, from the Greek word *dys*, meaning poor or inadequate, and the word *lexis* meaning words or language. Despite the long history of reading disorder, its cause is not known.

Learning to read is a complex task. It requires coordination of the eye muscles to follow a line of print; spatial orientation to interpret letters and words; visual memory to retain the meaning of letters and sight words; sequencing ability; a grasp of sentence structure and grammar; and the ability to categorize and analyze. In addition, the **brain** must integrate visual cues with memory and associate them with specific sounds. The sounds must then be associated with specific meanings. For comprehension, the meanings must be retained while a sentence or passage is read. Reading disorder occurs when any of these processes are disrupted. For that reason, the roots of reading disorder have proved difficult to isolate, and may be different in different individuals.

Despite the complexity of reading disorder, researchers have found that the condition is at least partially inherited. In 1999, the Centre for Reading Research in Norway studied a large family with reading problems. By evaluating the reading and writing abilities of about 80 family members across four generations, the researchers were able to pinpoint mutations in specific genes that are associated with reading and writing deficits.

It appears that reading disorder may also have causes other than genetic inheritance, as about half the people with this learning disability do not come

from families with a history of the problem. Many theories suggest that functional problems in specific areas of the brain underlie reading disorder. Given the complicated demands on the human nervous system involved in reading, it is entirely possible that there are several different problems in brain function related to difficulty in learning to read. What is known is that 90% of children diagnosed with reading disorder have other language deficits. Still other research suggests a possible link with a subtle visual problem that affects the speed with which affected people can read.

### Symptoms

Common characteristics of children with reading disorder include:

- difficulty identifying single words
- problems understanding the sounds in words, sound order, or rhymes
- problems with spelling
- transposing letters in words
- omitting or substituting words
- poor reading comprehension
- slow reading speed (oral or silent)

In addition to these symptoms, children with reading disorder often have other delays or learning problems. These include:

- delays in spoken language
- confusion with directions, or right/left-handedness
- confusion with opposites (up/down, early/late)
- mathematics disorder
- disorder of written expression

### Diagnosis

Evaluation of children's reading ability must be done on an individual basis in order to make a **diagnosis** of reading disorder and distinguish it from slow learning or low intelligence. The examiner must take into account the child's age, intelligence, educational opportunities, and such cultural factors as whether the language spoken at home is different from the language taught and used at school. Reading disorder is diagnosed when a child's reading achievement is substantially below what would be expected after taking these factors into account.

In addition, the reading problems must interfere in significant ways with the person's schoolwork or daily life. If a physical condition is present (for example, mental retardation, poor eyesight, or hearing loss), the reading deficit must be in excess of what one would normally associate with the physical handicap.

Diagnosis is complicated by the fact that 20%–55% of children with reading disorder have attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), a behavioral disorder that aggravates learning difficulties. In addition, about one-quarter of children with reading disorder have **conduct disorder**, **Oppositional defiant disorder** and **depression** also occur in higher-than-average rates in children with reading disorder. Almost all people with reading disorder have difficulties spelling, and about 80% of them have other language problems.

Anyone who is suspected of having reading disorder or any other learning disability should have a comprehensive evaluation, including hearing, vision, and intelligence testing. The test should include all areas of learning and learning processes, not just reading. In school-age children, this evaluation often involves a team of educators, educational psychologists, and child psychiatrists.

## Demographics

Estimates by the National Institutes of Health of the number of people with learning disorders range from 5%–15% of the general population. About 80% of people with a learning disorder have reading disorder. Other studies suggest that about 4% of school-age children have reading disorder. People with reading disorder are more likely to have a parent or sibling with the disorder.

Between 60% and 80% of children diagnosed with reading disorder are boys. For various reasons often related to behavior, boys tend to be referred more frequently to special education classes, which suggests that girls with reading disorder may be underdiagnosed. Some experts think that this disparity comes about because boys are more often disruptive in class.

## Treatments

Reading disorder, like other learning disorders, falls under the federal Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA). Definitions of learning disabilities vary among the states, and some school districts are more willing than others to recognize specific learning disabilities. Any child, however, who has a diagnosed learning disability, including reading disorder or dyslexia, should be eligible for an Individual Education Program (IEP) that provides customized instruction at school designed to address the disability.

Treatment approaches vary from visual stimulation to special **diets** to enhanced reading instruction. However, it is generally agreed that customized education is the only successful remedy. The American Academy of Ophthalmology, the American Academy

of Pediatrics, and the American Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology and Strabismus have issued a policy statement warning against visual treatments and recommending a cross-disciplinary educational approach.

The first researcher to identify and study dyslexia, Samuel Torrey Orton, developed the core principles of such an approach in the 1920s. The work of three of his followers—teachers Bessie Stillman, Anna Gillingham, and Beth Slingerland—underlies many of the programs in use today, including Project READ, the Wilson Reading System, and programs based on the Herman method. There are many successful programs to address individual reading needs. In general all good programs are:

- Sound/symbol (phonics)-based. They break words down into their smallest visual components: letters and the sounds associated with them.
- Multisensory. Good programs attempt to form and strengthen mental associations among visual, auditory, and kinesthetic channels of stimulation. The student simultaneously sees, feels, and says the sound-symbol association. For example, a student may trace the letter or letter combination with his or her finger while pronouncing a word out loud.
- Highly structured. Remediation begins at the level of the single letter-sound; works up to digraphs (a pair of letters representing a single speech sound); then syllables; then into words and sentences in a systematic fashion. Repetitive drill and practice serve to form necessary associations between sounds and written symbols.

## Prognosis

Many famous and successful people have suffered from reading disorders, including at least two Presidents of the United States. How well a person compensates for this disorder depends on the severity of the impairment and the type of educational remediation that he or she receives. Generally, people who are identified as having a reading disorder before grade three and who receive intensive reading education can do well. There is, however, a great deal of variation among people in intelligence, educational opportunities, and the will to overcome a reading disorder, as well as in the type and severity of the problem. All these factors combine to determine the ultimate outcome of this disorder. The prognosis is usually good if the condition is diagnosed early and the person is enrolled in a good remedial program. Strong self-esteem, together with supportive family, friends, and

## KEY TERMS

**Digraph**—A pair of letters that represents a single speech sound. In English, the *th* in “thumb” and the *ei* in “vein” are examples of digraphs.

**Dyslexia**—Another term for reading disorder.

**Phonics**—A method of teaching reading and spelling based on the phonetic interpretation of ordinary spelling.

teachers also improve a person’s chances of overcoming this disorder.

### Prevention

There is no known way to prevent reading disorder. Early **intervention** is the key to preventing the associated symptoms of low self-esteem, lack of interest in school, and poor behavior that often accompany low academic achievement.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hales, Robert E., Stuart C. Yudofsky, and John A. Talbot. *The American Psychiatric Press Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Bower, Bruce. “Dyslexia Tied to Disrupted Brain Network.” *Science News* 153 (7 March 1998): 150.
- Matvy, Mike. “A Silicon Bullet for Dyslexia: A New Solution for an Old Problem.” *The Exceptional Parent* 30 (November 2000) 52-56.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Learning Disabilities Association. 4156 Library Rd., Pittsburgh, PA 15234. (412) 341-1515. <<http://www.ladnatl.org>>.
- National Center for Learning Disabilities. 381 Park Avenue South, Suite 1401, New York, NY 10016. (212) 545-7510. <<http://www.ncld.org>>.

#### OTHER

- Dyslexia Resources on the Web. <<http://home.clara.net/gghrow/subjects/dyslexia.html>>. Extensive links to dyslexia resources; updated frequently.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Reinforcement

### Definition

Reinforcement is an act, process, circumstance, or condition that increases the probability of a person repeating a response. A reinforcer is a stimulus that follows some behavior and increases the probability that the behavior will occur. For example, when teaching a child to clean his room, a parent might reinforce him by giving him a reward for doing so without being reminded. The reward reinforces the desired behavior and increases the probability that the child will clean his room again in the future.

### Description

In psychology, reinforcement is associated with two types of conditioning: classical (or Pavlovian) conditioning and operant (or Skinnerian) conditioning. Operant conditioning is frequently used to increase the frequency of a desired response by developing positive associations between it and a stimulus or reinforcer. **Behavior modification** uses the principles of operant conditioning or other learning techniques to improve symptoms or to increase desired behavior.

In operant conditioning (as developed by B. F. Skinner), positive reinforcers are rewards that strengthen a conditioned response after it has occurred, such as feeding a hungry pigeon after it has pecked a key. Negative reinforcers are stimuli that are removed when the desired response has been obtained. For example, when a rat is receiving an electric shock and presses a bar that stops the shock, the shock is a negative reinforcer—it is an aversive stimulus that reinforces the bar-pressing behavior. The application of negative reinforcement may be divided into two types: escape and avoidance conditioning. In escape conditioning, the subject learns to escape an unpleasant or aversive stimulus (a dog jumps over a barrier to escape electric shock). In avoidance conditioning, the subject is presented with a warning stimulus, such as a buzzer, just before the aversive stimulus occurs and learns to act on it in order to avoid the stimulus altogether.

Punishment can be used to decrease unwanted behaviors. Punishment is the application of an aversive stimulus in reaction to a particular behavior. For children, a punishment could be the removal of television privileges when they disobey their parents or teachers. The removal of the privileges follows the undesired behavior and decreases its likelihood of occurring again.

Reinforcement may be administered according to various schedules. A particular behavior may be reinforced every time it occurs, which is referred to as continuous reinforcement. In many cases, however, behaviors are reinforced only some of the time, which is termed partial or intermittent reinforcement. Reinforcement may also be based on the number of responses, or scheduled at particular time intervals. In addition, it may be delivered in regularly or irregularly. These variables combine to produce four basic types of partial reinforcement. In fixed-ratio (FR) schedules, reinforcement is provided following a set number of responses (a factory worker is paid for every garment he assembles). With variable-ratio (VR) schedules, reinforcement is provided after a variable number of responses (a slot machine pays off after varying numbers of attempts). Fixed-interval (FI) schedules provide for reinforcement of the first response made within a given interval since the previous one (contest entrants are not eligible for a prize if they have won one within the past 30 days). Finally, with variable-interval (VI) schedules, first responses are rewarded at varying intervals from the previous one.

*See also* Behavior modification.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Flora, Stephen Ray. *The Power of Reinforcement*. Albany, NY: Statue University of New York Press, 2004.  
 VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Bogdan, Ryan, and Diego A. Pizzagalli. "Acute Stress Reduces Reward Responsiveness: Implications for Depression." *Biological Psychiatry* 60.10 (Nov. 2006): 1147–54.  
 Dallery, Jesse, Irene M. Glenn, and Bethany R. Raiff. "An Internet-Based Abstinence Reinforcement Treatment for Cigarette Smoking." *Drug and Alcohol Dependence* 86.2–3 (Jan. 2007): 230–38.  
 Doran, Neal, Dennis McChargue, and Lee Cohen. "Impulsivity and the Reinforcing Value of Cigarette Smoking." *Addictive Behaviors* 32.1 (Jan. 2007): 90–98.  
 Fernandez, Melanie A., et al. "The Principles of Extinction and Differential Reinforcement of Other Behaviors in the Intensive Cognitive-Behavioral Treatment of Primarily Obsessional Pediatric OCD." *Clinical Case Studies* 5.6 (Dec. 2006): 511–21.  
 Hand, Dennis J., Andrew T. Fox, and Mark P. Reilly. "Response Acquisition With Delayed Reinforcement in a Rodent Model of Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD)." *Behavioural Brain Research* 75.2 (Dec. 2006): 337–42.

Rieskamp, Jörg. "Positive and Negative Recency Effects in Retirement Savings Decisions." *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied* 12.4 (Dec. 2006): 233–50.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Relapse and relapse prevention

### Definition

In the course of illness, relapse is a return of symptoms after a period of time when no symptoms are present. Any strategies or treatments applied in advance to prevent future symptoms are known as relapse prevention.

### Purpose

When people seek help for mental disorders, they receive treatment that, hopefully, reduces or eliminates symptoms. However, once they leave treatment, they may gradually revert to old habits and ways of living. This results in a return of symptoms known as relapse. Relapse prevention aims to teach people strategies that will maintain the wellness skills they learned while in treatment.

Prevention of relapse in mental disorders is crucial—not only because symptoms are detrimental to quality of life but also because the occurrence of relapse increases chances for future relapses. In addition, with each relapse, symptoms tend to be more severe and have more serious consequences.

### Description

Relapse is a concern with any disorder, whether physical or psychological. Cancer is a prime example of a physical condition where relapse is common, either after a short period or many years of remission (being symptom-free). Psychological disorders can follow a similar pattern, and certain psychological disorders tend to have a higher rate of relapse than others. Addictive disorders, such as alcohol and drug abuse, smoking, overeating, and pathological gambling, are well known for high levels of relapse. Many addictions involve a lifestyle centered around the addictive behavior. In such cases, individuals must not only discontinue the addictive habit, they must also restructure their entire lives in order for changes to last. Such vast changes are difficult at best, approaching impossible in the worst scenarios. For

example, an individual with a drug **addiction** may live in a neighborhood where drugs are prevalent but may lack the resources to move. According to recent statistics, relapse rates are approximately 33% for people who gamble pathologically (within three months of treatment), 90% for people who quit smoking, and 50% for people who abuse alcohol. Within one year of treatment, people struggling with **obesity** typically regain 30% to 50% of the weight they lost.

Affective disorders, such as **depression** and **anxiety**, also have high rates of relapse. People with affective disorders are thought to engage in self-defeating, negative thought patterns that occur more or less automatically. These thought patterns affect behavior, resulting in unproductive or negative consequences. Negative consequences are regarded by such individuals as proof that their original self-defeating thoughts must be correct. The thought-behavior pattern becomes a repetitive cycle, with negative thoughts resulting in negative behavioral outcomes, and consequences of negative behavior encouraging more self-defeating thoughts. This cycle is extremely difficult to break because it becomes a habitual way of responding to the world that occurs almost without awareness. Relapse rates for depression are reportedly as high as 80%.

Relapse among people who commit sex offenses is a constant safety concern for those in the community. However, some statistics show that this population has a very low rate of relapse. A report by Robin J. Wilson and colleagues indicated rates as low as 3.7% to 6.3%. This same report stated that, among various criminal offenses, those who commit sex offenses relapse at lower rates than those who commit general offenses. Other professionals may not necessarily agree with this study, however. Those who commit sex offenses are considered at a higher risk for relapse if they display little insight into the impact of their crime. Those at high risk of committing a sex offense are not typically released back into the community.

For many types of disorders, initial treatment is often effective at eliminating the unwanted behavior. However, these effects are rarely maintained long-term without some type of preventive planning. Results of medications are similar; symptoms are alleviated, but once the medication is discontinued, symptoms return unless the individual has had some type of training in coping with his or her disorder and that training has been effective. There are various forms of relapse prevention training. Most follow a similar pattern with and employ the following common elements:

- Identifying high-risk situations: Symptoms are often initiated by particular times, places, people, or events.

For example, a person with agoraphobia is more likely to experience symptoms of panic in a crowded building. An essential key to preventing relapse is to be aware of the specific situations where one feels vulnerable. These situations are called “triggers,” because they trigger the onset of symptoms. While people with the same mental disorder may share similar triggers, triggers can also be highly individual. People tend to react—sometimes unknowingly—to negative experiences in their past. For example, a woman who was sexually abused as a child may have negative emotions when in the presence of men who resemble her abuser. Because some triggers occur without conscious awareness, individuals may not know all their triggers. Many prevention programs encourage individuals to closely monitor their behavior, reflecting on situations where symptoms occurred and determining what was happening immediately before the onset of symptoms. With this kind of analysis, a pattern often emerges that gives clues about the trigger.

- Learning alternate ways to respond to high-risk situations: Once triggers have been identified, one must find new ways of coping with those situations. The easiest coping mechanism for high-risk situations is to avoid them altogether. This may include avoiding certain people who have a negative influence or avoiding locations where the symptom is likely to occur. In some instances, avoidance is a good strategy. For example, individuals who abuse alcohol may successfully reduce their risk by avoiding bars or parties. In other instances, avoidance is not possible or advisable. For example, individuals attempting to lose weight may notice that they are more likely to binge at certain times during the day. One cannot avoid a time of day. Rather, by being aware of this trigger, one can purposely engage in alternate activities during that time. Strategies for coping with unavoidable triggers are generally skills that need to be learned and practiced in order to be effective. Strategies include—but are not limited to—discussion of feelings, whether with a friend, counselor, or via a hotline; distraction, such as music, exercise, or engaging in a hobby; refocusing techniques, such as meditation, deep-breathing exercises, progressive muscle relaxation (focusing on each muscle group separately, and routinely tensing then relaxing that muscle), prayer, or journaling; and cognitive restructuring, such as positive affirmation statements (such as, “I am worthwhile”), active problem solving (defining the problem, generating possible solutions, identifying the consequences of those solutions, choosing the best solution), challenging the validity of negative thoughts, or guided imagery (imagining oneself in a different place or handling a situation appropriately).

- Creating a plan for healthy living: Besides being prepared for high-risk situations, relapse prevention also focuses on general principles of mental health that, if followed, greatly reduce the likelihood of symptoms. These include factors such as balanced nutrition, regular exercise, sufficient sleep, health education, reciprocally caring relationships, productive and recreational interests, and spiritual development.
- Developing a support system: Many research studies have demonstrated the importance of social support in maintaining a healthy lifestyle. Individuals who are socially isolated tend to display more symptoms of mental disorders. Conversely, individuals with mental disorders tend to have more difficulty initiating and maintaining relationships due to inappropriate social behavior. For such people, a support system may be nonexistent. Research suggests that support systems are most effective when they are naturally occurring—in other words, when a circle of family and friends who genuinely care about the individual is already in place. However, artificially created support systems are certainly better than none at all. For this reason, relapse prevention programs strive to involve family members and other significant persons in the treatment program. Everyone in the support system should be knowledgeable about the person's goals, what that person is like when he or she is doing well, and warning signs that the person may be on a path toward relapse. The support system agrees on who will take what role in encouraging, confronting, or otherwise caring for that person. Self-help groups such as Alcoholics Anonymous or Moderation Management are often examples of artificially created support systems.
- Preparing for possible relapse: Although the ultimate goal of relapse prevention is to avoid relapse altogether, statistics demonstrate that relapse potential is very real. Individuals need to be aware that, even when exerting their best efforts, they may occasionally experience lapses (one occurrence of a symptom or behavior) or relapses (return to a previous, undesirable level of symptoms or behavior). Acknowledging the potential for relapse is important, because many people consider a lapse or relapse as evidence of personal failure and give up completely. In their widely acclaimed book for professionals, *Motivational Interviewing*, William R. Miller and Stephen Rollnick cite a study by Prochaska and DiClemente that found that smokers typically relapse between three and seven times before quitting for good. From the perspective of Miller and Rollnick, each relapse can be a step closer to full recovery if relapse is used as a learning experience to improve prevention strategies. Although

some argue that such a tolerant attitude invites relapse, general consensus is that individuals need to forgive themselves if relapse occurs and then move on. Some prevention programs include designing a crisis plan to be put into effect if a relapse occurs. The crisis plan involves specific actions to be taken by the individual or members of the support system.

These elements are common to all relapse prevention programs, but programs can be further customized to meet the particular characteristics of a disorder. For example, prevention of depression or anxiety may focus on becoming aware of thoughts as passing mental events rather than facts about self or reality. Learning to identify bodily sensations that accompany maladaptive thoughts is also important for preventing depression and anxiety. Addictive disorders concentrate on reactions to social pressure, interpersonal conflicts, and negative emotional states as part of a relapse prevention plan.

## Preparation

As with any type of therapeutic treatment, success of relapse prevention programs depend heavily on motivation. If an individual is not interested in making life changes, he or she is not likely to follow a prevention plan. Individuals low in motivation may need to participate in group or individual **psychotherapy** before deciding whether to enter a relapse prevention program.

## Aftercare

Aftercare typically consists of participation in **support groups**. For addictions, 12-step groups (such as Alcoholics Anonymous) are most commonly recommended. These types of groups can be attended daily. Support groups exist for other types of mental disorders, and may be run by peers or a professional facilitator. Aftercare groups, usually run in treatment facilities by professional staff, may be used to continue practicing skills and to trouble-shoot problems individuals are experiencing with their prevention plans in everyday life. Aftercare groups usually meet less frequently (once a week or month) and may gradually taper off. Some relapse-prevention programs may use telephone contacts or individual therapy sessions to help individuals continue to use prevention skills effectively.

## Normal results

Successful relapse prevention programs will empower individuals to make choices about how they respond in stressful, high-risk situations (triggers)

## KEY TERMS

**Addictive disorder**—A disorder involving repetitive participation in a certain activity, in spite of negative consequences and despite attempts to stop the behavior. Alcohol abuse is an example.

**Affective disorder**—A disorder involving extreme emotional experience that is not congruent with the environmental circumstances (for example, feeling sad when there is no easily identifiable reason, as in depression).

**Cognitive restructuring**—An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping the patient examine distorted patterns of perceiving and thinking in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**Guided imagery**—Techniques where individuals actively imagine themselves in a scene (usually a different location, such as a relaxing beach, or a trigger situation where one handles the situation successfully), typically guided by another person describing the scene.

**Lapse**—A single, isolated occurrence of a symptom or negative behavior.

**Positive affirmation statements**—Statements repeated to oneself, either aloud or mentally, that reflect attitudes of self-worth.

**Progressive muscle relaxation**—Relaxation exercises where one slowly tenses and then relaxes each muscle group separately in a systematic order.

**Refocusing techniques**—Techniques that direct one's attention away from overwhelming, negative thoughts and emotions by focusing on inner peace and managing one issue at a time.

**Remission**—In the course of an illness or disorder, a period of time when symptoms are absent.

**Trigger**—Any situation (people, places, times, events, etc.) that causes one to experience a negative emotional reaction, which is often accompanied by a display of symptoms or problematic behavior.

rather than responding in habitual, unhealthy ways. Individuals should be aware of their personal triggers, use positive strategies for coping with **stress**, practice healthy lifestyle choices, involve others in their efforts, and have a realistic attitude regarding relapse. Use of these prevention skills should reduce symptoms and increase the time span between occurrences of lapses or relapses.

## Abnormal results

If an individual is unmotivated to make life changes, or a relapse prevention program has been ineffective, that individual will demonstrate few (if any) of the prevention skills learned. The individual will show little improvement in symptomatic or problematic behavior. Periods of remission (symptom-free behavior) will be short and relapses will occur frequently.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Anxiety-reduction techniques; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Cognitive problem-solving skills training; Substance abuse and related disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Copeland, Mary Ellen. *Winning Against Relapse: A Workbook of Action Plans for Recurring Health and Emotional Problems*. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 1999.

Miller, William R. and Stephen Rollnick. *Motivational Interviewing: Preparing People to Change Addictive Behavior*. New York: Guilford Press, 1991.

### PERIODICALS

Brandon, Thomas H., Bradley N. Collins, Laura M. Juliano, and Amy B. Lazev. "Preventing Relapse Among Former Smokers: A Comparison of Minimal Interventions Through Telephone and Mail." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 68, no. 1 (2000): 103-113.

Carich, Mark S., and Mark H. Stone. "Using Relapse Intervention Strategies to Treat Sexual Offenders." *Journal of Individual Psychology* 57, no. 1 (2001): 26-36.

Echeburua, Enrique, Javier Fernandez-Montalvo, and Concepcion Baez. "Relapse Prevention in the Treatment of Slot-Machine Pathological Gambling: Long-Term Outcome." *Behavior Therapy* 31, no. 2 (2000): 351-364.

Hartzler, Bryan, and Chris Brownson. "The Utility of Change Models in the Design and Delivery of Thematic Group Interventions: Applications to a Self-Defeating Behaviors Group." *Group Dynamics: Theory, Research, and Practice* 5, no. 3 (2001): 191-199.

Monti, Peter M. and Damaris J. Rohsenow. "Coping Skills Training and Cue-Exposure Therapy in the Treatment of Alcoholism." *Alcohol Research and Health* 23, no. 2 (1999): 107-115.

Perri, Michael G., Arthur M. Nezu, Wendy F. McKelvey, Rebecca L. Shermer, David A. Renjilian, and Barbara J. Viegner. "Relapse Prevention Training and Problem-Solving Therapy in the Long-Term Management of Obesity." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 69, no. 4 (2000): 722-726.

Teasdale, John D., Zindel V. Segal, J. Mark G. Williams, Valerie A. Ridgeway, Judith M. Soulsby, and Mark A. Lau. "Prevention of Relapse/Recurrence in Major Depression by Mindfulness-Based Cognitive Therapy." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 68, no. 4 (2000): 615-623.

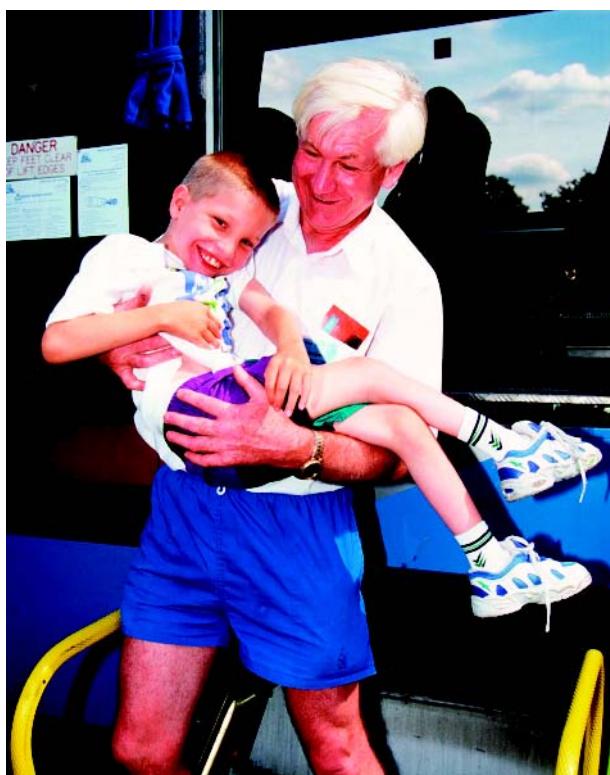
Wilson, Robin J., Lynn Stewart, Tania Stirpe, Marianne Barrett, and Janice E. Cripps. "Community-Based Sex Offender Management: Combining Parole Supervision and Treatment to Reduce Recidivism." *Canadian Journal of Criminology* 42, no. 2 (2000): 177-188.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. 6000 Executive Boulevard, Willco Building, Bethesda, Maryland 20892-7003. <<http://www.niaaa.nih.gov>>.  
 National Institute on Drug Abuse, National Institutes of Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 5213, Bethesda, Maryland 20892-9561. (301) 443-1124. <<http://www.nida.nih.gov>>.  
 National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8194, MSC 9663, Bethesda, Maryland 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

Remeron see **Mirtazapine**



**Caregiver carrying disabled boy off coach at camping holiday for disabled.** (Photofusion Picture Library/Alamy)

## Respite

### Definition

Respite literally means a period of rest or relief. Respite care provides a caregiver temporary relief from the responsibilities of caring for individuals with chronic physical or mental disabilities. Respite care is often referred to as a gift of time.

### Purpose

Respite was developed in response to the **deinstitutionalization** movement of the 1960s and 1970s. Maintaining individuals in their natural homes rather than placing them in long-term care facilities was viewed as beneficial to the individual, the involved family, and society (in terms of lowered health care costs). The primary purpose of respite care is to relieve caregiver **stress**, thereby enabling them to continue caring for the individual with a disability.

Respite care is typically provided for individuals with disorders related to aging (**dementia**, frail health), terminal illnesses, chronic health issues, or developmental disabilities. More recently, children with behavior disorders have also been eligible for respite care. Respite care is usually recreational and does not include therapy or treatment for the individual with the disability.

Caregivers frequently experience stress in the forms of physical **fatigue**, psychological distress (resentment,

frustration, **anxiety**, guilt, **depression**), and disruption in relations with other family members. The emotional aspects of caring for a family member are often more taxing than the physical demands. Increased caregiver stress may result in health problems such as ulcers, high blood pressure, difficulty sleeping, weight loss or gain, or breathing difficulties.

### Types of respite

Length of respite care can be anywhere from a few hours to several weeks. Services may be used frequently or infrequently, such as for emergencies, vacations, one day per week or month, weekends, or everyday.

A variety of facilities provide respite care services. The type of service available is often closely related to the characteristics of the facility, including:

- In-home respite services consist of a worker who comes to the family home while the caregiver is away. These services are usually provided by agencies that recruit, screen, and train workers. This type of respite is usually less disruptive to the individual with the disability, provided there is a good match between the worker and the individual. However, issues of reliability and trustworthiness of the worker can be an additional source of stress for the caregiver.

- Respite centers are residential facilities specifically designed for respite care. Adult day care programs and respite camps also fall into this category. This type of respite offers more peace of mind to the caregiver, and may provide a stimulating environment for the individual with the disability. However, centers usually restrict length of stay and may exclude individuals based on severity of disability.
- Institutional settings sometimes reserve spaces to be used for respite purposes. These include skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities, group homes, senior housing, regular day care or after-school programs for children, and hospitals. Some of these facilities provide higher levels of care, but are less home-like. The individual with the disability may oppose staying in an institutional setting or may fear abandonment.
- Licensed foster care providers can also provide respite services in their homes.

### Funding

Costs of respite care present a financial burden to many families. **Community mental health** centers often fund respite services if the individual meets certain criteria, including eligibility for Medicaid. Wrap-around programs (also accessed through community mental health centers) for children with emotional or behavioral disorders also pay for respite services. Veteran's Administration hospitals provide respite care at little or no charge if the individual receiving the care is a veteran (but not if the caregiver is a veteran). Private insurance companies rarely pay for respite, and many respite providers do not accept this form of payment. Some respite facilities have sliding-scale fees. Other facilities operate as a co-op, where caregivers work at the facility in exchange for respite services.

In addition, respite agencies may have difficulty recruiting and retaining qualified employees, because limited funding prevents agencies from offering desirable salaries. The high turnover and unavailability of employees may result in delays in service delivery or family dissatisfaction with services. Advocacy for policy changes regarding funding is needed.

### Barriers to using respite services

Recent research suggests that families who use respite tend to have higher levels of perceived stress, lower levels of support from others, and fewer resources. In many of these families, the individuals in need of care have more severe disabilities, problem behaviors such as aggression or self-injury, and communica-

### KEY TERMS

**Behavior disorders**—Disorders characterized by disruptive behaviors such as conduct disorder, oppositional defiant disorder, and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.

**Community mental health centers**—Organizations that manage and deliver a comprehensive range of mental health services, education, and outreach to residents of a given community.

**Deinstitutionalization**—The process of moving people out of mental hospitals into treatment programs or halfway houses in local communities. With this movement, the responsibility for care shifted from large (often governmental) agencies to families and community organizations.

**Developmental disabilities**—Disabilities that are present from birth and delay or prevent normal development, such as mental retardation or autism.

**Intermediate care facility**—An inpatient facility that provides periodic nursing care.

**Medicaid**—A program jointly funded by state and federal governments that reimburses hospitals and physicians for the care of individuals who cannot pay for their own medical expenses. These individuals may be in low-income households or may have chronic disabilities.

**Skilled nursing facility**—An inpatient facility that provides 24-hour nursing services to individuals in need of extended care.

**Veteran's Administration hospitals**—Medical facilities operated by the federal government explicitly for veterans of the United States military.

**Wraparound**—A relatively new form of mental health service delivery that strives to accommodate all family members based on self-defined needs, flexibly incorporating both formal and informal community services.

cation difficulties; are school-aged; and are more dependent for basic needs such as eating, toileting, and dressing.

It has been well documented that many families eligible for respite care never utilize these services. Research regarding the use, availability, and effectiveness of respite care is still in the preliminary stages. Various reasons for non-utilization of respite include:

- Unfamiliarity: Some families are unaware that such services exist, or may be uncertain about how to

access services. This implies a need for improved referral services.

- **Funding:** Limited funding may prevent some families from receiving services.
- **Caregiver qualities:** Some caregivers experience guilt or anxiety over allowing someone else to care for their loved one. Being able to maintain one's family independently may be tied to gender roles or cultural customs. Relatives and friends may assist in caregiving, making formal respite unnecessary.
- **Care recipient qualities:** Occasionally the individual with the disability is opposed to respite care. He or she may not trust strangers or may refuse to leave home. In other instances, the individual may have behaviors, or require physical care, that is too challenging for the respite provider.
- **Program qualities:** Many researchers believe that respite programs are not adequately meeting the needs of families. In some cases, times that services are offered are inconvenient. Individuals with severe disabilities who pose the most need for services are sometimes excluded.

Many caregivers obtain respite in informal ways not offered by respite services. Some researchers have suggested that respite care should be just one form of service available to caregivers. Other services that may alleviate caregiver stress could include home-delivered meals, transportation assistance, recreational resources, or care skills training.

*See also* Case management.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Ownby, Lisa L. *Partners Plus: Families and Caregivers in Partnerships: A Family-Centered Guide to Respite Care*. Washington, DC: Child Development Resources, U.S. Department of Education, Office of Educational Research and Improvement, Educational Resources Information Center, 1999.

Tepper, Lynn M. and John A. Toner, eds. *Respite Care: Programs, Problems, and Solutions*. Philadelphia: The Charles Press, 1993.

### PERIODICALS

Chan, Jeffrey B., and Jeff Sigafoos. "A Review of Child and Family Characteristics Related to the Use of Respite Care in Developmental Disability Services." *Child and Youth Care Forum* 29, no. 1 (2000): 27-37.

Chappell, Neena L., R. Colin Reid, and Elizabeth Dow. "Respite Reconsidered: A Typology of Meanings Based on the Caregiver's Point of View." *Journal of Aging Studies* 15, no. 2 (2001): 201-216.

## ORGANIZATIONS

The Arc National Headquarters, P.O. Box 1047, Arlington, Texas 76004. (817) 261-6003; (817) 277-0553 TDD. [thearc@metronet.com](mailto:thearc@metronet.com).<<http://www.thearc.org>>.

ARCH National Respite Network and Resource Center.

Chapel Hill Training-Outreach Project, 800 Eastowne Drive, Suite 105, Chapel Hill, North Carolina 27514. (888) 671-2594; (919) 490-5577. <<http://www.chtop.com>>.

National Aging Information Center. Administration on Aging, 330 Independence Avenue, SW, Room 4656, Washington, DC 20201. (202) 619-7501. <<http://www.aoa.gov/naic>>.

National Information Center for Children and Youth with Disabilities. P.O. Box 1492, Washington, DC 20013. (800)-695-0285. <<http://www.nichcy.org>>.

## OTHER

Senior Care Web. <<http://www2.seniorcareweb.com>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

Response prevention see **Exposure treatment**

Restoril see **Temazepam**

## Rett disorder

### Definition

Rett disorder, which is also known as Rett syndrome or RS, belongs to a group of childhood disorders known as **pervasive developmental disorders** (PDDs) or autistic spectrum disorders. It is classified by the mental health professional's handbook (the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* or the *DSM-IV-TR*) as a developmental disorder of childhood. Rett disorder is characterized by an early-onset slowing of the infant's head growth and a reduction in **brain** size by as much as 30%. It is the leading cause of genetically based profound **mental retardation** in girls.

### Description

RS was first described by an Austrian physician, Andreas Rett, in 1966; prior to 1983, however, little was known about the syndrome because it was quite rare. Although RS was thought at first to result from the destruction or degeneration of brain tissue, genetic research has indicated that it is caused by the failure of the infant's brain to develop normally. This developmental failure is in turn caused by a genetic mutation affecting production of a key protein that regulates brain development. In addition, it was previously

reported only in girls, but males who carry an extra X chromosome with a gene mutation related to the syndrome have also been identified as having characteristics of the disorder.

Rett disorder has a distinctive onset and course. In classic Rett syndrome, which occurs only in girls, the child develops normally during the first 6 to 18 months of life. In many cases, at around the fifth month, head growth slows or stagnates, and she loses whatever purposeful hand movements she had developed. Language and motor skills then regress rapidly. Purposeful hand use gives way to repetitive hand-washing or hand-wringing gestures. **Seizures** occur in up to 90% of affected girls, and 50–80% of children with the disorder will eventually develop epilepsy. Screaming fits and crying are features that arise by age 18 to 24 months. The disorder can also include characteristics of **autism**, tremors, and paniclike attacks. Rett disorder is also associated with severe or profound mental retardation.

Some atypical forms of Rett syndrome, including congenital, late-onset, and preserved-speech Rett, are now being diagnosed as people formerly diagnosed with other disorders, such as autism or learning disability, are confirmed to carry the genetic mutation linked to Rett syndrome. In addition, males who have inherited an extra X chromosome and are carrying the mutation, or in whom the gene is mutated very early in their development, can manifest a form of the disorder. The features of this form of Rett may not be as severe in nature because only some of the person's cells will carry the mutation. Males normally inherit only one X chromosome. Those whose single X chromosome carries the mutation usually have such severe problems at birth that they do not survive into their second year.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

A genetic mutation on the X chromosome is the cause of Rett syndrome. Because only a single copy of this mutated gene is required to give rise to the disease, it is an X-linked, dominant disorder. Given the severity of the features of classic Rett syndrome, it is not surprising that about 99.5% of cases of the syndrome arise from a new mutation in the egg or sperm cell line of a parent, rather than existing in the body cells of the parent. It is possible to be a carrier of an X chromosome with this mutation. Most cells in a woman's body shut down one of her two X chromosomes. If most of the cells shut down the X carrying the disease-causing gene, she will not manifest the severe symptoms and may bear children, who have a 50% chance of inheriting the mutation-carrying X chromo-

some from her. Because Rett disorder usually is the result of a new mutation, however, multiple cases in a single family are rare, but if a mother is found to be an unaffected carrier or the couple has a child with the condition, prenatal testing is available.

The gene that causes Rett syndrome is MECP2, which lies on the long arm of the X chromosome. The protein it encodes is required for life and necessary for appropriate brain development. Its job is to turn off certain genes at specific developmental periods or to ensure that the correct form of a particular protein is made. Thus, its job in the brain is regulatory, and when it does not function right, the development of the brain does not occur in an appropriately regulated manner. The genes with which it interacts are thought to relate to nerve cell signaling, and the protein that MECP2 encodes exists at high levels in normal nerve cells. In its absence, the parts of the brain responsible for emotion, sensing, and movement do not communicate correctly with one another. As a result, affected parts of the brain exist in a permanently infantile developmental state.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of Rett disorder have been described in terms of four stages in the child's development.

**STAGE 1, EARLY ONSET (6–18 MONTHS OF AGE).** The early symptoms of RS are not always noticeable in Stage 1. The infant may not make eye contact with family members and may not show much interest in toys. She may be considered a "good baby" because she is so calm and quiet. On the other hand, there may be noticeable hand-wringing and slowing of head growth.

**STAGE 2, RAPID DETERIORATION (1–4 YEARS OLD).** This stage may be either rapid or gradual in onset. The child loses her ability to speak and to make purposeful hand movements. Hand-to-mouth movements may appear, as well as hand-wringing or hand-clapping gestures. These movements may be nearly constant while the child is awake but disappear during sleep. There may be noticeable episodes of breath holding and hyperventilating (rapid shallow breathing). The child may have trouble sleeping, and may become irritable. If she is able to walk, she will start to look unsteady on her feet and may have periods of trembling or shaking. Slowed growth of the head is usually most noticeable during this stage.

**STAGE 3, PLATEAU (2–10 YEARS).** Motor problems and seizures often appear during this stage. The child's behavior, however, often shows some improvement, with less irritability and crying. She may show greater interest in her surroundings, and her attention span and

**communication skills** often improve. Many patients with RS remain in stage 3 for most of their lives.

**STAGE 4, LATE DETERIORATION OF MOTOR SKILLS (USUALLY AFTER 10 YEARS OF AGE).** In stage 4, patients with RS gradually lose their mobility; some stop walking while others have never learned to walk. There is, however, no loss of cognitive or communication skills, and the repetitive hand movements may decrease. The spine begins to develop an abnormal sideways curvature (scoliosis), and the patient may develop muscle rigidity. Puberty begins at the same age as in most girls.

## Demographics

RS is less common than the other PDDs. Recent estimates of its prevalence range between 1:10,000 births and 1:15,000 female births. Little is known about its prevalence across different racial and ethnic groups.

## Diagnosis

Rett syndrome can be diagnosed based on either the diagnostic criteria established in the *DSM-IV-TR* or based on testing of the MECP2 gene for mutations. Molecular analysis of the MECP2 gene for mutations will identify at least four out of five females who have classic Rett disorder.

Diagnoses based on *DSM-IV-TR* criteria are made after observation of the child—usually over a period of several hours or days—and interviews with the parents. The **diagnosis** can be made by a pediatrician or primary care physician, but should be confirmed by a pediatric neurologist (specialist in disorders of the nervous system in children) or developmental pediatrician. After the examiner has excluded the possibility of other developmental disorders, there are six criteria that must be met for a diagnosis of the classic form of Rett disorder, and a secondary group of supportive criteria that are frequently observed in RS patients but are not necessary to make the diagnosis.

### Diagnostic criteria according to the *DSM-IV-TR*

The diagnostic criteria for RS include the following:

- a period of apparently normal development before 6–18 months of age
- a normal-sized head at birth followed by slowing of head growth between 5 months and 4 years
- severe impairment in the use of language and loss of purposeful hand motion

- repetitive hand movements that include one or more of the following: hand-washing, hand-wringing, or hand-clapping gestures
- shaking of the chest or torso, particularly when the child is agitated or upset
- in children able to walk, an unsteady, stiff-legged, wide-based gait

### Supportive criteria

Supportive criteria are criteria that are not essential to the diagnosis of a particular disorder (because some people with the disorder do not have them). Supportive criteria are nonetheless strong evidence that a person who exhibits these criteria does in fact have the disorder. Supportive criteria for Rett disorder include:

- dysfunctional breathing, which may include hyperventilation, breath holding, and air swallowing
- abnormal electroencephalogram (EEG) patterns
- seizures
- difficulties in chewing and swallowing
- constipation
- muscle rigidity and contracting of the joints that increase with age
- scoliosis (curvature of the spine from side to side)
- teeth grinding (bruxism)
- small feet in relation to overall height
- slow overall growth
- loss of body fat and muscle mass
- abnormal sleeping patterns combined with irritability or agitation
- poor circulation in the feet and legs

These supportive criteria do not always appear in young children with RS but are often observed as the child grows older.

### Variant Rett syndrome

Because genetic testing has revealed some gradations in the manifestation of Rett syndrome, there also is a list of suggested criteria for the variant form of the condition. These include a set of main criteria, of which three must be met:

- reduction or lack of hand skills
- reduction or complete loss of speech, including infant babble
- presence of stereotyped hand movements
- lost or diminished communication abilities
- slowed head growth from early childhood
- regression that is followed by recovery of interaction.

There are also 11 suggested supportive criteria for the variant form of Rett disorder, with the dictate that at least 5 must be present:

- breathing irregularities
- bruxism
- abnormal locomotion
- spinal deformity that results in a hunched appearance (kyphosis) or scoliosis (curvature of the spine)
- loss of muscle in the lower limbs
- feet that are cold, discolored, and small
- Sleep disturbances, including nighttime screaming
- unexpected episodes of screaming or laughing
- the appearance of a reduced awareness of pain
- intense eye contact

### Treatments

There is no single treatment regimen that is applicable to all patients with Rett disorder. A suite of therapies that may be useful will include speech, occupational, and physical therapy. While these therapies will not cure Rett, they may help ameliorate some aspects of the disorder. Some patients benefit from medications for muscular rigidity or for specific mood or behavioral problems, such as **anxiety** or irritability. Because of the increased risk of a potentially deadly irregular heartbeat, females with RS should avoid drugs that can exacerbate the problem, including antipsychotics, anesthetics, and some antibiotics. A child **psychiatrist** should be consulted in regard to medications.

Parents of children with RS, however, are often helped by supportive therapy groups for parents of children with PDDs. Another type of program that is helpful for parents is learning skills for coping with the behaviors of RS children. These programs are usually led by a behavioral **psychologist**.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for RS patients is poor. In most cases, there is a steady loss of cognition, and of movement-related, social, and behavioral skills throughout the patient's lifetime. Some patients, however, make modest developmental gains in adolescence. The average life expectancy of patients with RS has not yet been determined, although some are presently middle-aged. Females with the classic form of Rett syndrome usually live to adulthood, but there is a high incidence of sudden death among this group, possibly because of irregular heartbeat.

## KEY TERMS

**Hyperventilation**—A pattern of rapid, shallow breathing that is frequently found in patients with Rett disorder.

**Mosaicism**—A genetic condition in which some cells in an organism have one set of chromosomes and other cells have a different set.

**Mutation**—A spontaneous change in the sequence of nucleotides in a chromosome or gene. Mutations may affect the number and structure of chromosomes or cause deletions of part of a chromosome. Rett disorder is caused by a mutation on the long arm of the X chromosome.

**Pervasive developmental disorders (PDDs)**—A category of childhood disorders that includes Asperger's syndrome and Rett disorder. The PDDs are sometimes referred to collectively as autistic spectrum disorders.

**Scoliosis**—An abnormal lateral (sidewise) curvature of the spine. Many patients with RS develop scoliosis after puberty.

Children who have RS can and do attend school. Some attend special school targeting children with their disabilities, while others attend neighborhood schools and participate in the general classroom environment. In the United States, the Individuals with Disabilities Education act ensures that children can be eligible for early **intervention** services in a Birth-to-Three program if they are diagnosed before the age of three.

### Prevention

Because most cases result from new mutations of the MECP2 gene rather than transmission of a defective gene from the parents, there are no known strategies for preventing Rett disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed, Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Beers, Mark H., MD, and Robert Berkow, MD, eds. "Psychiatric Conditions in Childhood and Adolescence." *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, section 19, chapter 274. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Thoene, Jess G., ed. *Physicians' Guide to Rare Diseases*. Montvale, NJ: Dowden Publishing Company, 1995.

**PERIODICALS**

- Bradbury, Jane. "Advance Made in Understanding Rett's Syndrome." *Neurology, The Lancet* 4 (2005): 83.
- Gura, T. "Gene Defect Linked to Rett Syndrome." *Science* 286 (Oct. 1, 1999): 27.
- Jan, M., J. M. Dooley, and K. E. Gordon. "A Male Rett Syndrome Variant: Application of Diagnostic Criteria." *Pediatric Neurology* 20 (1999): 238–40.
- Rett Syndrome Diagnostic Criteria Work Group. "Diagnostic Criteria for Rett Syndrome." *Annals of Neurology* 23 (1988): 425–28.
- Smith, Jill C., MD. "Rett Syndrome in Boys." *The Rett Gazette* (Winter 2001): 1–2.
- Viola, Angele, and others. "Metabolic Fingerprints of Altered Brain Growth, Osmoregulation and Neurotransmission in a Rett Syndrome Model." *PLOS One* 1 (2007): e157. An open access journal. <<http://www.plosone.org/article/fetchArticle.action?articleURI=info:doi/10.1371/journal.pone.0000157>>.

**ORGANIZATIONS**

- Angelman, Rett and Prader-Willi Syndromes Consortium Registry, Department of Molecular and Human Genetics, Baylor College of Medicine, One Baylor Plaza Room T619, Houston, TX 77030. Telephone: (713) 798-4795. Fax: (713) 798-7773. <<http://rarediseasesnetwork.epi.usf.edu/arpwsc/takeaction/registrymenu.htm>>.
- Institute for Community Inclusion/UAP, 300 Longwood Avenue, Boston, MA 02115. Telephone: (617) 355-6506. TTY (617) 355-6956. E-mail: [ici@a1.tch.harvard.edu](mailto:ici@a1.tch.harvard.edu).
- International Rett Syndrome Association (IRSA), 9121 Piscataway Road, Suite 2-B, Clinton, MD 20735. Telephone: (301) 856-3334 or (800) 818-RETT. Fax: (301) 856-3336. <[www.rettsyndrome.org](http://www.rettsyndrome.org)>.
- National Association of Rare Disorders (NORD), P.O. Box 8923, New Fairfield, CT 06812-8923. (800) 999-NORD or (203) 746-6518.
- Rett Syndrome Research Foundation (RSRF), 4600 Devitt Drive, Cincinnati, OH 45246. <<http://www.rsrfg.org>>, Telephone: 513-874-3020, Fax: 513-874-2520.

**OTHER**

- Christodoulou, John. GeneReviews: MECP2-Related Disorders. 2006. <<http://www.genetests.org/query?dz=rett>>.
- "Gene Today, Gone Tomorrow." Baylor College of Medicine press release, September 30, 1999.
- National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. "Rett Syndrome Fact Sheet." <[http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/rett/detail\\_rett.htm](http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/rett/detail_rett.htm)>
- U.S. National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Genetics Home Reference: Rett Syndrome." <<http://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition=rettsyndrome;jsessionid=0C7A791853D2568842D352702348D9D3>>.
- Willard, Huntington F., and Brian D. Hendrich. "Breaking the Silence in Rett Syndrome." Manuscript circulated by the Department of Genetics, Center for Human

Genetics, Case Western Reserve University and University Hospitals of Cleveland, OH, January 2002.

The U.S. government provides a database of ongoing clinical trials, including those that address Rett's. To see which trials are ongoing, visit the Web site at <<http://clinicaltrials.gov/ct/search;jsessionid=7EA72CF4829AFE0ACE3A61A70A84DB38?term=rett%27s>>.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

Revia see **Naltrexone**

## Reward deficiency syndrome (RDS)

**Definition**

Reward Deficiency Syndrome, or RDS, is related to a number of mental health disorders, rather than standing alone as a separate and distinct mental illness. The mental illnesses to which RDS is related include a wide range of addictions, compulsive behaviors, and impulsive behaviors. Reward Deficiency syndrome refers to the breakdown of the reward cascade, and resultant aberrant conduct, due to genetic and environmental influences. RDS is a DNA-related gene and chromosome type of syndrome that interferes with the usual achievement of human physiological drives such as food, water, and sexual reproduction. The A1 (minor) allele of the D2 **dopamine** receptor (DRD2) gene has been shown to be associated with alcoholism, particularly its severe form, as well as with smoking, **obesity**, and other addictive behaviors.

**Addiction** is a **brain** disorder that causes the compulsive and continued use of and cravings for substances, regardless of negative consequences. These behaviors are related to neurotransmitter dysregulation, notably that of dopamine and serotonin. Addiction, along with **compulsion**, affects the nucleus accumbens, the part of the brain that produces pleasure. Because of its biologic basis, these behaviors are chronic with a propensity toward **relapse**. Addiction/compulsion causes loss of control over alcohol, **nicotine**, and substance use, so that uncontrollable behaviors occur more quickly as this mental disorder progresses. The name for this particular pattern is Reward Deficiency Syndrome. Defined by pharmacology professor Kenneth Blum in the 1990s, RDS arises in the human genetic units labeled the D2 (dopamine) receptor and the A1 allele. RDS is also linked to such illnesses as attention deficit hyperactivity disorder and

Tourette's syndrome, **conduct disorder**, obesity, gambling, **post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD), and **pre-menstrual syndrome** (PMS).

## Description

In the 1950s, researchers experimented placing electrodes into a rat's brain. They discovered that the rat chose pressing a lever attached to the electrodes to provide brain stimulation, even over the basic needs of food and water. This suggested that the implanted brain area is the "pleasure center" of the brain. It contains the nucleus accumbens, a brain structure related to addictions, but also interestingly relevant to processing the rewards of food, sex, and video games (a modern addiction in some individuals). Neurologic reward pathways are very important to human survival, because they provide the drives for pleasure that require eating, love/sex, and reproduction for species survival. These natural rewards facilitate the release of dopamine in both the brain's nucleus accumbens and frontal lobes.

Pharmacologist Kenneth Blum found that individuals with RDS generally possess a specific chromosome sequence in their DNA. This sequence is most often the A1 allele, D2 dopamine receptor. People with this sequence have 20% to 30% fewer D2 reward receptors than in the general population. This makes it more difficult for the pleasure drives to be met, forcing the individuals into high-risk behaviors to gain that fulfillment. In addition, people with the A1 allele are 74% more likely to have one or more of several RDS-related mental illnesses. These illnesses are related to addictions, compulsive behaviors, and impulsive behaviors.

Listed in the 2000 edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual (DSM-IV)* of the American Psychiatric Association, disorders that stem from RDS include alcohol **abuse**, **substance abuse**, nicotine/tobacco use, compulsive disorder, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, conduct disorder, **antisocial personality disorder**, obesity, PTSD, and PMS. Such individuals need to stimulate themselves in abundance simply to feel normal. Alcohol and drugs used for stimulation of the pleasure center injures a person's dopamine and endorphin system even more. With each use of drugs or alcohol, the difference between feeling high or even "normal" and being sober becomes larger and larger. Staying sober becomes boring and results in an overarching **anxiety** and irritability. To alleviate these bad feelings, these individuals often turn back to alcohol and drugs, sometimes overdosing and accidentally or purposefully dying in the process.

## Prevalence

It is difficult to estimate the prevalence of RDS among the American population of 300 million, because of its many manifestations. Not only alcohol and substance use disorders but also tobacco/nicotine use, schizoid/avoidant behavior, PTSD, ADHD, Tourette's syndrome, aggression, obesity and aberrant weight gain, PMS, and perhaps other mental disorders all fall under the RDS umbrella.

Because the prevalence of co-occurring disorders has increased in the last 30 years, the overall prevalence of RDS has also increased, being related to co-occurring disorders (always including substance/alcohol abuse). Further, the co-occurrence of mental illness and substance abuse itself is found in 50% of all individuals suffering from any of the severe mental disorders (SMDs). Therefore, RDS is related to these 50% of cases, possibly a proportion of the other 50% of SMDs, and to the further problems associated with substance and alcohol abuse and impulsive and compulsive behaviors: higher rates of relapse and **hospitalization**, incarceration, violence, **homelessness**, **suicide**, and exposure to infections such as HIV and hepatitis. It is not known how many Americans with obesity and other above-mentioned disorders are RDS-connected, in the absence of genetic testing.

## Demographics

Children of alcohol-addicted or substance-addicted individuals are more highly at risk for developing alcohol use and substance use disorders than the general population. Thus, they are more likely to suffer from RDS. There is also evidence of the hereditary nature of some other RDS-related illnesses, especially morbid obesity, attention deficit (ADD/ADHD), and PMS.

Disruptive behavior disorders such as conduct disorder in youth and antisocial personality disorder in adults are related to RDS. The youth-related disorders frequently coexist with substance abuse problems. Other groups that may be affected by RDS are older adults with mood/anxiety disorders who self-medicate in grieving the losses of old age, incarcerated populations, the homeless, and those with eating disorders. Because obesity includes growing proportions of Americans from all demographic classifications in recent decades, and RDS is related to some of these cases, then RDS may affect all demographic designations, but further research is needed to clarify this with certainty.

## Assessment

A thorough multi-discipline assessment is used to establish an individualized treatment plan for alcohol and substance abuse clients and should be used with RDS-related disorders. In addition, it is becoming increasingly important to establish gene involvement via genetic testing. This process begins with a clinical interview of the patient and family, which is vital in recognizing behavior patterns. A number of substance abuse checklists can help determine the presence of a substance abuse disorder. Genetic testing can establish the physical basis for RDS-related disorders. Mental health tests can uncover psychiatric illnesses. These tests include the **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory** (MMPI), Rorschach inkblot, and other personality and projective tests.

## Treatment

Kenneth Blum was awarded U.S. Patent Number 6955873 for *Diagnosis and treatment system for reward deficiency syndrome (RDS) and related behaviors* on October 18, 2005. The diagnostic technique includes four kits for obtaining buccal (inner cheek) swabs for the following primary clusters of disorders: 1) neurotransmitter, tryptophan, and opiate related problems in RDS behaviors, 2) the same problems in relation to weight gain, 3) allele analysis for attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, and 4) substance use disorders (SUDs), obesity, smoking, Tourette's syndrome, schizoid/avoidant behavior, aggression, post-traumatic **stress** disorder (PTSD), and PMS.

In addition to swabs, the diagnosis includes the RDS Inventory Scale test, patented under this patent number. Upon analysis of the results of the swab or swabs obtained from a single client, the physician may or may not administer the patented medication formula via injection or oral ingestion for each kit that suggests treatment. Other treatments include a range of psychiatric medications and talking therapies, as well as holistic multidisciplinary techniques traditionally used for RDS-related mental illnesses before genetic testing and Blum's treatment process was established.

## Prognosis

Education, prevention, and early diagnosis are all vital to the mental health of individuals who may be at risk for RDS-related disorders. In particular, the earlier that alcohol and substance use disorders can be diagnosed, the better are the chances for successful treatment. Genetic testing for the A1D2 sequence of RDS is available and can be used in early diagnosis in infants and youth.

## KEY TERMS

**A1 allele**—An allele related to RDS.

**A1 D2**—A chromosome sequence related to RDS.

**Allele**—One member of a pair or a series of genes that occupy a specific position on a specific chromosome.

**D2**—A dopamine receptor.

**Dopamine**—The neurotransmitter responsible for desire.

**Frontal lobes**—The large lobes at the front of the brain responsible for reasoning, problem-solving, and logic.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical that relays and amplifies electric signals between brain and central nervous system cells (neurons).

**Nucleus accumbens**—A structure deep inside and near the center of the brain that makes up a major part of the pathway of pleasure and reward.

**Serotonin**—The neurotransmitter responsible for satisfaction and inhibition.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

Baicy, Kate. "Can Food Be Addictive? Insights on Obesity from Neuroimaging and Substance Abuse Treatment and Research." *Nutrition Noteworthy* 7.1 (2005): article 4.

Blum, K., et al. "Genotrimtrade Mark, a DNA-Customized Nutrigenomic Product, Targets Genetic Factors of Obesity: Hypothesizing a Doamine-Glucose Correlation Demonstrating Reward Deficiency Syndrome (RDS)." *Medical Hypotheses* 68.4 (2006): 844–52.

Blum K., et al. "Reward Deficiency Syndrome in Obesity: A Preliminary Cross-Sectional Trial with a Genotrim Variant." *Advances in Therapy* 23.6 (2006): 1040–51.

Blum K., et al. "Reward Deficiency Syndrome." *American Scientist* 84.4 (1996): 132–45.

Bowirrat, A., and Oscar-Berman, M. "Relationship between Dopaminergic Neurotransmission, Alcoholism, and Reward Deficiency Syndrome." *American Journal Of Medical Genetics. Part B, Neuropsychiatric Genetics: the Official Publication of the International Society of Psychiatric Genetics* 132.1 (2005): 29–37.

Cohen, J. D., and K. I. Blum. "Reward and Decision." *Neuron* 36 (Oct. 2002): 193–98.

Comings, D. E., T. J. H. Chen, K. Blum, J. F. Mengucci, S. H. Blum, and B. Meshkin. "Neurogenetic Interactions and Aberrant Behavioral Co-morbidity of Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder (ADHD): Dispelling Myths." *Theoretical Biology and Medical*

- Modelling* 2.50 (2005): <<http://www.tbiomed.com/content/pdf/1742-4682-2-50.pdf>>.
- Dick, Danielle M., PhD, Richard J. Rose, PhD, and Jaakko Kaprio, MD, PhD. "The Next Challenge for Psychiatric Genetics: Characterizing the Risk Associated with Identified Genes." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.4 (2006): 223–31.
- Eisenberg, D. J. MacKill, M. Modi, J. Beauchemin, D. Dang, S. Lisman, J. K. Lum, and D. Wilson. "Examining Impulsivity as an Endophenotype Using a Behavioral Approach: A DRD2 TaqI A and DRD4 48-bp VNTR Association Study." *Behavioral and Brain Functions* 3.2 (2007): <<http://www.behavioralandbrainfunctions.com/content/pdf/1744-9081-3-2.pdf>>.
- Linazaro, G., N. van Biercom, and A. Lasa. "Hypothesis: Parkinson's Disease, Reward Deficiency Syndrome and Addictive Effects of Levodopa." *Neurologia* 19.3 (2004): 117–27.
- Ponce, G., M. A. Jimenez-Arriero, G. Rubio, J. Hoenicka, I. Ampuero, J. A. Ramos, T. Palomo. "The A1 Allele of the DRD2 Gene (TaqI A polymorphisms) is Associated with Antisocial Personality in a Sample of Alcohol-Dependent Patients." *European Psychiatry* 18.7 (2003): 356–60.
- Schultz, W. "Behavioral Theories and the Neurophysiology of Reward." *Annual Review of Psychology* 57 (2006): 87–115.
- Shaffer, H. J., PhD, CAS, D. A. LaPlante, PhD, R. A. LaBrie, EDD, R. C. Kidman, BA, N. A. Donato, MPP, and M. V. Stanton, BA. "Toward a Syndrome Model of Addiction: Multiple Expressions, Common Etiology." *Harvard Review Psychiatry*. 12.6 (2004): 367–74.
- Volkow, N. D., G. Wang, J. S. Fowler, P. K. Thanos, J. Logan, S. J. Gatley, A. Gifford, Y. Ding, C. Wong, and N. Pappas. "Rain DA D2 Receptors Predict Reinforcing Effects of Stimulants in Humans: Replication Study." *Synapse* 46.2 (2002): 79–82.
- Wang, G., N. D. Volkow, P. K. Thanos, and J. S. Fowler. "Similarity Between Obesity and Drug Addiction as Assessed by Neurofunctional Imaging: A Concept Review." *Journal of Addictive Diseases* 23.3 (2004): 39–53.

## ORGANIZATION

The American Psychiatric Association, 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA 22209-3901. Telephone: (703) 907-7300. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Patty Inglish, MS

## Riluzole

### Purpose

Riluzole (brand name Rilutek), is a member of the benzothiazole class of drugs, and is the only medication that has been proven effective for treating amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS or Lou Gehrig's disease,

a degenerative disease that affects neurons in the **brain** and spinal cord). Research indicates that the neuro-protective properties of riluzole might also make it useful for treating **depression**, although it is not approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for that purpose.

### Description

Riluzole acts on glutamate, an excitatory amino acid neurotransmitter that carries messages to and from nerve cells in the brain. Glutamate is part of the glutamatergic system, which plays a role in memory and information processing. An excess of glutamate is believed to lead to ALS symptoms. Abnormal glutamate levels have also been implicated in depression and other mood disorders. In animal studies, for example, increased glutamate in the brain was associated with feelings of **anxiety** and fear. Riluzole works by blocking the release of glutamate in the brain. Riluzole also inhibits sodium channels and activates potassium channels leading to alterations in calcium currents. The mechanism responsible for any effect on ALS or depression symptoms may be a combination of an effect on glutamate release and these other effects.

Although **antidepressants** are the mainstay of treatment for mood disorders, studies indicate that about 30% to 40% of patients do not respond to them. Therefore, researchers are investigating new therapeutic agents that are more effective with fewer adverse effects. Preliminary studies have demonstrated the effectiveness of riluzole for treating major depression, **bipolar disorder**, and **generalized anxiety disorder**. A study published in December 2005 in the *American Journal of Psychiatry* found that riluzole was effective in achieving remission in about half of a group of adults who had been diagnosed with generalized anxiety disorder. In a 2004 study that was published in February 2005 in *Biological Psychiatry*, riluzole improved symptoms in patients with treatment-resistant depression (depression that had not responded to antidepressant medications). Riluzole also was well tolerated in these studies.

Researchers say larger, placebo-controlled trials are needed to confirm the results of these preliminary investigations. As of January 2007, new research was underway, including controlled studies investigating the potential effects of riluzole on the treatment of bipolar disorder. Research also indicates that riluzole might be effective for the treatment of obsessive-compulsive and panic disorders, but further study is needed for confirmation.

## Recommended dosage

Because riluzole is not yet FDA-approved for treating mood disorders (as of 2007), appropriate doses have only been described in research studies. In studies, patients have been given between 50 and 200 milligrams of riluzole per day.

## Precautions

Because riluzole blocks the release of the excitatory neurotransmitter, glutamate, this drug can cause drowsiness. Patients are advised to use caution when driving or operating machinery. Alcohol can increase this side effect, and people who are taking the drug should therefore avoid or use alcohol in moderation. Women who are pregnant, plan to become pregnant, or are breastfeeding should let their doctor know before taking this medication. Smoking cigarettes can decrease the effectiveness of this medication by causing the body to eliminate riluzole more quickly.

People who have liver dysfunction should use caution when taking this drug, because it may not metabolize properly. Researchers who have studied the drug recommend that patients who are taking it be monitored for potential liver function problems.

## Side effects

The side effects most commonly reported with riluzole include:

- abdominal pain
- constipation
- decreased saliva
- diarrhea
- dizziness
- drowsiness
- dry mouth
- headache
- insomnia
- muscle weakness
- nausea
- vertigo
- vomiting

These symptoms may be lessened by lowering the dose.

## Interactions

The following drugs may decrease the rate at which riluzole is eliminated, which could potentially cause a buildup of the drug in the body:

- amitriptyline
- caffeine

## KEY TERMS

**Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS or Lou Gehrig's disease)**—A degenerative disease that affects nerves of the brain and spinal cord, and results in eventual paralysis.

**Bipolar disorder**—A brain disorder that causes rapid mood shifts.

**Generalized anxiety disorder**—A mental disorder characterized by excessive and uncontrollable worry.

**Glutamate**—An excitatory amino acid neurotransmitter that carries messages to and from nerve cells in the brain.

**Glutamatergic system**—The neurotransmitter system in the central nervous system that plays a role in memory formation and information processing, and that is believed to play a role in depression and other mood disorders.

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—A disorder marked by persistent thoughts or fears, which lead to the compulsion to repeat a particular task over and over again.

- phenacetin
- quinolones
- theophylline

Conversely, the following substances may increase the rate at which riluzole is eliminated from the body, potentially reducing its effectiveness:

- cigarettes
- charcoal-grilled foods
- barbituates
- rifampicin

## Resources

### BOOKS

Mondimore, Francis Mark. *Bipolar Disorder: A Guide for Patients and Families*, 2nd ed. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 2006.

Ropper, Allan, MD, and Robert H. Brown, MD. *Adams and Victor's Principles of Neurology*. 8th ed. New York: The McGraw Hill Companies, 2005.

Swartz, Karen L., MD. *Johns Hopkins White Papers: Depression and Anxiety*. New York: Medletter Associates, 2005.

## PERIODICALS

- Sanjay, Mathew J., MD, and others. "Open-label Trial of Riluzole in Generalized Anxiety Disorder." *American Journal of Psychiatry*. 162.12 (Dec. 2005): 2379–81.
- Zarate, Carlos A., Jr., and others. "An Open-label Trial of the Glutamate-modulating Agent Riluzole in Combination with Lithium for the Treatment of Bipolar Depression." *Biological Psychiatry*. 57.4 (15 Feb. 2005): 430–32.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association, 1000 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 1825, Arlington, VA 22209-3901, (703) 907-7300. <<http://www.psych.org>>
- The Mental Health Research Association, 60 Cutter Mill Road, Suite 404, Great Neck, NY 11021, (800) 829-8289. <<http://www.narsad.org>>
- National Alliance on Mental Illness, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042, (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>
- National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663, (866) 615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>

Stephanie N. Watson

Risperdal see **Risperidone**

## Risperidone

### Definition

Risperidone is classified as an atypical antipsychotic drug. It is sold in the United States under the brand name of Risperdal.

### Purpose

Risperidone is used for the management of symptoms of psychotic disorders such as **schizophrenia**.

### Description

Risperidone is an atypical antipsychotic agent for two reasons. First, it is chemically unrelated to the older antipsychotic drugs. Second, unlike older antipsychotic drugs that primarily inhibit the actions of **dopamine**, a chemical in the **brain**, risperidone may also have some action against another brain chemical, serotonin. The proper level of both dopamine and serotonin are influential in maintaining mental well-being.

An advantage of using risperidone over one of the older antipsychotic drugs is a lower incidence of parkinsonian-like side effects. These side effects may be

sufficiently troublesome, causing patients to discontinue treatment for their schizophrenia. For this reason, patients who have had negative experiences with older antipsychotics may benefit from risperidone. Also, some patients who showed little improvement with older antipsychotic drugs respond better to risperidone.

Recently, the effectiveness of risperidone was evaluated in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study. This study evaluated the effectiveness and side effects of newer antipsychotic drugs (sometimes referred to as atypical antipsychotics)—including risperidone—in comparison to a conventional antipsychotic drug in the treatment of schizophrenia.

Contrary to expectations, the study found that the conventional antipsychotic generally was equally effective and tolerated as well as the newer, more expensive, atypical antipsychotic medications. The study also showed that risperidone and **olanzapine** tend to be better tolerated than the other atypical antipsychotics investigated, although only 35% of participants on risperidone were able to continue taking it throughout the entire 18 months of the study. Participants who stopped taking their antipsychotic medication in Phase 1 because it was not adequately controlling their symptoms were more likely to stay on their medication if they were switched to risperidone or olanzapine than to **quetiapine** or **ziprasidone**. There was no difference between the four medications tested in Phase 2, however, for participants who had stopped taking their Phase 1 medication because they experienced adverse side effects.

In Phase 2 of the study, **clozapine** was more effective in controlling symptoms than the other atypical antipsychotics under evaluation. For patients whose symptoms are not well controlled on clozapine, risperidone and olanzapine tend to be more effective than ziprasidone or quetiapine.

The CATIE study did not reveal a clear path of next treatment for those patients who had discontinued use of an antipsychotic due to adverse side effects. In such cases, it is important to balance the degree of symptom control from the drug with the nature of its side effects. Of the drugs evaluated, risperidone had the least adverse side effects.

### Recommended dosage

Risperidone is available in 0.25-mg, 0.5-mg, 1-mg, 2-mg, 3-mg, and 4-mg tablets and a solution containing 1 mg of drug in each milliliter of solution. For treating psychotic disorders in adults, the usual starting dose of risperidone is 1 mg twice daily. Dosage is increased gradually until a target dose of 3 mg twice

daily is reached. Some patients do just as well with a single daily dose (6 mg once a day, for example). There is little clinical evidence to indicate that increasing the daily dose beyond 8 mg offers additional benefit. However, higher doses may contribute to additional side effects. If the dose needs to be adjusted, the changes should be made no more often than once per week.

In older patients (over age 60), starting dosage should not exceed 1 mg daily. Most patients should not take more than 3 mg daily. People with low blood pressure and those who have kidney disease should take a similarly reduced dose.

### Precautions

Patients with a history of cardiovascular disease or low blood pressure should take risperidone only after discussing the risks and benefits with their physicians, and then with close physician monitoring.

Risperidone has occasionally been associated with **seizures**. People with a past history of seizures should discuss with their doctors whether risperidone is the right antipsychotic for them to use.

People taking risperidone should avoid operating a motor vehicle or other dangerous machinery until they see how risperidone affects them.

Some people have trouble regulating their body temperatures while taking risperidone. Patients receiving this drug should be aware of this and avoid extremes in outdoor temperatures.

### Side effects

The most common and bothersome side effect associated with risperidone is decreased blood pressure while standing up (known as orthostatic hypotension). This can cause dizziness or fainting. A decrease in blood pressure usually occurs early in therapy, while the proper dose is being established. It is more common in older patients than in younger ones. Usually this side effect disappears entirely with time. If it continues, the physician may decrease the dose. Meanwhile, people taking risperidone should be aware of this side effect and get up slowly if they have been sitting for an extended time.

The most common nervous system side effects of risperidone include **insomnia**, agitation, **anxiety**, and headache. Early in therapy, patients may experience an inability to think clearly or perform certain tasks that require mental alertness. High doses of risperidone can cause unwanted sleepiness in about 40% of patients.

## KEY TERMS

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. Antipsychotics may be used to treat symptoms in other disorders as well.

**Atypical antipsychotic**—A newer antipsychotic drug that is less likely to cause significant adverse side effects than conventional antipsychotic medications. Atypical antipsychotics are also called novel antipsychotics or second-generation antipsychotics.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Parkinsonian**—Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

Antipsychotic drugs, including risperidone, can cause side effects that are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease. The patient does not have Parkinson's disease, but may have shaking in muscles at rest, difficulty with voluntary movements, and poor muscle tone. These symptoms are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease. They normally disappear if the drug is stopped.

The most common gastrointestinal side effects include nausea, vomiting, constipation, and difficulty digesting food.

Up to 10% of patients taking risperidone experience rhinitis (runny nose).

### Interactions

There is very little information about how risperidone interacts with other drugs. However, because some patients receiving risperidone experience lowered blood pressure while standing, it is expected that other drugs that lower blood pressure may increase the incidence and severity of this side effect when taken with risperidone.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

Casey, Daniel E. "Implications of the CATIE Trial on Treatment: Extrapyramidal Symptoms." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 25–31.

Gentile, Salvatore. "Extrapyramidal Adverse Events Associated with Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment of Bipolar Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 27.1 (Feb. 2007): 35–45.

Glick, Ira D. "Understanding the Results of CATIE in the Context of the Field." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 40–47.

Haro, Josep Maria, et al. "Remission and Relapse in the Outpatient Care of Schizophrenia: Three-Year Results from the Schizophrenia Outpatient Health Outcomes Study." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.6 (Dec. 2006): 571–78.

Haupt, Martin, Alfonso Cruz-Jentoft, and Dilip Jeste. "Mortality in Elderly Dementia Patients Treated with Risperidone." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.6 (Dec. 2006): 566–70.

Lieberman, Jeffrey A., et al. "Effectiveness of Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia." *New England Journal of Medicine* 353.12 (Sept. 2005): 1209–23.

Luby, Joan, et al. "Risperidone in Preschool Children with Autistic Spectrum Disorders: An Investigation of Safety and Efficacy." *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychopharmacology* 16.5 (Oct. 2006): 575–87.

McCue, Robert E., et al. "Comparative Effectiveness of Second-Generation Antipsychotics and Haloperidol in Acute Schizophrenia." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 189 (Nov. 2006): 433–40.

Meltzer, Herbert Y., and William V. Bobo. "Interpreting the Efficacy Findings in the CATIE Study: What Clinicians Should Know." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 14–24.

Nasrallah, Henry A. "Metabolic Findings from the CATIE Trial and Their Relation to Tolerability." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7, Supp. 7 (July 2006): 32–39.

Pandina, Gahan J., Michael G. Aman, and Robert L. Findling. "Risperidone in the Management of Disruptive Behavior Disorders." *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychopharmacology* 16.4 (Aug. 2006): 379–92.

Savas, Haluk A., et al. "Use of Long-Acting Risperidone in the Treatment of Bipolar Patients." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.5 (Oct. 2006): 530–31.

Schneider, Lon S., et al. "Effectiveness of Atypical Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Alzheimer's Disease." *New England Journal of Medicine* 355.15 (Oct. 2006): 1525–38.

Stroup, T. Scott, et al. "Effectiveness of Olanzapine, Quetiapine, Risperidone, and Ziprasidone in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia Following Discontinuation of a Previous Atypical Antipsychotic." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 611–22.

Taylor, David M., Corina Young, and Maxine X. Patel. "Prospective 6-Month Follow-Up of Patients Prescribed Risperidone Long-Acting Injection: Factors Predicting Favourable Outcome." *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology* 9.6 (Dec. 2006): 685–94.

Troost, Pieter W., et al. "Neuropsychological Effects of Risperidone in Children with Pervasive Developmental Disorders: A Blinded Discontinuation Study." *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychopharmacology* 16.5 (Oct. 2006): 561–73.

Weiden, Peter J. "EPS Profiles: The Atypical Antipsychotics Are Not All the Same." *Journal of Psychiatric Practice* 13.1 (Jan. 2007): 13–24.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Ritalin see **Methylphenidate**

## Rivastigmine

### Definition

Rivastigmine is a drug used to treat symptoms of **Alzheimer's disease**. In the United States, rivastigmine is sold as the brand name drug Exelon.

### Purpose

Rivastigmine is used to treat symptoms of Alzheimer's disease in individuals with mild to moderate illness. It has also been used to treat **dementia** caused by other conditions such as Lewy body disease or following strokes. The drug may produce mild improvements in symptoms of thinking for a short period of time, but rivastigmine does not cure or stop progression of underlying diseases.

### Description

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved rivastigmine in 2000 specifically for treating Alzheimer's disease. In patients with Alzheimer's disease, some cells in specific regions of the **brain** die. Because

of this cell death, these brain cells lose their ability to transmit nerve impulses. Brain cells normally transmit nerve impulses to one another by secreting various chemicals known as **neurotransmitters**.

Brain cells that make and secrete a neurotransmitter called acetylcholine are affected early in the course of Alzheimer's disease. Rivastigmine prevents the breakdown of acetylcholine in the brain, thus temporarily increasing its concentration. In doing so, rivastigmine may improve the thinking process by facilitating nerve impulse transmission within the brain.

Rivastigmine is available as capsules in four different strengths and as an oral solution for use by people who have difficulty swallowing. Unlike some other drugs used to treat Alzheimer's disease, rivastigmine is not broken down by the liver. As a result, it may be preferred in the treatment of people with Alzheimer's disease who have liver disease.

### Recommended dosage

The initial dosage of rivastigmine is 1.5 mg taken two times per day. If this dose is tolerated without difficulty, the dosage may be increased to 3 mg twice a day after at least two weeks at the lower dosage. Some people are unable to tolerate nausea, vomiting, anorexia, and weight loss that occur with higher dosages. If the drug does not cause significant adverse effects, the dose may be increased to 4.5 mg two times per day, followed by 6 mg two times per day. The dosage should be increased slowly, at two-week intervals. If side effects occur and cannot be tolerated, the drug may be stopped for several doses. When the drug is started again, the same dosage or the next lower dosage may be tried. The maximum daily dosage is 6 mg two times per day.

### Precautions

Rivastigmine may slow heart rates, increase acid in the stomach, make urination difficult, cause breathing difficulties, and may possibly contribute to **seizures**. As a result, it should be used with close physician supervision and monitoring in people with certain heart conditions, tendencies to stomach ulcers, bladder obstruction, asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and a history of seizure disorders.

Individuals taking rivastigmine should be reassessed periodically to determine whether the drug is providing any benefits. If caregivers feel the drug is no longer beneficial, it may be stopped.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Lewy body disease**—A type of dementia that resembles Alzheimer's disease, but progresses more rapidly. Common symptoms include fluctuations in confusion and recurring visual hallucinations. In this disease, abnormal brain cells are distributed throughout the brain.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Placebo**—An inactive substance or preparation used as a control in experiments with human subjects to test the effectiveness of a drug or herbal preparation. Some patients may experience a medicinal response or experience side effects to a placebo simply because they have faith in its powers even though it contains no medicine.

### Side effects

The most frequent side effects associated with rivastigmine involve stomach upset. Nausea, vomiting, anorexia, heartburn, and weakness occur in more than 5% of people and at twice the rate of people taking placebo pills. Dizziness and headaches also occur in more than 10% of people taking rivastigmine.

Other less common side effects include difficulty sleeping, confusion, **depression**, **anxiety**, sleepiness, **hallucinations**, tremors, fainting, aggression, constipation, gas, overwhelming **fatigue**, weight loss, increased sweating, and infections.

## Interactions

Drugs such as dicyclomine may inhibit the effects of rivastigmine. Other drugs like bethanechol may possibly increase some of the side effects of rivastigmine. Rivastigmine may interact with some of the drugs used to relax muscles during surgery. The interaction increases the effects of both drugs.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Facts and Comparisons staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Facts and Comparisons, 2002.
- Tekin, Sibel, and Roger Lane. "Rivastigmine in the Treatment of Dementia Associated with Parkinson's Disease: A Randomized, Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Study." *Progress in Neurotherapeutics and Neuropsychopharmacology*. ed. Jeffrey L. Cummings. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2006.

### PERIODICALS

- de Tommaso, Marina, et al. "Two Years' Follow-Up of Rivastigmine Treatment in Huntington Disease." *Clinical Neuropharmacology* 30.1 (Jan.–Feb. 2007): 43–46.
- Dybicz, Sharon B., et al. "Patterns of Cholinesterase-Inhibitor Use in the Nursing Home Setting: A Retrospective Analysis." *American Journal of Geriatric Pharmacotherapy* 4.2 (June 2006): 154–60.
- Eskander, Mariam F., et al. "Rivastigmine Is a Potent Inhibitor of Acetyl- and Butyrylcholinesterase in Alzheimer's Plaques and Tangles." *Brain Research* 1060. 1–2 (Oct. 2005): 144–52.
- Farlow, Martin R., et al. "Efficacy of Rivastigmine in Alzheimer's Disease Patients with Rapid Disease Progression: Results of a Meta-Analysis." *Dementia and Geriatric Cognitive Disorders* 20.2–3 (Aug. 2005): 192–97.
- Guillem, Francois, et al. "Are Cholinergic Enhancers Beneficial for Memory in Schizophrenia? An Event-Related Potentials (ERPs) Study of Rivastigmine Add-On Therapy in a Crossover Trial." *Progress in Neuropsychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry* 30.5 (July 2006): 934–45.
- Miyasaki, J. M., et al. "Practice Parameter: Evaluation and Treatment of Depression, Psychosis, and Dementia in Parkinson Disease (an Evidence-Based Review): Report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology." *Neurology* 66.7 (Apr. 2006): 996–1002.
- Ringman, John M., and Jeffrey L. Cummings. "Current and Emerging Pharmacological Treatment Options for Dementia." *Behavioural Neurology* 17.1 (2006): 5–16.
- Rongve, Arvid, and Dag Aarsland. "Management of Parkinson's Disease Dementia: Practical Considerations." *Drugs and Aging* 23.10 (2006): 807–22.
- Sharma, Tonmoy, et al. "Cognitive Effects of Adjunctive 24-Weeks Rivastigmine Treatment to Antipsychotics in

Schizophrenia: A Randomized, Placebo-Controlled, Double-Blind Investigation." *Schizophrenia Research* 85.1–3 (July 2006): 73–83.

- Takeda, A., et al. "A Systematic Review of the Clinical Effectiveness of Donepezil, Rivastigmine and Galantamine on Cognition, Quality of Life and Adverse Events in Alzheimer's Disease." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 21.1 (Jan. 2006): 17–28.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph.,PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Road rage

### Definition

Road rage is an extreme form of aggressive driving. Road rage is distinguished by its extreme response (often violent or assaultive in nature) and by its intent to harm another individual either physically or psychologically. Road rage is not considered to be a psychiatric disorder.

### Description

Although the term "road rage" has been popularized by the media, there is no consensus among researchers over the definition of this term. Aggressive driving—of which road rage is an extreme subset—includes a wide variety of behaviors such as speeding, cutting off another driver in traffic, tailgating, horn honking, and light flashing. Aggressive driving may also include more extreme actions ranging from roadside arguments or rude gestures to shootings and assaults.

Road rage is differentiated from the more general concept of aggressive driving by both degree and intent. Definitions of road rage often include the concept that the anger is uncontrolled and violent. Road rage is not an isolated phenomenon; similar incidents have been found in the workplace (workplace rage) and airports (airport rage).

### Causes and symptoms

There are numerous theories relating to the causes of aggressive driving and road rage. Most of these theories revolve around the concept of driver frustration and anger. It has been hypothesized, for example, that the competitiveness of the driving environment leads to aggressive driving behavior or that aggressive driving is part of a territorial defense reaction.



Andrew Burnett was convicted in July 2001 of killing a woman's dog in a well-publicized case of road rage. (AP Images)

In some individuals, however, road rage may be a symptom of **intermittent explosive disorder** (IED). IED is an impulse-control disorder in which the individual acts on his or her impulses in assaultive or destructive ways that are out of proportion to the events or factors that triggered the act. IED is a pattern of aggressive behavior rather than an isolated incident, and is not caused by any other mental disorder, general condition, or chemical substance. The underlying causes of IED are not known at this time.

It also has been suggested that road rage can be a result of other underlying causes. These include social maladjustment, personal maladjustment, and psychopathology.

## Demographics

Research indicates that younger drivers tend to be more likely to engage in aggressive and risk-taking driving behaviors, although aggressive driving is observed in all ages. Research does not support the conclusion that males are more aggressive drivers than females.

## Diagnosis

For those situations where road rage is caused by IED, diagnostic criteria include:

- discrete episodes where the individual acts out aggressive impulses that result in violent assault or destruction of property
- aggressive response to driving stressors that is excessively disproportionate to the provocation
- absence of other disorders that may cause violent outbursts (e.g., antisocial personality disorder, borderline personality disorder, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder)
- absence of a general medical condition that may express itself in aggressiveness (e.g., head injury, **Alzheimer's disease**)
- individual is not taking medications with the potential side effect of increased aggressive behavior
- no substance abuse

**Diagnosis** of road rage is made based on a psychiatric interview to assess mental and behavioral symptoms. For road rage stemming from non-psychiatric causes, driving anger scales and driver's **stress** profiles are also available. Individuals may also be referred for treatment by court mandate.

## Treatments

For road rage caused by IED, treatment may be achieved through cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) and/or psychotropic medication. CBT helps individuals recognize and become aware of the impulses that result in aggressive behavior so that they can control the impulses before they are acted upon. This therapy is typically supplemented by teaching the individuals stress management skills.

Road rage not related to IED has been successfully treated with desensitization therapy that helps the individual learn to not react to stimuli that provoke an aggressive response, stress management training including relaxation techniques, and other anger management techniques.

## Prognosis

With therapy and proper training, the prognosis for controlling road rage is good.

## Prevention

Prevention of road rage is dependent on helping individuals recognize the symptoms of their anger and teaching them techniques to reduce their stress or control their reaction to stressors.

## KEY TERMS

**Cognitive behavior therapy (CBT)**—A form of psychotherapy that aims to identify and modify the individual's inappropriate behavior as well as the underlying maladaptive thought processes.

**Psychotropic drug**—A drug that acts on or influences the activity of the mind.

**Stressor**—An internal or external event, force, or condition that results in physical or psychological stress.

**Territorial aggression**—The response of aggressively defending a defined space perceived as being threatened by a member of the same species.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edition, Text revision. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Galovski, Tara E., Malta, Loretta S., and Blanchard, Edward B. *Road Rage: Assessment and Treatment of the Angry, Aggressive Driver*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2006.
- Garase, Maria L. *Road Rage*. New York: LFB Scholarly Publications, 2006.
- VandenBos, Gary R. ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2007.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

## Rorschach technique

### Definition

The Rorschach technique, also known as the Rorschach inkblot test, is a projective personality assessment based on the test taker's reactions to a series of 10 standardized unstructured images or "inkblots."

### Description

The Rorschach technique is named for its developer, Swiss **psychiatrist** Hermann Rorschach (1884–1922). Rorschach, whose primary interest was in the psychoanalytic work of Carl Jung, began experimenting with inkblots as early as 1911 as a means of assessing introversion and extroversion. The Rorschach technique is

the most widely used projective psychological test. It is used to help assess personality structure and identify emotional problems and mental disorders. Like other projective techniques, it is based on the principle that subjects viewing neutral, ambiguous stimuli will project their own personalities onto them, thereby revealing a variety of unconscious conflicts and motivations. Administered to both adolescents and adults, the Rorschach can also be used with children as young as three years old, although the commonly used Exner scoring system (discussed below) is appropriate only for test takers aged five years and older.

### Purpose

The Rorschach technique is used to elicit information about the structure and dynamics of an individual's personality functioning. The test provides information about a person's thought processes, perceptions, motivations, and attitude toward his or her environment, and it can detect internal and external pressures and conflicts as well as illogical or psychotic thought patterns.

The Rorschach technique can also be used for specific diagnostic purposes. Some scoring methods for the Rorschach elicit information on symptoms related to **depression**, **schizophrenia**, and **anxiety disorders**. The test can be used to screen for coping deficits related to developmental problems in children and adolescents.

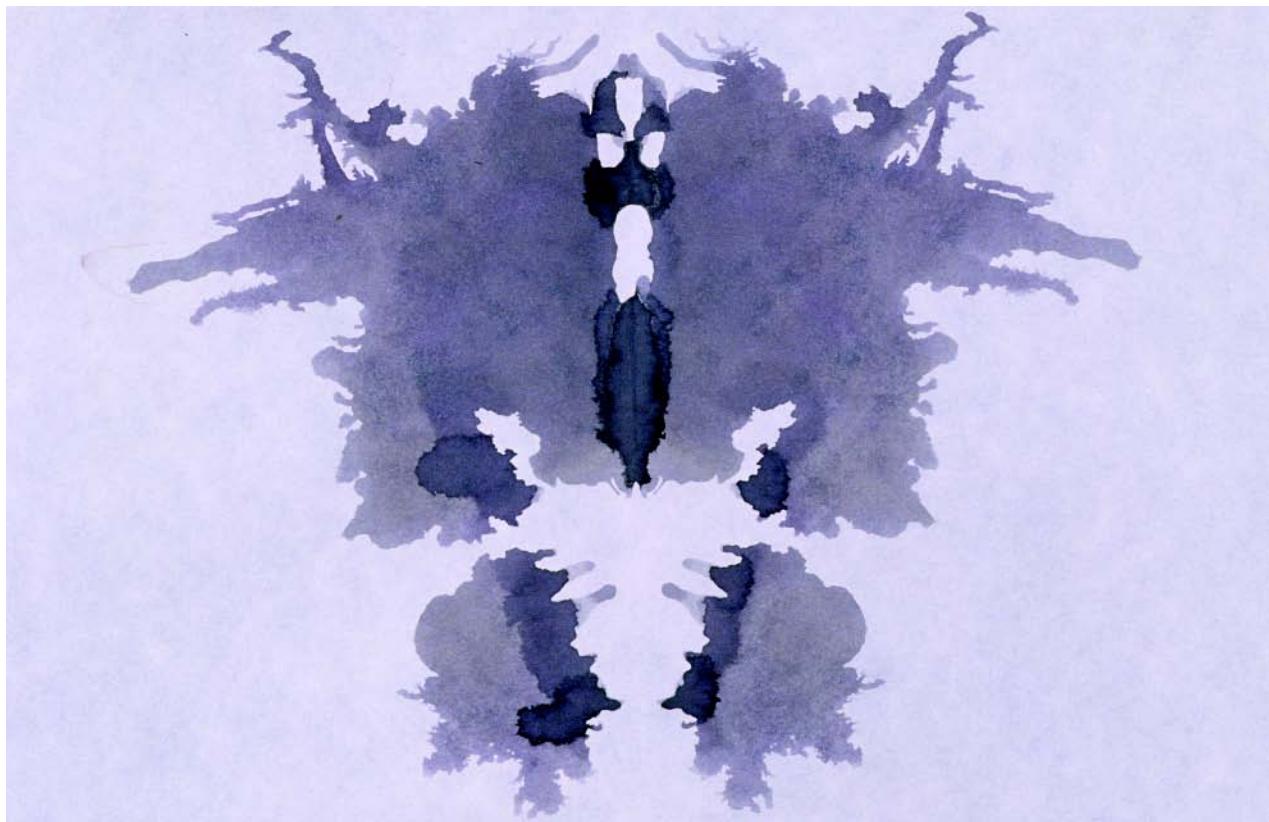
### Precautions

The Rorschach is generally used as part of a battery of tests and must be administered by a trained **psychologist**. Scoring the Rorschach test requires training in and knowledge of a comprehensive scoring system.

There is much disagreement concerning the reliability, validity, and clinical utility of the test and its scoring systems. Diagnoses for clinical disorders should not be based solely on the Rorschach test.

### Administration

The Rorschach technique is administered using 10 cards, each containing a complicated inkblot pattern; five in black and gray, two in black and red, and three in various pastel colors. Subjects are instructed to look at the shape, shading, and color of the inkblots. Subjects look at the cards one at a time and describe what they think each inkblot resembles. After the test taker has viewed all 10 cards, the examiner usually goes back over the responses for additional information. The subject may be asked to clarify some responses or to



An inkblot picture. (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

describe which features of each inkblot prompted the responses. There is no one correct response to any inkblot card, although there are certain common responses to some cards.

The test taker is given a lot of flexibility with how to respond to the inkblots. If a test taker asks if he or she is allowed to turn the card upside down, the test administrator will be nondirective, indicating it is the test taker's choice. A response like this from the test administrator is consistent with the projective nature of the Rorschach technique in that the test taker is projecting his or her personality onto the test stimuli.

### Scoring

Rorschach, who pioneered the test in 1921, did not provide a comprehensive scoring system. In response to complaints about validity, scoring methods have been devised that aim at providing greater objectivity by clearly specifying certain personality variables and relating them to clinical diagnoses. Originally published in the 1960s, the Exner Comprehensive Rorschach System used today (updated in 1987) is a computer-based scoring system that provides score summaries and lists likely personality and adjustment

descriptions for each test taker. Specifically, this scoring system considers aspects of a test taker's response such as the content of the response, the reasons for the events present on the card, the location of events on the card, and elaboration on cooperative and aggressive behavior. Exner also recorded certain popular and common responses to the cards and the degree to which test takers chose these responses. It should be noted, however, that many examiners still interpret the scores without benefit of a computer.

Test scores, whether based on Rorschach's original formulation, Exner's comprehensive scoring system, or other scoring systems, are based on several factors. One factor is location, or what part of the blot a person focuses on; the whole blot, sections of it, or only specific details within a particular section. Another factor is whether the response is based on factors such as form, color, movement, or shading. These factors are referred to as determinants. For example, people who tend to see movement in Rorschach blots are thought to be intellectual and introspective; those who see mostly stationary objects or patterns are described as practical and action-oriented. Finally, content refers to which objects, persons, or situations the person sees in the

## KEY TERMS

**Projective test**—A psychological test in which the test taker responds to or provides ambiguous, abstract, or unstructured stimuli, often in the form of pictures or drawings.

**Reliability**—The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing test norms.

**Validity**—The capability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

blot. Content categories include humans, animals, clothing, and nature.

Most examiners also assess responses based on the frequency of certain responses as given by previous test takers. Many psychologists interpret the test freely according to their subjective impressions, including their impression of the subject's demeanor while taking the test (cooperative, anxious, defensive, etc.). Such interpretations, especially when combined with clinical observation and knowledge of a client's personal history, can help a therapist arrive at a more expansive, in-depth understanding of the client's personality.

While the Rorschach technique is still widely used, its popularity has decreased in recent decades. Unlike objective personality inventories, which can be administered to a group, the Rorschach test must be given individually. A skilled examiner is required, and the test can take several hours to complete and interpret. Like other projective tests, it has been criticized for lack of validity and reliability. Interpretation of responses is highly dependent on an examiner's individual judgment: two different testers may interpret the same responses quite differently. In addition, treatment procedures at mental health facilities often require more specific, objective types of personality description than those provided by the Rorschach technique.

*See also* Figure drawings; House-tree-person.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Bornstein, Robert F. and Joseph M. Masling, eds. *Scoring the Rorschach: Seven Validated Systems*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2005.

Ganellen, Ronald J. "Rorschach Assessment of Normal and Abnormal Personality." *Differentiating Normal and*

*Abnormal Personality*. 2nd ed. New York: Springer Publishing, 2006.

Wood, James M., et al. *What's Wrong with the Rorschach? Science Confronts the Controversial Inkblot Test*. New York: Jossey-Bass, 2003.

Ali Fahmy, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Rosemary

### Definition

Rosemary is a herb derived from an evergreen shrub, *Rosmarinus officinalis*, related to the mint or Lamiaceae family of plants. Rosemary is a native of the Mediterranean regions of Europe and the Near East; Tunisia is a major modern-day source of the plant. Rosemary can grow as tall as 5 ft, producing strongly scented, leathery leaves used in perfumes and seasonings. Its Latin name, *Rosmarinus*, means "ocean dew." Other names for rosemary include compass weed, compass plant, or polar plant. An interesting tradition about rosemary is that it grows best in gardens tended by forceful or strong-willed women; a Spanish folk saying has it that "where rosemary thrives the mistress is master."

The major chemical compounds found in essential oil of rosemary include eugenol, borneol, camphene, camphor, cineol, lineol, pinene, and terpineol. Compounds found in rosemary that are considered to be highly effective antioxidants include monoterpenoid ketone compounds, such as thujone, camphor, verbenone and carvone, as well as such phenols as methylchavicol, carvacrol, eugenol and thymole. Rosemary extract also contains numerous polyphenolic compounds that possess high antioxidant activity, including rosmanol, rosmarinidiphenol, rosmarinic acid, carnosol, carnosic acid, and ursolic acid.

### Purpose

Although rosemary is most familiar to contemporary Westerners as a kitchen herb used to add a spicy or slightly medicinal flavor to some foods, it was traditionally used as an antiseptic, astringent, and food preservative before the invention of refrigeration. It was burned in sickrooms to disinfect the air. Rosemary's antioxidant properties are still used to extend the shelf life of prepared foods.

Rosemary is also a well known "middle note" in the making of perfumes and **aromatherapy** products.

The aroma of its essential oil lasts about 2–3 days, and is regarded as having energizing and invigorating qualities. It is thought to improve memory and the ability to concentrate, and has been used to relieve migraine headaches. Its astringent qualities make it appropriate for use in facial cleansers for oily skin. Rosemary is frequently added to compresses to heal bruises and sprains, and in topical salves, lotions, or creams to relieve muscle cramps or improve circulation. It is a favorite ingredient in hand creams for gardeners or for use in cold weather. The herb contains a flavonoid called diosmin, which has been shown to strengthen capillaries in the circulatory system. Some research studies are investigating the usefulness of rosemary in the treatment of varicose veins and hemorrhoids. The German Commission E has approved the use of rosemary for low blood pressure, and for painful joints or muscles. In addition, rosemary is still listed as a medicinal herb in the official *United States Pharmacopoeia*.

Several of the compounds in rosemary have been shown to have anti-inflammatory effects. As a result, some cancer researchers are studying rosemary as a natural non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug, or NSAID. Since the use of NSAIDs is associated with a lowered risk of certain types of cancer in the general population, these researchers are investigating the possibility that rosemary may act as a cancer preventive.

### Description

Essential oil and extract of rosemary are prepared for use in aromatherapy by steam distillation from the leaves and flowers of the plant during its second year of growth. The leaves can also be stripped from the stems of the second-year plant and dried for internal use. Although rosemary is more commonly used to flavor dishes rather than as a separate item in the diet, it can be taken as a tea.

### Recommended dosages

Rosemary tea is made by pouring 1 cup of boiling water into a cup containing 1 teaspoon of the dried leaves. Tea made from fresh rosemary leaves requires .35 ounces–.52 ounces of the herb. The tea may be taken up to three times daily.

Essential oil of rosemary should not be used full-strength on the skin, as it has been reported to cause skin irritation. When it is diluted, as in a carrier oil for massage or in a salve, hand cream, or facial cleanser, it is safe for use as often as desired. In aromatherapy rosemary oil can be used in burners, potpourri, or in sachets.

## KEY TERMS

**Antioxidant**—Substance that protects the body from damaging reactive oxygen molecules in the body. These reactive oxygen molecules can come from inside the body or from environmental pollution and are thought to play a role in the aging process and the development of degenerative disease. The phenolic compounds in essential oil of rosemary have been shown to be effective antioxidants.

**Astringent**—A substance or compound that causes contraction or constriction of soft tissue. Rosemary's astringent qualities have made it a popular ingredient in treatments for oily skin.

**Essential oil**—The product of special ducts or cells in the tissues of aromatic plants (or the sap of certain trees) that gives the plant its characteristic aroma and therapeutic properties. Essential oils are sometimes called volatile oils because they evaporate readily at room temperature.

**Flavonoids**—Plant pigments that have a variety of effects on human physiology. Some of these pigments have anti-inflammatory, anti-carcinogenic, and antioxidant effects, for example. The diosmin contained in rosemary is a flavonoid.

**Middle note**—A term used in perfumery and aromatherapy to designate essential oils whose odors emerge later than “top notes” but evaporate more rapidly than “bottom notes.” Rosemary is considered a middle note in aromatherapy.

**Phenol**—A white crystalline water-soluble substance used chiefly as an antiseptic and disinfectant.

**Topical**—A type of medication or preparation intended for use on the skin or external surface of the body. Rosemary is a common ingredient in astringent cleansers and in hand lotions or similar preparations intended to warm the skin or increase blood circulation.

### Precautions

Rosemary tea should not be taken by pregnant or lactating women, although they may safely use it in cooking to season food. Children under six months of age also should not be given rosemary tea. Rosemary should not be taken by persons with epilepsy, ulcerative colitis, or high blood pressure.

### Side effects

When rosemary is harvested appropriately and used within recommended guidelines, side effects are

minimal. A few instances of allergic skin reactions to topical preparations containing rosemary have been reported.

Recent European research has shown that rosemary interferes with the absorption of iron in the diet, which indicates that it should not be used internally by persons with iron deficiency anemia.

### Interactions

Rosemary is not known to interact with any current Western prescription medications.

*See also* Aromatherapy.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Medical Economics Staff. *PDR for Herbal Medicines*. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 1998.  
 Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Western Herbal Medicine: Nature's Green Pharmacy." Chapter 6 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.  
 Price, Shirley. *Practical Aromatherapy*. Second edition, revised. London, UK: Thorsons, 1994.

#### PERIODICALS

- Fahim, Fawzia A., et al. "Allied Studies on the Effect of *Rosmarinus officinalis L.* on Experimental Hepatotoxicity and Mutagenesis." *International Journal of Food Sciences and Nutrition* 50 (November 1999): 413.  
 Samman, Samir, Brittmarie Sandstrom, Maja Bjorndal Toft, and others. "Green Tea or Rosemary Extract Added to Foods Reduces Nonheme Iron Absorption." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 73 (March 2001): 607.  
 Tyler, Varro E. "Nature's Surprising Antioxidants." *Prevention* 51 (December 1999): 105.  
 Wargovich, Michael J., et al. "Herbals, Cancer Prevention, and Health." *Journal of Nutrition* 131 (November 2001): 3034S-3036S.

#### OTHER

- American Botanical Council. PO Box 144345. Austin, TX 78714-4345.  
 National Association for Holistic Aromatherapy (NAHA). 4509 Interlake Avenue North, #233, Seattle, WA 98103-6773. (888) ASK-NAHA or (206) 547-2164. <[www.naha.org](http://www.naha.org)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Rumination disorder

### Definition

Rumination disorder may be diagnosed when a person deliberately brings food back up into the mouth and either rechews and reswallows it or spits it out out.

### Description

Rumination disorder is sometimes called merycism. It is a disorder most commonly found in infants, and associated with **mental retardation**. During rumination, previously eaten food is intentionally brought back into the mouth. Sometimes the child spits it out, but in other cases, the food is rechewed and reswallowed. The regurgitation is not caused by a medical condition. In many cases, the child has had an illness associated with vomiting that occurs before the onset of rumination disorder. Rumination has also been observed in severe cases of eating disorders among teenagers as well as adults.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

There is no general agreement on the causes of rumination disorder. In infants, it is thought to be caused by a lack of nurturing or physical contact. The child's rumination may represent an attempt to stimulate or soothe him- or herself. Biological factors are also being explored as possible causes of rumination disorder.

#### Symptoms

The symptoms of rumination include both the regurgitation of food and, in infants, the effort made to regurgitate that food. In infants, the attempts to bring up food can include putting fingers in the mouth, sucking on the tongue, and arching the back. When food is brought up, the cheeks expand and appear puffed. Sometimes an observer can detect the rechewing; the person often appears to take pleasure in the act. The person's breath may have a foul or sour odor. Some infants, especially those who have just begun ruminating, will expel most or all of the regurgitated food from their mouths. When this expulsion occurs, it is often mistaken for normal infant vomiting. As an infant continues to ruminate, he or she often learns to keep more and more of the regurgitated food in the mouth.

### Demographics

Rumination disorder occurs primarily in infants. The onset usually occurs before the infant's first birthday. The disorder is also more common in people with mental retardation. The onset of rumination disorder is typically later in mentally retarded patients, however; it may not appear until puberty or even the early adult years. Rumination disorder is rare and thought to occur more often in males than in females. People

who have anorexia or bulimia may begin to ruminate only in adult life. One report found that up to 20% of people with bulimia may ruminate.

## Diagnosis

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*), which is the standard reference work for mental health professionals, gives only three general criteria for diagnosing rumination disorder. The first is that the person's behavior of deliberately bringing up and rechewing food must have lasted for at least a month. The regurgitation and rechewing must happen after a period of time in which the person did not ruminate. In addition, the rumination cannot result from a medical condition such as esophageal reflux. In addition, the manual specifies that the rumination cannot be associated with anorexia or bulimia.

Rumination disorder may be difficult to diagnose. One reason for this difficulty is that infants or adults who do not expel any of their regurgitated food can often be identified only by a puffing of the cheeks when the food is in the mouth or by an unpleasant breath odor. In addition, because many people and infants who ruminate find the experience a positive and pleasurable one, there are no physical signs of discomfort to bring the disorder to the attention of caretakers or others.

Some experts disagree with the statement of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual* that a **diagnosis** of rumination disorder cannot be made if the rumination is associated with anorexia or bulimia. These experts maintain that diagnosing and treating rumination disorder in patients who have other eating disorders is important for the sake of the patient's health.

## Treatment

Treatment for rumination disorder depends on the cause of the behavior. Infants who are thought to ruminate because of a lack of affection may be fed by someone other than their mother or father. This person can be a replacement while their parents receive treatment themselves. Other approaches involve therapy and parenting education to create a stronger bond between the parents and the child.

The treatment of adult patients includes giving them chewing gum to use when rumination might normally occur. Other researchers have found that giving mentally retarded adults filling meals may reduce rumination. Treating such eating disorders as anorexia or bulimia frequently helps to resolve the rumination that

## KEY TERMS

**Merycism**—Another name for rumination disorder.

**Regurgitation**—The return of partly digested food from the stomach to the mouth. Regurgitation may be either an intentional act or an involuntary physical reaction.

**Ruminate**—To chew or rechew regurgitated food.

may be associated with those disorders. **Behavior modification** techniques that help a patient to unlearn the ruminating behavior have also been used.

## Prognosis

In many cases rumination that begins in infancy stops on its own. The disorder should be treated, however, because infants with untreated rumination disorder are at risk of malnutrition and death caused by dehydration. Treatments for rumination disorder are generally very effective. Treatment of associated eating disorders in adults is generally regarded as successful.

## Prevention

There is no known way to prevent rumination disorder. It is possible, however, that a strong parent-child bond may reduce the possibility of the disorder occurring in infants.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Weakley, Melinda M., Theodore A. Petti, George Karwisch. "Case Study: Chewing Gum Treatment of Rumination in an Adolescent with an Eating Disorder." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 36, no. 8 (August 1997):1124-1128.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. (847) 434-4000. <[www.aap.org](http://www.aap.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

# S

SAD see **Seasonal affective disorder**

Sadism see **Sexual sadism**

## SAMe

### Definition

SAMe (or S-adenosyl-L-methionine) is a naturally occurring chemical that is found throughout the entire body. It is involved in many chemical reactions that are necessary for life. SAMe is available as a natural dietary supplement that can be found at some pharmacies or health food stores, and can be purchased without a prescription.

### Purpose

People take supplements of SAMe for many reasons including its possible antidepressant effects. Some evidence suggests that taking SAMe can improve symptoms of **depression** within two weeks, which is considerably faster than the time it takes for oral antidepressant prescription drugs to work. (Prescription **antidepressants** often take a minimum of two weeks for patients to begin noticing any effect, and many take four to six weeks.)

### Description

SAMe is a specific form of the amino acid methionine, a substance that, when not metabolized properly, allows homocysteine to build up in the blood. SAMe is also an antioxidant, a substance that protects the body from damaging reactive oxygen molecules in the body. These reactive oxygen molecules can come from inside the body or from environmental pollution and are thought to play a role in the aging process and the development of degenerative disease. In general, SAMe is thought to raise the level of functioning of other amino acids in the body.

Although people use SAMe for many reasons including osteoarthritis, depression, heart disease, fibromyalgia, bursitis, tendonitis, chronic low back pain, **dementia**, Alzheimer's disease, improving **brain** function, multiple sclerosis, spinal cord injuries, migraine headaches, lead poisoning, liver disease, and to slow aging, the best evidence to date indicates that SAMe may be effective in relieving symptoms of osteoarthritis and for treating depression.

Several studies have indicated that oral SAMe and intravenous SAMe are effective treatments for depression. The studies researching the oral SAMe were small studies, and often were of short duration. However, the studies indicate that SAMe is effective in treating depression, and that it may be almost as effective as tricyclic antidepressants. Larger studies of SAMe are necessary.

### Recommended dosage

SAMe can be taken orally or intravenously. Oral administration is more common. When taken by mouth, doses of 400–1,600 mg have been suggested. For osteoarthritis, 200–600 mg daily is a typical dose. For depression, 400–1,600 mg daily is a typical dose.

200 mg of SAMe has been administered intravenously or intramuscularly for 14 days while simultaneously beginning therapy with prescription antidepressant drugs. If SAMe is used without prescription antidepressants, 200–400 mg per day by intravenous or intramuscular injections has been used. When treating other medical conditions, doses as high as 800 mg daily by injection have been used. Again, however, intravenous administration is rare in the United States.

### Precautions

As a natural supplement, SAMe has not been evaluated by the Food and Drug Administration. Claims of safety or effectiveness for treating any medical disorder have not been thoroughly studied by any

## KEY TERMS

**Antidepressant**—A medication used to treat the symptoms of depression.

**Bipolar disorder**—A mental disorder characterized by dramatic, and sometimes rapid mood swings, resulting in both manic and depressive episodes; formerly called manic-depressive disorder.

**Depression**—A mental state characterized by excessive sadness. Other symptoms include altered sleep patterns, thoughts of suicide, difficulty concentrating, agitation, lack of energy, and loss of enjoyment in activities that are usually pleasurable.

**Homocysteine**—A chemical that builds up in the blood when methionine is not properly processed. High blood levels of homocysteine increase the risk of heart disease and stroke.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

governmental agency and there is no regulation of natural supplements. This means that potencies may vary between lots or among different manufacturers. It is also possible that supplements may not contain the ingredients that are listed on product labels.

SAMe should be used carefully by individuals with a history of **bipolar disorder** since it may aggravate symptoms of mania. When used with prescription antidepressant medications, life-threatening symptoms may occur. It should be used with prescription antidepressant drugs only under close medical supervision.

### Side effects

When taken by mouth, SAMe may cause stomach upset including gas, vomiting, diarrhea, headache, and nausea. These symptoms are more common at high doses.

**Anxiety** has also occurred in people with depression, and mania has been reported in those with a history of bipolar disorder.

### Interactions

As stated, use of SAMe with antidepressants (especially **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors**, or **SSRIs**)

may cause life-threatening symptoms including agitation, tremors, anxiety, rapid heartbeats, difficulty breathing, diarrhea, shivering, muscle stiffness, and excessive sweating. The combination can also cause **insomnia**. If SAMe is used at the same time that prescription antidepressants are taken, close medical supervision is required.

SAMe may offer beneficial drug interactions when used with some medications. More research is necessary to determine whether SAMe does indeed protect the liver, but some scientists think that SAMe may protect the liver from damage caused by some drugs, including acetaminophen, alcohol, estrogens, **steroids**, and several other prescription drugs.

People interested in taking SAMe for depression should discuss its use with their doctor to weigh the potential benefits and risks.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Therapeutic Research Faculty. *Natural Medicines Comprehensive Database*. Stockton, CA: Natural Medicines Database, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

Fetrow, C. W., Pharm.D. and J. R. Avila, Pharm.D. "Efficacy of the dietary supplement S-adenosyl-L-methionine." *Annals of Pharmacotherapy* 35, no. 11 (November 2001): 1414-1425.

Kelly Karpa, RPh, Ph.D.

## Schizoaffective disorder

### Definition

One of the most challenging mental disorders to identify accurately and treat appropriately is schizoaffective disorder. This condition involves both psychotic symptoms and conspicuous, long-enduring, severe symptoms of mood disorder. The cluster of symptoms experienced by people with schizoaffective disorder can resemble—at various times in its course—bipolar disorder, major depressive episode with psychotic features, or **schizophrenia**.

The schizoaffective disorder classification is applied when a mental health patient meets diagnostic criteria for both schizophrenia and an “affective” (mood) disorder—depression or **bipolar disorder**. In patients with schizoaffective disorder, mood and psychotic symptoms occur predominantly simultaneously

and the mood disturbance is long-lasting. However, periods of experiencing serious psychotic symptoms without serious mood disturbance are also a definitive feature. In bipolar disorder and **depression** with psychotic features, psychotic symptoms only occur during an active episode of mania or severe clinical depression. Schizoaffective disorder is characterized by periods during which psychotic symptoms are experienced without simultaneous severe mood changes. If the patient is encountered for the first time during such a period of psychotic symptoms in the absence of mood changes, it can appear that the individual has schizophrenia. However, in a person who has psychotic symptoms, the presence of long-standing severe mood disturbance suggests possible schizoaffective disorder if they also have periods of psychotic symptoms without concurrent mood fluctuations.

Schizoaffective disorder is typically identified by a process of lengthy observation and elimination of another diagnostic alternative over a long course of care. Because of the need for longitudinal observation and collection of a wealth of information before an accurate **diagnosis** is possible, most people with schizoaffective disorder have borne other diagnostic labels prior to the schizoaffective diagnosis (usually bipolar disorder).

## Description

### *Psychotic symptoms*

Both psychotic symptoms and mood disorder symptoms are experienced by individuals with schizoaffective disorder. In schizoaffective disorder, at least two of the major symptoms of **psychosis** are evident in the patient. Classic psychotic symptoms can occur during mood disturbances as well as in periods without extreme mood changes. **Hallucinations**, **delusions**, and strange bodily movements or lack of movements (catatonic behavior) are all psychotic symptoms that may be observed. Additionally, minimal or peculiar speech, lack of drive to act on one's own behalf, bizarre or primitive (socially inappropriate or immature) behavior, a wooden quality to one's emotions, or near-absent emotionality are also typical psychotic symptoms that may occur. Of course, not all of the possible psychotic symptoms will occur concurrently in a single person with schizoaffective disorder. Importantly, to meet the criteria for the schizoaffective disorder diagnosis, delusions or hallucinations (the most "prototypical" of the psychotic symptoms) must be observed within a fairly lengthy period of time during which there is no form of mood disturbance.

### *Mood disturbance*

An extremely important and challenging aspect of schizoaffective disorder is that mood problems are prominent. During mood episodes, psychotic features are simultaneously evident. The disruption of mood may be depressive, manic, or take the form of a **mixed episode** (which includes both depressive and manic features). If only depressed mood occurs, the individual is described as having the depressive subtype of schizoaffective disorder. If mixed episodes or manic episodes are noted, the patient is identified as having the bipolar form of schizoaffective disorder.

### *Causes and symptoms*

#### *Causes*

Because clear identification of schizoaffective disorder has traditionally been challenging, scientists have conducted far less research relating to the disorder than studies relating to schizophrenia or mood disorders. However, there are indications that there is a genetic component to the disorder. Close relatives of people with schizoaffective disorder have higher rates of both schizophrenia and mood disorder. The disorder most typically strikes in early adulthood; in some cases, there appears to be a major trigger—some form of life **stress** initiating the occurrence of the symptoms. In cases where an identifiable stressor is involved, the person tends to have a better outcome than when such is not the case. Some evidence suggests that the bipolar form of schizoaffective disorder is more treatable and yields better outcomes than the depressive form.

**RELATIONSHIP TO PERSONALITY DISORDER.** People with **personality disorders** appear to be more susceptible to developing psychotic reactions in response to stress. One aspect of personality disorder is that, when life becomes more demanding and difficult than can be tolerated, the individual with personality disorder may lapse into a brief psychotic episode. For some individuals, personality disorder may be a predecessor to the development of schizoaffective disorder. Apparently, a chronic problem of lacking effective adult mechanisms for coping with life becomes an ongoing schizoaffective disorder in some predisposed people. Those with preexisting schizotypal, paranoid, schizoid, and borderline personality disorders may be more vulnerable to developing a schizoaffective disorder than the general population.

#### *Symptoms*

The **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders** (*DSM-IV-TR*), produced by the American

Psychiatric Association, is used by most mental health professionals in North America and Europe to diagnose mental disorders. The *DSM-IV-TR* provides these major criteria for schizoaffective disorder:

- At least two of the following symptoms of psychosis present for at least one month: delusions, hallucinations, disorganized speech (strange, peculiar, difficult to comprehend), disorganized (bizarre or childlike) behavior, catatonic behavior, minimal speech (approaching mutism), lack of drive to act on one's own behalf, and a wooden quality to one's emotions, or near-absent emotionality.
- Delusions or hallucinations have occurred for at least two weeks in the absence of prominent mood symptoms.
- During a "substantial portion" of the period of active illness, the individual meets criteria for one of the following mood disturbances: major depressive episode, manic episode, mixed episode.
- The symptoms are not caused by a biologically active entity such as drugs, alcohol, adverse reaction to a medication, physical injury, or medical illness.

## Demographics

Because of the imprecise nature of the diagnosis, the actual rate of brief schizoaffective disorder in adults is unknown. The proportion of schizoaffective disorder identified in persons undergoing treatment for psychiatric disorders has ranged from 2% to almost 30%, depending on the study cited. More females than males (overall) suffer from schizoaffective disorder. However, similar to gender ratios in clinical depression and bipolar disorder, it seems that there is a much higher ratio of women to men in the depressive subtype, whereas the bipolar subtype has a more even gender distribution. Thus, the higher ratio of women overall is primarily caused by the concentration of women within the depressive subtype of schizoaffective disorder.

## Diagnosis

Even using the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria, identification of schizoaffective disorder remains difficult and relatively subjective. An unusual condition in this set of diagnostic criteria is the need to weigh the relative prominence of the mood symptoms and to identify a period of psychotic symptoms that occurred without significant mood disturbance. In the various other psychotic disorders, frequently a low level of depression accompanies the symptoms. When depressive symptoms are the sole form of mood disturbance, only subjective clinical judgment determines whether

there has been sufficient severity or duration of that disturbance to merit the possibility of schizoaffective disorder. An additional complication is the cultural relativity of "psychotic symptoms." If the psychotic-like behaviors shown are expected and valued in the person's culture or religion, and these behaviors occur in a traditionally affirming context such as religious services or **meditation**, then schizoaffective disorder would not be diagnosed.

As stated, schizoaffective disorder is typically identified by a process of lengthy observation and elimination of another diagnostic alternative over a long course of care. A very thorough history of the patient's entire past experiences of psychiatric symptoms, mental health treatments, and response to different kinds of medications that have been taken, helps in determining whether that individual is suffering from schizoaffective disorder. Information about current and past experiences is collected in interviews with the patient and possibly in discussion with the patient's immediate family. Data also may be gathered from earlier medical records with the patient's consent. In order to examine the sufferer's ability to concentrate, to remember, to understand his or her situation realistically, and to think logically, the clinician may use a semistructured interview called a mental status examination. The mental status examination is designed to uncover psychotic or demented thought processes. Psychological assessment instruments, such as the MMPI-2, the Rorschach Inkblot Test, various mood disorder questionnaires, or structured diagnostic interviews, are sometimes used as well to aid in diagnosis. The criteria used by the clinician to classify this constellation of symptoms as schizoaffective disorder are presented in the *DSM-IV-TR*.

## Treatments

Atypical, novel, or newer-generation antipsychotic medications are very effective in schizoaffective disorder treatment. Examples of atypical or novel antipsychotic medications include **ariPIPRAZOLE** (Abilify), **risPERIDONE** (Risperdal), **quetiapine** (Seroquel), and **olanzapine** (Zyprexa). If the patient's psychotic symptoms are acute and accompanied by agitation, a number of different antipsychotics can be used to terminate the flare-up of acute agitated psychosis. Agitation is a state of frantic activity that is often accompanied by anger or marked fearfulness; when in an agitated state, the patient is more likely to cause harm to self or others. In agitated psychotic states, the antipsychotic agent **haloperidol** (Haldol) is often given as an injection, accompanied by other medications that decrease **anxiety** and slow behavior (often

**lorazepam**, also known as Ativan). At this time, no atypical antipsychotics are available in an injectable formulation. If the patient is not extremely agitated, usually a novel antipsychotic is used, given orally daily for a lengthier period of time.

In some cases, the antipsychotic medication is not sufficient to overcome the mood disturbance component of the disorder, even though some antipsychotics have thymoleptic (mood-affecting) qualities. Some of the atypical antipsychotic medications are thought to have antidepressant properties, while olanzapine has a U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval for the management of acute manic psychosis.

If there is little response to novel antipsychotic monotherapy (treatment with only one medication), an additional compound may be given to target the mood disorder aspect of the illness. The choice of which drug should be added to the medication regimen to decrease mood disorder problems is determined by the subtype of schizoaffective disorder shown by the patient. If the patient experiences the bipolar form, a mood stabilizer is added, often **valproic acid** (Depakote), **carbamazepine** (Tegretol), or lithium (Eskalith or Lithobid). In schizoaffective disorder of the bipolar type, if little response occurs to the usual antipsychotic/mood stabilizer combinations, the mental health patient may be prescribed **clozapine** (Clozaril or other generic formulations), which appears to be both antipsychotic and mood-stabilizing. However, because clozapine has the potential (in a very minute number of cases) to cause lethal alterations in the composition of blood, and because its use requires regular monitoring with recurrent blood testing, it is reserved as a “last-resort” therapy. In cases of the depressive subtype, psychiatrists may prescribe an antidepressant such as **citalopram** (Celexa), **venlafaxine** (Effexor), **paroxetine** (Paxil), or **fluoxetine** (Prozac) as an adjunct to the antipsychotic. In certain cases of depressive subtypes, where medications have been ineffective in resolving the extreme mood or where psychosis is so severe as to be life-threatening, **electroconvulsive therapy** may be utilized. Electroconvulsive therapy has also been shown to be effective in major depressive episode with psychotic features.

Medication is not the only treatment avenue. Supportive **psychotherapy** and psychoeducation is helpful to decrease the patient’s fears and to inform the patient about the psychiatric illness. **Cognitive-behavioral therapy** aims to modify the thoughts and behaviors that provoke mood disturbance or prevent full involvement and collaboration in therapy for the mental illness. Psychoeducation and cognitive-behavioral therapy are not effective in lieu of biological

## KEY TERMS

**Catatonic behavior or catatonia**—Catatonic behavior or catatonia is a descriptive term that describes both possible extremes related to movement. Catalepsy is the motionless aspect of catatonia—in which a person with catalepsy may remain fixed in the same position for hours on end. Rapid or persistently repeated movements, frequent grimacing and strange facial expressions, and unusual gestures are the opposite end of the catatonia phenomenon, involving an excess or distorted extreme of movement.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact.

**Hallucinations**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Psychosis or psychotic symptoms**—Disruptions in perceiving reality, thinking logically, and speaking or behaving in normal fashion. Hallucinations, delusions, catatonic behavior, and peculiar speech are all symptoms of psychosis. In *DSM-IV-TR*, psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself (with the exception of the diagnosis of psychosis not otherwise specified).

therapy, but are enhancing, meaningful components of a “whole-person” approach used in concert with medications for the best possible outcomes.

## Prognosis

The prognosis for patients with schizoaffective disorder is largely dependent on the form of the disorder and the presence or absence of a trigger. If a major life event is a prompting stressor, or an unusual traumatic experience preceded the occurrence of the disorder, chances for improvement are higher. If there is not a particular triggering event, or if the schizoaffective disorder occurred in an individual with a pre-morbid personality disorder, the outcome is less likely to be positive. The bipolar form of the disorder may respond better to treatment than the depressive form. Generally, the earlier the disorder is identified and treated, and the fewer lapses from medications, the more positive the outcome.

## Prevention

Given that this disorder appears to have a strong genetic or biologic aspect, society-wide prevention approaches are not likely to be fruitful. However, a promising strategy is to educate physicians, psychologists, and **social workers**, as well as people at higher risk for the disorder, about the characteristics and treatability of schizoaffective disorder. Such education of care providers and high-risk individuals would foster early identification and treatment. In schizoaffective disorder, similar to schizophrenia and bipolar disorder, better response is predicted the earlier treatment begins. Because, theoretically, severe stressors can trigger this disorder (in some cases), strong social support and immediate postcrisis counseling for severe stress could possibly prevent the development of the disorder in some susceptible people.

*See also* Compliance.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Murray, William H., ed. *Schizoaffective Disorders: New Research*. Hauppauge, NY: Nova Science Publishers, 2006.

### PERIODICALS

- Lipkovich, I., et al. "Predictors of Risk for Relapse in Patients with Schizophrenia or Schizoaffective Disorder During Olanzapine Drug Therapy." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (Apr.–Jun. 2007): 305–10.  
 Maier, Wolfgang. "Do Schizoaffective Disorders Exist at All?" *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 113.5 (May 2006): 369–71.  
 Pinninti, Narsimha, et al. "Severity of Self-Reported Depression in Patients with a Schizoaffective Disorder." *Journal of Psychopathology and Behavioral Assessment* 28.3 (Sept. 2006): 165–70.  
 Risch, S. Craig, et al. "Donepezil Effects on Mood in Patients with Schizophrenia and Schizoaffective Disorder." *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology* 9.5 (Oct. 2006): 603–5.  
 Simpson, George M., et al. "A 1-Year Double-Blind Study of 2 Doses of Long-Acting Risperidone in Stable Patients with Schizophrenia or Schizoaffective Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 67.8 (Aug. 2006): 1194–1203.  
 Strous, Rael D., et al. "Comparison Between Risperidone, Olanzapine, and Clozapine in the Management of Chronic Schizophrenia: A Naturalistic Prospective 12-Week Observational Study." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 21.4 (June 2006): 235–43.  
 Vollmer-Larsen, A., et al. "Schizoaffective Disorder—The Reliability of Its Clinical Diagnostic Use." *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica* 113.5 (May 2006): 402–7.

## ORGANIZATIONS

National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. (703) 524-7600. NAMI HelpLine: (800) 950-NAMI (6264). <[www.nami.org](http://www.nami.org)>.

National Association for Research on Schizophrenia and Affective Disorders (NARSAD). 60 Cutter Mill Road, Suite 404, Great Neck, NY 11021. (516) 829-0091. Infoline: (800) 829-8289. <[www.narsad.org](http://www.narsad.org)>.

Deborah Rosch Eifert, PhD  
 Martha Sajatovic, PhD  
 Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Schizoid personality disorder

### Definition

Schizoid personality disorder is characterized by a persistent withdrawal from social relationships and lack of emotional responsiveness in most situations. Individuals with schizoid personality disorder tend to be consistently emotionally cold, lack tender feelings for others, be indifferent to feelings of others, and are unable to form close relationships with more than two people. Schizoid personality disorder, however, does not include the characteristic patterns of speech, behavior, and thought associated with **schizotypal personality disorder**. Schizoid personality disorder is sometimes referred to as a "pleasure deficiency" because of the seeming inability of the person affected to experience joyful or pleasurable responses to life situations.

### Description

People with schizoid personality disorder have little or no interest in developing close interpersonal relationships. They appear aloof, introverted, and prefer being alone. Those who know them often label them as shy or a "loner." They turn inward in an effort to shut out social relationships. It is common for people with schizoid personality disorder to avoid groups of people or appear disinterested in social situations, even when they involve family. They are often perceived by others as socially inept.

A closely related trait is the absence of emotional expression. Others routinely interpret this apparent void of emotion as disinterest, lack of concern, and insensitivity to the needs of others. The person with schizoid personality disorder has particular difficulty expressing anger or hostility. In the absence of any

recognizable emotion, the person portrays a dull demeanor and is easily overlooked by others. People with schizoid personality disorder tend to prefer to be viewed as “invisible,” which aids their quest to avoid social contact with others.

People with schizoid personality disorder may be able to hold jobs and meet the expectations of employers if the responsibilities do not require more than minimal interpersonal involvement. People with this disorder may be married, but do not develop close intimate relationships with their spouses and typically show no interest in sexual relations. Their speech is typically slow and monotonous with a lethargic demeanor. Because their tendency is to turn inward, they can easily become preoccupied with their own thoughts to the exclusion of what is happening in their environment. Attempts to communicate may drift into tangents or confusing associations. They are also prone to being absentminded.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The schizoid personality disorder has its roots in the family of the affected person. These families are typically emotionally reserved, have a high degree of formality, and have a communication style that is aloof and impersonal. Parents usually express inadequate amounts of affection to the child and provide insufficient amounts of emotional stimulus. This lack of stimulus during the first year of life is thought to be largely responsible for the person’s disinterest in forming close, meaningful relationships later in life.

People with schizoid personality disorder have learned to imitate the style of interpersonal relationships modeled in their families. In this environment, affected people fail to learn basic **communication skills** that would enable them to develop relationships and interact effectively with others. Their communication is often vague and fragmented, which others find confusing. Many individuals with schizoid personality disorder feel misunderstood by others.

### Symptoms

As presented in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. (*DSM-IV-TR*), the following seven diagnostic criteria are assessed in patients who may be diagnosed with schizoid personality disorder:

- Avoids close relationships. People with this disorder show no interest or enjoyment in developing interpersonal relationships; this may also include family

members. They perceive themselves as social misfits and believe they can function best when not dependent on anyone except themselves. They rarely date, often do not marry, and have few, if any, friends.

- Prefers solitude. They prefer and choose activities that they can do by themselves without dependence upon or involvement with others. Examples of activities they might choose include mechanical or abstract tasks such as computer or mathematical games.
- Avoids sex. There is typically little or no interest in having a sexual experience with another person. This would include a spouse if the affected person is married.
- Lacks pleasure. There is an absence of pleasure in most activities. A person with schizoid personality disorder seems unable to experience the full range of emotion accessible to most people.
- Lacks close friends. People affected with this disorder typically do not have the social skills necessary to develop meaningful interpersonal relationships. This results in few ongoing social relationships outside of immediate family members.
- Indifferent to praise or criticism. Neither positive nor negative comments made by others elicit an emotionally expressive reaction. Those with schizoid personality disorder do not appear concerned about what others might think of them. Despite their tendency to turn inward to escape social contact, they practice little introspection.
- Emotional detachment. The emotional style of those with schizoid personality disorder is aloof and perceived by others as distant or “cold.” They seem unable or uninterested in expressing empathy and concern for others. Emotions are significantly restricted and most social contacts would describe their personality as very bland, dull, or humorless. The person with schizoid personality disorder rarely picks up on or reciprocates normal communicational cues such as facial expressions, head nods, or smiles.

## Demographics

Of all **personality disorders**, schizoid personality disorder is the least commonly diagnosed personality disorder in the general population. The prevalence is approximately 1%. It is diagnosed slightly more often in males than in females.

## Diagnosis

The symptoms of schizoid personality disorder may begin in childhood or adolescence, showing as poor peer relationships, a tendency toward self-isolation,

and underachievement in school. Children with these tendencies appear socially out of step with peers and often become the object of malicious teasing by their peers, which increases the feelings of isolation and social ineptness they feel.

For a **diagnosis** of schizoid personality disorder to be accurately made, the affected person must exhibit an ongoing avoidance of social relationships and a restricted range of emotion in interpersonal relationships that began by early adulthood. There must also be the presence of at least four of the above-mentioned symptoms.

A common difficulty in diagnosing schizoid personality disorder is distinguishing it from autistic disorder and Asperger's syndrome, which are characterized by more severe deficits in social skills. Other individuals who would display social habits that might be viewed as "isolating" should not be given the diagnosis of schizoid personality disorder unless the personality traits are inflexible and cause significant obstacles to adequate functioning.

The diagnosis is based on a clinical interview to assess symptomatic behavior. Other assessment tools helpful in diagnosing schizoid personality disorder include:

- Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI-2)
- Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory (MCMI-II)
- Rorschach Psychodiagnostic Test
- Thematic Apperception Test (TAT)

### Treatments

A major goal of treating a patient diagnosed with schizoid personality disorder is to combat the tendencies toward social withdrawal. Strategies should focus on enhancing self-awareness and sensitivity to their relational contacts and environment.

#### *Psychodynamically oriented therapies*

A psychodynamic approach would typically not be the first choice of treatment due to the patient's poor ability to explore his or her thoughts, emotions, and behavior. When this treatment is used, it usually centers around building a therapeutic relationship with the patient that can act as a model for use in other relationships.

#### *Cognitive-behavioral therapy*

Attempting to cognitively restructure the patient's thoughts can enhance self-insight. Constructive ways of accomplishing this would include concrete assign-

ments such as keeping daily records of problematic behaviors or thoughts. Another helpful method can be teaching social skills through role-playing. This might enable individuals to become more conscious of communication cues given by others and sensitize them to others' needs.

#### *Group therapy*

**Group therapy** may provide patients with a socializing experience that exposes them to feedback from others in a safe, controlled environment. It can also provide a means of learning and practicing social skills in which they are deficient. Since patients usually avoid social contact, timing of group therapy is of particular importance. It is best to first develop a therapeutic relationship between therapist and patient before starting a group therapy treatment.

#### *Family and marital therapy*

It is unlikely that a person with schizoid personality disorder will seek **family therapy** or marital therapy. If pursued, it is usually on the initiative of the spouse or other family member. Many people with this disorder do not marry and end up living with and are dependent upon immediate family members. In this case, therapy may be recommended for family members to educate them on aspects of change or ways to facilitate communication. Marital therapy (also called **couples therapy**) may focus on helping the couple to become more involved in each other's lives or improve communication patterns.

#### *Medications*

Some patients with this disorder show signs of **anxiety** and **depression** that may prompt the use of medication to counteract these symptoms. In general, to date no definitive medication is used to treat schizoid symptoms.

#### *Prognosis*

Because people with schizoid personality disorder seek to be isolated from others, which includes those who might provide treatment, there is only a slight chance that most patients will seek help on their own initiative. Those who do may stop treatment prematurely because of their difficulty maintaining a relationship with the professional or their lack of motivation for change.

If the degree of social impairment is mild, treatment might succeed if its focus is on maintenance of relationships related to the patient's employment. The need for patients to support themselves financially can

## KEY TERMS

**Asperger's syndrome**—A condition in which young children experience impaired social interactions and develop limited repetitive patterns of behavior.

**Autistic disorder**—A developmental disability that appears early in life, in which normal brain development is disrupted and social and communication skills are retarded, sometimes severely.

**Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory (MCMI-II)**—A self-report instrument designed to help clinicians assess *DSM-IV*-related personality disorders and clinical syndromes. It provides insight into 14 personality disorders and 10 clinical syndromes.

**Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI-2)**—A comprehensive assessment tool widely used to diagnose personality disorders.

**Rorschach Psychodiagnostic Test**—This series of ten “inkblot” images allows patients to project their interpretations that can be used to diagnose particular disorders.

**Thematic Apperception Test (TAT)**—A projective test using stories and descriptions of pictures to reveal some of the dominant drives, emotions, sentiments, conflicts, and complexes of a personality.

act as a higher incentive for pursuit of treatment outcomes. Once treatment ends, however, it is highly likely the patient will **relapse** into a lifestyle of social isolation similar to that before treatment.

### Prevention

Because schizoid personality disorder originates in the patient's family of origin, the only known preventative measure is a nurturing, emotionally stimulating, and expressive caretaking environment.

*See also* Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Rorschach technique.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Beck, Aaron T., Arthur Freeman, and Denise D. Davis. *Cognitive Therapy of Personality Disorders*. 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2003.  
 Livesley, W. John. *Practical Management of Personality Disorder*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2003.

Millon, Theodore, and others. *Personality Disorders in Modern Life*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2004.  
 Vandenberg, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Camisa, Kathryn M., et al. “Personality Traits in Schizophrenia and Related Personality Disorders.” *Psychiatry Research* 133.1 (Jan. 2005): 23–33.  
 Kavalier-Adler, Susan. “Anatomy of Regret: A Developmental View of the Depressive Position and a Critical Turn Toward Love and Creativity in the Transforming Schizoid Personality.” *American Journal of Psychoanalysis* 64.1 (Mar. 2004): 39–76.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington DC 20005 <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Gary Gilles, MA  
 Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Schizophrenia

### Definition

Schizophrenia is a psychotic disorder or group of disorders whose symptoms include disturbances in thinking, emotional responsiveness, and behavior. Schizophrenia is the most chronic and disabling of the severe mental disorders, associated with abnormalities of **brain** structure and function, disorganized speech and behavior, **delusions**, and **hallucinations**. It is considered a psychotic disorder or a **psychosis**.

### Description

People diagnosed with schizophrenia do not always have the same set of symptoms; in addition, a given patient's symptoms may change over time. Since the nineteenth century, doctors have recognized different subtypes of the disorder, but no single classification system has gained universal acceptance. Some psychiatrists prefer to speak of schizophrenia as a group or family of disorders (“the schizophrenias”) rather than as a single entity. A standard professional reference, **The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)** acknowledges that its present classification of subtypes is not fully satisfactory for either clinical or research purposes; and states that “alternative subtyping schemes are being actively investigated.”

## E. FULLER TORREY (1937–)

Psychiatrist E. Fuller Torrey, who has been especially involved in researching and treating schizophrenia, is the author of numerous works of nonfiction dealing with mental illness. In his first major work, *The Mind Game: Witchdoctors and Psychiatrists*, he compares modern psychiatric practices to those of primitive witchdoctors, and in *The Death of Psychiatry* he alleges that modern psychiatry has misdiagnosed maladjustment as mental illness. In the latter work, Torrey advocates support systems for the socially traumatized and recommends neurological help for the truly unbalanced.

Torrey's other writings include *Why Did You Do That? Rainy Day Games for a Post-Industrial Society*, a game-book in which he counsels readers on the importance of recognizing biological, sociological, and psychological factors in assessing human behavior. He also

wrote *Surviving Schizophrenia: A Family Manual*, in which he supplements a detailed account of the disease's genetic origin and symptoms with testimony from schizophrenics. *Surviving Manic Depression: A Manual on Bipolar Disorder for Patients, Families, and Providers*, written with Michael B. Knable, discusses changes in the classification and approach to manic depression, or bipolar disorder, over the years. They also discuss reasons why many people who suffer from the effects of the disorder have not been treated. The authors include material on the risk factors and causes of manic depression as well as details on the variety of treatments available. Beatty concluded that the work is an "important book that may be useful for years." *Library Journal* critic Mary Ann Hughes felt that *Surviving Manic Depression* is "the best general book available on the subject" of bipolar disorder and its treatment.

The symptoms of schizophrenia can appear at any time after age six or seven, although onset during adolescence and early adult life is the most common pattern. There are a few case studies in the medical literature of schizophrenia in children younger than five, but they are extremely rare. Schizophrenia that appears after age 45 is considered late-onset schizophrenia. About 1–2% of cases are diagnosed in patients over 80.

The onset of symptoms in schizophrenia may be either abrupt (sudden) or insidious (gradual). Often, however, it goes undetected for two to three years after the onset of diagnosable symptoms, because the symptoms occur in the context of a previous history of cognitive and behavioral problems. The patient may have had panic attacks, **social phobia**, or **substance abuse** problems, any of which can complicate the process of **diagnosis**. In most cases, however, the patient's first psychotic episode is preceded by a prodromal (warning) phase, with a variety of behaviors that may include angry outbursts, withdrawal from social activities, loss of attention to personal hygiene and grooming, anhedonia (loss of one's capacity for enjoyment), and other unusual behaviors. The psychotic episode itself is typically characterized by delusions, which are false but strongly held beliefs that result from the patient's inability to separate real from unreal events, and hallucinations, which are disturbances of sense perception. Hallucinations can affect any of the senses, although the most common form of hallucination in schizophrenia is auditory ("hearing voices"). Autobiographical accounts by people who have recovered from schizophrenia indicate that these hallucinations are

frightening and confusing. Patients often find it difficult to concentrate on work, studies, or formerly pleasurable activities because of the constant "static" or "buzz" of hallucinated voices.

There is no "typical" pattern or course of the disorder following the first acute episode. The patient may never have a second psychotic episode; others have occasional episodes over the course of their lives but can lead fairly normal lives otherwise. About 70% of patients diagnosed with schizophrenia have a second psychotic breakdown within five to seven years after the first one. Some patients remain chronically ill; of these, some remain at a fairly stable level while others grow steadily worse and become severely disabled.

About 20% of patients with schizophrenia recover the full level of functioning that they had before the onset of the disorder, according to NIMH statistics; but the remaining 80% have problems re-integrating into mainstream society. These patients are often underachievers in school and in the workplace, and they usually have difficulty forming healthy relationships with others. The majority (60–70%) of patients with schizophrenia do not marry or have children, and most have very few friends or social contacts. The impact of these social difficulties as well as the **stress** caused by the symptoms themselves is reflected in the high **suicide** rate among patients with schizophrenia. About 10% commit suicide within the first 10 years after their diagnosis—a rate 20 times higher than that of the general population.

### *Subtypes of schizophrenia*

The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies five subtypes of schizophrenia:

- Paranoid type. The central feature of this subtype is the presence of auditory hallucinations or delusions alongside relatively unaffected mood and cognitive functions. The patient's delusions usually involve persecution, grandiosity, or both. About a third of schizophrenias diagnosed in the United States belong to this subtype.
- Disorganized type. The core features of this subtype include disorganized speech, disorganized behavior, and flat or inappropriate affect. The person may lose the ability to perform most activities of daily living, and may also make faces or display other oddities of behavior. This type of schizophrenia was formerly called "hebephrenic" (derived from the Greek word for puberty), because some of the patients' behaviors resemble adolescent silliness.
- Catatonic type. Catatonia refers to disturbances of movement, whether remaining motionless for long periods of time or excessive and purposeless movement. The absence of movement may take the form of catalepsy, which is a condition in which the patient's body has a kind of waxy flexibility and can be repositioned by others; or negativism, a form of postural rigidity in which the patient resists being moved by others. A catatonic patient may assume bizarre postures or imitate the movements of other people.
- Undifferentiated type. Patients in this subtype have some of the characteristic symptoms of schizophrenia but do not meet the full criteria for the paranoid, disorganized, or catatonic subtypes.
- Residual type. Patients in this category have had at least one psychotic episode, continue to have some negative symptoms of schizophrenia, but do not have current psychotic symptoms.

### *Cultural variables*

There appear to be some differences across cultures in the symptoms associated with schizophrenia. The catatonic subtype appears to be more common in non-Western countries than in Europe or North America. Other studies indicate that persons diagnosed with schizophrenia in developing countries have a more acute onset of the disorder but better outcomes than patients in the industrialized countries.

## **Causes and symptoms**

### *Causes*

Schizophrenia is considered the end result of a combination of genetic, biochemical, developmental,

and environmental factors, some of which are still not completely understood. There is no known single cause of the disorder.

Researchers have known for many years that first-degree biological relatives of patients with schizophrenia have a 10% risk of developing the disorder, as compared with 1% in the general population. The monozygotic (identical) twin of a person with schizophrenia has a 40–50% risk. The fact that this risk is not higher, however, indicates that environmental as well as genetic factors are implicated in the development of schizophrenia.

Some specific regions on certain human chromosomes have been linked to schizophrenia. However, these regions tend to vary across ethnic groups. Scientists are inclined to think that the genetic factors underlying schizophrenia vary across different ethnic groups, so that it is highly unlikely that susceptibility to the disorder is determined by only one gene. Because of this, schizophrenia is considered a polygenic disorder.

There is some evidence that schizophrenia may be a type of developmental disorder related to the formation of faulty connections between nerve cells during fetal development. The changes in the brain that normally occur during puberty then interact with these connections to trigger the symptoms of the disorder. Other researchers have suggested that a difficult childbirth may result in developmental vulnerabilities that eventually lead to schizophrenia.

In early 2002, researchers at the NIMH demonstrated the existence of a connection between two abnormalities of brain functioning in patients with schizophrenia. The researchers used radioactive tracers and **positron emission tomography** (PET) to show that reduced activity in a part of the brain called the prefrontal cortex was associated in the patients, but not in the control subjects, with abnormally elevated levels of **dopamine** in the striatum. High levels of dopamine are related to the delusions and hallucinations of psychotic episodes in schizophrenia. These findings suggest that treatment directed at the prefrontal cortex might be more effective than present anti-psychotic medications, which essentially target dopamine levels without regard to specific areas of the brain.

Certain environmental factors during pregnancy are also associated with an increased risk of schizophrenia in the offspring. These include the mother's exposure to starvation or famine, influenza during the second trimester of pregnancy, and Rh incompatibility in a second or third pregnancy.

Some researchers are investigating a possible connection between schizophrenia and viral infections of the hippocampus, a structure in the brain that is associated with memory formation and the human stress response. It is thought that damage to the hippocampus might account for the sensory disturbances found in schizophrenia. Another line of research related to viral causes of schizophrenia concerns a protein deficiency in the brain.

Environmental stressors related to home and family life (e.g., parental death or divorce, family dysfunction) or to separation from the family of origin in late adolescence (e.g., going away to college or military training; marriage) may trigger the onset of schizophrenia in individuals with genetic or psychological vulnerabilities.

### *Symptoms*

The symptoms of schizophrenia are divided into two major categories: **positive symptoms**, which are defined by DSM-IV-TR as excesses or distortions of normal mental functions; and negative symptoms, which represent a loss or reduction of normal functioning. Of the two types, the negative symptoms are more difficult to evaluate because they may be influenced by a concurrent **depression** or a dull and unstimulating environment, but they account for much of the morbidity (unhealthiness) associated with schizophrenia.

**POSITIVE SYMPTOMS.** The positive symptoms of schizophrenia include four so-called “first-rank” or Schneiderian symptoms, named for a German **psychiatrist** who identified them in 1959:

- Delusions. A delusion is a false belief that is resistant to reason or to confrontation with actual facts. The most common form of delusion in patients with schizophrenia is persecutory; the person believes that others—family members, clinical staff, terrorists, etc.—are “out to get” them. Another common delusion is referential, which means that the person interprets objects or occurrences in the environment (a picture on the wall, a song played on the radio, laughter in the corridor, etc.) as being directed at or referring to them.
- Somatic hallucinations. Somatic hallucinations refer to sensations or perceptions about one’s body that have no known medical cause, such as feeling that snakes are crawling around in one’s intestines or that one’s eyes are emitting radioactive rays.
- Hearing voices commenting on one’s behavior or talking to each other. Auditory hallucinations are the most common form of hallucination in schizo-

phrenia, although visual, tactile, olfactory, and gustatory hallucinations may also occur. Personal accounts of recovery from schizophrenia often mention “the voices” as one of the most frightening aspects of the disorder.

- Thought insertion or withdrawal. These terms refer to the notion that other beings or forces (God, aliens from outer space, the CIA, etc.) can put thoughts or ideas into one’s mind or remove them.

Other positive symptoms of schizophrenia include:

- Disorganized speech and thinking. A person with schizophrenia may ramble from one topic to another (derailment or loose associations); may give unrelated answers to questions (tangentiality); or may say things that cannot be understood because there is no grammatical structure to the language (“word salad” or incoherence).
- Disorganized behavior. This symptom includes such behaviors as agitation; age-inappropriate silliness; inability to maintain personal hygiene; dressing inappropriately for the weather; sexual self-stimulation in public; shouting at people, etc. In one case study, the patient played his flute for hours on end while standing on top of the family car.
- Catatonic behavior. Catatonic behaviors have been described with regard to the catatonic subtype of schizophrenia. This particular symptom is sometimes found in other mental disorders.

**NEGATIVE SYMPTOMS.** The negative symptoms of schizophrenia include:

- Blunted or flattened affect. This term refers to loss of emotional expressiveness. The person’s face may be unresponsive or expressionless, and speech may lack vitality or warmth.
- Alogia. Alogia is sometimes called poverty of speech. The person has little to say and is not able to expand on their statements. A doctor examining the patient must be able to distinguish between alogia and unwillingness to speak.
- Avolition. The person is unable to begin or stay with goal-directed activities. They may sit in one location for long periods of time or show little interest in joining group activities.
- Anhedonia. Anhedonia refers to the loss of one’s capacity for enjoyment or pleasure.

**OTHER SYMPTOMS AND CHARACTERISTICS.** Although the following symptoms and features are not diagnostic criteria of schizophrenia, most patients with the disorder have one or more:

- Dissociative symptoms, particularly depersonalization and derealization.

- Anosognosia. This term originally referred to the inability of stroke patients to recognize their physical disabilities, but is sometimes used to refer to lack of insight in patients with schizophrenia. Anosognosia is associated with higher rates of noncompliance with treatment, a higher risk of repeated psychotic episodes, and a poorer prognosis for recovery.
- High rates of substance abuse disorders. About 50% of patients diagnosed with schizophrenia meet criteria for substance abuse or dependence. While substance abuse does not cause schizophrenia, it can worsen the symptoms of the disorder. Patients may have particularly bad reactions to amphetamines, cocaine, PCP (“angel dust”) or marijuana. It is thought that patients with schizophrenia are attracted to drugs of abuse as self-medication for some of their symptoms. The most common substance abused by patients with schizophrenia is tobacco; 90% of patients are heavy cigarette smokers, compared to 25–30% in the general adult population. Smoking is a serious problem for people with schizophrenia because it interferes with the effectiveness of their antipsychotic medications as well as increasing their risk of lung cancer and other respiratory diseases.
- High risk of suicide. About 40% of patients with schizophrenia attempt suicide at least once, and 10% eventually complete the act.
- High rates of obsessive-compulsive disorder and panic disorder.
- Downward drift. Downward drift is a sociological term that refers to having lower levels of educational achievement and/or employment than one’s parents.

**VIOLENT BEHAVIOR.** The connection between schizophrenia and personal assault or violence deserves mention because it is a major factor in the reactions of family members and the general public to the diagnosis. Researchers in both the United Kingdom and the United States have found that schizophrenia carries a heavier **stigma** than most other mental disorders, largely because of the mass media’s fascination with bizarre murders, dismemberment of animals, or other gruesome acts that are found to have been committed by a person with schizophrenia. Many patients report that the popular image of a schizophrenic as “a time bomb waiting to explode” is a source of considerable emotional stress.

Risk factors for violence in a patient diagnosed with schizophrenia include male sex, age below 30, prediagnosis history of violence, paranoid subtype, nonadherence to medication regimen, and heavy substance abuse. On the other hand, it should be noted

that most crimes of violence are committed by people without a diagnosis of schizophrenia.

## Demographics

In the United States, Canada, and Western Europe, the sex ratio in schizophrenia is 1.2:1, with males being affected slightly more often than females. There is a significant gender difference in average age at onset, however; the average for males is between ages 18 and 25, whereas for women there are two peaks, one between ages 25 and 35, and a second rise in incidence after age 45. About 15% of all women who develop schizophrenia are diagnosed after age 35. In some women, the first symptoms of the disorder appear postpartum (after giving birth). Many women with schizophrenia are initially misdiagnosed as having depression or **bipolar disorder**, because women with schizophrenia are likely to have more difficulties with emotional regulation than men with the disorder. In general, however, females have higher levels of functioning prior to symptom onset than males.

The incidence of schizophrenia in the United States appears to be uniform across racial and ethnic groups, with the exception of minority groups in urban neighborhoods in which they are a small proportion of the total population. A study done in the United Kingdom replicated American findings: There are significantly higher rates of schizophrenia among racial minorities living in large cities. The rates of schizophrenia are highest in areas in which these minority groups form the smallest proportion of the local population. The British study included Africans, West Indians of African descent, and Asians.

The incidence of schizophrenia in most developed countries appears to be higher among people born in cities than among those born in rural areas. In addition, there appears to be a small historical/generational factor, with the incidence of schizophrenia gradually declining in later-born groups.

Schizophrenia is a leading cause of disability, not only in the United States, but in other developed countries around the world. The World Health Organization (WHO) counts schizophrenia as in the world’s ten leading cause of disability. According to the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), 2.2 million American adults, or 1.1% of the population over age 18, suffer from schizophrenia. Other estimates run as high as 1.5% of the population.

Schizophrenia is disproportionately costly to society for reasons that go beyond the sheer number of people affected by the disorder. Although patients with schizophrenia are little more than 1% of the

population, they account for 2.5% of all health care costs. In the United States, patients with schizophrenia fill 25% of all hospital beds and account for about 20% of all Social Security disability days.

In addition, the onset of the disorder typically occurs during a young person's last years of high school or their first years in college or the workforce; thus it often destroys their long-term plans for their future. According to the federal Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, 70–80% of people diagnosed with schizophrenia are either unemployed or underemployed (working in jobs well below their actual capabilities). Ten percent of Americans with permanent disabilities have schizophrenia, as well as 20–30% of the homeless population.

## Diagnosis

There are no symptoms that are unique to schizophrenia and no single symptom that is a diagnostic hallmark of the disorder. In addition, there are no laboratory tests or **imaging studies** that can establish or confirm a diagnosis of schizophrenia. The diagnosis is based on a constellation or group of related symptoms that are, according to *DSM-IV-TR*, "associated with impaired occupational or social functioning."

As part of the process of diagnosis, the doctor will take a careful medical history and order laboratory tests of the patient's blood or urine in order to rule out general medical conditions or substance abuse disorders that may be accompanied by disturbed behavior. X rays or other imaging studies of the head may also be ordered. Medical conditions to be ruled out include epilepsy, head trauma, brain tumor, Cushing's syndrome, Wilson's disease, Huntington's disease, and encephalitis. Drugs of abuse that may cause symptoms resembling schizophrenia include amphetamines ("speed"), cocaine, and **phencyclidine** (PCP). In older patients, **dementia** and **delirium** must be ruled out. If the patient has held jobs involving exposure to mercury, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), or other toxic substances, environmental poisoning must also be considered in the differential diagnosis.

The doctor must also rule out other mental disorders that may be accompanied by psychotic symptoms, such as mood disorders; brief psychotic disorders; dissociative disorder not otherwise specified or **dissociative identity disorder**; **delusional disorder**; schizotypal, schizoid, or paranoid **personality disorders**; and **pervasive developmental disorders**. In children, childhood-onset schizophrenia must be distinguished from **communication disorders** with disorganized speech and from attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.

After other organic and mental disorders have been ruled out, it must be determined whether the patient meets the following criteria, as specified by *DSM-IV-TR*:

- Presence of positive and negative symptoms. The patient must have two (or more) of the following symptoms during a one-month period: delusions; hallucinations; disorganized speech; disorganized or catatonic behavior; negative symptoms.
- Decline in social, interpersonal, or occupational functioning, including personal hygiene or self-care.
- Duration. The symptomatic behavior must last for at least six months.

## Treatments

Current treatment of schizophrenia focuses on symptom reduction and **relapse prevention**, since the causes of the disorder have not yet been clearly identified. Unfortunately, not all patients with schizophrenia receive adequate treatment. In addition, many schizophrenics do not take their medication because it does not adequately control their symptoms or produces adverse side effects.

## Medications

Antipsychotic medications are the primary treatment for schizophrenia. Drug therapy for the disorder, however, is complicated by several factors: the unpredictability of a given patient's response to specific medications, the number of potentially troublesome side effects, the high rate of substance abuse among patients with schizophrenia, and the possibility of drug interactions between antipsychotic medications and **antidepressants** or other medications that may be prescribed for the patient.

**NEUROLEPTICS.** The first antipsychotic medications for schizophrenia were introduced in the 1950s, and known as dopamine antagonists, or DAs. They are sometimes called neuroleptics, and include **haloperidol** (Haldol), **chlorpromazine** (Thorazine), **perphenazine** (Trilafon), and **fluphenazine** (Prolixin). About 40% of patients, however, fail to respond to treatment with these medications. Neuroleptics can control most of the positive symptoms of schizophrenia as well as reduce the frequency and severity of relapses but they have little effect on negative symptoms. In addition, these medications have problematic side effects, ranging from dry mouth, blurry vision, and restlessness (akathisia) to such long-term side effects as **tardive dyskinesia** (TD). TD is a disorder characterized by involuntary movements of the mouth, lips, arms, or legs; it affects about 15–20% of

patients who have been receiving neuroleptic medications over a period of years. Discomfort related to these side effects is one reason why 40% of patients treated with the older antipsychotics do not adhere to their medication regimens.

**ATYPICAL ANTIPSYCHOTICS.** The atypical antipsychotics are newer medications introduced in the 1990s. They are sometimes called serotonin dopamine antagonists, or SDAs. These medications include **aripiprazole** (Abilify), **clozapine** (Clozaril), **risperidone** (Risperdal), **quetiapine** (Seroquel), **ziprasidone** (Geodon), and **olanzapine** (Zyprexa). These newer drugs are more effective in treating the negative symptoms of schizophrenia and have fewer side effects than the older antipsychotics. Clozapine has been reported to be effective in patients who do not respond to neuroleptics, and to reduce the risk of suicide attempts. The atypical antipsychotics, however, do have weight gain as a side effect; and patients taking clozapine must have their blood monitored periodically for signs of agranulocytosis, or a drop in the number of white blood cells.

Recently, the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of **Intervention** Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study was a Phase IV clinical trial funded by the National Institute of Mental Health and coordinated by the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. The study investigated the effectiveness of several atypical antipsychotic drugs against that of a conventional drug. Contrary to expectations, however, it was found that the new drugs did not perform significantly better than the older drug. The results of the CATIE study also had implications to help schizophrenics and their physicians make decisions about which other drugs to try when one antipsychotic medication was unacceptable either because it did not adequately control symptoms or produced adverse side effects.

**OTHER PRESCRIPTION MEDICATIONS.** Patients with schizophrenia have a lifetime prevalence of 80% for major depression; others suffer from phobias or other **anxiety disorders**. The doctor may prescribe antidepressants or a short course of **benzodiazepines** along with antipsychotic medications.

### *Inpatient treatment*

Patients with schizophrenia are usually hospitalized during acute psychotic episodes, to prevent harm to themselves or to others, and to begin treatment with antipsychotic medications. A patient having a first psychotic episode is usually given a **computed tomography** (CT) or **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) scan to rule out structural brain disease.

### *Outpatient treatment*

In recent years, patients with schizophrenia who have been stabilized on antipsychotic medications have been given psychosocial therapies of various types to assist them with motivation, self-care, and forming relationships with others. In addition, because many patients have had their education or vocational training interrupted by the onset of the disorder, they may be helped by therapies directed toward improving their social functioning and work skills.

Specific outpatient treatments that have been used with patients with schizophrenia include:

- Rehabilitation programs. These programs may offer vocational counseling, job training, problem-solving and money management skills, use of public transportation, and social skills training.
- Cognitive-behavioral therapy and supportive psychotherapy.
- Family psychoeducation. This approach is intended to help family members understand the patient's illness, cope with the problems it creates for other family members, and minimize stresses that may increase the patient's risk of relapse.
- Self-help groups. These groups provide mutual support for family members as well as patients. They can also serve as advocacy groups for better research and treatment, and to protest social stigma and employment discrimination.

### *Alternative and complementary therapies*

Alternative and complementary therapies that are being investigated for the treatment of schizophrenia include gingko biloba, an Asian shrub, and vitamin therapy. One Chinese study reported that a group of patients who had not responded to conventional antipsychotic medications benefited from a thirteen-week trial of gingko extract, with significantly fewer side effects. Vitamin therapy is recommended by naturopathic practitioners on the grounds that many hospitalized patients with schizophrenia suffer from nutritional deficiencies. The supplements recommended include folic acid, niacin, vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, and vitamin C.

### *Prognosis*

The prognosis for patients diagnosed with schizophrenia varies. About 20% recover their previous level of functioning, while another 10% achieve significant and lasting improvement. About 30–35% show some improvement with intermittent relapses and some disabilities, while the remainder are severely and permanently incapacitated. Factors associated with a good prognosis include relatively good

## KEY TERMS

**Affect**—The expression of emotion displayed to others through facial expressions, hand gestures, tone of voice, etc. Types of affect include: flat (inanimate, no expression), blunted (minimally responsive), inappropriate (incongruous expressions of emotion relative to the content of a conversation), and labile (sudden and abrupt changes in type and intensity of emotion).

**Agranulocytosis**—A blood disorder characterized by a reduction in the number of circulating white blood cells (granulocytes). White blood cells defend the body against infections. Agranulocytosis is a potential side effect of some of the newer antipsychotic medications used to treat schizophrenia.

**Akathisia**—Agitated or restless movement, usually affecting the legs. Movement is accompanied by a sense of discomfort and an inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive for periods of time. Akathisia is a common side effect of some neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

**Anhedonia**—Loss of the capacity to experience pleasure. Anhedonia is one of the so-called negative symptoms of schizophrenia, and is also a symptom of major depression.

**Anosognosia**—Lack of awareness of the nature of one's illness. The term is usually applied to stroke patients, but is sometimes used to refer to lack of insight on the part of patients with schizophrenia. Anosognosia appears to be caused by the illness itself; it does not appear to be a form of denial or inappropriate coping mechanism. It is, however, a factor in nonadherence to treatment regimens and the increased risk of relapse.

**Atypical antipsychotics**—A group of newer medications for the treatment of psychotic symptoms that were introduced in the 1990s. The atypical

antipsychotics include clozapine, risperidone, quetiapine, ziprasidone, and olanzapine. They are sometimes called serotonin dopamine antagonists, or SDAs.

**Blunted affect**—A term that refers to the loss of emotional expressiveness sometimes found in patients with schizophrenia. It is sometimes called flattened affect.

**Catatonia**—Disturbance of motor behavior with either extreme stupor or random, purposeless activity.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact. Common delusions in schizophrenia include delusions of persecution, delusions about one's importance (sometimes called delusions of grandeur), or delusions of being controlled by others.

**Dementia praecox**—A late nineteenth-century term for schizophrenia.

**Dopamine**—A neurotransmitter that acts within certain brain cells to help regulate emotions and movement. Some of the symptoms of schizophrenia are related to excessive levels of dopamine activity in a part of the brain called the striatum.

**Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

**First-rank symptoms**—A list of symptoms that have been considered to be diagnostic of schizophrenia. They include delusions; somatic hallucinations; hearing voices commenting on one's behavior; and thought insertion or withdrawal. First-rank symptoms are sometimes called Schneiderian symptoms, after the name of Kurt Schneider, the German psychiatrist who listed them in 1959.

functioning prior to the first psychotic episode; a late or sudden onset of illness; female sex; treatment with antipsychotic medications shortly after onset; good **compliance** with treatment; a family history of mood disorders rather than schizophrenia; minimal cognitive impairment; and a diagnosis of paranoid or non-deficit subtype. Factors associated with a poor prognosis include early age of onset; a low level of prior functioning; delayed treatment; heavy substance abuse; noncompliance with treatment; a family history

of schizophrenia; and a diagnosis of disorganized or deficit subtype with many negative symptoms.

### Prevention

The multifactorial and polygenic etiology (origins or causes) of schizophrenia complicates the search for preventive measures against the disorder. It is possible that the complete mapping of the human genome will identify a finite number of

**Gingko biloba**—A shade tree native to China with fan-shaped leaves and fleshy seeds with edible kernels. Gingko biloba extract is being studied as a possible complementary or adjunctive treatment for schizophrenia.

**Hallucination**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Hebephrenic schizophrenia**—An older term for what is now known as the disorganized subtype of schizophrenia.

**Insidious**—Proceeding gradually and inconspicuously but with serious effect. Schizophrenia sometimes has an insidious rather than an acute onset.

**Morbidity**—The unhealthiness or disease characteristics associated with a mental disorder.

**Negative symptoms**—Symptoms of schizophrenia that represent a loss or reduction of normal functioning.

**Neuroleptic**—Another name for the older antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**Polygenic**—A trait or disorder that is determined by a group of genes acting together. Most human characteristics, including height, weight, and general body build, are polygenic. Schizophrenia and late-onset Alzheimer’s disease are considered polygenic disorders.

**Positive symptoms**—Symptoms of schizophrenia that represent excesses or distortions of normal mental functions.

**Prodromal**—Premonitory; having the character of a warning. The first psychotic episode in schizophrenia is often preceded by a prodromal phase.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an over-arching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

**Reality testing**—A phrase that refers to a person’s ability to distinguish between subjective feelings and objective reality. A person who knows that their body is real even though they may be experiencing it as unreal, for example, is said to have intact reality testing.

**Referential**—A type of delusion in which the person misinterprets items, minor occurrences, or other people’s behavior as referring to them. Misinterpretations of this sort that are not as resistant to reality as a delusion are sometimes called ideas of reference.

**Schneiderian symptoms**—Another name for first-rank symptoms of schizophrenia.

**Striatum**—A part of the basal ganglia, a deep structure in the cerebral hemisphere of the brain. Abnormally high levels of dopamine in the striatum are thought to be related to the delusions and hallucinations of schizophrenia.

**Supportive**—An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or educational approaches to treatment.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

**Thought insertion/withdrawal**—The notion that an outside force (space aliens, evil people, etc.) can put thoughts or ideas into one’s mind or remove them. It is considered one of the first-rank symptoms of schizophrenia.

genes that contribute to susceptibility to schizophrenia. The NIMH has presently compiled the world’s largest registry of families affected by schizophrenia in order to pinpoint specific genes for further study. The NIMH also sponsors a Prevention Research Initiative to identify points in the development of schizophrenia at which patients could benefit from the application of preventive efforts.

*See also* Medication-induced movement disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Kingdon, David G., and Douglas Turkington. *Cognitive Therapy of Schizophrenia*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.
- Lieberman, Jeffrey A., T. Scott Stroup, and Diana O. Perkins, eds. *The American Psychiatric Publishing*

- Textbook of Schizophrenia.* Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2006.
- Marley, James A. *Family Involvement in Treating Schizophrenia: Models, Essential Skills, and Process.* Binghamton, NY: Haworth, 2003.
- Shean, Glenn. *Understanding and Treating Schizophrenia: Contemporary Research, Theory, and Practice.* Binghamton, NY: Haworth Clinical Practice Press, 2004.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology.* Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.
- Williamson, Peter. *Mind, Brain, and Schizophrenia.* New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.

#### PERIODICALS

- Barrowclough, Christine, and others. "Group Cognitive-Behavioural Therapy for Schizophrenia." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 189.6 (Dec. 2006): 527–32.
- Carr, Vaughan J., Terry J. Lewin, and Amanda L. Neil. "What Is the Value of Treating Schizophrenia?" *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry* 40.11–12 (Nov. 2006): 963–71.
- Gray, Richard, et al. "Adherence Therapy for People with Schizophrenia." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 189.6 (Dec. 2006): 508–14.
- Lawrence, R., T. Bradshaw, and H. Mairs. "Group Cognitive Behavioural Therapy for Schizophrenia: A Systematic Review of the Literature." *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing* 13.6 (Dec. 2006): 673–81.
- Lipkovich, I., et al. "Predictors of Risk for Relapse in Patients With Schizophrenia or Schizoaffective Disorder During Olanzapine Drug Therapy." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (Apr.–Jun. 2007): 305–10.
- Masand, Prakash S., et al. "Polypharmacy in Schizophrenia." *International Journal of Psychiatry in Clinical Practice* 10.4 (Dec. 2006): 258–63.
- Yanos, P. T., and R. H. Moos. "Determinants of Functioning and Well-Being Among Individuals With Schizophrenia: An Integrated Model." *Clinical Psychology Review* 27.1 (Jan. 2007): 58–77.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. Telephone: (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.
- The National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). 200 North Glebe Road, Suite 1015, Arlington, VA 22203-3754. Telephone: (800) 950-NAMI or (703) 524-7600. <[www.nami.org](http://www.nami.org)>.
- National Alliance for Research on Schizophrenia and Depression (NARSAD). 60 Cutter Mill Road, Suite 404, Great Neck, NY 11021. Telephone: (516) 829-0091. <[www.mhsource.com](http://www.mhsource.com)>.
- National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

National Mental Health Association (NMHA). 1021 Prince Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2971. Telephone: (800) 969-6942 or (703) 684-7722. <[www.nmha.org](http://www.nmha.org)>.

#### OTHER

- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *The Numbers Count.* NIH Publication No. 01-4584 (2000). <[www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/numbers.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/numbers.cfm)>.
- National Institutes of Health (NIH). News Release, January 28, 2002. "Scans Link 2 Key Pieces of Schizophrenia Puzzle." <[www.nih.gov/news/pr/jan2002/nimh-28.htm](http://www.nih.gov/news/pr/jan2002/nimh-28.htm)>.

Rebecca Frey, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Schizophreniform disorder

### Definition

Schizophreniform disorder (SFD) is characterized by the same basic features as **schizophrenia**, but with episodes lasting only one to six months. **Hallucinations**, **delusions**, and strange bodily movements or lack of movements (catatonic behavior) may be observed, or the patient may display peculiar speech, lack of drive to act on his/her own behalf, bizarre behavior, a wooden emotions or near-absent emotionality. However, in SFD, the patient's social or occupational functioning is not necessarily impaired. In cases where the symptoms continue beyond six months, the **diagnosis** is changed to schizophrenia.

### Description

The person experiencing SFD shows at least two psychotic symptoms, which may be either "positive" or "negative." **Positive symptoms** are those that are present but that do not normally occur or which are in excess of what normally occurs. Positive symptoms of **psychosis** include hallucinations, delusions, strange bodily movements or frozen movement (catatonic behavior), peculiar speech, and bizarre or primitive (socially inappropriate) behavior. **Negative symptoms** are factors that normally occur but are absent or deficient with the disorder. Various deficiencies in behavior, emotionality, or speech constitute the negative symptoms of psychosis that are observed in some cases of SFD. Negative symptoms of psychosis include avolition, affective flattening, and logia.

Avolition is a lack of effort to act on one's own behalf or to engage in behaviors directed at accomplishing a purpose. Affective flattening or blunted **affect** refers to a decrease or low level of emotion,

shown as a wooden quality to one's emotions or a near absence of emotionality. Alogia refers to a disruption in the thought process reflected in the person's speech. One form of alogia is "poverty of speech." Impoverished speech is brief, limited, and terse and generally emerges only in response to questions or prompts rather than flowing spontaneously. An impairment termed "poverty of content" occurs when the information or concepts that the individual is attempting to convey cannot be understood because of limitations in the method of communicating. The meaning behind the phrases is obscured or missing. Typically, in poverty of content, the person's speech, while comprehensible in terms of its orderliness of grammar and vocabulary, does not convey substantial meaning because the phrasing is overly concrete and literal or overly abstract and fanciful.

Among the various positive symptoms of psychosis that can be a part of SFD, delusions are a fairly common. Delusions are strongly held irrational and unrealistic beliefs that are highly resistant to alteration. Even when the person encounters evidence that would invalidate the delusion, the unjustified and improbable belief remains a conviction. Often, delusions are paranoid or persecutory in tone. In these types of delusions, the person is excessively suspicious and continually feels at the mercy of conspirators believed to be determined to cause harm to the sufferer. However, delusions can also take on other overtones. Some delusions are grandiose, while others may involve elaborate love fantasies (erotomanic delusions). Delusions may involve somatic content, or may revolve around extreme and irrational jealousy.

Peculiar or disorganized speech, catatonic behavior, and bizarre or primitive behavior are all additional positive psychotic symptoms that may occur in SFD. Speech disorganization can involve words blended together into incomprehensible statements, also known as "word salad." In some persons disorganized speech takes the form of echolalia, which is the repetition of another person's exact spoken words, restated either immediately after the initial speaker or after a delay of minutes or hours. Catatonic behavior or **catatonia** involves the presence of one of the possible extremes related to movement. Catalepsy is the motionless end of the catatonic spectrum; in catalepsy, a person may remain unmoving in one fixed position for long periods. The opposite end of the catatonia phenomenon is demonstrated in rapid or persistently repeated movements, recurrent grimacing and odd facial expressions, and contorted or strange gestures. Bizarre or primitive behavior in SFD ranges from childlike behaviors in unsuitable circumstances

to unusual practices such as hoarding refuse items perceived by the sufferer to be valuable, caching food all over the home, or wandering purposelessly through the streets.

Only rarely would all these various psychotic symptoms be observed simultaneously in one person with SFD. Instead, each individual with SFD has a constellation of symptoms, practices, and thought processes that is unique to that person.

Unlike any other diagnoses offered in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*, the SFD diagnosis always includes an indication of the patient's prognosis—the potential outcome for an individual with a particular illness—based on the features observed and the usual course of the illness. If an individual with SFD has several positive prognostic factors, there is a much higher likelihood of complete recovery without **relapse** into psychosis. Such positive prognostic factors include prominent confusion during the illness, rapid (rather than gradual) development of symptoms during a four-week period, good previous interpersonal and goal-oriented functioning, and lack of negative symptoms of psychosis.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Several views regarding the causes of the disorder have been put forth by researchers and clinicians.

**AN EARLY PHASE OF ANOTHER PSYCHIATRIC DISORDER.** A number of follow-up studies have examined the relationship between SFD and other disorders such as schizophrenia, **schizoaffective disorder**, and **bipolar disorder**. The majority of these studies have found that between 50% and 75% of persons with SFD eventually develop schizophrenia. Of those persons with a history of SFD who do not subsequently receive a diagnosis of schizophrenia, only a small portion have no further psychiatric disturbance. The other diagnoses that may be observed in persons formerly diagnosed with SFD are schizoaffective disorder or bipolar I disorder.

The most common subsequent diagnosis is schizophrenia, with the next most common being schizoaffective disorder. Because of the high rate of later schizophrenia in SFD sufferers, many clinicians have come to think of SFD as being an initial phase of schizophrenia. It is impossible to identify, during an episode of SFD, whether any one particular case will improve without any relapse into psychotic symptoms, or if the mental health client is actually in the early

phase of schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorder. Follow-up studies indicate that being frequently confused during a period of SFD is often associated with gradual complete recovery.

**LENGTHY POSTPARTUM PSYCHOSIS.** Intense hormonal changes occurring in childbirth and immediately afterward can result in a short-term psychotic disorder often referred to as “postpartum psychosis.” When the psychotic symptoms in this condition persist for more than one month but fewer than six months, an SFD diagnosis may be given.

**DIATHESIS AND STRESS.** “Diathesis” is a medical term meaning that some element of one’s physiology makes one particularly prone to develop an illness if exposed to the right conditions. Diathesis is another way of saying there is a personal predisposition to develop a disorder; the predisposition is biologically based and is genetically acquired (inherited in the person’s genes). Temporary psychotic reactions may occur in persons who have the diathesis for psychosis, when the individual is placed under marked **stress**. The stress may result from typical life transition experiences such as moving away from home the first time, being widowed, or getting divorced. In some cases, the stressor is more intense or unusual, such as surviving a natural disaster, wartime service, being taken hostage, or surviving a terrorist attack. When the psychotic responses last less than a month, then this reaction is labeled “brief psychotic disorder.” Highly susceptible persons may show psychotic symptoms for longer than one month and might be given the SFD diagnosis. If the psychotic symptoms are purely reactive, when the stressor ceases or more support is available, the individual is likely to return to a nonpsychotic mode of functioning. In persons with a strong diathesis or predisposition, the initial psychotic reaction may “tip over” from the category of a brief reaction into a longer-term, persistent psychiatric disorder. The diathesis-stress model is applied not only to SFD, but also to schizophrenia, schizoaffective disorder, and the most severe forms of mood disorders.

**CULTURALLY DEFINED DISORDERS.** Many cultures have forms of mental disorder, unique to that culture, that would meet criteria for SFD. In culturally defined disorders, a consistent set of features and presumed causes of the syndrome are localized to that community. Such disorders are termed “culture-bound.” Examples of culture-bound syndromes that might meet SFD criteria are “amok” (Malaysia), or “locura” (Latino Americans). Amok is a syndrome characterized by brooding, persecutory delusions, and aggressive actions. Locura involves incoherence, agitation, social dysfunction, erratic behavior, and hallucinations.

### Symptoms

The *DSM-IV-TR* provides three major criteria for SFD. First, the patient must display at least two persistent positive or negative symptoms of psychosis (delusions; disorganized speech that is strange, peculiar, or difficult to comprehend; disorganized, bizarre, or childlike behavior; catatonic behavior; hallucinations; or negative symptoms). In addition, the symptoms must be manifest for a limited time (i.e., at least one month, but less than six months). Third, the symptoms must not be attributable to biological influences (e.g., drugs, medication, alcohol, physical illness or injury) or another disorder (e.g., schizoaffective disorder or schizophrenia).

### Demographics

The actual rate of SFD is unknown, mainly because SFD is difficult to measure except in retrospect. In the first few weeks of symptoms, SFD cannot be differentiated from **brief psychotic disorder**. Once the symptoms persist past one month and are identified as SFD, six months or more must pass before one can determine if a mental health consumer had “classic” SFD or was in the early phase of a more chronic mental disorder. Given that a majority of SFD sufferers go on to be diagnosed with schizophrenia, the best inferences about demographics and gender differences in SFD would be drawn from similar information available regarding schizophrenia.

### Diagnosis

Despite the clarity of the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria, identification of SFD is less than clear-cut. The emphasis on the length of time that symptoms have been evident and the presence or absence of good prognostic factors make SFD one of the most unusually defined of the *DSM-IV-TR* disorders. While duration of symptoms is the major distinction among brief psychotic disorder, SFD, and schizophrenia, it can be difficult to clearly determine the length of time symptoms have existed. An additional complication is that the cultural context in which the “psychotic symptoms” are experienced determines whether the behaviors are viewed as pathological or acceptable. When psychotic-like behaviors are expected to occur normally as part of the person’s culture or religion, and when the behaviors occur in a culturally positive context such as a religious service, SFD would not be diagnosed.

Information about current and past experiences is collected in an interview with the client, and possibly in discussion with the client's family. Psychological assessment instruments (e.g., **Rorschach technique**, **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory**, and mood disorder questionnaires) or structured diagnostic interviews may also be used to aid in the diagnosis.

In addition, part of defining SFD involves examining possible biological influences on the development of the individual's psychotic symptoms. When the psychotic features result from a physical disease, a reaction to medication, or intoxication with drugs or alcohol, then these symptoms are not considered SFD. Also, if hallucinations, delusions, or other psychotic symptoms are experienced solely during episodes of clinical **depression** or mania, the patient is diagnosed with a mood disorder rather than SFD.

### Treatments

The main line of treatment for SFD is antipsychotic medication. These medications are often very effective in treating SFD. Mood-stabilizing drugs similar to those used in bipolar disorder may be used if there is little response to other interventions. Postpartum psychosis is also treated with antipsychotics and, possibly, hormones. Supportive therapy and education about mental illness is often valuable. The most useful interventions in culture-bound syndromes are those that are societally prescribed; for example, a sacred ceremony to ease the restless spirits of deceased ancestors might be a usual method of ending the psychotic-like state, in that particular culture.

### Prognosis

For the large number of mental health patients with SFD who are later diagnosed with a more chronic form of mental illness, the prognosis is fairly poor. However, when the condition manifests with prominent confusion during the illness, rapid (rather than gradual) development of symptoms during a four-week period, good previous interpersonal and goal-oriented functioning and lack of negative symptoms of psychosis, a full recovery is much more likely.

### Prevention

If the SFD is a persistent postpartum psychosis, a prevention option is to avoid having additional children. The physician may anticipate the postpartum problem and prescribe an antipsychotic medication regimen to begin immediately after delivery as a preventive measure. Although prevention of psychotic disorders is difficult to accomplish, the earlier treat-

## KEY TERMS

**Eerotomanic delusions**—Erotomanic delusions involve the mistaken conviction that someone is in love with the delusional person. Often, the love object is a public figure of some prominence, such as an actress, rock star, or political figure. David Letterman and Jodie Foster are celebrities who have both been victimized by persons with erotomanic delusions.

**Grandiose delusions**—Grandiose delusions magnify the person's importance; the delusional person may believe himself or herself to be a famous person, to have magical superpowers, or to be someone in a position of enormous power (such as being the king or president).

**Hallucinations**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may "hear" sounds or "see" people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself (Plural: psychoses.)

**Somatic**—Somatic comes from *soma*, the Greek word for body; thus, somatic hallucinations are bodily. Somatic delusions are strongly held but erroneous ideas about the characteristics or functioning of one's body. An example is a mental health client who refuses to eat because of a belief that there is a hole in the stomach that will spill anything consumed into the body cavity, when such is not actually the case.

ment begins, the better the outcome. Therefore, efforts are more generally focused on early identification of SFD and other psychotic-spectrum disorders.

*See also* Brief psychotic disorder; Delusional disorder; Schizotypal personality disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Mueser, Kim T. "Family Intervention for Schizophrenia."
- VandeCreek, Leon, ed. *Innovations in Clinical Practice:*

*Focus on Adults.* Sarasota, FL: Professional Resource Press/Professional Resource Exchange, 2005. 219–33.  
VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

Norman, Ross M. G., et al. "Early Signs in Schizophrenia Spectrum Disorders." *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease* 193.1 (Jan. 2005): 17–23.

Deborah Rosch Eifert, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Schizotypal personality disorder

### Definition

Schizotypal personality disorder is a personality disorder characterized by peculiarities of thought, perception, speech, and behavior. Although schizotypal personality disorder is considered a severe disorder, the symptoms are not severe enough to be classified as schizophrenic.

### Description

Schizotypal personality disorder is characterized by an ongoing pattern in which the affected person distances him- or herself from social and interpersonal relationships. Affected people typically have acute discomfort when put in circumstances where they must relate to others. These individuals are also prone to cognitive and perceptual distortions and a display a variety of eccentric behaviors that others often find confusing. People with schizotypal personality disorder are more comfortable turning inward, away from others, than learning to have meaningful interpersonal relationships. This preferred isolation contributes to distorted perceptions about how interpersonal relationships are supposed to happen. These individuals remain on the periphery of life and often drift from one aimless activity to another with few, if any, meaningful relationships.

A person with schizotypal personality disorder has odd behaviors and thoughts are typically be viewed by others as eccentric, erratic, and bizarre. They are known on occasion to have brief psychotic episodes. Their speech, while coherent, is marked by a focus on trivial detail. Thought processes of people with schizotypal personality disorder include magical thinking, suspiciousness, and illusions. These thought

patterns are believed to be the sufferer's unconscious way of coping with social **anxiety**. To some extent, these behaviors stem from being socially isolated and having a distorted view of appropriate interpersonal relations.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Schizotypal personality disorder is believed to stem from the affected person's family of origin. Usually the parents of the affected person were emotionally distant, formal, and displayed confusing parental communication. This **modeling** of remote, unaffectionate relationships is then reenacted in the social relationships encountered in the developing years. The social development of people with schizotypal personality disorder shows that many were also regularly humiliated by their parents, siblings, and peers resulting in significant relational mistrust. Many display low self-esteem, along with self-criticism and self-deprecating behavior. This further contributes to a sense that they are socially incapable of having meaningful interpersonal relationships.

#### Symptoms

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, the mental health manual, specifies nine diagnostic criteria for schizotypal personality disorder:

- Incorrect interpretations of events. Individuals with schizotypal personality disorder often have difficulty seeing the correct cause and effect of situations and how they affect others. For instance, the schizotypal may misread a simple nonverbal communication cue, such as a frown, as someone being displeased with them, when in reality it may have nothing to do with them. Their perceptions are often distortions of what is really happening externally, but they tend to believe their perceptions more than what others might say or do.
- Odd beliefs or magical thinking. These individuals may be superstitious or preoccupied with the paranormal. They often engage in these behaviors as a desperate means to find some emotional connection with the world they live in. This behavior is seen as a coping mechanism to add meaning in a world devoid of much meaning because of the social isolation these individuals experience.
- Unusual perceptual experiences. These might include having illusions, or attributing a particular event to some mysterious force or person who is not present. Affected people may also feel they have special

powers to influence events or predict an event before it happens.

- Odd thinking and speech. People with schizotypal personality disorder may have speech patterns that appear strange in their structure and phrasing. Their ideas are often loosely associated, prone to tangents, or vague in description. Some may verbalize responses by being overly concrete or abstract, and may insert words that serve to confuse rather than clarify a particular situation, yet make sense to the speaker. They are typically unable to have ongoing conversation and tend to talk only about matters that need immediate attention.
- Suspicious or paranoid thoughts. Individuals with schizotypal personality disorder are often suspicious of others and display paranoid tendencies.
- Emotionally expressive. Their general social demeanor is to appear aloof and isolated, behaving in a way that communicates they derive little joy from life. Most have an intense fear of being humiliated or rejected, yet repress most of these feelings for protective reasons.
- Eccentric behavior. People with schizotypal personality disorder are often viewed as odd or eccentric due to their unusual mannerisms or unconventional clothing choices. Their personal appearance may look unkempt—they may wear clothes that do not “fit together,” clothes that are too small or too large or are noticeably unclean.
- Lack of close friends. Because they lack the skills and confidence to develop meaningful interpersonal relationships, they prefer privacy and isolation. As they withdraw from relationships, they increasingly turn inward to avoid possible social rejection or ridicule. If they do have any ongoing social contact, it is usually restricted to immediate family members.
- Socially anxious. Schizotypals are noticeably anxious in social situations, especially with people they are not familiar with. They can interact with others when necessary, but prefer to avoid as much interaction as possible because their self-perception is that they do not fit in. Even when exposed to the same group of people over time, their social anxiety does not seem to lessen. In fact, it may progress into distorted perceptions of paranoia involving the people they are in social contact with.

## Demographics

Schizotypal personality disorder appears to occur more frequently in individuals who have an immediate family member with **schizophrenia**. The prevalence of schizotypal personality disorder is approximately 3%

of the general population and is believed to occur slightly more often in males.

Symptoms that characterize a typical **diagnosis** of schizotypal personality disorder should be evaluated in the context of the individual's cultural situation, particularly those regarding superstitious or religious beliefs and practices. (Some behaviors that Western cultures may view as psychotic are viewed within the range of normal behavior in other cultures.)

## Diagnosis

The symptoms of schizotypal personality disorder may begin showing in childhood or adolescence as a tendency toward solitary pursuit of activities, poor peer relationships, pronounced social anxiety, and underachievement in school. Other symptoms that may be present during the developmental years are hypersensitivity to criticism or correction, unusual use of language, odd thoughts, or bizarre fantasies. Children with these tendencies appear socially out-of-step with peers and often become the object of malicious teasing by their peers, which increases the feelings of isolation and social ineptness they feel. For a diagnosis of schizotypal personality disorder to be accurately made, there must also be the presence of at least four of the above-mentioned symptoms.

The symptoms of schizotypal personality disorder can sometimes be confused with the symptoms seen in schizophrenia. The bizarre thinking associated with schizotypal personality disorder can be perceived as a psychotic episode and misdiagnosed. While brief psychotic episodes can occur in the patient with schizotypal personality disorder, the **psychosis** is not as pronounced, frequent, or as intense as in schizophrenia. For an accurate diagnosis of schizotypal personality disorder, the symptoms cannot occur exclusively during the course of schizophrenia or other mood disorder that has psychotic features.

Another common difficulty in diagnosing schizotypal personality disorder is distinguishing it from other the schizoid, avoidant, and paranoid **personality disorders**. Some researchers believe that the schizotypal personality disorder is essentially the same as the schizoid disorder, but many feel there are distinguishing characteristics. Schizoids are deficient in their ability to experience emotion, while people with schizotypal personality disorder are more pronounced in their inability to understand human motivation and communication. While **avoidant personality disorder** has many of the same symptoms as schizotypal personality disorder, the distinguishing symptom in schizotypal is the presence of behavior that is noticeably

eccentric. The schizotypal differs from the paranoid by tangential thinking and eccentric behavior.

The diagnosis of schizotypal personality disorder is based on a clinical interview to assess symptomatic behavior. Other assessment tools helpful in confirming the diagnosis of schizotypal personality disorder include:

- Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI-2)
- Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory (MCMI-II)
- Rorschach Psychodiagnostic Test
- Thematic Apperception Test (TAT)

### Treatments

The patient with schizotypal personality disorder finds it difficult to engage in and remain in treatment. For those higher functioning individuals who seek treatment, the goal will be to help them function more effectively in relationships rather than restructuring their personality.

#### *Psychodynamically oriented therapies*

A psychodynamic approach will typically seek to build a therapeutically trusting relationship that attempts to counter the mistrust most people with this disorder intrinsically hold. The hope is that some degree of attachment in a therapeutic relationship could be generalized to other relationships. Offering interpretations about the patient's behavior will not typically be helpful. More highly functioning sufferers who have some capacity for empathy and emotional warmth tend to have better outcomes in psychodynamic approaches to treatment.

#### *Cognitive-behavioral therapy*

Cognitive approaches will most likely focus on attempting to identify and alter the content of the thoughts of the person with schizotypal personality disorder. Distortions that occur in both perception and thought processes are addressed. An important foundation for this work is the establishment of a trusting therapeutic relationship. This relaxes some of the social anxiety felt in most interpersonal relationships and allows for some exploration of the thought processes. Constructive ways of accomplishing this might include, among others: **communication skills** training; the use of videotape feedback to help the affected person perceive his or her behavior and appearance objectively; and practical suggestions about personal hygiene and employment.

#### *Interpersonal therapy*

Treatment using an interpersonal approach will allow the individual with schizotypal personality disorder to remain relationally distant while he or she "warms up" to the therapist. Gradually the therapist would hope to engage the patient after becoming "safe" through lack of coercion. The goal is to develop trust in order to help the patient gain insight into the distorted and magical thinking that dominates his/her thought process. New self-talk can be introduced to help orient the individual to reality-based experience. The therapist can mirror this objectivity to the patient.

#### *Group therapy*

**Group therapy** may provide the patient with a socializing experience that exposes them to feedback from others in a safe, controlled environment. It is typically recommended only for schizotypals who do not display severe eccentric or paranoid behavior. Most group members would be uncomfortable with these behavioral displays and it would likely prove destructive to the group dynamic.

#### *Family and marital therapy*

It is unlikely that a person with **schizoid personality disorder** will seek family or marital therapy. Many schizoid types do not marry and end up living with and being dependent upon first-degree family members. If they do marry they often have problems centered on insensitivity to their partner's feelings or behavior. Marital therapy (**couples therapy**) may focus on helping the couple to become more involved in each other's lives or improve communication patterns.

#### *Medications*

There is considerable research on the use of medications for the treatment of schizotypal personality disorder due to its close symptomatic relationship with schizophrenia. Among the most helpful medications are the antipsychotics that have been shown to control symptoms such as illusions and phobic anxiety, among others. **Amoxapine** (trade name Asendin), is a tricyclic antidepressant with antipsychotic properties, and has been effective in improving schizophrenic-like and depressive symptoms in schizotypal patients. Other **antidepressants** such as **fluoxetine** (Prozac) have also been used successfully to reduce symptoms of anxiety, paranoid thinking, and **depression**.

## KEY TERMS

**Millon Clinical Multiaxial Inventory (MCMI-II)**—

A self-report instrument designed to help the clinician assess DSM-IV-related personality disorders and clinical syndromes. It provides insight into 14 personality disorders and 10 clinical syndromes.

**Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI-2)**—A comprehensive assessment tool widely used to diagnose personality disorders.

**Rorschach Psychodiagnostic Test**—This series of 10 “inkblot” images allows the patient to project their interpretations which can be used to diagnose particular disorders.

**Thematic Apperception Test (TAT)**—A projective test using stories and descriptions of pictures to reveal some of the dominant drives, emotions, sentiments, conflicts, and complexes of a personality.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for the individual with schizotypal personality disorder is poor due to the ingrained nature of the coping mechanisms already in place. Schizotypal patients who depend heavily on family members or others are likely to regress into a state of **apathy** and further isolation. While some measurable gains can be made with mildly affected individuals, most are not able to alter their ingrained ways of perceiving or interpreting reality. When combined with poor social support structure, most will not enter any type of treatment.

### Prevention

Since schizotypal personality disorder originates in the patient’s family of origin, the only known preventative measure is a nurturing, emotionally stimulating, and expressive environment.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th ed., Text rev. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Millon, Theodore, and others. *Personality Disorders in Modern Life*. New York: John and Sons, 2004.
- Silverstein, Marshall L. “Descriptive Psychopathology and Theoretical Viewpoints: Schizoid, Schizotypal, and Avoidant Personality Disorders.” *Disorders of the Self: A Personality-Guided Approach*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

- Badcock, Johanna C., and Milan Dragovic. “Schizotypal Personality in Mature Adults.” *Personality and Individual Differences* 40.1 (Jan. 2006): 77–85.
- Harvey, Philip D., et al. “Dual-Task Information Processing in Schizotypal Personality Disorder: Evidence of Impaired Processing Capacity.” *Neuropsychology* 20.4 (Jul. 2006): 453–60.
- Raine, Adrian. “Schizotypal Personality: Neurodevelopmental and Psychosocial Trajectories.” *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology* 2 (2006): 291–326.
- Trotman, Hanan, Amanda McMillan, and Elaine Walker. “Cognitive Function and Symptoms in Adolescents with Schizotypal Personality Disorder.” *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 32.3 (Jul. 2006): 489–97.
- Wuthrich, Viviana M., and Timothy C. Bates. “Confirmatory Factor Analysis of the Three-Factor Structure of the Schizotypal Personality Questionnaire and Chapman Schizotypy Scales.” *Journal of Personality Assessment* 87.3 (2006): 292–304.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street, NW, Washington DC 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.

Gary Gilles, MA  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Seasonal affective disorder

### Definition

Seasonal affective disorder (SAD) is a mood disorder in which major depressive episodes and/or manic episodes occur at predictable times of the year, with depressive episodes typically occurring during the fall and winter months. The term SAD can also be applied to depressive episodes with a seasonal pattern that do not meet the criteria for **major depressive disorder** or a **bipolar disorder** (i.e., subsyndromal). SAD is also sometimes called seasonal mood disorder.

### Description

According to the *Diagnostic and Statistic Manual, Fourth Edition (DSM-IV-TR)* of the American Psychiatric Association, a seasonal pattern can exist with major depressive disorder or with major depressive episodes in bipolar I disorder (BID) or bipolar II disorder (BIID). To be characterized as a “seasonal” disorder, the onset and remission of the major



**A woman undergoes light therapy to treat Seasonal Affective Disorder.** (Stock Boston, Inc)

depressive episodes must occur at characteristic times of year. In most cases of SAD, major depressive episodes occur in the fall and winter months, and remit during the spring and summer. Less frequently, some individuals suffer from predictable major depressive episodes during the summer.

## Demographics

SAD is more likely to occur in higher latitudes where there is less light during the fall and winter months. In addition, younger persons are at higher risk for seasonal depressive episodes than are older persons. Although 60–90% of individuals with a seasonal component to their depressive disorder are women, it is currently unclear whether this reflects a gender factor specifically for SAD or merely reflects the underlying risks associated with recurrent major depressive disorder. Although cases of SAD have been seen in children and adolescents, the disorder usually begins when one is in one's twenties.

At this time, it is unknown whether a seasonal pattern is more likely in recurrent major depressive disorder or in bipolar disorders. However, the seasonal pattern is more likely to occur in BIID than in BID.

It is estimated that up to 20% of the U.S. population may suffer from a mild version of the symptoms (subsyndromal) associated with SAD.

## Causes and symptoms

Most theories concerning the origins of SAD postulate that it is caused by irregularities in an individual's biological rhythms that result from the lengthening or shortening of daylight that occurs with the

changing seasons. Among these theories, the “phase shift hypothesis” (PSH) theorizes that most SAD patients become depressed in the fall and winter because the later dawn at this time of year causes circadian rhythms to become out of synchronization with respect to clock time and the body's sleep-wake cycle. Specifically, the PSH theorizes that SAD is a result of a mismatch between an individual's circadian rhythms related to the sleep-wake cycle and the biological circadian pacemaker in the hypothalamus of the **brain**. Research on the PSH has found that 65% of SAD symptoms are the result of the body becoming out of synchronization due to the late dawn and early dusk in the winter.

Common symptoms of SAD include:

- depression and irritability
- anergy (lack of energy)
- hypersomnia (excessive sleepiness during the day or abnormally prolonged sleep at night)
- hyperphagia (tendency to overeat), including weight gain and/or craving for carbohydrates
- significant impairment of social and occupational functioning (such as lack of interest in social interactions, increased sensitivity to negative reactions from others, or lack of interest in normally enjoyable activities)

Individuals do not need to experience all these symptoms to be diagnosed as having SAD.

## Diagnosis

There are four criteria that must be met for a major depressive disorder, BID, or BIID to be characterized as seasonal. First, there must be a regular relationship between the onset of the depressive episodes and the time of year. For most cases of SAD, depressive episodes occur during the fall and winter seasons. Second, full remission of the depressive episodes (or a change from depression to mania or **hypomania** in the case of bipolar disorders) must also occur at predictable times of the year. Third, the seasonal cycle of onset and remission of major depressive episodes must have occurred within the last two years without any nonseasonal depressive episodes during that time. Fourth, seasonal episodes of depression must occur significantly more frequently than nonseasonal depressive episodes over the course of the person's lifetime.

When diagnosing SAD, it is important to distinguish it from depression caused by other factors that may cause depression such as seasonal unemployment or school schedule. In addition, SAD should be

distinguished from the “holiday blues.” The holiday blues are not related to circadian rhythms but to such psychosocial factors as increased obligations, expectations that one should be joyous, or early childhood memories or unresolved childhood conflicts.

### Treatments

SAD can often be treated using **light therapy** (phototherapy) to help readjust the body’s biological rhythms. For subsyndromal cases of SAD, phototherapy can consist of something as simple as a walk in the sunshine in the morning or rearranging one’s home or office to maximize exposure to sunlight during the day. Although a trip to the tropics or other sunny place is also of help in overcoming the effects of SAD, the problem returns once the individual is again exposed to shortened daylight hours.

More severe cases of SAD and major depressive disorder and bipolar disorders with a seasonal component can be treated in two ways: through phototherapy to help resynchronize the body’s biological rhythms or through pharmacotherapy to help alleviate the depressive symptoms. Phototherapy for more severe cases of SAD is typically done with a light box specifically designed for this purpose. The light box uses bright white fluorescent bulbs encased in a box with a diffusing lens that filters out ultraviolet light and reduces glare. The box is placed at eye level on a table or stand. Research has investigated the types of light that are most effective in treating SAD. Although originally it was hypothesized that full-spectrum light imitating natural sunlight would be most beneficial, it has not proven to be more advantageous.

The intensity of the light used in phototherapy ranges between 2,500 and 10,000 lux (as compared to 50–300 lux of typical home light fixtures). The patient sits quietly in front of the box for 20–60 minutes (30 minutes being the most typical length of time) to help resynchronize circadian rhythms. Although light therapy is typically administered in the early morning, the duration and time of day that are optimal for phototherapy vary with the individual and must be determined in conjunction with a therapist.

A recent controlled study of the relative effectiveness of light therapy (30 minutes daily of a 10,000 lux fluorescent light) compared with an antidepressant medication (**fluoxetine**) found both approaches to be equally effective even for more severely depressed patients. Although further research is necessary—particularly to determine if combination would be more effective than using either light therapy or medication alone—the study gives therapists and patients

### KEY TERMS

**Bipolar disorders**—A group of mood disorders characterized by both depressive and manic or hypomanic episodes.

**Circadian rhythm**—Variations in physical and behavioral activities repeating over roughly 24-hour periods of time such as the sleep-wake cycle or daily fluctuations in body temperature.

**Clinical trial**—A controlled scientific experiment designed to investigate the effectiveness of a drug or treatment in curing or lessening the symptoms of a disease or disorder.

**Hypomanic episode**—A distinct period of time that lasts at least four days during which the individual’s mood is consistently elevated, expansive, or irritable and is distinct from his or her usual nondepressed mood.

**Major depressive disorder**—Mental illness characterized by a profound and persistent feeling of sadness or despair and/or a loss of interest in things that were once pleasurable.

**Manic episode**—A discrete period lasting at least a week during which a person experiences abnormally elevated, expansive, or irritable mood.

**Phase shift hypothesis (PSH)**—The theory that most SAD patients become depressed in the fall and winter because the later dawn at this time of year causes circadian rhythms to become out of synchronization with respect to clock time and the body’s sleep-wake cycle.

**Subsyndromal depression**—Depressive episodes that do not meet the severity levels necessary for classification as major depressive episodes.

choices in treatment options for SAD. Although the risks and benefits of the alternate treatments for the individual should be weighed before a course of treatment is chosen, patient preference for light therapy over medication can also be taken into consideration.

When a major depressive disorder or a bipolar disorder has seasonal characteristics, it can also be treated with antidepressant medication. Research has found that fluoxetine is as effective as light therapy in controlled **clinical trials**. Other antidepressant medications that may be of use in treating SAD include **propranolol**, **tranylcypromine**, and **bupropion**.

The literature also suggests that the over-the-counter compound melatonin may be of help in

alleviating SAD symptoms. Melatonin is a hormone produced by the pineal gland that helps regulate the body's seasonal changes. Research funded by the NIMH suggests that a low dose of synthetic or pharmacy-grade melatonin taken in the evening and exposure to bright light in the morning may be effective in relieving the symptoms of SAD. However, more research needs to be done to determine the effectiveness and safety of such treatment.

## Prognosis

For cases of subsyndromal SAD, the prognosis for control of symptoms through phototherapy treatment is good. For cases in which SAD is a seasonal characteristic of a major depressive disorder or bipolar disorder, the prognosis is the same as for the underlying disorder.

## Prevention

In 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration approved the prescription medication Wellbutrin XL (bupropion HCl extended release tablets) for the prevention of SAD. The effectiveness of Wellbutrin XL has been demonstrated in clinical trials with adults having a history of a major depressive disorder occurring in the fall and winter months. Wellbutrin XL, however, is recommended only for individuals whose SAD symptoms meet the criteria for a major depressive disorder.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Murray, Gregory Ward. *Seasonality, Personality and the Circadian Regulation of Mood*. New York: Nova Science Publishers, 2006.
- Rosenthal, Joshua Z. "Seasonal Affective Disorder." *The American Psychiatric Publishing Textbook of Mood Disorders*. Eds. Dan J. Stein, David J. Kupfer, and Alan F. Schatzberg. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2006: 527–45.
- Rosenthal, Norman E. *Winter Blues, Revised Edition: Everything You Need to Know to Beat Seasonal Affective Disorder*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2006.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

- Enns, Murray W., et al. "Personality and Seasonal Affective Disorder: Results from the CAN-SAD Study." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 93.1–3 (2006): 35–42.

- Glickman, Gena, et al. "Light Therapy for Seasonal Affective Disorder with Blue Narrow-Band Light-Emitting Diodes (LEDs)." *Biological Psychiatry* 59.6 (2006): 502–507.
- Golden, Ann-Marie, Tim Dalgleish, and Helen Spinks. "Dysfunctional Attitudes in Seasonal Affective Disorder." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 44.8 (2006): 1159–64.
- Golden, Robert N., et al. "The Efficacy of Light Therapy in the Treatment of Mood Disorders: A Review and Meta-Analysis of the Evidence." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 162.4 (2005): 656–62.
- Lam, Raymond W., et al. "The Can-SAD Study: A Randomized Controlled Trial of the Effectiveness of Light Therapy and Fluoxetine in Patients With Winter Seasonal Affective Disorder." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.5 (2006): 805–12.
- Lewy, Alfred, Jonathan Emens, Angela Jackman, and Krista Yuhas. "Circadian Uses of Melatonin in Humans." *Chronobiology International* 23.1–2 (2006): 403–12.
- Magnusson, Andres, and Timo Partonen. "The Diagnosis, Symptomatology, and Epidemiology of Seasonal Affective Disorder." *CNS Spectrums* 10.8 (2005): 625–34.
- Modell, Jack G., et al. "Seasonal Affective Disorder and Its Prevention by Anticipatory Treatment with Bupropion XL." *Biological Psychiatry* 58.8 (2005): 658–67.
- Murray, Greg, et al. "O Sweet Spot Where Art Thou? Light Treatment of Seasonal Affective Disorder and the Circadian Time of Sleep." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 90.2–3 (2006): 227–31.
- Pjrek, Edda, Dietmar Winkler, and Siegfried Kasper. "Pharmacotherapy of Seasonal Affective Disorder." *CNS Spectrums* 10.8 (2005): 664–69.
- Putilov, Arcady A., and Konstantin V. Danilenko. "Antidepressant Effects of Light Therapy and 'Natural' Treatments for Winter Depression." *Biological Rhythm Research* 36.5 (2005): 423–37.
- Putilov, Arcady A., Boris B. Pinchasov, and Elena Y. Poljakova. "Antidepressant Effects of Mono- and Combined Non-Drug Treatments for Seasonal and Non-Seasonal Depression." *Biological Rhythm Research* 36.5 (2005): 405–21.
- Winkler, Dietmar, et al. "Anger Attacks in Seasonal Affective Disorder." *International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology* 9.2 (2006): 215–19.
- ORGANIZATIONS**
- Depression and Related Affective Disorders Association (DRADA), 8201 Greensboro Drive, Suite 300, McLean, VA 22102. Telephone: (888) 288-1104. <<http://www.drada.org>>.
- National Alliance on Mental Illness (NAMI), Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (703) 524-7600. <[http://www.nami.org/Content/ContentGroups/Helpline1/Seasonal\\_Affective\\_Disorder\\_\(SAD\).htm](http://www.nami.org/Content/ContentGroups/Helpline1/Seasonal_Affective_Disorder_(SAD).htm)>.

The Seasonal Affective Disorder Association (SADA), P.O. Box 989, Steyning, BN44 3HG, England. <<http://www.sada.org.uk>>.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Sedatives and related drugs

### Definition

Sedatives are drugs that depress the central nervous system and produce a calming effect on the body. Sedatives are used to relieve **anxiety**, agitation, or behavioral excitement. When used improperly, sedatives may lead to symptoms of **abuse**, dependence, and withdrawal. Sedatives are often referred to as tranquilizers, and the similar classes of sedatives and hypnotics are sometimes referred to as one group: the sedative-hypnotics.

### Description

Sedatives and similar drugs are available by prescription and have many medical uses. They are used in conjunction with surgery and are prescribed to treat pain, anxiety, panic attacks, **insomnia**, and in some cases, convulsions. Most people who take prescription sedatives take them responsibly and benefit from their use. Some people misuse these drugs. They may do so unintentionally by increasing their prescribed dose without medical advice. Intentional abusers buy these drugs off the street for recreational use or get them from friends or family members who have prescriptions. Sedatives are not popular street drugs, and when they are used recreationally, it is usually in conjunction with other illicit drugs or alcohol. When taken exactly as prescribed, sedatives rarely create major health risks.

A chemically diverse group of drugs are discussed together in this entry because they all appear to work in the body the same way and produce similar problems of abuse, dependence, intoxication, and withdrawal. These drugs work in the **brain** by increasing the amount of the neurotransmitter gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA). **Neurotransmitters** help to regulate the speed at which nerve impulses travel. When the amount of GABA increases, the speed of nerve transmissions decreases. Thus these drugs depress the nervous system and cause reduced pain, sleepiness, reduced anxiety, and muscle relaxation.

The most widely prescribed and best-studied sedatives belong to a group called **benzodiazepines**. Prescription benzodiazepines and their relatives include **alprazolam** (Xanax), **chlordiazepoxide** (Librium), **clonazepam** (Klonopin), **clorazepate** (Tranxene), **diazepam** (Valium), **estazolam** (ProSom), **flurazepam** (Dalmane), **halazepam** (Paxipam), **lorazepam**, (Ativan), **oxazepam** (Serax), **prazepam** (Centrax), **quazepam** (Doral), **temazepam** (Restoril), **triazolam** (Halcion). Other drugs that act in a similar manner include the **barbiturates** amobarbital (Amytal), aprobarbital (Alurate), butabarbital (Butisol), phenobarbital, (Nebutal), and secobarbital, (Seconal). In addition, **chloral hydrate** (Notec), ethchlorvynol (Placidyl), glutethimide (Doriden), meprobamate (Miltown, Equanil, Equagesic, Deprol) and **zolpidem** (Ambien) have similar actions. These are meant for short-term use and may cause chemical dependence with prolonged use.

A class of nonbenzodiazepine hypnotics for treatment of insomnia are becoming widely popular in the United States. **Zaleplon** (Sonata), zolpidem (Ambien), and eszopiclone (Lunesta) are three such drugs. **Amnesia** and sleepwalking resulting from use of nonbenzodiazepine hypnotics to treat **sleep disorders** had been reported. Charges of driving while intoxicated on these drugs, particularly when the patient does not sleep long enough after taking a dose, is a potentially dangerous side-effect.

### Causes and symptoms

Sedatives and other drugs in this class are physically and sometimes psychologically addicting. People taking sedatives rapidly develop tolerance for the drugs. Tolerance occurs when a larger and larger dose must be taken to produce the same effect. Because sedatives are physically addicting, people with sedative dependence experience physical withdrawal symptoms when these drugs are discontinued.

Sedative abuse occurs when people misuse these drugs but are not addicted to them. Many people who abuse sedatives also use other illicit drugs. They may use sedatives to come down off a **cocaine** high or to enhance the effect of **methadone**, a heroin substitute.

Sedative dependence occurs when there is a physical **addiction**, when a person actively seeks sedatives (for example, by going to several doctors and getting multiple prescriptions) and when a person continues to use these drugs despite the fact that they cause interpersonal problems and difficulties meeting the responsibilities of daily life.

### Sedative intoxication

Sedative intoxication occurs when a person has recently used one of these drugs and shows certain psychosocial symptoms such as hostility or aggression, swings in mood, poor judgment, inability to function in social settings or at work, or inappropriate sexual behavior. Because sedatives depress the central nervous system, physical symptoms include slurred speech, lack of coordination, inattention, impaired memory or “blackouts” and extreme sluggishness, stupor, or coma. Sedative intoxication can appear very similar to alcohol intoxication in its symptoms. Overdoses can be fatal.

### Sedative withdrawal

Physical addiction is the main problem with sedative dependence. Sedative withdrawal is similar to alcohol withdrawal. Symptoms of sedative withdrawal are almost the reverse of the symptoms of sedative intoxication. They include:

- increased heart rate
- faster breathing
- elevated blood pressure
- increased body temperature
- sweating
- shaky hands
- inability to sleep
- anxiety
- nausea
- restlessness

About one-quarter of people undergoing sedative withdrawal have **seizures**. If withdrawal is severe, they may also have visual or auditory **hallucinations** (sedative withdrawal **delirium**). Often people who experience these more severe symptoms are using other drugs and not just sedatives.

The timeframe for withdrawal symptoms to appear varies depending on the chemical structure of the drug being taken. Withdrawal symptoms can occur hours or days after stopping use. For example, people withdrawing from Valium may not develop withdrawal symptoms for a week, and may not have peak symptoms until the second week. Low-level symptoms may linger even longer. Generally the longer a person takes a drug and the higher the dose, the more severe the withdrawal symptoms. It is possible to have withdrawal symptoms when a therapeutically prescribed dose is taken for a long time.

Sedative dependence is thought to be able to induce other mental health disorders, although there

is some disagreement in the mental health community about how these disorders are defined and classified. Other disorders that may result from sedative dependence and withdrawal include:

- sedative-induced persisting dementia
- sedative-induced persisting amnestic disorder
- sedative-induced psychotic disorder (with or without hallucinations)
- sedative-induced mood disorder
- sedative-induced anxiety disorder
- sedative-induced sexually dysfunction
- sedative-induced sleep disorder

### Demographics

Many people, including about 90% of those who are hospitalized, are given some type of prescription sedative. Of the people who use sedatives, only a few become dependent. People who become dependent usually fall into three categories. Some are drug addicts who use sedatives along with other street drugs. These are usually young people between the ages of 15 and 25. Others are alcoholics who use sedatives to treat chronic anxiety or sleep problems associated with their alcohol dependence. Still others use sedatives under the direction of a doctor to treat long-term pain, anxiety, or sleeplessness. These people may become dependent by increasing the amount of sedative they take as tolerance develops without telling their doctor.

Sedative abuse is not a major addiction problem with street drug users. Many people who are dependent on sedatives are middle-aged and middle-class people who start taking the drug for a legitimate medical reason. Women may be more at risk than men for developing sedative dependence. Sedative dependence is the most common type of drug addiction among the elderly. Older people do not clear the drug from their bodies as efficiently as younger people, and thus may become dependent on lower, therapeutic doses.

### Diagnosis

**Diagnosis** of sedative intoxication is made based on recent use of the drug, presence of the symptoms listed above, and presence of the drug in a blood or urine sample. Without a blood or urine test, sedative intoxication can be difficult to distinguish from alcohol intoxication except for the absence of the odor of alcohol. People experiencing sedative intoxication usually remain grounded in reality. However, if they lose touch with reality they may be diagnosed as having sedative intoxication delirium.

Diagnosis of sedative withdrawal is based on the symptoms listed above. It can be difficult to distinguish from alcohol withdrawal. Withdrawal may occur with or without hallucinations and delirium. Diagnosis depends on whether a person remains grounded in reality during withdrawal.

Diagnosis of other mental disorders induced by sedative dependence requires that the symptoms be in excess of those usually found with sedative intoxication or withdrawal. They cannot be accounted for by other **substance abuse** or another mental or physical disorder.

## Treatments

Treatment depends on how large a dose of sedative the patient is taking, the length of time it has been used, and the patient's individual psychological and physical state.

### *Physiological treatment*

Successful treatment of sedative dependence is based on the idea of gradually decreasing the amount of drug the patient uses in order to keep withdrawal symptoms to a manageable level. This is called a drug taper. The rate of taper depends on the dependency dose of the drug, the length of time the drug has been taken, a person's individual mental and physical response to drug withdrawal, and any complicating factors such as other substance abuse or other physical or mental illness.

For people dependent on a low dose of sedatives, the current level of use is determined, then the amount of drug is then reduced by 10 to 25%. If withdrawal symptoms are manageable, reduction is continued on a weekly basis. If withdrawal symptoms are too severe, the patient is stabilized at the lowest dose with manageable symptoms until tapering can be re-started. This gradual reduction of use may take weeks, and the rate must be adjusted to the response of each patient individually.

People dependent on high doses of sedatives are usually hospitalized because of the possibility of life-threatening withdrawal symptoms. A blood or urine test is used to determine the current level of usage. The patient is often switched to an equivalent dose of a different sedative or phenobarbitol (a barbiturate) to aid in withdrawal while controlling withdrawal symptoms. The tapering process begins, but more gradually than with low dose dependency. Often other drugs are given to combat some of the withdrawal symptoms.

### *Psychological treatment*

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) may be used in conjunction with drug tapering. This type of talk

## KEY TERMS

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Tolerance**—Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

**therapy** aims at two things: to educate patients to recognize and cope with the symptoms of anxiety associated with withdrawal, and to help patients change their behavior in ways that promote coping with **stress**. Patients are taught to mentally talk their way through their anxiety and stress. Some people find **support groups** and journal keeping to be helpful in their recovery. Recovering from dependency is a slow process, best achieved when a person has a good social support system, patience, and persistence.

## Prognosis

The people who have the best chance of becoming sedative-free are those who became dependent through taking long-term therapeutic doses. Although stopping any addiction takes time and work, with a properly managed course of treatment, chances of success are good.

People who abuse multiple street drugs must receive treatment for their multiple drug dependencies. Sedative abuse is low on their list of problems, and the chances of their becoming drug-free are low. Alcoholics also have a difficult time withdrawing from sedatives.

## Prevention

The best way to prevent sedative-related disorders is to take these drugs only for the exact length of time and in the exact amount prescribed by a doctor.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Kranzler, Henry R., and Domenic A. Ciraulo, eds. *Clinical Manual of Addiction Psychopharmacology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2005.  
 Lessa, Nicholas R., and Walter F. Scanlon. *Substance Use Disorders* (The Wiley Concise Guides to Mental Health). New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2006.

- Lieberman, Jeffrey A., and Allan Tasman. *Handbook of Psychiatric Drugs*. New York: Wiley, 2006.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

- Compton, Wilson M., et al. "Prevalence, Correlates, and Comorbidity of DSM-IV Antisocial Personality Syndromes and Alcohol and Specific Drug Use Disorders in the United States: Results From the National Epidemiologic Survey on Alcohol and Related Conditions." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*. 66.6, Jun. 2005: 677–85.
- McCabe, Sean Esteban, and Carol J. Boyd. "Sources of Prescription Drugs for Illicit Use." *Addictive Behaviors*. 30.7, Aug. 2005: 1342–50.
- McCabe, Sean Esteban, Christian J. Teter, and Carol J. Boyd. "Medical Use, Illicit Use, and Diversion of Abusable Prescription Drugs." *Journal of American College Health* 54.5, Mar.–Apr. 2006: 269–78.

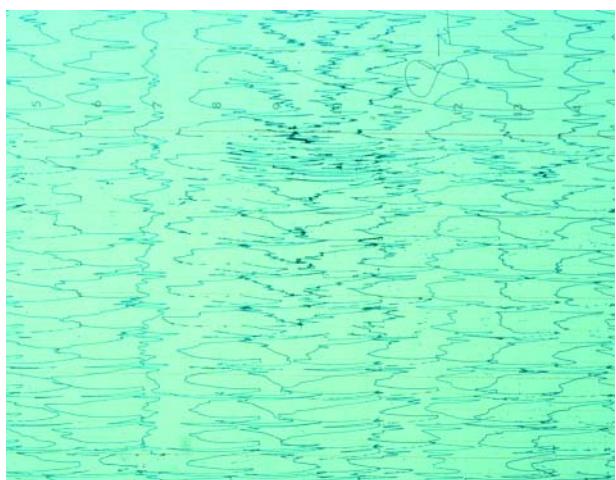
#### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Clearinghouse for Alcohol and Drug Information. P.O. Box 2345, Rockville, MD 20852. (800) 729-6686. <<http://www.health.org>>.
- National Institute on Drug Abuse. 5600 Fishers Lane, Room 10 A-39, Rockville, MD 20857. Telephone: 1-888-644-6432 <<http://niad.nih.gov>>.

#### OTHER

- Benzodiazepine Recovery. <[www.benzodiazepine.org](http://www.benzodiazepine.org)>. This Web site offers chat and support groups for people recovering from sedative dependence and has links to many sources of information on these drugs.

Tish Davidson, A.M.



**The brainwaves of an epileptic in a petit mal seizure.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

seizures, which was revised in 1981 and again in 1989. They then proposed to use a diagnostic scheme of five diagnostic levels or axes, rather than a classification scheme, for characterizing seizures. These axes are (1) the events that occur during the seizure; (2) the type of seizure, chosen from a list that can include where the seizure localizes in the brain and what stimulates it; (3) the type of epileptic syndrome most closely associated with the seizure; (4) the underlying medical or other causes of the syndrome; and (5) the level of impairment the seizure causes. These are proposed recommendations that are still under discussion.

The ILAE classification, meanwhile, is accepted worldwide and is based on electroencephalographic (EEG) studies. Based on this system, seizures can be classified as either focal or generalized. Each of these categories can also be further subdivided.

#### Focal seizures

A focal (partial) seizure develops when a limited, confined population of nerve cells fire their impulses abnormally on one hemisphere of the brain. (The brain has two portions or cerebral hemispheres—the right and left hemispheres.) Focal seizures are divided into simple or complex based on the level of consciousness (wakefulness) during an attack. Simple partial seizures occur in patients who are conscious, whereas complex partial seizures demonstrate impaired levels of consciousness.

#### Generalized seizures

A generalized seizure results from initial abnormal firing of brain nerve cells throughout both the left

## Seizures

### Definition

A seizure is a sudden change in behavior characterized by changes in sensory perception (sense of feeling) or motor activity (movement) due to an abnormal firing of nerve cells in the **brain**. Epilepsy is a condition characterized by recurrent seizures that may include repetitive muscle jerking called convulsions.

### Description

Seizure disorders and their classification date back to the earliest medical literature accounts in history. In 1964, the Commission on Classification and Terminology of the International League Against Epilepsy (ILAE) devised the first official classification of

and right hemispheres. Generalized seizures can be classified as follows:

- tonic-clonic seizures: This is the most common type among all age groups and is categorized into several phases beginning with vague symptoms that appear hours or days before an attack. These seizures are sometimes called grand mal seizures.
- tonic seizures: These are typically characterized by a sustained nonvibratory contraction of muscles in the legs and arms. Consciousness is also impaired during these episodes.
- atonic seizures (also called “drop attacks”): These are characterized by sudden, limp posture and a brief period of unconsciousness, and last for one to two seconds.
- clonic seizures: These are characterized by a rapid loss of consciousness with loss of muscle tone, tonic spasm, and jerks. The muscles become rigid for about 30 seconds during the tonic phase of the seizure and alternately contract and relax during the clonic phase, which lasts 30–60 seconds.
- absence seizures: These are subdivided into typical and atypical forms based on duration of attack and level of consciousness. Absence (petit mal) seizures generally begin at about the age of four and stop by the time the child becomes an adolescent. They usually begin with a brief loss of consciousness and last 1–10 seconds. People having petit mal seizures become very quiet and may blink, stare blankly, roll their eyes, or move their lips. A petit mal seizure lasts 15–20 seconds. When it ends, individuals resume whatever they were doing before the seizure began, will not remember the seizure, and may not realize that anything unusual happened. Untreated, petit mal seizures can recur as many as 100 times a day and may progress to grand mal seizures.
- myoclonic seizures: These are characterized by rapid muscular contractions accompanied with jerks in facial and pelvic muscles.

Subcategories are commonly diagnosed based on electroencephalographic (EEG) results. Terminology for classification in infants and newborns is still controversial.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Simple partial seizures can be caused by congenital abnormalities (abnormalities present at birth), tumor growths, head trauma, **stroke**, and infections in the brain or nearby structures. Generalized tonic-clonic seizures are associated with drug and alcohol

**abuse**, and low levels of blood glucose (blood sugar) and sodium. Certain psychiatric medications, antihistamines, and even antibiotics can precipitate tonic-clonic seizures. Absence seizures are implicated with an abnormal imbalance of certain chemicals in the brain that modulate nerve cell activity (one of these **neurotransmitters** is called gamma-aminobutyric acid or GABA, which functions as an inhibitor). Myoclonic seizures are commonly diagnosed in newborns and children.

### Symptoms

Symptoms for the different types of seizures are specific.

### Partial seizures

**SIMPLE PARTIAL SEIZURES.** Multiple signs and symptoms may be present during a single simple partial seizure. These symptoms include specific muscles tensing and then alternately contracting and relaxing, speech arrest, vocalizations, and involuntary turning of the eyes or head. There could be changes in vision, hearing, balance, taste, and smell. Additionally, patients with simple partial seizures may have a sensation in the abdomen, sweating, paleness, flushing, hair follicles standing up (piloerection), and dilated pupils (the dark center in the eye enlarges). Seizures with psychological symptoms include thinking disturbances and **hallucinations**, or illusions of memory, sound, sight, time, and self-image.

**COMPLEX PARTIAL SEIZURES.** Complex partial seizures often begin with a motionless stare or arrest of activity; this is followed by a series of involuntary movements, speech disturbances, and eye movements.

### Generalized seizures

Generalized seizures have a more complex set of signs and symptoms.

**TONIC-CLONIC SEIZURES.** Tonic-clonic seizures usually have vague prodromal (pre-attack) symptoms that can start hours or days before a seizure. These symptoms include **anxiety**, mood changes, irritability, weakness, dizziness, lightheadedness, and changes in appetite. The tonic phases may be preceded with brief (lasting only a few seconds in duration) muscle contractions on both sides of affected muscle groups. The tonic phase typically begins with a brief flexing of trunk muscles, upward movement of the eyes, and pupil dilation. Patients usually emit a characteristic vocalization. This sound is caused by contraction of trunk muscles that forces air from the lungs across spasmodic (abnormally tensed) throat muscles. This

is followed by a very short period (10–15 seconds) of general muscle relaxation. The clonic phase consists of muscular contractions with alternating periods of no movements (muscle atonia) that gradually increase duration until abnormal muscular contractions stop. Tonic-clonic seizures end in a final generalized spasm. The affected person can lose consciousness during tonic and clonic phases of seizure.

Tonic-clonic seizures can also produce chemical changes in the body. Patients commonly experience lowered carbon dioxide (hypocarbia) due to breathing alterations, increased blood glucose (blood sugar), and an elevated level of a hormone called prolactin. Once affected people regain consciousness, they are usually weak, and have a headache and muscle pain. Tonic-clonic seizures can cause serious medical problems such as trauma to the head and mouth, fractures in the spinal column, pulmonary edema (water in the lungs), aspiration pneumonia (a pneumonia caused by a foreign body being lodged in the lungs), and sudden death. Attacks are generally one minute in duration.

**TONIC SEIZURES.** Tonic and atonic seizures have distinct differences but are often present in the same patient. Tonic seizures are characterized by nonvibratory muscle contractions, usually involving flexing of arms and relaxing or flexing of legs. The seizure usually lasts less than 10 seconds but may be as long as one minute. Tonic seizures are usually abrupt and patients lose consciousness. Tonic seizures commonly occur during nonrapid eye movement (nonREM) sleep and drowsiness. Tonic seizures that occur during wakeful states commonly produce physical injuries due to abrupt, unexpected falls.

**ATONIC SEIZURES.** Atonic seizures, also called “drop attacks,” are abrupt, with loss of muscle tone lasting one to two seconds, but with rapid recovery. Consciousness is usually impaired. The rapid loss of muscular tone could be limited to head and neck muscles, resulting in head drop, or it may be more extensive involving muscles for balance, causing unexpected falls with physical injury.

**CLONIC SEIZURES.** Generalized clonic seizures are rare and seen typically in children with elevated fever. These seizures are characterized by a rapid loss of consciousness, decreased muscle tone, and a generalized spasm that is followed by jerky movements.

**ABSENCE SEIZURES.** Absence seizures are classified as either typical or atypical. The typical absence seizure is characterized by unresponsiveness and behavioral arrest, abnormal muscular movements of the face and eyelids, and lasts less than 10 seconds. In atypical absence seizures, the affected person is generally more

conscious, the seizures begin and end more gradually, and do not exceed 10 seconds in duration.

**MYOCLONIC SEIZURES.** People with myoclonic seizures commonly exhibit rapid muscular contractions. Myoclonic seizures are seen in newborns and children who have either symptomatic or idiopathic (cause is unknown) epilepsy.

## Demographics

Epilepsy and seizures affect a reported 3 million—or 1%—of Americans of all ages, although up to 10% of the population may experience at least one seizure during their lives; some of these events are febrile convulsions associated with high fevers in childhood. Every year, about 200,000 new cases are diagnosed and about 300,000 people have their first convolution. The annual costs of treatment for seizure and epilepsy, in direct and indirect costs, is about \$12.5 billion. Men are slightly more likely than women to develop epilepsy, and its prevalence is higher among minority populations in the United States.

Seizures caused by fever have a recurrence rate of 51% if the attack occurred in the first year of life, whereas recurrence rate is decreased to 25% if the seizure took place during the second year. Approximately 88% of children who experience seizures caused by fever in the first two years experience recurrence.

About 45 million people worldwide are affected by epilepsy. The incidence is highest among young children (under age 2) and the elderly (over age 65). High-risk groups include people with a previous history of brain injury or lesions, children with **mental retardation**, cerebral palsy, or both, patients with **Alzheimer's disease** or stroke, and children with at least one parent who has epilepsy.

## Diagnosis

Patients seeking help for seizures should first undergo an EEG that records brain-wave patterns emitted between nerve cells. Electrodes are placed on the head, sometimes for 24 hours, to monitor brain-wave activity and detect both normal and abnormal impulses. **Imaging studies** such as **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) and computerized axial tomography (CAT)—that take still “pictures”—are useful in detecting abnormalities in the temporal lobes (parts of the brain associated with hearing) or for helping diagnose tonic-clonic seizures. A complete blood count (CBC) can be helpful in determining whether a seizure is caused by a neurological infection, which is typically accompanied by high fever. If drugs or toxins

in the blood are suspected to be the cause of the seizure(s), blood and urine screening tests for these compounds may be necessary.

Antiseizure medication can be altered by many commonly used medications such as sulfa drugs, erythromycin, warfarin, and cimetidine. Pregnancy may also decrease serum concentration of antiseizure medications; therefore, frequent monitoring and dose adjustments are vital to maintain appropriate blood concentrations of the antiseizure medication—known as the therapeutic blood concentration. Some medications taken during pregnancy could affect the fetus, and women must discuss with their doctors the costs and benefits of any medication taken during pregnancy.

**Diagnosis** requires a detailed and accurate history, and a physical examination is important because this may help identify neurological or systemic causes. In cases in which a central nervous system (CNS) infection (i.e., meningitis or encephalitis) is suspected, a lumbar puncture (or spinal tap) can help detect an increase in immune cells (white blood cells) that develop to fight the specific infection. (A lumbar puncture involves removing a small amount of cerebrospinal fluid—the fluid that bathes and nourishes the brain and spinal cord—from the spinal chord by syringe.)

## Treatments

Treatment is targeted primarily to:

- assist the patient in adjusting psychologically to the diagnosis and in maintaining as normal a lifestyle as possible.
- reduce or eliminate seizure occurrence.
- avoid side effects of long-term drug treatment.

Simple and complex partial seizures respond to drugs such as **carbamazepine**, **valproic acid** (valproate), phenytoin, **gabapentin**, tiagabine, **lamotrigine**, and topiramate. Tonic-clonic seizures tend to respond to valproate, carbamazepine, phenytoin, and lamotrigine. Absence seizures seem to be sensitive to ethosuximide, valproate, and lamotrigine. Myoclonic seizures can be treated with valproate and **clonazepam**. Tonic seizures seem to respond favorably to valproate, felbamate, and clonazepam.

People treated with a class of medications called **barbiturates** (Mysoline, Mebral, phenobarbital) have adverse cognitive (thinking) effects. These cognitive effects can include decreased general intelligence, attention, memory, problem solving, motor speed, and visual motor functions. The drug phenytoin

(Dilantin) can adversely affect speed of response, memory, and attention. Other medications used for treatment of seizures do not have substantial cognitive impairment.

Surgical treatment may be considered when medications fail. Advances in medical sciences and techniques have improved methods of identifying the parts of the brain that generate abnormal discharge of nerve impulses. The most common type of surgery is the extratemporal cortical resection. In this procedure, a small part of the brain responsible for causing the seizures is removed. An option of last resort for people with extreme, uncontrollable seizures is functional hemispherectomy, in which communication between the two hemispheres of the brain is severed. Surgical intervention may be considered a feasible treatment option if:

- the site of seizures is identifiable and localized.
- surgery can remove the seizure-generating (epileptogenic) area.
- surgical procedure will not cause damage to nearby areas.

Another treatment approach that has been found to reduce seizures in some children is the ketogenic diet. This diet reduces available glucose in the body, forcing the child's body to turn to fat stores for energy. It is a high-fat diet that results in the person getting about 80% of their calories from fat. No one is exactly sure why this diet, which mimics starvation in the body, works to prevent seizures. It also does not work for every child, and the reasons for that also are unclear.

## Prognosis

About 30% of patients with severe seizures (starting in early childhood), continue to have attacks and usually never achieve a remission state. In the United States, the prevalence of treatment-resistant seizures is about one to two per 1,000 people. About 60–70% of people achieve a five-year remission within 10 years of initial diagnosis. Approximately half of these patients become seizure-free. Usually the prognosis is better if seizures can be controlled by one medication, the frequency of seizures decreases, and there is a normal EEG and neurological examination prior to medication cessation.

People affected by seizures have increased death rates compared with the general population. Patients who have seizures of unknown cause have an increased chance of dying due to accidents (primarily drowning). Other causes of seizure-associated death

## KEY TERMS

**Electroencephalograph (EEG)**—An instrument that measures the electrical activity of the brain. The EEG traces the electrical activity in the form of wave patterns onto recording paper. Wave patterns that have sudden spikes or sharp waves strongly suggest seizures. An EEG with a seizure-type wave pattern is called an epileptiform EEG.

**Hallucination**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may “hear” sounds or “see” people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Illusion**—A misperception or misinterpretation in the presence of a real external stimulus.

include abnormal heart rhythms, water in the lungs, or heart attack.

### Prevention

There are no gold-standard recommendations for prevention because seizures can be caused by genetic factors, blood abnormalities, many medications, illicit drugs, infection, neurologic conditions, and other systemic diseases. If a person has had a previous attack or has a genetic propensity, care is advised when receiving medical treatment or if diagnosed with an illness correlated with possible seizure development.

*See also* Computed tomography (CAT); Electroencephalography (EEG); Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI); Substance abuse and related disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Goetz, Christopher G. *Textbook of Clinical Neurology*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1999.  
 Goldman, Lee, and others. *Cecil Textbook of Medicine*. 21st ed. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 2000.  
 Goroll, Allan H. *Primary Care Medicine*. 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Dodrill, C. R., and C. G. Matthew. “The Role of Neuropsychology in the Assessment and Treatment of Persons with Epilepsy.” *American Psychologist* 47.9 (Sept. 1992): 1139–42.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Epilepsy Foundation. 4351 Garden City Drive, Landover, MD 20785-7223. Telephone: (800) 332-1000. Web site: <<http://www.epfa.org/>>.

International League Against Epilepsy. “Overview of classification and other information.” Available online at: <<http://www.ilae-epilepsy.org/Visitors/Centre/ctf/overview.cfm>>.

National Institutes of Health. National Library of Medicine. “Seizures.” Available online at: <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/seizures.html>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, MD  
 Alfredo Mori, MD, FACEM  
 Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Selective mutism

### Definition

Selective mutism is a childhood disorder in which a child does not speak in some social situations although he or she is able to talk normally at other times.

### Description

Selective mutism was first described in the 1870s, at which time it was called “aphasia voluntaria.” This name shows that the absence of speech was considered to lie under the control of the child’s will. In 1934 the disorder began to be called selective mutism, a name that still implied purposefulness on the part of the silent child. In the 1994 edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV)* the disorder was renamed selective mutism. This name is considered preferable because it suggests that the child is mute only in certain situations, without the implication that the child remains silent on purpose.

Selective mutism is characterized by a child’s inability to speak in one or more types of social situation, although the child is developmentally advanced to the point that speech is possible. The child speaks proficiently in at least one setting, most often at home with one or both parents, and sometimes with siblings or extended family members. Some children also speak to certain friends or to adults that are not related to them; but this variant of selective mutism is somewhat less common.

The most common place for children to exhibit mute behavior is in the classroom, so that the disorder is often first noticed by teachers. Because of this characteristic, selective mutism is most frequently diagnosed in children of preschool age through second grade. As the expectation of speech becomes more evident, selective mutism can have more pronounced negative effects on academic performance. Children

who do not talk in classroom settings or other social situations because the language of instruction is not their first tongue are not considered to have the disorder of selective mutism.

### Causes and symptoms

The symptoms of selective mutism are fairly obvious. The child does not talk in one or more social situations in which speech is commonly expected and would facilitate understanding. Some children with selective mutism do not communicate in any way in certain settings, and act generally shy and withdrawn. The disorder is also often associated with crying, clinging to the parent, and other signs of social **anxiety**. Other children with the disorder, however, may smile, gesture, nod, and even giggle, although they do not talk.

Consensus regarding the most common causes of selective mutism has changed significantly over time. When the disorder was first studied, and for many years thereafter, it was thought to be caused by severe trauma in early childhood. Some of these causative traumas were thought to include rape, molestation, incest, severe physical or emotional abuse, and similar experiences. In addition, many researchers attributed selective mutism to family dynamics that included an overprotective mother and an abnormally strict or very distant father. As of 2002, these factors have not been completely eliminated as causes of selective mutism in most cases, but it is generally agreed that they are not the most common causes.

Instead, selective mutism is frequently attributed at present to high levels of social anxiety in children and not to traumatic events in their early years. Children with selective mutism have been found to be more timid and shy than most children in social situations; and to exhibit signs of **depression**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, and **anxiety disorders**. Some children have been reported to dislike speaking because they are uncomfortable with the sound of their own voice or because they think their voice sounds abnormal.

Many links have also been found between selective mutism and speech development problems. Language reception problems have also been documented in selectively mute children. Although there is no evidence indicating that selective mutism is the direct result of any of these difficulties in language development, possible connections are being explored.

### Demographics

Selective mutism is generally considered a rare disorder. It is found in about 1% of patients in mental health settings, but it occurs in only about 0.01% of the general United States population. Some research-

ers maintain, however, that selective mutism occurs more frequently than these data suggest. There may be many unreported cases of selective mutism that resolve with time and require no **intervention**.

In terms of age grouping, selective mutism may appear at the very beginning of a child's social experience or may begin in later childhood. Some cases have been recorded in which selective mutism does not begin until high school. Onset in late adolescence is unusual, however; the most common age of onset for the disorder is the early elementary school years.

Selective mutism is often associated with **social phobia** in adult life. Children with selective mutism disorder may be more likely as adults to have a high level of social anxiety even if they do not meet the diagnostic criteria for social phobia. The disorder appears to run in families. Children whose parents are anxious in social settings, were exceptionally timid as children, or suffered from selective mutism themselves in childhood, are at greater risk for developing selective mutism.

### Diagnosis

The criteria for diagnosing selective mutism disorder given by the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*) include the failure to speak in some social situations even though the child may talk at other times. This criterion is not met if the child does not speak at all in any situation.

The child's inability to talk must interfere with the achievement of such relevant goals as schoolwork, play with friends, or communication of needs. In addition, the lack of speech must persist for at least one month. The first month of school should not be included in this measurement because many children are shy and unwilling to talk freely until they feel comfortable with their new teacher, classmates, and surroundings.

Furthermore, the child's lack of speech cannot be attributed to unfamiliarity with the language they must use in school or social settings. The **diagnosis** of selective mutism does not apply to children from immigrant families who may not feel comfortable conversing in a second language. Moreover, the child's inability to talk cannot be attributed to **stuttering** or similar speech disorders, which may make the child uncomfortable because they are aware that their speech sounds different from the speech of their peers. The lack of speech also must not be attributable to **schizophrenia**, **autism**, or other mental health disorders.

The disorder of selective mutism is usually noticed first by parents or teachers of affected children. It is often hard for doctors to diagnose selective mutism

because it is unlikely that the child in question will talk to them. Therefore it may be difficult for a general practitioner to assess the existence of any underlying language or developmental problems that may be either causing or exacerbating the disorder. Tests that evaluate mental development without verbal responses from the patient may be used successfully to evaluate children with selective mutism.

There are also ways to test the child's speech development in the situations in which he or she does talk. One method involves interviews with the parents or whomever the child does speak to on a regular basis. This method can be fairly subjective, however. It is more useful for the doctor to obtain a tape or video recording of the child talking in a situation in which he or she feels comfortable. The child's hearing should be checked, as speech problems are often related to hearing disorders. Observing the child at play activities or asking him or her to draw pictures offer other effective ways to determine the child's reactions in social situations.

### Treatments

A number of different approaches have been used in attempts to treat selective mutism. Recent opinion has moved away from the idea that it is caused by a trauma, and attempts to treat it have followed accordingly. The factors that are most intensively studied at present are underlying anxiety problems. In the few cases in which an underlying trauma is discovered to be the source of the problem, counseling to help treat the underlying problems is recommended. Treatments of any kind are generally found to be more effective when the family of the child is involved in decisions about his or her treatment.

#### Behavior modification

Selective mutism can be treated by using a **reinforcement** approach. This method gives positive rewards to the child in the form of praise, treats, privileges, or anything else that the child values. In general rewards are given for speech, and withheld for silence. The use of punishments alongside the rewards is not generally recommended because it would place more **stress** on children who are already severely anxious. The positive reinforcement technique is generally found to be at least partially successful in most cases.

Another technique for modifying behavior in children with selective mutism is known as stimulus fading. This technique sets goals of increasing difficulty for the child to meet. For example, the child might be encouraged to start talking by whispering, then work up gradually to talking at full volume. Alternately, the

### KEY TERMS

**Stimulus fading**—A form of behavior modification used to treat children with selective mutism, in which goals of gradually increasing difficulty are set for the child.

child could start by talking to one person who is not a family member and gradually add names until he or she feels comfortable talking to more than one person at a time. Stimulus fading has been found to be particularly effective when it is used in conjunction with positive reinforcement techniques.

#### Treatment with medications

In some cases selective mutism is treatable with medication. **Fluoxetine** (Prozac), which is one of the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** is the drug that has been studied most often as a treatment for selective mutism. Treatment with medication is more successful in younger children. Overall fluoxetine has been found to reduce the symptoms of selective mutism in about three-fourths of children. Other drugs used to treat anxiety and social phobia disorders may also be effective in certain cases.

### Prognosis

Selective mutism is frequently treatable, in that many cases of the disorder are thought to resolve on their own. Sometimes reported cases do resolve with time, although treatment can be very effective. There is little information about the long-term outcome of selective mutism. Researchers have noted that while many children with the disorder do show improvement in speech, their anxiety in social situations persists.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th edition, vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Dow, Sara P., et al. "Practical Guidelines for the Assessment and Treatment of Selective Mutism." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 34 no. 7 (July 1995): 836-847.  
Dummit, Steven E. III, et al. "Fluoxetine treatment of children with selective mutism: an open trial." *Journal of the*

- American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 35 no. 5 (May 1996): 615-622.
- Joseph, Paul R. "Selective Mutism—The Child Who Doesn't Speak at School." *Pediatrics* 104, no. 2 (August 1999): 308.
- Stein, Martin T., Isabelle Rapin, and Diane Yapko. "Selective Mutism." *Journal of Developmental & Behavioral Pediatrics* 22, no. 2 (April 2001): S123.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

Selective Mutism Group—A Division of Childhood Anxiety Network Inc. <[www.selectivemutism.org](http://www.selectivemutism.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)

#### Definition

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are a class of antidepressant medicines that help increase the activity of a chemical in the **brain** called serotonin. They are also called serotonin boosters.

#### Purpose

Serotonin is a neurotransmitter, which is a substance that helps send messages between nerves in the brain. It is believed that problems with serotonin levels play a role in determining a person's mood and behavior.

SSRIs are used to treat a wide variety of mental disorders, including:

- major depressive disorder
- obsessive-compulsive disorder
- posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD)
- social and generalized anxiety
- panic disorder
- postmenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD)

Sometimes, a health-care provider will prescribe an SSRI for a condition other than the approved ones listed on the drug's label. This is called off-label use. Off-label uses for SSRIs include the treatment of **obesity**, certain types of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), and bulimia, an eating disorder. The American Medical Association has reported that SSRI use in persons with **depression** who have had a heart attack reduces the risk of death and repeated heart attacks.

#### Description

SSRIs act on the central nervous system. They prevent nerve cells in the brain, called receptors, from

soaking up serotonin. The action of soaking up, or absorbing, a substance is called reuptake. When serotonin reuptake is blocked, the serotonin has nowhere to go, and the levels of the chemical in the brain increase. SSRIs were released in the U.S. market in 1987. **Fluoxetine** (Prozac) was the first type of SSRI sold in the United States. Ten years later, more than half of Americans receiving outpatient treatment for major depression were prescribed an SSRI.

SSRIs include:

- citalopram (Celexa)
- escitalopram (Lexapro)
- fluoxetine (Prozac)
- fluvoxamine (Luvox)
- paroxetine (Paxil)
- sertraline (Zoloft)

#### Recommended dosage

SSRIs are taken by mouth. They are available in many different forms. Extended-release (XR) and controlled-release (CR) forms slowly release medicine into the body over several hours. Most SSRIs are taken once a day. The exact dosage needed depends on the specific drug, the person's age, and medical condition being treated. The medicine must be taken regularly for several weeks before an effect is seen. If symptoms continue, a different type of medicine may be prescribed.

#### Precautions

##### Pregnant women

Pregnant women should discuss the use and safety of SSRIs with their health care providers. In 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) warned that mothers who take SSRIs after the 20th week of pregnancy have an increased risk of giving birth to babies with a serious heart and lung disorder called persistent pulmonary hypertension (PPHN). The FDA classifies a drug according to how it may affect a baby during pregnancy and breastfeeding. Most SSRIs fall into pregnancy category C, which means: 1) no animal and human studies have been done, or 2) animal studies have shown the drugs cause harm to a fetus, but more complete human studies are needed. The SSRI paroxetine (Paxil) falls into a higher risk category. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists has recommended that pregnant women avoid taking Paxil. The organization encourages patients and doctors to carefully weigh the possible risk of birth defects against a woman's individual risk of depression during pregnancy.

### **Children and young adults**

Sometimes SSRIs may make depression worse or cause suicidal thoughts or behaviors. A government review of all studies involving antidepressant use among children and adolescents concluded that 4% of those taking SSRIs thought about **suicide** or displayed suicidal behavior. In October 2004, the FDA told the manufacturers of **antidepressants** that they must include a warning on the medicine's label that tells users the drugs have been linked to an increase in suicide in children and young adults. Such an alert is called a "black box warning." According to the FDA, the use of SSRIs among people aged 10 to 19 has risen sharply in recent years. Children and adolescents taking any type of antidepressants should be closely watched for signs of suicidal tendencies, behavior changes, or worsening of depression.

### **Other medical conditions**

SSRIs should be used with caution in people with kidney or liver problems and diabetes, and in women who are producing breast milk (lactating).

### **Side effects**

Side effects depend on the specific type of SSRI, but those most commonly reported are listed below:

#### **Central nervous system**

- anxiety
- dizziness
- drowsiness
- headache
- light-headedness
- nervousness
- tremors
- trouble sleeping

#### **Skin**

- itching
- rash
- sweating

#### **Gastrointestinal system**

- anorexia nervosa (an eating disorder)
- changes in taste
- constipation
- diarrhea
- dry mouth
- indigestion
- nausea and vomiting

### **Reproductive system**

- painful menstruation
- changes in sexual function, such as difficulty becoming aroused or reaching orgasm

### **Respiratory system**

- sore throat
- upper respiratory infections

### **Other**

- increased body temperature
- weakness
- weight loss

Forgetting to take several doses or stopping the drug suddenly can cause symptoms of withdrawal, which may include a flu-like feeling, nausea, headache, dizziness, and tiredness.

### **Interactions**

Taking SSRIs together with other drugs that affect serotonin levels, such as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) or tricyclic antidepressants, can lead to a rare but life-threatening drug reaction called "serotonin syndrome." Symptoms of serotonin syndrome occur within minutes to hours, and may include high blood pressure, mental status changes, and increased body temperature (hyperthermia).

Taking SSRIs with the herbal remedy St. John's wort may also cause this reaction.

SSRIs may slow down the body's metabolism of many other drugs. The following drugs have also been reported to interact with SSRIs and, when taken together, may lead to dangerously high serotonin levels:

- antipsychotics
- benzodiazepines
- beta-blockers
- calcium channel blockers
- cocaine
- codeine
- dextromethorphan
- fenfluramine
- levodopa
- pentazocine

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

Kasper, Dennis L. *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine*. 16th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 2005.

## KEY TERMS

**Metabolism**—A series of chemical changes that break down food, medicine, and body tissue.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI)**—An older type of antidepressant medicine.

**Neurotransmitter**—A substance that helps send messages between nerve cells.

**Persistent pulmonary hypertension (PPHN)**—A life-threatening disorder seen in newborn babies in which blood does not properly enter the lungs.

**Tricyclic antidepressant (TCA)**—An older group of antidepressants that were introduced in the 1960s. TCAs affect the activity of serotonin and another body chemical called norepinephrine.

Karch, Amy M. 2007 *Lippincott's Nursing Drug Guide*. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.  
Marx, J. *Rosen's Emergency Medicine: Concepts and Clinical Practice*. 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2006.

## ORGANIZATIONS

Mental Health America, 2000 N. Beauregard Street, 6th Floor. Alexandria, VA 22311. (800) 969-6MHA (6642). <<http://www.nmha.org>>. National Alliance on Mental Illness, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (703) 524-7600. <<http://www.nami.org>>. National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Kelli Miller Stacy

## Self-control strategies

### Definition

Self-control strategies are cognitive and behavioral skills used by individuals to maintain self-motivation and achieve personal goals. Initially the skills may be learned from a therapist, text, or self-help book. However, the individual is responsible for using these skills in real-life situations to produce the desired changes.

There are many varieties of self-control strategies. Other terms for self-control strategies are behavioral self-control training, cognitive self-regulation, and

self-management techniques. In recent years, the term “self-management” has replaced “self-control,” because self-control implies changing behavior through sheer willpower. Self-management, on the other hand, involves becoming aware of the natural processes that affect a particular behavior and consciously altering those processes, resulting in the desired behavior change.

### Purpose

Most people who decide to use self-control strategies are dissatisfied with a certain aspect of their lives. For example, they may feel they smoke too much, exercise too little, or have difficulty controlling anger. Self-control strategies are useful for a wide range of concerns, including medical (such as diabetes, **chronic pain**, asthma, arthritis, incontinence, or **obesity**), addictions (such as drug and alcohol **abuse**, smoking, gambling, or eating disorders), occupational (such as study habits, organizational skills, or job productivity), and psychological (such as **stress**, **anxiety**, **depression**, excessive anger, hyperactivity, or shyness). If symptoms are severe, self-control strategies may be used in conjunction with other therapies, but should not be the only form of treatment.

The goal of self-control strategies is to reduce behavioral deficiencies or behavioral excesses. Behavioral deficiencies occur when an individual does not engage in a positive, desirable behavior frequently enough. The result is a missed future benefit. For example, a student who rarely studies may not graduate. Behavioral excesses occur when an individual engages in negative, undesirable behavior too often. This results in a negative future consequence. For example, a person who smokes may develop lung cancer.

In the case of behavioral deficiencies, one may fail to engage in a desirable behavior because it does not provide immediate gratification. With behavioral excesses, there is usually some type of immediate gratification and no immediate negative consequence. Self-control strategies help individuals to become aware of their own patterns of behavior and to alter those patterns (usually by creating artificial rewards or punishments) so that the behavior will be more or less likely to occur.

### Description

#### *Theoretical bases for self-control strategies*

Self-control strategies are based primarily on the social cognitive theory of Albert Bandura. According to Bandura, one's behavior is influenced by a variety

of factors, including one's own thoughts and beliefs, and elements in the environment. Bandura proposed that certain beliefs, self-efficacy and outcome expectancies, are important factors in determining which behaviors an individual will attempt, and how motivated the individual will be when engaging in those behaviors. Self-efficacy is one's belief about how well he or she can perform a given task, regardless of that person's actual ability. Outcome expectancies are what the person believes will happen as a result of engaging in a certain behavior. If self-efficacy and outcome expectancies are inaccurate, the individual may experience behavioral deficits or excesses.

Donald Meichenbaum developed the idea of self-instructional training, which is a major part of self-control strategies. Meichenbaum believed that learning to control behavior begins in childhood, based on parental instruction. Children eventually control their own behavior by mentally repeating the instructions of their parents. These internal instructions may be positive or negative. Self-instructional training teaches individuals to become aware of their self-statements, evaluate whether these self-statements are helpful or hindering, and replace maladaptive self-statements with adaptive ones.

Frederick Kanfer suggested that individuals achieve self-control by using a feedback loop consisting of continuous monitoring, evaluating, and reinforcing of their own behavior. This loop occurs naturally in everyone. However, the loop can be maladaptive if (a) only negative factors are noticed and positive factors are ignored during the monitoring phase, (b) standards are unrealistic during the evaluation phase, or (c) responsibility is accepted for negative behaviors but not for positive behaviors during the **reinforcement** phase. Self-control strategies help individuals to be aware of these phases and to make the appropriate changes in monitoring, evaluation, and reinforcement.

#### *Development of a self-control program*

Self-control strategies are often taught in treatment centers, group or individual therapies, schools, or vocational settings. However, self-control programs may also be designed without the help of a professional, especially if the problem being addressed is not severe. The use of professionals, at least initially, may increase the likelihood that the program will succeed. Following are the necessary steps for creating a self-control program:

- Making a commitment. A plan cannot succeed unless one is committed to following through. Ways of

increasing commitment level include listing the benefits of adhering to the program, telling others about one's intentions, posting written reminders of commitments around one's home, putting a significant amount of time and energy into designing the program, and planning ways to deal with obstacles ahead of time.

- Identifying the problem. The behavior in need of change is referred to as the target behavior or the controlled behavior. A precise definition of the target behavior is a crucial first step. This is usually done by keeping detailed records about when, where, and how the behavior occurs for one to two weeks. The record-keeping should also focus on other competing behaviors that may be interfering with the target behavior. For example, for a person who is trying to cut down on calorie consumption, a competing behavior would be eating high-calorie snack foods. It is important to note the antecedents and consequences of the target and competing behaviors; in other words, what typically occurs immediately before (antecedents) and after (consequences) these behaviors? The antecedents and consequences are factors that influence the occurrence of the behavior. Sometimes just the process of record-keeping alters the target behavior by increasing the individual's awareness of what he or she is doing.
- Setting a goal. Once the target behavior has been defined, the individual must decide in what way that behavior should be changed. The goal should be specific so that future progress can be measured. This may entail listing circumstances or behaviors that must be present, as well as to what degree they must be present, in order for a goal to be achieved. For example, a goal to "reduce hyperactivity" in a grade-school student is vague. "Remaining in seat for seven out of fourteen half-hour periods daily" is much more specific. Indicating a time frame in which the goal can realistically be achieved is also recommended. Goals should be realistic. It is better to set a small goal and progress to bigger goals than to set a big goal and become quickly discouraged.
- Applying self-control strategies. The self-control strategies are known as controlling behaviors. Choice of strategies will depend on the target behavior. Types of strategies are discussed later.
- Self-monitoring. While using the self-control strategies, one should continue to keep records regarding the occurrence of the target behavior. Keeping written records is essential for determining if the strategies are effective. If one is gradually meeting the goal requirements, the strategies can be assumed effective. If little progress towards the goal is evident, either the strategies are being used incorrectly, or the

strategies are ineffective and should be changed. Self-monitoring can be done informally (for instance, by making notes on an index card) or formally (by using pre-designed data sheets). In any case, self-monitoring should gather the necessary information, but should not become too lengthy or complex. The individual will lose motivation to continue monitoring if the procedures are overly time-consuming or inconvenient.

- Making revisions as necessary. Based on the information gathered during self-monitoring, the individual decides if changes in the plan are necessary. One advantage of self-control programs is that the individual chooses the strategies that will work best for him or her. This freedom of choice increases the likelihood that the individual will adhere to the program. Therefore, self-control programs should always be flexible and adaptable.

#### *Types of self-control strategies*

Self-control strategies can be grouped into three broad categories:

**ENVIRONMENTAL STRATEGIES.** Environmental strategies involve changing times, places, or situations where one experiences problematic behavior. Examples include:

- changing the group of people with whom one socializes
- avoiding situations or settings where an undesirable behavior is more likely to occur
- changing the time of day for participating in a desirable behavior to a time when one will be more productive or successful

**BEHAVIORAL STRATEGIES.** Behavioral strategies involve changing the antecedents or consequences of a behavior. Examples include:

- increasing social support by asking others to work towards the same or a similar goal
- placing visual cues or reminders about one's goal in one's daily environment
- developing reinforcers (rewards) for engaging in desirable behaviors or punishers for engaging in undesirable behaviors
- eliminating naturally occurring reinforcers for undesirable behavior
- engaging in alternative, positive behaviors when one is inclined to engage in an undesirable behavior
- creating ways to make a desirable behavior more enjoyable or convenient
- scheduling a specific time to engage in a desirable behavior

- writing a behavioral contract to hold oneself accountable for carrying out the self-control program

**COGNITIVE STRATEGIES.** Cognitive strategies involve changing one's thoughts or beliefs about a particular behavior. Examples include:

- using self-instructions to cue oneself about what to do and how to do it
- using self-praise to commend oneself for engaging in a desirable behavior
- thinking about the benefits of reaching one's goal
- imagining oneself successfully achieving a goal or using imagery to distract oneself from engaging in an undesirable behavior
- substituting positive self-statements for unproductive, negative self-statements

In a therapeutic setting, self-control strategies are usually taught in weekly group sessions over a period of several weeks. The sessions typically include an educational lecture regarding a specific strategy, group discussion of how the strategy should be applied and how to cope with potential obstacles (**relapse prevention**), role-plays or rehearsal of the strategy, a review of the session, and a homework assignment for further practice. Sessions usually focus on one type of strategy at a time. Preferably, an individual should master one strategy before attempting another. After the series of training sessions are complete, the individual is responsible for implementing the strategies in daily life.

#### **Aftercare**

**Relapse** is a concern in any therapeutic situation. Current research suggests that individuals are more likely to continue using newly learned self-control strategies if they have periodic follow-up contact with a professional or other designated person. The contact serves at least three purposes: (1) a source of accountability, (2) review of strategy use to ensure proper application, and (3) discussion of problematic situations and development of plans to overcome these situations.

#### **Risks**

Self-control strategies are especially prone to short-circuiting of contingencies. This refers to the tendency for individuals to partake of reinforcers at inappropriate occasions, or to avoid punishers designated in their plan. If contingencies are short-circuited, the desired behavior change is unlikely to occur.

Relapse is another risk involved in self-control strategies. Causes of relapse include: (a) a poorly defined target behavior (progress cannot be recognized);

## KEY TERMS

**Antecedents**—Events that occur immediately before the target behavior.

**Behavioral deficiency**—Failure to engage in a positive, desirable behavior frequently enough.

**Behavioral excess**—Engaging in negative, undesirable behavior too often.

**Competing behaviors**—Behaviors that interfere with the target behavior because they are preferred by the individual.

**Consequences**—Events that occur immediately after the target behavior.

**Contingencies**—Naturally occurring or artificially designated reinforcers or punishers that follow a behavior.

**Controlled behavior**—The behavior to be changed by self-control strategies; also known as the target behavior.

**Controlling behaviors**—Self-control strategies used to change the controlled or target behavior.

**Feedback loop**—A naturally occurring process whereby individuals control their behavior by self-monitoring, self-evaluation, and self-reinforcement.

**Outcome expectancies**—What one believes will happen as a result of engaging in a certain behavior.

**Punisher**—Anything that causes a decrease of a particular behavior.

**Reinforcer**—Anything that causes an increase of a particular behavior.

**Self-efficacy**—One's belief about how well he or she can perform a given task, regardless of that person's actual ability.

**Self-instructional training**—Teaches individuals to become aware of their self-statements, evaluate whether these self-statements are helpful or hindering, and replace maladaptive self-statements with adaptive ones.

**Short-circuiting of contingencies**—The proper reinforcer or punisher for a given behavior is not administered.

**Social cognitive theory**—The theory that behavior is determined by an interaction between cognitive, behavioral, and environmental factors.

**Target behavior**—The specific behavior to be increased or decreased during treatment.

(b) unrealistic or long-term goals without immediate sources of reinforcement; (c) failure to anticipate and plan for obstacles to goal-achievement; (d) overreaction to occasional setbacks; (e) negative self-talk, especially when one feels goals are not being satisfactorily met; (f) failure to use desirable or frequent reinforcers; (g) ineffective consequences for undesirable behavior; and (h) an inaccurate or unnecessarily complex monitoring system.

### Normal results

Ideally individuals will use self-control strategies independently in their everyday surroundings to meet their designated goal. They will decrease behavioral deficiencies and excesses, engaging in desirable behaviors more often, or engaging in undesirable behaviors less frequently or not at all.

### Abnormal results

If the self-control strategies are ineffective or used improperly, individuals may show no changes or increases in behavioral deficiencies or excesses.

*See also* Behavior modification; Bibliotherapy; Cognitive retraining techniques; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Guided imagery therapy; Rational emotive therapy; Social skills training.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Dobson, Keith S., ed. *Handbook of Cognitive-Behavioral Therapies*. 2nd ed. New York: Guilford Press, 2001.

Martin, Garry. *Behavior Modification: What It Is and How to Do It*. 6th ed. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, 1999.

Miltenberger, Raymond G. *Behavior Modification: Principles and Procedures*. 2nd ed. Belmont, California: Wadsworth/Thomson Learning, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

Davies, Susan, and Raymond Witte. "Self-Management and Peer-Monitoring Within a Group Contingency to Decrease Uncontrolled Verbalizations of Children with Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." *Psychology in the Schools* 37, no. 2 (2000): 135-147.

Frayne, Colette A., and J. Michael Geringer. "Self-Management Training for Improving Job Performance: A Field Experiment Involving Salespeople." *Journal of Applied Psychology* 85, no. 1 (2000): 361-372.

- Rokke, Paul D., Judith A. Tomhave, and Zeljko Jocic. "Self-Management Therapy and Educational Group Therapy for Depressed Elders." *Cognitive Therapy and Research* 24, no. 1 (2000): 99-119.
- Saelens, Brian E., Christine A. Gehrman, James F. Sallis, Karen J. Calfas, Julie A. Sarkin, and Susan Caparosa. "Use of Self-Management Strategies in a 2-Year Cognitive Behavioral Intervention to Promote Physical Activity." *Behavior Therapy* 31 (2000): 365-379.

## ORGANIZATIONS

- Association for Behavioral Analysis. 213 West Hall, Western Michigan University, 1903 W. Michigan Avenue, Kalamazoo, Michigan 49008-5301. (616) 387-8341; (616) 384-8342. <<http://www.wmich.edu/aba>>.
- Beck Institute for Cognitive Therapy. GSB Building, City Line and Belmont Avenues, Suite 700, Bala Cynwyd, Pennsylvania 19004-1610. (610) 664-3020. <<http://www.beckinstitute.org>>.
- Cambridge Center for Behavioral Studies. 336 Baker Avenue, Concord, Massachusetts 01742-2107. (978) 369-2227. <<http://www.behavior.org>>.
- Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy Institute. 211 East 43rd Street, Suite 1500, New York, New York 10017. (212) 490-3590. <<http://www.cbtinstitute.com>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

## Self-help groups

### Definition

Self-help groups—also called mutual help or mutual aid groups—are composed of peers who share a similar mental, emotional, or physical problem, or who are interested in a focal issue, such as education or parenting. Historically, people banded together to improve their chances for survival by pooling their social and economic resources; however, contemporary groups are more likely to organize around a theme or problem.

Most self-help groups are voluntary, non-profit associations open to anyone with a similar need or interest; however, spin-off groups also exist to meet the needs of particular types of people; for example, the elderly, women, or Hispanics. Usually, groups are led by peers, have an informal structure, and are free (except for small donations to cover meeting expenses). However, professionals of various kinds lead some self-help groups.

In the past thirty years, the number of self-help organizations and groups operating in communities throughout the United States has risen dramatically; some organizations operate in several countries, primarily in the developed world. One of the reasons for

the rapid proliferation of groups focusing on health problems may be the advent of managed health care. For individuals with insurance plans offering limited mental health coverage, self-help groups are an economical way to find emotional and social support.

### Self-help groups and therapy

Because of the peer-led, informal, and democratic (as opposed to hierarchical and medical) structure, health professionals consider self-help groups for mental or emotional problems to be an adjunct to therapy. While there are therapeutic aspects associated with participation—principally, intimacy as a result of self-disclosure, personal growth in response to others' role **modeling**, and erosion of **denial** as a result of social confrontation—the primary value of contemporary groups is in the mutual aid offered by members to one another. Though the nature of self-help groups is outside of the medical realm, doctors and therapists see participation as a way to improve the outcome related to either ongoing or future formal treatment.

Another issue arguing against considering self-help groups as a type of therapy is that the variety of groups is extensive; groups available may include advocacy groups with a focus on legal or social remedies, groups organized around housing or employment needs, and groups focusing on racial or gender issues. Additionally, the self-help movement shares some characteristics with volunteerism and consumerism. In general, members who persevere have experience with other voluntary organizations and believe in the value of donating time and service; also, members may be thought of as consumers who participate in their own care and who have experience and knowledge of relevant goods and services.

### Types of self-help groups

#### Twelve-step groups

The most popular type of self-help group is based on the twelve steps and twelve traditions of Alcoholics Anonymous (AA), founded in 1935. The twelve steps are a guide to recovery from alcoholism or **addiction**, whereas the twelve traditions are a code of ethics. AA and other 12-step programs are based on the spiritual premise that turning one's life and will over to a personally meaningful "higher power," such as God or Spirit, is the key to recovery. Another essential idea is that sobriety or recovery (not cure) depends on the admission of powerlessness with respect to alcohol or the substance(s) abused. This idea is offensive to critics of 12-step groups, but others believe that this



A counselor speaks to adolescents at a chemical dependency support group. (Lawrence Migdale/Photo Researchers, Inc)

admission accurately reflects the contemporary view of addiction as a disease. Furthermore, people with a familial, genetic vulnerability to addiction are particularly at risk. While some studies suggest that 20% of people suffering from alcoholism will experience remission without benefit of therapy or a 12-step group, most will suffer deteriorating health and dysfunctional, if not ruined, social relationships. In other words, most alcoholics need formal therapy or an informal self-help program to recover. While the dropout rate for AA groups during the first three months is high, alcoholics who persevere have a good chance of attaining and maintaining sobriety or abstinence. This is especially true if the person regularly attends a home group (90 meetings in the first 90 days, slowly diminishing to two or three times per week for years thereafter) and finds an experienced and sympathetic sponsor who also is in recovery.

In addition to AA and its sister organizations, Narcotics Anonymous (NA) and Cocaine Anonymous (CA), a number of 12-step organizations exist for a variety of disorders, such as Gambler's Anonymous (GA), Schizophrenics Anonymous (SA), Emotions Anonymous (EA), and Overeaters Anonymous (OA).

#### *Other groups for health problems and diseases*

Self-help organizations also provide support for individuals struggling with the physical and emotional effects of life-threatening or chronic health problems. For example, support exists for people coping with weight management, HIV/AIDS, multiple sclerosis, muscular dystrophy, cancer, incontinence, and for the families of individuals who suffer from these conditions. Also, support exists for people who share interests or circumstances, such as groups for women who breastfeed (LaLeche League), singles, older adults, and new parents.

Self-help groups for family members of the afflicted person are available, offering support to those whose loved ones may be ill, addicted, or distressed. Family members may unwittingly reinforce illness or addictive behaviors, or may need help coping with the person in distress. Al-Anon, an organization for friends and families of alcoholics, is a companion organization to AA, as is Alateen, a program for teenagers who have been hurt by the alcoholism of significant people in their lives. **Support groups** for caregivers of individuals with life-threatening or

terminal illnesses, such as cancer, often meet at treatment centers and hospitals. One popular club for people with cancer, as well as for their friends and family, is Gilda's Club, founded by the actor/comedian Gene Wilder, Gilda Radner's widower. Gilda Radner, the well-known comedienne from *Saturday Night Live*, died at age 40 from ovarian cancer. Gilda's Clubs can be found in at least a half-dozen cities in the United States, Canada, and Britain.

### **Online groups and clearinghouses**

A growing trend in the self-help movement is the online support communities, as well as online resource centers and clearinghouses. Chat rooms, bulletin boards, and electronic mailing lists all provide convenient, around-the-clock access to peer support. Many large-scale consumer health care web sites provide forums for discussions on numerous diseases and disorders, and major online commercial services, such as America Online (AOL), provide sites for health care and patient support. In some cases, professionals moderate online groups, although many are exclusively organized and populated by peers. There are self-help groups, such as LaLeche League, that hold some meetings online, often at their own web sites.

## **Features of self-help groups**

### **Accessibility**

Accessibility and economy are appealing features of self-help groups. Since the groups are free, organizations such as AA and NA are very cost-effective. In addition, meetings are easy to locate through local newspaper announcements, hospitals, health care centers, churches, school counselors, and community agencies. For AA and sister organizations that encourage frequent attendance, hundreds of meetings may be held each week in large metropolitan areas. Furthermore, with the proliferation of online support communities and growth of connectivity to the Internet, self-help groups are becoming as accessible for individuals in rural areas as they are for those in large cities.

### **Anonymity**

An important characteristic of 12-step groups is the preservation of anonymity by revealing first names only and by maintaining strict confidentiality of personal details and experiences shared during meetings. Online self-help groups offer even more anonymity since the exchanges are not face to face. The virtual anonymity of online experience helps to reduce social discomfort and discrimination, or stereotyping other-

wise associated with real-life perceptions of age, disabilities, race, gender, or culture.

### **Social support and mutual aid**

Self-help groups provide an intact community and a sense of belonging. The social support and mutual aid available in a group may be critical to recovery, rehabilitation, or healthy coping. This is especially true for socially isolated people or people from dysfunctional families, who may have little or no emotional support. Participating in a social network of peers reduces social and emotional isolation and supports healthy behavior. Group members can offer unconditional support and, collectively, are a repository of helpful experiential knowledge.

### **Self-esteem and self-efficacy**

Self-help groups promote self-esteem or self-respect by encouraging reciprocal caring; the concept of self-efficacy, or the belief that one is capable, is promoted by reinforcing appropriate behavior and beliefs and by sharing relevant information regarding the disease or condition. For example, there may be an exchange of information regarding how to cope with failed or disrupted relationships, about what is reasonable to expect from healthcare professionals, about how to manage pain or public embarrassment, about where to go and to whom for a variety of needs. In groups such as AA, self-efficacy also is promoted by sponsors who act as mentors and role models, and by encouraging rotating leadership roles.

### **Introspection and insight**

Introspection, or contemplation, is another fundamental feature of many self-help groups, particularly for groups that follow a 12-step program of recovery. For example, the fourth step of AA states that members make "a searching and fearless moral inventory" of themselves, and the tenth step states that members continue "to take personal inventory" and admit wrongdoing. Introspection is particularly beneficial to individuals who are not entirely aware of the moral repercussions of and motivation for their behavior. In a sense, working through some of the 12 steps resembles the cognitive restructuring learned in **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT), as maladaptive ideas and behaviors are transformed.

### **Spiritual recovery**

The final step in a 12-step program recognizes that recovery entails a spiritual awakening; furthermore, recovering addicts are enjoined to spread the message

to others suffering from addiction. Recovery depends on giving up both injurious self-will and denial of maladaptive behavior, and turning to a higher power. Members are urged to seek guidance or inspiration from this higher power. For many addicts, the key to recovery is a spiritually guided movement away from self-centeredness or self-absorption, and a turning towards the “power greater than ourselves” through prayer and **meditation**.

### *Advocacy*

Some self-help groups meet to advocate or promote social and legislative remedies with respect to the issue of concern. For example, HIV/AIDS groups have lobbied for improved access to prescription drugs. Groups lobby for reforms by identifying key legislators and policy makers; they submit papers or suggestions for more equitable laws and policies to these key people. They also conduct public education programs (including programs meant to redress the harm of stigmatization). There are groups that advocate for more funds for research and for improved services for people who suffer from one of many diseases or mental disorders. The most important grassroots organization of families and consumers of psychiatric services (former or current patients) is the National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). This organization was founded in 1979, and blends self-help with advocacy efforts for the improvement of research, services, and public awareness of major mental illnesses. Their advocacy efforts target both the federal and state levels.

### *Limitations*

#### *Advocacy versus mutual aid*

In some organizations, there is a growing overlap between self-help efforts and community development. Critics maintain that focusing on issues such as crime prevention, affordable housing, and economic development drains time and effort from social support and mutual aid. Nevertheless, some organizations continue to develop both advocacy and support.

#### *Lack of professional involvement*

The absence of professional guidance may mean that a member in need of formal **psychotherapy** or treatment may be discouraged from seeking professional help. On the other hand, too much professional involvement in the group may compromise the quality of mutual aid.

#### *The “thirteenth step”*

There is a well-known risk associated with attending 12-step groups termed the “thirteenth step.” Women new to the groups, especially young women, are at their most vulnerable in the early stages of recovery. Male sexual predators who attend meetings take advantage of the atmosphere of intimacy and mutual trust. To cope with the possibility of sexual exploitation, young females are encouraged to attend meetings with a family member or a trusted adult, and all women are encouraged to find a same-sex sponsor.

#### *Substituting addictions*

The early months of a 12-step program are especially difficult. Typically, an addict in early recovery either replaces an addictive substance with a new one, or intensifies his/her concurrent use of another substance.

It is not uncommon for people who are chemically dependent to also have an addictive sexual disorder. (When someone is addicted to sex, there is an intense desire to gratify sexual urges and fantasies or to behave in ways that cause clinically significant distress; sexual indulgence, often compulsive, is a major disruptive force with respect to social relationships.) In one four-year study of a treatment program, 33% of the chemically addicted patients also were sexually compulsive. Some physicians believe that the predatory “thirteenth step” is evidence of turning from one addiction to another—in this case, addictive sexual disorder.

#### *Members at varying stages of recovery*

Another common risk is associated with the varying levels of recovery in a self-help group—that of being actively involved in the **abuse** of alcohol and/or drugs. Newcomers need to realize that not all members are interested in supporting their recovery, and that people in later stages of recovery may be more reliable. Furthermore, some members are required to attend by disciplinary entities, such as employers or correctional authorities.

#### *Ongoing meetings*

One criticism of self-help groups, especially 12-step groups, is that in the eyes of families and friends, members who persevere and faithfully attend the seemingly endless number of meetings only to become “addicted” to the program. However, physicians who support self-help groups point out that since addiction is a disease, addicts are particularly vulnerable to **relapse**, and that ongoing involvement with a self-

## KEY TERMS

**Clearinghouse**—A centralized organization that is a repository of information and that facilitates access to information.

**Cognitive restructuring**—An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping the patient examine distorted patterns of perception and thinking in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**Experiential knowledge**—Knowledge gained from experience, often practical, in contrast with theoretical or professional knowledge.

help community surely is better than suffering the recurring misery associated with active addiction.

### Alternatives to 12-step groups

For addicts who find the spirituality of 12-step groups offensive and irrational, and who believe that public proclamation of powerlessness at group meetings is demoralizing, alternative groups exist. For example, a well-known organization, Rational Recovery (RR), is based on the cognitive-behavioral principles of Albert Ellis. RR emphasizes self-reliance, rational thinking as a result of cognitive restructuring, and the development of a new repertoire of behaviors to respond effectively to events that trigger relapse.

### Conclusion

Worldwide, self-help groups are becoming increasingly popular. They are effective in providing mutual support and are good resources for finding needed information. However, when searching for an appropriate group, prospective members should ask their friends, physicians, and counselors for references, and then visit a few groups before deciding on which one to attend. Also, information clearinghouses on the Internet are a good first step.

*See also* Depression and depressive disorders; Disease concept of chemical dependency; Dual diagnosis; Group therapy; Pathological gambling; Polysubstance abuse; Sedatives and related drugs; Support groups.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Self-Help Clearinghouse. *Self-Help Sourcebook Online*. Mental Help Net, 2007. <<http://mentalhelp.net/selfhelp>>.

Borkman, Thomasina Jo. *Understanding Self-Help/Mutual Aid: Experiential Learning in the Commons*. New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Press, 1999.

Humphreys, Keith. *Circles of Recovery: Self-help Organizations for Addictions*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2004.

White, Barbara J., and Edward J. Madara, eds. *The Self-Help Group Sourcebook: Your Guide to Community & Online Support Groups*. Denville, NJ: Saint Clares Health Services, 2002.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Alcoholics Anonymous. P.O. Box 459, New York, NY 10163. (212) 870-3400. <<http://www.alcoholics-anonymous.org>>.

Gilda's Club Worldwide. 322 Eighth Ave., Suite 1402, New York, NY 10001. (888) GILDA-4-U. <<http://www.gildaclub.org>>.

Narcotics Anonymous World Service Office. P.O. Box 9999, Van Nuys, CA 91409. (818) 773-9999. <<http://www.na.org>>.

National Self-Help Clearinghouse. Graduate School and University Center of The City University of New York, 365 5th Ave., Suite 3300, New York, NY 10016. (212) 817-1822. <<http://www.selfhelpweb.org>>.

Tanja Bekhuis, Ph.D.  
Paula Ford-Martin, M.A.  
Stephanie N. Watson

## Self mutilation

### Definition

Self mutilation, a feature of self harm or self injury, is intentional injury to one's own body tissues without an accompanying, conscious intention to commit **suicide**. Although this behavior can appear similar to a suicide attempt, the phrase "deliberate self harm" is preferred rather than "suicide attempt" because the reasons and motivation behind self harm or mutilation are generally quite different from those that underlie attempted suicide. Self mutilation is considered a coping mechanism.

Self mutilation and self harm are not explicitly listed as disorders in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, also known as the DSM, although some clinicians argue that they should be. The 2000 edition of the DSM (the Fourth Edition Text Revision, also known as DSM-IV-TR) mentions self-injury as a symptom or criterion for **diagnosis** of **borderline personality disorder** (abbreviated as BPD), **stereotypic movement disorder**, which can be a co-morbidity of **autism** or **mental retardation**, and



**Woman with scars from self-mutilation.** (Photofusion Picture Library/Alamy)

**factitious disorder** (specifically factitious disorder with predominantly physical signs and symptoms), in which the person fakes a physical illness. For example, the self-mutilation behavior in factitious disorder might involve pulling out hair or purposely exacerbating a healing wound to mimic disease symptoms. Self harm, including self mutilation, also can be associated with other disorders listed in the DSM-IV, including **post-traumatic stress disorder**, known as PTSD.

### Description

Self mutilation can take different forms and have different functions depending on the individual. In some nonpsychiatric subpopulations, self mutilation is a sanctioned activity; for example, among adolescents, some forms of mutilation of tissues are socially acceptable and done as a group. Self harm or self mutilation also can accompany cognitive deficits or **psychosis**, and in the most severe expression of the practice, can manifest as auto-castration or even self-immolation.

The focus of this entry is self mutilation that occurs in the absence of cognitive deficits or psychosis. In general, self mutilation remains poorly understood and comparatively little explored, especially in empirical studies. What is known is that this behavior can be a manifestation of anguish that the person cannot otherwise express, or it can be a way for the person to cope with and relieve tension. In some cases, it has

been construed as a method of self punishment. In general, self mutilation results in so little actual harm to the body that medical professionals and even family members often do not know that the mutilation is taking place. In addition, the person who engages in self mutilation may go to great lengths to hide the resulting physical signs. The usual forms of self mutilation are sticking with needles, scratching, or cutting.

### Demographics

In general, the incidence of self harm has received more attention in clinical populations rather than in community or nonclinical groups. Groups at risk of self harm include depressed adolescents, those experiencing an interpersonal crisis, and those who have done it before. Although reported incidence in the research literature can vary from study to study, there is some overlap. Some studies report a rate of 4% in the general adult population and 21% in the adult clinical population. Adolescents make up the group at greatest risk: in the community, rates have been reported ranging from 14 to 39% of respondents and a range of 14 to 21% among high school students; in adolescent psychiatric inpatient samples, rates are as high as 40 to 61%. Studies have identified self-harm behaviors in 4% of military recruits and 14 to 35% of psychology students at public universities. Research indicates that self-mutilating behavior occurs among nonclinical populations at rates greater than previously thought.

Rates of frequent self-mutilation activity are significantly higher among lesbian and bisexual women, and the behavior was long thought to be more prevalent among females, although recent findings indicate a similar prevalence in both sexes. Although the function of self mutilation usually differs from the motivations underlying a suicide attempt, one study suggests that 20 to 45% of those who engage in self harm think about suicide. In addition, someone who experiences one episode of self harm may be likely to engage in another: as many as 30% of adolescents who report a previous incident of self harm will do it again.

### Motivation

Self injury is closely linked to dysfunctions of emotional expression. For some who self mutilate, the physical pain of cutting or scratching provides a distraction from emotional pain. Others may use self mutilation as a way to punish themselves or relieve a feeling of “evil,” while for others who engage in the practice, it offers a relief from tension or a way to “feel

real” through the physical pain or the visible evidence of physical injury. Causing physical pain to one’s body through self mutilation may also provide an outlet for a person who has difficulty communicating emotions like anger or emotional pain. In addition, people who engage in self mutilation may be trying, either consciously or subconsciously, to alter the behavior of someone near them or seek help, although many people who self harm go to great lengths to conceal the signs of the behavior.

The immediate triggers for self mutilation often center on some kind of interpersonal crisis. A person may have just experienced a separation from a partner or a major confrontation with a parent, or have just run away from home, for example.

### Risk factors

The immediate causes of self mutilation in the absence of psychosis or social sanction can differ, and the risk factors also can differ based on the population subgroup studied and association with other psychiatric disorders. Because of this emerging variety of risk factors, some experts believe that focusing too much on a specific type of mistreatment or risk factor may result in overlooking the association of other factors.

There is a correlation between self harm and suicide attempts, feelings of hopelessness and other symptoms of **depression**, **anxiety**, external expectations of perfection, and most often, a history of abuse. Risk factors can be classified into two categories: those associated with the individual’s environment and those that are intrinsic to the individual. In addition, risk factors from one category can influence those of the other, and vice versa.

### *Environmental risk factors*

Some of the most commonly seen environmental risk factors in self mutilation are associated with abuse experienced in childhood. Most research into the phenomenon of self harm has focused on sexual abuse, but there are some indications that self harm can also be associated with physical abuse and even emotional abuse, and it is strongly associated with low self esteem. Almost any discussion about factors directly related to self harm, however, is theoretical because of the paucity of actual experimental or empirical data.

In what may be a blurring of the distinction between socially sanctioned self mutilation and the kind of self mutilation discussed here, another risk factor for engaging in this behavior is awareness that others in one’s peer group are doing it. **Substance abuse** also can be a contributing factor, and depres-

sion may also lead a someone to turn to self mutilation as a coping mechanism. Perfectionism may also be a risk factor. Perfectionism consistently correlates with thoughts and behaviors related to self injury, but at least one study indicates that the type of perfectionism related to self mutilation arises from social requirements rather than from an individual’s self-requirements.

### *Individual risk factors*

The interaction of environmental factors and personal factors arises because of the individual ways people respond to environmental risk factors. Researchers have identified alexithymia, which is the inability to express feelings verbally, as an individual risk factor. The importance of this inability to express emotion as a risk factor in self mutilation is underscored by research that suggests that self-harmers who learn to express their feelings verbally exhibit a decrease in the self-harming behavior.

### Symptoms

The signs that a self-mutilation event has occurred are obvious, but less obvious are the symptoms that one will occur. A recent study found that individuals engaging in self-mutilating behavior usually thought about it for only a few minutes or even less time before doing the act; almost half reported not thinking about it at all before doing it. This association of impulse with self mutilation could be related to the specifics of the population studied, which was a group of adolescents who had previously self mutilated. High levels of dissociation—a defense mechanism to isolate and protect the psyche from thoughts, emotions, or physical sensations that cause anxiety—can accompany self-mutilating behavior.

There are some signs that may precede an impulsive act of self mutilation. These signs include trouble with parents, school, partners, or siblings, health problems, trouble with peers, including being bullied, depression, and low self esteem. Again, knowing that others in the peer group are doing it can also be a precipitating factor.

### Diagnosis

Many cases of self mutilation may never come to the attention of a clinician, parent, or caregiver. Often, identified self mutilation has occurred in the context of a personality disorder, such as BPD. It may also appear as a manifestation of other psychiatric disorders, including substance abuse, **intermittent explosive disorder**, and eating disorders. Below, specific information about self harm in the context of BPD and suicide is presented.

### ***Self mutilation and borderline personality disorder***

For a person with BPD, self-mutilating behavior offers relief during a dissociative episode by functioning as an affirmation of the ability to feel or by relieving the person's personal feeling of being bad. Clinical populations with BPD have been the target of most studies focusing on self harm, and in these populations, emotional vulnerability appears to play a strong role in whether or not an individual will self harm and in the development of BPD itself. Emotional vulnerability involves two aspects: emotional reactivity, which is high sensitivity to stimuli, and emotional intensity, which is an extreme reaction to those stimuli. These factors are among the individual characteristics that might interact with environmental factors to elicit self-mutilating behaviors. Persons with BPD may have feel empty or detached to the point of anhedonia, an inability to experience pleasure from things that most people find pleasurable, such as eating good food. In addition, they may exhibit a narrow range of **affect**, the mood that a person displays to others. These signs of emotional inexpressivity may, according to some research, increase the possibility that a person with BPD will engage in self mutilating behavior.

### ***Self mutilation and suicide***

Because self mutilation can be interpreted as a "cry for help," suicide can be a concern for those who become aware that an individual is self mutilating. Research suggests that there appears to be a distinction between the risk of suicide and impulsive self mutilation compared to self mutilation that is deliberate and well thought out. Statistically, 20 to 25% of self harmers think about suicide, and the risk of suicide after self harm ranges from 0.24 to 4.3%. Among the self-harming population, suicide risk factors include being an adolescent male, using a violent method for self harming, and a history of being an inpatient at a psychiatric facility. Some other features also are associated with conscious suicidal intent in a person who self mutilates: self mutilation performed alone, attempts to hide the behavior, preparations made for death, such as a plan for disposition of effects, or an act of self harm that was planned considerably in advance (i.e., it was not impulsive).

### **Treatment**

Treatments for self mutilation include dialectical behavioral therapy, problem-solving therapy, and cognitive behavioral therapy.

### ***Dialectical behavioral therapy***

This relatively new approach to therapy was developed by Marsha Linehan at the University of Washington. It focuses on teaching alternative ways to manage emotion and handle distress. The relationship between emotional inexpressivity and self harm suggests that those who engage in self-mutilating behaviors to express emotions might benefit from a clinical approach involving tutoring in other methods of emotional expression. Dialectical behavioral therapy, or DBT, which involves individual therapy and group skills training, was originally developed for individuals with BPD who engage in self-harm, but it is now used for self-harming individuals with a wide variety of other psychological issues, including eating disorders and substance dependence. Research indicates that the approach is helpful in reducing self-harm.

### ***Problem-solving therapy***

This form of therapy involves developing and rehearsing coping strategies for the situations that may precipitate self harm. The approach can involve the entire family, using structured family interventions over five or six sessions. There is a focus on improved cognitive and social skills to facilitate sharing feelings, controlling emotion, and family negotiation. Group treatment can also be a facet of problem-solving therapy. Briefly, this therapeutic approach identifies problems, prioritizes them, defines goals, and establishes and executes a strategy to achieve the goals, addressing any psychological issues that become obstacles along the way.

### ***Cognitive behavioral therapy***

In cases of self mutilation accompanied by depression, a suggested approach is cognitive behavioral therapy, which involves identifying patterns of destructive or negative behaviors or thinking and modifying them to be more realistic and pragmatic.

Other potential treatments for self mutilation in the context of other disorders include treatment for any substance abuse, anger management therapy, or environmental changes. There are no drugs specifically designated for treating self-mutilation behavior, but **antidepressants** might be prescribed if the behavior is accompanied by depression.

### **Prognosis**

Some studies indicate that following self harm, some adolescents see improvement in their relationship with their parents. In addition, research suggests

## KEY TERMS

- Affect**—the mood a person displays to others
- Alexithymia**—The inability to express some feelings verbally.
- BPD**—Borderline personality disorder, a mental disorder characterized by disturbed and unstable interpersonal relationships and self-image, along with impulsive, reckless, and often self-destructive behavior.
- Dissociation**—A defense mechanism to isolate and protect the psyche from thoughts, emotions, or physical sensations that cause anxiety
- PTSD**—Post-traumatic stress disorder, a psychiatric disorder precipitated by witnessing or experiencing an event involving serious injury or death. Those suffering from PTSD may experience such symptoms as nightmares, insomnia, flashbacks, and anxiety.
- Self mutilation, self harm, self injury**—Intentional injury to one's own body tissues without an accompanying, conscious intention to commit suicide.

that self harm may result in more support from social networks. In terms of decreasing the incidence of self harming, self-harmers who learn to express their feelings verbally see a decrease in self-mutilating behaviors.

### Prevention

Due to the lack of research on the disorder, self mutilation remains a poorly understood phenomenon, and prevention measures have not been thoroughly explored. In addition, the mixed and varied development pathways that lead to self harm may complicate efforts at prevention. The risk factors for self harm are often associated with other pathologies, and an awareness of this association might be a potential aid in targeting prevention.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 4th edition, Text revision. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

#### PAPERS

Gratz, Kim L., Ph.D. "Risk factors for deliberate self-harm among female college students: the role and interaction of childhood maltreatment, emotional inexpressivity,

and affect intensity/reactivity." *American Journal of Orthopsychiatry* 76 (2006): 238-250.

- Hawton, Keith, and James, Anthony. "Suicide and deliberate self harm in young people." *British Medical Journal* 330 (2005): 891-894.
- Nock, Matthew K., and Prinstein, Mitchell J. "Contextual features and behavioral functions of self-mutilation among adolescents." *Journal of Abnormal Psychology* 114 (2005): 140-146.

### WEBSITES

Gibson, Laura E., Ph.D. "Self-harm: a National Center for PTSD Fact Sheet." Available online at <[http://www.ncptsd.va.gov/facts/problems/fs\\_self\\_harm.html](http://www.ncptsd.va.gov/facts/problems/fs_self_harm.html)>.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>
- National Institutes of Mental Health, National Institutes of Health. "Borderline Personality Disorder: Raising Questions, Finding Answers." Publication No. 01-4928. Available online at <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/bpd.cfm>>
- National Center for PTSD, 1116D V.A. Medical Center, 215 N. Main Street, White River Junction, VT 05009-0001. (802)296-5132. <<http://www.ncptsd.org>>

Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

## Separation anxiety disorder

### Definition

Like many childhood concerns, separation **anxiety** is normal at certain developmental stages. For example, when a child between the ages of eight and 14 months is separated from her mother or other primary caretaker, she may experience distress. This is normal. However, separation anxiety that occurs at later ages is considered a disorder because it is outside of normal developmental expectations, and because of the intensity of the child's emotional response. Separation anxiety disorder occurs most frequently from the ages of five to seven and from 11 to 14.

Environmental stimuli and internal cues from the child himself interact in the presentation of separation anxiety disorder. Separation anxiety disorder is defined by the primary expression of excessive anxiety that occurs upon the actual or anticipated separation of the child from adult caregivers—most often the parents. Significant problems in daily functioning for the child and parents can result from the disorder. Common fears observed in the presentation of

separation anxiety include concerns about the parents' health or well-being (less frequently the child's own health), general catastrophes, natural disasters, or the child becoming lost/separated from the parents. Disrupted sleep, difficulty falling asleep alone, fear of monsters, or nightmares are also commonly experienced by children with separation anxiety disorder.

Family routines, parents' work schedules, and siblings' activities may all be negatively affected by the excessive anxiety and demands of the child with separation anxiety disorder. Family life is often disrupted by efforts to soothe the child. Parents can become stressed themselves as they try to maintain their daily routines and obligations, while attempting to manage their child's anxiety. The family's adjustment is often made more difficult due to the sudden appearance of symptoms.

### Description

Children experiencing separation anxiety disorder display significant distress upon separation from the parent or other primary caregiver. Separation anxiety disorder often becomes problematic for families during elementary school, although it can also occur in older or younger children. The child appears fearful because he or she thinks something horrible will happen to the child or parent while they are apart. The child's responses to separation may include crying or becoming angry with the adult in an attempt to manipulate the situation. When thwarted by the adult's appropriate boundaries, expectations, and structure (the child must attend school, for example), the child's distress may become displaced into other maladaptive or negative behaviors. The child may begin to exhibit behavioral problems at school or at home when there has been no previous history of such problems. The child may seek out a new, negative peer group in order to gain attention or avoid separation.

Many children are unable to describe their specific fear. The feelings may seem more general and engulfing, especially to the younger child, making description more difficult and the feelings more overpowering. Children, and even adolescents, may experience difficulty describing their internal thoughts and feelings, which is normal. The ability to self-monitor, or observe one's own behavior or decision-making process, doesn't develop until late in adolescence for some individuals. When caregivers press the child experiencing separation anxiety for explanations, the feelings of anxiety can actually become more overwhelming. The intensity of the child's emotional response, accompanied by a lack of explanation, can become very frustrating for parents. Children or ado-

lescents with an angry or frustrated parent may create a reasonable explanation for their fears to appease caregivers, and to keep them from leaving. Lying to take the emphasis off their strong feelings may be one of the early behavioral changes that can accompany separation anxiety.

Although exposure to a specific stressor is not required for the development of separation anxiety disorder, in many cases, a specific incident may precipitate the onset of the disorder (the traumatic events of September 11, 2001, for example). Another common precipitant is the holiday or summer break from school. Some children experience significant difficulty returning to school after a relatively short break, but certainly after summer and holidays.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

- Environmental change. Separation anxiety disorder is often precipitated by change or stress in the child's life and daily routine, such as a move, death or illness of a close relative or pet, starting a new school, a traumatic event, or even a return to school after summer vacation.
- Genetic influence. Evidence suggests a genetic link between separation anxiety disorders in children and a history of panic disorder, anxiety, or depression in their parents. Infants with anxious temperaments may have a predisposition toward later development of anxiety disorders.
- Parent/child attachment. Quality of attachment between children and their parents has also been identified as a factor in separation anxiety disorder. If the child senses emotional distance, the behaviors may be an attempt to draw the parent in more closely. The problematic behaviors can also draw the attention and care of others as well.
- Developmental considerations. Children develop at different rates when compared to each other (boys mature slower than girls, for example). Furthermore, the rate of development within the same person can vary across different types of functioning (for example, a gifted child is advanced intellectually but may be behind developmental expectations for social and emotional areas of functioning). A slower rate of development in the intellectual, social, emotional, or physical arena can foster anxiety within the child, making the separation more difficult.
- Cognitive factors. Children repeatedly worry about what they are afraid of (getting lost or a parent getting hurt, for example). The thought patterns are repeated within the child's mind until his emotions

are beyond his control. The child may feel he is unable to think about anything else other than his fears, which contributes to his anxiety and irrational behaviors.

- Behavioral factors. The child or adolescent's crying and clinging behaviors may be developed by the child to cope with the feelings of anxiety associated with certain people, environment, or situations, such as attending school. The behaviors serve to distract attention away from the child's negative feelings, while nurturing the anxiety and fear into a greater part of the child's daily experience. For children, the behavioral component often becomes the mode of expression for the anxiety. The behavior may appear manipulative at times, due to the quick disappearance of symptoms once the threat of separation passes.
- Stress factors and influence. Symptoms of separation anxiety disorder may be exacerbated by a change in routine, illness, lack of adequate rest, a family move, or change in family structure (such as death, divorce, parent illness, birth of a sibling). The child's symptoms may also be affected by a change in caregivers or changes in parents' response to the child in terms of discipline, availability, or daily routine. Even if changes are positive or exciting, the change may feel uncomfortable and precipitate an anxious response in the child.

### Symptoms

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*, a handbook for mental health professionals that aids in **diagnosis**, lists the following criteria for separation anxiety disorder.

- Recurrent excessive distress upon separation. The child may become focused on the separation long before the actual event, or simply at the time of the anticipated separation. The recurrent behavioral pattern does not respond to intervention. The child experiences extreme distress, a highly charged emotional response that is repeated when the child anticipates separation from the caregiver. The child's fears trigger more anxiety and the emotional response intensifies.
- Persistent and excessive worry. The content of the worry may include some type of harm occurring to the child himself or toward the parents, or it may focus on becoming lost or separated indefinitely from the parent or caregiver.
- Repetitive nightmares. The child may experience repeated nightmares with themes of being chased, harmed, or separated from her family. Some fears

are age-appropriate, but in separation anxiety disorder, the intensity of the fears becomes overwhelming to the child, leaving little opportunity for the child to control her emotions or behaviors. Although dreams are often a way of exploring and making sense of daily life, children with separation anxiety disorder report nightmares that represent their irrational fears or preoccupation with disaster.

- Complaints of physical symptoms. The child may feign illness (headaches, stomachaches, etc.) to avoid separation, or the child may actually experience nausea upon separation. If allowed to continue, the child may develop psychosomatic symptoms (physical symptoms with a psychological origin) that prevent the child from attending or fully participating in school activities. In these cases, the separation anxiety may develop into a more serious hypochondriacal state in which the child complains of chronic pain, which results in the child getting what she wants (i.e., not attending school).
- Persistent reluctance or refusal to engage in age-appropriate activities. The child may refuse to attend school because of preoccupation about separation from the parent. The child may also experience reluctance to be alone at home or at school without another adult being immediately available. The child may resist sleep without an adult present. The disorder causes significant disruption in the child's daily routine and may decrease the ability to perform previously mastered tasks. The child may appear to have reverted to behaviors from a younger age. The intensity of her emotions blocks the child's ability to communicate her feelings in ways other than through behaviors. Examples include tantrums, hitting, or clinging. Crying is one of the primary behaviors associated with separation anxiety disorder. The crying can become quite intense, making it difficult for the child to regain composure.
- Enmeshment or unusual interest in parents' schedules. The child wants to know all the details of the daily routine, a behavior which minimizes the anxiety the child is feeling.
- Quick resolution of symptoms (upon meeting child's demands). It may be hard for parents to accept the reality of the disorder because the symptoms often disappear quickly when separation does not occur. It is this component that can feel manipulative to those in the child's life.

### Demographics

Prevalence estimates of separation anxiety disorder are 4–5% of the population. Gender differences have not been observed, although girls do present

more often with anxiety disorders in general. Of those diagnosed with separation anxiety disorder, approximately 75% experience school refusal. The most frequently observed ages for occurrence of separation anxiety disorder are in children ages five to seven years and again from ages 11 to 14 years. It is at these times the children may feel more challenged by the developmental tasks of entering school or beginning puberty.

## Diagnosis

The mental health professional will usually make the diagnosis of separation anxiety disorder based on information gathered during an interview process involving the parent(s) and the child. It is usually preferable for the interviews with the parent and child to occur separately; however that may not be possible because of the child's intense anxiety about separation.

As noted, separation anxiety disorder is generally diagnosed by history, including parental report; however, a few measures of general anxiety exist that can be used to supplement the history. These include Pediatric Anxiety Rating Scale, Children's Global Assessment Scale, Children's Anxiety Scale, Screen for Child Anxiety Related Emotional Disorders (SCARED-R), Multi-Dimensional Anxiety Scale for Children, and Achenbach's Child Behavior Checklist.

Duration of disturbance prior to diagnosis is a minimum of four weeks, occurring prior to the age of 18 years.

The disorder is described as "early onset" prior to the age of six years, and is generally not diagnosed after the age of 18. However, some researchers are describing another type of separation anxiety experienced by parents when their adolescents leave home. Readers may recognize this stage of life as the "empty nest syndrome," however, no such formal diagnosis exists for a parental form of separation anxiety.

## Treatments

The most effective treatments for separation anxiety disorder involve parents, as well as school personnel when appropriate. Giving the child a sense of safety and security is key to successful treatment. Current treatment methods combine some form of group or individual cognitive behavioral intervention. A number of treatment options are discussed below.

### Cognitive-behavioral therapy

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** is a treatment approach designed to alter a person's thoughts, beliefs, and images as a way of changing behavior. In treating a child with separation anxiety disorder, the goal is to help the child label her fears and identify the irrational beliefs and assumptions underlying her fears. By confronting and correcting her false beliefs, a parent can help his or her child become less anxious about separation.

### Imagery

With imagery, a child uses his imagination to see himself being successful in a stressful situation. For example, before heading off to school, a child could imagine how he will handle separation from mom. Instead of crying, he sees himself calmly saying goodbye to his mom. The use of positive mental pictures may help diminish some of the child's anxiety and fear before separation actually occurs.

### Modeling

Parents and teachers can be helpful in **modeling** appropriate behaviors and coping mechanisms at home and at school. For example, parents can model being relaxed when saying goodbye to their children and other people.

### Systematic desensitization

**Systematic desensitization** is a **behavior modification** technique in which a person is gradually exposed to an anxiety-provoking or fearful object or situation while learning to be relaxed. A child with separation anxiety disorder may be taught to spend longer and longer periods of time at school without a caregiver present by teaching her relaxation techniques for managing her anxiety.

### Positive role models

Using positive role models, whether in real life or in books, can also be helpful for children. Reading books about other children successfully separating from their caregiver can give the anxious child the confidence that he can do it, too. Watching his friends calmly separate from their caregivers can also empower the child to do the same.

### Behavior modification

Behavior modification uses a system of rewards and reinforcements to change behavior. This method has been shown to be effective in a majority of cases

involving children and separation anxiety disorder, even at one-year follow-up.

### **Reminders**

Small items that remind the child of his bond with his parents can sometimes be helpful in managing the child's anxiety. Typical objects could include a smooth stone in the child's pocket, a picture of the family in the child's notebook, or a friendship bracelet. Allowing phone calls or contact throughout the day is generally not effective, as it provides a more direct reminder of the caregiver's absence.

### **Distraction and altruism**

Distraction and altruism is another strategy that can be useful in treating separation anxiety disorder. Helping the child focus on things outside himself can provide a healthy distraction. For instance, the child may be asked to take care of a pet at school. Such distractions from the child's internal thoughts and feelings coupled with a "fun" responsibility can help the child move away from his internal state of anxiety.

### **Medication management**

Medication is helpful in certain cases where the anxiety is so debilitating that the child is unable to participate in other forms of treatment, or go about his daily routine. Medication management most often involves some type of anti-anxiety or anti-depressive drug. The newest classes include the **SSRIs** or selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitors that influence **neurotransmitters** in the **brain** to regulate emotional response. Before any medication is given, however, it is essential that a careful medical and psychiatric evaluation be performed by a trained health professional.

### **Prognosis**

More than 60% of children participating with their parents in cognitive-behavioral treatment are successful in managing their symptoms without medication. Symptoms generally do not re-appear in exactly the same way as the initial presentation; however, the child may have a heightened sensitivity to normal life transitions, such as changing schools. Families can help children cope with these transitions by visiting the new school, meeting teachers, and getting to know some students.

Separation anxiety disorder has a poorer prognosis in environments where threat of physical harm or separation actually exist.

Existence of other conditions, such as **autism**, decrease the likelihood of a positive prognosis. Pres-

## **KEY TERMS**

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

ence of separation anxiety disorder in childhood is sometimes associated with early onset panic disorder in adults.

Studies indicate a lower prevalence of alcohol use and suicidal ideation in children or adolescents who experience separation anxiety disorder. Depression is commonly associated with anxiety disorders. Developing social skills can also be negatively affected by separation anxiety disorder.

### **Prevention**

Prevention can be enhanced through parent effectiveness training that emphasizes the child's positive and successful coping strategies when dealing with separation. Overly anxious parents may need to develop their own support mechanisms and systems to manage their feelings and avoid influencing their children negatively.

### **Resources**

#### **BOOKS**

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Silverman, W. K. and P. D. Treffers, Eds. *Anxiety disorders in children and adolescents: Research, assessment and intervention*. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 2001.

#### **PERIODICALS**

- Burke, P., R. C. Baker. "Is fluvoxamine safe and effective for treating anxiety disorders in children?" *Journal of Family Practice* 50, no. 8 (2001).
- Goodwin, R., J. D. Lipsitz, T. F. Chapman, S. Mannuzza, and A. J. Fyer. "Obsessive-compulsive disorder and separation anxiety co-morbidity in early onset panic disorder" *Psychological Medicine* 31, no. 7 (October 2001): 1307-1310.
- Kaplow, J. B., P. J. Curran, A. Angold, E. J. Costello, ; "The Prospective Relation between Dimensions of Anxiety and the Initiation of Adolescent Alcohol Use." *Journal of Clinical Child Psychology* 30, no. 3 (2001): 316-326.
- Kendall, P.C., E. V. Brady, T. Verduin. "Comorbidity in Childhood Anxiety Disorders and Treatment Outcome." *Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry* 40, no. 7 (2001).

- Muris, P., B. Mayer, E. Bartelds, S. Tierney, and N. Bogie. "The revised version of the Screen for Child Anxiety Related Emotional Disorders (SCARED:R)." *British Journal of Clinical Psychology* 40 (2001): 323-336.
- Shortt, A. L., P. M. Barrett, T. L. Fox. "Evaluating the FRIENDS Program: A Cognitive-Behavioral Group Treatment for Anxious Children and Their Parents." *Journal of Clinical Child Psychology* 30, no. 4 (2001): 525-535.
- Southam-Gerow, M. A., P. C. Kendall, V. R. Weersing. "Examining Outcome Variability: Correlates of Treatment Response in a child and Adolescent Anxiety Clinic." *Journal of Clinical Child Psychology* 30, no. 3 (2001): 422-436.
- Walkup, J. T., M. J. Labellarte, M. A. Riddle, Daniel S. Pine, L. Greenhill, R. Kelin, M. Davies, M. Sweeney, H. Abikoff, S. Hack, B. Klee, J. McCracken, L. Bergman, J. Piacentini, J. March, S. Compton, J. Robinson, T. O'Hara, S. Baker, B. Vitiello, L. A. Ritz, M. Roper. "Fluvoxamine for the Treatment of Anxiety Disorders in Children and Adolescents." *The New England Journal of Medicine* 344, no. 17 (2001).

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry.

<[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852. Phone: (301) 231-9350. Web site: <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.

#### OTHER

- Brandt, Amy, Eida de la Vega, and Janice Lee Porter. *Benjamin Comes Back*. Saint Paul: Redleaf Press, 2000.
- Penn, Audrey, Ruth E. Harper, Nancy M. Leak. *The Kissing Hand*. Washington: Child Welfare League of America, Incorporated, 1993.

Deanna Pledge, Ph.D.

Serax see **Oxazepam**

Serentil see **Mesoridazine**

Seroquel see **Quetiapine**

Serotonin see **Neurotransmitters**

## Sertraline

#### Definition

Sertraline is an antidepressant that belongs to the class of drugs called **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**. In the United States it is sold under the brand name Zoloft.

#### Purpose

Sertraline is used to treat **depression, obsessive-compulsive disorder, panic disorder, and post-traumatic stress disorder**.

#### Description

Serotonin is a **brain** chemical that carries nerve impulses from one nerve cell to another. Researchers think that depression and certain other mental disorders may be caused, in part, because there is not enough serotonin being released and transmitted in the brain. Like the other SSRI **antidepressants, fluvoxamine (Luvox), fluoxetine (Prozac), and paroxetine (Paxil)**, sertraline increases the level of brain serotonin (also known as 5-HT). Increased serotonin levels in the brain may be beneficial in patients with obsessive-compulsive disorder, alcoholism, certain types of headaches, post-traumatic **stress** disorder (PTSD), pre-menstrual tension and mood swings, and panic disorder. Sertraline is not more or less effective than the other SSRI drugs although selected characteristics of each drug in this class may offer greater benefits in some patients. Fewer drug interactions have been reported with sertraline, however, than with other medications in the same class.

The benefits of sertraline develop slowly over a period of up to four weeks. Patients should be aware of this and continue to take the drug as directed, even if they feel no immediate improvement.

Sertraline is available in 25-mg, 50-mg and 100-mg tablets, or as a 20-mg per ml solution.

#### Recommended dosage

The recommended dosage of sertraline depends on the disorder being treated. The initial recommended dosage for depression and obsessive-compulsive disorder is 50 mg daily. This may be increased at intervals of at least one week to the maximum recommended dosage of 200 mg daily. For the treatment of panic disorder and post-traumatic stress disorder, the initial dose is 25 mg once daily. This dosage is increased to 50 mg daily after one week. If there is no therapeutic response, the dosage may be increased to the maximum of 200 mg daily at intervals of at least one week. These dosages may need to be reduced in elderly patients (over age 65) or in people with liver disease.

For the treatment of obsessive-compulsive disorder in the pediatric population, treatment should be initiated at a dose of 25 mg per day in children 6 to 12 years of age and 50 mg per day in children 13 to 17 years of age. Doses may be increased at one-week intervals to a total daily dose of 200 mg.

## Precautions

A group of serious side effects, called serotonin syndrome, have resulted from the combination of antidepressants such as sertraline and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors. Serotonin syndrome usually consists of at least three of the following symptoms: diarrhea, fever, sweatiness, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking. Because of this, sertraline should never be taken in combination with MAO inhibitors. Patient taking any MAO inhibitors, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAO inhibitor then wait at least 14 days before starting sertraline or any other antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing sertraline and starting an MAO inhibitor. Also, people should not take sertraline oral concentrate while using **disulfiram** (Antabuse). Sertraline should never be taken by people who are any SSRI antidepressants.

Sertraline should be used with cautiously and with close physician supervision by people with a prior history of **seizures**, people who are at an increased risk of bleeding, and those for whom weight loss is undesirable. Sertraline may precipitate a shift to mania in patients with bipolar (formerly manic-depressive) disease.

## Side effects

More than 5% of patients experience **insomnia**, dizziness, and headache. About 14% of men report delayed ejaculation while 6% report decreased sex drive while taking this drug. In order to reduce these sexual side effects patients can wait for tolerance to develop (this may take up to 12 weeks), reduce the dose, have drug holidays (where the weekend dose is either decreased or skipped), or discuss with their physician using a different antidepressant.

More than 10% of patients report nausea and diarrhea while taking sertraline. Other possible side effects include agitation, **anxiety**, rash, constipation, vomiting, tremors, or visual difficulty. Although most side effects eventually subside, it may take up to four weeks for people to adjust to the drug.

## Interactions

Sertraline interacts with **St. John's Wort**, an herbal remedy for depression. The risk of seizures is increased in patients using tramadol and sertraline. Taking sertraline with MAO inhibitors may result in the serious

## KEY TERMS

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—Disorder in which the affected individual has an obsession (such as a fear of contamination, or thoughts he or she doesn't like to have and can't control) and feels compelled to perform a certain act to neutralize the obsession (such as repeated handwashing).

**Panic disorder**—An anxiety disorder in which an individual experiences sudden, debilitating attacks of intense fear.

**Post-traumatic stress disorder**—A disorder caused by an extremely stressful or traumatic event (such as rape, act of war, or natural disaster) in which the trauma victim is haunted by flashbacks. In the flashbacks, the event is re-experienced in the present. Other symptoms include nightmares and feelings of anxiety.

**Serotonin syndrome**—A condition characterized by at least three of the following symptoms: diarrhea, fever, extreme perspiration, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking. It is a result of too much serotonin in the body.

side effects discussed above. Erythromycin, an antibiotic, may inhibit the breakdown of sertraline in the liver and cause increased central nervous system effects such as drowsiness and decreasing of mental alertness. Other antidepressants should not be taken by people using sertraline except in rare cases where prescribed by a physician. If a combination of antidepressants is considered beneficial, a low dose of tricyclic antidepressants (10–25 mg daily) should be used.

Sertraline should not be taken with grapefruit juice as the combination may increase sertraline levels in the body.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Kay, Jerald. *Psychiatry: Behavioral Science and Clinical Essentials*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 2000.

Pfizer Inc. Staff. Product Information for Zoloft-Sertraline. New York: Pfizer Inc. Revised 9/2000, reviewed 3/2001.

### PERIODICALS

Edwards, Guy. "Systemic Review and Guide to Selection of Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors." *Drugs*. 57 (1999): 507-33.

Hirschfeld, Robert. "Management of Sexual Side Effects of Antidepressant Therapy." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*. 60 (1999): 27-30.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.

Serzone see **Nefazodone**

Sexual abuse see **Abuse**

## Sexual aversion disorder

### Definition

Sexual aversion disorder is a disorder characterized by disgust, fear, revulsion, or lack of desire in consensual relationships involving genital contact.

### Normal loss of desire

To understand sexual aversion disorder, one should first understand that there are circumstances in which it is normal for people to lose interest in sexual activity. The reader can then compare these situations to the loss of desire associated with serious sexual disorders, including sexual aversion disorder.

There are a number of reasons that people lose interest in sexual intercourse. It is normal to experience a loss of desire during menopause; directly after the birth of a child; before or during menstruation; during recovery from an illness or surgery; and during such major or stressful life changes as death of a loved one, job loss, retirement, or divorce. These are considered normal causes for fluctuations in sexual desire and are generally temporary. Changing roles, such as becoming a parent for the first time or making a career change have also been found to cause loss of desire. Not having enough time for oneself or to be alone with one's partner may also contribute to normal and naturally reversible loss of desire. Loss of privacy resulting from moving a dependent elderly parent into one's home is a common cause of loss of desire in middle-aged couples. **Depression, fatigue, or stress** also contribute to lessening of sexual interest.

### Description

Sexual aversion disorder represents a much stronger dislike of and active avoidance of sexual activity than the normal ups and downs in desire described above. Sexual aversion disorder is characterized not only by a lack of desire, but also by fear, revulsion, disgust, or similar emotions when the person with the

disorder engages in genital contact with a partner. The aversion may take a number of different forms; it may be related to specific aspects of sexual intercourse, such as the sight of the partner's genitals or the smell of his or her body secretions, but it may include kissing, hugging, and petting as well as intercourse itself. In some cases the person with sexual aversion disorder avoids any form of sexual contact; others, however, are not upset by kissing and caressing, and are able to proceed normally until genital contact occurs.

There are several subclassifications of sexual aversion disorder. It may be lifelong (always present) or acquired after a traumatic experience; situational (with a specific partner or in a specific set of circumstances) or generalized (occurring with any partner and in all situations). Sexual aversion may be caused by psychological factors or by a combination of physical and psychological factors.

### Causes and symptoms

There are a number of causes of sexual aversion disorder. The most common causes are interpersonal problems and traumatic experiences. Interpersonal problems generally cause situation-specific sexual aversion disorder, in which the symptoms occur only with a specific partner or under certain conditions. In such cases underlying tension or discontent with the relationship is often the cause. Reasons for unhappiness with the relationship may include the discovery of marital infidelity; major disagreements over children, money, and family roles; domestic violence; lack of personal hygiene on the partner's side; or similar problems. Interpersonal problems are often the cause if intercourse was once enjoyed but is no longer desired.

Traumatic experiences have also been found to cause sexual aversion disorder, often of the generalized variety. Some possible traumas include rape, incest, molestation, or other forms of sexual abuse. The patient then associates intercourse with a painful experience or memory, possibly one that he or she is trying to forget. Sexual aversion disorder may also be caused by religious or cultural teachings that associate sexual activity with excessive feelings of guilt.

The symptoms of sexual aversion disorder can range from mild to severe. Mild symptoms include lack of interest and mild disgust. Severe symptoms can include panic attacks with all the symptoms of such an attack, including dizziness, shortness of breath, intense fear, and rapid heartbeat. People suffering from sexual aversion disorder often go out of their way to avoid situations that could end in sexual contact through any means they can think of,

including going to bed at different times from the spouse, spending extra time at work, or trying to make themselves less sexually attractive.

## Demographics

Both men and women can experience sexual aversion disorder. It is thought to be more common in women than in men, possibly because women are more likely than men to be victims of rape and other forms of sexual assault. There are relatively few statistics on the number of people with sexual aversion disorder because it is often confused with other disorders, or with the normal fluctuations in desire associated with life stress. Also, many people find sex a difficult subject to discuss even with a physician, so that the number of people who seek help are probably fewer than the number of people with the disorder overall.

## Diagnosis

A **diagnosis** of sexual aversion disorder is usually made when the affected person or his or her partner mentions the problem itself or their dissatisfaction with the relationship to their family physician, gynecologist, or psychotherapist. An important first step in diagnosis is a thorough physical examination, preferably of both partners, to rule out physical causes of the disorder in the affected person, and to rule out a sexually transmitted disease, physical deformity, or lack of personal cleanliness in the partner that may contribute to the affected person's avoidance of sex.

According to the mental health profession's ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*** of the American Psychiatric Association, to meet criteria for a diagnosis of sexual aversion disorder the patient must not only avoid nearly all genital contact with his or her partner but have strong negative feelings about such contact or its possibility. In addition, the problem must be causing serious difficulties and unhappiness either for the patient or for his or her partner. In addition, there must not be any underlying physical causes, such as certain disorders of the circulatory system, skin diseases, medication side effects, or similar problems that could cause a loss of desire. To be diagnosed with sexual aversion disorder, the affected person does not have to avoid all sexual contact, but must indicate that he or she is actively avoiding genital contact.

Many other sexual disorders have signs and symptoms similar to those of sexual aversion disorder, which complicates the differential diagnosis. Sexual aversion disorder is often found in conjunction with

other sexual disorders; in some cases several diagnoses are appropriate for one patient.

One disorder similar in many aspects to sexual aversion disorder is hypoactive sexual disorder. Many of the signs, such as avoiding sexual contact in a variety of ways, are similar. The primary difference between the two disorders is that a patient with hypoactive sexual disorder is not interested in sex at all and does not have sexual fantasies of any variety. A patient with sexual aversion disorder, by comparison, may have normal sexual fantasies, and even function normally with some partners, although not with a specific partner. Also, a patient with hyposexual disorder will not enjoy or desire any anticipation in sexual activities including kissing and caressing. Some, though not all, people with sexual aversion disorder do enjoy sexual foreplay until the point of genital contact.

Sexual aversion disorder and hypoactive sexual disorder are both considered to be caused mainly by psychological factors and to manifest psychological symptoms. Another disorder that can have some similar symptoms is **female sexual arousal disorder (FSAD)**. FSAD refers to a woman's recurrent inability to achieve or maintain an adequate lubrication-swelling response during sexual activity. Lack of lubrication is a physical problem that may have either physical or psychological causes. Women with FSAD find intercourse uncomfortable or even painful. As a result of the physical discomfort, the woman often will avoid intercourse and sexual activity with her partner that may lead to intercourse. Although FSAD is a disorder with physical symptoms as well as psychological ones, it is easily confused with sexual aversion disorder because it may manifest as a problem of interest or desire.

## Treatments

Sexual aversion disorder is not thought to have any commonplace underlying physiological causes. The usual treatment is a course of **psychotherapy** for the psychological condition(s) that may be causing the problem. Marriage counseling is often appropriate if the disorder concerns a spouse. Medications can be used to treat some symptoms that may be associated with sexual aversion disorder, such as panic attacks, if they are severe enough to be causing additional distress.

## Prognosis

When sexual aversion disorder is addressed as a psychological disorder treatment can be very successful. Psychotherapy to treat the underlying

## KEY TERMS

**Coitus**—Sexual intercourse.

psychological problems can be successful as long as the patient is willing to attend counseling sessions regularly. For sexual aversion disorder that is situational or acquired, psychotherapy for both the patient and his or her partner (**couples therapy**) may help to resolve interpersonal conflicts that may be contributing to the disorder. Panic attacks caused by or associated with the disorder can be treated successfully by medication if the doctor considers this form of treatment necessary.

If sexual aversion disorder is not diagnosed, discussed, or treated, the result may be infidelity, divorce, or chronic unhappiness in the relationship or marriage.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Sadock, Benjamin J., and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Butcher, Josie. "Female Sexual Problems: Loss of Desire." *Western Journal of Medicine* 171 no. 1 (July 1999): 41.  
 Everard, Walter, and Ellen Laan. "Drug Treatments for Women's Sexual Disorders." *The Journal of Sex Research* 37 no. 3 (August 2000): 195.

#### OTHER

- Duffy, Jim. "Sexual Healing." *Hopkins Medical News* Winter 1999 (cited 21 March 2002). <[www.hopkinsmedicine.org/hmn/W99/top.htm;](http://www.hopkinsmedicine.org/hmn/W99/top.htm;)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

Sexual deviance see **Paraphilic disorders**

## Sexual dysfunctions

### Definition

Sexual dysfunction disorders are problems that interfere with the initiation, consummation, or satisfaction with sex. They occur in both men and women and are independent of sexual orientation.



**Viagra pills.** (Garry Gay/Alamy)

### Description

Probably nowhere in human health do the body and mind interact more than during sex. There are four generally recognized phases of sexual activity, involving both mental and physical responses and are applicable to both men and women. These phases are in sequence:

- desire or appetite—fantasies or thoughts about sex.
- excitement—physical changes to prepare the body for intercourse and accompanying sense of sexual pleasure
- orgasm—physical response that leads to the peak of physical pleasure and release of sexual tension
- resolution—physical relaxation accompanied by a feeling of well-being and satisfaction

Sexual dysfunction disorders can occur in any of these four phases. Their cause may be physiological or psychological. More than one sexual dysfunction disorder may appear simultaneously. The **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, (DSM-IV-TR), produced by the American Psychiatric Association and used by most mental health professionals in North America and Europe to diagnose mental disorders, recognizes nine specific sexual dysfunctions:

- Disorders of desire: These interfere with the initiation of sex and include hypoactive sexual desire disorder (low interest in sex) and sexual aversion disorder (objection to having the genitals touched).
- Disorders of excitement or sexual arousal: These are female sexual arousal disorder (when a woman fails to have physiological responses associated with arousal), and male erectile disorder (when a man fails to get an adequate erection, also referred to as “erectile dysfunction”).
- Disorders of the orgasm phase: These are female orgasmic disorder (when a woman fails to reach orgasm); and male orgasmic disorder (when a man fails to reach orgasm) and premature ejaculation (when a man reaches orgasm too soon).
- Sexual pain disorders (associated with intercourse and orgasm): These disorders are vaginismus (the outer part of a woman’s vagina spasms causing pain) and dyspareunia (pain during intercourse in either men or women).

In addition, medications or illicit drugs may cause substance-induced sexual dysfunction and sexual dysfunction may be caused by a general medical condition such as diabetes or nerve damage. If the sexual dysfunction falls into none of the above areas, it is classified as sexual dysfunction not otherwise specified.

The causes of sexual dysfunction disorders are varied, as are their symptoms. In general, symptoms either prevent the initiation of sex or the completion of the sex act, or they interfere with satisfaction derived from sex. Almost everyone has some problem with sexual functioning or fulfillment at some point in their lives, but not all problems are considered sexual dysfunction disorders. Sexual satisfaction is very personal and individual, so that what may be an annoyance for one couple may be a serious problem for another. However, estimates suggest that roughly one-fourth of the adult population may have a sexual dysfunction disorder. More women than men report having sexual dysfunction disorders, but the difference may be that women are more open and active about seeking help with sexual problems than are men.

**Diagnosis** begins with a sexual and medical history, and often a physical examination and laboratory tests. Treatment must be individualized based on the cause and the specific dysfunction and includes physiological treatment, **psychotherapy**, and education and communication counseling. Most people can be helped to resolve their problems and improve their sex life. Generally, the sooner the person receives help, the easier the problem is to resolve. Support of a partner is often critical to successful resolution of the problem.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Berman, Jennifer, M.D., and Laura Berman, Ph. D. *For Women Only: A Revolutionary Guide to Overcoming Sexual Dysfunction and Reclaiming Your Sex Life*. New York: Henry Holt, 2001.
- Hales, Robert E., Stuart C. Yudofsky, and John A. Talbot. *The American Psychiatric Press Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Association of Sex Educators, Counselors, and Therapists (AASECT). P. O. Box 238, Mount Vernon, IA 53214-0238. (319) 895-8407. <[www.aasect.org](http://www.aasect.org)>.
- Sexual Information and Education Council of the United States (SIECUS). West 42 Street, Suite 350, New York, NY 10036-7802. <[www.siecus.org](http://www.siecus.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Sexual masochism

### Definition

The essential feature of sexual masochism is the feeling of sexual arousal or excitement resulting from receiving pain, suffering, or humiliation. The pain, suffering, or humiliation is real and not imagined and can be physical or psychological in nature. A person with a **diagnosis** of sexual masochism is sometimes called a masochist.

The **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, also known as the **DSM**, is used by mental health professionals to diagnose specific mental disorders. In the 2000 edition of this manual (the Fourth Edition Text Revision also known as *DSM-IV-TR*) sexual masochism is one of several **paraphilic disorders**. Paraphilic disorders are intense and recurrent sexually arousing urges, fantasies, or behaviors.

### Description

In addition to the sexual pleasure or excitement derived from receiving pain and humiliation, an individual with sexual masochism often experiences significant impairment or distress in functioning due to masochistic behaviors or fantasies.

With regard to actual masochistic behavior, the person may be receiving the pain, suffering, or humiliation at the hands of another person. This partner may have a diagnosis of **sexual sadism** but this is not necessarily the case. Such behavior involving a partner is sometimes referred to as sadomasochism.

Masochistic acts include being physically restrained through the use of handcuffs, cages, chains, and ropes. Other acts and fantasies related to sexual masochism include receiving punishment or pain by means of paddling, spanking, whipping, burning, beating, electrical shocks, cutting, rape, and mutilation. Psychological humiliation and degradation can also be involved.

Masochistic behavior can also occur in the context of a role-playing fantasy. For example, a sadist can play the role of teacher or master and a masochist can play the role of student or slave.

The person with sexual masochism may also be inflicting the pain or suffering on himself or herself. This can be done through self-mutilation, cutting, or burning.

The masochistic acts experienced or fantasized by the person sometimes reflect a sexual or psychological submission on the part of the masochist. These acts can range from relatively safe behaviors to very physically and psychologically dangerous behavior.

The *DSM* lists one particularly dangerous and deadly form of sexual masochism called hypoxylia. People with hypoxylia experience sexual arousal by being deprived of oxygen. The deprivation can be caused by chest compression, noose, plastic bag, mask, or other means and can be administered by another person or be self-inflicted.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is no universally accepted cause or theory explaining the origin of sexual masochism, or sadomasochism in general. However, there are some theories that attempt to explain the presence of sexual paraphilic behaviors in general. One theory is based on learning theory that paraphilic behaviors originate because inappropriate sexual fantasies are suppressed. Because they are not acted upon initially, the urge to carry out the fantasies increases and when they are finally acted upon, a person is in a state of considerable distress and/or arousal. In the case of sexual masochism, masochistic behavior becomes associated with and inextricably linked to sexual behavior.

There is also a belief that masochistic individuals truly want to be in the dominating role. This causes them to become conflicted and thus submissive to others.

Another theory suggests that people seek out sadomasochistic behavior as a means of escape. They get to act out fantasies and become new and different persons.

### Symptoms

Individuals with sexual masochism experience sexual excitement from physically or psychologically receiving pain, suffering, and/or humiliation. They may be receiving the pain, suffering, or humiliation at the hands of another person, who may or may not be a sadist, or they may be administering the pain, suffering, or humiliation themselves.

They experience distressed or impaired functioning because of the masochistic behaviors, urges, and fantasies. This distress or impairment can impact functioning in social, occupational, or other contexts.

## Demographics

Although masochistic sexual fantasies often begin in childhood, the onset of Sexual Masochism typically occurs during early adulthood. When actual masochistic behavior begins, it will often continue on a chronic course for people with this disorder, especially when no treatment is sought.

Sadomasochism involving consenting partners is not considered rare or unusual in the United States. It often occurs outside of the realm of a mental disorder. More people consider themselves masochistic than sadistic.

Sexual masochism is slightly more prevalent in males than in females.

Death due to hypoxylia is a relatively rare phenomenon. Data indicate that less than two people per million in the United States and other countries die from hypoxylia.

## Diagnosis

The *DSM* criteria for sexual masochism include recurrent intense sexual fantasies, urges, or behaviors involving real acts in which the individual with the disorder is receiving psychological or physical suffering, pain, and humiliation. The suffering, pain, and humiliation cause the person with Sexual Masochism to be sexually aroused. The fantasies, urges, or behaviors must be present for at least six months.

The diagnostic criteria also require that the person has experienced significant distress or impairment because of these behaviors, urges, or fantasies. The distress and impairment can be present in social, occupational, or other functioning.

Sexual masochism must be differentiated from normal sexual arousal, behavior, and experimentation. It should also be differentiated from sadomasochistic behavior involving mild pain and/or the simulation of more dangerous pain. When this is the case, a diagnosis of Sexual Masochism is not necessarily warranted.

Sexual masochism must also be differentiated from self-defeating or self-mutilating behavior that is performed for reasons other than sexual arousal.

Individuals with sexual masochism often have other sexual disorders or paraphilic behaviors. Some individuals, especially males, have diagnoses of both sexual sadism and sexual masochism.

### Treatments

Behavior therapy is often used to treat paraphilic behaviors. This can include management and conditioning of arousal patterns and masturbation. Therapies involving cognitive restructuring and **social skills training** are also utilized.

Medication is also used to reduce fantasies and behavior relating to paraphilic behaviors. This is especially true of people who exhibit severely dangerous masochistic behaviors.

Treatment can also be complicated by health problems relating to sexual behavior. Sexually transmitted diseases and other medical problems, especially when the sadomasochistic behavior involves the release of blood, can be present. Also, people participating in hypoxophilia and other dangerous behaviors can suffer extreme pain and even death.

### Prognosis

Because of the chronic course of Sexual Masochism and the uncertainty of its causes, treatment is often difficult. The fact that many masochistic fantasies are socially unacceptable or unusual leads some people who may have the disorder to not seek or continue treatment.

Treating a paraphilia is often a sensitive subject for many mental health professionals. Severe or difficult cases of Sexual Masochism should be referred to professionals who have experience treating such cases.

### Prevention

Because it is sometimes unclear whether sadomasochistic behavior is within the realm of normal experimentation or indicative of a diagnosis of Sexual Masochism, prevention is a tricky issue. Often, prevention refers to managing sadomasochistic behavior so it primarily involves only the simulation of severe

pain and it always involves consenting partners familiar with each other's limitations.

Also, because fantasies and urges originating in childhood or adolescence may form the basis for sadomasochistic behavior in adulthood, prevention is made difficult. People may be very unwilling to divulge their urges and discuss their sadistic fantasies as part of treatment.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Andreasen, Nancy C., M.D., Ph.D., and Donald W. Black, M.D. *Introductory Textbook of Psychiatry*. Third edition. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing, Inc., 2000.
- Baxter, Lewis R., Jr., M.D. and Robert O. Friedel, M.D., eds. *Current Psychiatric Diagnosis & Treatment*. Philadelphia: Current Medicine, 1999.
- Ebert, Michael H., Peter T. Loosen, and Barry Nurcombe, eds. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Psychiatry*. New York: Lange Medical Books, 2000.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

## Sexual sadism

### Definition

The essential feature of sexual sadism is a feeling of sexual excitement resulting from administering pain, suffering, or humiliation to another person. The pain, suffering, or humiliation inflicted on the other is real; it is not imagined and may be either physical or psychological in nature. A person with a **diagnosis** of sexual sadism is sometimes called a sadist. The name of the disorder is derived from the proper name of the Marquis Donatien de Sade (1740-1814), a French aristocrat who became notorious for writing novels around the theme of inflicting pain as a source of sexual pleasure.

The ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders***, also known as the *DSM*, is used by mental health professionals to give diagnoses of specific mental disorders. In the 2000 edition of this manual, sexual sadism is listed as one of several **paraphilic behaviors**. The paraphilic behaviors are a group of mental disorders characterized by **obsession** with unusual sexual practices or with sexual activity involving nonconsenting or inappropriate

partners (such as children or animals). The paraphilias may include recurrent sexually arousing urges or fantasies as well as actual behaviors.

## Description

In addition to the sexual pleasure or excitement derived from inflicting pain and humiliation on another, a person diagnosed with sexual sadism often experiences significant impairment or distress in functioning due to actual sadistic behaviors or sadistic fantasies.

With regard to actual sadistic behavior, the person receiving the pain, suffering, or humiliation may or may not be a willing partner. Whether or not the partner is consenting, it is the very real suffering they are experiencing that is arousing to the sadist. When the sexual activity is consensual, the behavior is sometimes referred to as sadomasochism. The consenting partner may be given a diagnosis of **sexual masochism**. Like sadism, masochism is a term derived from a proper name; in this instance, from Leopold von Sacher-Masoch (1836-1895), an Austrian novelist who described the disorder in his books.

The sadistic acts performed or fantasized by a person with sadism often reflect a desire for sexual or psychological domination of another person. These acts range from behavior that is not physically harmful although it may be humiliating to the other person (such as being urinated upon), to criminal and potentially deadly behavior. Acts of domination may include restraining or imprisoning the partner through the use of handcuffs, cages, chains, or ropes. Other acts and fantasies related to sexual sadism include paddling, spanking, whipping, burning, beating, administering electrical shocks, biting, urinating or defecating on the other person, cutting, rape, murder, and mutilation.

In extreme cases, sexual sadism can lead to serious injury or death for the other person. According to the *DSM* these catastrophic results are more likely when the paraphilia is diagnosed as severe, and when it is associated with **antisocial personality disorder**, a personality disorder that may include psychotic symptoms.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is no universally accepted cause or theory explaining the origin of sexual sadism, or of sadomasochism. Some researchers attempt to explain the presence of sexual paraphilias in general as the result of biological factors. Evidence for this viewpoint comes from abnormal findings from neuropsychological and neurological tests of sex offenders.

Some researchers believe that paraphilias are related to such other problems as **brain injury**, **schizophrenia**, or another mental disorder. Often, people with sexual disorders or symptoms of paraphilia are diagnosed with other mental disorders.

Another theory about paraphilias is derived from learning theory. It suggests that paraphilias develop because the person is required to suppress, or squelch, inappropriate sexual fantasies. Because the fantasies are not acted out initially, the urge to carry them out increases. When the person finally acts upon the fantasies, they are in a state of considerable distress and/or arousal. This theory is not accepted by forensic experts at the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and other researchers who study sexual offenses. Rather than suppressing fantasies, most people who are eventually arrested for crimes involving sexual sadism begin with milder forms of acting on them and progressing to more harmful ways of acting out. For example, the FBI's database indicates that these people—almost always males—start out by collecting pornographic materials that depict sadistic acts, or they may draw ropes and chains on the photographs of models in swimsuit or lingerie advertisements. They then typically progress to following women at a distance, to hiring a prostitute in order to act out the fantasy, and to asking a girlfriend or other willing partner to cooperate with their fantasy. In other words, the severity of sadistic acts tends to increase over time.

### Symptoms

Individuals with sexual sadism derive sexual excitement from physically or psychologically administering pain, suffering, and/or humiliation to another person, who may or may not be a consenting partner.

They may experience distressed or impaired functioning because of the sadistic behaviors or fantasies. This distress or impairment may be due to the fact that the partner is not consenting.

## Demographics

Although sadistic sexual fantasies often begin in the person's childhood, the onset of active sexual sadism typically occurs during early adult life. When actual sadistic behavior begins, it will often continue on a chronic course for people with this disorder, especially if they do not seek help.

Sexual sadism with consenting partners is much more common than with nonconsensual partners. When consenting partners are involved, the sadist and the masochist may be either male or female.

When non-consenting partners are involved, the sadist is almost always a male.

Sadomasochism involving consenting partners is not considered rare or unusual in the United States. It often occurs outside of the realm of a mental disorder. Fewer people consider themselves sadistic than masochistic.

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of sexual sadism is complicated by several factors, beginning with the fact that most persons with the disorder do not enter therapy voluntarily. Some are referred to treatment by a court order. Some are motivated by fear of discovery by employers or family members, and a minority enter therapy because their wife or girl friend is distressed by the disorder. The diagnosis of sexual sadism is based on the results of a psychiatrist's interview with the patient. In some cases a person with sexual sadism may be referred to a specialized clinic for the treatment of sexual disorders. In the clinic, he will be given questionnaires intended to measure the presence and extent of cognitive distortions regarding rape and other forms of coercion, aggression, and impulsivity.

*DSM-IV-TR* criteria for sexual sadism include recurrent intense sexual fantasies, urges, or behaviors involving real acts in which another person is suffering psychological or physical suffering, pain, and humiliation. The victim's suffering, pain, and humiliation cause the person with sexual sadism to become aroused. The fantasies, urges, or behaviors must be present for at least six months.

The diagnostic criteria also require either that the person has acted on these urges or fantasies with a nonconsenting person, or that the person has experienced noticeable distress or interpersonal problems because of these urges or fantasies.

Sexual sadism must be differentiated from normal sexual arousal, behavior, and experimentation. Some forms of mild aggression, such as "love bites" or scratching, are within the range of normal behavior during sexual intercourse. Sadism should also be differentiated from sadomasochistic behavior that involves only mild pain and/or the simulation of more dangerous pain. When these factors are present, a diagnosis of sexual sadism is not necessarily warranted.

Other mental disorders, such as the psychotic disorders, may include elements of sadism or other paraphilic behaviors. For example, patients with psychotic symptoms may perform sadistic acts for reasons other than sexual excitement. In these cases, an additional diagnosis of sexual sadism is not warranted.

Persons diagnosed with sexual sadism may have other sexual disorders or paraphilic behaviors. Some individuals, especially males, have diagnoses of both sexual sadism and sexual masochism.

## Treatments

Behavior therapy is often used to treat paraphilic behaviors. This approach to treatment may include the management and conditioning of arousal patterns and masturbation. Therapies involving cognitive restructuring and **social skills training** are also often utilized.

Medication may be used to reduce fantasies and behavior relating to paraphilic behaviors. This form of treatment is especially recommended for people who exhibit sadistic behaviors that are dangerous to others. The medications that may be used include female hormones (most commonly medroxyprogesterone acetate, or MPA), which speed up the clearance of testosterone from the bloodstream; antiandrogen medications, which block the body's uptake of testosterone; and the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors**, or SSRIs.

Nonconsensual sadistic behavior often leads to problems with the criminal justice system. Issues related to legal problems may impair or delay the patient's treatment. Persons with sexual sadism may be reluctant to seek or continue treatment because they fear being reported to the police or being named in a lawsuit by an unwilling partner.

Treatment of sexual sadism may also be complicated by health problems related to sexual behavior. Sexually transmitted diseases and other medical problems may be present, especially when the sadistic behavior involves the release of blood or other body fluids.

## Prognosis

Because of the chronic course of sexual sadism and the uncertainty of its causes, treatment is often difficult. The fact that many sadistic fantasies are socially unacceptable or unusual leads many people who may have the disorder to avoid or drop out of treatment. Treating a paraphilia is often a sensitive subject for many mental health professionals. Severe or difficult cases of sexual sadism should be referred to a specialized clinic for the treatment of sexual disorders or to professionals with experience in treating such cases.

As was noted previously, acts of sexual sadism tend to grow more violent or bizarre over time. As males with the disorder grow older, however, their

## KEY TERMS

**Forensic**—Pertaining to courtroom procedure or evidence used in courts of law.

**Masochism**—A mental disorder in which a person obtains sexual satisfaction through pain or humiliation inflicted by the self or by another person. The term is sometimes used more generally to refer to a tendency to find pleasure in submissiveness or self-denial.

**Medroxyprogesterone acetate (MPA)**—A female hormone that may be prescribed for male patients with sexual sadism or other paraphilic disorders. MPA helps to control sexual urges in men by speeding up the clearance of testosterone from the bloodstream.

**Paraphilic disorders**—A group of mental disorders that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving (1) non-human objects, (2) the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or (3) children or other non-consenting persons.

**Sadism**—A mental disorder in which sexual arousal and gratification are obtained by inflicting pain or humiliation on another person.

ability to commit such acts begins to decrease. Sexual sadism is rarely diagnosed in men over 50.

### Prevention

Because it is sometimes unclear whether sadomasochistic behavior is within the realm of normal experimentation or indicative of a diagnosis of sexual sadism, prevention is a tricky issue. Often, prevention refers to managing sadistic behavior so it never involves non-consenting individuals and it primarily involves the simulation of pain and not real pain.

Also, because fantasies and urges originating in childhood or adolescence may form the basis for sadomasochistic behavior in adulthood, prevention is made difficult. People may be very unwilling to divulge their urges and discuss their sadistic fantasies.

*See also* Sexual masochism; Sexual Violence Risk-20.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Andreasen, Nancy C., M.D., Ph.D., and Donald W. Black, M.D. *Introductory Textbook of Psychiatry*. Third edition. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing, Inc., 2000.

Baxter, Lewis R., Jr., M.D. and Robert O. Friedel, M.D., eds. *Current Psychiatric Diagnosis & Treatment*. Philadelphia: Current Medicine, 1999.

Douglas, John, and Mark Olshaker. *Mindhunter: Inside the FBI's Elite Serial Crime Unit*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1995.

Ebert, Michael H., Peter T. Loosen, and Barry Nurcombe, eds. *Current Diagnosis & Treatment in Psychiatry*. New York: Lange Medical Books, 2000.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

## Sexual Violence Risk-20

### Definition

The Sexual Violence Risk-20, also called the SVR-20, is an assessment instrument used by mental health professionals.

### Purpose

The SVR-20 provides a structure for reviewing information important in characterizing an individual's risk of committing sexual violence and for targeting plans to manage that risk. The instrument's authors define sexual violence as, "actual, attempted, or threatened sexual contact with a person who is nonconsenting or unable to give consent."

### Precautions

SVR-20 results should be finalized and interpreted by a professional who is familiar with the scientific literature on sexual violence, and who is experienced in conducting individual assessments on sexual and violent offenders. The instrument cannot provide new information about past behavior or profile an examinee as a sexually violent offender. Rather, it helps provide a structure to follow in estimating risk of sexual violence under certain circumstances. The instrument should not be used as a stand-alone measure, and predictions derived from its use should be subject to critical review. It is especially important to place results in the contexts of the examinee's personal style, likely environmental conditions, and base rates of sexual violence in other offenders with similar characteristics.

## Description

The SVR-20 is a tool that helps guide a professional in conducting a minimally comprehensive assessment of sexual violence risk. The assessment process is based on six principles:

- It is important to gather a depth of information about the examinee's personal, social, occupational, mental health, illegal, and other relevant behavior.
- Information should be gathered using a variety of sources and methods, including (and not limited to) record reviews, interviews, and psychological, physiological, and medical techniques.
- Information should be gathered from the examinee, his or her relatives and acquaintances, the victim(s), professionals who have interacted with the examinee, and any other sources likely to yield useful information.
- The examinee's history and future exposure to risk factors should be considered.
- The examiner should critically weigh the accuracy, credibility, and applicability of the data that has been gathered.
- The risk assessment process should be ongoing, with regular reassessments for many examinees.

The content of the SVR-20 was developed following a comprehensive review of similar instruments and of the scientific literature on risk for sexual violence and reoffense. The SVR-20 materials consist of a reference manual and protocol sheets that are filled out by the examiner. The instrument includes three major sections: Psychosocial Adjustment, Sexual Offenses, and Future Plans. The SVR-20 items are rated as not present, somewhat or possibly present, or clearly present. The overall pattern is used in forming a professional judgment about the person's risk of sexual recidivism (low, medium, or high). It is intended as a qualitative, not as an absolute, measure. However, the scores of no, maybe/sometimes, and yes can be converted into values (0, 1, and 2, respectively), a method that has been validated in a Swedish study. The SVR-20 has proven again and again to be an excellent tool for evaluating recidivism risk.

The Psychosocial Adjustment section includes 11 risk factors: sexual deviation, victim of child abuse, psychopathy, major mental illness, substance use problems, suicidal/homicidal ideation, relationship problems, employment problems, past nonsexual violent offenses, past nonviolent offenses, and past supervision failure.

The Sexual Offenses section includes seven risk factors: high-density sex offenses, multiple sex offense types, physical harm to victim(s) in sex offenses, escalation in frequency and severity of sex offenses,

## KEY TERMS

**High-density sex offenses**—Several offenses within a short period of time.

**Risk assessment**—The process of gathering and interpreting data useful in estimating the probability that an individual will demonstrate sexual violence.

**Risk management**—Using the results of a risk assessment to tailor intervention strategies intended to reduce the likelihood that an individual will demonstrate sexual violence.

**Sexual violence**—Actual, attempted, or threatened sexual contact with a person who is nonconsenting or unable to give consent.

extreme minimization or **denial** of sex offenses, and attitudes that support or condone sex offenses.

The Future Plans section includes two factors: lacks realistic plans, and negative attitude toward **intervention**. Aside from factors related to the examinee's thinking and personality, items found in the first and second sections reference fixed or relatively stable characteristics.

The first and third sections are relevant not only to sexual violence, but also to violence in general. There is also an unstructured supplementary section entitled Other Considerations that can be used to describe unique factors relevant to an examinee's probability of risk.

## Results

The SVR-20 does not allow for the definite prediction of sexual violence. Prediction of risk is summarized using a rating of low, moderate, or high. Although the instrument's authors did not provide decision-making guidelines for determining the appropriate rating, they did recommend five questions to consider in communicating a "Risk Message" derived from the results:

- What is the likelihood that the individual will engage in sexual violence, if no efforts are made to manage the risk?
- What is the probable nature, frequency, and severity of any future sexual violence?
- Who are the likely victims of any future sexual violence?
- What steps could be taken to manage the individual's risk for sexual violence?
- What circumstances might exacerbate the individual's risk for sexual violence? Typically, answers to

these and other questions are fashioned in the form of a report for those responsible for making decisions about the examinee. Studies have shown that this evaluative measure works to distinguish recidivists who engage in sexual violence from those who engage in general violence.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Boer, D., S. Hart, P. Kropp, and C. Webster. *Manual for the Sexual Violence Risk-20*. Burnaby, British Columbia, Canada: The British Columbia Institute Against Family Violence, copublished with the Mental Health, Law, and Policy Institute at Simon Fraser University, 1997.
- Laws, D., and W. O'Donohue, eds. *Sexual Deviance: Theory, Assessment and Treatment*. New York: Guilford, 1997.
- Marshall, W., D. Laws, and H. Barbaree, eds. *Handbook of Sexual Assault: Issues, Theories, and Treatment of the Offender*. New York: Plenum Press, 1990.

### PERIODICALS

- Craig, Leam A., Anthony Beech, and Kevin D. Browne. "Cross-Validation of the Risk Matrix 2000 Sexual and Violent Scales." *Journal of Interpersonal Violence* 21 (2006): 612–13.
- Menzies, R., and C. Webster. "Construction and Validation of Risk Assessments in a Six-Year Follow-Up of Forensic Patients: A Tridimensional Analysis." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 63 (1995): 766–78.
- Monahan, J. "Mental Disorder and Violent Behavior." *American Psychologist* 47 (1992): 511–21.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychological Association, 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721. Web site: <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.
- Association for the Treatment of Sexual Offenders, 4900 S.W. Griffith Drive, Suite 274, Beaverton, Oregon 97005. Telephone: (503) 643-1023. Web site: <<http://www.atsa.com>>.
- British Columbia Institute Against Family Violence, 409 Granville Street, Suite 551, Vancouver, BC V6C 1T2. Telephone: (604) 669-7055. Web site: <<http://www.bcfiv.org>>.

Geoffrey G. Grimm, PhD, LPC  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Shared psychotic disorder

### Definition

Shared psychotic disorder, a rare and atypical psychotic disorder, occurs when an otherwise healthy

person (secondary partner) begins believing the **delusions** of someone with whom they have a close relationship (primary partner) who is already suffering from a psychotic disorder with prominent delusions. This disorder is also referred to as "folie à deux."

### Description

In cases of shared psychotic disorder, the primary partner is most often in a position of strong influence over the other person. This allows them, over time, to erode the defenses of the secondary partner, forcing their strange belief upon them. In the beginning, the secondary partner is probably healthy, but has such a passive or dependent relationship with the primary partner that imposition of the delusional system is but a matter of time. Most of the time, this disorder occurs a nuclear family. In fact, more than 95% of the cases reported involved people in the same family. Without regard to the number of persons within the family, shared delusions generally involve two people. There is the primary, most often the dominant person, and the secondary or submissive person. This becomes fertile ground for the primary (dominant) partner to press for understanding and belief by others in the family.

Shared Psychotic Disorder has also been referred to by other names such as **psychosis** of association, contagious insanity, infectious insanity, double insanity, and communicated insanity. There have been cases involving multiple persons, the most significant being a case involving an entire family of 12 people (folie à douze).

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Given the fact that the preponderance of cases occur within the same family, the theory about the origins of the disorder come from a psychosocial perspective. Approximately 55% of secondary cases of the disorder have first-degree relatives with psychiatric disorders, not including the primary partner. This is not true of individuals with the primary **diagnosis**, as they showed a roughly 35% incidence.

There are several variables which have great influence on the creation of shared psychotic disorder. For example, family isolation, closeness of the relationship to the person with the primary diagnosis, the length of time the relationship has existed, and the existence of a dominant-submissive factor within the relationship. The submissive partner in the relationship may be predisposed to have a mental disorder. Often the submissive partner meets the criteria for **dependent personality disorder**. Nearly 75% of the delusions are of the persecutory type.

An example of shared psychotic disorder involving the delusion of persecution, is that of a 52-year-old married female and her 48-year-old husband with multiple sclerosis, who believed that they were being harassed and watched by the Irish Republican Army (IRA). They were hospitalized and both became stable after two weeks on an antipsychotic medication. However, an interesting point in this case is that they were separated for that two-week period. The general consensus has been that, once separated, the submissive partner will let go of the delusion, that it would resolve itself simply due to separation. That did not happen in this case. Both partners had to be treated with proper medications before the delusion resolved.

In a case involving a middle-aged mother and an adolescent daughter, the delusions were multifaceted. The mother held the persecutory belief that someone in her neighborhood was manufacturing illegal drugs of some sort, and that they were periodically spraying something odorless, tasteless, and invisible into the air. The sprayed substance made her and her teenaged daughter "act crazy." Oddly enough, the effects of the spraying began shortly after the husband left for work in the morning, and resolved shortly before he returned in the afternoon. The family raised ducks at their home, and the mother and daughter believed that the men making the illegal drugs were using the family ducks "as a food source" to stay near their hideout and avoid detection by police. Finally, mother and daughter also believed that occasional gunshots in their countryside landscape were meant as warnings to prevent anyone from learning about the misdeeds of the drug makers. This case was revealed when the daughter ran away from home, fearing that men with guns were coming to kill them. She was subsequently placed in the care of a child protective services agency. The bizarre stories began to unfold. Both mother and daughter received psychiatric care.

### Symptoms

The principal feature of shared psychotic disorder is the unwavering belief by the secondary partner in the dominant partner's delusion. The delusions experienced by both primary partners in shared psychotic disorder are far less bizarre than those found in schizophrenic patients; they are, therefore, believable. Since these delusions are often within the realm of possibility, it is easier for the dominant partner to impose his/her idea upon the submissive, secondary partner.

### Demographics

Little data is available to determine the prevalence of shared psychotic disorder. While it has been argued

## KEY TERMS

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

that some cases go undiagnosed, it is nevertheless a rare finding in clinical settings.

### Diagnosis

A clinical interview is required to diagnose shared psychotic disorder. There are basically three symptoms required for the determination of the existence of this disorder:

- An otherwise healthy person, in a close relationship with someone who already has an established delusion, develops a delusion himself/herself.
- The content of the shared delusion follows exactly or closely resembles that of the established delusion.
- Some other psychotic disorder, such as schizophrenia, is not in place and cannot better account for the delusion manifested by the secondary partner.

### Treatments

The treatment approach most recommended is to separate the secondary partner from the source of the delusion. If symptoms have not dissipated within one to two weeks, antipsychotic medications may be in order.

Once stabilized, **psychotherapy** should be undertaken with the secondary partner, with an eye toward integrating the dominant partner, once he/she has also received medical treatment and is stable.

### Prognosis

If the secondary partner is removed from the source of the delusion and proper medical and psychotherapeutic treatment are rendered, the prognosis is good. However, as stated above, the separation alone may not be successful. The secondary partner may require antipsychotic medication. Even after treatment, since this shared psychotic disorder is primarily found in families, the family members tend to reunite following treatment and release. If family dynamics return to pretreatment modes, a **relapse** could occur. Periodic

monitoring by a social services agency is advised for as long as a year following treatment.

### Prevention

In an effort to prevent relapse, **family therapy** should also be considered to re-establish the nuclear family and to provide social support to modify old family dynamics. This would favor a new behavioral paradigm. The family cannot afford to continue in isolation as it did in the past, and will require support from community agencies.

*See also Schizophrenia.*

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Kaplan, Harold and Benjamin Sadock. *Synopsis of Psychiatry* 8th edition. New York: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 1997.

#### PERIODICALS

Lai, Tony T. S., W. C. Chan, David M. C. Lai, S. W. Li. "Folie à deux in the aged: A case report." *Clinical Gerontologist* 22 (2001): 113-117.

Malik, Mansoor A. and Serena Condon. "Induced psychosis (folie à deux) associated with multiple sclerosis." *Irish Journal of Psychological Medicine* 17 (2000): 73-77.

Jack H. Booth, Psy.D.

Simple phobia see **Specific phobias**

Sinequan see **Doxepin**

## Single photon emission computed tomography

### Definition

Single photon emission **computed tomography** (SPECT) is an imaging study that uses radioactive materials injected through a vein that will pass into the **brain** generating a high-resolution brain image.

### Description

SPECT is used to diagnose head trauma, epilepsy, **dementia**, and cerebrovascular disease. Development of a radiotracer called Tc99m label has increased the resolution of brain images generated from SPECT.

The images yield very accurate spatial and contrast resolutions. The resulting sharp images enable the clinician to visualize very small structures within the brain. The accuracy of SPECT brain images makes it a very useful clinical and research tool.

Clinically, SPECT is useful for diagnosing the following disease states:

- Cerebrovascular disease or stroke: SPECT is useful to detect ischemia (reduced blood flow), determination of stroke causes, evaluate transient ischemia, determine prognosis, and monitor treatment.
- Dementia such as in Alzheimer's disease: SPECT studies can be used effectively to rule out other medical causes of dementia.
- Head trauma: Evidence suggests that SPECT is useful to detect greater number of lesions following the period after head trauma. It seems that the high resolution and accurate brain images of SPECT can detect lesions in the brain that are not possible to visualize using other techniques such as positron emission tomography (PET) scanning. SPECT images can give clinicians important information concerning prognosis (also sometimes called outcome) and treatment of persons affected with head injury.
- Epilepsy: The radioactive material injected before SPECT imaging concentrates at the seizure locus (the region that contains nerve cells that generate an abnormal impulse). This can help identify the location of seizures and assist clinicians concerning management and outcomes.
- SPECT allows clinicians to visualize a specific area of the brain called the striatum, which contains a neurotransmitter (a chemical that communicates nerve impulse from one nerve cell to another) called dopamine. Circuitry in the striatum and interaction with dopamine can help provide valuable information concerning movement disorders, schizophrenia, mood disorders, and hormone diseases (since hormones require control and regulation from the brain in structures called the pituitary gland and hypothalamus).

As a research tool, SPECT imaging seems to be sensitive tool to measure blood flow through the brain (cerebral blood flow), in persons who have psychological disorder such as **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (higher blood flow) and alcoholism (lower blood flow).

Other dianostic indications and procedures are similar to other **imaging studies** such as computed tomography, **magnetic resonance imaging**, and PET.

### Resources

#### PERIODICALS

Busatto, Geraldo, F. "Regional cerebral blood flow abnormalities in early-onset obsessive-compulsive disorder:

- an exploratory SPECT study." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 43, no. 3. (March 2001).
- Gansler, David A. "Hypoperfusion of inferior frontal brain regions in abstinent alcoholics: a pilot SPECT study." *Journal of Studies on Alcohol* 61, no. 1 (January 2000).
- Van Heertum, R. "Single photon emission, CT, and positron emission tomography in the evaluation of neurologic disease." *Radiologic Clinics of North America* 39, no. 5 (September 2001).

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.  
Alfredo Mori, M.D.  
Jean Suvan, B.Sc., R.D.H.

Skills training see **Social skills training**

## Sleep disorders

### Definition

Sleep disorders are conditions that interfere with the ability to sleep normally. The American Psychiatric Association's *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)* classifies sleep disorders as primary (unrelated to any other medical condition or psychological disorder) and secondary (the result of illness, psychological disorders, or the use of drugs or alcohol). Primary sleep disorders are further categorized as either dyssomnias or parasomnias. Dyssomnias affect sleep onset, duration, or quality. The most prevalent dyssomnia is **insomnia**; others include **narcolepsy**, sleep apnea, and circadian rhythm sleep disorders. Parasomnias are abnormal behaviors that occur during sleep. They include nightmares, sleep terrors, and sleepwalking disorders.

### Description

#### Dyssomnias

**INSOMNIA.** Insomnia is characterized by difficulty falling asleep and staying asleep for an adequate period of time, and/or poor sleep quality. Primary insomnia occurs without an underlying mental condition or illness. Secondary insomnia, the most common form, typically stems from a medical or psychological condition.

**SLEEP APNEA.** Sleep apnea is a **breathing-related sleep disorder**. The majority of patients with this disorder have obstructive sleep apnea, which occurs when the upper airway collapses, blocking air flow to the lungs. This can occur up to several hundred times in one night. Each time the airway is blocked, the body's

oxygen level drops, arousing the **brain** to restart breathing. Individuals with this disorder are not aware that they are waking up, but feel poorly rested during the day.

**NARCOLEPSY.** Individuals who have narcolepsy fall asleep during inappropriate times during the day, even though they may get adequate sleep at night. People with narcolepsy feel the need to nap frequently, and may experience sudden sleep "attacks."

**CIRCADIAN RHYTHM DISORDERS.** The human biological clock is governed by the 24-hour daily light and darkness cycle, which is called the circadian rhythm. Individuals with circadian rhythm disorders are unable to adjust their biological clock to this environmental rhythm, resulting in excessive daytime sleepiness and difficulty falling asleep at the appropriate time.

### Parasomnias

Parasomnias are disruptions to the arousal and sleep-stage transitions that involve the autonomic nervous system. They can occur during rapid eye movement (REM) or non-rapid eye movement (NREM) sleep. In primary parasomnias, wakefulness and sleep occur simultaneously. The *DSM-IV-TR* defines four main types of parasomnias: **nightmare disorder**, **sleep terror disorder**, **sleepwalking disorder**, and parasomnias not otherwise specified.

**NIGHTMARE DISORDER.** Nightmare disorder is among the sleep disorders that occur during REM sleep, which is when the majority of dreams occur. Individual with this disorder have frightening dreams that they typically remember upon awakening.

**SLEEP TERROR DISORDER.** Sleep terrors are similar to nightmares in that they involve frightening dreams, but these episodes typically occur during the deep-sleep stages. Affected people are unaware of what is occurring and are unable to communicate.

**SLEEPWALKING.** Sleepwalking occurs when individuals rise from bed while sleeping and move or walk around. It typically occurs during the period of deep sleep in the early part of the night. Someone who is sleepwalking will not be able to communicate while the episode is occurring, and will not remember the episode the following morning.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Insomnia causes

Primary insomnia is not associated with an underlying psychological or medical problem. Research has suggested that people with primary insomnia may

experience a state of hyperarousal that leaves them unable to sleep at night.

Secondary insomnia is associated with conditions that cause discomfort or psychological distress, such as diabetes, heart disease and heart failure, **chronic pain**, prostate disorders, gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), and **depression**. Insomnia is more prevalent among older adults, who often experience these health conditions, as well as a frequent need to urinate during the night.

A disorder called restless legs syndrome (RLS) often contributes to insomnia. This condition is characterized by a crawling or tingling sensation in the legs, which makes a person feel an uncontrollable urge to move. The leg discomfort typically occurs at night, and makes it difficult for the individual to fall asleep.

### ***Insomnia symptoms***

Because people with insomnia do not get adequate sleep each night, they may experience marked daytime sleepiness. People with insomnia often complain of **fatigue**, a lack of energy, and an inability to concentrate.

### ***Sleep apnea causes and symptoms***

Obstructive sleep apnea is caused by the temporary collapse of the airway during sleep. Risk factors include:

- obesity
- smoking
- alcohol and sedative use
- family history of sleep apnea

During a sleep apnea episode, the breathing becomes shallow or stops periodically. Each time the breathing stops, people affected automatically awaken. Although individuals will not remember these repeated awakenings, they will feel tired and groggy the next day.

People with obstructive sleep apnea experience disturbed sleep, which can lead to daytime sleepiness, irritability, depression, and memory impairment. Untreated sleep apnea has been associated with an increased risk for high blood pressure, heart disease, type 2 diabetes, and mortality.

### ***Narcolepsy causes and symptoms***

Narcolepsy occurs due to an abnormality of the central nervous system. It is believed to be caused by a combination of environmental and genetic factors. The majority of people with narcolepsy have a variance in the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) genes

(HLA-DR15 and HLA-DQ6), which are involved with immune system function.

The most obvious symptom of narcolepsy is falling asleep at inappropriate times during the day. Other symptoms include cataplexy (sudden muscle weakness that often occurs with an emotional expression such as laughing or anger), **hallucinations**, sleep paralysis (a feeling of being awake but paralyzed throughout the entire body), and disrupted nighttime sleep.

### ***Circadian rhythm disorder causes and symptoms***

The biological clock can get out of step with the circadian rhythm due to travel across different time zones (called jet lag) or late-night shift work. As a result of these circadian rhythm shifts, individuals may experience daytime sleepiness and an inability to fall asleep at appropriate times.

### ***Parasomnias causes and symptoms***

Parasomnias occur due to a disassociation between sleep and wakefulness states. Nightmares may be triggered by frightening or stressful events that occur during the day, such as the death of a loved one or the anticipation of a difficult test at school. Individuals with this disorder typically awaken during or after a nightmare and are able to recount the frightening dream.

Sleep terrors may be caused by sleep deprivation or fever. Someone who is experiencing a sleep terror will awaken abruptly, often screaming. The person will be unable to communicate during the experience. Sleep terrors last for about 15 minutes, after which time the person will usually fall back asleep and not remember the episode. In rare cases, individuals experiencing sleep terrors may become violent, causing injury to themselves or others.

Sleepwalking is believed to have a genetic component; it tends to run in families. Other causes may include fever, sleep deprivation, or obstructive sleep apnea. Individuals who sleepwalk will walk or move around while still asleep.

### ***Demographics***

Insomnia is the most common sleep disorder, affecting between 30 and 40% of the adult population. About 80% of people with insomnia have the secondary form, meaning that the insomnia occurs as the result of a medical or psychological problem.

Restless legs syndrome (RLS) occurs in about 5% of the population, but the incidence increases with age. Approximately 30% of people over the age of 50 have

RLS. Obstructive sleep apnea affects more than 2% of adult women, 4% of adult men, and 3% of children. Narcolepsy is relatively rare, affecting only about 1 out of every 2,000 people. It is more common in men than in women.

Parasomnias events are most common in childhood. As many as 50% of young children experience nightmare disorder. Between one and 17% of children sleepwalk. The occurrence of sleepwalking typically peaks by 12 years of age. Only about 4% of adults sleepwalk.

## Diagnosis

The evaluation of any sleep disorder typically begins with a thorough medical history and physical examination. Some patients are asked to keep a sleep diary, in which they chronicle their nightly sleep experiences for two or more weeks. Doctors also may administer sleep questionnaires or psychological screening tests to reveal the nature of the problem.

## Sleep studies

To diagnose sleep-related breathing disorders, primarily obstructive sleep apnea, doctors may recommend **polysomnography** (a sleep study). This study also may be used to diagnose some types of parasomnias (particularly sleepwalking and sleep terrors). While patients sleep (in a hospital, sleep laboratory, or at home), their blood oxygen level, breathing patterns, heart rate, and brain waves are monitored.

Patients with narcolepsy may visit a sleep laboratory for a multiple sleep latency test (MSLT). In this test, individuals are asked to nap for 20 minutes once every two hours during the course of a day. The lab assesses sleepiness by noting the time it takes them to fall asleep. The shorter the time to sleep, the greater the possibility of a narcolepsy **diagnosis**.

## Treatments

### Treatments for insomnia

One of the primary treatments for insomnia and other sleep disorders is sleep hygiene, which involves the following techniques:

- going to bed at the same time every evening
- avoiding distracting activities, such as watching television, before bed
- avoiding exercise within two hours before bedtime
- using the bed only for sleep (rather than reading or watching TV)

- limiting caffeine (coffee, tea, chocolate), alcohol, and nicotine within four hours of bedtime
- avoiding large meals within two hours of bedtime
- engaging in calming activities, such as taking a warm bath or listening to soothing music

Cognitive behavioral therapy can be useful for some people with insomnia. This psychological technique teaches people to identify the behavioral problems that are contributing to their insomnia, as well as ways to change those behaviors. Part of the treatment approach is to practice good sleep hygiene. Other techniques to help people with insomnia fall asleep include relaxation training (such as self-hypnosis, guided imagery, or paced breathing) and deep muscle relaxation (progressively tensing and then releasing each muscle group to relieve tension).

Medications may also be used to treat insomnia. Several over-the-counter medications are available. Antihistamines, designed to treat colds and allergies, have sedation as a side effect. These drugs can cause grogginess the day after use, because of the rate at which they are eliminated by the body.

The two prescription classes of drugs for treating insomnia are the **benzodiazepines** and the non-benzodiazepines. Benzodiazepines include **diazepam** (Valium) and **temazepam** (Restoril). These drugs may become addictive and can cause daytime sleepiness. Three newer non-benzodiazepine medications that treat insomnia with less risk of side effects are eszopiclone (Lunesta), ramelteon (Rozerem), and **zolpidem** (Ambien). Doctors also treat patients with insomnia using medications (for example, **antidepressants**) that were designed for other purposes, but which have sedation as a side effect.

A natural substance, melatonin, is sometimes used to treat jet lag and insomnia. Melatonin is a hormone produced by the pineal gland in the brain. It has been called “the hormone of darkness” because levels of melatonin drop when the sun rises. Research suggests that this hormone may be useful for inducing sleep in certain groups of people with insomnia (for example, elderly people with low melatonin levels). However, as of 2007, research has not proven its safety or effectiveness.

If the cause of insomnia is RLS, treatment includes massage, warm baths, and visualization techniques to distract from the discomfort. The only medication approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for the treatment of RLS is ropinirole (Requip), although drugs used for the

## KEY TERMS

**Benzodiazepines**—A class of sedative drugs that are used to treat sleep disorders.

**Cataplexy**—Sudden muscle weakness associated with narcolepsy that is triggered by emotions such as laughter, anger, or fear.

**Chronotherapy**—A treatment that involves sleeping at predetermined times in order to reset the circadian rhythm.

**Circadian rhythm**—The light-dark cycle in the body that occurs over a period of approximately 24 hours.

**Cognitive behavioral therapy**—A type of therapy that helps patients identify and change problematic thoughts and behaviors.

**Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)**—A treatment for obstructive sleep apnea that uses a mask to deliver oxygen into the airway while the patient sleeps.

**Dyssomnias**—Sleep disorders that affect the onset, duration, and quality of sleep.

**Insomnia**—A sleep disorder marked by the inability to fall asleep or remain asleep for an adequate period of time.

**Melatonin**—A hormone produced by the pineal gland that is associated with sleep, and that

may be useful in the treatment of some sleep disorders.

**Narcolepsy**—A sleep disorder that causes the sudden, uncontrollable urge to sleep.

**Obstructive sleep apnea**—A complete or partial blockage of the airway that results in repeated awakenings during the night.

**Parasomnias**—Abnormal behaviors or other disruptive events that occur during sleep.

**Phototherapy**—A treatment that exposes the patient to bright light at specific times during the sleep-wake cycle to readjust the circadian rhythm.

**Polysomnography**—A sleep study that assesses oxygen flow, brain waves, and other measurements to diagnose sleep disorders.

**Sleep paralysis**—A symptom of narcolepsy in which the individual feels awake but unable to move.

**Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep**—The stage of sleep that is associated with rapid eye movements and dreaming.

**Restless legs syndrome**—A tingling, creeping sensation in the legs that produces an uncontrollable urge to move.

treatment of Parkinson's disease, benzodiazepines, and anticonvulsant medications also may be effective.

### *Treatments for sleep apnea*

Treatments for obstructive sleep apnea include weight loss if the individuals are overweight. People with this condition should avoid alcohol, **sedatives**, and smoking. The primary treatment is continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), a mask that delivers oxygen into the airway while affected people sleep. If these treatments are ineffective, surgery may be needed to increase the size of the airway; however, surgery is only effective in approximately 50% of patients.

### *Treatments for narcolepsy*

Narcolepsy treatment primarily involves behavioral therapies, such as scheduling 15–20-minute daytime naps every four hours, and maintaining a regular sleep-wake cycle. **Amphetamines** and the stimulant modafinil (Provigil) can be used to treat

excessive daytime sleepiness. To treat cataplexy, doctors may prescribe the antidepressants **clomipramine** (Anafranil) or **fluoxetine** (Prozac).

### *Treatments for circadian rhythm disorder*

Two primary types of treatments exist for circadian rhythm disorders: chronotherapy and phototherapy. In chronotherapy, patients delay or hasten sleep, and sleep for a predetermined number of hours to get the body back on the appropriate sleep schedule. Phototherapy exposes patients to bright light at specific times during the sleep-wake cycle to readjust the circadian rhythm.

### *Treatments for parasomnias*

If patients have episodes that are frequent and particularly disturbing, consultation with a **psychologist** or **psychiatrist** can be helpful for identifying underlying causes. When sleepwalking occurs, it is helpful to secure the area by removing clutter on the

floor and locking the doors and windows to prevent the individual from injury.

## Prognosis

About 85% of people with insomnia find relief with a combination of sleep hygiene and medication. Although there is no cure for sleep apnea, treatment can reduce the associated risks of high blood pressure and heart disease. No current treatment method can completely alleviate narcolepsy, but cataplexy can be successfully controlled with medication, and many people find that their symptoms naturally decrease after age 60. Parasomnias generally diminish as children grow into adulthood.

## Prevention

Certain sleep disorders, such as insomnia, can sometimes be prevented by practicing good sleep hygiene. As mentioned, sleep hygiene involves going to bed at a regular time each night and avoiding stimulating activities close to bedtime. Sleep apnea may be prevented in some cases by controlling body weight.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Academy of Sleep Medicine. *International Classification of Sleep Disorders: Diagnostic & Coding Manual*. 2nd ed. Westchester, IL: American Academy of Sleep Medicine, 2005.
- Kryger, Meir. *A Woman's Guide to Sleep Disorders*. New York: McGraw Hill Books, 2004.
- Perlis, Michael L., and Kenneth L. Lichstein, eds. *Treating Sleep Disorders: Principles and Practice of Behavioral Sleep Medicine*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley, 2003.
- Radulovacki, Miodrag, ed. *Sleep-Related Breathing Disorders*. New York: Marcel Dekker, 2003.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Sleep Disorders. One Westbrook Corporate Center, Suite 920, Westchester, IL 60154. (708) 492-0930. <<http://www.aasmnet.org/>>.
- National Centers on Sleep Disorders Research, National Institutes of Health. 6701 Rockledge Drive, MSC 7920, Bethesda, MD 20892. (301) 435-0199. <<http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/about/ncsdr/index.htm>>.
- National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. P.O. Box 5801, Bethesda, MD 20824. (800) 352-9424. <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov/index.htm>>.
- National Sleep Foundation. 1522 K Street, NW Suite 500, Washington DC 20005. (202) 347-3471. <<http://www.sleepfoundation.org/joinus/index.php>>.

Stephanie N. Watson  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

# Sleep terror disorder

## Definition

Sleep terror disorder is defined as repeated temporary arousal from sleep, during which the affected person appears and acts extremely frightened.

## Description

Sleep terror disorder is sometimes referred to as *pavor nocturnus* when it occurs in children, and *incubus* when it occurs in adults. Sleep terrors are also sometimes called night terrors, though sleep terror is the preferred term, as episodes can occur during daytime naps as well as at night. Sleep terror is a disorder that primarily affects children, although a small number of adults are affected as well.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The causes of sleep terror are for the most part unknown. Some researchers suggest that sleep terrors are caused by a delay in the maturation of the child's central nervous system. Such factors as sleep deprivation, psychological stress, and fever may also trigger episodes of sleep terror.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of sleep terror are very similar to the physical symptoms of extreme fear. These include rapid heartbeat, sweating, and rapid breathing (hyperventilation). The heart rate can increase up to two to four times the person's regular rate. Sleep terrors cause people to be jolted into motion, often sitting up suddenly in bed. People sometimes scream or cry. The person's facial expression may be fearful.

People experiencing sleep terror disorder sometimes get out of bed and act as if they are fighting or fleeing something. During this time injuries can occur. Cases have been reported of people falling out of windows or falling down stairs during episodes of sleep terror.

People experiencing sleep terror are not fully awake. They are nearly impossible to bring to consciousness or comfort, and sometimes respond violently to attempts to console or restrain them. In many cases, once the episode is over the person returns to sleep without ever waking fully. People often do not have any recollection of the episode after later awaking normally, although they may recall a sense of fear.

Episodes of sleep terror usually occur during the first third of a person's night sleep, although they can occur even during naps taken in the daytime. The average sleep terror episode lasts less than 15 minutes. Usually only one episode occurs per night, but in some cases terror episodes occur in clusters. It is unusual for a person to have many episodes in a single night, although upwards of 40 have been reported. Most persons with the disorder have only one occurrence per week, or just a few per month.

## Demographics

Sleep terror disorder is much more common in children than it is in adults. It is estimated that approximately 1–6% of children in the United States experience sleep terror at some point in their childhood. For most children sleep terrors begin between the ages of four and 12. The problem usually disappears during adolescence. Sleep terror disorder appears to be more common in boys than in girls; some studies have reported that preadolescent boys are the group most commonly affected. No figures are available for the rates of the disorder in different racial or ethnic groups. Sleep terrors in children are not associated with any psychological disorders.

Fewer than 1% of adults have sleep terror disorder. For most adults, sleep terrors begin in their 20s or 30s, although it is possible for someone to suffer from episodes of sleep terror from childhood onward. In the adult population sleep terrors affect both sexes equally. They are, however, often associated with psychological disorders, most commonly **anxiety**, personality, or post-traumatic disorders. People who have a family history of sleep terrors or **sleepwalking disorder** are about 10 times more likely to develop sleep terror disorder than those who do not.

## Diagnosis

Sleep terror is diagnosed most often in children when parents express concern to the child's pediatrician. A fact sheet from the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry suggests that parents consult a child **psychiatrist** if the child has several episodes of sleep terror each night; if the episodes occur every night for weeks at a time; or if they interfere with the child's daytime activities. The **diagnosis** is usually made on the basis of the child's and parents' description of the symptoms. There are no laboratory tests for sleep terror disorder. In adults, the disorder is usually self-reported to the patient's family doctor. Again, the diagnosis is usually based on the patient's description of the symptoms.

Sleep terror is characterized by an abrupt arousal from sleep followed by symptoms of extreme fear. The symptoms often include screams, rapid heartbeat, heavy breathing, and sweating, as well as a subjective feeling of terror. According to the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders**, fourth edition, text revision (*DSM-IV-TR*), which is the standard reference work used by mental health professionals to diagnose mental disorders, people with sleep terror disorder do not respond to attempts to comfort or awaken them. In order to meet criteria for the diagnosis, the patients must not be able to recall their dreams, and they must not remember the episode itself. In addition, the episodes may not be attributed to a medical condition or drug use.

Sleep terror disorder is frequently confused with **nightmare disorder**. The two are similar in the sense that both are related to bad dreams. Nightmare disorder, however, involves a significantly smaller amount of physical movement than does sleep terror. Normally, people experiencing nightmare disorder do not get out of bed.

Moreover, people experiencing nightmare disorder often have problems going back to sleep because of the nature of their dream. Most people experiencing sleep terrors, however, go back to deep sleep without ever having fully awakened. People experiencing nightmares can generally remember their dreams and some of the events in the dream leading up to their awakening. People often awake from nightmares just as they are about to experience the most frightening part of a disturbing dream. People experiencing sleep terrors, however, can sometimes recall a sense of profound fear, but often do not remember the episode at all.

## Treatments

If sleep terror episodes are infrequent, then treatment may not be necessary as long as the episodes are not interfering significantly with the person's life. Some people may want to rearrange their bedroom furniture to minimize the possibility of hurting themselves or others if they get out of bed during a sleep terror episode. To keep children from becoming overly worried about their sleep terrors, experts suggest that parents avoid placing unnecessary emphasis on the episodes. **Psychotherapy** is often helpful for adults concerned about the specific triggers of sleep terror episodes.

Several different medications have been used to treat sleep terror disorder, with varying degrees of success. One of the most common is **diazepam** (Valium).

## KEY TERMS

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Pavor nocturnus**—The Latin medical term for sleep terror disorder.

Diazepam is a hypnotic (sleep-inducing medication), and is thought to be useful in the prevention of sleep terror episodes because it acts as a nervous system depressant. There are many different types of hypnotics, and choosing one for a patient depends on other drugs that the patient may be taking; any medical or psychological conditions; and other health factors. Most studies of medications as treatments for sleep terror disorder have been done on adult patients; there is little information available on the use of medications to treat the disorder in children.

### Prognosis

In most children, sleep terror disorder resolves before or during adolescence without any treatment. Adults often respond well to diazepam or another hypnotic. Psychotherapy and avoidance of stressors that may precipitate terror episodes may be helpful as well. Episodes of sleep terrors often decrease with age. This decrease is due to the fact that the amount of slow-wave sleep, which is the sleep phase during which terror episodes usually occur, declines with age.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Aldrich, Michael S. *Sleep Medicines*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1999.
- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Chokroverty, Susan, ed. *Sleep Disorders Medicine: Basic Science, Technical Considerations, and Clinical Aspects*. 2nd ed. Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann, 1999.
- Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.
- Thorpy, Michael J., ed. *Handbook of Sleep Disorders*. New York: Marcel Dekker Inc., 1990.

#### PERIODICALS

- Owens, Judith A., Richard P. Millman, Anthony Spirito. "Sleep Terrors in a 5-Year-Old Girl." *Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine* 153, no. 3 (March 1999).

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry.  
3615 Wisconsin Avenue NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891.  
<[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

American Academy of Sleep Medicine. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901. (507) 287-6006.  
<[www.asda.org](http://www.asda.org)>.

### OTHER

American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP). "Children's Sleep Problems." AACAP Facts For Families Pamphlet #34. Washington, DC: American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, 2000.

## Sleepwalking disorder

### Definition

Sleepwalking disorder, also called somnambulism, is characterized by repeating episodes of motor activity during sleep such as sitting up in bed, rising, and walking around, among others. The person appears to be awake because their eyes are usually open and they can maneuver around objects, but is considered asleep.

Sleepwalking disorder is one of several **sleep disorders** listed in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, DSM-IV-TR*, produced by the American Psychiatric Association and used by most mental health professionals in North America and Europe to diagnose mental disorders.

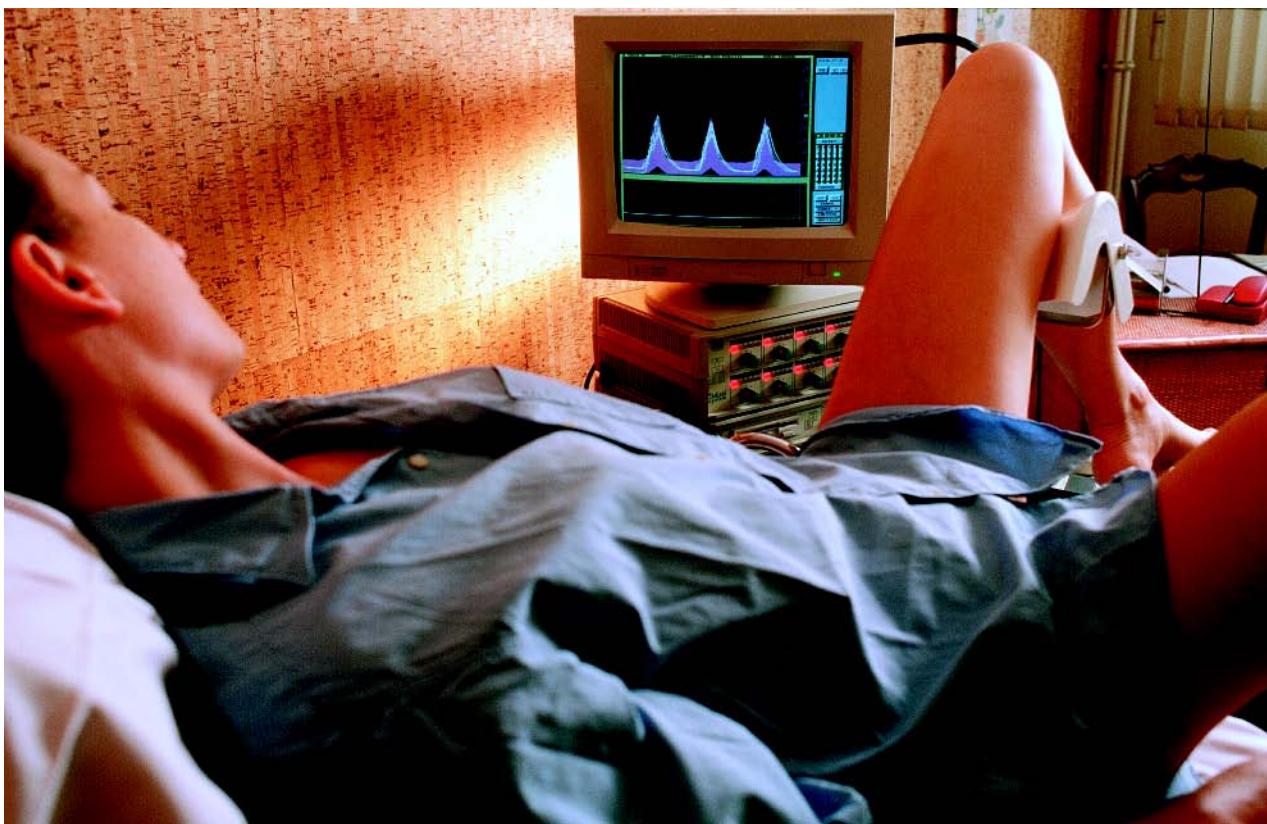
### Description

Sleepwalking episodes usually occur during the first third of the night during the deepest phase of sleep. The episodes can last anywhere from a few minutes up to one hour, with five to 15 minutes being average. Sleepwalkers appear to be awake but are typically unresponsive to individuals who attempt to communicate with them. Persons who sleepwalk typically have no memory or awareness of their actions or movement upon waking.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

There appears to be a genetic component for individuals who sleepwalk. The condition is 10 times more likely to occur in close relatives of known sleepwalkers than in the general public. These families also tend to be deep sleepers.



A woman undergoes biofeedback while viewing a monitor. (Pascal Alix/Photo Researchers, Inc)

Sleepwalking may also be triggered by fever, which directly affects the nervous system; general illness; alcohol use, sleep deprivation; and emotional **stress**. Hormonal changes that occur during adolescence, menstruation, and pregnancy can be also be triggers for sleepwalking. Sleepwalking episodes are more likely during times of physiological or psychological stress.

Certain classes of medication have also been shown to precipitate sleepwalking episodes in some individuals. These include: Antianxiety or sleep-inducing drugs, antiseizure medications, stimulants, antihistamines, and antiarrhythmic heart drugs.

### Symptoms

The *DSM-IV-TR* specifies six diagnostic criteria for sleepwalking disorder:

- Repeated episodes of rising from bed during sleep: These episodes may include sitting up in bed, looking around, and walking, and usually occur during the first third of the night.
- Is unresponsive to attempts at communication: During sleepwalking, the person typically has eyes open, dilated pupils, a blank stare, and does not

respond to another's attempts at communication. Affected persons typically are only awakened with great difficulty.

- No recollection of the sleepwalking incident: Upon waking, the person typically has no memory of the sleepwalking events. If the individual does awaken from the sleepwalking episode, they may have a vague memory of the incident. Often, sleepwalkers will return to bed, or fall asleep in another place with no recall of how they got there.
- No impairment of mental activity upon waking: If an individual awakens during a sleepwalking episode, there may be a short period of confusion or disorientation, but there is no impairment of mental activity or behavior.
- Causes significant distress to life situations: Sleepwalking causes significant disruption of social and occupational situations, or affects other abilities to function.
- Not due to substance use or abuse: Sleepwalking disorder is not diagnosed if the cause is related to drug abuse, medication, or a general medical condition.

## Demographics

Sleepwalking can occur at any age but is most common in children, with the first episodes usually between the ages of four and eight years. The peak of sleepwalking behavior occurs at about 12 years of age. Between 10 and 30% of children have had at least one episode of sleepwalking. Sleepwalking disorder is seen in only 1–5% of children and occurs more frequently in boys. Adults who sleepwalk typically have a history of sleepwalking that stems back to childhood. Sleepwalking events occur in approximately 1–7% of adults while sleepwalking disorder occurs in about 0.5%.

## Diagnosis

The line that separates periodic sleepwalking from sleepwalking disorder is not clearly defined. Individuals or families most often seek professional help when the episodes of sleepwalking are violent, pose a risk for injury, or impair the person's ability to function. For a **diagnosis** of sleepwalking disorder to be made, the person must experience a significant amount of social, occupational, or other impairment related to the sleepwalking problem. Episodes that have a long history extending from childhood through adolescence and especially into adulthood are more likely to be diagnosed with sleepwalking disorder.

Since the individual cannot recall the sleepwalking activity, diagnosis by means of interview is of little benefit, unless it involves someone who has witnessed the sleepwalking behavior. The preferred method for accurate diagnosis is through **polysomnography**. This technique involves hooking electrodes to different locations on the affected person's body to monitor **brain** wave activity, heart rate, breathing, and other vital signs while the individual sleeps. Monitoring brain-wave patterns and physiologic responses during sleep can usually give sleep specialists an accurate diagnosis of the condition and determine the effective means of treatment, if any.

Sleepwalking disorder can be difficult to distinguish from **sleep terror disorder**. In both cases, the individual has motor movement, is difficult to awaken, and does not remember the incident. The primary difference is that sleep terror disorder typically has an initial scream and signs of intense fear and panic associated with the other behaviors.

## Treatments

Treatment for sleepwalking is often unnecessary, especially if episodes are infrequent and pose no hazard to the sleepwalker or others. If sleepwalking is

recurrent, or daytime **fatigue** is suspected to result from disturbed sleep patterns, polysomnography may be recommended to determine whether some form of treatment may be helpful. If stress appears to trigger sleepwalking events in adults, stress management, **biofeedback** training, or relaxation techniques can be beneficial. Hypnosis has been used help sleepwalkers awaken once their feet touch the floor. **Psychotherapy** may help individuals who have underlying psychological issues that could be contributing to sleep problems.

Medications are sometimes used in the more severe cases with adults. Benzodiazepines—antianxiety drugs—such as **diazepam** (Valium) or **alprazolam** (Xanax) can be used to help relax muscles, although these may not result in fewer episodes of sleepwalking. When medications are used, they are typically prescribed in the lowest dose necessary and only for a limited period.

## Prognosis

Most cases of sleepwalking subside over time. Sleepwalking in childhood usually disappears without treatment by age 15. If sleepwalking episodes persist into early adulthood, treatment is recommended. With an accurate diagnosis and appropriate treatment, episodes of sleepwalking can be greatly reduced and, in some cases, eliminated.

## Prevention

In children, sleepwalking is relatively common and is not cause for concern. The major risk associated with sleepwalking is accidental injury. Parents should take precautions to block stairways, lock windows, keep floors cleared of harmful objects, etc.

If taking certain medications, a medical condition, or exposure to significant stressors are suspected triggers of sleepwalking episodes, a doctor should be consulted for a complete assessment.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Beers, Mark H., M.D., and Robert Berkow, M.D., eds. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. 17th edition. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.
- Hales, Diane., Robert E. Hales, M.D. *Caring for the Mind: The Comprehensive Guide to Mental Health*. New York: Bantam Books, 1995.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>.  
American Academy of Sleep Medicine. 6301 Bandel Road NW, Suite 101, Rochester, MN 55901, (507) 287-6006 <<http://www.assmnet.org/>>.  
Better Sleep Council. 501 Wythe Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. (703) 683-8371. <<http://www.bettersleep.org/>>.  
Health Communications.com. *Sleep Channel*. <<http://www.sleepdisorderchannel.net/sleepwalking/index.shtml>>.

Gary Gilles, M.A.

Smoking see **Nicotine and related disorders**



**Nicorette, a smoking cessation tool, in patch form.** (William Nicklin/Alamy)

## Smoking cessation

### Definition

Smoking cessation therapy consists of procedures that educate smokers about the dangers of smoking, convince smokers to stop smoking, motivate them to smoking abstinence, and assist them in their endeavors to quit by way of counseling and pharmaceutical interventions.

### Purpose

The goal of smoking cessation is to get smokers to stop smoking or to help them when they **relapse**. Because **nicotineaddiction** is strong and the cues to smoke are so prevalent, experts on smoking agree that occasional relapse is normal: One estimate is that those smokers who eventually quit for good make at least three or four attempts before freeing themselves of the addiction, and approximately 50% of quitters relapse during the first week or two of trying to quit.

Smoking is a key factor in lung cancer, heart attack, cerebrovascular disease, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), which are four of the primary causes of death in the United States. About one third of deaths due to cancer, heart disease, and **stroke** and around 90% of COPD cases are directly attributable to tobacco use. Individuals who smoke after age 35 have a 50% chance of dying from smoking-related causes, and smokers have an average life span that is shorter by eight years than nonsmokers.

Smoking related illness costs the United States between \$50 and \$70 billion a year in medical costs alone, with an estimated \$47 billion due to loss of productivity. An efficacious treatment approach that significantly cuts the numbers of smokers has a great

impact on the economy, health care, and insurance costs, and the vast social costs generated by the premature death of approximately 430,000 people per year. The Surgeon General's Office, the U.S. Public Health Service, the National Cancer Institute, and many other governmental and nonprofit organizations as well as private health care agencies, have concerned themselves with the importance of smoking cessation, resulting in established guidelines for clinical practice as well as continuing research on which strategies work and which ones do not contribute meaningfully to smoking cessation.

### Description

The 2002 U.S. Department of Health and Human Services/Public Health Service Guideline, *Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence*, a comprehensive, evidence-based blueprint for smoking cessation, established the necessity for medical practitioners to take a proactive stance in regard to patients' smoking. This article was based on a review of more than 3,000 articles on tobacco addiction that had been published from 1975 to 1994. The guideline was designed to provide clinicians and others with specific information regarding effective cessation treatments, and it

advocated the “frank discussion of personal health risks, the benefits of smoking cessation, and available methods to assist in stopping smoking,” an approach designed to raise physician concern about smoking, which had generally not been a topic broached with patients until associated diseases developed. The guidelines provide a strategy by which to approach the problem of patient smoking: The “Five A’s” model.

The model of the Five A’s specifies:

- Ask to systematically identify all tobacco users at every visit.
- Advise smokers to quit smoking.
- Assess the smoker’s willingness to stop. If the smoker is not willing, educate as to the “Five Rs” (see below).
- Assist smokers who are willing to stop smoking. Tests of nicotine dependence help set levels for pharmaceutical interventions.
- Arrange follow-up support. Quick follow-up can prevent or curtail early relapse.

One research estimate is that 5% of smokers will stop smoking if their doctor advises them to, and that educating smokers about the health effects of smoking can motivate them to quit in higher numbers. Motivation to stop smoking can be increased by social support and pharmaceutical interventions, and early relapse can be prevented more easily if the smoker has a follow-up appointment within a week of the stated quitting date.

Smoking cessation methods focus on getting smokers into treatment in the first place by targeting resistance and increasing motivation. If patients are not willing to quit, medical personnel are expected to employ the use of guidelines called the “Five Rs”:

- Relevance. The medical practitioner discusses the relevance of quitting smoking to the particular individual, perhaps targeting health concerns, family health, or the financial impact of smoking.
- Risks. The medical practitioner engages patients in discussion of the health risks of smoking.
- Rewards. The medical practitioner helps patients identify potential rewards, such as saving money (more than \$2,000 a year for a pack-a-day habit, and a variety of health improvements), raised self-esteem, improved taste and sense of smell, and setting a good example for children.
- Roadblocks. The practitioner and patient discuss the problems that prevent the patient from quitting, and the practitioner attempts to address the patient’s concerns (for example, fear of weight gain). By this time, physicians will also educate patients as to the symptoms of nicotine withdrawal. Irritability,

increased food cravings, headaches, lack of concentration, urges to use tobacco, and restlessness are some of the symptoms associated with nicotine withdrawal.

- Repetition. The medical practitioner engages patients unwilling to quit in this discussion at every appointment.

In 2002, a study of **managed care** providers revealed that 71% of the responding plans had written their own guidelines for smoking cessation treatment, and a majority stated that their guidelines were based on the Five A’s model. Smoking cessation treatment typically involves primary identification of smokers and their willingness to quit, a behavioral treatment component, and provision of pharmacotherapy.

Once the patient has indicated willingness to take part in a smoking cessation program, the prescribed therapy is generally pharmaceutical. Although telephone counseling has been shown to assist smokers in staying off tobacco, with group or individual counseling also showing some usefulness, it is without doubt that nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) or other drugs such as **bupropion SR** (sustained release) greatly contribute to smoking abstinence. Researchers have found that use of any of the drugs currently prescribed for nicotine addiction double or even triple the chances that patients will quit smoking.

### *Pharmacotherapy*

There are currently three major pharmacologic interventions in smoking cessation: nicotine replacement therapy (NRT), bupropion (known to many under the brand name Wellbutrin and Wellbutrin XL or Zyban and also used as an antidepressant), and the newest anti-smoking drug, Varenicline. The three replacement therapies of choice act differently to affect a similar change: Patients manage to quit smoking with significantly less physiologic distress and less chance of relapse than those who use only behavioral strategies or go “cold turkey.”

NRT works by replacing the delivery method of nicotine with chewing gum, a nicotine patch, nasal spray, or an “inhaler” that actually works by oral absorption, not by inhalation. Nicotine can be delivered to the body in ever-decreasing doses over time, allowing users to eventually end their dependence. Side effects of NRT include nausea, flatulence and other digestive problems, and mouth and jaw soreness from chewing the gum; skin irritation at patch sites; rhinitis, sneezing, and watery eyes for the spray; and throat irritation for the inhaler. Patients’ previous health issues determine which, if any, of the NRTs will be prescribed. NRT is not prescribed for patients

## KEY TERMS

**Bupropion**—One of the three major pharmacologic interventions in smoking cessation. Bupropion inhibits the body's reuptake of the neurotransmitters dopamine and norepinephrine.

**Nicotine**—A poisonous chemical usually derived from the tobacco plant, whose affect on the brain begins within seven seconds after it is inhaled. It causes the adrenal glands to secrete epinephrine, a neurotransmitter that causes the user to experience a nearly immediate feeling of euphoria. The neurotransmitter dopamine is also released, increasing the feeling of well-being. Nicotine also elevates blood pressure, causes the release of glucose into the bloodstream, and increases the heart rate and respiration rate. Nicotine, with its near instant but short duration "high," is extremely addictive, and its presence in tobacco products such as cigarettes, pipe tobacco, and chewing tobacco becomes even more dangerous due to other carcinogenic ingredients present in those products.

**Nicotine replacement therapy (NRT)**—One of the three major pharmacologic interventions in smoking

cessation. NRT works by replacing the delivery method of nicotine with chewing gum, a nicotine patch, nasal spray, or an "inhaler," allowing the levels of nicotine to gradually decrease and helping the patients end their dependence.

**Neurotransmitter**—Chemicals released from cells in the brain (called neurons) that are then picked up by other brain cells in a chemical mode of communication. Neurotransmitters are implicated in various physiologic and affective states such as pleasure, pain, hunger, and fear. When levels of certain neurotransmitters such as serotonin or dopamine are increased in the brain, they have a positive impact on mood, which is why drugs that release additional neurotransmitters are used as antidepressants and anti-anxiety drugs.

**Varenicline**—One of the three major pharmacologic interventions in smoking cessation. Varenicline causes the release of dopamine (with a positive effect on mood) while also blocking the effects of nicotine as it is smoked.

who have suffered a recent heart attack, who have angina or arrhythmia, or for women who are pregnant or nursing.

Bupropion inhibits the body's reuptake of the **neurotransmitters dopamine** and norepinephrine. Like **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, bupropion works because it produces higher levels of neurotransmitters in the **brain**, which in turn create enhanced feelings of well-being. Unlike other SSRIs, bupropion has some effect on serotonin but has its primary effects on dopamine. Originally used as an antidepressant drug, bupropion has been used in smoking cessation both for those suffering solely from nicotine addiction and for those who have concurrent symptoms of **depression**. Patients with a history of seizure or eating disorders are not given bupropion.

Varenicline is believed to work in smoking cessation by causing the release of dopamine (with a positive effect on mood) while also blocking the effects of nicotine as it is smoked. In this way, the smoker would experience a generally better sense of well-being but would not derive the usual physical gratification from continuing to smoke.

### *Behavioral therapy*

Smoking cessation programs are more effective when patients learn behavioral coping strategies in

addition to using drug therapy; however, given the strength of the physical addiction, if only one therapeutic modality is to be used, pharmacotherapy is generally considered the more effective choice. That said, many smokers find comfort in being able to pick up the phone and talk to someone when cravings become unmanageable. In a best-case scenario (and indeed, in most of the managed care programs today), patients have access to behavioral, supportive, and drug therapies.

### *Aftercare*

Aftercare consists of maintenance or relapse interventions such as Nicotine Anonymous, which is a 12-step program that offers support to those who want to quit cigarettes and quit smoking. Maintenance and relapse can be considered lifelong endeavors, because a smoker is either not smoking or has suffered a temporary setback that can be addressed by cycling through the stages again. Some researchers say that most smokers will relapse three or four times before quitting; others estimate it to be closer to ten or fifteen times. Aftercare for smoking, like for all addictions, focuses on supportive services and addressing relapse as quickly as possible.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

- Anczak, John, and Robert Nogler. "Tobacco Cessation in Primary Care: Maximizing Intervention Strategies." *Clinical Medicine & Research* 1.3 (2003): 201–16.
- Fiore, Michael C., MD, and others. "Clinical Practice Guideline: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence." *U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Public Health Service* June 2000: 1–196.
- Mallin, Robert, MD. "Smoking Cessation: Integration of Behavioral and Drug Therapies." *American Family Physician* 65.6 (2002): 1107–14.
- McPhillips-Tangum, Carol, MPH, and others. "Addressing Tobacco in Managed Care: Results of the 2002 Survey." *Preventing Chronic Disease: Public Health Research, Practice, and Policy* 1.4 (2004): 1–11.
- Wu, Ping, and others. "Effectiveness of Smoking Cessation Therapies: a Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis." *BMC Public Health* December 2006: 1–16.
- Rollins, Gina. "With Smoking Cessation Drugs, Dosage is Key." *American College of Physicians-American Society of Internal Medicine Observer* April 2002: 1.

### WEB SITES

- Center for Disease Control, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Tobacco Information and Prevention Source <<http://www.cdc.gov/tobacco/how2quit.htm>>.
- The National Cancer Institute <<http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/smoking>>.
- Nicotine Anonymous <<http://www.nicotine-anonymous.org/>>.

Lorena S. Covington, MA

## Social phobia

### Definition

Social phobia is defined in the *DSM-IV-TR* as an **anxiety** disorder characterized by a strong and persistent fear of social or performance situations in which the patient might feel embarrassment or humiliation. Generalized social phobia refers to a fear of most social interactions combined with fear of most performance situations, such as speaking in public or eating in a restaurant. Persons who are afraid of only one type of performance situation or afraid of only a few rather than most social situations may be described as having nongeneralized, circumscribed, or specific social phobia.

Social phobia, which is also known as social anxiety disorder, is a serious mental health problem in the United States. In any given year, social phobia affects

3.7% of the American population between the ages of 18 and 54, or about 5.3 million people. It is the third most common psychiatric condition after **depression** and alcoholism. Patients diagnosed with social phobia have the highest risk of alcohol **abuse** of all patients with **anxiety disorders**; in addition, they suffer from worse impairment than patients with major medical illnesses, including congestive heart failure and diabetes.

### Description

Social phobia varies in its development and initial presentation. In some young people, the disorder grows out of a long-term history of shyness or social inhibition. In others, social phobia becomes apparent following a move to a new school or similar developmental challenge. In adults, circumscribed social phobia may be associated with a change of occupation or job promotion, the most common example being the emergence of the disorder with regard to public speaking in a person whose previous jobs did not require them to make presentations or speeches in front of others. The onset of social phobia may be insidious, which means that it gets worse by slow degrees. About half of all patients, however, experience a sudden onset of social phobia following a particularly humiliating or frightening experience. For example, in one British case study the patient's social phobia developed abruptly after her father's sudden death. The patient had had an argument with him one morning and he was killed in an accident later in the day. The onset of social phobia almost always occurs in childhood or the midteens; onset after age 25 is unusual. The disorder is often a lifelong problem, although its severity may diminish in adult life.

Adults and adolescents with social phobia, as well as many children with the disorder, have sufficient insight to recognize that their fears are excessive or unwarranted. This factor often adds to their distress and feelings of inferiority.

Social phobia is of major concern to society as a whole for two reasons. One reason is the disorder's very high rate of comorbidity with such other mental health problems as major depression and **substance abuse**. In comparison with patients diagnosed with other anxiety disorders, patients with social phobia have higher averages of concurrent anxiety disorders (1.21 versus 0.45); comorbid depression or other disorders (2.05 versus 1.19); and lifetime disorders (3.11 versus 2.05). The most common comorbid disorders diagnosed in patients with social phobia are major depression (43%); **panic disorder** (33%); **generalized anxiety disorder** (19%); PTSD (36%); alcohol or

substance abuse disorder (18%); and attempted **sui-cide** (23%).

The second reason is the loss to the larger society of the gifts and talents that these patients possess. Social phobia can have a devastating effect on young people's intellectual life and choice of career, causing them to abandon their educations, stay stuck in dead-end jobs, refuse promotions involving travel or relocation, and make similar self-defeating choices because of their fear of classroom participation, job interviews, and other social interactions in educational and workplace settings. One sample of patients diagnosed with social phobia found that almost half had failed to finish high school; 70% were in the bottom two quartiles of socioeconomic status (SES); and 22% were on welfare. In addition to their academic and employment-related difficulties, people with social phobia have limited or nonexistent social support networks. They are less likely to marry and start families of their own because of their fear of interpersonal relationships. Many continue to live at home with their parents even as adults, or remain in unfulfilling relationships.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The causes of social phobia appear to be a combination of physical and environmental factors.

**NEUROBIOLOGICAL FACTORS.** There is some evidence that social phobia can be inherited. A group of researchers at Yale has identified a genetic locus on human chromosome 3 that is linked to **agoraphobia** and two genetic loci on chromosomes 1 and 11q linked to panic disorder. Because social phobia shares some traits with panic disorder, it is likely that there are also genes that govern a person's susceptibility to social phobia. In addition, researchers at the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) have identified a gene in mice that appears to govern fearfulness.

**Positron emission tomography** (PET) scans of patients diagnosed with social phobia indicate that blood flow is increased in a region of the **brain** (the amygdala) associated with fear responses when the patients are asked to speak in public. In contrast, PET scans of control subjects without social phobia show that blood flow during the public speaking exercise is increased in the cerebral cortex, an area of the brain associated with thinking and evaluation rather than emotional arousal. The researchers have concluded that patients with social phobia have a different neurochemical response to certain social situations or

challenges that activates the limbic system rather than the cerebral cortex.

**TEMPERAMENT.** A number of researchers have pointed to inborn temperament (natural predisposition) as a broad vulnerability factor in the development of anxiety and mood disorders, including social phobia. More specifically, children who manifest what is known as behavioral inhibition in early infancy are at increased risk for developing more than one anxiety disorder in adult life, particularly if the inhibition remains over time. Behavioral inhibition refers to a group of behaviors that are displayed when the child is confronted with a new situation or unfamiliar people. These behaviors include moving around, crying, and general irritability, followed by withdrawing, seeking comfort from a familiar person, and stopping what one is doing when one notices the new person or situation. Children of depressed or anxious parents are more likely to develop behavioral inhibition. One study of preadolescent children diagnosed with social phobia reported that many of these children had been identified as behaviorally inhibited in early childhood.

**PSYCHOSOCIAL FACTORS.** The development of social phobia is also influenced by parent-child interactions in a patient's family of origin. Several studies have found that the children of parents with major depression, whether or not it is comorbid with panic disorder, are at increased risk of developing social phobia. Children of parents with major depression and comorbid panic disorder are at increased risk of developing more than one anxiety disorder. A family pattern of social phobia, however, is stronger for the generalized than for the specific or circumscribed subtype.

It is highly likely that the children of depressed parents may acquire certain attitudes and behaviors from their parents that make them more susceptible to developing social phobia. One study of children with social phobia found that their cognitive assessment of ambiguous situations was strongly negative, not only with regard to the dangerousness of the situation but also in terms of their ability to cope with it. In other words, these children tend to overestimate the threats and dangers in life and to underestimate their strength, intelligence, and other resources for coping. This process of learning from observing the behavior of one's parents or other adults is called social **modeling**.

Still another psychosocial factor related to the development of social phobia in children and adolescents is the general disintegration in the social fabric of the developed countries since World War II. A number of social theorists as well as physicians and

therapists have noted that children are exposed more frequently to both real-life and media depictions of aggressive behavior and abrasive language than earlier generations. Children also learn about frightening or unpleasant social realities at earlier and earlier ages. The increased rate of social phobia and school refusal among adolescent girls has been linked to the greater crudity of teasing from boys in junior high and high school. In addition, the fortress mentality reflected in the architecture of high-rise apartment buildings and gated communities for those who can afford them also sends children the message that other people are to be feared. While trends in the larger society may not directly cause social phobia (or other mental disorders), they are nonetheless important indirect influences.

### Symptoms

The symptoms of social phobia are somewhat different in children and adults, in that the early onset of social phobia typically means that children with the disorder fail to achieve at their predicted level, whereas adults and adolescents show declines from previously achieved levels of functioning.

**SYMPTOMS IN CHILDREN.** Symptoms of social phobia in children frequently include tantrums, crying, “freezing,” clinging to parents or other familiar people, and inhibiting interactions to the point of refusing to talk to others (mutism).

**SYMPTOMS IN ADULTS.** The symptoms of social phobia in adults include a range of physical signs of anxiety as well as attitudes and behaviors.

- Blushing, sweating, nausea, diarrhea, dry mouth, tremors, and other physical indications of anxiety.
- Difficulties with self-assertion.
- Extreme sensitivity to criticism, rejection, or negative evaluations.
- Intense preoccupation with the reactions and responses of others.
- Heightened fears of being embarrassed or humiliated.
- Avoidance of the feared situation(s) and anticipatory anxiety.

In adults, there is often a “vicious circle” quality to the symptoms, in that the anxiety and symptoms lead to actual or perceived poor performances, which in turn increase the anxiety and avoidance. A common example is performance anxiety related to musical instruments; the person who is afraid of having to play the piano in a recital, for example, may become so anxious that the muscles in the hands become tense, thus producing frequent mistakes in fingering and sound production during the recital performance.

Not all adults with social phobia appear shy or outwardly nervous to other people. Some adults are able to force themselves to attend social events, give public presentations, or interact with others by self-medication with alcohol or limiting the time period of their interactions. These strategies, however, prevent the underlying fears and disabilities from being addressed.

### Demographics

The prevalence of social phobia in the general United States population is difficult to evaluate because researchers differ in their estimation of the threshold of “significant interference” with the person’s occupational or educational functioning. In addition, different studies have focused on different subtypes of social phobia. One study found that about 20% of the adults surveyed reported high levels of anxiety related to public speaking or other types of public performance, but only 2% indicated sufficient distress to meet the diagnostic criteria of social phobia. Because of these differences in measurement, epidemiological and community-based studies give figures for a lifetime prevalence of social phobia that fall between 3 and 13%.

The types of situations associated with social phobia are different in the general population as contrasted with clinical populations. Surveys of adults in the general population indicate that most people diagnosed with social phobia are afraid of public speaking; only 45% report being afraid of meeting new people or having to talk to strangers. Fears related to eating, drinking, or writing in public, or using a public restroom, are much less common in this group of patients. By contrast, people being treated for social phobia in outpatient clinics are more likely to be afraid of a range of social situations rather than just one. Social phobia accounts for 10–20% of the anxiety disorders diagnosed in patients in outpatient clinics, but it is rarely the reason for hospitalizing a patient.

The same difference between general and clinical populations affects the sex ratios given for social phobia. Community-based studies suggest that social phobia is more common in women, but in most samples of clinical patients, the sex ratio is either 1:1 or males are in the majority. A study of social phobia in prepubertal children found that girls were more likely to verbalize anxiety than boys, but the researchers who observed the children interact with adults and with one another did not observe any behavioral differences between boys and girls. The researchers concluded that the apparently higher rates of social phobia in

women may simply reflect women's greater openness about their feelings.

With regard to race, the same study found no statistically significant difference in the incidence of social phobia between Caucasian and African American children. This finding was consistent with a 1995 study that failed to find differences based on race in lists of children's top 10 fears. Further research, however, is necessary in order to determine whether social phobia has different symptom patterns or rates of development in different racial or ethnic groups.

The demographics of social phobia in young children are particularly difficult to determine because of changes in diagnostic categories and criteria in successive editions of *DSM*. Social phobia was introduced as a diagnostic category in *DSM-III*, which was published in 1980. Neither *DSM-III* nor its 1987 revision restricted social phobia to adults, but the disorder was rarely diagnosed in children—most likely because *DSM-III* and *DSM-III-R* listed two diagnoses for children, overanxious disorder and avoidant disorder of childhood, whose symptoms overlapped with those of social phobia. Statistics based on *DSM-III-R*'s criteria for social phobia placed the prevalence of the disorder in children in the general population at about 1%. The revisions of the diagnostic criteria in *DSM-IV*, however, have led to an apparent dramatic increase in the prevalence of social phobia in children. One study done in 1997 reported that 18% of the children in a clinical sample met *DSM-III-R* criteria for social phobia, but that 40% of the children in the same sample had social phobia according to *DSM-IV* criteria.

## Diagnosis

The **diagnosis** of social phobia is usually made on the basis of the patient's history and reported symptoms. The doctor may also decide to administer diagnostic questionnaires intended to rule out other phobias, other anxiety disorders, and major depression. In diagnosing a child, the doctor will usually ask the child's parents, teachers, or others who know the child well for their observations.

### Children and adolescents

A doctor who is evaluating a child for social phobia must take into account that children do not have the freedom that adults usually have to avoid the situations that frighten them. As a result, they may not be able to explain why they are anxious. It is important to evaluate the child's capacity for social relationships with people that he or she knows; and to

assess his or her interactions with peers for indications of social phobia, not only his or her behavior around adults.

A semi-structured interview that a doctor can use to assess social phobia in children is the Anxiety Disorders Interview Schedule for Children, or ADIS-C. A newer clinician-administered test is the Liebowitz Social Anxiety Scale for Children and Adolescents, or LSAS-CA. Self-report inventories for children include the **Child Depression Inventory**, or CDI, and the Social Phobia and Anxiety Inventory for Children, or SPAI-C. Parents can be asked to complete the Child Behavior Checklist (CBL), and teachers may be given the Teacher's Report Form (TRF).

## Adults

Diagnostic instruments for assessing social phobia in adults are more problematic. Some general screeners that are used in primary care settings, such as the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV-Screen (SCID-Screen), do include questions related to social phobia but can take as long as 25 minutes to administer. Others, such as the Primary Care Evaluation of Mental Disorders, or Prime-MD, are not specific for social phobia. Instruments designed to measure social phobia by itself, such as the Fear of Negative Evaluation Scale and the Social Avoidance and Distress Scale, are lengthy and generally more useful for monitoring the progress of therapy. Another clinician-administered interview for social phobia in adults, the Liebowitz Social Anxiety Scale (LSAS), is not yet in widespread use.

Many physicians, however, have found that the addition of a few selected questions to a general screener for mental disorders is helpful in detecting social phobia. One study found that giving patients three specific statements with yes/no answers detected 89% of cases of social phobia:

- Being embarrassed or looking stupid are among my worst fears.
- Fear of embarrassment causes me to avoid doing things or speaking to people.
- I avoid activities in which I am the center of attention.

As of 2002 there were no laboratory tests or brain imaging techniques that can help to diagnose social phobia in adults.

## Treatments

Social phobia responds well to proper treatment; however, patients with social phobia have a distinctive

set of barriers to treatment. Unlike persons with some other types of mental disorders, they are unlikely to deny that they have a problem. What researchers have found is that in comparison to persons suffering from other disorders, persons with social phobia are significantly more likely to say that financial problems, uncertainty over where to go for help, and fear of what others might think prevent them from seeking treatment. The researchers concluded that providing better information about community services as well as easing the psychological and financial burdens of patients with social phobia would significantly improve their chances of recovery. Left untreated, social phobia can become a chronic, disabling disorder that increases the patient's risk of suicide.

### **Medications**

About 53% of patients diagnosed with social phobia are treated with medications. Drug treatment has proven beneficial to patients with this disorder; however, no one type of medication appears to be clearly superior to others. Selection of a medication depends on the subtype of the patient's social phobia; the presence of other mental disorders; and the patient's occupation and personal preferences.

Specific medications that are used to treat social phobia include:

- Benzodiazepine tranquilizers. These are often prescribed for patients who need immediate relief from anxiety. They have two major drawbacks, however; they are habit-forming, and they are unsuitable for patients with comorbid alcohol or substance abuse disorders. Benzodiazepines are, however, sometimes prescribed for patients who have a low risk for substance abuse and have not responded to other medications.
- Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). About two-thirds of patients with social phobia show significant improvement when treated with these drugs. MAOIs, however, have the disadvantage of requiring patients to stick to a low-tyramine diet that excludes many popular foods, and requiring them to avoid many over-the-counter cold and cough preparations.
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs). About 50–75% of patients with social phobia benefit from treatment with SSRIs. The SSRIs appear to work best in patients with comorbid major depression or panic disorder. Sertraline (Zoloft) has been recommended for patients with generalized social phobia.

- Beta blockers. These medications, which include propranolol (Inderal), are given to patients with mild to moderate circumscribed performance anxiety to suppress the symptoms of panic. The patient takes the medication on an as-needed basis rather than a standing dosage, for instance, when facing a known trigger event (e.g., flying or speaking publicly). Beta-blockers do not appear to be helpful for patients with generalized social phobia.
- Botulinum toxin. In conjunction with SSRIs, Botox is helpful for some patients to control sweating, a symptom of panic that may escalate the phobia.
- Alternative drugs. Anti-convulsant drugs such as gabapentin (Neurontin) and levetiracetam (Keppra) show promise as a treatment for social phobia.

### **Psychotherapy**

The type of **psychotherapy** most commonly recommended for treatment of social phobia is **cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT). Mild to moderate cases of social phobia often show considerable improvement with CBT alone; patients with more severe social phobia benefit from a combination of CBT and an appropriate medication. Cognitive-behavioral treatment of adults diagnosed with social phobia usually combines exposure therapy with cognitive restructuring techniques. In exposure therapy, the patient is exposed to small "doses" of the feared situation that are gradually lengthened in time. The chief drawback to exposure therapy for social phobia is that some feared situations are easier to replicate for purposes of treatment than others. Patients who are afraid of public speaking or musical performance can practice performing in front of any group of people that can be collected to help; but it is not so easy to arrange exposure sessions for a patient who is afraid of interactions with a specific teacher, employer, or supervisor. The other aspect of CBT that is used in treating social phobia in adults is cognitive restructuring. This approach challenges the patient to reconsider and then replace the biased cognitions that have led him or her to overestimate the dangers in social situations and to underestimate his or her own resources for coping with them.

Several trial programs of CBT **group therapy** have been used with adolescents with social phobia. One pilot program situated the group meetings in the school rather than in a clinic, on the grounds that most of the fears of adolescents with social phobia revolve around school activities. Another CBT group for adolescents was conducted in a clinical setting. Both programs included **social skills training** alongside exposure therapy and cognitive restructuring, and

## KEY TERMS

**Amygdala**—An almond-shaped brain structure in the limbic system that is activated in acute stress situations to trigger the emotion of fear. Some studies suggest that social phobia may be related to changes in or overfunctioning of the amygdala.

**Behavioral inhibition**—A set of behaviors that appear in early infancy that are displayed when the child is confronted with a new situation or unfamiliar people. These behaviors include moving around, crying, and general irritability, followed by withdrawing, and seeking comfort from a familiar person. These behaviors are associated with an increased risk of social phobia and panic disorder in later life. Behavioral inhibition in children appears to be linked to anxiety and mood disorders in their parents.

**Cognitive restructuring**—An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping the patient examine distorted patterns of perceiving and thinking in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**Exposure therapy**—A form of cognitive-behavioral therapy in which patients suffering from phobias are exposed to their feared objects or situations while accompanied by the therapist. The length of exposure is gradually increased until the association between the feared situation and the patient's experienced panic symptoms is no longer present.

**Limbic system**—A group of structures in the brain that includes the amygdala, hippocampus, olfactory bulbs, and hypothalamus. The limbic system is associated with homeostasis and the regulation and arousal of emotions.

**Mutism**—Inability to speak due to conscious refusal or psychogenic inhibition. Mutism is a common symptom of social phobia in children.

**Performance anxiety**—A subcategory of circumscribed social phobia in which the patient's fear is limited to performing certain activities or tasks in public. Common areas of performance anxiety include public speaking, acting on stage, solo singing, and playing instrumental solos.

**Phobia**—Irrational fear of places, things, or situations that lead to avoidance.

**Social modeling**—A process of learning behavioral and emotional response patterns from observing one's parents or other adults. Some researchers think that social modeling plays a part in the development of social phobia.

**Temperament**—A person's natural disposition or inborn combination of mental and emotional traits. Children with a shy or withdrawn temperament are at increased risk of developing social phobia in adolescence.

both were reported to be moderately successful at one-year follow-up.

### Other approaches

Other approaches that have been used to treat social phobia include **family therapy** and relaxation techniques.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for recovery from social phobia is good, given early diagnosis and appropriate treatment. The prognosis for persons with untreated social phobia, however, is poor. In most cases, these individuals become long-term underachievers, at high risk for alcoholism, major depression, and suicide.

### Prevention

Given that some of the factors implicated in social phobia are neurobiological or genetic, the best preven-

tive strategy is early identification of children with behavioral inhibition and developing techniques for assisting their social development.

*See also* Child Depression Inventory; Exposure treatment.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Heimberg, Richard G., and Robert E. Becker. *Cognitive-Behavioral Group Therapy for Social Phobia: Basic Mechanisms and Clinical Strategies*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2002.
- Heimberg, Richard G., and others, eds. *Social Phobia: Diagnosis, Assessment, and Treatment*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2006.
- Hofmann, Stefan. *Cognitive-Behavior Therapy of Social Phobia: Evidence-Based and Disorder-Specific Treatment Techniques*. Oxford: Routledge, 2007.

Stravynski, Ariel. *Fearing Others: The Nature and Treatment of Social Phobia*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

- Andersson, Gerhard, and others. "Internet-Based Self-Help With Therapist Feedback and In Vivo Group Exposure for Social Phobia: A Randomized Controlled Trial." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 74.4, Aug. 2006: 677–86.
- Black, Donald W. "Efficacy of Combined Pharmacotherapy and Psychotherapy Versus Monotherapy in the Treatment of Anxiety Disorders." *CNS Spectrums* 11.10 (Suppl. 12), Oct. 2006: 29–33.
- Smits, Jasper A., and others. "The Efficacy of Videotape Feedback for Enhancing the Effects of Exposure-Based Treatment for Social Anxiety Disorder: A Controlled Investigation." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 44.12, Dec. 2006: 1773–85.
- Voncken, Marisol J., Lynn E. Alden, and Susan M. Bögels. "Hiding Anxiety Versus Acknowledgment of Anxiety in Social Interaction: Relationship with Social Anxiety." *Behaviour Research and Therapy* 44.11, Nov. 2006: 1673–9.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852-2624. (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.
- Anxiety Disorders Education Program, National Institute of Mental Health. 6001 Executive Blvd., Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (301) 443-4513. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

#### OTHER

- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Facts About Social Phobia*. NIH publication OM-99 4171, revised edition (2000). <[www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/phobiafacts.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/anxiety/phobiafacts.cfm)>.

Rebecca Frey, Ph.D.

## Social skills training

### Definition

Social skills training (SST) is a form of individual or **group therapy** used by teachers, therapists, and trainers to help those needing to learn to overcome inhibition or social ineffectiveness in their interactions with others. SST may use any of a number of techniques including behavior rehearsal, cognitive rehearsals, and **assertiveness training**.

### Purpose

#### Goals

A major goal of social skills training is to teach persons who may or may not have emotional problems about the verbal as well as nonverbal behaviors involved in social interactions. There are many people who have never been taught such interpersonal skills as making "small talk" in social settings, or the importance of good eye contact during a conversation. In addition, many people have not learned to "read" the many subtle cues contained in social interactions, such as how to tell when someone wants to change the topic of conversation or shift to another activity. Social skills training helps patients to learn to interpret these and other social signals, so that they can determine how to act appropriately in the company of other people in a variety of different situations. SST proceeds on the assumption that when people improve their social skills or change selected behaviors, they will raise their self-esteem and increase the likelihood that others will respond favorably to them. Trainees learn to change their social behavior patterns by practicing selected behaviors in individual or group therapy sessions. Another goal of social skills training is to improve a patient's ability to function in everyday social situations. Social skills training can help patients to work on specific issues—for example, improving one's telephone manners—that interfere with their jobs or daily lives.

### Treatment of specific disorders

A person who lacks certain social skills may have great difficulty building a network of supportive friends and acquaintances as he or she grows older, and may become socially isolated. Moreover, one of the consequences of loneliness is an increased risk of developing emotional problems or mental disorders. Social skills training has been shown to be effective in treating patients with a broad range of emotional problems and diagnoses. Some of the disorders treated by social skills trainers include shyness; **adjustment disorders**; marital and family conflicts, **anxiety disorders**, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, **social phobia**, alcohol dependence; **depression**; **bipolar disorder**; **schizophrenia**; developmental disabilities; **avoidant personality disorder**; **paranoid personality disorder**; **obsessive-compulsive disorder**; and **schizotypal personality disorder**.

A specific example of the ways in which social skills training can be helpful is its application to alcohol dependence. In treating patients with alcohol dependence, a therapist who is using social skills

training focuses on teaching the patients ways to avoid drinking when they go to parties where alcohol is served, or when they find themselves in other situations in which others may pressure them to drink.

Another example is the application of social skills training to social phobia or shyness. People who suffer from social phobia or shyness are not ignorant of social cues, but they tend to avoid specific situations in which their limitations might cause them embarrassment. Social skills training can help these patients to improve their communication and social skills so that they will be able to mingle with others or go to job interviews with greater ease and self-confidence. Some studies indicate that the social skills training given to patients with shyness and social phobia can be applied to those with avoidant personality disorder, but more research is needed to differentiate among the particular types of social skills that benefit specific groups of patients, rather than treating social skills as a single entity. When trainers apply social skills training to the treatment of other **personality disorders**, they focus on the specific skills required to handle the issues that emerge with each disorder. For example, in the treatment of **obsessive-compulsive personality disorder** (OCD), social skills trainers focus on helping patients with OCD to deal with heavy responsibilities and stress.

People with disabilities in any age group can benefit from social skills training. Several studies demonstrate that children with developmental disabilities can acquire positive social skills with training. Extensive research on the effects of social skills training on children with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder shows that SST programs are effective in reducing these children's experiences of school failure or rejection as well as the aggressiveness and isolation that often develop in them because they have problems relating to others.

SST can be adapted to the treatment of depression with a focus on assertiveness training. Depressed patients often benefit from learning to set limits to others, to obtain satisfaction for their own needs, and to feel more self-confident in social interactions. Research suggests that patients who are depressed because they tend to withdraw from others can benefit from social skills training by learning to increase positive social interactions with others instead of pulling back.

There has been extensive research on the effective use of social skills training for the treatment of schizophrenia, in outpatient clinics as well as inpatient units. SST can be used to help patients with schizo-

phrenia make better eye contact with other people, increase assertiveness, and improve their general conversational skills.

### *Social skills training in combination with other therapies*

Social skills training is often used in combination with other therapies in the treatment of mental disorders. For example, in the treatment of individuals with alcohol dependence, social skills training has been used together with cognitive restructuring and coping skills training. Social skills training has also been integrated with exposure therapy, cognitive restructuring, and medication in the treatment of social phobia. Social skills training has been used within **family therapy** itself in the treatment of marital and family conflicts. Moreover, SST works well together with medication for the treatment of depression. For the treatment of schizophrenia, social skills training has often been combined with pharmacotherapy, family therapy, and assertive **case management**.

### **Precautions**

Social skills training should rest on an objective assessment of the patient's actual problems in relating to other people.

It is important for therapists who are using SST to move slowly so that the patient is not overwhelmed by trying to change too many behaviors at one time. In addition, social skill trainers should be careful not to intensify the patient's feelings of social incompetence. This caution is particularly important in treating patients with social phobia, who are already worried about others' opinions of them.

An additional precaution is related to the transfer of social skills from the therapy setting to real-life situations. This transfer is called generalization or maintenance. Generalization takes place more readily when the social skills training has a clear focus and the patient is highly motivated to reach a realistic goal. In addition, social skills trainers should be sure that the new skills being taught are suitable for the specific patients involved.

### **Description**

#### *Techniques in social skills training*

Therapists who use social skills training begin by breaking down complex social behaviors into smaller portions. Next, they arrange these smaller parts in order of difficulty, and gradually introduce them to the patients. For example, a therapist who is helping a

patient learn to feel more comfortable at parties might make a list of specific behaviors that belong to the complex behavior called “acting appropriately at a party,” such as introducing oneself to others; making conversation with several people at the party rather than just one other guest; keeping one’s conversation pleasant and interesting; thanking the host or hostess before leaving; and so on. The patient would then work on one specific behavior at a time rather than trying to learn them all at once.

Such specific techniques as instruction, **modeling**, role-playing, shaping, feedback, and **reinforcement** of positive interactions may be used in SST. For example, instruction may be used to convey the differences among assertive, passive, and aggressive styles of communication. The technique of monitoring may be used to ask patients to increase their eye contact during a conversation. In role-playing exercises, group members have the opportunity to offer feedback to one another about their performances in simulated situations. For example, two members of the group may role-play a situation in which a customer is trying to return a defective purchase to a store. The others can then give feedback about the “customer’s” assertiveness or the “clerk’s” responses.

#### *Content of social skills training*

SST may be used to teach people specific sets of social competencies. A common focus of SST programs is **communication skills**. A program designed to improve people’s skills in this area might include helping them with nonverbal and assertive communication and with making conversation. It might also include conversational skills that are needed in different specific situations; for example, job interviews, informal parties, and dating. The skills might be divided further into such subjects as beginning, holding, and ending conversations, or expressing feelings in appropriate ways.

Another common focus of SST programs involves improving a patient’s ability to perceive and act on social cues. Many people have problems communicating with others because they fail to notice or do not understand other people’s cues, whether verbal or nonverbal. For example, some children become unpopular with their peers because they force their way into small play groups, when a child who has learned to read social signals would know that the children in the small group do not want someone else to join them, at least not at that moment. Learning to understand another person’s spoken or unspoken messages is as important as learning conversational skills. A social skills program may include skills

related to the perceptual processing of the conversation of other individuals.

#### *Scheduling*

Social skills training may be given as an individual or as a group treatment once or twice a week, or more often depending upon the severity of a patient’s disorder and the level of his or her social skills. Generally speaking, children appear to gain more from SST in a peer group setting than in individual therapy. Social skill training groups usually consist of approximately 10 patients, a therapist, and a cotherapist.

#### *Cultural and gender issues*

Social skills training programs may be modified somewhat to allow for cultural and gender differences. For example, eye contact is a frequently targeted behavior to be taught during social skills training. In some cultures, however, downcast eyes are a sign of respect rather than an indication of social **anxiety** or shyness. In addition, girls or women in some cultures may be considered immodest if they look at others, particularly adult males, too directly. These modifications can usually be made without changing the basic format of the SST program.

#### *Generalization or transfer of skills*

Current trends in social skills training are aimed at developing training programs that meet the demands of specific roles or situations. This need developed from studies that found that social skills acquired in one setting or situation are not easily generalized or transferred to another setting or situation. To assist patients in using their new skills in real-life situations, trainers use role-playing, teaching, modeling, and practice.

#### *Preparation*

Preparation for social skills training requires tact on the therapist’s part, as patients with such disorders as social phobia or paranoid personality disorder may be discouraged or upset by being told that they need help with their social skills. One possible approach is through reading. The social skills therapist may recommend some self-help books on social skills in preparation for the treatment. Second, the therapist can ease the patient’s self-consciousness or embarrassment by explaining that no one has perfect social skills. An additional consideration before starting treatment is the possibility of interference from medication side effects. The therapist will usually ask the patient for a list of all medications that he or she takes regularly.

One of the most critical tasks in preparation for social skills training is the selection of suitable target behaviors. It is often more helpful for the therapist to ask the patient to identify behaviors that he or she would like to change, rather than pointing to problem areas that the therapist has identified. The treatment should consider the patient's particular needs and interests. Whereas social skills training for some patients may include learning assertiveness on the job, training for others may include learning strategies for dating. Therapists can prepare patients for homework by explaining that the homework is the practice of new skills in other settings; and that it is as relevant as the therapy session itself.

### Aftercare

Some studies strongly suggest the need for follow-up support after an initial course of social skills training. One study showed that follow-up support doubled the rate of employment for a group of patients with schizophrenia, compared to a group that had no follow-up.

### Normal results

Outcome studies indicate that social skills training has moderate short-term effects, but limited long-term effects. SST programs that include social perspective-taking may have greater long-term effects than traditional SST programs based on cognitive-behavioral models. In general, social skills training tends to generalize or transfer to similar contexts rather than to contexts that are not similar to the training. SST programs for patients with developmental disabilities should include programming for generalization, so that the patients can transfer their newly acquired skills more effectively to real-life settings. One approach to improving generalization is to situate the training exercises within the patient's work, living, or social environment.

One of the benefits of social skills training programs is flexibility. The treatment can take place either as individual or group therapy, and new trainers can learn the techniques of SST fairly quickly. An additional advantage of SST is that it focuses on teaching skills that can be learned rather than emphasizing the internal or biological determinants of social adequacy. Future research should explore the integration of social skills training with the needs of families from different cultural backgrounds; the relationship between social skills training and different categories of mental disorders; the transfer of skills from thera-

## KEY TERMS

**Cue**—Any behavior or event in a person's environment that serves to stimulate a particular response. For example, the smell of liquor may be a cue for some people to pour themselves a drink. In social skills training, the term is usually used to refer to social signals, whether spoken or unspoken.

**Feedback**—A reaction or response from others to a particular behavior or activity.

**Generalization**—A person's ongoing use of new behaviors that were previously modeled for him or her. Generalization is also called transfer of training or maintenance.

**Modeling**—A type of teaching method used in social skills training. Therapists who use this method may offer positive and negative examples of the behaviors that make up a social skill.

**Psychoeducation**—An approach to treatment that combines instruction with various therapeutic techniques.

**Reinforcement**—In social skills training, responding to a client's changed behavior in ways that will make the client want to perform the behavior again.

**Role-playing**—A technique used in social skills training and therapy in which participants act out roles relevant to real-life situations in order to change their attitudes and behaviors.

**Shaping**—A technique used in teaching social skills by prompting and reinforcing behaviors that come close to the desired behavior.

**Social perspective-taking**—A skill that involves a person's capacity to perceive or recognize other people's thoughts and feelings.

peutic contexts to daily life; and improving patients' long-term gains from SST.

*See also* Assertiveness training; Bibliotherapy; Cognitive problem-solving skills training; Conduct disorder; Modeling; Peer groups.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Bellack, Alan S., and Michel Hersen, eds. *Research and Practice in Social Skills Training*. New York: Springer, 2004.

Bellack, Alan S., and others. *Social Skills Training for Schizophrenia: A Step-by-Step Guide*, 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2004.

- Chang, Edward C., Thomas D'Zurilla, and Lawrence J. Sanna, eds. *Social Problem Solving: Theory, Research, and Training*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2004.
- Greene, John O., and Brant Raney Burleson, eds. *Handbook of Communication and Social Interaction Skills*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2003.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2007.

#### PERIODICALS

- Chronis, Andrea M., Heather A. Jones, and Veronica L. Raggi. "Evidence-Based Psychosocial Treatments for Children and Adolescents with Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder." *Clinical Psychology Review* 26.4 (Jun. 2006): 486–502.
- de Boo, Gerly M., and Pier J. M. Prins. "Social Incompetence in Children with ADHD: Possible Moderators and Mediators in Social-Skills Training." *Clinical Psychology Review* 27.1 (Jan. 2007): 78–97.
- Fenstermacher, Kevin;, Daniel Olympia, and Susan M. Sheridan. "Effectiveness of a Computer-Facilitated Interactive Social Skills Training Program for Boys with Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder." *School Psychology Quarterly* 21.2 (Summer 2006): 197–224.
- Gresham, Frank M., Mai Bao Van, and Clayton R. Cook. "Social Skills Training for Teaching Replacement Behaviors: Remediating Acquisition Deficits in At-Risk Students." *Behavioral Disorders* 31.4 (Aug. 2006): 363–77.
- Konstantareas, M. Mary. "Social Skills Training in High Functioning Autism and Asperger's Disorder." *Hellenic Journal of Psychology* 3.1 (Apr. 2006) 39–56.
- Kopelowicz, Alex, Robert Paul Liberman, and Roberto Zarate. "Recent Advances in Social Skills Training for Schizophrenia." *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 32, Supplement 1, (Oct. 2006): S12–23.
- Pfammatter, Mario; Junghan, Ulrich Martin, and Hans Dieter Brenner. "Efficacy of Psychological Therapy in Schizophrenia: Conclusions From Meta-Analyses." *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 32, Supplement 1, (Oct. 2006): S64–80.
- Sim, Leslie, and others. "Effectiveness of a Social Skills Training Program with School Age Children: Transition to the Clinical Setting." *Journal of Child and Family Studies* 15.4 (Aug. 2006): 409–18.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychological Association, 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. (202) 336-5500. <<http://www.apa.org>>.

Judy Koenigsberg, PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Social workers

### Definition

A social worker is a helping professional who is distinguished from other human service professionals by a focus on both the individual and his or her environment. Generally, social workers have at least a bachelor's degree from an accredited education program and in most states they must be licensed, certified, or registered. A Master's in Social Work is required for those who provide **psychotherapy** or work in specific settings such as hospitals or nursing homes.

### Description

Social workers comprise a profession that had its beginnings in 1889 when Jane Addams founded Hull House and the American settlement house movement in Chicago's West Side. The ethics and values that informed her work became the basis for the social work profession. They include respect for the dignity of human beings, especially those who are vulnerable, an understanding that people are influenced by their environment, and a desire to work for social change that rectifies gross or unjust differences.

The social work profession is broader than most disciplines with regard to the range and types of problems addressed, the settings in which the work takes place, the levels of practice, interventions used, and populations served. It has been observed that social work is defined in its own place in the larger social environment, continuously evolving to respond to and address a changing world. Although several definitions of social work have been provided throughout its history, common to all definitions is the focus on both the individual and the environment, distinguishing it from other helping professions.

Social workers may be engaged in a variety of occupations ranging from hospitals, schools, clinics, police departments, public agencies, court systems to private practices or businesses. They provide the majority of mental health care to persons of all ages in this country, and in rural areas they are often the sole providers of services. In general, they assist people to obtain tangible services; help communities or groups provide or improve social and health services; provide counseling and psychotherapy with individuals, families, and groups; and participate in policy change through legislative processes. The practice of social work requires knowledge of human development and behavior; of social, economic and

cultural institutions; and of the interaction of all these factors.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

Gibelman, Margaret. "The Search for Identity: Defining Social Work—Past, Present, Future." *Social Work* 44, no. 4. (1999).

### ORGANIZATIONS

National Association of Social Workers. 750 First St. NE, Washington, D.C. 20002-4241. <<http://www.naswdc.org>>.

### OTHER

National Association of Social Workers. *Choices: Careers in Social Work*. (2002). <<http://www.naswdc.org/pubs/choices/choices.htm>>.

National Association of Social Workers. *Professional Social Work Centennial: 1898–1998, Addams' Work Laid the Foundation*. 1998 (2002). <<http://www.naswdc.org/nasw/centennial/addams.htm>>.

Judy Leaver, M.A.

Sodium amobarbital see **Barbiturates**

Sodium pentobarbital see **Barbiturates**

## Description

Somatization disorder is characterized by a history of multiple unexplained medical problems or physical complaints beginning prior to age 30. In the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, somatization disorder was known as Briquet's syndrome or hysteria—a more generic term for such a condition. People with somatization disorder report symptoms affecting multiple organ systems or physical functions, including pain, gastrointestinal distress, sexual problems, and symptoms that mimic neurological disorders. Although medical explanations for their symptoms cannot be identified, individuals with somatization disorder experience genuine physical discomfort and distress. Review of their medical histories will usually reveal visits to a number of medical specialists, and many patients take numerous medications prescribed by different doctors, running the risk of dangerous drug interactions.

Undifferentiated somatoform disorder is similar to somatization disorder, but may involve fewer symptoms, have a shorter duration or begin after the age of 30. Common symptoms include chronic **fatigue**, loss of appetite, gastrointestinal distress or problems involving the genitals or urinary tract. This diagnosis is appropriate for patients with symptoms of somatization disorder who do not meet all diagnostic criteria.

Conversion disorder is marked by unexplained sensory or motor symptoms that resemble those of a neurological or medical illness or injury. Common symptoms include paralysis, loss of sensation, double vision, **seizures**, inability to speak or swallow and problems with coordination and balance. Symptoms often reflect a naive understanding of the nervous system, and physicians often detect conversion disorder when symptoms do not make sense anatomically. For instance, a patient may report loss of both touch and pain sensation on one side of the body, when, in fact, a genuine lesion would result in loss of touch and pain sense on opposite sides of the body. The name conversion disorder reflects a theoretical understanding of the disorder as a symbolic conversion of a psychological conflict into a concrete physical representation. Interestingly, patients with conversion disorder may not express the level of distress one would expect from someone with a disabling neurological condition. This phenomenon is traditionally called *la belle indifference*.

The primary feature of pain disorder is physical pain that causes significant distress or disability or leads an individual to seek medical attention. Pain may be medically unexplained, or it may be associated with an identifiable medical condition but far more severe than the condition would warrant. Common symptoms include headache, backache and generalized pain in muscles and joints. Pain disorder can be

## Somatization and somatoform disorders

### Definition

Somatization is a term that describes the expression of psychological or mental difficulties through physical symptoms. Somatization takes a number of forms, ranging from preoccupation with potential or genuine but mild physical problems to the development of actual physical pain, discomfort or dysfunction. The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*, the professional handbook clinicians use to diagnose mental disorders, describes seven disorders under the category of somatoform disorders. These disorders are **somatization disorder**, **undifferentiated somatoform disorder**, **conversion disorder**, **pain disorder**, **hypochondriasis**, **body dysmorphic disorder**, and somatoform disorder not otherwise specified. Somatization appears to be fairly common, and a somatoform disorder **diagnosis** is not warranted unless symptoms cause significant distress or disability.

severely disabling, causing immobility that prevents patients from working, fulfilling family responsibilities or engaging in social activities. Like patients with somatization disorder, people with pain disorder often have a history of consultations with numerous physicians.

Hypochondriasis is diagnosed when a person is excessively concerned by fears of having a physical disease or injury. Individuals with hypochondriasis usually do not complain of disabling or painful symptoms. Instead, they tend to overreact to minor physical symptoms or sensations, like rapid heartbeat, sweating, small sores or fatigue. Many people with hypochondriasis develop fears in response to the illness or death of a friend or family member or after reading about a condition or seeing a feature on television. Hypochondriacal fears can be confined to a single disease or involve a number of different physical concerns. Individuals with hypochondriasis seek frequent reassurance by consulting physicians or talking about their fears, yet these efforts provide only temporary relief from their fears. Although hypochondriasis is usually not as disabling as somatoform disorders involving the development of actual physical symptoms, it can put **stress** on relationships or reduce work productivity through time lost to frequent medical appointments and tests.

Body dysmorphic disorder is characterized by preoccupation with a defect in physical appearance. Often the defect of concern is not apparent to other observers, or if there is a genuine defect it is far less disfiguring than the patient imagines. Common preoccupations include concerns about the size or shape of the nose, skin blemishes, body or facial hair, hair loss, or “ugly” hands or feet. Individuals with body dysmorphic disorder may be extremely self-conscious, avoiding social situations because they fear others will notice their physical defects or even make fun of them. They may spend hours examining the imagined defect or avoid mirrors altogether. Time consuming efforts to hide the defect, such as application of cosmetics or adjustments of clothing or hair, are common. Many people with body dysmorphic disorder undergo procedures like plastic surgery or cosmetic dentistry, but are seldom satisfied with the results.

Somatoform disorder, not otherwise specified, is diagnosed when somatoform symptoms are present but criteria for another somatoform disorder are not met. *DSM-IV-TR* includes several examples of symptoms that could merit this diagnosis, including false pregnancy, and hypochondriacal fears or unexplained physical symptoms of recent onset or short duration.

## KEY TERMS

**Dysmorphic**—Malformed.

**Somatization**—The expression of mental or psychological experiences through physical symptoms.

**Somatoform**—Referring to physical symptoms with a psychological origin.

There is some disagreement among researchers about the *DSM-IV-TR* somatoform disorders category. Some have argued that hypochondriasis and body dysmorphic disorder are more similar to obsessive compulsive disorder than to other somatoform disorders, while others think hypochondriasis may be more appropriately classified with the **anxiety disorders**.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Phillips, Katherine A. *The Broken Mirror: Understanding and Treating Body Dysmorphic Disorder*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Pilowsky, Issy. *Abnormal Illness Behavior*. Chichester, UK: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.

#### PERIODICALS

- Neziroglu, Fugen, Dean McKay, and Jose A. Yaryura-Tobias. “Overlapping and distinctive features of hypochondriasis and obsessive-compulsive disorder.” *Journal of Anxiety Disorders* 14, no. 6 (2000): 603–614.

Danielle Barry, M.S.

## Somatization disorder

### Definition

Somatization disorder is a psychiatric condition marked by multiple medically unexplained physical, or somatic, symptoms. In order to qualify for the **diagnosis** of somatization disorder, somatic complaints must be serious enough to interfere significantly with a person’s ability to perform important activities, such as work, school or family and social responsibilities, or lead the person experiencing the symptoms to seek medical treatment.

Somatization disorder has long been recognized by psychiatrists and psychologists, and was originally called Briquet's syndrome in honor of Paul Briquet, a French physician who first described the disorder in the nineteenth century. It is included in the category of somatoform disorders in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*, the professional handbook that aids clinicians in diagnosing patients' mental disorders. The term "somatoform" means that the physical symptoms have a psychological origin.

## Description

Individuals with somatization disorder suffer from a number of vague physical symptoms, involving at least four different physical functions or parts of the body. The physical symptoms that characterize somatization disorder cannot be attributed to medical conditions or to the use of drugs, and individuals with somatization disorder often undergo numerous medical tests (with negative results) before the psychological cause of their distress is identified. They often use impressionistic and colorful language to describe their symptoms, describing burning sensations, pains that move from place to place, strange tastes on the tongue, tingling, or tremors. While many symptoms resemble those associated with genuine diseases, some of the symptoms reported by people with somatization disorder are not. The individual usually visit many different physicians, but the information they provide about the patient's symptoms can be inconsistent. It is important to note that while the physical symptoms of somatization disorder frequently lack medical explanations, they are not intentionally fabricated. The typical person with somatization disorder has suffered from physical pain, discomfort, and dysfunction for an extended period of time and consulted several doctors; they are hopeful that they one can be found who can identify the cause of their illness and provide relief.

Somatization disorder can be dangerous, since patients may end up taking several different medications, thereby risking harmful drug interactions.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

**DEFENSE AGAINST PSYCHOLOGICAL DISTRESS.** One of the oldest theories about the cause of somatization disorder suggests that it is a way of avoiding psychological distress. Rather than experiencing **depression** or **anxiety**, some individuals will develop physical symptoms. According to this model, somatization dis-

order is a defense against psychological pain that allows some people to avoid the **stigma** of a psychiatric diagnosis. While getting the care and nurturing they need from doctors and others who are responsive to their apparent medical illnesses, many patients are encouraged to continue their manipulative behavior.

Many patients described by Sigmund Freud would be diagnosed today with somatization disorder. His patients were usually young women who complained of numerous physical symptoms. In the process of speaking with Freud, they would often recall a number of distressing memories; discussing these memories frequently led to the relief of physical symptoms. These cases formed the foundation of Freud's psychoanalytic treatment. Although this theory offers a plausible explanation for somatization disorder, research indicates that people with multiple physical symptoms are actually more likely to report psychiatric symptoms than those with few physical problems. These findings appear to support a connection between psychological and physical distress, but are inconsistent with the idea that physical symptoms offer a defense against overt psychiatric symptoms.

**HEIGHTENED SENSITIVITY TO PHYSICAL SENSATIONS.** An alternative theory suggests that somatization disorder arises from a heightened sensitivity to internal sensations. People with somatization disorder may be keenly aware of the minor pains and discomforts that most people simply ignore. A similar theory has been offered to account for **panic disorder**. Studies have shown that people with panic disorder are particularly sensitive to internal sensations like breathing rate and heartbeats, which may lead them to react with intense fear to minor internal changes. The physiological or psychological origins of this hypersensitivity to internal sensations and their relevance to somatization disorder are still not well understood.

**CATASTROPHIC THINKING ABOUT PHYSICAL SENSATIONS.** According to these thoughts, somatization disorder results from negative beliefs and exaggerated fears about the significance of physical sensations. Individuals with somatization disorder are thus more likely to believe that vague physical symptoms are indicators of serious disease and to seek treatment for them. For instance, someone with somatization disorder may fear that a headache signals a **brain tumor**, or that shortness of breath indicates the onset of asthma. When their doctors can find no medical explanation for the symptoms, the patients may fear that they have a rare disease; they frantically look for specialists who can provide a diagnosis. Anxiety causes them to focus even more intensely on their symptoms, which in turn become more salient and

disabling. Many people with somatization disorder reduce or eliminate many activities out of fear that exertion will worsen their symptoms. With fewer activities to distract them from their symptoms, they spend more time worrying about physical problems, resulting in greater distress and disability.

### Symptoms

Gastrointestinal (GI) complaints, such as nausea, bloating, diarrhea, and sensitivities to certain foods are common, and at least two different GI symptoms are required for the diagnosis. Sexual or reproductive symptoms, including pain during intercourse, menstrual problems, and **erectile dysfunction** are also necessary features for a diagnosis for somatization disorder. Other frequent symptoms are headaches, pain in the back or joints, difficulty swallowing or speaking, and urinary retention. To qualify for the diagnosis, at least one symptom must resemble a neurological disorder, such as **seizures**, problems with coordination or balance, or paralysis.

### Demographics

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, somatization disorder is rare in males, in the United States, although higher rates are seen among males from some cultural and ethnic groups. The *DSM-IV-TR* estimates that between 0.2 and 2% of women, and less than 0.2% of men, suffer from somatization disorder in the U.S.. Sex ratios may arise from different rates of seeking treatment. However, studies of unexplained somatic symptoms in the general population find less striking differences in rates between men and women. Specific symptoms may vary across cultures. For example, the *DSM-IV-TR* notes that the sensation of worms in the head or ants crawling under the skin are sometimes reported in African and South Asian countries, but rarely seen in North American patients.

### Diagnosis

To receive a diagnosis of somatization disorder, the individual must have a history of multiple physical complaints that began before age 30 and that continued for several years (*DSM-IV-TR*). These symptoms must cause significant impairment to social, occupational or other areas of functioning—or lead the patient to seek medical treatment.

Each of the following four criteria must be met.

- The individual must report a history of pain affecting at least four different parts or functions of the body. Examples include headaches, back, joint, chest or

abdominal pain, or pain during menstruation or sexual intercourse.

- A history of at least two gastrointestinal symptoms, such as nausea, bloating, vomiting, diarrhea, or food intolerance must be reported.
- There must be a history of at least one sexual or reproductive symptom, such as lack of interest in sex, problems achieving erection or ejaculation, irregular menstrual periods, excessive menstrual bleeding, or vomiting throughout pregnancy.
- One symptom must mimic a neurological condition. Examples include weakness, paralysis, problems with balance or coordination, seizures, hallucinations, loss of sensations such as touch, seeing, hearing, tasting, smelling—or difficulty swallowing or speaking, or amnesia and loss of consciousness. Pseudo-neurologic symptoms like these are the primary characteristics of another somatoform disorder known as “conversion disorder.”

If a thorough medical evaluation reveals no evidence of an underlying medical- or drug- or medication-induced condition, the diagnosis of somatization disorder is likely. People with genuine medical conditions can qualify for the diagnosis if the level of functional impairment reported is more than would be expected based on medical findings. The symptoms must not be intentionally produced. If the patient is feigning symptoms, a diagnosis of **factitious disorder** or **malingering** would most likely be considered.

### Treatments

#### Cognitive behavior therapy

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** (CBT) for somatization disorder focuses on changing negative patterns of thoughts, feelings, and behavior that contribute to somatic symptoms. The cognitive component of the treatment focuses on helping patients identify dysfunctional thinking about physical sensations. With practice, patients learn to recognize catastrophic thinking and develop more rational explanations for their feelings. The behavioral component aims to increase activity. Patients with somatization disorder have usually reduced their activity levels as a result of discomfort or out of fear that activity will worsen symptoms. CBT patients are instructed to increase activity gradually while avoiding overexertion that could reinforce fears. Other important types of treatment include relaxation training, sleep hygiene, and **communication skills** training. Preliminary findings suggest that CBT may help reduce distress and discomfort associated with somatic symptoms; however,

## KEY TERMS

**Somatization**—Conversion of mental experiences into physical symptoms.

it has not yet been systematically compared with other forms of therapy.

### Medications

Antidepressant medications may help to alleviate symptoms of somatization disorder. According to one study, patients with somatization disorder who took the antidepressant **nefazodone** (Serzone) showed reductions in physical symptoms, increased activity levels, and lower levels of anxiety and depression at the end of treatment.

### Prognosis

Untreated somatization disorder is usually a chronic condition, though specific symptoms can come and go and overall severity may fluctuate over time. Somatization disorder poses a serious problem for society, since many who suffer from it become functionally disabled and unable to work. In addition, patients with unexplained physical symptoms strain already overburdened health care resources. Unexplained physical symptoms are extremely common among patients visiting general practitioners, with some estimates suggesting that over two-thirds of general medical patients have symptoms that cannot be explained by medical tests. Fortunately, there is preliminary evidence that **psychotherapy** and medication can effectively reduce symptoms and disability.

### Prevention

Greater awareness of somatization disorder, particularly among physicians, can help them identify individuals with somatization disorder, and help these patients get appropriate psychological or psychiatric treatment.

*See also* Body Dysmorphic Disorder; Hypochondriasis; Pain Disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
Breuer, Josef and Sigmund Freud. *Studies on Hysteria*. New York: Basic Books, 2000.

Butcher, James N. and Carolyn L. Williams. *Essentials of MMPI2 and MMPIA Interpretation*. 2nd edition. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Allen, Lesley A., Robert L. Woolfolk, Paul M. Lehrer, Michael A. Gara, Javier I. Escobar. "Cognitive behavior therapy for somatization disorder: A preliminary investigation." *Journal of Behaviour Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry* 32 (2001): 53-62.
- Cameron, Oliver G. "Interception: The inside story—A model for psychosomatic process." *Psychosomatic Medicine* 63 (2001): 697-710.
- Hotopf, Matthew, Michael Wadsworth, and Simon Wessely. "Is 'somatisation' a defense against the acknowledgement of psychiatric disorder?" *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* 50 (2001): 119-124.
- Menza, Matthew, Marc Lauritano, Lesley Allen, Melissa Warman, Frank Ostella, Robert M. Hmaer, and Javier Escobar. "Treatment of somatization disorder with nefazodone: A prospective, open-label study." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 13, no. 3 (Sep 2001): 153-158.
- Nimnuan, Chaichana, Matthew Hotopf, and Simon Wessely. "Medically unexplained symptoms: An epidemiological study in seven specialties." *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* 51 (2001): 361-367.
- Rief, Winifred, Aike Hessel, and Elmar Braehler. "Somatization symptoms and hypochondriacal features in the general population." *Psychosomatic Medicine* 63: 595-602.

Danielle Barry, M.S.

**Somnambulism** see **Sleepwalking disorder**

**Somnote** see **Chloral hydrate**

**Sonata** see **Zaleplon**

## Specific phobias

### Definition

Specific phobia is a type of disorder in which the affected individual displays a marked and enduring fear of specific situations or objects. Individuals with specific phobias experience extreme fear as soon as they encounter a defined situation or object, a phobic stimulus. For example, an individual with a specific phobia of dogs will become anxious when coerced to confront a dog. The specific phobia triggers a lot of distress or significantly impairs an affected individual.

Mental health professionals use the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders** (the *DSM*) to diagnose mental disorders. The 2000 edition of this manual (the Fourth Edition Text Revision, also

called the *DSM-IV-TR*) classifies specific phobia as a type of **anxiety** disorder. Formerly, specific phobia was known as simple phobia. In the last few years, mental health professionals have paid more attention to specific phobias.

## Description

Specific phobia has a unique position among the **anxiety disorders** in that individuals with this disorder do not experience pervasive anxiety nor do they seek treatment as readily as individuals with other anxiety disorders. Unlike individuals with other anxiety disorders, the fear of individuals with specific phobias is limited to defined situations or objects. Individuals with specific phobias experience impairment or a significant amount of anguish. They may lead restricted lifestyles depending upon the phobia type. Adults and adolescents with specific phobias recognize that their fear is unreasonable. Children, on the other hand, may not recognize that their fear of the phobic stimulus is unreasonable or extreme.

The types of specific phobias include situational, object, and other. The situational type is diagnosed if an individual's fear is cued by a defined situation. Examples include situations such as flying, enclosed places, tunnels, driving, bridges, elevators, or public transportation. Object types include animal, natural environment, and blood-injection-injury types. Animal type is diagnosed if an individual's fear is cued by animals or insects. Natural environment type is diagnosed if an individual's fear is cued by storms, water, or heights. Blood-injection-injury type is diagnosed if an individual's fear is cued by seeing an injury or blood or by an injection or other invasive medical treatment. Other type is diagnosed if an individual's fear is cued by other stimuli such as fears of vomiting, choking, becoming ill, and falling down if far from a means of physical support, and a child's fears of loud noises or characters in costumes.

Researchers have found that the frequency of type for adults in clinic settings, from least to most frequent, is: animal, blood-injection-injury, natural environment, and situational. The most common phobias for community samples, however, include phobias of heights, mice, spiders, and insects.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

The development of a specific phobia may be determined by a variety of factors. Behavioral, cognitive, and social theories of learning and conditioning, psychodynamic models such as the psychoanalytic

theory of Freud, physiological studies of the **brain**, family background and genetic predisposition, variations in sociocultural themes, and theories on trauma can influence the development of specific phobia disorder. Some theorists propose that biological researchers have ignored specific phobias because pharmacological treatment is not the treatment of choice for this disorder.

**LEARNING AND CONDITIONING CAUSES.** As of 2002, research on phobias focuses on information-processing, learning, and conditioning themes. Learning to experience fear is the core of a conditioning perspective. Informational and instructional factors can result in the formation of fears. For example, an individual who frequently hears of plane crashes in the news may develop a specific phobia of flying. Research shows that individuals with specific phobias pay more attention to information about danger than do individuals who do not have specific phobias. Vicarious acquisition occurs when an individual witnesses a traumatic event or sees another individual behave with fear when confronting a phobic stimulus. Direct conditioning occurs when an individual is frightened by a phobic stimulus.

A major determinant of specific phobias is conditioning. Association and avoidance are types of conditioning. In association conditioning, a stimulus that was initially neutral begins to trigger an anxiety response. For example, if an individual was driving one day and experienced a strong anxiety response, an association may form between driving and anxiety. Individuals do not learn to become phobic until they begin to avoid. In avoidance conditioning, individuals learn to avoid a stimulus that triggers anxiety. Every time individuals avoid the phobic stimulus—driving, for example—they are rewarded by the relief from anxiety.

**TRAUMATIC CAUSES.** A determinant of specific phobias includes traumas. For example, individuals who have been attacked by a dog may develop a specific phobia disorder and become conditioned to fear dogs. Individuals who observe others experiencing a trauma (the others are “modeling” behavior for the individual who will be affected) may become predisposed to developing specific phobia disorder. For example, individuals who witness people falling from a building may develop a specific phobia disorder. Phobias with a traumatic origin may develop acutely, or, in other words, have a more sudden onset than other phobias that develop more gradually.

**PSYCHODYNAMIC CAUSES.** Psychodynamic theorists explain that phobias emerge because individuals

have impulses that are unacceptable, and they repress these impulses. More specifically, Freud proposed that phobias emerge because of an unresolved oedipal conflict. According to Freud's theory, an oedipal conflict is a developmental conflict that emerges during the third (or oedipal) stage of Freud's psychosexual development stages. During this stage, a conflict emerges with regard to the triad of father, mother, and child. The conflict concerns the sexual impulses that the child has toward the parent of the opposite gender and the hostile impulses that the child has towards the parent of the same gender. During this stage, the developmental conflict concerns a resolution of oedipal issues. Psychoanalysts propose that when repression does not work, individuals with phobias displace their anxiety connected to the unresolved oedipal conflict upon a situation or object that is less relevant. The feared situation or object symbolizes the source of the conflict. For example, a specific phobia may be connected to an individual's conflict about aggressive or sexual thoughts and feelings. In one sense, a phobia protects individuals from realizing their emotional issues.

The case of Hans, a boy with a horse phobia, is Freud's paradigm example of a phobia. Freud attributed Hans' fear of horses to an oedipal conflict that was not resolved, and he explained that Hans repressed his sexual feelings for his mother and his wish that his father would die. Freud proposed that Hans feared that his father would discover his wish, repressed his wish to attack his father, and displaced his fear of his father's aggression onto horses. The young boy resolved the conflict of loving and hating his father by hating horses rather than admitting that he had aggressive feelings towards his father. Hans was better able to avoid the feared horses than his father. Thus, the phobia in the case of Hans represents a compromise of intrapsychic movement.

**PHYSIOLOGICAL CAUSES.** Some research has suggested that the high activation of brain pathways that correspond to the cognitive and emotional constituents of anxiety biologically predispose individuals to specific phobias.

**GENETIC AND FAMILY CAUSES.** Although specific phobia is frequently attributed to environmental issues such as **modeling**, learning by association, and negative **reinforcement**, genetic predisposition can influence this disorder. An individual who has a family member with a specific phobia is at an increased risk for developing this disorder. Some research indicates that the pattern of types are similar within families. For example, a first-degree biological relative of individuals with a situational type is likely to have phobias

of situations. Studies indicate that the blood and injury phobias have strong familial patterns.

**SOCIOCULTURAL CAUSES.** There is a paucity of information about cultural differences in specific phobias. Phobia content may vary by culture. Fear of a phobic stimulus such as magic or spirits, present in several cultures, is diagnosed as a specific phobia only if the fear is excessive for a particular culture and if the fear triggers major distress or interferes with functioning. Some research indicates that African Americans are more likely than whites to report specific phobias. Some studies show that specific phobias are less common among whites born in the United States or immigrant Mexican-Americans than among Mexican-Americans born in the U.S. Research suggests mixed data with regard to socioeconomic level, with some data associating specific phobia disorder with a lower socioeconomic level.

**PERSONAL VARIABLES.** Studies suggest a relationship between age and specific phobia. Research indicates some connections between the age of individuals with specific phobias and insight into the extreme quality of their fears. Insight increases with age. Children, unlike adults and adolescents, often do not report feelings of distress about having phobias. Insight into the unreasonable nature of the fear is not required for a **diagnosis** of specific phobia in children. The animal and natural environment types of specific phobia are common and generally transitory in children. Some studies indicate a connection between gender and specific phobia. Research shows that specific phobias from the animal type are more common among women. Some studies suggest that women are more likely to report specific phobias and to seek treatment than men.

### *Symptoms*

*DSM-IV-TR* delineates seven diagnostic criteria for specific phobia:

- Significant and enduring fear of phobic stimulus: Patients with specific phobia display marked and enduring fear when they encounter a defined situation or object, the phobic stimulus.
- Anxiety response to phobic stimulus: Patients with specific phobia display anxiety as soon as they confront the phobic stimulus. When they confront the phobic stimulus, a defined situation or object, patients with specific phobia may experience a panic attack related to the specific situation. Children may cry, cling, freeze, or display tantrums when they express their anxiety in the face of the phobic stimulus.

- Recognition: Although adolescents and adults realize that their fear is unreasonable and disproportionate to the situation, children may not recognize that their fear is excessive.
- Avoidance: Individuals with specific phobia avoid the phobic stimulus or endure it with deep distress and anxiety.
- Impairment and distress: Individuals with specific phobia display avoidance, distress, and anxious anticipation when they encounter the phobic stimulus. Their avoidance reactions interfere with their daily functioning, or they express significant distress about having a phobia.
- Duration: To diagnose specific phobia in a patient who is under 18 years of age, the duration of the disorder needs to be at least six months.
- Not accounted for by another disorder: A diagnosis of specific phobia is assigned if the phobic avoidance, panic attacks, or anxiety related to the defined situation or object are not better accounted for by other disorders.

## Demographics

### *General United States population*

Specific phobias are common. The prevalence rates of specific phobia in community samples range from 4 to 8%. Over the course of a lifetime, the prevalence estimates in community samples range from 7.2 to 11.3%.

### *High-risk populations*

Individuals whose family members have specific phobia are at a higher risk for developing this disorder.

### *Cross-cultural issues*

Prior to assigning a diagnosis of specific phobia, clinicians need to consider whether a patient's fear is extreme in the context of a particular culture and whether the phobia causes difficulties in daily functioning or triggers a lot of distress. Further research is needed on the effects of culture upon the symptoms of specific phobia.

### *Gender issues*

There are twice as many women with specific phobia than there are men with this disorder. The gender ratio variable varies depending upon the type of specific phobia. Approximately 75–90% of people with the animal, situational, and natural environment types are female. Approximately 55–70% of people with the blood-injection-injury subtype are female.

For height phobias, there are fewer women than men than for other specific phobia types; however, illness phobias are more common in men.

## Diagnosis

The diagnosis of specific phobia is complicated by factors such as degree of impairment and differential diagnosis. Although fears of specified situations or objects are common, a diagnosis of specific phobia relies on the degree of sufficient impairment.

With regard to differentiating specific phobia types, factors such as the focus of fear and the predictability and timing of the reaction to the phobic stimulus across the specific phobia types can assist clinicians to differentiate. With regard to differentiating specific phobia from other disorders, there are several disorders with similar symptoms. They include **panic disorder** with **agoraphobia**, **social phobia**, **post-traumatic stress disorder**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, **hypochondriasis**, eating, **schizophrenia**, delusional, and other psychotic disorders. Generally, a diagnosis of specific phobia rather than panic disorder is made when there are no spontaneous panic attacks and no fear of panic attacks. It is often difficult to differentiate specific phobia, situational type, from panic disorder with agoraphobia. Specific phobia, situational type, is commonly diagnosed when an individual displays situational avoidance without unexpected and recurrent panic attacks. On the other hand, panic disorder with agoraphobia is diagnosed if an individual experiences an initial onset of panic attacks that are not anticipated and subsequently experiences avoidance of several situations considered triggers of panic attacks. Although individuals with specific phobia, unlike individuals with panic disorder with agoraphobia, do not display enduring anxiety, anxious anticipation may occur when confrontation with a phobic stimulus is more likely to occur. *DSM-IV-TR* outlines differentiating factors as the type and number of panic attacks, the number of avoided contexts, and the focus of the fear. At times, both diagnoses, specific phobia and panic disorder with agoraphobia, need to be assigned.

### *Psychological measures*

Measures used to diagnose specific phobia include behavioral observation, clinical interviews, physiological evaluation, and self-report measures. The Behavioral Avoidance Task (BAT) is a common behavioral observation method used to assess specific phobia. Often, the diagnosis of specific phobia is made on the basis of an individual's responses to semistructured interviews such as the Anxiety Disorders Interview

Schedule for *DSM-IV* (ADIS-IV) and the Structured Clinical Interview for *DSM-IV* Axis I Disorders (SCID-IV). To assist in differential diagnosis between specific phobias and other disorders with similar characteristics, clinicians use the Anxiety Disorders Interview Schedule for *DSM-IV* (ADIS-IV). Physiological evaluations usually include heart rate monitors. Self-report questionnaires include measures such as the SUDS (subjective units of discomfort/distress scale), the most frequently used self-report measure, the Fear Survey Schedule (FSS-III), and the Mutilation Questionnaire, specifically for measuring fear of the blood type of specific phobia.

#### *Time of onset/symptom duration*

Generally, the initial symptoms of specific phobia occur when an individual is a child or a young adolescent. The type of phobia determines the age of onset. The blood, animal, and natural environment types begin when an individual is a child; however, many new cases of the natural environment type occur when an individual is a young adult. The onset for the height type begins in adolescence. The onset age for the situational type occurs in childhood, but peaks again in the mid-twenties. There is no specific onset age for phobias with a traumatic origin.

#### *Individual variations in specific phobia*

Classification systems distinguish between individuals with different types of specific phobias. The types of specific phobia, situation, object, and other, relate to particular features such as the age, gender, and culture of an individual. Some researchers propose that to distinguish individual differences in treatment planning, it is more helpful to simply name the specific phobia rather than to use the type classification system. For example, researchers have found that for the animal type, some animals such as a tiger or a bear did not trigger disgust for tiger-phobic or bear-phobic individuals, but other animals such as a spider triggered disgust for some spider phobic individuals, but did not trigger disgust for other spider phobic individuals.

#### *Dual diagnoses*

Specific phobia often occurs with other disorders of mood and anxiety, and with substance-related disorders. When specific phobias occur with other disorders in clinical contexts, the primary diagnosis is associated with greater distress than is the specific phobia. The blood-injury-injection type of specific phobia may occur with physical symptoms such as vasovagal fainting. The vasovagal fainting response

is characterized by a short heart rate acceleration and blood pressure elevation. Then, the heart rate decelerates and the blood pressure drops. Research shows that individuals who have one specific phobia type are more likely to have other phobias of the same type.

#### **Treatments**

Specific phobias are highly treatable. They are most effectively treated by psychological rather than biological treatments. The primary goal of most treatments of specific phobias is to reduce fear, phobic avoidance, impairment, and distress. Approximately 12–30% seek treatment for specific phobias.

#### *Cognitive-behavioral therapy*

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy** has been effective in treating specific phobias. There has not been much research on the effects of cognitive therapy alone on specific phobias. Cognitive therapists challenge fearful thoughts and replace them with more positive thoughts. Although some studies show benefits in that cognitive therapy may assist patients to decrease anxiety related to their exposure exercises, research indicates that cognitive therapy alone is probably not an effective treatment for specific phobia. Researchers suggest adding panic management strategies such as cognitive restructuring to assist with behavioral treatments.

Several studies indicate that real-life (*in vivo*) desensitization or exposure is the most effective and long-lasting treatment for a broad range of specific phobias. Desensitization includes a process by which individuals unlearn the association between the phobic stimulus and anxiety. Incremental exposure involves the patient's gradual facing of the phobic stimulus through a series of graded steps. Wolpe's imagery desensitization is suggested so that patients with specific phobias can face the fear in imagery prior to attempting *in vivo* exposure. Unlike many of the other treatments, the treatment gains of *in vivo* exposure are maintained upon follow-up. Some desensitization treatments employ flooding as a useful strategy. When flooding is used, patients maintain a high anxiety level without retreating. Similar to desensitization, flooding can be used both in imagination and *in vivo*. Flooding is not suggested for most individuals because it can trigger a higher level of sensitization and fear reinforcement. For *in vivo* treatment, a patient needs to be highly motivated because the treatment may lead to temporary discomfort. The primary reasons for poor **compliance** with cognitive-behavioral treatment include lack of time, anxiety, and low motivation.

### ***Psychodynamic therapy***

Psychodynamic therapy, or insight-oriented therapy assists patients to become more aware of the symbolic nature of their anxiety and to explore traumatic past events. Insight-oriented therapy is a psychodynamic therapy that aims to expose and reduce patients' unconscious conflicts, increase patients' understanding of their underlying thoughts, and assist patients to gain conscious control over their psychological conflicts. In psychodynamic therapy, for example, patients may discover that their anxiety may be connected to aggressive or sexual feelings and thoughts.

### ***Group therapy***

There is little research on **group therapy** for specific phobia disorder. Some studies suggest that group treatment has been effective for dental and spider phobias.

### ***Medications***

There has been a paucity of research on the relationship between medication and specific phobia. Generally, pharmacotherapy has not been considered to be a treatment of choice for individuals with specific phobias. **Benzodiazepines**, however, (medications that slow the central nervous system to ease nervousness and tension) may decrease anticipatory anxiety prior to an individual's entrance into a phobic situation. A low dose of a benzodiazepine such as **clonazepam** (Klonopin) or **alprazolam** (Xanax) is indicated to decrease some fear arousal prior to in vivo exposure. The reduction of symptoms, however, may interfere with the treatment. Prior to beginning in vivo exposure, an antidepressant such as **sertraline** (Zoloft) or **paroxetine** (Paxil) is suggested to increase motivation for undertaking an uncomfortable treatment. **Beta blockers** can assist individuals to confront the specific phobia.

### ***Alternative therapies***

Research shows some benefits for specific phobias with applied relaxation. Relaxation training includes abdominal breathing and muscle relaxation on a regular basis. Studies have indicated that applied muscle tension has been highly effective for individuals with blood type phobias who faint in that the treatment triggers an early response. When using applied tension, therapists request that patients tense their muscles several times. The repeated muscle tensing results in a temporary increase in blood pressure and prevents fainting when patients see blood. Similar to in

vivo exposure, the gains from applied tension are maintained upon follow-up. Some alternative therapies include immersive virtual reality, **hypnotherapy**, eye-movement desensitization and reprocessing (EMDR), and energy balance approaches such as massage and **acupuncture**.

### **Prognosis**

If specific phobias exist in adolescence, they have a greater chance of persisting in early adulthood. Specific phobias that continue into adulthood generally become chronic if they are not treated. Furthermore, there is a greater chance for an individual diagnosed with specific phobia to develop new phobias as a young adult. Phobias contracted during childhood or adolescence that continue when individuals become young adults remit approximately 20% of the time. Individuals with specific phobias do not often seek treatment. For those who seek treatment, research suggests that compared to individuals with specific phobias whose fear diminishes slowly during exposure, individuals with specific phobias whose fear diminishes more rapidly have a better prognosis for recovery.

A consideration of prognosis takes into account the distinction between fear onset and phobia onset. Studies indicate that individuals with specific phobias of animal, blood, heights, and driving had a fear onset nine years earlier than their phobia onset. Some studies have shown that generalized anxiety level, severity of symptoms, and prior experience with the phobic stimulus are factors that have been associated with treatment outcome.

Although most mental health professionals consider specific phobia that begins in childhood to be a benign disorder, it can last for years if left untreated. Some studies indicate, however, that specific phobia does not become worse and usually diminishes as an individual ages. Without treatment, the prognosis is poor for an individual who has several phobias.

### **Prevention**

Early detection is a key to assisting individuals with mild cases of specific phobia to seek treatment to prevent the development of full-blown cases of the disorder. Individuals who are at risk for developing specific phobia as well as individuals who already have been diagnosed with specific phobia need to avoid caffeine because caffeine can increase arousal. Further research is needed to discover variables that predict the reason that only certain individuals will develop

## KEY TERMS

**Axis I**—Axis I offers mental health professionals a diagnostic coding domain for listing disorders or conditions that are not classified as personality disorders and mental retardation.

**Oedipal conflict**—A developmental conflict that emerges during the third or oedipal stage of Freud's psychosexual development stages. During this stage, a conflict emerges with regard to the triad of father, mother, and child. The conflict concerns the sexual impulses that the child has toward the parent of the opposite gender and the hostile impulses that the child has towards the parent of the same gender. During this stage, the developmental conflict concerns a resolution of oedipal issues.

specific phobias after conditioning or acquiring information that leads to fear.

*See also* Anxiety-reduction techniques; Generalized anxiety disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Bourne, Edmund J., Ph.D. *The Anxiety and Phobia Workbook*. 3rd Edition. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2001.
- Antony, Martin, M., Ph.D., and Richard P. Swinson. *Phobic Disorders and Panic in Adults: A Guide to Assessment and Treatment*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2000.
- Bourne, Edmund J., Ph.D. *Beyond Anxiety and Phobia: A Step-by-Step Guide to Lifetime Recovery*. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2001.
- Donahue, Brad, and James Johnston. "Specific Phobia." In *Diagnosis, Conceptualization, and Treatment Planning for Adults: A Step-by-Step Guide*, edited by Michel Hersen and Linda K. Porzelius. Mahwah, New Jersey: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Publishers, 2002.
- Antony, Martin, M., Ph.D., and David H. Barlow, Ph.D. "Social Phobia, Specific Phobia." In *Psychiatry*. Volume 2. Edited by Allan Tasman, M.D., Jerald Kay, M.D., and Jeffrey A. Lieberman, M.D. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company, 1997.
- Elkin, David, M.D., and Cameron S. Carter, M.D. "Anxiety Disorders." In *Introduction to Clinical Psychiatry*, edited by G. David Elkin, M.D. 1st edition. Stamford, Connecticut: Appleton and Lange, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

Mager, Ralph, Alex H. Bullinger, Franz Mueller-Spahn, Marcus F. Kuntze, and Robert Stoermer. "Real-Time Monitoring of Brain Activity in Patients with Specific Phobia during Exposure Therapy, Employing a Stereoscopic Virtual Environment." *CyberPsychology and Behavior* 4, no. 4 (2001): 465–469.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NE, Washington, D.C. 20002-4242. (202) 336-5500. <<http://www.apa.org>>.

Anxiety Disorders Association of America (ADAA). 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD. 20852-2624. (301) 231-9350. <<http://www.adaa.org>>.

Phobics Anonymous. P.O. Box 1180, Palm Springs, CA. 92213. (760) 322-COPE.

Judy Koenigsberg, Ph.D.

SPECT see **Single photon emission computed tomography**

## Speech-language pathology

### Definition

Treatment for the improvement or cure of **communication disorders**, including speech, language, and swallowing disorders. The term used to describe professionals in this discipline is speech and language pathologist (SLP).

### Description

The discipline of speech-language pathology includes professionals that are trained in the techniques, strategies, and interventions designed to improve or correct communication disorders. Communication disorders include disorders of speech, language, and swallowing.

In 2000, there were nearly 88,000 speech-language pathologists in the United States certified by the American Speech-Language-Hearing Association (ASHA), and an additional 13,000 audiologists, who often work with speech pathologists to diagnose disorders. Speech disorders treated by speech-language pathologists include voice disorders (abnormalities in pitch, volume, vocal quality, or resonance or duration of sounds), articulation disorders (problems producing speech sounds), and fluency disorders (impairment in speech fluency, such as **stuttering**). Language disorders include developmental or acquired conditions



**A speech therapist and student review a book.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

that lead to difficulties in understanding or producing language. Speech-language pathologists participate in the screening, assessment, and treatment of patients who experience one or a combination of these disorders.

Persons with isolated speech sound disorders are often helped by articulation therapy, in which they practice repeating specific sounds, words, phrases, and sentences. For individuals experiencing voice disorders, a combination of medical and behavioral treatments are often helpful. For stuttering and other fluency disorders, treatment approaches usually help individuals develop techniques to both reduce the severity of stuttering and allow the individual to produce more fluent speech. For all of these therapies, individuals are taught to cope more effectively with their speech in progressively difficult situations, starting with speaking alone to the pathologist and ending with speaking to a group of people. In treating children with developmental language disorders, treatment often focusses on **modeling** and stimulation of correct productions of language. This type of approach may also be useful for adults with language disorders, secondary to a **stroke** or degenerative neurological disorder. For people with severe communication disorders, those due to either a speech or language problem, speech pathologists can assist with alternate means of communication, such as manual signing and computer-synthesized speech. Finally, speech-language pathologists have become increasingly involved with the assessment and treatment of individuals with swallowing disorders, or dysphagia.

The majority of speech-language pathologists work in public schools. They are also found at both

residential health care facilities and outpatient clinics that specialize in communication disorders. Finally, speech-language pathologists are often employed at hospitals and universities. Professional training programs in speech-language pathology are offered at both the undergraduate and graduate levels. Undergraduate training may include classes in biology, anatomy, psychology, linguistics, education, and special education. Graduate training, at both the masters and doctoral level, provides much deeper opportunities to study communication disorders and their treatment. To receive the Certificate of Clinical Competence(CCC) in speech-language pathology individuals must hold a master's degree in communications sciences and disorders from a program accredited by the ASHA and complete their Clinical Fellowship Year (CFY).

## Resources

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Private Practice in Speech-Language Pathology and Audiology. 7349 Topanga Canyon Boulevard, Canoga Park, CA 91303.  
 American Speech-Language-Hearing Association. 10801 Rockville Pike, Rockville, MD 20785.  
 National Black Association for Speech, Language and Hearing. 3542 Gentry Ridge Court, Silver Spring, MD 20904.

Rodney Gabel, Ph.D.

Speech therapy see **Speech-language pathology**

Split personality disorder see **Dissociative identity disorder**

## St. John's wort

### Definition

St. John's wort is a perennial, yellow-flowering plant that grows in the wild throughout Europe and is now found also in North America. The plant tends to be in blossom in the month of June, around the day considered to be the birthday of John the Baptist; hence its popular name. The plant's Latin name is *Hypericum perforatum*.

St. John's wort has been used as a popular herbal folk remedy for centuries. More recently, practitioners of conventional Western medicine have been exploring its utility for treating **depression** and **anxiety**.

## Purpose

Writings since the Middle Ages have described using St. John's wort as treatment for inflammation, injuries, burns, muscle pain, anxiety, high blood pressure, stomach problems, fluid retention, **insomnia**, hemorrhoids, cancer, and depression. Research conducted over the last decade of the twentieth century in Europe studied the efficacy of St. John's wort for the treatment of depression and anxiety. Research protocols have been developed in the United States to study the same issues, to determine appropriate dosages, to develop standard formulations, and to define whether it can be used for all forms of depression or only for more mild forms of the condition.

## Description

Research has yet to completely explain how St. John's wort affects the **brain** in depression. It is, however, thought to change the balance of chemicals in the brain in much the same way as **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** such as **fluoxetine**, and monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). The active ingredients are thought to be compounds called hypericin and pseudohypericin, although researchers are attempting to identify other chemicals that may be involved in the herb's effectiveness.

The leaves and flowers of St. John's wort are both used. St. John's wort is available as pills, capsules, extracts, dried herbs for tea, and oil infusions for skin applications.

## Recommended dosage

Because dosages of herbal preparations are not always standardized, it is important to discuss with a knowledgeable practitioner the most reliable form of St. John's wort. Recommendations call for 300–500 mg (of a standardized 0.3% hypericin extract) three times daily. It can take four to six weeks to notice the antidepressant effects of this preparation.

Alternatively, one to two teaspoons of dried St. John's wort can be put into a cup of boiling water and steeped for 10 minutes to make tea. The recommended dosage of tea is one to two cups daily. Again, four to six weeks may be necessary in order to notice improvement in symptoms of depression.

## Precautions

The following precautions should be considered and discussed with a knowledgeable practitioner before St. John's wort is taken:

- Some people may become more sensitive to the sun.

## KEY TERMS

**Immunosuppressant**—Medications that suppress or lower the body's immune system, primarily used to help the body accept a transplanted organ.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitors**—A group of anti-depressant drugs that decrease the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**Reserpine**—Medication to treat high blood pressure. Brand names include Serpalan, Novoreserpine, and Reserfia.

**Theophylline**—A medication used to treat asthma. Sold under many brand names, including Aerolate Sr, Respbid, and Theolair.

**Warfarin**—A medication that helps to prevent the formation of clots in the blood vessels. Sold as Coumadin in the U.S.

- Patients taking MAOIs must carefully avoid taking St. John's wort due to serious adverse effects of combining the two.
- Because the effects of St. John's wort are still being studied, pregnant and breast-feeding women should avoid its use.
- Depression can be a serious, even life-threatening, condition; therefore, it is imperative that depressed patients using St. John's wort are carefully monitored.

## Side effects

People taking St. John's wort may develop one or all of the following side effects:

- skin rash due to sun sensitivity—the most common side effect
- headache, dizziness, dry mouth, constipation
- abdominal pain, confusion, sleep problems, and high blood pressure are less frequently experienced

## Interactions

Again, a knowledgeable professional should be consulted before St. John's wort is taken to determine the appropriateness of its use and avoid serious interactions. Interactions include:

- Possible decrease in effectiveness of reserpine, warfarin, theophylline, immunosuppressant medications such as cyclosporine, and antiviral drugs such as indinavir.
- Dangerous interactions when used with other anti-depressant medicines (especially MAOIs), digoxin, and loperamide.

- Interactions with oral birth control pills. St. John's wort may interfere with the effectiveness of birth control pills, increasing the risk of pregnancy; an alternative form of birth control should be considered while taking St. John's wort. In addition, women taking both birth control pills and St. John's wort may notice bleeding between menstrual periods.

*See also* Depression and depressive disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Blumenthal, Mark and others, eds. *The Complete German Commission E Monographs: Therapeutic Guide to Herbal Medicines*. Austin: American Botanical Council, 1998.

### PERIODICALS

Zink, Therese and Jody Chaffin. "Herbal 'Health' Products: What Family Physicians Need to Know." *American Family Physician*. October 1, 1998.

Rosalyn Carson-DeWitt, M.D.

**intelligence tests** available. It was originally designed to measure general intelligence, but through various incarnations came to include factors beyond general intelligence that were assessed by "area scores." This inclusion of area scores, however, has drawn criticism from some researchers. The fifth edition of this test has been significantly reformatted and now measures five factors believed to encompass intelligence. These factors are reasoning, knowledge, quantitative reasoning, visual-spatial processing, and working memory (short-term memory). The addition of an assessment across nonverbal domains is new, and experts believe that it will be helpful to clinicians or trained educators in situations involving communication difficulties. Five of the test's 10 subscales address verbal cognition and the other five address nonverbal skills. Each subscale has its own "testlet," a brief (around five minutes) test for a given level of difficulty. As has been the standard, the test is scaled to a standard average score of 100.

Administration and interpretation of results of the Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale requires a competent examiner who is trained in psychology and individual intellectual assessment, preferably a **psychologist**.

## Description

The Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale has a long history. It is a descendant of the Binet-Simon scale, which was developed in 1905 and became the first intelligence test. The Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale was developed in 1916 and was revised in 1937, 1960, 1986, and 2003.

Administration of the Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale typically takes between 45 to 90 minutes, but can take as long as two and a half hours. The older the child and the more subtests administered, the longer the test generally takes to complete. The composite score is considered to be what the authors call the best estimate of "g" or "general reasoning ability" and is the sum of all of subtest scores. General reasoning ability is considered to represent a person's ability to solve novel problems. The composite score is a global estimate of a person's intellectual functioning. The previous version of the test contained four measures of g; the fifth edition uses the five listed above, with visual-spatial processing as the added factor.

## Results

The Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale is a standardized test, which means that a large sample of children and adults were administered the exam as a means of developing test norms. In the case of the fifth edition, this sample consisted of more than

## Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale

### Definition

The *Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale: Fifth Edition* (SB: FE) is a standardized test that measures intelligence in children and adults, from age two through mature adulthood.

### Purpose

The Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale was originally developed to help place children in appropriate educational settings. It can help determine the level of intellectual and cognitive functioning in people ages 2 to 85-plus years and assist in the **diagnosis** of a learning disability, developmental delay, **mental retardation**, or giftedness. It is used to provide educational planning and placement, neuropsychological assessment, and research. The Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale is generally administered in a school or clinical setting. For professionals working with younger children (i.e., under age 7), the *Early Stanford-Binet Fifth Edition* (Early SB5) is also available.

### Description

The Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale is generally considered to be one of the best and most widely used

4,800 people, a population group representative of the population of the United States based on age, gender, race or ethnic group, geographic region, community size, parental education, and educational placement (normal versus special classes). From this sample, norms were established. Norms are set from the performance of a comparison group of subjects so that the performance of the tested individual can be compared to this group and thus evaluated.

The numbers of correct responses on the given subtests are converted to a Standard Age Score (SAS), which is based on the chronological age of the person taking the test. This score is similar to an IQ score. Based on these norms, the area scores and test composite on the Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale each have a mean or average score of 100 and a standard deviation of 15. For this test, as with most measures of intelligence, a score of 100 is in the normal or average range. The standard deviation indicates how far above or below the norm a child's score is. For example, a score of 85 is one standard deviation below the norm score of 100. Based on the number of correct responses on a given subtest, an age equivalent is available to help interpret the person's level of functioning.

Test scores provide an estimate of the level at which a child is functioning based on a combination of many different subtests or measures of skills. A trained psychologist is needed to evaluate and interpret the results, determine strengths and weaknesses, and make overall recommendations based on the findings and observed behavioral observations.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Sattler, Jerome. *Assessment of Children*, 3rd ed. San Diego, CA: Jerome Sattler, 1992.

### PERIODICALS

Caruso, J. "Reliable Component Analysis of the Stanford-Binet: Fourth Edition for 2–6-Year Olds." *Psychological Assessment* 13.2 (2001): 827–40.

DiStefano, Christine, and Stefan C. Dombrowski. "Investigating the Theoretical Structure of the Stanford-Binet—Fifth Edition." *Journal of Psychoeducational Assessment* 24, (2006): 123–36.

Grunau, R., M. Whitfield, and J. Petrie. "Predicting IQ of Biologically 'At Risk' Children from Age 3 to School Entry." *Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics* 21.6 (2000): 401–407.

### ORGANIZATIONS

The American Psychological Association. 750 First St., NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. (202) 336-5500 <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.

The National Association of School Psychologists. 4340 East West Highway, Suite 402, Bethesda, MD 20814. (301) 657-0270. <[www.nasponline.com](http://www.nasponline.com)>.

### WEB SITES

From the publisher of the test: "FAQ about the Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scales, Fifth Edition." <<http://www.assess.nelson.com/pdf/sb5-faq.pdf>>.

Jenifer P. Marom, PhD  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## STAR\*D study

### Study objectives

The Sequenced Treatment Alternatives to Relieve Depression (STAR\*D) Study was the largest national trial ever designed to determine which treatments work best in people with **major depressive disorder** (MDD) who have not responded to an antidepressant. MDD is characterized by feelings of persistent sadness, worthlessness, guilt, and lack of interest in daily activities severe enough to interfere with daily activities.

The goal of the study was to help doctors better understand how to treat depression. Previously, the medical literature had provided doctors with little guidance on which treatments to use on their patients who do not respond to initial treatments. The STAR\*D study was designed to help doctors learn which treatment plans (including medication dose and duration) are most effective for improving symptoms in patients with chronic depression and have the fewest side effects. The study also may enable doctors to determine how long they should attempt one therapy before moving on to another type of treatment. And, STAR\*D provided information about the risk of **relapse**, which is defined as the return of depressive symptoms.

### Description

The STAR\*D study was a six-year, \$65 million-effort funded by the National Institute of Mental Health. It involved more than 4,000 participants, ages 18 to 75 years, with chronic or recurrent major depression. The patients were being or were about to be treated for depressive symptoms at primary care or psychiatric facilities. Major depression is of significant concern to doctors, because it can lead to significant functional impairment and mortality.

To reflect real-life treatment situations, STAR\*D was conducted at private practices and public clinics, rather than in universities or other research facilities. Also, participants were able to choose their own range of treatments. Researchers selected drugs that were the safest, easiest to take, and most commonly used, so the results could immediately be applied to clinical practice.

## Researchers

The study was led by Dr. John Rush of the University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center. The following 13 other research centers also participated in the trial:

- Clinical Research Institute—Kansas
- Laureate Psychiatric Hospital & Clinic
- Massachusetts General Hospital
- New York State Psychiatric Institute
- Northwestern University
- Oklahoma Tuscaloosa VA Medical Center
- University of California at Los Angeles
- University of California at San Diego
- University of Michigan
- University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
- University of Pittsburgh
- Vanderbilt University
- Virginia Commonwealth University

## Participants

More than 4,000 participants were initially involved in the study. The average age was 41 years. About 64% of participants were female, and 36% were male. About 76% were Caucasian, 18% were African American, 13% were Hispanic, and 6% were of other races.

Participants were either being treated for depression or were entering into treatment at 41 primary care and psychiatric clinics throughout the United States. All of those involved in the study had moderate to severe depression. Seventy-five percent had had two or more depressive episodes in their lifetime. The other 25% were currently experiencing an episode of depression that had lasted for at least two years.

The STAR\*D study had broader participation than most studies of its kind. However, people with **schizophrenia**, **schizoaffective disorder**, **bipolar disorder**, an eating disorder, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, or a **substance abuse** problem were not eligible for the study. Also, those who were already participat-

ing in **cognitive-behavioral therapy** or who were taking psychotropic medications could not participate.

Out of the 4,041 initial participants who entered Level 1 of STAR\*D, 1,438 progressed to Level 2, 376 entered Level 3, and 108 moved on to Level 4 (see level descriptions below). Participants left the program because they entered remission, or they desired to leave the program because of side effects, or they opted to leave for personal reasons.

## Assessments

At the first visit, participants met with a trained Clinical Research Coordinator (CRC), who had no knowledge of the treatment they were receiving. The CRC asked the participants about the following:

- history of depression symptoms
- family history of MDD, bipolar disorder, or alcohol and substance abuse
- duration of current depressive episode
- treatment history for the current depressive episode
- past and current substance abuse
- history of suicide attempts
- current mental illnesses

The CRC also rated the participants' symptom severity using established psychological scales. Patients completed self-questionnaires to determine their psychiatric disorders and depression score. Participants were later given phone interviews by a computer-based voice response system to ascertain their functioning and quality of life.

At doctor visits, the participants were evaluated for medication effectiveness and side effects. The STAR\*D researchers also evaluated the patients to determine whether a change in dosage was necessary.

## Treatments

The treatments used in STAR\*D were the same as those typically used by doctors to treat clinical depression. Participants received only active medications; no placebos were used.

The following medications were used in the STAR\*D study:

- bupropion SR (Wellbutrin SR)
- buspirone (BuSpar;)
- citalopram (Celexa)
- lithium (Eskalith, Lithobid)
- mirtazapine (Remeron)
- nortriptyline (Pamelor, Aventyl)
- sertraline (Zoloft)

- tranylcypromine (Parnate)
- triiodothyronine (T3, Cytomel)
- venlafaxine XR (Effexor XR)

The study included four treatment levels, each of which could continue for up to 14 weeks. Participants progressed to the next level when their symptoms did not respond to the current treatment.

The four levels were as follows:

- Level 1: All participants received the antidepressant citalopram (brand name, Celexa). Citalopram is a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI). It works by interfering with the ability of nerve cells in the brain to take up the neurotransmitter, serotonin. This neurotransmitter has been associated with symptoms of depression.
- Level 2: Participants who did not become symptom-free, or who experienced side effects on citalopram, had a choice of seven different treatment options. Four options involved taking either a new medication or engaging in cognitive behavioral therapy. The other three options added a new medication or cognitive behavioral therapy to the citalopram participants were already taking. All treatments were randomly chosen from those that the participant had deemed acceptable.
- Level 3: Participants who did not become symptom-free at the previous level were allowed to try one of four other treatment options. They could switch to therapy with either nortriptyline or mirtazapine, or continue taking their current antidepressant along with either lithium or triiodothyronine.
- Level 4: Participants who did not become symptom-free at the previous level were randomly assigned to take either tranylcypromine or a combination of venlafaxine and mirtazapine.

Once participants went into full remission, in which they no longer experienced symptoms of depression, they began a 12-month follow-up process.

## Outcomes

The results of the STAR\*D study were published in medical and scientific journals in 2006. Outcomes included measures of depressive symptoms, social function, and patient satisfaction.

Researchers found that remission rates were about 37% for participants in Level 1, 31% in Level 2, and 13% in Levels 3 and 4. However, some patients dropped out of the study early.

Overall, the findings suggested that more than half of patients who stay in treatment for one or two

## KEY TERMS

**Cognitive behavioral therapy**—A type of treatment for depression that helps patients identify the negative thoughts that led to their behaviors, so that they can change those behaviors.

**Major depressive disorder (MDD)**—A psychiatric condition characterized by feelings of persistent sadness, worthlessness, guilt, and lack of interest severe enough to interfere with daily activities.

**Placebo**—An inactive pill or liquid that is made to resemble an active medication. Placebo is often used in research studies to compare the effects of real medications.

**Psychotropic medications**—Drugs, such as antidepressants and antipsychotics, that are used to treat depression and other psychiatric conditions.

**Relapse**—The return of symptoms after treatment.

**Remission**—The absence of symptoms of a medical or psychiatric condition, often after treatment.

**Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI)**—A drug used to treat depression that interferes with the ability of nerve cells in the brain to take up the neurotransmitter, serotonin. This neurotransmitter has been linked to feelings of depression.

steps will achieve remission. But those patients who do not respond after two different treatment courses have a much lower chance of remission, and a higher risk of relapse.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Appleton, William S. *The New Antidepressants and Antianxieties*. New York, NY: Plume, 2004.

Beers, Mark H. *The Merck Manual of Medical Information*. 2nd Home Edition. New York, NY: Pocket, 2004.

McCullough, James P. Jr. *Treating Chronic Depression with Disciplined Personal Involvement: Cognitive Behavioral Analysis System of Psychotherapy (CBASP)*, first edition. New York, NY: Springer, 2006.

Pettit, Jeremy W., and Thomas E. Joiner. *Chronic Depression: Interpersonal Sources, Therapeutic Solutions*, Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2005.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychological Association, 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002-4242. (800) 374-2721. <<http://www.apa.org>>

National Alliance on Mental Illness, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. (800) 950-6264. <<http://www.nami.org>>

National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. (866) 615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>

Stephanie N. Watson

Stelazine see **Trifluoperazine**

## STEP-BD study

### Study objectives

The Systematic Treatment Enhancement Program for **Bipolar Disorder** (STEP-BD) is one of the largest studies to have evaluated treatments for bipolar disorder. This chronic condition, which is characterized by repeated swings in mood between mania (a state of elation and high energy) and **depression**, can significantly affect quality of life if not properly treated.

STEP-BD investigated the most effective treatment methods for bipolar episodes (mania and depression), including medication, psychological therapies, and other modalities. The researchers evaluated treatments on the basis of cost-effectiveness, improvements in patients' social functioning and quality of life, and preventing recurrence. As part of the study, the investigators also looked at the characteristics of patients with bipolar disorder.

### Description

The STEP-BD study was a \$28-million, seven-year effort funded by the National Institutes of Mental Health (NIMH). It was conducted from September 1998 to September 2005, at 20 clinical treatment centers throughout the United States. Researchers followed 4,360 participants with bipolar disorder to determine which treatments were most effective for mania and depressive episodes, and for preventing recurrence.

The study offered two treatment arms, called pathways—a real-world, non-controlled Best Practice Pathway, and a randomized and controlled Randomized Care Pathway. Participants had the opportunity to join in both pathways. Researchers were able to compare the two pathways to see how the evaluated treatments worked both in clinical and real-world settings. In the "Best Practice Pathway," participants

were followed by a STEP-BD certified doctor and all treatment choices were individualized. Everyone enrolled in STEP-BD was able to participate in this pathway. Participants and their doctors worked together to decide on the best treatment plans and to change these plans if needed. Also, anyone who wished to stay on his or her current treatment upon entering STEP-BD was permitted do so in this pathway. Adolescents and adults age 15 years and older were eligible to participate in the Best Practice Pathway.

Patients ages 18 years and older had the option of entering the "Randomized Care Pathway" portion of the trial. Patients in this pathway remained on their mood-stabilizing medication, but some were also started on another medication or **talk therapy**. The patients were randomly assigned to treatments, and the study was double-blinded, meaning that neither the doctors nor their patients were aware of which treatment was given (double-blinding is done to prevent bias among both researchers and patients). Approximately 1,500 patients were involved in at least one Randomized Care Pathway. Patients remained with the same physician throughout the course of the study.

### Researchers

All researchers involved in STEP-BD were specially trained for the project in the treatment of bipolar disorder. The study was coordinated by Massachusetts General Hospital and the University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine.

The following research centers served as clinical sites for the study:

- Baylor College of Medicine
- Case Western Reserve University
- Cornell University
- Howard University
- Massachusetts General Hospital
- New York Presbyterian Hospital
- New York University
- Rush-Presbyterian-St. Luke's Medical Center
- Stanford University
- State University of New York, Buffalo
- University of Arizona
- University of California, San Diego
- University of Colorado
- University of Louisville
- University of Massachusetts
- University of Missouri
- University of Oklahoma

- University of Pennsylvania
- University of Pittsburgh
- University of Texas, San Antonio

## Participants

STEP-BD enrolled 4,360 patients with bipolar disorder in the United States. To enter the study, participants had to be at least 15 years of age and meet the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition (DSM-IV)* criteria for bipolar I disorder, bipolar II disorder, cyclothymia, bipolar disorder not otherwise specified (BD-NOS), or **schizoaffective disorder**, bipolar subtype. The goal of STEP-BD was to evaluate all the best-practice treatment options used for bipolar disorder: mood-stabilizing medications, **antidepressants**, atypical antipsychotics, and psycho-social interventions—or “talk” therapies—including cognitive behavioral therapy, family-focused therapy, interpersonal and social rhythm therapy, and collaborative care (psychoeducation).

Some of the patients had already been treated for bipolar disorder before entering the study, whereas others had not received prior treatment. Many of the patients had other mental illnesses, such as **anxiety** or **substance abuse** problems. Doctors evaluated the participants upon entry (baseline) and monitored their progress throughout the study. Patients were considered to be recovering if they had no more than two moderate symptoms for at least one week. They were considered recovered if they had no more than two moderate symptoms for at least eight weeks.

## Treatments

The following treatments were used in the STEP-BD study:

### Drugs

- Lithium: A mood-stabilizing medication
- Valproate: An anti-convulsant medication that has mood-stabilizing effects
- Lamotrigine: A newer anti-convulsant medication
- Risperidone: A newer, atypical antipsychotic medication
- Bupropion: An antidepressant
- Paroxetine: A type of antidepressant called a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI)
- Tranylcypromine: A type of antidepressant known as a monoamine oxidase inhibitor
- Inositol: A natural substance that acts as a chemical messenger

### Behavioral therapies

- Cognitive behavioral therapy
- Family-focused therapy
- Interpersonal and social rhythms therapy

## Outcomes

In addition to evaluating treatment outcomes, the STEP-BD study looked at the coexistence of other mental disorders, types of medications commonly prescribed for bipolar disorder, and recurrence rates, among other areas of study.

The following were some of the research findings to come out of the STEP-BD study:

- Coexistence of other mental disorders: Among a subgroup of the first 500 patients in the STEP-BD study, more than 50% had a lifetime history of anxiety disorder, 38% had a history of alcohol abuse or dependence, and 26% had a history of substance of abuse or dependence.
- Most common existing treatments for bipolar disorder: Researchers looked at the first 500 patients entering the study and found that the majority (72%) were taking mood-stabilizer medications, such as lithium or carbamazepine, when they began STEP-BD. The next most common class of medications taken was antidepressants (40%), followed by anticonvulsants (32%) and antipsychotic agents (31%).
- Treatment-resistant bipolar depression: Researchers tested three different medications, lamotrigine, inositol, and risperidone, on a subgroup of 66 participants with bipolar depression who had not previously responded to treatment. The recovery rate was 24% with lamotrigine, 17% with inositol, and 4.6% with risperidone. The researchers said their results suggested that lamotrigine may be superior to inositol and risperidone for improving symptoms of treatment-resistant bipolar depression.
- The effectiveness of psychotherapy on bipolar disorder: Researchers looked at a subgroup of the first 1,000 people enrolled in the STEP-BD study. About 60% of these patients had at least one psychotherapy session during the first year of the study. Among participants with more severe depressive symptoms at the outset of the study, more frequent psychotherapy sessions were associated with less severe mood symptoms and better functioning. The researchers said these results suggest that patients with more severe bipolar disorder might benefit from more frequent psychotherapy sessions.
- Bipolar disorder recurrence: In a prospective study of 1,469 STEP-BD participants, more than half of the patients (58%) achieved recovery. However, almost half of those who recovered experienced a

## KEY TERMS

**Atypical antipsychotics**—A class of newer generation antipsychotic medications that are used to treat schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and other mental disorders.

**Bipolar I disorder**—A subtype of bipolar disorder characterized by a manic or mixed episode that lasts for at least one week.

**Bipolar II disorder**—A subtype of bipolar disorder characterized by alternating depressive and hypomanic (persistently elevated or irritable mood) episodes.

**Bipolar disorder not otherwise specified**—Cases of bipolar disorder that don't meet the full criteria for the other two bipolar disorder subtypes but that involve an elevated or irritable mood, plus two or three bipolar symptoms (difficulty concentrating, sleep changes, and so on) that are severe enough to interfere with functioning.

**Cognitive behavioral therapy**—A treatment that helps patients control the negative thoughts that are leading to their depressive symptoms.

**Cyclothymia**—A milder form of bipolar disorder that persists for a long period of time.

**Monoamine oxidase inhibitor**—A type of antidepressant that works by inhibiting the enzyme monoamine oxidase, which breaks down mood-regulating neurotransmitters such as serotonin and dopamine.

**Schizoaffective disorder**—A mental disorder in which depressive episodes occur, along with symptoms of schizophrenia, such as hallucinations.

**Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**—A class of antidepressant medications that help improve mood by increasing the amount of the neurotransmitter serotonin in the brain.

recurrence during the two-year follow-up period. Researchers said these findings indicate that bipolar disorder has a strong likelihood of recurrence.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Basco, Monica Ramirez, and A. John Rush. *Cognitive Behavioral Therapy for Bipolar Disorder*. 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press, 2005.
- Evans, Dwight L., Dennis S. Charney, and Lydia Lewis. *The Physician's Guide to Depression & Bipolar Disorders*. New York: The McGraw-Hill Companies, 2005.

Suppes, Trisha, MD, PhD, and Ellen B. Dennehy, PhD.

*Bipolar Disorder: The Latest Assessment and Treatment Strategies*. Kansas City: Compact Clinicals, 2005.

Suppes, Trisha, MD, PhD, and Paul E. Keck Jr., MD.

*Bipolar Disorder: Treatment and Management*. Kansas City: Compact Clinicals, 2005.

### PERIODICALS

Simon, Naomi, et al. "Anxiety Disorder Comorbidity in Bipolar Disorder Patients: Data From the First 500 Participants in the Systematic Treatment Enhancement Program for Bipolar Disorder (STEP-BD)." *American Journal of Psychiatry* Dec. 2004: 2222–29.

Ghaemi, S. Nassir, and others. "Pharmacological Treatment Patterns at Study Entry for the First 500 STEP-BD Participants." *Psychiatric Services* May 2006: 660–65.

Miklowitz, David J., and others. "Psychotherapy, Symptom Outcomes, and Role Functioning Over One Year Among Patients With Bipolar Disorder." *Psychiatric Services* July 2006: 959–65.

Nierenberg, Andrew, and others. "Treatment-Resistant Bipolar Depression: A STEP-BD Equipoise Randomized Effectiveness Trial of Antidepressant Augmentation With Lamotrigine, Inositol, or Risperidone." *The American Journal of Psychiatry* Feb. 2006: 210–16.

Perlis, Roy, et al. "Predictors of Recurrence in Bipolar Disorder: Primary Outcomes From the Systematic Treatment Enhancement Program for Bipolar Disorder (STEP-BD)." *The American Journal of Psychiatry* Feb. 2006: 217–24.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Depression and Bipolar Support Alliance, 730 N. Franklin Street, Suite 501, Chicago, IL 60610-7224. Telephone: (800) 826-3632. Web site: <<http://www.dbsalliance.org>>.

National Alliance on Mental Illness, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201-3042. Telephone: (800) 950-6264. Web site: <<http://www.nami.org>>.

National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (866) 615-6464. Web site: <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Stephanie N. Watson

## Stereotypic movement disorder

### Definition

Stereotypic movement disorder is a disorder characterized by repeated, rhythmic, purposeless movements or activities such as head banging, nail biting, or body rocking. These movements either cause self-injury or severely interfere with normal activities.

Until 1994, the American Psychiatric Association referred to stereotypic movement disorder as stereotypy/habit disorder.

## Description

Stereotypic movements were first described as a psychiatric symptom in the early 1900s. Since then, they have been recognized as a symptom of both psychotic and neurological disorders. They may also arise from unexplained causes. These movements may include:

- head banging
- nail biting
- playing with hair (but not hair pulling, which is considered the separate disorder of trichotillomania)
- thumb sucking
- hand flapping
- nose picking
- whirling
- body rocking
- picking at the body
- self-biting
- object biting
- self-hitting
- compulsive scratching
- eye gouging
- teeth grinding (bruxism)
- breath holding
- stereotyped sound production

The precise definition of stereotypic movement disorder has changed over the past 20 years. Today, it limits the disorder to repetitive movements that cause physical harm or severely interfere with normal activities. These movements cannot be better described by another psychiatric condition such as **anxiety** disorder, a general medical condition such as Huntington's disease, or as the side effect of a medication or illicit drug (for example, **cocaine** use).

Stereotypic movements occur in people of any age, including the very young, but they are most prevalent in adolescence. People may exhibit only one particular stereotyped movement or several. The movements may be slow and gentle, fast and frenetic, or varied in intensity. They seem to increase with boredom, tension, or frustration, and it appears that the movements are self-stimulatory and sometimes pleasurable. The root causes are unknown.

Stereotypic movements are common in infants and toddlers. Some estimates suggest that 15–20 per-

cent of children under age three exhibit some kind of rhythmic, repetitive movements. Certainly thumb sucking and body rocking are common self-comforting mechanisms in the very young. This type of repeated movement is temporary, and usually ends by age three or four. It is not the same as stereotypic movement disorder.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Stereotypic movements can be caused by:

- sensory deprivation (blindness or deafness)
- drug use (cocaine, amphetamines)
- brain disease (seizures, infection)
- major psychiatric disorders (anxiety disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, autism)
- mental retardation

It has also been suggested that inadequate care-giving may cause the disorder. Although many situations can give rise to stereotypic movements, the root cause of stereotypic movement disorder is unknown. Different theories propose that the causes are behavioral, neurological, and/or genetic. Although there are many theories to account for this disorder, no hard evidence clearly supports one line of reasoning or specific cause.

### Symptoms

Symptoms of stereotypic movement disorder include all the activities listed above. It should be noted that many of these activities are normal in infants. They usually begin between five and 11 months, and disappear on their own by age three. In fact, about 55 percent of infants grind their teeth. These passing phases of repetitive movement in infants are not the same as stereotypic movement disorder. They do not cause harm, and often serve the purpose of self-comforting or helping the child learn a new motor skill.

People with stereotypic movement disorder often hurt themselves. They may pick their nail cuticles or skin until they bleed. They may repeatedly gouge their eyes, bite or hit themselves causing bleeding, bruising, and sometimes, as in the case of eye gouging or head banging, even more severe damage. Some people develop behaviors such as keeping their hands in their pockets, to prevent these movements. In other cases those who hurt themselves appear to welcome, rather than fight, physical restraints that keep them safe. However when these restraints are removed, they return to their harmful behaviors.

## Demographics

Stereotypic movement disorder is most strongly associated with severe or profound mental retardation, especially among people who are institutionalized and perhaps deprived of adequate sensory stimulation. It is estimated that 2–3 percent of people with mental retardation living in the community have stereotypic movement disorder. About 25 percent of all people with mental retardation who are institutionalized have the disorder. Among those with severe or profound retardation, the rate is about 60 percent, with 15 percent showing behavior that causes self-injury.

Stereotypic movements are common among children with **pervasive developmental disorders** such as autism, childhood degenerative disorder, and **Asperger's disorder**. These movements can also be seen in people with Tourette's disorder or with tics. Head banging is estimated to affect about five percent of children, with boys outnumbering girls three to one, although other stereotypic behaviors appear to be distributed equally between males and females. Despite its association with psychiatric disorders, there are some people with normal intelligence and adequate caregiving who still develop stereotypic movement disorder.

## Diagnosis

Stereotypic movements are diagnosed by the presence of the activities mentioned above. Young children rarely try to hide these movements, although older children may, and the first sign of them may be the physical harm they cause (bleeding skin, chewed nails). Often parents mention these repetitive movements when the physician takes a history of the child.

The difficulty in diagnosing stereotypic movement disorder comes from distinguishing it from other disorders where rhythmic, repetitive movements occur. To be diagnosed with stereotypic movement disorder, the following conditions must be met:

- The patient must show repeated, purposeless motor behavior.
- The patient must experience physical harm from this behavior or it must seriously interfere with activities.
- If the patient is mentally retarded, the behavior must be serious enough to need treatment.
- The behavior must not be a symptom of another psychiatric disorder.
- The behavior must not be a side effect of medicinal or illicit substance use.
- The behavior must not be caused by a diagnosed medical condition.

- The behavior must last at least four weeks. The disorder may be classified as either with self-injurious behavior or without self-harm.

This definition of stereotypic movement disorder rules out many people who show repetitive movement because of autism or other pervasive developmental disorders. It also rules out those with obsessive-compulsive disorder, where movements are apt to be ritualistic and follow rigid rules or patterns. In addition, specific disorders such as trichotillomania (hair pulling) do not fall under the **diagnosis** of stereotypic movement disorder, nor do developmentally appropriate self-stimulatory behavior among young children, such as thumb sucking, rocking or transient pediatric head banging.

## Treatments

There are few successful treatments for stereotypic movement disorder. When the patient harms himself, physical restraints may be required. In less severe situations, behavioral modifications using both rewards and punishments may help decrease the intensity of the behavior. Drugs that have been used with some success to treat stereotypic movement disorder include **clomipramine** (Anafranil), **desipramine** (Norpramin), **haloperidol** (Haldol) and **chlorpromazine** (Thorazine).

## Prognosis

Stereotypic movements peak in adolescence, then decline, and sometimes disappear. Although **behavior modification** may reduce the intensity of the stereotypic movements, rarely does it completely eliminate them. **Stress** and physical pain may bring on these movements, (which may come and go for years), especially among those patients with severe mental retardation.

## Prevention

Stereotypic movement disorder cannot be prevented. Interventions should be done to prevent self-injury.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed. text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hales, Robert E., Stuart C. Yudofsky, and John A. Talbot. *The American Psychiatric Press Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press, 2000.

Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Vol. 2. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Steroids

### Definition

Steroids are drugs chemically related to hormones in the body, including cortisol, estrogen, and testosterone. Steroids, characterized by a “steroid nucleus,” are fat-soluble organic compounds derived from plants and animals. Hormones are chemical messengers produced by the endocrine glands. The glands secrete hormones directly into the bloodstream where they are transported to a distant part or parts of the body where they play specific roles to benefit the body as a whole. Steroid hormones, distinct entities, are crucial for the proper functioning of the body. They mediate various vital physiologic functions ranging from anti-inflammatory agents to regulating events during pregnancy. They are synthesized and secreted into the bloodstream by endocrine glands such as the adrenal cortex and the gonads (ovary and testis). Cholesterol is the precursor for steroid hormones, as well as bile acids and provitamin D. Steroid hormones can be divided into five classes: androgens, estrogens, progestins, mineralocorticoids, and glucocorticoids. Many steroids are approved for medical use, anti-inflammatory drugs, contraceptives, and growth inducers. Steroids are also taken to build muscle and enhance athletic performance, which is misuse or **abuse** in that its purpose is not medical in nature.

Misuse of steroids occurs with the so-called anabolic and androgenic steroids—those compounds that are human-made versions of the male sex hormone testosterone. They promote muscle growth (anabolic effect) and development of male sexual characteristics in both men and women (androgenic effect). Steroid abuse can lead to serious health problems, including early heart attacks, abnormal lipid profiles, strokes, kidney failure, serious psychiatric disturbances and **depression**, and severe liver problems including liver tumors, cancer, and jaundice. Additionally, they are often injected, and individuals who share needles are at risk for HIV/AIDS and hepatitis B and C.

### Description and doses

Anabolic steroids are prescription drugs used clinically for low testosterone levels or to prevent muscle wasting in AIDS patients or patients who are bed-



**Anabolic steroids in pill form.** (David Hoffman Photo Library/Alamy)

ridden. Any other source of anabolic steroids is illegal, whether synthesized, smuggled, or stolen. Steroidal supplements such as androstenedione (“Andro”) used to be commercially available but were made illegal in 2004 in an amendment to the Controlled Substances Act. The only remaining legal steroid supplement is dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), which may or may not be converted to testosterone in the body.

Anabolic steroids are taken orally as tablets or capsules, by injection into muscles, or by ointment preparations rubbed into the skin. Doses taken by abusers are often 50 to 100 times more than the doses used for treating medical conditions.

The methods of misuse go beyond high dosing. Frequently, steroids abusers take two or more anabolic steroids together, or take them by more than one route of administration, or mix them with other drugs such as stimulants or painkillers. This practice is known as “stacking.” Other practices are cycling, where periods of steroid use are alternated with periods of abstinence, or “pyramiding,” in which cycles of dose escalation over several weeks are followed by a phase of decreasing the steroid dose. Both these dosing schedules are believed by the user to maximize the desirable effects of steroids, while reducing the untoward effects, although there is no scientific evidence that these goals can be achieved.

Common oral steroids include:

- oxymetholone (Anadrol)
- oxandrolone (Oxandrin)
- methandrostenolone (Dianabol)
- stanozolol (Winstrol)

Common injectable steroids include:

- nandrolone decanoate (Deca-Durabolin)
- nandrolone phenpropionate (Durabolin)
- testosterone cypionate (Depo-Testosterone)
- boldenone undecylenate (Equipose)
- tetrahydrogestrinone (THG)

## Demographics

Most anabolic steroid users are adult males, but misuse is increasing in women and adolescents in conjunction with athletics. Six to 11% of high school boys have admitted using steroids, with 2.5% of boys reporting use within the last year. For high school girls, 2.5% have used steroids. Part of a 2002 National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA)-funded study, teens were asked if they ever tried steroids—even once. Only 2.5% of eighth graders ever tried steroids; only 3.5% of tenth graders; and 4% of twelfth graders.

## Health consequences

With high doses of anabolic steroids, muscles increase rapidly in size and strength and this effect is enhanced in conjunction with strength training. There is some evidence of increased energy and libido, as well. This is in contrast to the slow and even unnoticeable growth effects at medically prescribed doses.

Similarly, side effects are few with medical use of anabolic steroids. However, misuse of steroids for body image or athletic performance usually entails much higher doses.

As anabolic steroids are related to male reproductive hormones, misuse interferes with normal hormonal function. Men can experience reduced sperm count and shrinkage of the testicles. They also may show baldness and development of breast tissue; these changes may persist even if steroids are discontinued. Changes in women can be described as masculinization: The size of their breasts decreases and their clitoris enlarges; they may grow more body and facial hair, yet show male-pattern baldness; they stop menstruating and their voice deepens. With continued use of steroids, some of these effects may be irreversible. In adolescents, anabolic hormones mimic the onset of puberty. This may both cause a growth spurt, but it also sends signals to the bones to stop growing. If the skeleton matures too soon, growth may be halted and shorter than normal stature results.

Anabolic steroids can also have behavioral effects beginning with mood swings ranging from mania to depression. Users may also experience aggression ('roid rage), **paranoia**, irritability, and **delusions**. Fur-

## KEY TERMS

**Addiction**—A chronic condition characterized by compulsive drug-seeking and drug-using behavior.

**Anabolic**—Causing muscle and bone growth and a shift from fat to muscle in the body.

**Androgenic**—Causing testosterone-like effects in the body, specifically on the male reproductive organs and the secondary sexual characteristics of men.

**Cortisol**—Hormone involved in stress response.

**Estrogen**—The primary female sex hormone.

**Hormone**—A chemical signal produced in glands and carried by the blood to influence the functioning of bodily organs.

**Sex hormones**—Those hormones that are responsible for sex effects and reproductive function.

**Steroids**—A chemical class of drugs and hormones that include sex hormones, stress hormones, and medicines for inflammation, contraception, and promoting growth.

**Testosterone**—The primary male sex hormone.

ther, users may become psychologically or physically dependent on anabolic steroids to the point of **addiction**.

## Prevention

Three major reasons have been identified as contributors to steroid use: to improve athletic performance, to change one's body to be more muscular and less fat or flabby, and to engage in high-risk behavior. Educating those who might be tempted to use anabolic steroids is the first step, and it has been recommended that such education be started in middle school to help adolescents obtain a balanced picture of the benefits and risks of taking steroids.

Many programs target school- or community-sponsored athletic teams, where coaches and team leaders are trained to educate young athletes about anabolic steroids in the context of training.

Drug testing may also be effective for discouraging steroid use and are used for amateur and professional athletes. However, the technology for detecting steroids in blood or urine has often been one step behind the drug designers making compounds that go undetected.

## Diagnosis and treatment

Anabolic steroid use can be determined through urine screening. Metabolites of known drugs can be detected for as long as six months after last use.

Treatment of steroid abuse is in its infancy and few methods have been tested for effectiveness. Treatment approaches may include a counseling component to address the reasons for steroid use. A withdrawal syndrome has been characterized and thus some physicians use medications to alleviate the discomfort associated with withdrawal. Hormones may be used to restore normal hormonal functioning in the body and **antidepressants** may be used to alleviate depression that can occur when steroids are terminated.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- “Anabolic Steroids.” *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy, Professional Edition*. 18th ed. Ed. Mark H. Beers. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck & Co., 2005.
- “Testosterone, Testosterone Cypionate, Testosterone Enanthate, Testosterone Propionate.” *AHFS Drug Information*. Ed. Gerald K. McEvoy, PharmD. Bethesda, MD: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2006.

### GOVERNMENT REPORTS

- “Anabolic Steroid Abuse.” The National Institute on Drug Abuse Research Report Series. NIH Publication Number 06-3721, 2006.

Jill U. Adams

## Stigma

### Definitions

The 1999 report on mental health by the Surgeon General of the United States was regarded as a landmark document in the United Kingdom, as well as the United States. This was because of its straightforward identification of the stigma associated with mental illness as the chief obstacle to effective treatment of persons with mental disorders. *Stigma* (plural, *stigmata*) is a Greek word that in its origins referred to a kind of tattoo mark that was cut or burned into the skin of criminals, slaves, or traitors in order to visibly identify them as blemished or morally polluted persons. These individuals were to be avoided or shunned, particularly in public places. The word was later applied to other personal attributes that are considered shameful or discrediting.

Social psychologists have distinguished three large classes, or categories, of stigma:

- Physical deformities. These include extremes of height and weight and such conditions as albinism and facial disfigurements or missing limbs. In the developed countries, this category also includes such signs of aging as gray hair, wrinkles, and stooped posture.
- Weaknesses or defects of individual character. This category includes biographical data that are held to indicate personal moral defect, such as a criminal record, addiction, divorce, treatment for mental illness, unemployment, suicide attempts, etc.
- Tribal stigma. This type of stigma refers to a person’s membership in a race, ethnic group, religion, or (for women) gender that is thought to disqualify all members of the group.

## The nature of stigma

### Origins

One explanation for the origin of stigmata is that its roots in the human being’s concern for group survival at earlier times in their evolutionary journey. According to this theory,igmatizing people who were perceived as unable to contribute to the group’s survival, or who were seen as threats to its well-being, were stigmatized in order to justify being forced out or being isolated.

The group survival theory is also thought to explain why certain human attributes seem to be universally regarded as stigmata, while others are specific to certain cultures or periods of history. Mental illness appears to be a characteristic that has nearly always led to the stigmatization and exclusion of its victims. The primary influences on Western culture, the classical philosophical tradition of Greece and Rome, and the religious traditions of Judaism and Christianity indicate that mental illness was a feared affliction that carried a heavy stigma. The classical philosopher’s definition of a human being as a “rational animal” excluded he/she who had lost the use of reason was no longer regarded as fully human; most likely he or she was under a divine curse. This attitude was summarized in the well-known saying of Lucretius, “Whom the gods wish to destroy, they first make mad.”

In the Bible, both the Old and the New Testaments reflect the same fear of mental illness. In 1 Samuel 21, there is an account of David’s pretending to be insane in order to get away from the king of a neighboring territory. “He changed his behavior before [the king’s servants]; he pretended to be mad

in their presence. He scratched marks on the doors of the gate, and let his spittle run down his beard.” The king, who was taken in by an act that certainly fits the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* criteria for **malingering**, quickly sent David on his way. In the New Testament, one of Jesus’ most famous miracles of healing (Mark 5:1-20) is the restoration of sanity to a man so stigmatized by his village that he was hunkered down in the graveyard (itself a stigmatized place) outside the village when Jesus met him. Mark’s account also notes that the villagers had tried at different times to chain or handcuff the man because they were so afraid of him. One important positive contribution of Biblical heritage, however, is a sense of religious obligation toward the mentally ill. Among Christians, the New Testament’s account of Jesus’ openness to all kinds of stigmatized people—tax collectors, prostitutes, and physically deformed people, as well as the mentally ill—became the basis for the establishment of the first shelters and hospitals for the mentally ill.

### *Contemporary contexts*

The core feature of stigma in the modern world is defined by social psychologists as the possession of an attribute “that conveys a devalued social identity within a particular context.” Context is important in assessing the nature and severity of **stress** that a person suffers with regard to stigma. Certain attributes, such as race or sex, affect an individual’s interactions with other people in so many different situations that they have been termed “master status” attributes. These have become the classic identifying characteristic of the person who possesses them. Dorothy Sayers’ essay, “Are Women Human?” is not only a witty satire on the way men used to describe a woman’s job or occupation (with constant reference to feminine qualities), but a keen social analysis of the problems created by master status attributes for persons who are stigmatized.

Other forms of devalued social identity are relative to specific cultures or subcultures. In one social context, a person who is stigmatized for an attribute devalued by a particular group may find acceptance in another group that values the particular attribute. A common example is that of an artistically or athletically talented child who grows up in a family that values only intellectual accomplishment. When the youngster is old enough to leave the family of origin, he or she can find a school or program for other students who share the same interest. A less marked contrast, but one that is relevant to the treatment of mental illness, is the cultural differences with regard to

the degree of response to certain symptoms of mental illness. A study conducted in the early 2000s assessed the reaction of family members to elderly people who were diagnosed with Alzheimer’s disease (AD). Findings pointed to considerable variation across racial and ethnic groups. Asian Americans were most affected by feelings of shame and social stigma relative to the memory loss of a family member, while African Americans were the least affected.

One additional complicating feature of stigma is the issue of overlapping stigmata. Many people belong to several stigmatized groups or categories, and it is not always easy to determine which category triggers the unkind or discriminatory treatment encountered. For example, one study of the inadequate medical treatment that is offered to most HIV-positive Native Americans noted that the stigma of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome (AIDS) provides a strong motivation for not seeking treatment. The study protocol, however, did not seek to investigate whether young Native American men are afraid of being stigmatized for their sexual orientation, their race, their low socio-economic status, or all three.

### **Stigma and mental illness**

#### *Stigma and specific disorders*

The stigma that is still attached to mental illness in the developed countries does not represent a simple or straightforward problem. Public health experts who have studied the stigmatization of mental illness in recent years have noted that the general public’s perception of mental illness varies, depending on the nature of the disorder. While in general the stigma of mental illness in contemporary society is primarily associated with the second of the three categories of stigma listed above,—supposed character failings—it also spills over into the first category. Mental disorders that affect a person’s physical appearance—particularly weight gain—are more heavily stigmatized than those that do not.

The stigma related to certain types of mental disorders has declined since the 1950s, most notably in regard to **depression** and the **anxiety disorders**. It is thought that the reason for this change is that people are more likely nowadays to attribute these disorders to stress, with which most people can identify. On the other hand, the stigma associated with psychotic disorders appears to be worse than it was in the 1950s. Changes in public attitude are also reflected in age-group patterns in seeking or dropping out of treatment

for mental disorders. One study demonstrated that older adults being treated for depression were more likely than younger adults to drop out of treatment because they felt stigmatized. The difference in behavior is related to public attitudes toward mental illness that were widespread when the older adults were adolescents.

In 2002, the types of mental disorders that carry the heaviest stigma fall into the following categories:

- Disorders associated in the popular mind with violence and/or illegal activity. These include schizophrenia, mental problems associated with HIV infection, and substance abuse disorders.
- Disorders in which the patient's behavior in public may embarrass family members. These include dementia in the elderly, borderline personality disorder in adults, and the autistic spectrum disorders in children.
- Disorders treated with medications that cause weight gain or other visible side effects.

#### *The role of the media*

The role of the media in perpetuating the stigmatization of mental illness has received increasing attention from public health researchers, particularly in Great Britain. In 1998, the Royal College of Psychiatrists launched a five-year campaign intended to educate the general public about the nature and treatment of mental illness. Surveys conducted among present and former mental patients found that they considered media coverage of their disorders to be strongly biased toward the sensational and the negative. One-third of patients said that they felt more depressed or anxious as a result of news stories about the mentally ill, and 22% felt more withdrawn. The main complaint from mental health professionals, as well as patients, is that the media presented mentally ill people as "dangerous time bombs waiting to explode" when in fact 95% of murders in the United Kingdom are committed by people with no mental illness. The proportion of homicides committed by the mentally ill has decreased by 3% per year since 1957, but this statistic goes unreported. Much the same story of unfair stigmatization in the media could be told in the United States, as the Surgeon General's report indicates.

#### *Physicians' attitudes toward mental illness*

Physicians' attitudes toward the mentally ill are also increasingly recognized as part of the problem of stigmatization. The patronizing attitude of moral superiority toward the mentally ill in the early 1960s, specifically in mental hospitals, has not disappeared.

This was reported by Erving Goffman in his classic study. A Canadian insurance executive told a conference of physicians in May 2000 that they should look in the mirror for a picture of the ongoing stigmatization of the mentally ill. The executive was quoted as saying, "Stigma among physicians deters the detection of mental disorders, defers or pre-empts correct **diagnosis** and proper treatment and, by definition, prolongs suffering." An American physician who specializes in the treatment of substance addicts cites three reasons for the persistence of stigmatizing attitudes among his colleagues: their tendency to see substance **abuse** as a social issue, rather than a health issue; their lack of training in detecting substance abuse; and their mistaken belief that no effective treatments exist. A similar lack of information about effective treatments characterizes many psychiatrists' attitudes toward borderline personality disorder.

#### *Stigma as cause of mental illness*

It is significant that researchers in the field of social psychology have moved in recent years to analyzing stigma in terms of stress. Newer studies in this field now refer to membership in a stigmatized group as a stressor that increases a person's risk of developing a mental illness. The physiological and psychological effects of stress caused by racist behavior, for example, have been documented in African Americans. Similar studies of obese people have found that the stigmatization of **obesity** is the single most important factor in the psychological problems of these patients. To give still another example, the high rates of depression among postmenopausal women have been attributed to the fact that aging is a much heavier stigma for women than for men in contemporary society.

Stigma has a secondary effect on rates of mental illness in that members of stigmatized groups have less access to educational opportunities, well-paying jobs, and adequate health care. They are therefore exposed to more environmental stressors in addition to the stigma itself.

#### *Stigma as effect*

Stigma resulting from mental illness has been shown to increase the likelihood of a patient's **relapse**. Since a mental disorder is not as immediately apparent as race, sex, or physical handicaps, many people with mental disorders undergo considerable strain trying to conceal their condition from strangers or casual acquaintances. More seriously, the stigma causes problems in the job market, leading to stress that is related to lying to a potential employer and fears of being found out. Erving Goffman reported in the

1960s that a common way around the dilemma involved taking a job for about six months after discharge from a mental institution, then quitting that job and applying for another with a recommendation from the first employer that did not mention the history of mental illness.

The stigmatization of the patient with mental illness extends to family members, partly because they are often seen as the source of the patient's disorder. A recent editorial in the *Journal of the American Medical Association* tells the story of two sets of parents coping with the stress caused by other people's reactions to their children's mental illness, and the different responses they received when the children's disorders were thought to be a physical problem. The writer also tells of the problems encountered by the parents of an autistic child. The writer stated that family excursions were difficult, and continued, "My friend's wife was reprimanded by strangers for not being able to control her son. The boy was stared at and ridiculed. The inventive parent, fed up with the situation, bought a wheelchair to take the child out. The family was now asked about their child's disability. They were praised for their tolerance of his physical hardship and for their courage; the son was commended for his bravery. Same parents, same child, different view."

### The results of stigma

The stigmatization of mental disorders has a number of consequences for the larger society. Patients' refusal to seek treatment, noncompliance with treatment, and inability to find work has a high price tag. Disability related to mental illness accounts for fully 15% of the economic burden caused by *all* diseases in developed countries.

### Seeking treatment

Stigmatization of mental illness is an important factor in preventing persons with mental disorders from asking for help. This factor affects even mental health services on university campuses; interviews with Harvard students following a 1995 murder in which a depressed student killed a classmate, found that students hesitated to consult mental health professionals because many of their concerns were treated as disciplinary infractions, rather than illnesses. The tendency to stigmatize mental disorders as character faults is as prevalent among educators as among medical professionals. In addition, studies of large corporations indicate that employees frequently hesitate to seek treatment for depression and other stress-related disorders for fear of receiving negative evaluations of job performance and possible termination. These fears

are especially acute during economic downturns and periods of corporate downsizing.

### Compliance with treatment

Another connection between mental disorders and stigma is the low rates of treatment **compliance** among patients. To a large extent, patient compliance is a direct reflection of the quality of the doctor-patient relationship. One British study found that patients with mental disorders were likely to prefer the form of treatment recommended by psychiatrists with whom they had good relationships, even if the treatment itself was painful or difficult. Some patients preferred **electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT) to tranquilizers for depression because they had built up trusting relationships with the doctors who used ECT, and perceived the doctors who recommended medications as **bullying** and condescending. Other reasons for low compliance with treatment regimens are related to stigmatized side effects. Many patients, particularly women, discontinue medications that cause weight gain because of the social stigma attached to obesity in females.

### Social and economic consequences

As already mentioned, persons with a history of treatment for mental disorders frequently encounter prejudice in the job market and the likelihood of long periods of unemployment; this can result in lower socioeconomic status, as well as loss of self-esteem. These problems are not limited to North America. A recent study of mental health patients in Norway, which is generally considered a progressive nation, found that the patients had difficulty finding housing as well as jobs, and were frequently harassed on the street as well as being socially isolated. In 1990, the Congress of the U.S. included mental disorders (with a few exceptions for disorders related to substance abuse and compulsive sexual behaviors) in the anti-discriminatory provisions of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). As of 2002, mental disorders constitute the third-largest category of discrimination claims against employers.

Stigmatization of mental disorders also affects funding for research into the causes and treatment of mental disorders. Records of recent Congressional debates indicate that money for mental health research is still grudgingly apportioned as of 2002.

### Future prospects

The stigma of mental illness will not disappear overnight. Slow changes in attitudes toward other social issues have occurred in the past three decades, giving hope to the lessening of stigma toward people with mental illness. However, limitations on

## KEY TERMS

**Stigma**—A mark or characteristic trait of a disease or defect; by extension, a cause for reproach or a stain on one's reputation.

indefinite economic expansion are an reason for concern. As the economic "pie" has to be divided among a larger number of groups, causing competition for public funding, persons with mental disorders will need skilled and committed advocates if their many serious needs are to receive adequate attention and help.

*See also Stress.*

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Goffman, Erving. *Asylums: Essays on the Social Situation of Mental Patients and Other Inmates*. New York: Anchor Books, 1961.
- Goffman, Erving. *Stigma: Notes on the Management of Spoiled Identity*. New York: Simon and Schuster, Inc., 1963.

#### PERIODICALS

- "AIDS Treatment Eludes Many Indians." *AIDS Weekly* (December 17, 2001): 10.
- Britten, Nicky. "Psychiatry, Stigma, and Resistance: Psychiatrists Need to Concentrate on Understanding, Not Simply Compliance." *British Medical Journal* 317 (October 10, 1998): 763-764.
- Corner, L., and J. Bond. "Insight and Perceptions of Risk in Dementia." *The Gerontologist* (October 15, 2001): 76.
- Farriman, Annabel. "The Stigma of Schizophrenia" *British Medical Journal* 320 (February 19, 2000): 601.
- Leshner, Alan I. "Taking the Stigma Out of Addiction." *Family Practice News* 30 (August 15, 2000): 30.
- Lyons, Declan, and Declan M. McLoughlin. "Psychiatry (Recent Advances)." *British Medical Journal* 323 (November 24, 2001): 1228-1231.
- Maher, Tracy. "Tackling the Stigma of Schizophrenia." *Practice Nurse* 20 (November 2000): 466-470.
- Mahoney, D. "Understanding Racial/Ethnic Variations in Family's Response to Dementia." *The Gerontologist* (October 15, 2001): 120.
- Myers, A., and J. C. Rosen. "Obesity Stigmatization and Coping: Relation to Mental Health Symptoms, Body Image, and Self-Esteem." *International Journal of Obesity and Related Metabolic Disorders* 23 (March 1999): 221-230.
- Neil, Janice A. "The Stigma Scale: Measuring Body Image and the Skin." *Plastic Surgical Nursing* 21 (Summer 2001): 79.
- Parker, Gordon, Gemma Gladstone, Kuan Tsee Chee. "Depression in the Planet's Largest Ethnic Group: The Chinese." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 158 (June 2001): 857.

Perlick, D. A., R. A. Rosenheck, J. F. Clarkin, and others.

"Stigma as a Barrier to Recovery: Adverse Effects of Perceived Stigma on Social Adaptation of Persons Diagnosed with Bipolar Affective Disorder." *Psychiatric Services* 52 (December 2001): 1627-1632.

"Reducing the Stigma of Mental Illness." *Lancet* 357 (April 7, 2001): 1055.

Russell, J. M., and J. A. Mackell. "Bodyweight Gain Associated with Atypical Antipsychotics: Epidemiology and Therapeutic Implications." *CNS Drugs* 15 (July 2001): 537-551.

Sirey, Jo Anne, Martha L. Bruce, George S. Alexopoulos, and others. "Perceived Stigma as a Predictor of Treatment Discontinuation in Young and Older Outpatients with Depression." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 158 (March 2001): 479-481.

Smart, L., and D. M. Wegner. "Covering Up What Can't Be Seen: Concealable Stigma and Mental Control." *Journal of Personal and Social Psychology* 77 (September 1999): 474-486.

Thesen, J. "Being a Psychiatric Patient in the Community—Reclassified as the Stigmatized 'Other'." *Scandinavian Journal of Public Health* 29 (December 2001): 248-255.

Weissman, Myrna M. "Stigma." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 285 (January 17, 2001): 261.

Wojcik, Joanne. "Campaign Seeks to Remove Stigma of Mental Illness." *Business Insurance* 36 (January 21, 2002): 1.

Yanos, Philip T., Sarah Rosenfeld, Allan V. Horwitz. "Negative and Supportive Social Interactions and Quality of Life Among Persons Diagnosed with Severe Mental Illness." *Community Mental Health Journal* 37 (October 2001): 405.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Blvd., Suite 300, Arlington, VA 22201. (800) 950-6264. <[www.nami.org](http://www.nami.org)>.

#### OTHER

National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *The Impact of Mental Illness on Society*. NIH Publication No. 01-4586. <[www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/burden.cfm](http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/burden.cfm)>.

Office of the Surgeon General. *Mental Health: A Report of the Surgeon General*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1999. A copy of the report may be ordered by faxing the Superintendent of Documents at (202) 512-2250.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Stress

### Definitions

Stress is a term that refers to the sum of the physical, mental, and emotional strains or tensions on a person. Feelings of stress in humans result from interactions

between persons and their environment that are perceived as straining or exceeding their adaptive capacities and threatening their well-being. The element of perception indicates that human stress responses reflect differences in personality and physiology as well as differences in physical strength or health.

A stressor is defined as a stimulus or event that provokes a stress response in an organism. Stressors can be categorized as acute or chronic, and as external or internal to the organism. The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM-IV-TR*) defines a psychosocial stressor as “any life event or life change that may be associated temporally (and perhaps causally) with the onset, occurrence, or exacerbation [worsening] of a mental disorder.”

Stress affects the lives of most adults in developed countries in many ways. It is a major factor in rising health care costs; one public health expert maintains that 90% of all diseases and disorders in the United States are stress-related. Stress plays a part in many social problems such as child and elder abuse, workplace violence, juvenile crime, suicide, substance addiction, “road rage,” and the general decline of courtesy and good manners. Stress also affects the productivity of businesses and industries.

In a recent survey, two-thirds of Americans reported that they are likely to seek help for stress. Work appears to play a high-profile role in the stress burden among Americans. A total of 45% of workers gave job insecurity as a factor in work-related stress levels in a 2004 survey, and in the same survey, 61% of workers cited heavy workloads as a source of stress. A total of 52% said that work was a greater source of stress than home life, and 54% were concerned about stress-related health problems. Even economically, the connection between work and stress has costs: one in four workers has taken a “mental health day” from work because of stress. Money is also a factor in individual stress: 73% of Americans report that financial worry is the top factor in their level of stress.

### The neurobiology of stress

One way to understand stress as a contemporary health problem is to look at the human stress response as a biologically conditioned set of reactions that was a necessary adaptation at earlier points in human evolution, but is less adaptive under the circumstances of modern life. Hans Selye (1907–1982), a Canadian researcher, was a pioneer in studying stress. Selye defined stress, in essence, as the rate of wear and tear on the body. He observed that an increasing number of people, particularly in the developed countries, die of so-called diseases of civilization, or degenerative

diseases, which are primarily caused by stress. Selye also observed that stress in humans depends partly on people’s evaluation of a situation and their emotional reaction to it; thus, an experience that one person finds stimulating and exciting—for example, bungee jumping—would produce harmful stress in another.

### *The stress response*

In humans, the biochemical response to acute stress is known as the “fight-or-flight” reaction. It begins with the activation of a section of the brain called the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system, or HPA. This system first activates the release of steroid hormones, which are also known as glucocorticoids. These hormones include cortisol, the primary stress hormone in humans.

The HPA system then releases a set of neurotransmitters known as catecholamines, which include dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine (also known as adrenaline). Catecholamines have three important effects:

- They activate the amygdala, an almond-shaped structure in the limbic system that triggers an emotional response of fear.
- They signal the hippocampus, another part of the limbic system, to store the emotional experience in long-term memory.
- They suppress activity in parts of the brain associated with short-term memory, concentration, and rational thinking. This suppression allows a human to react quickly to a stressful situation, but it also lowers ability to deal with complex social or intellectual tasks that may be part of the situation.

In reaction to stress, heart rate and blood pressure rise, and the person breathes more rapidly, which allows the lungs to take in more oxygen. Blood flow to the muscles, lungs, and brain may increase by 300–400%. The spleen releases more blood cells into the circulation, which increases the blood’s ability to transport oxygen. The immune system redirects white blood cells to the skin, bone marrow, and lymph nodes; these are areas where injury or infection is most likely.

At the same time, nonessential body systems shut down. The skin becomes cool and sweaty as blood is drawn away from it toward the heart and muscles. The mouth becomes dry, and the digestive system slows down.

### *The relaxation response*

After the crisis passes, the levels of stress hormones drop and the body’s various organ systems

return to normal. This return is called the relaxation response. Some people are more vulnerable to stress than others because their hormone levels do not return to normal after a stressful event. An absent or incomplete relaxation response is most likely to occur in professional athletes and in people with a history of **depression**.

### **Physical effects of chronic stress**

In chronic stress, the organ systems of the body do not have the opportunity to return fully to normal levels. Different organs become under- or overactivated on a long-term basis. In time, these abnormal levels of activity can damage an organ or organ system.

#### **Cardiovascular system**

Stress has a number of negative effects on the heart and circulatory system. Acute, sudden stress increases heart rate, but also causes the arteries to narrow, which may block the flow of blood to the heart. The emotional effects of stress can alter the rhythm of the heart. In addition, stress triggers an inflammatory response in the blood vessels that can ultimately result in injury to the lining of the arteries. Markers of inflammation, linked to the development of cardiovascular disease, are also markers of the “acute phase response” to stress. Stress also can cause a change in cholesterol levels, with an increase in fats in the blood that can eventually lead to clogged arteries, which can lead to heart attack or **stroke**.

#### **Gastrointestinal system**

The effects of chronic stress on the gastrointestinal system include diarrhea, constipation, bloating, and irritable bowel syndrome. Although stress does not cause ulcers, which arise from an infection with *Helicobacter pylori* bacteria, it can exacerbate them. Stress also can influence inflammatory bowel disease, stimulating colon spasms and possibly interacting with the immune system in producing flareups.

Stress is the cause of abnormal weight loss in some people and of weight gain in others, largely from stress-related eating. It is thought that stress related to the physical and emotional changes of puberty is a major factor in the development of eating disorders.

#### **Reproductive system**

Stress affects sexual desire in both men and women and can cause impotence in men. It appears to worsen the symptoms of **premenstrual syndrome** (PMS) in women. Stress affects fertility because the high levels of cortisol in the blood can affect the hypo-

thalamus, which produces hormones related to reproduction. Very high levels of cortisol can cause amenorrhea, or cessation of menstrual periods.

In pregnancy, stress has been strongly associated with miscarriage during the earliest weeks of gestation, and cortisol, the “stress hormone,” is associated with this risk; in a recent study, 90% of women with high cortisol levels experienced a miscarriage in the first three weeks of pregnancy, compared to 33 percent of women with normal cortisol levels. High stress levels of the mother during pregnancy are also related to higher rates of premature births and babies of lower than average birth weight; both are risk factors for infant mortality. In addition, stress during pregnancy is also associated with negative effects that persist after birth.

#### **Musculoskeletal system**

Stress intensifies the **chronic pain** of arthritis and other joint disorders. It also produces tension-type headaches, caused by the tightening of the muscles in the neck and scalp. Research indicates that people who have frequent tension headaches have a biological predisposition for converting emotional stress into muscle contraction.

#### **Brain**

The physical effects of stress hormones on the brain include interference with memory and learning. Acute stress interferes with short-term memory, although this effect goes away after the stress is resolved. People who are under severe stress become unable to concentrate; they may become physically inefficient, clumsy, and accident-prone. In children, however, the brain’s biochemical responses to stress clearly hamper the ability to learn.

Chronic stress appears to be a more important factor than aging in the loss of memory in older adults. Older people with low levels of stress hormones perform as well as younger people in tests of cognitive (knowledge-related) skills, but those with high levels of stress hormones test between 20% and 50% lower than the younger test subjects.

#### **Immune system**

Chronic stress affects the human immune system and increases a person’s risk of getting an infectious illness. Several research studies have shown that people under chronic stress have lower-than-normal white blood cell counts and are more vulnerable to colds and influenza. Men with HIV infection and high stress

levels progress more rapidly to AIDS than infected men with lower stress levels.

### **Stress and mental disorders**

*DSM-IV-TR* specifies two major categories of mental disorders directly related to stress: the post-traumatic syndromes and **adjustment disorders**. Stress is, however, also closely associated with depression, and can worsen the symptoms of most other disorders.

#### *Post-traumatic disorders*

**Post-traumatic stress disorder** (PTSD) and **acute stress disorder** (ASD) are defined by their temporal connection to a traumatic event in the individual's life. The post-traumatic disorders are characterized by a cluster of **anxiety** and dissociative symptoms, and by their interference with the patient's normal level of functioning. **Magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) studies have shown that the high levels of sustained stress in some PTSD patients cause demonstrable damage to the hippocampus. Excessive amounts of stress hormones in brain tissue cause the nerve cells, or neurons, in parts of the hippocampus to wither and eventually die. One group of Vietnam veterans with PTSD had lost as much as 8% of the tissue in the hippocampus.

#### *Substance abuse disorders*

Stress is related to **substance abuse** disorders in that chronic stress frequently leads people to self-medicate with drugs of abuse or alcohol. Substance abuse disorders are associated with a specific type of strategy for dealing with stress called emotion-focused coping. Emotion-focused coping strategies concentrate on regulating painful emotions related to stress, as distinct from problem-focused coping strategies, which involve efforts to change or eliminate the impact of a stressful event. Persons who handle stress from a problem-oriented perspective are less likely to turn to mood-altering substances when they are under stress.

#### *Adjustment disorders*

*DSM-IV-TR* defines adjustment disorders as psychological responses to stressors that are excessive given the nature of the stressor; or result in impairment of the person's academic, occupational, or social functioning. The most important difference between the post-traumatic disorders and adjustment disorders is that most people would not necessarily regard those stressors involved in the latter disorder as traumatic. Adjustment disorder appear to be most common fol-

lowing natural disasters, divorce, birth of a child, and retirement from work.

### **Causes of stress**

The causes of stress may include any event or situation that a person considers a threat to his or her resources or coping strategies. A certain amount of stress is a normal part of life; it represents a person's response to inevitable changes in his or her physical or social environment. Moreover, positive as well as negative events can generate stress. Graduating from college, for example, is accompanied by stress related to the challenge of finding employment or possible geographical relocation and the stress of saying good-bye to friends and family, as well as feelings of positive accomplishment. Some researchers refer to stress associated with positive events as eustress.

Acute stress is defined as a reaction to something perceived as an immediate threat. Acute stress reactions can occur to a falsely perceived danger as well as to a genuine threat; they can also occur in response to memories. For example, a war veteran who hears a car backfire may drop to the ground because the noise triggers vivid memories, called flashbacks, of combat experience. Common acute stressors include loud, sudden noises; being in a crowded space such as an elevator; being cut off in heavy traffic; and dangerous weather. Chronic stress is a reaction to a situation that is stressful but ongoing, such as financial insecurity or caring for an elderly parent. Modern life is stressful because changes in various areas of life have increased the number of acute and chronic stressors in most people's lives at the same time that they have weakened certain buffers or protections against stress.

#### *Social changes*

Social changes that have increased the stress level of modern life include increased population mobility and the sprawling size of modern cities. It is not unusual for adults to live hundreds of miles away from parents and siblings; and it is hard to make and keep friendships when people move every few years. In most large cities, many people live in apartment buildings where they do not know their neighbors. Social isolation and loneliness can produce chronic stress. A five-year study done in Norway found that social support networks made a significant difference in lowering the impact of both acute and chronic stress on mental health.

Social scientists have observed that the increased isolation of married couples from extended families and friendship networks increases strains on the

marriage. The rising divorce rate in the United States has been attributed in part to the loss of social supports that once helped to keep married couples together. The experience of divorce then adds to the stress level on the former spouses and the children, if any. A long-term study at the University of Pittsburgh has found that divorce is associated with a higher rate of premature death in men.

### *Economic changes*

The rapid pace of change in manufacturing and other businesses means that few people will work at the same job for their entire career. In addition, corporate mergers and downsizing have weakened job security, thus producing chronic anxiety about unemployment in the minds of many employees. Many people work two jobs in order to make ends meet; and even those who work only one job often have to commute long distances by car or train to their workplace. In many large American cities, traffic jams, high gasoline prices, and other problems related to commuting are a major factor in job-related stress. Another stress factor is sleep deprivation. In a recent poll by the National Sleep Foundation, 52% of respondents fell into the “not-so-good” sleeper categories. **Fatigue** due to sleep deprivation causes additional stress.

Last, economic trends have produced a “winner-take-all” economy in which the gap between the well-off and the average family is constantly widening. Socioeconomic status (SES) affects health in a number of ways. Persons of higher SES can afford better health care, are less likely to suffer from exposure to environmental toxins, and generally lead healthier lifestyles. In addition, chronic stress associated with low SES appears to increase morbidity and mortality among persons in these income groups.

### *Technological changes*

Technology has proved to be a source of stress as well as a solution to some kinds of stress. Machines that help workers to be more productive also make their jobs more complicated and raise the level of demands on them. An office clerk in 2007 can produce many more letters per day than an office clerk of 1952, but is often expected to produce more elaborate, professional-looking documents as well as a higher number of them.

One specific technological development that has been singled out as a major stressor in modern life is the evolution of news reporting. For most of human history, people had to wait several days or even weeks

to hear about the outcome of an election, a battle, or some other important event. Moreover, they usually heard only the news that affected their region or their country. Today, however, news is reported as soon as it happens, it is broadcast 24 hours a day, it is accessible throughout the day via the Internet, and it covers events from around the world. This “communications overload,” as it has been termed, is a source of genuine stress to many people, particularly when the emphasis is on upsetting or frightening events. It is not surprising that a common recommendation for lowering one’s stress level is to cut down on watching television news programs. A team of physicians conducted telephone interviews following the terrorist attacks against the U.S. of September 11, 2001, to assess stress reactions in the general American population. The team found that the single most important factor was not geographical location relative to the attacks or educational level, but the amount of time spent watching televised reports of the attacks. The interviewers discovered that 49% of the adults had watched at least eight hours of television on September 11, and also that “extensive television viewing was associated with a substantial stress reaction.”

### *Environmental changes*

One significant source of stress in modern life is the cumulative effect of various toxic waste products on the environment. Studies of the aftermath of such environmental disasters as the Three Mile Island and Chernobyl nuclear plant accidents found that not only evacuees and people living in the contaminated area had high levels of emotional distress, but also cleanup workers and people living in nearby noncontaminated areas. In the case of Chernobyl, Russian physicians have reported a psychoneurological syndrome with several unexplained symptoms, including fatigue, impaired memory, muscle or joint pain, and sleep disturbances. The syndrome appears to be due to chronic emotional stress rather than radiation exposure.

### *Changes in beliefs and attitudes*

Changes in beliefs that influence stress levels include the contemporary emphasis on individualism and a corresponding change in attitudes toward trauma. A number of observers have remarked that Western culture has moved away from its traditional high valuation of the family and community toward an increased focus on the individual. Some have called this trend the “Me First!” society—it emphasizes personal rights and entitlements rather than duties and responsibilities to others. It has, in the view of some

physicians, encouraged people to dwell on trauma and its effects on them as individuals rather than to live up to more traditional ideals of composure and resilience in the face of distress.

### Risk factors

Research indicates that some groups of people have a higher risk of stress-related illnesses and disorders:

- Children have very little control over their environments. In addition, they are often unable to communicate their feelings accurately.
- In elderly adults, aging appears to affect the body's response to stress, so that the relaxation response following a stressful event is slower and less complete. In addition, the elderly are often affected by such major stressors as health problems, the death of a spouse or close friends, and financial worries.
- Caregivers of mentally or physically disabled family members.
- Women in general.
- People with less education.
- People who belong to racial or ethnic groups that suffer discrimination.
- People who live in cities.
- People who are anger-prone. Chronic anger is associated with narrowing of the arteries, a factor in heart disease.
- People who lack family or friends.
- People who are biologically predisposed to an inadequate relaxation response.

### Coping with stress

Coping is defined as a person's patterns of response to stress. Many clinicians think that differences in attitudes toward and approaches to stressful events are the single most important factor in assessing a person's vulnerability to stress-related illnesses. A person's ability to cope with stress depends in part on his or her interpretation of the event. One person may regard a stressful event as a challenge that can be surmounted while another views it as a problem with no solution. The person's resources, previous physical and psychological health, and previous life experience affect interpretation of the event. Someone who has had good experiences of overcoming hardships is more likely to develop a positive interpretation of stressful events than someone who has been repeatedly beaten down by abuse and later traumas.

### Coping styles

The ways in which people cope with stress can be categorized according to two different sets of distinctions. One is the distinction between emotion-focused and problem-focused styles of coping, which was described earlier in connection with substance abuse. Problem-focused coping is believed to lower the impact of stress on health; people who use problem-focused coping have fewer illnesses, are less likely to become emotionally exhausted, and report higher levels of satisfaction in their work and feelings of personal accomplishment. Emotion-focused coping, on the other hand, is associated with higher levels of interpersonal problems, depression, and social isolation. Although some studies reported that men are more likely to use problem-focused coping and women to use emotion-focused coping, other research done in the last decade has found no significant gender differences in coping styles.

The second set of categories distinguishes between control-related and escape-related coping styles. Control-related coping styles include direct action, behavior that can be done alone; help-seeking, behavior that involves social support; and positive thinking, a cognitive style that involves giving oneself pep talks. Escape-related coping styles include avoidance/resignation, as in distancing oneself from the stressful event, and alcohol use. There appears to be no relationship between gender and a preference for control-related or escape-related coping.

### Stress management

Stress management refers to a set of programs or techniques intended to help people deal more effectively with stress. Many of these programs are oriented toward job- or workplace-related stress in that burnout is a frequent result of long-term occupational stress, which has been divided into three categories: (1) Problems with the person–environment fit (e.g., a mismatch between personal skills and those required for the job; (2) problems with the balance between the demands of the job and the person's control over decisionmaking; and (3) problems with imbalances between the effort required to do the job and rewards associated with that effort.

Most stress-management programs ask participants to analyze or identify the specific aspects of their job that they find stressful, and then plan a course of positive action to minimize the stress. In general, the severity of job-related stress appears to be related to two factors: the magnitude of the demands being made on the worker, and the degree of control that she or he

## KEY TERMS

**Adjustment disorder**—A disorder defined by the development of significant emotional or behavioral symptoms in response to a stressful event or series of events. Symptoms may include depressed mood, anxiety, and impairment of social and occupational functioning.

**Adrenaline**—Another name for epinephrine, the hormone released by the adrenal glands in response to stress. It is the principal blood-pressure raising hormone and a bronchial and intestinal smooth muscles relaxant.

**Allostasis**—The process of an organism's adaptation to acute stress.

**Amygdala**—An almond-shaped brain structure in the limbic system that is activated in acute stress situations to trigger the emotion of fear.

**Burnout**—An emotional condition that interferes with job performance, marked by fatigue, loss of interest, or frustration; usually regarded as the result of prolonged stress.

**Catecholamine**—A group of neurotransmitters synthesized from the amino acid tyrosine and released by the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system in the brain in response to acute stress. The catecholamines include dopamine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and epinephrine.

**Coping**—In psychology, a term that refers to a person's patterns of response to stress.

**Cortisol**—A steroid hormone released by the cortex (outer portion) of the adrenal gland when a person is under stress.

**Dissociation**—A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**Eustress**—A term that is sometimes used to refer to positive stress.

**Flashback**—The re-emergence of a traumatic memory as a vivid recollection of sounds, images, and sensations associated with the trauma. The person having the flashback typically feels as if he or she is reliving the event.

**Hippocampus**—A part of the brain that is involved in memory formation and learning. The hippocampus is shaped like a curved ridge and belongs to an organ system called the limbic system.

**Homeostasis**—The tendency of the physiological system in humans and other mammals to maintain its internal stability by means of a coordinated response to any stimulus that disturbs its normal condition.

**Limbic system**—A group of structures in the brain that includes the amygdala, hippocampus, olfactory bulbs, and hypothalamus. The limbic system is associated with homeostasis and the regulation and arousal of emotions.

**Relaxation response**—The body's deactivation of stress responses and return of stress hormone levels to normal after a threat has passed.

**Stress management**—A set of techniques and programs intended to help people deal more effectively with stress in their lives by analyzing the specific stressors and taking positive actions to minimize their effects. Most stress management programs deal with job stress and workplace issues.

**Stressor**—A stimulus or event that provokes a stress response in an organism. Stressors can be categorized as acute or chronic, and as external or internal to the organism.

has in dealing with the demands. The workers who are most vulnerable to stress-related heart disease are those who are subjected to high demands but have little control over the way they do their job. In many cases, stress management recommendations include giving an employee more decision-making power.

### *Treatments for stress*

Some recommended guidelines for treating stress include trying one or more of the following: relaxation

techniques (e.g., **meditation**), exercise, behavioral training (e.g., anger management training), cognitive therapy, and changes in work. There are a number of allopathic and alternative/complementary treatments that are effective in relieving the symptoms of stress-related disorders:

- Medications may include drugs to control anxiety and depression as well as drugs that treat such physical symptoms of stress as indigestion or high blood pressure.

- Psychotherapy, including insight-oriented and cognitive/behavioral approaches, is effective in helping people understand how they learned to overreact to stressors, and in helping them reframe their perceptions and interpretations of stressful events. Anger management techniques are recommended for people who have stress-related symptoms due to chronic anger.
- Relaxation techniques, anxiety reduction techniques, breathing exercises, yoga, and other physical exercise programs that improve the body's relaxation response.
- Therapeutic massage, hydrotherapy, and bodywork are forms of treatment that are particularly helpful for people who tend to carry stress in their muscles and joints.
- Aromatherapy, pet therapy, humor therapy, music therapy, and other approaches that emphasize sensory pleasure are suggested for severely stressed people who lose their capacity to enjoy life; sensory-based therapies can counteract this tendency.
- Naturopathic recommendations regarding diet, exercise, and adequate sleep, and the holistic approach of naturopathic medicine can help persons with stress-related disorders to recognize and activate the body's own capacities for self-healing.

*See also* Creative therapies; Diets; Nutrition and mental health.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Gleick, James. *Faster: The Acceleration of Just About Everything*. New York: Pantheon Books, 1999.
- Herman, Judith, MD. *Trauma and Recovery*. 2nd ed., revised. New York: Basic Books, 1997.
- "Psychosomatic Medicine (Biopsychosocial Medicine)." Section 15, Chapter 185 in *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, edited by Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2000.
- Selye, Hans. *The Stress of Life*. Revised edition. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1976.

### PERIODICALS

- Adler, N. E., and K. Newman. "Socioeconomic Disparities in Health: Pathways and Policies. Inequality in Education, Income, and Occupation Exacerbates the Gaps Between the Health 'Haves' and 'Have-Nots.'" *Health Affairs (Millwood)* 21 (March–April 2002): 60–76.
- Black, Paul H., and Garbutt, Lisa D. "Stress, inflammation, and cardiovascular disease." *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* 52(2002): 1–23.
- Evans, O., and A. Steptoe. "The Contribution of Gender-Role Orientation, Work Factors and Home Stressors to Psychological Well-Being and Sickness Absence in

- Male- and Female-Dominated Occupational Groups." *Social Science in Medicine* 54 (February 2002): 481–492.
- Levenstein, Susan. "Stress and Peptic Ulcer: Life Beyond Helicobacter." *British Medical Journal* 316 (February 1998): 538–541.
- Lombroso, Paul J. "Stress and Brain Development, Part 1." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 37 (December 1998).
- Lucini, Daniela, Riva, Silvano, Pizzinelli, Paolo, and Pagani, Massimo. "Stress management at the worksite: reversal of symptoms profile and cardiovascular dysregulation." *Hypertension* 49(2007): 291–297.
- McEwen, Bruce. "Stress and Brain Development, Part 2." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 38 (January 1999).
- Matthews, K. A., and B. B. Gump. "Chronic Work Stress and Marital Dissolution Increase Risk of Posttrial Mortality in Men from the Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial." *Archives of Internal Medicine* 162 (February 2002): 309–315.
- Mayer, Merry. "Breaking Point (Job Stress and Problem Employees)." *HR Magazine* 46 (October 2001): 79–85.
- Nepomnaschy, Pablo A., Welch, Kathleen B., McConnell, Daniel S., Low, Bobbi S., Strassmann, Beverly I., and England, Barry G. "Cortisol levels and very early pregnancy loss in humans." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* 103 (2006): 3938–3942.
- Olstad, R., H. Sexton, and A. J. Sogaard. "The Finnmark Study: A Prospective Population Study of the Social Support Buffer Hypothesis, Specific Stressors and Mental Distress." *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology* 36 (December 2001): 582–589.
- Pastel, R. H. "Radiophobia: Long-Term Psychological Consequences of Chernobyl." *Military Medicine* 167 (February 2002): 134–136.
- Schuster, Mark A., Bradley D. Stein, Lisa H. Jaycox, and others. "A National Survey of Stress Reactions After the September 11, 2001, Terrorist Attacks." *New England Journal of Medicine* 345 (November 15, 2001): 1507–1512.
- Summerfield, Derek. "The Invention of Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder and the Social Usefulness of a Psychiatric Category." *British Medical Journal* 322 (January 13, 2001): 95–98.
- van der Kolk, Bessel. "The Body Keeps the Score: Memory and the Evolving Psychobiology of PTSD." *Harvard Review of Psychiatry* 1 (1994): 253–265.
- Wadhwa, Pathik D. "Psychoneuroendocrine processes in human pregnancy influence fetal development and health." *Psychoneuroendocrinology* 30(2005): 724–743.
- ORGANIZATIONS**
- The American Institute of Stress. 124 Park Avenue, Yonkers, NY 10703. (914) 963-1200. Fax: (914) 965-6267. <[www.stress.org](http://www.stress.org)>.
- Anxiety Disorders Association of America. 11900 Parklawn Drive, Suite 100, Rockville, MD 20852-2624. (301) 231-9350. <[www.adaa.org](http://www.adaa.org)>.
- Stress and Anxiety Research Society (STAR). <[www.star-society.org](http://www.star-society.org)>.

American Psychiatric Association, 1400 K Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20005. <<http://www.psych.org>>  
 National Center for PTSD, 1116D V.A. Medical Center, 215 N. Main Street, White River Junction, VT 05009-0001. (802)296-5132. <<http://www.ncptsd.org>>

#### WEBSITES

American Psychological Association. "How does stress affect your body?" (interactive) <<http://helping.apa.org/articles/article.php?id=141>> (accessed 01/21/07).  
 Centers for Disease Control. "Stress at work." <<http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/stress/>> (accessed 01/21/07).  
 National Library of Medicine. "Stress." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/stress.html>>  
 National Library of Medicine. "Stress and anxiety." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/003211.htm>>  
 "Stress-related conditions and other mental disorders." <<http://www.guidelines.gov/summary/>>  
 National Sleep Foundation. "2005 Results of the Sleep in America Poll." <[http://www.sleepfoundation.org/\\_content/hottopics/Sleep\\_Segments.pdf](http://www.sleepfoundation.org/_content/hottopics/Sleep_Segments.pdf)>

Rebecca Frey, Ph.D.



**A male therapist with a stroke victim.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

## Stroke

### Definition

A stroke, also called a cerebral vascular accident (CVA), is the sudden death of cells in a specific area of the **brain** due to inadequate blood flow.

### Description

A stroke occurs when blood flow is interrupted to a part of the brain, either when an artery bursts or becomes closed when a blood clot lodges in it. Blood circulation to the area of the brain served by that artery stops at the point of disturbance, and the brain tissue beyond that is damaged or dies. (Brain cells need blood to supply oxygen and nutrients and to remove waste products.) Depending on the region of the brain affected, a stroke can cause paralysis, loss of vision, speech impairment, memory loss and reasoning ability, coma, or death. The effects of a stroke are determined by how much damage occurs, and which portion of the brain is affected.

About a third of all strokes are preceded by transient ischemic attacks (TIAs), or mini-strokes, that temporarily interrupt blood flow to the brain. While TIAs cause similar symptoms (such as sudden vision

loss or temporary weakness in a limb), they abate much more quickly than full-fledged strokes, usually within a few hours—sometimes as quickly as a few minutes.

Stroke is a medical emergency requiring immediate treatment. Prompt treatment improves the chances of survival and increases the degree of recovery that may be expected. A person who may have suffered a stroke should be seen in a hospital emergency room without delay. Treatment to break up a blood clot, the major cause of stroke, must begin within three hours of the stroke to be most effective. Improved medical treatment of all types of stroke has resulted in a dramatic decline in death rates in recent decades. In 1950 nine in ten stroke victims died, compared to slightly less than one in three today.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

There are four main types of stroke: cerebral thrombosis, cerebral embolism, subarachnoid hemorrhage, and intracerebral hemorrhage. *Cerebral thrombosis* and *cerebral embolism*, known as *ischemic strokes*,

are caused by blood clots that block an artery supplying the brain, either in the brain itself or in the neck. They account for 70–80% of all strokes. *Subarachnoid hemorrhage* and *intracerebral hemorrhage* are *hemorrhagic strokes* that occur when a blood vessel bursts around or in the brain, either from trauma or excess internal pressure. Hypertension (high blood pressure) and atherosclerosis are usually contributing factors in these types of strokes.

**CEREBRAL THROMBOSIS.** Cerebral thrombosis, the most common type of stroke, occurs when a blood clot, or thrombus, forms within the brain itself, blocking blood flow through the affected vessel. This is usually due to atherosclerosis (hardening) of brain arteries, caused by a buildup of fatty deposits inside the blood vessels. Cerebral thrombosis occurs most often at night or early in the morning, and is often preceded by a TIA. Recognizing the occurrence of a TIA, and seeking immediate treatment, is an important step in stroke prevention.

**CEREBRAL EMBOLISM.** Cerebral embolism occurs when a blood clot from elsewhere in the circulatory system breaks free. If it becomes lodged in an artery supplying the brain, either in the brain or in the neck, it can cause a stroke. The most common cause of cerebral embolism is atrial fibrillation, which occurs when the upper chambers (atria) of the heart beat weakly and rapidly, instead of slowly and steadily. Blood within the atria does not empty completely, and may form clots that can then break off and enter the circulation. Atrial fibrillation is a factor in about 15% of all strokes, but this risk can be dramatically reduced with daily use of anticoagulant medication (such as Heparin or Coumadin).

**SUBARACHNOID HEMORRHAGE.** In this type of stroke, blood spills into the subarachnoid space between the brain and cranium. As fluid builds up, pressure on the brain increases, impairing its function. Hypertension is a frequent cause of these types of stroke, but vessels with preexisting defects, such as an aneurysm, are also at risk for rupture. Aneurysms are most likely to burst when blood pressure is highest, and controlling blood pressure is an important preventive strategy. Subarachnoid hemorrhages account for about 7% of all strokes.

**INTRACEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE.** Representing about 10% of all strokes, intracerebral hemorrhage affects vessels and tissue within the brain itself. As with subarachnoid hemorrhage, bleeding deprives affected tissues of blood supply, and the accumulation of fluid within the inflexible skull creates pressure on the brain that can quickly become fatal. Despite this, recovery may be more complete for a person who survives hemorrhage than for one who survives a clot, because

the effects of blood deprivation are usually not as severe.

### Risk factors

Risk factors for stroke involve:

- *Age and sex*—the risk of stroke increases with age, doubling for each decade after age 55. Men are more likely to have a stroke than women.
- *Heredity*—People with a family history of stroke have an increased risk of stroke themselves. In addition, African-Americans, Asians, and Hispanics all have higher rates of stroke than whites, related partly to higher blood pressure.
- *Diseases*—People with diabetes, heart disease (especially atrial fibrillation), high blood pressure, or prior stroke are at greater risk for stroke. Patients with one or more TIAs have ten times the risk.
- *Other medical conditions*—Stroke risk increases with obesity, high blood cholesterol, or high red blood cell count.
- *Lifestyle choices*—Stroke risk increases with cigarette smoking (especially if combined with the use of oral contraceptives), a sedentary lifestyle, alcohol consumption above two drinks per day, and/or the use of cocaine or intravenous drugs.

### Symptoms

Knowing the symptoms of stroke is as important as knowing those of a heart attack. Patients with stroke symptoms should seek emergency treatment without delay, which may mean dialing 911 rather than their family physician. Specific symptoms of a stroke depend on the type, but all types share some characteristics in common.

An embolic stroke usually comes on quite suddenly and is intense right from the start, while symptoms of a thrombotic stroke come on more gradually. Symptoms for these ischemic strokes may include:

- blurring or decreased vision in one or both eyes
- severe headache, often described as “the worst headache of my life”
- weakness, numbness, or paralysis of the face, arm, or leg, usually confined to one side of the body
- dizziness, loss of balance or coordination, especially when combined with other symptoms

Hemorrhagic strokes are somewhat different. An intracranial hemorrhage exhibits any or all of the following symptoms:

- loss of consciousness
- altered mental state

- seizure
- vomiting or severe nausea
- extreme hypertension
- weakness, numbness, or paralysis, especially on one side of the body
- sudden, severe headache

Symptoms of a subarachnoid hemorrhage include:

- severe headache that begins suddenly
- nausea or vomiting
- stiff neck
- light intolerance
- loss of consciousness

## Demographics

Each year, more than half a million people in the United States have a stroke. It is the third leading cause of death, killing about a third of its victims—approximately 150,000 Americans each year. For those that survive, stroke is the leading cause of disability. Two-thirds of all strokes occur in people over age 65, with men more affected than women, although women are more likely to die from a stroke. African-Americans suffer strokes more often than whites, and are more likely to die from them as well. This may be because African-Americans tend to suffer from hypertension more frequently than other groups.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosing a stroke begins with a careful medical history, especially concerning the onset and distribution of symptoms, presence of risk factors; in this way other possible causes are excluded. A brief neurological exam is performed to identify the degree and location of any deficits, such as weakness, lack of coordination, or vision loss.

Once stroke is suspected, imaging technology is used to determine what type the patient has suffered—a critical distinction that guides therapy. A non-contrast **computed tomography** scan (CT scan) can reliably identify hemorrhagic strokes, caused by uncontrolled bleeding in the brain. **Magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI), on the other hand, particularly diffusion-weighted imaging, can detect ischemic strokes, caused by blood clots, earlier and more reliably than CT scanning.

Blood and urine tests are also run to look for possible abnormalities. Other investigations that may be performed to guide treatment include electrocardiogram, angiography, ultrasound, and electroencephalogram.

## Treatment

When brain cells die during a stroke, they release toxic chemicals that can trigger a chain reaction that can injure or kill other nearby cells. Damage from stroke may be significantly reduced by emergency treatment, and is a significant factor in how fully a patient will recover.

### *Emergency treatment*

Emergency treatment of an ischemic stroke attempts to dissolve the clot. This “thrombolytic therapy” is performed most often with tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA), which must be administered within three hours of the stroke event. (Patients who awaken with stroke symptoms are ineligible for this type of therapy, since the time of onset cannot be reliably determined.) t-PA therapy has been shown to improve recovery and decrease long-term disability in patients. It carries a 6.4% risk of inducing a cerebral hemorrhage, however, and is not appropriate for patients with bleeding disorders, very high blood pressure, known aneurysms, any evidence of intracranial hemorrhage, or incidence of stroke, head trauma, or intracranial surgery within the past three months. Patients with clot-related stroke who are ineligible for t-PA treatment may be treated with heparin or other blood thinners, or with aspirin or other anticoagulants in some cases.

Emergency treatment of hemorrhagic stroke is aimed at controlling intracranial pressure that accompanies these types of strokes. New surgical techniques can effectively relieve the pressure, especially when begun soon after the stroke event occurs. Surgery for hemorrhage due to aneurysm may be performed if the aneurysm is close enough to the cranial surface to allow access. Ruptured vessels are closed off to prevent rebleeding. For aneurysms that are difficult to reach surgically, endovascular treatment, in which a catheter is guided from a larger artery up into the brain to reach the aneurysm, may be effective. Small coils of wire are discharged into the aneurysm, which plug it up and block off blood flow from the main artery.

### *Rehabilitation*

Rehabilitation refers to a comprehensive program designed to regain as much function as possible and compensate for permanent losses. Approximately 10% of stroke survivors are without any significant disability and able to function independently. Another 10% are so severely affected that they must remain institutionalized for severe disability. The remaining

80% can return home with appropriate therapy, training, support, and care.

Rehabilitation is coordinated by a team of medical professionals and may include the services of a neurologist, a physician who specializes in rehabilitation medicine, a physical therapist, an occupational therapist, a speech-language pathologist, a nutritionist, a mental health professional, and a social worker. Rehabilitation services may be provided in an acute care hospital, rehabilitation hospital, long-term care facility, outpatient clinic, or at home.

The rehabilitation program is based on the patient's individual deficits and strengths. Strokes on the left side of the brain primarily affect the right half of the body, and vice versa. In addition, in left brain-dominant people, who constitute a significant majority of the population, left-brain strokes usually lead to speech and language deficits, while right-brain strokes may affect spatial perception. Patients with right-brain strokes may also deny their illness, **neglect** the affected side of their body, and behave impulsively.

Rehabilitation may be complicated by cognitive losses, including diminished ability to understand and follow directions. Poor results are more likely in patients whose strokes left them with significant or prolonged cognitive changes, sensory losses, language deficits, or incontinence.

**PREVENTING COMPLICATIONS.** Rehabilitation begins with prevention of medical complications, including stroke recurrence, using many of the same measures used to prevent stroke, such as **smoking cessation** and getting hypertension under control.

One of the most common medical complications following stroke is deep venous thrombosis, in which a clot forms within a limb immobilized by paralysis. Clots can also become lodged in an artery feeding the lungs, a condition called pulmonary embolism, that is a common cause of death in the weeks following a stroke. Resuming activity within a day or two after the stroke is an important preventive measure, along with use of elastic stockings on the lower limbs. Drugs that prevent clotting may also be given, including intravenous heparin and oral warfarin.

Weakness and loss of coordination of the swallowing muscles may impair swallowing (dysphagia), and allow food to enter the lower airway. This may lead to aspiration pneumonia, another common cause of death shortly after a stroke. Dysphagia may be treated with retraining exercises and temporary use of pureed foods.

Other medical complications include urinary tract infections, pressure ulcers, falls, and **seizures**. Not surprisingly, **depression** occurs in 30–60% of stroke patients; its severity is usually related to the level of permanent functional impairment. It can be treated with **antidepressants** and **psychotherapy**.

**TYPES OF REHABILITATIVE THERAPY.** Brain tissue that dies in a stroke cannot regenerate. In some cases, however, rehabilitation training can help other brain regions perform the same functions of that tissue. In other cases, compensatory actions may be developed to replace lost abilities.

*Physical therapy* is used to maintain and restore range of motion and strength in affected limbs, and to maximize mobility in walking, wheelchair use, and transferring (from wheelchair to toilet or from standing to sitting, for instance). The physical therapist advises patients on mobility aids such as wheelchairs, braces, and canes. In the recovery period, a stroke patient may develop muscle spasticity and contractures (abnormal muscle contractions) that can be treated with a combination of stretching and splinting.

*Occupational therapy* improves self-care skills such as feeding, bathing, and dressing, and helps develop effective compensatory strategies and devices for activities of daily living. A speech-language pathologist focuses on communication and swallowing skills. When dysphagia is a problem, a nutritionist can advise alternative meals that provide adequate nutrition.

*Psychological therapy* can help treat depression or loss of thinking (cognitive) skills. A social worker may help coordinate services and ease the transition out of the hospital back into the home. Both **social workers** and mental health professionals help counsel the patient and family during the difficult rehabilitation period. Caring for a person affected with stroke requires a new set of skills and adaptation to new demands and limitations. Home caregivers may develop **stress**, **anxiety**, and depression—caring for the caregiver is an important part of the overall stroke treatment program. **Support groups** can provide an important source of information, advice, and comfort for stroke patients and caregivers; joining one can be an important step in the rehabilitation process.

## Prognosis

Stroke is fatal for about 27% of white males, 52% of African-American males, 23% of white females, and 40% of African-American females. Stroke survivors may be left with significant deficits. Emergency

## KEY TERMS

**Aneurysm**—A symptomless bulging of a weak arterial wall that can rupture, leading to stroke.

**Angiography**—A procedure in which a contrast medium is injected into the bloodstream (through an artery in the neck) and its progress through the brain is tracked. This illustrates where a blockage or hemorrhage has occurred.

**Anticoagulant**—A medication (such as warfarin, Coumadin, or Heparin) that decreases the blood's clotting ability preventing the formation of new clots. Although anticoagulants will not dissolve existing clots, they can stop them from getting larger. These drugs are commonly called blood thinners.

**Atrial fibrillation**—A disorder in which the upper chambers (atria) of the heart do not completely empty with each contraction (heartbeat). This can allow blood clots to form and is associated with a higher risk of stroke.

**Electrocardiogram**—(EKG) A test that measures the electrical activity of the heart as it beats. An abnormal EKG can indicate possible cardiac disease.

**Electroencephalogram**—(EEG) A test that measures the electrical activity of the brain by means of electrodes placed on the scalp or on or in the brain itself. It may be used to determine whether or not a stroke victim has had a seizure.

**Hypertension**—High blood pressure, often brought on by smoking, obesity, or other causes; one of the major causes of strokes.

**Pressure ulcers**—Also known as pressure sores or bed sores, these can develop in stroke patients who are unable to move. If not treated properly, they can become infected.

**Tissue plasminogen activator (tPA)**—A drug that is sometimes given to patients within three hours of a stroke to dissolve blood clots within the brain; also used to treat heart attack victims.

**Ultrasound**—A noninvasive test in which high-frequency sound waves are reflected off a patient's internal organs allowing them to be viewed. In stroke victims, a cardiac ultrasound, or echocardiogram, allows the beating heart to be examined.

treatment and comprehensive rehabilitation can significantly improve both survival and recovery.

### Prevention

The risk of stroke can be reduced through lifestyle changes:

- stop smoking
- control blood pressure
- get regular exercise
- maintain a healthy weight
- avoid excessive alcohol consumption
- get regular checkups and follow the doctor's advice regarding diet and medicines

Use of high-estrogen dose oral contraceptives increase the chances for developing stroke, particularly in women who smoke and/or who are over 35. Currently, there are low-estrogen dose oral contraceptives, for which a clear relationship with stroke development is unclear.

Treatment of atrial fibrillation may also significantly reduce the risk of stroke. Preventive anticoagulant therapy may benefit those with untreated atrial fibrillation. Warfarin (Coumadin) has proven to be more effective than aspirin for those with higher risk.

Screening for aneurysms may be an effective preventive measure in those with a family history of aneurysms or autosomal polycystic kidney disease, which tends to be associated with aneurysms.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Caplan, L. R., M. L. Dyken, and J. D. Easton. *American Heart Association Family Guide to Stroke Treatment, Recovery, and Prevention*. New York: Times Books, 1996.

Duthie, Edmund H., Jr. *Practice of Geriatrics*. 3rd Edition. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders, 1998: 328-335.

Goetz, Christopher G., and others. *Textbook of Clinical Neurology*. 1st edition. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders, 1999: 909-911.

Warlow, C. P., and others. *Stroke: A Practical Guide to Management*. Boston: Blackwell Science, 1996.

#### PERIODICALS

Krishnan, K. Ranga Rama. "Depression as a contributing factor in cerebrovascular disease." *American Heart Journal* (October 2000).

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Heart Association and American Stroke Association. 7272 Greenville Ave. Dallas, TX 75231. (214) 373-6300. <<http://www.americanheart.org>>.

National Stroke Association. 9707 E. Easter Lane, Englewood, Co. 80112. (800) 787-6537. <<http://www.stroke.org>>.

Laith Farid Gulli, M.D.  
Bilal Nasser, M.D.

## Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV

### Definition

The Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV (SCID) is the generic term for a series of psychological assessment instruments used by clinicians and researchers to make diagnoses of mental disorders listed in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual, Fourth Edition (DSM-IV)* of the American Psychiatric Association.

### Description

The SCID is designed to help clinicians and researchers consistently and accurately diagnose mental disorders and to avoid making a premature **diagnosis** based on insufficient data or preconceived notions. The SCID uses a standard set of questions that are asked in patient interviews. Based on the answers to these questions, a diagnosis is made. A previous version of the SCID was available for use with the *DSM-III*.

### Purpose

There are two parts to the SCID. The choice of which part is administered depends on what general type of disorder is suspected in the patient. The SCID-I is designed for use by clinicians to accurately and consistently diagnose 37 of the most frequently seen *DSM-IV* Axis I clinical disorders. The disorders fall into the following categories:

- disorders usually first diagnosed in infancy, childhood, or adolescence (excluding mental retardation)
- delirium, dementia, and amnesia and other cognitive disorders
- mental disorders due to a general medical condition
- substance-related disorders
- schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders
- mood disorders
- anxiety disorders
- somatoform disorders

- factitious disorders
- dissociative disorders
- sexual and gender identity disorders
- eating disorders
- sleep disorders
- impulse-control disorders not elsewhere classified
- adjustment disorders
- other conditions that may be a focus of clinical attention

The SCID-II is designed to measure disorders that are part of Axis II (**personality disorders**) of the *DSM-IV*. These are:

- paranoid personality disorder
- schizoid personality disorder
- schizotypal personality disorder
- antisocial personality disorder
- borderline personality disorder
- histrionic personality disorder
- narcissistic personality disorder
- avoidant personality disorder dependent personality disorder
- obsessive-compulsive personality disorder
- personality disorder not otherwise specified

In addition, the SCID-II is designed to diagnose depressive personality disorder, passive-aggressive personality disorder, and dependent personality disorder. Neither the SCID-I nor the SCID-II diagnoses disorders included on Axis III (general medical conditions) or Axis IV (psychosocial and environmental problems) of the *DSM-IV*.

The SCID has been translated or is in the process of being translated into numerous other languages. These include Danish, Dutch, French, German, Greek, Hebrew, Italian, Portuguese, Romanian, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, and Turkish. Depending on the complexity of the patient's psychiatric history and his or her ability to clearly describe episodes and symptoms, it takes approximately one to two hours to complete the SCID-I and 30 minutes to an hour to complete the SCID-II. These times tend to be shorter than for other comprehensive assessment instruments of this type.

A version of the SCID for use with children—the KID-SCID—is being developed. This version includes most of the disorders included on the SCID-I and SCID-II as well as many childhood disorders, including disruptive behavior disorders and separation **anxiety** disorders. Future development of the KID-SCID will include eating disorders and Tourette's disorder.

## KEY TERMS

**Reliability**—The degree to which a psychological test or assessment instrument consistently measures what it is intended to measure.

**Structured interview**—An interview technique that attempts to increase the reliability of data collection between interviewers by using a standardized, predetermined set of questions or topics.

**Validity**—The degree to which a psychological test or assessment instrument accurately measures what it is intended to measure.

### Reliability and validity

When determining whether or not a psychological assessment instrument such as the SCID is useful for the purpose for which it is designed, two factors should be considered: the instrument's reliability and its validity. Reliability is the ability of the assessment instrument to consistently measure the idea or concept it has been designed to measure. Validity is the ability of the instrument to accurately measure what it is intended to measure. Unless a test is reliable, it cannot be valid.

Research studies investigating the reliability of the SCID-I and the SCID-II have shown wide variation in the reliability of the SCID, ranging from poor to good. This may be due to factors such as the varying designs of research studies, training of the individuals administering the SCID, and types of disorders represented in those interviewed.

To determine the validity of assessment instruments such as the SCID, researchers typically look at the agreement between diagnoses made using the instrument and diagnoses using an objective standard. Unfortunately, such an objective standard for mental disorders has yet to be developed. However, given the fact that the reliability of the SCID is not consistent, the validity of the instrument must also be called into question.

While the SCID is used in many diagnostic situations, it is not the only assessment instrument available. Other instruments include the Personality Disorder Examination, Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Personality, Diagnostic Interview for Personality Disorders, Brief Psychiatric Rating Scale, Composite International Diagnostic Interview, and Present State Examination. Researchers and clinicians should choose which assessment instrument to use based on what they are trying to measure and the

comparative strengths and weaknesses of the instruments. It should be noted, however, that the lack of objective standards against which to measure validity affects the veracity of the results from all of these instruments, and the problems attendant with using human interviewers affect all interview techniques.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Benjamin, Lorna Smith, and Michael B. First. *Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Axis II Personality Disorders (SCID-II), User's Guide*. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 1997.

First, Michael B., Robert L. Spitzer, Miriam Gibbon, and Janet B. W. Williams. *Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Axis I Disorders (SCID-I), Clinician Version, User's Guide*. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 1997.

VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2006.

#### PERIODICALS

Rodebaugh, Thomas L., Dianne L. Chambless, Babette Renneberg, and Thomas Fydrich. "The Factor Structure of the DSM-III-R Personality Disorders: An Evaluation of Competing Models." *International Journal of Methods in Psychiatric Research* 14.1 (2005): 43–55.

Smith, Douglas C., Diane L. Huber, and James A. Hall. "Psychometric Evaluation of the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Childhood Diagnoses (KID-SCID)." *Journal of Human Behavior in the Social Environment* 11.3–4 (2005): 1–21.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Stuttering

### Definition

There is no standard definition of stuttering, but most attempt to define stuttering as the blockages, discoordination, or fragmentations of the forward flow of speech (fluency). These stoppages, referred to as disfluencies, are often excessive and characterized by specific types of disfluency. These types of disfluencies include repetitions of sounds and syllables, prolongation of sounds, and blockages of airflow. Individuals who stutter are often aware of their stuttering and feel a loss of control when they are

disfluent. Both children and adults stutterers expend an excessive amount of physical and mental energy when speaking. Older children and adults who stutter show myriad negative reactive behaviors, feelings, and attitudes. These behaviors, referred to as “secondary behaviors,” make the disorder more severe and difficult.

## Description

Stuttering is a confusing and often misunderstood developmental speech and language disorder. Before discussing stuttering, it is important to understand the concepts of speech fluency and disfluency. Fluency is generally described as the forward flow of speech. For most speakers, fluent speech is easy and effortless. Fluent speech is free of any interruptions, blockages, or fragmentations. Disfluency is defined as a breakdown or blockage in the forward flow of speech, or fluency. For all speakers, some occurrence of disfluency is normal. For example, people may insert short sounds or words, referred to as “interjections,” when speaking; examples of such are “um,” “like,” or “uh.” Also, speakers might repeat phrases, revise words or phrases, or sometimes repeat whole words for the purpose of clarification. For young children, disfluency is a part of the normal development of speech and language, especially during the preschool years (between the ages of two and five years).

The occurrence of disfluency is not the same as stuttering, though stuttered speech is characterized by an excessive amount of disfluency. The disfluencies produced by people who stutter will often be similar to those in the speech of individuals who do not stutter; however, certain types of disfluent behavior are likely to appear only in the speech of people who stutter. These disfluencies are sound and syllable repetitions (i.e., ca-ca-ca-cat), sound prolongations (“sssss-salad,” “fffffish”), and complete blockages of airflow. These behaviors, often referred to as stuttering type disfluencies, distinguish stuttered speech from nonstuttered speech.

Unlike speakers who do not stutter, most people who stutter react negatively to their disfluencies. A person may develop a number of physical reactions, including tension of the muscles involved in speech (tongue, jaw, lips, or chest, for example) and tension in muscles not related to speech (such as shoulders, limbs, and forehead). In addition to these physiological reactions, people who stutter will often have negative emotional reactions to the disorder. Among the emotions that people who stutter report are embarrassment, guilt, and frustration.

Finally, many people who stutter will develop a number of negative attitudes and beliefs regarding themselves and speaking—because of their stuttering. These may be negative attitudes and beliefs in certain speaking situations, with people with whom they interact, and in their own abilities. These physiological, emotional, and attitudinal (cognitive) reactions to stuttering, described as secondary stuttering behaviors, are often very disruptive to the communication process and the person’s life.

Stuttering behaviors can develop and vary throughout the life span. Sometimes, children will experience periods when the stuttering appears to “go away,” only to return in a more severe pattern. Many children, (estimates range between 50 and 80%) will develop normal fluency after periods of stuttering. For those who continue to stutter during late childhood, adolescence, and into adulthood, stuttering can become a chronic problem. Lifelong efforts will be needed to cope successfully with the behavior.

Due to the effect that stuttering has on communication, the person who stutters may experience certain difficulties in various parts of his/her life. These problems might be secondary to factors inside the person (symptoms of stuttering) and outside the person (society’s attitudes toward stuttering and other barriers). For example, many people who stutter report difficulties in social settings. Children who stutter often experience teasing and other social penalties. Adolescents and adults also report a variety of social problems. Academic settings may be difficult for children who stutter because of the emphasis schools place on verbal performance.

Finally, there appears to be some evidence that people who stutter might confront barriers in employment. These barriers might take the form of inability to do certain tasks easily (talking on the phone, for example), limitations in job choices, and discrimination in the hiring and promotion processes.

## Causes and symptoms

Though research has not identified a single cause, there appears to be several factors that are viewed as being important to the onset and development of stuttering. Therefore, stuttering is often described as being related to multiple factors and having possibly multiple causes. First, there is a genetic predisposition to stutter, as evidenced by studies of families and twins. A second important factor in stuttering the onset of stuttering is the physiological makeup of people who stutter. Research suggests that the brains of people who stutter may function abnormally during speech

production. These differences in functioning may lead to breakdowns in speech production and to the development of disfluent speech.

Third, there is some evidence that speech and language development is an important issue in understanding the development of stuttering. Studies have found some evidence that children who are showing stuttering type behaviors may also have other difficulties with speech-language. Additionally, children with speech-language delays will often show stuttering type behaviors. Finally, environmental issues have a significant impact on the development of stuttering behaviors. An environment that is overly stressful or demanding, may cause children to have difficulties developing fluent speech. Though the environment, in particular parental behaviors, does not cause stuttering, it is an important factor that might adversely affect a child who is operating at a reduced capacity for developing fluent speech.

There is no evidence that stuttering is secondary to a psychological disturbance. It is reasonable to assume that stuttering might have some effect on psychological adjustment and a person's ability to cope with speaking situations. People who stutter might experience a lower self-esteem and some might report feeling depressed. These feelings and difficulties with coping are most likely the result and not the cause of stuttering. In addition, several research studies have reported that many people who stutter report high levels of **anxiety** and **stress** when they are talking and stuttering. These feelings, psychological states, and difficulties with coping are most likely the result and not the cause of stuttering.

Generally, children begin to stutter between the ages of two and five years. Nevertheless, there are instances when individuals begin to show stuttering type behaviors in late childhood or as adults. These instances are often related to specific causes such as a **stroke** or a degenerative neurological disease. This type of stuttering, stuttering secondary to a specific neurological process, is referred to as neurogenic stuttering. In other cases, stuttering may be secondary to a psychological **conversion disorder** due to a psychologically traumatic event. When stuttering has abrupt onset secondary to a psychological trauma, it is described as psychogenic stuttering.

As stated earlier, the primary symptoms of stuttering include excessive disfluency, both stuttering and normal types (core behaviors), as well as physical, emotional, and cognitive reactions to the problem. These behaviors will vary in severity across people who stutter from very mild to very severe. Addition-

ally, the behaviors will vary considerably across different speaking situations. There are specific situations when people tend to experience more stuttering (such as talking on the phone or with an authority figure) or less stuttering (speaking with a pet or to themselves, for example). It is likely that this variability might even extend to people having periods (days and even weeks) when they can maintain normally fluent or nonstuttered speech.

## Demographics

Stuttering is a relatively low-prevalence disorder. Across all cultures, roughly 1% of people currently has a stuttering disorder. This differs from incidence, or number of individuals who have been diagnosed with stuttering at some point in their lives. Research suggests that roughly 5% of the population has ever been diagnosed with a stuttering disorder. This difference suggests that a significant number of individuals who stutter will someday develop through or "grow out of" the problem. Research suggests that roughly 50-80% of all children who begin to stutter will stop stuttering. In addition, approximately three times as many men stutter as women. This ratio seems to be lower early in childhood, with a similar number of girls and boys stuttering. The ratio of boys to girls appears to get larger as children become older. This phenomenon suggests that males are more likely to continue to stutter than females.

## Diagnosis

Speech-language pathologists are responsible for making the **diagnosis** and managing the treatment of adults and children who stutter. Preferably, a board-certified speech-language pathologist board should be sought for direct **intervention** or consulting. Diagnosis of stuttering, or identifying children at risk for stuttering, is difficult because most children will show excessive disfluencies in their speech. With children, diagnostic procedures include the collection and analysis of speech and disfluent behaviors in a variety of situations. In addition, the child's general speech-language abilities will be evaluated.

Finally, the speech-language pathologist will interview parents and teachers regarding the child's general developmental, speech-language development, and their perceptions of the child's stuttering behaviors. For adults and older children, the diagnostic procedures will also include gathering and analyzing speech samples from a variety of settings. In addition, the speech-language pathologist will conduct a lengthy interview with the person about their

stuttering and history of their stuttering problem. Finally, the person who stutters might be asked to report his/her attitudes and feelings related to stuttering, either while being interviewed or by completing a series of questionnaires.

## Treatments

### *General considerations*

It is generally accepted that conducting interventions with children and families early in childhood (preschool) is the most effective means of total recovery from stuttering. The chances for a person to fully recover from stuttering by obtaining near-normal fluency are reduced as the person ages. This is why early intervention is critical. For older children and adults for which stuttering has become a chronic disorder, the focus of therapy is on developing positive coping mechanisms for dealing with the problem. This therapy varies in success based on the individual.

### *Treatment options for young children*

Treatment of young children generally follows one of two basic approaches. These approaches may also be combined into a single treatment program. The first type of approach, often referred to as indirect therapy, focuses on altering the environment to allow the child opportunities to develop fluent speech. With this approach, counseling parents regarding the alteration of behaviors that affect fluency is the focus. For example, parents may be taught to reduce the amount of household stress or in the level of speech-language demands being placed on the child. In addition, parents may be advised to change characteristics of their speech, such as their speech rate and turn-taking style; this is done to help their children develop more fluent speech.

The other basic approach in treatment with young children targets the development of fluent speech. This type of approach, often referred to as direct therapy, teaches children to use skills that will help them improve fluency and they are sometimes given verbal rewards for producing fluent speech.

### *Treatment options for older children and adults*

Treatment approaches for older children and adults usually take one of two forms. These approaches target either helping the person to modify his/her stuttering or modify his/her fluency. Approaches that focus on modifying stuttering will usually teach individuals to reduce the severity of their stuttering behaviors by identifying and eliminating all of the secondary or reactive behaviors. Individuals will also work to

## KEY TERMS

**Disfluency**—Disruptions, breakage, or blockages in the forward flow of speech.

**Secondary behaviors**—Negative behavioral, emotional, or cognitive reactions to stuttering.

**Speech-language pathologist**—Specialists trained in assessment and diagnosis of communication disorders.

reduce the amount of emotional reaction toward stuttering.

Finally, the speech-language pathologist will help the individual to learn techniques that allow them to stutter in an easier manner. Therapy does not focus on helping the individual to speak fluently, though most individuals will attain higher levels of fluency if this approach is successful. The other groups of approaches will focus on assisting adults and children who stutter to speak more fluently. This type of therapy, which focuses less on changing secondary and emotional reactions, helps the person to modify their speech movements in a specific manner that allows for fluent sounding speech. These procedures require the individual to focus on developing new speech patterns. This often requires a significant amount of practice and skill. The successful outcome of these approaches is nonstuttered, fluent sounding speech. Many therapists will integrate stuttering modification and fluency shaping approaches into more complete treatment programs. In addition, psychological counseling may be used to supplement traditional speech therapy.

## Prognosis

Complete alleviation of recovery from stuttering is most likely possible when children and their families receive treatment close to the time of onset. Thus, early identification and treatment of stuttering is critical. For older children and adults, stuttering becomes a chronic problem that requires a lifetime of formal and self-directed therapy. For individuals who show this more chronic form of the disorder, internal motivation for change and support from significant others is going to be an important part of recovery.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Bloodstein, O. *A Handbook on Stuttering*. 5th ed., revised. San Diego, CA: Singular Publishing, 1995.

- Guitar, B. *Stuttering: An Integrated Approach to Its Nature and treatment*. 2nd edition, text revision. Baltimore, MD: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.
- Manning, W. H. *Clinical Decision Making in Fluency Disorders*. 2nd. ed., revised. San Diego, CA: Singular Publishing, 2001.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Stuttering Association. 5100 East La Palma, Suite #208, Anaheim Hills, CA 92807. <<http://www.nsastutter.org>>.
- Stuttering Foundation of America. 3100 Walnut Grove Road, Suite 603, P.O. Box 11749, Memphis, TN 38111-0749. <<http://www.stuttersfa.org>>.

Rodney Gabel, Ph.D.

## Substance-induced anxiety disorder

### Definition

Prominent **anxiety** symptoms (i.e., generalized anxiety, panic attacks, obsessive-compulsive symptoms, or phobia symptoms) determined to be caused by the effects of a psychoactive substance is the primary feature of a **substance-induced psychotic disorder**. A substance may induce psychotic symptoms during intoxication (i.e., while the individual is under the influence of the drug) or during withdrawal (i.e., after an individual stops using the drug).

### Description

A substance-induced anxiety disorder is subtyped or categorized based on whether the prominent feature is generalized anxiety, panic attacks, obsessive-compulsive symptoms, or phobia symptoms. In addition, the disorder is subtyped based on whether it began during intoxication on a substance or during withdrawal from a substance. A substance-induced anxiety disorder that begins during substance use can last as long as the drug is used. A substance-induced anxiety disorder that begins during withdrawal may first manifest up to four weeks after an individual stops using the substance.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

A substance-induced anxiety disorder, by definition, is directly caused by the effects of drugs—including alcohol, medications, and toxins. Anxiety symptoms can result from intoxication on alcohol,

**amphetamines** (and related substances), caffeine, **cannabis** (marijuana), **cocaine**, hallucinogens, inhalants, **phencyclidine** (PCP) and related substances, and other or unknown substances. Anxiety symptoms can also result from withdrawal from alcohol, **sedatives**, hypnotics, and anxiolytics, cocaine, and other or unknown substances. Some of the medications which may induce anxiety symptoms include anesthetics and analgesics, sympathomimetics (epinephrine or norepinephrine, for example) or other bronchodilators, anticholinergic agents, anticonvulsants, antihistamines, insulin, thyroid preparations, oral contraceptives, anti-hypertensive and cardiovascular medications, antiparkinsonian medications, corticosteroids, antidepressant medications, **lithium carbonate**, and antipsychotic medications. Heavy metals and toxins, such as volatile substances like fuel and paint, organophosphate insecticides, nerve gases, carbon monoxide, and carbon dioxide may also induce anxiety.

#### Symptoms

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, (DSM-IV-TR)—produced by the American Psychiatric Association and used by most mental health professionals in North America and Europe to diagnose mental disorders—notes that a **diagnosis** is made only when the anxiety symptoms are above and beyond what would be expected during intoxication or withdrawal and when severe. The following list is the criteria necessary for the diagnosis of a substance-induced anxiety disorder as listed in the DSM-IV-TR:

- Prominent anxiety, panic attacks, or obsessions or compulsions.
- Symptoms develop during, or within one month, of intoxication or withdrawal from a substance or medication known to cause anxiety symptoms.
- Symptoms are not actually part of another anxiety disorder (such as generalized anxiety disorder, phobias, panic disorder, or obsessive-compulsive personality disorder) that is not substance induced. For instance, if the anxiety symptoms began prior to substance or medication use, then another anxiety disorder is likely.
- Symptoms do not occur only during delirium.
- Symptoms cause significant distress or impairment in functioning.

### Demographics

Little is known regarding the demographics of substance-induced **anxiety disorders**. However, it is clear that they occur more commonly in individuals who **abuse** alcohol or other drugs.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosis of a substance-induced anxiety disorder must be differentiated from an anxiety disorder due to a general medical condition. There are some medical conditions (such as hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, or hypoglycemia) that can produce anxiety symptoms, and since individuals are likely to be taking medications for these conditions, it can be difficult to determine the cause of the anxiety symptoms. If the symptoms are determined to be due to the medical condition, then a diagnosis of an anxiety disorder due to a general medical condition is warranted. Substance-induced anxiety disorders also need to be distinguished from delirium, **dementia**, primary psychotic disorders, and substance intoxication and withdrawal.

Clinical history and physical examination are the best methods to help diagnose anxiety disorders in general; however, appropriate laboratory testing will most likely be necessary to specifically identify substance-induced anxiety disorder. Lab tests may include:

- complete blood count (CBC)
- chemistry panels
- serum and/or urine screens for drugs

## Treatments

The underlying cause of the anxiety symptoms, as well as the specific type of symptoms, determine course of treatment and is often similar to treatment for a primary anxiety disorder such as generalized anxiety disorder, phobias, panic disorder, or **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. Appropriate treatment usually includes medication (antianxiety or antidepressant medication, for example).

## Prognosis

Anxiety symptoms induced by substance intoxication usually subside once the substance responsible is eliminated. Symptoms persist depending on the half-life of the substances (i.e., how long it takes the before the substance is no longer present in an individual's system). Symptoms, therefore, can persist for hours, days, or weeks after a substance is last used. Obsessive-compulsive symptoms induced by substances sometimes do not disappear, even although the substance inducing them has been eliminated. More intensive treatment for the obsessive-compulsive symptoms would be necessary and should include a combination of medication and behavioral therapy.

## KEY TERMS

**Anticholinergic agents**—Medicines that include atropine, belladonna, hyoscyamine, scopolamine, and related products; used to relieve cramps or spasms of the stomach, intestines, and bladder.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Obsessive-compulsive**—Characterized by obsessive and compulsive behaviors.

**Phobia**—Irrational fear of places, things, or situations that lead to avoidance.

**Psychoactive substance**—A drug that produces mood changes and distorted perceptions; mind-altering drug.

**Sympathomimetics**—Drugs that mimic the effects of impulses conveyed by adrenergic postganglionic fibres of the sympathetic nervous system.

## Prevention

Little is documented regarding the prevention of substance-induced anxiety disorder. However, abstaining from drugs and alcohol, or using these substances only in moderation, would clearly reduce the risk of developing this disorder. In addition, taking medication under the supervision of an appropriately trained physician should reduce the likelihood of a medication-induced anxiety disorder. Finally, reducing one's exposure to toxins and heavy metals would reduce the risk of toxin-induced anxiety disorder.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Amphetamines and related disorders; Antianxiety drugs and abuse-related disorders; Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Caffeine and related disorders; Cannabis and related disorders; Cocaine and related disorders; Hallucinogens and related disorders; Inhalants and related disorders; Phencyclidine and related disorders; Psychosis; Sedatives and related disorders; Substance abuse and related disorders; Substance-induced psychotic disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins.

Jennifer Hahn, Ph.D.

Substance-induced persisting amnestic disorder see **Amnestic disorders; Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome**

symptoms can result from intoxication on alcohol, **amphetamines** (and related substances), **cannabis** (marijuana), **cocaine**, hallucinogens, inhalants, **opioids**, **phencyclidine** (PCP) and related substances, **sedatives**, hypnotics, anxiolytics, and other or unknown substances. Psychotic symptoms can also result from withdrawal from alcohol, sedatives, hypnotics, anxiolytics, and other or unknown substances.

Some medications that may induce psychotic symptoms include anesthetics and analgesics, anticholinergic agents, anticonvulsants, antihistamines, antihypertensive and cardiovascular medications, antimicrobial medications, antiparkinsonian medications, chemotherapeutic agents, corticosteroids, gastrointestinal medications, muscle relaxants, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory medications, other over-the-counter medications, antidepressant medications, and **disulfiram**. Toxins that may induce psychotic symptoms include anticholinesterase, organophosphate insecticides, nerve gases, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and volatile substances (such as fuel or paint).

The speed of onset of psychotic symptoms varies depending on the type of substance. For example, using a lot of cocaine can produce psychotic symptoms within minutes. On the other hand, psychotic symptoms may result from alcohol use only after days or weeks of intensive use.

The type of psychotic symptoms also tends to vary according to the type of substance. For instance, auditory hallucinations (specifically, hearing voices), visual hallucinations, and tactile hallucinations are most common in an alcohol-induced psychotic disorder, whereas persecutory delusions and tactile hallucinations (especially formication) are commonly seen in a cocaine- or amphetamine-induced psychotic disorder.

### Symptoms

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM-IV-TR*) notes that a **diagnosis** is made only when the psychotic symptoms are above and beyond what would be expected during intoxication or withdrawal and when the psychotic symptoms are severe. Following are criteria necessary for diagnosis of a substance-induced psychotic disorder as listed in the *DSM-IV-TR*:

- Presence of prominent hallucinations or delusions.
- Hallucinations and/or delusions develop during, or within one month of, intoxication or withdrawal from a substance or medication known to cause psychotic symptoms.
- Psychotic symptoms are not actually part of another psychotic disorder (such as schizophrenia, schizoaffective disorder, schizoaffective disorder) that

## Description

Prominent psychotic symptoms (i.e., **hallucinations** and/or **delusions**) determined to be caused by the effects of a psychoactive substance is the primary feature of a substance-induced psychotic disorder. A substance may induce psychotic symptoms during intoxication (while the individual is under the influence of the drug) or during withdrawal (after an individual stops using the drug).

A substance-induced psychotic disorder is subtyped or categorized based on whether the prominent feature is delusions or hallucinations. Delusions are fixed, false beliefs. Hallucinations are seeing, hearing, feeling, tasting, or smelling things that are not there. In addition, the disorder is subtyped based on whether it began during intoxication on a substance or during withdrawal from a substance. A substance-induced psychotic disorder that begins during substance use can last as long as the drug is used. A substance-induced psychotic disorder that begins during withdrawal may first manifest up to four weeks after an individual stops using the substance.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

A substance-induced psychotic disorder, by definition, is directly caused by the effects of drugs including alcohol, medications, and toxins. Psychotic

is not substance induced. For instance, if the psychotic symptoms began prior to substance or medication use, then another psychotic disorder is likely.

- Psychotic symptoms do not only occur during delirium.

## Demographics

Little known regarding the demographics of substance-induced **psychosis**. However, it is clear that substance-induced psychotic disorders occur more commonly in individuals who **abuse** alcohol or other drugs.

## Diagnosis

Diagnosis of a substance-induced psychotic disorder must be differentiated from a psychotic disorder due to a general medical condition. Some medical conditions (such as temporal lobe epilepsy or Huntington's chorea) can produce psychotic symptoms, and, since individuals are likely to be taking medications for these conditions, it can be difficult to determine the cause of the psychotic symptoms. If the symptoms are determined to be due to the medical condition, then a diagnosis of a psychotic disorder due to a general medical condition is warranted.

Substance-induced psychotic disorder also needs to be distinguished from delirium, **dementia**, primary psychotic disorders, and substance intoxication and withdrawal. While there are no absolute means of determining substance use as a cause, a good patient history that includes careful assessment of onset and course of symptoms, along with that of substance use, is imperative. Often, the patient's testimony is unreliable, necessitating the gathering of information from family, friends, coworkers, employment records, medical records, and the like. Differentiating between substance-induced disorder and a psychiatric disorder may be aided by the following:

- Time of onset: If symptoms began prior to substance use, it is most likely a psychiatric disorder.
- Substance use patterns: If symptoms persist for three months or longer after substance is discontinued, a psychiatric disorder is probable.
- Consistency of symptoms: Symptoms more exaggerated than one would expect with a particular substance type and dose most likely amounts to a psychiatric disorder.
- Family History: A family history of mental illness may indicate a psychiatric disorder.
- Response to substance abuse treatment: Clients with both psychiatric and substance use disorders often

have serious difficulty with traditional substance abuse treatment programs and relapse during or shortly after treatment cessation.

- Client's stated reason for substance use: Those with a primary psychiatric diagnosis and secondary substance use disorder will often indicate they "medicate symptoms," for example, drink to dispel auditory hallucinations, use stimulants to combat depression, use depressants to reduce anxiety or soothe a manic phase. While such substance use most often exacerbates the psychotic condition, it does not necessarily mean it is a substance-induced psychotic disorder.

Unfortunately, psychological tests are not always helpful in determining if a psychotic disorder is caused by substance use or is being exacerbated by it. However, evaluations, such as the MMPI-2 MAC-R scale or the Wechsler Memory Scale—Revised, can be useful in making a differential diagnosis.

## Treatments

Treatment is determined by the underlying cause and severity of psychotic symptoms. However, treatment of a substance-induced psychotic disorder is often similar to treatment for a primary psychotic disorder such as schizophrenia. Appropriate treatments may include psychiatric **hospitalization** and antipsychotic medication.

## Prognosis

Psychotic symptoms induced by substance intoxication usually subside once the substance is eliminated. Symptoms persist depending on the half-life of the substances (i.e., how long it takes the before the substance is no longer present in an individual's system). Symptoms, therefore, can persist for hours, days, or weeks after a substance is last used.

## Prevention

There is very little documented regarding prevention of substance-induced psychotic disorder. However, abstaining from drugs and alcohol or using these substances only in moderation would clearly reduce the risk of developing this disorder. In addition, taking medication under the supervision of an appropriately trained physician should reduce the likelihood of a medication-induced psychotic disorder. Finally, reducing one's exposure to toxins would reduce the risk of toxin-induced psychotic disorder.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Amphetamines and related disorders; Antianxiety drugs and abuse-related disorders; Cannabis and related

## KEY TERMS

**Anticholinergic agents**—Medicines that include atropine, belladonna, hyoscyamine, scopolamine, and related products; used to relieve cramps or spasms of the stomach, intestines, and bladder.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness.

**Delusion**—A false belief that is resistant to reason or contrary to actual fact.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Hallucinations**—False sensory perceptions. A person experiencing a hallucination may "hear" sounds or "see" people or objects that are not really present. Hallucinations can also affect the senses of smell, touch, and taste.

**Persecutory delusions**—Unrealistic conviction of being harassed, tormented, and persecuted.

**Psychotic/psychosis**—Episodes of inability to accurately perceive reality, think logically, and speak or behave normally. Hallucinations and delusions are symptoms of psychosis.

disorders; Cocaine and related disorders; Hallucinogens and related disorders; Inhalants and related disorders; Opioids and related disorders; Phencyclidine and related disorders; Psychosis; Sedatives and related drugs; Substance abuse and related disorders; Substance-induced anxiety disorders.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Kaplan, Harold I., M.D., and Benjamin J. Sadock, M.D. *Kaplan and Sadock's Synopsis of Psychiatry: Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 2002.

Jennifer Hahn, Ph.D.

## Substance abuse and related disorders

### Definition

Substance-related disorders are disorders of intoxication, dependence, **abuse**, and substance withdrawal caused by various substances, both legal and illegal. These substances include: alcohol, **amphetamines**, caffeine, inhalants, **nicotine**, prescription medications that may be abused (such as **sedatives**), **opioids** (morphine, heroin), marijuana (**cannabis**), **cocaine**, hallucinogens, and **phencyclidine** (PCP).

### Description

According to the mental health clinician's handbook, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (the *DSM*), fourth edition text revised (*DSM-IV-TR*), all of the substances listed above, with the exceptions of nicotine and caffeine, have disorders of two types: substance use disorders and substance-induced disorders. Substance use disorders include abuse and dependence. Substance-induced disorders include intoxication, withdrawal, and various mental states (**dementia**, **psychosis**, **anxiety**, mood disorder, etc.) that the substance induces when it is used.

Substance dependence is characterized by continued use of a substance even after the user has experienced serious substance-related problems. The dependent user desires the substance ("craving") and needs more of the substance to achieve the effect that a lesser amount of the substance induced in the past. This phenomenon is known as tolerance. The dependent user also experiences withdrawal symptoms when the substance is not used. Withdrawal symptoms vary with the substance, but some symptoms may include increased heart rate, shaking, **insomnia**, **fatigue**, and irritability.

Substance abuse is continued use of a substance in spite of school- or work-related or interpersonal problems, but the user has not gotten dependent on the substance. The individual who abuses a substance may experience legal problems and may have problems fulfilling responsibilities, such as caring for a child.

Intoxication is the direct effect of the substance after an individual has used or has been exposed to the substance. Different substances affect individuals in various ways, but some of the effects seen in intoxication might include impaired judgment, emotional instability, increase or decrease in appetite, or changed sleep patterns.

The *DSM-IV-TR* does not recognize caffeine abuse or dependence, but does recognize the caffeine-

## KEY TERMS

**Aphetamines**—A group of powerful and highly addictive substances that stimulate the central nervous system. May be prescribed for various medical conditions, but are often purchased illicitly and abused.

**Anxiety**—A feeling of apprehension and fear characterized by physical symptoms (heart palpitations, sweating, and feelings of stress, for example).

**Anxiolytic**—A preparation or substance given to relieve anxiety; a tranquilizer.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Hallucinogens**—Substances that cause hallucinations.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Inhalants**—A class of drugs that are inhaled in order for the user to experience a temporary "high." These chemicals include volatile solvents (liquids that vaporize at room temperature) and aerosols

(sprays that contain solvents and propellants), and include glue, gasoline, paint thinner, hair spray, and others. They are dangerous because they can cause hallucinations, delusions, difficulty breathing, headache, nausea, vomiting, and even "sudden sniffing death." Inhalants can also cause permanent damage to the brain, lung, kidney, muscle, and heart.

**Opioids**—Substances that reduce pain and may induce sleep. Some opioids are endogenous, which means that they are produced within the human body. Other opioids are produced by plants or formulated synthetically in the laboratory.

**Phencyclidine**—The full name of the drug commonly called PCP that is often abused to induce hallucinations.

**Psychosis**—Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

**Sedative**—A medication that induces relaxation and sleep.

induced disorders caffeine intoxication (restlessness, nervousness, excitement, etc. after caffeine consumption), caffeine-induced anxiety disorder (feelings of anxiety or panic attacks after caffeine consumption), and caffeine-induced sleep disorder (usually insomnia, but some may experience excessive sleepiness when caffeine is not consumed). As for nicotine, the *DSM-IV-TR* recognizes nicotine dependence and nicotine withdrawal.

The *DSM-IV-TR* lists disorders in the following categories:

- alcohol-related disorders
- amphetamine-related disorders
- caffeine-related disorders
- cannabis-related disorders
- cocaine-related disorders
- hallucinogen-related disorders
- inhalant-related disorders
- nicotine-related disorders
- opioid-related disorders
- phencyclidine-related disorders

- sedative-, hypnotic-, or anxiolytic-related disorders
- polysubstance dependence

*See also* Addiction; Alcohol and related disorders; Amnestic disorders; Amphetamines and related disorders; Antianxiety drugs and abuse-related disorders; Caffeine and related disorders; Cannabis and related disorders; Cocaine and related disorders; Denial; Disease concept of chemical dependency; Hallucinogens and related disorders; Inhalants and related disorders; Nicotine and related disorders; Opioids and related disorders; Phencyclidine and related disorders; Poly-substance dependence; Sedatives and related drugs; Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory; Substance-induced anxiety disorder; Substance-induced psychotic disorder; Urine drug screening; Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. Fourth edition, text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

## Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory

### Definition

The **Substance Abuse** Subtle Screening Inventory is also referred to as the SASSI. Dr. Glenn A. Miller developed the SASSI as a screening questionnaire for identifying people with a high probability of having a substance dependence disorder.

### Purpose

The SASSI is intended for gathering information, organizing it, and using it to help make decisions about the likelihood of an individual having a substance dependence disorder, even if the individual does not acknowledge symptoms of the disorder or misuse of substances. Guidelines are available for professionals to flag individuals with a potential substance **abuse** disorder for further evaluation. Interpreting the results of the SASSI helps professionals understand their clients better and plan their treatment.

### Precautions

When used by trained professionals, the SASSI can be an important tool in the assessment of substance use disorders. The SASSI is not intended to prove or diagnose an individual as an alcoholic or addict; it is intended to screen for a person who has a “high probability of having a substance dependence disorder.” It should be kept in mind that a thorough assessment integrates other available information, such as self-report and family history, and is done by a skilled professional. This comprehensive assessment is required to determine if an individual meets the accepted standards in the mental health professional’s handbook, *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, for a clinical **diagnosis** of a substance-related disorder.

The accuracy rate of the SASSI is 94%. Although that is very high, this means that there is a 6% probability that an individual will be misclassified based on SASSI scores. While the SASSI is a popular and widely used screening questionnaire, independent research on it has been limited. Some researchers have questions about the SASSI regarding the extent to which subscales measure what they are intended to measure and the accuracy of classification based on direct versus indirect scales. In addition, the SASSI is not to be used to discriminate against individuals, including disqualifying job applicants. It would be a

violation of the Americans With Disabilities Act to eliminate a job applicant based on SASSI scores.

### Description

The SASSI is a simple, brief one-page paper-and-pencil questionnaire that can be answered in 10 to 15 minutes. The SASSI is easy to administer, to individuals or groups, and can be objectively scored by hand and interpreted, based on objective decision rules, in a minute or two. Optical scanning equipment is available for mass scoring and interpretation. The SASSI does not require a high level of reading ability. The SASSI may be used by a variety of programs and professionals, including school counselors, student assistance programs, employee assistance programs, vocational counselors, psychotherapists, medical personnel, criminal justice programs, and other human service providers.

The SASSI went through rigorous scientific development over a 16-year period before it was first published in 1988. Two new scales were added, and the SASSI-2 was published in 1994. In 1997 the SASSI-3 was published with a new scale and increased accuracy. Items on the SASSI were selected based on established research methods and statistical analysis. Items were included that identified individuals with substance dependence disorders. The selected items were consistently answered differently by individuals with a substance dependence disorder compared to individuals without a substance dependence disorder.

In 1996, a Spanish version was made available. In addition to the paper and pencil format, computer versions of the SASSI, in several formats, are available.

Some questions on the SASSI ask how frequently clients have had certain experiences directly related to alcohol and other drugs. These are answered on a four-point scale, ranging from never to repeatedly. Some items that may appear to be unrelated to substance use (indirect or subtle items) are in a true/false format. Overall, the items make up 10 subscales. The results are reported on a profile form that is discussed with the client. There are separate profile forms for males and females. The objective scoring system results in a yes or no answer about whether the client has a high probability of having a substance dependence disorder. The SASSI-3 has been empirically tested and can identify substance dependence disorder with an overall accuracy of 94%. More specifically, the SASSI identifies individuals with a substance dependence disorder with 94% accuracy, and it identifies those without a substance dependence disorder

with 94% accuracy. The accuracy of the SASSI is not significantly affected by gender, age, socioeconomic status, ethnicity, occupational status, marital status, educational level, drug of choice, and general level of functioning. Research is ongoing to improve the accuracy and usefulness of the SASSI.

Since 1990 an adolescent version of the SASSI has been available. The second version of the Adolescent SASSI (SASSI-A2) has a 94% overall accuracy of identifying an adolescent with a substance dependence disorder, including both substance abuse and substance dependence. The SASSI-A2 is designed to screen individuals who are 12 to 18 years old. The accuracy of the SASSI-A2 is not affected by the respondent's gender, age, ethnicity, education, employment status, living situation, prior legal history, or general level of functioning.

## Results

A profile of the SASSI results will be reviewed with the client. The actual scores are plotted on a profile graph in comparison to a sample of people who were not being evaluated or treated for addictions or other clinical problems (also called a normative sample). Feedback is then given in terms of whether the individual has a high or low probability of having a substance dependence disorder. Individual scale scores may be used to come up with ideas or hypotheses for further evaluation and treatment. This information is based on clinical experience with the SASSI. The results may indicate issues that are important for treatment (such as difficulty acknowledging personal shortcomings, or primarily focusing on others' needs while unaware of one's own needs). The results may suggest an approach to take with the client (such as increasing awareness, or acknowledging and validating their feelings). The results may suggest a treatment plan that the client may respond to (such as **addiction-self-help groups** or an education-focused program). Finally, the results may indicate appropriate treatment goals for the client (anger management and/or social skills, for example). The goal of providing feedback about SASSI results is to have a two-way sharing and understanding of information that is descriptive and not judgmental.

*See also* Substance abuse and related disorders; Diagnosis.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Miller, Franklin G., Ph.D., et al. *SASSI-3 User's Guide: A Quick Reference for Administration and Scoring*. Bloomington: Baugh Enterprises, 1997.

- The SASSI Institute. *Summary of the Consistency and Accuracy of the Adolescent SASSI-A2 for Non-Statisticians*. Springville: The SASSI Institute, 2001.  
The SASSI Institute. *The Reliability and Validity of the SASSI-3*. Springville: The SASSI Institute, 1998.

### PERIODICALS

- Gray, B. Thomas. "A Factor Analytic Study of the Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory (SASSI)." *Educational and Psychological Measurement* 61 (2001): 102–118.

Joneis Thomas, Ph.D.

## ■ Suicide

### Definition

Suicide is defined as the intentional taking of one's own life. In some European languages, the word for suicide translates into English as "self-murder." Until the end of the twentieth century, approximately, suicide was considered a criminal act; legal terminology used the Latin phrase *felo-de-se*, which means "a crime against the self." Much of the social **stigma** that is still associated with suicide derives from its former connection with legal judgment, as well as with religious condemnation.

In the social climate of 2007, suicidal behavior is most commonly regarded—and responded to—as a psychiatric emergency.

### Demographics of suicide

There are almost 11 suicide deaths each year for every 100,000 people living in the United States, and for every suicide, there were between eight and 20 attempts. There are over 30,000 suicides each year in the United States, or about 82 each day; each day about 1,500 people attempt suicide. The demographics of suicide vary considerably from state to state, with rates higher than the national average in the West and lower in the Midwest and Northeast. Some states, like Alaska, have suicide rates that are almost twice the national average; others, such as Massachusetts, have notably lower rates.

These variations from state to state result in part from differences in age and ethnic distributions and gender ratios among the states. In 2004, suicide was the eleventh leading cause of death in the United States, according to the National Institute of Mental Health, and it was the eighth leading cause of death among males and sixteenth leading cause of death among females. Males are four times more likely

than females to succeed in their suicide attempts, but females report attempting suicide sometime in their lives three times as often as men. Among ethnic groups, suicide rates are highest among white males, followed closely by American Indian and Native Alaskan males. In terms of age, most suicides are committed by people under age 40, but suicide rates (percentages in a given group) increase with age. People over age 65 have high suicide rates, with men outnumbering women who commit suicide nearly four to one. Among people over age 65, suicide rates are high compared to the national average, with slightly more than 14 deaths for every 100,000 people in this age group, and among Hispanic men in this age group, rates are even higher at almost 18 deaths per 100,000 men.

The overall rate of suicide among young people has declined slowly since 1992, but it still remains the third leading cause of death in age groups spanning children 10 years old to young adults up to age 24. Suicides among young people ages 15 to 24 show an extreme male bias: Four times as many males as females ages 15 to 19 and six times as many males age 20 to 24 committed suicide in 2004. Over half of suicides in this group were firearm related, and males in general are far more likely to use firearms.

### **High-risk factors**

Research indicates that the following factors increase a person's risk of suicide:

- Male sex.
- Age over 75.
- A family history of suicide.
- A history of suicide attempts.
- A history of abuse in childhood.
- Traumatic experiences after childhood
- Recent stressful events, such as separation or divorce, job loss, or death of spouse.
- Chronic medical illness. Patients with AIDS have a rate of suicide 20 times that of the general population.
- Access to a firearm. Death by firearms now accounts for the majority of suicides.
- Alcohol or substance abuse. While mood-altering substances do not cause a person to kill himself or herself, they weaken impulse control.
- High blood cholesterol levels.
- Presence of a psychiatric illness. Over 90% of Americans who commit suicide have a mental illness. Major depression accounts for 60% of suicides, followed by schizophrenia, alcoholism, substance abuse, borderline personality disorder, Huntington's disease, and epilepsy. The lifetime mortality due to

suicide in psychiatric patients is 15% for major depression; 20% for bipolar disorder; 18% for alcoholism; 10% for schizophrenia; and 5–10% for borderline and certain other personality disorders.

### **Low-risk factors**

Factors that lower a person's risk of suicide include:

- A significant friendship network outside the workplace.
- Religious faith and practice, especially those that discourage suicide and encourage self preservation.
- A stable marriage.
- A close-knit extended family.
- A strong interest in or commitment to a project or cause that brings people together: community service, environmental concerns, neighborhood associations, animal rescue groups, etc.

### **Suicide in other countries**

Suicide has become a major social and medical problem around the world. The World Health Organization (WHO) reported that one million people worldwide died from suicide in the year 2000. That is a global mortality rate of 16:100,000—or one death by suicide every 40 seconds. Since the mid-1950s, suicide rates around the world have risen by 60%. Rates among young people have risen even faster, to the point where they are now the age group at highest risk in 35% of the world's countries.

The specific demographics, however, vary from country to country. China's pattern, for example, is very different from that of most other countries. China has a suicide mortality rate of 23:100,000, with a total of 287,000 deaths by suicide each year. The rate for women is 25% higher than that for men, and rates in rural areas are three times higher than in cities. The means also vary; in China, Sri Lanka, and Turkey the primary means of suicide is ingestion of pesticides, rather than using firearms.

### **Causes**

Suicide is an act that represents the end result of a combination of factors in any individual. One model that has been used by clinicians to explain why people suffering under the same life stresses respond differently is known as the stress/diathesis model. Diathesis is a medical term for a predisposition that makes some people more vulnerable to thoughts of suicide. In addition to factors at the individual level, factors in the wider society have been identified as contributing to the rising rate of suicide in the United States:

- Stresses on the nuclear family, including divorce and economic hardship.
- The loss of a set of moral values held in common by the entire society.
- The weakening of churches, synagogues, and other mid-range social groups outside the family. In the past, these institutions often provided a sense of belonging for people from troubled or emotionally distant families.
- Frequent geographical moves, which makes it hard for people to make and keep long-term friendships outside their immediate family.
- Sensationalized treatment of suicide in the mass media. A number of research studies have shown that there is a definite risk of “contagion” suicides from irresponsible reporting, particularly among impressionable adolescents.
- The development over the past century of medications that allow relatively painless suicide. For most of human history, the available means of suicide were uncertain, painful, or both.
- The easy availability of firearms in the United States.

### Treatment of attempted suicide

Researchers estimate that 8–25 people attempt suicide for every person who completes the act. Suicide attempts can be broadly categorized along a continuum that ranges from seriously planned attempts involving a highly lethal method that fail by chance to impulsive or poorly planned attempts using a less lethal method. Suicide attempts at the lower end of the spectrum are sometimes referred to as suicide gestures or pseudocide.

A suicide attempt of any kind, however, is treated as a psychiatric emergency by rescue personnel. Treatment in a hospital emergency room includes a complete psychiatric evaluation, a mental status examination, and a detailed assessment of the circumstances surrounding the attempt. The physician will interview relatives or anyone else who accompanied the patient in order to obtain as much information as possible. As a rule, suicide attempts requiring advance planning, including precautions taken against discovery, and the use of violent or highly lethal methods are regarded as the most serious. The patient will be kept under observation while decisions are made about the need for **hospitalization**.

A person who has attempted suicide and who is considered a serious danger to him- or herself or to others can be hospitalized against their will. The doctor will base the decision on the severity of the patient’s depression or agitation; availability of friends, relatives, or other social support; and the presence of other sui-

cide risk factors, including a history of previous suicide attempts, substance abuse, recent stressful events, and symptoms of **psychosis**. If the attempt is judged to be a nonlethal suicide gesture, the patient may be released after the psychiatric assessment is completed.

### Related issues

#### *Survivors of suicide*

One group of people that is often overlooked in discussions of suicide is the friends and family of the victim. It is estimated that each person who kills himself or herself leaves six survivors to deal with the aftermath. Based on this figure, there are some 4.5 million survivors of suicide in the United States. In addition to the **grief** that ordinarily accompanies death, survivors of suicide often struggle with feelings of guilt and shame as well. In spite of a general liberalization of social attitudes since World War II, suicide is still stigmatized in many parts of Europe and the United States. Survivors often benefit from group or individual **psychotherapy** in order to work through such issues as wondering whether they could have prevented the suicide or whether they are likely to commit suicide themselves. Increasing numbers of clergy as well as mental health professionals are taking advanced training in counseling survivors of suicide.

#### *Assisted suicide*

One question that has been raised in developed countries as the average life expectancy increases is the legalization of assisted suicide a person suffering from a painful terminal illness. Physician-assisted suicide and euthanasia have become topics of concern since legalization of one or both by recent legislation in the Netherlands (in April 2001), Belgium (in 2002), and in the state of Oregon (passed in 1994; upheld by the U.S. Supreme Court in 2005). It is important to distinguish between physician-assisted suicide and euthanasia, or “mercy killing.” Assisted suicide, which is often called “self-deliverance” in Britain, refers to a person’s bringing about his or her own death with the help of another person. Because the other person is often a doctor, the act is often called “physician-assisted suicide.” Strictly speaking, euthanasia means that the physician or other person is the one who performs the last act that causes death. For example, if a physician injects a patient with a lethal overdose of a medication, he or she is performing euthanasia. If the physician leaves the patient with a loaded syringe and the patient injects himself or herself with it, the act is an assisted suicide. As of 2007, assisted suicide is illegal everywhere in the

## KEY TERMS

**Assisted suicide**—A form of self-inflicted death in which a person voluntarily brings about his or her own death with the help of another, usually a physician, relative, or friend.

**Cortisol**—A steroid hormone released by the cortex (outer portion) of the adrenal gland when a person is under stress. Cortisol levels are now considered a biological marker of suicide risk.

**Dexamethasone test**—Serves as a marker of suicide risk by reflecting signaling activity between the brain and the adrenal gland.

**Diathesis**—The medical term for predisposition. The stress/diathesis model is a diagram that is used to explain why some people are at greater risk of suicidal behavior than others.

**Euthanasia**—The act of putting a person or animal to death painlessly or allowing them to die by withholding medical services, usually because of a painful and incurable disease. Mercy killing is another term for euthanasia.

**Frontal cortex**—The part of the human brain associated with aggressiveness and impulse control. Abnormalities in the frontal cortex are associated with an increased risk of suicide.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Slow suicide**—A term used to refer to lifestyle behaviors known to shorten life expectancy, such as smoking, drinking heavily, having unsafe sex, etc.

**Suicide gesture**—Attempted suicide characterized by a low-lethality method, low level of intent or planning, and little physical damage. Pseudocide is another term for a suicide gesture.

United States except for Oregon, and euthanasia is illegal in all fifty states.

### *Media treatment of suicide*

In 1989, the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) sponsored a national workshop to address the issue of the connection between sensationalized media treatments of suicide and the rising rate of suicide among American youth. The CDC and the American Association of Suicidology subsequently adopted a set of guidelines for media coverage of suicide intended to reduce the risk of suicide by contagion.

The CDC guidelines point out that the following types of reporting may increase the risk of “copycat” suicides:

- Presenting oversimplified explanations of suicide, when in fact many factors usually contribute to it. One example concerns the suicide of the widow of a man who was killed in the collapse of the World Trade Center on September 11, 2001. Most newspapers that covered the story described her death as due solely to the act of terrorism, even though she had a history of depressive illness.
- Excessive, ongoing, or repetitive coverage of the suicide.
- Sensationalizing the suicide by inclusion of morbid details or dramatic photographs. Some news accounts

of the suicide of an Enron executive in January 2002 are examples of this problem.

- Giving “how-to” descriptions of the method of suicide.
- Referring to suicide as an effective coping strategy or as a way to achieve certain goals.
- Glorifying the act of suicide or the person who commits suicide.
- Focusing on the person’s positive traits without mentioning his or her problems.

### **Prevention**

Research on **brain** physiology has become an important aspect of suicide prevention. Because major depression is the single most common **diagnosis** in suicidal people, earlier and more effective recognition of depression is a necessary preventive measure. Known biological markers for an increased risk of suicide can now be correlated with personality profiles linked to suicidal behavior under **stress** to help identify individuals at risk. One new clinical parameter that may be considered with personality profiles is the dexamethasone suppression test, which serves as an indicator of hyperactivity of a neuroendocrine hormonal pathway between the brain and the adrenal gland. Another clinical parameter that may be combined with psychological assessment is an assessment of

serotonin function based on cholesterol levels, with high levels indicating a risk. In addition, brain **imaging studies** using **positron emission tomography** (PET) are being used to detect abnormal patterns of serotonin uptake in specific regions of the brain. Genetic studies are also yielding new information about inherited predispositions to suicide.

A second major preventive measure is education of clinicians, media people, and the general public. Public health studies carried out in Sweden have shown that seminars for primary care physicians in the recognition and treatment of depression resulted in a rise in the number of prescriptions for **antidepressants** and a drop in suicide rates. Education of the general public includes a growing number of CDC, NIMH, and other web sites posting information about suicide, tips for identifying symptoms of depressed and suicidal thinking, and advice about helping friends or loved ones who may be at risk. Many of these web sites have direct connections to suicide hotlines.

An additional preventive strategy is restricting access to firearms in the developed countries and to pesticides and other poisons in countries where these are the preferred method of suicide.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Eisendrath, Stuart J., MD, and Jonathan E. Lichtmacher, MD. "Psychiatric Disorders." *Current Medical Diagnosis & Treatment 2001*. Ed. L. M. Tierney Jr., MD, and others. 40th ed. New York: Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, 2001.
- "Psychiatric Emergencies." Section 15, Chapter 194. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. Ed. Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.
- "Suicidal Behavior." Section 15, Chapter 190. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. Ed. Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 2001.
- "Suicide in Children and Adolescents." Section 19, Chapter 264. *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*. Ed. Mark H. Beers, MD, and Robert Berkow, MD. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Research Laboratories, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

- Coryell, William H., MD. "Clinical assessment of suicide risk in depressive disorder." *CNS Spectrums* 11(2006): 255-461.
- Fu, Q., A. C. Heath, K. K. Bucholz, and others. "A Twin Study of Genetic and Environmental Influences

on Suicidality in Men." *Psychology in Medicine* 32 (January 2002): 11-24.

Gibb, Brandon E., Lauren B. Alloy, Lyn Y. Abramson, and others. "Childhood Maltreatment and College Students' Current Suicidal Ideation: A Test of the Hopelessness Theory." *Suicide and Life-Threatening Behavior* 31 (2001): 405-15.

Mancinelli, Iginia, MD, and others. "Mass Suicide: Historical and Psychodynamic Considerations." *Suicide and Life-Threatening Behavior* 32 (2002): 91-100.

## ORGANIZATIONS

American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry. 3615 Wisconsin Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20016-3007. (202) 966-7300. Fax: (202) 966-2891. <[www.aacap.org](http://www.aacap.org)>.

American Association of Suicidology. Suite 310, 4201 Connecticut Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20008. (202) 237-2280. Fax: (202) 237-2282. <[www.suicidology.org](http://www.suicidology.org)>.

National Institutes of Mental Health (NIMH). NIMH Public Inquiries: (800) 421-4211. <[www.nimh.nih.gov](http://www.nimh.nih.gov)>.

## WEB SITES

World Health Organization. "Suicide: Fact Sheet" <<http://www.cdc.gov/ncipc/factsheets/suifacts.htm>> and <<http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/suicide.htm>>.

National Institute of Mental Health. NIH publication 03-4594 (2006) "Suicide in the U.S.: statistics and prevention." <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov/publicat/harmaway.cfm>>.

Suicide Prevention Resource Center. State-by-state information. <<http://www.sprc.org/stateinformation/>> and <<http://www.sprc.org/stateinformation/datasheets.asp>>.

National Library of Medicine. "Suicide" <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/suicide.html>>.

World Health Organization. "Suicide prevention" <[http://www.who.int/mental\\_health/prevention/suicide/suicideprevent/en/](http://www.who.int/mental_health/prevention/suicide/suicideprevent/en/)>.

## OTHER

Befrienders International. <[www.befrienders.org](http://www.befrienders.org)>.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control. *Programs for the Prevention of Suicide Among Adolescents and Young Adults; and Suicide Contagion and the Reporting of Suicide: Recommendations from a National Workshop*. MMWR 1994; 43 (No. RR-6). <[www.cdc.gov/ncipc](http://www.cdc.gov/ncipc)>.

Mann, J. John, MD. "The Neurobiology of Suicide." Mental Health Clinical Research Center for the Study of Suicidal Behavior, Columbia-Presbyterian Medical Center, New York. <[www.afsp.org](http://www.afsp.org)>.

National Suicide Hotline: (800) SUICIDE (800-784-2433).

Rebecca Frey, Ph.D.  
Emily Jane Willingham, Ph.D.

## Support groups

### Definition

Support groups are an informal resource that attempts to provide healing components to a variety of problems and challenges. An informal support outside of family, friends, or professionals often provides greater understanding, more similarity (from individuals experiencing similar life events), an opportunity for empathy and altruism, and a sense of identity for participants. Learning new ways to handle challenges, cope with changes, and maintain new behaviors are all important aspects of the support group experience.

A characteristic unique to support groups is the mutual support members are able to provide one another. This support and validation from other group members help facilitate personal growth and change in a way that individual therapy cannot. Although experts and professionals can provide support and positive direction, the mutual exchange of information between group members is a powerful experience that often induces lasting change.

### Description

Most support groups are facilitated or led by lay persons, often in conjunction with existing organizations (such as NAMI, the National Alliance for the Mentally Ill, or AA, Alcoholics Anonymous). Support groups usually have a set meeting time (generally weekly or monthly), and an open format. Open format means that the groups are ongoing, and members have the option of attending when it is convenient for them. This is in contrast to other types of structured treatment or psycho-educational groups that may meet for a certain number of sessions, with the expectation that participants attend every meeting. The open format allows members to feel some degree of anonymity, and to participate as they are comfortable. For some people, simply attending meetings and listening to the experiences of others can be helpful.

The healing power of groups is well documented, and support groups offer many of the same therapeutic characteristics as more structured groups. These factors include: altruism (chance to help others), belongingness, universality (there are others who struggle with similar challenges), interpersonal learning, guidance, catharsis, identification, self-understanding, instillation of hope, and existential factors (such as the search for larger meaning in life). Each of these factors is directly related to the mutual support that members provide one another.

Support groups are generally less structured than psycho-educational groups or therapy groups, however, each group usually sets its own norms, rules, and schedules. Some groups, such as AA, traditionally reserve time for individual members to discuss their own challenges and progress in front of the group. Others bring in speakers periodically to provide information about disorders or specific coping skills. However, the strength of support groups lies in its members, and their willingness to share their own experiences, challenges, and solutions in the context of the group.

In addition to these traditional, face-to-face support groups, technology has had an impact on the functioning and availability of support groups. There are many listserves, e-mail groups, and chat groups that provide information about specific life problems (adoption of children outside the United States, for example), certain types of mental illness, and specific health problems. While there is always the risk of communicating with others who are not honest, many people benefit from these Internet interactions. Some individuals are actually more comfortable participating in Internet support groups due to the greater anonymity they offer.

There are a variety of problems and challenges that are addressed in support groups. Generally speaking, the severity of the symptom, as well as the phase of the illness or disorder, will determine whether participation in a support group is appropriate. For more severe types of mental illness, such as **schizophrenia**, or **depression** with psychotic episodes, a support group is probably not the optimal **intervention**, particularly at initial onset. After stabilization through therapy and medication (as appropriate), a support group may offer an important addition to more formal treatment. In these cases, the socialization, interpersonal relationships, and social support that can be gained through the group may not be available elsewhere, and as such, it can be a very positive experience for the participant. In a group situation, a participant can learn how to express feelings in a healthy and positive way, practice assertive communication, receive feedback about appropriate and inappropriate content for conversation, receive feedback about nonverbal communication, learn new ways to ask for help from others, be able to help others, learn how to form friendships, and learn new coping skills and behaviors.

### *Types of support groups*

Various types of support groups exist. Some groups provide support for very specific types of loss,

illness, or life adjustment. A representative sample is listed below.

**BEREAVEMENT/GRIEF COUNSELING GROUPS.** Bereavement and **grief counseling** groups provide support to people who have experienced a loss. There are groups for people who have lost a spouse or partner, parents, children, or pets. There are specific groups for people who have lost a loved one due to homicide, **suicide**, SIDS, cancer, or miscarriage. These groups help individuals adjust to the death of a family member or friend, learn how to accept the loss, honor the memory of their loved one, and adjust to life after the loss.

**MEDICAL SUPPORT GROUPS.** Medical support groups may be more short-term than other types of support groups, depending on the specific disorder. Some groups are formed to help patients adjust to specific treatments, such as chemotherapy or radiation, while others focus on longer-term adjustment and recovery issues, such as a breast cancer support group. These groups may have a stronger educational component to help members understand physical changes they may be experiencing as a result of their medical procedures.

**WEIGHT LOSS GROUPS.** Although these groups are very specific in their focus, their individual structures can vary greatly. Some weight loss support groups are actively involved in the process of losing weight, and may include monitoring of diet and exercise, while others focus on maintaining weight loss, and, therefore, may focus more on social support.

**MENTAL HEALTH/ILLNESS SUPPORT GROUPS.** These groups usually focus on specific disorders, such as bipolar or eating disorders. Members of these support groups are often at different phases in dealing with their illnesses, and, therefore, the needs and contributions of individual members may vary greatly from meeting to meeting.

**FAMILY SUPPORT GROUPS.** Family support groups, such as CHADD for parents of children with ADD, or NAMI for families with members who struggle with any type of mental illness, provide support from other parents and children who may be feeling the same level of frustration and exasperation. Meeting others who truly understand one's experience has a very powerful effect. For many parents, participation in a support group is the first opportunity to learn that there are other parents who are experiencing the same challenges and frustrations.

**LIFE TRANSITIONS GROUPS.** Life transitions groups include divorce and aging support groups. Support groups for children of divorce also exist in many communities and schools.

**ADDICTIONS SUPPORT GROUPS.** Traditional **addiction** support groups include Alcoholics Anonymous (AA), Narcotics Anonymous (NA), and Gambler's Anonymous (GA). Many of these groups follow the traditional "12-step" program of working through various aspects of the addiction, and, as such, are more structured than many other types of support groups.

#### *Support group locations*

Support groups meet in many different locations within a community. Hospitals and medical centers may provide meeting locations for medical support groups. **Community mental health** centers, inpatient psychiatric programs, and residential treatment centers are common locations for mental health and mental illness-related support groups. Life transition groups are often provided through schools, senior centers, and daycare centers. Bereavement groups and addiction support groups often meet in churches, community meeting rooms of local businesses, and mental health agencies.

#### *Structure of support groups*

Support groups are most successful when composed of persons close in age who are experiencing similar life challenges. Support groups are usually led by members of the group, such as the chapter president or another member of the organizing group. Some support groups may be led by paraprofessionals if they are offered as part of an aftercare program associated with a treatment facility.

Support groups usually have explicit norms and expectations for member participation, such as respecting members' feelings and opinions, and coming to meetings free from drugs or alcohol. Due to the open nature of most support groups, members typically feel free to miss a session here or there, which is usually not acceptable in a treatment or therapy group.

#### **Conclusion**

Group experiences can be very powerful in changing behavior and maintaining that change. The support group becomes part of the individual's daily life, and promotes healthy functioning by providing reminders about change and support when he or she is feeling down or is drawn toward old patterns. It also provides opportunities to own one's change by helping others. These factors contribute to the positive prognosis for most who participate in a group experience. However, a person could be harmed by a group

experience as well. Much of this risk is dependent on the characteristics of individual members, particularly in support groups that operate without professional guidance. For example, if certain individuals dominate the group with their own agenda, perhaps at the expense of other group members, then the experience may have a negative impact on more vulnerable individuals.

*See also* Grief counseling and therapy.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Yalom, I. D. *The theory and practice of group psychotherapy*. 3rd edition. New York: Basic Books, Inc., 1985.  
 Giuseppe, R. and Galimberti, C., eds. *Towards cyberpsychology: Mind, cognition and society in the internet age*. Amsterdam, Netherlands Antilles: IOS Press, 2001.  
 Kaduson, H.G. and Schaefer, C. E., eds. *Short-term play therapy for children*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

- Evans, J., J. Jones, I. Mansell. "Supporting siblings: Evaluation of support groups for brothers and sisters of children with learning disabilities and challenging behavior." *Journal of Learning Disabilities* 5, no. 1 (Mar 2001): 69-78.  
 Gottlieb, B. H. "Self-help, mutual aid, and support groups among older adults." *Canadian Journal on Aging* 19, Suppl 1 (Sum 2000): 58-74  
 Martin, D. J., D. Riopelle, J. Steckart, N. Geshke, and S. Lin. "Support group participation, HIV viral load and sexual risk behavior" *American Journal of Health Behavior* 25, no. 6 (Nov-Dec 2001): 513-527.  
 Montazeri, A., and others. "Anxiety and depression in breast cancer patients before and after participation in a cancer support group." *Patient Education & Counseling* 45, no. 3 (Dec 2001): 195-198.  
 Sansone, R. A. "Patient-to-patient e-mail: Support for clinical practices." *Eating Disorders: the Journal of Treatment and Prevention* 9, no. 4 (Win 2001): 373-375.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI). <[www.nami.org](http://www.nami.org)>.  
 Children and Adults with Attention Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder (CHADD) <[www.chadd.org](http://www.chadd.org)>.

Deanna Pledge, Ph.D.

Surmontil see **Trimipramine**

SVR-20 see **Sexual violence risk-20**

Symmetrel see **Amantadine**

## Systematic desensitization

### Definition

Systematic desensitization is a technique used to treat phobias and other extreme or erroneous fears based on principles of **behavior modification**.

### Purpose

Systematic desensitization is used to help the client cope with phobias and other fears, and to induce relaxation. In progressive relaxation, one first tightens and then relaxes various muscle groups in the body. During the alternating clenching and relaxing, the client should be focusing on the contrast between the initial tension and the subsequent feelings of relaxation and softening that develop once the tightened muscles are released. After discovering how muscles feel when they are deeply relaxed, repeated practice enables a person to recreate the relaxed sensation intentionally in a variety of situations.

After learning relaxation skills, the client and therapist create an "anxiety hierarchy." The hierarchy is a catalogue of anxiety-provoking situations or stimuli arranged in order from least to most distressing. For a person who is frightened by snakes, the **anxiety** hierarchy might start with seeing a picture of a snake, eventually move to viewing a caged snake from a distance, and culminate in actually handling a snake. With the therapist's support and assistance, the client proceeds through the anxiety hierarchy, responding to the presentation of each fearful image or act by producing the state of relaxation. The person undergoing treatment stays with each step until a relaxed state is reliably produced when faced with each item. As tolerance develops for each identified item in the series, the client moves on to the next. In facing more menacing situations progressively, and developing a consistent pairing of relaxation with the feared object, relaxation rather than anxiety becomes associated with the source of their anxiety. Thus, a gradual desensitization occurs, with relaxation replacing alarm. Several means of confronting the feared situations can be used. In the pre-computer era, the exposure occurred either through imagination and visualization (imagining a plane flight) or through actual real-life—or so-called *in vivo*—encounters with the feared situation (going on an actual plane flight). More recently, during the 1990s, virtual reality or computer simulated exposure has come to be utilized in lieu of *in vivo* exposure. Research findings indicate that mental imagery is the least effective means of exposure; *in*

## KEY TERMS

**Behavior modification**—An approach to therapy based on the principles of operant conditioning. Behavior modification seeks to replace undesirable behaviors with preferable behaviors through the use of positive or negative reinforcement.

**Classical conditioning**—In psychology, a process in which a previously neutral stimulus eventually produces a specific response by being paired repeatedly with another stimulus that produces that response. The best-known example of classical conditioning is Pavlov's dogs, who were conditioned to salivate when they heard a bell ring (the previously neutral stimulus) because the sound had been paired repeatedly with their feeding time.

*vivo* and virtual reality exposure appear to be indistinguishable in terms of effectiveness.

### Description

Systematic desensitization is a therapeutic **intervention** which reduces the learned link between anxiety and objects or situations that are typically fear-producing. The aim of systematic desensitization is to reduce or eliminate fears or phobias that sufferers find are distressing or that impair their ability to manage daily life. By substituting a new response to a feared situation—a trained contradictory response of relaxation which is irreconcilable with an anxious response—phobic reactions are diminished or eradicated.

This behavior modification technique, which is founded on the principles of classical conditioning, was developed by Joseph Wolpe in the 1950s. Some of the most common fears treated with desensitization include fear of public speaking, fear of flying, stage fright, elevator phobias, driving phobias and animal phobias. Relaxation responses are trained to occur

through *progressive relaxation training*, a technique initially perfected by Edmund Jacobson during the 1930s.

### Precautions

Because of the potential for extreme panic reactions to occur, which can increase the phobia, this technique should only be conducted by a well-qualified, trained professional. Also, the relaxation response should be thoroughly learned before confronting the anxiety-provoking hierarchy.

### Normal results

Desensitization is an effective form of therapy. Individuals who have a positive response are enabled to resume daily activities that were previously avoided. The majority of persons undergoing this treatment show symptom reduction.

*See also* Anxiety disorders; Anxiolytics; Benzodiazepines.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Craighead, W. Edward. *Behavior Modification: Principles, Issues, and Applications*. New York: Houghton Mifflin, 1976.
- Wolpe, Joseph. *The Practice of Behavior Therapy*. Tarrytown, NY: Pergamon Press, 1990.

#### PERIODICALS

- North, M. M., S. M. North, and J. R. Coble. "Virtual reality therapy: An effective treatment for psychological disorders." *Student Health Technology and Information* 44 (1997), 59–70.
- Rothbaum, B., L. Hodges, S. Smith, J. H. Lee and L. Price. "A controlled study of virtual reality exposure therapy for the fear of flying." *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology* 68, number 6 (2000), 1020–1026.

Deborah Rosch Eifert, Ph.D.



# T

## Tacrine

### Definition

Tacrine is a drug used to treat **dementia** associated with Alzheimer's disease. In the United States tacrine is sold under the brand name drug Cognex. It is also sometimes called tetrahydroaminoacridine or THA.

### Purpose

Tacrine is used to treat symptoms of Alzheimer's disease in people with mild to moderate illness. The drug may result in mild improvements in thinking for a short period. Tacrine does not cure or stop the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

### Description

The Food and Drug Administration approved tacrine in 1993 for treating Alzheimer's disease. In Alzheimer's disease, some cells in specific regions of the **brain** die. Because of this cell death, these brain cells lose their ability to transmit nerve impulses. Brain cells normally transmit nerve impulses another by secreting various chemicals known as **neurotransmitters**.

Brain cells that make and secrete a neurotransmitter called acetylcholine are affected early in the course of Alzheimer's disease. Tacrine helps prevent the breakdown of acetylcholine in the brain, thus temporarily increasing its concentration. In doing so, tacrine may improve the thinking process by facilitating nerve impulse transmission within the brain.

Tacrine is available as capsules in several different strengths. Tacrine is broken down by the liver.

### Recommended dosage

The dose of tacrine will be different for different people. An initial dosage of tacrine is usually 10 mg

taken four times per day. This dose should be continued for four weeks while liver function is monitored. If no adverse liver effects are detected, the dosage should be increased to 20 mg taken four times per day. Higher dosages such as 30-40 mg given four times per day may also be used. Liver function must be monitored every other week during the first 16 weeks of treatment. After 16 weeks of tacrine therapy, liver function can be assessed every three months. Dosage increases should not occur more often than every four weeks. Tacrine should be taken on an empty stomach between meals, but if stomach upset occurs, it may be taken with food.

If problems in liver function arise, tacrine may be stopped, or the dosage reduced, until liver function returns to normal. Very specific guidelines should be followed by physicians with regard to dosage adjustments based upon the severity of liver effects. Newer drugs that work in the same manner as tacrine are not as toxic to the liver and may be preferred for patients just beginning therapy for Alzheimer's-type dementia.

### Precautions

Tacrine may cause liver damage. It may not be the best drug to treat symptoms of Alzheimer's disease in people with known liver damage. If these individuals take tacrine, their liver function should be closely monitored. Tacrine may also slow heart rates, increase acid secretion in the stomach, make urination difficult, cause breathing difficulties, or contribute to **seizures**. As a result, it should be used carefully in people with certain heart conditions, those who are prone to stomach ulcers, people with bladder obstruction, individuals with asthma, and those with a history of seizure disorders.

People should not stop taking tacrine suddenly because this could cause behavioral disturbances. The drug may be stopped slowly if improvements are not noted by caregivers or physicians.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Dementia**—A group of symptoms (syndrome) associated with a progressive loss of memory and other intellectual functions that is serious enough to interfere with a person's ability to perform the tasks of daily life. Dementia impairs memory, alters personality, leads to deterioration in personal grooming, impairs reasoning ability, and causes disorientation.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Placebo**—An inactive substance or preparation used as a control in experiments with human subjects to test the effectiveness of a drug or herbal preparation. Some patients may experience a medicinal response or experience side effects to a placebo simply because they have faith in its powers even though it contains no medicine.

### Side effects

The most common side effect of tacrine is impaired liver function. This causes 8% of people to stop taking the drug. Other common side effects occurring in at least 5% of people and at twice the rate of placebo are stomach upset (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, indigestion, or anorexia), muscle aches, and difficulty walking. Side effects affecting the stomach appear to be more severe at higher dosages.

Side effects that occur less often are behavioral disturbances, abnormal thinking, hostility, tremor, inability to sleep, slow heart rates, changes in blood pressure, urinary difficulties, rash, flushing, aggravation of asthma, or cold-like symptoms.

Health care providers should be informed immediately if nausea, vomiting, loose stools, or diarrhea occur soon after the dose of tacrine is increased or if rash, jaundice (yellow tinge to eyes or skin), or changes in stool color occur at any time.

### Interactions

Many drugs can alter the effects of tacrine. Some drugs such as dicyclomine may lessen the effects of tacrine. Other drugs such as **propranolol**, cimetidine, ciprofloxacin, **fluoxetine**, **fluvoxamine**, neostigmine, or bethanechol may increase some of tacrine's side effects. **Rivastigmine** may interact with some of the drugs used to relax muscles during surgery. The interaction increases the effects of both drugs.

Tacrine may also diminish the effects of levodopa and increase the side effects of theophylline. Smoking cigarettes may reduce the effectiveness of tacrine.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Ellsworth, Allan J., et al., eds. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, Inc, 1999.

Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th Edition. St. Louis, MO: Facts and Comparisons, 2002.

Medical Economics Co. Staff. *Physician's Desk Reference*. 56th edition Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2002.

Kelly Karpa, RPh, Ph.D.

T'ai chi see **Bodywork therapies**

## Talk therapy

### Definition

Talk therapy is an alternate name for the various forms of **psychotherapy** that emphasize the importance of the client or patient speaking to the therapist as the main means of expressing and resolving issues.

### Description

**Psychoanalysis**, the first modern form of psychotherapy, was called the “talking cure,” and the many varieties of therapy practiced today are still characterized by their common dependence on a verbal exchange between the counselor or therapist and the person seeking help. Some of these therapies that are characterized by the verbal exchange include: **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, behavior therapy, **couples therapy**, **family therapy**, **grief counseling** and therapy, **group therapy**, **interpersonal therapy**, **person-centered therapy**, **psychodynamic psychotherapy**, and **rational emotive therapy**. Both **self-help groups** and **support groups** also rely on the discussion of an issue as a main part of the cure.

## Tardive dyskinesia

### Definition

Tardive dyskinesia is a neurological disorder consisting of abnormal, involuntary body movements, usually associated with taking antipsychotics (medication used to treat the symptoms of **schizophrenia** or other psychotic disorders), although it can occur in the absence of drug administration.

### Description

Tardive means “late” and dyskinesia means “abnormal movements.” The term refers to abnormal body movements that occur, usually after a person has been taking an antipsychotic medication for a long period of time. The symptoms can sometimes arise even after the medication has been discontinued. In the early stages, the movements may be so subtle that neither the person nor others notice them. For instance, the person may blink rapidly or lick their lips often. In later stages, the movements become noticeable and may affect the person’s physical abilities.

Other subtypes of tardive dyskinesia can occur. In tardive dystonia, there are abnormal contractions of the neck and shoulder muscles. In tardive akathisia, the person feels restless all the time.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Because antipsychotics block the proteins that recognize and transmit the signals from **dopamine**, a neurotransmitter (nerve-signaling molecule), the current hypotheses about the causes of tardive dyskinesia center on these dopamine pathways in the **brain**. The leading hypothesis is that after an extended period of blocked dopamine signaling, the nerves become hypersensitive to dopamine, and stimulation by even a little bit of dopamine results in abnormal movements. The parts of the brain that send signals to the muscles and use dopamine signaling may be affected.

The medicines most commonly associated with tardive dyskinesia include:

- antipsychotic medicines used to treat schizophrenia and other psychoses. These are also known as neuroleptic medicines. First-generation or older versions of these drugs were strongly linked to tardive dyskinesia and other movement disorders. With the advent of new, “second-generation” or “atypical” antipsychotics, which generally block dopamine receptors more weakly and briefly, clinicians had expected to see a

reduction in the incidence of tardive dyskinesia. Although a reduction in other motor symptoms related to antipsychotics has been observed, it has not been clearly established that tardive dyskinesia rates have fallen. It appears, however, that the atypical neuroleptics do carry a lower risk.

- L-dopa, which is used to treat Parkinson’s disease (although high doses of L-dopa may actually help control tardive dyskinesia)
- antiemetic medicines, used to control nausea and vomiting
- tricyclic antidepressants used to treat depression and other mood disorders
- other medicines that block dopamine signaling

#### Symptoms

Symptoms of tardive dyskinesia include:

- involuntary movements of the face (orofacial dyskinesia), including frowning, blinking, smiling, lip licking, mouth puckering, biting or chewing, clenching the jaw, sticking out the tongue, or rolling the tongue around in the mouth
- involuntary movements of the hands, arms, feet, or legs, such as twitching the hands or tapping the feet
- trunk movements, such as rocking, twisting, or squirming
- grunting or trouble speaking because of involuntary movements of the diaphragm

Movements may be rapid or slow and complicated. They are usually irregular and do not follow a pattern.

### Demographics

The prevalence of tardive dyskinesia in clinical populations is between 16% and 43%. Risk is greater in older patients, who exhibit a prevalence rate that is five or six times higher than that of people under the age of 50 years.

Reported rates of tardive dyskinesia among people who have not taken and are not taking antipsychotics vary widely, from 3.7% to 77% in clinical populations, with an average of 5.5%. Rates are higher among the elderly.

### Treatments

Each case is treated differently. In some cases, the medicine causing the problem can be stopped. However, most people taking antipsychotic medicine cannot stop taking the medicine because of the high risk that their **psychosis** will return. The atypical antipsychotic

## KEY TERMS

- Akisthesia**—An uncontrollable feeling of restlessness.
- Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

that is associated with the lowest incidence of tardive dyskinesia is **clozapine**. The atypicals that have been more associated with tardive dyskinesia are **risperidone** and **olanzapine**; in the case of risperidone, its longer history of clinical use may be an explanation. It may be possible to lower the dose to a level that does not cause the movements. One study has found that low-potency “first-generation” antipsychotics taken at moderate doses may carry no increased risk of eliciting tardive dyskinesia compared to second-generation drugs. There is controversy about whether or not “drug holidays” reduce the likelihood of developing tardive dyskinesia. “Drug holidays” are planned periods of time in which the person goes off the medicine, then resumes it.

Vitamin E has been shown to be helpful in patients, especially those who have had the problem for less than five years. L-dopa and some other medicines are sometimes helpful.

### Prognosis

The earlier the problem is noticed and treatment is begun, the better of eliminating abnormal movements. Reports indicate that in most cases, tardive dyskinesia is not necessarily progressive and can be reversed. Most patients have a noticeable improvement in their symptoms within 18 months; however, some abnormal movements may remain. People who are over 60 have a greater chance of having the problem go away on its own.

*See also Schizophrenia.*

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Hales Robert E., Stuart C. Yudofsky, and John A. Talbott, eds. *The American Psychiatric Press Textbook of Psychiatry*. 3rd ed. Washington D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- National Alliance for the Mentally Ill. Colonial Place Three, 2107 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 300, Arlington, VA

22201. Telephone: (703) 524-7600. NAMI HelpLine: (800) 950-NAMI. <[www.nami.org](http://www.nami.org)>.

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. Part of the National Institutes of Health (NIH), Bethesda, MD 20892. <[www.ninds.nih.gov](http://www.ninds.nih.gov)>.

#### PERIODICALS

- Marchand, William R., and Valentina Dilda. “New Models of Frontal-Subcortical Skeletomotor Circuit Pathology in Tardive Dyskinesia.” *The Neuroscientist* 12 (2006):186–98.

- Tarsy, Daniel, and Ross J. Baldessarini. “Epidemiology of Tardive Dyskinesia: Is Risk Declining with Modern Antipsychotics?” *Movement Disorders* 21 (2006): 589–98.

Jody Bower, M.S.W

Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

TAT see **Thematic Apperception Test**

## Tautomycin

### Purpose

Tautomycin is a potent inhibitor of protein phosphatases, a class of enzymes that remove phosphate moieties from proteins. Protein phosphatases oppose the actions of protein kinases, enzymes that add phosphate groups to proteins. This reversible cycle of protein phosphorylation-dephosphorylation regulates the function of proteins and, as such, is a target for therapeutic drugs that may affect various cellular processes. Tautomycin also has antibiotic properties and is naturally produced by the bacterium *streptomyces spiroverticillatus*.

### Description

Reversible phosphorylation is an important mechanism for regulating the biologic activity of many proteins that affect a diverse array of cellular processes, including protein interactions, gene transcription, cell-cycle progression, and cell death. Protein phosphatases are highly regulated enzymes. The development of compounds that alter the activity of specific phosphatases is emerging as an important area in drug discovery. The cycle of protein phosphorylation-dephosphorylation is a candidate drug target because dysregulation of this process may underlie, or is a consequence of, many diseases. Protein kinase inhibitors (for example, Gleevec for chronic myelogenous leukemia) have been successfully used therapeutically in nonsolid tumor treatment. Protein phosphatase inhibitors have potential benefit as drug targets because they can result in cell

## KEY TERMS

**Apoptosis**—A form of cell death in which a programmed sequence of events leads to the elimination of the cell.

**Protein kinase**—An enzyme that catalyzes the addition of a phosphate group to a protein.

**Protein phosphatase**—An enzyme that catalyzes the removal of a phosphate moiety from a protein.

**Tumor suppressor**—A class of genes that, when mutated, predispose an individual to cancer by causing the loss of function of the particular tumor suppressor protein encoded by the gene.

cycle arrest and apoptosis; they appear not to be mutated in human cancers; and there are many ways to modulate phosphatase function.

Because protein phosphorylation occurs primarily on serine and threonine residues, the identification of agents that alter the activity of specific serine/threonine phosphatases is especially promising for drug development. There are two distinct gene families of serine/threonine phosphatases: the PPP-gene family (12 members), which includes PP1, PP2A, PP2B (calcineurin), PP4, PP5, PP6 and PP7; and the PPM family (8 members), which includes PP2C, PHLPP (PH domain leucine-rich repeat protein phosphatase), and PDP (pyruvate dehydrogenase phosphatase). Tautomycin is a natural product that was found to be a potent inhibitor of PP1 and PP2A and has been used as an investigational tool to examine the role of these protein phosphatases in cellular processes. Interestingly, distinct parts of the tautomycin molecule are responsible for inhibition of phosphatase activity and induction of apoptosis, suggesting that derivatives of tautomycin might have anticancer activity via multiple mechanisms.

### Recommended dosage

Because tautomycin is an investigational drug and not currently approved for any therapeutic modality, there is no currently recommended dosage.

### Side effects

While tautomycin has not been used clinically, the presently known phosphatase inhibitors that have been examined in **clinical trials** (for example, fostriecin) have significant systemic side effects, including nausea and vomiting, due to their lack of specificity.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

Honkanen, R. E., and T. Golden. "Regulators of Serine/Threonine Protein Phosphatases at the Dawn of a Clinical Era?" *Current Medicinal Chemistry* 9.22 (2002): 2055–75.

Liu, W., and others. "The Selective Inhibition of Phosphatases by Natural Toxins: The Anhydride Domain of Tautomycin is Not a Primary Factor in Controlling PP1/PP2A Selectivity." *Bioorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters*. 13.9 (2003): 1597–1600.

Schmid, A. C., and R. Woscholski. "Phosphatases as Small-Molecule Targets: Inhibiting the Endogenous Inhibitors of Kinases." *Biochemical Society Transactions* 32.2 (2004): 348–49.

Andrew J. Bean, PhD

Tegretol see **Carbamazepine**

## Temazepam

### Definition

Temazepam is a drug that belongs to a family of drugs known as **benzodiazepines**. Temazepam is sold under the brand name Restoril in the United States. Temazepam is also available as a generic.

### Purpose

Temazepam is given to patients with sleeping problems (**insomnia**). It is often prescribed for insomnia characterized by frequent awakening during the night or by awakening early in the morning.

### Description

Temazepam is one of several drugs in the class known as benzodiazepines. These drugs produce a variety of effects, but most cause some degree of drowsiness (sedation). Temazepam is used almost exclusively as a hypnotic, or drug given to help people fall asleep. It is nearly always taken just before bedtime. This drug produces its effects in the body by slowing down certain impulses in the **brain**, allowing the patient to fall asleep.

### Recommended dosage

The typical dose starting for adults is 7.5–15 mg taken *just before* bedtime. The maximum recommended dose is 30 mg. Elderly patients and those in a weakened condition may need only 7.5 mg. The



**Temazepam pills.** (CHARLES BACH/Photo Researchers, Inc)

doctor should determine the dose in children 18 years of age and younger on an individual basis.

### Precautions

The doctor should monitor any patient taking this drug to ensure that significant side effects do not develop. Insomnia that lasts longer than 7–10 days may point to a significant medical problem that should be thoroughly evaluated. Temazepam should not be combined with alcohol or other drugs that lower the level of activity in the central nervous system. Examples of such drugs include prescription pain medications, antihistamines, **barbiturates**, and muscle relaxants. Some persons may develop dizziness, lightheadedness, and clumsiness after taking temazepam. These side effects are especially common in the elderly.

Persons with a history of anemia, liver disease, kidney disease, drug **abuse**, serious psychological disorders, and **suicide** attempts should be given temazepam only after being thoroughly evaluated by their physician. This caution also applies to persons with a history of lung disease, seizure disorders, and narrow-angle glaucoma.

People who are taking temazepam should not stop taking it abruptly. Instead, the dose should be reduced

gradually. Withdrawal symptoms, including depressed mood, sweating, abdominal cramps, muscle cramps, vomiting, **seizures**, and shakiness can develop if the medication is stopped suddenly.

Although patients are instructed to take temazepam in the evening before bedtime, they often experience side effects the next day, particularly drowsiness and loss of coordination or clumsiness. Pregnant women should not use this drug because it increases the risk of birth defects in the baby. Nursing mothers should not be given temazepam because it can make their babies drowsy and unable to nurse properly. Patients should not operate heavy machinery or drive a car while they are taking temazepam or any other benzodiazepine.

### Side effects

Temazepam is a relatively safe drug, safer than most of the benzodiazepines. Its less serious but more common side effects include clumsiness or unsteady behavior, dizziness, drowsiness, and slurred speech. Some patients taking temazepam experience abdominal cramps, dry mouth, constipation, diarrhea, headache, nausea, vomiting, a giddy sense of well-being, and changes in sexual drive.

A small number of patients taking temazepam have experienced anger outbursts, confusion, mental **depression**, unusually low blood pressure, memory difficulties, nervousness, irritability, and muscle weakness. As they can with many prescription drugs, people can overdose on temazepam. Symptoms of a temazepam overdose include extreme drowsiness, significant confusion, breathing difficulties, a very slow heartbeat, and staggering.

Rebound insomnia is one of the more common side effects of tapering a patient's dose of temazepam. Rebound insomnia is a reaction characterized by the re-emergence of the symptom that the drug was originally given to suppress, namely problems with falling or staying asleep. When a person takes a medication for sleep on a regular basis, the body adjusts to the presence of the drug. It tries to counteract the effects of the medication. As a result, when the person stops taking the sleeping medication, the body will take a few nights to return to its normal condition. During this period of readjustment, the person may experience a few sleepless hours each night. In addition, people often mistake the rebound insomnia for the ordinary variety, and consider it a good reason to continue taking the temazepam.

People can also develop withdrawal symptoms even when they are gradually decreasing their dose of

## KEY TERMS

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Barbiturates**—A class of medications (including Seconal and Nembutal) that causes sedation and drowsiness. They may be prescribed legally, but may also be used as drugs of abuse.

**Generic**—A term that refers to a medication that is not protected by a registered trademark.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Insomnia**—A chronic inability to sleep or to remain asleep throughout the night.

**Narrow-angle glaucoma**—An eye disorder caused by a buildup of fluid pressure inside the eyeball due to an abnormally small angle between the iris (the colored portion of the eye) and the cornea (the transparent front part of the eye).

**Rebound effect**—A physical reaction to stopping a medication characterized by the reappearance of the symptom(s) that the medication was given to suppress. For example, people who stop taking temazepam may experience rebound excitability and sleeping problems.

**Sedation**—A state of emotional or physical relaxation. The term is usually used to refer to this condition when it is produced by a medication.

**Withdrawal**—Symptoms experienced by a person who has become physically dependent on a drug, experienced when the drug use is discontinued.

temazepam, particularly if the original dose was high. The more common withdrawal symptoms include sleeping difficulties, irritability, and nervousness. Less common withdrawal side effects include abdominal cramps, confusion, sweating, nausea, trembling, increased heart rate, and mental depression.

### Interactions

Patients should always inform any health care provider that they see—doctors, dentists, nurses, and others—about all the medications they are taking, including temazepam. This information is important because temazepam interacts with certain other drugs, including cimetidine (an antihistamine); **disulfiram** (a drug given to help patients control cravings for alcohol); or **clozapine** (an antipsychotic medication). Rifampin,

which is an antibiotic, may decrease the effectiveness of the temazepam if the two are taken together. The most important warning, however, is that the patient should avoid drinking alcohol or taking other medications that cause drowsiness (such as antihistamines) while taking temazepam, because these substances will intensify its effects. Heavy smoking, however, interferes with the effectiveness of temazepam.

*See also* Sleep disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Consumer Reports Staff, eds. *Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*. 2002 ed. Denver, CO: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.

Ellsworth, Allan J. and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. 2001-2002. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2001.

Hardman, Joel G., Lee E. Limbird, eds. *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. 10th ed. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

Mosby's GenRx staff. *Mosby's GenRx* 9th ed. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 1999.

Venes, Donald, and others, eds. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*. 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

Mark Mitchell, M.D.

## Thematic Apperception Test

### Definition

The Thematic Apperception Test, or TAT, is a projective measure intended to evaluate a person's patterns of thought, attitudes, observational capacity, and emotional responses to ambiguous test materials. In the case of the TAT, the ambiguous materials consist of a set of cards that portray human figures in a variety of settings and situations. The subject is asked to tell the examiner a story about each card that includes the following elements: the event shown in the picture; what has led up to it; what the characters in the picture are feeling and thinking; and the outcome of the event.

Because the TAT is an example of a *projective* instrument—that is, it asks the subject to project his or her habitual patterns of thought and emotional responses onto the pictures on the cards—many psychologists prefer not to call it a “test,” because it implies that there are “right” and “wrong” answers to the questions. They consider the term “technique” to be a more accurate description of the TAT and other projective assessments.

## Purpose

### *Individual assessments*

The TAT is often administered to individuals as part of a battery, or group, of tests intended to evaluate personality. It is considered to be effective in eliciting information about a person's view of the world and his or her attitudes toward the self and other persons. As persons taking the TAT proceed through the various story cards and tell stories about the pictures, reveal their expectations of relationships with peers, parents or other authority figures, subordinates, and possible romantic partners. In addition to assessing the content of the stories that the subject is telling, the examiner evaluates the subject's manner, vocal tone, posture, hesitations, and other signs of an emotional response to a particular story picture. For example, a person who is made anxious by a certain picture may make comments about the artistic style of the picture, or remark that he or she does not like the picture; this is a way of avoiding telling a story about it.

The TAT is often used in individual assessments of candidates for employment in fields requiring a high degree of skill in dealing with other people and/or ability to cope with high levels of psychological stress—such as law enforcement, military leadership positions, religious ministry, education, diplomatic service, etc. Although the TAT should not be used in the differential **diagnosis** of mental disorders, it is often administered to individuals who have already received a diagnosis in order to match them with the type of **psychotherapy** best suited to their personalities. Lastly, the TAT is sometimes used for forensic purposes in evaluating the motivations and general attitudes of persons accused of violent crimes. For example, the TAT was recently administered to a 24-year-old man in prison for a series of sexual murders. The results indicated that his attitudes toward other people are not only outside normal limits but are similar to those of other persons found guilty of the same type of crime.

The TAT can be given repeatedly to an individual as a way of measuring progress in psychotherapy or, in some cases, to help the therapist understand why the treatment seems to be stalled or blocked.

### *Research*

In addition to its application in individual assessments, the TAT is frequently used for research into specific aspects of human personality, most often needs for achievement, fears of failure, hostility and aggression, and interpersonal object relations. "Object relations" is a phrase used in psychiatry and psychology to refer to the ways people internalize their relationships

with others and the emotional tone of their relationships. Research into object relations using the TAT investigates a variety of different topics, including the extent to which people are emotionally involved in relationships with others; their ability to understand the complexities of human relationships; their ability to distinguish between their viewpoint on a situation and the perspectives of others involved; their ability to control aggressive impulses; self-esteem issues; and issues of personal identity. For example, one recent study compared responses to the TAT from a group of psychiatric inpatients diagnosed with **dissociative disorders** with responses from a group of non-dissociative inpatients, in order to investigate some of the controversies about **dissociative identity disorder** (formerly called multiple personality disorder).

## Precautions

Students in medicine, psychology, or other fields who are learning to administer and interpret the TAT receive detailed instructions about the number of factors that can influence a person's responses to the story cards. In general, they are advised to be conservative in their interpretations, and to err "on the side of health" rather than of psychopathology when evaluating a subject's responses. In addition, the 1992 Code of Ethics of the American Psychological Association requires examiners to be knowledgeable about cultural and social differences, and to be responsible in interpreting test results with regard to these differences.

Experts in the use of the TAT recommend obtaining a personal and medical history from the subject before giving the TAT, in order to have some context for evaluating what might otherwise appear to be abnormal or unusual responses. For example, frequent references to death or **grief** in the stories would not be particularly surprising from a subject who had recently been bereaved. In addition, the TAT should not be used as the sole examination in evaluating an individual; it should be combined with other interviews and tests.

### *Cultural, gender, and class issues*

The large number of research studies that have used the TAT have indicated that cultural, gender, and class issues must be taken into account when determining whether a specific response to a story card is "abnormal" strictly speaking, or whether it may be a normal response from a person in a particular group. For example, the card labeled 6GF shows a younger woman who is seated turning toward a somewhat older man who is standing behind her and smoking a pipe.

Most male subjects do not react to this picture as implying aggressiveness, but most female subjects regard it as a very aggressive picture, with unpleasant overtones of intrusiveness and danger. Many researchers consider the gender difference in responses to this card as a reflection of the general imbalance in power between men and women in the larger society.

Race is another issue related to the TAT story cards. The original story cards, which were created in 1935, all involved Caucasian figures. As early as 1949, researchers who were administering the TAT to African Americans asked whether the race of the figures in the cards would influence the subjects' responses. Newer sets of TAT story cards have introduced figures representing a wider variety of races and ethnic groups. As of 2002, however, it was not clear whether a subject's ability to identify with the race of the figures in the story cards improves the results of a TAT assessment.

### *Multiplicity of scoring systems*

One precaution required in general assessment of the TAT is the absence of a normative scoring system for responses. The original scoring system devised in 1943 by Henry Murray, one of the authors of the TAT, attempted to account for every variable that it measures. Murray's scoring system is time-consuming and unwieldy, and as a result has been little used by later interpreters. Other scoring systems have since been introduced that focus on one or two specific variables, for example hostility or **depression**. While these systems are more practical for clinical use, they lack comprehensiveness. No single system presently used for scoring the TAT has achieved widespread acceptance. The basic drawback of any scoring system in evaluating responses to the TAT story cards is that information that is not relevant to that particular system is simply lost.

### *Computer scoring*

A recent subject of controversy in TAT interpretation concerns the use of computers to evaluate responses. While computers were used initially only to score tests with simple yes/no answers, they were soon applied to interpretation of projective measures. A computerized system for interpreting the Rorschach was devised as early as 1964. As of 2002, there were no computerized systems for evaluating responses to the TAT; however, users of the TAT should be aware of the controversies in this field. Computers have two basic limitations for use with the TAT: the first is that they cannot observe and record the subject's vocal tone, eye contact, and other aspects of behavior

that a human examiner can note. Second, computers are not adequate for the interpretation of unusual subject profiles.

### **Description**

The TAT is one of the oldest projective measures in continuous use. It has become the most popular projective technique among English-speaking psychiatrists and psychologists, and is better accepted among clinicians than the Rorschach.

### *History of the TAT*

The TAT was first developed in 1935 by Henry Murray, Christiana Morgan, and their colleagues at the Harvard Psychological Clinic. The early versions of the TAT listed Morgan as the first author, but later versions dropped her name. One of the controversies surrounding the history of the TAT concerns the long and conflict-ridden extramarital relationship between Morgan and Murray, and its **reinforcement** of the prejudices that existed in the 1930s against women in academic psychology and psychiatry.

It is generally agreed, however, that the basic idea behind the TAT came from one of Murray's undergraduate students. The student mentioned that her son had spent his time recuperating from an illness by cutting pictures out of magazines and making up stories about them. The student wondered whether similar pictures could be used in therapy to tap into the nature of a patient's fantasies.

### *Administration*

The TAT is usually administered to individuals in a quiet room free from interruptions or distractions. The subject sits at the edge of a table or desk next to the examiner. The examiner shows the subject a series of story cards taken from the full set of 31 TAT cards. The usual number of cards shown to the subject is between 10 and 14, although Murray recommended the use of 20 cards, administered in two separate one-hour sessions with the subject. The original 31 cards were divided into three categories, for use with men only, with women only, or for use with subjects of either sex. Recent practice has moved away from the use of separate sets of cards for men and women.

The subject is then instructed to tell a story about the picture on each card, with specific instructions to include a description of the event in the picture, the developments that led up to the event, the thoughts and feelings of the people in the picture, and the outcome of the story. The examiner keeps the cards in a pile face down in front of him or her, gives them to the

## KEY TERMS

**Apperception**—The process of understanding through linkage with previous experience. The term was coined by one of the authors of the TAT to underscore the fact that people don't "perceive" the story cards in a vacuum; rather, they construct their stories on the basis of past experiences as well as present personality traits.

**Battery**—A number of separate items (such as tests) used together. In psychology, a group or series of tests given with a common purpose, such as personality assessment or measurement of intelligence.

**Forensic**—Pertaining to courtroom procedure or evidence used in courts of law.

**Idiographic**—An approach to interpreting the results of a projective test within the context of the individual subject's record.

**Nomothetic**—An approach to interpreting the results of a projective test in which the subject's answers are measured against a normative comparison sample.

**Object relations**—In psychology, a phrase that refers to the way in which a subject describes relationships with other people in their environment, and the ways in which he or she has internalized interpersonal relationships.

**Projective test or projective measure**—A type of psychological evaluation that assesses a person's thinking patterns, observational ability, feelings, and attitudes on the basis of responses to ambiguous test materials. Projective measures are not intended to diagnose psychiatric disorders, although they are often used in outcome studies to compare the effectiveness of different forms of psychotherapy.

**Rorschach test**—A commonly administered projective measure in which subjects are asked to describe a series of black or colored inkblots.

subject one at a time, and asks the subject to place each card face down as its story is completed. Administration of the TAT usually takes about an hour.

### Recording

Murray's original practice was to take notes by hand on the subject's responses, including his or her nonverbal behaviors. Research has indicated, however, that a great deal of significant material is lost when notes are recorded in this way. As a result, some

examiners now use a tape recorder to record subjects' answers. Another option involves asking the subject to write down his or her answers.

### Interpretation

There are two basic approaches to interpreting responses to the TAT, called *nomothetic* and *idiographic* respectively. Nomothetic interpretation refers to the practice of establishing norms for answers from subjects in specific age, gender, racial, or educational level groups and then measuring a given subject's responses against those norms. Idiographic interpretation refers to evaluating the unique features of the subject's view of the world and relationships. Most psychologists would classify the TAT as better suited to idiographic than nomothetic interpretation.

In interpreting responses to the TAT, examiners typically focus their attention on one of three areas: the content of the stories that the subject tells; the feeling tone of the stories; or the subject's behaviors apart from responses. These behaviors may include verbal remarks (for example, comments about feeling stressed by the situation or not being a good storyteller) as well as nonverbal actions or signs (blushing, stammering, fidgeting in the chair, difficulties making eye contact with the examiner, etc.) The story content usually reveals the subject's attitudes, fantasies, wishes, inner conflicts, and view of the outside world. The story structure typically reflects the subject's feelings, assumptions about the world, and an underlying attitude of optimism or pessimism.

### Results

The results of the TAT must be interpreted in the context of the subject's personal history, age, sex, level of education, occupation, racial or ethnic identification, first language, and other characteristics that may be important. "Normal" results are difficult to define in a complex multicultural society like the contemporary United States.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Aronow, Edward, Kim Altman Weiss, and Marvin Reznikoff. *A Practical Guide to the Thematic Apperception Test: The TAT in Clinical Practice*. Philadelphia, PA: Taylor and Francis, 2001.
- Dana, Richard H. "Thematic Apperception Test." In *International Encyclopedia of Psychiatry, Psychology, Psychoanalysis, & Neurology*, vol. 11, edited by Benjamin B. Wolman. New York: Aesculapius Publishers, Inc., 1977.

- Douglas, Claire. *Translate This Darkness: The Life of Christiana Morgan*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1993.
- Geiser, Lon, and Morris I. Stein. *Evocative Images: The Thematic Apperception Test and the Art of Projection*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 1999.
- Sweetland, R. C., PhD, and D. J. Keyser, PhD, eds. *Tests: A Comprehensive Reference for Assessments in Psychology, Education, and Business*. 2nd edition. Kansas City, KS: Test Corporation of America, 1986.

#### PERIODICALS

- Pica, M., and others. "The Responses of Dissociative Patients on the Thematic Apperception Test." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 57 (July 2001): 847-864.
- Porcerelli, J. H. and others. "Object Relations and Defense Mechanisms of a Psychopathic Serial Sexual Homicide Perpetrator: A TAT Analysis." *Journal of Personality Assessment* 77 (August 2001): 87-104.
- Schultheiss, O. C., and J. C. Brunstein. "Assessment of Implicit Motives with a Research Version of the TAT: Picture Profiles, Gender Differences, and Relations to Other Personality Measures." *Journal of Personality Assessment* 77 (August 2001): 71-86.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Psychological Association. 750 First Street, NE, Washington, DC 20002. (800) 374-2721. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org>>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

## Thioridazine

### Definition

Thioridazine is a potent antianxiety and antipsychotic agent. It is a member of the phenothiazine family of compounds. In the United States thioridazine is sold as under the brand name of Mellaril and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Thioridazine is used to manage psychotic disorders. It reduces excitement, abnormal levels of energy, excessive movements (hypermotility), and agitation. The drug is also useful in the short-term treatment of depression that accompanies anxiety, sleep disturbances, agitation, and tension. Thioridazine is used in short-term treatment of children who display seriously inappropriate responses to exciting stimuli.

### Description

Thioridazine is used in treating anxiety and psychosis. When used for the treatment of schizophrenia,

thioridazine reduces symptoms of emotional withdrawal, anxiety, tension, hallucinations, and suspiciousness. Compared to other phenothiazine drugs, it is less likely to cause vomiting and Parkinson-like symptoms.

It is often successfully used to treat children who have impulsive conduct, difficulty in maintaining attention, show high levels of aggression or have poor tolerance for frustration when other drugs have failed.

### Recommended dosage

The dosage of thioridazine must be adjusted to each individual for whom it is prescribed to achieve maximum therapeutic effects and to minimize side effects. The usual initial dosage for adults is 50 to 100 mg three times a day. This may be gradually increased to a maximum of 800 mg per day. Once the desired therapeutic effect has been achieved, the dosage should be stabilized. A typical maintenance dosage is 200 to 800 mg per day, given in three to four doses.

The usual initial dosage for adults being treated for symptoms of anxiety is 25 mg three times per day. After reaching equilibrium and controlling undesired symptoms, the typical maintenance dosage is 20 to 200 mg per day divided into three or four doses.

For children between the ages of two and 12, the usual daily dosage of thioridazine is 0.5 to 3.0 mg per kg of body weight. Severely psychotic children who are hospitalized may receive 25 mg twice each day.

### Precautions

It is dangerous to give thioridazine to persons in a comatose state. Seizures due to thioridazine therapy have been reported but are unusual. A sudden decrease in blood pressure due to a change in body position (orthostatic hypotension) with accompanying lightheadedness, may occur in people who have taken the drug. This is more common among women than among men.

Thioridazine increases the level of prolactin, a hormone that stimulates the mammary glands in the breast, in the blood. This is a potential problem for persons with a personal or family history of breast cancer and may increase the risk of breast cancer. For this reason, the benefits and risks of the drug must be carefully evaluated before it is administered.

Long-term use of thioridazine increases the probability of developing tardive dyskinesia (See below). Because of potentially serious side effects, the risks and benefits of thioridazine must be carefully explained and understood before the drug is started.

## Side effects

A common side effect of thioridazine is drowsiness and lack of physical and mental alertness. This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. Patients taking should refrain from performing hazardous activities requiring mental alertness or coordination. Other common side effects include greater sensitivity to the sun and increased risk of serious sunburn, dry mouth, constipation, and urinary retention. Urinary retention (difficulty starting a urine flow or passing urine,) is a particular problem in men with enlarged prostates.

Thioridazine use may lead to the development of symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease, but which are not caused by Parkinson's. These symptoms may include a taut or mask-like expression on the face, drooling, tremors, pill-rolling motions in the hands, cogwheel rigidity (abnormal rigidity in muscles, characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched), and a shuffling gait. Taking anti-Parkinson drugs **benztropine** mesylate or **trihexyphenidyl** hydrochloride along with **trifluoperazine** usually readily controls these symptoms.

Thioridazine has the potential to produce a serious side effect called tardive dyskinesia. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may not disappear or may only partially improve after the drug is stopped. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with increasing age and with increasing dosage of thioridazine. It may also appear after thioridazine use has been discontinued. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

An occasionally reported side effect of thioridazine is neuroleptic malignant syndrome. This is a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity, high fever, alterations in mental status, and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia (fast heartbeat), and arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat). People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should talk to their physician promptly.

## Interactions

Thioridazine increases the effect of drugs and substances that depress the central nervous system and. This class of drugs includes anesthetics, opiates, **barbiturates**,

## KEY TERMS

**Akathisia**—Agitated or restless movement, usually affecting the legs. Movement is accompanied by a sense of discomfort and an inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive for periods of time. Akathisia is a common side effect of some neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

**Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

**Orthostatic hypotension**—A sudden decrease in blood pressure due to a change in body position, as when moving from a sitting to standing position.

**Prolactin**—A hormone that stimulates milk production and breast development.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth or face or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

atropine, and alcohol. These substances should be avoided or used sparingly by people taking thioridazine.

**Propranolol** increases the concentration of thioridazine. Concurrent administration of pindolol also increases the concentration of thioridazine. The reverse effect also occurs. Thioridazine increases the concentration of pindolol in the body. Thioridazine may interact with other drugs used to treat mental disorders. People planning to take this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their doctor and pharmacist before starting the drug.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.  
Foreman, John C. and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.  
Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.

Von Boxtel, Chris J., Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

- Dallaire S. "Thioridazine (Mellaril) and mesoridazine (Serentil): prolongation of the QTc interval." *Canadian Medical Association Journal* 164, no 1 (2001): 91-95.
- Nelson J. C. "Diagnosing and treating depression in the elderly." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 62, Supplement 24 (2001): 18-22.
- Pisani F., G. Oteri, C. Costa, G. Di Raimondo, and R. Di Perri. "Effects of psychotropic drugs on seizure threshold." *Drug Safety* 25, no. 2 (2002): 91-110.
- Ray W. A., S. Meredith, P. B. Thapa, K. G. Meador, K. Hall, and K. T. Murray. "Antipsychotics and the risk of sudden cardiac death." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 58, no. 12 (2001): 1161-1167.
- Varvel A., E. Vann, E. Wise, D. Philibin, and H. Porter. "Effects of antipsychotic drugs on operant responding after acute and repeated administration." *Psychopharmacology (Berlin)* 160, no. 2 (2002): 182-191.

#### OTHER

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, PO Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Fax: (717) 558-7845. Web site: <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.
- American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.
- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.
- American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981. Fax: (703) 836-5223.
- American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. Web site: <<http://www.aspet.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

## Thiothixene

### Definition

Thiothixene is in a class of drugs called antipsychotics. It is available with a prescription under the generic name of thiothixene or the brand name Navane.

### Purpose

Thiothixene is a drug used to treat symptoms of **schizophrenia**. It is also sometimes used to calm severely agitated people.

### Description

Thiothixene has been used in the United States for many years as a treatment for schizophrenia. It is believed to modify the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** called **neurotransmitters** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses from cell to cell. The proper balance between neurotransmitters is responsible, in part, for maintaining mental well-being. Thiothixene is thought to alter the balance among neurotransmitters in a way that improves symptoms of schizophrenia.

Thiothixene is available in several different strengths as capsules, as an injection, and as a concentrated liquid form taken by mouth. It is broken down by the liver and eliminated from the body by the kidneys.

### Recommended dosage

The dosage of thiothixene varies widely from one individual to another. Initially, 2 mg of thiothixene taken by mouth three times daily is used in milder cases. This dosage may be increased slowly. Fifteen to 30 mg per day is often an effective range.

For more severe cases, 5 mg taken by mouth twice per day is a common starting dosage, with slow increases to 20–30 mg per day. Up to 60 mg of thiothixene may be taken daily. Doses greater than 60 mg per day usually do not provide any additional benefit, but may increase side effects.

### Precautions

Thiothixene may alter the rhythm of the heart. As a result, it should not be used by people with a history of irregular or prolonged heart rhythms (long QT syndrome), those with heart failure, or people who have recently had a heart attack. People with other heart conditions should discuss with their physician whether thiothixene is the right antipsychotic drug for them.

Thiothixene may increase the tendency to have **seizures**. People who have had seizures in the past, including alcohol or drug-induced seizures, should take thiothixene only after discussing the risks and benefits with their physician. People taking thiothixene should call their doctor immediately if they experience any abnormal, involuntary muscle movements, because this adverse effect may be permanent. The risk of abnormal, involuntary muscle movements is believed

to increase with long-term use of thiothixene and high dosages.

Thiothixene may increase body temperatures to dangerously high levels. People who exercise strenuously, those exposed to extreme heat, individuals taking drugs with anticholinergic effects (this includes many common **antidepressants**), and persons prone to dehydration, should be alert to increased body temperatures and dehydration-related side effects. Fevers, difficulty moving muscles, irregular heartbeats, rapid heartbeats, or excessive sweating are warning signs of possible overheating that should be addressed by a physician immediately.

People taking thiothixene should have regular eye examinations, since use of thiothixene has been associated with abnormalities of the retina, the light-sensitive layer of the eye. Thiothixene may also alter reproductive hormone levels causing irregular menstrual periods, difficulty getting pregnant, enlarged breasts, and breast milk production. Thiothixene can cause enlarged breasts and breast milk secretion in men as well as women. People who have had breast cancer should not take thiothixene unless the benefits of this drug substantially outweigh the risks.

Thiothixene may cause drowsiness. People should not perform hazardous tasks that require mental alertness and until they see how the drug affects them. This side effect usually diminishes with continued use of the drug. Thiothixene may make it more difficult to make a patient vomit after a drug overdose or accidental poisoning. Because there is a high incidence of **suicide** in all patients with psychotic illnesses, people using thiothixene should be observed carefully for signs of suicidal behavior. Women who are pregnant or breastfeeding should not take thiothixene.

### Side effects

Common side effects associated with the use of thiothixene are abnormal muscle movements and muscle stiffness, muscle tremors, weight gain, sleepiness, dry mouth, dry eyes, difficulty urinating, constipation, and sudden decreases in blood pressure that cause dizziness when standing up suddenly.

Other side effects that may occur when using thiothixene are headaches, seizures, high blood pressure, rapid heartbeats, blurred vision, liver changes, irregular menstrual periods, abnormal blood cell counts, difficulty breathing, and rash.

Uncommon and serious side effects include neuroleptic malignant syndrome and **tardive dyskinesia**. Neuroleptic malignant syndrome is an unusual but potentially life-threatening condition. The person

### KEY TERMS

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders, as well.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

with this syndrome becomes extremely rigid, has a high fever, rapid heart rate, and abnormalities on blood tests. The affected person also may have a difficult time breathing and may sweat, and will be admitted to the hospital. Tardive dyskinesia (TD) is a condition that may occur after a long period of using antipsychotic medications. TD is characterized by involuntary movements of the facial muscles and tongue, and may also involve muscles in the trunk or hands or feet. TD may disappear as soon as the medication is stopped, but it may not; if it does not, it is difficult to treat. These potential side effects should be discussed with the patient's doctor.

### Interactions

When thiothixene is used with drugs such as bethanechol, **propranolol**, levodopa, and some antidepressants, some of the side effects associated with thiothixene may increase. Use of narcotic drugs with thiothixene may cause blood pressure to fall to

dangerously low levels. If thiothixene is used with levodopa, the actions of levodopa will be diminished.

When thiothixene is used with **barbiturates** or lithium, thiothixene may be less effective. Because thiothixene may cause sleepiness, it should rarely be used with other drugs that also cause drowsiness, such as antidepressants, antihistamines, some pain relievers, and alcohol.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, Inc, 1999.  
 Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th Edition. St. Louis, MO: Facts and Comparisons, 2002.  
 Mylan Staff. *Thiothixene Package Insert*. Morgantown, WV: Mylan Pharmaceuticals, Inc, 1998.

Kelly Karpa, RPh, Ph.D.

**Thorazine** see **Chlorpromazine**

## Tic disorders

### Definition

Tic disorders are characterized by the persistent presence of tics, which are abrupt, repetitive involuntary movements and sounds that have been described as caricatures of normal physical acts. The revised fourth edition of the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)** lists three main types of tic disorders: Tourette's syndrome, chronic motor or vocal tic disorder, and transient tic disorder. The best known of these disorders is Tourette's syndrome, named after Georges Gilles de la Tourette (1857–1904), who first described its symptoms in 1885.

### Description

Tics are sudden, painless, nonrhythmic behaviors that are either motor (related to movement) or vocal and that appear out of context—for example, knee bends in science class. They are fairly common in childhood; in the vast majority of cases, they are temporary conditions that resolve on their own. In some children, however, the tics persist over time, becoming more complex and severe.

Tics may be simple (using only a few muscles or simple sounds) or complex (using many muscle groups or full words and sentences). Simple motor tics are brief,

meaningless movements like eye blinking, facial grimacing, head jerks, or shoulder shrugs. They usually last less than one second. Complex motor tics involve slower, longer, and more purposeful movements like sustained looks, facial gestures, biting, banging, whirling or twisting around, or copropraxia (obscene gestures).

Simple phonic tics are meaningless sounds or noises like throat clearing, coughing, sniffling, barking, or hissing. Complex phonic tics include syllables, words, phrases, and such statements as "Shut up!" or "Now you've done it!" The child's speech may be abnormal, with unusual rhythms, tones, accents, or intensities. The echo phenomenon is a tic characterized by the immediate repetition of one's own or another's words. Coprolalia is a tic made up of obscene, inappropriate, or aggressive words and statements. It occurs in fewer than 10% of people with tic disorders.

Children under the age of 10 with simple tics find them to be difficult to suppress, or control. Many older patients and children with complex tics describe feeling strong sensory urges in their joints, muscles, and bones that are relieved by the performance of a motor tic in that particular body part. These patients also report inner conflict over whether and when to yield to these urges. A sensation of relief and reduction of **anxiety** frequently follows the performance of a tic. Unless the tic disorder is very severe, most people with tics can suppress them for varying periods of time.

Motor and vocal tics may be worsened by anxiety, **stress**, boredom, **fatigue**, or excitement. Some people have reported that tics are intensified by **premenstrual syndrome**, additives in food, and stimulants. The symptoms of tic disorders may be lessened while the patient is asleep. **Cannabis** (marijuana), alcohol, relaxation, playing a sport, or concentrating on an enjoyable task are also reported to reduce the severity and frequency of symptoms.

Tics are the core symptom shared by transient tic disorder, chronic motor or vocal tic disorder, and Tourette's syndrome. The age of onset for these disorders is between two and 15 years. It is the severity and course that distinguishes these disorders from one another. Tourette's symptoms typically appear before the age of 18. In most patients, Tourette's symptoms subside after adolescence.

### Demographics

An estimated 200,000 Americans have the most severe form of Tourette's syndrome, but as many as one in 100 people exhibit minor tics. Tourette's syndrome is three-to-five times more common in males than females. Tic disorders have been reported in

people of all races, ethnic groups, and socioeconomic classes, but they appear to occur more frequently in Caucasians than African Americans.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Emotional factors were once viewed as the cause of tics, but this explanation has been largely discounted. The search for causes now focuses on biological, chemical, and environmental factors. As of 2007, however, no definitive cause of tics has been identified.

There appear to be both functional and structural abnormalities in the brains of people with tic disorders. While the exact neurochemical cause is unknown, it is believed that abnormal **neurotransmitters** (chemical messengers within the **brain**) contribute to the disorders. The affected neurotransmitters are **dopamine**, serotonin, and cyclic AMP. Researchers have also found changes within the brain itself, for example in the basal ganglia (an area of the brain concerned with movement) and the anterior cingulate cortex. Functional imaging using **positron emission tomography** (PET) and single photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT) has highlighted abnormal patterns of blood flow and metabolism in the basal ganglia, thalamus, and frontal and temporal cortical areas of the brain. **Magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) has identified a reduction in frontal lobe tissue in patients with Tourette's. Researchers have also shown a correlation between reduced corpus callosum size and the severity of tics in children with Tourette's.

Evidence from twin and family studies suggests that vulnerability to tic disorders is genetic, or transmitted within families. Several genes have been suspected as contributing to the development of Tourette's, including variations to the SLTRK1 gene. Gender-related inheritance patterns play a role in determining symptoms. Males are more likely to develop tics, while females are more likely to develop the related **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. Researchers have not found a pattern suggesting that certain types of parenting or childhood experiences lead to the development of tic disorders, although some think that there is an interaction between genetic and environmental factors. Researchers are paying close attention to prenatal factors, which are thought to influence the development of the disorders. Some research has indicated that maternal smoking increases the severity of symptoms in Tourette's syndrome.

In some cases, tic disorders appear to be caused or worsened by recreational drugs or prescription medications. The drugs most commonly involved are such psychomotor stimulants as **methylphenidate** (Ritalin),

**pemoline** (Cylert), **amphetamines**, and **cocaine**. It is not clear whether tics would have developed in these cases if stimulants had not been used. In a smaller percentage of cases, antihistamines, tricyclic **antidepressants**, antiseizure medications, and **opioids** have been shown to worsen tics.

Some forms of tics may be triggered by the environment. A cough that began during an upper respiratory infection may continue as an involuntary vocal tic. New tics may also begin as imitations of normally occurring events, such as mimicking a dog barking. How these particular triggers come to form enduring symptoms is a matter for further study.

Tourette's syndrome often occurs together with obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) and attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). People with Tourette's syndrome are about 20 times more likely than those in the general population to develop OCD. Tic disorders are also associated with behaviors such as **depression**, rage, sexual aggressiveness, and anxiety.

In some cases, neuropsychiatric disorders, such as tic disorders and obsessive-compulsive disorder, have been shown to develop after streptococcal infection. No precise mechanism for this connection has been determined, although it appears to be related to the autoimmune system. There are other illness-related causes of tics, though they appear to be rare. These include the development of tics after head trauma, viral encephalitis, or **stroke**.

### Symptoms

The diagnostic criteria of all tic disorders specify that the symptoms must appear before the age of 18 and that they cannot result from ingestion of such substances as stimulants or from such general medical conditions as Huntington's disease. Tic disorders can be seen as occurring along a continuum of severity in terms of disruption and impairment, with transient tic disorder being the least severe and Tourette's disorder being the most.

Tics increase in frequency when a person is under any form of mental or physical stress, even if it is of a positive nature (e.g., excitement about a party). Some people's tics are most obvious when the person is in a relaxed situation, such as quietly watching television. Tics tend to diminish when the person is placed in a new or highly structured situation, such as a doctor's office—a factor that can complicate **diagnosis**. When the symptoms of a tic are present over long time periods, they do not remain constant but will wax and wane in their severity.

Transient tic disorder occurs in approximately 4–24% of schoolchildren. It is the mildest form of tic

disorder, and may be underreported because of its temporary nature. In transient tic disorder, there may be single or multiple motor and/or vocal tics that occur many times a day nearly every day for at least four weeks, but not for longer than one year. If the criteria have been met at one time for Tourette's disorder or for chronic motor or vocal tic disorder, transient tic disorder may not be diagnosed.

Chronic motor or vocal tic disorder is characterized by either motor tics or vocal tics, but not both. The tics occur many times a day nearly every day, or intermittently for a period of more than one year. During that time, the patient is never without symptoms for more than three consecutive months. The severity of the symptoms and functional impairment is usually much less than for patients with Tourette's disorder.

Tourette's is defined by the *DSM-IV-TR* as the presence of both vocal and motor tics for a period of more than one year. The tics occur many times a day, usually in bouts, nearly every day or intermittently. The patient is never symptom-free for more than three months at a time.

Children and adolescents with Tourette's disorder frequently experience additional problems including aggressiveness, self-harming behaviors, emotional immaturity, social withdrawal, physical complaints, conduct disorders, affective disorders, anxiety, panic attacks, **stuttering**, **sleep disorders**, migraine headaches, and inappropriate sexual behaviors.

Tics seem to worsen during the patient's adolescence, although some clinicians think that the symptoms become more problematic rather than more severe, because the patient experiences them as more embarrassing than previously. The symptoms do become more unpredictable from day to day during adolescence. Many teenagers may refuse to go to school when their tics are severe. Coprolalia (uttering obscene, hostile, or inappropriate words) often appears first in adolescence; this symptom causes considerable distress for individuals and their families.

Behavioral problems also become more prominent in adolescence. There is some evidence that temper tantrums, aggressiveness, and explosive behavior appear in preadolescence, intensify in adolescence, and gradually diminish by early adulthood. Interestingly, aggression appears to increase at approximately the same time that the tics decrease in severity.

## Diagnosis

There are no diagnostic laboratory tests to screen for tic disorders. Except for the tics, the results of the patient's physical and neurological examinations are

normal. The doctor takes a complete medical history including a detailed account of prenatal events, birth history, head injuries, episodes of encephalitis or meningitis, poisonings, and medication or drug use. The patient's developmental, behavioral, and academic histories are also important. Measurement of thyroid-stimulating hormone levels can be helpful, because tics are often associated with hyperthyroidism (overactive thyroid gland). Also, a strep-A test is useful if the patient suddenly developed tic symptoms after a throat or ear infection.

There is an average delay of five to 12 years between the initial symptoms of a tic disorder and the correct diagnosis. This delay is largely related to the misperception that tics are caused by anxiety and should be treated by **psychotherapy**. This misperception in turn is fueled by the fact that tics tend to increase in severity when the affected person is angry, anxious, excited, or fatigued. It is also common for the patient to manifest fewer tics in a doctor's office than at home, leaving parents feeling frustrated and undermined and physicians confused. In addition, children quickly learn to mask their symptoms by converting them to more socially acceptable movements and sounds. The diagnosis of a tic disorder can be aided in some cases by directly observing, videotaping, or audiotaping the patient in a more natural setting.

Clinicians can also become confused by such additional symptoms of tic disorders as touching, hitting, jumping, smelling hands or objects, stomping, twirling, and doing deep-knee bends. They disagree, however, as to whether such symptoms should be classified as tics or compulsions. There appears to be a significant overlap between the symptoms of tic disorders and those of obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD).

Abnormal obsessive-compulsive behavior has been found in 40% of patients with Tourette's disorder between the ages of six and 10 years. Obsessions are persistent ideas, thoughts, impulses, or images that are experienced as intrusive, inappropriate, senseless, and repetitive. Compulsions are defined as repetitive behaviors performed to reduce the anxiety or distress caused by the obsessions. For those diagnosed with OCD, common obsessions have to do with dirt, germs, and contamination. Patients with Tourette's disorder often have obsessions that involve violent scenes, sexual thoughts, and counting; their compulsions are often related to symmetry (e.g., lining things up and getting them "just right") OCD symptoms occur considerably later than tics, and appear to worsen with age. Some theorists have suggested that obsessive thoughts are cognitive tics.

Tic disorders can be differentiated from **movement disorders** by the following characteristics: they are suppressible; they tend to persist during sleep; they are preceded by sensory symptoms; they have both phonic and motor components; and they wax and wane.

### Dual diagnoses

Children and adults with tic disorders are at increased risk for depression and other mood disorders, as well as **anxiety disorders**. This comorbidity may be due to the burden of dealing with a chronic, disruptive, and often stigmatizing disorder. The energy and watchfulness required to suppress tic symptoms may contribute to social anxiety, social withdrawal, self-preoccupation, and fatigue. Low self-esteem and feelings of hopelessness are common in patients diagnosed with tic disorders.

While OCD behaviors have been noted in as many as 80% of individuals with tic disorders, only 30% meet the full criteria for OCD. Distinguishing complex tics from simple compulsions can be difficult. Touching compulsions appear to be characteristic of the tic-related type of OCD. Compared to obsessive-compulsive disorder in persons without a history of tics, there will likely be an earlier age of onset, a greater proportion of male sufferers, a more frequent family history of chronic tics, and a poorer therapeutic response to **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRIs)—although the addition of a neuroleptic to the treatment regimen sometimes brings about improvement.

More than 25% of children with Tourette's syndrome also have attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), including a short attention span, restlessness, poor concentration, and diminished impulse control. On average, ADHD will manifest two-and-a-half years before the tics appear. A **dual diagnosis** of ADHD and tic disorder is associated with more severe tics and greater social impairment than for tic disorder by itself. Over time, the problems caused by the inattention, impulsivity, motor overactivity, and the resultant underachievement in school associated with ADHD are often more disabling than the tics themselves.

Children with tic disorders are five times as likely as other children to require special education programs. The tics may be disruptive and mistakenly interpreted by teachers as intended to disturb the class. Often, children with tic disorders have underlying learning disabilities as well. While there does not appear to be any impairment in general intellectual functioning, researchers have identified patterns of specific learning problems in children with tic disorders. These problems include abnormal visual-perceptual performance, reduced vis-

ual-motor skills, and discrepancies between verbal and performance IQ. Many of these learning difficulties are also commonly found in children with ADHD.

Increasing numbers of children with tic disorders are also diagnosed with a **conduct disorder**. Children with conduct disorder show inappropriate and sometimes severe aggression toward people and animals. They may also act out other destructive impulses. Unfortunately, some of these children grow up to develop a personality disorder.

### Treatments

A holistic approach is recommended for the treatment of tic disorders. A multidisciplinary team should work together with the affected child's parents and teachers to put together a comprehensive treatment plan. Treatment should include:

- Educating the patient and family about the course of the disorder in a reassuring manner.
- Completion of necessary diagnostic tests, including self-reports (by child and parents); clinician-administered ratings; and direct observational methods.
- Comprehensive assessment, including the child's cognitive abilities, perception, motor skills, behavior and adaptive functioning.
- Collaboration with school personnel to create a learning environment conducive to academic success.
- Therapy, most often behavioral or cognitive-behavioral, though other modalities may be appropriate.
- If necessary, evaluation for medication.

### Behavioral and cognitive-behavioral therapy

Habit reversal is the most commonly used technique, combining relaxation exercises, awareness training, and contingency management for positive **reinforcement**. This method shows a 64–100% success rate. Adding a cognitive component to habit reversal involves the introduction of flexibility into rigid thinking, and confronting the child's irrational expectations and unrealistic anticipations. The specific cognitive technique of distraction has been shown to help patients resist sensory urges and to restore the patient's sense of control over the tic.

Massed negative practice is behavioral therapy technique used in the treatment of children with tic disorder. The patient is asked to deliberately perform the tic movement for specified periods of time interspersed with brief periods of rest. Patients have shown some decrease in tic frequency, but the long-term benefits of massed negative practice are unclear.

Contingency management is another behavioral treatment. It is based on positive reinforcement, usually administered by parents. Children are praised and rewarded for not performing tics and for replacing them with alternative behaviors. Contingency management, however, appears to be of limited use outside of such controlled settings as schools or institutions.

Self-monitoring consists of having the patient record tics by using a wrist counter or small notebook. It is fairly effective in reducing some tics by increasing the child's awareness.

### **Medications**

Medication is the main treatment for motor and vocal tics. Because medications can cause side effects, patients and their families should be evaluated fully and use other treatment methods in conjunction with medication. Because the symptoms of tic disorders overlap those of OCD and ADHD, it is essential to determine which symptoms are causing the greatest concern and impairment, and treat the patient according to the single diagnostic category that best fits him or her, whether it is a tic disorder, OCD, or ADHD.

These medications may be prescribed for patients with tic disorders:

- Typical neuroleptics (antipsychotic medications), including haloperidol (Haldol), risperidone (Risperdal), and pimozide (Orap). Neuroleptics can have significant side effects, which include concentration problems, cognitive blunting, sedation, and rarely, tardive dyskinesia (a movement disorder that consists of lip, mouth, and tongue movements).
- Alpha-adrenergic receptor agonists, including clonidine (Catapres) and guanfacine (Tenex). Clonidine has fewer and milder side effects than the neuroleptics in general, with the most common being sedation. Sedation occurs in 10–20% of cases and can often be controlled through adjusting the dosage.
- The phenothiazines may be used when haloperidol or pimozide has proven ineffective.
- Atypical antipsychotics such as aripiprazole (Abilify) and other agents that block dopamine receptors including risperidone (Risperdal) and clozapine (Clozaril).
- Tetrabenazine is a promising new medication with fewer side effects than other typical neuroleptics. It can be used in combination with the older antipsychotic medications, allowing for lower doses of both medications with substantial relief. However, it may cause depression and Parkinson's-like symptoms.
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), which include such medications as fluoxetine (Prozac) and

sertraline (Zoloft), can be used to treat the obsessive-compulsive behaviors associated with Tourette's disorder. They can also be helpful with depression and impulse control difficulties, though they must be given at higher dosages for OCD than for depression. The SSRIs, however, can cause gastric upset and nausea.

- Benzodiazepines are used in some cases to decrease tic severity and lower the patient's anxiety level, but are often avoided because they can cause dependence and tolerance.
- Nicotine chewing gum appears to reduce tics when added to ongoing treatment with haloperidol, but is in need of further study.
- Calcium channel blockers, such as verapamil (Calan) and nifedipine (Adalat) may ease symptoms by reducing the release of neurotransmitters in the brain.

### **Surgical treatments**

Surgery to the frontal lobe (prefrontal lobotomy) and limbic system (limbic leucotomy) have not been shown effective in treating tic disorders. However, deep brain stimulation—the high-frequency stimulation of the brain with electrodes—has been shown in studies to reduce tic severity by 70%.

### **Alternative therapies**

There is growing interest in dietary changes and nutritional supplements to prevent and manage the symptoms of tic disorders, although formal studies have not yet been conducted in this area. Some theorists have suggested that hidden food and chemical allergies or nutritional deficiencies may influence the development and maintenance of tic disorders. Recommendations include eating organic food and avoiding pesticides, taking antioxidants, increasing intake of folic acid and the B vitamins, eating foods high in zinc and magnesium, eliminating caffeine from the diet, and avoiding artificial sweeteners, colors and dyes.

### **Prognosis**

There is presently no cure for tic disorders, and there is no evidence that early treatment alters prognosis. When a child is first evaluated, it is not possible to determine whether the tics will be chronic or transient, mild or severe.

As recently as twenty years ago, tic disorders were considered to be lifelong conditions, with remissions believed to be rare. There is now a general consensus that if a tic disorder is the only diagnosis, the prognosis is favorable. Up to 73% of patients report that their tics decreased markedly or disappeared as they entered the later years of adolescence or early adulthood.

## KEY TERMS

**Atypical antipsychotics**—A group of medications for the treatment of psychotic symptoms that were introduced in the 1990s. The atypical antipsychotics include clozapine, risperidone, quetiapine, ziprasidone, and olanzapine. They are sometimes called serotonin dopamine antagonists, or SDAs.

**Basal ganglia**—A group of masses of gray matter located in the cerebral hemispheres of the brain that control movement as well as some aspects of emotion and cognition.

**Behavioral therapy**—An approach to treatment that focuses on extinguishing undesirable behavior and replacing it with desired behavior.

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy**—An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**Comorbidity**—Association or presence of two or more mental disorders in the same patient. A disorder that is said to have a high degree of comorbidity is likely to occur in patients diagnosed with other disorders that may share or reinforce some of its symptoms.

**Compulsion**—A strong impulse to perform an act, particularly one that is irrational or contrary to one's will.

**Coprolalia**—A vocal tic characterized by uttering obscene, hostile, or inappropriate words. A motor tic characterized by obscene gestures is called copropraxia.

**Cyclic AMP**—A small molecule of adenosine monophosphate (AMP) that activates enzymes and increases the effects of hormones and other neurotransmitters.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Holistic**—A treatment approach that is comprehensive and respectful of a person's emotional, social, cognitive, and interpersonal needs.

**Neuroleptic**—Another name for the older antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Obsession**—A persistent image, idea, or desire that dominates a person's thoughts or feelings.

**Onset**—The point in time at which the symptoms of a disorder first became apparent.

**Phenothiazines**—A class of drugs widely used in the treatment of psychosis.

**Remission**—In the course of an illness or disorder, a period of time when symptoms are absent.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Stigma**—A mark or characteristic trait of a disease or defect; by extension, a cause for reproach or a stain on one's reputation. Tic disorders are sometimes regarded as a stigma by the patient's family.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, or face or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

**Thalamus**—The middle part of the diencephalon (a part of the human forebrain), responsible for transmitting and integrating information from the senses.

**Tic**—A sudden involuntary behavior that is difficult or impossible for the person to suppress. Tics may be either motor (related to movement) or vocal, and may become more pronounced under stress.

In a small number of patients, the most severe and debilitating forms of a tic disorder occur in adult life. In addition, stress in later life can cause tics to re-emerge. The tics may be new developments in adulthood, a phenomenon that may be more common than previously thought. Remission rates for

tic disorders are difficult to pinpoint among this seldom-studied population, but appear to be extremely low.

While the tics themselves may decline, however, the associated problems often continue into adult life. Obsessive-compulsive symptoms and other behavioral

problems, as well as learning disabilities, may grow worse. Obsessive-compulsive behaviors become most pronounced at age 15 and remain at that level. Panic attacks, depression, **agoraphobia**, and alcoholism are most significant in the early adult years, while a tendency toward **obesity** increases steadily with age, particularly in women.

In adulthood, a patient's repertoire of tics is reduced and becomes predictable during periods of fatigue and heightened emotionality. Some studies suggest remission rates, with the complete cessation of symptoms, to be as high as 50%. Cases of total remission appear to be related to the family's treatment of the patient when he or she was a child. Persons who were punished, misunderstood and stigmatized because of their tics experience greater functional impairment as adults than those who were supported and understood as children.

### Prevention

There are few preventive strategies for tic disorders. There is some evidence that maternal emotional stress during pregnancy and severe nausea and vomiting during the first trimester may affect tic severity. Attempting to minimize prenatal stress may possibly serve a limited preventive function.

Similarly, because people with tic disorders are sensitive to stress, efforts to maintain a low-stress environment can help minimize the number or severity of tics (e.g., reducing the number of social gatherings, which can provoke anxiety). This approach cannot prevent tics altogether, and must be undertaken with an awareness that it is neither healthful nor advisable to attempt to eliminate all stressful events in life.

*See also* Abnormal involuntary movement scale; Neuropsychological testing; Stereotypic movement disorder.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Chowdhury, Uttom and Isobel Heyman. *Tics and Tourette Syndrome: A Handbook for Parents and Professionals*. London: Jessica Kingsley Publishers, 2004.
- Kurlan, Roger, Editor. *Handbook of Tourette's Syndrome and Related Tic and Behavioral Disorder*. New York: Marcel Dekker, 2005.
- Woods, Douglas W. and Raymond G. Miltenberger, eds. *Tic Disorders, Trichotillomania, and Other Repetitive Behavior Disorders: Behavioral Approaches to Analysis and Treatment*. 1st ed. Norwell, Massachusetts: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2006.

*and Treatment*. 1st ed. Norwell, Massachusetts: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 2006.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Association for Comprehensive Neurotherapy. P.O. Box 1967, Tarpon Beach, FL 34688-1967. (561) 798-0472. <<http://www.latitudes.org>>.

National Institutes of Health/National Institute of Neurological Diseases and Stroke (NINDS). P.O. Box 5801, Bethesda, MD 20824. (800) 352-9424. <<http://www.ninds.nih.gov>>.

The Tourette Syndrome Association, Inc. 42-40 Bell Boulevard, Bayside, NY 11361-2861. (718) 224-2999. <<http://www.tsa-usa.org>>.

Holly Scherstuhl, M.Ed.  
Stephanie N. Watson

Tofranil see **Imipramine**

## Toilet phobia

### Definition

Toilet phobia is an often debilitating psychological condition that affects an individual's ability to urinate or defecate in public facilities. It is an umbrella term that encompasses two different phobias—paruresis, the fear of urinating in public places, which is also referred to as “bashful bladder syndrome,” “shy bladder syndrome,” or “pee-phobia”; and parcopresis, the fear of having a bowel movement in a public place or when other people are in their vicinity. Many psychologists consider toilet phobias to be a form of social **anxiety** disorder.

### Description

Many people occasionally experience difficulty urinating or having a bowel movement. Often, these difficulties stem from an underlying medical condition, such as a blockage in the urinary system, constipation, illness, or a side effect of medication. However, when an individual is able to urinate or defecate at home but not in public, the cause is likely the psychological conditions paruresis or parcopresis. Individuals with these conditions will feel embarrassed at the thought that they might be heard or criticized while using the toilet, and their anxiety can gradually worsen as the inability to use public bathrooms persists.

Different degrees of toilet phobias exist. People who have the most severe form are unable to use a public restroom entirely, and may even be unable to



**Public restroom, which causes feelings of anxiety and phobias in some people.** (John Krstenansky/Alamy)

use the bathroom at the home of a friend or family member. Other people with toilet phobias can only use a public restroom if it is empty, and still others can go in a public facility if they are enclosed in a private stall (rather than standing at a urinal).

To prevent the urge to urinate when away from home, individuals with toilet phobia may restrict fluids or take medications that prevent them from going to the bathroom. They may refuse to attend social functions and avoid traveling, for fear that they will be unable to find an empty restroom.

Young children may experience phobias during toilet training. The primary causes of toilet phobias in children are the fears of passing a painful bowel movement or being punished for making a mess. In most people with paruresis, the condition develops during the adolescent or teenage years, although it can arise at any time.

## Demographics

An estimated 7%, or 17 million Americans, experience paruresis. Although paruresis can occur in both men and women, approximately 90% of those who seek treatment for the condition are male. This may be

because public men's restrooms are much more open (urinals, rather than closed stalls) than women's restrooms.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Toilet phobias are believed to have genetic, physical, and psychological components. Paruresis and parcopresis tend run in families, as do social anxiety disorder and **depression**, which are also common among those who have toilet phobias.

The physical component of the disorder occurs when an individual experiences anxiety using a public restroom. That anxiety awakens the sympathetic nervous system, which causes smooth muscles in the urinary tract to close down, shutting off the flow of urine. The level of anxiety the person feels may grow with each subsequent attempt to use a public restroom.

There are a number of theories regarding the psychological triggers for toilet phobias, including:

- Being harassed, bullied, or made fun of during a childhood or adolescent bathroom experience
- Sexual abuse
- A subconscious association between using the bathroom and sexuality
- Obsessive-compulsive disorder connected to a fear of contamination
- Having critical parents, or having been raised to be ashamed of the toileting process

Because of the embarrassment involved with toilet phobias, most people who experience them do not seek professional help for their condition.

### Symptoms

The following are symptoms of toilet phobias:

- Limiting or avoiding fluids
- Taking medication to prevent urination or a bowel movement
- Avoiding travel, social situations, and jobs that require the use of a public restroom
- Having a distended bladder from holding in urine for long periods of time or having other bladder or kidney problems
- Feeling sweaty, dizzy, faint, or shaky when attempting to use a public restroom
- Being embarrassed or ashamed of using the toilet and of the phobia itself

## Diagnosis

Individuals with toilet phobias are often referred to a urologist for an initial evaluation. The urologist will do a series of tests to identify whether the problem stems from a condition such as diabetes or an enlarged prostate gland, or whether it is the side effect of a medication. The doctor may do a urodynamic evaluation, which measures urine flow rate, bladder pressure, and residual urine volume to see how well the bladder is filling and emptying. If the urological assessment is negative, the patient may be referred to a **psychologist** or **psychiatrist**. For a **diagnosis** of toilet phobia to be made, the phobia must be significant enough to affect the individual's daily life. For example, the person must be going out of his or her way to avoid public restrooms.

## Treatments

Several treatments have been proposed for toilet phobias, including **cognitive-behavioral therapy**, **hypnotherapy**, **biofeedback**, medication, and self-catheterization. The most commonly used treatment for paruresis is graduated behavior therapy, in which patients learn to overcome their phobia by progressing through increasingly public bathroom scenarios. For example, someone may first urinate in a public bathroom while someone is standing outside the restroom, and work their way up to voiding while someone is right outside the stall.

Toilet phobias also can be treated with medication, although no clinical evidence exists to prove its effectiveness. Sometimes the drug **diazepam** can relax the pelvic floor muscles to relieve urinary retention. **Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** may be used to treat the underlying anxiety that is causing the toilet phobia.

For children who are experiencing toilet phobias, several possible interventions can be used. If the child fears having a painful bowel movement, stool softeners can help ensure that the bowel movement is not uncomfortable. Parents can reassure their child about using the toilet by using sweets or other rewards as incentives. If the phobia stems from anxiety or depression, the child may require counseling from a psychiatrist or psychologist.

## Prognosis

Although cognitive-behavioral therapy, **psychotherapy**, and other treatments are not effective in each case, these techniques help some people overcome toilet phobias. Thus far, no randomized, con-

## KEY TERMS

**Biofeedback**—A treatment that uses a special machine to help the patient learn how to control involuntary body processes, including heart rate and blood pressure.

**Catheterization**—The use of a hollow, flexible tube to drain urine from the body.

**Cognitive-behavioral therapy**—A therapeutic approach that teaches patients how to identify the thoughts and beliefs that are causing their behaviors to learn how to change those behaviors.

**Hypnotherapy**—A type of therapy that puts a patient into a deep state of relaxation, making him or her more suggestive to the therapist's instructions.

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—A type of anxiety disorder characterized by repeated uncontrollable thoughts and repetitive actions.

**Parcopresis**—A type of social anxiety disorder in which a person is unable to have a bowel movement in a public place.

**Paruresis (also referred to as bashful bladder syndrome, shy bladder syndrome, or pee-phobia)**—A type of social anxiety disorder in which a person is unable to urinate in a public place.

**Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**—A class of antidepressant medications used to treat depression and anxiety.

**Social anxiety disorder**—A condition in which a person feels intense anxiety during normal social situations.

**Urodynamic evaluation**—A series of tests that assess urinary tract function.

**Urologist**—A doctor who specializes in treating diseases related to the urinary tract.

trolled studies have been done to evaluate toilet phobia treatments; however, surveys and case studies suggest that behavioral therapies can have either minimal or complete success in at least half of the patients who try them.

## Prevention

There is no way to prevent toilet phobias. However, treatments such as graduated behavior therapy may be effective in reducing the anxiety associated with using public restrooms.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Bandelow, Borwin, and Dan J. Stein, eds. *Social Anxiety Disorder*. New York: Marcel Dekker, 2004.
- Heimberg, Richard G., Michael R. Liebowitz, Debra A. Hope, and Franklin R. Schneier, eds. *Social Phobia: Diagnosis, Assessment, and Treatment*. New York: The Guilford Press, 2006.
- Soifer, Steven, MSW, PhD, George D. Zgourides, PsyD, Joseph Himle, MSW, PhD, and Nancy L. Pickering. *Shy Bladder Syndrome: Your Step-By-Step Guide to Overcoming Paruresis*. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2001.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Anxiety Disorders Association of America, 8730 Georgia Avenue, Suite 600, Silver Spring, MD 20910. Telephone: (240) 485-1001. <<http://www.adaa.org>>.
- International Paruresis Association, P.O. Box 65111, Baltimore, MD 21209. Telephone: (800) 247-3864. <<http://www.paruresis.org>>.
- National Institute of Mental Health, 6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 8184, MSC 9663, Bethesda, MD 20892-9663. Telephone: (866) 615-6464. <<http://www.nimh.nih.gov>>.

Stephanie N. Watson

## Token economy system

### Definition

A token economy is a form of **behavior modification** designed to increase desirable behavior and decrease undesirable behavior with the use of tokens. Individuals receive tokens immediately after displaying desirable behavior. The tokens are collected and later exchanged for a meaningful object or privilege.

### Purpose

The primary goal of a token economy is to increase desirable behavior and decrease undesirable behavior. Often token economies are used in institutional settings (such as psychiatric hospitals or correctional facilities) to manage the behavior of individuals who may be aggressive or unpredictable. However, the larger goal of token economies is to teach appropriate behavior and social skills that can be used in one's natural environment. Special education (for children with developmental or learning disabilities, hyperactivity, attention deficit, or behavioral disorders), regular education, colleges, various types of **group homes**, military divisions, nursing homes, **addiction** treatment programs, occupa-

tional settings, family homes (for marital or parenting difficulties), and hospitals may also use token economies. Token economies can be used individually or in groups.

### Description

Several elements are necessary in every token economy:

- **Tokens:** Anything that is visible and countable can be used as a token. Tokens should preferably be attractive, easy to carry and dispense, and difficult to counterfeit. Commonly used items include poker chips, stickers, point tallies, or play money. When an individual displays desirable behavior, he or she is immediately given a designated number of tokens. Tokens have no value of their own. They are collected and later exchanged for meaningful objects, privileges or activities. Individuals can also lose tokens (response cost) for displaying undesirable behavior.
- **A clearly defined target behavior:** Individuals participating in a token economy need to know exactly what they must do in order to receive tokens. Desirable and undesirable behavior is explained ahead of time in simple, specific terms. The number of tokens awarded or lost for each particular behavior is also specified.
- **Back-up reinforcers:** Back-up reinforcers are the meaningful objects, privileges, or activities that individuals receive in exchange for their tokens. Examples include food items, toys, extra free time, or outings. The success of a token economy depends on the appeal of the back-up reinforcers. Individuals will only be motivated to earn tokens if they anticipate the future reward represented by the tokens. A well-designed token economy will use back-up reinforcers chosen by individuals in treatment rather than by staff.
- **A system for exchanging tokens:** A time and place for purchasing back-up reinforcers is necessary. The token value of each back-up reinforcer is pre-determined based on monetary value, demand, or therapeutic value. For example, if the reinforcer is expensive or highly attractive, the token value should be higher. If possession of or participation in the reinforcer would aid in the individual's acquisition of skills, the token value should be lower. If the token value is set too low, individuals will be less motivated to earn tokens. Conversely, if the value is set too high, individuals may become easily discouraged. It is important that each individual can earn at least some tokens.
- **A system for recording data:** Before treatment begins, information (baseline data) is gathered about each individual's current behavior. Changes in behavior are then recorded on daily data sheets.

This information is used to measure individual progress, as well as the effectiveness of the token economy. Information regarding the exchange of tokens also needs to be recorded.

- Consistent implementation of the token economy by staff: In order for a token economy to succeed, all involved staff members must reward the same behaviors, use the appropriate amount of tokens, avoid dispensing back-up reinforcers for free, and prevent tokens from being counterfeited, stolen, or otherwise unjustly obtained. Staff responsibilities and the rules of the token economy should be described in a written manual. Staff members should also be evaluated periodically and given the opportunity to raise questions or concerns.

Initially tokens are awarded frequently and in higher amounts, but as individuals learn the desirable behavior, opportunities to earn tokens decrease. (The amount and frequency of token dispensing is called a **reinforcement schedule**.) For example, in a classroom, each student may earn 25 to 75 tokens the first day, so that they quickly learn the value of the tokens. Later, students may earn 15 to 30 tokens per day. By gradually decreasing the availability of tokens (fading), students should learn to display the desirable behavior independently, without the unnatural use of tokens. Reinforcers that individuals would normally encounter in society, such as verbal praise, should accompany the awarding of tokens to aid in the fading process.

Advantages of token economies are that behaviors can be rewarded immediately, rewards are the same for all members of a group, use of punishment (response cost) is less restrictive than other forms of punishment, and individuals can learn skills related to planning for the future. Disadvantages include considerable cost, effort, and extensive staff training and management. Some professionals find token economies to be time-consuming and impractical.

## Risks

Risks involved in token economies are similar to those in other forms of behavior modification. Staff members implementing the therapy may intentionally or unintentionally **neglect** the rights of individuals receiving treatment. Token economies should never deprive individuals of their basic needs, such as sufficient food, comfortable bedding, or reasonable opportunities for leisure. If staff members are inadequately trained or there is a shortage of staff, desirable behaviors may not be rewarded or undesirable behaviors may be inadvertently rewarded, resulting in an increase of negative behavior. Controversy exists regarding placing individuals in treatment against their will (such as in a

## KEY TERMS

**Back-up reinforcer**—A desirable item, privilege, or activity that is purchased with tokens and serves as a delayed reward and subsequent motivation for target (desired) behavior.

**Baseline data**—Information regarding the frequency and severity of behavior, gathered before treatment begins.

**Behavior modification**—An approach to therapy based on the principles of operant conditioning. Behavior modification seeks to replace undesirable behaviors with preferable behaviors through the use of positive or negative reinforcement.

**Fading**—Gradually decreasing the amount or frequency of a reinforcer so that the target behavior will begin to occur independent of any rewards.

**Reinforcement schedule**—The frequency and amount of reinforcers administered.

**Reinforcer**—Anything that causes an increase of a particular behavior.

**Response cost**—A behavioral technique that involves removing a stimulus from an individual's environment so that the response that directly precedes the removal is weakened. In a token economy system, response cost is a form of punishment involving loss of tokens due to inappropriate behavior, which consequently results in decreased ability to purchase back-up reinforcers.

**Target behavior**—The specific behavior to be increased or decreased during treatment.

**Therapeutic value**—The potential benefit of an object or situation, in terms of its ability to enhance functioning (social, emotional, intellectual, occupational, etc.) in an individual.

**Token**—Any item that can be seen and collected (such as stickers or points in a point tally) that has no value of its own, but is used as an immediate reward for desirable behavior that is later exchanged for back-up reinforcers.

psychiatric hospital), and deciding which behaviors should be considered desirable and which should be considered undesirable.

## Normal results

Ideally, individuals will use the skills learned in a token economy in their everyday surroundings. They will display the undesirable behavior less frequently or

not at all. They will also engage in positive, adaptive behaviors more often.

### Abnormal results

If the token economy was ineffective, or time spent in the token economy was limited, individuals may show no changes or increases in the undesirable behavior.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Ayllon, Teodoro. *How to Use Token Economy and Point Systems*. 2nd ed. Austin, Texas: Pro-Ed, 1999.
- Higgins, Stephen T. and Kenneth Silverman. *Motivating Change Among Illicit Drug Abusers: Research on Contingency Management Interventions*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 1999.
- Martin, Garry. *Behavior Modification: What It Is and How to Do It*. 6th ed. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, 1999.
- Miltenberger, Raymond G. *Behavior Modification: Principles and Procedures*. 2nd ed. Belmont, California: Wadsworth/Thomson Learning, 2001.

#### PERIODICALS

- Moore, James W., Daniel H. Tingstrom, R. Anthony Doggett, and William D. Carlyon. "Restructuring an Existing Token Economy in a Psychiatric Facility for Children." *Child & Family Behavior Therapy* 23, no. 3 (2001): 53–59.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- Association for Behavioral Analysis. 213 West Hall, Western Michigan University, 1903 W. Michigan Avenue, Kalamazoo, Michigan 49008-5301. (616) 387-8341; (616) 384-8342. <<http://www.wmich.edu/aba>>.
- Cambridge Center for Behavioral Studies. 336 Baker Avenue, Concord, Massachusetts 01742-2107. (978) 369-2227. <[www.behavior.org](http://www.behavior.org)>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, M.A.

Tourette's disorder see **Tic disorders**

Tranquilizers see **Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse**

## Transcranial magnetic stimulation

### Definition

Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) is a non-invasive experimental procedure that gently stimulates the **brain** using short bursts of electromagnetic energy.

### Description

TMS uses specialized electromagnets that are placed on the patient's scalp. The magnets generate short bursts of magnetic energy of approximately the same strength as a **magnetic resonance imaging** (MRI) scanner, but over a more focused area. These pulses produce electrical currents in the brain that change the brain's activity in the area of focus. Repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation (rTMS) is treatment using a series of TMS pulses.

### Purpose

Originally, TMS was a research tool used to map the brain and to study the differences between a normal brain and a brain with pathology. TMS has been used to study how various functions such as perception, memory, or attention are organized in the brain.

More recently, TMS research has also begun to focus on practical applications for the technology in the treatment of various disorders. Although such treatments are not yet proven to be effective and have not been approved by the Food and Drug Administration for use in the United States, U.S. researchers are currently performing **clinical trials**. Research is currently underway to investigate the effectiveness of TMS in the treatment of a number of illnesses, most notably major **depression**.

#### *Use of TMS in the treatment of depression*

Much of the application research in TMS has focused on its effectiveness in the treatment of severe and treatment-resistant depression. Although **antidepressants, psychotherapy, and electroconvulsive therapy** (ECT) are usually effective in the treatment of depression, not all cases can be successfully treated using these methods. In clinical trials, TMS has been found to be effective in many, but not all, of the more difficult cases.

Since the use of antidepressants in children and adolescents is not recommended due to safety issues, TMS offers a promising alternative treatment. However, most research studies to date have focused only on depression in adults. The effectiveness of TMS for children and adolescents cannot be assumed to be the same.

#### *Use of TMS in the treatment of other illnesses*

Although most research in the clinical application of TMS and rTMS is focused on the treatment of depression, experimental research and clinical case studies also point to the possibility of TMS being an effective treatment in a number of other disorders. Among these are:

- chronic pain
- epilepsy
- migraine
- obsessive-compulsive disorder
- panic disorder
- Parkinson's disease
- post-traumatic stress disorder
- rehabilitation following a stroke
- tinnitus
- Tourette's syndrome
- various psychiatric symptoms, particularly auditory hallucinations associated with schizophrenia

## Risks

At this time, it is generally thought that there are no harmful side effects to TMS or rTMS. The main risk of treatment with TMS is of inducing a seizure. Even in cases where **seizures** resulted from TMS, the seizures occurred either during the treatment or immediately thereafter, and did not lead to the development of epilepsy. In general, the research shows this risk to be low, and safety guidelines have been put in place to minimize seizure risk.

Although there is the potential risk of TMS to affect the normal functioning of the brain, the literature to date reports few side effects such as those resulting from electroconvulsive therapy. As opposed to the potential memory loss, inability to concentrate, or similar side effects often associated with ECT, the side effects of TMS tend to be very rare, mild, and transient.

Potential side effects of TMS include neckaches or headaches. These tend to be generally mild reactions that respond well to common over-the-counter analgesics. rTMS has been shown to cause tinnitus (ringing in the ears) or temporary hearing loss. However, the use of earplugs during the treatment prevents this risk. The long-term risks of rTMS treatment are unknown.

## Precautions

Individuals with increased risk of seizure—including those with epilepsy or a seizure disorder, a history of seizures, or a family history of epilepsy or a seizure disorder—should not receive TMS. Other people at increased risk for seizures, such as those with increased intracranial pressure due to trauma or other causes, those taking medications that increase the risk of seizures, or anyone with serious heart disease, should not receive TMS.

## KEY TERMS

- Analgesic**—A medication to reduce or eliminate pain.
- Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)**—A controversial treatment in which controlled, low-dose electrical currents are used to cause a seizure. Although rarely used today, ECT is still sometimes used in the treatment of severe depression. The benefits of ECT in the treatment of depression are temporary.
- Noninvasive**—A medical treatment that does not break the skin.
- Tinnitus**—Noise in one or both ears, including ringing, clicking, or buzzing.

The magnetic force generated by TMS will attract metallic objects and repel magnetic objects. Therefore, individuals with intracranial metallic or magnetic objects such as shrapnel or plates, screws, or clips from surgical procedures should not receive TMS unless the effects of the magnetic force on the object are known. Similarly, individuals with cardiac pacemakers, electrodes inside the heart, or implanted medication pumps should not receive TMS. Pregnant women or those who might be pregnant should not receive TMS.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Bechlibnyk-Butler, Kalyna Z. and J. Joel, Jeffries, eds. *Clinical Handbook of Psychotropic Drugs*. Cambridge, MA: Hogrefe and Huber Publishing, 2006.
- Farah, Martha J and Todd E. Feinberg, eds. *Patient-Based Approaches to Cognitive Neuroscience*. 2nd ed. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2005.
- Lisanby, Sarah H., ed. *Brain Stimulation in Psychiatric Treatment*. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2004.
- VandenBos, Gary R., ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2007.
- Walsh, Vincent and Alvaro Paqscual-Leone. *Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation: A Neurochronometrics of Mind*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2003.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

Transient tic disorder see **Tic disorders**

Transsexualism see **Gender identity disorder**

## Transvestic fetishism

### Definition

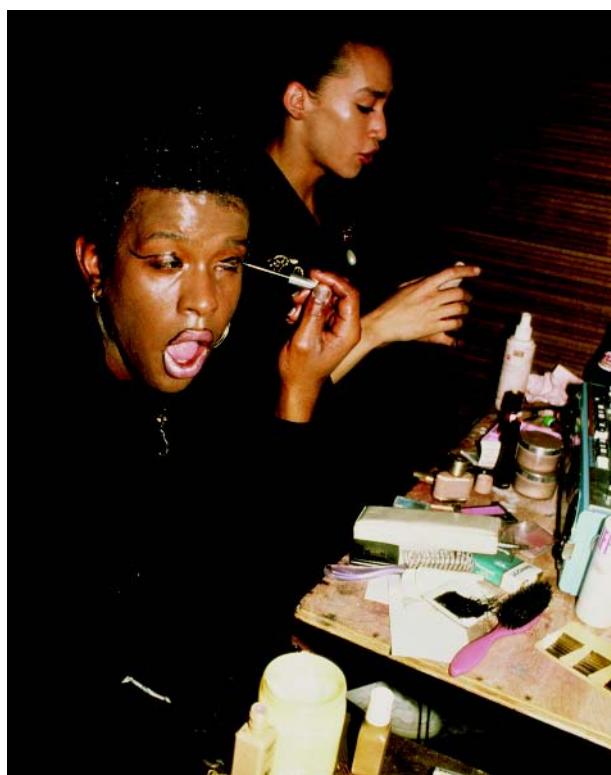
Transvestic **fetishism** is defined by the mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (2000), which is also called *DSM-IV-TR*, as one of the **paraphilic disorders**. The paraphilic disorders are a group of mental disorders characterized by **obsession** with unusual sexual practices or with sexual activity involving non-consenting or inappropriate partners (such as children or animals). The essential feature of transvestic fetishism is recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies involving dressing in clothing associated with members of the opposite sex. Another term for transvestic fetishism is cross-dressing; people who frequently engage in cross-dressing are sometimes called transvestites. A **diagnosis** of transvestic fetishism is made only if an individual has acted on these urges or is markedly distressed by them. In other systems of psychiatric classification, transvestic fetishism is considered a sexual deviation.

For some people who are diagnosed with transvestic fetishism, fantasies or stimuli associated with cross-dressing may always be necessary for erotic arousal and are always included in sexual activity, if not actually acted out alone or with a partner. In other patients, cross-dressing may occur only episodically, for example, during periods of **stress**. At other times the person is able to function sexually without the transvestic fetish or related stimuli.

### Description

A person with a transvestic fetish derives sexual gratification from dressing in clothing appropriate for a member of the opposite sex. Almost all patients diagnosed with transvestic fetishism, however, are men dressing as women. This lopsided gender ratio may be partly due to the fact that contemporary Western societies allow women to dress in a wide range of clothing styles influenced by menswear, whereas the reverse is not the case. While it is not at all unusual to see women wearing jeans, tailored trousers, Western-style boots, or even tuxedos in some circumstances, men wearing dresses or high-heeled shoes look distinctly out of place.

A person's participation in transvestism is usually gradual. Over time, a person with a transvestic fetish assumes the role and appearance of a member of the opposite gender. It is important to note that this activity is closely associated with achieving sexual gratification. Persons who have had extensive experience



**A transvestite male applying make-up.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by Permission.)

with a transvestic fetish may be difficult to distinguish from members of the opposite sex. A so-called mature transvestic fetish involves adopting all of the mannerisms, clothing, materials and other items associated with persons of the opposite sex.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

The basis for a transvestic fetish is obtaining sexual gratification by dressing in clothing appropriate for the opposite sex. The cause may be adolescent curiosity. A person with a transvestic fetish may not be aware of its roots. Transvestic fetishism sometimes begins when a young boy dresses up in the clothes of an older sister or his mother. The activity is continued because it is enjoyable but the reasons for the enjoyment remain unconscious. In other cases a boy's mother may initiate the cross-dressing by dressing him as if he were a girl. This behavior is sometimes related to the mother's anger at men or to a preference for having daughters rather than sons.

Persons with transvestic fetishes should not be assumed to be homosexual. According to *DSM-IV-TR*, most men who practice cross-dressing are basically

heterosexual in their orientation. Some, however, have occasional sexual encounters with other men.

### Symptoms

Early symptoms of transvestic fetishism involve touching or wearing items of clothing that are considered typically feminine. This initial interest may progress to wearing undergarments or other items that can be hidden from the view of others while providing arousal to the wearer. Over time, the extent of dressing in women's clothing expands, sometimes to the point of dressing as a woman on a regular basis. A developed transvestic fetish often involves feminine hair styling and the use of women's cosmetics and accessories.

In some persons diagnosed with transvestic fetishism, the motivation for cross-dressing may change over time from a search for sexual excitement to simple relief from stress, **depression**, or **anxiety**.

In some cases, persons with a transvestic fetish discover that they are unhappy with their biological sex, a condition known as gender dysphoria. They may elect to have hormonal and surgical procedures to change their bodies. Some may choose to have gender reassignment surgery. The incidence of gender dysphoria and subsequent gender reassignment among persons diagnosed with transvestic fetishism is not known.

### Demographics

Except for **sexual masochism**, in which the gender ratio is estimated to be 20 males for each female, paraphilic such as transvestic fetishism are practically never diagnosed in females, although a few cases have been reported. Virtually no information is available on family patterns of the disorder.

### Diagnosis

Persons with transvestic fetishism may or may not seek **psychotherapy** on their own account. In some instances, the patient has agreed to consult a **psychiatrist** because his wife or girl friend is distressed by the cross-dressing. The actual diagnosis of transvestic fetishism is most commonly made by taking a history or by direct observation. The diagnosis is made only if the patient has been markedly distressed by inability to dress in such a manner or if the disorder is interfering with his education, occupation, or social life. Dressing in women's clothing for such occasions as Halloween or a costume party is not sufficient for a diagnosis of transvestic fetishism.

## KEY TERMS

**Cross-dressing**—Wearing clothing and other attire appropriate to the opposite sex.

**Fetishism**—A paraphilia in which a person requires a nonliving object (or occasionally a nongenital part of the body, such as the partner's feet) in order to achieve sexual arousal and satisfaction.

**Gender dysphoria**—A state of persistent discomfort or depression associated with one's gender role or biological sex.

**Paraphilics**—A group of mental disorders that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving (1) non-human objects, (2) the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or (3) children or other non-consenting persons.

**Transvestite**—A person who derives sexual pleasure or gratification from dressing in clothing of the opposite sex.

### Treatments

In the earliest period of behavior therapy, transvestic fetishes were narrowly viewed as inappropriate behavior that was confined to a limited range of situations, and were sometimes treated with **aversion therapy**, usually with electric shocks. This approach was largely unsuccessful. Persons with fetishes have also been treated by using a form of behavioral therapy known as orgasmic reorientation, which attempts to help people learn to respond sexually to culturally appropriate stimuli. This treatment also has had limited success.

Most persons who have a transvestic fetish never seek treatment from professionals. Most are capable of achieving sexual gratification in culturally appropriate situations. Their preoccupation with cross-dressing is viewed as essentially harmless to other persons, since transvestism is not associated with criminal activities or forcing one's sexual preferences on others. American society has developed more tolerance for transvestites, thus further reducing the demand for professional treatment.

### Prognosis

The prognosis for treatment of transvestic fetishism is poor, as most persons with this disorder do not desire to change. Most cases in which treatment was

demanded by a spouse as a condition of continuing in a marriage have not been successful. The prognosis for personal adjustment is good, however, as a person with a transvestic fetish and his related activities do not usually disturb others.

### Prevention

Most experts agree that providing gender-appropriate guidance in a culturally appropriate situation will prevent the formation of a transvestic fetish. The origin of some cases of transvestism may be a random association between clothing inappropriate for one's own gender and sexual gratification. There is no reliable way to predict the formation of such associations. Supervision during childhood and adolescence, combined with acceptance of a child's biological sex, may be the best deterrent that parents can provide.

*See also* Aversion therapy; Gender identity disorder; Gender issues in mental health.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- Gelder, Michael, Richard Mayou, and Philip Cowen. *Shorter Oxford Textbook of Psychiatry*. 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- Kohut, John J., Roland Sweet. *Real Sex: Titillating but True Tales of Bizarre Fetishes, Strange Compulsions, and Just Plain Weird Stuff*. New York: Plume, 2000.
- Wilson, Josephine F. *Biological Foundations of Human Behavior*. New York: Harcourt, 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

- Dessens, A. B., P. T. Cohen-Kettenis, G. J. Mellenbergh, G. J. Koppe, and K. Boer. "Prenatal exposure to anti-convulsants and psychosexual development." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 28, no. 1 (1999): 31-44.
- Docter, R. F., J. S. Fleming. "Measures of transgender behavior." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 30, no. 3 (2001): 255-271.
- Green, R. "Family co-occurrence of 'gender dysphoria': ten sibling or parent-child pairs." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 29, no. 5 (2000): 499-507.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. Web site: <<http://www.aafp.org>>.
- American Academy of Pediatrics. 141 Northwest Point Boulevard, Elk Grove Village, IL 60007-1098. Telephone: (847) 434-4000. Fax: (847) 434-8000. Web site: <<http://www.aap.org/default.htm>>.
- American College of Physicians. 190 N Independence Mall West, Philadelphia, PA 19106-1572. Telephone: (800) 523-1546, x 2600 or (215) 351-2600. Web site: <<http://www.acponline.org>>.

American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org>>.

American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax (202) 682-6850.

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NW, Washington, DC, 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721 or (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org>>.

American Public Health Association. 800 I Street, NW, Washington, DC 20001-3710. Telephone: (202) 777-2742. Fax: (202) 777-2534. Web site: <<http://www.apha.org>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., M.D., Dr.P.H.

Tranxene see **Clorazepate**

## Tranylcypromine

### Definition

Tranylcypromine is classified as a monoamine oxidase inhibitor (MAOI). It is used to treat serious depression. In the United States, tranylcypromine is sold under the brand name Parnate and under its generic name.

### Purpose

Tranylcypromine is used primarily to treat depression that does not respond to other types of drug therapy. It is also used occasionally to treat panic disorder, agoraphobia, and bulimia nervosa.

### Description

Tranylcypromine is a member of a class of drugs called monoamine oxidase inhibitors. Monoamine oxidase, or MAO, is an enzyme found throughout the body. In the brain, MAO breaks down norepinephrine and serotonin, two naturally occurring chemicals that are important for maintaining mental well-being and preventing depression. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors, such as tranylcypromine, reduce the activity of MAO. Less norepinephrine and serotonin are broken down, so their levels rise. This helps to lift depression.

Tranylcypromine is effective for treating depression, especially complicated types of depression that have not responded to more traditional antidepressants. However, tranylcypromine also affects the MAO enzyme in many other areas of the body. This accounts for the large number of serious side effects and drug interactions it causes.

## Recommended dosage

The typical starting dosage of tranylcypromine in adults is 10 mg taken twice per day. This dosage is sometimes increased to 30 mg per day after a two-week period. The maximum recommended amount is 60 mg per day. Those over age 60 are usually started on a dose of 2.5 mg per day. After this, their doctors will make an individualized decision about increasing the dosage. Older adults typically take smaller doses and do not take more than 45 mg per day. A doctor must make an individual determination of whether to give tranylcypromine to youths under the age of 18 years, because guidelines for this age group have not been developed.

The benefits of this drug may not become apparent for several weeks. Patients should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed, even if they do not see an immediate improvement.

## Precautions

People taking tranylcypromine should not eat foods rich in tyramine. These foods include yeast or meat extracts, fermented sausage, overripe fruit, sauerkraut, cheese, and fava beans. Alcohol should not be consumed, and the same holds true for alcohol-free beer and wine. Large amounts of caffeine-containing food and beverages, such as chocolate, tea, coffee, and cola should be avoided. The treating doctor needs to approve the use of any drug, including prescription, over-the-counter drugs, and herbal treatments, that patients take while taking tranylcypromine.

Tranylcypromine should be used with great caution in pregnant and nursing women only after the risks and benefits of treatment have been assessed. Likewise, this drug may not be appropriate for people with a history of **seizures**, children under age 18 years, people at risk for **suicide**, those with severe depression, a history of **schizophrenia**, or diabetes mellitus. People with these conditions should discuss the risks and benefits of this drug with their physicians, and a decision to treat should be made on an individual basis. People should not stop taking tranylcypromine suddenly. Instead, the dose should be gradually reduced, then discontinued.

People with a history of high blood pressure, congestive heart failure, severe liver disease, severe kidney disease, severe heart disease, and blood vessel problems in the brain should not take tranylcypromine.

## Side effects

The enzyme monoamine oxidase regulates functions throughout the body. **Phenelzine** decreases the

activity of monoamine oxidase in all the areas of the body where it exists, not just in the brain. This is why tranylcypromine is capable of causing a wide variety of side effects in many different organ systems.

Tranylcypromine should be stopped if symptoms of unusually high blood pressure develop. These symptoms include severe chest pain, severe headache, nausea, vomiting, stiff or sore neck, enlarged pupils, and significant changes in heart rate. If these symptoms develop, it should be considered an emergency. Patients should get medical help immediately. Generally these serious side effects are rare.

More common but less serious side effects include lightheadedness or dizziness when arising from a sitting position. These symptoms need to be reported to a doctor but are not considered an emergency. Less common symptoms that should be reported include pounding heartbeat, swelling of the lower extremities, nervousness, and diarrhea. Rare but reportable symptoms include fever, skin rash, dark urine, slurred speech, yellowing of the eyes or skin, and staggering when walking. Common but not serious side effects include decreased sexual performance, increased appetite, muscle twitching, trembling, blurred vision, and reduced urine output.

Overdose symptoms include confusion, seizures, severe dizziness, **hallucinations**, severe headache, severe drowsiness, significant changes in blood pressure, difficulty in sleeping, breathing difficulties, and increased irritability.

## Interactions

Tranylcypromine interacts with a long list of drugs. Some of these interactions can cause death. This section is not a complete list of interactions, but it includes the most serious ones. Patients must make sure every health care professional who takes care of them (for example, doctors, dentists, podiatrists, optometrists, pharmacists, nurses) knows that they take tranylcypromine, as well as all of the other prescription or nonprescription drugs and herbal remedies that they take.

The combination of tranylcypromine with any type of stimulant can increase the risk of developing serious increases in blood pressure. Tranylcypromine when taken with antidiabetic drugs can reduce blood sugar levels to far below normal. The combination of tranylcypromine with **barbiturates** can prolong the effects of the barbiturate drug.

## KEY TERMS

**Agoraphobia**—People with this condition worry that they will not be able to get help or flee a place if they have a panic attack, or they may refuse to go to places that might trigger a panic attack.

**Bulimia**—An eating disorder characterized by binges in which large amounts of food are consumed, followed by forced vomiting.

**Congestive heart failure**—A condition characterized by abdominal pain, swelling in the lower extremities, and weakness caused by a reduced output of blood from the left side of the heart.

**Diabetes mellitus**—A chronic disease affecting the metabolism of carbohydrates that is caused by insufficient production of insulin in the body.

**Panic disorder**—An anxiety disorder in which individuals experience sudden, debilitating attacks of intense fear.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which people have difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tyramine**—An intermediate product between the chemicals tyrosine and epinephrine in the body and a substance normally found in many foods. It is found especially in protein-rich foods that have been aged or fermented, pickled, or bacterially contaminated, such as cheese, beer, yeast, wine, and chicken liver.

Tranylcypromine should never be combined with other antidepressant drugs, especially the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**, because of potentially severe or fatal reactions, including increased risk of dangerously high blood pressure. Patients taking tranylcypromine should stop the drug, then wait at least 14 days before starting any other antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing another antidepressant and starting tranylcypromine.

Alcohol combined with tranylcypromine can lead to significantly increased blood pressure. Tranylcypromine combined with the blood pressure drug guanethidine (Ismelin) can reduce the beneficial effects of the guanethidine. When tranylcypromine is combined with levodopa (Dopar, Larodopa), a drug used to treat Parkinson's disease, severely increased blood pressure can develop. Tranylcypromine combined with lithium can cause

fever. Meperidine (Demerol), when combined with tranylcypromine, can cause fever, seizures, increased blood pressure, and agitation. Tranylcypromine combined with norepinephrine can cause increased response to norepinephrine. Tranylcypromine combined with reserpine (Serpalan, Serpasil) can produce greatly increased blood pressure. When tranylcypromine is combined with the migraine drug sumatriptan (Imitrex), significantly increased concentrations of the latter drug develop that can produce potentially toxic effects.

## Resources

### BOOKS

*Consumer Reports Complete Drug Reference*. 2002 ed.

Denver: Micromedex Thomson Healthcare, 2001.

Ellsworth, Allan J., and others. *Mosby's Medical Drug Reference*. 2001–2002. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.

Mosby's GenRx staff. *Mosby's GenRx*. 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1999.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

Venes, Donald, and others, eds. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*. 19th ed. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

Adli, Mazda, et al. "Is Dose Escalation of Antidepressants a Rational Strategy After a Medium-Dose Treatment Has Failed? A Systematic Review." *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* 255.6 (Dec. 2005): 387–400.

Frieling, Helge, and Stefan Bleich. "Tranylcypromine: New Perspectives on an 'Old' Drug." *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* 256.5 (Aug. 2006): 268–73.

McGrath, Patrick J., et al. "Tranylcypromine Versus Venlafaxine Plus Mirtazapine Following Three Failed Antidepressant Medication Trials for Depression: A STAR\*D Report." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.9 (Sept. 2006): 1531–41.

Thase, Michael E. "Bipolar Depression: Issues in Diagnosis and Treatment." *Harvard Review of Psychiatry* 13.5 (Sept.–Oct. 2005): 257–71.

Tulen, Joke H. M., et al. "Sustained Effects of Phenelzine and Tranylcypromine on Orthostatic Challenge in Antidepressant-Refractory Depression." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.5 (Oct. 2006): 542–44.

Valenstein, Marcia. "Keeping Our Eyes on STAR\*D." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.9 (Sept. 2006): 1484–86.

Mark Mitchell, MD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Trazodone

### Definition

Trazodone is an oral antidepressant. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Desyrel and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Trazodone is used to treat **depression** and to treat the combination of symptoms of **anxiety** and depression. Like most **antidepressants**, trazodone has also been used in limited numbers of patients to treat **panic disorder**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, **enuresis** (bed-wetting), eating disorders such as **bulimia nervosa**, **cocaine** dependency, and the depressive phase of bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder. It should be noted, however, that trazodone has not received official approval from the U. S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for these secondary uses.

### Description

Trazodone acts to change the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses between cells. Its action primarily increases the concentration of norepinephrine and serotonin (both chemicals that stimulate nerve cells) and, to a lesser extent, blocks the action of another brain chemical, acetylcholine. Trazodone is classified as an atypical antidepressant, but it shares many of the properties of tricyclic antidepressants (**amitriptyline**, **clomipramine**, **desipramine**, **doxepin**, **imipramine**, **nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, and **trimipramine**). It also shares some of the properties of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor antidepressants (**fluoxetine**, **paroxetine**, and **sertraline**). Trazodone is the most sedating, and least anticholinergic, of all the currently marketed antidepressants.

The therapeutic effects of trazodone, like other antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for at least two weeks after starting the drug. People taking trazodone should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

### Recommended dosage

As with any antidepressant, trazodone must be carefully adjusted by the physician to produce the desired therapeutic effect. Trazodone is available as 50-mg, 100-mg, and 150-mg film-coated tablets that cannot be divided, and 150-mg and 300-mg oral tab-

lets that can be split. Therapy is usually started at a total of 150 mg per day divided into two or three doses. This dose is increased by 50 mg every three or four days until the desired effects are seen. Daily doses may be increased to a maximum of 400 mg per day in outpatients and up to 600 mg per day in hospitalized patients. In cases of extreme depression, daily doses of up to 800 mg have been used in hospitalized patients. To minimize daytime drowsiness, a major portion of the daily dose can be given at bedtime.

### Precautions

The most common problem with trazodone is sedation (drowsiness and lack of mental and physical alertness). This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. In most patients, sedation decreases or disappears entirely with time, but until then patients taking trazodone should not perform hazardous activities requiring mental alertness or coordination, including driving and similar activities. The sedative effect is increased when trazodone is taken with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcoholic beverages, sleeping medications, other **sedatives**, or antihistamines. It may be dangerous to take trazodone in combination with these substances.

Although lower in anticholinergic side effects than tricyclic antidepressants, trazodone should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in people, especially the elderly, who have benign prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, and glaucoma, especially angle-closure glaucoma (the most severe form). Before starting treatment, people with these conditions should discuss the relative risks and benefits of treatment with their doctors to help determine if protriptyline is the right antidepressant for them.

Trazodone may increase heart rate and **stress** on the heart. It may be dangerous for people with cardiovascular disease, especially those who have recently had a heart attack, to take this drug. In rare cases where patients with cardiovascular disease must take trazodone, they should be monitored closely for cardiac rhythm disturbances and signs of cardiac stress or damage.

### Side effects

Trazodone shares side effects common to many antidepressants. The most frequent of these are dry mouth, constipation, and urinary retention, though these are less common than with tricyclic antidepressants. Increased heart rate, sedation, irritability, dizziness, and decreased coordination can also occur. As with most side effects associated with antidepressants,

the intensity is highest at the beginning of therapy and tends to decrease with continued use.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty in speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Patients may also chew sugarless gum or suck on sugarless candy in order to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement who take trazodone may be especially likely to have problems with urinary retention. Symptoms include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty than usual passing urine. In most cases, urinary retention is managed with dose reduction or by switching to another type of antidepressant. In extreme cases, patients may require treatment with bethanechol, a drug that reverses this particular side effect. In rare cases, trazodone has also been known to cause priapism, a prolonged and painful penile erection. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

## Interactions

Because both trazodone and members of the class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors may increase serotonin levels in the brain, the combination of these drugs can lead to a condition known as serotonin syndrome. Symptoms of serotonin syndrome include a prolonged rapid heart rate, hypertension (high blood pressure), flushing of the skin, **hallucinations**, tremors, and hyperthermia (increased body temperature). Because of this, it can be dangerous to take trazodone in combination with MAO inhibitors such as Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parmate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate). The same holds true when combining trazodone with a selective serotonin uptake inhibitor (SSRI) antidepressant such as Prozac (fluoxetine), paroxetine, or sertraline.

Trazodone may increase the blood pressure-lowering effects in patients who are taking antihypertensive medications. Patients who take these drugs together should have their blood pressure monitored regularly so that their antihypertensive medications can be adjusted if their blood pressure becomes too low.

The sedative effects of trazodone are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sedatives, sleeping medications, or medications used for other mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. The anticholinergic effects of trazodone may be addi-

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that generally produces effects that are the opposite of those produced by dopamine and norepinephrine. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance between acetylcholine, serotonin, dopamine and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical, acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Benign prostate hypertrophy**—Enlargement of the prostate gland.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

tive with other anticholinergic drugs such as **benztropine**, **biperiden**, **trihexyphenidyl**, and antihistamines.

*See also* Neurotransmitters.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda, MD: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

Jayaram, Geetha. "Safety of Trazodone as a Sleep Agent for Inpatients." *Psychosomatics: Journal of Consultation Liaison Psychiatry* 46.4, (Jul.–Aug. 2005): 367–69.

Luparini, Maria Rita, and others. "A Cortical GABA-5HT Interaction in the Mechanism of Action of the Antidepressant Trazodone." *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry* 28.7, (Nov. 2004): 1117–27.

Mayers, Andrew G. "Antidepressants and Their Effect on Sleep." *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental* 20.8 (Dec. 2005): 533–59.

- McNeill, Alisdair. "Chorea Induced by Low-Dose Trazodone." *European Neurology* 55.2 (2006): 101–102.
- Mendelson, Wallace B. "A Review of the Evidence for the Efficacy and Safety of Trazodone in Insomnia." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry* 66.4 (Apr. 2005): 469–76.
- Mizoguchi, Yoshito, and Akira Monji. "Low-Dose-Trazodone-Induced Disorganized Type Psychosis." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry & Clinical Neurosciences* 17.2 (Spring 2005): 253–4.

#### OTHER

Bristol-Meyers Squibb Company. *Desyrel (Trazodone HCl): Prescribing Information*. <<http://www.bms.com/>>.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## The Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS)

### Definition

The Treatment for Adolescents with **Depression** Study (TADS) was a clinical trial sponsored by the National Institutes of Health that examined the effectiveness of short- and long-term medication and **psychotherapy** treatments for teenagers (aged 12–17) with **major depressive disorder** (MDD).

MDD is a mood disorder also known as major depression, clinical depression, or unipolar depression. A person with MDD has experienced at least five of the nine symptoms below for two weeks or more, for most of the time almost every day, and this is a change from their prior level of functioning. One of the symptoms must be either (a) depressed mood, or (b) loss of interest. Recurrent MDD is diagnosed when two or more of these depressive periods occur with at least two months between episodes.

- Depressed mood (may be manifested as irritable mood).
- A significantly reduced level of interest or pleasure in most or all activities.
- A considerable loss or gain of weight (may also be an increase or decrease in appetite).
- Difficulty falling or staying asleep (insomnia), or sleeping more than usual (hypersomnia).
- Behavior that is agitated or slowed down (observable by others).
- Feeling fatigued, or having diminished energy.
- Thoughts of worthlessness or extreme guilt (not about being ill).

- Ability to think, concentrate, or make decisions is reduced.
- Frequent thoughts of death or suicide (with or without a specific plan), or suicide attempt.

It is estimated that 3 to 5% of adolescents in the United States have MDD. Depression occurs both in boys and in girls, although it is more prevalent in girls, and it is one of the most common disorders of adolescence. MDD frequently interferes with home, school, and family life, and often causes a high degree of family **stress**. Suicide is the third leading cause of death among teenagers, with approximately 50% of the deaths associated with depression.

### Description

TADS was conducted at 13 academic and community clinics across the United States and enrolled 439 participants. The first participant entered TADS in the spring of 2000 and the last one in the summer of 2003. The initial findings were gathered from data from the first 12-week treatment period. The study showed that the antidepressant **fluoxetine** and cognitive behavioral therapy combined produced the best success rate in treating depression in adolescents; 71% of participants receiving both medication and cognitive behavioral therapy improved at the end of 12 weeks of treatment. Medication alone was also an effective treatment; 61% of participants improved; cognitive behavioral therapy alone improved 44% of the cases; and 35% percent of the subjects improved with clinical management and placebo combined. Cognitive behavioral therapy taught the adolescent participant and their family skills to help relieve the depression.

TADS participants were randomly assigned to four treatment arms: 1) fluoxetine medication alone, 2) clinical management with placebo, 3) cognitive behavior therapy (CBT, talking with a therapist), and 4) combination of medication and CBT. The treatment phase was conducted in stages. Stage I lasted 12 weeks and included 6–14 visits to the clinic.

At the end of the first 12-week stage participants were advised of the treatment group to which they were assigned. Participants in the placebo group who did not improve during the first 12 weeks, or whose depression returned within 3 months, were offered any one of the other three treatments in the study—active medication, CBT, or both. The placebo condition was used only in stage I. During stages II (6 weeks, 2–6 clinic visits) and stage III (18 weeks, 3 clinic visits) participants received one of three treatments: 1) fluoxetine alone, 2) CBT

alone, or 3) fluoxetine with CBT. Only participants who responded to one of the active treatments in stage I continued with treatment in stages II and III. Participants who responded well in stage I continued with their original treatment in stage II and later in stage III.

Fluoxetine is the generic name for Prozac, a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI). **SSRIs** primarily affect serotonin, a neurotransmitter in the **brain** that plays a pivotal role in depression. **Neurotransmitters** modulate mood, emotion, sleep, and appetite. Fluoxetine is the only medication approved by the FDA to treat depression in adolescents. However, since the TADS study, more recent studies suggest that antidepressant use in adolescents may be associated with a higher incidence of suicidal behavior and suggest close observation and caution.

CBT is a form of psychotherapy that emphasizes modifying everyday thoughts and behaviors, with the aim of positively influencing emotions. The precise therapeutic techniques vary according to particular client and issue, but commonly include keeping a diary of significant events and associated feelings, thoughts, and behaviors; questioning and testing assumptions or habits of thoughts that might be unhelpful and unrealistic; gradually facing activities that may have been avoided; and trying out new ways of behaving and reacting. Relaxation and distraction techniques are also commonly used.

## Results

The study determined that the combination of fluoxetine with CBT was significantly better than fluoxetine alone or CBT alone in treating the symptoms of depression in adolescents. Fluoxetine alone was found to be a superior treatment to CBT alone. Clinically significant suicidal thinking, which was present in 29% of the sample at the beginning of the study, while improved significantly in all four treatment arms, was most improved in the fluoxetine with CBT group. The data suggest that the combination of fluoxetine with CBT offered the most favorable tradeoff between benefit and risk for adolescents with MDD.

## Resources

### BOOK

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Bhatia, S. K., and S. C. Bhatia. "Childhood and Adolescent Depression." *American Family Physician* 75.1 (2007): 73–80.

Emslie, G., and others. Columbia Suicidality Classification Group; TADS Team. "Treatment for Adolescents with

Depression Study (TADS): Safety Results." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.12 (2006):1440–55.

March, J., S. Silva, and B. Vitiello. TADS Team. "The Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS): Methods and Message at 12 Weeks." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.12 (2006): 1393–1403.

Simon, G. E. "The Antidepressant Quandary: Considering Suicide Risk when Treating Adolescent Depression." *New England Journal of Medicine* 355.26 (2006): 2722–23.

Vitiello, B., and others. TADS Team. "Functioning and Quality of Life in the Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS)." *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry* 45.2 (2006): 1419–26.

## ORGANIZATION

National Institutes of Health, 9000 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892. Telephone: (301) 496-4000. Web site: <<http://www.nih.gov>>.

Andrew J. Bean, PhD

## Triazolam

### Definition

Triazolam is a hypnotic drug. It is a member of the benzodiazepine family of drugs. In the United States, it is sold under the brand name Halcion as well as under its generic name.

### Purpose

Triazolam is used for the short-term (generally seven to ten days) treatment of **insomnia**. Continued usage for more than two to three weeks requires a complete re-evaluation of the person receiving the drug.

### Description

Triazolam increases the speed with which people achieve sleep, increases the duration of sleep, and decreases the likelihood of being awakened during sleep. The effect of triazolam decreases after 14 days of continuous use. In such cases, sleep patterns frequently return to those experienced prior to beginning use of triazolam or worse. This is called rebound insomnia.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended dose of triazolam is 0.25 mg before going to bed. People with smaller body masses

and older individuals can receive a comparable effect with 0.125 mg of triazolam. The lowest effective dosage of the drug should be used to minimize adverse reactions.

## Precautions

Because of problems with rebound insomnia, patients should not receive triazolam for more than seven consecutive days. Accompanying rebound insomnia may be daytime **anxiety**.

Triazolam can cause serious birth defects. Women should not take this medicine if they are pregnant, think they may be pregnant, or are trying to get pregnant.

The drug may cause daytime anxiety after as few as 10 days of continuous usage. If this occurs, triazolam use should be discontinued.

People using triazolam should exercise caution when driving or using power tools or machinery.

People who use triazolam to reduce jet lag on long flights should be aware of a condition sometimes called "traveler's amnesia." This is a condition in which the traveler completes the flight and carries on with normal activities but has no memory of these activities. The period of **amnesia** may last for a few minutes to a few hours. Traveler's amnesia is most common when the traveler has had too little sleep or has been drinking alcohol.

## Side effects

Triazolam has relatively few side effects. Those that have been reported include drowsiness, headache, dizziness, nervousness, a feeling of being light-headed, problems with coordination, nausea and vomiting.

Less frequent side effects include euphoria, tachycardia, **fatigue**, confusion, impaired memory, muscle cramping, pain, and **depression**.

## Interactions

Triazolam increases the effect of drugs and substances that depress the central nervous system. This class of drugs includes anesthetics, narcotics, **sedatives** and other sleeping pills, atropine, and alcohol.

Some drugs and foods increase the effects of triazolam. They may also increase the chances of having side effects. These include cimetidine, isoniazid, oral contraceptives, and grapefruit juice.

## KEY TERMS

**Amnesia**—A general medical term for loss of memory that is not due to ordinary forgetfulness. Amnesia can be caused by head injuries, brain disease, or epilepsy as well as by dissociation.

**Euphoria**—A feeling or state of well-being or elation.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Insomnia**—A chronic inability to sleep or to remain asleep throughout the night.

**Tachycardia**—A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael, and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.  
Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.  
Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Johnson, Matthew W., Patricia Suess, and Roland R. Griffiths. "Ramelteon." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.10 (Oct. 2006): 1149–57.  
Mintzer, Miriam Z., and others. "Dose Effects of Triazolam on Brain Activity During Episodic Memory Encoding: A PET Study." *Psychopharmacology* 188.4 (Nov. 2006): 445–61.  
Vansickel, Andrea R., Lon R. Hays, and Craig R. Rush. "Discriminative-Stimulus Effects of Triazolam in Women and Men." *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse* 32.3 (2006): 329–49.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, P.O. Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. Telephone: (717) 558-7750. Fax: (717) 558-7845. <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.  
American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. Telephone: (913) 906-6000. <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.  
American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.  
American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax (202) 682-6850. <<http://www.psych.org/>>.  
American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. Telephone: (703) 836-6981. Fax: (703) 836-5223.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. Telephone: (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. <<http://www.aspet.org/>>.

#### OTHER

Pfizer Inc. *Halcion (Triazolam Tablets U.S.P.): Full U.S. Prescribing Information.* <[http://www.pfizer.com/pfizer/download/uspi\\_halcion.pdf](http://www.pfizer.com/pfizer/download/uspi_halcion.pdf)>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD



**A man's scalp showing the effects of trichotillomania.**  
(Custom Medical Stock Photo)

## Trichotillomania

### Definition

Individuals with trichotillomania repetitively pull out their own hair. Trichotillomania is an impulse-control disorder, although some researchers view it as a type of affective or **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. Nail-biting, skin-picking, and thumb-sucking are considered to be related conditions.

### Description

Trichotillomania involves hair-pulling episodes that result in noticeable hair loss. Although any area of the body can be a target, the most common areas are the scalp, followed by the eyelashes, eyebrows, and pubic region. Hair-pulling can occur without the individual's awareness but is frequently preceded by a sense of increasing tension and followed by a sense of relief or gratification, common features of behavioral **addiction** disorders. The resulting hair loss can be a source of embarrassment or shame. Because of a tendency to hide symptoms and because professionals are relatively unfamiliar with the disorder, individuals either may not seek or are not offered treatment. Untreated trichotillomania can result in impaired social functioning, reduced quality of life, and medical complications.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

Psychoanalytic theories explain compulsive hair-pulling behavior as a way of dealing with unconscious conflicts or childhood trauma (such as sexual abuse). Behavioral theories assume that symptoms are learned, that a child may imitate a parent who engages in hair-pulling. The behavior may also be learned independently if it serves a purpose. For example, hair-pulling may begin as a response to **stress** and

then develop into a habit. Biological theories address a genetic basis. For instance, people with trichotillomania often have a first-degree relative with an obsessive-compulsive spectrum disorder.

Researchers have also evaluated similarities between trichotillomania and Tourette's syndrome. One group at Duke noted that the parent of a patient with Tourette's syndrome in one of their studies displayed symptoms of trichotillomania. The researchers identified a link between mutations in a specific gene and the incidence of Tourette's syndrome among the families in this study. Intrigued because the parent carried the mutation but did not exhibit symptoms of Tourette's, the researchers completed a study analyzing the potential link between carrying the gene and having trichotillomania. They confirmed a link between the hair-pulling behavior and the mutant form of the gene, called SLTRK1, which is involved in the formation of connections among **brain** cells (called neurons). Two mutations in this gene appear to be linked to trichotillomania, and the researchers suggested that the mutant protein that results may cause missed connections among neurons, leading to the hair-pulling urges.

#### Symptoms

According to the **Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)**, produced by the American Psychiatric Association and used by most mental health professionals in North America and Europe to diagnose mental disorders, the following conditions must be present for a **diagnosis** of trichotillomania:

- noticeable hair loss (alopecia) due to recurrent hair-pulling
- tension immediately before hair-pulling, or when attempting to resist hair-pulling
- reduction of tension, or a feeling of pleasure or gratification, immediately following hair-pulling
- significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning

In addition, the *DSM-IV-TR* requires that the patient's hair-pulling not be due to another medical or mental disorder. The tension-release requirement is controversial because 17% of people who otherwise qualify for this diagnosis do not experience this.

Symptoms usually emerge in early adolescence. Episodes may last a few minutes or a few hours during periods of stress or relaxation. Those with trichotillomania may prefer hairs with unique textures or qualities. The pulling may include rituals, such as twirling hair off or examining the root. Half of those individuals with trichotillomania engage in oral behaviors—running hair across the lips or through the teeth, biting off the root (trichophagy), or eating hair (trichophagia). They usually try to control their behavior in the presence of others and may hide the affected areas. Symptoms may come and go for weeks, months, or years at a time.

## Demographics

Once regarded as rare, trichotillomania is now considered more common, affecting 1–4% of people in the general population. When the tension-release requirement is excluded, trichotillomania occurs in adult females (3.4%) more often than adult males (1.5%). Among children, both genders are affected equally. Nonclinical levels of hair-pulling behavior may be as high as 15.3% among university students.

## Diagnosis

Other possible causes of symptoms must first be ruled out. Hair loss may have a medical cause, such as a dermatological condition. Hair-pulling may have another psychological cause, such as a delusion or hallucination in **schizophrenia**.

If individuals deny symptoms, hair-pulling behavior can be assessed by objective measures such as the presence of short, broken hairs or damaged follicles. Some psychological assessment instruments are also available. These include the Massachusetts General Hospital Hair Pulling Scale (MGH-HPS), a seven-item, self-report measure of the symptoms of hair-pulling. Also the Alopecia Rating assesses the level of hair loss, and the Trichotillomania Interference Checklist interviews patients

to assess the effects of pathological hair-pulling on various quality-of-life and health parameters.

Severity of symptoms is also important. Twisting or playing with hair when nervous does not qualify as trichotillomania. If symptoms are minor or undetectable, a diagnosis should be given only if the individual expresses significant distress. Children should be given the diagnosis only if symptoms persist because hair-pulling may be a temporary phase, much like thumb-sucking.

## Treatments

Treatment usually starts by determining the current frequency and severity of symptoms. This information, which serves as a measure of progress, is gathered by (a) self-report, (b) reports from significant others, (c) objective measures, such as saving pulled hairs, videotapes, or measuring areas of hair loss, or (d) a combination of these methods.

Primarily, three categories of therapy have been used in the treatment of trichotillomania:

- Psychoanalysis focuses on childhood experiences and unresolved conflicts during early development.
- Medications. Those typically used are antidepressants with serotonergic properties (also used with obsessive-compulsive disorders). Clomipramine (Anafranil) has proven most effective. The selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) have had mixed results. Some researchers recommend low doses of antipsychotic drugs (neuroleptics) in conjunction with SSRIs. Medications are usually combined with behavior therapy.
- Behavior therapy. Habit-reversal training is the most accepted approach. It teaches individuals to monitor their hair-pulling and substitute it for healthier behaviors. Alternative forms of behavior therapy include biofeedback and hypnosis.

## Prognosis

The effects of trichotillomania can be very serious. Associated feelings of shame may result in avoidance of social situations; chewing hair can result in dental erosion; and eating hair may result in hairballs (trichobezoars) becoming lodged in the stomach or large intestine, which can lead to anemia, abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting, hematemesis (vomiting blood), or bowel obstruction or perforation.

Studies show low success rates with medications and traditional psychoanalysis. Behavioral therapy has reported long-term success rates of 90% or more. Follow-up sessions are encouraged to prevent **relapse**. A major issue in prognosis is whether an individual receives treatment. Professionals may not recognize or

## KEY TERMS

**Alopecia**—Hair loss (also, loss of feathers or wool in animals).

**Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)**—Commonly prescribed drugs for treating depression. SSRIs affect the chemicals that nerves in the brain use to send messages to one another. These chemical messengers (neurotransmitters) are released by one nerve cell and taken up by others. Neurotransmitters not taken up by other nerve cells are taken up by the same cells that released them. This process is termed “reuptake.” SSRIs work by inhibiting the reuptake of serotonin, an action that allows more serotonin to be taken up by other nerve cells.

**Serotonergic**—Containing, activating, or otherwise involving serotonin, which is a chemical that aids in the transmission of nerve impulses.

**Trichobezoar**—A hairball that results from a buildup of swallowed hairs becoming lodged in the digestive system.

**Trichophagia**—Eating hair.

**Trichophagy**—Biting hair.

know how to treat trichotillomania effectively. Conversely, individuals with the disorder may be too embarrassed to address their symptoms.

### Prevention

No specific information is available regarding prevention.

*See also* Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Tic disorders.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Keuthen, Nancy J., Dan J. Stein, and Gary A. Christenson. *Help for Hair Pullers: Understanding and Coping with Trichotillomania*. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2001.
- Stein, Dan J., Gary A. Christenson, and Eric Hollander, eds. *Trichotillomania*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Press, 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

- Diefenbach, Gretchen J., et al. “Trichotillomania: Impact on Psychosocial Functioning and Quality of Life.” *Behavior and Research Therapy* 43 (2005): 868–84.

Diefenbach, Gretchen J., David Reitman, and Donald A. Williamson. “Trichotillomania: A Challenge to Research and Practice.” *Clinical Psychology Review* 20.3 (2000): 289–309.

Elliot, Amy J., and R. Wayne Fuqua. “Trichotillomania: Conceptualization, Measurement, and Treatment.” *Behavior Therapy* 31 (2000): 529–45.

### ORGANIZATIONS

Trichotillomania Learning Center, Inc. 303 Potrero No. 51, Santa Cruz, CA 95060. (831) 457-1004. <<http://www.trich.org>>.

### OTHER

News release: “Hair-pulling Disorder Caused by Faulty Gene in Some Families.” <<http://www.dukehealth.org/news/9887>>.

Duke’s Trichotillomania Genetics Research and Information About the Disorder, Including Ongoing Clinical Trials: <<http://www.chg.duke.edu/diseases/ttm.html>>.

Sandra L. Friedrich, MA  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Trifluoperazine

### Definition

Trifluoperazine is a phenothiazine antipsychotic agent. In the United States, this drug is sold under the brand name Stelazine.

### Purpose

Trifluoperazine is a drug used to treat psychotic disorders, agitation, and **dementia**.

### Description

Trifluoperazine is an effective agent in treating symptoms of psychotic behavior. When used for the treatment of **schizophrenia**, trifluoperazine reduces symptoms of emotional withdrawal, **anxiety**, tension, **hallucinations**, and suspiciousness.

### Recommended dosage

The dosage of trifluoperazine should be adjusted to the lowest level needed to control symptoms. The drug may be given orally or by intramuscular injection (a shot).

A useful initial dosage of trifluoperazine for psychotic adults is 2 to 5 mg two times each day. A common total dosage is 15 to 20 mg per day. Some people may require up to 40 mg or more per day.

When using deep intramuscular injection, 1 to 2 mg every four to six hours is usually sufficient to control symptoms within 24 hours. Total intramuscular trifluoperazine should not exceed 10 mg per day.

Control of psychotic symptoms in children between the ages of six and 12 can usually be achieved with 1 to 2 mg per day, given in 1-mg increments. Trifluoperazine is not recommended for use in children younger than six.

### Precautions

Trifluoperazine increases the level of prolactin in the blood, a hormone that stimulates the mammary glands in the breast. This is a potential problem for people with a personal or family history of breast cancer and may increase the risk of breast cancer. For this reason, health professionals must carefully evaluate the benefits and risks of the drug before administering it.

### Side effects

Relatively common side effects that accompany trifluoperazine include drowsiness, dizziness, rash, dry mouth, **insomnia**, **fatigue**, muscular weakness, anorexia, blurred vision, some loss of muscular control, and amenorrhea (lack of menstruation) in women.

Dystonia (difficulty walking or moving) may occur with trifluoperazine use. This condition may subside in 24 to 48 hours even when the person continues taking the drug, and usually disappears when trifluoperazine is discontinued.

Trifluoperazine use may lead to the development of symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease. These symptoms may include a tight or mask-like expression on the face, drooling, tremors, pill-rolling motions in the hands, cogwheel rigidity (abnormal rigidity in muscles characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched), and a shuffling gait. Taking anti-Parkinson's drugs **benztropine mesylate** or **trihexyphenidyl** hydrochloride along with the trifluoperazine usually controls these symptoms.

Trifluoperazine has the potential to produce a serious side effect called **tardive dyskinesia**. This syndrome consists of involuntary, uncoordinated movements that may appear late in therapy and may not disappear even after the drug is discontinued. Tardive dyskinesia involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, face, or other groups of skeletal muscles. The incidence of tardive dyskinesia increases with age and with increasing dosage of trifluoperazine. Women are at greater risk than men for developing tardive dyskinesia. There is no known

### KEY TERMS

**Akathisia**—Agitated or restless movement, usually affecting the legs. Movement is accompanied by a sense of discomfort and an inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive for periods of time. Akathisia is a common side effect of some neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

**Amenorrhea**—Absence of menstrual periods.

**Anorexia**—Loss of appetite or unwillingness to eat. Can be caused by medications, depression, or many other factors.

**Cogwheel rigidity**—An abnormal rigidity in muscles, characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched.

**Dystonia**—A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

**Orthostatic hypotension**—A sudden decrease in blood pressure due to a change in body position, as when moving from a sitting to standing position.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**Tardive dyskinesia**—A condition that involves involuntary movements of the tongue, jaw, mouth, face, or other groups of skeletal muscles that usually occurs either late in antipsychotic therapy or even after the therapy is discontinued. It may be irreversible.

effective treatment for tardive dyskinesia, although gradual (but rarely complete) improvement may occur over a long period.

An occasionally reported side effect of trifluoperazine is neuroleptic malignant syndrome. This is a complicated and potentially fatal condition characterized by muscle rigidity, high fever, alterations in mental status, and cardiac symptoms such as irregular pulse or blood pressure, sweating, tachycardia (fast heartbeat), and arrhythmias (irregular heartbeat). People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physician promptly.

## Interactions

Trifluoperazine may reduce the effectiveness of oral anticoagulant (blood thinning) drugs.

Trifluoperazine increases the effect of drugs and substances that depress the central nervous system. These drugs include anesthetics, opiates, **barbiturates**, atropine, and alcohol. These substances should be avoided or used sparingly by people taking trifluoperazine.

**Propranolol** increases the concentration of trifluoperazine. The blood pressure-lowering effects of guanethidine may be diminished by trifluoperazine. The use of diuretics with trifluoperazine may cause a sudden decrease in blood pressure often accompanied by dizziness due to a change in body position (known as orthostatic hypotension).

The blood concentration of phenytoin is increased by trifluoperazine. This may lead to phenytoin toxicity.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Adams, Michael, and Norman Holland. *Core Concepts in Pharmacology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.  
 Foreman, John C., and Torben Johansen. *Textbook of Receptor Pharmacology*. 2nd ed. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2002.  
 Page, Clive P., and Michael Murphy. *Integrated Pharmacology*. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 2002.  
 Von Boxtel, Chris J., Budiono Santoso, and I. Ralph Edwards. *Drug Benefits and Risks: International Textbook of Clinical Pharmacology*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

- Sawada, K., et al. "Altered Immunoreactivity of Complexin Protein in Prefrontal Cortex in Severe Mental Illness." *Molecular Psychiatry* 7.5 (2002): 484-92.  
 Waring, E. W., P. G. Devin, and V. Dewan. "Treatment of Schizophrenia with Antipsychotics in Combination." *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry* 44.2 (Mar. 1999): 189-90.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Academy of Clinical Toxicology. 777 East Park Drive, P.O. Box 8820, Harrisburg, PA 17105-8820. (717) 558-7750. Fax: (717) 558-7845. <<http://www.clintox.org/index.html>>.  
 American Academy of Family Physicians. 11400 Tomahawk Creek Parkway, Leawood, KS 66211-2672. (913) 906-6000. <<http://www.aafp.org/>>.  
 American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. (312) 464-5000. <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.  
 American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20005. (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. <<http://www.psych.org/>>.  
 American Society for Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics. 528 North Washington Street, Alexandria, VA 22314. (703) 836-6981. Fax: (703) 836-5223.

American Society for Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics. 9650 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20814-3995. (301) 530-7060. Fax: (301) 530-7061. <<http://www.aspet.org/>>.

L. Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
 Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Trihexyphenidyl

### Definition

Trihexyphenidyl is classified as an anti-parkinsonian agent. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Artane and is also available under its generic name.

### Purpose

Trihexyphenidyl is used to treat a group of side effects (called parkinsonian side effects) that include tremors, difficulty walking, and slack muscle tone. These side effects may occur in patients who are taking antipsychotic medications used to treat mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**.

### Description

Some medicines, called antipsychotic drugs, that are used to treat schizophrenia and other mental disorders can cause side effects that are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease. Such patients do not have Parkinson's disease, but they may experience shaking in muscles while at rest, difficulty with voluntary movements, and poor muscle tone. These symptoms are similar to the symptoms of Parkinson's disease.

One way to eliminate these undesirable side effects is to stop taking the antipsychotic medicine. Unfortunately, the symptoms of the original mental disorder usually come back, so in most cases simply stopping the antipsychotic medication is not a reasonable option. Some drugs such as trihexyphenidyl that control the symptoms of Parkinson's disease also control the parkinsonian side effects of antipsychotic medicines.

Trihexyphenidyl works by restoring the chemical balance between **dopamine** and acetylcholine, two neurotransmitter chemicals in the **brain**. Taking trihexyphenidyl along with the antipsychotic medicine helps to control symptoms of the mental disorder, while reducing parkinsonian side effects. Trihexyphenidyl is in the same family of drugs (commonly known as anticholinergic drugs) as **biperiden** and **benztropine**.

## Recommended dosage

Trihexyphenidyl is available in 2-mg and 5-mg tablets and an elixir containing 2 mg per teaspoonful. For the treatment of tremors, poor muscle tone, and similar side effects, trihexyphenidyl should be started at a dose of 1 to 2 mg orally two to three times daily or as needed, to a maximum daily dose of 15 mg per day. Parkinson's-like side effects caused by antipsychotic drugs may come and go, so trihexyphenidyl may not be needed on a regular basis. Trihexyphenidyl may also be prescribed to prevent these side effects before they actually occur. This is called prophylactic (preventative) therapy.

## Precautions

Trihexyphenidyl should never be used in children under age three. It should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in older children and in people over age 60. Trihexyphenidyl, like all anticholinergic drugs, decreases sweating and the body's ability to cool itself. People who are unaccustomed to being outside in hot weather should take care to stay as cool as possible and drink extra fluids. People who are chronically ill, have a central nervous system disease, or who work outside during hot weather may need to avoid taking trihexyphenidyl.

People who have the following medical problems may experience increased negative side effects when taking trihexyphenidyl. People with these problems should discuss their conditions with their physicians before starting the drug:

- glaucoma, especially closed-angle glaucoma
- intestinal obstruction
- prostate enlargement
- urinary bladder obstruction

Although rare, some patients experience euphoria while taking trihexyphenidyl and may **abuse** it for this reason. Euphoria can occur at doses only two to four times the normal daily dose. Patients with a history of drug abuse should be observed carefully for trihexyphenidyl abuse.

## Side effects

Although trihexyphenidyl helps to control the side effects of antipsychotic drugs, it can produce side effects of its own. A person taking trihexyphenidyl may have some of the following reactions, which may vary in intensity:

- dry mouth
- dry skin

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Catheterization**—Placing a tube in the bladder so that it can be emptied of urine.

**Dopamine**—A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical involved in the transmission of nervous impulses from cell to cell.

**Parkinsonian**—Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

- blurred vision
- nausea or vomiting
- constipation
- disorientation
- drowsiness
- irritability
- increased heart rate
- urinary retention

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by reducing or temporarily discontinuing trihexyphenidyl. Chewing sugarless gum or sucking on sugarless candy may also help to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement may be especially prone to urinary retention. Symptoms of this problem

include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty passing urine than usual. This side effect may be severe and require discontinuation of the drug. Urinary retention may require catheterization. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

Patients who take an overdose of trihexyphenidyl are treated with forced vomiting, removal of stomach contents and stomach washing, activated charcoal, and respiratory support if needed. They are also given physostigmine, an antidote for anticholinergic drug poisoning.

### Interactions

When drugs such as trihexyphenidyl are taken with **antidepressants** such as **amitriptyline**, **imipramine**, **trimipramine**, **desipramine**, **nortriptyline**, **protriptyline**, **amoxapine**, and **doxepin** or with many antihistamines that also have anticholinergic properties, the effects and side effects of trihexyphenidyl are usually intensified.

Drugs such as trihexyphenidyl decrease the speed with which food moves through the stomach and intestines. Because of this, the absorption of other drugs taken may be enhanced by trihexyphenidyl. Patients receiving trihexyphenidyl should be alert to unusual responses to other drugs they might be taking and report any changes to their physician.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists (2002).

#### PERIODICALS

Nappo, Solange Aparecida, et al. "Trihexyphenidyl (Artane): A Brazilian Study of Its Abuse. Substance Use and Misuse" 40.4 (2005): 473–82.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Trilafon see **Perphenazine**

## Trimipramine

### Definition

Trimipramine is an oral tricyclic antidepressant. It is sold in the United States under the brand name Surmontil.

### Purpose

Trimipramine is used primarily to treat **depression** and to treat the combination of symptoms of **anxiety** and depression. Like most **antidepressants** of this chemical and pharmacological class, trimipramine has also been used in limited numbers of patients to treat **panic disorder**, **obsessive-compulsive disorder**, **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder**, **enuresis** (bed-wetting), eating disorders such as **bulimia nervosa**, **cocaine** dependency, and the depressive phase of bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder.

### Description

Tricyclic antidepressants act to change the balance of naturally occurring chemicals in the **brain** that regulate the transmission of nerve impulses between cells. Trimipramine acts primarily to increase the concentration of norepinephrine and serotonin (both chemical messengers in nerve cells) and, to a lesser extent, to block the action of another brain chemical, acetylcholine. Trimipramine shares most of the properties of other tricyclic antidepressants, such as **amitriptyline**, **amoxapine**, **clomipramine**, **desipramine**, **imipramine**, **nortriptyline**, and **protriptyline**. Studies comparing trimipramine with these other drugs have shown that trimipramine is no more or less effective than other antidepressants of its type. Its choice for treatment is as much a function of physician preference as any other factor.

The therapeutic effects of trimipramine, like other antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for at least two weeks after starting the drug. People taking trimipramine should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

### Recommended dosage

The recommended dosage can vary based on the patient's age and situation. The initial dose of trimipramine for depression in an adult begins at 75 mg per day. This dosage can be increased as necessary, usually plateauing at a maximum of 200 mg a day. For patients who are hospitalized, the dose may exceed the 200-mg per day cutoff. This drug is not recommended for children and teenagers (see warnings below), but if it is prescribed, the recommended dosage for teenagers is an initial 50 mg per day that may be gradually increased by the doctor to a typical maximum of 100 mg per day. For children age 12 years and younger, the dose will be determined by the doctor. For the elderly, the initial dose is 50 mg per day, which

can be increased as the doctor deems necessary, but typically no higher than 100 mg per day.

## Precautions

Like all tricyclic antidepressants, trimipramine should be used cautiously and with close physician supervision in people, especially the elderly, who have benign prostatic hypertrophy, urinary retention, and glaucoma, especially angle-closure glaucoma (the most severe form). Before starting treatment, people with these conditions should discuss the relative risks and benefits of treatment with their doctors to help determine if trimipramine is the right antidepressant for them.

A common problem with tricyclic antidepressants is sedation (drowsiness, lack of physical and mental alertness). This side effect is especially noticeable early in therapy. In most patients, sedation decreases or disappears entirely with time, but until then patients taking trimipramine should not perform hazardous activities requiring mental alertness or coordination. The sedative effect is increased when trimipramine is taken with other central nervous system depressants, such as alcoholic beverages, sleeping medications, other **sedatives**, or antihistamines. It may be dangerous to take trimipramine in combination with these substances. Trimipramine may increase the possibility of having **seizures**. Patients should tell their physician if they have a history of seizures, including seizures brought on by the **abuse** of drugs or alcohol. These people should use trimipramine only with caution and be closely monitored by their physician.

Trimipramine may increase heart rate and **stress** on the heart. It may be dangerous for people with cardiovascular disease, especially those who have recently had a heart attack, to take this drug or other antidepressants in the same pharmacological class. In rare cases where patients with cardiovascular disease must receive trimipramine, they should be monitored closely for cardiac rhythm disturbances and signs of cardiac stress or damage.

## Side effects

Trimipramine shares side effects common to all tricyclic antidepressants. There is a warning that accompanies patient information about antidepressants such as trimipramine. It states that some studies have shown that children and teenagers who take antidepressants such as trimipramine may have an increased likelihood of thinking about self-harm, killing themselves, or **suicide** attempt. The warning states that children under the age of 18 should not normally

take this drug. If a child is prescribed the drug, the parent or caregiver should closely monitor the child because serious symptoms can develop suddenly. Any signs that a child is considering self-harm or suicide warrants an immediate call to the doctor. These signs might include worsening depression, panic attacks, difficulty falling asleep, irritability, planning to engage in self-harm or to attempt suicide, or abnormal excitement. A guide for patients detailing this and related information is available on the U.S. Food and Drug Administration's Web site at <[http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/antidepressants/MG\\_template.pdf](http://www.fda.gov/cder/drug/antidepressants/MG_template.pdf)>.

Of the other side effects, the most frequent are dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention, increased heart rate, sedation, irritability, dizziness, and decreased coordination. As with most side effects associated with tricyclic antidepressants, the intensity is highest at the beginning of therapy and tends to decrease with continued use.

Dry mouth, if severe to the point of causing difficulty speaking or swallowing, may be managed by dosage reduction or temporary discontinuation of the drug. Patients may also chew sugarless gum or suck sugarless candy to increase the flow of saliva. Some artificial saliva products may give temporary relief.

Men with prostate enlargement who take trimipramine may be especially likely to have problems with urinary retention. Symptoms include having difficulty starting a urine flow and more difficulty than usual passing urine. In most cases, urinary retention is managed with dose reduction or by switching to another type of antidepressant. In extreme cases, patients may require treatment with bethanechol, a drug that reverses this particular side effect. People who think they may be experiencing any side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

## Interactions

Dangerously high blood pressure has resulted from the combination of tricyclic antidepressants, such as trimipramine, and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors. Because of this, trimipramine should never be taken in combination with MAO inhibitors. Patients taking any MAO inhibitor, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parnate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAO inhibitor, then wait at least 14 days before starting trimipramine or any other tricyclic antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing trimipramine and starting an MAO inhibitor.

## KEY TERMS

**Acetylcholine**—A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Benign prostate hypertrophy**—Enlargement of the prostate gland.

**Norepinephrine**—A neurotransmitter in the brain that acts to constrict blood vessels and raise blood pressure. It works in combination with serotonin.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

Trimipramine may decrease the blood pressure-lowering effects of **clonidine**. Patients who take both drugs should be monitored for loss of blood pressure control and the dose of clonidine increased as needed.

The sedative effects of trimipramine are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, sedatives, sleeping medications, or medications used for other mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**. The anticholinergic effects of trimipramine are additive with other anticholinergic drugs such as **benztropine**, **biperiden**, **trihexyphenidyl**, and antihistamines.

*See also Neurotransmitters.*

### Resources

#### BOOKS

DeVane, C. Lindsay, Pharm.D. "Drug Therapy for Mood Disorders." *Fundamentals of Monitoring Psychoactive Drug Therapy*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1990.

#### ORGANIZATIONS

American Society of Health-System Pharmacists. *AHFS Drug Information 2002*. Bethesda: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists, 2002.

United States Food and Drug Administration. "Class Suicidality Labeling Language for Antidepressants." <<http://www.fda.gov/cder/foi/label/2005/16792s024lbl.pdf>>.

National Library of Medicine. National Institutes of Health. "Antidepressants, Systemic." <<http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/uspdi/202055.html>>.

Jack Raber, Pharm.D.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

# U

## Undifferentiated somatoform disorder

### Definition

Undifferentiated somatoform disorder occurs when a person has physical complaints for more than six months that cannot be attributed to a medical condition. If there is a medical condition present, the complaints must be far more severe than can be accounted for by the presence of the medical problem.

### Description

The physical complaints that are expressed by people with undifferentiated somatoform disorder are many and varied. The similarity between all physical complaints associated with undifferentiated somatoform disorder is an absence of medical evidence for the symptoms or for their severity.

The physical complaints usually begin or worsen when the patient is under **stress**. People with undifferentiated somatoform disorder experience problems functioning in their daily lives due to the physical symptoms that they experience. Seeing multiple doctors in an effort to find a physical cause for the reported symptoms is typical of people with this disorder. Undifferentiated somatoform disorder is also sometimes referred to as somatization syndrome.

### Causes and symptoms

The symptoms of undifferentiated somatoform disorder vary widely from person to person. Some of the most common physical complaints are pain, **fatigue**, appetite loss, and various gastrointestinal problems. The physical complaints generally last for long periods. Patients with undifferentiated somatoform disorder tend to complain of many different physical problems over time.

No matter what symptoms a person complains about, the overarching characteristic of the complaints is that no physical reason can be found for them. Laboratory tests and thorough examinations by doctors will reveal no medical reason for the pains or problems the person is having. The physical problems, however, persist after the person has been told no explanation can be found.

The causes of undifferentiated somatoform disorder are not clear. Some experts believe that problems in the family when the affected person was a child may be related to the development of this disorder. **Depression** and stress are thought to be other possible causes. Other possible causes, especially in people who overreact to even minor medical conditions, include paying obsessive attention to any minor changes or sensations that their bodies experience. They give the feelings undue weight and worry unnecessarily about them.

### Demographics

Undifferentiated somatoform disorder is relatively common. It is estimated that between 4% and 11% of the population experience the disorder at some time in their lives. Women are more likely than men to have undifferentiated somatoform disorder, as are the elderly and people of lower socioeconomic backgrounds. Young women who have low socioeconomic status are the most likely group to have undifferentiated somatoform disorder. Fifty percent of the people with this disorder have other psychological or psychiatric disorders as well, such as **anxiety** or depression.

### Diagnosis

A person with undifferentiated somatoform disorder usually begins by visiting physicians looking for treatments for physical complaints. Later, he or she may be referred to a mental health professional. Referring physicians may continue to see the patient, however, so that a trusting relationship can be established,

and the patient does not continue to bounce from doctor to doctor.

Mental health professionals use the handbook called the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* to diagnose mental disorders. The book lists diagnostic criteria, and requires that the following conditions be met in order for the clinician to diagnose this disorder:

- There must be no underlying medical cause evident that could explain the patient's physical complaints. If there is a medical condition that could be related to the complaints, the symptoms reported must be far worse than any that could be explained by the existing medical problems.
- The unexplained physical symptoms must persist for at least six months.
- The symptoms must cause problems in the patient's daily life or relationships or interfere with the patient achieving his or her goals.
- There cannot be another mental disorder that accounts for the complaints.
- The patient cannot knowingly make false complaints of physical distress.

### *Somatization disorder*

**Somatization disorder** is very similar to undifferentiated somatoform disorder and the two can be easily confused. The symptoms are the same, but the diagnostic criteria are much more specific for somatization disorder. To be diagnosed with somatization disorder, the patient must have four different pain symptoms, two gastrointestinal symptoms, one sexual symptom, and one pseudo-neurological symptom. These symptoms can occur at different times. The symptoms must be present for several years and must have begun before the patient was thirty years old. Just as with undifferentiated somatoform disorder, the complaints must not be traceable to any medical cause.

### *Hypochondriasis*

**Hypochondriasis** is also similar in many ways to undifferentiated somatoform disorder. Patients with hypochondriasis are convinced that the physical symptoms they are experiencing are the signs of a major illness. Alternately, they may simply have an obsessive fear of contracting or developing a major illness. These patients often have a specific **diagnosis** in mind when they visit a doctor, unlike most patients with undifferentiated somatoform disorder who have complaints but do not have a cause in mind.

### Treatments

Most treatments of undifferentiated somatoform disorder focus on treating any underlying psychological problems or stresses that may be causing the disorder. When the disorder occurs in conjunction with another mental health problem such as depression, treating that problem often helps to resolve or lessen the symptoms of undifferentiated somatoform disorder. Some studies indicate that **antidepressants** are effective in treating this disorder. Patients also may benefit from programs intended to teach them how to manage stress and to understand the correlation between psychological stressors and physiological symptoms. These programs also teach people how to cope with criticism and how to stop negative behavior patterns.

### Prognosis

For many people, undifferentiated somatoform disorder is a life-long disorder. Often, the physical complaints increase or decrease in relation to stressors in the affected person's life. Many people with this disorder are eventually diagnosed with another mental disorder or with a legitimate medical problem. For some people, treatment can be successful at lessening or completely resolving symptoms.

### Prevention

There are no known ways to prevent undifferentiated somatoform disorder; it is possible, however, for people who appear to be developing the disorder to enroll in programs designed to teach them coping strategies and about the relationship between psychological factors and physical symptoms.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.  
 Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

#### PERIODICALS

- Ford, Charles V., Wayne J. Katon, Mack Lipkin Jr. "Managing Somatization and Hypochondriasis." *Patient Care* 27 no. 2 (January 30, 1993): 31-41.  
 "Illness Without Disease." *Harvard Mental Health Letter* 16, no. 3 (September 1999).  
 Locke, Steven E. "Treating Somatization: an Update." *Behavioral Health Management* 17, no. 4 (July 1997): 22.  
 O'Malley, and others. "" *Journal of Family Practice* (1999).

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Urine drug screening

### Definition

Urine drug screening, or toxicological screening, is a process of chemical analysis designed to test patients for drug **abuse**, or to insure that a patient is substance-free before undergoing a medical procedure.

### Description

Urine drug screening can be used to evaluate possible accidental or intentional overdose or poisoning, to assess the type and amount of prescribed and/or illicit drugs used by a person, or to determine the cause of acute drug toxicity. It is also used to monitor drug dependency or to determine the presence of drugs in the body for medical and legal purposes.

In many occupations, urine drug screening has become a required condition of employment. Nearly all workers in certain occupations, such as law enforcement and transportation, must submit to periodic, random, and post-incident drug screening. Federal laws mandate the administration of drug screens to workers in the transportation industry, including bus drivers, truckers, airline employees, and railroad workers. Federally required testing must be conducted by a laboratory certified by the **Substance Abuse** and Mental Health Services Administration. Other industries must follow state regulations, which vary considerably.

Urine screening tests are able to detect general classes of compounds, such as **amphetamines**, **barbiturates**, **benzodiazepines**, and opiates. Drug screening can also detect **cocaine**, marijuana, and **phencyclidine** (PCP). The screening tests themselves are unable to distinguish between illicit and prescription drugs within the same class. A patient taking prescribed codeine pills and an individual using heroin would both show positive urine screening tests for opiates. It is also possible for some over-the-counter medications to cause a positive drug screen in someone who has taken neither illegal nor prescription drugs. These incorrect reactions are known as “false-positives.”

Urine drug screens can detect the use of several drugs. Some of these drugs are as follows:

- cocaine
- amphetamines
- heroin
- morphine
- phencyclidine (PCP)
- benzodiazepines
- alcohol



**Urine drug test with apparatus.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

- hydromorphone
- tetrahydrocannabinol (THC)
- propoxyphene
- methadone
- codeine
- barbituates

Certain foods, such as poppy seeds, may result in a positive urine screen for opiates, since poppy seeds are derived from opium poppies. Preliminary urine screening results, when positive, should be confirmed by a more accurate method that can distinguish between poppy seed ingestion and use of heroin or other opiates. Poppy seeds and opiates produce different chemicals, known as metabolic breakdown products or metabolites, as they travel through the body, allowing them to be distinguished from one another.

### Sample collection

The method of collecting a urine sample for drug screening can be important. Some illicit drug users may attempt to substitute another person's urine, or chemically alter their own specimen. If the urine drug screen is being used for an important decision, such as employment or legal action, procedures to minimize chances of an adulterated or substituted sample may be necessary. These include measuring the temperature or pH of the sample immediately after it is procured, and using tamper-proof containers. Supervised specimen collection may be conducted to ensure that the urine indeed comes from the person being screened.

The most commonly used method for urine drug screening is immunoassay, a rapid and accurate test that uses antibodies embedded on test strips to reveal

## KEY TERMS

**Amphetamines**—A group of powerful and highly addictive substances that stimulate the central nervous system. May be prescribed for various medical conditions, but are often purchased illicitly and abused.

**Barbiturate**—A class of medications (including Seconal and Nembutal) that causes sedation and drowsiness. They may be prescribed legally, but may also be used as drugs of abuse.

**Benzodiazepines**—A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**Cocaine**—An illegal drug that increases energy and induces euphoria. It is addictive and is often abused.

**Codeine**—A medication that may be prescribed but also may be purchased illegally and is used to reduce pain.

**False-positive**—A test result that is positive for a specific condition or disorder, but this result is inaccurate.

**Gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS)**—A definitive method of testing for specific drugs, used to confirm immunoassay results indicating drug use. GC/MS separates the substances present in the urine sample, then breaks them into unique molecular fragments, which are matched against a database of known substances.

**Hydromorphone**—An prescribed opiate (Dilaudid) that induces used to treat severe pain; also abused illegally.

**Immunoassay**—The method used in routine or preliminary urine drug screening.

**Methadone**—A drug often prescribed legally as a replacement for heroin. It induces a slight high but blocks heroin from producing a more powerful euphoric effect. It may be used in heroin detoxification to ease the process, or it may be used daily after detoxification as maintenance therapy. Methadone maintenance therapy is controversial.

**Tetrahydrcannabinol (THC)**—The active substance in marijuana.

drug use. Antibodies react only in the presence of very specific substances—in this case, drugs present in urine. When a sufficient concentration of a drug (or drugs) are present, the test strip will indicate which substances have been detected. A control band on each strip confirms that the test was done correctly.

Positive screening results should always be confirmed by a more sensitive method. The most widely accepted corroborative test for all drugs is gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS), which can determine the specific substances in the body by recognizing not only the molecular structure of the original compound, but also its metabolite, a chemical created when the drug is metabolized.

*See also* Addiction; Amphetamines and related disorders; Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse-related disorders; Barbiturates; Cannabis and related disorders; Cocaine and related disorders; Disease concept of

chemical dependency; Methadone; Opioids and related disorders; Sedatives and related drugs.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Kaplan, Harold, MD, and Benjamin J. Sadock, MD. *Synopsis of Psychiatry*. 8th edition. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.

#### PERIODICALS

Persoon, Thomas, MS. "Virtual Hospital: Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act: Therapeutic Drug Monitoring and Drug Abuse Screening, IV." *Screening for Drugs of Abuse*. The University of Iowa, 1999.

*Policy Statement: Drug and Alcohol Screening*. American Academy of child and Adolescent Psychiatry, Approved by Council, October 1990.

Barbara S. Sternberg, Ph.D.

# V

## Vaginismus

### Definition

Vaginismus occurs when the muscles around the outer third of the vagina contract involuntarily when vaginal penetration is attempted during sexual intercourse.

### Description

Vaginismus is a sexual disorder that is characterized by the outer third of the vaginal muscles tightening, often painfully. A woman with vaginismus does not willfully or intentionally contract her vaginal muscles. However, when the vagina is going to be penetrated, the muscles tighten spontaneously due to psychological or other reasons.

Vaginismus can occur under different circumstances. It can begin the first time vaginal penetration is attempted. This is known as “lifelong vaginismus.” Alternately, vaginismus can begin after a period of normal sexual functioning. This is known as “acquired-type vaginismus.” For some women, vaginal tightening occurs in all situations where vaginal penetration is attempted (generalized type). For other women, it occurs in only one or a few situations, such as during a gynecological examination at the doctor’s office, or with a specific sex partner (situational type). According to the professional’s handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*, in order for a condition to be diagnosed as vaginismus, the response must be due to psychological factors or a combination of psychological and medical factors, but not to medical factors alone. Because of this *DSM-IV-TR* criterion, this entry focuses on the psychological causes and treatments of vaginismus.

### Causes and symptoms

#### Causes

There are many possible causes of vaginismus. One example is an upbringing in which sex was considered wrong or sinful—as in the case of some strict religious backgrounds. This is common among women with this disorder. Concern that penetration is going to be painful, such as during a first sexual experience, is another possible cause. It is also thought that women who feel threatened or powerless in their relationship may subconsciously use this tightening of the vaginal muscles as a defense or silent objection to the relationship. A traumatic childhood experience, such as sexual molestation, is thought to be a possible cause of vaginismus. Acquired-type vaginismus is often the result of sexual assault or rape.

#### Symptoms

Vaginismus can occur when any kind of penetration of the vagina is attempted. This includes attempted penetration by a penis, speculum, tampon, or other objects. The outer third of the vaginal muscles contract severely. This either prevents penetration completely, or makes it difficult and painful. The woman may truly believe that she wants to have sexual intercourse or allow the penetration. She may find that her subconscious desires or decisions do not allow her to relax the vaginal muscles.

### Diagnosis

Diagnosing sexual disorders, including vaginismus, can often be very difficult. This is mainly due to lack of comfort many people feel in discussing sexual relations, even with their physicians. Often, cultural norms and taboos deter women from seeking assistance when they are experiencing such problems. When a physician or gynecologist is consulted, involuntary spasm during pelvic examination can confirm

the **diagnosis** of vaginismus, and the physician will rule out any physiological causes for the condition. When psychological causes are suspected, referral should be made to a **psychologist** or **psychiatrist**.

According to the *DSM-IV-TR*, the first criterion for the diagnosis of vaginismus is the spasm of the muscles in the outer third of the vagina that are involuntary and recurring or persistent. The symptoms must cause physical or emotional distress, or, in particular, problems with relationships. The symptoms cannot occur during the course of another mental disorder that can account for them—they must exist on their own. As mentioned, the muscle spasm cannot be the direct result of any sort of physical or medical condition for vaginismus to be diagnosed.

## Demographics

Although many women experience sexual disorders, it is hard to gather accurate data regarding the frequency of specific problems. Many cases go unreported. Vaginismus is thought to occur most often in women who are highly educated and of high socioeconomic status.

## Treatment

There are many different treatments of vaginismus, as there is a multitude of ways to treat most sexual disorders. Therapists can use behavioral, hypnotic, psychological, educational, or **group therapy** techniques. Multiple techniques are often used simultaneously for the same patient. Much treatment is aimed at reducing the **anxiety** associated with penetration.

### Psychotherapy

There are three settings in which psychological treatment can occur. These are in individual, couple, or group settings. During individual therapy, the treatment focuses on identifying and resolving any underlying psychological problems that could be causing the disorder. Problems stemming from issues such as childhood trauma or rape are often resolved this way. Revealing insecurities or fears about sex resulting from such things as parents' attitudes about it, or a religious upbringing, can often be discussed successfully if the affected woman can trust her therapist.

**Couples therapy** has been referred to as "dual-sex therapy." The idea behind couples therapy is that any sexual problem should be treated as a problem for the couple as a whole, and not just addressed as a problem for one person. Because this view is taken, the therapist interacts with the patients both separately and as a couple. The therapist addresses both the couple's sexual history and any other problems that may be occurring

in the relationship. Confronting these problems may help to resolve the cause of the vaginismus. Working with a therapist on relationship problems can be very effective—perhaps especially so if the vaginismus is caused by a subconscious use of vaginal muscle spasms as a nonverbal form of protest about one or more aspects of the relationship. The couple is educated about vaginismus disorder and given advice on the kind of activities that can be engaged in at home that may be helpful in overcoming the disorder.

Group therapy, which can be very effective, is another form of therapy for vaginismus. In this form of therapy, couples or individuals who have the same or similar sexual disorders are brought together. For people who are embarrassed or ashamed of their disorder, this setting can provide comfort and strength. It is often very beneficial to witness another person discussing sex and sexual problems in an open and honest forum. It can also help to inspire patients to become more open and honest themselves.

Another positive feature of group therapy is that it provides a certain amount of pressure. Pressure to open up can help to provide a needed "push." Also the group's expectations for each other can provide positive pressure and encouragement for the group members. For example, the therapist may recommend "homework" outside the therapy sessions, including masturbation or certain kinds of foreplay. The group members will expect each other to complete the homework, and that expectation may help individual couples overcome their aversions to completing the activities.

### Hypnotherapy

**Hypnotherapy** is also effective for some patients. In general, hypnotherapy tends to focus on overcoming the vaginismus itself, as opposed to resolving any causes or conflicts behind it. The therapist will determine if hypnotherapy is appropriate for a particular patient. There are often a number of sessions, during which the patient and therapist work to define the goals of the hypnotherapy. When the actual hypnosis occurs, the suggestions made are intended to resolve underlying fears or concerns, and to alleviate symptoms. For example, the patient may be told that she can have coitus without it being a painful experience, and that she will be able to overcome the muscle spasm.

During hypnosis, the problems causing the vaginismus may be explored, or an attempt may even be made to reverse feelings or fears that could be causing the disorder. Exploring causal relationships, as well as suggesting to the woman she can overcome her vaginal muscle spasms, can be very effective for certain patients.

## KEY TERMS

**Coitus**—Sexual intercourse.

### Other treatments

Behavioral therapy is also used to treat vaginismus. When behavioral therapy is chosen, it is assumed that the vaginismus is a learned behavior that can be unlearned. Behavioral therapy generally involves desensitization. Patients are exposed to situations that they find create a mild sense of psychological discomfort or anxiety. Once these situations are conquered, the patient is exposed to sexual situations that they find more threatening, until coitus is eventually achieved without difficulty.

Another type of treatment for vaginismus involves desensitization over a period of time using systematic vaginal dilation. In the beginning of the treatment, the woman inserts a small object into her vagina. Over time, she inserts larger and larger vaginal dilators. Eventually, a dilator the size of a penis can be inserted comfortably and sexual intercourse can be achieved. There is some debate about this procedure, as it treats the symptoms and not the underlying causes of the vaginismus disorder.

### Prognosis

Vaginismus is generally considered to be the most treatable sexual disorder. Successful treatment has been reported to be 63% or higher. For different people the possibility of success using different treatments varies, because different cases of vaginismus disorder have varying causes. Generally, a treatment plan combining two or more therapeutic techniques is recommended.

### Prevention

There is no known way to successfully prevent vaginismus; however, maintaining open marital communication may help to prevent the disorder, or to encourage seeking help if it does arise.

*See also* Cognitive-behavioral therapy; Systematic desensitization.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., text revised. Washington DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Sadock, Benjamin J. and Virginia A. Sadock, eds. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2000.

### PERIODICALS

Kleinplatz, Peggy J. "Sex Therapy for Vaginismus: a Review, Critique, and Humanistic Alternative." *The Journal of Humanistic Psychology* 38 no. 2 (Spring 1998): 51- 82.

Sadovsky, Richard. "Management of Dyspareunia and Vaginismus." *American Family Physician* 61 no. 8 (April 15, 2000): 2511.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NE, Washington, D.C. 20002-4242, 800-374- 2721; <[www.apa.org](http://www.apa.org)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Vagus nerve stimulation (VNS)

### Definition

The vagus nerve is part of the autonomic nervous system, which controls bodily functions that are not under conscious control (for example, heartbeat, breathing, and sweating). The vagus nerve passes through the neck as it travels between the chest and abdomen and the lower part of the **brain**. Vagus nerve stimulation (VNS), also known as vagal nerve stimulation, is a procedure whereby the vagus nerve is stimulated by means of a surgically implanted electrical device. The VNS device is sometimes referred to as a "pacemaker for the brain." It is placed under the skin on the chest wall and a wire runs from it to the vagus nerve in the neck.

### Purpose

The goal of VNS is to change the functioning of various brain and somatic systems, by lessening of the numbers of **seizures** in the case of epilepsy or by inducing a more positive mood in the case of treatment refractory **depression** (TRD). In epilepsy, treatment has been concurrent with pharmaceuticals used to reduce seizures. Although approved by the FDA in 2005 for use in treating major depression that has not responded to at least four depression treatments, solid evidence for the efficacy of VNS in depression has yet to be established.

### Description

Research has not been able to establish exactly how VNS works, except to note a multiplicity of effects on the brain and body by stimulating the vagus nerve. The

vagus nerve, the tenth cranial nerve, originates in the brain and travels through the mid-brain. Branching into left and right vagus nerves, it runs down the neck and to the thorax and abdomen. The functions of the vagus nerve are many and various, ranging from the stimulation and release of **neurotransmitters** in the brain to issues related to breathing, swallowing, and the vocal chords, to the functioning of the digestive tract. The vagus nerve has been shown to create changes in the functioning of the hypothalamus, the amygdale, and the cingulate gyrus—brain structures that affect neurotransmitter output and reuptake, mood, and seizure activity, among other things. Because the vagus nerve runs through the middle of the brain, it influences many areas of the brain indirectly, so that while some brain cells increase their activity with VNS, others decrease in synaptic activity. The manufacturers of the only FDA-approved VNS treatment in the United States for epilepsy and depression have used the omnipresent effects of vagus nerve stimulation to bolster their claims as to its efficacy as a treatment for those two disorders.

VNS is the name for the procedure that implants an electrical stimulation device alongside the vagus nerve in the area of the carotid artery, located in the neck. The pulse generator device, which is about the size of a pocket watch, is surgically implanted on the left side of the body, just below the collarbone. Electrodes from the pulse generator are then implanted on the left side of the neck and wrapped around the left vagus nerve. The electrodes are connected to the pulse generator by a wire. The surgical procedure takes about an hour and is usually done as an outpatient procedure.

After implantation, the surgeon tests the device and closes the incisions. Further changes are made with the use of a special “wand” a software package, and a portable computer, so patients need not undergo any more invasive procedures related to adjusting the electrical “dose.” As an additional control, patients are provided with a strong, hand-held magnet that, when held over the skin that covers the pulse generator, prevents it from operating. If patients experience problems with the pulse, they can use the magnet until they get to the physician. The patented collection of pulse generator, leads, software, and programming devices are called the NeuroCybernetic Prosthesis System, or NCP, and are currently sold by only one company, Cyberonics.

The pulse generator, which contains a battery with a lifespan of six to eight years, sends out an electrical impulse whose strength, frequency, and duration are determined by the physician. The impulse travels through the wire to the electrodes, which transmit the pulse to the vagus nerve. VNS was originally used for

patients with refractory episodic epilepsy who were deemed unsuitable for epilepsy surgery, but it has been increasingly prescribed for patients whose illness is less severe.

The first VNS implant for treatment-resistant depression was done in the United States in 1998. Physicians using VNS for patients with epilepsy had reported that patients seemed more alert, and combining anecdotal observations with the fact that some anticonvulsant drugs have also been used in depression treatment, the manufacturer of the VNS system decided to test its efficacy as a treatment for treatment-resistant depression.

The reported VNS depression research to date has had low numbers of participants, and much research has been directly or indirectly funded by Cyberonics, leaving reported findings somewhat open to debate. In fact, in May of 2006, the Public Citizen’s Health Research Group sent a letter to the FDA requesting that the organization require Cyberonics to withdraw its advertisement from WebMd.com and issue a corrective statement. The Public Citizen’s Health Research Group said that the Cyberonics ad “greatly exaggerated” the findings from the clinical studies, and called the advertisement “false and misleading.” The nonprofit then pointed out 10 items in a two-paragraph advertisement, explaining why they were false, exaggerated, or both. In another case, one journal editor resigned over having failed to disclose that he and eight other researchers had been funded by Cyberonics in regards to a published study on VNS. Other researchers have included statements in their published papers on VNS acknowledging that they received funding from the company.

### Precautions

The physician’s manual published by the VNS manufacturer contains in the introduction a document subtitled *Indications, Contraindications, Warnings and Precautions*. This 20-page document must be considered the primary resource for precautionary information, as there is not yet much research available beyond that which has been funded by the manufacturer, Cyberonics. Precautionary information for this section has been taken from this document, which can be found online at <http://www.vnstherapy.com/depression/hcp/Manuals/default.aspx>.

The difference between “contraindications, warnings, and precautions” as published by the manufacturer seem unclear, as they combine VNS requirements, pre-existing health conditions, procedures that cannot be performed on people using VNS, age limitations,

and therapeutic devices that cannot be used in conjunction with VNS. The VNS system is only to be used on the left vagus nerve, and is approved for children over the age of 12 in cases of epilepsy and patients over the age of 18 for depression.

Procedures and devices that can damage the implant, the patient's tissue, or both and consequently that should not be used with VNS:

- Diathermy, or cauterization. Diathermy causes a concentration of heat in the implant, which can damage the implant, destroy tissue, and even lead to death.
- Radiation therapy.
- External and internal defibrillation devices.
- Electrosurgery.
- Therapeutic ultrasound.
- Full-body MRI.

Pre-existing conditions under which VNS should not be prescribed:

- Having only one vagus nerve.
- Having metal plates or other implants such as pacemakers.
- Pregnancy.
- Dysphagia (problems with swallowing).
- Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) (A condition that causes patients to stop breathing while asleep).
- Previous heart attacks and other cardiac abnormalities.
- Respiratory illness such as asthma or dyspnea.
- Brain injury.
- Injury to the central nervous system (CNS).
- Dysautonomia (disease of the autonomic nervous system).
- Vasovagal syncope (a condition in which the blood vessels dilate and the heart rate slows, causing fainting).
- Ulcers.
- Hoarseness.
- Having other concurrent forms of brain stimulation treatments.
- Suicidal thoughts or ideas.
- Bipolar disorder.
- Schizophrenia or schizoaffective disorders.
- Delusional disorders.

## Preparation

Patients have to be informed of risks, and those with contraindicated health conditions must be ruled out before surgery. Patients who elect to have VNS

## KEY TERMS

**Central nervous system**—The brain and spinal cord.

**Diathermy**—The use of heat to destroy abnormal cells; cauterization.

should have the procedure and equipment thoroughly explained, and will be taught the use of the handheld magnet in case it is needed.

## Aftercare

The surgical procedure takes about an hour, but there are two incisions and, as with any implant, risk of infection. Wound care must be addressed, and patients require follow-up appointments with their physicians to monitor the effects of the treatment and adjust the electrical "dose." Changes in patients' health also need to be monitored, as so many conditions are contraindicated in the use of VNS. For example, in the case of treatment-resistant depression, if a depressed patient becomes suicidal or experiences a **manic episode**, use of VNS is contraindicated.

## Risks

Because the device is surgically implanted, along with the risk of infection there is the potential for breakage, migration, or corrosion. Other issues may have to do with irritation to the vagus nerve, which can result in hoarseness or in permanent nerve damage. It is imperative that the surgeon receives specialized training for implanting the VNS.

People who have cardiac arrhythmia are at risk, and occurrences of bradycardia (slowed heartbeat) or asystole (heart stoppage) during or after implantation have been reported. The manufacturer states that safety has not been established for patients who suffer bradycardia or asystole during implantation. Although there is implant information for cardiac patients, it is listed under the heading of contraindications.

Patients should be warned to avoid anything that may generate a strong electrical or magnetic field, as the field could affect the functioning of the VNS system. This includes strong magnets, hair clippers, and anti-shoplifting tag deactivators. The magnet used with the VNS can affect televisions, credit card strips, and computer disks. The pulse generator in the VNS is said to affect pocket transistor radios and hearing aids.

## Resources

### PERIODICALS

- Chae, Jeong-Ho, et al. "A Review of the New Minimally Invasive Brain Stimulation Techniques in Psychiatry." *Review of Brazilian Psychiatry* 23.2 (2001): 100–109.
- Cyberonics, Inc. "Introduction to the VNS Therapy System: Indications, Contraindications, Warnings, and Precautions." *Physician's Manual for the VNS Therapy System* 26-0006 (July 2006): 1–20.
- George, Mark S., et al. "Vagus Nerve Stimulation: A New Tool for Brain Research and Therapy." *Society of Biological Psychiatry* 47.1 (2000): 287–95.
- Husain, Mustafa M., and others. "Pregnancy and Delivery While Receiving Vagus Nerve Stimulation for the Treatment of Major Depression: A Case Report" *Annals of General Psychiatry* 4.16 (2005): <<http://www.annals-general-psychiatry.com/content/4/1/16>>.
- Lurie, Peter, MD. "Letter to FDA Requesting the Immediate Halt of Cyberonics Ads for Vagus Nerve Stimulation Devices." *HRG Publication #1770*. May 2006: <<http://www.citizen.org/publications/release.cfm?ID=7434&catID=126&secID=1163>>.
- Nemeroff, Charles B., and others. "Corrigendum VNS Therapy in Treatment-Resistant Depression: Clinical Evidence and Putative Neurobiological Mechanisms." *Neuropsychopharmacology* 31.2329 (2006): 1345–55.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Cyberonics, Inc., 100 Cyberonics Boulevard, Houston, TX 77058. Telephone: (888) 867-7846. <<http://www.cyberonics.com>>.
- Public Citizen's Health Research Group, 1600 Twentieth Street NW, Washington, DC 20009. Telephone: (202) 588-1000. <<http://www.citizen.org/hrg>>.

Lorena S. Covington, MA

## Valerian

### Definition

Valerian is an herbal remedy derived from the dried roots of the valerian plant, *Valeriana officinalis*. The plant belongs to the Valerianaceae family. It has been used for over a thousand years as a mild sedative and hypnotic (a preparation that brings on sleep). Valerian is native to Europe and parts of Asia; it has since been introduced in the United States, placed under cultivation and now growing in the wild, as well. It is often cultivated for its pinkish white or **lavender** flowers as well as for its medicinal uses. The name "valerian" is thought to derive from the Latin verb *valere*, which means "to be well." It is also some-

times said to derive from Valeria, the province of the Roman Empire where the plant may have originated.

According to one marketing research firm, valerian is the fastest-growing herbal remedy in the United States; its sales more than doubled between 2000 and 2001.

### Purpose

Valerian is most commonly used to relieve mild cases of **anxiety** and **insomnia**. It was given during World War I to soldiers suffering from battle shock. It has also been recommended for the relief of menstrual cramps and as a carminative, or preparation that relieves gas in the stomach and intestines. Lotions made with valerian extract are said to soothe skin rashes and swollen joints.

### Description

The valerian plant prefers the damp lime-rich soil near streams or rivers, where it may grow as tall as 5 ft (1.5 m). It can, however, be grown in drier soil at higher elevations, where it may grow only 2 ft (.67 m) tall. Some herbalists consider the drier-climate variety of valerian to have greater medicinal potency.

The parts of the plant that are used for medicinal purposes are the roots and rhizomes (horizontal underground stems), which are typically yellowish-brown in color. The roots and rhizomes are harvested in the autumn of the plant's second year. They can be freeze-dried and used to prepare tablets or capsules containing the ground herb. Juice can be pressed from the fresh root, or the root may be mixed with alcohol to become a fluid extract or tincture of valerian. When valerian is used to relieve tension or induce sleep, it is frequently combined with either **passionflower** (*Passiflora incarnata*), lemon balm (*Melissa officinalis*) or skullcap (*Scutellaria laterifolia*). Because valerian tea has a somewhat bitter taste, flavorings are often added, including peppermint or fruit flavor, to make a more pleasant-tasting drink.

Although not all the compounds in valerian that have medicinal value have been identified, two compounds in its essential oil—valerenic acid and bornyl—appear to be the most important. Like most prescription tranquilizers, valerian appears to affect a neurotransmitter (GABA) in the central nervous system.

There is some disagreement among researchers about the efficacy of valerian as a tranquilizer and aid to sleep. While a team of Swiss researchers found a valerian/lemon balm combination to be significantly

more effective than a placebo in inducing sleep, another group in the United States concluded that valerian is overrated as a sedative. Further research may help to settle the question; but multiple studies that are currently available are inconclusive. It appears to have mild sedative properties.

### Recommended dosage

Experts in herbal preparations recommend that valerian products should be standardized to contain 0.8% valerenic or valeric acid.

Adults may use the following amounts of valerian to reduce nervousness or relieve menstrual cramps:

- 2–3 g dried root in tea, up to several times daily
- 1/4–1/2 tsp (1–3 mL) valerian tincture, up to several times daily
- 1/4 tsp (1–2 mL) fluid extract
- 150–300 mg valerian extract, standardized to contain 0.8% valerenic acid

To relieve insomnia, one of the above dosages may be taken 30–45 min before bedtime. It may take one to two weeks of regular use before the herbal preparation takes effect.

When giving valerian to children, recommended adult dosages should be adjusted in proportion to the child's weight. Most dosages of herbal products are calculated for an adult weighing 150 lb (70 kg). A child weighing 75 lb (35 kg) should therefore receive 1/2 the adult dose.

### Precautions

Persons who take valerian should consult an experienced herbalist about dosage and about reliable sources of the herb. Because herbal preparations are not regulated by the U. S. Food and Drug Administration, consumers cannot be certain of the freshness and potency of commercial herbal products. In July 2001, an independent laboratory published the results of its tests of 17 valerian products; only nine contained the amount of valerian that their labels claimed. Of the remaining eight products, four contained only half the amount of valerian that they should have, and the other four contained none at all.

Although valerian has a good reputation for safety when used as directed, it should not be used in high doses or taken continuously for longer than two to three weeks.

### KEY TERMS

**Carmine**—A substance or preparation that relieves digestive gas.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Placebo**—An inactive substance or preparation used as a control in experiments with human subjects to test the effectiveness of a drug or herbal preparation. Some patients may experience a medicinal response or experience side effects to a placebo simply because they have faith in its powers even though it contains no medicine.

**Rhizome**—The fleshy underground horizontal root of certain plants. Valerian preparations are made from dried rhizomes as well as from roots of the valerian plant.

**Tincture**—An alcohol-based herbal extract prepared by soaking parts of the plant in a mixture of alcohol and water. Established ratios and dilutions are followed.

**Valerenic acid**—The primary medicinal component in valerian preparations.

### Side effects

Some people taking valerian may experience a paradoxical effect; that is, they may feel agitated or jittery instead of relaxed or sleepy. This side effect is not dangerous, but it should be reported to the patient's health care provider. If the dosage is too high, an individual could experience longer sleep than usual, and wake up not feeling well-rested.

Prolonged use of valerian results in tolerance, and increasing the dose may have serious side effects. According to some researchers, long-term use of valerian may cause psychological **depression**, damage to the liver, or damage to the central nervous system.

High short-term doses of valerian have been reported to cause headaches, muscle spasms, dizziness, digestive upsets, insomnia, and confusion.

### Interactions

Although valerian has been regarded as a relatively safe herb because few interactions with prescription medications have been reported, newer research indicates that it should be used cautiously following surgery. Like **St. John's wort**, valerian can interact with

anesthetics and other medications given to patients after surgery. Because valerian has a mild sedative effect, it should not be taken together with alcoholic beverages, **benzodiazepines**, **barbiturates**, or antihistamines. Some components of valerian are metabolized in the liver. This herb has a definite potential to interact with liver metabolized prescription medicines.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Medical Economics Staff. *PDR for Herbal Medicines*.

Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 1998.  
Tyler, Varro E., Ph.D. *The Honest Herbal*. New York:  
Pharmaceutical Products Press, 1993.

### PERIODICALS

- Ang-Lee, Michael, and others. "Herbal Medicines and Perioperative Care." *Journal of the American Medical Association* 286 (July 11, 2001): 208.
- Cerny, A., and K. Schmid. "Tolerability and efficacy of valerian/lemon balm in healthy volunteers (a double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicentre study)." *Fitoterapia* 70 (1999): 221–228.
- "Valerian for Insomnia: Jury Still Out." *Consumer Reports on Health* 13 (December 2001): 10.
- Wallace, Phil. "Valerian Products Found to Lack Key Ingredient." *Food Chemical News* 43 (July, 2001): 12.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.

Valium see **Diazepam**

## Valproic acid

### Definition

Valproic acid is an anticonvulsant (anti-seizure) drug. In the United States, valproic acid is also known as valproate, and is sold under brand name Depakene.

### Purpose

The United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) recognizes valproic acid for the treatment of epilepsy and for mania that occurs with **bipolar disorder** (previously called manic-depressive disorder). Valproic acid is also approved for the prevention of migraine headaches.

### Description

Valproic acid's properties in preventing **seizures** were first discovered in Europe in 1963. The medication was first used clinically in the United States in 1978.

Valproic acid is effective in treating a variety of seizure types, which include simple and complex absence seizures, partial seizures, and clonic-tonic seizures (grand mal seizures). Valproic acid is effective in treating the manic episodes of patients with bipolar disorder. Patients who have bipolar disorder resulting from a head injury and patients who do not respond to or who cannot tolerate conventional lithium therapy (normally the therapy of choice for bipolar disorder) can be treated with valproic acid. In addition, valproic acid provides a 50% or greater reduction in the frequency of migraine headaches. Valproic acid is also safe and effective in preventing headaches that arise as a side effect of taking a class of drugs known as **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors** (SSRI). These drugs include **sertraline** (Zoloft), **paroxetine** (Paxil), **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **fluvoxamine** (Luvox), and **citalopram** (Celexa).

Valproic acid comes in 250-mg gelatin capsule and in 250 mg/5ml- syrup.

### Recommended dosage

The dosage of valproic acid used to treat epilepsy depends on the type of seizures the patient has. The doses are determined based on the patient's weight and never based on the patient's age.

The initial dose of valproic acid used to treat mania is 750 mg daily. This dose is then reduced to the lowest dose that will achieve the desired effects. Another dosage strategy is based on patient weight. The starting dose is 30 mg per kilogram of body weight on days one and two followed by 20 mg per kg of body weight taken daily on days three through ten.

For prevention of migraine headaches, a dose of 250 mg twice daily is beneficial. It may take up to 1,000 mg of valproic acid to control migraine attacks.

### Precautions

Patients who have liver disease should not take valproic acid. Pregnant women should not take valproic acid, because it can harm the developing fetus. Patients who are allergic to valproic acid should not take it.

When it is necessary for children under age two and patients who have pancreatitis to take valproic acid, the drug should be used cautiously and with close physician monitoring.

### Side effects

Valproic acid can cause liver damage. Before starting valproic acid therapy, every patient should have a blood test to assess his or her liver function.

## KEY TERMS

**Absence seizure**—Absence (petit mal) seizures usually begin with a brief loss of consciousness and last between one and 10 seconds. People having a petit mal seizure become very quiet and may blink, stare blankly, roll their eyes, or move their lips. A petit mal seizure lasts 15–20 seconds. When it ends, the individual resumes whatever he or she was doing before the seizure began, and may not realize that anything unusual happened.

**Clonic-tonic seizure**—This is the most common type of seizure among all age groups and is categorized into several phases beginning with vague symptoms hours or days before an attack. These seizures are sometimes called grand mal seizures.

The risk of valproic acid causing liver damage is greatest during the first six months of treatment. Liver function tests should be done once a month during the first three months, then every three to six months for as long as the patient continues to take the drug. Vomiting, lethargy, anorexia, and jaundice (yellowing of the skin) may precede signs of liver damage. If a patient develops severe or unusual abdominal pain, this may be a sign of pancreatitis (inflammation of the pancreas). Pancreatitis can occur in both children and adults. It can develop shortly after valproic acid is started or after several years of use.

Other side effects of valproic acid may include nausea, vomiting, indigestion, and either diarrhea or constipation. Headaches, dizziness, lack of coordination, confusion, **fatigue**, tremor, drowsiness, and seizures have also been associated with the use of valproic acid. Behavioral changes associated with the drug including irritability, longer and deeper sleep, hyperactivity, increased sociability, increased sadness, happiness or aggression, are seen more often in children than in adults taking valproic acid.

Fewer than 1% of patients experience appetite changes. These changes may include either diminished or increased appetite. Skin rash, photosensitivity, (acute sensitivity to the sun) hair loss, and other hair changes have also been reported in people using valproic acid.

### Interactions

Using valproic acid with other anticonvulsant drugs, such as phenobarbital, **clonazepam**, and **lamotrigine** may cause excessive sedation (drowsiness and

lack of physical and mental alertness). Valproic acid may diminish the benefits of phenytoin which is another commonly used anticonvulsant.

Taking aspirin during valproic acid therapy may cause valproic acid levels to increase to toxic (poisonous) levels. Other medications that may cause valproic acid toxicity are erythromycin, an antibiotic, and the antidepressant **amitriptyline**. Drugs that can decrease the effectiveness of valproic acid include **carbamazepine**, cholestyramine, **Ginkgo biloba**, an herbal supplement commonly available in the United States, may be prepared with a chemical called 4'-O-methylpyridoxine. If this chemical remains in the herbal preparation, it can cause seizures, and reduce the effectiveness of valproic acid. Severe central nervous **depression** has been reported with the use of valproic acid and another anticonvulsant called primidone.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Kaplan, Harold. *Comprehensive Textbook of Psychiatry*. Williams and Wilkins, 1995.

Lacy, Charles F. *Drug Information Handbook*. Lexi-Comp, Inc. 2002.

#### PERIODICALS

Hirschfeld, Robert. "Safety and Tolerability of Oral Loading Divalproex Sodium in Acutely Manic Bipolar Patients." *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*. 60 (1999): 815-818.

Ajna Hamidovic, Pharm.D.

## Vascular dementia

### Definition

Vascular **dementia** is a group of disorders characterized by the severe loss of mental functioning resulting from cerebrovascular disease. Vascular dementia is often caused by repeated strokes.

### Description

Vascular dementia is caused by cerebrovascular disease, and occurs almost always in the elderly. People with vascular dementia generally experience a decline in thought processes (cognitive function) that follows specific steps. This decline is often punctuated by small strokes—ruptures of tiny blood vessels in the **brain**. People experiencing vascular dementia often have problems with memory, abstract thinking, object identification or recognition, speech creation, speech comprehension, and motor activities.

## Causes and symptoms

The signs of dementia often begin with impaired memory function. Sometimes a person has difficulty learning new things or remembering new events, and sometimes the person has difficulty recalling events or things that he or she used to know. Other signs of dementia include impairment in other areas of thought processing. Sometimes a person with vascular dementia may have difficulty producing coherent speech, or may have other language impairments, such as problems understanding spoken or written language. The signs of vascular dementia are similar to those of **Alzheimer's disease (AD)**.

Difficulty with motor activities is a problem for some people with vascular dementia. Things that require hand-eye coordination, such as tying shoes or undoing buttons, are examples of motor activities that may be impaired. People with vascular dementia may also have difficulty recognizing familiar objects, or may be unable to name them. Problems organizing things, putting events in sequence, or performing other types of abstract thinking may be present.

Some people with vascular dementia exhibit neurological signs that indicate the presence of cerebrovascular disease. They may have weakness of the arms or legs, abnormal reflexes, or abnormalities in the way they walk. Some people also exhibit behavioral disturbances related to the dementia. A person with dementia can be violent or aggressive towards others—often his or her caretaker. The person may act impulsively and irritably, and sometimes scream.

Vascular dementia is thought to be caused by small strokes that interfere with blood flow to the brain. Usually, vascular dementia is caused by many small strokes over time, rather than one large **stroke**. Sometimes this is referred to as multi-infarct dementia (MID). If the vascular dementia is caused by one large stroke, or develops in less than three months, then it is called “acute onset vascular dementia.” Acute onset vascular dementia is rare.

## Demographics

In most countries, vascular dementia is a much less common form of dementia than AD. This is true in North America and Europe, but is not so in Japan, where it is more common than AD. Overall, vascular dementia is the second most common form of dementia, after AD. About 10–20% of patients who experience dementia have the vascular form of the disorder. The difference in prevalence in different countries may result from different lifestyle factors rooted in the culture.

Vascular dementia is more common in men than in women, which may be because men are more likely than women to suffer from strokes. Vascular dementia becomes increasingly prevalent as people grow older. The number of people affected by vascular dementia rises dramatically during and after the sixth decade. Vascular dementia usually occurs at a younger age than AD.

## Diagnosis

The first step in the **diagnosis** of vascular dementia is to verify that dementia is present. The *DSM* indicates that impairments to memory must be present for a diagnosis of vascular dementia. Memory problems can include difficulties in learning and retaining new information, problems remembering past events, or things that were learned before dementia took root.

In addition to memory impairment, the *DSM* also specifies that one or more other impairments must be present. These impairments can include language problems that encompass not being able to form speech and/or not being able to understand language, either spoken or written; problems performing activities that require hand-eye coordination such as tying shoes, even though motor function is normal; problems recognizing or identifying objects, although the person is able to use his or her sense organs fully; problems doing tasks such as organizing things, planning events, putting things into sequence; or problems thinking abstractly. If the patient has memory problems and one or more other impairments, these impairments must cause problems for the patient’s functioning in important parts of his or her daily life. The *DSM* specifies that the patient must be significantly less able to function than during a previous time and that the problems cannot occur during the course of an event that is categorized as a **delirium**. There must be evidence that the problem is a result of cerebrovascular disease.

If the dementia occurs without any other significant signs or symptoms, then it is classified as uncomplicated. There are three other possible classifications as given by the *DSM*. These are based on the predominant feature of the dementia. They are: vascular dementia with delirium, vascular dementia with **delusions**, and vascular dementia with depressed mood. If there are significant behavioral disturbances occurring as a result of the dementia, then that is specified.

Vascular dementia and AD are similar in many ways, and can be confused. The most significant difference between the two is that vascular dementia can be diagnosed using physiological evidence of cerebrovascular disease. Also, AD generally occurs first

## KEY TERMS

**Cerebrovascular**—Pertaining to the blood flow in the brain.

**Delirium**—A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness.

**Vascular**—Pertaining to the bloodstream (arteries, veins, and blood vessels).

as a slow loss of memory function, and then as a gradual decline into eventual dementia. Vascular dementia, however, generally occurs suddenly. The patient often declines in a step-wise fashion, with each step occurring after a stroke.

### Treatments

The treatments for vascular dementia focus on attempts to slow or halt the progression of the disorder and alleviate some of the symptoms. The disorder cannot be cured or reversed. The most common way to treat vascular dementia is to try to prevent further strokes. Treatments include diet and drug treatment for hypertension (high blood pressure), aspirin therapy, **smoking cessation**, avoidance of heavy alcohol use, and **stress reduction**. Some drugs that are used to treat mild AD are being studied for their effectiveness in treating vascular dementia.

### Prognosis

Vascular dementia is a disorder that cannot be reversed. The progression of the disorder can, however, be slowed. Using drugs, along with lifestyle changes to prevent more strokes from occurring, can be effective at slowing the progression of vascular dementia.

### Prevention

Vascular dementia is generally associated with a series of strokes causing increasing mental impairment. Measures generally recommended by physicians to prevent strokes may be effective in helping to prevent vascular dementia. These measures include such things as quitting smoking, decreasing cholesterol levels, treating hypertension by reducing sodium (salt) intake, decreasing alcohol consumption, and other making lifestyle changes. One study illustrated that consuming a small amount of red wine regularly reduces the risk of all forms of dementia.

*See also* Alzheimer's disease.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th edition, text revised. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

Emery, V., Olga B., & Oxman, Thomas E. *Dementia: Presentations, Differential Diagnosis, and Nosology (2nd ed.)*. Baltimore, MD: The Johns Hopkins University Press, 2003.

VandenBos, Gary R. ed. *APA Dictionary of Psychology*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association, 2007.

### PERIODICALS

Andin, Ulla; Gustafson, Lars; Brun, Arne; & Passant, Ulla. “Clinical Manifestations in Neuropathologically Defined Subgroups of Vascular Dementia.” *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 21(7), Jul 2006:688–697.

Braaten, Alyssa J.; Parsons, Thomas D.; McCue, Robert; Sellers, Alfred; & Burns, William J. “Neurocognitive Differential Diagnosis of Dementing Diseases: Alzheimer’s Dementia, Vascular Dementia, Frontotemporal Dementia, and Major Depressive Disorder.” *International Journal of Neuroscience*, 116(11), Nov 2006: 1271–1293.

Micieli, G. “Vascular Dementia.” *Neurological Sciences*, 27(Suppl 1), Mar 2006.

O’Brien, John T. “Vascular Cognitive Impairment.” *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 14(9), Sep 2006: 724–733.

Panza, Francesco; D’Introno, Alessia; Colacicco, Anna Maria; Capurso, Cristiano; Del Parigi, Angelo; Capurso, Sabrina A.; Caselli, Richard J.; Pilotto, Alberto; Scafato, Emanuele; Capurso, Antonio; & Solfrizzi, Vincenzo. “Cognitive Frailty: Predementia Syndrome and Vascular Risk Factors.” *Neurobiology of Aging*, 27(7), Jul 2006: 933–940.

### ORGANIZATIONS

National Institute on Aging. Building 31, Room 5C27 31 Center Drive, MSC 2292 Bethesda, MD 20892. Telephone: (301) 496-1752. Web site: <[www.nia.nih.gov](http://www.nia.nih.gov)>.

Tish Davidson, A.M.

## Venlafaxine

### Definition

Venlafaxine is an antidepressant available in the United States under the trade name of Effexor or Effexor XR.

## Purpose

Venlafaxine is used to treat **depression** and **generalized anxiety disorder**. It has also been used to treat **obsessive-compulsive disorder** and irritable bowel syndrome.

## Description

Venlafaxine is an antidepressant. It has actions common to both the cyclic **antidepressants** such as **imipramine** (Tofranil) and **amitriptyline** (Elavil), and the **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)** such as **fluoxetine** (Prozac), **sertraline** (Zoloft), and **paroxetine** (Paxil). It is believed to derive its actions by increasing levels of both norepinephrine and serotonin in the **brain**.

The therapeutic effects of venlafaxine, like other antidepressants, appear slowly. Maximum benefit is often not evident for at least two weeks after starting the drug. People taking venlafaxine should be aware of this and continue taking the drug as directed even if they do not see immediate improvement.

Venlafaxine is broken down by the liver and eliminated from the body by the kidneys. As a result, the dose of venlafaxine must be lowered in people with liver or kidney disease.

Venlafaxine is available in 25-mg, 37.5-mg, 50-mg, 75-mg, and 100-mg rapid-release tablets and 75-mg and 150-mg extended-action capsules.

## Recommended dosage

The recommended initial dose of venlafaxine is 75 mg daily taken as two or three equal doses. The dose may be increased in 75-mg increments every four days as needed until symptoms of depression or **anxiety** resolve. Most commonly, dosages range between 150 mg to 225 mg daily, although in severe situations 375 mg per day may be needed. Once patients are stabilized using the rapid-acting tablets, they may be converted over to the appropriate dose of extended-release capsules.

In people with liver disease, the daily dosage of venlafaxine should be cut in half. In patients with kidney disease, the daily dosage of venlafaxine should be reduced 25–50%, depending upon the extent of kidney damage. When stopping venlafaxine, the dosage should be reduced gradually over a period of at least two weeks before the drug is totally stopped.

## Precautions

Patients taking venlafaxine should be monitored closely for **insomnia**, anxiety, mania, significant weight loss, **seizures**, and thoughts of **suicide**.

Caution should also be exercised when prescribing venlafaxine to patients with impaired liver or kidney function, the elderly (over age 60), children, individuals with known manic-depressive disorder or a history of seizures, people with diabetes, and individuals expressing ideas of committing suicide.

Individuals should not take monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors such as Nardil during venlafaxine therapy, for two weeks prior to beginning venlafaxine therapy, and for five weeks after stopping venlafaxine therapy.

Care should be taken to weigh the risks and benefits of this drug in women who are, or wish to become, pregnant, as well as in breast-feeding mothers.

People with diabetes should monitor their blood or urine sugar more carefully, since venlafaxine may affect blood sugar.

Until individuals understand the effects that venlafaxine may have, they should avoid driving, operating dangerous machinery, or participating in hazardous activities. Alcohol should not be used while taking venlafaxine.

## Side effects

More common side effects include decreased sexual drive, restlessness, difficulty sitting still, skin rash, hives, and itching.

Less common side effects include fever and/or chills, and pain in joints or muscles.

Rare side effects include pain or enlargement of breasts and/or abnormal milk production in women, seizures, fast heart rate, irregular heartbeats, red or purple spots on the skin, low blood sugar and its symptoms (anxiety, chills, cold sweats, confusion, difficulty concentrating, drowsiness, excess hunger, rapid heart rate, headache, shakiness or unsteadiness, severe **fatigue**), low blood sodium and its symptoms (including confusion, seizures, drowsiness, dry mouth, severe thirst, decreased energy), serotonin syndrome (usually at least three of the following: diarrhea, fever, sweating, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking), excitability, agitation, irritability, pressured talking, difficulty breathing, and odd body or facial movements.

## Interactions

Venlafaxine interacts with a long list of other medications. Anyone starting this drug should review the other medications they are taking with their physician and pharmacist for possible interactions. Patients

## KEY TERMS

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders as well.

**Depression**—A mental state characterized by excessive sadness. Other symptoms include altered sleep patterns, thoughts of suicide, difficulty concentrating, agitation, lack of energy, and loss of enjoyment in activities that are usually pleasurable.

**Generalized anxiety disorder**—A general form of fear that can dominate a person's life.

**Mania**—An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Obsessive-compulsive disorder**—A disorder in which affected individuals have an obsession (such as a fear of contamination, or thoughts they do not like to have and cannot control) and feel compelled to perform certain acts to neutralize the obsession (such as repeated hand washing).

**Serotonin syndrome**—A condition characterized by at least three of the following symptoms: diarrhea, fever, extreme perspiration, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering, or shaking. It is a result of too much serotonin in the body.

should always inform all their health care providers, including dentists, that they are taking venlafaxine.

Dangerously high blood pressure, rapid changes in heart rate, high fever, muscle stiffness, and sudden muscle spasms have resulted from the combination of antidepressants, such as venlafaxine, and members of another class of antidepressants known as monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors. Because of these serious adverse reactions, venlafaxine should never be taken in combination with MAO inhibitors. Patients taking any MAO inhibitors, for example Nardil (**phenelzine** sulfate) or Parnate (**tranylcypromine** sulfate), should stop the MAO inhibitor, and wait at least 14 days

before starting venlafaxine or a tricyclic antidepressant. The same holds true when discontinuing venlafaxine and starting an MAO inhibitor.

Some other drugs such as **trazodone** (Desyrel), sibutramine (Meridia), and sumatriptan (Imitrex) also interact with venlafaxine and cause a syndrome known as neuroleptic malignant syndrome, characterized by irritability, muscle stiffness, shivering, muscle spasms, and altered consciousness.

The sedative effects (drowsiness or lack of mental clarity) of venlafaxine are increased by other central nervous system depressants such as alcohol, **sedatives**, sleeping medications, or other medications used for mental disorders such as **schizophrenia**.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Facts and Comparisons staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*. 6th ed. St. Louis, MO: Facts and Comparisons, 2002. Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*. 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

Wyeth Laboratories staff. *Effexor Package Insert*. Philadelphia, PA: Wyeth Laboratories, 2001.

### PERIODICALS

Baca, Enrique, and others. "Venlafaxine Extended-Release in Patients Older than 80 Years with Depressive Syndrome." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 21.4 (Apr. 2006): 337–43.

Baldwin, David S. "Serotonin Noradrenaline Reuptake Inhibitors: A New Generation of Treatment for Anxiety Disorders." *International Journal of Psychiatry in Clinical Practice* 10, Suppl. 2 (June 2006): 12–15.

Davidson, Jonathan, and others. "Treatment of Posttraumatic Stress Disorder with Venlafaxine Extended Release." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.10 (Oct. 2006): 1158–65.

Johnson, Ellyn M., and others. "Cardiovascular Changes Associated With Venlafaxine in the Treatment of Late-Life Depression." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.9 (Sept. 2006): 796–802.

Kim, Tae-Suk, and others. "Comparison of Venlafaxine Extended Release Versus Paroxetine for Treatment of Patients with Generalized Anxiety Disorder." *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 60.3 (June 2006): 347–51.

McGrath, Patrick J., and others. "Tranylcypromine Versus Venlafaxine Plus Mirtazapine Following Three Failed Antidepressant Medication Trials for Depression: A STAR\*D Report." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.9 (Sept. 2006): 1531–41.

Montgomery, Stuart A. "Escitalopram Versus Venlafaxine XR in the Treatment of Depression." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 21.5 (Sept. 2006): 297–309.

Nemeroff, Charles B., and Michael E. Thase. "A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Comparison of Venlafaxine

- and Fluoxetine Treatment in Depressed Outpatients." *Journal of Psychiatric Research* 41.3–4 (Apr.–June 2007): 351–59.
- Post, R. M., and others. "Mood Switch in Bipolar Depression: Comparison of Adjunctive Venlafaxine, Bupropion and Sertraline." *British Journal of Psychiatry* 189.2 (Aug. 2006): 124–31.
- Rush, A. John, and others. "Bupropion-SR, Sertraline, or Venlafaxine-XR after Failure of SSRIs for Depression." *New England Journal of Medicine* 354.12 (Mar. 2006): 1231–42.
- Schatzberg, Alan, and Steven Roose. "A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Study of Venlafaxine and Fluoxetine in Geriatric Outpatients with Major Depression." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.4 (Apr. 2006): 361–70.
- Thase, Michael E., Richard C. Shelton, and Arifulla Khan. "Treatment with Venlafaxine Extended Release after SSRI Nonresponse or Intolerance: A Randomized Comparison of Standard- and Higher-Dosing Strategies." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.3 (June 2006): 250–58.
- Tiihonen, Jari, and others. "Antidepressants and the Risk of Suicide, Attempted Suicide, and Overall Mortality in a Nationwide Cohort." *Archives of General Psychiatry* 63.12 (Dec. 2006): 1358–67.
- Yazicioglu, Bengi, and others. "A Comparison of the Efficacy and Tolerability of Reboxetine and Sertraline Versus Venlafaxine in Major Depressive Disorder: A Randomized, Open-Labeled Clinical Trial." *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry* 30.7 (Sept. 2006): 1271–76.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph., PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Vivactil see **Protriptyline**

## Vivitrol

### Purpose

Vivitrol (**naltrexone** for extended-release injectable suspension) is a once-monthly injection used in the treatment of alcohol dependence in patients who are able to abstain from alcohol at least seven to ten days prior to treatment.

### Description

Naltrexone, the active ingredient in Vivitrol, is an opioid antagonist that blocks the effects of alcohol; it is not an aversive therapy that pairs a strong feeling of dislike or disgust with alcohol. Naltrexone has few, if any, intrinsic actions other than as an opioid antago-

nist. It produces withdrawal symptoms in patients physically dependent on **opioids**. Vivitrol should be used as only one component of a comprehensive alcoholism management program that includes counseling, self-help **support groups**, or other psychosocial support.

### Recommended Dosage

The recommended dosage of Vivitrol is 380 mg once a month. Vivitrol is delivered by intramuscular gluteal injection and should not be administered intravenously. Patients missing a dose should be given the next dose as soon as possible. Vivitrol must be administered by a healthcare professional.

Before starting treatment with Vivitrol, the patient should abstain from alcohol in an outpatient setting, not be actively drinking, not be in acute opiate withdrawal, and be opioid-free for at least seven to ten days.

### Precautions

In excessive doses, naltrexone has been found to cause liver damage. Therefore, Vivitrol is not recommended for use in cases of acute hepatitis or liver failure. Careful consideration should be given before administering Vivitrol to patients with liver disease. Vivitrol should be discontinued in the event of signs of acute hepatitis.

Vivitrol should not be given to patients with a physiological dependence on opioids or who are in opioid withdrawal. To prevent withdrawal, Vivitrol should not be administered to patients receiving opioid analgesics. In cases where Vivitrol blockade needs to be reversed for pain management, patients should be monitored in a setting enabled for cardio-pulmonary resuscitation.

### Side Effects

Vivitrol counteracts the effects of opioid-containing medications, including analgesics, cough and cold medications, and antidiarrheal preparations.

Vivitrol is generally well tolerated. In **clinical trials**, serious adverse reactions occurred in patients receiving Vivitrol at a similar rate to patients receiving a placebo. Mild to moderate adverse events were seen in most patients. The most common of these were nausea, vomiting, headache, dizziness, **insomnia**, **fatigue**, and injection site reaction.

In clinical trials, suicidal tendencies (including thoughts of **suicide**, suicide attempts, and completed suicides), although infrequent, occurred more often in

patients treated with Vivitrol (1 percent) than in patients receiving a placebo (0). Similarly, depression-related events were higher for patients taking Vivitrol (1 percent) than for those taking a placebo (0). Patients taking Vivitrol should be monitored for **depression** or suicidal thinking.

- Side effects and other reactions reported include:
- blood and lymphatic system disorders (e.g., swollen, firm, or possibly tender lymph nodes; increased white blood cell count)
  - cardiac disorders (e.g., palpitations, atrial fibrillation, myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, angina unstable, congestive heart failure, atherosclerosis)
  - eye disorders (e.g., conjunctivitis)
  - gastrointestinal disorders (e.g., constipation, toothache, flatulence, gastroesophageal reflux disease, hemorrhoids, colitis, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, paralysis/obstruction of the intestine, perirectal abscess)
  - general disorders (e.g., fever, lethargy, rigors, chest pain or tightness, weight loss)
  - liver disorders (e.g., gallstones)
  - infections and infestations (e.g., influenza, bronchitis, urinary tract infection, gastroenteritis, tooth abscess, pneumonia)
  - immune system disorders (e.g., seasonal allergy, hypersensitivity reaction)
  - injection site reactions (e.g., pain, tenderness, skin reactions)
  - metabolism and nutrition disorders (e.g., anorexia, appetite disorders, increased appetite, heat exhaustion, dehydration, elevated blood cholesterol)
  - musculoskeletal and connective tissue disorders (e.g., pain in limbs, muscle spasms, joint stiffness)
  - nausea, particularly after initial injection
  - nervous system disorders (e.g., headache and migraine, dizziness, fainting, sleepiness, abnormality of the sense of taste, disturbance in attention, mental impairment, convulsions, ischemic stroke, cerebral arterial aneurysm)
  - psychiatric disorders (e.g., irritability, decreased libido, abnormal dreams, alcohol withdrawal syndrome, agitation, euphoric mood, delirium)
  - respiratory, thoracic, and mediastinal disorders (e.g., shortness of breath, sinus congestion, chronic obstructive airways disease)
  - skin and subcutaneous tissue disorders (e.g., increased sweating, night sweats)
  - vascular disorders (e.g., elevated blood pressure, hot flushes, deep venous thrombosis, pulmonary embolism)

## KEY TERMS

**Alcohol dependence**—A chronic disease with both neurological and genetic factors. Diagnostic criteria include increased tolerance for alcohol, withdrawal symptoms, and manifestations of behavior, loss of control over the use of alcohol, and/or impaired function. Alcohol dependence is distinguished from alcohol abuse, alcohol withdrawal syndrome, and other alcohol-induced syndromes.

**Analgesic**—A medication to reduce or eliminate pain.

**Opioid**—A synthetic narcotic that resembles natural opiates.

**Placebo**—A preparation without pharmacological effect that is given in place of a drug in clinical trials to determine the effectiveness of the drug under study; a “sugar pill.”

## Interactions

Although Vivitrol is a powerful drug with prolonged effects for blocking the action of opioids, the blockade can be overcome. However, such action is extremely dangerous. Any attempt by the patient to overcome the blockage by taking higher amounts of opioids or large dose of heroin while on Vivitrol could lead to serious injury, coma, or death.

At the time of this writing, no clinical drug interaction studies had been performed with Vivitrol. Prescribers, therefore, should carefully weigh the risks and benefits of use. Patients treated simultaneously with Vivitrol and antidepressant medications (e.g., **sertraline**, **citalopram**, **paroxetine**, **fluoxetine**, trazadone, **bupropion** hydrochloride) had similar safety profiles to patients taking Vivitrol without **antidepressants**.

## Resources

### BOOKS

American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 4th edition, Text Revision*. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.

### OTHER INFORMATION

Cephalon, Inc. “Generation information regarding use of VIVITROL (Naltrexone for Extended Release Injectable Suspension) for the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence.” Enclosure to letter dated 1 December 2006.

Cephalon, Inc. “Vivitrol Prescribing Information.” Enclosure to letter dated 1 December 2006.

Ruth A. Wienclaw, Ph.D.

## Vocational rehabilitation

### Definition

Vocational rehabilitation (VR) is a set of services offered to individuals with mental or physical disabilities. These services are designed to enable participants to attain skills, resources, attitudes, and expectations needed to compete in the interview process, get a job, and keep a job. Services offered may also help an individual retrain for employment after an injury or mental disorder has disrupted previous employment.

### Purpose

Vocational rehabilitation services prepare qualified applicants to achieve a lifestyle of independence and integration within their workplace, family and local community. This transition is achieved through work evaluation and job readiness services, job counseling services, and medical and therapeutic services. For individuals with psychiatric disabilities, situational assessments are generally used to evaluate vocational skills and potential.

### Precautions

Vocational rehabilitation as operated by state agencies is not an entitlement program. Only individuals considered eligible can receive VR services. Eligibility criteria require that an individual be at least 16 years old, unemployed or under-employed, and have a physical or mental disability that results in a substantial barrier to employment, such as psychotic disorders, alcohol and other drug abuse dependence, mental and emotional disorders, attention deficit disorders, specific learning disabilities, and physical and sensory disabilities. In addition, the individual must be able to benefit from VR services. An individual must also need help to prepare for, find, and succeed in paid employment. When resources are limited, individuals with the most significant disabilities must be served first.

### Description

Vocational rehabilitation services are based on individual needs and defined as any goods or services an individual might need to be employable, such as assistive technology devices and services. For instance, a person who is blind would need screen reading software to access a computer and people with a cognitive or mental disability might need a talking electronic reminder device programmed to prompt them when it is time to perform certain tasks.

Vocational rehabilitation can be provided by private organizations, but is not typically funded under **managed care** arrangements. Thus, most people apply to state vocational rehabilitation agencies that are funded through federal and state monies. Typically, state agencies have offices in their state's major cities and towns. State VR agencies do not necessarily offer the same services or deliver services in the same way in every state, so individuals seeking services must learn how to access the VR program in their own state. The federal VR component is administered by the U.S. Department of Education Rehabilitation Services Administration and authorized by the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 as amended in the 1988 reauthorization.

Most vocational rehabilitation services are free for eligible applicants; however, applicants may be asked to use other benefits, such as: insurance, Pell grants or other financial aid for training or higher education, to pay part of program costs.

Best practices in vocational rehabilitation include individual choice, person-centered planning, integrated setting, natural supports, rapid placement, and career development. The term *integrated setting* refers to placing individuals in usual employment situations rather than making placements into sheltered workshops or other segregated settings. Natural supports are the person's already existing support network, including family members, service providers, and friends, who can help the person reach a goal, such as the employment of their choice. Person-centered planning is a technique in which a plan for a person's future is developed by a team consisting of the person and his or her natural supports, and the team develops a practical plan based on the person's wishes and dreams. Each teammember agrees to perform certain tasks identified in the plan to help the person reach goals. Unfortunately, not all VR programs incorporate all of these best practices.

### Preparation

Vocational rehabilitation transition planning services are required for all public and private education students aged 16 and over, who have Individualized Education Plans (IEPs) or Rehabilitation Act Section 504 Plans. Transition services help students make the transition from school to employment, training or higher education. Older individuals who have acquired disabilities and are applying for VR services must undergo medical and psychological assessments at their local VR office to determine the extent of their disabilities, except for individuals receiving SSDI or SSI who are presumed eligible without assessments. Applicants may receive treatment and counseling, if

## KEY TERMS

**IEP (Individualized Education Plan)**—Under federal law governing special education, every child in public schools who is determined through assessment to have special mental disability needs has an IEP. An IEP is typically developed by a team of professionals that may include special education teachers, physical, occupational and speech therapists, psychologists, parents or guardians, and others who may be called on to provide expertise. The team meets at least once a year to set goals for the next school year and to assess progress on already established goals. Parents who are not satisfied with school-based assessments have the right to ask for independent assessments that must be paid for by the school system.

**Integrated setting**—Placing individuals in usual employment situations rather than making placements into sheltered workshops or other segregated settings.

**Natural supports**—Using a person's already existing support network to help the person reach a goal, such as the employment of their choice.

**Person-centered planning**—A technique in which a plan for a person's future is developed by a team consisting of the person, family members, service providers and friends (natural supports). The team develops a practical plan based on the person's wishes and dreams. Each team member agrees to perform certain tasks identified in the plan to help the person reach goals.

**Section 504**—This section of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 provides that no person may be discriminated against because of a physical disability. For instance, a child who uses a wheelchair. If a science class is on the second floor and the building has no elevator, the school must find a way to ensure that children in wheelchairs have access to that science class. An educational plan for a child who has both cognitive and physical disabilities is developed under an IEP.

needed, before training and employment. All VR services are described in an applicant's Individualized Plan for Employment (IPE). Applicants may design the IPE either on their own or with the assistance of their assigned VR counselor, usually a person with a master's degree in rehabilitation counseling.

### Aftercare

A vocational rehabilitation counselor will assist an applicant access an employment agency to help locate a job. Counselors may provide support (supported employment programs) if applicants need support to keep a job. This support may include job coaching, which includes working with the person in the workplace until the person is comfortable with the work. The counselors also act as resources if a job does not work out by assessing what happened and counseling the person on how to improve performance or change habits that were not looked on with favor in the workplace.

### Risks

Applicants may not be satisfied with the pace of progress toward their employment goal through VR or they may not believe their wishes or talents and skills are being taken seriously. Applicants wanting to start their own businesses or engage in telecommuting may not be successful in receiving vocational reha-

bilitation assistance. Applicants may find that VR counselors tend to recommend low-level and low-paying jobs traditionally recommended for VR applicants, such as food service and janitorial work. Applicants may also be turned away by VR counselors because the counselors decide the applicant's disability is too severe for the person to benefit from VR services. An additional risk for individuals with mental disorders is a usual lack of coordination between VR and mental health systems.

To address these problems in the VR system, the U. S. Congress passed the Ticket To Work Act. Under this Act, persons with mental or physical disabilities will receive a ticket worth a certain amount of money. They may take this ticket to any private or public entity that provides job training and placement, including state VR programs. The entities providing the employment-related services will be able to redeem the tickets only after the person is gainfully employed for a certain period of time. States are on a staggered schedule to begin implementing the program; persons in the first states started receiving tickets in 2001. All states will be instituting the Ticket to Work Act by 2004.

### Normal results

Individuals with mental or physical disabilities will receive the assessments, counseling, training, placement, accommodations and long-term supports

needed to allow them to engage in the gainful employment of their choice.

### Abnormal results

Individuals with mental or physical disabilities remain unemployed or under employed. More than 70% of people with disabilities are unemployed; for people with mental disorders, that percentage ranges from 70-90%.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Fischler, Gary and Nan Booth. *Vocational Impact of Psychiatric Disorders: A Guide for Rehabilitation Professionals*. Austin: PRO-ED, Incorporated, 1999.

#### PERIODICALS

- Cook, Judith A. "Research-Based Principles of Vocational Rehabilitation for Psychiatric Disability." International Association of Psychosocial Rehabilitation Services newsletter *Connection* issue 4 (September 1999). Also available on the Veterans Industry web site: <[www.va.gov/vetind/page.cfm?pg=6](http://www.va.gov/vetind/page.cfm?pg=6)>.
- Harding, Courtney. "Some Things We've Learned about Vocational Rehabilitation of the Seriously and Persistently Mentally Ill." Western Interstate Commission for Higher Education newsletter *West Link: Western Health Development in the United States* vol. 18, no 2 (1997). Also available at <<http://www.wiche.edu/mentalhealth/westlink/>>.
- Lehman, Anthony F. "Vocational Rehabilitation in Schizophrenia." In *Schizophrenia Bulletin* 21, no. 4 (1995): 24-36.
- MacDonald-Wilson, K. "Unique Issues in Assessing Work Function Among Individuals with Psychiatric Disabilities." *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation* 11, no. 3 (2001): 217-232.
- Maronne, J., C. Gandolfo, M. Gold, and D. Hoff. "If You Think Work Is Bad for People with Mental Illness, Then Try Poverty, Unemployment, and Social Isolation." *Psychiatric Rehabilitation Journal* 23, no. 2 (2000): 187-193.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- State Rehabilitation Councils. These councils advise and assist state VR programs in preparing state plans for vocational services to promote employment for persons with disabilities and ensure a link between citizen participation and the legislative process. Persons with disabilities or their family members must make up 60% or more of a Council's membership. The Pennsylvania Rehabilitation Council has a web site with links to various state rehabilitation councils at <<http://www.parac.org/>>.
- The Pennsylvania Rehabilitation Council can be reached at: Rehabilitation Council Support Project, 1902 Market Street, Camp Hill, PA 17011. Telephone: (717) 975-2004, or toll free: (888) 250-5175. TTY: (877) 827-9974. Fax: (888) 524-9282.

Association for Persons in Supported Employment (APSE) provides a nationwide supported employment network through its national program and state chapters. APSE works to increase supported employment opportunities, educate consumers regarding their rights in supported employment activities and train professionals to create quality supported employment services. APSE, 1627 Monument Avenue, Richmond, VA 23220. Phone: (804) 278-9187. Fax: (804) 278-9377. <<http://www.apse.org/>>. The Office of Special Education and Rehabilitative Services' Rehabilitation Services Administration (RSA) web site describes the programs offered, federal law and regulations governing VR programs, and includes a link to all state VR programs and agencies. <<http://www.ed.gov/offices/OSERS/RSA/>>.

Geoffrey Grimm, Ph.D., LPC

## Voyeurism

### Definition

Voyeurism is a psychosexual disorder in which a person derives sexual pleasure and gratification from looking at the naked bodies and genital organs or observing the sexual acts of others. The voyeur is usually hidden from view of others. Voyeurism is a form of paraphilia. Other **paraphilic** include **exhibitionism** and **pedophilia**.

A variant form of voyeurism involves listening to erotic conversations. This is commonly referred to as telephone sex, although it is usually considered voyeurism primarily in the instance of listening to unsuspecting people.

### Description

The object of voyeurism is to observe unsuspecting individuals who are naked, in the process of undressing, or engaging in sexual acts. The person being observed is usually a stranger to the observer. The act of looking or peeping is undertaken for the purpose of achieving sexual excitement. The observer generally does not seek to have sexual contact or activity with the person being observed.

If orgasm is sought, it is usually achieved through masturbation. This may occur during the act of observation or later, relying on the memory of the act that was observed.

Frequently, a voyeur may have a fantasy of engaging in sexual activity with the person being observed. In reality, this fantasy is rarely consummated.

A number of states have statutes that render voyeurism a crime. Such statutes vary widely regarding definitions of voyeurism. Most states specifically prohibit anyone from photographing or videotaping another person, without consent, while observing that person in the privacy of his home or some other private place.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

There is no scientific consensus concerning the basis for voyeurism. Some experts attribute the behavior to an initially random or accidental observation of an unsuspecting person who is naked, in the process of disrobing, or engaging in sexual activity. Successive repetitions of the act tend to reinforce and perpetuate the voyeuristic behavior.

Other experts view this and other paraphilic behaviors as having an obsessive-compulsive element, and some papers now describe these behaviors in a category of compulsive-impulsive sexual behaviors or behaviors that fit under the umbrella of **process addiction**. For example, those with symptoms of compulsive-impulsive sex behavior related to process **addiction** may have frequent, intrusive thoughts about sex and engage repeatedly in sex behaviors that can spiral out of control.

Single case studies have suggested some effectiveness in treating paraphilic behaviors with drugs used to treat **bipolar disorder**, implying a potential link also to bipolar disorders. People who have pedophilia, which is also characterized as a paraphilia, have abnormalities on **brainimaging studies** that are similar to those observed in imaging studies of people with **obsessive-compulsive disorder**. Disruption of the pathways of **dopamine** and serotonin (both nerve-signaling molecules) is implicated in all of these disorders. People who engage in paraphilic behavior may also have a higher rate of substance use, novelty seeking, and sexual risk-taking behaviors.

### Symptoms

The act of voyeurism is the observation of an unsuspecting person who is naked, or who is in the process of disrobing or engaging in sexual activity that provides sexual arousal. To be clinically diagnosed, the symptoms must include the following elements:

- recurrent, intense, or sexually arousing fantasies, sexual urges, or behaviors.
- fantasies, urges, or behaviors that cause significant distress to individuals or are disruptive of their everyday functioning.

## Demographics

Voyeurism is apparently more common in men, but does occasionally occur in women. However, the prevalence of voyeurism is not known. Contemporary society in the United States is increasingly voyeuristic (as in the example of reality television); however, **diagnosis** is made only when voyeurism is a preferred or exclusive means of sexual gratification.

The onset of voyeuristic activity is usually prior to the age of 15 years. There are no reliable statistics pertaining to the incidence of voyeurism in adulthood.

## Diagnosis

According to the mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, two criteria are required to make a diagnosis of voyeurism:

- Over a period of at least six months, an individual must experience recurrent, intense, sexually arousing fantasies, sexual urges, or behaviors that involve the act of observing an unsuspecting person who is naked, in the process of disrobing, or engaging in sexual activity.
- The fantasies, sexual urges, or behaviors must cause clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning.

In order for a condition to be labeled "voyeurism," the fantasies, urges, or behaviors of watching other people must cause significant distress in the individuals or be disruptive to their everyday functioning.

## Treatments

For treatment to be successful, a voyeur must want to modify existing patterns of behavior. This initial step is difficult for most voyeurs to admit and then take. Most must be compelled to accept treatment. This may often be the result of a court order.

Behavioral therapy is commonly used to try to treat voyeurism. The voyeur must learn to control the impulse to watch nonconsenting victims, and just as importantly to acquire more acceptable means of sexual gratification. Outcomes of behavioral therapy are not known. There are no direct drug treatments for voyeurism.

Voyeurism is a criminal act in many jurisdictions. It is usually classified as a misdemeanor. As a result, legal penalties are often minor. The possibility of exposure and embarrassment may deter some voyeurs. It is also not easy to prosecute voyeurs, as intent to watch is difficult to prove. In their defense statements, they usually claim that the observation was accidental.

## KEY TERMS

**Paraphilia**—A disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving (1) nonhuman objects, (2) the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or (3) children or other nonconsenting people.

**Voyeur**—A person who engages in the behavior of voyeurism.

## Prognosis

Once voyeuristic activity is undertaken, it commonly does not stop. Over time, it may become the main form of sexual gratification for the voyeur. Its course tends to be chronic.

The prognosis for eliminating voyeurism is poor because most voyeurs have no desire to change their pattern of behavior. Because voyeurism involves non-consenting partners and is against the law in many jurisdictions, the possibility of embarrassment may deter some individuals.

## Prevention

Most experts agree that providing guidance regarding behavior that is culturally acceptable will prevent the development of a paraphilia such as voyeurism. The origin of some instances of voyeurism may be accidental observation with subsequent sexual gratification. There is no way to predict when such an event and association will occur.

Members of society at large can reduce the incidence of voyeurism by drawing curtains, dropping blinds, or closing window curtains. Reducing opportunities for voyeurism may reduce the practice.

*See also* Exhibitionism; Paraphilia.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Gelder, Michael, Richard Mayou, and Philip Cowen. *Shorter Oxford Textbook of Psychiatry*. 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.

- Kohut, John J., and Roland Sweet. *Real Sex: Titillating but True Tales of Bizarre Fetishes, Strange Compulsions, and Just Plain Weird Stuff*. New York: Plume, 2000.
- Wilson, Josephine F. *Biological Foundations of Human Behavior*. New York: Harcourt, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

- Abouesh, A., and A. Clayton. "Compulsive Voyeurism and Exhibitionism: A Clinical Response to Paroxetine." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 28.1 (1999): 23–30.
- Furnham, A., and E. Haraldsen. "Lay Theories of Etiology and 'Cure' for Four Types of Paraphilia: Fetishism, Pedophilia, Sexual Sadism, and Voyeurism." *Journal of Clinical Psychology* 54.5 (1998): 689–700.
- Langstrom, Niklas, and Michael C. Seto. "Exhibitionistic and Voyeuristic Behavior in a Swedish National Population Survey." *Archives of Sexual Behavior* 35 (2006): 427–35.
- Marazziti, Donatella, and Bernardo Dell'Osso. "Topiramate Plus Citalopram in the Treatment of Compulsive-impulsive Sexual Behaviors." *Clinical Practice in Epidemiology in Mental Health* 2 (2006): 9.
- Mick, Thomas M., MD, and Eric Hollander, MD. "Impulsive-compulsive Sexual Behavior." *CNS Spectrum* 11 (2006): 944–55.
- Rosler, A., and E. Witztum. "Pharmacotherapy of Paraphilic in the Next Millennium." *Behavioral Science Law* 18.1 (2000): 43–56.
- Schiffer, Boris, and others. "Structural Brain Abnormalities in the Frontostriatal System and Cerebellum in Pedophilia." *Journal of Psychiatric Research*. (2006) doi:10.1016/j.jpsychires.2006.06.003.
- Schober, Justine M., Peter M. Byrne, and Phyllis J. Kuhn. "Leuprolide Acetate is a Familiar Drug That May Modify Sex-offender Behavior: The Urologist's Role." *BJU International* 97 (2006): 684–86.
- Simon, R. I. "Video Voyeurs and the Covert Videotaping of Unsuspecting Victims: Psychological and Legal Consequences." *Journal of Forensic Science* 42.5 (1997): 884–89.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- American Medical Association. 515 N. State Street, Chicago, IL 60610. Telephone: (312) 464-5000. Web site: <<http://www.ama-assn.org/>>.
- American Psychiatric Association. 1400 K Street NW, Washington, DC 20005. Telephone: (888) 357-7924. Fax: (202) 682-6850. Web site: <<http://www.psych.org/>>.
- American Psychological Association. 750 First Street NW, Washington, DC, 20002-4242. Telephone: (800) 374-2721 or (202) 336-5500. Web site: <<http://www.apa.org/>>.

L.Fleming Fallon, Jr., MD, Dr.P.H.  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

# W

WAIS see **Wechsler adult intelligence scale**

## Wechsler adult intelligence scale

### Definition

The Wechsler adult intelligence scale (WAIS) is an individually administered measure of intelligence, intended for adults aged 16–89.

### Purpose

The WAIS is intended to measure human intelligence reflected in both verbal and performance abilities. Dr. David Wechsler, a clinical **psychologist**, believed that intelligence is a global construct, reflecting a variety of measurable skills and should be considered in the context of the overall personality. The WAIS is also administered as part of a test battery to make inferences about personality and pathology, both through the content of specific answers and patterns of subtest scores.

Besides being utilized as an intelligence assessment, the WAIS is used in neuropsychological evaluation, specifically with regard to **brain** dysfunction. Large differences in verbal and nonverbal intelligence may indicate specific types of brain damage.

The WAIS is also administered for diagnostic purposes. Intelligence quotient (IQ) scores reported by the WAIS can be used as part of the diagnostic criteria for **mental retardation**, specific learning disabilities, and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD).

### Precautions

The Wechsler intelligence scales are not considered adequate measures of extremely high and low intelligence (IQ scores below 40 and above 160). The nature of the scoring process does not allow for scores outside of this range for test takers at particular ages. Wechsler himself was even more conservative, stressing that his scales were not appropriate for people with an IQ below 70 or above 130. Also, when administering the WAIS to people at extreme ends of the age range (below 20 years of age or above 70), caution should be used when interpreting scores. The age range for the WAIS overlaps with that of the **Wechsler intelligence scale for children** (WISC) for people between 16 and 17 years of age, and it is suggested that the WISC provides a better measure for this age range.

Administration and scoring of the WAIS require an active test administrator who must interact with the test taker and must know test protocol and specifications. WAIS administrators must receive proper training and be aware of all test guidelines.

### Description

The Wechsler **intelligence tests**, which include the WAIS, the WISC, and the WPPSI (Wechsler preschool and primary scale of intelligence), are the most widely used intelligence assessments and among the most widely used neuropsychological assessments. Wechsler published the first version of the WAIS in 1939, initially called the Wechsler-Bellevue. The newest version is the WAIS-III (the third edition, most recently updated in 1997). Since Wechsler's death in 1981, the Wechsler tests have been revised by the publisher, the Psychological Corporation.

The theoretical basis for the WAIS and the other Wechsler scales came from Wechsler's belief that intelligence is a complex ability involving a variety of skills. Because intelligence is multifaceted, Wechsler believed, a test measuring intelligence must reflect this multitude of skills. After dividing intelligence into two major types of skills—verbal and performance—Wechsler utilized the statistical technique of factor analysis to



**Psychologist observes a man taking the Wechsler adult intelligence scale-revised test.** (Corbis)

determine specific skills within these two major domains. These more specific factors formed the basis of the Wechsler subtests.

The WAIS-III consists of 14 subtests and takes about 60–75 minutes to complete. The test is taken individually, with a test administrator present to give instructions. Each subtest is given separately, and proceeds from very easy items to very difficult ones. There is some flexibility in the administration of the WAIS—the administrator may end some subtests early if test takers seem to reach the limit of their capacity. Tasks on the WAIS include questions of general knowledge, traditional arithmetic problems, a test of vocabulary, completion of pictures with missing elements, arrangements of blocks and pictures, and assembly of objects.

The WAIS is considered to be a valid and reliable measure of general intelligence. When undergoing reliability and validity studies, other intelligence tests are often compared to the Wechsler scales. It is regularly used by researchers in many areas of psychology as a measure of intelligence. Research has demonstrated correlations between WAIS IQ scores and a variety of socioeconomic, physiological, and environmental characteristics.

The WAIS has also been found to be a good measure of both fluid and crystallized intelligence. Fluid intelligence refers to inductive and deductive reasoning, skills considered to be largely influenced by neurological and biological factors. In the WAIS, fluid intelligence is reflected in the performance subtests. Crystallized intelligence refers to knowledge and skills that are primarily influenced by environmental and sociocultural factors. In the WAIS, crystallized

intelligence is reflected in the verbal subtests. Wechsler himself did not necessarily divide overall intelligence into these two types. However, the consideration of fluid and crystallized intelligence as two major categories of cognitive ability has been a focus for many intelligence theorists.

The Wechsler scales were originally developed and later revised using standardization samples. The samples were meant to be demographically representative of the United States population at the time of the standardization.

## Results

The WAIS elicits three intelligence quotient scores, based on an average of 100, as well as subtest and index scores. WAIS subtests measure specific verbal abilities and specific performance abilities.

The WAIS elicits an overall intelligence quotient, called the full-scale IQ, as well as a verbal IQ and a performance IQ. The three IQ scores are standardized in such a way that the scores have a mean of 100 and a standard deviation of 15. Wechsler pioneered the use of deviation IQ scores, allowing test takers to be compared to others of different as well as the same age. WAIS scores are sometimes converted into percentile ranks. The verbal and performance IQ scores are based on scores on the 14 subtests. The 14 subtest scores have a mean of 10 and a standard deviation of three. The WAIS also elicits four indices, each based on a different set of subtests: verbal comprehension, perceptual organization, working memory, and processing speed.

The full-scale IQ is based on scores on all of the subtests and is a reflection of both verbal IQ and performance IQ. It is considered the single most reliable and valid score elicited by the WAIS. However, when an examinee's verbal and performance IQ scores differ significantly, the full-scale IQ should be interpreted cautiously.

### *The verbal IQ*

The verbal IQ is derived from scores on seven of the subtests: information, digit span, vocabulary, arithmetic, comprehension, similarities, and letter-number sequencing. Letter-number sequencing is a new subtest added to the most recent edition of the WAIS (WAIS-III).

The information subtest is a test of general knowledge, including questions about geography and literature. The digit span subtest requires test takers to repeat strings of digits. The vocabulary and arithmetic subtests are general measures of a person's vocabulary and arithmetic skills. The comprehension subtest requires test takers to solve practical problems and

## KEY TERMS

**Factor Analysis**—A statistical method for summarizing relationships between variables. With the WAIS, items that correlated highly with each other were considered to be part of certain factors underlying intelligence. These factors are the basis for the 14 WAIS subtests.

**Indices**—Scores based on performance in more than one area. On the WAIS, there are four index scores, each based on an individual's performance in more than one subtest.

**Mean**—The mathematical average of all scores in a set of scores. The WAIS has been standardized to have a mean of 100.

**Percentile rank**—The point at which a given percentage of people fall at or below the individual's test score being calculated. For example, if a person's test score was at the 60th percentile, 40% of other test takers received a higher score, while 60% received a score that was at or below that of the test taker.

**Standard deviation**—A measure of variability in a set of scores. The WAIS has been standardized to have a standard deviation of 15.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing scoring norms. Prior to the publication of each version of the WAIS, it is standardized.

explain the meaning of proverbs. The similarities subtest requires test takers to indicate the similarities between pairs of things. The letter-number sequencing subtest involves ordering numbers and letters presented in an unordered sequence. Scores on the verbal subtests are based primarily on correct answers.

### The performance IQ

The performance IQ is derived from scores on the remaining seven subtests: picture completion, picture arrangement, block design, object assembly, digit symbol, matrix reasoning, and symbol search. Matrix reasoning and symbol search are new subtests and were added to the most recent edition of the WAIS (WAIS-III).

In the picture completion subtest, the test taker is required to complete pictures with missing elements. The picture arrangement subtest entails arranging pictures in order to tell a story. The block design subtest requires test takers to use blocks to make specific designs. The

object assembly subtest requires people to assemble pieces in such a way that a whole object is built. In the digit symbol subtest, digits and symbols are presented as pairs and test takers then must pair additional digits and symbols. The matrix reasoning subtest requires test takers to identify geometric shapes. The symbol search subtest requires examinees to match symbols appearing in different groups. Scores on the performance subtests are based on both response speed and correct answers.

*See also Stanford-Binet intelligence scales.*

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Groth-Marnat, Gary. *Handbook of Psychological Assessment*, 3rd edition. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.  
 Kline, Paul. *The Handbook of Psychological Testing*. New York: Routledge, 1999.  
 McGrew, Kevin S., and Dawn P. Flanagan. *The Intelligence Test Desk Reference*. Needham Heights, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

## Wechsler intelligence scale for children

### Definition

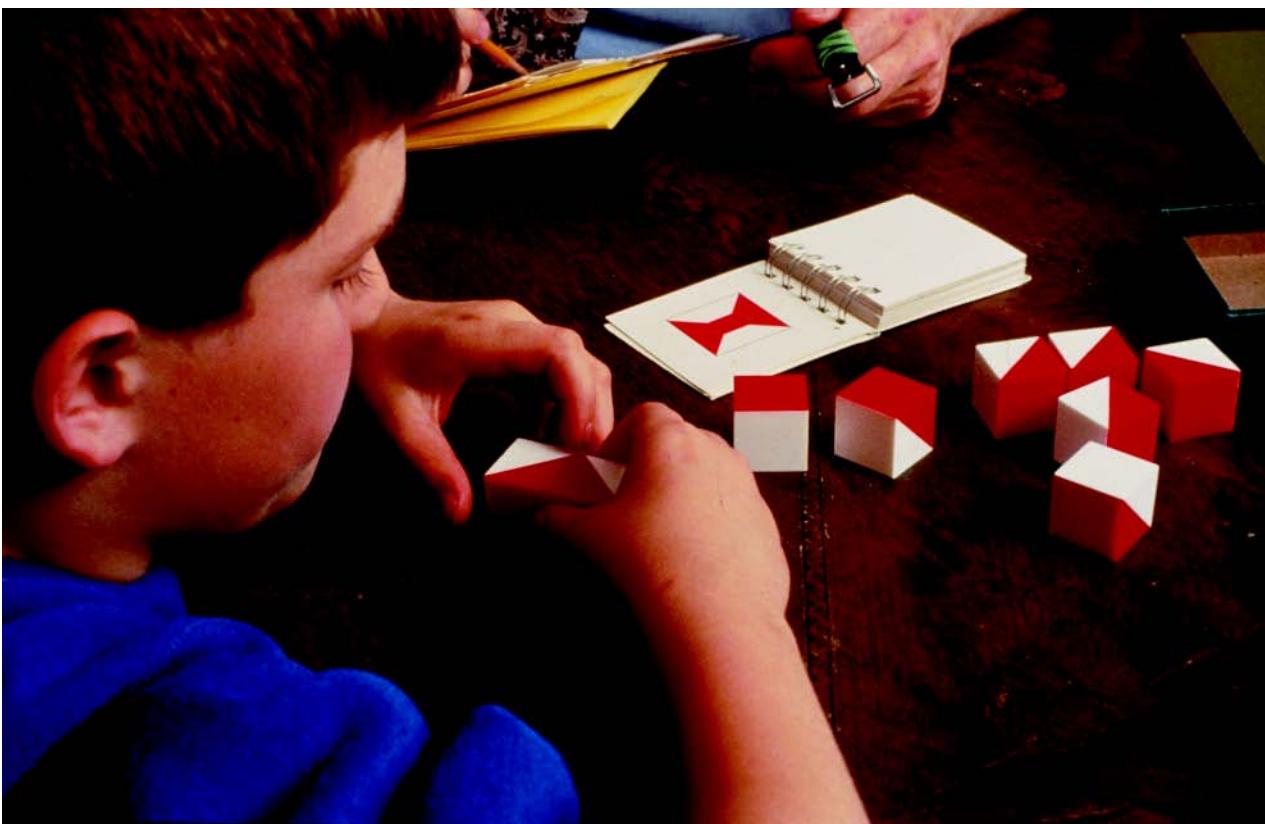
The Wechsler intelligence scale for children, often abbreviated as WISC, is an individually administered measure of intelligence intended for children aged 6 years to 16 years and 11 months.

### Purpose

The WISC is designed to measure human intelligence as reflected in both verbal and nonverbal (performance) abilities. David Wechsler, the author of the test, believed that intelligence has a global quality that reflects a variety of measurable skills. He also thought that it should be considered in the context of the person's overall personality.

The WISC is used in schools as part of placement evaluations for programs for gifted children and for children who are developmentally disabled.

In addition to its uses in intelligence assessment, the WISC is used in neuropsychological evaluation, specifically with regard to **brain** dysfunction. Large differences in verbal and nonverbal intelligence may indicate specific types of brain damage.



A five year old child being assessed for the Wechsler intelligence scale for children. (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by permission.)

The WISC is also used for other diagnostic purposes. IQ scores reported by the WISC can be used as part of the diagnostic criteria for **mental retardation** and specific learning disabilities. The test may also serve to better evaluate children with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and other behavior disorders.

### Precautions

The Wechsler intelligence scales are not considered adequate measures of extreme intelligence (IQ scores below 40 and above 160). The scoring process does not allow for scores outside this range for test takers at particular ages. Wechsler himself was even more conservative, stressing that his scales were not appropriate for people with IQs below 70 or above 130. Despite this restriction, many people use the WISC as a measure of the intelligence of gifted children, who typically score above 130. The age range for the WISC overlaps with that of the **Wechsler adult intelligence scale** (WAIS) for people between 16 and 17 years of age, but experts suggest that the WISC provides a better measure for persons in this age range.

Administration and scoring of the WISC require a competent administrator who must be able to interact and communicate with children of different ages and must know test protocol and specifications. WISC administrators must receive training in the proper use of the instrument and demonstrate awareness of all test guidelines.

### Description

The Wechsler **intelligence tests**, which include the WISC, the WAIS, and the WPPSI (Wechsler preschool and primary scale of intelligence), are the most widely used intelligence and neuropsychological assessments. The first version of the WISC was written in 1949 by David Wechsler. The newest version of the WISC is the WISC-III (Wechsler intelligence scale for children-Third Edition, most recently updated in 1991). Since Wechsler's death in 1981, the tests have been revised by their publisher, the Psychological Corporation.

The theoretical basis for the WISC and the other Wechsler scales is Wechsler's belief that human intelligence is a complex ability involving a variety of skills.

Because intelligence is multifaceted, Wechsler believed, a test measuring intelligence must reflect this diversity. After dividing intelligence into two major types of skills—verbal and performance—Wechsler used a statistical technique called factor analysis to determine which specific skills fit within these two major domains.

The current version of the WISC (the WISC-III) consists of 13 subtests and takes between 50 and 75 minutes to complete. The test is taken individually, with an administrator present to give instructions. Each subtest is given separately. There is some flexibility in the administration of the WISC—the administrator may end some subtests early if the test taker demonstrates mastery of specific tasks. Tasks on the WISC include questions of general knowledge, traditional arithmetic problems, English vocabulary, completion of mazes, and arrangements of blocks and pictures.

Children who take the WISC are scored by comparing their performance to other test takers of the same age. The WISC yields three IQ (intelligence quotient) scores, based on an average of 100, as well as subtest and index scores. WISC subtests measure specific verbal and performance abilities. The Wechsler scales were originally developed and later revised using standardization samples. The samples were meant to be representative of the United States population at the time of standardization.

The WISC is considered to be a valid and reliable measure of general intelligence in children. It is regularly used by researchers in many areas of psychology and child development as a general measure of intelligence. It has also been found to be a good measure of both fluid and crystallized intelligence. Fluid intelligence refers to inductive and deductive reasoning, skills that are thought to be largely influenced by neurological and biological factors. Fluid intelligence is measured by the performance subtests of the WISC. Crystallized intelligence refers to knowledge and skills that are primarily influenced by environmental and sociocultural factors. It is measured by the verbal subtests of the WISC. Wechsler himself did not divide overall intelligence into these two types. The definition of fluid and crystallized intelligence as two major categories of cognitive ability, however, has been a focus of research for many intelligence theorists.

### **Verbal IQ**

The child's verbal IQ score is derived from scores on six of the subtests: information, digit span, vocabulary, arithmetic, comprehension, and similarities.

The information subtest is a test of general knowledge, including questions about geography and literature. The digit span subtest requires the child to repeat strings of digits recited by the examiner. The vocabulary and arithmetic subtests are general measures of the child's vocabulary and arithmetic skills. The comprehension subtest asks the child to solve practical problems and explain the meaning of simple proverbs. The similarities subtest asks the child to describe the similarities between pairs of items, for example that apples and oranges are both fruits.

### **Performance IQ**

The child's performance IQ is derived from scores on the remaining seven subtests: picture completion, picture arrangement, block design, object assembly, coding, mazes, and symbol search.

In the picture completion subtest, the child is asked to complete pictures with missing elements. The picture arrangement subtest entails arranging pictures in order to tell a story. The block design subtest requires the child to use blocks to make specific designs. The object assembly subtest asks the child to put together pieces in such a way as to construct an entire object. In the coding subtest, the child makes pairs from a series of shapes or numbers. The mazes subtest asks the child to solve maze puzzles of increasing difficulty. The symbol search subtest requires the child to match symbols that appear in different groups. Scores on the performance subtests are based on both the speed of response and the number of correct answers.

### **Results**

WISC scores yield an overall intelligence quotient, called the full scale IQ, as well as a verbal IQ and a performance IQ. The three IQ scores are standardized in such a way that a score of 100 is considered average and serves as a benchmark for higher and lower scores. Verbal and performance IQ scores are based on scores on the 13 subtests.

The full scale IQ is derived from the child's scores on all of the subtests. It reflects both verbal IQ and performance IQ and is considered the single most reliable and valid score obtained by the WISC. When a child's verbal and performance IQ scores are far apart, however, the full scale IQ should be interpreted cautiously.

*See also* Stanford-Binet intelligence scales.

## KEY TERMS

**Crystallized intelligence**—A type of intelligence that reflects knowledge and skills influenced by a person's sociocultural environment.

**Factor analysis**—A statistical method for summarizing relationships between variables.

**Fluid intelligence**—A type of intelligence that involves inductive and deductive reasoning ability.

**Intelligence quotient (IQ)**—A measurement of intelligence obtained by dividing a person's mental age (determined by level of performance on an age-graded test) by his or her chronological age and multiplying by 100. For example, a ten-year-old with a mental age of thirteen would have an IQ of 130.

**Standardization**—The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing scoring norms.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Groth-Marnat, Gary. *Handbook of Psychological Assessment*. 3rd edition. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.

Kline, Paul. *The Handbook of Psychological Testing*. New York: Routledge, 1999.

McGrew, Kevin S., and Dawn P. Flanagan. *The Intelligence Test Desk Reference*. Needham Heights, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1998.

Ali Fahmy, Ph.D.

Wellbutrin see **Bupropion**

## Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome

### Definition

Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome is a severe memory disorder usually associated with chronic excessive alcohol consumption, although the direct cause is a deficiency in the B vitamin thiamin.

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (DSM-IV-TR), the professional handbook that aids clinicians in diagnosing patients' mental disorders, refers to Korsakoff syndrome as alcohol-induced persisting amnestic dis-

order and includes it under the category of substance-induced persisting **amnestic disorders**.

### Description

The disorder was first identified in the late nineteenth century. The first phase of the condition, called Wernicke's encephalopathy, was described by German neurologist and **psychiatrist** Karl Wernicke in 1881. He noted three key symptoms in three patients—two with alcoholism and one who had swallowed sulfuric acid. These patients suffered from mental confusion, eye **movement disorders**, and ataxia (poor motor coordination). A few years later, S. S. Korsakoff, a Russian psychiatrist, began publishing reports describing a syndrome of anterograde amnesia—an inability to form new memories—and confabulation in individuals with severe alcoholism or certain medical illnesses. (Confabulation refers to the practice of filling in gaps in memory by fabrication.) By 1900, researchers and clinicians studying alcoholism recognized a connection between the two conditions. The typical syndrome begins with acute Wernicke's encephalopathy, with Korsakoff syndrome emerging when the acute phase resolves. The symptoms of Wernicke's encephalopathy appear suddenly. The most prominent symptom initially is mental confusion including memory problems. On examination, patients have difficulty moving their eyes to follow a visual stimulus due to paralysis of the muscles controlling eye movements. For instance, patients may have trouble looking upward or to the side with one or both eyes. Problems maintaining balance while standing or walking, a condition known as ataxia, are frequently observed as well. If left untreated, most of these symptoms may resolve spontaneously, but the severe memory disorder characteristic of Korsakoff syndrome remains.

The typical person with Korsakoff syndrome appears fairly normal on first impression. Intelligence is intact, and individuals with the syndrome can carry on a conversation quite naturally. They are usually able to recall and talk about incidents that took place before the onset of the disorder and recognize family members and old friends without much difficulty. The ability to form new memories is nearly absent, however. In the course of conversation, people with Korsakoff syndrome may repeat comments or questions several times. They will fail to recognize people they met minutes before or greet a friend with excitement and surprise after a brief trip to another room. These are the characteristics of anterograde **amnesia**. Research shows that anterograde amnesia results from a failure of memory formation and storage. New information is processed normally, but almost immediately forgotten, never making it into the regions

of the **brain** where memories of the past are stored. People with Korsakoff syndrome thus have no memories of events that happened after the onset of the illness. Many previously stored memories are still available, however, explaining why individuals with Korsakoff syndrome can usually remember the distant past quite well.

## Causes and symptoms

### Causes

Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome is caused by thiamin deficiency. It is most commonly observed in people with alcoholism because heavy drinkers often eat poorly, and alcoholism interferes with absorption of nutrients from the digestive system. It can also occur in people who are malnourished for other reasons, including hyperemesis gravidarum (excessive vomiting during pregnancy) or an eating disorder. Thiamin helps produce the energy-containing molecules needed to make neurons function properly. Insufficient thiamin can lead to damage to or death of neurons.

Thiamin deficiency damages regions of the brain, particularly the thalamus and the mammillary bodies. The thalamus is a structure deep within the brain that serves many important functions. It is often called the major relay station of the brain, and many neurons make connections in the thalamus. The mammillary bodies are part of the hypothalamus, located just below the thalamus. The mammillary bodies receive many neural connections from another part of the brain called the hippocampus, which appears to be the primary part of the brain involved in the formation of memories. Neurons in the mammillary bodies make connections with the thalamus, which in turn makes connections with the cortex of the brain, where long-term memories are stored. This may explain why damage to the mammillary bodies and thalamus can lead to anterograde amnesia. Memories formed in the hippocampus are never stored since connections between hippocampus and cortex are disrupted.

Eye movement disorders observed in the acute phase of the condition are probably due to damage to other nearby brain regions that make connections to the nerves controlling eye muscles. These nerves emerge from the brainstem located right below the thalamus and mammillary bodies. Nerves involved in balance also make connections with other nerves in the brain stem, but a separate part of the brain called the cerebellum may also contribute to ataxia.

### Symptoms

Mental confusion, eye movement disturbances, and ataxia are the primary symptoms of Wernicke's encephalopathy—the first, acute stage of Wernicke-

Korsakoff syndrome. At first glance, confusion and ataxia may resemble the effects of severe alcohol intoxication, but they persist after intoxication wears off. Some patients with Wernicke's encephalopathy will recover completely without residual memory deficits, particularly if they are treated quickly with thiamin. Patients with this acute phase may not be recognized because they may not necessarily exhibit all three "classic" symptoms; therefore, their cases may be overlooked.

About 80–90% of alcoholics with Werneck's go on to develop Korsakoff's **psychosis**, the chronic stage of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome. This stage is distinguished by anterograde amnesia, and most untreated patients with Wernicke's encephalopathy will develop this severe memory disorder, which prevents them from forming lasting memories of events or information encountered after the onset of the initial symptoms. Symptoms of Korsakoff syndrome may also develop spontaneously in many patients who never show signs of Wernicke's encephalopathy. Once patients develop Korsakoff's amnesia, recovery is unlikely.

Loss of memory for past events is called retrograde amnesia. Many people with Korsakoff syndrome have some retrograde amnesia in addition to anterograde amnesia, particularly for events that occurred shortly before the onset of illness, but most can recall the distant past without difficulty.

Immediate memory is not affected. For instance, an individual with Korsakoff syndrome could repeat a sentence or string of numbers immediately after hearing them, although this information would likely be forgotten within half a minute. Preservation of immediate memory allows individuals with Korsakoff syndrome to interact with others and respond to questions. Implicit memory is also preserved, so people with Korsakoff syndrome can learn new motor skills or develop conditioned reactions to stimuli. For example, individuals who play computer games can show improved performance each time they play, even if they cannot explicitly remember having played the game before.

Confabulation is another striking feature of Korsakoff syndrome, although it is not always observed. Confabulation refers to falsification of memory. The individual appears to be making up stories to cover up for inability to remember. Confabulation often seems to involve a confusion of the past and present. For example, if patients with Korsakoff syndrome are asked why they are in the hospital, they may say they just had a baby, are recovering from pneumonia, undergoing medical tests, or even applying for a job.

Patients with Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome may also show signs of **apathy** and a lack of spontaneous behavior. Emotional expression may be lacking as well.

Interestingly, autopsies often reveal brain lesions characteristic of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome in alcoholic patients who showed general cognitive problems like those seen in **dementia**, but who never developed anterograde amnesia. These findings suggest that onset may be gradual in some patients, or, as some experts suspect, that there is a genetic component to susceptibility and manifestation of the disorder.

## Demographics

When **diagnosis** is based on postmortem findings, the estimated prevalence of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome is between 1 and 2% of the population. The classic presentation with acute onset of Wernicke's encephalopathy is fairly rare, about 0.05% of all hospital admissions, although this does not account for patients who do not seek medical attention. Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome usually follows many years of chronic alcoholism or malnutrition and is seldom seen among people under 20. Most patients are 40 years of age or older. The disorder is apparently more common in alcoholic individuals who are particularly vulnerable to malnutrition such as indigent or homeless people.

## Diagnosis

Wernicke's encephalopathy is diagnosed when patients seek medical attention and have the classic trio of signs: mental confusion, eye movement disorders, and ataxia, although not every patient will exhibit all three signs. The diagnosis of Korsakoff syndrome is given when anterograde amnesia is present in an individual with a history of chronic, heavy drinking or malnutrition. When Korsakoff syndrome follows Wernicke's encephalopathy, the entire Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome diagnosis is appropriate. The diagnosis is supported by neuroimaging or autopsy findings showing degeneration of the thalamus and mammillary bodies and loss of brain volume in the area surrounding the fourth ventricle—a fluid-filled cavity near the brain stem.

Although the *DSM-IV-TR* criteria for alcohol-induced persisting amnestic disorder apply to most people with Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, there are some differences between the two diagnoses. Despite research findings suggesting that severe amnesia is not a necessary symptom of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, the *DSM-IV-TR* requires the presence of either anterograde or ret-

rograde amnesia for a diagnosis of alcohol-induced persisting amnestic disorder. One additional cognitive symptom is also required. Symptoms listed in the *DSM-IV-TR* include language disturbance (aphasia), inability to carry out motor activities (apraxia), inability to recognize objects (agnosia), or deficits in planning, initiation, organization, and abstraction (executive functions). Individuals with Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome frequently demonstrate problems with executive functions that contribute to the symptoms of confabulation and apathy. Aphasia, apraxia, and agnosia are not common signs of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome.

The *DSM-IV-TR* also requires that memory impairment must significantly impair a person's ability to perform normal activities and functions, and it must represent a decline from a previous level of functioning. Amnesia cannot occur exclusively during states of **delirium**, alcohol intoxication, or withdrawal, or be exclusively associated with dementia. Both of the these requirements are consistent with the usual presentation of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome.

Finally, the *DSM-IV-TR* requires evidence that amnesia is caused by use of alcohol. Such evidence can include an extensive history of heavy drinking; or physical examination or laboratory findings revealing other signs of heavy alcohol use, such as abnormal liver function tests. Despite this *DSM-IV-TR* requirement, Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome can occur in the absence of heavy alcohol use. Emergence of the disorder in people without alcoholism is much less common today than it was in the past, however, since vitamins are now added to many foods. In practice, most people who show the hallmark symptoms of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome also qualify for the *DSM-IV-TR* diagnosis.

## Treatments

### Nutritional

Individuals with signs of Wernicke's encephalopathy should be treated with thiamin immediately. In many cases, prompt administration of thiamin reverses the symptoms and prevents amnesia from developing. Thiamin can be administered intravenously or directly into the digestive system. Unfortunately, thiamin is less effective in the chronic phase of the condition. Based on autopsy findings suggesting the presence of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome in people with milder cognitive problems who do not show the classic signs of the disorder, researchers have examined the usefulness of thiamin treatment in people with alcohol dependence who are at risk of developing the syndrome. Results suggest that thiamin treatment improves performance

on memory tests in this group, and that higher thiamin doses are associated with better performance. These findings suggest that thiamin treatment can help prevent Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome in heavy drinkers. Other nutritional treatments may include use of magnesium sulfate to address magnesium deficits common in people with alcoholism, and potassium acid phosphate to address potassium deficiencies.

### **Medication**

Recent reports suggest that **donepezil** and **rivastigmine**, drugs used to treat **Alzheimer's disease**, may improve memory in patients with Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome. Both drugs affect the action of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine, which is important for the formation of memories. Patients treated with these drugs showed improvements on memory tests and were more able to recognize hospital staff and family members. Although improvements appear to be rather modest, these drugs may be useful for patients who do not respond to thiamin. **Antidepressants** that increase levels of serotonin may also be helpful, although the reasons why are not clear since these drugs are not effective with other memory disorders.

### **Conditioning**

The fact that implicit memory is not affected by Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome has led some researchers to explore the use of classical conditioning procedures in helping patients to remember specific people. In classical conditioning, animals and people learn to associate a stimulus with an outcome. The most famous example is the pairing of a ringing bell with food. Dogs naturally salivate when given food. In a famous experiment, Ivan Pavlov rang a bell immediately before serving food to dogs. After doing this repeatedly, Pavlov found that the dogs salivated upon hearing the bell ring even when the food was not presented. This form of learning does not rely on the hippocampus and cortex but appears to involve neurons in other parts of the brain. Patients with Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome who are given specific rewards for correctly choosing a picture of a face that matches a face they have seen previously are more able to choose the correct face than those who do not receive the rewards. Although these individuals do not explicitly remember the face they saw previously, they are still able to make the correct choice. Working with patients in this way could enable them to recognize familiar people and differentiate them from strangers.

### **Prognosis**

The prognosis for full recovery from Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome is poor. Once chronic Korsakoff's

## **KEY TERMS**

**Anterograde amnesia**—Amnesia for events that occurred after a physical injury or emotional trauma but before the present moment.

**Apathy**—Lack of feelings or emotions.

**Cognitive**—Pertaining to the mental processes of memory, perception, judgment, and reasoning.

**Encephalopathy**—Brain disease that causes damage or degeneration.

**Explicit memory**—Consciously recalled memory for facts or events.

**Implicit memory**—Unconsciously recalled memory for skills, procedures, or associations.

**Neurons**—Nerve cells in the brain that produce nerve impulses.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Retrograde amnesia**—Amnesia for events that occurred before a traumatic injury.

**Serotonin**—A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**Syndrome**—A group of symptoms that together characterize a disease or disorder.

amnesia ensues, approximately 80% of patients will never fully recover the ability to learn and remember new information. Because they cannot learn from experience, individuals with Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome almost always require some form of custodial care. They are usually unable to work, although some can perform simple tasks they learned prior to onset of the condition if closely supervised. The mortality rate is between 10 and 20%, usually from liver failure or infection, but sometimes as a result of the irreversible effects of prolonged thiamin deficiency.

### **Prevention**

Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome can be prevented with a nutritious diet containing sufficient thiamin. Because severe chronic alcoholism is the most common cause of thiamin deficiency, treatment of alcohol dependence is extremely important. To prevent

Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome among people who are unable to stop drinking or among particularly vulnerable individuals like homeless drinkers, some researchers and clinicians have advocated supplementing alcoholic beverages with thiamin.

*See also* Alcohol and related disorders; Brain; Dementia; Executive function.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. 4th ed., Text rev. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Hochhalter, Angela K., and others. "Using Animal Models to Address the Memory Deficits of Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome." *Animal Research in Human Health: Advancing Human Welfare Through Behavioral Science*, eds. Marilyn E. Carroll and J. Bruce Overmier. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2001.
- Mesulam, M.-Marsel. *Principles of Behavioral and Cognitive Neurology*. 2nd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000.
- Nolte, John. *The Human Brain: An Introduction to Its Functional Anatomy*. 5th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2002.
- Walsh, Kevin, and David Darby. *Neuropsychology: A Clinical Approach*. 4th ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 1999.

### PERIODICALS

- Ambrose, Margaret L., Stephen C. Bowden, and Greg Whelen. "Thiamin Treatment and Working Memory Function of Alcohol-dependent People: Preliminary Findings." *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research* 25.1 (2001): 112–16.
- Angunawela, Indira I., and Andrew Barker. "Anticholinesterase Drugs for Alcoholic Korsakoff Syndrome." *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 16 (2001): 338–39.
- Cochrane, M., and others. "Acetylcholinesterase Inhibitors for the Treatment of Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome: Three Further Cases Show Response to Donepezil." *Alcohol and Alcoholism* 40 (2005): 151–54.
- Harding, Antony, and others. "Degeneration of Anterior Thalamic Nuclei Differentiates Alcoholics with Amnesia." *Brain* 123 (2000): 141–54.
- Iga, Jun-Ichi, and others. "A Case of Korsakoff's Syndrome Improved by High Doses of Donepezil." *Alcohol and Alcoholism* 36.6 (2001): 553–55.

### ORGANIZATIONS

- Family Caregiver Alliance. 690 Market Street, Suite 600, San Francisco, CA 94104. <<http://www.caregiver.org/>>.
- Medical Council on Alcohol. 3 St. Andrew's Place, Regent's Park, London, UK NW1 4LB. <<http://www.medicalcouncil.alcol.demon.co.uk>>.
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA). Willco Building, 6000 Executive Boulevard, Bethesda, MD 20892. <<http://www.niaaa.nih.gov>>.

## OTHER

- DeAngelo, Alan, MD, and Alan Halliday, MD. "Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome." 2005. <<http://www.emedicine.com/med/topic2405.htm>>.
- Martin, Peter R., Charles K. Singleton, and Susanne Hiller-Sturmhoefel. National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. "The Role of Thiamine Deficiency in Alcoholic Brain Disease." 2006. <<http://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/arh27-2/134-142.htm>>.
- Memory Loss and the Brain Newsletter, Memory Disorders Project, Rutgers University, 197 University Avenue, Newark, NJ 07102 <<http://www.memorylossonline.com/>>.
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. "Alcohol's Damaging Effects on the Brain." <<http://pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/aa63/aa63.htm>>.
- National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. "Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome Information Page." <[http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/wernicke\\_korsakoff/wernicke-korsakoff.htm](http://www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/wernicke_korsakoff/wernicke-korsakoff.htm)>.

Danielle Barry, MS  
Emily Jane Willingham, PhD

## Wide range achievement test

### Definition

Wide range achievement test, 3rd ed. or WRAT-3 is a screening test that can be administered to determine if a more comprehensive achievement test is needed. Achievement tests refer to skills that individuals learn through direct instruction or **intervention**.

### Purpose

The WRAT-3 measures basic skills in reading, arithmetic, and spelling. The test covers ages from 5–75 years old and takes approximately 30 minutes to administer.

### Precautions

Although screening instruments may save time, these instruments can sometimes have misleading results. For instance, the scores may overestimate or underestimate a person's skills or the test does not measure other important achievement abilities. To obtain a more in-depth result of an examinee's abilities, a more comprehensive achievement test must be administered. For example, the WRAT-3 has no assessment of fundamental skills such as reading comprehension, writing abilities, and applying mathematical concepts to real-life situations. Finally, psychometric testing requires a clinically trained examiner. Therefore, the

test should only be administered and interpreted by a trained examiner.

## Description

The WRAT-3 has two alternative testing forms (tan and blue). One form is administered with the second form available if needed. Both testing forms (both the tan and blue forms) can be administered. When this is done, a combined score is obtained. Each testing form consists of one reading test, one arithmetic test, and one spelling test. The reading test is administered individually, but the other two tests may be given in groups of up to five people. The reading test consists of 15 letters and 42 individual words that the examinee is asked to name or pronounce. The spelling test consists of writing one's name, 13 letters, and up to 40 words dictated to the examinee and used in a sentence. The spelling items increase with difficulty. Finally, the arithmetic test consists of two parts. Part I requires counting, reading number symbols, and solving simple arithmetic problems that are verbally presented to the examinee. Part II consists of using paper and a pencil to calculate up to 40 arithmetic problems within 15 minutes. These arithmetic problems are presented in a test booklet.

## Results

Scoring consists of a 1 for a correct answer and a 0 for an incorrect answer. The raw scores are converted to standard scores. These are scores that allow the examiner to compare the individual's score to other people who have taken the test. Additionally, by converting raw scores to standard scores the examiner has uniform scores and can more easily compare an individual's performance on one test with the individual's performance on another test. The average score for each test of the WRAT-3 is 100. An examiner can also obtain grade-equivalent scores, percentile ranks, and normal curve equivalents. A poor performance in any of the three areas assessed by this instrument can indicate the need for further testing.

## KEY TERMS

**Normal curve equivalents**—Standard scores with an average of 100. The normal curve equivalents divide the normal or bell-shaped curve into 100 equal parts. As a result, those scores can be used for statistical analysis because they can be added, subtracted, multiplied and divided.

**Percentile ranks**—The point at which a given percentage of people fall at or below the individual's test score being calculated. For example, if a person's test score was at the 60th percentile, 40% of other test takers received a higher score, while 60% received a score that was at or below that of the test taker.

**Psychometric**—Pertaining to testing and measurement of mental or psychological abilities. Psychometric tests convert an individual's psychological traits and attributes into a numerical estimation or evaluation.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Kaufman, Alan, S., and Elizabeth O. Lichtenberger. *Assessing Adolescent and Adult Intelligence*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, 2001.
- Sattler, Jerome M. "Assessment of Academic Achievement." In *Assessment of Children: Behavioral and Clinical Applications*. 4th ed. San Diego: Jerome M. Sattler, Publisher, Inc., 2002.
- Wilkinson, G. S. *Wide Range Achievement Test—Revision 3*. Wilmington, DE: Jastak Association, 1993.

Keith Beard, Psy.D.

WISC see **Wechsler intelligence scale for children**







# Y

## Yoga

### Definition

Yoga is an ancient system of breathing practices, physical exercises and postures, and **meditation** intended to integrate the practitioner's body, mind, and spirit. It originated in India several thousand years ago, and its principles were first written down by a scholar named Patanjali in the second century B.C. The word *yoga* comes from a Sanskrit word, *yukti*, and means "union" or, "yoke." The various physical and mental disciplines of yoga were seen as a method for individuals to attain union with the divine.

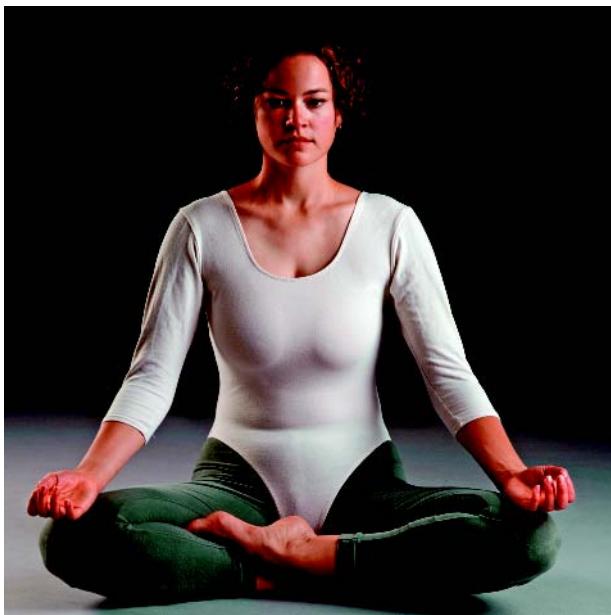
In the contemporary West, however, yoga is more often regarded as a beneficial form of physical exercise than as a philosophy or total way of life. As of 2002, more than 6 million people in the United States were practicing some form of yoga, with 1.7 million claiming to practice it regularly.

### Purpose

Yoga has been recommended as an adjunct to **psychotherapy** and standard medical treatments for a number of reasons. Its integration of the mental, physical, and spiritual dimensions of human life is helpful to patients struggling with distorted cognitions or pain syndromes. The stretching, bending, and balancing involved in the asanas (physical postures that are part of a yoga practice) help to align the head and spinal column; stimulate the circulatory system, endocrine glands, and other organs; and keep muscles and joints strong and flexible. Yoga programs have been shown to reduce the risk of heart disease by lowering blood pressure and **anxiety** levels. The breath control exercises, known as *pranayama*, emphasize slow and deep abdominal breathing. They benefit the respiratory system, help to induce a sense of relaxation, and are useful in pain management. The meditation that is an integral part of classical yoga practice has been

shown to strengthen the human immune system. Although Western medical researchers have been studying yoga only since the 1970s, **clinical trials** in the United States have demonstrated its effectiveness in treating asthma, osteoarthritis, heart disease, stress-related illnesses, high blood pressure, anxiety, and mood disorders. Other reports indicate that yoga merits further research in the treatment of **obsessive-compulsive disorder** (OCD) and **substance abuse**. Studies done in Germany have focused on the psychological benefits of yoga. One clinical trial done in 1994 at the University of Wurzburg found that the volunteer subjects who had practiced yoga scored higher in life satisfaction, with lower levels of irritability and psychosomatic complaints, than the control group.

One of the advantages of yoga as a complementary therapy is its adaptability to patients with a wide variety of physical and psychiatric conditions. There are a number of different schools of yoga—over 40, according to one expert in the field—and even within a particular school or tradition, the asanas and breathing exercises can be tailored to the patient's needs. One can find special yoga courses for children; for people over 50; for people with fibromyalgia, arthritis, or back problems; for cancer patients; and for people struggling with overweight. Although most people who take up yoga attend classes, it is possible to learn the basic postures and breathing techniques at home from beginners' manuals or videotapes. Patients who feel self-conscious about exercising in the presence of others may find yoga appealing for this reason. The American Yoga Association has produced a manual and videotape for beginners, as well as a book called *The American Yoga Association's Easy Does It Yoga* for persons with physical limitations. In addition, yoga does not require expensive equipment or special courts, tracks, or playing fields. An area of floor space about 6 ft by 8 ft, a so-called "sticky mat" to keep the feet from slipping, and loose clothing that allows the wearer to move freely are all that is needed.



**Female practicing a yoga pose (dhyanasana).** (Craig Lovell/Eagle Visions Photography/Alamy)

### Precautions

Patients with a history of heart disease; severe back injuries; inner ear problems or other difficulties with balance; or recent surgery should consult a physician before beginning yoga. Pregnant women are usually advised to modify their yoga practice during the first trimester.

People diagnosed with a dissociative disorder should not attempt advanced forms of pranayama (yogic breathing) without the supervision of an experienced teacher. Some yogic breathing exercises may trigger symptoms of derealization or **depersonalization** in these patients.

Yoga should not be practiced on a full stomach. It is best to wait at least two hours after a meal before beginning one's yoga practice. In addition, while yoga can be practiced outdoors, it should not be done in direct sunlight.

One additional precaution is often necessary for Westerners. Yoga is not a competitive sport, and a "good" practice is defined as whatever one's body and mind are capable of giving on a specific day. Westerners are, however, accustomed to pushing themselves hard, comparing their performances to those of others, and assuming that exercise is not beneficial unless it hurts—an attitude summed up in the phrase "no pain, no gain." Yoga teaches a gentle and accepting attitude toward one's body rather than a punishing or perfectionistic approach. A person should go into the stretches

and poses gradually, not forcibly or violently. Stretching should not be done past the point of mild discomfort, which is normal for beginners; frank pain is a warning that the body is not properly aligned in the pose or that the joints are being overstressed. Most people beginning yoga will experience measurable progress in their strength and flexibility after a week or two of daily practice.

### Description

There are six major branches of yoga: hatha, raja, karma, bhakti, jnana, and tantra yoga. Hatha yoga, the type most familiar to Westerners, will be discussed more fully in the following paragraph. Raja yoga is a spiritual path of self-renunciation and simplicity; karma yoga emphasizes selfless work as a service to others. Bhakti yoga is the path of cultivating an open heart and single-minded love of God. Jnana yoga is the sage or philosopher's approach; it cultivates wisdom and discernment, and is considered the most difficult type of yoga. Tantra yoga emphasizes transcending the self through religious rituals, including sacred sexuality.

Hatha yoga is the best-known form of yoga in the West because it is often taught as a form of physical therapy. A typical hatha yoga practice consists of a sequence of asanas, or physical poses, designed to exercise all parts of the body in the course of the practice. The asanas incorporate three basic types of movement: forward bends, backward bends, and twists. Practitioners of hatha yoga have over 200 asanas to choose from in creating a sequence for practice. The postures have traditional Indian names, such as Eagle Pose, Half Moon Pose, or Mountain Pose. There are steps for entering and leaving the pose, and the student is taught to concentrate on proper form and alignment. The pose is held for a period of time (usually 10–20 seconds), during which the practitioner concentrates on breathing correctly. Mental focus and discipline is necessary in order to maintain one's poise and balance in the asana. At the close of the practice, most students of yoga rest in a position that allows for a period of meditation. Most yoga practices take about an hour, although some are as short as 20 minutes.

There are a number of different styles of hatha yoga taught in the United States, the best known being Iyengar, Bikram, Kripalu, and ashtanga yoga. Iyengar yoga, which was developed by B.K.S. Iyengar, emphasizes attention to the details of a pose and the use of such props as blocks and belts to help students gain flexibility. Bikram yoga, taught on the West Coast by Bikram Choudhury, is practiced in heated rooms intended to make participants sweat freely as they

warm and stretch their joints and muscles. Kripalu yoga, sometimes called the yoga of consciousness, emphasizes breathing exercises and the proper coordination of breath and movement. It also teaches awareness of one's psychological and emotional reactions to the various poses and movements of the body. Ashtanga yoga, developed by K. Pattabhi Jois, is the basis of so-called power yoga. Ashtanga yoga is a physically demanding workout that is not suitable for beginners.

### Preparation

Good preparation for yoga requires spiritual and mental readiness as well as appropriate clothing and a suitable space. Many practitioners of yoga begin their practice with simple breathing exercises and stretches intended to clear the mind as well as open up the lungs.

Clothing should be comfortable and allow free movement. Some women prefer to practice in a dancer's leotard or similar garment made of stretchy fabric, but a simple tunic or beach cover-up worn over a pair of running shorts works just as well. Brassieres should not be worn during practice because they tend to restrict breathing. Men often practice in swim trunks or running shorts. Both men and women can use an oversize men's cotton T-shirt as a practice garment—these are inexpensive, easy to wash, and nonbinding. The feet are bare.

### Aftercare

As was mentioned earlier, traditional hatha yoga practice ends the sequence of asanas with a pose in which meditation is possible, either sitting or lying flat on the back. Other than quiet resting, no particular aftercare is necessary.

### Risks

Most reported injuries in yoga result from lack of concentration or attempts to perform difficult poses without working up to them. People who have consulted a physician before starting yoga and practice under the supervision of an experienced teacher are unlikely to suffer serious injury.

### Normal results

Normal results following yoga practice are improved posture, lowered blood pressure, increased flexibility in the joints, higher energy levels, and a sense of relaxation.

### Abnormal results

Abnormal physical results would include serious injuries to joints or muscles; abnormal psychological results would include dissociative episodes.

## KEY TERMS

**Asana**—The Indian term for the poses or postures that are done in sequence during hatha yoga practice.

**Hatha yoga**—The form of yoga most familiar to Westerners; often practiced as a form of physical therapy.

**Pranayama**—The breathing exercises that accompany the asanas in hatha yoga.

**Yogi (feminine, yogini)**—A person who is a respected expert in or teacher of yoga.

## Resources

### BOOKS

Choudhury, Bikram, with Bonnie Jones Reynolds. *Bikram's Beginning Yoga Class*. New York: Jeremy P. Tarcher/Perigee, 1978.

Feuerstein, Georg, and Stephan Bodian, eds. *Living Yoga: A Comprehensive Guide for Daily Life*. New York: Jeremy P. Tarcher/Perigee, 1993.

Pelletier, Kenneth R., MD. "Ayurvedic Medicine and Yoga: From Buddha to the Millennium." Chapter 10 in *The Best Alternative Medicine*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2002.

### PERIODICALS

Janakiramaiah, N., B. N. Gangadhar, P. J. Naga Venkatesha Murthy, and others. "Antidepressant Efficacy of Sudarshan Kriya Yoga (SKY) in Melancholia: A Randomized Comparison with Electroconvulsive Therapy (ECT) and Imipramine." *Journal of Affective Disorders* 57 (January-March 2000): 255-259.

Shaffer, H. J., T. A. LaSalvia, and J. P. Stein. "Comparing Hatha Yoga with Dynamic Group Psychotherapy for Enhancing Methadone Maintenance Treatment: A Randomized Clinical Trial." *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine* 3 (July 1997): 57-66.

Shannahoff-Khalsa, D. S., and L. R. Beckett. "Clinical Case Report: Efficacy of Yogic Techniques in the Treatment of Obsessive-Compulsive Disorders." *International Journal of Neuroscience* 85 (March 1996): 1-17.

### ORGANIZATIONS

American Yoga Association. <[www.americanyogaassociation.org](http://www.americanyogaassociation.org)>.

International Association of Yoga Therapists (IAYT). 4150 Tivoli Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90066.

Yoga Research and Education Center (YREC). 2400A County Center Drive, Santa Rosa, CA 95403. (707) 566-0000. <[www.yrec.org](http://www.yrec.org)>.

Rebecca J. Frey, Ph.D.



# Z

## Zaleplon

### Definition

Zaleplon is classified as a hypnotic drug. These drugs help people sleep. Zaleplon is available in the United States as the brand name drug Sonata.

### Purpose

Zaleplon is a drug that is used to treat short-term **insomnia**.

### Description

The Food and Drug Administration of the United States approved Zaleplon in 1999 to treat short-term sleep problems. Zaleplon is thought to act by mimicking a chemical in the **brain** that helps to facilitate sleep. It is different from other sleeping pills in that it begins to work almost immediately and its effects are rather short-lived (a few hours). These properties make it beneficial both for people who have trouble falling asleep at bedtime and for people who awaken in the middle of the night and have trouble falling back to sleep. Zaleplon may be taken in the middle of the night so long as the person can sleep at least four more hours before having to awaken.

Zaleplon is available as capsules. The drug is broken down by the liver. It is a controlled substance and can be habit-forming.

### Recommended dosage

The usual dose of zaleplon for adults is 5–20 mg. For healthy adults, 10 mg is a common dosage. However, people over age 65, small adults with low body weight, and people with serious health problems (especially liver disease) should take a dose at the low end of this range (usually 5 mg). Zaleplon is taken immediately before bedtime. It usually takes only about 30 minutes for the sleep-inducing actions of zaleplon to be felt, and sleep-facilitating effects appear to last only a few hours.

If zaleplon is taken with a meal, it will take longer to work. For the fastest sleep onset, it should be taken on an empty stomach. The maximum dose for one day is 20 mg. Under no circumstances should a person take more than 20 mg in one day.

### Precautions

Zaleplon can be habit-forming and should be taken exactly as directed by a physician. A person who forgets a dose of zaleplon should skip the dose and take the next dose at the regularly scheduled time.

Because zaleplon is used to help people fall asleep, it should not be used with other drugs (over-the-counter or prescription) that also cause drowsiness. Zaleplon should be used only with close physician supervision in people with liver disease and in the elderly, because these individuals are especially sensitive to the sedative properties of zaleplon. Zaleplon should not be used before driving, operating machinery, or performing activities that require mental alertness. People with a history of drug **abuse**, psychiatric disorders, or **depression** should be carefully monitored when using zaleplon since zaleplon may worsen symptoms of some psychiatric disorders and can become a drug of abuse.

If zaleplon is needed for more than seven to ten days, patients should be reevaluated by a physician to determine if another disorder is causing their difficulty sleeping. When zaleplon or other sleeping pills are used every night for more than a few weeks, they begin to lose their effectiveness and/or people may become dependent upon them to fall asleep. Zaleplon can be addictive. People using zaleplon should not stop taking the drug suddenly because withdrawal symptoms, including sleep disturbances, may occur even if zaleplon has been used only for a short time.

### Side effects

Some sleeping pills such as zaleplon can cause aggressiveness, agitation, **hallucinations**, and **amnesia**.

## KEY TERMS

**Amnesia**—A general medical term for loss of memory that is not due to ordinary forgetfulness. Amnesia can be caused by head injuries, brain disease, or epilepsy as well as by dissociation.

**Antidepressant**—A medication used to treat the symptoms of depression.

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders as well.

**Hypnotic**—A type of medication that induces sleep.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals approximately 0.035 ounces.

**Tuberculosis**—An infection caused by the bacteria *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* that usually affects the lungs. Individuals with tuberculosis may have nighttime sweating, fever, weight loss, cough, and may spit up blood and mucus.

(memory problems). A patient experiencing these side effects should call a physician immediately. A physician should also be called immediately if a person taking zaleplon develops a fast or irregular heartbeat, chest pains, skin rash, or itching.

The most common side effects of zaleplon are less serious and include dizziness, drowsiness, impaired coordination, upset stomach, nausea, headache, dry mouth, and muscle aches. Other side effects that may occur include: fever, amnesia, tremor, or eye pain. Many side effects appear worse at higher doses, so it is important to use the lowest dose that will induce sleep.

### Interactions

Any drug that causes drowsiness may lead to substantially decreased mental alertness and impaired motor skills when taken with zaleplon. Some examples include alcohol, **antidepressants** such as **imipramine** or **paroxetine**, antipsychotics like **thioridazine**, and some antihistamines.

Because zaleplon is broken down by the liver, it may interact with other drugs also broken down by the liver. For example, the drug rifampin, which is used to treat tuberculosis, may cause zaleplon to be less effective.

Alternatively, cimetidine (Tagamet), a drug commonly used to treat heartburn, may cause people to be more sensitive to zaleplon.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*, 6th ed. St. Louis: A Wolter Kluwer Company, 2002.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

#### PERIODICALS

Bain, Kevin T. "Management of Chronic Insomnia in Elderly Persons." *American Journal of Geriatric Pharmacotherapy* 4.2 (June 2006): 168–92.

Conn, David K. and Robert Madan. "Use of Sleep-Promoting Medications in Nursing Home Residents: Risks versus Benefits." *Drugs and Aging* 23.4 (2006): 271–87.

Glass, Jennifer, and others. "Sedative Hypnotics in Older People with Insomnia: Meta-Analysis of Risks and Benefits." *British Medical Journal* 331.7526 (Nov. 2005): 1–7.

McCall, W. "Diagnosis and Management of Insomnia in Older People." *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society* 53.7 (July 2005): S272–S277.

Rosenberg, Russell P. "Sleep Maintenance Insomnia: Strengths and Weaknesses of Current Pharmacologic Therapies." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.1 (Jan.–Mar. 2006): 49–56.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph., PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

## Ziprasidone

### Definition

Ziprasidone is an atypical antipsychotic drug used to treat **schizophrenia**. It is available with a prescription under the brand name Geodon.

### Purpose

Ziprasidone is in a class of drugs called antipsychotics. It is used to control symptoms of schizophrenia. Ziprasidone is one of the newer antipsychotic drugs—often called atypical antipsychotics—that is less likely to cause significant adverse side effects than conventional antipsychotic medications.

### Description

The Food and Drug Administration of the United States approved ziprasidone for treatment of schizophrenia in 2001. In people with schizophrenia, chemical

systems in the **brain** are out of balance. Mental well-being is partially related to maintaining a balance between naturally occurring chemicals called **neurotransmitters**. Ziprasidone is thought to modify the actions of several neurotransmitters and in this way restore appropriate function to the chemical systems.

Recently, the effectiveness of ziprasidone was evaluated in the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of **Intervention** Effectiveness (CATIE) Schizophrenia Study. This study evaluated the effectiveness and side effects of several atypical antipsychotics, including ziprasidone, in comparison to a conventional antipsychotic drug for the treatment of schizophrenia. In Phase 1 of the study it was found that the newer antipsychotic medications—including ziprasidone—were not significantly more effective than the less expensive, conventional antipsychotic medications. In addition, only 23% of participants taking ziprasidone in Phase 1 of the study were able to continue throughout the entire 18 months. Participants who stopped taking their antipsychotic medication in Phase 1 because it was not adequately controlling their symptoms were more likely to stay on their medication if they were switched to **olanzapine** or **risperidone** rather ziprasidone. There was no difference between the four medications tested in Phase 2, however, for participants who had stopped taking their Phase 1 medication because they experienced adverse side effects.

The CATIE study results showed that **clozapine** is often a good choice of medication for patients who did not respond well to other antipsychotic medications. For patients whose symptoms are not well-controlled on clozapine, however, olanzapine and risperidone tend to be more effective than ziprasidone. Although some of the atypical antipsychotics had significant side effects, including weight gain and metabolic problems, ziprasidone consistently resulted in weight loss and improvement of metabolic disorders. However, of the drugs tested in the CATIE study, risperidone had the least adverse side effects.

### Recommended dosage

The dosage of ziprasidone varies widely from one individual to another. A common initially dosage is 20 mg of ziprasidone taken twice daily. The dosage is gradually increased until symptoms of schizophrenia subside. Dosages of up to 100 mg may be taken twice daily. Ziprasidone should be taken with food.

### Precautions

Ziprasidone may alter the rhythm of the heart. Because of the risk of irregular heartbeats or even

death, it should not be taken by people with a history of irregular or prolonged heart rhythms (long QT syndrome), those with heart failure, or individuals who have recently had a heart attack. People with a history of heart disease should discuss the risks and benefits of treatment with their doctor before starting ziprasidone. Ziprasidone may lower blood pressure to dangerously low levels, causing people to faint. It should not be taken by people who have slow heartbeats and those with low levels of potassium or magnesium in their blood.

Individuals with a history of seizure, even seizure brought on by drug or alcohol **abuse**, should use ziprasidone cautiously and with close physician supervision, because it may increase the tendency to have **seizures**.

Ziprasidone may increase body temperatures to dangerously high levels. People who exercise strenuously, those exposed to extreme heat, individuals taking drugs with anticholinergic effects (this includes many common **antidepressants**), and persons prone to dehydration, should use the drug cautiously and be alert to dehydration-related side effects. Elderly persons with increased risk of developing pneumonia should be carefully monitored while taking ziprasidone. Because there is a high incidence of **suicide** in all patients with psychotic illnesses, people using ziprasidone should be observed carefully for signs of suicidal behavior. Women who are pregnant or breastfeeding should not take ziprasidone.

### Side effects

The most common reason that ziprasidone is stopped is the development of a rash. Another common side effect is drowsiness. This side effect is usually worse when starting the drug and becomes less severe with continued use. People performing tasks that require mental alertness such as driving or operating machinery should refrain from doing so until they see how the drug affects them. Other side effects that may occur are abnormal, involuntary twitching, (5%), and respiratory disorders (8%). Nausea, constipation, indigestion, and dizziness due to low blood pressure occur in more than 5% of people taking ziprasidone.

Other, less common, side effects are rapid heartbeats, low blood pressure, agitation, tremor, confusion, **amnesia**, dry mouth, increased salivation, joint pains, and abnormal vision.

The incidence of some adverse effects such as low blood pressure, anorexia, abnormal involuntary movements, sleepiness, tremor, cold symptoms, rash,

## KEY TERMS

**Anticholinergic**—Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical called acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**Atypical antipsychotic**—A newer antipsychotic drug that is less likely to cause significant adverse side effects than conventional antipsychotic medications. Atypical antipsychotics are also called novel antipsychotics or second-generation antipsychotics.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

**Neurotransmitter**—A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**Schizophrenia**—A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

abnormal vision, dry mouth or increased salivation appears to increase at higher dosages.

People taking ziprasidone should alert their health care provider immediately if they develop a rash or hives since this could indicate a potentially serious adverse reaction. Patients should also notify their health care provider right away if they experience any abnormal involuntary muscle movements. People who think they may be experiencing side effects from this or any other medication should tell their physicians.

### Interactions

Ziprasidone interacts with many other drugs. It is a good idea to review with a physician or pharmacist all medications being taken before starting this drug. Since ziprasidone may alter the rhythm of the heart, people who are taking drugs such as quinidine, dofetilide, **pimozide**, sotalol, erythromycin, **thioridazine**, moxifloxacin, and sparfloxacin should not take it. These drugs may also affect properties of the heart and taken with ziprasidone increase the risk of irregular heart rhythms and other cardiac problems. Because ziprasidone causes sleepiness, it should be used spar-

ingly and with care with other drugs that also have a tendency to make people drowsy such as antidepressants, antihistamines, some pain relievers, and alcohol. Ziprasidone may lower blood pressure to the point at which people feel dizzy or faint. People taking medication to regulate their blood pressure should have their blood pressure monitored and treatment modified as needed. Ziprasidone may also decrease the effects of drugs used to treat Parkinson's disease such as levodopa.

Other drugs taken in combination with ziprasidone may alter the effects of ziprasidone. For example, drugs such as **carbamazepine**, used to treat seizures, increases liver metabolism and may cause ziprasidone to be less effective. Alternatively, drugs such as ketoconazole slow liver metabolism and may increase negative side effects associated with ziprasidone.

### Resources

#### BOOKS

Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*, 6th ed. St. Louis: Facts and Comparisons, 2002.

Pfizer Staff. *Geodon Package Insert*. New York: Pfizer Inc., 2001.

Preston, John D., John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga.

*Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

Simpson, George M., Antony Loebel, Lewis Warrington, and Ruoyong Yang. "Efficacy and Tolerability of Ziprasidone and Olanzapine in Acutely Ill Inpatients with Schizophrenia or Schizoaffective Disorder: Results of a Double-Blind, Six-Week Study, with a Six-Month, Double-Blind, Continuation Phase." *Progress in Neurotherapeutics and Neuropsychopharmacology*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2006. 149–63.

#### PERIODICALS

Barak, Yoram, Doron Mazeh, Igor Plopski, and Yehuda Baruch. "Intramuscular Ziprasidone Treatment of Acute Psychotic Agitation in Elderly Patients with Schizophrenia." *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry* 14.7 (July 2006): 629–33.

Casey, Daniel E. "Implications of the CATIE Trial on Treatment: Extrapyramidal Symptoms." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7 (July 2006): 25–31.

Frederickson, Anne M., John M. Kane, and Peter Manu. "Does Antipsychotic Polypharmacy Increase the Risk For Metabolic Syndrome?" *Schizophrenia Research* 89.1–3 (Jan. 2007): 91–100.

Gentile, Salvatore. "Extrapyramidal Adverse Events Associated With Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment of Bipolar Disorder." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 27.1 (Feb. 2007): 35–45.

Ginsberg, David L. "Ziprasidone-Induced Torsade de Pointes." *Primary Psychiatry* 13.8 (Aug 2006): 27–29.

- Glick, Ira D. "Understanding the Results of CATIE in the Context of the Field." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7 (July 2006): 40–47.
- Harvey, Philip D., Christopher R. Bowie, and Antony Loebel. "Neuropsychological Normalization with Long-Term Atypical Antipsychotic Treatment: Results of a Six-Month Randomized, Double-Blind Comparison of Ziprasidone vs. Olanzapine." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 18.1 (Winter 2006): 54–63.
- Joyce, Amie T., and others. "Effect of Initial Ziprasidone Dose on Length of Therapy in Schizophrenia." *Schizophrenia Research* 83.2–3 (Apr. 2006): 285–92.
- Kane, John M., Suman Khanna, Sunita Rajadhyaksha, and Earl Giller. "Efficacy and Tolerability of Ziprasidone in Patients with Treatment-Resistant Schizophrenia." *International Clinical Psychopharmacology* 21.1 (Jan. 2006): 21–28.
- Kinon, Bruce J., Ilya Lipkovich, S. Beth Edwards, David H. Adams, Haya Ascher-Svanum, and Samuel G. Siris. "A 24-Week Randomized Study of Olanzapine Versus Ziprasidone in the Treatment of Schizophrenia or Schizoaffective Disorder in Patients with Prominent Depressive Symptoms." *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology* 26.2 (Apr. 2006): 157–62.
- Malhotra, Anil K., Katherine E. Burdick, Kamran Razi, John A. Bates, Michael Sanders, and John M. Kane. "Ziprasidone-Induced Cognitive Enhancement in Schizophrenia: Specificity or Pseudospecificity?" *Schizophrenia Research* 87.1–3 (Oct. 2006): 181–84.
- Meltzer, Herbert Y. and William V. Bobo. "Interpreting the Efficacy Findings in the CATIE Study: What Clinicians Should Know." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7 (July 2006): 14–24.
- Möller, Hans-Jürgen. "Are the New Antipsychotics No Better Than the Classical Neuroleptics? The Problematic Answer from the CATIE Study." *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience* 255.6 (Dec. 2005): 371–72.
- Nasrallah, Henry A. "Metabolic Findings from the CATIE Trial and Their Relation to Tolerability." *CNS Spectrums* 11.7 (July 2006): 32–39.
- Stroup, T. Scott, and others. "Effectiveness of Olanzapine, Quetiapine, Risperidone, and Ziprasidone in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia Following Discontinuation of a Previous Atypical Antipsychotic." *American Journal of Psychiatry* 163.4 (Apr. 2006): 611–22.
- Ziegenbein, Marc and Iris T. Calliess. "Clozapine and Ziprasidone: A Useful Combination in Patients With Treatment-Resistant Schizophrenia." *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences* 18.2 (Spring 2006): 246–47.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph.,PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Zoloft see **Sertraline**

## Zolpidem

### Definition

Zolpidem is classified as a hypnotic drug. These drugs help people sleep. In the United States, zolpidem is available as tablets under the brand name Ambien.

### Purpose

Zolpidem is a drug that is used to treat **insomnia**. Zolpidem is especially helpful for people who have trouble falling asleep. However, once individuals have fallen asleep, zolpidem also helps them continue to sleep restfully. Zolpidem should be used only for short periods, approximately seven to ten days. If sleeping pills are needed for a long period, an evaluation by a physician is recommended to determine if another medical condition is responsible for the insomnia.

### Description

Although the way zolpidem helps people sleep is not entirely understood, it is believed to mimic a chemical in the **brain** called gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) that naturally helps to facilitate sleep. Zolpidem is a central nervous system depressant. This means that it slows down the nervous system. Unlike some sleeping pills, zolpidem does not interfere with the quality of sleep or usually leave the user feeling sedated in the morning. As a result, most people using zolpidem usually awake feeling refreshed.

### Recommended dosage

The usual dose of zolpidem in adults is 5–10 mg. For healthy adults, 10 mg is commonly recommended. However, people taking other drugs that cause drowsiness, people who have severe health problems, especially liver disease, and older people (over age 65) should take a lower dose, usually 5 mg. Zolpidem should be taken immediately before bedtime and only if the person can count on getting seven or eight hours of uninterrupted sleep. It usually takes only about 30 minutes for the sleep-inducing actions of zolpidem to be felt. Unlike some sleeping pills, the sleep-facilitating effects appear to last six to eight hours.

If zolpidem is taken with a meal, it will take longer to work. For the fastest sleep onset, it should be taken on an empty stomach. The maximum dose for one day is 10 mg. People who miss a dose of zolpidem should skip the missed dose, and take the next dose at the regularly scheduled time. Under no circumstances should a person take more than 10 mg in one day.



**A zolpidem (ambien) tablet.** (Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. Reproduced by Permission.)

Zolpidem should be taken exactly as directed by the prescribing physician.

### Precautions

Because zolpidem is used to help people fall asleep, it should not be used with other drugs (either over-the-counter, herbal, or prescription) that also cause drowsiness (for example, antihistamines or alcohol). Zolpidem should be used only with close physician supervision in people with liver disease and in the elderly, because these individuals are especially sensitive to the sedative properties of zolpidem. Zolpidem should not be used before driving, operating machinery, or performing activities that require mental alertness. People with a history of drug **abuse**, psychiatric disorders, or **depression** should be carefully monitored when using zolpidem since zolpidem may worsen symptoms of some psychiatric disorders.

If zolpidem is needed for more than seven to ten days, patients should be reevaluated by a physician to determine if another disorder is causing their difficulty in sleeping. When zolpidem or other sleeping pills are used every night for more than a few weeks, they begin to lose their effectiveness and/or people may become dependent upon them to fall asleep. Zolpidem can be habit-forming when taken over a long period. People using zolpidem should not stop taking the drug suddenly, but gradually reduce the dose over a few days before quitting, even if zolpidem has been used only a for short time.

### Side effects

Some sleeping pills such as zolpidem can cause aggressiveness, agitation, **hallucinations**, and **amnesia** (partial or complete loss of memory), rapid, racing

### KEY TERMS

**Amnesia**—A general medical term for loss of memory that is not due to ordinary forgetfulness. Amnesia can be caused by head injuries, brain disease, or epilepsy as well as by dissociation.

**Antidepressant**—A medication used to treat the symptoms of depression.

**Antihistamine**—A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**Antipsychotic**—A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. May be used to treat symptoms in other disorders, as well.

**Milligram (mg)**—One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals approximately 0.035 ounces.

**Tuberculosis**—An infection caused by the bacteria *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* that usually affects the lungs. Individuals with tuberculosis may have nighttime sweating, fever, weight loss, cough, and may spit up blood and mucus.

heartbeat, and chest pains. These side effects are rare, but the patient should call a physician immediately if they occur.

Side effects that occur in more than 5% of patients are headache, nausea, muscle aches, and drowsiness. Although drowsiness is desired when trying to fall asleep, a few people continue to be drowsy the next day. Daytime drowsiness may cause people, especially the elderly, to be less coordinated and more susceptible to falls. Other less common side effects are **anxiety**, confusion, dizziness, and stomach upset.

### Interactions

Any drug that causes drowsiness may lead to substantially decreased mental alertness and impaired motor skills when taken with zolpidem. Some examples include alcohol, **antidepressants** such as **imipramine** or **paroxetine**, antipsychotics such as **thioridazine**, and antihistamines (commonly found in allergy and cold medications).

The effectiveness of zolpidem may be reduced if taken with rifampin, an antibiotic that is commonly used to treat tuberculosis infections.

## Resources

### BOOKS

- Facts and Comparisons Staff. *Drug Facts and Comparisons*, 6th ed. St. Louis: Facts and Comparisons, 2002.
- Medical Economics Co. Staff. *Physician's Desk Reference*, 56th ed. Montvale, NJ: Medical Economics Company, 2002.
- Preston, John D. John H. O'Neal, and Mary C. Talaga. *Handbook of Clinical Psychopharmacology for Therapists*, 4th ed. Oakland, CA: New Harbinger Publications, 2004.

### PERIODICALS

- Conn, David K. and Robert Madan. "Use of Sleep-Promoting Medications in Nursing Home Residents: Risks versus Benefits." *Drugs and Aging* 23.4 (2006): 271–87.
- Glass, Jennifer, Krista L. Lanctôt, Nathan Herrmann, Beth A. Sproule, and Usoa E. Bustó. "Sedative Hypnotics in Older People with Insomnia: Meta-Analysis of Risks and Benefits." *British Medical Journal* 331.7526 (Nov. 2005): 1–7.
- Hart, Carl L., Margaret Haney, Jennifer Nasser, and Richard W. Foltin. "Combined Effects of Methamphetamine and Zolpidem on Performance and Mood During Simulated Night Shift Work." *Pharmacology, Biochemistry and Behavior* 81.3 (July 2005): 559–68.
- Lucchesi, Lígia M., and others. "Acute Neurophysiological Effects of the Hypnotic Zolpidem in Healthy Volunteers." *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry* 29.4 (May 2005): 557–64.

Meléndez, Jaime, and others. "Zolpidem and Triazolam Do Not Affect the Nocturnal Sleep-Induced Memory Improvement." *Psychopharmacology* 181.1 (Aug. 2005): 21–26.

Moen, Marit D. and Greg L. Plosker. "Zolpidem Extended Release in Insomnia: Profile Report." *Drugs and Aging* 23.10 (2006): 843–46.

Rosenberg, Russell P. "Sleep Maintenance Insomnia: Strengths and Weaknesses of Current Pharmacologic Therapies." *Annals of Clinical Psychiatry* 18.1 (Jan.–Mar. 2006): 49–56.

Staner, Luc; Stéphane Ertlé, Peter Boeijinga, Gilbert Rinaudo, Marie Agnès Arnal, Alain Muzet, and, Rémy Luthringer. "Next-Day Residual Effects of hypnotics in DSM-IV Primary Insomnia: A Driving Simulator Study with Simultaneous Electroencephalogram Monitoring." *Psychopharmacology* 181.4 (Oct. 2005): 790–98.

Wesensten, Nancy Jo, Thomas J. Balkin, Rebecca M. Reichardt, Mary A. Kautz, George A. Saviolakis, and Gregory Belenky. "Daytime Sleep and Performance Following a Zolpidem and Melatonin Cocktail." *Sleep: Journal of Sleep and Sleep Disorders Research* 28.1 (2005): 93–103.

Wong, Shelley. "Long-Term Use of Zolpidem ER May Benefit Patients with Chronic Insomnia." *CNS Spectrums* 11.9 (Sept. 2006): 662–64.

Kelly Karpa, R.Ph., PhD  
Ruth A. Wienclaw, PhD

Zyprexa see **Olanzapine**



# GLOSSARY

## A

**A1 ALLELE.** An allele related to RDS.

**A1 D2.** A chromosome sequence related to RDS.

**ABSENCE SEIZURE.** An epileptic seizure characterized by a sudden, momentary loss of consciousness, occasionally accompanied by some minor, jerky movements in the neck or upper arms, a twitching of the face, or a loss of muscle tone.

**ABSTINENCE.** Refraining from sexual intercourse for a period of time.

**ABSTRACTION.** Ability to think about concepts or ideas separate from specific examples.

**ABUSE.** Physical, emotional, or sexual harm.

**ACETYLCHOLINE.** A naturally occurring chemical in the body that transmits nerve impulses from cell to cell. Generally, it has opposite effects from dopamine and norepinephrine; it causes blood vessels to dilate, lowers blood pressure, and slows the heartbeat. Central nervous system well-being is dependent on a balance among acetylcholine, dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine.

**ACETYLCHOLINESTERASE.** The chemical responsible for the breakdown of acetylcholine.

**ACTIVE COPING STRATEGIES.** Ways of handling stress that affect the problem or situation in some way.

**ACUTE PSYCHOSIS.** A severe mental disorder marked by delusions, hallucinations, and other symptoms that indicate that the patient is not in contact with reality.

**ACUTE STRESS DISORDER.** Symptoms occurring in an individual following a traumatic event to oneself or surrounding environment. Symptoms include a continued response of intense fear, helplessness, or terror within four weeks of the event, extreme nervousness, sleep disorders, increased anxiety, poor concentration,

absence of emotional response to surroundings, and sometimes a dissociative amnesia—not recalling the significance of the trauma. Symptoms last a minimum of two days and maximum of four weeks. Can become post-traumatic stress disorder.

**ADAPTOGEN.** A remedy that helps the body adapt to change, and thus lowers the risk of stress-related illnesses.

**ADDICTION.** A compulsive need for, and use of, a habit-forming substance or behavior.

**ADDICTIVE DISORDER.** A disorder involving repetitive participation in a certain activity, in spite of negative consequences and despite attempts to stop the behavior. Alcohol abuse is an example.

**ADDISON'S DISEASE.** Disease caused by malfunctioning adrenal glands that can be treated with cortisol replacement therapy. Symptoms include anemia, low blood pressure, digestive complaints, and diarrhea.

**ADENOSINE.** A compound that serves to modulate the activities of nerve cells (neurons) and to produce a mild sedative effect when it activates certain types of adenosine receptors. Caffeine is thought to produce its stimulating effect by competing with adenosine for activation of these receptors.

**ADJUNCT.** A form of treatment that is not strictly necessary but is helpful to a therapy regimen.

**ADJUNCT TREATMENT.** A treatment that enhances the primary treatment or treatments and is not used alone. It can include exercise, massage, biofeedback, drama therapy, art/music therapy, dance therapy, journaling, creative writing, and others.

**ADJUSTMENT DISORDER.** A disorder defined by the development of significant emotional or behavioral symptoms in response to a stressful event or series of events. Symptoms may include depressed mood, anxiety, and impairment of social and occupational functioning.

**ADRENAL GLAND.** A gland that produces many different hormones, including estrogen, progesterone, and stress hormones.

**ADRENALINE.** Another name for epinephrine, the hormone released by the adrenal glands in response to stress. It is the principal blood-pressure raising hormone and a bronchial and intestinal smooth muscles relaxant.

**ADRENALINE (EPINEPHRINE).** A hormone and neurotransmitter released by the adrenal gland as part of the body's fight-or-flight response.

**ADRENALINE ADDICTION.** A drug-like response some people experience from participating in activities (such as skydiving or gambling) that trigger adrenaline release.

**AEROBIC EXERCISE.** Exercise that uses oxygen and provides sufficient cardiovascular overload to increase cardiac output.

**AEROSOL.** A liquid substance sealed in a metal container under pressure with an inert gas that propels the liquid as a spray or foam through a nozzle.

**AFFECT.** The expression of emotion displayed to others through facial expressions, hand gestures, tone of voice, etc. Types of affect include: flat (inanimate, no expression), blunted (minimally responsive), inappropriate (incongruous expressions of emotion relative to the content of a conversation), and labile (sudden and abrupt changes in type and intensity of emotion).

**AFFECTIVE DISORDER.** A disorder involving extreme emotional experience that is not congruent with the environmental circumstances (for example, feeling sad when there is no easily identifiable reason, as in depression).

**AGE-ASSOCIATED MEMORY IMPAIRMENT (AAMI).** A condition in which an older person suffers some memory loss and takes longer to learn new information. AAMI is distinguished from dementia in that it is not progressive and does not represent a serious decline from the person's previous level of functioning. Benign senescent forgetfulness is another term for AAMI.

**AGITATION.** Excessive restlessness or emotional disturbance that is often associated with anxiety or psychosis. May be a symptom of major depressive disorder.

**AGNOSIA.** Loss of the ability to recognize familiar people, places, and objects.

**AGONIST.** A chemical that reproduces the mechanism of action of a neurotransmitter.

**AGORAPHOBIA.** People with this condition worry that they will not be able to get help or flee a place if they have a panic attack, or they may refuse to go to places that might trigger a panic attack.

**AGRANULOCYTOSIS.** A blood disorder characterized by a reduction in the number of circulating white blood cells (granulocytes). White blood cells defend the body against infections. Agranulocytosis is a potential side effect of some of the newer antipsychotic medications used to treat schizophrenia.

**AKATHESIA.** Agitated or restless movement, usually affecting the legs. Movement is accompanied by a sense of discomfort and an inability to sit, stand still, or remain inactive for periods of time. Akathisia is a common side effect of some neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications.

**AKINESIA.** Absence of physical movement.

**AKISTHESIA.** An uncontrollable feeling of restlessness.

**ALBUMIN.** A simple protein that is widely distributed in human blood.

**ALCOHOL.** An organic chemical and the active agent in beer, wine, and liquor; chemically known as ethanol.

**ALCOHOL DEPENDENCE.** A chronic disease with both neurological and genetic factors. Diagnostic criteria include increased tolerance for alcohol, withdrawal symptoms, and manifestations of behavior, loss of control over the use of alcohol, and/or impaired function. Alcohol dependence is distinguished from alcohol abuse, alcohol withdrawal syndrome, and other alcohol-induced syndromes.

**ALCOHOLISM.** Chronic and compulsive use of alcohol that interferes with everyday life as with work and personal relationships.

**ALEXITHYMA.** The inability to express some feelings verbally.

**ALLEL.** One member of a pair or a series of genes that occupy a specific position on a specific chromosome.

**ALLOSTASIS.** The process of an organism's adaptation to acute stress.

**ALOPECIA.** Hair loss (also, loss of feathers or wool in animals).

**ALTER.** An alternate or secondary personality in a person with dissociative identity disorder. Each alter has a unique way of looking at and interacting with the world.

**ALTRUISM.** An unselfish willingness to help others.

**ALVEOLAR.** Pertaining to alveoli, which are tiny air sacs at the ends of the small air passages in the lungs.

**ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE.** An incurable dementia marked by the loss of cognitive ability and memory over a period of 10–15 years. Usually affects elderly people.

**AMBULATION.** Ability to walk.

**AMENORRHEA.** Absence of menstrual periods.

**AMINO ACID.** A building block of protein.

**AMNESIA.** A general medical term for loss of memory that is not due to ordinary forgetfulness. Amnesia can be caused by head injuries, brain disease, or epilepsy, as well as by dissociation.

**AMNIOCENTESIS.** A test usually done between 16 and 20 weeks of pregnancy to detect any abnormalities in the development of the fetus. A small amount of the fluid surrounding the fetus (amniotic fluid) is drawn out through a needle inserted into the mother's womb. Laboratory analysis of this fluid can detect various genetic defects, such as Down syndrome, or neural tube defects.

**AMOTIVATIONAL SYNDROME.** Loss of ambition associated with chronic cannabis (marijuana) use.

**AMPHETAMINE.** A central nervous system stimulant.

**AMPHETAMINE ABUSE.** An amphetamine problem in which the user experiences negative consequences from the use, but has not reached the point of dependence.

**AMPHETAMINE DEPENDENCE.** The most serious type of amphetamine problem.

**AMPHETAMINE INTOXICATION.** The effects on the body that develop during or shortly after amphetamine use.

**AMPHETAMINE WITHDRAWAL.** Symptoms that develop shortly after reducing or stopping heavy amphetamine use.

**AMPHETAMINES.** A group of powerful and highly addictive substances that stimulate the central nervous

system. Amphetamines may be prescribed for various medical conditions, but are often purchased illicitly and abused.

**AMYGDALA.** An almond-shaped brain structure in the limbic system that is activated in acute stress situations to trigger the emotion of fear.

**AMYLOID.** A waxy translucent substance composed mostly of protein, that forms plaques (abnormal deposits) in the brain during the progression of Alzheimer's disease.

**AMYOTROPHIC LATERAL SCLEROSIS (ALS OR LOU GEHRIG'S DISEASE).** A degenerative disease that affects nerves of the brain and spinal cord, and results in eventual paralysis.

**ANABOLIC.** Causing muscle and bone growth and a shift from fat to muscle in the body.

**ANALEPTIC.** A substance that acts as a stimulant of the central nervous system. Caffeine is classified as an analeptic.

**ANALGESIC.** A medication to reduce or eliminate pain.

**ANANDAMIDE.** One type of endocannabinoid that appears to help regulate early pregnancy.

**ANANKASTIC PERSONALITY DISORDER.** The European term for obsessive-compulsive personality disorder.

**ANDROGENIC.** Causing testosterone-like effects in the body, specifically on the male reproductive organs and the secondary sexual characteristics of men.

**ANDROGYNY.** A way of behaving that includes high levels of both masculinity and femininity.

**ANEMIA.** Condition that results when there is a deficiency of oxygen in the blood. Can cause fatigue and impair mental functions.

**ANESTHESIA.** Medicines that block pain signals from traveling along the nerves to the brain. Anesthesia is often given before surgery so the patient does not feel any pain during the procedure.

**ANEURYSM.** A symptomless bulging of a weak arterial wall that can rupture, leading to stroke.

**ANGINA.** Severe pain and a feeling of constriction around the heart.

**ANGIOGRAPHY.** A procedure in which a contrast medium is injected into the bloodstream (through an artery in the neck) and its progress through the brain is

tracked. This illustrates where a blockage or hemorrhage has occurred.

**ANHEDONIA.** Loss of the capacity to experience pleasure. Anhedonia is one of the so-called negative symptoms of schizophrenia, and is also a symptom of major depression.

**ANKYLOSING SPONDYLITIS.** A spinal arthritis that begins in the low back and can spread upwards to the skull.

**ANOREXIA.** Loss of appetite or unwillingness to eat. Can be caused by medications, depression, or many other factors.

**ANOREXIA NERVOSA.** An eating disorder characterized by an intense fear of weight gain accompanied by a distorted perception of one's own underweight body.

**ANOSOGNOSIA.** Lack of awareness of the nature of one's illness. The term is usually applied to stroke patients, but is sometimes used to refer to lack of insight on the part of patients with schizophrenia. Anosognosia appears to be caused by the illness itself; it does not appear to be a form of denial or inappropriate coping mechanism. It is, however, a factor in non-adherence to treatment regimens and the increased risk of relapse.

**ANOXIA.** Lack of oxygen.

**ANTAGONIST.** A substance whose actions counteract the effects of or work in the opposite way from another chemical or drug.

**ANTECEDENTS.** Events that occur immediately before the target behavior.

**ANTEROGRADE AMNESIA.** Amnesia for events that occurred after a physical injury or emotional trauma but before the present moment.

**ANTHELMINTIC.** A type of medication given to expel or eliminate intestinal worms.

**ANTI-ANXIETY AGENT.** A medication that is used to treat symptoms of generalized fear that dominates a person's life.

**ANTICHOLINERGIC.** Related to the ability of a drug to block the nervous system chemical acetylcholine. When acetylcholine is blocked, patients often experience dry mouth and skin, increased heart rate, blurred vision, and difficulty in urinating. In severe cases, blocking acetylcholine may cloud thinking and cause delirium.

**ANTICHOLINERGIC AGENTS.** Medicines that include atropine, belladonna, hyoscyamine, scopolamine, and

related products; used to relieve cramps or spasms of the stomach, intestines, and bladder.

**ANTICHOLINERGIC TOXICITY.** A poisonous effect brought about by ingestion of medications or other toxins that block acetylcholine receptors. When these receptors are blocked, the person taking the medication may find that he or she gets overheated, has dry mouth, has blurry vision, and his or her body may retain urine.

**ANTICHOLINERGICS.** Drugs that block the action of acetylcholine, a naturally occurring chemical that is involved in communication between nerve cells.

**ANTICIPATION.** In medicine, a phenomenon in which certain diseases manifest at earlier ages or in more severe phenotypes in each successive generation of an affected family.

**ANTICOAGULANT.** A medication (such as warfarin, Coumadin, or Heparin) that decreases the blood's clotting ability preventing the formation of new clots. Although anticoagulants will not dissolve existing clots, they can stop them from getting larger. These drugs are commonly called blood thinners.

**ANTICONVULSANT.** A medication used to control the abnormal electrical activity in the brain that causes seizures.

**ANTICONVULSANT DRUGS.** Medications that relieve or prevent seizures.

**ANTIDEPRESSANT.** A medication used to treat the symptoms of depression.

**ANTIALLERGIC.** A medication used to alleviate allergy or cold symptoms such as runny nose, itching, hives, watering eyes, or sneezing.

**ANTIHYPERTENSIVE.** An agent used in the treatment of hypertension (high blood pressure).

**ANTIOXIDANT.** Substance that protects the body from damaging reactive oxygen molecules in the body. These reactive oxygen molecules can come from inside the body or from environmental pollution and are thought to play a role in the aging process and the development of degenerative disease.

**ANTIPSYCHOTIC.** A medication taken to alleviate psychotic symptoms, including delusions and hallucinations.

**ANTIPSYCHOTIC DRUG.** A medication used to treat psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia such as hallucinations, delusions, and delirium. These drugs may be used to treat symptoms in other disorders, as well.

**ANTISOCIAL BEHAVIOR.** Behavior characterized by high levels of anger, aggression, manipulation, or violence.

**ANTISOCIAL PERSONALITY DISORDER.** A personality disorder characterized by aggressive, impulsive, or even violent actions that violate the established rules or conventions of a society.

**ANTISPASMODIC.** A medication or preparation given to relieve muscle or digestive cramps.

**ANXIETY.** A feeling of apprehension and fear characterized by physical symptoms (heart palpitations, sweating, and feelings of stress, for example).

**ANXIETY AND ANXIETY DISORDERS.** Chronic conditions that can be characterized by an excessive and regular sense of apprehension, with physical symptoms such as sweating, palpitations, and feelings of stress. Anxiety disorders can be caused by biological and environmental events.

**ANXIETY DISORDER.** A group of mood disorders characterized by apprehension and associated bodily symptoms of tension (such as tense muscles, fast breathing, rapid heart beat). When anxious, the individual anticipates threat, danger, or misfortune. Anxiety disorders include panic disorder (with or without agoraphobia), agoraphobia without panic disorder, specific phobias, social phobia, obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), acute stress disorder, generalized anxiety disorder, anxiety disorder due to a general medical condition, and substance-induced anxiety disorder.

**ANXIETY-REDUCTION TECHNIQUES.** Skills taught by a therapist to help an individual overcome anxiety, stress, and tension, and can include relaxation, visualization and imagery, diaphragmatic breathing, stress inoculation, and meditation.

**ANXIOLYTIC.** A preparation or substance given to relieve anxiety; a tranquilizer.

**ANXIOLYTIC DRUG.** A drug that decreases feelings of anxiety or panic.

**APATHY.** Lack of feelings or emotions.

**APHASIA.** Loss of previously acquired ability to understand or use written or spoken language, due to brain damage or deterioration.

**APHONIA.** Inability to speak caused by a functional disturbance of the voice box or vocal cords.

**APHRODISIAC.** A medication or preparation given to stimulate sexual desire.

**APLASTIC ANEMIA.** A form of anemia in which the bone marrow does not produce adequate amounts of peripheral blood components such as red cells, white cells, and platelets.

**APNEA.** A brief suspension or interruption of breathing.

**APOLIPOPROTEIN E.** A protein that transports cholesterol through the body. One form of this protein, apoE4, is associated with a 60% risk of late-onset Alzheimer's disease (AD).

**APOPTOSIS.** A form of cell death in which a programmed sequence of events leads to the elimination of the cell.

**APPERCEPTION.** The process of understanding through linkage with previous experience. The term was coined by one of the authors of the TAT to underscore the fact that people don't "perceive" the story cards in a vacuum; rather, they construct their stories on the basis of past experiences as well as present personality traits.

**APPETITE SUPPRESSANTS.** Medications that assist in weight loss by reducing appetite or increasing the sensation of fullness

**APRAXIA.** Inability to perform purposeful movements that is not caused by paralysis or loss of feeling.

**ARRHYTHMIA.** Any disturbance in the normal rhythm of the heartbeat.

**ARSON.** The deliberate setting of fires for criminal purposes, usually to collect insurance money or to cover up evidence of another crime. It is distinguished from pyromania by its connection with planning and forethought rather than failure of impulse control.

**ARTERIOSCLEROSIS.** A thickening, hardening, and loss of elasticity of the walls of the arteries.

**ASANA.** The Indian term for the poses or postures that are done in sequence during hatha yoga practice.

**ASPERGER'S SYNDROME.** A condition in which young children experience impaired social interactions and develop limited repetitive patterns of behavior.

**ASSAULTIVE.** An act with intent of causing harm.

**ASSERTIVE.** Confidently self-assured; able to express oneself constructively and directly.

**ASSESSMENT.** In the context of psychological assessment (a structured interview), assessment is information-gathering to diagnose a mental disorder.

**ASSISTED SUICIDE.** A form of self-inflicted death in which a person voluntarily brings about his or her own death with the help of another, usually a physician, relative, or friend.

**ASSOCIATIONISM.** A theory about human learning that explains complex psychological phenomena in terms of coincidental relationships. For example, a person with agoraphobia who is afraid of riding in a car may have had a panic attack in a car on one occasion and has learned to associate cars with the physical symptoms of a panic attack.

**ASTRINGENT.** A substance or compound that causes contraction or constriction of soft tissue.

**ATAQUE DE NERVIOS.** A culture-specific anxiety syndrome found among some Latin American groups in the United States and in Latin America. It resembles panic disorder in some respects but also includes dissociative symptoms, and frequently occurs in response to stressful events.

**ATAXIA.** A loss of muscle coordination.

**ATHEORETICAL.** Unrelated to any specific theoretical approach or conceptual framework. The classification system of *DSM-IV-TR* is atheoretical.

**ATHEROSCLEROSIS.** Clogging of the arteries, creating a risk factor for stroke.

**ATRIAL FIBRILLATION.** A disorder in which the upper chambers (atria) of the heart do not completely empty with each contraction (heartbeat). This can allow blood clots to form and is associated with a higher risk of stroke.

**ATROPHY.** Shrinkage or deterioration.

**ATTENTION DEFICIT DISORDER.** A condition that mostly affects children and involves the inability to concentrate on various tasks.

**ATTENTION-DEFICIT/HYPERACTIVITY DISORDER (ADHD).** A learning and behavioral disorder characterized by difficulty in sustaining attention, impulsive behavior, and excessive activity.

**ATYPICAL ANTIPSYCHOTICS.** A group of newer medications for the treatment of psychotic symptoms that were introduced in the 1990s. The atypical antipsychotics include clozapine, risperidone, quetiapine, ziprasidone, and olanzapine. They are sometimes called serotonin dopamine antagonists, or SDAs.

**AUDITORY.** Pertaining to the sense of hearing.

**AURA.** An energy field that is thought to emanate from the human body and to be visible to people with special psychic or spiritual powers.

**AUTISM.** A developmental disability that appears early in life, in which normal brain development is disrupted and social and communication skills are retarded, sometimes severely.

**AUTISTIC DISORDER.** A developmental disability that appears early in life, in which normal brain development is disrupted and social and communication skills are retarded, sometimes severely.

**AUTISTIC PSYCHOPATHY.** Hans Asperger's original name for the condition now known as Asperger's disorder. It is still used occasionally as a synonym for the disorder.

**AUTONOMIC.** The part of the nervous system that governs the heart, involuntary muscles, and glands.

**AUTONOMIC NERVOUS SYSTEM.** The part of the nervous system that governs the heart, involuntary muscles, and glands.

**AVERSION.** A strong feeling of dislike or disgust. Aversion therapy makes use of this feeling to reduce or eliminate an undesirable behavior. Chemicals or medications used to produce unpleasant effects are called aversants.

**AVERSION THERAPY.** An approach to treatment in which an unpleasant or painful stimulus is linked to an undesirable behavior in order to condition the patient to dislike or avoid the behavior.

**AVOIDANT COPING STRATEGIES.** Ways of coping with stress that do not alter the problem in any way, but instead provide temporary relief or distraction.

**AXIS.** One of five diagnostic categories of the American Psychiatric Association that are used for mental health diagnoses. Axis I describes the clinical syndrome or major diagnosis; Axis II lists developmental disorders or mental retardation and personality disorders; Axis III lists physical disorders; Axis IV includes the severity of psychosocial stressors for the individual; and Axis V describes an individual's highest level of functioning currently and in the past 12 months.

**AXIS I.** Axis I offers mental health professionals a diagnostic coding domain for listing disorders or conditions that are not classified as personality disorders and mental retardation.

**AYURVEDIC MEDICINE.** The traditional medical system of India. Ayurvedic treatments include diet,

exercises, herbal treatments, meditation, massage, breathing techniques, and exposure to sunlight.

## B

**BACK-UP REINFORCER.** A desirable item, privilege, or activity that is purchased with tokens and serves as a delayed reward and subsequent motivation for target (desired) behavior.

**BARBITURATE.** A class of medications (including Seconal and Nembutal) that causes sedation and drowsiness. They may be prescribed legally, but may also be used as drugs of abuse.

**BASAL GANGLIA.** A group of masses of gray matter located in the cerebral hemispheres of the brain that control movement as well as some aspects of emotion and cognition.

**BASELINE DATA.** Information regarding the frequency and severity of behavior, gathered before treatment begins.

**BATTERY.** A number of separate items (such as tests) used together. In psychology, a group or series of tests given with a common purpose, such as personality assessment or measurement of intelligence.

**BEHAVIOR.** A stereotyped motor response to an internal or external stimulus.

**BEHAVIOR DISORDERS.** Disorders characterized by disruptive behaviors such as conduct disorder, oppositional defiant disorder, and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder.

**BEHAVIOR MODIFICATION.** An approach to therapy based on the principles of operant conditioning. Behavior modification seeks to replace undesirable behaviors with preferable behaviors through the use of positive or negative reinforcement.

**BEHAVIOR THERAPIES.** Numerous techniques all having their roots in principles of learning.

**BEHAVIORAL CONTRACTS.** A behavioral contract is a written agreement that defines the behaviors to be performed and the consequences of the specified behaviors.

**BEHAVIORAL DEFICIENCY.** Failure to engage in a positive, desirable behavior frequently enough.

**BEHAVIORAL EXCESS.** Engaging in negative, undesirable behavior too often.

**BEHAVIORAL INHIBITION.** A set of behaviors that appear in early infancy that are displayed when the

child is confronted with a new situation or unfamiliar people. These behaviors include moving around, crying, and general irritability, followed by withdrawing, and seeking comfort from a familiar person. These behaviors are associated with an increased risk of social phobia and panic disorder in later life. Behavioral inhibition in children appears to be linked to anxiety and mood disorders in their parents.

**BEHAVIORAL PHENOTYPE.** The greater likelihood that people with a specific genetic syndrome will have certain behavioral or developmental characteristics compared to people who do not have the syndrome. The concept of a behavioral phenotype is used most often with reference to patterns of behavior found in certain developmental disorders of childhood, such as Down syndrome or Prader-Willi syndrome. However, this does not mean that every person diagnosed with a given genetic syndrome will invariably develop these characteristics.

**BEHAVIORAL THERAPY.** An approach to treatment that focuses on extinguishing undesirable behavior and replacing it with desired behavior.

**(LA) BELLE INDIFFÉRENCE.** A psychiatric symptom sometimes found in patients with conversion disorder, in which the patient shows a surprising lack of concern about the nature or implications of his/her physical symptom(s).

**BENIGN GROWTH.** A noncancerous cell growth that does not metastasize and does not recur after treatment or removal.

**BENIGN PROSTATE HYPERSTROPHY.** Enlargement of the prostate gland.

**BENZODIAZAPINES.** A group of central nervous system depressants used to relieve anxiety or to induce sleep.

**BEREAVEMENT.** The emotional experience of loss after the death of a friend or relative.

**BETA-BLOCKERS.** Drugs that block beta-adrenergic receptors to reduce the actions of epinephrine, thereby lowering the heart rate and blood pressure.

**BEZOAR.** A hard ball of hair or vegetable fiber that may develop in the stomach of humans as the result of ingesting nonfood items.

**BINGE.** An excessive amount of food consumed in a short period of time. Usually, while a person binge eats, he or she feels disconnected from reality, and feels unable to stop. The binging may temporarily relieve depression or anxiety, but after the binge, the person usually feels guilty and depressed.

**BINGE DRINKING.** The practice of drinking alcoholic beverages to the point of intoxication.

**BIOAVAILABILITY.** Medication that is available in the body. If the bioavailability of a drug is increased, more is available to the body for use, and if it is decreased, less is available for use.

**BIOCHEMICAL.** Chemical reactions occurring in living systems.

**BIOFEEDBACK.** Biofeedback is a technique that uses monitoring instruments to measure and feed back information about muscle tension, heart rate, sweat responses, skin temperature, or brain activity.

**BIOFIELD THERAPIES.** A subgroup of energy therapies that make use of energy fields (biofields) thought to exist within or emanate from the human body. Biofield therapies include such approaches as Reiki, therapeutic touch, qigong, and polarity balancing.

**BILOGICAL MARKER.** An indicator or characteristic trait of a disease that facilitates differential diagnosis (the process of distinguishing one disorder from other, similar disorders).

**BIOPSYCHOSOCIAL HISTORY.** A history of significant past and current experiences that influence client behaviors, including medical, educational, employment, and interpersonal experiences. Alcohol or drug use and involvement with the legal system are also assessed in a biopsychosocial history.

**BIOPSYCHOSOCIAL MODEL.** A hypothetical explanation for why something occurs that includes biological, psychological, and social causes or correlates.

**BIOSOCIAL.** A biosocial model in psychology asserts that social and biological factors contribute toward the development of personality.

**BIPOLAR AFFECTIVE DISORDER.** A disorder in which a person alternates manic and depressive episodes.

**BIPOLAR DISORDER (FORMERLY MANIC-DEPRESSIVE DISORDER).** A mental disorder characterized by dramatic and sometimes rapid mood swings, resulting in both manic and depressive episodes.

**BIPOLAR DISORDERS.** A group of mood disorders characterized by both depressive and manic or hypomanic episodes.

**BIPOLAR I DISORDER.** A major mood disorder characterized by full-blown manic episodes, often interspersed with episodes of major depression.

**BIPOLAR II DISORDER.** A subtype of bipolar disorder characterized by alternating depressive and

hypomanic (persistently elevated or irritable mood) episodes.

**BLACKOUT.** A period of loss of consciousness or memory.

**BLADDER.** A muscular sac in the lower abdomen that holds urine until it is discharged from the body.

**BLENDED FAMILY.** A family formed by the remarriage of a divorced or widowed parent. It includes a new husband and wife, plus some or all of their children from previous marriages.

**BLUNTED AFFECT.** A term that refers to the loss of emotional expressiveness sometimes found in patients with schizophrenia. It is sometimes called flattened affect.

**BODY IMAGE.** A term that refers to a person's inner picture of his or her outward appearance. It has two components: perceptions of the appearance of one's body, and emotional responses to those perceptions.

**BODY MASS.** The quantity of matter in the body (measured by dividing weight by acceleration due to gravity).

**BODY MASS INDEX, OR BMI.** A measure of body fat, calculated as weight in kilograms over the square of height in meters.

**BODYWORK.** Any technique involving hands-on massage or manipulation of the body.

**BORDERLINE PERSONALITY DISORDER.** A severe and usually life-long mental disorder characterized by violent mood swings and severe difficulties in sustaining interpersonal relationships.

**BRACHYCARDIA.** Slow heartbeat, defined as a rate of less than 60 beats per minute.

**BRAIN IMAGING.** Methods that provide a visual representation of the structure and function of the brain.

**BREEMA.** An alternative therapy that originated in California in the 1980s. Breema combines biofield therapy with certain elements of chiropractic and bodywork.

**BRONCHIOLES.** Tiny tubes in the lungs.

**BRUXISM.** Habitual, often unconscious, grinding of the teeth.

**BULIMIA.** An eating disorder characterized by binges in which large amounts of food are consumed, followed by forced vomiting.

**BULIMIA NERVOSA.** An eating disorder characterized by binges in which large amounts of food are consumed, followed by forced vomiting.

**BUPRENORPHINE.** A medication that blocks some of the withdrawal effects during heroin detoxification.

**BUPROPION.** One of the three major pharmacologic interventions in smoking cessation. Bupropion inhibits the body's reuptake of the neurotransmitters dopamine and norepinephrine.

**BURDEN.** First described by M. B. Treudley in 1946, this term generally refers to the consequences for the family of close contact with people who have severe mentally illnesses.

**BURNOUT.** An emotional condition that interferes with job performance, marked by fatigue, loss of interest, or frustration; usually regarded as the result of prolonged stress.

## C

**CAFFEINISM.** A disorder caused by ingesting very high doses of caffeine (10g or more per day) and characterized by seizures and respiratory failure.

**CALORIE.** The quantity of heat necessary to raise the temperature of 1kg of water 1°C.

**CANCER SCREENING.** A procedure designed to detect cancer even though a person has no symptoms, usually performed using an imaging technique.

**CANNABIS.** The collective name for several varieties of Indian hemp plant. Also known as marijuana.

**CANNABIS ABUSE.** Periodic use of cannabis, less serious than dependence, but still capable of causing problems for the user.

**CANNABIS INTOXICATION.** The direct effects of acute cannabis use and the reactions that accompany those effects.

**CAPITATED PAYMENT SYSTEM.** A contract between managed care organizations and health-care providers involving a prepaid amount for blocks of services.

**CARDIAC TAMPONADE.** A condition in which blood leaking into the membrane surrounding the heart puts pressure on the heart muscle, preventing complete filling of the heart's chambers and normal heartbeat.

**CARMINATIVE.** A substance or preparation that relieves digestive gas.

**CARPAL TUNNEL SYNDROME.** A disorder of the hand and wrist characterized by pain, weakness, or numbness in the thumb and other fingers. It is caused by pressure on a nerve in the wrist. Carpal tunnel syndrome is frequently associated with heavy use of a computer, typewriter, or musical keyboard.

**CARRIER.** A vegetable oil such as safflower, olive, grapeseed, or wheatgerm oil used to dilute essential oils for massage.

**CARVE-OUT PLANS.** Managed care plans that make provision for mental health services by creating sub-contracts involving different terms of payment and utilization review from those used for general health care.

**CASE MANAGER.** A professional who designs and monitors implementation of comprehensive care plans (i.e., services addressing medical, financial, housing, psychiatric, vocational, or social needs) for individuals seeking mental health or social services.

**CASE RATE.** A type of contract between managed care organizations and health-care providers involving a prepaid amount for services on a case-by-case basis.

**CASTRATION.** Desexing a person or animal by surgical removal of the testes (in males) or ovaries (in females). Castration is sometimes offered as a treatment option to violent rapists and pedophiles who are repeat offenders.

**CATAPLEXY.** A symptom of narcolepsy marked by a sudden episode of muscle weakness triggered by strong emotions. The muscle weakness may cause the person's knees to buckle, or the head to drop. In severe cases, the patient may become paralyzed for a few seconds or minutes.

**CATATONIA.** A state characterized by rigid muscles, sustained unresponsiveness with fixed body posture, strange bodily movements, extreme overactivity, or bizarre postures.

**CATATONIC BEHAVIOR OR CATATONIA.** Catatonic behavior or catatonia is a descriptive term that describes both possible extremes related to movement. Catalepsy is the motionless aspect of catatonia—in which a person with catalepsy may remain fixed in the same position for hours on end. Rapid or persistently repeated movements, frequent grimacing and strange facial expressions, and unusual gestures are the opposite end of the catatonia phenomenon, involving an excess or distorted extreme of movement.

**CATATONIC DISORDER.** A severe disturbance of motor behavior characterized by either extreme immobility or stupor, or by random and purposeless activity.

**CATATONIC SCHIZOPHRENIA.** A subtype of a severe mental disorder that affects thinking, feeling, and behavior, and that is also characterized by catatonic behaviors—either extreme stupor or random, purposeless activity.

**CATCHMENT.** In mental health, a term that refers to a particular geographical area served by a particular mental health agency.

**CATECHOLAMINE.** A group of neurotransmitters synthesized from the amino acid tyrosine and released by the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system in the brain in response to acute stress. The catecholamines include dopamine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and epinephrine.

**CATECHOLAMINES.** A class of hormones that includes epinephrine and norepinephrine, which are involved in the fight-or-flight response.

**CATHA EDULIS.** Leaves of an East African bush that can be chewed for their stimulant effect.

**CATHARSIS.** A powerful emotional release followed by a feeling of great relief.

**CATHETERIZATION.** The use of a hollow, flexible tube to drain urine from the body.

**CENTRAL AUDITORY PROCESSING DISORDER (CAPD).** Central auditory processing disorder, the inability to differentiate, recognize, or understand sounds; hearing and intelligence are normal.

**CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM.** The brain and spinal cord.

**CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM DEPRESSANT.** Any drug that lowers the level of stimulation or excitement in the central nervous system.

**CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM STIMULANT.** Any drug that raises the level of activity in the central nervous system.

**CEREBRAL ANGIOGRAPHY.** a procedure that allows a wire to be inserted in blood vessels in the brain which generates an image of diseases in these arteries.

**CEREBROVASCULAR.** Pertaining to the blood flow in the brain.

**CERVIX.** The neck or narrow lower end of the uterus. Softening of the cervix is one of the signs of pregnancy.

**CHAKRA.** One of seven major energy centers in the body, according to traditional systems of Eastern medicine. The chakras are associated with the seven colors of light in the rainbow.

**CHASING.** Betting larger and larger sums of money, or taking greater risks, in order to make up for money previously lost in gambling.

**CHAT ROOM.** A space on a Web site or network server that allows multiple people to communicate by entering text messages at their individual computers. The messages are viewable by all in the virtual “room,” and messages appear almost instantaneously once they are sent.

**CHEESE REACTION.** Common term for the high blood pressure crisis that can occur when nonselective monoamine oxidase inhibitors are combined with dietary tyramine, a chemical often associated with aged cheeses.

**CHELATION.** A method of treating lead or mercury poisoning by giving medications that remove heavy metals from the bloodstream. The medications that are used are called chelating agents.

**CHEMOTHERAPY.** The use of medicines to kill cancer cells.

**CHOREATHETOID MOVEMENTS.** Repetitive dance-like movements that have no rhythm.

**CHROMATHERAPY.** An alternative form of light therapy in which colored light is directed toward a specific chakra or part of the body in order to heal or to correct energy imbalances. Practitioners of chromatherapy are sometimes called chromopathists.

**CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME.** A debilitating condition characterized by severe chronic fatigue and other symptoms such as memory problems, pain, or tender lymph nodes.

**CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE.** A disorder characterized by the decreasing ability of the lungs to adequately ventilate.

**CHRONOTHERAPY.** A treatment that involves sleeping at predetermined times in order to reset the circadian rhythm.

**CHRYSIN.** A flavonoid found in passionflower that may be the source of its anxiolytic properties.

**CIMETIDINE.** A drug that decreases the amount of acid in the stomach, and that is used to treat conditions such as ulcers, gastroesophageal reflux disease, and heartburn.

**CIRCADIAN RHYTHM.** The light-dark cycle in the body that occurs over a period of approximately 24 hours.

**CLASSICAL CONDITIONING.** A process used in psychology in which a previously neutral stimulus eventually produces a specific response by being paired repeatedly with another stimulus that produces that response. The best-known example of classical conditioning is Pavlov's dogs, who were conditioned to salivate when they heard a bell ring (the previously neutral stimulus) because the sound had been paired repeatedly with their feeding time.

**CLEARINGHOUSE.** A centralized organization that is a repository of information and that facilitates access to information.

**CLINICAL TRIAL.** A controlled scientific experiment designed to investigate the effectiveness of a drug or treatment in curing or lessening the symptoms of a disease or disorder.

**CLITORIS.** The most sensitive area of the external genitals. Stimulation of the clitoris causes most women to reach orgasm.

**CLONIC-TONIC SEIZURE.** This is the most common type of seizure among all age groups and is categorized into several phases beginning with vague symptoms hours or days before an attack. These seizures are sometimes called grand mal seizures.

**CLOZAPINE.** A newer antipsychotic medication that is often given to patients who are developing signs of tardive dyskinesia.

**CLUSTER SUICIDE.** Refers to the phenomenon of additional suicides being attempted or completed after one suicide has occurred within a small community, such as a group of high school students.

**COCA PLANT.** The plant that is the source of cocaine.

**COCAINE.** An illegal drug that increases energy and induces euphoria. It is addictive and is often abused.

**CODEINE.** A medication that may be prescribed but also may be purchased illegally and is used to reduce pain.

**CODON.** A three-member nucleotide sequence in messenger RNA that codes for a specific amino acid in synthesizing protein molecules.

**COGNITION.** The act or process of knowing or perceiving.

**COGNITIVE.** Pertaining to the mental processes of memory, perception, judgment, and reasoning.

**COGNITIVE BEHAVIOR THERAPY (CBT).** A form of psychotherapy that aims to identify and modify the individual's inappropriate behavior as well as the underlying maladaptive thought processes.

**COGNITIVE RESTRUCTURING.** An approach to psychotherapy that focuses on helping patients examine distorted patterns of perception and thought in order to change their emotional responses to people and situations.

**COGNITIVE STYLE.** A way in which individuals work with and perform cognitive tasks such as reasoning, learning, thinking, understanding, making decisions, and using memory.

**COGNITIVE THERAPY.** Psychological treatment aimed at changing a person's way of thinking in order to change his or her behavior and emotional state.

**COGNITIVE-BEHAVIORAL THERAPY (CBT).** An approach to psychotherapy that emphasizes the correction of distorted thinking patterns and changing one's behaviors accordingly.

**COGWHEEL RIGIDITY.** An abnormal rigidity in muscles, characterized by jerky movements when the muscle is passively stretched.

**COITUS.** Sexual intercourse.

**COLD TURKEY.** A slang term for stopping the use of nicotine (or any other addictive drug) suddenly and completely.

**COMA.** Unconsciousness.

**COMMUNITY MENTAL HEALTH CENTERS.** Organizations that manage and deliver a comprehensive range of mental health services, education, and outreach to residents of a given community.

**COMMUNITY MENTAL HEALTH CENTERS ACT OF 1963.** Federal legislation providing grants for the operation of community mental health centers and related services.

**COMORBID PSYCHOPATHOLOGY.** The presence of other mental disorders in a patient together with the disorder that is the immediate focus of therapy.

**COMORBIDITY.** Association or presence of two or more mental disorders in the same patient. A disorder that is said to have a high degree of comorbidity is likely to occur in patients diagnosed with other

disorders that may share or reinforce some of its symptoms.

**COMPENSATORY.** Counterbalancing or offsetting. A compensatory strategy is one that makes up for or balances a weakness in some area of functioning.

**COMPETING BEHAVIORS.** Behaviors that interfere with the target behavior because they are preferred by the individual.

**COMPLEX SEIZURE.** In complex seizures, the person experiences impaired consciousness.

**COMPLIANCE.** In medicine or psychiatry, cooperation with a treatment plan or schedule of medications.

**COMPULSION.** A strong impulse to perform an act, particularly one that is irrational or contrary to one's will.

**COMPULSION.** A strong impulse to perform an act, particularly one that is irrational or contrary to one's will.

**COMPUTERIZED TOMOGRAPHY (CT) SCAN.** An imaging technique in which x rays are taken of the brain from several different angles and combined through a computer to provide an image of the brain.

**CONDUCT DISORDER.** A behavioral and emotional disorder of childhood and adolescence in which children display physical aggression and infringe on or violate the rights of others. Youths diagnosed with conduct disorder may set fires, exhibit cruelty toward animals or other children, sexually assault others, or lie and steal for personal gain.

**CONFABULATION.** The filling in of gaps in memory with false or imagined details.

**CONGENITAL.** Present at birth.

**CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE.** A condition characterized by abdominal pain, swelling in the lower extremities, and weakness caused by a reduced output of blood from the left side of the heart.

**CONGRUENCE.** A quality of the client-centered therapist, consisting of openness to the client.

**CONSEQUENCES.** Events that occur immediately after the target behavior.

**CONSTIPATION.** Difficult bowel movements caused by the infrequent production of hard stools.

**CONTINGENCIES.** Naturally occurring or artificially designated reinforcers or punishers that follow a behavior.

**CONTINUOUS POSITIVE AIRWAY PRESSURE (CPAP).**

A treatment for obstructive sleep apnea that uses a mask to deliver oxygen into the airway while the patient sleeps.

**CONTRACEPTIVE.** A method that prevents conception and pregnancy.

**CONTRAST (AGENT, MEDIUM).** A substance injected into the body that illuminates certain structures that would otherwise be hard to see on the radiograph (film).

**CONTROL GROUP.** A group in a research study that does not receive the experimental treatment. For example, in an experiment testing the effectiveness of a new drug, the control group might receive the current drug of choice while the experimental group receives the new drug under investigation.

**CONTROLLING BEHAVIORS.** Self-control strategies used to change the controlled or target behavior.

**CONVERSION.** In psychiatry, a process in which a repressed feeling, impulse, thought, or memory emerges in the form of a bodily symptom.

**CONVERSION DISORDER.** A type of somatoform disorder in which unconscious psychological conflicts or other factors take the form of physical symptoms that are produced unintentionally. Conversion disorder is part of the differential diagnosis of factitious disorder.

**CONVULSION.** A violent, involuntary contraction or series of contractions of muscles.

**CO-OCCURRING DISORDERS.** Sets of mental illnesses—usually substance abuse and at least one other Axis I or Axis II disorder—that appear together in a single individual. Also called dual diagnosis or comorbidity disorders.

**COPING.** In psychology, a term that refers to a person's patterns of response to stress.

**COPROLALIA.** A vocal tic characterized by uttering obscene, hostile, or inappropriate words. A motor tic characterized by obscene gestures is called copropraxia.

**CORONARY OCCLUSION.** Blockage of the arteries supplying the blood to the heart.

**CORPUS CALLOSUM.** (plural, corpora callosa) A thick bundle of nerve fibers lying deep in the brain that connects the two cerebral hemispheres and coordinates their functions.

**CORTEX.** Cerebral cortex; outer gray matter layer of the cerebrum of the brain controlling sensation, voluntary movements, reasoning, thinking, and memory. The prefrontal cortex is at the front of the brain, just under the area behind the human forehead.

**CORTICOSTEROIDS.** Any one of a number of hormonal steroid compounds that are derived from the adrenal gland.

**CORTISOL.** A steroid hormone released by the cortex (outer portion) of the adrenal gland when a person is under stress.

**COVERT.** Concealed, hidden, or disguised.

**CRACK.** A slang term for a form of cocaine that is smokable.

**CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE.** A degenerative disease of the central nervous system caused by a prion, or “slow virus.”

**CRITICAL INCIDENT.** Also known as a crisis event. An event that is stressful enough to overwhelm the coping skills of a person or group.

**CROSS-DRESSING.** Wearing clothing and other attire typically associated with the opposite sex.

**CRYSTALLIZED INTELLIGENCE.** A type of intelligence that reflects knowledge and skills influenced by a person’s sociocultural environment.

**CT SCAN.** An imaging technique that uses a computer to combine multiple x-ray images into a two-dimensional cross-sectional image.

**CUE.** Any behavior or event in a person’s environment that serves to stimulate a particular response. For example, the smell of liquor may be a cue for some people to pour themselves a drink.

**CUTOFF SCORES.** In psychological testing, scores that indicate the borderline between normal and impaired functioning.

**CYCLIC AMP.** A small molecule of adenosine monophosphate (AMP) that activates enzymes and increases the effects of hormones and other neurotransmitters.

**CYCLOTHYMIA.** A milder form of bipolar disorder that persists for a long period of time.

**CYCLOTHYMIC DISORDER.** A mood disorder in which hypomanic episodes and depressive episodes both occur over the course of at least two years during which time symptom-free periods last no more than two months.

**CYTOGENETICS.** The branch of biology that combines the study of genetic inheritance with the study of cell structure.

## D

**D1.** Dopamine receptor proteins.

**D2.** A dopamine receptor.

**DAWN SIMULATION.** A form of light therapy in which the patient is exposed while asleep to gradually brightening white light over a period of an hour and a half.

**DECISION-MAKERS.** In the context of this entry, the term refers to prison or court officials, treatment facility administrators, or family members.

**DECONDITIONING.** Loss of physical strength or stamina resulting from bed rest or lack of exercise.

**DEDUCTIBLE.** The amount of money that must be paid out of pocket by health-care consumers before the insurance provider will make payments.

**DEEP-BRAIN STIMULATION.** A surgical procedure used to treat disabling neurological symptoms such as those of Parkinson’s disease. It involves implanting a device that electrically stimulates specific areas of the brain.

**DEFENSE.** An unconscious mental process that protects the conscious mind from unacceptable or painful thoughts, impulses, or desires. Examples of defenses include denial, rationalization, projection, and repression.

**DEFENSE MECHANISMS.** Indirect strategies used to reduce anxiety rather than directly facing the issues causing the anxiety.

**DEFICIT SYNDROME OF SCHIZOPHRENIA.** A condition of schizophrenia in which the patient exhibits affective flattening, attention impairment, lack of speech, lack of socializing, and lack of motivation.

**DEINSTITUTIONALIZATION.** The process of moving people out of mental hospitals into treatment programs or halfway houses in local communities. With this movement, the responsibility for care shifted from large (often governmental) agencies to families and community organizations.

**DELIRIUM.** A disturbance of consciousness marked by confusion, difficulty paying attention, delusions, hallucinations, or restlessness.

**DELIRIUM TREMENS.** Serious alcohol withdrawal symptoms that must be treated in a hospital and that may include shaking, delirium, and hallucinations.

**DELTA-9-TETRAHYDROCANNABINOL(THC).** The primary active ingredient in marijuana.

**DELUSION.** An improbable or irrational belief or idea maintained in spite of evidence to the contrary. Delusions are often highly personal in nature.

**DELUSIONAL DISORDER OF THE PERSECUTORY TYPE.** A psychotic disorder characterized by a patient's belief that others are conspiring against him or her.

**DELUSIONS.** A condition in which a person experiences beliefs that are untrue.

**DEMENTIA.** A condition characterized by deficits in memory, cognition, personality, behavior, learning, and motor control. These manifestations impair an individual's ability to function and interact socially.

**DEMENTIA INFANTILIS.** Another term for childhood disintegrative disorder, used more frequently in the European medical literature. The Latin name literally means "early childhood dementia."

**DEMENTIA PRAECOX.** A late nineteenth-century term for schizophrenia.

**DENIAL.** A psychological defense mechanism that reduces anxiety by excluding recognition of an addiction or similar problem from the conscious mind.

**DEPENDENCE.** The adaptation of neurons and other physical processes to the use of a drug, followed by withdrawal symptoms when the drug is removed; physiological and/or psychological addiction.

**DEPENDENT PERSONALITY DISORDER.** Personality disorder characterized by a constant, unhealthy need to be liked and appreciated by others at all costs.

**DEPENDENT VARIABLE.** The outcome variable in an experiment. For example, in a test of the effects of a new drug for the treatment of a disease, the effects of the drug on the disease (i.e., the change in symptoms after taking the drug) would be the dependent variable.

**DEPERSONALIZATION.** A dissociative symptom in which the patient feels that his or her body is unreal, is changing, or is dissolving.

**DEPERSONALIZATION NEUROSIS.** Another name for depersonalization disorder.

**DEPRESSANT.** Something that slows down functioning.

**DEPRESSION.** A mental state characterized by excessive sadness. Other symptoms include altered sleep patterns, thoughts of suicide, difficulty concentrating, agitation, lack of energy, and loss of enjoyment in activities that are usually pleasurable.

**DEREALIZATION.** A dissociative symptom in which the external environment is perceived as unreal or dreamlike.

**DERVISH.** A person who belongs to one of the various mystical and ascetic Muslim orders, such as the Sufis. A whirling dervish meditates by whirling or spinning an ecstatic dance.

**DESENSITIZATION.** The reduction or elimination of an overly intense reaction to a cue by controlled repeated exposures to the cue.

**DESIGNER AMPHETAMINES.** Substances close in chemical structure to classic amphetamines that provide both stimulant and hallucinogenic effects.

**DETOXIFICATION.** A process in which the body is allowed to free itself of a drug while the symptoms of withdrawal are treated. It is the primary step in any treatment program for drug or alcohol abuse.

**DEVELOPMENTAL DELAY.** The failure to meet certain developmental milestones, such as sitting, walking, and talking, at the average age. Developmental delay may indicate a problem in development of the central nervous system.

**DEVELOPMENTAL DISABILITIES.** Disabilities that are present from birth and delay or prevent normal development, such as mental retardation or autism.

**DEXAMETHASONE TEST.** Serves as a marker of suicide risk by reflecting signaling activity between the brain and the adrenal gland.

**DEXFENFLURAMINE (REDUX).** A prescription appetite suppressant for weight loss that was withdrawn from the market due to unacceptable health risks.

**DEXTROMETHORPHAN.** A non-prescription cough suppressant.

**DIABETES MELLITUS.** A chronic disease affecting the metabolism of carbohydrates that is caused by insufficient production of insulin in the body.

**DIABETIC NEUROPATHY.** A condition in which the nerve endings, particularly in the legs and feet, become less sensitive. Minor injuries, such as blisters or callouses, are not felt and can thus become infected and become more serious problems.

**DIAGNOSTIC AND STATISTICAL MANUAL OF MENTAL DISORDERS.** A handbook for mental health professionals that includes lists of symptoms that indicate different mental disorders.

**DIATHERMY.** The use of heat to destroy abnormal cells; cauterization.

**DIATHESIS.** The medical term for predisposition. The stress/diathesis model is a diagram that is used to explain why some people are at greater risk of suicidal behavior than others.

**DIETHYLPROMION (TENUATE, TENUATE DOSPAN).** A prescription appetite suppressant currently on the market for weight loss.

**DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS.** The process of distinguishing one disorder from other, similar disorders.

**DIFFERENTIATION.** The ability to retain one's identity within a family system while maintaining emotional connections with the other members.

**DIGRAPH.** A pair of letters that represents a single speech sound. In English, the *th* in "thumb" and the *ei* in "vein" are examples of digraphs.

**DIOECIOUS.** A category of plants that reproduce sexually but have male and female reproductive organs on different individuals. Kava kava is a dioecious plant.

**DIPLOPIA.** A disorder of vision in which a single object appears double. Diplopia is sometimes called double vision.

**DISFLUENCY.** Disruptions, breakage, or blockages in the forward flow of speech.

**DISINGENUOUS.** Insincere, deceitful, dishonest.

**DISPLACEMENT.** A psychological process in which feelings originating from one source are expressed outwardly in terms of concern or preoccupation with an issue or problem that the patient considers more acceptable. In some BDD patients, obsession about the body includes displaced feelings, often related to a history of childhood abuse.

**DISSOCIATED.** Feelings of experiencing an altered state of reality, similar to a trance state. During the period of dissociation, the affected person may feel as if he or she is an observer instead of a participant in events, and may feel as if surroundings are unreal or distorted.

**DISSOCIATION.** A reaction to trauma in which the mind splits off certain aspects of the traumatic event from conscious awareness. Dissociation can affect the

patient's memory, sense of reality, and sense of identity.

**DISSOCIATIVE AMNESIA.** A dissociative disorder characterized by loss of memory for a period or periods of time in the patient's life. May occur as a result of a traumatic event.

**DISSOCIATIVE DISORDERS.** A group of disorders marked by the separation (dissociation) of perception, memory, personal identity, and consciousness. Depersonalization disorder is one of five dissociative disorders defined by *DSM-IV-TR*.

**DISSOCIATIVE IDENTITY DISORDER (DID).** Term that replaced multiple personality disorder. A condition in which two or more distinctive identities or personality states alternate in controlling a person's consciousness and behavior.

**DISTENSION.** The condition of being stretched or expanded, as the abdomen of a pregnant woman.

**DISULFIRAM.** A medication helps reinforce abstinence in people who are recovering from alcohol abuse. If a person taking disulfiram drinks even a small amount of alcohol, he or she experiences facial flushing, headache, nausea, and vomiting.

**DIURETIC.** A medication or substance given to increase the amount of urine excreted.

**DIZYGOTIC.** Developed from two fertilized ova. Dizygotic twins are sometimes called fraternal twins.

**DOMINANT HAND.** The hand that one prefers to use when performing various tasks such as writing or throwing an object.

**DOPAMINE.** A chemical in brain tissue that serves to transmit nerve impulses (is a neurotransmitter) and helps to regulate movement and emotions.

**DOUBLE ANXIETY.** Acute anxiety from a recent stressful event combined with underlying persistent anxiety associated with generalized anxiety disorder.

**DOUBLE-BLIND PLACEBO-CONTROLLED STUDY.** A study in which patients are divided into two groups—those who will receive a medication, and those who will receive a placebo (a pill that looks like the medication but has no active ingredients). Neither the patients nor their physicians know which pill any specific patient is receiving.

**DOUBLE-BLIND STUDY.** A research study in which neither the participants nor the professional giving them the drug or treatment know whether they are receiving the experimental treatment or a placebo or control treatment.

**DOUCHE.** A jet or current of water, often with a medication or cleansing agent dissolved in it, applied to a body cavity for medicinal or hygienic purposes.

**DOWNSYNDROME.** A genetic disorder characterized by an extra chromosome 21 (trisomy 21), mental retardation, and susceptibility to early-onset Alzheimer's disease.

**DREAM ANXIETY DISORDER.** Another name for nightmare disorder.

**DRUG ABUSE.** When an individual's repeated use of controlled substances, prescription or over-the-counter drugs, or alcohol causes damage to their health, thought processes, relationships, or functioning at work or school, they can be said to be practicing drug abuse. Using a substance for purposes other than which it is intended (such as inhaling gasoline fumes recreationally) can also be considered drug abuse.

**DRUG COURT.** A court that provides defendants with drug treatment programs, in exchange for a reduced or dismissed sentence.

**DSM.** Abbreviation for the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, a handbook for mental health professionals that includes lists of symptoms that indicate specific diagnoses. The text is periodically revised, and the latest version was published in 2000 and is called *DSM-IV-TR*, for Fourth Edition, Text Revised.

**DUE PROCESS.** A term referring to the regular administration of a system of laws that conform to fundamental legal principles and are applied without favor or prejudice to all citizens. In the context of involuntary commitment, due process means that people diagnosed with a mental illness cannot be deprived of equal protection under the laws of the United States on the basis of their diagnosis.

**DYSARTHRIA.** A group of speech disorders caused by disturbances in the strength or coordination of the muscles of the speech mechanism as a result of damage to the brain or nerves. Difficulty talking and speaking.

**DYSKINESIA.** Difficulty in performing voluntary muscular movements.

**DYSLEXIA.** A type of reading disorder.

**DYSMORPHIC.** Malformed.

**DYSpareunia.** Painful sexual intercourse.

**DYSPRAXIA.** Developmental dyspraxia is an impairment or immaturity of the organization of movement. It is a defect in the way the brain processes information, resulting in messages not being correctly

or fully transmitted. The term dyspraxia comes from the word "praxis", meaning "doing" or "acting". Dyspraxia is associated with problems of perception, language, and thought.

**DYSSOMNIAS.** Sleep disorders that affect the onset, duration, and quality of sleep.

**DYSTHYMIA.** Depression of low intensity.

**DYSTHYMIC DISORDER.** A mood disorder that is less severe than depression but usually more chronic.

**DYSTHYMIC DISORDER (DYSTHYMIA).** A mood disorder characterized by feelings of sadness, as well as excessive fatigue, low energy, disturbed sleep, poor concentration, feelings of hopelessness and/or low self-esteem. Symptoms persist for more than two years but are not severe enough to qualify for a diagnosis of major depressive disorder.

**DYSTONIA.** A neurological disorder characterized by involuntary muscle spasms. The spasms can cause a painful twisting of the body and difficulty walking or moving.

## E

**EATING DISORDER.** A type of psychological disorder characterized by disturbances in eating patterns, extreme concern about weight gain and unhealthy efforts to control weight.

**ECHOLALIA.** Meaningless repetition of words or phrases spoken by another.

**ECHOPRAXIA.** Imitation of another person's physical movements in a repetitious or senseless manner.

**ECSTASY.** Best known of the so-called designer amphetamines, also known as MDMA. It produces both stimulant and hallucinogenic effects.

**ECZEMA.** An inflammation of the skin characterized by itching and oozing of a clear fluid.

**EDEMA.** Abnormal accumulation of fluid in the interstitial spaces of bodily tissue.

**EGO.** In Freudian psychology, the conscious, rational part of the mind that experiences and reacts to the outside world.

**EGOCENTRICITY.** Self-centeredness.

**EJACULATION.** The discharge of semen by the male reproductive organs.

**ELECTROACUPUNCTURE.** A variation of acupuncture in which the practitioner stimulates the traditional acupuncture points electronically.

**ELECTROCARDIOGRAM (EKG).** A test that measures the electrical activity of the heart as it beats. An abnormal EKG can indicate possible cardiac disease.

**ELECTROCONVULSIVE THERAPY (ECT).** A controversial treatment in which controlled, low-dose electrical currents are used to cause a seizure. Although rarely used today, ECT is still sometimes used in the treatment of severe depression. The benefits of ECT in the treatment of depression are temporary.

**ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAPH (EEG).** An instrument that measures the electrical activity of the brain. The EEG traces the electrical activity in the form of wave patterns onto recording paper. Wave patterns that have sudden spikes or sharp waves strongly suggest seizures. An EEG with a seizure-type wave pattern is called an epileptiform EEG.

**ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAPHY (EEG).** A recording of the electric potentials of the brain from electrodes attached to the scalp.

**ELECTROLYTES.** Substances or elements that dissociate into electrically charged particles (ions) when dissolved in the blood. The electrolytes in human blood include potassium, magnesium, and chloride.

**ELECTRON.** One of the small particles that make up an atom. An electron has the same mass and amount of charge as a positron, but the electron has a negative charge.

**ELIMINATION.** The medical term for expelling waste from the body.

**EMETIC.** A medication intended to cause vomiting. Emetics are sometimes used in aversion therapy in place of electric shock. Their most common use in mainstream medicine is in treating accidental poisoning.

**EMPATHY.** A quality of the client-centered therapist, characterized by the therapist's conveying appreciation and understanding of the client's point of view.

**EMPIRICAL.** Verified by actual experience or by scientific experimentation.

**ENCEPHALITIS.** Inflammation of the brain.

**ENCEPHALOPATHY.** Brain disease that causes damage or degeneration.

**ENCOUNTER GROUPS.** A term coined by Carl Rogers for therapist-run groups that focus on

personal exploration, experiencing in the here-and-now (that is, feelings and interpersonal exchanges occurring in the group setting), and genuine concern and honesty among the members.

**ENDOCANNABINOIDs.** Cannabis-like compounds produced naturally in the human body.

**ENDOCRINE DYSFUNCTION.** A problem relating to inadequate or excessive production of hormones.

**ENDOGENOUS DEPRESSION.** Depression arising from causes within a person, such as chemical or hormonal imbalances.

**ENDOMETRIOSIS.** A condition in which the tissue that is normally present in the lining of the uterus grows elsewhere in the body.

**ENDORPHIN.** A neurotransmitter that acts like a natural opiate, relieving pain and producing euphoria.

**ENDORPHINS.** A group of peptide compounds released by the body in response to stress or traumatic injury. Endorphins react with opiate receptors in the brain to reduce or relieve pain.

**ENERGY.** The capability of producing force, performing work, or generating heat.

**ENFLEURAGE.** A technique for extracting essential oils from flower petals by placing them on a layer of purified fat.

**ENUREYSIS.** The inability to control urination; bed-wetting.

**ENZYMES.** Proteins that trigger chemical reactions in the body.

**EPHEBOPHILIA.** Sexual desire on the part of an adult for youths in the early stages of puberty, as distinct from prepubertal children.

**EPHEDRINE.** An amphetamine-like substance used as a nasal decongestant, diet drug or stimulant.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY.** The study of the causes, incidence, transmission, and control of diseases.

**EPILEPSY.** A neurological disorder characterized by the onset of seizures. Seizures are caused by a disturbance in the electrical activity in the brain and can cause loss of consciousness, muscle spasms, rhythmic movements, abnormal sensory experiences, or altered mental states.

**EPINEPHRINE.** A hormone secreted by the adrenal glands in response to stress.

**EPISODIC DYSCONTROL.** Another term for intermittent explosive disorder.

**EROTOMANIC DELUSIONS.** Eerotomanic delusions involve the mistaken conviction that someone is in love with the delusional person. Often, the love object is a public figure of some prominence, such as an actress, rock star, or political figure. David Letterman and Jodie Foster are celebrities who have both been victimized by persons with erotomanic delusions.

**ESSENTIAL FATTY ACIDS (EFAS).** a group of polyunsaturated fats that are essential to life and growth but cannot be produced by the body.

**ESSENTIAL OIL.** The product of special ducts or cells in the tissues of aromatic plants (or the sap of certain trees) that gives the plant its characteristic aroma and therapeutic properties. Essential oils are sometimes called volatile oils because they evaporate readily at room temperature.

**ESTROGEN.** The primary female sex hormone.

**ETIOLOGY.** The cause or origin of a disease or disorder. The word is also used to refer to the study of the causes of disease.

**EUPHORIA.** A feeling or state of well-being or elation.

**EUSTRESS.** A term that is sometimes used to refer to positive stress.

**EUTHANASIA.** The act of putting a person or animal to death painlessly or allowing them to die by withholding medical services, usually because of a painful and incurable disease. Mercy killing is another term for euthanasia.

**EUTHYMIA.** A feeling of well-being often associated with individuals with bipolar disorder when they are not having a manic or a depressive episode,

**EXECUTIVE FUNCTIONS.** A set of cognitive abilities that control and regulate other abilities and behaviors. Necessary for goal-directed behavior, they include the ability to initiate and stop actions, to monitor and change behavior as needed, and to plan future behavior when faced with novel tasks and situations.

**EXECUTIVE SKILLS.** Higher-level cognitive skills that are used when a person makes and carries out plans, organizes and performs complex tasks, etc.

**EXISTENTIAL FACTORS.** Realities of life including death, isolation, freedom, and meaninglessness that must be faced by all individuals.

**EXON.** A segment of DNA that is transcribed to RNA and encodes information about the protein sequence.

**EXPANSION MUTATION.** A genetic mutation caused by additional repetitions of a triplet, or trinucleotide sequence, during the process of genetic transmission. In Huntington's disease, the expansion mutation produces more of a toxic gene product.

**EXPERIENTIAL KNOWLEDGE.** Knowledge gained from experience, often practical, in contrast with theoretical or professional knowledge.

**EXPERIENTIAL THERAPY.** An approach to therapy that focuses on experiencing inner feelings, rather than talking about problems in a disconnected, intellectual way. Although it is based on person-centered therapy, experiential therapy is more directive because it uses techniques from a variety of therapeutic approaches to draw out a person's inner experiences.

**EXPERIMENTAL GROUP.** The group of participants in a research study who receive the experimental treatment or drug under investigation.

**EXPLICIT MEMORY.** Consciously recalled memory for facts or events.

**EXPOSURE THERAPY.** A form of cognitive-behavioral therapy in which patients suffering from phobias are exposed to their feared objects or situations while accompanied by the therapist. The length of exposure is gradually increased until the association between the feared situation and the patient's experienced panic symptoms is no longer present.

**EXPRESSIVE THERAPY.** An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to relieve the patient's symptoms through exploration of previously unconscious material, leading to greater insight and more adaptive behaviors.

**EXTENDED FAMILY FIELD.** A person's family of origin plus grandparents, in-laws, and other relatives.

**EXTENSIVE SUPPORT.** Ongoing daily support required to assist individuals in a specific adaptive area, such as daily help with preparing meals.

**EXTERNALIZING DISORDERS.** Mental disorders with primary symptoms that involve outward behavior as opposed to inner emotions.

**EXTINCTION.** The elimination or removal of a person's reaction to a cue as a result of exposure treatment.

**EXTRAPYRAMIDAL.** Brain structures located outside the pyramidal tracts of the central nervous system.

**EXTRAPYRAMIDAL MOVEMENT DISORDERS.** Involuntary movements that occur as a side effect of some psychiatric medications.

**EXTRAPYRAMIDAL SIDE EFFECTS.** A group of neurological side effects including muscle spasms, involuntary movements, and symptoms that resemble Parkinson's disease (also called drug-induced parkinsonism).

## F

**FACTITIOUS DISORDER.** A type of mental disturbance in which patients intentionally act physically or mentally ill without obvious benefits. It is distinguished from malingering by the absence of an obvious motive, and from conversion disorder by intentional production of symptoms.

**FACTOR ANALYSIS.** A statistical method for summarizing relationships between variables. For the HAS, factor analysis was utilized to determine the specific sets of symptoms relating to overall anxiety, somatic anxiety, and psychic anxiety.

**FADING.** Gradually decreasing the amount or frequency of a reinforcer so that the target behavior will begin to occur independent of any rewards.

**FAIR HOUSING ACT OF 1968.** Federal legislation regarding access to housing that prohibits discrimination based on race, color, national origin, sex, religion, disability, or familial status.

**FALSE-POSITIVE.** A test result that is positive for a specific condition or disorder, but this result is inaccurate.

**FAMILY SYSTEMS THEORY.** An approach to treatment that emphasizes the interdependency of family members rather than focusing on individuals in isolation from the family. This theory underlies the most influential forms of contemporary family therapy.

**FARADIC.** A type of discontinuous alternating electric current sometimes used in aversion therapy. It is named for Michael Faraday, an eminent British physicist.

**FASCIA (PLURAL, FASCIAE).** A band or sheath of connective tissue that covers, supports, or connects the muscles and the internal organs.

**FECES.** Waste products eliminated from the large intestine; excrement.

**FEEDBACK.** A reaction or response from others to a particular behavior or activity.

**FEEDBACK LOOP.** A naturally occurring process whereby individuals control their behavior by self-monitoring, self-evaluation, and self-reinforcement.

**FEMININITY.** Prescribed behavior for women, characterized by interpersonal warmth, passivity, and lack of aggression.

**"FEN/PHEN".** The commonly used name for a combination of fenfluramine and phentermine that is no longer available due to the withdrawal of fenfluramine from the market.

**FENFLURAMINE (PONDIMIN).** A prescription appetite suppressant for weight loss that was withdrawn from the market due to unacceptable health risks.

**FENG SHUI.** The Chinese method of arranging objects to increase positive energy flow.

**FETISHISM.** A paraphilia in which a person requires a nonliving object (or occasionally a nongenital part of the body, such as the partner's feet) in order to achieve sexual arousal and satisfaction.

**FETUS.** The stage of development between embryo and newborn.

**FIBROCYSTIC BREAST DISEASE.** A benign disorder of breast tissue characterized by fibrous saclike growths (cysts) that cause pain and tenderness.

**FIBROMYALGIA.** A condition in which a person experiences chronic pain in the muscles and soft tissues around joints.

**FIRST-RANK SYMPTOMS.** A list of symptoms that have been considered to be diagnostic of schizophrenia. They include delusions; somatic hallucinations; hearing voices commenting on one's behavior; and thought insertion or withdrawal. First-rank symptoms are sometimes called Schneiderian symptoms, after the name of Kurt Schneider, the German psychiatrist who listed them in 1959.

**FLASHBACK.** The re-emergence of a traumatic memory as a vivid recollection of sounds, images, and sensations associated with the trauma. The person having the flashback typically feels as if he or she is reliving the event.

**FLAVONOIDS.** Plant pigments that have a variety of effects on human physiology. Some of these pigments have anti-inflammatory, anti-carcinogenic, and antioxidant effects, for example.

**FLOODING.** A type of exposure treatment in which patients are exposed to anxiety-provoking or feared situations all at once and kept in it until the anxiety and fear subside.

**FLUID INTELLIGENCE.** A type of intelligence that involves inductive and deductive reasoning ability.

**FOCAL ELECTRICAL STIMULATION.** The application of electrical current during electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) or transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) to a localized area of the brain, rather than to a larger area.

**FOLIC ACID.** An essential B-vitamin that humans obtain through diet.

**FRONTAL LOBES.** The large lobes at the front of the brain responsible for reasoning, problem-solving, and logic.

**FOOD FREQUENCY QUESTIONNAIRE.** A listing of how often a person consumes foods from certain food groups in a given period of time.

**FORENSIC.** Pertaining to courtroom procedure or evidence used in courts of law.

**FORMICATION.** The sensation of bugs creeping on the skin.

**FREE-FLOATING.** A term used in psychiatry to describe anxiety that is unfocused or lacking an apparent cause or object.

**FREQUENCY DISTRIBUTION.** In statistics, the correspondence between a set of frequencies and the set of categories used to classify the group being tested.

**FRONTAL CORTEX.** The part of the human brain associated with aggressiveness and impulse control. Abnormalities in the frontal cortex are associated with an increased risk of suicide.

**FRONTAL LOBE.** A part of the brain that is involved in processes such as muscle movement, speech production, working memory, planning, reasoning, and judgment.

**FRONTAL LOBE DEMENTIA.** Dementia caused by a disorder, usually genetic, that affects the front portion of the brain.

**FRONTAL LOBES.** A region of the brain that influences higher mental functions often associated with intelligence, such as the ability to foresee the consequences of actions, planning, comprehension, and mood.

**FROTTEAGE.** The act of touching or rubbing against the body or genitals of a nonconsenting individual.

**FUGUE.** A dissociative experience during which those affected travel away from home, have amnesia regarding their past, and may be confused about their identity but otherwise appear normal.

**FUGUE STATE.** A form of amnesia in which the person appears to be conscious and to make rational

decisions, but upon recovery, the period is not remembered. Fugue states represent one type of reaction to traumatic experiences.

**FUNCTIONAL MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING.** A scanning technique that involves measuring variations in magnetic fields, and that is used to determine which areas of the living brain are most active.

## G

**GABA.** Gamma-aminobutyric acid, an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain.

**GADOLINIUM.** A very rare metallic element useful for its sensitivity to electromagnetic resonance, among other things. Traces of it can be injected into the body to enhance the MRI pictures.

**GALACTORRHEA.** Lactation occurring in the absence of pregnancy

**GAMMA AMINO BUTYRIC ACID (GABA).** A chemical messenger in the brain that provides neuronal inhibition.

**GAMMA RAY.** A high-energy photon, emitted by radioactive substances.

**GAMMA-AMINOBUTYRIC ACID (GABA).** A neurotransmitter that helps to lower or reduce the level of excitement in the nerves, leading to muscle relaxation, calmness, sleep, and the prevention of seizures.

**GANSER SYNDROME.** A rare subtype of factitious disorder accompanied by dissociative symptoms. It is most often seen in male patients under severe stress in prison or courtroom settings.

**GANTRY.** A name for the couch or table used in a CT scan. The patient lies on the gantry while it slides into the x-ray scanner.

**GAS CHROMATOGRAPHY/MASS SPECTROMETRY (GC/MS).** A definitive method of testing for specific drugs, used to confirm immunoassay results indicating drug use. GC/MS separates the substances present in the urine sample, then breaks them into unique molecular fragments, which are matched against a database of known substances.

**GASTRITIS.** Inflammation of the lining of the stomach.

**GATEWAY DRUG.** A mood-altering drug or substance, typically used by younger or new drug users, that may lead to the use of more dangerous drugs.

**GENDER DYSPHORIA.** A state of persistent discomfort or depression associated with one's gender role or biological sex.

**GENDER ROLE CONFLICT OR STRESS.** A negative psychological state resulting from a discrepancy between gender role expectations and how people actually think, feel, or behave.

**GENDER ROLES.** Stereotypical expectations regarding how one should think, behave, and feel depending on whether one is male or female.

**GENERALIZATION.** A person's ongoing use of new behaviors that were previously modeled for him or her. Generalization is also called transfer of training or maintenance.

**GENERALIZED ANXIETY DISORDER.** A mental disorder characterized by excessive and uncontrollable worry.

**GENERIC.** A term that refers to a medication that is not protected by a registered trademark.

**GENETIC POOL.** The genetic material of an entire population.

**GENOGRAM.** A family tree diagram that represents the names, birth order, sex, and relationships of the members of a family. Therapists use genograms to detect recurrent patterns in the family history and to help the members understand their problem(s).

**GENOME.** The total genetic makeup of a cell or organism. The human genome is the complete genetic constitution of a human being.

**GENOMIC IMPRINTING.** The process in which specific genes or DNA segments are modified during the development of sperm or egg cells in a parent-specific fashion. The modification is reversible and appears to include the addition or removal of methyl groups to specific areas within the DNA sequence.

**GENOTYPE.** The genetic makeup of an organism or a set of organisms. A person's genotype is the sum total of the genetic material transmitted from his or her parents.

**GESTALT.** A German word that means "form" or "structure." The Gestalt Closure subtest on the K-SNAP measures a person's ability to identify a whole object from a partially completed drawing of its form.

**GESTALT THERAPY.** A therapeutic approach that focuses on increasing awareness of feelings and impulses in the present.

**GHB.** GHB, or gamma hydroxybutyrate, is a central nervous system depressant that has been abused in the United States for euphoric, sedative, bodybuilding, and date-rape purposes.

**GILLBERG'S CRITERIA.** A six-item checklist for AS developed by Christopher Gillberg, a Swedish researcher. It is widely used in Europe as a diagnostic tool.

**GINGKO BILOBA.** A shade tree native to China with fan-shaped leaves and fleshy seeds with edible kernels. Gingko biloba extract is being studied as a possible complementary or adjunctive treatment for schizophrenia.

**GINSENG ABUSE SYNDROME.** A group of symptoms recognized by Chinese physicians as the result of excessive use of ginseng. The symptoms include dizziness, high blood pressure, restlessness, nausea, possible bleeding from the digestive tract, and skin rashes.

**GLANS.** The tip of the penis.

**GLAUCOMA.** A group of eye diseases characterized by increased pressure within the eye significant enough to damage eye tissue and structures. If untreated, glaucoma results in blindness.

**GLUTAMATE.** An excitatory amino acid neurotransmitter that carries messages to and from nerve cells in the brain.

**GLUTAMATERGIC SYSTEM.** The neurotransmitter system in the central nervous system that plays a role in memory formation and information processing, and that is believed to play a role in depression and other mood disorders.

**GLYCOGEN.** The form of the sugar, glucose, that is stored in the liver and muscles.

**GONADOTROPIN-RELEASING HORMONE.** A hormone produced by the brain that stimulates the pituitary gland to release hormones that trigger ovulation.

**GRAND MAL SEIZURE.** A seizure characterized by a sudden loss of consciousness that is immediately followed by generalized convulsions. Such a seizure is usually preceded by a sensory experience, called an aura, which provides a warning as to an impending convulsion.

**GRANDIOSE.** Having an exaggerated belief in one's importance or status. In some people, grandiosity may be so extreme as to be delusional.

**GRANDIOSE DELUSIONS.** Grandiose delusions magnify the person's importance; the delusional person may believe himself or herself to be a famous

person, to have magical superpowers, or to be someone in a position of enormous power (such as being the king or president).

**GRANDIOSITY.** Exaggerated and unrealistic self-importance; inflated self-assessment. Grandiosity is considered one of the core characteristics of persons diagnosed with NPD.

**GRIDIRON ABDOMEN.** An abdomen with a network of parallel scars from repeated surgical operations.

**GROUP COHESIVENESS.** The degree to which a group functions well in its assigned task; the importance the group develops to each of its members.

**GROUP PSYCHOTHERAPY.** A form of therapy in which a small, carefully selected group of individuals meets regularly with a therapist to assist each individual in emotional growth and personal problem solving.

**GROUP THERAPY.** Group interaction designed to provide support, correction through feedback, constructive criticism, and a forum for consultation and reference.

**GUANETHIDINE.** An antihypertensive drug used to treat high blood pressure.

**GUIDED IMAGERY.** Techniques where individuals actively imagine themselves in a scene (usually a different location, such as a relaxing beach, or a trigger situation where one handles the situation successfully), typically guided by another person describing the scene.

## H

**HABITUATION.** The reduction of a person's emotional or behavioral reaction to a cue by repeated or prolonged exposure.

**HALF-LIFE.** The time required for half of the atoms in a radioactive substance to disintegrate.

**HASHISH.** The dark, blackish resinous material that exudes from the leaves of the Indian hemp plant.

**HATHA YOGA.** The form of yoga most familiar to Westerners; often practiced as a form of physical therapy.

**HEALTH MAINTENANCE ORGANIZATION (HMO).** A type of managed care system that involves payment contracts with a group or panel of health-care providers.

**HEALTH MAINTENANCE ORGANIZATION ACT OF 1973.** Federal legislation that provided aid to develop HMOs.

**HEBEPHRENIC SCHIZOPHRENIA.** An older term for what is now known as the disorganized subtype of schizophrenia.

**HEMATEMESIS.** Vomiting blood. Hematemesis is a symptom that sometimes occurs with gastrointestinal ulcers made worse by high levels of caffeine consumption.

**HEMATOMA.** An accumulation of blood, often clotted, in a body tissue or organ, usually caused by a break or tear in a blood vessel.

**HEMIPLEGIA.** Paralysis of one side of the body.

**HEMISPHERE.** One side of the brain, right or left.

**HEPATITIS.** An inflammation of the liver that can be caused by a variety of factors.

**HIB DISEASE.** An infection caused by *Haemophilus influenzae*, type B (Hib). This disease mainly affects children under the age of five. In that age group, it is the leading cause of bacterial meningitis, pneumonia, joint and bone infections, and throat inflammations.

**HIERARCHY.** In exposure therapy, a list of feared items or situations, ranked from least fearsome to most fearsome.

**HIGH-DENSITY SEX OFFENSES.** Several offenses within a short period of time.

**HIGH-FUNCTIONING AUTISM (HFA).** A subcategory of autistic disorder consisting of children diagnosed with IQs of 70 or higher. Children with AS are often misdiagnosed as having HFA.

**HIPPOCAMPUS.** A part of the brain that is involved in memory formation and learning. The hippocampus is shaped like a curved ridge and belongs to an organ system called the limbic system.

**HISTAMINE.** Substance released during allergic reactions.

**HISTRIONIC.** Theatrical.

**HOLDING THERAPY.** A controversial treatment for autism, reactive attachment disorder, and other problems of children in which an adult holds a child despite any resistance from the child until the child submits and experiences an emotional release.

**HOLISTIC.** An approach to health care that emphasizes the totality of an individual's well-being, spiritual

and psychological as well as physical; and that situates a disease or disorder within that totality.

**HOMEOSTASIS.** The tendency of the physiological system in humans and other mammals to maintain its internal stability by means of a coordinated response to any stimulus that disturbs its normal condition.

**HOMOCYSTEINE.** A chemical that builds up in the blood when methionine is not properly processed. High blood levels of homocysteine increase the risk of heart disease and stroke.

**HORMONE.** A chemical signal produced in glands and carried by the blood to influence the functioning of bodily organs.

**HOST.** The dominant or main alter in a person with DID.

**HOT FLASHES.** Body-wide feelings of warmth and flushing.

**HUMAN POTENTIAL MOVEMENT.** A movement dating back to the beginning of the 1900s that reflected an altered perspective of human nature from inherently corrupt to inherently good.

**HUMANISTIC AND EXISTENTIAL THERAPIES.** Therapies that focus on achieving one's full potential, guided by subjective experience.

**HUMOR.** In ancient medicine, one of four body fluids (blood, phlegm, yellow bile, and black bile) that were thought to determine a person's basic constitution and personality.

**HUMORAL.** A term describing a hormonal substance secreted by an endocrine gland (such as the thyroid).

**HUNTINGTON'S DISEASE.** A hereditary disorder that appears in middle age and is characterized by gradual brain deterioration, progressive dementia, and loss of voluntary movement. It is sometimes called Huntington's chorea.

**HYDRATED.** A substance combined chemically with water.

**HYDROCEPHALUS.** The accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the ventricles of the brain.

**HYDROGEN.** The simplest, most common element known in the universe. It is composed of a single electron (negatively charged particle). It is the nuclear proton of hydrogen that makes MRI possible by reacting resonantly to radio waves while aligned in a magnetic field.

**HYDROMORPHONE.** An prescribed opiate (Dilaudid) that induces used to treat severe pain; also abused illegally.

**HYPERACTIVITY.** Behavior disturbances, usually in children and adolescents, that involve impulsiveness, low levels of concentration, and distractibility.

**HYPERAROUSAL.** A symptom of traumatic stress characterized by abnormally intense reactions to stimuli. A heightened startle response is one sign of hyperarousal.

**HYPEREMESIS GRAVIDARUM.** Uncontrollable nausea and vomiting associated with pregnancy. Acupuncture appears to be an effective treatment for women with this condition.

**HYPERPHAGIA.** An abnormally large appetite for food. Hyperphagia is one of the symptoms of Prader-Willi syndrome.

**HYPERSENSITIVE INTERNAL SUFFOCATION ALARM.** A sensitive alarm goes off and the affected person's brain sends the body false signals that not enough oxygen is being received, causing an increase in their breathing rate.

**HYPERSEXUALITY.** A clinically significant level of desire to engage in sexual behaviors.

**HYPERSOMNIA.** Excessive sleepiness and the inability to stay awake during the day.

**HYPERTENSION.** High blood pressure, often brought on by smoking, obesity, or other causes; one of the major causes of strokes.

**HYPERTENSIVE CRISIS.** A precipitous rise in high blood pressure that can lead to brain hemorrhage or heart failure.

**HYPERTHERMIA.** An abnormal increase in body temperature.

**HYPERTHYROIDISM.** Condition resulting from the thyroid glands secreting excessive thyroid hormone, causing increased basal metabolic rate, and causing an increased need for food to meet the demand of the metabolic activity; generally, however, weight loss results.

**HYPERVENTILATION.** A pattern of rapid, shallow breathing that is frequently found in patients with Rett disorder.

**HYPERVIGILANCE.** A state of abnormally intense wariness or watchfulness that is found in survivors of trauma or long-term abuse. Hypervigilance is sometimes described as "being on red alert all the time."

**HYPERVIGILANT.** Extreme attention and focus to both internal and external stimuli.

**HYPNAGOGIC HALLUCINATIONS.** Dreamlike auditory or visual hallucinations that occur while a person is falling asleep.

**HYPNOSIS.** The means by which a state of extreme relaxation and suggestibility is induced. Hypnosis is used to treat amnesia and identity disturbances that occur in people with dissociative disorders.

**HYPNOTHERAPY.** The use of an induced trance state, or hypnosis, as a therapy.

**HYPNOTIC.** A drug that produces drowsiness and facilitates the onset and maintenance of sleep.

**HYPOCHONDRIASIS.** A mental condition in which the affected person perceives illness or symptoms of illness when none exist.

**HYPOGONADISM.** Abnormally decreased gonad function with retardation of sexual development.

**HYPOKALEMIA.** Abnormally low levels of potassium in the blood. Hypokalemia is a potential medical emergency, as it can lead to disturbances in of the heart rhythm. Muscle cramps and pain are a common symptom of hypokalemia in bulimic patients.

**HYPOKINESIA.** A condition of abnormally diminished motor activity.

**HYPOMANIA.** A milder form of mania that involves increased mood and a decreased need for sleep.

**HYPOMANIC EPISODE.** A distinct period of time that lasts at least four days during which the individual's mood is consistently elevated, expansive, or irritable and is distinct from his or her usual nondepressed mood.

**HYPONATREMIA.** A condition characterized by an abnormally low concentration of sodium in the blood.

**HYPOPNEA.** Breathing that is too shallow to maintain adequate levels of oxygen in the blood.

**HYPOTENSION.** Low blood pressure.

**HYPOTHALAMIC-PITUITARY-ADRENAL (HPA) SYSTEM.** A part of the brain involved in the human stress response. The HPA system releases cortisol, the primary human stress hormone, and neurotransmitters that activate other brain structures associated with the fight-or-flight reaction. The HPA system appears to function in abnormal ways in patients diagnosed with

depersonalization disorder. It is sometimes called the HPA axis.

**HYPOTHALAMUS.** A part of the forebrain that controls heartbeat, body temperature, thirst, hunger, blood pressure, blood sugar levels, and other functions.

**HYPOTHALAMUS.** A part of the forebrain that controls heartbeat, body temperature, thirst, hunger, blood pressure, blood-sugar levels, and other functions.

**HYPOTHESIS.** An assumption, proposition, or educated guess that can be tested empirically.

**HYPOTHYROIDISM.** Thyroid gland that is abnormally low-functioning. A lowered metabolic rate results.

**HYPOVENTILATION.** An abnormally low level of blood oxygenation in the lungs.

**HYPOXIA.** Oxygen deficiency.

**HYSTERIA.** In nineteenth-century psychiatric use, a neurotic disorder characterized by violent emotional outbursts and disturbances of the sensory and motor (movement-related) functions. The term "hysterical neurosis" is still used by some psychiatrists as a synonym for conversion disorder.

## I

**ID.** A construct in Freudian psycho dynamic theory that represents the irrational, self-centered aspects of human thought.

**IDEAL WEIGHT.** A range of body weights recommended for generally healthy adults.

**IDENTIFIED PATIENT (IP).** The family member whose symptom has emerged or is most obvious.

**IDENTITY DIFFUSION.** A character formation that is scattered or spread around rather than an identity that becomes solidified or consolidated.

**IDIOGRAPHIC.** An approach to interpreting the results of a projective test within the context of the individual subject's record.

**IEP (INDIVIDUALIZED EDUCATION PLAN).** Under federal law governing special education, every child in public schools who is determined through assessment to have special mental disability needs has an IEP. An IEP is typically developed by a team of professionals that may include special education teachers, physical, occupational and speech therapists, psychologists, parents or guardians, and others who may be

called on to provide expertise. The team meets at least once a year to set goals for the next school year and to assess progress on already established goals. Parents who are not satisfied with school-based assessments have the right to ask for independent assessments that must be paid for by the school system.

**ILLUSION.** A misperception or misinterpretation in the presence of a real external stimulus.

**IMITATIVE BEHAVIOR.** Behaviors of a therapist or group member that are imitated, consciously or unconsciously, by other group members.

**IMMUNOASSAY.** The method used in routine or preliminary urine drug screening.

**IMMUNOSUPPRESSANT.** Medications that suppress or lower the body's immune system, primarily used to help the body accept a transplanted organ.

**IMPLICIT.** Implied or suggested without being clearly stated. Some critics of *DSM-IV-TR* maintain that its contributors based the criteria sets for certain disorders on an implicit notion of a mentally healthy human being.

**IMPLICIT MEMORY.** Unconsciously recalled memory for skills, procedures, or associations.

**IMPULSE CONTROL DISORDERS.** Group of disorders characterized by impulsive behavior, such as stealing.

**IN VIVO.** A Latin phrase that means "in life." In modeling and exposure therapies, it refers to practicing new behaviors in a real setting, as distinct from using imagery or imagined settings.

**INBORN ERROR OF METABOLISM.** A rare enzyme deficiency. Children with inborn errors of metabolism do not have certain enzymes that the body requires to maintain organ functions. Inborn errors of metabolism can cause brain damage and mental retardation if left untreated. Phenylketonuria is an inborn error of metabolism.

**INCEST.** Unlawful sexual contact between persons who are biologically related. Many therapists, however, use the term to refer to inappropriate sexual contact between any members of a family, including stepparents and stepsiblings.

**INCISORS.** The four teeth in the front of each jaw in humans. The incisors of patients with bulimia frequently show signs of erosion from stomach acid.

**INCONTINENCE.** The inability to control the release of urine or feces.

**INDEMNITY INSURANCE.** Insurance plans that pay on a fee-for-service basis in the event of illness or injury.

**INDEPENDENT VARIABLE.** The variable in an experiment that is manipulated by researchers in order to determine its effects. For example, in a test of the effects of a new drug on the treatment of a disease, whether or not the subjects received the new drug would be the independent variable.

**INDICES.** Scores based on performance in more than one area. On the WAIS, there are four index scores, each based on an individual's performance in more than one subtest.

**INDIVIDUAL EDUCATION PLAN (IEP).** A plan of instruction drawn up for an individual student who is having specific difficulties with mathematics, reading, or other skills necessary to progress beyond elementary school.

**INDIVIDUAL PSYCHOTHERAPY.** A relationship between therapist and patient designed to foster the patient's emotional growth and personal problem-solving skills.

**INFORMATION GIVING.** Imparting of information about a disease or condition as part of the therapeutic process.

**INFORMED CONSENT.** A legal document prepared as an agreement for treatment or nontreatment that requires physicians to disclose the benefits, risks, and alternatives of the treatment. Informed consent allows fully informed, rational patients to be involved in the choices about their health.

**INFUSION.** The most potent form of extraction of a herb into water. Infusions are steeped for a longer period of time than teas.

**INHALANTS.** A class of drugs that are inhaled in order for the user to experience a temporary "high." These chemicals include volatile solvents (liquids that vaporize at room temperature) and aerosols (sprays that contain solvents and propellants), and include glue, gasoline, paint thinner, hair spray, and others. They are dangerous because they can cause hallucinations, delusions, difficulty breathing, headache, nausea, vomiting, and even "sudden sniffing death." Inhalants can also cause permanent damage to the brain, lung, kidney, muscle, and heart.

**INSIDIOUS.** Proceeding gradually and inconspicuously but with serious effect. Schizophrenia sometimes has an insidious rather than an acute onset.

**INSOMNIA.** A chronic inability to sleep or to remain asleep throughout the night.

**INSTANT MESSAGING (IM).** A method of electronic communication that allows two or more people to communicate nearly instantaneously without using a chat room. Instant messaging is much like a telephone conversation with text messages. The sender types a message at his or her computer, which is then sent to and received at the other person's computer. Instant messaging can be used in much the same way as a private chat room.

**INSTITUTIONAL REVIEW BOARD.** A committee made up of scientists and lay people, which evaluates proposals for research studies, to determine whether they are designed ethically. All institutions that conduct research are required by law to have such a committee.

**INSULIN RESISTANCE.** The body's inability to utilize blood sugar, at times leading to diabetes

**INSULT.** In medicine, an injury or trauma to the brain or other part of the body.

**INTEGRATED SETTING.** Placing individuals in usual employment situations rather than making placements into sheltered workshops or other segregated settings.

**INTELLIGENCE QUOTIENT (IQ).** A measurement of intelligence obtained by dividing a person's mental age (determined by level of performance on an age-graded test) by his or her chronological age and multiplying by 100. For example, a ten-year-old with a mental age of thirteen would have an IQ of 130.

**INTERICTAL.** Occurring between seizures.

**INTERMEDIATE CARE FACILITY.** An inpatient facility that provides periodic nursing care.

**INTERNALIZING DISORDERS.** Mental disorders with primary symptoms that involve inner emotions as opposed to outward behavior.

**INTEROCEPTIVE.** Referring to stimuli or sensations that arise inside the body. In interoceptive exposure treatment, patients are asked to exercise or perform other actions that produce feared internal physical sensations.

**INTERPERSONAL LEARNING.** Learning that takes place via feedback from others.

**INTERPERSONAL THERAPY (IPT).** A form of treatment for depression that focuses on improving the patient's relationships with friends and family members.

**INTER-RATER RELIABILITY.** The degree to which judgments about a person are consistent among raters or diagnosticians.

**INTERVENTION.** A confrontation of a substance abuser by a group of interested people that propose immediate medical treatment. An intervention is also a method of treatment used in therapy.

**INTOXICATION.** The state that occurs with high doses of alcohol, characterized by loss of coordination and uninhibited behavior; drunkenness.

**INTRAMUSCULAR.** An injection that is given into a muscle.

**INTRAPSYCHIC.** Occurring inside a person's mind or psyche.

**INTRON.** A segment of DNA that interrupts an exon and that does not encode any information about the protein sequence.

**IONIZING RADIATION.** Electromagnetic radiation that can damage living tissue by disrupting and destroying individual cells. All types of nuclear decay radiation (including x rays) are potentially ionizing. Radio waves do not damage organic tissues they pass through.

**IPECAC.** The dried root of *Caephalis ipecacuanha*, a South American plant. Given in syrup form, ipecac is most commonly used to induce vomiting in cases of accidental poisoning.

**IQ.** Intelligence quotient, or a measure of the intelligence of an individual based on the results of a written test.

**IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME (IBS).** A condition affecting the small and large intestine, usually associated with emotional stress. There may be complaints of diarrhea and pain the lower abdomen.

**ISCHEMIA.** Localized anemia of tissues due to obstructed inflow of blood.

**ISOKINETICS.** A form of strength training that uses exercise machines to control the speed of muscle contraction.

**ISOMETRICS.** Exercises used in strength training that contract the muscles without moving the joints.

**ISOTONICS.** A form of strength training that uses weight lifting or rubberized exercise bands for resistance training.

**J**

**JAUNDICE.** A yellowing of the skin caused by excess bilirubin in the blood; a liver disorder.

**JOURNALING.** Involves writing out thoughts and feelings in an unstructured format. A “stream of consciousness” approach (writing whatever comes to mind) is suggested for greatest effectiveness.

**K**

**KAVALACTONES.** Medically active compounds in kava root that act as local anesthetics in the mouth and as minor tranquilizers

**KAVAPYRONES.** Compounds in kava root that act as muscle relaxants and anticonvulsants.

**KETAMINE.** An anesthetic used predominately by veterinarians to treat animals that can be used as a date-rape drug.

**KI.** The Japanese spelling of *qi*, the traditional Chinese term for vital energy or the life force.

**KILOGRAM.** A metric unit of weight. It equals 2.2 lbs.

**KLEPTOMANIA.** A disorder of impulse control characterized by repeated stealing or shoplifting of items that the person does not need.

**KORSAKOFF'S SYNDROME.** A disorder of the central nervous system resulting from long-term thiamin deficiency. It is characterized by amnesia, confusion, confabulation, and unsteady gait; and is most commonly seen in alcoholics.

**KUNDALINI.** In Indian yoga, a vital force or energy at the base of the spine that is activated or released by certain yoga postures or breathing techniques. This release is called the “awakening” of the kundalini. Some Westerners have had kundalini experiences that were diagnosed as psychotic episodes or symptoms of schizophrenia.

**L**

**LABIA.** The outside folds of tissue that surround the clitoris and the opening of the urethra in women.

**LABILE.** Subject to frequent change, particularly in reference to mood.

**LAPSE.** A single, isolated occurrence of a symptom or negative behavior.

**LARYNGOSPASM.** Spasms that close the vocal apparatus of the larynx (the organ of voice production).

**LATERALIZATION.** The control of specific neurological functions by one side of the brain or the other; for example, in most right-handed people, language functions are controlled by the left side of the brain and spatial and visual functions are controlled by the right side of the brain.

**LAXATIVE.** Substance or medication that encourages a bowel movement.

**LEAST RESTRICTIVE ENVIRONMENT.** Refers to care options that involve the least amount of restraint and the greatest degree of independence possible, while still meeting the individual’s needs and maintaining safety.

**LESION.** An injured, diseased, or damaged area.

**LEUKODYSTROPHY.** A disturbance of the white matter of the brain

**LEWY BODIES.** Areas of injury found on damaged nerve cells in certain parts of the brain associated with dementia.

**LEWY BODY DISEASE.** A type of dementia that resembles Alzheimer’s disease, but progresses more rapidly. Common symptoms include fluctuations in confusion and recurring visual hallucinations. In this disease, abnormal brain cells are distributed throughout the brain.

**LIBIDO.** Psychic energy or instinctual drive associated with sexual desire, pleasure, or creativity.

**LIDOCAINE.** A local anesthetic.

**LIMBIC SYSTEM.** A group of structures in the brain that includes the amygdala, hippocampus, olfactory bulbs, and hypothalamus. The limbic system is associated with homeostasis and the regulation and arousal of emotions.

**LIMITED SUPPORT.** A predetermined period of assistance required to deal with a specific event, such as training for a new job.

**LOCALIZATION.** The control of specific neurological functions by specific areas in the brain.

**LOCUS CERULEUS.** A part of the brain where the neurotransmitter causes excitation.

**LOFEXIDINE.** A medication approved for use in Great Britain to aid the opioid detoxification process.

**LOW AFFECT.** Severe lack of interest and emotions; emotional numbness.

**LUTEAL PHASE.** The period of time between ovulation and menstruation.

**LUX.** The International System unit for measuring illumination, equal to one lumen per square meter.

## M

**MACERATION.** A technique for extracting essential oils from plant leaves and stems by crushing the plant parts and soaking them in warm vegetable oil.

**MACHISMO.** The Latin American image of extreme masculinity that includes such qualities as concern for personal honor, virility, physical strength, heavy drinking, toughness, aggression, risk taking, authoritarianism, and self-centeredness.

**MACROSOCIAL.** Pertaining to the wider society, as distinct from such smaller social groupings as families, neighborhoods, etc.

**MAGNETIC FIELD.** The three-dimensional area surrounding a magnet, in which its force is active. During MRI, the patient's body is permeated by the force field of a superconducting magnet.

**MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING (MRI) SCAN.** An imaging technique in which magnetic fields, radio waves, and computer enhancement are used to create an image of brain structure.

**MAINTENANCE TREATMENT.** The period of treatment beginning after the initial introduction of the treatment medication. During this period, the dose of medication can be either increased or decreased, depending on the program and needs of the patient.

**MAJOR DEPRESSIVE DISORDER.** A clinical psychiatric diagnosis of chronic depressed mood that interferes with normal life activities.

**MALADROITNESS.** Another word for awkwardness or clumsiness.

**MALAISE.** The medical term for a general condition of unease, discomfort, or weakness.

**MALIGNANT GROWTH.** A cell growth or tumor that becomes progressively worse and that can metastasize elsewhere in the body.

**MALINGERING.** Knowingly pretending to be physically or mentally ill to avoid some unpleasant duty or responsibility, or for economic benefit.

**MANIA.** An elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state that is characteristic of bipolar I disorder. This state is characterized by mental and physical hyperactivity, disorganization of behavior, and inappropriate elevation of mood.

**MANIC.** Referring to mania, a state characterized by excessive activity, excitement or emotion.

**MANIC EPISODE.** A discrete period lasting at least a week during which a person experiences abnormally elevated, expansive, or irritable mood.

**MANTRA.** Originally, a sacred word or phrase repeated over and over to help focus the mind during meditation; in the Western world, this may refer to any repeated syllable, word, or phrase used to meditate.

**MAO.** Monoamine oxidase, an enzyme that degrades signaling molecules involved in mood maintenance.

**MAO INHIBITORS.** A group of antidepressant drugs that decrease the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**MAO-B INHIBITORS.** Inhibitors of dopamine or noradrenaline reuptake by monoamine oxidase.

**MAOI.** Monoamine oxidase inhibitor, a class of drugs that inhibits the enzyme monoamine oxidase.

**MARIJUANA.** The dried and shredded or chopped leaves of the Indian hemp plant.

**MASCULINITY.** Prescribed behavior for men, characterized by independence, strength, control, and avoidance of emotional expressiveness.

**MASOCHISM.** A mental disorder in which a person obtains sexual satisfaction through pain or humiliation inflicted by the self or by another person. The term is sometimes used more generally to refer to a tendency to find pleasure in submissiveness or self-denial.

**MASOCHISTIC TENDENCIES.** Tendencies to direct harm or hatred toward oneself.

**MATRIX.** In statistics, variables that may influence a particular outcome are placed into a grid, either in columns or in rows. Statistical calculations can be performed that assign different weights to each variable, and the differential weighting of variables can be seen to affect the outcome. In the Matrix model of drug abuse, the variables that affect a positive

outcome (such as behavioral techniques, family education or urinalysis testing) are all considered as important parts of a unified treatment plan.

**MAZINDOL (SANOREX, MAZANOR).** A prescription medication for weight loss currently on the market.

**MEAN.** The mathematical average of all scores in a set of scores. The WAIS has been standardized to have a mean of 100.

**MEDICAID.** A program jointly funded by state and federal governments that reimburses hospitals and physicians for the care of individuals who cannot pay for their own medical expenses. These individuals may be in low-income households or may have chronic disabilities.

**MEDICAID HOME AND COMMUNITY BASED-WAIVER.** Legislation regarding the use of Medicaid funds for care services; allows certain federal requirements to be bypassed so that states can use the funds more flexibly for accessing home- and community-based services rather than using hospitals or intermediate-care facilities.

**MEDICAL MODEL.** The basic conceptual framework in the West since the nineteenth century for understanding, researching, and classifying mental disorders.

**MEDICARE.** A federally funded health insurance program for individuals age 65 and older, and certain categories of younger persons with disabilities.

**MEDROXYPROGESTERONE ACETATE (MPA).** A female hormone that may be prescribed for male patients with sexual sadism or other paraphilic behaviors. MPA helps to control sexual urges in men by speeding up the clearance of testosterone from the bloodstream.

**MELANCHOLIA.** A form of severe depression characterized by weight loss, insomnia, and an inability to experience pleasure.

**MELATONIN.** A hormone produced by the pineal gland that is associated with sleep, and that may be useful in the treatment of some sleep disorders.

**MENARCHE.** The first menstrual period.

**MENINGES.** A membrane covering the brain and spinal cord that consists of three layers: the pia mater, the innermost layer; the arachnoid, in the middle; and the dura mater, the outermost layer.

**MENOPAUSE.** A period of decreasing hormonal activity in women, when ovulation stops and conception is no longer possible.

**MENTAL HEALTH COURT.** A court that offers treatment to mentally ill defendants, in exchange for a reduced or dismissed sentence.

**MENTAL RETARDATION.** Characterized by persistently slow learning and below normal intelligence.

**MERIDIANS.** In traditional Chinese medicine, a network of pathways or channels that convey qi (also sometimes spelled “ki”), or vital energy, through the body.

**MERYCISM.** Another name for rumination disorder.

**MESOLIMBIC PATHWAY.** The “sreward pathway” of the brain.

**META-ANALYSIS.** A statistical method that combines the results from a number of different completed studies to provide a larger sample size and a stronger evidence base for conclusion than available in any of the single studies.

**METABOLISM.** The group of biochemical processes within the body that release energy in support of life.

**METASTASIS.** Secondary cancer, or cancer that has spread from one body organ or tissue to another.

**METHADONE.** A drug often prescribed legally as a replacement for heroin. It induces a slight high but blocks heroin from producing a more powerful euphoric effect. It may be used in heroin detoxification to ease the process, or it may be used daily after detoxification as maintenance therapy. Methadone maintenance therapy is controversial.

**METHAMPHETAMINE.** The most common illegally produced amphetamine.

**METHIONINE.** An amino acid that, when not metabolized properly, allows homocysteine to build up in the blood. Folic acid aids methionine metabolism.

**METHYLPHENIDATE.** A central nervous system stimulant that alleviates the symptoms of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder.

**MIDDLE NOTE.** A term used in perfumery and aromatherapy to designate essential oils whose odors emerge later than “top notes” but evaporate more rapidly than “bottom notes.” Rosemary is considered a middle note in aromatherapy.

**MILLIGRAM (MG).** One-thousandth of a gram. A gram is the metric measure that equals about 0.035 ounces.

**MILLON CLINICAL MULTIAXIAL INVENTORY (MCMI-II).** A self-report instrument designed to help the clinician

assess DSM-IV-related personality disorders and clinical syndromes. It provides insight into 14 personality disorders and 10 clinical syndromes.

**MINNESOTA MULTIPHASIC PERSONALITY INVENTORY (MMPI-2).**

A comprehensive assessment tool widely used to diagnosed personality disorders.

**MIXED EPISODES.** Periods in which mania and depression coexist.

**MIXED MANIA/MIXED STATE.** A mental state in which symptoms of both depression and mania occur simultaneously.

**MODALITY.** A term used in medicine for a method of treatment. For example, multimodal treatment plans make use of more than one therapeutic modality.

**MODELING.** A type of teaching method used in social skills training. Therapists who use this method may offer positive and negative examples of the behaviors that make up a social skill.

**MONITORING THE FUTURE.** An ongoing study of the behaviors, attitudes, and values of secondary school students, college students, and young adults in the United States. It is carried out by the University of Michigan and is funded by the National Institute of Drug Abuse, a component of the U.S. National Institutes of Health.

**MONOAMINE OXIDASE (MAO) INHIBITORS.** A group of antidepressant drugs that decreases the activity of monoamine oxidase, a neurotransmitter found in the brain that affects mood.

**MONOGENIC.** Determined or controlled by a single gene. Huntington's disease is one of the few psychiatric disorders that is monogenic.

**MONOMANIA.** A nineteenth-century term for a pathological obsession with one idea or one social cause. Nineteenth-century psychiatrists often associated explosive behavior with monomania. The word is no longer used as a technical term.

**MONOZYGOTIC.** Developed from a single fertilized ovum. Monozygotic twins are sometimes called identical twins.

**MORBIDITY.** The unhealthiness or disease characteristics associated with a mental disorder.

**MOSAICISM.** A genetic condition in which some cells in an organism have one set of chromosomes and other cells have a different set.

**MOTIVATIONAL ENHANCEMENT THERAPY.** Therapy that focuses on increasing motivation for change by empathically comparing and contrasting the consequences and benefits of changing or not changing.

**MOTOR.** Involving muscle movement.

**MOTOR SKILLS.** Skills pertaining to or involving muscular movement.

**MOVEMENT EDUCATION.** A term that refers to the active phase of bodywork, in which clients learn to move with greater freedom and to maintain the proper alignment of their bodies.

**MOXIBUSTION.** A technique in traditional Chinese medicine that involves burning a *Moxa*, or cone of dried wormwood leaves, close to the skin to relieve pain. When used with acupuncture, the cone is placed on top of the needle at an acupuncture point and burned

**MRI.** Magnetic resonance imaging. A special imaging technique used to image internal parts of the body, especially soft tissues.

**MULTIAXIAL.** Refers to a type of classification system that involves numeric measurement along more than one dimension and is not based on assignment to mutually exclusive categories.

**MULTI-INFARCT DEMENTIA.** Dementia caused by damage to brain tissue resulting from a series of blood clots or clogs in the blood vessels. It is also called vascular dementia.

**MULTIMODAL.** Involving several types of therapeutic interventions such as heat or ice packs, electrical stimulation, ultrasound; sometimes refers to a mix of physical and psychological therapies.

**MULTIPLE PERSONALITY DISORDER (MPD).** An older term for dissociative identity disorder (DID).

**MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS.** A disease characterized by patches of hardened tissue in the brain or spinal cord, paralysis, and/or muscle tremors.

**MUSCLE DYSMORPHIA.** A subtype of BDD, described as excessive preoccupation with muscularity and bodybuilding to the point of interference with social, educational, or occupational functioning.

**MUSCLE LOAD.** The work that is produced by a muscle when it is strained with a movement (exercise).

**MUTATION.** A spontaneous change in the sequence of nucleotides in a chromosome or gene. Mutations may affect the number and structure of chromosomes or cause deletions of part of a chromosome. Rett

disorder is caused by a mutation on the long arm of the X chromosome.

**MUTISM.** Inability to speak due to conscious refusal or psychological inhibition.

**MYASTHENIA GRAVIS.** A disease characterized by weakness of the muscles caused by an autoimmune reaction.

**MYELIN SHEATHS.** A fatty layer around nerve cells that aids the transmission of nerve impulses.

**MYOCARDIAL DISEASE.** Disease of the muscular layer of the heart wall.

**MYOCLONUS.** An abrupt spasm or twitching in a muscle or group of muscles.

## N

**NALOXONE.** A drug that combines competitively with opiate receptors on the nerve cells and blocks or reverses the action of narcotic analgesics.

**NARCISSISTIC PERSONALITY DISORDER.** Personality characterized by continually exaggerating one's own positive qualities and refusing to recognize personal defects or flaws.

**NARCOLEPSY.** A disorder characterized by frequent and uncontrollable attacks of deep sleep.

**NARCOTHERAPY.** A form of psychotherapy that involves the administration of a drug that makes the patient drowsy.

**NARROW-ANGLE GLAUCOMA.** An eye disorder caused by a buildup of fluid pressure inside the eyeball due to an abnormally small angle between the iris (the colored portion of the eye) and the cornea (the transparent front part of the eye).

**NATIONAL SURVEY ON DRUG USE AND HEALTH.** A study that is carried out annually to estimate alcohol, tobacco, illicit drug, and nonmedical prescription drug use in the United States. It is sponsored the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, a component of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

**NATURAL SUPPORTS.** Using a person's already existing support network to help the person reach a goal, such as the employment of their choice.

**NEGATIVE SYMPTOMS.** Symptoms of schizophrenia that represent a loss or reduction of normal functioning.

**NEPHRITIS.** Inflammation of the kidney.

**NEURALGIA.** Pain that extends along the course of a nerve.

**NEUROCOGNITIVE DISORDERS.** Neurological disorders characterized by cognitive problems.

**NEUROLEPTIC.** Another name for antipsychotic medications, such as haloperidol (Haldol) and chlorpromazine (Thorazine).

**NEUROLEPTIC MALIGNANT SYNDROME (NMS).** An unusual but potentially serious complication that develops in some patients who have been treated with antipsychotic medications. NMS is characterized by changes in blood pressure, altered states of consciousness, rigid muscles, and fever. Untreated NMS can result in coma and death.

**NEUROLEPTIC-INDUCED ACUTE DYSTONIA.** A severe form of the neurological movement disorder caused by the use of neuroleptic drugs.

**NEUROLEPTIC-INDUCED AKATHISIA.** Refers to the disorder characterized by a physical restlessness (the inability to sit still, for example), and manifested by excessive voluntary movements, as a result of the use of neuroleptic drugs; research indicates it is likely the most common of neuroleptic-induced movement disorders.

**NEUROLEPTIC-INDUCED PARKINSONISM.** Symptoms similar to Parkinson's disease that may appear in people taking neuroleptic (antipsychotic) medications. These symptoms include tremors in muscles and a shuffling gait.

**NEUROLEPTIC-INDUCED TARDIVE DYSKINESIA.** A potentially irreversible neurological disorder caused by the use of antipsychotic/neuroleptic medications, with symptoms involving uncontrollable movement of various body parts.

**NEUROLOGIC.** Pertaining to the nervous system (brain and nerve cells).

**NEURONS.** Nerve cells in the brain that produce nerve impulses.

**NEUROPATHIC.** Relating to neural damage.

**NEUROPSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTIONING.** The ability of the nervous system and brain to process and interpret information received through the senses.

**NEUROTOXICITY.** Damage to brain structure or function.

**NEUROTRANSMISSION.** The conduction of a nerve impulse along a chain of nerve cells, which occurs

**when one cell in the chain secretes a chemical substance, called a neurotransmitter, onto a subsequent cell.**

**NEUROTRANSMITTER.** A chemical in the brain that transmits messages between neurons, or nerve cells.

**NICOTINE.** A poisonous chemical usually derived from the tobacco plant, whose affect on the brain begins within seven seconds after it is inhaled. It causes the adrenal glands to secrete epinephrine, a neurotransmitter that causes the user to experience a nearly immediate feeling of euphoria. The neurotransmitter dopamine is also released, increasing the feeling of well-being. Nicotine also elevates blood pressure, causes the release of glucose into the bloodstream, and increases the heart rate and respiration rate. Nicotine, with its near instant but short duration “high,” is extremely addictive, and its presence in tobacco products such as cigarettes, pipe tobacco, and chewing tobacco becomes even more dangerous due to other carcinogenic ingredients present in those products.

**NICOTINE REPLACEMENT THERAPY (NRT).** One of the three major pharmacologic interventions in smoking cessation. NRT works by replacing the delivery method of nicotine with chewing gum, a nicotine patch, nasal spray, or an “inhaler,” allowing the levels of nicotine to gradually decrease and helping the patients end their dependence.

**NIMBY PHENOMENON.** Acronym for Not In My Backyard, describing the common opposition displayed by citizens toward the placement of group homes or other social service facilities in their neighborhoods.

**NOMOTHETIC.** An approach to interpreting the results of a projective test in which the subject’s answers are measured against a normative comparison sample.

**NON-AMBULATORY.** Unable to walk.

**NONDIRECTIVE THERAPY.** An approach to therapy in which the therapist actively attempts to avoid giving advice, making interpretations, or otherwise influencing the focus of the individual’s thoughts or statements.

**NONDOMINANT HAND.** The hand that one does not typically use when performing various tasks such as writing or throwing an object.

**NONENDOGENOUS.** A factor that arises or is produced outside of the organism.

**NONINVASIVE.** A medical treatment that does not break the skin.

**NONVERBAL LEARNING DISABILITY (NLD).** A learning disability syndrome identified in 1989 that may overlap with some of the symptoms of AS.

**NORADRENERGIC.** Acts similarly to norepinephrine or noradrenaline.

**NOREPINEPHRINE.** A catecholamine neurotransmitter that acts to constrict blood vessels, raise blood pressure, and dilate the bronchi of the respiratory system. Caffeine increases the secretion of norepinephrine.

**NORMAL CURVE EQUIVALENTS.** Standard scores with an average of 100. The normal curve equivalents divide the normal or bell-shaped curve into 100 equal parts. As a result, those scores can be used for statistical analysis because they can be added, subtracted, multiplied and divided.

**NORMED.** Describes a process used in the developmental stages of a test instrument. The new test is first given to a cross-section of a population for which it is designed. The scores, placements, rankings, etc., of these persons then become the source for all future comparisons (norm group). When a new subject takes the test, his/her score, placement, ranking, etc., is determined based upon comparison with or deviation from the norm group.

**NOSOLOGY.** The branch of medicine that deals with the systematic classification of diseases and disorders.

**NUCLEAR FAMILY.** The basic family unit, consisting of father, mother, and their biological children.

**NUCLEOTIDE.** One of the molecules that form the building blocks of DNA or RNA. The nucleotides of DNA include a phosphate group, four chemical bases (adenine, cytosine, guanine, and thymine), and a sugar containing five carbon atoms. In RNA the thymine base is replaced by uracil.

**NUCLEUS ACCUMBENS.** A part of the brain involved in the mesolimbic reward pathway, which receives dopamine signaling from the ventral tegmental area.

**NYSTAGMUS.** A persistent involuntary movement of the eyes from side to side. It is one of the symptoms of inhalant intoxication syndrome.

## O

**OBJECT RELATIONS.** In psychology, a phrase that refers to the way in which a subject describes relationships with other people in their environment, and the

ways in which he or she has internalized interpersonal relationships.

**OBSSESSION.** A persistent image, idea, or desire that dominates a person's thoughts or feelings.

**OBSSESSIVE-COMPULSIVE.** Characterized by obsessive and compulsive behaviors.

**OBSSESSIVE-COMPULSIVE DISORDER.** A type of anxiety disorder characterized by repeated uncontrollable thoughts and repetitive actions.

**OBSTRUCTIVE SLEEP APNEA.** A complete or partial blockage of the airway that results in repeated awakenings during the night.

**OCCIPITAL BONE.** The occipital bone forms the back part of the skull.

**OEDIPAL CONFLICT.** A developmental conflict that emerges during the third or oedipal stage of Freud's psychosexual development stages. During this stage, a conflict emerges with regard to the triad of father, mother, and child. The conflict concerns the sexual impulses that the child has toward the parent of the opposite gender and the hostile impulses that the child has towards the parent of the same gender. During this stage, the developmental conflict concerns a resolution of oedipal issues.

**OLFACTORY NERVE.** The cranial nerve that regulates the sense of smell.

**ONSET.** The point in time at which the symptoms of a disorder first became apparent.

**OPERANT.** Conditioning in which the desired response is reinforced by an introduced stimulus.

**OPIATES.** A class of drugs that is either derived from opium (i.e., morphine, hydromorphone, oxymorphone, heroin, codeine, hydrocodone, oxycodeone) or resembles these opium derivatives (such as meperidine) and is commonly referred to as narcotics.

**OPIOIDS.** Substances that reduce pain and may induce sleep. Some opioids are endogenous, which means that they are produced within the human body. Other opioids are produced by plants or formulated synthetically in the laboratory.

**OPPOSITIONAL DEFIANT DISORDER.** An emotional and behavioral problem of children and adolescents characterized by defiant, hostile, or disobedient behavior that has lasted for longer than six months.

**ORAL PHASE.** The first of Freud's psychosexual stages of development in which satisfaction is focused

on the mouth and lips. During this stage sucking and eating are the primary means of gratification.

**ORGANIC BRAIN SYNDROME.** A class of disorders characterized by progressive deterioration of mental processes caused by temporary brain dysfunction or permanent brain damage. Symptoms include delusions, dementia, amnesia, and delirium that are not caused by drugs, alcohol, or as a side effect of medication.

**ORGASM.** Another word for sexual climax. In the male, orgasm is usually accompanied by ejaculation but may be experienced as distinct from ejaculation.

**ORIENTATION.** In psychiatry, the ability to locate oneself in one's environment with respect to time, place and people.

**ORLISTAT (XENICAL).** A prescription medication for weight loss currently on the market.

**ORTHOSTATIC HYPOTENSION.** A sudden decrease in blood pressure due to a change in body position, as when moving from a sitting to standing position.

**OSTEOPOROSIS.** The thinning of bone and loss of bone density.

**OUTCOME EXPECTANCIES.** What one believes will happen as a result of engaging in a certain behavior.

**OVERCOMPENSATION.** An attempt to overcome or correct a behavior by going too far in the opposite direction.

**OVERVALUED IDEA.** An unreasonable, sustained belief that is held with less than delusional intensity (i.e., the person can acknowledge, to some degree, that the belief may be false). The belief is not accounted for by the individual's cultural or religious background.

**OXIMETRY.** The measurement of blood oxygen levels.

**OXYMORON.** A figure of speech that involves a seeming contradiction, as in the phrase "making haste slowly."

## P

**PAIN DISORDER.** One of several somatoform disorders described in the revised, fourth edition of the mental health professional's handbook, the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. The term "somatoform" means that symptoms are physical but are not entirely understood as a consequence of a

general medical condition or as a direct effect of a substance, such as a drug.

**PAINSTATES.** Refers to the four-way classification of pain disorder as being (1) acute with psychological factors, (2) acute with psychological factors and a general medical condition, (3) chronic with psychological factors, and (4) chronic with psychological factors and a general medical condition.

**PANACEA.** A medicine or other substance regarded as a cure for all ills. Ginseng should not be considered a panacea.

**PANIC ATTACK.** Specific periods of time when a person has a feeling that s/he is dying or having a heart attack with chest pain, a feeling as though s/he could pass out, and fear that s/he is going insane.

**PANIC DISORDER.** An anxiety disorder in which an individual experiences sudden, debilitating attacks of intense fear.

**PANIC DISORDER WITH AGORAPHOBIA.** Repeated panic attacks in which the patient is worried about the attacks enough that the worry restricts their activity.

**PARAMETER.** A characteristic or factor that is measured during a test of a complex process or activity like sleep.

**PARANOIA.** A mental disorder characterized by baseless suspicions or distrust of others, often delusional in intensity.

**PARANOID PERSONALITY.** A personality disorder characterized by unwarranted suspicion, jealousy, hypersensitivity, social isolation and a tendency to detect malicious intent in the words and actions of others.

**PARAPHILIA.** A disorder that is characterized by recurrent intense sexual urges and sexually arousing fantasies generally involving (1) nonhuman objects, (2) the suffering or humiliation of oneself or one's partner (not merely simulated), or (3) children or other nonconsenting persons.

**PARASOMNIA.** A type of sleep disorder characterized by abnormal changes in behavior or body functions during sleep, specific stages of sleep, or the transition between sleeping and waking.

**PARCOPRESIS.** A type of social anxiety disorder in which a person is unable to have a bowel movement in a public place.

**PARESTHESIA.** An abnormal sensation of tingling or "pins and needles." Paresthesia is a common panic-like symptom associated with agoraphobia.

**PARKINSON'S DISEASE.** A disease of the nervous system most common in people over age 60, characterized by a shuffling gait, trembling of the fingers and hands, and muscle stiffness.

**PARKINSONIAN.** Related to symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease, a nervous system disorder characterized by abnormal muscle movement of the tongue, face, and neck, inability to walk or move quickly, walking in a shuffling manner, restlessness, and/or tremors.

**PARKINSONISM.** A condition caused by the destruction of the brain cells that produce dopamine (a neurotransmitter), and characterized by tremors of the fingers and hands, a shuffling gait, and muscular rigidity.

**PARTIAL AGONIST.** A substance that partially activates a receptor in the brain, while blocking the neurotransmitter for that receptor from binding to it.

**PARURESIS (ALSO REFERRED TO AS BASHFUL BLADDER SYNDROME, SHY BLADDER SYNDROME, OR PEE-PHOBIA).** A type of social anxiety disorder in which a person is unable to urinate in a public place.

**PASSIVE-AGGRESSIVE BEHAVIORS.** Behaviors that represent covert expressions of hostile or negative feelings that the person is unable or unwilling to express directly.

**PATHOGNOMONIC.** Describing symptoms characteristic of a particular disease.

**PATIENT CARE EPISODES.** A specific measure of the volume of care provided by an organization or system. It begins with a treatment visit to a health care facility (a hospital or residential treatment center, for example) and ends when a person leaves the facility, so it may vary by patient and visit. Over time, the volume of patient care episodes indicates the degree to which a population uses certain health care capacities. Other measures that may be used to measure volume of care include number of beds or bed-days, total number of patients served, and also more specific measures like patient-contact hours.

**PAVOR NOCTURNUS.** The Latin medical term for sleep terror disorder.

**PELVIS.** The basin-like cavity in the human body below the abdomen, enclosed by a framework of four bones.

**PENETRANCE.** In genetics, the frequency with which a specific gene produces its effects in a group of people or other organisms. Penetrance is expressed as a percentage.

**PENIS.** The external male sex organ.

**PERCENTILE RANK.** The point at which a given percentage of people fall at or below the individual's test score being calculated. For example, if a person's test score was at the 60th percentile, 40% of other test takers received a higher score, while 60% received a score that was at or below that of the test taker.

**PERFORMANCE ANXIETY.** A subcategory of circumscribed social phobia in which the patient's fear is limited to performing certain activities or tasks in public. Common areas of performance anxiety include public speaking, acting on stage, solo singing, and playing instrumental solos.

**PERINEAL.** An anatomical area located between the external genitals and the anus.

**PERIPHERAL NERVE.** A nerve in a distant location from the brain that receives information in the form of an impulse from the brain and spinal cord.

**PERSECUTORY DELUSIONS.** Unrealistic conviction of being harassed, tormented, and persecuted.

**PERSISTENT PULMONARY HYPERTENSION (PPHN).** A life-threatening disorder seen in newborn babies in which blood does not properly enter the lungs.

**PERSONALITY DISORDER.** A chronic pattern of behaving and relating to others that causes significant distress and impairs functioning.

**PERSONALITY INVENTORY.** A type of psychological test that is designed to assess a client's major personality traits, behavioral patterns, coping styles, and similar characteristics. The MMPI-2 is an example of a personality inventory.

**PERSONALIZATION.** The tendency to refer large-scale events or general patterns of events to the self in inappropriate ways. For example, a person who regards the loss of a friend or relative in an accident as punishment for having quarreled with them before the accident is said to be personalizing the event. Personalization increases a person's risk of developing ASD or PTSD after a traumatic event.

**PERSON-CENTERED PLANNING.** A technique in which a plan for a person's future is developed by a team consisting of the person, family members, service providers and friends (natural supports). The team develops a practical plan based on the person's wishes and dreams. Each team member agrees to perform certain tasks identified in the plan to help the person reach goals.

**PERSON-CENTERED THERAPY.** A therapeutic approach that believes the client's own drive toward growth and development is the most important factor in healing.

**PERVASIVE DEVELOPMENTAL DISORDERS (PDDs).** A category of childhood disorders that includes Asperger's syndrome and Rett disorder. The PDDs are sometimes referred to collectively as autistic spectrum disorders.

**PET.** Abbreviation for positron emission tomography, a highly specialized imaging technique using radioactive substances to identify active tumors, as well as neurological disease progression.

**PETECHIAE.** Pinpoint-sized hemorrhages in the skin or a mucous membrane. In bulimia, petechiae may appear in the skin around the eyes as a result of increased pressure in the capillaries caused by vomiting.

**PHARMACOTHERAPY.** Treatment with drugs.

**PHASE SHIFT HYPOTHESIS (PSH).** The theory that most SAD patients become depressed in the fall and winter because the later dawn at this time of year causes circadian rhythms to become out of synchronization with respect to clock time and the body's sleep-wake cycle.

**PHENCYCLIDINE.** The full name of the drug commonly called PCP that is often abused to induce hallucinations.

**PHENDIMETRAZINE (BONTRIL, PLEGINE, PRELU-2, X-TROZINE).** A prescription appetite suppressant for weight loss currently on the market.

**PHENOL.** A white crystalline water-soluble substance used chiefly as an antiseptic and disinfectant.

**PHENOMENOLOGICAL THERAPY.** A therapeutic approach that focuses on the interpretations individuals place on their experiences.

**PHENOTHIAZINE.** A class of drugs widely used in the treatment of psychosis.

**PHENOTYPE.** The observable signs, symptoms, and other aspects of the makeup of an organism. A person's phenotype is the observable signs, symptoms, and other aspects of his or her appearance. The term is also used sometimes to refer to the appearance of an organism resulting from the interaction between its genotype and its environment.

**PHENTERMINE (ADIPEX-P, FASTIN, IONAMIN, OBY-TRIM).** A prescription appetite suppressant currently on the market for weight loss.

**PHENYLKETONURIA.** (PKU) An inherited disease in which the body cannot metabolize the amino acid phenylalanine properly. If untreated, phenylketonuria can cause mental retardation.

**PHOBIA.** Irrational fear of places, things, or situations that lead to avoidance.

**PHONICS.** A method of teaching reading and spelling based on the phonetic interpretation of ordinary spelling.

**PHONOLOGICAL DISORDER.** A developmental disorder of childhood in which the child fails to use speech sounds that are appropriate for his or her age level and native language or dialect.

**PHOTON.** A light particle.

**PHOTOTHERAPY.** A treatment that exposes the patient to bright light at specific times during the sleep-wake cycle to readjust the circadian rhythm.

**PHYSICAL DEPENDENCE.** A maladaptive behavior that over a three-month period has caused the individual to experience tolerance and withdrawal symptoms.

**PHYSIOLOGY.** The branch of medicine concerned with biological processes or functions in the human body or any of its parts.

**PHYSOSTIGMINE.** A short-acting drug that enhances levels of a substance (acetylcholine) between neurons in the brain.

**PICK'S DISEASE.** A rare type of primary dementia that affects the frontal lobes of the brain. It is characterized by a progressive loss of social skills, language, and memory, leading to personality changes and sometimes loss of moral judgment.

**PLACEBO.** A preparation without pharmacological effect that is given in place of a drug in clinical trials to determine the effectiveness of the drug under study; a “sugar pill.”

**PLAQUE.** A sticky cholesterol-containing substance that builds up on the walls of blood vessels, reducing or blocking blood flow.

**PLAY THERAPY.** A type of psychotherapy for young children involving the use of toys and games to build a therapeutic relationship and encourage the child's self-expression.

**PNEUMOTHORAX.** A condition in which air or gas is present in the chest cavity.

**POLARITY THERAPY.** A form of energy therapy influenced by Ayurvedic medicine that integrates bodywork with diet, home exercises, and self-

awareness techniques. It is sometimes called polarity balancing.

**POLYGENIC.** A trait or disorder that is determined by a group of genes acting together. Most human characteristics, including height, weight, and general body build, are polygenic. Schizophrenia and late-onset Alzheimer's disease are considered polygenic disorders.

**POLYSOMNOGRAM.** A machine that is used to diagnose sleep disorders by measuring and recording a variety of body functions related to sleep, including heart rate, eye movements, brain waves, muscle activity, breathing, changes in blood oxygen concentration, and body position.

**POLYSOMNOGRAPHY.** A sleep study that assesses oxygen flow, brain waves, and other measurements to diagnose sleep disorders.

**PORPHYRIA.** A group of disorders that arise from changes in the metabolism of porphyrin, a naturally occurring compound in the body, and that are characterized by acute abdominal pain and neurological problems.

**PORPHYRIN.** Any iron- or magnesium-free pyrrole derivative occurring in many plant and animal tissues.

**POSITIVE AFFIRMATION STATEMENTS.** Statements repeated to oneself, either aloud or mentally, that reflect attitudes of self-worth.

**POSITIVE REINFORCEMENT.** A procedure or response that rewards a desired behavior.

**POSITIVE SYMPTOMS.** Symptoms of schizophrenia that represent excesses or distortions of normal mental functions.

**POSITRON.** One of the small particles that make up an atom. A positron has the same mass and amount of charge as an electron, but the positron has a positive charge.

**POSITRON EMISSION TOMOGRAPHY.** A technique that involves recording radioactive emissions from injected chemicals, and that is used to examine the activity of the living brain.

**POST-TRAUMATIC STRESS DISORDER.** A disorder caused by an extremely stressful or traumatic event (such as rape, act of war, or natural disaster) in which the trauma victim is haunted by flashbacks. In the flashbacks, the event is re-experienced in the present. Other symptoms include nightmares and feelings of anxiety.

**POSTURAL TREMOR.** A continuous quiver that affects body posture and movement.

**PRADER-WILLI SYNDROME.** A developmental disorder of childhood characterized by mental retardation; poor muscle tone; delayed growth and sexual maturation; and childhood onset of an abnormally large appetite for food.

**PRANA.** The Sanskrit word for vital energy, roughly equivalent to *qi* in traditional Chinese medicine.

**PRANAYAMA.** The breathing exercises that accompany the asanas in hatha yoga.

**PREECLAMPSIA.** A complication of pregnancy characterized by high blood pressure, fluid retention, and protein in the urine. If the patient develops convulsions, the condition is called eclampsia.

**PREFERRED PROVIDER ORGANIZATION (PPO).** A type of managed care system involving payment contracts with a group or panel of health-care providers.

**PREMENSTRUAL MOLIMINA.** The normal signs that indicate that menses will soon occur.

**PREMENSTRUAL SYNDROME.** A severe change in mood that occurs in women immediately prior to, and during, their menstrual period.

**PREMIUM.** The cost of enrollment in a health insurance plan. Premiums are usually paid on a monthly basis.

**PREGNATAL EXPOSURE.** Coming in contact with a fetus during pregnancy.

**PRESSURE ULCERS.** Also known as pressure sores or bed sores, these can develop in stroke patients who are unable to move. If not treated properly, they can become infected.

**PREVALENCE.** Occurrence in a population.

**PRIAPIST.** Persistent abnormal erection of the penis, usually without sexual desire, and accompanied by pain and tenderness.

**PRIMARY ENURESIS.** Bed-wetting in a child who has not yet developed bladder control.

**PRIMARY GAIN.** In psychiatry, the principal psychological reason for the development of a patient's symptoms. In conversion disorder, the primary gain from the symptom is the reduction of anxiety and the exclusion of an inner conflict from conscious awareness.

**PRIMARY NARCISSISM.** Sigmund Freud's term for a normal phase in early childhood development in which the infant has not yet learned to distinguish between itself and its world, and sees other people and things in its environment as extensions of itself.

**PRIMARY PERSONALITY.** The core personality of a patient with DID. In women, the primary personality is often timid and passive, and may be diagnosed as depressed.

**PRIMARY PROGRESSIVE APHASIA.** A disorder in which there is progressive loss of language skills.

**PRIMARY PULMONARY HYPERTENSION (PPH).** A rare but potentially fatal disorder that affects the blood vessels in the lungs

**PRION.** A protein particle that lacks nucleic acid.

**PROCESS ADDICTION.** An addiction to a mood-altering behavior or series of behaviors rather than a substance.

**PROCESS-EXPERIENTIAL THERAPIES.** A group of therapies based on a person-centered approach that incorporate elements of cognitive and Gestalt therapies.

**PRODROMAL.** Premonitory; having the character of a warning. The first psychotic episode in schizophrenia is often preceded by a prodromal phase.

**PROGRESSIVE MUSCLE RELAXATION.** Relaxation exercises where one slowly tenses and then relaxes each muscle group separately in a systematic order.

**PROGRESSIVE RELAXATION.** A technique for managing stress in which the person relaxes major muscle groups in a fixed sequence, often beginning with the feet and moving towards the head.

**PROJECTION.** A psychological process in which a person unconsciously attributes unacceptable feelings to someone else. Narcissists often project their envy onto other people, claiming that the person in question is envious of them.

**PROJECTIVE TEST.** A psychological test in which the test taker responds to or provides ambiguous, abstract, or unstructured stimuli, often in the form of pictures or drawings.

**PROLACTIN.** A hormone that stimulates milk production and breast development.

**PROSTAGLANDIN.** A chemical produced in the body, which is involved in many functions, including blood pressure regulation and inflammation.

**PROSTAGLANDINS.** A group of unsaturated fatty acids involved in the contraction of smooth muscle, control of inflammation, and many other body processes.

**PROSTATE GLAND.** The gland at the base of a male's urethra that produces a component of semen.

**PROTEIN KINASE.** An enzyme that catalyzes the addition of a phosphate group to a protein.

**PROTEIN PHOSPHATASE.** An enzyme that catalyzes the removal of a phosphate moiety from a protein.

**PSEUDODEMENTIA.** A term for a depression with symptoms resembling those of dementia. The term "dementia of depression" is now preferred.

**PSEUDOSEIZURE.** A fit that resembles an epileptic seizure but is not associated with abnormal electrical discharges in the patient's brain.

**PSYCHIATRIC EPIDEMIOLOGY.** A field of research for establishing the incidence, distribution or prevalence, and control of mental disorders in a population, including the sum of the factors controlling the presence of mental disorders.

**PSYCHIC NUMBING.** An inability to respond emotionally with normal intensity to people or situations; this affects positive emotions as well as fear or anger.

**PSYCHOACTIVE SUBSTANCE.** A drug that produces mood changes and distorted perceptions; mind-altering drug.

**PSYCHOANALYSIS.** A form of therapy based on the understanding that human beings are largely unaware of the mental processes that determine their thoughts, feelings, and behavior, and that psychological suffering can be alleviated by making those processes known to the individual.

**PSYCHOANALYTIC THEORY.** A psychological theory proposed by Sigmund Freud involving unconscious conflicts and specific stages of development; central themes include sexuality and male superiority.

**PSYCHOANALYTIC THERAPY.** Therapy based on the psycho dynamic theory of Sigmund Freud.

**PSYCHODRAMA.** A specific form of role play that focuses on acting out "scripts" of unresolved issues within the family, or helping family members adopt new approaches and understanding of one another.

**PSYCHODYNAMIC.** Referring to the motivational forces, unconscious as well as conscious, that form human attitudes and behavior.

**PSYCHODYNAMIC GROUPS.** Psychotherapy groups that utilize the principles of unconscious needs and motivations developed by Sigmund Freud.

**PSYCHODYNAMIC THEORISTS.** Therapists who believe that the origins of mental problems lie in a person's internal conflicts and complexes.

**PSYCHOEDUCATION.** An approach to treatment that combines instruction with various therapeutic techniques.

**PSYCHOGENIC.** Originating in the mind, or in a mental process or condition. The term "psychogenic" is sometimes used as a synonym for "conversion."

**PSYCHOLOGICAL ASSESSMENT.** A process of gathering and synthesizing information about a person's psychological makeup and history for a specific purpose, which may be educational, diagnostic, or forensic.

**PSYCHOMETRIC.** Pertaining to testing and measurement of mental or psychological abilities. Psychometric tests convert an individual's psychological traits and attributes into a numerical estimation or evaluation.

**PSYCHOMOTOR.** Referring to a response or reaction that involves both the brain and muscular movements.

**PSYCHOMOTOR RETARDATION.** Slowed mental and physical processes characteristic of a bipolar depressive episode.

**PSYCHOMOTOR SEIZURE.** A seizure characterized by electrical activity that is characterized by variable degrees of loss of consciousness and often accompanied by bizarre behavior.

**PSYCHONEUROTIC.** Pertaining to a neurosis or disorder of the brain. Informally, this is an emotionally unstable person.

**PSYCHOPATH.** A person who ruthlessly preys on others, using charm, deceit, violence or other methods that allows him or her to get what they want. Another word that is sometimes used for psychopath is sociopath.

**PSYCHOPATHY.** A psychological syndrome that includes lack of a conscience or sense of guilt, lack of empathy, egocentricity, pathological lying, repeated violations of social norms, disregard of the law, shallow emotions and a history of victimizing others.

**PSYCHOSEXUAL CONFLICTS.** In Freudian categories, internal conflicts related to problems at a particular stage of childhood development. Freud

associated each developmental stage with a particular part of the human body, such as the mouth or the phallus.

**PSYCHOSIS.** Severe state that is characterized by loss of contact with reality and deterioration in normal social functioning; examples are schizophrenia and paranoia. Psychosis is usually one feature of an overarching disorder, not a disorder in itself. (Plural: psychoses)

**PSYCHOSOCIAL.** A term that refers to the emotional and social aspects of psychological disorders.

**PSYCHOSOMATIC.** Physical disorder originating in, or aggravated by, the psychic or emotional processes of the individual.

**PSYCHOTHERAPY.** A form of therapy that involves discussion of mental problems in order to treat them.

**PSYCHOTIC.** Having a mental disorder characterized by disturbances of personality and a loss of normal association with reality.

**PSYCHOTROPIC.** Having an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**PSYCHOTROPIC DRUG.** Medication that has an effect on the mind, brain, behavior, perceptions, or emotions. Psychotropic medications are used to treat mental illnesses because they affect a patient's moods and perceptions.

**PTOSIS.** Drooping of the upper eyelid.

**PTSD.** Post-traumatic stress disorder, a psychiatric disorder precipitated by witnessing or experiencing an event involving serious injury or death. Those suffering from PTSD may experience such symptoms as nightmares, insomnia, flashbacks, and anxiety.

**PUNISHER.** Anything that causes a decrease of a particular behavior.

**PUNITIVE.** Concerned with, or directed toward, punishment.

**PURGE.** When a person rids extra food consumed by inducing vomiting, laxative abuse, or excessive exercise.

**PURGING.** Inappropriate actions taken to prevent weight gain, often after bingeing, including self-induced vomiting or the misuse of laxatives, diuretics, enemas, or other medications.

## Q

**QI.** The Chinese term for energy, life force, or vital force.

**QIGONG.** A traditional form of Chinese energy therapy that includes physical exercises, breathing techniques, postures, and mental discipline. Internal qigong refers to exercises practiced to maintain one's own health and vitality; external qigong refers to the transfer of energy from a qigong master to another person for healing purposes. External qigong is also known as medical qigong.

**QUICKENING.** A term that refers to the movements or other signs of life of a fetus in the womb.

## R

**RADIO WAVES.** Electromagnetic energy of the frequency range corresponding to that used in radio communications, usually 10,000 cycles per second to 300 billion cycles per second. Radio waves are the same as visible light, x rays, and all other types of electromagnetic radiation, but are of a higher frequency.

**RADIOLOGIST.** A medical doctor specially trained in radiology (x ray) interpretation and its use in the diagnosis of disease and injury.

**RANDOMIZATION.** The process of randomly assigning participants in an experiment to the various conditions (that is., experimental and control groups) so that each individual has an equal chance of being assigned to any of the groups. Randomization helps ensure that each of the groups is roughly the same and that the results are due to the treatment, not to the makeup of the groups.

**RANGE OF MOTION EXERCISE.** Exercises that increase movement of specific joints for flexibility and freedom.

**RAPID CYCLING.** A condition that occurs with bipolar disorder, in which the person cycles rapidly between manic and depressive symptoms.

**RAPID EYE MOVEMENT (REM) SLEEP.** The stage of sleep that is associated with rapid eye movements and dreaming.

**RAPPORT.** A relation of empathy and trust between a therapist and patient.

**RATIONAL EMOTIVE THERAPY.** A form of psychotherapy developed by Albert Ellis and other

psychotherapists based on the theory that emotional response is based on the subjective interpretation of events, not on the events themselves.

**RAYNAUD'S SYNDROME.** A disorder of the circulatory or vascular system characterized by abnormally cold hands and feet because of constricted blood vessels in these areas.

**REALITY TESTING.** A phrase that refers to a person's ability to distinguish between subjective feelings and objective reality. A person who knows that their body is real even though they may be experiencing it as unreal, for example, is said to have intact reality testing.

**REBOUND EFFECT.** A physical reaction to stopping a medication characterized by the reappearance of the symptom that the medication was given to suppress. For example, people who stop taking flurazepam may experience rebound insomnia.

**RECEPTOR.** A molecule, such as a protein, on a cell's surface that attaches to a specific substance.

**RECIDIVISM.** The likelihood of committing another crime.

**REFERENTIAL.** A type of delusion in which the person misinterprets items, minor occurrences, or other people's behavior as referring to them. Misinterpretations of this sort that are not as resistant to reality as a delusion are sometimes called ideas of reference.

**REFOCUSING TECHNIQUES.** Techniques that direct one's attention away from overwhelming, negative thoughts and emotions by focusing on inner peace and managing one issue at a time.

**REGIMEN.** A regulated course of treatment for a medical or mental disorder.

**REGISTERED DIETITIAN.** A person who has met certain education and experience standards and is well-qualified to provide nutrition counseling.

**REGURGITATION.** The return of partly digested food from the stomach to the mouth. Regurgitation may be either an intentional act or an involuntary physical reaction.

**REHABILITATIVE.** To restore; to put back into good condition.

**REIKI.** A form of energy therapy that originated in Japan. Reiki practitioners hold their hands on or slightly above specific points on the patient's body in order to convey universal life energy to that area for healing.

**REINFORCEMENT.** A term that refers to the ability of a drug or substance to produce effects that will make the user want to take it again.

**REINFORCEMENT SCHEDULE.** The frequency and amount of reinforcers administered.

**REINFORCER.** Anything that causes an increase of a particular behavior.

**RELAPSE.** A person experiences a relapse when he or she re-engages in a behavior that is harmful and that he or she was trying to change or eliminate. Relapse is a common occurrence after treatment for many disorders, including addictions and eating disorders.

**RELAXATION RESPONSE.** The body's deactivation of stress responses and return of stress hormone levels to normal after a threat has passed.

**RELIABILITY.** The ability of a test to yield consistent, repeatable results.

**REMISSION.** In the course of an illness or disorder, a period of time when symptoms are absent.

**REPETITIVE STRESS INJURY (RSI).** A type of injury to the musculoskeletal and nervous systems associated with occupational strain or overuse of a specific part of the body. Bodywork therapies are often recommended to people suffering from RSIs.

**REPRESENTATIVE SAMPLE.** A subset of the overall population of interest that is chosen so that it accurately displays the same essential characteristics of the larger population in the same proportion.

**RESEARCH SUBJECT.** A participant in a research experiment or clinical trial.

**RESERPINE.** Medication to treat high blood pressure. Brand names include Serpalan, Novoreserpine, and Reserfia.

**RESPIRATORY DEPRESSION.** A significant impairment of the respiratory system.

**RESPONSE COST.** A behavioral technique that involves removing a stimulus from an individual's environment so that the response that directly precedes the removal is weakened. In a token economy system, response cost is a form of punishment involving loss of tokens due to inappropriate behavior, which consequently results in decreased ability to purchase backup reinforcers.

**RESPONSE-CONTINGENT.** An approach to treatment in which rewards or punishments are given in

response to a particular behavior to be encouraged or corrected.

**RESTLESS LEGS SYNDROME.** A tingling, creeping sensation in the legs that produces an uncontrollable urge to move.

**RETROGRADE AMNESIA.** Amnesia for events that occurred before a traumatic injury.

**RETROPERITONEAL.** The anatomical area between the peritoneum (lining of the abdominal cavity) and the muscular and connective tissues of the abdominal wall.

**RHIZOME.** The fleshy underground horizontal root of certain plants. Valerian preparations are made from dried rhizomes as well as from roots of the valerian plant.

**RISK ASSESSMENT.** The process of gathering and interpreting data useful in estimating the probability that an individual will demonstrate sexual violence.

**RISK MANAGEMENT PLAN.** Using the results of a risk assessment to tailor intervention strategies intended to reduce the probability that an individual will demonstrate violence.

**ROHYPNOL.** Rohypnol, or flunitrazepam, is a central nervous system depressant that is not legal in the United States, but is used as a date-rape drug.

**ROLE.** The set of customary or expected behavior patterns associated with a particular position or function in society. For example, a person's role as mother is associated with one set of expected behaviors, and her role as a worker with a very different set.

**ROLE TRANSITION.** Life changes that require an alteration in one's social or occupational status or self-image.

**ROLE-PLAYING.** A technique used in social skills training and therapy in which participants act out roles relevant to real-life situations in order to change their attitudes and behaviors.

**RORSCHACH PSYCHODIAGNOSTIC TEST.** This series of 10 "ink blot" images allows the patient to project their interpretations which can be used to diagnose particular disorders.

**RUMINATE.** To chew or rechew regurgitated food.

**RUMINATION.** A tendency to dwell on certain thoughts, particularly negative ones, repeatedly or obsessively.

**RUSH.** The initial intensely pleasurable sensation experienced from injecting a narcotic or stimulant

drug. The term has also been applied to the feeling of excitement experienced from the behaviors involved in process addictions.

## I S

**SADISM.** A mental disorder in which sexual arousal and gratification are obtained by inflicting pain or humiliation on another person.

**SCALE.** A subset of test items from a multi-item test.

**SCAPEGOATING.** The emergence of behavioral problems in one family member, usually the identified patient, who is often punished for problems within the entire family.

**SCHILDER'S DISEASE.** A disturbance of the white matter of the brain that causes blindness, deafness, and mental deterioration

**SCHIZOAFFECTIVE DISORDER.** A mental disorder that shows a combination of symptoms of mania and schizophrenia.

**SCHIZOPHRENIA.** A severe mental illness in which a person has difficulty distinguishing what is real from what is not real. It is often characterized by hallucinations, delusions, language and communication disturbances, and withdrawal from people and social activities.

**SCHNEIDERIAN SYMPTOMS.** Another name for first-rank symptoms of schizophrenia.

**SCOLIOSIS.** An abnormal lateral (sidewise) curvature of the spine. Many patients with RS develop scoliosis after puberty.

**SCREENING TEST.** A test given as a preliminary tool, that helps to later target a more thorough analysis.

**SEASONAL AFFECTIVE DISORDER (SAD).** A mood disorder characterized by depression, weight gain, and sleepiness during the winter months. An estimated 4–6% of the population of Canada and the northern United States suffers from SAD.

**SECONDARY BEHAVIORS.** Negative behavioral, emotional, or cognitive reactions to stuttering.

**SECONDARY ENURESIS.** Bed-wetting in a child who has established bladder control but has begun to wet the bed again, usually as the result of emotional stress.

**SECONDARY GAIN.** The advantage gained by having symptoms.

**SECTION 504.** This section of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 provides that no person may be discriminated against because of a physical disability. For instance, a child who uses a wheelchair. If a science class is on the second floor and the building has no elevator, the school must find a way to ensure that children in wheelchairs have access to that science class. An educational plan for a child who has both cognitive and physical disabilities is developed under an IEP.

**SEDATION.** A state of emotional or physical relaxation. The term is usually used to refer to this condition when it is produced by a medication.

**SEDATIVE.** A drug that decreases activity and calms the recipient.

**SELECTIVE SEROTONIN REUPTAKE INHIBITOR (SSRI).** An antidepressant drug that controls the balance of serotonin in the body.

**SELF MUTILATION, SELF HARM, SELF INJURY.** Intentional injury to one's own body tissues without an accompanying, conscious intention to commit suicide.

**SELF-ACTUALIZATION.** The belief that all human beings have an inborn tendency toward growth and self-improvement.

**SELF-CONCEPT.** Attitudes about oneself.

**SELF-EFFICACY.** One's belief about how well he or she can perform a given task, regardless of that person's actual ability.

**SELF-HELP GROUPS.** Groups that fall outside the realm of psychotherapy groups, but that offer help to individuals around a particular problem or concern. These groups typically are not professionally led.

**SELF-INSTRUCTIONAL TRAINING.** Teaches individuals to become aware of their self-statements, evaluate whether these self-statements are helpful or hindering, and replace maladaptive self-statements with adaptive ones.

**SELF-RATED.** A term in psychological testing that means that the person taking the test is the one who decides whether a question applies to them and records the answer, as distinct from an examiner's evaluating and recording answers.

**SEMANTIC DEMENTIA.** A disorder in which there is progressive loss of knowledge about words and word meanings.

**SEMANTIC-PRAGMATIC DISORDER.** A term that refers to the difficulty that children with AS and some forms of autism have with pragmatic language

skills. Pragmatic language skills include knowing the proper tone of voice for a given context, using humor appropriately, making eye contact with a conversation partner, maintaining the appropriate volume of one's voice, etc.

**SEmen.** A thick whitish fluid containing sperm, produced by the male reproductive organs.

**SEMINAL VESICLES.** Sac-like structures bordering the male urethra and serving as storage depots for the seminal fluid.

**SENSITIVITY TRAINING.** Training conducted in T-groups to reduce tensions and racial prejudice among the public.

**SENSITIZATION.** To make sensitive or susceptible.

**SENSORY INTEGRATION THERAPY.** A treatment that was originally designed for children with autism. Sensory integration therapy is often performed by occupational or physical therapists; its goal is to help the child with autism or CDD process information acquired through the senses (hearing, touch, taste, and smell as well as sight) more effectively.

**SEQUELA (PLURAL, SEQUELAE).** An abnormal condition resulting from a previous disease or disorder. An episode of depression is a common sequela of acute stress disorder.

**SEROTONERGIC.** Containing, activating, or otherwise involving serotonin, which is a chemical that aids in the transmission of nerve impulses.

**SEROTONIN.** A widely distributed neurotransmitter that is found in blood platelets, the lining of the digestive tract, and the brain, and that works in combination with norepinephrine. It causes very powerful contractions of smooth muscle, and is associated with mood, attention, emotions, and sleep. Low levels of serotonin are associated with depression.

**SEROTONIN SYNDROME.** A condition characterized by at least three of the following symptoms: diarrhea, fever, extreme perspiration, mood or behavior changes, overactive reflexes, fast heart rate, restlessness, shivering or shaking. It is a result of too much serotonin in the body.

**SEX HORMONES.** Those hormones that are responsible for sex effects and reproductive function.

**SEXUAL VIOLENCE.** Actual, attempted, or threatened sexual contact with a person who is nonconsenting or unable to give consent.

**SHAMAN.** In certain indigenous tribes or groups, a person who acts as an intermediary between the

natural and supernatural worlds. Shamans are regarded as having the power or ability to cure illnesses.

**SHAPING.** A technique used in teaching social skills by prompting and reinforcing behaviors that come close to the desired behavior.

**SHIFT.** The transition of control from one alter to another in a person with DID. Usually shifts occur rapidly, within seconds, but in some cases a more gradual changeover is observed. Also referred to as a switch.

**SHORT-CIRCUITING OF CONTINGENCIES.** The proper reinforcer or punisher for a given behavior is not administered.

**SIBLING RIVALRY.** Competition among brothers and sisters in a nuclear family. It is considered to be an important influence in shaping the personalities of children who grow up in middle-class Western societies but less relevant in traditional African and Asian cultures.

**SIMPLE PHOBIA.** An older term for specific phobia.

**SIMPLE SEIZURE.** Simple partial seizures occur in patients who are conscious.

**SKILLED NURSING FACILITY.** An inpatient facility that provides 24-hour nursing services to individuals in need of extended care.

**SLE (SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS).** An autoimmune disease that leads to inflammation and damage to various body tissues and parts, including joints, skin, kidneys, heart, lungs, blood vessels, and brain.

**SLEEP APNEA.** Temporary stoppage of breathing during sleep that occurs often enough to significantly disrupt the patient's sleeping pattern.

**SLEEP PARALYSIS.** A symptom of narcolepsy in which the individual feels awake but unable to move.

**SLEEP TERROR DISORDER.** A sleep disorder that is distinguished from nightmare disorder by the intensity of associated anxiety symptoms, the absence of complete wakefulness, and the person's difficulty recalling the episode.

**SLEEPING DISORDERS.** Disorders in which people experience disturbances of sleep.

**SLOW SUICIDE.** A term used to refer to lifestyle behaviors known to shorten life expectancy, such as smoking, drinking heavily, having unsafe sex, etc.

**SOCIAL ANXIETY DISORDER.** A condition in which a person feels intense anxiety during normal social situations.

**SOCIAL COGNITIVE THEORY.** The theory that behavior is determined by an interaction between cognitive, behavioral, and environmental factors.

**SOCIAL LEARNING.** Learning by observing others' responses and acquiring those responses through imitation of the role model(s).

**SOCIAL MODELING.** A process of learning behavioral and emotional response patterns from observing one's parents or other adults. Some researchers think that social modeling plays a part in the development of social phobia.

**SOCIAL PERSPECTIVE-TAKING.** A skill that involves a person's capacity to perceive or recognize other people's thoughts and feelings.

**SOCIALIZATION.** The process whereby social influences and demands shape one's values, beliefs, or behavior.

**SOLUTION-FOCUSED THERAPY.** A type of therapy that involves concrete goals and an emphasis on future direction rather than past experiences.

**SOMATIC.** Relating to the body or to the physical.

**SOMATIC CONCERN.** Excessive concern about the body, particularly in relation to illness.

**SOMATIC EDUCATION.** A term used in both Hellerwork and the Feldenkrais method to describe the integration of bodywork with self-awareness, intelligence, and imagination.

**SOMATIZATION.** When mental or emotional distress is expressed physically in a way that disrupts body function.

**SOMATIZATION DISORDER.** A type of mental disorder in which the patient suffers from physical complaints that serve as coping strategies for emotional distress.

**SOMATOFORM.** Referring to physical symptoms with a psychological origin.

**SOMATOFORM DISORDERS.** A group of psychiatric disorders in the *DSM-IV-TR* classification that are characterized by the patient's concern with external physical symptoms or complaints. Hypochondriasis is classified as a somatoform disorder.

**SPECIFIC PHOBIA.** A type of phobia in which the object or situation that arouses fear is clearly

**identifiable and limited.** An older term for specific phobia is simple phobia.

**SPECT.** Abbreviation for single photon emission computerized tomography, a highly specialized imaging technique using radioactive substances used in research, and to identify neurological disorder/disease progression.

**SPEECH-LANGUAGE PATHOLOGIST.** Specialists trained in assessment and diagnosis of communication disorders.

**SPEED RUN.** The episodic bingeing on amphetamines.

**SPIRAL CT.** Also referred to as helical CT, this method allows for continuous 360-degree x-ray image capture.

**SPLITTING.** A psychological process that occurs during the childhood of a person with NPD, in which the child separates aspects of him- or herself that the parents value from those that they disregard.

**SPONTANEOUS REMISSION.** Recovery from a disease or disorder that cannot be attributed to medical or psychiatric treatments.

**SSRI.** selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor

**STALKING.** The intentional pursuit or surveillance of another person, usually with the intent of forcing that person into a dating or marriage relationship. Stalking is now punishable as a crime in all 50 states.

**STANDARD DEVIATION.** A measure of variability in a set of scores. The standard deviations are based on a comparison to others in the same age group. Standardizing in this way then allows scores to be comparable across age groups.

**STANDARDIZATION.** The administration of a test to a sample group of people for the purpose of establishing scoring norms. The DAP:SPED structured scoring system was standardized using a sample of over 2300 children and adolescents.

**STANDARDIZED TEST.** A test that follows a regimented structure, and each individual's scores may be compared with those of groups of people. In the case of the Cognistat, test taker's scores can be compared to groups of young adults, middle-aged adults, the geriatric, and people who have undergone neurosurgery.

**STATUS EPILEPTICUS.** Series of grand mal epileptic seizures that may occur when the patient is asleep or awake and involves diminished consciousness.

**STEROIDS.** A chemical class of drugs and hormones that include sex hormones, stress hormones, and medicines for inflammation, contraception, and promoting growth.

**STIGMA.** A mark or characteristic trait of a disease or defect; by extension, a cause for reproach or a stain on one's reputation.

**STIMULUS.** Something that incites or moves a person to thought, emotion, or action. In mainstream psychotherapy, a stimulus can be anything from a certain picture or image to smell, sound, word, or idea. In aversion therapy, the stimulus is typically a mild electric shock or a medication that produces unpleasant results.

**STIMULUS FADING.** A form of behavior modification used to treat children with selective mutism, in which goals of gradually increasing difficulty are set for the child.

**STOOLS.** Feces, bowel movements.

**STREPTOCOCCUS (PLURAL, STREPTOCOCCI).** A type of bacterium that is spherical in shape and occurs in chains or pairs. Some diseases that are caused by streptococci appear to be related to OCD.

**STRESS.** A physical and psychological response that results from being exposed to a demand or pressure.

**STRESS HORMONES.** Chemicals secreted by the human body to produce energy for action when confronted by the fight-or-flight circumstances. They include corticotropin releasing factor, or CRF, and adrenaline, epinephrine, and cortisol.

**STRESS MANAGEMENT.** A set of techniques and programs intended to help people deal more effectively with stress in their lives by analyzing the specific stressors and taking positive actions to minimize their effects. Most stress management programs deal with job stress and workplace issues.

**STRESSOR.** A stimulus or event that provokes a stress response in an organism. Stressors can be categorized as acute or chronic, and as external or internal to the organism.

**STROKE.** A temporary loss of normal blood flow to an area of the brain, caused by blockage or rupture of a blood vessel.

**STRUCTURAL INTEGRATION.** The term used to describe the method and philosophy of life associated with Rolfing. Its fundamental concept is the vertical line.

**STRUCTURED INTERVIEW.** An interview technique that attempts to increase the reliability of data collection between interviewers by using a standardized, predetermined set of questions or topics.

**STUPOR.** A trance-like state that causes a person to appear numb to their environment.

**SUBDURAL HEMATOMA.** Active bleeding or a blood clot inside the dura (leathery covering of the brain). This bleeding or clot causes swelling of the brain, and, untreated, the condition can cause death.

**SUBJECTIVE.** Referring to a person's unique internal thoughts and feelings, as distinct from the objects of those thoughts and feelings in the external world.

**SUBJECTIVE UNITS OF DISTRESS (SUDS) SCALE.** A scale used by patients during exposure treatment to rate their levels of fear and anxiety with numbers from zero to 100.

**SUBSTANCE ABUSE.** Overuse of a drug or alcohol, which leads to addiction.

**SUBSTANCE ABUSE DISORDER.** Disorder that is characterized by: an individual's need for more of a drug or alcohol than intended, an inability to stop using by choice, and an ongoing difficulty in recovering from the effects of the substance.

**SUBSTANCE P.** A naturally occurring chemical found throughout the brain, spinal cord, and nervous system.

**SUBSTANTIA NIGRA.** Dark-colored matter located in a section of the crus cerebri area of the brain.

**SUBSYNDROMAL DEPRESSION.** Depressive episodes that do not meet the severity levels necessary for classification as major depressive episodes.

**SUDDEN SNIFING DEATH.** Death resulting from heart failure caused by heavy use of inhalants in a single lengthy session.

**SUICIDE GESTURE.** Attempted suicide characterized by a low-lethality method, low level of intent or planning, and little physical damage. Pseudocide is another term for a suicide gesture.

**SUPEREGO.** According to Freud, the part of the mind that represents traditional parental and societal values. The superego is the source of guilt feelings.

**SUPPLEMENTAL SECURITY INCOME.** A federal program that provides cash to meet basic needs for food, shelter, and clothing for aged, blind, and disabled individuals who have little or no income.

**SUPPORT GROUP.** A group whose primary purpose is the provision of empathy and emotional support for its members. Support groups are less formal and less goal-directed than group therapy.

**SUPPORTIVE.** An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, as distinct from insight-oriented or educational approaches to treatment.

**SUPPORTIVE THERAPY.** An approach to psychotherapy that seeks to encourage the patient or offer emotional support to him or her, and to return the patient to previous levels of functioning, as distinct from insight-oriented or educational approaches to treatment.

**SURVIVOR'S GUILT.** A psychological reaction in trauma survivors that takes the form of guilt feelings for having survived or escaped a trauma without serious injury when others did not.

**SYDENHAM'S CHOREA.** A serious manifestation of acute rheumatic fever that commonly occurs in children ages seven through 14, peaking at age eight. This disease of the central nervous system is characterized by emotional instability, purposeless movements, and muscular weakness. At its peak in the 1950s it occurred in nearly 50% of the acute rheumatic fever cases, but by 2002 had subsided to a degree of less than 10% of the acute cases.

**SYMPATHOMIMETICS.** Drugs that mimic the effects of impulses conveyed by adrenergic postganglionic fibres of the sympathetic nervous system.

**SYNAPTIC CLEFT.** An area between nerve cells which can contain neurotransmitters.

**SYNCOPE.** A brief lapse of consciousness caused by a temporarily insufficient flow of blood to the brain.

**SYNDROME.** A group of symptoms that together characterize a disease or disorder.

**SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSIS.** A chronic, inflammatory autoimmune disorder.

## T

**TACHYCARDIA.** A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

**TACTILE/TACTUAL.** A pulse rate above 100 beats per minute.

**TANNIN.** An astringent compound found in chamomile, oak bark, and certain other plants. Tannin in large quantities can interfere with iron absorption.

**TARDIVE DYSKINESIA.** Abnormal involuntary movements that can occur with the long-term use of certain antipsychotic medications.

**TARGET BEHAVIOR.** The specific behavior to be increased or decreased during treatment.

**TEMPERAMENT.** A person's natural disposition or inborn combination of mental and emotional traits.

**TEMPORAL LOBE.** A part of the brain that is involved in processing auditory and visual information, emotion and motivation, and understanding language.

**TEMPOROMANDIBULAR JOINT DISORDER (TMJ).** Inflammation, irritation, pain, limited range of motion, and clicking sounds in the jaw caused by improper opening and closing of the joint.

**TERATOGEN.** An agent or chemical that causes a birth defect.

**TERMINATION.** The process of ending a therapy group; an important part of a group therapy.

**TERRITORIAL AGGRESSION.** The response of aggressively defending a defined space perceived as being threatened by a member of the same species.

**TESTOSTERONE.** The primary male sex hormone.

**TETRAHYDRACANNABINOL (THC).** The active substance in marijuana.

**T-GROUPS.** Short for "basic skills training groups" that were focused on education and discussion regarding social issues, personal problems experienced outside the group setting, and problems from one's past.

**THALAMUS.** The middle part of the diencephalon (a part of the human forebrain), responsible for transmitting and integrating information from the senses.

**THEMATIC APPERCEPTION TEST (TAT).** A projective test using stories and descriptions of pictures to reveal some of the dominant drives, emotions, sentiments, conflicts, and complexes of a personality.

**THEOPHYLLINE.** A medication used to treat asthma. Sold under many brand names, including Aerolate Sr, Respbid, and Theolair.

**therapeutic alliance.** The technical term for the cooperative relationship between therapist and patient that is considered essential for successful psychotherapy.

**therapeutic dyad.** A term that refers to the two people involved in a psychotherapeutic relationship, namely the therapist and the person seeking treatment.

**therapeutic letter.** A letter written to the deceased in order to help the survivors express feelings and thoughts they may not have been able to before the loss.

**therapeutic touch (TT).** An American form of energy therapy based on the ancient tradition of the laying-on of hands. TT is thought to work by removing energy blockages or disturbances from the patient's aura.

**therapeutic value.** The potential benefit of an object or situation, in terms of its ability to enhance functioning (social, emotional, intellectual, occupational, etc.) in an individual.

**therapeutic writing.** A treatment technique in which patients are asked to set down in writing an account of the traumatic event and their emotional responses to it.

**thermistor.** An electrical device whose resistance decreases with rises in temperature.

**thiamine.** A B-vitamin that is essential to normal metabolism and nerve function, and whose absorption is affected by alcoholism.

**thiazide diuretic.** Also called water pill, helps the body get rid of excess fluids. Examples include diuril, hydrodiuril, and microzide.

**thoracic.** Refers to the chest area. The thorax runs between the abdomen and neck and is encased in the ribs.

**thought insertion/withdrawal.** The notion that an outside force (space aliens, evil people, etc.) can put thoughts or ideas into one's mind or remove them. It is considered one of the first-rank symptoms of schizophrenia.

**thrombocytopenia.** A condition involving abnormally low numbers of platelets (blood-clotting agents) in the blood; usually associated with hemorrhaging (bleeding).

**thyroid.** A gland in the neck that produces the hormone thyroxine, which is responsible for regulating metabolic activity in the body. Supplemental synthetic thyroid hormone is available as pills taken daily when the thyroid fails to produce enough hormone.

**thyroid hormone.** A complex hormone that regulates metabolic rate of all cells.

**THYROTOXICOSIS.** A disease characterized by an enlarged thyroid gland and speeded-up body metabolism caused by excessive thyroid secretion. It is also known as Graves' disease.

**TIC.** A sudden involuntary behavior that is difficult or impossible for the person to suppress. Tics may be either motor (related to movement) or vocal, and may become more pronounced under stress.

**TINCTURE.** An alcohol-based herbal extract prepared by soaking parts of the plant in a mixture of alcohol and water. Established ratios and dilutions are followed.

**TINNITUS.** Noise in one or both ears, including ringing, clicking, or buzzing.

**TISSUE PLASMINOGEN ACTIVATOR (TPA).** A drug that is sometimes given to patients within three hours of a stroke to dissolve blood clots within the brain; also used to treat heart attack victims.

**TMS.** Transcranial magnetic stimulation; a method of electroshock therapy using magnetic fields and requiring no general anesthetic or seizure induction.

**TOKEN.** Any item that can be seen and collected (such as stickers or points in a point tally) that has no value of its own, but is used as an immediate reward for desirable behavior that is later exchanged for backup reinforcers.

**TOLERANCE.** Progressive decrease in the effectiveness of a drug with long-term use.

**TONIC-CLONIC (GRAND MAL) SEIZURE.** This is the most common type of seizure and is categorized into several phases beginning with vague symptoms hours or days before an attack. During the seizure, there is abnormal muscle contraction and relaxation and the individual may lose consciousness.

**TOPICAL.** A type of medication or preparation intended for use on the skin or external surface of the body. Chamomile is commonly used in topical preparations for acne, open skin irritations, and similar conditions because of its antibacterial properties.

**TORPOR.** Sluggishness or inactivity.

**TOURETTE SYNDROME.** Neurological disorder characterized by multiple involuntary movements and uncontrollable vocalizations called tics that come and go over years, usually beginning in childhood and becoming chronic. Sometimes the tics include inappropriate language.

**TOUNIQUET.** A rubber tube or length of cloth that is used to compress a blood vessel in order to

stop bleeding or to shut off circulation in a part of the body. The tourniquet is wrapped around the arm (or other limb) and tightened by twisting.

**TOXICOLOGY SCREEN.** A blood or urine test that detects the presence of toxic chemicals, alcohol, or drugs in body fluids.

**TOXOCARIASIS.** Infection with roundworm larvae, commonly transmitted by the feces of dogs and cats.

**TOXOPLASMOSIS.** A parasitic infection caused by the intracellular protozoan *Toxoplasmosis gondii*. Humans are most commonly infected by swallowing the oocyte form of the parasite in soil (or kitty litter) contaminated by feces from an infected cat; or by swallowing the cyst form of the parasite in raw or undercooked meat.

**TRACE MINERAL.** An element essential to nutrition or bodily processes that is found in minute quantities.

**TRACHEOSTOMY.** A surgical procedure in which an artificial opening is made in the patient's windpipe to relieve airway obstruction.

**TRAIT ANXIETY.** A type of persistent anxiety found in some patients with generalized anxiety disorder. Trait anxiety is regarded as a feature (trait) of a person's temperament.

**TRANQUILIZER.** A medication that induces a feeling of calm and relaxation.

**TRANSCENDENTAL MEDITATION (TM).** A meditation technique based on Hindu practices that involves the repetition of a mantra.

**TRANSCRANIAL MAGNETIC STIMULATION.** A technique that involves application of an intense magnetic field to a part of the scalp in order to stimulate neurons in a particular part of the brain.

**TRANSSEXUAL.** A person whose gender identity is opposite his or her biologic sex.

**TRANSVESTITE.** A person who derives sexual pleasure or gratification from dressing in clothing of the opposite sex.

**TRAUMA.** A disastrous or life-threatening event that can cause severe emotional distress, including dissociative symptoms and disorders.

**TREMOR.** Involuntary shaking of the hands and arms.

**TRIANGLING.** A process in which two family members diminish the tension between them by drawing in a third member.

**TRICHOBEZOAR.** A hairball that results from a buildup of swallowed hairs becoming lodged in the digestive system.

**TRICHOPHAGIA.** Eating hair.

**TRICHOPHAGY.** Biting hair.

**TRICHTILLOMANIA.** A disorder marked by repeated pulling and tugging of one's hair, usually resulting in noticeable hair loss on the scalp or elsewhere on the body.

**TRICHURIASIS.** Infection with the larvae of roundworms. These parasites may live for 10–20 years in humans.

**TRICYCLIC ANTIDEPRESSANT (TCA).** An older group of antidepressants that were introduced in the 1960s. TCAs affect the activity of serotonin and another body chemical called norepinephrine.

**TRIGGER.** Any situation (people, places, times, events, etc.) that causes one to experience a negative emotional reaction, which is often accompanied by a display of symptoms or problematic behavior.

**TRIGLYCERIDES.** Fats in the blood

**TRISMUS.** Soreness or tightening of the muscles in the jaw.

**TRISOMY.** An abnormality in chromosomal development. Chromosomes are the structures within a cell that carry its genetic information. They are organized in pairs. Humans have 23 pairs of chromosomes. In a trisomy syndrome, an extra chromosome is present so that the individual has three of a particular chromosome instead of the normal pair. An extra chromosome 18 (trisomy 18) causes mental retardation.

**TRYPTOPHAN.** An essential amino acid released from proteins during the process of digestion. Tryptophan is an important ingredient in the body's production of serotonin.

**TSUBO.** In shiatsu, a center of high energy located along one of the body's meridians. Stimulation of the tsubos during a shiatsu treatment is thought to rebalance the flow of vital energy in the body.

**TUBERCULOSIS.** An infection caused by the bacteria *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* that usually affects the lungs. Individuals with tuberculosis may have nighttime sweating, fever, weight loss, cough, and may spit up blood and mucus.

**TUMOR SUPPRESSOR.** A class of genes that, when mutated, predispose an individual to cancer by

causing the loss of function of the particular tumor suppressor protein encoded by the gene.

**TWENTY-FOUR-HOUR RECALL.** A listing of the type and amount of all foods and beverages consumed by a person in a 24-hour period.

**TWIN STUDY.** Research studies that use pairs of twins to study the effects of heredity and environment on behavior or other characteristic.

**TYPE II DIABETES.** Resistance to the effects of insulin in the presence of normal or elevated insulin levels, resulting in failure of glucose to enter cells and in a cascade of other abnormal physiologic reactions.

**TYRAMINE.** A chemical found in aged and fermented foods that is normally broken down by monoamine oxidase; when the enzyme's activity is blocked, tyramine passes into the body system and can cause a critical high blood pressure event.

**TYROSINE.** The amino acid from which epinephrine is synthesized.

## U

**ULTRASONOGRAPHY.** A process that uses the reflection of high-frequency sound waves to make an image of structures deep within the body. Ultrasonography is routinely used to detect fetal abnormalities.

**ULTRASOUND.** A noninvasive test in which high-frequency sound waves are reflected off a patient's internal organs allowing them to be viewed. In stroke victims, a cardiac ultrasound, or echocardiogram, allows the beating heart to be examined.

**ULTRA-ULTRA RAPID OR ULTRADIAN CYCLING.** Most often associated with low arousal states in the mornings followed by afternoons and evenings of increased energy.

**UNCONDITIONAL POSITIVE REGARD.** A quality of the client-centered therapist, characterized by the therapist's acceptance of the client without judgment.

**UNIVERSALITY.** The feeling of being isolated, unique, and separate from others, often experienced by therapy group members.

**URETHRA.** The tubular passage conducting urine from the bladder to the exterior. In the male, the urethra traverses the penis.

**URETHRITIS.** Inflammation of the urethra, which is the duct that carries urine and (in males) semen to the outside of the body.

**URINARY INCONTINENCE.** A term that is sometimes used for enuresis in adults. Urinary incontinence is often found in patients with late-stage Alzheimer's disease or other adult-onset dementias.

**URINARY RETENTION.** Excessive storage of urine in the body.

**URINARY SYSTEM.** The kidney, urethra, bladder, and associated organs that process urine and eliminate it from the body.

**URODYNAMIC EVALUATION.** A series of tests that assess urinary tract function.

**UROLOGIST.** A doctor who specializes in treating diseases related to the urinary tract.

**UTERUS.** The hollow muscular sac in which a fetus develops; sometimes called the womb.

**UTILIZATION REVIEW.** A process used by managed care organizations involving scrutiny of service care delivery to determine whether services are necessary.

## V

**VAGINA.** The part of the female reproductive system that opens to the exterior of the body and into which the penis is inserted during sexual intercourse.

**VAGINISMUS.** An involuntary tightening of the vaginal muscles that makes sexual intercourse painful, difficult, or impossible.

**VAGUS NERVE STIMULATION.** A technique that involves electrically stimulating the vagus nerve by means of a surgically implanted device.

**VALERENIC ACID.** The primary medicinal component in valerian preparations.

**VALIDITY.** The ability of a test to measure accurately what it claims to measure.

**VARENICLINE.** One of the three major pharmacologic interventions in smoking cessation. Varenicline causes the release of dopamine (with a positive effect on mood) while also blocking the effects of nicotine as it is smoked.

**VASCULAR.** Pertaining to the bloodstream (arteries, veins, and blood vessels).

**VASOCONGESTION.** A pooling of blood in dilated blood vessels.

**VENTRAL TEGMENTAL AREA.** Produces dopamine and signals to the nucleus accumbens the rest of the striatum.

**VERTIGO.** A sensation that the environment is spinning.

**VESTIBULAR SYSTEM.** The body system that helps to maintain balance and orient the body.

**VETERAN'S ADMINISTRATION HOSPITALS.** Medical facilities operated by the federal government explicitly for veterans of the United States military.

**VICARIOUS.** Acquired through imagined participation in the experience of others. Modeling is a form of vicarious learning.

**VIRTUAL REALITY.** A realistic simulation of an environment, produced by a computer system using interactive hardware and software.

**VOLATILE SOLVENT.** A solvent (substance that will dissolve another substance) that evaporates at room temperature.

**VOYEUR.** A person who engages in the behavior of voyeurism.

**VOYEURISM.** A paraphilia that involves watching unsuspecting people, usually strangers, undress or engage in sexual activity.

**VULVAR VESTIBULITIS SYNDROME (VVS).** Vulvar vestibulitis syndrome is thought to be the most frequent cause of dyspareunia in premenopausal women. A chronic, persistent clinical syndrome, vulvar vestibulitis is characterized by severe pain on vestibular touch or attempted vaginal entry.

## W

**WARFARIN.** A medication that helps to prevent the formation of clots in the blood vessels. Sold as Coumadin in the U.S.

**WAXY FLEXIBILITY.** A condition in which a person can be molded into a strange position and hold that position for a long period of time.

**WELFARE-TO-WORK.** Several American public reforms of the late 1990s and early 2000s, designed to move individuals from public assistance to paying jobs.

**WERNICKE'S ENCEPHALOPATHY.** Group of symptoms that appears in people who are dependent on alcohol. The syndrome is due to a thiamine deficiency, and severely affects one's memory, preventing new learning from taking place.

**WITHDRAWAL.** A syndrome of ill effects that occurs when administration of a dependence-producing drug ceases.

**WRAPAROUND.** A relatively new form of mental health service delivery that strives to accommodate all family members based on self-defined needs, flexibly incorporating both formal and informal community services.

## X

**XANTHINE.** A class of crystalline nitrogenous compounds that includes caffeine, which is 1,3,7-trimethylxanthine.

## Y

**YIN AND YANG.** In traditional Chinese medicine and philosophy, a pair of opposing forces whose harmonious balance in the body is necessary to good health.

**YOGA.** A form of stretching and breathing mediation.

**YOGI (FEMININE, YOGINI).** A person who is a respected expert in or teacher of yoga.

# INDEX

In the index, references to individual volumes are listed before colons; numbers following a colon refer to specific page numbers within that particular volume. **Boldface** references indicate main topical essays. Photographs and illustration references are highlighted with an *italicized* page number; and tables are also indicated with the page number followed by a lowercase, italicized *t*.

## A

AACAP (Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry), 1:631  
AAIDD (American Association on Intellectual and Developmental Disabilities), 2:716  
AAMR (American Association on Mental Retardation). *See* American Association on Intellectual and Developmental Disabilities (AAIDD)  
ABA (Applied Behavior Analysis), 1:113  
Abandonment, 1:162, 163  
Ability. *See* Aripiprazole  
Abnormal involuntary movement scale (AIMS), 1:1–2  
ABPN (American Board of Psychiatry and Neurology), 2:924  
Abreu, Jose, 1:504  
Absence seizures. *See* Seizures  
Absenteeism, 1:154  
Abstinence, 1:17, 202, 2:751, 814  
Abuse, 1:2–7  
acute stress disorder, 1:11  
antisocial personality disorder, 1:74  
body dysmorphic disorder, 1:153  
bodywork therapies, 1:157  
borderline personality disorder, 1:161, 162  
bulimia nervosa, 1:177  
bullying as, 1:183  
conversion disorder, 1:286–287, 288, 290  
creative therapies, 1:298–299, 300  
dependent personality disorder, 1:331  
depersonalization disorder, 1:335, 338  
depression and depressive disorders, 1:341  
dissociation, 1:372  
dissociative amnesia, 1:373, 375, 376  
dissociative identity disorder, 1:380, 383

dyspareunia, 1:396, 397  
dysthymic disorder, 1:399  
encopresis, 1:418  
exhibitionism, 1:439  
factitious disorder, 1:452, 452, 454  
feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, 1:467  
female orgasmic disorder, 1:468, 469  
female sexual arousal disorder, 1:471  
figure drawings and, 1:479, 481  
inhalant use, 1:601  
neglect and, 2:765  
panic disorder, 2:837  
paraphilics, 1:443  
pedophilia and, 2:863  
play therapy, 2:893  
post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:901, 902  
pyromania, 2:941  
reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:952–953  
Academic achievement. *See* Educational performance  
Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry (AACAP), 1:631  
Acamporse, 1:34  
Acceptance, 1:530, 538  
Access to Community Care and Effective Services and Supports (ACCESS), 1:274  
Accidents, motor vehicle. *See* Motor vehicle accidents  
Accutane. *See* Isotretinoin  
Acetaldehyde, 1:384, 2:775  
Acetaminophen, 1:43, 195, 197, 2:833  
Acetylaldehyde. *See* Acetaldehyde  
Acetylcholine  
in Alzheimer's disease, 1:39, 42, 45, 2:773  
amoxapine and, 1:53  
antidepressants and, 1:71  
benztropine and, 1:130  
biperiden and, 1:144–145  
in dementia, 1:326, 388  
doxepin and, 1:392  
galantamine and, 1:495  
imipramine and, 1:594  
as neurotransmitter, 2:772  
nortriptyline and, 2:782  
rivastigmine and, 2:976  
tacrine and, 2:1143  
trihexyphenidyl and, 2:1184  
in Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1221  
Acetylcholinesterase, 1:494, 495  
Achievement, academic. *See* Educational performance  
Achievement tests. *See names of specific tests*  
Acne excoriée. *See* Dermatillomania  
ACPA (American Chronic Pain Association), 1:234  
Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). *See* AIDS (Acquired immune deficiency syndrome)  
ACT (Assertive community treatment). *See* Assertive community treatment (ACT)  
Action potentials, 1:166  
Activities of daily living (ADL)  
Alzheimer's disease and, 1:38, 39, 40  
grief counseling and, 1:532  
group homes and, 1:534  
mental retardation and, 2:714, 715  
Acupressure. *See* Bodywork therapies  
Acupuncture, 1:7–11  
addiction, 2:814  
alcohol-related disorders, 1:34  
bodywork therapies, 1:159

chronic pain, 1:234  
 cocaine abuse, 1:260  
 energy therapies and, 1:421  
 enuresis, 1:426  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
 light therapy and, 2:660–661  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 Mini-Mental State Examination and, 2:728  
 nicotine addiction, 2:779  
 obesity, 2:799  
 pain disorder, 2:833  
 therapeutic potential, 2:829  
**Acute insomnia.** *See* **Insomnia**  
**Acute stress.** *See* **Stress**  
**Acute stress disorder (ASD), 1:11–15**  
 adjustment disorders, 1:20  
 anxiety disorders, 1:77  
 depersonalization, 1:334, 335  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:903  
 stress, 2:1111  
**Acute Stress Disorder Scale, 1:12**  
**AD (Alzheimer's disease).** *See* **Alzheimer's disease (AD)**  
**Adalat.** *See* **Nifedipine**  
**ADAM (Arrestee Drug Abuse Monitoring), 1:258**  
**Adam (drug).** *See* **Ecstasy (drug)**  
**Adapin.** *See* **Doxepin**  
**Adaptogens, 1:526**  
**ADD (Attention-deficit disorder), 1:95, 2:735**  
**Addams, Jane, 2:1079**  
**Adderall.** *See* **Mixed amphetamine salts**  
**Addiction, 1:15–18**  
 adrenaline, 1:23  
 alcohol, 1:30, 31, 34  
 amphetamines, 1:56, 57, 58, 59–60  
 anti-anxiety drugs, 1:68–69  
 barbiturates, 1:121, 122  
 benzodiazepines, 1:129, 349–350  
 binge drinking, 1:138  
 caffeine, 1:195–196  
 cannabis, 1:200–201  
 chlordiazepoxide, 1:228  
 chronic pain, 1:233  
 cocaine, 1:255, 256*t*, 257–260  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:291  
 dependent personality disorder, 1:333  
 desipramine for, 1:344  
 detoxification, 1:346–348  
 diets for, 1:361, 363, 365  
 disulfiram for, 1:384  
 dopamine, 1:390, 391  
 doxepin for, 1:392  
 dual diagnosis, 1:394  
 factitious disorder, 1:451  
 homelessness, 1:571

impulse-control disorders, 1:597  
 inhalant, 1:600, 601–602, 603  
 intervention for, 1:622  
 methadone for, 2:721–723  
 methamphetamine, 2:723–725, 724–725  
 naltrexone for, 2:751–752  
 neurotransmitters in, 2:774  
 nicotine, 2:774–779  
 opioid, 2:813–818  
 phencyclidine, 2:878, 879–880  
 reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:968–970  
 sedative, 2:1013–1015  
 self-help groups, 2:1029–1033  
 Vivitrol for, 2:1206  
*See also* Disease concept of chemical dependency; Polysubstance dependence; Process addiction; Relapse and relapse prevention; Substance abuse and related disorders  
**Addictive personality, 1:612**  
**Addicts.** *See* **Addiction**  
**Adenoids, 1:169**  
**Adenosine, 1:196**  
**ADHD (Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder).** *See* **Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)**  
**Adipex-P.** *See* **Phentermine**  
**Adipose tissue.** *See* **Fat tissue**  
**Adjunct treatments.** *See names of specific treatments*  
**Adjustment disorders, 1:18–22, 341, 356, 2:1111**  
**ADL (Activities of daily living).** *See* **Activities of daily living (ADL)**  
**Adler, Alfred, 1:538, 2:827, 936**  
**Adolescents**  
 addiction, 1:16, 17  
 adjustment disorders, 1:21  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:35  
 antidepressants for, 1:72  
 antisocial personality disorder, 1:73  
 aripiprazole for, 1:89  
 Asperger's disorder, 1:94, 96, 97  
 assertive community treatment, 1:98  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
 bipolar disorder, 1:148, 149  
 body dysmorphic disorder, 1:152, 153, 154  
 brief psychotic disorder, 1:174  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:176–182  
 cannabis use, 1:200, 200, 201  
 case management, 1:208  
 Child Depression Inventory, 1:220–221  
 circadian rhythm sleep disorder, 1:237  
 clomipramine for, 1:245  
 community mental health, 1:273–274  
**conduct disorder, 1:281–283**  
**Conners' Rating Scales-Revised, 1:284–285**  
**conversion disorder, 1:288, 289, 290**  
**co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:292**  
**creative therapies, 1:299**  
**crisis housing, 1:301–302**  
**dependent personality disorder, 1:331**  
**desipramine for, 1:344**  
**dissociation, 1:372**  
**dual diagnosis, 1:395**  
**dysthymic disorder, 1:399**  
**ecstasy use, 1:404, 405**  
**enuresis, 1:425**  
**exposure treatment, 1:445, 446**  
**factitious disorder, 1:453**  
**family education, 1:456–457**  
**figure drawings, 1:480, 481**  
**fluvoxamine for, 1:488**  
**gender identity disorder, 1:497, 499–500**  
**hallucinogen use, 1:550**  
**house-tree-person test, 1:575**  
**hypomania, 1:589**  
**imipramine for, 1:595**  
**inhalant use, 1:600, 602**  
**interpersonal therapy, 1:617, 619–620**  
**juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:629–632**  
**juvenile depression, 1:632–634**  
**Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test, 1:637–639**  
**major depressive disorder, 1:341, 2:678, 680, 681, 683**  
**methamphetamine use, 2:724**  
**monoamine oxidase inhibitors for, 2:743**  
**multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749**  
**nicotine use, 2:776, 777**  
**opioid use, 2:815**  
**oppositional defiant disorder, 2:818–821**  
**paraphilias, 1:442–443**  
**Paxil for, 2:861**  
**peer groups, 2:866–868, 867**  
**pica, 2:885–888**  
**premature ejaculation, 2:909**  
**process addiction, 2:916**  
**psychoanalysis, 2:927**  
**pyromania, 2:940–941, 942, 943**  
**schizophrenia, 2:996**  
**selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1024**  
**self mutilation, 2:1034**  
**self-help groups, 2:1030**  
**separation anxiety disorder, 2:1037–1041**  
**social phobia, 2:1069, 1070–1071, 1072**

- specific phobias, 2:1088, 1089  
 steroid use, 2:1103  
 stuttering, 2:1123, 1125  
**Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory**, 2:1133  
 suicide, 2:1134  
 tic disorders, 2:1159, 1160, 1162, 1163  
 toilet phobia, 2:1164  
 transcranial magnetic stimulation, 2:1168  
**Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study**, 2:1177–1178  
 trichillomania, 2:1181  
 trimipramine for, 2:1187  
*See also Boys; Girls*  
**Adrenal glands**, 2:825, 912  
**Adrenaline**, 1:22–24  
 in Alzheimer's disease, 1:39  
 amoxapine and, 1:53  
 antidepressants and, 1:71, 72  
 in attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 2:774  
 caffeine and, 1:196  
 dopamine and, 1:390  
 doxepin and, 1:392  
 ecstasy and, 1:405  
 in electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411  
 fluphenazine and, 1:484  
 in histrionic personality disorder, 1:565  
 in hypnotherapy, 1:581  
 in hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:584  
 imipramine and, 1:594  
 isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
 maprotiline and, 2:694  
 as neurotransmitter, 2:772, 773  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:824  
 in process addiction, 2:917  
 in smoking cessation, 2:1068  
 tranylcypromine and, 2:1172  
**Adult abuse.** *See Abuse*  
**Advance directives**, 1:24–25, 626, 2:728  
**Adverse effects.** *See names of causative drugs or treatments*  
**Advil.** *See Ibuprofen*  
**Aerobic exercise.** *See Exercise/exercise-based treatment*  
**Aerosols**, 1:600  
**Affect**, 1:25–26  
 amnestic disorders, 1:51  
 assessment and diagnosis, 1:104  
 catatonia, 1:210  
 catatonic disorders, 1:212, 213, 214  
 dissociation, 1:371  
 mesoridazine and, 2:719  
 schizophreniform disorder, 2:1002–1003  
**Affective disorders.** *See Anxiety and anxiety disorders; Depression and depressive disorders*  
**African Americans**  
 agoraphobia, 2:838  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:179  
 bullying, 1:184  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:504  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:507  
**Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure**, 1:641  
 learning disorders, 1:657  
 panic disorder, 2:838  
 stroke, 2:1118, 1119  
 substance abuse, 1:68  
**Agent-driven directives.** *See Advance directives*  
**Aging**  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly and, 1:240, 241  
 cognitive retraining and, 1:269, 270  
 dementia and, 1:321  
 depression and, 1:650  
 erectile dysfunction and, 1:428  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:503  
 grief and, 1:529–530  
 insomnia and, 1:605  
 narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:758  
*See also Elderly*  
**Agnosia**, 1:40, 323  
**Agonists**, 2:864  
**Agoraphobia**, 1:26, 26–30  
 as anxiety disorder, 1:77  
 bibliotherapy, 1:135, 136  
 exposure treatment, 1:444, 445  
 genetics, 1:515  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 panic disorder and, 2:836, 837, 838  
 specific phobias and, 2:1087  
 tic disorders and, 2:1163  
 tranylcypromine for, 2:1172  
**Agoraphobic Self-Statements Questionnaire (ASQ)**, 1:28  
**Agranulocytosis**, 1:150, 252, 253  
**AHPA (American Herbal Products Association)**, 1:528, 643  
**AIDS (Acquired immune deficiency syndrome)**, 1:258, 2:825, 892  
**AIMS (Abnormal involuntary movement scale).** *See Abnormal involuntary movement scale (AIMS)*  
**Akathisia.** *See Medication-induced movement disorders*  
**Akinesia**, 1:213, 2:745  
**Akineton.** *See Biperiden*  
**Alanine**, 1:513  
**Albumin**, 1:360  
**Albuterol**, 1:518  
**Alcohol abuse.** *See Alcohol and related disorders*  
**Alcohol and drug abuse counselors**, 1:624  
**Alcohol and related disorders**, 1:30–35, 31  
 adjustment disorders and, 1:21  
 alprazolam for, 1:36  
 amnesia from, 1:49  
 amnestic disorders and, 1:49, 51, 52  
 anti-anxiety drugs and abuse and, 1:69  
 antidepressants and, 1:72  
 barbiturates and, 1:122  
 benzodiazepines and, 1:129  
 beta blockers and, 1:134  
 bibliotherapy, 1:135  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:147  
 breathing-related sleep disorder and, 1:171  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:179  
 cannabis and, 1:202  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:214  
 chloral hydrate and, 1:227  
 chlordiazepoxide and, 1:228–229  
 chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
 chronic pain and, 1:233  
 circadian rhythm sleep disorder and, 1:237  
 citalopram for, 1:239  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 clonazepam and, 1:247, 248  
 clorazepate and, 1:251  
 clozapine and, 1:253  
 cocaine and, 1:255  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291, 292  
 delirium and, 1:312, 314  
 dementia and, 1:322, 324, 326  
 depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
 desipramine and, 1:345  
 detoxification, 1:347, 349, 350  
 diazepam and, 1:361  
 diets for, 1:363, 365  
 diphenhydramine and, 1:367  
 disease concept of chemical dependency and, 1:368–369  
 disulfiram for, 1:384–385  
 estazolam, 1:432  
 exercise for, 1:437  
 exposure treatment, 1:447  
 fluoxetine for, 1:482  
 flurazepam and, 1:487  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
 haloperidol and, 1:552, 553  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
 imipramine and, 1:596  
 insomnia and, 1:605  
 intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:610, 611  
 kava kava and, 1:644  
 lorazepam and, 1:666  
 loxapine and, 1:667  
 maprotiline and, 2:694  
 Matrix treatment model, 2:699–701  
 meditation for, 2:710  
 mesoridazine and, 2:721  
 mesoridazine for, 2:719  
 methadone and, 2:722, 723

- mirtazapine and, 2:733  
 molindone and, 2:740  
 naltrexone for, 2:751–752  
 narcolepsy and, 2:760  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:774  
 nutrition and, 2:785, 788  
 olanzapine and, 2:812  
 as origin of mental illnesses, 2:828  
 paranoia from, 2:842  
 pathological gambling disorder and, 2:858  
 perphenazine and, 2:870  
 person-centered therapy, 2:873  
 pimozide and, 2:892  
 process addiction and, 2:917  
 propranolol and, 2:920  
 protriptyline and, 2:921, 922  
 quazepam and, 2:945, 946  
 quetiapine and, 2:947  
 reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
 social phobia and, 2:1069  
 social skills training, 2:1075–1075  
 temazepam and, 2:1149  
 tic disorders and, 2:1163  
 urine drug screening and, 2:1191  
 valerian and, 2:1200  
 venlafaxine and, 2:1205  
 Vivitrol for, 2:1206  
 vs. panic attacks, 2:838–839  
 Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1218–1222  
 withdrawal, 1:16, 347, 2:838–829  
 zaleplon and, 2:1232  
 ziprasidone and, 2:1234  
 zolpidem and, 2:1236  
*See also* Binge drinking; Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS)
- Alcohol idiosyncratic intoxication, 1:16  
 Alcohol tolerance. *See* Tolerance  
 Alcoholics Anonymous. *See* Self-help groups  
 Alcohol-induced persisting amnestic disorder. *See* Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome  
 Alcoholism. *See* Alcohol and related disorders  
 Aldactone. *See* Spironolactone  
 Aldehyde dehydrogenase, 1:384  
 Aleve. *See* Naproxen  
 Alexander, F. Matthias, 1:157  
 Alexander technique, 1:157, 160  
 Alignment, physical. *See* Bodywork therapies  
 Allergies, 1:111, 366, 2:706  
*See also* Food allergies  
 Allergy medications. *See* Antihistamines; Decongestants  
 Alogia, 2:996, 1002, 1003  
 Alpha adrenergic blockers, 1:430  
 Alpha waves, 1:415  
 Alpha-adrenergic receptor agonists, 2:1161  
 Alprazolam, 1:35–37  
 abuse, 1:67  
 for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
 aprepitant and, 1:88  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 clonazepam and, 1:247  
 clonidine and, 1:248  
 for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
 diets for, 1:365  
 kava kava and, 1:644  
 nefazodone and, 2:763  
 for panic disorder, 2:840  
 for premenstrual syndrome, 2:913  
 for specific phobias, 2:1089  
 Alprostadil, 1:430, 431  
 ALS (Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis), 2:971  
 Alternative medicine. *See names of specific treatments*  
 Alters. *See* Dissociative identity disorder (DID)  
 Altruism, 1:537  
 Aluminum, 1:39  
 Alveoli, 1:168  
 Alzapam. *See* Lorazepam  
 Alzheimer, Alois, 1:37, 356, 2:888  
 Alzheimer's disease (AD), 1:37, 37–45  
 brain imaging, 1:167  
 causes, 1:38–39  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240  
 defined, 1:37  
 dementia in, 1:321, 322–324, 326, 327–328  
 demographics, 1:40–41  
 described, 1:37–38  
 diagnosis, 1:41–42  
 in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:358  
 donepezil for, 1:388, 389  
 Down syndrome and, 2:718–719  
 electroencephalography, 1:413  
 enuresis in, 1:424  
 exercise, 1:437  
 galantamine for, 1:494–495  
 genetics, 1:513, 515, 518, 2:824  
 ginkgo biloba for, 1:525  
 imaging studies, 1:594  
 memantine for, 2:710–711  
 Mini-Mental State Examination and, 2:728  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
 nutrition, 2:789  
 olanzapine for, 2:810  
 paranoia in, 2:842  
 vs. Pick's disease, 2:888–889  
 prevention, 1:44  
 prognosis, 1:44  
 risk factors, 1:39  
 rivastigmine for, 2:975–976  
 single photon emission computed tomography, 2:1056  
 stages, 1:38  
 symptoms, 1:39–40  
 tacrine for, 2:1143  
 treatments, 1:42–44  
 types, 1:38  
 vascular dementia and, 2:1202–1203  
 Alzheimer's Disease International, 1:40  
 Amantadine, 1:45–47  
 for catatonic disorders, 1:213  
 for cocaine withdrawal, 1:260  
 dopamine and, 1:391  
 for medication-induced movement disorders, 2:704, 705  
 paranoia from, 2:842  
 Ambien. *See* Zolpidem  
 Amenorrhea, 1:64, 178  
 American Academy of Medical Acupuncture, 1:8  
 American Academy of Ophthalmology, 2:956  
 American Academy of Pediatrics, 2:956  
 American Association for Pediatric Ophthalmology, 2:956  
 American Association on Intellectual and Developmental Disabilities (AAIDD), 2:716  
 American Association on Mental Retardation (AAMR). *See* American Association on Intellectual and Developmental Disabilities (AAIDD)  
 American Board of Psychiatry and Neurology (ABPN), 2:924  
 American Chronic Pain Association (ACPA), 1:234  
 American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2:911  
 American ginseng. *See* Ginseng  
 American Herbal Products Association (AHPA), 1:528, 643  
 American Jail Association, 2:712  
 American Medical Association, 1:15  
 American Medico-Psychological Association. *See* American Psychiatric Association (APA)  
 American Pain Society (APS), 1:233  
 American Psychiatric Association (APA)  
 adjustment disorders, 1:20  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:30, 31  
 antisocial personality disorder, 1:73  
 aversion therapy, 1:115, 264  
 borderline personality disorder, 1:163  
 chronic pain, 1:232, 233  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:291  
 diagnostic philosophy, 1:354  
 dissociative fugue, 1:377  
 ecstasy, 1:548  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 410, 2:683  
 elimination disorders, 1:416  
 enuresis, 1:425

- female orgasmic disorder, 1:469  
 Ganser's syndrome, 1:496  
 hallucinogen-induced disorders, 1:550  
 learning disorders, 1:658  
 nicotine addiction and withdrawal, 2:776  
 psychiatrists and, 2:924  
 American Psychological Association, 1:102, 125, 599, 612  
 American Yoga Association, 2:1227  
 Americans with Disabilities Act, 1:441, 2:942, 1107  
 America's Law Enforcement and Mental Health Project Act, 2:712–713  
 Amino acids, 2:787  
 Amiodarone, 1:664  
**Amitriptyline, 1:47–49**  
 amoxapine and, 1:53  
 carbamazepine and, 1:204  
 chlordiazepoxide and, 1:228  
 for chronic pain, 1:234  
 for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
 for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340/  
 diets for, 1:363, 365  
 for dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
 imipramine and, 1:594  
 protriptyline and, 2:920  
 riluzole and, 2:972  
 valproic acid and, 2:1201  
**Amnesia, 1:49–50**  
 in alcohol-related disorders, 1:32  
 in Alzheimer's disease, 1:40  
 anti-anxiety drugs and, 1:69  
 appetite suppressants and, 1:85  
 dissociative fugue and, 1:377  
 in dissociative identity disorder, 1:381  
 in hypnotherapy, 1:580  
 in Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:645  
 Rohypnol and, 1:68  
 traveler's, 2:1179  
*See also* Amnestic disorders; Dissociative amnesia; Memory  
**Amnestic disorders, 1:49, 50–53, 355, 2:1218**  
*See also* Amnesia; Memory  
 Amobarbital, 1:121, 347  
 Amodiaquine, 2:870  
 Amok, 2:1004  
 Amotivational syndrome, 1:202  
 Amoxapine, 1:53–55, 2:701, 766, 1008  
**Amphetamines, 1:55, 55–57**  
 amantadine and, 1:47  
 as appetite suppressants, 1:84  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 as hallucinogens, 1:545, 547  
 isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
 for Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:646  
 medication-induced postural tremor from, 2:701–702  
 methamphetamine and, 2:723–724  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 for narcolepsy, 2:760  
 nightmares from, 2:781  
 paranoia from, 2:842  
 paranoid personality disorder and, 2:845  
 pemoline and, 2:869  
 phenelzine and, 2:882  
 tic disorders and, 2:1158  
 urine drug screening for, 2:1191  
*See also* Amphetamines and related disorders  
**Amphetamines and related disorders, 1:57–62**  
*See also* Amphetamines  
 Amprenavir, 1:385  
 Amygdala, 1:258, 2:835, 837, 902, 1109  
 Amylase, 1:179  
 Amyloid precursor protein (APP), 1:38, 513  
 Amyloid-beta protein, 1:323  
 Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 2:971  
 Amytal. *See* Amobarbital  
**AN (Anorexia nervosa). *See* Anorexia nervosa (AN)**  
 Anabolic steroids. *See* Steroids  
 Anadrol. *See* Oxymetholone  
 Anafranil. *See* Clomipramine  
 Analeptics. *See* Stimulants  
**Analgesics**  
 for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43  
 antidepressants and, 1:71  
 caffeine and, 1:195, 196, 197  
 for chronic pain, 1:234  
 clorazepate and, 1:251  
 desipramine and, 1:345  
 diphenhydramine and, 1:367  
 isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
 perphenazine and, 2:870  
 Pick's disease and, 2:890  
 ziprasidone and, 2:1234  
*See also names of specific analgesics*  
 Analysts. *See* Psychoanalysis  
 Anandamide, 1:200  
**Anankastic personality disorder. *See* Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder**  
 Androgenic steroids. *See* Steroids  
 Anectine. *See* Succinylcholine  
 Anemia, 1:326, 2:789, 790  
*See also* Aplastic anemia  
**Anesthesia and anesthetics**  
 barbiturates, 1:121  
 for chronic pain, 1:234  
 depersonalization from, 1:335  
 for detoxification, 1:347, 348, 350  
 diphenhydramine and, 1:367–368  
 for electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 410  
 haloperidol and, 1:552, 553  
 as inhalants, 1:600–601  
 mesoridazine and, 2:721  
 molindone and, 2:740  
 phencyclidine, 2:877  
 valerian and, 2:1199–1200  
**Anesthetics. *See* Anesthesia and anesthetics**  
**Aneurysms, 2:1118, 1120**  
**Angel dust. *See* Phencyclidine and related disorders**  
**Angelman syndrome, 1:514**  
**Anger, 1:530, 597, 609–611**  
*See also* Road rage  
**Anger attacks. *See* Intermittent explosive disorder (IED)**  
**Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors, 1:664**  
**Anhedonia**  
 cannabis and, 1:202  
 in late-life depression, 1:652  
 in major depressive disorder, 1:341, 2:678  
 as negative symptom, 2:764  
 in schizoid personality disorder, 2:990  
 in schizophrenia, 2:996  
*See also* Sexual anhedonia  
**Animal magnetism, 1:579**  
**Animal phobias. *See* specific phobias**  
**Animals, 1:224, 225**  
**Anorexia nervosa (AN), 1:62–65, 63**  
 binge eating and, 1:139  
 vs. body dysmorphic disorder., 1:152  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:180  
 clomipramine for, 1:244  
 diets for, 1:362  
 exercise for, 1:437  
 family psychoeducation, 1:458  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:617, 620  
 kleptomania and, 1:646  
 modeling, 2:736  
 vs. obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:808  
 origin of mental illnesses and, 2:828  
 rumination disorder and, 2:984  
**Anosodiaphoria, 1:66**  
**Anosognosia, 1:65–67, 2:997**  
**Anoxia, 1:312**  
**Antabuse. *See* Disulfiram**  
**Antacids, 1:57, 180, 493, 664, 2:920**  
**Anterograde amnesia. *See* Amnesia**  
**Anthelmintics, 1:218**  
**Anthemic acid, 1:219**  
**Antiandrogens, 1:441, 2:864**  
**Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse, 1:67, 67–70**  
 for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43  
 amnesia from, 1:49  
 benzodiazepines, 1:128, 129  
 for binge drinking, 1:138  
 for brief psychotic disorder, 1:174  
 for cannabis withdrawal, 1:202

- clorazepate and, 1:251  
for dependent personality disorder, 1:333  
erectile dysfunction from, 1:429  
genetics, 1:518  
Hamilton Anxiety Scale, 1:558  
for Internet addiction disorder, 1:614  
late-life depression and, 1:651  
mirtazapine and, 2:733  
for paranoid personality disorder, 2:846  
for premenstrual syndrome, 2:913  
sleepwalking disorder from, 2:1064  
for substance-induced anxiety disorder, 2:1127  
*See also names of specific anti-anxiety drugs*
- Antibiotics**, 1:218–219, 360, 651, 2:892, 947  
*See also names of specific antibiotics*
- Anticholinergic drugs**  
amoxapine and, 1:54–55  
armantadine and, 1:45  
benztropine and, 1:130  
biperiden and, 1:145  
delirium from, 1:312  
diphenhydramine and, 1:366  
doxepin and, 1:393–394  
imipramine and, 1:596  
loxpine and, 1:668  
for nicotine addiction, 2:778  
Pick's disease and, 2:890  
protriptyline and, 2:922  
thiothixene and, 2:1156  
trazodone and, 2:1176  
ziprasidone and, 2:1233
- Anticipation**, 1:514, 515
- Anticoagulants**  
barbiturates and, 1:122  
chamomile and, 1:220  
chlordiazepoxide and, 1:229  
ginkgo biloba and, 1:525–526  
ginseng and, 1:528  
haloperidol and, 1:552  
methylphenidate and, 2:727  
trifluoperazine and, 2:1184
- Anticonvulsants**  
amphetamines and, 1:57  
barbiturates and, 1:121, 122  
for bipolar disorder, 1:148–149, 149  
cannabis, 1:200  
for chronic pain, 1:234  
clorazepate and, 1:251  
delirium from, 1:312  
diets for, 1:363, 364–365  
for electroconvulsive therapy, 1:413  
evening primrose oil and, 1:434  
flurazepam and, 1:487  
 gabepentin and, 1:493  
 ginkgo biloba and, 1:526  
 kava kava and, 1:643
- late-life depression and, 1:651  
lithium carbonate and, 1:664  
loxpine and, 1:667  
methylphenidate and, 2:727  
monitoring of, 2:1019  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
for restless legs syndrome, 2:1060  
sleepwalking disorder from, 2:1064  
for social phobia, 2:1073  
in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
tic disorders and, 2:1158  
*See also names of specific anticonvulsants; Seizures*
- Antidepressants**, 1:70–73  
for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
for apathy, 1:82–83  
as appetite suppressants, 1:84  
aprepitant, 1:87  
for attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:107  
biperiden and, 1:145  
for bipolar disorder, 1:149  
for bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
for cannabis withdrawal, 1:202  
chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
chronic pain and, 1:234  
clonidine and, 1:249  
clozapine and, 1:253, 254  
for cyclothymic disorder, 1:307  
for delusional disorder, 1:318  
for dependent personality disorder, 1:333  
for dermatillomania, 1:343  
diets for, 1:363  
diphenhydramine and, 1:367  
for dissociative amnesia, 1:375  
for dissociative identity disorder, 1:383  
dopamine and, 1:391  
for dysthymic disorder, 1:399  
electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 410, 411  
erectile dysfunction from, 1:429  
fluphenazine and, 1:485  
genetics, 1:518  
ginkgo biloba and, 1:526  
Hamilton Depression Scale, 1:560  
hypomania and, 1:591  
for Internet addiction disorder, 1:614  
interpersonal therapy, 1:620  
juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:631  
for kleptomania, 1:648  
for late-life depression, 1:652  
lithium carbonate and, 1:664  
medication-induced postural tremor from, 2:701–702  
for methamphetamine addiction, 2:725  
methylphenidate and, 2:727  
mirtazapine and, 2:733  
for narcolepsy, 2:760  
neurotransmitters and, 2:773
- nightmares from, 2:781  
olanzapine and, 2:812  
for panic disorder, 2:839  
paranoia from, 2:842  
paranoid personality disorder and, 2:847  
pemoline and, 2:869  
for phencyclidine abuse, 2:880  
phenelzine and, 2:882  
pimozide and, 2:892  
for premature ejaculation, 2:910  
quetiapine and, 2:947  
vs. riluzole, 2:970  
SAMe and, 2:985, 986  
for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
for schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
for seasonal affective disorder, 2:1011  
side effects, 1:340*t*  
in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
for stress, 2:1114  
trihexyphenidyl and, 2:1186  
for undifferentiated somatoform disorder, 2:1190  
Vivitrol and, 2:1207  
for Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1221  
zaleplon and, 2:1232  
ziprasidone and, 2:1234  
zolpidem and, 2:1236  
*See also names of specific antidepressants*
- Antidiuretic hormone**, 1:424
- Antiemetic drugs**, 1:180, 2:1145
- Antiepileptics.** *See Anticonvulsants*
- Antifungals**, 1:36, 239, 361, 2:892, 947  
*See also names of specific antifungal drugs*
- Antifuture shock imagery**, 1:542
- Antihistamines**  
amoxapine and, 1:54, 55  
amphetamines and, 1:57  
biperiden and, 1:145  
chloral hydrate and, 1:227  
chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
clomipramine and, 1:246  
clonazepam and, 1:248  
clozapate and, 1:251  
clozapine and, 1:253  
desipramine and, 1:345  
doxepin and, 1:393  
flurazepam and, 1:487  
imipramine and, 1:596  
loxpine and, 1:667  
mirtazapine and, 2:733  
nortriptyline and, 2:784  
olanzapine and, 2:812  
in panic attacks, 2:835  
pimozide and, 2:892  
protriptyline and, 2:921, 922  
quetiapine and, 2:947  
sleepwalking disorder from, 2:1064  
tic disorders and, 2:1158  
trihexyphenidyl and, 2:1186

- trimipramine and, 2:1188  
 valerian and, 2:1200  
 zaleplon and, 2:1232  
 ziprasidone, 2:1234  
 zolpidem and, 2:1236  
*See also names of specific antihistamines*
- Antihypertensives**  
 amphetamines and, 1:57  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 clozapine and, 1:253  
 delirium from, 1:312  
 desipramine and, 1:345  
 doxepin and, 1:393  
 erectile dysfunction from, 1:429  
 hypoactive sexual desire disorder and, 1:583  
 male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686, 687  
 vs. meditation, 2:709  
 methylphenidate and, 2:727  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 nightmares from, 2:781  
 risperidone and, 2:974  
*See also names of specific antihypertensives*
- Anti-infective agents.** *See* Antibiotics
- Anti-inflammatory drugs,** 1:218–219, 433–434, 651  
*See also* Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID)
- Antimalarial drugs,** 1:485, 2:870
- Antimanic drugs.** *See* Mood stabilizers
- Antinausea drugs.** *See* Antiemetic drugs
- Antioxidants,** 1:44, 433, 2:786*t*, 981, 985
- Anti-parkinsonian agents,** 1:45–46, 130, 144–145, 312, 651, 2:781
- Antipsychotics**  
 abnormal involuntary movement scale and, 1:1, 2  
 advance directives and, 1:24  
 for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43  
 amantadine and, 1:45  
 amoxapine and, 1:54  
 for apathy, 1:83  
 aripiprazole, 1:89, 90  
 for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
 benztrapine and, 1:130  
 beta blockers and, 1:134  
 biperiden and, 1:144, 145  
 for bipolar disorder, 1:148, 149, 150  
 for brief psychotic disorder, 1:174–175  
 for Capgras syndrome, 1:204  
 case management and, 1:207  
 for catatonic disorders, 1:213  
 CATIE and, 1:215–216  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 for delusional disorder, 1:318  
 dementia and, 1:326  
 for dermatillomania, 1:343  
 desipramine and, 1:345  
 for detoxification, 1:347  
 diets for, 1:363  
 dopamine and, 1:390, 391  
 doxepin and, 1:393  
 vs. electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 410  
 genetics, 1:518  
 imipramine and, 1:596  
 involuntary hospitalization and, 1:625  
 for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
 late-life depression and, 1:651  
 male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686  
 maprotiline and, 2:694  
 medication-induced movement disorders from, 2:701–706  
 for methamphetamine intoxication, 2:725  
 mirtazapine and, 2:733  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome from, 2:766–767  
 olanzapine, 2:811  
 origin of mental illnesses and, 2:824  
 for paranoia, 2:842  
 paroxetine and, 2:853  
 for phencyclidine delirium, 2:880  
 pimozide and, 2:892  
 propranolol and, 2:918, 919  
 protriptyline and, 2:921  
 quetiapine, 2:946, 947  
 risperidone, 2:972–973  
 for schizoaffective disorder, 2:988–989  
 for schizophrenia, 2:995, 998–999  
 for schizopreniform disorder, 2:1006  
 for schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024  
 for shared psychotic disorder, 2:1055  
 in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 for substance-induced psychotic disorder, 2:1129  
 tardive dyskinesia from, 2:1145–1146  
 for tic disorders, 2:1161  
 trazodone and, 2:1176  
 for trichillomania, 2:1181  
 trihexyphenidyl and, 2:1184  
 trimipramine and, 2:1188  
 venlafaxine and, 2:1205  
 zaleplon and, 2:1232  
 zolpidem and, 2:1236  
*See also names of specific antipsychotics*
- Antiseizure drugs.** *See* Anticonvulsants
- Antiseptics.** *See* Antibiotics
- Antisocial personality disorder (APD),** 1:73–76  
 alcohol and, 1:30  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:108  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:179–180  
 bullying and, 1:186  
 cocaine abuse and, 1:257  
 conduct disorder and, 1:281, 282, 283  
 denial in, 1:329  
 factitious disorder and, 1:453  
 family therapy, 1:460  
 Hamilton psychopathy checklist, 1:561–563  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
 vs. impulse-control disorders, 2:939–940  
 intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:611  
 malingering and, 2:689  
 narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:757  
 opioid dependence and, 2:816  
 oppositional defiant disorder and, 2:821  
 as personality disorder, 2:875  
 reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
 sexual sadism and, 2:1050  
**Antispasmodics,** 1:218, 655, 656, 2:854–855
- Antiviral drugs,** 1:45, 2:842
- Anxiety and anxiety disorders,** 1:76–77  
 acupuncture for, 1:8  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:12  
 addiction and, 1:16  
 adjustment disorders and, 1:18, 19  
 adrenaline and, 1:23  
 agoraphobia, 1:26, 27, 28  
 alcohol and, 1:30, 32  
 alprazolam for, 1:36  
 antidepressants for, 1:71  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:107, 108  
 autism and, 1:110  
 aversion therapy, 1:116  
 avoidant personality disorder and, 1:118  
 behavior modification for, 1:125  
 benzodiazepines for, 1:128, 129  
 bibliotherapy, 1:135  
 binge eating and, 1:139  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:147  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:154  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:179  
 bullying and, 1:186  
 buspirone for, 1:191–192  
 from caffeine, 1:195, 196  
 chloral hydrate for, 1:226, 227  
 chlordiazepoxide for, 1:228–229  
 chronic pain and, 1:233

Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly and, 1:240  
 clonazepam for, 1:247  
 clorazepate for, 1:250  
 cocaine and, 1:255, 257  
 compulsion and, 1:277  
 conversion disorder and, 1:286  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291  
 denial and, 1:329  
 dependent personality disorder and, 1:333  
 dermatillomania and, 1:342  
 in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:355, 356  
 diazepam for, 1:359–361  
 doxepin for, 1:392  
 dual diagnosis, 1:394, 395  
 dyspareunia and, 1:396  
 ecstasy and, 1:405, 406  
 energy therapies for, 1:421  
 exercise for, 1:437  
 exhibitionism and, 1:440  
 exposure treatment for, 1:443–448  
 gender issues in mental health and, 1:503  
 with generalized anxiety disorder, 1:507  
 genetics, 1:515, 2:824  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
 from grief, 1:529, 531  
 from guided imagery therapy, 1:543  
 hallucinogens and, 1:549, 550, 551  
 Hamilton Anxiety Scale, 1:558–559  
 hypnotherapy, 1:578  
 hypochondriasis and, 1:585, 2:1081  
 hypomania and, 1:591  
 insomnia and, 1:605  
 Internet addiction disorder and, 1:612  
 juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:630  
 juvenile depression and, 1:633  
 kava kava for, 1:643  
 kleptomania and, 1:646  
 late-life depression and, 1:651  
 lavender for, 1:655  
 lorazepam for, 1:665  
 loxapine for, 1:666  
 major depressive disorder and, 2:682  
 maprotiline for, 2:694  
 meditation, 2:710  
 mesoridazine for, 2:719  
 from methamphetamine, 2:724  
 mirtazapine for, 2:732  
 modeling for, 2:736, 737  
 neurosis and, 2:771  
 nightmare disorder, 2:780–781  
 obsession and, 2:800–801  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:805

opioid dependence and, 2:816  
 oppositional defiant disorder and, 2:820  
 oxazepam for, 2:829  
 panic attacks in, 2:835  
 paroxetine for, 2:852  
 passionflower for, 2:854  
 pedophilia and, 2:864  
 person-centered therapy, 2:873  
 from phencyclidine, 2:878, 880  
 phenelzine for, 2:881  
 play therapy, 2:893  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904  
 process addiction and, 2:917  
 propranolol for, 2:918, 919  
 protriptyline for, 2:920  
 psychosurgery, 2:934  
 psychotherapy, 2:936  
 pyromania and, 2:941  
 rational emotive therapy, 2:951  
 relapse, 2:959  
 Rorschach technique, 2:979  
 from SAMe, 2:986  
 schizoid personality disorder and, 2:992  
 selective mutism and, 2:1021  
 sleep terror disorder and, 2:1062  
 St. John's wort for, 2:1091–1092  
 stigma, 2:1105  
 stuttering and, 2:1124  
 thioridazine for, 2:1153  
 tic disorders and, 2:1160  
 trazodone for, 2:1175  
 trimipramine for, 2:1186  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder and, 2:1189  
 valerian for, 2:1198  
 yoga for, 2:1227  
*See also* Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse; Anxiety reduction techniques; names of specific anxiety disorders  
 Anxiety reduction techniques, 1:78–82  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 stress and, 2:1115  
 systematic desensitization, 2:1140–1141  
*See also* Anxiety and anxiety disorders  
 Anxiolytics. *See* Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse  
 APA (American Psychiatric Association). *See* American Psychiatric Association (APA)  
 Apathy, 1:82–83  
 cocaine and, 1:257  
 in delirium, 1:311, 313  
 in feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, 1:466  
 as negative symptom, 2:764  
 in Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1219, 1220  
 APD (Antisocial personality disorder). *See* Antisocial personality disorder (APD)  
 Aphasia, 1:40, 323, 556  
 Aphonias, 1:287  
 Aphrodisiacs, 1:527, 528  
 Aplastic anemia, 1:205  
 Apnea, sleep. *See* Breathing-related sleep disorder  
 APOE (Apolipoprotein E), 1:38–39, 41, 322–323, 327–328, 513, 518  
 Apollo, 2:753  
 Apomorphine, 1:430  
 APP (Amyloid precursor protein), 1:38, 513  
 Apperception, 1:224–226  
 Appetite stimulants, 1:200, 228  
 Appetite suppressants, 1:57, 83–86, 2:743, 798, 799  
 Apple juice, 1:361  
 Applied Behavior Analysis (ABA), 1:113  
 Applied psychology, 2:930–931  
 Applied psychophysiology. *See* Biofeedback  
 Approval-seeking, 1:330–331  
 Apraxia, 1:40, 323  
 Aprepitant, 1:86–88  
 Apricot vine. *See* Passionflower  
 APS (American Pain Society), 1:233  
 Aquachloral. *See* Chloral hydrate  
 Arcuate nucleus, 1:390  
 Aricept. *See* Donepezil  
 Aripiprazole, 1:88–91, 215, 391, 2:988, 999, 1161  
 Army Individual Test Battery, 1:555  
 Aromatherapy, 1:91–93  
 chamomile, 1:218  
 lavender, 1:655  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 rosemary, 2:981–982  
 stress, 2:1115  
 Arousal. *See* Sexual arousal  
 Arrestee Drug Abuse Monitoring (ADAM), 1:258  
*The Art of Counseling: How to Gain and Give Mental Health* (May), 1:81  
 Art therapy. *See* Creative therapies  
 Artane. *See* Trihexyphenidyl  
 Arteries. *See* Cardiovascular system  
 Arteriosclerosis, 1:429, 430  
 Arthritis  
 chronic pain, 1:232–233  
 energy therapies, 1:422  
 evening primrose oil for, 1:433, 434  
 meditation for, 2:706  
 SAMe for, 2:985  
 Articulation disorder. *See*  
 Phonological disorder  
 Artificial ingredients, 1:362  
 Asava pepper. *See* Kava kava  
 Ascendin. *See* Amoxapine  
 Ascorbic acid. *See* Vitamin C  
 ASD (Acute stress disorder). *See*  
 Acute stress disorder (ASD)

- Asher, Richard, 1:451  
 Ashtanga yoga. *See* Yoga  
 Asian Americans, 1:507  
 Asperger, Hans, 1:93  
 Asperger's disorder, 1:**93–97**, 2:877  
 Aspirin  
     caffeine and, 1:195, 197  
     delirium and, 1:312  
     divalproex sodium and, 1:387  
     ecstasy and, 1:404  
     ginkgo biloba and, 1:526  
     valproic acid and, 2:1201  
     for vascular dementia, 2:1203  
 ASQ (Agoraphobic Self-Statements Questionnaire), 1:28  
 Assertive community treatment (ACT), 1:**97–99**, 207–209, 458  
 Assertiveness training, 1:**99–102**, 100  
     bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
     bullying, 1:187  
     dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
     guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
     histrionic personality disorder, 1:568  
     modeling, 2:738  
     neglect, 2:765  
 Assessment and diagnosis, 1:**102–105**  
     alcohol-related disorders, 1:33  
     Alzheimer's disease, 1:40, 41–42  
     anorexia nervosa, 1:64  
     antisocial personality disorder, 1:74  
     attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:106–107  
     autism, 1:112–113  
     avoidant personality disorder, 1:118  
     Beck Depression Inventory, 1:123–124  
     Bender Gestalt Test, 1:126–128  
     bipolar disorder, 1:147–148  
     body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
     Child Depression Inventory, 1:220–221  
     Children's Apperception Test, 1:224–226  
     chronic pain, 1:233–234  
     circadian rhythm sleep disorder, 1:237–238  
     Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240–241  
     Cognistat, 1:261–262  
     Conners' Rating Scales-Revised, 1:284–285  
     conversion disorder, 1:288  
     crisis intervention, 1:303  
     delirium, 1:313–314  
     delusional disorder, 1:318  
     dementia, 1:325–326  
     dependent personality disorder, 1:331–332  
     depersonalization disorder, 1:337  
     *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM), 1:354–359  
     disorder of written expression, 1:370  
     dissociative amnesia, 1:374–375  
     dissociative identity disorder, 1:381–382  
     dysthymic disorder, 1:399–400  
     erectile dysfunction, 1:429–430  
     executive function, 1:435  
     feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, 1:467  
     figure drawings, 1:479–481  
     generalized anxiety disorder, 1:508–509  
     Geriatric Depression Scale, 1:519–520  
     Gestalt therapy, 1:522  
     guided imagery therapy, 1:542–543  
     Halstead-Reitan Battery, 1:554–558  
     Hamilton Anxiety Scale, 1:558–559  
     Hamilton Depression Scale, 1:560–561  
     Hare psychopathy checklist, 1:561–563  
     Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20, 1:563–565  
     house-tree-person test, 1:575–576  
     intermittent explosive disorder, 1:610–611  
     Internet-based therapy, 1:615–616  
     involuntary hospitalization, 1:625–626  
     juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:630–631  
     juvenile depression, 1:633  
     kleptomania, 1:647  
     major depressive disorder, 2:681–682  
     mathematics disorder, 2:698  
     mental retardation, 2:717  
     Mini-Mental State Examination, 2:728–729  
     Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory, 2:729–731  
     multisystemic therapy, 2:747  
     neuropsychological testing, 2:769–771  
     nutrition counseling, 2:791–792  
     obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803  
     pain disorder, 2:832–833  
     panic disorder, 2:838–839  
     paranoid personality disorder, 2:845–846  
     phonological disorder, 2:884  
     Pick's disease, 2:889  
     rational emotive therapy, 2:951  
     reward deficiency syndrome, 2:970  
     schizophreniform disorder, 2:1005–1006  
     Sexual Violence Risk-20, 2:1052–1054  
     sleep disorders, 2:1059  
     social phobia, 2:1072  
     specific phobias, 2:1087–1088  
     STAR\*D study, 2:1095  
     Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV, 2:1121–1122  
     Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory, 2:1132–1133  
     Thematic Apperception Test, 2:1149–1152  
     trichillomania, 2:1181  
     Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale, 2:1213  
     Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, 2:1216  
     *See also* Diagnosis; Dual diagnosis; names of specific procedures or tests  
 Assimilative integration. *See* Psychotherapy integration  
 Assisted suicide, 2:1135–1136  
 Associated imagery, 1:542  
 Association conditioning, 2:1085  
 Association for Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback, 1:141  
 Association of Medical Superintendents of American Institutions for the Insane. *See* American Psychiatric Association (APA)  
 Associationism, 1:29  
 Astemizole, 1:88, 385  
 Asthma, 2:896  
 Asthma drugs, 1:664, 2:706, 743  
 Astringents, 2:981, 982  
*Ataque de nervios*, 1:507  
 Ataxia, 1:165, 2:1218  
 Atenolol, 1:134  
 Athletes, 1:195, 197, 2:1102–1104  
 Ativan. *See* Lorazepam  
 Atomoxetine, 1:107, 2:862  
 Atonic seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Atorvastatin, 1:483, 489  
 Atretol. *See* Carbamazepine  
 Atropine, 2:721, 740, 778, 1179  
 Attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood. *See* Reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood  
 Attention. *See* Concentration  
 Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 1:**105–109**  
     amoxapine for, 1:53  
     amphetamines for, 1:55–56  
     behavior modification and, 1:125  
     bipolar disorder and, 1:147  
     borderline personality disorder and, 1:163  
     bupropion for, 1:189  
     classification, 1:518  
     clonidine for, 1:248, 249  
     cocaine abuse and, 1:257  
     cognitive retraining, 1:270  
     Conners' Rating Scales-Revised, 1:284–285  
     desipramine for, 1:344  
     diets for, 1:361, 362  
     dopamine and, 1:391

doxepin for, 1:392  
dual diagnosis, 1:395  
executive function and, 1:435  
exhibitionism and, 1:440  
juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:630, 631  
juvenile depression and, 1:633  
learning disorders and, 1:657  
methamphetamine for, 2:724  
methylphenidate for, 2:725–726  
modeling, 2:736  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors for, 2:742  
neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
neurotransmitters and, 2:773–774  
oppositional defiant disorder and, 2:820, 821  
parent management training, 2:849  
pathological gambling disorder and, 2:856  
pemoline for, 2:868  
process addiction and, 2:917  
protriptyline for, 2:920  
reading disorder and, 2:956  
reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:968–969  
tic disorders and, 2:1158, 1160, 1161  
trazodone for, 2:1175  
trimipramine for, 2:1186  
Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale, 2:1213  
Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, 2:1216  
Attention-deficit disorder (ADD), 1:95, 2:735  
Attention-seeking behavior, 1:565–569  
Attunements, 1:421  
Atypical antidepressants. *See* Antidepressants  
Atypical antipsychotics. *See* Antipsychotics  
Auditory hallucinations. *See* Hallucinations  
Aura, 1:420  
Aural hallucinations. *See* Hallucinations  
Aurorix. *See* Moclobemide  
Australia, 1:454, 2:858  
Autism, 1:109–114  
vs. Asperger's disorder, 1:93  
childhood disintegrative disorder and, 1:222, 223  
classification, 1:518  
clomipramine for, 1:244  
electroencephalography, 1:413  
executive function and, 1:435  
genetics, 1:512, 514, 516–517  
as pervasive developmental disorder, 2:876, 877  
*See also* High-functioning autism  
Autistic psychopathy. *See* Asperger's disorder

Autistic spectrum disorders. *See* Pervasive developmental disorders (PDD)  
Automatic thoughts. *See* Cognition  
Automobile accidents. *See* Motor vehicle accidents  
Aventyl. *See* Nortriptyline  
Aversants  
chemical (*See* Chemical aversants)  
pharmacological (*See* Pharmacological aversants)  
Aversion therapy, 1:114–116  
cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:264  
covert sensitization, 1:298  
fetishism, 1:478  
guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
nicotine addiction, 2:778  
pathological gambling disorder, 2:858  
pedophilia, 2:864  
transvestic fetishism, 2:1171  
Avoidance  
acute stress disorder and, 1:12  
agoraphobia and, 1:27, 28  
bullying and, 1:186  
gender issues in mental health, 1:503, 504  
Gestalt therapy, 1:523  
Avoidance conditioning, 2:957, 1085  
Avoidant personality disorder, 1:117–120, 332, 2:774, 876, 1007–1008  
Avolition, 2:996, 1002  
Awareness, 1:520–524, 579–580  
Axes (diagnostic categories), 1:291, 355, 2:875, 1121  
Axons, 1:166, 2:772  
Ayurvedic medicine, 1:30, 421, 510, 2:683  
Azidothymidine (AZT), 1:322  
Azilect. *See* Rasagiline  
AZT (Azidothymidine), 1:322

## B

B vitamins. *See names of specific B vitamins*  
Baby blues. *See* Postpartum depression  
BACE1, 1:322  
Baclofen, 2:842  
Bad trips, 1:549  
Bagging. *See* Inhalants and related disorders  
Baime, Michael J., 2:706  
BAL (British Anti-Lewisite). *See* Dimercaprol  
Bandura, Albert, 2:1025–1026  
Barbiturates, 1:121–123  
abuse, 1:67  
benzodiazepines and, 1:129  
vs. buspirone, 1:191

chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
clomipramine and, 1:246  
clozapine and, 1:253  
desipramine and, 1:345  
diphenhydramine and, 1:368  
erectile dysfunction from, 1:429  
fluphenazine and, 1:485  
kava kava and, 1:644  
maprotiline and, 2:694, 695  
mesoridazine and, 2:721  
molindone and, 2:740  
pentobarbital, 1:121, 347  
perphenazine and, 2:870  
phenelzine and, 2:882  
quetiapine and, 2:947  
riluzole and, 2:972  
for seizures, 2:1019  
thiothixene and, 2:1157  
tranylcypromine and, 2:1173  
urine drug screening for, 2:1191  
valerian and, 2:1200  
withdrawal, 1:347  
Bargaining, 1:530  
Barium sulfate, 1:279  
Basal forebrain, 2:773  
Basal ganglia, 2:806  
Bashful bladder syndrome. *See* Toilet phobia  
Basic psychology, 2:930–931  
Bateson, Gregory, 1:456  
BDD (Body dysmorphic disorder). *See* Body dysmorphic disorder (BDD)  
BDI (Beck Depression Inventory). *See* Beck Depression Inventory (BDI)  
BEAM (Brain electrical activity mapping), 1:414  
Beck, Aaron T., 1:123, 263  
Beck Depression Inventory (BDI), 1:123–124  
Child Depression Inventory and, 1:221  
Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly and, 1:241  
dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
late-life depression, 1:652  
Bedwetting. *See* Enuresis  
Behavior. *See names of specific behaviors*  
Behavior addiction. *See* Process addiction  
Behavior disorders. *See names of specific behavior disorders*  
Behavior modification, 1:124–126  
antisocial personality disorder, 1:75  
assertiveness training and, 1:99–102  
attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
autism, 1:113  
vs. aversion therapy, 1:115  
chronic pain, 1:234

cognitive problem-solving skills  
training and, 1:265–267  
cognitive-behavioral therapy,  
1:263–265  
couples therapy, 1:295  
covert sensitization and, 1:297–298  
disulfiram and, 1:384  
elimination disorders, 1:416, 417  
encopresis, 1:418  
enuresis, 1:426  
exhibitionism, 1:441  
frotteurism, 1:490  
guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
history, 2:930  
hospitalization for, 1:573  
insomnia, 1:605  
intervention, 1:622  
modeling, 2:737, 738  
naltrexone in, 2:751–752  
nicotine addiction, 2:776, 778–779  
obesity, 2:798, 799  
parent management training,  
2:849–851  
pathological gambling disorder,  
2:858, 859  
pedophilia, 2:864  
pica, 2:887  
Pick's disease, 2:890  
psychotherapy, 2:935  
rumination disorder, 2:984  
selective mutism, 2:1022  
self-control strategies,  
2:1025–1028  
separation anxiety disorder,  
2:1040–1041  
sexual sadism, 2:1051  
smoking cessation, 2:1068  
stereotypic movement disorder,  
2:1101  
token economy system,  
2:1166–1168  
trichillomania, 2:1181  
*See also* Systematic desensitization

*The Behavior of Organisms* (Skinner), 1:125

Behavior therapy. *See* Behavior modification; Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT)

Behavioral addiction. *See* Process addiction

Behavioral and psychiatric symptoms of dementia (BPSD). *See* Dementia

Behavioral health care. *See* Managed care

Behavioral inhibition, 1:27, 2:1070, 1074

Behavioral neurology. *See* Neuropsychiatry/behavioral neurology

Behavioral perspective, 1:358–359

Behavioral phenotypes, 1:514–515

Behavioral physiology. *See* Biofeedback

Behavioral self-control training. *See* Self-control strategies

Behaviorism, 2:930  
Belladonna, 1:48  
Bellak, Leopold, 1:224  
Bellak, Sonya Sorel, 1:224  
*La belle indifférence*, 1:288  
Bem, Sandra, 1:502  
Benadryl. *See* Diphenhydramine  
Bender Gestalt Test, 1:126–128  
Bender, Lauretta, 1:126  
Bender Visual Motor Gestalt Test.  
*See* Bender Gestalt Test  
Benign senescent forgetfulness. *See* Memory  
Benson, Herbert, 2:708  
Benzocaine, 1:86  
Benzodiazepines, 1:128, 128–129  
abuse, 1:67  
for agoraphobia, 1:28–29  
for alcohol-related disorders, 1:34  
alprazolam, 1:35–37  
beta blockers and, 1:134  
for bipolar disorder, 1:148, 149  
vs. buspirone, 1:191  
for catatonic disorders, 1:213  
chlor diazepoxide, 1:228–229  
clonidine and, 1:248  
for delirium, 1:314  
for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
detoxification and, 1:349–350  
disulfiram and, 1:385  
fluoxetine and, 1:483  
fluvoxamine and, 1:489  
for generalized anxiety disorder,  
1:509  
kava kava and, 1:643  
methadone and, 2:723  
for neuroleptic malignant syn-  
drome, 2:767  
for panic disorder, 2:839, 840  
process addiction and, 2:917  
quazepam, 2:945  
for restless legs syndrome, 2:1060  
as sedatives, 2:1013  
selective serotonin reuptake inhibi-  
tors and, 2:1024  
for sleep disorders, 2:1059  
for social phobia, 2:1073  
for specific phobias, 2:1089  
for tic disorders, 2:1161  
urine drug screening for, 2:1191  
valerian and, 2:1200  
withdrawal, 1:347  
Benztropine, 1:130–131  
amoxapine and, 1:55  
doxepin and, 1:393  
fluphenazine and, 1:485  
haloperidol and, 1:552  
imipramine and, 1:596  
for medication-induced movement  
disorders, 2:704  
mesoridazine and, 2:720  
molindone and, 2:740  
nortriptyline and, 2:784  
pimozide and, 2:892

protriptyline and, 2:922  
thioridazine and, 2:1154  
trifluoperazine and, 2:1183  
trimipramine and, 2:1188  
Bereavement, 1:131–133, 471  
*See also* Death and dying; Grief

Berkowitz, David, 2:942

Berman, Jennifer, 1:470

Berman, Laura, 1:470

Bestiality. *See* Zoophilia

Beta amyloid, 1:39, 44

Beta blockers, 1:134, 134–135  
adrenaline and, 1:23  
for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
fluoxetine and, 1:483  
fluphenazine and, 1:485  
fluvoxamine and, 1:489  
male orgasmic disorder from,  
2:686  
propranolol, 2:918–919  
selective serotonin reuptake inhibi-  
tors and, 2:1024  
for social phobia, 2:1073  
for specific phobias, 2:1089

Beta carotene. *See* Vitamin A

Beta waves, 1:415

Bethanechol  
amoxapine and, 1:54  
donepezil and, 1:389  
doxepin and, 1:393  
pimozide and, 2:892  
protriptyline and, 2:921, 977, 1144  
thiothixene and, 2:1156  
trazodone and, 2:1176

*Beyond Freedom and Dignity*  
(Skinner), 1:125

BH (Bleomycin hydrolase), 1:322–323

BHA, 1:362

Bhakti yoga. *See* Yoga

BHT, 1:362

Bias, 1:19, 440, 502, 607, 2:756

Biaxin. *See* Clarithromycin

Bibliotherapy, 1:135–137, 2:951, 1077

Bigler, Erin, 1:240

Bikram yoga. *See* Yoga

Binge drinking, 1:137, 137–139, 475

Binge eating, 1:139, 139–140  
bulimia nervosa and, 1:176, 178,  
179, 180–181  
desipramine for, 1:344

Binges, drug. *See* Drug binges

Bini, Lucio, 1:409

Biofeedback, 1:140–144, 141  
attention deficit/hyperactivity dis-  
order, 1:108  
bipolar disorder, 1:150  
chronic pain, 1:234  
cocaine abuse, 1:260  
conversion disorder, 1:290  
generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
Gestalt therapy, 1:522, 524  
pain disorder, 2:833  
post-traumatic stress disorder,  
2:904  
sleepwalking disorder, 2:1064

- Biofield therapies, 1:421, 422  
 Biological psychiatry  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* and, 1:355, 356, 358  
 disease concept of chemical dependency and, 1:368–369  
 family education and, 1:456  
 gender identity disorder and, 1:498  
 genetics and, 1:512–518  
 neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
 origin of mental illnesses and, 2:822–829  
 as specialty, 2:931  
 Biopsychosocial assessment. *See* Assessment and diagnosis  
 Biopsychosocial model, 1:355, 356, 2:828, 831–832  
 Biosocial model, 1:566  
 Biotin, 2:786t  
**Biperiden, 1:144–146**  
 amantadine and, 1:45  
 amoxapine and, 1:55  
 doxepin and, 1:393  
 imipramine and, 1:596  
 nortriptyline and, 2:784  
 protriptyline and, 2:922  
 trimipramine and, 2:1188  
 Biphetamine. *See* Amphetamines  
 Bipolar depression. *See* Bipolar disorder; Depression and depressive disorders  
**Bipolar disorder, 1:146–152**  
 alcohol and, 1:30, 32  
 amoxapine for, 1:53  
 antidepressants and, 1:72  
 aripiprazole for, 1:88, 89  
 Asperger's disorder and, 1:94  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:107  
 vs. borderline personality disorder, 1:162  
 brief psychotic disorder and, 1:175  
 carbamazepine for, 1:205  
 catatonia and, 1:211  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:212, 213  
 causes, 1:147  
 chlorpromazine for, 1:230  
 vs. cocaine intoxication, 1:259  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:147, 291  
 crisis housing, 1:301  
 cyclothymic disorder and, 1:305–308  
 defined, 1:146  
 vs. delirium, 1:313  
 delusions in, 1:319  
 demographics, 1:147  
 depression and depressive disorders and, 1:340  
 described, 1:146–147  
 diagnosis, 1:147–148  
 diets, 1:363  
 divalproex sodium for, 1:386  
 dopamine and, 1:391  
 doxepin for, 1:392  
 dual diagnosis, 1:394  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 410, 411  
 energy therapies, 1:422  
 exhibitionism and, 1:440  
 family psychoeducation, 1:457, 458  
 gabepentin for, 1:493  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:503  
 genetics, 1:512, 514, 2:824  
 hallucinations in, 1:545  
 haloperidol and, 1:552  
 hypomania in, 1:589–591  
 intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:611  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:617  
 Jamison, Kay Redfield on, 2:693  
 lamotrigine for, 1:649  
 light therapy, 1:659  
 lithium carbonate for, 1:662–664  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:677, 678  
 maprotiline and, 2:694  
 nefazodone for, 2:762  
 nortriptyline and, 2:783  
 nutrition, 2:788  
 olanzapine for, 2:810  
 paroxetine and, 2:852, 853  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904  
 prevention, 1:150  
 process addiction and, 2:917  
 prognosis, 1:150  
 protriptyline, 2:920  
 pyromania and, 2:941  
 quetiapine for, 2:946  
 riluzole for, 2:970  
 SAMe and, 2:986  
 schizoaffective disorder and, 2:986, 987, 989  
 schizophreniaform disorder and, 2:1003  
 seasonal affective disorder and, 2:1009–1012  
 STEP-BD study, 2:1097–1099  
 symptoms, 1:147  
 Torrey, E. Fuller on, 2:996  
 trazodone for, 2:1175  
 treatments, 1:148–150  
 trimipramine for, 2:1186  
 valproic acid for, 2:1200  
 voyeurism and, 2:1211  
*See also* Juvenile bipolar disorder; Manic episode; Mixed episode  
 Birth control pills. *See* Oral contraceptives  
 Birth defects  
 Asperger's disorder and, 1:94  
 from carbamazepine, 1:205  
 from chlordiazepoxide, 1:228  
 from fetal alcohol syndrome, 1:474  
 mental retardation from, 2:717  
 from monoamine oxidase inhibitors, 2:743  
 nutrition and, 2:788  
 Bittman, Barry, 1:142  
 Bizarre delusions. *See* Delusions  
 Black box warning, 2:861  
 Black box warnings, 2:1024  
 Blackouts, 1:32, 373  
 Bladder control, lack of. *See* Enuresis  
 Bleomycin hydrolase (BH), 1:322–323  
 Blood cholesterol. *See* Cholesterol  
 Blood oxygen, 1:168, 169, 170  
 Blood phobia. *See specific phobias*  
 Blood pressure, 1:22, 23, 142  
*See also* Hypertension; Hypotension  
 Blood sugar. *See* Glucose  
 Blood-pressure drugs. *See* Antihypertensives  
 Blood-thinning drugs. *See* Anticoagulants  
 Blum, Kenneth, 2:968, 969, 970  
 BMA (British Medical Association), 1:8  
 BMI (Body mass index), 2:792, 796, 797  
 Body dysmorphic disorder (BDD), 1:152, 152–156  
 vs. bulimia nervosa, 1:178  
 dermatillomania and, 1:343  
*in Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:358  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 1:518  
 origin of mental illnesses and, 2:828  
 as somatization and somatoform disorder, 2:1081  
 Body mass index (BMI), 2:792, 796, 797  
 Body movements. *See* Movements  
 Body temperature  
 aripiprazole and, 1:90  
 biofeedback and, 1:142  
 chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
 ecstasy and, 1:405–406, 550  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome and, 2:766  
 thiothixene and, 2:1156  
 ziprasidone and, 2:1233  
 Body weight  
 appetite suppressants and, 1:83–86  
 binge eating and, 1:139, 140  
 breathing-related sleep disorder and, 1:170  
 caffeine and, 1:197  
 feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 1:466  
 nutrition counseling for, 2:791–793  
 stigma, 2:1106  
*See also* Anorexia nervosa; Bulimia nervosa; Diets; Nutrition and mental health; Obesity

- Bodywork therapies, 1:156, **156–161**, 2:707  
 acute stress disorder, 1:13  
 adjustment disorders, 1:20  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:34  
 aromatherapy, 1:91, 92  
 chronic pain, 1:234  
 energy therapies and, 1:419, 421, 422  
 enuresis, 1:426  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 meditation, 2:707, 708  
 pain disorder, 2:833  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:905  
 stress, 2:1115
- Boldenone undecylenate, 2:1103  
 Bonding, 2:952–954, 984  
 Bone marrow, 1:205  
 Bones, 2:671, 672  
 Bontril. *See* Phendimetrazine  
 Borderline personality disorder (BPD), **1:161–164**  
 from abuse, 1:5  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:179  
 creative therapies, 1:299  
 crisis housing, 1:301  
 cyclothymic disorder and, 1:306  
 vs. dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
 depersonalization in, 1:334, 335  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:380  
 energy therapies, 1:422  
 factitious disorder and, 1:453  
 family psychoeducation, 1:458  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:521, 524  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
 intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:611  
 narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:757  
 neurotransmitters in, 2:774  
 pathological gambling disorder and, 2:857  
 as personality disorder, 2:875  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904  
 schizoaffective disorder and, 2:987  
 self mutilation and, 2:1033, 1034–1035  
 stigma, 2:1106  
 Botanical medicine. *See* Herbal medicine  
 Botox. *See* Botulism toxin  
 Botulism toxin, 2:1073  
 Bowel control, lack of. *See* Encopresis  
 Boy Scouts of America, 2:865  
 Boys  
 Asperger's disorder, 1:95  
 bullying, 1:184  
 childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:222  
 enuresis, 1:425  
 expressive language disorder, 1:449  
 gender identity disorder, 1:497–498, 499, 500  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:502  
 inhalant use, 1:602  
 juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:630  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:808  
 pervasive developmental disorders, 2:877  
 phonological disorder, 2:884  
 reading disorder, 2:956  
 sexual abuse of, 1:3  
 sleep terror disorder, 2:1062  
 steroid use, 2:1103  
 stuttering, 2:1124  
*See also* Men  
 BPD (Borderline personality disorder). *See* Borderline personality disorder (BPD)  
 BPSD (Behavioral and psychiatric symptoms of dementia). *See* Dementia  
 Bradykinesia, 2:704, 745  
 Braid, James, 1:579  
 Brain, **1:164–168**, 165, 166  
 acute stress disorder, 1:11  
 addiction, 1:15, 346  
 amphetamines and, 1:58  
 aripiprazole and, 1:91  
 Asperger's disorder, 1:95–96  
 cannabis and, 1:200  
 clozapine and, 1:252, 390, 391  
 computed tomography, 1:277, 278, 280  
 delirium, 1:312, 315  
 dementia, 1:321–328, 322  
 depersonalization disorder, 1:335–336  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:339  
 dissociation, 1:371  
 ecstasy and, 1:406  
 executive function, 1:435–366  
 intermittent explosive disorder, 1:610  
 magnetic resonance imaging, 2:672  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:676  
 narcolepsy, 2:758  
 neuropsychiatry, 2:768  
 neuropsychological testing, 2:769–771  
 nicotine and, 2:775  
 nutrition and, 2:785  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:806  
 panic disorder, 2:837  
 positron emission tomography, 2:900  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:902  
 process addiction, 2:915  
 psychosurgery, 2:932–934  
 reading disorder, 2:955  
 Rett disorder, 2:964–965  
 reward deficiency syndrome, 2:968  
 schizophrenia, 2:995  
 seizures, 2:1019  
 social phobia, 2:1070  
 stress response, 2:1109–1110  
 stroke, 2:1116–1117  
 suicide markers, 2:1136–1137  
 tic disorders, 2:1158  
 transcranial magnetic stimulation, 2:1168–1169  
 vagus nerve stimulation, 2:1195–1197  
*See also* names of specific parts of the brain  
 Brain chemistry  
 acupuncture, 1:8  
 in addiction, 1:16  
 alcohol use and, 1:32  
 amantadine and, 1:45  
 amoxapine and, 1:53  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:178  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:341, 2:782–783  
 dysthymic disorder, 1:399  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:824–825  
 in schizophrenia, 2:1232–1233  
 seizures and, 2:1017  
 suicide markers, 2:1136–1137  
*See also* Neurohormones; Neurotransmitters  
 Brain electrical activity mapping (BEAM), 1:414  
 Brain hormones. *See* Neurohormones  
 Brain imaging studies  
 antisocial personality disorder, 1:74  
 Asperger's disorder, 1:95–96  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:105–106  
 autism, 1:110–111  
 catatonic disorders, 1:212  
 cocaine abuse, 1:259  
 depersonalization disorder, 1:335–336  
 described, 1:166–167, 593–594  
 injury, 2:672  
 magnetic resonance imaging, 2:672, 677  
 neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
 positron emission tomography, 2:899–901, 900  
 schizophrenia, 2:900  
 single photon emission computed tomography, 2:1056  
 suicide markers, 2:1137  
 Brain injuries  
 amnestic disorders from, 1:50–51  
 anosognosia from, 1:65–67  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:106  
 autism and, 1:111

Bender Gestalt Test, 1:126  
 cognitive remediation, 1:268  
 cognitive retraining, 1:269–271  
 electroencephalography, 1:413,  
   415  
 expressive language disorder from,  
   1:449, 450  
 Halstead-Reitan Battery,  
   1:554–558  
 house-tree-person test, 1:575, 576  
 Internet-based therapy, 1:616  
 Luria-Nebraska  
   Neuropsychological Battery,  
   1:668–669  
 magnetic resonance imaging,  
   2:672  
 mental retardation from, 2:717  
 mixed receptive-expressive lan-  
   guage disorder and, 2:734, 735  
 neuropsychological testing, 2:770  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:825  
 paranoia after, 2:842  
 Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale,  
   2:1213  
 Wechsler Intelligence Scale for  
   Children, 2:1215  
 Brain stem, 1:164, 165, 2:726  
 Brain tumors, 1:165, 167, 2:825  
 Brain waves, 1:413–415, 1016  
 Breast cancer, 1:518, 2:740  
 Breast feeding contraindications. *See*  
   names of specific drugs  
 Breathing, 2:1227, 1228  
   in breathing-related sleep disorder,  
   1:168–170  
   diaphragmatic, 1:78, 79–80  
 Breathing-related sleep disorder,  
   1:168, 168–172, 169  
   continuous positive airway pres-  
   sure therapy, 2:1060  
   as dyssomnia, 2:1057, 1058  
   fatigue from, 1:463, 464  
   polysomnography for, 2:896  
   prognosis, 2:1061  
   quazepam and, 2:945  
 Breema, 1:419, 422  
 Bregman, Lucy, 1:329  
 Breuer, Josef, 1:285  
 Brevital. *See* Methohexitol  
 Brief psychotic disorder, 1:172–176  
   delusions in, 1:319  
   hallucinations in, 1:545  
   psychosis in, 2:931  
   schizophreniform disorder and,  
   2:1005  
 Briquet, Paul, 2:1082  
 Briquet's syndrome. *See*  
   Somatization and somatoform  
   disorders  
 British Anti-Lewisite (BAL). *See*  
   Dimercaprol  
 British Medical Association (BMA),  
   1:8  
 Broad affect. *See* Affect  
 Broca, Paul, 2:770

Broca's area, 1:165  
 Brofaromine, 2:741  
 Bromocriptine, 1:391, 485, 668, 2:705,  
   892  
 Bronchioles, 1:23  
 Bruxism, 2:897  
 Buddhism, 1:421, 2:708  
 Bulimia nervosa, 1:176, 176–183  
   abuse and, 1:5  
   amoxapine for, 1:53  
   bibliotherapy, 1:136  
   binge eating and, 1:139  
   vs. body dysmorphic disorder,  
   1:152  
   causes, 1:177–178  
   cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
   defined, 1:176  
   demographics, 1:178–179  
   described, 1:176–177  
   diagnosis, 1:179  
   diets for, 1:362  
   doxepin for, 1:392  
   exercise, 1:437  
   fluoxetine for, 1:481  
   interpersonal therapy, 1:617, 620  
   kleptomania and, 1:646, 647  
   modeling, 2:736  
   vs. obsessive-compulsive disorder,  
   2:808  
   origin of mental illnesses, 2:828  
   prognosis, 1:182  
   protriptyline for, 2:920  
   rumination disorder and, 2:984  
   selective serotonin reputake inhib-  
   itors for, 2:1023  
   symptoms, 1:178  
   tranylcypromine for, 2:1172  
   trazodone for, 2:1175  
   treatments, 1:179–182  
   trimipramine for, 2:1186  
 Bullying, 1:183–188, 184  
   abuse and, 1:5  
   Asperger's disorder and, 1:96  
   conduct disorder and, 1:281  
   conversion disorder and, 1:286  
   oppositional defiant disorder and,  
   2:819  
   peer groups and, 2:866–867  
   pyromania and, 2:942  
   workplace, 1:4  
 Buprenex. *See* Buprenorphine  
 Buprenorphine, 1:347, 348, 349, 2:817  
 Bupropion, 1:188–190  
   as antidepressant, 1:72  
   for attention deficit/hyperactivity  
   disorder, 1:107  
   for bipolar disorder, 1:149  
   for depression and depressive  
   disorders, 1:340  
   for hypoactive sexual desire  
   disorder, 1:584  
   for methamphetamine addiction,  
   2:725  
   for nicotine addiction, 2:778  
   for panic disorder, 2:839  
   for seasonal affective disorder,  
   2:1011, 1012  
   for smoking cessation, 2:1067, 1068  
   in STAR\*D study, 2:1095  
   in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 Buried memories. *See* Recovered  
   memories  
 Burkhardt, Gottlieb, 2:933  
 Burnett, Andrew, 2:978  
 Burnout, 1:438, 2:902  
 Bush, Jennifer, 1:452  
 Bush, Kathy, 1:452  
 BuSpar. *See* Buspirone  
 Buspirone, 1:191–193  
   for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43  
   citalopram and, 1:240  
   fluoxetine and, 1:483  
   fluvoxamine and, 1:489  
   for generalized anxiety disorder,  
   1:509  
   nefazodone and, 2:763  
   in STAR\*D study, 2:1095  
 Butalbital, 1:121

## C

CA (Cocaine Anonymous). *See* Self-  
   help groups  
 CADASIL (Cerebral autosomal  
   dominant arteriopathy with subcor-  
   tical infarcts and leukoencephalo-  
   pathy), 1:323  
 Caffeine  
   agoraphobia and, 1:28  
   diets and, 1:363, 365  
   ecstasy and, 1:404  
   ginseng and, 1:528  
   insomnia from, 1:605  
   major depressive disorder and,  
   2:683  
   medication-induced movement  
   disorders and, 2:705  
   methamphetamine and, 2:724  
   narcolepsy and, 2:760  
   panic attacks and, 2:835  
   pemoline and, 2:869  
   riluzole and, 2:972  
 Caffeine-related disorders,  
   1:195–199  
 Caffeinism. *See* Caffeine-related  
   disorders  
 CAG (Cytosine-adenine-guanine),  
   1:513, 514  
 CAGE questionnaire, 1:33  
 Calan. *See* Verapamil  
 Calcium caseinate, 1:364  
 Calcium channel blockers  
   for bipolar disorder, 1:149–150  
   carbamazepine and, 1:205  
   lithium carbonate and, 1:664  
   propranolol and, 2:920

- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024  
for tic disorders, 2:1161
- Caloric reflex testing, 1:67
- CAM (Confusion Assessment Method), 1:313
- Campral. *See* Acamprosate
- Campto. *See* Irinotecan
- Canada
- dissociative amnesia, 1:374
  - energy therapies, 1:420, 421
  - factitious disorder, 1:454
  - kava kava, 1:643, 644
- Cancer
- chronic pain, 1:233
  - from nicotine use, 2:779
  - positron emission tomography, 2:900
- See also names of specific types of cancer*
- Candida albicans*, 1:113
- Cannabinoids. *See* Cannabis and related disorders
- Cannabis and related disorders, 1:199–203, 200
- addiction, 1:16
  - hallucinations from, 1:545, 547
  - paranoia from, 2:842
  - phencyclidine and, 2:878
- CAP (Capnometry), 1:142
- CAPD (Central auditory processing disorder). *See* Central auditory processing disorder (CAPD)
- Capgras, Jean, 1:203
- Capgras syndrome (CS), 1:203–204
- Capnometry (CAP), 1:142
- Car accidents. *See* Motor vehicle accidents
- Carbamazepine, 1:204–207, 387
- alprazolam and, 1:36
  - for bipolar disorder, 1:148–149
  - clonazepam and, 1:248
  - clorazepate and, 1:250
  - for cyclothymic disorder, 1:307
  - for detoxification, 1:349
  - diets for, 1:365
  - donepezil and, 1:389
  - fluoxetine and, 1:483
  - fluvoxamine and, 1:489
  - ginkgo biloba and, 1:526
  - for hypomania, 1:591
  - for intermittent explosive disorder, 1:611
  - for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631
  - for Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:646
  - lamotrigine and, 1:649, 650
  - monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743
  - nefazodone and, 2:763
  - olanzapine and, 2:812
  - pimozide and, 2:892
  - quetiapine and, 2:947
  - for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989
  - for seizures, 2:1019
- valproic acid and, 2:1201
- ziprasidone and, 2:1234
- Carbatrol. *See* Carbamazepine
- Carbohydrates, 1:178, 2:787
- Carbon dioxide, 2:835, 837
- Cardiac glycosides, 1:312
- Cardiovascular drugs, 1:651
- Cardiovascular system
- amoxapine and, 1:54
  - amphetamines and, 1:55, 56, 59
  - anorexia nervosa and, 1:64
  - appetite suppressants and, 1:84, 85–86
  - beta blockers and, 1:134
  - in biofeedback, 1:142
  - caffeine and, 1:197
  - chlorpromazine and, 1:231, 232
  - citalopram and, 1:239
  - clomipramine and, 1:245
  - clozapine and, 1:253
  - computed tomography, 1:277, 280–281
  - desipramine and, 1:344
  - doxepin and, 1:393
  - erectile dysfunction and, 1:428, 429, 430
  - fatigue and, 1:463
  - imipramine and, 1:595
  - isocarboxazid and, 1:627
  - magnetic resonance imaging, 2:672, 674
  - meditation, 2:709–710
  - protriptyline and, 2:921
  - quetiapine and, 2:947
  - trazodone and, 2:1175
  - ziprasidone and, 2:1233
- Caregivers
- dependent personality disorder and, 1:331, 333
  - gender issues in mental health, 1:502
  - generalized anxiety disorder, 1:508
  - neglect, 2:764–765
  - reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 2:952–954
  - respite, 2:962, 962–964
  - separation anxiety disorder and, 2:1037–1041
- Carminatives, 1:218, 2:1198
- Carotenoids, 1:44
- Carpenter, David, 2:942
- Carr, Deborah, 1:531
- CASE (Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly). *See* Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly (CASE)
- Case management, 1:207–209
- family psychoeducation, 1:457–458
  - fetal alcohol syndrome, 1:476
  - group homes, 1:534–535
  - managed care and, 2:691–692
  - multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749
  - respite, 2:962–964
- CASSP (Child and Adolescent Service System Program), 1:273
- Castration, 1:441, 2:864
- CAT (Children's Apperception Test). *See* Children's Apperception Test (CAT)
- CAT scan. *See* Computed tomography (CT)
- Catalepsy, 1:173, 213
- Cataplexy, 1:244, 344, 2:759, 760, 1060, 1061
- Catapres. *See* Clonidine
- Catatonia, 1:210–211, 211
- in brief psychotic disorder, 1:172, 173
  - electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408
  - in major depressive disorder, 2:679
  - in psychosis, 2:932
  - in schizophrenia, 2:996
  - in schizopreniform disorder, 2:1003
- Catatonic depression. *See* Depression and depressive disorders
- Catatonic disorders, 1:211, 211–214
- Catatonic schizophrenia. *See* Schizophrenia
- Catecholamines, 1:22, 58, 83, 85, 565, 2:783, 1109
- Category Test, 1:554–555
- Catha edulis*. *See* Cathinone
- Catharsis, 1:538, 539
- Cathinone, 1:57
- CATIE (Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness), 1:215–217
- antipsychotics, 2:999
  - clozapine, 1:252
  - olanzapine, 2:811
  - quetiapine, 2:946
  - risperidone, 2:973
  - ziprasidone, 2:1233
- Caudate nucleus, 1:391, 513
- Causes of mental illness. *See* names of specific disorders
- Causes of mental illnesses. *See* Origin of mental illnesses
- Cautela, Joseph, 1:297
- Caverject. *See* Alprostadil
- CBT (Cognitive-behavioral therapy). *See* Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT)
- CDC (Centers for Disease Control), 1:464, 2:1136
- CDD (Childhood disintegrative disorder). *See* Childhood disintegrative disorder (CDD)
- CDI (Child Depression Inventory), 1:633
- Celexa. *See* Citalopram
- Census Bureau, U.S., 1:570–571
- Center for Mental Health Services, U.S., 1:207, 572
- Centers for Disease Control (CDC), 1:464, 2:1136

- Central alpha-adrenergic agonists, 1:248  
 Central alveolar hypoventilation syndrome, 1:168, 169, 170  
 Central auditory processing disorder (CAPD), 1:658  
 Central sleep apnea syndrome, 1:168, 169, 170  
 Centre for Reading Research (Norway), 2:955  
 Cerebellum, 1:164, 165, 165, 212  
 Cerebral autosomal dominant arteriopathy with subcortical infarcts and leukoencephalopathy (CADASIL), 1:323  
 Cerebral cortex, 1:164, 165, 212  
 Cerebral embolism. *See* Stroke  
 Cerebral hemispheres, 1:164, 165  
 Cerebral palsy, 2:678  
 Cerebral thrombosis. *See* Stroke  
 Cerebrum, 1:164, 165  
 Cerletti, Ugo, 1:409  
*CEWG (Community Epidemiology Work Group)*, 1:201  
 C-Flex, 1:170–171  
 CFS (Chronic fatigue syndrome), 1:464–465  
 cGMP (Cyclic glutamine monophosphate), 1:427  
 CGN (Cytosine-guanine-nucleotide), 1:513–514  
 Chakras, 1:421, 659–661  
 Chalk (drug). *See* Methamphetamine  
 Chamomile, 1:181, 218, 218–220  
*Chantix*. *See* Varenicline  
 Chapman, C. Richard, 1:233  
 Charcot, Jean-Martin, 1:285  
 Chasing, 2:857, 858  
 Cheese reaction, 2:744  
 Chemical aversants, 1:115, 116  
 Chemical dependency. *See* Addiction; Disease concept of chemical dependency  
 Chemical imbalances, brain. *See* Brain chemistry  
 Chemotherapy, 1:86, 87, 651  
 Child abuse. *See* Abuse  
 Child and Adolescent Service System Program (CASSP), 1:273  
*Child Cognitive Behavioral Treatment and Skills Training*, 1:283  
 Child Depression Inventory (CDI), 1:220–222  
 Child development  
   abuse and, 1:5  
   childhood disintegrative disorder and, 1:222, 223  
   Children's Apperception Test, 1:224  
   genetics, 1:513–515  
   juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:630  
   Klein, Melanie on, 2:894  
   mixed receptive-expressive language disorder and, 2:734, 735  
 narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:754–755  
 neglect and, 2:764  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 2:952–954  
 separation anxiety disorder and, 2:1038  
 Child Post-traumatic Stress Reaction Index, 1:13  
 Childbirth, 1:94, 97, 173, 2:906–908  
 Childhood amnesia. *See* Amnesia  
 Childhood disintegrative disorder (CDD), 1:222–224, 2:877  
 Children  
   abuse, 1:1, 2, 3, 5, 6  
   acupuncture, 1:8  
   acute stress disorder, 1:13  
   adjustment disorders, 1:19, 21  
   agoraphobia, 1:27, 30  
   amphetamines, 1:55, 56  
   antidepressants, 1:72, 2:921  
   antisocial personality disorder, 1:73, 74, 75, 76  
   ariPIPrazole for, 1:89  
   Asperger's disorder, 1:93, 94, 95, 96  
   attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:105–109  
   autism, 1:109–114  
   barbiturates and, 1:121  
   bipolar disorder, 1:148, 149  
   breathing-related sleep disorder, 1:169, 170  
   bullying, 1:183–187, 184  
   bupropion in, 1:189  
   case management, 1:208  
   Child Depression Inventory, 1:220–221  
   childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:222–223  
   Children's Apperception Test, 1:224–226  
   chloral hydrate and, 1:226–227  
   chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
   clinical trials, 1:242  
   clomipramine and, 1:245  
   clonidine and, 1:249  
   cognitive problem-solving skills training, 1:265–267  
   cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
   community mental health, 1:273–274  
   conduct disorder, 1:281–283  
   Conners' Rating Scales-Revised, 1:284–285  
   conversion disorder, 1:287, 288, 289–290  
   co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:291, 292  
   creative therapies, 1:298, 300  
   crisis housing, 1:301–302  
   delirium, 1:311–312  
   denial, 1:329  
 dependent personality disorder, 1:331  
 depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:340  
 desipramine in, 1:344  
 developmental coordination disorder, 1:351–353  
 diazepam and, 1:360  
 diets for, 1:362  
 dissociation, 1:380  
 dissociative amnesia, 1:375  
 dissociative identity disorder, 1:380, 381  
 dysthymic disorder, 1:399, 400  
 elimination disorders, 1:416–417  
 encopresis, 1:417–419  
 enuresis, 1:424–427  
 exposure treatment, 1:445, 446  
 expressive language disorder, 1:449–450  
 family education and, 1:456–457  
 feeding disorder, 1:466–468  
 fetal alcohol syndrome, 1:474–476, 475  
 figure drawings, 1:479–481  
 fluvoxamine in, 1:488  
 gender identity disorder, 1:497, 499, 500  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:507  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:524  
 group homes, 1:534  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 haloperidol for, 1:551, 552  
 house-tree-person test, 1:575  
 hypomania, 1:589  
 imipramine and, 1:595  
 inhalant use, 1:601, 602, 603  
 juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:629–632  
 juvenile depression, 1:632–634  
 Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children, 1:639–640  
 learning disorders, 1:656–658, 657  
 major depressive disorder, 1:341, 2:678, 680, 681, 683  
 mathematics disorder, 2:697–699  
 memory, 1:50  
 mental retardation, 2:714–719  
 methylphenidate and, 2:726  
 mixed receptive-expressive language disorder, 2:733–735  
 modeling, 2:737  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors in, 2:743  
 multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
 nightmares, 2:781, 782  
 obesity, 2:795, 796, 800  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:806, 807–808, 810  
 oppositional defiant disorder, 2:818–821  
 passionflower for, 2:855

Paxil in, 2:861  
 peer groups, 2:866–868  
 person-centered therapy, 2:873  
 phonological disorder, 2:883–885  
 pica, 2:885–888  
 play therapy, 2:893–896  
 psychoanalysis, 2:927  
 pyromania, 2:940–941, 942, 943  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:952–954  
 reading disorder, 2:955–957  
 Rorschach technique, 2:979  
 rumination disorder, 2:983–984  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:991–992  
 schizophrenia, 2:996  
 seizures, 2:1017, 1018, 1019  
 selective mutism, 2:1020–1022  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1024  
 separation anxiety disorder, 2:1037–1041  
 sexuality, 2:930  
 sleep disorders, 2:1059  
 sleep terror disorder, 2:1061, 1062, 1063  
 sleepwalking disorder, 2:1065  
 social phobia, 2:1069, 1070–1071, 1072, 1074  
 social skills training, 2:1076  
 specific phobias, 2:1085, 1086, 1088, 1089  
 Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale, 2:1093–1094  
 stereotypic movement disorder and, 2:1100  
 stigma, 2:1106  
 Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV, 2:1121  
 stuttering, 2:1122–1125  
 thioridazine in, 2:1153  
 tic disorders, 2:1157, 1158, 1159, 1160, 1162, 1163  
 toilet phobia, 2:1164, 1165  
 transcranial magnetic stimulation, 2:1168  
 trichillomania, 2:1181  
 trimipramine in, 2:1187  
 Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, 2:1215–1218, 1216  
 Wide Range Achievement Test, 2:1222–1223  
*See also* Adolescents; Boys; Girls; Pedophilia  
 Children's Apperception Test (CAT), 1:224–226  
 Children's Depression Inventory (CDI), 1:633  
 China, 1:329, 457, 458, 2:1134  
 Chinese medicine, traditional. *See* Traditional Chinese medicine (TCM)  
 Chiropractic medicine, 1:422  
 Chloral hydrate, 1:226–227

Chlordiazepoxide, 1:228–229  
 abuse, 1:67  
 clonidine and, 1:248  
 vs. lorazepam, 1:665  
 withdrawal, 1:347  
 Chloride, 1:178, 179  
 Chloroquine, 2:870  
 Chlorpromazine, 1:229–232  
 male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686  
 medication-induced movement disorders from, 2:701  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome from, 2:766  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
 for paranoia, 2:842  
 propranolol and, 2:920  
 psychosurgery and, 2:934  
 for schizophrenia, 2:998  
 for stereotypic movement disorder, 2:1101  
 Chodorow, Nancy, 1:502  
 Cholesterol, 1:39, 2:788, 799, 947, 1102  
 Cholestyramine, 1:387  
 Choline, 2:786t  
 Cholinesterase inhibitors, 1:42, 44, 326  
 Chorea, 2:745  
 Choreothetoid movements, 1:1  
 Chromotherapy. *See* Light therapy  
 Chromosomes. *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders  
 Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), 1:464–465, 542, 2:768  
 Chronic insomnia. *See* Insomnia  
 Chronic motor tic disorder. *See* Tic disorders  
 Chronic pain, 1:232–236  
 acupuncture, 1:7, 8, 9  
 adjustment disorders and, 1:19  
 in Alzheimer's disease, 1:44  
 amitriptyline for, 1:48  
 bodywork therapies, 1:158  
 energy therapies for, 1:421  
 exercise, 1:437  
 gabepentin for, 1:493  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 hypnotherapy, 1:578  
 meditation, 2:706, 709  
 nortriptyline for, 2:782  
 psychotherapy, 2:833  
 remission, 2:833–834  
 stress and, 2:1110  
 Chronic Pain Network, 1:232–233  
 Chronic stress. *See* Stress  
 Chronotherapy, 1:238, 2:1060  
 Chrysin, 2:855  
 Cialis. *See* Tadalafil  
 Cibalith-S. *See* Lithium carbonate  
 Cigarettes. *See* Nicotine and related disorders  
 Cimetidine  
 alprazolam and, 1:36  
 amitriptyline and, 1:48  
 anticonvulsants and, 2:1019  
 caffeine-related disorders and, 1:197  
 carbamazepine and, 1:205  
 clonazepam and, 1:246  
 delirium and, 1:312  
 desipramine and, 1:345  
 estazolam and, 1:432  
 galantamine and, 1:495  
 maprotiline and, 2:695  
 nortriptyline and, 2:784  
 paranoia from, 2:842  
 Paxil and, 2:862  
 Pick's disease and, 2:890  
 propranolol and, 2:920  
 quazepam and, 2:946  
 quetiapine and, 2:947  
 tacrine and, 2:1144  
 temazepam and, 2:1149  
 triazolam and, 2:1179  
 zaleplon and, 2:1232  
 Cipro. *See* Ciprofloxacin  
 Ciprofloxacin, 2:743, 1144  
 Circadian rhythm sleep disorder, 1:236, 236–238, 2:1057, 1058, 1060  
 Circadian rhythms, 2:1010, 1011  
 Cisapride, 1:88, 385  
 CISD (Critical incident stress debriefing), 1:304, 2:904  
 CISM (Critical incident stress management), 1:13, 2:904  
 Citalopram, 1:238–240  
 for dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
 for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989 as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor, 2:1023  
 in STAR\*D study, 2:1095, 1096  
 Civil commitment. *See* Involuntary hospitalization  
 Clarithromycin, 1:387, 2:947  
 Classical conditioning  
 aversion therapy, 1:115, 116  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:263, 264  
 covert sensitization and, 1:297  
 reinforcement in, 2:957  
 for Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1221  
 Classification, 1:354–359, 518, 2:753–754, 831, 832  
 Claustrophobia, 1:279, 2:673, 674  
 Cleidocranial dysplasia, 1:514  
 Client-centered therapy. *See* Person-centered therapy  
 Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE). *See* CATIE (Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness)  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly (CASE), 1:240–241  
 Clinical case management, 1:207, 208  
 Clinical depression. *See* Major depressive disorder  
 Clinical psychology, 2:931  
 Clinical trials, 1:241–244, 242  
 CATIE, 1:215–216  
 clozapine, 1:252

- ecstasy, 1:406  
 informed consent, 1:599  
 Mini-Mental State Examination, 2:728  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
 Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study, 2:1177–1178
- Clitoris, 1:468, 469, 473  
 Cloanzepam, 2:1089  
*A Clockwork Orange* (Kubrick), 1:115  
**Cloimipramine, 1:244–246**  
 amoxapine and, 1:53  
 for cataplexy, 2:1060  
 imipramine and, 1:594  
 for obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809  
 phenelzine and, 2:882  
 protriptyline and, 2:920  
 for stereotypic movement disorder, 2:1101  
 for trichillomania, 2:1181
- Clonazepam, 1:246–248, 247  
 for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
 diets for, 1:365  
 divalproex sodium and, 1:387  
 for hypomania, 1:591  
 for panic disorder, 2:840  
 for seizures, 2:1019  
 valproic acid and, 2:1201
- Clonic seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Clonic-tonic seizures. *See* Seizures  
**Clonidine, 1:248–250**  
 for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
 amoxapine and, 1:54  
 for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
 for detoxification, 1:347, 348  
 doxepin and, 1:393  
 methadone and, 2:721  
 for opioid withdrawal, 2:818  
 perphenazine and, 2:870  
 pimozide and, 2:892  
 protriptyline and, 2:921  
 for tic disorders, 2:1161  
 trimipramine and, 2:1188
- Clopидогрел, 1:526  
**Clorazepate, 1:250–251**, 338  
 Clorazil. *See* Clozapine  
 Clorgyline, 1:239  
**Clozapine, 1:251–254, 252**  
 for apathy, 1:83  
 for bipolar disorder, 1:150  
 CATIE and, 1:215, 216  
 diets for, 1:363  
 dopamine and, 1:391  
 fluvoxamine and, 1:489  
 medication-induced movement disorders and, 2:701, 704  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome from, 2:766  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
 olanzapine and, 2:810  
 for paranoia, 2:842
- quetiapine and, 2:946  
 vs. risperidone, 2:973  
 for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
 for schizophrenia, 2:999  
 tardive dyskinesia and, 2:1146  
 tardive dyskinesia from, 1:2  
 temazepam and, 2:1149  
 for tic disorders, 2:1161  
 vs. ziprasidone, 2:1233
- Clozaril. See Clozapine**
- Club Drug Initiative, 1:61**
- Clumsy child syndrome. *See* Developmental coordination disorder**
- Cobalamin. *See* Vitamin B12**
- Coca plant, 1:255, 256**
- Cocaine and related disorders, 1:255–261, 256, 256t**  
 addiction, 1:16  
 vs. amphetamines, 1:58  
 cannabis and, 1:202  
 causes of abuse, 1:257–258  
 demographics of abuse, 1:258  
 described, 1:255, 257  
 desipramine for, 1:344  
 detoxification, 1:349  
 diagnosis of abuse, 1:259  
 doxepin for, 1:392  
 ecstasy and, 1:406  
 effects, 1:256t, 258  
 hallucinations from, 1:545  
 intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:611  
 Matrix treatment model, 2:699  
 methamphetamine and, 2:724  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:774  
 nightmares from, 2:781  
 panic attacks and, 2:835  
 paranoid personality disorder and, 2:845  
 phencyclidine and, 2:878  
 prevention of abuse, 1:260  
 prognosis for abusers, 1:260  
 protriptyline for, 2:920  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024  
 tic disorders and, 2:1158  
 trazodone for, 2:1175  
 treatment for abusers, 1:259–260  
 trimipramine for, 2:1186  
 urine drug screening and, 2:1191
- Cocaine Anonymous (CA). *See* Self-help groups**
- Codeine, 1:43, 248, 2:722, 813, 1024, 1191**
- Codependence, 1:34, 117**
- Coffee, 1:195, 196**
- Cogentin. *See* Benztropine**
- Cognex. *See* Tacrine**
- Cognistat, 1:261–263**
- Cognition**  
 abuse and, 1:5  
 assessment and diagnosis, 1:104
- Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly and, 1:240**
- Cognistat, 1:261–262**
- delusional disorder, 1:317**
- dementia, 1:323**
- dependent personality disorder, 1:331**
- depersonalization disorder, 1:335**
- depression and depressive disorders, 1:341**
- disorder of written expression, 1:369**
- executive function, 1:435–436**
- hallucinogens and, 1:547**
- histrionic personality disorder, 1:565**
- hypochondriasis, 1:586**
- intermittent explosive disorder, 1:610**
- major depressive disorder, 2:679–680, 682, 683, 684**
- Mini-Mental State Examination, 2:728**
- neuropsychological testing, 2:769–771**
- pathological gambling disorder, 2:857**
- Piaget, Jean on, 1:637**
- Cognitive impairment**  
 in Alzheimer's disease, 1:39, 41, 44  
 cannabis and, 1:201  
 from cocaine abuse, 1:259  
 cognitive remediation for, 1:268–269  
 cognitive retraining for, 1:269–271  
 in delirium, 1:311  
 from ecstasy, 1:405  
 exercise for, 1:437
- Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure and, 1:641–642**
- neuropsychiatry and, 2:768**
- person-centered therapy, 2:873**
- Cognitive problem-solving skills training (CPSST), 1:265–267**
- Cognitive processing therapy, 1:542**
- Cognitive remediation, 1:268–269**
- Cognitive restructuring**  
 abuse, 1:5  
 acute stress disorder, 1:13  
 agoraphobia, 1:29  
 avoidant personality disorder, 1:119  
 body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
 chronic pain, 1:234  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:263–265  
 exhibitionism, 1:441  
 exposure treatment, 1:445  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
 sexual sadism, 2:1051  
 social phobia, 2:1073–1074
- Cognitive retraining, 1:269–272**
- Cognitive therapy. *See* Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT)**

Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT), 1:263–265  
 acute stress disorder, 1:13  
 adjustment disorders, 1:20  
 agoraphobia, 1:28, 29  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:34  
 amphetamine addiction, 1:60  
 anorexia nervosa, 1:64  
 Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
 assertiveness training, 1:99  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
 aversion therapy, 1:114–115  
 avoidant personality disorder, 1:119  
 behavior modification, 1:125  
 bibliotherapy, 1:136  
 binge eating, 1:139  
 bipolar disorder, 1:150  
 body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
 borderline personality disorder, 1:163  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
 chronic pain, 1:234  
 cocaine abuse, 1:259, 260  
 cognitive problem-solving skills training, 1:265–267  
 couples therapy, 1:295  
 crisis intervention, 1:303  
 delusional disorder, 1:318  
 dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
 depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
 dissociative disorders, 1:373  
 dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
 exhibitionism, 1:441  
 exposure treatment, 1:443–448  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
 group therapy, 1:539  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:543  
 hallucinations, 1:546  
 history, 2:930  
 histrionic personality disorder, 1:567–568  
 hypochondriasis, 1:587  
 hypomania, 1:590  
 intermittent explosive disorder, 1:611  
 as intervention, 1:622  
 juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
 juvenile depression, 1:633, 634  
 kleptomania, 1:647  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 Matrix model, 2:700  
 methamphetamine addiction, 2:725  
 multisystemic therapy, 2:747  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809, 810  
 oppositional defiant disorder, 2:820  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:827  
 pain disorder, 2:833  
 panic disorder, 2:839, 840  
 paranoia, 2:842–843  
 polysubstance dependence, 2:899

postpartum depression, 2:908  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
 psychotherapy, 2:936  
 rational emotive therapy, 2:951  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:954  
 road rage, 2:978  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:992  
 schizophrenia, 2:999  
 schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
 sedative withdrawal, 2:1015  
 self mutilation, 2:1036  
 separation anxiety disorder, 2:1040  
 social phobia, 2:1073  
 somatization disorder, 2:1083–1084  
 specific phobias, 2:1088  
 STAR\*D study, 2:1096  
 tic disorders, 2:1160  
 for toilet phobia, 2:1165  
 Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study, 2:1177–1178  
 trichillomania, 2:1181  
 vaginismus, 2:1195  
 Cognitive self-regulation. *See* Self-control strategies  
 Cold medications. *See* Antihistamines; Decongestants  
 Colestipol, 1:387  
 College students, 1:137, 137, 138  
 Colombia, 1:286  
 Colon cancer, 2:825  
 Color breathing. *See* Light therapy  
 Color Trails Test, 1:555  
 Combat  
     conversion disorder from, 1:285–286  
     depersonalization from, 1:334  
     dissociation from, 1:372  
     dissociative amnesia from, 1:375  
     dissociative fugue from, 1:378  
     post-traumatic stress disorder from, 2:901, 902  
 Communicated insanity. *See* Shared psychotic disorder  
 Communication disorders. *See* Communication skills and disorders  
 Communication skills and disorders, 1:272–273  
     Asperger's disorder, 1:93, 94, 95, 96  
     assertiveness training, 1:99–101  
     autism, 1:109–110, 111, 112  
     childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:222, 223  
     couples therapy, 1:294–296  
     disorder of written expression, 1:369–370  
     executive function, 1:435  
     expressive language disorder, 1:449–450  
     Internet addiction disorder, 1:614  
 juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
 learning disorders, 1:658  
 mental retardation, 2:715, 716  
 mixed receptive-expressive language disorder, 2:733–735  
 phonological disorder, 2:884  
 reading disorder, 2:956  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:991  
 speech-language pathology, 2:1090–1091  
*See also* Aphasia  
 Community Epidemiology Work Group (CEWG), 1:201  
 Community mental health, 1:273–274  
     vs. assertive community treatment, 1:98  
     case management, 1:207–208  
     conduct disorder, 1:283  
     co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:292  
     crisis housing, 1:301–302  
     deinstitutionalization, 1:309  
     dual diagnosis and, 1:395  
     family education, 1:456–457  
     group homes, 1:534  
     homelessness, 1:571–572  
     intervention, 1:623  
     vs. involuntary hospitalization, 1:626  
     multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
     respite services, 2:963  
     support groups, 2:1139  
 Community Mental Health Centers Act, 1:273, 309, 534  
 Community psychology, 2:931  
 Co-morbidities. *See* Co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis  
 Compartmentalization. *See* Dissociation and dissociative disorders  
 Complementary medicine. *See names of specific treatments*  
 Compliance, 1:274–276  
     antisocial personality disorder and, 1:75  
     aversion therapy, 1:115  
     dependent personality disorder and, 1:330–331  
     panic disorder and, 2:840  
     schizophrenia and, 2:997  
     stigma and, 2:1107  
 Complicated grief disorder, 1:133  
 Comprehensive Community Mental Health Services Program for Children and Their Families, 1:274  
 Compulsion, 1:277  
     addiction as, 1:15  
     cocaine and, 1:257  
     exercise as, 1:438  
     in exhibitionism, 1:439  
     in obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:805–810  
     reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:968, 969

- Compulsive buying, 1:597, 612, 613, 2:916, 917  
 Compulsive gambling. *See* Pathological gambling disorder  
 Compulsive sexual behavior. *See* Sexual compulsions  
 Compulsive shopping. *See* Compulsive buying  
 Compulsive skin picking. *See* Dermatillomania  
 Computed tomography (CT), 1:**277–281**, 278  
     Alzheimer's disease, 1:41  
     brain, 1:167  
     dementia, 1:326  
     as imaging study, 1:593  
     vs. magnetic resonance imaging, 2:671, 672  
     vs. magnetoencephalography, 1:414  
     vs. positron emission tomography, 2:900  
     stroke, 2:1118  
     *See also* Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT)  
 Computerized axial tomography. *See* Computed tomography (CT)  
 Computers, 1:270, 512, 2:1151  
 Concentration  
     acute stress disorder, 1:12  
     cognitive retraining, 1:270  
     delirium, 1:311, 313  
     depersonalization disorder, 1:335  
     disorder of written expression, 1:369  
     ecstasy, 1:405  
     executive function, 1:435  
     hypomania, 1:590  
     insomnia, 1:604, 605  
     learning disorders, 1:658  
     methylphenidate for, 2:726  
 Concentration meditation. *See* Meditation  
 Concerta. *See* Methylphenidate  
 Conditioning  
     classical (*See* Classical conditioning)  
     covert (*See* Covert conditioning)  
     escape (*See* Escape conditioning)  
     operant (*See* Operant conditioning)  
 Conduct disorder, 1:281, **281–284**  
     adjustment disorders and, 1:19  
     vs. antisocial personality disorder, 1:75  
     antisocial personality disorder and, 1:74  
     attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:108  
     bipolar disorder and, 1:148  
     dual diagnosis and, 1:395  
     elimination disorders and, 1:416  
     encopresis and, 1:418  
     juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:630  
     modeling, 2:736  
     opioid dependence and, 2:816  
     vs. oppositional defiant disorder, 2:820  
     parent management training for, 2:849  
     pyromania and, 2:940  
     reading disorder and, 2:956  
     reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
     tic disorders and, 2:1160  
 Confabulation, 1:51, 66, 2:1218, 1219, 1220  
 Confidence. *See* Self-confidence  
 Confidentiality, 1:518, 615, 616  
 Conflict, 1:224  
 Confusion Assessment Method (CAM), 1:313  
 Congenital maladroitness. *See* Developmental coordination disorder  
 Congruence, 2:872  
*Conjoint Family Therapy: A Guide to Theory and Technique* (Satir), 1:460  
 Conners, C. Keith, 1:284  
 Conners' Rating Scales-Revised (CRS-R), 1:**284–285**  
 Conscience, 1:328  
 Consent, informed. *See* Informed consent  
 Consonar. *See* Brofaromine  
 Constipation, 1:416, 417, 418, 419  
 Constricted affect. *See* Affect  
 Consumer psychology, 2:931  
 Contagious insanity. *See* Shared psychotic disorder  
 Contamination obsession, 1:445, 2:800, 805, 807, 1164  
 Contemplation. *See* Meditation  
 Contingency management, 1:259, 2:725, 820, 1160–1161  
 Continuous amnesia. *See* Amnesia  
 Continuous positive airway pressure therapy (CPAP), 1:168, 169, 170–171, 2:1060  
 Contraceptives, oral. *See* Oral contraceptives  
 Contraindications, drug. *See* names of specific drugs  
 Contrast agents, 1:278, 279, 280, 593, 2:673, 674  
 Control, self. *See* Self-control  
 Control delusions. *See* Delusions  
 Controlled Substances Act, 1:547, 548, 2:878, 1102  
 Controlled use programs, 1:17  
 Conventional antipsychotics. *See* Antipsychotics  
 Conversation skills. *See* Communication skills and disorders  
 Conversion disorder, 1:**285–291**  
     causes, 1:286–287  
     defined, 1:285  
     demographics, 1:287  
     described, 1:285–286  
     diagnosis, 1:287–288  
     factitious disorder and, 1:452, 454  
     histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
     prevention, 1:290  
     prognosis, 1:290  
     as somatization and somatoform disorder, 2:1080  
     stuttering and, 2:1124  
     symptoms, 1:287  
     treatment, 1:288–290  
 Convulsions. *See* Seizures  
 Convulsive therapies, 2:675  
 Co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:**291–294**  
     antisocial personality disorder, 1:75  
     bipolar disorder, 1:147  
     body dysmorphic disorder, 1:153  
     borderline personality disorder, 1:163  
     bulimia nervosa, 1:179–180  
     cyclothymic disorder, 1:307  
     dermatillomania, 1:342, 343  
     dissociative identity disorder, 1:380  
     dopamine in, 1:390, 391  
     erectile dysfunction, 1:429, 430, 431  
     executive function disorders, 1:435  
     exercise for, 1:437  
     exhibitionism, 1:440–441, 442  
     factitious disorder, 1:454  
     fatigue in, 1:464–465  
     female orgasmic disorder, 1:469  
     female sexual arousal disorder, 1:471–472  
     Ganser's syndrome, 1:496  
     generalized anxiety disorder, 1:507, 509  
     histrionic personality disorder, 1:567  
     homelessness, 1:570  
     hospitalization for, 1:574  
     hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:583, 584  
     insomnia, 1:605  
     intermittent explosive disorder, 1:610, 611  
     juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:629–630  
     juvenile depression, 1:632–633  
     Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:645–646  
     kleptomania, 1:646, 647, 648  
     late-life depression, 1:651  
     learning disorders, 1:657  
     major depressive disorder, 2:682  
     male orgasmic disorder, 2:687  
     mixed receptive-expressive language disorder, 2:735  
     narcissistic personality disorder, 2:754  
     obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:808, 810  
     opioid-related disorders, 2:816

- oppositional defiant disorder, 2:820  
 panic disorder, 2:839  
 pathological gambling disorder, 2:856, 858  
 pedophilia, 2:864  
 personality disorders, 2:875  
 phonological disorder, 2:884  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
 process addiction, 2:917  
 pyromania, 2:940, 941  
 reading disorder, 2:956  
 reward deficiency syndrome, 2:968–970  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:987  
 schizophrenia, 2:996–997  
 social phobia, 2:1069–1070  
 specific phobias, 2:1088  
 STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 tic disorders, 2:1158, 1159, 1160, 1161, 1163  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder, 2:1189  
*See also* Dual diagnosis  
 Cook, James, 1:643  
 Coordination, physical. *See* Motor skills  
 Coping skills  
     bereavement and, 1:132  
     brief psychotic disorder and, 1:173  
     conduct disorder and, 1:283  
     crisis intervention, 1:302, 303  
     energy therapies, 1:421  
     exposure treatment, 1:447  
     family psychoeducation, 1:457  
     gender issues in mental health, 1:503, 504  
     generalized anxiety disorder and, 1:510  
     grief counseling, 1:532, 533  
     guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
     modeling, 2:737  
     relapse prevention, 2:959  
     stress, 2:1113  
 Copper, 2:790  
 Coprolalia, 2:1159  
 Corey, Gerald, 1:522, 523, 524  
 Corpus callosum, 1:165, 165, 476  
 Cortex, prefrontal. *See* Prefrontal cortex  
 Corticosteroids, 1:122, 2:842, 947  
 Cortisol, 1:177, 341, 399, 405, 2:680, 907  
 Cosmetic surgery, 1:152  
 Coumadin. *See* Warfarin  
 Coumarins, 1:655  
 Counseling. *See names of specific types of counseling, therapies or interventions*  
 Counseling psychology, 2:931  
 Counselors, 1:624  
 Counterconditioning, 1:264  
 Couples Communication Program, 1:296  
 Couples therapy, 1:294, 294–297  
     avoidant personality disorder, 1:119  
     dependent personality disorder, 1:333  
     dyspareunia, 1:397  
     erectile dysfunction, 1:430  
     exhibitionism, 1:441  
     female orgasmic disorder, 1:469  
     female sexual arousal disorder, 1:473  
     Gestalt therapy, 1:524  
     hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:584  
     Internet addiction disorder, 1:614  
     interpersonal, 1:617  
     psychoanalysis, 2:927  
     psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:928  
     psychotherapy, 2:936  
     schizoid personality disorder, 2:992  
     schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
     sexual aversion disorder, 2:1046  
     vaginismus, 2:1194  
*See also* Marital and family therapists  
*The Courage to Create* (May), 1:81  
 Courts, mental health. *See* Mental health courts  
 Cousins, Norman, 1:235  
 Covert conditioning, 1:297  
*The Covert Conditioning Handbook* (Cautela and Kearney), 1:297  
 Covert modeling. *See* Modeling  
 Covert sensitization, 1:116, 297–298  
 CPAP (Continuous positive airway pressure therapy), 1:168, 169, 170–171, 2:1060  
 CPSST (Cognitive problem-solving skills training). *See* Cognitive problem-solving skills training (CPSST)  
 Crack cocaine. *See* Cocaine and related disorders  
 Craniosacral therapy (CST), 1:157, 159  
 Crank (drug). *See* Methamphetamine  
 Cravings  
     in addiction, 1:17  
     alcohol, 1:31, 34  
     cocaine, 1:258, 344  
     detoxification and, 1:348  
     dopamine and, 1:391  
     hallucinogens, 1:550  
     naltrexone for, 2:751  
     nicotine, 2:775, 778  
     in pica, 2:885–888  
 Creative therapies, 1:298–301, 299  
     acute stress disorder, 1:13  
     adjustment disorders, 1:20  
     alcohol-related disorders, 1:30  
     Alzheimer's disease, 1:44  
     chronic pain, 1:234  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:264  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:524  
 hypomania, 1:590  
 insomnia and, 1:605  
 interventions, 1:623  
 journaling, 1:299–300  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 nutrition counseling, 2:791–792  
 obesity, 2:798  
 pain disorder, 2:833  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:905  
 psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:928  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:954  
 sedative withdrawal, 2:1015  
 stress, 2:1115  
 therapeutic potential, 2:829  
 Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 1:322, 323, 324, 327  
 Crime  
     bullying and, 1:185  
     Hare psychopathy checklist and, 1:561–562  
     pedophilia as, 2:862  
     psychosurgery for, 2:933  
     pyromania and, 2:942  
     relapse, 2:959  
     sexual sadism and, 2:1050  
     Sexual Violence Risk-20, 2:1052–1054  
 Criminal justice system. *See* Incarceration  
 Crisis housing, 1:301–302  
 Crisis intervention, 1:302–305  
     crisis housing, 1:301–302  
     family psychoeducation, 1:458  
     Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
 Critical incident stress debriefing (CISD), 1:304, 2:904  
 Critical incident stress management (CISM), 1:13, 2:904  
 Cross-dressing. *See* Transvestic fetishism  
 Cross-gender behavior. *See* Gender identity disorder  
 CRS-R (Conners' Rating Scales-Revised). *See* Conners' Rating Scales-Revised (CRS-R)  
*The Cry for Myth* (May), 1:81  
 Crystal (drug). *See* Methamphetamine  
 Crystallized intelligence, 1:637, 638, 641, 2:1214, 1217  
 CS (Capgras syndrome). *See* Capgras syndrome (CS)  
 CST (Craniosacral therapy), 1:157, 159  
 CT (Computed tomography). *See* Computed tomography (CT)  
 CT scan. *See* Computed tomography (CT)

CTG (Cytosine-thymine-guanine), 1:514  
 Cue exposure, 1:447  
 Cullen, William, 2:771  
 Culture  
     affect and, 1:25–26  
     bereavement and, 1:132, 133  
     binge eating and, 1:139  
     body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153  
     brief psychotic disorder and, 1:173–174  
     bulimia nervosa and, 1:177–178  
     delusional disorder and, 1:315, 318  
     delusions and, 1:319  
     denial in, 1:329  
     dependent personality disorder and, 1:331–332  
     depersonalization disorder and, 1:336  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* and, 1:357  
 dissociation and, 1:371  
 family therapy, 1:459, 460  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:504  
 grief and, 1:530  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:566  
 hypochondriasis and, 1:588  
 hypomania and, 1:589  
 intelligence tests and, 1:607, 608  
 narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:753, 755  
 obsessive-compulsive personality disorder and, 2:802, 803  
 as origin of mental illnesses, 2:828  
 phonological disorder and, 2:884  
 pica and, 2:885, 886  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:902  
 pseudocyesis and, 2:922  
 schizoaffective disorder and, 2:988  
 schizophrenia and, 2:996  
 schizopreniform disorder and, 2:1004, 1006  
 social phobia and, 2:1070–1071  
 social skills training and, 2:1077  
 somatization disorder and, 2:1083  
 specific phobias and, 2:1086, 1087  
 stigma, 2:1104–1108  
 stress and, 2:1109, 1111–1113  
 suicide and, 2:1134–1135  
 Thematic Apperception Test and, 2:1152  
 yoga and, 2:1228  
 Cupping, 1:9  
 Cushing's disease, 1:259  
 Custodial care, 1:309  
 Cyberbullying. *See* Bullying  
 Cyberonics, 2:1196  
 Cyclic glutamine monophosphate (cGMP), 1:427

Cycling  
     rapid (psychology) (*See* Rapid cycling)  
     ultrarapid (psychology) (*See* Ultradian cycling)  
 Cycling (psychology), 1:146, 552  
 Cyclohexamine, 2:877  
 Cyclosporine, 1:385, 2:1092  
 Cyclothymic disorder, 1:**305–308**  
     bipolar disorder and, 1:146, 147  
     hypomania in, 1:589  
     STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 Cylyert. *See* Pemoline  
 Cytomegalovirus, 2:715  
 Cytomel. *See* Triiodothyronine  
 Cytosine-adenine-guanine (CAG), 1:513, 514  
 Cytosine-guanine-nucleotide (CGN), 1:513–514  
 Cytosine-thymine-guanine (CTG), 1:514

## D

DA (Dopamine antagonists). *See* Antipsychotics  
 Daily living activities. *See* Activities of daily living (ADL)  
 Dale, Henry, 1:23  
 Dalmane. *See* Flurazepam  
 Dalton, Katharina, 2:911, 913  
 Dance therapy. *See* Bodywork therapies  
 Dandelion, 2:799  
 Dantrolene, 2:705  
 DAP:SPED (Draw-a-Person: Screening Procedure of Emotional Disturbance), 1:480, 481  
 D.A.R.E. (Drug Awareness and Resistance Education), 1:202  
 Darvon. *See* Propoxyphene  
 Date-rape drugs, 1:68  
 DAWN (Drug Abuse Warning Network), 1:258  
 Dawn simulation. *See* Light therapy  
 Daydreams, 2:901, 903  
 Daytrana. *See* Methylphenidate  
 DBT (Dialectical behavior therapy), 1:163  
 DDAVP (Desmopressin acetate), 1:426  
 DDIS (Dissociative Disorders Interview Schedule), 1:382  
 DEA (U.S. Drug Enforcement Agency), 1:403, 406  
 Death and dying, 1:532–533, 2:707  
     *See also* Bereavement; Grief; Sudden death  
*The Death of Psychiatry* (Torrey), 2:996  
 Decadron. *See* Dexamethasone  
 Deca-Durabolin. *See* Nandrolone decanoate  
 Decision-making, 1:24–25, 271, 331  
 Deconditioning, 1:463  
 Decongestants  
     amphetamines and, 1:58  
     methamphetamine and, 2:724  
     monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
     pemoline and, 2:869  
     phenelzine and, 2:881–882  
 Decrystallization, 1:422  
 Deep brain stimulation, 2:675, 676, 768, 1161  
 Defense mechanisms  
     in brief psychotic disorder, 1:173  
     Children's Apperception Test, 1:225, 226  
     in delusional disorder, 1:317  
     denial, 1:329–330  
     dissociation, 1:380  
     in dissociative disorders, 1:374  
     fatigue, 1:462  
     in histrionic personality disorder, 1:566  
     in narcissistic personality disorder, 2:754, 755  
 Defensive Functioning Scale, 1:355  
 Deficiency, vitamin. *See* Nutrition and mental health  
 Degenerative organic brain disorder, 1:113  
 Dehydration, 1:463, 2:1233  
 Deinstitutionalization, 1:**309–311**  
     case management, 1:207, 208  
     chlorpromazine and, 1:230  
     community mental health, 1:273  
     group homes, 1:534  
     homelessness, 1:571  
     *vs.* involuntary hospitalization, 1:626  
     respite, 2:962  
 Delayed puberty, 1:583  
 Delayed sleep phase, 1:236, 237  
 Delirium, 1:**311–315**  
     *in* addiction, 1:16  
     *alcohol-related disorders and, 1:34*  
     *amnesia in, 1:373*  
     *vs. amnestic disorders, 1:51*  
     *cocaine-induced, 1:255, 257*  
     *delusions in, 1:319*  
     *vs. dementia, 1:325*  
     *in Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 1:355*  
     *hallucinations in, 1:545*  
     *hallucinogen-induced, 1:550*  
     *Mini-Mental State Examination, 2:728, 729*  
     *origin of mental illnesses, 2:825*  
     *phenocyldine and, 2:880*  
     *in vascular dementia, 2:1202*  
 Delirium Rating Scale, 1:313  
 Delirium tremens (DT), 1:16, 33, 312, 314, 347, 2:828  
 Delta waves, 1:415

- Delusional disorder, 1:315–319  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153  
 delusions in, 1:319  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:806, 808  
 paranoid personality disorder and, 2:844, 845  
 psychosis in, 2:931
- Delusions, 1:319–321**  
 in alcohol-related disorders, 1:33  
 in Alzheimer's disease, 1:40, 43  
 from amphetamines, 1:58  
 in bipolar disorder, 1:147  
 in body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
 in brief psychotic disorder, 1:172–173, 174  
 in Capgras syndrome, 1:203–204  
 cocaine-induced, 1:255, 257  
 delirium and, 1:313  
 in delusional disorder, 1:315–319  
 in dementia, 1:323  
 vs. depersonalization, 1:334  
 from grief, 1:530  
 hallucinations and, 2:546  
 from inhalants, 1:603  
 from methamphetamine, 2:724  
 vs. obsession, 2:800  
 as positive symptoms, 2:899  
 in postpartum depression, 2:679  
 in psychosis, 2:931, 932  
 in schizoaffective disorder, 2:987, 988  
 in schizophrenia, 2:995, 996  
 in schizopreniform disorder, 2:1002, 1003  
 in shared psychotic disorder, 2:1054–1055  
 in substance-induced psychotic disorder, 2:1128  
 in vascular dementia, 2:1202
- Dementia, 1:321–328, 322**  
 abuse and, 1:4  
 alcohol and, 1:32  
 in Alzheimer's disease, 1:37, 40–41, 43  
 amnesia in, 1:373  
 vs. amnestic disorders, 1:51  
 aripiprazole and, 1:90  
 aripiprazole for, 1:88  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:150  
 Capgras syndrome and, 1:203, 204  
 catatonia and, 1:210  
 causes, 1:321–323  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly and, 1:240  
 cognitive retraining for, 1:270  
 creative therapies for, 1:298  
 defined, 1:321  
 vs. delirium, 1:311, 313–314  
 delusional disorder and, 1:316  
 delusions in, 1:319  
 demographics, 1:324–325  
 described, 1:321
- diagnosis, 1:325–326  
 donepezil and, 1:388  
 doxepin and, 1:393  
 enuresis in, 1:424  
 executive function and, 1:436  
 exercise for, 1:437  
 fluphenazine for, 1:484  
 genetics, 2:824  
 Geriatric Depression Scale and, 1:519  
 hallucinations in, 1:545  
 haloperidol for, 1:551, 552  
 Mini-Mental State Examination, 2:728, 729  
 neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
 neuropsychological testing for, 2:770  
 nutrition and, 2:788  
 olanzapine for, 2:810  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:825  
 paranoia in, 2:842  
 prevention, 1:327–328  
 prognosis, 1:326–327  
 rivastigmine for, 2:975  
 single photon emission computed tomography and, 2:1056  
 stigma, 2:1106  
 symptoms, 1:323–324  
 taccrine for, 2:1143  
 trifluoperazine for, 2:1182  
*See also* Vascular dementia
- Dementia infantilis.** *See* Childhood disintegrative disorder (CDD)
- Dementia of the Alzheimer's type.** *See* Alzheimer's disease (AD)
- Demerol.** *See* Meperidine
- Demographics.** *See names of specific disorders*
- Demonic possession, 2:821–822**
- Denial, 1:328–330**  
 in anorexia nervosa, 1:64  
 in anosognosia, 1:65–66  
 in assessment and diagnosis, 1:102  
 in bereavement, 1:132  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:292  
 in cyclothymic disorder, 1:306  
 in exhibitionism, 1:441  
 in grief, 1:530  
 in histrionic personality disorder, 1:566  
 in Internet addiction disorder, 1:613  
 intervention, 1:622  
 in pathological gambling disorder, 2:858  
 in process addiction, 2:917  
 trichillomania and, 2:1181
- Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA).** *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders
- Depacon.** *See* Divalproex sodium
- Depade.** *See* Naltrexone
- Depakene.** *See* Valproic acid
- Depakote.** *See* Divalproex sodium
- Department of Education, U.S.,** 1:184–185
- Department of Health and Human Services, U.S.** *See* United States Department of Health and Human Services
- Department of Housing and Urban Development, U.S. (HUD),** 1:260, 274
- Dependence, substance.** *See* Addiction; Disease concept of chemical dependency
- Dependency, chemical.** *See* Addiction; Disease concept of chemical dependency
- Dependent personality disorder,** 1:330–333  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
 as personality disorder, 2:876  
 shared psychotic disorder and, 2:1054
- Dependent Personality Questionnaire, 1:332**
- Depersonalization, 1:333–334**  
 in acute stress disorder, 1:11, 12  
 in borderline personality disorder, 1:335  
 cannabis and, 1:202  
 as dissociation, 1:371, 372  
 in dissociative identity disorder, 1:381  
 in panic disorder, 1:335  
 in post-traumatic stress disorder, 1:335  
 in schizophrenia, 2:996  
 yoga and, 2:1228
- Depersonalization disorder,** 1:334–339, 372
- Depersonalization Severity Scale (DSS), 1:337**
- Depo-Provera.** *See* Progesterone
- Depo-Testosterone.** *See* Testosterone cypionate
- Depressants.** *See* Sedatives and related drugs
- Depression and depressive disorders,** 1:339, 339–342, 340t  
 acupuncture, 1:8  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:12  
 addiction and, 1:16  
 adjustment disorders and, 1:18, 19  
 alcohol-related disorders and, 1:30, 32, 34  
 alprazolam for, 1:36  
 Alzheimer's disease and, 1:40, 43  
 amitriptyline for, 1:47–48  
 amoxapine for, 1:53–54  
 amphetamines for, 1:55, 58  
 apathy in, 1:82–83  
 appetite suppressants and, 1:85  
 aprepitant for, 1:86, 87  
 aripiprazole for, 1:88

- Asperger's disorder and, 1:94, 96  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:106, 108  
 avoidant personality disorder and, 1:118  
**Beck Depression Inventory** and, 1:123–124  
 bereavement and, 1:132  
 binge eating and, 1:139  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:146, 147, 149  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153, 154  
 borderline personality disorder and, 1:163  
 breathing-related sleep disorder and, 1:171  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:179, 180, 181  
 bullying and, 1:183  
 bupropion for, 1:188–190  
 caffeine and, 1:198  
 catatonia and, 1:210–211  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:212, 213, 214  
**Child Depression Inventory**, 1:220–221  
 chlordiazepoxide for, 1:228  
 chronic pain and, 1:233, 234  
 citalopram for, 1:238–240  
**Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly**, 1:240, 241  
 clomipramine for, 1:244  
 clonazepam and, 1:247  
 clonidine and, 1:249  
 clorazepate and, 1:250  
 vs. cocaine abuse, 1:259  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
 conversion disorder and, 1:286  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291  
 cyclothymic disorder and, 1:305–308  
 delusional disorder and, 1:318  
 delusions in, 1:320  
 dementia and, 1:322, 326  
 dependent personality disorder and, 1:333  
 vs. depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
 dermatillomania and, 1:342  
 desipramine for, 1:343–345  
 diets for, 1:362–363  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:380, 381  
 dopamine and, 1:390, 391  
 doxepin for, 1:392–393  
 dual diagnosis, 1:394, 395  
 dyspareunia and, 1:396  
 ecstasy and, 1:405  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 410  
 energy therapies, 1:422  
 erectile dysfunction and, 1:429, 430  
 executive function and, 1:435  
 exercise, 1:437  
 exhibitionism and, 1:440  
 family psychoeducation, 1:457  
 fatigue in, 1:463, 464–465  
 female orgasmic disorder and, 1:469  
 fluoxetine for, 1:481–483  
 fluvoxamine for, 1:487–489  
 gender identity disorder and, 1:499  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:503, 504  
 generalized anxiety disorder and, 1:509  
 genetics, 1:515, 517, 2:824  
**Geriatric Depression Scale**, 1:519–520  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
 grief and, 1:529, 530, 531  
 grief counseling, 1:532, 533  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 hallucinations in, 1:546  
 hallucinogens and, 1:549, 550  
 Hamilton Anxiety Scale, 1:559  
 Hamilton Depression Scale, 1:560–561  
 hypnotherapy, 1:578  
 hypoactive sexual desire disorder and, 1:583  
 imipramine for, 1:594–597  
 insomnia and, 1:605  
 Internet addiction disorder and, 1:612  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:617, 618–621  
 interventions, 1:623  
 juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:629, 630, 631  
 Kleine-Levin syndrome and, 1:645  
 kleptomania and, 1:646, 647  
 light therapy, 1:659, 660  
 lithium carbonate for, 1:662–664  
 loxapine for, 1:666  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:675  
 maprotiline for, 2:694  
 methylphenidate for, 2:726  
 mirtazapine for, 2:732–733  
 modeling, 2:738  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors for, 2:741–744  
 nefazodone for, 2:762–763  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
 nortriptyline for, 2:782–783  
 nutrition and, 2:788  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:808  
 opioid dependence and, 2:816  
 oppositional defiant disorder and, 2:820  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:825, 826  
 paroxetine for, 2:852  
 pathological gambling disorder and, 2:856  
 Paxil for, 2:860  
 person-centered therapy, 2:873  
 phenelzine for, 2:881  
 polysomnography, 2:896  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904  
 process addiction and, 2:917  
 protriptyline for, 2:920  
 pseudocyesis and, 2:923  
 psychosurgery, 2:934  
 pyromania and, 2:941  
 rational emotive therapy, 2:951  
 reading disorder and, 2:956  
 relapse, 2:959  
 riluzole for, 2:971  
 Rorschach technique, 2:979  
**SAMe** for, 2:985  
 schizoaffective disorder and, 2:986–990  
 schizoid personality disorder and, 2:992  
 selective mutism and, 2:1021  
 self mutilation and, 2:1035, 1036  
 sertraline for, 2:1042  
 social phobia and, 2:1069  
 social skills training, 2:1076  
 St. John's wort for, 2:1091–1092  
 stigma, 2:1105  
 stuttering and, 2:1124  
 suicide and, 2:1136, 1137  
 tic disorders and, 2:1160, 1163  
 transcranial magnetic stimulation, 2:677  
 transcranial magnetic stimulation for, 2:1168  
 tranylcypromine for, 2:1172  
 trazodone for, 2:1175  
**Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study**, 2:1177–1178  
 trimipramine for, 2:1186  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder and, 2:1189, 1190  
 vagus nerve stimulation for, 2:1195–1197  
 vascular dementia and, 2:1202  
 venlafaxine for, 2:1204  
 from Vivitrol, 2:1206–1207  
 withdrawal and, 1:346–347  
*See also* Antidepressants; Cyclothymic disorder; Dysthymic disorder; Endogenous depression; Juvenile depression; Late-life depression; Major depressive disorder; Postpartum depression; Seasonal affective disorder (SAD); Subsyndromal depression  
**Depressive disorders.** *See* Depression and depressive disorders  
**Derealization**  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:11  
 cannabis and, 1:202  
 vs. depersonalization, 1:334, 335  
 as dissociation, 1:371, 372  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:381  
 in schizophrenia, 2:996  
 yoga and, 2:1228

Dermatillomania, 1:342–343  
 DES (Dissociative Experiences Scale), 1:337, 375, 382  
 Desalkylflurazepam, 1:486  
 Descartes, René, 2:770  
 Desensitization, systematic. *See* Systematic desensitization  
 Designer amphetamines. *See* Amphetamines  
 Desipramine, 1:343–346, 344  
     amphetamines and, 1:57  
     for cocaine withdrawal, 1:260  
     for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
     for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340/  
     for generalized anxiety disorder, 1:509–510  
     imipramine and, 1:594  
     protriptyline and, 2:920  
     for stereotypic movement disorder, 2:1101  
 Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP), 1:426  
 Desoxyn. *See* Methamphetamine  
 Despiramine, 1:53  
 Desyrel. *See* Trazodone  
 Detachment  
     emotional (*See* Dissociation and dissociative disorders)  
     personal (*See* Depersonalization)  
 Detoxification, 1:346–351  
     alcohol, 1:33–34  
     bipolar disorder and, 1:148  
     cocaine, 1:259–260  
     energy therapies, 1:420, 422  
     hospitalization, 1:573  
     methadone and, 2:721, 722  
     opioid, 2:817, 818  
 Devaluation, 1:161, 162  
 Development, child. *See* Child development  
 “The Development of a Child” (Klein), 2:894  
 Developmental acalculia. *See* Mathematics disorder  
 Developmental arithmetic disorder. *See* Mathematics disorder  
 Developmental articulation disorder. *See* Phonological disorder  
 Developmental coordination disorder, 1:351–354  
 Developmental disorder of motor function. *See* Developmental coordination disorder  
 Developmental disorders, pervasive. *See* Pervasive developmental disorders  
 Developmental expressive writing disorder. *See* Disorder of written expression  
 Developmental phonological disorder. *See* Phonological disorder  
 Developmental reading disorder. *See* Reading disorder

Deviance, sexual. *See* Paraphilic disorders  
 DEWS (Diagnostic Evaluation of Writing Skills), 1:370  
 Dexamethasone, 1:88, 389, 2:947, 1136  
 Dexatrim. *See* Sibutramine  
 Dexedrine. *See* Dextroamphetamine  
 Dexfenfluramine, 1:84, 85, 483, 489  
 Dextroamphetamine, 1:55, 57, 107, 2:868, 891  
 Dextromethorphan  
     amphetamines and, 1:59  
     aripiprazole and, 1:90  
     clomipramine and, 1:246  
     ecstasy and, 1:404  
     fluoxetine and, 1:483  
     as hallucinogen, 1:547  
     isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
     monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
     phenelzine and, 2:881–882  
     selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024  
 Diabetes  
     beta blockers and, 1:134  
     biofeedback for, 1:140  
     erectile dysfunction and, 1:428, 429, 430  
     ginseng and, 1:527  
     hypoactive sexual desire disorder from, 1:583, 584  
     lithium carbonate and, 1:664  
     obesity and, 2:795, 796  
 Diabetic gastric motility disorder, 2:886  
 Diabetic neuropathy, 1:233, 2:860  
 Diagnosis, 1:354  
     adjustment disorders, 1:18  
     Asperger’s disorder, 1:94, 95  
     brief psychotic disorder, 1:174  
     Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240–241  
     cocaine abuse, 1:259  
     dementia, 1:325  
     depersonalization, 1:334, 335  
     dissociative amnesia, 1:374  
     factitious disorder, 1:452, 454  
     histrionic personality disorder, 1:567  
     imaging studies, 1:593–594  
     Internet addiction disorder, 1:614  
     late-life depression, 1:650, 651–652  
     narcissistic personality disorder, 2:757  
     opioid-related disorders, 2:813  
     pyromania, 2:942  
     schizoaffective disorder, 2:988  
     seizures, 2:1016, 1018–1019  
     *See also* Assessment and diagnosis; Co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis; Dual diagnosis  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)*, 1:354–359  
     abuse, 1:2  
     acute stress disorder, 1:11, 12  
     addiction, 1:16  
 adjustment disorders, 1:18  
 agoraphobia, 1:26, 27, 28, 30  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:33  
 amnestic disorders, 1:49, 50, 51–52  
 amphetamines, 1:58, 60  
 anorexia nervosa, 1:64  
 anti-anxiety drug abuse, 1:68  
 antisocial personality disorder, 1:73, 75  
 Asperger’s disorder, 1:93, 94, 95  
 autism, 1:109, 111  
 avoidant personality disorder, 1:117–118  
 Beck Depression Inventory, 1:123  
 bereavement, 1:132  
 binge eating, 1:139  
 bipolar disorder, 1:146, 148  
 body dysmorphic disorder, 1:152, 155  
 borderline personality disorder, 1:162  
 breathing-related sleep disorder, 1:168  
 brief psychotic disorder, 1:172, 174  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:176, 178  
 caffeine-related disorders, 1:195  
 cannabis and related disorders, 1:200  
 catatonia, 1:210  
 catatonic disorders, 1:211–213  
 childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:222  
 chronic pain, 1:232  
 circadian rhythm sleep disorder, 1:236  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240, 241  
 cocaine-related disorders, 1:255, 257  
 communication disorders, 1:272  
 community mental health, 1:273–274  
 conduct disorder, 1:282  
 conversion disorder, 1:285, 286, 287  
 critiques, 1:357–358  
 cyclothymic disorder, 1:307  
 delirium, 1:311, 312  
 delusional disorder, 1:317  
 dementia, 1:321, 323  
 dependent personality disorder, 1:330, 331  
 depersonalization disorder, 1:334, 335, 336  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:464  
 dermatillomania, 1:342  
 dissociative amnesia, 1:373, 374  
 dissociative fugue, 1:378  
 dissociative identity disorder, 1:379, 381  
 dyspareunia, 1:396, 397  
 dysthymic disorder, 1:399  
 enuresis, 1:425

erectile dysfunction, 1:427  
 exercise, 1:437  
 exhibitionism, 1:439, 440  
 expressive language disorder, 1:450  
 factitious disorder, 1:451, 452  
 female orgasmic disorder, 1:468  
 female sexual arousal disorder, 1:472  
 fetishism, 1:478  
 frotteurism, 1:490  
 gender identity disorder, 1:499  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:507, 508  
 hallucinogens and related disorders, 1:550  
 histrionic personality disorder, 1:565, 567  
 hypersomnia, 1:577  
 hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:582–584  
 hypochondriasis, 1:585, 586, 587, 588  
 impulse-control disorders, 1:597, 598  
 inhalants and related disorders, 1:600, 601–602  
 insomnia, 1:605  
 intermittent explosive disorder, 1:609  
 juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:629, 630  
 kleptomania, 1:647  
 late-life depression, 1:652  
 learning disorders, 1:656  
 male orgasmic disorder, 2:685, 687  
 mathematics disorder, 2:698  
 mental retardation, 2:715  
 mixed receptive-expressive language disorder, 2:734  
 narcissistic personality disorder, 2:753–754, 756, 757, 758  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 2:766  
 neurosis, 2:771  
 nightmare disorder, 2:781  
 obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:801, 802  
 opioid-related disorders, 2:813, 815–816  
 oppositional defiant disorder, 2:819  
 pain disorder, 2:831, 832  
 panic attack, 2:837–838  
 panic disorder, 2:836, 838  
 paranoid personality disorder, 2:845, 846  
 paraphilic, 2:848–849  
 pathological gambling disorder, 2:858  
 pedophilia, 2:864  
 personality disorders, 2:753–754, 757, 875–876  
 pervasive developmental disorders, 2:876–877  
 phencyclidine and related disorders, 2:878

phonological disorder, 2:884  
 pica, 2:885  
 polysubstance dependence, 2:898  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:902, 903–904  
 premenstrual syndrome, 2:911  
 process addiction, 2:915–916  
 pyromania, 2:939–940, 939–942  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:953  
 Rett disorder, 2:964, 966  
 reward deficiency syndrome, 2:969  
 rumination disorder, 2:984  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:987–988  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:991  
 schizophrenia, 2:993, 995, 996, 998  
 schizopreniform disorder, 2:1003, 1005  
 seasonal affective disorder, 2:1009–1010  
 selective mutism, 2:1020, 1021  
 self mutilation, 2:1033–1034  
 separation anxiety disorder, 2:1039  
 sexual aversion disorder, 2:1045  
 sexual dysfunctions, 2:1046–1047  
 sexual masochism, 2:1047, 1048  
 sexual sadism, 2:1049–1050, 1051  
 sleep disorders, 2:1057  
 sleep terror disorder, 2:1062  
 sleepwalking disorder, 2:1063, 1064  
 social phobia, 2:1069, 1072  
 somatization and somatoform disorders, 2:1080, 1081  
 somatization disorder, 2:1083  
 specific phobias, 2:1084–1085, 1086–1087  
 stress, 2:1109, 1111  
 Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV, 2:1121–1122  
 substance abuse and related disorders, 2:1130–1131  
 substance-induced anxiety disorder, 2:1126  
 substance-induced psychotic disorder, 2:1128–1129  
 tic disorders, 2:1157, 1159  
 transvestic fetishism, 2:1170–1171  
 trichillomania, 2:1180–1181  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder, 2:1190  
 vaginismus, 2:1193, 1194  
 vascular dementia, 2:1202  
 voyeurism, 2:1211  
 Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1218, 1220  
 Diagnostic Evaluation of Writing Skills (DEWS), 1:370  
 Diagnostic imaging. *See* Imaging studies  
 Diagnostic Interview for Children and Adolescents-revised (DICA-R), 1:630  
 Diagnostic Interview Schedule for Children (DISC), 1:630

Dialectical behavior therapy (DBT), 1:163, 2:1036  
 Dianabol. *See* Methandrostenolone  
 Diaphragmatic breathing. *See* Breathing  
 Diary writing. *See* Creative therapies  
 Diathermy, 2:1197  
 Diathesis, 2:1004  
 Diazepam, 1:359–361  
 abuse, 1:67  
 clonazepam and, 1:247  
 clonidine and, 1:248  
 for electroconvulsive therapy, 1:413  
 erectile dysfunction from, 1:429  
 vs. lorazepam, 1:665  
 mirtazapine and, 2:733  
 for neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 2:767  
 paroxetine and, 2:853  
 for sleep disorders, 2:1059  
 for sleep terror disorder, 2:1062–1063  
 for toilet phobia, 2:1165  
 withdrawal, 1:347  
 DICA-R (Diagnostic Interview for Children and Adolescents-revised), 1:630  
 Dichotomy, 1:18  
 Dicyclomine, 1:389, 2:977, 1144  
 DID (Dissociative identity disorder). *See* Dissociative identity disorder (DID)  
 Diencephalon, 1:164, 165  
 Dietary fats, 2:787–788, 798  
 Dietary sugar, 1:362, 2:787  
 Dietary supplements, 1:433–434, 528, 2:985  
 Diethylpropion, 1:84  
 Diets, 1:361–366  
 alcohol-restricted, 1:365  
 Alzheimer's disease, 1:39  
 amnestic disorders, 1:52  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
 caffeine-restricted, 1:365  
 circadian rhythm sleep disorder, 1:238  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:341  
 energy therapies, 1:422  
 feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, 1:467  
 for isocarboxazid, 1:627  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 medications and, 1:363–365  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors, 2:741, 742, 743–744  
 nicotine addiction, 2:779  
 nutrition counseling and, 2:791–793  
 obesity, 2:798  
 premenstrual syndrome, 2:913

- vascular dementia, 2:1203  
*See also* Nutrition and mental health
- Differential diagnosis. *See* Assessment and diagnosis
- Differentiation, 1:460
- Digitek. *See* Digoxin
- Digoxin, 1:312, 528, 2:763, 862, 1092
- Dilantin. *See* Phenytoin
- Dilauidid. *See* Hydromorphone
- Dimensional perspective, 1:358
- Dimercaprol, 2:887
- Dimethyltryptamine (DMT), 1:547
- Diosmin, 2:982
- Diphenhydramine, 1:366, 366–368  
 for brief psychotic disorder, 1:175  
 for medication-induced movement disorders, 2:704
- Dipyridamole, 1:526
- DISC (Diagnostic Interview Schedule for Children), 1:630
- Disease concept of chemical dependency, 1:368–369
- Diseases. *See specific diseases by name or type*
- Disfluency. *See* Stuttering
- Disintegrative psychosis. *See* Childhood disintegrative disorder (CDD)
- Disipramine, 2:862
- Disorder of written expression, 1:369–371, 658
- Disorders. *See specific disorders by name or type*
- Dissocial personality disorder. *See* Antisocial personality disorder (APD)
- Dissociation and dissociative disorders, 1:371–373  
 abuse and, 1:5  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:11  
 amnesia and, 1:50  
 aromatherapy, 1:92  
 borderline personality disorder and, 1:161, 162  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:176  
 Child Depression Inventory, 1:220 in children, 1:380  
 conversion disorder and, 1:285, 286  
 depersonalization disorder and, 1:334–335, 336, 337  
 in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:356  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:379–380  
 energy therapies, 1:420, 422  
 factitious disorder and, 1:451, 452  
 Ganser's syndrome and, 1:496  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:566  
 hypnotherapy, 1:380  
 from phencyclidine, 2:877  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904
- in schizophrenia, 2:996  
 trauma and, 2:828  
 yoga and, 2:1228, 1229  
*See also* Depersonalization; Dereализация; names of specific dissociative disorders
- Dissociative amnesia, 1:373–377  
 from abuse, 1:5  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:11  
 as dissociative disorder, 1:50, 372
- Dissociative disorders. *See* Dissociation and dissociative disorders
- Dissociative Disorders Interview Schedule (DDIS), 1:382
- Dissociative drugs, 1:547
- Dissociative Experiences Scale (DES), 1:337, 375, 382
- Dissociative fugue, 1:377–379  
 dissociative amnesia in, 1:373  
 as dissociative disorder, 1:372  
 trauma and, 2:828
- Dissociative identity disorder (DID), 1:379, 379–384  
 dissociative amnesia in, 1:372, 373  
 vs. dissociative fugue, 1:378  
 memory and, 1:371  
 trauma and, 2:828
- Distorted thoughts, correction of. *See* Cognitive retraining
- Distrust. *See* Paranoia
- Disulfiram, 1:384–386  
 for addiction, 1:16  
 for alcohol-related disorders, 1:34, 35  
 alprazolam and, 1:36  
 caffeine and, 1:197  
 clonazepam and, 1:248  
 delirium from, 1:312  
 for detoxification, 1:349  
 diets for, 1:365  
 estazolam and, 1:432  
 naltrexone and, 2:752  
 sertraline and, 2:1043  
 temazepam and, 2:1149
- Diuretics, 1:176, 483, 526, 664, 2:799, 914, 1184
- Diurnal enuresis. *See* Enuresis
- Divalproex sodium, 1:386–387  
 for bipolar disorder, 1:148–149  
 for detoxification, 1:349  
 diets for, 1:363  
 for hypomania, 1:591  
 for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
 lamotrigine and, 1:650
- Divided Attention Test. *See* Trail Making Test
- Divorce, 1:503, 531, 2:1112
- Dixon, Lisa, 1:458
- Dizocilpine, 2:877
- DMT (Dimethyltryptamine), 1:547
- DNA (Deoxyribonucleic acid). *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders
- Docetaxel, 1:88
- Dofetilide, 2:1234
- Dolophine. *See* Methadone
- Domestic abuse. *See* Abuse
- Domestic violence. *See* Abuse
- Donepezil, 1:388–389  
 for Alzheimer's disease, 1:42, 43  
 memantine and, 2:710  
 for Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1221
- Dong quai, 1:251
- Dopamine, 1:389–392  
 addiction and, 1:15  
 adrenaline and, 1:22  
 alcohol-related disorders and, 1:32  
 amantadine and, 1:45, 46  
 amphetamines and, 1:58  
 antidepressants and, 1:71, 72  
 aripiprazole and, 1:89, 90  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:105–106, 2:774  
 benztropine and, 1:130  
 biperiden and, 1:144–145  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:147  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:212  
 chlorpromazine and, 1:230  
 clozapine and, 1:252  
 disease concept of chemical dependency and, 1:369  
 ecstasy and, 1:405  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411  
 erectile dysfunction and, 1:430  
 fluphenazine and, 1:484  
 hypoactive sexual desire disorder and, 1:584  
 imaging studies, 1:594  
 loxapine and, 1:667  
 medication-induced movement disorders and, 2:701, 702  
 mesoridazine and, 2:719  
 methamphetamine and, 2:724  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:742  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome and, 2:766  
 as neurotransmitter, 2:772  
 nicotine and, 2:775  
 nutrition and, 2:787  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:824  
 paraphilics and, 1:440  
 Parkinson's disease and, 2:745  
 pathological gambling disorder and, 2:856  
 pemoline and, 2:868  
 pica and, 2:886  
 pimozide and, 2:891  
 process addiction and, 2:916, 917  
 reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:968, 969  
 schizophrenia and, 2:995  
 single photon emission computed tomography and, 2:1056  
 in smoking cessation, 2:1068  
 tardive dyskinesia and, 2:1145  
 trihexyphenidyl and, 2:1184  
 in voyeurism, 2:1211

- Dopamine antagonists (DA). *See* Antipsychotics  
 Dopar. *See* Levodopa (L-dopa)  
 Doral. *See* Quazepam  
 Dorsal striatum, 1:391  
 Dosages. *See names of specific drugs*  
 Double bind, 1:456  
 Double insanity. *See* Shared psychotic disorder  
 Doubles, 1:203–204  
 Doubting, obsessional. *See* Obsessional doubting  
 Down syndrome  
   Alzheimer's disease and, 1:38, 39, 322, 513  
   genetics, 1:515, 2:714  
   mental retardation from, 2:716, 717, 718–719  
 Downward drift, 2:997  
 Doxepin, 1:392, 392–394  
   for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
   for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340t  
   male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686  
 Doxycycline, 1:122, 205  
 Dramatic behavior, 1:565–569  
 Draw-a-Man Test, 1:480  
 Draw-a-Person: Screening Procedure of Emotional Disturbance (DAP: SPED), 1:480, 481  
 Draw-a-Person Test. *See* Figure drawings  
 Drawing. *See* Creative therapies; Figure drawings  
 Dream anxiety disorder. *See* Nightmare disorder  
 Dreams, 1:523, 2:822, 930  
   *See also* Nightmares  
 Drinking, binge. *See* Binge drinking  
 Drospirenone. *See* Progesterone  
 Drug abuse. *See* Substance abuse and related disorders  
 Drug abuse counselors. *See* Alcohol and drug abuse counselors  
 Drug Abuse Warning Network (DAWN), 1:258  
 Drug Awareness and Resistance Education (D.A.R.E.), 1:202  
 Drug binges, 1:406, 603, 2:724  
 Drug Enforcement Agency, U.S. (DEA), 1:403, 406  
 Drug holidays, 1:55, 106, 239, 2:1146  
 Drug interactions. *See names of specific drugs*  
 Drug screening, urine. *See* Urine drug screening  
 Drug testing, urine. *See* Urine drug screening  
 Drug therapy. *See* Pharmacotherapy  
 Drug trials. *See* Clinical trials  
 Drug-induced movement disorders. *See* Medication-induced movement disorders  
 Drugs. *See* Substance abuse and related disorders; *specific drugs by class or name*  
 DSM (*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*). *See* *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)*  
 DSS (Depersonalization Severity Scale), 1:337  
 DT (Delirium tremens). *See* Delirium tremens (DT)  
 Dual diagnosis, 1:394–396  
   *See also* Co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis  
 Durable power of attorney. *See* Advance directives  
 Durabolin. *See* Nandrolone phenpropionate  
 Dyad, therapeutic. *See* Therapeutic dyad  
 Dyazide. *See* Triamterene  
 Dying. *See* Death and dying  
 Dysarthria. *See* Phonological disorder  
 Dyscalculia. *See* Mathematics disorder  
 Dysgraphia, 1:369, 658  
 Dyslexia. *See* Reading disorder  
 Dysmorphophobia. *See* Body dysmorphic disorder (BDD)  
 Dyspareunia, 1:396–398  
   from female sexual arousal disorder, 1:471  
   hypoactive sexual desire disorder and, 1:583  
 Dysphagia, 2:1119  
 Dysphoric mania, 1:146  
 Dyspraxia. *See* Phonological disorder  
 Dyssomnia, 1:168, 236, 2:1057  
 Dysthymic disorder, 1:398–401  
   apathy in, 1:82  
   Beck Depression Inventory, 1:123  
   bulimia nervosa and, 1:179  
   Child Depression Inventory, 1:220  
   in children, 1:632  
   chronic pain and, 1:233  
   as depressive disorder, 1:340, 341  
   female sexual arousal disorder and, 1:471  
   interpersonal therapy, 1:617  
   major depressive disorder and, 2:683  
   nefazodone for, 2:762  
 Dystonia. *See* Medication-induced movement disorders
- 
- E**
- Ear acupuncture. *See* Acupuncture  
 Early-onset Alzheimer's disease. *See* Alzheimer's disease (AD)  
 Eating, binge. *See* Binge eating  
 Eating disorders. *See* Anorexia nervosa; Bulimia nervosa  
 ECA (National Institute of Mental Health Epidemiologic Catchment Area Study), 2:838  
 Echo, 2:753  
 Echolalia, 1:210, 211, 212, 2:889  
 Echopraxia, 1:210, 212  
 Ecstasy (drug), 1:403–408, 404  
   amphetamine and, 1:57, 58, 59, 60  
   body temperature and, 1:550  
   depression from, 1:550  
   as hallucinogen, 1:547, 548, 549  
   origin of mental illnesses, 2:828  
   paranoia from, 2:842  
 Eczema, 1:433, 434  
 ED (Erectile dysfunction). *See* Erectile dysfunction (ED)  
 Eddata calcium disodium (EDTA), 2:887  
 Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale (EPDS), 2:908  
 EDTA (Eddate calcium disodium), 2:887  
 Education, family. *See* Family education  
 Educational performance, 1:5, 657–658  
 Educational psychology, 2:931  
 EEG (Electroencephalography). *See* Electroencephalography (EEG)  
 EEOC (U.S. Equal Employment Opportunities Commission), 2:942  
 EFA (Essential fatty acids), 1:433, 434  
 Effexor. *See* Venlafaxine  
 Ego, 1:226, 328–329, 2:822  
 Ego analytical model, 1:295  
 Ejaculation, 2:685–686, 687  
 Elavil. *See* Amitriptyline  
 Eldepryl. *See* Selegiline  
 Elderly  
   abuse, 1:4  
   Alzheimer's disease, 1:37, 38, 39  
   amoxapine in, 1:53  
   antisocial personality disorder, 1:76  
   aripiprazole in, 1:90  
   barbiturates and, 1:121–122  
   bipolar disorder, 1:146, 150  
   breathing-related sleep disorder, 1:169, 170  
   bupropion in, 1:189  
   chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
   Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240–241  
   clomipramine and, 1:245  
   clozapine in, 1:253  
   co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:292  
   deinstitutionalization, 1:309  
   delirium, 1:312, 313, 315  
   delusional disorder, 1:318  
   dementia, 1:321, 324, 325  
   depression and depressive disorders, 1:340, 650–653  
   desipramine in, 1:344

- detoxification, 1:350  
 diazepam and, 1:360  
 diphenhydramine in, 1:367  
 doxepin in, 1:392–393  
 dual diagnosis, 1:395  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 412  
 enuresis, 1:425  
*Geriatric Depression Scale*,  
 1:519–520  
 grief in, 1:529–530  
 imipramine and, 1:595  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:617, 619, 620  
*Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure*, 1:641  
*Mini-Mental State Examination*,  
 2:728  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:825  
 Pick's disease, 2:889  
 schizophrenia, 2:996  
 stigma, 2:1106  
 stroke, 2:1118  
 suicide, 2:1134  
 tardive dyskinesia, 2:1145  
*See also Aging*  
 Elective mutism, 1:210, 212  
 Electric shock, 1:115, 116  
*See also Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)*  
 Electroacupuncture. *See Acupuncture*  
 Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT),  
**1:408–413, 409**  
 advance directives and, 1:24  
 amnesia from, 1:49  
 bipolar disorder, 1:149  
 catatonic disorders, 1:213  
 as convulsive therapy, 2:675–676  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:341  
 as intervention, 1:623  
 involuntary hospitalization and,  
 1:625  
 vs. magnetic seizure therapy,  
 2:678  
 for major depressive disorder,  
 2:682–683  
 nortriptyline and, 2:783  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder,  
 2:810  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
 vs. transcranial magnetic stimulation, 2:1168, 1169  
 Electroencephalogram. *See Electroencephalography (EEG)*  
 Electroencephalography (EEG)  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
 biofeedback, 1:142  
 brain, 1:166–167  
 childhood disintegrative disorder,  
 1:222, **413–416, 414**  
 during electroconvulsive therapy,  
 1:410  
 intermittent explosive disorder,  
 1:610  
 polysomnography and, 2:896, 897  
 for seizures, 2:1016  
 Electrolyte imbalances, 1:178  
 Electromagnetic fields, 1:419, 422  
 Electromagnetic therapies, 1:422  
 Electromyography (EMG), 1:142  
 Electron beam computed tomography.  
*See Computed tomography (CT)*  
 Electro-oculography (EOG),  
 2:896–897  
 Electroshock therapy. *See Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)*  
 Elements, 1:421  
 Eleutherosides, 1:527  
 Elimination diets, 1:362  
 Elimination disorders, 1:**416–417**  
*See also Encopresis; Enuresis*  
 Ellis, Albert, 1:539, 2:951, 1033  
 Ellis, Havelock, 2:753  
 Emend. *See Aprepitant*  
 Emergency and Transitional Shelter Population (ET&S), 1:571  
 EMG (Electromyography), 1:142  
 Emotional abuse. *See Abuse*  
 Emotional disorders. *See names of specific emotional disorders*  
 Emotional Freedom Techniques,  
 2:905  
 Emotions  
 affect and, 1:25–26  
 in antisocial personality disorder,  
 1:73, 75  
 apathy, 1:82–83  
 aprepitant and, 1:86  
 aromatherapy, 1:91  
 in autism, 1:110  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:212  
 couples therapy, 1:295  
 creative therapies, 1:299, 300  
 in depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
 expressed (*See Emotions*)  
 in histrionic personality disorder,  
 1:565  
 meditation, 2:706  
 neglect, 2:764  
 in reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood,  
 2:952–954  
 in schizoid personality disorder,  
 2:990–993  
 in schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1006, 1007  
 Empathy, 1:73, 75, 94, 2:757, 758, 873  
 Employment, 1:503, 2:998, 1208–1210  
 Empty-chair technique, 1:523  
 Emsam. *See Selegiline*  
 Enabling behaviors. *See Addiction*  
 Enactment, 1:523  
 Encephalitis, 1:211, 212, 322, 645,  
 2:717, 825  
 Encopresis, 1:416, **417–419**  
 Encounter groups, 1:539, 2:872  
 Endep. *See Amitriptyline*  
 Endocannabinoids, 1:200  
 Endogenous depression, 2:782  
 Endorphins, 1:8, 159, 422, 437, 2:774,  
 912  
 Endoscopic retrograde cholangio-pancreatography (ERCP), 2:671  
 Enemas, 1:176  
 Energy intake. *See Nutrition and mental health*  
 Energy therapies, 1:159, **419–424**  
 Engel, George, 1:355  
 Entactogens, 1:403  
 Enuresis, 1:**424–427**  
 amoxapine for, 1:53  
 behavior modification, 1:125  
 biofeedback, 1:140  
 doxepin for, 1:392  
 as elimination disorder, 1:416  
 hypnotherapy, 1:578  
 imipramine for, 1:594  
 protriptyline for, 2:920  
 trazodone for, 2:1175  
 trimipramine for, 2:1186  
 Environmental factors. *See names of specific disorders*  
 Environmental psychology, 2:931  
 EOG (Electro-oculography),  
 2:896–897  
 EPDS (Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale), 2:908  
 Ephebophilia. *See Pedophilia*  
 Ephedra, 1:197, 404, 2:799  
*Ephedra sinica. See Ephedra*  
 Ephedrine  
 amphetamines and, 1:58, 59  
 ecstasy and, 1:404  
 isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 Epidemiology, genetic. *See Genetic epidemiology*  
 Epilepsy  
 barbiturates for, 1:121  
 brain imaging, 1:167  
 bupropion and, 1:189  
 chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
 clonazepam for, 1:247  
 divalproex sodium for, 1:386  
 electroencephalography, 1:413,  
 415  
 evening primrose oil and, 1:434  
 hallucinations in, 1:546  
 meditation, 2:706  
 schizophrenia and, 1:409  
 seizure brainwaves, 2:1016  
 seizures, 2:1016–1020  
 single photon emission computed tomography and, 2:1056  
 vagus nerve stimulation for,  
 2:1195, 1196  
 valproic acid for, 2:1200  
 Epinephrine. *See Adrenaline*  
 Episodic dyscontrol. *See Intermittent explosive disorder (IED)*  
 Episodic heavy drinking. *See Binge drinking*  
 Epstein, Irwin, 1:208

- Equetro. *See* Carbamazepine  
 Equipoise. *See* Boldenone undecylenate  
 Erectile dysfunction (ED), 1:**427–431**  
     hypoactive sexual desire disorder from, 1:583  
     male orgasmic disorder and, 2:687  
 Erickson, Milton, 1:579  
 Erikson, Eric, 1:502  
 Eros-Clinical Therapy Device, 1:473  
 Erotomanic delusions. *See* Delusions  
 Erythromycin  
     anticonvulsants and, 2:1019  
     buspirone and, 1:192  
     carbamazepine and, 1:205  
     chlorpromazine and, 1:232  
     citalopram and, 1:239  
     diazepam and, 1:360  
     disulfiram and, 1:385  
     divalproex sodium and, 1:387  
     estazolam and, 1:432  
     galantamine and, 1:495  
     pimozide and, 2:892  
     quetiapine and, 2:947  
     sertraline and, 2:1043  
     valproic acid and, 2:1201  
     ziprasidone and, 2:1234  
 Esalen Institute, 1:537  
 Escape conditioning, 2:957  
*Escape from Freedom* (Fromm), 2:926  
 Escitalopram, 2:1023  
 Eskalith. *See* Lithium carbonate  
 Esquirol, Jean-Étienne Dominique, 1:609  
 Essential fatty acids (EFA), 1:433, 434  
 Essential model, 1:358–359  
 Essential oils  
     aromatherapy, 1:91–92  
     chamomile, 1:218, 219  
     lavender, 1:655, 656  
     rosemary, 2:981, 982  
*Essentials of Complementary and Alternative Medicine* (Baime), 2:706  
 Estazolam, 1:67, **431–433**, 486  
 Estrogen, 1:36, 500, 2:907, 912, 913, 914  
 Eszopiclone, 1:606, 2:1059  
 Ethanol. *See* Alcohol and related disorders  
 E-therapy. *See* Internet-based therapy  
 Ethics  
     Alzheimer's disease, 1:41–42, 328  
     assessment and diagnosis, 1:102  
     aversion therapy, 1:115, 116  
     ecstasy research, 1:406  
     electroconvulsive therapy, 1:410  
     exhibitionism treatment, 1:441  
     genetics, 1:515, 518  
     informed consent, 1:598, 599  
     involuntary hospitalization, 1:624–626  
     managed care, 2:691  
     psychosurgery, 2:933–934  
     Thematic Apperception Test, 2:1150  
 Ethinyl estradiol. *See* Estrogen  
 Ethnic groups. *See* Minority and ethnic groups  
 Ethosuximide, 2:1019  
 Etiology of mental illness. *See* Origin of mental illnesses  
 Etopophos. *See* Etoposide  
 Etoposide, 1:88  
 ET&S (Emergency and Transitional Shelter Population), 1:571  
 Eugerogetics, 2:760  
 Euphoria  
     amphetamines, 1:58, 59  
     benztropine, 1:130  
     biperiden, 1:145  
     cocaine, 1:255  
     cyclothymic disorder, 1:306  
     disease concept of chemical dependency, 1:369  
     ecstasy, 1:403, 405  
     inhalants, 1:601  
     Internet addiction disorder, 1:612  
     methamphetamine, 2:724  
     pathological gambling disorder, 2:856  
     from trihexyphenidyl, 2:1185  
 Euphytose, 1:21  
 Europe, 1:197, 643  
 Euthanasia, 2:1135–1136  
 Euthymia, 1:589  
 Evaluation. *See* Assessment and diagnosis  
 Evening primrose oil, 1:433, **433–435**, 2:914  
 Exaggeration, 1:523  
 Excoriation, skin. *See* Dermatillomania  
 Executive function, 1:**435–436**, 2:1220  
 Executive skills, 1:271  
 Exelon. *See* Rivastigmine  
 Exercise/exercise-based treatment, 1:**436–439**  
     bodywork therapies, 1:158, 159  
     bulimia nervosa, 1:176  
     fatigue, 1:462, 463, 465  
     insomnia, 1:605  
     nightmares, 2:782  
     obesity, 2:799  
     pain disorder, 2:833  
     panic disorder, 2:840  
     premenstrual syndrome, 2:913  
     stress, 2:1115  
 Exhaustion. *See* Fatigue  
 Exhibitionism, 1:**439–443**  
     as paraphilia, 2:848  
     pedophilia and, 2:864  
 Existentialism, 1:81  
 Exner Comprehensive Rorschach System. *See* Rorschach technique  
 Exons, 1:514  
 Expansion mutations, 1:513–514  
 Experiential therapy, 2:872  
 “The Experimental Analysis of Behavior” (Skinner), 1:125  
 Experimental drugs and treatments.  
     *See* Clinical trials  
 Experimental psychology, 2:931  
 Exploratory psychotherapy. *See* Psychodynamic psychotherapy  
 Exposure treatment, 1:**443–449**  
     acute stress disorder, 1:13  
     agoraphobia, 1:27, 29  
     in cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:264  
     defined, 1:443  
     described, 1:444–448  
     hypochondriasis, 1:588  
     as intervention, 1:622  
     obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:808–809, 810  
     panic disorder, 2:839  
     post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
     precautions, 1:444  
     psychotherapy, 2:936  
     purpose, 1:443–444  
     results, 1:448  
     social phobia, 2:1073–1074  
     specific phobias, 2:1088  
     systematic desensitization, 2:1140–1141  
 Expressed emotion (EE), 1:517  
 Expressive language disorder, 1:**449–450**, 2:734  
 Expressive language skills. *See* Communication skills and disorders  
 Expressive therapies. *See* Creative therapies  
 Extended families, 1:459, 460  
 Externalizing disorders, 1:504  
 Extinction (psychology), 1:126, 444  
 Extratemporal cortical resection, 2:1019  
 Extroversion, 1:515  
 Eye Movement Desensitization and Reprocessing, 2:905

**F**

- Factitious disorder (FD), 1:**451–455**  
     vs. amnestic disorders, 1:51  
     chronic pain and, 1:233  
     vs. delirium, 1:314  
     in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:356  
     vs. dissociative amnesia, 1:375  
     Ganser's syndrome and, 1:496  
     vs. malingering, 2:689  
     vs. pain disorder, 2:832  
     self mutilation and, 2:1034  
     vs. somatization disorder, 2:1083  
 Fagerstrom Test for Nicotine Dependence (FTND), 2:777  
 Failure to thrive, 1:466  
 Fair Housing Act, 1:534

Faking. *See* Malingering  
 Falloon, Ian, 1:458  
 False belief of pregnancy. *See* Pseudocyesis  
 False memory syndrome, 1:380  
 Familial British dementia (FBD), 1:323, 513  
 Family  
   advance directives and, 1:24  
   anorexia nervosa and, 1:63, 65  
   antisocial personality disorder and, 1:73, 74  
   avoidant personality disorder and, 1:119, 120  
   binge drinking and, 1:137, 138  
   body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153  
   bulimia nervosa and, 1:177–178, 180, 182  
   bullying in, 1:185  
   case management and, 1:208  
   community mental health and, 1:274  
   compliance and, 1:275, 276  
   conduct disorder and, 1:281–282, 283  
   conversion disorder and, 1:288–289, 290  
   creative therapies and, 1:300  
   crisis housing and, 1:302  
   cyclothymic disorder and, 1:307  
   dependent personality disorder and, 1:331  
   electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411  
   exhibitionism and, 1:439  
   figure drawings, 1:480, 481  
   vs. genetics, 1:512  
   group therapy as, 1:537  
   hypoactive sexual desire disorder and, 1:583  
   intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:610  
   Internet addiction disorder and, 1:612  
   juvenile depression and, 1:634  
   multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
   nutrition counseling and, 2:792  
   opioid use and, 2:815  
   oppositional defiant disorder and, 2:819  
   panic disorder and, 2:837  
   paranoid personality disorder and, 2:844  
   vs. peer groups, 2:866  
   phonological disorder and, 2:884  
   respite care, 2:962–964  
   schizoid personality disorder and, 2:991, 993  
   schizotypal personality disorder and, 2:1006, 1009  
   separation anxiety disorder and, 2:1037–1041  
   shared psychotic disorder and, 2:1054–1056

stigma, 2:1107  
 studies, 1:517  
 support groups, 2:1139  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder and, 2:1189  
 Family education, 1:**456–457**  
   acute stress disorder, 1:13  
   adjustment disorders, 1:20  
   bipolar disorder, 1:150  
   family psychoeducation and, 1:458  
   juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
   juvenile depression, 1:633–634  
   Matrix model, 2:700  
   methamphetamine addiction, 2:725  
   multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
 Family psychoeducation, 1:**457–459**  
   family education and, 1:457  
   multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
   schizophrenia, 2:999  
 Family systems theory, 1:459, 460–461  
 Family therapists. *See* Marital and family therapists  
 Family therapy, 1:**459–462**  
   acute stress disorder, 1:13  
   addiction, 1:17  
   adjustment disorders, 1:20  
   attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
   avoidant personality disorder, 1:119  
   bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
   conversion disorder, 1:288–289  
   dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
   detoxification, 1:350  
   dissociative identity disorder, 1:383  
   dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
   exhibitionism, 1:441  
   factitious disorder, 1:454  
   vs. family psychoeducation, 1:458  
   generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
   Gestalt therapy, 1:524  
   histrionic personality disorder, 1:568  
   Internet addiction disorder, 1:614  
   as intervention, 1:622  
   mental retardation, 2:718  
   multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
   parent management training, 2:849–851  
   pathological gambling disorder, 2:859  
   person-centered therapy, 2:873  
   post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
   psychoanalysis in, 2:927  
   psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:928  
   psychotherapy, 2:937  
   reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:953  
   schizoid personality disorder, 2:992  
 schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
 for shared psychotic disorder, 2:1056  
 social phobia, 2:1074  
 STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
*See also* Marital and family therapists  
 Family to Family, 1:456  
 Famotidine, 1:90, 2:842  
 Fansidar. *See* Sulfa-doxine-pyrimethamine  
 Fantasies  
   Children's Apperception Test, 1:225  
   exhibitionism, 1:439, 440, 441  
   fetishism, 1:477, 478  
   frotteurism, 1:490  
   gender identity disorder, 1:499  
   paraphilic, 2:849  
   play therapy, 2:893–896  
   sexual masochism, 2:1047, 1048, 1049  
   sexual sadism, 2:1050  
   transvestic fetishism, 2:1170  
   voyeurism, 2:1210, 1211  
 Faradic therapy, 1:115, 116  
 FAS (Fetal alcohol syndrome). *See* Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS)  
 Fascia, 1:156, 158  
 FASD (Fetal alcohol spectrum disorder), 1:474, 475  
 Fashion, 1:177  
 Fastin. *See* Phentermine  
 Fat, body. *See* Fat tissue  
 Fat tissue, 2:795–800  
 Fathers, 1:63, 177  
 Fatigue, 1:**462–466**  
*See also* Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS)  
 Fats, dietary. *See* Dietary fats  
 FBD (Familial British dementia), 1:323  
 FDA (Food and Drug Administration). *See* United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA)  
 FDDNP, 1:167  
 Fear  
   in acute stress disorder, 1:13  
   in agoraphobia, 1:26–29  
   vs. anxiety, 1:76  
   Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly and, 1:240, 241  
   ecstasy for, 1:406  
   exposure treatment, 1:443–448  
   modeling, 2:737  
   in sleep terror disorder, 2:1061–1063  
 Feasodone, 1:365  
 Febrile seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Fecal incontinence. *See* Encopresis  
 Feedback, 1:32, 2:738  
 Feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, 1:**466–468**

- Feelings. *See* Emotions  
 Feingold diet, 1:362  
 Felbamate, 1:387  
 Feldenkrais method, 1:156, 157, 158, 160  
 Feldenkrais, Moshe, 1:158  
 Female genital mutilation, 1:469  
 Female orgasmic disorder (FOD), 1:468–470  
 Female sexual arousal disorder (FSAD), 1:470–474  
     female orgasmic disorder and, 1:469  
     vs. sexual aversion disorder., 2:1045  
 Females. *See* Girls; Women  
 Femininity. *See* Women  
 Fenfluramine, 1:84, 85, 246, 483, 489, 2:1024  
 Feng shui, 1:234  
 Fen/phen. *See* Fenfluramine; Phentermine  
 Fentanyl, 2:813  
 Fetal alcohol spectrum disorder (FASD), 1:474, 475  
 Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS), 1:474–477, 475, 2:716, 717  
 Fetal development  
     amphetamines and, 1:56  
     antisocial personality disorder and, 1:74  
     autism and, 1:111  
     barbiturates and, 1:122  
     cannabis and, 1:201  
     chlordiazepoxide and, 1:228  
     gender identity disorder and, 1:498  
     learning disorders and, 1:657  
     methadone and, 2:722  
     schizophrenia, 2:995  
     *See also* Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS)  
 Fetishism, 1:477–479, 478, 2:848  
     *See also* Transvestic fetishism  
 Fever, 1:312  
 Fibrocystic breast disease, 1:433, 434  
 Fibromyalgia, 1:71, 233, 464  
 Fibrositis. *See* Fibromyalgia  
 Field theory, 1:521  
 Fight-or-flight response  
     adrenaline and, 1:22, 23, 2:775  
     in agoraphobia, 1:26  
     in depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
     in major depressive disorder, 2:680  
     stress and, 2:1109  
 Figure drawings, 1:479–481, 575–576  
 Figure-formation process, 1:521  
 Finger Tapping Test, 1:555–556  
 Fioricet. *See* Butalbital  
 Fiorinal. *See* Butalbital  
 Firearms, 2:1137  
 Firestarting. *See* Pyromania  
 First-generation antipsychotics. *See* Antipsychotics  
 5-HT (5-hydroxytryptamine). *See* Neurotransmitters  
 5-hydroxytryptamine (5-HT). *See* Neurotransmitters  
 5-MeO-DIPT (5-methoxy-N, N-diisopropyltryptamine), 1:547  
 5-methoxy-N, N-diisopropyltryptamine (5-MeO-DIPT), 1:547  
 Flashbacks  
     abuse and, 1:5  
     acute stress disorder and, 1:12  
     bodywork therapies and, 1:157  
     creative therapies and, 1:299  
     hallucinogen-induced, 1:549, 550, 551  
     phencyclidine and, 2:878  
     post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:901, 903  
 Flat affect. *See* Affect  
 Flavone glycosides, 1:525  
 Flavonoids, 1:219, 2:855, 982  
 FLD (Frontal lobe dementia). *See* Pick's disease  
 Flooding (psychology). *See* Exposure treatment  
 Flourens, Pierre, 2:770  
 Flowers, 1:218, 219  
 Fluconazole, 1:36, 239, 361, 2:947  
 Fluid intelligence, 1:637, 638, 641, 2:1214, 1217  
 Flunitrazepam, 1:67, 67, 68  
 Fluoxetine, 1:481–484, 482  
     for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
     alprazolam and, 1:36  
     for body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
     for bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
     carbamazepine and, 1:205  
     for cataplexy, 2:1060  
     clomipramine and, 1:244  
     for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
     for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340t  
     for dermatotillomania, 1:343  
     for dysthymic disorder, 1:399, 400  
     for juvenile depression, 1:634  
     for kleptomania, 1:647  
     maprotiline and, 2:695  
     monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
     neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
     for obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809  
     for paranoid personality disorder, 2:846–847  
     pimozide and, 2:892  
     for premature ejaculation, 2:910  
     for premenstrual syndrome, 2:913  
     for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
     for schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
     for seasonal affective disorder, 2:1011  
     for selective mutism, 2:1022  
 as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor, 2:1023  
 St. John's wort and, 2:683  
 tacrine and, 2:1144  
 Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study, 2:1177–1178  
 Fluphenazine, 1:484–486  
     medication-induced movement disorders from, 2:701  
     for schizophrenia, 2:998  
 Flurazepam, 1:486–487  
 Fluvoxamine, 1:487–490  
     for body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
     diets for, 1:365  
     donepezil and, 1:389  
     for dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
     for obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809  
     as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor, 2:1023  
     tacrine and, 2:1144  
 Focal seizures. *See* Seizures  
 FOD (Female orgasmic disorder). *See* Female orgasmic disorder (FOD)  
 Folic acid, 2:786t, 788  
 Folie à deux. *See* Shared psychotic disorder  
 Folstein Mini-Mental State Examination. *See* Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE)  
 Food allergies, 1:362, 2:1161  
 Food and Drug Administration (FDA). *See* United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA)  
 Forensic psychology, 2:931  
 Forgetfulness. *See* Memory  
 Formication. *See* Delusions  
 Fragile X syndrome, 1:514, 2:697, 716  
 Fragrances. *See* Scents  
 France, 1:643, 644  
 Frank, R. T., 2:911  
 Free association, 2:925  
 Free base cocaine. *See* Cocaine and related disorders  
 Freeman, Walter, 2:934  
 Freud, Anna, 1:50  
 Freud, Sigmund, 2:822  
     Adler, Alfred and, 2:936  
     biography, 2:930  
     cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:263  
     denial, 1:328–329  
     disease classification, 1:356  
     gender issues in mental health, 1:502  
     group therapy, 1:538  
     histrionic personality disorder, 1:566  
     narcissistic personality disorder, 2:754–755  
     neurosis, 2:771, 772  
     obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:806, 807  
     origin of mental illnesses, 2:822, 826–827

psychoanalysis, 2:925  
 psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:927  
 pyromania, 2:941  
 somatization disorder and, 2:1082  
 on specific phobias, 2:1086  
 Fromm, Erich, 2:926  
 Frontal cortex. *See* Prefrontal cortex  
 Frontal lobe dementia (FLD). *See* Pick's disease  
 Frontal lobes, 1:435, 2:680, 889, 933  
 Frontotemporal dementia. *See* Pick's disease  
 Frottage. *See* Frotteurism  
 Frotteurism, 1:490–491, 2:848  
 FSAD (Female sexual arousal disorder). *See* Female sexual arousal disorder (FSAD)  
 FTND (Fagerstrom Test for Nicotine Dependence), 2:777  
 Fugue. *See* Dissociative fugue  
 Function, executive. *See* Executive function  
 Functional hemispherectomy, 2:1019  
 Functionalism, 2:930

## G

GABA (Gamma-aminobutyric acid). *See* Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)  
 Gabapentin, 1:493–494  
 for seizures, 2:1019  
 for social phobia, 2:1073  
 GAD (Generalized anxiety disorder). *See* Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD)  
 GAF (Global Assessment of Functioning Scale), 1:355  
 Gain  
 primary (*See* Primary gain)  
 secondary (*See* Secondary gain)  
 Galactorrhea, 1:583  
 Galantamine, 1:42, 494–496  
 Galen, 1:451  
 Gall, Franz, 2:770  
 Galvanic skin response (GSR), 1:142  
 Gamblers Anonymous. *See* Self-help groups  
 Gambling  
 pathological (*See* Pathological gambling disorder). *See* Pathological gambling disorder  
 Gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), 1:67–68  
 Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)  
 benzodiazepines and, 1:128–129  
 divalproex sodium and, 1:386  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411, 486, 493

lorazepam and, 1:665  
 as neurotransmitter, 2:772, 774  
 in panic disorder, 2:837  
 sedatives and, 2:1013  
 valerian and, 2:1198  
 zolpidem and, 2:1235  
 Gamma-linoleic acid (GLA), 1:433, 2:914  
 Gangs, 2:866  
 Gans, A., 2:888  
 Ganser, Sigbert, 1:452  
 Ganser's syndrome, 1:451, 452, 453, 454, 496–497  
 GARF (Global Assessment of Relational Functioning), 1:355  
 Gas chromatography/mass spectrometry (GC/MS), 2:1192  
 Gastrointestinal disorders, 1:64  
 Gateway drugs, 1:602  
 Gattefossé, René Maurice, 1:91  
 Gavin, Hector, 1:451  
 Gay persons. *See* Homosexuality  
 GBE (Ginkgo biloba extract). *See* Ginkgo biloba  
 GC/MS (Gas chromatography/mass spectrometry), 2:1192  
 GDS (Geriatric Depression Scale). *See* Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS)  
 Gebhard, Paul, 1:472  
 Gemfibrozil, 2:763  
 Gender dysphoria, 2:849  
 Gender identity disorder, 1:497–501  
 in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:356  
 transvestic fetishism and, 2:1171  
 Gender issues in mental health, 1:501–506  
 agoraphobia, 1:27  
 assertiveness training, 1:99, 100  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:177, 178  
 Children's Apperception Test, 1:225  
 defining gender, 1:501  
 gender role conflict, 1:502  
 gender theories, 1:501–502  
 histrionic personality disorder, 1:566–567  
 intermittent explosive disorder, 1:610, 611  
 men's issues, 1:503–504  
 mental health, 1:504–505  
 narcissistic personality disorder, 2:756  
 nightmares, 2:781  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:808  
 obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803  
 paranoia, 2:841–842  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:988  
 seasonal affective disorder, 2:1010  
 specific phobias, 2:1087  
 Thematic Apperception Test, 2:1150–1151  
 women's issues, 1:502–503

Gender reassignment surgery, 1:497, 498, 499, 500, 2:849, 1171  
 Gender roles. *See* Gender issues in mental health  
 Gendlin, Eugene, 2:872  
 General Neuropsychological Deficit Scale (GNDS), 1:557  
 Generalized amnesia. *See* Amnesia  
 Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD), 1:506–512  
 from abuse, 1:5  
 as anxiety disorder, 1:77  
 causes, 1:508  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
 defined, 1:506  
 demographics, 1:508–509  
 dermatillomania and, 1:342  
 described, 1:506–508  
 diagnosis, 1:509  
 dyspareunia and, 1:397  
 fatigue in, 1:464  
 genetics, 1:515  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 Hamilton Anxiety Scale, 1:559  
 meditation, 2:706  
 modeling, 2:738  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
 vs. panic disorder, 2:836, 838  
 paroxetine for, 2:852  
 Paxil for, 2:860  
 prevention, 1:511  
 prognosis, 1:511  
 riluzole for, 2:970  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1023  
 social phobia and, 2:1069  
 symptoms, 1:508  
 treatments, 1:509–510  
 venlafaxine for, 2:1204  
 Generalized Anxiety Disorder Questionnaire, 1:509  
 Generalized seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Genes. *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders  
 Genetic counseling, 1:518  
 Genetic epidemiology, 1:515–517  
 Genetic factors and mental disorders, 1:512–519  
 abuse, 1:5  
 acute stress disorder, 1:11  
 addiction, 1:15  
 agoraphobia, 1:27, 30  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:32, 35  
 Alzheimer's disease, 1:38, 41–42  
 anorexia nervosa, 1:62–63  
 antisocial personality disorder, 1:73–74  
 Asperger's disorder, 1:94  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 1:105–106  
 autism, 1:111, 112  
 binge drinking, 1:137  
 binge eating, 1:139

bipolar disorder, 1:147  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:154  
 borderline personality disorder, 1:161, 163  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:176, 177, 182  
 causality, 1:513–515  
 clinical applications, 1:517–518  
 cocaine abuse, 1:257  
 conduct disorder, 1:282  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:291  
 cyclothymic disorder, 1:306, 307–308  
 delusional disorder, 1:317  
 dementia, 1:322–323, 327–328  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:341  
 disease concept of chemical dependency, 1:368–369  
 dual diagnosis, 1:395  
 dysthymic disorder, 1:399  
 elimination disorders, 1:416  
 enuresis, 1:425  
 epidemiology, 1:515–517  
 ethical concerns, 1:518  
 factitious disorder, 1:453  
 female orgasmic disorder, 1:469  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:508  
 Internet addiction disorder, 1:612  
 juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:630  
 juvenile depression, 1:633  
 kleptomania, 1:647  
 learning disorders, 1:657  
 major depressive disorder, 2:680  
 mathematics disorder, 2:698  
 mental retardation, 2:716–717  
 narcolepsy, 2:759–760  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 2:766  
 nicotine addiction, 2:777  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:806  
 oppositional defiant disorder, 2:819  
 as origin of mental illnesses, 2:823–824  
 overview, 1:512  
 panic disorder, 2:837  
 paranoid personality disorder, 2:844  
 Pick's disease, 2:888  
 process addiction, 2:916  
 reading disorder, 2:955, 956  
 Rett disorder, 2:964–965  
 reward deficiency syndrome, 2:968–969, 969, 970  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:990  
 schizophrenia, 2:995, 1000–1001  
 schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1007  
 separation anxiety disorder, 2:1038  
 sleepwalking disorder and, 2:1063  
 social phobia, 2:1070  
 specific phobias, 2:1086, 1087  
 stuttering, 2:1123

suicide, 2:1137  
 tic disorders, 2:1158  
 trichotillomania, 2:1180  
 Genetic testing, 1:518  
 Genetics. *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders  
 Genitals, 1:439, 490–491  
 Genograms, 1:461  
 Genomic imprinting, 1:514, 515  
 Gen-XENE. *See* Clorazepate  
 Geodon. *See* Ziprasidone  
 Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS), 1:519–520, 652  
 German chamomile. *See* Chamomile  
 Germany, 1:44, 643, 655, 2:683, 854, 864  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:520–525  
     group therapy, 1:539  
     history, 2:930  
     narcissistic personality disorder, 2:757  
 Gf-Gc theory. *See* Crystallized intelligence; Fluid intelligence  
 GHB (Gamma hydroxybutyrate). *See* Gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB)  
 GHDT (Goodenough Harris Drawing Test), 1:480  
 Gilda's Club, 2:1031  
 Gillberg's criteria, 1:95  
 Gilligan, Carol, 1:502  
 Gillingham, Anna, 2:956  
 Ginkgo biloba, 1:525, 525–526  
     for Alzheimer's disease, 1:44  
     citalopram and, 1:240  
     clorazepate and, 1:251  
     for premenstrual syndrome, 2:914  
     for schizophrenia, 2:999  
     valproic acid and, 2:1201  
 Ginseng, 1:526–529, 527  
 Ginsenosides, 1:527  
 Girls  
     agoraphobia, 1:27  
     anorexia nervosa, 1:62–64, 63  
     Asperger's disorder, 1:95  
     binge eating, 1:139, 139  
     bulimia nervosa, 1:176, 176–182  
     childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:222  
     gender identity disorder, 1:497, 498, 499, 500  
     gender issues in mental health, 1:502  
     juvenile depression, 1:632  
     learning disorders, 1:657  
     mathematics disorder, 2:698  
     pervasive developmental disorders, 2:876  
     Rett disorder, 2:964–967  
     separation anxiety disorder, 2:1039–1040  
     sexual abuse of, 1:3  
     steroid use, 2:1103  
     *See also* Women  
 GLA (Gamma linoleic acid), 1:433, 2:914  
 Glass (drug). *See* Methamphetamine  
 Gleevec. *See* Imatinib  
 Global Assessment of Functioning Scale (GAF), 1:355  
 Global Assessment of Relational Functioning (GARF), 1:355  
 Glucose, 1:336, 361, 610, 2:775, 825, 1017  
 Glutamate, 1:43, 2:970, 971  
 Glutamine, 1:513  
 Glycogen, 1:23  
 GNDS (General Neuropsychological Deficit Scale), 1:557  
 Goffman, Erving, 2:1106–1107  
 Golden, Charles, 1:669  
 Goodenough Harris Drawing Test (GHDT), 1:480  
 Goodwin, Frederick K., 2:693  
 Goserelin acetate, 1:441, 2:864  
 Graded exposure, 1:444, 445, 446, 448  
 Graham, Billy, 1:472  
 Granadilla. *See* Passionflower  
 Grand mal seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Grandiose delusions. *See* Delusions  
 Grandiosity, 1:315, 320, 321, 2:753, 756, 757  
 Grapefruit juice, 1:206, 361, 365, 2:891, 1043, 1179  
*Great and Desperate Cures, The Rise and Decline of Psychosurgery and Other Radical Treatments for Mental Illness* (Valenstein), 2:934  
 Greenberg, Leslie, 2:872  
 Grief, 1:529–531  
     counseling, 1:531–533  
     dual diagnosis and, 1:395  
     group therapy, 1:541  
     Internet-based therapy, 1:616  
     interpersonal therapy, 1:619  
     support groups, 2:1139  
     *See also* Bereavement; Complicated grief disorder; Death and dying  
 Grief counseling, 1:531–533  
 Group behavior, 1:286, 329  
 Group homes, 1:533–536  
     for addiction, 1:17  
     for antisocial personality disorder, 1:75  
     for cocaine treatment, 1:259  
     for conduct disorder treatment, 1:283  
     crisis housing, 1:301–302  
     for detoxification, 1:346, 349  
     for mental retardation, 2:716  
     multisystemic therapy, 2:746  
     for opioid dependence, 2:817  
     for pervasive developmental disorders, 2:877  
 Group therapy, 1:536–541  
     acute stress disorder, 1:13  
     adjustment disorders, 1:20  
     Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
     avoidant personality disorder, 1:119

borderline personality disorder, 1:163  
 cocaine abuse, 1:260  
 conversion disorder, 1:289  
 dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
 detoxification, 1:350  
 dissociative identity disorder, 1:383  
 exhibitionism, 1:441  
 family psychoeducation, 1:458  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:524  
 histrionic personality disorder, 1:568  
 as intervention, 1:623  
 panic disorder, 2:839  
 paranoid personality disorder, 2:846  
 person-centered therapy in, 2:873  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:901, 904, 905  
 psychoanalysis, 2:927  
 psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:928  
 psychotherapy, 2:937  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:992  
 schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
 social phobia, 2:1073–1074  
 specific phobias, 2:1089  
 vs. support groups, 2:1138  
 vaginismus, 2:1194  
 Growth rates, 1:55, 107, 362, 466–467, 476  
 GSR (Galvanic skin response), 1:142  
 Guanadrel, 1:485, 2:870, 882  
 Guanethidine, 2:695, 870, 882, 920  
 tranylcypromine and, 2:1174  
 trifluoperazine and, 2:1184  
 Guanfacine, 2:1161  
 Guided fantasy. *See* Guided imagery therapy; Visualization  
 Guided imagery therapy, 1:542–544  
 Guillain-Barré syndrome, 1:288  
 Guilt, survivor's. *See* Survivor's guilt  
 Guns. *See* Firearms  
 Gustatory hallucinations, 1:546

## H

Habit reversal, 2:1160, 1181  
 Habit-reversal therapy, 1:343  
 Habitrol, 2:778  
 Hair, 1:259, 343, 2:1180, 1180–1182  
 Hair pulling. *See* Trichotillomania  
 Halcion. *See* Triazolam  
 Haldol. *See* Haloperidol  
 Halfway homes. *See* Group homes  
 Hall, Calvin S., 2:757  
 Hallucinations, 1:545–546  
     from addiction, 1:16  
     in alcohol-related disorders, 1:33, 34  
     in Alzheimer's disease, 1:40  
     from amantadine, 1:46

from amphetamines, 1:58, 59  
 in bipolar disorder, 1:147  
 in borderline personality disorder, 1:162  
 in brief psychotic disorder, 1:172  
 cocaine-induced, 1:255, 257  
 in delirium, 1:311, 312, 313  
 in delusional disorder, 1:315, 316, 317  
 in dementia, 1:324  
 diazepam and, 1:360  
 in factitious disorder, 1:452  
 from grief, 1:530  
 from inhalants, 1:603  
 in Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:645  
 mesoridazine for, 2:719  
 from methamphetamine, 2:724  
 in narcolepsy, 2:760  
 as positive symptoms, 2:899  
 in psychosis, 2:931, 932  
 in schizoaffective disorder, 2:987, 988  
 in schizophrenia, 2:995, 996  
 in schizophreniform disorder, 2:1002  
 substance-induced psychotic disorder, 2:1128  
 withdrawal and, 1:347  
*See also* Hallucinogens and related disorders  
 Hallucinogens and related disorders, 1:547–551  
     addiction, 1:16  
     cannabis and, 1:202  
     ecstasy and, 1:403  
     paranoia from, 2:842  
     *See also* Hallucinations  
 Haloperidol, 1:551–554  
     for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43  
     for autism, 1:113  
     for brief psychotic disorder, 1:174  
     for Capgras syndrome, 1:204  
     carbamazepine and, 1:205  
     for delirium, 1:314  
     for delusional disorder, 1:318  
     for dementia, 1:326  
     for detoxification, 1:347  
     fluoxetine and, 1:483  
     medication-induced movement disorders from, 2:701  
     neuroleptic malignant syndrome from, 2:766  
     pimozide and, 2:891  
     for schizoaffective disorder, 2:988  
     for schizophrenia, 2:998  
     for stereotypic movement disorder, 2:1101  
     for tic disorders, 2:1161  
 Halstead Impairment Index (HII), 1:557  
 Halstead, Ward, 1:554  
 Halstead-Reitan Battery, 1:554–558, 2:771  
 Halstead-Wapman Aphasia Screening Test, 1:556  
 Hamilton Anxiety Scale (HAS), 1:509, 558–560

Hamilton Depression Inventory (HDI), 1:560  
 Hamilton Depression Scale (HDS), 1:400, 560–561  
 Hamilton, Max, 1:558–559, 560  
*Handbuch der Psychiatrie* (Kraepelin), 1:356  
 Hand-eye coordination. *See* Motor skills  
 Hangover effect, 1:486  
 Harassment. *See* Bullying  
 Hardening of the arteries. *See* Arteriosclerosis  
 Hare psychopathy checklist, 1:561–563, 564  
 Hare Psychopathy Clinic, 1:73  
 Hare, Robert, 1:73  
 Harmaline, 2:855  
 Harmalol, 2:855  
 Harman, 2:855  
 Harmine, 2:855  
 HAS (Hamilton Anxiety Scale). *See* Hamilton Anxiety Scale (HAS)  
 Hashish. *See* Cannabis and related disorders  
 Hatha yoga. *See* Yoga  
 Hay-fever medications. *See* Antihistamines  
 HCFA (Health Care Financing Administration), 2:795  
 HCH (Health Care for the Homeless), 1:571–572  
 HCR-20 (Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20). *See* Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20 (HCR-20)  
 HDI (Hamilton Depression Inventory), 1:560  
 HDS (Hamilton Depression Scale). *See* Hamilton Depression Scale (HDS)  
 Head injuries. *See* Head trauma  
 Head trauma  
     Alzheimer's disease and, 1:39  
     amnesia from, 1:49, 52, 373  
     dementia and, 1:324  
     exhibitionism from, 1:440  
     neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
     obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:806  
     seizures from, 2:1017  
     single photon emission computed tomography and, 2:1056  
 Headaches  
     barbiturates for, 1:121  
     caffeine for, 1:195, 197  
     citalopram for, 1:239  
     fluoxetine for, 1:482  
     Paxil for, 2:860  
     *See also* Migraine headaches  
 Healing, 1:419–423  
 Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA), 2:795  
 Health Care for the Homeless (HCH), 1:571–572

- Health Maintenance Organization Act, 2:690
- Health maintenance organizations (HMO). *See* Managed care
- Health psychology, 2:931
- Hearing voices. *See* Hallucinations
- Heart. *See* Cardiovascular system
- Heavy metals, 1:322, 326
- Hefftner, Arthur, 1:547
- Helical computed tomography. *See* Computed tomography (CT)
- Heller, Joseph, 1:158
- Heller, Thomas, 1:222
- Heller's syndrome. *See* Childhood disintegrative disorder (CDD)
- Hellerwork, 1:157, 158, 160
- Helping Families to Change* (Satir), 1:460
- Helplessness, 1:331  
*See also* Learned helplessness
- Hemiballismus, 2:745
- Hemorrhagic stroke. *See* Stroke
- Hemorrhaging, 1:528
- Hemp. *See* Cannabis and related disorders
- Henbane, 1:48
- Heparin, 1:526
- Herbal ecstasy, 1:404
- Herbal medicine  
 adjustment disorders, 1:21  
 Alzheimer's disease, 1:44  
 aromatherapy, 1:91  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:181  
 chamomile, 1:218–220  
 citalopram and, 1:240  
 clorazepate and, 1:251  
 energy therapies, 1:421  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
 ginkgo biloba, 1:525–526  
 ginseng, 1:526–528  
 insomnia, 1:606  
 kava kava, 1:642–644  
 lavender, 1:655–656  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 nicotine addiction, 2:779  
 obesity, 2:799  
 passionflower, 2:854–855  
 premenstrual syndrome, 2:914  
 rosemary, 2:981  
 St. John's wort, 2:1091–1093  
 valerian, 2:1198–1200
- Herbs. *See* Herbal medicine; *names of specific herbs*
- Heredity. *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders
- Heritability. *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders
- Hermispheres, brain. *See* Cerebral hemispheres
- Heroin  
 acupuncture for, 2:814  
 addiction, 1:16, 2:774  
 cocaine and, 1:255, 260  
 detoxification, 1:346, 347–348, 349  
 ecstasy and, 1:406
- methadone and, 2:721, 722  
 as opioid, 2:813, 814–815  
 urine drug screening for, 2:1191
- HFA (High-functioning autism), 1:95
- Hiccups, 1:230
- Hierarchy, 1:444, 537, 2:808–809, 1140
- High. *See* Euphoria; Manic episode
- High blood pressure. *See* Hypertension
- High-functioning autism (HFA), 1:95
- HII (Halstead Impairment Index), 1:557
- HIP (Hypnotic Induction Profile), 1:375
- Hippocampus, 2:902, 995, 1109
- Hippocrates, 2:822, 823, 922
- Hismanal. *See* Astemizole
- Hispanics. *See* Latinos
- Histamine, 1:71, 366, 2:782
- Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20 (HCR-20), 1:**563–565**
- History  
 psychology, 2:929–931  
 psychosurgery, 2:932–934
- History of mental illness theories. *See* Origin of mental illnesses
- Histrionic personality disorder (HPD), 1:**565–569**  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:179  
 chronic pain and, 1:233  
 vs. dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
 factitious disorder and, 1:453  
 neurotransmitters in, 2:774  
 pathological gambling disorder and, 2:857  
 as personality disorder, 2:875
- HIV (Human immunodeficiency virus)  
 dementia in, 1:322, 322, 324, 326  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:617, 619  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:825  
 stigma, 2:1105, 1106
- HKD (Hyperkinetic disorder). *See* Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
- HMO (Health maintenance organizations). *See* Managed care
- Hoarding, 2:801, 802, 805
- Hoffman, Alfred, 1:547
- Hogarty, Gerald, 1:458
- Holidays, drug, 1:55
- Holism, 1:521
- Holistic medicine, 1:91, 2:707
- Holistic model, 1:358
- Holocaust, 1:329
- Home care, 1:98
- Homelessness, 1:**569–573**  
 case management and, 1:208  
 community mental health and, 1:273, 274
- co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291, 292
- deinstitutionalization and, 1:310
- dual diagnosis and, 1:395
- hospitalization and, 1:573
- Homeopathy, 1:197
- Homeostatis, 1:460, 461
- Homocysteine, 1:39
- Homosexuality, 1:178, 358, 2:681
- Hope, 1:536
- Hormone replacement therapy (HRT), 1:473
- Hormones  
 depression and, 2:782  
 for exhibitionism, 1:441  
 gender identity disorder and, 1:498  
 late-life depression and, 1:651  
 for pedophilia, 2:864  
 for postpartum psychosis, 2:1006  
 in premenstrual syndrome, 2:913  
 for sexual sadism, 2:1051  
 steroids and, 2:1102  
*See also names of specific hormones*
- Horney, Karen, 2:772
- Horticulture therapy, 1:300
- Hospital addiction. *See* Factitious disorder
- Hospitalization, 1:**573–575**  
 after family psychoeducation, 1:458  
 vs. assertive community treatment, 1:98–99  
 for borderline personality disorder, 1:163  
 for bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
 case management and, 1:207, 208  
 for cocaine abuse, 1:260  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
 vs. community mental health, 1:273  
 conversion disorder, 1:289–290  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291  
 vs. crisis housing, 1:301–302  
 crisis intervention and, 1:303–304  
 vs. deinstitutionalization, 1:309–310  
 for dementia, 1:326  
 for detoxification, 1:347–348, 349, 350  
 for dual diagnosis, 1:395  
 homelessness and, 1:571  
 involuntary (*See* Involuntary hospitalization)  
 multisystemic therapy, 2:746  
 narcissistic personality disorder, 2:758  
 for opioid dependence, 2:817  
 for opioid withdrawal, 2:818  
 for schizophrenia, 2:999  
*See also* Involuntary hospitalization

- House-tree-person test (HTP), 1:480, 481, **575–576**
- Housing, crisis. *See* Crisis housing
- HPA (Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis), 1:336
- HPD (Histrionic personality disorder). *See* Histrionic personality disorder (HPD)
- HRT (Hormone replacement therapy), 1:473
- HSDD (Hypoactive sexual desire disorder). *See* Hypoactive sexual desire disorder (HSDD)
- HTP (House-tree-person test). *See* House-tree-person test (HTP)
- HUD (U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development), 1:260, 274
- Huffing. *See* Inhalants and related disorders
- Hull House, 1:538, 2:1079
- Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). *See* HIV (Human immunodeficiency virus)
- Human potential movement, 2:871, 872
- Humanistic psychology, 1:537, 2:873, 936
- Humor therapy, 1:235, 2:683, 951, 1115
- Humors (bodily fluids), 2:822
- Huntington's disease, 1:324, 513, 518, 2:745, 824, 842
- Huxley, Aldous, 1:579
- Hydration, 1:465
- Hydrocephalus, 1:322
- Hydrochlorothiazide, 2:918, 919
- Hydrocodone, 1:16
- Hydrogen, 2:673, 674
- Hydromorphone, 1:248, 2:722, 813, 1191
- Hydrotherapy, 1:13, 510
- Hylorel. *See* Guanadrel
- Hyperactivity. *See* Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
- Hyperarousal, 1:12, 2:903, 905
- Hyperemesis gravidarum, 1:8
- Hypericin, 2:1092
- Hypericum. *See* St. John's wort
- Hypericum perforatum*. *See* St. John's wort
- Hyperkinetic disorder (HKD). *See* Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
- Hyperkinetic movement disorders. *See* Movement disorders
- Hyperphagia, 1:514, 515, 2:1010
- Hyperplastic obesity. *See* Obesity
- Hypersexuality, 1:645
- Hypersomnia, 1:**576–578**
- in bipolar disorder, 1:146–147
  - in delirium, 1:311
  - fatigue and, 1:463–464
- in Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:645
- in seasonal affective disorder, 2:1010
- Hypertension
- adrenaline and, 1:22
  - alcohol-related disorders and, 1:34
  - Alzheimer's disease and, 1:39
  - amoxapine and, 1:54
  - amphetamines and, 1:56, 57
  - beta blockers for, 1:134
  - clonidine for, 1:248, 249
  - diets for, 1:364
  - ginseng and, 1:528
  - imipramine and, 1:596
  - isocarboxazid and, 1:627
  - meditation for, 2:706, 709
  - monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743, 744
  - nortriptyline and, 2:784
  - phenelzine and, 2:882
  - propranolol for, 2:918, 919
  - protriptyline and, 2:921
  - stroke and, 2:1116–1120
  - tranylcypromine and, 2:1174
- See also* Antihypertensives
- Hyperthermia. *See* Body temperature
- Hyperthyroidism, 1:148, 312, 2:717, 719, 825
- Hypertrophic obesity. *See* Obesity
- Hypervigilance, 1:12, 509
- Hypnagogic experiences, 1:545
- Hypnagogic hallucinations. *See* Hallucinations
- Hypnopompic experiences, 1:545
- Hypnosis. *See* Hypnotherapy
- Hypnotherapy, 1:**578–582**
- agoraphobia, 1:30
  - alcohol-related disorders, 1:34
  - chronic pain, 1:234
  - conversion disorder, 1:286, 290
  - covert sensitization, 1:297
  - depersonalization disorder, 1:336, 338
  - dermatotillomania, 1:343
  - dissociation, 1:371, 380
  - dissociative amnesia, 1:374, 375
  - dissociative disorders, 1:373
  - dissociative fugue, 1:378–379
  - dissociative identity disorder, 1:383
  - enuresis, 1:426
  - generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510
  - guided imagery therapy, 1:542
  - meditation, 2:707
  - nicotine addiction, 2:779
  - pain disorder, 2:833
  - panic disorder, 2:840
  - vaginismus, 2:1194
- Hypnotic Induction Profile (HIP), 1:375
- Hypnotics
- amnesia from, 1:49
  - amoxapine and, 1:54
  - benzodiazepines, 1:128, 129
- clonazepam and, 1:247
- delirium and, 1:314
- diphenhydramine and, 1:367
- estazolam and, 1:432
- for insomnia, 1:605
- loxapine and, 1:667
- pimozide and, 2:892
- protriptyline and, 2:921, 922
- as sedatives, 2:1013
- for sleep terror disorder, 2:1063
- venlafaxine and, 2:1205
- withdrawal, 1:347
- See also names of specific hypnotics*; Sedatives and related drugs
- Hypoactive sexual desire disorder (HSDD), 1:**582–585**
- male orgasmic disorder and, 2:687
  - vs. sexual aversion disorder, 2:1045
- Hypochondriasis, 1:**585–589**
- cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265
  - vs. hallucinations, 1:546
  - separation anxiety disorder and, 2:1039
  - as somatization and somatoform disorder, 2:1081
  - undifferentiated somatoform disorder and, 2:1190
- Hypoglycemia, 1:527
- Hypogonadism, 1:429, 2:686, 687, 688
- Hypokalemia, 1:178, 312
- Hypokinetic movement disorders. *See* Movement disorders
- Hypomania, 1:**589–592**
- in bipolar disorder, 1:146, 147, 148, 149
  - catatonic disorders and, 1:213
  - cyclothymic disorder and, 1:305–308
  - in juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:629
  - light therapy, 1:661–662
  - manic episode, 2:693
  - in seasonal affective disorder, 2:1010
- Hypomanic episode. *See* Manic episode
- Hyponatremia, 2:852
- Hypopnea, 2:897
- Hypotension
- chlorpromazine and, 1:231
  - detoxification and, 1:348
  - fatigue from, 1:463
  - from ginseng, 1:528
  - from haloperidol, 1:552
  - from nefazodone, 2:762
  - olanzapine and, 2:812
  - risperidone and, 2:974
- Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis (HPA), 1:336
- Hypothalamus, 1:165, 390, 577, 645
- Hypothermia. *See* Body temperature
- Hypothyroidism, 1:312, 341, 399, 2:825
- Hypoxyphilia, 2:1048, 1049
- Hysteria. *See* Conversion disorder

Hysterical aphonia, 1:287, 290  
 Hysterical neurosis. *See* Conversion disorder  
 Hysterical pseudodementia. *See* Ganser's syndrome

**I**

Ibuprofen, 1:197, 389, 2:920  
**ICD (International Classification of Diseases).** *See* International Classification of Diseases (ICD)  
 Ice (drug). *See* Methamphetamine  
**ICIT (Intracavernous therapy),** 1:430  
 Id, 1:328–329  
**IDEA (Individuals with Disabilities Education Act),** 2:956, 967  
 Idealization, 1:161, 162, 163  
 Ideas of reference, 2:841  
 Identity disorders. *See* Dissociative identity disorder (DID); Gender identity disorder  
 Idiographic interpretation, 2:1152  
 Idiopathic hypersomnia, 1:576  
**IED (Intermittent explosive disorder).** *See* Intermittent explosive disorder (IED)  
**IEP (Individual education plans),** 2:698, 956  
*See also* Special education  
 Ifosfamide, 1:88  
**IIEF (International Index of Erectile Function),** 1:430  
**ILAE (International League Against Epilepsy),** 2:1016  
 Illegal drugs. *See names of specific illegal drugs*  
 Illicit drug use. *See* Substance abuse  
 Illusion of doubles. *See* Capgras syndrome  
 Illusion of false recognition. *See* Capgras syndrome  
 Illusions, 1:545  
 Imagery exercises, 1:78, 79, 80, 2:1040, 1140  
 Imaginal desensitization. *See* Exposure treatment  
 Imaginal exposure. *See* Exposure treatment  
**Imaging studies, 1:593–594**  
 Alzheimer's disease, 1:41  
 conversion disorder, 1:287  
*See also* Brain imaging studies; names of specific imaging techniques  
 Imatinib, 1:88  
**Imipramine, 1:594–597**  
 for acute stress disorder, 1:13  
 amoxapine and, 1:53  
 amphetamines and, 1:57

for attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:107  
 carbamazepine and, 1:204  
 clomipramine and, 1:244  
 for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340t  
 for dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
 for enuresis, 1:426  
 for generalized anxiety disorder, 1:509–510  
 juvenile depression and, 1:634  
 olanzapine and, 2:812  
 protriptyline and, 2:920  
 quetiapine and, 2:947  
 zaleplon and, 2:1232  
 zolpidem and, 2:1236  
**Imitation.** *See* Modeling  
**Imitrex.** *See* Sumatriptan  
**Immunizations.** *See* Vaccines  
**Immunoassay, 2:1191–1192**  
**Impotence.** *See* Erectile dysfunction (ED)  
**Impulse-control disorders, 1:597–598**  
 vs. antisocial personality disorder, 2:939–940  
 dermatillomania, 1:342, 343  
*in Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 1:356*  
 exhibitionism, 1:440  
 pedophilia and, 2:863  
 process addiction and, 2:915–916  
**Impulsivity**  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:13  
 antisocial personality disorder and, 1:74, 75, 76  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:105, 106  
 autism and, 1:110  
 borderline personality disorder and, 1:161  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:180  
 bullying and, 1:185  
 ecstasy and, 1:405  
 executive function and, 1:435  
 process addiction and, 2:915–918  
**In vivo exposure, 1:443, 444, 445, 446**  
**Inattention, 1:105–109**  
*See also* Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder  
**Incarceration**  
 antisocial personality disorder and, 1:74  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:292  
 dual diagnosis and, 1:395  
 Ganser's syndrome and, 1:496  
 inhalant use during, 1:603  
 mental health courts and, 2:712–714  
 psychosurgery and, 2:933, 933  
**Incest, 1:3, 583**  
**Incontinence**  
 fecal (*See* Encopresis)  
 urinary (*See* Enuresis)

Indemnity insurance, 2:690, 692  
**Inderal.** *See* Propranolol  
**Inderide.** *See* Propranolol  
**India, 1:419, 420, 457, 2:1227**  
**Indiana University, 1:472**  
**Indinavir, 2:1092**  
**Individual education plans (IEP),** 2:698, 956  
*See also* Special education  
**Individual psychology, 2:936**  
**Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA),** 2:956, 967  
**Individuation, 1:294, 336**  
**Indocin.** *See* Indomethacin  
**Indomethacin, 2:892**  
**Induction, 1:580**  
**Industrial and organizational psychology, 2:931**  
**Infants.** *See* Children  
**Infections, viral.** *See* Viral infections  
**Infectious diseases, 1:312, 322, 326, 327, 463**  
**Infectious insanity.** *See* Shared psychotic disorder  
**Infertility, 1:197**  
**Information recall, 1:49, 50**  
**Information sharing, 1:536, 2:1137**  
**Informed consent, 1:598–600**  
 for clinical trials, 1:244  
 for electroconvulsive therapy, 1:409, 411  
 vs. involuntary hospitalization, 1:625  
**Inhalants and related disorders, 1:16, 600, 600–604**  
**Inheritance.** *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders  
**Inhibited sexual desire.** *See* Hypoactive sexual desire disorder (HSDD)  
**Inhibited sexual orgasm.** *See* Female orgasmic disorder  
**Inhibition, behavioral.** *See* Behavioral inhibition  
**Inkblot test.** *See* Rorschach technique  
**Innate temperament.** *See* Temperament  
**Inositol, 2:1098**  
**Inpatient care.** *See* Hospitalization  
**Insight, 1:587**  
**Insomnia, 1:604–607**  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:12, 13  
 alcohol-related disorders and, 1:33  
 barbiturates for, 1:121  
 benzodiazepines and, 1:129  
 breathing-related sleep disorder and, 1:168, 170  
 buspirone and, 1:191  
 chloral hydrate for, 1:226, 227  
 chronic pain and, 1:234  
 circadian rhythm sleep disorder and, 1:236  
 citalopram and, 1:239  
 cocaine and, 1:257

- cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
diphenhydramine for, 1:366  
as dyssomnia, 2:1057, 1058  
estazolam for, 1:431–432  
fatigue from, 1:463  
flurazepam for, 1:486–487  
vs. hypersomnia, 1:576, 577  
hypnotherapy, 1:578  
kava kava for, 1:643  
lavender for, 1:655  
light therapy, 1:659  
meditation, 2:706  
opioid dependence and, 2:816  
passionflower for, 2:854  
prognosis, 2:1061  
quazepam for, 2:945  
temazepam for, 2:1147  
triazolam for, 2:1178–1179  
valerian for, 2:1198–1199  
zaleplon for, 2:1231  
zolpidem for, 2:1235
- Institute for Sex Research, 1:472  
Instruction directives. *See* Advance directives  
Insulin, 1:312, 2:743, 787  
Intake evaluation. *See* Assessment and diagnosis  
Integration, psychotherapeutic. *See* Psychotherapy integration  
Integrative medicine, 2:707  
Intellectual abuse, 1:3  
Intelligence  
  antisocial personality disorder and, 1:73, 74  
  Asperger's disorder and, 1:95, 96  
  autism and, 1:112, 114  
  developmental coordination disorder and, 1:351, 352  
  house-tree-person test and, 1:576  
  learning disorders and, 1:656, 658  
  mental retardation and, 2:714–716  
*See also* Crystallized intelligence; Fluid intelligence; Intelligence tests  
Intelligence quotient (IQ). *See* Intelligence  
Intelligence tests, 1:**607–609**, 608  
  Luria-Nebraska  
    Neuropsychological Battery and, 1:669  
*See also names of specific intelligence tests*  
Intensive case management, 1:207, 208  
Intention tremors. *See* Tremors  
Interactions, drug. *See names of specific drugs*  
Intercourse, painful. *See* Dyspareunia  
Intermittent explosive disorder (IED), 1:**609–612**, 2:849  
  as impulse-control disorder, 1:597  
  road rage and, 2:978  
  self mutilation and, 2:1035  
Internal suffocation alarm, 2:837  
Internalizing disorders, 1:503, 504  
International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP), 2:831  
*International Classification of Diseases (ICD)*  
  agoraphobia, 1:28, 30  
  Asperger's disorder, 1:94, 95  
  conversion disorder, 1:286, 287  
  *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* and, 1:356, 357, 2:753  
  obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:801–804  
  premenstrual syndrome, 2:911  
International Human Learning Resource Network, 1:460  
International Index of Erectile Function (IIEF), 1:430  
International League Against Epilepsy (ILAE), 2:1016  
Internet, 1:183, 452–453, 456, 465  
Internet addiction disorder, 1:597–598, **612–615**, 613  
Internet-based therapy, 1:**615–617**, 2:1138  
Interoceptive exposure, 1:445  
Interpersonal psychotherapy. *See* Interpersonal therapy (IPT)  
Interpersonal relations  
  in avoidant personality disorder, 1:117–118  
  in borderline personality disorder, 1:161, 162, 163  
  in dependent personality disorder, 1:331–332  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:355  
dyspareunia and, 1:396, 397  
figure drawings and, 1:479  
gender issues in mental health, 1:503, 504  
group therapy, 1:536, 537–538  
in histrionic personality disorder, 1:565, 568  
in obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:801–804  
in panic disorder, 2:837  
in schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1006–1009  
in sexual aversion disorder, 2:1044  
shared psychotic disorder and, 2:1054–1055  
Interpersonal therapy (IPT), 1:**617–622**  
  adjustment disorders, 1:20  
  dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
  juvenile depression, 1:634  
  postpartum depression, 2:908  
  schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
  STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
Intervention, 1:**622–624**  
  addiction, 1:17  
  advance directives and, 1:24–25  
  chronic pain, 1:235  
conduct disorder, 1:282, 283  
co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:292–293  
disease concept of chemical dependency and, 1:369  
dissociative identity disorder, 1:383  
dual diagnosis, 1:395  
dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
for feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, 1:466  
fetal alcohol syndrome, 1:476  
gender identity disorder, 1:498  
mixed receptive-expressive language disorder, 2:735  
multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
neglect, 2:765  
*See also* Crisis intervention; names of specific interventions  
Intoxicating pepper. *See* Kava kava  
Intoxication  
  alcohol, 1:31, 32  
  alcohol idiosyncratic (*See* Alcohol idiosyncratic intoxication)  
  amphetamine, 1:57, 58, 59, 60  
  from anti-anxiety drugs, 1:69  
  binge drinking and, 1:138  
  caffeine, 1:195, 196, 197, 198  
  cannabis, 1:200, 201  
  cocaine, 1:255, 257, 259, 260  
  delirium from, 1:314  
  hallucinogen, 1:549, 550–551  
  inhaלant, 1:600, 601, 602, 603  
  lithium carbonate, 1:663  
  opioid, 2:814–815, 816, 817  
  phencyclidine, 2:878, 879, 880  
  sedative, 2:1014  
  substance-induced anxiety disorder and, 2:1126, 1127  
  substance-induced psychotic disorder and, 2:1128  
  water, 1:406  
Intracavernous therapy (ICIT), 1:430  
Intracerebral hemorrhage. *See* Stroke  
Intraurethral therapy, 1:430  
Introjection, 1:294–295  
Introns, 1:514  
Introversion, 1:117, 515, 2:903, 990–993  
Involuntary encopresis. *See* Encopresis  
Involuntary enuresis. *See* Enuresis  
Involuntary hospitalization, 1:**624–627**  
  advance directives and, 1:24  
  case management and, 1:207  
  criteria, 1:573  
Involuntary movements. *See* Movements  
Iodine, 1:278, 279  
Ionamin. *See* Phentermine  
Iproniazid, 1:239  
IPT (Interpersonal therapy). *See* Interpersonal therapy (IPT)  
IQ (Intelligence quotient). *See* Intelligence

Iran, 1:286  
 Irinotecan, 1:88  
 Iron, 2:789, 886, 963  
 Ischemic stroke. *See Stroke*  
 Ismelin. *See Guanethidine*  
 Isocarboxazid, 1:239, 364, **627–628**,  
 2:741, 742  
 Isokinetics, 1:438  
 Isometrics, 1:438  
 Isoniacid, 1:205  
 Isoniazid, 1:36, 385, 387, 2:1179  
 Isoproterenol, 2:701–702  
 Isotonics, 1:438  
 Isotretinoin, 1:633  
 Itraconazole, 1:36, 192, 239  
 Iyengar, B. K. S., 2:1228  
 Iyengar yoga. *See Yoga*

**J**

Jacobson, Edmund, 2:1141  
 Jamison, Kay Redfield, 2:693  
 Japanese meridian acupuncture. *See Acupuncture*  
 Jealousy, 1:315, 320, 321  
 Jellinek, E. M., 1:15  
 Jet lag, 1:236–237, 238, 659  
 Jin Shin Jyutsu. *See Bodywork therapies*  
 Jnana yoga. *See Yoga*  
 Johns Hopkins University, 1:358–359  
 Johnson, Virginia, 1:471  
 Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organizations, 1:573  
 Jois, K. Pattabhi, 2:1229  
 Journal therapy. *See Creative therapies*  
 Jung, Carl, 2:772, 822, 827, 979  
 Juvenile bipolar disorder,  
**1:629–632**  
 Juvenile depression, 1:**632–635**  
 Juvenile manic-depressive illness. *See Juvenile bipolar disorder*

**K**

Kabat-Zinn, Jon, 2:708  
 K-ABC (Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children). *See Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children (K-ABC)*  
 Kahlbaum, Karl Ludwig, 1:211  
 KAIT (Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test). *See Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test (KAIT)*  
 Kanfer, Frederick, 2:1026  
 Kanner, Leo, 1:110  
 Karma yoga. *See Yoga*

Kaufman Adolescent and Adult Intelligence Test (KAIT),  
**1:637–639**, 640  
 Kaufman, Alan S., 1:637, 639, 641  
 Kaufman Assessment Battery for Children (K-ABC), 1:637, **639–640**  
 Kaufman, Nadeen L., 1:637, 639, 641  
 Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure (K-SNAP),  
**1:640–642**  
 Kava kava, 1:**642–645**, 643  
 clorazepate and, 1:251  
 lorazepam and, 1:666  
 for panic disorder, 2:840  
 quazepam and, 2:946  
 Kavalactones, 1:643  
 Kavapyrones, 1:643  
 Kearney, Albert, 1:297  
 Kegel exercises, 1:469, 470  
 Kemadrin. *See Procyclidine*  
 Kempe, C. Henry, 1:3  
 Kennedy, John F., 1:309  
 Keppra. *See Levetiracetam*  
 Kernberg, Otto, 2:754, 755, 756  
 Ketaject. *See Ketamine*  
 Ketamine, 1:67, 68, 406, 2:877, 878,  
 902  
 Ketalar. *See Ketamine*  
 Ketoconazole  
 alprazolam and, 1:36  
 citalopram and, 1:239  
 donepezil and, 1:389  
 galantamine and, 1:495  
 quazepam and, 2:946  
 quetiapine and, 2:947  
 ziprasidone and, 2:1234  
 Ketogenic diet, 2:1019  
 KFD (Kinetic Family Drawing technique), 1:480, 481  
 Khat. *See Cathinone*  
 Ki, 1:159, 421  
 Kiddie Schedule for Affective Disorders and Schizophrenia for School-Age Children (K-SADS), 1:630  
 Kinetic Family Drawing technique (KFD), 1:480, 481  
 Kinetic School Drawing technique (KSD), 1:480  
 Kinsey, Alfred, 1:472  
 Klein, Melanie, 2:827, 894  
 Kleine-Levin syndrome (KLS), 1:576,  
 577, 578, **645–646**  
 Kleptomania, 1:**646–648**  
 as impulse-control disorder, 1:597  
 as process addiction, 2:916, 917  
 Klinefelter's syndrome, 1:583, 584,  
 2:687  
 Klonopin. *See Clonazepam*  
 KLS (Kleine-Levin syndrome). *See Kleine-Levin syndrome (KLS)*  
 Knable, Michael B., 2:996  
 Kohlberg, Lawrence, 1:502  
 Kohut, Heinz, 2:754, 755  
 Korean ginseng. *See Ginseng*

Korean hand acupuncture. *See Acupuncture*  
 Koro, 1:174  
 Korsakoff, S. S., 2:1218  
 Korsakoff syndrome. *See Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome*  
 Korsakoff's psychosis. *See Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome*  
 Kovacs, Maria, 1:220  
 Kraepelin, Emil, 1:356  
 Krieger, Dolores, 1:420  
 Kripalu yoga. *See Yoga*  
 K-SADS (Kiddie Schedule for Affective Disorders and Schizophrenia for School-Age Children), 1:630  
 KSD (Kinetic School Drawing technique), 1:480  
 K-SNAP (Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure). *See Kaufman Short Neurological Assessment Procedure (K-SNAP)*  
 Kübler-Ross, Elisabeth, 1:530  
 Kundalini, 1:420  
 Kunz, Dora, 1:420

**L**

LAAM (Levo-alpha-acetylmethadol), 1:347, 349, 2:817  
 Labeling, 1:329–330, 354  
 Labile affect. *See Affect*  
 Laboratory tests. *See Urine drug screening*  
 Lamictal. *See Lamotrigine*  
 Lamotrigine, 1:149, **649–650**  
 divalproex sodium and, 1:387  
 for seizures, 2:1019  
 in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 valproic acid and, 2:1201  
 Language disorders. *See Communication skills and disorders*  
 Language skills. *See Communication skills and disorders*  
 Lanoxin. *See Digoxin*  
 Lanugo, 1:65  
 Largactil. *See Chlorpromazine*  
 Larodopa. *See Levodopa (L-dopa)*  
 Late-life depression, 1:**650–654**  
 Late-onset Alzheimer's disease. *See Alzheimer's disease (AD)*  
 Latinos  
 agoraphobia, 2:838  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:179  
 chamomile, 1:218  
 family psychoeducation, 1:458  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:504  
 generalized anxiety disorder,  
 1:507–508  
 histrionic personality disorder,  
 1:566

- panic disorder, 2:838  
suicide, 2:681, 1134
- Laughing gas.* *See* Nitrous oxide
- Laughter.* *See* Humor therapy
- Lavandula officinalis.* *See* Lavender
- Lavender, 1:655, **655–656**  
in aromatherapy, 1:91  
chamomile and, 1:218
- Laxatives, 1:176, 178, 416, 418
- L-dopa (Levodopa).* *See* Levodopa (L-dopa)
- Lead poisoning, 1:106, 2:717, 886, 887
- Learned behavior, 1:15, 27
- Learned helplessness, 2:679–680
- Learning disabilities. *See* Learning disorders
- Learning disorders, 1:**656–659**, 657, 658  
in Asperger's disorder, 1:94, 95, 96  
attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:108  
cognitive remediation for, 1:268–269  
cognitive retraining for, 1:270  
play therapy, 2:893–894  
tic disorders and, 2:1160  
Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, 2:1216  
*See also names of specific learning disorders*
- Left brain. *See* Cerebral hemispheres
- Legal considerations  
abuse, 1:6  
advance directives, 1:24–25  
antisocial personality disorder, 1:73
- Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM), 1:355*
- dissociative amnesia, 1:375
- dissociative identity disorder, 1:380
- factitious disorder, 1:454
- frotteurism, 1:490, 491
- Hare psychopathy checklist, 1:561–562
- Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20, 1:563
- informed consent, 1:598–599
- involuntary hospitalization, 1:624–626
- Luria-Nebraska  
Neuropsychological Battery, 1:668  
pedophilia, 2:862, 863, 864–865  
sexual sadism, 2:1051  
voyeurism, 2:1211  
*See also* Mental health courts
- Lehmann, Heinz Edgar, 1:230
- Leptin, 2:795–796
- Lesbians. *See* Homosexuality
- Leucotomy. *See* Psychosurgery
- Leukodystrophy, 1:222
- Leuprolide, 1:491, 2:913
- Leuprolide acetate, 1:441, 2:864
- Levetiracetam, 2:1073
- Levitra. *See* Verdenafil hydrochloride
- Levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM), 1:347, 349, 2:817
- Levodopa (L-dopa)  
adrenaline and, 1:22  
bupropion and, 1:190  
dopamine and, 1:391  
galantamine and, 1:485  
isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
kava kava and, 1:628  
for medication-induced movement disorders, 2:705  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:742  
neuroleptic malignant syndrome and, 2:766  
nightmares from, 2:781  
perphenazine and, 2:870  
phenelzine and, 2:882  
pimozide and, 2:892  
selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024  
tacrine and, 2:1144  
tardive dyskinesia and, 2:1145  
thiothixene and, 2:1157  
tranylcypromine and, 2:1174  
ziprasidone and, 2:1234
- Levomethadyl, 1:239
- Levothroxine, 2:695
- Lewin, Kurt, 2:872
- Lewy body dementia, 1:322, 324, 326
- Lexapro. *See* Escitalopram
- LHRH (Luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone), 1:441, 2:864
- Libido, 1:591
- Librax. *See* Chlordiazepoxide
- Librium. *See* Chlordiazepoxide
- Lidocaine, 2:890, 920
- Lidone. *See* Molindone
- Life change events, 1:341, 358
- Life story perspective, 1:358, 359
- Light therapy, 1:**659–662**  
bulimia nervosa, 1:181  
circadian rhythm sleep disorder, 1:238, 2:1060  
major depressive disorder, 2:683  
seasonal affective disorder, 2:1010, 1011
- Lilliputian hallucinations, 1:545
- Lima, Almeida, 2:933, 934
- Limbic system. *See* Brain
- Limited symptom attack, 2:835
- Linehan, Marsha, 2:1036
- Linoleic acid, 1:433
- Lithane. *See* Lithium carbonate
- Lithium carbonate, 1:**662–665**, 2:702  
aripiprazole and, 1:90  
for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
beta blockers and, 1:134  
for bipolar disorder, 1:148  
carbamazepine and, 1:205  
for catatonic disorders, 1:213  
clomipramine and, 1:246  
clozapine and, 1:253  
for cyclothymic disorder, 1:307
- diets for, 1:363, 364, 365  
electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411  
haloperidol and, 1:553  
for hypomania, 1:591  
for intermittent explosive disorder, 1:611  
for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
for juvenile depression, 1:634  
for Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:646  
loxpiprazole and, 1:668  
medication-induced postural tremor from, 2:701–702, 701–703  
neuroleptic malignant syndrome from, 2:766  
paroxetine and, 2:853  
perphenazine and, 2:870  
phenelzine and, 2:882  
pimozide and, 2:892  
for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
in STAR\*D study, 2:1095  
in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
thiothixene and, 2:1157  
tranylcypromine and, 2:1174
- Lithobid. *See* Lithium carbonate
- Lithonate. *See* Lithium carbonate
- Lithotabs. *See* Lithium carbonate
- Live modeling. *See* Modeling
- Livedo reticularis, 1:46
- Liver  
disulfiram and, 1:384, 385  
kava kava and, 1:643–644  
mirtazapine and, 2:732  
naltrexone and, 2:752  
nefazodone and, 2:762  
pemoline and, 2:868–869  
quetiapine and, 2:947  
tacrine and, 2:1143, 1144  
valproic acid and, 2:1200–1201
- Living wills. *See* Advance directives
- LNNB (Luria-Nebraska)  
Neuropsychological Battery). *See* Luria-Nebraska  
Neuropsychological Battery (LNNB)
- Lobotomy. *See* Psychosurgery
- Localized amnesia. *See* Amnesia
- Locura, 2:1004
- Locus ceruleus, 2:837
- Lofexidine, 1:347, 348
- Loperamide, 2:1092
- Lophophora williamsii*, 1:548
- Loraz. *See* Lorazepam
- Lorazepam, 1:**665–666**  
for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43  
ariPIPRAZOLE and, 1:90  
for brief psychotic disorder, 1:174  
for catatonic disorders, 1:213  
clonidine and, 1:248  
for delusional disorder, 1:318  
for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
for hallucinogen intoxication, 1:551  
for hypomania, 1:591  
loxpiprazole and, 1:668  
for schizoaffective disorder, 2:988–989  
withdrawal, 1:347

Loss. *See* Grief  
 Lou Gehrig's disease. *See*  
 Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)  
 Lovastatin, 1:483, 489  
 Low self-esteem. *See* Self-esteem  
 Loxapine, 1:**666–668**  
 Loxitane. *See* Loxapine  
 LSD (Lysergic acid diethylamide).  
*See* Hallucinogens and related  
 disorders  
 L-tryptophan, 1:628  
 Lubrication-swelling response,  
 1:470–473  
 Ludiomil. *See* Maprotiline  
 Luminal. *See* Phenobarbital  
 Lunesta. *See* Eszopiclone  
 Lungs, 2:779  
 Lupron. *See* Leuprorelin  
 Luria, Alexander, 1:637, 669, 2:770  
 Luria-Nebraska Neuropsychological  
 Battery (LNNB), 1:**668–670**, 2:771  
 Luteal phase, 2:911  
 Luteinizing hormone-releasing hor-  
 mone (LHRH), 1:441, 2:864  
 Luvox. *See* Fluvoxamine  
 Lying. *See* Confabulation;  
 Malingering  
 Lyme disease, 1:322  
 Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD).  
*See* Hallucinogens and related  
 disorders

## M

Machismo, 1:504  
 MAD (Mandibular advancement  
 device), 1:170  
 Madness. *See* Psychosis  
 Magic mushrooms. *See* Psilocybin  
 Magical thinking, 2:841, 1006  
 Magnesium, 2:789, 914  
 Magnetic resonance angiography  
 (MRA), 2:671, 674, 675  
 Magnetic resonance cholangiopan-  
 creatography (MRCP), 2:671, 674,  
 675  
 Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI),  
**2:671–675**, 672  
*Alzheimer's disease*, 1:41  
*brain*, 1:167  
*conversion disorder*, 1:287  
*dementia*, 1:326  
*factitious disorder*, 1:453  
*as imaging study*, 1:593  
*vs. magnetoencephalography*,  
 1:414  
*neuropsychiatry* and, 2:768  
*obsessive-compulsive disorder*,  
 2:806  
*vs. positron emission tomography*,  
 2:900  
*stroke*, 2:1118

Magnetic resonance spectroscopy  
 (MRS), 2:671, 674, 675  
 Magnetic seizure therapy, **2:675–678**,  
 676  
 Magnetic therapy, 1:422, 423  
 Magnets, 1:422, 579, 2:1197  
 Maiden hair tree. *See* Ginkgo biloba  
 Maintenance therapy. *See*  
 Pharmacotherapy  
 Major depression. *See* Major depres-  
 sive disorder  
 Major depressive disorder, **2:678–685**  
*from abuse*, 1:5  
*acute stress disorder* and, 1:12, 13  
*adjustment disorders* and, 1:21  
*alcohol* and, 1:30  
*apathy* in, 1:82  
*avoidant personality disorder* and,  
 1:118  
*bereavement* and, 1:132  
*binge eating* and, 1:139  
*bipolar disorder* and, 1:146  
*bulimia nervosa* and, 1:179  
*catatonic disorders* and, 1:213  
*causes*, 2:679–680  
 Child Depression Inventory and,  
 1:220  
*in children*, 1:400, 632  
*vs. cocaine withdrawal*, 1:259  
*crisis housing* for, 1:301  
*defined*, 2:678–679  
*delusions* in, 1:319  
*demographics*, 1:341, 2:681  
*as depressive disorder*, 1:340  
*dermatotillomania* and, 1:342  
*described*, 2:679  
*diagnosis*, 2:681–682  
*vs. dysthymic disorder*, 1:398  
*electroconvulsive therapy*, 1:408  
*family psychoeducation* for, 1:458  
*female sexual arousal disorder*  
*and*, 1:471  
*generalized anxiety disorder* and,  
 1:507  
*genetics*, 1:515  
*hallucinations* in, 1:545  
*heredity*, 1:399  
*histrionic personality disorder*  
*and*, 1:567  
*isocarboxazid* for, 1:627  
*kleptomania* and, 1:646  
*late-life depression* as, 1:652  
*magnetic seizure therapy*, 2:677,  
 678  
*malingering* and, 2:688  
*mixed episode* and, 2:733  
*monoamine oxidase inhibitors* for,  
 2:741–744  
*nefazodone* for, 2:762  
*vs. obsessive-compulsive disorder*,  
 2:808  
*opioid dependence* and, 2:816  
*panic disorder* and, 2:839  
*Paxil* for, 2:860  
*pedophilia* and, 2:864  
 prevention, 2:683–684  
*prognosis*, 2:683  
*riluzole* for, 2:970  
*schizoaffective disorder* and,  
 2:986  
*seasonal affective disorder* and,  
 2:1009–1012  
*selective serotonin reuptake inhibi-  
 tors* for, 2:1023  
*social phobia* and, 2:1069  
*STAR\*D study*, 2:1094–1096  
*symptoms*, 2:680–681  
*transcranial magnetic stimulation*  
*for*, 2:1168  
*Treatment for Adolescents with  
 Depression Study*, 2:1177–1178  
*treatments*, 2:682–683  
*vagus nerve stimulation* for,  
 2:1195–1197  
*Making Contact* (Satir), 1:460  
*Male erectile disorder. *See* Erectile  
 dysfunction (ED)*  
*Male orgasmic disorder*, **2:685–688**  
*Males. *See* Boys; Men*  
*Malingering*, **2:688–690**  
*vs. amnestic disorders*, 1:51  
*chronic pain* and, 1:233  
*vs. delirium*, 1:314  
*vs. dissociative amnesia*, 1:375  
*vs. factitious disorder*, 1:451, 454  
*Ganser's syndrome* and, 1:496  
*vs. intermittent explosive disorder*,  
 1:611  
*neurosis* and, 2:772  
*vs. pain disorder*, 2:832  
*vs. somatization disorder*, 2:1083  
*Malnutrition. *See* Nutrition and  
 mental health*  
*Managed care*, **2:690–692**  
*bulimia nervosa* and, 1:180  
*community mental health* and,  
 1:274  
*deinstitutionalization* and, 1:309  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual  
 of Mental Disorders* and, 1:358  
*hospitalization* and, 1:574  
*narcissistic personality disorder*  
*and*, 2:757  
*smoking cessation* and, 2:1067  
*Mandibular advancement device  
 (MAD)*, 1:170  
*Manerix. *See* Moclobemide*  
*Manganese*, 2:789–790  
*Mania. *See* Manic episode*  
*Mania Rating Scale*, 1:630  
*Manic episode*, **2:692–694**  
*from antidepressants*, 1:72  
*ariPIPrazole* for, 1:88  
*in bipolar disorder*, 1:146, 148,  
 149, 150  
*catatonia* and, 1:210, 211  
*chlorpromazine* for, 1:230  
*citalopram* and, 1:239  
*Clinical Assessment Scales for the  
 Elderly*, 1:240

- clonazepam for, 1:247  
 cyclothymic disorder and, 1:305–308  
*vs.* delirium, 1:313  
 delusions in, 1:320  
 diets for, 1:363  
 divalproex sodium for, 1:386  
 dopamine and, 1:391  
 hallucinations in, 1:546  
*vs.* hypomania, 1:589–590  
 from imipramine, 1:595  
 insomnia and, 1:605  
 in juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:629, 630  
 lithium carbonate for, 1:662–664  
 loxapine for, 1:666  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:677  
 maprotiline and, 2:694  
 mirtazapine and, 2:732  
 mixed episode and, 2:733  
 from nefazodone, 2:762  
 from nortriptyline, 2:783  
 olanzapine for, 2:810  
 paroxetine and, 2:852  
*vs.* pathological gambling disorder, 2:858  
 from SAMe, 2:986  
 in schizoaffective disorder, 2:987  
 seasonal affective disorder and, 2:1009–1012  
 valproic acid for, 2:1200  
*See also* Dysphoric mania
- Manic-depression.** *See* Bipolar disorder
- Manic-depressive disorder.** *See* Bipolar disorder
- Manic-Depressive Illness** (Jamison and Goodwin), 2:693
- Manipulation, physical.** *See* Bodywork therapies
- Man's Search for Himself** (May), 1:81
- MAO (Monoamine oxidase).** *See* Monoamine oxidase (MAO)
- MAO-A (Monoamine oxidase A),** 2:741–742
- MAO-B (Monoamine oxidase B),** 2:741–742
- MAOIs (Monoamine oxidase inhibitors).** *See* Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)
- Maprotiline, 2:694–695**
- Marijuana.** *See* Cannabis and related disorders
- Marijuana Tax Act, 1:200**
- Marital and family therapists,** 1:624, 2:696–697
- Marital therapy.** *See* Couples therapy
- Marplan.** *See* Isocarboxazid
- Marriage,** 1:530–531, 584, 2:808, 991, 992, 996  
*See also* Couples therapy; Divorce; Marital and family therapists
- Marriage therapy.** *See* Couples therapy
- Martial arts,** 1:420–421, 2:905
- Martin, Clyde,** 1:472
- Marx, Arnold,** 1:98, 208
- Mary Tudor, Queen of England,** 2:922
- Masculinity.** *See* Men
- Maslow, Abraham H.,** 1:537
- Masoch, Leopold von Sacher,** 2:1050
- Masochism, sexual.** *See* Sexual masochism
- Massage.** *See* Bodywork therapies
- Masters, William,** 1:471
- Masturbation,** 1:439, 441, 469, 470, 2:687, 1210
- Mathematics disorder,** 2:697–699  
 disorder of written expression and, 1:370  
*as learning disorder,* 1:658
- Matrix Institute on Addiction,** 2:699
- Matrix model,** 2:699–701
- Maudsley, Henry,** 1:110
- May, James,** 1:356
- May, Rollo,** 1:81
- Maypop.** *See* Passionflower
- Mazindole,** 1:84
- MBSR (Mindfulness-based stress reduction),** 2:708, 709
- McFarlane, William,** 1:458
- McGill Pain Questionnaire,** 1:233
- MCI (Mild cognitive impairment).**  
*See* Cognitive impairment
- MCMII (Millon Clinical Multi-axial Inventory).** *See* Millon Clinical Multi-axial Inventory (MCMII)
- MDA (Methylenedioxymethamphetamine).**  
*See* Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDA)
- MDAS (Memorial Delirium Assessment Scale),** 1:313
- MDMA (3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine).** *See* Ecstasy (drug)
- The Meaning of Anxiety** (May), 1:81
- Mebral,** 2:1019
- MECP2,** 2:965, 966, 967
- Medicaid,** 1:207, 209, 309
- Medical crisis counseling,** 1:304–305
- Medical history.** *See* Assessment and diagnosis
- Medical imaging.** *See* Imaging studies
- Medical model,** 1:355, 357
- Medical nutrition therapy (MNT),** 1:180
- Medicare,** 1:207, 209, 309
- Medication-induced movement disorders,** 2:701–706, 702  
 from fluphenazine, 1:484  
 from molindone, 2:740  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 2:766  
 neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
 propranolol for, 2:918, 919  
 from trifluoperazine, 2:1183  
*See also* Tardive dyskinesia
- Medication-induced postural tremor,** 2:702, 703, 704, 705, 706
- Medications**
- for adjustment disorders, 1:20–21
  - advance directives and, 1:24
  - for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43
  - amnesia from, 1:49
  - cannabis, 1:200
  - diets for, 1:361–362
  - See also specific medications by name or class*
- Medicine.** *See* Medications; types of medicine practiced
- Meditation,** 2:706–710, 707  
 acute stress disorder, 1:13  
 agoraphobia, 1:30  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:34  
 anxiety reduction, 1:78, 80–81  
 chronic pain, 1:234  
 energy therapies, 1:420, 421  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:524  
 histrionic personality disorder, 1:569  
 light therapy, 1:661  
 major depressive disorder, 2:683  
 nightmares, 2:782  
 obesity, 2:799  
 pain disorder, 2:833  
 panic disorder, 2:840  
 therapeutic potential, 2:829  
 yoga, 2:1227
- Medrol.** *See* Methylprednisolone
- Medroxyprogesterone acetate (MPA),** 1:441, 2:864, 1051
- Medulla,** 1:164
- Medulloblastoma,** 1:165
- MEG (Magnetoencephalography).**  
*See* Electroencephalography (EEG)
- Meichenbaum, Donald,** 2:1026
- Melatonin**
- for seasonal affective disorder, 2:1011–1012
  - for sleep disorders, 2:1059
- Mellaril.** *See* Thioridazine
- Memantine,** 2:710–712  
 for Alzheimer's disease, 1:42–43  
 for dementia, 1:326  
 donepezil and, 1:388–389
- Memorial Delirium Assessment Scale (MDAS),** 1:313
- Memory**
- abuse and, 1:5
  - addiction and, 1:16
  - Alzheimer's disease and, 1:38, 39, 40
  - amphetamines and, 1:60
  - in children, 1:50
  - cognitive retraining and, 1:270
  - dementia and, 1:321–328
  - depersonalization disorder and, 1:335
  - disorder of written expression and, 1:369
  - dissociation and, 1:371, 372

- dissociative amnesia and, 1:373–376  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:380  
 ecstasy and, 1:405  
 executive function and, 1:435  
*ginkgo biloba* for, 1:525  
 impairment, 1:412, 625, 2:675, 676, 1201–1202  
 late-life depression and, 1:651–652  
 learning disorders and, 1:658  
*See also Amnesia; Amnestic disorders; Recovered memories*
- Memory loss.** *See Amnesia*
- Men**  
 acute stress disorder, 1:12  
 addiction, 1:16  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:32  
 binge drinking, 1:137  
 bipolar disorder, 1:147  
 breathing-related sleep disorder, 1:170  
 bullying, 1:185  
 dementia, 1:324  
 denial, 1:329  
 depression and depressive disorders, 1:339  
 erectile dysfunction, 1:427–431  
 exhibitionism, 1:439–443  
 factitious disorder, 1:453–454  
 fetishism, 1:477  
 frotteurism, 1:490  
 gender identity disorder, 1:499  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:501–505  
*Hare psychopathy checklist*, 1:561  
 histrionic personality disorder, 1:565, 566–567  
 hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:583  
 intermittent explosive disorder, 1:610  
 Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:645, 646  
 male orgasmic disorder, 2:685–688  
 mental health courts, 2:714  
 mental retardation, 2:716  
 mixed episode, 2:733  
 narcissistic personality disorder, 2:756  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 2:766  
 nicotine use, 2:777  
 obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803  
 opioid dependence, 2:816  
 paranoia, 2:841–842  
 paranoid personality disorder, 2:845  
 paraphilics, 2:848–849  
 pathological gambling disorder, 2:856, 857  
 pedophilia, 2:863  
 premature ejaculation, 2:909–910  
 process addiction, 2:916  
 pyromania, 2:942  
 schizophrenia, 2:997  
 steroid use, 2:1103  
 stroke, 2:1118, 1119  
 suicide, 2:1133–1134  
 toilet phobia, 2:1164  
 transvestic fetishism, 2:1170, 1170–1172  
 trichotillomania, 2:1180  
 vascular dementia, 2:1202  
 voyeurism, 2:1211  
*See also Boys*
- Menadione.** *See Vitamin K*
- Meninges, 1:164**
- Meningitis, 2:717, 825**
- Menopause, 1:471, 472, 473, 2:913**
- Menstruation, 1:63, 64, 341**  
*See also Premenstrual syndrome (PMS)*
- Mental depression.** *See Depression and depressive disorders*
- Mental disorders.** *See names of specific mental disorders*
- Mental health courts, 2:712–714**
- Mental hospitals.** *See Hospitalization*
- Mental illness, origin of.** *See Origin of mental illnesses*
- Mental Research Institute, 1:460**
- Mental retardation (MR), 2:714, 714–719, 715**  
 autism and, 1:110, 112  
 aversion therapy, 1:115  
*in Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 1:355*  
 electroencephalography, 1:413, 415  
 in fetal alcohol syndrome, 1:474  
 figure drawings and, 1:479  
 genetics, 1:514  
 pica in, 2:885, 886  
 in Rett disorder, 2:964  
 rumination disorder and, 2:983  
 stereotypic movement disorder and, 2:1101  
 Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale, 2:1213  
 Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children, 2:1216
- Mental status examinations (MSE), 1:103–104, 325**  
*See also names of specific examinations*
- Mentastics, 1:158, 159**
- Meperidine**  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 detoxification and, 1:347  
 fluphenazine and, 1:485  
 isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 as opioid, 2:813  
 pimozide and, 2:892  
 tranylcypromine and, 2:1174
- Merck, 1:403**
- Meridia. *See Sibutramine***
- Meridians, 1:7, 9, 159, 421**
- Mercycism.** *See Rumination disorder*
- Mescaline, 1:403, 547, 548, 549**
- Mesmer, Friedrich Anton, 1:579**
- Mesmerism, 1:579**
- Mesocortical pathway, 1:390, 391**
- Mesoridazine, 2:719–721**
- MET (Motivated Enhancement Therapy).** *See Motivated Enhancement Therapy (MET)*
- Metabolic disorders, 1:312, 2:782, 825**
- Metabolites, 2:1192**
- Metal, 2:672**
- Meth. *See Methamphetamine***
- Methadone, 2:721–723, 722**  
 for addiction, 1:16  
 for detoxification, 1:346, 347–348, 349  
 as opioid, 2:813  
 for opioid dependence, 2:817, 818  
 urine drug screening for, 2:1191
- Methadose. *See Methadone***
- Methamphetamine, 2:723–725, 724**  
 as amphetamine, 1:55, 57, 59  
 ecstasy and, 1:403, 404, 548  
 Matrix treatment model, 2:699
- Methandrostenolone, 2:1102**
- Methcathinone, 1:255**
- Methenex. *See Methadone***
- Methionine, 2:985**
- Methohexitol, 1:121, 410**
- Methotrexate, 1:49, 650**
- Methyldopa, 1:429**
- Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDA), 1:403, 404, 548**
- Methylphenidate, 2:725–728, 726, 727**  
 amitriptyline and, 1:48  
 as amphetamine, 1:55, 57  
 for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
 for attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:105, 107  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 desipramine and, 1:345  
 diets for, 1:362  
 imipramine and, 1:596  
 isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
 for Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:646  
 methamphetamine and, 2:724  
 pemoline and, 2:868  
 pimozide and, 2:891  
 tic disorders and, 2:1158
- Methylprednisolone, 1:88, 2:947**
- Metoclopramide, 2:701, 766**
- Metoprolol succinate, 1:134, 134**
- Metronidazole, 1:385, 664**
- Mexiletine, 1:197**
- Mexitil. *See Mexiletine***
- Meyer, Adolf, 1:356**
- Midazolam, 1:88, 365**
- Midbrain, 1:164**
- Migraine headaches**  
 antidepressants for, 1:71  
 barbiturates for, 1:121

- cannabis for, 1:200  
 chronic pain, 1:233  
 divalproex sodium for, 1:386  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
 meditation for, 2:706  
 rosemary for, 2:982  
 valproic acid for, 2:1200
- Mild cognitive impairment (MCI). *See* Cognitive impairment
- Miller, Glenn A., 2:1132
- Miller, William R., 2:960
- Millon Clinical Multi-axial Inventory (MCMI), 1:332, 567
- The Mind Game: Witchdoctors and Psychiatrists* (Torrey), 2:996
- Mind-body connection, 1:140, 142, 177
- Mindfulness meditation. *See* Meditation
- Mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR), 2:708, 709
- Mind-reading, 1:320, 321
- Mindscope, 1:142–143
- Minerals. *See names of specific minerals*
- Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE), 2:728–729
- Alzheimer's disease, 1:40
  - amnestic disorders, 1:51
  - delirium, 1:313
  - dementia, 1:325, 326
- Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI), 2:729–732
- dependent personality disorder, 1:332
  - histrionic personality disorder, 1:567
- Minority and ethnic groups
- Connors' Rating Scales-Revised, 1:284
  - generalized anxiety disorder, 1:207–508
  - intelligence tests, 1:607
  - mental health courts, 2:714
  - pathological gambling disorder, 2:858
  - social phobias, 2:1071
  - suicide, 2:1134
  - Thematic Apperception Test, 2:1151
- Mirtazapine, 2:732–733, 839, 1095, 1096
- Mistrust. *See* Paranoia
- Mitoxana. *See* Ifosfamide
- Mixed amphetamine salts, 1:55, 107
- Mixed episode, 2:733
- in adjustment disorders, 1:18, 19
  - ariPIPrazole for, 1:88
  - in bipolar disorder, 1:146, 147, 148
  - catatonia in, 1:211
  - catatonic disorders and, 1:212
  - in cyclothymic disorder, 1:306
  - in juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:629
  - vs. manic episode, 2:693
  - in schizoaffective disorder, 2:987
- Mixed receptive-expressive language disorder, 1:450, 2:733–736
- Mixed substance abuse. *See* Substance abuse
- MMPI (Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory). *See* Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI)
- MMSE (Mini-Mental State Examination). *See* Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE)
- MNT (Medical nutrition therapy), 1:180
- Moban. *See* Molindone
- Mobbing. *See* Bullying
- Moclobemide, 2:741
- Modafinil, 1:107, 646, 2:760, 1060
- Modeling, 2:736, 736–739
- in cognitive problem-solving skills training, 1:266
  - in cognitive retraining, 1:270
  - in cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:264
  - conversion disorder and, 1:288
  - group therapy, 1:537
  - histrionic personality disorder, 1:568
  - in Internet addiction disorder, 1:612–613
  - in rational emotive therapy, 2:951
  - in schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1006
  - in separation anxiety disorder, 2:1040
  - speech-language pathology, 2:1091
- See also* Social modeling
- Molindone, 2:739–741
- Monitoring the Future Study* (MTF), 1:201, 258, 405
- Moniz, Antonio Egas, 2:933–934
- Monoamine oxidase (MAO)
- isocarboxazid and, 1:627
  - monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:741–742
  - nicotine and, 2:775
  - phenelzine and, 2:881, 882
  - in process addiction, 2:916, 917
  - tranylcypromine and, 2:1172
- Monoamine oxidase A (MAO-A), 2:741–742
- Monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B), 2:741–742
- Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), 2:741–744
- for acute stress disorder, 1:12
  - for agoraphobia, 1:28, 29
  - amitriptyline and, 1:48
  - amoxapine and, 1:54
  - amphetamines and, 1:56, 57
  - as antidepressants, 1:71
  - for avoidant personality disorder, 1:119
  - for bipolar disorder, 1:149
  - for bulimia nervosa, 1:180
  - buspirone and, 1:192
- caffeine and, 1:197
- citalopram and, 1:239–240
- clomipramine and, 1:246
- for depression and depressive disorders, 1:341
- diets for, 1:362, 363, 364, 2:791
- disulfiram and, 1:385
- dopamine and, 1:391
- doxepin and, 1:393
- for dysthymic disorder, 1:400
- electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411
- fluoxetine and, 1:482, 483
- fluvoxamine and, 1:488, 489
- for hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:584
- imipramine and, 1:596
- for late-life depression, 1:652
- maprotiline and, 2:694
- methadone and, 2:723
- methamphetamine and, 2:724
- mirtazapine and, 2:733
- nefazodone and, 2:763
- nortriptyline and, 2:784
- for panic disorder, 2:839, 840
- paroxetine and, 2:852, 853
- passionflower and, 2:855
- Paxil and, 2:861–862
- phenelzine as, 2:881
- for post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:905
- protriptyline and, 2:921
- selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024
- sertraline and, 2:1043
- for social phobia, 2:1073
- St. John's wort and, 2:1092
- trazodone and, 2:1176
- trimipramine, 2:1187
- venlafaxine and, 2:1204, 1205
- Monomania, 1:609
- Monotherapy. *See* Pharmacotherapy
- Mood disorders. *See* Bipolar disorder; Depression and depressive disorders
- Mood stabilizers
- for bipolar disorder, 1:148–149
  - for cyclothymic disorder, 1:307
  - for hypomania, 1:591
  - for intermittent explosive disorder, 1:611
  - for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631
  - for process addiction, 2:917
  - for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989
  - for schizophreniaform disorder, 2:1006
- STEP-BD study, 2:1098
- See also names of specific mood stabilizers*
- Mood-congruent delusions. *See* Delusions
- Mood-congruent hallucinations, 1:546
- Mood-incongruent hallucinations, 1:546
- Mood-neutral hallucinations, 1:546
- Moral model, 1:356

Moreno, Jacob, 1:538  
 Morgan, Christiana, 2:1151  
 Morning shakes. *See* Tremors  
 Morphine, 1:347, 2:722, 774, 813, 817, 1191  
 Mother-daughter relationships, 1:27  
 Mothers  
     anorexia nervosa and, 1:63  
     bulimia nervosa and, 1:177  
     exhibitionism and, 1:439  
     in factitious disorder, 1:452, 452, 453, 454  
     family education and, 1:456  
     gender issues in mental health, 1:502  
     in narcissistic personality disorder, 2:755  
     nicotine use, 2:777, 779  
     postpartum depression, 2:906–908  
 Motivated Enhancement Therapy (MET), 1:34  
 Motivation, 1:542, 2:960  
*Motivation and Personality* (Maslow), 1:537  
 Motivational enhancement therapy, 1:330  
*Motivational Interviewing* (Miller and Rollnick), 2:960  
 Motor skills  
     Asperger's disorder and, 1:94  
     autism and, 1:112  
     Bender Gestalt Test, 1:126–128  
     childhood disintegrative disorder and, 1:222, 223  
     developmental coordination disorder and, 1:351–353  
     disorder of written expression and, 1:369  
     learning disorders and, 1:658  
 Motor tic disorder, chronic. *See* Tic disorders  
 Motor vehicle accidents, 1:11, 12, 446, 509  
 Mourning. *See* Bereavement; Grief  
 Movement disorders, 2:744–746  
     abnormal involuntary movement scale, 1:1–2  
     aripiprazole and, 1:89  
     beta blockers for, 1:134  
     catatonia and, 1:210–211  
     catatonic disorders and, 1:211–214  
     conversion disorder and, 1:287  
     diphenhydramine for, 1:366  
     vs. tic disorders., 2:1160  
     *See also* Medication-induced movement disorders; Stereotypic movement disorder  
 Movement education, 1:156, 157  
 Movement meditation. *See* Meditation  
 Movement therapies. *See* Bodywork therapies; Creative therapies  
 Movements  
     choreoathetoid, 1:1  
     involuntary, 1:1–2  
     voluntary, 1:45

Moxibustion, 1:9  
 Moxifloxacin, 2:1234  
 MPA (Medroxyprogesterone acetate), 1:441, 2:864, 1051  
 MR (Mental retardation). *See* Mental retardation (MR)  
 MRA (Magnetic resonance angiography), 2:671, 674, 675  
 MRCP (Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography), 2:671, 674, 675  
 MRI (Magnetic resonance imaging). *See* Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)  
 MRS (Magnetic resonance spectroscopy), 2:671, 674, 675  
 MSBP (Munchausen syndrome by proxy). *See* Munchausen syndrome by proxy (MSBP)  
 MSE (Mental status examinations), 1:103–104, 325  
 MST Services, Inc., 2:746  
 MTF (*Monitoring the Future Study*). *See* *Monitoring the Future Study* (MTF)  
 Multidisciplinary Association for Psychedelic Studies, 1:406  
 Multi-infarct dementia. *See* Vascular dementia  
 Multimodal therapy, 1:542  
 Multiple personality disorder. *See* Dissociative identity disorder  
 Multiple sclerosis, 1:288, 2:825  
 Multiple Sleep Latency Test, 2:760  
 Multisystemic therapy, 2:746–750  
 Munchausen syndrome. *See* Factitious disorder  
 Munchausen syndrome by proxy (MSBP)  
     from abuse, 1:5  
     as factitious disorder, 1:452, 452, 453, 454, 455  
 Murray, Henry, 1:224, 225–226, 2:1151, 1152  
 Muscle dysmorphia, 1:152–153  
 Muscle load, 1:438  
 Muscle relaxants. *See* Sedatives and related drugs  
 Muscle spasms, 1:655, 656  
 Musculoskeletal disorders, 1:8, 422  
 Music therapy. *See* Creative therapies  
 Mutations, expansion. *See* Expansion mutations  
 Mutilation, self. *See* Self-mutilation  
 Mutism, 1:210, 212  
     *See also* Selective mutism  
 Mutual aid groups. *See* Self-help groups  
 Mutual support. *See* Support groups  
*My Quest for Beauty* (May), 1:81  
 Myasthenia gravis, 1:287, 288  
 Myoclonic seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Myoclonus, 2:745  
 Myofascial syndrome. *See* Fibromyalgia

Myopathies, 1:288  
 Myotherapy. *See* Trigger point therapy  
 Myotonic dystrophy, 1:514  
 Mysoline, 2:1019

---

**N**

Nail biting. *See* Onychophagia  
 Nalmefene, 2:858, 917  
 Nalorphine, 2:774  
 Naloxone, 1:347, 2:723, 774, 817  
 Naltrexone, 2:751–753  
     for addiction, 2:774  
     for alcohol-related disorders, 1:348  
     for detoxification, 1:348  
     for kleptomania, 1:647  
     methadone and, 2:723  
     for opioid dependence, 2:817  
     for pathological gambling disorder, 2:858  
     for process addiction, 2:917  
     Vivitrol as, 2:1206  
 Namenda. *See* Memantine  
 NAMI (National Alliance for the Mentally Ill), 1:456, 2:712, 1032  
 Nandrolone decanoate, 2:1103  
 Nandrolone phenpropionate, 2:1103  
 Naproxen, 1:43, 389, 2:920  
 Narcan. *See* Naloxone  
 Narcissistic personality disorder (NPD), 2:753–759  
     bulimia nervosa and, 1:179  
     causes, 2:754–756  
     defined, 2:753  
     demographics, 2:756–757  
     denial in, 1:329  
     described, 2:753–754  
     diagnosis, 2:757  
     factitious disorder and, 1:453  
     histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
     vs. obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803  
     pathological gambling disorder and, 2:857  
     as personality disorder, 2:875–876  
     prevention, 2:758  
     prognosis, 2:758  
     symptoms, 2:756  
     treatments, 2:757–758  
 Narcissistic Personality Inventory (NPI), 2:757  
 Narcissus, 2:753  
 Narcolepsy, 2:759–761  
     amphetamines for, 1:55, 58, 2:1060  
     clomipramine for, 1:244  
     desipramine for, 1:344  
     as dyssomnia, 2:1057, 1058  
     vs. hypersomnia, 1:577  
     methamphetamine for, 2:724

- methylphenidate for, 2:725, 726  
 polysomnography for, 2:896  
 prognosis, 2:1061  
**N**  
 Narcotherapy, 1:286  
 Narcotics. *See* Opioids and related disorders  
 Narcotics Anonymous. *See* Self-help groups  
 Nardil. *See* Phenelzine  
 NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration), 1:463  
 NASSA (Noradrenergic and specific serotonergic antidepressants), 1:341  
 National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), 1:463  
 National Alliance for the Mentally Ill (NAMI), 1:456, 2:712, 1032  
 National Alliance on Mental Illness, 1:99  
 National Alliance to End Homelessness, 1:571  
 National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, 2:840  
 National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, U.S. (NCCAM), 1:7, 644, 2:683  
 National Center for Education Statistics (NCES), 1:184–185  
 National Cholesterol Education Program, 2:799  
 National Coalition for the Homeless, 1:570–571  
 National Comorbidity Survey, 1:11, 12, 276  
 National Health Service (NHS), 1:8  
*National Household Survey on Drug Abuse* (NHSDA), 1:201, 258  
 National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, 1:184  
 National Institute for Allergy and Infectious Disease, 1:454  
 National Institute of Dental Research, 1:7  
 National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), 1:74  
   CATIE, 1:215  
   Child Depression Inventory, 1:220  
   community mental health, 1:273  
   deinstitutionalization, 1:309  
   depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
   *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:356, 357  
   generalized anxiety disorder, 1:508  
   schizophrenia, 2:994, 995, 997  
   seasonal affective disorder, 2:1012  
   STAR\*D study, 2:1094–1096  
   STEP-BD study, 2:1097–1099  
   suicide, 2:1133  
 National Institute of Mental Health Epidemiologic Catchment Area Study (ECA), 2:838  
 National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke (NINDS), 1:7, 232  
 National Institute on Aging, 1:41  
 National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA), 1:7, 137, 357  
 National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA)  
   acupuncture, 1:8  
   amphetamine abuse, 1:61  
   amphetamines, 1:60  
   anti-anxiety drugs and abuse, 1:69  
   cannabis use, 1:200, 201, 202  
   cocaine use, 1:258, 260  
   detoxification, 1:348  
   *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:357  
   ecstasy, 1:405  
 National Institutes of Health (NIH), 1:8, 72, 2:889, 956, 1177–1178  
 National Jail Association, 1:98  
 National Mental Health Association, 1:25  
 National Survey on Drug Use and Health, 1:68, 404  
 National Vietnam Veterans Readjustment Survey (NVVRS), 2:902, 904  
 National Women's Health Information Center, 2:912  
 Native Americans  
   acute stress disorder, 1:12  
   hallucinogen use, 1:547, 548  
   post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:902  
   stigma, 2:1105  
   substance abuse, 1:68  
   suicide, 2:1134  
 Nature and nurture, 2:823–824  
 Naturopathy, 1:13, 44, 91, 422, 433, 2:1115  
 Nausea  
   acupuncture for, 1:8  
   aprepitant for, 1:86, 87  
   cannabis for, 1:200  
   chlorpromazine for, 1:230  
   lorazepam for, 1:665  
   perphenazine for, 2:869, 870  
 Navane. *See* Thiothixene  
 Navelbine. *See* Vinorelbine  
 NCCAM (U.S. National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine), 1:7, 644, 2:683  
 NCES (National Center for Education Statistics), 1:184–185  
 Necrophilia, 2:848, 849  
 Needles, 1:7, 8, 9  
 Needs, 1:225–226, 537  
 Nefazodone, 1:192, 2:762–763, 1084  
 Negative reinforcement. *See* Reinforcement  
 Negative symptoms, 2:764, 996, 998, 1002  
   *See also* Positive symptoms  
 Negativism  
   acute stress disorder and, 1:11  
   catatonia and, 1:210  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:212  
 chronic pain and, 1:233, 234  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:263  
 dependent personality disorder and, 1:331  
 depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
 dysthymic disorder and, 1:399  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 major depressive disorder and, 2:679, 682, 683  
 somatization disorder and, 2:1082–1083  
**Neglect**, 2:764–765  
   *vs.* abuse, 1:2–3  
 antisocial personality disorder and, 1:74  
 cyclothymic disorder and, 1:306  
 depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:380  
 dysthymic disorder and, 1:399  
 feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 1:466, 467  
 play therapy, 2:893  
 postpartum depression and, 2:907  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:902  
 pyromania and, 2:941  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 2:952  
 rumination disorder and, 2:983, 984  
 Neostigmine, 2:1144  
 Neosynephrine, 1:48  
 Nerve cells. *See* Neurons  
 Nerve disorder. *See* Neurosis  
 Nervousness. *See* Anxiety and anxiety disorders  
 Netherlands, 1:458  
 Neurobehavior, 1:261–262  
 Neurobiology, 2:930  
 Neurofeedback. *See* Electroencephalography (EEG)  
 Neurofibrillary tangles, 1:37, 39  
 Neurohormones, 1:8, 11  
 Neurokin-1 receptors (NK-1), 1:86  
 Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS), 2:766–768  
   from aripiprazole, 1:90  
   from chlorpromazine, 1:230  
   from clozapine, 1:253  
   electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408  
   from fluphenazine, 1:485  
   as medication-induced movement disorder, 2:702, 703  
   from mesoridazine, 2:720–721  
   from molindone, 2:740  
   from olanzapine, 2:812  
   from pimozide, 2:892  
   from quetiapine, 2:947  
   from thioridazine, 2:1154

- from thiothixene, 2:1156  
treatment, 2:705  
from trifluoperazine, 2:1183  
from venlafaxine, 2:1205  
Neuroleptic-induced acute dystonia. *See* Medication-induced movement disorders  
Neuroleptic-induced akathisia. *See* Medication-induced movement disorders  
Neuroleptic-induced Parkinsonism. *See* Medication-induced movement disorders  
Neuroleptic-induced tardive dyskinesia. *See* Tardive dyskinesia  
Neuroleptics. *See* Antipsychotics  
Neurolinguistic programming. *See* Hypnotherapy  
Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP). *See* Hypnotherapy  
Neurology, behavioral. *See* Neuropsychiatry/behavioral neurology  
Neurons  
  antidepressants and, 1:71  
  brain activity, 1:166, 166  
  in depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
  divalpex sodium and, 1:386  
  ecstasy and, 1:406  
  gabapentin and, 1:493  
  neurotransmitters and, 2:772–773, 773  
  in Parkinson's disease, 2:745  
  paroxetine and, 2:852  
Neurontin. *See* Gabapentin  
Neuropathology, 2:825–826  
Neuropsychiatry/behavioral neurology, 2:768–769  
Neuropsychological testing, 1:259, 2:769–771  
  *See also names of specific tests*  
Neurosis, 1:161, 2:694, 771–772, 930  
  combat (*See* Conversion disorder)  
  hysterical (*See* Conversion disorder)  
*Neurosis and Human Growth* (Horney), 2:772  
Neurotic excoriation. *See* Dermatillomania  
Neurotransmitters, 2:772–774, 773  
  acupuncture and, 1:8  
  addiction and, 1:15, 346  
  in Alzheimer's disease, 1:39, 42–43  
  amitriptyline and, 1:48  
  amoxapine and, 1:53  
  amphetamines and, 1:58, 59, 60  
  antidepressants and, 1:71–72  
  appetite suppressants and, 1:83, 85  
  aripiprazole and, 1:89  
  attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:105, 107  
  body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153, 154  
borderline personality disorder  
  and, 1:161  
brain and, 1:166, 166  
bulimia nervosa and, 1:177, 178, 180, 182  
bupropion and, 1:189  
buspirone and, 1:191  
catatonic disorders and, 1:212  
citalopram and, 1:239  
clomipramine and, 1:244, 246  
clozapine and, 1:252, 254  
depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
doxepin and, 1:392  
dysthymic disorder and, 1:399  
ecstasy and, 1:403, 405, 406  
electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411  
exhibitionism and, 1:441  
fluoxetine and, 1:481–482  
fluvoxamine and, 1:488  
hallucinogens and, 1:547  
imipramine and, 1:593  
intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:610  
light therapy, 1:659  
major depressive disorder and, 2:680  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:741  
nortriptyline and, 2:782–783  
nutrition and, 2:785, 787, 789, 790  
obesity and, 2:798  
obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:806  
origin of mental illnesses, 2:822–823, 824  
panic disorder and, 2:837  
paraphilics and, 1:440  
paroxetine and, 2:852  
premenstrual syndrome and, 2:912, 913, 914  
process addiction and, 2:916, 917  
reuptake, 1:338  
risperidone and, 2:972  
selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 1:338, 2:1022  
sertraline and, 2:1042  
thiothixene and, 2:1155  
tic disorders and, 2:1158  
tranylcypromine and, 2:1172  
vagus nerve stimulation and, 2:1196  
voyeurism and, 2:1211  
Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome and, 2:1221  
ziprasidone and, 2:1233  
Neurotrophins, 1:71  
Newer-generation antipsychotics. *See* Antipsychotics  
NHS (National Health Service), 1:8  
NHSDA (*National Household Survey on Drug Abuse*), 1:201  
NIAAA (National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism), 1:7  
Niacin, 1:322, 326, 2:7861, 788–789, 826  
Nialamide, 1:239  
Nicoderm, 2:778  
NicoDerm CQ, 2:778  
Nicorette, 2:777–778, 1066  
Nicotine and related disorders, 2:774–780  
  attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:106  
  bupropion and, 1:189, 190  
  cannabis and, 1:200, 200, 202  
  causes, 2:775–776  
  defined, 2:774  
  demographics, 2:776–777  
  described, 2:774–775  
  diagnosis, 2:777  
  mental retardation from, 2:717  
  narcolepsy and, 2:760  
  nortriptyline for, 2:782  
  opioids and, 2:815  
  pathological gambling disorder and, 2:858  
  prevention, 2:779  
  process addiction and, 2:917  
  prognosis, 2:779  
  reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
  schizophrenia and, 2:997  
  smoking cessation for, 2:1066–1068  
  symptoms, 2:775–776  
  tic disorders and, 2:1161  
  treatments, 2:777–779  
  *See also* Smoking cessation  
Nicotine replacement therapy (NRT), 2:1066, 1067–1068  
  *See also* Smoking cessation  
Nicotrol, 2:778  
NIDA (National Institute on Drug Abuse). *See* National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA)  
Nifedipine, 1:205, 2:1161  
Night terrors. *See* Sleep terror disorder  
Nightmare disorder, 2:780–782, 1057, 1058, 1062  
Nightmares, 1:12, 299, 2:901, 903, 1039  
  *See also* Nightmare disorder  
Nigrostriatal pathway, 1:390, 391  
NIH (National Institutes of Health), 1:8, 72, 2:889, 956, 1177–1178  
Nihilistic delusions. *See* Delusions  
NIMBY phenomenon (Not In My Backyard), 1:534  
NIMH (National Institute of Mental Health). *See* National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH)  
Nimodipine, 1:149–150, 387  
Nimotop. *See* Nimodipine  
NINDS (National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke), 1:7, 232  
Nitric oxide, 1:427, 473  
Nitrites, 1:600–601  
Nitroglycerin, 1:430  
Nitrous oxide, 1:335, 371  
NK-1 (Neurokinin-1 receptors), 1:86

NLD (Nonverbal learning disability), 1:95  
 NLP (Neurolinguistic programming). *See* Hypnotherapy  
 NMDA (N-methyl-D-aspartate), 2:710  
 N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA), 2:710  
 NMS (Neuroleptic malignant syndrome). *See* Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS)  
 Noctec. *See* Chloral hydrate  
 Nocturnal enuresis. *See* Enuresis  
 Nomothetic interpretation, 2:1152  
 Nonarteritic ischemic optic neuropathy, 1:430  
 Non-bizarre delusions. *See* Delusions  
 Noncompliance. *See* Compliance  
 Non-directive therapy. *See* Person-centered therapy  
 Nonselective monoamine oxidase inhibitors. *See* Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)  
 Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID), 1:43, 389, 664, 2:833, 920, 962  
 Nonverbal behavior, 1:523, 615  
 Nonverbal learning disability (NLD), 1:95  
 Noradrenaline. *See* Adrenaline  
 Noradrenergic and specific serotonergic antidepressants (NASSA), 1:341  
 Norepinephrine. *See* Adrenaline  
 Norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (NRI), 1:341  
 Norepinephrine-dopamine reuptake inhibitors, 1:341  
 Norflex. *See* Orphenadrine  
 Norpramin. *See* Desipramine  
 Nortriptyline, 2:782–785, 783  
 amoxapine and, 1:53  
 for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340/  
 for dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
 for generalized anxiety disorder, 1:509–510  
 imipramine and, 1:594  
 protriptyline and, 2:920  
 in STAR\*D study, 2:1095, 1096  
 Norway, 1:458, 2:1107  
 Nosology. *See* Classification  
 Not In My Backyard phenomenon (NIMBY), 1:534  
 Novel antipsychotics. *See* Antipsychotics  
 NPI (Narcissistic Personality Inventory), 2:757  
 NRI (Norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors), 1:341  
 NRT (Nicotine replacement therapy), 2:1066, 1067–1068  
 NSAID (Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs), 1:43, 389, 664, 2:833, 920, 962  
 Nucleotides, 1:513

Nucleus accumbens, 1:390, 391, 2:856, 968, 969  
 Nun Study, 1:324  
 Nurse psychotherapists, 1:624  
 Nutrients. *See* Nutrition and mental health  
 Nutrition and mental health, 2:785–791, 786t, 787  
 alcohol-related disorders, 1:34, 2:788  
 amnesia, 1:49  
 brain, 2:785  
 carbohydrates, 2:787  
 energy intake, 2:785–786  
 fatigue, 1:463  
 fats, 2:787–788  
 feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood, 1:466–468  
 minerals, 2:789–790  
 obesity, 2:795–800  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:826  
 panic disorder, 2:840  
 pica, 2:885–888  
 premenstrual syndrome, 2:914  
 protein, 2:787  
 relapse prevention, 2:960  
 tic disorders, 2:1161  
 vitamins, 2:788–789  
 Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 2:1218–1222  
*See also* Diets  
 Nutrition counseling, 1:34, 180, 2:787, 791–793  
*See also* Diets  
 Nutritional deficiencies. *See* Nutrition and mental health  
 NVVRS (National Vietnam Veterans Readjustment Survey), 2:902, 904  
 Nystagmus, 1:165

## O

Obesity, 2:795–800, 796, 797t  
 amphetamines for, 1:55, 58  
 appetite suppressants for, 1:83–86  
 binge eating and, 1:139  
 breathing-related sleep disorder and, 1:168–169, 171  
 fatigue and, 1:463  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 hypnotherapy, 1:578  
 magnetic resonance imaging and, 2:673  
 methamphetamine for, 2:724  
 Prader-Willi syndrome and, 1:514, 515  
 reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1023  
 stigma, 2:1106  
 tic disorders and, 2:1163

Object relations  
 in couples therapy, 1:295  
 gender issues in mental health, 1:502  
 Observational learning. *See* Modeling  
 Obsession, 2:800–801  
 Asperger's disorder and, 1:94  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:152, 153  
 brief psychotic disorder and, 1:174  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:178  
 cocaine and, 1:257  
 compulsion and, 1:277  
 dermatillomania and, 1:343  
 exhibitionism and, 1:439  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:805–810  
 reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:968  
*See also names of specific types of obsessions*  
 Obsessional doubting, 2:807  
 Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), 2:805, 805–810  
 amoxapine for, 1:53  
 as anxiety disorder, 1:77  
 Asperger's disorder and, 1:95  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:106  
 autism and, 1:110  
 behavior modification for, 1:125  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153, 154, 518  
 citalopram for, 1:239  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240  
 clomipramine for, 1:244–246  
 cognitive retraining, 1:270  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265  
 compulsion and, 1:277  
 dermatillomania and, 1:342, 343  
 dopamine and, 1:391  
 doxepin for, 1:392  
 executive function and, 1:435  
 exhibitionism and, 1:440  
 exposure treatment, 1:445–446  
 family psychoeducation, 1:458  
 female sexual arousal disorder and, 1:471  
 fluoxetine for, 1:481, 482  
 fluvoxamine for, 1:488  
 genetics, 2:824  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
 hypochondriasis and, 1:585  
 interventions, 1:622  
 kleptomania and, 1:646, 647  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:678  
 modeling, 2:736, 738  
 vs. obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:801, 803  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:825  
 vs. panic disorder, 2:838  
 paroxetine for, 2:852  
 Paxil for, 2:860

- pedophilia and, 2:863  
 Prader-Willi syndrome and, 1:515  
 process addiction and, 2:917  
 protriptyline for, 2:920  
 pyromania and, 2:940, 941  
 riluzole for, 2:970  
 schizophrenia and, 2:997  
 selective mutism and, 2:1021  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1023  
 sertraline for, 2:1042  
 social skills training, 2:1076  
 somatization and somatoform disorders and, 2:1081  
 substance-induced anxiety disorder and, 2:1127  
 tic disorders and, 2:1158, 1159, 1160, 1161, 1162–1163  
 toilet phobia and, 2:1164  
 transcranial magnetic stimulation, 2:677  
 trazodone for, 2:1175  
 trichillomania and, 2:1180  
 trimipramine for, 2:1186  
 venlafaxine for, 2:1204  
 voyeurism and, 2:1211  
 yoga for, 2:1227
- Obsessive-compulsive personality disorder (OCPD), 2:801–805, 876**
- Obstructive sleep apnea.** *See* Breathing-related sleep disorder
- Obstructive sleep apnea syndrome,** 1:168, 169, 170
- Oby-trim.** *See* Phentermine
- Occupational therapy,** 2:1119
- OCD (Obsessive-compulsive disorder).** *See* Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD)
- ODD (Oppositional defiant disorder).** *See* Oppositional defiant disorder
- Oenothera biennis*, 1:433
- Office of National Drug Control Policy, U.S.,** 1:403
- Off-label drug use**
- antipsychotics, 1:326
  - ariPIPrazole, 1:90
  - attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:107
  - chronic pain, 1:233, 234
  - clonazepam, 1:247
  - gabepentin, 1:493
  - nicotine addiction, 2:778
  - Paxil, 2:860
  - premature ejaculation, 2:910
  - selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, 2:1023
  - trazodone, 2:1175
- Oils, essential.** *See* Essential oils
- Olanzapine, 2:810–813**
- for brief psychotic disorder, 1:175
  - CATIE and, 1:215, 216
  - vs. clozapine, 1:252
  - for delusional disorder, 1:318
  - diets for, 1:363
  - for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631
- medication-induced movement disorders from, 2:701
- neuroleptic malignant syndrome**
- from, 2:766
  - for paranoia, 2:842
  - vs. quetiapine, 2:946
  - risperidone and, 2:972
  - for schizoaffective disorder, 2:988, 989
  - for schizophrenia, 2:999
  - tardive dyskinesia and, 2:1146
  - vs. ziprasidone, 2:1233
- Older people.** *See* Elderly
- Oleic acid,** 1:433
- Olestra,** 2:798
- Olfactory hallucinations,** 1:546
- Oliver, George,** 1:23
- Omega-3 fatty acids,** 2:788
- Omeprazole,** 1:90, 251, 385
- On Death and Dying* (Kübler-Ross), 1:530
- On Feigned and Factitious Diseases* (Gavin), 1:451
- On Narcissism* (Freud), 2:754–755
- Oncovin.** *See* Vincristine
- Ondansetron,** 1:180
- On-line therapy.** *See* Internet-based therapy
- Onychophagia,** 1:244
- Operant conditioning**
- aversion therapy, 1:115
  - behavior modification and, 1:124, 125
  - cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:263, 264
  - covert sensitization and, 1:297
  - pain disorder, 2:833
  - reinforcement in, 2:957
- Opiate antagonists,** 1:343, 2:751–752
- Opiates.** *See* Opioids
- Opioid agonists,** 1:347, 2:817
- Opioid agonists-antagonists,** 2:817
- Opioid antagonists,** 2:817, 858, 917
- Opioids and related disorders,** 2:813–818, 814
- acupuncture, 1:8
  - addiction, 1:16
  - cannabis and, 1:202
  - chlorpromazine and, 1:231
  - for chronic pain, 1:234
  - clomipramine and, 1:246
  - clonazepam and, 1:248
  - clozapine and, 1:253
  - delirium from, 1:312
  - desipramine and, 1:345
  - detoxification, 1:346, 347–348, 349, 350
  - diphenhydramine and, 1:368
  - haloperidol and, 1:552, 553
  - mesoridazine and, 2:721
  - methadone and, 2:721, 722, 723
  - methylphenidate and, 2:725–726
  - molindone and, 2:740
  - monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743
- naltrexone for, 2:751–751
- neurotransmitters and,** 2:774
- for pain disorder, 2:833
- perphenazine and, 2:870
- tic disorders and, 2:1158
- urine drug screening for, 2:1191
- Vivitrol and, 2:1206, 1207
- withdrawal, 1:347
- Opium,** 1:347, 2:813
- Oppositional defiant disorder (ODD), 2:818–821**
- Asperger's disorder and, 1:95
  - conduct disorder and, 1:281
  - elimination disorders and, 1:416
  - encopresis and, 1:418
  - enuresis and, 1:425
  - juvenile depression and, 1:633
  - parent management training, 2:849
  - reading disorder and, 2:956
- Oral contraceptives**
- aprepitant and, 1:88
  - barbiturates and, 1:122
  - caffeine and, 1:197
  - carbamazepine and, 1:205–206
  - for premenstrual syndrome, 2:913–914
  - stroke and, 2:1120
  - triazolam and, 2:1179
- Oral surgery,** 1:335
- Orap.** *See* Pimozide
- Organizational psychology.** *See* Industrial and organizational psychology
- Orgasmic disorder**
- female (*See* Female orgasmic disorder (FOD))
  - male (*See* Male orgasmic disorder)
- Orgasmic reconditioning,** 1:441
- Orgasmic reorientation,** 1:478
- Origin of mental illnesses,** 2:821–829
- ancient theories, 2:821–824
  - current theories, 2:824–828
  - future directions, 2:828–829
- Orlistat.** *See* Xenical
- Ornish, Dean,** 2:709–710
- Orphenadrine,** 1:485, 2:870
- Orthostatic hypotension.** *See* Hypotension
- Orton, Samuel Torrey,** 2:956
- Osler, William,** 1:200
- Osteoarthritis.** *See* Arthritis
- Osteopathys,** 1:159
- Osteoporosis,** 1:64, 197
- OTC drugs.** *See* Over-the-counter drugs (OTC)
- Our Inner Conflicts* (Horney), 2:772
- Outpatient care**
- advance directives and, 1:25
  - assertive community treatment, 1:97–99
  - for cocaine abuse, 1:260
  - community mental health, 1:273

for detoxification, 1:346, 347–348, 349, 350  
 Matrix model, 2:699  
 for opioid dependence, 2:817  
 for schizophrenia, 2:999  
**Overcompensation**, 1:100, 101  
**Overdose**, 1:60, 131, 145, 227  
**Overflow incontinence.** *See*  
*Encopresis*  
**Overmedication**, 1:312  
**Over-the-counter drugs (OTC)**  
 amphetamines and, 1:56–57  
 appetite suppressants, 1:85–86  
 caffeine, 1:195  
 disulfiram and, 1:384, 385  
**Overvalued ideas**, 1:319, 320  
**Oxacarbazepine**, 2:743  
**Oxandrin.** *See* Oxandrolone  
**Oxandrolone**, 2:1102  
**Oxazepam**, 1:510, 2:**829–830**  
**Ox-Pam.** *See* Oxazepam  
**Oxycodone**, 1:16, 248, 2:813  
**OxyContin.** *See* Oxycodone  
**Oxygen**, 1:322, 437  
**Oxymetholone**, 2:1102  
**Oxymorphone**, 2:722  
**Oxygen, blood.** *See* Blood oxygen

## P

**Pack rat behavior.** *See* Hoarding  
**Paclitaxel**, 1:88  
**Pain**  
 acupuncture for, 1:7, 8  
 amitriptyline for, 1:47  
 bodywork therapies, 1:158–159  
 cannabis for, 1:200  
 carbamazepine for, 1:205  
 chlordiazepoxide for, 1:228  
 clomipramine for, 1:244  
 desipramine for, 1:344  
 fatigue from, 1:463  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 kava kava for, 1:643  
 reactive attachment disorder of  
 infancy or early childhood from,  
 2:953–953  
 sexual masochism and, 2:848–849,  
 1047–1049  
 sexual sadism and, 2:848–849,  
 1049–1052  
*See also* Chronic pain  
**Pain disorder**, 1:396, 397, 2:**831–835**,  
 1080–1081  
**Pain relievers.** *See* Analgesics  
**Painkillers.** *See* Analgesics  
**PAIRS (Practical Application of**  
*Intimate Relationship Skills
**Palmitic acid**, 1:433  
**Pamelor.** *See* Nortriptyline  
**Panax.** *See* Ginseng  
**Pancreatic cancer**, 2:825*

**Pancreatitis**, 2:1201  
**PANDAS (Pediatric autoimmune**  
*neuropsychiatric disorders associated with streptococcal infections)*,  
 2:806, 825  
**Panic attack**, 2:835, **835–836**  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:12  
 agoraphobia and, 1:26, 28  
 anxiety disorders and, 1:77  
 caffeine and, 1:196  
 cocaine and, 1:257  
 creative therapies, 1:299  
 depersonalization and, 1:334, 335  
 exposure treatment, 1:445  
 hypoactive sexual desire disorder  
 and, 1:582  
 kleptomania and, 1:646  
 panic disorder and, 2:836, 837–838  
 tic disorders and, 2:1163  
**Panic disorder**, 2:**836–841**  
 agoraphobia and, 1:26, 27, 28  
 alprazolam for, 1:36  
 amoxapine for, 1:53  
 as anxiety disorder, 1:77  
 bupropion for, 1:189  
 citalopram for, 1:238–239  
 clomipramine for, 1:244  
 clonazepam, 1:247  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy,  
 1:265  
 depersonalization and, 1:334, 335  
 dermatillomania and, 1:342  
 desipramine for, 1:344  
 dissociative identity disorder and,  
 1:381  
 doxepin for, 1:392  
 exposure treatment, 1:445  
 fluoxetine for, 1:482  
 genetics, 1:515  
 genetics and, 2:824  
 Hamilton Anxiety Scale, 1:559  
 hypochondriasis and, 1:585, 586  
 Internet-based therapy, 1:616  
 malingering and, 2:688  
 meditation for, 2:706  
 nortriptyline for, 2:782  
 panic attacks in, 2:835  
 paroxetine for, 2:852  
 Paxil for, 2:860, 861  
 polysomnography for, 2:896  
 protriptyline for, 2:920  
 riluzole for, 2:970  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhib-  
 itors for, 2:1023  
 sertraline for, 2:1042  
 social phobia and, 2:1069, 1070  
 somatization disorder and, 2:1082  
 vs. specific phobias, 2:1087  
 tranylcypromine for, 2:1172  
 trazodone for, 2:1175  
 trimipramine for, 2:1186  
**Pantoprazole**, 1:251  
**Papaverine**, 1:430  
**Paralysis**, 1:288  
*sleep (See* Sleep paralysis)

**Paranoia**, 2:**841–843**  
 borderline personality disorder  
 and, 1:162  
 brief psychotic disorder and, 1:172  
 cannabis and, 1:202  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the  
 Elderly and, 1:240  
 delirium and, 1:313  
 delusional disorder and, 1:316, 317  
 delusions and, 1:320–321  
 dementia and, 1:323  
 hallucinogens and, 1:549  
 mesoridazine for, 2:719  
 methamphetamine and, 2:724  
 schizophrenia and, 2:842, 996  
 schizotypal personality disorder  
 and, 2:1006  
**Paranoid personality disorder**  
 (PPD), 1:460, 2:842, **843–848**, 875,  
 987, 1008  
**Paraphilias**, 1:115, 439–443, 440,  
 477–478, 2:**848–849**  
*See also names of specific*  
*paraphilias*  
**Parasomnia**, 2:896, 1057, 1061–1062  
**Parcopresis.** *See* Toilet phobia  
**Parent management training (PMT)**,  
 1:267, 2:**849–852**  
**Parents**  
 autism and, 1:110, 112, 113  
 avoidant personality disorder and,  
 1:117  
 body dysmorphic disorder and,  
 1:153, 155  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:177  
 bullying and, 1:187  
 cognitive problem-solving skills  
 training and, 1:266–267  
 conduct disorder and, 1:282, 283  
**Conners' Rating Scales-Revised**  
 and, 1:284–285  
 dependent personality disorder  
 and, 1:331, 332, 333  
 factitious disorder and, 1:452  
 family therapy, 1:459, 460  
 feeding disorder of infancy or early  
 childhood and, 1:466  
 generalized anxiety disorder and,  
 1:508, 510  
 genomic imprinting and, 1:514  
 inhalant use and, 1:603–604  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:619–620  
 juvenile depression and, 1:633  
 multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
 narcissistic personality disorder  
 and, 2:754–755, 758  
 neglect by, 2:764–765  
 obsessive-compulsive personality  
 disorder and, 2:802, 804  
 oppositional defiant disorder and,  
 2:820, 821  
 parent management training,  
 2:849–851  
 pathological gambling disorder  
 and, 2:858

- vs. peer groups, 2:866, 867  
 play therapy, 2:894–895  
 pyromania and, 2:941  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 2:952–954  
 rumination disorder and, 2:983, 984  
 schizoid personality disorder and, 2:991  
 selective mutism and, 2:1021  
 separation anxiety disorder and, 2:1037–1041  
 social phobia and, 2:1070  
*See also* Fathers; Mothers
- Paresthesia, 1:580  
 Pargyline, 1:239  
 Parkinsonism  
   electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408  
   from fluphenazine, 1:485  
   from haloperidol, 1:552  
   from mesoridazine, 2:720  
   from molindone, 2:740  
   from pimozide, 2:892  
   from quetiapine, 2:947  
   from risperidone, 2:974  
   from thioridazine, 2:1154  
   from trifluoperazine, 2:1183  
   trihexyphenidyl for, 2:1184
- Parkinson's disease  
   amantadine for, 1:45  
   biperiden for, 1:130, 144  
   brain imaging, 1:167  
   bupropion and, 1:190  
   chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
   dementia and, 1:322, 324  
   diphenhydramine for, 1:366  
   dopamine and, 1:390, 391  
   imaging studies, 1:594  
   magnetic seizure therapy, 2:678  
   meditation for, 2:706  
   monoamine oxidase inhibitors for, 2:742  
   as movement disorder, 2:745  
   neuroleptic malignant syndrome and, 2:766  
   neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
   nutrition and, 2:789  
   paranoia and, 2:842  
*See also* Anti-parkinsonian agents
- Parodel. *See* Bromocriptine  
 Parnate. *See* Tranylcypromine  
 Paroxetine, 2:852–854  
   for body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
   for dementia, 1:326  
   for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
   for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340t  
   for dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
   galantamine and, 1:495  
   for generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
   for juvenile depression, 1:634  
   for obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809  
   olanzapine and, 2:812  
   pimozide and, 2:892  
   for postpartum depression, 2:908  
   quetiapine and, 2:947  
   for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
   as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor, 2:1023  
   for specific phobias, 2:1089  
   in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
   zaleplon and, 2:1232  
   zolpidem and, 2:1236
- Parsons, Talcott, 1:619  
 Partial reinforcement. *See* Reinforcement  
 Partial seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Participant modeling. *See* Modeling  
 Partington's Pathways. *See* Trail Making Test  
 Paruresis. *See* Toilet phobia  
*Passiflora incarnata.* *See* Passionflower  
 Passion vine. *See* Passionflower  
 Passionflower, 1:510, 2:854, 854–856  
 Passive-aggressiveness, 2:821  
 Passivity, 1:330  
 Pastoral counselors, 1:624  
 Patanjali, 2:1227  
 PATH (Projects for Assistance in Transition from Homelessness), 1:572  
 Pathological gambling disorder, 2:856–859, 857  
   aversion therapy, 1:115  
   as impulse-control disorder, 1:597  
   Internet addiction disorder and, 1:612, 613  
   as process addiction, 2:916, 917  
   reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
 Pathological skin picking. *See* Dermatillomania  
 Pathomimia. *See* Factitious disorder  
 Patient care episodes, 1:309–310  
 Pavabid. *See* Papaverine  
 Pavlov, Ivan, 1:263, 2:1221  
 Pavlovian conditioning. *See* Classical conditioning  
 Paxil and Paxil CR, 2:860, 860–862  
   pimozide and, 2:892  
   quetiapine and, 2:947  
   for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
   as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor, 2:1023  
   for specific phobias, 2:1089  
*See also* Paroxetine
- Paxipam. *See* Galantamine  
 PCMI (Program on Chronic Mental Illness), 1:274  
 PCP (Phencyclidine). *See* Phencyclidine and related disorders  
 PD (Panic disorder). *See* Panic disorder
- PDD (Pervasive developmental disorders). *See* Pervasive developmental disorders (PDD)  
 PDE-5 (Phosphodiesterase 5), 1:427, 430  
 PDI (Peters Delusion Inventory), 1:318  
 PE (Premature ejaculation). *See* Premature ejaculation (PE)  
 Pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with streptococcal infections (PANDAS), 2:806, 825  
 Pedophilia, 1:440, 441, 2:848, 862–866  
 Peer groups, 2:866–868, 867  
   alcohol-related disorders and, 1:32  
   binge drinking and, 1:137  
   inhahalant use and, 1:601  
   Internet addiction disorder and, 1:612  
   pyromania and, 2:941  
 Pellegra, 2:789  
 PEM (Protein-energy malnutrition), 1:463  
 PemADD. *See* Pemoline  
 Pemoline, 2:868–869  
   as amphetamine, 1:56  
   for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
   for attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:107  
   pimozide and, 2:891  
   tic disorders and, 2:1158  
 Penetrance, 1:512  
 Penis, 1:427–428, 429, 430, 583  
 Pentazocine, 2:1024  
 Pentobarbital. *See* Barbiturates  
 Pentothal. *See* Thiopental  
*Peoplemaking* (Satir), 1:460  
 Peppermint, 1:181  
 Perception  
   acute stress disorder and, 1:11, 12  
   Bender Gestalt Test, 1:126–128  
   Children's Apperception Test, 1:224–226  
   disorder of written expression and, 1:369  
   hallucinations and, 1:545–546  
   hallucinogens and, 1:547, 549, 550  
   learning disorders and, 1:658  
 Perfectionism, 1:62–63, 2:801, 819, 1035  
 Performance anxiety, 1:134  
 Periodic limb movement, 2:897  
 Perls, Fritz, 1:539  
 Permitil. *See* Fluphenazine  
 Perphenazine, 1:215, 216, 2:869–871, 998  
 Persecutory delusions. *See* Delusions  
 Personality disorders, 2:875–876  
   addiction and, 1:16–17  
   vs. adjustment disorders, 1:20  
   binge eating and, 1:139  
   brief psychotic disorder and, 1:173, 175  
   bulimia nervosa and, 1:179, 180

- co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291
- cyclothymic disorder and, 1:306
- denial in, 1:329
- in Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:355, 357, 358
- dissociative identity disorder and, 1:372, 379
- Ganser's syndrome with, 1:496
- intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:610
- major depressive disorder and, 2:682
- narcissistic personality disorder, 2:753–754
- obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:810
- person-centered therapy, 2:873
- post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904
- psychosis in, 2:931
- schizoaffective disorder and, 2:987
- sleep terror disorder and, 2:1062
- social skills training, 2:1076
- trauma and, 2:827
- See also names of specific personality disorders*
- Personality integration, 1:383
- Personality tests, 1:224–226
- Person-centered therapy, 1:539, 2:871–875
- Perspectival model, 1:358–359
- Pervasive developmental disorders (PDD), 1:93–97, 109–110, 222, 223, 2:876–877, 1101, 1106
- Pessimism. *See* Negativism
- PET (Positron emission tomography). *See* Positron emission tomography (PET)
- Pet therapy, 1:300, 2:683
- Petechia, 1:178
- Peters Delusion Inventory (PDI), 1:318
- Petit mal seizures. *See* Seizures
- Peyote, 1:547, 548
- Peyronie's disease, 1:429, 583
- Pharmacological aversants, 1:115, 116
- Pharmacotherapy
- cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:265
  - compliance, 1:275, 276
  - co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:293
  - deinstitutionalization and, 1:310
  - detoxification, 1:347–349
  - for fatigue, 1:465
  - genetics, 1:518
  - as intervention, 1:623
  - neuropsychiatry and, 2:768
  - for obesity, 2:798–799
  - for opioid dependence, 2:817, 818
  - origin of mental illnesses, 2:822–823
  - stigma, 2:1106
- See also names of specific therapeutic drugs*
- Phase shift hypothesis, 2:1010
- Phenacetin, 2:972
- Phencyclidine and related disorders, 2:877–881, 878
- cannabis and, 1:202
  - vs. cocaine intoxication, 1:202
  - delirium from, 1:312
  - hallucinations from, 1:545
  - as hallucinogen, 1:547
  - intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:611
  - paranoia from, 2:842
  - urine drug screening and, 2:1191
- Phendimetrazine, 1:84
- Phenelzine, 2:881–883
- amitriptyline and, 1:48
  - amoxapine and, 1:54
  - as antidepressant, 1:340t
  - citalopram and, 1:239
  - diets and, 1:364
  - disulfiram and, 1:385
  - doxepin and, 1:393
  - for dysthymic disorder, 1:400
  - fluvoxamine and, 1:488
  - ginseng and, 1:528
  - imipramine and, 1:596
  - methadone and, 2:723
  - mirtazapine and, 2:733
  - as monoamine oxidase inhibitor, 2:741, 742
  - nortriptyline and, 2:784
  - for paranoia, 2:842
  - paroxetine and, 2:853
  - protriptyline and, 2:921
- Phenindione, 1:552
- Phenobarbital
- as barbiturate, 1:121
  - carbamazepine and, 1:205
  - clonazepam and, 1:248
  - clonidine and, 1:250
  - for detoxification, 1:347, 349
  - divalproex sodium and, 1:387
  - lamotrigine and, 1:649
  - paroxetine and, 2:853
  - pimozide and, 2:892
  - propranolol and, 2:920
  - for sedative withdrawal, 2:1015
  - for seizures, 2:1019
  - valproic acid and, 2:1201
- Phenomenological model, 1:356, 357, 538
- Phenothiazines
- chlorpromazine and, 1:230, 231
  - diphenhydramine and, 1:366
  - fluphenazine and, 1:484
  - kava kava and, 1:644
  - male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686
  - maprotiline and, 2:695
  - vs. olanzapine, 2:810
  - perphenazine and, 2:869
  - quetiapine and, 2:946
  - thioridazine and, 2:1153
  - for tic disorders, 2:1161
- Phenotypes, behavioral. *See* Behavioral phenotypes
- Phentermine, 1:85
- Phentolamine, 1:430
- Phenylalanine, 1:628, 2:787, 811
- Phenylephrine, 2:743
- Phenylketonuria (PKU), 2:716–717, 719, 787, 811
- Phenylpropanolamine, 1:627, 2:743
- Phenytoin
- carbamazepine and, 1:205
  - clonazepam and, 1:248
  - clonidine and, 1:250
  - disulfiram and, 1:385
  - divalproex sodium and, 1:387
  - donepezil and, 1:389
  - evening primrose oil and, 1:434
  - fluoxetine and, 1:483
  - fluvoxamine and, 1:489
  - lamotrigine and, 1:649
  - maprotiline and, 2:695
  - molindone and, 2:740
  - Paxil and, 2:862
  - propranolol and, 2:920
  - quetiapine and, 2:947
  - for seizures, 2:1019
  - trifluoperazine and, 2:1184
  - valproic acid and, 2:1201
- Pheochromocytoma, 2:918
- Phobias. *See* Agoraphobia; Social phobia; Toilet phobia; *specific phobias*
- Phonological disorder, 1:165, 449, 2:735, 883–885
- Phosphodiesterase 5 (PDE-5), 1:427, 430
- Phototherapy. *See* Light therapy
- Physical alignment. *See* Bodywork therapies
- Physical manipulation. *See* Bodywork therapies
- Physical realignment. *See* Bodywork therapies
- Physical therapy, 1:465, 2:1119
- Physician-assisted suicide. *See* Assisted suicide
- Physicians, 1:4, 8, 24, 25, 200, 274–276
- See also Psychiatrist*
- Physiological psychology. *See* Biological psychiatry
- Physostigmine, 1:145, 2:695
- Piaget, Jean, 1:637
- Pica, 2:885–888, 886
- Pick, Arnold, 2:888
- Pick bodies, 2:889
- Pick cells, 2:889
- Pick's disease, 1:321–327, 2:888–891
- Pimozide, 1:88, 2:891–892
- for Capgras syndrome, 1:204
  - fluvoxamine and, 1:489
  - nefazodone and, 2:763
  - for tic disorders, 2:1161
  - ziprasidone and, 2:1234
- Pindolol, 2:1154
- Piper methysticum*. *See* Kava kava
- Pituitary gland, 1:583
- PKU (Phenylketonuria). *See* Phenylketonuria (PKU)

- Planning ability, 1:637  
 Plant oils. *See* Essential oils  
 Plants, medicinal. *See* Herbal medicine; *names of specific plants*  
 Plaques, 1:37, 39, 323  
 Platelets, 1:525–526  
 Play therapy, 2:893, **893–896**  
   Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
   as creative therapy, 1:300  
   person-centered therapy, 2:873  
   reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:954  
 Pleasure, loss of. *See* Anhedonia  
 Plegine. *See* Phendimetrazine  
 PMDD (Premenstrual dysphoric disorder). *See* Premenstrual syndrome (PMS)  
 PMS (Premenstrual syndrome). *See* Premenstrual syndrome (PMS)  
 Poisoning, lead. *See* Lead poisoning  
 Polarity therapy, 1:419, 421–422  
 Police, 1:100  
 Political correctness, 1:357–358  
 Polymyositis, 1:288  
 Polysomnography, 1:170, 2:760, **896–898**, 1059  
 Polysubstance dependence, 2:722, 878, 879, **898–899**  
 Polysurgical addiction. *See* Factitious disorder  
 Pomeroy, W. B., 1:472  
 Pondimin. *See* Fenfluramine  
 Pons, 1:164  
 Porphyria, 1:227, 229  
 La Posada, 1:301  
 Positional therapy, 1:170  
 Positive imagery, 1:542  
 Positive reinforcement. *See* Reinforcement  
 Positive symptoms, 2:**899**  
   of brief psychotic disorder, 1:172–173, 174  
   vs. negative symptoms, 2:764  
   schizophrenia, 2:996, 998  
   schizopreniform disorder, 2:1002  
   *See also* Negative symptoms  
 Positron emission tomography (PET), 2:**899–901**, 900  
   Alzheimer's disease, 1:41  
   brain, 1:167  
   bulimia nervosa, 1:182  
   cocaine abuse, 1:259  
   dementia, 1:322, 326  
   depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
   factitious disorder, 1:453  
   as imaging study, 1:593–594  
   intermittent explosive disorder, 1:610  
   neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
   obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:806  
   suicide markers, 2:1137  
 Post synaptic membrane, 2:773  
 Postpartum depression, 2:679, **906–908**, 907  
 Postpartum psychosis, 1:173, 175, 2:1004, 1006  
 Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), **2:901–906**  
   from abuse, 1:5  
   acute stress disorder and, 1:11, 12, 13, 14  
   vs. adjustment disorders, 1:20  
   as anxiety disorder, 1:77  
   aromatherapy, 1:92  
   bereavement and, 1:132–133  
   bipolar disorder and, 1:147  
   bodywork therapies and, 1:157  
   borderline personality disorder and, 1:163  
   bulimia nervosa and, 1:177  
   Child Depression Inventory and, 1:220  
   citalopram for, 1:239  
   clonazepam for, 1:247  
   co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291  
   crisis intervention and, 1:304  
   depersonalization and, 1:334, 335  
   vs. depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
   dermatillomania and, 1:342  
   in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:358  
   dissociation and, 1:371  
   dissociative identity disorder and, 1:380–381  
   dual diagnosis, 1:394  
   dual diagnosis and, 1:395  
   dyspareunia and, 1:397  
   ecstasy for, 1:406  
   energy therapies and, 1:420  
   exposure treatment for, 1:446  
   female sexual arousal disorder and, 1:471  
   vs. generalized anxiety disorder, 1:506  
   genetics and, 1:515  
   Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
   guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
   interventions, 1:622  
   magnetic seizure therapy, 2:678  
   malingering and, 2:688  
   modeling for, 2:736  
   narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:757  
   nightmares from, 2:781  
   opioid dependence and, 2:816  
   vs. panic disorder, 2:838  
   paroxetine for, 2:852  
   Paxil for, 2:860, 861  
   reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood as, 2:952  
   reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
   selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1023  
   self mutilation and, 2:1034  
   sertraline for, 2:1042  
 sleep terror disorder and, 2:1062  
 social phobia and, 2:1069  
 stress and, 2:1111  
   from trauma, 2:828  
 Postural tremors. *See* Tremors  
 Posture, 1:156, 170  
 Potassium, 1:178, 179  
 Poverty, 1:292, 570, 571, 572, 601  
*Power and Innocence: A Search for the Sources of Violence* (May), 1:81  
 PPH (Primary pulmonary hypertension). *See* Primary pulmonary hypertension (PPH)  
 PPO (Preferred provider organizations). *See* Managed care  
 Practical Application of Intimate Relationship Skills (PAIRS), 1:296  
*Practice Guidelines for the Treatment of Psychiatric Disorders*, 1:408  
 Prader-Willi syndrome, 1:514, 515  
 Pragmatic language skills, 1:94  
 Pranayama, 2:1227, 1228  
 Pratt, Joseph, 1:538  
 Prayer, 1:13, 2:829  
 Precautions. *See names of specific drugs or treatments*  
 Predisposition. *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders  
 Prednisolone, 2:947  
 Prednisone, 2:947  
 Preferred provider organizations (PPO). *See* Managed care  
 Prefrontal cortex  
   cocaine and, 1:258  
   dopamine and, 1:390, 391  
   executive function, 1:495–496  
   juvenile depression and, 1:644  
   in major depressive disorder, 2:680  
   neurotransmitters and, 2:774  
   in psychosurgery, 2:933–934  
   schizophrenia and, 2:995  
 Prefrontal leucotomy. *See* Psychosurgery  
 Prefrontal lobotomy. *See* Psychosurgery  
 Pregnancy, false. *See* Pseudocyesis  
 Pregnancy contraindications. *See* names of specific drugs or treatments  
 Prelu-2. *See* Phendimetrazine  
 Premature ejaculation (PE), 2:860, **909–910**  
 Premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD). *See* Premenstrual syndrome (PMS)  
 Premenstrual syndrome (PMS), **2:911–915**  
   citalopram for, 1:239  
   depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
   evening primrose oil for, 1:433  
   fluoxetine for, 1:481, 482  
   nortriptyline for, 2:782  
   Paxil for, 2:860, 861

- reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1023  
 stress and, 2:1110
- Preoperational stage, 2:893  
 PREP program, 1:296  
 Prescription drugs, 1:16  
 Presenile dementia. *See* Alzheimer's disease  
 Presynaptic membrane, 2:772, 773  
 Prevention. *See names of specific disorders*  
 Priapism, 1:429, 583, 2:1176  
 Primary enuresis. *See* Enuresis  
 Primary gain, 1:286  
 Primary hypersomnia. *See* Hypersomnia  
 Primary insomnia. *See* Insomnia  
 Primary progressive aphasia. *See* Pick's disease  
 Primary pulmonary hypertension (PPH), 1:84, 85  
 PRIME-MD, 1:509  
 Primidone, 1:205, 250, 649, 2:1201  
 Prions, 1:322, 323  
 Prison psychosis. *See* Ganser's syndrome  
 Prisoners. *See* Incarceration  
 Problem-solving skills  
   cognitive retraining, 1:271  
   conduct disorder and, 1:283  
   crisis intervention and, 1:302, 303  
   gender issues in mental health, 1:503, 504, 505  
   generalized anxiety disorder and, 1:510  
   rational emotive therapy, 2:951  
   relapse prevention, 2:959  
   self mutilation and, 2:1036  
   *See also* Cognitive problem-solving skills training  
 Procarbazine, 1:239  
 Process addiction, 1:597, 612, 2:915–918, 1180, 1211  
 Process-experiential therapy, 2:872  
 Prochlorperazine, 2:701  
 Procyclidine, 2:853, 862  
 Progesterone, 2:907, 911, 912, 913, 914  
 Progesterone replacement, 2:835  
 Prognosis. *See names of specific disorders*  
 Program on Chronic Mental Illness (PCMI), 1:274  
 Progressive relaxation. *See* Relaxation  
 Projective tests, 1:224–226, 479–481  
   *See also names of specific tests*  
 Projects for Assistance in Transition from Homelessness (PATH), 1:572  
 Prolactin  
   dopamine and, 1:390  
   ecstasy and, 1:405  
 molindone and, 2:740  
 postpartum depression and, 2:907  
 premenstrual syndrome and, 2:912, 914  
 pseudocyesis and, 2:923  
 thioridazine and, 2:1153  
 trifluoperazine and, 2:1183  
 Prolactinoma, 1:583, 584  
 Prolixin. *See* Fluphenazine  
 Promethazine, 2:701  
 Prophylactic therapy, 1:130, 493, 2:1185  
 Propoxyphene, 1:205, 2:813, 1191  
 Propranolol, 2:918–920  
   for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
   as beta blocker, 1:134  
   caffeine and, 1:197  
   for intermittent explosive disorder, 1:611  
   male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686  
   for medication-induced movement disorders, 2:704, 705  
   for seasonal affective disorder, 2:1011  
   tacrine and, 2:1144  
   thioridazine and, 2:1154  
   thiothixene and, 2:1156  
   trifluoperazine and, 2:1184  
 Propulsid. *See* Cisapride  
 Prosom. *See* Estazolam  
 Prostaglandins, 1:433, 2:912, 914  
 Prostep, 2:778  
 Prosthetics, 1:431  
 Protein, 2:787, 996  
 Protein phosphatases, 2:1146  
 Protriptyline, 1:53, 594, 2:686, 920–922  
 Provera. *See* Progesterone  
 Provigil. *See* Modafinil  
 Proxies, 1:24  
 Prozac. *See* Fluoxetine  
 Pseudoblindness, 1:287  
 Pseudocoma, 1:286, 287  
 Pseudocyesis, 2:922–924  
 Pseudodementia, 1:326  
 Pseudodiplopia, 1:287  
 Pseudoephedrine, 1:58, 628, 2:743  
 Pseudohypericin, 2:1092  
 Pseudologia fantastica, 1:453  
 Pseudoneurologic disorder. *See* Conversion disorder  
 Pseudoparalysis, 1:287  
 Pseudoptosis, 1:287  
 Pseudoseizures, 1:286, 287, 290  
 Pseudosensory syndromes, 1:287  
 Psilocybin, 1:547, 548, 549  
 Psilocyn, 1:548  
 Psychedelics. *See* Hallucinogens and related disorders; *names of specific psychedelic drugs*  
 Psychiatric advance directives. *See* Advance directives  
 Psychiatric assessment. *See* Assessment and diagnosis  
 Psychiatric disorders. *See names of specific psychiatric disorders*  
 Psychiatric drugs. *See* Pharmacotherapy; *specific drugs by name or class*  
 Psychiatric genetics. *See* Biological psychiatry  
 Psychiatric hospitals. *See* Hospitalization  
 Psychiatrist, 1:623, 2:924  
 Psychiatry, neurological. *See* Neuropsychiatry/behavioral neurology  
 Psychic anxiety, 1:558, 559  
 Psychic numbing, 1:11  
 Psychoactive drugs. *See names of specific psychoactive drugs*  
 Psychoanalysis, 2:925–927  
   cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:263  
   couples therapy, 1:294–295  
   denial and, 1:329  
   diagnosis, 1:355, 356  
   exhibitionism and, 1:439  
   Freud, Sigmund and, 2:930  
   gender issues in mental health, 1:502  
   group therapy, 1:538  
   histrionic personality disorder, 1:567  
   interpersonal therapy, 1:617  
   as intervention, 1:622  
   Klein, Melanie and, 2:894  
   masochism, 2:848  
   narcissistic personality disorder, 2:757  
   neurosis, 2:771–772  
   obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:802  
   *vs.* person-centered therapy, 2:871  
   psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:927–928  
   psychotherapy, 2:935  
   pyromania, 2:941  
   sadism, 2:848–849  
   trichillomania, 2:1181  
 Psychodrama, 1:298, 538–539  
 Psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:927–929  
   adjustment disorders, 1:20  
   agoraphobia, 1:29–30  
   anorexia nervosa, 1:64  
   avoidant personality disorder, 1:119  
   cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:263  
   conversion disorder, 1:288  
   dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
   depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
   group therapy, 1:538  
   histrionic personality disorder, 1:567  
   interpersonal therapy, 1:617  
   major depressive disorder, 2:682

- obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809  
 panic disorder, 2:839  
 pathological gambling disorder, 2:858  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
 as psychotherapy, 2:935  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:992  
 schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1008  
 specific phobias, 2:1089  
 Psychodynamic theory, 2:826–827  
 Psychoeducation  
   interpersonal therapy, 1:618–619  
   intervention, 1:623  
   major depressive disorder, 2:683–684  
   schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
   STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
   vs. support groups, 2:1138  
   *See also* Family education; Family psychoeducation  
 Psychogenic amnesia. *See* Dissociative amnesia  
 Psychogenic disorder. *See* Conversion disorder  
 Psychogenic excoriation. *See* Dermatotillomania  
 Psychogenic movement disorders. *See* Movement disorders  
 Psychogenic pain disorder. *See* Pain disorder  
 Psychological abuse. *See* Abuse  
 Psychological assessment. *See* Assessment and diagnosis  
 Psychological disorders. *See names of specific psychological disorders*  
 Psychological history. *See* Assessment and diagnosis  
 Psychological tests. *See names of specific tests*; Neuropsychological testing  
 Psychologist, 1:623, 2:924, **929–931**  
 Psychology, 2:929–931  
   *See also names of specific subfields*  
 Psychometry, 1:220  
 Psychomotor disorders, 1:210–211  
 Psychomotor seizures. *See* Seizures  
 Psychopathology, 1:355, 356, 358  
 Psychopathy. *See* Antisocial personality disorder (APD)  
 Psychophysical integration. *See* Tragerwork  
 Psychoses. *See* Psychosis  
 Psychosexual therapy, 1:430  
 Psychosis, 2:**931–932**  
   addiction and, 1:16  
   from amphetamines, 1:58  
   ariPIPrazole for, 1:90  
   Asperger's disorder and, 1:96–97  
   borderline personality disorder and, 1:161, 162  
   Capgras syndrome and, 1:203, 204  
   catatonia and, 1:210  
   catatonic disorders and, 1:214  
   chlorpromazine for, 1:229–232  
   Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240, 241  
   clozapine for, 1:251  
   from cocaine, 1:255, 257  
   co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:291  
   creative therapies, 1:299  
   delirium and, 1:313, 314  
   delusions in, 1:319  
   in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:355–356  
   electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408  
   energy therapies, 1:420, 422  
   factitious disorder and, 1:452  
   family therapy, 1:459, 460  
   fluphenazine for, 1:484  
   Ganser's syndrome and, 1:496  
   Gestalt therapy, 1:521, 524  
   hallucinations in, 1:545  
   hallucinogens and, 1:549, 550  
   haloperidol for, 1:551–553  
   from imipramine, 1:595  
   loxapine for, 1:666–667  
   major depressive disorder and, 2:679  
   manic episode and, 2:693  
   from methamphetamine, 2:724–725  
   molindone for, 2:739  
   multisystemic therapy, 2:746  
   vs. neurosis, 2:772  
   nortriptyline and, 2:783  
   perphenazine for, 2:869–870  
   vs. pervasive developmental disorders, 2:876  
   from phencyclidine, 2:878, 880  
   positive symptoms in, 2:899  
   risperidone for, 2:972  
   schizoaffective disorder and, 2:986–987, 988  
   schizophreniform disorder and, 2:1002–1005  
   stigma, 2:1105  
   thioridazine for, 2:1153  
   trifluoperazine for, 2:1182  
   *See also* Antipsychotics; Brief psychotic disorder;  
   Schizophrenia; Shared psychotic disorder; Substance-induced psychotic disorder  
 Psychosis of association. *See* Shared psychotic disorder  
 Psychosocial interventions, 1:623  
 Psychosocial problems, 1:355  
 Psychosomatic disorders. *See* Somatization and somatoform disorders  
 Psychostimulants. *See* Stimulants  
 Psychosurgery, 2:**932–935**, 933  
 Psychotherapeutics. *See names of specific drugs*; Pharmacotherapy
- Psychotherapy, 2:935, **935–937**  
   abuse, 1:5  
   acute stress disorder, 1:13  
   addiction, 1:16–17  
   adjustment disorders, 1:20–21  
   agoraphobia, 1:29  
   alcohol-related disorders, 1:34, 35  
   antidepressants, 1:71  
   antisocial personality disorder, 1:75  
   Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
   attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
   bereavement, 1:133  
   bibliotherapy, 1:135  
   bipolar disorder, 1:150  
   body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
   borderline personality disorder, 1:163  
   bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
   chronic pain, 1:234, 2:833  
   cocaine abuse, 1:259–260  
   cyclothymic disorder, 1:307  
   delusional disorder, 1:317  
   depression and depressive disorders, 1:341  
   dermatotillomania, 1:343  
   detoxification, 1:350  
   dissociative amnesia, 1:375  
   dissociative fugue, 1:378–379  
   dissociative identity disorder, 1:380, 383  
   dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
   eating disorders, 1:362  
   ecstasy and, 1:403, 406  
   elimination disorders, 1:417  
   enuresis, 1:426  
   erectile dysfunction, 1:430  
   exhibitionism, 1:441  
   factitious disorder, 1:454  
   fatigue, 1:465  
   female orgasmic disorder, 1:469–470  
   female sexual arousal disorder, 1:473  
   gender identity disorder, 1:500  
   hallucinogen use, 1:550  
   hypnotherapy in, 1:578  
   hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:584  
   hypochondriasis, 1:586, 588  
   as intervention, 1:622–623  
   juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
   juvenile depression, 1:634  
   kleptomania, 1:647  
   late-life depression, 1:652  
   major depressive disorder, 2:682  
   male orgasmic disorder, 2:687  
   Matrix model, 2:700  
   narcissistic personality disorder, 2:757–758  
   nightmares, 2:782  
   obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809  
   obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803

oppositional defiant disorder, 2:820  
 pain disorder, 2:833  
 paranoid personality disorder, 2:846  
 pedophilia, 2:864  
 postpartum depression, 2:908  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:901  
 premature ejaculation, 2:910  
 pseudocyesis, 2:924  
 psychoanalytic, 2:927  
 psychoanalysis in, 2:925  
 pyromania, 2:943  
 relapse prevention, 2:960  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
 sexual aversion disorder, 2:1045, 1046  
 sexual dysfunctions, 2:1047  
 shared psychotic disorder, 2:1055  
 sleep terror disorder, 2:1062  
 stroke, 2:1119  
 Thematic Apperception Test, 2:1150  
 Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study, 2:1177  
 vaginismus, 2:1194  
*See also names of specific therapies*  
**Psychotherapy integration, 2:937–939**  
**Psychotropic drugs. *See names of specific psychotropic drugs; Pharmacotherapy***  
 Psyllium, 2:799  
 Ptosis, 1:287  
**PTSD (Post-traumatic stress disorder). *See Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)***  
 Puberty, 1:498, 499  
     delayed (*See Delayed puberty*)  
 Public assistance, 1:292  
 Public Citizen's Health Research Group, 2:1196  
 Public finance, 1:273–274  
 Pulse oximetry, 2:897  
 Pulsed electromagnetic field stimulation, 1:422  
 Punishment. *See Reinforcement*  
 Pure word blindness. *See Reading disorder*  
 Purging, 1:176  
 Putamen, 1:391  
 Puusepp, Lodivicus, 2:933  
 Pyridoxine. *See Vitamin B6*  
 Pyromania, 1:597, 2:849, 916, 917, 939–944, 940

**Q**

Qi, 1:7, 9, 421, 527, 2:708  
 Qigong, 1:419, 420–421, 422, 423, 2:707, 708

Quazepam, 1:486, 2:945–946  
**Quetiapine, 2:946–949**  
     for brief psychotic disorder, 1:175  
     CATIE and, 1:215, 216  
     vs. clozapine, 1:252  
     for delusional disorder, 1:318  
     diets for, 1:363  
     for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
     medication-induced movement disorders from, 2:701  
     vs. olanzapine, 2:811  
     vs. risperidone, 2:972  
     for schizoaffective disorder, 2:988  
     for schizophrenia, 2:999  
**Quinidine, 1:197, 389, 2:892, 1234**  
**Quinolones, 2:972**

**R**

**Radionuclides, 2:900, 901**  
**Radiopharmaceuticals. *See Radionuclides***  
**Radner, Gilda, 2:1031**  
**Rage attacks. *See Intermittent explosive disorder (IED)***  
**Ragweed, 1:219**  
**Raja yoga. *See Yoga***  
**Ramelteon, 1:605, 2:1059**  
**Range of motion exercise, 1:438**  
**Ranitidine, 1:251, 2:842**  
**Rape**  
     dyspareunia and, 1:396, 397, 398  
     exposure treatment, 1:446  
     hypoactive sexual desire disorder and, 1:583  
     ketamine for, 1:68  
     post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:901, 902  
     vaginismus and, 2:1194  
**Rapid cycling, 1:147, 148, 149, 150, 503, 629, 630**  
**Rapid eye movement sleep (REM), 1:398, 465, 2:759, 760, 1057**  
**Rasagiline, 2:742, 743**  
**Raskin, Robert R., 2:757**  
**Rat Man, 2:807**  
**Rational behavior therapy. *See Rational emotive therapy***  
**Rational emotive therapy, 1:542, 543, 647, 2:951–952**  
**Rational Recovery (RR). *See Self-help groups***  
**Rationalization, 1:566**  
**Raves, 1:403**  
**Ray, Isaac, 1:356**  
**Razadyne. *See Galantamine***  
**RDS (Reward deficiency syndrome). *See Reward deficiency syndrome (RDS)***  
**Reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood, 2:952–954**  
**Reactive disorders, 1:210**  
**Reading disorder, 1:370, 658, 2:735, 954–957**  
**Realignment, physical. *See Bodywork therapies***  
**Reality testing, 1:335**  
**Reasoning, 1:270–271**  
**Rebound effect, 1:486–487**  
**Rebound insomnia. *See Insomnia***  
**Receptive language skills. *See Communication skills and disorders***  
**Receptors, 2:772–773**  
**Recidivism. *See Relapse and relapse prevention***  
**Recognition, 1:40**  
**Recovered memories, 1:375–376, 379, 380, 383**  
**Recreational drugs. *See names of specific recreational drugs***  
**Rectal prolapse, 1:178**  
**Recurrent hypersomnia, 1:576, 577**  
**Redux. *See Dexfenfluramine***  
**Refecoxib, 1:43**  
**Reflection, 2:873**  
**Reglan. *See Metoclopramide***  
**Regurgitation. *See Rumination disorder***  
**Rehabilitation, 1:34, 268–269, 269–271, 2:1118–1119**  
     vocational (*See Vocational rehabilitation*)  
**Reiki, 1:420, 421, 422, 423**  
**Reinforcement, 2:957–958**  
     autism, 1:113  
     behavior modification, 1:124, 125  
     caffeine, 1:198  
     chronic pain, 1:235  
     cocaine abuse, 1:258  
     cognitive problem-solving skills training, 1:267  
     cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:264  
     couples therapy, 1:295  
     detoxification, 1:349  
     disulfiram and, 1:384  
     enuresis, 1:426  
     history, 2:930  
     Internet addiction disorder, 1:613  
     modeling, 2:736, 738  
     pain disorder, 2:834  
     parent management training, 2:850  
     psychotherapy, 2:935  
     selective mutism, 2:1022  
     token economy system, 2:1166–1167  
     withdrawal, 1:347  
**Reitan, Ralph, 1:554, 555, 2:770**  
**Reitan-Indiana Aphasia Screening Test, 1:556**  
**Reitan-Klove Sensory-Perceptual Examination, 1:556–557**  
**Rejection, 1:117**  
**Relapse and relapse prevention**  
     addiction, 1:17  
     alcohol-related disorders and, 1:34

- bipolar disorder and, 1:150  
 bodywork therapies and, 1:159  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:182  
 CATIE and, 1:215, 216  
 conversion disorder, 1:290  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291  
 crisis housing for, 1:301  
 detoxification and, 1:349, 350  
 dissociative identity disorder, 1:383  
 dual diagnosis and, 1:395  
 eating disorders, 1:362  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:411  
 elimination disorders and, 1:417  
 enuresis, 1:426  
 exhibitionism, 1:441, 442, 443  
 exposure treatment, 1:447  
 family psychoeducation, 1:458  
 inhalant use, 1:603  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:620  
 juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
 kleptomania, 1:647  
 Matrix model, 2:699, 700  
 naltrexone for, 2:751–752  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 2:767  
 nicotine, 2:776, 1068  
 nutrition counseling for, 2:793  
 obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:810  
 opioid, 2:818  
 panic disorder, 2:840  
 pedophilia, 2:863  
 phencyclidine, 2:880  
 process addiction, 2:917  
 reward deficiency syndrome, 2:969, 970  
 schizophrenia, 2:996  
 self-control strategies, 2:1027–1028  
 self-help groups, 2:1032–1033  
 STAR\*D study, 2:1096  
 STEP-BD study, 2:1098–1099  
 stigma, 2:1106  
*See also* Addiction; names of specific behaviors or disorders  
 Relationships. *See* Interpersonal relations  
 Relaxation  
 anxiety reduction, 1:78, 79, 80  
 aromatherapy, 1:91–93  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
 biofeedback, 1:141  
 body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
 chronic pain, 1:234  
 cognitive-behavioral therapy, 1:264, 265  
 conversion disorder, 1:290  
 depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
 exposure treatment, 1:445  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 hypomania, 1:590  
 insomnia, 1:605  
 meditation, 2:706, 708  
 nicotine addiction, 2:779  
 nightmares, 2:782  
 pain disorder, 2:833  
 panic disorder, 2:840  
 pathological gambling disorder, 2:858, 859  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
 psychotherapy, 2:936  
 social phobia, 2:1074  
 specific phobias, 2:1089  
 stress, 2:1109–1110, 1115  
 systematic desensitization, 2:1140–1141  
 Relaxation response, 2:708  
 Reliability, test. *See* names of specific tests  
 Religion  
 brief psychotic disorder and, 1:174  
 delusional disorder and, 1:315  
 delusions and, 1:319, 321  
 dissociation and, 1:371  
 generalized anxiety disorder and, 1:510  
 hallucinations and, 1:546  
 hallucinogens in, 1:548  
 meditation and, 2:707  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:905  
 in psychiatric history, 1:356  
 stigma, 2:1104–1105  
*See also* Prayer  
 REM (Rapid eye movement sleep), 1:398, 465, 2:759, 760, 1057  
 Remediation, cognitive. *See* Cognitive remediation  
 Remeron. *See* Mirtazapine  
 Reminyl. *See* Galantamine  
 Repetitive behavior  
 Asperger's syndrome, 1:94, 95  
 autism, 1:109, 110, 111  
 childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:223  
 Repetitive stress injuries, 1:157  
 Repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation (rTMS). *See* Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)  
*Report of the Surgeon General on Mental Health*, 1:622  
 Repression, 1:566  
 Reproductive issues, 1:518  
 Requip. *See* Ropinirole  
 Rescue personnel, 1:335  
 Research. *See* Clinical trials  
 Reserpine, 2:705, 920, 1092, 1174  
 Residential treatment programs. *See* Group homes  
 Respiratory disease, 1:27  
 Respite, 2:962, 962–964  
 Response. *See* Stimuli and response  
 Response cost, 1:568  
 Response prevention. *See* Exposure treatment  
 REST (Restricted environmental stimulation therapy), 2:779  
 Rest tremors. *See* Tremors  
 Restless legs syndrome, 1:463, 464, 2:897, 1058–1060  
 Reston, James, 1:7  
 Restoril. *See* Temazepam  
 Restricted affect. *See* Affect  
 Restricted environmental stimulation therapy (REST), 2:779  
 Retraining, cognitive. *See* Cognitive retraining  
 Retrograde amnesia. *See* Amnesia  
 Retrovir. *See* Zidovudine  
 Rett, Andreas, 2:964  
 Rett disorder, 1:222, 223, 2:876, 964–968  
 Reuptake, 1:338  
 Reversible inhibitors of MAO-A (RIMAS), 2:741–742  
 Revia. *See* Naltrexone  
 Reward deficiency syndrome (RDS), 2:968–971  
 Reward pathway. *See* Brain  
 Reward systems, 1:108, 125–126, 2:849, 850  
 Reynolds, Cecila, 1:240  
 Rheumatoid arthritis. *See* Arthritis  
 Rhythm Test, 1:556  
 Riboflavin, 1:365, 2:7867  
 Rifabutin, 1:248  
 Rifampicin, 2:972  
 Rifampin  
 clonazepam and, 1:248  
 donepezil and, 1:389  
 propranolol and, 2:920  
 quetiapine and, 2:947  
 temazepam and, 2:1149  
 zaleplon and, 2:1232  
 zolpidem and, 2:1236  
 Right brain. *See* Cerebral hemispheres  
 Rigidity, 1:210, 211, 212, 213  
 Rilutek. *See* Riluzole  
 Riluzole, 2:971–973  
 RIMAS (Reversible inhibitors of MAO-A), 2:741–742  
 Risk management plan, 1:564  
 Risky behaviors, 1:13, 23, 138, 202, 590  
 Risperdal. *See* Risperidone  
 Risperidone, 2:973–975  
 for Alzheimer's disease, 1:43  
 for autism, 1:113  
 for bipolar disorder, 1:150  
 for brief psychotic disorder, 1:175  
 CATIE and, 1:215, 216  
 vs. clozapine, 1:252  
 for delirium, 1:314  
 for delusional disorder, 1:318  
 diets for, 1:363

for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
 medication-induced movement disorders and, 2:701, 704  
 neuroleptic malignant syndrome from, 2:766  
 olanzapine and, 2:811  
 for paranoia, 2:842  
 Paxil and, 2:862  
 vs. quetiapine, 2:946  
 for schizoaffective disorder, 2:988  
 for schizophrenia, 2:999  
 in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 tardive dyskinesia and, 2:1146  
 for tic disorders, 2:1161  
 vs. ziprasidone, 2:1233  
**Ritalin.** *See* Methylphenidate  
**Ritualistic behavior.** 1:153, 2:808  
**Rivastigmine.** 1:42, 2:**975–977**, 1144, 1221  
**RNA (Ribonucleic acid).** *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders  
**Road rage.** 2:**977–979**, 978  
**Robert Wood Johnson Foundation.** 1:274  
**Roger of Salerno.** 2:933  
**Rogerian therapy.** *See* Person-centered therapy  
**Rogers, Carl.** 1:539, 2:871–873  
**Rohypnol.** *See* Flunitrazepam  
**Role playing**  
 assertiveness training, 1:**100**, 101  
 couples therapy, 1:295  
 creative therapies, 1:298, 300  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:523  
 group therapy, 1:538–539  
 histrionic personality disorder, 1:568  
 hypomania, 1:590  
 modeling and, 2:736, 738  
 rational emotive therapy, 2:951  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:992  
 social skills training, 2:1077  
**Rolf, Ida.** 1:157  
**Rolfing.** 1:157–158, 159, 160  
**Rollnick, Stephen.** 2:960  
**Roman chamomile.** *See* Chamomile  
**Ropinirole.** 2:1059  
**Rorschach, Hermann.** 2:979, 980  
**Rorschach Psychodiagnostics Test.** *See* Rorschach technique  
**Rorschach technique.** 1:332, 479, 2:**979–981**, 980  
**Rosemary.** 2:**981–983**  
**Rosenfield, Sarah.** 1:503  
*Rosmarinus officinalis.* *See* Rosemary  
**Rozerem.** *See* Ramelteon  
**RR (Rational Recovery).** *See* Self-help groups  
**rTMS (Repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation).** *See* Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)  
**Rumination disorder.** 2:**983–984**  
**Ruminations.** 2:679

**Rush.** *See* Euphoria  
**Rush, John.** 2:1095

## S

**Sacher-Mosoch, Leopold von.** 2:848  
**SAD (Seasonal affective disorder).** *See* Seasonal affective disorder (SAD)  
**Sade, Donatien de.** 2:1049  
**S-adenosyl-L-methionine (SAME).**  
*See* SAME (S-adenosyl-L-methionine)  
**Sadism, sexual.** *See* Sexual sadism  
**Sadomasochism.** *See* Sexual masochism; Sexual sadism  
**Safrole.** 1:403–404  
**Salicylates.** 1:312, 362, 387  
**Salience.** 1:391  
**Salivary glands.** 1:178  
**SAMe (S-adenosyl-L-methionine), 2:**985–986****

**SAMHSA (U.S. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration).** 1:291  
**Sand play.** *See* Play therapy  
**Sanorex.** *See* Mazindole  
**Sarafem.** *See* Fluoxetine  
**SASSI (Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory).** *See* Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory (SASSI)  
**Satir, Virginia.** 1:460  
**Saturated fats.** *See* Dietary fats  
**Sayers, Dorothy.** 2:1105  
**Scans.** *See* Imaging studies  
**Scapegoating.** 1:459, 460  
**Scents.** 1:91, 92, 218  
**Schaedle, Richard.** 1:208  
**Schemas.** 1:263  
**Schilder's disease.** 1:222  
**Schizoaffective disorder.** 2:**986–990**  
 vs. delusional disorder, 1:315, 316, 317  
 delusions in, 1:319  
 lithium carbonate for, 1:662  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:678  
 schizopreniform disorder and, 2:1003  
 STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
**Schizoid personality disorder, 2:**990–993****  
 Asperger's disorder and, 1:95  
 vs. avoidant personality disorder, 1:118  
 bullying and, 1:186  
 vs. obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803  
 as personality disorder, 2:875  
 schizoaffective disorder and, 2:987  
 schizotypal personality disorder and, 2:1007  
**Schizophrenia, 2:**993–1002****  
 adjustment disorders and, 1:21  
 amitriptyline and, 1:48  
 apathy in, 1:82, 83  
 aripiprazole for, 1:88, 89  
 assertive community treatment for, 1:98  
 vs. autism, 1:112–113  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:148  
 vs. borderline personality disorder, 1:162  
 brief psychotic disorder and, 1:173, 174, 175  
 catatonia in, 1:210, 211, 211  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:212–213, 214  
 CATIE and, 1:215–216  
 causes, 2:995–996  
 vs. childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:223  
 chlorpromazine for, 1:230  
 clozapine for, 1:251–254  
 vs. cocaine intoxication, 1:259  
 cognitive remediation for, 1:268  
 cognitive retraining for, 1:270  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:291, 394  
 crisis housing for, 1:301  
 defined, 2:993  
 vs. delirium, 1:313  
 delusional disorder and, 1:315, 316, 317  
 delusions in, 1:319  
 demographics, 2:997–998  
 described, 2:993–995  
 diagnosis, 2:998  
 in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:355, 358  
 diets for, 1:363  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:381, 382  
 dopamine in, 1:390–391  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408, 410  
 electroencephalography, 1:413  
 energy therapies, 1:420, 422  
 epilepsy and, 1:409  
 executive function and, 1:435  
 family education, 1:456  
 family psychoeducation, 1:457, 458  
 family therapy, 1:459  
 genetics, 1:512, 513, 514, 518, 2:824  
 hallucinations in, 1:545, 546  
 imaging studies and, 1:594  
 juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:630  
**Luria-Nebraska**  
 Neuropsychological Battery and, 1:668  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:677–678  
 mesoridazine for, 2:719  
 Mini-Mental State Examination, 2:729  
 negative symptoms, 2:764  
 neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
 nortriptyline and, 2:783

- olanzapine for, 2:810–811  
 paranoia in, 2:842, 843  
 paranoid personality disorder and, 2:844, 845, 846  
 person-centered therapy, 2:873  
*vs.* pervasive developmental disorders, 2:876  
 pimozide and, 2:891  
 positive symptoms, 2:899  
 positron emission tomography and, 2:900  
 prevention, 2:1000–1001  
 prognosis, 2:999–1000  
 psychosis in, 2:931  
 quetiapine for, 2:946  
 risperidone for, 2:972  
 Rorschach technique and, 2:979  
 schizoaffective disorder and, 2:986  
 schizophrenia and, 2:1003–1004  
 schizotypal personality disorder and, 2:1007  
 social skills training, 2:1076  
 stigma, 2:1106  
 stress and, 2:825  
 symptoms, 2:996–997  
 thioridazine for, 2:1153  
 thiothixene for, 2:1155  
 treatments, 2:998–999  
 trichotillomania and, 2:1181  
 trifluoperazine for, 2:1182  
 ziprasidone for, 2:1232–1233
- Schizophrenia Patient Outcomes Research Team, 1:458
- Schizophreniform disorder, 1:173, 174, 319, 545, 2:**1002–1006**
- Schizotypal personality disorder, 1:118, 2:774, 875, 987, 990, **1006–1009**
- Schneiderian symptoms. *See* Positive symptoms
- School attendance, 1:186
- School psychology, 2:931
- Schreiber, Jon, 1:422
- SCID (Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV). *See* Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV (SCID)
- SCID-D (Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Dissociative Disorders). *See* Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Dissociative Disorders (SCID-D)
- SCL (Skin conductance level), 1:142
- Scopolamine, 1:494, 2:778
- Scopolia, 1:48
- Scoring systems, 1:480–481, 2:980–981, 1151
- Screening, urine. *See* Urine drug screening
- Screening for disease. *See* Assessment and diagnosis
- SDA (Serotonin dopaminergic antagonists). *See* Antipsychotics
- Seashore Rhythm Test. *See* Rhythm Test
- Seasonal affective disorder (SAD), 2:**1009–1013, 1010**  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:181  
 late-life depression and, 1:653  
 light therapy, 1:659, 660  
 major depressive disorder and, 2:679
- Secobarbital, 1:121, 347
- Seconal. *See* Secobarbital
- Secondary depressive mood disorder, 1:633
- Secondary enuresis. *See* Enuresis
- Secondary gain, 1:286
- Secondary insomnia. *See* Insomnia
- Secondary tricyclic antidepressants. *See* Tricyclic antidepressants (TCA)
- Second-generation antipsychotics. *See* Antipsychotics
- Secretin, 1:113
- Sedarest. *See* Estazolam
- Sedation. *See* Sedatives and related drugs
- Sedatives and related drugs, 2:**1013–1016**  
 for alcohol-related disorders, 1:34  
 amnesia from, 1:49  
 amoxapine and, 1:54  
 anti-anxiety drugs and, 1:68  
 benzodiazepines, 1:128  
 breathing-related sleep disorder and, 1:171  
 buspirone and, 1:191  
 cannabis, 1:200  
 carbamazepine and, 1:205  
 chamomile, 1:218  
 chloral hydrate and, 1:227  
 chlorpromazine, 1:229–232  
 clomipramine and, 1:246  
 clonazepam and, 1:247, 248  
 clorazepate and, 1:251  
 clozapine and, 1:253  
 delirium and, 1:314  
 desipramine and, 1:345  
 diphenhydramine and, 1:367–368  
 for dissociative identity disorder, 1:383  
 doxepin and, 1:393  
 estazolam and, 1:432  
 flurazepam and, 1:487  
 imipramine and, 1:595  
 kava kava and, 1:643  
 late-life depression and, 1:651  
 lithium carbonate and, 1:664  
 loxapine and, 1:667  
 passionflower and, 2:855  
 phenelzine and, 2:882  
 Pick's disease and, 2:890  
 protriptyline and, 2:921, 922  
 trazodone and, 2:1176  
 venlafaxine and, 2:1205  
 withdrawal, 1:347  
*See also* Hypnotics; names of specific sedatives
- Seizures, 2:**1016, 1016–1020**  
 alcohol-related disorders and, 1:33, 34  
 from amantadine, 1:46, 47  
 amnesia and, 1:373  
 amoxapine and, 1:54  
 barbiturates for, 1:121  
 bupropion and, 1:189, 190  
 carbamazepine for, 1:204, 205  
 catatonic disorders and, 1:212  
 childhood disintegrative disorder and, 1:222  
 chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
 citalopram and, 1:239  
 clomipramine and, 1:245  
 clonazepam for, 1:247  
 clorazepate for, 1:250  
 from clozapine, 1:252, 253  
 conversion disorder and, 1:286  
 desipramine and, 1:344, 345  
 diazepam for, 1:359, 360  
 divalproex sodium for, 1:386  
 doxepin and, 1:393  
 electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408–413  
 electroencephalography, 1:415  
 evening primrose oil and, 1:434  
 gabepentin for, 1:493–494  
 from haloperidol, 1:552  
 lamotrigine for, 1:649  
 lorazepam for, 1:665  
 magnetic seizure therapy, 2:675–678  
 maprotiline and, 2:694, 695  
 from mirtazapine, 2:732  
 from nefazodone, 2:762  
 from nortriptyline, 2:783  
 from paroxetine, 2:853  
 polysomnography for, 2:896  
 from protriptyline, 2:921  
 from quetiapine, 2:947  
 Rett disorder and, 2:965  
 from risperidone, 2:974  
 from thiothixene, 2:1155–1156  
 vagus nerve stimulation and, 2:1195  
 valproic acid for, 2:1200  
 from ziprasidone, 2:1233  
*See also* Anticonvulsants
- Seldane. *See* Terfenadine
- Selective amnesia. *See* Amnesia
- Selective monoamine oxidase inhibitors. *See* Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)
- Selective mutism, 2:**1020–1023**
- Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 2:**1023–1025**  
 for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
 for agoraphobia, 1:28  
 for Alzheimer's disease, 1:40, 43  
 as antidepressants, 1:71  
 for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
 for bipolar disorder, 1:149  
 for body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
 for bulimia nervosa, 1:180

- clomipramine and, 1:244, 246  
for dementia, 1:326  
for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
for depression and depressive disorders, 1:341  
for dermatillomania, 1:343  
for dysthymic disorder, 1:399, 400  
for exhibitionism, 1:441  
for generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
for juvenile depression, 1:634  
for late-life depression, 1:652  
for major depressive disorder, 2:680, 682  
medication-induced postural tremor from, 2:702  
narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:757  
for narcolepsy, 2:760  
neurotransmitters and, 2:773  
for obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:809–810  
for obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:804  
origin of mental illnesses and, 2:824  
for panic disorder, 2:839, 840  
for paranoid personality disorder, 2:846–847  
paroxetine, 2:852  
for pathological gambling disorder, 2:858  
for postpartum depression, 2:908  
for post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:905  
for premenstrual syndrome, 2:912, 913  
for process addiction, 2:917  
for pyromania, 2:943  
SAMe and, 2:986  
for separation anxiety disorder, 2:1041  
for sexual sadism, 2:1051  
for social phobia, 2:1073  
for tic disorders, 2:1161  
for toilet phobia, 2:1165  
tranylcypromine and, 2:1174  
trazodone and, 2:1175, 1176  
for trichillomania, 2:1181  
*See also names of specific selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors*
- Selegiline  
amphetamines and, 1:57  
for bipolar disorder, 1:149  
citalopram and, 1:239  
fluoxetine and, 1:483  
fluvoxamine and, 1:489  
as monoamine oxidase inhibitor, 2:742, 743  
Selenium, 2:790  
*Self Esteem* (Satir), 1:460  
*Self injury.* *See Self mutilation*
- Self mutilation, 1:454, 2:**1033–1037**, 1034  
*See also Self-harming behavior*
- Self-absorption, pathological. *See Narcissistic personality disorder*
- Self-actualization, 2:872, 873
- Self-centered behavior, 1:74, 75
- Self-confidence, 1:118, 119, 331
- Self-control, 1:178, 611
- Self-control strategies, 2:**1025–1029**
- Self-defense, 1:100
- Self-destructive behavior, 1:153
- Self-dialogue, 1:523
- Self-esteem  
anorexia nervosa and, 1:62, 63  
in avoidant personality disorder, 1:117, 118, 119  
bereavement and, 1:132  
bullying and, 1:183  
depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
from exercise, 1:436–437, 438  
in hypomania, 1:589  
stuttering and, 2:1123
- Self-fulfilling prophecy, 1:16–17
- Self-harming behavior, 1:162, 163, 595  
*See also Self mutilation*
- Self-help groups, 2:**1029–1033**, 1030  
addiction, 1:17  
amphetamine use, 1:60  
antisocial personality disorder, 1:75  
binge drinking, 1:138  
bipolar disorder, 1:150  
cannabis use, 1:202  
cocaine use, 1:260  
co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:293  
detoxification, 1:349  
disease concept of chemical dependency, 1:369  
dual diagnosis, 1:395  
exhibitionism, 1:441  
fatigue, 1:465  
group therapy, 1:538, 539  
hallucinogen use, 1:550  
as interventions, 1:623  
Matrix model, 2:700–701  
methamphetamine addiction, 2:725  
opioid dependence, 2:816, 817  
paranoid personality disorder, 2:846  
pathological gambling disorder, 2:858, 859  
process addiction, 2:917  
schizophrenia, 2:999  
smoking cessation, 2:1068
- Self-image  
borderline personality disorder, 1:161, 162  
bulimia nervosa, 1:178  
female orgasmic disorder, 1:469  
female sexual arousal disorder, 1:471
- figure drawings and, 1:479, 480, 481  
gender issues in mental health, 1:503
- Self-management techniques. *See Self-control strategies*
- Self-medication  
in addiction, 1:16  
in chronic pain, 1:233  
co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291, 395  
in cyclothymic disorder, 1:306  
in Internet addiction disorder, 1:612, 614  
in schizophrenia, 2:997
- Self-referential thinking, 2:841
- Self-regulation, 1:521
- Selye, Hans, 2:1109
- Semantic dementia. *See Pick's disease*
- Sensitivity, 1:585–586, 2:872
- Sensitization, covert. *See Covert sensitization*
- Sensory cortex, 1:336
- Sensory integration therapy, 1:223
- Sensory-perceptual ability, 1:658
- Separation anxiety disorder, 1:19, 27, 125, 2:**1037–1042**
- Sequenced Treatment Alternatives to Relieve Depression (STAR\*D). *See STAR\*D study*
- Serax. *See Oxazepam*
- Serentil. *See Mesoridazine*
- Serine, 2:1147
- Serious emotional disturbance, 1:208
- Sernyl. *See Phencyclidine and related disorders*
- Sernylan. *See Phencyclidine and related disorders*
- Seroquel. *See Quetiapine*
- Serotonin. *See Neurotransmitters*
- Serotonin dopaminergic antagonists (SDA). *See Antipsychotics*
- Serotonin syndrome  
citalopram and, 1:239  
clomipramine and, 1:246  
fluoxetine and, 1:482, 483  
fluvoxamine and, 1:488–489  
neuroleptic malignant syndrome and, 2:766  
Paxil and, 2:862  
selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024  
sertraline and, 2:1042  
trazodone and, 2:1176
- Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRI), 1:341
- Sertraline, 2:**741, 1042–1044**  
for body dysmorphic disorder, 1:154  
for dementia, 1:326  
for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340  
diets for, 1:365  
for dysthymic disorder, 1:400

- monoamine oxidase inhibitors  
and, 2:743  
for obsessive-compulsive disorder,  
2:809  
for premature ejaculation, 2:910  
for premenstrual syndrome, 2:913  
as selective serotonin reuptake  
inhibitor, 2:1023  
for social phobia, 2:1073  
for specific phobias, 2:1089  
in STAR\*D study, 2:1095  
*Serzone*. *See* Nefazodone  
Settlement houses, 1:538  
Sex roles. *See* Gender issues in mental  
health  
Sex therapy, 1:397, 469, 473, 584,  
2:687, 909–910  
Sex-change operation. *See* Gender  
reassignment surgery  
Sexual abuse. *See* Abuse  
Sexual anhedonia, 1:583  
Sexual anorexia. *See* Hypoactive sex-  
ual desire disorder (HSDD)  
Sexual apathy. *See* Hypoactive sexual  
desire disorder (HSDD)  
Sexual arousal, 1:427, 468, 477  
*See also* Female sexual arousal  
disorder (FSAD)  
Sexual arousal disorder, female. *See*  
Female sexual arousal disorder  
(FSAD)  
Sexual aversion disorder, 1:469,  
2:**1044–1046**  
*Sexual Behavior in the Human Female*  
(Kinsey), 1:472  
*Sexual Behavior in the Human Male*  
(Kinsey), 1:472  
Sexual compulsions, 1:597, 613, 645,  
2:916, 917  
Sexual development, 1:498–499  
Sexual deviance. *See* Paraphilic  
Sexual dysfunctions, 2:**1046–1047**  
citalopram and, 1:239  
cocaine and, 1:255, 257  
in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual*  
*of Mental Disorders*, 1:356  
dyspareunia as, 1:396, 397  
female orgasmic disorder and,  
1:468  
female sexual arousal disorder  
and, 1:471  
guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
*See also names of specific*  
*dysfunctions*  
Sexual intercourse, painful. *See*  
Dyspareunia  
Sexual masochism, 2:848–849,  
**1047–1049**, 1050–1051  
Sexual obsessions, 2:807  
Sexual sadism, 2:848–849, 1049,  
**1049–1052**  
Sexual Violence Risk-20 (SVR-20),  
**2:1052–1054**  
Shaking. *See* Tremors  
Shamans, 1:547  
Shaping, 2:851  
Shared psychotic disorder, 1:319, 545,  
2:931, **1054–1056**  
Sharpey-Shafer, Edward Albert, 1:23  
Shell shock. *See* Conversion disorder  
Shiatsu, 1:157, 159, 510  
Shift. *See* Dissociative identity disor-  
der (DID)  
Shift work, 1:236, 237, 238, 576  
Shock treatment. *See*  
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT)  
Shoes, 1:478  
Shopping, compulsive. *See*  
Compulsive buying  
Short-term acute residential treat-  
ment (START), 1:301  
Shy bladder syndrome. *See* Toilet  
phobia  
Shyness, 1:117, 2:903, 990–993, 1076  
Siberian ginseng. *See* Ginseng  
Sibutramine, 1:84, 2:763, 798, 799,  
1205  
Sick role, 1:619  
Side effects. *See names of causative*  
*drugs or treatments*  
Sildenafil, 1:430, 473, **1046**  
Simple phobias. *See specific phobias*  
Simvastatin, 1:483, 489  
Sinequan. *See* Doxepin  
Single photon emission computed  
tomography (SPECT), 1:41, 259,  
326, 594, **2:1056–1057**  
Sinuses, 1:277, 280  
Sizemore, Chris Costner, 1:379  
Skills training, social. *See* Social skills  
training  
Skin cancer, 1:343  
Skin conductance level (SCL), 1:142  
Skin picking  
compulsive (*See*  
Dermatillomania)  
. *See* Dermatillomania  
Skinner, B. F., 1:125, 263, 2:930  
Skinner Box, 1:125  
Skinnerian conditioning. *See* Operant  
conditioning  
Skull, 1:159  
Sleep apnea. *See* Breathing-related  
sleep disorder  
Sleep attacks. *See* Cataplexy;  
Narcolepsy  
Sleep deprivation, 1:335, 371, 372,  
465, 2:781  
Sleep disorders, 2:**1057–1061**  
acute stress disorder and, 1:12, 13  
antidepressants for, 1:71  
caffeine and, 1:195, 196  
cocaine and, 1:255, 257  
in *Diagnostic and Statistical*  
*Manual of Mental Disorders*,  
1:356  
dysthymic disorder and, 1:398  
ecstasy and, 1:405  
electroencephalography for, 1:413  
enuresis and, 1:425  
fatigue and, 1:463–464, 465  
hypomania and, 1:591  
pain disorders and, 2:833  
polysomnography for, 2:896–897  
*See also* Breathing-related sleep  
disorder; Circadian rhythm sleep  
disorder; Dyssomnia;  
Hypersomnia; Insomnia;  
Narcolepsy  
Sleep hygiene, 2:1061  
Sleep latency, 2:897  
Sleep paralysis, 2:760  
Sleep restriction therapy, 1:605  
Sleep studies. *See* Polysomnography  
Sleep terror disorder, 2:781–782,  
1057, 1058, **1061–1063**  
Sleep-inducing drugs. *See* Hypnotics  
Sleepiness, excessive. *See*  
Hypersomnia  
Sleep-wake schedule disorder. *See*  
Circadian rhythm sleep disorder  
Sleepwalking disorder, 2:**1063–1066**,  
1064  
as parasomnia, 2:1057, 1058  
sleep terror disorder and, 2:1062  
treatment, 2:1060–1061  
Slingerland, Beth, 2:956  
Smells. *See* Scents  
Smoking. *See* Nicotine and related  
disorders  
Smoking cessation, 2:1066,  
**1066–1069**  
acupuncture, 1:9  
amoxapine for, 1:53  
antidepressants for, 1:71  
aversion therapy, 1:115  
bupropion for, 1:189, 190  
clonidine for, 1:248  
guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
hypnotherapy, 1:578  
meditation for, 2:710  
modeling for, 2:738  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors for,  
2:742  
obstacles to, 2:776  
protriptyline for, 2:920  
treatments, 2:777–779  
for vascular dementia, 2:1203  
*See also* Nicotine replacement  
therapy (NRT)  
Sniffing. *See* Inhalants and related  
disorders  
Snoring, 1:169, 170  
SNRI (Serotonin-norepinephrine  
reuptake inhibitors), 1:341  
Social and Occupational Functioning  
Assessment Scale (SOFAS), 1:355  
Social anxiety  
avoidant personality disorder and,  
1:117  
dopamine and, 1:391  
paroxetine for, 2:852  
Paxil for, 2:860, 861  
schizotypal personality disorder  
and, 2:1006, 1007

- selective mutism and, 2:1021, 1022  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors for, 2:1023  
 toilet phobia and, 2:1163, 1164  
**Social humanism**, 2:926  
**Social interactions**  
 abuse and, 1:4, 5  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:11  
 adolescents, 2:867  
 Asperger's disorder and, 1:93, 94, 95  
 autism and, 1:109–110, 111, 112  
 avoidant personality disorder and, 1:117–118  
 binge drinking and, 1:137  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:147  
 executive function and, 1:435  
 Internet addiction disorder and, 1:612, 613, 614  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:617–621  
 late-life depression and, 1:653  
 in multisystemic therapy, 2:746–749  
 narcissistic personality disorder and, 2:753–758  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:828  
 peer groups and, 2:866–868  
 reactive attachment disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 2:953  
 relapse prevention and, 2:959–960  
 schizoid personality disorder and, 2:990–993  
 schizophrenia and, 2:996  
 schizotypal personality disorder and, 2:1006–1009  
 social phobia and, 2:1069–1074  
 social skills training, 2:1075–1078  
*See also* Interpersonal relations  
**Social isolation**, 1:504  
 acute stress disorder and, 1:13  
 avoidant personality disorder and, 1:117  
 bullying and, 1:185  
 in paranoid personality disorder, 2:843, 844  
 schizoid personality disorder and, 2:990–993  
 schizotypal personality disorder, 2:1006–1009  
 stuttering and, 2:1123  
**Social modeling**, 1:288  
 generalized anxiety disorder, 1:511  
 in generalized anxiety disorder, 1:508  
**Social phobia**, 1:445, 2:**1069–1075**  
 from abuse, 1:5  
 agoraphobia and, 1:26, 28  
 as anxiety disorder, 1:77  
 avoidant personality disorder and, 1:117, 118  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153  
 causes, 2:1070–1071  
 clonazepam for, 1:247  
 defined, 2:1069  
 demographics, 2:1071–1072  
 dermatillomania and, 1:342  
 described, 2:1069–1070  
 diagnosis, 2:1072  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 Internet-based therapy, 1:616  
 interpersonal therapy, 1:620  
 kleptomania and, 1:646  
 neurotransmitters in, 2:774  
 vs. panic disorder, 2:838  
 prevention, 2:1074  
 prognosis, 2:1074  
 selective mutism and, 2:1021  
 social skills training, 2:1076  
 symptoms, 2:1071  
 treatments, 2:1072–1074  
**Social skills**, 1:222, 223, 383, 537  
**Social skills training**, 2:**1075–1079**  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:108  
 avoidant personality disorder, 1:119  
 borderline personality disorder, 1:163  
 bullying and, 1:185, 187  
 dependent personality disorder, 1:332  
 exhibitionism, 1:441  
 Internet addiction disorder, 1:614  
 major depressive disorder, 2:682, 683  
 modeling, 2:736, 738  
 post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:904  
 schizoid personality disorder, 2:992  
 sexual sadism, 2:1051  
 social phobia, 2:1073–1074  
**Social withdrawal**. *See* Social isolation  
**Social work**, 1:538  
**Social workers**, 1:623, 2:**1079–1080**  
**Socialization**, 1:498, 502  
**Socioeconomics**, 1:508, 657, 2:1112  
**Sociopathy**. *See* Antisocial personality disorder (APD)  
**Sodium**, 1:363, 364, 406, 2:852  
**Sodium amobarbital**. *See* Barbiturates  
**Sodium amytal**, 1:375  
**Sodium caseinate**, 1:364  
**Sodium lactate**, 2:837  
**Sodium pentobarbital**. *See* Barbiturates  
**Sodium Pentothal**. *See* Thiopental  
**Sodium valproate**, 1:307, 386  
**SOFAS** (Social and Occupational Functioning Assessment Scale), 1:355  
**Soiling**. *See* Encopresis  
**Solution-focused therapy**, 1:20  
**Solvents**, volatile. *See* Volatile solvents  
**Somatic anxiety**, 1:558, 559  
**Somatic delusions**. *See* Delusions  
**Somatic disorders**, 1:315, 321, 567  
**Somatic education**, 1:158  
**Somatic hallucinations**. *See* Hallucinations  
**Somatization** and somatoform disorders, 2:**1080–1081**  
 body dysmorphic disorder, 1:152  
 conversion disorder, 1:285–290  
 in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:356  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
 pain disorder, 2:831–832  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904  
*See also* Undifferentiated somatoform disorder  
**Somatization disorder**, 2:**1081–1084**  
 antisocial personality disorder and, 1:74  
 Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly, 1:240  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:381  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:567  
 neurotransmitters in, 2:774  
 as somatization and somatoform disorder, 2:1080  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder and, 2:1190  
**Somatoform disorders**. *See* Somatization and somatoform disorders  
**Somatoform pain disorder**. *See* Pain disorder  
**Somnambulism**. *See* Sleepwalking disorder  
**Somnolite**. *See* Chloral hydrate  
**Sonata**. *See* Zaleplon  
**SORL1**, 1:323  
**Sotalol**, 2:1234  
**Soteria House**, 1:301  
**Spain**, 1:643  
**Sparfloxacin**, 2:1234  
**Special education**, 1:657, 2:717–718, 956, 967  
*See also* Individual education plans (IEP)  
**Specific phobias**, 2:**1084–1090**  
 agoraphobia and, 1:26–27, 28  
 as anxiety disorders, 1:77  
 causes, 2:1085–1086  
 defined, 2:1084–1085  
 demographics, 2:1087  
 dermatillomania and, 1:342  
 described, 2:1085  
 diagnosis, 2:1087–1088  
 exposure treatment, 1:445  
 guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
 modeling for, 2:736, 737  
 prevention, 2:1089–1090  
 prognosis, 2:1089  
 symptoms, 2:1086–1087  
 treatments, 2:1088–1089

- SPECT (Single photon emission computed tomography). *See* Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT)
- Spectrum disorders, 1:109, 110, 112
- Speech  
 in Asperger's disorder, 1:94  
 in brief psychotic disorder, 1:172, 173, 174  
 communication disorders, 1:272  
 in expressive language disorder, 1:449–450  
 Gestalt therapy, 1:522–523  
 psychotic, 2:932
- Speech disorder. *See* Phonological disorder
- Speech Sounds Perception Test, 1:556
- Speech therapy. *See* Speech-language pathology
- Speech-language pathology, 2:**1090–1091**, 1091  
 communication disorders, 1:272  
 developmental coordination disorder and, 1:352  
 expressive language disorder, 1:449–450  
 mixed receptive-expressive language disorder and, 2:733–735  
 Pick's disease and, 2:888, 889, 890  
 selective mutism and, 2:1021  
 stuttering, 2:1122  
*See also* Phonological disorder
- Speed (drug). *See* Methamphetamine
- Spelling disorder. *See* Reading disorder
- Spinal cord, 1:164
- Spiral computed tomography. *See* Computed tomography (CT)
- Spirituality. *See* Religion
- Spirochetes, 1:322
- Spironolactone, 2:686, 914
- Split personality disorder. *See* Dissociative identity disorder
- Splitting, 1:161, 2:755
- Spouse abuse. *See* Abuse
- SSI (Supplemental Security Income), 1:207, 309
- SSRIs (Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors). *See* Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs)
- St. John's wort, 2:**1091–1093**  
 amitriptyline and, 1:48  
 for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
 citalopram and, 1:240  
 fluoxetine and, 2:683  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 Paxil and, 2:862  
 for premenstrual syndrome, 2:914  
 selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors and, 2:1024  
 sertraline and, 2:1043
- St. Michael's Hospice, 1:299
- Stalking, 1:4, 6
- Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale, 1:608, 2:**1093–1094**
- Stanozolol, 2:1102
- STAR (Students Taught Awareness), 1:260
- STAR\*D study, 2:**1094–1097**
- START (Short-term acute residential treatment), 1:301
- Startle response, 1:12, 13
- Starvation, 1:63–64
- Statins, 1:385  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM)
- Status epilepticus, 1:121
- Stealing, 1:597, 646–648
- Stein, Leonard, 1:98, 208
- Stelazine. *See* Trifluoperazine
- STEP-BD study, 2:**1097–1099**
- Step-up technique, 1:542
- Stereotypic movement disorder, 2:**1099–1102**  
 as movement disorder, 2:745  
 self mutilation and, 2:1033
- Stern, Adolf, 1:161
- Stern, Daniel, 1:502
- Steroids, 2:**1102**, **1102–1104**  
 chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
 for chronic pain, 1:234  
 clozapine and, 1:253  
 delirium from, 1:312
- Steves-Johnson syndrome, 1:528
- Stewart McKinney Homeless Assistance Act, 1:570, 571–572
- Stigma, 2:**1104–1108**  
 adjustment disorders and, 1:19  
 compliance and, 1:276  
 crisis housing and, 1:301  
 diagnosis and, 1:354  
*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:357  
 erectile dysfunction, 1:427  
 family education and, 1:456  
 group homes and, 1:534  
 hospitalization and, 1:573  
 involuntary hospitalization and, 1:625  
 mental retardation and, 2:716  
 pathological gambling disorder and, 2:857–858  
 schizophrenia and, 2:997  
 stuttering, 2:1123  
 suicide, 2:1133, 1135
- Stillman, Bessie, 2:956
- Stimulants  
 amantadine and, 1:46–47  
 anti-anxiety drugs and, 1:68  
 for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
 for attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, 1:107, 108  
 diets for, 1:362  
 isocarboxazid and, 1:628  
 juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:631
- for Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:646  
 late-life depression and, 1:651  
 Matrix treatment model, 2:699–700  
 methamphetamine and, 2:724  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 for narcolepsy, 2:760  
 pemoline and, 2:869  
 phenelzine and, 2:882  
 pimozide and, 2:891  
 for process addiction, 2:917  
 sleepwalking disorder from, 2:1064  
*See also names of specific stimulants*
- Stimuli and response  
 aversion therapy, 1:114, 115, 116  
 behavior modification, 1:126  
 biofeedback, 1:142  
 exposure treatment, 1:443–448
- Stone, Randolph, 1:421
- Stool softeners, 1:416, 418
- Strattera. *See* Atomoxetine
- Street drugs. *See names of specific street drugs*
- Strength training, 1:438
- Streptococcal infections, 2:806, 1158
- Stress, 2:**1108–1116**  
 abuse from, 1:4  
 adjustment disorders and, 1:18–21  
 adrenaline and, 1:22, 2:775  
 bibliotherapy, 1:135  
 biofeedback for, 1:140–141  
 brief psychotic disorder and, 1:173, 175  
 bulimia nervosa and, 1:176  
 causes, 2:1111–1113  
 chronic pain and, 1:234  
 circadian rhythm sleep disorder and, 1:236, 238  
 compulsion and, 1:277  
 conversion disorder and, 1:285–290  
 coping skills, 2:1113–1115  
 defined, 2:1108–1109  
 depersonalization and, 1:334, 335  
 depersonalization disorder and, 1:338  
 depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
 dissociation and, 1:371, 372  
 dissociative amnesia and, 1:373  
 dissociative fugue and, 1:377, 378–379  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:383
- elimination disorders and, 1:417  
 encopresis and, 1:418  
 enuresis and, 1:425, 426  
 exercise for, 1:437  
 fatigue and, 1:462, 463  
 feeding disorder of infancy or early childhood and, 1:467  
 female orgasmic disorder and, 1:469, 470

gender issues in mental health and, 1:502–504  
 generalized anxiety disorder and, 1:508, 509, 511  
 hypnotherapy, 1:578  
 impulse-control disorders and, 1:597  
 insomnia and, 1:604, 605  
 Internet addiction disorder and, 1:612  
 juvenile depression and, 1:633  
 kava kava for, 1:643  
 kleptomania and, 1:647, 648  
 lavender for, 1:655  
 meditation for, 2:706, 708  
 mental disorders and, 2:1111  
 neurobiology, 2:1109–1110  
 nightmares from, 2:781, 782  
 nutrition and, 2:788  
 origin of mental illnesses, 2:824–825, 828  
 physical effects, 2:1110–1111  
 post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:901–905  
 premenstrual syndrome and, 2:913  
 pyromania and, 2:941, 942  
 respite from, 2:962  
 risk factors, 2:1113  
 schizoaffective disorder and, 2:987, 989, 990  
 schizopreniform disorder and, 2:1004  
 separation anxiety disorder and, 2:1037–1041  
 sleepwalking disorder and, 2:1064  
 stereotypic movement disorder and, 2:1101  
 tic disorders and, 2:1163  
 trichillomania and, 2:1180  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder and, 2:1189  
*See also names of specific stress-related disorders*  
 Stress inoculation, 1:78, 80  
 Stress management techniques  
     adjustment disorders, 1:20  
     alcohol-related disorders, 1:34  
     anxiety reduction and, 1:78  
     aromatherapy, 1:91–93  
     guided imagery therapy, 1:542  
     hypochondriasis, 1:587  
     job-related, 2:1113–1114  
*See also Critical incident stress management*  
 Stress response. *See Stress*  
 Stressors. *See Stress*  
 Striatum, 2:1056  
 Stroke, 2:1116, 1116–1121  
     acupuncture for, 1:8  
     brain imaging, 1:167  
     creative therapies, 1:298  
     dementia and, 1:322  
     magnetic seizure therapy, 2:678  
     major depressive disorder and, 2:680

meditation for, 2:706  
     from methamphetamine, 2:725  
     mixed receptive-expressive language disorder from, 2:734, 735  
     neuropsychiatry and, 2:768  
     nutrition and, 2:788  
     origin of mental illnesses, 2:825  
     paranoia after, 2:842  
     seizures from, 2:1017  
     single photon emission computed tomography and, 2:1056  
     stress and, 2:1110  
     vascular dementia, 2:1201–1203  
 Structural integration. *See Rolfing*  
 Structural strategic model, 1:295–296  
 Structuralism, 2:930  
 Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV (SCID), 2:757, 1121–1122  
 Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Dissociative Disorders (SCID-D), 1:337, 375, 382  
 Students Taught Awareness (STAR), 1:260  
 Stupor, 1:210, 212, 213, 311, 313  
 Stuttering, 1:272, 542, 2:1122–1126  
 Subarachnoid hemorrhage. *See Stroke*  
 Subdural hematoma, 1:322  
 Subjective units of distress scale (SUDS), 1:444, 446, 447  
 Sublimaze. *See Fentanyl*  
 Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, U.S. (SAMHSA), 1:291, 394  
 Substance abuse and related disorders, 2:1130–1132  
     abuse and, 1:5  
     acupuncture, 1:8, 9  
     agoraphobia and, 1:28  
     alprazolam and, 1:36  
     amnesia and, 1:373  
     amoxapine for, 1:53  
     amphetamines and, 1:57–61  
     antisocial personality disorder and, 1:73, 74, 75  
     appetite suppressants and, 1:85  
     assertive community treatment, 1:98, 99  
     assessment and diagnosis, 1:103  
     attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:108  
     aversion therapy, 1:115  
     bibliotherapy, 1:135  
     binge eating and, 1:139  
     bipolar disorder and, 1:147, 148  
     borderline personality disorder and, 1:163  
     bulimia nervosa and, 1:179, 180  
     chronic pain and, 1:233  
     Clinical Assessment Scales for the Elderly and, 1:240  
     conduct disorder and, 1:282  
     co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291, 292, 394–395  
     cyclothymic disorder and, 1:306  
     denial in, 1:329  
     depression and depressive disorders and, 1:341  
     detoxification and, 1:346–350  
     in *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, 1:355  
     diazepam and, 1:360  
     diets for, 1:361, 363, 365  
     dissociation and, 1:372  
     dissociative identity disorder and, 1:380, 383  
     dopamine and, 1:391  
     executive function and, 1:435  
     exercise, 1:437  
     exhibitionism and, 1:440  
     exposure treatment for, 1:443, 447  
     factitious disorder and, 1:453  
     female sexual arousal disorder from, 1:472–473  
     gender identity disorder and, 1:497  
     gender issues in mental health, 1:504  
     generalized anxiety disorder and, 1:507  
     Gestalt therapy, 1:521  
     ginseng, 1:528  
     group homes, 1:534  
     hallucinogens, 1:547–551, 550  
     homelessness and, 1:570  
     hospitalization for, 1:573  
     hypomania and, 1:589  
     inhalants, 1:600–604  
     insomnia from, 1:605  
     intermittent explosive disorder and, 1:610  
     interpersonal therapy, 1:617, 620  
     juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:630  
     juvenile depression and, 1:633  
     kleptomania and, 1:646  
     major depressive disorder, 2:682  
     Matrix treatment model, 2:699–701  
     meditation, 2:706, 710  
     mental retardation from, 2:717  
     methadone for, 2:721–723  
     methamphetamine, 2:723–725  
     mixed, 1:349  
     modeling treatment for, 2:736  
     monoamine oxidase inhibitors for, 2:742  
     naltrexone for, 2:751–752  
     neurotransmitters and, 2:774  
     vs. obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803  
     origin of mental illnesses, 2:828  
     panic attacks and, 2:835, 838  
     panic disorder and, 2:839  
     paranoid personality disorder and, 2:845  
     pathological gambling disorder and, 2:856  
     pedophilia and, 2:864  
     post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904

- premature ejaculation and, 2:909  
 process addiction and, 2:915, 916, 917  
 psychosis in, 2:931  
 pyromania and, 2:940, 941  
 reward deficiency syndrome and, 2:969  
 schizophrenia and, 2:997  
 sedatives, 2:1013–1015  
 seizures from, 2:1017  
 self mutilation and, 2:1035  
 social phobia and, 2:1069–1070  
 steroids, 2:1102–1104  
 stigma, 2:1106  
 stress and, 2:1111  
 Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory, 2:1132–1133  
 support groups, 2:1139  
 urine drug screening for, 2:1191–1192  
 yoga for, 2:1227  
*See also* Addiction; Alcohol and related disorders; Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse; Caffeine-related disorders; Cannabis and related disorders; Cocaine and related disorders; Disease concept of chemical dependency; Nicotine and related disorders; Opioids and related disorders; Polysubstance dependence; Withdrawal
- Substance abuse counselors. *See* Alcohol and drug abuse counselors
- Substance Abuse Subtle Screening Inventory (SASSI), 2:1132–1133
- Substance P, 1:86–87
- Substance-induced amnestic disorders. *See* Amnestic disorders
- Substance-induced anxiety disorder, 2:1126–1128
- Substance-induced persisting amnestic disorder. *See* Amnestic disorders; Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome
- Substance-induced psychotic disorder, 1:319, 545, 2:931, 1128–1130
- Substantia nigra, 1:390, 2:745
- Substitute amphetamines. *See* Ecstasy; Methamphetamine
- Subsyndromal bulimia, 1:179
- Subsyndromal depression, 1:650, 651, 1009, 1010
- Succinylcholine, 1:389, 410
- Sucralfate, 1:251
- Sudden death, 1:55, 107, 531, 603
- SUDS (Subjective units of distress scale), 1:444, 446, 447
- Sugar
- blood (*See* Glucose)
  - dietary (*See* Dietary sugar)
- Suggestibility, 1:286, 566, 567, 580–581, 581–582
- Suicide, 2:1133–1137
- abuse and, 1:3
  - adjustment disorders and, 1:19
- adolescent, 2:681, 1178  
 antidepressants and, 1:72, 2:921  
 attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and, 1:108  
 bipolar disorder and, 1:147, 149, 150  
 body dysmorphic disorder and, 1:153  
 borderline personality disorder and, 1:161, 162, 163  
 brief psychotic disorder and, 1:173  
 bullying and, 1:183  
 clordiazepoxide and, 1:228  
 chronic pain and, 1:233  
 citalopram and, 1:239  
 clomipramine and, 1:245  
 clorazepate and, 1:250  
 co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis and, 1:291  
 crisis intervention for, 1:302, 303–304  
 dissociative identity disorder and, 1:383  
 electroconvulsive therapy in preventing, 1:408, 410  
 factitious disorder and, 1:454  
 gender identity disorder and, 1:497, 499  
 grief from, 1:531  
 histrionic personality disorder and, 1:569  
 hospitalization to prevent, 1:573, 574  
 imipramine and, 1:595  
 juvenile bipolar disorder and, 1:630  
 late-life depression and, 1:650  
 major depressive disorder and, 2:679  
 maprotiline and, 2:694  
 monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743  
 nefazodone and, 2:762  
 nortriptyline and, 2:783  
 panic disorder and, 2:839  
 Paxil and, 2:861  
 peer groups and, 2:867  
 process addiction and, 2:917  
 schizophrenia and, 2:996, 997  
 self mutilation and, 2:1034, 1035  
 trimipramine and, 2:1187  
*See also* Assisted suicide
- Sulfa drugs, 2:1019
- Sulfa-doxine-pyrimethamine, 2:870
- Sumatriptan, 2:1174, 1205
- Sunburn, 1:433, 434
- Sundowning, 1:311
- Sundrop. *See* Evening primrose oil
- Superego, 1:226, 328–329, 2:755
- Supernatural model, 1:356
- Supplemental Security Income (SSI), 1:207, 309
- Supplements, dietary. *See* Dietary supplements
- Support groups, 2:1138–1140
- adjustment disorders, 1:20
  - alcohol-related disorders, 1:34
  - autism, 1:113
  - bereavement, 1:133
  - bipolar disorder, 1:150
  - childhood disintegrative disorder, 1:223
  - chronic pain, 1:234
  - cocaine abuse, 1:260
  - dual diagnosis, 1:395
  - family education, 1:456
  - gender identity disorder, 1:500
  - grief counseling, 1:531
  - group therapy, 1:538, 539
  - hallucinogen use, 1:550
  - as interventions, 1:623
  - Matrix model, 2:700
  - for nicotine addiction, 2:778
  - panic disorder, 2:839
  - paranoia, 2:843
  - post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:901
  - relapse prevention, 2:960
  - sedative withdrawal, 2:1015
  - self-help groups and, 2:1030–1031
- Supportive therapy
- acute stress disorder, 1:13
  - brief psychotic disorder, 1:175
  - cocaine abuse, 1:260
  - opioid dependence, 2:817
  - psychodynamic psychotherapy, 2:928
  - schizophrenia, 2:999
- Suppressed memories. *See* Recovered memories
- Surgery, psychological. *See* Psychosurgery
- Surgical castration. *See* Castration
- Surmontil. *See* Trimipramine
- Surviving Manic Depression: A Manual on Bipolar Disorder for Patients, Families, and Providers* (Torrey and Knable), 2:996
- Surviving Schizophrenia: A Family Manual* (Torrey), 2:996
- Survivor's guilt, 1:12
- Suspiciousness. *See* Paranoia
- Sutherland, William, 1:159
- SVR-20 (Sexual Violence Risk-20). *See* Sexual Violence Risk-20 (SVR-20)
- Sweden, 1:439, 2:1137
- Switzerland, 1:643
- Sydenham's chorea, 2:806
- Symbolic modeling. *See* Modeling
- Symmetrel. *See* Amantadine
- Symmetry obsession, 2:807
- Sympathometics, 1:57
- Symptoms
- negative (*See* Negative symptoms)
  - positive (*See* Positive symptoms).
  - See names of causative disorders*
- Synanon, 1:537
- Synapses, 1:166, 2:852

Syndrome of approximate answers.  
*See* Ganser's syndrome  
 Synpolydactyly, 1:514  
 Syphilis, 1:322, 326  
 Systematic desensitization,  
**2:1140–1141**  
     in cognitive-behavioral therapy,  
         1:264  
     in exposure treatment, 1:443–444,  
         446  
     in psychotherapy, 2:936  
     separation anxiety disorder, 2:1040  
     vaginismus, 2:1195  
 Systematic Treatment Enhancement  
 Program for Bipolar Disorder  
 (STEP-BD). *See* STEP-BD study  
 Systematized amnesia. *See* Amnesia  
 Systems theory, family. *See* Family  
 systems theory

## T

T3. *See* Triiodothyronine  
 Tachycardia, 1:22, 23, 33, 34  
 Tacrine, 1:42, **2:1143–1144**  
 Tactile hallucinations, 1:546  
 Tactual Performance Test, 1:555  
 Tadalafil, 1:430  
 TADS (The Treatment for  
 Adolescents with Depression  
 Study). *See* The Treatment for  
 Adolescents with Depression Study  
 (TADS)  
 Tagament. *See* Cimetidine  
 Tagamet. *See* Cimetidine  
 T'ai chi. *See* Bodywork therapies  
 Takamine, Jokichi, 1:23  
 Talk therapy, **2:1144**  
     female orgasmic disorder, 1:469  
     female sexual arousal disorder,  
         1:473  
     Freud, Sigmund, 2:822  
     as intervention, 1:623  
     late-life depression, 1:652  
     sedative withdrawal, 2:1015  
     STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 Tantra yoga. *See* Yoga  
 Tapas Acupressure Technique, 2:905  
 Tapering, 1:347, 2:777–778, 1015  
 Tardive dyskinesia, **2:1145–1146**  
     abnormal involuntary movement  
         scale for, 1:1–2  
     from antipsychotics, 1:631  
     from chlorpromazine, 1:231  
     from clozapine, 1:252  
     from fluphenazine, 1:485  
     from haloperidol, 1:552  
     as medication-induced movement  
         disorder, 2:702, 703, 704–705  
     from mesoridazine, 2:720  
     from molindone, 2:739–740  
     from olanzapine, 2:811–812

from pimozide, 2:892  
     from quetiapine, 2:947  
     schizophrenia and, 2:998–999  
     from thioridazine, 2:1153, 1154  
     from thiothixene, 2:1156  
     from trifluoperazine, 2:1183  
 TAT (Thematic Apperception Test).  
*See* Thematic Apperception Test  
 (TAT)  
 Tau proteins, 1:39, 2:889  
 Tautomycin, **2:1146–1147**  
 Taxol. *See* Paclitaxel  
 Taxotere. *See* Docetaxel  
 TCA (Tricyclic antidepressants). *See*  
 Tricyclic antidepressants (TCA)  
 TCM (Traditional Chinese medicine).  
*See* Traditional Chinese medicine  
 (TCM)  
 Tea, herbal. *See* Herbal medicine  
 Teasing, 1:177  
 Technical eclecticism. *See*  
 Psychotherapy integration  
 Teenagers. *See* Adolescents  
 Teeth, 1:177, 178  
 Tegretol. *See* Carbamazepine  
 Telephone sex, 2:1210  
 Temazepam, 1:486, 2:1059,  
**1147–1149, 1148**  
 Temperament, 1:27, 2:1070  
 Temperature, body. *See* Body  
 temperature  
 Temporal lobes, 1:110, 111, 2:889  
 10/66 Dementia Research Group,  
 1:40–41  
 Tension, 1:508  
 Tenuate. *See* Diethylpropion  
 Teratogens, 1:474  
 Terfenadine, 1:88  
 Termination, 1:541  
 Terpene lactones, 1:525  
 Terrors, sleep. *See* Sleep terror  
 disorder  
 Tertiary tricyclic antidepressants. *See*  
 Tricyclic antidepressants (TCA)  
 Test, Mary Ann, 1:98, 208  
 Test of Adolescent Language, 1:370  
 Test of Early Written Language  
 (TEWL), 1:370  
 Testosterone  
     ecstasy and, 1:405  
     for erectile dysfunction, 1:429, 430  
     in exhibitionism, 1:441  
     exhibitionism and, 1:439  
     for female orgasmic disorder, 1:470  
     frotteurism and, 1:491  
     gender identity disorder and, 1:500  
     in hypoactive sexual desire disor-  
         der, 1:583  
     hypoactive sexual desire disorder  
         and, 1:5847  
     pedophilia and, 2:863  
 Testosterone cypionate, 2:1103  
 Tests  
     achievement (*See names of specific*  
         *tests*)

intelligence (*See* Intelligence tests;  
*names of specific tests*)  
 laboratory (*See* Urine drug  
 screening)  
 psychological (*See* Assessment and  
 diagnosis; *names of specific tests*;  
 Neuropsychological testing)  
 Tetrabenazine, 2:1161  
 Tetracyclines, 2:740  
 Tetrahydroaminoacridine (THA).  
*See* Tacrine  
 Tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), 2:1191  
 Tetrahydrogestrinone, 2:1103  
 TEWL (Test of Early Written  
 Language), 1:370  
 TGA (Transient global amnesia). *See*  
 Amnesia  
 THA (Tetrahydroaminoacridine).  
*See* Tacrine  
 Thalamus, 1:165, 165, 2:933–934  
 THC (Tetrahydrocannabinol), 2:1191  
 Theft. *See* Stealing  
 Thematic Apperception Test (TAT),  
 1:224, 225–226, 332, 479,  
**2:1149–1153**  
 Theophylline  
     carbamazepine and, 1:205  
     chlorpromazine and, 1:231  
     clonazepam and, 1:248  
     clozapine and, 1:253  
     disulfiram and, 1:385  
     medication-induced postural tre-  
         mor from, 2:701–702  
     propranolol and, 2:920  
     quazepam and, 2:946  
     riluzole and, 2:972  
     St. John's wort and, 2:1092  
     tacrine and, 2:1144  
 Theoretical integration. *See*  
 Psychotherapy integration  
*The Theory and Practice of Group*  
*Therapy* (Yalom), 1:536  
 Therapeutic dyad, 2:928–929,  
 937–938, 1107  
 Therapeutic touch (TT), 1:420, 422  
 Therapies. *See* Intervention  
 Therapy. *See* Intervention  
 Thermistors, 2:897  
 Theta waves, 1:415  
 THG. *See* Tetrahydrogestrinone  
 Thiamin, 2:7867  
     alcohol and, 1:34  
     amnesia and, 1:49  
     delirium and, 1:312  
     detoxification and, 1:347  
     diets for, 1:363  
     for nutrition, 2:826, 828  
     Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome  
         and, 2:1218–1222  
 Thiazides, 1:526, 2:686  
 Thinking patterns. *See* Cognition  
 Thiopental, 1:121  
 Thioridazine, **2:1153–1155**  
     for delirium, 1:314  
     olanzapine and, 2:812

- paroxetine and, 2:853  
 quetiapine and, 2:947  
 zaleplon and, 2:1232  
 ziprasidone and, 2:1234  
 zolpidem and, 2:1236
- Thiothixene**, 2:**1155–1157**
- Thorazine**. *See* Chlorpromazine
- Thought**. *See* Cognition
- Thought broadcasting, 1:320, 321, 2:841
- Thought field therapy, 2:905
- Thought insertion, 1:320, 321, 2:841
- Thought withdrawal, 1:320, 321, 2:841
- 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA). *See* Ecstasy (drug)
- Threonine**, 2:1147
- Thyroid disease**. *See* Hyperthyroidism; Hypothyroidism
- Thyroid gland**, 2:947
- Thyroxin**, 2:920
- TIA** (Transient ischemic attacks), 2:1116, 1117
- Tic disorders**, 2:**1157–1163**
- amphetamines and, 1:56
  - causes, 2:1158
  - defined, 2:1157
  - demographics, 2:1157–1158
  - described, 2:1157
  - diagnosis, 2:1159–1160
  - haloperidol for, 1:551, 552
  - hypnotherapy, 1:578
  - movement disorders and, 2:745
  - obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:806
  - prevention, 2:1163
  - prognosis, 2:1161–1163
  - stereotypic movement disorder and, 2:1101
  - symptoms, 2:1158–1159
  - treatments, 2:1160–1161
  - trichillomania and, 2:1180
- Ticket to Work Act**, 2:1209
- Ticlopidine**, 1:526
- Tigabine**, 2:1019
- Time-outs**, 1:126
- Tiredness**. *See* Fatigue
- Tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA)**, 2:1118
- TMS** (Transcranial magnetic stimulation). *See* Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)
- To Have or To Be?* (Fromm), 2:926
- Tobacco use**. *See* Nicotine and related disorders
- Tofranil**. *See* Imipramine
- Toilet phobia**, 2:**1163–1166**, 1164
- Toilet training**, 1:416, 418, 419
- Token economy system**, 1:266, 267, 2:**1166–1168**
- Tolerance**
  - in addiction, 1:15–16, 346
  - alcohol, 1:31, 32
  - anti-anxiety drug, 1:68, 69
  - appetite suppressant, 1:85
- benzodiazepine, 1:129
- binge drinking and, 1:138
- caffeine, 1:196
- cocaine, 1:255
- ecstasy, 1:406
- estazolam, 1:432
- hallucinogen, 1:550
- inhalant, 1:601
- methamphetamine, 2:724
- nicotine, 2:775
- opioid, 2:814, 815
- Tonsils**, 1:169, 171
- Topiramate**, 1:12, 2:1019
- Toprol-xl**. *See* Metoprolol succinate
- Torrey**, E. Fuller, 2:996
- Touch**, therapeutic. *See* Therapeutic touch
- Touched with Fire: Manic-Depressive Illness and the Creative Temperament* (Jamison), 2:693
- Tourette**, Georges Gilles de la, 2:1157
- Tourette's disorder**. *See* Tic disorders
- Toxicological screening**. *See* Urine drug screening
- Toxins**
  - amnestic disorders from, 1:50, 51, 52
  - delirium from, 1:312
  - dementia from, 1:322, 326, 327
  - neuropsychological testing and, 2:770
  - stress and, 2:1112
  - See also names of specific toxins*
- t-PA** (Tissue plasminogen activator), 2:1118
- Tracheostomy**, 1:171
- Traditional Chinese medicine (TCM)**
  - acupuncture, 1:7, 8, 9
  - energy therapies, 1:420–421, 422
  - ginkgo biloba, 1:525
  - ginseng, 1:526–527, 528
  - post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:905
- Trager**, Milton, 1:158
- Tragerwork**, 1:158, 159
- Trail Making Test**, 1:555–556
- Trait anxiety**, 1:507
- Tramadol**, 1:246
- Trance state**, 1:579–582
- Tranquilizers**. *See* Anti-anxiety drugs and abuse; Sedatives and related drugs
- Transcendental meditation**. *See* Meditation
- Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS)**, 2:**1168–1169**
  - bipolar disorder, 1:150
  - as convulsive therapy, 2:675–677
  - depression and depressive disorders, 1:341
  - vs. electroconvulsive therapy, 1:408
  - as electromagnetic therapy, 1:408
  - neuropsychiatry and, 2:768
  - therapeutic potential, 2:829
- Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation**, 1:234, 2:833
- Transfer enhancers**, 2:738–739
- Transgendered persons**, 1:498, 499, 500
- Transient global amnesia (TGA)**. *See* Amnesia
- Transient insomnia**. *See* Insomnia
- Transient ischemic attacks (TIA)**, 2:1116
- Transient tic disorder**. *See* Tic disorders
- Transinstitutionalization**, 1:310
- Transsexualism**. *See* Gender identity disorder
- Transudation**, 1:471
- Transvestic fetishism**, 1:498, 499, 2:848, 849, 1170, **1170–1172**
- Transvestitism**. *See* Transvestic fetishism
- Tranxene**. *See* Clorazepate
- Tranylcypromine**, 2:**1172–1174**
  - amitriptyline and, 1:48
  - amoxapine and, 1:54
  - diets for, 1:364
  - disulfiram and, 1:385
  - doxepin and, 1:393
  - for dysthymic disorder, 1:400
  - fluvoxamine and, 1:488
  - imipramine and, 1:596
  - methadone and, 2:723
  - mirtazapine and, 2:733
  - as monoamine oxidase inhibitor, 2:741, 742, 743
  - nortriptyline and, 2:784
  - paroxetine and, 2:853
  - protriptyline and, 2:921
  - for seasonal affective disorder, 2:1011
  - in STAR\*D study, 2:1096
  - in STEP-BD study, 2:1098
- Trauma**
  - abuse and, 1:5
  - acute stress disorder and, 1:11, 12, 13
  - brief psychotic disorder and, 1:175
  - conversion disorder and, 1:285–290
  - creative therapies, 1:298–299, 300
  - cyclothymic disorder and, 1:306
  - depersonalization and, 1:334, 335
  - depersonalization disorder and, 1:334, 338
  - dissociation and, 1:371, 372
  - dissociative amnesia and, 1:373, 374, 375, 376
  - dissociative fugue and, 1:377, 378–379
  - dissociative identity disorder and, 1:380, 383
  - dyspareunia and, 1:396
  - encopresis and, 1:418
  - energy therapies, 1:420
  - exposure treatment for, 1:446
  - female orgasmic disorder from, 1:468, 469, 470

- female sexual arousal disorder  
from, 1:471
- genetic vulnerability to, 1:515
- head (*See Head trauma*)
- histrionic personality disorder  
and, 1:565, 566
- hypoactive sexual desire disorder  
and, 1:583
- origin of mental illnesses, 2:827–828
- play therapy, 2:893
- post-traumatic stress disorder and,  
2:901–905
- sexual aversion disorder and,  
2:1044
- specific phobias and, 2:1085
- trichillomania and, 2:1180
- vaginismus and, 2:1193, 1194
- See also* Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)
- Traumatic Incident Reduction, 2:905
- Travel, 1:377–379
- Travil, 1:340*t*
- Trazodone, 2:**1175–1177**  
for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340*t*  
for erectile dysfunction, 1:429  
ginkgo biloba and, 1:526  
nefazodone and, 2:763  
for panic disorder, 2:839  
pimozide and, 2:892  
venlafaxine and, 2:1205
- Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence*  
(U.S. Department of Health and Human Services), 2:1066–1067
- Treatment  
hospital (*See Hospitalization*)  
outpatient (*See Outpatient care*)  
residential (*See Group homes*)
- The Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS),  
2:**1177–1178**
- Treatments. *See names of specific treatments*
- Tree primrose. *See* Evening primrose oil
- Trelstar. *See* Triptorelin
- Tremors  
alcohol-related disorders and, 1:33  
amantadine for, 1:45  
benztropine for, 1:130  
beta blockers for, 1:134  
biperiden for, 1:144, 145  
diphenhydramine for, 1:366  
lithium carbonate and, 1:663  
in medication-induced movement disorders, 2:702, 703, 704, 705, 706  
as movement disorders, 2:745  
propranolol for, 2:918, 919
- Trepanation. *See* Trepanning
- Trepanning, 2:932–933, 934
- Trexan. *See* Naltrexone
- Trials, clinical. *See* Clinical trials
- Triamterene, 2:686
- Triangular relationships, 1:460–461
- Triazolam, 2:**1178–1180**  
abuse of, 1:67  
aprepitant and, 1:88  
diets for, 1:365  
flurazepam and, 1:486  
nefazodone and, 2:763
- Trichloroethanol, 1:226
- Trichophagia, 2:1181
- Trichophagy, 2:1181
- Trichotillomania, 2:**1180, 1180–1182**  
clomipramine for, 1:244  
dermatillomania and, 1:343  
as impulse-control disorder, 1:597  
obsessive-compulsive disorder and, 2:806  
as process addiction, 2:916
- Tricyclic antidepressants (TCA)  
for acute stress disorder, 1:12  
for agoraphobia, 1:28, 29  
amphetamines and, 1:57  
as antidepressants, 1:71, 72  
for Asperger's disorder, 1:96  
for bipolar disorder, 1:149  
for bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
vs. bupropion, 1:189  
carbamazepine and, 1:204  
chloral hydrate and, 1:227  
for cocaine abuse, 1:260  
delirium and, 1:312  
for depersonalization disorder, 1:338  
for depression and depressive disorders, 1:341  
for dermatillomania, 1:343  
desipramine, 1:344–345  
development, 1:244  
disulfiram and, 1:385  
for dysthymic disorder, 1:400  
fluoxetine and, 1:483  
fluvoxamine and, 1:489  
for generalized anxiety disorder, 1:509–510  
for hypoactive sexual desire disorder, 1:584  
juvenile depression and, 1:634  
for late-life depression, 1:652  
male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686  
medication-induced postural tremor from, 2:701–702  
methamphetamine and, 2:724  
for narcolepsy, 2:760  
for pain disorder, 2:833  
for panic disorder, 2:839, 840  
for post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:905  
protriptyline, 2:920, 921  
vs. SAMe, 2:985  
tardive dyskinesia from, 2:1145  
tic disorders and, 2:1158  
trazodone and, 2:1175
- Trifluoperazine, 2:**1182–1184**  
male orgasmic disorder from, 2:686  
thioridazine and, 2:1154
- Trigeminal neuralgia, 1:205
- Trigger point therapy, 1:157, 158–159, 160
- Trihexyphenidyl, 2:**1184–1186**  
amoxapine and, 1:55  
armantadine and, 1:45  
doxepin and, 1:393  
fluphenazine and, 1:485  
haloperidol and, 1:552  
imipramine and, 1:596  
for medication-induced movement disorders, 2:704  
mesoridazine and, 2:720  
molindone and, 2:740  
nortriptyline and, 2:784  
pimozide and, 2:892  
protriptyline and, 2:922  
thioridazine and, 2:1154  
trifluoperazine and, 2:1183  
trimipramine and, 2:1188
- Triiodothyronine, 2:1096
- Trilafon. *See* Perphenazine
- Trileptal. *See* Oxacarbazepine
- Trimipramine, 2:**1186–1188**  
amoxapine and, 1:53  
for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340*t*  
imipramine and, 1:594  
protriptyline and, 2:920
- Triplet repeat disorders, 1:513–514
- Trips, bad. *See* Bad trips
- Triptorelin, 1:441, 2:864
- Trisomy 21. *See* Down syndrome
- Troleandomycin, 1:387
- Truancy, 2:849
- Truth serum. *See* Thiopental
- Tryptamine, 1:547
- Tryptophan, 1:483, 2:788  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors and, 2:743, 744  
in nutrition, 2:787  
origin of mental illnesses and, 2:826
- Tsubos, 1:159
- TT (Therapeutic touch), 1:420, 422
- Tuberoinfundibular pathway, 1:390
- Tudor, Mary. *See* Mary Tudor, Queen of England
- Tumors  
computed tomography for, 1:277, 278, 280, 281  
dementia from, 1:322  
positron emission tomography, 2:900  
*See also* names of specific tumor types
- Turner's syndrome, 1:583, 584, 2:697
- Twelve-step programs. *See* Self-help groups
- Twin Oaks Community (Virginia), 1:125
- Twin studies. *See* Genetic factors and mental disorders

Tyramine  
diets for, 1:362, 363, 364, 2:791  
monoamine oxidase inhibitors  
and, 1:71, 119, 149, 2:742,  
743–744  
phenelzine and, 2:882  
tranylcypromine and, 2:1173  
Tyrosine, 1:22, 390, 2:787

## U

UK (United Kingdom). *See* United Kingdom (UK)  
Ultradian cycling, 1:147, 629, 630  
Ultram. *See* Tramadol  
Ultrarapid cycling. *See* Ultradian cycling  
Ultrasound, 2:671  
Ultra-ultra rapid cycling. *See* Ultradian cycling  
Unconditional positive regard, 2:872–873  
Unconscious, 2:822, 930  
Undifferentiated somatoform disorder, 2:1080, **1189–1190**  
Unfinished business, 1:521, 533  
Unipolar disorder. *See* Major depressive disorder  
United Kingdom (UK)  
acupuncture, 1:8  
aromatherapy, 1:91  
creative therapies, 1:299  
detoxification, 1:348  
passionflower, 2:854  
schizophrenia, 2:997  
United States (U.S.)  
abuse, 1:3  
acupuncture, 1:7, 8  
acute stress disorder, 1:12  
addiction, 1:16  
adjustment disorders, 1:19  
advance directives, 1:24–25  
agoraphobia, 1:27  
alcohol-related disorders, 1:32  
Alzheimer's disease, 1:37  
amphetamines, 1:59  
antisocial personality disorder, 1:74  
aromatherapy, 1:91  
assertive community treatment, 1:98, 99  
assisted suicide, 2:1135–1136  
bipolar disorder, 1:146, 147  
breathing-related sleep disorder, 1:170  
brief psychotic disorder, 1:174  
bulimia nervosa, 1:178–179  
bullying, 1:184–185  
caffeine use, 1:197–198  
case management, 1:207  
childhood depression, 1:220  
chronic pain, 1:232–233

cocaine abuse, 1:258  
community mental health, 1:273–274  
co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:291  
deinstitutionalization, 1:309–310  
dementia, 1:321, 324  
depersonalization, 1:336  
depression and depressive disorders, 1:339–340, 2:1177–1178  
detoxification, 1:348  
diagnosis classification, 1:356–357  
dissociative amnesia, 1:374  
drug abuse, 1:68  
dual diagnosis, 1:394, 395  
ecstasy use, 1:404–405  
energy therapies, 1:420, 421  
erectile dysfunction, 1:428  
euthanasia, 2:1135–1136  
factitious disorder, 1:454  
family education, 1:456  
fetal alcohol syndrome, 1:474  
generalized anxiety disorder, 1:508–509  
grief, 1:530  
hallucinogen use, 1:519–550  
herbal medicine, 2:683  
homelessness, 1:569–570  
hospitalization, 1:573–574  
hypochondriasis, 1:586, 587  
insomnia, 1:605  
involuntary hospitalization, 1:624, 625, 626  
late-life depression, 1:650  
learning disorders, 1:656–657  
major depressive disorder, 2:681  
managed care, 2:690–692  
mental health courts, 2:712–714  
methadone, 2:721  
methamphetamine use, 2:724  
narcissistic personality disorder, 2:755–756  
nicotine, 2:774–775  
nicotine use, 2:777  
nightmares, 2:781  
obesity, 2:795  
obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:808  
obsessive-compulsive personality disorder, 2:803  
opioid dependence, 2:816  
oppositional defiant disorder, 2:820  
paranoid personality disorder, 2:845  
pathological gambling disorder, 2:857, 858  
phencyclidine use, 2:879  
post-traumatic stress disorder, 2:902  
pseudocyesis, 2:923  
pyromania, 2:942  
schizophrenia, 2:997  
seizures, 2:1018, 1019  
selective mutism, 2:1021  
self-help groups, 2:1029  
social phobia, 2:1071  
specific phobias, 2:1087  
STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
stigma, 2:1107  
stress, 2:1109  
stroke, 2:1118  
suicide, 2:1133–1134  
voyeurism, 2:1211  
United States Census Bureau, 1:570–571  
United States Center for Mental Health Services, 1:207  
United States Department of Education, 1:184–185  
United States Department of Health and Human Services, 1:185, 291–292, 518, 2:779, 1066–1067  
United States Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD), 1:260, 274  
United States Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA), 1:403, 406  
United States Equal Employment Opportunities Commission (EEOC), 2:942  
United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA)  
acupuncture, 1:8  
alprazolam, 1:36  
amphetamines, 1:55  
antidepressants, 1:72, 2:921  
antipsychotics, 1:326  
appetite suppressants, 1:84  
breathing-related sleep disorder, 1:170, 171  
bulimia nervosa, 1:180  
CATIE, 1:215  
chlordiazepoxide, 1:228  
clonazepam, 1:247  
clonidine, 1:248  
divalproex sodium, 1:386  
ephedra, 2:799  
female sexual arousal disorder, 1:473  
fluoxetine, 1:482, 2:913, 1178  
fluvoxamine, 1:488  
hypnotics, 1:605  
juvenile bipolar disorder drugs, 1:631  
kava kava, 1:643, 644  
lamotrigine, 1:649  
lavender, 1:656  
nefazodone, 2:762  
Nicorette, 2:777  
obesity drugs, 2:798  
olanzapine, 2:989  
oral contraceptives, 2:913–914  
panic disorder drugs, 2:839  
paroxetine, 1:510, 2:852  
Paxil, 2:861  
quazepam, 2:945  
rivastigmine, 2:975  
ropinirole, 2:1059  
sertraline, 2:913

tacrine, 2:1143  
 transcranial magnetic stimulation, 2:677  
 vagus nerve stimulation, 2:1195  
 valproic acid, 2:1200  
*Zaleplon*, 2:1231  
 ziprasidone, 2:1232  
 United States Institute of Medicine, 1:476  
 United States National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM), 1:7, 644, 2:683  
 United States Office of National Drug Control Policy, 1:403  
 United States Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), 1:291, 394  
 University of Kentucky, 1:324  
 University of Maryland, 1:458  
 University of Michigan, 1:421  
 University of North Carolina, 1:215  
 University of Wurzburg, 2:1227  
*An Unquiet Mind* (Jamison), 2:693  
 Unreality. *See* Depersonalization; Derealization  
 Unsaturated fats. *See* Dietary fats  
 Urecholine. *See* Bethanechol  
 Urinary incontinence. *See* Encopresis  
 Urine drug screening, 1:259, 2:700, 1191, 1191–1192  
 U.S. (United States). *See* United States  
 Usui, Mikao, 1:421  
 Utopian societies, 1:125

## V

VA (Veterans Administration), 1:356, 2:902, 963  
 Vaccines, 1:44, 111, 2:719  
 Vacuum constriction device therapy, 1:430  
 Vagina, 1:468, 469, 471, 2:1193–1195  
 Vaginismus, 1:396, 397, 583, 2:1193–1195  
 Vagus nerve stimulation (VNS), 2:675, 768, 1195–1198  
 Valenstein, Elliot, 2:933, 934  
 Valerian, 1:251, 666, 2:946, 1198–1200  
*Valeriana officinalis*. *See* Valerian  
 Validity, 1:123–124, 126, 224, 240  
 Valium. *See* Diazepam  
 Valproate. *See* Valproic acid  
 Valproic acid, 2:1200–1201  
     aripiprazole and, 1:90  
     for bipolar disorder, 1:148–149  
     carbamazepine and, 1:205  
     clorazepate and, 1:250  
     divalproex sodium and, 1:386  
     ginkgo biloba and, 1:526  
     for juvenile bipolar disorder, 1:631  
     lamotrigine and, 1:649–650

medication-induced postural tremor from, 2:701–702  
 for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
 for seizures, 2:1019  
 in STEP-BD study, 2:1098  
 Varenicline, 2:778, 1067, 1068  
 Vascular dementia, 2:1201–1203  
     vs. Alzheimer's disease, 1:38, 41  
     as dementia, 1:322, 323, 324, 326, 327  
     galantamine for, 1:494  
 Vascular system. *See* Cardiovascular system  
 Vasocongestion, 1:396, 397  
 Vasopressin, 1:405, 406  
 Velbe. *See* Vinblastine  
 Venlafaxine, 2:1203–1206  
     as antidepressant, 1:72  
     for depression and depressive disorders, 1:340t  
     for generalized anxiety disorder, 1:510  
     for panic disorder, 2:840  
     for schizoaffective disorder, 2:989  
     in STAR\*D study, 2:1096  
 Ventral striatum, 1:390, 391  
 Ventral tegmental area, 1:147, 390, 391  
 Vepesid. *See* Etoposide  
 Verapamil, 1:205, 2:1161  
 Verbal abuse. *See* Abuse  
 Verbal skills. *See* Communication skills and disorders  
 Verdenafil hydrochloride, 1:430  
 Vermis, 1:165  
 Versed. *See* Midazolam  
 Veterans  
     co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:292  
     dual diagnosis in, 1:395  
     post-traumatic stress disorder and, 2:904  
     post-traumatic stress disorder in, 2:902  
     respite care for, 2:963  
 Veterans Administration (VA), 1:356, 2:902, 963  
 Veterinary medicine, 1:8  
 Viagra. *See* Sildenafil  
 Vibramycin. *See* Doxycycline  
 Vicarious learning. *See* Modeling  
 Vicodin. *See* Hydrocodone  
 Victimization, 1:183–187, 503  
 Vienna Psychoanalytic Society, 2:936  
 Vinblastine, 1:88  
 Vincristine, 1:88  
 Vinorelbine, 1:88  
 Violence  
     in antisocial personality disorder, 1:74, 75  
     in bipolar disorder, 1:147, 148  
     in bullying, 1:183, 185, 186  
     in conduct disorder, 1:281–283  
     domestic (*See* Abuse)  
     dual diagnosis and, 1:395

Historical, Clinical, Risk Management-20 and, 1:563–565  
 in impulse-control disorders, 1:597  
 in intermittent explosive disorder, 1:609–611  
 in Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:645  
 in paranoid personality disorder, 2:843, 844  
 in peer groups, 2:866  
 in pyromania, 2:941, 942  
 in schizophrenia, 2:997  
 Sexual Violence Risk-20, 2:1052–1054  
 Vioxx. *See* Refecoxib  
 Viral infections, 1:45, 111, 322, 341, 464, 2:995  
 Virions, 1:323  
 Virtual reality, 1:270, 443, 446–447, 2:1140  
 Viruses, human. *See* Viral infections  
 Visual hallucinations. *See* Hallucinations  
 Visual motor skills. *See* Motor skills  
 Visual perception. *See* Perception  
 Visualization  
     anxiety reduction techniques, 1:78, 79, 80  
     bodywork therapies, 1:157, 234  
     cocaine abuse, 1:260  
     conversion disorder, 1:290  
     covert sensitization, 1:297–298  
     Gestalt therapy, 1:523  
     light therapy, 1:659, 661  
     modeling, 2:737  
     obesity, 2:799  
     pain disorder, 2:833  
     panic disorder, 2:840  
     psychotherapy, 2:936  
     systematic desensitization, 2:1140  
     *See also* Guided imagery therapy  
 Vitamin A, 1:44, 2:786t, 789  
 Vitamin B1. *See* Thiamin  
 Vitamin B2. *See* Riboflavin  
 Vitamin B3. *See* Niacin  
 Vitamin B5, 2:786t  
 Vitamin B6, 1:113, 2:786t, 789, 826, 914  
 Vitamin B12, 1:322, 326, 2:786t, 788  
 Vitamin C, 1:44, 2:786t  
 Vitamin D, 2:786t  
 Vitamin E, 1:44, 2:786t, 789, 914  
 Vitamin K, 2:786t  
 Vitamin E, 2:1146  
 Vitamins, 2:786t, 999  
     *See also names of specific vitamins*  
 Vivactil. *See* Protriptyline  
 Vivitrol, 1:34, 2:1206–1207  
 VNS (Vagus nerve stimulation). *See* Vagus nerve stimulation (VNS)  
 Vocal tic disorder. *See* Tic disorders  
 Vocational rehabilitation, 2:1208–1210  
     family psychoeducation, 1:458  
     for schizophrenia, 2:999

Volatile solvents, 1:600  
 Voluntary encopresis. *See* Encopresis  
 Voluntary enuresis. *See* Enuresis  
 Voluntary movements. *See* Movements  
 Vomiting  
     acupuncture for, 1:8  
     aprepitant for, 1:86, 87  
     in bulimia nervosa, 1:176, 176, 178  
     chlorpromazine for, 1:230  
     lorazepam for, 1:665  
     perphenazine for, 2:869, 870  
*Verbeireden*, 1:452  
 Voyeurism, 1:439, 440, 2:848, 849,  
**1210–1212**  
 Vulvar vestibulitis, 1:397

## W

WAIS (Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale). *See* Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale (WAIS)  
*Walden Two* (Skinner), 1:125  
 Wandering, 1:40  
 War. *See* Combat  
 Warfarin  
     anticonvulsants and, 2:1019  
     aprepitant and, 1:88  
     aripiprazole and, 1:90  
     carbamazepine and, 1:205  
     chloral hydrate and, 1:227  
     disulfiram and, 1:385  
     fluvoxamine and, 1:489  
     ginkgo biloba and, 1:526  
     ginseng and, 1:528  
     Paxil and, 2:862  
     St. John's wort and, 2:1092  
     for stroke prevention, 2:1120  
 Water, 1:406  
 Watson, John B., 2:930  
 Watts, James, 2:934  
 Waxy flexibility, 1:210, 212, 213  
 Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale (WAIS), 1:608, 638–639, 2:728,  
**1213–1215, 1214**  
 Wechsler, David, 2:1213, 1215, 1216  
 Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children (WISC), 1:608, 638–639,  
**2:1215–1218, 1216**  
 Wechsler Preschool and Primary Scale of Intelligence (WPPSI), 1:608,  
 2:1213, 1216  
 Weight, body. *See* Body weight  
 Weight gain. *See* Body weight; Obesity  
 Weight loss. *See* Body weight  
 Weinberg Screening Affective Scale (WSAS), 1:221  
 Welfare programs. *See* Public assistance  
 Wellbutrin. *See* Bupropion  
 Wernicke, Karl, 2:1218  
 Wernicke, Paul, 2:770

Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 1:16,  
 34, 49, 51, 2:788, **1218–1222**  
 Wernicke's area, 1:165  
 Wernicke's encephalopathy. *See* Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome  
 West Haven-Yale Multidimensional Pain Inventory, 1:233  
 Western medical acupuncture. *See* Acupuncture  
 Wetting. *See* Enuresis  
 WHO (World Health Organization). *See* World Health Organization (WHO)  
*Why Did You Do That? Rainy Day Games for a Post-Industrial Society* (Torrey), 2:996  
 Wide Range Achievement Test (WRAT), **2:1222–1223**  
 Widows and widowers, 1:530–531, 650  
 William of Osney, 2:807  
 Williams syndrome, 1:515  
 Winstrol. *See* Stanozolol  
 WISC (Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children). *See* Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children (WISC)  
 Withdrawal  
     in addiction, 1:15, 16  
     alcohol, 1:16, 31, 32–34, 347,  
     2:838–839  
     alprazolam, 1:36  
     amitriptyline, 1:47  
     amphetamines, 1:56, 58, 59, 60  
     anti-anxiety drugs, 1:68, 69  
     benzodiazepines, 1:129, 213  
     beta blockers and, 1:134  
     binge drinking, 1:138  
     caffeine, 1:195, 196, 198  
     carbamazepine, 1:205  
     chlor diazepoxide for, 1:228  
     clonidine for, 1:248, 249  
     clorazepate for, 1:250  
     cocaine, 1:255, 257, 259, 260  
     delirium from, 1:312, 314  
     detoxification and, 1:346–348  
     diazepam for, 1:359, 360  
     diets for, 1:363  
     estazolam, 1:432  
     hallucinations from, 1:545  
     hallucinogen, 1:550  
     inhalant, 1:600  
     methamphetamine, 2:724  
     naltrexone for, 2:751–752  
     nicotine, 2:775–776, 777–778  
     nightmares from, 2:781  
     opioid, 2:814, 815, 816, 818  
     oxazepam for, 2:829  
     phencyclidine, 2:878  
     sedative, 2:1014, 1015  
     social (*See* Social isolation)  
     steroid, 2:1104  
     substance-induced anxiety disorder and, 2:1126  
     substance-induced psychotic disorder and, 2:1128  
     temazepam, 2:1148–1149  
 Wolpe, Joseph, 1:263, 2:1141  
 Women  
     abuse, 1:3  
     acute stress disorder, 1:12  
     addiction, 1:16  
     agoraphobia, 1:27, 2:838  
     Alzheimer's disease, 1:39  
     amphetamines, 1:56  
     anorexia nervosa, 1:62–64  
     assertiveness training, 1:99, 100  
     barbiturates, 1:122  
     binge drinking, 1:137  
     binge eating, 1:139  
     biofeedback, 1:140  
     bipolar disorder, 1:147  
     borderline personality disorder,  
     1:162  
     bulimia nervosa, 1:176–182  
     bullying, 1:185  
     chronic pain, 1:233  
     conversion disorder, 1:285, 286,  
     287, 288  
     co-occurring disorders/dual diagnosis, 1:292  
     delusional disorder, 1:318  
     dementia, 1:324  
     depersonalization, 1:334  
     depersonalization disorder, 1:336  
     depression and depressive disorders, 1:339, 464  
     dermatillomania, 1:342  
     dissociation, 1:372  
     dissociative identity disorder, 1:381  
     dyspareunia, 1:396–398  
     dysthymic disorder, 1:399  
     ecstasy use, 1:405  
     exhibitionism, 1:440  
     factitious disorder, 1:453–454  
     fatigue, 1:463  
     female orgasmic disorder, 1:468–470  
     female sexual arousal disorder,  
     1:470–473  
     fetal alcohol syndrome, 1:474–476  
     fetishism, 1:477  
     gender issues in mental health,  
     1:501–505  
     generalized anxiety disorder,  
     1:464, 508  
     histrionic personality disorder,  
     1:565, 566–567  
     hypoaactive sexual desire disorder,  
     1:582–584  
     interpersonal therapy, 1:620  
     Kleine-Levin syndrome, 1:646  
     kleptomania, 1:647  
     late-life depression, 1:650, 651  
     major depressive disorder, 1:341,  
     2:681  
     mental health courts, 2:714  
     nicotine use, 2:777, 779  
     nightmares, 2:781  
     obsessive-compulsive disorder, 2:808  
     panic attack, 2:838  
     paraphilic, 2:848–849  
     pathological gambling disorder,  
     2:856, 857–858

postpartum depression, 2:906–908, 907  
 premenstrual syndrome, 2:911–915  
 process addiction, 2:916  
 pseudocyesis, 2:922–924  
 schizoaffective disorder, 2:988  
 schizophrenia, 2:997  
 seasonal affective disorder, 2:679, 1010  
 self mutilation, 2:1034  
 social phobia, 2:1070–1071  
 specific phobias, 2:1086  
 steroid use, 2:1103  
 stroke, 2:1118, 1119  
 suicide, 2:1133–1134  
 tardive dyskinesia, 2:812  
 undifferentiated somatoform disorder, 2:1189  
 vaginismus, 2:1193–1195  
*See also Girls*  
**Work environment**  
 bullying, 1:4, 183–184, 185, 186, 187  
 circadian rhythm sleep disorder and, 1:236, 237, 238  
 conversion disorder and, 1:286  
 pyromania and, 2:942  
**Workplace Bullying Institute**, 1:185  
**World Health Organization (WHO)**, 1:356, 357, 2:776–777, 997, 1134  
**World Professional Association for Transgender Health**, 1:500  
**Worry.** *See Anxiety and anxiety disorders*  
**WPPSI** (Wechsler Preschool and Primary Scale of Intelligence), 1:608, 2:1213, 1216

**WRAT** (Wide Range Achievement Test). *See Wide Range Achievement Test (WRAT)*  
**Writing, journal.** *See Creative therapies*  
**Written expression**, 1:351, 352, 353, 658  
 disorder of (*See Disorder of written expression*)  
**WSAS** (Weinberg Screening Affective Scale), 1:221  
**Wundt, Wilhelm**, 2:930

## X

**X rays**, 1:277, 278, 2:671, 676, 900  
**Xanax.** *See Alprazolam*  
**Xanthines**, 1:195  
**Xenical**, 1:84, 2:798  
**XTC.** *See Ecstasy (drug)*  
**X-Troxine.** *See Phendimetrazine*

## Y

**Yalom, Irvin D.**, 1:536–538  
**Yang**, 1:7  
**YAZ.** *See Oral contraceptives*  
**Yearning**, 1:531  
**Yesavitch, J. A.**, 1:519, 520  
**Yin**, 1:7  
**Yoga**, 2:**1227–1229**, 1228  
 acute stress disorder, 1:13  
 agoraphobia, 1:30  
 bulimia nervosa, 1:181–182

**chronic pain**, 1:234  
**energy therapies**, 1:420, 421, 422  
**generalized anxiety disorder**, 1:510  
**major depressive disorder**, 2:683  
**meditation** and, 2:707  
**nightmares**, 2:782  
**obesity**, 2:799  
**pain disorder**, 2:833  
**panic disorder**, 2:840  
**post-traumatic stress disorder**, 2:905  
**therapeutic potential**, 2:828  
**Yohimbine**, 2:837  
**Youth.** *See Adolescents; Children*

## Z

**Zaleplon**, 2:**1231–1232**  
**Zidovudine**, 1:326, 387  
**Zinc**, 2:790  
**Ziprasidone**, 2:**1232–1235**  
 CATIE and, 1:215, 216  
 vs. clozapine, 1:252  
 vs. olanzapine, 2:811  
 quetiapine and, 2:946  
 vs. risperidone, 2:972  
 for schizophrenia, 2:999  
**Zofran.** *See Ondansetron*  
**Zoloft.** *See Sertraline*  
**Zolpidem**, 2:1059, **1235–1237**, 1236  
**Zoophilia**, 2:848  
**Zyban.** *See Bupropion*  
**Zyprexa.** *See Olanzapine*